

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 1  
January 2013

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 1  
Part 1 Regulations  
January 2013

# A guide to the Rules

## *and published requirements*

### Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

#### Introduction

The Rules are published as a complete set, individual Parts are, however, available on request. A comprehensive List of Contents is placed at the beginning of each Part.

#### Numbering and Cross-References

A decimal notation system has been adopted throughout. Five sets of digits cover the divisions, i.e. Part, Chapter, Section, sub-Section and paragraph. The textual cross-referencing within the text is as follows, although the right hand digits may be added or omitted depending on the degree of precision required:

- (a) In same Chapter, e.g. see 2.1.3 (i.e. down to paragraph).
- (b) In same Part but different Chapter, e.g. see Ch 3,2.1 (i.e. down to sub-Section).
- (c) In another Part, e.g. see Pt 5, Ch 1,3 (i.e. down to Section).

The cross-referencing for Figures and Tables is as follows:

- (a) In same Chapter, e.g. as shown in Fig. 2.3.5 (i.e. Chapter, Section and Figure Number).
- (b) In same Part but different Chapter, e.g. as shown in Fig. 2.3.5 in Chapter 2.
- (c) In another Part, e.g. see Table 2.7.1 in Pt 3, Ch 2.

#### Rules updating

The Rules are generally published annually and changed through a system of Notices. Subscribers are forwarded copies of such Notices when the Rules change.

Current changes to Rules that appeared in Notices are shown with a black rule alongside the amended paragraph on the left hand side. A solid black rule indicates amendments and a dotted black rule indicates corrigenda.

#### Rules programs

LR has developed a suite of Calculation Software that evaluates Requirements for Ship Rules, Special Service Craft Rules and Naval Ship Rules. For details of this software please contact LR.

#### Direct calculations

The Rules require direct calculations to be submitted for specific parts of the ship structure or arrangements and these will be assessed in relation to LR's own direct calculation procedures. They may also be required for ships of unusual form, proportion or speed, where intended for the carriage of special cargoes or for special restricted service and as supporting documentation for arrangements or scantlings alternative to those required by the Rules.

January 2013

---

Lloyd's Register is a trading name of Lloyd's Register Group Limited and its subsidiaries. For further details please see <http://www.lr.org/entities>

Lloyd's Register Group Limited, its affiliates and subsidiaries and their respective officers, employees or agents are, individually and collectively, referred to in this clause as 'Lloyd's Register'. Lloyd's Register assumes no responsibility and shall not be liable to any person for any loss, damage or expense caused by reliance on the information or advice in this document or howsoever provided, unless that person has signed a contract with the relevant Lloyd's Register entity for the provision of this information or advice and in that case any responsibility or liability is exclusively on the terms and conditions set out in that contract.

---

<b>PART</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>REGULATIONS</b>
		<b>Chapter 1 General Regulations</b>
	<b>2</b>	<b>Classification Regulations</b>
	<b>3</b>	<b>Periodical Survey Regulations</b>
PART	2	RULES FOR THE MANUFACTURE, TESTING AND CERTIFICATION OF MATERIALS
PART	3	DESIGN PRINCIPLES AND CONSTRUCTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS
PART	4	MILITARY DESIGN AND SPECIAL FEATURES
PART	5	ENVIRONMENTAL LOADS
PART	6	HULL CONSTRUCTION IN STEEL
PART	7	ENHANCED STRUCTURAL ASSESSMENT

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.



<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>GENERAL REGULATIONS</b>
<b>Sections</b>		<b>1 to 8</b>
 <b>CHAPTER</b>	 <b>2</b>	 <b>CLASSIFICATION REGULATIONS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>Conditions for Classification</b>
	1.1	Framework of Classification
	1.2	Application
	1.3	Interpretation of the Rules
	1.4	Owner's responsibilities
	1.5	Documentation
	1.6	Pre-Contract and Through-Life advice
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Scope of the Rules</b>
	2.1	Applicable ship types
	2.2	Definitions
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Character of Classification and Class notations</b>
	3.1	General
	3.2	Character symbols
	3.3	Class notations
	3.4	Ship type notations
	3.5	Service area notations
	3.6	Hull strength notations
	3.7	Military Distinction notations
	3.8	Machinery and Engineering Systems notations
	3.9	Other notations
	3.10	Application notes
	3.11	Tailoring – Departures from the Rules and Rule additions
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Surveys – General</b>
	4.1	New construction
	4.2	Survey
	4.3	Existing ships
	4.4	Damages, repairs and alterations
	4.5	Existing ships – Periodical Surveys
	4.6	Certificates
	4.7	Notice of surveys
	4.8	Withdrawal/Suspension of Class
	4.9	Survey of ships out of commission
	4.10	Appeal from Surveyor's recommendation
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Type Approval/Type Testing/Quality Control System</b>
	5.1	LR Type Approval
	5.2	Type testing
	5.3	Quality Control System
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Classification of machinery with [x]LMC or MCH notation</b>
	6.1	General
	6.2	Appraisal and records
	6.3	Survey and inspection
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Classification of ship with *IWS notation</b>
	7.1	General
	7.2	Appraisal and records
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Classification of ship with operational role: Oil Supply Ship</b>
	8.1	General
<b>Section</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>Classification of naval ships using alternative LR's Rules</b>
	9.1	General

---

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>PERIODICAL SURVEY REGULATIONS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General</b>
	1.1	Frequency of surveys
	1.2	Surveys for damage or alterations
	1.3	Unscheduled surveys
	1.4	Documentation
	1.5	Definitions
	1.6	Preparation for survey and means of access
	1.7	Repairs
	1.8	Thickness measurement at surveys
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Annual Surveys – Hull, machinery and optional requirements</b>
	2.1	General
	2.2	Hull
	2.3	Machinery
	2.4	Other notations
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Intermediate Surveys – Hull and machinery requirements</b>
	3.1	General
	3.2	Hull
	3.3	Machinery
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Docking Surveys and In-water Surveys</b>
	4.1	General
	4.2	Docking Surveys
	4.3	In-water Surveys
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Special Survey – Hull requirements</b>
	5.1	General
	5.2	Preparation
	5.3	Examination and testing – General
	5.4	Examination and testing – Additional items for steel ships
	5.5	Examination and testing – Additional items for composite ships
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Special Survey – Thickness measurement requirements for steel ships</b>
	6.1	General
	6.2	Thickness measurement reporting
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Machinery survey – General requirements</b>
	7.1	Annual, Intermediate and Docking Survey
	7.2	Complete Survey
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Turbines – Detailed requirements</b>
	8.1	Complete Survey
	8.2	Turbine condition monitoring (TCM)
<b>Section</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>Oil engines – Detailed requirements</b>
	9.1	Complete Survey
<b>Section</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>Electrical equipment</b>
	10.1	Annual and Intermediate Surveys
	10.2	Complete Surveys
<b>Section</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>Boilers</b>
	11.1	Frequency of survey
	11.2	Scope of surveys
<b>Section</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>Steam pipes</b>
	12.1	Frequency of survey
	12.2	Scope of surveys

---

<b>Section</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers</b>
	13.1	Frequency of surveys
	13.2	Normal surveys
	13.3	Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM)
	13.4	Modified Survey
	13.5	Partial Survey
<b>Section</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>Hull planned maintenance, HPMS</b>
	14.1	Introduction
	14.2	Master list items
	14.3	Scheme Approval
	14.4	Roles and Responsibilities
<b>Section</b>	<b>15</b>	<b>Machinery planned maintenance and condition monitoring, MPMS, MCM and RCM</b>
	15.1	Introduction
	15.2	Master list items
	15.3	The planned maintenance approach
	15.4	Basic requirements for approval of MPMS, MCM and RCM schemes
	15.5	Conditions of operation
	15.6	Breakdown or corrective maintenance
	15.7	Annual audit and survey
<b>Section</b>	<b>16</b>	<b>Classification of ships not built under LR survey</b>
	16.1	General
	16.2	Hull and equipment
	16.3	Machinery
<b>Section</b>	<b>17</b>	<b>Classification of ships built under survey to LR Classification Rules and Regulations other than LR Naval Ship Rules and Regulations</b>
	17.1	General
	17.2	Hull and equipment
	17.3	Machinery



## ■ Section 1

1.1 Lloyd's Register Group Limited (hereinafter referred to as 'LR'), which is recognised under the laws of the United Kingdom as a corporate body, was founded in 1760. It was established for the purpose of producing a faithful and accurate classification of merchant shipping. It now primarily produces classification Rules. Lloyd's Register Group Limited and its subsidiaries are hereinafter referred to as 'LR Group'.

1.2 Classification services are delivered to clients by a number of subsidiaries of Lloyd's Register Group Limited, including: Lloyd's Register EMEA, Lloyd's Register Asia, Lloyd's Register North America, Inc., and Lloyd's Register Central and South America Limited.

## ■ Section 2

2.1 LR remains the sole classification society in the LR Group. LR is managed by a Board of Directors (hereinafter referred to as 'the Board').

The Board has:

appointed a Classification Committee and determined its powers and functions and authorised it to delegate certain of its powers to a Classification Executive and Devolved Classification Executives;

appointed Technical Committees and determined their powers, functions and duties.

2.2 The LR Group has established National and Area Committees in the following:

Countries:

Australia (via Lloyd's Register Asia)  
 Canada (via Lloyd's Register North America, Inc.)  
 China (via Lloyd's Register Asia)  
 Egypt (via Lloyd's Register EMEA)  
 Federal Republic of Germany  
 (via Lloyd's Register EMEA)  
 France (via Lloyd's Register EMEA)  
 Italy (via Lloyd's Register EMEA)  
 Japan (via Lloyd's Register Group Limited)  
 New Zealand (via Lloyd's Register Asia)  
 Poland (via Lloyd's Register (Polska) Sp zoo)  
 Spain (via Lloyd's Register EMEA)  
 United States of America (via Lloyd's Register North America, Inc.)

Areas:

Benelux (via Lloyd's Register EMEA)  
 Central America (via Lloyd's Register Central and  
 South America Ltd)  
 Nordic Countries (via Lloyd's Register EMEA)  
 South Asia (via Lloyd's Register Asia)  
 Asian Shipowners (via Lloyd's Register Asia)  
 Greece (via Lloyd's Register EMEA)

# General Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 1

Section 3

## ■ Section 3

3.1 LR's Technical Committee is at present composed of a maximum of 80 members which includes:

*Ex officio members:*

- Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of Lloyd's Register Group Limited .....
- Chairman of the Classification Committee of Lloyd's Register Group Limited .....

*Members Nominated by:*

- Technical Committee ..... 2
- Royal Institution of Naval Architects ..... 2
- Institution of Engineers and Shipbuilders in Scotland ..... 2
- Institute of Marine, Engineering, Science and Technology ..... 2
- Institute of Materials, Minerals and Mining ..... 1
- Honourable Company of Master Mariners ..... 2
- Institution of Engineering and Technology ..... 1
- Institute of Refrigeration ..... 1
- Welding Institute ..... 1
- Shipbuilders' and Shiprepairers' Association ..... 2
- The Society of Consulting Marine Engineers and Ship Surveyors ..... 1
- Community of European Shipyards Associations ..... 1
- Society of Maritime Industries ..... 2
- European Marine Equipment Council ..... 1
- Chamber of Shipping ..... 1
- Greek Shipping Co-operation Committee ..... 1
- International Association of Oil and Gas Producers ..... 1

3.2 In addition to the foregoing:

- (a) Each National or Area Committee may appoint a representative to attend meetings of the Technical Committee.
- (b) A maximum of five representatives from National Administrations may be co-opted to serve on the Technical Committee. Representatives from National Administrations may also be elected as members of the Technical Committee under one of the categories identified in 3.1.
- (c) Further persons may be co-opted to serve on the Technical Committee by the Technical Committee.

3.3 All elections are subject to confirmation by the Board.

3.4 The function of the Technical Committee is to consider:

- (a) any technical issues connected with LR's marine business;
- (b) any proposed alterations in the existing Rules;
- (c) any new Rules for classification;

Where changes to the Rules are necessitated by mandatory implementation of International Conventions, Codes or Unified Requirements adopted by the International Association of Classification Societies these may be implemented by LR without consideration by the Technical Committee.

3.5 The term of office of the Chairman and of all members of the Technical Committee is five years. Members may be re-elected to serve an additional term of office with the approval of the Board. The term of office of the Chairman may be extended with the approval of the Board.

3.6 In the case of continuous non-attendance of a member, the Technical Committee may withdraw membership.

3.7 Meetings of the Technical Committee are convened as often and at such times and places as is necessary, but there is to be at least one meeting in each year. Urgent matters may be considered by the Technical Committee by correspondence.

3.8 Any proposal involving any alteration in, or addition to, Part 1, Chapter 1 of Rules for Classification is subject to approval of the Board. All other proposals for additions to or alterations to the Rules for Classification other than Part 1, Chapter 1, will following consideration and approval by the Technical Committee either at a meeting of the Technical Committee or by correspondence, be recommended to the Board for adoption.

3.9 The Technical Committee is empowered to:

- (a) appoint sub-Committees or panels; and
- (b) co-opt to the Technical Committee, or to its sub-Committees or panels, representatives of any organisation or industry or private individuals for the purpose of considering any particular problem.

## ■ Section 4

4.1 LR's Naval Ship Technical Committee is at present composed of a maximum of 50 members and includes:

*Ex officio members*

- Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of Lloyd's Register Group Limited

*Member nominated by:*

- Naval Ship Technical Committee;
- The Royal Navy and the UK Ministry of Defence;
- UK Shipbuilders, Ship Repairers and Defence Industry;
- Overseas Navies, Governments and Governmental Agencies;
- Overseas Shipbuilders, Ship Repairers and Defence Industries;

4.2 All elections are subject to confirmation by the Board.

4.3 All members of the Naval Ship Technical Committee are to hold security clearance from their National Authority for the equivalent of NATO CONFIDENTIAL. All material is to be handled in accordance with NATO Regulations or, for non-NATO countries, an approved equivalent. No classified material shall be disclosed to any third party without the consent of the originator.

4.4 The term of office of the Naval Ship Technical Committee Chairman and of all members of the Naval Ship Technical Committee is five years. Members may be re-elected to serve an additional term of office with the approval of the Board. The term of the Chairman may be extended with the approval of the Board.

4.5 In the case of continuous non-attendance of a member, the Naval Ship Technical Committee may withdraw membership.

4.6 The function of the Naval Ship Technical Committee is to consider technical issues connected with Naval Ship matters and to approve proposals for new Naval Ship Rules, or amendments to existing Naval Ship Rules.

4.7 Meetings of the Naval Ship Technical Committee are convened as necessary but there will be at least one meeting per year. Urgent matters may be considered by the Naval Ship Technical Committee by correspondence.

4.8 Any proposal involving any alteration in, or addition to, Part 1, Chapter 1 of Rules for Classification of Naval Ships is subject to approval of the Board. All other proposals for additions to or alterations to the Rules for Classification of Naval Ships, other than Part 1, Chapter 1, will following consideration and approval by the Naval Ship Technical Committee, either at a meeting of the Naval Ship Technical Committee or by correspondence, be recommended to the Board for adoption.

4.9 The Naval Ship Technical Committee is empowered to:

- (a) appoint sub-Committees or panels; and
- (b) co-opt to the Naval Ship Technical Committee, or to its sub-Committees or panels, representatives of any organisation or industry or private individuals for the purpose of considering any particular problem.

## ■ Section 5

5.1 LR has the power to adopt, and publish as deemed necessary, Rules relating to classification and has (in relation thereto) provided the following:

- (a) Except in the case of a special directive by the Board, no new Regulation or alteration to any existing Regulation relating to classification or to class notations is to be applied to existing ships.
- (b) Except in the case of a special directive by the Board, or where changes necessitated by mandatory implementation of International Conventions, Codes or Unified Requirements adopted by the International Association of Classification Societies are concerned, no new Rule or alteration in any existing Rule is to be applied compulsorily after the date on which the contract between the ship builder and shipowner for construction of the ship has been signed, nor within six months of its adoption. The date of 'contract for construction' of a ship is the date on which the contract to build the ship is signed between the prospective shipowner and the ship builder. This date and the construction number (i.e. hull numbers) of all the vessels included in the contract are to be declared by the party applying for the assignment of class to a newbuilding. The date of 'contract for construction' of a series of sister ships, including specified optional ships for which the option is ultimately exercised, is the date on which the contract to build the series is signed between the prospective shipowner and the ship builder. In this section a 'series of sister ships' is a series of ships built to the same approved plans for classification purposes, under a single contract for construction. The optional ships will be considered part of the same series of sister ships if the option is exercised not later than 1 year after the contract to build the series was signed. If a contract for construction is later amended to include additional ships or additional options, the date of 'contract for construction' for such ships is the date

on which the amendment to the contract is signed between the prospective shipowner and the ship builder. The amendment to the contract is to be considered as a 'new contract'. If a contract for construction is amended to change the ship type, the date of 'contract for construction' of this modified vessel, or vessels, is the date on which the revised contract or new contract is signed between the Owner, or Owners, and the shipbuilder. Where it is desired to use existing approved ship or machinery plans for a new contract, written application is to be made to LR. Sister ships may have minor design alterations provided that such alterations do not affect matters related to classification, or if the alterations are subject to classification requirements, these alterations are to comply with the classification requirements in effect on the date on which the alterations are contracted between the prospective owner and the ship builder or, in the absence of the alteration contract, comply with the classification requirements in effect on the date on which the alterations are submitted to LR for approval.

- (c) All reports of survey are to be made by surveyors authorised by members of the LR Group to survey and report (hereinafter referred to as 'the Surveyors') according to the form prescribed, and submitted for the consideration of the Classification Committee.
- (d) Information contained in the reports of classification and statutory surveys will be made available to the relevant owner, National Administration, Port State Administration, P&I Club, hull underwriter and, if authorised in writing by that owner, to any other person or organisation.
- (e) Notwithstanding the general duty of confidentiality owed by LR to its client in accordance with the LR Rules, LR clients hereby accept that, LR will participate in the IACS Early Warning System which requires each IACS member to provide its fellow IACS members and Associates with relevant technical information on serious hull structural and engineering systems failures, as defined in the IACS Early Warning System (but not including any drawings relating to the ship which may be the specific property of another party), to enable such useful information to be shared and utilised to facilitate the proper working of the IACS Early Warning System LR will provide its client with written details of such information upon sending the same to IACS Members and Associates.
- (f) Information relating to the status of classification and statutory surveys and suspensions/withdrawals of class together with any associated conditions of class will be made available as required by applicable legislation or court order.
- (g) A Classification Executive consisting of senior members of LR's Classification Department staff shall carry out whatever duties that may be within the function of the Classification Committee that the Classification Committee assigns to it.

## ■ Section 6

6.1 No LR Group employee is permitted under any circumstances, to accept, directly or indirectly, from any person, firm or company, with whom the work of the employee brings the employee into contact, any present, bonus, entertainment or honorarium of any sort whatsoever which is of more than nominal value or which might be construed to exceed customary courtesy extended in accordance with accepted ethical business standards.

## ■ Section 7

7.1 LR has the power to withhold or, if already granted, to suspend or withdraw any ship from class (or to withhold any certificate or report in any other case), in the event of non-payment of any fee to any member of the LR Group.

## ■ Section 8

8.1 When providing services LR does not assess compliance with any standard other than the applicable LR Rules, international conventions and other standards agreed in writing.

8.2 In providing services, information or advice, the LR Group does not warrant the accuracy of any information or advice supplied. Except as set out herein, LR will not be liable for any loss, damage or expense sustained by any person and caused by any act, omission, error, negligence or strict liability of any of the LR Group or caused by any inaccuracy in any information or advice given in any way by or on behalf of the LR Group even if held to amount to a breach of warranty. Nevertheless, if the Client uses LR's services or relies on any information or advice given by or on behalf of the LR Group and as a result suffers loss, damage or expense that is proved to have been caused by any negligent act, omission or error of the LR Group or any negligent inaccuracy in information or advice given by or on behalf of the LR Group, then a member of the LR Group will pay compensation to the client for its proved loss up to but not exceeding the amount of the fee (if any) charged for that particular service, information or advice.



---

8.3 Lloyd's Register Group Limited, its affiliates and subsidiaries and their respective officers, employees or agents are, individually and collectively, referred to in this clause as 'Lloyd's Register'. Lloyd's Register assumes no responsibility and shall not be liable to any person for any loss, damage or expense caused by reliance on the information or advice in this document or howsoever provided, unless that person has signed a contract with the relevant Lloyd's Register entity for the provision of this information or advice and in that case any responsibility or liability is exclusively on the terms and conditions set out in that contract.

8.4 Notwithstanding the previous clause, the LR Group will not be liable for any loss of profit, loss of contract, loss of use or any indirect or consequential loss, damage or expense sustained by any person caused by any act, omission or error or caused by any inaccuracy in any information or advice given in any way by or on behalf of the LR Group even if held to amount to a breach of warranty.

8.5 Any dispute about LR's services is subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the English courts and will be governed by English law.

---



# Classification Regulations

## Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Introduction & Section 1

### Section

	<b>Introduction</b>
1	<b>Conditions for Classification</b>
2	<b>Scope of the Rules</b>
3	<b>Character of Classification and Class notations</b>
4	<b>Surveys – General</b>
5	<b>Type Approval/Type Testing/Quality Control System</b>
6	<b>Classification of machinery with [X]LMC or MCH notation</b>
7	<b>Classification of ship with *IWS notation</b>
8	<b>Classification of ship with operational role: Oil Supply Ship</b>
9	<b>Classification of naval ships using alternative LR's Rules</b>

### ■ Introduction

#### Definition of Hull Naval Class

Naval Ship Classification may be regarded as the development and worldwide implementation of published Rules and Regulations, which, in conjunction with proper care and conduct on the part of the Owner, will provide for:

1. the structural strength and the watertight integrity of all essential parts of the hull and its appendages; this includes compliance with a suitable damage stability standard accepted by LR;
2. the safety and reliability of propulsion, steering and other essential auxiliary engineering systems;
3. the operation and functioning of associated systems installed for operational requirements relating to the ship type; and
4. the effectiveness of other defined features and systems which have been built into the ship in order to establish and maintain basic conditions on board whereby appropriate stores, fuels, equipment and personnel can be safely carried whilst the ship is at sea, at anchor, or moored in harbour.

A naval ship is said to be in Class when the Rules and Regulations which pertain to it have been complied with, or compliance, equivalent to the Rules, has been ascertained.

LR maintains these provisions by way of periodical visits by its Surveyors to the ship as defined in the Regulations in order to ascertain that the vessel currently complies with those Rules and Regulations. Records of any defects found, or modifications carried out, between visits by LR surveyors, which may affect Classification, are to be maintained. Any defects found are to be reported to LR with the minimum of delay. The records will form the basis of remedial action, where necessary, for maintenance of Class.

#### Military Distinctions

Military Distinction notations are awarded by LR as shown in Part 4 of these Rules. LR requires demonstration of the capability of the ship to withstand specified hostile military action without loss of capability. It is the responsibility of the navy or designer to specify and quantify the weapon performance and scenarios to be studied. A Military Distinction notation is awarded by LR on the basis that the assessment presented has been conducted in accordance with agreed procedures and the ship constructed in a manner that reflects the design requirements.

LR is to be informed of any incident of the ship sustaining damage. Such ships are to be made available for survey thereafter at the earliest possible opportunity.

#### Options

The handling of safety matters such as ship's stability, life saving appliances, pollution prevention arrangements and structural fire protection, fire detection and extinction arrangements is the prerogative of the Owner and his delegated Naval Authority. However, where these matters are delegated to LR they will be undertaken in accordance with agreed procedures and appropriate class notations will be assigned and entered into the vessel's Classification record.

#### Transfer of Information

To achieve naval class it is imperative to ensure that communication between LR, the Owner, Navy, Prime Contractor, Designer and Builder is effective. In designing, building and maintaining a ship to class it is essential that liaison between the various parties involved is assured. In particular, formal written contracts are essential for commercial reasons between the contractors, but an additional responsibility rests with all participants to ensure that naval class leads to a transparency of information during construction and thereafter.

### ■ Section 1

#### Conditions for Classification

##### 1.1 Framework of Classification

1.1.1 The Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Naval Ships), are applicable to those types of ship which are defined in 2.1.

**1.1.2** The Rules do not, unless stated or implied in the Class notation, provide for special distributions or concentrations of loading associated with the operation of the ship. LR may require additional strengthening to be fitted in any ship which may be subjected to severe stresses due to particular features in the design or operation, or where it is desired to make provision for exceptional loading conditions. In such cases particulars and details of the required loadings are to be submitted for consideration.

**1.1.3** Compliance with the Rules does not relieve the designer of his responsibilities for compliance with the specification and the requirements for the overall design and in-service performance of the ship.

**1.1.4** New ships built in accordance with the Rules, or in accordance with requirements equivalent thereto, will be assigned a Class and will continue to be classed so long as they are found, upon examination at the prescribed surveys, to be maintained in accordance with the requirements of the Rules.

**1.1.5** In addition to confirming compliance with the Rules, LR will, in conjunction with the Naval Authority, require to be satisfied that the ship is suitable for the geographical or other limits or conditions of the service requested.

**1.1.6** Preparations required to permit a ship with a service area restriction specifying some service limitation to undertake duties that take the ship beyond the specified service restriction, either from port of building to its service area or from one service area to another, are to be in accordance with arrangements agreed by LR prior to the voyage.

**1.1.7** Any damage, defect, breakdown or grounding, which affect the conditions for which a Class has been assigned, must be reported to LR. (Note that some ships have a grounding condition included for Class).

**1.1.8** Where LR is acting on behalf of the Naval Authority, any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority are to be identified and advised to LR in writing.

**1.1.9** It is a requirement of classification that a suitable subdivision and stability standard, specified by the Naval Authority, is adopted and complied with. LR will provide advice on this aspect at the request of the Owner/Naval Authority. Where the Naval Authority, or its designated agency, approves the arrangements for compliance with the required stability and subdivision standards a copy of the following documentation is to be submitted:

- approval documentation issued by the Naval Authority stating that arrangements have been examined against the required standard and are acceptable.
- accepted arrangements of openings, closing appliances, vents, etc., such that the limits of the watertight integrity may be defined at the design draught. From these limits the pressure heads for watertight structure and watertight/weathertight closing requirements for openings, etc., can be identified.

Alternatively, Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') will approve the arrangements against the required standards.

**1.1.10** It is a requirement of classification that fire safety arrangements are to comply with and be maintained in compliance with specified standard(s). The specified standard(s) and ongoing certification regime are to be notified to LR by the Naval Authority in writing. LR will provide advice on this aspect at the request of the Owner/Naval Authority, see also 3.9 for the **FIRE** notation.

**1.1.11** It is a requirement that where a vessel operates aircraft, it is Classed in accordance with the requirements of the AIR notation defined in Pt 4, Ch 2,10 for the landing, manoeuvring and parking areas.

**1.1.12** It is a requirement that, where the vessel has fitted on board lifting appliances which are considered by LR to be essential for it to fulfil its primary operational role (e.g., aircraft lifts on aircraft carriers, landing platform dock stern ramp) and that there are no alternative means of operation, that it is Classed in accordance with the requirements of the **LA** notation. The lifting appliance(s) are to be designed, built and surveyed in accordance with LR's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment* (LAME).

**1.1.13** It is a requirement of classification that magazine safety arrangements are to comply with and be maintained in compliance with specified standard(s). The specified standard(s) and ongoing certification regime are to be notified to LR by the Naval Authority in writing. LR will provide advice on this aspect at the request of the Owner/Naval Authority.

**1.1.14** Where an on board computer system having longitudinal strength capability, which is required by the Rules, is provided on a new ship, or newly installed on an existing ship, then the system is to be certified in respect of longitudinal strength in accordance with the document entitled *Approval of Longitudinal Strength and Stability Calculation Programs*, see also Pt 5, Ch 4,6.

## 1.2 Application

**1.2.1** Except in the case of a special directive by LR no new Regulation or alteration to any existing Regulation relating to the character of Classification or to Class notations is to be applied to existing ships.

**1.2.2** At the discretion of LR, ship types which are specifically covered by LR's *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships* or other LR's Rules and Regulations for Classification may be considered for classification in accordance with these Rules and Regulations. See 9.1.1.

## 1.3 Interpretation of the Rules

**1.3.1** The interpretation of the Rules is the sole responsibility, and at the sole discretion, of LR.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 1 &amp; 2

## 1.4 Owner's responsibilities

1.4.1 The Owner is to give LR Surveyors every facility and necessary access to carry out their survey duties. The Owner should familiarise himself with the relevant LR's Rules and, where appropriate, arrange that all sub-contractors, suppliers of components, materials or equipment do the same.

1.4.2 The survey procedures undertaken by LR when providing services are on the basis of periodical visits involving both monitoring and direct survey. LR's Surveyors may not be in continual attendance. As construction, outfitting and refitting are continuous processes, the Builder has the overall responsibility to his client to ensure and document that the requirements of the Rules, approved drawings and any agreed amendments made by the attending LR Surveyors, have been complied with.

1.4.3 Where the Navy/Owner identifies standards, conducts audits or issues certificates, and the responsibility has not been delegated to LR, LR is to be advised of the identity of the Naval Authority and is to be furnished with all appropriate standards and to have full access to the Naval Authority at all times.

## 1.5 Documentation

1.5.1 It is acknowledged that the Owner may wish to retain the originals of Certificates issued by LR, however, naval ships are required to carry the following documentation on board so that the attending Surveyor is able to carry out his duties (certified copies of Certificates are acceptable):

- (a) Endorsable Certificate of Class.
- (b) C11(N) – Record of watertight and weathertight closing arrangements.
- (c) Approved Stability information and damage control plan and the following as applicable.
- (d) Lifting Appliances Certificate.
- (e) Pollution record of equipment.
- (f) Tonnage Certificate.
- (g) Safety Equipment record of equipment.
- (h) Fire control plan.

## 1.6 Pre-Contract and Through-Life advice

1.6.1 LR will provide advice on the potential conditions of Classification for a naval ship, so that the Owner may specify design, construction and operation parameters that satisfy the requirements for Classification whilst being consistent with the intended application. A number of optional matters can be incorporated into the Conditions for Classification of the ship, see 3.9.9 to 3.9.12 and Ch 3,2.4. LR will also advise on Alterations and Additions and other matters which may affect the Conditions for Classification, and to liaise with the Owner on any other matter of concern for the purpose of assisting the Owner in establishing the parameters applicable to the ship's operational needs.

## Section 2

## Scope of the Rules

### 2.1 Applicable ship types

2.1.1 The Rules are applicable to naval ships designed and constructed for the purpose of carrying and operating naval systems. For the purposes of Classification, naval ships can be grouped into four categories as follows:

- (a) **NS1 ships**  
This category covers ships used for the deployment of aircraft or equipment and ships which may be used as centres of command. Designed for world wide operation and usually supported by ships from the NS2 category. Typically it will cover ships above 140 m in length with a deep displacement of 10000 tonnes or more. It will include aircraft carriers, helicopter and amphibious support ships, and assault ships.
- (b) **NS2 ships**  
This category covers ships used to defend NS1 ships as part of a task force or act as independent units. They may have a variety of sole or multiple roles including air defence, anti submarine, sea defence, shore support and will be designed for world wide operation. Typically it will cover ships of length 70 m to 140 m with displacements of 1300 tonnes to 20000 tonnes. NS2 ships may be described as cruisers, frigates, destroyers, corvettes or similar.
- (c) **NS3 ships**  
This category covers ships that have a front line role but are not covered by the above descriptions. This category includes a variety of ships typically below 1500 tonnes displacement. They may operate independently or as part of a task force and are usually designed and constructed for specific roles such as mine sweeping, beach landings, coastal defence or fast patrol duties. A restricted service area may be specified.
- (d) **NSA ships**  
This category covers auxiliary naval ships used for the support of civil and naval operations. They may have a variety of roles including the movement of military and other personnel, ammunition, vehicles, stores and fuels and the transfer of such to other naval ships. They do not have a defined offensive role but may have a limited self-defence capability. In general, the ships will comply with LR's Rules for Ships and any relevant requirements in Ch 3,17 and satisfy as far as practicable the requirements of the International Conventions applicable to the ship type. Any deviation from the applicable International Convention requires agreement with the Navy or Naval Authority and where applicable the National Administration. A Design and Operating Scenario Statement declared by the Navy stating the role of the ship in terms of the carriage of equipment, personnel, stores and fuels is to be acceptable to LR. The assignment of the **NSA** ship type notation is dependent on the ship being in Machinery Naval Class with the **⌘LMC**, **⌘ LMC**, **[⌘]LMC**, **LMC** or **MCH** notations.

There are special requirements for hovercraft, mine-sweepers, landing ships, which are to be designed in accordance with the appropriate sections of relevant LR's Rules and Regulations.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 2 & 3

## 2.2 Definitions

For the purpose of the Rules and Class notations, the definitions given in 2.2.1 to 2.2.13 will apply.

**2.2.1 Clear water.** Water having sufficient depth to permit the normal development of wind generated waves.

**2.2.2 Designer.** The organisation which provides the design and constructional plans.

**2.2.3 Fetch.** The extent of clear water across which a wind has blown before reaching the ship.

**2.2.4 Maximum speed.** Maximum speed is the speed, in knots, achieved at the maximum continuous power for which the ship is certified in smooth water.

**2.2.5 Mono-hull ship.** A mono-hull ship is a ship whose single hull may be of displacement form or of a semi-planing or planing form subject to some support by hydrodynamic lift.

**2.2.6 Naval Authority.** An authority or authorities nominated by the Owner responsible for providing regulation associated with procurement and support of the ship. The Naval Authority may also be responsible for identifying appropriate standards, auditing and certification. The Naval Authority could be a Government department, Statutory Authority, LR or an independent organisation with appropriate standing.

**2.2.7 Navy.** The operator of the ship. The Navy may also be the Owner.

**2.2.8 Owner.** Generally, this will be the government department responsible for naval procurement and support. In certain circumstances, the Navy may operate ships chartered from other Owners, in which case the Owner as defined in these regulations is to be agreed with LR on a case by case basis.

**2.2.9 Client.** LR's point of contact with the organisation contracting it to undertake work.

**2.2.10 Operational envelope.** The operational envelope will be provided by Lloyd's Register as an Annex to the Classification Certificate and defines limits of the vessel's service in terms of operational speeds, wave heights, displacements, service area and time required to seek refuge where this is required.

**2.2.11 Reasonable weather.** Reasonable weather is defined as wind strengths of force six or less on the Beaufort scale, associated with:

- (a) Sea states within the operational envelope which are sufficiently moderate to ensure that green water is taken on board at infrequent intervals only or not at all.
- (b) Motions such as do not impair the efficient operation of the ship.

**2.2.12 Sheltered water.** Water where the fetch is six nautical miles or less.

**2.2.13 Stability information.** Documents required for stability certification. The form of information is to be specified by the Naval Authority.

**2.2.14 Concept of operations.** The concept of operations provides information with regard to the ship's service in terms of purpose and function (including crewing); operational speeds, wave heights, displacements, service area, temperatures, motions, flight deck operations; normal and emergency arrangements; and other information pertinent to the design of the ship and is to be provided by the Owner.

## Section 3 Character of Classification and Class notations

### 3.1 General

**3.1.1** This Section details the character symbols, Class notations which comprise the Class assigned to naval ships.

**3.1.2** The character symbols identify whether the ship is built under LR Class and survey, the suitability for sea-going service, the provision of anchor handling equipment and the rules used for the construction of the ship. The character symbols are described in 3.2.

**3.1.3** The Class notations detail the particular features of the ship which are required to be especially considered in order to verify where additional care has been taken in particular aspects of the design of the ship. These Class notations are subject to an approval process in order to satisfy Classification requirements.

**3.1.4** Optional notations detail particular features of the ship which may not form part of the hull approval process required for Classification. Typically they include details of military design features, machinery and safety/environmental aspects of the vessel.

**3.1.5** The following are examples of character symbols, and Class notations as they would appear in the vessel's Classification record:

- ✱ 100A1 NS2 Frigate, SA1, AIR
- ✱ LMC, SCM, SDA, ESA1, RSA2, Ice Class 1C
- ✱ MD, SEA, EER.

### 3.2 Character symbols

**3.2.1** All ships, when Classed, will be assigned a character of Classification comprising one or more character symbols as applicable, e.g., ✱100A1.

**3.2.2** A full list of character symbols for which a ship may be eligible is as follows:

- ✱ This distinguishing mark will be assigned, at the time of Classing, to new ships constructed under Special Survey, in compliance with the Rules, and to the satisfaction of LR.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 3

**100** This character figure will be assigned to all ships considered suitable for sea-going service.

**A** This character letter will be assigned to all ships which have been built or accepted into Class in accordance with the Rules and Regulations, and which are maintained in good and efficient condition.

**1** This character figure will be assigned to:

(a) Ships having on board, in good and efficient condition, anchoring and/or mooring equipment in accordance with the Rules.

(b) Ships Classed for a specific service, having on board, in good and efficient condition, anchoring and/or mooring equipment approved by the Classification Committee as suitable and sufficient for the particular service.

**E** This character letter will be assigned to ships on which LR has agreed that anchoring and mooring equipment need not be fitted in view of their particular service.

3.2.3 For Classification purposes either the character figure **1** or the character letter **E** is to be assigned.

3.2.4 In cases where the anchoring and/or mooring equipment is found to be seriously deficient in quality or quantity, the Class of the ship will be liable to be withheld.

3.2.5 The Navy or Naval Authority may specify alternative or additional standards relating to the application of a character symbol or Class notation. Where these alternative or additional standards have been agreed by LR and a formal process for approval, construction, testing and verification throughout life has been established, this feature will be recognised by the addition of **(NS)** to a character symbol or Class notation. See also 3.11. The alternative or additional requirements of the Navy or Naval Authority are to be clearly defined and referenced in the Classification Certificates and any required registers such as the register of lifting appliances. The following are examples of character symbols and Class notations that may recognise Navy or Naval Authority requirements as they may appear in the vessel's Classification record:

**A(NS)** Ship built or accepted into Naval Class in accordance with LR's Rules and Regulations for assignment of the **A** character and defined Navy or Naval Authority requirements.

**⌘LMC(NS)** Propelling and essential auxiliary machinery constructed, installed and tested under Special Survey in accordance with LR's Rules and Regulations for assignment of **⌘LMC** Class notation and defined Navy or Naval Authority requirements.

**LA(NS)** Lifting appliances designed and built in accordance with LR's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment* (LAME) or equivalent standard for assignment of **LA** Class notation and additional defined requirements of the Navy or Naval Authority.

**FIRE(NS)** Fire protection functional requirements are in accordance with LR's requirements for assignment of **FIRE** Class notation and additional requirements of the Navy or Naval Authority.

3.2.6 Proposals to apply the additional Navy or Naval Authority recognition symbol **(NS)** to a character symbol or Class notation are to be made to LR with details of the Navy or Naval Authority requirements together with proposed processes for approval, construction, testing and verification throughout life.

## 3.3 Class notations

3.3.1 When considered necessary by LR, or when requested by an Owner and agreed by LR, a Class notation will be appended to the character of Classification assigned to the ship. The Class notation may consist of any of the following:

- (a) a ship type notation, see 3.4;
- (b) a service area notation, see 3.5;
- (c) a hull girder strength notation, see 3.6;
- (d) military distinction notations, see 3.7;
- (e) machinery and engineering systems notations, see 3.8;
- (f) other notations, see 3.9.

## 3.4 Ship type notations

3.4.1 The ship type notation will be recorded in the appropriate Classification record indicating the primary purpose for which the ship has been designed and constructed.

3.4.2 A list of ship type notations for which a ship may be eligible is:

**NS1** This notation will be assigned to NS1 category naval ships, as defined in 2.1.1(a).

**NS2** This notation will be assigned to NS2 category naval ships, as defined in 2.1.1(b).

**NS3** This notation will be assigned to NS3 category naval ships, as defined in 2.1.1(c).

**NSA** This notation will be assigned to NSA category naval ships, as defined in 2.1.1(d).

3.4.3 The ship type notation will be followed by a description which indicates the operational role for which the ship is designed and the hull form type, if of unusual form. The following are examples of the description of the ship's role:

Destroyer  
Cruiser  
Helicopter Carrier  
Aircraft Carrier  
Frigate  
Corvette  
Amphibious Assault Ship  
Amphibious Transport Dock  
Landing Craft  
Landing Ship Dock  
Minehunter  
Minelayer  
Mine-sweeper  
Patrol ship  
Fast Attack Craft  
Fast Strike Craft  
Fast Patrol Craft  
Offshore Patrol Vessel.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 3

3.4.4 The **NSA** ship type notation will be followed by a description which indicates the operational role for which the ship is designed and operated. The following are examples of the description of an **NSA** ship's role:

- Replenishment Ship
- Oil Supply Ship
- Landing Ship Dock
- Survey Ship
- Stores Replenishment Ship
- Transport Dock
- Ro-Ro Ship
- Troop Carrier
- Vehicle Carrier
- Landing Craft
- Air Cushioned Support Vehicle.

3.4.5 **Design and Operating Scenario Statement:** This is required for **NSA** ships and is to detail the civil and naval support functions of the ship. The statement is to include but is not limited to the following:

- (a) Types and volumes of stores, equipment, fuels and ordnance to be carried on board.
- (b) The number of crew and embarked personnel to be carried on board.
- (c) International Conventions that will be applied to the ship; and any National Administration requirements that will be applied together with details of any exemptions that are being considered.
- (d) National Administration and their involvement in approval and operation in service.
- (e) Naval Ship Class notations that will be applied to the ship.
- (f) The Rules used for design and construction of the hull structure and machinery systems.
- (g) Proposed survey periodicity.
- (h) Installed combat systems.
- (j) Installed handling equipment for stores and equipment.
- (k) Design survivability of the ship.
- (l) Operational modes of the ship.

The statement is to be submitted at the time of submitting the Request for LR Services form and LR will advise acceptance of the contents of the statement before proceeding with detailed analysis of other plans and information required for classification purposes.

3.4.6 **NS3** vessels:

- (a) For vessels being built to the **NS3** notation, the following shall apply where the vessel is also being designed and built to comply with appropriate statutory regulations for the intended service of the vessel.
- (b) LR is to be contracted to issue Statements of Compliance with the nominated statutory regulation. Appropriate statutory regulations may include, but are not limited to:
  - (i) International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea.
  - (ii) Code of Safety for Special Purpose Ships (SPS Code).
  - (iii) UK MCA Small Commercial Vessel and Pilot Boat (SCV) Code or similar recognised regulation or National Standard.

- (c) Vessels are to be certified for Intact and Damaged Stability, and Carriage of Munitions by a Recognised Organisation. Other statutory requirements such as compliance with the International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships should also be issued by a recognised Organisation.
- (d) Details of required certification are to be submitted to LR at the time of contracting. Form 2506 is to be used for this information.
- (e) Where a vessel is so contracted, the following aspects of the Rules for Naval Ships will be exempted for the requirements of Classification:
 

All requirements for a Naval Authority to agree the contents of:

  - (i) Concept of Operations Document(s).
  - (ii) Design Statements.
  - (iii) Other aspects as wherever referred to in the Rules are not applicable.
- (f) The requirements of Pt 5, Ch 4, 6.1.4 are to be complied with.
- (g) The limits of the Operating Envelope to which the hull structure has been approved, are to be displayed prominently in the wheelhouse.
- (h) Where a vessel is to be Classed using this approach, any exemptions are to be agreed by the Naval Authority and justified by using the approach set out in Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 5, *Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design*.

## 3.5 Service area notations

3.5.1 All ships classed under the Rules will be assigned a service area notation **SA** followed by a number or letter, e.g., **SA1**.

3.5.2 Service area notations listed below are available. The definitive extents of the service areas are shown in Fig. 2.2.2 in Pt 5, Ch 2 and Table 2.2.3 in Pt 5, Ch 2.

- SA1** **Service Area 1** covers ships having unrestricted world wide operation. **SA1** includes operation in all other service areas.
- SA2** **Service Area 2** is primarily intended to cover ships designed to operate in tropical and temperate regions. This service area excludes operating in sea areas for which a **SA1** notation is required.
- SA3** **Service Area 3** is primarily intended to cover ships designed to operate in tropical regions. This service area excludes operating in sea areas for which a **SA1** or **SA2** notation is required.
- SA4** **Service Area 4** covers ships designed to operate in Sheltered water, as defined in 2.2.12. This service area excludes operating in sea areas for which a **SA1**, **SA2** or **SA3** notation is required.
- SAR** **Service Area Restricted** covers ships that are designed to operate in a predetermined and contiguous area of operation.

3.5.3 More details of the service areas and extents are given in Pt 5, Ch 2.



# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 3

## 3.6 Hull strength notations

3.6.1 The following notations are available for naval ships with regard to global hull girder strength aspects:

- ESA1 Extreme Strength Assessment.** This notation will be assigned if it has been demonstrated that the extreme hull girder strength meets the requirements of a specified performance level with calculations performed using a simple elastic type analysis.
- ESA2 Extreme Strength Assessment.** This notation will be assigned if it has been demonstrated that the extreme hull girder strength meets the requirements of a specified performance level with calculations performed using an elasto-plastic type analysis.
- RSA1 Residual Strength Assessment.** This notation will be assigned if it has been demonstrated that the residual hull girder strength after the ship has sustained structural damage meets the requirements of a specified performance level with calculations performed using a simple elastic type analysis.
- RSA2 Residual Strength Assessment.** This notation will be assigned if it has been demonstrated that the residual hull girder strength after the ship has sustained structural damage meets the requirements of a specified performance level with calculations performed using an elasto-plastic type analysis.
- RSA3 Residual Strength Assessment.** This notation will be assigned if it has been demonstrated that the residual hull girder strength after the ship has sustained structural damage meets the requirements of a specified performance level with calculations performed using a 3D non-linear finite element analysis.
- TLA Total Load Assessment.** This notation will be assigned if the scantlings have been verified using a total load approach.
- SDA Structural Design Assessment.** This notation will be assigned when direct calculations in accordance with agreed procedures have been applied.
- FDA Fatigue Design Assessment.** This notation will be assigned when an appraisal has been made of the fatigue performance of the structure in accordance with agreed procedures.

## 3.7 Military Distinction notations

3.7.1 Military Distinction notations may be assigned if a particular feature relating to military loads has been incorporated in the design. The requirements for all the Military distinction notations are given in Part 4.

- ☒ **MD** This military distinction notation will be assigned when military aspects of the ship have been constructed under LR's Special Survey and in accordance with LR's Rules and Regulations.
- ☒ **MD** This military distinction notation will be assigned when military aspects of the ship have been constructed under LR's Special Survey in accordance with plans approved by the Naval Authority in accordance with Rules and Regulations equivalent to those of LR.

**MD** This military distinction notation will be assigned when military aspects of the ship have been assessed by the Naval Authority in accordance with the Rules and Regulations equivalent to those of LR.

In particular, the following confidential notations are available, and will be known only to the Owner and LR.

- EB1 External air blast notation.** This confidential notation indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the structural requirements to withstand an external blast compatible with a specified performance level using the rule loads and structural design methodology.
- EB2 External air blast notation.** This confidential notation indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the structural requirements to withstand an external blast compatible with a specified performance level using the rule loads and an elasto-plastic structural design methodology.
- EB3 External air blast notation.** This confidential notation indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the structural requirements to withstand an external blast compatible with a specified performance level using the rule loads and an finite element structural design methodology.
- EB4 External air blast notation.** This confidential notation indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the structural requirements to withstand an external blast compatible with a specified performance level using a full 3D non-linear code for the loads and/or structural design.
- IB1 Internal air blast notation.** This confidential notation indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the structural requirements to prevent the spread of an internal blast compatible with a specified performance level in accordance with rules requirements.
- IB2 Internal air blast notation.** This confidential notation indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the structural requirements to prevent the spread of an internal blast compatible with a specified performance level in accordance with rules requirements, supplemented by additional testing or analysis work.
- FP1 Fragmentation protection notation.** This confidential notation indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the local structural requirements to withstand a defined fragmentation threat compatible with a specified performance level using the rule structural requirements.
- FP2 Fragmentation protection notation.** This confidential notation indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the local structural requirements to withstand a defined fragmentation threat compatible with a specified performance level using fragmentation penetration algorithms.
- SP Small arms protection.** This confidential notation indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the local strengthening requirements to withstand an attack from a defined small arms threat compatible with a specified performance level.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 3

**Table 2.3.1** Hull, Military and Other Class Notations (see continuation)

Mandatory Notations		Other Notations		
Ship Type	Service Area	Hull Strength	Military Distinction ✱ MD	Others
<p>See 3.4 (Select one:)</p> <p><b>NS1</b></p> <p><b>NS2</b></p> <p><b>NS3</b></p> <p><b>NSA</b></p> <p>Description of ship's role Examples:</p> <p>Cruiser Helicopter Carrier Aircraft Carrier Destroyer Frigate Corvette</p> <p>Amphibious Assault Ship Amphibious Transport Dock Landing Craft Minehunter Minelayer Mine-sweeper Patrol Ship Survey Ship e.g. NS1 Helicopter Carrier Oil Supply Ship Landing Ship Dock Survey Ship Stores Replenishment Ship Transport Dock Ro-Ro Ship Troop Carrier Vehicle Carrier Air Cushioned Support Vehicle</p> <p>Military Operations <b>AIR</b> Aircraft Operations</p> <p><b>LA</b> Lifting Appliances</p>	<p>See 3.5 (Select one:)</p> <p><b>SA1</b> Service Area 1</p> <p><b>SA2</b> Service Area 2</p> <p><b>SA3</b> Service Area 3</p> <p><b>SA4</b> Service Area 4</p> <p><b>SAR</b> Service Area Restricted</p>	<p>See 3.6</p> <p><b>ESA1 ESA2</b> Extreme Strength Assessment</p> <p><b>RSA1 RSA2 RSA3</b> Residual Strength Assessment</p> <p><b>TLA</b> Total Load Assessment</p> <p><b>SDA</b> Structural Design Assessment</p> <p><b>FDA</b> Fatigue Design Assessment</p>	<p>See 3.7</p> <p><b>IB1 IB2</b> Internal Air Blast</p> <p><b>EB1 EB2 EB3 EB4</b> External Air Blast</p> <p><b>SH</b> Shock Enhancement</p> <p><b>WH1 WH2 WH3</b> Whipping Assessment</p> <p><b>FP1 FP2</b> Fragmentation Protection</p> <p><b>SP</b> Small Arms Protection</p>	<p>See 3.9</p> <p><b>LAP</b> Lifting Appliances</p> <p><b>TA1 TA2 TA3 TA(S)</b> Towing Arrangements</p> <p><b>SD</b> Special Duties</p> <p><b>CM</b> Construction Monitoring</p> <p><b>SEA (HSS-n)</b> Ship Event Analysis Hull Surveillance System</p> <p><b>SEA (VDR)</b> Ship Event Analysis Voyage Data Recorder</p> <p><b>SEA (VDR-n)</b> Sea Event Analysis Voyage Data Recorder (strain gauges)</p> <p><b>ES</b> Enhanced Scantlings</p> <p><b>SERS</b> Ship Emergency Response Service</p> <p><b>EER</b> Escape, Emergency Access, Evacuation and Rescue (see Notes 1 &amp; 2)</p> <p><b>FIRE</b> Fire Protection (see Notes 1 &amp; 2)</p> <p><b>LSAE</b> Life Saving and Evacuation (see Notes 1 &amp; 2)</p> <p><b>ESC</b> Escape and Emergency Access (see Notes 1 &amp; 2)</p> <p><b>SNC</b> Safety of Navigation and Communication (see Note 1)</p> <p><b>POL</b> Pollution Prevention</p> <p><b>Ice Class</b> Navigation in Ice</p> <p><b>LMA</b> Manoeuvring Assessment</p> <p><b>CEPAC</b> Crew and Embarked Personnel Comfort</p> <p><b>EP</b> Environmental Protection</p> <p><b>EP</b> Environmental protection</p> <p><b>LI</b> Approved Loading Instrument</p> <p><b>HPMS</b> Hull Planned Maintenance Scheme</p> <p><b>LE</b> Lifting Eyes</p> <p><b>STAB</b> Buoyancy, Stability and Controllability Assessment</p>

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 3

**Table 2.3.1 Hull, Military and Other Class Notations** (conclusion)

**NOTES**

1. Star Endorsement (★) may be assigned to this notation where the arrangements on board are in accordance with stated National Administration requirements.
2. Double Star Endorsement (★★) may be assigned to this notation where the arrangements on board are in accordance with the requirements of ANEP-77 NATO *Naval Ship Code* (NSC).

**Table 2.3.2 Machinery Class Notations**

Machinery Notations  
See 3.8

**⚙ LMC**  
Propulsion and essential machinery

**⚙ LMC**  
Propulsion and essential machinery

**[⚙] LMC**  
Propulsion and essential machinery

**LMC**  
Propulsion and essential machinery

**MCH**  
Propulsion and essential machinery

**SCM**  
Screwshaft Condition Monitoring

**TCM**  
Turbine Condition Monitoring

**PMR**  
Propulsion System Redundancy

**PMR\***  
Propulsion System Redundancy in Separate Compartments

**SMR**  
Steering System Redundancy

**SMR\***  
Steering System Redundancy in Separate Compartments

**PSMR**  
Propulsion and Steering System Redundancy

**PSMR\***  
Propulsion and Steering System Redundancy in Separate Compartments

**L**  
Additional character to **SMR**, **PMR**, **PSMR** and \* notations for limited capability

**ELS**  
Quality of electrical power supplies

**AG1**  
Enhanced analysis of propulsion and/or auxiliary gear elements

**AG2**  
Enhanced three dimensional finite element analysis of propulsion and/or auxiliary gear elements

**AP1**  
Enhanced assessment of propeller manufacturing tolerances on fast ships and craft

**AP2**  
Enhanced assessment of propeller manufacturing tolerances having reduced noise characteristics

**MPMS**  
Machinery Planned Maintenance Scheme

**MCM**  
Machinery Planned Maintenance Scheme with Condition Monitoring

**RCM**  
Machinery Planned Maintenance Scheme with Reliability Centred Maintenance

**RAS(ABV)**  
Replenishment at Sea, Astern, Abeam and VERTREP

**RAS(AB)**  
Replenishment at Sea, Abeam and Astern

**RAS(AV)**  
Replenishment at Sea, Astern and VERTREP

**RAS(BV)**  
Replenishment at Sea, Abeam and VERTREP

**RAS(A)**  
Replenishment at Sea, Astern

**RAS(B)**  
Replenishment at Sea, Abeam

**RAS(V)**  
Replenishment at Sea, VERTREP

**(NT)**  
Additional to **RAS()**, NATO requirements

**UMS**  
Unattended Machinery Spaces

**CCS**  
Centralised Control Station

**ICC**  
Integrated Computer Control

**IP**  
Integrated Propulsion

**PRM**  
Provision Refrigeration Machinery

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 3

- SH Shock enhancement notation.** This confidential notation indicates that the ship is capable of meeting, as a minimum, the local structural requirements to withstand an underwater shock compatible with a specified performance level. The strength calculations are performed using a simplified approach. The minimum local assessment may be enhanced by undertaking a more complex assessment. The performance level may be enhanced by undertaking assessment of detailed design, seat design/shock mounts, hull valve design/integration and global strength assessment.
- WH1 Whipping assessment notation.** This confidential notation is known only to the Owner and indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the global structural requirements to withstand an underwater shock compatible with a specified performance level using a simple elastic type analysis.
- WH2 Whipping assessment notation.** This confidential notation is known only to the Owner and indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the global structural requirements to withstand an underwater shock compatible with a specified performance level using an elasto-plastic type analysis.
- WH3 Whipping assessment notation.** This confidential notation is known only to the Owner and indicates that the ship is capable of meeting the global structural requirements to withstand an underwater shock compatible with a specified performance level using a 3D non-linear finite element analysis.

## 3.8 Machinery and Engineering Systems notations

3.8.1 The following class notations are associated with the machinery construction and arrangement, and may be assigned:

- ⌘LMC** This notation will be assigned when the propelling and essential auxiliary machinery has been constructed, installed and tested under Special Survey and in accordance with LR's Rules and Regulations.
- ⌘LMC** This notation will be assigned when the propelling and essential auxiliary machinery has been constructed under the survey of a recognised authority in accordance with the Rules and Regulations equivalent to those of LR. In addition the whole of the machinery will be required to have been installed and tested under Special Survey in accordance with LR's Rules and Regulations.
- [⌘]LMC** This notation will be assigned when the propelling arrangements, steering systems, pressure vessels and the electrical equipment for essential systems have been constructed, installed and tested under LR's Special Survey and are in accordance with LR's Rules for Naval Ships. Other items of machinery for propulsion and electrical power generation including propulsion gearing arrangements and other auxiliary machinery for essential services that are in compliance with LR's Rules and supplied with the manufacturer's certificate will be acceptable under this notation.

### LMC

The system arrangements of propelling and essential auxiliary machinery are required to be appraised by LR, and found to be acceptable to LR. See 3.10.2.

### MCH

This notation (without ⌘) will be assigned when the propelling and essential auxiliary machinery has neither been constructed nor installed under Special Survey, but the existing machinery, its installation and arrangement has been tested and found acceptable. This notation is assigned to existing ships in service which are accepted or transferred into LR class.

### SCM

This notation will be assigned when the propelling and essential auxiliary machinery has been installed and tested under LR's survey requirements and found to be acceptable to LR. Items of machinery and equipment for propelling and auxiliary machinery for essential services supplied with the manufacturer's certificate will be acceptable under this class notation. The system arrangements of propelling and essential auxiliary machinery are required to be appraised by LR, and found to be acceptable to LR. See 3.10.3.

### TCM

**Screwshaft Condition Monitoring.** The notation will be assigned where an Owner adopts the requirements for monitoring of the screwshaft. The notation will indicate the physical and operational condition of that equipment. See Ch 3,13.3.

**Turbine Condition Monitoring.** This notation will be assigned when the main propulsion steam turbines are provided with approved vibration monitoring equipment and the requirements of Ch 3,8.2 are complied with.

### PMR

This notation will be assigned where the main propulsion systems are arranged such that, in the event of a single failure in equipment, the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules.

### PMR\*

This notation will be assigned where the main propulsion systems are arranged such that, in the event of a single failure in equipment, the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems and where the machinery is installed in separate compartments such that, in the event of the loss of one compartment, the ship will retain availability of propulsion power. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules.

### SMR

This notation will be assigned where the steering systems for manoeuvring are arranged so that steering capability will continue to be available in the event of a single failure in the steering gear equipment or loss of power supply or control system for any steering system. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 3

<b>SMR*</b>	This notation will be assigned where the steering systems for manoeuvring are arranged so that steering capability will continue to be available in the event of a single failure in the steering gear equipment or loss of power supply or control system for any steering system and where the steering systems are installed in separate compartments such that, in the event of the loss of one compartment, steering capability will continue to be available. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules.	<b>AP2</b>	This notation will be assigned where ships have propellers that are required to have reduced noise characteristics and have had an enhanced assessment of the manufacturing tolerances.
<b>PSMR</b>	This notation will be assigned where the main propulsion and steering systems are configured such that, in the event of a single failure in equipment, the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems and retain steering capability. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules.	<b>MPMS</b>	This notation will be assigned where the machinery installation has an approved planned maintenance scheme that incorporates preventive maintenance procedures and the requirements of Ch 3,15 are complied with.
<b>PSMR*</b>	This notation will be assigned where the main propulsion and steering systems are configured such that, in the event of a single failure in equipment, the ship will retain not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems and retain steering capability. The propulsion and steering arrangements are to be installed in separate compartments such that in the event of the loss of one compartment, the ship will retain availability of propulsion power and manoeuvring capability. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules.	<b>MCM</b>	This notation will be assigned where an approved planned maintenance scheme for machinery incorporates condition monitoring techniques that are acceptable to LR and the requirements of Ch 3,15 are complied with.
<b>L</b>	This character will be added to the <b>PMR</b> , <b>SMR</b> , <b>PSMR</b> and <b>*</b> notations to indicate a limited capability.	<b>RCM</b>	This notation will be assigned where an approved planned maintenance scheme for machinery incorporates a reliability centred maintenance analysis that is acceptable to LR and the requirements of Ch 3,15 are complied with.
<b>ELS</b>	This notation will be assigned where both the quality and integrity of on board electrical power supplies for designated loads meet the requirements of a relevant and acceptable Naval Standard, such as NATO Standardization Agreement (STANAG) 1008. It also denotes that the installation has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR Rules.	<b>RAS(ABV)</b>	This notation will be assigned where a vessel has replenishment at sea systems that enable operations astern, abeam and VERTREP. It also denotes that the installation and arrangements are in accordance with LR's Rules.
<b>AG1</b>	This notation will be assigned where the design of gearing for propulsion and/or auxiliary purposes has used enhanced analysis methods to provide detailed knowledge of the reliability of the gear elements and where noise excitation is required to be minimised for anticipated service conditions.	<b>RAS(AB)</b>	This notation will be assigned where a vessel has replenishment at sea systems that enable operations abeam and astern only. It also denotes that the installation and arrangements are in accordance with LR's Rules.
<b>AG2</b>	This notation will be assigned where the design of gearing for propulsion and/or auxiliary purposes has in addition to the requirements for AG1, used three dimensional finite element analysis for determining the flexibility of the geometry of the mating gears.	<b>RAS(AV)</b>	This notation will be assigned where a vessel has replenishment at sea systems that enable operations astern and VERTREP. It also denotes that the installation and arrangements are in accordance with LR's Rules.
<b>AP1</b>	This notation will be assigned to fast ships and craft where the propellers require an enhanced assessment of the manufacturing tolerances to control cavitation and noise characteristics.	<b>RAS(BV)</b>	This notation will be assigned where a vessel has replenishment at sea systems that enable operations abeam and VERTREP. It also denotes that the installation and arrangements are in accordance with LR's Rules.
		<b>RAS(A)</b>	This notation will be assigned where a vessel has replenishment at sea systems that enable operations astern only. It also denotes that the installation and arrangements are in accordance with LR's Rules.
		<b>RAS(V)</b>	This notation will be assigned where a vessel has replenishment at sea systems that enable operations VERTREP only. It also denotes that the installation and arrangements are in accordance with LR's Rules.
		<b>RAS(B)</b>	This notation will be assigned where a vessel has replenishment at sea systems that enable operations abeam only. It also denotes that the arrangements are in accordance with LR's Rules.
		<b>(NT)</b>	This notation will be assigned in addition to a <b>RAS( )</b> notation where a vessel complies with NATO replenishment at sea requirements.
		<b>PRM</b>	This notation may be assigned when the provision refrigeration machinery and systems have been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 3

3.8.2 The following class notations are associated with the machinery control and automation, and may be assigned:

**UMS** This notation may be assigned when the arrangements are such that the ship can be operated with the Machinery Spaces Unattended. It denotes that the control engineering equipment has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules, or is equivalent thereto.

**CCS** This notation may be assigned when the arrangements are such that the machinery may be operated with continuous supervision from a Centralised Control Station. It denotes that the control engineering equipment has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules, or is equivalent thereto.

**ICC** This notation may be assigned when the arrangements are such that the control and supervision of the ship operational functions are computer based. It denotes that the control engineering equipment has been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules, or is equivalent thereto.

**IP** This notation may be assigned to a ship classed with LR when the arrangements of the machinery are such that the propulsion equipment and all the essential auxiliary machinery is integrated with the power unit for operation under all normal sea-going and manoeuvring conditions. The system is to be bridge controlled and the propulsion equipment is to incorporate an emergency means of propulsion in the event of failure in the prime mover. It also denotes that the machinery and control equipment have been arranged, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules.

3.8.3 Machinery and Engineering Systems class notations will not be assigned to ships where the hulls are not classed or intended to be classed with LR.

3.8.4 Other class notations may be assigned where the machinery and engineering systems are in accordance with the requirements of the additional features included in Volume 3 of the Rules.

## 3.9 Other notations

3.9.1 **LAP.** This optional special feature Class notation will be assigned to the ship in respect of the lifting appliances fitted which are designed and built in accordance with LR's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment* (LAME) or equivalent standard, but where it is not mandated by the LA notation, see 3.9.2. This notation will be assigned in association with a register of lifting appliances listing the appliances covered. The register, which is to be attached to the Classification Certificate, is the responsibility of the designer/Owner and should include the following lifting appliances, where fitted as appropriate:

- (a) Bow, side and stern doors serving as ramps and/or serve to provide watertight integrity of the ship.
- (b) Vehicle ramps.
- (c) Movable decks.
- (d) Stores lifts and munitions lifts.
- (e) Cranes.

- (f) Davits.
- (g) Replenishment at sea positions.
- (h) Engineers lifting positions.
- (j) Eye plates and securing devices.
- (k) Miscellaneous lifting positions.
- (l) Towed body attachments.

The notation will be retained so long as the appliances are found upon examination by LR at the prescribed surveys to be maintained in accordance with the standard.

3.9.2 **LI Loading Instrument.** This notation will be assigned where an approved loading instrument has been installed either as a Class or Owner's requirement.

3.9.3 **CM Construction Monitoring** complements the **SDA** and **FDA** notations and will be assigned when the controls in construction tolerances have been applied and verified.

3.9.4 **SEA(HSS-n), SEA(VDR), SEA(VDR-n) Ship Event Analysis.** At the Owner's request, and in order to enhance safety and awareness on board during ship operation, provisions can be made for a hull surveillance system that monitors the hull girder stresses and motions of the ship and warns the ship's personnel that these levels or the frequency and magnitude of slamming motions are approaching a level where corrective action is advisable. The extension -n signifies the number of fitted strain gauges if connected to the system. The following option extensions will be added to the notation:

- L** The display and recording of the relevant strength information.
- M** The display and recording of the ship's motion.
- N** The facility to display and record navigational information.
- VDR** An interface with the ship's voyage data recorder system to enable the recording of hull stress, ship motion and hull pressure information.

3.9.5 **ES Enhanced Scantlings.** Available where scantlings in excess of the approved Rule minimum requirements are fitted at defined locations. For example, the note **ES+1** will indicate that an extra 1 mm has been fitted to the hull envelope plating (i.e., deck, side and bottom).

3.9.6 **SERS Ship Emergency Response Service.** This service, offered by LR provides a rapid computer assisted analysis of a damaged ship's stability and damaged longitudinal strength in the event of a casualty to the ship. Where an Owner adopts this service, the notation **SERS**, 'Ship is registered with LR's Ship Emergency Response Service' is available.

3.9.7 **EER Escape, Emergency Access, Evacuation and Rescue.** This notation will be assigned to naval ships which demonstrate compliance with all the requirements for **FIRE**, **ESC** and **LSAE** notations. It also denotes that the systems and their arrangements have been integrated in such a manner so as to support safe and effective task performance.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 3

**3.9.8 FIRE Fire Protection.** This notation will be assigned to naval ships which are shown to have levels of fire protection that incorporate the functional requirements and objectives of the applicable IMO International Conventions or *ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code* (NSC) and that have been accepted by LR in accordance with LR's Rules.

**3.9.9 ESC Escape and Emergency Access.** This notation will be assigned to naval ships which demonstrate levels of personnel safety in the event of a 'prepare to evacuate' situation and emergency access arrangements that incorporate the functional requirements and objectives of the applicable IMO International Convention or *ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code* (NSC) and that have been accepted by LR in accordance with LR's Rules. Where the requirements of the NSC are to be applied for an **ESC ★★** notation, the **LSAE★★** notation must also be applied.

**3.9.10 LSAE Life-saving and Evacuation Arrangements.** This notation will be assigned to naval ships which demonstrate the provision of life-saving and rescue equipment on board that incorporates the functional requirements and objectives of the applicable IMO International Conventions or *ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code* (NSC) and that have been accepted by LR in accordance with LR's Rules. Where the requirements of the NSC are to be applied for an **LSAE★★** notation, the **ESC★★** notation must also be applied.

**3.9.11 SNC Safety of Navigation and Communication.** This notation will be assigned to naval ships which demonstrate levels of safety of navigation and communication arrangements on board that incorporate the functional requirements and objective of the applicable IMO International Conventions and that have been accepted by LR in accordance with LR's Rules.

**3.9.12 POL Pollution Prevention.** This notation will be assigned to naval ships which demonstrate that the pollution prevention arrangements on board that incorporate the functional requirements and objectives of the applicable IMO International Conventions and that have been accepted by LR in accordance with LR's Rules.

**3.9.13 Ice Class notation.** An appropriate class notation for navigation in ice may be assigned when the hull structural and machinery installation are such that the ship may be operated in defined ice conditions, see below. The notation denotes that the hull structural arrangements and machinery installation have been designed, constructed, installed and tested in accordance with LR's Rules or its equivalent thereto. The Class notations available are described below:

- (a) **Ice Class 1AS.** This strengthening is for ships intended to navigate in first year ice conditions equivalent to unbroken level ice with a thickness of 1,0 m.
- (b) **Ice Class 1A.** This strengthening is for ships intended to navigate in first year ice conditions equivalent to unbroken level ice with a thickness of 0,8 m.
- (c) **Ice Class 1B.** This strengthening is for ships intended to navigate in first year ice conditions equivalent to unbroken level ice with a thickness of 0,6 m.
- (d) **Ice Class 1C.** This strengthening is for ships intended to navigate in first year ice conditions equivalent to unbroken level ice with a thickness of 0,4 m.

If operation in first year is defined by the operational requirement as an emergency feature then special consideration will be given to the use of fully plastic design criteria for the shell plating. In such cases the ice class notation will be annotated with \*.

**3.9.14 LMA.** This notation will be assigned where the ship's manoeuvring capability has been assessed in conjunction with engine and propulsion performance. It denotes that the manoeuvring performance has been verified through trials in accordance with LR's Rules.

**3.9.15 CEPAC.** This notation will be assigned where the noise and vibration levels in crew and embarked personnel spaces have been assessed and meet acceptance criteria for comfort. It denotes that the noise and vibration levels have been measured and reported in accordance with LR's Rules. Numerals **1** or **2** following the **CEPAC** notation indicate the acceptance criteria to which the noise and vibration levels have been assessed.

**3.9.16 EP.** This notation will be assigned where the environmental protection arrangements for prevention of pollution of the sea and of the air demonstrate compliance with the Rules. Supplementary characters **A** Anti-fouling coatings, **B** Ballast water management, **F** Protected fuel tanks, **G** Grey water, **N** Oxides of nitrogen in exhaust emissions, **R** Refrigeration systems, **S** Oxides of sulphur in exhaust emissions and **O** Oily bilge water reflect compliance with additional requirements.

**3.9.17  $\overline{EP}$ .** This notation will be assigned when the environmental protection arrangements are in accordance with the requirements of another recognised classification society and are broadly equivalent to the LR Environmental Protection Rule requirements. Prior to assignment of the notation, an audit, in accordance with the requirements in Vol 3, Pt 2, Ch 2,4.1.3 and 4.1.4 of the Rules, is to be undertaken by LR to confirm that the necessary Environmental Protection procedures are in place and implemented effectively.

**3.9.18 HPMS.** This notation will be assigned where the hull structure has an approved planned maintenance scheme that incorporates maintenance and inspections by authorised ship's staff and the requirements of Ch 3,14 are complied with.

**3.9.19 SD Special Duties Notation.** A special duties notation will be recorded in the vessel's Classification record indicating that the ship has been designed, modified or arranged for special duties other than those implied by the type notation. Ships with special duties notations are not thereby prevented from performing any other duties for which they may be suitable.

**3.9.20 PCWBT Protective Coating in Water Ballast Tanks.** This notation will be assigned to indicate that the ship's water ballast tanks are coated and that the coating remains efficient and well maintained.

**3.9.21 \*IWS.** This notation (In-water Survey) may be assigned to a ship where the applicable LR requirements are complied with, see Section 7 and Ch 3,4.3.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 3

3.9.22 Where it can be demonstrated that the vessel meets all of the buoyancy, stability and controllability performance requirements of the latest edition of Chapter III of the *ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code (NSC)*, a ship will be eligible to be assigned the **STAB** notation.

3.9.23 **LE**. This notation will be assigned where the lifting eyes, with a permissible loading of 2,5 tonnes or less, installed for the purpose of shipping and unshipping equipment and machinery, and which do not form part of a lifting appliance, are of an approved design, tested during construction and inspected through life in compliance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4,10.

## 3.10 Application notes

3.10.1 **Propelling and essential auxiliary machinery** includes machinery, equipment and systems installed for the ship to be under seagoing conditions and that are necessary for the following:

- Maintaining the watertight and weathertight integrity of the hull and spaces within the hull.
- The safety of the ship, machinery and personnel on board.
- The functioning and dependability of propulsion, steering, electrical, ship type and support systems.
- The operation and functioning of control engineering systems for the monitoring and safety of propulsion, steering, ship type and support systems.
- The operation and functioning of emergency machinery and equipment.
- The operation and functioning of machinery and equipment for harbour use and that can also be used while the vessel is at sea.

3.10.2 **Manufacturer's certificate** for assignment of the **[X]LMC** notation. Acceptance of the manufacturer's certificate for items of machinery for propulsion (including propulsion gearing with single input/output arrangements) and for electrical power generation and for other auxiliary machinery for essential services is subject to the following:

- The vessel is an NS3 ship or an NSA ship of less than 500 gross tonnage or is a ship of 500 gross tonnage or greater and is not required to comply with international conventions applicable to a ship with unrestricted service.
- Propulsion power is provided by oil engines or gas turbines which have been type approved in accordance with LR's requirements for marine application.
- Electrical power is provided by generators driven by oil engines or gas turbines which have been type approved in accordance with LR's requirements for marine application.
- The design and manufacture standards for all machinery and associated systems are the applicable LR's Rules.
- The machinery and equipment is manufactured under a recognised quality control system.
- Propellers, propulsion shafting and multiple input/output gearboxes are not included within the scope of propulsion arrangements for acceptance of a manufacturer's certificate.

See Section 6.

3.10.3 **Manufacturer's certificate** for assignment of the **MCH** notation. Acceptance of the manufacturer's certificate for propelling and essential auxiliary machinery is subject to the following:

- The ship is an NS3 ship or an NSA ship of less than 500 gross tonnage or is a ship of 500 gross tonnage or greater and is not required to comply with international conventions applicable to a ship with unrestricted service.
- Propulsion power is provided by oil engines or gas turbines which have been type approved in accordance with LR's requirements for marine application.
- Electrical power is provided by generators driven by oil engines or gas turbines which have been type approved in accordance with LR's requirements for marine application.
- The power of any engine or gas turbine is less than 2,250 kW and the cylinder bore of any diesel engine is not greater than 300 mm.
- The design standards for machinery and associated systems are the applicable LR's Rules or other marine standards acceptable to LR.
- The machinery and equipment is manufactured under a recognised quality control system.

See Section 6.

3.10.4 **Gross tonnage** of a vessel is to be determined for the purposes of these Rules, by the following formula:

$$GT = K_1 V$$

where:

$V$  = total volume of all enclosed spaces in the vessel in cubic metres and includes gun turrets, radar domes, masts, etc.

$$K_1 = 0,2 + 0,02 \log_{10} V$$

## 3.11 Tailoring – Departures from the Rules and Rule additions

3.11.1 In general, there are different levels of deviation from the Rules:

- Interpretations are applied where strict compliance with a Rule requirement cannot be achieved but where the proposed arrangement clearly satisfies the intent of the Rules. The decision to apply an interpretation is at LR's discretion and will be recorded in design appraisal documentation.
- Exceptions or concessions are non-compliances with Rule requirements where LR is satisfied that the arrangements presented are an acceptable alternative to its Rules on the basis of a technical justification. Exceptions are normally raised by the designer or Builder and are to be agreed with the Owner and Naval Authority.
- Alternatives are deviations which represent a significant change to the Rule requirements. They may involve the use of an alternative standard to replace a Rule Chapter. In such cases, the **(NS)** character is to be appended to the notation, see 3.2.5. LR is to be satisfied that the arrangements are an acceptable technical alternative. Alternatives are normally raised by the designer or Builder and are to be agreed with the Owner and Naval Authority. A tailoring document or design statement is required to define the alternative proposal in advance of design appraisal.



3.11.2 Tailoring is to be agreed between LR and the Naval Authority. Where a departure from the Rules is not agreed by LR, an exemption is required from the Naval Authority at Board level.

3.11.3 Additions may involve the use of a standard in addition to the LR Rule requirements. In such cases, the **(NS)** character is to be appended to the notation, see 3.2.5. Additions are normally raised by the designer or Builder and are to be agreed with the Owner and Naval Authority. A tailoring document or design statement is required to define the addition in advance of design appraisal.

3.11.4 A Technical justification is to be provided for each deviation from the Rule requirements. In some cases a full justification, hazard analysis (HAZID) and risk assessment may be required. See *Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design*, Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 5.

3.11.5 At the design stage, departures from the Rules or additional requirements may be captured in a tailoring document developed by the designer. Tailoring is defined as the process by which specific requirements of a standard, specification or similar document are selected and used to meet the needs of a project. The tailoring document should cover subjects such as:

- (a) Additional standards;
- (b) Additional client requirements;
- (c) Additional designer requirements;
- (d) Interpretations;
- (e) Exceptions/non-compliances against Rules;
- (f) Exceptions/non-compliances against other defined standards or design policies;
- (g) Equipment and component procurement.

The tailoring document should clearly define the paragraphs of the Rules which are modified, what alternative requirements are to be used and reference to the technical justification, where appropriate. The tailoring document is to be submitted with the plans at the time of appraisal and referenced in appraisal documentation.

3.11.6 At the build and through-life stages, significant non-compliances, alternative or additional requirements will be recorded by LR as exceptions, using appropriate documentation. They will be clearly defined and referenced in the Classification Certificates and any associated registers.

## Section 4

### Surveys – General

#### 4.1 New construction

4.1.1 When it is intended to build a ship for Classification with LR, constructional plans and all particulars relevant to the hull, equipment and machinery, as detailed in the Rules, are to be submitted for the approval of LR before the work is commenced. Critical Areas (see Ch 3, 1.5.3) will be identified at this stage. Any additional plans submitted will not be subject to appraisal or approval without separate agreement. Any subsequent modifications or additions to the scantlings, arrangements or equipment shown on the approved plans are also to be submitted for approval, under separate arrangements.

4.1.2 Where the proposed construction of any part of the hull or machinery is of novel design, or involves the use of unusual material, or where experience has not sufficiently justified the principle or mode of application involved, special tests or examinations before and during service may be required. In such cases a suitable notation may be entered in the vessel's Classification record.

4.1.3 The materials used in the construction of hulls and machinery intended for Classification are to be of good quality and free from defects and are to comply with the requirements of the Rules. Material is to be manufactured at a works approved by LR. Alternatively, tests to the satisfaction of LR will be required to demonstrate the suitability of the material.

4.1.4 Copies of the latest approved plans, essential certificates and records, required loading and other instruction manuals are to be readily available for use when required by the attending Surveyors and are thereafter required to be kept on board.

4.1.5 If requested LR will check intact and damage stability calculations and approve the Stability information in accordance with a standard acceptable to the Naval Authority and LR.

4.1.6 **Fire Protection – FIRE.** The arrangements for fire protection, detection and extinction are to be examined to ensure that the following fire protection objectives have been satisfied:

- (a) **Fire Prevention Objective.** The ship is to be designed and equipped so as to reduce the risk of the occurrence of fire or explosion, taking due account of its operational role.
- (b) **Fire Detection Objective.** The ship is to be designed and equipped, as far as is practicable, to detect any potentially hazardous fire or explosion.
- (c) **Fire Extinguishing Objective.** The ship is to be equipped, so far as is practicable, so that all detected fires can be safely and effectively extinguished.
- (d) **Containment Objective.** The ship is to be arranged, so far as is practicable, to limit the spread of fire, smoke and toxic by-products to the space of origin.
- (e) **Personnel Hazard Objective.** All reasonable measures are to be taken to prevent hazards to personnel as a result of fire.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 4

- (f) **System Interaction Objective.** The possibility of fire protection measures or systems causing fire related, or non-fire related hazards is to be kept to a level that is as low as is reasonably practicable.
- (g) **Command and Control Objective.** Suitable means are to be provided to ensure any active fire control measures can be safely and effectively orchestrated.
- (h) **Structural Integrity Objective.** Sufficient structural integrity is to be maintained following a fire so as to prevent the whole or partial collapse of the ship's structures due to strength deterioration by heat.

## 4.1.7 Pollution Prevention – POL (Optional)

The arrangements for prevention of pollution of the sea and air from the ship are to be examined to ensure that the following MARPOL Regulations have been complied with:

- (a) MARPOL Annex I (Prevention of Pollution by Oil).
- (b) MARPOL Annex V (Prevention of Pollution by Garbage).
- (c) MARPOL Annex IV (Prevention of Pollution by Sewage).
- (d) MARPOL Annex VI (Prevention of Air Pollution).

## 4.1.8 Life-Saving and Evacuation – LSAE

The arrangements for life-saving and evacuation are to be examined to ensure that the following life-saving and evacuation objectives have been satisfied:

- (a) **Evacuation Objective.** Arrangements are to be provided to enable personnel to evacuate the ship safely and in a time acceptable to the Naval Authority.
- (b) **Personnel Protection Objective.** Evacuated personnel are to be kept protected until such time as they can be rescued from the survival craft.
- (c) **Rescue Objective.** The ship is to be suitably equipped to rescue personnel from the water.
- (d) **Command and Control Objective.** The ship is to be equipped and manned so that command of all evacuation and life-saving situations can be maintained.

## 4.1.9 Escape and Emergency Access – ESC

The arrangements for escape and emergency access are to be examined to ensure the following escape of personnel and emergency access objectives have been satisfied:

- (a) **Escape of Personnel Objective.** The ship is to be arranged so that all spaces have means of safe and effective escape for personnel to a designated place of safety, during reasonably foreseeable emergency situations.
- (b) **Emergency Access Objective.** The ship is to be arranged so that personnel can access all areas with necessary equipment, for damage control and fire-fighting purposes and exercises.

## 4.1.10 Safety of Navigation and Communications – SNC.

The arrangements for the safety of navigation and communications are to be examined to ensure the following safety of navigation and communication objectives have been satisfied:

- (a) **Communication Objective.** The ship is to be capable of communication to avert unnecessary danger to itself and other ships in the vicinity during normal and emergency conditions.
- (b) **Safety of Navigation Objective.** The ship is to be arranged with the necessary equipment to facilitate safe and effective navigation.

- (c) **Equipment Arrangements Objective.** All navigation and communications equipment is to be arranged to allow safe and effective task performance.

**4.1.11 Escape, Emergency Access, Evacuation and Rescue – ERR.** The arrangements for the integration of the requirements for compliance with the **FIRE, ESC** and **LSAE** notations are to be examined to ensure that the arrangements support safe and effective task performance.

## 4.2 Survey

**4.2.1** The Surveyor is to be satisfied that the capability, organisation and facilities of the Builder are such that acceptable standards can be obtained for the construction of the ship and machinery.

**4.2.2** In addition to 4.1.3, the hull construction of ships is to be controlled by a documented quality control system covering the Builder's management, organisation and relevant construction processes and inspection procedures.

**4.2.3** New ships intended for Classification are to be built under Naval Class Special Survey. The Surveyors are to be satisfied that the materials, workmanship and arrangements are in accordance with the Rules. Any items found not to be in accordance with the Rules or the approved plans, or any material, workmanship or arrangements found so to be, are to be rectified or concession sought from LR.

**4.2.4** For compliance with 4.2.3, LR will consider methods of survey and inspection for hull construction which formally include procedures involving the shipyard management, organisation and quality systems.

**4.2.5** The Surveyor will prepare a report C11(N) record of hull and superstructure watertight, weathertight arrangements and closing appliances.

**4.2.6** The date of completion of the Special Survey during construction of ships built under LR's supervision will normally be taken as the date of build to be entered in the *Register Book*. If the period between launching and commissioning is, for any reason, unduly prolonged, the dates of launching and completion or commissioning may be separately indicated in the *Register Book*.

**4.2.7** When a ship, upon completion, is not immediately commissioned but is laid-up for a period, LR, upon application by the Owner, prior to the ship proceeding to sea, will direct an examination to be made by the Surveyors which may include a survey in dry dock. If, as the result of such survey, the hull and machinery are reported in all respects in accordance with applicable Rule requirements, the subsequent Special Survey will date from the time of such examination.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 4

## 4.3 Existing ships

### 4.3.1 Classification of ships not built under LR survey.

The requirements of LR for the Classification of ships which have not been built under LR's Survey are indicated in Ch 3,16. Special consideration will be given to ships that have been designed, constructed and maintained to appropriate standards recognised by the Naval Authority, and to ships transferring Class to LR from another recognised Classification Society who have appropriate Naval Ship Rules.

**4.3.2 Classification of ships built under survey to Classification Rules and Regulations other than LR Naval Ship Rules and Regulations.** The requirements of LR for the Classification of ships and craft which have not been built under LR's Survey to LR's Rules are indicated in Ch 3,17.

**4.3.3 Reclassification.** When reclassification or Class reinstatement is requested for a ship for which the Class previously assigned by LR has been withdrawn or suspended, LR will direct that a survey, appropriate to the age of the ship and the circumstances of the case, be carried out by Surveyors. If, at such survey, the ship is found or placed in a good and efficient condition in accordance with the Rules and Regulations, LR will be prepared to consider reinstatement of the original Class or the assignment of such other Class as may be deemed appropriate. The date of any reclassification will be recorded in the vessel's Classification record. When the original classification was not to the Rules for Naval Ships, then it will be necessary to demonstrate compliance with the additional requirements of these Rules.

**4.3.4** LR reserves the right to decline an application for Classification or reclassification where the prior history or condition of the ship indicates this to be appropriate.

## 4.4 Damages, repairs and alterations

**4.4.1** All repairs to hull, equipment and machinery which may be required in order that a ship may retain Class, see 1.1.7, are to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyors. When repairs are effected at a port, terminal or location where the services of a Surveyor to LR are not available, the repairs are to be surveyed by one of the Surveyors at the earliest opportunity thereafter.

**4.4.2** Any damage in association with wastage over the allowable limit (including buckling, grooving, detachment or fracture), or extensive areas of wastage over the allowable limits, which affects or, in the opinion of the Surveyor, will affect the ship's structural, watertight or weathertight integrity, is to be promptly and thoroughly repaired. Areas to be considered include, (where fitted):

- side shell frames, their end attachments or adjacent shell plating;
- deck structure and deck plating;
- bottom structure and bottom plating;
- side structure and side plating;
- inner bottom structure and inner bottom plating;
- inner side structure and inner side plating;
- watertight or oiltight bulkheads;
- hatch covers or hatch coamings.

For locations where adequate repair facilities are not available, consideration may be given to allow the ship to proceed directly to a repair facility. This may require discharging stores/equipment and/or temporary repairs for the intended voyage.

**4.4.3** Where repairs are to be carried out by a riding crew during a voyage, then these must be planned in advance. A complete repair procedure, including the extent of the proposed repair and the need for a Surveyor's attendance during the voyage, is to be submitted reasonably in advance to the Surveyor for agreement. Failure to notify LR in advance of the repairs may result in the Class of the ship being specially considered by the Classification Committee. Where emergency repairs are effected immediately due to an extreme emergency circumstance, the repairs should be documented in the ship's log and submitted thereafter to LR for use in determining further survey requirements.

**4.4.4** When at any survey the Surveyor considers repairs to be immediately necessary, either as a result of damage, or wear and tear, they are to communicate their recommendations at once to the Owner, or his representative. When such recommendations are not complied with, immediate notification is to be given to the vessel's Naval Classification Liaison Office by the Surveyor.

**4.4.5** When at any survey it is found that any damage, defect, or breakdown (see 1.1.7) is of such a nature that it does not require immediate permanent repair, but is sufficiently serious to require rectification by a prescribed date in order to maintain Class, a suitable Condition of Class is to be imposed by the Surveyors and recommended for consideration. This condition may be designated as an operational defect, under the Owner's control, but LR needs to be kept advised as to proposed actions. The technical impact of any deficiency on the operational needs of the ship must be considered by the surveyor in liaison with the Owner/Naval Authority before a decision is made with regard to corrective action.

**4.4.6** If a ship which is Classed with LR is to leave harbour limits or protected waters under tow, the Owner is to advise LR of the circumstances prior to her departure.

**4.4.7** If a ship which is Classed with LR is taken in tow whilst at sea, the Owner is to advise LR of the circumstances at the first practicable opportunity.

**4.4.8** Plans and particulars of any proposed alterations (Mods. or A's and A's) to the approved scantlings and arrangements of the hull, machinery and engineering systems are to be submitted by the Owners or Builders or their representatives for approval by LR and such alterations are to be carried out to the satisfaction of LR's Surveyors.

## 4.5 Existing ships – Periodical Surveys

**4.5.1 Annual Surveys** are to be held on all ships within three months, before or after each anniversary of the completion, commissioning or Special Survey. The date of the last Annual Survey will be recorded in the vessel's Classification record. This survey may include optional requirements.

# Classification Regulations

## Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 4

4.5.2 **Intermediate Surveys** are to be held on all ships instead of the third or fourth Annual Survey after completion, commissioning or Special Survey. The date of the last Intermediate Survey will be recorded in the vessel's Classification record.

4.5.3 The Owner should notify LR whenever a ship can be examined in dry dock or on a slipway. An inspection of the underwater hull and its appendages is to be carried out not less than twice every six years. The maximum period between inspections of the hull and its appendages in dock or in-water is not to exceed three and a half years. Consideration may be given at the discretion of LR to any special circumstances justifying an extension of the maximum periods between inspections. A **Docking Survey** is to be carried out concurrently with the Special Survey. The required Docking Survey is considered to coincide with the Special Survey when held within the six months prior to the due date of the Special Survey. See 4.5.5. Where the Special Survey of the hull is carried out on a Continuous Survey basis, as given in 4.5.10, the survey in dry-dock may be held at any time within the six-year cycle.

4.5.4 The date of the last Docking Survey will be recorded in the vessel's Classification record.

4.5.5 Classification details and Survey requirements for **In-water Surveys** are given in Section 7 and Ch 3,4.3 respectively. An In-water Survey can be carried out in lieu of a Docking Survey for inspection of the underwater hull and appendages between the Docking Surveys that are to be carried out concurrently with the Special Survey. The date of the last In-water Survey will be recorded in the vessel's Classification record, preceded with the notation **\*IWS**.

4.5.6 All ships classed with LR are also to be subjected to **Special Surveys**. These Surveys become due at six-yearly intervals, the first one six years from the date of build or date of Special Survey for Classification as recorded in the vessel's Classification record, and thereafter six years from the date recorded in the vessel's Classification record for the previous Special Survey. Consideration can be given, at the discretion of LR, to any exceptional circumstances justifying an extension of hull Classification beyond the sixth year. If an extension is agreed the next period of hull Classification will start from the due date of the Special Survey before the extension was granted. In this context, 'exceptional circumstances' means unavailability of dry-docking facilities; repair facilities; essential materials; equipment or spare parts; delays incurred by action taken to avoid severe weather conditions; or urgent operational requirements.

4.5.7 Special surveys may be commenced at the fifth Annual Survey or anniversary, as appropriate, after completion, commissioning, or previous Special Survey, and be progressed during the succeeding year with a view to completion by the due date of the Special Survey.

4.5.8 Special Surveys which are commenced prior to their due date are not to extend over a period greater than twelve months, except with the prior approval of LR.

4.5.9 Ships which have satisfactorily passed a Special Survey will have a record entered in the vessel's Classification record indicating the date. Where the Special Survey is completed more than three months before the due date, the new record of Special Survey will be the final date of survey. In all other cases the date recorded will be the sixth anniversary.

4.5.10 At the request of an Owner, it may be agreed that the Special Survey of the hull can be carried out on a Continuous Survey basis, all compartments of the hull being opened for survey and testing, in rotation, with an interval of six years between consecutive examinations of each part. In general, approximately one sixth of the Special Survey is to be completed each year and all the requirements of the particular hull Special Survey must be completed at the end of the six-year cycle. Ships which have satisfactorily completed the cycle will have a record entered in the vessel's Classification record indicating the date of completion which will not be later than six years from the last assigned date of Complete Survey of the hull.

4.5.11 If any examination during Continuous Survey reveals defects, further parts are to be opened up and examined as considered necessary by the Surveyor, and the defects are to be made good to his satisfaction.

4.5.12 Alternative arrangements for survey periodicity will be considered by LR upon request. Requests from the Owner, at build or during service, need to be supported by adequate evidence of satisfactory performance before survey periodicity can be changed. These requests could be based upon Reliability Centred Maintenance or other forms of condition monitoring.

4.5.13 Machinery is to be submitted to the surveys detailed in Ch 3,7 to 13.

4.5.14 Complete Surveys of machinery become due at six-yearly intervals, the first one six years from the date of build or date of first classification as recorded in the vessel's Classification record, and thereafter six years from the date recorded in the vessel's Classification record for the previous Complete Survey. Consideration can be given at the discretion of LR to any exceptional circumstances justifying an extension of machinery class to a maximum of three months beyond the sixth year. If an extension is agreed to, the next period of machinery class will start from the due date of Complete Survey of machinery before extension was granted. Surveys which are commenced prior to their due date are not to extend over a period greater than 12 months, except with the prior approval of LR. On satisfactory completion of a survey, an appropriate record will be made in the vessel's Classification record. Where the complete survey is completed more than three months before the due date, the new date recorded will be the final date of survey. In all other cases the date recorded will be the sixth anniversary. See also 4.5.20.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 4

4.5.15 Upon application by an Owner, LR may agree to the extension of the survey requirements for main propulsion machinery, which, by the nature of the ship's normal service, do not attain the number of running hours recommended by the machinery manufacturer for major overhauls within the survey periods given in 4.5.14.

4.5.16 When, at the request of an Owner, it has been agreed by LR that the Complete Survey of the machinery may be carried out on a Continuous Survey basis, the various items of machinery are to be opened for survey in rotation, so far as is practicable, to ensure that the interval between consecutive examinations of each item will not exceed six years. In general, approximately one-sixth of the machinery is to be examined each year. A record indicating the date of satisfactory completion of the Continuous Survey cycle will be made in the vessel's Classification record. *See also* 4.5.20.

4.5.17 Upon application by an Owner, LR may agree to an arrangement whereby, subject to certain conditions, some items of machinery may be examined by the qualified naval engineering personnel responsible to the Marine Engineer Officer of the ship, followed by a limited confirmatory survey and annual audit of maintenance and repairs records. Particulars of this arrangement may be obtained from the vessel's Naval Classification Liaison Office. Where an approved planned maintenance scheme is in operation the confirmatory surveys of machinery may be held at annual intervals, at which time the records will be checked and the operation of the scheme verified. Particulars of this arrangement may also be obtained from the vessel's Naval Classification Liaison Office.

4.5.18 Where condition monitoring techniques are applied, LR, upon application by the Owner, will be prepared to amend applicable Periodical Survey requirements where details of the equipment are submitted and found satisfactory. Where machinery installations are accepted for this method of survey, it will be a requirement that an Annual Survey be held, at which time monitored records will be analysed and the machinery examined under working conditions. An acceptable lubricating oil trend analysis programme may be required as part of the condition monitoring procedures.

4.5.19 Where machinery installations include a 'lifed item' (an item of machinery, component or equipment necessary for the safety and reliability of propulsion, steering or other essential auxiliary engineering system) which is subject to an overhaul and/or ultimate life limitation, i.e., a period (expressed in operating hours or cycles and/or calendar time) at which the item is to be overhauled or scrapped, the life limitations are to be observed and take precedence over the periodicity of 4.5.14 and 4.5.16 where the life limitation is less than the survey periodicity. Examples may include rolling bearing elements, gas turbines, turbo-chargers, flexible couplings and gear box elements. The manufacturer's maintenance and service instructions are to be strictly observed. Where machinery installations include a 'lifed item' details will be noted in the classification records as a Memorandum (Machinery) record.

4.5.20 Where propulsion and auxiliary machinery is maintained using an approved 'upkeep by exchange' system, the Marine Engineer Officer is to maintain records of all exchanges carried out. At the first convenient opportunity after exchange, a running test on load is to be witnessed by a LR Surveyor (this may typically be the time of Annual Survey). Where prime movers are maintained by an 'upkeep of exchange' system, details will be noted in the classification records as a Memorandum (Machinery) record.

4.5.21 Boiler surveys, examination of steam pipes and Screwshaft Surveys are to be carried out as stated in Pt 1, Ch 3,11 and 12 of these Regulations. On satisfactory completion, appropriate records will be made in the vessel's Classification record.

4.5.22 Where the ship is fitted with a dynamic positioning system, the system is to be examined and tested annually in accordance with the requirements of Ch 3,2.3.15. In addition a Special Survey is to be carried out at intervals not exceeding five years in accordance with Ch 3,7.2.9.

## 4.6 Certificates

4.6.1 When survey reports have been received from the Surveyors and classification has been agreed by the Classification Executive, a Certificate of Classification may be issued by an authorised Surveyor. After approval by the Classification Committee, a Certificate of First Entry of Classification, signed by LR's Chairman, or the Chairman of the Sub-Committee of Naval Classification Committee, may be issued to the Builders or Owners.

4.6.2 A Certificate of Class valid indefinitely subject to endorsement for Annual and Intermediate Surveys, as appropriate, will also be issued to the Owners and a certified copy placed on board. A new certificate will be issued when no further endorsement spaces remain.

4.6.3 LR's Surveyors will issue provisional (interim) certificates, after survey, to enable a ship classed with LR to proceed on voyage provided that it is in a satisfactory condition. Such certificates will embody the Surveyors' recommendations for continuance of Class, and are subject to confirmation by LR.

## 4.7 Notice of surveys

4.7.1 It is the responsibility of the Owners to ensure that all surveys necessary for the maintenance of Class are carried out at the proper time.

4.7.2 Timely notice to an Owner about forthcoming surveys is available by means of access to LR's ClassDirect Live. The omission of such notice, however, does not absolve the Owner from their responsibility to comply with LR's survey requirements.

4.7.3 The Owner will give timely notice of the availability of ships for survey. Should a ship not be available at the due time, the agreement for postponement of the survey should be sought from LR.

## 4.8 Withdrawal/Suspension of Class

4.8.1 When the Class of a ship, for which the Regulations as regards surveys on the hull, equipment and machinery have been complied with, is withdrawn by LR in consequence of a request from the Owner, the notation 'Class withdrawn at Owner's request' (with date) will be assigned.

4.8.2 When the Regulations as regards surveys on the hull equipment and machinery have not been complied with and the ship is thereby not entitled to retain Class, the Class will be suspended or withdrawn after consultation with the Owner and a corresponding notation will be assigned. In order to maintain Class, LR will require documentary evidence regarding the material state of the ship, its systems and equipment in terms of reports, photographs, measures or videos where the operational requirements exceed 12 months.

4.8.3 LR will consider requirements from the Owner to continue Class where operational requirements curtail surveys being held.

4.8.4 When in accordance with 4.4.4 and 4.4.5 a Condition of Class is imposed, this will be assigned a due date for completion and the ship's Class will be subject to a suspension procedure if the condition of Class is not dealt with, or postponed by agreement, by the due date.

4.8.5 When it is found, from the reported condition of the hull or equipment or machinery of a ship, that an Owner has failed to comply with paragraphs 1.1.7, 4.4.1 or 4.4.7, the Class will be liable to be suspended or withdrawn, at the discretion of LR, and a corresponding notation assigned.

4.8.6 When any ship proceeds to sea with a design draught greater than that approved, the Class will be liable to be withdrawn or suspended for the voyage.

4.8.7 In all instances of Class withdrawal or suspension, the assigned notation, with date of application, will appear in the vessel's Classification record. In cases where Class has been suspended by LR and it becomes apparent that the Owners are no longer interested in retaining LR's Class, the notation will be amended to withdrawn status. After Class withdrawn status has been established in the vessel's Classification record for one year, it will be automatically amended to 'Classed LR until' (with date).

4.8.8 For reclassification and reinstatement of Class, see 4.3.2 and 4.3.3.

## 4.9 Survey of ships out of commission

4.9.1 The Classification requirements for laid up vessels will be specially considered. Surveys for continuation of Class may be required at the request of the Owners and the discretion of LR.

## 4.10 Appeal from Surveyor's recommendation

4.10.1 If the recommendations of the Surveyors are considered in any case to be unnecessary or unreasonable, appeal may be made to LR, who may direct a Special Examination to be held.

## Section 5 Type Approval/Type Testing/ Quality Control System

### 5.1 LR Type Approval

5.1.1 LR Type Approval is an impartial certification system that provides independent third-party Type Approval Certificates attesting to a product's conformity with specific standards or specifications. It is based on design review and type testing or where testing is not appropriate, a design analysis.

5.1.2 The LR Type Approval System is a process whereby a product is assessed in accordance with a specification, standard or code to check that it meets the stated requirements and through selective testing demonstrates compliance with specific performance requirements. The testing is carried out on a prototype or randomly selected product(s) which are representative of the manufactured product under approval. Thereafter, the producer is required to use Quality Assurance procedures and processes to ensure that each item delivered is in conformity with that which has been Type Approved.

5.1.3 The selective testing required by 5.1.2 is to include environmental testing applicable to the product's installation on board a ship classed or intended to be classed with LR.

5.1.4 LR Type Approval does not remove the requirements for inspection and survey procedures required by the Rules for equipment to be installed in ships classed or intended to be classed with LR. Also, LR Type Approval does not remove the requirement for plan appraisal of a system that incorporates Type Approved equipment where required by the Rules.

5.1.5 LR Type Approval is subject to the understanding that the producer's recommendations and instructions for the product and any relevant requirements of the Rules for the Classification of Naval Ships are fulfilled.

5.1.6 The producer supplying equipment or components under Quality Control procedures and processes is to have a recognised quality management system certified by an IACS member or a Notified Body. The Quality Control procedures and processes are to address the production of the product consistent with 5.3.

5.1.7 Where equipment or components have been Type Approved in accordance with specifications and procedures other than LR's, details of the product, certification and testing are to be submitted for consideration where appropriate.

## 5.2 Type testing

5.2.1 Type testing is an impartial process that provides independent third-party verification that an item of machinery or equipment has satisfactorily undergone a functional type test.

5.2.2 Type testing is carried out against defined performance and test standards for a defined period of time with test conditions varying between minimum and maximum declared design conditions.

5.2.3 Type testing is carried out on a prototype or randomly selected product(s) which are representative of the manufactured product under assessment.

5.2.4 After type testing, mechanical equipment is to be opened out and inspected for damage or excessive wear.

5.2.5 On application from the manufacturer, type tests may be waived for equipment and machinery that has been proven to be reliable in marine service and where compliance with the current applicable standards can be demonstrated. Equipment and machinery that has been previously type tested with satisfactory testing evidence and certification need not have the type tests repeated where previous testing is in compliance with the current testing standards for the equipment.

5.2.6 The acceptance of type testing certification is subject to the understanding that the manufacturer's recommendations and instructions for the product and any relevant requirements of the applicable Rules are fulfilled.

## 5.3 Quality Control System

5.3.1 A quality control system for the purposes of LR acceptance of materials and machinery refers to a scheme that covers the operational techniques and activities that are used to demonstrate that the quality requirements of a product is in accordance with declared standards.

5.3.2 The quality control system for a particular product extends to all parties involved in the supply chain from manufacture and testing through to delivery of the product.

5.3.3 LR acceptance of machinery and equipment manufactured under a quality control scheme is dependent on the scheme being maintained through a traceable process involving planned audits and spot inspections at the discretion of LR Surveyors. The purpose of the audits and spot inspections is to ensure that the procedures for manufacture and quality control are being maintained in a satisfactory manner.

5.3.4 The use of a quality control system does not remove the requirements for inspection processes that may be required by the Rules applicable to the equipment being supplied with a manufacturer's certificate. Also the use of the quality control system does not remove the requirement for plan appraisal of equipment or systems where required by the Rules.

## Section 6 Classification of machinery with [X]LMC or MCH notation

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 After delivery of machinery and equipment with the manufacturer's certificate to the shipyard, Survey at the Shipyard and Periodical Surveys are to be in accordance with the requirements for ships built or accepted into Class with the [X]LMC notation.

### 6.2 Appraisal and records

6.2.1 To facilitate survey and compilation of classification records, the same plans and information that are required for a ship being accepted into class with the [X]LMC notation, are required to be submitted for the alternative notation [X] LMC or MCH for appraisal and information. Plans are not required where machinery and equipment has previously been type approved, in these cases it is only necessary to submit details of the machinery and equipment together with details of the previous approval.

### 6.3 Survey and inspection

6.3.1 The manufacturer's certificate for acceptance of machinery and equipment for assignment of the [X]LMC or MCH notation is to be in the English language and include the following information:

- Design and manufacturing standard(s) used.
- Materials used for construction of key components and their sources.
- Details of the quality control system applied during design, manufacture and testing and of any software maintenance.
- Details of any type approval or type testing.
- Details of installation and testing recommendations for the machinery or equipment.

The manufacturer is to have a recognised quality management system certified by an IACS member or a Notified Body.

6.3.2 The installation and testing of machinery and equipment at the build or fitting-out yard that has been supplied with a manufacturer's certificate is to be in accordance with the requirements applicable to a ship having the [X]LMC notation.

# Classification Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 7, 8 & 9

## ■ Section 7 Classification of ship with \*IWS notation

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 Where the **\*IWS** class notation for In-water Survey is requested, application should be made to the vessel's Naval Classification Liaison in writing with evidence of the Owner's agreement.

7.1.2 Where the **\*IWS** notation is to be assigned, protection of the underwater portion of the hull is to be provided by means of a suitable high resistant paint applied in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements.

### 7.2 Appraisal and records

7.2.1 To facilitate survey and compilation of classification records, the following plans and particulars are to be submitted to LR for appraisal and information:

- (a) Details of how the rudder pintle and bush clearances are to be measured and how the security of the pintles in their sockets are to be verified with the ship afloat.
- (b) Details showing how stern bush clearances are to be measured with the ship afloat.
- (c) Details of high resistant paint, for information only.

7.2.2 Where the **\*IWS** notation is assigned, approved plans and particulars covering the items detailed in 7.2.1 are to be placed on board.

## ■ Section 8 Classification of ship with operational role: Oil Supply Ship

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 Where the **Oil Supply Ship** description is to be assigned, the requirements in the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships* relating to oil tankers are to be complied with.

## ■ Section 9 Classification of naval ships using alternative LR's Rules

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 Where it is proposed to class a naval ship with materials of construction and operating parameters not addressed within the scope of the Naval Ship Rules then the appropriate elements of other LR Classification Rules may be used where agreed between the Naval Authority, the Navy, Builder and LR.



# Periodical Survey Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 3

## Section 1

### Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Annual Surveys – Hull, machinery and optional requirements**
- 3 **Intermediate Surveys – Hull and machinery requirements**
- 4 **Docking Surveys and In-water Surveys**
- 5 **Special Survey – Hull requirements**
- 6 **Special Survey – Thickness measurement requirements for steel ships**
- 7 **Machinery survey – General requirements**
- 8 **Turbines – Detailed requirements**
- 9 **Oil engines – Detailed requirements**
- 10 **Electrical equipment**
- 11 **Boilers**
- 12 **Steam pipes**
- 13 **Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers**
- 14 **Hull planned maintenance, HPMS**
- 15 **Machinery planned maintenance and condition monitoring, MPMS, MCM and RCM**
- 16 **Classification of ships not built under LR survey**
- 17 **Classification of ships built under survey to LR Classification Rules and Regulations other than LR Naval Ship Rules and Regulations**

## ■ Section 1 General

### 1.1 Frequency of surveys

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to the Periodical Surveys set out in Ch 2,4.5. Except as amended at the discretion of the Committee, the periods between such surveys are as follows:

- (a) Annual Surveys – as required by Ch 2,4.5.1.
- (b) Intermediate Surveys – as required by Ch 2,4.5.2.
- (c) Docking Surveys – as required by Ch 2,4.5.3.
- (d) In-water Surveys, see Ch 2,4.5.5.
- (e) Special Surveys, see Ch 2,4.5.6.  
For alternative arrangements, see also Ch 2,4.5.10, 4.5.11, 4.5.12 and 1.1.2.
- (f) Complete Surveys of machinery of six-yearly intervals, see Ch 2,4.5.14.

1.1.2 When it has been agreed that the complete survey of the hull and machinery may be carried out on the Continuous Survey basis, all compartments of the hull and all items of machinery are to be opened for survey in rotation to ensure that the interval between consecutive examinations of each part will not exceed six years see Ch 2,4.5.10 and 4.5.11.

1.1.3 For the frequency of surveys of machinery, boilers, steam pipes, screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers, see Sections 7 to 13.

### 1.2 Surveys for damage or alterations

1.2.1 At any time when a ship is undergoing alterations or damage repairs, any exposed parts of the structure normally difficult of access are to be specially examined, e.g. if any part of the main or auxiliary machinery, including boilers, or fittings is removed for any reason, the hull structure in way is to be carefully examined, or when cement in the bottom, permanent ballast or sheathing on decks is removed, the structure in way is to be examined before replacement.

1.2.2 This examination should normally be carried out by a Surveyor, and the Owners/Naval Authority should give as much notice as possible to LR so that arrangements can be made for attendance. In the absence of a Surveyor, due to the unforeseen nature of the removal, the Owner is to carry out a suitable examination and report the findings to LR as soon as practicable.

### 1.3 Unscheduled surveys

1.3.1 In the event that LR has cause to believe that its Rules and Regulations are not being complied with, LR reserves the right to perform unscheduled surveys.

1.3.2 In the event of significant damage or defect affecting any ship, LR reserves the right to perform unscheduled surveys of the hull of other similar ships classed by LR and deemed to be vulnerable.

1.3.3 A requirement to perform an unscheduled survey will be subject to the agreement of the Owner and operational needs.

# Periodical Survey Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 3

Section 1

## 1.4 Documentation

1.4.1 The Owner may wish to retain the originals of certificates issued by LR, however, Naval ships are required to carry the following documentation on board so that the attending Surveyor is able to carry out his duties (certified copies of certificates are acceptable):

- (a) Endorsable Certificate of Class.
- (b) C11(N) – Record of watertight and weathertight closing arrangements.
- (c) Approved Stability information and damage control plan, and the following as applicable.
- (d) Lifting Appliances Certificate.
- (e) Pollution record of equipment.
- (f) Tonnage Certificate.
- (g) Safety Equipment Certificate and associated report.
- (h) Fire control plan.

## 1.5 Definitions

1.5.1 **Spaces** are all separate compartments within the hull and superstructure including plated masts. Integral tanks are considered to be separate spaces.

1.5.2 **Representative Spaces** are those which may be expected to reflect the condition of other spaces of similar type and service and with similar corrosion prevention systems. When selecting representative spaces account should be taken of the service and repair history on board and identifiable critical areas.

1.5.3 **Critical Areas** are locations which are known to be vulnerable to corrosion, buckling and/or fatigue cracking. These will be identified at the plan approval stage.

1.5.4 **Suspect Areas** are locations within the hull structure vulnerable to increased likelihood of structural deterioration and may include:

- (a) For steel hulls, areas of corrosion and/or fatigue cracking.
- (b) For aluminium alloy hulls, areas of fatigue cracking and areas in the vicinity of bimetallic connections.
- (c) For composite hulls, areas subject to impact damage.
- (d) For high speed ships, areas of the bottom structure forward prone to slamming damage.

1.5.5 For ships designed to the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships*, **Substantial Corrosion** is defined as wastage of individual plates and stiffeners in excess of 75 per cent of allowable margins, but within acceptable limits.

1.5.6 For ships designed on a net scantling basis (using for example the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Naval Ships)) **Substantial Corrosion** is defined as the wastage of individual plates and stiffeners in excess of the net scantlings, less an allowance for rolling, but within corrosion limits that are applicable for the structure concerned.

1.5.7 **Excessive Corrosion** is wastage in excess of acceptable limits that are applicable for the structure concerned.

1.5.8 **Protective Coatings** for steel ships should usually be hard coatings. Other coating systems (e.g., soft coating) may be considered acceptable as alternatives provided they are applied and properly maintained in compliance with the manufacturer's specification.

1.5.9 Coating conditions for steel ships are defined as follows:

**GOOD** condition with only minor spot rusting affecting not more than 20 per cent of areas under consideration.

**FAIR** condition with local breakdown at edges of stiffeners and weld connections and/or light rusting affecting 20 per cent or more of areas under consideration.

**POOR** condition with general breakdown of coating affecting 20 per cent or more of areas under consideration or hard scale affecting 10 per cent or more of the area under consideration.

1.5.10 A **Deep Tank** is a tank that extends upwards from the ship's bottom or inner bottom to or higher than the lowest deck.

1.5.11 A **Ballast Tank** is a tank which is solely used for salt-water ballast. A space which is used for purposes other than salt-water ballast but may also be used for salt-water ballast will be treated as a salt-water ballast tank when substantial corrosion has been found.

## 1.6 Preparation for survey and means of access

1.6.1 Tanks and spaces are to be safe for access, i.e. gas freed, ventilated and illuminated.

1.6.2 In preparation for survey, thickness measurements and to allow for a thorough examination, all spaces are to be cleaned including removal from surfaces of all loose accumulated corrosion scale. Spaces are to be sufficiently clean and free from water, scale, dirt, oil residues, etc. to reveal corrosion, deformation, fractures, damages or other structural deterioration. However, those areas of structure whose renewal has already been decided by the Owner need only be cleaned and de-scaled to the extent necessary to determine the limits of renewed areas.

1.6.3 Sufficient illumination is to be provided.

1.6.4 Means are to be provided to enable the Surveyor to examine the structure in a safe and practical way.

1.6.5 For surveys, including close-up survey where applicable, in cargo spaces and ballast tanks, one or more of the following means of access, is to be provided:

- (a) Permanent staging and passages through structures.
- (b) Temporary staging and passages through structures.
- (c) Lifts and movable platforms.
- (d) Boats or rafts.
- (e) Other equivalent means.

# Periodical Survey Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 3

Section 1

1.6.6 Survey at sea or anchorage may be undertaken when the Surveyor is fully satisfied with the necessary assistance from the personnel on board and provided the following conditions and limitations are met:

- (a) Surveys of tanks by means of boats or rafts is at the sole discretion of the attending Surveyor, who is to take into account the safety arrangements provided, including weather forecasting and ship response in reasonable sea conditions. Appropriate life jackets are to be available for all participants. The boats or rafts are to have satisfactory residual buoyancy and stability even if one chamber is ruptured. A safety checklist is also to be provided. A multi-gas meter, breathing apparatus, lifeline and whistles are to be at hand during the survey. For oil supply ships an explosimeter is also to be provided.
- (b) A communication system is to be arranged between the survey party in the tank and the responsible officer on deck. This system must include the personnel in charge of ballast pump handling if boats or rafts are to be used.
- (c) Surveys of tanks by means of boats or rafts will only be permitted for the under deck areas of tanks when the coating of the under deck structure is in GOOD condition and there is no evidence of wastage. The only exception to this, at the discretion of the Surveyor, is where the depth of under deck web plating is 1,5 m or less. Alternatively, rafting may be used if a permanent means of access is provided in each bay to allow safe entry and exit. This means of access is to be direct from deck via a vertical ladder and a small platform fitted approximately 2 m below deck. Where these conditions are not met, then the under deck area will require to be staged for survey.

## 1.7 Repairs

1.7.1 Any damage in association with wastage over the allowable limit (including buckling, grooving, detachment or fracture), or extensive areas of wastage over the allowable limits, which affects or, in the opinion of the Surveyor, will affect the ship's structural, watertight or weathertight integrity, is to be promptly and thoroughly repaired. Areas to be considered include, (where fitted):

- (a) Side shell frames, their end attachments or adjacent shell plating;
- (b) deck structure and deck plating;
- (c) bottom structure and bottom plating;
- (d) side structure and side plating;
- (e) inner bottom structure and inner bottom plating;
- (f) inner side structure and inner side plating;
- (g) watertight or oiltight bulkheads;
- (h) hatch covers or hatch coamings.

For locations where adequate repair facilities are not available, consideration may be given to allow the ship to proceed directly to a repair facility. This may require discharging the cargo and/or temporary repairs for the intended voyage.

1.7.2 Additionally, when a survey results in the identification of substantial corrosion or structural defects, either of which, in the opinion of the Surveyor, will impair the ship's fitness for continued service, remedial measures are to be implemented before the ship continues in service.

## 1.8 Thickness measurement at surveys

1.8.1 This Section is applicable to the thickness measurement of the hull structure where required by Sections 2, 3, 5, and 6.

1.8.2 Further to the requirements of 1.6.6 a survey planning meeting is to be held between the attending Surveyor(s), the Owner/Navy's representative and the thickness measurement firm's representative, so as to ensure the safe and efficient execution of the surveys and thickness measurements to be carried out on board.

1.8.3 Thickness measurements are normally to be taken by means of ultrasonic test equipment and are to be carried out by a company approved in accordance with LR's *Approval for Thickness Measurement of Hull Structures*.

1.8.4 The Surveyor may require measuring the thickness of the material in any portion of the structure where signs of wastage are evident or wastage is normally found. Any parts of the structure which are found defective or excessively reduced in scantlings are to be made good by materials of the approved scantlings and quality. Attention is to be given to the structure in way of discontinuities.

1.8.5 Thickness measurements are to be witnessed by the Surveyor. This requires the Surveyor to be on board, while the measurements are carried out, to the extent necessary to control the process. This also applies to thickness measurements carried out while the ship is at sea.

1.8.6 The Surveyor may extend the scope of thickness measurement if deemed necessary.

1.8.7 Where it is required as part of the survey to carry out thickness measurements for the structural areas subject to Close-up Survey, then these measurements are to be carried out simultaneously with the Close-up Survey.

1.8.8 Thickness measurements are to be taken at the forward and aft areas of shell plates. A number of readings should be taken in a local area, and averaged to provide the recorded reading. The extent of local substantial corrosion of plates is to be established by intensive measurement in the affected areas. Where measured plates are to be renewed, the thicknesses of adjacent plates in the same strake are to be reported.

1.8.9 A report is to be prepared by the approved company carrying out the thickness measurements. The report is to give the location of measurement, the thickness measured as well as the corresponding original thickness. The report is to give the date when measurement was carried out, the type of measuring equipment, names of personnel and their qualifications and is to be signed by the operator.

1.8.10 The thickness measurement report is to be verified and signed by the Surveyor and countersigned by an authorising Surveyor.

1.8.11 In all cases the extent of the thickness measurements is to be sufficient to represent the actual average condition.

## ■ Section 2 Annual Surveys – Hull, machinery and optional requirements

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 Annual Surveys are to be held concurrently with any relevant maintenance period and in consultation with the Owner with regard to operational needs.

2.1.2 At Annual Surveys, the Surveyor is to examine the hull, so far as necessary and practicable, in order to be satisfied as to its general condition.

2.1.3 Particular attention is to be paid to critical areas.

### 2.2 Hull

2.2.1 The Surveyor is to be satisfied regarding:

- (a) The efficient condition of doors, hatchways and lifts on upper and superstructure decks, weather deck plating and air pipes, exposed casings, deck-houses, superstructure bulkheads, side, bow and stern doors, windows, side scuttles and deadlights, guard rails, life-lines, ladders, pressure relief plates and other openings, together with all closing appliances and flame screens. In addition, the Surveyor is to externally examine all air pipe heads installed on exposed decks.
- (b) The efficient operating condition of mechanically operated hatch covers including stowage, fit, securing, locking, sealing and operational testing of hydraulic power components.
- (c) The efficient condition of scuppers and sanitary discharges (so far as is practicable); valves on discharge lines (so far as is practicable) and their controls; guard rails and bulwarks.

2.2.2 Any hatch covers and coamings together with any doors, lifts or ramps which form part of the watertight integrity of the hull are to be examined to ensure that no alterations have been made to the approved arrangements.

- (a) Mechanically operated lifts, hatch covers or doors are to be tested for tightness to confirm the satisfactory condition of securing and sealing arrangements; drainage channels; operating mechanisms. Associated drainage channels and operating mechanisms, such as tracks and wheels, are also to be examined to confirm they are in satisfactory condition.
- (b) Hatch covers of the portable type are to be examined to confirm that the covers and closing appliances are in a satisfactory condition.

This examination will include hatches and doors in superstructures.

2.2.3 The anchoring and mooring equipment is to be examined so far as is practicable.

2.2.4 The watertight doors/closures in watertight bulkheads and any indicators or alarms are to be examined and operationally tested locally and, where applicable, remotely. Other watertight bulkhead penetrations are to be examined so far as is practicable.

2.2.5 The Surveyor is to be satisfied regarding the draught marks on the ship's side.

2.2.6 The Surveyor is to be satisfied that no alterations have been made to the ship which affect stability and strength.

2.2.7 The Surveyor is to be satisfied that any alterations to approved scantlings and arrangements to the structure of magazine spaces have been approved by LR, see Ch 2,4.4.8.

2.2.8 The Surveyor is to check the C11(N) on board the vessel and verify with the actual arrangement on board.

2.2.9 For steel ships, the requirements of 3.2.2 and 5.4.2 regarding the survey of water ballast spaces, compensated fuel tanks, integral sanitary tanks and bilges are also to be complied with as applicable.

2.2.10 The Surveyor is to carry out an examination and thickness measurement of structure identified at the previous Special Survey or Intermediate Survey as having substantial corrosion.

2.2.11 The first Annual Survey should include a review of the year's service, taking into account feedback from the Owner. Special attention needs to be given to areas of the structure where defects have become apparent. It is important that this information is fed back to the Design Authority and building yards for follow-on ships.

### 2.3 Machinery

2.3.1 The Surveyor is to generally examine the machinery and boiler spaces with particular attention being given to the propulsion system, auxiliary machinery and to the existence of any fire and explosion hazards. Emergency escape routes are to be checked to ensure that they are adequately identified and free of obstruction.

2.3.2 The means of communication between the navigating bridge and the machinery control positions, as well as the bridge and the alternative steering position, if fitted, are to be tested.

2.3.3 The Surveyor is to examine and test in operation all main and auxiliary steering arrangements including their associated equipment and control systems.

2.3.4 The bilge pumping and dewatering systems and bilge wells, including operation of extended spindles and level alarms, where fitted, are to be examined so far as is practicable. Satisfactory operation of the bilge pumps and dewatering eductors is to be proven, including access to all bilge areas.

# Periodical Survey Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 3

## Section 2

2.3.5 Piping systems containing oil fuel, lubricating oil or other flammable liquids are to be generally examined and operated as far as practicable, with particular attention being paid to tightness, fire precaution arrangements, flexible hoses and sounding devices.

2.3.6 The Surveyor is to be satisfied regarding the condition of non-metallic joints in piping systems which penetrate the hull, where both the penetration and the non-metallic joint are below the deepest waterline.

2.3.7 The Surveyor is to be satisfied regarding the following items associated with machinery installations.

- (a) Locking arrangements for locked valves and inspection covers.
- (b) Integrity of guards for rotating machinery.
- (c) Lighting arrangements, particularly at control and instrumentation panels.
- (d) Operation of automatic start-up of pumps and systems for essential systems where they are required by the Rules.
- (e) Condition of machinery securing and mounting arrangements.
- (f) The condition of bulkhead glands.

2.3.8 The boilers, other pressure vessels and their accessories and associated fittings including safety devices, foundations, controls, relieving gear, high pressure and waste steam piping, insulation and gauges, are to be generally examined. Surveyors should confirm that Periodical Surveys of pressure vessels have been carried out as required by the Rules and that the safety devices have been tested.

2.3.9 Records of boiler treatment and analyses are to be retained on board and audited annually by the LR Surveyor. The water treatment and results of analyses are to be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

2.3.10 The main propulsion, essential auxiliary and emergency generators including safety arrangements, controls and foundations are to be generally examined. Surveyors are to confirm the Periodical Surveys of engines have been carried out as required by the Rules and that safety devices have been tested.

2.3.11 The electrical equipment and cabling forming the main and emergency electrical installations are to be generally examined under operating conditions as far as is practicable. Particular checks are to be made on the integrity of electrical enclosure and cleanliness of switchboards and bus bars. The satisfactory operation of the main and emergency sources of power and electrical services essential for safety in an emergency is to be verified; where the sources of power are automatically controlled they should be tested in the automatic mode. Bonding straps for the control of static electricity and earthing arrangements are to be examined where fitted.

2.3.12 The electrical installation in areas deemed dangerous, such as magazine spaces and spaces where low flash point oils are stored and handled and compartments adjacent to such spaces, is to be examined in order to verify that it is of the correct type, is in good condition and has been properly maintained.

2.3.13 For main propulsion, essential auxiliary and emergency machinery control engineering systems, a general examination of the equipment and arrangements is to be carried out. Records of modifications are to be made available for review by the attending Surveyor. The documentation required by Vol 2, Pt 9, Ch 1, including configuration management, is to be reviewed following system modifications to confirm compliance with applicable Rules. Satisfactory operation of the safety devices and control systems is to be verified. For ships having **UMS** or **CCS** notation, a general examination of the control engineering equipment required for these notations is also to be carried out.

2.3.14 For ships fitted with an electronically controlled engine for main propulsion, essential auxiliary or emergency power purposes, the following is to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyor:

- (a) Verification of evidence of satisfactory operation of the engine and, where possible, this is to include a running test under load.
- (b) Verification of satisfactory operation of the safety devices and control, alarm and monitoring systems.
- (c) Verification that any changes to the software or control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems that affect the operation of the engine have been assessed by LR and are under configuration management control.

2.3.15 On ships fitted with a dynamic positioning system, the control system and associated machinery items are to be generally examined and tested to demonstrate that they are in good working order.

2.3.16 Dead ship starting arrangements for bringing machinery into operation without external aid are to be tested to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

2.3.17 The surveyor is to be satisfied that any alterations to approved equipment, piping, cabling and electrical systems in magazine spaces have been approved by LR, see Ch 2,4.4.8.

2.3.18 For ships fitted with machinery shock arrangements in accordance with Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,4.11, the following is to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyor:

- (a) A general examination of shock mounts including their condition, date of manufacture and deflection under static load. Particular attention is to be given to mounts which have been installed since the previous survey and to those on which the mounted machinery has been replaced.
- (b) Verification that clearances for shock mount deflection and flexible connections around shock capable equipment have been maintained.

## 2.4 Other notations

2.4.1 Where the options described in 2.4.2, 2.4.4 and 2.4.6 are required by the Owner, a notation will be assigned and surveys are to be included with the Annual Survey.



**2.4.2 Fire Protection (FIRE).** The arrangements for fire protection, fire detection and extinction are to be examined and are to include the following items:

- (a) Verification, so far as is reasonably practicable, that no significant changes have been made to the arrangements for fire protection.
- (b) Verification of the operation of manual and/or automatic doors where fitted.
- (c) Verification that fire control plans are properly posted;
- (d) Examination, so far as is possible, and testing as feasible, of the fire and/or smoke detection and alarm system(s).
- (e) Examination of the water fire-fighting system, and confirmation that each pump connected to the water fire fighting system, including any emergency fire pump can be operated separately so that the required jets of water can be produced simultaneously from different hydrants.
- (f) Verification that fire-hoses, nozzles, applicators and spanners are in good working condition and situated at their respective locations.
- (g) Examination of fixed fire-fighting systems, controls, piping, instructions and marking, checking for evidence of proper maintenance and servicing, including date of last systems tests, including operational alarm tests.
- (h) Verification that all portable and semi-portable fire-extinguishers are in their stowed positions, checking for evidence of proper maintenance and servicing, conducting random checks for evidence of discharged containers.
- (i) Verification, so far as is reasonably practicable, that the remote control for stopping fans in accommodation spaces and the means of cutting off power to the galley are in good working order.
- (k) Examination of the closing arrangements of ventilators, hatches and doorways where applicable.
- (l) Verification that the fireman's outfits are complete and in good condition.

**2.4.3 Escape and Emergency Access (ESC).** The arrangements for escape of personnel and emergency access are to be examined and are to include the following:

- (a) Verification, so far as is reasonably practical, that no significant changes have been made to the arrangements for escape and emergency access.
- (b) Verification that all normal and emergency escape and emergency access routes are free of obstruction.

**2.4.4 Life Saving and Evacuation Arrangements (LSAE).** The arrangements for life saving and evacuation are to be examined and are to include the following:

- (a) Verification, so far as is reasonably practicable, that no significant changes have been made to the arrangements for life saving and evacuation.
- (b) Verification of Life-jackets, Life-buoys, Immersion Suits, Thermal Protection Aids, etc., and their attachments for effectiveness and condition.
- (c) That rescue boats and survival craft have been serviced by an approved servicing company, and ascertain that they are identified and certificated with a valid date.
- (d) That the rescue boat and launching/recovery arrangements are in full working order.
- (e) That the survival craft launch arrangements are in a good working order.

**2.4.5 Safety of Navigation and Communication (SNC).** The arrangements for navigation and communication equipment are to be examined and are to include the following:

- (a) Verification, so far as is reasonably practicable that no significant changes have been made to the navigation and communication equipment.
- (b) That the ship is in possession of up-to-date Nautical Publications, Emergency Instructions, International Code of Signals, Operating Instructions for Life-saving Appliances and their maintenance.
- (c) Shipboard navigational equipment.
- (d) Signalling equipment (lights and sounds).
- (e) Navigation lights.
- (f) Rockets and signals (pyrotechnics).
- (g) Black shapes.

**2.4.6 Pollution Prevention (POL).** The arrangements for pollution prevention are to be examined and are to include the following:

- (a) **Oil.** Verification of piping system arrangements between tanks, bilge and ballast systems, which are used to transfer oil/oily water and ballast water to ensure that no changes have been made to the systems since they were installed. Checking oil filters, oily water separators and sludge/oily water residue containment.
- (b) **Sewage.** Verification of the sewage treatment arrangements, containment and the piping systems.
- (c) **Garbage.** Verification of the garbage disposal arrangements and the installation of the equipment to ensure that no unauthorised changes have been made.
- (d) **Air.** Verification that the engine exhaust emissions are still within the NO<sub>x</sub> Technical Code.  
Verification of the incinerator installation.  
Re-testing the fuel oils to ensure that the sulphur content is still below 4,5 per cent.

## Section 3 Intermediate Surveys – Hull and machinery requirements

### 3.1 General

**3.1.1** Intermediate Surveys are to be held concurrently with any relevant maintenance period wherever practicable, see 2.1.1.

### 3.2 Hull

**3.2.1** The requirements of Section 2 are to be complied with so far as applicable.

**3.2.2** For steel ships a general examination of salt water ballast tanks, compensated fuel tanks, integral sanitary tanks and bilges is to be carried out as required below. If such inspections reveal no visible structural defects then the examination may be limited to a verification that the protective coating remains in GOOD condition as defined in 1.5.8. When considered necessary by the Surveyor thickness measurement of the structure is to be carried out. Where the

protective coating is found to be other than in GOOD condition, and it has not been repaired, maintenance of Class will be subject to the spaces in question being internally examined and gauged as necessary at Annual Surveys.

- (a) For all ships over six years of age and up to 12 years of age, representative salt-water ballast tanks, compensated fuel tanks, integral sanitary tanks and bilges are to be generally examined. Where the protective coating is found to be other than in GOOD condition, as defined in 1.5.8, or other defects are found, the examination is to be extended to other spaces of the same type.
- (b) For steel ships over twelve years of age all salt-water ballast tanks, compensated fuel tanks, integral sanitary tanks and bilges are to be generally examined.

3.2.3 For all ships over twelve years of age the anchors are to be partially lowered and raised using the capstan/windlass.

3.2.4 Representative internal spaces including fore and aft peak spaces, plated masts, machinery spaces, bilges, etc., are to be generally examined. These spaces should include all suspect areas, see 1.5.4.

3.2.5 The Surveyor is to carry out a Close-up Survey and thickness measurement of the structure identified at the previous Special Survey as having substantial corrosion.

## 3.3 Machinery

3.3.1 Machinery and boiler spaces including tank tops, bilges and cofferdams, sea suction and overboard discharges are to be generally examined.

3.3.2 Areas deemed dangerous, such as magazine spaces and spaces where low flash point oils are stored and handled and compartments adjacent to such spaces are to be examined for the following type:

- (a) Defective and non-certified safe electrical equipment.
- (b) Improperly installed, defective and dead-end wiring. An electrical insulation resistance test of the circuits terminating in, or passing through dangerous spaces is to be carried out.

3.3.3 Electrical generators are to be examined under working conditions to verify compliance with Vol 2, Pt 10, Ch 1,2.

## Section 4 Docking Surveys and In-water Surveys

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 At Docking Surveys or In-water Surveys the Surveyor is to examine the ship and machinery so far as necessary and practicable, in order to be satisfied as to the general condition.

### 4.2 Docking Surveys

4.2.1 Where a ship is in dry dock or on a slipway it is to be placed on blocks of sufficient height, and proper staging is to be erected as may be necessary for the examination of the outside of the hull, rudder(s) and underwater fittings. The outside surface of the hull is to be cleaned as may be required by the Surveyor.

4.2.2 The external shell plating is to be examined for excessive corrosion, structural deterioration from causes such as high stresses, chafing or contact with the ground, to areas of structural discontinuity and for undue unfairness or buckling. Special attention is to be given to the connection between the bilge strakes and the bilge keels.

4.2.3 The following parts of the external hull structure are to be specially examined:

- (a) For steel hulls attention is to be given to parts of the structure particularly liable to excessive corrosion and to any undue unfairness of the plating of the bottom. The coating system is to be examined and made good as necessary.
- (b) For aluminium alloy hulls attention is to be given to areas adjacent to any bimetallic connections at skin fittings, etc.
- (c) For composite hulls the gelcoat or other protective finish is to be examined for surface cracking, blistering, abrasion or other damage which may impair the efficiency of the protection to the underlying laminate.

4.2.4 Where fitted, the satisfactory condition, attachment and operation of the cathodic protection (active or passive) is to be confirmed.

4.2.5 The sea connections and overboard discharge valves, their attachments to the hull and the gratings, at the sea inlets are to be examined. Where applicable, pressure testing of the rudder may be required if deemed necessary by the Surveyor.

4.2.6 The clearances of the rudder bearings and pintles are to be measured. Where considered necessary by the Surveyor, rudders and stabilisers are to be lifted for examination of the stock. The securing of rudder and stabiliser couplings is to be confirmed.

4.2.7 Special attention is to be given to the hull in way of underwater fittings such as thrusters, shaft brackets, stabilisers, rudders, rope guards, eddy plates, GRP domes, bilge keels, echo sounders, and their attachments.

4.2.8 Where applicable, attention is to be given to the connection and/or intersection of the cross-deck structure to the hulls of multi-hull ships.

4.2.9 When chain cables are ranged, the anchors and cables are to be examined by the Surveyor, see also 5.3.6 and Table 3.5.1.

4.2.10 For Surface Effect Ships any flexible skirts together with their attachment are to be examined.

4.2.11 For hydrofoil or foil assisted craft the attachment of foils is to be examined.

4.2.12 The Surveyor is to verify all draught markings as applicable at the time of dry-docking.

4.2.13 When Machinery Naval Class has been adopted, the following items are additionally applicable. The work is to be carried out in accordance with maintenance manuals and the manufacturer's recommendations for servicing and renewals observed.

- (a) The propeller and fastenings are to be examined. (Where a controllable pitch propeller is fitted, examination is to include blade fastenings and hub). The sternbush is to be examined as far as practicable.
- (b) Where propeller shafts are wrapped for corrosion protection, the condition of the wrapping is to be confirmed.
- (c) The clearance in the sternbush or the efficiency of the oil glands is to be ascertained. The clearance of any shaft bracket bearing is to be ascertained.
- (d) The inboard shaft seals or glands are to be examined. Where flexible sternglands are fitted, the satisfactory condition of the rubber hose and securing clips is to be confirmed. Where inflatable shaft seals are fitted, their condition and operation is to be verified.
- (e) Where water jet units are fitted, the impeller, hull ducting, grating, nozzle steering and reversing arrangements are to be examined as far as practicable.
- (f) Where podded propulsion units are fitted, the bearings and sealing arrangements, steering ring and thrust bearings in the hull are to be examined as far as practicable.

## 4.3 In-water Surveys

4.3.1 The Committee will accept an In-water Survey between Special Surveys, as a Docking Survey, where suitable protection is applied to the underwater portion of the hull. If requested, the **\*IWS** notation may be assigned on satisfactory completion of the survey, provided that the applicable requirements of the Rules are complied with.

4.3.2 The In-water Survey is to provide the information normally obtained from the Docking Survey, see 4.2.2 to 4.2.13.

4.3.3 The underwater part of the hull should be marked with search lines for reference purposes.

4.3.4 The In-water Survey is to be carried out at an agreed geographical location under the surveillance of a Surveyor to LR, with the ship in sheltered waters and with weak tidal streams and currents. The in-water visibility is to be good and the hull below the waterline is to be clean. The Surveyor is to be satisfied that the method of pictorial presentation is satisfactory by use of CCTV. There is to be good two-way communication between the Surveyor and the diver.

4.3.5 Prior to commencing the In-water Survey, the equipment and procedures for both observing and reporting the survey are to be agreed between the Owners, the Surveyor and the diving firm.

4.3.6 The In-water Survey is to be carried out by a qualified diver employed by the firm approved by LR.

4.3.7 If the In-water Survey reveals damage or deterioration that requires early attention, the Surveyor may, in consultation with the Owner, require that the ship be dry-docked in order that a fuller survey can be undertaken and the necessary work carried out.

4.3.8 Where a vessel has the **\*IWS** notation, the condition of the high resistant paint is to be confirmed at each dry-docking in order that the **\*IWS** notation can be maintained.

## Section 5 Special Survey – Hull requirements

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 The survey is to be of sufficient extent to ensure that the hull and related equipment is in satisfactory condition and is fit for its intended purpose, subject to proper maintenance and operation and to Periodical Surveys being carried out as required by the Regulations.

5.1.2 The requirements of Section 2 are to be complied with so far as applicable.

5.1.3 A Docking Survey in accordance with the requirements of 4.2 is to be carried out as part of the Special Survey.

### 5.2 Preparation

5.2.1 The ship is to be prepared for survey in accordance with the requirements of Table 3.5.1. The preparation should be of sufficient extent to facilitate an examination to ascertain any excessive corrosion, erosion, deformation, fractures, damages and other structural deterioration.

5.2.2 Where, in accordance with Table 3.5.1, the ship is opened out by removal of linings, etc., and defects are found, further opening out may be required in order that the Surveyor can confirm the full extent of the defects.

### 5.3 Examination and testing – General

5.3.1 All spaces within the hull and superstructure including integral tanks are to be examined, see *also* 5.4.1 for tank examinations on steel ships. Special attention is to be paid to any suspect areas, see 1.5.4. and Table 3.5.1.



# Periodical Survey Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 3

Section 5

**Table 3.5.1 Survey preparation**

Special Survey I (Ship 6 years old)	Special Survey II (Ship 12 years old)	Special Survey III (Ship 18 years old) and subsequent special surveys
<p>(1) All spaces in the ship are to be cleared and cleaned as necessary, including all bilge spaces in order that the Surveyor may be satisfied as to the condition of the structure, see 1.5.3 and 1.5.4. A record is to be made of where equipment was removed during the survey. This record is to be retained for reference during subsequent surveys.</p> <p>(2) Machinery compartments are to be cleared and cleaned as necessary, and the bilges cleaned and prepared for examination. Floor plates in engine spaces are to be lifted as may be necessary for the examination of the structure below. Where necessary, pipework may be required to be removed for examination of the structure.</p> <p>(3) In ships having wood decking or sheathing, and in refrigerated stores, a sufficient amount of material covering the structure is to be removed for access and examination. The amount of removal will depend upon the condition found and will be to the Surveyor's satisfaction.</p> <p>(4) Tanks are to be cleaned as necessary in order to satisfy the requirements of Table 3.5.2.</p>	<p>In addition to the requirements for Special Survey I, the following are to be complied with:</p> <p>(1) The chain locker is to be cleared and cleaned internally for examination of the structure and examination of the cable securing arrangements. The chain cables are to be ranged for inspection. The anchors are to be cleaned and placed in an accessible position for inspection.</p> <p>(2) The rudders are to be unshipped for examination of the rudder stock and trunk at the discretion of the Surveyor.</p>	<p>In addition to the requirements for Special Survey II the following are to be complied with:</p> <p>(1) Samples of lagging and lining are to be removed in order that the Surveyor may be satisfied as to the condition of the structure.</p> <p>(2) All wood decks and sheathing, or other covering, on steel decks are to be removed in order to ascertain the condition of the structure.</p>
<p><b>NOTES</b></p> <p>1. These requirements can be amended to reflect proven information concerning the performance of structure through an Owner's maintenance system such as 'Reliability Centred Maintenance'.</p> <p>2. Where permanent ballast is fitted, samples of ballast are to be removed for examination of the structure underneath. The condition of the exposed structure is to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.</p>		

5.3.2 Double bottom, deep, ballast, peak and other tanks assigned also for the carriage of salt-water ballast, are to be tested with a head of liquid to the top of air pipes or to the top of hatches for ballast/cargo holds. Boundaries of oil fuel, lubricating oil and fresh water tanks are to be tested with a head of liquid to the maximum filling level of the tank. Tank testing of oil fuel, lubricating oil and fresh water tanks may be specially considered based upon a satisfactory external examination of the tank boundaries, and a confirmation from the Commanding Officer stating that the pressure testing has been carried out according to the requirements with satisfactory results.

5.3.3 Where repairs are effected to the hull or bulkheads, any integral tanks in way are to be tested to the Surveyor's satisfaction on completion of these repairs.

5.3.4 All decks, masts and superstructures are to be examined.

5.3.5 Attention is to be given to the corners of openings and other discontinuities in the hull structure.

5.3.6 The anchors are to be examined, the chain cables are to be ranged and they are to be examined together with the chain locker (see Table 3.5.1) and clench plate. If any length of chain cable is found to be reduced in mean diameter at its most worn part by 12 per cent or more from its nominal diameter, it is to be renewed. Cables are to be changed 'end-for-end'. Anchor handling arrangements are to be examined.

5.3.7 Representative fastenings on the weatherdecks, e.g. for guardrails and spurnwaters, are to be tested to ascertain their soundness and may require to be drawn for examination at the discretion of the Surveyor.

5.3.8 When applicable, the Surveyor is to be satisfied as to the efficient condition of the means of escape from crew spaces, and spaces in which crew are normally employed.

# Periodical Survey Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 3

Section 5

5.3.9 The hand pumps, suction, watertight doors, air and sounding pipes are to be examined. In addition, the Surveyor is to examine internally air pipe heads in accordance with the requirements of Table 3.5.3.

## 5.4 Examination and testing – Additional items for steel ships

5.4.1 The requirements for tank internal examination are given in Table 3.5.2.

**Table 3.5.2 Tank internal examination requirements for steel ships**

Tank	Special Survey I (Ship 6 years old)	Special Survey II (Ship 12 years old)	Special Survey III (Ship 18 years old)	Special Survey IV (Ship 24 years old)	All Subsequent Special Surveys
Peaks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks
Salt-water ballast	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks
Lubricating oil	None	None	None	See Notes 1 and 2 One tank	One tank
Fresh water	None	One tank	All tanks	See Notes 1 and 2 All tanks	All tanks
Oil fuel – in way of (i) Machinery space (ii) Supply (Replenishment)	None	None	One tank	One tank	One tank
Oil area	None	One tank	Two tanks see Note 3	50% of tanks see Notes 3 and 4	50% of tanks see Notes 3 and 4
Oil fuel (water compensated)	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks
Sanitary	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks	All tanks

NOTES

- The above requirements apply to integral tanks only.
- Where a selected number of tanks are examined, then different tanks are to be examined at each Special Survey on a rotational basis.
- To include one deep tank, if any.
- Where 50% of tanks are to be examined, a minimum of two tanks are required to be examined depending upon the overall number of tanks.
- When examining tanks internally the Surveyor is to verify that striking plates or other additional reinforcement are fitted under sounding pipes. In the case of tanks only with remote gauging facilities, the satisfactory operation of the gauges is to be confirmed.
- Particular care must be taken in examining structure under suction.
- Where testing is required, a functional test may be acceptable at the Surveyor's discretion.

**Table 3.5.3 Air pipe head internal examination requirements**

Special Survey I (Ship 6 years old)	Special Survey II (Ship 12 years old)	Special Survey III (Ship 18 years old) and subsequent
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Two air pipe heads (one port and one starboard) on exposed decks in the forward 0,25L See Notes 1 to 5</li> <li>Two air pipe heads (one port and one starboard) on the exposed decks, serving spaces aft of 0,25L See Notes 1 to 5</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All air pipe heads on exposed decks in the forward 0,25L See Notes 1 to 5</li> <li>At least 20% of air pipe heads on exposed decks, serving spaces aft of 0,25L See Notes 1 to 5</li> </ol>	All air pipe heads on exposed decks See Notes 1 to 6

NOTES

- Air pipe heads serving ballast tanks are to be selected where available.
- The Surveyor is to select which air pipe heads are to be examined.
- Where considered necessary by the Surveyor as a result of the examinations, the extent of examinations may be extended to include other air pipe heads on exposed decks.
- Where the inner parts of the air pipe head cannot be properly examined due to its design, it is to be removed in order to allow an internal examination.
- Particular attention is to be given to the condition of the zinc coating in heads constructed from galvanised steel.
- Exemption may be considered for air pipe heads where there is documented evidence of their replacement within the previous six years.

5.4.2 In salt-water ballast spaces, integral sanitary tanks and bilges where the protective coating is found to be other than in GOOD condition as defined in 1.5.8 and it has not been repaired, maintenance of class will be subject to the spaces in question being internally examined and gauged.

5.4.3 The protection of steelwork, other than as referred to in 5.4.2 should be examined and made good where necessary on satisfactory completion of the survey. In areas where the inner surface of the bottom plating is covered with cement, asphalt or other composition, the removal of this covering may be dispensed with, provided that it is found sound and adhering satisfactorily to the steel.

5.4.4 Wood deck sheathing is to be examined and the caulking is to be tested and recaulked as necessary. If decay or rot is found, or the wood is excessively worn, the wood is to be renewed. Attention is to be given to the condition of the plating under wood deck sheathing or other deck covering. If it is found that such coverings are broken, or are not adhering closely to the plating, sections are to be removed as necessary to ascertain the condition of the plating, *see also* 1.2.1.

5.4.5 The structure in way of bimetallic connections, e.g. to aluminium alloy deck-houses, is to be examined and the efficiency of the insulation arrangements confirmed.

## **5.5 Examination and testing – Additional items for composite ships**

5.5.1 The bonded attachments of frames, floors, bulk-heads, structural joinery, engine bearers, sterntubes, rudder tubes, and integral tank boundaries are to be examined.

5.5.2 The hull to deck joint, together with any joints between the deck and deck-houses or superstructures, are to be examined.

5.5.3 The structure in way of the bolted attachment of fittings including guardrail stanchions, capstan/windlass, shaft brackets, fendering, mooring bitts, etc., is to be examined.

6.1.3 In areas where substantial corrosion, as defined in 1.5, has been noted, then additional measurements are to be carried out, as applicable, in accordance with Table 3.6.2 to determine the full extent of the corrosion pattern.

6.1.4 Where substantial corrosion is identified and not rectified, this will be subject to re-examination and gauging as necessary at Annual and Intermediate Surveys.

6.1.5 At each Special Survey, thickness measurements are to be taken in way of critical areas, as considered necessary by the Surveyor. Critical areas are to include locations throughout the ship that show substantial corrosion and/or are considered prone to rapid wastage.

6.1.6 The Surveyor may extend the scope of thickness measurement if deemed necessary.

## **6.2 Thickness measurement reporting**

6.2.1 A report is to be prepared by the approved company carrying out the thickness measurement. The report is to give the location of measurement, the thickness measured as well as the corresponding original thickness. The report is to give the date when the measurement was carried out, the type of measuring equipment, names of personnel and their qualifications and is to be signed by the operator.

6.2.2 The thickness measurement report is to be verified and signed by the Surveyor, and included with the Surveyor's report.

## **Section 6 Special Survey – Thickness measurement requirements for steel ships**

### **6.1 General**

6.1.1 Thickness measurement requirements for steel ships are stated in Tables 3.6.1 and 3.6.2. *See also* 1.8.

6.1.2 Thickness measurements may be carried out in association with the fifth Annual Survey.

## Periodical Survey Regulations

## Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 3

Sections 6 &amp; 7

**Table 3.6.1 Thickness measurement of steel ships**

Special Survey I (Ship 6 years old)	Special Survey II (Ship 12 years old)	Special Survey III (Ship 18 years old)	Special Survey IV and subsequent (Ship 24 years old and over)
(1) Bottom and lower parts of chain locker. (2) Critical and Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor and may include areas where the coatings are found to be other than in GOOD condition.	(1) Wind and water strakes in way of 0,5L amidships. (2) Bottom and lower parts of chain locker. (3) Critical and Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor and may include areas where the coatings are found to be other than in GOOD condition.	(1) Weatherdeck plating under wood deck planking or sheathing. (2) Shell plating in way of the waterline throughout the length of the ship. (3) Two complete transverse sections of deck and shell plating within 0,5L amidships, one of which should be in way of a machinery space. (4) Bottom and lower parts of chain locker. (5) Critical and Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor and may include areas where the coatings are found to be other than in GOOD condition.	(1) All weatherdeck plating outside deck-houses or superstructures and including plating under wood deck planking or sheathing. (2) Shell plating in way of, and below, the waterline throughout the length of the ship. (3) Two complete transverse sections of deck and shell plating within 0,5L amidships, one of which should be in way of a machinery space. (4) Bottom and lower parts of chain locker. (5) Critical and Suspect areas, as required by the Surveyor and to include as applicable: (a) Areas where the coatings are found to be other than in GOOD condition. (b) Bottom shell in way of any cement, asphalt, ballast or other composition. (c) Deck plating and side shell plating in way of galleys, washrooms and refrigerated store spaces and any other wet spaces. (d) Structure in way of integral sanitary tanks.
NOTE See 1.5.8 for the definition of GOOD condition.			

**Table 3.6.2 Thickness measurement – Additional requirements in way of structure identified with substantial corrosion**

Structural member	Extent of measurement	Pattern of measurement
Plating	Suspect areas and adjacent plates	5 point pattern over 1 m <sup>2</sup>
Stiffeners	Suspect areas	3 measurements each in line across web and flange

## Section 7

**Machinery survey – General requirements****7.1 Annual, Intermediate and Docking Survey**

7.1.1 For Annual, Intermediate and Docking Surveys, see Sections 2, 3 and 4.

**7.2 Complete Survey**

7.2.1 While the ship is in dry dock, all openings to the sea in the machinery spaces, together with the valves, cocks and the fastenings with which these are connected to the hull, are to be examined.

7.2.2 All shafts (except screwshafts and tube shafts, for which special arrangements are detailed in Section 13), thrust block and all bearings are to be examined. The lower halves of bearings need not be exposed if alignment and wear are found to be acceptable.

# Periodical Survey Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 3

Sections 7 &amp; 8

7.2.3 An examination is to be made of all reduction gears complete with all wheels, pinions, shafts, bearings and gear teeth, thrust bearings and incorporated brake and clutch arrangements where fitted.

7.2.4 The following auxiliaries and components are also to be examined:

- (a) Auxiliary engines, auxiliary air compressors with their intercoolers, filters and/or oil separators and safety devices, and all pumps and components used for essential services.
- (b) Steering machinery.
- (c) Windlass and associated driving equipment, where fitted.
- (d) The holding down bolts, chocks of main and auxiliary engines, gearcases, thrust blocks and intermediate shaft bearings.
- (e) Evaporators (other than those of vacuum type) and their safety valves, which should be seen in operation under steam.

7.2.5 All air receivers for essential services, together with their mountings, valves and safety devices, are to be cleaned internally and examined internally and externally. If internal examination of the air receivers is not practicable, they are to be tested hydraulically to 1,3 times the working pressure.

7.2.6 The valves, cocks and strainers of the bilge and salvage system including bilge injection, are to be opened up as considered necessary by the Surveyor and together with pipes, are to be examined and tested under working conditions. The oil fuel, feed, lubricating oil and cooling water systems, also the ballast connections together with all pressure filters, heaters and coolers used for essential services, are to be opened up and examined or tested, as considered necessary by the Surveyor. All safety devices for the foregoing items are to be examined.

7.2.7 Fuel tanks which do not form part of the ship's structure are to be examined, and if considered necessary by the Surveyor, they are to be tested to the pressure specified for new tanks. The tanks need not be examined internally at the first survey if they are found satisfactory on external inspection. The mountings, fittings and remote controls of all oil fuel tanks are to be examined, so far as is practicable.

7.2.8 Where remote and/or automatic controls are fitted for essential machinery, they are to be tested to demonstrate that they are in good working order.

7.2.9 For ships fitted with a dynamic positioning system, the control system and associated machinery items are to be examined and tested under operating conditions to an approved Test Schedule.

7.2.10 In addition to the above, detailed requirements for steam and gas turbines, oil engines, electrical installations and boilers are given in Sections 8, 9 10 and 11 respectively. In certain instances, upon application by the Owner or where indicated by the maker's servicing recommendations, LR will give consideration to the circumstances where deviation from these detailed requirements is warranted, taking account of design, appropriate indicating equipment (e.g., vibration indicators) and operational records.

7.2.11 Where machinery installation include a 'lifed item' the requirements of Ch 2,4.5.21 are applicable.

## Section 8 Turbines – Detailed requirements

### 8.1 Complete Survey

8.1.1 The requirements of Section 7 are to be complied with.

8.1.2 The following parts are to be opened out and examined:

The working parts of the main turbines and of auxiliary machinery used for essential services, including bulk-head stop valves, manoeuvring valves, the blading, rotors, flexible couplings and casings.

8.1.3 In gas turbines the following parts are to be opened out and examined:

The impellers or blading, rotors and casings of the air compressors, the combustion chambers, burners, intercoolers, heat exchangers, gas and air piping and fittings, starting and reversing arrangements.

8.1.4 Condensers, steam reheaters, desuperheaters which are not incorporated in the boilers, and any other appliances used for essential services, are to be examined to the satisfaction of the Surveyor, and if it is considered necessary, they are to be tested.

8.1.5 The manoeuvring of the turbines is to be tested under working conditions.

### 8.2 Turbine condition monitoring (TCM)

8.2.1 Where the main propulsion steam turbines are provided with approved vibration monitoring equipment, a machinery notation **TCM** (Turbine Condition Monitoring) may be assigned provided that the following conditions are complied with:

- (a) Vibration measurements recorded with equipment acceptable to LR are to be taken at regular intervals not exceeding six months. The records are to be retained on board and be available to the LR Surveyors for assessment at time of survey.
- (b) Rotor position indicators are to be installed permanently on each turbine. Records of these readings are to be retained on board the ship for inspection by the LR Surveyor at time of survey.

8.2.2 For maintenance of the **TCM** notation, the records of vibration monitoring and rotor position readings are to be audited annually.

8.2.3 In addition to the vibration readings at the time of the survey, it is necessary to carry out a full power trial to demonstrate to the LR Surveyor that the turbines are in good working order.

8.2.4 Where the notation **TCM** has been assigned the main steam turbine top casings need not be lifted for examination of the rotors and diaphragms as required by 8.1.2 provided the condition monitoring data is found within limits set by acceptance standards. The remaining requirements of 8.1.2 are to be complied with. Where the Surveyor considers that the data presented is not entirely to his satisfaction, the top casing will be required to be lifted.

## ■ Section 9 Oil engines – Detailed requirements

### 9.1 Complete Survey

9.1.1 The requirements of Section 7 are to be complied with.

9.1.2 The following parts are to be opened out and examined:

Cylinders, covers, valves and valve gear, pistons and piston rods, crossheads, guides, connecting rods and crankshafts and all bearings, crankcases, bedplates, entablatures, crankcase door fastenings and explosion relief devices, scavenge relief devices, scavenge pumps, scavenge blowers, superchargers and their associated coolers, air compressors and their intercoolers, filters and/or separators and safety devices, fuel pumps and fittings, camshaft drives and balancer units, vibration dampers or detuners, flexible couplings and clutches, reverse gears, attached pumps and cooling arrangements.

9.1.3 Selected pipes in the starting air system are to be removed for internal examination and are to be hammer tested. If any appreciable amount of lubricating oil is found in the pipes, the starting air system is to be thoroughly cleaned internally by steaming out, or other suitable means. Some of the pipes selected are to be those adjacent to the starting air valves at the cylinders and to the discharges from the air compressors. This requirement is only applicable to oil engines using compressed air directly into individual cylinders through starting air valves, it is not applicable to air motor starting systems.

9.1.4 The manoeuvring of engines is to be tested under working conditions. Initial starting arrangements are to be tested.

9.1.5 Where steam is used for essential purposes, the condensing plant, feed pumps and oil fuel burning plant are to be examined and the steam pipes examined and tested as detailed in Section 12.

## ■ Section 10 Electrical equipment

### 10.1 Annual and Intermediate Surveys

10.1.1 The requirements of 2.3 and 3.3 are to be complied with as far as applicable.

### 10.2 Complete Surveys

10.2.1 An electrical insulation resistance test is to be made on the electrical equipment and cables. The installation may be sub-divided, or equipment which may be damaged disconnected, for the purpose of this test.

10.2.2 The fittings on the main and emergency switchboards, section boards and distribution boards are to be examined and over-current protective devices and fuses inspected to verify that they provide suitable protection for their respective circuits.

10.2.3 Generator circuit-breakers are to be tested, so far as is practicable, to verify that protective devices including preference tripping relays, if fitted, operate satisfactorily.

10.2.4 The electric cables and their securing arrangements are to be examined, so far as is practicable, without undue disturbance of fixtures or casings unless opening up is considered necessary as a result of observation or of the tests required by 10.2.1. The Surveyor is also to be satisfied regarding the condition of glands at watertight and gastight bulkheads.

10.2.5 The generator prime movers are to be surveyed as required by Sections 8 and 9 and the governing of the engines tested. The motors concerned with essential services together with associated control and switch gear are to be examined and if considered necessary, are to be operated, so far as is practicable, under working conditions. All generators and steering gear motors are to be examined and are to be operated under working conditions, though not necessarily under full load or simultaneously.

10.2.6 Where transformers associated with supplies to essential services are liquid immersed, the Owner is to arrange for samples of the liquid to be taken and tested for breakdown voltage, acidity and moisture, by a competent authority, in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's requirements, and a certificate giving the test results is to be furnished to the Surveyor.

10.2.7 Navigation light indicators are to be tried under working conditions, and correct operation on the failure of supply or failure of navigation lights verified.

10.2.8 The emergency sources of electrical power, where fitted, together with their automatic arrangements and associated circuits are to be tested.

10.2.9 Emergency lighting, transitional emergency lighting, supplementary emergency lighting, general emergency alarm and public address systems are to be tested as far as practicable.



# Periodical Survey Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 3

*Sections 10, 11 & 12*

**10.2.10** Where the ship is electrically propelled, the propulsion motors, generators, conversion equipment, cables and all ancillary electrical gear, exciters and ventilating plant (including coolers) associated therewith are to be examined, and the insulation resistance to earth is to be tested. Special attention is to be given to windings, commutators and slip-rings. The operation of protective gear and alarm devices is to be checked, so far as is practicable. Insulating oil if used, is to be tested in accordance with 10.2.6. Interlocks intended to prevent unsafe operations or unauthorised access are to be checked to verify that they are functioning correctly. Emergency overspeed governors are to be tested.

**10.2.11** A General Examination of the electrical equipment in areas which may contain flammable gas or vapour and/or combustible dust is to be made to ensure that the integrity of the safe type electrical equipment has not been impaired owing to corrosion, missing bolts, etc., and that there is not an excessive build-up of dust on or in dust protected electrical equipment. Cable runs are to be examined for sheath and armouring defects, where practicable, and to ensure that the means of supporting the cables are in good order. Tests are to be carried out to demonstrate the effectiveness of bonding straps for the control of static electricity. Alarms and interlocks associated with pressurised equipment or spaces are to be tested for correct operation.

## ■ Section 11 Boilers

### 11.1 Frequency of survey

**11.1.1** All boilers, economisers, steam receivers, steam heated steam generators, thermal oil and hot water units intended for essential services, together with boilers used exclusively for non-essential services having a working pressure exceeding 3,4 bar and a heating surface exceeding 4,65 m<sup>2</sup> are to be surveyed at intervals not exceeding 3 years and generally examined externally at the time of the Annual Survey of the ship.

### 11.2 Scope of surveys

**11.2.1** At the surveys described in 11.1 the boilers, superheaters, economisers and air heaters are to be examined internally and externally and where considered necessary, the pressure parts are to be tested by hydraulic pressure and the thickness of plates and tubes and sizes of stays are to be ascertained to determine a safe working pressure. The principal mountings on boilers, superheaters and economisers are to be opened up and examined and the safety valves are to be set under steam to a pressure not greater than the approved design pressures of the respective parts. As a working tolerance, the setting is acceptable provided that the valves lift at not more than 103 per cent of the approved design pressure. The remaining mountings are to be examined externally and if considered necessary by the Surveyor, are to be opened up for internal examination. Collision chocks, rolling stays and boiler stools are to be examined and maintained in an efficient condition.

**11.2.2** In fired boilers employing forced circulation, the pumps used for this service are to be opened and examined at each Boiler Survey.

**11.2.3** The oil fuel burning system is to be examined under working conditions and a General Examination made of fuel tank valves, pipes, deck control gear and oil discharge pipes between pumps and burners.

**11.2.4** At each survey of a cylindrical boiler which is fitted with smoke tube superheaters, the saturated steam pipes are to be examined as detailed in Section 12.

**11.2.5** At the Annual General Examination referred to in 11.1.1 the requirements of 2.3.7 and 2.3.8 are to be complied with.

## ■ Section 12 Steam pipes

### 12.1 Frequency of survey

**12.1.1** Saturated steam pipes, also superheated steam pipes where the temperature of the steam at the superheater outlet is not over 450°C, are to be surveyed 12 years from the date of build (or installation) and thereafter at six-yearly intervals.

**12.1.2** Superheated steam pipes where the temperature of the steam at the superheater outlet is over 450°C are to be surveyed after six years from the date of build (or installation) thereafter at six-yearly intervals.

**12.1.3** At 12 years from the date of build (or installation) thereafter at six-yearly intervals, all copper or copper alloy steam pipes over 76 mm external diameter supplying steam for essential services at sea, are to be hydraulically tested to twice the working pressure.

### 12.2 Scope of surveys

**12.2.1** At each survey a selected number of main steam pipes, also of auxiliary steam pipes, which:

- (a) are over 76 mm external diameter;
- (b) supply steam for essential services at sea; and
- (c) have bolted joints,

are to be removed for internal examination and are to be hydraulically tested to 1,5 times the working pressure. If these selected pipes are found satisfactory in all respects, the remainder need not be tested. So far as is practicable, the pipes are to be selected for examination and hydraulic test in rotation so that in the course of the surveys all sections of the pipeline will be tested.

**12.2.2** Where main and/or auxiliary steam pipes of the category described in 12.2.1(a) and (b) have welded joints between the lengths of pipe and/or between pipes and valves, the lagging in the way of the welds is to be removed, and welds examined and if considered necessary by the Surveyor, crack detected. Pipe ranges having welded joints are to be hydraulically tested to 1,5 times the working pressure. Where lengths having ordinary bolted joints are fitted in such pipe ranges and can be readily disconnected, they are to be removed for internal examination and hydraulically tested to 1,5 times the working pressure.

**12.2.3** Where, on cylindrical boilers having smoke tube superheaters, the saturated steam pipes adjoining the saturated steam headers are situated partly in the boiler smoke boxes, all such pipes adjoining and cross-connecting these headers in the smoke boxes are, at the surveys required by 12.1 to be included in the pipes selected for examination and testing as defined in 12.2.1. Where the saturated steam pipes inside the smoke boxes consist of steel castings of substantial construction, these requirements need only to be applied to a sample casting. Where steel castings are not fitted, the Surveyor is to satisfy himself of the condition of the ends of the saturated steam pipes in the smoke boxes at each Boiler Survey and if he considers it necessary, a sample pipe is to be removed for examination.

**12.2.4** At the surveys specified in 12.1.3, any of the copper or copper alloy pipes, such as those having expansion or other bends, which may be subject to bending and/or vibration, also closing lengths adjacent to steam driven machinery, are to be annealed before being tested.

**12.2.5** Where it is inconvenient for the Owner to fulfil all the requirements of a Steam Pipe Survey at its due date, LR will be prepared to consider postponement of the survey, either wholly or in part.

## ■ Section 13 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers

### 13.1 Frequency of surveys

**13.1.1** Shafts with keyed propeller attachments and fitted with continuous liners or approved oil glands, or made of approved corrosion resistant materials, are to be surveyed at intervals of six years when the keyway complies fully with the present Rules.

**13.1.2** Shafts having keyless type propeller attachments are to be surveyed at intervals of six years provided they are fitted with approved oil glands or are made of approved corrosion resistant materials.

**13.1.3** Shafts having solid coupling flanges at the after end are to be surveyed at intervals of six years provided they are fitted with approved oil glands or are made of approved corrosion resistant materials.

**13.1.4** All other shafts not covered by 13.1.1 to 13.1.3 are to be surveyed at intervals of 3 years.

**13.1.5** Controllable pitch propellers for main propulsion purposes are to be surveyed at the same intervals as the screwshaft.

**13.1.6** Directional propeller and podded propulsion units for main propulsion purposes are to be surveyed at intervals not exceeding six years.

**13.1.7** Water jet units for main propulsion purposes are to be surveyed at intervals not exceeding six years provided the impeller shafts are made of approved corrosion resistant material or have approved equivalent arrangements.

**13.1.8** Dynamic positioning and/or thruster assisted mooring and athwartship thrust propellers and shaftings are to be surveyed at intervals not exceeding six years.

### 13.2 Normal surveys

**13.2.1** All screwshafts are to be withdrawn for examination by LR Surveyors at the intervals prescribed in 13.1.1 to 13.1.4. The after end of the cylindrical part of the shaft and forward one third of the shaft cone, or fillet of the flange, is to be examined by a magnetic particle crack detection method. In the case of a keyed propeller attachment at least the forward one third of the shaft cone is to be examined with the key removed. Wear down is to be measured and the stern tube bearings, oil glands, propellers and fastenings are to be examined. Controllable pitch propellers where fitted are to be opened up and the working parts examined, together with the control gear.

**13.2.2** Directional propeller and podded propulsion units are to be dismantled for examination of the propellers, shafts, gearing, and control and electrical gear.

**13.2.3** Water Jet Units are to be dismantled for examination of the impeller, casing, shaft, shaft seal, shaft bearing, inlet and outlets channels, steering nozzle, reversing arrangements, and control gear.

**13.2.4** Dynamic positioning and/or thruster assisted mooring and athwartship thrust propellers are to be generally examined so far as is possible in dry dock and tested under working conditions afloat for satisfactory operation.

**13.2.5** Podded propulsion unit screwshaft roller bearings are to be renewed when the residual calculated life at the maximum continuous rating at time of survey, no longer exceeds the survey interval. See Vol 2, Pt 4, Ch 4.6.3.8.



# Periodical Survey Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 3

Section 13

## 13.3 Screwshaft Condition Monitoring (SCM)

13.3.1 Where oil lubricated shafts with approved oil glands are fitted or where a water lubricated sternbush is fitted and the requirements of 13.3.2 or 13.3.3 are met, a machinery notation **SCM** (Screwshaft Condition Monitoring) may be assigned.

13.3.2 Oil lubricated bearings:

- (a) Lubricating oil analysis is to be carried out regularly at intervals not exceeding six months. The lubricating oil analysis documentation is to be available on board. Each analysis is to include the following minimum parameters:
  - (i) Water content.
  - (ii) Chloride content.
  - (iii) Bearing material and metal particles content.
  - (iv) Oil ageing (resistance to oxidation).Oil samples are to be taken under service conditions and are to be representative of the oil within the sterntube.
- (b) Oil consumption is to be recorded.
- (c) Bearing temperatures are to be recorded, (two temperature sensors or other approved arrangements are to be provided).
- (d) Facilities are to be provided for measurement of bearing wear.
- (e) Oil glands are to be capable of being replaced without withdrawal of the screwshaft.

13.3.3 Water lubricated bearings:

- (a) A means of monitoring and recording variations in the flow rate of lubricating water using two independent sensors is to be provided.
- (b) A means of monitoring and recording variation in the shaft power transmission is to be provided.
- (c) A maximum permitted wear of the stern bush is indicated and approved wear monitoring equipment is to be fitted. The wear allowance will include both an absolute maximum allowable wear and the wear down at which it is recommended to carry out an inspection and maintenance. An alignment analysis considering both the newly installed clearance and the proposed absolute maximum allowable wear, demonstrating that the system will operate satisfactorily within these two limits is to be submitted for approval.
- (d) For open loop systems the manufacturer shall submit information regarding the required standard of lubricating water filtration and lubricating water filters or separators are to be fitted which are able to achieve this requirement:
  - The lubricating water supply is to be fitted with continuous water sediment measuring or turbidity monitoring equipment with the results being recorded and retained on board alternatively.
  - There shall be a LR approved extractive sampling and testing procedure with the records held on board and made available to LR on request. Records of cleaning and replacement of lubrication filters/separators are to be maintained on board. The pumping and water filtration system are to be considered part of the continuous survey cycle and are to be subject to a Periodical Survey.

- (e) Where a closed cycle water system is used then the pumping and water filtration system are to be considered part of the continuous survey cycle and are to be subject to a Periodical Survey. Water analysis is to be carried out regularly at intervals not exceeding six months. Samples are to be taken under service conditions and are to be representative of the water circulating within the sterntube. Analysis results are to be retained on board and made available to LR on request. The analysis is to include the following parameters:
  - (i) Chloride content
  - (ii) Bearing material and metal particles content.
- (f) The Shaft shall either be constructed of corrosion resistant material or protected with an approved corrosion resistant protective liner or coating. Where a protective liner is used then this shall meet the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 3, Ch 2,4.14 and a means of assessing the condition of this liner or is to be submitted and approved.
- (g) Glands are to be capable of being replaced without withdrawal of the screwshaft.
- (h) There is to be a shaft starting/clutch engagement block to inhibit starting the shaft until lubricating water flow has been established. This is to act as a starting block only. Low lubricating water flow after shaft start is to be signalled by an alarm only with no shut-down.

All data collected in 13.3.3(a) to (h) is subject to the same audit requirements as given in 13.3.4. The means of monitoring and recording lubricating water flow, bearing wear and shaft power variation are to be submitted for approval.

13.3.4 For maintenance of **SCM** notation, the records of analyses, consumption and temperature, together with wear-down readings are to be retained on board and audited annually.

13.3.5 Where the notation **SCM** has been assigned the screwshaft need not be withdrawn at surveys as required by 13.2.1 provided all condition monitoring data is found to be within permissible limits and all exposed areas of the shaft are examined by a magnetic particle crack detection method or an alternative approved means for shafts with a protective liner, see 13.3.3. The remaining requirements of 13.2.1 are to be complied with. Where the Surveyor considers that the data presented is not entirely to his satisfaction the shaft will be required to be withdrawn in accordance with 13.2.1. For water lubricated bearings the screwshaft is to be withdrawn for examination as in 13.2.1, when the ship reaches 18 years from the date of build or the 3rd Special Survey - whichever comes first.

## 13.4 Modified Survey

13.4.1 A Modified Survey may be accepted at alternate six-yearly surveys for shafts described in 13.1.1 provided they are fitted with oil lubricated bearings and approved oil glands, and also for those in 13.1.2 and 13.1.3.

**13.4.2** The Modified Survey is to consist of the partial withdrawal of the shaft, sufficient to ascertain the condition of the stern bearing and shaft in way. For keyless propellers or shafts with a solid flange connection to the propeller a visual examination to confirm the good condition of the sealing arrangements is to be made. The oil glands are to be capable of being replaced without removal of the propeller. The forward bearing and all accessible parts including the propeller connection to the shaft are to be examined as far as possible. Wear down is to be measured and found satisfactory. Where a controllable pitch propeller is fitted, at least one of the blades is to be dismantled complete for examination of the working parts and the control gear.

**13.4.3** For keyed propellers, the after end of the cylindrical part of the shaft and forward one third of the shaft cone is to be examined by a magnetic particle crack detection method, for which dismantling of the propeller and removal of the key will be required.

**13.4.4** Where the notation **SCM** has been assigned as described in 13.3.1 and all data is found to be within permissible limits, partial withdrawal of the shaft may not be required. Where doubt exists regarding any of the above findings the shaft is to be withdrawn to permit an entire examination.

## 13.5 Partial Survey

**13.5.1** For shafts where the Modified Survey is applicable, upon application by the Owner, LR will be prepared to give consideration to postponement of the survey for a maximum period of half the specified cycle provided a Partial Survey is held.

**13.5.2** The Partial Survey is to consist of the propeller being backed off in any keyed shaft and the top half of the cone examined by an efficient crack detection method for which removal of the key will be required. Oil gland and seals are to be examined and dealt with as necessary. Wear down is to be measured and found satisfactory. Propeller and fastenings are to be examined.

**13.5.3** LR will be prepared to give consideration to the circumstances of any special case upon application by the Owner.

## Section 14 Hull planned maintenance, HPMS

### 14.1 Introduction

**14.1.1** Within the scope of Ch 2,4.5.12 an approved Hull Planned Maintenance Scheme (HPMS) can be accepted as an integral part of LR's Continuous Survey (CSH) cycle.

**14.1.2** The following improved facilities for dealing with hull structural surveys are provided through adoption of the Hull Planned Maintenance Scheme:

- (a) A more flexible approach to dealing with Classification Surveys of selected hull structural items. Opening out for Classification inspection is restricted to mandatory items and to verify the efficiency of the scheme through annual and periodical audits. The condition as observed and reported by the ship's LR authorised staff will, subject to Annual Audit, be sufficient to credit the items for survey.
- (b) The Navy can operate a single system, covering maintenance, spare parts/consumables supply and survey requirements for both hull and machinery items. The level of documentation and control will demonstrate a commitment to any Naval Authority requirements.

**14.1.3** The Hull Planned Maintenance Scheme will operate by allowing LR authorised personnel to carry out inspections of selected hull items to an approved schedule of inspections over a six-year period corresponding to the naval ship classification cycles. Ships currently undertaking classification surveys by either SS or CSH regimes may be accepted onto the Scheme. In order to implement the scheme it will be necessary to divide the items selected for ship's staff inspection into a programme similar to that required for CSH in which approximately 17 per cent of hull master list items are inspected each year. In preparing this schedule of inspections, due account should be taken of the items still required to be surveyed by an LR Surveyor such that these may be conveniently carried out at the time of the Annual Audit or on completion of the CSH classification cycle.

### 14.2 Master list Items

**14.2.1** A list of typical hull master list items that can be surveyed by authorised personnel, and those items that remain to be dealt with by LR Surveyors, can be obtained from LR's London Office. It should be noted that LR will continue to inspect, as necessary, where there is a history of structural defects in a particular area, either on the ship or on a similar ship.

**14.2.2** Where protective coating condition has been found to be poor or where substantial corrosion is identified in a tank or space scheduled for inspection by the ship's staff, a Memorandum will be imposed requiring that area to be examined and gauged at Annual Surveys by an LR Surveyor. Notwithstanding this requirement, the tank or space in question may continue to be inspected by the ship's staff subject to the agreement of the Scheme Manager.

### 14.3 Scheme Approval

**14.3.1** It is recognised that planned maintenance systems may take various forms; the type of maintenance control, the scheduling, reporting and recording methods can only be decided by the Navy, having due regard to all the factors involved.

14.3.2 Approval of the planned maintenance scheme involves approval of the overall approach to maintenance for each installation, not just approval of the planned maintenance software. The amount of information to be submitted, however, can be reduced if the planned maintenance software has been approved using LR's *Software Conformity Assessment Scheme*. Further details can be obtained from LR's local offices.

14.3.3 Operational requirements for the approval of Hull Planned Maintenance Schemes are as follows:

- (a) Ship to be operating the Continuous Survey Cycle for Hull (**CSH**). (Where the Naval Authority requirements preclude the operation of the ship on a continuous hull survey, an alternative arrangement of 'modified' Special Survey will be employed.)
- (b) Ship to be operating an approved Machinery Planned Maintenance Scheme.
- (c) All personnel operating the scheme to hold a valid LR *Certificate of Authorisation*.
- (d) The language of the scheme is to be English.
- (e) The scheme is to be based on a computerised system and should have back-up devices, which are to be updated at regular intervals.
- (f) Access to computerised systems for updating of the maintenance documentation and maintenance programme shall only be permitted by personnel with a valid LR *Certificate of Authorisation*.
- (g) Approval of the scheme is required to be reconsidered if ownership or management of the ship changes.

14.3.4 Details to be submitted:

- (a) A description of the scheme regarding its application on board ship and the proposed flow of maintenance documents and method of filing.
- (b) A numbered index of the items is to be included in the scheme. This index is to include at least all hull items that appear on the 'Master List of Surveyable Items'. The scheme may also cover items that are not required for classification. The indexing system is to be such that ready cross-reference to the Master List numbers can be made.
- (c) Sample job descriptions, and the time schedules for each item, are to be provided. Maintenance descriptions are to cover at least the minimum work necessary to demonstrate that a satisfactory examination of the item will be made. The extent of the work to be undertaken is to be indicated but it is not necessary for approval purposes to include every detailed job description. A selection of sample job descriptions will suffice to demonstrate how the system works.
- (d) The reporting and recording procedures are to be sufficiently comprehensive to demonstrate that both the Navy and the LR Surveyor can verify correct operation of the planned maintenance scheme at the time of the Annual Audit. There is to be a system for reporting the following information to Navy and recording on board ship and at the Navy's headquarters:
  - details of inspections carried out;
  - the condition as found;
  - any repairs or maintenance undertaken.

- (e) The details of items inspected may be supplemented with digital photographs. These may be stored within the planned maintenance software or in a clearly distinguished and labelled electronic file system.

14.3.5 Where a ship is already operating an SS classification regime it will be necessary for the survey cycle to be converted to a CSH regime. Adoption of the scheme is best effected at the commencement of the next SS/CSH classification cycle. However, where a Navy wishes to enter the scheme in mid cycle this can be achieved by the following methods:

- (a) Entry up to 2<sup>nd</sup> Annual Survey:  
all hull master list items will require to be dealt with between date of entry and the SS/CSH due date;
- (b) Entry following 2<sup>nd</sup> Annual Survey:  
at least 17 per cent of the hull master list items to be dealt with in each full year of the SS/CSH cycle remaining, part years to be dealt with pro rata. The balance of hull master list items to complete the SS/CSH cycle will be dealt with by the LR Surveyor at SS/CSH due date.

14.3.6 Where entry is effected following the 2<sup>nd</sup> Annual Survey, the Navy may choose to deal with more than the minimum number of items as indicated above, in which case the number of items remaining to be dealt with by the LR Surveyor to complete the SS/CSH cycle can be reduced accordingly.

## 14.4 Roles and Responsibilities

14.4.1 **Navy.** The Navy should make a request for approval of the planned maintenance scheme either through a local LR office or direct to the London office. The information detailed in 14.3.4 should be submitted. Requests for approval of planned maintenance software in accordance with LR's *Software Conformity Assessment Scheme* should be made to a local LR office or direct to the London office.

14.4.2 **Lloyd's Register.** The planned maintenance scheme will be reviewed and, if acceptable, a *Certificate of Operation* of an Approved Planned Maintenance Scheme for Hull Structures will be issued to the Navy. A copy of the Certificate is to be retained on board the subject ship for the information of the Commanding Officer, Marine Engineer Officer and LR's Surveyors. The **HPMS** notation will be assigned if requested and an appropriate memoranda item entered on the ship's survey status. The *Certificate of Operation* will be valid until the end of the classification cycle and, on completion of a satisfactory audit, the attending Surveyor will reissue the certificate.

# Periodical Survey Regulations

# Volume 1, Part 1, Chapter 3

Section 14

**14.4.3 Lloyd's Register Scheme Manager.** A Scheme Manager will be appointed by LR for each Navy with ships operating the Hull Planned Maintenance Scheme. The Scheme Manager will administer the scheme on an individual ship or group basis, act as a technical consultant to the Navy and train the ships' staff in the methods of hull structural inspection and reporting. He/she will be resident in either a terminal port that the ship uses regularly or the LR office that manages the Navy's account. More details are given in the following paragraphs:

**(a) Scheme Set-up**

The Scheme Manager will, on obtaining a request from a Navy to include a ship on the Scheme:

- Identify the ship(s) to be assessed with the Navy.
- Contact LR's London Office for any special requirements. For example there may be specific areas where LR will not credit inspections by a ship's staff due to a history of defects.
- Guide the Navy through completion of the Hull Planned Maintenance Scheme implementation checklist and application form.
- Review ship's Master List of surveyable items to determine which items will be inspected by the ship's staff.
- Liaise with the Navy to determine a schedule of inspections to include the items to be inspected by a ship's staff and taking due account of the items still required to be surveyed by an LR Surveyor.
- Obtain scheme approval from LR's London Office.
- Issue certification for the ship (i.e., *Certificate of Operation*).

**(b) Training**

The Scheme Manager will carry out the following actions associated with training:

- Prepare training documentation and training workshops.
- Deliver training to the ship's staff and issue certification (i.e., *Certificate of Authorisation*).
- Maintain the database of authorised ship's officers, available through CDLive.
- Arrange for refresher training programmes for the ship's staff at six yearly intervals.

**(c) Scheme Operation**

During operation, the Scheme Manager will act as the primary contact for Hull Planned Maintenance issues:

- Confirm operation of the scheme through contact with the Navy's office.
- Review and process ship's staff reports.
- Perform, where practicable, shipboard Annual Audit of the scheme.
- Where the shipboard Annual Audit is undertaken through another LR office, act as liaison and contact point for the local LR Surveyor.
- To assess progress of the scheme at the end of each survey cycle and report to London Office and the Navy. Undertake a review at the end of the second survey cycle, i.e. when the ship is 12 years of age, and, if applicable, make a recommendation to the Classification Group in London that the ship be considered for extension of the scheme into the third cycle.

**14.4.4 Authorised Ship's Personnel.** Authorised ship's personnel will carry out inspections of the hull structural items for which they are authorised, at sea or in port, whichever is the most convenient. Inspections of individual master list items are required to be carried out in accordance with the applicable requirements of LR's Rules for Naval Ships. The Commanding Officer and Navy should arrange for LR's Surveyors to carry out an Annual Audit of the hull maintenance records. Annual audits are to be held within three months before or after the due date and are to be harmonised with the Annual Classification Survey. Items to be credited for Class can be CSH items that have become due in the previous 12 months. In the case of new ships on their first survey cycle, approximately 17 per cent of the total number of CSH items are to be selected.

**14.4.5 Requirements of the Intermediate Special Survey (ITSS)** will still require to be satisfied, as applicable. Master list items dealt with by the ship's staff in the 12 months prior to ITSS may be considered for credit towards this survey and may not need to be re-examined by the LR Surveyor unless required as part of the Annual Audit.

**14.4.6** At the Annual Audit, the maintenance records and associated documentation are to be made available, which should include:

- Inspection and maintenance records for each item to be credited for Class. These records should give details of any repairs carried out.
- Written details of any breakdown, malfunction or defect in hull structure. Such details should include the main cause of failure.
- An LR *Certificate of Authorisation* for all authorised personnel who have carried out maintenance work on items to be credited for Class.
- An LR *Certificate of Operation* of an Approved Planned Maintenance Scheme for Hull Structures.
- Confirmation of the type of planned maintenance software in use.
- Reports will be required to be forwarded to the Scheme Manager on a 3-monthly basis.

**14.4.7 Lloyd's Register Surveyors.** At the Annual Audit held concurrently with the Annual Classification Survey, the hull records and documentation will be examined in sufficient depth by the LR Surveyors to ensure that the scheme has been operated correctly and that structure and coatings/corrosion prevention systems have functioned satisfactorily since the previous Audit. The records should indicate that all scheduled maintenance has been carried out. Any items not dealt with as per the schedule will be discussed with the authorised personnel.

**14.4.8** As part of the Audit the LR Surveyors may carry out a general examination of the hull structural items completed in the previous year. If the Surveyor is not satisfied with any aspect of the scheme's operation he/she may request that items be opened out for inspection.



**14.4.9** If deficiencies in the operation of the scheme are identified, either from the maintenance records or from the general condition of the ship, the Surveyors may advise that a further Audit will be required and impose a suitable Condition of Class. In the event of serious deficiencies, a report will be forwarded to the Naval Ship Classification Committee in London recommending that the special arrangements for dealing with hull structural surveys be suspended.

**14.4.10** The dates of items to be credited for Class will be aligned to the date of the Annual Audit, regardless of when the survey was carried out by the ship's staff. Any other surveyable items of hull structure not covered by the Scheme will be surveyed and credited in the normal way.

**14.4.11** It should be noted that when items that the ship's staff are authorised to survey become due for survey between Annual Audits, they will be shown as 'OVERDUE' on the survey status until the Annual Audit has been held and reported.

**14.4.12** Items approved for inspection by the ship's staff, but not inspected by them between Annual Audits according to the approved schedule of inspections, will require to be examined by the LR Surveyor at the time of the Annual Audit.

**14.4.13 Inspection Results and Reporting.** Results of the inspections carried out by authorised ship's staff in accordance with the approved schedule of inspection should be recorded on the report forms provided by LR and transmitted to the Scheme Manager at the required intervals. Where previously agreed with the Scheme Manager, alternative methods of reporting may be accepted.

**14.4.14** Should the authorised ship's staff, during the course of their inspections, identify any defect or damage which could invalidate the conditions of Class for which a vessel has been assigned, this should be reported to LR without delay. In such cases, an LR Surveyor should be requested to attend the ship to carry out an appropriate survey in accordance with normal practice. All repairs that may be required in order for the ship to maintain Class are to be carried out to the satisfaction of an LR Surveyor. When repairs are effected at a port, terminal or location where the services of an LR Surveyor are not available, the repairs are to be surveyed by an LR Surveyor at the earliest opportunity thereafter.

## ■ Section 15 Machinery planned maintenance and condition monitoring, MPMS, MCM and RCM

### 15.1 Introduction

**15.1.1** Within the scope of Ch 2,4.5.18 and 4.5.19, an approved Planned Maintenance Scheme (**MPMS**) and Condition Monitoring (**MCM**) can be accepted as an integral part of LR's Continuous Survey Machinery (**CSM**) cycle.

**15.1.2** Planned maintenance systems may be based on calendar or running hours calling for items to be opened out for inspection and overhaul at specified periods. Alternatively the machinery may be monitored for condition and performance, whereby items need only be opened out for examination when readings indicate deterioration.

**15.1.3** Navies who operate a planned maintenance scheme that meet the LR requirements will benefit from enhanced arrangements for dealing with machinery surveys. The arrangements provide the following advantages:

- A more flexible approach to dealing with Classification Surveys of machinery items. The condition as observed and reported by LR approved Marine Engineer Officer will, subject to annual audit, be sufficient to credit the items for survey.
- A single system can be operated by the Navy covering maintenance, spare parts supply and survey requirements.
- The schemes allow the application of condition monitoring techniques to main and auxiliary items of machinery.

**15.1.4** When a Navy decides to apply such arrangements to limit the opening out normally required for survey under **CSM** then **MPMS**, **MCM** (including Condition Monitoring) or **RCM** (including Reliability Centred Maintenance) class notations can be assigned where the schemes have been approved by LR.

### 15.2 Master list items

**15.2.1** A list of typical machinery master list items that can be surveyed by authorised personnel and those items that remain to be dealt with by LR Surveyors can be obtained from LR's London Office. It should be noted that LR will continue to inspect, as necessary, where there is a history of mechanical, electrical or control engineering defects in a particular area, either on the ship or on a similar ship.

### 15.3 The planned maintenance approach

**15.3.1** Types of maintenance are defined as:

- Preventive maintenance.** This calls for items to be opened out for inspection and overhaul at specified time periods or after a specified number of running hours in order to keep the machine/equipment/system in a satisfactory operational condition.
- Condition based maintenance.** This is dictated by the performance or physical state of the machine/equipment/system, determined by regular or continuous checks of applicable parameters. Maintenance is only undertaken when conditions have approached or reached the lowest acceptable standard and before breakdown or failure occurs.
- Reliability centred maintenance.** This calls for a structured analysis of a system's capability to perform its functions from design through operation to decommissioning. The primary objective is to ensure the functionality of a system and this is achieved through a planned maintenance strategy determined from the detailed analysis. The strategy may include the use of prevention and condition based maintenance.

15.3.2 The types of maintenance described in 15.3.1 are the foundations of a Machinery Planned Maintenance System acceptable to LR. Many schemes are made up with a combination of the three methods of control. In addition, to deal with unforeseen circumstances, any Machinery Planned Maintenance System must also be able to deal effectively with breakdown or corrective maintenance, i.e. unscheduled maintenance.

## 15.4 Basic requirements for approval of MPMS, MCM and RCM schemes

15.4.1 To obtain approval of a **MPMS**, the Navy is required to make a formal request through either a local office of LR or direct to LR in London. The request is to be accompanied by the following information:

- (a) A numbered index of the items to be included in the scheme. This index is to include at least all **CSM** items that appear on the Master List of Surveyable Items. The scheme can also cover many items that are not required for classification. The indexing system is to be such that ready cross-reference to the numbers in the LR Master List of Surveyable items can be made. It is also to indicate those items to be dealt with by preventive maintenance, by condition-based maintenance and by reliability centred maintenance.
- (b) The maintenance and monitoring methods to be used, the time schedules for each item and limits of acceptance/condition where applicable. Maintenance descriptions are to cover at least the minimum opening out necessary to demonstrate that a satisfactory examination of the item will be made. The extent of the work to be undertaken is to be indicated but it is not necessary for approval purposes to include every detailed job description. A few sample job descriptions will suffice to demonstrate how the system works. Machinery on preventive maintenance must be examined completely for survey purposes at intervals not exceeding six years, although in practice many items will be maintained much more frequently.
- (c) A system for reporting to the Navy and recording on board ship and at the Navy's headquarters, details of maintenance carried out, the condition as found and any repairs effected, together with a list of spare parts used. The reporting and recording procedures are to be sufficiently comprehensive to demonstrate that both the Navy and the LR Surveyor can verify correct operation of the planned maintenance system at the time of the survey.
- (d) A description of the scheme regarding its application on board ship and the proposed flow of maintenance documents and method of filing same. The application of the scheme may take the form of simple planning charts or the more complex interactive computer based systems. The language of the **MPMS** is to be English.

15.4.2 Where a Navy has requested approval of a Reliability Centred Maintenance study, the requirements of 15.4.3 to 15.4.5 are to be complied with.

15.4.3 The following information is to be submitted to LR for review:

- (a) Hard or soft copy (with operating systems if necessary) of the studies. This is to include, operating context, details of study team, FMECA, algorithm decision sheets, summary of maintenance tasks, summary of 'level of repair analysis', identification of 'critical' spares.
- (b) Details of system/equipment covered by the study.
- (c) Copy of acceptance letter from equipment manufacturer confirming their review of the study details.

15.4.4 LR will verify by audit that the following items have been complied with:

- (a) Study has been undertaken in full compliance of the methodology embodied in an acceptable and applicable standard for **RCM**.
- (b) Study team members have adequate experience both of undertaking **RCM** studies and the systems/equipment under review.
- (c) Study team members have been present during the study for sufficient time (% of total time taken) to properly contribute to the study.
- (d) No 'Mandatory Redesign' requirements are outstanding.
- (e) Where spares have been identified as 'Critical', they have been properly identified in the management systems on board.
- (f) Procedures for collection of condition monitoring information have been established and reporting procedures for submission of this as part of the approved **MPMS** are clearly documented.
- (g) Where Standard Operating Procedures have been identified, that an adequate management system is in place to ensure that they are complied with.
- (h) The FMECA is in compliance with an acceptable standard, good marine engineering practice and application of valid reliability data.

15.4.5 A technical audit by LR of individual **RCM** studies selected by LR will follow the following methodology:

- (a) Verification that the study covers the entire function being addressed.
- (b) For each individual study (sub function) within a group function, verification that there is a list that includes the individual assets items, including controls, instrumentation and protective/emergency devices.
- (c) Verification that an expected maintenance task list has been drafted, based on typical tasks that would be expected for the relevant item, under any maintenance regime. These would include, but may not be limited too, system performance analysis checks, standard condition monitoring checks (vibration, electrical characteristics, thermography, etc), inspections of items liable to wear or other age related degradation, i.e. fouling, periodic tests of protective devices, operation of reversionary modes of operation, etc.
- (d) Confirm that the standard tasks have been identified for each sub function.
- (e) Review the study for justification for items or systems with no scheduled maintenance for tasks not identified.
- (f) Review any inconsistencies in periodicity for tasks included in maintenance schedule.

- (g) Carry out a review of RCM logic applied for one sub function. If the review is acceptable and in accordance with the standard for RCM, others will not be fully reviewed. If considered unacceptable, a review of another will be carried out for confirmation. If second also unacceptable, LR will require a complete review of all other sub functions for acceptance.
- (h) Review LR Master List Surveyable items to verify that all Class items have a maintenance programme associated with credit as part of RCM.

**15.4.6** As an alternative to LR carrying out post study audits required by 15.4.4 and 15.4.5, LR can, if requested provide direct input and advice to the study team(s) on either full or part time basis to supplement the technical/survey requirement input. If this is undertaken, the scope of the audit will be reduced accordingly.

**15.4.7** Where machinery items are maintained on a condition basis the following additional information is required to be submitted:

- (a) A description of the applicable monitoring techniques and monitoring equipment to be used.
- (b) A statement as to the acceptable limits of deteriorated condition. These should be derived from the manufacturer's recommendations, applicable severity criteria as defined in recognised Standards, or the Navy's required limits when these are more severe. Rotating machinery on condition based maintenance may be accepted for survey on the basis of the monitored readings without opening out if the condition is shown to be good.

**15.4.8** If the planned maintenance scheme is considered to be acceptable to LR a 'Certificate for Operation of an Approved Planned Maintenance Scheme' will be issued. The Certificate is to be retained on board the subject ship for the information of the Commanding Officer, Marine Engineer Officer and LR's Surveyors.

**15.4.9** The Marine Engineer Officer operating the Scheme on a ship must hold a valid LR Certificate of Authorisation.

## 15.5 Conditions of operation

**15.5.1** It is a condition of the Scheme that the Navy arranges for LR Surveyors to carry out an Annual audit of the machinery maintenance and monitoring records. Annual audits are to be held within three months before or after the due date and it is recommended that they are harmonised with the ship's Annual Survey.

**15.5.2** Marine Engineer Officers may carry out surveys of all the machinery items for which they are authorised, at sea or in port, whichever is the most convenient. The following machinery items remain to be dealt with by an LR Surveyor, unless special arrangements have been agreed with the Navy:

- Machinery damage, repairs and alterations, see 15.6.
- Gas turbines for propulsion and electrical supplies.
- Oil engines for propulsion and electrical supplies.
- Steam turbines and boilers for propulsion and electrical supplies.
- Control, alarm and safety devices associated with the above main and auxiliary machinery.

- Reduction/increase gearing, flexible couplings and clutches.
- Holding down bolts and chocks.
- Steam pipes and valves on ships with steam turbine installations.
- Air receivers and other pressure vessels.
- Starting air pipes.
- Steering machinery.
- Pumping arrangements for bilge and dewatering systems.
- Electrical equipment other than auxiliary motors.
- Screwshafts, stern bearings and propellers.
- Sea connections.
- Machinery controls and controls associated with Class Notations, e.g., **UMS**, **CCS**, **ICC** and **IP**.
- Engine Trial.
- First start arrangement trial.

**15.5.3** The confirmatory survey carried out at the time of the annual audit by LR's Surveyor will comprise of checks of the condition monitoring records and, if considered necessary, an examination of selected main and auxiliary machinery under working conditions.

## 15.6 Breakdown or corrective maintenance

**15.6.1** LR is required to be notified when a breakdown or defect occurs and has a major effect that affects the Provisions of Classification and repairs are necessary. A major effect is an effect that produces:

- (a) a significant increase in the operational duties of the crew or in their difficulty in performing their duties which by itself should not be outside the capability of a competent crew provided that another major effect does not occur at the same time; or
- (b) significant degradation in the operational capability of the ship; or
- (c) significant modification of the permissible operating conditions, but will not remove the capability to complete a safe journey without demanding more than normal skill on the part of the operating crew.

**15.6.2** In discussion with the Navy and the Marine Engineer Officer, LR will advise what repairs and/or renewals are necessary for classification purposes, with the issue of an Interim Certificate of Class.

**15.6.3** The required repair and time scale for completion will be the subject of discussion and agreement with LR and the Navy. It is the responsibility of the Navy to decide whether the ship's mission/operational tasking is more important than completing the repairs within the agreed time. It is accepted that such circumstances are occasionally inevitable, and LR would provide advice on the interim measures that could be introduced until such times as the required repairs are carried out and the implications on a ship's operating capability of delays in affecting repairs.

## 15.7 Annual audit and survey

15.7.1 At the annual audit the Marine Engineer Officer is required to make available the maintenance and monitoring records. These records may be in a hard or soft format and should include:

- (a) Appropriate records of machinery or equipment surveyed under the supervision of the Marine Engineer Officer that are listed in the Master List of Surveyable Items. These statements should give details of repairs carried out and spare parts used.
- (b) Written details of any breakdown or malfunction of essential machinery. Such details should include the main cause of failure.
- (c) LR Certificate(s) of Authorisation for the Marine Engineer Officer(s) responsible for surveys during the period.

These records will be examined in sufficient depth by the LR Surveyors to ensure that the scheme has been correctly operated and that the machinery has functioned satisfactorily since the previous survey. The records should indicate that all scheduled maintenance has been carried out. Any items not dealt with as per schedule will be discussed with the Marine Engineer Officer.

15.7.2 Where condition monitoring of main or auxiliary machinery is incorporated in the PMS the LR Surveyor will examine the records to verify that vibration levels, performance criteria, etc., are within the approved specified limits. The LR Surveyor may require confirmatory readings on available running machinery to be taken for comparison with the ship's records.

15.7.3 As part of the audit, LR Surveyors carry out a general examination of the machinery. As far as is practicable machinery to be credited for survey will be examined under working conditions. If the LR Surveyor is not satisfied with the condition as found he might require to have any items opened out for inspection.

15.7.4 The dates of items to be credited for Class will be aligned to the date of the confirmatory survey regardless of when the Marine Engineer Officer carried out his survey. Any other surveyable items of machinery not covered by the Scheme will be surveyed and credited in the normal way.

15.7.5 For items which the Marine Engineer Officer is authorised to survey and become due for survey between Annual Audits these will be shown as 'OVERDUE' on the survey status until the Annual Audit has been held and reported.

15.7.6 In the event of the Surveyor not being satisfied that the planned maintenance scheme is being correctly followed, either from the maintenance records or from the general condition of the machinery, a report will be forwarded to LR recommending that the special arrangements for dealing with machinery surveys be suspended.



## Section 16

### Classification of ships not built under LR survey

#### 16.1 General

16.1.1 When classification is desired for a ship not built under the supervision of LR Surveyors, application should be made in writing.

16.1.2 Periodical Surveys of such ships, when classed, are subsequently to be held as in the case of ships built under survey.

16.1.3 Where classification is desired for a ship which has not been designed, constructed and maintained to appropriate standards recognised by the Naval Authority, special consideration will be given to the requirements of this Section.

16.1.4 Where classification is desired for a ship which is classed by another recognised Society, special consideration will be given to the requirements of this Section.

#### 16.2 Hull and equipment

16.2.1 Plans showing the main scantlings, corrosion margins and arrangements of the actual ship together with any proposed alterations are to be submitted. As a minimum the plans are to comprise a midship section, longitudinal section and decks. LR may request further plans. Documents demonstrating compliance with appropriate standards recognised by the Naval Authority are to be submitted. In the absence of such documentation, an appraisal may be required to the satisfaction of LR. For vessels which have generated sufficient evidence of satisfactory in-service experience LR may consider this in lieu of compliance documentation or an appraisal. If plans cannot be obtained or prepared by the Owner, facilities are to be given for LR's Surveyor to obtain the necessary information from the ship.

16.2.2 Particulars of the process of manufacture and the testing of the material of construction are to be supplied. The requirements for composite ships will be specially considered.

16.2.3 The full requirements of Sections 5 and 6 are to be carried out as applicable. Ships of recent construction will receive special consideration.

16.2.4 During the survey, the Surveyors are to satisfy themselves regarding the workmanship and verify the approved scantlings and arrangements. For this purpose, and also in order to ascertain the amount of any deterioration of a steel ship, parts of the structure will require to be gauged as necessary. Full particulars of the anchors, chain cables and equipment are to be submitted.

16.2.5 When the full survey requirements indicated in 16.2.3 and 16.2.4 cannot be completed at one time, LR may consider granting an interim record for a limited period. The conditions regarding the completion of the survey will depend on the merit of each particular case, which should be submitted for consideration.



## 16.3 Machinery

**16.3.1** Plans of the following items (plans of piping are to be diagrammatic), together with the particulars of the materials used in the construction of the boilers, air receivers and important forgings are to be submitted. Documents demonstrating compliance with appropriate Standards recognised by the Naval Authority are to be submitted. In the absence of such documentation, an appraisal may be required to the satisfaction of LR. For vessels which have generated sufficient evidence of satisfactory in-service experience LR may consider this in lieu of compliance documentation or an appraisal:

- General piping system arrangements, including air and sounding pipes (Builder's plan).
  - Bilge, dewatering, ballast and oil fuel piping arrangements including the capacities of the pumps on bilge service.
  - Arrangement and dimensions of main steam pipes.
  - Arrangement of oil fuel pipes and fittings at settling and service tanks.
  - Arrangement of oil fuel piping in connection with oil burning installations.
  - Oil fuel overflow systems, where these are fitted.
  - Arrangement of boiler feed systems.
  - Oil fuel settling, service and other oil fuel tanks not forming part of the ship's structure.
  - Boilers, superheaters and economisers.
  - Air receivers.
  - Crank, thrust, intermediate and screw shafting.
  - Clutch and reversing gear with methods of control.
  - Reduction gearing.
  - Propeller (including spare propeller if supplied).
  - Electrical circuits, as listed in Vol 2, Pt 10, Ch 1, 1.2.2, 1.2.4 and 1.2.5.
  - Arrangement of compressed air systems for main and auxiliary services.
  - Arrangement of lubricating oil, hydraulic oil, thermal oil and other systems containing flammable liquids.
  - Arrangements of cooling water systems for main and auxiliary services.
  - Steering gear system and piping arrangements together with manufacturer, model and rating information.
  - Aircraft/helicopter and vehicle fuel storage and distribution systems.
  - Chilled water systems.
  - High pressure sea-water systems.
  - Heating and ventilation systems.
  - Made and fresh water systems.
  - Hydraulic power actuating systems.
  - Propulsion engine details including manufacturer, model and rating information.
  - Electrical generator engine details including manufacturer, model and rating information.
- For **UMS** notation the following plans are to be submitted for appraisal:
- Fire alarm system.
  - Instrumentation list.
  - Plans for systematic maintenance and function testing.
  - Test schedule.

Where an Ice Class notation is required the following plans are to be submitted for appraisal:

- Main propulsion line shafting.
- Reduction gears.
- Propeller.
- Details of any clutch system in the propulsion line.

Replenishment at sea arrangements where a **RAS** notation is requested.

**16.3.2** Plans additional to those detailed in 16.3.1 are not to be submitted unless the machinery is of a novel or special character affecting classification.

**16.3.3** Where remote and/or automatic controls are fitted to propulsion machinery and essential auxiliaries, a description of the scheme is to be submitted.

**16.3.4** For new ships and ships which have been in service less than two years, calculations of the torsional vibration characteristics of the propelling machinery are to be submitted for consideration, as required for ships constructed under Special Survey. For older ships the circumstances will be specially considered in relation to their service record and type of machinery installed. Where calculations are not submitted, LR may require that the machinery certificate be endorsed to this effect. When desired by the Owner, the calculations and investigation of the torsional vibration characteristics of the machinery may be carried out by LR upon special request.

**16.3.5** The main and auxiliary machinery, feed pipes, compressed air pipes and boilers are to be examined as required at Complete Surveys. Working pressures are to be determined from the actual scantlings in accordance with the Rules.

**16.3.6** The screwshaft is to be drawn and examined.

**16.3.7** The steam pipes are to be examined and tested as required by Section 12.

**16.3.8** The bilge, dewatering, ballast and oil fuel pumping arrangements are to be examined and amended, as necessary, to comply with the Rules.

**16.3.9** Oil burning installations are to be examined as required at Complete Surveys and found, or modified, to comply with the requirements of the Rules; they are also to be tested under working conditions.

**16.3.10** The electrical equipment is to be examined as required at Complete Surveys.

**16.3.11** The whole of the machinery, including essential controls, is to be tested under working conditions to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

**16.3.12** Relevant reports are to be prepared by the Surveyors.

## ■ Section 17 Classification of ships built under survey to LR Classification Rules and Regulations other than LR Naval Ship Rules and Regulations

### 17.1 General

17.1.1 When Naval ship classification is desired for an existing ship built under the supervision of LR Surveyors to Classification Rules and Regulations other than LR Naval Ship Rules, application should be made in writing.

17.1.2 Periodical Surveys of such ships, when classed to the LR Naval Ship Rules are subsequently to be held as in the case of ships built under survey to the Naval Ship Rules. All features of the extant survey regime for hull and machinery are to be included in the Survey scheme under the Naval Ship Rules.

### 17.2 Hull and equipment

17.2.1 Plans showing the features of the ship not covered by the other Classification Rules against which the ship is classed are to be submitted. These may include the following items. For these items, documents demonstrating compliance with appropriate Standards recognised by the Naval Authority are to be submitted. In the absence of such documentation, an appraisal may be required to the satisfaction of LR. For vessels which have generated sufficient evidence of satisfactory in-service experience LR may consider this in lieu of compliance documentation or an appraisal. Where an appraisal is undertaken, strength and, where appropriate, stiffness aspects are to be addressed:

- Masts.
- Weapon system seats.
- RAS seats, landing areas.
- Aircraft landing guides.
- Towing points.
- Military loads.
- Beaching.
- Material grades.
- Watertight integrity.
- Strength of watertight structure.

If plans cannot be obtained or prepared by the Owner, facilities are to be given for LR Surveyor to obtain the necessary information from the ship.

17.2.2 Suitable documentation should be presented to demonstrate that the following aspects are addressed by the appropriate Naval Authority:

- Stability.
- Magazine safety.
- Lifts, ramps, shell doors.
- Fire safety.

17.2.3 During the survey, the Surveyors are to satisfy themselves regarding the workmanship and verify the approved scantlings and arrangements of additional features covered by the Rules. For this purpose, and also in order to ascertain the amount of any deterioration of a steel ship, parts of the structure may need to be gauged as necessary.

17.2.4 When the full survey requirements indicated in 7.2.4 cannot be completed at one time, LR may consider granting an interim record for a limited period. The conditions regarding the completion of the survey will depend on the merit of each particular case, which should be submitted for consideration.

### 17.3 Machinery

17.3.1 Plans of systems not covered by the other Classification Rules against which the ship is classed are to be submitted to LR. For these systems, documents demonstrating compliance with appropriate Standards recognised by the Naval Authority are to be submitted. In the absence of such documentation, an appraisal may be required to the satisfaction of LR. For vessels which have generated sufficient evidence of satisfactory in-service experience LR may consider this in lieu of compliance documentation or an appraisal:

- (a) Aircraft/helicopter and vehicle fuel storage and distribution systems.
- (b) Chilled water systems.
- (c) High pressure sea-water systems.
- (d) High and low pressure compressed air systems.
- (e) Hydraulic power actuating systems.
- (f) Made and fresh water systems.
- (g) Heating, ventilation and cooling arrangements.
- (h) Replenishment at sea arrangements where a **RAS** notation is requested.

17.3.2 Details additional to those stated in 17.3.1 are not to be submitted unless the machinery or installation is of a novel or special character affecting Mobility, Ship Type or Ancillary category systems for Machinery Naval Classification.

17.3.3 The whole of the machinery, including essential controls and safety arrangements, is to be tested to an agreed test plan under working conditions to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

17.3.4 Relevant reports on the submitted information and testing are to be prepared by the Surveyors.



© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013  
Published by Lloyd's Register  
*Registered office*  
71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS  
United Kingdom

# Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials

July 2012

# A guide to the Rules

## *and published requirements*

### **Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials**

#### **Introduction**

The Rules are published as a complete set; individual Parts are, however, available on request. A comprehensive List of Contents is placed at the beginning of each Part.

#### **Numbering and Cross-References**

A decimal notation system has been adopted throughout. Five sets of digits cover the divisions, i.e. Part, Chapter, Section, sub-Section and paragraph. The textual cross-referencing within the text is as follows, although the right hand digits may be added or omitted depending on the degree of precision required:

- (a) In same Chapter, e.g. see 2.1.3 (i.e. down to paragraph).
- (b) In another set of Lloyd's Register Rules, e.g. see Pt 5, Ch 3,2.1 of the Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships.

The cross-referencing for Figures and Tables is as follows:

- (a) In same Chapter, e.g. as shown in Fig. 2.3.5 (i.e. Chapter, Section and Figure Number).
- (b) In another set of Lloyd's Register Rules, e.g. see Table 2.7.1 in Pt 3, Ch 2 of the Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Special Service Craft.

#### **Rules updating**

The Rules are generally published annually and changed through a system of Notices. Subscribers are forwarded copies of such Notices when the Rules change.

Current changes to Rules that appeared in Notices are shown with a black rule alongside the amended paragraph on the left hand side. A solid black rule indicates amendments and a dotted black rule indicates corrigenda.

July 2012

---

Lloyd's Register is an exempt charity under the UK Charities Act 1993

Lloyd's Register, its affiliates and subsidiaries and their respective officers, employees or agents are, individually and collectively, referred to in this clause as the 'Lloyd's Register Group'. The Lloyd's Register Group assumes no responsibility and shall not be liable to any person for any loss, damage or expense caused by reliance on the information or advice in this document or howsoever provided, unless that person has signed a contract with the relevant Lloyd's Register Group entity for the provision of this information or advice and in that case any responsibility or liability is exclusively on the terms and conditions set out in that contract.

## RULES FOR THE MANUFACTURE, TESTING AND CERTIFICATION OF MATERIALS

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>GENERAL REQUIREMENTS</b>
	<b>2</b>	<b>TESTING PROCEDURES FOR METALLIC MATERIALS</b>
	<b>3</b>	<b>ROLLED STEEL PLATES, STRIP, SECTIONS AND BARS</b>
	<b>4</b>	<b>STEEL CASTINGS</b>
	<b>5</b>	<b>STEEL FORGINGS</b>
	<b>6</b>	<b>STEEL PIPES AND TUBES</b>
	<b>7</b>	<b>IRON CASTINGS</b>
	<b>8</b>	<b>ALUMINIUM ALLOYS</b>
	<b>9</b>	<b>COPPER ALLOYS</b>
	<b>10</b>	<b>EQUIPMENT FOR MOORING AND ANCHORING</b>
	<b>11</b>	<b>APPROVAL OF WELDING CONSUMABLES</b>
	<b>12</b>	<b>WELDING QUALIFICATIONS</b>
	<b>13</b>	<b>REQUIREMENTS FOR WELDED CONSTRUCTION</b>
	<b>14</b>	<b>PLASTICS MATERIALS AND OTHER NON-METALLIC MATERIALS</b>

© Lloyd's Register, 2012. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

---

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>GENERAL REQUIREMENTS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>Scope</b>
	1.1	General
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Approval and survey requirements</b>
	2.1	Approval and survey requirements – General
	2.2	LR Approval – General
	2.3	Materials Survey Scheme
	2.4	Materials Quality Scheme
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Certification of materials</b>
	3.1	General
	3.2	Materials Survey Scheme
	3.3	Materials Quality Scheme
	3.4	Electronic certification
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>General requirements for manufacture</b>
	4.1	General
	4.2	Chemical composition
	4.3	Heat treatment
	4.4	Test material
	4.5	Mechanical tests
	4.6	Re-test procedures
	4.7	Rectification of defective material
	4.8	Identification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Non-destructive examination</b>
	5.1	General NDE requirements
	5.2	Personnel qualifications
	5.3	Non-destructive examination methods
	5.4	Non-destructive examination procedures
	5.5	Non-destructive examination reports
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>References</b>
	6.1	General
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>TESTING PROCEDURES FOR METALLIC MATERIALS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General requirements for testing</b>
	1.1	Preparation of test specimens
	1.2	Testing machines
	1.3	Discarding of test specimens
	1.4	Re-testing procedures
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Tensile tests</b>
	2.1	Dimensions of test specimens
	2.2	Definition of yield stress for steel
	2.3	Procedure for testing at ambient temperature
	2.4	Equivalent elongations
	2.5	Procedure for testing at elevated temperatures
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Impact tests</b>
	3.1	Dimensions of test specimens
	3.2	Testing procedures
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Ductility tests for pipes and tubes</b>
	4.1	Bend tests
	4.2	Flattening tests
	4.3	Drift expanding tests
	4.4	Flanging tests



---

<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Embrittlement tests</b>
	5.1	Temper embrittlement tests
	5.2	Strain age embrittlement tests
	5.3	Hydrogen embrittlement tests
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Crack tip opening displacement tests</b>
	6.1	Dimensions of test specimens
	6.2	Test equipment
	6.3	Testing procedures
	6.4	Validity requirements
	6.5	Test reports
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Bend tests</b>
	7.1	Dimensions of test specimens
	7.2	Testing procedures
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Corrosion tests</b>
	8.1	Intergranular corrosion test
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>ROLLED STEEL PLATES, STRIP, SECTIONS AND BARS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General requirements</b>
	1.1	Scope
	1.2	Steel with guaranteed through thickness properties – ‘Z’ grade steel
	1.3	Manufacture
	1.4	Quality of materials
	1.5	Dimensional tolerances
	1.6	Heat treatment
	1.7	Test material and mechanical tests
	1.8	Visual and non-destructive examination
	1.9	Rectification of defects
	1.10	Identification of materials
	1.11	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications</b>
	2.1	Scope
	2.2	Manufacture and chemical composition
	2.3	Condition of supply
	2.4	Mechanical tests
	2.5	Identification of materials
	2.6	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications</b>
	3.1	Scope
	3.2	Alternative specifications
	3.3	Manufacture
	3.4	Chemical composition
	3.5	Condition of supply
	3.6	Mechanical tests
	3.7	Identification of materials
	3.8	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Steels for boilers and pressure vessels</b>
	4.1	Scope
	4.2	Manufacture and chemical composition
	4.3	Heat treatment
	4.4	Mechanical tests
	4.5	Identification of materials
	4.6	Certification of materials
	4.7	Mechanical properties for design purposes

---

<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Steels for machinery fabrications</b>
	5.1	General
	5.2	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Ferritic steels for low temperature service</b>
	6.1	Scope
	6.2	Manufacture and chemical composition
	6.3	Heat treatment
	6.4	Mechanical tests
	6.5	Identification of materials
	6.6	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Austenitic and duplex stainless steels</b>
	7.1	Scope
	7.2	Chemical composition
	7.3	Heat treatment
	7.4	Mechanical tests
	7.5	Through thickness tests
	7.6	Intergranular corrosion tests
	7.7	Clad plates
	7.8	Identification of materials
	7.9	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Plates with specified through thickness properties</b>
	8.1	Scope
	8.2	Manufacture
	8.3	Test material
	8.4	Mechanical tests
	8.5	Non-destructive examination
	8.6	Identification of materials
	8.7	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>Bars for welded chain cables</b>
	9.1	Scope
	9.2	Manufacture
	9.3	Chemical composition
	9.4	Heat treatment
	9.5	Embrittlement tests
	9.6	Mechanical tests
	9.7	Structure and hardenability tests
	9.8	Dimensional tolerances
	9.9	Non-destructive examination
	9.10	Identification
	9.11	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>High strength quenched and tempered steels for welded structures</b>
	10.1	Scope
	10.2	Manufacture and chemical composition
	10.3	Mechanical properties
	10.4	Identification of materials
	10.5	Certification of materials

---

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>STEEL CASTINGS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General requirements</b>
	1.1	Scope
	1.2	Manufacture
	1.3	Quality of castings
	1.4	Chemical composition
	1.5	Heat treatment
	1.6	Test material and test specimens
	1.7	Visual and non-destructive examination
	1.8	Pressure testing
	1.9	Rectification and dressing of castings
	1.10	Identification of castings
	1.11	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Castings for ship and other structural applications</b>
	2.1	Scope
	2.2	Chemical composition
	2.3	Heat treatment
	2.4	Mechanical tests
	2.5	Non-destructive examination
	2.6	Acceptance levels for surface crack detection
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Castings for machinery construction</b>
	3.1	Scope
	3.2	Chemical composition
	3.3	Heat treatment
	3.4	Mechanical tests
	3.5	Non-destructive examination
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Castings for crankshafts</b>
	4.1	Scope
	4.2	Manufacture
	4.3	Chemical composition
	4.4	Heat treatment
	4.5	Mechanical tests
	4.6	Non-destructive examination
	4.7	Rectification of defective castings
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Castings for propellers</b>
	5.1	Scope
	5.2	Chemical composition
	5.3	Heat treatment
	5.4	Mechanical tests
	5.5	Non-destructive examination
	5.6	Rectification of defective castings
	5.7	Identification
	5.8	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems</b>
	6.1	Scope
	6.2	Chemical composition
	6.3	Heat treatment
	6.4	Mechanical tests
	6.5	Non-destructive examination
	6.6	Mechanical properties for design purposes
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service</b>
	7.1	Scope
	7.2	Chemical composition
	7.3	Heat treatment
	7.4	Mechanical tests
	7.5	Non-destructive examination

<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Stainless steel castings</b>
	8.1	Scope
	8.2	Chemical composition
	8.3	Heat treatment
	8.4	Mechanical tests
	8.5	Intergranular corrosion tests
	8.6	Non-destructive examination
<b>Section</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>Steel castings for container corner fittings</b>
	9.1	General
	9.2	Chemical composition
	9.3	Heat treatment
	9.4	Mechanical tests
	9.5	Non-destructive examination
	9.6	Repair of defects
	9.7	Identification
	9.8	Certification of materials
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>STEEL FORGINGS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General requirements</b>
	1.1	Scope
	1.2	Manufacture
	1.3	Quality
	1.4	Chemical composition
	1.5	Heat treatment
	1.6	Test material
	1.7	Mechanical tests
	1.8	Visual and non-destructive examination
	1.9	Rectification of defects
	1.10	Identification
	1.11	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Forgings for ship and other structural applications</b>
	2.1	Scope
	2.2	Chemical composition
	2.3	Heat treatment
	2.4	Mechanical tests
	2.5	Non-destructive examination
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Forgings for shafting and machinery</b>
	3.1	Scope
	3.2	Chemical composition
	3.3	Heat treatment
	3.4	Mechanical tests
	3.5	Non-destructive examination
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Forgings for crankshafts</b>
	4.1	Scope
	4.2	Manufacture
	4.3	Chemical composition
	4.4	Heat treatment
	4.5	Mechanical tests
	4.6	Non-destructive examination
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Forgings for gearing</b>
	5.1	Scope
	5.2	Manufacture
	5.3	Chemical composition
	5.4	Heat treatment
	5.5	Mechanical tests for through hardened, induction hardened or nitrided forgings
	5.6	Mechanical tests for carburised forgings
	5.7	Non-destructive examination

---

<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Forgings for turbines</b>
	6.1	Scope
	6.2	Manufacture
	6.3	Chemical composition
	6.4	Heat treatment
	6.5	Mechanical tests
	6.6	Non-destructive examination
	6.7	Thermal stability tests
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Forgings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems</b>
	7.1	Scope
	7.2	Chemical composition
	7.3	Heat treatment
	7.4	Mechanical tests
	7.5	Non-destructive examination
	7.6	Pressure tests
	7.7	Mechanical properties for design purposes
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Ferritic steel forgings for low temperature service</b>
	8.1	Scope
	8.2	Chemical composition
	8.3	Heat treatment
	8.4	Mechanical tests
	8.5	Non-destructive examination
	8.6	Pressure tests
<b>Section</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>Austenitic stainless steel forgings</b>
	9.1	General
	9.2	Mechanical properties for design purposes
	9.3	Non-destructive examination
	9.4	Intergranular corrosion tests
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>STEEL PIPES AND TUBES</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General requirements</b>
	1.1	Scope
	1.2	Manufacture
	1.3	Quality
	1.4	Dimensional tolerances
	1.5	Chemical composition
	1.6	Heat treatment
	1.7	Test material
	1.8	Dimensions of test specimens and test procedures
	1.9	Visual and non-destructive testing
	1.10	Hydraulic test
	1.11	Rectification of defects
	1.12	Identification
	1.13	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Seamless pressure pipes</b>
	2.1	Scope
	2.2	Manufacture and chemical composition
	2.3	Heat treatment
	2.4	Mechanical tests
	2.5	Mechanical properties for design
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Welded pressure pipes</b>
	3.1	Scope
	3.2	Manufacture and chemical composition
	3.3	Heat treatment
	3.4	Mechanical tests
	3.5	Mechanical properties for design

<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service</b>
	4.1	Scope
	4.2	Manufacture and chemical composition
	4.3	Heat treatment
	4.4	Mechanical tests
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Austenitic stainless steel pressure pipes</b>
	5.1	Scope
	5.2	Manufacture and chemical composition
	5.3	Heat treatment
	5.4	Mechanical tests
	5.5	Intergranular corrosion tests
	5.6	Fabricated pipework
	5.7	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Boiler and superheater tubes</b>
	6.1	Scope
	6.2	Manufacture and chemical composition
	6.3	Heat treatment
	6.4	Mechanical tests
	6.5	Mechanical properties for design
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>IRON CASTINGS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General requirements</b>
	1.1	Scope
	1.2	Manufacture
	1.3	Quality of castings
	1.4	Chemical composition
	1.5	Heat treatment
	1.6	Test material
	1.7	Mechanical tests
	1.8	Visual and non-destructive examination
	1.9	Rectification of defective castings
	1.10	Pressure testing
	1.11	Identification of castings
	1.12	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Grey iron castings</b>
	2.1	Scope
	2.2	Test material
	2.3	Mechanical tests
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings</b>
	3.1	Scope
	3.2	Heat treatment
	3.3	Test material
	3.4	Mechanical tests
	3.5	Metallographic examination
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Iron castings for crankshafts</b>
	4.1	Scope
	4.2	Manufacture
	4.3	Heat treatment
	4.4	Test material
	4.5	Non-destructive examination
	4.6	Rectification of defective castings
	4.7	Certification of materials

---

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>ALUMINIUM ALLOYS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>Plates, bars and sections</b>
	1.1	Scope
	1.2	Manufacture
	1.3	Quality of materials
	1.4	Dimensional tolerances
	1.5	Chemical composition
	1.6	Heat treatment
	1.7	Test material
	1.8	Mechanical tests
	1.9	Corrosion tests
	1.10	Pressure weld tests
	1.11	Visual and non-destructive examination
	1.12	Rectification of defects
	1.13	Identification
	1.14	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Aluminium alloy rivets</b>
	2.1	Scope
	2.2	Chemical composition
	2.3	Heat treatment
	2.4	Test material
	2.5	Mechanical tests
	2.6	Tests from manufactured rivets
	2.7	Identification
	2.8	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Aluminium alloy castings</b>
	3.1	Scope
	3.2	Manufacture
	3.3	Quality of castings
	3.4	Chemical composition
	3.5	Heat treatment
	3.6	Mechanical tests
	3.7	Visual examination
	3.8	Rectification of defective castings
	3.9	Pressure testing
	3.10	Identification
	3.11	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Aluminium/steel transition joints</b>
	4.1	Scope
	4.2	Manufacture
	4.3	Visual and non-destructive examination
	4.4	Mechanical tests
	4.5	Identification
	4.6	Certification of materials

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>COPPER ALLOYS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>Castings for propellers</b>
	1.1	Scope
	1.2	Manufacture
	1.3	Quality of castings
	1.4	Chemical composition
	1.5	Heat treatment
	1.6	Test material
	1.7	Mechanical tests
	1.8	Inspection and non-destructive examination
	1.9	Rectification of defective castings
	1.10	Weld repair procedure
	1.11	Identification
	1.12	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Castings for valves, liners and bushes</b>
	2.1	Scope
	2.2	Manufacture
	2.3	Quality of castings
	2.4	Chemical composition
	2.5	Heat treatment
	2.6	Test material
	2.7	Mechanical tests
	2.8	Inspection
	2.9	Rectification of defective castings
	2.10	Pressure testing
	2.11	Identification
	2.12	Certification of materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Tubes</b>
	3.1	Scope
	3.2	Manufacture
	3.3	Quality
	3.4	Dimensional tolerances
	3.5	Chemical composition
	3.6	Heat treatment
	3.7	Mechanical tests
	3.8	Visual examination
	3.9	Stress corrosion cracking test
	3.10	Hydraulic test
	3.11	Rectification of defects
	3.12	Identification
	3.13	Certification of materials
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>EQUIPMENT FOR MOORING AND ANCHORING</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>Anchors</b>
	1.1	Scope
	1.2	Manufacture
	1.3	Cast steel anchors
	1.4	Forged steel anchors
	1.5	Fabricated steel anchors
	1.6	Rectification
	1.7	Super high holding power (SHHP) anchors
	1.8	Assembly
	1.9	Proof test of anchors
	1.10	Clearances and tolerances
	1.11	Identification
	1.12	Certification



---

<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Stud link chain cables for ships</b>
	2.1	Scope
	2.2	Manufacture
	2.3	Flash butt welded chain cable
	2.4	Cast chain cables
	2.5	Forged chain cables
	2.6	Stud material
	2.7	Welding of studs
	2.8	Heat treatment of completed chain cables
	2.9	Testing of completed chain cables
	2.10	Proof load tests
	2.11	Breaking load tests
	2.12	Dimensional inspection
	2.13	Fittings for chain cables
	2.14	Substitute single links
	2.15	Dimensions and tolerances
	2.16	Identification
	2.17	Certification
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Stud link mooring chain cables</b>
	3.1	Scope
	3.2	Manufacture
	3.3	Dimensions and tolerances
	3.4	Studs
	3.5	Heat treatment of completed chain cables
	3.6	Testing of completed chain cables
	3.7	Connecting common links or substitute links
	3.8	Fittings for offshore mooring chain
	3.9	Identification
	3.10	Documentation
	3.11	Certification
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Studless mooring chain cables</b>
	4.1	Scope
	4.2	Manufacture
	4.3	Shape and dimensions of links
	4.4	Dimensional tolerances
	4.5	Heat treatment
	4.6	Testing of completed chain
	4.7	Connecting or substitute links
	4.8	Fittings
	4.9	Identification
	4.10	Certification
	4.11	Documentation
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Short link chain cables</b>
	5.1	Scope
	5.2	Manufacture
	5.3	Bar material
	5.4	Testing and inspection of chain cables
	5.5	Dimensions and tolerances
	5.6	Identification
	5.7	Certification
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Steel wire ropes</b>
	6.1	Scope
	6.2	General requirements
	6.3	Steel wire for ropes
	6.4	Tests on completed ropes
	6.5	Inspection
	6.6	Identification
	6.7	Certification

<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Fibre ropes</b>
	7.1	Manufacture
	7.2	Tests of completed ropes
	7.3	Identification
	7.4	Certification
 <b>CHAPTER</b>	 <b>11</b>	 <b>APPROVAL OF WELDING CONSUMABLES</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General</b>
	1.1	Scope
	1.2	Grading
	1.3	Manufacture
	1.4	Approval procedures
	1.5	Annual inspection and tests
	1.6	Changes in grading
	1.7	Manufacturers' Quality Assurance Systems
	1.8	Certification
 <b>Section</b>	 <b>2</b>	 <b>Mechanical testing procedures</b>
	2.1	Dimensions of test specimens
	2.2	Testing procedures
	2.3	Re-testing procedures
 <b>Section</b>	 <b>3</b>	 <b>Electrodes for manual and gravity welding</b>
	3.1	General
	3.2	Deposited metal test assemblies
	3.3	Butt weld test assemblies
	3.4	Hydrogen test
	3.5	Fillet weld test assemblies
	3.6	Electrodes designed for deep penetration welding
	3.7	Deep penetration butt weld test assemblies
	3.8	Deep penetration fillet weld test assemblies
	3.9	Electrodes designed for gravity or contact welding
	3.10	Annual tests
 <b>Section</b>	 <b>4</b>	 <b>Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding</b>
	4.1	General
	4.2	Approval tests for multi-run technique
	4.3	Deposited metal test assemblies (multi-run technique)
	4.4	Butt weld test assemblies (multi-run technique)
	4.5	Approval tests for two-run technique
	4.6	Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique)
	4.7	Annual tests
 <b>Section</b>	 <b>5</b>	 <b>Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding</b>
	5.1	General
	5.2	Approval tests for manual and semi-automatic multi-run welding
	5.3	Approval tests for multi-run automatic welding
	5.4	Approval tests for two-run automatic welding
	5.5	Annual tests
 <b>Section</b>	 <b>6</b>	 <b>Consumables for use in electro-slag and electro-gas welding</b>
	6.1	General
	6.2	Butt weld test assemblies
	6.3	Annual tests
 <b>Section</b>	 <b>7</b>	 <b>Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials</b>
	7.1	General
	7.2	Approval tests for manual (m), semi-automatic (S) and automatic multi-run (M) techniques
	7.3	Approval tests for high heat input automatic (A) techniques
	7.4	Annual tests

---

<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Consumables for welding austenitic and duplex stainless steels</b>
	8.1	General
	8.2	Deposited metal test assemblies
	8.3	Butt weld test assemblies
	8.4	Fillet weld test assemblies
	8.5	Annual tests
<b>Section</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>Consumables for welding aluminium alloys</b>
	9.1	General
	9.2	Approval tests for manual, semi-automatic and automatic multi-run techniques
	9.3	Deposited metal test assembly
	9.4	Butt weld test assemblies
	9.5	Fillet weld test assembly
	9.6	Approval tests for two-run technique
	9.7	Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique)
	9.8	Annual tests
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>WELDING QUALIFICATIONS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General qualification requirements</b>
	1.1	General
	1.2	Design
	1.3	Materials
	1.4	Performance of welding tests
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels</b>
	2.1	General
	2.2	Welding variables
	2.3	Steel test assemblies
	2.4	Welding of steel test assemblies
	2.5	Non-destructive examination (NDE)
	2.6	Destructive tests – General requirements
	2.7	Destructive tests for steel butt welds
	2.8	Destructive tests for steel fillet welds
	2.9	Destructive tests for T, K, Y steel nozzle welds
	2.10	Destructive tests for steel pipe branch welds
	2.11	Destructive tests for weld cladding of steel
	2.12	Mechanical test acceptance criteria for steels
	2.13	Failure to meet requirements (Retests)
	2.14	Test records
	2.15	Range of approval
	2.16	Welding procedure specification (WPS)
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Specific requirements for stainless steels</b>
	3.1	Scope
	3.2	Austenitic stainless steels
	3.3	Duplex stainless steels
	3.4	Martensitic stainless steels
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Welding procedure tests for non-ferrous alloys</b>
	4.1	Requirements for aluminium alloys
	4.2	Requirements for copper alloys
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Welder qualification tests</b>
	5.1	Scope
	5.2	Welder qualification test assemblies
	5.3	Examination and testing
	5.4	Acceptance criteria
	5.5	Failure to meet requirements
	5.6	Range of approval
	5.7	Welders qualification certification

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>REQUIREMENTS FOR WELDED CONSTRUCTION</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General welding requirements</b>
	1.1	Scope
	1.2	Design
	1.3	Materials
	1.4	Requirements for manufacture and workmanship
	1.5	Cutting of materials
	1.6	Forming and bending
	1.7	Assembly and preparation for welding
	1.8	Welding equipment and welding consumables
	1.9	Welding procedure and welder qualifications
	1.10	Welding during construction
	1.11	Non-destructive examination of welds
	1.12	Routine weld tests
	1.13	Rectification of material defects
	1.14	Rectification of distortion
	1.15	Rectification of welds defects
	1.16	Post-weld heat treatment
	1.17	Certification
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery</b>
	2.1	Scope
	2.2	Welding consumables
	2.3	Welding procedure and welder qualifications
	2.4	Construction and workmanship
	2.5	Butt welds
	2.6	Lap connections
	2.7	Closing plates
	2.8	Stud welding
	2.9	Fillet welds
	2.10	Post-weld heat treatment
	2.11	Tolerances
	2.12	Non-destructive examination of welds
	2.13	Weld repairs
	2.14	Welding afloat with water backing
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Specific requirements for fabricated steel sections</b>
	3.1	Scope
	3.2	Dimensions and tolerances
	3.3	Identification of products
	3.4	Manufacture and workmanship
	3.5	Non-destructive examination
	3.6	Routine weld tests
	3.7	Certification and records
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels</b>
	4.1	Scope
	4.2	Cutting and forming of shells and heads
	4.3	Fitting of shell plates and attachments
	4.4	Welding
	4.5	General requirements for routine weld production tests
	4.6	Production test plate assembly requirements
	4.7	Inspection and testing
	4.8	Mechanical requirements
	4.9	Failure to meet requirements
	4.10	Heat treatment
	4.11	Basic requirements for heat treatment of fusion welded pressure vessels
	4.12	Non-Destructive Examination of welds
	4.13	Extent of NDE for Class 1 pressure vessels
	4.14	Extent of NDE for Class 2/1 pressure vessels
	4.15	NDE method
	4.16	Evaluation and reports
	4.17	Repair to welds

<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Specific requirements for pressure pipework</b>
	5.1	Scope
	5.2	Manufacture and workmanship
	5.3	Heat treatment after bending of pipes
	5.4	Post-weld heat treatment
	5.5	Non-destructive examination
	5.6	Repairs to pipe welds
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Repair of existing ships by welding</b>
	6.1	Scope
	6.2	Materials used for repairs
	6.3	Workmanship
	6.4	Non-destructive examination
	6.5	Repairs to welds defects
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Austenitic and duplex stainless steel – Specific requirements</b>
	7.1	Scope
	7.2	Design
	7.3	Forming and bending
	7.4	Fabrication and welding
	7.5	Repairs
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Specific requirements for welded aluminium</b>
	8.1	Scope
	8.2	Forming and bending
	8.3	Fabrication and welding
	8.4	Non-destructive examination
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>PLASTICS MATERIALS AND OTHER NON-METALLIC MATERIALS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General requirements</b>
	1.1	Scope
	1.2	Information on material quality and application
	1.3	Manufacture
	1.4	Survey procedure
	1.5	Alternative survey procedure
	1.6	Post-cure heating
	1.7	Test material
	1.8	Re-test procedure
	1.9	Visual and non-destructive examination
	1.10	Rectification of defective material
	1.11	Identification of products and base materials
	1.12	Certification
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials</b>
	2.1	Scope
	2.2	Thermoplastic polymers
	2.3	Thermosetting resins
	2.4	Reinforcements
	2.5	Reinforced thermoplastic polymers
	2.6	Reinforced thermosetting resins
	2.7	Core materials
	2.8	Specific requirements for end-grain balsa
	2.9	Specific requirements for rigid foams (PVC, Polyurethane and other types)
	2.10	Synthetic felt type materials with or without microspheres
	2.11	Machinery chocking compounds (resin chocks)
	2.12	Rudder and pintle bearings
	2.13	Stern tube bearings
	2.14	Plywoods
	2.15	Adhesive and sealant materials
	2.16	Repair compounds

---

<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Testing procedures</b>
	3.1	General
	3.2	Preparation of test samples
	3.3	Preparation of test specimens
	3.4	Testing
	3.5	Discarding of test specimens
	3.6	Reporting of results
	3.7	Tests for specific materials
	3.8	Structural core materials
	3.9	Machinery chocking compounds
	3.10	Rudder and pintle bearings
	3.11	Stern tube bearings
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Plastics pipes and fittings</b>
	4.1	Scope
	4.2	Design requirements
	4.3	Manufacture
	4.4	Quality assurance
	4.5	Dimensional tolerances
	4.6	Composition
	4.7	Testing
	4.8	Visual examination
	4.9	Hydraulic test
	4.10	Repair procedure
	4.11	Identification
	4.12	Certification
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Control of material quality for composite construction</b>
	5.1	Scope
	5.2	Design submission
	5.3	Construction
	5.4	Quality assurance
	5.5	Dimensional tolerances
	5.6	Material composition
	5.7	Material testing
	5.8	Visual examination
	5.9	Repair procedure
	5.10	Material identification
	5.11	Minimum tested requirements for material approval
	5.12	Closed cell foams for core construction based on PVC or polyurethane
	5.13	End-grain balsa
	5.14	Synthetic chocking compounds
	5.15	Other materials

# General Requirements

# Chapter 1

Sections 1 & 2

## Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **Approval and survey requirements**
- 3 **Certification of materials**
- 4 **General requirements for manufacture**
- 5 **Non-destructive examination**
- 6 **References**

## ■ Section 1 Scope

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 Materials used for the construction, conversion, modification or repair of ships, other marine structures and associated machinery which are classed or are intended for classification by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as LR), are to be manufactured, tested and inspected in accordance with these Rules.

1.1.2 Wrought, cast and extruded materials are to comply with the requirements of Chapters 1 and 2, and the appropriate specific requirements of Chapters 3 to 9 of these Rules. Mooring and anchoring equipment is to comply with the requirements of Chapters 1 and 2, and the appropriate specific requirements of Chapter 10. Manufacturers of these materials must be approved by LR according to the requirements in Sections 2 or 3. Only those materials within a manufacturer's scope of approval may be used.

1.1.3 Welding consumables are to comply with the requirements of Chapter 11 of these Rules.

1.1.4 Where welding is used for the construction, conversion, modification or repair of ships, other marine structures and associated machinery which are classed or are intended for classification by LR, welding qualifications and tests shall be performed according to Chapter 12 of these Rules. All welding shall be performed according to Chapter 13 of these Rules.

1.1.5 Plastics materials are to comply with the requirements of Chapter 14 of these Rules.

1.1.6 The materials and components which are to comply with these requirements for the purposes of classification are defined in the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction.

## ■ Section 2 Approval and survey requirements

### 2.1 Approval and survey requirements – General

2.1.1 Marine materials manufactured in accordance with Chapters 3 to 10 of these Rules are to be made at works which have been approved by LR for the type and grade of product being supplied.

2.1.2 Materials manufactured in accordance with Chapters 3 to 10 of these Rules are to be manufactured, tested and inspected under Survey according to the requirements of one of the following two schemes:

- (a) The Materials Survey Scheme, see 2.3.
- (b) The Materials Quality Scheme, see 2.4.

2.1.3 For the purposes of survey, LR Surveyors are to be allowed access to all relevant parts of the works, and are to be provided with the necessary facilities and information to enable them to verify that the manufacture is being carried out in accordance with the approved procedures. Facilities are also to be provided for the selection of test material, the witnessing of mechanical tests and the examination of materials, as required by these Rules.

2.1.4 Where a production process, testing or examination of materials is sub-contracted, this must be with the approval of LR. Surveyors are to be allowed access to the sub-contractor's premises in order to conduct Surveys according to the requirements of these Rules.

2.1.5 Products manufactured in accordance with Chapters 11 and 14 are to be approved in accordance with the requirements therein. For these materials, approval is given for a specific product on a type approval basis, rather than the approved manufacturer/survey arrangements applied to materials covered by Chapters 3 to 10.

### 2.2 LR Approval – General

2.2.1 Unless specifically stated in other Chapters of these Rules, all LR approvals apply to materials used in applications intended for marine service, as described in 1.1.

2.2.2 The procedures for application for approval of manufacturers and products, the details of the information to be supplied by the manufacturer, and the test programme to be conducted on the products are given in the appropriate book of LR's *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships* (MQPS). This is published in the CD Live section of LR's web site at <http://www.lr.org>.

# General Requirements

# Chapter 1

## Section 2

2.2.3 LR publishes lists of approved manufacturers and approved products. The lists are published in the CD Live section of LR's website, <http://www.lr.org>.

The lists are as follows:

- *List of Approved Manufacturers of Materials.*
- *Approved Welding Consumables for Use in Ship Construction.*
- *Lists of Paints, Resins, Reinforcements and Associated Materials.*
- *Lists of Approved Anchors.*

2.2.4 For initial LR approval as an Approved Manufacturer for a particular material, the manufacturer is required to demonstrate to the satisfaction of LR, that the necessary manufacturing and testing facilities are available, and are supervised by suitably qualified personnel. A specified programme of tests is to be carried out under the supervision of LR Surveyors, and the results are to be to the satisfaction of LR.

2.2.5 If the results of the initial assessment of the manufacturer, and the test programme are considered satisfactory, the manufacturer will be added to the list of approved manufacturers of materials, and a certificate of approval will be issued to the manufacturer by LR, showing the scope of materials and grades covered by the approval. Initial approval will generally be under the Materials Survey Scheme, see 2.3.

2.2.6 Approved manufacturers who meet the entry requirements, may apply for approval under the Materials Quality Scheme, see 2.4.

2.2.7 When a manufacturer has more than one works, the manufacturer's approval shall only be valid for the works where the test programme was conducted.

2.2.8 It is the manufacturer's responsibility to advise LR of all changes to the manufacturing process parameters that may affect the application of the material, prior to the adoption of the changes in production. Additional approval tests may be required to maintain the approval.

2.2.9 Maintenance of approval is dependent on the manufacturer continuing to meet the requirements of the applicable sections of these Rules.

2.2.10 Where it is considered that an approved manufacturer is not maintaining its responsibilities to comply with these Rules, the approval may be suspended by LR until such time that agreed corrective and preventive actions are considered to have been satisfactorily carried out. If considered necessary, LR may require that the normal level of testing and inspection is increased.

2.2.11 In all instances, LR will reduce the scope of, or withdraw approval from, a manufacturer where it becomes apparent that the manufacturer is unable to maintain compliance with these Rules, or the scope of approval.

2.2.12 Where a manufacturer disagrees with any decisions made with regard to LR approval, they may appeal in writing to LR.

2.2.13 Any documents, data or other information received as part of the approval process, will be treated as strictly confidential, and will not be disclosed to any third party, without the manufacturer's prior written consent.

## 2.3 Materials Survey Scheme

2.3.1 Materials according to Chapters 3 to 10 of these Rules and produced under the Materials Survey Scheme will be subject to Direct Survey by an LR Surveyor. The scheme requires the Surveyor to survey and certify all materials according to the requirements of these Rules.

2.3.2 Approved manufacturers are to request a survey of the material by an LR Surveyor, when required. Manufacturers must provide the Surveyor with details of the order, specification and any special conditions additional to the requirements of these Rules.

2.3.3 All mechanical tests required by these Rules are to be witnessed. The Surveyor may allow part of this task to be carried out by a member of the works staff by prior written agreement.

2.3.4 Before final acceptance, all materials are to be submitted to the specified tests and examinations under conditions acceptable to the Surveyor. The results are to comply with the Rules, and all materials are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

2.3.5 The specified tests and examinations are to be carried out prior to the despatch of finished materials from the manufacturer's works. Where materials are supplied in the rough or unfinished condition, as many as possible of the specified tests are to be carried out by the manufacturer, and any tests or examinations that are not completed are to be carried out under survey at a subsequent stage of manufacture.

2.3.6 In the event of any material proving unsatisfactory during subsequent working, machining or fabrication, such material is to be rejected, notwithstanding any previous certification.

2.3.7 In addition to witnessing test results, the Surveyor is responsible for ensuring that the manufacturing process, inspection, testing, identification and certification are properly conducted. As part of the Materials Survey Scheme, regular visits will be made to all relevant parts of the works to check for compliance against the requirements of these Rules, and to ensure that the manufacturer is maintaining the capability to consistently produce approved materials.

2.3.8 The Surveyor, when satisfied that the material fully meets the requirements of these Rules, will certify the material in accordance with Section 3 and the appropriate Chapter of these Rules.



# General Requirements

# Chapter 1

## Section 2

2.3.9 For a manufacturer to maintain approval under this scheme, the works will be subject to a periodic inspection of all relevant parts of the works, at intervals not exceeding three years. The procedure for this periodic inspection is given in Book B of LR's *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships* (MQPS). This periodic inspection is in addition to the regular visits made according to 2.3.7.

## 2.4 Materials Quality Scheme

2.4.1 The manufacturer may apply to be approved under the Materials Quality Scheme, where the following requirements are met:

- (a) The manufacturer has been approved by LR for a minimum of three years; and
- (b) The manufacturer has a quality management system, which has been certified as meeting the requirements of ISO 9001 by a certification body recognised by LR, which is one accredited by a member of the International Accreditation Forum; and
- (c) The manufacturer has a satisfactory history of quality performance in the manufacture and supply of LR approved materials.

2.4.2 Special consideration may be given to manufacturers who have not been approved under the Materials Survey Scheme, and may be considered onto the Materials Quality Scheme providing:

- (a) They have a quality management system, which has been certified as meeting the requirements of ISO 9001 by a certification body recognised by LR, which is one accredited by a member of the International Accreditation Forum.
- (b) They can demonstrate a history of satisfactory supply of materials, which LR deems to be equivalent to those for which approval under the Materials Quality Scheme is requested.

In this case, the initial assessment of the manufacturer will include the product testing regime, as required for initial approval under the Materials Survey Scheme, see 2.2.4.

2.4.3 The Scheme is based on a Scheme Certification Schedule, made between LR and each individual manufacturer. The schedule will stipulate:

- (a) The scope of approved products covered by the approval.
- (b) The process route applied by the manufacturer for each approved product.
- (c) The arrangements for LR scheme, audits, including scope, frequency, schedule, etc.
- (d) Agreed procedures for certification of approved materials.
- (e) Information to be supplied periodically to LR by the manufacturer.
- (f) Procedures for the use of the scheme mark.

2.4.4 The contents of the Scheme Certification Schedule are to remain confidential between LR and the manufacturer.

2.4.5 The Materials Quality Scheme is based on a technical audit approach, and is designed to complement the quality management systems audits performed to ISO 9001. The role of the Surveyor in scheme audits is to:

- (a) Verify that the quality management system is being maintained and audited to the requirements of ISO 9001.
- (b) Verify that the requirements of these Rules are being implemented.
- (c) Verify that the requirements of this Scheme are being implemented.
- (d) Perform Scheme audits, which focus on the technical aspects of the product realisation process, particularly with regard to Rule requirements.
- (e) Perform witness testing as required.
- (f) Verify the data supplied to LR periodically by the manufacturer, as part of the Scheme requirements.

2.4.6 The Materials Quality Scheme may be applied to any approved manufacturer who meets the eligibility requirements, and who applies to be approved under the scheme. If approved under the scheme, the manufacturer's name will appear on the List of Approved Manufacturers published by LR, with an indication that they are approved under this scheme.

2.4.7 The scheme is available to manufacturers producing approved materials according to Chapters 3 to 10 of these Rules.

2.4.8 The procedures for application for approval for the Materials Quality Scheme are given in Book M of LR's *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships* (MQPS).

2.4.9 Where LR is satisfied that the manufacturer meets all of the requirements of the Scheme, and that it is appropriate for the products being manufactured, a Scheme Certification Schedule will be issued, which must be signed by an authorised representative of the manufacturer.

2.4.10 Once the Scheme Certification Schedule has been signed by both parties, LR will issue the manufacturer with a certificate of approval according to the Materials Quality Scheme.

2.4.11 Maintenance of approval will be according to the Scheme Certification Schedule, agreed between LR and the manufacturer, and these Rules.

2.4.12 It is the responsibility of the attending Surveyor, to perform regular Scheme audits at the manufacturer's works in accordance with the Scheme Certification Schedule, and the requirements of these Rules.

2.4.13 It is not the intention to repeat the audit according to ISO 9001, conducted by the recognised certification body. The Surveyor is, however, to be satisfied that these audits are being conducted effectively. Where appropriate, the Surveyor may conduct a partial audit to ISO 9001 to verify this.

# General Requirements

# Chapter 1

Sections 2 & 3

**2.4.14** Witness tests may be conducted as part of the Scheme audit. This will involve the selection of material, and the witness of sampling and testing according to the requirements of the appropriate chapter of these Rules. Such witness testing may be on LR grades, or materials which the Surveyor deems to be equivalent (for the purposes of audit testing only).

**2.4.15** Once every three years, a full assessment of scheme compliance will be conducted by a Surveyor who is not the regular attending Surveyor.

**2.4.16** In the event of any change, which means that the manufacturer no longer meets the requirements for the Materials Quality Scheme (for example the loss of ISO 9001 approval), the Scheme certificate of approval will be revoked. The manufacturer will revert to the Materials Survey Scheme, and will be subject to survey according to that scheme.

## ■ Section 3 Certification of materials

### 3.1 General

**3.1.1** All materials subject to these Rules are to be supplied with appropriate certification, as required by the relevant requirements of these Rules. This will normally be a LR certificate or a manufacturer's certificate validated by LR, although a manufacturer's certificate may be accepted where allowed by the relevant requirements of these Rules.

**3.1.2** Manufacturers approved under the Materials Quality Scheme are licensed to apply the scheme mark to manufacturer's certificates according to the requirements of the scheme, see 2.4.

**3.1.3** The following certificate types are to be used, (a) and (b) for the Materials Survey Scheme, and (d) for the Materials Quality Scheme:

(a) **LR Certificate**

This type of certificate is issued by LR based on the results of testing and inspection being satisfactorily carried out in accordance with the requirements of these Rules.

(b) **Manufacturer's certificate validated by LR**

A manufacturer's certificate, validated by LR on the basis of inspection and testing carried out on the delivered product in accordance with the requirements of these Rules may be accepted. In this case, the certificate will include the following statement:

"We hereby certify, that the material has been made by an approved process and satisfactorily tested in accordance with the Rules of Lloyd's Register."

(c) **Manufacturer's certificate**

This type of certificate is issued by the manufacturer, based on the results of testing and inspection being satisfactorily carried out in accordance with the requirements of these Rules, or the applicable National or International standard. The certificate is to be validated by the manufacturer's authorised representative, independent of the manufacturing department. The certificate will contain a declaration that the products are in compliance with the requirements of these Rules or the applicable National or International standard.

(d) **Manufacturer's certificate issued under the Materials Quality Scheme**

Where a manufacturer is approved according to the Materials Quality Scheme, they will issue manufacturer's certificates bearing the scheme mark. The certificates must also bear the following statement:

"This certificate is issued under the arrangements authorised by Lloyd's Register (operating group) in accordance with the requirements of the Materials Quality Scheme and certificate number MQS ....."

**3.1.4** Where these Rules allow for the issue of a manufacturer's certificate for materials, either validated by an LR Surveyor, or bearing the Materials Quality Scheme mark, the manufacturer is to ensure that a copy of the certificate is supplied to LR.

### 3.2 Materials Survey Scheme

**3.2.1** The requirements for certification of materials according to the Materials Survey Scheme, are established by the relevant requirements of these Rules.

**3.2.2** The manufacturer is to supply the surveyor with any additional customer order requirements that are in addition to the requirements of these Rules, when the request for the issue or validation of the certificate is made.

### 3.3 Materials Quality Scheme

**3.3.1** Part of the certification schedule, will include an agreement for the manufacturer, to apply the scheme mark to manufacturer's certificates, relating to approved products within the scope of approval of the manufacturer.

**3.3.2** The use of the scheme mark is governed by the following:

- (a) The use of the scheme mark is not transferable. It is only to be used in conjunction with the manufacturer and works name and location shown on the certificate of approval.
- (b) The scheme mark must be applied to all manufacturers' certificates relating to approved materials produced under the Scheme.
- (c) In no circumstances is the scheme mark to be applied to test certificates relating to non-approved products.
- (d) The scheme mark is not to be used in any way which may imply approval for products which are not covered within the manufacturer's scope of approval.

- (e) Where a manufacturer is removed or suspended from the scheme, use of the scheme mark must cease immediately.

3.3.3 The certificate as given in 3.1.3(d) is to be validated by an authorised representative of the manufacturer. The size and position of the scheme mark and statement on the manufacturer's certificate must be agreed by LR.

3.3.4 Where manufacturers are approved under this scheme, the manufacturer's certificate, issued according to these requirements, fully meets the materials certification requirements of these Rules.

## 3.4 Electronic certification

3.4.1 Where these Rules allow the issue of manufacturers' test certificates, under either the Materials Survey Scheme or the Materials Quality Scheme, these may be issued in electronic format provided that:

- All tests and inspections have been satisfactorily completed, according to the requirements of these Rules.
- Procedures are in place to ensure that electronic certificates are only issued, according to the requirements of these Rules.
- The certification system is subject to regular inspection by the attending Surveyor.
- A copy of the electronic certificate is supplied to LR. This copy will be deemed to be the original of the test certificate.

3.4.2 In addition to the requirements of 3.4.1, for items certified under the Materials Survey Scheme, the LR office stamp and Surveyor's name may be applied electronically. This is only allowed where the Surveyor has access to the results of the relevant tests and inspections, and is able to authorise by access to the electronic system, the application of the LR office stamp and Surveyor's name on the test certificate. The name of the authorising Surveyor is to be the name included on the certificate. The authorisation may be conducted electronically either at the manufacturers' works, or remotely by the Surveyor.

3.4.3 If the LR office stamp and name are being applied electronically according to 3.4.2, then the manufacturer is to ensure that the Surveyor is provided with all relevant information regarding the customer order, when the request for authorisation is made.

## Section 4 General requirements for manufacture

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 The following definitions are applicable to these

Rules:

Item: A single forging, casting, plate, tube or other rolled product as delivered.

Piece: The rolled product from a single slab or billet or from a single ingot if this is rolled directly into plates, strip, sections or bars.

Batch: A number of similar items or pieces presented as a group for acceptance testing.

Wide flat: Flat product of a width over 150 mm, up to and including 1250 mm and thickness generally over 4 mm. Edges are square cut, i.e., hot rolled on the four sides. Supplied in lengths, not coils.

Plate/sheet: Flat rolled product whereby the edges are allowed to deform freely. Supplied flat and generally in square or rectangular shapes with a width of 600 mm or over, but other shapes may also apply.

4.1.2 Where a manufacturer purchases semi-finished products (e.g., slabs) for the purpose of re-processing (e.g., rolling), the manufacturer is to ensure that the materials are from an LR approved manufacturer, and manufactured within the scope of approval of that manufacturer. The aim of chemical analysis, dimensions, surface and internal quality checks are to be agreed between the manufacturer and purchaser. The semi-finished materials must be supplied with appropriate certification, according to these Rules.

4.1.3 It is the responsibility of the manufacturer, to ensure compliance with all relevant aspects of these Rules. All deviations are to be recorded as non-compliances, and brought to the attention of the Surveyor, along with corrective actions taken. Failure to do this is considered to render the material as not complying with these Rules.

4.1.4 The manufacturer is to maintain all test and inspection records required by these Rules for at least seven years. Records are to be made available to LR on request.

4.1.5 Where material is produced which does not meet all aspects of these Rules, the manufacturer may apply to LR for a concession to certify the material as approved. LR will consider each application on a case-by-case basis, although concession will only normally be granted in exceptional circumstances. If the concession is granted, a formal written numbered concession will be issued to the manufacturer. The concession number must be applied to the approval certificate, whether it is an LR certificate or a validated manufacturer's certificate.

# General Requirements

# Chapter 1

Section 4

## 4.2 Chemical composition

4.2.1 The ladle analysis used for certification purposes is to be determined after all alloying elements have been added and sufficient time allowed for such additions to equalise throughout the ladle.

4.2.2 The method of taking samples is to ensure that the reported analysis is representative of the cast. In addition, the manufacturer must determine and certify the chemical composition of every heat of material.

4.2.3 Where more than one sample is taken, the method of averaging for the final certificate result and the determination of acceptable variations in composition are to be agreed with the Surveyor.

4.2.4 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to be determined by the manufacturer in an adequately equipped and competently staffed laboratory. The manufacturer's analysis will be accepted, but may be subject to occasional independent checks if required by the Surveyor.

4.2.5 The analysis is to include the content of all the elements detailed in the relevant Sections of the Rules and, where appropriate, the National or International Standard applied.

4.2.6 At the discretion of the Surveyors, a check chemical analysis of suitable samples from products may also be required. These samples are to be taken from the material used for mechanical tests but, where this is not practicable, an alternative procedure for obtaining a representative sample is to be agreed with the manufacturer. For product samples, the permissible limits of deviation from the specified ladle analysis are to be in accordance with an appropriate International or National Standard specification.

## 4.3 Heat treatment

4.3.1 Materials are to be supplied in the condition specified in, or permitted by, the relevant Chapters of these Rules.

4.3.2 Heat treatment is to be carried out in properly constructed furnaces, which are efficiently maintained and have adequate means for control and recording of temperature. The furnace dimensions are to be such as to allow the whole item to be uniformly heated to the necessary temperature. In the case of very large components, which require heat treatment, alternative methods will be specially considered.

4.3.3 The manufacturer is to maintain the records, including the temperature charts of all heat treatments, for at least seven years.

## 4.4 Test material

4.4.1 Sufficient test material is to be provided for the preparation of the test specimen detailed in the specific requirements. It is, however, in the interests of manufacturers to provide additional material for any re-tests which may be necessary, as insufficient or unacceptable test material may be a cause for rejection.

4.4.2 The test material is to be representative of the item or batch and is not to be separated until all the specified heat treatment has been completed, except where provision for an alternative procedure is made in subsequent Chapters of these Rules.

4.4.3 All test material is to be selected by the Surveyor or an authorised deputy and identified by suitable markings which are to be maintained during the preparation of the test specimens.

## 4.5 Mechanical tests

4.5.1 The dimensions, number and direction of test specimens are to be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 2 and the specific requirements for the product.

4.5.2 Where Charpy impact tests are required, a set of three test specimens is to be prepared and the average energy value is to comply with the requirements of subsequent Chapters. One individual value may be less than the required average value, provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of that value.

4.5.3 In the Rules, mechanical properties are specified in SI units, but alternative units may be used for acceptance testing. In such cases, the specified values are to be converted in accordance with the appropriate conversions given in Table 1.4.1. It is preferred that test results be reported in SI units, but alternative units may be used provided that the test certificate gives, in the same units, the equivalent specification values.

**Table 1.4.1 Conversions from SI units to metric and Imperial units**

1 N/mm <sup>2</sup> or MPa	=	0,102 kgf/mm <sup>2</sup>
1 N/mm <sup>2</sup> or MPa	=	0,0647 tonf/in <sup>2</sup>
1 N/mm <sup>2</sup> or MPa	=	0,145 x 10 <sup>3</sup> lbf/in <sup>2</sup>
1 J	=	0,102 kgf m
1 J	=	0,738 ft lbs
1 kgf/mm <sup>2</sup>	=	9,81 N/mm <sup>2</sup> or MPa
1 tonf/in <sup>2</sup>	=	15,4 N/mm <sup>2</sup> or MPa
1 lbf/in <sup>2</sup>	=	6,89 x 10 <sup>-3</sup> N/mm <sup>2</sup> or MPa
1 kgf m	=	9,81 J
1 ft lbf	=	1,36 J

# General Requirements

# Chapter 1

Sections 4 & 5

## 4.6 Re-test procedures

4.6.1 Re-test procedures are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2,1.4.

## 4.7 Rectification of defective material

4.7.1 Small surface imperfections may be removed by mechanical means provided that, after such treatment, the dimensions are acceptable, the area is proved free from defects and the rectification has been completed in accordance with any applicable requirements of subsequent Chapters of these Rules and to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

4.7.2 The repair of defects by welding, can be accepted only when permitted by the appropriate specific requirements and provided that the agreement of the Surveyor is obtained before the work is commenced. When a repair has been agreed, it is necessary in all cases to prove by suitable methods of non-destructive examination that the defects have been completely removed before welding is commenced. Welding procedures and inspection on completion of the repair, are to be in accordance with the appropriate specific requirements and are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

4.7.3 Manufacturers wishing to carry out welding work must have at their disposal the necessary workshops, lifting gear, welding equipment, pre-heating, and where necessary annealing facilities and testing devices, as well as certified welders and supervisors to enable them to perform the work properly. Proof shall be furnished to the Surveyor that these conditions are satisfied before welding work begins.

## 4.8 Identification of materials

4.8.1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification, which will enable all finished materials to be traced to the original cast, and the Surveyors are to be given full facilities for tracing the material when required. When any item has been identified by the personal mark of a Surveyor, or his deputy, this is not to be removed until an acceptable new identification mark has been made by a Surveyor. Failure to comply with this condition will render the item liable to rejection.

4.8.2 Before any item is finally accepted, it is to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in at least one place with the particulars detailed in the appropriate specific requirements.

4.8.3 Where hard stamps such as the LR brand stamp are issued to manufacturers to carry out the stamping on behalf of LR, the procedure for issue, maintenance and use of stamps is to be agreed in writing.

4.8.4 Hard stamping is to be used except where this may be detrimental to the material, in which case stencilling, painting or electric etching is to be used. Paints used to identify alloy steels are to be free from lead, copper, zinc or tin, i.e., the dried film is not to contain any of these elements in quantities of more than 250 ppm.

4.8.5 Where a number of identical items are securely fastened together in bundles, the manufacturer need only brand the top item of each bundle. Alternatively, a durable label giving the required particulars may be attached to each bundle.

## Section 5 Non-destructive examination

### 5.1 General NDE requirements

5.1.1 Prior to the final acceptance of materials, surface inspection and verification of dimensions, non-destructive examination is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements detailed in this Section and subsequent Chapters of these Rules.

5.1.2 It is the manufacturer's responsibility for maintaining the required tolerances and making the necessary measurements. Periodic surveys by the Surveyor do not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

5.1.3 When there is visible evidence to doubt the soundness of any material or component, such as flaws in test specimens or suspicious surface marks, the manufacturer is expected to prove the quality of the material by a suitable method.

5.1.4 Acceptance criteria are detailed in subsequent Chapters of these Rules. Alternative specifications may be submitted for consideration, provided they demonstrate equivalence to these Rules.

### 5.2 Personnel qualifications

5.2.1 The shipyard, fabricator or manufacturer is to ensure that personnel carrying out non-destructive examination or interpreting the results of non-destructive examination are qualified to the appropriate level of a nationally recognised scheme such as ISO 9712, EN 473, PCN, ACCP or SNT-TC-1A. Level 1 personnel are not permitted to interpret results to Codes or Standards.

5.2.2 When certification of personnel is made on an in-house basis under a scheme such as SNT-TC-1A, practical examinations are to be relevant to material, product type, joint configuration, material thickness and acceptance criteria of items inspected for Classification purposes.

5.2.3 Personnel qualifications of NDE operators are to be randomly checked by the Surveyor.

### 5.3 Non-destructive examination methods

5.3.1 Non-destructive examination methods are to comply with the relevant requirements of these Rules.

# General Requirements

# Chapter 1

Sections 5 & 6

## 5.4 Non-destructive examination procedures

5.4.1 All non-destructive examinations are to be carried out to a procedure that is representative of the item under inspection. As a minimum the procedures are to be in accordance with the following:

- (a) Procedures are to identify the component to be examined, the NDE method, equipment to be used and the full extent of the examinations including any test restrictions.
- (b) Procedures are to specify the qualification and certification requirements of the inspection personnel to be employed.
- (c) Procedures are to state the degree of surface preparation required and the methods of preparation to be used before the examinations are made.
- (d) Procedures are to state the reference standards for testing and the acceptance criteria to be applied to the results of the inspections.
- (e) Procedures are to include the requirement for components to be positively identified and for a datum system or marking system to be applied to ensure repeatability of inspections.
- (f) Procedures are to identify any requirements for increasing the extent of applied NDE where defects have been found during spot examination.
- (g) Procedures are to identify reporting requirements.
- (h) Procedures are to be reviewed by the Surveyor to ensure they are appropriate for the product type.
- (i) Procedures for radiography are to specify the acceptable optical density within the area of interest on the radiograph.
- (k) The minimum optical density within the area of interest on a radiograph is to be equal to or greater than 2,0 for gamma ray and 1,8 for X-ray. A maximum density of 4,0 is acceptable.
- (l) Procedures are to include the method and requirements for equipment calibrations and functional checks.
- (m) Procedures are to be approved by an operator qualified to a minimum of Level III in accordance with a recognised standard.
- (n) The Surveyor will review procedures for compliance with this Section.

5.4.2 The shipyard, fabricator or manufacturer may submit other Codes or Standards for consideration by LR, providing they are equivalent to these Rules. Where no agreed acceptance standard is in place, the acceptance levels contained in the subsequent Chapters of these Rules are to apply.

5.4.3 In the event that proposed acceptance criteria are not considered to be equivalent to these Rules, the criteria may be submitted for special consideration.

## 5.5 Non-destructive examination reports

5.5.1 NDE reports are to include all information required to identify how the examination was executed and are to include the following information where appropriate:

- (a) Date of test.
- (b) Name and qualification of operator with signatures of the operator.
- (c) Details of the component identification, description of test location and volume examined.
- (d) Heat treatment status.
- (e) Weld type, procedure and configuration.
- (f) Surface condition.
- (g) Test procedure.
- (h) Equipment used.
- (j) Test results with a map or record of reportable and/or reject indications, giving location, dimensions and nature of indications.
- (k) Reference to acceptance criteria and evaluation in accordance to these criteria.
- (l) Material type and thickness.
- (m) Calibration.

## Section 6 References

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 The locations of National and International Standards referenced in these Rules are shown in Table 1.6.1.

# General Requirements

# Chapter 1

Section 6

**Table 1.6.1 List of National and International Standards**

Rule reference	Standard
Chapter 1 – General Requirements	ISO 9001: 2008
Chapter 2 – Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials	ISO 6892-1: 2009 ISO 185: 2005 ISO 2566-1: 1999 ISO 148-1: 2009 ISO 7500-1: 2004 ASTM E23-07ae1
Chapter 3 – Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars	EN 10160: 1999 ASTM A578-07 ASTM E112-96 (2004)e2 ASTM E381-01 (2006) ASTM A255-10
Chapter 4 – Steel Castings	ISO 1161: 1984/Amendment 1: 2007
Chapter 5 – Steel Forgings	ASTM E112-10
Chapter 8 – Aluminium Alloys	ASTM G66-99 (2005)e1 ASTM G67-04
Chapter 9 – Copper Alloys	ASTM E272-10
Chapter 10 – Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring	ISO 1704: 2008 ISO 1834: 1999 ISO 4565: 1986 ASTM E112-10 ASTM E381-01 (2006) ASTM A255-10
Chapter 11 – Approval of Welding Consumables	ISO 3690: 2000 ISO 10042: 2005 ASTM G48-03 (2009)
Chapter 12 – Welding Qualifications	ISO 6947: 1997 ISO 5817: 2007 ISO 6520-1: 2007 ISO 6507-1: 2005 ISO 10042: 2005
Chapter 13 – Requirements for Welded Construction	ISO 9712/Cor1: 2006 EN 473: 2008 ISO 6520-1: 2007 SNT-TC-1A: 2006 ISO 10042: 2005
Chapter 14 – Plastics Materials	ISO 527-2: 1993/corr1:1994 ISO 178: 2010 ISO 62: 2008 ISO 75-2: 2004 ISO 604: 2002 ISO 527-4: 1997 ISO 14125: 1998/ amd1:2011 ISO 14130: 1997/ corr1:2003 ISO 1172: 1996 ISO 1922- 2001 ASTM C273/C273M-07 <sup>a</sup> ASTM C393/C393M-06 ISO 845- 2006 ASTM C297/C297M-04 ISO 844-2007 ISO 1922-2001 ISO 180-2000 ASTM D2583-07 BS 2782-10 Method 1001: 1977 ISO 175: 2010





# Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

## Chapter 2

### Section 1

#### Section

- 1 **General requirements for testing**
- 2 **Tensile tests**
- 3 **Impact tests**
- 4 **Ductility tests for pipes and tubes**
- 5 **Embrittlement tests**
- 6 **Crack tip opening displacement tests**
- 7 **Bend tests**
- 8 **Corrosion tests**

### ■ Section 1 General requirements for testing

#### 1.1 Preparation of test specimens

1.1.1 The requirements specified below detail all the tests that may be applied to metallic materials. The specific tests and the test specimen types required for each material type, grade and product type are detailed in the subsequent Chapter of these Rules.

1.1.2 Where test material is cut from products by shearing or flame cutting, a reasonable margin is required to allow sufficient material to be removed from the cut edges during machining of the test specimens.

1.1.3 Test specimens are to be prepared in such a manner that they are not subjected to any significant work hardening, cold straining or heating during straightening or machining.

1.1.4 Test samples are not to be removed from the material they represent until heat treatment is complete. For castings in cases where test samples are separately cast, the castings and samples are to be heat treated together.

1.1.5 Dimensional tolerances are to comply with a relevant ISO specification.

#### 1.2 Testing machines

1.2.1 All tests are to be carried out by competent personnel. Testing machines are to be maintained in a satisfactory and accurate condition and are to be recalibrated at approximately annual intervals. This calibration is to be carried out by organisations of standing that have been approved or recognised by a National Authority and are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor. A record of all calibrations is to be kept available in the test house.

1.2.2 Tensile testing machine load cells are to be calibrated with an accuracy of  $\pm$  one per cent in accordance with ISO 7500-1 or another recognised National Standard.

1.2.3 Impact tests are to be carried out on Charpy V-notch machines calibrated to ISO 148 or ASTM E23 dependent on the testing machine type. The testing machines are to be calibrated using either a direct or indirect method. Other National Standards equivalent to ISO 148 may be considered.

#### 1.3 Discarding of test specimens

1.3.1 If a test specimen fails because of faulty preparation or incorrect operation of the testing machine it may be discarded and replaced by a new test specimen prepared from material adjacent to the original test.

1.3.2 In addition to the discarding of test specimens as indicated in 1.3.1, a tensile test specimen may also be discarded when the specified minimum elongation is not obtained and the distance between the fracture and the nearest gauge mark is less than one-quarter of the gauge length.

#### 1.4 Re-testing procedures

1.4.1 Where the result of any test, other than an impact test, does not comply with the requirements, two additional tests of the same type are to be made from the same test sample, or if sufficient material is not available, a further representative sample taken from the item under test. For acceptance of the material, satisfactory results are to be obtained from both of these additional tests.

1.4.2 Where the result of any test taken from a weld procedure approval test, other than an impact test, does not comply with the requirements, two additional tests of the same type are to be made from the same weld test assembly. Where insufficient original welded assembly is available, a new assembly is to be prepared using the same conditions as the original test weld. For acceptance, satisfactory results are to be obtained from both of these additional tests.

1.4.3 Where the result of any test taken from a welding consumable approval test, other than an impact test, does not comply with the requirements, two additional tests of the same type are to be made from the same weld test assembly. Where insufficient original welded assembly is available, a new assembly is to be prepared using welding consumables from the same batch. If the new assembly is made with the same procedure (particularly the same number of runs) as the original assembly, only the duplicate re-test specimens need be prepared and tested. For acceptance of a weld consumable batch, satisfactory results are to be obtained from both of these additional tests.

# Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

## Chapter 2

Sections 1 & 2

1.4.4 Where the results from a set of three impact test specimens do not comply with the requirements, an additional set of three impact test specimens may be tested provided that, of the original set tested, not more than two individual values are less than the required average value and, of these, not more than one is less than 70 per cent of this average value. The results obtained are to be combined with the original results to form a new average which, for acceptance, is to be not less than the required average value. Additionally, for these combined results, not more than two individual values are to be less than the required average value and, of these, not more than one is to be less than 70 per cent of this average value.

1.4.5 The additional tests detailed in 1.4.1 and 1.4.2 are, where possible, to be made on material adjacent to the original samples. For castings, where insufficient material remains in the original test samples, the additional test may be made on other test samples representative of the castings. See also 1.3 for discarding of test specimens.

1.4.6 When unsatisfactory results are obtained from tests representative of a batch of material, the item or piece from which the tests were taken is to be rejected. The remainder of the material in the batch may be accepted provided that two further items or pieces are selected and tested with satisfactory results. If the tests from one or both of these additional items or pieces give unsatisfactory results, the batch is to be rejected.

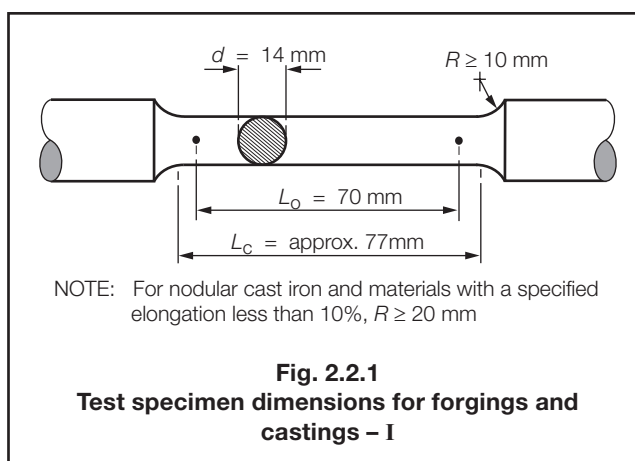
1.4.7 When a batch of material is rejected, the remaining items or pieces in the batch may be resubmitted individually for test, and those which give satisfactory results may be accepted.

1.4.8 At the option of the manufacturer, rejected material may be resubmitted as another grade and may then be accepted, provided that the test results comply with the appropriate requirements.

1.4.9 When material which is intended to be supplied in the 'as-rolled' or 'hot-finished' condition fails test, it may be suitably heat treated and resubmitted for test. Similarly, materials supplied in the heat treated condition may be reheat treated and resubmitted for test. Unless otherwise agreed by the Surveyor, such reheat treatment is to be limited to one repeat of the final heat treatment cycle.

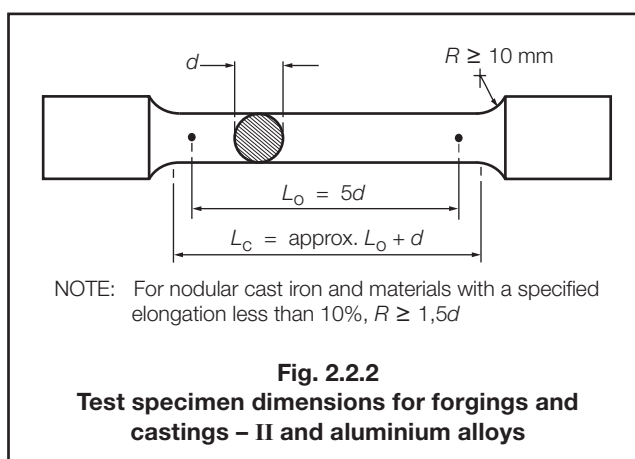
2.1.2 The gauge length is to be greater than 20 mm and may be rounded off to the nearest 5 mm provided that the difference between the adjusted gauge length and the calculated one is less than 10 per cent of the calculated gauge length.

2.1.3 For forgings and castings (excluding those in grey cast iron) proportional test specimens of circular cross-section are to be machined to the dimensions shown in Fig. 2.2.1.



2.1.4 For hot rolled bars and similar products, the test specimens are to be as in Fig. 2.2.1, except that for small sizes they may consist of a suitable length of bar or other product tested in the full cross-section.

2.1.5 As an alternative to 2.1.3 and 2.1.4, proportional or non-proportional test specimens of other dimensions may be used, subject to any requirements for minimum cross-sectional area given in subsequent Chapters of these Rules. Where the size of proportional test specimens is other than as shown in Fig. 2.2.1, the general dimensions are to conform with Fig. 2.2.2.



## Section 2 Tensile tests

### 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens

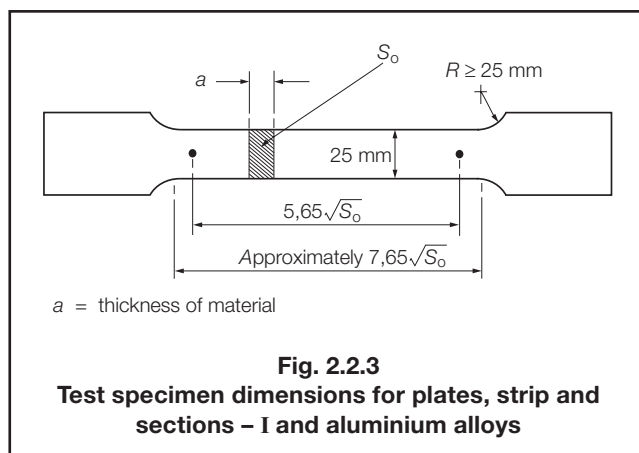
2.1.1 Proportional test specimens with a gauge length  $L_0$  of  $5.65 \sqrt{S_0}$  or  $5d$ , where  $S_0$  is the cross-sectional area,  $d$  the diameter and  $L_c$  the parallel test length, have been adopted as the standard form of test specimen, and in subsequent Chapters in these Rules the minimum percentage elongation values are given for test specimens of these proportions.

# Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

## Chapter 2

### Section 2

2.1.6 For plates, strip and sections, the test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions shown in Fig. 2.2.3 or Fig. 2.2.4. Where the capacity of the available testing machine is insufficient to allow the use of a test specimen of full thickness, this may be reduced by machining one of the rolled surfaces. Alternatively, for materials over 40 mm thick, test specimens of circular cross-section machined to the dimensions shown in Fig. 2.2.1 may be used. The axes of these test specimens are to be located at approximately one quarter of the thickness from one of the rolled surfaces.



The cross-sectional area of this type of test specimen is to be calculated from:

$$S_0 = ab$$

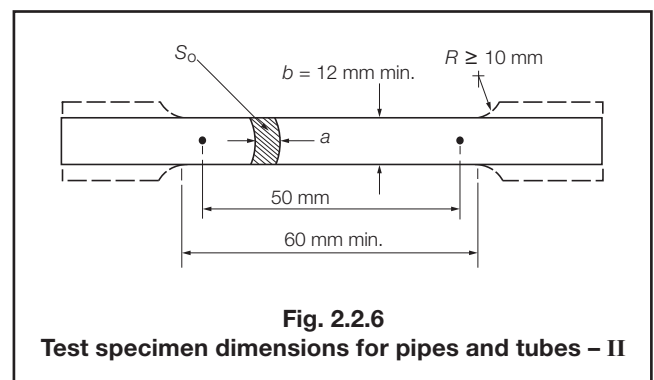
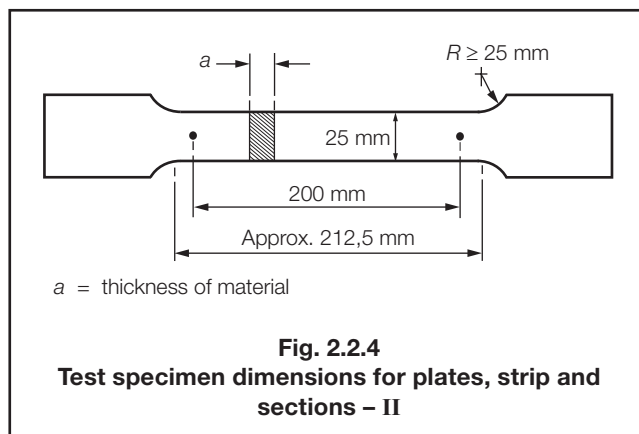
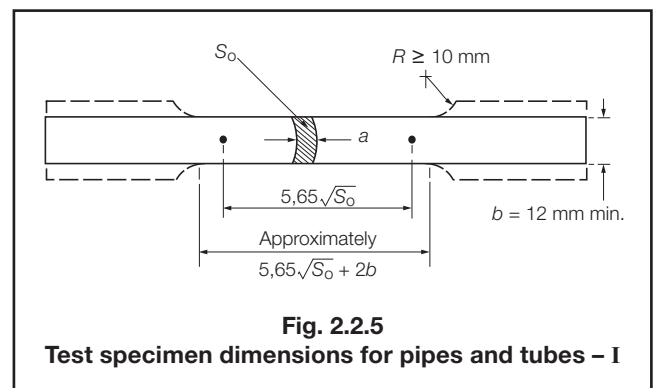
where

$S_0$  = cross-sectional area

$a$  = average radial thickness

$b$  = average width

Test specimens of circular cross-section may also be used provided that the wall thickness is sufficient to allow the machining of such specimens to the dimensions shown in Fig. 2.2.1, with their axes located at the mid-wall thickness.



2.1.7 As an alternative to 2.1.6, test specimens with a width of other than 25 mm may be used subject to any requirements for minimum cross-sectional area given in subsequent Chapters of these Rules. A ratio of width/thickness of 8:1 should not be exceeded.

2.1.8 For pipes and tubes, the test specimens may consist of a suitable length tested in full cross-section with the ends plugged. The gauge length is to be  $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$  or 50 mm, and the length of the test specimen between the grips or plugs, whichever is the smaller, is to be not less than the gauge length plus  $D$ , where  $D$  is the external diameter. Alternatively, test specimens may be prepared from strips cut longitudinally and machined to the dimensions shown in Fig. 2.2.5 or Fig. 2.2.6. The parallel test length is not to be flattened, but the enlarged ends may be flattened for gripping in the testing machine.

2.1.9 For wire, the test specimen may consist of a suitable length tested in full cross-section. The gauge length is to be 200 mm and the parallel test length 250 mm.

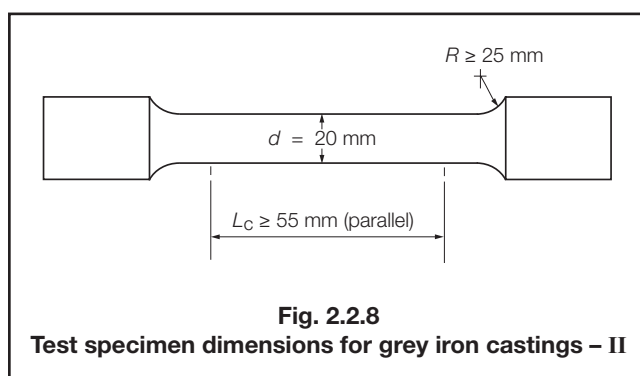
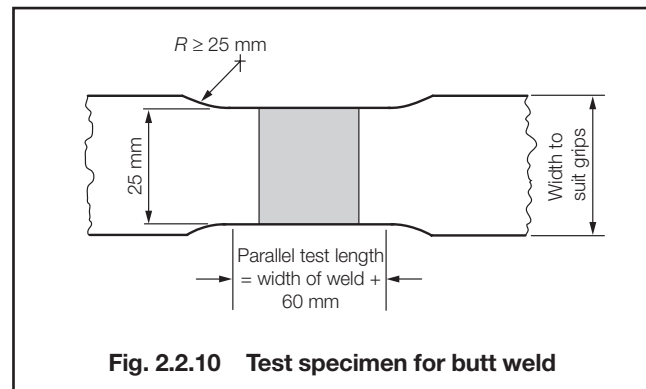
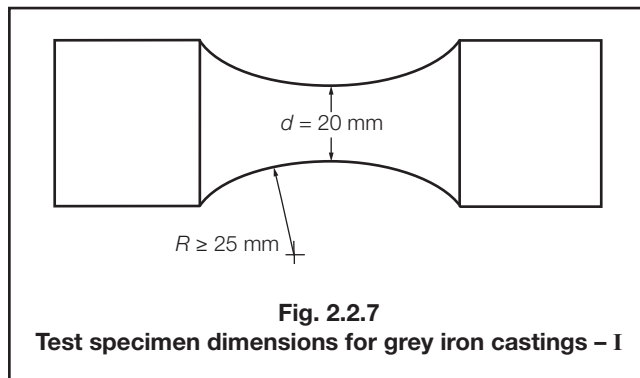
2.1.10 For grey iron castings, the test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions shown in Fig. 2.2.7 or Fig. 2.2.8.

2.1.11 For aluminium alloy plates and sections of thickness,  $a$ , less than or equal to 12,5 mm; the dimensions of rectangular cross-sectioned test specimens are to be as shown in Fig. 2.2.3. The rectangular cross-sectioned test specimen surfaces should remain as rolled/extruded. Where the thickness,  $a$ , is greater than 12,5 mm the test specimens are to be of round type as shown in Fig. 2.2.2.

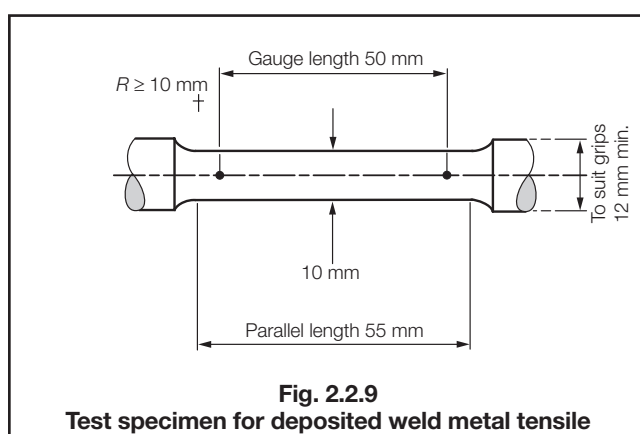
# Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

## Chapter 2

### Section 2



2.1.12 Deposited weld metal tensile test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions shown in Fig. 2.2.9, and may be heated to a temperature not exceeding 250°C for a period not exceeding 16 hours for hydrogen removal, prior to testing.



2.1.13 Butt weld tensile test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions shown in Fig. 2.2.10. For thicknesses of more than 2 mm, the test width is to be 25 mm. For thicknesses less than 2 mm, the test width is to be reduced to 12 mm. The upper and lower surfaces of the weld are to be filed, ground or machined flush with the surface of the plate.

2.1.14 Through-thickness tensile test specimens may be, at the option of the steelmaker, either plain test specimens or test specimens with welded extensions in accordance with a Recognised Standard. The extension pieces are to be of steel with a tensile strength exceeding that of the plate to be tested and may be attached to the plate surfaces by manual, resistance or friction welding carried out in such a way as to ensure a minimal heat affected zone.

2.1.15 Tolerances on tensile specimen dimensions are to be in accordance with ISO 6892-1 or another Recognised Standard as appropriate.

## 2.2 Definition of yield stress for steel

2.2.1 The yield phenomenon is not exhibited by all the steels detailed in these Rules but, except for austenitic and duplex stainless steels, the term 'yield stress' is used throughout when requirements are specified for acceptance testing at ambient temperature. For the purposes of the Rules, the terms 'yield stress' and 'yield strength' are to be regarded as synonymous.

2.2.2 Where reference is made to 'yield stress' in the requirements for carbon, carbon-manganese and alloy steel products and in the requirements for the approval of welding consumables, either the upper yield stress or, where this is not clearly exhibited, the 0,2 per cent proof stress or the 0,5 per cent proof stress under load is to be determined. In cases of dispute, the 0,2 per cent proof stress is to be determined.

2.2.3 For austenitic and duplex stainless steel products and welding consumables, both the 0,2 and the 1,0 per cent proof stresses are to be determined.

## 2.3 Procedure for testing at ambient temperature

2.3.1 Except as provided in 2.3.5, the elastic stress rate for the determination of the upper yield for steels and copper alloys is to be between 6 and 60 N/mm<sup>2</sup> per second and between 2 and 20 N/mm<sup>2</sup> per second for aluminium. After reaching the yield or proof load, the straining rate may be increased to a maximum of 0,008s<sup>-1</sup> for the determination of the tensile strength.

# Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

## Chapter 2

### Section 2

2.3.2 For steel, the upper yield stress is to be calculated from:

- the value of stress measured at the commencement of plastic deformation, or
- on a load/extension diagram using the value of stress measured at the first peak obtained during yielding even when the peak is equal to or less than any subsequent peaks observed during plastic deformation at yield.

2.3.3 When a well defined yield point cannot be obtained, the 0,2 or 1,0 per cent proof stress (non-proportional elongation) is to be determined from an accurate load/extension diagram by drawing a line parallel to the straight elastic portion and a distance from it where the amount represents 0,2 or 1,0 per cent of the extensometer gauge length. The point of intersection of this line with the plastic portion of the diagram represents the proof load, from which the 0,2 or 1,0 per cent proof stress can be calculated.

2.3.4 For stainless steels, the 1,0 per cent proof stress and/or 0,2 per cent proof stress is specified as required by the relevant Chapters in these Rules.

2.3.5 For the determination of the tensile strength of flake graphite cast iron, the stress rate is not to exceed 10 N/mm<sup>2</sup> per second.

2.3.6 A measured elongation value is to be regarded as valid only if the fracture occurs within the gauge length and at least the following distances from the gauge marks:

- Round test specimen: 1,25d  
Flat test specimen: a plus width of specimen

The measurement is valid irrespective of the position of the fracture, if the percentage elongation after fracture reaches at least the specified value, and this is to be stated in the test report.

## 2.4 Equivalent elongations

2.4.1 When a gauge length other than  $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$  is used, the equivalent percentage elongation value is to be calculated using the following formula:

$$A = \frac{A_R}{2} \left( \frac{L_0}{\sqrt{S_0}} \right)^{0,40}$$

where

$A_R$  = actual measured percentage elongation of test specimen

$S_0$  = actual cross-sectional area of test specimen

$L_0$  = actual gauge length of test piece

$A$  = equivalent percentage elongation for a test specimen with a gauge length of  $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$

2.4.2 Alternatively, where a number of test specimens of similar material and dimensions are involved, the actual percentage elongation values may be recorded, provided that the equivalent specified minimum elongation value appropriate for the test specimen dimensions is calculated from the formula in 2.4.1 and is recorded on the test certificate.

2.4.3 For proportional test specimens having a gauge length other than  $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$ , the equivalent elongation may be calculated using the following factors ( $d$  is the diameter of the test specimen):

Actual gauge length	Factor for equivalent elongation on $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$
$4 \sqrt{S_0}$	x 0,870
$8,16 \sqrt{S_0}$	x 1,158
$11,3 \sqrt{S_0}$	x 1,317
$4d$	x 0,916
$8d$	x 1,207

2.4.4 For non-proportional test specimens with gauge lengths of 50 mm and 200 mm, the equivalent elongation values tabulated in ISO 2566 are to apply.

2.4.5 The above conversions are reliable only for carbon, carbon-manganese and low alloy steels with a tensile strength not exceeding 700 N/mm<sup>2</sup> in the hot rolled, annealed, normalised, or normalised and tempered condition.

2.4.6 For alloy steels in the quenched and tempered condition, the following conversions may be used for proportional test specimens with a gauge length of  $4 \sqrt{S_0}$ :

Actual percentage elongation on $4 \sqrt{S_0}$	Equivalent elongation on $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$
22	17
20	15
18	13
17	12
16	12
15	11
14	10
12	8
10	7
8	5

2.4.7 Any proposals to use conversion factors for equivalent elongation values for the following materials are to be agreed with the Surveyors:

- Carbon, carbon-manganese and alloy steels in the normalised or normalised and tempered condition with a tensile strength exceeding 700 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- Cold-worked steels.
- Austenitic stainless steels.
- Non-ferrous alloys.

## 2.5 Procedure for testing at elevated temperatures

2.5.1 The test specimens used for the determination of lower yield or 0,2 per cent proof stress at elevated temperatures are to have an extensometer gauge length of not less than 50 mm and a cross-sectional area of not less than 65 mm<sup>2</sup>. Where, however, this is precluded by the dimensions of the product or by the test equipment available, the test specimen is to be of the largest practicable dimensions.

2.5.2 The heating apparatus is to be such that the temperature of the specimen during testing does not deviate from that specified by more than  $\pm 5^\circ\text{C}$ .



- 2.5.3 The straining rate when approaching the lower yield or proof load is to be controlled within the range 0,1 to 0,3 per cent of the extensometer gauge length per minute.
- 2.5.4 The time intervals used for estimation of strain rate from measurements of strain are not to exceed 6 seconds.

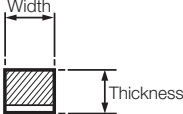

Section 3  
Impact tests

3.1 Dimensions of test specimens

3.1.1 Impact tests are to be of the Charpy V-notch type. The test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions and tolerances given in Table 2.3.1 and are to be carefully checked for dimensional accuracy.

Table 2.3.1 Dimensions and tolerances for Charpy V-notch impact test specimens

Dimension	Nominal	Tolerance
Length, mm	55	±0,60
Width, mm— standard specimen	10	±0,11
— standard subsidiary specimen	7,5	±0,11
— standard subsidiary specimen	5	±0,06
Thickness, mm	10	±0,06
Angle of notch	45°	±2°
Depth below notch, mm	8	±0,06
Root radius, mm	0,25	±0,025
Distance of notch from end of test specimen, mm	27,5	±0,42
Angle between plane of symmetry of notch and longitudinal axis of test specimen	90°	±2°



3.1.2 For material under 10 mm in thickness, the largest possible size of standard subsidiary Charpy V-notch test specimen is to be prepared with the notch cut on the narrow face. Generally, impact tests are not required when the thickness of the material is less than 6 mm.

3.2 Testing procedures

3.2.1 All impact tests are to be carried out on Charpy machines approved by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred as LR) and having a striking energy of not less than 150 J.

3.2.2 Charpy V-notch impact tests may be carried out at ambient or lower temperatures in accordance with the specific requirements given in subsequent Chapters of these Rules. Where the test temperature is other than ambient, the temperature of the test specimen is to be controlled to within ±2°C for sufficient time to ensure uniformity throughout the cross-section of the test specimen, and suitable precautions are to be taken to prevent any significant change in temperature during the actual test. In cases of dispute, ambient temperature is to be considered as 18°C to 25°C.

3.2.3 For acceptance, the average energy value for a set of three impact tests must be equal to or greater than the appropriate specified minimum average value. Additionally, only one individual value may be less than the required average value but not less than 70 per cent of this average value.

3.2.4 Where standard subsidiary Charpy V-notch test specimens are necessary, the minimum energy values required are to be reduced as follows:

- Specimen 10 x 7,5 mm: 5/6 of tabulated energy.
- Specimen 10 x 5 mm: 2/3 of tabulated energy.

3.2.5 When reporting results, the specimen dimensions and the units used for expressing the energy absorbed (Joules) and the testing temperature are to be clearly stated.

Section 4  
Ductility tests for pipes and tubes

4.1 Bend tests

4.1.1 The test specimens are to be cut as circumferential strips of full wall thickness and with a width of not less than 40 mm. For thick walled pipes, the thickness of the test specimens may be reduced to 20 mm by machining. The edges of the specimens may be rounded to a radius of 1,6 mm.

4.1.2 Testing is to be carried out at ambient temperature, and the specimens are to be doubled over a former whose diameter is to be in accordance with the specific requirements for the material. For submerged arc welded tube the test piece is to be bent with the root of the weld in tension. For other tubes, the test piece is to be bent in the original direction of curvature. In all cases, the welds are to be in the middle of the test specimen. The test is considered to be satisfactory if, after bending, the specimens are free from cracks and laminations. Small cracks at the edges of the test specimens are to be disregarded.

4.2 Flattening tests

4.2.1 Ring test specimens are to be cut with the ends perpendicular to the axis of the pipe or tube. The length of the specimen is to be equal to 1,5 times the external diameter of the pipe or tube, but is to be not less than 10 mm or greater than 100 mm. Alternatively, the length of the test specimen may be 40 mm irrespective of the external diameter.

# Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

## Chapter 2

### Section 4

4.2.2 Testing is to be carried out at ambient temperature and is to consist of flattening the specimens in a direction perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the pipe. Flattening is to be carried out between two plain parallel and rigid platens which extend over both the full length and the width after flattening of the test specimen. Flattening is to be continued until the distance between the platens, measured under load, is not greater than the value given by the formula:

$$H = \frac{t(1+C)}{C + \frac{t}{D}}$$

where

$H$  = distance between plates, in mm

$t$  = specified thickness of the pipe, in mm

$D$  = specified outside diameter, in mm

$C$  = a constant dependent on the steel type and detailed in the specific requirements

After flattening, the specimens are to be free from cracks or other flaws. Small cracks at the ends of the test specimens may be disregarded.

4.2.3 For welded pipes or tubes, the weld is to be placed at 90° to the direction of flattening.

### 4.3 Drift expanding tests

4.3.1 The test specimens are to be cut with the ends perpendicular to the axis of the tube. The edges of the end to be tested may be rounded by filing.

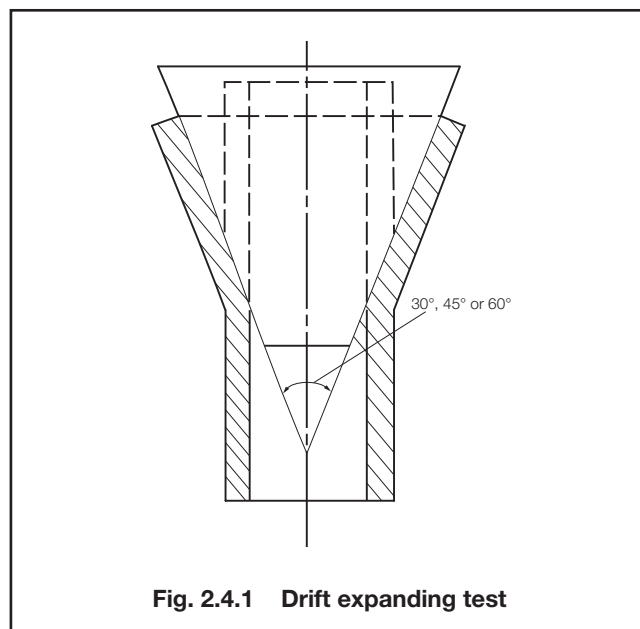
4.3.2 For metallic tubes, the length of the specimen is to be at least 1,5 times the external diameter of the tube except when a mandrel with an included angle of 30° is used, in which case the length of the specimen is to be twice the external diameter of the tube. In all cases the length of section remaining cylindrical after test is not be less than 0,5 times the external diameter.

4.3.3 Testing is to be carried out at ambient temperature and is to consist of expanding the end of the tube symmetrically by means of a hardened conical steel mandrel having a total included angle of 30°, 45° or 60°, see Fig. 2.4.1. The mandrel is to be forced into the test specimen at a rate not exceeding 50 mm/min until the percentage increase in the outside diameter of the end of the test specimen is not less than the value given in the specific requirements for boiler and superheater tubes, see Chapter 6. The mandrel is to be lubricated, but there is to be no rotation of the tube or mandrel during the test. The expanded portion of the tube is to be free from cracks or other flaws.

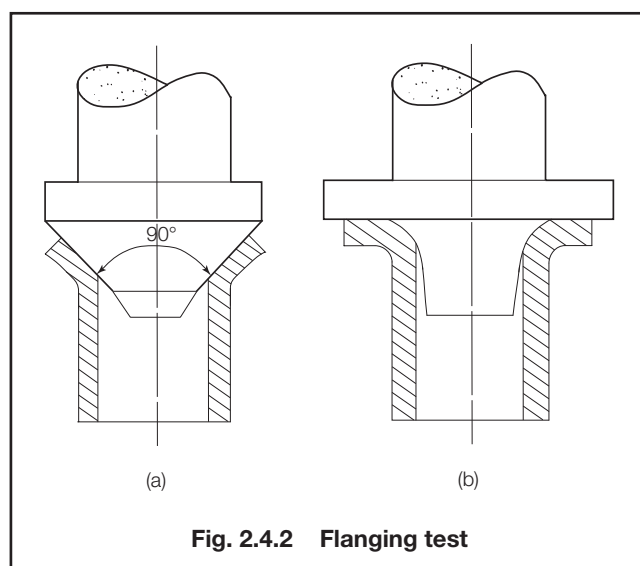
### 4.4 Flanging tests

4.4.1 The test specimens are to be cut with the ends perpendicular to the axis of the tube. The length of the specimens is to be at least equal to the external diameter of the tube and such that after testing the portion that remains cylindrical is not less than half the external diameter. The edges of the end to be tested may be rounded by filing.

4.4.2 Testing is to be carried out at ambient temperature and is to consist of flanging the end of the tube symmetrically by means of hardened conical steel mandrels. The rate of flanging is not to exceed 50 mm/min.



4.4.3 The first stage of flanging is to be carried out with a conical angled mandrel having an included angle of approximately 90°, see Fig. 2.4.2(a). The completion of the test is achieved with a second forming tool as shown in Fig. 2.4.2(b). The mandrels are to be lubricated and there is to be no rotation of the tube or mandrels during the test. The test is to continue until the drifted portion has formed a flange perpendicular to the axis of the test specimens. The percentage increase in the external diameter of the end of the specimens is to be not less than the value given in the specific requirements for boiler and superheater tubes, see Chapter 6. The cylindrical and flanged portion of the tube is to be free from cracks or other flaws.



# Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

## Chapter 2

Sections 5 & 6

### Section 5

#### Embrittlement tests

##### 5.1 Temper embrittlement tests

5.1.1 The test material is to be heat treated in accordance with the specification except that after tempering:

- (a) half the material is to be water quenched;
- (b) the other half is to be cooled from the tempering temperature to 300°C at a rate not exceeding 10°C per minute.

5.1.2 Impact tests in accordance with Section 3 are to be made on the material in each condition at temperatures over a range wide enough to establish the upper and lower shelf energies and temperatures, tests being made at no less than three intermediate temperatures.

5.1.3 A set of three specimens is to be tested at each temperature. The results are to be plotted separately for each condition, in the form illustrated in Fig. 2.5.1. In addition, the test temperatures, proportions of crystallinity and absorbed energies for all the specimens tested are to be reported.

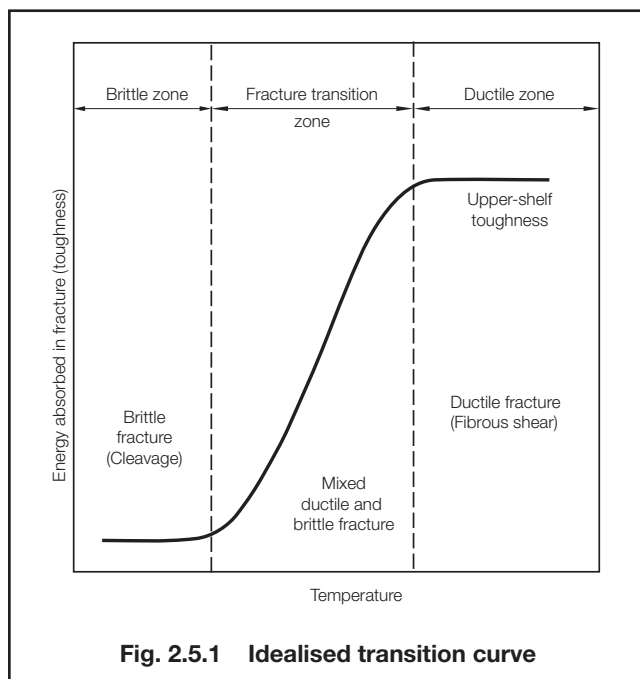


Fig. 2.5.1 Idealised transition curve

5.1.4 The transition temperature for each condition is to be taken as the mid-temperature of the fracture transition zone. The difference between the two transition temperatures is to be reported.

##### 5.2 Strain age embrittlement tests

5.2.1 The test material is to be heat treated in accordance with the specification and then subjected to five per cent strain. Half of the test material is then to be heated to 250°C and held for one hour.

5.2.2 Impact tests in accordance with 5.1.2 are to be made in both the strained and unstrained conditions.

5.2.3 The tests are to comply with 5.1.3.

5.2.4 The test results are treated in accordance with 5.1.4.

##### 5.3 Hydrogen embrittlement tests

5.3.1 Two specimens are to be tested. The specimens are to be of a diameter of 20 mm. Where this is not practicable a diameter of 14 mm may be accepted.

5.3.2 One specimen is to be tested within a maximum of 3 hours after machining. Where the specimen diameter is 14 mm, the time limit is 1,5 hours. Alternatively, the specimen may be cooled to -60°C immediately after machining and kept at that temperature for a maximum period of 5 days before being tested.

5.3.3 The other specimen is to be tested after baking at 250°C for 4 hours. Where the specimen diameter is 14 mm the baking time is to be 2 hours.

5.3.4 A strain rate not exceeding 0,0003s<sup>-1</sup> is to be used during the entire test, until fracture occurs.

5.3.5 Tensile strength, elongation and reduction of area are to be reported.

5.3.6 The ratio  $Z_1/Z_2$  is to be reported, where  $Z_1$  is the reduction in area without baking and  $Z_2$  the reduction in area after baking.

### Section 6

#### Crack tip opening displacement tests

##### 6.1 Dimensions of test specimens

6.1.1 Unless agreed otherwise, tests are to be made on specimens of the full section thickness and which conform to a nationally agreed standard.

6.1.2 Normally the specimens are to be rectangular with the main dimensions as indicated in Fig. 2.6.1 and are to be tested in three point bending.

6.1.3 A subsidiary specimen as in Fig. 2.6.2 may be used by agreement.

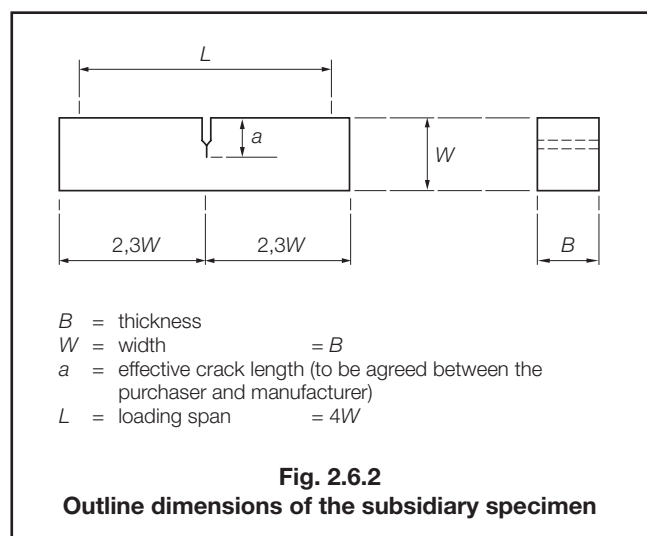
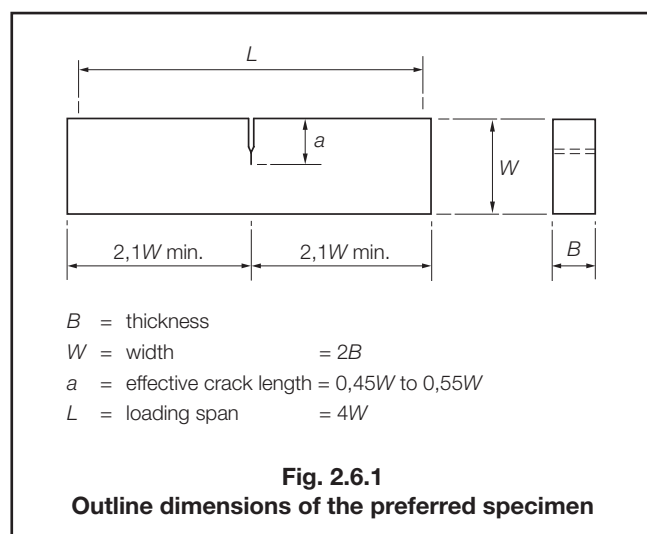
6.1.4 In each case the notch is to be positioned at the centre of the loading span; its root radius is not to exceed 0,10 mm. The notch is to be extended by the generation of a fatigue crack to give an effective crack length of the dimension  $a$ . For this purpose, the fatigue stress ratio,  $R_1$ , is to be within the range 0 to 0,1 and the fatigue intensity is not to exceed  $0,63\sigma_y B^{1/2}$  where  $\sigma_y$  is the 0,2 per cent proof stress at the test temperature.



# Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

## Chapter 2

Section 6



### 6.2 Test equipment

6.2.1 Whenever possible, tests are to be made using machines operating under displacement control. The type of control is to be recorded.

6.2.2 The test equipment is to be calibrated annually.

6.2.3 The crack opening displacement gauge is to have an accuracy of at least one per cent. It is to be calibrated at least once every day of testing and at intervals of no more than 10 tests. It should be demonstrated that the calibration is satisfactory for the test conditions.

### 6.3 Testing procedures

6.3.1 Tests are to be made in a recognised test house in accordance with a nationally accepted standard.

6.3.2 Unless otherwise agreed, all tests on unwelded wrought material are to be made on specimens taken transverse to the principal working direction and are to be through-thickness notched.

6.3.3 Where tests are made on weld material, the fatigue crack should be arranged to sample the maximum amount of unrefined weld metal.

6.3.4 Where tests are made on the Heat Affected Zone (H.A.Z.) of a weld, a K or single bevel weld preparation is recommended. The region of lowest fracture toughness in the Heat Affected Zone should be identified for the particular steel and weld procedure by means of preliminary tests. The fatigue crack is to be accurately positioned to sample as high a proportion of this critical region as possible and after testing has been completed, the specimen is to be sectioned to check that this has been achieved. Sufficient tests should be made to ensure that the critical region has been sampled in at least three specimens.

6.3.5 At least three valid tests are to be made for each material condition. Invalid tests are to be disregarded and the tests repeated.

6.3.6 Local pre-compression of the test specimen ahead of the notch is acceptable in order to provide an acceptably even fatigue crack front.

6.3.7 The temperature of the test piece is to be measured to within  $\pm 2^\circ\text{C}$  over the range minus  $196^\circ\text{C}$  to  $+200^\circ\text{C}$  and to within  $\pm 5^\circ\text{C}$  outside this range. The temperature should be measured at a point on the specimen not farther than 2 mm away from the crack tip.

### 6.4 Validity requirements

- 6.4.1 The test is to be regarded as invalid if:
- the fatigue crack front is not in a single plane;
  - any part of the fatigue crack surface lies in a plane whose angle with the plane of the notch exceeds  $10^\circ$ ;
  - the length of any part of the fatigue crack is less than  $0,025W$  or 1,25 mm, whichever is the greater;
  - the difference between the maximum and minimum lengths of the fatigue crack exceeds  $0,1W$ ;
  - the difference between any two of the lengths of the fatigue crack at  $0,25B$ ,  $0,5B$  and  $0,75B$  exceeds  $0,05W$ .

6.4.2 In addition, for tests on welds and Heat Affected Zones (H.A.Z.), the following criteria are to be complied with:

- Weld metal. The fatigue crack front shall not extend outside the weld metal deposit and 80 per cent should be within 2 mm of the fusion line.
- Grain coarsened H.A.Z. The fatigue crack should be within 0,5 mm of the fusion line and should sample all of the grain coarsened H.A.Z. present. However, if fusion line irregularities prevent this, a sample including as much grain coarsened H.A.Z. as possible may be accepted.
- Subcritical/intercritical H.A.Z. boundary. The fatigue crack is to sample the boundary between the subcritical and intercritical regions of the H.A.Z. However, if fusion line irregularities prevent this, a sample including as much relevant microstructure as possible may be accepted.

# Testing Procedures for Metallic Materials

## Chapter 2

Sections 6 & 7

### 6.5 Test reports

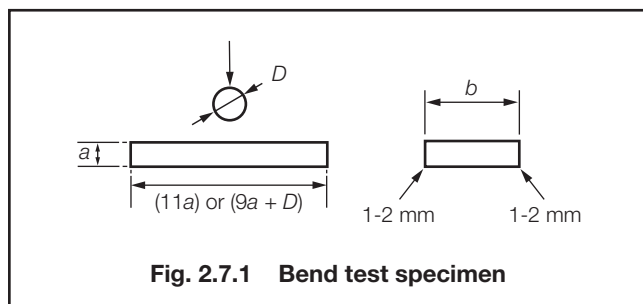
6.5.1 The test report is to include:

- details of the material, its condition and size;
- the thickness and width of the test specimen;
- the fatigue pre-cracking conditions;
- the test temperature and environment;
- the test machine control system and rate of change of displacement or load;
- crack length measurements;
- force/displacement records, preferably in the form of an autographic record;
- the critical crack opening displacement;
- a photograph of the fracture;
- any observation on the fracture surface.

## Section 7 Bend tests

### 7.1 Dimensions of test specimens

7.1.1 Flat bend test specimens are to be of rectangular cross-section with dimensions as defined in Fig. 2.7.1.



**Fig. 2.7.1 Bend test specimen**

7.1.2 For plates, sections and strip the dimensions shall be full thickness and width 30 mm. Where the rolled thickness exceeds 25 mm the compression face may be reduced to 25 mm.

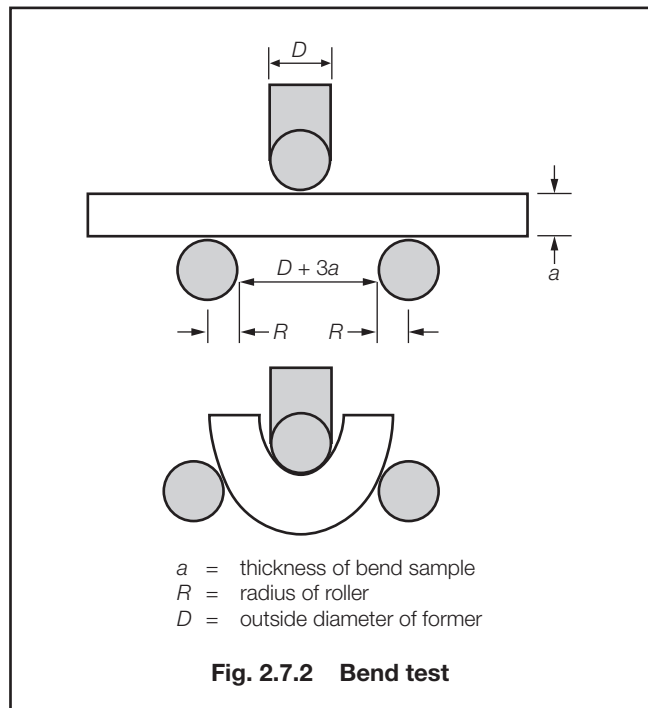
7.1.3 For forgings, castings and semi-finished products the thickness shall be 20 mm and width 25 mm.

7.1.4 Butt weld face and root bend test specimens are to be 30 mm in width and of the full plate thickness. Where the thickness exceeds 25 mm, two side bend test specimens may be tested in place of the face and root specimens specified. The side bend specimens should be 10 mm minimum thickness. The upper and lower surfaces of the weld are to be filed, ground or machined flush with the surface of the plate.

7.1.5 The edges on the tension side of bend samples are to be rounded to a radius of 1 to 2 mm.

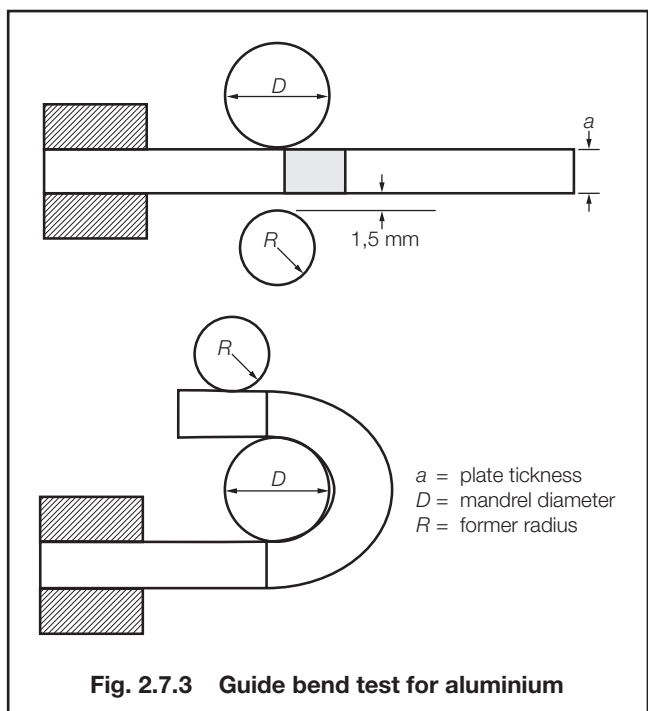
### 7.2 Testing procedures

7.2.1 The bend sample is plastically deformed by plunging a mandrel between two fixed points as shown in Fig. 2.7.2.



**Fig. 2.7.2 Bend test**

7.2.2 For aluminium welds a guided bend is required to ensure even deformation as shown in Fig. 2.7.3.



**Fig. 2.7.3 Guide bend test for aluminium**

7.2.3 Bend tests are to be conducted at ambient temperature at the highest convenient rate of bending (but not impact).

---

## ■ Section 8

### **Corrosion tests**

#### **8.1 Intergranular corrosion test**

8.1.1 For all products other than pipes, the material for the test specimens is to be taken adjacent to that for the tensile test and is to be machined to suitable dimensions for either a round or rectangular section bend test. The diameter or thickness is to be not more than 12 mm, and the total surface area is to be between 1500 mm<sup>2</sup> and 3500 mm<sup>2</sup>.

8.1.2 For pipes with an outside diameter not exceeding 40 mm, the test specimens are to consist of a full cross-section. For larger pipes, the test specimens are to be cut as circumferential strips of full wall thickness and having a width of not less than 12,5 mm. In both cases the total surface area is to be between 1500 mm<sup>2</sup> and 3500 mm<sup>2</sup>.

8.1.3 Specimens are to be heated to a temperature of 700 ± 10°C for 30 minutes, followed by rapid cooling in water. They are then to be placed on a bed of copper turnings (50 g per litre of test solution) and immersed for 15 to 24 hours in a boiling solution of the following composition:

- 100 g of hydrated copper sulphate granules (CuSO<sub>4</sub>·5H<sub>2</sub>O)
- 184 g (100 ml) sulphuric acid (density 1,84 g/ml) added dropwise to distilled water to make 1 litre of solution.

Precautions are to be taken during boiling to prevent concentration of the solution by evaporation.

8.1.4 After immersion, the full cross-section test specimens from pipes are to be subjected to a flattening test in accordance with Ch 2,4.2. All other test specimens are to be bent, at ambient temperature, through 90° over a former with a diameter equal to twice the diameter or thickness of the test specimen.

8.1.5 After flattening or bending, the test specimens are to be free from cracks on the outer, convex surface.

---



# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

# Chapter 3

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications**
- 3 **Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications**
- 4 **Steels for boilers and pressure vessels**
- 5 **Steels for machinery fabrications**
- 6 **Ferritic steels for low temperature service**
- 7 **Austenitic and duplex stainless steels**
- 8 **Plates with specified through thickness properties**
- 9 **Bars for welded chain cables**
- 10 **High strength quenched and tempered steels for welded structures**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section gives the general requirements for hot rolled plates and sections intended for use in the construction of ships, other marine structures, machinery, boilers and pressure vessels.

1.1.2 This Chapter is not applicable to hot rolled bars intended for the manufacture of bolts, plain shafts, etc., by machining operations only. Where used for this purpose, hot rolled bars are to comply with the requirements of Chapter 5.

1.1.3 Plate and strip which is hot coiled after rolling and subsequently uncoiled, cold flattened and cut to the required dimensions are also subject to the appropriate requirements of this Chapter.

1.1.4 Plates, strip, sections and bars are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapters 1 and 2, the general requirements of this Section and the appropriate specific requirements given in Sections 2 to 10.

1.1.5 As an alternative to 1.1.4, materials which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted, provided that these specifications give equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter or are approved for a specific application. Particular attention is to be taken of the minimum required under thickness tolerance, see 1.5. Generally, survey and certification of such materials are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1.

1.1.6 Steels intended for high heat input welding above 50 kJ/cm are to be specially approved. Approval will be indicated on the manufacturer's approval certificate by adding a high heat input welding notation to the grade approved e.g., EH36-W300, indicating approval up to 300 kJ/cm.

### 1.2 Steel with guaranteed through thickness properties – 'Z' grade steel

1.2.1 When plate material, intended for welded construction, will be subject to significant strains in a direction perpendicular to the rolled surfaces, it is recommended that consideration be given to the use of special plate material with specified through thickness properties, 'Z' grade steel. These strains are usually associated with thermal contraction and restraint during welding, particularly for full penetration 'T'-butt welds, but may also be associated with loads applied in service or during construction. Where these strains are of sufficient magnitude, lamellar tearing may occur. Requirements for 'Z' grade plate material are detailed in Section 8. It is the responsibility of the fabricator to make provision for the use of this material.

1.2.2 Steels intended to have guaranteed through thickness properties will include the supplementary suffix Z25 or Z35 in the designation, for example: LR DH36 Z35.

### 1.3 Manufacture

1.3.1 All materials are to be manufactured at works which have been approved by LR for the type and grade of steel which is being supplied and for the relevant steelmaking and processing route.

1.3.2 Steel is to be cast in metal ingot moulds or by the continuous casting process. The size of the ingot, billet or slab is to be proportional to the dimensions of the final product such that the reduction ratio is normally to be at least 3 to 1. Sufficient discard is to be taken to ensure soundness in the portion used for further processing.

1.3.3 The cast analysis to be used for certification purposes is to be determined after all alloying additions have been carried out and sufficient time allowed for such an addition to homogenise.

1.3.4 Material may be supplied either as-rolled, normalised, normalising rolled, or thermomechanically controlled rolled. The following definitions apply:

- (a) As-rolled (AR) refers to rolling of steel at high temperature followed by air cooling. The rolling and finishing temperatures are typically in the austenite recrystallisation region and above the normalising temperature. The strength and toughness properties of steel produced by this process are generally less than those of steel heat treated, after rolling, or steel produced by advanced processes.
- (b) Normalising (N) refers to an additional heating cycle of rolled steel above the critical temperature,  $A_{c3}$ , and in the lower end of the austenite recrystallisation region followed by air cooling. The process improves the mechanical properties of as-rolled steel by refining the grain size.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

# Chapter 3

## Section 1

- (c) Normalising rolling (NR), also known as controlled rolling, is a rolling procedure in which the final deformation is carried out in the normalising temperature range, resulting in a material condition generally equivalent to that obtained by normalising.
- (d) Thermomechanically controlled rolling (TM) is a procedure which involves the strict control of both the steel temperature and the rolling reduction. Generally a high proportion of the rolling reduction is carried out close to the  $A_{r3}$  temperature and may involve the rolling in the dual phase temperature region. Unlike normalising rolling the properties conferred by TM (TMCP) cannot be reproduced by subsequent normalising or other heat treatment. The use of accelerated cooling on completion of TM may also be accepted subject to the special approval by LR.
- (e) Accelerated Cooling, (AcC) is a process which aims to improve mechanical properties by controlled cooling with rates higher than air cooling immediately after the final TM operation. Direct quenching is excluded from accelerated cooling. The material properties conferred by TM and AcC cannot be reproduced by subsequent normalising or other austenitising heat treatment.
- (f) Quenching and Tempering (QT), is a heat treatment process in which steel is heated to an appropriate temperature above the  $A_{c3}$  and then cooled with an appropriate coolant for the purpose of hardening the microstructure, followed by tempering, a process in which the steel is re-heated to an appropriate temperature, not higher than the  $A_{c1}$  to restore the toughness properties by improving the microstructure.

1.3.5 Where material is being produced by a normalising rolling or a thermomechanically controlled process (T.M.) an additional program of tests for approval is to be carried out under the supervision of the Surveyors and the results are to be to the satisfaction of Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').

1.3.6 Weldable high strength steels may be supplied in the quenched and tempered condition for other marine structures, see Section 10.

## 1.4 Quality of materials

1.4.1 Surface and internal imperfections not prejudicial to the proper application of the steel are not, except by special agreement, to be grounds for rejection. Where necessary, suitable methods of non-destructive examination may be used for the detection of harmful surface and internal defects. The extent of this examination, together with an appropriate acceptance standard, is to be agreed between the purchaser, steelmaker and Surveyor and is to be included in the manufacturing specification.

## 1.5 Dimensional tolerances

1.5.1 The tolerances on thickness of a given product are defined as:

- (a) Minus tolerance is the lower limit of the acceptable range below the nominal thickness.
- (b) Plus tolerance is the upper limit of the acceptable range above the nominal thickness.

Nominal thickness is defined by the purchaser at the time of enquiry and order.

1.5.2 The average thickness of a product or products is defined as the arithmetic mean of the measurements made in accordance with the requirements in 1.5.10.

1.5.3 For materials of nominal thickness 5 mm and more intended for hull structural purposes as detailed in Sections 2, 3 and 10, the minus tolerance on thickness of plates, strip and wide flats is 0,3 mm, irrespective of nominal thickness. For wide flats, this applies only where the width is greater than or equal to 600 mm. The average thickness of a product or products is not to be less than the nominal thickness. For thickness below 5 mm, the thickness tolerances are to be specially agreed.

1.5.4 Class C of ISO 7452 may be applied in lieu of 1.5.3. Where this standard is applied, both the requirements in 1.5.11 and the portion of the footnote of Table B.2 in ISO 7542, that reads; "Also a minus side of thickness of 0,3 mm is permitted," are not applicable. Additionally, if ISO 7452 is applied, the steel mill is to ensure that the number of measurements and measurement distribution is appropriate to establish that the plates produced are greater than or equal to the specified nominal thickness.

1.5.5 The minus tolerance on bars and sections (except for wide flats with a width  $\geq 600$  mm) is to be in accordance with the requirements of a recognised National or International Standard.

1.5.6 The Shipbuilder and Owner may agree in individual cases whether they wish to specify a more stringent minus tolerance than that given in this Chapter.

1.5.7 The minus tolerances for plates and wide flats intended for machinery structures are given in Section 5.

1.5.8 For materials intended for applications as detailed in Sections 4 and 6, no minus tolerance is permitted in the thickness of plates and strip. The minus tolerances on sections are to comply with the requirements of a recognised National or International Standard.

1.5.9 For the materials detailed in Section 7, the minus tolerance of material intended for use in the construction of cargo tanks is not to exceed 0,3 mm. For other applications, no minus tolerance is permitted in the thickness of plates and strip.

1.5.10 Dimensional tolerances for material detailed in Section 9 are given in Table 3.9.3.

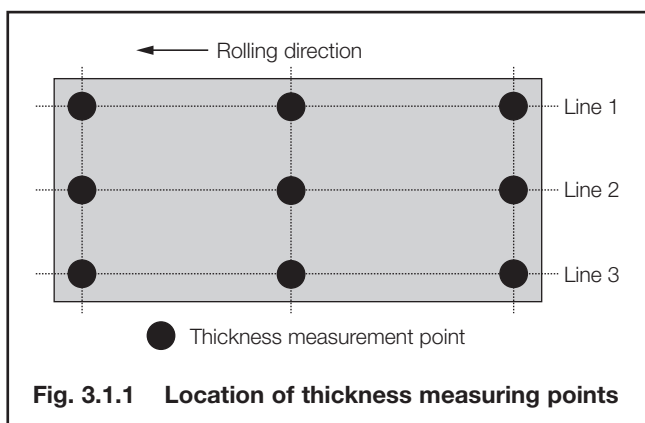
# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

### Section 1

**1.5.11** The average thickness and thickness tolerance is to be measured at locations of a product or products as defined below:

- (a) An automated method or manual method may be applied to the thickness measurements. The procedure and the records of measurements are to be made available to the Surveyor and copies provided on request.
- (b) At least two lines among Line 1, Line 2 or Line 3, as shown in Fig. 3.1.1, are to be selected for the thickness measurements and at least three points on each selected line as shown in Fig. 3.1.1 are to be selected for thickness measurement. If more than three points are taken on each line, then the number of points shall be equal on each line.
- (c) For automated methods, the measuring points at sides are to be located not less than 10 mm but not greater than 300 mm from the transverse or longitudinal edges of the product.
- (d) For manual methods, the measuring points at sides are to be located not less than 10 mm but not greater than 100 mm from the transverse or longitudinal edges of the product.
- (e) Additional measurements may be requested by the Surveyor.



**Fig. 3.1.1 Location of thickness measuring points**

**1.5.12** Local surface depressions resulting from imperfections and ground areas resulting from the elimination of defects may be disregarded provided that they are in accordance with the requirements of a recognised National or International Standard.

**1.5.13** Tolerances relating to length, width, flatness and plus thickness are to comply with a National or International Standard.

**1.5.14** The responsibility for maintaining the required tolerances and making the necessary measurements rests with the manufacturer. Occasional checking by the Surveyor does not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

**1.5.15** The Shipbuilder is responsible for the storage and maintenance of product(s) delivered with acceptable surface conditions.

## 1.6 Heat treatment

**1.6.1** Acceptable conditions of supply are specified in subsequent Sections of this Chapter.

**1.6.2** The manufacturer is to carry out any heat treatment which may be necessary to prevent hydrogen cracking or to make the material in a safe condition for transit. The Surveyor is to be advised of any heat treatment proposed.

**1.6.3** Where material is manufactured using a thermo-mechanically controlled process consideration must be given to the possibility of consequent reduction in mechanical properties if it is subjected to heating for forming or stress relieving or is welded using a high heat input.

## 1.7 Test material and mechanical tests

**1.7.1** Depending on the type of product, provision is made in subsequent Sections of this Chapter for the testing of individual items or for batch testing. Where the latter is permitted, all materials in a batch presented for acceptance tests are to be of the same product form, (e.g., plates, flats, sections, etc.), from the same cast and in the same condition of supply.

**1.7.2** The test samples are to be fully representative of the material and, where appropriate, are not to be cut from the material until heat treatment has been completed. The test specimens are not to be separately heat treated in any way.

**1.7.3** The test material is to be taken from the thickest piece in each batch, see Ch 1,4.1.

**1.7.4** Test material is to be taken from the following positions:

- (a) At the square cut end of plates and flats greater than 600 mm wide, approximately one-quarter width from an edge, see Fig. 3.1.2(a).
- (b) For flats 600 mm or less in width, bulb flats and other solid sections, at approximately one-third of the width from an edge, see Fig. 3.1.2(b), (c) and (d). Alternatively, in the case of channels, beams or bulb angles, at approximately one-quarter of the width from the centreline of the web, see Fig. 3.1.2(c).
- (c) For rectangular hollow sections, at approximately the centre of any side, see Fig. 3.1.2(e). For circular hollow sections, at any position on the periphery.
- (d) For bars intended for purposes as detailed in Sections 2, 3, 5 and 9, at approximately one-third of the radius or half-diagonal from the outer surface, see Fig. 3.1.2(f). For smaller bars, the position of the test material is to be as close as is possible to the above.
- (e) For bars intended for the applications detailed in Sections 4, 6 and 7 at approximately 12,5 mm below the surface. For bars up to 25 mm diameter, the test specimens may be machined coaxially.
- (f) For plates and flats with thicknesses in excess of 40 mm, full thickness specimens may be prepared, but when instead a machined round specimen is used then the axis is to be located at a position lying one-quarter of the product thickness from the surface as shown in Fig. 3.1.2(g).



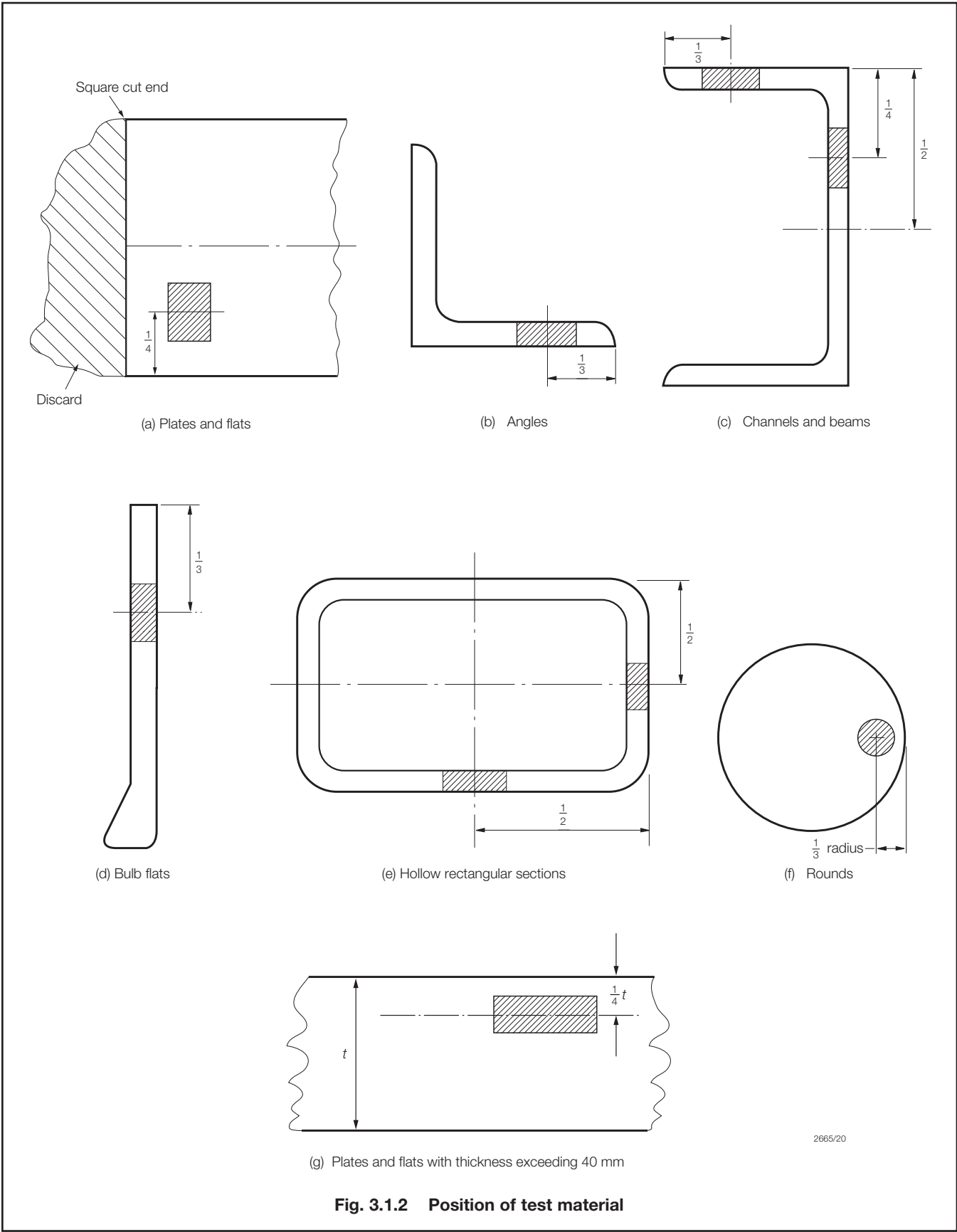


Fig. 3.1.2 Position of test material



# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

### Section 1

1.7.5 Tensile test specimens and impact test specimens, where required for the type and grade of product being supplied, are to be prepared from each item or batch of material submitted for acceptance.

1.7.6 Where the finished width of plates and flats is greater than 600 mm, the tensile test specimens are to be cut with their principal axes perpendicular to the final direction of rolling. For all other rolled products, the principal axes are to be parallel to the final direction of rolling.

1.7.7 The tensile test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions detailed in Ch 2, 2.1.6 and 2.1.7.

1.7.8 Impact test specimens are to be cut with their principal axes either parallel (longitudinal test) or perpendicular (transverse test) to the final direction of rolling, as required by subsequent Sections of this Chapter. Where both longitudinal and transverse impact properties are shown for a particular grade, only the longitudinal test is required to be carried out, unless otherwise specified by the purchase order or subsequent Sections of this Chapter. However, for plates and wide flats, by certifying that the product meets the requirements of the Rules, the manufacturer guarantees that the acceptance values will be met if tested in the transverse direction. The Surveyor may request testing in this direction to confirm conformity.

1.7.9 Impact test specimens are to be of the Charpy V-notch type, machined to the dimensions detailed in Chapter 2. They are to be taken from a position within 2 mm of one of the rolled surfaces, except that for plates and sections over 40 mm thick, the axes of the test specimens are to be at one-quarter of the thickness from one of the rolled surfaces. For bars and other similar products the axes of the test specimens are to be as specified in 1.7.4(d).

1.7.10 Standard test specimens 10 mm square are to be used, except where the thickness of the material does not allow this size of test specimen to be prepared. In such cases the largest possible size of subsidiary test specimen, in accordance with Table 2.3.1 is to be prepared, with the notch cut on the narrow face. Alternatively, for material of suitable thickness, the rolled surfaces may be retained so that the test specimen width will be the full thickness of the material. In such cases the tolerances for width given in Table 2.3.1 in Chapter 2 are not applicable. The notch is to be cut in a face of the test specimen which was originally perpendicular to the rolled surface. The position of the notch is to be not nearer than 25 mm to a flame-cut or sheared edge.

1.7.11 Impact tests are not required when the nominal material thickness is less than 6 mm.

1.7.12 The test procedures used for all tensile and impact tests are to be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 2.

### 1.8 Visual and non-destructive examination

1.8.1 Surface inspection and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the steelmaker and are to be carried out on all material prior to despatch. Acceptance by the

Surveyors of material later found to be defective shall not absolve the steelmaker from this responsibility.

1.8.2 With the exception of 'Z' grade plate material (see Section 8) and bars for offshore mooring cable (see Section 9), the non-destructive examination of materials is not required for acceptance purposes, *see also* 1.4.1. However, manufacturers are expected to employ suitable methods of non-destructive examination for the general maintenance of quality standards.

### 1.9 Rectification of defects

1.9.1 For materials intended for structural purposes as detailed in Sections 2, 3 and 5, surface defects may be removed by local grinding provided that:

- (a) the thickness is in no place reduced to less than 93 per cent of the nominal thickness, but in no case by more than 3 mm,
- (b) each single ground area does not exceed 0,25 m<sup>2</sup>,
- (c) the total area of local grinding does not exceed two per cent of the total surface,
- (d) the ground areas have smooth transitions to the surrounding surface.

Where necessary, the entire surface may be ground to a maximum depth as given by the underthickness tolerances of the product. The extent of such rectification is to be agreed in each case with the Surveyors and is to be carried out under their supervision, unless otherwise agreed. They may request that complete removal of the defect is proven by suitable non-destructive examination of the affected area.

1.9.2 Surface defects which cannot be dealt with as in 1.9.1 may be repaired by chipping or grinding followed by welding, subject to the Surveyor's consent and under his supervision, provided that:

- (a) after removal of the defect and before welding, the thickness of the item is in no place reduced by more than 20 per cent,
- (b) each single weld does not exceed 0,125 m<sup>2</sup>,
- (c) the total area of welding does not exceed two per cent of the surface of the side involved,
- (d) the distance between any two welds is not less than their average width,
- (e) the welds are of reasonable size and made with an excess layer of beads which is then ground smooth to the surface level,
- (f) elimination of the defect is proven by suitable non-destructive examination of the affected area,
- (g) welding is carried out by an approved procedure and by competent operators using approved electrodes and the repaired area is ground smooth to the correct nominal thickness,
- (h) when requested by the Surveyor, the item is normalised or otherwise suitably heat treated after welding and grinding, and
- (j) at the discretion of the Surveyor, the repaired area is proven free from defects by suitable non-destructive examination.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

Sections 1 & 2

1.9.3 For materials intended for applications as detailed in Sections 4, 6 and 7, surface defects may be removed by grinding in accordance with 1.9.1, except that when the thickness is reduced below that given in the approved plans, acceptance will be subject to special consideration. Weld repairs may also be carried out generally in accordance with 1.9.2, except that in all cases suitable heat treatment after welding and non-destructive testing of the repaired areas is required. The fabricator is to be advised regarding the position and extent of all repairs.

1.9.4 For plates which have been produced by a T.M. process or by normalising rolling, repair by welding will be approved by the Surveyor only after procedure tests have shown that the mechanical properties have not been impaired.

1.9.5 Cracks, shells, sand patches and sharp edged seams are always considered defects which would impair the end use of the product and which require rejection or repair irrespective of their size and number. The same applies to other imperfections exceeding the acceptable limits.

### 1.10 Identification of materials

1.10.1 Every finished item is to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in at least one place with LR's brand  $\mathcal{R}$  and the following particulars:

- The manufacturer's name or trade mark.
- The grade of steel. The designations given in subsequent Sections of this Chapter may be preceded by the letters 'LR' in order to fully describe the grade, e.g. LR A, LR 490FG, LR LT-FH40, LR 316L, etc.
- When the material complies with the requirements of Section 8, the grade is to include the suffix Z25 or Z35, e.g., LR AH36 Z35.
- Identification number and/or initials which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
- If required by the purchaser, his order number or other identification mark.

The above particulars, but excluding the manufacturer's name or trade mark where this is embossed on finished products, are to be encircled with paint or otherwise marked so as to be easily recognisable.

1.10.2 Where a number of light materials are securely fastened together in bundles, the manufacturer may brand only the top piece of each bundle or, alternatively, a firmly fastened durable label containing the identification may be attached to each bundle.

1.10.3 In the event of any material bearing LR's brand failing to comply with the test requirements, the brand is to be unmistakably defaced, see also Ch 1,4.8.

### 1.11 Certification of materials

1.11.1 Unless a LR certificate is specified in other parts of the Rules, a manufacturer's certificate validated by LR is to be issued (see Ch 1,3.1) and is to include the following particulars:

- Purchaser's name and order number.

- If known, the contract number for which the material is intended.
- Address to which material is dispatched.
- Name of steelworks.
- Description and dimensions of the material.
- Specification or grade of the steel.
- Identification number of piece, including test specimen number where appropriate.
- Cast number and chemical composition of ladle samples.
- Mechanical test results (not required on shipping statements).
- Condition of supply.

1.11.2 Before the test certificates are signed by the Surveyor, the steelmaker is required to provide a written declaration stating that the material has been made by an approved process, and that it has been subjected to and has withstood satisfactorily the required tests in the presence of the Surveyor, or an authorised deputy. The following form of declaration will be accepted if stamped or printed on each test certificate with the name of the steelworks and signed by an authorised representative of the manufacturer:

'We hereby certify that the material has been made by an approved process and satisfactorily tested in accordance with the Rules of Lloyd's Register'.

1.11.3 When steel is not produced at the works at which it is rolled, a certificate is to be supplied by the steelmaker stating the process of manufacture, the cast number and the chemical composition of ladle samples. The works at which the steel was produced must be approved by LR.

1.11.4 The manufacturer of coiled plate is required to issue a certificate which clearly identifies the material as coil. The certificate issued should include the words; 'Coils covered by this certificate require further processing at a works approved by Lloyd's Register before being certified as plate in accordance with the Rules of Lloyd's Register' in addition to the requirements of 1.11.2.

1.11.5 The supplier of plate cut from coil is required to issue a certificate which clearly identifies the product as finished plate meeting the requirements of the Rules in accordance with 1.11.2.

1.11.6 The form of certificates produced by computer systems is to be agreed with the Surveyor.

## Section 2 Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications

### 2.1 Scope

2.1.1 The requirements of this Section are primarily intended to apply to steel plates and wide flats not exceeding 100 mm in thickness and sections and bars not exceeding 50 mm in thickness in Grades A, B, D and E. For greater thicknesses, variations in the requirements may be permitted or required for particular applications.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

### Section 2

**Table 3.2.1 Chemical composition and deoxidation practice**

Grade	A	B	D	E
Deoxidation	For $t \leq 50$ mm: Any method (for rimmed steel, see Note 1)	For $t \leq 50$ mm: Any method except rimmed steel	For $t \leq 25$ mm: Killed	Killed and fine grain treated with aluminium
	For $t > 50$ mm: Killed	For $t > 50$ mm: Killed	For $t > 25$ mm: Killed and fine grain treated with aluminium	
Chemical composition % (see Note 5)				
Carbon	0,21 max. (see Note 2)	0,21 max.	0,21 max.	0,18 max.
Manganese	$2,5 \times C\%$ min.	0,80 min. (see Note 3)	0,60 min.	0,70 min.
Silicon	0,50 max.	0,35 max.	0,10 – 0,35	0,10 – 0,35
Sulphur	0,035 max.	0,035 max.	0,035 max.	0,035 max.
Phosphorus	0,035 max.	0,035 max.	0,035 max.	0,035 max.
Aluminium (acid soluble)	—	—	0,015 min. (see Note 4)	0,015 min. (see Note 4)
Carbon + $\frac{1}{6}$ of the manganese content is not to exceed 0,40%				
<b>NOTES</b> 1. For Grade A, rimmed steel may only be accepted for sections up to a maximum thickness of 12,5 mm, provided that it is stated on the test certificates or shipping statements to be rimmed steel. 2. The maximum carbon content for Grade A steel may be increased to 0,23% for sections. 3. Where Grade B is impact tested the minimum manganese content may be reduced to 0,60%. 4. The total aluminium content may be determined instead of the acid soluble content. In such cases the total aluminium content is to be not less than 0,020%. 5. Where additions of any other elements are made as part of the steelmaking practice, the content is to be recorded.				

2.1.2 Additional approval tests may be required to verify the suitability for forming and welding of Grade E plate exceeding 50 mm in thickness.

## 2.2 Manufacture and chemical composition

2.2.1 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the requirements given in Table 3.2.1.

2.2.2 Small variations from the chemical compositions given in Table 3.2.1 may be allowed for Grade E steel in thicknesses exceeding 50 mm or when any Grade of steel is supplied in a thermo-mechanically controlled processed condition, provided that these variations are documented and approved in advance.

2.2.3 The manufacturer's declared analysis will be accepted subject to occasional checks if required by the Surveyors.

2.2.4 For plate supplied from coil, the chemical analysis can be transposed from the certificate of the coil manufacture onto the re-processor's certificate.

## 2.3 Condition of supply

2.3.1 All materials are to be supplied in a condition complying with the requirements given in Table 3.2.2. Where alternative conditions are permitted these are at the option of the steelmaker, unless otherwise expressly stated in the order for the material, but a steelmaker is to supply materials only in those conditions for which he has been approved by LR.

2.3.2 Where normalising rolling and thermomechanically controlled rolling (T.M.) processes are used, it is the manufacturer's responsibility to ensure that the programmed rolling schedules are adhered to. Where deviation from the programmed rolling schedule occurs, the manufacturer must ensure that each affected piece is tested and that the local Surveyor is informed.

2.3.3 If a steel product supplied in the T.M. condition is to be subjected to heating for forming or stress relieving or is to be welded by a high energy input process, consideration must be given to the possibility of a consequent reduction in mechanical properties.

## 2.4 Mechanical tests

2.4.1 The results of all tensile tests and the average energy value from each set of three impact tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 3.2.3 except where enhanced by the requirements of this Section.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

### Section 2

**Table 3.2.2 Condition of supply**

Grade	Thickness, mm	Conditions of supply			
A and B	≤50	Any (see Note 1)			
	>50 ≤100	N	NR	TM	(see Note 2)
D	≤35	Any (see Note 1)			
	>35 ≤100	N	NR	TM	(see Note 3)
E	≤100	N		TM	(see Note 4)
N = normalised NR = normalising rolled TM = thermomechanically controlled-rolled					
<b>NOTES</b> 1. 'Any' includes as-rolled, normalised, normalising rolled and thermomechanically controlled-rolled. 2. Plates, wide flats, sections and bars may be supplied in the as-rolled condition, subject to special approval from LR. 3. Sections in Grade D steel may be supplied in thicknesses greater than 35 mm in the as-rolled condition provided that satisfactory results are consistently obtained from Charpy V-notch impact tests. 4. Sections in Grade E steel may be supplied in the as-rolled and normalising rolled conditions provided that satisfactory results are consistently obtained from Charpy V-notch impact tests.					

2.4.2 With the exception given in 2.4.4, one tensile test is to be made for each batch presented unless the mass of finished material is greater than 50 tonnes, in which case one test is to be made from a different piece from each 50 tonnes or fraction thereof. Additional tests are to be made for every variation of 10 mm in the thickness or diameter of products from the same cast. For sections, the thickness to be considered is the thickness of the product at the point at which samples are taken for mechanical tests. A piece is to be regarded as the rolled product from a single slab or billet, or from a single ingot if this is rolled directly into plates, strip, sections or bars.

2.4.3 For Grades A and B where plate is supplied from coil, results of the tensile test can be transposed from the certificate of the coil manufacture onto the certificate issued by the re-processor. If the coil mass exceeds 50 tonnes, testing will additionally be required from two locations representing the start and end of the coil. For Grades D and E, the mechanical properties must be sampled from the de-coiled plate in accordance with the frequency specified in the Rules.

2.4.4 For plates of thickness exceeding 50 mm in Grade E steel, one tensile test is to be made on each piece.

**Table 3.2.3 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes**

Grade	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact test (see Notes 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7)				
				Thickness mm	Average energy J minimum  Longitudinal  Transverse (see Note 3)			
A	235	400 – 520 (see Note 1)	22 (see Note 2)	≤50	27	20		
B				>50 ≤70	34	24		
D				>70 ≤100	41	27		
E								
Impact tests are to be made on the various grades at the following temperatures:				A grade	not required			
				B grade	0°C			
				D grade	–20°C			
				E grade	–40°C			
NOTES								
1. For sections in Grade A, the upper limit of the tensile strength range may be exceeded at the discretion of the Surveyor.								
2. For full thickness tensile test specimens with a width of 25 mm and a gauge length of 200 mm (see Fig. 2.2.4 in Chapter 2), the minimum elongation is to be:								
Thickness mm		>5	>10	>15	>20	>25	>30	>35
		≤5	≤10	≤15	≤20	≤25	≤30	≤35
Elongation %		14	16	17	18	19	20	21
								22
3. Tests are to be taken in the longitudinal direction. Normally, transverse test specimens are not required. Transverse test results for plates and wide flats are to be garenteed by the supplier.								
4. See 2.4.5 and 2.4.6.								
5. See 2.4.7.								
6. See 1.7.11.								
7. See 2.4.14.								

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

# Chapter 3

Sections 2 & 3

**2.4.5** For Grade A steel, Charpy V-notch impact tests are not required when the thickness does not exceed 50 mm, or up to 100 mm thick if the material is supplied in either the normalised or thermo-mechanically controlled-rolled condition and has been fine grain treated. However, the manufacturer should confirm, by way of regular in-house checks, that the material will meet a requirement of 27 J at +20°C. The results of these checks shall be reported to the Surveyor. The frequency of these checks should as a minimum be every 250 tonnes.

**2.4.6** When Grade A steel is supplied in a thickness greater than 50 mm and either, in the normalising rolled condition, or when special approval has been given to supply in the as-rolled condition, a set of three impact test specimens is to be tested from each batch of 50 tonnes or fraction thereof.

**2.4.7** Impact tests are not required for Grade B steel of 25 mm or less in thickness. However, the manufacturer is to confirm, by way of regular in-house tests, and on occasional material selected by the Surveyor, that the material meets the requirement in Table 3.2.3. The results of the tests are to be reported to the Surveyor. The frequency of the in-house checks are to be, as a minimum, one set of three impact test specimens for every 250 tonnes.

**2.4.8** For Grade B steels of thicknesses above 25 mm, supplied in the as-rolled or normalising rolled condition, one set of three impact test specimens is to be made from the thickest item in each batch presented. If the mass of finished material is greater than 25 tonnes, one extra set of tests is to be made from a different piece from each 25 tonnes or fraction thereof.

**2.4.9** For Grade B steels of thicknesses above 25 mm, supplied in the furnace normalised or thermomechanically controlled-rolled condition, one set of three impact test specimens is to be made from the thickest item in each batch presented. If the mass of finished material is greater than 50 tonnes, one extra set of tests is to be made from a different piece from each 50 tonnes or fraction thereof.

**2.4.10** For Grade D steels supplied in the as-rolled or normalising rolled condition, one set of three impact test specimens is to be made from the thickest item in each batch presented. If the mass of finished material is greater than 25 tonnes, one extra set of tests is to be made from a different piece from each 25 tonnes or fraction thereof.

**2.4.11** For Grade D steels, supplied in the furnace normalised or thermomechanically controlled-rolled condition, one set of three impact test specimens is to be made from the thickest item in each batch presented. If the mass of finished material is greater than 50 tonnes, one extra set of tests is to be made from a different piece from each 50 tonnes or fraction thereof.

**2.4.12** For plates in Grade E steel, one set of three impact test specimens is to be made from each piece. For bars and sections in Grade E steel, one set of three test specimens is to be made from each 25 tonnes or fraction thereof. When, subject to the special approval of LR, sections are supplied in the as-rolled or normalising rolled conditions, one set of

impact tests is to be taken from each batch of 15 tonnes or fraction thereof.

**2.4.13** The results of all tensile tests and the average energy values from each set of three impact tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 3.2.3. For impact tests, one individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this average value. See Ch 1,4.6 for re-test procedures.

**2.4.14** For batch tested Grade B and D steel plates supplied in a condition other than furnace normalised, with a thickness equal to, or greater than 25 mm and 12 mm respectively, and where the average value of one set of tests is less than 40 J, two further items from the same batch are to be selected and tested. If these fail to achieve an average of 40 J on either set, each individual piece of the heat is to be tested. The plates are acceptable provided they meet the requirements of Table 3.2.3. Additional testing is not required where the manufacturer can demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Surveyor that the plate was rolled outside the limits of the programmed rolling schedule. In this instance the plate should be rejected, *see also* 2.3.2.

**2.4.15** Where standard subsidiary Charpy V-notch test specimens are necessary, *see* Ch 2,3.2.4.

## 2.5 Identification of materials

**2.5.1** The particulars detailed in 1.10 are to be marked on all materials which have been accepted. Where a number of light materials are bundled, the bundle is to be identified in accordance with 1.10.2.

## 2.6 Certification of materials

**2.6.1** At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in 1.11 and, additionally, are to indicate if sections in Grade A steel of rimming quality have been supplied. As a minimum, the chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and the residual elements, as detailed in Table 3.2.1.

## Section 3 Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications

### 3.1 Scope

**3.1.1** Provision is made for material to be supplied in four strength levels, 27S, 32, 36 and 40.

**3.1.2** Provisions for material supplied in H47 strength grades are specifically intended for hatch comings and deck structure of container ships.



3.1.3 The required notch toughness is designated by subdividing the strength levels into Grades AH, DH, EH and FH.

3.1.4 For the designation to fully identify a steel and its properties the appropriate grade letters should precede the strength level number, e.g. AH32 or FH40.

3.1.5 The requirements of this Section are primarily intended to apply to plates, wide flats, sections and bars not exceeding the thickness limits given in Table 3.3.1. For greater thicknesses, variations in the requirements may be permitted or required for particular applications but a reduction of the required impact energy is not allowed.

3.1.6 It should be noted that the fatigue strength of weldments in steels of high strength levels may not be greater than those of steels of lower strength levels.

3.2 Alternative specifications

3.2.1 Steels differing from the requirements of this Section in respect of chemical composition, deoxidation practice, condition of supply or mechanical properties may be accepted subject to special approval by LR. Such steels are to be given a special designation, see 3.7.2.

3.3 Manufacture

3.3.1 All the grades of steel are to be in the killed and fine grain treated condition.

Table 3.3.1 Maximum thickness limits

Steel designation				Maximum thickness mm	
				Plates and wide flats	Sections and bars
AH 27S	DH 27S	EH 27S	FH27S	100 (see Note 1)	50
AH 32	DH 32	EH 32	FH32		
AH 36	DH 36	EH 36	FH36		
AH 40	DH 40	EH40	FH40		
AH 47 (see Note 2)	DH 47	EH 47	FH 47		Not applicable
NOTES 1. Where the thickness exceeds 50 mm, the steel must initially be approved by way of a Nil Ductility Test, in accordance with ASTM E208, to show adequate crack arrest properties. The Nil Ductility Test Temperature is to be agreed for the thickness approved to ensure the crack arrest temperature is below the minimum design temperature. Where the thickness exceeds 70 mm and the material is used specifically as a crack arrest plate, the material must be specially approved with a crack arrest fracture toughness $K_{Ic} \geq 6000 \text{ N/mm}^{1.5}$ . 2. Minimum thickness for H47 strength level is 50 mm, see 3.1.2.					

3.4 Chemical composition

3.4.1 The chemical compositions of ladle samples for all grades of steel are to comply with the requirements given in Table 3.3.2. The requirements for H47 strength grade steels are given in Table 3.3.3.

3.4.2 The carbon equivalent is to be calculated from the ladle analysis using the formula given below and is not to exceed the maximum value agreed between the fabricator and the steelmaker when the steel is ordered.

$$\text{Carbon equivalent} = C + \frac{\text{Mn}}{6} + \frac{\text{Cr} + \text{Mo} + \text{V}}{5} + \frac{\text{Ni} + \text{Cu}}{15}$$

For TM steels, the agreed carbon equivalent is not to exceed the values given in Table 3.3.4.

3.4.3 The cold cracking susceptibility,  $P_{cm}$ , may be used instead of the carbon equivalent for evaluating weldability, in which case the following formula is to be used for calculating the  $P_{cm}$  from the ladle analysis:

$$P_{cm} = C + \frac{\text{Si}}{30} + \frac{\text{Mn} + \text{Cr} + \text{Cu}}{20} + \frac{\text{Ni}}{60} + \frac{\text{Mo}}{15} + \frac{\text{V}}{10} + 5B$$

The maximum allowable  $P_{cm}$  is to be agreed with LR and is to be included in the manufacturing specification and reported on the certificate.

3.4.4 The cold cracking susceptibility,  $P_{cm}$ , is to have a maximum value of 0,22 per cent for steels of H47 strength grade.

3.4.5 Small deviations in chemical composition from that given in Table 3.3.2 for plates exceeding 50 mm in thickness in Grades EH36, EH40, FH36 and FH40 may be approved provided that these deviations are documented and approved in advance.

3.4.6 Where the grain refining elements Niobium, Titanium and Vanadium are used either singly or in combination, the chemical composition is to be specifically approved for each Grade in combination with the rolling procedure to be used.

3.4.7 When any grade is supplied in an approved thermomechanically controlled processed condition, variations in the specified chemical composition may be considered, provided that these variations are documented and approved in advance.

3.4.8 For plate supplied from coil, the chemical analysis can be transposed from the certificate of the coil manufacture onto the re-processor's certificate.

**Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars****Chapter 3**

## Section 3

**Table 3.3.2 Chemical composition**

Grades	AH, DH, EH	FH
Carbon % max. Manganese % Silicon % max. Phosphorus % max. Sulphur % max.	0,18 0,9 – 1,60 (see Note 1) 0,50 0,035 0,035	0,16 0,9 – 1,60 0,50 0,025 0,025
Grain refining elements (see Note 2)  Aluminium (acid soluble) % Niobium % Vanadium % Titanium %  Total (Nb + V + Ti) % (see Note 5)	0,015 min. (see Note 3) 0,02 – 0,05 0,05 – 0,10 0,02 max.  0,12 max.	
Residual elements  Nickel % max. Copper % max. Chromium % max. Molybdenum % max. Nitrogen % max.	0,40 0,35 0,20 0,08	0,80 0,35 0,20 0,08 0,009 (0,012 max. if Al is present)
<b>NOTES</b> 1. For AH grade steels in all strength levels and thicknesses up to 12,5 mm, the specified minimum manganese content is 0,70%. 2. The steel is to contain aluminium, niobium, vanadium or other suitable grain refining elements, either singly or in any combination. When used singly, the steel is to contain the specified minimum content of the grain refining element. When used in combination, the specified minimum content of each element is not applicable. 3. The total aluminium content may be determined instead of the acid soluble content. In such cases the total aluminium content is to be not less than 0,020%. 4. Alloying elements other than those listed above are to be included in the approved manufacturing specification. 5. The grain refining elements are to be in accordance with the approved specification.		

**Table 3.3.3 Chemical composition for Grade AH 47, DH 47, EH 47 and FH 47**

Chemical element	max. (%)
Carbon	0,20
Manganese	2,00
Silicon	0,55
Phosphorus	0,030
Sulphur	0,030
Nickel	2,00
Chromium	0,25
Molybdenum	0,080
Grain refining elements (see Note 1) Aluminium (acid soluble)	0,015 min (see Note 2)
Residual elements Copper 0,35	
<b>NOTES</b> 1. The grain refining elements niobium, vanadium and titanium are to be in accordance with the approved specification. 2. The total aluminium content may be determined instead of the acid soluble content. In these cases the total aluminium content is to be not less than 0,020%.	

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

### Section 3

### 3.5 Condition of supply

3.5.1 All materials are to be supplied in a condition complying with the requirements given in Table 3.3.5 or Table 3.3.6. Where alternative conditions are permitted, these are at the option of the steelmaker, unless otherwise expressly stated in the order for the material.

3.5.2 Where normalising rolling and thermomechanically controlled rolling (T.M.) processes are used, it is the manufacturer's responsibility to ensure that the programmed rolling schedules are adhered to. Where deviation from the programmed rolling schedule occurs, the manufacturer must ensure that each affected piece is tested and that the local Surveyor is informed.

3.5.3 The use of precipitation hardening steels is not acceptable, except where such hardening is incidental to the use of grain refining elements.

### 3.6 Mechanical tests

3.6.1 The results of all tensile tests and the average energy value from each set of three Charpy V-notch impact tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 3.3.7 except where enhanced by the requirements of this Section.

3.6.2 For steels in the as-rolled, normalised, normalising rolled or T.M. conditions, one tensile test is to be made for each batch of 50 tonnes or fraction thereof. Additional tests are to be made for every variation of 10 mm in the thickness or diameter of products from the same cast.

3.6.3 Where plate is supplied from coil, both the tensile tests and the Charpy V-notch tests are to be taken from the de-coiled plate in accordance with the frequency specified for the Grade as required by this Section.

3.6.4 For steels in the quenched and tempered condition a tensile test is to be made on each plate as heat treated. For continuously heat treated plates, one tensile test is to be made for each 50 tonnes or fraction thereof from a single cast. Additional tests are to be made for every variation of 10 mm in the thickness of the products from a single cast. The tensile test specimens are to be taken with their axes transverse to the main direction of rolling.

3.6.5 For products in the AH and DH grades, at least one set of three impact tests is to be made on the thickest piece in each batch of 50 tonnes when supplied in either the normalised or thermomechanically controlled condition. When the products are supplied in the as-rolled or normalising rolled conditions a set of impact test specimens is to be taken from a different piece from each 25 tonnes or fraction thereof. When supplied in the quenched and tempered condition, a set of impact tests is to be made on each length as heat treated. Test specimens from the quenched and tempered plates are to have their axes transverse to the main rolling direction.

3.6.6 For plates and wide flats in the EH and FH grades supplied in the normalised or thermomechanically controlled conditions, one set of impact tests is to be made on each piece. For plates supplied in the quenched and tempered condition a set of impact tests is to be made on each length as heat treated. Test specimens from the quenched and tempered plates are to have their axes transverse to the main rolling direction.

3.6.7 For plates and wide flats in H47 strength grade, one set of impact tests is to be made on each piece.

3.6.8 For sections and bars in the EH and FH grades supplied in the normalised or thermomechanically controlled conditions, one set of impact tests is to be made on the thickest piece in a batch not exceeding 25 tonnes. For sections supplied in the as-rolled or normalising rolled conditions the batch size is not to exceed 15 tonnes.

3.6.9 For batch tested plates in a condition other than furnace normalised, with a thickness equal to 12 mm or greater, and where the average value of one set of tests is less than 50 J, two further items from the same batch are to be selected and tested. If these fail to achieve an average of 50 J on either set, each individual piece of the heat is to be tested. The plates are acceptable provided they meet the requirements of Table 3.3.7. Additional testing is not required where the manufacturer can demonstrate to the satisfaction of the Surveyor that the plate was rolled outside the limits of the programmed rolling schedule. In this instance the plate should be rejected, see also 3.5.2.

3.6.10 Where standard subsidiary impact specimens are necessary, see Ch 2,3.2.4.

**Table 3.3.4 Carbon equivalent requirements for higher tensile strength steels up to 100 mm in thickness when supplied in the TM condition**

Grade				Carbon Equivalent, max. (%)	
				$t \leq 50$	$50 < t \leq 100$
AH 27S	DH 27S	EH 27S	FH 27S	0,36	0,38
AH 32	DH 32	EH 32	FH 32	0,36	0,38
AH 36	DH 36	EH 36	FH 36	0,38	0,40
AH 40	DH 40	EH 40	FH 40	0,40	0,42
AH 47	DH 47	EH 47	FH 47	Not applicable (see Table 3.3.1)	0,49
NOTE $t$ = thickness, in mm.					



# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

Section 3

**Table 3.3.5 Conditions of supply for plates and wide flats**

Grade	Grain refining practice (see Note 1)	Thickness range mm	Conditions of supply (see Note 2)			
AH 27S AH 32 AH 36	Al or Al + Ti	≤ 20	AR	N	NR	TM
		>20 ≤ 100	—	N	NR	TM (see Note 3)
	Nb or V or Al + (Nb or V) or Al + (Ti) + (Nb or V)	≤ 12,5	AR	N	NR	TM
		>12,5 ≤ 100	—	N	NR	TM
AH 40	Any practice	≤ 12,5	AR	N	NR	TM
		>12,5 ≤ 50	—	N	NR	TM
		>50 ≤ 100	—	N	—	TM QT
AH 47 DH 47 EH 47 FH 47	Any practice	≤ 50	Not applicable			
		>50 ≤ 100	TM			
DH 27S DH 32 DH 36	Al or Al + Ti	≤ 20	AR	N	NR	TM
		>20 ≤ 100	—	N	NR	TM (see Note 4)
	Nb or V or Al + (Nb or V) or Al + (Ti) + (Nb or V)	≤ 12,5	AR	N	NR	TM
		>12,5 ≤ 100	—	N	NR	TM
DH 40	Any practice	≤ 50	—	N	NR	TM
		>50 ≤ 100	—	N	—	TM QT
EH 27S EH 32 EH 36	Any practice	≤ 100	—	N	—	TM
EH 40	Any practice	≤ 100	—	N	—	TM QT
FH 27S FH 32 FH 36 FH 40	Any practice	≤ 100	—	N	—	TM QT

NOTES

- Grain refining elements used singly or in any combination, require specific approval from Materials and NDE Department, London office.
- AR = as-rolled N = furnace normalised NR = normalising rolled  
TM = thermomechanically controlled-rolled QT = quenched and tempered
- Material up to 35 mm thick may be supplied in the as-rolled condition provided that prior approval has been obtained from LR.
- Material up to 25 mm thick may be supplied in the as-rolled condition provided that prior approval has been obtained from LR.

### 3.7 Identification of materials

3.7.1 The particulars detailed in 1.10 are to be marked on all materials which have been accepted and, for ease of recognition, are to be encircled or otherwise marked with paint. Where a number of light products are bundled, the bundle is to be identified in accordance with 1.10.2.

3.7.2 Steels which have been specially approved and which differ from the requirements of this Section are to have the letter 'S' after the agreed identification mark.

### 3.8 Certification of materials

3.8.1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in 1.11 and, additionally, are to state the specified maximum carbon equivalent. As a minimum, the chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and of the residual elements.

3.8.2 For steels which have been specially approved, the agreed identification mark, the specified minimum yield stress and, if applicable, the contents of alloying elements are additionally to be stated on the test certificate or shipping statement.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

### Section 3

**Table 3.3.6 Conditions of supply for sections and bars**

Grade	Grain refining practice (see Note 1)	Thickness range mm	Conditions of supply (see Note 2)			
AH 27S AH 32 AH 36	Al or Al + Ti	≤20	Any			
		>20 ≤50	N	NR	TM	(see Note 3)
	Nb or V or Al + Nb or Al + V or Al + (Ti) + (Nb or V)	≤12,5	Any			
		>12,5 ≤50	N	NR	TM	(see Note 3)
AH 40	Any practice	≤12,5	Any			
		>12,5 ≤50	N	NR	TM	
DH 27S DH 32 DH 36	Al or Al + Ti	≤20	Any			
		>20 ≤50	N	NR	TM	(see Note 3)
	Nb or V or Al + Nb or Al + V or Al + (Ti) + (Nb or V)	≤12,5	Any			
		>12,5 ≤50	N	NR	TM	(see Note 3)
DH 40	Any practice	≤50	N	NR	TM	
EH 27S EH 32 EH 36	Any practice	≤50	N	TM		(see Notes 3 and 4)
EH 40	Any practice	≤50	N	TM	QT	
FH 27S FH 32 FH 36 FH 40	Any practice	≤50	N	TM	QT	(see Note 4)

**NOTES**

1. Grain refining elements used singly or in any combination require specific approval from Materials and NDE Department, London Office.
2. N = furnace normalised  
TM = thermomechanically controlled-rolled  
NR = normalising rolled  
QT = quenched and tempered
3. Subject to the special approval of LR, sections may be supplied in the as-rolled condition provided satisfactory results are consistently obtained from Charpy V-notch impact tests.
4. Subject to the special approval of LR, sections may be supplied in the NR condition.

3.8.3 The steelmaker is to provide the Surveyor with a written declaration as detailed in 1.11.2.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

### Section 3

**Table 3.3.7 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes** (see Note 1)

Grades (see Note 3)	Yield Stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> min.	Tensile Strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$ % min. (see Note 2)	Charpy V-notch impact tests (see Notes 3, 4 and 5)					
				Average energy J minimum					
				$t \leq 50$ mm		$50 < t \leq 70$ mm		$70 < t \leq 100$ mm	
				Longitudinal	Transverse	Longitudinal	Transverse	Longitudinal	Transverse
AH 27S DH 27S EH 27S FH 27S	265	400 – 530	22	27	20	34	24	41	27
AH 32 DH 32 EH 32 FH 32	315	440 – 570	22	31	22	38	26	46	31
AH 36 DH 36 EH 36 FH 36	355	490 – 630	21	34	24	41	27	50	34
AH 40 DH 40 EH 40 FH 40	390	510 – 650	20	39	26	46	31	55	37
AH 47 DH 47 EH 47 FH 47	460	570 – 720	17	—	—	53	35	64	42

Impact tests are to be made on the various grades at the following temperatures:

AH grades 0°C  
DH grades –20°C  
EH grades –40°C  
FH grades –60°C

#### NOTES

- The requirements for products thicker than those detailed in the table are subject to agreement, see 3.1.4.
- For full thickness tensile test specimens with a width of 25 mm and a gauge length of 200 mm, see Fig. 2.2.4 in Chapter 2, the minimum elongation is to be:

Thickness mm	≤5	>5 ≤10	>10 ≤15	>15 ≤20	>20 ≤25	>25 ≤30	>30 ≤40	>40 ≤50	>50
Elongation % { Strength levels 27S, 32 Strength level 36 Strength level 40	14	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	To be specially agreed
	13	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	
	12	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	

- Subject to special approval by LR, the minimum tensile strength may be reduced to 470 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, for grades AH36, DH36, EH36 and FH36, in the TM condition when micro-alloying elements Nb, Ti or V are used singly and not in combination and provided the yield to tensile strength ratio does not exceed 0,89. For plates with a thickness ≤12 mm, the yield to tensile strength ratio is to be specially considered.
- Tests are to be taken in the longitudinal direction. Normally, transverse test specimens are not required. Transverse test results for plates and wide flats are to be guaranteed by the supplier.
- See 1.7.11
- See 3.6.9.
- For steel of H47 strength grade, the yield to tensile strength ratio is not to exceed 0,94.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

### Section 4

#### Section 4 Steels for boilers and pressure vessels

##### 4.1 Scope

4.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for carbon, carbon-manganese and alloy steels intended for use in the construction of boilers and pressure vessels. In addition to specifying mechanical properties at ambient temperature for the purposes of acceptance testing, these requirements also give details of appropriate mechanical properties at elevated temperatures which may be used for design purposes.

4.1.2 Where it is proposed to use a carbon or carbon-manganese steel with a specified minimum tensile strength intermediate to those given in this Section, corresponding minimum values for the yield stress, elongation and mechanical properties at elevated temperatures may be obtained by interpolation.

4.1.3 Carbon and carbon-manganese steels with a specified minimum tensile strength of greater than 490 N/mm<sup>2</sup> but not exceeding 520 N/mm<sup>2</sup> may be accepted, provided that details of the proposed specification are submitted for approval.

4.1.4 Where it is proposed to use alloy steels other than as given in this Section, details of the specification are to be submitted for approval. In such cases the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 600 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

4.1.5 Materials intended for use in the construction of the cargo tanks and process pressure vessels storage tanks for liquefied gases and for other low temperature applications are to comply with the requirements of Section 6 or 7, as appropriate.

##### 4.2 Manufacture and chemical composition

4.2.1 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 3.4.1.

4.2.2 For plate supplied from coil, the chemical analysis may be transposed from the certificate of the coil manufacture onto the re-processor's certificate.

##### 4.3 Heat treatment

4.3.1 All materials are to be supplied in a condition complying with the requirements given in Table 3.4.2 except that, when agreed, material intended for hot forming may be supplied in the as-rolled condition.

##### 4.4 Mechanical tests

4.4.1 For plates, a tensile test specimen is to be taken from one end of each piece when the mass does not exceed 5 tonnes and the length does not exceed 15 m. When either of these limits is exceeded, tensile test specimens are to be

taken from both ends of each piece. A piece is to be regarded as the rolled product from a single slab or from a single ingot if this is rolled directly into plates.

4.4.2 For strip, tensile test specimens are to be taken from both ends of each coil.

4.4.3 Sections and bars are to be presented for acceptance test in batches containing not more than 50 lengths, as supplied. The material in each batch is to be of the same section size, from the same cast and in the same condition of supply. One tensile test specimen is to be taken from material representative of each batch, except that additional tests are to be taken when the mass of a batch exceeds 10 tonnes.

4.4.4 Where plates are required for hot forming and it has been agreed that the heat treatment will be carried out by the fabricator, the tests at the steelworks are to be made on material which has been cut from the plates and given a normalising and tempering heat treatment in a manner simulating the treatment which will be applied to the plates.

4.4.5 If required by the Surveyors or by the fabricator, test material may be given a simulated stress relieving heat treatment prior to the preparation of the test specimens. This has to be stated on the order together with agreed details of the simulated heat treatment and the mechanical properties which can be accepted.

4.4.6 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Tables 3.4.3 to 3.4.5.

4.4.7 Where plate is supplied from coil, the tensile tests are to be taken from the de-coiled plate in accordance with the frequency specified for the Grade as required by this Section.

4.4.8 All test specimens are to be taken in the transverse direction unless otherwise agreed.

4.4.9 When material will be subject to strains in a through thickness direction, it is recommended that it should have specified through thickness properties in accordance with the requirements of Section 8.

##### 4.5 Identification of materials

4.5.1 The particulars detailed in 1.10 are to be marked on all materials which have been accepted.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

### Section 4

**Table 3.4.1 Chemical composition and deoxidation practice**

Grade of steel	Deoxidation	Chemical composition %										
Carbon and carbon-manganese steels		C max.	Si		Mn		P	S	Al	Residual elements		
360 AR 410 AR 460 AR	Any method except rimmed steel	0,18 0,21 0,23	0,50 max.		0,40 – 1,20 0,40 – 1,30 0,80 – 1,50		0,040 max.		– – –	Cr 0,25 max. Cu 0,30 max. Mo 0,10 max. Ni 0,30 max.		
360 410 460 490	Any method except rimmed steel	0,17 0,20  0,20 (see Note 1)	0,35 max.  0,40 max.		0,40 – 1,20 0,50 – 1,30 0,80 – 1,40		0,035 max.		– –  –			
	Killed		0,10 – 0,50		0,90 – 1,60				–			
360 FG 410 FG  460 FG 490 FG 510 FG	Killed fine grained	0,17 0,20  0,20 (see Note 1)  0,22	0,35 max.  0,40 max. 0,10 – 0,50		0,40 – 1,20 0,50 – 1,30 0,80 – 1,50 0,90 – 1,60		0,035 max.		(see Note 2)			
Alloy steel		C	Si		Mn		P	S	Al	Cr	Mo	Residual elements
13Cr Mo 45  11Cr Mo 910	Killed	0,10–0,18  0,08–0,18	0,15–0,35  0,15–0,50		0,4–0,8		0,035 max.		(see Note 3)	0,70–1,30  2,00–2,50	0,40–0,60  0,90–1,10	Cu 0,30 max.  Ni 0,30 max.
NOTES												
1. For thicknesses greater than 30 mm, carbon 0,22% max.												
2. Aluminium (acid soluble) 0,015% min. or Aluminium (total) 0,018% min.												
3. Aluminium (acid soluble or total) 0,020% max.												
Niobium, vanadium or other suitable grain refining elements may be used either in place of or in addition to aluminium.												

**Table 3.4.2 Condition of supply**

Grade of steel	Condition of supply
Carbon and carbon-manganese 360 AR to 460 AR	As-rolled Maximum thickness or diameter is 40 mm
Carbon and carbon-manganese 360 to 490	Normalised or normalised rolled
Carbon and carbon-manganese 360 FG to 510 FG	Normalised or normalised rolled
13Cr Mo 45	Normalised and tempered
11Cr Mo 910	Normalised and tempered

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

Section 4

**Table 3.4.3 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steels – As-rolled**

Grade of steel	Thickness mm	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum
360 AR	≤ 40	190	360–480	24
410 AR		215	410–530	22
460 AR		240	460–580	21

**Table 3.4.4 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steels – Normalised or normalised rolled**

Grade of steel	Thickness mm (see Note)	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum
360	>3 ≤16	205	360 – 480	26
	>16 ≤40	195		26
	>40 ≤63	185		25
410	>3 ≤16	235	410 – 530	24
	>16 ≤40	225		24
	>40 ≤63	215		23
460	>3 ≤16	285	460 – 580	22
	>16 ≤40	255		22
	>40 ≤63	245		21
490	>3 ≤16	305	490 – 610	21
	>16 ≤40	275		21
	>40 ≤63	265		20
360 FG	>3 ≤16	235	360 – 480	26
	>16 ≤40	215		26
	>40 ≤63	195		25
410 FG	>3 ≤16	265	410 – 530	24
	>16 ≤40	245		24
	>40 ≤63	235		23
460 FG	>3 ≤16	295	460 – 580	22
	>16 ≤40	285		22
	>40 ≤63	275		21
490 FG	>3 ≤16	315	490 – 610	21
	>16 ≤40	315		21
	>40 ≤63	305		21
510 FG	>3 ≤16	355	510 – 650	21
	>16 ≤40	345		
	>40 ≤63	335		

**NOTE**

For thicknesses greater than 63 mm, the minimum values for yield stress may be reduced by 1% for each 5 mm increment in thickness over 63 mm. The minimum elongation values may also be reduced one unit, for all thicknesses over 63 mm. For thicknesses over 100 mm, the above values are to be agreed.

**Table 3.4.5 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steels – Normalised and tempered**

Grade of steel	Thickness mm (see Note)	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum
13Cr Mo45	≤63	305	470–620	20
11Cr Mo910	≤16	275	480–630	18
	>16 ≤63	265		

**NOTE**

For thicknesses greater than 63 mm, the minimum values for yield stress may be reduced by 1% for each 5 mm increment in thickness over 63 mm. The minimum elongation values may also be reduced one unit, e.g. for all thicknesses over 63 mm. For thicknesses over 100 mm, the above values are to be agreed.

### 4.6 Certification of materials

4.6.1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and to give the information detailed in 1.11 and, additionally, are to state the specified maximum carbon equivalent. As a minimum, chemical composition is to include the content of any grain refining elements used and of the residual elements, as detailed in Table 3.4.1.

### 4.7 Mechanical properties for design purposes

4.7.1 Nominal values for the minimum lower yield or 0,2 per cent proof stress at temperatures of 50°C and higher are given in Tables 3.4.6 to 3.4.8.

4.7.2 These values are intended for design purposes only, and verification is not required except for materials complying with National or proprietary specifications where the elevated temperature properties used for design purposes are higher than given in Tables 3.4.6 to 3.4.8.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

Section 4

**Table 3.4.6 Mechanical properties for design purposes (see 4.7.1) : carbon and carbon-manganese steels – As-rolled**

Grade of steel	Thickness mm	Design temperature °C (see Note)							
		50	100	150	200	250	300	350	
		Nominal minimum lower yield or 0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>							
360 AR	} ≤ 40	{	154	153	152	145	128	108	102
410 AR			186	183	181	174	155	134	127
460 AR			218	213	210	203	182	161	153
NOTE Maximum permissible design temperature is 350°C.									

4.7.3 In such cases, at least one tensile test at the proposed design or other agreed temperature is to be made on material from each cast. Where materials of more than one thickness are supplied from one cast, the thickest material is to be tested. The test specimens are to be prepared from material adjacent to that used for tests at ambient temperature. The axis of the test specimens, is to be between mid and quarter thickness of the material and the test specimens are to be machined to dimensions in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 2. The test procedure is also to be as detailed in Chapter 2, and the results are to comply with the requirements of the National or proprietary specifications.

4.7.4 As an alternative to 4.7.3, a manufacturer may carry out an agreed comprehensive test program for a stated grade of steel to demonstrate that the specified minimum mechanical properties at elevated temperatures can be consistently obtained. This test program is to be carried out under supervision of the Surveyors, and the results submitted for assessment and approval. When a manufacturer is approved on this basis, tensile tests at elevated temperatures are not required for acceptance purposes but, at the discretion of the Surveyors, occasional check tests of this type may be requested.

**Table 3.4.7 Mechanical properties for design purposes (see 4.7.1): carbon and carbon-manganese steels – Normalised or controlled-rolled**

Grade of steel	Thickness mm (see Note)	Design temperature °C								
		50	100	150	200	250	300	350	400	450
		Nominal minimum lower yield or 0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>								
360	>3 ≤16	183	175	172	168	150	124	117	115	113
	>16 ≤40	173	171	169	162	144	124	117	115	113
	>40 ≤63	166	162	158	152	141	124	117	115	113
410	>3 ≤16	220	211	208	201	180	150	142	138	136
	>16 ≤40	204	201	198	191	171	150	142	138	136
	>40 ≤63	196	192	188	181	168	150	142	138	136
460	>3 ≤16	260	248	243	235	210	176	168	162	158
	>16 ≤40	235	230	227	220	198	176	168	162	158
	>40 ≤63	227	222	218	210	194	176	168	162	158
490	>3 ≤16	280	270	264	255	228	192	183	177	172
	>16 ≤40	255	248	245	237	214	192	183	177	172
	>40 ≤63	245	240	236	227	210	192	183	177	172
360 FG	>3 ≤16	214	204	185	165	145	127	116	110	106
	>16 ≤40	200	196	183	164	145	127	116	110	106
	>40 ≤63	183	179	172	159	145	127	116	110	106
410 FG	>3 ≤16	248	235	216	194	171	152	141	134	130
	>16 ≤40	235	228	213	192	171	152	141	134	130
	>40 ≤63	222	215	204	188	171	152	141	134	130
460 FG	>3 ≤16	276	262	247	223	198	177	167	158	153
	>16 ≤40	271	260	242	220	198	177	167	158	153
	>40 ≤63	262	251	235	217	198	177	167	158	153
490 FG	>3 ≤16	297	284	265	240	213	192	182	173	168
	>16 ≤40	293	279	260	237	213	192	182	173	168
	>40 ≤63	286	272	256	234	213	192	182	173	168
510 FG	>3 ≤63	313	290	270	255	235	215	200	180	—

## NOTE

For thicknesses greater than 63 mm, the values for lower yield or 0,2% proof stress are to be reduced by 1% for each 5 mm increment in thickness up to 100 mm. For thicknesses over 100 mm, the values are to be agreed and verified by test.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

Sections 4 &amp; 5

**Table 3.4.8 Mechanical properties for design purposes (see 4.7.1): alloy steels – Normalised and tempered**

Grade of steel	Thickness mm (see Note)	Design temperature °C									
		50	100	200	300	350	400	450	500	550	600
		Nominal minimum lower yield or 0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>									
13CrMo 45	>3 ≤63	284	270	248	216	203	199	194	188	181	174
11CrMo 910		255	249	233	219	212	207	194	180	160	137

NOTE  
For thicknesses greater than 63 mm, the values for lower yield or 0,2% proof stress are to be reduced by 1 % for each 5 mm increment in thickness up to 100 mm. For thicknesses over 100 mm, the values are to be agreed and verified by test.

4.7.5 Values for the estimated average stress to rupture in 100 000 hours are given in Table 3.4.9 and may be used for design purposes.

**Table 3.4.9 Mechanical properties for design purposes (see 4.7.5): estimated average values for stress to rupture in 100 000 hours (units N/mm<sup>2</sup>)**

Temperature °C	Grades of steel				
	Carbon and carbon-manganese			Low alloy	
	360FG 410FG 460FG	360 410 460	490 490FG 510FG	13CrMo 45	11CrMo 910
380	171	219	227	—	—
390	155	196	203	—	—
400	141	173	179	—	—
410	127	151	157	—	—
420	114	129	136	—	—
430	102	109	117	—	—
440	90	92	100	—	—
450	78	78	85	290	—
460	67	67	73	262	—
470	57	57	63	235	210
480	47	48	55	208	186
490	36	—	47	181	165
500	—	—	—	155	145
510	—	—	—	129	128
520	—	—	—	103	112
530	—	—	—	80	98
540	—	—	—	62	84
550	—	—	—	49	72
560	—	—	—	42	61
570	—	—	—	36	51
580	—	—	—	—	44

## Section 5

### Steels for machinery fabrications

#### 5.1 General

5.1.1 Steel plates, sections or bars intended for use in the construction of major components of welded machinery structures, such as bedplates, crankcases, frames and entablatures, are to comply with one of the following alternatives:

- Any grade of normal strength structural steel as detailed in Section 2.
- Any grade of higher tensile structural steel as detailed in Section 3.
- Any grade of carbon-manganese boiler or pressure vessel steel as detailed in Section 4, except that for this application batch testing is acceptable. The size of a batch and the number of tensile tests are to be as detailed in Section 2.

5.1.2 The minus tolerances for products for machinery structures are to be in accordance with Table 3.5.1.

**Table 3.5.1 Under thickness tolerances**

Nominal thickness, <i>t</i> (mm)	Minus tolerance (mm)
$5 \leq t < 8$	−0,4
$8 \leq t < 15$	−0,5
$15 \leq t < 25$	−0,6
$25 \leq t < 40$	−0,8
$t \geq 40$	−1,0

#### 5.2 Certification of materials

5.2.1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in 1.11 and, additionally, are to state the specified maximum carbon equivalent. As a minimum, chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and of the residual elements.



# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

Section 6

### Section 6 Ferritic steels for low temperature service

#### 6.1 Scope

6.1.1 This Section gives specific requirements for carbon-manganese and nickel alloy steels intended for use in the construction of cargo tanks, storage tanks and process pressure vessels for liquefied gases.

6.1.2 The requirements of this Section are also applicable for other types of pressure vessels where the use of steels with guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures is required.

6.1.3 Provision is made for plates and sections up to 40 mm thick.

6.1.4 Steels with alternative chemical compositions or mechanical properties or in a different supply condition may be given special consideration.

#### 6.2 Manufacture and chemical composition

6.2.1 All steels are to be in the killed and fine grain treated condition.

6.2.2 The chemical compositions of carbon-manganese steels are to comply with the appropriate requirements for Grades AH, DH, EH and FH strength levels 27S, 32, 36 and 40, see Table 3.3.2. For the uses defined in 6.1.1 and 6.1.2, however, these grades are to be designated LT-AH, LT-DH, LT-EH and LT-FH respectively.

6.2.3 The chemical compositions of nickel alloy steels are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 3.6.1.

6.2.4 For plate supplied from coil, the chemical analysis may be transposed from the certificate of the coil manufacture onto the re-processor's certificate.

#### 6.3 Heat treatment

6.3.1 All materials are to be supplied in a condition complying with the requirements given in Table 3.6.2.

**Table 3.6.2 Supply conditions**

Grade	Plates	Sections and bars
LT – AH	N TM	Any
LT – DH		
LT – EH	Normalised (see Note) T.M.C.P.	N TM
LT – FH	Quenched and tempered	
1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	Normalised (see Note) Normalised and tempered Quenched and tempered	
3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni		
5Ni		
9Ni	Double normalised and tempered Quenched and tempered	
NOTE Where the term ‘Normalised’ is used it does not include normalising rolling.		

#### 6.4 Mechanical tests

6.4.1 For plates, a tensile test specimen is to be taken from one end of each piece when the mass does not exceed 5 tonnes and the length does not exceed 15 m. When either of these limits is exceeded, tensile test specimens are to be taken from both ends of each piece. A piece is to be regarded as the rolled product from a single slab or from a single ingot if this is rolled directly into plates.

6.4.2 For strips, tensile test specimens are to be taken from both ends of each coil.

**Table 3.6.1 Chemical compositions of nickel alloy steels**

Grade of steel	C	Si	Mn	Ni	P	S	Residual elements	Aluminium
1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	0,18 max.	0,10 – 0,35	0,30 – 1,50	1,30 – 1,70	0,025 max.	0,020 max.	Cr 0,25 max. Cu 0,35 max. Mo 0,08 max. Total 0,60 max.	Total 0,020% min.  Acid soluble 0,015% min.
3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	0,15 max.		0,30 – 0,90	3,20 – 3,80				
5Ni	0,12 max.			4,70 – 5,30				
9Ni	0,10 max.			8,50 – 10,0				

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

Section 6

6.4.3 Sections and bars are to be presented for acceptance test in batches containing not more than 50 lengths, as supplied. The material in each batch is to be of the same section size, from the same cast and in the same condition of supply. One tensile test specimen is to be taken from material representative of each batch, except that additional tests are to be taken when the mass of a batch exceeds 10 tonnes.

6.4.4 One set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens is to be taken for each tensile test specimen required.

6.4.5 For plates, these impact test specimens are to be cut with the principal axis perpendicular to the final direction of rolling. For sections, the impact test specimens are to be taken longitudinally.

6.4.6 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 3.6.3. The ratio between the yield stress and the tensile strength is not to exceed 0,9 for normalised and TM steels and 0,94 for QT steels.

6.4.7 The average value for the three impact tests is to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 3.6.3. One individual value may be less than the required value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this average value. See Ch 2,1.4 for re-test procedures.

6.4.8 Where standard subsidiary impact specimens are necessary, see Ch 2,3.2.4.

6.4.9 Where plate is supplied from coil, both the tensile tests and the Charpy V-notch tests are to be taken from the de-coiled plate in accordance with the frequency specified for the Grade as required by this Section.

### 6.5 Identification of materials

6.5.1 The particulars detailed in 1.10 are to be marked on all materials which have been accepted.

**Table 3.6.3 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes** (see Note 1)

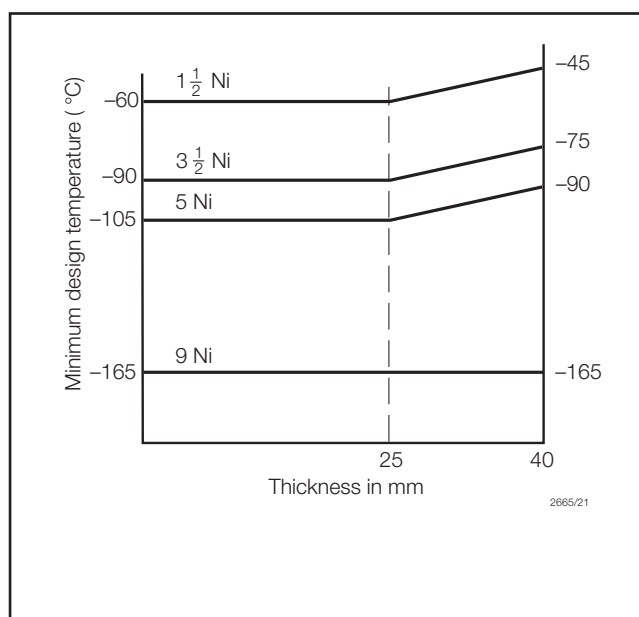
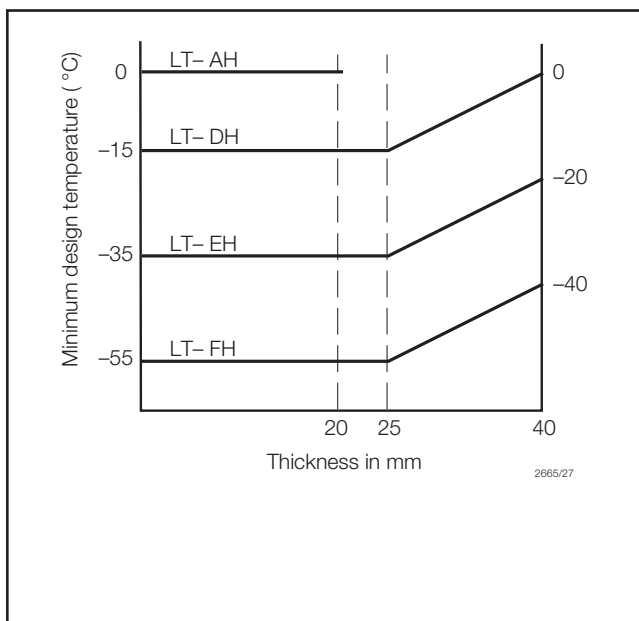
Grade of steel	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> min.	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65 $\sqrt{S_0}$ % min.	Charpy V-notch impact tests (see Note 3)	
				Test temp. °C	Impact energy
27S LT – AH 32 36 40	265 315 355 390	400 – 530 440 – 590 490 – 620 510 – 650	22 22 21 20	0	Plates – transverse tests  Average energy 27 J min
27S LT – DH 32 36 40	265 315 355 390	400 – 530 440 – 590 490 – 620 510 – 650	22 22 21 20	–20	
27S LT – EH 32 36 40	265 315 355 390	400 – 530 440 – 590 490 – 620 510 – 650	22 22 21 20	–40	
27S LT – FH 32 36 40	265 315 355 390	400 – 530 440 – 590 490 – 620 510 – 650	22 22 21 20	–60	
1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni 5Ni 9Ni	275 285 390 490	490 – 640 450 – 610 540 – 740 640 – 790	22 21 21 18	–65 –95 –110 –196	Sections and bars – longitudinal tests  Average energy 41 J min

#### NOTES

- These requirements are applicable to products not exceeding 40 mm in thickness. The requirements for thicker products are subject to agreement.
- The minimum design temperatures at which plates of different thicknesses in the above grades may be used are given in Fig. 3.6.1 and Fig. 3.6.2. Consideration will be given to the use of thicknesses greater than those in the Tables or to the use of design temperatures below –165°C.
- Impact tests are not required on thicknesses less than 6 mm.

## 6.6 Certification of materials

6.6.1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in 1.11 together with general details of the heat treatment. As a minimum, chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and of the residual elements as detailed in Tables 3.3.2 or 3.6.1.



## Section 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steels

### 7.1 Scope

7.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for rolled products in austenitic and duplex (austenite plus ferrite) stainless steels intended for use in the construction of cargo tanks, storage tanks and process pressure vessels for chemicals and liquefied gases.

7.1.2 Austenitic stainless steels are suitable for applications where the lowest design temperature is not lower than  $-165^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

7.1.3 Austenitic stainless steels are also suitable for service at elevated temperatures, and for such applications the proposed specification should contain, in addition to the requirements of 7.1.6, minimum values for 0,2 and 1,0 per cent proof stresses at the design temperature.

7.1.4 Duplex stainless steels are suitable for applications where the lowest design temperature is above  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ . Any requirement to use duplex stainless steels below  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$  will be subject to special consideration.

7.1.5 Duplex stainless steels are also suitable for service at temperatures up to  $300^{\circ}\text{C}$ , and for such applications the proposed specification should include, in addition to the requirements of 7.1.6, a minimum value for 0,2 per cent proof stress at the design temperature.

7.1.6 A specification giving details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties, including, for the austenitic grades, both the 0,2 and 1,0 per cent proof stresses, is to be submitted for consideration and approval.

### 7.2 Chemical composition

7.2.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the requirements given in Table 3.7.1.

7.2.2 Consideration will be given to the use of steels whose compositions are outside the scope of Table 3.7.1.

### 7.3 Heat treatment

7.3.1 All materials are to be supplied in the solution treated condition.

### 7.4 Mechanical tests

7.4.1 Tensile test specimens are to be taken in accordance with the appropriate requirements of 4.4 and 6.4.1.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

Section 7

**Table 3.7.1 Chemical composition**

Type and grade of steel	Chemical composition % (see Note)									
	C	Si	Mn	P	S	Cr	Ni	Mo	N	Other
Austenitic										
304 L	0,03	1,0	2,0	0,045	0,03	17,0—20,0	8,0—13,0	—	0,10	—
304 LN						17,0—20,0	8,0—12,0	—	0,10—0,22	—
316 L						16,0—18,5	10,0—15,0	2,0—3,0	0,10	—
316 LN						16,0—18,5	10,0—14,5	2,0—3,0	0,10—0,22	—
317 L	0,08	0,80	1,2	0,035	0,02	18,0—20,0	11,0—15,0	3,0—4,0	0,10	—
317 LN						18,0—20,0	12,5—15,0	3,0—4,0	0,10—0,22	—
321						17,0—19,0	9,0—12,0	—	0,10	5 x C ≤ Ti ≤ 0,7
347						17,0—19,0	9,0—13,0	—	0,10	10 x C ≤ Nb ≤ 1,0
Duplex										
UNS S 31803	0,03	1,0	2,0	0,03	0,02	21,0—23,0	4,5—6,5	2,5—3,5	0,08—0,20	—
UNS S 32750	0,03	0,80	1,2	0,035	0,02	24,0—26,0	6,0—8,0	3,0—5,0	0,24—0,32	Cu 0,50 max.

NOTE  
All figures are a maximum value except where a range is shown.

**Table 3.7.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes**

Type and grade of steel	0,2% Proof stress (N/mm <sup>2</sup> ) minimum	1% Proof stress (N/mm <sup>2</sup> ) minimum	Tensile strength (N/mm <sup>2</sup> ) minimum	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum
Austenitic				
304L	170	210	485	40
304LN	205	245	515	40
316L	170	210	485	40
316LN	205	245	515	40
317L	205	245	515	40
317LN	240	280	550	40
321	205	245	515	40
347	205	245	515	40
Duplex				
UNS S 31803	450	—	620	25
UNS S 32750	550	—	795	15

7.4.2 For the duplex grades, one set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens machined from the longitudinal direction for each tensile test is to be tested at -20°C. The average energy value of the three specimens is to be not less than 41 Joules.

7.4.3 Unless otherwise agreed, impact tests are not required from the austenitic grades of steel given in this Section.

7.4.4 Where standard subsidiary Charpy V-notch test specimens are necessary, see Ch 2,3.2.4.

7.4.5 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 3.7.2 or the approved specification.

### 7.5 Through thickness tests

7.5.1 Where material will be strained in a through thickness direction during welding or in service, through thickness tests are required on plates over 10 mm thick in all the grades of steels listed in Table 3.7.1, apart from Grades 304L, 304 LN, 321 and 347.

7.5.2 Testing is to conform with the requirements of Section 8, with the exception given in 7.5.3.

7.5.3 When the reduction in area is less than 35 per cent, metallographic or other evidence is required to show that no significant amount of any detrimental phase, such as sigma, is present.

**7.6 Intergranular corrosion tests**

7.6.1 For certain specific applications such as storage tanks for chemicals, it may be necessary to demonstrate that the material used is not susceptible to intergranular corrosion resulting from grain boundary precipitation of chromium-rich carbides.

7.6.2 When required, one test of this type is to be carried out for each tensile test. The material for the test is to be taken adjacent to that for the tensile test.

7.6.3 Unless otherwise agreed or required for a particular chemical cargo, the testing procedure is to be as given in 7.6.4, see Ch 2,8.

7.6.4 Wherever practical, exposed cut edges should be avoided. However, where any such edges are to remain after fabrication is completed, it is to be shown by an appropriate test, that the corrosion resistance is adequate for the cargoes expected to be encountered.

**7.7 Clad plates**

7.7.1 Carbon or carbon-manganese steel plates, clad on one or both surfaces with a suitable grade of austenitic or duplex stainless steel, may be used for the construction of cargo or storage tanks for chemicals.

7.7.2 The carbon or carbon-manganese steel base plates are to comply with the requirements of Section 4, and the austenitic cladding material generally with the requirements of this Section.

7.7.3 The process of manufacture is to be specially approved and may be either by roll cladding, or by explosive bonding.

7.7.4 Where the use of clad materials is proposed, the material specification is to be submitted for consideration, together with details of the extent, and the acceptance standards for non-destructive examination.

**7.8 Identification of materials**

7.8.1 The particulars detailed in 1.10 are to be marked on all materials which have been accepted.

**7.9 Certification of materials**

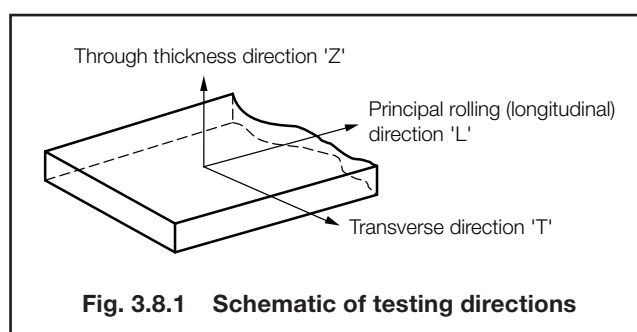
7.9.1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in 1.11 and, where applicable, the results obtained from intercrystalline corrosion tests, and, additionally, are to state the specified maximum carbon equivalent. As a minimum, chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and of the residual elements, as detailed in Table 3.7.1.

## ■ Section 8

### **Plates with specified through thickness properties**

**8.1 Scope**

8.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for 'Z' grade plate and wide flat material with improved ductility in the through thickness or 'Z' direction, see Fig. 3.8.1. The use of this material is recommended for certain types of welded structures (see 1.2) in order to minimise the possibility of lamellar tearing either during fabrication or erection.



8.1.2 Through thickness properties are characterised by specified values for reduction of area in a through thickness tensile test.

8.1.3 Provision is made for two grades Z25 and Z35. For normal ship applications the Z25 grade is applicable, whilst the Z35 grade is for more severe applications.

8.1.4 This 'Z' grade material is to comply with the requirements of Sections 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 as appropriate, and the additional requirements of this Section.

8.1.5 The test procedure detailed in this Section may also be used to demonstrate that no unacceptable amount of banding of any detrimental phase, such as sigma is present, see 7.5.

**8.2 Manufacture**

8.2.1 All plates and wide flats are to be manufactured at works, which have been approved by LR for this quality of material.

8.2.2 It is recommended that the steel should be efficiently vacuum de-gassed. The sulphur content is not to exceed 0,008 per cent.

8.2.3 Consideration will be given to proposals for alternative methods of improving through thickness properties.

8.3 Test material

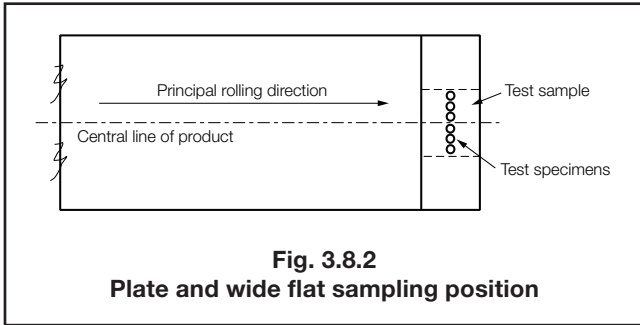
8.3.1 Unless otherwise agreed, through thickness tensile tests are only required for plate materials where the thickness exceeds 15 mm for carbon and alloy steels, or 10 mm in the case of austenitic and duplex stainless steels.

8.3.2 For plates and wide flats, one test sample is to be taken close to the longitudinal centreline from one end of each rolled piece representing the batch, see Table 3.8.1 and Fig. 3.8.2. The test sample must be large enough to accommodate the preparation of 6 specimens. 3 test specimens are to be prepared while the rest of the sample remains for possible retest.

8.3.3 The dimensions of the test specimens are to be in accordance with Ch 2,2.1.12.

Table 3.8.1 Batch size dependent on product and sulphur content

Product	S > 0,005%	S ≤ 0,005%
Plates	Each piece (parent plate)	Maximum 50 t of products of the same cast, thickness and heat treatment
Wide flats of nominal thickness ≤ 25 mm	Maximum 10 t of products of the same cast, thickness and heat treatment	Maximum 50 t of products of the same cast, thickness and heat treatment
Wide flats of nominal thickness > 25 mm	Maximum 20 t of products of the same cast, thickness and heat treatment	Maximum 50 t of products of the same cast, thickness and heat treatment



8.3.4 Alternatively, test sampling may be carried out in accordance with an accepted National or International Standard.

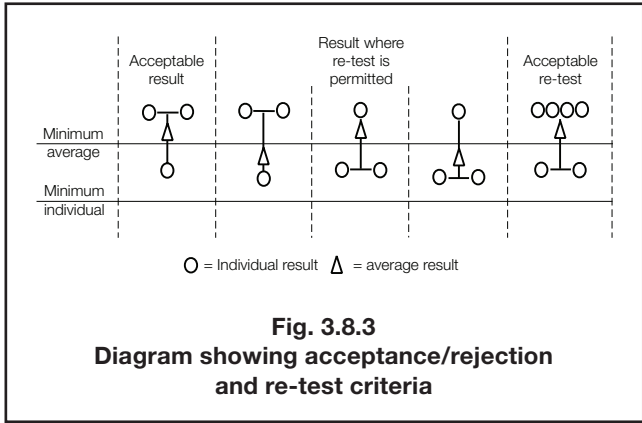
8.4 Mechanical tests

8.4.1 The three through thickness tensile test specimens are to be tested at ambient temperature, and for acceptance are to give a minimum average reduction of area value of not less than that shown in Table 3.8.2. Only one individual value may be below the minimum average, but should not be less than the minimum individual value shown for the appropriate grade.

Table 3.8.2 Reduction of area acceptance values

Grade	Z25	Z35
Minimum average	25%	35%
Minimum individual	15%	25%

8.4.2 If the average value fails to comply with 8.4.1, three additional tests may be made on specimens from the same test sample. The results of these tests are to be added to those previously obtained to form a new average, which for acceptance is to be not less than 25 per cent for grade Z25 or 35 per cent for grade Z35. No individual results in the re-test shall be below 25 per cent for grade Z25 or 35 per cent for grade Z35, see Fig. 3.8.3.



8.4.3 Where batch testing is permitted, and failure after re-test occurs, the tested piece is to be rejected. Each remaining piece in the batch may be individually tested and accepted, based on satisfactory results.

8.4.4 If the fracture of a test specimen occurs in the weld or in the heat affected zone the test is to be regarded as invalid and is to be repeated on a new test specimen.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

# Chapter 3

Sections 8 & 9

## 8.5 Non-destructive examination

8.5.1 All 'Z' grade plates are to be ultrasonically tested in the final supply condition with a probe frequency of 3-5 MHz. The testing is to be performed in accordance with and in compliance with either EN 10160 Level S1/E1 or ASTM A 578 Level C.

## 8.6 Identification of materials

8.6.1 Products which comply with the requirements of this Section are to have the notation Z25 or Z35 added to the steel grade designation.

## 8.7 Certification of materials

8.7.1 The following information is required to be included on the certificate in addition to the appropriate steel grade requirements:

- Through thickness reduction in area (%), individual results and average.
- Steel grade with Z25 or Z35 notation.

8.7.2 Steel grade requirements are to comply with Sections 1 to 7.

9.1.3 For the offshore grades, R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5, approval is confined to bar to be supplied to a nominated chain manufacturer and will be given only after successful testing of a completed chain. Separate approvals are required if bar is to be supplied to more than one cable manufacturer. Approval of a higher grade does not cover approval of a lower grade, as all grades must be individually approved.

9.1.4 For all grades, approval is normally given for diameters of bars no greater than those of the bars used in procedure tests.

## 9.2 Manufacture

9.2.1 All grades of bar material are to be made from killed steel, and all grades of bar material except for Grade U1 chain cables are to be fine grained. For Grades R4S and R5 the austenite grain size is to be 6 or finer, in accordance with ASTM E112.

9.2.2 The bars are to be made to a specification approved by LR which should include the manufacturing procedure, deoxidation practice, heat treatment and mechanical properties.

9.2.3 The rolling reduction ratio of bars for Grades R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 must be at least 5:1.

## 9.3 Chemical composition

9.3.1 For Grades U1, U2 and U3 the chemical composition should be generally within the limits given in Table 3.9.1.

9.3.2 For Grades R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 the chemical composition is to comply with an approved specification, see 9.2.2.

9.3.3 For Grades R4, R4S and R5 chain cable the steel should contain a minimum of 0,2 per cent molybdenum. The reported composition is to include the contents of antimony, arsenic, tin, copper, nitrogen, aluminium and titanium.

## Section 9 Bars for welded chain cables

### 9.1 Scope

9.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for rolled steel bars intended for the manufacture of three Grades (U1, U2 and U3) of stud link chain cable for the anchoring and mooring of ships and five Grades (R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5) of offshore mooring cable.

9.1.2 For the ship grades, U1, U2 and U3, approval will permit the supply of bars of the appropriate grades and size to any chain cable manufacturer.

**Table 3.9.1 Chemical composition of killed steel bars**

Grade	Chemical composition %												
	C max.	Si	Mn	P max.	S max.	Al	Nb max.	V max.	N max.	Cr max.	Cu max.	Ni max.	Mo max.
U1	0,20	0,15–0,35	0,40 min.	0,04	0,04	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
U2	0,24	0,15–0,55	1,60 max.	0,035	0,035	0,02 min. see Note 1	–	–	–	–	–	–	–
U3	0,33	0,15–0,35	1,90 max.	0,04	0,04	0,065 max. see Note 2	0,05 see Note 2	0,10 see Note 2	0,015	0,25	0,35	0,40	0,08
<b>NOTES</b> 1. Aluminium may be partly replaced by other grain refining elements. 2. To obtain fine grain steel, at least one of these grain refining elements must be present in sufficient amount.													



9.3.4 For Grades R4S and R5 the steel used must be vacuum degassed.

## 9.4 Heat treatment

9.4.1 Unless stipulated otherwise, the bars are to be supplied in the as-rolled condition, but the supplier is to be advised by the chain manufacturer of the heat treatment to be used for the completed chain in order that the mechanical test specimens may be tested in the condition of heat treatment used for the chain.

9.4.2 For Grades U1 and U2, the samples selected from each batch may be tested either in the as-rolled condition, or after heat treatment where the chain is to be used in the heat treated condition, in full cross-section and in a manner simulating the heat treatment applied to the finished cable.

9.4.3 For Grades U3, R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 the sample is to be tested after heat treatment as detailed in 9.4.2.

## 9.5 Embrittlement tests

9.5.1 For Grades R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 the bar manufacturer is to provide evidence that the material is not susceptible to strain ageing, or to temper brittleness under the conditions of manufacture of the chain. The results of the relevant tests are to be reported to LR at the approval stage. Approval will be restricted to the specified steel composition and if later this is altered then re-approval will be required. Temper brittleness testing may be waived, if the chain is to be quenched after tempering.

9.5.2 Each heat of steel bars of grades R3S, R4, R4S and R5 is to be tested for hydrogen embrittlement (see Ch 2,5.3). In the case of continuous casting, test samples representing both the beginning and the end of the charge are to be taken. In the case of ingot casting, test samples representing two different ingots are to be taken.

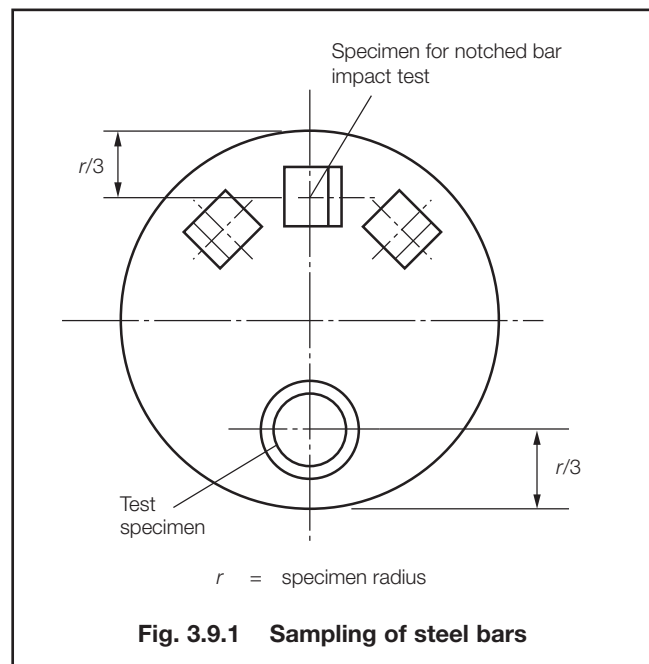
9.5.3 Each sample is to be heat treated in a manner simulating the heat treatment of the finished chain. From each sample, two specimens are to be prepared from the mid-diameter of the bar and tested in accordance with Ch 2,5.3.

9.5.4 The ratio  $Z_1/Z_2$  is to be greater than or equal to 0,85, where  $Z_1$  is the reduction in area without baking and  $Z_2$  the reduction in area after baking.

9.5.5 If the requirement is not met, the material is to be subjected to a hydrogen degassing treatment which is subject to approval by LR. Further tests are to be performed after degassing.

## 9.6 Mechanical tests

9.6.1 Bars of the same nominal diameter are to be presented for test in batches of 50 tonnes or fraction thereof from the same cast. A suitable length from one bar in each batch is to be selected for test purposes. Test pieces are to be taken from the positions as shown in Fig. 3.9.1.



9.6.2 For all grades, one tensile test is to be taken from each sample length selected. Additionally, for Grades U3, R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 material, one set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens is to be prepared. Impact tests are also required for Grade U2 when the chain is to be supplied in as-welded condition.

9.6.3 The results of all tensile and, where applicable, impact tests are to be in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Table 3.9.2.

9.6.4 Failure to meet the requirements will result in the rejection of a batch of material, unless it is clearly attributed to improper simulated heat treatment. This is to be confirmed to be to the satisfaction of LR, and further heat treatment and testing will be required prior to acceptance.



# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

### Section 9

#### 9.7 Structure and hardenability tests

9.7.1 For Grades R4S and R5, the following tests are to be carried out on each heat:

- Assessment and quantification of the level of non-metallic micro inclusion. These must be acceptable for the final product.
- Macro etching on a representative sample, in accordance with ASTM E381 or equivalent. This must be free from any injurious segregation or porosity.
- Jominy hardenability tests in accordance with ASTM A255 or equivalent.

#### 9.8 Dimensional tolerances

9.8.1 The tolerances on diameter and ovality of the bar are to be in accordance with Table 3.9.3.

#### 9.9 Non-destructive examination

9.9.1 For the R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 grades all bars are to be inspected by a magnetic particle or eddy current method, and are also to be subjected to ultrasonic examination.

9.9.2 All non-destructive examination is to be carried out in accordance with approved procedures, in accordance with Ch 1,5.

9.9.3 All non-destructive examination operators are to be qualified in the method of non-destructive examination, to a minimum of Level II in accordance with a recognised standard.

9.9.4 The bars are to be free from pipes, cracks, flakes, and injurious surface defects such as seams, laps, and rolled-in mill scale. Longitudinal discontinuities may be removed by blending to a smooth contour provided that their depth is not greater than 1 per cent of the bar diameter, and that the required diameter tolerances are not compromised. The contour radiuses are to be a minimum of four times the excavation depth.

9.9.5 The frequency of non-destructive testing may be reduced at the discretion of LR, provided statistical evidence is available that the required quality is achieved consistently.

**Table 3.9.2 Mechanical properties**

Grade	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65 $\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests		
					Test temperature °C	Average energy J minimum	Average energy flash weld J minimum
U1	—	370–490	25	—	—	—	—
U2	295	490–690	22	—	0 (see Note 1)	27	—
U3	410	690 minimum	17	40	0 –20 (see Note 2)	60 35	— —
R3	410 (see Note 3)	690 minimum (see Note 3)	17	50	0 –20 (see Note 2)	60 40	50 30
R3S	490 (see Note 3)	770 minimum (see Note 3)	15	50	0 –20 (see Note 2)	65 45	53 33
R4	580 (see Note 3)	860 minimum (see Note 3)	12	50	–20	50	36
Grade R4S (see Note 4)	700 (see Note 3)	960 minimum (see Note 3)	12	50	–20	56	40
Grade R5 (see Note 4)	760 (see Note 3)	1000 minimum (see Note 3)	12	50	–20	58	42

**NOTES**

- Impact tests may be waived when the chain cable is to be supplied in one of the heat treated conditions given in Table 10.2.3.
- Testing may be carried out at either 0°C or –20°C, at the option of LR.
- The ratio of yield strength to tensile strength should not exceed 0,92.
- The maximum hardness for R4S is to be HB330, and for R5 is to be HB340.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

Sections 9 & 10

**Table 3.9.3 Dimensional tolerance of bar stock**

Nominal diameter mm	Tolerance on diameter mm	Tolerance on roundness ( $d_{\max} - d_{\min}$ ) mm
≤20	-0/+1,0	0,60
>20 ≤25	-0/+1,0	0,60
>26 ≤35	-0/+1,2	0,80
>36 ≤50	-0/+1,6	1,10
>51 ≤80	-0/+2,0	1,50
>81 ≤100	-0/+2,6	1,95
>101 ≤120	-0/+3,0	2,25
>121 ≤160	-0/+4,0	3,00
>161 ≤210	-0/+5,0	4,00

### 9.10 Identification

9.10.1 Each bar is to be identified in accordance with 1.10 and, in addition, is to be marked with the appropriate grade of chain cable.

### 9.11 Certification of materials

9.11.1 Each consignment of bars is to be accompanied by a certificate of a type and in accordance with 1.11, but with the addition of the grade of chain cable, the rolling reduction ratio, the results of the micro inclusion, macro etch and hardenability tests, where required by each grade.

## Section 10 High strength quenched and tempered steels for welded structures

### 10.1 Scope

10.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for weldable high strength quenched and tempered steel plates and wide flats up to 70 mm thick. However, special consideration will be given to thicknesses up to 50 mm supplied in the TM rolled condition.

10.1.2 Plates and wide flats exceeding 70 mm in thickness as well as other product forms may also be supplied in accordance with the requirements of this Section, provided that the prior agreement of LR is obtained.

10.1.3 The steels may be supplied in six strength levels with minimum yield stresses of 420, 460, 500, 550, 620 and 690 N/mm<sup>2</sup> respectively.

10.1.4 Each strength level is sub-divided into four grades AH, DH, EH and FH, differing essentially in the required levels of notch toughness.

10.1.5 For the designation to fully identify a steel and its properties, the appropriate grade letter should precede the strength level number, e.g., EH 42.

10.1.6 Steels differing in strength level, mechanical properties and chemical composition from those detailed in this Section may be supplied, subject to special approval from LR. Such steels are to have the letter 'S' after the agreed identification mark.

### 10.2 Manufacture and chemical composition

10.2.1 The steels are to be fully killed and fine grain treated.

10.2.2 The chemical composition is to comply with the requirements of the approved manufacturing specification and the limits set in Table 3.10.1.

10.2.3 The cold cracking susceptibility,  $P_{cm}$ , may be used as an alternative to the carbon equivalent for evaluating weldability. It is to be calculated from the ladle analysis using the following formula:

$$P_{cm} = C + \frac{Si}{30} + \frac{Mn + Cr + Cu}{20} + \frac{Ni}{60} + \frac{Mo}{15} + \frac{V}{10} + 5B$$

The maximum allowable  $P_{cm}$  is to be agreed with LR and is to be included in the approved manufacturing specification.

### 10.3 Mechanical properties

10.3.1 At least one tensile test piece and one set of three Charpy V-notch impact tests specimens are to be taken from each piece as heat treated.

10.3.2 For continuously heat treated products, one tensile test piece and a set of three impact test specimens are to be taken from each plate as heat treated.

10.3.3 For plates and wide flats with widths exceeding 600 mm, the tensile and impact test specimens are to be taken with their axes transverse to the final direction of rolling. For other products, the impact test specimens are to be taken in the longitudinal direction but the tensile test specimens may be taken in either the longitudinal or transverse direction as agreed with LR.

10.3.4 The results of all tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 3.10.2.

10.3.5 Where standard subsidiary impact test specimens are necessary, see Ch 2,3.2.4.

# Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars

## Chapter 3

Section 10

**Table 3.10.1 Chemical composition**

Grade	AH	DH	EH	FH
Carbon % max	0,21	0,20		0,18
Manganese % max	1,70	1,70		1,60
Silicon % max	0,55	0,55		0,55
Phosphorus % max	0,035	0,030		0,025
Sulphur % max	0,035	0,030		0,025
Nitrogen % max	0,020	0,020		0,020
Grain refining elements (see Note 1)				
Aluminium (acid soluble) % min (see Note 2)	0,015			
Niobium %	0,02—0,05			
Vanadium %	0,03—0,10			
Titanium % max	0,02			
Total (Nb + V + Ti) % max	0,12			
NOTES				
1. The steel is to contain aluminium, niobium, vanadium or other suitable grain refining elements, either singly or in any combination. When used singly, the content is to be within the limits given in the Table. When used in combination, these limits are not applicable but the proportions of the grain refining elements are to be in accordance with the approved manufacturing specification.				
2. The total aluminium content may be determined instead of the acid soluble content. In such cases the total aluminium content is not to be less than 0,020%.				
3. Alloying elements and residual elements other than those listed in the Table (e.g., Ni, Cr, Cu, Mo and B) are to be included in the approved manufacturing specification.				

### 10.4 Identification of materials

10.4.1 The particulars detailed in 1.10 are to be marked on each piece which has been accepted and, for ease of recognition, are to be encircled or otherwise marked with paint.

### 10.5 Certification of materials

10.5.1 At least two copies of each test certificate are to be provided. They are to be of the type and give the information detailed in 1.11 and, additionally, are to state the specified maximum carbon equivalent. As a minimum, chemical composition is to include the contents of any grain refining elements used and of the residual elements as detailed in Table 3.10.1.

**Rolled Steel Plates, Strip, Sections and Bars****Chapter 3**

Section 10

**Table 3.10.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes**

Grade	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> min. (see Note 1)	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum (see Note 2)		Charpy V-notch impact tests (see Note 4)		
			Transverse	Longitudinal	Test temperature	Average energy J minimum	
					°C	Transverse	Longitudinal
AH 42 DH 42 EH 42 FH 42	420	530 – 680	18	20	0 -20 -40 -60	28	42
AH 46 DH 46 EH 46 FH 46	460	570 – 720	17	19	0 -20 -40 -60	31	46
AH 50 DH 50 EH 50 FH 50	500	610 – 770	16	18	0 -20 -40 -60	33	50
AH 55 DH 55 EH 55 FH 55	550	670 – 830	16	18	0 -20 -40 -60	37	55
AH 62 DH 62 EH 62 FH 62	620	720 – 890	15	17	0 -20 -40 -60	41	62
AH 69 DH 69 EH 69 FH 69	690	770 – 940	14	16	0 -20 -40 -60	46	69

**NOTES**

- Where a distinct yield stress indication is not obtainable during tensile testing the 0,2% proof stress is applicable.
- For full thickness tensile test specimens with a width of 25 mm and a gauge length of 200 mm (see Fig. 2.2.4 in Chapter 2) the minimum elongation is to be:

Thickness mm		≤10	>10 ≤15	>15 ≤20	>20 ≤25	>25 ≤40	>40 ≤50	>50 ≤70
Strength levels								
Elongation %	42	11	13	14	15	16	17	18
	46	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
	50 and 55	10	11	12	13	14	16	16
	62	9	11	12	12	13	14	15
	69	9	10	11	11	12	13	14

These values apply to transverse specimens. Where the use of longitudinal specimens has been agreed, the values are to be increased by 2%.

- The ratio of yield strength to tensile strength should not exceed 0,94.
- Impact tests are not required on thicknesses less than 6 mm.

# Steel Castings

# Chapter 4

## Section 1

### Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Castings for ship and other structural applications**
- 3 **Castings for machinery construction**
- 4 **Castings for crankshafts**
- 5 **Castings for propellers**
- 6 **Castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems**
- 7 **Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service**
- 8 **Stainless steel castings**
- 9 **Steel castings for container corner fittings**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section gives the general requirements for steel castings intended for use in the construction of ships, other marine structures, machinery, boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems.

1.1.2 Where required by the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction, castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Chapters 1 and 2, together with the general requirements given in this Section and the appropriate specific requirements given in Sections 2 to 9.

1.1.3 As an alternative to 1.1.2, castings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1.

1.1.4 Where small castings are produced in large quantities, or where castings of the same type are produced in regular quantities, alternative survey procedures, in accordance with Ch 1.2.4 may be adopted.

### 1.2 Manufacture

1.2.1 Castings are to be made at foundries approved by LR. The steel used is to be manufactured by a process approved by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').

1.2.2 All flame cutting, scarfing or arc-air gouging to remove surplus metal is to be undertaken in accordance with recognised good practice and is to be carried out before the final heat treatment. Preheating is to be employed where necessitated by the chemical composition and/or thickness of the casting. The affected areas are to be either machined or ground smooth for a depth of about 2 mm unless it has been shown that the material has not been damaged by the cutting process. Special examination will be required to find any cracking in way of the cut surfaces.

1.2.3 Where two or more castings are joined by welding to form a composite item, details of the proposed welding procedure are to be submitted for approval. Welding approval procedure tests will be required, see also the requirements of 1.9.

### 1.3 Quality of castings

1.3.1 All castings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service. The surface finish is to be in accordance with good practice and any specific requirements of the approved specification.

1.3.2 The surfaces are not to be hammered, peened or treated in any way which may obscure defects.

1.3.3 The locations of all chaplets are to be noted and to be subject to close visual inspection (and when necessary ultrasonic examination) to ensure complete fusion.

### 1.4 Chemical composition

1.4.1 All castings are to be made from killed steel. The chemical composition of the ladle sample is to be within the limits given in the relevant Section of this Chapter. Where general overall limits are specified, the chemical composition is to be appropriate for the type of steel, dimensions and required mechanical properties of the castings.

1.4.2 Except where otherwise specified, suitable grain refining elements may be used at the discretion of the manufacturer. The content of such elements is to be reported in the ladle analysis.

### 1.5 Heat treatment

1.5.1 All castings are to be heat treated in accordance with the requirements given in the relevant Section of this Chapter.

1.5.2 Heat treatment is to be carried out in a properly constructed furnace which is efficiently maintained and has adequate means of temperature control and is fitted with pyrometers which measure and record the temperature of the furnace charge. The furnace dimensions are to be such as to allow the whole furnace charge to be uniformly heated to the necessary temperature. Sufficient thermocouples are to be connected to the furnace charge to show that its temperature is adequately uniform and the temperatures are to be recorded throughout the heat treatment. Alternative procedures are to be approved by LR, Materials and NDE department. Copies of these records are to be presented to the Surveyor together with a sketch showing the positions at which the temperature measurements were carried out. The records are to identify the furnace that was used and give details of the charge, the heat treatment temperature and time at temperature and the date. The Surveyor is to examine the charts and confirm the details on the certificate. In the case of very large components which require heat treatment, alternative methods will be specially considered.

1.5.3 If a casting is locally reheated, or any straightening operation is performed after the final heat treatment, a subsequent stress relieving heat treatment may be required in order to avoid the possibility of harmful residual stresses.

## 1.6 Test material and test specimens

1.6.1 Test material sufficient for the tests specified in Sections 2 to 9 and for possible re-test purposes is to be provided for each casting. The test samples are to be either integrally cast or gated to the casting and are to have a thickness of not less than 30 mm.

1.6.2 The test samples are not to be detached from the casting until the heat treatment specified in 1.5.1 has been completed and they have been properly identified.

1.6.3 As an alternative to 1.6.1 and 1.6.2, where a number of small castings of about the same size, each of which is under 1000 kg in mass, are made from one cast and heat treated in the same furnace charge, a batch testing procedure may be adopted, using separately cast test samples of suitable dimensions. The test samples are to be properly identified and heat treated together with the castings which they represent. At least one test sample is to be provided for each batch of castings.

1.6.4 The test specimens are to be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 2. Tensile test specimens are to have a cross-sectional area of not less than 150 mm<sup>2</sup>.

1.6.5 Re-test procedures are to be in accordance with Ch 2, 1.4.

## 1.7 Visual and non-destructive examination

1.7.1 This Section gives the general requirements for non-destructive examination of steel castings. As an alternative, castings may be examined in accordance with a National Specification, provided it gives reasonable equivalence to these Rules.

1.7.2 All castings are to be cleaned and adequately prepared for inspection. Suitable methods include pickling, caustic cleaning, wire brushing, local grinding, shot or sand blasting.

1.7.3 The surfaces are not to be hammered, peened or treated in any way which may obscure defects.

1.7.4 Unless otherwise agreed, the accuracy and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer.

1.7.5 All castings are to be presented to the Surveyor for visual examination. Where applicable, this is to include the examination of internal surfaces. Castings are to be subject to magnetic particle examination or dye penetrant inspection (for austenitic stainless steel castings, see Section 8) in accordance with 1.7.9, unless more specific requirements for non-destructive examination are included in subsequent Sections of this Chapter, other parts of the Rules or the agreed specification.

1.7.6 Where specified or required by the Rules non-destructive examination is to be carried out before acceptance. All tests are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1, 5.

1.7.7 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a signed report confirming that non-destructive examination has been carried out and that such inspection has not revealed any significant defects.

1.7.8 Where magnetic particle examination is specified or required, this is to be carried out using a suspension of magnetic particles in a suitable fluid. The dry powder method is not acceptable for the final inspection. Prods are not permitted on finished machined surfaces.

1.7.9 Where required, magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing is to be carried out by the manufacturer whenever appropriate and also when the castings are in the finished condition. The tests are to be made in the presence of the Surveyor unless otherwise specially agreed. The castings are to be examined in the following areas:

- (a) At all accessible fillets and changes of section.
- (b) At positions where surplus metal has been removed by flame cutting, scarfing or arc-air gouging.
- (c) In way of fabrication weld preparations, for a distance not less than 50 mm from the edge.
- (d) In way of welds.
- (e) In way of chaplets.
- (f) At other positions agreed with the Surveyor to include areas which may be subjected to high stress in service.



**1.7.10** Where required by subsequent Sections or by the agreed specification, ultrasonic examination is to be carried out by the manufacturer, but Surveyors may request to be present in order to verify that the examination is carried out in accordance with the agreed procedure. This examination is to be carried out in the following areas:

- (a) At positions which may be subjected to high stresses in service, as agreed with the Surveyor.
- (b) In way of fabrication weld preparations, for a distance not less than 50 mm from the edge.
- (c) At positions where subsequent machining may expose filamentary shrinkage or other defects (e.g., bolt holes, bearing bores).
- (d) In way of welding.
- (e) In way of riser positions.
- (f) At positions where experience shows that significant internal defects may occur: these are to be agreed between the manufacturer and the Surveyor.

**1.7.11** Radiographic examination, where required, is to be carried out by the manufacturer in areas generally as indicated for ultrasonic examination in 1.7.10. All radiographs are to be submitted to the Surveyor for examination and acceptance. The radiographic technique and acceptance standards are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor and in accordance with any requirements of the approved specification.

**1.7.12** In the event of any casting proving to be defective during subsequent machining or testing it is to be rejected notwithstanding any previous certification.

**1.7.13** The general acceptance criteria given in 2.5.2 are to be applied where no specific acceptance criteria are stated in the subsequent Sections of this Chapter.

## 1.8 Pressure testing

**1.8.1** Where required by the relevant Rules, castings are to be pressure tested in the final machined condition before final acceptance. These tests are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyors and are to be to their satisfaction.

## 1.9 Rectification and dressing of castings

**1.9.1** When unacceptable defects are found in a casting, these are to be removed by machining or chipping. Flame-scarfing or arc-air gouging may also be used provided that preheating is employed when necessary and that the surfaces of the resulting excavation are subsequently ground smooth. Complete elimination of the defective material is to be proven by adequate non-destructive examination. Shallow grooves or excavations resulting from the removal of defects may, at the discretion of the Surveyor, be accepted provided that they will cause no appreciable reduction in the strength of the castings and that they are suitably blended by grinding. Complete elimination of the defective material is to be verified by magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing.

**1.9.2** Where flame scarfing or arc-air gouging is used, the requirements detailed in 1.2.2 are to apply.

**1.9.3** Grinding wheels for use on austenitic stainless steels are to be of an iron-free type and shall have been used only on stainless steels.

**1.9.4** All proposals to repair a defective casting by welding are to be submitted to the Surveyor before this work is commenced. The Surveyor is to satisfy himself that the number, position and size of the defects are such that the casting can be effectively repaired.

**1.9.5** A statement and/or sketch detailing the extent and position of all welds is to be prepared by the manufacturer. Copies of these sketches are to be submitted to LR, and copies are to be attached to the certificates for the castings.

**1.9.6** All welding is to be carried out by an approved welder and in accordance with an approved welding procedure which includes the features referred to in 1.9.6 to 1.9.13.

**1.9.7** Where welding is required, a grain refining heat treatment is to be given to the whole casting prior to carrying out welding unless agreed otherwise with the Surveyor. Grain refining heat treatment requires heating above the upper critical temperature.

**1.9.8** Any excavations are to be of suitable shape to allow good access for welding and, after final preparation for welding, are to be re-examined by suitable non-destructive testing methods to ensure that all defective material has been eliminated.

**1.9.9** All castings in alloy steels other than austenitic and duplex stainless steels are to be suitably preheated prior to welding. Castings in carbon-manganese steels may also be required to be preheated, depending on their chemical composition, the dimensions, configuration and positions of the welds.

**1.9.10** Welding is to be carried out under cover, in positions free from draughts and adverse weather conditions. As far as possible, all welding is to be carried out in the downhand (flat) position.

**1.9.11** The welding consumables used are to be of an appropriate composition, giving a weld deposit with mechanical properties similar and in no way inferior to those of the parent castings. The use of low hydrogen type welding consumables is preferred. Welding procedure tests are to be carried out by the manufacturer to demonstrate that satisfactory mechanical properties can be obtained after heat treatment as detailed in 1.9.12, and the results of these tests are to be presented to the Surveyor.

**1.9.12** After welding is completed, the castings are to be given the heat treatment specified in Sections 2 to 9, or a stress relieving heat treatment at a temperature of not less than 550°C. The type of heat treatment required will be dependent on the chemical composition of the casting and the dimensions, positions and nature of the repairs.

**1.9.13** Special consideration may be given to a local stress relieving heat treatment, where both the welded area is small and machining of the casting has reached an advanced stage, prior agreement is to be obtained from LR in writing. The welding procedure is to be such that residual stresses are minimised.

**1.9.14** On completion of heat treatment, all welds and adjacent material are to be ground smooth and examined by magnetic particle, or liquid penetrant testing, ultrasonic or radiographic examination. The Surveyor is to attend at these inspections, to witness the results of magnetic particle or liquid penetrant examination and to examine any radiographs. Satisfactory results are to be obtained from all forms of non-destructive examination used. The acceptance criteria for the NDE of welds are to be in accordance with subsequent Sections of this Chapter or where these do not exist, Tables 13.2.4 to 13.2.6 in Chapter 13, as appropriate.

**1.9.15** Where no welding has been made on a casting, the manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement that this is the case.

**1.9.16** The foundry is to maintain full records detailing the weld procedure, heat treatment and the extent and location of all welds made to each casting. These records are to be available for review by the Surveyor, and copies of individual records are to be supplied to the Surveyor on request.

**1.9.17** For rectification of defective steel castings for crankshafts, see 4.7.

## 1.10 Identification of castings

**1.10.1** The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification, which will enable all finished castings to be traced to the original cast, and the Surveyor is to be given full facilities to trace the castings when required.

**1.10.2** Before acceptance, all castings which have been tested and inspected with satisfactory results are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer with the following particulars:

- Identification number, cast number or other marking which will enable the full history of the casting to be traced.
- Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
- LR or Lloyd's Register and the abbreviated name of LR's local office.
- Personal stamp of Surveyor responsible for inspection.
- Test pressure, where applicable.
- Date of final inspection.

**1.10.3** Where small castings are manufactured in large numbers, modified arrangements for identification may be specially agreed with the Surveyor.

## 1.11 Certification of materials

**1.11.1** A LR certificate is to be issued, see Ch 1,3.1.

**1.11.2** The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement giving the following particulars for each casting or batch of castings which has been accepted:

- Purchaser's name and order number.
- Description of castings and steel grade.
- Identification number.
- Steel making process, cast number, chemical analysis of ladle samples and, in the case of the Special grade (see Section 2), the chemical analysis of the product or test bar.
- General details of heat treatment including the temperature and time at temperature.
- Results of mechanical tests.
- Test pressure, where applicable.

**1.11.3** Where applicable, the manufacturer is to provide a signed report regarding non-destructive examination as required by 1.7.7 together with a statement and/or sketch detailing the extent and position of all weld repairs made to each casting as required by 1.9.5 or the statement detailed in 1.9.15.

## Section 2 Castings for ship and other structural applications

### 2.1 Scope

**2.1.1** The requirements for carbon-manganese steel castings, intended for ship and other structural applications where the design and acceptance tests are related to mechanical properties at ambient temperature, are given in this Section.

**2.1.2** Provision is made for two quality grades, Normal and Special.

**2.1.3** Where it is proposed to use carbon-manganese steels of higher specified minimum tensile strength than required by 2.4.3, or alloy steels, particulars of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval.

### 2.2 Chemical composition

**2.2.1** The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with Table 4.2.1.

**2.2.2** For the Special grade, the product of the aluminium and nitrogen contents is to comply with the following formula:  

$$(\% \text{ Al}_{\text{acid sol}} \times \% \text{ N}) 10^5 \leq 60$$

**2.2.3** For the Special grade, a check chemical analysis on the product or a test bar is mandatory. The check analysis on the product or test bar is to comply with the requirements of Table 4.2.1.



# Steel Castings

# Chapter 4

## Section 2

**Table 4.2.1 Chemical composition**

Quality grade	Normal	Special (see Note 3)
Carbon	0,23% max.	0,23% max.
Silicon	0,60% max.	0,60% max.
Manganese	0,70–1,60%	0,70–1,60%
Sulphur	0,040% max.	0,035% max.
Phosphorus	0,040% max.	0,035% max.
Aluminium – (acid soluble)	—	0,015–0,080% (see Notes 1 and 2)
Residual elements:		
Copper	0,30% max.	0,30% max.
Chromium	0,30% max.	0,30% max.
Nickel	0,40% max.	0,40% max.
Molybdenum	0,15% max.	0,15% max.
Total	0,80% max.	0,80% max.
<p>NOTES</p> <p>1. The total aluminium content may be determined instead of the acid soluble content, in which case the total aluminium content is to be 0,020–0,10%.</p> <p>2. Grain refining elements other than aluminium may be used subject to special agreement with LR.</p> <p>3. For the Special grade, the nitrogen content is to be determined.</p>		

## 2.3 Heat treatment

2.3.1 Castings are to be supplied:

- fully annealed; or
- normalised; or
- normalised and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C; or
- quenched and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C.

2.3.2 For larger castings where a coarse of microstructure may be present in heavier thickness, a double austenising heat treatment may be required to ensure adequate grain refinement. A coarse microstructure will be indicated by an increased attenuation of approximately 30 dB/m at 2 MHz during ultrasonic examination.

2.3.3 Following weld repair and or the attachment of handling brackets, all castings are to be subject to post weld heat treatment at a temperature of not less than 550°C before delivery.

## 2.4 Mechanical tests

2.4.1 At least one tensile test is to be made on material representing each casting or batch of castings.

2.4.2 Where the casting is of complex design, or where the finished mass exceeds 10 tonnes, two test samples are to be provided. Where large castings are made from two or more casts which are not mixed in a ladle prior to pouring, two or more test samples are required corresponding to the number of casts involved. These are to be integrally cast at locations as widely separated as possible.

2.4.3 The results of these tests are to comply with the following requirements:

Yield stress	200 N/mm <sup>2</sup> min.
Tensile strength	400 N/mm <sup>2</sup> min.
Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$	25% min.
Reduction of area	40% min.

2.4.4 A set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens is to be provided with each casting in the Special grade. These may be taken from a small extension of the thickest part of the casting or from a block cast integrally with the casting and having dimensions representative of the largest section thickness of the casting. These are to be tested in accordance with Chapter 2 and are to have an average energy of not less than 27J at 0°C.

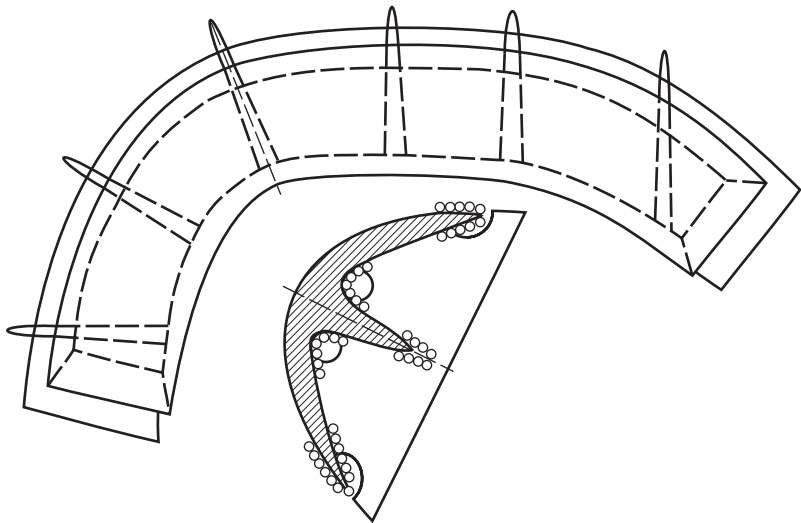
## 2.5 Non-destructive examination

2.5.1 Castings used in ship construction for the sternframe, rudder and propeller shaft supports are to be examined by ultrasonic and magnetic particle methods in accordance with 1.7. The type and extent of non-destructive examination of castings for other structural applications are to be specially agreed by the Surveyor.

2.5.2 The extent and methods of non-destructive examination to be applied to typical hull steel castings are shown in Figs. 4.2.1 to 4.2.6 in addition to the areas specified in 1.7.9 and 1.7.10.

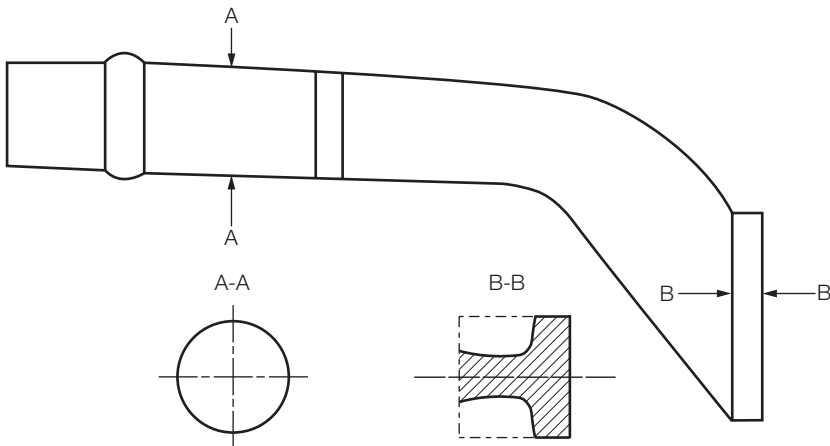
2.5.3 Acceptance levels for Visual Inspection are to be taken as follows:

- No cracks or hot tears are permitted.
- Castings are to be free of other injurious indications to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.
- Additional magnetic particle, dye penetrant or ultrasonic testing may be required for a more detailed evaluation of surface irregularities at the request of the Surveyor. These examinations are in addition to those required by 2.6.



- Location of non-destructive examination
- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. All surfaces:                  | Visual examination                       |
| 2. Location indicated with (ooo): | Magnetic particle and Ultrasonic testing |

Fig. 4.2.1 Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern frame castings



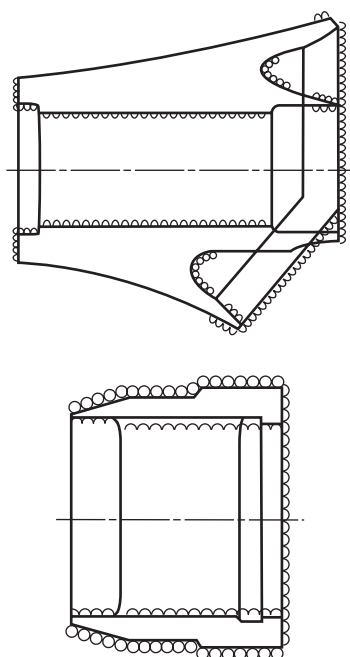
- Location of non-destructive examination
- |               |  |
|---------------|--|
| All surfaces: | Visual examination                       |
|               | Magnetic particle and ultrasonic testing |

Fig. 4.2.2 Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder stock castings

# Steel Castings

## Chapter 4

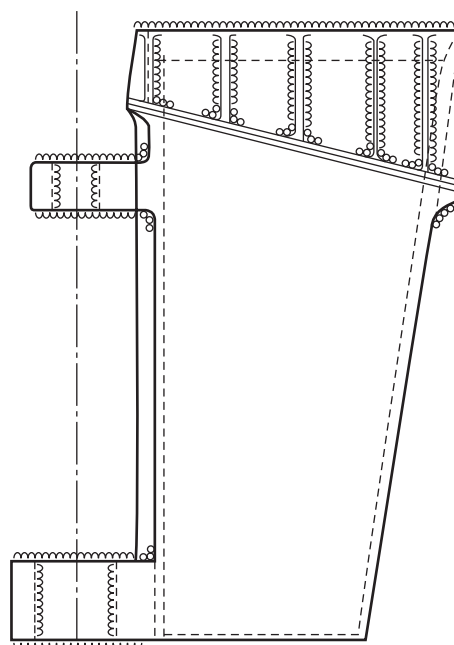
### Section 2



Location of non-destructive examination

1. All surfaces: Visual examination
2. Location indicated with (ooo): Magnetic particle and ultrasonic testing
3. Location indicated with (m): Ultrasonic testing

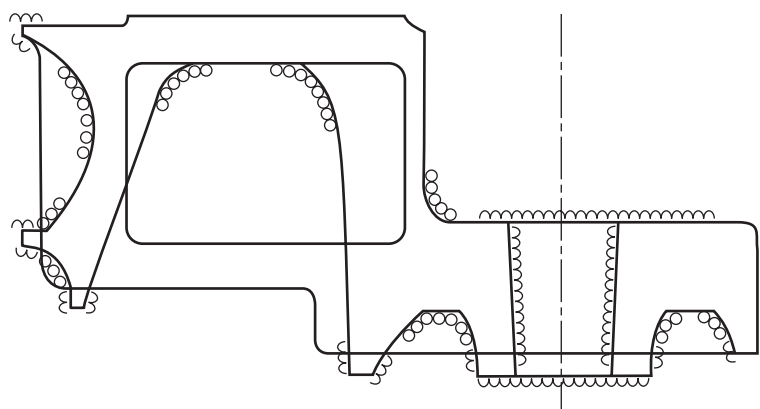
**Fig. 4.2.3**  
**Extent of non-destructive evaluation for stern boss castings**



Location of non-destructive examination

1. All surfaces: Visual examination
2. Location indicated with (ooo): Magnetic particle and Ultrasonic testing
3. Location indicated with (m): Ultrasonic testing

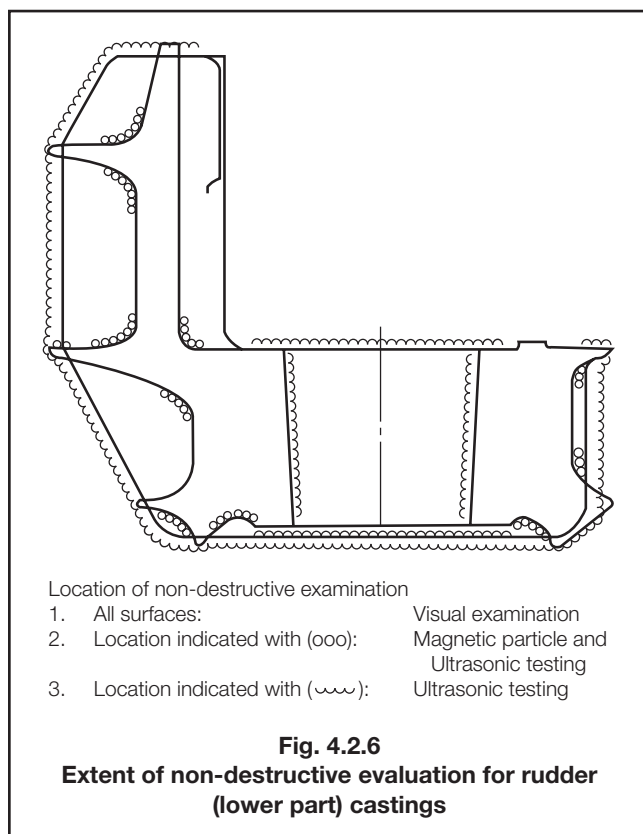
**Fig. 4.2.4**  
**Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder hanging castings**



Location of non-destructive examination

1. All surfaces: Visual examination
2. Location indicated with (ooo): Magnetic particle and Ultrasonic testing
3. Location indicated with (m): Ultrasonic testing

**Fig. 4.2.5** **Extent of non-destructive evaluation for rudder (upper part) castings**



## 2.6 Acceptance levels for surface crack detection

2.6.1 The following definitions apply to indications associated with magnetic particle and dye penetrant inspection:

- Linear indication.** An indication in which the length is at least three times the width.
- Non-linear indication.** An indication of circular or elliptical shape with a length less than three times the width.
- Aligned indication.** Three or more indications in a line, separated by 2 mm or less, edge-to-edge.
- Open indication.** An indication visible after removal of the magnetic particles, or that can be detected by the use of contrast dye penetrant.
- Non-open indication.** An indication that is not visually detectable after removal of the magnetic particles, or that cannot be detected by the use of contrast dye penetrant.

- Relevant indication.** An indication that is caused by a condition or type of discontinuity that requires evaluation. Only indications which have any dimension greater than 1,5 mm are to be considered relevant.

2.6.2 For the purpose of evaluating indications, the surface is to be divided into reference band length of 150 mm for level MT1/PT1 and into reference areas of 225 cm<sup>2</sup> for level MT2/PT2. The band length and/or area is to be taken in the most unfavourable location, relative to the indications being evaluated.

2.6.3 The following quality levels recommended for magnetic particle testing (MT) and/or dye penetrant testing (PT) are;

- Level MT1/PT1 – fabrication weld preparation areas.
- Level MT2/PT2 – other locations indicated on Figs. 4.2.1 to 4.2.6.

The acceptance criteria are shown in Table 4.2.2. Cracks and hot tears are not acceptable.

2.6.4 Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing are shown in Table 4.2.3 as UT1 and UT2. Discontinuities within the examined zones interpreted to be cracks or hot tears, are not acceptable.

2.6.5 Level UT1 is applicable to the following:

- Fabrication weld preparations for a distance of 50 mm.
- 50 mm depth from the final machined surface including boltholes.
- Fillet radii to a depth of 50 mm and within a distance of 50 mm from the radius end.
- Castings subject to cyclic bending stresses, e.g., rudder horn, rudder castings and rudder stocks, the outer one third of thickness in the zones shown in Figs. 4.2.1 to 4.2.6

2.6.6 Level UT2 is applicable to the following:

- For locations which are not specified in 2.6.5, nominated for ultrasonic testing in Figs. 4.2.1 to 4.2.6 or on the inspection plan.
- Positions outside locations nominated for level UT1 examination where feeders and gates have been removed.
- Castings subject to cyclic bending stresses, at the central one third of thickness in the zones shown in Figs. 4.2.1 to 4.2.6.

**Table 4.2.2 Acceptance criteria for surface inspection evaluation**

Quality level	Maximum number of indication	Type of indication	Maximum number each type	Maximum dimension of single indication, mm (see Note 2)
MT1/PT1	4 in 150 mm length	Non-linear Linear Aligned	4, see Note 1 4, see Note 1 4, see Note 1	5 3 3
MT2/PT2	20 in 22500 mm <sup>2</sup> area	Non-Linear Linear Aligned	10 6 6	7 5 5

### NOTES

- Minimum of 30 mm between relevant indications.
- In weld repairs, the maximum dimension is 2 mm.

# Steel Castings

## Chapter 4

Sections 2 &amp; 3

**Table 4.2.3 Ultrasonic acceptance criteria for marine steel castings**

Quality level	Allowable disc shape according to the Distance-Gain Size (DGS), mm	Maximum number of indications to be registered, see Note 1	Allowable length of linear indications, mm, see Note 2
UT1	>6	0	0
UT2	12–15 >15	5 0	50 0
NOTES 1. Grouped in an area measuring 300 x 300 mm. 2. Measured on the scanning surface.			

2.6.7 Ultrasonic acceptance criteria for casting areas not nominated in Figs. 4.2.1 to 4.2.6 will be subject to special consideration, based on the anticipated stress levels and the type, size and position of the discontinuity.

2.6.8 Parts which are welded are to be examined by the same method as at the initial inspection as well as by additional methods as required by the Surveyor.

### Section 3 Castings for machinery construction

#### 3.1 Scope

3.1.1 This Section gives the material requirements for carbon-manganese steel castings intended for use in machinery construction and which are not within the scope of Sections 4 to 7.

3.1.2 Where it is proposed to use steels of higher carbon content than is indicated in 3.2.1, or alloy steels, particulars of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval.

3.1.3 The manufacture or repair of cast steel connecting rods is not permitted, except where the manufacturing and quality control procedures have been approved by LR. For approval purposes, tests are to be carried out at the place of manufacture using the proposed process to demonstrate that the castings are sound. Tests are to be carried out to confirm that the appropriate mechanical properties are attained within the casting, including areas where weld repairs have been performed. Any changes to manufacturing, repair and quality control procedures are to be submitted to LR for approval, see *also* Ch 1,2.2.

#### 3.2 Chemical composition

3.2.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the following limits, except as specified in 3.2.2:

Carbon	0,40% max.
Silicon	0,60% max.
Manganese	0,50–1,60%
Sulphur	0,040% max.
Phosphorus	0,040% max.
Residual elements:	
Copper	0,30% max.
Chromium	0,30% max.
Nickel	0,40% max.
Molybdenum	0,15% max.
Total	0,80% max.

3.2.2 Castings which are intended for parts of a welded fabrication are to be of weldable quality with a carbon content generally not exceeding 0,23 per cent.

3.2.3 Proposals to use steels with higher carbon content, or alloy steels, for welded construction will be subject to special consideration.

#### 3.3 Heat treatment

3.3.1 Castings are to be supplied:

- fully annealed; or
- normalised; or
- normalised and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C; or
- quenched and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C.

3.3.2 Engine bedplate castings, turbine castings and any other castings where dimensional stability and freedom from internal stresses are important, are to be given a stress relief heat treatment. This is to be at a temperature not lower than 550°C, followed by furnace cooling to 300°C or lower. Alternatively, full annealing may be used provided that the castings are furnace cooled to 300°C or lower.

#### 3.4 Mechanical tests

3.4.1 At least one tensile test is to be made on material representing each casting or batch of castings.

3.4.2 Where the casting is of complex design, or where the finished mass exceeds 10 tonnes, two test samples are to be provided. Where large castings are made from two or more casts which are not mixed in a ladle prior to pouring, two or more test samples are required corresponding to the number of casts involved. The test samples are to be integrally cast at locations as widely separated as possible.

3.4.3 Table 4.3.1 gives the minimum requirements for yield stress, elongation and reduction of area corresponding to different strength levels, but it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. Intermediate levels of minimum tensile strength may be specified, in which case minimum values for yield stress, elongation and reduction of area may be obtained by interpolation.

**Table 4.3.1 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel castings for machinery construction**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum
400–550	200	25	40
440–590	220	22	30
480–630	240	20	27
520–670	260	18	25
560–710	300	15	20
600–750	320	13	20

3.4.4 Castings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 4.3.1.

3.4.5 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 4.3.1 appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength.

3.4.6 For alloy steel castings and carbon-manganese steel castings containing more than 0,40 per cent carbon, the results of all mechanical tests are to comply with an approved specification.

3.4.7 When a casting, or a batch of castings, has failed to meet the mechanical test requirements, it may be re-heat treated and re-submitted for acceptance tests but this may not be carried out more than twice, see Ch 1,4.6.

## 3.5 Non-destructive examination

3.5.1 All piston crowns and cylinder covers are to be examined by ultrasonic testing. In addition, where these castings are intended for engines having a bore size larger than 400 mm, they are to be examined by magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing in accordance with 1.7.

3.5.2 Engine bedplate castings are to be examined by ultrasonic and magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing in accordance with 1.7.

3.5.3 Turbine castings are to be examined by magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing in accordance with 1.7. In addition, an ultrasonic or radiographic examination is to be made in way of fabrication weld preparations.

3.5.4 Other castings are to be examined by non-destructive methods where specified.

## Section 4 Castings for crankshafts

### 4.1 Scope

4.1.1 This Section gives the requirements for carbon and carbon-manganese steel castings for semi-built crankshafts.

4.1.2 Where it is proposed to use steels of higher carbon content than is indicated in 4.3.1, or alloy steels, particulars of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval. For alloy steels, the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 700 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

### 4.2 Manufacture

4.2.1 The method of producing combined web and pin castings is to be approved. For this purpose, tests to demonstrate the soundness of the casting and the properties at important locations may be required.

### 4.3 Chemical composition

4.3.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the following limits:

Carbon	0,40% max. ( <i>but see 4.7.4(c)</i> )
Silicon	0,60% max.
Manganese	0,50–1,60%
Sulphur	0,040% max.
Phosphorus	0,040% max.
Residual elements:	
Copper	0,30% max.
Chromium	0,30% max.
Nickel	0,40% max.
Molybdenum	0,15% max.
	Total 0,80% max.

### 4.4 Heat treatment

4.4.1 Castings are to be supplied either:

- fully annealed and cooled in the furnace to a temperature of 300°C or lower; or
- normalised and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C, and cooled in the furnace to a temperature of 300°C or lower.



# Steel Castings

## Chapter 4

### Section 4

#### 4.5 Mechanical tests

4.5.1 Proposals for the number of tests and the location of test material on the casting are to be submitted by the manufacturer.

4.5.2 Not less than one tensile test and three impact tests are to be made on material representing each casting. The impact tests are to be carried out at ambient temperature.

4.5.3 Table 4.4.1 gives the minimum requirements for yield stress and elongation corresponding to different strength levels, and it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. The strength levels have been given in multiples of 40 N/mm<sup>2</sup> to facilitate interpolation for intermediate values of specified minimum tensile strength.

**Table 4.4.1 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel castings for crankshafts**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests average energy J minimum (see Note)
400–550	200	28	45	32
440–590	220	26	45	28
480–630	240	24	40	25
520–670	260	22	40	20
550–700	275	20	35	18
NOTE Impact tests are to be made at ambient temperature.				

4.5.4 Castings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 4.4.1.

4.5.5 The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 4.4.1 appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength. For the impact tests, one individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this average value. See Ch 1,4.6 for re-test procedures.

#### 4.6 Non-destructive examination

4.6.1 Magnetic particle examination is to be carried out over all surfaces in accordance with Fig. 4.4.1.

4.6.2 Each casting is to be examined by ultrasonic testing, and the extent of examination and defect acceptance criteria, using the DGS (Distance Gain Size) technique, are to be as shown in Fig. 4.4.2. Alternative ultrasonic procedures may be submitted for approval.

#### 4.7 Rectification of defective castings

4.7.1 The requirements of 1.9 apply, except where amended by this Section.

4.7.2 Where castings have shallow surface defects, consideration is first to be given to removing such defects by grinding and blending or by machining the surface where there is excess metal on the Rule dimension.

4.7.3 Subject to prior agreement and submission of the detailed welding procedure for approval by LR, welding may be carried out prior to the final austenitising heat treatment.

4.7.4 Approval for welding will not be given in the following circumstances:

- For the rectification of repetitive defects caused by improper foundry technique or practice.
- For the building up by welding of surfaces or large shallow depressions.
- Where the carbon content of the steel exceeds 0,30 per cent.
- Where the carbon equivalent of the steel, given by 
$$C + \frac{\text{Mn}}{6} + \frac{\text{Cr} + \text{Mo} + \text{V}}{5} + \frac{\text{Ni} + \text{Cu}}{15}$$
 exceeds 0,65 per cent.

4.7.5 Provided that the Surveyors are satisfied that welding is justified, they may also authorise welding to the surfaces of crankwebs, following the final austenitising heat treatment, within the following limits:

- In general, the volume of the largest groove which is to be welded is not to exceed 3,2t cm<sup>3</sup>, where *t* is the web axial thickness, in cm. The total volume of all grooves which are to be welded is not to exceed 9,6t cm<sup>3</sup> per crankweb.
- The welds do not extend within the cross-hatched zones marked on Fig. 4.4.3 for semi-built crank throws.
- Larger welds on balance weights may be permitted at the discretion of the Surveyor, provided that such repairs are wholly contained within the balance weight and do not affect the strength of the crankweb.

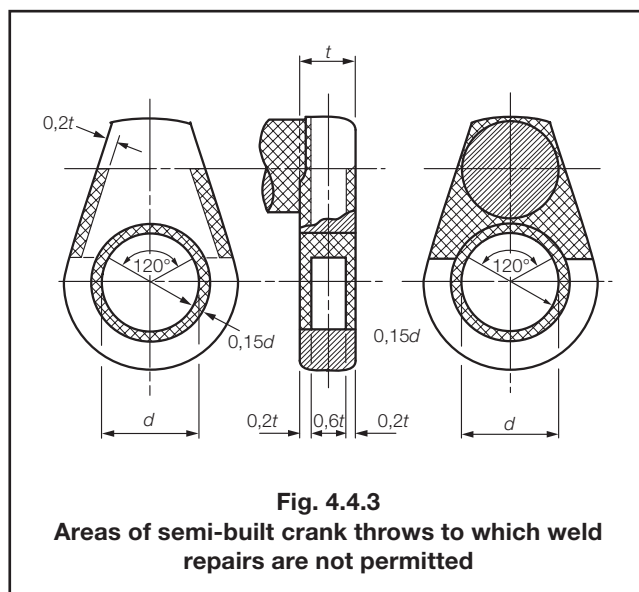
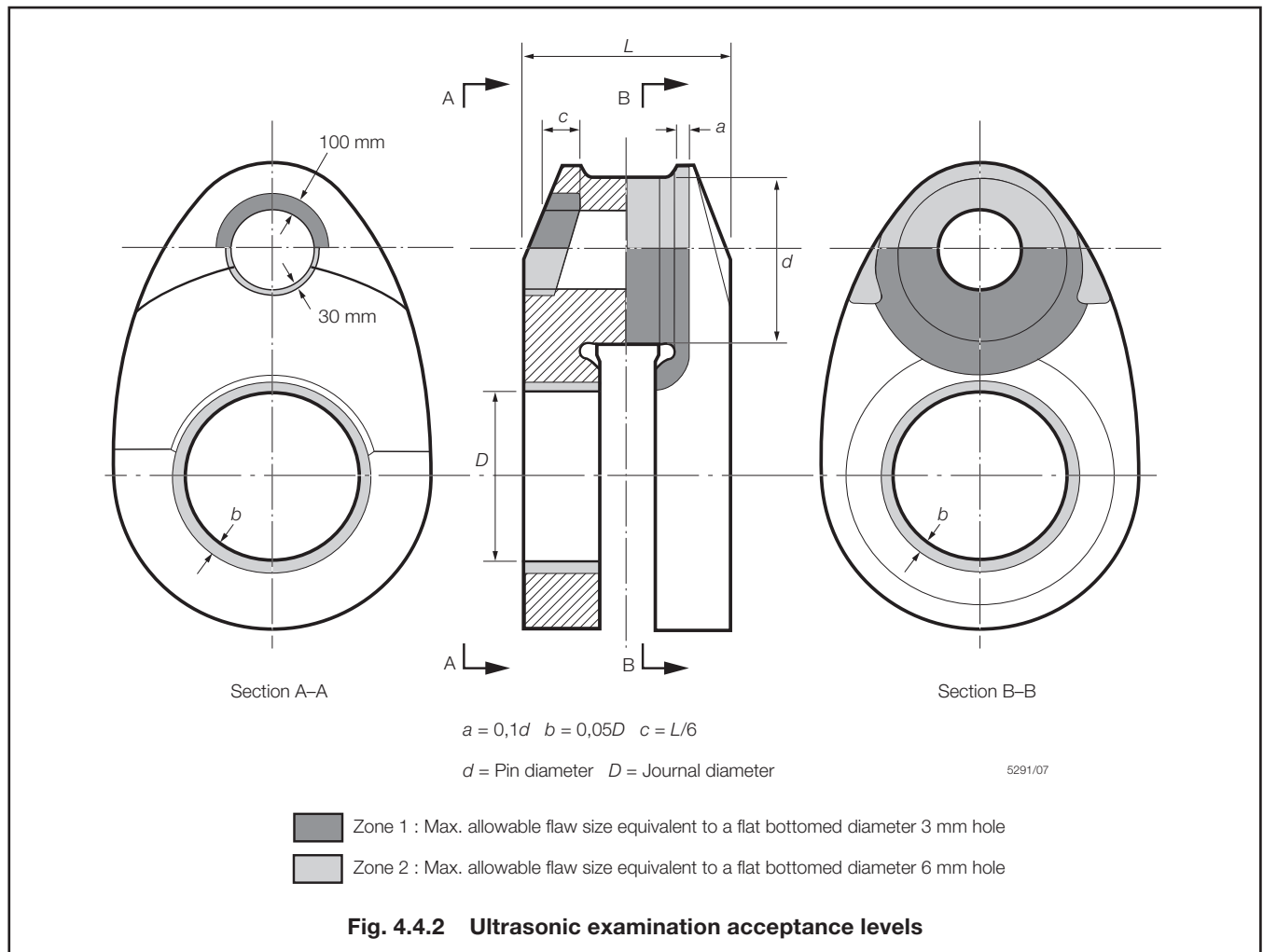
4.7.6 Subsequent to the final austenitising heat treatment, welding may be authorised in the surface of the bore for the journal (or pin) within the following limits:

- In general, the welds are to be not less than 125 mm apart.
- The welds are not to be located within circumferential bands of  $\frac{t}{5}$  from the edges of the bores, nor at any position within the inner 120° arc of the bores, as cross-hatched on Fig. 4.4.3.
- The volume of the largest weld is to be not more than 1,1t cm<sup>3</sup>, where *t* is the web axial thickness at the bore, in cm, and not more than three welds are to be made in any one bore surface.

4.7.7 After all defective material has been removed from a region, and this has been proven in the presence of the Surveyor by magnetic particle inspection or other suitable method, the excavation is to be suitably shaped to allow good access for welding.







## Section 5

### Castings for propellers

#### 5.1 Scope

5.1.1 This Section gives the requirements for steel castings for one-piece propellers and separately cast blades and hubs for fixed pitch and controllable pitch propellers (CPP). These include contra-rotating propellers, azipods and azimuth thrusters. The requirements for copper alloy propellers, blades and hubs are given in Ch 9, 1.

5.1.2 These castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Chapters 1 and 2 and Ch 4, 1 as well as the requirements of this Section.

5.1.3 Full details of the manufacturer's specification are to be submitted for approval. These should include the chemical composition, heat treatment, mechanical properties, micro-structure and repair procedures.

5.1.4 Special requirements are given for castings which are intended for ice service in Table 4.5.2.

# Steel Castings

# Chapter 4

## Section 5

### 5.2 Chemical composition

5.2.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the approved specification, see 5.1.3.

5.2.2 Typical cast steel propeller alloys are given in Table 4.5.1.

### 5.3 Heat treatment

5.3.1 Martensitic stainless steel castings are to be austenitised, quenched and tempered in accordance with the approved specification, see 5.1.3.

5.3.2 Austenitic stainless steel castings are to be solution treated in accordance with the approved specification, see 5.1.3.

### 5.4 Mechanical tests

5.4.1 The test material is to be cast integral with the boss of propeller castings, or with the flange of separately cast propeller blades. Alternatively, the test material may be attached on blades in an area between 0,5 and 0,6R, where R is the radius of the propeller.

5.4.2 The test material is not to be removed from the casting until final heat treatment has been carried out. Removal is to be by non-thermal procedures.

5.4.3 At least one tensile test and for the martensitic stainless steel grades one set of three Charpy V-notch impact tests are to be made on material representing each casting. The results are to comply with the requirements of Table 4.5.2 or the approved specification.

5.4.4 As an alternative to 5.4.3, where a number of small propeller castings of about the same size, and less than 1 m in diameter, are made from one cast and heat treated in the same furnace charge, a batch testing procedure may be adopted using separately cast test samples of suitable dimensions. At least one set of mechanical tests is to be provided for each multiple of five castings in the batch.

5.4.5 Separately cast test bars may be used subject to prior approval of the Surveyor. Test bars must be cast from the same heat, or heats, and must also be heat treated with castings they represent.

### 5.5 Non-destructive examination

5.5.1 On completion of machining and grinding, the whole surface of each casting is to be examined in accordance with Ch 9,1.8.

5.5.2 When appropriate, magnetic particle inspection may be used in lieu of liquid penetrant testing.

5.5.3 Castings are to be free from cracks and hot tears.

**Table 4.5.1 Typical chemical composition for steel propeller castings**

Alloy type	C Max. (%)	Mn Max. (%)	Cr (%)	Mo Max. (%) (see Note)	Ni (%)
Martensitic (12Cr 1Ni)	0,15	2,0	11,5–17,0	0,5	Max. 2,0
Martensitic (13Cr 4Ni)	0,06	2,0	11,5–17,0	1,0	3,5–5,0
Martensitic (16Cr 5Ni)	0,06	2,0	15,0–17,5	1,5	3,5–6,0
Austenitic (19Cr 11Ni)	0,12	1,6	16,0–21,0	4,0	8,0–13,0
NOTE Minimum values are to be in accordance with the agreed specification or recognised National or International Standards.					

**Table 4.5.2 Typical mechanical properties for steel propeller castings**

Alloy type	Yield stress or, 0,2% proof stress minimum, N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Tensile strength minimum N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65 √S <sub>0</sub> % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests J minimum (see Notes 1 and 2)
Martensitic (12Cr 1Ni)	440	590	15	30	20
Martensitic (13Cr 4Ni)	550	750	15	35	30
Martensitic (16Cr 5Ni)	540	760	15	35	30
Austenitic (19Cr 11Ni)	180 (see Note 3)	440	30	40	—
NOTES 1. When a general service notation <b>Ice Class 1AS, 1A, 1B or 1C</b> is required, the tests are to be made at –10°C. 2. For general service or where the notation <b>Ice Class 1D</b> is required, the tests are to be made at 0°C. 3. R <sub>p1,0</sub> value is 205 N/mm <sup>2</sup> .					

## 5.6 Rectification of defective castings

5.6.1 The rectification of defective castings is to be undertaken in accordance with 1.9 and the following paragraphs.

5.6.2 Removal of defective material is to be by mechanical means, e.g., by grinding, chipping or milling. The resultant grooves are to be blended into the surrounding surface so as to avoid any sharp contours.

5.6.3 Grinding in severity zone A may be carried out to an extent that maintains the blade thickness. Repair by welding is generally not permitted in zone A and will only be allowed after special consideration.

5.6.4 Defects in severity zone B that are not deeper than  $t/40$  mm ( $t$  is the minimum local thickness according to the Rules) or 2 mm, whichever is the greater, are to be removed by grinding. Those defects that are deeper may be repaired by welding subject to prior approval of the Surveyor.

5.6.5 Repair welding is generally permitted in severity zone C.

5.6.6 Welds having an area of less than 5 cm<sup>2</sup> are to be avoided. The maximum surface area of repairs is to be in accordance with Table 9.1.4 in Chapter 9.

5.6.7 Welding is to be in accordance with the approved specification, see 5.1.3.

5.6.8 After weld repair, the propeller or blade is to be heat treated in such fashion as will minimise the residual stresses. For martensitic stainless steels, this will involve full heat treatment as specified in the approved specification.

5.6.9 LR reserves the right to restrict the amount of repair work accepted from a manufacturer when it appears that repetitive defects are the result of improper foundry techniques or practices.

5.6.10 All welds are to be inspected by the appropriate NDE method, see 1.7.

## 5.7 Identification

5.7.1 Castings are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1. The following details are to be shown on all castings which have been accepted:

- (a) Identification mark which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
- (b) Type of steel, this should include or allow identification of the chromium and nickel contents.
- (c) LR or Lloyd's Register and the abbreviated name of Lloyd's Register's local office.
- (d) Personal stamp of Surveyor responsible for the final inspection.
- (e) LR certificate number.
- (f) Skew angle, if in excess of 25°.
- (g) Ice class symbol, where applicable.
- (h) Date of final inspection.

## 5.8 Certification of materials

5.8.1 In addition to the requirements in Ch 4,1.11, the manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement giving the following particulars for each casting:

- (a) Description of casting with drawing number.
- (b) Diameter, number of blades, pitch, direction of turning.
- (c) Skew angle, if in excess of 25°.
- (d) Final mass.
- (e) Vessel identification, where known.

## Section 6 Castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems

### 6.1 Scope

6.1.1 This Section gives the requirements for carbon-manganese and alloy steel castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems for use at temperatures not lower than 0°C.

6.1.2 Where it is proposed to use alloy steels other than as given in this Section, details of the specification are to be submitted for approval. In such cases, the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 600 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

6.1.3 Castings which comply with these requirements are acceptable for liquefied gas piping systems where the design temperature is not lower than 0°C. Where the design temperature is lower than 0°C, and for other applications where guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures are required, the castings are to comply with the requirements of Section 7 or 8.

### 6.2 Chemical composition

6.2.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the limits specified in Table 4.6.1.

### 6.3 Heat treatment

6.3.1 Castings are to be supplied:

- (a) fully annealed; or
- (b) normalised; or
- (c) normalised and tempered; or
- (d) quenched and tempered.

### 6.4 Mechanical tests

6.4.1 A tensile test is to be made on material representing each casting, unless a batch testing procedure has been agreed, see 1.6.

6.4.2 The tensile test is to be carried out at ambient temperature, and unless agreed otherwise with the Surveyor, the results are to comply with the requirements of Table 4.6.2.

# Steel Castings

# Chapter 4

Section 6

**Table 4.6.1 Chemical composition of steel castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems**

Type of steel	Chemical composition %										
	C max.	Si max.	Mn	S max.	P max.	Residual elements					
Carbon-manganese	0,25	0,60	0,50-1,20	0,040	0,040	Cr 0,30 max. Mo 0,15 max. Cu 0,30 max. Ni 0,40 max.  Total 0,80 max.					
1/2 Mo	0,20	0,60	0,50–1,00	0,040	0,040	Cr	Mo	V	Residual elements		
						Cr	Cu	Ni			
1 Cr 1/2 Mo	0,20	0,60	0,50-0,80	0,040	0,040	—	0,45-0,65	—	0,30 max.	0,30 max.	0,40 max.
2 1/4 Cr1 Mo	0,18	0,60	0,40-0,70	0,040	0,040	1,00-1,50	0,45-0,65	—	—	0,30 max.	0,40 max.
1/2 Cr 1/2 Mo 1/4 V	0,10–0,15	0,45	0,40-0,70	0,030	0,030	2,00-2,75	0,90-1,20	—	—	0,30 max.	0,40 max.
						0,30-0,50	0,40-0,60	0,22-0,30	—	0,30 max.	0,30 max.

**Table 4.6.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: steel castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems**

Type of steel	Yield stress minimum N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum
Carbon-manganese	275	485-655	22	25
1/2Mo	260	460-590	18	30
1Cr1/2Mo	280	480-630	17	20
2 1/4 Cr1 Mo	325	540-630	17	20
1/2Cr1/2Mo1/4V	295	510-660	17	20

6.4.3 Where it is proposed to use a carbon-manganese steel with a specified minimum tensile strength intermediate to those given in this Section, corresponding minimum values for the yield stress, elongation and reduction of area may be obtained by interpolation.

6.4.4 Carbon-manganese steels with a specified minimum tensile strength of greater than 490 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, but not exceeding 520 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, may be accepted provided that details of the proposed specification are submitted for approval.

## 6.5 Non-destructive examination

6.5.1 The non-destructive examination of castings is to be carried out in accordance with the appropriate requirements of 1.7.7 to 1.7.11 and additionally as agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

## 6.6 Mechanical properties for design purposes

6.6.1 Nominal values for the minimum lower yield or 0,2 per cent proof stress at temperatures of 100°C and higher are given in Table 4.6.3. These values are intended for design purposes only, and verification is not required except for materials complying with National or proprietary specifications where the elevated temperature properties used for design purposes are higher than those given in Table 4.6.3.

6.6.2 In such cases, at least one tensile test at the proposed design or other agreed temperature is to be made on each casting or each batch of castings. The test specimen is to be taken from material adjacent to that used for tests at ambient temperature, and the test procedure is to be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 2. The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements of the National or proprietary specification.

6.6.3 Values for the estimated average stress to rupture in 100 000 hours are given in Table 4.6.4 and may be used for design purposes.

# Steel Castings

## Chapter 4

Sections 6 &amp; 7

**Table 4.6.3 Mechanical properties for design purposes** (see 6.6.1)

Type of steel	Nominal minimum lower yield or 0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>										
	Temperature °C										
	100	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500	550	600
Carbon-manganese	225	214	201	186	163	156	152	—	—	—	—
1/2Mo	242	236	226	207	186	175	169	158	145	136	126
1Cr1/2Mo	240	—	212	—	196	—	184	—	160	—	117
2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> Cr1 Mo	323	312	305	296	290	280	273	258	240	211	180
1/2Cr1/2Mo1/4V	264	—	244	—	230	—	214	—	194	—	144

**Table 4.6.4 Mechanical properties for design purposes** (see 6.6.3): **estimated average stresses to rupture in 100,000 hours (N/mm<sup>2</sup>)**

Temperature °C	Type of steel			
	1/2Mo	1Cr1/2Mo	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> Cr1Mo	1/2Cr1/2Mo1/4V
430	308	—	—	—
440	276	—	—	—
450	245	—	222	277
460	212	—	199	237
470	174	236	177	206
480	133	186	156	181
490	103	148	139	159
500	84	120	124	140
510	71	100	111	124
520	60	84	99	109
530	—	70	—	96
540	—	58	—	85
550	—	—	—	75
560	—	—	—	66

### Section 7 Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service

#### 7.1 Scope

7.1.1 This Section gives the requirements for castings in carbon-manganese and nickel alloy steels, intended for use in liquefied gas piping systems where the design temperature is lower than 0°C, and for other applications where guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures are required.

7.1.2 Where it is proposed to use alternative steels, particulars of the specified chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval.

#### 7.2 Chemical composition

7.2.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the limits specified in Table 4.7.1. Carbon-manganese steels are to be made by fine grain practice.

#### 7.3 Heat treatment

7.3.1 Castings are to be supplied:

- (a) normalised; or
- (b) normalised and tempered; or
- (c) quenched and tempered.

#### 7.4 Mechanical tests

7.4.1 One tensile test and one set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens are to be prepared from material representing each casting or batch of castings.

7.4.2 The tensile test is to be carried out at ambient temperature, and the results are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 4.7.2.

7.4.3 The average value for impact test specimens is to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 4.7.2. One individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this average value. See Ch 2, 1.4 for re-test procedure.

#### 7.5 Non-destructive examination

7.5.1 The non-destructive examination of castings is to be carried out in accordance with the appropriate requirements of 1.7.7 to 1.7.11 and additionally agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

**Table 4.7.1 Chemical composition of ferritic steel castings for low temperature service**

Type of steel	Chemical composition %						Residual elements max.
	C max.	Si max.	Mn	S max.	P max.	Ni	
Carbon-manganese	0,25	0,60	0,70-1,60	0,030	0,030	0,80 max.	Cr 0,25 Cu 0,30 Mo 0,15 V 0,03 Total 0,60
2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> Ni	0,25	0,60	0,50-0,80	0,025	0,030	2,00-3,00	
3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	0,15	0,60	0,50-0,80	0,020	0,025	3,00-4,00	

**Table 4.7.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: ferritic steel castings for low temperature service**

Type of steel	Grade	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65 $\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Reduction or area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact test	
						Test temperature °C	Average energy J minimum
Carbon-manganese	400	200	400-550	25	40	-60 (see Note)	27
	430	215	430-580	23	35		
	460	230	460-610	22	30		
2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> Ni	490	275	490-640	20	35	-70	34
3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	490	275	490-640	20	35	-95	34

NOTE  
The test temperature for carbon-manganese steels may be 5°C below the design temperature if the latter is above -55°C, with a maximum test temperature of -20°C.

## Section 8 Stainless steel castings

### 8.1 Scope

8.1.1 This Section gives the requirements for castings in austenitic and duplex stainless steels for machinery, marine structures, piping systems in ships for liquefied gases, and in bulk chemical tankers.

8.1.2 Austenitic stainless steels castings are suitable for applications where the lowest design temperature is not lower than -165°C.

8.1.3 Duplex stainless steels castings are suitable for applications where the lowest design temperature is above 0°C. Any requirement to use duplex stainless steels castings below 0°C will be subject to special consideration.

8.1.4 Where it is proposed to use alternative steels, particulars of the specified chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval.

### 8.2 Chemical composition

8.2.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the requirements given in Table 4.8.1.

### 8.3 Heat treatment

8.3.1 Austenitic stainless steel castings are to be solution treated, at a temperature of not less than 1000°C and cooled rapidly in water.

8.3.2 Duplex stainless steels castings are to be solution treated at a temperature of not less than 1100°C and cooled rapidly in water.

### 8.4 Mechanical tests

8.4.1 One tensile test specimen is to be prepared from material representing each casting or batch of castings. In addition, where the castings are intended for liquefied gas applications, where the design temperature is lower than -55°C, one set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens is to be prepared.

8.4.2 The tensile test is to be carried out at ambient temperature, and the results are to comply with the requirements given in Table 4.8.2.

## Steel Castings

## Chapter 4

## Section 8

**Table 4.8.1 Chemical composition of stainless steel castings**

Type of steel	Chemical composition %								
	C	Si	Mn	S	P	Cr	Mo	Ni	Others
Austenitic									
304L	0,03	0,20-1,5	0,50-2,0	0,040	17,0-21,0	—	8,0–12,0	—	
304	0,08					—	8,0–12,0	—	
316L	0,03					2,0–3,0	9,0–13,0	—	
316	0,08					2,0–3,0	9,0–13,0	—	
317	0,08					3,0–4,0	9,0–12,0	—	
347 (see Note 1)	0,06					—	9,0–12,0	Nb ≥ 8 x C ≤ 0,90	
Duplex									
UNS S 31803	0,03	1,00	2,00	0,025	0,035	21,0–23,0	2,5–3,5	4,5–6,5	N 0,08–0,20
NOTES									
1. When guaranteed impact values at low temperature are not required, the maximum carbon content may be 0,08% and the maximum niobium may be 1,00%.									
2. Where a single value is shown (and not a range of values), the value is to be taken as maximum.									

**Table 4.8.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: stainless steel castings**

Type of steel	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	1,0% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on 5,65 $\sqrt{S_o}$ % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
					Test temperature °C	Average energy J minimum
Austenitic						
304L	430	215	26	40	−196	41
304	480	220				
316L	430	215	26	40	−196	41
316	480	220				
317	480	240				
347	480	215	22	35	−196	41
Duplex						
UNS S 31803	600	420	20	35	0	41

8.4.3 The average value for impact test specimens is to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 4.8.2. One individual value may be less than the required average value, provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this average value. See Ch 2,1.4 for re-test procedures.

## 8.5 Intergranular corrosion tests

8.5.1 Where corrosive conditions are anticipated in service, intergranular corrosion tests are required on castings in grades 304, 316, 317 and all duplex stainless steels. Such tests may not be required for grades 304L, 316L and 347.

8.5.2 Where an intergranular corrosion test is specified, it is to be carried out in accordance with the procedure given in Ch 2,8.1.



## 8.6 Non-destructive examination

8.6.1 The non-destructive examination of castings is to be carried out in accordance with the appropriate requirements of 1.7.7 to 1.7.11 and additionally agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

## Section 9 Steel castings for container corner fittings

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 This Section gives the requirements for cast steel corner fittings used in the fabrication of freight and tank containers. The fittings are also to comply with the requirements of the latest edition of International Standard ISO 1161.

9.1.2 The castings are to be made in foundries approved by LR. These foundries are also to be specially approved for the manufacture of container corner castings. In order to comply with these requirements, the manufacturer is required to verify that the casting soundness, mechanical properties, weldability and dimensional tolerances required by this Section and the manufacturing specification are met.

9.1.3 Castings may be released on the basis of an LR survey or, alternatively, the manufacturer may be approved by means of a Quality Assurance Scheme as detailed in Ch 1,2.

### 9.2 Chemical composition

9.2.1 Chemical analysis is to be carried out on each cast.

9.2.2 The chemical composition of the ladle samples is to comply with the limits given in Table 4.9.1.

9.2.3 The carbon equivalent:

$$C_{eq} = C + \frac{Mn}{6} + \frac{Cr + Mo + V}{5} + \frac{Ni + Cu}{15} \text{ (%)}$$

must not exceed 0,45 per cent.

## 9.3 Heat treatment

9.3.1 Castings are to be supplied either:  
(a) normalised; or  
(b) water or oil quenched and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C.

## 9.4 Mechanical tests

9.4.1 At least one tensile test is to be made on each batch of castings, using separately cast test bars which are to be from the same cast and heat treatment lot as the castings they represent.

9.4.2 The results of the tensile tests are to comply with the following:

Yield stress	220 N/mm <sup>2</sup> min.
Tensile strength	430–600 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Elongation on $\sqrt{S_0}$	25% min.
Reduction of area	40% min.

9.4.3 Impact tests are not required on all casts, but may be required on a random basis at the discretion of the Surveyor.

9.4.4 When required, the impact test specimens are to be tested in accordance with Ch 1,4.5 and Ch 2,3.2. In general, tests are to be made at a temperature of –20°C and the minimum average energy obtained is to be 27J.

## 9.5 Non-destructive examination

9.5.1 Ultrasonic or radiographic testing is to be carried out, in accordance with 1.7.10 or 1.7.11 respectively, on at least one casting from each cast or from every 400 castings, whichever is the lesser.

## 9.6 Repair of defects

9.6.1 Minor defects may be removed by grinding provided that the allowable minus tolerance is not exceeded.

**Table 4.9.1 Chemical composition of steel castings for container corner fittings**

Chemical composition %										
C max.	Mn	Si max.	P max.	S max.	Cr max.	Ni max.	Cu max.	Mo max.	Al acid soluble min. (See Notes)	Cr + Ni + Cu + Mo max.
0,20	0,90 to 1,50	0,50	0,035	0,035	0,25	0,30	0,20	0,08	0,015	0,70
NOTES										
1. The total aluminium content may be determined instead of the acid soluble content. In such cases, the total aluminium content is to be not less than 0,02%.										
2. Aluminium may be replaced partly or totally by other grain refining elements as stated in the approved specification.										



9.6.2 Defects which exceed the allowable minus tolerance may be removed by grinding or chipping followed by welding, provided the weld depth does not exceed 40 per cent of the wall thickness and that the following requirements are met:

- (a) welding is not to be carried out in the as-cast condition; the grain structure has to be refined by heat treatment,
- (b) the casting is to be preheated to 80–100°C,
- (c) welding is to be performed only by qualified welders in accordance with a qualified welding procedure,
- (d) all welded castings are to be post-weld heat treated at a temperature not less than 550°C,
- (e) the welded areas are to be ground or machined flush with the adjacent surface and inspected by magnetic particle or dye penetrant examination as appropriate.

## **9.7 Identification**

9.7.1 Each casting is to be clearly marked by the manufacturer with at least the following:

- (a) manufacturer's name or trade mark,
- (b) cast number or identification number which will enable the full history of the casting to be traced.

9.7.2 Where the casting has been inspected and found acceptable it is to be marked with the Surveyor's personal stamp.

9.7.3 The markings may be stamped or cast on the inner surface of the casting.

## **9.8 Certification of materials**

9.8.1 For each consignment a manufacturer's certificate is to be issued (see Ch 1,3.1), containing at least the following:

- (a) Purchaser's name and order number.
  - (b) Grade of steel.
  - (c) Drawing and/or specification number.
  - (d) Cast number and chemical composition.
  - (e) Details of the heat treatment.
  - (f) Number and weight of the castings.
  - (g) Results of inspections and mechanical tests.
-



# Steel Forgings

# Chapter 5

## Section 1

### Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Forgings for ship and other structural applications**
- 3 **Forgings for shafting and machinery**
- 4 **Forgings for crankshafts**
- 5 **Forgings for gearing**
- 6 **Forgings for turbines**
- 7 **Forgings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems**
- 8 **Ferritic steel forgings for low temperature service**
- 9 **Austenitic stainless steel forgings**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section gives the general requirements for steel forgings intended for use in the construction of ships, other marine structures, machinery, boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems. These requirements are also applicable to rolled slabs and billets used as a substitute for forgings and to rolled bars used for the manufacture (by machining operations only) of shafts, bolts, studs and other components of similar shape.

1.1.2 When required by the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction, forgings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Chapters 1 and 2, together with the general requirements given in this Section and the appropriate specific requirements given in Sections 2 to 9.

1.1.3 As an alternative to 1.1.2, steel forgings which comply with National or proprietary specifications, may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter, or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1.

1.1.4 Normalised forgings with mass up to 1000 kg each and quenched and tempered forgings with mass up to 500 kg each may be batch tested. A batch is to consist of forgings of similar shape and dimensions, made from the same heat of steel, heat treated in the same furnace charge and with a total mass not exceeding 6 tonnes for normalised forgings and 3 tonnes for quenched and tempered forgings, respectively.

1.1.5 A batch testing procedure may also be used for hot rolled bars, see 3.4.3.

1.1.6 Where small forgings are produced in large quantities, or where forgings of the same type are produced in regular quantities, alternative survey procedures in accordance with Ch 1,2.4 may be adopted.

### 1.2 Manufacture

1.2.1 Forgings are to be made at works which have been approved by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as LR). The steel used, is to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of Ch 3,1.3.

1.2.2 When forgings are made directly from ingots, or from blooms or billets forged from ingots, the ingots are to be cast in chill moulds with the larger cross-section uppermost and with efficient feeder heads.

1.2.3 Adequate top and bottom discards are to be made to ensure freedom from piping and harmful segregations in the finished forgings.

1.2.4 The forgings are to be gradually and uniformly hot worked and are to be formed as closely as possible to the finished shape and size. The plastic deformation is to be such as to ensure soundness, uniformity of structure and satisfactory mechanical properties after heat treatment.

1.2.5 For certain components, such as crankshafts, where grain flow is required in the most favourable direction, having regard to the mode of stressing in service, the proposed method of manufacture may require special approval by LR. In such cases, tests may be required to demonstrate that a satisfactory structure and grain flow are obtained.

1.2.6 The reduction ratio (reduction of area expressed as a ratio) is to be calculated with reference to the average cross-sectional area of the ingot or continuously cast material, where appropriate. Where an ingot is initially upset, this reference area may be taken as the average cross-sectional area after this operation.

1.2.7 For components forged directly from ingots or from forged blooms or billets, and in which the fibre deformation is mainly longitudinal, the reduction ratio is not to be less than 3:1.

1.2.8 For forgings made from rolled billets, or where fibre deformation has taken place in more than one direction, the reduction ratio is not to be less than 4:1.

1.2.9 Where rolled bars are used as a substitute for forgings and the requirements of 1.2.2 are not complied with, the reduction ratio is to be not less than 6:1.

1.2.10 Where the length of any section of a shaft forging is less than its diameter (e.g., a collar), the reduction ratio is to be not less than half that given in 1.2.7, 1.2.8 or 1.2.9 respectively.

# Steel Forgings

# Chapter 5

## Section 1

1.2.11 Disc type forgings, such as gear wheels, are to be made by upsetting, and the thickness of any part of the disc is to be not more than one-half of the length of the billet from which it was formed, provided that this billet has received an initial forging reduction of not less than 1,5:1. Where the piece used has been cut directly from an ingot, or where the billet has received an initial reduction of less than 1,5:1, the thickness of any part of the disc is to be not more than one-third of the length of the original piece.

1.2.12 Rings and other types of hollow forgings are to be made from pieces cut from ingots or billets and which have been suitably punched, bored or trepanned prior to expanding or hollow forging. Alternatively, pieces from hollow cast ingots may be used. The wall thickness of the forging is to be not more than one-half of the thickness of the prepared hollow piece from which it was formed. Where this is not practicable, the forging procedure is to be such as to ensure that adequate work is given to the piece prior to punching, etc. This may be either longitudinal or upset working of not less than 2:1.

1.2.13 The shaping of forgings or rolled slabs and billets by flame cutting, scarfing or arc-air gouging is to be undertaken in accordance with recognised good practice and, unless otherwise approved, is to be carried out before the final heat treatment. Preheating is to be employed where necessitated by the composition and/or thickness of the steel. For certain components, subsequent machining of all flame cut surfaces may be required, see 4.2.4.

1.2.14 Where two or more forgings are joined by welding to form a composite component, details of the proposed welding procedure are to be submitted for approval. Welding approval procedure tests may be required.

## 1.3 Quality

1.3.1 All forgings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service.

## 1.4 Chemical composition

1.4.1 All forgings are to be made from killed steels, and the chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the requirements detailed in subsequent Sections in this Chapter. Where general overall limits are specified, the chemical composition selected is to be appropriate for the type of steel, dimensions and required mechanical properties of the forgings being manufactured.

1.4.2 Except where otherwise specified, suitable grain refining elements such as aluminium, niobium or vanadium may be used at the discretion of the manufacturer. The content of such elements is to be reported in the ladle analysis.

1.4.3 For alloy steel forgings, the chemical composition of ladle samples is to generally comply with the following overall limits and the requirements of the approved specifications:

Carbon	0,45% max.
Silicon	0,45% max.
Manganese	0,30% min.
Sulphur	0,035% max.
Phosphorus	0,035% max.
Copper	0,30% max.

And at least one of the following elements is to comply with the minimum content:

Chromium	0,40% min.
Molybdenum	0,15% min.
Nickel	0,40% min.

The contents of all alloying elements and significant impurities detailed in the specification are to be reported.

## 1.5 Heat treatment

1.5.1 At an appropriate stage of manufacture, after completion of all hot working operations, forgings are to be suitably heat treated to refine the grain structure and to obtain the required mechanical properties. Acceptable heat treatment procedures are to be such as to avoid the formation of hair-line cracks and are detailed in Sections 2 to 9.

1.5.2 Heat treatment is to be carried out in properly constructed furnaces, which are efficiently maintained and have adequate means for control and recording of temperature. The furnace dimensions are to be such as to allow the whole furnace charge to be uniformly heated to the necessary temperature. In the case of very large forgings, alternative methods of heat treatment will be specially considered. Sufficient thermocouples are to be connected to the furnace charge to measure and record that its temperature is adequately uniform. Alternative procedures are to be approved by LR, Materials and NDE Department.

1.5.3 Where forgings are to be quenched and tempered and cannot be hot worked close to size and shape, they are to be suitably rough machined or flame cut prior to being subjected to this treatment.

1.5.4 If for any reason a forging is subsequently heated for further hot working, the forging is to be reheat treated.

1.5.5 If any straightening operation is performed after the final heat treatment, consideration should be given to a subsequent stress relieving heat treatment in order to avoid the possibility of harmful residual stresses.

1.5.6 Where it is intended to surface harden forgings, full details of the proposed procedure and specification are to be submitted for approval. For the purposes of this approval, the manufacturer will be required to demonstrate by tests that the proposed procedure gives a uniform surface layer of the required hardness and depth and that it does not impair the soundness and properties of the steel.

1.5.7 Where induction hardening or nitriding is to be carried out after machining, forgings are to be heat treated at an appropriate stage to a condition suitable for this subsequent surface hardening.

1.5.8 Where carburising is to be carried out after machining, forgings are to be heat treated at an appropriate stage (generally either by full annealing or by normalising and tempering) to a condition suitable for subsequent machining and carburising.

1.5.9 The forge is to maintain records of heat treatment identifying the furnace used, furnace charge, thermocouple location, date, temperature and time at temperature. The records are to be presented to the Surveyor on request.

## 1.6 Test material

1.6.1 Test material, sufficient for the required tests and for possible re-test purposes, is to be provided with a cross-sectional area of not less than that part of the forging which it represents. This test material is to be integral with each forging, except in the case of small forgings which are batch tested, see 1.6.4.

1.6.2 Where a forging is subsequently divided into a number of components, all of which are heat treated together in the same furnace charge, for test purposes this may be regarded as one forging and the number of tests required is to be related to the total length and mass of the original multiple forging, see 2.4.2.

1.6.3 Except for components which are to be carburised, test material is not to be cut from a forging until the heat treatment detailed in Sections 2 to 9 has been completed. The testing procedure for components which are to be carburised is to be in accordance with the details given in Section 5.

1.6.4 Where a number of small forgings of about the same size are made from one cast and heat treated in the same furnace charge, batch testing procedures (see 1.1.4) may be adopted using one of the forgings for test purposes, or alternatively using separately forged test samples. These test samples are to have a forging reduction similar to that used for the forgings which they represent. They are to be properly identified and heat treated together with the forgings.

## 1.7 Mechanical tests

1.7.1 Specimens for mechanical tests are to be prepared as required by Sections 2 to 9.

1.7.2 Test specimens are normally to be cut with their axes mainly parallel (longitudinal test) or mainly tangential (tangential test) to the principal axial direction of each product.

1.7.3 Unless otherwise agreed, the longitudinal axis of the test specimens is to be positioned as follows:

- (a) for thickness or diameter  $\leq 50$  mm, the axis is to be at the mid-thickness or the centre of the cross-section;

- (b) for thickness or diameter  $> 50$  mm, the axis is to be at one quarter thickness (mid-radius) or 80 mm, whichever is less, below any heat treated surface;

Test pieces shall be taken in such a way that no part of the gauge length is machined from material closer than 12,5 mm to any heat treated surface. For impact testing, this requirement is to apply to the complete test piece.

1.7.4 Tensile test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions detailed in Chapter 2. Where this is precluded by the dimensions of the forging, the test specimen is to be of the largest practicable cross-sectional area.

1.7.5 Impact test specimens are to be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 2.

1.7.6 The procedures used for the tensile and impact tests are to be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 2.

1.7.7 Hardness tests, preferably of the Brinell type, are to be carried out when specified in subsequent Sections in this Chapter.

## 1.8 Visual and non-destructive examination

1.8.1 Before acceptance, all forgings are to be presented to the Surveyor for visual examination. Where applicable, this is to include the examination of internal surfaces and bores.

1.8.2 Forgings are to be examined in the condition for final delivery. Surfaces are to be clean and free from dirt, grease, paint, etc. Black forgings are to be suitably descaled by either shotblasting or flame descaling methods.

1.8.3 All forgings are to be free of cracks, crack-like indications, laps, seams, folds, or other injurious indications. At the request of the Surveyor, additional magnetic particle, dye penetrant and ultrasonic testing may be required for a more detailed evaluation of surface irregularities.

1.8.4 When specified in subsequent Sections in this Chapter, or by an approved procedure for welding composite components, see 1.2.14, appropriate non-destructive examination is also to be carried out before acceptance. All tests are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1,5.

1.8.5 Magnetic particle and dye penetrant testing is to be carried out when the forgings are in the finished machined condition, see also Ch 1,2.3.5. For magnetic particle testing, attention is to be paid to the contact between the forging and the clamping devices of stationary magnetisation benches in order to avoid local overheating or burning damage on its surface. Prods are not permitted on finished machined items. Unless otherwise agreed, these tests are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyor.

1.8.6 The following definitions apply to indications associated with magnetic particle and dye penetrant inspection:

- (a) **Linear indication.** An indication in which the length is at least three times the width.
- (b) **Nonlinear indication.** An indication of circular or elliptical shape with a length less than three times the width.
- (c) **Aligned indication.** Three or more indications in a line, separated by 2 mm or less edge-to-edge.
- (d) **Open indication.** An indication visible after removal of the magnetic particles or that can be detected by the use of contrast dye penetrant.
- (e) **Non-open indication.** An indication that is not visually detectable after removal of the magnetic particles or that cannot be detected by the use of contrast dye penetrant.
- (f) **Relevant indication.** An indication that is caused by a condition or type of discontinuity that requires evaluation. Only indications which have any dimension greater than 1,5 mm are to be considered relevant.

1.8.7 Acceptance standards for defects found by visual or non destructive examinations are to be in accordance with any specific requirements of the approved plan, and with equivalence to any additional requirements of this Chapter. In all cases they are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

1.8.8 Where required, ultrasonic examination is to be carried out after the forgings have been machined to a condition suitable for this type of examination and after the final heat treatment. Both radial and axial scanning are to be carried out where appropriate for the shape and the dimensions of the forgings being examined. Unless otherwise agreed, this examination is to be carried out by the manufacturer, although Surveyors may request to be present in order to verify that the examination is being carried out in accordance with the agreed procedure.

1.8.9 If the forging is supplied in the black condition for machining at a separate works, the manufacturer is to ensure that a suitable ultrasonic examination is carried out to verify the internal quality of the forging.

1.8.10 In the circumstance detailed in either 1.8.8 or 1.8.9, the manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a signed report confirming that ultrasonic examination has been carried out and that such inspection has not revealed any significant internal defects.

1.8.11 Unless otherwise agreed, the accuracy and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer.

1.8.12 In the event of any forging proving defective during subsequent machining or testing, it is to be rejected notwithstanding any previous certification.

1.8.13 When required by the conditions of approval for surface hardened forgings (see 1.5.6) additional test samples are to be processed at the same time as the forgings which they represent. These test samples are subsequently to be sectioned in order to determine the hardness, shape and depth of the locally hardened zone and which are to comply with the requirements of the approved specification.

## 1.9 Rectification of defects

1.9.1 Small surface imperfections may be removed by grinding or by chipping and grinding. Complete elimination of these imperfections is to be proved by magnetic particle or dye penetrant examination (as appropriate to the material). At the discretion of the Surveyor, the resulting shallow grooves or depressions can be accepted, provided that they are blended by grinding.

1.9.2 Repairs by welding are not generally permitted, but special consideration will be given to such repairs where they are of a minor nature and in areas of low working stresses. In such cases, full details of the proposed repair and subsequent inspection procedures are to be submitted for review by the Surveyors prior to the commencement of the proposed rectification. A report and/or sketch detailing the extent and location of all repairs, together with details of the post-weld heat treatment and non-destructive examination are to be provided for record purposes and are to be attached to the certificate.

1.9.3 Repair welding is not permitted for crankshafts or similar rotating components.

1.9.4 Where fabrication welding is involved, see 1.2.14, any repair of defects is to be carried out in accordance with the approved welding procedure.

1.9.5 The forging manufacturer is to maintain records of repairs and subsequent inspections traceable to each forging. The records are to be presented to the Surveyor on request.

1.9.6 Non-open indications evaluated as segregation are acceptable.

## 1.10 Identification

1.10.1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification, which will enable all finished forgings to be traced to the original cast, forging process and heat treatment batch, and the Surveyor is to be given full facilities for so tracing the castings when required.

1.10.2 Forgings are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1. The following details are to be shown on all forgings which have been accepted:

- (a) Identification number, cast number or other marking which will enable the full history of the forging to be traced.
- (b) LR or Lloyd's Register and the abbreviated name of LR's local office.
- (c) Personal stamp of Surveyor responsible for inspection.
- (d) Test pressure, where applicable.
- (e) Date of final inspection.

1.10.3 Modified arrangements for the identification of small forgings manufactured in large numbers, as with closed-die forgings may be agreed with the Surveyor.

# Steel Forgings

# Chapter 5

Sections 1 & 2

## 1.11 Certification of materials

1.11.1 A LR certificate is to be issued, see Ch 1,3.1.

1.11.2 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement giving the following particulars for each forging or batch of forgings which has been accepted:

- (a) Purchaser's name and order number.
- (b) Description of forgings and steel quality.
- (c) Identification number.
- (d) Steelmaking process, cast number and chemical analysis of ladle samples.
- (e) General details of heat treatment.
- (f) Results of mechanical tests.
- (g) Test pressure, where applicable.

1.11.3 As a minimum, the chemical composition of ladle samples is to include the content of all the elements detailed in the specific requirements.

1.11.4 Where applicable, the manufacturer is also to provide a signed report regarding ultrasonic examination as required by 1.8.8, a report of magnetic particle inspection and a statement and/or sketch detailing all repairs by welding as required by 1.9.2.

1.11.5 When steel is not produced at the works at which it is forged, a certificate is to be supplied by the steelmaker stating the process of manufacture, cast number and the chemical composition of ladle samples. The works at which the steel was produced is to have been approved by LR, see 1.4.3.

Sulphur	0,035% max.
Phosphorus	0,035% max.
Residual elements:	
Copper	0,30% max.
Chromium	0,30% max.
Molybdenum	0,15% max.
Nickel	0,40% max.
Total	0,85% max.

For samples from forgings, the carbon content is not to exceed 0,26 per cent.

2.2.2 It is recommended that forgings for rudder stocks, pintles and rudder coupling bolts comply with 2.2.1 in order to obtain satisfactory weldability for any future repairs by welding in service.

2.2.3 For forgings not intended for welding the carbon content may be 0,65 per cent max., see 3.2.1.

## 2.3 Heat treatment

2.3.1 Carbon-manganese steel forgings are to be:

- (a) fully annealed; or
- (b) normalised; or
- (c) normalised and tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C.
- (d) quenched and tempered.

2.3.2 Alloy steel forgings are to be quenched and then tempered at a temperature of not less than 550°C. Alternatively, they may be supplied in the normalised and tempered condition, in which case the specified mechanical properties are to be agreed by LR.

## 2.4 Mechanical tests

2.4.1 At least one tensile specimen is to be taken from each forging or batch of forgings.

2.4.2 Where a forging exceeds both 4 tonnes in mass and 3 m in length, tensile test specimens are to be taken from each end. These limits refer to the 'as forged' mass and length but exclude the test material.

2.4.3 Unless otherwise agreed between the manufacturer and the Surveyor, the test specimens are to be cut in a longitudinal direction.

2.4.4 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 5.2.1 appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength. Forgings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength within the general limits given in Table 5.2.1, and intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation. See 2.4.6 for rudder stocks, pintles, and rudder coupling keys and bolts.

2.4.5 For large forgings, where tensile tests are taken from each end, the variation in tensile strength is not to exceed 70 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

## Section 2 Forgings for ship and other structural applications

### 2.1 Scope

2.1.1 This Section gives the specific requirements for carbon-manganese steel forgings intended for ship and other structural applications such as rudder stocks, pintles, etc.

2.1.2 Where it is proposed to use an alloy steel, particulars of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval, see 1.4.3.

### 2.2 Chemical composition

2.2.1 For forgings to which structural items are to be attached by welding or which are intended for parts of a fabricated component, or are to be weld clad or may be subject to weld repair in service, the chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the following:

Carbon	0,23% max.
Silicon	0,45% max.

Manganese 0,30–1,50% but not less than 3 times the actual carbon content for components which are not given a post-weld heat treatment

**Table 5.2.1 Mechanical properties for ship and other structural applications**

Steel type	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ min. %		Reduction of area min. %	
			Long.	Tang.	Long.	Tang.
C and C-Mn	180	360-480	28	20	50	35
	200	400-520	26	19	50	35
	220	440-560	24	18	50	35
	235	470-590	23	17	45	35
	240	480-600	22	16	45	30
	260	520-640	21	15	45	30
	280	560-680	20	14	40	27
	300	600-750	18	13	40	27
	320	640-790	17	12	40	27
	340	680-830	16	12	35	24
	360	720-870	15	11	35	24
Alloy	380	760-910	14	10	35	24
	350	550-570	20	14	50	35
	400	600-750	18	13	50	35
	450	650-800	17	12	50	35

2.4.6 For rudder stocks, pintles, and rudder coupling keys and bolts, the minimum specified yield strength is not to be less than 200 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, see Table 13.2.4 in Pt 3, Ch 13.

2.4.7 Impact tests are required for rudder stocks to be fitted to vessels which have an ice class notation. The tests are to be carried out at minus 10°C and the average energy value is to be not less than 27J.

2.5.5 Volumetric inspection is to be carried out by ultrasonic testing using the contact method.

2.5.6 Ultrasonic testing is to be carried out on rudder stocks having a finished diameter of 200 mm or greater.

2.5.7 Ultrasonic testing is to be carried out in the zones I to III as indicated in Fig. 5.2.2. Areas may be upgraded to a higher zone at the discretion of the Surveyors.

## 2.5 Non-destructive examination

2.5.1 Surface inspections are to be carried out by visual examination and magnetic particle testing (or dye penetrant testing where appropriate).

2.5.2 Surface inspections are to be carried out in the zones I and II as indicated in Fig. 5.2.1.

2.5.3 For the purpose of evaluating indications, the surface is to be divided into reference areas of 225 cm<sup>2</sup>. The area is to be taken in the most unfavourable location relative to the indication being evaluated.

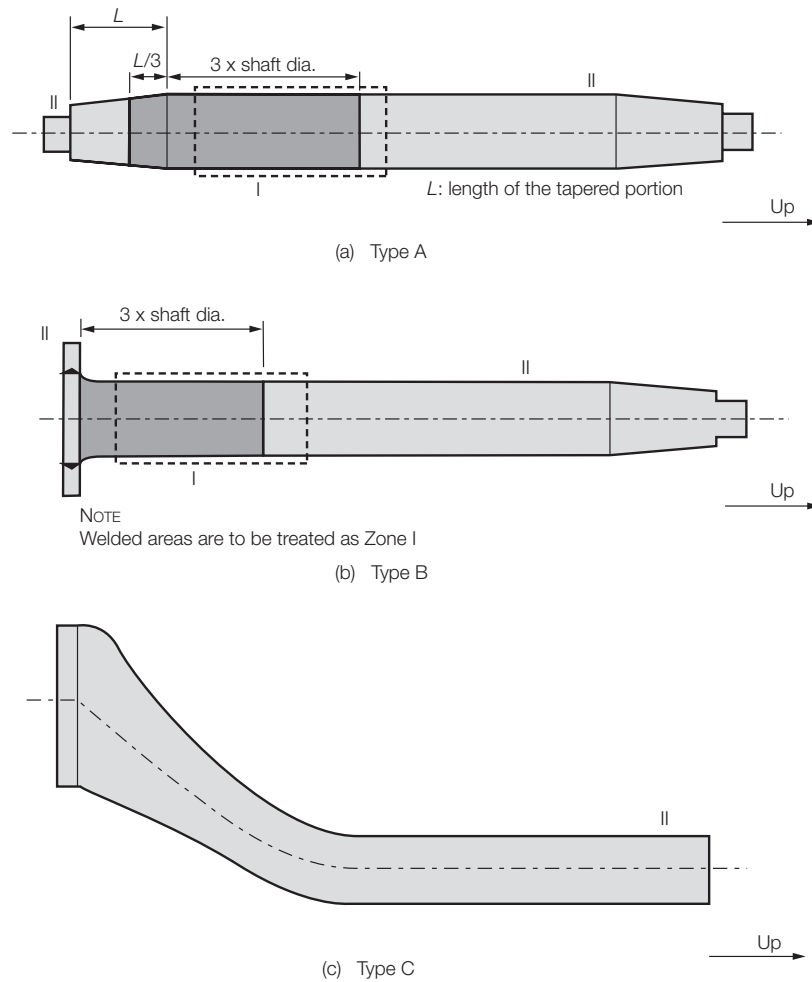
2.5.4 The allowable number and size of indications in the reference area is given in Table 5.2.2.

**Table 5.2.2 Steel forgings surface inspection**

Inspection zone	Maximum number of indications	Type of indication	Maximum number each type	Maximum dimension, mm
I	3	Linear Non-linear Aligned	0, see Note 3 0, see Note	— 3,0 —
II	10	Linear Non-linear Aligned	3, see Note 7 3, see Note	3,0 5,0 3,0

NOTE  
Linear or aligned indications are not permitted on bolts, which receive a direct fluctuating load, e.g., main bearing bolts, connecting rod bolts, crosshead bearing bolts and cylinder cover bolts.





**Fig. 5.2.1 Inspection zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on rudder stocks**

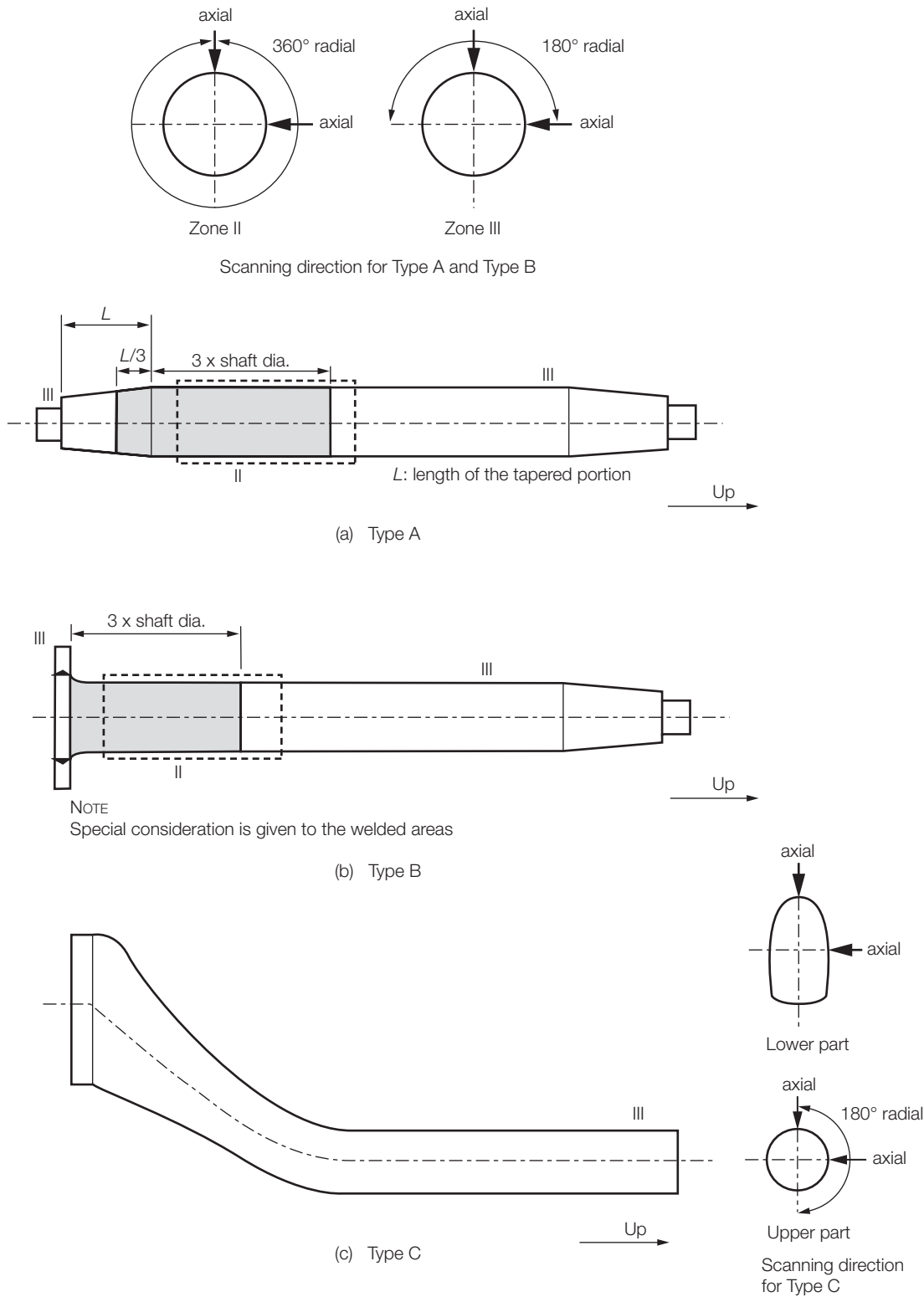


Fig. 5.2.2 Inspection zones for ultrasonic testing on rudder stocks

## Section 3 Forgings for shafting and machinery

### 3.1 Scope

3.1.1 Detailed in this Section are the requirements for carbon-manganese steel forgings for shafting and other items of machinery which are not within the scope of Sections 4 to 8.

3.1.2 Where it is proposed to use alloy steel forgings, particulars of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment are to be submitted for approval. For main propulsion shafting in alloy steels, the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 800 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (800–950 N/mm<sup>2</sup> acceptance range) and for other forgings is not to exceed 1100 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (1100–1300 N/mm<sup>2</sup> acceptance range).

### 3.2 Chemical composition

3.2.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples for carbon and carbon-manganese steels is to comply with the following overall limits:

Carbon	0,65% max.
Silicon	0,45% max.
Manganese	0,30–1,50%
Sulphur	0,035% max.
Phosphorus	0,035% max.
Residual elements:	
Copper	0,30% max.
Chromium	0,30% max.
Molybdenum	0,15% max.
Nickel	0,40% max.
Total	0,85% max.

3.2.2 For alloy steels, see 1.4.3.

3.2.3 For forgings to which structural items are to be attached by welding, or which are intended for parts of a fabricated component, are to be of weldable quality, see 2.2.1.

### 3.3 Heat treatment

3.3.1 Forgings are to be:

- (a) fully annealed; or
- (b) normalised; or
- (c) normalised and tempered; or
- (d) quenched and tempered.

The tempering temperature is to be not less than 550°C.

### 3.4 Mechanical tests

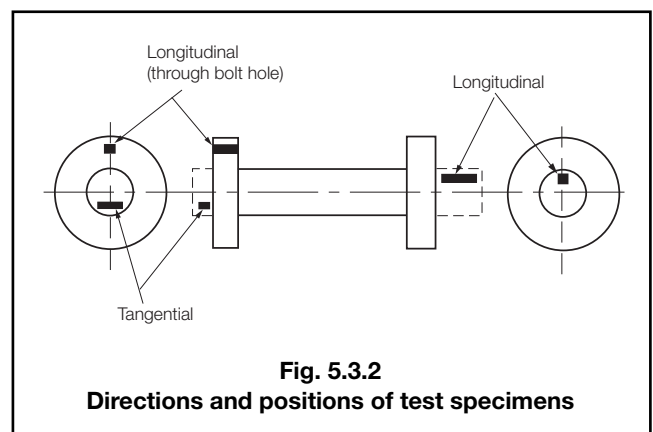
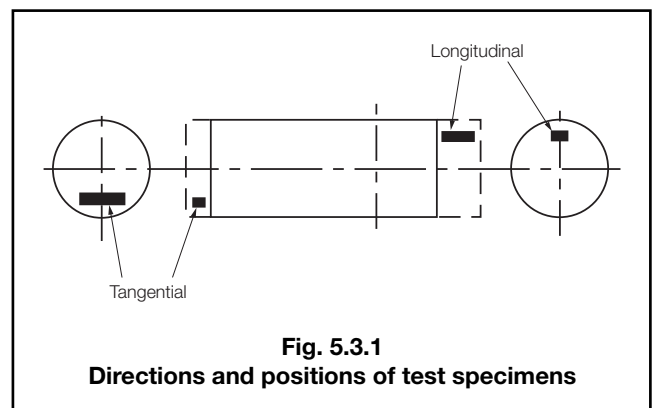
3.4.1 At least one tensile test is to be made on each forging, or each batch of forgings. Impact tests are not required except on screwshafts for ice service, see 3.4.12.

3.4.2 Where a forging exceeds both 4 tonnes in mass and 3 m in length, a tensile test is to be taken from each end. These limits refer to the 'as forged' mass and length but exclude the test material.

3.4.3 A batch testing procedure may be used for hot rolled bars not exceeding 250 mm diameter, which are intended for the manufacture (by machining operations only) of straight shafting, bolts, studs and other machinery components of similar shape. A batch is to consist of either:

- (a) material from the same piece provided that where this is cut into individual lengths, these are all heat treated in the same furnace charge; or
- (b) bars of the same diameter and cast, heat treated in the same furnace charge and with a total mass not exceeding 2,5 tonnes.

3.4.4 The test specimens are to be taken in the longitudinal direction but, at the discretion of the manufacturer and if agreed by the Surveyor, alternative directions or positions as shown in Figs. 5.3.1 to 5.3.3 may be used.

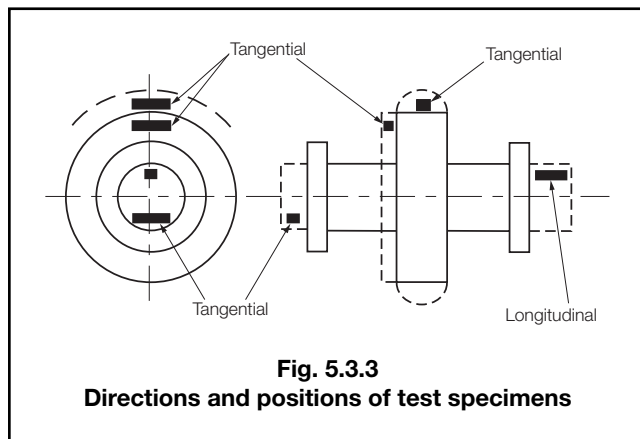


3.4.5 For carbon-manganese steels, Table 5.3.1 gives the minimum requirements for yield stress, elongation and reduction of area, corresponding to different strength levels, but it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. Intermediate values for other specified minimum tensile strengths should be calculated by interpolation.

# Steel Forgings

# Chapter 5

## Section 3



3.4.6 Forgings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 5.3.1, except that for main propulsion shafting forgings the specified minimum tensile strength is to be not less than 400 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (400–520 N/mm<sup>2</sup> acceptance range) and not greater than 600 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (600–750 N/mm<sup>2</sup> acceptance range) see shaded area of Table 5.3.1.

3.4.7 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 5.3.1 appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength.

3.4.8 The minimum requirements for yield stress, elongation and reduction of area, corresponding to different strength levels in alloy steel forgings are given in Table 5.3.2.

**Table 5.3.1 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings for machinery and shafting**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> min. %		Reduction of area min. %	
		Long.	Tang.	Long.	Tang.
360-480	180	28	20	50	35
400-520	200	26	19	50	35
440-560	220	24	18	50	35
470-590	235	23	17	45	35
480-600	240	22	16	45	30
520-640	260	21	15	45	30
560-680	280	20	14	40	27
600-750	300	18	13	40	27
640-790	320	17	12	40	27
680-830	340	16	12	35	24
700-850 <sup>2</sup>	350	15	11	35	24
720-870 <sup>2</sup>	360	15	11	35	24
760-910 <sup>2</sup>	380	14	10	35	24

NOTES

- For main propulsion shafting forgings, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be between 400 and 600 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (shaded area of Table) see 3.4.6.
- Where the specified minimum tensile strength exceeds 700 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, forgings are to be supplied only in the quenched and tempered condition.

**Table 5.3.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for machinery and shafting**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> min. %		Reduction of area min. %	
		Long.	Tang.	Long.	Tang.
600-750	420	18	14	50	35
650-800	450	17	13	50	35
700-850	480	16	12	45	30
750-900	530	15	11	45	30
800-950	580	14	10	40	27
850-1000	630	13	9	40	27
900-1100	690	13	9	40	27
950-1150	750	12	8	35	24
1000-1200	810	12	8	35	24
1050-1250	870	11	7	35	24
1100-1300	930	11	7	35	24

NOTE

For main propulsion shafting forgings, the minimum specified tensile strength is not to exceed 800 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, see 3.4.9 (shaded area of Table).

# Steel Forgings

## Chapter 5

### Section 3

3.4.9 Forgings in alloy steels may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 5.3.2, and minimum yield stress, elongation and reduction of area, obtained by interpolation, except that for main propulsion shafting forgings the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 800 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (800–950 N/mm<sup>2</sup> acceptance range) see shaded area of Table 5.3.2.

3.4.10 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 5.3.2 appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength.

3.4.11 Where more than one tensile test is taken from a forging, the variation in tensile strength is not to exceed the following:

Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Difference in tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>
<600	70
≥600 < 900	100
≥900	120

3.4.12 For screwshafts intended for ships with the notation **Ice Class 1AS** or **1A** and where the connection between the propeller and the screwshaft is by means of a key, a set of three Charpy V-notch impact tests (longitudinal test) is to be made on material from the propeller end of each shaft. The tests are to be carried out at –10°C and the average energy value is to be not less than 20 J.

### 3.5 Non-destructive examination

3.5.1 Magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing (where appropriate) is to be carried out on forgings for main propulsion shafting (including propeller shafts, intermediate shafts, and thrust shafts with minimum diameter not less than 100 mm), on all connecting rod forgings and on the following components when they are intended for engines having a bore diameter larger than 400 mm:

- Cylinder covers
- Piston crowns
- Piston rods
- Tie rods
- Gear wheels for camshaft drives
- Bolts and studs for:
  - Cylinder covers
  - Crossheads
  - Main bearings
  - Connecting rod bearings
  - Propeller blade fastening bolts
  - Crankpin bolts
  - Tie rod bolts

Additionally, bolts for engine bore diameters of less than 400 mm but having a minimum diameter 50 mm or greater (which are subjected to dynamic stress), are also to be subjected to surface examinations.

3.5.2 The areas to be tested by magnetic particle or dye penetrate testing are shown in Fig. 5.3.4 and Fig. 5.3.5. Areas of other components not shown in these figures are to be agreed with the Surveyor. For tie rods, only threaded portions and the adjacent material over a length equal to that of the thread need be tested.

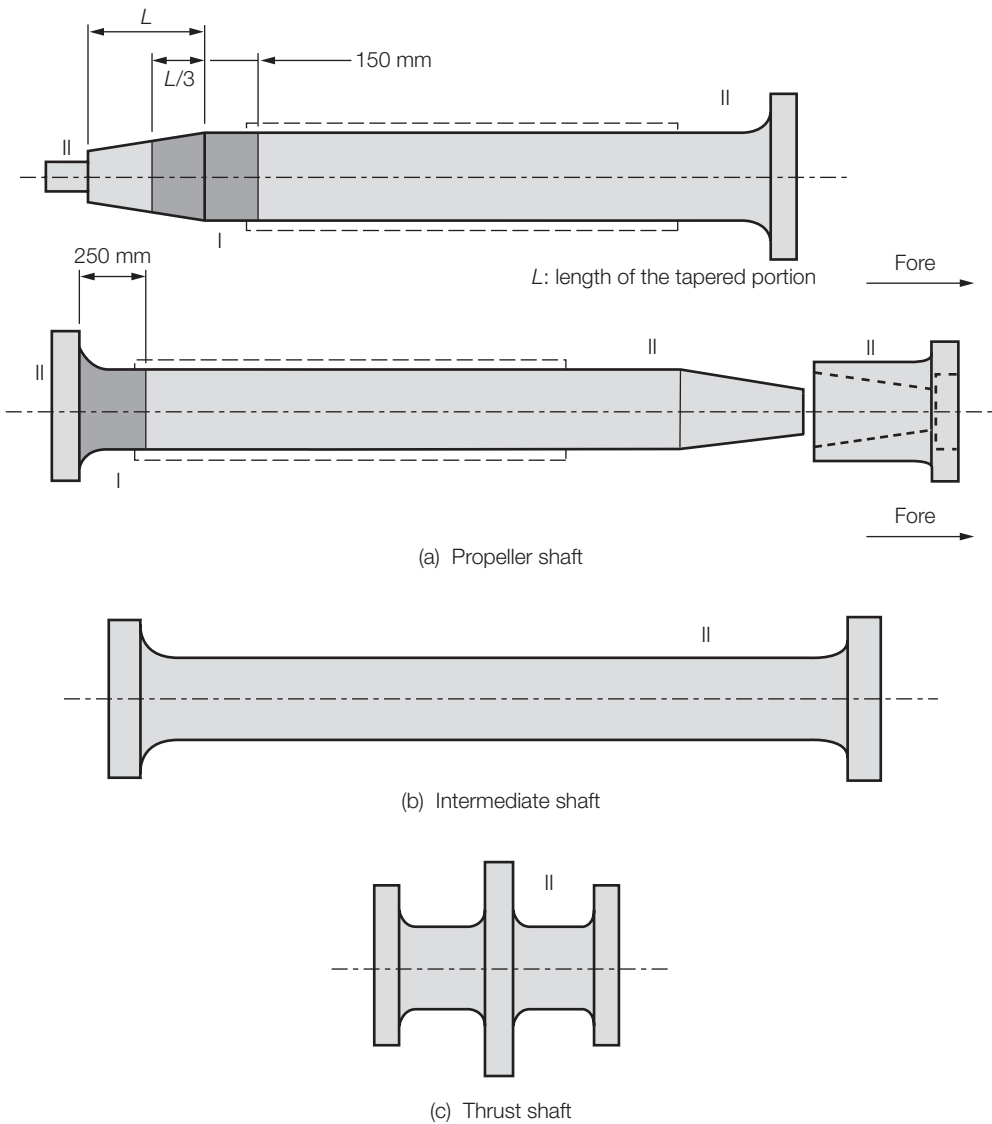
3.5.3 Surface inspection acceptance criteria are to be in accordance with 2.5. Other acceptance criteria may be applied, providing they meet these minimum criteria, and are to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

3.5.4 Ultrasonic testing is to be carried out in accordance with 2.5 on the following items:

- (a) Shafts having a finished diameter of 200 mm or larger when intended for main propulsion or other essential services.
- (b) All piston crowns and cylinder covers.
- (c) Piston rods and connecting rods for engines having a bore diameter greater than 400 mm.

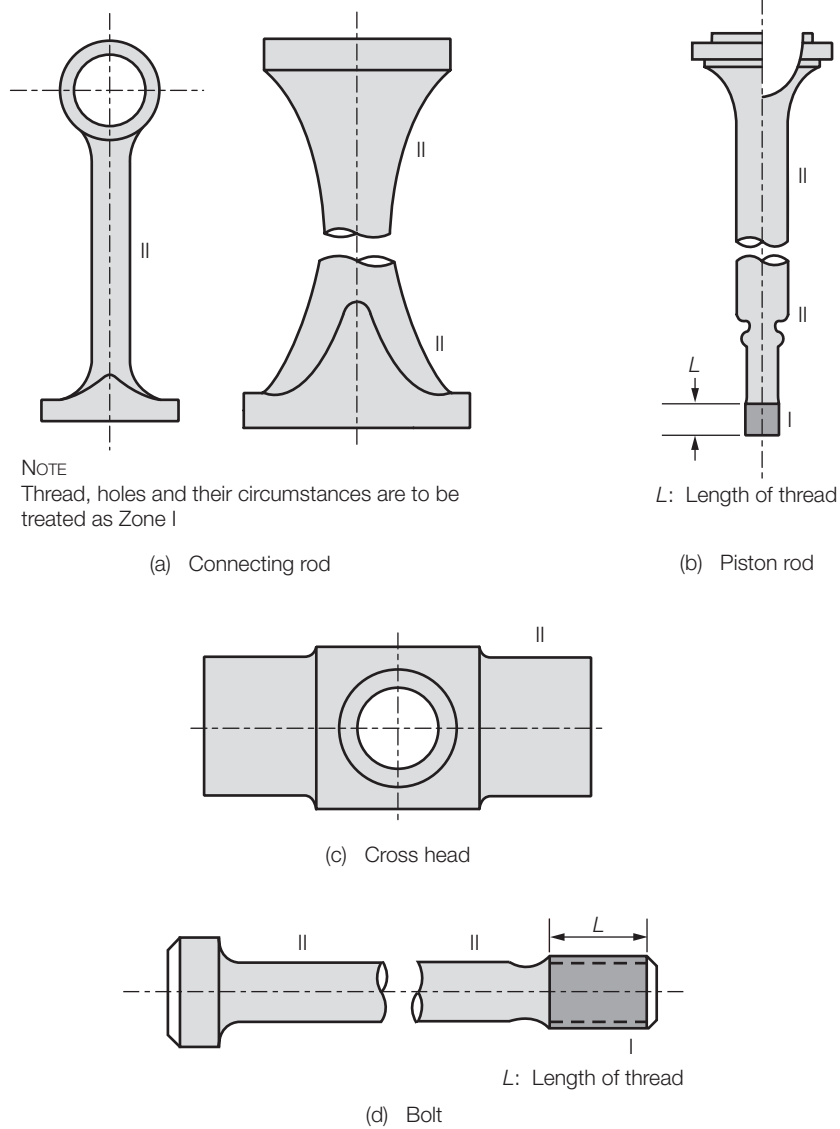
The areas to be tested are shown in Fig. 5.3.6 and Fig. 5.3.7. Areas of other components not shown in these drawings are to be agreed with the Surveyor.

3.5.5 Ultrasonic acceptance criteria are shown in Table 5.3.4. Other acceptance criteria may be applied, providing they meet these minimum criteria, and are to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

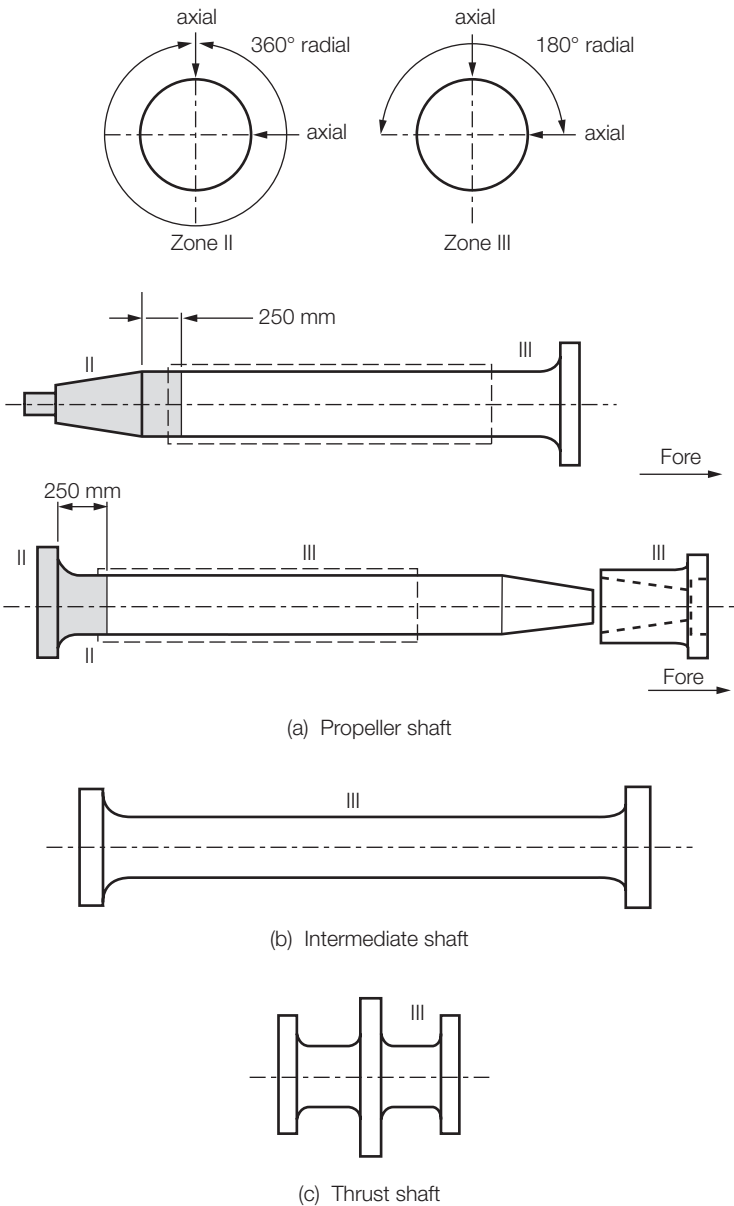


NOTE  
For propeller shaft, intermediate shafts and thrust shafts, all areas with stress raisers such as radial holes, slots and key ways are to be treated as Zone I.

Fig. 5.3.4 Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on machinery components



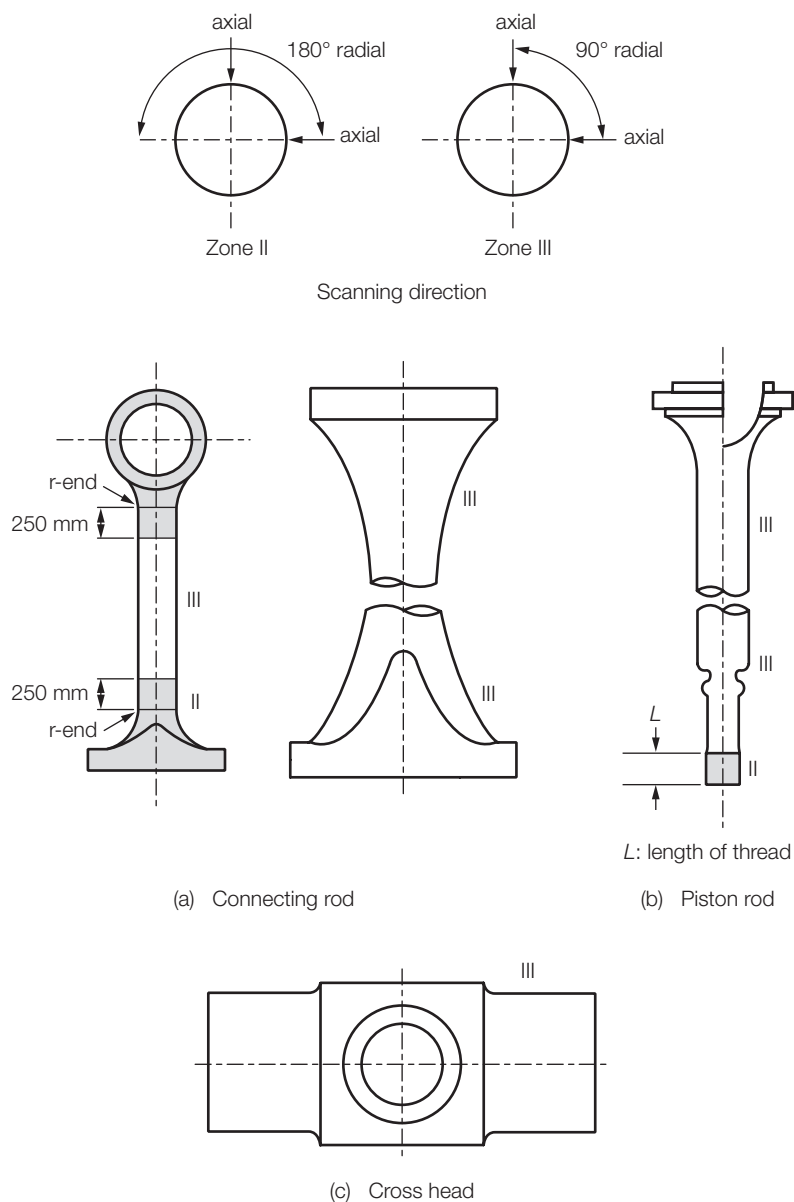
**Fig. 5.3.5 Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on machinery components**



- NOTES
- 1. For hollow shafts, 360° radial scanning applies to Zone III
  - 2. Circumferences of the bolt holes in the flanges are to be treated as Zone II

Fig. 5.3.6 Zones for ultrasonic testing on shafts





**Fig. 5.3.7 Zones for ultrasonic testing on machinery components**

**Table 5.3.4 Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing**

Type of forging	Zone	Allowable disc shape according to Distance Gain Size (DGS), see Note 1, mm	Allowable length of indication, mm see Note 2
Propeller shaft Intermediate shaft	II	Outer $d \leq 2$ Inner $d \leq 4$	$\leq 10$ $\leq 15$
Thrust shaft Rudder stock	III	Outer $d \leq 3$ Inner $d \leq 6$	$\leq 10$ $\leq 15$
Connecting rod Piston rod	II	$d \leq 2$	$\leq 10$
	III	$d \leq 4$	$\leq 10$

NOTES

- Outer part means the part beyond one third of the shaft radius from the centre. The inner part means the remaining core area.
- For accumulations of two or more isolated indications which are subjected to registration, the minimum distance between two neighbouring indications is to be at least the length of the larger indication.

## Section 4 Forgings for crankshafts

### 4.1 Scope

4.1.1 The specific requirements for solid forged crankshafts and forgings for use in the construction of fully built and semi-built crankshafts are detailed in this Section.

4.1.2 Where it is proposed to use alloy steel forgings, particulars of the chemical composition (see 1.4.3), heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval. The specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 1000 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (1000–1200 N/mm<sup>2</sup> acceptance range).

### 4.2 Manufacture

4.2.1 For closed die and continuous grain flow crankshafts forgings, where an allowance is given for design purposes, full details of the proposed method of manufacture are to be submitted for approval. In such cases, tests will be required to demonstrate that a satisfactory structure and grain flow are obtained. The number and positions of test specimens are to be agreed with LR.

4.2.2 For the manufacture of welded crankshafts, approval is required for the welding procedure.

4.2.3 For combined crankweb and pin forgings, the proposed method of forging is to be submitted for approval. It is recommended that these forgings be made by a folding method. Other methods which can be shown to produce sound forgings with satisfactory mechanical properties will be considered, but where the gapping method is used for cranks having a pin diameter exceeding 510 mm this will only be accepted provided that an upsetting operation is included in the manufacturing sequence. In general, the amount of work during the upsetting operation is to be such that the reduction in the original length of the ingot (after discard) or bloom is not less than 50 per cent.

4.2.4 Where crankwebs are flame cut from forged or rolled slabs, the procedure used is to be in accordance with 1.2.13, and additionally, unless specially agreed, a depth of at least 7,5 mm is to be removed by machining from all flame-cut surfaces.

### 4.3 Chemical composition

4.3.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with 3.2.1 for carbon and carbon-manganese steels and 1.4.3 for alloy steels.

4.3.2 For alloy steel forgings which are to be nitrided, the phosphorus or sulphur contents are not to exceed 0,02 per cent.

### 4.4 Heat treatment

4.4.1 For forgings in all types of steels, heat treatment is to be either:

- (a) normalising and tempering, or
- (b) quenching and tempering.

The temperature used for tempering is to be not less than 550°C.

# Steel Forgings

## Chapter 5

### Section 4

4.4.2 Where it is proposed to surface harden crankshaft forgings by nitriding or induction hardening, full details of the proposed procedure are to be submitted as required by 1.5.6.

#### 4.5 Mechanical tests

4.5.1 At least one tensile test specimen is to be taken from each forging.

4.5.2 For solid forged crankshafts, tests are to be taken in the longitudinal direction from the coupling end of each forging (test position A in Fig. 5.4.1). Where the mass, as heat treated but excluding test material, exceeds 3 tonnes, a second set of tests is to be taken from the end opposite the coupling, in addition (test position B in Fig. 5.4.1). Where the crankthrows are formed by machining or flame cutting, the second set of tests is to be taken in a tangential direction from material removed from the crankthrow at the end opposite the coupling (test position C in Fig. 5.4.1). For continuous grain flow (CGF) crankshaft forgings, where insufficient material exists for a second longitudinal test, the second set of tests may be taken in a tangential direction from the crankthrow (test position C in Fig. 5.4.2).

4.5.3 The number and position of test specimens from combined crankweb and pin forgings are to be in accordance with the requirements of the approved method of manufacture.

4.5.4 For other crankshaft forgings, tests are to be taken as detailed in Section 3, except that for crankwebs the test specimens are to be cut in a tangential direction.

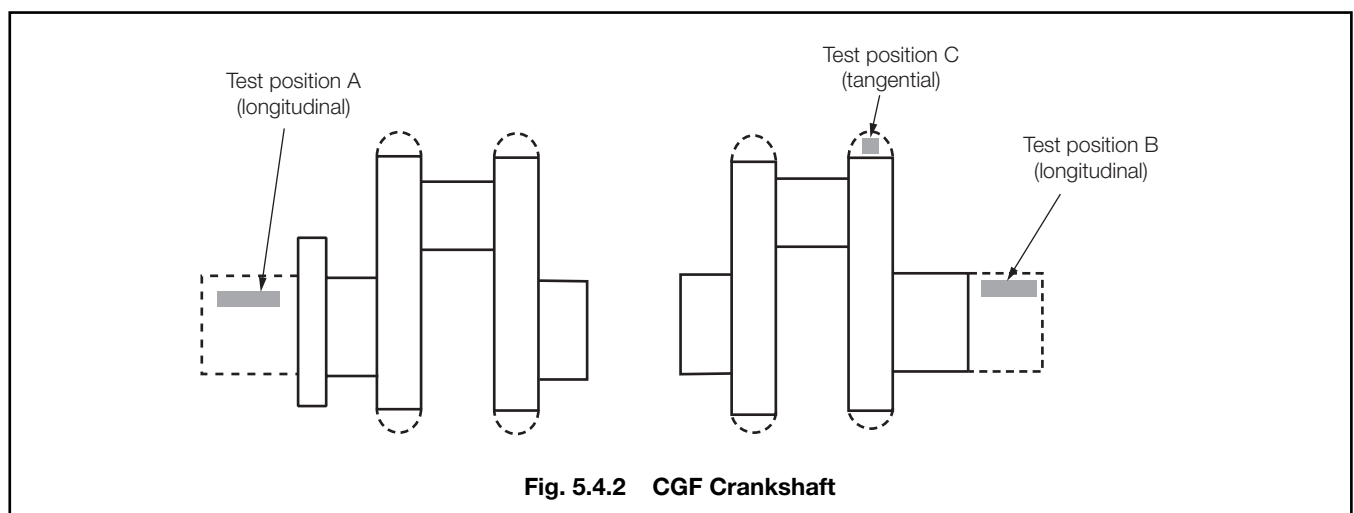
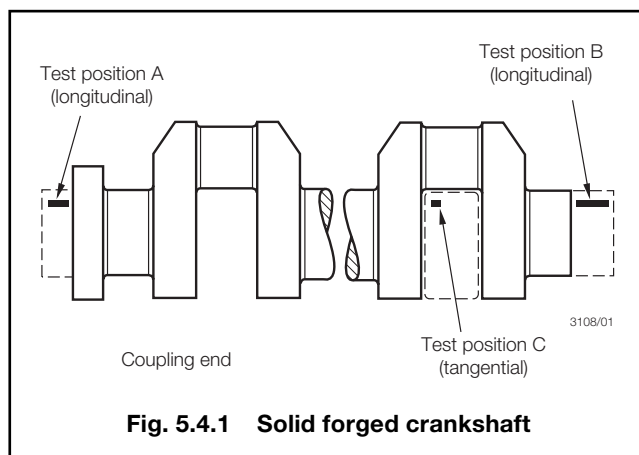
4.5.5 As an alternative to 4.5.2, small solid forged crankshafts may be batch tested in accordance with 1.6.4, provided that, in addition, hardness tests are carried out on each forging.

4.5.6 Tables 5.4.1 to 5.4.3 give the minimum requirements for yield stress and elongation corresponding to different strength levels, but it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. The strength levels have been given in multiples of 40 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, or 50 N/mm<sup>2</sup> in the case of alloy steels, to facilitate interpolation for intermediate values of specified minimum tensile strength.

**Table 5.4.1 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for crankshafts**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum		Hardness Brinell
		Long.	Tang.	
400–520	200	26	19	110–150
440–560	220	24	18	125–160
480–600	240	22	16	135–175
520–640	260	21	15	150–185
560–680	280	20	14	160–200
600–750	300	18	13	175–215
640–790	320	17	12	185–230
680–830	340	16	12	200–240
720–870	350	15	11	210–250
760–910	380	14	18	225–265

Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.



# Steel Forgings

## Chapter 5

Section 4

**Table 5.4.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for crankshafts – Normalised and tempered**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum		Hardness Brinell
		Long.	Tang.	
600–750	330	18	14	175–215
650–800	355	17	13	190–235
700–850	380	16	12	205–245
750–900	405	15	11	215–260
800–950	430	14	10	235–275
Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.				

**Table 5.4.3 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for crankshafts – Quenched and tempered**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum		Hardness Brinell
		Long.	Tang.	
600–750	420	18	14	175–215
650–800	450	17	13	190–235
700–850	480	16	12	205–245
750–900	530	15	11	215–260
800–950	590	14	10	235–275
850–1000	640	13	9	245–290
900–1100	690	13	9	260–320
950–1150	750	12	8	275–340
1000–1200	810	12	8	290–365
Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.				

4.5.7 Forgings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Tables 5.4.1 to 5.4.3.

4.5.8 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 5.4.1, 5.4.2 or 5.4.3 appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength.

4.5.9 Where more than one tensile test is taken from a forging, the variation in tensile strength is not to exceed the following:

Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Difference in tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>
<600	70
≥600 <900	100
≥900	120

4.5.10 For small crankshaft forgings which have been batch tested, the hardness values are to be not less than those given in Tables 5.4.1 to 5.4.3, as appropriate. The variation in hardness in each batch is to comply with the following:

Specified minimum tensile strength (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )	Difference in hardness (Brinell number)
<600	not more than 25
≥600 <900	not more than 35
≥900	not more than 42

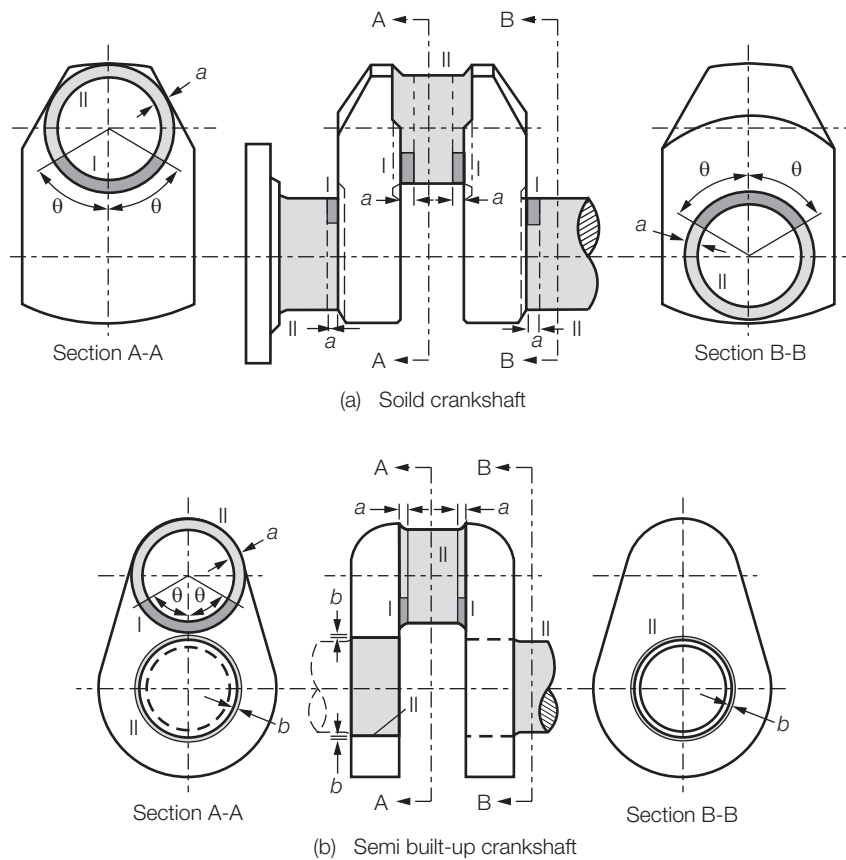
### 4.6 Non-destructive examination

4.6.1 Magnetic particle or dye penetrant testing as detailed in 1.8.5 and 2.5 is to be carried out on all forgings for crankshafts. Where applicable, this is to include all surfaces which have been flame-cut, but not subsequently machined during manufacture. Particular attention is to be given to the testing of the pins, journals and associated fillet radii of solid forged crankshafts and to the pins and fillet radii of combined web and pin forgings. The extent of testing is shown in Fig. 5.4.3.

4.6.2 The manufacturer is to carry out an ultrasonic examination of all forgings as detailed in 1.8.8 and 2.5, except that for closed-die forgings this examination may, subject to approval, be confined to the initial production and to subsequent occasional checks. The extent of ultrasonic testing is shown in Fig. 5.4.4.

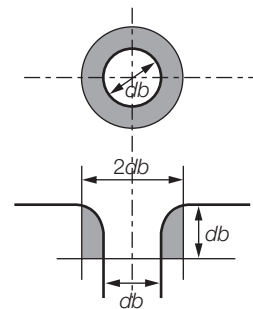
4.6.3 Surface inspection acceptance criteria are to be in accordance with 2.5 and with Table 5.4.4. Other acceptance criteria may be applied, providing they meet these minimum criteria, and is to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

4.6.4 Ultrasonic acceptance criteria are shown in Table 5.4.5. Other acceptance criteria may be applied, providing they meet these minimum criteria, and is to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.



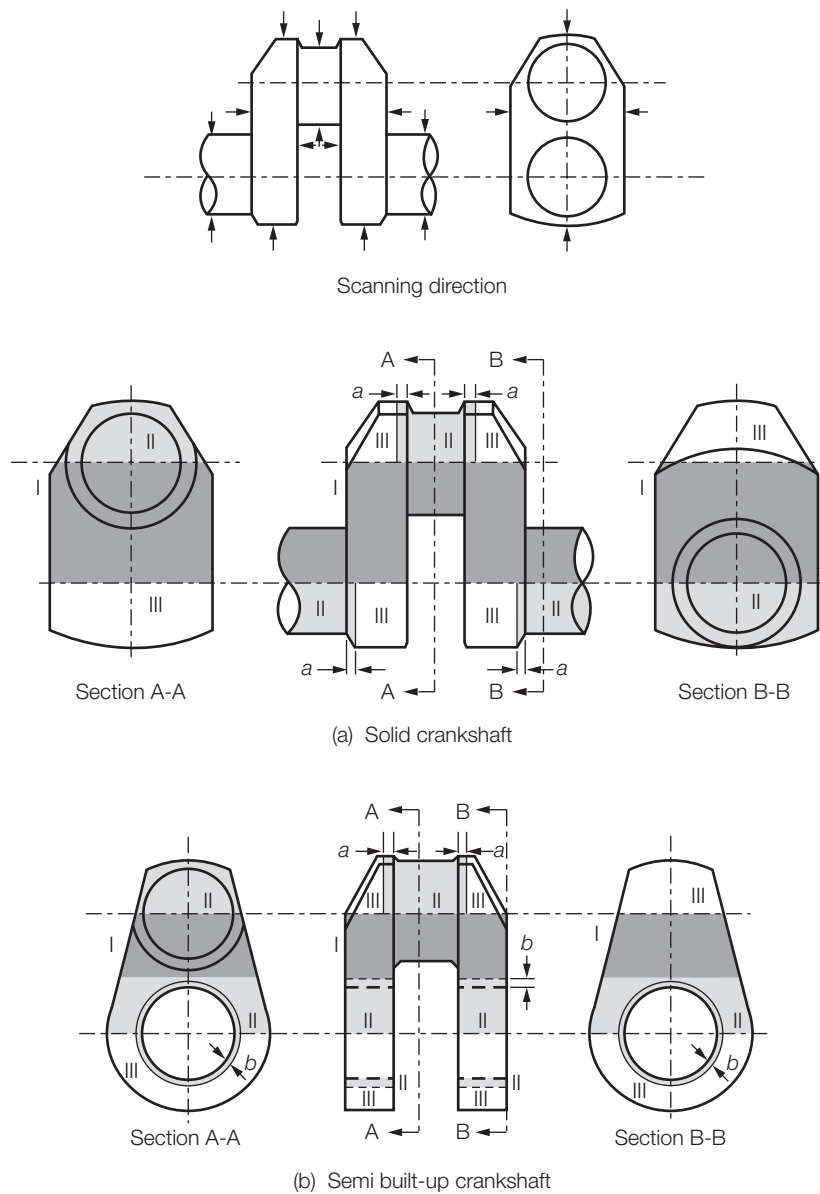
## NOTES

- Where the crankpin or journal has oil holes, the circumferential surfaces of the oil are to be treated as Zone I, (see the figure on the right)
- In the above figures:  
 $\theta = 60^\circ$   
 $a = 1,5r$   
 $b = 0,05d$  (: circumferential surfaces of shrinkage fit)  
 where  
 $r$  : fillet radius  
 $d$  : journal diameter
- Identification of the Zones:  
 Zone I  
 Zone II



$db$ : Oil hole bore diameter

**Fig. 5.4.3 Zones for magnetic particle/dye penetrant testing on crankshafts**



### NOTES

- In the above figures:  
 $a = 0,1d$  or 25 mm, whichever is greater  
 $b = 0,05d$  or 25 mm, whichever is greater (: circumstances of shrinkage fit)  
 where  
 $d$  : pin or journal diameter
- The mid third area of crank pins and/or journals within a radius of  $0,25d$  between the webs may generally be coordinated to Zone II
- Identification of the Zones:  

	: Zone I
	: Zone II
	: Zone III

**Fig. 5.4.4 Zones for ultrasonic testing on crankshafts**

# Steel Forgings

## Chapter 5

Sections 4 &amp; 5

**Table 5.4.4 Surface inspection acceptance for crankshaft forgings – Allowable number and size of indications in a reference area of 225 cm<sup>2</sup>**

Inspection zone	Maximum number of indication	Type of indication	Maximum number each type	Maximum dimension of single indication, mm
I Critical fillet area	0	Linear Non-linear Aligned	0 0 0	— — —
II Important fillet area	3	Linear Non-linear Aligned	0 3 0	— 3,0 —
III Journal surfaces	3	Linear Non-linear Aligned	0 3 0	— 5,0 —

**Table 5.4.5 Ultrasonic acceptance criteria for crankshafts**

Type of forging	Zone	Allowable disc shape according to Distance Gain Size (DGS), mm	Allowable length of indication, mm see Note
Crank shaft	I II III	$d \leq 2,0$ $d \leq 3,0$ $d \leq 4,0$	— $\leq 10$ $\leq 15$
<p>NOTE</p> <p>For accumulations of two or more isolated indications which are subjected to registration, the minimum distance between two neighbouring indications is to be at least the length of the larger indication. This applies to the distance in axial direction as to the distance in depth. Isolated indications with less distance are to be determined as one single indication.</p>			

## Section 5 Forgings for gearing

### 5.1 Scope

5.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for carbon-manganese and alloy steel forgings intended for use in the construction of gearing for main propulsion and for driving electric generators.

5.1.2 Gear wheel and rim forgings with a specified minimum tensile strength not exceeding 760 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (760–910 N/mm<sup>2</sup> acceptance range) may be made in carbon-manganese steel. Gear wheel or rim forgings where the specified minimum tensile strength is in excess of 760 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, and all pinion or pinion sleeve forgings, are to be made in a suitable alloy steel. Specifications for alloy steel components and for quill shafts, giving chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties, are to be submitted for approval.

5.1.3 Forgings for flexible couplings, quill shafts and gear wheel shafts are to comply with the requirements of Section 3.

5.1.4 Manufacturers' test certificates for forgings may be accepted where the transmitted power does not exceed 220 kW (300 shp) for main propulsion and 100 kW (150 shp) for auxiliary drives.

### 5.2 Manufacture

5.2.1 All forgings are to be made with sufficient material to allow an adequate machining allowance on all surfaces for the removal of unsound or decarburised material.

5.2.2 The hardenability of the forged material is to be checked at random intervals using an end quench test complying with a National or International Standard.

5.2.3 The grain size is to be checked on a random basis in accordance with the testing and reporting procedures of ASTM E 112, or an equivalent National Standard, and is to be within the range 5 to 8.

5.2.4 The microstructure of the hardened case is to be mainly martensite, with a maximum content of 15 per cent of retained austenite.

### 5.3 Chemical composition

5.3.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with 3.2.1. for carbon and carbon-manganese steels and 1.4.3 for alloy steels.

## 5.4 Heat treatment

5.4.1 Except as provided in 5.4.4 and 5.4.5, forgings may be either normalised and tempered or quenched and tempered in accordance with the approved specification. The tempering temperature is to be not less than 550°C.

5.4.2 Where forgings are machined prior to heat treatment, the allowance left for final machining is to be sufficient to remove the decarburised surface material, taking into account any bending or distortion which may occur.

5.4.3 When the teeth of a pinion or gear wheel are to be surface hardened, i.e. carburised, nitrided or induction hardened, the proposed specification together with details of the process and practice are to be submitted for approval. For purposes of initial approval, the gear manufacturer is required to demonstrate by test that the surface hardening of the teeth is uniform and of the required depth and that it does not impair the soundness and quality of the steel.

5.4.4 Where induction hardening of nitriding is to be carried out after machining of the gear teeth, the forgings are to be heat treated at an appropriate stage to a condition suitable for this subsequent surface hardening.

5.4.5 Forgings for gears which are to be carburised after final machining are to be supplied in either the fully annealed or the normalised and tempered condition, suitable for subsequent machining and carburising.

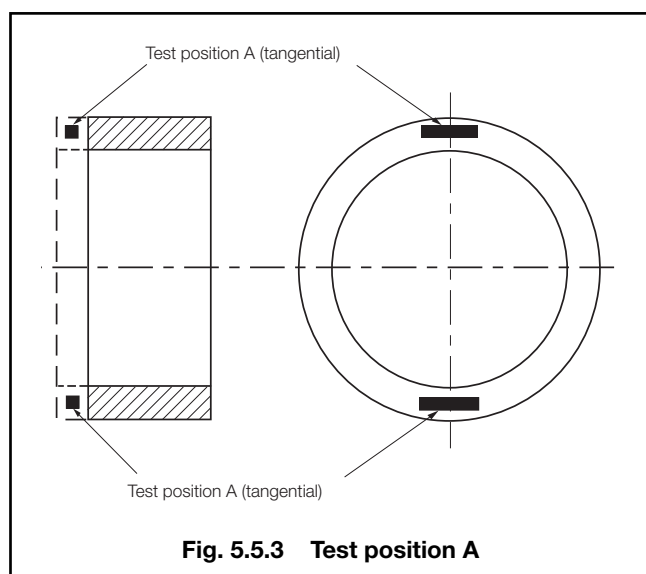
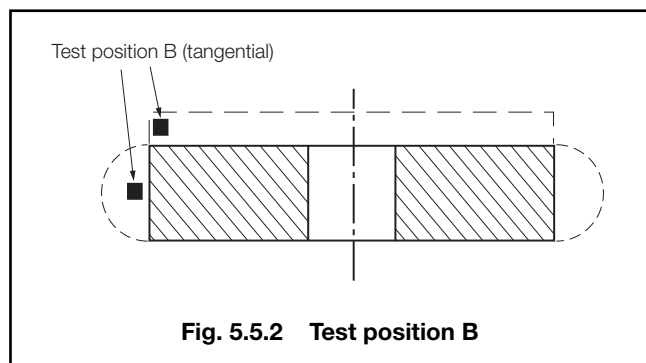
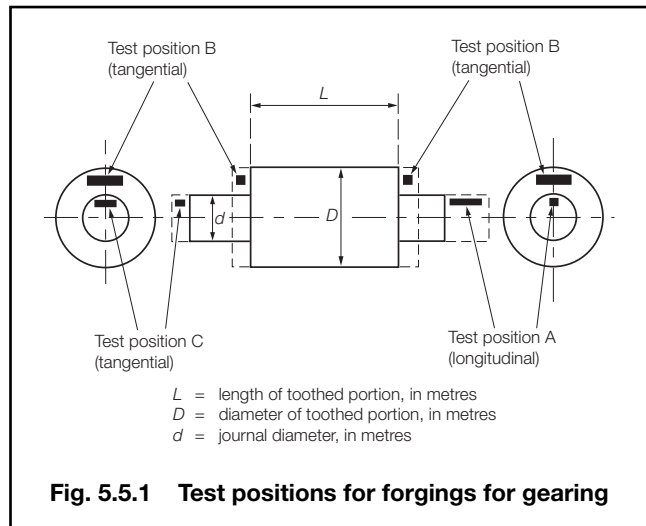
## 5.5 Mechanical tests for through hardened, induction hardened or nitrided forgings

5.5.1 At least one tensile test specimen is to be taken from each forging in carbon or carbon-manganese steel, and at least one tensile test specimen from forgings in alloy steel. Sufficient test material is to be provided for this purpose and the test specimens are to be taken as follows:

- For pinion forgings where the finished diameter of the toothed portion exceeds 200 mm, tests are to be taken in a tangential direction and adjacent to the toothed portion (test position B in Fig. 5.5.1). Where the dimensions preclude the preparation of tests from this position, tests in a tangential direction are to be taken from the end of the journal (test position C in Fig. 5.5.1). If, however, the journal diameter is 200 mm or less, tests are to be taken in a longitudinal direction (test position A in Fig. 5.5.1). Where the finished length of the toothed portion exceeds 1250 mm, tests are to be taken from each end.
- For small pinion forgings where the finished diameter of the toothed portion is 200 mm or less, tests are to be taken in a longitudinal direction (test position A in Fig. 5.5.1).
- For gear wheel forgings, tests are to be taken in a tangential direction (from one of the test positions B in Fig. 5.5.2).
- For gear wheel rim forgings, tests are to be taken in a tangential direction (from one of the test positions A in Fig. 5.5.3). Where the finished diameter exceeds 2500 mm or the mass (as heat treated but excluding test material) exceeds 3 tonnes, tests are to be taken from two

diametrically opposite positions (test positions A in Fig. 5.5.3).

- For pinion sleeve forgings, tests are to be taken in a tangential direction (from one of the test positions C in Fig. 5.5.4). Where the finished length exceeds 1250 mm, tests are to be taken from each end.

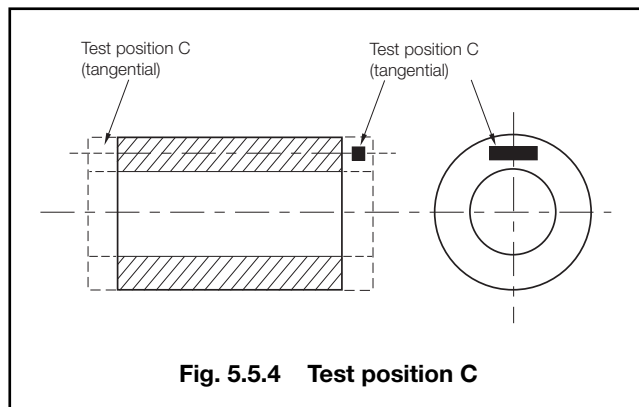




# Steel Forgings

## Chapter 5

### Section 5



**Fig. 5.5.4 Test position C**

5.5.2 As an alternative to 5.5.1, small forgings may be batch tested in accordance with 1.6.4 provided that, in addition, hardness tests are carried out on each forging.

5.5.3 Tables 5.5.1 to 5.5.3 give the minimum requirements for yield stress and elongation corresponding to different strength levels, but it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. The strength levels have been given in multiples of 40 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, or 50 N/mm<sup>2</sup> in the case of alloy steels, to facilitate interpolation for intermediate values of specified minimum tensile strength.

**Table 5.5.1 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steels for gear wheel and rim forgings**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> (see Note)	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum		Hardness Brinell
		Rims	Wheels	
400–520	200	26	22	110–150
440–560	220	24	21	125–160
480–600	240	22	19	135–175
520–640	260	21	18	150–185
560–680	280	20	17	160–200
600–750	300	18	15	175–215
640–790	320	17	14	185–230
680–830	340	16	14	200–240
720–870	360	15	13	210–250
760–910	380	14	12	225–265
Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.				
NOTE When the specified minimum tensile strength exceeds 700 N/mm <sup>2</sup> forgings are to be supplied only in the quenched and tempered condition.				

5.5.4 Forgings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Tables 5.5.1 to 5.5.3.

5.5.5 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 5.5.1, 5.5.2 or 5.5.3, appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength. Unless otherwise agreed, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be not less than 800 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (800–950 N/mm<sup>2</sup> acceptance range) for induction hardened or nitrided gear forgings.

**Table 5.5.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear wheel and rim forgings – Normalised and tempered**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum		Hardness Brinell
		Rims	Wheels	
600–750	330	18	16	175–215
650–800	355	17	15	190–235
700–850	380	16	14	205–245
750–900	405	15	13	215–260
800–950	430	14	12	235–275
850–1000	455	13	11	245–290
Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.				

**Table 5.5.3 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel gear forgings – Quenched and tempered**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> (see Notes 1 and 2)	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum (see Note 2)	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum			Hardness Brinell
		A	B	C	
600–750	420	18	16	14	175–215
650–800	450	17	15	13	190–235
700–850	480	16	14	12	205–245
750–900	530	15	13	11	215–260
800–950	590	14	12	10	235–275
850–1000	640	13	11	9	245–290
900–1050	690	13	11	9	260–310
950–1100	750	12	10	8	275–330
1000–1150	810	12	10	8	290–340
1050–1200	870	11	9	7	310–365
Column A is applicable to tests from gear rims and to longitudinal tests from pinions. Column B is applicable to tests from gear wheels and to tangential tests from pinions. Column C is applicable to tests from pinion sleeves.					
Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.					
NOTES 1. For gear wheel and rim forgings the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 850 N/mm <sup>2</sup> . 2. For carburised gear forgings the requirements for minimum yield stress and maximum tensile strength are not applicable.					

5.5.6 Where more than one tensile test is taken from a forging, the variation in tensile strength is not to exceed the following:

Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Difference in tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>
<600	70
≥600 <900	100
≥900	120

5.5.7 Hardness tests are to be carried out on all forgings after completion of heat treatment and prior to machining the gear teeth. The hardness is to be determined at four positions equally spaced around the circumference of the surface where teeth will subsequently be cut. Where the finished diameter of the toothed portion exceeds 2500 mm, the number of test positions is to be increased to eight. Where the width of a gear wheel rim forging exceeds 1250 mm, the hardness is to be determined at eight positions at each end of the forging.

5.5.8 For small gear forgings which are batch tested, at least one hardness test is to be carried out on each forging.

5.5.9 The results of all hardness tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Tables 5.5.1 to 5.5.3. The difference between the highest and lowest values on any one forging is not to exceed the following:

Specified minimum tensile strength (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )	Difference in hardness (Brinell number)
<600	25
≥600 <900	35
≥900	42

5.5.10 On nitrided or induction hardened components, hardness tests are also to be made on the teeth when surface hardening and grinding have been completed. The results are to comply with the approved specification.

5.6 Mechanical tests for carburised forgings

5.6.1 Sufficient test material is to be provided for preliminary tests at the forge and for final tests after completion of carburising. For this purpose, duplicate sets of test material are to be taken from positions as detailed in 5.5.1, except that, irrespective of the dimensions or mass of the forging, tests are required from one position only, and in the case of forgings with integral journals are to be cut in a longitudinal direction. The test material which is to be used for measurements of case depth, hardness, grain size and residual austenite as well as mechanical properties is to be machined to a coupon of diameter of  $\frac{D}{4}$  or 30 mm, whichever is less, where  $D$  is the finished diameter of the toothed portion.

5.6.2 For small forgings, where a system of batch testing is adopted, the test material may be prepared from surplus steel from the same cast provided that the forging reduction approximates to that of the actual gear forgings. The test samples are to be correctly identified and heat treated with the forgings they represent.

5.6.3 For preliminary tests at the forge, one set of test material is to be given a blank carburising and heat treatment cycle simulating that which will be subsequently applied to the forgings.

5.6.4 For final acceptance tests, the second set of test material is to be blank carburised and heat treated together with the forgings which it represents.

5.6.5 At the discretion of the forgemaster or gear manufacturer, test samples of larger cross-section than in 5.6.1 may be either carburised or blank carburised, but these are to be machined to the required diameter prior to the final quenching and stress relieving heat treatment.

5.6.6 At least one tensile specimen is to be prepared from each sample of test material.

5.6.7 Unless otherwise agreed, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be not less than 750 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, and the results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 5.5.3.

5.6.8 Where it is proposed to adopt alternatives to the requirements of 5.6.1 to 5.6.7, full details are to be submitted to the Surveyor for consideration.

5.7 Non-destructive examination

5.7.1 Magnetic particle or liquid penetrant testing is to be carried out on the teeth of all surface hardened forgings. This examination may also be requested on the finished machined teeth of through hardened gear forgings.

5.7.2 The manufacturer is to carry out an ultrasonic examination of all forgings where the finished diameter of the surfaces, where teeth will be cut, is in excess of 200 mm, and is to provide the Surveyor with a signed statement that such inspection has not revealed any significant internal defects.

5.7.3 On gear forgings where the teeth have been surface hardened, additional test pieces may be required to be processed with the forgings and subsequently sectioned to determine the depth of the hardened zone. These tests are to be carried out at the discretion of the Surveyor, and for induction or carburised gearing the depth of the hardened zone is to be in accordance with the approved specification. For nitrided gearing, the full depth of the hardened zone, (i.e., depth to core hardness), is to be not less than 0,5 mm and the hardness at a depth of 0,25 mm is to be not less than 500 HV.

Section 6  
Forgings for turbines

6.1 Scope

6.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for ferritic steel forgings for turbine rotors, discs and spindles, turbine-driven generator rotors and compressor rotors.

6.1.2 Plans for rotor forgings are to state whether the rotor is intended for propulsion or auxiliary machinery and the shaft power of auxiliary turbines. In the case of a rotor which is to be tested for thermal stability, the maximum operating temperature and the proposed test temperature are also to be stated.

# Steel Forgings

# Chapter 5

Section 6

6.1.3 Specifications of alloy steel forgings giving the proposed chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval with the plans of the components.

6.1.4 Where it is proposed to use rotors of welded construction, the compositions of the steels for the forgings are to be submitted for special consideration, together with details of the proposed welding procedure. Welding procedure tests may be required.

## 6.2 Manufacture

6.2.1 Forgings are to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of Section 1, except that for rotors the forging reduction is to be not less than 2,5 to 1. Where an upsetting operation is included in the manufacturing procedure, the above requirement applies to the cross-sectional area of the upset bloom and not to that of the ingot.

## 6.3 Chemical composition

6.3.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with 3.2.1 for carbon and carbon-manganese steels and 1.4.3 for alloy steels.

## 6.4 Heat treatment

6.4.1 Forgings are to be supplied in the heat treated condition, and the thermal treatment at all stages is to be such as to avoid the formation of hair-line cracks. At a suitable stage of manufacture, the forgings are to be reheated above the upper critical point to refine the grain, cooled in an approved manner and then tempered to produce the desired mechanical properties.

6.4.2 Where forgings receive their main heat treatment before machining, they are to be stress relieved after rough machining. Forgings which are heat treated in the rough machined condition need not be stress relieved provided that they have been slowly cooled from the tempering temperature.

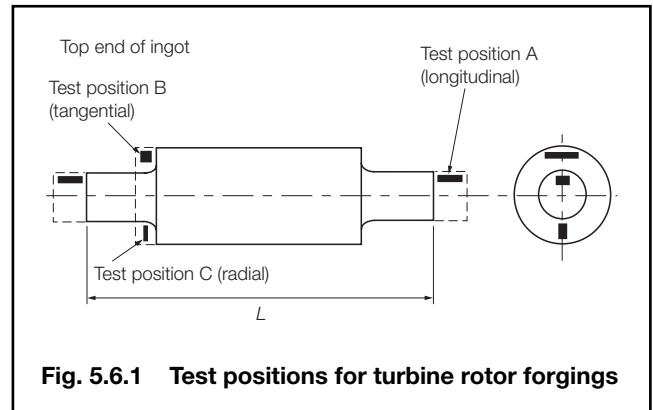
6.4.3 The tempering and stress relieving temperatures are to be not less than 550°C for carbon and carbon-manganese steels, and not less than 600°C for alloy steels. The holding times and subsequent cooling rates are to be such that the forging in its final condition is free from harmful residual stresses.

6.4.4 Details of the proposed heat treatment for rotors of welded construction are to be submitted for approval.

## 6.5 Mechanical tests

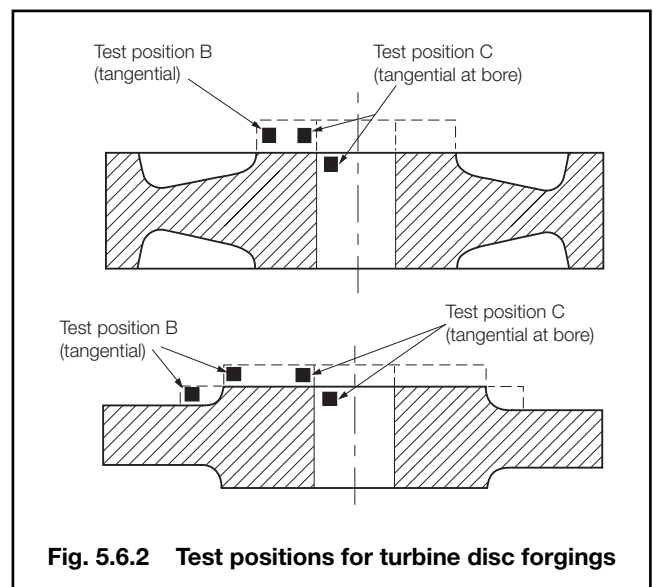
6.5.1 At least one tensile test specimen, cut in a longitudinal direction, is to be taken from each rotor forging. For forgings exceeding both 3 tonnes in mass and 2000 mm in length, tests are to be taken from each end.

6.5.2 For rotor forgings of all main propulsion machinery and of auxiliary turbines exceeding 1100 kW, tangential and, where the dimensions permit, radial tensile tests are to be taken from the end of the body corresponding to the top end of the ingot, see Fig. 5.6.1.



**Fig. 5.6.1 Test positions for turbine rotor forgings**

6.5.3 For each turbine disc, at least one tensile test specimen is to be cut in a tangential direction from material at the hub, see Fig. 5.6.2.



**Fig. 5.6.2 Test positions for turbine disc forgings**

6.5.4 For the tests required by 6.5.1 to 6.5.3, sufficient test material is to be left on each forging and is not to be removed until all heat treatment, including stress relieving, has been completed. In this connection, a thermal stability test does not form part of the heat treatment of a turbine forging. Any excess test material is not to be completely severed from a forging until all the mechanical tests have been completed with satisfactory results.

# Steel Forgings

# Chapter 5

Sections 6

6.5.5 Tables 5.6.1 and 5.6.2 give the minimum requirements for yield stress, elongation and reduction of area corresponding to different strength levels, but it is not intended that these should necessarily be regarded as specific grades. The strength levels have been given in multiples of 40 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, or 50 N/mm<sup>2</sup> for alloy steels, to facilitate interpolation for intermediate values of specified minimum tensile strength.

**Table 5.6.1 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: carbon-manganese steel forgings for turbines – Normalised and tempered**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum			Reduction of area % minimum		
		A	B	C	A	B	C
400–520	200	26	22	18	50	40	35
440–560	220	24	21	17	50	40	35
480–600	240	22	19	15	45	35	30
520–640	260	21	18	14	45	35	30
560–680	280	20	17	13	40	30	25
600–720	300	18	15	12	40	30	25
<b>NOTES</b> Columns A are applicable to longitudinal tests from rotor and spindle forgings. Columns B are applicable to tangential tests from rotor forgings. Columns C are applicable to radial tests from rotor forgings. Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.							

6.5.6 Forgings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Table 5.6.1 or Table 5.6.2.

6.5.7 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 5.6.1 or Table 5.6.2 appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength. For monobloc rotor forgings, the specified minimum tensile strength is not to exceed 800 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

## 6.6 Non-destructive examination

6.6.1 The end faces of the body of rotor forgings and the end faces of the boss and the bore surface of each turbine disc are to be machined to a fine smooth finish for visual and magnetic particle examination.

6.6.2 The manufacturer is to carry out an ultrasonic examination of each forging and is to provide the Surveyor with a signed statement that such inspection has not revealed any significant internal defects.

6.6.3 Rotor forgings for propulsion machinery and for auxiliary turbines exceeding 1100 kW are to be hollow bored for internal examination. The surface of the bore is to have a fine smooth finish and is to be examined by means of an optical instrument of suitable magnification. Where the bore size permits, magnetic particle examination is also to be carried out. These examinations are to be confirmed by the Surveyor. Alternatively, an approved method of ultrasonic examination may be accepted instead of hollow boring. Details of the proposed method of ultrasonic examination are to be submitted for special consideration.

**Table 5.6.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: alloy steel forgings for turbines – Quenched and tempered or normalised and tempered**

Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> (see Note)	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum Normalised and tempered	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum Quenched and tempered	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum			Reduction of area %minimum		
			A	B	C	A	B	C
500 – 650	275	—	22	20	18	50	40	35
550 – 700	300	—	20	18	16	50	40	35
600 – 750	330	410	18	16	14	50	40	35
650 – 800	355	450	17	15	13	50	40	35
700 – 850	385	490	16	14	12	45	35	30
750 – 900	—	530	15	13	11	45	35	30
800 – 950	—	590	14	12	10	45	35	30
850 – 1000	—	640	13	11	9	40	30	25
900 – 1050	—	690	13	11	9	40	30	25
950 – 1100	—	750	12	10	8	40	30	25
1000 – 1150	—	810	12	10	8	40	30	25
<b>NOTES</b> Columns A are applicable to longitudinal tests from rotor and spindle forgings. Columns B are applicable to tangential tests from rotor and spindle forgings, and to tangential tests from discs – test position B in Fig. 5.6.2. Columns C are applicable to radial test from rotor forgings and to tangential tests from discs – test position C in Fig. 5.6.2. Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation.								

## 6.7 Thermal stability tests

6.7.1 Thermal stability tests after heat treatment and rough machining of the turbine rotors, referred to in the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction, are to be undertaken in properly constructed furnaces, using accurate and reliable measuring equipment. Each test is to be carried out in accordance with the following recommended procedure:

- (a) Five bands are to be machined concentric with the axis of rotation. Two of these are to be reference bands and are to be positioned at or near the locations of the bearings. The remaining three bands are to be test bands located one as near as possible to the mid-length, and the other two near each end of the body. Where the length of a rotor is such that five bands cannot be provided, alternative proposals are to be submitted to the Surveyor for his approval.
- (b) Four positions, 90° apart, are to be stamped A, B, C and D on the coupling end of the rotor.
- (c) The whole of the body, and as much of the shaft at either end as will include the positions of the glands, is to be enclosed in the furnace. In the case of a rotor having an overhung astern wheel, the astern wheel is also to be enclosed in the furnace during the first test.
- (d) The rotor is to be rotated at a uniform and very low speed.
- (e) The deflections at all bands are to be recorded at the A, B, C and D positions. Initial cold readings are to be taken prior to heating.
- (f) The rotor is to be heated uniformly and slowly. Temperatures are to be recorded continuously at the surface of the rotor and, if practicable, in the bore at the mid-length of the body. In no circumstances is the surface temperature to exceed the temperature at which the rotor was tempered. During heating, the rate of rise of temperature is to be such as to avoid excessive temperature gradients in the rotor.
- (g) The maximum or holding temperature is to be not less than 28°C above the maximum operating temperature of the rotor. For the purposes of the test, the holding period is to start when the rotor has attained a uniform and specified temperature. The rotor is to be held under the specified temperature conditions until not less than three consecutive hourly readings of deflections show the radial eccentricity to be constant within 0,006 mm on all test bands.
- (h) The turbine rotor is to be rotated during cooling until the temperature is not more than 100°C. The rate of cooling is to be such as to avoid excessive temperature gradients in the rotor.
- (j) Final cold readings are to be taken.

6.7.2 The movements of the axis of the rotor in relation to the reference bands are to be determined from polar plots of the deflection readings. The radial movement of the shaft axis, as determined by the difference between the final hot and the final cold movements, is not to exceed 0,025 mm on any one band. As verification that test equipment and conditions are satisfactory, it is required that similar determinations of differences between initial cold and final cold movements do not exceed 0,025 mm on any one band.

6.7.3 If the results of the test on a rotor fail to meet either or both of the requirements in 6.7.2, the test may be repeated if requested by the maker and agreed by the Surveyor. In the case of a rotor failing to meet the requirements of a thermal stability test, the rotor is deemed unacceptable. Proposals for the rectification of thermal instability of a rough machined rotor are to be submitted for special consideration.

## Section 7 Forgings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems

### 7.1 Scope

7.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for carbon-manganese and low alloy steel forgings intended for use in the construction of boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems where the design temperature is not lower than 0°C.

7.1.2 In addition to specifying mechanical properties at ambient temperature for the purposes of acceptance testing, these requirements give details of appropriate mechanical properties at elevated temperatures to be used for design purposes.

7.1.3 Forgings used in the construction of equipment for the containment of liquefied gases are to comply with the requirements of Section 8, except for those used in piping systems, where the design temperature is not lower than 0°C. Forgings for other pressure vessels and piping systems, where the use of steels with guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures is required, are also to comply with Section 8.

### 7.2 Chemical composition

7.2.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 5.7.1.

### 7.3 Heat treatment

7.3.1 Carbon-manganese steel forgings are to be normalised, normalised and tempered or quenched and tempered.

7.3.2 Alloy steel forgings are to be normalised and tempered or quenched and tempered.

7.3.3 No forging is to be fully heat treated more than twice.

### 7.4 Mechanical tests

7.4.1 Except as provided in 7.4.2 and 7.4.4, at least one tensile test is to be taken from each forging and, where the dimensions and shape allow, the test specimen is to be cut in the longitudinal direction.

# Steel Forgings

# Chapter 5

## Section 7

**Table 5.7.1 Chemical composition**

Type of steel	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Chemical composition of ladle samples %						
		C max.	Si	Mn	P max.	S max.	Al	Residual elements
Carbon-manganese	410–530	0,20		0,50–1,20				Ni 0,40 max.
	460–580	0,23	0,10–0,40	0,80–1,40	0,030	0,025	(See Notes 1 and 3)	Cr 0,25 max.
	490–610	0,25		0,90–1,70				Mo 0,10 max. Cu 0,30 max. Total 0,80 max.
Alloy steel								Cr
								Mo
1Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo	440–590	0,18	0,15–0,40	0,40–0,70	0,030	0,025	0,020 max.	0,85–1,15
2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> Cr1Mo	490–640	0,15					(See Note 2)	2,0–2,5

NOTES

1. Fine grained steels are to contain:  
aluminium (acid soluble) 0,015% min. or  
aluminium (total) 0,018% min.
2. For alloy steels, aluminium (acid soluble) 0,020% max.  
The determination of the aluminium (total) content is acceptable provided the above value is not exceeded.
3. Niobium may be used as a grain refiner in place of aluminium, in which case the content is to be in the range 0,01% to 0,06%.

7.4.2 On seamless drums and headers which are initially forged with open ends, test material is to be provided at each end of each forging. Where forged with one solid end, test material is to be provided at the open end only. Except where the ends are to be subsequently closed by forging, the test material is not to be removed until heat treatment has been completed. Where the ends are to be closed, rings of test material are to be cut off prior to the closing operation and are to be heat treated with the finished forging. In all cases, the test specimens are to be cut in the circumferential direction.

7.4.3 Unless otherwise agreed, tensile test specimens are to be taken with their axis at approximately 12,5 mm below the surface of the forging.

7.4.4 Small forgings may be batch tested in accordance with 1.6.4 provided that hardness tests are carried out on each forging. In such cases, the mass of each forging is not to exceed 1 tonne and that of the batch is not to exceed 10 tonnes and the hardness values are to accord with Table 5.7.2.

**Table 5.7.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes**

Type of steel	Diameter or equivalent thickness mm	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum	Hardness Brinell
Carbon-manganese not specifically fine grained	≤100	215	410–530	20	110–155
	>100 ≤500	205			
	≤100	245	460–580	18	130–170
	>100	235			
	≤100	265	490–610	16	140–180
	>100	255			
Carbon-manganese, fine grained	≤100	235	410–530	20	110–155
	>100 ≤250	220			
	≤100	275	460–580	18	130–170
	>100 ≤250	255			
	≤100	305	490–610	16	140–180
	>100 ≤250	280			
Alloy steel 1Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo	–	275	440–590	19	110–160
2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> Cr1Mo	–	275	490–640	18	140–185

# Steel Forgings

## Chapter 5

Section 7

7.4.5 If required by the Surveyors or by the Fabricators, test material may be given a simulated stress relieving heat treatment prior to the preparation of the test specimens. This has to be stated on the order, together with agreed details of the simulated heat treatment and the mechanical properties which can be expected.

7.4.6 Except as provided in 7.4.7, the results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 5.7.2 appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength.

7.4.7 Where tests are taken at a depth greater than 12,5 mm from the surface or where they are taken in a transverse direction, the mechanical properties which can be expected are to be agreed.

7.4.8 On seamless drums and headers where tests are taken from each end, the variation in tensile strength is not to exceed 70 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

7.4.9 For small batch-tested forgings, the hardness values are to comply with the requirements of Table 5.7.2 appropriate to the specified minimum tensile strength. If forgings of more than one thickness are to be supplied from one cast, then the test is to be made on the thickest forging.

### 7.5 Non-destructive examination

7.5.1 Non-destructive testing is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the approved forging drawing and specification, or as otherwise agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

### 7.6 Pressure tests

7.6.1 Where applicable, pressure tests are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the relevant Rules.

### 7.7 Mechanical properties for design purposes

7.7.1 Nominal values for the minimum lower yield or 0,2 per cent proof stress at temperatures of 50°C and higher are given in Table 5.7.3. These values are intended for design purposes only, and verification is not required except for materials complying with National or proprietary specifications where the elevated temperature properties used for design purposes are higher than those given in Table 5.7.3.

**Table 5.7.3 Mechanical properties for design purposes**

Type of steel	Diameter or equivalent thickness mm	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Nominal minimum lower yield or 0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>												
			Temperature °C												
			50	100	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500	550	600	
Carbon-manganese not specifically fine grained	≤100	410–530	196	192	188	181	168	150	142	138	136	—	—	—	
	>100		183	178	175	170	162	150	142	138	136	—	—	—	
	≤100	460–580	227	222	218	210	194	176	168	162	158	—	—	—	
	>100		212	206	203	197	188	176	168	162	158	—	—	—	
	≤100	490–610	245	240	236	227	210	192	183	177	172	—	—	—	
	>100		229	222	219	212	203	192	183	177	172	—	—	—	
Carbon-manganese fine grained	≤100	410–530	222	215	204	188	171	152	141	134	130	—	—	—	
	>100		207	200	190	175	164	152	141	134	130	—	—	—	
	≤100	460–580	262	251	236	217	198	177	167	158	153	—	—	—	
	>100		244	233	220	202	190	177	167	158	153	—	—	—	
	≤100	490–610	286	272	256	234	213	192	182	173	168	—	—	—	
	>100		266	253	238	218	205	192	182	173	168	—	—	—	
Alloy steel 1Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo	—	410–560	254	241	224	213	197	184	170	162	157	151	146	145	
2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> Cr1Mo	—	490–640	268	261	253	245	236	230	224	218	205	189	167	145	

7.7.2 Where verification is required, at least one tensile test at the proposed design or other agreed temperature is to be made on each forging or each batch of forgings. The test specimen is to be taken from material adjacent to that used for tests at ambient temperature, and the test procedure is to be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 2. The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements of the National or proprietary specification.

7.7.3 Values for the estimated average stress to rupture in 100 000 hours are given in Table 5.7.4 and may be used for design purposes.

**Table 5.7.4 Mechanical properties for design purposes: estimated average values for stress to rupture in 100 000 hours (units N/mm<sup>2</sup>)**

Temperature °C	Grades of steel		
	Carbon- manganese	1 Cr 1/2 Mo	2 1/4 Cr 1Mo
380	227	—	—
390	203	—	—
400	179	—	—
410	157	—	—
420	136	—	—
430	117	—	—
440	100	—	—
450	85	290	—
460	73	262	—
470	63	235	210
480	55	208	186
490	—	181	165
500	—	155	145
510	—	129	128
520	—	103	112
530	—	80	98
540	—	62	84
550	—	49	72
560	—	42	61
570	—	36	49
580	—	32	—
590	—	29	—

## Section 8 Ferritic steel forgings for low temperature service

### 8.1 Scope

8.1.1 The requirements for carbon-manganese and nickel steels suitable for low temperature service are detailed in this Section. They are applicable to all forgings used for the construction of cargo tanks, storage tanks and process pressure vessels for liquefied gases and, where the design temperature is less than 0°C, to forgings for the piping systems.

8.1.2 The requirements are also applicable to forgings for other pressure vessels and pressure piping systems where the use of steels with guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures is required.

8.1.3 In all cases, details of the proposed chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

8.1.4 In addition to the steels in this Section, the austenitic stainless steels detailed in Section 9 may also be used for low temperature applications.

### 8.2 Chemical composition

8.2.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is, in general, to comply with the requirements given in Table 5.8.1.

### 8.3 Heat treatment

8.3.1 Forgings are to be normalised, normalised and tempered or quenched and tempered in accordance with the approved specification.

### 8.4 Mechanical tests

8.4.1 At least one tensile and three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens are to be taken from each forging or each batch of forgings. Where the dimensions and shape allow, the test specimens are to be cut in a longitudinal direction.

8.4.2 The impact tests are to be carried out at a temperature appropriate to the type of steel and for the proposed application. Where forgings are intended for ships for liquefied gases, the test temperature is to be in accordance with the requirements given in Table 3.6.3 in Chapter 3.

8.4.3 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the approved specification.

8.4.4 The average energy values for impact tests are also to comply with the approved specification and generally with the requirements of Ch 3.6. One individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this value. See Ch 2, 1.4 for re-test procedures.



# Steel Forgings

## Chapter 5

Sections 8 &amp; 9

**Table 5.8.1 Chemical composition of ferritic steel forgings**

Grade of steel	C %	Si %	Mn %	Ni %	P %	S %	Residual elements %	Grain refiners % Al	Other	
LT-AH (AH40) LT-DH (DH40) LT-EH (EH40)	0,18 max.	0,50 max.	0,90–1,60	0,40 max.	0,035 max.	0,030 max.	Cu 0,35 max. Cr 0,20 max. Mo 0,08 max. Total 0,60 max.		(See Note)	
LT-FH (FH40)	0,16 max.			0,80 max.		0,025 max.				Nb 0,02 – 0,05 V 0,03 – 0,10 Ti 0,02 max.
1 1/2Ni	0,18 max.	0,10 – 0,35	0,30–1,50	1,30–1,70	0,025 max.	0,020 max.	Cu 0,35 max. Cr 0,25 max. Mo 0,08 max. Total 0,60 max.	Total 0,020 min.  Acid soluble 0,015 min.		
3 1/2Ni	0,15 max.		0,30–0,90	3,20–3,80						
5Ni	0,12 max.			4,70–5,30						
9 Ni	0,10 max.			8,50–10,0						
NOTE The steel is to contain aluminium, niobium, vanadium or other suitable grain refining elements, either singly or in any combination. When used singly, the steel is to contain the specified minimum content of the grain refining element. When used in combination, the specified minimum content of each element is not applicable.										

### 8.5 Non-destructive examination

8.5.1 Non-destructive testing is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the approved forging drawing and specification, or as otherwise agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

### 8.6 Pressure tests

8.6.1 When applicable, pressure tests are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the relevant Rules.

## Section 9 Austenitic stainless steel forgings

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 Forgings in austenitic stainless steels are acceptable for use in the construction of cargo tanks, storage tanks and piping systems for chemicals and liquefied gases. They may also be accepted for elevated temperature service in boilers.

9.1.2 Where it is proposed to use forgings in these types of steels, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval. These are to comply, in general, with the requirements of Ch 3,7 for austenitic steel plates.

9.1.3 Unless otherwise agreed, impact tests are not required for acceptance purposes. Where they are required, tests are to be made on longitudinal specimens at minus 196°C and the minimum average energy requirement is to be 41J.

### 9.2 Mechanical properties for design purposes

9.2.1 Where austenitic stainless steel forgings are intended for service at elevated temperatures, the nominal values for the minimum one per cent proof stress at temperatures of 100°C and higher given in Table 5.9.1 may be used for design purposes. Verification of these values is not required except for material complying with a National or proprietary specification in which the elevated temperature properties proposed for design purposes are higher than those given in Table 5.9.1.

### 9.3 Non-destructive examination

9.3.1 Non-destructive examination is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of the approved forging drawing and specification or as otherwise agreed between the manufacturer, purchaser and Surveyor.

### 9.4 Intergranular corrosion tests

9.4.1 Where corrosive conditions are anticipated in service, intergranular corrosion tests are required on forgings in Grades 304, 316 and 317. Such tests may not be required for Grades 304L, 316L, 321 and 347.

**Table 5.9.1 Mechanical properties for design purposes: austenitic stainless steels**

Grade	Nominal 1% proof stress (N/mm <sup>2</sup> ) at a temperature of												
	100°C	150°C	200°C	250°C	300°C	350°C	400°C	450°C	500°C	550°C	600°C	650°C	700°C
304L	168	150	137	128	122	116	110	108	106	102	100	96	93
316L	177	161	149	139	133	127	123	119	115	112	110	107	105
316LN	238	208	192	180	172	166	161	157	152	149	144	142	138
321	192	180	172	164	158	152	148	144	140	138	135	130	124
347	204	192	182	172	166	162	159	157	155	153	151	—	—

9.4.2 When an intergranular corrosion test is specified, it is to be carried out in accordance with the procedure given in Ch 2,8.1.

# Steel Pipes and Tubes

# Chapter 6

## Section 1

### Section

1	<b>General requirements</b>
2	<b>Seamless pressure pipes</b>
3	<b>Welded pressure pipes</b>
4	<b>Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service</b>
5	<b>Austenitic stainless steel pressure pipes</b>
6	<b>Boiler and superheater tubes</b>

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section gives the general requirements for boiler tubes, superheater tubes and pipes intended for use in the construction of boilers, pressure vessels and pressure piping systems.

1.1.2 In addition to specifying mechanical properties for the purpose of acceptance testing, these requirements give details of appropriate mechanical properties at elevated temperatures to be used for design purposes.

1.1.3 Except for pipes for Class III pressure systems (as defined in the relevant Rules), all pipes and tubes are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapters 1 and 2, the general requirements of this Section and the appropriate specific requirements given in Sections 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6.

1.1.4 Steels intended for the piping systems for liquefied gases where the design temperature is less than 0°C are to comply with the specific requirements of Section 4 or 5.

1.1.5 As an alternative to 1.1.3 and 1.1.4, pipes or tubes which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1.

1.1.6 At the discretion of the Surveyor, a modified testing procedure may be adopted for small quantities of materials. In such cases, these may be accepted on the manufacturer's declared chemical composition and hardness tests or other evidence of satisfactory properties.

1.1.7 Pipes for Class III pressure systems are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of an acceptable National specification. The manufacturer's test certificate will be acceptable and is to be provided for each consignment of material. Forge butt welded pipes are not acceptable for oil fuel systems, heating coils in oil tanks, primary refrigerant systems and other applications where the pressure exceeds 4,0 bar (4,1 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>).

### 1.2 Manufacture

1.2.1 Pipes for Class I and II pressure systems, boiler and superheater tubes are to be manufactured at works approved by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR'). The steel used is to be manufactured and cast in ingot moulds or by an approved continuous casting process as detailed in Ch 3, 1.3.

1.2.2 Unless a particular method is requested by the purchaser, pipes and tubes may be manufactured by any of the following methods:

- Hot finished seamless.
- Cold finished seamless.
- Electric resistance or induction welded.
- Cold finished electric resistance or induction welded.
- Electric fusion welded.

1.2.3 Care is to be taken during manufacture that the pipe or tube surfaces coming in contact with any non-ferrous metals or their compounds are not contaminated to such an extent as could prove harmful during subsequent fabrication and operation.

### 1.3 Quality

1.3.1 All pipes and tubes are to have a workmanlike finish and are to be clean and free from such surface and internal defects as can be established by the specified tests.

1.3.2 All pipes and tubes are to be reasonably straight. The ends are to be cut nominally square with the axis of the pipe or tube, and are to be free from excessive burrs.

### 1.4 Dimensional tolerances

1.4.1 The tolerances on the wall thickness and diameter of pipes and tubes are to be in accordance with an acceptable National specification.

### 1.5 Chemical composition

1.5.1 The requirements for the chemical composition of ladle samples and acceptable methods of deoxidation are detailed in subsequent Sections in this Chapter.

### 1.6 Heat treatment

1.6.1 All pipes and tubes are to be supplied in the condition detailed in the relevant specific requirements.

# Steel Pipes and Tubes

# Chapter 6

Section 1

## 1.7 Test material

1.7.1 Pipes and tubes are to be presented for test in batches. The size of a batch and the number of tests to be performed are dependent on the application.

1.7.2 Where heat treatment has been carried out, a batch is to consist of pipes or tubes of the same size, manufactured from the same types of steel and subjected to the same finishing treatment in a continuous furnace, or heat treated in the same furnace charge in a batch type furnace.

1.7.3 Where no heat treatment has been carried out, a batch is to consist of pipes or tubes of the same size manufactured by the same method from material of the same type of steel.

1.7.4 For pipes for Class I pressure systems and boiler and superheater tubes, at least two per cent of the number of lengths in each batch is to be selected at random for the preparation of tests at ambient temperature.

1.7.5 For pipes for Class II pressure systems, each batch is to contain not more than the number of lengths given in Table 6.1.1. Tests are to be carried out on at least one pipe selected at random from each batch or part thereof.

**Table 6.1.1 Batch sizes for pipes for Class II pressure systems**

Outside diameter mm	Number in batch
≤323,9	200 pipes as made
>323,9	100 pipes as made

## 1.8 Dimensions of test specimens and test procedures

1.8.1 The procedures for mechanical tests and the dimensions of the test specimens are to be in accordance with Chapter 2.

## 1.9 Visual and non-destructive testing

1.9.1 All pipes for Class I and II pressure systems, boiler and superheater tubes, are to be presented for visual examination and verification of dimensions. The manufacturer is to provide adequate lighting conditions to enable an internal and external examination of the pipes and tubes to be carried out.

1.9.2 For welded pipes and tubes, the manufacturer is to employ suitable non-destructive methods for the quality control of the welds. It is preferred that this examination is carried out on a continuous basis.

## 1.10 Hydraulic test

1.10.1 Each pipe and tube is to be subjected to a hydraulic test at the manufacturer's works.

1.10.2 The hydraulic test pressure is to be determined from the following formula, except that the maximum test pressure need not exceed 140 bar (143 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>):

$$P = \frac{20st}{D} \left( P = \frac{200st}{D} \right)$$

where

$P$  = test pressure, in bar (kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>)

$D$  = nominal outside diameter, in mm

$t$  = nominal wall thickness, in mm

$s$  = 80 per cent of the specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup> (kgf/mm<sup>2</sup>), for ferritic steels and 70 per cent of the specified minimum, 1,0 per cent proof stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup> (kgf/mm<sup>2</sup>), for austenitic steels. These relate to the values specified for acceptance testing at ambient temperature.

1.10.3 The test pressure is to be maintained for sufficient time to permit proof and inspection. Unless otherwise agreed, the manufacturer's certificate of satisfactory hydraulic test will be accepted. Where it is proposed to adopt a test pressure other than that determined as in 1.10.2, the proposal will be subject to special consideration.

1.10.4 Subject to special approval, either an ultrasonic or eddy current test can be accepted in lieu of the hydraulic test.

## 1.11 Rectification of defects

1.11.1 Surface imperfections may be removed by grinding provided that the thickness of the pipe or tube after dressing is not less than the required minimum thickness. The dressed area is to be blended into the contour of the tube.

1.11.2 By agreement with the Surveyor, the repair of minor defects by welding can be accepted, subject to welding procedure tests which demonstrate acceptable properties appropriate for the grade of pipe to be repaired. Weld procedure tests are to be subjected to the same heat treatment as will be applied to the actual pipes after weld repair.

1.11.3 The repaired area is to be tested by magnetic particle examination, or, for austenitic steels, by liquid penetrant examination on completion of welding, heat treatment and surface grinding.

## 1.12 Identification

1.12.1 Pipes and tubes are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1. The following details are to be shown on all materials which have been accepted:

- LR or Lloyd's Register.
- Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
- Identification mark for the specification or grade of steel.
- Identification number and/or initials which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
- The personal stamp of the Surveyor responsible for the final inspection.

# Steel Pipes and Tubes

## Chapter 6

Sections 1 &amp; 2

1.12.2 It is recommended that hard stamping be restricted to the end face, but it may be accepted in other positions in accordance with National Standards and practices.

### 1.13 Certification of materials

1.13.1 Unless a LR certificate is specified in other parts of the Rules, a manufacturer's certificate validated by LR is to be issued, see Ch 1,3.1.

1.13.2 The manufacturer is to provide LR with the following information:

- Purchaser's name and order number.
- If known, the contract number for which the material is intended.
- Address to which material is despatched.
- Specification or the grade of material.
- Description and dimensions.
- Identification number and/or initials.
- Cast number and chemical composition of ladle samples.
- Mechanical test results, and results of the intercrystalline corrosion tests where applicable.
- Condition of supply.

1.13.3 As a minimum, the chemical composition stated on the certificate is to include the content of all the elements detailed in the specific requirements. Where rimming steel is supplied, this is to be stated on the certificate.

1.13.4 When steel is not produced at the pipe or tube mill, a certificate is to be supplied by the steelmaker stating the process of manufacture, the cast number and the ladle analysis.

1.13.5 The steel manufacturer's works is to be approved by LR.

## Section 2 Seamless pressure pipes

### 2.1 Scope

2.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for seamless pressure pipes in carbon, carbon-manganese and low alloy steels.

2.1.2 Where pipes are used for the manufacture of pressure vessel shells and headers, the requirements for forgings in Ch 5,7 are applicable where the wall thickness exceeds 40 mm.

### 2.2 Manufacture and chemical composition

2.2.1 Pipes are to be manufactured by a seamless process and may be hot or cold finished.

2.2.2 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6.2.1.

**Table 6.2.1 Chemical composition of seamless pressure pipes**

Chemical composition of ladle samples %														
Type of steel	Grade	Method of deoxidation	C	Si	Mn	S max.	P max.	Residual elements						
Carbon and carbon-manganese	320	Semi-killed or killed	≤0,16	—	0,40—0,70	0,050	0,050	Ni 0,30 max. Cr 0,25 max. Mo 0,10 max. Cu 0,30 max. Total 0,70 max.						
	360		≤0,17	≤0,35	0,40—0,80	0,045	0,045							
	410	Killed	≤0,21	≤0,35	0,40—1,20	0,045	0,045							
	460		≤0,22	≤0,35	0,80—1,40	0,045	0,045							
	490		≤0,23	≤0,35	0,80—1,50	0,045	0,045							
1Cr <sup>1</sup> /2Mo	440	Killed	0,10—0,18	0,10—0,35	0,40—0,70	0,040	0,040	Ni 0,30 max.	Cr 0,70—1,10	Mo 0,45 — 0,65	Cu 0,25 max.	Sn 0,03 max.	V —	Al ≤0,020
2 <sup>1</sup> /4Cr1Mo	410 490	Killed	0,08—0,15	0,10—0,50	0,40—0,70	0,040	0,040	0,30 max.	2,0—2,5	0,90—1,20	0,25 max.	0,03 max.	—	≤0,020
1 <sup>2</sup> /2Cr <sup>1</sup> /2Mo <sup>1</sup> /4V	460	Killed	0,10—0,18	0,10—0,35	0,40—0,70	0,040	0,040	0,30	0,30—0,60	0,50—0,70	0,25 max.	0,03 max.	0,22—0,32	≤0,020

# Steel Pipes and Tubes

# Chapter 6

## Section 2

### 2.3 Heat treatment

2.3.1 Pipes are to be supplied in the condition given in Table 6.2.3.

### 2.4 Mechanical tests

2.4.1 All pipes are to be presented in batches as defined in Section 1.

2.4.2 Each pressure pipe selected for test is to be subjected to tensile and flattening or bend tests.

2.4.3 The results of all mechanical tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6.2.2.

### 2.5 Mechanical properties for design

2.5.1 Values for nominal minimum lower yield or 0,2 per cent proof stress at temperatures of 50°C and higher are given in Table 6.2.4 and are intended for design purposes only. Verification of these values is not required, except for materials complying with National or proprietary specification where the elevated temperature properties used for design are higher than those given in Table 6.2.4.

2.5.2 In such cases, at least one tensile test at the proposed design or other agreed temperature is to be made on each cast. The test specimen is to be taken from material adjacent to that used for tests at ambient temperature and tested in accordance with the procedures given in Chapter 2. If tubes or pipes of more than one thickness are supplied from one cast, the test is to be made on the thickest tube or pipe.

**Table 6.2.3 Heat treatment**

Type of steel	Condition of supply
Carbon and carbon-manganese	
Hot finished	Hot finished (see Note 1) Normalised (see Note 2)
Cold finished	Normalised (see Note 2)
Alloy steel	
1Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo	Normalised and tempered
2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> Cr1Mo	Grade 410 Grade 490 Fully annealed Normalised and tempered 650—780°C
	Grade 490 Normalised and tempered 650—750°C
<sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> V	Normalised and tempered

**NOTES**

1. Provided that the finishing temperature is sufficiently high to soften the material.
2. Normalised and tempered at the option of the manufacturer.

2.5.3 As an alternative to 2.5.2, a manufacturer may carry out an agreed comprehensive test program for a stated grade of steel to demonstrate that the specified minimum mechanical properties at elevated temperatures can be consistently obtained. This test program is to be carried out under the supervision of the Surveyors, and the results submitted for assessment and approval. When a manufacturer is approved on this basis, tensile tests at elevated temperatures are not required for acceptance purposes, but at the discretion of the Surveyors occasional check tests of this type may be requested.

2.5.4 Values for the estimated average stress to rupture in 100 000 hours are given in Table 6.2.5 and may be used for design purposes.

**Table 6.2.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: seamless pressure pipes (maximum wall thickness 40 mm), see 2.1.2**

Type of steel	Grade	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Flattening test constant C	Bend test diameter of former (t = thickness)
Carbon and carbon-manganese	320	195	320—440	25	0,10	4t
	360	215	360—480	24	0,10	
	410	235	410—530	22	0,08	
	460	265	460—580	21	0,07	
	490	285	490—610	21	0,07	
1Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo	440	275	440—590	22	0,07	4t
2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> Cr1Mo	410 (see Note 1)	135	410—560	20	0,07	4t
	490 (see Note 2)	275	490—640	16		
<sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> V	460	275	460—610	15	0,07	4t
NOTES						
1. Annealed condition.						
2. Normalised and tempered condition.						

## Steel Pipes and Tubes

## Chapter 6

## Section 2

**Table 6.2.4 Mechanical properties for design purposes: seamless pressure pipes**

Type of steel	Grade	Nominal minimum lower yield or 0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>											
		Temperature °C											
		50	100	150	200	250	300	350	400	450	500	550	600
Carbon and carbon-manganese	320	172	168	158	147	125	100	91	88	87	—	—	—
	360	192	187	176	165	145	122	111	109	107	—	—	—
	410	217	210	199	188	170	149	137	134	132	—	—	—
	460	241	234	223	212	195	177	162	159	156	—	—	—
	490	256	249	237	226	210	193	177	174	171	—	—	—
1Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo	440	254	240	230	220	210	183	169	164	161	156	151	—
2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Cr1Mo	410 (see Note 1)	121	108	99	92	85	80	76	72	69	66	64	62
	490 (see Note 2)	268	261	253	245	236	230	224	218	205	189	167	145
1/2Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> V	460	266	259	248	235	218	192	184	177	168	155	148	—
NOTES 1. Annealed condition. 2. Normalised and tempered condition.													

**Table 6.2.5 Mechanical properties for design purposes: seamless pressure pipes – Estimated values for stress to rupture in 100 000 hours (units N/mm<sup>2</sup>)**

Temperature °C	Carbon and carbon-manganese		1Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo	2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> Cr1Mo		1/2Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> V
	Grade 320 360 410	Grade 460 490	Grade 440	Grade 410 Annealed	Grade 490 Normalised and tempered (see Note)	Grade 460
380	171	227	—	—	—	—
390	155	203	—	—	—	—
400	141	179	—	—	—	—
410	127	157	—	—	—	—
420	114	136	—	—	—	—
430	102	117	—	—	—	—
440	90	100	—	—	—	—
450	78	85	—	196	221	—
460	67	73	—	182	204	—
470	57	63	—	168	186	—
480	47	55	210	154	170	218
490	36	47	177	141	153	191
500	—	41	146	127	137	170
510	—	—	121	115	122	150
520	—	—	99	102	107	131
530	—	—	81	90	93	116
540	—	—	67	78	79	100
550	—	—	54	69	69	85
560	—	—	43	59	59	72
570	—	—	35	51	51	59
580	—	—	—	44	44	46
NOTE When the tempering temperature exceeds 750°C, the values for Grade 410 are to be used.						

# Steel Pipes and Tubes

## Chapter 6

Section 3

### Section 3 Welded pressure pipes

#### 3.1 Scope

3.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for welded pressure pipes in carbon, carbon-manganese and low alloy steels.

#### 3.2 Manufacture and chemical composition

3.2.1 Pipes are to be manufactured by the electric resistance or induction welding process and, if required, may be subsequently hot reduced or cold finished.

3.2.2 Where it is proposed to use other welding processes, details of the welding processes and procedures are to be submitted for review.

3.2.3 In all cases, welding procedure tests are required. Test samples are to be subjected to the same heat treatment as the pipe.

3.2.4 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6.3.1.

#### 3.3 Heat treatment

3.3.1 Pipes are to be supplied in the heat treated condition given in Table 6.3.3.

#### 3.4 Mechanical tests

3.4.1 All pipes are to be presented in batches as defined in Section 1.

3.4.2 Each pressure pipe selected for test is to be subjected to tensile and flattening or bend tests.

3.4.3 The results of all mechanical tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6.3.2.

#### 3.5 Mechanical properties for design

3.5.1 The mechanical properties at elevated temperature for carbon and carbon-manganese steels in Grades 320 to 460 and 1Cr<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>Mo steel can be taken from the appropriate Tables in Section 2.

**Table 6.3.1 Chemical composition of welded pressure pipes**

Type of steel	Grade	Method of deoxidation	Chemical composition of ladle samples %											
			C	Si	Mn	S max.	P max.	Residual elements						
Carbon and carbon-manganese	320	Any method (see Note)	≤0,16	—	0,30—0,70	0,050	0,050	Ni	0,30 max.					
	≤0,17		≤0,35	0,40—1,00	0,045	0,045	Cr	0,25 max.						
	410	Killed	≤0,21	≤0,35	0,40—1,20	0,045	0,045	Mo	0,10 max.					
	≤0,22		≤0,35	0,80—1,40	0,045	0,045	Cu	0,30 max.						
1Cr <sup>1</sup> /2Mo	440	Killed	0,10—0,18	0,10—0,35	0,40—0,70	0,040	0,040	Ni	Cr	Mo	Cu	Sn	Al	
								0,30 max.	0,70—1,10	0,45—0,65	0,25 max.	0,03 max.	≤0,020	
NOTE														
For rimming steels, the carbon content may be increased to 0,19% max.														



# Steel Pipes and Tubes

## Chapter 6

Sections 3 &amp; 4

**Table 6.3.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: welded pressure pipes**

Type of steel	Grade	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Flattening test constant C
Carbon and carbon-manganese	320	195	320 – 440	25	0,10
	360	215	360 – 480	24	0,10
	410	235	410 – 530	22	0,08
	460	265	460 – 580	21	0,07
1Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo	440	275	440 – 590	22	0,07

**Table 6.3.3 Heat treatment: welded pressure pipes**

Type of steel	Condition of supply
Carbon and carbon-manganese, see Note	Normalised (Normalised and tempered at the option of the manufacturer)
1Cr <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Mo	Normalised and tempered
NOTE Subject to special approval, electric resistance welded (ERW) pipes and tubes in grades 320 and 360 may be supplied without heat treatment for the following applications: (a) Class 2 piping systems, except for liquefied gases or other low temperature applications. (b) Class 3 piping systems.	

4.2.4 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6.4.1.

### 4.3 Heat treatment

4.3.1 Pipes are to be supplied in the condition given in Table 6.4.3.

### 4.4 Mechanical tests

4.4.1 All pipes are to be presented for test in batches as defined in Section 1 for Class 1 pressure piping systems, but in addition the material in each batch is to be from the same cast.

4.4.2 At least two per cent of the number of lengths in each batch is to be selected at random for the preparation of tests.

4.4.3 Each pressure pipe selected for test is to be subjected to tensile, flattening or bend test at room temperature and, where the wall thickness is 6 mm or greater, an impact test at the test temperature specified in Table 6.4.2.

4.4.4 The impact tests are to consist of a set of three Charpy V-notch test specimens cut in the longitudinal direction with the notch perpendicular to the original surface of the pipe. The dimensions of the test specimens are to be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 2.

4.4.5 The results of all tensile, flattening and bend tests are to comply with the appropriate values in Table 6.4.2.

4.4.6 The average value for impact test specimens is to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 6.4.2. One individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this value. See Ch 2, 1.4.1 for re-test procedures.

## Section 4 Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service

### 4.1 Scope

4.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for carbon, carbon-manganese and nickel pipes intended for use in the piping arrangements for liquefied gases where the design temperature is less than 0°C. These requirements are also applicable for other types of pressure piping systems where the use of steels with guaranteed impact properties at low temperatures is required.

### 4.2 Manufacture and chemical composition

4.2.1 Carbon and carbon-manganese steel pipes are to be manufactured by a seamless, electric resistance or induction welding process.

4.2.2 Nickel steel pipes are to be manufactured by a seamless process.

4.2.3 Seamless pipes may be hot finished or cold finished. Welded pipes may be as-welded, hot finished or cold finished. The terms 'hot finished', 'cold finished' and 'as-welded' apply to the condition of the pipes before final heat treatment.

# Steel Pipes and Tubes

## Chapter 6

### Section 4

**Table 6.4.1 Chemical composition**

Type of steel	Grade	Method of deoxidation	Chemical composition of ladle sample %							
			C max.	Si	Mn	P max.	S max.	Ni	Al <sub>sol</sub> see Note	Residual elements
Carbon	360	Fully killed	0,17	0,10—0,35	0,40—1,00	0,030	0,025	—	0,015 min.	Cr 0,25 Cu 0,30 Mo 0,10 Ni 0,30 Total 0,70
Carbon-manganese	410 and 460		0,20	0,10—0,35	0,60—1,40	0,030	0,025	—	0,015 min.	Cr 0,25 Cu 0,30 Mo 0,10 Ni 0,30 Total 0,70
3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	440		0,15	0,15—0,35	0,30—0,90	0,025	0,020	3,25—3,75	—	Cr 0,25 Cu 0,30 Mo 0,10
9Ni	690		0,13	0,15—0,30	0,30—0,90	0,025	0,020	8,50—9,50	—	Total 0,60

NOTE  
Where a minimum Al<sub>sol</sub> of 0,015% is specified, the determination of the total aluminium is acceptable provided that the result is not less than 0,020%.

**Table 6.4.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes**

Type of steel	Grade	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Flattening test constant C	Bend test diameter of former (t = thickness)	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
							Test temperature °C	Average energy J minimum
Carbon	360	210	360—480	24	0,10	4t	−40	27
Carbon-manganese	410 460	235 260	410—530 460—580	22 21	0,08 0,07	4t	−50	27
3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	440	245	440—590	16	0,08	4t	−95	34
9Ni	690	510	690—840	15	0,08	4t	−196	41

For standard subsidiary impact test specimens, the minimum energy values are to be as follows:

Required average energy value for standard 10 mm x 10 mm	Subsidiary 10 mm x 7,5 mm	Subsidiary 10 mm x 5 mm
	Average energy	Average energy
27 J	22 J	18 J
34 J	28 J	23 J
41 J	34 J	27 J

**Table 6.4.3 Heat treatment**

Type of steel	Condition of supply
Carbon and carbon-manganese	Hot finished Normalised Normalised and tempered
3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	Normalised Normalised and tempered
9Ni	Double normalised and tempered Quenched and tempered

# Steel Pipes and Tubes

## Chapter 6

### Section 5

#### Section 5 Austenitic stainless steel pressure pipes

##### 5.1 Scope

5.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for austenitic stainless steel pipes suitable for use in the construction of the piping systems for chemicals and for liquefied gases where the design temperature is not less than minus 165°C and for bulk chemical tankers.

5.1.2 Austenitic stainless steels are also suitable for service at elevated temperatures. Where such applications are proposed, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for consideration and approval.

5.1.3 Where it is intended to supply seamless pipes in the direct quenched condition, a programme of tests for approval is to be carried out under the supervision of the Surveyors, and the results are to be to the satisfaction of LR, see Ch 1,2.2.

##### 5.2 Manufacture and chemical composition

5.2.1 Pipes are to be manufactured by a seamless or a continuous automatic electric fusion welding process.

5.2.2 Welding is to be in a longitudinal direction, with or without the addition of filler metal.

5.2.3 The chemical composition of the ladle samples is to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 6.5.1.

##### 5.3 Heat treatment

5.3.1 Pipes are generally to be supplied by the manufacturer in the solution treated condition over their full length.

5.3.2 Alternatively, seamless pipes may be direct quenched immediately after hot forming, while the temperature of the pipes is not less than the specified minimum solution treatment temperature.

##### 5.4 Mechanical tests

5.4.1 All pipes are to be presented in batches as defined in Section 1 for Class I and II piping systems.

5.4.2 Each pipe selected for test is to be subjected to tensile and flattening or bend tests.

5.4.3 The results of all mechanical tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6.5.2.

**Table 6.5.1 Chemical composition**

Type of steel	Grade	Chemical composition of ladle sample %								
		C max.	Si	Mn	P max.	S max.	Cr	Mo	Ni	Others
304L	490	0,03	<1,00	<2,00	0,045	0,030	17,0 – 19,0	—	9,0 – 13,0	—
316L	490	0,03	<1,00	<2,00	0,045	0,030	16,0 – 18,5	2,0–3,0	11,0 – 14,5	—
321	510	0,08	<1,00	<2,00	0,045	0,030	17,0 – 19,0	—	9,0 – 13,0	Ti ≥5 x C ≤0,80
347	510	0,08	<1,00	<2,00	0,045	0,030	17,0 – 19,0	—	9,0 – 13,0	Nb ≥10 x C ≤1,00

**Table 6.5.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes**

Type of steel	Grade	0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> (see Note)	1,0% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum	Flattening test constant C	Bend test diameter of former (t = thickness)
304L	490	175	205	490 – 690	30	0,09	3t
316L	490	185	215	490 – 690	30	0,09	3t
321	510	195	235	510 – 710	30	0,09	3t
347	510	205	245	510 – 710	30	0,09	3t
NOTE The 0,2% proof stress values given for information purposes and unless otherwise agreed are not required to be verified by test.							

# Steel Pipes and Tubes

# Chapter 6

Sections 5 & 6

## 5.5 Intergranular corrosion tests

5.5.1 For materials used for piping systems for chemicals, intercrystalline corrosion tests are to be carried out on one per cent of the number of pipes in each batch, with a minimum of one pipe.

5.5.2 For pipes with an outside diameter not exceeding 40 mm, the test specimens are to consist of a full cross-section. For larger pipes, the test specimens are to be cut as circumferential strips of full wall thickness and having a width of not less than 12,5 mm. In both cases, the total surface area is to be between 15 and 35 cm<sup>2</sup>.

5.5.3 Unless otherwise agreed or required for a particular chemical cargo, the testing procedure is to be in accordance with Ch 2,8.

5.5.4 After immersion, the full cross-section test specimens are to be subjected to a flattening test in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 2. The strip test specimens are to be subjected to a bend test through 90° over a mandrel of diameter equal to twice the thickness of the test specimen.

## 5.6 Fabricated pipework

5.6.1 Fabricated pipework is to be produced from material manufactured in accordance with 5.2, 5.3, 5.4 and 5.5.

5.6.2 Welding is to be carried out in accordance with an approved and qualified procedure by suitably qualified welders.

5.6.3 Fabricated pipework may be supplied in the as-welded condition without subsequent solution treatment provided that welding procedure tests have demonstrated satisfactory material properties including resistance to intercrystalline corrosion.

5.6.4 In addition, butt welds are to be subjected to 5 per cent radiographic examination for Class I, and 2 per cent for Class II pipes.

5.6.5 Fabricated pipework in the as-welded condition and intended for systems located on deck is to be protected by a suitable corrosion control coating.

## 5.7 Certification of materials

5.7.1 Each test certificate is to be of the type and give the information detailed in Ch 1,3.1 together with general details of heat treatment and, where applicable, the results obtained from intercrystalline corrosion tests. As a minimum, the chemical composition is to include the content of all the elements detailed in Table 6.5.1.

## Section 6 Boiler and superheater tubes

### 6.1 Scope

6.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for boiler and superheater tubes in carbon, carbon-manganese and low alloy steels.

6.1.2 Austenitic stainless steels may also be used for this type of service. Where such applications are proposed, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for consideration and approval.

### 6.2 Manufacture and chemical composition

6.2.1 Tubes are to be seamless or welded and are to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2 and 3, respectively.

6.2.2 The method of deoxidation and the chemical composition of ladle samples are to comply with the requirements given in Table 6.2.1 or 6.3.1, as appropriate.

### 6.3 Heat treatment

6.3.1 All tubes are to be supplied in accordance with the requirements given in Table 6.2.3 or 6.3.3 as appropriate, except that 1Cr<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>Mo steel may be supplied in the normalised only condition when the carbon content does not exceed 0,15 per cent.

### 6.4 Mechanical tests

6.4.1 Tubes are to be presented for test in batches as defined in Section 1.

6.4.2 Each boiler and superheater tube selected for test is to be subjected to at least the following:

- (a) Tensile test.
- (b) Flattening or bending test.
- (c) Expanding or flanging test.

6.4.3 The results of all mechanical tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 6.6.1.

### 6.5 Mechanical properties for design

6.5.1 The mechanical properties at elevated temperature for carbon and carbon-manganese steels in Grades 320 to 460, 1Cr<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>Mo and 2<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>Cr1Mo steels can be taken from the appropriate Tables in Section 2.

6.5.2 Where rimming steel is used, the design temperature is limited to 400°C.

# Steel Pipes and Tubes

## Chapter 6

### Section 6

**Table 6.6.1 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: boiler and superheater tubes**

Type of steel	Grade	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>o</sub> % minimum	Flattening test constant C	Bend test diameter of former (t = thickness)	Drift expanding and flanging test minimum % increase in outside diameter		
							Ratio	Inside diameter Outside diameter	
								≤0,6	>0,6 ≤0,8
Carbon and carbon- manganese	320	195	320–440	25	0,10	4t	12	15	19
	360	215	360–480	24	0,10		12	15	19
	410	235	410–530	22	0,08		10	12	17
	460	265	460–580	21	0,07		8	10	15
1Cr <sup>1</sup> /2Mo	440	275	440–590	22	0,07	4t	8	10	15
2 <sup>1</sup> /2Cr1Mo	410 (see Note 1)	135	410–560	20	0,07	4t	8	10	15
	490 (see Note 2)	275	490–640	16					
NOTES 1. Annealed condition. 2. Normalised and tempered condition.									



# Iron Castings

# Chapter 7

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Grey iron castings**
- 3 **Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings**
- 4 **Iron castings for crankshafts**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section gives the general requirements for both grey (flake) and spheroidal (nodular) graphite iron castings intended for use in the construction of ships, other marine structures, machinery, boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems.

1.1.2 Where required by the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction, castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Chapters 1 and 2, together with the requirements given in this Section and either Section 2 for grey iron castings or Section 3 for spheroidal graphite iron castings. Castings for crankshafts are additionally to comply with the requirements detailed in Section 4.

1.1.3 As an alternative to 1.1.2, castings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted, provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1.

1.1.4 Where small castings are produced in large quantities, or where castings of the same type are produced in regular quantities, alternative survey procedures, in accordance with Ch 1.2.2, may be adopted subject to approval by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').

### 1.2 Manufacture

1.2.1 Castings as designated in 1.1.2 are to be made at foundries approved by LR.

1.2.2 Suitable mechanical methods are to be employed for the removal of surplus material from castings. Thermal cutting processes are not acceptable, except as a preliminary operation to mechanical methods.

### 1.3 Quality of castings

1.3.1 Castings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service. The surface finish is to be in accordance with good practice and any specific requirements of the approved plan.

### 1.4 Chemical composition

1.4.1 The chemical composition of the iron used is left to the discretion of the manufacturer, who is to ensure that it is suitable to obtain the mechanical properties specified for the castings.

### 1.5 Heat treatment

1.5.1 Except as required by 1.5.2, castings may be supplied in either the as cast or heat treated condition.

1.5.2 For some applications, such as elevated temperature service, or where dimensional stability is important, castings may require to be given a suitable tempering or stress relieving heat treatment. This is to be carried out after any refining heat treatment and before machining.

1.5.3 Where it is proposed to carry out local hardening of the surface of a casting, full details of the proposed procedure are to be submitted for approval.

### 1.6 Test material

1.6.1 At least one test sample is to be provided for each casting or batch of castings. For large castings, where more than one ladle of metal is used, one test sample is to be provided, from each ladle used.

1.6.2 A batch testing procedure may be adopted for castings with a fettled mass of 1 tonne or less. All castings in a batch are to be of similar type and dimensions, and cast from the same ladle of metal. One test sample is to be provided for each multiple of two tonnes of fettled castings in the batch.

1.6.3 Where separately cast test samples are used, they are to be cast in moulds made from the same type of material as used for the castings and are not to be stripped from the moulds until the temperature is below 500°C.

1.6.4 All test samples are to be suitably marked to identify them with the castings which they represent.

1.6.5 Where castings are supplied in the heat treated condition, the test samples are to be heat treated together with the castings which they represent. For cast-on test samples, the sample is not to be separated from the casting until after heat treatment.

### 1.7 Mechanical tests

1.7.1 One tensile specimen is to be prepared from each test sample. The dimensions of the test specimens and the testing procedures used are to be in accordance with Chapter 2.

# Iron Castings

# Chapter 7

Section 1

1.7.2 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Section 2, 3 or 4, as appropriate.

1.7.3 In the case of castings supplied in the as cast condition which initially do not meet the requirements of 1.7.2, the manufacturer, by agreement with the purchaser, has the right to heat treat the castings, together with the representative test samples, and re-submit them for acceptance.

1.7.4 In the case of a batch of castings supplied in the heat treated condition which initially do not meet the requirements of 1.7.2, the manufacturer has the right to re-heat treat the batch together with the representative test samples, and re-submit the castings for acceptance. The number of reheat treatments and retests will be restricted to two.

## 1.8 Visual and non-destructive examination

1.8.1 All castings are to be cleaned and adequately prepared for examination. The surfaces are not to be hammered, peened or treated in any way which may obscure defects.

1.8.2 The accuracy and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer, unless otherwise agreed.

1.8.3 All castings are to be presented to the Surveyor for visual examination and this is to include the examination of internal surfaces where applicable.

1.8.4 The non-destructive examination of castings is not required unless otherwise stated in the approved plan or where there is reason to suspect the soundness of the casting.

1.8.5 In the event of any casting proving defective during subsequent machining or testing it is to be rejected notwithstanding any previous certification.

## 1.9 Rectification of defective castings

1.9.1 At the discretion of the Surveyor, small surface blemishes may be removed by local grinding.

1.9.2 Subject to the prior approval of the Surveyor, castings containing local porosity may be rectified by vacuum impregnation with a suitable plastic filler, provided that the extent of the porosity is such that it does not adversely affect the strength of the casting.

1.9.3 Repairs by welding are not permitted on grey cast iron parts and generally not permitted for spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings, but may be considered in special circumstances for spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings. In such cases, full details of the proposed repair procedure are to be submitted for approval prior to the commencement of the proposed rectification.

## 1.10 Pressure testing

1.10.1 When required by the relevant Rules, castings are to be pressure tested before final acceptance. These tests are to be carried out in the presence and to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

## 1.11 Identification of castings

1.11.1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification which will enable all finished castings to be traced to the original cast, and the Surveyor is to be given full facilities for tracing the castings when required.

1.11.2 Before acceptance, all castings which have been tested and inspected with satisfactory results are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer with the following particulars:

- (a) Type and grade of cast iron.
- (b) Identification number, cast number or other marking which will enable the full history of the casting to be traced.
- (c) Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
- (d) LR or Lloyd's Register and the abbreviated name of LR's local office.
- (e) Personal stamp of Surveyor responsible for inspection.
- (f) Test pressure, where applicable.
- (g) Date of final inspection.

1.11.3 Where small castings are manufactured in large numbers, modified arrangements for identification may be specially agreed with the Surveyor.

## 1.12 Certification of materials

1.12.1 A LR certificate is to be issued, see Ch 1,3.1.

1.12.2 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement giving the following particulars for each casting or batch of castings which has been accepted:

- (a) Purchaser's name and order number.
- (b) Description of castings and quality of cast iron.
- (c) Identification number.
- (d) General details of heat treatment, where applicable.
- (e) Results of mechanical tests.
- (f) Test pressure, where applicable.
- (g) When specially required, the chemical analysis of ladle samples.

1.12.3 Where applicable, the manufacturer is to provide a signed statement regarding non-destructive testing as required by 1.8, together with a statement and/or a sketch detailing the extent and position of all weld repairs made to each casting as required by 1.9.



# Iron Castings

# Chapter 7

Sections 2 & 3

## Section 2 Grey iron castings

### 2.1 Scope

2.1.1 This Section gives the specific requirements for grey cast iron castings.

### 2.2 Test material

2.2.1 Separately cast test samples in the form of cylindrical bars, 30 mm diameter and of a suitable length, are to be used unless otherwise agreed by LR. Test samples of other dimensions may be specially required for some components as may cast-on samples. In these circumstances, the tensile strength requirements are to be agreed.

2.2.2 When two or more test samples are cast simultaneously in a single mould, the bars are to be at least 50 mm apart.

2.2.3 Test samples may be cast integrally when a casting is both more than 20 mm thick and its mass exceeds 200 kg, subject to agreement between the manufacturer and the purchaser. The type and location of the samples are to be such as to provide approximately the same cooling conditions as for the casting it represents and are also subject to agreement.

2.2.4 For continuous melting of the same grade of cast iron in large tonnages the mass of a batch may be taken as the output of two hours of pouring.

2.2.5 Where 2.2.4 applies and production is carefully monitored by systematic checking of the melting process by, for example, chill testing, chemical analysis or thermal analysis, test samples may be taken at longer intervals as agreed by the Surveyor.

### 2.3 Mechanical tests

2.3.1 Only the tensile strength is to be determined, and the results obtained from tests are to comply with the minimum value specified for the castings being supplied. Except for crankshaft castings (see Section 4), the specified tensile strength is to be not less than 200 N/mm<sup>2</sup> subject to any additional requirements of the relevant Rules. The fractured surfaces of all tensile test specimens are to be granular and entirely grey in appearance.

3.1.2 These requirements are generally applicable to castings intended for use at ambient temperatures. Additional requirements will be necessary when the castings are intended for service at either low or elevated temperatures. Impact test requirements are given for low temperature service in 3.4.2.

### 3.2 Heat treatment

3.2.1 The special qualities with 350 N/mm<sup>2</sup> and 400 N/mm<sup>2</sup> nominal tensile strength and impact test are to undergo a ferritising heat treatment, see 3.4.2.

### 3.3 Test material

3.3.1 The test samples are to be as detailed in Figs. 7.3.1, 7.3.2 or 7.3.3 The dimensions of the test specimens and testing procedures used are to be in accordance with Chapter 2. Test samples of other dimensions may be specially required for some castings and these are to be agreed with the Surveyor.

3.3.2 The test samples may be either gated to the casting or separately cast.

3.3.3 Where separately cast test samples are used, they are to be taken towards the end of pouring of the castings.

### 3.4 Mechanical tests

3.4.1 The tensile strength and elongation are to be determined and are to comply with the requirements of Table 7.3.1. Minimum values for the 0.2 per cent proof stress are also included in this Table but are to be determined only if included in the specification. Typical ranges of hardness values are also given in Table 7.3.1 and are intended for information purposes.

3.4.2 Impact tests may be required for some applications in which case the selection of the grade is to be confined to those listed in Table 7.3.2. These castings are to be given a ferritising heat treatment. The mechanical test results are to comply with Table 7.3.2.

3.4.3 Castings may be supplied to any specified minimum tensile strength selected within the general limits detailed in Tables 7.3.1 and 7.3.2 but subject to any additional requirements of the relevant Rules.

### 3.5 Metallographic examination

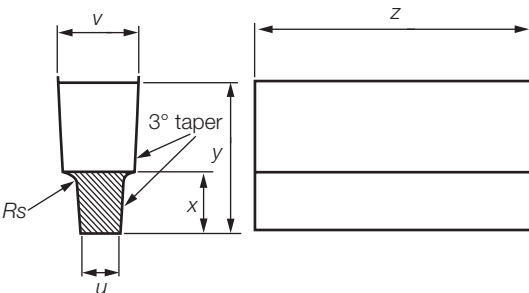
3.5.1 Samples for metallographic examination are to be prepared for spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings. These samples are to be representative of each ladle used and may conveniently be taken from the tensile test specimens. Alternative arrangements for the provision of these samples may, however, be adopted subject to the concurrence of the Surveyor. They are, however, to be taken towards the end of the pour.

## Section 3 Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings

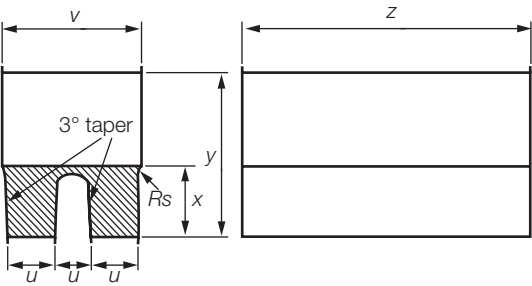
### 3.1 Scope

3.1.1 This Section gives the specific requirements for spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings.

Dimension	Standard sample, mm	Alternative samples when specially required, mm		
<i>u</i>	25	12	50	75
<i>v</i>	55	40	90	125
<i>x</i>	40	30	60	65
<i>y</i>	100	80	150	165
<i>Z</i> <i>Rs</i>	To suit testing machine Approximately 5			



**Fig. 7.3.1    Type A (U-type) test samples**

Dimension	Standard sample, mm
<i>u</i>	25
<i>v</i>	90
<i>x</i>	40
<i>y</i>	100
<i>Z</i> <i>Rs</i>	To suit testing machine Approximately 5
	
Fig. 7.3.2 Type B (Double U-type) test samples	

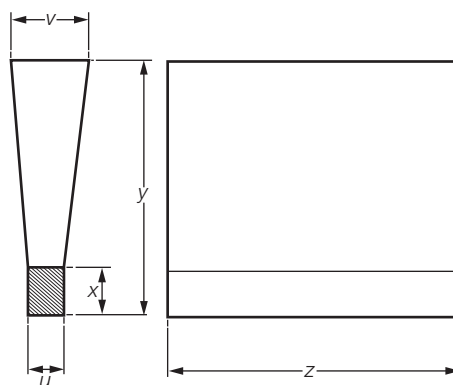
3.5.2 Examination of the samples is to show that at least 90 per cent of the graphite is in a dispersed spheroidal or nodular form. Details of typical matrix structures are given in Table 7.3.1 and are intended for information purposes.

# Iron Castings

## Chapter 7

### Section 3

Dimension	Standard sample, mm	Alternative samples when specially required, mm		
$u$	25	12	50	75
$v$	55	40	100	125
$x$	40	25	50	65
$y$	140	135	150	175
$Z$	To suit testing machine			
Minimum thickness of mould surrounding test sample	40	40	80	80



**Fig. 7.3.3 Type C (Y-type) test samples**

**Table 7.3.1 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings**

Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	0,2% proof stress (see Note) N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Typical hardness value HB (see 3.4.1)	Typical structure of matrix (see 3.5.1)
370	230	17	120 – 180	Ferrite
400	250	12	140 – 200	Ferrite
500	320	7	170 – 240	Ferrite/pearlite
600	370	3	190 – 270	Pearlite/ferrite
700	420	2	230 – 300	Pearlite
800	480	2	250 – 350	Pearlite or tempered structure

**NOTE**

Proof stresses need only be determined if specifically requested.

**Table 7.3.2 Mechanical properties: special qualities**

Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	0,2% proof stress minimum (see Note 1) N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$ minimum % (see Note 2)	Typical hardness value	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
				Test temperature °C (see Note 3)	Average energy J minimum (see Note 4)
350	220	22	110 – 170	20 –40	17 (14) 12 (10)
400	250	18	140 – 200	20 –20	14 (11) 12 (10)

**NOTES**

1. Proof stresses need only be determined if specifically requested.
2. In the case of integrally cast samples, the acceptable elongation may be taken as 2 percentage points less.
3. Tests need only be made at either of the temperatures listed, as appropriate.
4. The average value measured on three Charpy V-notch specimens. One of the three values may be below the specified minimum average value, but not less than the value shown in brackets.
5. Typical structure of the matrix is ferrite.

## Section 4

### Iron castings for crankshafts

#### 4.1 Scope

4.1.1 This Section gives additional requirements for cast iron crankshafts intended for diesel engines and compressors. For both of these applications, details of the proposed specification are to be submitted for approval.

4.1.2 Crankshaft castings in grey iron are acceptable only for compressors, and the specified minimum tensile strength is to be not less than 300 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

4.1.3 For crankshaft castings in spheroidal or nodular graphite iron, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be not less than 370 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

#### 4.2 Manufacture

4.2.1 Details of the method of manufacture, including the arrangements proposed for the provision of test material, are to be submitted for approval.

4.2.2 Tests to demonstrate the soundness of prototype castings and the mechanical properties at important locations will be required.

#### 4.3 Heat treatment

4.3.1 In general, crankshaft castings other than those which are fully annealed, normalised or oil quenched and tempered, are to receive a suitable stress relief heat treatment before machining.

4.3.2 Where it is proposed to harden the surfaces of machined pins and/or journals of cast iron crankshafts, details of the process are to be submitted for approval. Before such a process is applied to a crankshaft it is to be demonstrated by procedure tests, and to the satisfaction of the Surveyor, that the process is suitably controlled and does not impair the strength or soundness of the material.

#### 4.4 Test material

4.4.1 Unless otherwise approved, the dimensions of the test samples are to be such as to ensure that they have mechanical properties representative of those of the average section of the crankshaft casting.

4.4.2 For large crankshaft castings, the test samples are to be cast integral with, or gated from, each casting.

4.4.3 The batch testing procedure detailed in 1.6.2 may be adopted only where small and identical crankshaft castings are produced in quantity. Generally, the fettled mass of each casting in a batch is not to exceed 100 kg, and in addition to tensile tests, the hardness of each casting is to be determined. For this purpose, a small flat is to be ground on each crankshaft, and Brinell hardness tests are to be carried out. The results obtained from these tests are to comply with the approved specification.

#### 4.5 Non-destructive examination

4.5.1 Cast crankshafts are to be subjected to a full magnetic particle or dye penetrant examination after final machining and completion of any surface hardening operations.

4.5.2 Particular attention is to be given to the testing of the pins, journals and associated fillet radii.

4.5.3 Cracks and crack-like defects are not acceptable. Fillet radii are to be free from any indications.

# Iron Castings

## Chapter 7

Section 4

---

### 4.6 Rectification of defective castings

4.6.1 Cast iron crankshafts are not to be repaired by welding, and blemishes are not to be plugged with a filler.

### 4.7 Certification of materials

4.7.1 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to be given in addition to the other particulars detailed in 1.12.2.

---



# Aluminium Alloys

# Chapter 8

## Section 1

### Section

- 1 **Plates, bars and sections**
- 2 **Aluminium alloy rivets**
- 3 **Aluminium alloy castings**
- 4 **Aluminium/steel transition joints**

## ■ Section 1 Plates, bars and sections

### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section makes provision for aluminium alloy plates, bars and sections intended for use in the construction of ships and other marine structures and for cryogenic applications.

1.1.2 Except as provided in 1.1.4, all items are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Chapters 1 and 2 and those detailed in this Section.

1.1.3 The thickness of plates, sections and bars described by these requirements will be in the range between 3 and 50 mm. Plates and sections less than 3,0 mm thick may be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of an acceptable national specification.

1.1.4 Plates less than 3,0 mm thick and sections less than 40 mm x 40 mm x 3,0 mm may be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of an acceptable National specification.

1.1.5 Where the section thickness exceeds 50 mm, the requirements will be subject to special consideration.

1.1.6 Materials intended for the construction of cargo tanks or storage for liquefied gases, and for other low temperature applications, are to be manufactured in the 5083 alloy in the annealed condition.

1.1.7 As an alternative to 1.1.2 and 1.1.4, materials which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section and are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1.

### 1.2 Manufacture

1.2.1 Aluminium alloys are to be manufactured at works approved by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').

1.2.2 The alloys may be cast either in ingot moulds or by an approved continuous casting process. Plates are to be formed by rolling and may be hot or cold finished. Bars and sections may be formed by extrusion, rolling or drawing.

1.2.3 All melts are to be suitably degassed prior to casting such that the aim hydrogen content is less than 0,2 ml per 100 g.

### 1.3 Quality of materials

1.3.1 Materials are to be free from surface or internal defects of such a nature as would be harmful in service.

1.3.2 The manufacturer is to verify the integrity of pressure welds of closed extrusion profiles in accordance with 1.10.

**Table 8.1.1 Underthickness tolerances for rolled products for marine construction**

Nominal thickness range, mm	Underthickness tolerance for nominal width range, mm		
	≤1500	>1500 ≤2000	>2000 ≤3500
≥3,0 <4,0	0,10	0,15	0,15
≥4,0 <8,0	0,20	0,20	0,25
≥8,0 <12	0,25	0,25	0,25
≥12 <20	0,35	0,40	0,50
≥20 <50	0,45	0,50	0,65

### 1.4 Dimensional tolerances

1.4.1 Underthickness tolerances for rolled products for marine construction are given in Table 8.1.1.

1.4.2 Underthickness tolerances for extruded products are to comply with an acceptable National or International Standard.

1.4.3 There are to be no underthickness tolerances for materials for application in cryogenic process pressure vessels.

1.4.4 Dimensional tolerances other than permitted underthicknesses are to comply with an acceptable National or International Standard.

1.4.5 Verification of dimensions is the responsibility of the manufacturer. Acceptance by Surveyors of material which is later found to be defective does not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

# Aluminium Alloys

## Chapter 8

Section 1

**Table 8.1.2 Chemical composition, percentage**

Element	5083	5383	5059	5086	5754	5456	6005-A (see Note 1)	6061 (see Note 1)	6082
Copper	0,10 max.	0,20 max.	0,25 max.	0,10 max.	0,10 max.	0,10 max.	0,30 max.	0,15—0,40	0,10 max.
Magnesium	4,0—4,9	4,0—5,2	5,0—6,0	3,5—4,5	2,6—3,6	4,7—5,5	0,40—0,70	0,80—1,20	0,60—1,20
Silicon	0,40 max.	0,25 max.	0,45 max.	0,40 max.	0,40 max.	0,25 max.	0,50—0,90	0,40—0,80	0,70—1,30
Iron	0,40 max.	0,25 max.	0,50 max.	0,50 max.	0,40 max.	0,40 max.	0,35 max.	0,70 max.	0,50 max.
Manganese	0,40—1,00	0,7—1,0	0,6—1,2	0,20—0,70	0,50 max. (see Note 2)	0,50—1,00	0,50 max. (see Note 3)	0,15 max.	0,40—1,00
Zinc	0,25 max.	0,40 max.	0,40—0,90	0,25 max.	0,20 max.	0,25 max.	0,20 max.	0,25 max.	0,20 max.
Chromium	0,05—0,25	0,25 max.	0,25 max.	0,05—0,25	0,30 max. (see Note 2)	0,05—0,20	0,30 max. (see Note 3)	0,04—0,35	0,25 max.
Titanium	0,15 max.	0,15 max.	0,20 max.	0,15 max.	0,15 max.	0,20 max.	0,10 max.	0,15 max.	0,10 max.
Zirconium		0,20 max.	0,05—0,25						
Other elements: each	0,05 max.	0,05 max.	0,05 max.	0,05 max.	0,05 max.	0,05 max.	0,05 max.	0,05 max.	0,05 max.
total	0,15 max.	0,15 max.	0,15 max.	0,15 max.	0,15 max.	0,15 max.	0,15 max.	0,15 max.	0,15 max.

**NOTES**

- These alloys are not normally acceptable for application in direct contact with sea-water.
- Mn + Cr = 0,10 min., 0,60 max.
- Mn + Cr = 0,12 min., 0,50 max.

### 1.5 Chemical composition

1.5.1 Samples for chemical analysis are to be taken representative of each cast, or the equivalent where a continuous melting process is involved.

1.5.2 The chemical composition of these samples is to comply with the requirements of Table 8.1.2.

### 1.6 Heat treatment

1.6.1 The Aluminium 5000 series alloys, capable of being strain hardened, are to be supplied in any of the following temper conditions:

- O annealed
- H111 annealed with slight strain hardening
- H112 strain hardened from working at elevated temperatures
- H116 strain hardened and with specified resistance to exfoliation corrosion for alloys where the magnesium content is 4 per cent or more
- H321 strain hardened and stabilised.

1.6.2 The H116 temper is specially developed for use in a marine environment.

1.6.3 The Aluminium 6000 series alloys, capable of being age hardened, are to be supplied in either of the following temper conditions:

- T5 hot worked and artificially aged
- T6 solution treated and artificially aged.

### 1.7 Test material

1.7.1 Materials of the same product form, (i.e., plates, sections or bars) and thickness and from a single cast or equivalent, are to be presented for test in batches of not more than 2 tonnes, with the exceptions of those given in 1.7.2, 1.7.3 and 1.7.4.

1.7.2 For single plates or coils weighing more than 2 tonnes, only one tensile specimen per plate or coil is to be taken.

1.7.3 A tensile test specimen is required from each plate to be used in the construction of cargo tanks, secondary barriers and process pressure vessels with design temperatures below  $-55^{\circ}\text{C}$ .

1.7.4 Extrusions, bars and sections of less than 1 kg/m in nominal weight are to be tested in batches of 1 tonne. Where the nominal weight is greater than 5 kg/m, one tensile test is to be carried out for every three tonnes produced, or fractions thereof.

1.7.5 If the material is supplied in the heat treated condition, each batch is to be treated in the same furnace charge or subjected to the same finishing treatment when a continuous furnace is used.

1.7.6 For plates over 300 mm in width, tensile test specimens are to be cut with their length transverse to the principal direction of rolling. For narrow plates and for sections and bars, the test specimens are to be cut in the longitudinal direction. Longitudinal tensile test specimens are accepted for the strain hardenable 5000 series alloys.



## Aluminium Alloys

## Chapter 8

Section 1

**Table 8.1.3 Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of selected rolled aluminium alloy products**

Alloy and temper condition	Thickness, $t$ , mm	0,2% proof stress $R_p$ , N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Tensile strength $R_m$ , N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65 \sqrt{S_0} 4d$ , %	Elongation on $5,65 \sqrt{S_0} 5d$ , %
5083-O	$3 \leq t \leq 50$ (see Note 3)	125	275–350	16	14
5083-H111	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	125	275–350	16	14
5083-H112	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	125	275	12	10
5083-H116	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	215	305	10 (see Note 1)	10
5083-H321	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	215–295	305–380	12	10
5086-O	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	100	240–305	16	14
5086-H111	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	100	240–305	16	14
5086-H112	$3 \leq t \leq 12,5$	125	250	8	—
	$12,5 < t \leq 50$	105	240	—	9
5086-H116	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	195	275	10 (see Note 2)	9
5059-O	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	160	330	24	24
5059-H111	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	160	330	24	24
5059-H116	$3 \leq t \leq 20$	270	370	10	10
	$20 < t \leq 50$	260	360	10	10
5059-H321	$3 \leq t \leq 20$	270	370	10	10
	$20 < t \leq 50$	260	360	10	10
5383-O	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	145	290	17	17
5383-H111	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	145	290	17	17
5383-H116	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	220	305	10	10
5383-H321	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	220	305	10	10
5456-O	$3 \leq t \leq 6,3$	130–205	290–365	16	—
	$6,3 \leq t \leq 50$	125–205	285–360	16	14
5456-H116	$3 \leq t \leq 30$	230	315	10	10
	$30 < t \leq 40$	215	305	—	10
	$40 < t \leq 50$	200	285	—	10
5456-H321	$3 \leq t \leq 12,5$	230–315	315–405	12	—
	$12,5 \leq t \leq 40$	215–305	305–385	—	10
	$40 \leq t \leq 50$	200–295	285–370	—	10
5754-O	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	80	190–240	18	17
NOTES 1. 10% for thickness up to and including 12,5 mm. 2. 8% for thickness up to and including 6,3 mm. 3. For application to liquefied natural gas carriers or liquefied natural gas tankers where thicknesses are in excess of 50 mm, the mechanical properties given in this table are, in general, to be complied with.					

**Table 8.1.4 Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of selected extruded aluminium alloy products**

Alloy and temper condition	Thickness, $t$ , mm	0,2% proof stress $R_p$ , N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Tensile strength $R_m$ , N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ 4d, %	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ 5d, %
5083-O	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	110	270–350	14	12
5083-H111	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	165	275	12	10
5083-H112	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	110	270	12	10
5086-O	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	95	240–315	14	12
5086-H111	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	145	250	12	10
5086-H112	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	95	240	12	10
5059-H112	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	200	330	10	10
5383-O	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	145	290	17	17
5383-H111	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	145	290	17	17
5383-H112	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	190	310	13	13
6005A-T5	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	215	260	9	8
6005A-T6	$3 \leq t \leq 10$	215	260	8	6
	$10 < t \leq 50$	200	250	8	6
6061-T6	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	240	260	10	8
6082-T5	$3 \leq t \leq 50$	230	270	8	6
6082-T6	$3 \leq t \leq 5$	250	290	6	—
	$5 < t \leq 50$	260	310	10	8

**NOTE**

The values are applicable for longitudinal and transverse tensile test specimens as well.

1.7.7 Longitudinal tensile test specimens from a plate are to be taken at  $1/3$  width from the longitudinal edge. Longitudinal tensile test specimens taken from extruded sections should be taken in the range from  $1/3$  to  $1/2$  of the distance from the edge to the centre of the thickest region of the section.

## 1.8 Mechanical tests

1.8.1 At least one tensile test specimen is to be prepared from each batch of material submitted for acceptance.

1.8.2 Tensile test specimens are to be machined to the dimensions given in Fig. 2.2.3 in Chapter 2. Alternatively, machined proportional test specimens of circular cross-section in accordance with Fig. 2.2.2 in Chapter 2 may be used provided that the diameter is not less than 10 mm. Round bars may be tested in full section, or test specimens may be machined in accordance with the dimensions given in Fig. 2.2.2 in Chapter 2.

1.8.3 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the values given in Tables 8.1.3 and 8.1.4, as applicable.

## 1.9 Corrosion tests

1.9.1 Rolled 5000 series alloys of type 5083, 5383, 5059, 5456 and 5086 in the H116 and H321 tempers intended for use in marine hull construction or in marine applications with frequent direct contact with seawater are to be corrosion tested with respect to exfoliation and intergranular corrosion resistance.

1.9.2 The manufacturer is to establish the relationship between microstructure and resistance to corrosion when the above alloys are approved. A reference photomicrograph taken at 500x, is to be prepared for each of the alloy-tempers and thickness ranges relevant. The reference photographs are to be taken from samples which have exhibited no evidence of exfoliation corrosion and a pitting rating of PB or better, when subjected to the test described in ASTM G66 (ASSET). The samples are also to have exhibited resistance to intergranular corrosion at a mass loss no greater than 15 mg/cm<sup>2</sup>, when subjected to the test described in ASTM G67. Upon satisfactory establishment of the relationship between microstructure and resistance to corrosion, the master photomicrographs and the results of the corrosion tests are to be approved by LR. Production

practices are not to be changed after approval of the reference micrographs.

**1.9.3** For batch acceptance of 5000 series alloys in the H116 and H321 tempers, metallographic examination of one sample selected from mid width at one end of a coil or random sheet or plate is to be carried out. The microstructure of the sample is to be compared to the reference photomicrograph of acceptable material in the presence of the Surveyor. A longitudinal section perpendicular to the rolled surface is to be prepared for metallographic examination. If the microstructure shows evidence of continuous grain boundary network of aluminium-magnesium precipitate in excess of the reference photomicrographs of acceptable material, the batch is either to be rejected or tested for exfoliation corrosion resistance and intergranular corrosion resistance subject to the agreement of the Surveyor. The corrosion tests are to be in accordance with ASTM G66 and G67 or equivalent standards. If the results from testing satisfy the acceptance criteria stated in 1.9.2 the batch is accepted, otherwise it is to be rejected.

**1.9.4** As an alternative to metallographic examination, each batch may be tested for exfoliation corrosion resistance and intergranular corrosion resistance, in accordance with ASTM G66 and G67 or equivalent standards.

**1.9.5** Tempers that are corrosion tested in accordance with 1.9.3 are to be marked 'M' after the temper condition, e.g., 5083 H321 M.

## 1.10 Pressure weld tests

**1.10.1** The integrity of pressure welds of closed profile extrusions is to be verified by examination of macrosections or drift expansion tests.

**1.10.2** Every closed profile extrusion is to be sampled, except where the closed profile extrusions are equal to or shorter than 6,0 m long, in which case a batch is to comprise five profiles. Every sample is to be tested at both ends after final heat treatment.

**1.10.3** Where verification is by examination of macrosections, no indication of lack of fusion is permitted.

**1.10.4** Where verification of fusion at pressure welds of closed profile extrusions is by drift expansion test, testing is to be generally in accordance with Ch 2,4.3. The minimum included angle of the mandrel is to be 60°, and the minimum specimen length, 50 mm. For acceptance, there is to be no failure by a clean split along the weld line.

## 1.11 Visual and non-destructive examination

**1.11.1** Surface inspection and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer, and acceptance by the Surveyors of material later found to be defective shall not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

**1.11.2** In general, the non-destructive examination of materials is not required for acceptance purposes. Manufacturers are expected, however, to employ suitable methods of non-destructive examination for the general maintenance of quality standards.

**1.11.3** For applications where the non-destructive examination of materials is considered to be necessary, the extent of this examination, together with appropriate acceptance standards, are to be agreed between the purchaser, manufacturer and Surveyor.


## 1.12 Rectification of defects

**1.12.1** Slight surface imperfections may be removed by mechanical means, provided that the prior agreement of the Surveyor is obtained, that the work is carried out to his satisfaction and that the final dimensions are acceptable. The repair of defects by welding is not allowed.

## 1.13 Identification

**1.13.1** The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification which will ensure that all finished material in a batch presented for test is of the same nominal chemical composition.

**1.13.2** Products are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1. The following details are to be shown on all materials which have been accepted:

- (a) Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
- (b) Alloy grade and temper condition.
- (c) Identification mark which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
- (d) The stamp of the LR brand, .

## 1.14 Certification of materials

**1.14.1** A manufacturer's certificate validated by LR is to be issued, see Ch 1,3.1.

**1.14.2** Each test certificate is to include the following particulars:

- (a) Purchaser's name and order number.
- (b) Contract number.
- (c) Address to which material is to be despatched.
- (d) Description and dimensions.
- (e) Alloy grade and temper condition.
- (f) Identification mark which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
- (g) Chemical composition.
- (h) Mechanical test results (not required on shipping statement).
- (i) Details of temper condition and heat treatment, where applicable.

**1.14.3** Where the alloy is not produced at the works at which it is wrought, a certificate is to be supplied by the manufacturer of the alloy stating the cast number and chemical composition. The works at which the alloy was produced must be approved by LR.

## Section 2 Aluminium alloy rivets

### 2.1 Scope

2.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for aluminium alloy rivets intended for use in the construction of marine structures.

2.1.2 They are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Section 1 and those detailed in this Section.

### 2.2 Chemical composition

2.2.1 The chemical composition of bars used for the manufacture of rivets is to comply with the requirements of Table 8.2.1.

**Table 8.2.1 Chemical composition, percentage**

Element	5154A	6082
Copper	0,10 max.	0,10 max.
Magnesium	3,1 – 3,9	0,6 – 1,2
Silicon	0,50 max.	0,7 – 1,3
Iron	0,50 max.	0,50 max.
Manganese	0,1 – 0,5	0,4 – 1,0
Zinc	0,20 max.	0,20 max.
Chromium	0,25 max.	0,25 max.
Titanium	0,20 max.	0,10 max.
Other elements: each	0,05 max.	0,05 max.
total	0,15 max.	0,15 max.
Aluminium	Remainder	Remainder

### 2.3 Heat treatment

2.3.1 Rivets are to be supplied in the following condition:  
 5154A – annealed  
 6082 – solution treated.

### 2.4 Test material

2.4.1 Bars intended for the manufacture of rivets are to be presented for test in batches of not more than 250 kg. The material in each batch is to be the same diameter and nominal chemical composition.

2.4.2 At least one test sample is to be selected from each batch and, prior to testing, is to be heat treated in full cross-section and in a manner simulating the heat treatment applied to the finished rivets.

### 2.5 Mechanical tests

2.5.1 At least one tensile and one dump test specimen are to be prepared from each test sample.

2.5.2 The tensile test specimen may be either a suitable length of bar tested in full cross-section or a specimen machined to the dimensions given in Fig. 2.2.2 in Chapter 2.

2.5.3 The dump test specimen is to consist of a section cut from the bar with the ends perpendicular to the axis. The length of this section is to be equal to the diameter of the bar.

2.5.4 The results of tensile tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 8.2.2.

**Table 8.2.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes**

Mechanical properties	5154A	6082
0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> min.	90	120
Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> min.	220	190
Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % min.	18	16

2.5.5 The dump test is to be carried out at ambient temperature and is to consist of compressing the specimen until the diameter is increased to 1,6 times the original diameter. After compression, the specimen is to be free from cracks.

### 2.6 Tests from manufactured rivets

2.6.1 At least three samples are to be selected from each consignment of manufactured rivets. Dump tests as detailed in 2.5 are to be carried out on each sample.

### 2.7 Identification

2.7.1 Each package of manufactured rivets is to be identified with attached labels giving the following details:

- Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
- Alloy grade.
- Rivet size.

### 2.8 Certification of materials

2.8.1 A manufacturer's certificate is to be issued (see Ch 1,3.1) and for each consignment of manufactured rivets is to include the following particulars:

- Purchaser's name and order number.
- Description and dimensions.
- Specification.

## Section 3 Aluminium alloy castings

### 3.1 Scope

3.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for aluminium alloy castings intended for use in the construction of ships, ships for liquid chemicals and other marine structures and liquefied gas piping systems where the design temperature is not lower than minus 165°C. These materials should not be used for piping systems outside cargo tanks except for short lengths of pipes attached to the cargo tanks in which case fire-resisting insulation should be provided.

3.1.2 Castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Chapters 1 and 2 and also with the requirements of this Section.

3.1.3 As an alternative to 3.1.2, castings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section or are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1.

### 3.2 Manufacture

3.2.1 Castings are to be manufactured at foundries approved by LR.

### 3.3 Quality of castings

3.3.1 All castings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service.

### 3.4 Chemical composition

3.4.1 The chemical composition of a sample from each cast is to comply with the requirements given in Table 8.3.1. Suitable grain refining elements may be used at the discretion of the manufacturer. The content of such elements is to be reported in the ladle analysis.

3.4.2 Where it is proposed to use alloys not specified in Table 8.3.1, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

3.4.3 When a cast is wholly prepared from ingots for which an analysis is already available, and provided that no significant alloy additions are made during melting, the ingot maker's certified analysis can be accepted subject to occasional checks as required by the Surveyor.

**Table 8.3.1 Chemical composition, percentage**

Alloy Element	Al-Mg 3	Al-Si 12	Al-Si 10 Mg	Al-Si 7 High purity
Copper	0,1 max.	0,1 max.	0,1 max.	0,1 max.
Magnesium	2,5—4,5	0,1 max.	0,15—0,4	0,25—0,45
Silicon	0,5 max.	11,0—13,5	9,0—11,0	6,5—7,5
Iron	0,5 max.	0,7 max.	0,6 max.	0,2 max.
Manganese	0,6 max.	0,5 max.	0,6 max.	0,1 max.
Zinc	0,2 max.	0,1 max.	0,1 max.	0,1 max.
Chromium	0,1 max.	—	—	—
Titanium	0,2 max.	0,2 max.	0,2 max.	0,2 max.
Others each	0,05 max.	0,05 max.	0,05 max.	0,05 max.
Total	0,15 max.	0,15 max.	0,15 max.	0,15 max.
Aluminium	Remainder	Remainder	Remainder	Remainder

### 3.5 Heat treatment

3.5.1 Castings are to be supplied in the following conditions:

Grade Al-Mg 3	—	as-manufactured
Grade Al-Si 12	—	as-manufactured
Grade Al-Si 10 Mg	—	as-manufactured or solution heat treated and precipitation hardened
Grade Al-Si 7 Mg (high purity)	—	solution heat treated and precipitation hardened.

### 3.6 Mechanical tests

3.6.1 At least one tensile specimen is to be tested from each cast and, where heat treatment is involved, for each heat treatment batch from each cast. Where continuous melting is employed, 500 kg of fettled castings may be regarded as a cast.

3.6.2 The test samples are to be separately cast in moulds made from the same type of material as used for the castings. These moulds should conform to National Standards.

3.6.3 The method and procedures for the identification of the test specimens, and the castings they represent, are to be agreed with the Surveyor. The identification marks are to be maintained during the preparation of test specimens.

3.6.4 Where castings are supplied in the heat treated condition, the test samples are to be heat treated together with the castings which they represent prior to testing.

3.6.5 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 8.3.2 and/or Table 8.3.3.

# Aluminium Alloys

# Chapter 8

Sections 3 & 4

**Table 8.3.2 Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of sand-cast and investment cast reference test pieces**

Alloy	Temper (see Note)	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation %
Al-Mg 3	M	150	5
Al-Si 12	M	150	3
Al-Si 10 Mg	M	150	2
Al-Si 10 Mg	TF	220	1
Al-Si 7 Mg	TF	230	5
NOTE			
M refers to as cast condition.			
TF refers to solution heat treated and precipitation hardened condition.			

**Table 8.3.3 Minimum mechanical properties for acceptance purposes of chill-cast reference test piece**

Alloy	Temper (see Note)	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation %
Al-Mg 3	M	150	5
Al-Si 12	M	170	3
Al-Si 10 Mg	M	170	3
Al-Si 10 Mg	TF	240	1,5
Al-Si 7 Mg	TF	250	5
NOTE			
M refers to as cast condition.			
TF refers to solution heat treated and precipitation hardened condition.			

3.6.6 Where the results of a test do not comply with the requirements, the re-test procedure detailed in Ch 2,1.4 is to be applied. Where castings are to be used in the heat treated condition, the re-test sample must have been heat treated together with the castings it represents.

## 3.7 Visual examination

3.7.1 All castings are to be cleaned and adequately prepared for inspection.

3.7.2 The accuracy and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer, unless otherwise agreed.

3.7.3 Before acceptance, all castings are to be presented to the Surveyor for visual examination.

## 3.8 Rectification of defective castings

3.8.1 At the discretion of the Surveyor, small surface blemishes may be removed by local grinding.

3.8.2 Where appropriate, repair by welding may be accepted at the discretion of the Surveyor. Such repair is to be made in accordance with an approved procedure.

## 3.9 Pressure testing

3.9.1 Where required by the relevant Rules, castings are to be pressure tested before final acceptance. Unless otherwise agreed, these tests are to be carried out in the presence and to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

## 3.10 Identification

3.10.1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification which will enable all finished castings to be traced to the original cast and the Surveyor is to be given full facilities for tracing the casting when required.

3.10.2 All castings which have been tested and inspected with satisfactory results are to be clearly marked with the following details:

- Identification number, cast number or other markings which will enable the full history of the casting to be traced.
- LR or Lloyd's Register and the abbreviated name of LR's local office.
- Personal stamp of the Surveyor responsible for the inspection.
- Test pressure where applicable.
- Date of final inspection.

3.10.3 Where small castings are manufactured in large numbers, modified arrangements for identification may be specially agreed with the Surveyor.

## 3.11 Certification of materials

3.11.1 A LR certificate is to be issued (see Ch 1,3.1) giving the following particulars for each casting or batch of castings which have been accepted:

- Purchaser's name and order number.
- Description of castings and alloy type.
- Identification number.
- Ingot or cast analysis.
- General details of heat treatment, where applicable.
- Results of mechanical tests.
- Test pressure, where applicable.

## Section 4 Aluminium/steel transition joints

### 4.1 Scope

4.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for explosion bonded composite aluminium/steel transition joints used for connecting aluminium structures to steel plating.

4.1.2 Each individual application is to be separately approved as required by the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction.



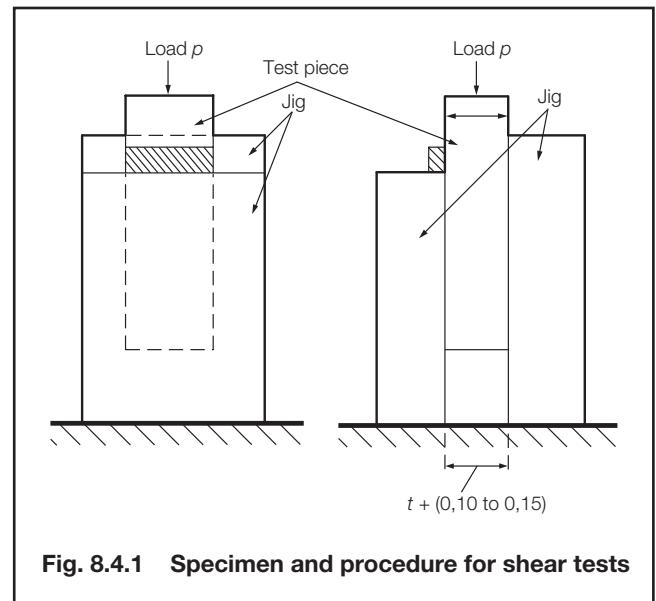
## 4.2 Manufacture

4.2.1 Transition joints are to be manufactured by an approved producer in accordance with an approved specification which is to include the maximum temperature allowable at the interface during welding.

4.2.2 The aluminium material is to comply with the requirements of Section 1 and the steel is to be of an appropriate grade complying with the requirements of Ch 3,2.

4.2.3 Alternative materials which comply with International, National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that they give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of 4.2.2 or are approved for a specific application.

4.2.4 Intermediate layers between the aluminium and steel may be used, in which case the material of any such layer is to be specified by the manufacturer and is to be recorded in the approval certificate. Any such intermediate layer is then to be used in all production transition joints.



**Fig. 8.4.1 Specimen and procedure for shear tests**

## 4.3 Visual and non-destructive examination

4.3.1 Each composite plate is to be subjected to 100 per cent visual and ultrasonic examination in accordance with a relevant National Standard to determine the extent of any unbonded areas. Unbonded areas are unacceptable and any such area plus 25 mm of surrounding sound material is to be discarded.

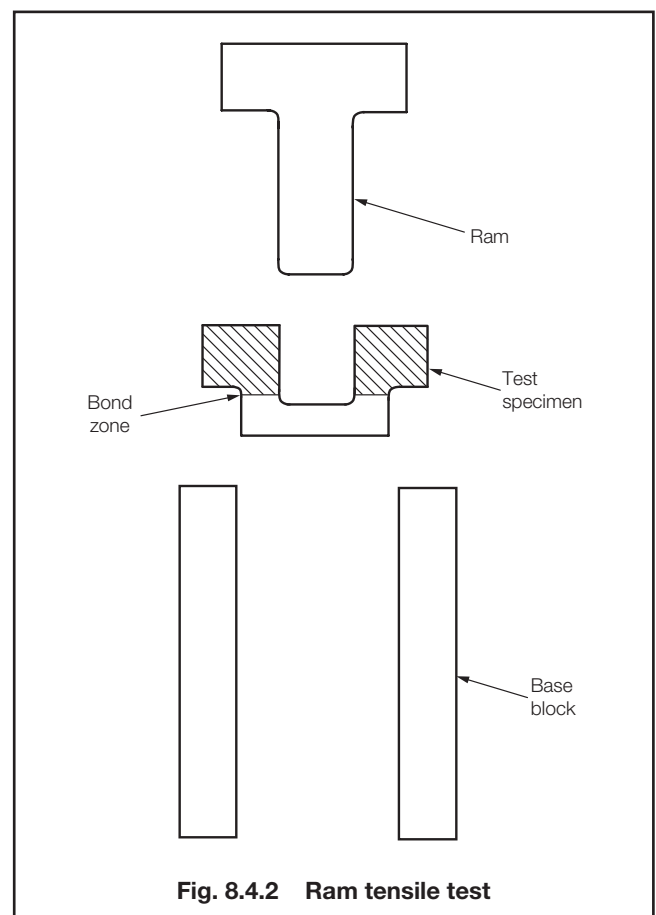
## 4.4 Mechanical tests

4.4.1 Two shear test specimens and two tensile test specimens are to be taken from each end of each composite plate for tests to be made on the bond strength. One shear and one tensile test specimen from each end are to be tested at ambient temperature after heating to the maximum allowable interface temperature, see 4.2.1; the other two specimens are to be tested without heat treatment.

4.4.2 Shear tests may be made on a specimen as shown in Fig. 8.4.1 or an appropriate equivalent. Tensile tests may be made across the interface by welding extension pieces to each surface or by the ram method shown in Fig. 8.4.2 or by an appropriate alternative method.

4.4.3 The shear and tensile strengths of all the test specimens are to comply with the requirements of the manufacturing specification.

4.4.4 If either the shear or tensile strength of the bond is less than the specified minimum but not less than 70 per cent of the specified minimum, two additional shear and two tensile test specimens from each end of the composite plate are to be tested and, in addition, bend tests as described in 4.4.6 and Table 8.4.1 are to be made.



**Fig. 8.4.2 Ram tensile test**

**Table 8.4.1**      **Bend tests on explosion bonded aluminium/steel composites**

Type of test	Minimum bend, degrees	Diameter of former
Aluminium in tension	90	3 <i>T</i>
Steel in tension	90	3 <i>T</i>
Side bend	90	6 <i>T</i>
NOTE <i>T</i> is the total thickness of the composite plate.		

4.4.5 If either the shear or tensile strength of the bond is less than 70 per cent of the specified minimum the cause is to be investigated. After evaluation of the results of this investigation, LR will consider the extent of composite plate which is to be rejected.

4.4.6 Bend tests, when required, are to be made under the following conditions, as listed in Table 8.4.1:

- (a) The aluminium plate is in tension.
- (b) The steel plate is in tension.
- (c) A side bend is applied.

## 4.5 Identification

4.5.1 Each acceptable transition strip is to be clearly marked with the following particulars:

- (a) LR or Lloyd's Register and the abbreviated name of LR's local office.
- (b) Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
- (c) Identification mark for the grade of aluminium.
- (d) Identification mark for the grade of steel.

The particulars are to be stamped on the aluminium surface at one end of the strip.

## 4.6 Certification of materials

4.6.1 A manufacturer's certificate validated by LR is to be issued (see Ch 1,3.1) and as a minimum is to include the following particulars:

- (a) Purchaser's name and order number.
- (b) The contract number for which the material is intended, if known.
- (c) Address to which the material is dispatched.
- (d) Description and dimensions of the material.
- (e) Specifications or grades of both the aluminium alloy and the steel and any intermediate layer.
- (f) Cast numbers of the steel and aluminium plates.
- (g) Identification number of the composite plate.
- (h) Mechanical test results (not required on shipping statement).



# Copper Alloys

## Chapter 9

### Section 1

#### Section

- 1 **Castings for propellers**
- 2 **Castings for valves, liners and bushes**
- 3 **Tubes**

### Section 1 Castings for propellers

#### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section gives the requirements for copper alloy castings for one-piece propellers and separately cast blades and bosses for fixed pitch and controllable pitch propellers (CPP). These include contra-rotating propellers and propulsors fitted to podded drives and azimuth units.

1.1.2 These castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Chapters 1 and 2 and the specific requirements of this Section.

1.1.3 As an alternative to 1.1.2, castings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section or alternatively are approved for a specific application.

1.1.4 The appropriate requirements of this Section may also be applied to the repair and inspection of propellers which have been damaged during service.

1.1.5 Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1.

#### 1.2 Manufacture

1.2.1 All castings are to be manufactured at foundries approved by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').

1.2.2 The pouring is to be carried out into dried moulds using degassed liquid metal. The pouring is to avoid turbulent flow. Special devices and/or procedures are to be used to prevent slag flowing into the mould.

#### 1.3 Quality of castings

1.3.1 All castings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service.

1.3.2 The removal and repair of defects are dealt with in 1.9 and 1.10.

#### 1.4 Chemical composition

1.4.1 The chemical compositions of samples from each melt are to comply with the manufacturing specification approved by LR and also with the overall limits given in Table 9.1.1. In addition to carrying out chemical analysis for the elements given in the Table, it is expected that manufacturers will ensure that any harmful residual elements are within acceptable limits.

1.4.2 The use of alloys whose chemical compositions are different from those detailed in Table 9.1.1 will be given special consideration by LR.

1.4.3 The manufacturer is to maintain records of all chemical analyses, which are to be made available to the Surveyor so that he can satisfy himself that the chemical composition of each casting is within the specified limits.

**Table 9.1.1 Chemical composition of propeller and propeller blade castings**

Alloy designation	Chemical composition of ladle samples %							
	Cu	Sn	Zn	Pb	Ni	Fe	Al	Mn
Grade Cu 1 Manganese bronze (high tensile brass)	52–62	0,1–1,5	35–40	0,5 max.	1,0 max.	0,5–2,5	0,5–3,0	0,5–4,0
Grade Cu 2 Ni-manganese bronze (high tensile brass)	50–57	0,1–1,5	33–38	0,5 max.	2,5–8,0	0,5–2,5	0,5–2,0	1,0–4,0
Grade Cu 3 Ni-aluminium bronze	77–82	0,1 max.	1,0 max.	0,03 max.	3,0–6,0 (see Note)	2,0–6,0 (see Note)	7,0–11,0	0,5–4,0
Grade Cu 4 Mn-aluminium bronze	70–80	1,0 max.	6,0 max.	0,05 max.	1,5–3,0	2,0–5,0	6,5–9,0	8,0–20,0
NOTE For Naval ships, the nickel content is to be higher than the iron content.								

1.4.4 When a melt is wholly prepared from ingots for which an analysis is already available, and provided that no significant alloy additions are made during melting, the ingot maker's certified analysis can be accepted subject to occasional checks as required by the Surveyor. If any foundry returns are added to the melts, the ingot manufacturer's chemical analyses are to be supplemented by frequent checks as required by the Surveyor.

1.4.5 For alloys Grade Cu 1 and Cu 2, the zinc equivalent shall not exceed 45 per cent, and is to be calculated using the following formula:

$$\text{zinc equivalent \%} = 100 - \frac{100 \times \% \text{Cu}}{100 + A}$$

where A is the algebraic sum of the following:

- 1 x % Sn
- 5 x % Al
- 0,5 x % Mn
- 0,1 x % Fe
- 2,3 x % Ni

1.4.6 Samples for metallographic examination are to be prepared from the ends of test bars cast from every melt of Grade Cu 1 and Cu 2 alloys. The proportion of alpha-phase determined from the average of at least five counts is to be not less than 25 per cent.

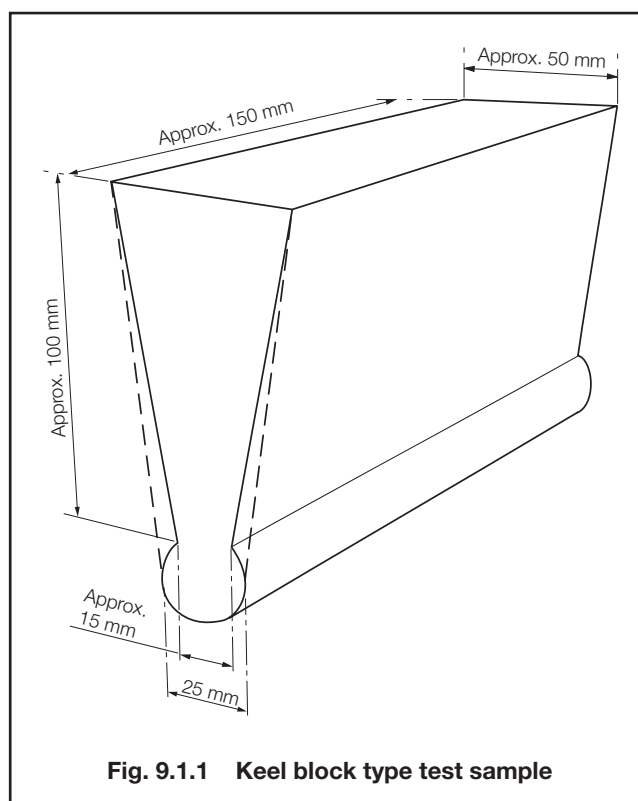


Fig. 9.1.1 Keel block type test sample

## 1.5 Heat treatment

1.5.1 At the option of the manufacturer, castings may be supplied in the 'as-cast' or heat treated condition. However, if heat treatment is to be applied, full details are to be included in the manufacturing specification.

1.5.2 If any welds are made in the propeller casting, stress relief heat treatment is required in order to minimise the residual stresses. Requirements concerning such heat treatment are given in 1.10.

## 1.6 Test material

1.6.1 Test samples are to be cast separately from each melt used for the manufacture of propeller or propeller blade castings.

1.6.2 The test samples are to be of the keel block type, generally in accordance with the dimensions given in Fig. 9.1.1 and are to be cast in moulds made from the same type of material as used for the castings.

1.6.3 The method and procedures for the identification of the test specimens, and the castings they represent, are to be agreed with the Surveyor. The identification marks are to be transferred and maintained during the preparation of test specimens.

1.6.4 Where castings are supplied in the heat treated condition, the test samples are to be heat treated together with the castings which they represent.

## 1.7 Mechanical tests

1.7.1 At least one tensile test specimen representative of each cast is to be prepared. The dimensions of this test specimen are to be in accordance with Fig. 2.2.1 in Chapter 2.

1.7.2 The results of all tensile tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 9.1.2.

1.7.3 The mechanical properties of alloys whose chemical compositions do not accord with Table 9.1.1 are to comply with a manufacturing specification approved by LR.

Table 9.1.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes: propeller and propeller blade castings

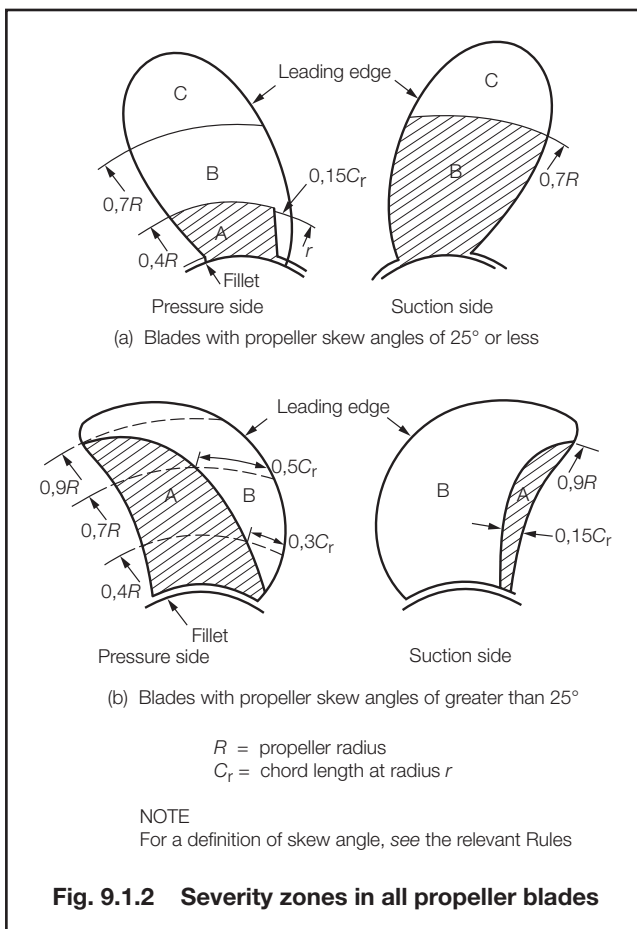
Alloy designation	0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum
Grade Cu 1 Manganese bronze (high tensile brass)	175	440	20
Grade Cu 2 Ni-manganese bronze (high tensile brass)	175	440	20
Grade Cu 3 Ni-aluminium bronze	245	590	16
Grade Cu 4 Mn-aluminium bronze	275	630	18

## 1.8 Inspection and non-destructive examination

1.8.1 Propeller castings should be visually inspected at all stages of manufacture. The manufacturer is to draw any significant imperfections to the attention of the Surveyor. Such imperfections are to be verified in accordance with 1.9.

1.8.2 All finished castings are to be subjected to a comprehensive visual examination by the Surveyor, including internal surfaces such as the bore and bolt holes.

1.8.3 For the purpose of these requirements, the blades of propellers, including CPP blades, are divided into three severity Zones A, B and C as shown in Fig. 9.1.2 and detailed in 1.8.4 for blades having skew angles of  $25^\circ$  or less and 1.8.5 for blades having skew angles of greater than  $25^\circ$ .



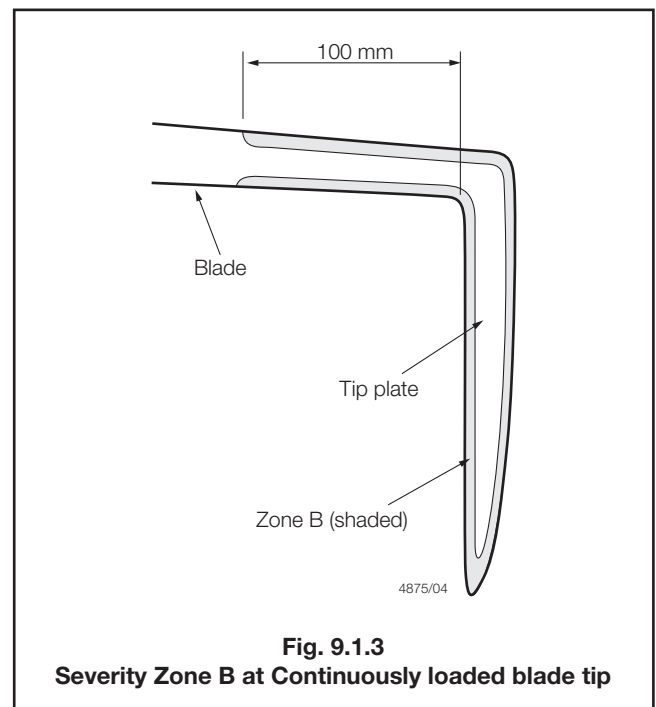
### 1.8.4 Skew angles of $25^\circ$ or less:

- Zone A is the area on the pressure side of the blade from and including the root fillet to  $0,4R$  and bounded by the trailing edge and by a line at a distance  $0,15$  times the chord length from the leading edge.
- Zone B includes the areas inside  $0,7R$  on both sides of the blade, excluding Zone A.
- Zone C includes the areas outside  $0,7R$  on both sides of the blade.

### 1.8.5 Skew angles of greater than $25^\circ$ :

- Zone A is the area on the pressure side of the blade bounded by, and including, the root fillet and a line running from the junction of the leading edge with the root fillet to the trailing edge at  $0,9R$  and passing through the mid-point of the chord at  $0,7R$  and a point situated at  $0,3$  of the chord length from the leading edge at  $0,4R$ .
- Zone A also includes the area along the trailing edge on the suction side of the blade from the root to  $0,9R$  and with its inner boundary at  $0,15$  of the chord length tapering to meet the trailing edge at  $0,9R$ .
- Zone B constitutes the whole of the remainder of the blade surfaces.

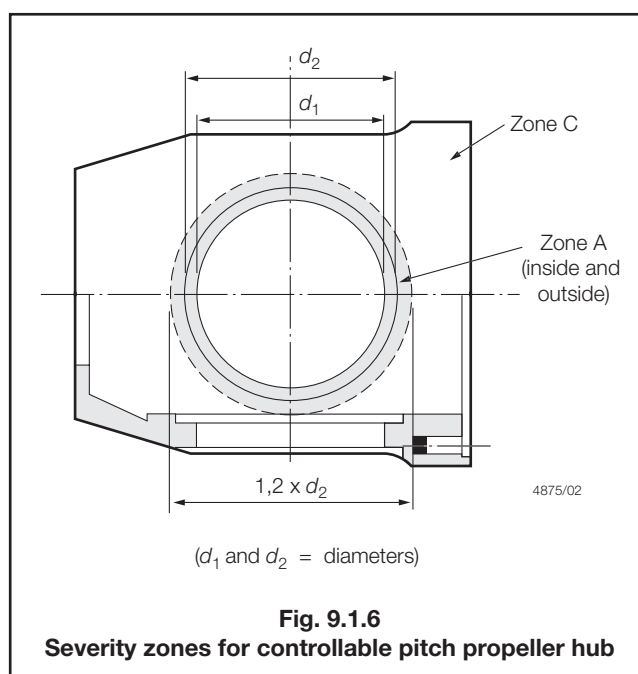
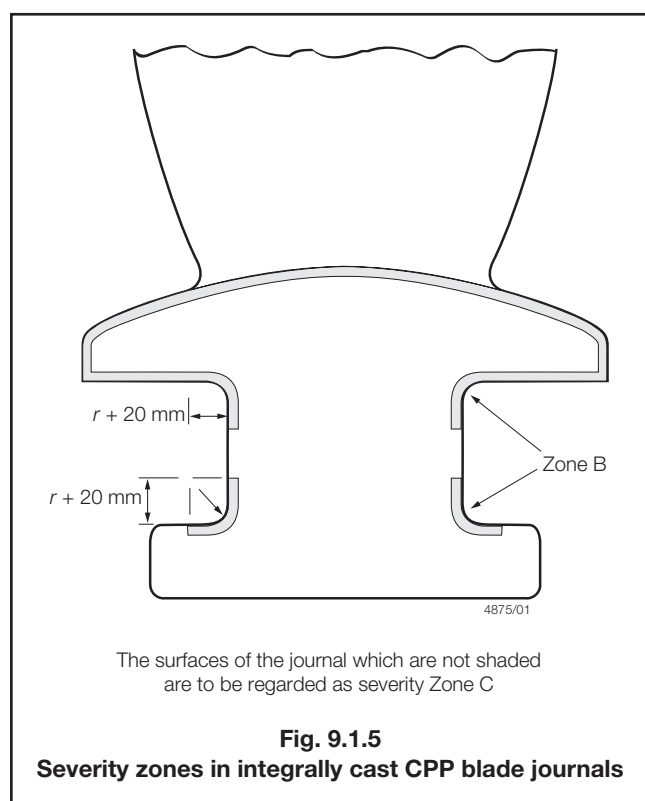
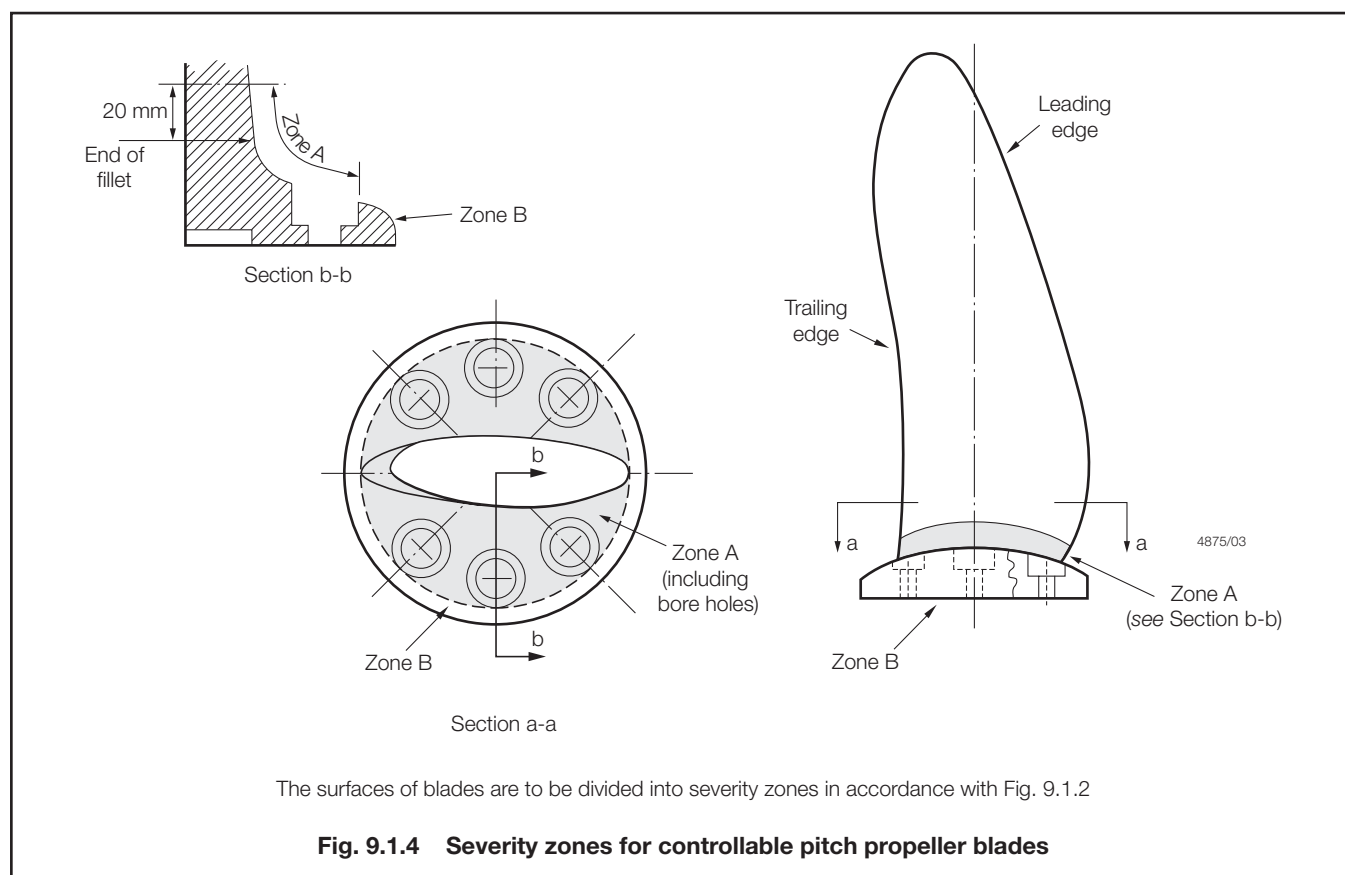
1.8.6 In propeller blades with continuously loaded tips (CLT), the whole of the tip plate and the adjoining blade to a distance of  $100\text{ mm}$  is to be regarded as severity Zone B, see Fig. 9.1.3. For propellers with diameters less than  $2\text{ m}$ , the width of this zone may be reduced to one tenth of the propeller radius.



1.8.7 In addition, the palm of a CPP blade is divided into severity Zones A and B as shown in Fig. 9.1.4.

1.8.8 If a CPP blade has an integrally cast journal, the fillets of the journal and the adjoining material up to a distance of  $20\text{ mm}$  from the fillet run-outs are to be regarded as Zone B, as indicated in Fig. 9.1.5. The remainder of the surface of the journal may be regarded as Zone C.

1.8.9 Hubs of controllable pitch propellers are to contain a Zone A region at each blade port as shown in Fig. 9.1.6. The remainder may be regarded as Zone C.



# Copper Alloys

## Chapter 9

### Section 1

**1.8.10** On completion of machining and grinding, the whole surface of each casting is to be subjected to a dye penetrant inspection in accordance with a procedure acceptable to LR.

**1.8.11** All dye penetrant inspections on Zone A areas in the finished condition are to be made in the presence of the Surveyor.

**1.8.12** Dye penetrant inspections on Zones B and C are to be performed by the manufacturer and may be witnessed at the Surveyor's request.

**1.8.13** The surface to be inspected shall be divided into reference areas of 100 cm<sup>2</sup>. The indications detected shall, with respect to their size and number, not exceed the values given in Table 9.1.3. The area shall be taken in the most unfavourable location relative to the indication being evaluated.

**1.8.14** Indications exceeding the acceptance standard in Table 9.1.3 shall be repaired in accordance with 1.9.

**1.8.15** All defects requiring repair by welding in new propeller castings are to be recorded on sketches showing their locations and dimensions. Copies of these sketches are to be presented to the Surveyor prior to repair.

**1.8.16** Where repairs have been made either by grinding or welding, the repaired areas are to be subjected to dye penetrant inspection in the presence of the Surveyor, regardless of their location.

**1.8.17** Where no welds have to be made on a casting, the manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a statement that this is the case.

**1.8.18** Where it is suspected that a casting contains internal defects, radiographic and/or ultrasonic examination may be required by the Surveyor. The acceptance criteria are to be agreed between the manufacturer and LR in accordance with a recognised standard. The standard ASTM E272-99 (Severity Level 2) or equivalent is to be the radiographic acceptance standard for copper alloy castings. Ultrasonic testing of Cu 1 and Cu 2 is not considered in these Rules. For Cu 3 and Cu 4, ultrasonic inspection of defects may be possible and is to comply with the requirements for steel castings.

**1.8.19** The measurement of dimensional accuracy is the responsibility of the manufacturer but the report on dimensional inspection is to be presented to the Surveyor who may require checks to be made and to witness such checks.

**1.8.20** Static balancing is to be carried out on all propellers in accordance with the approved plan. Dynamic balancing is necessary for propellers running above 500 rpm.

### 1.9 Rectification of defective castings

**1.9.1** The rectification of defective propeller and propeller blade castings is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements given in 1.9.2 to 1.9.12.

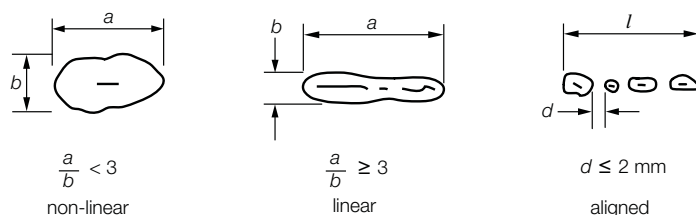
**Table 9.1.3 Allowable number and size of dye penetrant indications in a reference area of 100 cm<sup>2</sup> (see Note 1)**

Severity Zones	Max. total number of indications	Type of indications (see Note 2)	Max. number of each type (see Notes 3 and 4)	Max. acceptable value for 'a' or 'l' of indications (mm) (see Note 2)
A	7	Non-linear Linear Aligned	5 2 2	4 3 3
B	14	Non-linear Linear Aligned	10 4 4	6 6 6
C	20	Non-linear Linear Aligned	14 6 6	8 6 6

#### NOTES

1. The reference area is defined as an area of 0,1 m<sup>2</sup>, which may be square or rectangular, with the major dimension not exceeding 250 mm. The area shall be taken in the most unfavourable location relative to the indication being evaluated.

2. Non-linear, linear and aligned indications are defined as follows:



3. Only indications that have any dimension greater than 1,5 mm shall be considered relevant.

4. Single non-linear indications less than 2 mm in Zone A and less than 3 mm in other zones may be disregarded.

5. The total number of non-linear indications may be increased to the maximum total number, or part thereof, represented by the absence of linear or aligned indications.

1.9.2 The rectification of small indications within the acceptance standard of Table 9.1.3 is not generally required except where they occur in closely spaced groups.

1.9.3 Where, in the surface of the end face or bore of a propeller boss, local pores are present which do not themselves adversely affect the strength of the casting, they may be filled with a suitable plastic filler after the appropriate preparation of the defective area. The foundry is to maintain records and details of all castings which have been so rectified.

1.9.4 Where unacceptable defects are found in a casting, they are to be removed by mechanical means, and the surfaces of the resulting depressions are subsequently to be ground smooth. Complete elimination of the defects is to be proved by adequate dye penetrant inspection.

1.9.5 Shallow grooves or depressions resulting from the removal of defects may, at the discretion of the Surveyor, be accepted provided that they will cause no appreciable reduction in the strength of the castings and that they are suitably blended by grinding.

1.9.6 Welded repairs are to be undertaken only when they are considered to be necessary and approved by the Surveyor. In general, welds having an area less than 5 cm<sup>2</sup> are to be avoided.

1.9.7 All weld repairs are to be carried out in accordance with qualified procedures by suitably qualified welders, and are to be completed to the satisfaction of the Surveyor. Records are to be made available to the Surveyor.

1.9.8 Welding is generally not permitted in Zone A and will only be allowed after special consideration.

1.9.9 Prior approval by the Surveyor is required for any welds in Zone B. Complete details of the repair procedure are to be submitted for each case.

1.9.10 Repair by welding is allowed in Zone C provided that there is compliance with 1.9.6 and 1.9.7.

1.9.11 The maximum area of any single repair and the maximum total area of repair in any one zone or region are given in Table 9.1.4.

1.9.12 Where it is proposed to exceed the areas given in Table 9.1.4, the nature and extent of the repair work are to be approved by the Surveyor before commencement of the repair.

## 1.10 Weld repair procedure

1.10.1 Welding is to be carried out under cover in positions free from draughts and adverse weather conditions.

1.10.2 The manufacturer is to submit a detailed welding procedure specification covering the weld preparation, welding parameters, filler metal, preheating, post-weld heat treatment and inspection procedures.

**Table 9.1.4 Permissible rectification of new propellers by welding**

Severity zone or region	Maximum individual area of repair	Maximum total area of repairs
Zone A	Weld repairs not generally permitted	
Zone B	60 cm <sup>2</sup> or 0,6% x S whichever is the greater	200 cm <sup>2</sup> or 2% x S, whichever is the greater in combined Zones B and C but not more than 100 cm <sup>2</sup> or 0,8% x S, whichever is the greater, in Zone B on the pressure side
Zone C		
Other regions (see Note)	17 cm <sup>2</sup> or 1,5% area of the region whichever is the greater	50 cm <sup>2</sup> or 5% x area of the region whichever is the greater
where $S = \text{area of one side of a blade} = 0,79 \frac{D^2 B}{N}$ $D = \text{finished diameter of propeller}$ $B = \text{developed area ratio}$ $N = \text{number of blades}$		
NOTE Other regions include: (a) the bore; (b) the forward and aft faces of the boss; (c) the outer surface of the boss to the start of the blade root fillets; (d) the inner face of a CPP blade palm; (e) all surfaces of CPP nose cones; (f) the surfaces of integral journals to CPP blades other than the fillets.		

1.10.3 Before welding is started, Welding Procedure Qualification tests are to be carried out and witnessed by the Surveyor. Each welder is to be qualified to carry out the proposed welding using the same process, consumable and position which are to be used for the repair.

1.10.4 Defects to be repaired by welding are to be removed completely by mechanical means (e.g. grinding, chipping or milling). Removal of defects in accordance with the requirements for Zone A is to be demonstrated by dye penetrant inspection in the presence of the Surveyor. The excavation is to be prepared in a manner which will allow good fusion and is to be clean and dry.

1.10.5 Metal arc welding with the electrodes or filler wire used in the procedure tests is to be used for all types of repairs. Welds should preferably be made in the downhand (flat) position. Where necessary, suitable preheat is to be applied before welding, and the preheat temperature is to be maintained until welding is completed.

1.10.6 When flux coated electrodes are used they are to be dried immediately before use, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1.10.7 All slag, undercuts and other defects are to be removed before the subsequent run is deposited.



# Copper Alloys

# Chapter 9

Section 1

**1.10.8** With the exception given in 1.10.9, all weld repairs in areas of solid propellers exposed to sea-water, and all repairs to separately cast blades, are to be stress relief heat treated.

**1.10.9** Stress relief heat treatment is not mandatory after welding Grade Cu 3 castings in Zone C unless a welding consumable susceptible to stress corrosion (e.g. complying with the composition range of Grade Cu 4) is used. All welds in Zones A and B however, must be stress relieved by heat treatment, regardless of alloy.

**1.10.10** Propeller and propeller blades are to be stress relieved within the following temperature ranges:

alloy Grades Cu 1 and Cu 2	350°C to 550°C
alloy Grade Cu 3	450°C to 500°C
alloy Grade Cu 4	450°C to 600°C

Soaking times are to be in accordance with Table 9.1.5, and subsequent cooling from the soaking temperature is to be suitably controlled to minimise residual stresses and is not to exceed 50°C per hour until the temperature is below 200°C. Care should be taken to avoid heating castings in the Grade Cu 3 alloy at temperatures between 300° and 400°C for prolonged periods.

**Table 9.1.5 Soaking times for stress relief heat treatment of copper alloy propellers**

Stress relief temperature °C (see Notes)	Alloy Grade Cu1 and Cu2		Alloy Grade Cu3 and Cu4	
	Hours per 25 mm of thickness	Maximum recommended total time hours	Hours per 25 mm of thickness	Maximum recommended total time hours
350	5	15	—	—
400	1	5	—	—
450	1/2	2	5	15
500	1/4	1	1	5
550	1/4	1/2	1/2	2
600	—	—	1/4	1
NOTES				
1. Treatment at 550°C is not applicable to alloy Grade Cu3.				
2. Treatment at 600°C is only applicable to alloy Grade Cu4.				

**1.10.11** Stress relief heat treatment is to be carried out, where possible, in furnaces having suitable atmosphere and temperature control. Sufficient thermocouples are to be attached to the casting to measure the temperature at positions of extremes of thickness.

**1.10.12** As an alternative to 1.10.11, local stress relief heat treatment may be accepted, provided that the Surveyor is satisfied that the technique will be effective and that adequate precautions are taken to prevent the introduction of detrimental temperature gradients. Where local stress relief heat treatment is approved, adequate temperature control is to be provided. The area of the propeller or blade adjacent to the repair is to be suitably monitored and insulated to ensure that the required temperature is maintained and that temperature gradients are moderate. Care should be taken to select the shape of an area to be heat treated which will minimise residual stresses.

**1.10.13** On completion, welds are to be ground smooth for visual examination and dye penetrant inspection. Where a propeller or propeller blade is to be stress relief heat treated, a visual examination is to be made before heat treatment, and both visual and dye penetrant examinations are to be made after the stress relief heat treatment. Irrespective of location, all weld repairs are to be assessed according to Zone A in Table 9.1.3.

**1.10.14** The foundry is to maintain full records detailing the weld procedure, heat treatment and extent and location on drawings of repairs made to each casting. These records are to be available for review by the Surveyor, and copies of individual records are to be supplied to the Surveyor on request.

**1.10.15** LR reserves the right to restrict the amount of repair work accepted from a manufacturer when it appears that repetitive defects are the result of improper foundry techniques or practices.

## 1.11 Identification

**1.11.1** Castings are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1. The following details are to be shown on all castings which have been accepted:

- Identification mark which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
- Alloy grade.
- LR or Lloyd's Register and the abbreviated name of LR local office.
- Personal stamp of Surveyor responsible for the final inspection.
- Date of final inspection.
- Skew angle, if in excess of 25°. See Pt 5, Ch 7,1 of the Rules for Ships for the definition of skew angle.

## 1.12 Certification of materials

**1.12.1** A LR certificate is to be issued for each propeller, see Ch 1,3.1

**1.12.2** The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with the following particulars for each casting:

- Purchaser's name and order number.
- Description of casting.
- Alloy designation and/or trade name.
- Identification number of casting.
- Cast identification number if different from (d).
- Details of heat treatment, where applicable.
- Skew angle, if in excess of 25°. See the relevant Rules for the definition of skew angle.
- Final weight of casting.
- Results of non-destructive tests and details of test procedures.
- Proportion of alpha-structure for Cu1 and Cu2 alloys.
- Results of mechanical tests.
- A sketch showing the location and extent of welding repairs (if any).

## Section 2 Castings for valves, liners and bushes

### 2.1 Scope

2.1.1 This Section makes provision for copper alloy castings for valves, liners, bushes and other fittings intended for use in the construction of ships, other marine structures, machinery and pressure piping systems.

2.1.2 Castings are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Chapters 1 and 2, and also with the requirements given in this Section.

2.1.3 As an alternative to 2.1.2, castings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1.

### 2.2 Manufacture

2.2.1 Castings are to be manufactured at foundries approved by LR.

### 2.3 Quality of castings

2.3.1 All castings are to be free from surface or internal defects which would be prejudicial to their proper application in service.

### 2.4 Chemical composition

2.4.1 The chemical composition is to comply with the requirements of a National or International Standard and, where appropriate, with the limits for the principal elements of the preferred alloys listed in Tables 9.2.1 and 9.2.2.

2.4.2 With the exception given in 2.4.3, chemical analysis is required on each cast.

2.4.3 Where a cast is wholly prepared from ingots for which an analysis is already available, and provided that no significant alloy additions are made during melting, the ingot maker's certified analysis can be accepted subject to occasional check tests as requested by the Surveyor. The frequency of these check tests should, as a minimum, be one in every ten casts. If one of these check analyses fails to comply with the specification, checks are to be made on the previous and subsequent melts. If one or both of these further analyses is unsatisfactory, chemical analysis is to be carried out on all further melts until the Surveyor is satisfied that a return can be made to the use of occasional check tests.

### 2.5 Heat treatment

2.5.1 Where required by the specification, castings may be supplied in either the 'as-cast' or heat treated condition.

2.5.2 Where castings are supplied in a heat treated condition, the test samples are to be heat treated with the castings they represent prior to the preparation of the tensile test specimens.

### 2.6 Test material

2.6.1 Test material sufficient for the tests specified in 2.6.4 and for possible re-test purposes is to be provided for each cast of material.

2.6.2 The test material is to be separately cast into moulds made of the same material as that used for the castings they represent.

2.6.3 For the alloys listed in Table 9.2.1, sand cast test bars are generally to be in accordance with Fig. 9.2.1.

2.6.4 For the alloys listed in Table 9.2.2, keel block type test samples are to be in accordance with Fig. 9.1.1.

**Table 9.2.1 Chemical compositions of long freezing range alloys: principal elements only**

Alloy type	Designation	Chemical composition						Typical applications
		Cu	Sn	Zn	Pb	Ni	P	
Phosphor bronze	Cu Sn11P Cu Sn12	87,0 – 89,5 85,0 – 88,5	10,0 – 11,5 11,0 – 13,0	0,05 max. 0,50 max.	0,25 max. 0,7 max.	0,10 max. 2,0 max.	0,5 – 1,0 0,60 max.	Liners, bushes, valves and fittings
Gunmetal	Cu Sn10 Zn2	Remainder	9,5 – 10,5	1,75 – 2,75	1,5 max.	1,0 max.	—	Liners, valves and fittings
Leaded gunmetal	Cu Sn5 Zn5 Pb5	83,0 – 87,0	4,0 – 6,0	4,0 – 6,0	4,0 – 6,0	2,0 max.	0,10 max.	Bushes, valves and fittings
	Cu Sn7 Zn2 Pb3	85,0 – 89,0	6,0 – 8,0	1,5 – 3,0	2,5 – 3,5	2,0 max.	0,10 max.	
	Cu Sn7 Zn4 Pb7	81,0 – 85,0	6,0 – 8,0	2,0 – 5,0	5,0 – 8,0	2,0 max.	0,10 max.	
	Cu Sn6 Zn4 Pb2	86,0 – 90,0	5,5 – 6,5	3,0 – 5,0	1,0 – 2,0	1,0 max.	0,05 max.	
Leaded bronze	Cu Sn10 Pb10	78,0 – 82,0	9,0 – 11,0	2,0 max.	8,0 – 11,0	2,0 max.	0,10 max.	Bushes
	Cu Sn5 Pb9	80,0 – 87,0	4,0 – 6,0	2,0 max.	8,0 – 10,0	2,0 max.	0,10 max.	
	Cu Sn7 Pb15	74,0 – 80,0	6,0 – 8,0	2,0 max.	13,0 – 17,0	0,5 – 2,0	0,10 max.	
	Cu Sn5 Pb20	70,0 – 78,0	4,0 – 6,0	2,0 max.	18,0 – 23,0	0,5 – 2,5	0,10 max.	



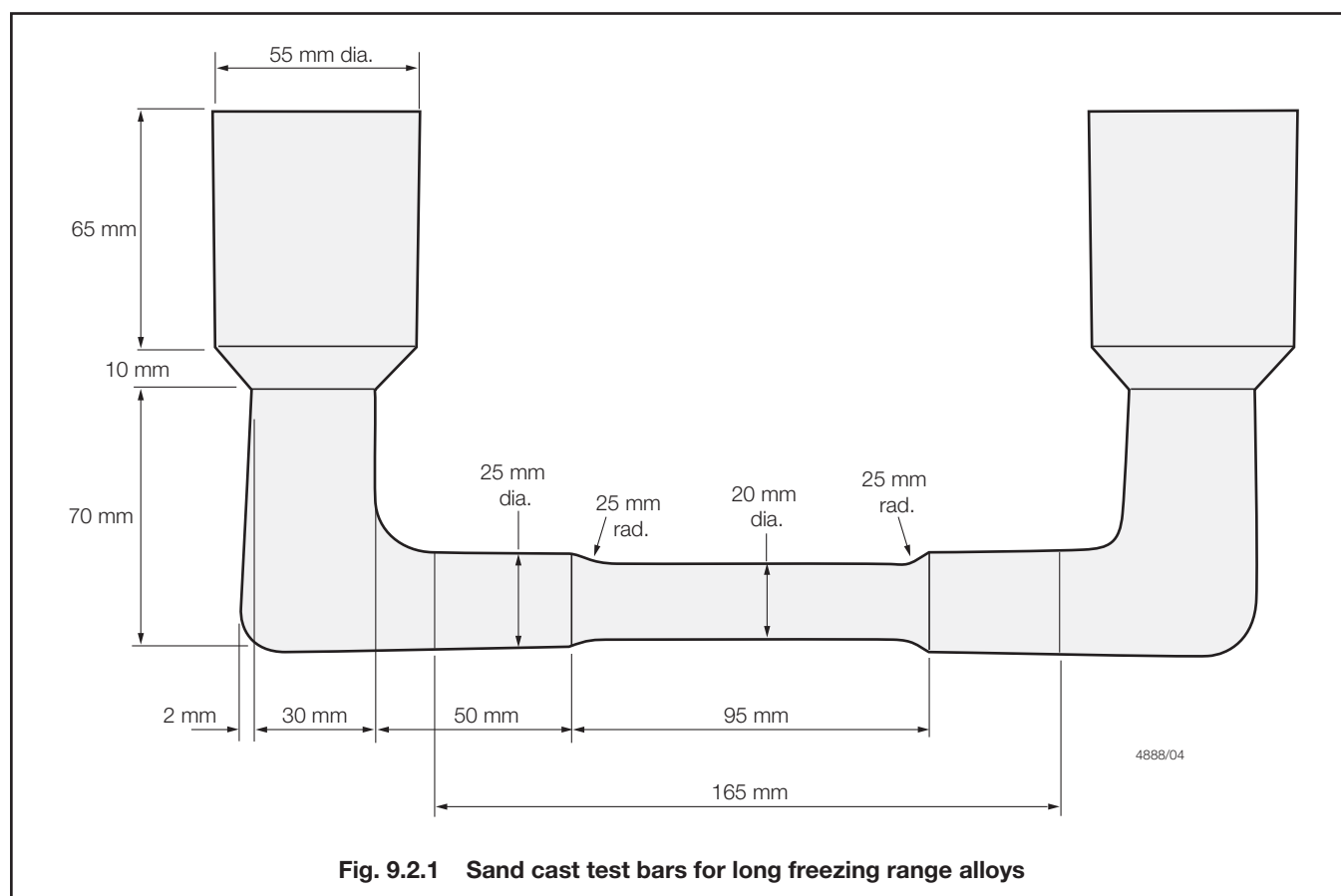
**Table 9.2.2 Chemical compositions of short freezing range alloys: principal elements only**

Alloy type	Designation	Chemical composition								Typical applications
		Cu	Ni	Fe	Mn	Cr	Nb	Si	Al	
Copper 30% nickel	Cu Ni30 Fe1 Mn1	64,5 min.	29,0–31,0	0,5–1,5	0,6–1,2	–	–	0,1 max.	–	Flanges, valves and fittings
	Cu Ni30 Fe1 Mn1 Nb Si	Remainder	29,0–31,0	0,5–1,5	0,6–1,2	–	0,5–1,0	0,3–0,7	–	
	Cu Ni30 Cr2 Fe Mn Si (see Note 1)	Remainder	29,0–32,0	0,5–1,0	0,5–1,0	1,5–2,0	–	0,15–0,50	–	
Copper 10% nickel	Cu Ni10 Fe1 Mn1	84,5 min.	9,0–11,0	1,0–1,8	1,0–1,5	–	1,0 max.	0,10 max.	–	Flanges, valves and fittings
Aluminium bronze	Cu Al10 Fe5 Ni5	76,0–83,0	4,0–6,0 (see Note 2)	4,0–5,5 (see Note 2)	3,0 max.	–	–	0,1 max.	8,5–10,5	Bushes, valves and fittings
	Cu Al11 Fe6 Ni6	72,0–78,0	4,0–7,5 (see Note 2)	4,0–7,0 (see Note 2)	2,5 max.	–	–	0,1 max.	10,0–12,0	

NOTES

1. Normally alloy Cu Ni30 Cr2 Fe Mn Si contains 0,1 to 0,25% titanium and 0,05 to 0,15% zirconium.

2. For Naval ships, the nickel content is to be higher than the iron content.

**Fig. 9.2.1 Sand cast test bars for long freezing range alloys**

2.6.5 If it is proposed to use any other form of test bar, this is to be agreed in advance with the Surveyor.

2.6.6 As an alternative, for liners and bushes, the test material may be taken from the ends of the castings.

## 2.7 Mechanical tests

2.7.1 A tensile test specimen is to be prepared from each test sample. The dimensions of the specimens are to comply with Fig. 2.2.1 or Fig. 2.2.2 in Chapter 2.

2.7.2 The results of all tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Tables 9.2.3 and 9.2.4.

**Table 9.2.3 Mechanical properties of long freezing range alloys for acceptance purposes**

Alloy type	Designation	0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum (See Note 1)		Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum		Elongation on $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	
		Sand	Centrifugal	Sand	Centrifugal	Sand	Centrifugal
Phosphor bronze	Cu Sn11 P	130	170	250	330	5	4
	Cu Sn12	140	150	260	280	7	5
Gunmetal	Cu Sn10 Zn2	130	130	270	250	13	5
Leaded gunmetal	Cu Sn5 Zn5 Pb5	90	110	200	250	13	13
	Cu Sn7 Zn2 Pb3	130	130	230	260	14	12
	Cu Sn7 Zn4 Pb7	120	120	230	260	15	12
	Cu Sn6 Zn4 Pb2	110	110	220	240	15	12
Leaded bronze	Cu Sn10 Pb10	80	110	180	220	8	6
	Cu Sn5 Pb9	60	90	160	200	7	6
	Cu Sn7 Pb15	80	90	170	200	8	7
	Cu Sn5 Pb20	70	80	150	170	5	6

## NOTES

1. The 0,2% proof stress values are given for information purposes only and, unless otherwise agreed, are not required to be verified by test.
2. Castings may be supplied in the chill cast condition in which case the mechanical properties requirements are to be in accordance with a specification agreed by LR.

**Table 9.2.4 Mechanical properties of short freezing range alloys for acceptance purposes**

Alloy type	Designation	0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum (See Note 1)		Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum		Elongation on $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	
		Sand	Centrifugal	Sand	Centrifugal	Sand	Centrifugal
Copper 30% Nickel	Cu Ni30 Fe1 Mn1	120	120	340	340	18	18
	Cu Ni30 Fe1 Mn1 Nb Si	230	—	440	—	18	—
	Cu Ni30 Cr2 Fe Mn Si	250	—	440	—	18	—
Copper 10% Nickel	Cu Ni10 Fe1 Mn1	120	100	280	280	20	25
Aluminium Bronze	Cu Al10 Fe5 Ni5	250	280	600	650	13	13
	Cu Al11 Fe6 Ni6	320	380	680	750	5	5

**2.8 Inspection**

2.8.1 All castings are to be cleaned and adequately prepared for inspection. Before acceptance, all castings are to be presented to the Surveyor for visual examination. This is to include the examination of internal surfaces, where applicable.

2.8.2 For valves and other pressure components, dye penetrant inspection is required and the Surveyor is to witness the tests. Unless otherwise agreed, the acceptance criteria to be applied are to meet the requirements of Table 9.2.5, or equivalent.

2.8.3 The accuracy and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer. However, the report on dimensional inspection is to be presented to the Surveyor who may request to witness confirmatory measurements.

**Table 9.2.5 Visual and surface NDE acceptance criteria for valves and pressure components**

Defect type	Acceptance criteria for visual and surface NDE, see Note
Linear indications	Not permitted
Porosity	Individual pores are not to exceed 3 mm diameter bleed out, and the sum of the diameters of all indications in an area of 70 x 70 mm is not to exceed 24 mm <sup>2</sup>
NOTE Inspection is to be in accordance with a procedure acceptable to LR.	

## 2.9 Rectification of defective castings

2.9.1 Subject to the prior approval of the Surveyor, castings containing local porosity may be rectified by impregnation with a suitable plastic filler provided that the extent of the porosity is such that it does not adversely affect the strength of the casting.

2.9.2 Proposals to repair a defective casting by welding are to be submitted to the Surveyor before this work is commenced. The Surveyor is to be satisfied that the number, position and size of the defects are such that the castings can be efficiently repaired.

2.9.3 Where approval is given for the repair by welding, complete elimination of the defects is to be proven by adequate non-destructive testing.

2.9.4 All welding is to be in accordance with an approved and qualified weld procedure and carried out by a qualified welder.

2.9.5 A statement and/or sketch detailing the extent and position of all weld repairs is to be prepared by the manufacturer as a permanent record. These records are to be available for review by the Surveyor, and copies of individual records are to be supplied to the Surveyor on request.

2.9.6 The alloys listed in Table 9.2.1 are not satisfactory for repair by welding which is generally not permitted. Weld repairs may, however, be considered in special circumstances provided that a suitable procedure, with proof of previous satisfactory repairs is submitted to the Surveyor.

2.9.7 The welding during manufacture of liners is not permitted in any alloy containing more than 0,5 per cent lead.

## 2.10 Pressure testing

2.10.1 Where required by the relevant Rules, castings are to be pressure tested before final acceptance. Unless otherwise agreed, these tests are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyors and are to be to their satisfaction.

## 2.11 Identification

2.11.1 The manufacturer is to adopt a system of identification which will enable all finished castings to be traced to the original cast, and the Surveyor is to be given full facilities for tracing the casting when required.

2.11.2 Before acceptance, all castings which have been tested and inspected with satisfactory results are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer with the following details:

- Identification number, cast number or other markings which will enable the full history of the casting to be traced.
- LR or Lloyd's Register and the abbreviated name of LR's local office.
- Personal stamp of the Surveyor responsible for inspection.
- Test pressure, where applicable.
- Date of final inspection.

2.11.3 Where small castings are manufactured in large numbers, modified arrangements for identification may be specially agreed with the Surveyor.

## 2.12 Certification of materials

2.12.1 A LR certificate is to be issued, see Ch 1,3.1.

2.12.2 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with the following particulars for each casting or batch of castings which has been accepted:

- Purchaser's name and order number.
- Description of castings and alloy grade.
- Identification number.
- Ingot or cast analysis.
- Full details of heat treatment, where applicable.
- Mechanical test results.
- Test pressure, where applicable.

2.12.3 In addition to 2.12.2, the manufacturer is to provide, where applicable, a statement and/or sketch detailing the extent and position of all weld repairs made to each casting.

## Section 3 Tubes

### 3.1 Scope

3.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for seamless copper and copper alloy tubes intended for use in condensers, heat exchangers and pressure piping systems.

3.1.2 Tubes for Class I and II pressure systems (as defined in the relevant Rules) are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapters 1 and 2 and the requirements of this Section.

3.1.3 As an alternative to 3.1.2, tubes which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section or alternatively are approved for a specific application. Generally, survey and certification are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1.

3.1.4 Tubes for Class III pressure systems are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of a National or International Standard recognised by LR. The manufacturer's test certificate will be acceptable and is to be provided for each batch of material.

### 3.2 Manufacture

3.2.1 Tubes for Class I and II pressure systems are to be manufactured at a works approved by LR for the grade of material being supplied.

3.2.2 Tubes for Class III pressure systems are not required to be manufactured at a works approved by LR.

# Copper Alloys

## Chapter 9

### Section 3

### 3.3 Quality

3.3.1 Tubes are to be clean and free from surface and internal defects and residues from manufacturing operations.

3.3.2 The tubes are to be supplied in smooth, round, straight lengths, free from deleterious films in the bore. The ends are to be cut clean and square with the axis of the tube and are to be de-burred.

### 3.4 Dimensional tolerances

3.4.1 The tolerances on the wall thickness and diameter of the tubes are to be in accordance with a National or International Standard recognised by LR.

3.4.2 The measurement of dimensional accuracy and compliance with the specification are the responsibility of the manufacturer, but the reports are to be made available to the LR Surveyors, who may require checks to be made in their presence.

### 3.5 Chemical composition

3.5.1 The chemical composition is to comply with the requirements of a National or International Standard recognised by LR and comply with the base limits for the principal elements given in Table 9.3.1.

### 3.6 Heat treatment

3.6.1 Copper-phosphorus and aluminium brass tubes are to be supplied in the annealed condition. Aluminium brass tubes may additionally be required to be given a suitable stress relieving heat treatment when subjected to a cold straightening operation after annealing.

3.6.2 Tubes in the copper-nickel iron alloys are to be supplied in a solution heat treated condition to ensure that no iron rich phases are present.

### 3.7 Mechanical tests

3.7.1 Tubes are to be presented for test in batches of 300 lengths. A batch is to consist of tubes of the same size, manufactured from the same material grade.

3.7.2 At least one length is to be selected at random from each batch and subjected to the following tests:

- (a) Tensile test.
- (b) Flattening test.
- (c) Drift expanding test.

3.7.3 The procedures for mechanical tests and the dimensions of the test specimens are to be in accordance with Chapter 2.

3.7.4 The flattening test is to be continued until the interior surfaces of the tube meet.

3.7.5 For the drift expanding test, the mandrel is to have an included angle of 45°.

3.7.6 The results of all mechanical tests are to comply with the appropriate requirements given in Table 9.3.2.

3.7.7 At the discretion of the Surveyor, a modified testing procedure may be adopted for small quantities of materials. In such cases, these may be accepted on the manufacturer's declared chemical composition and hardness tests or other evidence of satisfactory properties.

**Table 9.3.1 Chemical composition of principal elements only**

Designation	Chemical composition %								
	Cu	As	P	Fe	Pb	Ni	Al	Mn	Zn
Copper-phosphorus deoxidised–non-arsenical	99,85 min.	—	0,013–0,050	—	—	—	—	—	—
Copper-phosphorus deoxidised–arsenical	99,2 min.	0,30–0,50	0,013–0,050	—	—	—	—	—	—
Aluminium brass	76,0–79,0	0,02–0,06	—	0,06 max.	0,07 max.	—	1,8–2,5	—	Remainder
90/10 Copper-nickel-iron (see Note)	Remainder	—	—	1,0–2,0	—	9,0–11,0	—	0,5–1,0	—
70/30 Copper-nickel-iron (see Note)	Remainder	—	—	0,40–1,00	—	29,0–33,0	—	0,5–1,5	—
NOTE Where the purchaser specifies that the product is intended for subsequent welding applications, the following limits will apply: Zn 0,50% max.      S 0,02% max. Pb 0,02% max.      C 0,05% max. P 0,02% max.									

# Copper Alloys

# Chapter 9

## Section 3

**Table 9.3.2 Mechanical properties for acceptance purposes**

Designation	0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on 5,65√S <sub>0</sub> % minimum	Drift expansion test % minimum	Grain size mm maximum (see Note)
Copper-phosphorus deoxidised–non-arsenical	65	220	40	40	—
Copper-phosphorus deoxidised–arsenical	65	220	40	40	—
Aluminium brass	125	320	40	30	0,045
90/10 Copper-nickel-iron	100	270	30	30	0,045
70/30 Copper-nickel-iron	120	360	30	30	0,045
<p>NOTE</p> <p>When a maximum grain size is specified, the structure is to be completely re-crystallised. The manufacturer is to guarantee the grain size, but testing of each batch will not be required.</p>					

## 3.8 Visual examination

3.8.1 All tubes are to be visually examined. The manufacturer is to provide adequate lighting conditions to enable an internal and external examination of the tubes to be carried out.

3.8.2 The inner and outer surfaces are to be clean and smooth but may have a superficial, dull iridescent film on both the inner and outer surfaces.

## 3.9 Stress corrosion cracking test

3.9.1 This is an accelerated test for detecting the presence in tubes of internal stresses which might result in failure, in storage or in service, due to stress corrosion cracking.

3.9.2 The test is applicable only to aluminium brass and copper-nickel-iron tubes.

3.9.3 The test specimen is to consist of a 150 mm length cut from the tube selected for mechanical tests in accordance with 3.7.2.

3.9.4 The test is to be carried out in accordance with a National or International Standard recognised by LR or by the test method given in 3.9.5.

3.9.5 The test specimen is to be immersed in a mercurous nitrate solution at room temperature for 30 minutes. Aluminium brass specimens are to be examined for cracks immediately after rinsing, while copper-nickel-iron specimens are to be examined 24 hours after rinsing.

3.9.6 Should any specimen fail to meet the requirements of this test, then all tubes represented by that specimen are to be withdrawn. The tubes may be re-submitted after stress relieving treatments for full testing in accordance with 3.7 and 3.9.

## 3.10 Hydraulic test

3.10.1 Each tube is to be subjected to a hydraulic test at the manufacturer's works.

3.10.2 The hydraulic test pressure is to be determined from the following formula, except that the maximum test pressure need not exceed 70 bar:

$$P = \frac{20st}{D}$$

where

- $P$  = test pressure, in bar
- $D$  = nominal outside diameter, in mm
- $t$  = nominal wall thickness, in mm
- $s$  = 40 for copper-phosphorus  
60 for Al-brass and  
90/10 copper nickel iron  
75 for 70/30 copper nickel iron.

3.10.3 The test pressure is to be maintained for sufficient time to permit proof that the tubes do not weep, leak or undergo a permanent increase in diameter. Unless otherwise agreed, the manufacturer's certificate of satisfactory hydraulic test will be accepted.

3.10.4 Where it is proposed to adopt a test pressure other than that determined in 3.10.2, the proposal will be subject to special consideration.

3.10.5 Subject to special approval, an automated eddy current test can be accepted in lieu of the hydraulic test. Discontinuous irregularities on the external and internal surfaces of the tubes are permitted if they are within the agreed dimensional tolerances, with the exception of cracks, which are not permitted.

## 3.11 Rectification of defects

3.11.1 The repair of defects by welding is not permitted.

**3.12 Identification**

3.12.1 Tubes are to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 1. The following details are to be shown on all materials which have been accepted:

- (a) LR or Lloyd's Register.
- (b) Manufacturer's name or trade mark.
- (c) Grade of material or designation code.
- (d) Identification number and/or initials which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.

3.12.2 Identification is to be by rubber stamp or stencils. Hard stamping is not permitted.

**3.13 Certification of materials**

3.13.1 A manufacturer's certificate validated by LR is to be issued (see Ch 1,3.1), giving the following particulars for each casting or batch of castings which has been accepted:

- (a) Purchaser's name and order number.
  - (b) Specification or grade of material.
  - (c) Description and dimensions.
  - (d) Cast number and chemical composition.
  - (e) Mechanical test results.
  - (f) Results of stress corrosion cracking test, where applicable.
  - (g) Hydraulic test report.
-

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

# Chapter 10

## Section 1

### Section

- 1 **Anchors**
- 2 **Stud link chain cables for ships**
- 3 **Stud link mooring chain cables**
- 4 **Studless mooring chain cables**
- 5 **Short link chain cables**
- 6 **Steel wire ropes**
- 7 **Fibre ropes**

## ■ Section 1 Anchors

### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Section makes provision for the manufacture and testing of anchors constructed from cast, forged and fabricated components.

1.1.2 This Section is applicable to the following types of anchor:

- (a) Ordinary.
- (b) High holding power (HHP).
- (c) Super high holding power (SHHP).

1.1.3 In the context of this Section, the reference to swivels refers to those directly attached to the anchor shank in lieu of the conventional 'D' shackle. For other mooring equipment swivels, see 2.13.

### 1.2 Manufacture

1.2.1 All anchors are to be of an approved design.

### 1.3 Cast steel anchors

1.3.1 Cast steel anchor heads, shanks, shackles and swivels are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 4,1 and Ch 4,2. The Special grade quality is to be used for anchor heads, shanks and shackles.

1.3.2 Special consideration will be given to the use of other grades of steel for the manufacture of swivels.

1.3.3 To confirm the quality of cast anchor components, the Surveyor is to witness drop and hammering tests.

1.3.4 When drop and hammering tests are required, they are to be carried out as follows:

- (a) Each anchor, or the components of an anchor made from more than one piece, is to be dropped from a clear height of 4 m onto a steel slab laid on a solid foundation.

- (b) Separately cast flukes, shanks and shackles are to be suspended horizontally from a clear height of 4 m before being dropped.
- (c) Anchors cast in one piece are to be drop tested twice from a clear height of 4 m. For the first test, the shank and flukes are to be horizontal. For the second test, two steel blocks are to be placed on the slab, arranged so that the middle of each fluke makes contact with the blocks without the crown making contact with the slab, and the orientation of the anchor is to be vertical with the crown nearest the slab.
- (d) If the slab is broken by the impact, the test is to be repeated on a new slab.

1.3.5 When hammering tests are required, they are to be carried out after the drop test on each anchor head and shank, which is slung clear of the ground, using a non-metallic sling, and hammered to check the soundness of the component. A hammer of at least 3 kg mass is to be used.

1.3.6 As part of the manufacturer's works approval, consideration may be given to carrying out drop tests in alternative locations to the manufacturer's when the facilities and location are not suitable.

1.3.7 Repair of fractures or unsoundness detected during the drop or hammering tests are not permitted and the component is to be rejected.

### 1.4 Forged steel anchors

1.4.1 Forged steel anchor pins, swivels, shanks and shackles are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 5,1 and Ch 5,2 carbon and carbon-manganese steel for welded construction. Rolled steel bar may be used provided that the requirements of Ch 5,1.2.9 are met.

1.4.2 Special consideration will be given to other grades of steel for the manufacture of swivels.

### 1.5 Fabricated steel anchors

1.5.1 Where it is proposed to use plate material for fabricated steel anchors, it is to comply with the requirements of Ch 3,2 or Ch 3,3, and the proposed manufacturing procedure is to be submitted for approval.

1.5.2 Fabricated anchors are to be manufactured in accordance with Chapter 13.

1.5.3 Stress relief is to be carried out as required in the approved welding procedure.

### 1.6 Rectification

1.6.1 All rectification is to be agreed with the Surveyor.

1.6.2 Rectification of defective castings is to be carried out in accordance with Ch 4,1.9.



# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

# Chapter 10

Section 1

1.6.3 Rectification of defective forgings is to be carried out in accordance with Ch 5,1.9.

1.6.4 Rectification of defective fabricated anchors is to be carried out by suitably qualified welders within the parameters of the approved welding procedure used in construction.

1.6.5 Rectification of defective castings, forgings or fabricated anchors by welding is to be carried out using qualified weld procedures in accordance with Ch 12,1 and Ch 12,2, and in accordance with Ch 13,1 and Ch 13,2.

## 1.7 Super high holding power (SHHP) anchors

1.7.1 The impact test requirements for SHHP anchor shackles are to be in accordance with the requirements for Grade U3 in Table 10.2.1.

## 1.8 Assembly

1.8.1 Assembly and fitting is to be carried out in accordance with the approved design.

1.8.2 Securing of anchor pins, shackle pins or swivels by welding is to be carried out by suitably qualified welders in accordance with an approved welding procedure.

## 1.9 Proof test of anchors

1.9.1 Anchors having a mass of 75 kg or more inclusive of stock (56 kg in the case of high holding power anchors) are to be tested in the presence of the Surveyor at a proving establishment recognised by LR. A list of recognised proving establishments is published separately by LR. In addition to the requirements stated in this Chapter, attention must be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship or mobile offshore unit is to be registered.

1.9.2 The anchor is to be visually examined before application of the proof test load to ensure that it is free from cracks, notches, inclusions and other surface defects that would impair the performance of the product.

1.9.3 As required by 1.9.1, each anchor is to be subjected to a proof loading test in an approved testing machine and is to withstand the load given in Table 10.1.1 for the appropriate mass of the anchor. The proof load is to be applied on the arm or on the palm at a spot which, measured from the extremity of the bill, is one-third of the distance between it and the centre of the crown. For stocked anchors, each arm is to be tested individually. For stockless anchors, both arms are to be tested at the same time, first on one side of the shank, then reversed and tested on the other.

**Table 10.1.1 Proof load tests for anchors**  
(see Notes 1 and 2)

Mass of anchor (1.6.5) kg	Proof test load kN	Mass of anchor (1.6.5) kg	Proof test load kN	Mass of anchor (1.6.5) kg	Proof test load kN
50	23,2	2200	376,0	7800	861,0
55	25,2	2300	388,0	8000	877,0
60	27,1	2400	401,0	8200	892,0
65	28,9	2500	414,0	8400	908,0
70	30,7	2600	427,0	8600	922,0
75	32,4	2700	438,0	8800	936,0
80	33,9	2800	450,0	9000	949,0
90	36,3	2900	462,0	9200	961,0
100	39,1	3000	474,0	9400	975,0
120	44,3	3100	484,0	9600	987,0
140	49,0	3200	495,0	9800	998,0
160	53,3	3300	506,0	10 000	1010,0
180	57,4	3400	517,0	10 500	1040,0
200	61,3	3500	528,0	11 000	1070,0
225	65,8	3600	537,0	11 500	1090,0
250	70,4	3700	547,0	12 000	1110,0
275	74,9	3800	557,0	12 500	1130,0
300	79,5	3900	567,0	13 000	1160,0
325	84,1	4000	577,0	13 500	1180,0
350	88,8	4100	586,0	14 000	1210,0
375	93,4	4200	595,0	14 500	1230,0
400	97,9	4300	604,0	15 000	1260,0
425	103,0	4400	613,0	15 500	1280,0
450	107,0	4500	622,0	16 000	1300,0
475	112,0	4600	631,0	16 500	1330,0
500	116,0	4700	638,0	17 000	1360,0
550	125,0	4800	645,0	17 500	1390,0
600	132,0	4900	653,0	18 000	1410,0
650	140,0	5000	661,0	18 500	1440,0
700	149,0	5100	669,0	19 000	1470,0
750	158,0	5200	677,0	19 500	1490,0
800	166,0	5300	685,0	20 000	1520,0
850	175,0	5400	691,0	21 000	1570,0
900	182,0	5500	699,0	22 000	1620,0
950	191,0	5600	706,0	23 000	1670,0
1000	199,0	5700	713,0	24 000	1720,0
1050	208,0	5800	721,0	25 000	1770,0
1100	216,0	5900	728,0	26 000	1800,0
1150	224,0	6000	735,0	27 000	1850,0
1200	231,0	6100	740,0	28 000	1900,0
1250	239,0	6200	747,0	29 000	1940,0
1300	247,0	6300	754,0	30 000	1990,0
1350	255,0	6400	760,0	31 000	2030,0
1400	262,0	6500	767,0	32 000	2070,0
1450	270,0	6600	773,0	34 000	2160,0
1500	278,0	6700	779,0	36 000	2250,0
1600	292,0	6800	786,0	38 000	2330,0
1700	307,0	6900	794,0	40 000	2410,0
1800	321,0	7000	804,0	42 000	2490,0
1900	335,0	7200	818,0	44 000	2570,0
2000	349,0	7400	832,0	46 000	2650,0
2100	362,0	7600	845,0	48 000	2730,0

Proof loads for intermediate mass are to be determined by linear interpolation

### NOTES

- Where ordinary anchors have a mass exceeding 48 000 kg, the proof loads are to be taken as  $2,059 (\text{mass of anchor in kg})^{2/3}$  kN.
- Where high holding power anchors have a mass exceeding 36 000 kg, the proof loads are to be taken as  $2,452 (\text{actual mass of anchor in kg})^{2/3}$  kN.



# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

## Chapter 10

### Section 1

1.9.4 The general arrangements for the test are to be such that the complete anchor, including the shackle, shackle pins and any welded or bolted connections are included in the test. If a replacement shackle is needed which requires welding or heating for fitting, the combined anchor and shackle are to be proof load tested. If welding or heating is not involved in fitting, the shackle may be proof load tested separately from the anchor.

1.9.5 The mass to be used in Table 10.1.1 is:

- For stockless anchors, the total mass of the anchor.
- For stocked anchors, the mass of the anchor excluding the stock.
- For high holding power anchors, a nominal mass equal to 1,33 times the actual total mass of the anchor.
- For mooring anchors, including positional mooring anchors, a nominal mass equal to 1,33 times the actual total mass of the anchor, unless specifically agreed otherwise.
- For super high holding power anchors, a nominal mass equal to twice the actual total mass of the anchor.

1.9.6 For positional mooring anchors, the proof test loading is to be that required by 1.9.3 or 50 per cent of the minimum break strength of the intended anchor line, whichever is the greater.

1.9.7 The gauge length is to be measured with 10 per cent of the required load applied, before and after proof test. The two measurements shall differ by no more than 1 per cent. The gauge length is the distance between the tip of each fluke and a point on the shank adjacent to the shackle pin, see Fig. 10.1.1.

1.9.8 After proof testing, all accessible surfaces are to be visually inspected by the Surveyor.

1.9.9 Following proof testing, NDE is to be conducted as described in Table 10.1.2 for ordinary and HHP anchors and Table 10.1.3 for SHHP anchors.

1.9.10 Each casting is to be subjected to ultrasonic inspection in the region of runners and risers, or where excess material has been removed by thermal methods. This examination is to extend around the whole periphery of the casting and for a distance of  $t/3$  beyond the area affected, where  $t$  is the maximum thickness. In addition, random areas are to be selected by the Surveyor and examined.

1.9.11 Acceptance criteria for castings are to be in accordance with Chapter 4.

1.9.12 Acceptance criteria for forgings are to be in accordance with Chapter 5.

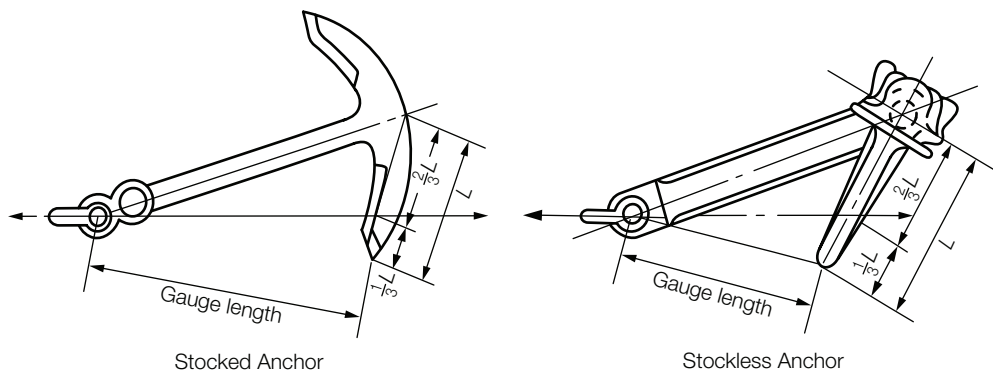
1.9.13 Paint or anti-corrosive coatings are not to be applied until these inspections are completed to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

**Table 10.1.2 NDE requirements following proof testing for Ordinary and HHP anchors**

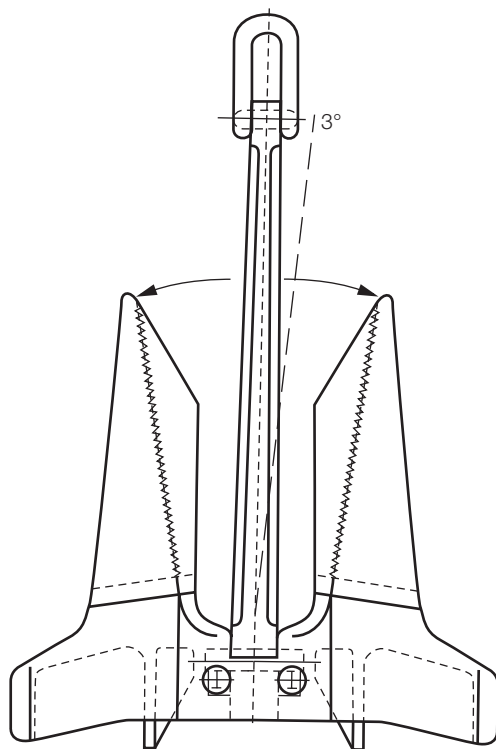
Location	Method of NDE
Feeder heads, runners and risers of castings	Magnetic particle inspection and ultrasonic test, see Note 1
All welds	Magnetic particle inspection
Forged components	Not required
Fabrication welds	Magnetic particle inspection
NOTES	
1. See also 1.9.10.	
2. Penetrant testing is to be used in lieu of magnetic particle testing for stainless steel, aluminium and copper alloy anchors.	

**Table 10.1.3 NDE requirements following proof testing for SHHP anchors**

Location	Method of NDE
Feeder heads, runners and risers of castings	Magnetic particle inspection and ultrasonic test, see Note 1
All surfaces of castings	Magnetic particle inspection
All welds	Magnetic particle inspection
Forged components	Not required
Fabrication welds	Magnetic particle inspection
NOTES	
1. See also 1.9.10.	
2. Additionally, all surfaces of all SHHP anchors are to be surface inspected by the magnetic particle or penetrant method as appropriate.	
3. Penetrant is to be used in lieu of magnetic particle testing for stainless steel, aluminium and copper alloy anchors.	



**Fig. 10.1.1 Location of gauge length measurement during proof load**



**Fig. 10.1.2 Allowable lateral movement of shank**

1.9.14 On completion of the proof testing, anchors made in more than one piece are to be examined for free movement of their heads over the complete range of rotation.

## 1.10 Clearances and tolerances

1.10.1 Where no fitting tolerances are specified on the approved plans the following assembly and fitting tolerance are to be applied.

1.10.2 The clearance either side of the shank within the shackle jaws and the shackle pin in the shank end hole is to be no more than 3 mm for small anchors up to 3 tonnes, 4 mm for anchors up to 5 tonnes, 6 mm for anchors up to 7 tonnes and is not to exceed 12 mm for larger anchors.

1.10.3 The shackle pin is to be a push fit in the eyes of the shackle, which are to be chamfered on the outside to ensure a good tightness when the pin is clenched over on fitting. The shackle pin to hole tolerance is to be no more than 0,5 mm for pins up to 57 mm and 1,0 mm for pins of larger diameter.

1.10.4 The trunnion pin is to be a snug fit within the chamber and be long enough to prevent horizontal movement. The gap is to be no more than 1 per cent of the chamber length.

1.10.5 The lateral movement of the shank is not to exceed 3 degrees from the centreline datum, see Fig. 10.1.2.

1.10.6 Unless otherwise agreed, the verification of mass and dimensions is the responsibility of the manufacturer. The Surveyor is only required to monitor this inspection. The mass of the anchor is to exclude the mass of the swivel, unless the swivel is in lieu of the conventional 'D' shackle.

## 1.11 Identification

1.11.1 Identification marks on the shank are to be approximately level with the fluke tips. On the fluke, these markings are to be approximately at a distance of two thirds from the tip of the bill to the centre line of the crown on the right hand fluke, looking from the crown towards the shank.

1.11.2 The following details are to be shown on all anchors:

- (a) LR or Lloyd's Register and abbreviated name of LR's local office issuing the certificate.
- (b) Number of the certificate.
- (c) Month and year of test.
- (d) Mass (also the letters 'HHP' when approved as high holding power anchors or 'SHHP' when approved as super high holding power anchors).
- (e) Mass of stock (in the case of stocked anchors).
- (f) National Authority requirements, as applicable.
- (g) Manufacturer's mark.

1.11.3 In addition to 1.11.2, each important part of an anchor is to be plainly marked by the maker with the words 'forged steel' or 'cast steel' as appropriate. Fabricated steel anchor heads do not require special marking.

## 1.12 Certification

1.12.1 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a written statement that the anchor has been manufactured and tested in accordance with LR Rules together with the following particulars:

- (a) Purchaser's name and order number.
- (b) Type of anchor and principal dimensions.
- (c) Mass of anchor.
- (d) Identification mark which will enable the full history of manufacture to be traced.
- (e) Chemical composition.
- (f) Details of heat treatment.
- (g) Mechanical test results.
- (h) Proof load.
- (j) Results of the non-destructive examination.
- (k) Weld location maps (cast steel anchors only).

1.12.2 Shanks, heads, pins, shackles and swivels are to be certified by LR in accordance with the relevant sections of Chapters 3, 4 and 5.

1.12.3 An LR Anchor Certificate is to be issued for the completed anchor which will include the following particulars:

- (a) Manufacturer's name.
- (b) Type of anchor.
- (c) Mass of anchor.
- (d) Grade of materials.
- (e) Proof test load.
- (f) Heat treatment.
- (g) Marking applied to anchor.
- (h) Dimensions.
- (j) General Approval of an Anchor Design Certificate Number.
- (k) Fluke and shank identification numbers.

## Section 2 Stud link chain cables for ships

### 2.1 Scope

2.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for a range of grades, U1, U2 and U3, of stud link chain and fittings intended for anchor or mooring cables for ships.

2.1.2 The requirements for offshore mooring chain cables are given in Section 3.

### 2.2 Manufacture

2.2.1 All grades of chain cable and accessories are to be manufactured by approved procedures at works approved by LR. A list of approved manufacturers of stud link chain cables and fittings is published separately by LR.

2.2.2 The links may be made by the flash-butt or other approved welding process, or in the case of Grades U2 and U3 they may be flash-butt welded or drop forged, designated U2(a) or U3(a), or cast steel designated U2(b) or U3(b), see Table 10.2.5.

2.2.3 As far as practicable, consecutive links in all chain cable should originate from a single cast or batch of bar stock (see Ch 3.9.6.1), and indicating marks should be stamped on the final link formed from one cast or batch and the first link formed from a separate cast or batch.

2.2.4 A length of chain cable is to measure not more than 27,5 m and is to comprise an odd number of links. In this context, a length is a statutory term and is the basis for the number of test samples.

### 2.3 Flash butt welded chain cable

2.3.1 Bar material is to comply with the requirements of Ch 3.9 and may be heated either by electrical resistance or in a furnace. For electrical resistance heating, the process is to be controlled by an optical heat sensor. For furnace heating, thermocouples in close proximity to the bars are to be used for control. The temperature is to be continuously recorded. In both cases, the controls are to be checked at least once every eight hours and checks are to be recorded.

2.3.2 Mechanical properties testing of U1 cable is not required. For Grade U2 cable supplied in the as-welded condition, and Grade U3 in all conditions, one tensile and one set of three Charpy V-notch impact test specimens are to be taken at the side of a link opposite the weld from at least every fourth 27,5 m length of cable. A further set of three impact test specimens is to be taken with the notch positioned at the centre of the weld, see Table 10.2.3. The test specimens are not to be selected from the same length as that from which the breaking test sample is taken, unless breaking test samples are to be taken from every length of the batch. All test samples are to be correctly identified with the lengths of cable represented.

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

# Chapter 10

Section 2

2.3.3 The test links from which the mechanical test specimens are prepared are to be made as part of the chain cable and are to be heat treated with it. They may be removed from the cable prior to heat treatment provided that each sample is heat treated with, and in the same manner as, the chain it represents and is subjected to the proof load appropriate to the chain grade and diameter prior to preparation of the mechanical test specimens.

2.3.4 The results of tests on specimens taken from the non-welded areas are to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 10.2.1. The results of tests on the welds are to comply with the requirements of Table 10.2.6.

## 2.4 Cast chain cables

2.4.1 The manufacture of cast steel chain cable is generally to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 4,1, as appropriate.

2.4.2 The chemical composition of ladle samples is to comply with the specification approved by LR.

2.4.3 Separately cast test samples are to be provided from each cast. They are to be of similar dimensions to the links they represent and are to be heat treated together with, and in the same manner as, the completed chain cable, see Table 10.2.3.

2.4.4 Tensile and Charpy V-notch impact test specimens are to be taken from each test sample and machined to the dimensions given in Ch 2,3.

2.4.5 The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 10.2.1 for the relevant grade.

## 2.5 Forged chain cables

2.5.1 The procedure for the manufacture and testing of drop forgings for chain cable will be specially considered, but is generally to be in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 5,1.

2.5.2 The chemical composition is to comply with Table 10.2.2.

2.5.3 The completed forgings are to be heat treated in accordance with Table 10.2.3.

2.5.4 Test samples in the form of forgings of similar dimensions to the links they represent and from the same cast and heat treatment charge are to be provided.

2.5.5 One tensile and three Charpy V-notch specimens are to be taken from each test sample.

2.5.6 The results of mechanical tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 10.2.1 for the relevant grade.

## 2.6 Stud material

2.6.1 Steel studs are to be used for all grades of welded chain cable. In general, the carbon content should not exceed 0,23 per cent but mechanical tests for acceptance purposes are not required.

## 2.7 Welding of studs

2.7.1 Where studs are welded into the links this is to be completed before the chain cable is heat treated.

2.7.2 The stud ends must be a good fit inside the link, and the weld is to be confined to the stud end opposite the flash-butt weld. The full periphery of the stud end is to be welded. If, however, it can be demonstrated to the Surveyor that the quality of welding is of a high standard then partial peripheral welding may be accepted provided that welds are made only at the sides of the stud and that each run extends continuously for at least 25 per cent of the stud periphery. Weld start/stop positions are not to be located in the plane of the chain cable.

2.7.3 The welds are to be made by qualified welders using an approved procedure and consumables approved to Grade 3 and low hydrogen, in accordance with Chapter 11.

2.7.4 The welds are to be of good quality and free from defects liable to impair the proper use of the chain. Undercuts, end craters and similar stress raising defects shall, where necessary, be ground off.

2.7.5 At least one stud weld within each length of cable is to be inspected using dye penetrant testing in accordance with Ch 1,5 after the chain has been proof loaded. If a crack is found, the stud welds in the adjoining links are to be inspected; if a crack is found in either link, all the stud welds in that length are to be inspected using dye penetrant.

2.7.6 The size of the stud welds is to be in accordance with Fig. 10.3.1.

## 2.8 Heat treatment of completed chain cables

2.8.1 The completed chain cable is to be heat treated in accordance with Table 10.2.3 for the appropriate grade of cable.

2.8.2 Special consideration will be given to the heat treatment of certain types of drop forged chain cable.

2.8.3 In all cases, heat treatment is to be carried out prior to the proof loading and breaking tests.

2.8.4 All test samples are to be heat treated with, and in the same way as, the chain cables they represent.

## Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

## Chapter 10

## Section 2

**Table 10.2.1 Mechanical properties of finished chain cable and fittings**

Grade	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$ % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
					Test temperature °C	Average energy J minimum
U2	295	490 – 690	22	—	0 (see Note 1)	27
U3	410	690 minimum	17	40	0 –20 (see Note 2)	60 35

NOTES

- When required see Table 10.2.3.
- Testing may be carried out at either 0°C or –20°C.
- Mechanical testing is not required for finished chain cables and fittings in Grade U1.

**Table 10.2.2 Chemical composition of butt welded and forged chain cable**

Grade	Chemical composition %												
	C max.	Si	Mn	P max.	S max.	Al	N max.	Cr max.	Cu max.	Nb max.	Ni max.	V max.	Mo max.
U1	0,20	0,15 – 0,35	0,40 min.	0,04	0,04	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
U2	0,24	0,15 – 0,55	1,60 max.	0,035	0,035	0,02 min. see Note 1	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
U3	0,33	0,15 – 0,35	1,90 max.	0,04	0,04	0,065 max. see Note 2	0,015	0,25	0,35	0,05 see Note 2	0,40	0,10 see Note 2	0,08

NOTES

- Aluminium may be partly replaced by other grain refining elements.
- To obtain fine grain steel, at least one of these grain refining elements must be present in sufficient amount.

**Table 10.2.3 Condition of supply and scope of mechanical tests for finished chain cables and fittings**

Grade	Manufacturing method	Condition of supply	Number of test specimens on every four lengths of chain cable of 27,5 m or less, or on each batch of fittings		
			Tensile test on base materials	Charpy V-notch impact test	
				Base material	Weldment
U1 cable	Flash butt welded	As welded Normalised	— —	— —	— —
U2 cable	Flash butt welded	As welded Normalised	1 —	3 —	3 —
U3 cable	Flash butt welded	Normalised Normalised and Tempered Quenched and Tempered	1	3	3
U2 cable	Cast or drop forged	Normalised	1	3	—
U3 cable	Cast or drop forged	Normalised Normalised and Tempered Quenched and Tempered	1	3	—
U2 fittings	Cast or drop forged	Normalised	1	3	—
U3 fittings	Cast or drop forged	Normalised Normalised and Tempered Quenched and Tempered	1	3	—

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

# Chapter 10

Section 2

## 2.9 Testing of completed chain cables

2.9.1 All chain cables are to be subjected to a Proof Load test and a Breaking Load test. In addition, mechanical tests should be carried out where required, see Table 10.2.3.

2.9.2 All chain cables are to be tested in the presence of a Surveyor, at a proving establishment recognised by LR. A list of recognised proving establishments is published separately by LR. In addition to the requirements stated in this Chapter, attention must be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

## 2.10 Proof load tests

2.10.1 Each length of chain cable is to be subjected to a proof loading test in an approved testing machine and is to withstand the load given in Table 10.2.4 for the appropriate grade and size of cable.

2.10.2 On completion of the test, each link is to be visually examined and is to be free from significant defects. Special attention is to be given to welds.

2.10.3 Should any link be found to be defective it is to be replaced by an approved connecting link (joining shackle or substitute link as detailed in 2.14). The chain is then to be subjected to a repeat of the proof load test followed by re-examination.

2.10.4 If a link breaks during proof load testing, a sample consisting of three common links is to be taken from each side of the broken link and subjected to a breaking test as detailed in 2.10. If either of these samples fails, the length of cable is not to be accepted. A thorough examination of all broken links is to be made to determine the cause of failure and, after evaluation, LR will consider the extent of cable which is to be rejected.

## 2.11 Breaking load tests

2.11.1 Breaking load tests are to be carried out on three-link samples selected by the Surveyor from the completed (including heat treatment) chain. The test links may be removed from the chain prior to heat treatment provided that each sample is heat treated with, and in the same manner as the chain it represents. They are to be properly identified with the lengths of chain they represent.

2.11.2 The number of tests required is to be in accordance with Table 10.2.5 except that for chafing chain for Emergency Towing Arrangements (ETA), see Pt 3, Ch 13, 10.2, one test is to be carried out on each 110 m of finished chains.

2.11.3 Breaking test specimens are to withstand the load given in Table 10.2.4 for the appropriate grade and size of cable. The specimen is considered to have passed this test if it has shown no sign of fracture after application of the required load for a minimum of 30 seconds.

2.11.4 Where a breaking test specimen fails, a further specimen is to be cut from the same length of cable and subjected to test. If this re-test fails, the length of cable from which it was taken is to be rejected. When this test is also representative of other lengths, each of the remaining lengths is to be individually tested by taking a breaking test specimen from each length of the batch. If one of these further tests fails, the entire set of lengths represented by the original test is to be rejected.

2.11.5 For large diameter cables where the required breaking load is greater than the capacity of the testing machines, special consideration will be given to acceptance of an alternative testing procedure.

## 2.12 Dimensional inspection

2.12.1 After proof testing, the entire chain is to be checked for length, five links at a time with an overlap of two links, which is to include the first five links, to ensure that the chain meets the tolerances given in 2.15.5. The measurements are to be made while the chain is loaded to about 10 per cent of the proof load.

2.12.2 The links held in the end blocks may be excluded from these measurements.

2.12.3 If a five link length of chain exceeds the tolerance given in 2.15.5, then the oversize links are to be removed and an approved connecting link inserted.

2.12.4 Checks of all other dimensions are to be made on three links, selected by the Surveyor, from every four 27,5 m lengths.

2.12.5 If one of the links detailed in 2.12.4 fails to comply with the required tolerances, measurements are to be made on a further five links in every four 27,5 m lengths.

2.12.6 If more than one link in a 27,5 m length of chain cable fails to meet the tolerance requirements, all the links in that length are to be measured.

2.12.7 All links failing to comply with the maximum dimensional tolerances are to be removed and replaced by connecting links of an approved type. The chain is then to be subjected to a further proof load test and re-examined.

2.12.8 If the length over five links is less than the nominal, then the chain may be stretched by loading above the specified proof test load provided that the applied load is not greater than ten per cent above the proof test load, and only random lengths of the chain need to be stretched.

2.12.9 Loads used for plastic straining to set studs are not to exceed 0,8 per cent of the proof load unless specifically approved for higher loads.

2.12.10 Paint or anti-corrosive coatings are not to be applied until these inspections are completed to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.



## Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

## Chapter 10

Section 2

Table 10.2.4 Test loads for stud link anchor chain cables

Chain diameter $d$ mm	Grade U1		Grade U2		Grade U3	
	Proof load kN $0,00686d^2$ (44– 0,08d)	Breaking load kN $0,00981d^2$ (44– 0,08d)	Proof load kN $0,00981d^2$ (44– 0,08d)	Breaking load kN $0,01373d^2$ (44– 0,08d)	Proof load kN $0,01373d^2$ (44– 0,08d)	Breaking load kN $0,01961d^2$ (44– 0,08d)
12,5	46	66	66	92	—	—
14	58	82	82	115	—	—
16	75	107	107	150	—	—
17,5	89	128	128	179	—	—
19	105	150	150	211	—	—
20,5	122	175	175	244	244	349
22	140	201	201	281	281	401
24	166	238	238	333	333	475
26	194	278	278	389	389	556
28	225	321	321	450	450	642
30	257	367	367	514	514	734
32	291	416	416	583	583	832
34	327	468	468	655	655	936
36	366	523	523	732	732	1045
38	406	580	580	812	812	1160
40	448	640	640	896	896	1280
42	492	703	703	984	984	1406
44	538	769	769	1076	1076	1537
46	585	837	837	1171	1171	1673
48	635	908	908	1270	1270	1814
50	686	981	981	1373	1373	1961
52	739	1057	1057	1479	1479	2113
54	794	1135	1135	1589	1589	2269
56	850	1216	1216	1702	1702	2430
58	908	1299	1299	1818	1818	2597
60	968	1384	1384	1938	1938	2767
62	1029	1472	1472	2060	2060	2943
64	1092	1562	1562	2187	2187	3123
66	1157	1655	1655	2316	2316	3308
68	1223	1749	1749	2448	2448	3496
70	1291	1846	1846	2583	2583	3690
73	1395	1995	1995	2792	2792	3988
76	1503	2149	2149	3007	3007	4295
78	1576	2254	2254	3154	3154	4505
81	1689	2415	2415	3380	3380	4827
84	1805	2580	2580	3612	3612	5158
87	1923	2750	2750	3849	3849	5498
90	2045	2924	2924	4093	4093	5845
92	2127	3042	3042	4258	4258	6081
95	2254	3223	3223	4510	4510	6442
97	2339	3345	3345	4682	4682	6687
100	2470	3532	3532	4943	4943	7060
102	2558	3658	3658	5120	5120	7312
105	2692	3850	3850	5389	5389	7697
107	2783	3980	3980	5571	5571	7957
111	2968	4245	4245	5941	5941	8486
114	3110	4447	4447	6224	6224	8889
117	3253	4652	4652	6511	6511	9299
120	3398	4859	4859	6801	6801	9714
122	3496	4999	4999	6997	6997	9994
124	3595	5141	5141	7195	7195	10276
127	3744	5354	5354	7494	7494	10703
130	3895	5571	5571	7796	7796	11135
132	3997	5716	5716	8000	8000	11426
137	4254	6083	6083	8514	8514	12161
142	4515	6456	6456	9036	9036	12906
147	4779	6834	6834	9565	9565	13662
152	5046	7217	7217	10100	10100	14426
157	5316	7602	7602	10640	10640	15197
162	5588	7991	7991	11185	11185	15975

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

# Chapter 10

Section 2

**Table 10.2.5** Number of breaking tests from completed cables

Designation	Method of manufacture	Number of breaking test specimens
Grade U1	Flash-butt welded and heat treated	One from every four lengths of 27,5 m or less
Grade U2(a) U3(a)	Flash-butt welded, or drop forged and heat treated	One from every four lengths of 27,5 m or less
Grade U1 U2(a)	Flash-butt welded but not heat treated	One from each length of 27,5 m or less
Grade U2(b) U3(b)	Cast and heat treated	One per heat treatment batch with a minimum of one from every four lengths of 27,5 m or less

**Table 10.2.6** Mechanical properties of welds in chain cables

Grade	Charpy V-notch impact test	
	Test temperature °C	Average energy J min
U1 U2	— 0 (see Note 1)	— 27
U3	0 -20 (see Note 2)	50 27
<b>NOTES</b> 1. Impact tests are only required if the chain cable is not heat treated. 2. Impact testing may be carried out at 0°C or minus 20°C.		

## 2.13 Fittings for chain cables

**2.13.1** Cable fittings are to be manufactured at an approved works.

**2.13.2** The materials from which the fittings are made are to be manufactured at approved works, in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 4,1 or Ch 5,1 respectively. Alternative arrangements may be agreed provided that full details concerning the manufacturer are submitted to LR.

**2.13.3** All fittings are to be manufactured to an approved manufacturing specification, and provision is to be made for tensile specimens and, where applicable, impact test specimens, see Table 10.2.3. The test samples are to be prepared in accordance with 2.4.3 or 2.5.4 as applicable. The test specimens are to be subjected to heat treatment with the fittings they represent. The mechanical test requirements are the same as those for the relevant grade of chain cable, see Table 10.2.1. A batch of fittings is to be of the same grade, size and heat treatment charge and to have originated from a single cast of steel. Enlarged and end links need not be tested provided that they are manufactured and heat treated together with the chain cable. Mechanical tests of pins are to be taken in accordance with 3.8.15.

**2.13.4** Fittings such as shackles, swivels and swivel shackles are to be forged or cast in steel of at least Grade U2. The welded construction of fittings may also be approved providing that full details of the manufacturing process and the heat treatment are submitted.

**2.13.5** All chain cable accessories, including spares, are to be subjected to the proof loads appropriate to the grade and size of cable for which they are intended. These include shackles, swivels, swivel shackles, enlarged links and end links. Anchor shackles, however, are to be tested in combination with the anchor, see 1.4.

**2.13.6** The appropriate breaking load is to be applied for a minimum of 30 seconds to at least one item out of every batch of up to 25 (1 in 50 for lugless (Kenter) shackles), and this item is to be destroyed and not used as part of an outfit. For the purpose of break load testing, a batch of accessories is to be of the same grade, size and heat treatment charge and may consist of items from different casts, provided that the sample tested is from the cast with the lowest tensile properties. Enlarged and end links need not be tested provided that they are manufactured and heat treated together with the chain cable.

**2.13.7** If the sample fails to withstand the breaking load without fracture, two more samples from the same batch may be tested. If either of these samples fails, the batch is to be rejected.

**2.13.8** Where the items are of increased dimensions, and have been specially approved, or if material of a higher grade than is specified is used, then the breaking load is to be applied to each item, and the items so tested included with the outfit. For the purpose of this paragraph, items of increased dimensions are those so designed that their breaking strength is not less than 1,4 times the Rule minimum breaking load of the chain cable with which they are to be used.

**2.13.9** LR may waive the breaking load test provided that:

- the breaking load test has been completed satisfactorily during approval testing, and
- the tensile and impact properties of each manufacturing batch are proved and
- the accessories are subjected to suitable non-destructive testing.

**2.13.10** All testing is to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyor and to his satisfaction.



2.13.11 All fittings are to be stamped in accordance with 2.16.

## 2.14 Substitute single links

2.14.1 Single links to connect lengths of chain cable or to substitute for defective links, without the necessity for re-heat treatment of the whole cable length, are to be made by the chain manufacturer in accordance with an approved procedure. Separate approvals are required for each grade of chain cable and the tests are to be made on the maximum size of chain for which approval is sought. Re-approval is required annually.

2.14.2 Manufacture and heat treatment of the substitute link are not to affect the strength of the adjoining links. The temperature reached by these links is nowhere to exceed 250°C.

2.14.3 The steel bar used is to conform with the specification for the chain in accordance with Ch 3,9.

2.14.4 Details of the method of manufacture, including heat treatment, are to be submitted for approval, together with the results of a series of tests laid down by LR.

2.14.5 All links involved in the approval tests are to be destroyed and are not to be used as part of a chain cable.

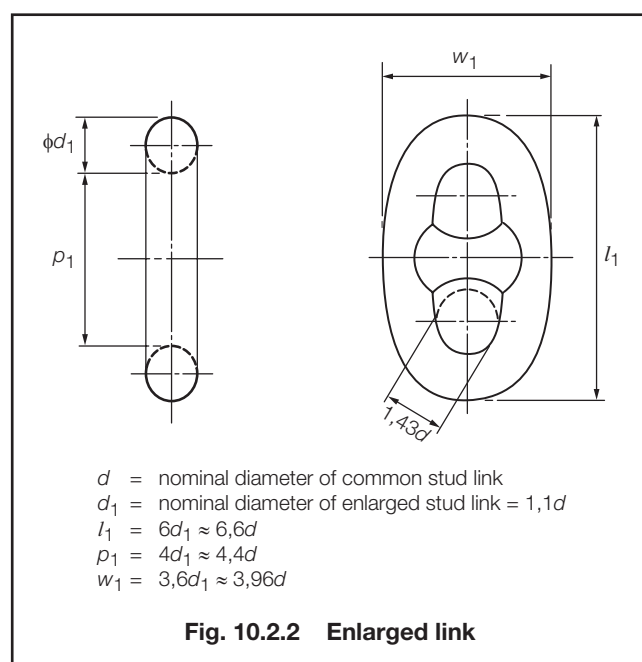
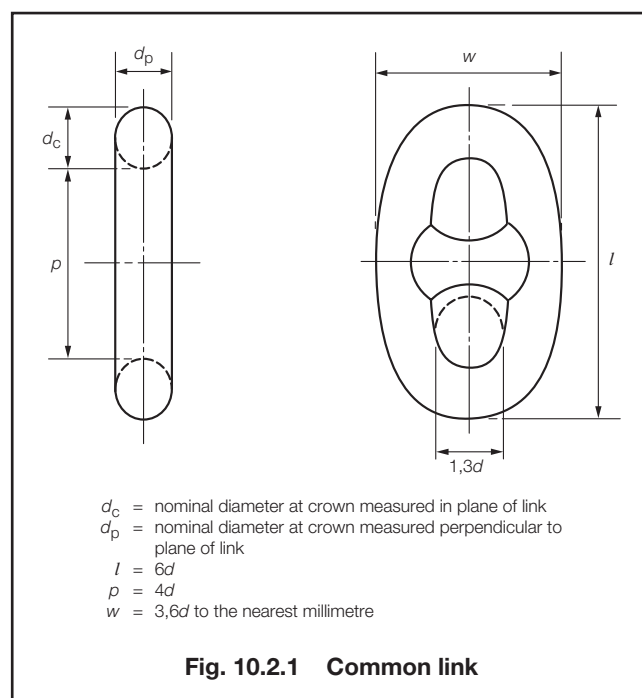
2.14.6 Every substitute link included in a chain cable is to be subjected to the proof load appropriate to the grade and size of chain in which it is incorporated, as detailed in Table 10.2.4.

2.14.7 Each substitute link is to be stamped on the stud with the identification marks listed in 2.16.1 plus a unique number for the link. The adjoining links are also to be stamped on the studs.

## 2.15 Dimensions and tolerances

2.15.1 The form and proportion of links and shackles are to be in accordance with ISO/1704-2008, see Figs. 10.2.1 to 10.2.8. Design of chain cables must be to a standard recognised by LR, such as ISO 1704; alternatively the design may be specifically approved by LR.

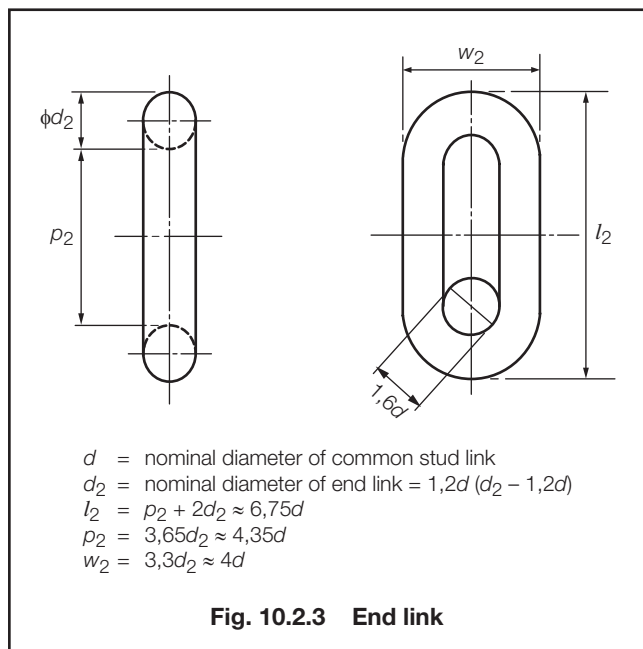
2.15.2 Manufacturing tolerances on stud link chain are to be within  $\pm 2,5$  per cent (taking into account that all components of the chain are to be a good fit with one another), except for those detailed in 2.15.3.



2.15.3 The nominal diameter,  $d$ , is to be the average of the diameters, measured in the plane of the link,  $d_c$ , and perpendicular to the plane of the link,  $d_p$ , see Fig. 10.2.1. The negative tolerance on the nominal diameter is not to exceed the following:

- Minus 1 mm when  $d \leq 40$  mm
- Minus 2 mm when  $40 \text{ mm} < d \leq 84$  mm
- Minus 3 mm when  $84 \text{ mm} < d \leq 122$  mm
- Minus 4 mm when  $d > 122$  mm

The plus tolerance on the diameter at the crown measured out of the plane of the link,  $d_p$ , is not to exceed 5 per cent.



2.15.4 The cross-sectional area is to be calculated using the nominal diameter,  $d$ . The cross-sectional area at the crown of the link is to have no negative tolerance.

2.15.5 The diameter measured at locations other than the crown is to have no negative tolerance. The plus tolerance is to be in accordance with Table 3.9.3 of Chapter 3 except at the butt weld where it is to be in accordance with the manufacturer's specification, which is to be agreed by LR.

2.15.6 The maximum allowable tolerance on a length of five links measured in accordance with 2.12.1 is plus 2,5 per cent. No under-tolerance is permitted.

2.15.7 All measurements are to be made on links selected by the Surveyor and are to be carried out to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

2.15.8 Studs are to be located in the links centrally, and at right angles to the sides of the link, although the studs of the final link at each end of any length may also be located off-centre to facilitate the insertion of the joining shackle. Tolerances in accordance with Fig. 10.3.1 are acceptable provided that the stud fits snugly and its ends lie flush against the inside of the link.

2.15.9 The following tolerances are applicable to accessories:

Nominal diameter: plus 5 per cent, minus 0 per cent  
 Other dimensions:  $\pm 2,5$  per cent.

2.15.10 For lugless shackles of the Kenter type, the radii indicated in Fig. 10.2.8 are to be not less than 0,03 times the chain diameter.

2.15.11 All materials are to be free from internal and surface defects that might impair proper workability, use and strength. Subject to agreement by the Surveyor, surface defects may be removed by grinding provided the acceptable tolerances are not exceeded.

## 2.16 Identification

2.16.1 All lengths of Grades U1, U2 and U3 cable and all fittings are to be stamped with the following identification marks:

- LR or Lloyd's Register and abbreviated name of LR's local office issuing the certificate.
- Number of certificate.
- Proof load and grade of chain.
- Surveyor's personal stamp.
- Each length of chain cable is to be stamped on both ends.

## 2.17 Certification

2.17.1 An LR certificate is to be issued for chain cable only, fittings only or chain cable with associated fittings.

2.17.2 Each test certificate is to include the following particulars for all items included on the certificate:

- Purchaser's name and order number.
- Description and dimensions.
- Grade of chain cable.
- Identification mark which will enable the full history of the chain or fitting to be traced.
- Chemical composition.
- Details of heat treatment.
- Mechanical test results.
- Breaking test load.
- Proof load.

2.17.3 Where appropriate, the certificate is to include a list of all substitute links together with their grade of steel, the name of the steelmaker, the heat number and the purchase order number.

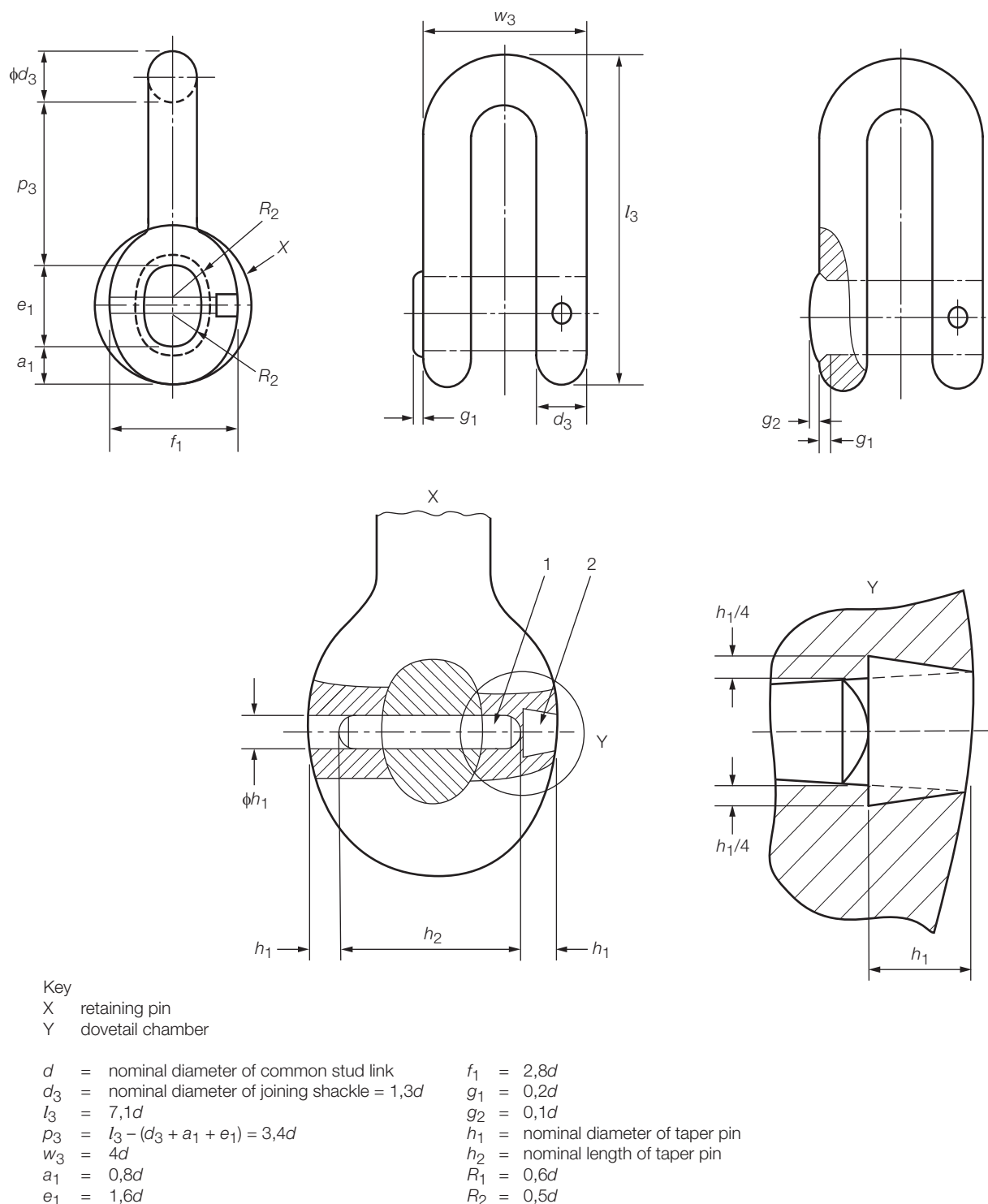
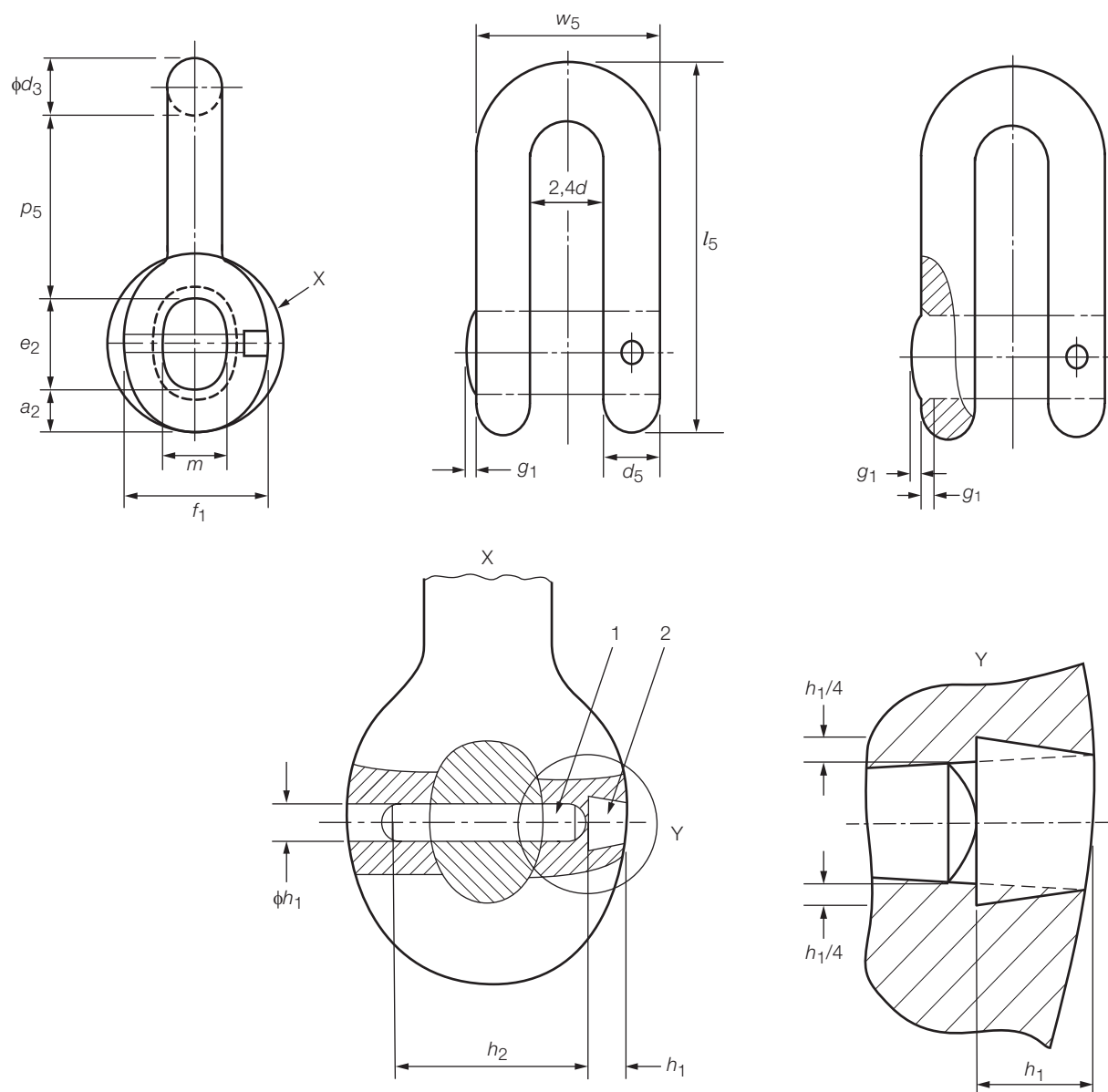


Fig. 10.2.4 End shackle



Key

X retaining pin  
Y dovetail chamber

$d$  = nominal diameter of common stud link  
 $d_5$  = nominal diameter of end shackle =  $1,4d$   
 $l_5$  =  $8,7d$   
 $p_5$  =  $l_5 - (d_3 + a_2 + e_2) = 4,5d$   
 $w_5$  =  $5,2d$   
 $a_2$  =  $0,9d$   
 $e_2$  =  $1,8d$

$f_2$  =  $3,1d$   
 $g_1$  =  $0,2d$   
 $g_2$  =  $0,1d$   
 $m$  =  $1,4d$   
 $h_1$  = nominal diameter of taper pin  
 $h_2$  = nominal length of taper pin

**Fig. 10.2.5 Dee shackle**

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

## Chapter 10

Section 2

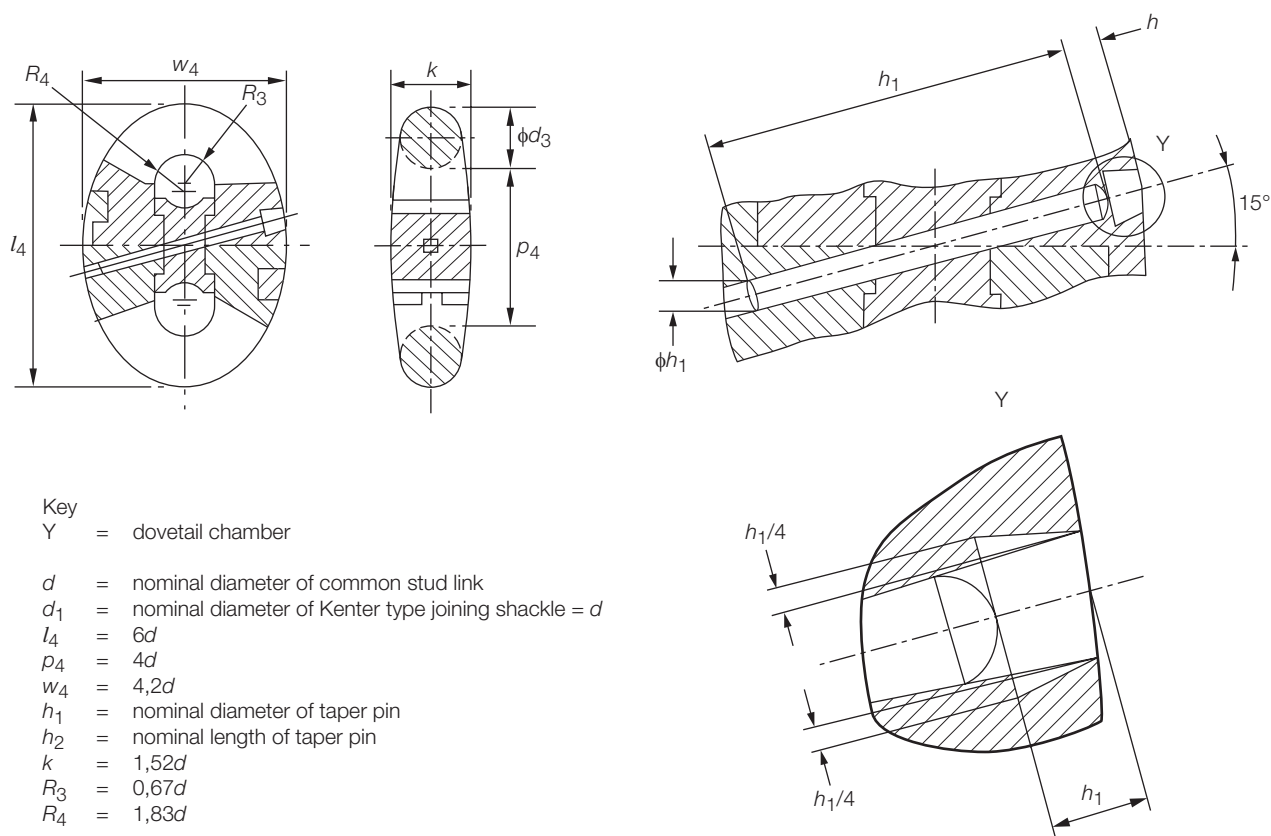
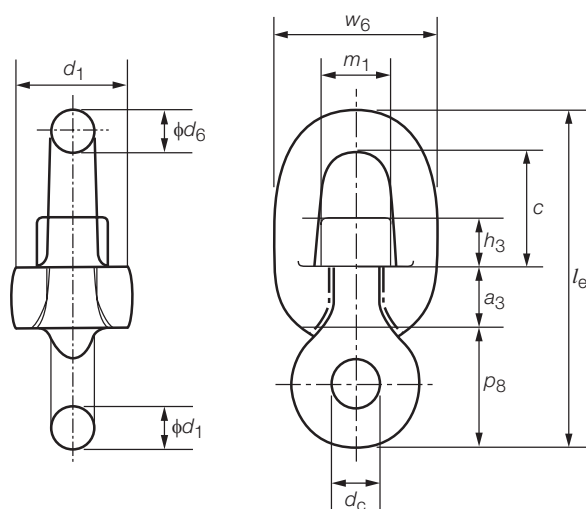
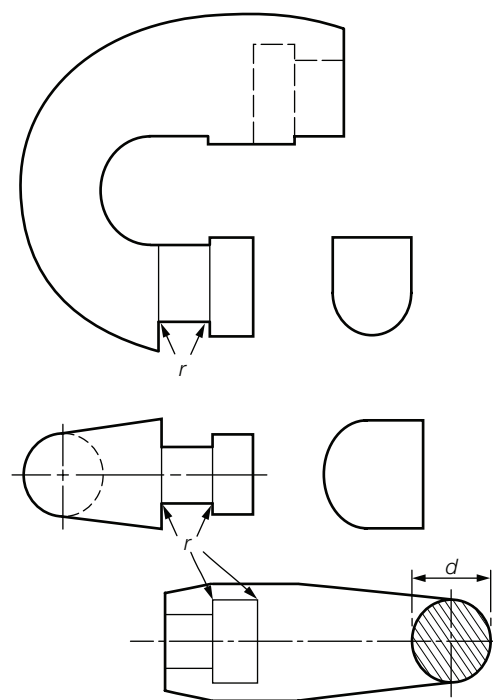


Fig. 10.2.6 Lugless shackle



- $d$  = nominal diameter of common stud link  
 $d_6$  = nominal diameter of swivel =  $1,2d$   
 $l_e$  =  $9,7d$   
 $p_e$  =  $d_9 - 3,4d$   
 $w_6$  =  $4,7d$   
 $d_7$  =  $1,1d$   
 $a_3$  =  $1,76d$   
 $m_1$  =  $2d$   
 $h_3$  =  $d_9 - 1,4d$   
 $c$  =  $3,35d$

Fig. 10.2.7 Swivel



The radii indicated by  $r$  are to be not less than  $0,03 \times d$

Fig. 10.2.8 Lugless shackle of the Kenter type

## Section 3 Stud link mooring chain cables

### 3.1 Scope

3.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for five grades, R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5, of stud link chain intended for offshore mooring applications such as mooring of mobile offshore units, offshore loading systems and gravity based structures during fabrication.

3.1.2 In addition, chain cable conforming to the requirements of the current edition of API specification 2F is acceptable provided that it has been manufactured, inspected and tested under Survey by LR, and that the bar stock has also been certified by LR in accordance with Ch 3,9.

### 3.2 Manufacture

3.2.1 All grades of chain cable and accessories are to be manufactured by approved procedures at works approved by LR. A list of approved manufacturers for stud link chain cables is published separately by LR.

3.2.2 The works in which the chain is manufactured is to have a quality system approved by LR. The provision of such a quality system is required in addition to and not in lieu of the witnessing of tests by a Surveyor.

3.2.3 Approval is confined to a single works and is limited to one grade of cable made from bar from a nominated and approved supplier. Separate approvals are required if steel bar is supplied from more than one works and for other grades of cable, see also Ch 3,9.

3.2.4 Details of the method of manufacture and the specification of the steel, are to be submitted.

3.2.5 Offshore mooring chains are to be made in continuous lengths by flash-butt welding.

3.2.6 Bar material may be heated either by electric resistance or in a furnace. For electrical resistance heating, the process is to be controlled by an optical heat sensor. For furnace heating, thermocouples in close proximity to the bars are to be used for control and the temperature is to be continuously recorded. In both cases, the controls are to be checked at least once every eight hours and records taken.

3.2.7 The following welding parameters (as approved in the weld procedure) are to be controlled during welding of each link:

- (a) platen motion;
- (b) current as a function of time; and
- (c) hydraulic pressure.

The controls are to be checked at least once every four hours.

3.2.8 The records of bar heating, flash-butt welding and heat treatment are to be made available to the Surveyor when required.

3.2.9 As far as practicable, consecutive links in all chain cable should originate from a single batch of bar stock (see Ch 3,9.6.1) and indicating marks should be stamped on the final link formed from one batch and the first link formed from a separate batch.

### 3.3 Dimensions and tolerances

3.3.1 The form and proportions of links and shackles are to be in accordance with ISO/1704-2008, see Figs. 10.2.1 to 10.2.8. Design of chain cables must be to a recognised standard, such as ISO 1704; alternatively the design may be specifically approved by LR. Link tolerances are to be in accordance with 3.3.2 to 3.3.6.

3.3.2 Diameter measured at the crown:

Minus 1 mm when  $d_c \leq 40$  mm

Minus 2 mm when  $40 \text{ mm} < d_c \leq 84$  mm

Minus 3 mm when  $84 \text{ mm} < d_c \leq 122$  mm

Minus 4 mm when  $122 \text{ mm} < d_c \leq 152$  mm

Minus 6 mm when  $152 \text{ mm} < d_c \leq 184$  mm

Minus 7,5 mm when  $184 \text{ mm} < d_c \leq 210$  mm

The plus tolerance must not exceed 5 per cent of the nominal diameter, and the cross-sectional area at the crown is to have no negative tolerance.

3.3.3 The diameter measured at locations other than the crown is to have no negative tolerance. The plus tolerance is to be in accordance with Table 3.9.3 except at the butt weld where it is to be in accordance with the manufacturer's specification, which is to be agreed by LR.

3.3.4 The maximum allowable tolerance on a length of five links measured in accordance with 2.12.1 is +2,5 per cent. No under-tolerance is permitted.

3.3.5 A manufacturing tolerance on all other dimensions of  $\pm 2,5$  per cent is acceptable subject to all parts fitting properly together.

3.3.6 The tolerances for common links are to be measured in accordance with Fig. 10.3.3.

3.3.7 All measurements are to be made on links selected by the Surveyor and are to be carried out to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

3.3.8 Studs are to be located in the links centrally, and at right angles to the sides of the link, although the studs of the final link at each end of any length may also be located off-centre to facilitate the insertion of the joining shackle. The tolerances in accordance with Fig. 10.3.2 are acceptable provided that the stud fits snugly and its ends lie flush against the inside of the link.

### 3.4 Studs

3.4.1 The studs are to be made of steel corresponding to that of the chain or in compliance with a specification approved by LR. In general, the carbon content should not exceed 0,23 per cent if the studs are to be welded in place.

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

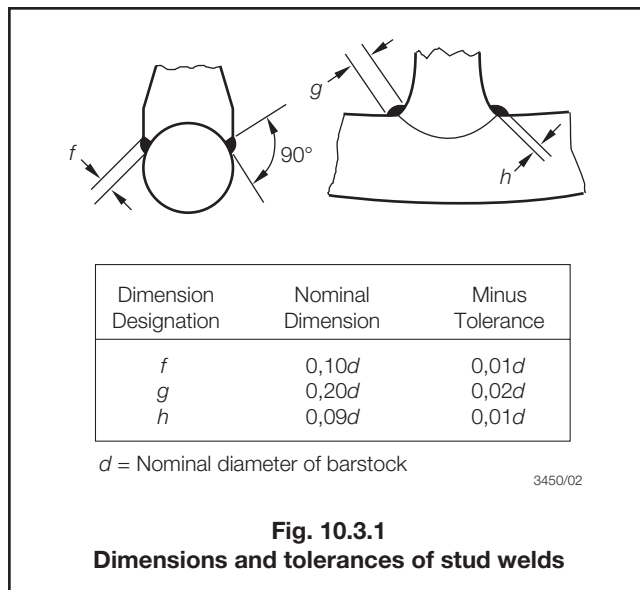
## Chapter 10

### Section 3

3.4.2 Studs may be welded into grade R3 and R3S chains. The welding of studs into grade R4, R4S and R5 chain is not permitted unless specially approved.

3.4.3 In all cases where studs are welded into links, this is to be carried out in accordance with 2.7.

3.4.4 The size of the stud welds is to be in accordance with Fig. 10.3.1.



3.4.5 All stud welds are to be visually inspected. At least 10 per cent of all stud welds within each length of chain are to be examined by magnetic particle inspection after proof load testing. Stress raising defects such as cracks, lack of fusion, gross porosity, and undercuts exceeding 1 mm are not permitted; if any such defects are found, then all stud welds in that length of chain are to be examined by means of magnetic particle inspection.

3.4.6 Where plastic straining is used to set studs, the applied load is not to be greater than that qualified in approval tests. The combined effect of shape and depth of the impression of the stud in the link is not to cause any harmful notch effect or stress concentration.

### 3.5 Heat treatment of completed chain cables

3.5.1 The chain is to be normalised, normalised and tempered or quenched and tempered in accordance with the specification approved by LR.

3.5.2 The chains are to be heat treated in a continuous furnace; batch heat treatment is not permitted.

3.5.3 The temperature and time, or temperature and chain speed, are to be controlled and continuously recorded.

3.5.4 Heat treatment is to be carried out prior to the proof loading and breaking tests.

3.5.5 Calibration of furnaces is to be verified by measurement and recording of actual link temperature (surface and internal).

### 3.6 Testing of completed chain cables

3.6.1 All chain cables are to be tested in the presence of a Surveyor, at a proving establishment recognised by LR. A list of recognised proving establishments is published by LR. In addition to the requirements stated in this Chapter, attention must be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

3.6.2 The entire length of chain cable is to be subjected to a proof loading test in an approved testing machine and is to withstand the load given in Table 10.3.1 for the appropriate grade and size of cable.

3.6.3 Care should be taken to obtain a uniform stress distribution in the links being tested.

3.6.4 The chain is to be shot or sand blasted prior to testing in order to ensure that its surfaces are free from scale, paint or other coating for inspection.

3.6.5 On completion of the proof load test, each link is to be visually examined and is to be free from significant defects such as mill defects, surface cracks, dents and cuts, especially where gripped by clamping dies during flash butt welding. Studs are to be securely fastened and any burrs, irregularities and rough edges are to be removed by careful grinding.

3.6.6 All flash butt welds, including the area gripped by the clamping dies, are to be examined by magnetic particle inspection. The area is to be free from cracks, lack of fusion, gross porosity and any other stress concentrations.

3.6.7 Surface defects in the region of the flash butt welds may be removed by grinding, provided that the depth of grinding does not exceed five per cent of the link diameter and is smoothly contoured into the surrounding material. The final dimensions are still to conform with the agreed standard.

3.6.8 All flash butt welds are also to be examined by ultrasonic inspection and are to be free from defects such as internal cracks or lack of fusion.

3.6.9 All non-destructive examination is to be carried out in accordance with approved procedures, in accordance with Ch 1,5.

3.6.10 All non-destructive examination operators are to be qualified to a minimum Level II, qualified in accordance with a recognised standard.

3.6.11 After proof testing, the entire chain is to be checked for length, five links at a time with an overlap of two links, which is to include the first five links, to ensure that the chain meets the tolerances given in 2.15.5. The measurements are to be made while the chain is loaded to about 10 per cent of the proof load.

## Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

## Chapter 10

## Section 3

Fig. 10.3.2 Stud link tolerances

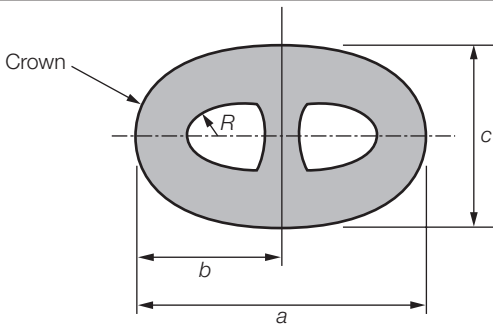
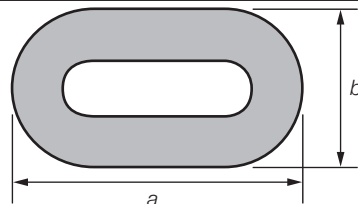
The internal link radii ( $R$ ) and external radii should be uniform				
				
Designation	Description	Nominal dimension of the link	Minus tolerance	Plus tolerance
$a$	Link length	$6d$	$0,15d$	$0,15d$
$b$	Link half length	$a^*/2$	$0,10d$	$0,10d$
$c$	Link width	$3,6d$	$0,09d$	$0,09d$
$e$	Stud angular misalignment	0 degrees	4 degrees	4 degrees
$R$	Inner radius	$0,65d$	0	—
Symbols				
$d$ = nominal diameter of chain $a^*$ = actual link length				

Fig. 10.3.3 Studless and common link tolerances

The internal link radii ( $R$ ) and external radii should be uniform				
				
Designation	Description	Nominal dimension of the link	Minus tolerance	Plus tolerance
$a$	Link length	$6d$	$0,15d$	$0,15d$
$b$	Link width	$3,35d$	$0,09d$	$0,09d$
$R$	Inner radius	$0,60d$	0	—
Symbols				
$d$ = nominal diameter of chain				
<b>NOTE</b> Other dimensional ratios are subject to special approval.				



## Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

## Chapter 10

Section 3

Table 10.3.1 Test loads for mooring chain cables (continued)

Nominal diameter $d$	Grade R3			Grade R3S			Grade R4			Grade R4S			Grade R5		
	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load
	Stud link chain	Studless chain		Stud link chain	Studless chain		Stud link chain	Studless chain		Stud link chain	Studless chain		Stud link chain	Studless chain	
mm	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN
50	1480	1480	2230	1800	1740	2490	2160	1920	2740	2400	2130	3040	2510	2230	3200
52	1594	1594	2402	1939	1874	2682	2327	2068	2952	2585	2295	3275	2704	2402	3447
54	1712	1712	2580	2083	2013	2881	2499	2222	3170	2777	2465	3517	2904	2580	3703
56	1834	1834	2764	2231	2156	3086	2677	2380	3396	2974	2640	3768	3111	2764	3966
58	1960	1960	2953	2383	2304	3297	2860	2542	3628	3178	2820	4025	3323	2953	4237
60	2089	2089	3147	2540	2455	3514	3048	2710	3867	3387	3006	4290	3542	3147	4516
62	2221	2221	3347	2701	2611	3737	3242	2881	4112	3602	3196	4562	3767	3347	4802
64	2357	2357	3551	2867	2771	3965	3440	3058	4364	3822	3481	4841	3997	3551	5096
66	2496	2496	3761	3036	2935	4200	3643	3238	4621	4048	3593	5127	4233	3761	5397
68	2639	2639	3976	3209	3102	4440	3851	3423	4885	4279	3798	5420	4475	3976	5706
70	2785	2785	4196	3387	3274	4685	4064	3613	5156	4516	4008	5720	4723	4196	6021
73	3010	3010	4535	3660	3538	5064	4392	3904	5572	4881	4331	6182	5104	4535	6507
76	3242	3242	4884	3942	3811	5454	4731	4205	6001	5257	4665	6658	5498	4884	7009
78	3400	3400	5123	4135	3997	5720	4962	4411	6295	5514	4893	6984	5766	5123	7351
81	3643	3643	5490	4431	4283	6130	5317	4726	6745	5908	5243	7484	6179	5490	7877
84	3893	3893	5866	4735	4577	6550	5682	5051	7208	6313	5603	7997	6602	5866	8418
87	4149	4149	6252	5046	4878	6981	6056	5383	7682	6729	5972	8523	7037	6252	8971
90	4412	4412	6647	5365	5187	7422	6439	5723	8167	7154	6349	9062	7482	6647	9539
92	4590	4590	6916	5582	5396	7722	6699	5954	8497	7443	6606	9428	7784	6916	9924
95	4862	4862	7326	5913	5716	8180	7096	6307	9001	7884	6997	9987	8246	7326	10512
97	5047	5047	7604	6138	5933	8490	7365	6547	9343	8184	7263	10366	8559	7604	10911
100	5328	5328	8028	6480	6264	8964	7776	6912	9864	8640	7668	10944	9036	8028	11520
102	5519	5519	8315	6712	6488	9285	8054	7159	10217	8949	7942	11336	9359	8315	11932
105	5809	5809	8753	7065	6829	9773	8478	7536	10754	9420	8360	11932	9851	8753	12560
107	6005	6005	9048	7304	7060	10103	8764	7790	11118	9738	8643	12335	10184	9048	12984
111	6404	6404	9650	7789	7529	10775	9347	8308	11856	10385	9217	13154	10861	9650	13847
114	6709	6709	10109	8159	7887	11287	9791	8703	12420	10879	9655	13780	11378	10109	14506
117	7018	7018	10574	8535	8251	11807	10242	9104	12993	11380	10100	14415	11902	10574	15174
120	7331	7331	11047	8916	8619	12334	10700	9511	13573	11889	10551	15059	12434	11047	15852
122	7542	7542	11365	9173	8868	12690	11008	9785	13964	12231	10855	15493	12792	11365	16308
124	7755	7755	11686	9432	9118	13048	11319	10061	14358	12576	11161	15930	13153	11686	16768
127	8078	8078	12171	9824	9497	13591	11789	10479	14955	13099	11626	16592	13700	12171	17466
130	8404	8404	12663	10221	9880	14139	12265	10903	15559	13628	12095	17262	14253	12663	18171
132	8623	8623	12993	10488	10138	14508	12585	11187	15965	13984	12411	17713	14625	12993	18645
137	9178	9178	13829	11162	10790	15441	13395	11906	16992	14883	13209	18852	15565	13829	19844

## Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

## Chapter 10

Section 3

Table 10.3.1 Test loads for mooring chain cables (conclusion)

Nominal diameter $d$	Grade R3			Grade R3S			Grade R4			Grade R4S			Grade R5		
	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load	Proof test load		Break test load
	Stud link chain	Studless chain		Stud link chain	Studless chain		Stud link chain	Studless chain		Stud link chain	Studless chain		Stud link chain	Studless chain	
mm	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN	kN
142	9741	9741	14677	11847	11452	16388	14216	12637	18033	15796	14019	20008	16520	14677	21061
147	10311	10311	15536	12540	12122	17347	15048	13376	19039	16720	14839	21179	17487	15536	22294
152	10887	10887	16405	13241	12800	18317	15890	14124	20156	17655	15669	22363	18464	16405	23540
157	11469	11469	17282	13949	13484	19297	16739	14879	21234	18599	16507	23559	19452	17282	24799
162	12056	12056	18166	14663	14174	20284	17596	15641	22320	19551	17351	24764	20447	18166	26068
167	12647	12647	19056	15381	14869	21278	18458	16407	23414	20508	18201	25977	21448	19056	27345
172	13240	13240	19950	16103	15566	22276	19324	17177	24513	21471	19055	27196	22455	19950	28628
177	13836	13836	20847	16827	16267	23278	20193	17949	25615	22437	19912	28420	23465	20847	29915
182	14433	14433	21746	17553	16968	24282	21064	18723	26720	23404	20771	29645	24477	21746	31205
187	15029	15029	22646	18279	17670	25286	21935	19498	27825	24372	21630	30871	25489	22646	32496
192	15626	15626	23544	19004	18371	26289	22805	20271	28929	25339	22488	32096	26500	23544	33785
197	16220	16220	24440	19727	19070	27290	23673	21043	30029	26303	23344	33317	27509	24440	35071
202	16813	16813	25332	20448	19766	28286	24537	21811	31126	27264	24196	34534	28513	25332	36351
207	17401	17401	26220	21164	20459	29277	25397	22575	32216	28219	25044	35744	29512	26220	37625
210	17753	17753	26749	21591	20872	29868	25910	23031	32867	28788	25550	36465	30108	26749	38385
Grade R3	Stud link chain		0,0148 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Proof test load	Studless chain		0,0148 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Break test load			0,0223 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Grade R3S	Stud link chain		0,0180 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Proof test load	Studless chain		0,0174 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Break test load			0,0249 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Grade R4	Stud link chain		0,0216 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Proof test load	Studless chain		0,0192 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Break test load			0,0274 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Grade R4S	Stud link chain		0,0240 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Proof test load	Studless chain		0,0213 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Break test load			0,0304 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Grade R5	Stud link chain		0,0251 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Proof test load	Studless chain		0,0223 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												
Break test load			0,0320 $d^2$ (44 – 0,08 $d$ )												

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

# Chapter 10

## Section 3

3.6.12 The links held in the end blocks may be excluded from these measurements.

3.6.13 If the length over five links is less than the nominal, the chain may be stretched by loading above the specified proof test load provided that the applied load is not greater than ten per cent above the proof test load, and that only random lengths of the chain need to be stretched.

3.6.14 Loads used for plastic straining to set studs are not to exceed those approved in qualification tests.

3.6.15 Checks of all other dimensions are to be made on at least five per cent of the links in the cable.

3.6.16 If any link fails to meet the dimensional tolerance requirements (see 3.3), measurements are to be made on 20 more links on each side of the incorrect one. If failure to meet any particular dimensional requirements occurs in more than two of the measured links, then all the links are to be dimensionally checked.

3.6.17 Should any link be found to be defective or fail to meet the dimensional tolerance requirements or if a five link length of chain exceeds the specified tolerance, the unsatisfactory links are to be removed from the chain, and connecting common links complying with the requirements of 3.7 inserted in their places.

3.6.18 The chain is then to be subjected to a further proof load test and re-examined.

3.6.19 The number of connecting common links which may be used to replace defective links is not to exceed three in any 100 m length of chain. The number and type of joining shackles which may be used are to be subject to the written agreement of the end user.

3.6.20 If a link breaks during proof load testing, a sample consisting of three common links is to be taken from each side of the broken link and subjected to a breaking test as detailed in 3.6.21 and 3.6.22. If either of these samples fails, the proof loaded length of cable is not to be accepted. A thorough examination of all broken links is to be made to determine the cause of failure and, after evaluation, LR will consider the extent of cable which is to be rejected and also the possibility that similar factors to those which caused the failure may also be present in other parts of the cable, or other chain cables. The Surveyor is to be advised in advance of all examinations, with reasonable notice being given.

3.6.21 In addition to the requirements of 3.6.2, three link samples are to be selected by the Surveyors from the completed chain for breaking tests. The number of tests required is to be in accordance with Table 10.3.2. Extra links are to be provided for the mechanical tests detailed in 3.6.25. All test links are to be made as part of the chain cable and are to be heat treated with it. These may be removed from the cable prior to heat treatment provided that each sample is heat treated with, and in the same manner as, the chain it represents and is subjected to the proof load appropriate to the chain grade and diameter prior to selection of the mechanical test specimens. They are to be properly identified with the length of chain they represent.

**Table 10.3.2 Frequency of break and mechanical tests**

Nominal chain diameter mm	Maximum sampling interval m (See Note)
Min. — 48	91
49 — 60	110
61 — 73	131
74 — 85	152
86 — 98	175
99 — 111	198
112 — 124	222
125 — 137	250
138 — 149	274
150 — 162	297
163 — 175	322
176 — 186	346
187 — 199	370
199 — 210	395

NOTE  
If the sampling interval contains links made from more than one cast, extra break and mechanical tests are required so that tests are made on every cast.

3.6.22 Breaking test specimens are to withstand the load given in Table 10.3.1 for the appropriate grade and size of cable for a period of 30 seconds. The specimen is considered to have passed this test if it has shown no sign of fracture after application of the required load.

3.6.23 If a breaking test specimen fails, two further specimens are to be cut from the same sampling length and both are to be subjected to the breaking test load. If one of the re-test specimens fails the length is to be rejected. All the broken links are to be subjected to an investigation into the cause of failure. LR will then decide which lengths of chain can be accepted and on further action.

3.6.24 For large diameter cables where the required breaking load is greater than the capacity of the testing machines, special consideration will be given to acceptance of an alternative testing procedure.

3.6.25 One tensile and three sets of Charpy V-notch impact test specimens are to be taken from links cut from the heat treated and proof loaded chain at intervals no greater than those indicated in Table 10.3.2 provided that every cast is sampled. The tensile specimen and one set of impact specimens are to be taken from the side of the link opposite the weld. One set of impact test specimens is to have the notches positioned at the centre of the flash butt weld and the third set is to be taken from the bend. All the specimens are to be taken from positions in accordance with Fig. 10.3.4.

3.6.26 The frequency of testing at the link bends may be reduced at the discretion of LR provided it can be verified that the required toughness is achieved consistently.

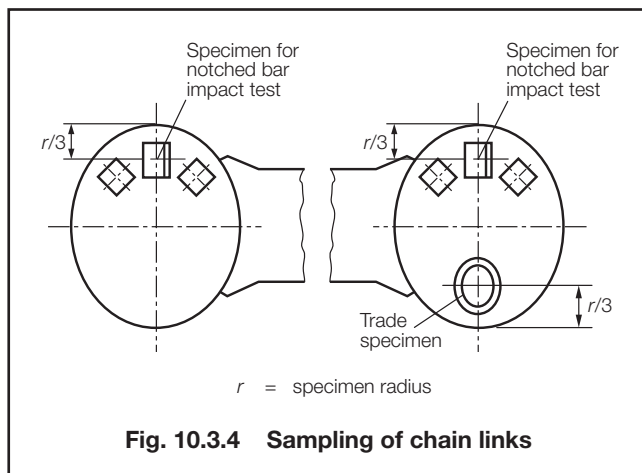
3.6.27 The results of the mechanical tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 10.3.3.

**Table 10.3.3 Mechanical properties of chain cable materials**

Grade	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation % minimum	Reduction of area % minimum (See Note 3)	Charpy V-notch impact tests		
					Test temperature °C	Average energy J minimum	Average energy flash weld J minimum
R3	410 (See Note 1)	690 minimum (See Note 1)	17	50	0 –20 (See Note 2)	60 40	50 30
R3S	490 (See Note 1)	770 minimum (See Note 1)	15	50	0 –20 (See Note 2)	65 45	53 33
R4	580 (See Note 1)	860 minimum (See Note 1)	12	50	–20	50	36
R4S (See Note 4)	700 (See Note 1)	960 (See Note 1)	12	50	–20	56	40
R5 (See Note 4)	760 (See Note 1)	1000 (See Note 1)	12	50	–20	58	42

**NOTES**

1. The ratio of yield strength to tensile strength should not exceed 0.92.
2. Testing may be carried out at either 0°C or –20°C.
3. For cast fittings, the minimum values for reduction of area are to be 40% for Grades R3 and R3S and 35% for Grades R4, R4S and R5.
4. The maximum hardness for Grade R4S is to be HB330, and for Grade R5 is to be HB340.



3.6.28 If the tensile test requirements are not achieved, two further specimens from the same sample are to be tested. The related length of chain will be considered acceptable if both re-test specimens meet the requirements but failure of either of the re-test specimens will result in rejection of the sampling length of chain represented by the tests.

3.6.29 If the impact test requirements are not achieved, re-tests may be carried out in accordance with Ch 1,2.4. Failure to meet the re-test requirements will result in rejection of the sampling length of chain represented by the tests.

3.6.30 The mass per unit length of stud link mooring cable is to comply with Table 10.3.4.

**3.7 Connecting common links or substitute links**

3.7.1 Single links to connect lengths of heat treated chain cable or to substitute for test links or defective links without the necessity for re-heat treatment of the whole length of cable are to be made by the chain manufacturer in accordance with an approved procedure. Separate approvals are required for each grade of chain cable and tests are to be made on the maximum size of chain for which approval is sought.

3.7.2 Manufacture and heat treatment of the connecting common link is not to affect the strength of the adjoining links. The temperature reached by these links is nowhere to exceed 250°C.

3.7.3 The steel bar used is to conform with the specification for the chain and approved by LR in accordance with Ch 3,9.

3.7.4 Details of the method of manufacture, including heat treatment, are to be submitted for approval, together with the results of a series of tests laid down by LR.

3.7.5 All links involved in the approval tests are to be destroyed and are not to be used as part of a chain cable.

3.7.6 Every connecting common link included in a chain cable is to be subjected to the proof load appropriate to the grade and size of chain in which it is incorporated as detailed in Table 10.3.1.

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

## Chapter 10

### Section 3

**Table 10.3.4 Mass per unit length of chain cable**

Nominal chain diameter (mm)	Mass per unit length $0,0291d^2$ (kg/m)
50	73
55	88
60	105
65	123
70	143
75	164
80	186
85	210
90	236
95	263
100	291
105	321
110	352
115	385
120	419
125	455
130	492
135	530
140	570
145	612
150	655
155	699
160	745
165	792
170	841
175	891
180	943
185	996
190	1051
195	1107
200	1164
205	1223
210	1283

3.7.7 Every connecting common link is to be inspected in accordance with 3.6.5 to 3.6.10.

3.7.8 A second identical link is to be made for mechanical tests which are to be in accordance with 3.6.25. This test link is also to be inspected in accordance with 3.7.7.

3.7.9 Each connecting common link is to be stamped on the stud with the identification marks listed in 3.9.1 plus a unique number for the link. The adjoining links are also to be stamped on the studs.

### 3.8 Fittings for offshore mooring chain

3.8.1 Cable fittings are to be manufactured at an approved works. Fittings include, but are not limited to, shackles, triplates, end shackles, swivels, and swivel shackles.

3.8.2 The materials from which the fittings are made are to be manufactured at approved works, in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 4,1 or Ch 5,1, and 3.8.3 to 3.8.6. Alternative arrangements may be agreed provided that full details concerning the manufacturer are submitted to LR.

3.8.3 Steel used for fittings must be manufactured by an approved process, and be killed and fine grain treated.

3.8.4 The austenite grain size of steel used for fittings must be 6 or finer as measured in accordance with ASTM E112.

3.8.5 Steel used for forgings or castings for grades R4S and R5 must be vacuum degassed.

3.8.6 For steel used for forgings or castings for grades R4S and R5 the following tests are to be carried out on each heat:

- Assessment and quantification of the level of non-metallic micro inclusions. These must be acceptable for the final product.
- Macro etching on representative sample, in accordance with ASTM E381 or equivalent, this must be free from any injurious segregation or porosity.
- Jominy hardenability tests in accordance with ASTM A255 or equivalent.

The results of these tests are to be supplied by the steel manufacturer, and the results are to be included in the final accessory documentation.

3.8.7 Fittings for chain are to be heat treated in accordance with procedures that have been approved by LR.

3.8.8 All fittings are to be manufactured to a manufacturing specification approved by LR, and provision is to be made for tensile and impact test specimens. The test samples are to be subjected to heat treatment with the fittings they represent. The mechanical test requirements are the same as those for the relevant grade of chain cable, see Table 10.3.3.

3.8.9 A batch is defined as fittings from the same heat of steel that have been part of the same heat treatment charge.

3.8.10 Mechanical tests for fittings are to be taken from full size fittings that have been heat treated with the production batch they represent, and the tests are to be taken after the fitting has been proof load tested. It is not permitted to use separate representative coupons unless approved by LR in accordance with 3.8.14.

3.8.11 Forged shackle bodies and forged Kenter shackles are to have a set of three Charpy impact tests and a tensile test taken from the crown of the shackle. For smaller diameter shackles, where the geometry does not allow for the tensile test to be taken from the crown, this may be taken from the straight portion from the locations specified in Fig. 10.3.5, with the Charpy impact test specimens on the outside radius.

3.8.12 The test pieces for cast shackle bodies and cast Kenter shackles can be taken from the straight portion of the fitting from the locations shown in Fig. 10.3.5.

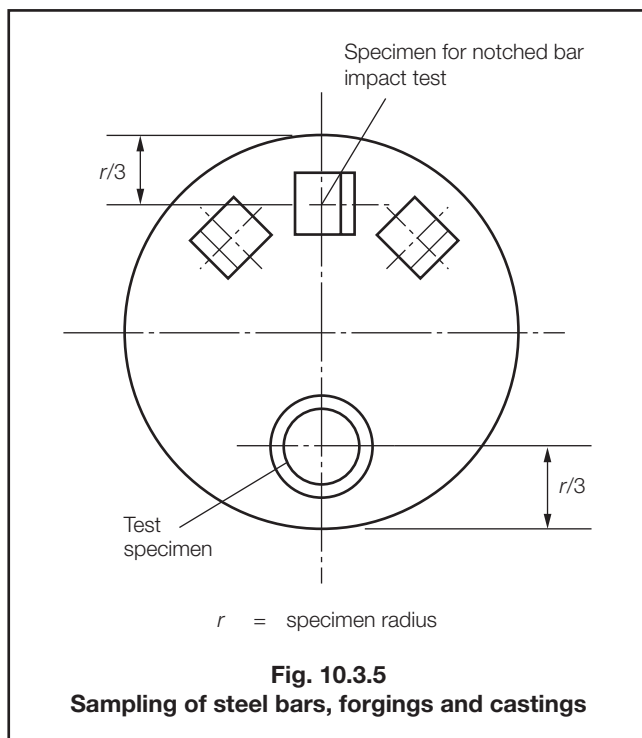
3.8.13 For fittings with complex geometries the locations of test pieces taken are to be approved by LR.

3.8.14 Where fittings are produced in small batches (less than 5) alternative testing may be approved; a proposal must be submitted in a written procedure for consideration.

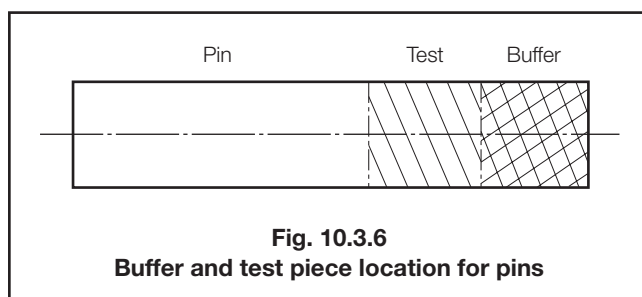
# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

# Chapter 10

Section 3



3.8.15 Mechanical tests of pins are to be taken as shown in Fig. 10.3.6 from the mid length of a sacrificial pin of the same diameter as the final pin. For oval pins, the diameter taken is to represent the smaller dimension. Mechanical tests may be taken from an extended pin of the same diameter as the final pin that incorporates a test prolongation and a heat treatment buffer prolongation, where equivalence with mid length test values have been established. The length of the buffer is to be at least equal to 1 pin diameter which is removed after the heat treatment cycle is finished. The test coupon can then be removed from the pin. The buffer and test are to come from the same end of the pin, as shown in Fig. 10.3.6.



3.8.16 Manufacturers intending to supply accessories in the machined condition (e.g. Kenter type shackles) are to submit detailed drawings for approval by LR.

3.8.17 All chain cable accessories, including spares, are to be subjected to the proof loads appropriate to the grade and size of cable for which they are intended, see Table 10.3.1. Prior to this test, the accessories are to be shot or sand blasted to ensure that their surfaces are free from scale, paint or any other coating which could interfere with any subsequent inspection.

3.8.18 The appropriate breaking load as required by Table 10.3.1 is to be applied to at least one item out of every batch of up to 25, and this item is to be destroyed and not used as part of an outfit.

3.8.19 If the sample fails to withstand the breaking load without fracture, or in the event of failure of any other test, then the entire batch is to be rejected unless the cause of failure has been determined and it can be demonstrated that the condition causing failure is not present in any of the other accessories in the batch. If this can be demonstrated then two more samples from the same batch may be tested. If either of these samples fails, the batch is to be rejected.

3.8.20 For very large fittings where the required breaking load is greater than the capacity of the testing machine and for individually produced accessories or accessories produced in small batches, proposals for an alternative method of testing will be given special consideration. All proposals for alternative testing methods are to be detailed in writing and submitted.

3.8.21 At least one accessory from each batch is to be checked dimensionally after proof load testing. The manufacturer is to provide a statement that the dimensions comply with the specified requirements.

3.8.22 The following tolerances apply of the unmachined dimensions of all fittings;

- (a) nominal diameter plus 5 per cent, minus 0 per cent; and
- (b) other dimensions plus or minus 2,5 per cent.

3.8.23 All accessories are to be subjected to close visual examination after proof load testing, particular attention being paid to machined surfaces and highly stressed regions. All accessories are also to be examined by magnetic particle or dye penetrant inspection and ultrasonic testing. All NDE is to be carried out in accordance with 3.6.9 and 3.6.10. The manufacturer is to provide a statement that the non-destructive examination has been carried out with satisfactory results; this statement is to include reference to the techniques used and the operator's qualifications.

3.8.24 All testing is to be carried out to the satisfaction and in the presence of the Surveyor.

3.8.25 Fittings with increased dimensions, or fittings of a higher material grade, may be specially approved and included in an outfit, provided that;

- (a) each item is successfully tested at the required breaking load for the chain cable for which they are intended; and
- (b) items of increased dimensions are so designed that their breaking strength is not less than 1,4 times the Rule minimum breaking load for the chain cable for which they are intended, and this has been verified by procedure tests.



# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

# Chapter 10

Sections 3 & 4

## 3.9 Identification

3.9.1 Each length of chain is to be permanently marked with the following:

- (a) LR and abbreviated name of LR's local office issuing the certificate.
- (b) Certificate number (this may be abbreviated provided it is stated in the certificate).
- (c) Grade and proof load of chain.

3.9.2 The chain is to be marked as follows:

- (a) at each end (the marking should identify the leading and tail end of each chain),
- (b) at intervals not exceeding 100m,
- (c) on all connecting common links or shackles and the immediately adjacent links,
- (d) on the first and last common link of each individual charge used in the continuous length.

3.9.3 All identification marks are to be made on the studs and are to be permanent and legible throughout the expected service life of the chain.

## 3.10 Documentation

3.10.1 A complete Chain Inspection and Testing Report, in booklet form, is to be provided by the chain manufacturer for each continuous chain length, and for each order for chain and fittings. It is to include all dimensional checks, test and inspection reports, non-destructive test reports, process records, as well as any non-conformity, together with corrective action and repair work.

3.10.2 All documents, including reports and appendices, are to contain a reference to the relevant certificate number.

3.10.3 The chain manufacturer is responsible for storing all the documentation in a safe and retrievable manner for a period of at least 10 years.

## 3.11 Certification

3.11.1 An LR certificate is to be issued for each continuous single length of chain, and each type of fitting, see Ch 1,3.1.

3.11.2 Each test certificate is to include the following particulars:

- (a) Purchaser's name and order number.
- (b) Description and dimensions.
- (c) Grade of chain cable.
- (d) Identification mark which will enable the full history of the chain to be traced.
- (e) Chemical composition.
- (f) Details of heat treatment.
- (g) Mechanical test results.
- (h) Breaking test load.
- (j) Proof load.
- (k) The number and locations of all connecting common links and all marked links.

## Section 4 Studless mooring chain cables

### 4.1 Scope

4.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for five grades, R3, R3S, R4, R4S and R5 of studless flash butt welded chain cable intended for long term mooring applications.

4.1.2 The chain is generally expected to be deployed only once for a pre-determined service life.

4.1.3 Each studless chain link design will require to be approved by LR. The plan submitted for this approval is to include the minimum proof and breaking test loads, and the chain mass calculations.

### 4.2 Manufacture

4.2.1 All the requirements of 3.2, with the exception of that relating to studs, apply to the manufacture of studless mooring chain cables.

### 4.3 Shape and dimensions of links

4.3.1 The shape and dimensions of the links are to be in accordance with the approved design.

### 4.4 Dimensional tolerances

4.4.1 The dimensional tolerances of studless links are to be in accordance with the requirements of 3.3.1 to 3.3.7.

### 4.5 Heat treatment

4.5.1 Heat treatment of the chain is to be in accordance with the requirements of 3.5.

### 4.6 Testing of completed chain

4.6.1 All chain cables are to be tested in the presence of a Surveyor, at a proving establishment recognised by LR. A list of recognised proving establishments is published by LR. In addition to the requirements stated in this Chapter, attention must be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship is to be registered.

4.6.2 The entire length of chain cable is to be subjected to a proof load test in an approved testing machine and is to withstand the load given in Table 10.3.1 for the appropriate grade and diameter of the chain, see also 4.1.3.

4.6.3 Inspection after proof load testing is to be in accordance with the requirements given in 3.6.3 to 3.6.20, excluding that related to checking of studs in 3.6.5.

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

# Chapter 10

Sections 4 & 5

4.6.4 In addition to the inspection of the flash butt welded areas as required in 3.6.6, the surfaces of the bends of at least 10 per cent of the links are to be examined by magnetic particle inspection and are to be free from cracks or other defects.

4.6.5 If stretching of links is required in order to maintain dimensional tolerances, the load applied is not to exceed the proof load by more than 10 per cent, and only random lengths of the chain need to be stretched.

4.6.6 Breaking load tests are to be carried out in accordance with 3.6.21 to 3.6.23 and Tables 10.3.1 and 10.3.2.

4.6.7 Alternative procedures to breaking load testing (see 3.6.24) are not permissible unless prior agreement is given by LR after special consideration.

4.6.8 Mechanical testing is to be carried out in accordance with 3.6.25 to 3.6.30 and Table 3.3.4.

4.6.9 The weight of the chain cable is to be in accordance with the approved plan.

## 4.7 Connecting or substitute links

4.7.1 Connecting links and substitute links are to be in accordance with the requirements of 3.7.

## 4.8 Fittings

4.8.1 Fittings for studless chain are to comply with the requirements of 3.8.

## 4.9 Identification

4.9.1 All chain and each fitting is to be identified in accordance with 3.9.1 and 3.9.2.

4.9.2 Identification marks are to be made on the outside of the straight part of the link, opposite the flash butt weld.

## 4.10 Certification

4.10.1 Certificates are to be issued in accordance with 3.11.

## 4.11 Documentation

4.11.1 Documentation in accordance with 3.11 is to be provided by the manufacturer.

## Section 5 Short link chain cables

### 5.1 Scope

5.1.1 This Section gives the requirements for electrically welded steel short link chain cable for marine use but excluding those applications covered by the *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment*.

5.1.2 Provision is made for grade M(4), as defined in ISO 1834:1999. Allowance is also made for the requirements of ISO 4565.

### 5.2 Manufacture

5.2.1 Short link chain cables are to be manufactured at works approved by LR. A list of approved manufacturers for short link chain cable is published separately by LR.

5.2.2 The chain is to be supplied in either the normalised or quenched and tempered condition. Heat treatment is to be carried out prior to proof and breaking load testing.

5.2.3 The chain may be galvanised using a hot dipping process provided that this is carried out prior to proof and breaking load testing. If galvanised, it is recommended that the thickness of the zinc coating be not less than 70 microns.

5.2.4 Unless otherwise agreed, the finished chain is to be free from coatings other than zinc.

### 5.3 Bar material

5.3.1 Bars for the manufacture of short link chain cable are to be made and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of Ch 3,1 and to the requirements of an International or acceptable National Standard.

5.3.2 The bars are to be made at a works approved by LR.

5.3.3 The steel is to be fully killed and fine grain treated.

5.3.4 The steel is to have mechanical properties which will allow the chain to meet the mechanical test requirements of 5.4.7 and Table 10.5.1.

### 5.4 Testing and inspection of chain cables

5.4.1 All chain cable of 12,5 mm diameter and above, and all steering chains irrespective of diameter, are to be tested in the presence of a Surveyor at a proving establishment recognised by LR. A list of recognised proving establishments is published by LR. In addition to the requirements stated in this Chapter, attention is to be given to any relevant statutory requirements of the National Authority of the country in which the ship or other marine structure is to be registered.



# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

## Chapter 10

### Section 5

**Table 10.5.1 Mechanical test requirements for short link chain cables**

Chain diameter mm	Grade M(4)	
	Proof load kN	Breaking load minimum kN
5	7,9	15,8
6,3	12,5	25
7,1	15,9	31,8
8	20,2	40,4
9	25,5	51
10	29,5	63
11,2	31,5	79
12,5	49,1	98,2
14	63	126
16	81	162
18	102	204
20	126	252
22,4	158	316
25	197	394
28	247	494
32	322	644
36	408	816
40	503	1006
45	637	1274

5.4.2 For chain of diameter less than 12,5 mm, other than steering chains, the manufacturer's tests will be acceptable.

5.4.3 After completion of all manufacturing processes, including heat treatment and galvanising, the whole of the chain is to be subjected to the appropriate proof load specified in Table 10.5.1.

5.4.4 The whole of the chain is to be inspected after the proof load test and is to be free from significant defects.

5.4.5 At least one sample, consisting of seven or more links, is to be selected by the Surveyor from each 200 m or less of chain for breaking load tests. Two additional links may be required for engagement in the jaws of the testing machine. These extra links are not to be taken into account in determining the total elongation, see 5.4.7.

5.4.6 The breaking load is to comply with the appropriate requirements of Table 10.5.1.

5.4.7 The total elongation of the breaking load sample at fracture, expressed as a percentage of the original inside length of the sample after proof loading, is to be not less than 20 per cent.

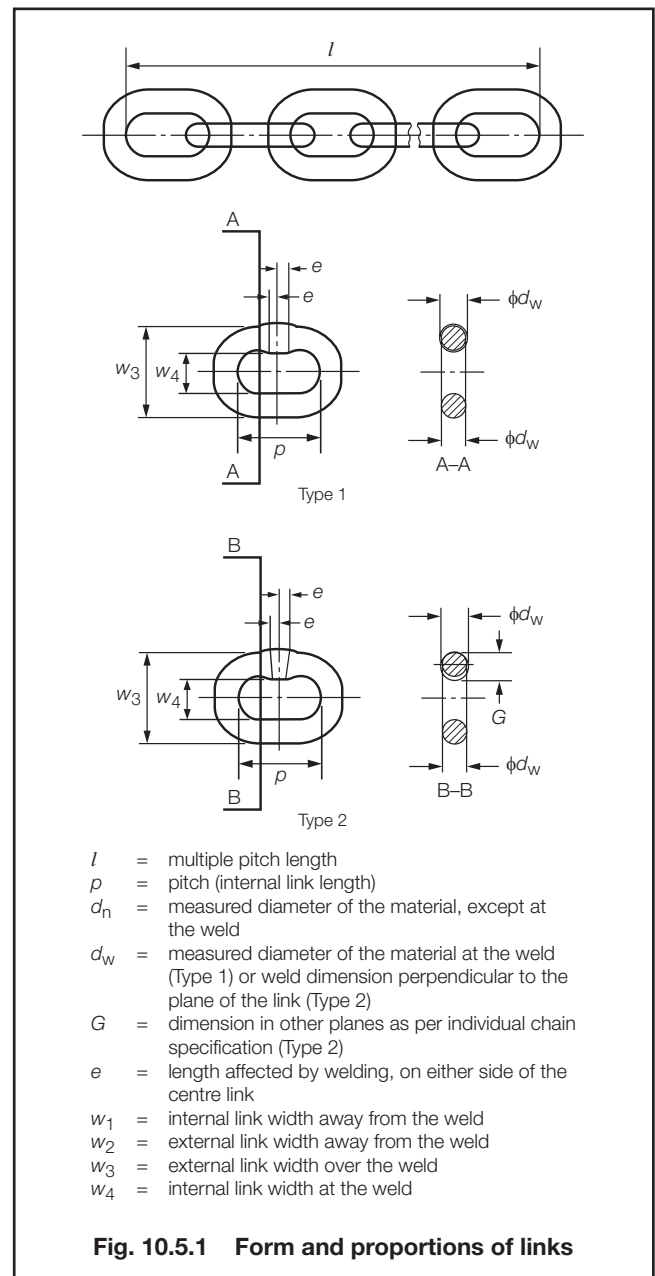
## 5.5 Dimensions and tolerances

5.5.1 The form and proportions of links are to be in accordance with Fig. 10.5.1.

5.5.2 Manufacturing tolerances are to be within the following limits:

Nominal diameter, $d_n$	$\pm 5\%$
Pitch of chain, $p_1$	$\pm 3\%$
Length measured over 11 links, $l$	$\pm 2\%$
Inside width, $w_1$	$1,35d_n$ minimum
Outside width, $w$	$3,6d_n$ maximum

The tolerances are to apply after galvanising. All measurements are to be taken after proof testing.



# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

# Chapter 10

Sections 5 & 6

## 5.6 Identification

5.6.1 All lengths of cable are to be stamped with the following identification marks:

- Inspector's mark and date.
- Reference mark or number of certificate.
- Manufacturer's mark or name.
- Chain cable quality mark, M, is to be stamped on at least each twentieth link or at intervals of one metre, whichever is the lesser distance.

5.6.2 Where the inspection is performed under LR's supervision, the inspector's mark and date are to be replaced by LR and the abbreviated name of LR's local office issuing the certificate.

## 5.7 Certification

5.7.1 The manufacturer is to supply the Surveyor with a certificate stating compliance with an appropriate ISO standard, and also, in the event of the requirements of 5.4 being undertaken other than in the presence of the Surveyor, stating that the test and inspection requirements have been complied with at a recognised proving establishment.

5.7.2 Each test certificate is to include the following particulars:

- the quality and description of chain,
- identification mark,
- nominal size of chain,
- proof load,
- breaking load,
- total elongation at fracture,
- where appropriate, the name of the proving establishment.

## Section 6 Steel wire ropes

### 6.1 Scope

6.1.1 Provision is made in this Section for the requirements for the manufacture, testing and certification of steel wire ropes intended to be used for general marine purposes, as well as permanent anchoring, mooring and marine lifting applications.

### 6.2 General requirements

6.2.1 For general marine purposes, such as stream wires, towlines and ship mooring lines, the construction is to be in accordance with Table 10.6.1. The construction, diameter and strength of steel wire ropes for permanent offshore applications, such as mooring, anchoring and lifting, are covered by other LR Rules. Alternative applications of wire ropes may be accepted, subject to special consideration.

6.2.2 The manufacturer's plant and method of production are to be approved by LR. A list of approved manufacturers of steel wire ropes is published annually in the *List of Approved Manufacturers of Materials*.

6.2.3 For shaped wire, for example, for large diameter ropes for permanent mooring, where there are no established Standards, the manufacturer is to provide evidence by way of test reports that specifications have been developed and agreed with the purchaser and LR for the purposes intended.

### 6.3 Steel wire for ropes

6.3.1 Steel wire is to be of homogeneous quality, uniform strength and free of defects likely to impair the manufacture and performance of the rope.

6.3.2 For all ropes, the specified minimum tensile strength of the wire is to be 1420, 1570, 1770 or 1960 N/mm<sup>2</sup>. The specified minimum tensile strength of the wire is the designated grade for the rope, unless otherwise defined by the purchaser's specification. The actual tensile strength of the wire is not to exceed 120 per cent of the specified minimum tensile strength.

**Table 10.6.1 Recommended rope construction**

Purpose	Construction of rope			Construction of strands
	Strands	Wires	Core	
Stream wires, towlines and mooring lines	6	24	Fibre	15 over 9 over fibre core
	6	37	Fibre	18 over 12 over 6 over 1
	6	26	Fibre	10 over (5 + 5) over 5 over 1
	6	31	Fibre	12 over (6 + 6) over 6 over 1
	6	36	Fibre	14 over (7 + 7) over 7 over 1
	6	41	Fibre	16 over (8 + 8) over 8 over 1
	6	30	Fibre	18 over 12 over fibre core
Towlines and mooring lines used in association with mooring winches	6	31	7 x 7 wire rope	12 over (6 + 6) over 6 over 1
	6	36	7 x 7 wire rope	14 over (7 + 7) over 7 over 1
	6	41	7 x 7 wire rope	16 over (8 + 8) over 8 over 1

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

## Chapter 10

### Section 6

6.3.3 For new rope construction, the manufacturer is to carry out prototype testing suitable for the application of the rope and this is to include tests on wire used for the construction.

6.3.4 Tensile and torsion tests, coating, and adhesion (wrap) tests are to be carried out on wire used for the manufacture of rope.

6.3.5 At least 10 per cent of the spools used for the manufacture of the strand are to be tested. The manufacturer is to demonstrate that tests have been carried out on at least one wire intended for each of the outer and inner strands, and for each diameter and grade used.

6.3.6 The heat number, wire diameter and strength of wire used for a particular construction are to be recorded by the manufacturer.

6.3.7 Torsion tests are to be carried out on the wire by causing one or both of the securing vices to be revolved until fracture occurs (a tensile load not exceeding two per cent of the breaking load of the wire may be applied to keep the wire stretched).

6.3.8 The uncoated wire is to withstand, without fracture, the number of complete twists given for Grades 1 or 3 in Table 10.6.2.

6.3.9 The galvanised wire is to withstand, without fracture, the number of complete twists given in the specification, as agreed with the purchaser and LR. In the absence of a suitable specification, the results are to comply with Table 10.6.2.

6.3.10 Hot dipped galvanised steel wire is to be used for the manufacture of ropes for marine applications. Depending upon the application, the coating may comply with any of the grades in Table 10.6.3. Grades 1 and 2 are heavy coatings. Grade 3 is the minimum coating weight where the galvanising is carried out prior to final wire drawing. Uncoated wire may be considered for approved applications.

6.3.11 The mass per unit area of the zinc coating is to be determined in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.

6.3.12 Zinc coating tests are to be carried out for each designated grade of wire. The manufacturer is to demonstrate that the coatings are continuous and uniform and suitable for the intended purpose.

6.3.13 Unless otherwise specified by the purchaser, zinc coating tests are to be carried out on the wire prior to stranding.

6.3.14 The adhesion of the coating is to be tested by wrapping the wire round a cylindrical mandrel for 10 complete turns. The ratio between the diameter of the mandrel and that of the wire is to be as in Table 10.6.4. After wrapping on the appropriate mandrel, the zinc coating is to have neither flaked nor cracked to such an extent that any zinc can be removed by rubbing with a cloth.

**Table 10.6.2 Torsion test**

Diameter coated wire mm	Minimum number of twists					
	Grade 2		Grade 1 or 3			
	Minimum strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>		Minimum strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>			
	1570	1770	1420	1570	1770	1960
<1,3	19	18	29	26	23	23
≥1,3 <2,3	18	17	26	24	21	21
≥2,3 <3,0	16	14	24	22	—	19
≥3,0 <4,0	12	10	20	18	—	17
≥4,0 <4,6	—	—	18	16	—	—
≥4,6 <5,0	—	—	16	14	—	—
≥5,0 <6,0	—	—	14	11	—	—

NOTE  
The minimum test length is 100d or 300 mm, where d is the wire diameter.

**Table 10.6.3 Zinc coating**

Diameter of coated wire mm	Zinc coating, minimum g/m <sup>2</sup>		
	Grade 1	Grade 2	Grade 3
≥0,20 <0,25	—	30	20
≥0,25 <0,33	—	45	30
≥0,33 <0,40	—	60	30
≥0,40 <0,50	60	75	40
≥0,50 <0,60	70	90	50
≥0,60 <0,80	85	110	60
≥0,80 <1,00	95	130	70
≥1,00 <1,20	110	150	80
≥1,20 <1,50	120	165	90
≥1,50 <1,90	130	180	100
≥1,90 <2,50	—	205	110
≥2,50 <3,20	—	230	125
≥3,20 <4,00	—	250	135

**Table 10.6.4 Wrap test for adhesion of coating**

Coating	Diameter of coated wire mm	Maximum ratio of mandrel to wire diameter
Grade 1 and 2	<1,5	4
	≥1,5	6
Grade 3	<1,5	2
	≥1,5	3

## 6.4 Tests on completed ropes

6.4.1 Every length of wire rope is to be subjected to a breaking strength test.

6.4.2 A sample of sufficient length is to be provided for the breaking load test. The rope ends are to be enclosed in a suitable socket. Testing is to be carried out in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

# Chapter 10

Sections 6 & 7

6.4.3 The rope may be subject to cyclic loading for bedding purposes prior to testing. The rope is to be tested at a suitable strain rate in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.

6.4.4 The load is to be applied until one wire break is witnessed or 130 per cent of the minimum breaking load is recorded. The maximum recorded load is to be reported by the manufacturer.

6.4.5 Tests in which a breakage occurs adjacent to and as a result of damage from the grips are to be rejected, if the applied load is less than the specified minimum requirement. The rope is to be retested to withstand the agreed minimum breaking load.

6.4.6 With the exception of offshore mooring ropes, consideration may be given to determining the breaking load by summation or aggregating actual test results on individual wires, if facilities are not available for undertaking a breaking test on a production basis. A suitable spin factor or lay-up deduction allowance in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard for the applicable rope diameter, designated grade and construction is to be applied.

6.4.7 Where spin factors or lay-up deduction allowances are proposed by the manufacturer, a report on suitable cyclic load testing of prototype ropes of the same construction, strength and diameter is to be approved by LR. In addition, the manufacturer is to show that a satisfactory breaking load test has been carried out in the previous two years, and witnessed by LR for the same rope construction, diameter and designated grade.

6.4.8 LR may give special consideration to spin factors or lay deductions based on data extrapolated from smaller diameter ropes of the same construction, provided that these ropes have been tested in accordance with 6.4.7.

6.4.9 All data arising from smaller diameter ropes for the extrapolation in 6.4.8 are to have been derived from tests carried out within two years of the manufacture of the larger diameter rope.

6.4.10 The finished rope is to have no more than one wire connecting weld in any length of  $18d$ , where  $d$  is the diameter of the rope.

## 6.5 Inspection

6.5.1 A report on dimensional and visual examination is to be presented to the Surveyor by the manufacturer. The dimensions and discard criteria are to comply with an agreed National or International Standard.

6.5.2 Visual and dimensional checks are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyor.

## 6.6 Identification

6.6.1 All completed ropes are to be identified with attached labels detailing the rope type, diameter and length.

## 6.7 Certification

6.7.1 A manufacturer's certificate, in accordance with Ch1,3.1.3(c), is to be issued. The certificate is to be validated by the manufacturer's representative, who is to be independent of the production process and LR.

6.7.2 Each test certificate is to contain the following particulars:

- Purchaser's name and order number.
- Details of the rope construction.
- Core material.
- Grade of zinc coating.
- Mechanical test results.
- Adhesion test results.
- Dimensions.
- Method of breaking load testing.
- Breaking load.

## Section 7 Fibre ropes

### 7.1 Manufacture

7.1.1 Fibre ropes intended as mooring lines may be made of coir, hemp, manila or sisal, or may be composed of synthetic (man-made) fibres. They may be three-strand (hawser laid), four-strand (shroud laid) or nine-strand (cable laid), but other constructions will be specially considered.

7.1.2 Each length of rope is to be manufactured from suitable material of good and consistent quality. Rope materials should, in general, comply with a recognised National Standard.

7.1.3 Synthetic fibre ropes are to be suitable for the purpose intended and should comply with a recognised standard.

7.1.4 Weighting and loading matter is not to be added, and any lubricant is to be kept to a minimum. Any rot-proofing or water repellancy treatment is not to be deleterious to the fibre nor is it to add to the weight or reduce the strength of the rope.

### 7.2 Tests of completed ropes

7.2.1 The breaking load is to be determined by testing to destruction a sample cut from the completed rope.

7.2.2 The minimum test length and the initial test load are to be as given in Table 10.7.1. After application of the initial load, the diameter and evenness of lay up of the sample are to be checked. The sample is then to be uniformly strained at the rate given in Table 10.7.1 until it breaks.

7.2.3 The actual breaking load is to be not less than that given in an appropriate National Standard.

# Equipment for Mooring and Anchoring

## Chapter 10

Section 7

**Table 10.7.1 Breaking load test**

Material	Test length mm minimum	Initial load % (see Note)	Rate of straining mm/min
Natural fibre	1800	2	150 ± 50
Synthetic fibre	900	1	100 max.
NOTE Percentage of specified minimum breaking load.			

7.2.4 If the sample is held by grips and the break occurs within 150 mm of the grips, the test may be repeated, but not more than two tests may be made on any one coil.

7.2.5 Where difficulty is experienced in testing a sample of a completed synthetic fibre rope, LR will consider alternative methods of testing.

### 7.3 Identification

7.3.1 Each coil of rope is to be identified with an attached label detailing the material, construction, diameter and length.

### 7.4 Certification

7.4.1 A manufacturer's certificate, in accordance with Ch1,3.1.3(c), is to be issued. The certificate is to be validated by the manufacturer's representative, who is to be independent of the production process and LR.

7.4.2 Each test certificate is to include the following particulars:

- Manufacturer's name.
- Purchaser's name and order number.
- Rope type.
- Dimensions.
- Test length.
- Rate of straining.
- Breaking load.



# Approval of Welding Consumables

# Chapter 11

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Mechanical testing procedures**
- 3 **Electrodes for manual and gravity welding**
- 4 **Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding**
- 5 **Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding**
- 6 **Consumables for use in electro-slag and electro-gas welding**
- 7 **Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials**
- 8 **Consumables for welding austenitic and duplex stainless steels**
- 9 **Consumables for welding aluminium alloys**

## ■ Section 1 General

### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 Provision is made in this Chapter for the approval by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') of electrodes, wires, fluxes and other consumables intended for use in the welding of the following types of materials:

- (a) Steel of various grades as represented by Grade A through to Grade FH69, see Sections 3 to 7.
- (b) A wide range of low-temperature service steels, see Sections 3 to 7.
- (c) Stainless steels including nitrogen strengthened grades and some of the duplex varieties, see Section 8.
- (d) Aluminium alloys, see Section 9.

1.1.2 For this purpose, welding, consumables are categorised and subject to the special requirements of different Sections of this Chapter.

- (a) Covered electrodes for manual welding and gravity welding.
- (b) Combinations of wire and flux for automatic submerged-arc welding.
- (c) Combinations of wire and gas for gas metal-arc welding and wires for self-shielding welding.
- (d) Combinations for electro-slag and electro-gas welding.
- (e) Combinations with temporary backing materials for one-side welding.
- (f) Consumables for welding austenitic and duplex stainless steels.
- (g) Combinations for welding aluminium.

### 1.2 Grading

1.2.1 Consumables for welding structural steels are graded into ten strength levels, and each of these is further subdivided into several levels in respect of notch toughness. The five basic levels of toughness are indicated by a number (1 to 5). Normal tensile strength is indicated by 'N'. Higher tensile strength is indicated by 'Y', and if the yield strength is higher than 375 N/mm<sup>2</sup> the Y is followed by a number (40 to 69), as shown in Table 11.1.1.

1.2.2 In addition to the grade, consumables are also allocated a suffix indicating the welding technique used. These are defined in the context of the following Sections of this Chapter.

1.2.3 Consumables for structural and low temperature service steels may be controlled low hydrogen and approved as such. Grade marking H15, H10 or H5 will be applied, as appropriate.

1.2.4 For joining higher strength steels, approval granted for 1Y consumables will be limited to maximum material thickness of 25 mm.

1.2.5 Test assemblies are not to be subjected to any heat treatment, except in those higher strength grades where it is considered necessary to use the welded joint in the stress relieved (tempered) condition. In those cases, the code 'sr' will be added to the approval grade.

1.2.6 Further details of grading are given in subsequent Sections of this Chapter.

### 1.3 Manufacture

1.3.1 The manufacturer's plant and method of production of welding consumables are to be such as to ensure reasonable uniformity in manufacture.

### 1.4 Approval procedures

1.4.1 Welding consumables will be approved subject to a satisfactory inspection of the works by the Surveyor for compliance with the test requirements detailed in subsequent Sections in this Chapter.

1.4.2 The test assemblies are to be prepared under the supervision of the Surveyor, and using samples selected by him. All tests are to be carried out in his presence.

1.4.3 For Charpy V-notch tests, a set of three test specimens is to be prepared and the average energy value is to comply with the requirements of subsequent Sections in this Chapter. One individual value may be less than the required average value provided that it is not less than 70 per cent of this value.

1.4.4 Where chemical analysis is required for approval, the results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.



# Approval of Welding Consumables

# Chapter 11

Section 1

**Table 11.1.1 Welding consumable grades appropriate to structural and low temperature service steel grades**

Consumable grade	Suitable for steel grades (see Notes)			
1. Ship Grade Steels (Ch 3,2 and Ch 3,3)				
1N 2N 3N	A B, D E	<b>AH27S</b> <b>DH27S</b> <b>EH27S</b>	— — —	— — —
1Y 2Y 3Y 4Y	A B, D E —	<b>AH27S</b> <b>DH27S</b> <b>EH27S</b> <b>FH27S</b>	<b>AH32</b> <b>DH32</b> <b>EH32</b> <b>FH32</b>	<b>AH36</b> <b>DH36</b> <b>EH36</b> <b>FH36</b>
2Y40 2Y40 3Y40 4Y40 5Y40		<b>AH32</b> <b>DH32</b> <b>EH32</b> <b>FH32</b> <b>FH32</b>	<b>AH36</b> <b>DH36</b> <b>EH36</b> <b>FH36</b> <b>FH36</b>	<b>AH40</b> <b>DH40</b> <b>EH40</b> <b>FH40</b> <b>FH40</b>
2Y47 2Y47 3Y47 4Y47	— — — —	— — — —	<b>AH40</b> <b>DH40</b> <b>EH40</b> <b>FH40</b>	<b>AH47</b> <b>DH47</b> <b>EH47</b> <b>FH47</b>
2. High Strength Steels (Ch 3,10) see Note 3				
3Y42 3Y42 4Y42 5Y42	<b>AH36</b> <b>DH36</b> <b>EH36</b> <b>FH36</b>	<b>AH40</b> <b>DH40</b> <b>EH40</b> <b>FH40</b>	AH42 DH42 EH42 FH42	— — — —
3Y46 3Y46 4Y46 5Y46	<b>AH40</b> <b>DH40</b> <b>EH40</b> <b>FH40</b>	AH42 DH42 EH42 FH42	AH46 DH46 EH46 FH46	— — — —
3Y50 3Y50 4Y50 5Y50	AH42 DH42 EH42 FH42	AH46 DH46 EH46 FH46	AH50 DH50 EH50 FH50	— — — —
3Y55 3Y55 4Y55 5Y55	AH50 DH50 EH50 FH50	AH55 DH55 EH55 FH55	— — — —	— — — —
3Y62 3Y62 4Y62 5Y62	AH55 DH55 EH55 FH55	AH62 DH62 EH62 FH62	— — — —	— — — —
3Y69 3Y69 4Y69 5Y69	AH62 DH62 EH62 FH62	AH69 DH69 EH69 FH69	— — — —	— — — —
3. Ferritic Low Temperature Service Steels (Ch 3,6)				
1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni 5 Ni 9 Ni	1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni 5 Ni 9 Ni	— — — —	— — — —	— — — —
NOTES				
1. Steel grades shown in bold italic type include the equivalent (LT-xxxx) low temperature service grades referenced in Ch 3,6.				
2. The Table applies to the multi-run welding techniques (i.e. m, S, M).				
3. Approval of consumables intended for welding high strength steels in Ch 3,10 also includes the standard ship steel grades as shown in bold italic type and equivalent low temperature service steel grades referenced in Ch 3,6.				

1.4.5 LR may require, in any particular case, such additional tests or requirements as may be necessary.

1.4.6 A List of Approved Welding Consumables is published by LR.

1.4.7 LR is to be notified of any alteration proposed to be made in the process of manufacture subsequent to approval. Sufficient detail is to be provided to determine the need for further testing to maintain the approval.

1.4.8 Consideration will be given to alternative procedures for approval in the case of manufacturers producing consumables under the control of another manufacturer or plant already having approval of one or more products.

## 1.5 Annual inspection and tests

1.5.1 All establishments where approved welding consumables are manufactured, and the associated quality control procedures, are to be subjected to annual inspection. On these occasions, samples of the approved consumables are to be selected by the Surveyor and subjected to the tests detailed in subsequent Sections in this Chapter. These are to be completed and reported before the end of the one year period beginning at the initial approval date, and repeated annually so as to provide at least an average of one annual test per year.

## 1.6 Changes in grading

1.6.1 Changes in grading of welding consumables will be considered only at the manufacturer's request, preferably at the time of annual testing. For upgrading in connection with impact properties, and uprating in connection with tensile properties, tests from butt weld assemblies will be required in addition to the normal annual approval tests. For upgrading in connection with hydrogen testing, specific tests will be required in accordance with ISO 3690. Downgrading and downrating may be imposed by LR where tests and re-tests fail to meet the requirements of this Chapter.

## 1.7 Manufacturers' Quality Assurance Systems

1.7.1 As an alternative to 1.5, manufacturers may seek maintenance of approval based on acceptance by LR of their 'in house' quality assurance system, and by regular audit of that system carried out in accordance with procedures approved by LR.

## 1.8 Certification

1.8.1 Each carton or package of approved consumables is to contain a certificate from the manufacturer, generally in accordance with the following: 'The <insert name of manufacturer> company certifies that the composition and quality of these consumables conform with those of the consumables used in making the test pieces submitted to and approved by the approval bodies nominated on the label of this package.'



# Approval of Welding Consumables

# Chapter 11

Sections 2 & 3

## Section 2 Mechanical testing procedures

### 2.1 Dimensions of test specimens

2.1.1 Dimensions of test pieces for deposited metal tensile tests, butt weld tensile tests, bend tests and Charpy V-notch impact test are to machined to the dimensions and tolerances detailed in Chapter 2.

### 2.2 Testing procedures

2.2.1 The procedures used for all tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Chapter 2.

2.2.2 Butt weld bend test specimens are to be tested at ambient temperature and are to be bent through an angle of 120° over a former having a diameter which relates to the thickness of the test specimen as detailed in subsequent Sections. For each pair of bend test specimens, one specimen is to be tested with the face of the weld in tension and the other with the root of the weld in tension.

2.2.3 Macro examinations are to be carried out on polished and etched specimens at a maximum magnification not exceeding x10. The examination is to ensure complete fusion, inter-run penetration and freedom of defects.

### 2.3 Re-testing procedures

2.3.1 Re-testing procedures are to comply with Ch 2, 1.4.

## Section 3 Electrodes for manual and gravity welding

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 Dependent on the results of the mechanical and other tests, approval will be allocated as one of the grades from Table 11.3.1.

3.1.2 Approval of an electrode will be given in conjunction with a welding technique indicated by a suffix 'm' for manual welding, 'G' for gravity or contact electrode and 'p' for deep penetration electrode.

3.1.3 If the electrodes are in compliance with the requirements of the hydrogen test given in 3.4, a suffix 'H15' or 'H10' or 'H5' will be added to the grade mark. Table 11.3.1 shows the mandatory levels of low hydrogen approval for the various approval grades.

3.1.4 For each strength level, electrodes which have satisfied the requirements for a higher toughness grade are considered as complying with the requirements for a lower grade.

**Table 11.3.1 Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for manual and gravity electrodes**

Approval grades	Low hydrogen grade required
1 (1N), 2 (2N), 3 (3N) 2Y, 3Y, 4Y 2Y40 to 5Y40 2Y47 to 4Y47	NR H15 (see Note 2) H15 H10
3Y42 to 5Y42 3Y46 to 5Y46 3Y50 to 5Y50 3Y55 to 5Y55 3Y62 to 5Y62 3Y69 to 5Y69	H10 H10 H10 H5 H5 H5
1½ Ni 3½ Ni 5 Ni 9 Ni	H15 H15 NR (see Note 3) NR (see Note 3)
<b>NOTES</b> 1. NR – Not required. Approval may be obtained when requested. 2. Optional in this case. If low hydrogen approval is not obtained, there is a limitation on the carbon equivalent of the steel which is permitted to be welded. 3. Assumes use of an austenitic, non-transformable, filler material.	

3.1.5 Electrodes approved for normal and higher strength levels up to and including 'Y' are also considered suitable for welding steels in the three strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

3.1.6 Electrodes approved for strength levels Y40 to Y50, but excluding Y47 are also considered suitable for welding steels in two strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

3.1.7 Electrodes approved for strength levels Y47, Y55 and above are also considered suitable for welding steels in only one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

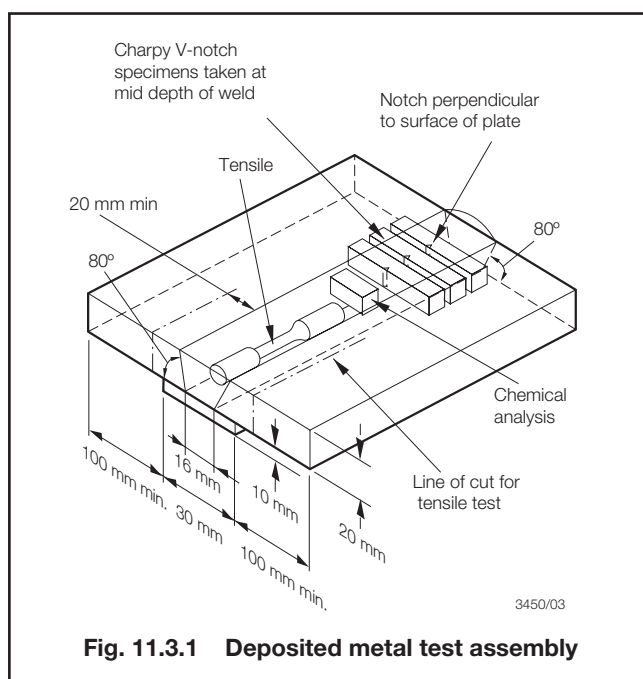
3.1.8 The welding current used is to be within the range recommended by the manufacturer and, where an electrode is stated to be suitable for both a.c. and d.c., a.c. is to be used for the preparation of the test assemblies.

3.1.9 Where an electrode is submitted only for approval for fillet welding and to which the butt weld test provided in 3.3 is not considered applicable, approval tests are to consist of the fillet weld tests as given in 3.5 and deposited metal tests with chemical analyses as given in 3.2.

## 3.2 Deposited metal test assemblies

3.2.1 The deposited metal test assemblies are to be prepared in the downhand position as shown in Fig. 11.3.1, one with 4 mm diameter electrodes and the other with 8 mm diameter electrodes, or the largest size manufactured if this is less than 8 mm diameter. If an electrode is available in one diameter only, one test assembly is sufficient. Any of the grades of steel in Table 11.1.1 may be used for the preparation of these assemblies, up to a strength level which is not more than two levels above that for which approval is sought.

3.2.2 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Fig. 11.3.1, the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.



3.2.3 The weld metal is to be deposited in single- or multi-run layers according to normal practice, and the direction of deposition of each layer is to alternate from each end of the plate, each run of weld metal being not less than 2 mm and not more than 4 mm thick. Between each run, the assembly is to be left in still air until it has cooled to less than 250°C, the temperature being taken in the centre of the weld, on the surface of the seam. After being welded, the test assemblies are not to be subjected to any heat treatment, except in those higher strength grades where it is considered necessary to use the welded joint in the stress-relieved (tempered) condition. In those cases, the code 'sr' will be added to the approval grading.

3.2.4 The chemical analysis of the deposited weld metal in each deposited metal test assembly is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant alloying elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

3.2.5 One tensile and three impact test specimens are to be taken from each test assembly as shown in Fig. 11.3.1. Care is to be taken that the axis of the tensile test specimen coincides with the centre of the weld and the mid-thickness of the plates. The impact test specimens are to be cut perpendicular to the weld, with their axes 10 mm from the upper surface. The notch is to be positioned in the centre of the weld and cut in the face of the test specimen perpendicular to the surface of the plate.

3.2.6 The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11.3.2 as appropriate.

## 3.3 Butt weld test assemblies

3.3.1 Butt weld assemblies, as shown in Fig. 11.3.2, are to be prepared for each welding position (downhand, horizontal-vertical, vertical-upward, vertical-downward, and overhead) for which the electrode is recommended by the manufacturer. In the case of electrodes for normal strength and higher strength steels (up to 355 N/mm<sup>2</sup> minimum specified yield strength), electrodes satisfying the requirements for downhand and vertical-upward positions will be considered as also complying with the requirements for the horizontal-vertical position. In all other cases, approval for the horizontal-vertical position will require a butt weld to be made in that position and fully tested.

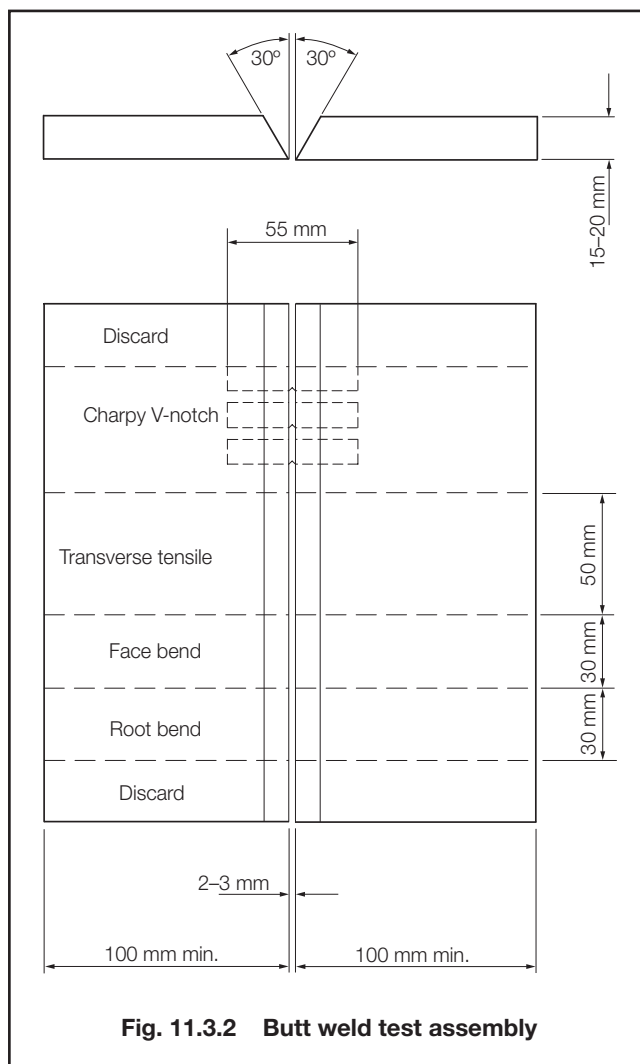
3.3.2 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Fig. 11.3.2 the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.

3.3.3 Where the electrode is to be approved only in the downhand position, an additional test assembly is to be prepared in that position.

3.3.4 The grades of steel used for the preparation of the test assemblies are to be as follows:

Grade 1 (1N) electrodes	A
Grade 2 (2N) electrodes	A, B or D
Grade 3 (3N) electrodes	A, B, D or E
Grade 2Y electrodes	AH32, AH36, DH32 or DH36
Grade 3Y electrodes	AH32, AH36, DH32, DH36, EH32 or EH36
Grade 4Y electrodes	AH32, AH36, DH32, DH36, EH32, EH36, FH32 or FH36
Grade 2Y40 electrodes	AH40 or DH40
Grade 3Y40 electrodes	AH40, DH40 or EH40
Grade 4Y40 electrodes	AH40, DH40, EH40 or FH40
Grade 5Y40 electrodes	AH40, DH40, EH40 or FH40
Grade 2Y47 electrodes	AH47, DH47
Grade 3Y47 electrodes	AH47, DH47, EH47
Grade 4Y47 electrodes	AH47, DH47, EH47 or FH47

Where Grade 32 higher tensile steel is used, the tensile strength is to be not less than 490 N/mm<sup>2</sup>. The chemical composition, including the content of grain refining elements, is to be reported in all cases where higher tensile steel is used.



**Fig. 11.3.2 Butt weld test assembly**

3.3.5 For all other grades, the steel plates used are to be selected by reference to Table 11.1.1, and are to have at least their chemical composition and tensile properties within the limits specified for that grade in Chapter 3. The strength grade used is to be the same as that for which approval is sought, and the toughness grade is to be no higher than that for which approval is also sought.

3.3.6 The test assemblies are to be made by welding together two plates of equal thickness (15 to 20 mm), not less than 100 mm in width and of sufficient length to allow the cutting out of test specimens of the prescribed number and size. The plate edges are to be prepared to form a single V-joint, the included angle between the fusion faces being 60° and the root gap 2 to 3 mm. The root face is to be 0 to 2 mm.

3.3.7 The following welding procedure is to be adopted in making the test assemblies:

**Downhand (a).** The first run with 4 mm diameter electrode. Remaining runs (except the last two layers) with 5 mm diameter electrodes or above according to the normal welding practice with the electrodes. The runs of the last two layers with the largest diameter of electrode manufactured or 8 mm whichever is the lesser.

**Downhand (b)** (where a second downhand test is required). First run with 4 mm diameter electrode. Next run with an electrode of intermediate diameter of 5 mm or 6 mm, and the remaining runs with the largest diameter of electrode manufactured or 8 mm whichever is the lesser.

**Horizontal-vertical.** First run with 4 mm or 5 mm diameter electrode. Subsequent runs with 5 mm diameter electrodes.

**Vertical-upward and overhead.** First run with 3,25 mm diameter electrode. Remaining runs with 4 mm diameter electrodes or possibly with 5 mm if this is recommended by the manufacturer for the positions concerned.

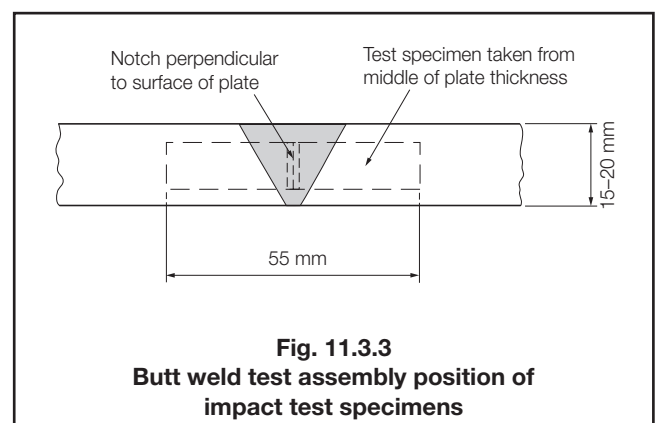
**Vertical-downward.** If the electrode being tested is intended for vertical welding in the downward direction, this technique is to be adopted for the preparation of the test assembly using electrode diameters as recommended by the manufacturer.

3.3.8 For all assemblies, the back sealing runs are to be made with 4 mm diameter electrodes in the welding position appropriate to each test sample, after cutting out the root run to clean metal. For electrodes suitable for downhand welding only, the test assemblies may be turned over to carry out the back sealing run.

3.3.9 Normal welding practice is to be used and, between each run, the assembly is to be left in still air until it has cooled to less than 250°C, the temperature being taken in the centre of the weld, on the surface of the seam. After being welded, the test assemblies are not to be subjected to any heat treatment, except in those higher strength grades where it is considered necessary to use the welded joint in the stress-relieved (tempered) condition. In those cases, the code 'sr' will be added to the approval grading.

3.3.10 It is recommended that the welded assemblies be subjected to a radiographic examination to ascertain if there are any defects in the weld prior to the preparation of test specimens.

3.3.11 The test specimens as shown in Figs. 11.3.2 and 11.3.3 are to be prepared from each test assembly.



**Fig. 11.3.3 Butt weld test assembly position of impact test specimens**

# Approval of Welding Consumables

# Chapter 11

Section 3

**Table 11.3.2 Requirements for deposited metal tests (covered electrodes)**

Grade (see Note 3)	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> (see Note 1)	Elongation on 50 mm % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
				Test temperature °C	Average energy (see Note 2) J minimum
1N, 2N, 3N	305	400 – 560	22	+20, 0, –20	47
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	375	490 – 660	22	+20, 0, –20, –40	47
2Y40, 3Y40, 4Y40, 5Y40	400	510 – 690	22	0, –20, –40, –60	47
2Y47, 3Y47, 4Y47	460	570 – 720	19	0, –20, –40	53
3Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–20	47
3Y42	420	530 – 680	20	–20	47
3Y46	460	570 – 720	20	–20	47
3Y50	500	610 – 770	18	–20	50
3Y55	550	670 – 830	18	–20	55
3Y62	620	720 – 890	18	–20	62
3Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–20	69
4Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–40	47
4Y42	420	530 – 680	20	–40	47
4Y46	460	570 – 720	20	–40	47
4Y50	500	610 – 770	18	–40	50
4Y55	550	670 – 830	18	–40	55
4Y62	620	720 – 890	18	–40	62
4Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–40	69
5Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–60	47
5Y42	420	530 – 680	20	–60	47
5Y46	460	570 – 720	20	–60	47
5Y50	500	610 – 770	18	–60	50
5Y55	550	670 – 830	18	–60	55
5Y62	620	720 – 890	18	–60	62
5Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–60	69
1½ Ni	375	460	22	–80	34
3½ Ni	375	420	25	–100	34
5 Ni	375	500	25	–120	34
9 Ni	375	600	25	–196	34

NOTES

- Single values are the minimum requirements.
- Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with 1.4.3.
- Grade 1Y is not applicable to SMAW consumables referenced in Section 3.

**3.3.12** The results of all tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11.3.3 as appropriate. The position of fracture in the transverse tensile test is to be reported.

**3.3.13** The bend test specimens can be considered as complying with the requirements if, after bending, no crack or other open defect exceeding 3 mm in dimensions can be seen on the outer surface.

## 3.4 Hydrogen test

**3.4.1** The hydrogen gradings are specified in 3.1.3. The hydrogen grading required determines the method of testing permitted as shown in Table 11.3.4. Where ISO 3690 is used as the testing method, three test specimens are to be prepared and tested, and all three hydrogen test results must be below the maximum value for the hydrogen mark required.

## 3.5 Fillet weld test assemblies

**3.5.1** Fillet weld assemblies as shown in Fig. 11.3.4 are to be prepared for each welding position (horizontal-vertical, vertical-upward, vertical-downward or overhead) for which the electrode is recommended by the manufacturer. The grade of steel used for the test assemblies is to be as detailed in 3.3.4. The length of the test assembly, *L*, is to be sufficient to allow at least the deposition of the entire length of the largest diameter electrode being tested. Where an electrode is submitted for approval of both butt and fillet welding, approval tests are to include the deposited metal tests as given in 3.2, the butt weld tests as given in 3.3, and only one fillet weld test as given in subsequent paragraphs of this sub-Section welded in the horizontal-vertical position.

## Approval of Welding Consumables

## Chapter 11

## Section 3

**Table 11.3.3 Requirements for butt weld tests (covered electrodes)**

Grade (see Note 3)	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Bend test ratio: $\frac{D}{t}$	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
			Test temperature °C	Average energy (see Note 1) J minimum
				All positions (see Note 2)
1N, 2N, 3N	400	3	+20, 0, -20	47 (34)
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	490	3	+20, 0, -20, -40	47 (34)
2Y40, 3Y40, 4Y40, 5Y40	510	3	0, -20, -40, -60	47 (39)
2Y47, 3Y47, 4Y47	570 – 720	4	0, -20, -40	53
3Y40	510	3	-20	47 (39)
3Y42	530 – 680	4	-20	47
3Y46	570 – 720	4	-20	47
3Y50	610 – 770	4	-20	50
3Y55	670 – 830	5	-20	55
3Y62	720 – 890	5	-20	62
3Y69	770 – 940	5	-20	69
4Y40	510	3	-40	47 (39)
4Y42	530 – 680	4	-40	47
4Y46	570 – 720	4	-40	47
4Y50	610 – 770	4	-40	50
4Y55	670 – 830	5	-40	55
4Y62	720 – 890	5	-40	62
4Y69	770 – 940	5	-40	69
5Y40	510	3	-60	39
5Y42	530 – 680	4	-60	47
5Y46	570 – 720	4	-60	47
5Y50	610 – 770	4	-60	50
5Y55	670 – 830	5	-60	55
5Y62	720 – 890	5	-60	62
5Y69	770 – 940	5	-60	69
1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	490	3	-80	27
3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	450	3	-100	27
5 Ni	540	4	-120	27
9 Ni	640	4	-196	27

NOTES

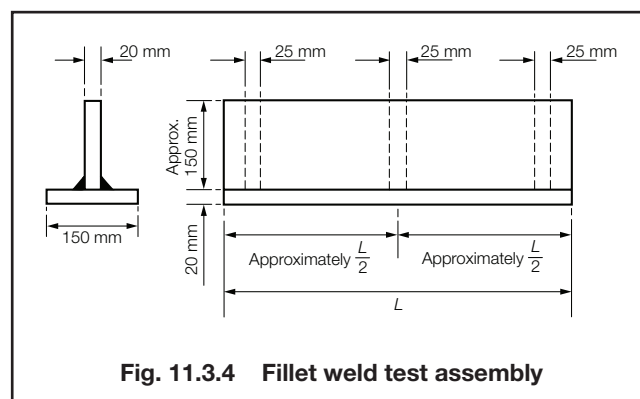
- Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with 1.4.3.
- Values in ( ) apply only to welds made in the vertical position with upward progression.
- Grade 1Y is not applicable to SMAW consumables referenced in Section 3.

**Table 11.3.4 Permitted methods for obtaining low hydrogen grading**

Hydrogen Grade	Permitted Method
H15	ISO 3690 (or Glycerine) (See Note)
H10	ISO 3690
H5	ISO 3690

NOTE  
ISO method preferred.

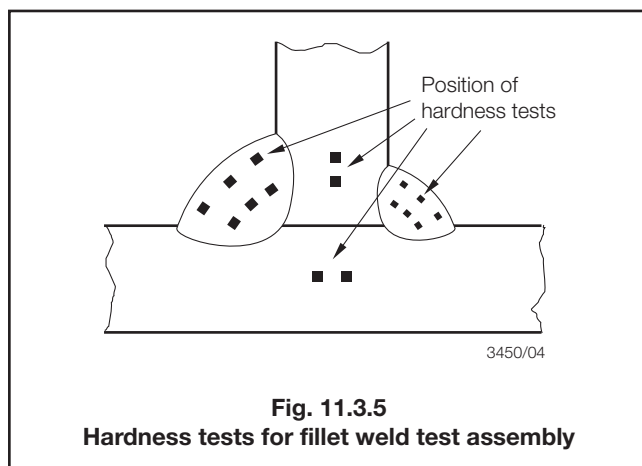
3.5.2 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Fig. 11.3.4, the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.

**Fig. 11.3.4 Fillet weld test assembly**

3.5.3 The electrode sizes to be used are the maximum and minimum diameters recommended by the manufacturer for fillet welding. The first side is to be welded using the maximum diameter. The second side is to be welded only after the assembly has been allowed to cool below 50°C using the minimum diameter. The size of these single run fillet welds will, in general, be determined by the electrode size and the welding current employed during testing and should represent the range of fillet weld bead sizes recommended by the manufacturer.

3.5.4 Each test assembly is to be sectioned to form three macro-sections, each about 25 mm thick. These are to be examined for root penetration, satisfactory profile, freedom from cracking and reasonable freedom from porosity and slag inclusions. Any undercut is not to exceed 0,5 mm in depth. Convexity or concavity of the profile is not to exceed one-tenth of the fillet bead throat dimension. All such observations are to be reported.

3.5.5 Hardness measurements are to be made on the central macro-section only, as shown in Fig. 11.3.5. The results are to be reported.



**Fig. 11.3.5**  
**Hardness tests for fillet weld test assembly**

3.5.6 One of the remaining sections of the assembly is to have the weld on the first side gouged or machined to facilitate breaking the fillet weld on the second side by closing the two plates together, subjecting the root of the weld to tension. On the other remaining section, the weld on the second side is to be gouged or machined and the section fractured using the same procedure. The fractured surfaces are to be examined. They are to show satisfactory penetration, freedom from cracks and reasonable freedom from porosity and this should be reported.

## 3.6 Electrodes designed for deep penetration welding

3.6.1 Where an electrode is designed solely for the deep penetration welding of downhand butt joints and horizontal-vertical fillets in normal tensile strength steel, only the tests detailed in 3.7 and 3.8 are required for approval purposes.

3.6.2 Electrodes designed solely for the deep penetration welding technique will be approved as complying with Grade 1 requirements only and will be given the suffix 'p'.

3.6.3 Where a manufacturer recommends that an electrode having deep penetrating properties can also be used for downhand butt welding of thicker plates with prepared edges, the electrode will be treated as a normal penetration electrode, and the full series of tests in the downhand position is to be carried out, together with the deep penetration tests given in 3.7 and 3.8.

3.6.4 Where a manufacturer desires to demonstrate that an electrode, in addition to its use as a normal penetration electrode, also has deep penetrating properties when used for downhand butt welding and horizontal fillet welding, the additional tests given in 3.7 and 3.8 are to be carried out.

3.6.5 Electrodes approved for both normal and deep penetration welding will have the suffix 'p' added after the appropriate grade mark for normal penetration welding.

3.6.6 Where the manufacturer prescribes a different welding current and procedure for the electrode when used as a deep penetration electrode and a normal penetration electrode, the recommended current and procedure are to be used when making the test assemblies in each case.

## 3.7 Deep penetration butt weld test assemblies

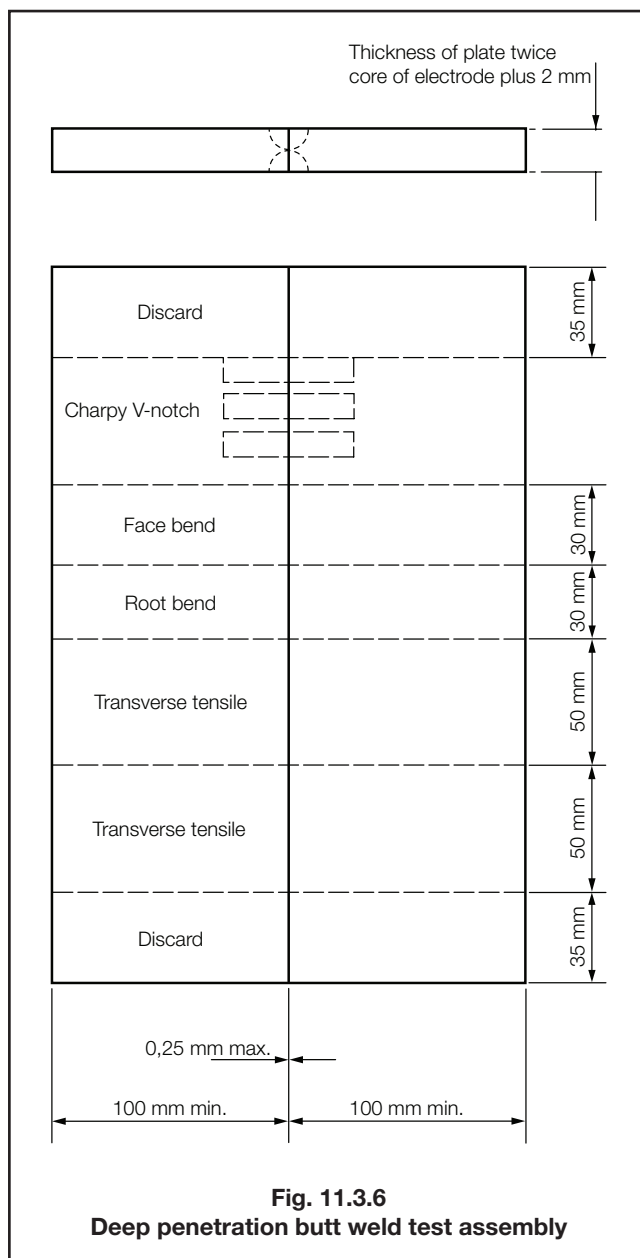
3.7.1 Two plates of thickness equal to twice the diameter of the core of the electrode plus 2 mm are to be butt welded together with one downhand run of welding from each side. The plates are to be not less than 100 mm wide and of sufficient length to allow the cutting out of the test specimens of the correct number and size as shown in Fig. 11.3.6. Grade A steel is to be used for these test assemblies. The joint edges are to be prepared square and smooth and, after tacking, the gap is not to exceed 0,25 mm. The test assembly is to be welded using an 8 mm diameter electrode, or the largest diameter manufactured if this is less than 8 mm and the assembly is to be allowed to cool below 50°C between runs.

3.7.2 The test specimens as shown in Figs. 11.3.3 and 11.3.6 are to be prepared from each test assembly.

3.7.3 The results of tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11.3.3 for Grade 1 electrodes. The position of fracture in the tensile test is to be reported. The bend test specimens are to be in accordance with 3.3.13.

3.7.4 The discards at the end of the welded assemblies are to be not more than 35 mm wide. The joints of these discards are to be polished and etched and must show complete fusion and inter-penetration of the weld beads. At each cut in the test assembly, the joints are also to be examined to ensure that complete fusion has taken place.

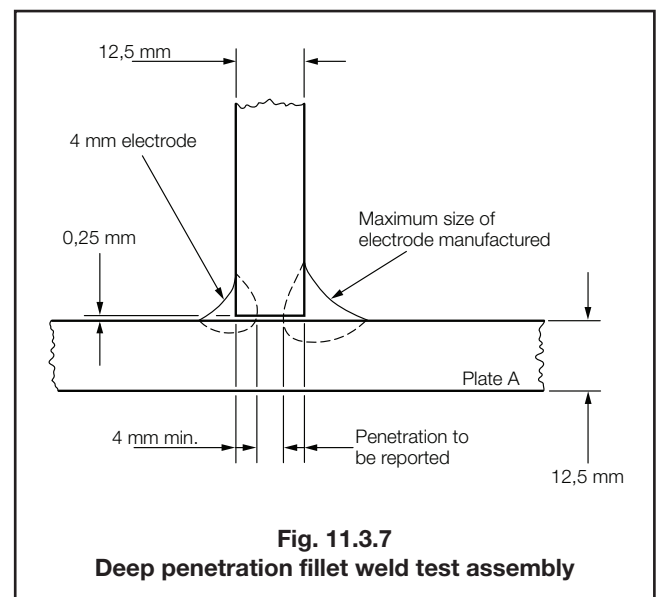




## 3.8 Deep penetration fillet weld test assemblies

3.8.1 A fillet weld assembly is to be prepared as shown in Fig. 11.3.7 with plates about 12,5 mm in thickness. The welding is to be carried out with one run for each fillet with plate A in the horizontal plane during the welding operations. The length of the fillet is to be 160 mm and the gap between the plates is to be not more than 0,25 mm. Grade A steel is to be used for these test assemblies.

3.8.2 The fillet weld on one side of the assembly is to be carried out with a 4 mm diameter electrode, and that on the other side with the maximum diameter of electrode manufactured. The welding current used is to be within the range recommended by the manufacturer, and the welding is to be carried out using normal welding practice except that the assembly is to be allowed to cool below 50°C between runs.



3.8.3 The welded assembly is to be cut by sawing or machining within 35 mm of the ends of the fillet welds, and the joints are to be polished and etched. The welding of the fillet made with a 4 mm diameter electrode is to show a penetration of 4 mm (see Fig. 11.3.7) and the corresponding penetration of the fillet made with the maximum diameter of electrode manufactured is to be reported.

## 3.9 Electrodes designed for gravity or contact welding

3.9.1 Approval for welding using the gravity, 'G', technique is available for welding only normal strength and higher tensile steels up to and including Grade 36.

3.9.2 Where an electrode is submitted solely for approval for use in contact welding using automatic gravity or similar welding devices, deposited metal tests, butt weld tests and, where appropriate, fillet weld tests similar to those for normal manual electrodes are to be carried out using the process for which the electrode is recommended by the manufacturer.

3.9.3 Where an electrode is submitted for approval for use in contact welding using automatic gravity or similar welding devices in addition to normal manual welding, butt weld and, where appropriate, fillet weld tests, using the gravity or other contact device as recommended by the manufacturer, are to be carried out in addition to the normal approval tests.

## 3.10 Annual tests

3.10.1 For normal penetration electrodes, the annual tests are to consist of two deposited metal test assemblies. These are to be prepared and tested in accordance with 3.2. If an electrode is available in one diameter only, one test assembly is sufficient.

# Approval of Welding Consumables

# Chapter 11

Sections 3 & 4

**3.10.2** Where an electrode is approved solely for deep penetration welding, the annual test is to consist of one butt welded test assembly. This is to be prepared and tested in accordance with 3.7.

**3.10.3** Where an electrode is approved for both normal and deep penetration welding, annual tests as detailed in 3.10.1 and 3.10.2 are to be carried out.

**3.10.4** Where an electrode is approved solely for gravity or contact welding, the annual test is to consist of one deposited metal test assembly using the gravity or other contact device as recommended by the manufacturer.

**3.10.5** Where an electrode is approved for both manual and gravity welding, annual tests as detailed in 3.10.1 and 3.10.4 are to be carried out.

## Section 4 Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding

### 4.1 General

**4.1.1** Wire-flux combinations for single and multiple electrode submerged-arc automatic welding, without the use of temporary backing, are divided into the following two categories:

- For use with the multi-run technique.
- For use with the two-run technique.

Where particular wire-flux combinations are intended for welding with both techniques, tests are to be carried out for each technique.

**4.1.2** Dependent on the results of mechanical and other tests, approval will be allocated as one of the grades from Table 11.1.1.

**4.1.3** The suffixes T or M will be added after the grade mark to indicate approval for the two-run technique or, multi-run technique respectively.

**4.1.4** Wire-flux combinations satisfying the requirements for multi-run or two-run techniques will also be approved for fillet welding in the downhand and horizontal-vertical position, subject to agreement by the manufacturer.

**4.1.5** If the consumable combination is in compliance with the requirements of the hydrogen test given in 3.4, a suffix H15, H10 or H5 will be added to the grade. Table 11.4.1 shows the mandatory levels of low hydrogen approval for the various approval grades.

**4.1.6** For each strength level, wire-flux combinations which have satisfied the requirements for a higher toughness grade are considered as complying with the requirements for a lower grade.

**Table 11.4.1 Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for wire-flux combinations**

Approval grade	'H' grade for Multi-run	'H' grade for Two-run
1 (1N), 2 (2N), 3 (3N)	NR	NR
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	NR	NR
2Y40 to 5Y40	H15	NR
2Y47 to 4Y47	H10	H15
3Y42 to 5Y42	H10	H15
3Y46 to 5Y46	H10	H15
3Y50 to 5Y50	H10	H10
3Y55 to 5Y55	H5	H10
3Y62 to 5Y62	H5	H5
3Y69 to 5Y69	H5	H5
1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	H15	NR
3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni	H15	NR
5 Ni (see Note 2)	NR	NR
9 Ni (see Note 2)	NR	NR

#### NOTES

1. NR – Not required. Approval can be obtained when requested.
2. Assumes use of an austenitic, non-transformable, filler material.

**4.1.7** Wire-flux combinations approved with multi-run technique for normal and higher strength levels up to and including 'Y' are also considered suitable for welding steels in the three strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

**4.1.8** Wire-flux combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength levels Y40 to Y50, but excluding Y47 are also considered suitable for welding steels in two strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

**4.1.9** Wire-flux combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength levels Y47, Y55 and above are also considered suitable for welding steels in only one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

**4.1.10** Wire-flux combinations with two-run technique approval are not considered suitable for welding steels of any other strength level with that technique, see 4.5.1.

**4.1.11** The welding current may be either a.c. or d.c. (electrode positive or negative) according to the recommendation of the manufacturer. If both a.c. and d.c. are recommended, a.c. is to be used for the tests.

**4.1.12** Wire-flux combinations for multiple electrode submerged-arc welding will be subject to separate approval tests. These are to be carried out generally in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

**4.1.13** Wire-flux combinations are not naturally low hydrogen in character, but for the lower strength grades of steel low hydrogen testing is not normally a requirement for approval. With higher strength steels it is more important and Table 11.4.1 shows the mandatory minimum low hydrogen status required for approval of wire-flux combinations.



# Approval of Welding Consumables

# Chapter 11

## Section 4

### 4.2 Approval tests for multi-run technique

4.2.1 Where approval for use with the multi-run technique is requested, deposited metal and butt weld tests are to be carried out.

### 4.3 Deposited metal test assemblies (multi-run technique)

4.3.1 One deposited metal test assembly is to be prepared as shown in Fig. 11.4.1, using any of the grades of steel in Table 11.1.1 up to a strength level which is not more than two levels above that for which approval is sought.

4.3.2 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Fig. 11.4.1, the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.

4.3.3 The bevelling of the plate edges is to be carried out by machining or mechanised gas cutting. In the latter case any remaining scale is to be removed from the bevelled edges.

4.3.4 Welding is to be in the downhand position, and the direction of deposition of each run is to alternate from each end of the plate. After completion of each run, the flux and welding slag are to be removed. Between each run, the assembly is to be left in still air until it has cooled to less than 250°C, the temperature being taken in the centre of the weld, on the surface of the seam. The thickness of the layer is to be not less than the diameter of the wire nor less than 4 mm, unless it is clearly stated as part of the consumable manufacturer's published recommendations.

4.3.5 The welding conditions (amperage, voltage and rate of travel) are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and are to conform with normal good welding practice for multi-run welding.

4.3.6 The chemical analysis of the deposited weld metal in each test assembly is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant alloying elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

4.3.7 Two longitudinal tensile and three impact test specimens are to be taken from each test assembly as shown in Fig. 11.4.1. Care is to be taken that the axes of the tensile test specimens coincide with the centre of the weld and the mid-thickness of the plates. The impact test specimens are to be cut perpendicular to the weld with their axes 10 mm from the upper surface. The notch is to be positioned in the centre of the weld and cut in the face of the test specimen perpendicular to the surface of the plate.

4.3.8 In those cases where two-run technique approval is also sought, only one longitudinal tensile specimen need be prepared and tested from this assembly.

4.3.9 The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11.4.2, as appropriate.

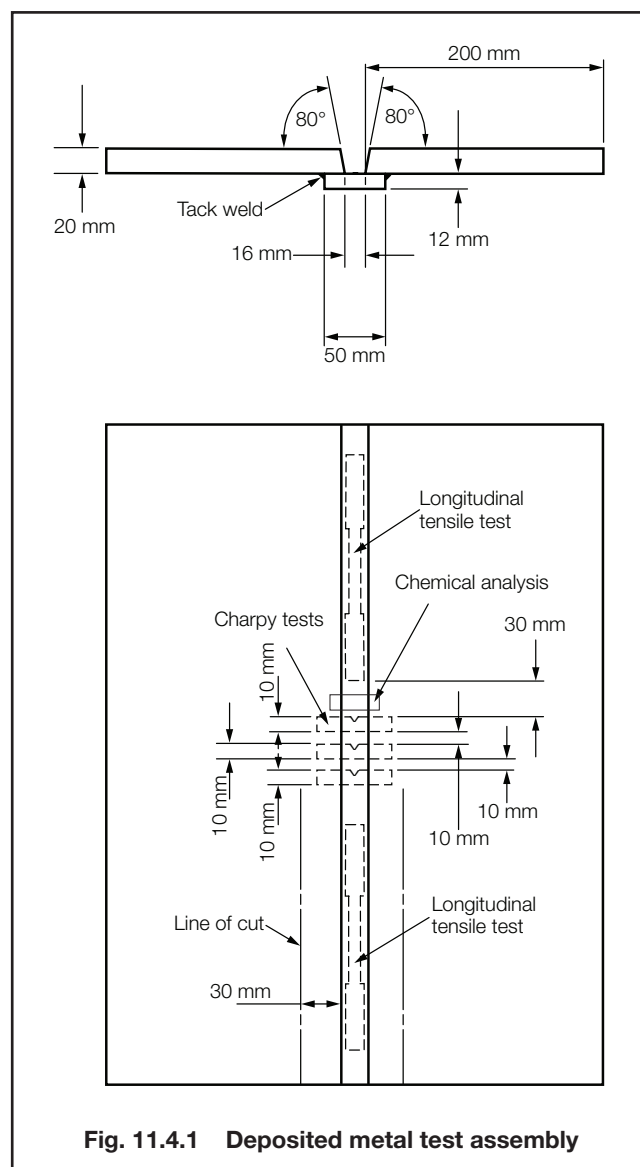


Fig. 11.4.1 Deposited metal test assembly

### 4.4 Butt weld test assemblies (multi-run technique)

4.4.1 One butt weld test assembly is to be prepared as shown in Fig. 11.4.2.

4.4.2 The grade of steel used for the preparation of the test assembly are to be as follows:

Grade 1 wire-flux combination	A
Grade 2 wire-flux combinations	A, B or D
Grade 3 wire-flux combinations	A, B, D or E
Grade 1Y wire-flux combination	AH32 or AH36
Grade 2Y wire-flux combinations	AH32, AH36, DH32 or DH36
Grade 3Y wire-flux combinations	AH32, AH36, DH32, DH36, EH32 or EH36
Grade 4Y wire-flux combinations	AH32, AH36, DH32, DH36, EH32, EH36, FH32 or FH36
Grade 2Y40 wire-flux combination	AH40 or DH40

# Approval of Welding Consumables

# Chapter 11

Section 4

**Table 11.4.2 Requirements for deposited metal tests (wire-flux combinations)**

Grade	Yield stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Elongation on 50 mm % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
				Test temperature °C	Average energy (see Note) J minimum
1N, 2N, 3N	305	400 – 560	22	+20, 0, –20	34
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	375	490 – 660	22	+20, 0, –20, –40	34
2Y40, 3Y40, 4Y40, 5Y40	400	510 – 690	22	0, –20, –40, –60	39
2Y47, 3Y47, 4Y47	460	570 – 720	19	0, –20, –40	53
3Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–20	39
3Y42	420	530 – 680	20	–20	47
3Y46	460	570 – 720	20	–20	47
3Y50	500	610 – 770	18	–20	50
3Y55	550	670 – 830	18	–20	55
3Y62	620	720 – 890	18	–20	62
3Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–20	69
4Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–40	39
4Y42	420	530 – 680	20	–40	47
4Y46	460	570 – 720	20	–40	47
4Y50	500	610 – 770	18	–40	50
4Y55	550	670 – 830	18	–40	55
4Y62	620	720 – 890	18	–40	62
4Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–40	69
5Y40	400	510 – 690	22	–60	39
5Y42	420	530 – 680	20	–60	47
5Y46	460	570 – 720	20	–60	47
5Y50	500	610 – 770	18	–60	50
5Y55	550	670 – 830	18	–60	55
5Y62	620	720 – 890	18	–60	62
5Y69	690	770 – 940	17	–60	69
1½ Ni	375	460	22	–80	34
3½ Ni	375	420	25	–100	34
5 Ni	375	500	25	–120	34
9 Ni	375	600	25	–196	34

NOTE  
Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with 1.4.3.

Grade 3Y40 wire-flux combinations	AH40, DH40 or EH40
Grade 4Y40 wire-flux combinations	AH40, DH40, EH40 or FH40
Grade 5Y40 wire-flux combinations	AH40, DH40 EH40, FH40
Grade 2Y47 wire-flux combinations	AH47 or DH47
Grade 3Y47 wire-flux combinations	AH47, DH47 or EH47
Grade 4Y47 wire-flux combinations	AH47, DH47, EH47 or FH47

Where Grade 32 higher tensile steel is used, the tensile strength is to be not less than 490 N/mm<sup>2</sup>. The chemical composition, including the content of grain refining elements, is to be reported in all cases where higher tensile steel is used.

4.4.3 For all other grades, the steel plates used are to be selected by reference to Table 11.1.1, and are to have at least their chemical composition and tensile properties within the limits specified for that grade in Chapter 3. The strength grade used is to be the same as that for which approval is sought, and the toughness grade is to be no higher than that for which approval is also sought.

4.4.4 The plate edges are to be prepared to form a single V-joint, the included angle between the fusion faces being 60° and the root face being 4 mm. The bevelling of the plate edges is to be carried out by machining or mechanised gas cutting. In the latter case, any remaining scale is to be removed from bevelled edges.

4.4.5 Welding is to be carried out in the downhand position by the multi-run technique, and the welding conditions are to be the same as those adopted for the deposited metal test assembly. The back sealing run is to be applied in the downhand position after cutting out the root run to clean metal.

# Approval of Welding Consumables

# Chapter 11

Section 4

**Table 11.4.3 Requirements for butt weld tests (wire-flux combinations)**

Grade	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup>	Bend test ratio: $\frac{D}{t}$	Charpy V-notch impact tests	
			Test temperature °C	Average energy (see Notes 1 and 2) J minimum
1N, 2N, 3N	400	3	+20, 0, -20	34
1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y	490	3	+20, 0, -20, -40	34
2Y40, 3Y40, 4Y40, 5Y40	510	3	0, -20, -40, -60	39
2Y47, 3Y47, 4Y47	570 – 720	4	0, -20, -40	53
3Y40	510	3	-20	39
3Y42	530 – 680	4	-20	47 (41)
3Y46	570 – 720	4	-20	47
3Y50	610 – 770	4	-20	50
3Y55	670 – 830	5	-20	55
3Y62	720 – 890	5	-20	62
3Y69	770 – 940	5	-20	69
4Y40	510	3	-40	39
4Y42	530 – 680	4	-40	47 (41)
4Y46	570 – 720	4	-40	47
4Y50	610 – 770	4	-40	50
4Y55	670 – 830	5	-40	55
4Y62	720 – 890	5	-40	62
4Y69	770 – 940	5	-40	69
5Y40	510	3	-60	39
5Y42	530 – 680	4	-60	47 (41)
5Y46	570 – 720	4	-60	47
5Y50	610 – 770	4	-60	50
5Y55	670 – 830	5	-60	55
5Y62	720 – 890	5	-60	62
5Y69	770 – 940	5	-60	69
1½ Ni	490	3	-80	27
3½ Ni	450	3	-100	27
5 Ni	540	4	-120	27
9 Ni	640	4	-196	27

NOTES

1. Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with 1.4.3.

2. Values in ( ) apply only to two-run technique impact test specimens.

**4.4.6** It is recommended that the welded assembly be subjected to a radiographic examination to ascertain if there are any defects in the weld prior to the preparation of test specimens.

**4.4.7** The test specimens as shown in Fig. 11.3.3 and Fig. 11.4.2 are to be prepared from each test assembly.

**4.4.8** The results of all tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11.4.3, as appropriate. The position of fracture of the transverse tensile test is to be reported.

**4.4.9** The bend test specimens can be considered as complying with the requirements if, after bending, no cracks or other open defects exceeding 3 mm in dimension can be seen on the outer surface.

## 4.5 Approval tests for two-run technique

**4.5.1** Where approval for use with the two-run technique is requested, two butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared and tested using plates of the strength level for which approval is required. Each strength level requires separate approval.

**4.5.2** Two welded assemblies are to be made from a pair of plates of matching thicknesses. The thickness of the thicker pair of plates will be the maximum for which the approval is valid. The second assembly is to be welded from plates having approximately half of the thickness of the first assembly.

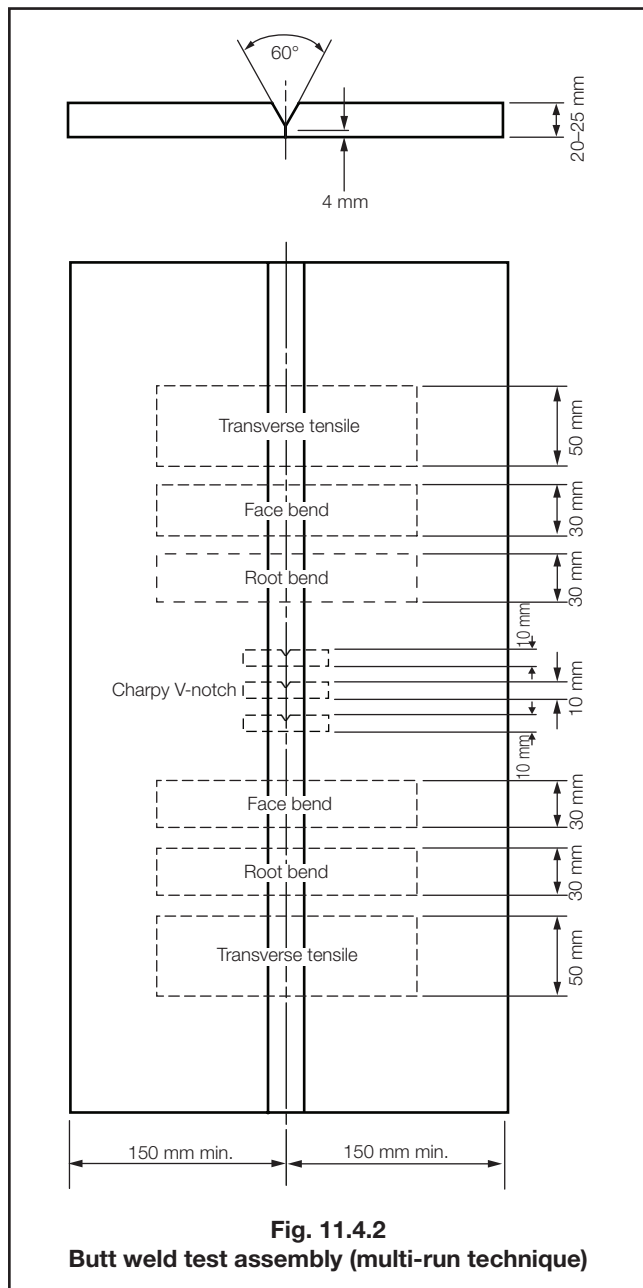
## 4.6 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique)

**4.6.1** The grade of steel used for the preparation of the test assemblies is not to be of any higher grade (impact toughness) than that for which approval is required. The chemical composition, including the content of grain refining elements, and the strength properties of the plates used, are to be reported.

# Approval of Welding Consumables

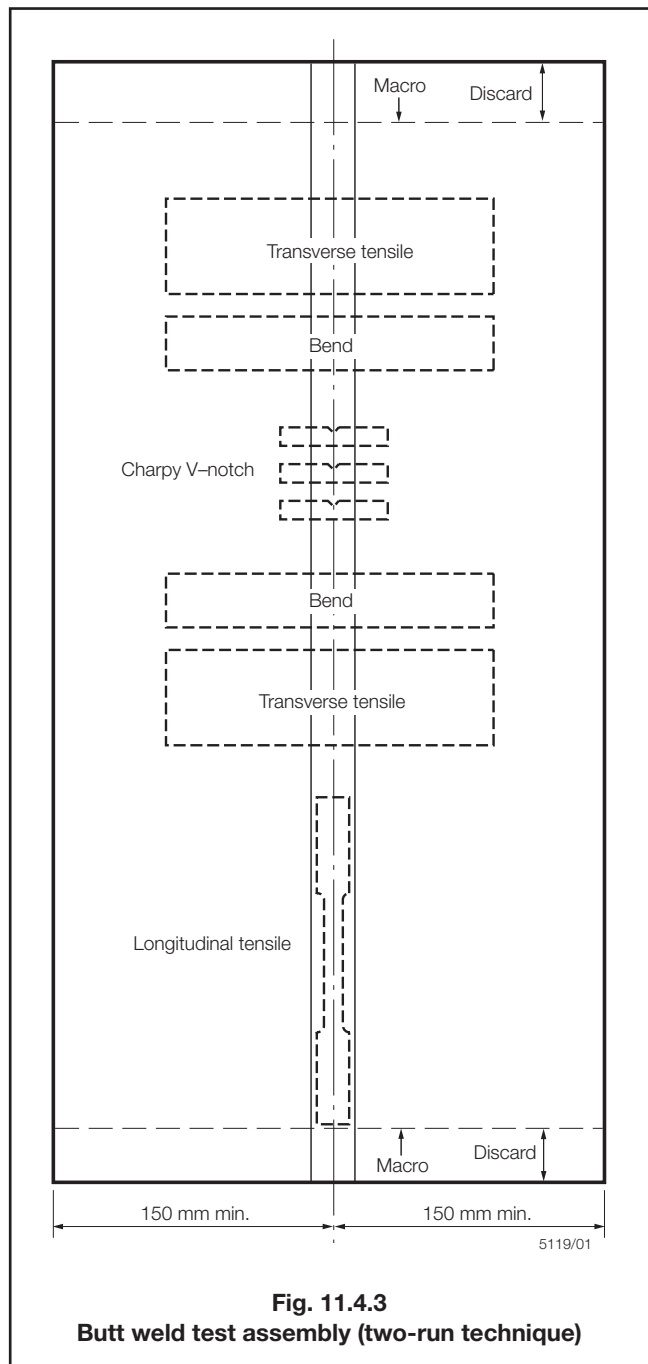
# Chapter 11

## Section 4



4.6.2 The maximum diameter of wire and the edge preparation to be used are to be in accordance with Table 11.4.4. Small deviations in the edge preparation may be allowed if requested by the manufacturer. The bevelling of the plate edges is to be performed by machining or mechanised gas cutting. In the latter case, any remaining scale is to be removed from the bevelled edges. The root gap should not exceed 0,7 mm.

4.6.3 Each butt weld is to be welded in two runs, one from each side, using amperages, voltages and travel speeds in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and normal good welding practice. After completion of the first run, the flux and welding slag are to be removed and the assembly is to be left in still air until it has cooled to less than 100°C, the temperature being taken in the centre of the weld, on the surface of the seam.



4.6.4 It is recommended that the butt weld assemblies be subjected to radiographic examination to ascertain if there are any defects in the weld prior to the preparation of test specimens.


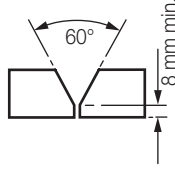
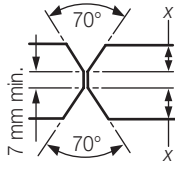
4.6.5 The test specimens, as shown in Fig. 11.4.3 and Fig. 11.4.4, are to be prepared from each test assembly, except as detailed in 4.6.8. The edges of two of the discards are to be polished and etched, and must show complete fusion and inter-run penetration of the welds. At each cut in the test assembly, the edges are also to be examined to ensure that complete fusion has taken place.

# Approval of Welding Consumables

# Chapter 11

Sections 4 & 5

**Table 11.4.4 Butt weld assembly preparation**

Plate thickness mm	Recommended diameter	Maximum diameter of wire mm
12,5		5
20–25		6
35–40		7

4.6.6 The results of transverse tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11.4.3 as appropriate. The position of fracture of the transverse tensile tests is to be reported.

4.6.7 The bend test specimens can be considered as complying with the requirements if, after bending, no crack or other open defects exceeding 3 mm in dimensions can be seen on the outer surface. One of the specimens from each assembly is to be tested with the side first welded in tension, and the second specimen with the other side in tension.

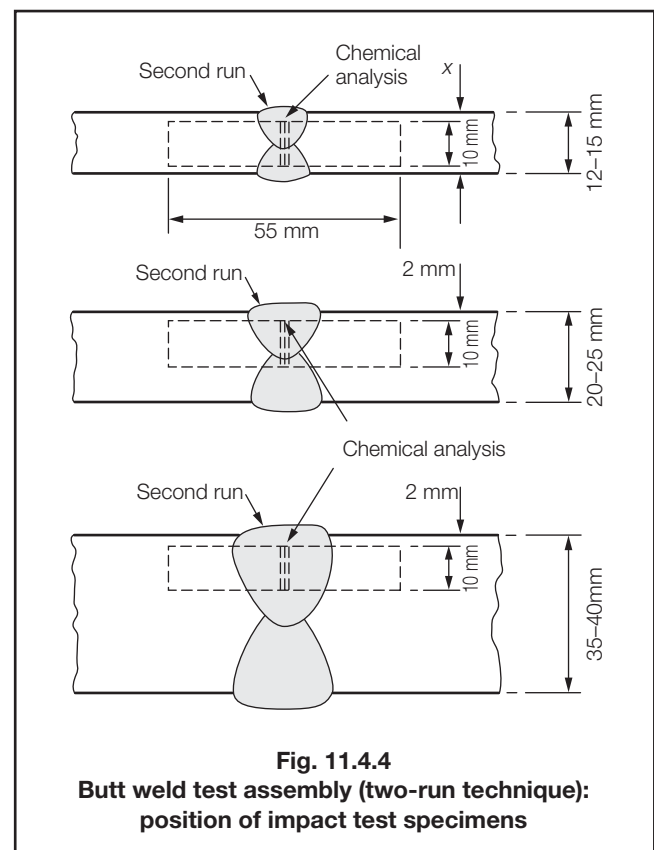
4.6.8 The longitudinal tensile specimen shown in Fig. 11.4.3 is to be prepared from the thicker assembly, even in those cases where multi-run technique approval is also sought. This test specimen is to be machined to the dimensions shown in Ch 11.2.1.1, and the longitudinal axis is to coincide with the centre of the weld about 7 mm below the plate surface on the side from which the second run is made. The test specimen may be given a hydrogen release treatment in accordance with 2.1.1. The results of this test are to comply with the requirements of Table 11.4.2.

4.6.9 The chemical analysis of the weld metal of the second run in each assembly is to be determined and reported. This is to include the content of all significant elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

## 4.7 Annual tests

4.7.1 Annual tests are to consist of at least the following:

- For wire-flux combinations approved for the multi-run technique, one deposited metal test assembly.
- For wire-flux combinations approved for the two-run technique, one butt weld test assembly using plate material 20 to 25 mm in thickness. For Y47 the thickness of plate material may be taken as 50 mm.



4.7.2 The deposited metal assemblies are to be prepared and tested in accordance with 4.3, except that only one longitudinal tensile, three impact test specimens and a chemical analysis are required.

4.7.3 The butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared and tested in accordance with 4.6, except that only one transverse tensile, two bend, three impact test specimens and a chemical analysis are required. One longitudinal tensile test specimen is also to be prepared where the wire-flux combination is approved solely for the two-run technique.

4.7.4 Where a wire-flux combination is approved for welding a range of steels with different specified minimum strength levels, steel of the highest strength approved is to be used for the preparation of the butt weld assembly required by 4.7.1(b).

## Section 5

## Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 Wire-gas combinations and flux-cored or flux-coated wires (for use with or without a shielding gas) are divided into the following categories for the purposes of approval testing:

- For use in manual multi-run welding with the inert gas tungsten arc welding process (GTAW).

# Approval of Welding Consumables

# Chapter 11

Section 5

**Table 11.5.1 Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for wires and wire-gas combinations**

Approval grade	'H' grade for m and S techniques	'H' grade for M technique	'H' grade for T technique
1 (1N), 2 (2N), 3 (3N) 1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y 2Y40 to 5Y40 2Y47 to 4Y47	NR H15 (see Note 2) H15 H10	NR NR H15 H10	NR NR NR H10
3Y42 to 5Y42 3Y46 to 5Y46 3Y50 to 5Y50 3Y55 to 5Y55 3Y62 to 5Y62 3Y69 to 5Y69	H10 H10 H10 H5 H5 H5	H10 H10 H10 H5 H5 H5	H15 H15 H10 H10 H5 H5
1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni 5 Ni 9 Ni	H15 H15 NR (see Note 3) NR (see Note 3)	H15 H15 NR NR	NR NR NR NR
<p>NOTES</p> <p>1. NR – Not required. Approval may be obtained when requested.</p> <p>2. Optional in this case. If low hydrogen approval is not obtained, there is a limitation on the carbon equivalent of the steel which is permitted to be welded.</p> <p>3. Assumes use of an austenitic, non-transformable, filler material.</p>			

- (b) For use in semi-automatic multi-run metal arc welding.
- (c) For use in single electrode multi-run automatic metal arc and GTAW welding.
- (d) For use in single electrode two-run automatic metal arc and GTAW welding.

5.1.2 The term 'manual', is used to describe the technique where the gas-shielded tungsten arc torch is held in one hand and the filler is added separately by the other hand.

5.1.3 The term 'semi-automatic' is used to describe processes in which the weld is made manually by a welder holding a gun through which the wire is continuously fed.

5.1.4 In the GTAW process, 'automatic' refers to the fully mechanised control and application of both torch and separate filler wire.

5.1.5 Dependent on the results of mechanical and other tests, approval will be allocated as one of the grades from Table 11.1.1.

5.1.6 A suffix S will be added after the grade mark to indicate approval for semi-automatic multi-run welding.

5.1.7 For wires intended for automatic welding, the suffixes T or M will be added after the grade mark to indicate approval for two-run or multi-run welding techniques, respectively.

5.1.8 For wires intended for both semi-automatic and automatic welding, the suffixes will be added in combination.

5.1.9 Solid wire-gas combinations are considered naturally low hydrogen in character and qualify for 'H15' approval without testing. This is not so for cored wires and continuous coated wires which must be tested if there is a need for low hydrogen approval. For the lower strength grades of steel, low hydrogen testing is not normally a requirement for approval. With higher strength steels, it is more

important and Table 11.5.1 shows the mandatory minimum low hydrogen status required for approval of wire-gas combinations.

5.1.10 The testing methods to be used for low hydrogen approval are to be in accordance with 3.4, modified to use the manufacturer's recommended welding conditions and adjusting the deposition rate to give a weld deposit weight per sample similar to that deposited when using manual electrodes.

5.1.11 Where applicable, the approved combination will name either the specific gas composition or its trade name, but in either case the composition of the shielding gas is to be reported. Unless otherwise agreed, additional approval tests are required when a shielding gas is used other than that used for the original approval tests. However a wire and gas combination approved with an argon/carbon dioxide shielding gas where the carbon dioxide is between 15-25 per cent is also approved for other combinations of argon/carbon dioxide, provided the carbon dioxide content is within the range 15-25 per cent. The range of approval is limited to ferritic consumables in solid wire, flux cored and coated wire forms and subject to the agreement of the consumable manufacturer and LR.

5.1.12 Wires and wire-gas combinations for multiple electrode automatic welding will be subject to separate approval tests. Any proposals are to be submitted for consideration.

5.1.13 Wires and wire-gas combinations approved with multi-run technique for normal and higher strength levels up to and including 'Y' are also considered suitable for welding steels in the three strength levels below that for which they have been approved.



# Approval of Welding Consumables

## Chapter 11

### Section 5

5.1.14 Wires and wire-gas combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength levels Y40 to Y50, but excluding Y47 are also considered suitable for welding steels in two strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

5.1.15 Wires and wire-gas combinations approved with multi-run technique for strength levels Y47, Y55 and above are also considered suitable for welding steels in only one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

5.1.16 Wires and wire-gas combinations with two-run technique approval are not considered suitable for welding steels of any other strength level with that technique, see 5.4.1.

### 5.2 Approval tests for manual and semi-automatic multi-run welding

5.2.1 Approval tests for manual (GTAW) and semi-automatic multi-run welding are to be carried out generally in accordance with the requirements of Section 3, except as required by 5.2, using the respective technique for the preparation of all test assemblies.

5.2.2 Two deposited metal test assemblies are to be prepared in the downhand position as shown in Fig. 11.3.1, one using the smallest diameter, and the other using the largest diameter of wire for which approval is required. Where only one diameter is manufactured, only one deposited metal assembly is to be prepared.

5.2.3 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Figs. 11.3.1 to 11.3.4, the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.

5.2.4 The weld metal is to be deposited according to the practice recommended by the manufacturer, and the thickness of each layer of weld metal is to be between 2 mm and 6 mm, unless it is clearly stated as part of the consumable manufacturer's published recommendations.

5.2.5 The chemical analysis of the deposited weld metal in each test assembly is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant alloying elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

5.2.6 Butt weld assemblies as shown in Fig. 11.3.2 are to be prepared for each welding position for which the wire is to be approved. In the case of approvals for normal and higher strength steels (up to 355 N/mm<sup>2</sup> minimum specified yield strength), tests satisfying the requirements in both the downhand and vertical-upward positions will be considered as having also satisfied the requirements for the horizontal-vertical position. In all other cases, approval in the horizontal-vertical position will require a butt weld to be made in that position and be fully tested.

5.2.7 The downhand assembly is to be welded using, for the first run, wire of the smallest diameter to be approved and, for the remaining runs, wire of the largest diameter to be approved.

5.2.8 Where approval is requested only in the downhand position, an additional butt weld assembly is to be prepared in that position using, if possible, wires of different diameter from those required by 5.2.7. If only one wire diameter is to be approved, this second downhand butt weld should be made using either larger or smaller beads than the first assembly.

5.2.9 The butt weld assemblies, in positions other than downhand, are to be welded using, for the first run, wire of the smallest diameter to be approved, and for the remaining runs, the largest diameter of wire recommended by the manufacturer for the position concerned.

5.2.10 Fillet weld test assemblies as detailed in 3.5 are to be prepared, examined and tested.

5.2.11 Low hydrogen approval tests are to be carried out if required by 5.1.9.

5.2.12 Test specimens from each assembly are to be prepared and tested in accordance with the requirements of 3.2 and 3.3.

### 5.3 Approval tests for multi-run automatic welding

5.3.1 Approval tests for multi-run automatic welding are to be carried out generally in accordance with the requirements of Section 4, except as required by 5.3, using the multi-run automatic welding technique for the preparation of all test assemblies.

5.3.2 One deposited metal test assembly is to be prepared as shown in Fig. 11.4.1. Welding is to be as detailed in 4.3.4, except that the thickness of each layer is to be not less than 3 mm, unless it is clearly stated as part of the consumable manufacturer's published recommendations.

5.3.3 For Y47 grades, as an alternative to Figs. 11.4.1 and 11.4.2, the thickness of the plate used for the test assembly may be taken as 50 mm.

5.3.4 One butt weld test assembly is to be prepared as shown in Fig. 11.4.2 for each welding position to be approved for the automatic multi-run technique.

5.3.5 Test specimens from each test assembly are to be prepared and tested in accordance with the requirements of Section 4 for multi-run submerged-arc automatic welding.

5.3.6 Low hydrogen approval tests are to be made if required by 5.1.9.

5.3.7 At the discretion of LR, wires approved for semi-automatic welding in the downhand position may also be approved without additional tests, for use in multi-run automatic welding.

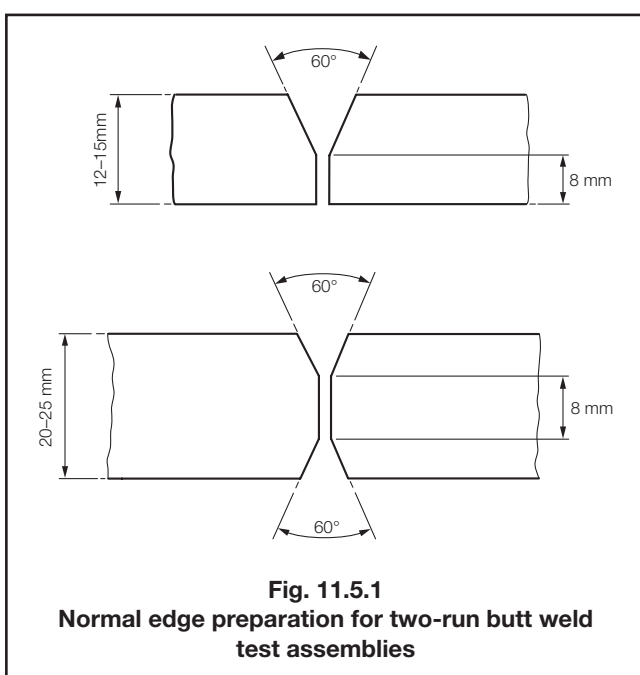
## 5.4 Approval tests for two-run automatic welding

5.4.1 Approval tests for two-run automatic welding are to be carried out generally in accordance with the requirements of Section 4, except as required by 5.4, using the two-run automatic welding technique for the preparation of all test assemblies. Two butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared and tested using plates of the strength level for which approval is required. Each strength level requires separate approval.

5.4.2 Two butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared generally as detailed in 4.5 and 4.6 using plates 12 to 15 mm and 20 to 25 mm in thickness.

5.4.3 If approval is requested for welding plate thicker than 25 mm, one assembly is to be prepared using plates approximately 20 mm in thickness and the other using plates of the maximum thickness for which approval is requested.

5.4.4 The edge preparation of the test assemblies is to be as shown in Fig. 11.5.1. Small deviations in edge preparation may be allowed, if these form part of the consumable manufacturer's recommendations. For assemblies using plates over 25 mm in thickness, the edge preparation is to be reported for information.



5.4.5 The diameters of wires used are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and are to be reported.

5.4.6 Test specimens from each butt weld assembly are to be prepared and tested in accordance with the requirements of Section 4 for two-run submerged-arc automatic welding.

5.4.7 The weld metal chemical analysis is to be reported as in 4.6.9. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

## 5.5 Annual tests

5.5.1 Annual tests are to consist of at least the following:

- (a) Wires approved for manual welding or semi-automatic welding or either of these combined with approval for automatic multi-run welding:
  - one deposited metal test assembly prepared in accordance with 5.2 using a wire of diameter within the approved range.
- (b) Wire approved for automatic multi-run welding:
  - one deposited metal test assembly prepared in accordance with 5.3 using a wire of diameter as stated in (a).
- (c) Wires approved for two-run automatic welding:
  - one butt weld test assembly prepared in accordance with 5.4 using plates 20 to 25 mm in thickness or the maximum approved thickness. The diameter of wire used is to be reported.

## Section 6 Consumables for use in electro-slag and electro-gas welding

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 The requirements for the approval of consumables used for electro-slag or electro-gas welding (including consumable nozzles, where applicable) are generally as detailed in Section 4 for two-run submerged-arc welding consumables, except as otherwise detailed in this Section.

6.1.2 For each grade, approval may be restricted for use with specific compositional types of steel. For Grades 1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y, 2Y40, 3Y40 and 4Y40 this will normally be in respect of the grain refining element content, and tests on niobium grain refined steel will normally qualify for use also on steels treated with aluminium or vanadium or combinations of these elements.

6.1.3 Superscript numbers are applied to the 'Y' of higher strength steel consumables, e.g. 2Y<sup>1</sup>, to indicate the type of parent steel for which approval is applicable as follows:

- Y<sup>1</sup> approval Grade for higher strength steel is limited to parent steel which has been treated only with aluminium.
- Y<sup>2</sup> approval Grade for higher strength steel is appropriate to niobium-treated steels, whether aluminium treated or not. It also covers steels treated only with aluminium.

6.1.4 Each strength level requires separate approval involving the welding and testing of two butt weld assemblies of different thickness. The greater thickness will determine the maximum approved thickness.



## 6.2 Butt weld test assemblies

6.2.1 Two butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared, one with plates 20 to 25 mm in thickness and the other with plates 35 to 40 mm in thickness. The steel used is not to be of any higher grade (impact toughness) than that for which approval is required. The limitations of 6.1.2 need to be considered in this Section. The chemical composition of the plate, including the content of grain refining elements, is to be reported.

6.2.2 The welding conditions and the edge preparation adopted are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and are to be reported in detail. The manufacturer's maximum recommended gap between plates is to be used in making the test assemblies.

6.2.3 It is recommended that the assemblies are subjected to radiographic examination to identify any defects before the preparation of any test specimens.

6.2.4 Test specimens as follows, and as shown in Fig. 11.6.1, are to be prepared from each test assembly:

- Two longitudinal tensile test specimens.
- Two transverse tensile test specimens.
- Two bend test specimens.
- Two macro-sections.
- Two sets of three impact test specimens notched in accordance with Fig. 11.6.2.

6.2.5 The chemical analysis of the weld metal in each assembly is to be determined and reported. This is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

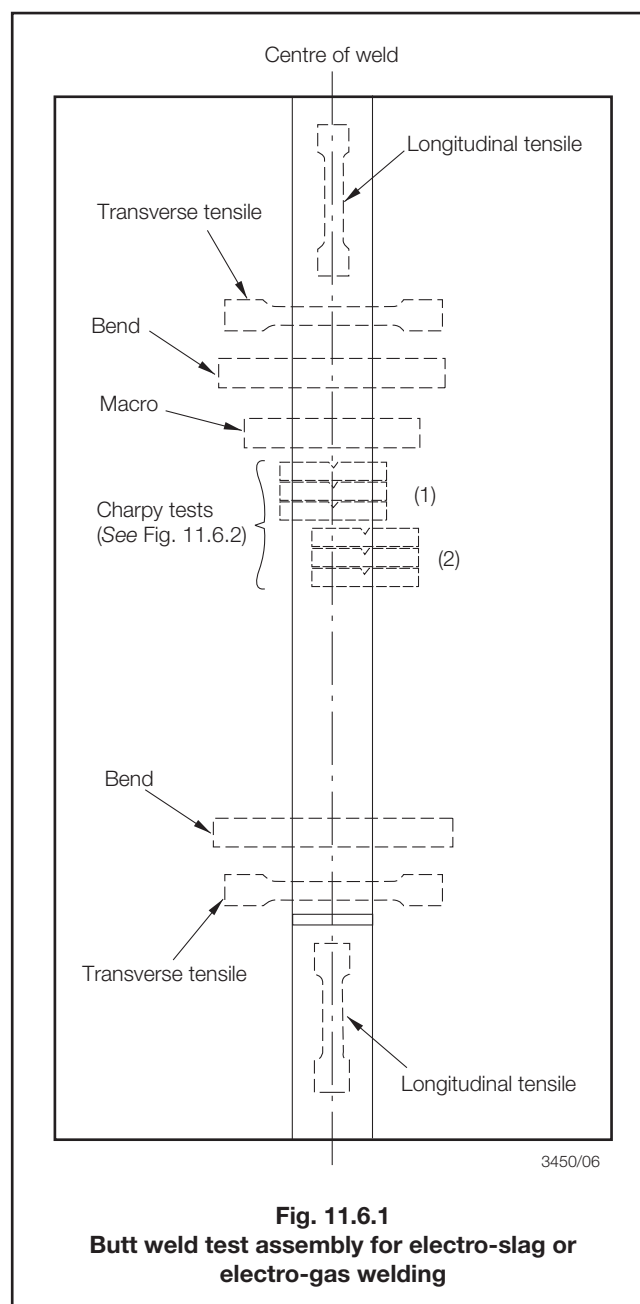
6.2.6 The results of all transverse tensile and impact tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 11.4.3 as appropriate. The position of fracture of the transverse tensile test is to be reported. The Charpy V-notch impact test requirements are as for the two-run technique in Table 11.4.3.

6.2.7 The results of all longitudinal tensile tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11.4.2.

6.2.8 The bend test specimens are to be in accordance with 4.6.7 and Table 11.4.3. Each surface of the weld is to be tested Fension.

## 6.3 Annual tests

6.3.1 Annual tests are to consist of at least one butt weld test assembly using plate material 20 to 25 mm in thickness.

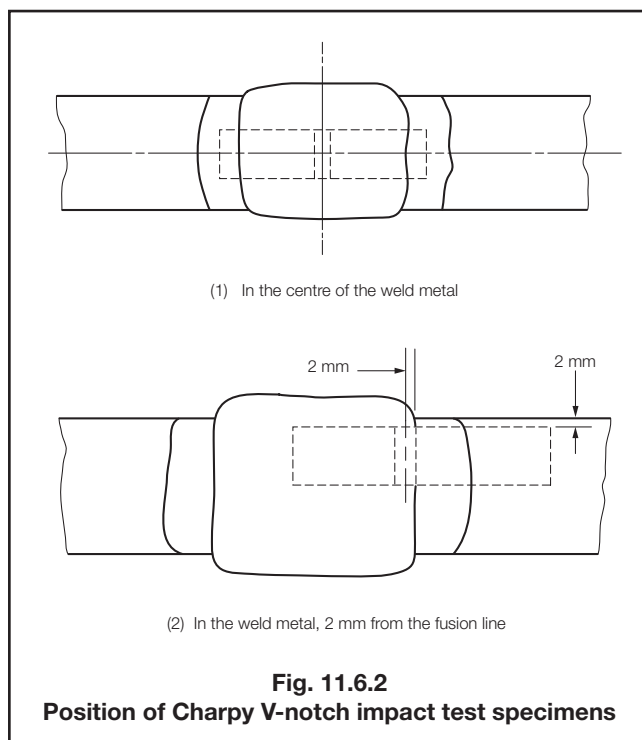


**Fig. 11.6.1**  
**Butt weld test assembly for electro-slag or**  
**electro-gas welding**

6.3.2 The assembly is to be prepared and tested in accordance with 6.2 except that only the following tests are required:

- One longitudinal tensile test.
- One transverse tensile test.
- Two bend tests.
- Two sets of three Charpy V-notch impact tests; one set with the notch at the centre of the weld (Position (1) in Fig. 11.6.2), and one set with the notch in the weld metal 2 mm from the fusion line (Position (2) in Fig. 11.6.2).
- Chemical analysis.
- One macro section.

6.3.3 Where a consumable or combination is approved for a range of steels with different specified minimum strength levels, steel of the highest strength level is to be used for the preparation for the assembly required by 6.3.1.



## Section 7

### Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials

#### 7.1 General

7.1.1 The requirements for approval of combinations including temporary backing material, for use in one-side welding techniques, are dependent on the technique used and which basic technique it most closely follows. The following are provided for:

- (a) Technique m – for manual electrode/backing combinations.
- (b) Technique S – for wire-gas/backing combinations used with semi-automatic multi-run technique.
- (c) Technique M – for wire-flux or wire-gas in combination with backing material (and maybe supplementary filler materials) used with an automatic multi-run technique.
- (d) Technique A – as for M but using a procedure with a high heat input rate (large bead size relative to thickness welded). This would apply to welds made by four or less runs in 20 mm thickness, or eight or less runs in 35 mm.

7.1.2 For technique m, S or M, a single butt weld is to be made in plate of 20–25 mm thickness. For technique A, two butt welds are to be made, one in plate of the maximum thickness recommended by the manufacturer, the other in plate of approximately half the thickness of the first. Usually this will involve thicknesses in the region of 35–40 mm and 20–25 mm respectively.

7.1.3 A wire and gas combination approved with an argon/carbon dioxide shielding gas where the carbon dioxide content is between 15-25 per cent is also approved for other combinations of argon/carbon dioxide, provided the carbon dioxide content is within the range 15-25 per cent. The range of approval is limited to ferritic consumables in solid wire, flux cored and coated wire forms and subject to the agreement of the consumable manufacturer and LR.

7.1.4 Any unrecognised techniques or unusual combinations will be considered for approval subject to a test programme to be agreed based on the details of the technique and combination which are to be submitted in advance.

7.1.5 Where low hydrogen approval is required either by Table 11.7.1 or by the manufacturer, it should be noted that this will generally be achieved through separate testing of:

- (a) the backing material, and
- (b) the welding electrode or combination of wire-flux or wire-gas.

7.1.6 The hydrogen potential of the backing material is to be determined using the modified Gayley-Wooding method which expresses the total hydrogen content as water by weight per cent. The qualifying levels are:

To qualify as:	H <sub>2</sub> O g/100g sample
H15	0,5
H10	0,3
H5	0,2

7.1.7 The sampling and approval of the combinations without the backing are to follow the general requirements of Sections 3, 4 or 5, as appropriate.

7.1.8 Combinations approved with multi-run technique (m, S and M) for normal and higher strength levels up to and including 'Y' are also considered suitable for welding steels in the three strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

7.1.9 Combinations approved with multi-run technique (m, S and M) for strength levels Y40 to Y50, but excluding Y47, are also considered suitable for welding steels in two strength levels below that for which they have been approved.

7.1.10 Combinations approved with multi-run technique (m, S and M) for strength levels Y47, Y55 and above are also considered suitable for welding steels in only one strength level below that for which they have been approved.

7.1.11 Combinations approved for the 'A' multi-run technique are not considered suitable for welding steels of any other strength level with that technique.

**Table 11.7.1 Minimum low hydrogen approval requirements for one-side welding with combinations including temporary backing material**

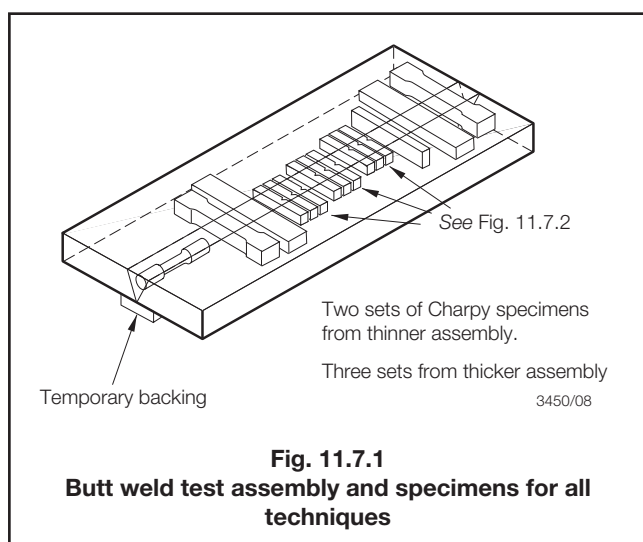
Approval grades	'H' grade for m and S techniques	'H' grade for M technique	'H' grade for A technique
1 (1N), 2 (2N), 3 (3N) 1Y, 2Y, 3Y, 4Y 2Y40 to 5Y40 2Y47 to 4Y47	NR H15 (see Note 2) H15 H10	NR NR H15 H10	NR NR NR H15
3Y42 to 5Y42 3Y46 to 5Y46 3Y50 to 5Y50 3Y55 to 5Y55 3Y62 to 5Y62 3Y69 to 5Y69	H10 H10 H10 H5 H5 H5	H10 H10 H10 H5 H5 H5	H15 H15 H10 H10 H5 H5
1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni 3 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> Ni 5 Ni (see Note 3) 9 Ni (see Note 3)	H15 H15 NR NR	H15 H15 NR NR	NR NR NR NR

**NOTES**

- NR – Not required. Approval may be obtained when requested.
- Optional in this case. If low hydrogen approval is not obtained, there is a limitation on the carbon equivalent of the steel which is permitted to be welded.
- Assumes the use of an austenitic, non-transformable, filler material.

**7.2 Approval tests for manual (m), semi-automatic (S) and automatic multi-run (M) techniques**

7.2.1 For each position to be approved, one butt weld assembly is to be prepared using plates of 20–25 mm thickness as shown in Fig. 11.7.1. The grade of plate used is to be no higher in toughness than that for which approval is required. The strength is to be appropriate to the grade for which welding approval is requested.



7.2.2 The thickness of test assembly is to be 50 mm for Y47 base material.

7.2.3 The edge preparation and welding conditions are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturers.

7.2.4 Test specimens are to be prepared as shown in Fig. 11.7.1 and Fig. 11.7.2(a):

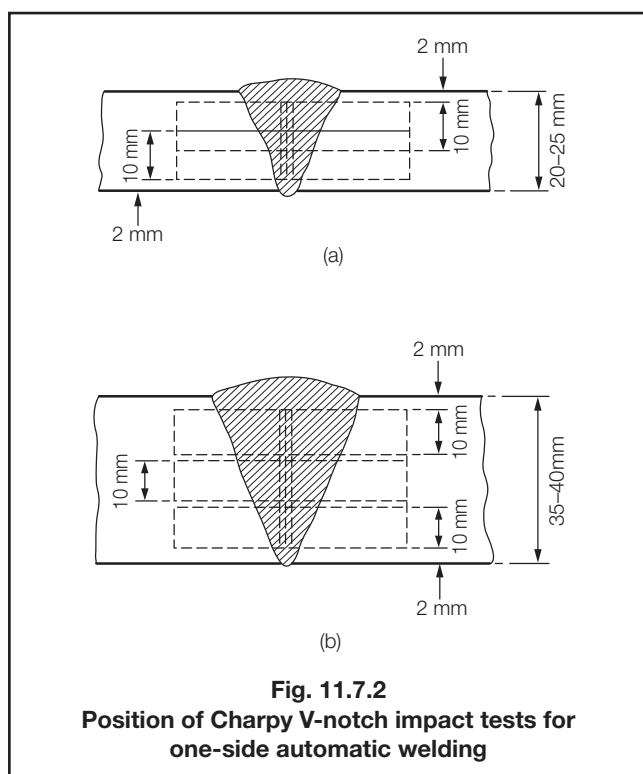
- One longitudinal tensile test specimen (from the centre of the weld).
- Two transverse tensile specimens.
- Two bend test specimens, one with the face in tension, the other with the root in tension.
- One macrosection.
- Two sets of three Charpy impact test specimens positioned and notched in accordance with Fig. 11.7.2(a).

7.2.5 The results of all transverse tensile, bend and impact tests are to comply with the requirements in Table 11.3.3 for m and S technique, and Table 11.4.3 for M technique. The position of fracture of the transverse tensile test is to be reported. The appearance of the bend test specimens is to be in accordance with 3.3.13.

7.2.6 The results of all longitudinal tensile tests are to comply with the requirements in Table 11.3.2.

7.2.7 Low hydrogen approval is required in accordance with Table 11.7.1.

7.2.8 Chemical analyses are to be made and reported from positions corresponding to the weld metal in the upper and lower Charpy specimens of the downhand butt weld. These are to be supplied by the manufacturer and are to include the content of all significant elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.



**Fig. 11.7.2**  
**Position of Charpy V-notch impact tests for**  
**one-side automatic welding**

## 7.3 Approval tests for high heat input automatic (A) techniques

7.3.1 Two butt weld assemblies are to be prepared, usually one of 35–40 mm thickness, the other 20–25 mm, as shown in Fig. 11.7.1, noting that in the thinner assembly only two sets of Charpy specimens are required. The grade of plates used is to be no higher in toughness than that for which approval is required. The strength is to be appropriate to the grade for which welding approval is requested.

7.3.2 For Y47 grade, the thicker assembly is to be prepared from the maximum thickness for which approval is required, and the thinner assembly is to be prepared from 50 mm thickness. Where approval is required for 50 mm thickness, only one assembly from that thickness is required.

7.3.3 The edge preparation and welding conditions are to be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and are to be reported to LR.

7.3.4 Test specimens as follows are to be prepared as shown in Fig. 11.7.1 and Figs. 11.7.2(a) and (b):

- One longitudinal tensile test specimen (from centre of weld).
- Two transverse tensile test specimens.
- Two bend test specimens.
- One macro-section.
- From assembly 20 to 25 mm thick, two sets of three impact test specimens positioned and notched in accordance with Fig. 11.7.2(a).
- From assembly 35 to 40 mm thick, three sets of three impact test specimens positioned and notched in accordance with Fig. 11.7.2(b).

- From assembly of thickness 50 mm or more, three sets of three impact test specimens positioned and notched in accordance with Fig. 11.7.2(b). The second set positioned in the mid-thickness of test assembly. The bend specimens are to be tested, one with the face in tension, the other with the root in tension.

7.3.5 The results of all transverse tensile, bend and impact tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11.4.3. The appearance of the bend test specimens is to be in accordance with 3.3.13. The Charpy V-notch impact test requirements are as for the two-run technique in Table 11.4.3.

7.3.6 The results of all longitudinal tensile tests are to comply with the requirements in Table 11.3.2, except that for Grades 1Y, 2Y and 3Y the tensile strength is to be not less than 490 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

7.3.7 Low hydrogen approval is required in accordance with Table 11.7.1.

7.3.8 Chemical analyses are to be made and reported from positions corresponding to the weld metal in the uppermost and lowest Charpy specimens in the thicker plate weld. This is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

## 7.4 Annual tests

7.4.1 Annual tests are to consist of, at least, one butt weld test assembly, for each technique approved, using plates of 20 to 25 mm thickness.

7.4.2 The assembly is to be prepared and tested in accordance with 7.2 or 7.3, as appropriate, except that only the following tests are required:

- One longitudinal tensile test (from centre of weld).
- One transverse tensile test.
- Two bend tests.
- One set of three impact tests taken from the root of the weld and the specimens notched in accordance with Fig. 11.7.2.
- Chemical analysis (one only).

## Section 8 Consumables for welding austenitic and duplex stainless steels

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 Tests for the approval of consumables intended for welding the austenitic and duplex stainless steels detailed in Ch 3,7 are to be carried out generally in accordance with the Section (3, 4, 5, 6 or 7) relevant to the type of consumable or combination.

8.1.2 Approval will be indicated by the grade or grades of parent stainless steel for which the consumable or combination is approved.

8.1.3 Where a shielding gas is employed, separate approval will be required for each specific shielding gas composition.

8.1.4 Consumables for welding the austenitic stainless steels and the duplex stainless steels to carbon or carbon-manganese steels will be approved in a similar manner. Parent plate used for the butt and fillet weld test assemblies will be carbon or carbon-manganese steel with either austenitic stainless steel or duplex stainless steel, as appropriate. Approval will be indicated by 'SS/CMn' and 'Dup/CMn' respectively, however, no buttering of test assembly plates is allowed for these two approvals.

8.1.5 Separate approval will be given for welding chemical and cryogenic applications. For chemical use, evidence of relevant corrosion resistance will be required. Charpy impact toughness tests will be required for all uses, but for cryogenic use the Charpy impact toughness requirements are more severe.

8.1.6 The welding technique will be indicated in the approval grading by a letter:

- m – for manual SMAW or GTAW welding.
- S – for wire-gas combinations used with a semi-automatic multi-run technique.
- M – for wire-flux or wire-gas combinations used with an automatic multi-run technique.
- T – for wire-flux or wire-gas combinations used with an automatic two-run technique.
- A – as for M but using a procedure with a high heat input rate (large bead size relative to thickness welded). This would apply to welds made by four or less runs in 20 mm thickness, or eight or less runs in 35 mm.

### 8.2 Deposited metal test assemblies

8.2.1 Where the relevant Section requires deposited metal assemblies to be made and tested, the plates used must be either of the type for which approval is required or of normal strength carbon, or carbon-manganese steel with the prepared edges built up with stainless steel weld metal and finished with a layer of weld metal from the consumable to be approved.

8.2.2 The chemical analysis of the deposited weld metal is to be reported, including all significant elements. The elements reported will be dependent on the type of stainless steel for which approval of the consumables is requested. Any unusual weld metal compositions will have to be justified in respect of the particular approval requested. This is to be supplied by the manufacturer and is to include the content of all significant elements. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

8.2.3 The results of all tensile and notch impact tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 11.8.1 as appropriate.

8.2.4 The ferrite content in the last weld run from each deposited metal assembly is to be determined by physical or metallographic means, and reported, indicating the method of determination.

### 8.3 Butt weld test assemblies

8.3.1 Where the relevant Section requires butt weld assemblies to be made and tested, the plates used are to be either of the type for which approval is required or of steel having strength and ductility within the range specified for the grade to be approved. In the latter case, provided the consumable is metallurgically compatible with the base material to be used, the prepared edges are to be built up with a layer of weld metal before final machining of the weld preparation.

8.3.2 The results of transverse tensile, notch impact and bend tests are to comply with the requirements of Table 11.8.2 as appropriate. The position of fracture is to be reported to LR.

8.3.3 The ferrite content at the centre of the weld metal in each butt weld assembly is to be determined by physical or metallographic means, and meet the requirements in Table 11.8.2. The method of determination is to be reported.

8.3.4 For austenitic and duplex stainless steel approvals (except for types 304L, 316L, 321 and 347), an appropriate sample from each butt weld assembly is to be submitted to the corrosion testing provided in ASTM G48, Method 'C'. The results are to be reported so as to allow confirmation of the maximum acceptable pitting corrosion resistance temperature. This will be part of the approval grading and will be set at 5°C intervals. The minimum pitting corrosion temperature would not be expected to be less than 20°C.

### 8.4 Fillet weld test assemblies

8.4.1 Where the relevant Section requires fillet weld assemblies to be made and tested, the plates used must be either of the type for which approval is required or of steel having strength and ductility within the range specified for the grade to be approved. In the latter case, the surfaces on which the fillet weld beads are to be deposited are to be cut back by machining and then built up to original dimensions with weld metal from the consumable to be approved.

## Approval of Welding Consumables

## Chapter 11

Section 8

**Table 11.8.1 Requirements for deposited metal tests (manual, semi-automatic and automatic multi-run techniques)**

Grade	0,2% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	1% proof stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Elongation on 50 mm % minimum	Charpy V-notch impact tests		
					Chemical test temperature °C	Cryogenic test temperature °C	Average energy See Note 1 J minimum
304L	270	310	500	25	-20	-196	29
304LN	305	345	530	22	-20	-196	29
316L	270	310	500	22	-20	-196	29
316LN	305	345	530	22	-20	-196	29
317L	305	345	530	22	-20	-196	29
317LN	340	380	570	22	-20	-196	29
321	290	330	550	22	-20	-196	29
347	290	330	550	22	-20	-196	29
S 31254	370	410	650	22	-20	-196	29
N 08904	270	310	500	22	-20	-196	29
SS/CMn	270	310	500	22	-20	-60	29
S 31260	485	525	690	20	-20	} see Note 2	40
S 31803	450	490	620	25	-20		40
S 32550	550	590	760	15	-20		40
S 32750	550	590	800	15	-20		40
S 32760	550	590	750	25	-20		40
Dup/CMn	270	310	500	22	-20	see Note 2	40

NOTES

- Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with 1.4.3.
- Approval for cryogenic applications is to be obtained at the procedure approval stage.

**Table 11.8.2 Requirements for butt weld tests (all techniques)**

Grade	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Bend test ratio: $\frac{D}{t}$	Weld ferrite content %	Charpy V-notch impact tests		
				Chemical test temperature °C	Cryogenic test temperature °C	Average energy (see Note 1) J minimum
304L	500	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
304LN	530	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
316L	500	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
316LN	530	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
317L	530	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
317LN	570	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
321	550	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
347	550	3	4-12	-20	-196	27
S 31254	650	3	(see Note 2)	-20	-196	27
N 08904	500	3	(see Note 2)	-20	-196	27
SS/CMn	500	3	4-12	-20	-60	27
S 31260	690	4	35-65	-20	} (see Note 3)	40
S 31803	620	3	35-65	-20		40
S 32550	760	6	35-65	-20		40
S 32750	800	6	35-65	-20		40
S 32760	750	6	35-65	-20		40
Dup/CMn	500	3	(see Note 2)	-20	(see Note 3)	40

NOTES

- Energy values from individual impact test specimens are to comply with 1.4.3.
- To be reported for special consideration.
- Approval for cryogenic applications is to be obtained at the procedure approval stage.



# Approval of Welding Consumables

## Chapter 11

Sections 8 &amp; 9

8.4.2 The ferrite content at the centre of the weld metal in each fillet weld bead of each assembly is to be determined from the centre macro-section by physical or metallographic means, and reported. The method of determination is also to be reported to LR.

8.4.3 Where approval is sought for fillet welding only, corrosion testing is to be carried out in accordance with 8.3.4 from a sample taken from the deposited metal test assembly.

### 8.5 Annual tests

8.5.1 Annual tests are to be carried out as required by the relevant Section appropriate to the type of consumable and welding technique. The tests are to include a weld ferrite content in accordance with 8.2.4 or 8.3.3 as appropriate.

8.5.2 The results of all tests are to comply with the requirements given in Table 11.8.1 and Table 11.8.2 as appropriate.

## Section 9 Consumables for welding aluminium alloys

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 Tests for the approval of consumables intended for welding the aluminium alloys detailed in Chapter 8 are to be carried out generally in accordance with the requirements of Sections 1, 2 and 5, except as otherwise detailed in this Section.

9.1.2 Approval will be indicated by the grade shown in Table 11.9.1. Plate of the corresponding type of aluminium alloy and of appropriate thickness is to be used for the preparation of the weld test assemblies, and may be of any temper listed in LR Rules.

9.1.3 The welding technique will be indicated in the approval grading by a letter:

- m – manual multi-run welding (GTAW),
- S – semi-automatic multi-run welding (GMAW),
- M – automatic multi-run welding (GTAW or GMAW),
- T – automatic two-run welding (GMAW).

9.1.4 The compositions of the shielding gas and the filler/electrode wire are to be reported.

9.1.5 Approval granted using the multi-run technique for a specific filler/electrode wire with a gas in one of the groups listed in Table 11.9.2 will extend to any other gas compositions within that same group, provided that the gas composition is within the range recommended by the consumable manufacturer, subject to agreement with LR.

9.1.6 Approval granted for the two-run technique will be for a specific shielding gas composition; additional tests may be required if a change in shielding gas composition is sought.

**Table 11.9.1 Requirements for butt weld tests**

Consumable Approval Grade (see Note 1)	Base material used for the test	Tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> minimum	Bend test ratio $\frac{D}{t}$
LR RA/LR WA	5754	190	3
LR RB/LR WB	5086	240	6
LR RC1/LR WC1	5083	275	6
LR RC2/LR WC2 (see Note 2)	5383 or 5456	290	6
LR RC3/LR WC3 (see Note 2)	5059	330	6
LR RD/LR WD (see Note 4)	6005A 6061 6082	170 170 170	6 6 6

#### NOTES

- The prefixes 'R' and 'W' indicate 'rod' form (for Gas Tungsten Arc Welding (GTAW)) or 'wire' form (for Gas Metal Arc Welding (GMAW) and GTAW).
- Approval of grade LR RC2/LR WC2 confers approval of 5383, 5456 and 5083 base material grade.
- Approval of grade LR RC3/LR WC3 confers approval of 5059, 5383, 5456 and 5083 base material grades.
- Approval of grade LR RD/LR WD confers approval of 6005A, 6061 and 6082 base material grades.

**Table 11.9.2 Shielding gas compositions**

Group	Gas composition (Vol. %) (see Note)	
	Helium	Argon
I-1	–	100
I-2	100	–
I-3	>0 ≤33	Remainder
I-4	>33 ≤66	Remainder
I-5	>66 ≤95	Remainder
S	Special gas	

#### NOTE

Gases of other composition (mixed gases) or special purity may be considered as special gases and will require separate approval tests.

9.1.7 On completion of welding, assemblies are to be allowed to cool naturally to ambient temperature. Welded test assemblies and test specimens are not to be subjected to any heat treatment after welding except for the alloy Grades 6005A, 6061 and 6082. These are to be allowed to naturally age at ambient temperature for a period of 72 hours from the completion of welding, before testing is carried out. A second solution heat treatment is not permitted.

# Approval of Welding Consumables

# Chapter 11

Section 9

9.1.8 All butt test assemblies are to be subjected to both radiographic and visual examination and imperfections such as lack of fusion, lack of penetration, cavities, inclusions, pores and cracks assessed in accordance with Intermediate Level C of ISO 10042, aided where necessary by dye penetrant and ultrasonic examination.

9.1.9 Fillet weld test assemblies and macro-sections are to be visually examined for imperfections, such as lack of fusion, lack of penetration, cavities, inclusions, pores and cracks, in accordance with Intermediate Level C of ISO 10042, aided where necessary by radiographic and dye penetrant examination.

## 9.2 Approval tests for manual, semi-automatic and automatic multi-run techniques

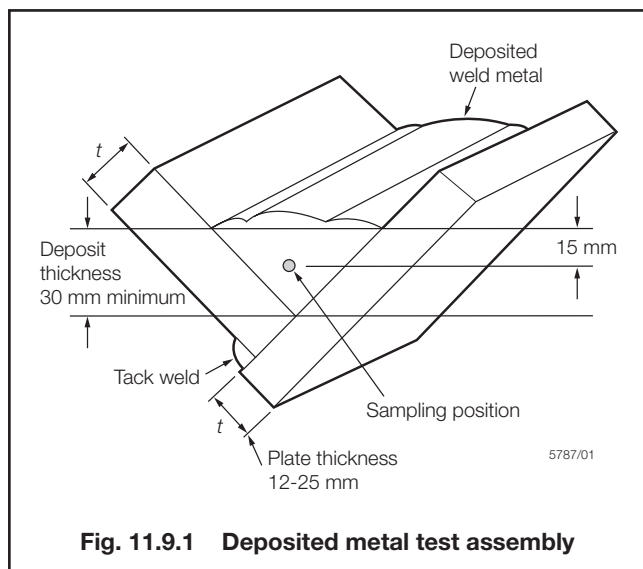
9.2.1 Plate of the corresponding type of aluminium alloy and of appropriate thickness is to be used for the preparation of the weld test assemblies.

9.2.2 The welding parameters are to be within the range recommended by the manufacturer and are to be reported.

9.2.3 Welded assemblies are to be prepared and tested in accordance with 9.3, 9.4 and 9.5.

## 9.3 Deposited metal test assembly

9.3.1 One assembly is to be prepared in the downhand position as shown in Fig. 11.9.1.



9.3.2 The chemical composition of the plate used for the assembly is to be compatible with the weld metal.

9.3.3 The thickness of the plate used, and the length of the assembly, are to be appropriate to the welding process. The plate thickness is to be not less than 12 mm.

9.3.4 For the approval of filler wire/gas and electrode wire/gas combinations for manual or semi-automatic welding by GTAW or GMAW, one test assembly is to be welded using any size of wire within the range for which approval is sought.

9.3.5 For automatic multi-run approval, one test assembly is to be welded by the respective process using the recommended diameter of wire.

9.3.6 The weld metal is to be deposited in multi-run layers in accordance with normal practice. The direction of deposition of each layer is to alternate from each end of the plate.

9.3.7 The deposited weld metal in the assembly is to be analysed and reported including the contents of all significant elements. The elements reported will be dependent on the type of aluminium alloy for which approval of the consumables is requested. The results of the analysis are not to exceed the limit values specified in the standards or by the manufacturer, the narrower tolerances being applicable in each case.

## 9.4 Butt weld test assemblies

9.4.1 Plate of the corresponding type of aluminium alloy and of an appropriate thickness is to be used for the preparation of the test assemblies.

9.4.2 In order to ensure sound and representative welds, it is essential that test assemblies are cleaned and degreased prior to welding. Assemblies as shown in Fig. 11.9.2 are to be prepared for each welding position (downhand, horizontal-vertical, vertical-upward, vertical-downward, and overhead) for which the consumable is recommended by the manufacturer; except that consumables satisfying the requirements for downhand and vertical-upward positions will be considered as also complying with the requirements for the horizontal-vertical position. Any wire diameter(s) to be approved may be used.

9.4.3 One assembly, as shown in Fig. 11.9.3, is to be prepared for welding in the downhand position. The assembly is to be welded using, for the first run, wire of the smallest diameter recommended by the manufacturer and, for the remaining runs, wire of the largest diameter to be approved.

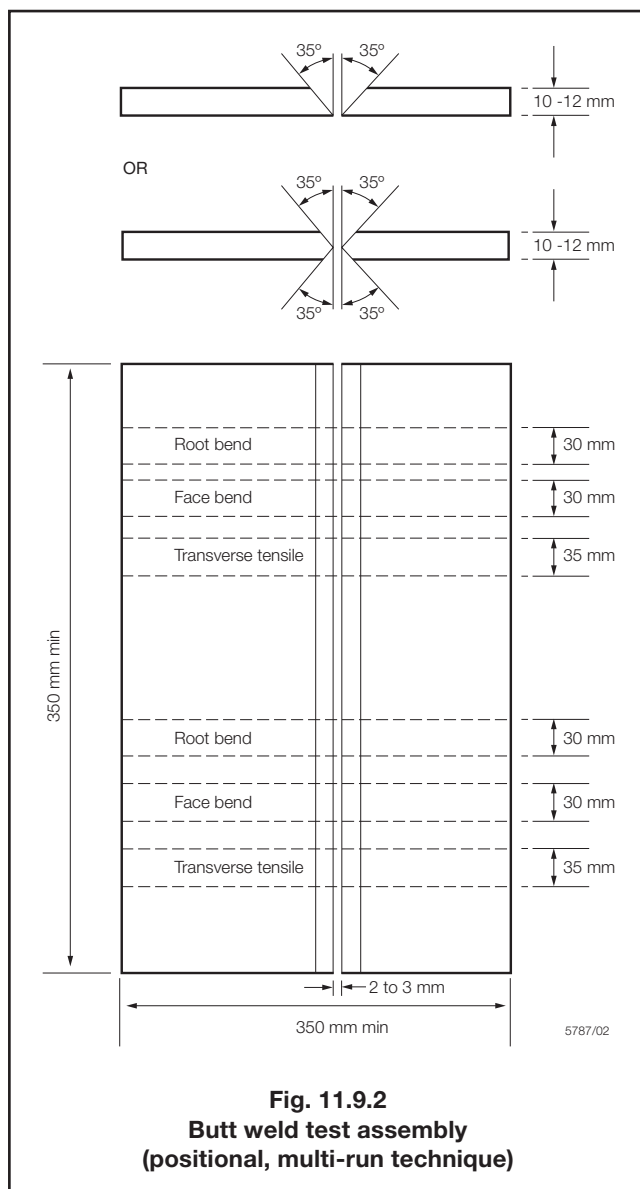
9.4.4 The welding conditions are to be in accordance with the recommendations of the manufacturer and are to be reported in detail.

9.4.5 The welded assemblies are to be subjected to NDE. Imperfections are to be assessed in accordance with 9.1.8.

9.4.6 The test specimens are to be taken from the welded assemblies as shown in Fig. 11.9.2 and Fig. 11.9.3. For each assembly they are to comprise:

- 2 transverse tensile specimens;
- 2 face bend specimens; and
- 2 root bend specimens.

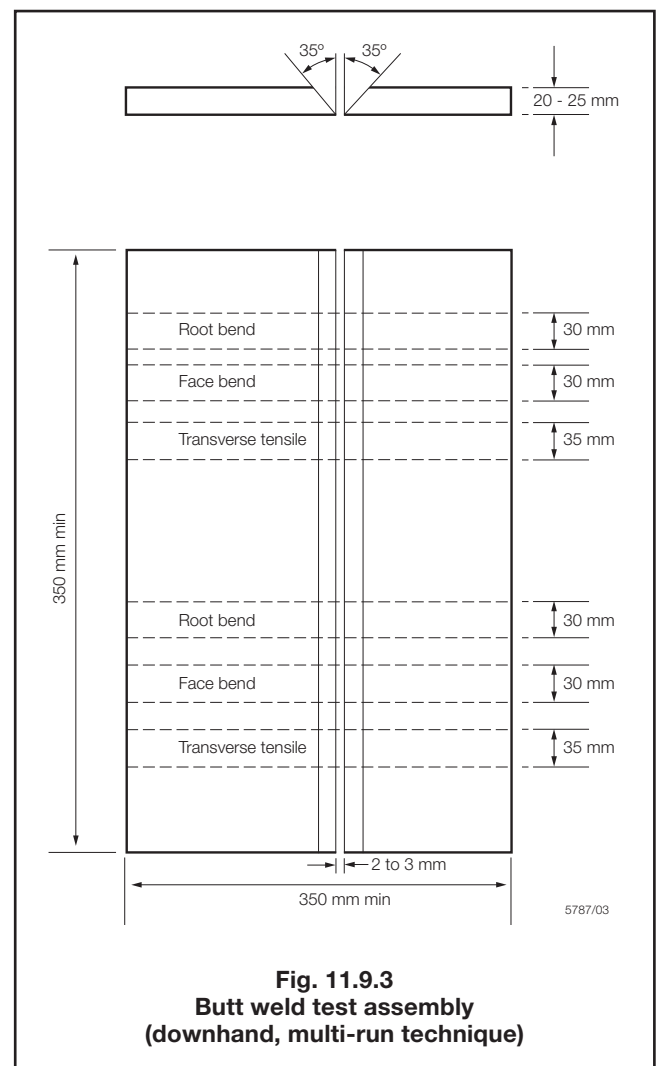




9.4.7 All tensile test specimens are to have a tensile strength not less than the respective value shown in Table 11.9.1. The position of each fracture is to be reported.

9.4.8 The bend test specimens are to be bent around a former having a diameter not more than the number of times the thickness of the test specimen, as shown in Table 11.9.1, and can be considered as complying with the requirements if, after bending to an angle of not less than 180°, no crack or other open defect exceeding 3 mm in length can be seen on the outer surface. Flaws appearing at the corners of a test specimen may be ignored.

9.4.9 In order to obtain uniform bending of the bend test specimens, it is recommended that the wrap-around or guided bend test using a roller method is employed.



## 9.5 Fillet weld test assembly

9.5.1 When approval is being sought for both butt and fillet welding, one assembly is to be prepared and welded in the horizontal-vertical position and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of 3.5, except that the plates are to be of an aluminium alloy compatible with the weld metal, that no hardness tests are required and that for automatic multi-run approval only one fillet weld bead is to be made using the recommended wire diameter. In this case, the bead size is to be as large as the maximum single bead size recommended by the manufacturer for fillet welding.

9.5.2 When approval is being sought for fillet welding only, one assembly is to be prepared and welded in each position for which approval is sought, and tested as detailed in 9.5.1.

9.5.3 The results of examination of the macro-specimens and the fractured fillet welds are to be reported in accordance with 3.5.4 and 3.5.6. Imperfections are to be assessed in accordance with 9.1.9.

## 9.6 Approval tests for two-run technique

9.6.1 Two butt weld test assemblies are to be prepared using the following plate thicknesses:

- one with the maximum thickness for which approval is requested; and
- one with a thickness approximately one half to two thirds that of the maximum thickness.

## 9.7 Butt weld test assemblies (two-run technique)

9.7.1 The plates used are to be of the aluminium alloy appropriate to the approval required as shown in Table 11.9.1. The composition of the plate material is to be within the range specified for that alloy in Table 8.1.2 in Chapter 8 and is to be reported including all significant elements.

9.7.2 The wire diameter, edge preparation, welding current, arc voltage and travel speed are to be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and are to be reported.

9.7.3 Each butt weld is to be made in two runs, one from each side. After completion of the first run, the assembly is to be left in still air until it has cooled to less than 50°C.

9.7.4 The welded assemblies are to be subjected to NDE. Imperfections are to be assessed in accordance with 9.1.8.

9.7.5 The test specimens as shown in Fig. 11.9.4 are to be prepared from each test assembly. The edges of the discards are to be polished and etched, and must show complete fusion and inter-run penetration of the welds. Each cut in the assembly is also to be examined to confirm that complete fusion and penetration have been achieved.

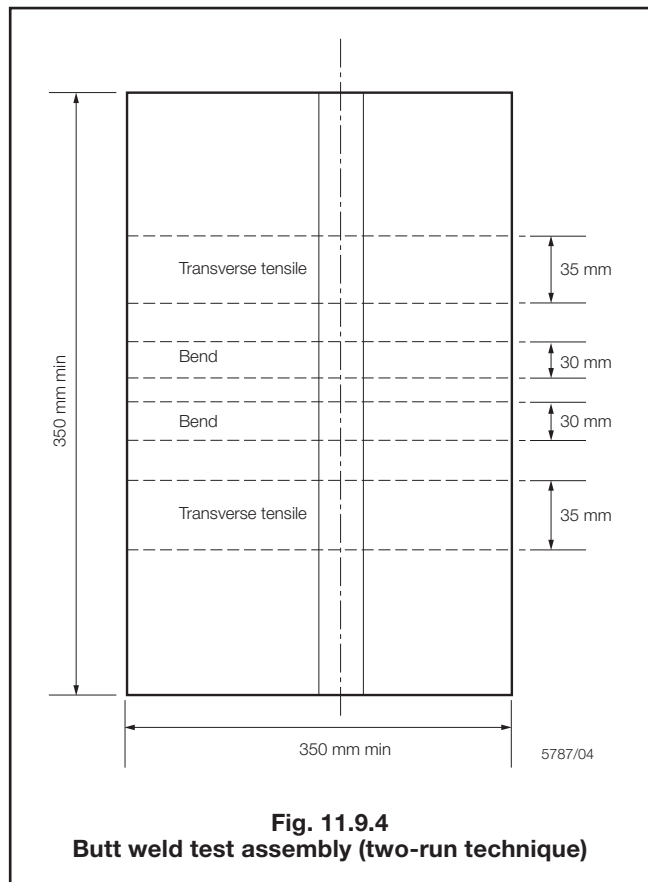
9.7.6 The results of the transverse tensile tests are to be as in 9.4.7 and of the bend tests as in 9.4.8. The position of the fracture in each transverse tensile specimen is to be reported.

## 9.8 Annual tests

9.8.1 Annual tests are to consist of the following:

- for combinations approved for the multi-run technique, one deposited metal assembly in 9.3 and one downhand butt assembly in 9.4;
- for combinations approved for the two-run technique, one butt weld assembly in plate material of thickness equal to one half to two thirds that of the maximum thickness approved.

9.8.2 For the automatic two-run technique, one butt weld assembly is to be prepared and tested in accordance with 9.7.



**Fig. 11.9.4**  
**Butt weld test assembly (two-run technique)**

# Welding Qualifications

# Chapter 12

## Section 1

### Section

- 1 **General qualification requirements**
- 2 **Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels**
- 3 **Specific requirements for stainless steels**
- 4 **Welding procedure tests for non-ferrous alloys**
- 5 **Welder qualification tests**

## ■ Section 1 General qualification requirements

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 This Section applies to all welding qualifications and tests required to be performed in the course of new construction, conversions, modifications or repairs made on ships, other marine structures and their associated pressure vessels, machinery and equipment.

1.1.2 These Rules also apply to all welding work related to other applications for which Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as LR) have issued Rules or have an interest.

1.1.3 It is the responsibility of the manufacturer to ensure compliance with all aspects of these Rules. All deviations are to be recorded as non-compliances and brought to the attention of the Surveyor along with the corrective actions taken. Failure to do this is considered to render the welding tests as not complying with the Rules.

1.1.4 Welding tests are to be performed under survey at the manufacturer's works. Welding procedure qualification tests and welder qualifications tests are to be performed and approved prior to commencement of fabrication or construction.

1.1.5 Weld procedure tests made in accordance with EN, ISO, JIS, ASME or AWS may be considered for acceptance provided that, as a minimum, they are equivalent to and meet the technical intent of these Rules to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

1.1.6 Welding tests that have previously been carried out may be considered for acceptance, provided that they have been supervised by an independent body acceptable to LR and the Surveyor is satisfied with the authenticity of such tests.

1.1.7 The responsibility for the performance of the weld tests rests with the manufacturer. Aspects of the welding tests, such as mechanical testing, non-destructive testing and heat treatment, may be subcontracted by the manufacturer provided that the subcontractor performs the work under the technical control and direction of the manufacturer, and this is agreed with the Surveyor prior to commencing the work.

1.1.8 In these Rules, the term 'manufacturer' is considered to include any firm or organisation that performs welding and is considered to be the shipbuilder, or construction firm, or fabricator, or material manufacturer.

### 1.2 Design

1.2.1 Welding procedure qualification tests are required to give assurance that construction welds made in accordance with the approved plans or the approved design have acceptable properties. It is the manufacturer's responsibility to establish and document whether a procedure is suitable for a particular application.

1.2.2 The requirements relate to mechanical properties of the weld and heat affected zone, however, other tests may be required on certain materials, for example, corrosion or fatigue tests, in order to ensure suitability for the proposed application.

### 1.3 Materials

1.3.1 Materials used for testing are to be of the same grade, type and from the same manufacturing process as those to be used for construction, unless prior agreement is obtained from the Surveyor. Such agreements will only apply on a case-by-case basis.

1.3.2 All materials used for testing are to be suitably marked and identifiable to the original manufacturer's material certificate.

### 1.4 Performance of welding tests

1.4.1 All welding and subsequent testing is to be performed in accordance with the requirements of this Chapter.

1.4.2 The manufacturer is responsible for monitoring the tests and for recording all the welding variables as specified in 2.2 and for compiling all the non-destructive examination (NDE) reports and mechanical test records for submission to the Surveyor.

1.4.3 The laboratory or testing establishment used to perform the tests is to have the necessary equipment, maintained in good order and suitably calibrated. The Surveyor is to be satisfied that the laboratory personnel have the appropriate skills and are appropriately qualified in accordance with Ch 2, 1.2.1.

## Section 2 Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 The requirements of this Section relate to welding procedure test requirements of carbon, carbon-manganese steels and low alloys steels. Additional requirements for austenitic and austenitic/ferritic duplex stainless steels, aluminium and copper alloys are specified in Sections 3 and 4 respectively.

2.1.2 Prior to performing the welding procedure qualification test, the manufacturer is to present to the Surveyor a preliminary Welding Procedure Specification (pWPS) detailing the welding processes, positions, joint types, materials and heat treatments to be performed during the test. The pWPS is to be presented for information prior to commencing the test.

2.1.3 The type and extent of testing to be applied to each welding procedure test is to be in accordance with subsequent Sections of this Chapter.

2.1.4 For the welding procedure approval, the welding procedure qualification tests given in this Section are to be carried out with satisfactory results. Welding procedure specifications are to refer to the test results achieved during welding procedure qualification testing.

### 2.2 Welding variables

2.2.1 In order that the conditions of the qualification test may be applied to production welding operations, the appropriate variables are to be recorded by the manufacturer during welding and testing from the following list:

- The unique qualification reference number and the date of welding;
- The material type, grade, product form, dimensions and identification;
- Welding process(es), including tack welds;
- Joint type, dimensions and surface condition;
- Welding position(s);
- Welding technique(s), weaving, multiple electrodes, etc;
- Welding consumables including fluxes, shielding gases, etc;
- Control of consumables, baking or drying conditions, etc;
- Welding parameters, current, voltages, travel speeds, etc;
- Number and sequence of weld runs;
- Backing materials including any backing gas;
- Preheats and interpass temperatures;
- Methods used for cleaning and inspection of root deposits;
- Post-weld heat treatment, temperature and cycle times;
- Special weld profiling requirements.

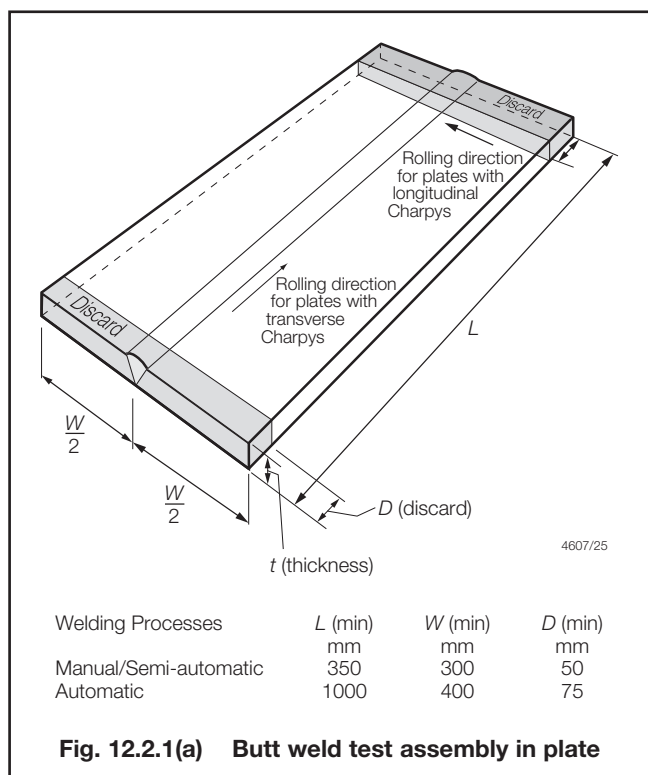
2.2.2 Other variables may need to be recorded depending on the particular welding process or application and are to be agreed with the Surveyor, for example the peak and base current and cycle times for pulse welding, electrode type and nozzle size for GTAW welding, etc.

### 2.3 Steel test assemblies

2.3.1 Tests are to be performed using the welding process and positions anticipated for actual construction. The weld test assemblies are to be representative of construction conditions and are to be welded in the same manner as intended for the actual production welds. Where pre-fabrication primers are used in the shipyard, these are to be included in the test assemblies.

2.3.2 For plate tests, the direction of plate rolling relative to the weld direction is to be considered. Where the material used for the test requires longitudinal impact tests, the plate rolling direction is to be perpendicular to the weld direction and for material which requires impact testing in the transverse direction, the rolling direction is to be parallel to the weld direction.

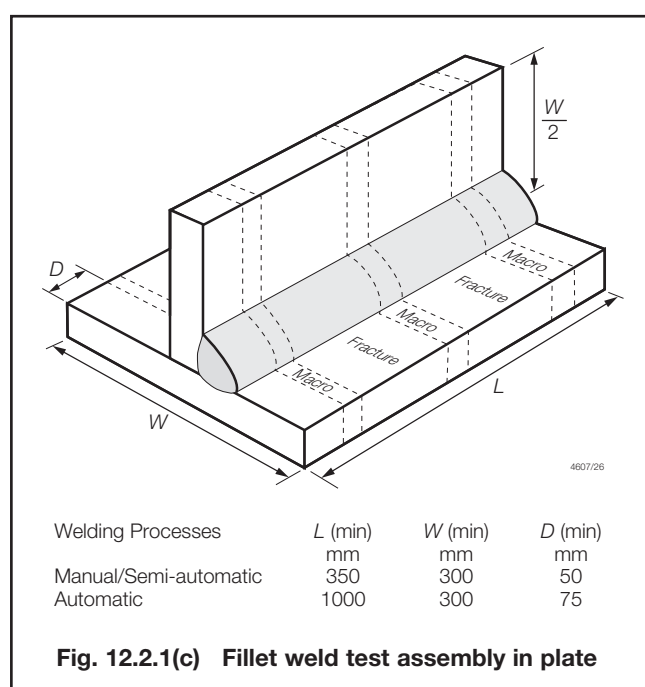
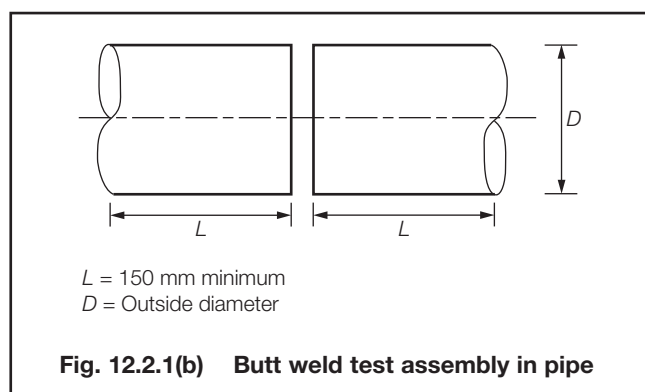
2.3.3 Typical test assemblies are shown in Fig. 12.2.1(a) to (c). These are a minimum requirement to permit the removal of all the necessary mechanical test specimens. Where impact tests or other toughness tests are required, the total width is not to be less than 8 times the material thickness of the thicker material being joined.



# Welding Qualifications

## Chapter 12

Section 2



2.3.4 Welding procedure test assemblies are to be welded separately from production welds and are to be marked with the unique test identification number. The individual pieces of the test assembly may be held together to maintain their relative joint conditions by means of suitable tack welds, clamps or strongbacks.

2.3.5 Welding of the test assemblies and testing of test specimens is to be monitored by the Surveyor.

2.3.6 The test assembly is to be placed in one of the welding positions shown in Fig. 12.2.2(a) to (d), as specified in the test Welding Procedure Specification (pWPS) and the specified level of preheat applied prior to the start of welding.

2.3.7 Designations for equivalent welding positions shown by different standards are shown in Table 12.2.1.

**Table 12.2.1 Equivalent designations of welding positions**

Weld position		Standard	
		ISO 6947	AWS
<b>Plate butt welds</b>			
Flat	D	PA	1G
Horizontal	X	PC	2G
Vertical, weld up	Vu	PF	3G
Vertical, weld down	Vd	PG	3G
Overhead	O	PE	4G
<b>Pipe butt welds</b>			
Pipe horizontal, rotated, weld horizontal	D	PA	1G
Pipe vertical, not rotated, weld horizontal	X	PC	2G
Pipe horizontal, not rotated, weld flat, vertical and overhead	D+Vu+O D+Vd+O	PF PG	5G
Pipe inclination fixed, not rotated	45°	H-L045 J-L045	6G
<b>Plate fillet welds</b>			
Flat	D	PA	1F
Horizontal	X	PB	2F
Vertical up	Vu	PF	3F
Vertical down	Vd	PG	3F
Overhead	O	PD	4F
<b>Pipe fillet welds</b>			
Flat, pipe rotated	D	PA	1FR
Horizontal, pipe fixed	X	PB	2F
Horizontal, pipe rotated	D	PB	2FR
Overhead, pipe fixed	O	PD	4F
Multiple, pipe fixed	D+Vu+O D+Vd+O	PF PG	5F

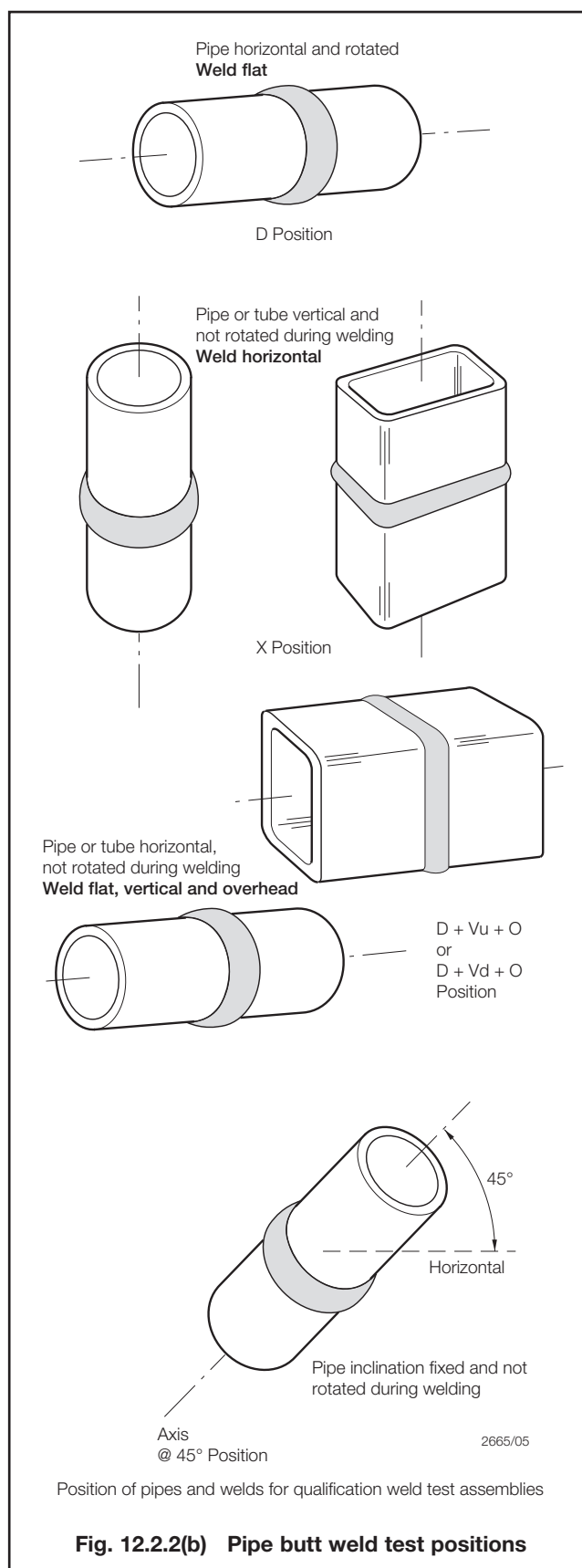
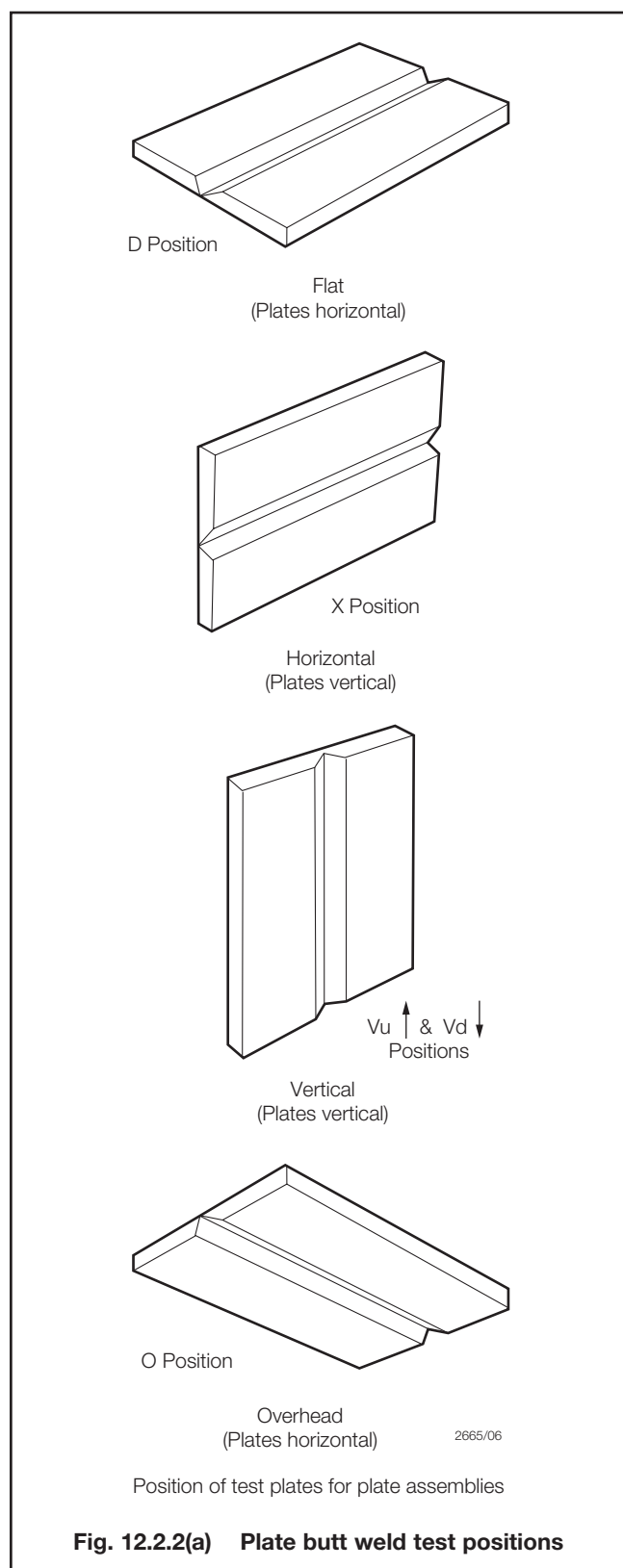
### 2.4 Welding of steel test assemblies

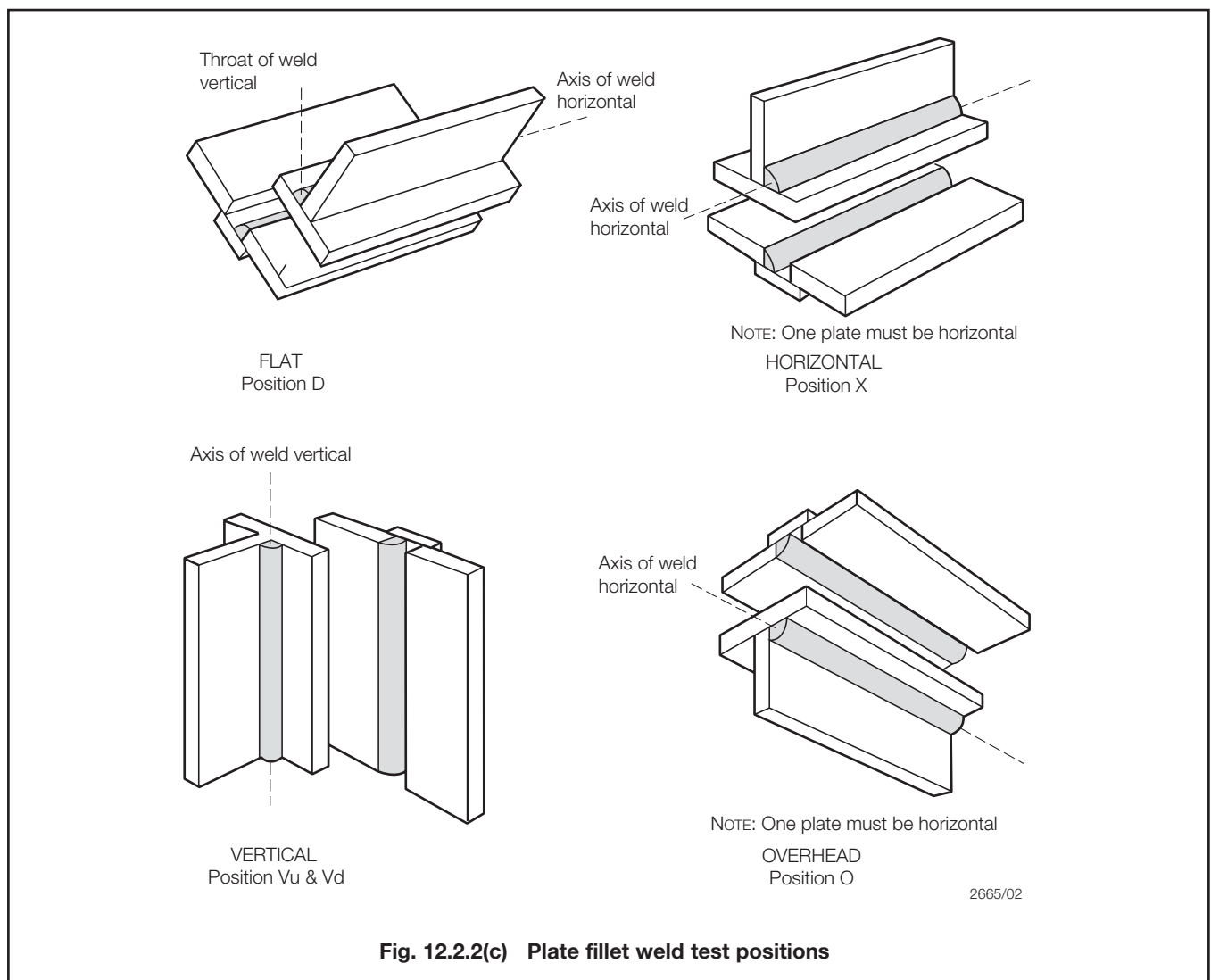
2.4.1 Welding of the test assembly is to be carried out in accordance with the agreed pWPS. Where, during the progress of the test, it is found necessary to change the conditions specified on the pWPS, this is to be brought to the attention of the Surveyor. If agreed, the test may be permitted to continue with the new conditions and these are to be recorded.

# Welding Qualifications

## Chapter 12

### Section 2





2.4.2 Where the production work requires welding over tack welds, the test is to simulate this condition and the tack welds are to be included in the inspection length of the test weld and their position recorded.

2.4.3 For manual and semi-automatic welding processes, weld stops and re-starts are to be included in the inspection length of the test weld.

2.4.4 Fillet weld test assemblies are welded on one side only.

2.4.5 Where the construction welding is predominately fillet welding, in addition to the butt weld qualification test, a fillet weld qualification test is to be performed to confirm that acceptable weld quality is achieved.

## 2.5 Non-destructive examination (NDE)

2.5.1 On completion of welding, prior to sectioning for mechanical tests, the inspection length of the test assembly is to be subjected to both visual examination and surface crack detection.

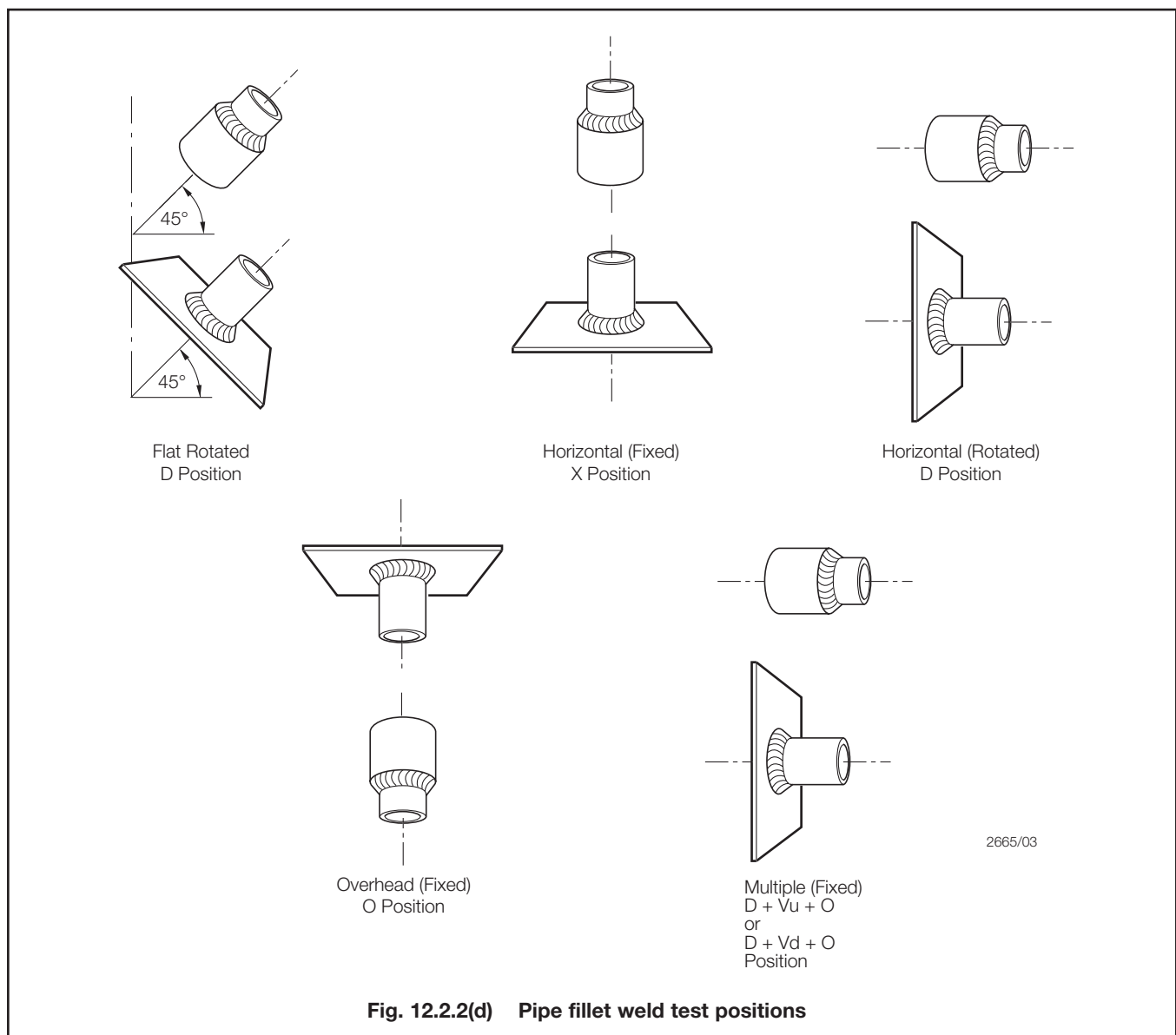
2.5.2 Butt weld assemblies are also to be subjected to radiographic or ultrasonic examination over the whole inspection length of the weld.

2.5.3 For welds in steels with specified yield strength up to 400 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, and with carbon equivalent less than or equal to 0,41 per cent, NDE may be performed as soon as the test assembly has cooled to ambient temperature. For other steels, NDE is to be delayed for a period of at least 48 hours after the test assembly has cooled to ambient temperature.

2.5.4 Where post-weld heat treatment is required, NDE is to be performed after the heat treatment is complete.

2.5.5 All NDEs are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1,5. Assessment of results is to be in accordance with ISO 5817 Level B except for excess convexity and excess throat thickness where Level C will apply. Linear porosity is not permitted.





2.5.6 As an alternative to radiography, ultrasonic examination may be carried out and acceptance criteria that are considered to result in equivalent weld quality (in accordance with 2.5.5) are to be agreed, with the Surveyor, prior to the tests being carried out. Ultrasonic testing will be subject to the thickness limitation specified in Ch 13,2.12.5.

2.5.7 Where the test assembly does not satisfy the non-destructive examination acceptance criteria, the test is to be rejected. A duplicate test assembly may be welded using the original welding conditions. If this fails NDE, the welding procedure is to be considered as incapable of achieving the requirements without modification.

2.5.8 Subject to prior agreement with the Surveyor, where unacceptable imperfections are of a volumetric nature and are localised in one small area of the test assembly, the test may be permitted to continue and specimens for destructive testing may be removed, avoiding this area.

## 2.6 Destructive tests – General requirements

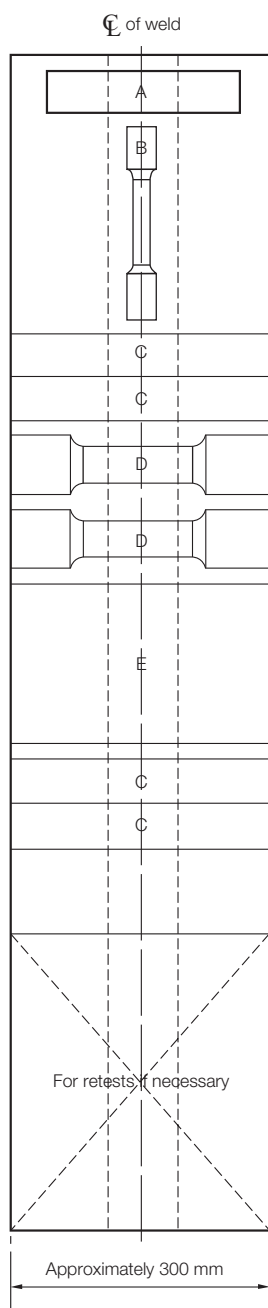
2.6.1 The weld test assembly may only be sectioned for destructive testing after any heat treatment and the required non-destructive examinations have been completed successfully.

2.6.2 The dimensions of the test specimens and testing conditions are to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Chapter 2.

2.6.3 The results of destructive tests are to be assessed in accordance with the acceptance criteria specified in 2.12, unless other, more stringent requirements are specified for the application.

2.6.4 Where a weld test is made between materials of different grades, the acceptance criteria that are to be applied are those applicable to the lower grade material.





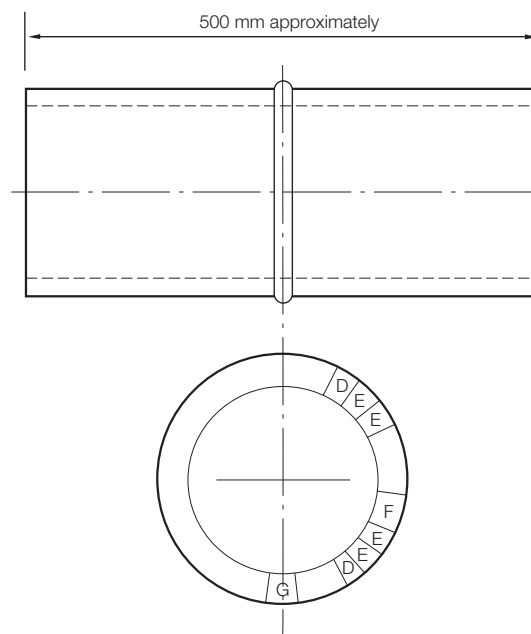
## Test requirements

- A One macro including hardness survey
- B All weld metal tensile test
- C Four bend tests.  
Two root bends and two face bends for thickness up to 12 mm.  
For thickness above 12 mm four side bends
- D Two transverse tensiles
- E Five sets of Charpy V-notch impact tests, notched at the following positions:
  - 1 set at weld centre
  - 1 set at fusion line (FL)
  - 1 set at FL + 2 mm
  - 1 set at FL + 5 mm (if required by Figs. 12.2.6 and 12.2.7)
  - 1 set at FL + 10 mm (if required)

2665/07

**Fig. 12.2.3**

**Butt welds in plate and pipe over 750 mm diameter**



The diameter of the test piece is to be a minimum of  $D/2$  where  
 $D$  is the maximum diameter of the pipe to be welded in construction

## Test requirements

- A Visual examination
- B Surface crack detection
- C 100% radiographic examination
- D Two transverse tensile tests
- E Four bend tests.  
Four side bends for thickness greater than 12 mm.  
In other cases, two face and two root bends
- F Four sets Charpy V-notch impact tests
  - 1 set notched at centre of weld
  - 1 set notched at fusion line (FL)
  - 1 set notched at FL + 2 mm
  - 1 set notched at FL + 5 mm (if required by Figs. 12.2.6 and 12.2.7)
- G One macro specimen including hardness survey

**Fig. 12.2.4**

**Butt welds in pipe less than 750 mm diameter**

## 2.7 Destructive tests for steel butt welds

2.7.1 The test assembly is to be sectioned for mechanical testing in accordance with Figs. 12.2.3 or 12.2.4.

2.7.2 The longitudinal all weld metal tensile test specimen is to be of circular cross-section as detailed in Ch 11.2.1.1. Where more than one welding process or type of consumable has been used to make the weld, test specimens are to be removed from each respective area of the weld. This does not apply to the process or consumables used to make the root or first weld run. During the test, the yield or proof stress, ultimate tensile strength, and elongation to failure are to be recorded.

2.7.3 Where approved welding consumables have been used, the longitudinal all weld metal tensile test may be omitted.

2.7.4 The transverse tensile test specimen is to be of full thickness with the dimensions shown in Ch 11.2.1.1. The tensile strength and fracture locations are to be reported.

2.7.5 Where the maximum load required to fracture the transverse tensile specimen is likely to exceed the capacity of the tensile testing equipment, several tensile specimens may be removed through the thickness and tested. Specimens are to be prepared such that they overlap in the thickness direction so that the full plate thickness is tested.

2.7.6 Transverse bend specimens of rectangular section are to be prepared with the weld centred in the middle of the specimen as shown in Fig. 12.2.5. For material of thickness 12 mm or greater, the face and root bends may be substituted by side bend tests. The weld reinforcement may be removed by grinding or machining prior to testing and the edges rounded to a radius not exceeding 10 per cent of the specimen thickness. Each specimen is to be bent through an angle of at least 180°. The bend test ratio is to be the lesser of the following:

(a)  $D_f = (D/t) + 1$

or

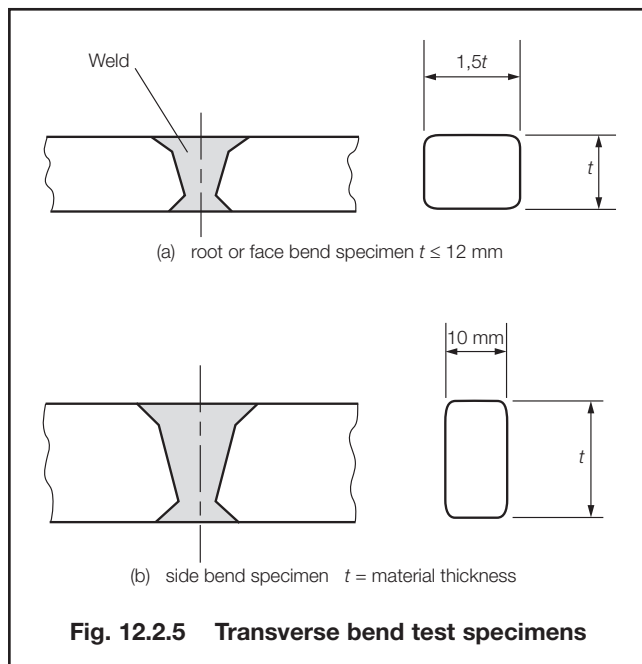
(b)  $D_f = 100/E_m$  (rounded up to the next whole number)

where

$D_f$  = is the bend test ratio

$(D/t)$  = is the value from Tables 11.3.3, 11.4.3 or 11.8.2 in Chapter 11, as appropriate

$E_m$  = is the minimum specified percentage elongation for the test material (based on a proportional gauge length of  $5,65 \sqrt{S_0}$ )



**Fig. 12.2.5 Transverse bend test specimens**

2.7.7 Where the weld test is made between different material types, the requirements of 2.7.8 are to be applied to the material with the lower toughness specification.

2.7.8 For hull structural steels, impact test specimens are to be prepared from the locations shown in Figs. 12.2.6 or 12.2.7, with the notch perpendicular to the plate surface and have the dimensions and proportions in accordance with Ch 2.3. Where more than one welding process or type of consumable has been used to make the weld, test specimens are also to be removed from these respective parts of the weld. Note that this does not apply to the welding process or consumables used solely to make the root or first weld run. Where the weld thickness exceeds 50 mm, an additional set of impact tests is required from the root area of the weld irrespective of whether different welding process or welding consumables are used as shown in Figs. 12.2.6 and 12.2.7.

2.7.9 For offshore structures and pressure vessels, impact test specimens are not required to be notched at the FL + 10 mm location. Where more than one welding process or type of consumable has been used to make the weld, test specimens are to be removed from the respective areas of the weld. This does not apply to the process or consumables used solely to make the root or first weld run.

2.7.10 At least one macro examination specimen is to be removed from the test plate, near the end where welding started. The specimen is to include the complete cross-section of the weld and the heat affected zone and be prepared and etched to clearly reveal the weld runs and the heat affected zone. Examination is to be performed under a magnification of between  $\times 5$  and  $\times 10$ .

2.7.11 A chemical analysis of the weld metal is to be performed on the macro specimen where approved welding consumables have not been used. The results are to comply with the limits given in the welding consumable specification.

2.7.12 A Vickers hardness survey is to be performed on the macro specimen taken from the weld start end of the test assembly in accordance with that shown in Fig. 12.2.8, using a test load not in excess of 10 kg. For each row of indents, there are to be a minimum of 3 individual indentations in the weld metal, the heat affected zones (both sides) and the base metal (both sides). The recommended distance between indents is 1,0 mm, but the distance between indents should not be less than the minimum specified in ISO 6507/1.

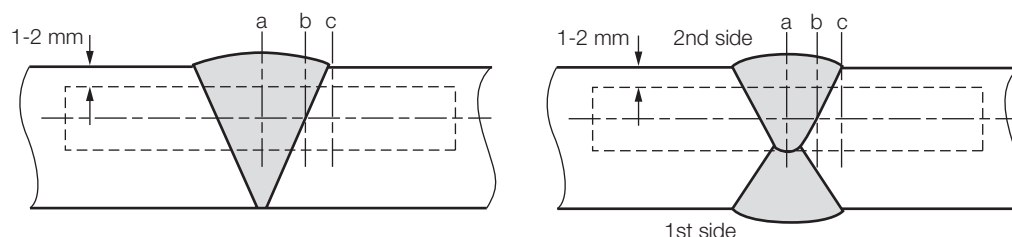
## 2.8 Destructive tests for steel fillet welds

2.8.1 Fillet weld test assemblies are to be sectioned for destructive testing in accordance with Fig. 12.2.1(c) and as follows:

- (a) two fracture tests;
- (b) three macro-sections;
- (c) one hardness survey.

2.8.2 Two fracture test specimens are to be removed from the test weld and are to be subjected to testing by bending the upright plate onto the through plate to produce fracture, as shown in Fig. 12.2.1(c).

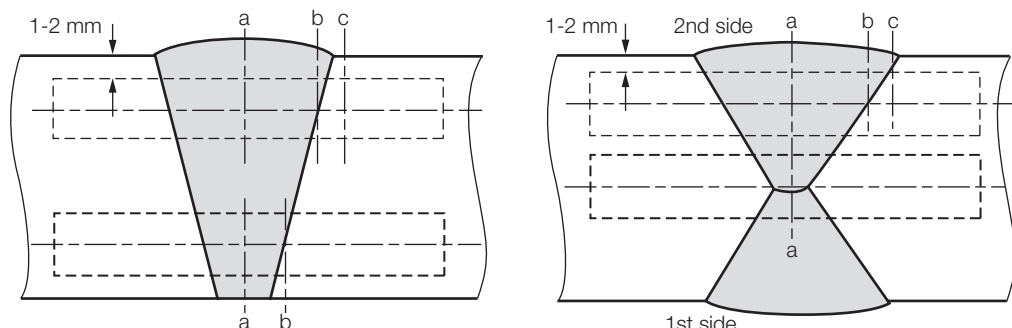
(a)  $t \leq 50$  mm, see Note



NOTE

For one side single run welding over 20 mm notch location 'a' is to be added on root side

(a)  $t > 50$  mm



Notch locations:

- a : centre of weld 'WM'
- b : on fusion line 'FL'
- c : in HAZ, 2mm from fusion line

**Fig. 12.2.6 Locations of V-notch for butt weld of normal heat input (heat input  $\leq 50$  kJ/cm)**

2.8.3 At least three macro examination specimens are to be removed from the test plate. The specimens are to include the complete cross-section of the weld and the heat affected zone and is to be prepared to clearly reveal the weld runs and the heat affected zone. One of the specimens is to include a weld stop/start position. Examination is to be performed under a magnification of between x5 and x10.

2.8.4 A Vickers hardness survey is to be performed on the macro specimen taken from the weld start end of the test assembly in accordance with that shown in Fig. 12.2.9, using a test load not exceeding 10 kg.

## 2.9 Destructive tests for T, K, Y steel nozzle welds

2.9.1 Full penetration 'T', 'K' and 'Y' joints for structural applications and nozzle welds for pressure vessels are to be sectioned for testing in accordance with Fig. 12.2.10 and tested as detailed below:

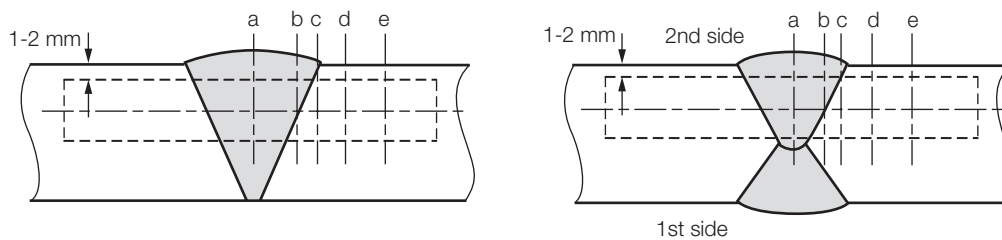
- (a) three macro specimens;
- (b) impact tests from the weld, fusion line and fusion line + 2 (where the material thickness permits);
- (c) one hardness survey.

In addition, butt weld tests are to be performed in accordance with 2.7, using the same welding conditions, in order to verify acceptable weld and heat affected zone properties.

2.9.2 The impact tests are to be removed from the vertical (up) position 'B' in Fig. 12.2.10 and tested in accordance with 2.7.8.

2.9.3 A Vickers hardness survey is to be performed on the macro-section removed from position 'A' or 'C' in accordance with that shown in Fig. 12.2.11 using a test load not exceeding 10 kg.

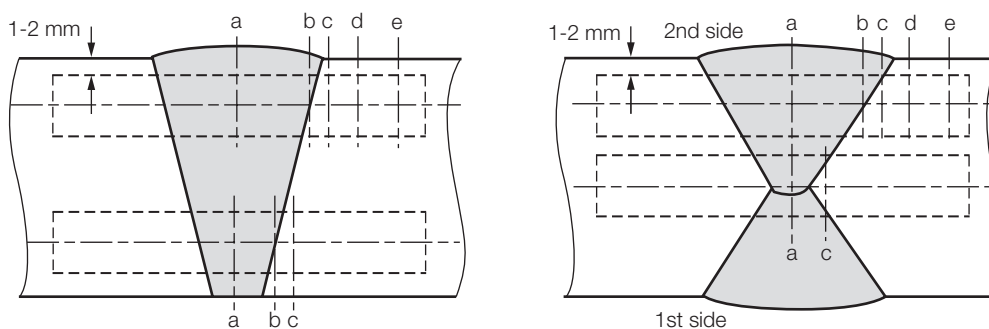
(a)  $t \leq 50$  mm, see Note



NOTE

For one side welding with thickness over 20 mm notch location 'a', 'b' and 'c' are to be added on root side

(a)  $t > 50$  mm



Notch locations:

- a : centre of weld 'WM'
- b : on fusion line 'FL'
- c : in HAZ, 2 mm from fusion line
- d : in HAZ, 5 mm from fusion line
- e : in HAZ, 10 mm from fusion line in case of heat input > 200 kJ/cm

**Fig. 12.2.7 Locations of V-notch for butt weld of high heat input (heat input > 50 kJ/cm)**

## 2.10 Destructive tests for steel pipe branch welds

**2.10.1** Pipe branch welds may be by either full penetration, partial penetration or fillet welded, depending on the application and the approved plans. Where these types of welded joints are used, tests are to be performed which simulate the construction conditions.

**2.10.2** The test weld assembly is to simulate the smallest angle between the branch and main pipe and is to be subjected to macro-examination and hardness testing, as follows:

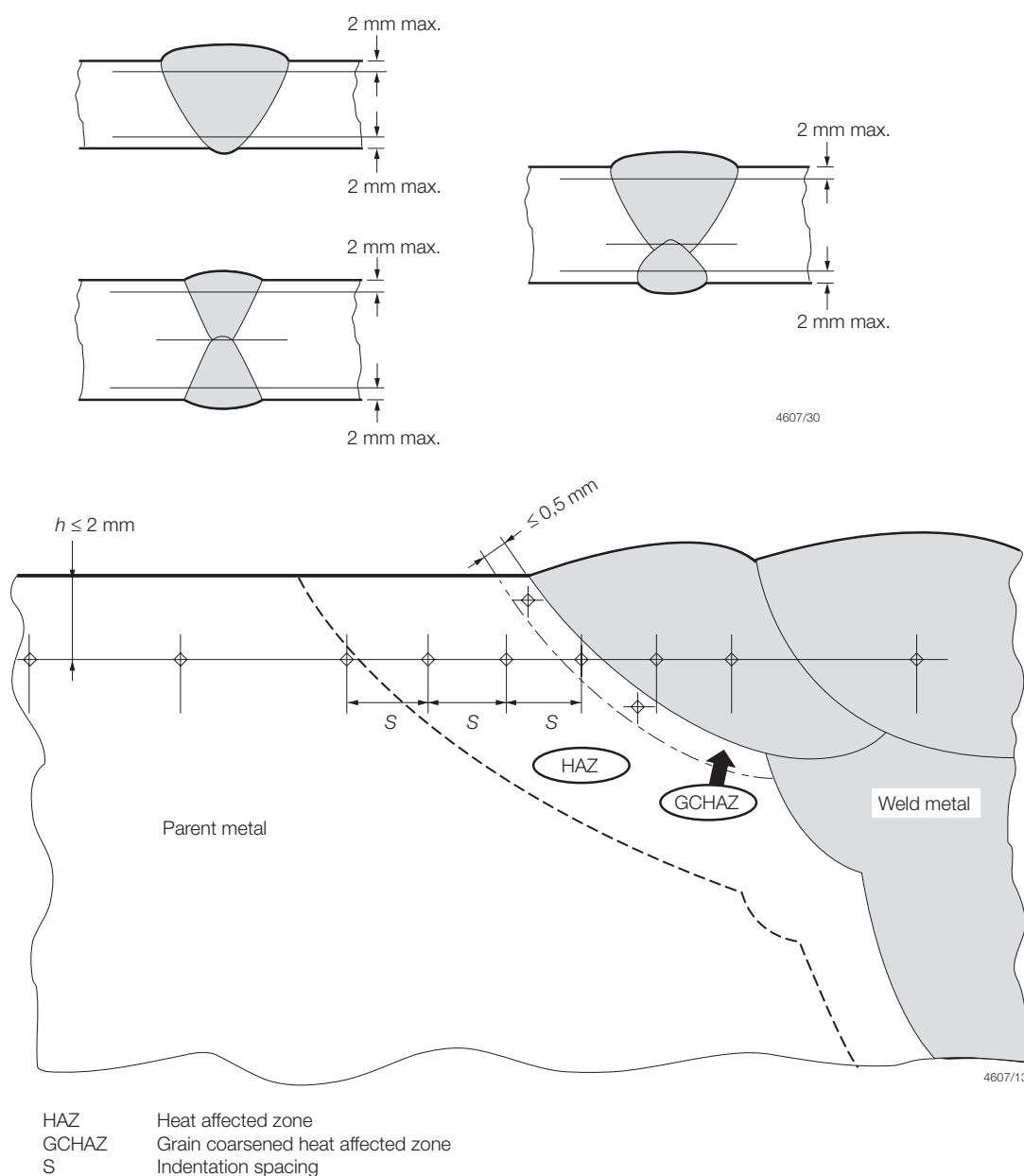
- (a) For a branch weld that is full penetration, testing is to be performed in accordance with the requirements for 'T', 'K' and 'Y' joints in 2.9.
- (b) For a branch weld that is either a partial penetration or fillet weld, testing is to be in accordance with the requirements for fillet welds in 2.8.

## 2.11 Destructive tests for weld cladding of steel

**2.11.1** Where weld cladding or overlay is allowed by Chapter 13, and is considered as providing strength to the component to which it is welded, the type and location of test specimens are to be in accordance with Fig. 12.2.12, except that micro-sections are not required. Impact tests may be omitted where the base material does not have specified impact properties. The longitudinal tensile and bend tests are to be tested in a similar manner to transverse specimens specified in 2.7.2 and 2.7.6, respectively.

**2.11.2** Where the weld cladding is not considered as contributing to the strength of the component, but is required for corrosion or wear resistance, the type and location of test specimens are to be in accordance with Fig. 12.2.12, except that tensile and impact tests are not required.

**2.11.3** Where the weld cladding is applied for corrosion resistance, in addition to the above, weld metal analysis is to be performed on one of the micro-sections, on the final weld surface but 2 mm deep. The analysis is to be within the limits specified for the corrosion resistance required.



**Fig. 12.2.8 Hardness testing locations for butt welds**

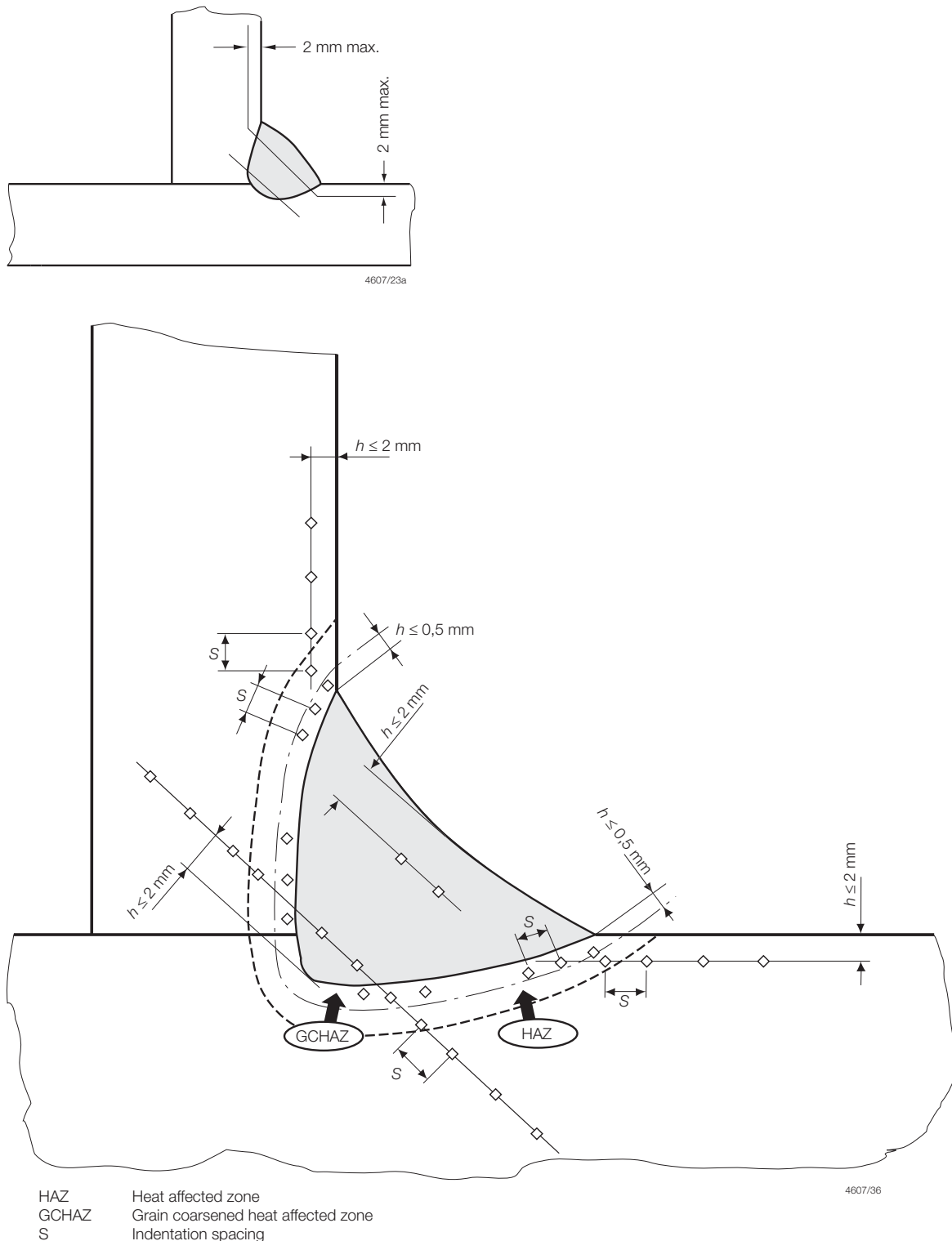
## 2.12 Mechanical test acceptance criteria for steels

### 2.12.1 Longitudinal all weld metal tensile test:

- In general, the longitudinal all weld tensile test is to meet the minimum properties specified in Tables 11.3.2 or 11.4.2 in Chapter 11, as appropriate to the grade of steel and welding process used in the test.
- Where the application is such that no consumable approvals are specified in Chapter 11, the longitudinal all weld tensile test tensile is to meet the minimum properties specified for the base materials used in the test.

- For pressure vessels manufactured from carbon or carbon/manganese steels, the tensile strength from the longitudinal all weld tensile test is not to be less than the minimum specified for the plate material and is not to be more than 145 N/mm<sup>2</sup> above this value, see Ch 13,4.8.3.

**2.12.2 Transverse tensile test:** The tensile strength measured from the transverse tensile test is not to be less than the minimum specified for the base material used in the test.



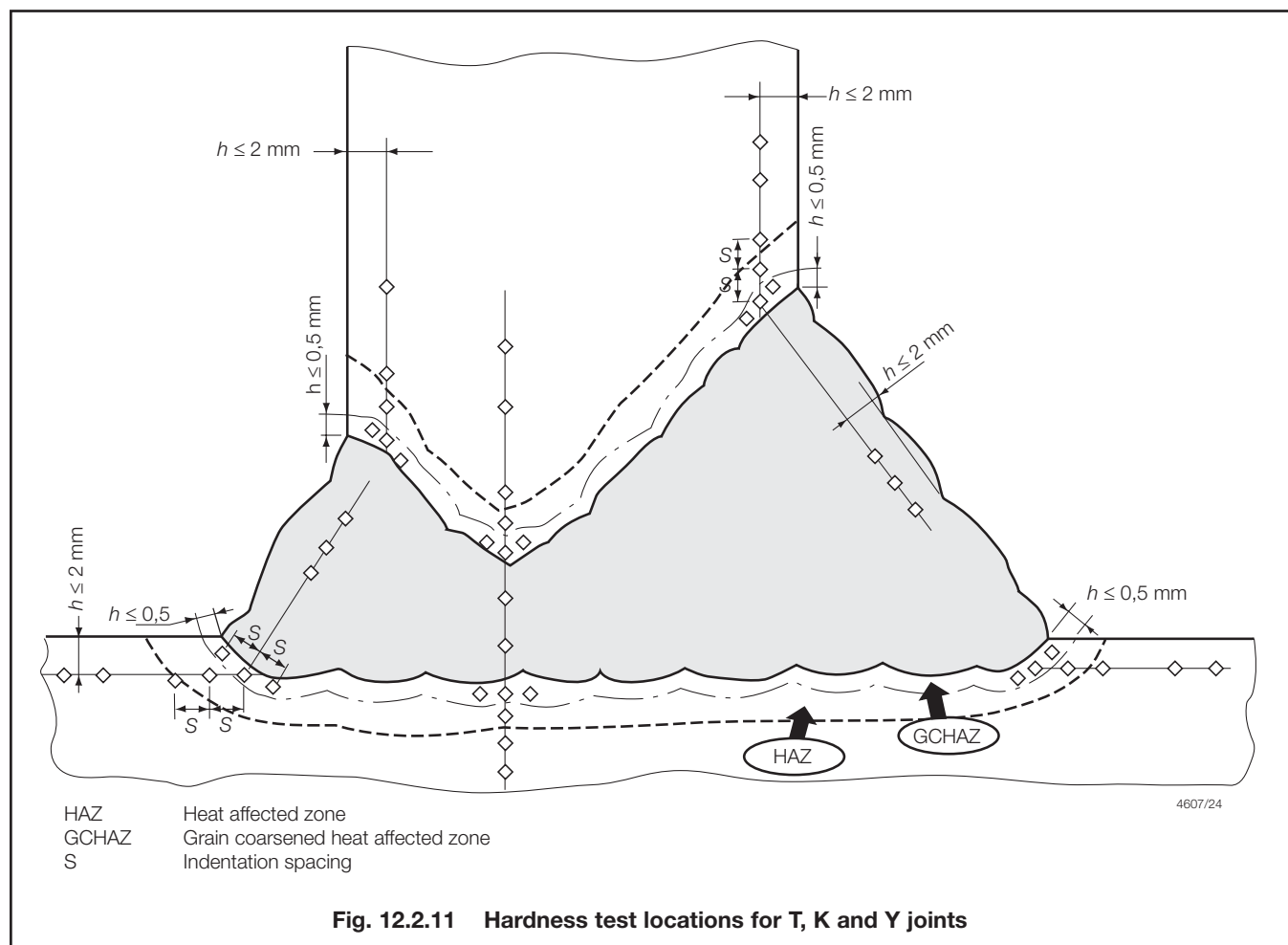
**Fig. 12.2.9 Hardness test locations for fillet welds**

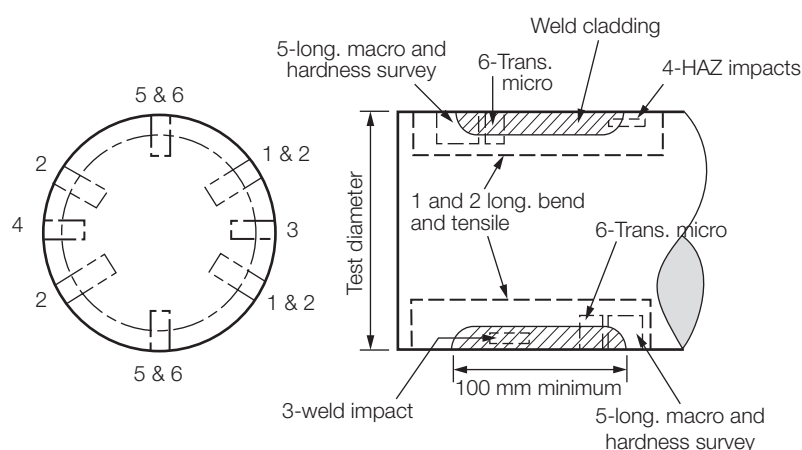
## 2.12.3 Bend tests:

- (a) In general, bend tests are to exhibit no defects exceeding 3,0 mm measured in any direction across the tension face of the specimen after being bent over the required diameter of former to the appropriate angle.
- (b) Bend tests for pressure vessel applications are to exhibit no defects exceeding 3,0 mm measured along the specimen or 1,5 mm measured transverse to the specimen axis, after bending.
- (c) In all cases, premature failure of the bend tests at the edges of the specimen is to not be cause for rejection unless these are associated with a weld defect.

- (a) Impact test specimens for hull construction are to be tested at the temperature, and are to achieve the minimum impact energy, as specified in Tables 12.2.2 and 12.2.3.
- (b) Impact test specimens for applications other than hull construction are to be tested at the same temperature and achieve the same minimum energy values, as specified for the base materials used in the test.
- (c) Impact test acceptance criteria are to be in accordance with the above unless the Rules applicable to the particular construction specify more stringent requirements.
- (d) For quench and tempered steels, the required test temperature and absorbed energy are to be in accordance with that specified for the parent materials.

**2.12.6 Hardness surveys:** The maximum hardness value reported, is not to exceed 350 Hv for steels with a specified minimum yield strength up to  $\leq 420$  N/mm<sup>2</sup>, nor exceed 420 Hv for steels with a specified minimum yield strength in the range 420 N/mm<sup>2</sup> to 690 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.





## Test specimens

- 1 Longitudinal tensile test to include the weld metal, heat affected zone (HAZ) and base metal.
- 2 Longitudinal side bend test to include the weld metal, heat affected zone (HAZ) and base metal.
- 3 Weld metal Charpy V notch impact test.
- 4 HAZ Charpy impact test from Fusion Line and Fusion Line + 2 mm.
- 5 Longitudinal macro-section and hardness survey.
- 6 Transverse micro-section.

## NOTE

In the case of shafts and pipes of circular section, the longitudinal direction is parallel to the centreline of the shaft or pipe axis.

**Fig. 12.2.12 Type and location of test specimens for weld cladding**

**Table 12.2.2 Impact test requirements for butt joints ( $t \leq 50$  mm) see Notes 1 and 2**

Grade of steel	Test temperature (°C) see Note 4	Value of minimum energy absorbed (J), see Note 4		
		Manual or semi-automatic welded joints		Automatically welded joints
		Downhand, Horizontal, Overhead	Vertical upward, Vertical downward	
A, see Note 3 B, see Note 3, D E A32, A36 D32, D36 E32, E36 F32, F36	20 0 -20 20 0 -20 -40	47	34	34
A40 D40 E40 F40	20 0 -20 -40		39	39

## NOTES

1. Steel with yield strength greater than 390 N/mm<sup>2</sup> is not permitted in thickness less than 50 mm, see Table 3.3.1 in Chapter 3.
2. These requirements are to apply to test piece of which butt weld is perpendicular to the rolling direction of the plates.
3. For grade A and B steels average absorbed energy on fusion line and in heat affected zone is to be a minimum of 27 J.
4. For Naval ships both the test temperature and value of minimum energy absorbed are to be those specified for the parent material.

**2.12.7 Weld fracture or break tests (for pressure vessel test welds):** The faces of the broken fillet weld fracture or weld break test are to be examined for defects and assessed in accordance with the non-destructive acceptance criteria given in ISO 5817 Level B, except for excess convexity and excess throat thickness where Level C will apply.

## 2.13 Failure to meet requirements (Retests)

**2.13.1** Where a tensile, bend or hardness specimen fails to meet requirements, further test specimens may be removed and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2, 1.4.1.



# Welding Qualifications

## Chapter 12

### Section 2

**Table 12.2.3 Impact test requirements for butt joints ( $t > 50$  mm), see Note 1**

Grade of steel	Test temperature (°C) see Note 2	Value of absorbed energy (J, min), see Note 2		
		Manual or semi-automatic welded joints		Automatically welded joints
		Downhand, Horizontal, Overhead	Vertical upward, Vertical downward	
A	20	34	34	34
B	0	34	34	34
D	0	47	38	38
E	-20	47	38	38
AH32, AH36	20	47	41	41
DH32, DH36	0	47	41	41
EH32, EH36	-20	47	41	41
FH32, FH36	-40	47	41	41
AH40	20	50	46	46
DH40	0	50	46	46
EH40	-20	50	46	46
FH40	-40	50	46	46
AH47	20	53	53	53
DH47	0	53	53	53
EH47	-20	53	53	53
FH47	-40	53	53	53

NOTES

- These requirements are to apply to test piece of which butt weld is perpendicular to the rolling direction of the plates.
- For the Naval ships both the test temperature and value of minimum absorbed energy are to be those specified for the parent material.

2.13.2 Where an impact specimen fails to meet requirements, a further set of three specimens may be removed and tested in accordance with the requirements of Ch 2, 1.4.4.

2.13.3 Where a macro specimen reveals a defect that is planar in nature, the welding procedure test is to be considered as not satisfying the requirements and a new test assembly is required.

2.13.4 Where a macro specimen does not meet requirements as a result of a volumetric imperfection exceeding the permitted size, two additional specimens may be removed from the same test weld and examined. If either of these macro-sections also fails to satisfy the requirements, the welding procedure is to be considered as not having met the requirements.

2.13.5 If there is a single hardness value above the maximum values specified, additional hardness tests are to be carried out, either on the reverse of the specimen, or after sufficient grinding of the tested surface. None of the additional hardness values is to exceed the maximum hardness values specified, otherwise the welding procedure is to be considered as not having met the requirements.

2.13.6 Where there is insufficient material available in the welded test assembly to provide re-test specimens, subject to prior agreement with the Surveyor, a second assembly may be welded using the same conditions as the original test weld.

### 2.14 Test records

2.14.1 The procedure qualification record (PQR) is to be prepared by the manufacturer and is to include details of the welding conditions used in the test specified in 2.2 and the results of all the non-destructive examinations and destructive tests, including re-tests.

2.14.2 Provided that the PQR lists all the relevant variables and there are no inconsistent features and the results satisfy the requirements, the PQR may be endorsed by the Surveyor as satisfying the requirement of the Rules, see also 1.1.4.

### 2.15 Range of approval

2.15.1 A welding procedure qualification test that has successfully met the requirements may be used for a wider range of applications than those used during the test.

2.15.2 Changes outside of the ranges specified are to require a new welding procedure test.

2.15.3 Other ranges of approval from those specified in this Section may be agreed with the Surveyor, provided that they are in accordance with recognised National or International Standards.

2.15.4 **Manufacturer.** A welding procedure qualified by a manufacturer is valid for welding in workshops under the same technical and quality management.

# Welding Qualifications

# Chapter 12

Section 2

**2.15.5 Welding process and technique.** The welding process and welding techniques approved are to be those employed during the welding procedure qualification test. Where multiple welding processes are used, these are to be employed in the same order as that used in the welding procedure qualification test. However, it may be acceptable to delete or add a welding process where it has been used solely to make the first weld run in the root of the joint, provided back gouging or grinding of the root weld is specified on the WPS. For multi-process procedures, the welding procedure approval may be carried out with separate welding procedure tests for each welding process.

**2.15.6 Welding positions.** Approval for a test made in any position is restricted to that position. To qualify a range of positions, test assemblies are to be welded for the highest heat input position, and the lowest heat input position, and all applicable tests are to be made on those assemblies. The above excludes welding in the vertical position with travel in the downward direction which will always require separate qualification testing and only be acceptable for that position.

**2.15.7 Joint types.** A qualification test performed on a butt weld may be considered acceptable for fillet and partial penetration welds, provided the same welding conditions are used. The range of approval depending on the type of joint for butt welds is given in Table 12.2.4.

**Table 12.2.4 Range of approval for different types of butt joints**

Type of welded joint for test assembly				Range of approval
Butt welding	One side	With backing	A	A,C,D
		Without backing	B	A,B,C,D
	Both sides	With gouging	C	C
		Without gouging	D	C,D

## 2.15.8 Range of material types:

- A qualification test performed on one strength level of steel may be used to weld all similar materials with the same or lower specified minimum yield stress with the exception of the two-run (T) or high welding heat input (A) techniques where acceptance is limited to the strength level used in the test. Similarly, a qualification test performed on a steel with one toughness level may be considered acceptable for welding all similar materials with the same or three toughness grades lower specified minimum toughness level.
- A qualification test performed on H47 strength grade steels may be used to weld the steel of the same strength level or grade H40 and all lower toughness grades to that tested.
- For high strength quenched and tempered steels, for each strength level, welding procedures are considered applicable to the same and lower toughness grades as that tested. For each toughness grade, welding procedures are considered applicable to the same and one lower strength level as that tested. The approval of quenched and tempered steels does not qualify thermo-mechanically rolled steels (TMCP steels) and vice versa.

- For weldable C and C-Mn steel forgings, welding procedures are applicable to the same and lower strength level as that tested. The approval of quenched and tempered steel forgings does not qualify other delivery conditions and vice versa.
- For weldable C and C-Mn steel castings, welding procedures are applicable to the same and lower strength level as that tested. The approval of quenched and tempered steel castings does not qualify other delivery conditions and vice versa.  
Dissimilar materials. Where a qualification test has been performed using dissimilar materials, acceptance is to be limited to the materials used in the test.

## 2.15.9 Thickness and diameter range:

- For straight butt welds, the material thickness range to be approved is to be based on the thickness of the test piece and the type of weld as shown in Table 12.2.5.
- For butt welds between plates of unequal thickness, the lesser thickness is the ruling dimension.
- For fillet welds and 'T' butt welds, Table 12.2.5 is to be applicable to both the abutting and through member thicknesses. In addition to the requirements of Table 12.2.5, the range of approval of throat thickness 'a' for fillet welds is to be as follows:
  - single run:  $0,75a$  to  $1,5a$
  - multi-run: as for butt welds with multi-run (i.e.  $a = t$ )
- Notwithstanding any of the above, the approval of maximum thickness of base metal for any technique is to be restricted to the thickness of the test assembly if three of the hardness values in the heat affected zone are found to be within 25 Hv of the maximum permitted.
- The material diameter range to be approved is to be based on the diameter of the test piece and type of weld as shown in Table 12.2.6.

## 2.15.10 Welding consumables:

- For manual and semi-automatic welding used for the fill and capping weld runs, it may be acceptable to change the brand or trade name of the welding electrode or wire from that used in the test, provided the proposed alternative has the same or higher approval grading and the same flux type (e.g. basic low hydrogen, rutile, etc.) as used in that test.
- For the consumable used to make the root weld of full penetration butt welds made from one side only, no change in the type or trade name of the consumable or backing material is permitted. Alternative backing materials may be used provided they are equivalent to those used for approval. Where the approved backing material is a low hydrogen grade and the steel being welded requires a low hydrogen backing material, testing of the alternative backing material is to confirm compliance with the requirements of Ch 11,7
- For processes with heat input over 5 kJ/mm, no change in the type or trade name of the consumable is permitted.

**2.15.11 Shielding gas.** For gas shielded welding processes, a change in shielding gas composition from that used in the test will require a new qualification test.

# Welding Qualifications

## Chapter 12

Sections 2 &amp; 3

**Table 12.2.5 Welding procedure thickness approval range – Butt welds**

Test thickness, see Note 1 ( <i>t</i> in mm)	Range approved	
	All multi-run butt welds and all fillet welds see Notes 3 and 4	All single-run or two-run two-run (T technique) butt welds
$t \leq 3$	$t$ to $2t$	$0,7t$ to $1,1t$
$3 < t \leq 12$	$3$ to $2t$	$0,7t$ to $1,1t$
$12 < t \leq 100$	$0,5t$ to $2t$ , see Note 2	$0,7t$ to $1,1t$ see Note 5
$t > 100$	$0,5t$ to $1,5t$	$0,7t$ to $1,1t$ see Note 5
NOTES 1. Where the test plates have dissimilar thickness, the thickness, <i>t</i> , is to be based on the minimum thickness for butt welds and the maximum thickness for fillet welds. 2. Subject to a maximum limit of 150 mm. 3. For multi process procedures, the recorded thickness contribution of each process is to be used as a basis for the range of approval of the individual welding process. 4. For vertical down welding, the test piece thickness, <i>t</i> , is the upper limit of the range of application. 5. For processes with heat input over 5,0 kJ/mm, the upper limit of the range of approval is to be 1,0 <i>t</i> .		

**Table 12.2.6 Diameter range approved**

Diameter used for test, see Note 1	Range of diameters approved
$D \leq 25$ mm	$0,5D$ to $2D$
$D > 25$ mm	$> 0,5D$ , see Note 2
NOTES 1. <i>D</i> is the outside diameter of the pipe or the smallest side dimension of rectangular hollow section. 2. Lower diameter range limited to 25 mm minimum.	

**2.15.12 Heat Input.** The upper limit of heat input approved is 25 per cent greater than that used in the test, or 5,5 kJ/mm, whichever is the smaller. With heat input over 5,0 kJ/mm, the upper limit is 10 per cent above that used in the test. In all cases, the lower limit of heat input approved is 25 per cent lower than that used in the test.

**2.15.13 Current type.** The current type used during the qualification test is to be the only type approved. Additionally, changes from or to pulsed current require new qualification tests.

**2.15.14 Preheat temperature.** The temperature used during the test is to be the minimum approved. Higher temperatures may be specified for production welds up to the maximum interpass temperature. Where hardness tests have been performed that exhibit results near the maximum permitted, an increase in preheat temperature is required when welding material of greater thickness than that used in the test.

**2.15.15 Interpass temperature.** The maximum interpass temperature recorded during qualification testing is to be the maximum approved. Lower temperatures may be specified for production welding, but no lower than the minimum preheat temperature.

**2.15.16 Post-weld heat treatment.** A qualification test performed with no post weld heat treatment is only acceptable for production welding where no heat treatment is applied. Where the qualification test has included a post weld heat treatment, this is to be applied to all welds made with the welding procedure. The average specified soak temperature may vary by up to 25°C from that tested.

**2.15.17 Shop primers.** Welding procedure qualification with shop primers qualifies welds without primer, but not vice versa.

### 2.16 Welding procedure specification (WPS)

**2.16.1** A welding procedure specification (WPS) is to be prepared by the manufacturer detailing the welding conditions and techniques to be employed for production welding. The WPS is to be based on the conditions and variables used during the qualification test, and is to include all the ranges of the essential variables specified in 2.2.1 and 2.15.

**2.16.2** The WPS should reference the procedure qualification record upon which it is based and is to be approved by the Surveyor prior to commencing production welding.

## Section 3 Specific requirements for stainless steels

### 3.1 Scope

**3.1.1** The requirements of this Section relate to the group of steel materials classed as stainless steels and include austenitic and duplex grades and martensitic grades.

**3.1.2** In all cases, welding procedure tests are to be performed generally in accordance with Section 2 with the specific requirements specified below.

### 3.2 Austenitic stainless steels

**3.2.1** The requirements of this Section relate to the group of stainless steel materials that are austenitic at ambient and sub-zero temperatures, (e.g., 304L, 316L types), see Table 3.7.1 in Chapter 3.

**3.2.2** Impact tests are to be performed from specimens removed from the weld metal. Tests in the heat affected zone are not required.

**3.2.3** Hardness tests are generally not required.

# Welding Qualifications

## Chapter 12

Section 3

3.2.4 For cryogenic or corrosion resistant applications, the ferrite content in the weld cap region is to be measured and is to be in the range 2 to 10 per cent, with the exception of grades S 31245 and N 08904 where the content is to be nominally zero.

3.2.5 A qualification test performed on an austenitic grade may be considered acceptable for welding other austenitic steels with the same or lower level of alloying elements and the same or lower tensile strength.

3.2.6 A qualification test performed for cryogenic applications may be considered acceptable for chemical applications, but not vice versa.

### 3.3 Duplex stainless steels

3.3.1 The requirements of this Section relate to the group of stainless steel materials that have a ferritic-austenitic structure and are usually referred to as duplex or super duplex stainless steels (e.g., S 31803, S 32760).

3.3.2 Impact test specimens are to be removed from the weld and heat affected zone in accordance with Section 2 with the exception that impact test specimens notched at the FL + 10 mm location are not required. The specimens are to be tested at a temperature of  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  or the minimum design temperature whichever is the lower and exhibit a minimum average energy of 40 J.

3.3.3 The corrosion resistance is to be maintained in the welded condition and the following tests are to be performed to demonstrate acceptable resistance, unless agreed otherwise.

- (a) A sample is to be removed from the weld and heat affected zone for micro-structural examination and is to be suitably prepared and etched so that the micro-structures of the weld and heat affected zones can be examined at a magnification of x200 or higher. The micro-structure of the weld and heat affected zone is to be examined, the percentage grain boundary carbides and intermetallic precipitates is to be reported.
- (b) The ferrite content in the un-reheated weld cap and cap HAZ along with the weld root and root HAZ are to be measured and reported. The ferrite content is to be in accordance with Table 12.3.1. Where the intended construction is such that the corrosion medium is only in contact with one surface of the weld (i.e., the weld root), the ferrite determination need only be reported in that surface area.
- (c) Corrosion testing is to be performed on samples removed from the weld such that both the weld and HAZ are included in the test. The critical pitting temperature is to be determined in accordance with ASTM G48 Method C and meet the requirements specified in Table 12.3.1. The cap and root surfaces are to be inspected for evidence of pitting and may require probing the surface with a needle. Pitting found on the ends of the specimen in the weld cross-section may be ignored. The use of the weight loss method for corrosion testing may be accepted subject to special consideration.

**Table 12.3.1 Requirements for ferrite content and corrosion tests for duplex stainless steel test welds**

Duplex Stainless Steel Material Grade	Weld and HAZ Ferrite content	Minimum Critical Pitting Temperature (CPT)
S 31260	30 to 70%	20°C
S 31803	30 to 70%	20°C
S 32550	35 to 65%	25°C
S 32750	35 to 65%	25°C
S 32760	35 to 65%	25°C

3.3.4 Where the test weld is between a grade of carbon steel and duplex stainless steel, the test requirements of 3.3.3(a) and (c) are not required and the ferrite content of the weld and the duplex heat affected zone are to be reported for information.

3.3.5 A qualification test performed on a duplex stainless steel grade may be considered acceptable for welding other duplex grades which have the same or less stringent mechanical or corrosion properties.

3.3.6 The range of heat input is not to vary by more than +10 per cent or -25 per cent from that used during testing.

### 3.4 Martensitic stainless steels

3.4.1 The requirements of this Section relate to the group of stainless steel materials that have a martensitic structure at ambient temperatures, see Table 4.5.1 in Chapter 4.

3.4.2 The results of the hardness survey results are to be reported for information purposes only.

3.4.3 A qualification test is considered acceptable only for the grade of material used in the test.

# Welding Qualifications

## Chapter 12

### Section 4

#### Section 4 Welding procedure tests for non-ferrous alloys

##### 4.1 Requirements for aluminium alloys

4.1.1 The requirements for welding procedure qualification tests for aluminium alloys are to be in accordance with the general requirements of Section 2 with the following exceptions and specific requirements.

4.1.2 Non-destructive examination is to be performed in accordance with 2.5 and the assessment of results is to be in accordance with Table 12.4.1 and Table 12.4.2.

4.1.3 Acceptance of the mechanical tests is to be in accordance with Ch 11.9. Welding of the strain hardened and heat treatable aluminium alloys will generally result in a loss of tensile strength in the heat affected zone below that specified for the base materials and the tensile strength acceptance criteria to be applied is that specified for the material in the annealed or 'as fabricated' condition. Minimum values of tensile strength measured on the transverse tensile samples are given in Table 12.4.3.

4.1.4 Impact tests and hardness surveys are not required for aluminium alloys.

4.1.5 Four side bend tests may be used in place of root and face bends where the test thickness exceeds 12 mm, and longitudinal bend tests may be used instead of transverse tests where the test weld is between different grades of alloy. Bend specimens are to be bent round a former in accordance with Table 11.9.1 in Chapter 11, with the exception that the 6000 series alloys may be bent round a former with  $D/t = 7$ .

4.1.6 The ranges of approval to be applied to the WPS are to be as specified for steel in 2.15 with the following exceptions:

- The welding positions approved are as detailed in Table 12.4.4.
- The aluminium alloys are grouped into three groups as follows:
  - Group A: aluminium-magnesium alloys, with Mg content  $\leq 3,5$  per cent (alloy 5754).
  - Group B: aluminium-magnesium alloys with 4 per cent  $\leq \text{Mg} \leq 5,6$  per cent (alloys 5059, 5083, 5086, 5383 and 5456).
  - Group C: aluminium-magnesium-silicon alloys (alloys 6005A, 6061 and 6082). For each group, the qualification made on one alloy qualifies the procedure also for the other alloys in the group, with equal or lower tensile strength after welding. The qualification made on group B alloys qualifies the procedure for Group A alloys also. Approval for the range of material grades is summarised in Table 12.4.5.

**Table 12.4.1 Acceptance criteria for surface imperfections of aluminium alloys**

Surface discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria
Crack	100	Not permitted
Lack of fusion	401	Not permitted
Incomplete root penetration in butt joints welded from one side	4021	Not permitted
Surface pore	2017	$d \leq 0,1s$ or $0,1a$ max. 1,0 mm
Uniformly distributed porosity (see Note 1)	2012	$\leq 0,5\%$ of area
Clustered porosity	2013	Not permitted
Continuous undercut	5011	Not permitted
Intermittent undercut	5012	$h \leq 0,1t$ or 0,5 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Excess weld metal (see Note 2)	502	$h \leq 1,5 \text{ mm} + 0,1b$ or 6 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Excess penetration	504	$h \leq 4 \text{ mm}$
Root concavity (see Note 2)	515	$h \leq 0,05t$ or 0,5 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Linear misalignment (see Notes 3 and 4)	507	$h \leq 0,2t$ or 2,0 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Symbols		
$a$ = nominal throat thickness of a fillet weld $b$ = width of weld reinforcement $d$ = diameter of a gas pore $h$ = height or width of an imperfection $s$ = nominal butt weld thickness $t$ = wall or plate thickness (nominal size)		
NOTES 1. To be in accordance with EN ISO 10042. 2. A smooth transition is required. 3. The limits for linear misalignment relate to deviations from the correct position. Unless otherwise specified, the correct position is to be taken when the centrelines coincide. 4. Dimensional tolerances not specified in these Rules are to be mutually agreed between the manufacturer and the Surveyor.		



# Welding Qualifications

# Chapter 12

Section 4

**Table 12.4.2 Acceptance criteria for internal imperfections of aluminium alloys**

Internal discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria
Crack	100	Not permitted
Lack of fusion	401	Not permitted
Incomplete penetration	402	Not permitted
Single gas pore	2011	$d \leq 0,2s$ or $0,2a$ or 4 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Linear porosity (see Note 2)	2014	Not permitted
Uniformly distributed porosity (see Note 2)	2012	$0,5t$ to $3t \leq 1\%$ of area $> 3t$ to $12t \leq 2\%$ of area $> 12t$ to $30t \leq 3\%$ of area $> 30t \leq 4\%$ of area
Clustered porosity (see Note 1)	2013	$dA \leq 15$ mm or $wp$ (whichever is the lesser)
Elongated cavity	2015	$l \leq 0,2s$ or $0,2a$ or 3 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Wormhole	2016	
Oxide inclusion (see Note 2)	303	$l \leq 0,2s$ or $0,2a$ or 3 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Tungsten inclusion	3041	$l \leq 0,2s$ or $0,2a$ or 3 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Copper inclusion	3042	Not permitted
Multiple imperfections in any cross-section	—	The sum of the acceptable individual imperfections in any cross-section is not to exceed $0,2t$ or $0,2a$ (whichever is the lesser)
Symbols		
$a$ = nominal throat thickness of a fillet weld $d$ = diameter of a gas pore $h$ = height or width of an imperfection $s$ = nominal butt weld thickness $t$ = wall or plate thickness (nominal size), in mm $wp$ = width of weld or width or height of cross-sectional area $dA$ = diameter of area surrounding gas pores $l$ = length of imperfection in longitudinal direction of weld		
NOTES 1. For this acceptance criterion, linear porosity is to be considered as three aligned gas pores in a length of 25 mm. 2. Porosity is to be determined in accordance with ISO 10042. The requirements for a single gas pore are to be met by all the gas pores within this circle. Systematic clustered porosity is not permitted.		

**Table 12.4.3 Tensile strength requirements by grade for aluminium alloys**

Parent material Grade (alloy designation)	Minimum tensile strength (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )
5754	190
5086	240
5083	275
5383	290
5059	330
5456	290
6005A	170
6061	170
6082	170

- (c) The qualification of a procedure carried out on a test assembly of thickness  $t$  is valid for the thickness range given in Table 12.4.6. In the case of butt joints between dissimilar thicknesses,  $t$  is the thickness of the thinner material. In the case of fillet joints between dissimilar thicknesses,  $t$  is the thickness of the thicker material. In addition to the requirements of Table 12.4.6, the range of the qualification of throat thickness of fillet welds,  $a$ , is given in Table 12.4.7. Where a fillet weld is qualified by a

**Table 12.4.4 Welding procedure approval, welding positions for aluminium alloys**

Test position		Positions approved
Downhand	D	D
Horizontal-vertical	X	D, X
Vertical up	Vu	D, X, Vu
Overhead	O	D, X, Vu and O
NOTE Welding in vertical down (Vd) position is not recommended.		

butt weld test, the throat thickness range qualified is to be based on the thickness of the deposited weld metal.

- (d) The range of shielding gas compositions approved is to be in accordance with Table 11.9.2 in Chapter 11.
- (e) A change in the brand or trade name of the filler metal from that used in the test is acceptable, provided that the proposed consumable has the same or higher strength grading.
- (f) A change in post-weld heat treatment or ageing is not permitted, except that for the heat treatable alloys, artificial ageing may give approval for prolonged natural ageing.

# Welding Qualifications

## Chapter 12

### Section 4

**Table 12.4.5 Welding procedure approval, aluminium material grades approved**

Material used in qualification test	Material Grades approved				
5754	5754				
5086	5086	5754			
5083	5083	5086	5754		
5383	5383	5083	5086	5754	
5059	5059	5383	5083	5086	5754
5456	5456	5383	5083	5086	5754
6005A	6005A	6082	6061		
6082	6005A	6082	6061		
6061	6005A	6082	6061		
NOTE Approval includes all the different strained and tempered conditions in each case.					

**Table 12.4.6 Range of qualification for parent material thickness**

Thickness of test assembly, $t$ (mm)	Range of qualification Multi pass welds	Range of qualification All single-run or two-run (T technique) butt welds
$t \leq 3$	0,5 to $2t$	$0,5t$ to $1,1t$
$3 < t \leq 20$	3 to $2t$	$0,5t$ to $1,1t$
$t > 20$	$\geq 0,8t$	$0,5t$ to $1,1t$

**Table 12.4.7 Range of qualification of throat thickness for fillet welds**

Throat thickness of test piece, $a$ (mm)	Range of qualification
$a < 10$	0,75 $a$ to 1,5 $a$
$a \geq 10$	$\geq 7,5$

**Table 12.4.8 Minimum transverse tensile strengths for welded copper alloy propellers**

Alloy designation	Minimum tensile strength (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )
CU 1	370
CU 2	410
CU 3	500
CU 4	550

## 4.2 Requirements for copper alloys

4.2.1 The requirements for welding procedure qualification tests for copper alloys are to be in accordance with the requirements for steel as given in Section 2 with the following exceptions and additions.

4.2.2 Impact tests on copper alloys are not required.

4.2.3 Hardness tests are not required for seawater service.

4.2.4 For the welding of cast copper alloys for propellers, the minimum tensile strength from the transverse tensile test is to be in accordance with Table 12.4.8.

4.2.5 Bend tests are to be performed over a diameter of former as detailed in Table 12.4.9.

4.2.6 The range of approval to be applied to the WPS is to be as specified in 2.15 with the exception of the material grades which are detailed in Table 12.4.10.

# Welding Qualifications

## Chapter 12

### Section 4

**Table 12.4.9 Former diameters for bend testing of copper alloy welds**

Alloy designation (see Chapter 9)	Former diameter (D/t)
Cast propellers: CU1 CU2 CU3 CU4	4 4 6, see Note 6, see Note
Other short freezing range castings: Copper-Nickel 90/10 Copper-Nickel 70/30 Aluminium bronze	4 4 6
Wrought alloys (tubes and pipes): Copper-phosphorus Aluminium-brass 90/10 Copper-nickel-iron 70/30 Copper-nickel-iron	3 3 3 3
NOTE Where the qualification tests for these alloys are subjected to post-weld heat treatment the former diameter may be increased to $D/t = 10$ .	

**Table 12.4.10 Range of approval for copper alloy material grades**

Category	Alloy grade used in the qualification test	Alloy grades approved
Propellers	CU1 CU2 CU3 CU4	CU1 CU1 and CU2 CU1, CU2 and CU3 CU4 see Note 1
Tubes/pipes	90/10 Copper-Nickel-Iron 70/30 Copper-Nickel-Iron	90/10 Copper-Nickel-Iron 70/30 Copper-Nickel-Iron and 90/10 Copper-Nickel-Iron
Tubes/pipes see Note 2	Copper-Phosphorus deoxidised – arsenical Copper-Phosphorus deoxidised – non arsenical Aluminium-brass	Copper-Phosphorus deoxidised – arsenical Copper-Phosphorus deoxidised – non arsenical Aluminium-brass
NOTES 1. Where a CU3 type welding consumable has been used for the qualification test, the range of approval may also include welding of CU3. 2. These grades have limited weldability and approval to weld is subject to the materials satisfying the requirements of Table 9.3.1 in Chapter 9.		



## Section 5 Welder qualification tests

### 5.1 Scope

5.1.1 The requirements of this Section relate to qualification of welders involved in welded construction associated with ships, or other marine structures, and products or components intended for use on or in these structures.

5.1.2 The requirements relate to fusion welding processes that are designated as manual, semi-automatic or partly mechanised. Special consideration will be given to other welding processes adapted from these requirements.

5.1.3 Prior to commencing production welding, the welder is to have performed a qualification test that satisfies these requirements. It is the responsibility of the manufacturer to ensure that the welder possesses the required level of skill for the work to be undertaken.

5.1.4 The qualification of welders is to be documented by the manufacturer and the records are to be available for review by the Surveyor.

5.1.5 Welder qualification tests made in accordance with EN, ISO, JIS, ASME or AWS may be considered for acceptance provided that, as a minimum, they are equivalent to, and meet the technical intent of these Rules to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

### 5.2 Welder qualification test assemblies

5.2.1 The welding of the welder qualification test assembly is to simulate, as far as practicable, the conditions to be experienced in production and be witnessed by the Surveyor. The test is to be carried out on a test assembly piece and not by way of production welding.

5.2.2 The test is to simulate, as far as practicable, the welding techniques and practices to be encountered during production welding. The test assembly is to be designed to test the skill of the welder and have the shape and dimensions appropriate to the range of approval required.

5.2.3 The inspection length of the test weld is to be such as to permit the removal of all the necessary test specimens and for plate tests, but in no case is to be less than 250 mm. The test assembly is to be set in one of the positions as shown in Fig. 12.2.2 appropriate to the welding positions to be approved.

5.2.4 A welding procedure specification (WPS) is required for the execution of the qualification test and is to include the information specified in 2.2.1, as a minimum.

5.2.5 The test assembly is to be marked with a unique identification and the inspection length is to be identified prior to commencing welding. For pipe welds, the whole circumference is to be considered as the inspection length.

5.2.6 During welding of the test assembly, the welding time is to be similar to that expected under production conditions. For manual or semi-automatic processes, at least one stop and re-start in the root and in the top surface layer is to be included in the inspection length and marked for future inspection.

5.2.7 During welding of the test assembly, minor imperfections may be removed by the welder by any method that is used in production, except on the surface layer.

5.2.8 The Surveyor may stop the test if the welding conditions are not correct or if there is any doubt about the competence of the welder to achieve the required standard.

### 5.3 Examination and testing

5.3.1 Each completed test weld is to be examined and tested in accordance with the requirements of Table 12.5.1.

5.3.2 Visual examination is to be performed in the as welded state prior to any other assessment.

5.3.3 For plate butt welds, fracture testing may be used in place of radiography.

5.3.4 Where a backing strip has been used, it is to be retained for non-destructive examinations, but is to be removed prior to performing any bend or fracture tests.

5.3.5 Where fracture tests are required, they are to sample as much of the inspection length as practicable and the test assembly may be cut into several test specimens to achieve this. Testing is to be performed as shown in Figs. 12.5.1(a) or 12.5.1(b).

5.3.6 For butt weld tests in aluminium alloys both radiography and bend tests are required.

5.3.7 When bend tests are required, 2 root and 2 face bends are to be tested and where the test thickness exceeds 12 mm, these may be substituted by 4 side bends specimens. The diameter of former to be used is to be in accordance with that specified for welding procedure qualification testing given in 2.7.6(a).

5.3.8 Where macro examination is required, the specimen is to be polished and etched to reveal the weld runs and heat affected zones, and be examined at a magnification between x5 and x10.

### 5.4 Acceptance criteria

5.4.1 The acceptance criteria are to be in accordance with 2.5.5.

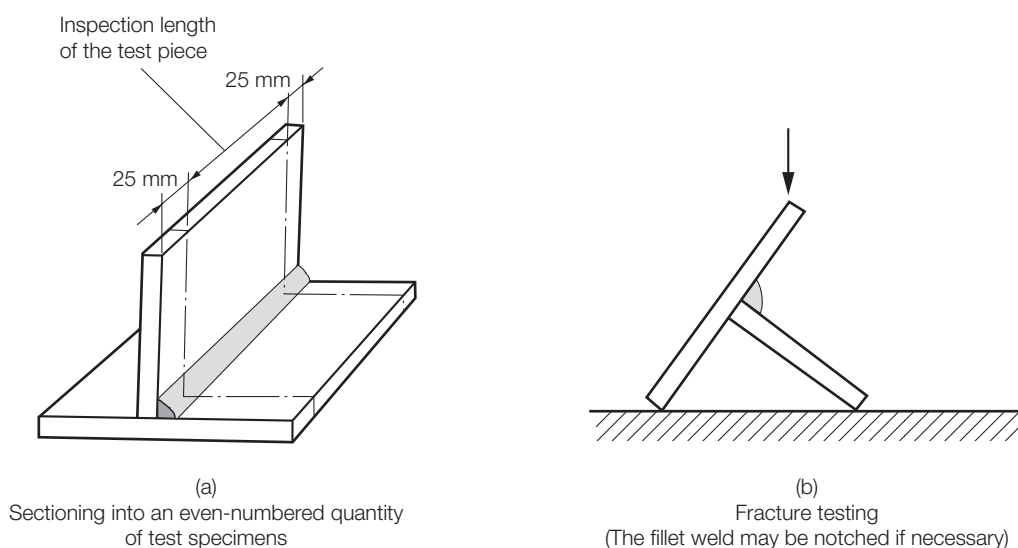
5.4.2 Fracture tests and macro-sections are to be assessed in accordance with the non-destructive examination acceptance criteria.

**Table 12.5.1 Welder qualification test requirements**

Examination type	Butt welds	Fillet welds	Pipe branch welds
Visual	100%	100%	100%
Surface crack detection	See Note 1	100%	100%
Radiography	100% See Notes 2 and 6	Not required	Not required
Bend tests	4 required See Notes 3 and 6	Not required	Not required
Fracture tests	Not required	1 required See Note 4	Not required
Macro	Not required	1 required See Note 4	4 required See Note 5

**NOTES**

1. Surface crack detection examination may be required by the Surveyor in order to clarify the acceptability of any weld feature.
2. Radiography may be replaced by ultrasonic examination for carbon and low alloy steels where the thickness exceeds 8 mm.
3. Bend tests are required for gas metal arc welding with solid wire (GMAW) and oxy-acetylene welding.
4. The fracture test may be replaced with 4 macro sections equally spaced along the inspection length.
5. Macro-sections are to be separated by 90° measured around the abutting pipe member.
6. Radiography and bend tests are required for tests in aluminium alloys.



4607/41

**Fig. 12.5.1(a) Preparation and fracture testing of test specimens for a fillet weld in plate**

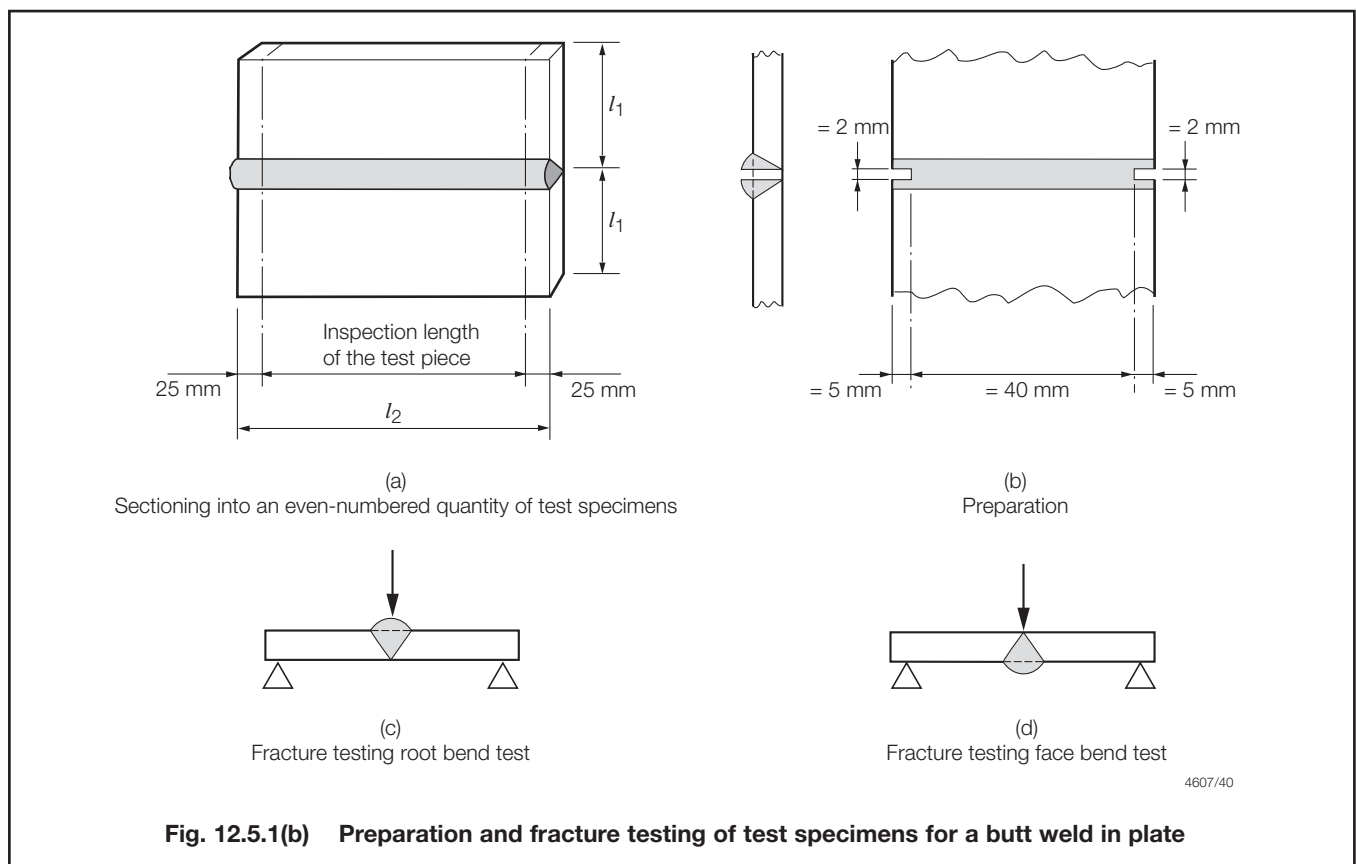
5.4.3 Bend tests are considered acceptable if after bending through an angle of at least 180°, there are no defects on the tension side of the specimen greater than 3 mm in any direction.

**5.5 Failure to meet requirements**

5.5.1 Where a macro-section fails to meet requirements, one additional specimen may be removed from the test assembly and examined.

5.5.2 Where a bend or fracture test specimen fails to meet requirements, two additional specimens may be prepared from the same test assembly. If there is insufficient material, the welder may be permitted to weld an additional assembly to the same WPS, at the discretion of the Surveyor.

5.5.3 Where any of the additional test specimens fails to satisfy the requirements, the test will be considered as not meeting the requirements.



5.5.4 Where a test fails to comply with the acceptance criteria, the welder may be permitted to weld a second test piece. If this does not meet requirements, the welder is to be considered as not being capable of achieving the requirements.

## 5.6 Range of approval

5.6.1 Upon successful completion of all the necessary examinations and tests, the welder is to be considered qualified. The essential variables and the range of welding conditions for which the welder is considered approved are specified in the following paragraphs.

5.6.2 Welding variables such as preheat, interpass temperature, heat input and current type are not considered welder qualification variables. However, if the WPS used for testing specify these, they are to be included in the test and the welder is expected to follow the specific instructions.

5.6.3 Where the WPS used for the welder qualification test specifies post weld heat treatment, this need not be applied to the test weld unless bend tests are required and the material exhibits low ductility in the as welded condition.

5.6.4 The qualification test performed by a manufacturer is only applicable to workshops under the same technical control and quality system as that used for the test.

5.6.5 The welding process used in the qualification test is the process approved. However, it is possible for the welder to

use more than one process in the test and the range of approval that may be applied to each will be within the limits of the essential variables appropriate to the part of the test where each welding process was used.

5.6.6 Material types are to be grouped as shown in Table 12.5.2 for welder qualifications. A qualification test performed on one material from a group will permit welding of all other materials within the same group. In addition, qualification on one group of materials may confer approval to weld other groups as shown in Table 12.5.3.

5.6.7 A qualification test performed on one thickness will confer approval to weld other thicknesses as specified in Table 12.5.4. Where welding is required between materials of different thickness, the reference thickness for approval purposes is to be the lesser thickness.

5.6.8 A qualification test performed on plate confers approval to weld on pipes having an outside diameter greater than 500 mm in a fixed position (see Table 12.5.5 and Table 12.5.6).

5.6.9 A qualification test performed using a specific diameter of pipe will give approval to weld other diameters as shown in Table 12.5.5. For branch welds, the diameter upon which approval is based is to be the branch member.

5.6.10 A qualification test performed on a butt weld may be considered as giving approval for fillet welds.

# Welding Qualifications

# Chapter 12

Section 5

**Table 12.5.2 Welder qualification materials groupings**

Material group	Material description	Typical LR Grades	Rules for Material references
WQ 01	Low carbon unalloyed, C/Mn, or Low alloyed steels ( $Re \leq 360 \text{ N/mm}^2$ )	A, B, D and E AH to FH32 and 36 Boiler 510FG and lower LT-AH to FH32 and 36 U1 and U2 Steel castings Steel pipes	Ch 3,2 Ch 3,3 Ch 3,4 Ch 3,6 Ch 3,9 and Ch 10 Ch 4,2, 3, 6 and 7 Ch 6,2, 3, 4 and 6
WQ 02	Cr-Mo, or Cr-Mo-V creep resisting steels	13CrMo45 and 11CrMo910 1Cr $\frac{1}{2}$ Mo and 2 $\frac{1}{4}$ Cr1Mo $\frac{1}{2}$ Cr $\frac{1}{2}$ Mo $\frac{1}{4}$ V	Ch 3,4 Ch 4,6 and Ch 6,2, 3 and 6 Ch 4,6 and Ch 6,2
WQ 03	High strength fine grained, Normalised or quenched, or Tempered structural steels (2,0 – 5% Ni, with $Re > 360 \text{ N/mm}^2$ )	AH to FH40 to 69 LT-AH to LT-FH40 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ , 3 $\frac{1}{2}$ Ni steels and castings U3, R3, R3S and R4	Ch 3,3 and 10 Ch 3,6 Ch 3,6, Ch 4,7 and Ch 6,4 Ch 3,9 and Ch 10
WQ 04	Ferritic, or martensitic stainless steels (12 to 20% Cr)	13% Cr (martensitic)	Ch 4,5 (martensitic)
WQ 05	Ferritic low temperature steels	5Ni and 9Ni	Ch 3,6
WQ 011	Ferritic-austenitic stainless steels, Austenitic stainless steels, or Cr-Ni steels	304, 316, 317, 321 and 347 S31260, S31803, S32550 and S32750	Ch 3,7 and 8 Ch 4,8 and Ch 6,5
WQ 22a	Aluminium alloy – Non-heat treatable Mg < 3,5%	5754	Chapter 8
WQ 22b	Aluminium alloy – Non-heat treatable 3,5% < Mg < 5,6%	5083 and 5086	Chapter 8
WQ 23	Aluminium alloy – Heat treatable	6005-A, 6061 and 6082	Chapter 8
WQ 30	Copper alloys for propellers – Manganese bronze	Cu1	Ch 9,1
WQ 31	Copper alloys for propellers – Nickel-manganese bronze	Cu2	Ch 9,1
WQ 32	Copper alloys for propellers – Nickel-aluminium bronze	Cu3	Ch 9,1
WQ 33	Copper alloys for propellers – Manganese-aluminium bronze	Cu4	Ch 9,1
WQ 34	Copper alloys for tubes – Copper phosphorus	Deoxidised – non-arsenical and arsenical	Ch 9,3
WQ 35	Copper alloys for tubes – Aluminium brass	Aluminium brass	Ch 9,3
WQ 36	Copper alloys for tubes – Copper-nickel-iron	70/30 Cu/Ni and 90/10 Cu/Ni	Ch 9,3

5.6.11 A butt qualification test welded from one side, with the root unsupported (i.e., no backing), will give approval for welds made from both sides with or without back gouging or grinding, but not vice versa.

5.6.12 A qualification test performed in one position will give approval to weld in other positions as shown in Table 12.5.6.

5.6.13 For manual metal arc welding with covered electrodes, a qualification test performed using an electrode with one type of coating will only be approved for welding with that type of coating. However, a qualification test performed using a basic low hydrogen type coating will confer approval to use electrodes with rutile coatings.

# Welding Qualifications

## Chapter 12

### Section 5

**Table 12.5.3 Welder qualification, range of approval for material groups**

Material group used for testing	Material groups approved to weld			
WQ 01	WQ 01			
WQ 02	WQ 01	WQ 02		
WQ 03	WQ 01	WQ 02	WQ 03	
WQ 04	WQ 01	WQ 02	WQ 04	
WQ 05	WQ 05			
WQ 11	WQ 11	WQ 05, see Note	WQ 04, see Note	
WQ 22a	WQ 22a	WQ 22b		
WQ 22b	WQ 22a	WQ 22b		
WQ 23	WQ 22a	WQ 22b	WQ 23	
WQ 30	WQ 30	WQ 31	WQ 32	WQ 33
WQ 31	WQ 30	WQ 31	WQ 32	WQ 33
WQ 32	WQ 30	WQ 31	WQ 32	WQ 33
WQ 33	WQ 30	WQ 31	WQ 32	WQ 33
WQ 34	WQ 34	WQ 35		
WQ 35	WQ 34	WQ 35		
WQ 36	WQ 36			
NOTE Provided an austenitic welding consumable compatible with material group WQ 11 is used.				

**Table 12.5.4 Welder qualification, range of approval for material thickness**

Material type	Test piece thickness (mm)	Range approved, see Note (mm)
Steel and copper alloys	$t \leq 3$ $3 < t \leq 12$ $t > 12$	$t$ to $2t$ $3,0$ to $2t$ $\geq 5,0$
Aluminium alloys	$t \leq 6$ $6 < t \leq 15$ $t > 40$ mm	$0,7$ to $2,5t$ $6,0 < t \leq 40,0$ $41$ to $2t$
NOTE For oxy-acetylene welding the maximum thickness is limited to $1,5 t$ .		

**Table 12.5.5 Welder qualification, diameter range of approval for pipes and hollow sections**

Material type	Test piece diameter (mm)	Range approved (mm)
Steel and copper alloys	$D \leq 25$ $25 < D \leq 150$ $D > 150$ Plate, see Note 2	$D$ to $2D$ $0,5D$ to $2D$ , see Note 1 $\geq 0,5D$ $\geq 500$
Aluminium alloys	$D \leq 125$ $D > 125$ Plate, see Note 2	$0,25D$ to $2D$ $\geq 0,5D$ $\geq 500$
NOTES 1. Subject to 25 mm minimum diameter. 2. Plate qualification will approve welding on pipes greater than 150 mm diameter when the pipe is rotated.		

# Welding Qualifications

## Chapter 12

Section 5

**Table 12.5.6 Welding position ranges for welder qualification**

Test weld conditions		Positions qualified			
Type of weld	Test position	Plate		Pipe, see Note 1	
		Butt weld	Fillet weld	Butt weld	Fillet weld
Plate butt, see Note 5	D	D	D	D	D
	X	D,X	D, X	D	D, X
	Vu	D, Vu	D, X, Vu	D	D, Vu
	Vd	Vd	Vd	—	—
	O	D, X, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O	D	D, X, Vu, O
Plate Fillet, see Note 5	D	—	D	—	D
	X	—	D, X	—	D, X
	Vu	—	D, X, Vu	—	D, X, Vu
	Vd	—	Vd	—	—
	O	—	D, X, Vu, O	—	D, X, Vu, O
Pipe butt	D	D	D, X	D	D, X
	X	D, X	D, X	D, X	D, X
	D+Vu+O, see Note 3	D, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O	D, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O
	D+Vd+O, see Notes 2 and 3	Vd	Vd	Vd	Vd
	Axis at 45°, see Note 4, Travel Vu	D, X, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O	D, X, Vu, O
	Axis at 45°, see Notes 2, 3 and 4, Travel Vd	Vd	Vd	Vd	Vd
Pipe fillet	D	—	D	—	D
	X	—	D, X	—	D, X
	D+Vu+O see Note 3	—	D, X, Vu, O	—	D, X, Vu, O
	D+Vd+O see Note 3	—	Vd	—	Vd

**NOTES**

1. Pipe D position means pipe in horizontal position and rotated, see Fig. 12.2.2(b) and Fig. 12.2.2(d).
2. Vd position not usually recommended for pipe welds less than 500 mm diameter.
3. Pipe fixed with axis in the horizontal position (e.g. ASME 5G).
4. Pipe fixed with axis at 45° to the horizontal (e.g. ASME 6G).
5. Plate qualification tests confers approval to weld pipes with diameter greater than 500 mm.

5.6.14 For gas shielded welding processes that use a single component shielding gas, no change to the gas composition is permitted from that tested. Where the test has used a two component shielding gas, a change in the ratio of component gases is permitted, provided that one of the components is not reduced to zero. Where the test has used a three component shielding gas, changes are permitted in the ratio of component gases and the gas with the smallest ratio may be reduced to zero, provided this does not change the shielding gas from an active one to an inert one or vice versa. In addition, where a change in shielding gas composition requires a different welding method or technique to be employed, a new qualification test will be required.

5.6.15 A change of welding flux from that used for the test is permitted.

## **5.7 Welders qualification certification**

5.7.1 All the relevant conditions used during the test are to be entered on the welder's qualification certificate along with the permitted range of approval.

5.7.2 If the Surveyor is satisfied that the welder has demonstrated the appropriate level of skill and all tests are satisfactory, the Surveyor will endorse the certificate verifying that the details contained on it are correct and that the test welds were prepared, welded and tested in accordance with the specified Rules, Codes or Standards.

5.7.3 The welder is considered to be approved for an initial validity period of 2 years. The welder is considered to have retained the qualification subject to the manufacturer confirming every 6 months that the welder has used the welding process with acceptable performance in the preceding 6 months.

5.7.4 After 2 years, the Surveyor may extend the validity of the approval for another period of two years provided that records or documented evidence is made available confirming acceptable welding performance, within the original range of approval, without a break exceeding 6 months. The Surveyor will signify acceptance of the extension to the validity by endorsing the certificate.

5.7.5 Where there is any reason to question the welder's ability, or there is a lack of continuity in the use of the welding process, or insufficient recorded evidence of acceptable weld performance, the welder is to perform a new qualification test.

5.7.6 Where the manufacturer has existing welders that have previously performed qualification tests, these may be considered for acceptance provided they satisfy the above requirements and the tests have been performed in the presence of an independent examiner that is acceptable to the Society.

5.7.7 Notwithstanding the above, the Surveyor may at any time request a review of a welder's qualification records. If there is any reason for doubt concerning the skill of the welder, the Surveyor may withdraw the qualification and require a re-qualification test to be performed.





# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General welding requirements**
- 2 **Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery**
- 3 **Specific requirements for fabricated steel sections**
- 4 **Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels**
- 5 **Specific requirements for pressure pipework**
- 6 **Repair of existing ships by welding**
- 7 **Austenitic and duplex stainless steel – Specific requirements**
- 8 **Specific requirements for welded aluminium**

## ■ Section 1 General welding requirements

### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 This Chapter specifies requirements for fabrication and welding during construction and repair of ships or other marine structures, and their associated pressure vessels, machinery, equipment, components and products intended for use in these structures.

1.1.2 The requirements relate to fusion welding. Special consideration will be given to the use of other welding processes based on these requirements.

1.1.3 It is the responsibility of the manufacturer to ensure compliance with all aspects of these Rules and inform the Surveyor of any deviations that have occurred. All deviations are to be recorded as non-compliances along with the corrective actions taken and failure to do this is considered to render the fabrication to be in non-compliance with the Rules.

1.1.4 Welded constructions that comply with National or International specifications may be accepted to the satisfaction of the surveyor, provided that these specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Chapter.

1.1.5 All welded construction is to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

### 1.2 Design

1.2.1 Prior to commencing any work, the component to be manufactured is to be subjected to design review and approval in accordance with the Rule requirements.

1.2.2 The material characteristics that are affected by welding, particularly the loss of strength (e.g., in precipitation or strain hardened aluminium alloys) are to be considered in the design. The weld joints in such materials are to be arranged such that they are in areas of lower stress.

### 1.3 Materials

1.3.1 Materials used in welded construction are to be manufactured at works approved by LR. The use of materials from alternative sources will be subject to agreement of the Surveyor and satisfactory verification testing.

1.3.2 Materials are to be supplied and certified in accordance with the requirements of Chapters 1 to 10 of these Rules.

1.3.3 Materials used in welded construction are to be readily weldable and are to have proven weldability, unless requirements are agreed with LR in advance.

1.3.4 Where the construction details are such that materials are subject to through-thickness strains, consideration is to be given to using material with specified through-thickness properties as specified in Ch 3,8.

1.3.5 When ordering materials for construction, consideration is to be taken of the possible degradation of properties during fabrication or post-weld heat treatment. Where these materials are used, consideration is to be given to additional test requirements being specified to the supplier.

1.3.6 The identity of materials is to be established by way of markings etc, during fabrication, so that traceability to the original manufacturer's certificate is maintained.

1.3.7 Pre-fabrication shop primers may be applied prior to welding, provided that they are of an approved type and have been tested to demonstrate that they have no deleterious effects on the completed weld.

1.3.8 Where it is proposed to weld forgings and/or castings, full details of the joint details, welding procedures and post-weld heat treatments are to be submitted for consideration.

### 1.4 Requirements for manufacture and workmanship

1.4.1 The welding workshops are to be assessed by the Surveyor for their capability to produce work of the required quality in accordance with the requirements specified for the type of construction, see Sections 2 to 5.

1.4.2 Where structural components are to be assembled and welded in works sub-contracted by the builder, the Surveyor is to inspect the sub-contractor's works to ensure that compliance with the requirements of this Chapter is achieved.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Section 1

1.4.3 The manufacturer is to provide a system of regular supervision of all welding, by suitably qualified and experienced personnel.

1.4.4 Welding is to be performed in covered workshops as far as practicable. Where this is not possible, provision is to be made in the welding area to give adequate protection from wind, rain and cold, etc.

1.4.5 Where required, arrangements are to be such as to permit adequate ventilation and access for preheating, and for the satisfactory completion of all welding operations.

1.4.6 The location of welding connections and sequences of welding are to be arranged to minimise distortion and the build up of residual stresses. Welded joints are to be so arranged as to facilitate the use of downhand welding wherever possible.

1.4.7 In the case of repairs to existing structures or components, care is to be exercised when attaching fit-up aids by welding to ensure that the base materials in way of the attachments are of weldable quality.

1.4.8 In order to prevent cross-contamination of different material types, the welding of carbon steel materials is to be in areas segregated from that used for either austenitic or non-ferrous materials, see Section 7.

## 1.5 Cutting of materials

1.5.1 Materials may be cut to the required dimensions by thermal means, shearing or machining in accordance with the manufacturing drawings or specifications.

1.5.2 Cold shearing is not to be used on materials in excess of 25 mm thick. Where used, the cut edges that are to remain un-welded are to be cut back by machining or grinding for a minimum distance of 3 mm.

1.5.3 Material, which has been thermally cut, is to be free from excessive oxides, scale and notches.

1.5.4 All cut edges are to be examined to ensure freedom from material and/or cutting defects. Visual examination may be supplemented by other techniques.

1.5.5 Thermal cutting of alloy and high carbon steels may require the application of preheat, and special examination of these cut edges will be required to ensure no cracking. In these cases, the cut edge is to be machined or ground back a distance of at least 2 mm, unless it has been demonstrated that the cutting process has not damaged the material.

1.5.6 Any material damaged in the process of cutting is to be removed by machining, grinding or chipping back to sound metal. Weld repair may only be performed with the agreement of the Surveyor.

## 1.6 Forming and bending

1.6.1 Plates, pipes, etc., may be formed to the required shape by any process which does not impair the quality of the material.

1.6.2 Where hot forming is employed or during cold forming where the material is subjected to a permanent strain exceeding 10 per cent or formed to a diameter to thickness ratio less than 10, tests are required to be performed to demonstrate that the material properties remain acceptable.

1.6.3 As far as practicable, forming is to be performed by the application of steady continuous loading using a machine designed for that purpose. The use of hammering, in either the hot or cold condition is not to be employed.

1.6.4 Material may be welded prior to forming or bending, provided that it can be demonstrated that the weld mechanical properties are not impaired by the forming operation. All welds subjected to bending are to be inspected on completion to ensure freedom from surface breaking defects.

## 1.7 Assembly and preparation for welding

1.7.1 Excessive force is not to be used in fairing and closing the work. Where excessive root gaps exist between surfaces or edges to be joined, corrective measures are to be adopted.

1.7.2 Provision is to be made for retaining correct alignment during welding operations in accordance with the approved manufacturing specifications and welding procedures.

1.7.3 Tack welds are to be avoided as far as practicable. When used, tack welds are to be of the same quality as the finished welds, made in accordance with approved welding procedures, and where they are to be retained as part of the finished weld, they are to be clean and free from defects.

1.7.4 Generally, tack welds are not to be applied in lengths of less than 30 mm for mild steel grades and aluminium alloys, and 50 mm for higher tensile steel grades. Smaller tack welds may be accepted for steels, provided that the carbon equivalent of the materials being welded is not greater than 0,36 per cent.

1.7.5 Where deep penetration welding is used (see 2.4.6), welding procedure tests are to demonstrate that the specified degree of penetration is achieved in way of tack welds left in place.

1.7.6 Where temporary bridge pieces or strong-backs are used, they are to be of similar materials to the base materials and welded in accordance with approved welding procedures.

1.7.7 Any fit-up aids and tack welds, where welded to clad materials, are to be attached to the base material and not to the cladding.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

## Chapter 13

### Section 1

1.7.8 Surfaces of all parts to be welded, are to be clean, dry and free from rust, grease, debris and other forms of contamination.

1.7.9 When misalignment of structural members either side of bulkheads, decks etc., exceeds the agreed tolerance, the misaligned item is to be released, realigned and re-welded in accordance with an approved procedure.

### 1.8 Welding equipment and welding consumables

1.8.1 Welding plant and equipment is to be suitable for the purpose intended and properly maintained, taking into account relevant safety precautions.

1.8.2 Suitable means of measuring the welding parameters (i.e. current, voltage and travel speed) are to be available. Electrical meters are to be properly maintained and have current calibrations.

1.8.3 Welding consumables are to be suitable for the type of joint and grade of material to be welded, and in general, are to be LR Approved in accordance with Chapter 11.

1.8.4 Special care is to be taken in the distribution, storage and handling of all welding consumables. They are to be kept in heated dry storage areas with a relatively uniform temperature in accordance with the consumable manufacturer's recommendations. Condensation on the metal surface (e.g., wire electrodes and studs) during storage and use is to be avoided.

1.8.5 Prior to use, welding consumables are to be dried and/or baked in accordance with the consumable manufacturer's recommendations.

1.8.6 Satisfactory storage and handling facilities for consumables are to be provided close to working areas and the condition of welding consumables are to be subject to regular inspections.

### 1.9 Welding procedure and welder qualifications

1.9.1 Welding procedures are to be developed by the manufacturer for all welding, include weld repairs, and are to be capable of achieving the mechanical property requirements and non-destructive examination quality appropriate to the work being undertaken.

1.9.2 Welding procedures are to be established for the welding of all joints and are to be qualified by testing in accordance with Chapter 12. The welding procedures are to give details of the welding process, type of consumable, joint preparation, welding position and filler metals to be used.

1.9.3 The proposed welding procedures are to be approved by the Surveyor prior to construction.

1.9.4 All welders and welding operators are to be qualified in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 12. Qualification records to demonstrate that welding personnel have the skills to achieve the required standard of workmanship are to be available to the Surveyor.

### 1.10 Welding during construction

1.10.1 Materials to be assembled for welding are to be retained in position by suitable means such that the root gaps and alignment are in accordance with the approved manufacturing specifications and welding procedures.

1.10.2 Surfaces of all parts to be welded, are to be clean, dry and reasonably free from rust, scale and grease.

1.10.3 Pre-heat is to be applied, as specified in the approved welding procedure, for a distance of at least 75 mm from the joint preparation edges. The method of application and temperature control are to be such as to maintain the required level throughout the welding operation.

1.10.4 When the ambient temperature is 0°C or less, or where moisture resides on the surfaces to be welded, due care is to be taken to pre-heat the joint to a minimum of 20°C, unless a higher pre-heat temperature is specified.

1.10.5 Where tack welds are to be removed from the root of the weld joint, this is to be carried out such that the surrounding material and joint preparation is not damaged.

1.10.6 The welding arc is to be struck on the parent metal which forms part of the weld joint or on previously deposited weld metal.

1.10.7 Where the welding process used is slag forming (e.g., manual metal arc, submerged arc, etc.) each run of deposit is to be cleaned and free from slag before the next run is applied.

1.10.8 Full penetration welds are to be made from both sides of the joint as far as practicable. Prior to welding the second side, the weld root is to be cleaned, in accordance with the requirements of the approved welding procedure, to ensure freedom from defects. When air-arc gouging is used, care is to be taken to ensure that the ensuing groove is slag and oxide free and has a profile suitable for welding.

1.10.9 Where welding from one side only, care is to be exercised to ensure the root gap is in accordance with the approved welding procedure and the root is properly fused.

1.10.10 Particular care is to be exercised in welding in the vertical position with direction of travel downward (Vd) to avoid welding defects. The use of solid wire gas metal arc (GMAW) process in the vertical down position is to be avoided.

1.10.11 Welding is to proceed systematically with each welded joint being completed in correct sequence without undue interruption.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Section 1

**1.10.12** After welding has been stopped for any reason, care is to be taken in restarting to ensure that the previously deposited weld metal is thoroughly cleaned of slag and debris, and preheat has been re-established.

**1.10.13** Care is to be taken to avoid stress concentrations such as sharp corners or abrupt changes of section, and completed welds are to have an even contour, blending smoothly with the base materials. The weld shape and size is to be in accordance with that specified in the approved drawings or specifications.

**1.10.14** Welded temporary attachments used to aid construction are to be removed carefully by grinding, cutting or chipping. The surface of the material is to be finished smooth by grinding followed by crack detection.

**1.10.15** Where fabricated and welded components require to be machined, all major welding operations are to be completed prior to final machining.

**1.10.16** Welding to parts which are subjected to rotating fatigue (e.g., shafts) is not generally permitted.

**1.10.17** Welding onto parts that have been hardened for wear resistance or strength (e.g., gear teeth) is not permitted.

**1.10.18** Where welding of clad ferritic steel plates is to be undertaken, the clad materials are to be ground back from the prepared edge by at least 10 mm. In general, the ferritic materials are to be welded prior to welding of the cladding material.

## 1.11 Non-destructive examination of welds

**1.11.1** Non-destructive examinations are to be made in accordance with a definitive written procedure prepared and endorsed by a person qualified according to a Nationally Recognised Scheme with a grade equivalent to Level III qualification of ISO 9712, SNT-TC-1A, EN473, or ASNT Central Certification Program (ACCP). As a minimum, the procedure will identify personnel qualification levels, NDE datum and identification system, extent of testing, methods to be applied with technique sheets, acceptance criteria and reporting requirements. These procedures are to be reviewed by the Surveyor. See Ch 1,5.

**1.11.2** Non-destructive examinations are to be undertaken by personnel qualified according to a Nationally Recognised Scheme with a grade equivalent to Level II qualification of ISO 9712, SNT-TC-1A, EN473 or ASNT Central Certification Program (ACCP). Operators qualified to Level I of the above schemes (or equivalent recognised by LR) may be engaged in testing under the supervision of personnel qualified to Level II or III (or equivalent recognised by LR). Personnel qualifications are to be verified by certification.

**1.11.3** Effective arrangements are to be provided by the manufacturer for the inspection of finished welds to ensure that all welding, and where necessary, all post-weld heat treatment, has been satisfactorily completed.

**1.11.4** Welds are to be clean and free from paint at the time of visual inspection unless specified otherwise in the following Sections.

**1.11.5** The weld surface finish is to ensure accurate and reliable detection of defects. Where the weld surface is irregular or has other features likely to interfere with the interpretation of non-destructive examination, the weld is to be ground or machined.

**1.11.6** Prior to inspection, welded temporary attachments and lifting eyes used to aid construction are to be removed carefully by grinding, cutting or chipping or other approved means. The surface of the material is to be finished smooth by grinding followed by crack detection. Any defects caused in the removal process are to be repaired and re-inspected.

**1.11.7** For welds in steels with specified yield strength up to 400 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, and with carbon equivalent less than or equal to 0,41 per cent, NDE may be performed as soon as the test assembly has cooled to ambient temperature. For other steels, NDE is to be delayed for a period of at least 48 hours after the test assembly has cooled to ambient temperature.

**1.11.8** Non-destructive examinations are to be performed in accordance with the requirements of the Rules. Examinations are to be in accordance with agreed written procedures prepared by the manufacturer or ship builder.

**1.11.9** The Surveyor may request additional inspections where there is reason to question the quality of workmanship, or where the weld is part of a complicated fabrication where there is high restraint or high residual stresses.

**1.11.10** Welds are to be examined after completion of any post-weld heat treatment.

**1.11.11** Where weld defects are discovered, the full extent is to be ascertained by applying additional non-destructive examinations where required. Unacceptable defects are to be completely removed and, where necessary, weld repaired in accordance with the relevant Sections of this Chapter. The repairs are to be re-inspected using the same technique as the original inspection.

**1.11.12** Results of non-destructive examinations are to be recorded and evaluated by the constructor on a continual basis in order that the quality of welding can be monitored. These records are to be available to the Surveyor.

**1.11.13** The constructor is to be responsible for the review, interpretation, evaluation and acceptance of the results of NDE. Reports stating compliance or otherwise with the criteria established in the inspection procedure are to be issued. Reports are to comply, as a minimum, with the requirements of Ch 1,5.

**1.11.14** The extent of applied non-destructive examination is to be increased when warranted by the analysis of previous results.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

## Section 1

### 1.12 Routine weld tests

1.12.1 Routine or production weld tests may be specified as a means of monitoring the quality of the welded joints. This type of quality control test is generally specified for pressure vessel and LNG construction but may be used for other types of welded fabrication.

1.12.2 Routine weld tests may be requested by the Surveyor where there is reason to doubt the quality of workmanship.

1.12.3 Where routine test welds have been agreed, they are to be performed in accordance with the general requirements for the type of construction, see Sections 3 and 4.

### 1.13 Rectification of material defects

1.13.1 Repair of defects found in base materials is not to be carried out without the prior approval of the Surveyor.

1.13.2 In general, surface defects in the material may be removed by grinding, chipping, etc., provided the remaining material thickness is not reduced below the minimum thickness tolerance, and the area is ground to blend in smoothly with the surrounding material.

1.13.3 Confirmation that the defect has been removed is required by performing visual examination, augmented by either magnetic particle or dye penetrant examination techniques.

1.13.4 Surface defects, which cannot be repaired by the above method, may be repaired by welding where permitted by Chapters 3 to 9. Such repairs are to be performed in accordance with the requirements of this Section and those specified in Chapters 3 to 9.

1.13.5 Any defects in the structure resulting from the removal of temporary attachments are to be prepared, efficiently welded and ground smooth so as to achieve a defect free repair.

### 1.14 Rectification of distortion

1.14.1 Fairing, by linear or spot heating, to correct distortions due to welding, may be carried out. In order to ensure that the properties of the material are not adversely affected, approved procedures are to be utilised. On completion of such processes, visual examination of all heat affected areas in the vicinity is to be carried out to ensure freedom from cracking.

1.14.2 When misalignment of members exceeds the agreed tolerance, the misaligned item is to be cut apart, realigned and re-welded in accordance with an approved procedure.

### 1.15 Rectification of welds defects

1.15.1 Where repairs are extensive the manufacturer is to investigate the reason for the defects and take the necessary actions to prevent recurrence. In addition, consideration is to be given to the sequence of repairs and to providing temporary supports to prevent misalignment or collapse.

1.15.2 Cracks are to be reported to the Surveyor and the cause established prior to undertaking weld repairs.

1.15.3 Defects may be removed by grinding, chipping or thermal gouging. Where thermal gouging is used, the repair groove is to be subsequently ground clean to remove oxides and debris. The groove is to have a profile suitable for welding.

1.15.4 Prior to commencing repair welding, it is to be confirmed that no defect exists on the prepared surface by performing visual examination, augmented by either magnetic particle or dye penetrant examination techniques.

1.15.5 Repair welding is to be performed using approved welding procedures.

1.15.6 Completed repairs are to be re-examined by the non-destructive examination method(s) that detected the original defect and are to confirm that the original defect has been removed.

1.15.7 Where the component or structure has been subjected to post-weld heat treatment prior to weld repair, this is to be repeated after completion of all repair welding.

1.15.8 Where non-destructive examination reveals that the original defect has not been successfully removed, one more repair attempt may be performed.

1.15.9 The manufacturer is to monitor the quality of welding and maintain records of welding repairs and take the necessary corrective actions where repair rates are outside normal limits.

### 1.16 Post-weld heat treatment

1.16.1 On completion of welding, post-weld heat treatment may be required depending on the type of welded construction, the material type and thickness as specified by the relevant Parts or Sections of the Rules.

1.16.2 In general, heat treatment after welding is to be a stress relief treatment in order to reduce residual stresses introduced by welding and is generally applicable to ferritic steels. Where other types of heat treatment (e.g., normalising, solution annealing) are proposed, demonstration of acceptable mechanical properties of the weldment are to be confirmed by a welding procedure test which includes a simulated heat treatment.

1.16.3 Parts are to be properly prepared for heat treatment. Machined surfaces (e.g., flange faces, screw threads, etc.) are to be protected against scaling and sufficient temporary supports provided to prevent distortion or collapse of the structure.



# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Sections 1 & 2

1.16.4 Details of the heat treatment to be applied, soaking time and temperature, heating and cooling rates, etc., are to be submitted for review prior to commencing.

1.16.5 Post-weld heat treatment is to be carried out in a purpose built furnace which is efficiently maintained. In special cases, where the configuration of the component is such that thermal stresses during heating and cooling can be minimised, local post-weld heat treatment may be used. This would not normally apply to the complex geometry of cast materials during manufacture within the foundry environment.

1.16.6 In all cases, the heat treatment facilities and arrangements are to be capable of controlling the temperature throughout the heat treatment cycle and adequate means of measuring and recording the component temperature are to be provided. Thermocouples are to be attached so they are in contact with the component.

1.16.7 Unless specified otherwise, stress relief heat treatment is to be carried out by means of controlled heating from 300°C, to the soak temperature, holding within the prescribed soaking temperature range for the time specified (usually 1 hour per 25 mm of weld thickness) followed by controlled cooling to below 300°C.

1.16.8 Where post-weld stress relief is specified for welded constructions that contain joints between different materials (e.g. ferritic to austenitic steels), the details of the materials, welding procedures and heat treatment cycle to be applied are to be submitted for special consideration and approval.

1.16.9 Non-destructive examination of welds is to be performed after completion of any heat treatment.

## 1.17 Certification

1.17.1 Products or components are not to be considered complete until all the requirements of the construction specification have been met and all activities have been completed.

1.17.2 Upon completion of the works, the manufacturer is to provide documentation which indicates that:

- (a) All welds are complete and there are no outstanding repairs.
- (b) The appropriate post-weld heat treatments have been performed.
- (c) Appropriate destructive tests have been performed.
- (d) Proof testing of welds has been performed.

1.17.3 Before the test certificates or shipping statements are signed by the Surveyor, the manufacturer is required to provide a written declaration stating that the product is in accordance with the requirements of 1.17.2.

## Section 2 Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery

### 2.1 Scope

2.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to the construction of ships, including hull structure, superstructure and deckhouses, components forming part of the ship structure and its machinery (excluding pressure equipment and piping, see Section 4). These requirements are in addition to the general welding requirements specified in Section 1.

2.1.2 The shipyard and manufacturer's works are to be assessed to give assurance that they have the facilities, equipment, personnel and quality control procedures to produce work of the required quality.

### 2.2 Welding consumables

2.2.1 Welding consumables used for hull construction are to be approved in accordance with Chapter 11 and are to be suitable for the type of joint and grade of material to be welded.

2.2.2 Steel welding consumable approvals, up to and including Grade Y40 and Y47, are considered acceptable for hull construction in line with Table 11.1.1 in Chapter 11, Ch 12,2.2.2 and the following:

- (a) Consumables up to Grade Y are acceptable for welding steels up to 3 strength levels below that for which the approval applies, e.g., a consumable with approval grading 3Y is acceptable for welding EH36, EH32 and EH27S higher tensile ship steels and grade E normal strength ship steel.
- (b) Consumables for Grade Y40 are acceptable for welding steels up to two strength levels below that for which the approval applies. Consumables for Grade Y47 are acceptable for welding steels up to one strength level below that for which the approval applies.
- (c) Consumables with an approved impact toughness grading are acceptable for welding steels with lower specified impact properties subject to (a) above, e.g. a consumable with approval grading 3Y is acceptable for welding EH, DH and AH materials.
- (d) For welding steels of different grades or different strength levels, the welding consumables may be of a type suitable for the lesser grade or strength being connected. The use of a higher grade of welding consumable may be required at discontinuities or other points of stress concentration.

2.2.3 In general, the use of preheating and hydrogen controlled welding consumables for welding of ship steels up to strength grade H40 is to be in accordance with Table 13.2.1. The carbon equivalent is to be calculated from the ladle analysis using the formula given below:

$$\text{Carbon equivalent} = C + \frac{\text{Mn}}{6} + \frac{\text{Cr} + \text{Mo} + \text{V}}{5} + \frac{\text{Ni} + \text{Cu}}{15}$$

Preheat and the use of low hydrogen controlled consumables will be required for welding of steel grades higher than Grade H40.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

## Chapter 13

Section 2

**Table 13.2.1 Preheat and consumable requirements for welding of carbon and carbon manganese steels up to strength grade H40**

Carbon equivalent $C_{eq}$	Pre-heat	Hydrogen controlled consumables
$C_{eq}$ equal to or less than 0,41%	Not required	Not required, see Note 3
$C_{eq}$ above 0,41 but not exceeding 0,45%	Not required, see Notes 1 and 2	Required
$C_{eq}$ greater than 0,45%	Required	Required
<b>NOTES</b> 1. Preheat may need to be applied in order to meet the maximum hardness values specified in Ch 12,2.12.6. 2. Under conditions of high restraint or low ambient temperature preheat may need to be applied. 3. Hydrogen controlled consumables may need to be considered for welding of (a) Thicker materials (i.e., > 35 mm). (b) Higher strength materials. (c) Welds subject to high restraint.		

2.2.4 All aluminium alloy welding consumables are to be approved in accordance with Chapter 11 and are suitable for welding the grades of material as shown in Table 13.2.2.

**Table 13.2.2 Welding of aluminium alloys – Consumable requirements**

Consumable approval grade	Base material alloy grade
RA or WA	5754
RB or WB	5086, 5754
RC or WC	5083, 5086, 5754
RD or WD	6005A, 6061, 6082

2.2.5 All austenitic stainless steel and duplex stainless steel welding consumables are to be approved in accordance with the Chapter 11 and are suitable for welding the grades of material as shown in Table 13.2.3.

### 2.3 Welding procedure and welder qualifications

2.3.1 Welding procedures and welder qualifications are to be tested and approved in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 12.

### 2.4 Construction and workmanship

2.4.1 Weld preparations and openings may be formed by thermal cutting, machining or chipping. Chipped surfaces that will not be subsequently covered by weld metal are to be ground smooth.

**Table 13.2.3 Welding of austenitic stainless and duplex stainless steels – Consumable requirements**

Consumable approval grade	Suitable for welding material alloy grades
Austenitic stainless steels	
321 347	321 347 and 321
Austenitic stainless steel – Low carbon	
304L (see Note 3) 304LN (see Note 3) 316L 316LN 317L 317LN	304L 304LN and 304L 316L and 304L 316LN, 316L, 304LN and 304L 317L, 316LN, 316L, 304LN and 304L 317LN, 317L, 316LN, 316L, 304LN and 304L
Super austenitic stainless steels, see Note 2	
S31254 N08904	S31254 and N08904 N08904
Duplex stainless steels, see Note 1	
S31260 S31803 S32550 S32750 S32760	S31260 and S31803 S31803 S32550 S32750 and S32550 S32760, S32550, S31260 and S31803
Stainless steels welded to carbon steels	
SS/CMn Duplex/CMn	Carbon steel to all steels in Sections 1, 2 and 3 Carbon steel to all duplex stainless steel in Section 4
<b>NOTES</b> 1. The use of a different welding consumable grade from that of the base material may require demonstration of acceptable corrosion properties. 2. May be used for welding low carbon austenitic grades provided measures are taken to prevent solidification cracking from occurring. 3. These are LR Grades and do not correspond to any National or International Standards/Grades.	

2.4.2 Prior to welding, the alignment of plates and stiffeners forming part of the hull structure is to be in accordance with the tolerances specified in the relevant part of the Rules.

2.4.3 When welding from one side only, care is to be exercised to ensure the root gap and fit up are in accordance with the approved welding procedure and the root is properly fused.

2.4.4 Where it is proposed to use permanent backing strips, the intended locations and welding procedures are to be submitted for consideration.

2.4.5 Temporary backing strips may be used provided they are in accordance with approved welding procedures and are subsequently removed on completion of welding.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Section 2

2.4.6 The outer surfaces of completed welds are to blend smoothly with the base materials and provide a smooth transition and gradual change of section.

2.4.7 Weld joints in parts of oil engine structures that are stressed by the main gas or inertia loads are to be designed as continuous full penetration welds. They are to be arranged so that welds do not intersect, and that welding can be effected without difficulty.

2.4.8 When modifications or repairs have been made which result in openings having to be closed by welded inserts, particular care is to be given to the fit of the insert and the welding sequence. The welding is also to be subject to non-destructive examination.

2.4.9 Where welding of aluminium alloy is employed, the following additional requirements are to be complied with so far as they are applicable:

- Welding is to be performed by fusion welding using inert gas or tungsten inert gas process or by the friction stir welding process. Where it is proposed to use other welding processes, details are to be submitted for approval.
- The weld joint surfaces should be scratch brushed, preferably immediately before welding, in order to remove oxide or adhering films of dirt, filings, etc.

## 2.5 Butt welds

2.5.1 Where the ship hull is constructed of plates of different thicknesses, the thicker plates are to be chamfered in accordance with the approved plans. In all cases the chamfer is not to exceed a slope of 1 in 3 so that the plates are of equal thickness at the weld seam. Alternatively, if so desired, the width of the weld may be included as part of the smooth taper to the thicker plate provided the difference in thickness is not greater than 3 mm.

2.5.2 Where stiffening members are attached by continuous fillet welds and cross completely finished butt or seam welds, these are to be made flush in way of the fillet weld. Similarly for butt welds in webs of stiffening members, the butt weld is to be complete and generally made flush with the stiffening member before the fillet weld is made. Where these conditions cannot be complied with, a scallop is to be arranged in the web of the stiffening member, see Fig. 13.2.1. Scallops are to be of such a size and in such a position that a satisfactory weld can be made.

## 2.6 Lap connections

2.6.1 Overlaps are generally not to be used to connect plates which may be subjected to high tensile or compressive loading and alternative arrangements are to be considered. However, where plate overlaps are adopted, the width of the overlap is not to exceed four times, nor be less than three times the thickness of the thinner plate and the joints are to be positioned to allow adequate access for completion of sound welds. The faying surfaces of lap joints are to be in close contact and both edges of the overlap are to have continuous fillet welds.

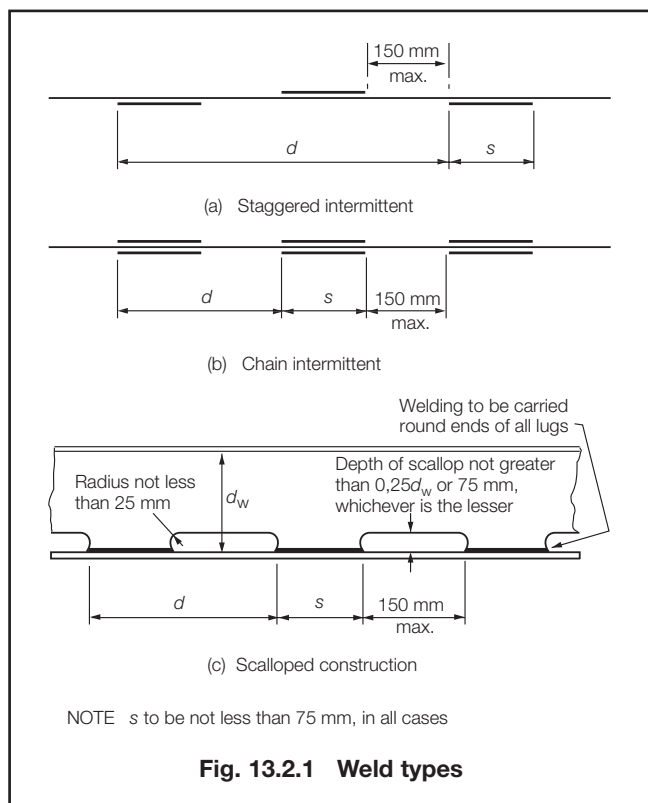


Fig. 13.2.1 Weld types

## 2.7 Closing plates

2.7.1 For the connection of plating to internal webs, where access for welding is not practicable, the closing plating is to be attached by continuous full penetration welds or by slot fillet welds to face plates fitted to the webs. Slots are to have a minimum length of 90 mm and a minimum width of twice the plating thickness, with well rounded ends. Slots cut in plating are to be smooth and clean and are to be spaced not more than 230 mm apart, centre to centre. Slots are not to be filled with welding.

2.7.2 For the attachment of rudder shell plating to the internal stiffening of the rudder, slots are to have a minimum length of 75 mm and, in general, a minimum width of twice the side plating thickness. The ends of the slots are to be rounded and the space between them is not to exceed 150 mm.

## 2.8 Stud welding

2.8.1 Where permanent or temporary studs are to be attached by welding to main structural parts in areas subject to high stress, the proposed location of the studs and the welding procedures adopted are to be approved.



# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

## Section 2

### 2.9 Fillet welds

2.9.1 T-connections are generally to be made by fillet welds on both sides of the abutting plate, the dimensions and spacing of which are shown in Fig. 13.2.1. Where the connection is highly stressed, deep penetration or full penetration welding may be required. Where full penetration welding is required, the abutting plate may be required to be bevelled.

2.9.2 Where an approved deep penetration procedure is used, the fillet leg length calculated may be reduced by 15 per cent provided that the manufacturer is able to meet the following requirements:

- (a) Use of a welding consumable approved for deep penetration welding in accordance with Chapter 11 for either the 'p' or 'T' techniques.
- (b) Demonstrations by way of production weld testing that the minimum required penetration depths (i.e., throat thicknesses) are maintained. This is to be documented on a monthly basis by the manufacturer and be available to the Surveyor.

2.9.3 The calculated fillet leg length may be reduced by 20 per cent, provided that in addition to the requirements of 2.9.2(a) and (b), the manufacturer is able to consistently meet the following additional requirements:

- (a) The documentation required in 2.9.2(b) is to be completed and made available to the Surveyor upon request on a weekly basis.
- (b) Suitable process selection confirmed by satisfactory welding procedure tests covering both minimum and maximum root gaps.

2.9.4 Where intermittent welding is used, the welding is to be made continuous in way of brackets, lugs and scallops and at orthogonal connections with other members.

### 2.10 Post-weld heat treatment

2.10.1 Post-weld stress relief heat treatment is applied to improve the fatigue performance or to improve resistance to brittle fracture and is generally required for carbon and carbon-manganese and low alloy steels under any of the following conditions:

- (a) Where the material thickness exceeds 65 mm.
- (b) For complicated weld joints where there are high stress concentrations.
- (c) Where fatigue loads are considered high.

2.10.2 Post-weld heat treatment is to be applied to the following types of welded construction:

- (a) Welding of steel castings where the thickness of the casting at the weld exceeds 30 mm, except where castings are directly welded to the hull structure.
- (b) Oil engine bedplates except engine types where the bedplate as a whole is not subjected to direct loading from the cylinder pressure. For these types, only the transverse girder assemblies need to be stress relieved.
- (c) Welding of gear wheels.
- (d) Welding of gear cases associated with main or auxiliary engines, see Part 5 of the Rules for Ships.

2.10.3 Where required, heat treatment is to be performed in accordance with the requirements specified in 4.6 for pressure vessel construction.

2.10.4 Special consideration may be given to omit the required post-weld heat treatment. Evaluation is to be based on critical engineering assessment involving fracture mechanics testing and proposals are to be submitted which include full details of the application, materials, welding procedures, inspection procedures, design stresses, fatigue loads and cycles. Evidence will be required to demonstrate that the inspection techniques and procedures to be employed are able to detect flaws down to the sizes determined from the fracture mechanics (and or fatigue) calculations.

### 2.11 Tolerances

2.11.1 Tolerances after welding are to be in accordance with the relevant Part of the Rules.

2.11.2 Distortion which has resulted from welding may be corrected by spot heating in accordance with 1.14.

### 2.12 Non-destructive examination of welds

2.12.1 All finished welds are to be sound and free from cracks and substantially free from lack of fusion, incomplete penetration, porosity and slag. The surfaces of welds are to be reasonably smooth and substantially free from undercut and overlap. Care is to be taken to ensure that the specified dimensions of welds have been achieved and that both excessive reinforcement and under-fill of welds is avoided.

2.12.2 Welds forming part of the hull and superstructure may be coated with a thin layer of protective primer prior to inspection provided it does not interfere with inspection and is removed, if required by the Surveyor, for closer interpretation of possible defective areas.

2.12.3 All welds are to be visually inspected by personnel designated by the builder. Visual inspection of all welds may be supplemented by other non-destructive examination techniques in cases of unclear interpretation, as considered necessary. The acceptance criteria for visual testing are given in Table 13.2.4.

2.12.4 In addition to visual inspection, welded joints are to be examined using any one or a combination of ultrasonic, radiographic, magnetic particle, eddy current, dye penetrant or other acceptable methods appropriate to the configuration of the weld.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Section 2

**Table 13.2.4 Acceptance criteria for visual testing, magnetic particle and liquid penetrant testing**

Surface discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria for visual testing
Crack	100	Not accepted
Lack of fusion	401	Not accepted
Incomplete root penetration in butt joints welded from one side	4021	Not accepted
Surface pore	2017	Single pore diameter $d \leq 0,25t$ , for butt welds, with maximum diameter 3 mm, see Note 1 $d \leq 0,25a$ , for fillet welds, with maximum diameter 3 mm, see Note 1 $2,5d$ as minimum distance to adjacent pore
Undercut in butt welds	501	Depth $\leq 0,5$ mm, whatever the length Depth $\leq 0,8$ mm, with a maximum continuous length of 90 mm, see Note 2
Undercut in fillet welds	501	Depth $\leq 0,8$ mm, whatever the length
<b>NOTES</b> 1. $t$ is the plate thickness of the thinnest plate, and $a$ is the throat of the fillet weld. 2. Adjacent undercuts separated by a distance shorter than the shortest undercut are to be regarded as a single continuous undercut.		

**2.12.5** The method to be used for the volumetric examinations of welds is the responsibility of the builder. Radiography is generally preferred for the examination of butt welds of 8 mm thickness or less. Ultrasonic testing is acceptable for welds of 8 mm thickness or greater and is to be used for the examination of full penetration tee butt or cruciform welds or joints of similar configuration. Advanced ultrasonic techniques, such as Phased Array Ultrasonic Testing (PAUT), may be used as a volumetric testing method in lieu of radiography or manual ultrasonic testing. If these methods are used, the thickness limitations for manual ultrasonic testing apply.

**2.12.6** The acceptance criteria for radiographic testing are given in Table 13.2.5, and those for ultrasonic testing in Table 13.2.6.

**2.12.7** Checkpoints examined at the pre-assembly stage are to include ultrasonic testing on examples of the stop/start points of automatic welding and magnetic particle inspection of weld ends.

**2.12.8** Checkpoints examined at the assembly stage are generally to be selected from those welds intended to be examined as part of the agreed quality control programme to be applied by the builder. The locations and number of checkpoints are to be approved by the Surveyor.

**2.12.9** Where components of the structure are subcontracted for fabrication, the same inspection regime is to be applied as if the item had been constructed within the main contractor's works. In these cases, particular attention is to be given to highly loaded fabrications (such as stabiliser fin boxes) forming an integral part of the hull envelope.

**2.12.10** Particular attention is to be paid to highly stressed items. Magnetic particle inspection is to be used at ends of fillet welds, T-joints, joints or crossings in main structural members and at stern frame connections.

**2.12.11** Special attention is to be given to the examination of plating in way of lifting eye plate positions to ensure freedom from cracks. This examination is not restricted to the positions where eye plates have been removed, but includes the positions where lifting eye plates are permanent fixtures.

**2.12.12** Checkpoints for volumetric examination are to be selected so that a representative sample of welding is examined.

**2.12.13** Typical locations for volumetric examination and number of checkpoints to be taken are given in the relevant Sections of the Rules. A list of the proposed items to be examined is to be submitted for approval.

**2.12.14** For the hull structure of refrigerated spaces, and of ships designed to operate in low air temperatures, the extent of non-destructive examination will be specially considered. For non-destructive examination of gas ships see the *Rules for the carriage for Liquefied Gases*.

**2.12.15** For all ship types, the builder is to carry out random non-destructive examination at the request of the Surveyor.

**2.12.16** Results of non-destructive examinations made during construction are to be recorded and evaluated by the builder on a continual basis in order that the quality of welding can be monitored. These records are to be available to the Surveyor.

**2.12.17** The extent of applied non-destructive examinations is to be increased when warranted by the analysis of previous results.

## Requirements for Welded Construction

## Chapter 13

## Section 2

Table 13.2.5 Acceptance criteria for radiographic testing

Discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria for radiographic testing, see Note 1
Crack	100	Not accepted
Lack of fusion	401	Continuous maximum length $t/2$ or 25 mm, whichever is the less, see Note 2 Intermittent cumulative length maximum $t$ or 50 mm, whichever is less, see Note 3
Lack of root fusion	4013	Not accepted in butt joints welded from one side
Incomplete root penetration	4021	Not accepted in butt joints welded from one side Continuous maximum length $t/2$ or 25 mm, whichever is lesser, see Note 2 Intermittent cumulative maximum length $t$ or 50 mm, whichever is less, see Note 3
Slag inclusion	301	Continuous maximum length $t$ or 50 mm, whichever is less, see Note 2 Intermittent cumulative length maximum $2t$ or 100 mm, whichever is less, see Notes 3 and 4
Gas pore	2011	Maximum dimension for a single pore: $d \leq 0,2t$ , max. 4,0 mm see Note 5
Uniformly distributed porosity	2012	Maximum dimension of the area of imperfections: For single run welds: $\leq 1,5\%$ For multi-run welds: $\leq 3\%$ See Notes 6 and 7
Clustered (localised) porosity	2013	Maximum dimension of the summation of the projected area of the imperfection: $\leq 8\%$ See Notes 6 and 7
Elongated cavity	2015	$h \leq 0,3t$ , max. 3,0 mm $l \leq t$ , max. 50 mm See Notes 8 and 9
Wormholes	2016	$h \leq 0,3t$ , max. 3,0 mm $l \leq t$ , max. 50 mm See Notes 8 and 9
Metallic inclusions other than copper	304	$h \leq 0,3t$ , max. 3,0 mm See Note 8
Copper inclusions	3042	Not permitted

## NOTES

1.  $t$  is the thickness of the thinnest plate.
2. Two adjacent individual discontinuities of length  $l_{d1}$  and  $l_{d2}$  situated on a line and where the distance  $l_d$  between them is shorter than the shortest discontinuity are to be regarded as a continuous discontinuity of length  $l_{d1} + l_d + l_{d2}$ .
3. Sum of the length of individual continuous discontinuities.
4. Parallel inclusions not separated by more than 3 times the width of the largest inclusion are to be regarded as one continuous discontinuity.
5.  $d$  is the diameter of the gas pore.
6. The limits for the maximum single gas pore within this group still apply.
7. Further reference to porosity limits may be obtained in ISO 5817:2007.
8.  $h$  is the width of the imperfection.
9.  $l$  is the length of the imperfection.

## 2.13 Weld repairs

2.13.1 The full extent of any weld defect is to be ascertained by applying additional non-destructive examination where required. Unacceptable defects are to be completely removed and, where necessary, re-welded and re-examined in accordance with the requirements of 1.15.

2.13.2 During the assembly of large components, root gaps in excess of those specified in the approved welding procedure may be rectified by welding.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Sections 2 & 3

**Table 13.2.6 Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing**

Echo height	Acceptance criteria for ultrasonic testing, see Note
Greater than 100% of DAC curve	Maximum length $t/2$ or 25 mm, whichever is less
Greater than 50% of DAC curve, but less than 100% of DAC curve	Maximum length $t$ or 50 mm, whichever is less
Indications evaluated to be cracks are unacceptable regardless of echo height; Indications evaluated to be lack of penetration or lack of root fusion in joints welded from one side are unacceptable regardless of echo height.	
<b>NOTE</b> Two adjacent individual discontinuities of length $L_1$ and $L_2$ situated on a line and where the distance $L$ between them is shorter than the shortest discontinuity are to be regarded as a continuous discontinuity of length $L_1 + L + L_2$ .	

**2.13.3** Rectification of wide root gaps in butt welds, up to a maximum gap of 16 mm, may be performed provided that the length of these areas is small in relation to the whole weld length. Repairs may be executed by applying weld buttering layers to one edge of the weld joint, followed by machining or grinding to return the root opening to the required dimensions. The weld buttering and filling of the joint are to be in accordance with welding procedures qualified in accordance with Chapter 12.

**2.13.4** For sub-assemblies, rectification of wide root gaps may be performed using a backing strip, provided that it is removed on completion of the welding.

**2.13.5** Rectification of wide root gaps in fillet welds may be carried out as follows:

- (a) where the root gap,  $g$ , is in excess of 3 mm, but not greater than 5 mm, the fillet leg length,  $z$ , may be increased by  $g - 2,0$  mm;
- (b) where the root gap is in excess of 5 mm, the joint detail may be changed into a full penetration weld.

**2.13.6** Where repair welds are made using small weld beads, suitable precautions (including preheat) are to be taken to avoid high hardness and possible cold cracking.

- (c) Welding procedure qualification tests are carried out without preheat.
- (d) The thickness of steel plate used in the welding procedure qualification test is the minimum hull plate thickness to be used during fabrication.
- (e) The maximum measured hardness on the completed welding procedure qualification assembly is less than or equal to 350 HV10. Following fabrication welding, 10 per cent of welds are to be hardness tested in way of heat-affected zones at weld starts to confirm compliance with the 350 HV10 limit.
- (f) The heat input used in the welding qualification test is the minimum permitted heat input during fabrication.
- (g) Only low hydrogen welding consumables (H5) are used.
- (h) In addition to normal non-destructive testing for welds, 10 per cent of the welds are additionally subject to magnetic particle inspection 48 hours after welding is complete.
- (j) The welding procedure qualification tests for the repair of welds carried out afloat with water backing are to be carried out on test pieces that have previously been welded afloat and also meet the requirements above.

**2.14.2** Welding in, or underwater, is not permitted.

## 2.14 Welding afloat with water backing

**2.14.1** Welding afloat with water backing is not recommended due to the additional precautions required during survey and therefore, is generally not permitted. However consideration may be given to welding afloat with water backing after specific LR approval has been obtained by the yard or fabricator prior to such welding being carried out. Such approval will only be given once all of the following conditions are satisfied:

- (a) The welding procedure qualification tests are carried out on steel plates with water backing and the water is maintained at the flow rate and minimum water temperature anticipated during fabrication.
- (b) The carbon equivalent of the steel plates used in the welding procedure qualification tests are to be greater than 0,41 per cent based on the IIW formula. Where it can be shown that all hull steel plates and new sections will have a carbon equivalent value below this figure, steel plates with the maximum carbon equivalent value may be used for the welding procedure qualification tests.

## Section 3 Specific requirements for fabricated steel sections

### 3.1 Scope

**3.1.1** Fabricated steel sections are items used in place of rolled sections and as such will not be regarded as sub-assemblies. Products regarded as sub-assemblies are subject to requirements of welded construction specified in Section 2.

**3.1.2** The requirements for structural steel sections are based on these being manufactured from flat products by automatic welding and intended for use in the construction of ships and other marine structures.

**3.1.3** Fabricated steel sections are to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of this Section and the general requirements of Section 1.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

## Section 3

3.1.4 In all cases, sections are to be manufactured at works, which have been assessed and approved in accordance with *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships, Book J, MQPS Procedure 12-1*.

## 3.2 Dimensions and tolerances

3.2.1 Products are to conform dimensionally to the provisions of an acceptable National or International Standard.

3.2.2 The minimum throat thickness of fillet welds is to be determined from:

$$\text{Throat thickness} = 0,34t \text{ but not to be taken as less than } 3 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  = plate thickness of the thinner member to be joined (generally the web).

3.2.3 Where a welding procedure using deep penetration welding is used (see Chapter 11, 'p' and 'T' welding techniques) the minimum leg length required will be specially considered provided the requirements of 2.9.2 are complied with.

3.2.4 Unless agreed otherwise, the leg length of the weld is to be not less than 1,4 times the specified throat thickness.

## 3.3 Identification of products

3.3.1 Every finished item is to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in at least one place with the following particulars:

- (a) The manufacturer's name or trade mark.
- (b) Identification mark for the grade of steel.
- (c) Identification number and/or initials which will enable the full history of the item to be traced.
- (d) Where required by the purchaser, the order number or other identification mark.
- (e) The letters 'LR'.
- (f) The Surveyor's personal stamp.

The above particulars, but excluding the manufacturer's name or trade mark where this is embossed on finished products, are to be encircled with paint or otherwise marked so as to be easily recognisable.

3.3.2 In the event of any material bearing LR's brand failing to comply with the test requirements, the brand is to be removed or unmistakably defaced, see also Ch 1,4.7.

## 3.4 Manufacture and workmanship

3.4.1 For cut edges that are to remain unwelded, it is to be demonstrated that the plate preparation procedures used are able to achieve edges that are free from cracks or other deleterious imperfections.

3.4.2 Where assembly jigs and devices are used to bring the web into contact with the flanges and hold these in place during welding, means are to be provided to ensure that the degree of contact is maintained until welding is complete.

3.4.3 Welding procedures are to be established for the welding of all joints including weld repairs and are to be approved in accordance with Chapter 12. Welders are to be approved in accordance with Chapter 12, and qualification records are to be available to the Surveyor.

3.4.4 The welding consumables used are to be approved in accordance with Chapter 11 and are to be suitable for the type of joint and grade of steel as described in 2.2. For joining steel of different tensile strengths, the consumables are to be suitable for the tensile strength of the component considered in the determination of weld size.

3.4.5 The application of pre-heat and the use of low hydrogen welding consumables are to be in accordance with the requirements of 2.2.

3.4.6 Welding is to be double continuous fillet welding or full penetration welding as specified in the approved plans.

3.4.7 Where deep penetration welding is used, the requirements of 2.9.2 are to be complied with.

## 3.5 Non-destructive examination

3.5.1 Surface inspection and verification of dimensions are the responsibility of the manufacturer and are to be carried out on all materials prior to despatch. Acceptance by the Surveyor of material later found to be defective does not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

3.5.2 The Surveyor will carry out checks to ensure that the weld size and profile are in accordance with the manufacturing specification and the manufacturer's Quality Control Procedures.

3.5.3 The manufacturer is to examine the welds by magnetic particle or dye penetrant methods. The length examined is to be 200 mm at each end, for each length cut for delivery.

3.5.4 If cracks are revealed, these are to be reported to the Surveyor and the whole of the length is to be examined by magnetic particle or dye penetrant methods. Corrective action in respect of the manufacturing process, and repairs are to be as indicated in the manufacturers' Quality Control Manual.

3.5.5 The weld defect is not to exceed the acceptance levels given in Table 13.2.4.

## 3.6 Routine weld tests

3.6.1 One production batch test is required for every 500 m of fabricated section manufactured, or fraction thereof. From each batch test, two samples are to be removed, one from near the beginning of the production run and one from near the end. From each of these test samples one macro specimen and one fracture test specimen are to be taken.



# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Sections 3 & 4

3.6.2 The macro specimens are to be prepared and etched to demonstrate freedom from unacceptable defects and that the weld penetration is in accordance with the manufacturing specification. The fracture specimens are to be broken, one for each side of the fillet weld, and the fractured surfaces examined for compliance with the requirements of Table 13.2.5.

3.6.3 Where the welding procedure used has employed the deep penetration technique, the amount of root penetration is to be measured on the macro specimen and is not to be less than that demonstrated during welding procedure approval testing.

3.6.4 For the purposes of this Section, a batch is to consist of products of only one size and grade of material.

## 3.7 Certification and records

3.7.1 Each test certificate is to include the following particulars:

- (a) Purchaser's name and order number.
- (b) Where known, the contract number for which the material is intended.
- (c) Address to which material is despatched.
- (d) Description and dimensions of the product.
- (e) Specification or grade of the steel.
- (f) Identification number and/or initials.
- (g) Cast number and chemical composition of ladle samples of constituent plates.
- (h) Mechanical test results of constituent plates.
- (i) Condition of supply when other than as-rolled.
- (k) Make and brand of welding consumables.

3.7.2 Test certificates or shipping statements may be signed by the Surveyor, provided the documentation requirements of 1.17 are satisfied. The following form of declaration will be accepted if stamped or printed on each test certificate or shipping statement with the name of the works and signed by an authorised representative of the manufacturer:

'We hereby certify that the material has been made by an approved procedure in accordance with the Lloyd's Register's Rules for Materials'.

3.7.3 The manufacturer is to maintain records by which sources of material can be identified together with the results of all inspections and tests.

## Section 4 Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels

### 4.1 Scope

4.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to fusion welded pressure vessels and process equipment, heating and steam raising boilers, and steam or gas turbine rotors and cylinders and are in addition to those requirements referred to in Section 1.

4.1.2 The allocation of pressure vessel Class is determined from the design criteria in Pt 5, Ch 10 and 11 of the Rules for Ships. Prior to commencing construction, the design of the vessel is to be approved. Construction requirements for turbine rotors and cylinders are to be in accordance with Class 2/1, unless a higher Class is specified in the approved plans.

4.1.3 Pressure vessels will be accepted only if manufactured by firms equipped and competent to undertake the quality of welding work required for the Class of vessel proposed. The manufacturer's works are to be approved in accordance with the requirements specified in *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships, Book A, Procedure MQPS 0-4*.

4.1.4 The term 'fusion weld', for the purpose of these requirements, is applicable to welded joints made by manual, semi-automatic, or automatic electric arc welding processes. Special consideration will be given to the proposed use of other fusion welding processes.

### 4.2 Cutting and forming of shells and heads

4.2.1 Cut or chipped surfaces which will not be subsequently covered by weld metal are to be ground smooth.

4.2.2 Shell plates and heads are to be formed to the correct contour up to the extreme edge of the plate.

4.2.3 Vessels manufactured from carbon or carbon manganese steel plates (see Table 3.4.1 in Chapter 3, grades 360AR to 510FG), which have been hot formed or locally heated for forming, are to be re-heat treated in accordance with the original supplied condition on completion of this operation. Vessels formed from plates supplied in the as-rolled condition are to be heat treated in accordance with the material manufacturer's recommendations.

4.2.4 Subsequent heat treatment will not be required where steels are supplied in the as-rolled, normalised or normalised and controlled rolled condition, or hot forming is carried out entirely at a temperature within the normalising range.

4.2.5 For alloy steel vessels where hot forming is employed (see Table 3.4.1 in Chapter 3, 13Cr Mo 45, etc.), the plates are to be heat treated on completion in accordance with the material manufacturer's recommendations.

4.2.6 Where plates are cold formed, subsequent heat treatment is to be performed where the internal radius is less than 10 times the plate thickness. For carbon and carbon-manganese steels this heat treatment may be a stress relief heat treatment.

4.2.7 In all cases where hot forming is employed, and for cold forming to a radius less than 10 times the thickness, the manufacturer is required to demonstrate that the forming process and subsequent heat treatments result in acceptable properties.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Section 4

## 4.3 Fitting of shell plates and attachments

4.3.1 The location of welded joints is to be such as to avoid intersecting butt welds in the vessel shell plates. The attachment of nozzles and openings in the vessels are to be arranged to avoid main shell weld seams.

4.3.2 The surfaces of the plates at the longitudinal or circumferential seams are not to be out of alignment with each other, at any point, by more than 10 per cent of the plate thickness. In no case is the misalignment to exceed 3 mm for longitudinal seams, or 4 mm for circumferential seams.

4.3.3 Where a vessel is constructed of plates of different thicknesses (tube plate and wrapper plate), the plates are to be so arranged that their centrelines form a continuous circle.

4.3.4 For longitudinal seams, the thicker plate is to be equally chamfered inside and outside by machining over a circumferential distance not less than twice the difference in thickness, so that the plates are of equal thickness at the longitudinal weld seam. For the circumferential seam, the thickest plate is to be similarly prepared over the same distance longitudinally.

4.3.5 For the circumferential seam, where the difference in the thickness is the same throughout the circumference, the thicker plate is to be reduced in thickness by machining to a taper for a distance not less than four times the offset, so that the two plates are of equal thickness at the weld joint. A parallel portion may be provided between the end of the taper and the weld edge preparation; alternatively, if so desired, the width of the weld may be included as part of the smooth taper to the thicker plate.

4.3.6 All attachments (lugs, brackets, reinforcing plates, etc.) are to conform to the shape of the surface to which they are attached.

## 4.4 Welding

4.4.1 Welding procedures are to be established for all welds joining pressure containing parts and for welds made directly onto pressure containing parts. Welding procedures are to be based on qualification tests performed in accordance with Chapter 12.

4.4.2 In all cases where tack welds, in the root of the weld seam, are used to retain plates or parts in position prior to welding, they are to be removed in the process of welding the seam.

4.4.3 Steel backing strips may be used for the circumferential seams of Class 2/1, Class 2/2 and Class 3 pressure vessels and are to be the same nominal composition as the plates to be welded.

4.4.4 Fillet welds are to be made to ensure proper fusion and penetration at the root of the fillet. At least two layers of weld metal are to be deposited at each weld affixing branch pipes, flanges and seatings.

4.4.5 The outer surface of completed welds is to be at least flush with the surface of the plates joined, and any weld reinforcement is to provide a smooth transition and gradual change of section with the plate surface.

4.4.6 Where attachment of lugs, brackets, branches, manhole frames, reinforcement plates and other members are to be made to the main pressure shell by welding, this is to be to the same standard as required for the main vessel shell construction.

4.4.7 The main weld seams and all welded attachments made to pressure containing parts are to be completed prior to post weld heat treatment.

4.4.8 The finish of welds attaching pressure parts and non-pressure parts to the main pressure shell is to be such as to allow satisfactory examination of the welds. In the case of Class 1 and Class 2/1 pressure vessels, these welds are to be ground smooth, if necessary, to provide a suitable finish for examination.

## 4.5 General requirements for routine weld production tests

4.5.1 Routine weld production tests are specified as a means of monitoring the quality of the welded joints and are required for pressure vessel Classes 1, 2/1 and 2/2.

4.5.2 Routine production test plates are required during the manufacture of vessels and as part of the initial approval test programme for Class 1 vessel manufacturers, refer to MQPS 0-4.

4.5.3 Routine production weld tests are not required for Class 3 pressure vessels unless there are doubts about the weld quality where check tests may be requested by the Surveyor.

4.5.4 Routine production test plates are not required for circumferential seams of cylindrical pressure vessels. Spherical vessels are to have one test plate prepared having a welded joint which is a simulation of the circumferential seams.

4.5.5 Routine production weld tests may be requested by the Surveyor where there is reason to doubt the quality of workmanship.

## 4.6 Production test plate assembly requirements

4.6.1 Two test plates and one complete test assembly, of sufficient dimensions to provide all the required mechanical test specimens is to be prepared for each vessel and is to be welded as a continuation and simulation of the longitudinal weld joint.



# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Section 4

4.6.2 For Class 2/2 vessels, where a large number are made concurrently at the same works using the same welding procedure and the plate thicknesses do not vary by more than 5 mm, one test may be performed for each 37 m of longitudinal plus circumferential weld seam. In these cases the thickness of the test plate is to be equal to the thickest shell plate used in the construction.

4.6.3 Where the vessel size or design results in a small number of longitudinal weld seams, one test assembly may be prepared for testing provided that the welding details are the same for each seam.

4.6.4 Test plate materials are to be the same grade, thickness and supply condition and from the same cast as that of the vessel shell. The test assembly is to be welded at the same time as the vessel weld to which it relates and is to be supported so that distortion during welding is minimised.

4.6.5 As far as practicable, welding is to be performed by different welders where there is a requirement for several routine tests to be welded.

4.6.6 The test assembly may be detached from the vessel weld only after the Surveyor has performed a visual examination and has added his mark or stamp. Straightening of test welds prior to mechanical testing is not permitted.

4.6.7 Where the pressure vessel is required to be subjected to post-weld heat treatment, the test weld is to be heat treated, after welding, in accordance with the same requirements. This may be performed separately from the vessel.

## 4.7 Inspection and testing

4.7.1 The test weld is to be subjected to the same type of non-destructive examination and acceptance criteria as specified for the weld seam to which the test relates. Non-destructive examination is to be performed prior to removing specimens for mechanical testing, but after any post-weld heat treatment.

4.7.2 The test weld is to be sectioned to remove the number and type of test specimens for mechanical testing as given in 4.8.

## 4.8 Mechanical requirements

4.8.1 The routine production test assembly is to be machined to provide the following test specimens:

- Tensile.
- Bend.
- Hardness.
- Impact (see Table 13.4.1).
- Macrograph and hardness survey of full weld section.

4.8.2 One set of specimens for mechanical testing are to be removed, as shown in Figs. 13.4.1 or 13.4.2 as appropriate for the Class of approval. Impact tests are to be removed and tested where required by Table 13.4.1.

4.8.3 **Longitudinal tensile test for weld metal.** An all-weld metal longitudinal tensile test is required. For thicknesses in excess of 20 mm, where more than one welding process or type of consumable has been used to complete the joint, additional longitudinal tests are required from the respective area of the weld. This does not apply to the welding process or consumables used solely to deposit the root weld. Specimens are to be tested in accordance with the following requirements:

- The diameter and gauge length of the test specimen is to be in accordance with Ch 11,2.1.1.
- For carbon and carbon-manganese steels the tensile strength of the weld metal is to be not less than the minimum specified for the plate material and not more than 145 N/mm<sup>2</sup> above this value. The percentage elongation,  $A$ , is to be not less than that given by:  

$$A = (980 - R) / 21,6$$
 but not less than 80 per cent of the minimum elongation specified for the plate

where

$R$  is the tensile strength, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, obtained from the all weld metal tensile tests.

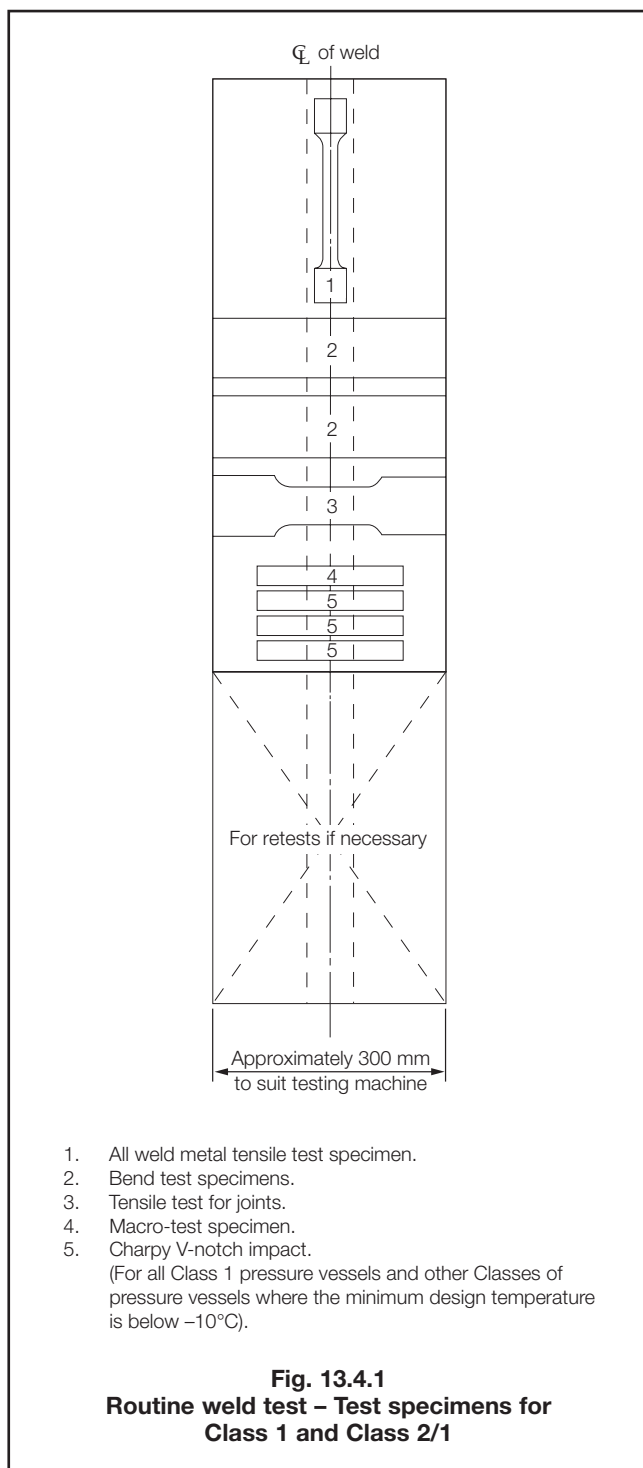
- For other materials the tensile strength and percentage elongation is not to be less than that specified for the base materials welded.

4.8.4 **Transverse tensile test for joint.** Transverse tensile test specimens are to be removed and tested in accordance with the following requirements:

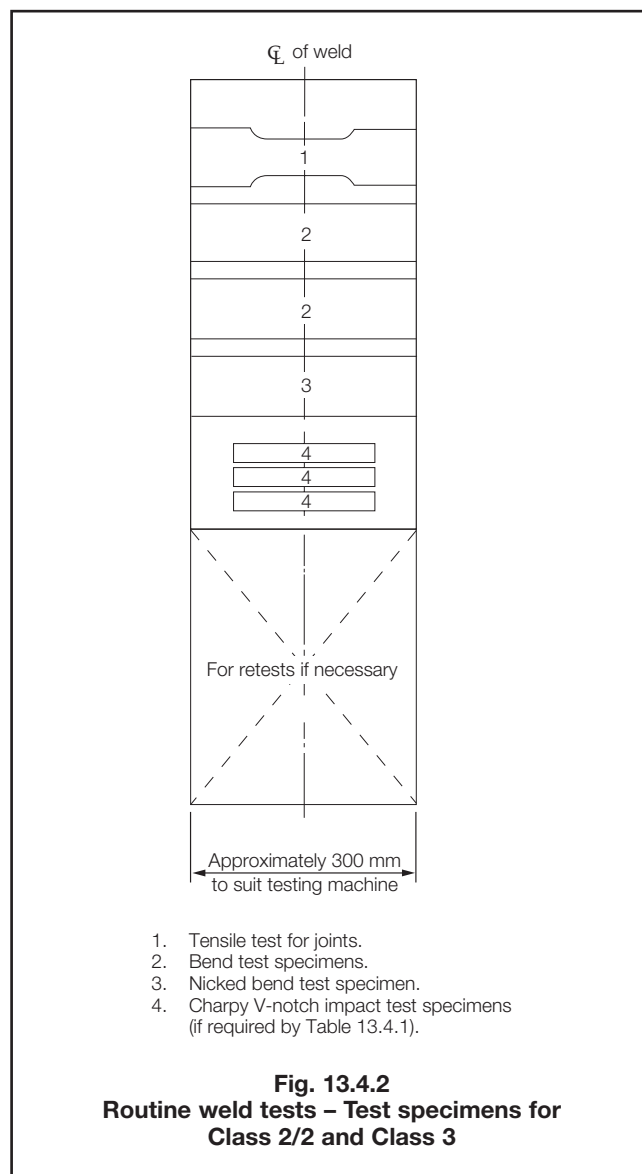
- One reduced section tensile test specimen is to be cut transversely to the weld to the dimensions shown in Ch 11,2.1.1 and the weld reinforcement is to be removed.

**Table 13.4.1 Impact test requirements**

Pressure vessel Class	Minimum design temperature	Plate material thickness $t$	Impact test temperature
Class 1 see Note	−10°C or above	All	5°C below the minimum design temperature or 20°C, whichever is the lower
All Classes	Below −10°C	$t \leq 20$ mm	5°C below the minimum design temperature
		20 mm < $t \leq 40$ mm	10°C below the minimum design temperature
		Over 40 mm	Subject to special consideration
NOTE Impact testing is not required for Classes 2/1, 2/2 and 3.			



- (b) In general, where the plate thickness exceeds 30 mm, or where the capacity of the tensile test machine prevents full thickness tests, each tensile test may be made up of several reduced section specimens, provided that the whole thickness of the weld is subjected to testing.
- (c) The tensile strength obtained is to be not less than the minimum specified tensile strength for the plate material, and the location of the fracture is to be reported.



**4.8.5 Transverse bend test.** The bend test specimens are to be removed and tested in accordance with the following requirements:

- (a) Two bend test specimens of rectangular section are to be cut transversely to the weld, one bent with the outer surface of the weld in tension (face bend), and the other with the inner surface in tension (root bend).
- (b) The specimen dimensions are to be in accordance with Chapter 2.
- (c) Each specimen is to be mounted on roller supports with the centre of the weld midway between the supports. The former is to have a diameter specified in Ch 12,2.7.6 depending on the material being welded.
- (d) After bending through an angle of at least  $180^{\circ}$  there is to be no crack or defect exceeding 1,5 mm measured across the specimen or 3 mm measured along the specimen. Premature failure at the edges of the specimen is not to be cause for rejection, unless this is associated with a weld defect.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Section 4

**4.8.6 Macro-specimen and hardness survey.** A macro examination specimen is to be removed from the test assembly near the end where welding started. The specimen is to include the complete cross-section of the weld and the heat affected zone. The specimen is to be prepared and examined in accordance with the following requirements:

- (a) The cross-section of the specimen is to be ground, polished and etched to clearly reveal the weld runs, and the heat affected zones.
- (b) The specimen is to show an even weld profile that blends smoothly with the base material and have satisfactory penetration and fusion, and an absence of significant inclusions or other defects.
- (c) Where there is doubt in the condition of the weld as shown by macro-etching, the area concerned is to be microscopically examined.
- (d) For carbon, carbon manganese and low alloy steels, a Vickers hardness survey is to be performed on the macro-specimen using either a 5 kg or 10 kg load. Testing is to include the base material, the weld and the heat affected zone. Hardness scans on the cross-section are to be performed as specified in Fig. 12.2.8 in Chapter 12. The maximum recorded hardness is to not exceed 350 Hv.

**4.8.7 Charpy V-notch impact test.** Charpy V notch impact test specimens are to be prepared and tested as required by Table 13.4.1 and in accordance with the following requirements:

- (a) The dimensions and tolerances of the specimens are to be in accordance with Chapter 2.
- (b) Charpy V-notch impact specimens are to be removed with the notch perpendicular to the plate surface.
- (c) Specimens are to be removed for testing from the weld centreline and the heat affected zone (fusion line and fusion line + 2 mm locations) detailed in Fig. 12.2.6 or Fig. 12.2.7 in Chapter 12, as appropriate. Heat affected zone impact tests may be omitted where the minimum design temperature is above +20°C.
- (d) For thicknesses in excess of 20 mm, where more than one welding process or type of consumable has been used to complete the joint, impact tests are required from the respective areas of the weld. This does not apply to the welding process or consumables used solely to deposit the root weld.
- (e) The average energy of a set of three specimens is not to be less than 27 J or the minimum specified for the base material, whichever is the higher. The minimum energy for each individual specimen is to meet the requirements of Ch 1,4.5.2.

**4.8.8 Nick break bend tests.** A nick bend or fracture test specimen is to be a minimum of 100 mm long measured along the weld direction and is to be tested in accordance with and meet the requirements of the following:

- (a) The specimen is to have a slot cut into each side along the centreline of the weld and perpendicular to the plate surface.
- (b) The specimen is to be bent along the weld centreline until fracture occurs and the fracture faces are to be examined for defects. The weld is to be sound, with no evidence of cracking or lack of fusion or penetration and be substantially free from slag inclusions and porosity.

## 4.9 Failure to meet requirements

**4.9.1** Where any test specimen fails to meet the requirements, additional specimens may be removed and re-tested in accordance with Ch 2,1.4.

**4.9.2** Where a routine weld test fails to meet requirements, the welds to which it relates will be considered as not having met the requirements. The reason for the failure is to be established, and the manufacturer is to take such steps as necessary to either

- (a) Remove the affected welds and have them re-welded, or
- (b) Demonstrate that the affected production welds have acceptable properties.

## 4.10 Heat treatment

**4.10.1** Fusion welded pressure vessels, where indicated in Table 13.4.2, are to be heat treated on completion of the welding of the seams and of all attachments to the shell and ends, and before the hydraulic test is carried out.

**4.10.2** Tubes which have been expanded into headers or drums may be seal welded without further post-weld heat treatment.

**4.10.3** Steam and gas turbine cylinders and rotors are to be subjected to post-weld heat treatment irrespective of thickness.

**4.10.4** Where the weld attaches parts of different thicknesses, the thickness to be used when applying the requirements for post-weld heat treatment is to be either the thinner of the two plates for butt welded connections, or the thickness of the shell for welds to flanges, tubeplates and similar connections.

**4.10.5** Care is to be exercised to provide drilled holes in double reinforcing plates and other closed spaces prior to heat treatment.

## 4.11 Basic requirements for heat treatment of fusion welded pressure vessels

**4.11.1** Recommended soaking temperatures and soak durations for post-weld heat treatment are given in Table 13.4.3 for different materials. Where other materials are used for pressure vessel construction, full details of the proposed heat treatment are to be submitted for consideration.

**4.11.2** Where pressure vessels are of dimensions that the whole length cannot be accommodated in the furnace at one time, the pressure vessels may be heated in sections, provided that sufficient overlap is allowed to ensure the heat treatment of the entire length of the longitudinal seam.

**4.11.3** Where materials other than those detailed in Table 13.4.3 are used or where it is proposed to adopt special methods of heat treatment, full particulars are to be submitted for consideration. In such cases, it may be necessary to carry out tests to show the effect of the proposed heat treatment.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

## Chapter 13

### Section 4

**Table 13.4.2 Post-weld heat treatment requirements**

Type of steel	Plate thickness above which post-weld heat treatment (PWHT) is required	
	Steam raising plant	Other pressure vessels
Carbon and carbon/manganese steels without low temperature impact values	20 mm	30 mm
Carbon and carbon/manganese steels with low temperature impact values	20 mm	40 mm
1Cr ½Mo	All thicknesses	All thicknesses
2¼Cr 1Mo	All thicknesses	All thicknesses
½Cr ½Mo ¼V	All thicknesses	All thicknesses
Other alloy steels	Subject to special consideration	

**Table 13.4.3 Post-weld soak temperatures and times**

Material type	Soak temperature (°C)	Soak period
Carbon and carbon/manganese grades	580–620°	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
1Cr ½Mo	620–660°	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
2¼Cr 1Mo	650–690°	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
½Cr ½Mo ¼V	670–720°	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
NOTE For materials supplied in the tempered condition, the post-weld heat treatment temperature is to be lower than the material tempering temperature.		

### 4.12 Non-Destructive Examination of welds

4.12.1 Non-Destructive Examinations (NDE) of pressure vessel welds are to be carried out in accordance with a nationally recognised code or standard.

4.12.2 NDE is not to be applied until an interval of at least 48 hours has elapsed since the completion of welding.

4.12.3 NDE Personnel are to be qualified to an appropriate level of a nationally recognised certification scheme.

4.12.4 Qualification schemes are to include assessments of practical ability for Levels I and II individuals. These examinations are to be made on representative test pieces containing relevant defects.

### 4.13 Extent of NDE for Class 1 pressure vessels

4.13.1 All butt welded seams in drums, shells, headers and test plates, together with tubes or nozzles with outside diameter greater than 170 mm, are subject to 100 per cent volumetric and surface crack detection inspections.

4.13.2 For circumferential butt welds in extruded connections, tubes, headers and other tubular parts with an outside diameter of 170 mm or less, at least 10 per cent of the total number of welds is to be subjected to volumetric examination and surface crack detection inspections.

4.13.3 Full penetration tube sheet to shell welds are to be subjected to 10 per cent volumetric examination and 10 per cent surface inspection, prior to the installation of the tubes.

4.13.4 In addition to the acceptance limits stated in Tables 13.2.4 to 13.2.6, no cracks, lack of fusion, or lack of penetration is permitted.

4.13.5 When an unacceptable indication is detected, the full length of the weld is to be subjected to 100 per cent examination by the same method, testing conditions and acceptance criteria.

### 4.14 Extent of NDE for Class 2/1 pressure vessels

4.14.1 For Class 2/1 pressure vessels, volumetric and surface crack detection inspections are to be applied at selected regions of each main seam. At least 10 per cent of each main seam is to be examined together with the full length of each welded test plate. When an unacceptable indication is detected, at least two additional check points in the seam are to be selected by the surveyor for examination using the same inspection method. Where further unacceptable defects are found either:

- the whole length of weld represented is to be cut out and re-welded and re-examined as if it was a new weld with the test plates being similarly treated, or
- the whole length of the weld represented is to be re-examined using the same inspection methods.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Sections 4 & 5

4.14.2 Butt welds in furnaces, combustion chambers and other pressure parts for fired pressure vessels under external pressure, are to be subject to spot volumetric examination. The minimum length for each check point is to be 300 mm.

4.14.3 The extent of NDE for turbine cylinders and rotors is to be agreed with the Surveyor.

4.14.4 The requirements of 4.13.3, 4.13.4 and 4.13.5 apply to Class 2/1 pressure vessels.

## 4.15 NDE Method

4.15.1 Volumetric examinations may be made by radiography. For welds of nominal thickness greater than or equal to 8 mm, the examinations may be by ultrasonic testing. The preferred method for surface crack detection in ferrous metals is magnetic particle inspection. The preferred method for non-magnetic materials is liquid penetrant inspection.

## 4.16 Evaluation and reports

4.16.1 The manufacturer is to be responsible for the review, interpretation, evaluation and acceptance of the results of NDE. Reports stating compliance, or non-compliance, with the criteria established in the inspection procedure are to be issued. Reports are to comply, as a minimum, with the requirements of Ch 1,5.

## 4.17 Repair to welds

4.17.1 Where non-destructive examinations reveal unacceptable defects in the welded seams, they are to be repaired in accordance with 1.15 and are to be shown by further non-destructive examinations to have been eliminated.

4.17.2 In the case where spot radiography has revealed unacceptable defects, the requirements of 4.14.1 apply.

4.17.3 Where post-weld heat treatment is required in accordance with 4.10, weld repairs to the vessel or cylindrical shell or parts attaching to the shell are to be subjected to a subsequent heat treatment in accordance with 4.10.

4.17.4 In the event of unsuccessful weld repair of a defect, only one more repair attempt may be made of the same defect. Any subsequent repairs may require the re-repair excavation to be enlarged to remove the original repair heat affected zone.

## Section 5 Specific requirements for pressure pipework

### 5.1 Scope

5.1.1 Fabrication of pipework is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of this Section and the general requirements given in Section 1, unless more stringent requirements have been specified.

5.1.2 Piping systems are to be constructed in accordance with the approved plans and specifications.

5.1.3 Fabricated pipework will be accepted only if manufactured by firms that have demonstrated that they have the facilities and equipment and are competent to undertake the quality of welding required for the Class of pipework proposed.

### 5.2 Manufacture and workmanship

5.2.1 Pipe welding may be performed using manual, semi-automatic or fully automatic electric arc processes. The use of oxy-acetylene welding will be limited to Class 3 pipework in carbon steel or carbon/manganese material that is not for carrying flammable fluids and limited to butt joints in pipes not exceeding 100 mm diameter or 9,5 mm thickness.

5.2.2 Welding of pipework, including attachment welds directly to pressure retaining parts is to be performed in accordance with approved welding procedures that have been qualified in accordance with Chapter 12.

5.2.3 Where the work involves a significant number of branch connections, tests will be required to demonstrate that the type of joint(s) and welding techniques employed are capable of achieving the required quality.

5.2.4 Where pressure pipework is assembled and butt welded insitu, the piping is to be arranged well clear of adjacent structures to allow sufficient access for preheating, welding, heat-treatment and non-destructive examination of the joints.

5.2.5 Alignment of pipe butt welds is to be in accordance with Table 13.5.1 unless more stringent requirements have been agreed. Where fusible inserts are used, the alignment is to be within 0,5 mm in all cases.

5.2.6 The number of welds is to be kept to a minimum. The minimum separation between welds, measured toe-to-toe, is to be not be less than 75 mm. Where it is not possible to achieve this, adjacent welds are to be subjected to surface crack detection NDE.

5.2.7 Welding consumables and fusible root inserts, where used, are to be suitable for the materials being joined.

## Requirements for Welded Construction

## Chapter 13

## Section 5

**Table 13.5.1 Pipe butt weld alignment tolerances**

Pipe size	Maximum permitted misalignment
$D < 150 \text{ mm}$ and $t \leq 6 \text{ mm}$	1,0 mm or 25% of $t$ , whichever is the lesser
$D < 300 \text{ mm}$ and $t \leq 9,5 \text{ mm}$	1,5 mm or 25% of $t$ , whichever is the lesser
$D \geq 300$ and $t > 9,5 \text{ mm}$	2,0 mm or 25% of $t$ , whichever is the lesser
where $D$ = pipe internal diameter $t$ = pipe wall thickness	

5.2.8 Acceptable methods of flange attachment are to be used, see Fig. 12.2.2 in Pt 5, Ch 12 of the Rules for Ships. Where backing rings are used with flange type (a) they are to fit closely to the bore of the pipe and be removed after welding. The rings are to be made of the same material as the pipes. The use of flange types (b) and (c) with alloy steel pipes is limited to pipes up to and including 168,3 mm outside diameter.

5.2.9 Where socket welded fittings are employed, the diametrical clearance between the outside diameter of the pipe and the base of the fitting is not to exceed 0,8 mm, and a gap of approximately 1,5 mm is to be provided between the end of the pipe and the internal step at the bottom of the socket.

5.2.10 For welding of carbon, carbon/manganese and low alloy steels, the preheat to be applied will be dependent on the material grade, thickness and hydrogen grading of the welding consumable in accordance with Table 13.5.2, unless welding procedure testing indicates that a higher level is required.

5.2.11 Welding without filler metal is generally not permitted for welding of duplex stainless steel materials.

5.2.12 All welds in high pressure, high temperature pipelines are to have a smooth surface finish and even contour; and where necessary, made smooth by grinding.

5.2.13 Check tests of the quality of the welding are to be carried out periodically.

**5.3 Heat treatment after bending of pipes**

5.3.1 After forming or bending of pipes, the heat treatments specified in this Section are to be applied unless the pipe material manufacturer specifies or recommends other requirements.

5.3.2 Generally, hot forming is to be carried out within the normalising temperature range. When carried out within this temperature range, no subsequent heat treatment is required for carbon and carbon/manganese steels. For alloy steels, 1Cr ½Mo, 2¼Cr 1Mo and ½Cr ½Mo ¼V, a subsequent tempering heat treatment in accordance with the temperatures and times specified in Table 13.5.3 is required, irrespective of material thickness.

5.3.3 When hot forming is performed outside the normalising temperature range, a subsequent heat treatment in accordance with Table 13.5.3 is required.

5.3.4 After cold forming to a radius (measured at the centreline of the pipe) of less than four times the outside diameter, heat treatment in accordance with Table 13.5.3 is required.

5.3.5 Heat treatment should be carried out in accordance with 1.16.

**Table 13.5.2 Welding preheat levels for pipework**

Material Grade	Thickness, $t$ (mm) see Note 4	Minimum preheat temperature (°C) See Note 1	
		Non-low H <sub>2</sub>	Low H <sub>2</sub> see Note 2
Carbon and carbon/manganese grades: 320 and 360	$t \leq 15$ $t \geq 15$	50 100	10 50
Carbon and carbon/manganese grades: 410, 460 and 490	$t \leq 15$ $t \geq 15$	75 150	20 100
1Cr ½Mo	$t < 13$ $t \geq 13$	See Note 3	100 150
2¼Cr 1Mo	$t < 13$ $t \geq 13$	See Note 3	150 200
½Cr ½Mo ¼V	$t < 13$ $t \geq 13$	See Note 3	150 200
<b>NOTES</b> 1. Where the ambient temperature is 0°C or below, pre-warming of the weld joint is required in all cases. 2. Low hydrogen process or consumables are those that have been tested and have achieved a grading of H15 or better (see Chapter 11). 3. Low hydrogen welding process is required for these materials. 4. $t$ = the thickness of the thinner member for butt welds, and the thicker member for fillet and branch welds.			



# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Section 5

**Table 13.5.3 Heat treatment after bending of pipes**

Type of steel	Heat treatment required
Carbon and carbon/manganese: Grades 320, 360, 410, 460 and 490	Normalise at 880 to 940°C
1Cr ½Mo	Normalise at 900 to 940°C, followed by tempering at 640 to 720°C
2¼Cr 1Mo	Normalise at 900 to 960°C, followed by tempering at 650 to 780°C
½Cr ½Mo ¼V	Normalise at 930 to 980°C, followed by tempering at 670 to 720°C
Other alloy steels	Subject to special consideration

5.3.6 Bending procedures and subsequent heat treatment for other alloy steels will be subject to special consideration.

## 5.4 Post-weld heat treatment

5.4.1 Post-weld heat treatment is to be carried out in accordance with the general requirements specified in 1.16 and 4.10.

5.4.2 The thickness limits, the recommended soaking temperatures and periods, for application of post-weld heat treatment are given in Table 13.5.4.

5.4.3 Where the use of oxy-acetylene welding is proposed, due consideration is to be given to the need for normalising and tempering after such welding.

## 5.5 Non-destructive examination

5.5.1 Non-destructive examination of pipe welds is to be carried out in accordance with the general requirements of 1.11 and the following.

5.5.2 Butt welds in Class 1 pipes with an outside diameter greater or equal to 75 mm are to be subject to 100 per cent volumetric and visual inspections. Consideration is to be given to the extent and method of testing applied to butt welds in Class 1 pipes with an outside diameter less than 75 mm.

5.5.3 Butt welds in Class II pipes are to be subjected to at least 10 per cent random volumetric inspections when the outside diameter is greater than 100 mm.

5.5.4 NDE for Class II pipes with a diameter less than 100 mm is to be at the discretion of the Surveyor.

5.5.5 Non-destructive examination procedures, methods and the evaluation of reports are to be in accordance with 4.15 and 4.16.

5.5.6 Fillet welds on flange pipe connections of Class I pipes are to be examined by surface crack detection methods.

## 5.6 Repairs to pipe welds

5.6.1 Where non-destructive examinations reveal unacceptable defects in a weld, the defects are to be removed and repaired in accordance with 1.15. Completed repairs are to be shown by further non-destructive examination to have eliminated the defects.

5.6.2 For pipes with diameter less than 88 mm and where unacceptable defects have been found during non-destructive examination, consideration is to be given to cutting the weld out completely, re-making the weld preparation and re-welding as a new joint (because of the difficulty of making small repairs).

**Table 13.5.4 Post-weld heat treatment requirements for pipework**

Material Grade	Thickness for which post-weld heat treatment is required	Soak temperature (°C) see Note 2	Soak period
Carbon and carbon/manganese grades: 320, 360, 410, 460, 490	Over 30 mm	580–620°C	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
1Cr ½Mo	Over 8 mm	620–660°C	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
2¼Cr 1Mo	All	650–690°C	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
½Cr ½Mo ¼V	All, see Note 1	670–720°C	1 hour per 25 mm of thickness, minimum of 1 hour
<b>NOTES</b> 1. Heat treatment may be omitted for thicknesses up to 8 mm and diameters not exceeding 100 mm provided welding procedure tests have demonstrated acceptable properties in the as welded condition. 2. For materials supplied in the tempered condition, the post weld heat treatment temperature is to be at least 20°C less than the material tempering temperature.			



# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Sections 5, 6 & 7

5.6.3 Where repeated weld repairs have to be made to a weld, only two such attempts are to be permitted, thereafter the weld is to be cut apart and removed, and re-welded as a new joint.

5.6.4 Where pipework requires post-weld heat treatment weld, repairs to the pressure retaining parts are to be subjected to a subsequent heat treatment. Similarly, where welding is conducted after pressure testing, a further pressure test is to be required unless specific exemption has been agreed.

## ■ Section 6 Repair of existing ships by welding

### 6.1 Scope

6.1.1 This Section specifies requirements for repairs made by welding after introduction into service. This Section includes defects to hull structures, machinery, equipment and components. It also includes replacement of structure due to damage or corrosion. These requirements are in addition to those specified in the preceding Sections of this Chapter.

6.1.2 These requirements apply unless the original builder or manufacturer has specified alternative requirements.

### 6.2 Materials used for repairs

6.2.1 Permanent materials used in the repair are to be in accordance with 1.3.

6.2.2 Prior to commencing any welding, the material grades present in the original structure in way of the repair are to be determined. Where the materials cannot be identified from the ship records, test samples may be removed for chemical analysis and mechanical testing in order to determine the material grades.

6.2.3 Temporary materials that are to be welded to the main structure to assist in executing the repairs, but removed on completion, are to be of weldable quality.

### 6.3 Workmanship

6.3.1 A repair method is to be established by the shipyard or repair yard and is to be agreed by the Surveyor prior to commencing any repair work.

6.3.2 The removal of crack-like defects is to be confirmed by visual examination and surface crack detection NDE. This may be augmented by ultrasonic examination where several defects are reported at different depths at the same location.

6.3.3 The weld joint or groove shape used for the repair is to have a profile suitable for welding.

6.3.4 The weld area is to be carefully cleaned, in particular, where the material surface has been painted or has been subjected to an oily or greasy environment.

### 6.4 Non-destructive examination

6.4.1 On completion of welding and any post-weld heat treatment, repair welds are to be subjected to the type and extent of NDE and assessed in accordance with the acceptance criteria specified for the original construction.

6.4.2 Where the original construction specification did not specify NDE, the completed welds are to be, as a minimum, subject to visual examination. Consideration of other NDE techniques is to take due cognisance of the location or the repair within the vessel.

6.4.3 Where spot NDE is applied and defects are found, the extent of NDE is to be increased to include an equal amount of weld length. Where this reveals unacceptable defects, either the whole weld will be rejected or the extent of inspection increased to 100 per cent examination.

6.4.4 The acceptance criteria to be applied are to generally be in accordance with the original build specification. Where conflict of requirements exist, the NDE acceptance limits for welding procedure tests specified in Ch 12,2.5.5 may be used as a minimum requirement.

### 6.5 Repairs to welds defects

6.5.1 Where NDE reveals unacceptable defects, these are to be repaired in accordance with 1.15.

## ■ Section 7 Austenitic and duplex stainless steel – Specific requirements

### 7.1 Scope

7.1.1 This Section specifies requirements for the fabrication and welding of austenitic and duplex stainless steels, and is in addition to those detailed above.

7.1.2 Fabrication and welding of these materials is to be in designated areas which are separated from those used for other materials, such as carbon steels and copper alloys. Where work is performed in the same workshop as other materials, adequate barriers or screening are to be provided to prevent cross-contamination of different material types.

7.1.3 All tools and equipment used are to be suitable for use on stainless steel materials. The use of tools or equipment made of carbon steel materials is to be avoided. It is permissible to use carbon steel tools provided that the surfaces that come into contact with the austenitic and duplex stainless materials are protected with an austenitic or nickel base alloy.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

# Chapter 13

Sections 7 & 8

## 7.2 Design

7.2.1 Care is to be exercised in the weld design to prevent crevice corrosion from occurring, particularly where austenitic materials are used. In this respect fillet welds and partial penetration welds are to be continuous and welded on both sides of the joint.

## 7.3 Forming and bending

7.3.1 Materials that are cold formed, such that the total strain exceeds 15 per cent (i.e. where the formed diameter to thickness ratio is less than 6:1) are to be subjected to a subsequent softening heat treatment in accordance with the material manufacturers recommendations, unless it is demonstrated by testing that the material properties are acceptable in the 'as formed' condition.

7.3.2 Materials may be hot formed provided that a subsequent softening heat treatment is carried out. The forming process and the subsequent heat treatment are to be in accordance with the material manufacturer's recommendations.

## 7.4 Fabrication and welding

7.4.1 Welding may be performed using shielded manual arc welding (SMAW), gas tungsten arc welding (GTAW), MIG/MAG welding (GMAW), flux cored arc welding (FCAW), plasma arc welding (PAW) and submerged arc welding (SAW). The use of other welding processes will be subject to special consideration and will require submission of the process details, consumables and the weld properties achieved.

7.4.2 Misalignment may be corrected by the application of steady even force (e.g., using hydraulic or screw-type clamps). Hammering or heating is not permitted.

7.4.3 For full penetration welds, a backing or shielding gas is to be provided to prevent oxidation of the root weld. The backing gas is to be maintained until completion of, at least, the root and first fill layer. The backing gas may be omitted where the weld is back gouged or ground to remove the root weld.

7.4.4 Shielding and backing gases are to be an inert type of high purity and oxygen free.

7.4.5 For welding of Duplex stainless, the use of backing gases that contain up to 2 per cent nitrogen is permitted.

7.4.6 Welding of duplex stainless steels without filler metal is generally not permitted.

7.4.7 Degreasing agents, acid solutions, washing water etc. used for cleaning and any marking crayons and paints used are to be free of chlorides.

## 7.5 Repairs

7.5.1 Correction of distortion by the application of heat is not permitted.

## Section 8 Specific requirements for welded aluminium

### 8.1 Scope

8.1.1 This Section specifies requirements for the fabrication and welding of aluminium alloys, and is in addition to those detailed in this Chapter.

8.1.2 Fabrication and welding of these materials is to be in designated areas which are separated from those used for other materials, such as carbon steels, stainless steels and copper alloys. Where work is performed in the same workshop as other materials, adequate barriers or screening are to be provided to prevent cross-contamination of different material types.

8.1.3 All tools and equipment used are to be suitable for use on aluminium alloy materials. The use of tools made of carbon steel materials is to be avoided where possible.

### 8.2 Forming and bending

8.2.1 Aluminium alloys are to be subject to cold forming and cold bending only.

### 8.3 Fabrication and welding

8.3.1 Welding may be performed using gas tungsten arc welding (GTAW) or metal inert gas welding (GMAW), MIG/MAG welding (GMAW), or variants thereof. The use of other welding processes such as friction stir welding (FSW) will be subject to special consideration and will require submission of the process details, consumables and the weld properties achieved.

8.3.2 A comparison of the mechanical properties for selected welded and unwelded alloys is given in Table 13.8.1.

8.3.3 Misalignment may be corrected by the application of steady even force (e.g., using hydraulic or screw-type clamps). Hammering or heating is not permitted.

8.3.4 Correction of distortion by the application of heat is not permitted.

### 8.4 Non-destructive examination

8.4.1 The requirements of Ch 13,1.11 and Ch 13,2.12 apply; however, acceptance criteria applicable to aluminium are to be in accordance with Table 13.8.2 and Table 13.8.3.

## Requirements for Welded Construction

## Chapter 13

## Section 8

**Table 13.8.1 Minimum mechanical properties for aluminium alloys**

Alloy	Condition	0,2% proof stress, N/mm <sup>2</sup>		Ultimate tensile strength, N/mm <sup>2</sup>	
		Unwelded	Welded (see Note 4)	Unwelded	Welded (see Note 4)
5083	O/H111	125	125	275	275
5083	H112	125	125	275	275
5083	H116/H321	215	125	305	275
5383	O/H111	145	145	290	290
5383	H116/H321	220	145	305	290
5086	O/H111	100	95	240	240
5086	H112	125 (see Note 2)	95	250 (see Note 2)	240
5086	H116/H321	195	95	275	240
5059	O/H111	160	160	330	330
5059	H116/H321	260	160	360	300
5456	O	125	125	285	285
5456	H116	200 (see Note 5)	125	290 (see Note 5)	285
5456	H321	215 (see Note 5)	125	305 (see Note 5)	285
5754	O/H111	80	80	190	190
6005A (see Note 1)	T5/T6 Extruded: Open Profile Extruded: Closed Profile	215	100	260	160
		215	100	250	160
6061 (see Note 1)	T5/T6 Rolled Extruded: Open Profile Extruded: Closed Profile	240	125	290	160
		240	125	260	160
		205	125	245	160
6082	T5/T6 Rolled Extruded: Open Profile Extruded: Closed Profile	240	125	280	190
		260	125	310	190
		240	125	290	190

## NOTES

1. These alloys are not normally acceptable for application in direct contact with sea-water.
2. See also Table 8.1.3 or Table 8.1.4 in Chapter 8.
3. The mechanical properties to be used to determine scantlings in other types and grades of aluminium alloy manufactured to National or proprietary standards and specifications are to be individually agreed with LR, see *a/so* Ch 8, 1.1.5.
4. Where detail structural analysis is carried out, 'unwelded' stress values may be used away from heat affected zones and weld lines, see *a/so* Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.1.3 of the Rules for Ships.
5. For thickness less than 12,5 mm, the minimum unwelded 0,2% proof stress is to be taken as 230 N/mm<sup>2</sup> and the minimum tensile strength is to be taken as 315 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

8.4.2 Alternative NDE acceptance criteria will be subject to special consideration provided that they are equivalent to these requirements.

# Requirements for Welded Construction

## Chapter 13

Section 8

**Table 13.8.2 Acceptance criteria for surface imperfections of aluminium**

Surface discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria
Crack	100	Not permitted
Lack of fusion	401	Not permitted
Incomplete root penetration in butt joints welded from one side	4021	Not permitted
Surface pore	2017	$d \leq 0,3s$ or $0,3a$ or $1,5$ mm (whichever is the lesser)
Linear porosity (see Note 1)	2014	Not permitted
Uniformly distributed porosity (see Note 2)	2012	$\leq 1\%$ of area
Clustered porosity	2013	Not permitted
Continuous undercut	5011	$h \leq 0,1t$ or $0,5$ mm (whichever is the lesser)
Intermittent undercut	5012	$h \leq 0,1t$ or $1,0$ mm (whichever is the lesser)
Excess weld metal (see Note 3)	502	$h \leq 1,5$ mm + $0,15b$ or $8$ mm (whichever is the lesser)
Excess penetration	504	$h \leq 4$ mm
Root concavity (see Note 3)	515	$h \leq 0,1t$ or $1$ mm (whichever is the lesser)
Linear misalignment (see Notes 4 and 5)	507	$h \leq 0,1t$ or $1,0$ mm (whichever is the lesser)
Angular misalignment	508	(see Note 6)
Symbols		
$a$ = nominal throat thickness of a fillet weld $b$ = width of weld reinforcement $d$ = diameter of a gas pore $h$ = height or width of an imperfection $s$ = nominal butt weld thickness $t$ = wall or plate thickness (nominal size)		
NOTES 1. For these acceptance criteria, linear porosity is to be considered as three aligned gas pores in a length of 25 mm. 2. To be in accordance with EN ISO 10042. 3. A smooth transition is required. 4. Linear misalignment is to be a maximum of 0,5 mm in highly stressed areas. For other areas, the linear misalignment is to be a maximum of 1,0 mm locally, where the sum of the length of imperfection is not more than 10% of the weld length. 5. The limits for linear misalignment relate to deviations from the correct position. Unless otherwise specified, the correct position is that when the centrelines coincide. 6. Angular misalignment shall be mutually agreed between the designer and the fabricator.		

## Requirements for Welded Construction

## Chapter 13

## Section 8

Table 13.8.3 Acceptance criteria for internal imperfections of aluminium

Internal discontinuity	Classification according to ISO 6520-1	Acceptance criteria (see Note 1)
Crack	100	Not permitted
Lack of fusion	401	Not permitted
Incomplete penetration	402	Not permitted
Single gas pore	2017	$d \leq 0,3s$ or $0,3a$ or 5 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Linear porosity	2014	Assess as lack of fusion
Uniformly distributed porosity (see Note 1)	2012	$0,5 < t < 3$ mm $\leq 2\%$ of area $3 < t < 12$ mm $\leq 4\%$ of area $12 < t < 30$ mm $\leq 6\%$ of area $t > 30$ mm $\leq 8\%$ of area
Clustered porosity (see Note 1)	2013	$dA \leq 20$ mm or $wp$ (whichever is the lesser)
Elongated cavity	2015	$l \leq 0,3s$ or $0,3a$ or 4 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Wormhole	2016	
Oxide inclusion (see Note 2)	303	$l \leq 0,5s$ or $0,5a$ or 5 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Tungsten inclusion	3041	$l \leq 0,3s$ or $0,3a$ or 4 mm (whichever is the lesser)
Copper inclusion	3042	Not permitted
Multiple imperfections in any cross-section	—	The sum of the acceptable individual imperfections in any cross-section is not to exceed $0,3t$ or $0,3a$ (whichever is the lesser)
Symbols		
$a$ = nominal throat thickness of a fillet weld $b$ = width of weld reinforcement $d$ = diameter of a gas pore $h$ = height or width of an imperfection $s$ = nominal butt weld thickness $t$ = wall or plate thickness (nominal size) $wp$ = width of weld or width or height of cross-sectional area $dA$ = diameter of area surrounding gas pores $l$ = length of imperfection in longitudinal direction of weld		
NOTES		
1. Porosity is to be determined in accordance with ISO 10042. The requirements for a single gas pore are to be met by all the gas pores within this circle. Systematic clustered porosity is not permitted.		
2. If several oxide inclusions $l_1, l_2, l_3, \dots$ exist in one cross-section, then they are summed: $l = l_1 + l_2 + l_3 + \dots + l_n$ .		



## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials**
- 3 **Testing procedures**
- 4 **Plastics pipes and fittings**
- 5 **Control of material quality for composite construction**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 Provision is made in this Chapter for the manufacture and testing of plastics pipes, together with approval requirements for base materials used in the construction or repair of composite vessels, other marine structures, piping and any associated machinery components and fittings which are to be certified or are intended for classification.

1.1.2 These materials and products are to be manufactured and surveyed in accordance with the general requirements of Sections 1, 2 and 3 of this Chapter; and LR's *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships (MQPS) Book K*, see Ch 1.2.2.2, which, in addition to the test programme, also details the procedures for application for approval of manufacturers and products and details of the information to be supplied by the manufacturer.

1.1.3 For base materials, the manufacturer's works do not require approval by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR'), however the Quality Control procedures must be acceptable in accordance with the appropriate Section of this Chapter.

1.1.4 Where a requirement exists for the material to be approved, the test requirements and information to be submitted for approval of polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials are defined in Sections 2 and 3.

1.1.5 Specific material requirements relating to the design and manufacture of plastics pipes and fittings are indicated in Section 4, with the material requirements for hull structures contained in Section 5.

1.1.6 For Builders constructing composite vessels, Section 5 provides the minimum material control requirements for acceptance of the works by LR.

1.1.7 For the purposes of these Rules a 'plastics material' is regarded as an organic substance which may be thermosetting or thermoplastic and which, in its finished state, may contain reinforcements or additives.

1.1.8 Materials not listed in 2.1.1 may be considered for approval on a case-by-case basis. The approved test results will be listed on the issued certificate. Subject to satisfactory service experience and validation of approval, the material may be entered in 2.1.1 of the Rules.

### 1.2 Information on material quality and application

1.2.1 Where plastics products are to be classed or certified, the manufacturer is to provide the material producer with such information as is essential to ensure that the base materials to be used are in accordance with the approval requirements and the product specification. This information is to include any survey requirements for the materials.

### 1.3 Manufacture

1.3.1 Plastics products are to be made at works which have been approved (or accepted) for the type of product being supplied using base materials that have been approved.

1.3.2 Base materials are to be approved in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2 and 3.

1.3.3 In order that a works can be approved (or accepted), the manufacturer is required to demonstrate to the satisfaction of LR that the necessary manufacturing and testing facilities are available and are supervised by qualified personnel. A specified programme of tests is to be carried out under the supervision of the Surveyors, and the results are to be to the satisfaction of LR. When a manufacturer has more than one works, the approval (or acceptance) is only valid for the individual works which carried out the test programme.

1.3.4 In order to maintain approval, the manufacturer is required to confirm in writing that there have been no changes in the formulation or production process for the material in question and that the site of manufacture remains unchanged.

### 1.4 Survey procedure

1.4.1 The Surveyors are to be allowed access to all relevant parts of the works and are to be provided with the necessary facilities and information to enable them to verify that manufacture is being carried out in accordance with the approved procedure. Facilities are also to be provided for the selection of test material, the witnessing of specified tests and the examination of materials, as required by the Rules.

1.4.2 Prior to the provision of test material for acceptance, manufacturers are to provide the Surveyors with details of the order, specification and any special conditions additional to the Rule requirements.

1.4.3 Before final acceptance, all test materials are to be confirmed as typical of the manufactured product and be submitted to the specified tests and examinations under conditions acceptable to the Surveyors. The results are to comply with the specification and any Rule requirements and are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.



1.4.4 These specified tests and examinations are to be carried out prior to the despatch of finished products from the manufacturer's works.

1.4.5 In the event of any material proving unsatisfactory, during subsequent working, machining or fabrication, it is to be rejected, notwithstanding any previous certification.

## 1.5 Alternative survey procedure

1.5.1 Where materials are manufactured in quantity by semi-continuous or continuous processes under closely controlled conditions, an alternative system for testing and inspection may be adopted, subject to the agreement of the Surveyors.

1.5.2 In order to be considered for approval, manufacturers are to comply with the requirements of Ch 1,2.

## 1.6 Post-cure heating

1.6.1 Post-cure heating is to be carried out in properly constructed ovens which are efficiently maintained and have adequate means for control and recording of temperature. The oven is to be such as to allow the whole item to be uniformly heated to the necessary temperature. In the case of very large components which require post-cure heating, alternative methods will be specially considered.

## 1.7 Test material

1.7.1 Sufficient material is to be provided for the preparation of the test specimens detailed in the specific requirements. It is, however, in the interests of manufacturers to provide additional material for any re-tests which may be necessary, as insufficient or unacceptable test material may be a cause for rejection.

1.7.2 Where test materials, (either base materials or product sample materials) are selected by the Surveyor or a person nominated by LR, these are to be suitably identified by markings which are to be maintained during the preparation of the test specimens.

1.7.3 All base material samples for testing are to be prepared under conditions that are as close as possible to those under which the product is to be manufactured. Where this is not possible, a suitable procedure is to be agreed with the Surveyor.

1.7.4 During production, check test samples are to be provided as requested by the Surveyor.

1.7.5 Should the taking of these samples prove impossible, model samples are to be prepared concurrently with production. The procedure for the preparation of these samples is to be agreed with the Surveyor.

1.7.6 The dimensions, number and orientation of test specimens are to be in accordance with the requirements of a National or International Standard acceptable to LR.

## 1.8 Re-test procedure

1.8.1 Where test material fails to meet the specified requirement, two additional tests of the same type may be made at the discretion of the Surveyor.

1.8.2 Where an individual test result in a group, (minimum five) deviates from the mean by more than two standard deviations in either the higher or lower direction, the result is to be excluded and a re-test made. Excluded results of tests are to be reported with confirmation that they have been excluded. Only one exclusion is acceptable in any group of tests.

## 1.9 Visual and non-destructive examination

1.9.1 Prior to the final acceptance, surface inspection, verification of dimensions and non-destructive examination are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements detailed in Sections 3, 4 and 5 of this Chapter.

1.9.2 When there is visible evidence to doubt the soundness of any material or component, such as flaws or suspicious surface marks, it is to be the responsibility of the manufacturer to prove the quality of the material by any suitable method.

## 1.10 Rectification of defective material

1.10.1 Small surface blemishes may be removed by mechanical means provided that, after such treatment, the dimensions are acceptable, the area is proved free from structural defects and the rectification has been completed to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

1.10.2 Repair procedures for larger defects are to be agreed with LR prior to implementation.

## 1.11 Identification of products and base materials

1.11.1 The manufacturer of approved materials is to identify each batch with a unique number.

1.11.2 The manufacturer of plastics products is to adopt a system of identification which will enable all finished products to be traced to the original batches of base materials. Surveyors are to be given full facilities for tracing any component or material when required.

1.11.3 When any item has been identified by the personal mark of a Surveyor, or deputy, this is not to be removed until an acceptable new identification mark has been made by a Surveyor. Failure to comply with this condition will render the item liable to rejection.

1.11.4 Before any pipe or fitting is finally accepted it is to be clearly marked by the manufacturer in at least one place with the particulars detailed in the appropriate specific requirements as given in Section 4.

1.11.5 Where a number of identical items are securely fastened together in bundles, the manufacturer need only brand the top item of each bundle. Alternatively, a durable label giving the required particulars may be attached to each bundle.

## 1.12 Certification

1.12.1 Certification of the finished product is to be in accordance with the requirements of the appropriate Sections.

## Section 2 Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials

### 2.1 Scope

2.1.1 This Section gives the tests and data required by LR for materials approval and/or inspection purposes on the following:

- (a) Thermoplastic polymers.
- (b) Thermosetting resins.
- (c) Reinforcements.
- (d) Reinforced thermoplastic polymers.
- (e) Reinforced thermosetting resins.
- (f) Core materials.
  - (i) End-grain balsa.
  - (ii) Rigid foams.
  - (iii) Synthetic felt type materials.
- (g) Machinery chocking compounds.
- (h) Rudder and pintle bearings.
- (j) Stern tube bearings.
- (k) Plywoods.
- (l) Adhesive and sealant materials.
- (m) Repair compounds.

### 2.2 Thermoplastic polymers

2.2.1 The following data is to be provided by the manufacturer for each thermoplastic polymer:

- (a) Melting point.
- (b) Melt flow index.
- (c) Density.
- (d) Bulk density.
- (e) Filler content, where applicable.
- (f) Pigment content, where applicable.
- (g) Colour.

2.2.2 Samples for testing are to be prepared by moulding or extrusion under the polymer manufacturer's recommended conditions.

2.2.3 The following tests are to be carried out on these samples:

- (a) Tensile stress at yield and break.
- (b) Modulus of elasticity in tension.
- (c) Tensile strain at yield and break.
- (d) Compressive stress at yield and break.
- (e) Compressive modulus.
- (f) Temperature of deflection under load.
- (g) Determination of water absorption.

### 2.3 Thermosetting resins

2.3.1 The data listed in Table 14.2.1 is to be provided by the manufacturer for each thermosetting resin.

**Table 14.2.1 Data requirements for thermosetting resins**

Data	Type of resin		
	Polyester (see Note 3 for vinylester)	Epoxide	Phenolic
Specific gravity of liquid resin	required	required	required
Viscosity	required	required	required
Gel time	required	required	not applicable
Appearance	required	required	required
Mineral content (see Note 1)	required	required	not applicable (see Note 2)
Volatile content	required	not applicable	not applicable
Acid value	required	not applicable	not applicable
Epoxide content	not applicable	required	not applicable
Free phenol	not applicable	not applicable	required
Free formaldehyde	not applicable	not applicable	required
<b>NOTES</b> 1. This is to be the total filler in the system, including thixotrope, filler, pigments, etc., and is to be expressed in parts by weight per hundred parts of pure resin. 2. If the resin is pre-filled, the mineral content is required. 3. Vinylesters are to be treated as equivalent to polyesters.			

2.3.2 Cast samples are to be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and are to be cured and post-cured in a manner consistent with the intended use. The curing system used and the ratio of curing agent (or catalyst) to resin are to be recorded. Where post-cure conditions equivalent to ambient-cure conditions apply, see 3.2.2 and 3.2.3.

2.3.3 The following are to be determined using these samples:

- Tensile strength (stress at maximum load) and stress at break.
- Tensile strain at maximum load.
- Tensile secant modulus at 0,5 per cent and 0,25 per cent strain respectively.
- Temperature of deflection under load.
- Barcol hardness.
- Determination of water absorption.
- Volume shrinkage after cure.
- Specific gravity of cast resin.

2.3.4 In addition, for gel coat resins the stress at break and modulus of elasticity in flexure are to be determined.

2.3.5 Where resins which have been modified by the addition of waxes or polymers, for example 'low styrene emission or air inhibited' materials, it is to be confirmed that the use of such resins will not result in poor interlaminar adhesion when interruptions to the laminating process occur. The test procedure is to be as follows:

- A conventional room temperature curing catalyst/accelerator system is to be used with the resin for laminate preparation.
- A laminate of 25 to 35 per cent glass content in mass is to be prepared using two plies of 450 g/m<sup>2</sup> chopped strand mat. The laminate is to be prepared at ambient temperature (18° to 21°C). The laminate is to be allowed to stand for a minimum of four days but no longer than 6 days at ambient temperature.
- A further two plies of 450 g/m<sup>2</sup> chopped strand mat are to be laminated onto the exposed surface and cured at ambient temperature for 24 hours. The finished laminate is then to be post-cured at 40°C for 16 hours. The finished laminate is to have a glass content of 25 to 35 per cent.
- After cooling, the apparent interlaminar shear strength of the laminate is to be determined in accordance with ISO 14130; the minimum value is given in Table 14.5.5. Before testing the samples shall be conditioned at 23°C and relative humidity of 50 per cent for a period of 88 hours before testing.
- If the tests are undertaken at the resin manufacturer's own laboratory, the individual test values are to be reported and the broken test specimens retained for examination by LR.

Alternative test procedures will be considered with prior agreement.

## 2.4 Reinforcements

2.4.1 The following data is to be provided, where applicable, for each type of reinforcement:

- Reinforcement type.
- Fibre type for each direction.
- Fibre tex value.
- Fibre finish and/or treatment.
- Yarn count in each direction.
- Width of manufactured reinforcement.
- Weight per unit area of manufactured reinforcement.
- Weight per linear metre of manufactured reinforcement.

- Compatibility (e.g. suitable for polyesters, epoxides, etc.).
- Constructional stitching – details of yarn, specific gravity, type, frequency and direction.
- Weave type.
- Binder type and content.
- Density of the fibre material.

2.4.2 Tests of the mechanical properties are to be made on laminate samples containing the reinforcement and prepared as follows:

- an approved resin of suitable type is to be used;
- a minimum of three layers of the reinforcement is to be laid with parallel ply to give a laminate not less than 4 mm thick;
- the weights of resin and reinforcement used are to be recorded together with the measured thickness of the laminate, including the measured weight per unit area of the reinforcement used;
- for glass reinforcements, the glass/resin ratios, by weight, as shown in Table 14.2.2 are to be used;
- for reinforcement type other than glass, a fibre volume fraction, as shown in Table 14.2.3, is to be used.

2.4.3 Rovings intended for filament winding are to be tested as unidirectional rovings.

2.4.4 The following tests as defined in Section 3 are to be made on the samples:

- Tensile strength (stress at maximum load).
- Tensile strain at break.
- Tensile secant modulus at 0,5 per cent and 0,25 per cent strain respectively.
- Compressive strength (stress at maximum load).
- Compressive modulus.
- Flexural strength (stress at maximum load).
- Modulus of elasticity in flexure.
- Apparent interlaminar shear.
- Fibre content.
- Determination of water absorption.

**Table 14.2.2 Glass fraction by weight for different reinforcement types**

Reinforcement type	Glass fraction nominal values
Unidirectional	0,60
Chopped strand mat	0,30
Woven roving	0,50
Woven cloth	0,50
Composite roving (see Note)	0,45
Gun rovings	0,33
±45° stitched parallel plied roving	0,50
Triaxial parallel plied roving	0,50
Quadriaxial parallel plied roving	0,50
NOTE Continuous fibre reinforcement with attached chopped strand mat.	

**Table 14.2.3 Content by volume for different reinforcement types**

Reinforcement type	Content by volume nominal values
Unidirectional	0,41
Chopped strand mat	0,17
Woven roving	0,32
Woven cloth	0,32
Composite roving (see Note)	0,28
Gun rovings	0,19
±45° stitched parallel plied roving	0,32
Triaxial parallel plied roving	0,32
Quadriaxial parallel plied roving	0,32
<b>NOTE</b> The volume content may be converted to weight fractions by use of the formula: $W_F = V_F D_F / (D_F V_F + D_R V_R)$ where $W_F$ = fibre fraction by weight $D_F$ = density of fibre $D_R$ = density of cured resin $V_F$ = fibre fraction by volume $V_R$ = resin fraction by volume	

2.4.5 The laminate is to be tested in air in the directions indicated by Table 14.2.4.

2.4.6 Additionally, tests in 2.4.4(c) and (f) are to be repeated, in one direction only, after immersion in fresh water at 35°C for 28 days with the exception of 2.4.4(k).

**Table 14.2.4 Fibre orientations in reinforced test specimens**

Type of reinforcement	Test orientations
Unidirectional	0°
Chopped strand mat Gun roving	any direction
Woven roving Woven cloth Composite roving	0° and 90°
± 45° parallel plied roving Triaxial plied roving Quadriaxial plied roving	0°, 45°, 90° and -45°

## 2.5 Reinforced thermoplastic polymers

2.5.1 Thermoplastic polymers intended for use with reinforcements are to be tested in accordance with 2.2.1 to 2.2.3.

2.5.2 A laminate is to be prepared using the polymer and an approved reinforcement in accordance with a manufacturing specification. The laminate is to be tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of 2.4.4. Testing may be confined to one direction only.

## 2.6 Reinforced thermosetting resins

2.6.1 Thermosetting resins intended for use with reinforcements are to be tested in accordance with 2.3.1 to 2.3.4.

2.6.2 No further tests are required for gel coat resins.

2.6.3 For laminating resins, a laminate is to be prepared using the resin and an approved reinforcement as follows:  
 (a) For polyester resins, chopped strand mat.  
 (b) For epoxide resins, a balanced woven roving.  
 (c) For phenolic resins, a balanced woven material.

2.6.4 The laminate is to be tested in accordance with procedures outlined in MQPS Book K procedure 14-1 and 2.4.4 in one fibre direction only.

## 2.7 Core materials

2.7.1 **General requirements.** The following data is to be provided for each type of core material:

- Type of material.
- Density.
- Description (block, scrim mounted, grooved).
- Thickness and tolerance.
- Sheet/block dimensions.
- Surface treatment.

2.7.2 Manufacturers are required to provide a full application procedure for use of the product.

## 2.8 Specific requirements for end-grain balsa

2.8.1 The supplier is to provide a signed statement that the balsa (*ochroma lozopus*) is cut to end-grain, is of good quality, being free from unsound or loose knots, holes, splits, rot, pith and corcho, and that it has been treated against fungal and insect attack, shortly after felling, followed by homogenisation, sterilisation and kiln drying to an average moisture content of no more than 12 per cent.

2.8.2 The following tests are to be carried out on the virgin material, both parallel to and perpendicular to the grain:  
 (a) Compressive strength (stress at maximum load).  
 (b) Compressive modulus of elasticity.  
 (c) Tensile strength (stress at maximum load).  
 The density of the virgin material is also to be tested.

2.8.3 Where the balsa is mounted on a carrier material (e.g. scrim), any adhesive used is to be of a type compatible with the proposed resin system.

2.8.4 Core shear properties are to be determined according to the requirements of 3.8.1.

## 2.9 Specific requirements for rigid foams (PVC, Polyurethane and other types)

2.9.1 The foam is to be of the closed cell type and compatible with the proposed resin system (e.g., polyester, epoxide, etc.).

2.9.2 Foams are to be of uniform cell structure.

2.9.3 Data is to be provided on the dimensional stability of the foam by measurement of the shrinkage.

2.9.4 The following test data is to be submitted for each type of foam:

- (a) Density.
- (b) Tensile strength (stress at maximum load).
- (c) Tensile modulus of elasticity.
- (d) Compressive strength (stress at maximum load).
- (e) Compressive modulus of elasticity.

2.9.5 Core shear properties are to be determined according to the requirements of 3.8.1.

2.9.6 Additionally, the compressive properties (see 2.9.4(d) and (e)) are to be determined at a minimum of five points over the temperature range ambient to maximum recommended service or 70°C, whichever is the greater.

## 2.10 Synthetic felt type materials with or without microspheres

2.10.1 For materials of this type, the following data is required in addition to the requirements of 2.7.1:

- (a) Fibre type.
- (b) Width.
- (c) Width of finished material.
- (d) Weight per unit area of the manufactured material.
- (e) Weight per linear metre of the manufactured material.
- (f) Compatibility.
- (g) Details of the method of combining.

2.10.2 A laminate of the material is to be prepared using a suitable approved resin under conditions recommended by the manufacturer.

2.10.3 The following properties are to be determined:

- (a) Tensile strength (stress at maximum load).
- (b) Tensile strain at break.
- (c) Modulus of elasticity in tension or secant modulus at 0,25 per cent and 0,5 per cent strain.
- (d) Compressive strength (stress at maximum load).
- (e) Compressive modulus.
- (f) Flexural strength (stress at maximum load).
- (g) Modulus of elasticity in flexure.
- (h) Fibre content.
- (j) Water absorption.

2.10.4 In the case of anisotropic materials (e.g., where combined with other reinforcements) the tests listed in 2.10.3 are to be conducted in the 0°, 90° directions and in any other reinforcement direction.

2.10.5 Additionally, the tests listed in 2.10.3 are to be repeated after immersion in fresh water at 35°C for 28 days. For anisotropic materials, the requirement is for this test to be carried out in one direction only.

2.10.6 The shear properties (of the resin filled system) are to be determined according to 3.8.1.

## 2.11 Machinery chocking compounds (resin chocks)

2.11.1 Thermosetting materials for filling the space between the base of machinery and its foundation where the maintenance of accurate alignment is necessary are to be approved by LR before use.

2.11.2 Approval will be considered by LR for use under the following service conditions:

- Loading of 3,5 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (max) for a temperature not exceeding 60°C.
- Loading of 2,5 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (max) for a temperature not exceeding 80°C.
- Other loading conditions.

2.11.3 The exotherm temperature, defined as the maximum temperature achieved by the reacting resin under conditions equivalent to those of intended use, is to be determined according to a procedure approved by LR.

2.11.4 The following properties are to be determined on chock material cured at the measured exotherm temperature:

- (a) The impact resistance (Izod).
- (b) Hardness.
- (c) Compressive strength (stress at maximum load) and modulus of elasticity.
- (d) Water absorption.
- (e) Oil absorption.
- (f) Heat deflection temperature.
- (g) Compressive creep is to be measured according to 3.9.4.
- (h) Curing linear shrinkage.
- (j) Flammability.

2.11.5 The chocking compound approval is contingent on the material achieving the minimum exotherm value as specified when used on an installation under practical conditions.

2.11.6 Where the resin chock is to be used for installation of sterntubes and sternbushes in addition to the requirements of 2.11.4, the tensile strength and modulus of elasticity in tension are to be measured.

2.11.7 The manufacturer's installation procedure is required to be documented and is to be to the satisfaction of LR.

## 2.12 Rudder and pintle bearings

2.12.1 Materials used for rudder and pintle bearings are to be approved by LR before use.

2.12.2 Initial approval is to be based on a review of the following physical properties of the material:

- (a) Compressive strength (stress at maximum load) and modulus of elasticity.
- (b) Tensile strength (stress at maximum load) and modulus of elasticity.
- (c) Shear strength (stress at maximum load).
- (d) Impact strength.
- (e) Swelling in oil and in water.
- (f) Hardness.

2.12.3 Additionally, friction data is to be provided under both wet and dry conditions.

2.12.4 Furthermore, the installation instructions (especially recommended clearances) are to be reviewed by LR prior to provisional approval being given.

2.12.5 If the above data is satisfactory, the material will be provisionally approved until sufficient service experience has been gained.

## 2.13 Sterntube bearings

2.13.1 Materials used for sterntube bearings are to be approved by LR before use.

2.13.2 Approval is to be based on a review of the physical properties as given by 2.12.2.

2.13.3 Friction data is to be provided under the lubrication system(s) proposed for the material(s).

## 2.14 Plywoods

2.14.1 All plywoods are to be approved to BS 1088 or equivalent National or International Standard in accordance with LR's Type Approval Procedure.

2.14.2 For structural applications in the marine environment, a minimum timber rating of moderate durability according to BS 1088 is required.

2.14.3 Enhancement of durability by use of preservatives is permitted, subject to each veneer layer being treated with a recognised preservative.

2.14.4 Where Okoume, as specified by BS 1088 is involved, (i.e. non-durable timber classification) this may only be used for marine structures subject to the specific application being acceptable to LR.

## 2.15 Adhesive and sealant materials

2.15.1 Materials of these types are to be accepted by LR before use.

2.15.2 The requirements for acceptance are dependent on the nature of the application.

2.15.3 In the first instance, the manufacturer is to submit full details of the product, procedure for method of use (including surface preparation) and the intended application. After review of these details, LR will provide a specific test schedule for confirmation of the material's properties.

2.15.4 Any acceptance granted will be limited to specific applications and will be contingent on the instructions for use being adhered to.

## 2.16 Repair compounds

2.16.1 Materials used for repairs are to be accepted by LR before use.

2.16.2 For acceptance purposes, the manufacturer is to submit full product details, and user instructions, listing the types of repair for which the system is to be used together with details of any installer accreditation schemes.

2.16.3 Dependent on the proposed uses, LR may require testing in accordance with a specified test programme.

2.16.4 Materials will not be accepted for the following uses unless specific evidence of their suitability is provided:

- (a) Any component in rubbing contact.
- (b) Any component subject to dynamic cyclic loading.
- (c) Any pressure part in contact with gas or vapour.
- (d) Any pressure part in contact with liquid above 3,5 bar.
- (e) Any component where operating temperature exceeds 90°C.

All uses of materials of these types are subject to the discretion of the Surveyor.

## Section 3 Testing procedures

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 This Section gives details of the test methods to be used for base materials and on finished plastics products such as fibre reinforced plastics (FRP) piping and any testing required in the construction of composite vessels.

3.1.2 In general, testing is to be carried out by a competent independent test house which, at the discretion of LR, may or may not require witnessing by the Surveyor.

3.1.3 Alternatively, testing may be carried out by the manufacturer subject to these tests being witnessed by the Surveyor.

3.1.4 All testing is to be carried out by competent personnel.

3.1.5 Unless specified otherwise, testing is to be carried out in accordance with a recognised ISO Standard, where one exists, and all test programmes are to have written procedures.

3.1.6 Alternatively, testing may be carried out in accordance with a National Standard provided that it conforms closely to an appropriate ISO standard and subject to prior agreement with the Surveyor.

3.1.7 Mechanical properties are to be established using suitable testing machines of approved types. The machines and other test equipment are to be maintained in a satisfactory and accurate condition and are to be recalibrated at approximately annual intervals. Calibration is to be undertaken by a nationally recognised authority or other organisation of standing and is to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor. A record of all calibrations is to be kept available in the test house. The accuracy of test machines is to be within  $\pm$ one per cent.

## 3.2 Preparation of test samples

3.2.1 Thermoplastic samples are to be prepared in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for moulding. For finished products, samples are to be taken from the product during production in accordance with the manufacturer's quality plan, but where this is impractical, separate test samples are to be prepared in a manner identical with that of the product.

3.2.2 Samples of thermosetting resins are to be prepared using the curing system recommended by the manufacturer and identical with that used for the finished product.

3.2.3 The post curing conditions for samples of thermosetting resins are to be as recommended by the manufacturer and identical with those used for the finished product. Where the samples are made for the general approval of a resin, the post curing conditions are to be those in which the resin is intended to be used.

3.2.4 Where curing of the product is intended to take place at room temperature, the sample is to be allowed to cure at room temperature (18 to 21°C) for 24 hours followed by a post-cure at 40°C for 16 hours.

3.2.5 Where a reinforcement is to be used, the ratio of reinforcement to resin or polymer is to be nominally the same as that of the finished product or in accordance with Table 14.2.2 or 14.2.3.

3.2.6 Where laminates are prepared specifically for approval test purposes, the reinforcement is to be laid parallel plied.

## 3.3 Preparation of test specimens

3.3.1 The test specimen is to be prepared in accordance with the appropriate ISO standard and the requirements of this Section.

3.3.2 Precautions are to be taken during machining to ensure that the temperature rise in the specimen is kept to a minimum.

## 3.4 Testing

3.4.1 Strain measurement is to be made by the use of a suitable extensometer or strain gauge.

3.4.2 The rate of strain is to be in accordance with the appropriate ISO standard.

3.4.3 The number of test specimens from each sample to be tested is to be in accordance with the ISO standard. For mechanical testing this is five.

## 3.5 Discarding of test specimens

3.5.1 If a test specimen fails because of faulty preparation or incorrect operation of the testing machine, it is to be discarded and replaced by a new specimen.

3.5.2 In addition, if the deviation of one result in a group of five exceeds the mean by more than two standard deviations, that result is to be discarded and one further specimen tested, see 1.8.1 and 1.8.2.

## 3.6 Reporting of results

3.6.1 All load/displacement graphs and tabulated results are to be reported, including mean values and the calculated standard deviation.

3.6.2 Additionally, full details of the sample and specimen preparation are to be provided including (where applicable):

- (a) Catalyst/accelerator or curing agent types and mix ratio.
- (b) Weights of resins, and/or reinforcements used.
- (c) Casting/laminate dimensions.
- (d) Number of layers of reinforcement used.
- (e) Curing/post-curing conditions.

## 3.7 Tests for specific materials

3.7.1 The data requirements in 2.2 and 2.3 for thermoplastic or thermosetting resins or polymers are to be determined in accordance with suitable National or International Standards.

3.7.2 Recognised Standards to which specimens of unreinforced thermoplastic resins are to be tested are listed in Table 14.3.1.

3.7.3 Test standards for unreinforced cast thermosetting resins are given in Table 14.3.2.

3.7.4 The Standards to which laminate specimens of any type are to be tested are listed in Table 14.3.3.



**Table 14.3.1 Tests for unreinforced thermoplastic resins**

Test	Standard	
Tensile properties	ISO 527-2:1993	Test speed = 5 mm/min Specimen 1A or 1B
Flexural properties	ISO 178:2001	Test speed = $\frac{\text{Thickness}}{2}$ mm/min
Water absorption	ISO 62:2008	Method 1
Temperature of deflection under load	ISO 75-2:2004	Method A
Compressive properties	ISO 604:2002	Test speed – as for ductile materials
NOTES 1. Water absorption – result to be expressed as milligrams. 2. Tensile modulus values are to be determined using an extensometer which may be removed for strain to failure.		

**Table 14.3.2 Tests on unreinforced cast thermoset resin specimens**

Test	Standard	
Tensile properties	ISO 527-2:1993	Test speed = 5 mm/min Specimen 1A or 1B
Flexural properties	ISO 178:2001	Test speed = $\frac{\text{Thickness}}{2}$ mm/min
Water absorption	ISO 62:2008	Method 1
Temperature of deflection under load	ISO 75-2:2004	Method A
Compressive properties	ISO 604:2002	Test speed = 1 mm/min
NOTES 1. ISO 62:2008 – where resins are intended for use under ambient conditions to avoid additional post-curing, the requirement in ISO 62:2008 for pre-drying the test specimen at 50°C is to be omitted. The test result is to be expressed as mg of water. 2. ISO 527-2:1993 – tensile properties are to be measured using extensometry.		

**Table 14.3.3 Tests on laminate specimens**

Test	Standard	
Tensile properties	ISO 527-4:1997	Test speed = 2 mm/min Specimens Types II or III
Flexural properties	ISO 14125:1998	Test speed = $\frac{\text{Thickness}}{2}$ mm/min Method A
Compressive properties	ISO 604:2002	Test speed = 1 mm/min
Interlaminar shear	ISO 14130:1997	
Water absorption	ISO 62:2008	Method 1
Glass content	ISO 1172:1996	
NOTES 1. ISO 62:2008 – where resins are intended for use under ambient conditions to avoid additional post-curing, the requirement in ISO 62:2008 for pre-drying the test specimen at 50°C is to be omitted. The test result is to be expressed as mg of water. 2. ISO 527-4:1997 – tensile properties are to be measured using extensometry. 3. Tensile modulus values are to be determined using an extensometer which may be removed for strain to failure.		

the core, plus the required number of woven reinforcements consolidated, using an isophthalic polyester resin, to give a minimum glass content, by weight, of 0,5.

- The method of construction of the sandwich laminate is to reflect the core material manufacturer's instructions for use, i.e., application of bonding paste, surface primer or any other recommended system.
- Where vacuum bagging techniques or equivalent systems are used, these will be subject to individual consideration.
- All resins and reinforcements are to hold current LR approval.
- Curing conditions are to be in accordance with 3.2.3 and 3.2.4.
- The dimensions of the test samples should be based on the requirements of ASTM C393 Paragraph 5.1, and the ratio parameters as indicated in ASTM C393 Paragraph 5.2, using a proportional limit stress ( $F$ ) for the woven roving skins of 130 N/mm<sup>2</sup> and a span ( $a_2$ ) of not less than 400 mm.

### 3.8 Structural core materials

3.8.1 Initially, the core shear strength and modulus are to be determined by ISO 1922:2001 or ASTM C273/C273M. Test sandwich panels are then to be prepared and subjected to four-point flexural tests to determine the apparent shear properties according to ASTM C393/C393M:06 (short beam) at two representative thicknesses (i.e., 15 mm and 30 mm). Testing is to be carried out at ambient temperature and at 70°C. The following requirements are to be observed:

- Each skin is to be identical and have a thickness not greater than 21 per cent of the nominal core thickness. For hand laid constructions, each skin is to comprise a lightweight chopped strand mat reinforcement (300 g/m<sup>2</sup>) consolidated at a glass content, by weight, of 0,3 against

3.8.2 For each type of test sample, the following data are to be reported, together with the submission of a representative test sample showing the mode of failure for each density of core material:

- Skin and core thickness, and core type and density.
- Resin/catalyst/accelerator ratio.
- Skin construction, including types and weight of reinforcements, resin(s), etc.
- Details of production method and curing conditions (temperature and times).
- Where additional preparation of the foam is involved, for example the use of primers or bonding pastes, full details are to be provided.

- (f) Actual span between base supports for each type of test sample.

3.8.3 The following requirements apply to end-grain balsa:

- The data requirements of 2.7.1 are to be provided, where applicable, according to suitable National or International Standards.
- The balsa is to be tested according to the requirements of 3.8.1.
- The test methods for balsa are given in Table 14.3.4.

**Table 14.3.4 Tests on end-grain balsa**

Test	Standard
Density	ISO 845:2006
Tensile properties	ASTM C297/C297M:04
	Test speed = $\frac{\text{Thickness}}{10}$ mm/min
Compressive properties	ISO 844:2007
	Test speed = $\frac{\text{Thickness}}{10}$ mm/min
Shear properties	ISO 1922:2001
	Test speed = 1mm/min

3.8.4 The following requirements apply to rigid foams:

- The data requirements of 2.7.1 are to be provided in accordance with a suitable National or International Standard.
- The foam is to be tested according to the requirements of 3.8.1.
- The test methods for rigid foams are to be in accordance with Table 14.3.4.

3.8.5 The following requirements apply to synthetic felt type materials:

- The data requirements of 2.10.1 are to be provided according to suitable National or International Standards.
- The material is to be tested according to the requirements of 3.8.1, with the following modifications:
  - The core of the laminate test sandwich panel is to be prepared with a fibre content as recommended by the manufacturer.
  - The felt fibre/resin ratio is to be stated.
  - The required test thicknesses of the cores are to be changed from 30 mm and 15 mm to 12 mm and 6 mm respectively.
- The prepared laminate of the base material is to be of minimum thickness 3,5 mm with a minimum of three layers.
- The specified tests on the laminate (see 2.10.3) are to be conducted according to the requirements of Table 14.3.3.

## 3.9 Machinery chocking compounds

3.9.1 Test samples of the cured chock resin are to be prepared under ambient conditions and then post-cured at the exotherm temperature as determined in 2.11.3.

3.9.2 The specified properties are to be determined as required by Table 14.3.5.

**Table 14.3.5 Tests for machinery chocking compounds**

Test	Standard
Izod Impact Resistance	ISO 180:2000 Unnotched
Barcol hardness	ASTM D2583-07 or BS 2782 part 10 Method 1001
Compressive strength	ISO 604:2002 Test speed = 1 mm/min
Water absorption	ISO 62:2008 Method 1 25 mm x 20 mm cylinder (to constant weight)
Oil absorption (light machine)	ISO 175:1999 25 mm x 20 mm cylinder (to constant weight)
Temperature of deflection under load	ISO 75-2 Method A

3.9.3 The percentage linear shrinkage of cured material is to be measured.

3.9.4 Creep is to be measured according to the following method:

- A 25 mm x 20 mm diameter parallel faced cylinder is to be pre-loaded against a steel base at 2,5 N/mm<sup>2</sup> or 3,5 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, or at the specified higher loading condition, at ambient temperature for 16 hours.
- The temperature is to be increased at the rate of 8°C per hour until the service temperature (60°C or 80°C) is reached.
- During this time, the creep of the cylinder is to be measured at 15 minute intervals.
- The temperature and loading are to be maintained for a minimum of 100 days measuring the creep at intervals of 24 hours.
- A plot of creep in mm (linear scale) against time (log scale), together with full experimental details, is to be provided for review by LR.

## 3.10 Rudder and pintle bearings

3.10.1 All mechanical properties as required by 2.12 are to be measured according to suitable National or International Standards.

3.10.2 Frictional properties are to be determined according to a method agreed with LR.

## 3.11 Sterntube bearings

3.11.1 The requirements for sterntube bearings are as defined in 2.13.

## ■ Section 4 Plastics pipes and fittings

### 4.1 Scope

4.1.1 This Section gives the general requirements for plastics pipes and fittings, with or without reinforcement, intended for use in the services listed in the relevant Rules dealing with design and construction. Hoses and mechanical couplings are not covered by these requirements.

4.1.2 Pipes and fittings intended for application in Class I, Class II and Class III systems for which there are Rule requirements, are to be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of Section 1 and this Section.

4.1.3 As an alternative to 4.1.2, plastics pipes and fittings which comply with National or proprietary specifications may be accepted, provided that the specifications give reasonable equivalence to the requirements of this Section or, alternatively, are approved for a specific application. The survey and certification are however to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

### 4.2 Design requirements

4.2.1 The requirements for design approval are detailed in the relevant Rules.

4.2.2 The design submission is to include a materials list with confirmation that the materials listed have properties and characteristics conforming with those values used in the design submission. As a minimum, the details given should include the following:

- (a) Resin.
- (b) Accelerator (type and concentration).
- (c) Catalyst or curing agent (type and concentration).
- (d) Reinforcement.
- (e) Cure/post-cure conditions.
- (f) Resin/reinforcement ratio.
- (g) Wind angle (or lay-up sequence) and orientation.
- (h) Dimensions and tolerances.

This submission is to include similar details for the fittings together with a description of the method of attachment of the fittings to the pipes.

4.2.3 Any alteration of the component materials or manufacturing operations from those used in the design submission will necessitate a completely new submission.

4.2.4 If the piping manufacturer anticipates the possible use of alternative materials, these should be listed in the design submission. Proof that the modified product will meet the specified requirements will be needed prior to its use.

## 4.3 Manufacture

4.3.1 Plastics pipes and fittings intended for use in Class I, Class II and Class III systems are to be manufactured at facilities approved by LR, using materials approved by LR.

4.3.2 A Manufacturing Specification is to be submitted. This is to contain details of the following:

- (a) All constituent materials.
- (b) Manufacturing procedures such as lay-up sequence or wind angle, the ratios of curing agent to resin and reinforcement to resin, the laminate thickness, the mandrel dwell time (initial cure) and the cure and post-cure conditions.
- (c) Quality control procedures including details and frequency of tests on the incoming materials, tests made during production and on the finished piping.
- (d) Acceptance standards and tolerances, including all dimensions.
- (e) Procedures for cosmetic repair.
- (f) System for traceability of the finished piping to the batches of raw materials.
- (g) Method of bonding pipes and fittings.

4.3.3 Details of all raw materials are to be submitted for approval and are to be in accordance with the Manufacturing Specification and the design submission.

4.3.4 All batches of raw materials are to be provided with unique identifications by their manufacturers.

4.3.5 No batch of material is to be used later than its date of expiry.

4.3.6 The piping manufacturer is to ensure that all batches of materials are used sequentially.

4.3.7 The piping manufacturer is to maintain records of the amounts of resin and reinforcement used, in order to ensure that the proportions remain within the limits set in the Manufacturing Specification.

4.3.8 Records are to be kept of the wind angle and/or the orientation of the reinforcement.

4.3.9 The piping manufacturer is to ensure that each item of piping is traceable to the batch or batches of material used in its manufacture. The unique identifications referred to in 4.3.4 are to be included on all documents.

4.3.10 The curing oven is to be suitable for the intended purpose and all pyrometric equipment is to be calibrated at least annually and adequate records maintained.

4.3.11 The temperature of the pipe or fitting is to be controlled and recorded by the attachment of suitably placed thermocouples.

## 4.4 Quality assurance

4.4.1 The piping manufacturer is to have a quality assurance system approved to ISO 9001 or equivalent. This system should ensure that the pipes and fittings are produced with uniform and consistent mechanical and physical properties in accordance with acceptable standards.

## 4.5 Dimensional tolerances

4.5.1 Dimensions and tolerances are to conform to the Manufacturing Specification.

4.5.2 The wall thicknesses of the pipes are to be measured at intervals around the circumference and along the length in accordance with an appropriate National Standard. The thicknesses are to accord with the Manufacturing Specification.

4.5.3 The responsibility for maintaining the required tolerances and making the necessary measurements rests with the manufacturer. Occasional checking by the Surveyor does not absolve the manufacturer from this responsibility.

## 4.6 Composition

4.6.1 The composition of the pipes and fittings is to be in accordance with the Manufacturing Specification.

4.6.2 Where alternative materials are used (see 4.2.4), the manufacturer is to demonstrate to the Surveyor's satisfaction, and prior to their introduction, their suitability with respect to the performance of the piping. Otherwise, full testing as specified in 4.7 will be required.

## 4.7 Testing

4.7.1 For thermoplastic pipes, the polymer manufacturer is to make the following measurements on samples taken from each batch:

- (a) Melting point.
- (b) Melt flow index.
- (c) Density.
- (d) Filler/pigment content, where applicable.
- (e) Tensile stress at yield and break.
- (f) Tensile strain at yield and break.

4.7.2 The values obtained are to be certified by the polymer manufacturer.

4.7.3 For reinforced thermoset pipes, the resin manufacturer is to determine, on samples taken from each batch, at least the following:

- (a) All resins:
  - (i) Viscosity.
  - (ii) Gel time.
  - (iii) Filler content, where applicable.
- (b) Polyester resins:
  - (i) Type (orthophthalic, isophthalic, etc.).
  - (ii) Volatiles content.
  - (iii) Acid value.

- (c) Epoxide resins:
  - (i) Free epoxide content.
- (d) Phenolic resins:
  - (i) Free phenol content.
  - (ii) Free formaldehyde content.

4.7.4 The values obtained are to comply with the requirements of the Manufacturing Specification.

4.7.5 Where the resin manufacturer mixes batches, both the original batches and the mixed batch are to be tested in accordance with 4.7.1 to 4.7.3 as appropriate. The mixed batch is then to be given a unique batch number.

4.7.6 The polymer or resin manufacturer is to demonstrate that each batch of polymer or resin satisfies the requirement for temperature of deflection under load and this is not to be less than 80°C.

4.7.7 These measurements should be repeated on each batch by the piping manufacturer. Where this is not done, LR may require that the tests be made on a random basis by an independent laboratory.

4.7.8 The piping manufacturer is to confirm, by means of tests on at least one batch in twenty, that the temperature of deflection under load exceeds the specified minimum under manufacturing conditions.

4.7.9 Where reinforcements are used, at least the following are to be recorded, where applicable:

- (a) Tex of yarn(s) or roving(s).
- (b) Ends per 100 mm in all reinforcement orientations.
- (c) Weight per square metre.
- (d) Binder/size content.
- (e) Stitch type and count.
- (f) Type of fibre used.
- (g) Surface treatment and/or finish.

4.7.10 All items in 4.7.9 are to comply with the Manufacturing Specification.

4.7.11 The piping manufacturer is to maintain accurate records of resin and glass usage and is to calculate the resin/glass ratio on an ongoing basis.

4.7.12 During manufacture of the piping, apart from the requirements of 4.7.5, 4.7.6 and 4.7.8, tests are to be carried out on the constituents and final product in accordance with Table 14.4.1.

4.7.13 The standards of acceptance are those listed in the Manufacturing Specification approved by LR.

4.7.14 At the Surveyor's discretion, sections of pipe are to be subjected to hydraulic bursting tests and/or measurements of axial strength.

4.7.15 If the batch of resin or polymer, or the curing agent, or their ratio is changed during manufacture of a batch of pipes, at least two additional measurements of the gel time are to be carried out during each shift.

# Plastics Materials and other Non-Metallic Materials

# Chapter 14

Sections 4 & 5

**Table 14.4.1 Testing during manufacture of pipes**

Component/ operation	Characteristic	Rate of testing
Resin/curing agent/catalyst	Gel time Rate of consumption	Two per shift Continuous
Reinforcement	Quality Wind angle Rate of consumption	Continuous Continuous Continuous
Resin/ reinforcement	Ratio	Continuous
Pipe	Post-cure: temperature of the pipe in oven	Continuous
	Cure level	At least eight per length
	Dimensions	Each length
	Hydraulic pressure test	Each length
	Electrical resistance	Each length (see Note)
	Hydraulic bursting test	At Surveyor's discretion
	Axial strength	At Surveyor's discretion
<b>NOTE</b> Measurements of electrical resistance are only required on piping where the operating conditions given in Pt 5, Ch 12,5.2.4 of the <i>Rules and Regulations of the Classification of Ships</i> apply.		

## 4.8 Visual examination

4.8.1 All pipes and fittings are to be visually examined and are to be free from surface defects and blemishes.

4.8.2 The pipes are to be reasonably straight and the cut ends are to be square to the axis of the pipe.

## 4.9 Hydraulic test

4.9.1 Each length of pipe is to be tested at a hydrostatic pressure not less than 1,5 times the rated pressure of the pipe.

4.9.2 The test pressure is to be maintained for sufficient time to permit proof and inspection. Unless otherwise agreed, the manufacturer's certificate of satisfactory hydraulic test, endorsed by the Surveyor, will be accepted.

## 4.10 Repair procedure

4.10.1 Repairs are not allowed, with the exception of minor cosmetic blemishes as detailed in 1.10.1.

4.10.2 A repair procedure for these minor blemishes is to be included in the Manufacturing Specification.

## 4.11 Identification

4.11.1 All piping is to be identified in such a manner that traceability to all the component materials used in its manufacture is ensured. The Surveyor is to be given full facilities for tracing the material when required.

4.11.2 Pipes and fittings are to be permanently marked by the manufacturer by moulding, hot stamping or by any other suitable method, such as printing, in accordance with 1.11. The markings are to include:

- Identification number, see 4.11.1.
- LR or Lloyd's Register, and the abbreviated name of LR's local office.
- Manufacturer's name or trademark.
- Pressure rating.
- Design standard.
- Material system with which the piping is made.
- Maximum service temperature.

## 4.12 Certification

4.12.1 The manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with copies of the test certificates or shipping statements for all material which has been accepted.

4.12.2 Each test certificate is to contain the following particulars:

- Purchaser's name and order number.
- If known, the contract number for which the piping is intended.
- Address to which piping is despatched.
- Type and specification of material.
- Description and dimensions.
- Identification number, see 4.11.1.
- Test results.

## Section 5 Control of material quality for composite construction

### 5.1 Scope

5.1.1 This Section gives the general requirements for control of material quality when used in the construction of composite craft.

5.1.2 For composite craft built under the Rules, the survey of materials is to be conducted in accordance with the requirements of Sections 1 to 3 and this Section.

### 5.2 Design submission

5.2.1 The requirements for design submission are detailed in the appropriate Part of the Rules which includes full information on composite materials.

## 5.3 Construction

5.3.1 All constructions are to be carried out using materials approved or accepted by LR.

5.3.2 All materials are to be in accordance with the approved construction documentation.

5.3.3 All batches of materials are to be provided with unique identifications by their manufacturers. Components are to be similarly identified.

5.3.4 No batch of material is to be used later than its date of expiry.

5.3.5 The Builder is to ensure that all batches of materials are used systematically and sequentially.

5.3.6 The Builder is to maintain, on a continuous basis, records of the amounts of resin and reinforcement used, in order to ensure that the proportions remain within the limits set in the construction documentation.

5.3.7 Records are to be kept of the sequence and orientation of the reinforcements.

5.3.8 The Builder is to ensure that each section of the construction is traceable to the batch or batches of material used. The unique identifications required under 1.11.1 are to be included on all relevant quality control documentation.

5.3.9 Any curing system used is to be demonstrated as suitable for the intended purpose and all pyrometric equipment is to be calibrated at least annually and adequate records maintained.

5.3.10 The post-curing temperature is to be controlled and recorded by the attachment of suitably placed thermocouples.

## 5.4 Quality assurance

5.4.1 Where the Builder has a quality assurance system, this is to include the requirements of this Section.

## 5.5 Dimensional tolerances

5.5.1 Dimensions and tolerances are to conform to the approved construction documentation.

5.5.2 The thicknesses of the laminates are, in general, to be measured at not less than ten points, evenly distributed across the surface. In the case of large sections, at least ten evenly distributed measurements are to be taken in bands across the width at maximum spacing of two metres along the length.

5.5.3 The responsibility for maintaining the required tolerances and making the necessary measurements rests with the Builder. Monitoring and random checking by the Surveyor does not absolve the Builder from this responsibility.

5.5.4 Where ultrasonic thickness gauges are used, these are to be calibrated against an identical laminate (of measured thickness) to that on which the thickness measurement is to be carried out. If suitable pieces are not available from the construction, then a small sample of identical lay-up is to be prepared.

## 5.6 Material composition

5.6.1 The materials, prefabricated sections or components used are to be in accordance with the approved construction documentation.

5.6.2 Where alternative materials are used, these are to be of approved or accepted types and the manufacturer is to demonstrate to the Surveyor's satisfaction, prior to their introduction, their suitability with respect to performance, otherwise full testing as appropriate will be required.

## 5.7 Material testing

5.7.1 Where so required, the material manufacturer is to provide the purchaser with certificates of conformity for each batch of material supplied, indicating the relevant values specified in 5.7.4 to 5.7.8. These values are to comply with those specified by the approved construction documentation.

5.7.2 Where the Builders do not conduct verification testing of the information indicated in 5.7.4 to 5.7.8, they are to ensure that copies of all certificates of conformity (which must indicate the actual tested values) are obtained for all batches of materials received, and maintain accurate records. The Surveyor may at any time select a sample of a material for testing by an independent, where applicable, source and should such tests result in the material failing to meet the specification, then that batch will be rejected.

5.7.3 The following tests are to be carried out, where applicable, on receipt of any material:

- (a) The consignment is to be divided into its respective batches and each batch is to be labelled accordingly.
- (b) Each batch is to be visually examined for conformity with the batch number, visual quality and date of expiry.
- (c) Each batch is to be separately labelled and stored separately.
- (d) Each unit, within the batch, is to be labelled with the batch number.
- (e) Records are to be maintained of the above and these are to be cross-referenced with the certificate of conformity for the material and/or the Builder's own test results.

5.7.4 For thermosetting resins, reinforced or otherwise, the resin manufacturer is to have determined, on samples taken from each batch, at least the following:

- (a) All resins:
  - (i) Viscosity.
  - (ii) Gel time.
  - (iii) Filler content, where applicable.
- (b) Polyester and vinylester resins:
  - (i) Type (orthophthalic, isophthalic, etc.).
  - (ii) Volatiles content.
  - (iii) Acid value.

- (c) Epoxide resins:
  - (i) Free epoxide content.
- (d) Phenolic resins:
  - (i) Free phenol content.
  - (ii) Free formaldehyde content.

5.7.5 For thermoplastics, the polymer manufacturer is to have made the following measurements on samples taken from each batch:

- (a) Melting point.
- (b) Melt flow index.
- (c) Density.
- (d) Filler/pigment content, where applicable.
- (e) Tensile stress at yield and break.
- (f) Tensile strain at yield and break.

5.7.6 Where the resin or polymer manufacturer mixes batches, both the original batches and the mixed batch are to be tested in accordance with 5.7.4 or 5.7.5 as appropriate. The mixed batch is then to be given a unique batch number.

5.7.7 For reinforcements, the material manufacturer is to have recorded, where applicable, the following for each batch of material:

- (a) Tex of yarn(s) or roving(s).
- (b) Ends per 100 mm in all reinforcement orientations.
- (c) Weight per square metre.
- (d) Binder/size content.
- (e) Stitch type and count.
- (f) Type of fibre used.
- (g) Surface treatment and/or finish.

5.7.8 For core materials, the following properties are to be recorded by the manufacturer for each batch:

- (a) Type of material.
- (b) Density.
- (c) Description (block, scrim mounted, grooved).
- (d) Thickness and tolerance.
- (e) Sheet/block dimensions.

- (f) Surface treatment.

Together with the following mechanical properties:

In the case of rigid foams:

- (g) Compressive strength (stress at maximum load) and modulus of elasticity.
- (h) Core shear strength. In the case of end-grain balsa:
- (i) Tensile strength (stress at maximum load).
- (k) Compressive strength (stress at maximum load) and modulus of elasticity.

5.7.9 During construction, tests are to be carried out on the constituents and final product in accordance with Table 14.5.1.

5.7.10 The standards of acceptance for testing are those listed in the material manufacturer's specification, approved construction documentation or agreed quality control procedures as applicable.

5.7.11 Laminate fibre content is to be determined at the request of the Surveyor, in particular where the thickness measured does not correlate with the specified fibre content, by weight. This will, in general, result in additional reinforcement being required.

5.7.12 If the batch of resin or polymer, or the curing agent, or their ratio is changed, at least two additional measurements of the gel time are to be carried out during each shift.

## **5.8 Visual examination**

5.8.1 All constructional mouldings and any components are to be visually examined and are to be free from surface defects and blemishes.

**Table 14.5.1 Testing during construction**

Component/operation	Characteristic	Rate of testing
Resin/curing agent/catalyst	Gel time Rate of consumption	Two per shift Continuous
Reinforcement	Quality Orientation Rate of consumption	Continuous Continuous Continuous
Resin/reinforcement	Ratio	Continuous
Construction	Temperature during cure/post cure Dimensions Cure level (Barcol) against resin manufacturer's specification Laminate thickness Laminate fibre content	Continuous Continuous against approved construction documentation At least one per square metre Continuous against material usage and approved construction documentation (see also 5.5.2 to 5.5.4) At the Surveyor's request (see 5.7.11)



## 5.9 Repair procedure

5.9.1 Repairs of minor cosmetic blemishes are permitted providing that these are brought to the attention of the Surveyor.

5.9.2 A repair procedure for these minor blemishes is to be included in the agreed quality control procedures.

5.9.3 Structural repairs are subject to individual consideration and full written details must be approved by the plan approval office prior to introduction.

## 5.10 Material identification

5.10.1 Records of the construction are to be kept in such a manner that traceability of all the component materials used is ensured. The Surveyor is to be given full facilities for tracing the material's origin when required.

5.10.2 Small representative samples of each batch of material are to be retained, these being suitably labelled to ensure traceability.

5.10.3 When so requested by the Surveyor, the Builder is to provide copies of all test data and/or manufacturers' certificates of conformity appertaining to any material used.

## 5.11 Minimum tested requirements for material approval

5.11.1 This Section provides the minimum property values required of a material for approval or acceptance by LR and are applicable to materials cured under ambient conditions.

5.11.2 **Gel coat resins.** When the cast resin is tested according to the requirements of 2.3, Table 14.5.2 gives the minimum values for the respective properties.

5.11.3 **Laminating resins.** When tested according to the requirements of 2.3 and 2.4, Tables 14.5.3 and 14.5.4 give the minimum properties for the cast resin and chopped strand mat laminate respectively.

5.11.4 When tested to the requirements of 2.4 for reinforcements, Table 14.5.5 gives the minimum properties for laminates.

5.11.5 Alternatively, materials may be approved by use of the actual tested values whereby the approval value shall equal the mean of the tested values minus twice the standard deviation of a minimum of five tested values.

## 5.12 Closed cell foams for core construction based on PVC or polyurethane

5.12.1 Table 14.5.6 gives minimum values for closed cell forms for core construction based on PVC or polyurethane.

5.12.2 Other types of foam will be subjected to individual consideration. A minimum core shear strength of 0,5 N/mm<sup>2</sup> is to be achieved.

**Table 14.5.2 Gel coat resins, minimum property values**

Properties	Minimum value
Tensile strength (stress at maximum load)	40 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Tensile stress at break	40 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Tensile strain at maximum load	2,5%
Modulus of elasticity in tension	As measured
Flexural strength (stress at maximum load)	80 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Modulus of elasticity in flexure	As measured
Barcol hardness	As measured at full cure
Water absorption	70 mg (max)

**Table 14.5.3 Laminating resins, minimum property values**

Properties	Minimum value
Tensile strength (stress at maximum load)	40 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Tensile stress at break	40 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Tensile strain at maximum load	2,0%
Modulus of elasticity in tension	As measured
Barcol hardness	As measured at full cure
Temperature of deflection under load	55°C
NOTE These minimum values are for the recommended glass content by weight of 0,3.	

## 5.13 End-grain balsa

5.13.1 Table 14.5.7 gives the minimum property requirement for end-grain balsa.

## 5.14 Synthetic chocking compounds

5.14.1 Table 14.5.8 gives the minimum property requirements for synthetic chocking compounds.

## 5.15 Other materials

5.15.1 All other materials will be subject to special consideration.

**Table 14.5.4 Laminating resins, minimum values for properties for CSM laminate at 0,3 glass fraction by weight**

Properties	Minimum value
Tensile strength (stress at maximum load)	90 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Secant modulus at 0,25% and 0,5% strain respectively	6,9 kN/mm <sup>2</sup>
Compressive strength (stress at maximum load)	125 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Compressive modulus	6,4 kN/mm <sup>2</sup>
Flexural strength (stress at maximum load)	160 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Modulus of elasticity in flexure	5,7 kN/mm <sup>2</sup>
Apparent interlaminar shear strength (see Note)	18 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Fibre content	As measured (0,3)
Water absorption	70 mg (max)
NOTE Applicable only to the special test for environmental control resins.	

**Table 14.5.5 Laminates, minimum property requirements**

Material type	Property	Value
Chopped strand mat	Tensile strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$200G_c + 30$
	Modulus of elasticity in tension (kN/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$15G_c + 2,4$
Bi-directional reinforcement	Tensile strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$400G_c - 10$
	Modulus of elasticity in tension (kN/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$30G_c - 0,5$
Uni-directional reinforcement	Tensile strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$1800G_c^2 - 1400G_c + 510$
	Modulus of elasticity in tension (kN/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$130G_c^2 - 114G_c + 39$
Chopped strand mat	Flexural (stress at maximum load) (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$502G_c^2 + 114,6$
	Modulus of elasticity in flexure (kN/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$33,4G_c^2 + 2,7$
All	Flexural strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$502G_c^2 + 106,8$
	Modulus of elasticity in flexure (kN/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$33,4G_c^2 + 2,2$
	Compressive strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$150G_c + 72$
	Compressive modulus (kN/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$40G_c - 6$
	Interlaminar shear strength (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )	$22 - 13,5G_c$ (min 15)
	Water absorption (mg)	70 (maximum)
	Glass content (% by weight)	As measured
NOTES 1. After water immersion, the values shall be a minimum of 75% of the above. 2. Where materials have reinforcement in more than two directions, the requirement will be subject to individual consideration dependent on the construction. 3. $G_c$ = glass fraction by weight.		

**Table 14.5.6 Minimum characteristics and mechanical properties of rigid expanded foams at 20°C**

Material	Apparent density kg/m <sup>3</sup>	Strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )			Modulus of elasticity (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )	
		Tensile	Compressive	Shear	Compressive	Shear
Polyurethane	96	0,85	0,60	0,50	17,20	8,50
Polyvinylchloride	60					

**Table 14.5.7 Minimum characteristics and mechanical properties of end-grain balsa**

Apparent density (kg/m <sup>3</sup> )	Strength (stress at maximum load) (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )					Compressive modulus of elasticity (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )		Shear modulus of elasticity (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )
	Compressive		Tensile		Shear			
	Direction of stress					Direction of stress		
	Parallel to grain	Perpendicular to grain	Parallel to grain	Perpendicular to grain		Parallel to grain	Perpendicular to grain	
96	5,0	0,35	9,00	0,44	1,10	2300	35,2	105
144	10,6	0,57	14,6	0,70	1,64	3900	67,8	129
176	12,8	0,68	20,5	0,80	2,00	5300	89,6	145

**Table 14.5.8 Minimum characteristics and mechanical properties of synthetic chocking compound**

Properties	Minimum value
Izod Impact Resistance	0,8 J
Barcol hardness	40
Compression	100 MPa
Water absorption	0,05%
Oil absorption (light machine)	0,05%
Creep	< 0,2%
NOTES 1. Izod, barcol, compression, and water and oil absorption tests to be performed on samples cured/post-cured to the same condition as the samples for the final creep tests. 2. Minimum creep value to be attained for a stabilised sample after 1000 hours.	



© Lloyd's Register, 2012  
Published by Lloyd's Register  
*Registered office*  
71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS  
United Kingdom

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 1

Part 3 Design Principles and  
Constructional Arrangements

January 2013

---

PART	1	REGULATIONS
PART	2	RULES FOR THE MANUFACTURE, TESTING AND CERTIFICATION OF MATERIALS
<b>PART</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>DESIGN PRINCIPLES AND CONSTRUCTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS</b>
	<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>General</b>
	<b>2</b>	<b>Ship Design</b>
	<b>3</b>	<b>Ship Control Systems</b>
	<b>4</b>	<b>Closing Arrangements and Outfit</b>
	<b>5</b>	<b>Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking</b>
	<b>6</b>	<b>Structural Procedures for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships</b>
PART	4	MILITARY DESIGN AND SPECIAL FEATURES
PART	5	ENVIRONMENTAL LOADS
PART	6	HULL CONSTRUCTION IN STEEL
PART	7	ENHANCED STRUCTURAL ASSESSMENT

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

---

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>GENERAL</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>Rules application</b>
	1.1	General
	1.2	Exceptions
	1.3	Loading
	1.4	Advisory services
	1.5	Interpretation
	1.6	Aesthetics
	1.7	Constructional configuration
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Direct calculations</b>
	2.1	General
	2.2	Submission of direct calculations
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Equivalents</b>
	3.1	Alternative arrangements and calculation methods
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Information required</b>
	4.1	Submission of plans and data
	4.2	Standard designs
	4.3	Plans and data to be supplied to the ship
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Definitions</b>
	5.1	General
	5.2	Principal particulars
	5.3	Margins
	5.4	Decks
	5.5	Co-ordinate system
	5.6	Superstructure
	5.7	Deckhouse
	5.8	Weathertight
	5.9	Watertight
	5.10	Terminology
	5.11	Extent of watertight subdivision
	5.12	Critical compartments
	5.13	Units system
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Building tolerances and associated repairs</b>
	6.1	Overview
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Inspection and testing</b>
	7.1	Overview
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>SHIP DESIGN</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General</b>
	1.1	Application
	1.2	Definitions
	1.3	Watertight and weathertight integrity
	1.4	Structural redundancy
	1.5	Residual Strength Assessment, RSA
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Rule structural concept</b>
	2.1	General
	2.2	Scantlings
	2.3	Definitions and structural terms



---

<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Main hull structure</b>
	3.1	General
	3.2	Primary members
	3.3	Shell plating
	3.4	Shell framing
	3.5	Single bottom structure
	3.6	Double bottom structure
	3.7	Deck structure
	3.8	Deep tank structure
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Bulkhead arrangements</b>
	4.1	General
	4.2	Number and disposition of watertight bulkheads
	4.3	Collision bulkheads
	4.4	Aft peak bulkhead
	4.5	Height of bulkheads
	4.6	Watertight recesses, flats, openings and loading ramps
	4.7	Watertight doors and hatches in watertight subdivision boundaries below the vertical extent of watertight integrity
	4.8	Gastight bulkheads
	4.9	Tank bulkheads
	4.10	Cofferdams
	4.11	Watertight tunnels and passageways
	4.12	Means of escape
	4.13	Carriage of low flash point fuels
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Fore and aft end arrangements</b>
	5.1	General
	5.2	Structural continuity
	5.3	Minimum bow height and extent of forecastle
	5.4	Bow crumple zone
	5.5	Deck structure
	5.6	Shell envelope plating and framing
	5.7	Single and double bottom structure
	5.8	Fore peak structure
	5.9	Aft peak structure
	5.10	Bulbous bows
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Machinery space arrangements</b>
	6.1	General
	6.2	Structural configuration
	6.3	Structural continuity
	6.4	Deck structure
	6.5	Side shell structure
	6.6	Double and single bottom structure
	6.7	Machinery casings
	6.8	Integral fuel tanks
	6.9	Machinery seatings
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Superstructures, deckhouses, bulwarks, sponsons and appendages</b>
	7.1	General
	7.2	Definitions
	7.3	Structural requirements
	7.4	Openings
	7.5	Effective structure
	7.6	Sponsons and appendages
	7.7	Unusual designs
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Pillars and pillar bulkheads</b>
	8.1	General
	8.2	Head and heel connections
	8.3	Alignment and arrangement
	8.4	Pillars in tanks
	8.5	Fire aspects

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>SHIP CONTROL SYSTEMS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General</b>
	1.1	Application
	1.2	General
	1.3	Navigation in ice
	1.4	Materials
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Rudders</b>
	2.1	General
	2.2	Definition and symbols
	2.3	Direct calculations
	2.4	Equivalents
	2.5	Rudder arrangements
	2.6	Rudder profile coefficient, $K_2$
	2.7	Rudder angle coefficient, $K_3$
	2.8	Rudder position coefficient, $K_4$
	2.9	Rudder speed coefficient, $K_5$
	2.10	Centre of pressure
	2.11	Rudder force, $F_R$
	2.12	Rudder torque, $Q_R$
	2.13	Rudder bending moment, $M_R$
	2.14	Rudder stock diameter in way of the tiller, $d_{su}$
	2.15	Rudder stock diameter $d_s$
	2.16	Rudder stock (tubular)
	2.17	Single plate rudders
	2.18	Double plate rudders
	2.19	Cast metal rudders
	2.20	Lowest main bearing requirement
	2.21	Bearings
	2.22	Liners
	2.23	Pintles
	2.24	Bolted couplings
	2.25	Conical couplings
	2.26	Rudder carrier arrangements
	2.27	Anti-jump collars
	2.28	Drain plugs
	2.29	Corrosion protection
	2.30	Dissimilar materials
	2.31	Internal coatings
	2.32	Pressure testing
	2.33	Tiller arms, quadrants
	2.34	Connecting bars
	2.35	Keys and keyways
	2.36	Stopping arrangements
	2.37	Novel designs
	2.38	Rudder tube arrangements
	2.39	Watertight gland
	2.40	In-water Survey requirements
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Stabiliser arrangements</b>
	3.1	General
	3.2	Fin stabilisers
	3.3	Centre of pressure
	3.4	Fin force, $F_F$
	3.5	Fin torque, $Q_F$
	3.6	Fin bending moment, $M_F$
	3.7	Fin stock diameter in way of tiller, $d_{Fu}$
	3.8	Fin stock diameter, $d_F$
	3.9	Fin plating
	3.10	Stabiliser tanks
	3.11	Bilge keels and fins
	3.12	Novel features

---

<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Rudder horns and appendages</b>
	4.1	General
	4.2	Propeller boss
	4.3	Rudder horns
	4.4	Shaft bossing
	4.5	Shaft brackets
	4.6	Single arm shaft brackets ('P' – brackets)
	4.7	Double arm shaft brackets ('A' – brackets)
	4.8	Intermediate shaft brackets
	4.9	Attachment of shaft brackets by welding
	4.10	Attachment of shaft brackets by bolting
	4.11	Alignment of shaft brackets
	4.12	Stern tubes
	4.13	Skegs
	4.14	Propeller hull clearances
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Fixed and steering nozzles, bow and stern thrust units, ducted propellers</b>
	5.1	General
	5.2	Nozzle structure
	5.3	Nozzle stock and solepiece
	5.4	Ancillary items
	5.5	Steering gear and allied systems
	5.6	Thruster unit wall thickness
	5.7	Thruster unit installation details
	5.8	Propeller ducting
	5.9	Surface drive mountings
	5.10	Novel features
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Waterjet propulsion systems</b>
	6.1	Construction
	6.2	Water jet propulsion system – Installation
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>CLOSING ARRANGEMENTS AND OUTFIT</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>
	1.1	General
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Hatches and miscellaneous openings on the weather deck</b>
	2.1	Hatch covers
	2.2	Hatch coamings
	2.3	Manholes and flush escape hatches
	2.4	Hatchways within enclosed superstructures or lower decks
	2.5	Magazine blow out plates
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Doors and accesses on weather decks</b>
	3.1	General
	3.2	Magazine blow out plates
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Side lights and windows</b>
	4.1	General
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Ventilators</b>
	5.1	Application
	5.2	Protection
	5.3	General
	5.4	Coamings
	5.5	Closing appliances
	5.6	Machinery spaces
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Air pipes</b>
	6.1	General
	6.2	Height of air pipes
	6.3	Closing appliances

---

<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Scuppers and sanitary discharges</b>
	7.1	General
	7.2	Closing appliances
	7.3	Rubbish chutes and similar discharges
	7.4	Materials for valves, fittings and pipes
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Bulwarks, guard rails, raised walkways and other means for the protection of crew and embarked personnel</b>
	8.1	General requirements
	8.2	Bulwark construction
	8.3	Freeing arrangements
	8.4	Free flow area
	8.5	Walkways
<b>Section</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>Lagging and lining of structure</b>
	9.1	General
	9.2	Removal for access
<b>Section</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>Lifting eyes</b>
	10.1	Application
	10.2	Information to be submitted
	10.3	Materials
	10.4	Lifting points
	10.5	Supporting structure
	10.6	Tallying
	10.7	Testing
	10.8	Inspection during service
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>ANCHORING, MOORING, TOWING, BERTHING, LAUNCHING, RECOVERY AND DOCKING</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General</b>
	1.1	Application
	1.2	Definitions
	1.3	Character of classification
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Equipment Number</b>
	2.1	Equipment Number calculation
	2.2	Novel ship design
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Service area factors</b>
	3.1	General
	3.2	Service Areas SA1, SA2, SA3, SA4, SAR
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Anchors</b>
	4.1	General
	4.2	Manufacture and testing of anchors
	4.3	Anchor stowage
	4.4	High Holding Power (HHP) type anchors
	4.5	Super High Holding Power (SHHP) type anchors
	4.6	Tolerances
	4.7	Identification
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Anchor cable</b>
	5.1	General
	5.2	Chain cable
	5.3	Wire rope
	5.4	Cable clench
	5.5	Cable stopping and release arrangements
	5.6	Cable locker

---

<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Mooring ropes</b>
	6.1	Mooring ropes
	6.2	Materials
	6.3	Testing and certification
	6.4	Bollards, fairleads and bull rings
	6.5	Mooring winches
	6.6	Support structure of deck fittings
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Towing arrangements</b>
	7.1	Definition
	7.2	Application
	7.3	Materials
	7.4	Information required
	7.5	Towing arrangements
	7.6	Strength requirements for towing arrangements
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Windlass and capstan design and testing</b>
	8.1	General
	8.2	Windlass design
	8.3	Control arrangements
	8.4	Maintenance arrangements
	8.5	Protection arrangements
	8.6	Marking and identification
	8.7	Tests and trials
	8.8	Seatings
<b>Section</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>Structural details</b>
	9.1	General
	9.2	Bulbous bow and wave piercing bow arrangements
	9.3	Hawse pipes and anchor recesses
	9.4	Spurling pipes
	9.5	Local reinforcement
<b>Section</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>Launch and recovery, berthing and docking arrangements</b>
	10.1	Berthing loads
	10.2	Docking loads
	10.3	Launching loads
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>STRUCTURAL PROCEDURES FOR THE DESIGN, CONSTRUCTION AND LIFETIME CARE OF SHIPS</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General</b>
	1.1	Application
	1.2	Classification notations
	1.3	Information and plans required to be submitted
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Structural Design Assessment</b>
	2.1	Structural Design Assessment notation – SDA
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Fatigue Design Assessment</b>
	3.1	Fatigue Design Assessment notation – FDA
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Construction Monitoring</b>
	4.1	Construction Monitoring notation – CM
	4.2	Identification of critical areas
	4.3	Construction monitoring criteria
	4.4	Construction Monitoring survey
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Ship Event Analysis</b>
	5.1	Ship Event Analysis – Class notations SEA(HSS-n), SEA(VDR), SEA(VDR-n)
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Enhanced Scantlings</b>
	6.1	Enhanced Scantlings – ES

---

<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Protective Coating in Water Ballast Tanks</b>
	7.1	Protective Coating in Water Ballast Tanks – <b>PCWBT</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Hull Condition Monitoring</b>
	8.1	Hull Condition Monitoring – <b>HCM</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>Ship Emergency Response Service</b>
	9.1	Ship Emergency Response Service – <b>SERS</b>



*Section*

- 1 **Rules application**
- 2 **Direct calculations**
- 3 **Equivalents**
- 4 **Information required**
- 5 **Definitions**
- 6 **Building tolerances and associated repairs**
- 7 **Inspection and testing**

## ■ *Section 1* **Rules application**

**1.1 General**

1.1.1 The Rules apply in general to ships of normal form, proportions and speed. Although the Rules are, in general, for steel ships of all welded construction, other materials for use in the construction will be considered.

**1.2 Exceptions**

1.2.1 Ships of unusual form, proportions or speed, or for special or restricted service, or purposes not covered specifically by the Rules, will receive individual consideration based on the general standards of the Rules.

**1.3 Loading**

1.3.1 The Rules are framed on the understanding that ships will be properly handled. The Committee may require additional strengthening to be fitted in any ship which, in their opinion, would otherwise be subjected to severe stresses due to particular features of the design, or where it is desired to make provision for exceptional load or ballast conditions.

**1.4 Advisory services**

1.4.1 The Rules do not cover certain technical characteristics, such as stability except as mentioned in Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1.8, trim, vibration (other than local panel) and docking arrangements, etc. The Committee cannot assume responsibility for these matters but is willing to advise upon them on request.

**1.5 Interpretation**

1.5.1 The interpretation of the Rules is the sole responsibility and at the sole discretion of Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to a 'LR'). Where there is any doubt regarding the interpretation of the Rules it is the designers' responsibility to obtain clarification from LR prior to submission of plans and data for appraisal. Similarly, where there is any doubt regarding the interpretation of the Owners' requirements it is the designers' responsibility to obtain clarification from the Owners prior to the submission of plans.

1.5.2 Attention is drawn to the fact that Codes of Practice issued by IMO contain requirements which are outside classification as defined in these Rules. Whilst they will not be mandatory for naval ships they may be adopted as identified by the Naval Authority.

**1.6 Aesthetics**

1.6.1 LR is not concerned with the general arrangement, layout and appearance of the ship; the responsibility for such matters remains with the Builders and/or Designers to ensure that the agreed specification is complied with. LR is however concerned with the quality of workmanship, in this respect the acceptance criteria as required by Rules, LR Survey Procedures or equivalent are to be complied with.

**1.7 Constructional configuration**

1.7.1 The Rules provide for a basic structural configuration of a multi-deck or a single deck hull which includes a double bottom, or a single bottom arrangement. The structural configuration may also include a single or multiple arrangement of deck openings, and tanks.

## ■ *Section 2* **Direct calculations**

**2.1 General**

2.1.1 Direct calculations may be specifically required by the Rules or may be required for ships having novel design features, as defined in 1.2, or may be submitted in support of alternative arrangements and scantlings. LR may, when requested, undertake calculations on behalf of designers and make recommendations in regard to suitability of any required model tests.

2.1.2 Where model testing is undertaken to complement direct calculations the following details would normally be required to be submitted: schedule of tests, details of test equipment, input data, analysis and calibration procedure together with tabulated and plotted output.



## **2.2 Submission of direct calculations**

2.2.1 In cases where direct calculations have been carried out, the following supporting information should be submitted as applicable:

- (a) Reference to the direct calculation procedure and technical program used.
- (b) A description of the structural modelling.
- (c) A summary of analysis parameters including properties and boundary conditions.
- (d) Details of the loading conditions and the means of applying loads.
- (e) A comprehensive summary of calculation results. Sample calculations should be submitted where appropriate.

2.2.2 In general, submission of large volumes of input and output data associated with such programs as finite element analysis will not be necessary.

2.2.3 The responsibility for error free specification and input of program data and the subsequent correct transposition of output rests with the Designer.

## ■ **Section 3 Equivalents**

### **3.1 Alternative arrangements and calculation methods**

3.1.1 In addition to cases where direct calculations are specifically required by the Rules, LR will consider alternative scantlings which have been derived by direct calculations in lieu of specific Rule requirements. All direct calculations are to be submitted for examination.

3.1.2 Where calculation procedures are employed, supporting documentation is to be submitted for appraisal and this is to include details of the following:

- calculation methods;
- assumptions and references;
- loading;
- structural modelling;
- design criteria and their derivation, e.g. permissible stresses, factors of safety against plate panel instability, etc.

3.1.3 LR will be ready to consider the use of Builder's programs for direct calculations in the following cases:

- (a) Where it can be established that the program has previously been satisfactorily used to perform a direct calculation similar to that now submitted.
- (b) Where sufficient information and evidence of satisfactory performance is submitted to substantiate the validity of the computation performed by the program.

3.1.4 Alternative arrangements or fittings which are considered to be equivalent to the Rule requirements will be accepted, in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 2,3.11.

3.1.5 Where no special reference is made in this Part to specific requirements, the construction is to be efficient for the intended purpose and to conform to good practice.

3.1.6 Where items are of a novel or unconventional design or manufacture, it is the responsibility of the designer to demonstrate their suitability and equivalence to the Rule requirements.

## ■ **Section 4 Information required**

### **4.1 Submission of plans and data**

4.1.1 Plans and data required to be submitted are indicated in Pt 6, Ch 1,2.2.

4.1.2 Plans are generally to be submitted in triplicate, but one copy only is necessary for supporting documents and calculations.

4.1.3 Plans are to contain all necessary information to fully define the structure, including construction details, equipment and systems as appropriate.

### **4.2 Standard designs**

4.2.1 Where a ship is a standard design produced in several versions, the plans and data are to clearly define the differences between each version.

4.2.2 Where the ship is a Builder's standard design to be built from previously approved plans and data, a schedule of applicable plans, etc., is to accompany the Request for Survey. Plans of any proposed modifications and changes to the previously approved plans are to be submitted for approval prior to the commencement of any work.

4.2.3 Plan approval of standard designs is only valid so long as no applicable Rule changes take place. When the Rules are amended, the plans for standard types are to be submitted for re-approval.

### **4.3 Plans and data to be supplied to the ship**

4.3.1 A copy of the final Loading Manual or stability information book, (where applicable) when approved, and details of the loadings applicable to approved decks, are to be placed on board the ship.

4.3.2 Copies of all main scantling plans are to be readily available on board ship for the purposes of repairs, identifying materials and condition assessment.

4.3.3 Details of any corrosion control system fitted are to be placed on board the ship.

4.3.4 Where in-water surveys are required, approved plans and information covering the items detailed in Pt 6, Ch 1,2.2 are to be placed on board.

## Section 5 Definitions

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 The following definitions apply except where they are inappropriate or where specifically defined otherwise.

### 5.2 Principal particulars

5.2.1 Length waterline,  $L_{WL}$ , is the distance, in metres, measured on a waterline at the design draught from the fore side of the stem to the after side of the stern or transom as shown in Fig. 1.5.1.

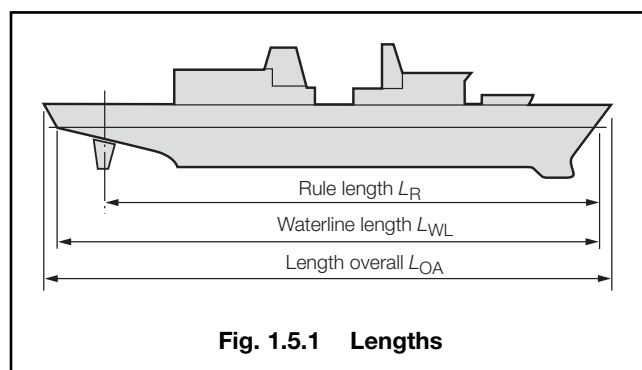


Fig. 1.5.1 Lengths

5.2.2 Rule length,  $L_R$ , is the distance, in metres, on a waterline at the design draught from the forward side of the stem to the after side of the rudder post or to the centre of the rudder stock if there is no rudder post.  $L_R$  is to be not less than 96 per cent, and need not be greater than 97 per cent, of the extreme length on a waterline at the design draught. In vessels without rudders, the Rule length,  $L_R$ , is to be taken as 97 per cent of the extreme length on a waterline at the design draught. In vessels with unusual stem or stern arrangements, the Rule length will be specially considered.

5.2.3 All references to longitudinal locations in the Rules are to be taken as forward of the aft end of  $L_R$  unless otherwise stated, e.g.,  $0,75L_R$  is 75 per cent of  $L_R$  forward of the aft end of  $L_R$ .

5.2.4 Length between perpendiculars,  $L_{PP}$ , in metres is the distance, in metres, on the waterline at the design draught from the forward to the after perpendicular.

5.2.5 The forward perpendicular, F.P., is the perpendicular at the intersection of the waterline at the design draught with the fore side of the stem.

5.2.6 The after perpendicular, A.P., is the perpendicular at the intersection of the waterline at the design draught with the after side of the rudder post or to the centre of the rudder stock for vessels without a rudder post or to the intersection with the transom profile on the centreline.

5.2.7 Length overall,  $L_{OA}$ , is the distance, in metres, measured parallel to the deep load waterline from the fore side of the stem to the after side of the stern or transom, excluding rubbing strakes and other projections as shown in Fig. 1.5.1.

5.2.8 Waterline breadth,  $B_{WL}$ , is generally the greatest moulded breadth, in metres, measured at the design draught, as shown in Fig. 1.5.2.

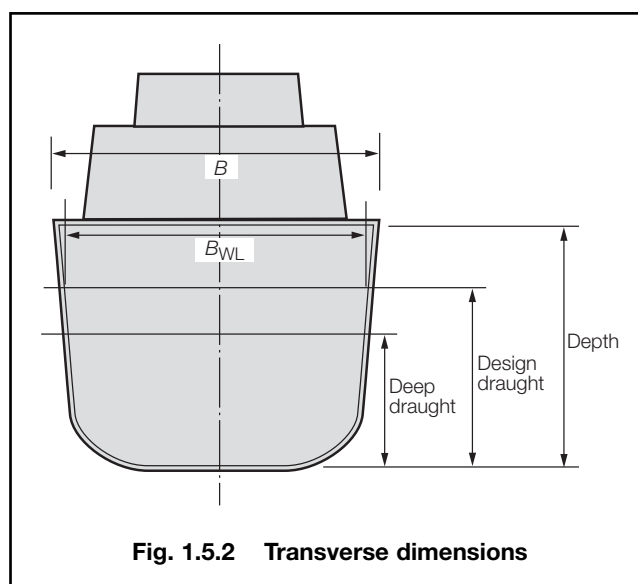


Fig. 1.5.2 Transverse dimensions

5.2.9 Breadth,  $B$ , is generally the greatest moulded breadth, in metres, throughout the depth of the ship or as defined in appropriate Chapters. For vessels of unusual cross section the breadth will be specially considered.

5.2.10 Depth,  $D$ , is measured, in metres, at amidships, from top of keel plate to the moulded deck line at side on the uppermost continuous deck, or as defined in appropriate Chapters or standards. When a rounded gunwale is arranged, the depth  $D$  is to be measured to the continuation of the moulded deck line at side.

5.2.11 Draught,  $T$ , is the design draught, in metres, measured from moulded baseline.

5.2.12 Block coefficient,  $C_b$ , is the block coefficient at draught  $T$  corresponding to a waterline at the design draught, based on Rule length  $L_R$  and breadth  $B_{WL}$ , as follows:

$$C_b = \frac{\text{moulded displacement (m}^3\text{) at draught } T}{L_R B_{WL} T}$$

5.2.13 Design draught may be determined from the waterline when the vessel is in a deep condition plus any specified margins. In special circumstances, the operation of the vessel or the Owner's specification may require that a higher waterline be used.

5.2.14 Deep draught is measured at a displacement such that the ship is in all respects complete, and is fully loaded with full complement, stores, fuel, water and payload.

5.2.15 Payload is the equipment and stores that are carried by the vessel for the purposes of fulfilling its operational requirements.

### 5.3 Margins

5.3.1 Design margin is an allowance for uncertainties used in the estimation of weight for design purposes.

5.3.2 Build margin is an allowance for unforeseen changes that may need to be made by the builder of the vessel.

5.3.3 Admiralty board margin is an allowance to cater for modifications made by the Owner to the vessel or equipment during the design and build stages.

5.3.4 Growth margin is an allowance for future controlled and uncontrolled weight growth during the life of the ship.

5.3.5 In the absence of any specific requirements, the sum of the margins is to be taken as 15 per cent of the displacement at the deep draught.

### 5.4 Decks

5.4.1 Strength deck is normally the uppermost continuous deck. Other decks may be considered as the strength deck provided that such decks are structurally effective. Where the upper deck is stepped, as in the case of vessels with a quarter deck, the strength deck is stepped, see Pt 6, Ch 4, 1.

5.4.2 The weather deck is generally the lowest continuous deck exposed to sea and weather loads. It is to be defined at the early stages of design in conjunction with LR and the Builder.

5.4.3 Other decks that are exposed to sea loads are to be assessed in accordance with the requirements for weather decks.

5.4.4 The damage control deck is the lowest deck on which continuous fore and aft access is provided to aid communications and recovery following damage. It is normally above the lowest vertical limit of watertight integrity the exact location being determined by the relevant sub-division and watertight integrity standard.

### 5.5 Co-ordinate system

5.5.1 Unless otherwise stated, the co-ordinate system is as shown in Fig. 1.5.3, that is, a right-hand co-ordinate system with the X axis positive forward, the Y axis positive to port and the Z axis positive upwards. Angular motions are considered positive in a clockwise direction about the X, Y or Z axes.

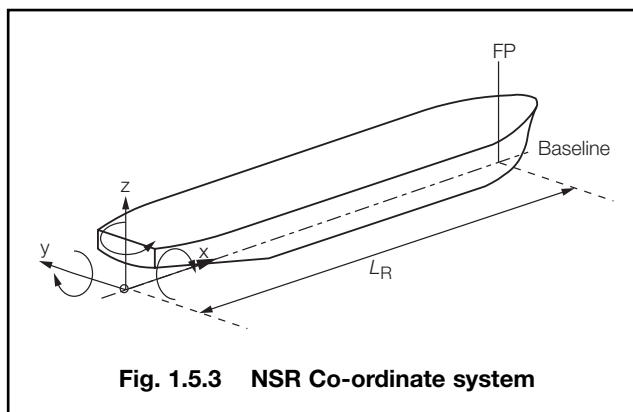


Fig. 1.5.3 NSR Co-ordinate system

### 5.6 Superstructure

5.6.1 For the purposes of strength assessment a superstructure is defined as a decked structure on the strength deck, extending from side to side of the vessel, or with its side plating being less than four per cent of the breadth,  $B$ , inboard of the shell plating.

### 5.7 Deckhouse

5.7.1 A deckhouse is in general defined as a decked structure on or above the strength deck with its side plating being four per cent or more of the breadth,  $B$ , inboard of the shell plating.

### 5.8 Weathertight

5.8.1 A boundary or closing appliance is considered weathertight if it is capable of preventing the passage of water into the ship in any sea conditions.

### 5.9 Watertight

5.9.1 A boundary or closing appliance is considered watertight if it is capable of preventing the passage of water in either direction under a head of water for which the surrounding structure is designed.

### 5.10 Terminology

5.10.1 Fig. 1.5.4 shows the general terminology adopted for structural items for a transversely and longitudinally framed ship.

5.10.2 Fig. 1.5.5 shows the general configuration of Naval ships of the NS1 and NS2 types. Various features are pointed out and are dealt with by the relevant Section of the Rules.

### 5.11 Extent of watertight subdivision

5.11.1 The minimum extent of watertight subdivision (internal), and integrity (internal and external), shall be such that it satisfies the requirements of the Navy. The standard of watertight subdivision and integrity shall be defined by the Navy or its nominated Naval Authority.

5.11.2 The minimum extent of watertight subdivision may be defined by a combination of decks, side shell and bulkheads or by a single deck.

5.11.3 Weathertight and watertight fittings and closing appliances are to be fitted in accordance with the requirements of the boundary on which they are placed.

5.11.4 For the calculation of watertight structural scantlings the pressure head is to be taken from the vertical limits of weathertightness determined by either intact or damage stability considerations determined by Ch 2,1.3 or the Naval Authority, see Pt 5, Ch 3,5.5.

### 5.12 Critical compartments

5.12.1 A critical compartment is one which, at battle stations, contains equipment or personnel without whom functions critical to combat survivability would be lost. These functions include the ability to fight, manoeuvre or communicate.

5.12.2 Critical compartments are typically the chart room, operations room, conning position, ship's control room and main communications office. Other compartments may be considered critical depending on ship's layout and design. The need for protecting critical compartments can be reduced by avoiding single point failure nodes and by concentrating and protecting those which cannot be avoided. A vulnerability analysis can be used to identify vulnerable critical compartments and the essential pieces of equipment or systems that are required to be protected, see 2.2.

5.12.3 Critical pipe and cable runs are routes in which the connections for survivability critical components run. They can cover individual routes or concentrated areas. An example is a run containing wave guides and signal cables for all the above water sensors on the mast.

### 5.13 Units system

5.13.1 Unless otherwise stated, the variables used in the Rules are expressed in the following units.

#### 5.13.2 General

Distances	m
Primary spacings	m
Secondary spacings	mm

#### 5.13.3 Hull girder properties

Dimensions	m
Area	m <sup>2</sup>
Section modulus	m <sup>3</sup>
Inertia	m <sup>4</sup>
Area-moment	m <sup>3</sup>

#### 5.13.4 Stiffeners

Area	cm <sup>2</sup>
Dimensions	mm
Inertia	cm <sup>4</sup>
Section modulus	cm <sup>3</sup>
Length/length effective	m

#### 5.13.5 Plating

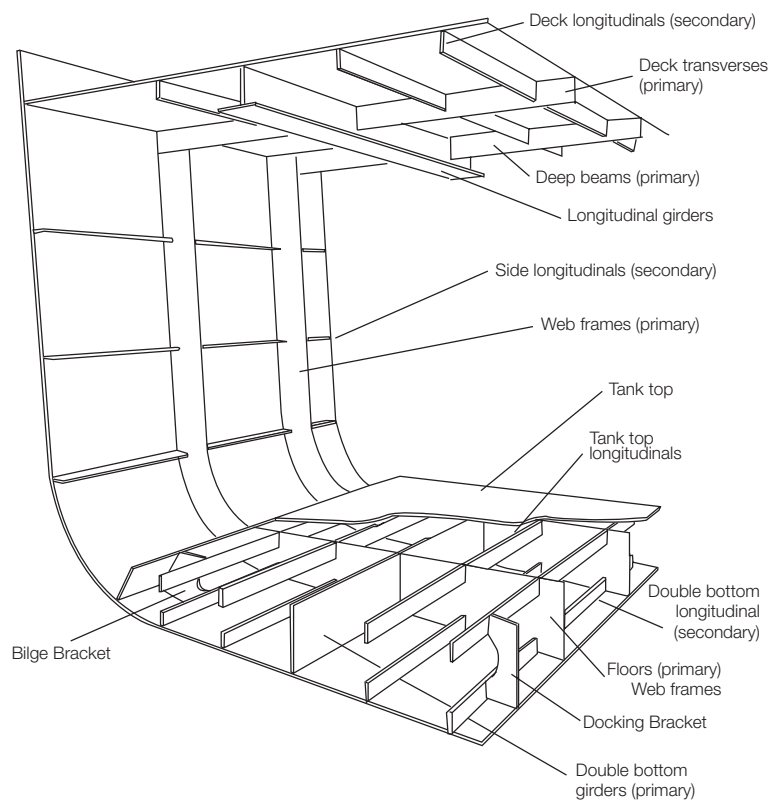
Breadth	mm
Length	m
Thickness	mm

#### 5.13.6 Loads

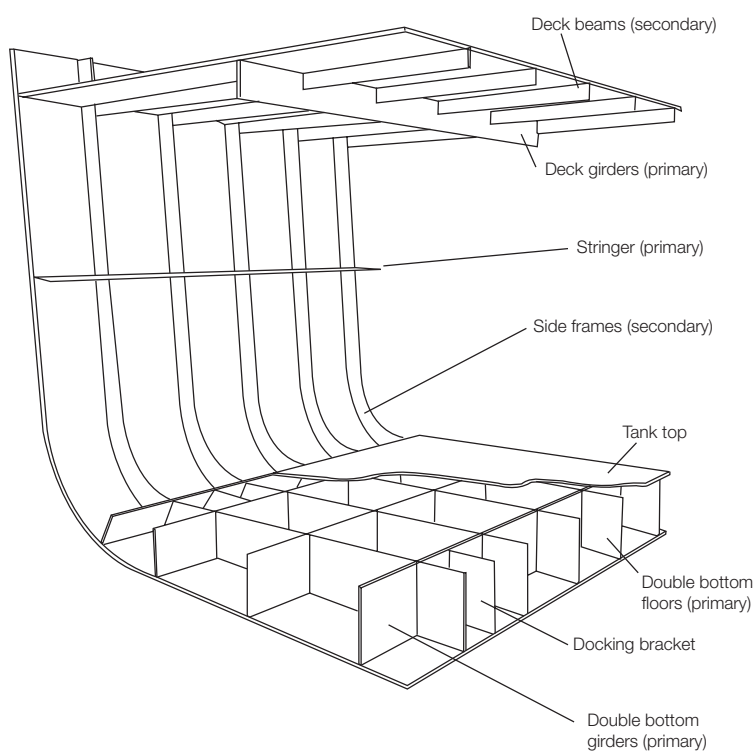
Pressures	kN/m <sup>2</sup>
Loads	kN
Bending moment	kN-m
Shear force	kN

#### 5.13.7 Other items

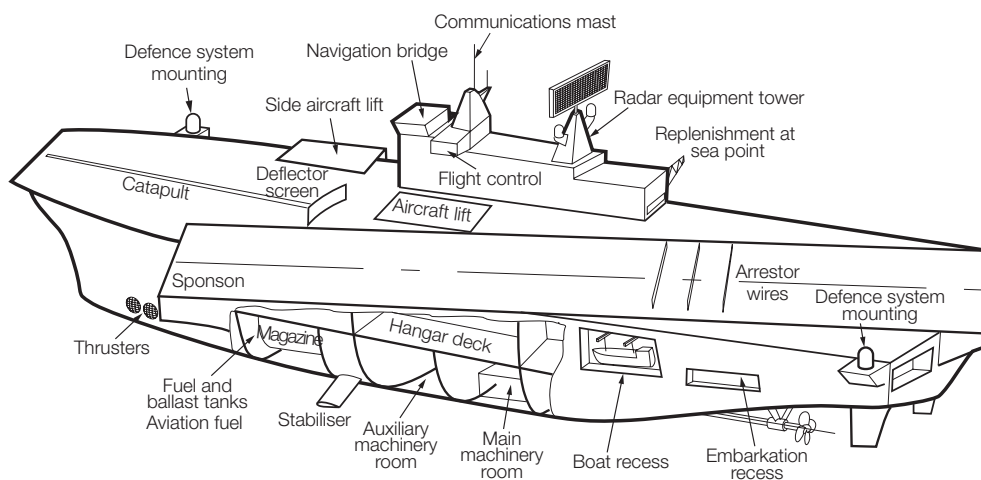
Yield strength	N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Stress	N/mm <sup>2</sup>
Deflections	mm
Modulus of Elasticity	N/mm <sup>2</sup>



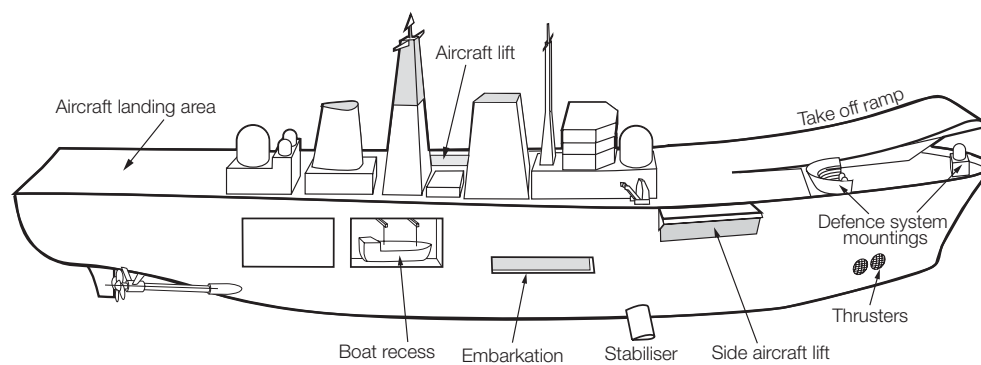
**Fig. 1.5.4(a) Longitudinal framing system**



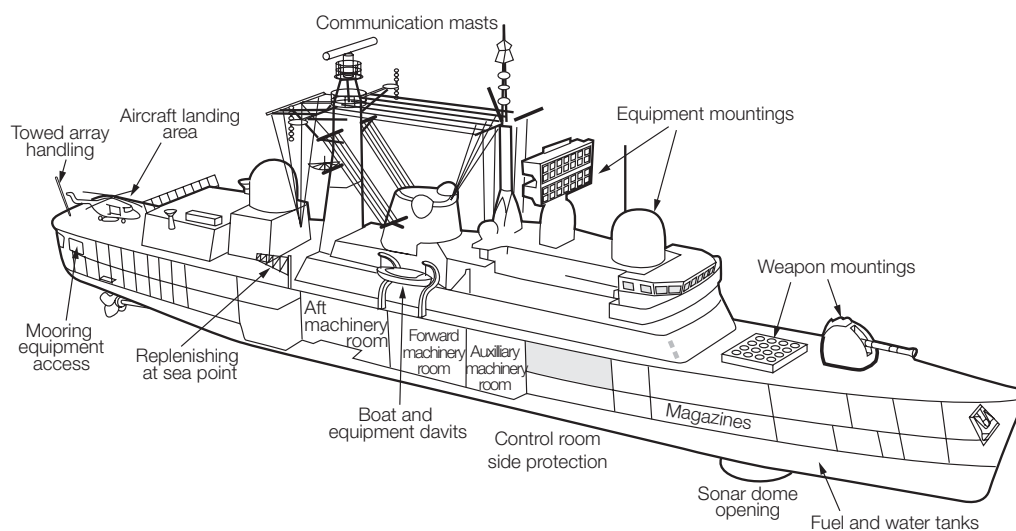
**Fig. 1.5.4(b) Transverse framing system**



**Fig. 1.5.5(a) NS1 Conventional aircraft carrier**



**Fig. 1.5.5(b) NS1 Short take off aircraft carrier**



**Fig. 1.5.5(c) NS2 Frigate/Destroyer**

## ■ Section 6

### **Building tolerances and associated repairs**

#### **6.1 Overview**

6.1.1 The general tolerances for new building and subsequent repairs are to be in accordance with the requirements of the Naval Ship Survey Procedures Manual.

6.1.2 Tolerances to be used for constructional misalignment for all materials are to be discussed between Owners/Builders and the Surveyor and acceptable Standards agreed subject to the requirements of 6.1.1 or National Authority requirements where applicable. The permitted degree of inaccuracy/misalignment will vary according to whether the defect is:

- (a) In primary structure.
- (b) In secondary structure.
- (c) Equipment supporting structure or underwater plate near acoustic equipment.
- (d) Aesthetically pleasing.

6.1.3 The requirements of these Rules are primarily concerned with ensuring items (a) and (b). The equipment manufacturer will be able to give advice on the maximum noise or misalignment that can be tolerated from item (c). Aesthetics, item (d) are at the discretion of the Owner.

---

## ■ Section 7

### **Inspection and testing**

#### **7.1 Overview**

7.1.1 The general requirements for testing and inspection of structural items are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 6,6 and LR's *Naval Survey Guidance for Steel Ships*.

7.1.2 Adequate facilities are to be provided to enable the Surveyor to carry out a satisfactory inspection and testing of all components during each stage of prefabrication and construction.

---

## Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Rule structural concept**
- 3 **Main hull structure**
- 4 **Bulkhead arrangements**
- 5 **Fore and aft end arrangements**
- 6 **Machinery space arrangements**
- 7 **Superstructures, deckhouses, bulwarks, sponsons and appendages**
- 8 **Pillars and pillar bulkheads**

## Section 1 General

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter illustrates the general principles to be adopted in the design of naval ships. Principles for subdivision and for maintaining watertight integrity are also covered.

1.1.2 Where additional requirements relating to particular ship types apply, these requirements are indicated in the appropriate Parts and are to be complied with as necessary.

### 1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 The Down flooding angle is the least angle of heel at which openings in the hull, superstructure or deckhouses, which cannot be closed weathertight, immerse and allow flooding to occur.

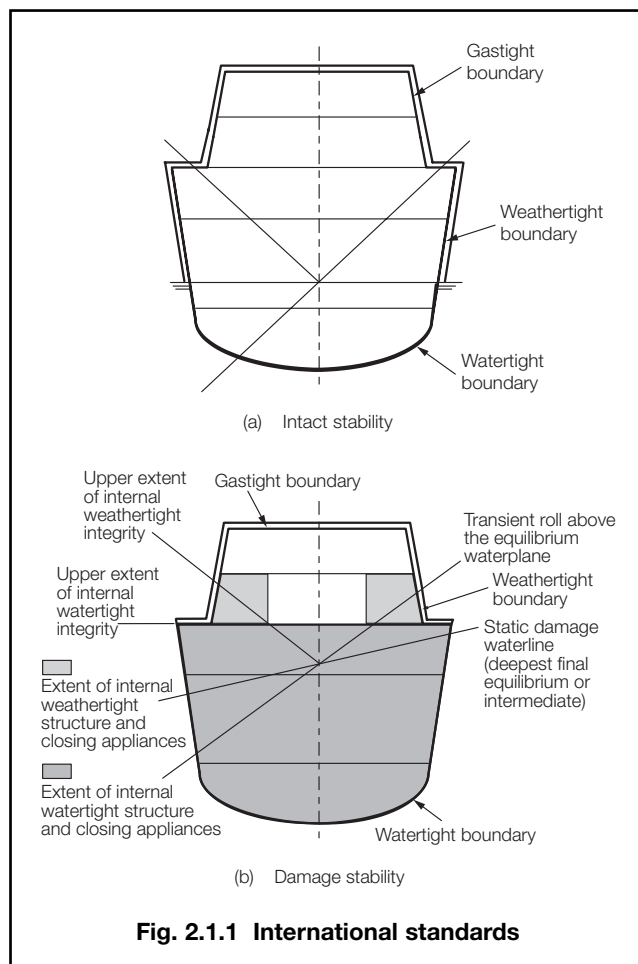
1.2.2 The minimum required angle of down flooding,  $\theta_{df}$ , is to be taken as  $40^\circ$  except when a higher minimum angle is required by the stability and subdivision standard specified by the Naval Authority, see Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1.9.

### 1.3 Watertight and weathertight integrity

1.3.1 The extents of the external and internal watertight and weathertight integrity are defined by the intact and damage stability requirements, see Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1.9. From these extents, the design pressure heads for bulkheads and other boundaries can be derived as well as the closing arrangement requirements for openings. Weathertight and watertight integrity are defined in Ch 1,5 and see Chapter 4 for the requirements for closing arrangements.

### 1.3.2 Intact stability

1.3.2.1 Intact stability calculations to satisfy the applicable criteria may be based on the buoyancy of the main hull, together with any superstructures that have watertight and weathertight boundaries, see Fig. 2.1.1(a) and Fig. 2.1.2(a).

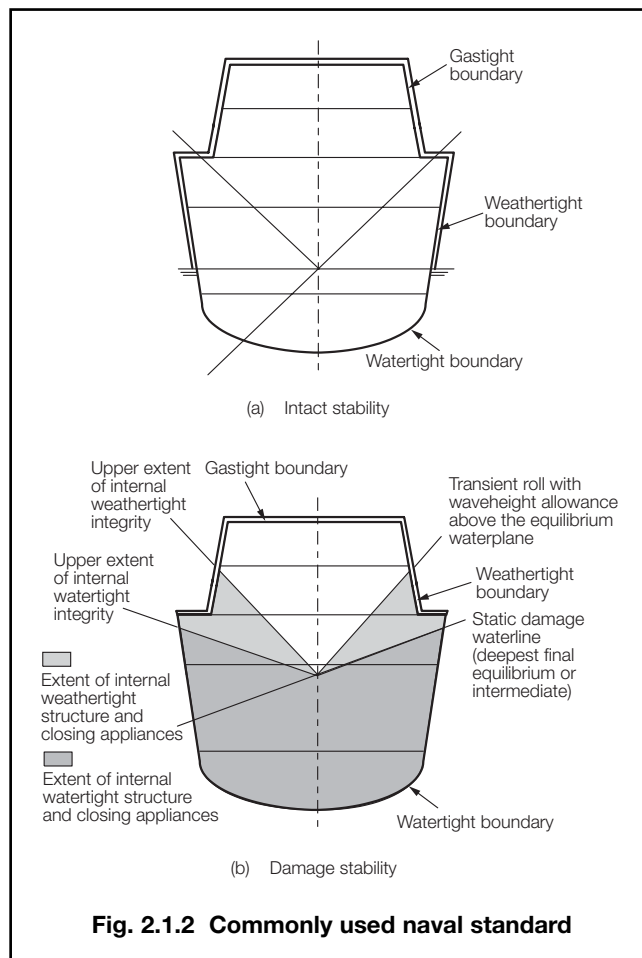


**Fig. 2.1.1 International standards**

1.3.2.2 Doors, hatches, ventilators, windows, sidelights, etc. provided with closing appliances which can be secured weathertight, and small openings through which progressive flooding cannot take place are not considered as down flooding points.

1.3.2.3 If the angle of down flooding is less than  $\theta_{df}$ , see 1.2.2, with the ship at its design draught, it is necessary to establish whether there is sufficient area under the righting lever curve up to the angle of down flooding. If there is insufficient area, then the opening which is causing down flooding to occur is to be provided with a weathertight closing appliance, or be repositioned.





- Below the limit of weathertight integrity defined by the transient roll angle and above the limit of watertight integrity the internal structure is to be designed to prevent progressive flooding of water into other compartments.

1.3.3.3 Fig. 2.1.2 represents a standard based on damaged stability draft and heel envelope approach commonly used by Navies.

- Below the limit of watertight integrity the boundary structure is to be watertight.
- Below the limit of weathertight integrity defined by the transient roll angle the boundary structure is to be weathertight.
- Above the limit of weathertight integrity the boundary structure, or some other internal boundary, may need to be gastight for CBRN protection.
- Below the limit of watertight integrity defined by the locii of static damage waterlines the watertight bulkheads are to be designed as watertight.
- Below the limit of weathertight integrity defined by the transient roll angle and above the limit of watertight integrity the internal structure is to be weathertight in order to prevent progressive flooding of water into other compartments.

1.3.3.4 In the absence of specific information on the vertical limit of watertight integrity, the upper extent of the watertight boundary may be assumed with the apex of the triangle on the damage control deck nominated by the Naval Authority at the location under consideration, see Fig. 2.1.2 and Pt 3, Ch 1.5.4.4.

## 1.3.3 Damage stability

1.3.3.1 Typically there are two approaches to defining the limits of watertight and weathertight integrity:

- One where the watertight integrity is defined by the bulkhead or freeboard deck, in accordance with normal SOLAS requirements.
- The other is based on watertight integrity up to a damaged stability draft and heel envelope, the latter is commonly used by Navies.

These two approaches are illustrated in Figs. 2.1.1(b) and 2.1.2(b) respectively.

1.3.3.2 Fig. 2.1.1(b) represents the SOLAS style requirements.

- Below the limit of watertight integrity the boundary structure is to be watertight.
- Below the limit of weathertight integrity defined by the transient roll angle the boundary structure is to be weathertight, in order to prevent ingress of water into the enclosed volume considered buoyant in the stability calculations and prevent downflooding.
- Above the limit of weathertight integrity the boundary structure, or some other internal boundary, may need to be gas-tight for CBRN protection.
- Below the limit of watertight integrity defined by the top of the watertight bulkhead, the bulkhead is to be designed as watertight.

## 1.4 Structural redundancy

1.4.1 The role and duty of a naval ship dictates that a certain degree of structural redundancy should be incorporated in the design. It is recommended that, as a minimum standard, a basic level of structural redundancy is included where practicable. This is normally achieved by considering likely damage scenarios, identifying the effects on structure, assessing the new loads and ensuring that the remaining structure will be satisfactory.

1.4.2 These Rules will not automatically ensure that a ship has structural redundancy. It is the responsibility of the designer to consider and design for the possible loads on a structure from damage scenarios. The **RSA** notation can be used to define residual strength requirements.

1.4.3 At a very basic level structural redundancy can be achieved by considering the removal of appropriate items of structure and re-evaluating the strength of remaining members using the loads presented in these Rules. Alternatively, the overall structural redundancy can be formally assessed and a notation assigned using the residual strength analysis detailed in 1.5.

**1.5 Residual Strength Assessment, RSA**

1.5.1 The design of a naval ship necessitates the reliable evaluation of its structural vulnerability to ensure the existence of adequate residual strength in the event of structural damage following a contact/collision incident or as a result of wartime activities. This strength assessment is additional to that required to cope with the design bending moments derived from environmental sea-state loading. The **RSA** notation within the Rules may be used to formally assess the overall structural redundancy.

1.5.2 The Owner may specify that a residual strength assessment is not required. In this case, the residual strength notation and all other notations which require the residual strength notation will not be assigned.

1.5.3 The capability to survive is to be judged on the residual structural strength after damage being able to meet specified global strength requirements and also local strength requirements in the event of damage leading to flooding, see Pt 6, Ch 4,4.

1.5.4 A residual strength assessment performed as defined in the Rules, assumes that a ship can remain operational for a limited period of time in reduced sea states, see Pt 6, Ch 4,1.2. Where a Naval Authority wishes to maintain a high operational capability following damage, special consideration will need to be given and revised criteria will be set.

1.5.5 The Owner may specify an alternative mission statement, in which case the requirements of the residual strength assessment procedure are to satisfy the Owner's definition.

1.5.6 The residual strength assessment as defined in the Rules considers three main definitions of damage:

- Peacetime damage extents, see Pt 6, Ch 4,2.
- Military threats, see Pt 4, Ch 2,7.
- As defined by the Owner.

1.5.7 The environmental parameters for the residual strength assessment procedure are given in Pt 5, Ch 2. The local and global loads for use in the **RSA** assessment procedure are given in Pt 5, Ch 3,5 and Pt 5, Ch 4,5 respectively.

1.5.8 **RSA** notation assessment levels are given in Pt 4, Ch 2,7. The acceptance criteria and procedures to be adopted for the application of the residual strength notation are given in Pt 6, Ch 4,4. See also Pt 1, Ch 2,3.6.9.

1.5.9 Further guidance for undertaking residual strength analysis for the determination of a residual strength notation is given in LR's Naval Ship Guidance Notes.

## ■ Section 2

### Rule structural concept

**2.1 General**

2.1.1 The Rules are based on the concept that the structural and watertight integrity and general safe operation of the ship will not be compromised by static and dynamic loads experienced during normal operating conditions.

2.1.2 For derivation of scantlings of stiffeners, beams, girders, etc., the formulae in the Rules are normally based on elastic or plastic theory using simple beam models supported at one or more points and with varying degrees of fixity at the ends, associated with an appropriate concentrated or distributed load. Alternative methods will be considered.

**2.2 Scantlings**

2.2.1 Scantlings are generally based on the strength required to withstand loads imposed by the sea, payload, ballast, fuel and other operational loads. However, the Rules assume that the nature and stowage of the payload, ballast, etc., are such as to avoid excessive structural stresses, and deformation.

2.2.2 The design loads and pressures given in Part 5 are to be used with scantling formulae or direct calculation methods to derive scantlings based on maximum allowable stress or other suitable strength criteria.

2.2.3 Hull structural vibration resulting from cyclic loadings arising from the sea and other sources are to be such that the normal operation and structural integrity of the ship are not impaired.

2.2.4 Static loads are based on standard conditions defined in Part 5, or determined from loading conditions submitted by the Builder.

2.2.5 Dynamic loadings are examined for both the local and global structures. These loadings are based upon the designer's stated operational and environmental conditions or the Rule minimum criteria, whichever is the greater.

2.2.6 Wave induced loads are considered both in the static condition, i.e., hydrostatic and pitching pressures, and in the dynamic mode, i.e., impact, slamming and hogging and sagging wave loading conditions.

2.2.7 Hull girder strength will in general require to be investigated dependent upon the length, configuration, proportions, proposed scenarios, etc., of the ship.

2.2.8 Structure in way of Replenishment at Sea, **RAS**, positions, cranes, heavy lift route points, weapon handling, etc., are to be designed in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1. The equipment is to be designed in accordance with the requirements of the Naval Authority, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,1.1.

2.2.9 Scantling requirements in respect of miscellaneous items of structure such as local foundations, base plates, insert plates, bollards, etc., are not specifically indicated within these Rules. However the acceptance of such items will be specially considered on the basis of experience, good practice and direct calculation where appropriate.

## 2.3 Definitions and structural terms

2.3.1 For the purpose of clarifying the nomenclature of items of structure referred to throughout the Rules, the following definitions are given:

- Secondary members are stiffeners supporting shell, deck or bulkhead plating, e.g., side/bottom/deck longitudinals, frames and beams, and transverse/longitudinal bulkhead stiffeners.
- Primary members are those members supporting secondary members and will be the predominant members in grillage systems, e.g.:
  - Bottom structure – floors, bottom and inner bottom transverse and girders.
  - Deck structure – deck transverses and girders.
  - Side structure – side transverses and side stringers.
  - Bulkheads – vertical webs and bulkhead stringers.

Deep web frames are members supporting primary members between bulkheads or decks, where additional support is necessary.

2.3.2 The fore end region structure is considered to include all structure forward of  $0,7L_R$ .

2.3.3 The aft end region structure is considered to include all structure aft of  $0,3L_R$ .

## ■ Section 3 Main hull structure

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 The Rules are formulated to provide for scantling derivation for designs comprising the following structural framing systems. Details of the requirements are given in Pt 6, Ch 2.

- (a) Primary/secondary stiffener systems – where, due to the relative differences in stiffness of the members, the secondary members are considered to act independently of, and are supported by, the primary members.
- (b) Grillage systems – where the relative stiffness of the orthogonal stiffening is similar and work together to support the applied loads. The grillage system is in turn supported by major structural members such as bulkheads or decks.

3.1.2 For practical reasons of fabrication and continuity of structure, orthogonal systems using members of the same depth should not be employed. A minimum web depth difference of 40 mm is generally to be used to allow for the passage through the web at the intersections.

3.1.3 It is recognised that there will be a reduction in transverse 'racking' strength in association with the grillage stiffening system where the predominantly stiffer transverse web of the primary/secondary system is missing. In large areas of grillage systems the 'racking' strength, therefore, will be specially considered.

3.1.4 For NS1 and NS2 ships, longitudinal framing, in general, is to be adopted in the bottom shell, decks and inner bottom, with transverse or longitudinal framing at the side shell and longitudinal bulkheads. In NS3 ships, transverse or longitudinal framing may be universally adopted.

3.1.5 The adopted framing system whether longitudinal or transverse is required to be continuous. Where it is impracticable to comply with these requirements or where it is proposed to terminate the framing structure in way of other primary members such as the transom, bulkheads or integral tank boundaries, they are to be bracketed in way of their end connections to maintain the continuity of structural strength. Particular care is to be taken to ensure accurate alignment of the brackets. Brackets are in general to have soft toes and to terminate on structure that is capable of supporting the transmitted bending moment and forces.

3.1.6 The arrangement of the connection between any stiffener and bracket is to be such that at no point in the connection are the section modulus and inertia reduced to less than that of the stiffener with associated plating.

3.1.7 The arrangement of material is to be such as will ensure structural continuity. Abrupt changes of shape or section, sharp corners and points of stress concentration are to be avoided.

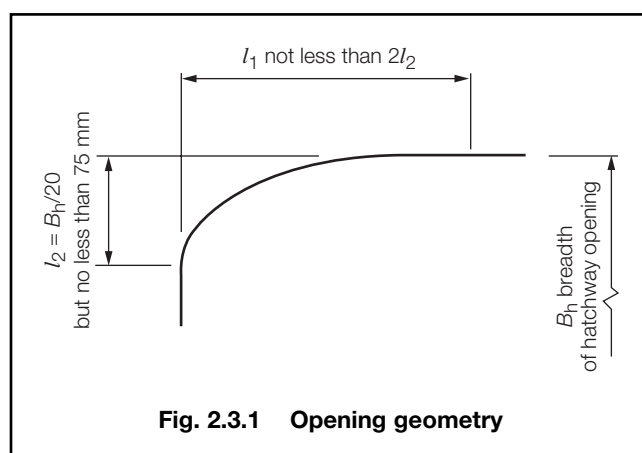
3.1.8 Where members abut on both sides of a bulkhead or similar structure, care is to be taken to ensure good alignment and continuity of strength.

3.1.9 The fitting of pillar bulkheads is preferable to pillars. The fitting of pillars is to be avoided in hangar and vehicle decks and where connected to the inner bottom. Where enhanced shock and blast requirements are specified, only pillar bulkheads may be fitted. When fitted, pillars and pillar bulkheads are to be in the same vertical line wherever possible, and elsewhere arrangements are to be made to transmit the out of line forces satisfactorily. The load at head and heel of pillars is to be effectively distributed and arrangements are to be made to ensure the adequacy and lateral stability of the supporting members.

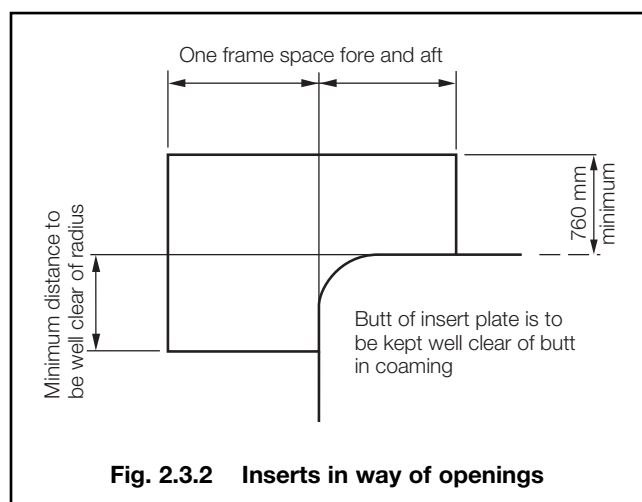
3.1.10 End connections of structural members are to provide adequate end fixity and effective distribution of the load into the supporting structure.

3.1.11 The corners of large openings in the shell and decks from  $0,25L_R$  to  $0,75L_R$  are to be elliptical, parabolic or circular. Where predominantly unidirectional stress fields are anticipated, elliptical or parabolic corners are recommended. Where biaxial or torsional stress fields are expected, circular corners are recommended.

3.1.12 Where elliptical corners are arranged the major axis is to be fore and aft, the ratio of the major to minor axis is to be not less than 2 to 1 nor greater than 2,5 to 1, and the minimum half-length of the major axis is to be defined by  $l_1$  in Fig. 2.3.1. Where parabolic corners are arranged, the dimensions are also to be as shown in Fig. 2.3.1. An increase in plate thickness will not generally be required.



3.1.13 Where circular corners are arranged, a radius not less than 1/20 of the breadth of the opening is to be used with a minimum of 75 mm. For circular corners, inserts of the size and extent shown in Fig. 2.3.2 will, in general, be required. The thickness of insert plates is to be not less than 25 per cent greater than the adjacent plating with a minimum increase of 4 mm. The increase need not exceed 7 mm.



3.1.14 For other shapes of corner, inserts of the size and extent shown in Fig. 2.3.2 will, in general, be required.

3.1.15 Manholes, lightening holes and other cut-outs are to be avoided in way of concentrated loads and areas of high shear. In particular, manholes and similar openings are not to be cut in vertical or horizontal diaphragm plates in narrow cofferdams or in floors and double bottom girders close to their span ends, or below the heels of pillars, unless the stresses in the plating and the panel buckling characteristics have been calculated and found satisfactory. The size of openings are to be in accordance with 3.2.9.

3.1.16 Manholes, lightening holes and other openings are to be suitably framed and stiffened where necessary.

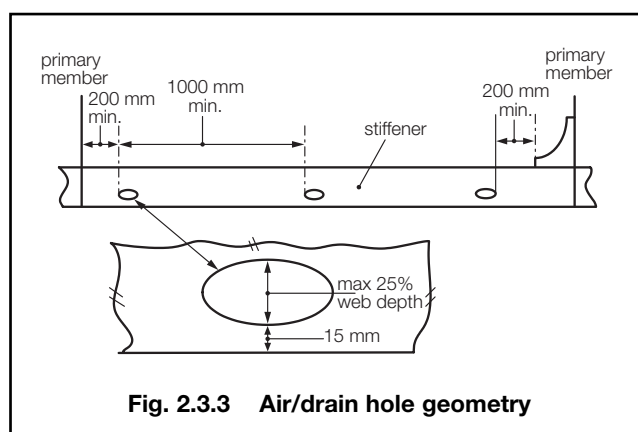
3.1.17 Provision is made for the free passage of air and water taking into account the pumping rates required.

3.1.18 Particular care is to be given to the positioning of drain holes to reduce stress concentrations and ensure adequate drainage from all parts of the ship's hull to the suction. They are to be placed as close to the bottom as practicable.

3.1.19 Suitable arrangements are to be made to provide free passage of air from all parts of tanks to the air pipes. They are to be placed as close to the top of the tank as practicable. Air pipes of sufficient number and area are to be fitted to each tank in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 4,6.

3.1.20 Air and drain holes, notches and scallops are to be kept at least 200 mm clear of the toes of end brackets and other areas of high stress. Openings are to be well rounded with smooth edges. Closely spaced scallops are not permitted.

3.1.21 Widely spaced air or drain holes, cut entirely in the web adjacent to, but clear of the welded connection, may be accepted, provided that they are of elliptical shape, or equivalent, to minimise stress concentrations, see Fig. 2.3.3.



## 3.2 Primary members

3.2.1 The following guidelines for the design of primary members are to be adopted. Scantling requirements for primary members are given in Pt 6, Ch 3.

3.2.2 Primary members are to be so arranged as to ensure effective continuity of strength, and abrupt changes of depth or section are to be avoided. Where members abut on both sides of a bulkhead, or on other members, arrangements are to be made to ensure that they are in alignment. Primary members are to form a continuous line of support and, wherever possible, a complete ring system.

3.2.3 Primary members are to have adequate lateral stability and web stiffening and the stiffening structure is to be arranged to minimise hard spots and other sources of stress concentration.

3.2.4 Primary members are to be provided with adequate end fixity by end brackets or equivalent structure. The design of end connections and their supporting structure is to be such as to provide adequate resistance to rotation and displacement of the joint and effective distribution of the load from the member. Where a deck girder or transverse is connected to a vertical member on the shell or bulkhead, the scantlings of the latter may be required to be increased to provide adequate stiffness to resist rotation of the joint.

3.2.5 Where the primary member is supported by structure which provides only a low degree of restraint against rotation, the member is generally to be extended beyond the point of support and thereafter tapered and/or scarfed into the adjacent structure over a distance generally not less than two frame spaces.

3.2.6 Where primary members are subject to concentrated loads, particularly if these loads are out of line with the member web, additional strengthening may be required.

3.2.7 Where a member is continued over a point of support, such as a pillar or pillar bulkhead stiffener, the design of the end connection is to be such as to ensure the effective distribution of the load into the support. Brackets are generally required but alternative arrangements will be considered.

3.2.8 The thickness of the brackets supporting primary members is to be not less than that of the primary member web. The free edge of the bracket is to be stiffened.

3.2.9 Where openings are cut in the web or primary members, the depth of opening is not to exceed 50 per cent of the web depth, and the opening is to be so located that the edges are not less than 25 per cent of the web depth from the face plate. The length of opening is not to exceed the web depth or 60 per cent of the secondary member spacing, whichever is the greater, and the ends of the openings are to be equidistant from the corners of cut-outs for secondary members. Where larger openings are proposed, the arrangements and compensation required will be specially considered.

3.2.10 Openings are to have well rounded corners and smooth edges and are to be located having regard to the stress distribution and buckling strength of the panel in which they are situated.

3.2.11 Cut-outs for the passage of secondary members are to be designed to minimise the creation of stress concentrations. The breadth of cut-out is to be kept as small as practicable and the top edge is to be rounded, or the corner radii made as large as practicable. The extent of the direct connection to the web plating, or the scantlings of lugs or collars, is to be sufficient for the loads to be transmitted from the secondary member, see also Pt 6, Ch 6,5.5.

3.2.12 Stiffeners in areas likely to experience slamming, impact or dynamic loads are to be lugged or bracketed to the web of the primary member at their intersections, see also Pt 6, Ch 6,5.5.

## 3.3 Shell plating

3.3.1 Scantling requirements for shell plating are given in Pt 6, Ch 3,5.

3.3.2 The sheerstrake is generally to be taken as the side shell, locally reinforced in way of deck/hull connection. The amount of local reinforcement will be dependent upon the arrangement of structure and the proposed service.

3.3.3 In general, openings are not to be cut in the sheerstrake, however, if operational requirements dictate, openings that are less than 20 per cent of the depth of the sheerstrake may be accepted. Openings greater than 20 per cent of the depth of the sheerstrake will require special consideration.

3.3.4 Where large side shell openings, such as side aircraft lifts, are proposed, detailed calculations are to be submitted.

3.3.5 Where rounded gunwales are fitted, arrangements are to ensure a smooth transition from rounded gunwale to angled gunwale.

3.3.6 At the ends of superstructures where the side plating is extended and tapered to align with the bulwark plating, the transition plating is to be suitably stiffened and supported. Where freeing ports or other openings are essential in this plate, they are to be suitably framed and kept well clear of the free edge.

3.3.7 Sea-inlets, or other openings, are to have well rounded corners and, so far as is practicable, are to be kept clear of the bilge radius, chine or radiused sheerstrake. Arrangements are to be made to maintain the strength in way of the openings. Additional thickness is to be required in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 3,5.7. Adequate provision is to be taken to prevent local resonance problems. Additional guidance for the design of sea-inlets or other openings, is given in Pt 4, Ch 1,8.

3.3.8 Openings on or near the bilge radius may be accepted provided that they are of elliptical shape, or equivalent, to minimise stress concentrations and are, in general, to be kept clear of weld connections.

3.3.9 The scantlings of appendages (e.g., 'A' brackets) are covered in Chapter 3. However, in way of the hull penetrations, particular care will be required to be given to the strength and watertight integrity of the shell.

### **3.4 Shell framing**

3.4.1 The scantlings of shell structure are to be determined in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 3,6.

3.4.2 Longitudinal framing is, in general, to be adopted in the bottom, but special consideration will be given to proposals for transverse framing in this region, see 3.1.4.

3.4.3 For NS1 and NS2 ships, the bottom and side longitudinals are to be continuous in way of both watertight and non-watertight floors, but equivalent arrangements will be specially considered.

3.4.4 Bottom and side longitudinals are to be supported by primary transverse structure such as bottom transverses, floors or bulkheads, generally spaced not more than 2,5 m apart in NS1 and NS2 ships, and 1,5 m in NS3 ships.

3.4.5 Bottom and side transverses, where fitted, are to be continuous and substantially bracketed at their end connections to side and deck transverses and bottom floors.

3.4.6 Bottom and side frames are to be effectively continuous and bracketed at their end connections to side frames, deck beams and bottom floors as appropriate. Side frames are to be supported by decks or stringers spaced not more than three metres apart.

3.4.7 Bottom girders and side stringers supporting transverse frames, are to be continuous through transverse bulkheads and supporting structures. They are to be supported by deep transverse web frames, floors, bulkheads, or other primary structure, generally spaced not more than three metres apart.

3.4.8 For primary members the web stability, openings in the web and continuity and alignment are to be in accordance with 3.2.9.

3.4.9 For ships intended for beach landing operations, see Pt 4, Ch 2,8.

3.4.10 For berthing and docking requirements, see Pt 3, Ch 5,10.

3.4.11 Where the shell framing is of unusual design or proportions, the scantlings are to be determined by direct calculation.

### **3.5 Single bottom structure**

3.5.1 Scantling requirements for single bottom structure are given in Pt 6, Ch 3,7.

3.5.2 The requirements of this Section provide for single bottom construction in association with transverse and longitudinal framing systems, see 3.1.4.

3.5.3 All girders are to extend as far forward and aft as necessary and care is to be taken to avoid any abrupt discontinuities. Where girders are cut at bulkheads, alignment and longitudinal strength are to be maintained.

3.5.4 Particular care is to be taken to ensure that the continuity of structural strength in way of the intersection of transverse floors and longitudinal girders is maintained. The face flats of such stiffening members are to be effectively connected.

3.5.5 The single bottom structure in way of the keel and girders is to be sufficient to withstand the forces imposed by dry-docking the ship, see Pt 4, Ch 2,8.

3.5.6 A continuous centreline girder is, in general, to be fitted in all ships throughout the length of the hull as far forward and aft as practicable.

3.5.7 Where the floor breadth at the upper edge exceeds 6,0 m side girders are to be fitted at each side of the centre girder such that the spacing between the side and centre girders or between the side girders themselves is not greater than 3 m. In general, side girders where fitted are to be continuous, extend as far forward and aft as practicable and to terminate in way of bulkheads, deep floors or other primary transverse structure. In addition, continuous intercostal longitudinal stiffeners are to be fitted where the panel size exceeds the ratio 4 to 1.

3.5.8 In ships with a transversely framed bottom construction, the bottom shell plating is, in general, to be reinforced with additional continuous, or intercostal, longitudinal stiffeners. Alternative arrangements to be considered.

3.5.9 For ships intended for beach landing operations, see Pt 4, Ch 2,8.

3.5.10 In longitudinally framed ships, plate floors are to be fitted as given in 3.4.4. The connections with side transverse web frames are to be as required by 3.4.6. Additional transverse floors or webs are in general to be fitted at the half spacing of primary transverse structure in way of engine seatings, thrust bearings, pillars, skegs, bilge keels and the bottom of the ship forward.

3.5.11 The tops of the floors may be level from side to side. However, in ships having considerable rise of floor the depth of floors may require to be increased to maintain the required section modulus.

3.5.12 In general, the floors in way of the stern tubes, shaft brackets, etc., are to provide effective support for these items.

### **3.6 Double bottom structure**

3.6.1 Scantlings of double bottoms are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 3,8.

3.6.2 Double bottoms are in general to be fitted in NS1 ships and are to extend from the collision bulkhead to the aft peak bulkhead, as far as this is practicable within the design and proper working of the ship. The subdivision standard specified by the Naval Authority adopted in accordance with 1.3 may contain additional requirements for the height and extent of the double bottom.

3.6.3 A double bottom is generally not required in way of watertight compartments used exclusively for the carriage of liquids, provided the safety of the ship in the event of bottom damage is not thereby impaired. Suitable scarfing arrangements are to be made to maintain continuity of the inner bottom.

3.6.4 The inner bottom is to be continued to the ship's side as far as practicable, in such a manner as to protect the bottom to the turn of bilge or chine.

3.6.5 The centreline girder and side girders are to extend as far forward and aft as practicable and care is to be taken to avoid any abrupt discontinuities. Where girders are cut at bulkheads, their alignment and longitudinal strength is to be maintained.

3.6.6 Small wells constructed in the double bottom structure are not to extend in depth more than necessary. A well extending to the outer bottom may, however, be permitted at the after end of the shaft tunnel of the ship. Other well arrangements (e.g., for lubricating oil under main engines) may also be considered provided they give protection equivalent to that afforded by the double bottom.

3.6.7 Sufficient manholes are to be cut in the inner bottom, floors and side girders to provide adequate access to, and ventilation of, all parts of the double bottom. Openings are to be in accordance with 3.2.9.

3.6.8 The number and position of manholes are to be such that access under service conditions is neither difficult nor dangerous.

3.6.9 Manholes and their covers are to be of an approved design or in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.

3.6.10 Provision is to be made for the free passage of air and water from all parts of the tanks to the air pipes and suctions, account being taken of the pumping rates required.

3.6.11 Adequate access is also to be provided to all parts of the double bottom for future maintenance, surveys and repairs. The edges of all openings are to be smooth.

3.6.12 A plan showing the location of manholes and access openings within the double bottoms is to be submitted.

3.6.13 Manholes, lightening holes and other cut-outs are to be avoided in way of concentrated loads and areas of high shear. Details are given in 3.1.15.

3.6.14 Air and drain holes, notches and scallops are to be in accordance with 3.1.7.

3.6.15 The Rules are formed on the basis that access to double bottoms will be by means of manholes with bolted covers. However, alternative arrangements will be specially considered.

3.6.16 In way of ends of floors and girders and transverse bulkheads, the number and size of holes are to be kept to a minimum, the openings are to be circular or elliptical and edge stiffening may be required.

3.6.17 Holes are not to be cut in the centre girder, except in tanks at the forward and after ends of the ship or where tank widths are reduced unless additional stiffening and/or compensation is fitted to maintain the structural integrity.

3.6.18 Centreline and side girders are to be continuous and sufficient to withstand the forces imposed by dry-docking the ship, see Part 4. Vertical stiffeners are to be fitted at every bracket floor.

3.6.19 Where the breadth of floor is greater than 6,0 m, additional side girders having the same thickness as the floors are to be fitted. The number of side girders is to be such that the distance between the side girders and centre girder and margin plate, or between the side girders themselves, does not exceed 3,0 m (for transversely framed ships, 5,0 m for longitudinally framed ships).

3.6.20 Side girders where fitted are to extend as far forward and aft as practicable and are in general to terminate in way of bulkheads, deep floors or other primary transverse structure.

3.6.21 Plate floors are, in general, to be continuous between the centre girder and the margin plate. Vertical stiffeners are to be fitted to the floors, the number and positions of these stiffeners being dependent on the arrangement of the double bottom structure.

3.6.22 In longitudinally framed ships, plate floors or equivalent structure are, in general, to be fitted in accordance with 3.4.4 and additionally at the following positions:

- (a) At every half spacing of primary transverse structure as given in 3.4.4, in way of the bottom of the ship forward of  $0,8L_R$ .
- (b) Underneath pillars and bulkheads.

3.6.23 In transversely framed NS3 ships, plate floors are to be fitted at every frame in the engine room, under bulkheads, in way of change in depth of double bottom and elsewhere at a spacing not exceeding 1,5 m.

3.6.24 Between plate floors, the shell and inner bottom are to be supported by bracket floors. The brackets are to have the same thickness as plate floors and are to be stiffened on the unsupported edge.

3.6.25 In longitudinally framed ships, the bracket floors are to extend from the centre girder and margin plate to the adjacent longitudinal, but in no case is the breadth of the bracket floor to be taken as less than 75 per cent of the depth of the centre girder. They are to be fitted at every frame at the margin plate, and those at the centre girder are to be spaced not more than 1,0 m apart.

3.6.26 In transversely framed ships, the breadth of the bracket floors, attaching the bottom and inner bottom frames to the centre girder and margin plate, is to be not less than 75 per cent of the depth of the centre girder, see Fig. 1.5.4(b) in Chapter 1.

3.6.27 Inner bottom longitudinals are to be supported by inner bottom transverses, floors, bulkheads or other primary structure, generally spaced not more than 2,5 m apart in NS1 and NS2 ships, and 1,5 m in NS3 ships.

3.6.28 The inner bottom longitudinals are to be continuous through the supporting structure.

3.6.29 Inner bottom transverses are to be continuous and to be substantially bracketed at their end connections to bottom transverses, bottom floors and tank side brackets.

3.6.30 In general, whilst the fitting of pillars connecting to the inner bottom is to be avoided, where they are fitted, the connections of the floors to the girders, and of the floors and girders to the inner bottom, are to be suitably increased. Where pillars are not directly above the intersection of plate floors and girders, partial floors and intercostals are to be fitted as necessary to support the pillars. Manholes are not to be cut in the floors and girders below the heels of pillars. Where longitudinal framing is adopted in the double bottom, equivalent stiffening under the heels of pillars is to be provided. Where the heels of pillars are carried on a tunnel, suitable arrangements are to be made to support the load.

3.6.31 Double bottoms are to be tested in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 6,6 of the Rules.

3.6.32 The Rules are formed on the basis that access to double bottoms will be by means of manholes with bolted covers. However, alternative arrangements will be specially considered.

### **3.7 Deck structure**

3.7.1 Scantlings of decks are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3,10.

3.7.2 Where an inner bottom is not fitted, consideration of the ship's stability and strength following bottom damage is required. It may be appropriate to consider designing the lowest deck to be watertight. This is to be determined in conjunction with the damage stability analysis, assuming bottom damage.

3.7.3 The deck plating is to be supported by transverse beams with fore and aft girders; by longitudinals with deck transverses, or alternatively, by a grillage system of orthogonal and primary structure as provided for in 3.1.1. The transverse beams and deck transverses are to align with side main frames and side transverses respectively. For NS1 and NS2 ships, longitudinal framing is generally to be adopted, see 3.1.4.

3.7.4 Where transversely stiffened, beams are to be fitted at every frame and bracketed to the side frames. Deck transverses should also be fitted at the ends of large openings in the deck.

3.7.5 Primary stiffening members are to be continuous and substantially bracketed at their end connections to maintain continuity of structural strength.

3.7.6 Secondary stiffening members are to be effectively continuous and bracketed at their end connections as appropriate.

3.7.7 The ends of beams, longitudinals, girders and transverses are to be effectively built into the adjacent structure, or equivalent arrangements provided.

3.7.8 Arrangements to prevent tripping are to be fitted on deep webs.

3.7.9 The deck plating and supporting structure are to be suitably reinforced in way of cranes, masts, and deck equipment or machinery.

3.7.10 Deck structures subject to concentrated loads, are to be suitably reinforced. Where concentrations of loading on one side of a stiffening member may occur, such as out of line pillars, the member is to be adequately stiffened against torsion. Additional reinforcements may be required in way of localised areas of high stress.

3.7.11 The end connection of strength deck longitudinals to bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity and, so far as is practicable, direct continuity of longitudinal strength. For NS1 and NS2 ships, the strength deck longitudinals are to be continuous through transverse structure, including bulkheads, but alternative arrangements will be considered.

3.7.12 Transverses supporting deck longitudinals are, in general, to be spaced not more than 2,5 m apart in NS1 and NS2 ships, and 1,5 m in NS3 ships. They are to be aligned with primary side structure.

3.7.13 All openings are to be supported by an adequate framing system, pillar bulkheads or cantilevers. When cantilevers are used, the scantlings are to be determined by direct calculation.

3.7.14 Where stiffening members terminate in way of an opening they are to be attached to carlings, girders, transverses or coaming plates, in such a way as to minimise stress concentrations.

3.7.15 Other openings in the strength deck outside the line of major openings are to be kept to the minimum number consistent with operational requirements. Openings are to be arranged clear of other opening corners and, so far as possible, clear of one another. Where necessary, plate panels in which openings are cut are to be adequately stiffened against compression and shear buckling. The corners of all openings are to be well rounded and the edges smooth. Attention is to be paid to structural continuity and abrupt changes of shape, section or thickness are to be avoided.



3.7.16 Gutterway bars and spurn waters at the upper deck are to be so arranged that the effect of main hull stresses on them is minimised and that they do not cause stress concentrations in the deck or sheerstrake, see *also* Pt 6, Ch 3,3.6.

3.7.17 It is recommended that the working areas of the weather deck have an anti-slip surface. Working areas of all decks where there is the possibility of leakage of fuel, hydraulic or other oils are to be provided with anti-slip deck coatings, or equivalent, and guard rails, as appropriate.

3.7.18 Where decks are sheathed with wood or other materials, details of the method of attachment are to be submitted, see *also* Part 6.

3.7.19 Where large or novel hatch openings are proposed, detailed calculations are to be submitted to demonstrate that the scantlings and arrangements in way of the openings are adequate to maintain continuity of structural strength.

3.7.20 Where large side shell openings, such as side aircraft lifts, are proposed, detailed calculations are to be submitted.

3.7.21 Pipe or cable runs through watertight decks are to be fitted with suitable watertight glands of a type, approved and pressure tested for the maximum head of water indicated by any required damage stability calculations.

3.7.22 The Naval Authority may require type approval of all watertight deck penetration glands to a nominated standard.

3.7.23 Doors and hatches fitted in watertight decks are to be of equivalent construction to the deck in which they are fitted, be permanently attached and capable of being closed watertight from both sides of the deck except for access to high security areas such as magazines or to prevent access from open decks as agreed with the Naval Authority. They are to be tested watertight in accordance with the LR survey procedures.

## 3.8 Deep tank structure

3.8.1 The scantlings of deep tank structure are to be in accordance with the relevant Sections of Part 6.

3.8.2 Above the top of floors, the side shell structure of deep tanks is to be effectively supported by a system of primary framing with web frames, stringers, cross ties and/or perforated flats.

3.8.3 The maximum spacing of side shell transverses in longitudinally framed deep tanks is generally not to exceed 2,5 m in NS1 and NS2 ships, and 1,5 m in NS3 ships.

3.8.4 The maximum spacing of side shell web frames in transversely framed deep tanks is generally not to exceed five frame spaces. They are to extend from the tank top to the level of the lowest deck above the design waterline.

3.8.5 The maximum spacing of horizontal stringers is generally not to exceed 3,0 m.

3.8.6 Where decks terminate at deep tanks suitable scarfing arrangements are to be arranged and the side shell supported by a stringer at deck level. The stringer can be either fully effective or acting as part of a grillage. Bulkhead stiffeners are to be supported at the deck level against tripping.

3.8.7 A centreline bulkhead is, generally, to be fitted in deep tanks which extend from side to side. The bulkhead may be intact or perforated as desired. If intact, the scantlings are to comply with the requirements of Part 6 for tank boundary bulkheads. If perforated, they are to comply with the requirements of Part 6 for wash plates. Where brackets from horizontal girders on the boundary bulkheads terminate at the centreline bulkhead, adequate support and continuity are to be maintained.

3.8.8 The thickness of any longitudinal bulkheads may be required to be increased to ensure compliance with the shear strength requirements of Part 6. In the case of a centreline or perforated wing bulkhead, the proportion of the total shear force absorbed by the bulkhead will be specially considered.

3.8.9 The thickness of plating of wash bulkheads may also be required to be increased to take account of shear buckling.

3.8.10 Where longitudinal wash bulkheads support bottom transverses, the lower section of the bulkhead is to be kept free of non-essential openings for a depth equal to 1,75 times the depth of the transverses. The plating is to be assessed for local buckling requirements.

## Section 4 Bulkhead arrangements

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Watertight bulkheads for NS2 and NS3 ships are, in general, to extend to the uppermost continuous deck, and their construction is to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 3,9. In the larger multidecked NS1 ships (e.g., Aircraft Carriers) the watertight bulkheads are generally to extend to the lowest continuous vertical limit of weathertightness determined by 1.3.

4.1.2 Certain openings below the deck given in 4.1.1 may be permitted by the relevant stability and subdivision standard, but these must be kept to a minimum and provided with means of closing to watertight standards.

4.1.3 No accesses are to be fitted in collision bulkheads. In particular designs where it would be impracticable to arrange access to the fore peak other than through the collision bulkhead, access may be permitted if acceptable to the Naval Authority. Where accesses are provided, the openings are to be as small as practicable and positioned as far above the design waterline as possible. In such cases access is to be by manholes with closely spaced bolts situated as high as possible above the design waterline and, in any event, no lower than the damage control deck.

4.1.4 Where openings are permitted in bulkheads they are to be provided with suitable closing devices in accordance with Ch 4,7.

4.1.5 Bulkheads forming the boundaries to citadels and zones as defined in Pt 4, Ch 1,7 other than watertight bulkheads, are usually required by the Naval Authority to be gastight. See also 4.8. Where specifically required by the Naval Authority, LR can assess the gastight integrity of defined gastight boundaries, see Pt 6, Ch 6,6.8.

4.1.6 Pipe or cable runs through watertight bulkheads are to be fitted with suitable watertight glands of a type, approved and pressure tested for the maximum head of water indicated by any required damage stability calculations.

4.1.7 The Naval Authority may require type approval of all watertight bulkhead penetration glands to a nominated standard.

4.1.8 Partial or main bulkheads are to be located beneath the ends of superstructures and deckhouses and masts and heavy items of equipment such as weapon systems to support and transmit the static and dynamic forces into the hull structure. They are to be of sufficient strength and rigidity to carry the concentrated loads imposed on them and maintain alignment where necessary.

## 4.2 Number and disposition of watertight bulkheads

4.2.1 In general, the number and disposition of bulkheads are to be arranged to suit the requirements for subdivision, floodability and damage stability, and are to be in accordance with Naval Authority requirements as defined in 1.3.

4.2.2 Main transverse watertight bulkheads are to be spaced at reasonably uniform intervals. Where non-uniform spacing is unavoidable and the length of a compartment is unusually large, the transverse strength of the ship is to be maintained by fitting of web frames, increased framing, etc. Details of the proposed arrangements are to be submitted.

4.2.3 All ships are to have a collision bulkhead, an after peak bulkhead and a watertight bulkhead at each end of all main and auxiliary machinery spaces. Additional watertight bulkheads are to be fitted so that the total number of bulkheads is at least in accordance with Table 2.4.1.

4.2.4 Proposals to dispense with one or more of these bulkheads will be considered, subject to suitable structural compensation, if they interfere with the operational requirements.

4.2.5 A main transverse bulkhead is to be located at the position where the ship sues during docking.

**Table 2.4.1 Minimum number of bulkheads**

Length, $L_R$ , in metres	Total number of bulkheads	
	Machinery amidships	Machinery aft see Note
$L_R \leq 65$	4	3
$65 < L_R \leq 85$	4	4
$85 < L_R \leq 90$	5	5
$90 < L_R \leq 105$	5	5
$105 < L_R \leq 115$	6	5
$115 < L_R \leq 125$	6	6
$125 < L_R \leq 145$	7	6
$145 < L_R \leq 165$	8	7
$165 < L_R \leq 190$	9	8
$L_R > 190$	To be considered individually	
NOTE With after peak bulkhead forming after boundary of machinery space.		

## 4.3 Collision bulkheads

4.3.1 The collision bulkhead is to be positioned as detailed in Table 2.4.2. However, consideration will be given to proposals for the collision bulkhead to be positioned slightly further aft on an arrangement (b) ship, but not more than  $0,08L_R$  from the fore end of  $L_R$ , provided that the application is accompanied by calculations showing that flooding of the space forward of the collision bulkhead will not result in any part of the bulkhead deck becoming submerged, or any unacceptable loss of stability. The length  $L_R$  is as defined in Table 2.4.1.

**Table 2.4.2 Collision bulkhead position distance of collision bulkhead aft of fore end of  $L_R$ , in metres**

Arrangement	Length $L_R$ , in metres	Minimum	Maximum
(a)	$\leq 200$ $> 200$	$0,05L_R$ 10	$0,08L_R$ $0,08L_R$
(b)	$\leq 200$ $> 200$	$0,05L_R - f_1$ $10m - f_2$	$0,08L_R - f_1$ $0,08L_R - f_2$
Symbols and definitions $f_1$ = $G/2$ or $0,015L_R$ , whichever is the lesser $f_2$ = $G/2$ or 3 m, whichever is the lesser $G$ = projection of bulbous bow forward of fore perpendicular, in metres Arrangement (a) A ship that has no part of its underwater body extending forward of the fore perpendicular Arrangement (b) A ship with part of its underwater body extending forward of the fore perpendicular, (e.g., bulbous bow)			

4.3.2 For ships with pronounced rake of stem, the position of the collision bulkhead will be specially considered.

## 4.4 Aft peak bulkhead

4.4.1 NS1 and, where practicable, NS2 ships, are to have an aft peak bulkhead generally enclosing the sterntube and rudder trunk in a watertight compartment. In twin screw ships where the bossing ends forward of the aft peak bulkhead, the sterntubes are to be enclosed in suitable watertight spaces inside or aft of the shaft tunnels. The stern gland is to be situated in a watertight shaft tunnel or other watertight space separate from the stern tube compartment and of such volume that, if flooded by leakage through the stern gland, the ship will remain fully operational. The arrangement in NS3 ships, and in NS2 ships where it is impracticable to meet the aforementioned conditions, will be specially considered based on the integrity of the gland sealing arrangements and damage stability requirements.

## 4.5 Height of bulkheads

4.5.1 The collision bulkhead is normally to extend to the uppermost continuous deck or, in the case of a ship with combined bridge and forecastle or a long superstructure which includes a forecastle, to the superstructure deck. However, if a ship is fitted with more than one complete superstructure deck, the collision bulkhead may be terminated at the first deck above the vertical limit of watertight integrity. Where the collision bulkhead extends above the vertical limit of watertight integrity, the extension need only be to weathertight standards.

4.5.2 The aft peak bulkhead may terminate at the first deck above the load waterline, provided that this deck is made watertight to the stern or to a watertight transom floor.

4.5.3 The remaining watertight bulkheads are to extend as required by 4.1.1. In ships of unusual design, the height of the bulkheads will be specially considered.

## 4.6 Watertight recesses, flats, openings and loading ramps

4.6.1 Watertight recesses in bulkheads are to be avoided whenever possible.

4.6.2 Where watertight bulkhead stiffeners are cut in way of watertight doors in the lower part of a bulkhead, the opening is to be suitably framed and reinforced. Where stiffeners are not cut but the spacing between the stiffeners is increased on account of watertight doors, the stiffeners at the sides of the doorways are to be increased in depth and strength so that the efficiency is at least equal to that of the unpierced bulkhead, without taking the stiffness of the door frame into consideration.

4.6.3 Doors and hatches fitted through watertight bulkheads are to be of equivalent construction to the bulkhead in which they are fitted, be permanently attached and capable of being closed watertight from both sides of the bulkhead. They are to be tested watertight in accordance with the LR Survey Procedures.

4.6.4 In collision bulkheads, any recesses or steps in the bulkhead are to fall within the limits of bulkhead positions given in 4.3.1. If a step occurs above the virtual limit of watertight integrity the deck need also only be to weathertight standards in way of the step, unless the step forms the crown of a tank, in which case the requirements for deep tank structures are to be complied with.

4.6.5 Doors, manholes, permanent access openings or ventilation ducts are not to be cut in the collision bulkhead except as provided for in 4.1.3.

4.6.6 In ships fitted with bow doors, in which a sloping loading ramp forms part of the collision bulkhead above the virtual limit of watertight integrity, that part of the ramp which is more than 2,30 m above the virtual limit of watertight integrity may extend forward of the minimum limit specified in Table 2.4.2. Such a ramp is to be weathertight over its complete length.

## 4.7 Watertight doors and hatches in watertight subdivision boundaries below the vertical extent of watertight integrity

4.7.1 Watertight doors and hatches are to be constructed under survey and surveyed during installation. Doors are to be capable of being operated when the ship is listed up to 15° either way. Doors and hatches are to be operated under working conditions and tested in place, see Pt 6, Ch 6.

4.7.2 Where watertight doors of the sliding type are permitted to be fitted by the Naval Authority, they are to be capable of being operated by efficient hand operated gear, both at the door itself and from an accessible position above the vertical limit of watertight integrity. Means are to be provided at all the remote operating positions to indicate whether the door is open or closed. Power operated doors are to be capable of being remotely closed from the appropriate control station.

4.7.3 Where the doors and hatches are fitted in watertight subdivision boundaries they are to be of equivalent strength to the unpierced division and capable of being closed watertight. Watertight doors and hatches are to be of a type, approved and pressure tested from both sides for the maximum head of water indicated by any required damage stability calculations.

4.7.4 Indicators are to be provided on the bridge, ship command centre or operations room showing whether the doors and hatches are open or closed.

4.7.5 Watertight doors and hatches are to be capable of being operated from both sides of the watertight division. Power operated doors are to be capable of being opened and closed locally by both power and efficient hand operated mechanisms.

4.7.6 As an alternative to sliding doors, special consideration will be given to the fitting of hinged watertight doors where it can be shown that they are as effective as the sliding type. Unless watertight doors are of the sliding type, a suitable system is to be installed to ensure that such doors remain closed when operating at an increased risk of collision or grounding.

4.7.7 Doors are to be manufactured in accordance with a National Standard and tested following installation, see Pt 6, Ch 6.

## 4.8 Gastight bulkheads

4.8.1 Where an assessment of gastight integrity is required the scantlings of gastight bulkheads are to be in accordance with Part 6.

4.8.2 Where bulkheads are required to be gastight and where it is proposed to pierce such bulkheads for the passage of cables, pipes, vent trunking, etc., gastight glands are to be provided to maintain the gastight integrity.

## 4.9 Tank bulkheads

4.9.1 For bulkheads in way of partially filled compartments or tanks, sloshing forces may be required to be taken into account. Where such forces are likely to be significant, the scantlings will be required to be verified by additional calculations.

4.9.2 The scantlings of deep tank bulkheads are to be in accordance with Part 6.

4.9.3 Air and sounding pipes are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4,6.

## 4.10 Cofferdams

4.10.1 Tanks carrying oil fuel or lubricating oil are to be separated by cofferdams from those carrying fresh water. Cofferdams are to be fitted between freshwater tanks and black or grey water tanks.

4.10.2 Lubricating oil tanks are also to be separated by cofferdams from those carrying oil fuel unless:

- (a) Common boundaries of lubricating oil and oil fuel tanks have full penetration welds.
- (b) The tanks are arranged such that the oil fuel tanks are not generally subjected to a head of oil in excess of that in the adjacent lubricating oil tanks.

4.10.3 If oil fuel tanks are necessarily located within or adjacent to the machinery spaces, their arrangement is to be such as to avoid direct exposure of the bottom from rising heat resulting from a machinery or hazardous space fire.

4.10.4 Adequate access is to be provided to all parts of the cofferdams for future maintenance, surveys and repairs. The edges of openings are to be smooth.

## 4.11 Watertight tunnels and passageways

4.11.1 Sterntubes are to be enclosed in watertight spaces of moderate volume. In addition, arrangements are to be made to minimise the danger of water penetrating into the ship in case of damage to the stern tube in accordance with the requirements of the Naval Authority. Normally the stern gland is to be situated in a watertight shaft tunnel or other watertight space separate from the stern tube compartment and of such volume that, if flooded by leakage through the stern gland, the vertical limit of watertight integrity, see 1.3, will not be submerged.

## 4.12 Means of escape

4.12.1 The arrangement of the hull is to be such that all under deck compartments are as accessible as practicable and provided with a satisfactory means of escape in accordance with a recognised Naval Authority. Access and escape hatches to the machinery and tanks are not to be obstructed by deck coverings or furniture.

## 4.13 Carriage of low flash point fuels

4.13.1 For ships having oil fuel with a flash point below 60°C the arrangement for the storage, distribution and utilisation of the oil fuel are to be such that the safety of the ship and persons on board is preserved, having regard to the fire and explosion hazards. See Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 3,2.

# Section 5 Fore and aft end arrangements

## 5.1 General

5.1.1 In general the main hull structural arrangements as defined in 3.3 are to extend as far forward and aft as possible.

5.1.2 The requirements of this Section apply to the fore and aft ends and relate to structure situated in the region forward of 0,7L<sub>R</sub> and aft of 0,3L<sub>R</sub> respectively.

5.1.3 Certain ships will require additional strengthening for bottom forward slamming and bow flare slamming. The scantlings of the hull structure forward are to be determined from Part 6, using the loads specified in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.

5.1.4 Where the stern overhang is significant, or large masses are placed on the stern, the strength of the aft end structure will be specially considered, see Ch 5,10,2.

## 5.2 Structural continuity

5.2.1 The Rules provide for both longitudinal and transverse framing systems.

5.2.2 Where the shell, deck and inner bottom are longitudinally framed in the midship region, this system of framing is to be carried forward and aft as far as possible.

5.2.3 End connections of longitudinals to bulkheads are to provide adequate fixity, lateral support and as far as practicable, direct continuity of longitudinal strength, *see also* Section 3.

5.2.4 Suitable scarfing arrangements are to be made to ensure continuity of strength and the avoidance of abrupt structural changes.

5.2.5 Where longitudinal framing terminates and is replaced by a transverse system, adequate arrangements are to be made to avoid an abrupt changeover. Where a forecastle is fitted extending forward from  $0,85L_R$ , longitudinal framing at the upper deck and topsides is generally to be continued forward of the aft bulkhead of this superstructure.

5.2.6 Where a superstructure or poop is fitted extending forward of  $0,15L_R$ , longitudinal framing at the upper deck and topsides is generally to be continued aft of the forward bulkhead of this superstructure.

5.2.7 The forecastle side plating may be a continuation of the side shell plating or fitted as a separate assembly. The side plating is to be stiffened by side frames effectively connected to the deck structure. Deep webs are to be fitted to ensure overall rigidity.

5.2.8 Forecastles and bulwarks are to be constructed in accordance with the scantlings indicated in Pt 6, Ch 3, 11.

## 5.3 Minimum bow height and extent of forecastle

5.3.1 The requirements regarding minimum bow height given in 5.3.2 are to be complied with. Only in exceptional circumstances and in specialist ships will any relaxation be given to this requirement where it interferes with the safe operation of the vessel. In such cases due consideration is to be given to the clearing of sea-water from the forecastle deck. The effects on strength and stability are also to be considered.

5.3.2 All sea-going ships are to be fitted with forecastles, or increased sheer on the upper deck or equivalent, such that the distance from the waterline design draught to the top of the exposed deck at side at the F.P. is not less than:

$$H_b = \left( 6075 \left( \frac{L_R}{100} \right) - 1875 \left( \frac{L_R}{100} \right)^2 + 20 \left( \frac{L_R}{100} \right)^3 \right) \times \left( 2,08 + 0,609C_b - 1,603C_{wf} - 0,0129 \left( \frac{L_R}{d_1} \right) \right)$$

where

$C_b$  = block coefficient, not to be less than 0,68

$L_R$  = Rule Length, in metres

$H_b$  = minimum bow height, in mm

$d_1$  = draught at 85 per cent of the depth,  $D$ , *see* Ch 1, 5.2.10

$C_{wf}$  = waterplane area coefficient forward of midships  
 $A_{wf} / \{ (L_R/2) \times B \}$

$B$  = moulded breadth, in metres

$A_{wf}$  = is the forward waterplane area at draught  $d_1$ , in  $m^2$ .

5.3.3 Ships which are designed to suit exceptional operational requirements, restricted in their service to service area **SA4**, or of novel configuration will be specially considered on the basis of the Rules.

5.3.4 Where the bow height required in 5.3.2 is obtained by increased sheer, the sheer shall extend for at least 15 per cent of the length of the ship measured abaft the forward end of  $L_R$ . Where it is obtained by fitting a forecastle, the forecastle shall extend from the stem to a point at least  $0,07L_R$  abaft the forward end of  $L_R$ .

## 5.4 Bow crumple zone

5.4.1 In general the bow crumple zone is that space forward of the collision bulkhead. Embarked personnel or crew accommodation and the carriage of fuel, hazardous materials and other oils is not permitted in the bow crumple zone.

## 5.5 Deck structure

5.5.1 The scantlings of the deck structure are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 3, 10.

5.5.2 The deck plating thickness and supporting structure are to be suitably reinforced in way of anchor windlass, other deck machinery, and in way of cranes, masts or derrick posts, RAS stump masts, and weapon launching positions, etc.

5.5.3 Where large openings are arranged at lower decks near the side shell, it may be necessary to increase the adjacent deck structure to ensure effective support for side framing.

5.5.4 In NS1 and NS2 ships, on decks aft of the after cut-up, deep beams are generally to be fitted in way of web frames. Deck girders are generally to be spaced not more than 3,0 m apart and integrated with the primary structure forward.

5.5.5 Requirements for the arrangement and geometry of deck openings are given in 3.1 and 3.7. The scantlings of any inserts required are to be in accordance with Part 6.

## 5.6 Shell envelope plating and framing

5.6.1 The scantlings of bar keels in the forward end are to be the same as that required in the midship region, *see* Table 3.2.1 in Pt 6, Ch 3.

5.6.2 The thickness and width of plate keels in the forward region are to be the same as that required in the midship region.

5.6.3 The scantlings of plate stems are to be determined from Pt 6, Ch 3.5. Plate stems are to be supported by horizontal diaphragms positioned in line with the side stringers or perforated flats with intermediate breasthook diaphragms. Diaphragms are to be spaced not more than 1,5 m apart, measured along the stem. Where the stem plate radius is large, a centreline stiffener or web will be required.

5.6.4 The thickness of side shell and sheerstrake plating in the forward region is to be not less than the values required by Pt 6, Ch 3.5, but may be required to be increased locally on account of high shear forces, in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 4.3.2.

5.6.5 The shell plating may be required to be increased in thickness locally in way of openings such as hawse pipes and sonar domes, where fitted.

5.6.6 The shell plating is to be increased in thickness locally in way of a bulbous bow, see 5.10.

5.6.7 Sea inlet and other openings are to be in accordance with 3.3.6.

5.6.8 The bottom longitudinals are to be continuous in way of both watertight and non-watertight floors.

5.6.9 Where the shape of the after hull is such that there are large flat areas, particularly in the vicinity of the propellers, additional primary supports for the secondary stiffening may be required. Their extent and scantlings will be specially considered.

## **5.7 Single and double bottom structure**

5.7.1 The general requirements of 3.5 and 3.6 apply.

5.7.2 The minimum depth of centre girder forward is generally to be the same as that required in the midship region.

5.7.3 Where the height of the double bottom varies, structural continuity is to be maintained. An inner bottom where fitted is to be gradually sloped over an adequate longitudinal extent. Knuckles in the plating are to be arranged close to plate floors. Otherwise, suitable scarfing arrangements are to be made.

5.7.4 For ships of full form, in fore peak and deep tank spaces, the floors and bottom transverses are to be supported by a centreline girder or a centreline wash bulkhead. In other cases the centreline girder is to be carried as far forward as practicable. The floor panels and the upper edges of the floors and centreline girder are to be suitably stiffened.

5.7.5 In aft peak spaces, floors are to be arranged at every frame. For details and scantlings, see Pt 6, Ch 3.7.

5.7.6 Provision is to be made for the free passage of water and air from all parts of single or double bottoms as required by 3.1.17 to 3.1.21.

## **5.8 Fore peak structure**

5.8.1 The requirements given in this Section apply to the arrangement of primary structure supporting the fore peak side shell and bulbous bow, the arrangement of wash bulkheads and perforated flats. The scantlings of structure in the fore peak is to be in accordance with the relevant Sections of Part 6.

5.8.2 The bottom of the peak space is generally to be transversely framed. Longitudinally framed bottom structure will be specially considered.

5.8.3 Above the floors, transverse side framing is to be supported by horizontal side stringers, cross ties and/or perforated flats.

5.8.4 Suitable transverses or deep beams are to be arranged at the top of the tank and at perforated flats to provide end rigidity to the side transverses.

5.8.5 Wash bulkheads are to have an area of perforations not less than five per cent nor more than 10 per cent of the area of the bulkhead. The plating is to be suitably stiffened in way of openings. Stiffeners are to be bracketed at top and bottom.

## **5.9 Aft peak structure**

5.9.1 The scantlings of aft peak structure are to be as required by the relevant sections of Part 6. The plating thickness is to be increased locally in way of the sterntube gland.

5.9.2 Floors are to be arranged at every frame space and are to be carried to a suitable height, and at least to above the stern tube, where fitted. Floors are to be adequately stiffened. In way of propeller shaft brackets, rudder post or rudder horn, the floors are generally to be carried to the top of the space and are to be of increased thickness. The extent and amount of the increase will be specially considered, account being taken of the arrangements proposed.

5.9.3 Above the floors, transverse side framing is to be supported by horizontal stringers, cross ties and/or perforated flats.

5.9.4 Suitable transverses or deep beams are to be arranged at the top of the tank to provide end rigidity to the side transverses.

5.9.5 A centreline wash bulkhead is to be arranged in the upper part of the aft peak space. Additional wash bulkheads are to be fitted port and starboard where the width of the tank exceeds 20 m.

5.9.6 The plating is to be suitably stiffened in way of openings, and the arrangement of openings is to be such as to maintain adequate shear rigidity.

5.9.7 The position and height of the after peak bulkhead are to be in accordance with the requirements of 4.4.

5.9.8 Centre and side girders where fitted are to be bracketed to the transom framing members by substantial knees. Hard spots are to be avoided in way of the end connections and care is to be taken to ensure that the stiffening member to which the transom knee is attached can satisfactorily carry the load.

## 5.10 Bulbous bows

5.10.1 Where a bulbous bow is fitted, the structural arrangements are to be such that the bulb is adequately supported and integrated into the fore peak structure.

5.10.2 At the fore end of the bulb the structure is generally to be supported by horizontal diaphragm plates spaced generally 1,0 m apart in conjunction with a deep centreline web.

5.10.3 In general, vertical transverse diaphragm plates are to be arranged in way of the transition from the peak framing to the bulb framing.

5.10.4 In way of a wide bulb, additional strengthening in the form of a centreline wash bulkhead is generally to be fitted.

5.10.5 In way of a long bulb, additional strengthening in the form of transverse wash bulkheads or substantial web frames spaced about five frame spaces apart are generally to be fitted.

5.10.6 The shell plating is to be increased in thickness at the fore end of the bulb and in other areas likely to be damaged by the anchors and chain cables. The increased plate thickness is to be the same as that required for plated stems.

## Section 6 Machinery space arrangements

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 Requirements particular to machinery spaces, including protected machinery casings and engine seatings only, are given in this Section. For other scantlings and arrangement requirements, see the relevant Section in this Chapter.

6.1.2 Requirements for the scantlings of structure in machinery spaces are to be in accordance with the relevant sub-Sections of Pt 6, Ch 3,13.

6.1.3 In addition, the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,5.1.4 to 5.1.6 are to be complied with.

### 6.2 Structural configuration

6.2.1 Requirements are given for ships constructed using either a transverse or longitudinal framing system, or a combination of the two.

6.2.2 Machinery space stiffening is generally to be arranged in the same manner as structure immediately forward and aft of the space. For NS1 and NS2 ships this will generally be longitudinal. Machinery spaces adjacent to the aft peak bulkhead may be constructed using a transverse framing system or a combination of longitudinal and transverse.

### 6.3 Structural continuity

6.3.1 Suitable scarfing arrangements are to be made to ensure continuity of strength and the avoidance of abrupt discontinuities where structure which contributes to the main longitudinal strength of the ship is omitted in way of a machinery space.

6.3.2 Where the longitudinal framing terminates and is replaced by transverse framing, a suitable scarfing arrangement of the longitudinal framing is to be arranged.

### 6.4 Deck structure

6.4.1 The corners of machinery space openings are to be of suitable shape and design to minimise stress concentrations.

6.4.2 Where a transverse framing system is adopted, deck beams are to be supported by a suitable arrangement of longitudinal girders in association with pillars or pillar bulkheads. Deep beams are to be arranged in way of the ends of engine casings and also in line with side web frames where fitted.

6.4.3 Where a longitudinal framing system is adopted, deck longitudinals are to be supported by deck transverses in association with pillars or pillar bulkheads. The maximum spacing of transverses is given in 6.5.2. Deck transverses are to be in line with side transverses or web frames.

6.4.4 Machinery casings are to be supported in accordance with the requirements of 6.7.

6.4.5 The scantlings of lower decks or flats are generally to be as given in Pt 6, Ch 3,10. However, in way of concentrated loads such as those from boiler bearers or heavy auxiliary machinery, etc., the scantlings of deck structure will be specially considered, taking account of the actual loading.

6.4.6 In way of machinery space openings, etc., particularly towards the aft end, decks or flats are to have sufficient strength where they are intended to provide effective primary support to side framing, webs or transverses.

6.4.7 Where decks terminate at a machinery space bulkhead, suitable scarfing arrangements are to be arranged. The side shell of the machinery space is generally to be supported by a stringer at deck level. The stringer can be either fully effective or acting as part of a grillage. Bulkhead stiffeners at the deck level are to be supported against tripping.

6.4.8 Machinery space bulkheads with no supporting decks are to have suitable primary stiffening similar to that provided for the side shell in 6.5.

## **6.5 Side shell structure**

6.5.1 The side shell structure of machinery spaces is to be effectively supported by a system of primary framing with web frames and stringers. General requirements for web frames are given in this Section for both longitudinal and transverse framing systems.

6.5.2 The maximum spacing of side shell transverses in longitudinally framed machinery spaces is generally not to exceed 2,5 m in NS1 and NS2 ships, and 1,5 m in NS3 ships.

6.5.3 The maximum spacing of side shell web frames in transversely framed machinery spaces is generally not to exceed five frame spaces. They are to extend from the tank top to the level of the lowest deck above the design waterline.

6.5.4 The maximum spacing of stringers is generally not to exceed 3,0 m.

## **6.6 Double and single bottom structure**

6.6.1 For the required extent of double bottom structure, see 3.6.

6.6.2 In the bottom structure sufficient fore and aft girders are to be arranged in way of the main machinery to effectively distribute its weight and to ensure adequate rigidity of the structure. In midship machinery spaces these girders are to extend for the full length of the space and are to be carried aft to support the foremost shaft tunnel bearing. This extension beyond the after bulkhead of the machinery space is to be for at least three transverse frame spaces, aft of which the girders are to scarf into the structure. Forward of the forward machinery space bulkhead, the girders are to be tapered off over three frame spaces and effectively scarfed into the structure. In machinery spaces in the aft end of the ship the girders are to be carried as far aft as practicable and the ends effectively supported by web frames or transverses. Care is to be taken to avoid any abrupt changes or discontinuities.

6.6.3 Where, in NS3 ships, the bottom is transversely framed, plate floors are to be fitted at every frame in the machinery space and under the main machinery, rafts, seatings and thrust bearing.

6.6.4 Where the bottom is longitudinally framed, plate floors are to be fitted at a maximum spacing of 2,5 m in NS1 and NS2 ships, and 1,5 m in NS3 ships in the machinery space under the main machinery, rafts, seatings and thrust bearing.

6.6.5 The minimum depth of the centre girder and its thickness are to be at least the same as required in way of other spaces amidships. Where the height of inner bottom in the machinery spaces differs from that in adjacent spaces, continuity of longitudinal material is to be maintained. In ships with a double bottom it is to be achieved by sloping the inner bottom over an adequate longitudinal extent. The knuckles in the plating are to be arranged close to plate floors.

6.6.6 Margin plates and drainage wells are to be provided as necessary and will be subject to special consideration.

6.6.7 Suitable arrangements are to be made to provide free passage of water from all parts of the bilge to the pump suction. General requirements are given in 3.1.17 to 21.

6.6.8 Watertight floors, or floors forming boundaries of tank spaces, are also to comply with 6.8.

6.6.9 Where practicable side girders outboard of the engines are to be fitted and are to line up with the side girders in adjacent spaces.

## **6.7 Machinery casings**

6.7.1 The scantlings and arrangements of exposed casings protecting machinery openings are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 3,11.

6.7.2 Where casing sides act as girders supporting decks over, care is to be taken that access openings do not seriously weaken the structure. Openings are to be effectively framed and reinforced if necessary. Particular care is to be paid to stiffening where the casing supports the funnel or exhaust uptakes.

6.7.3 Machinery casings are to be supported by a suitable arrangement of deep beams or transverses and longitudinal girders in association with pillars or pillar bulkheads. In way of particularly large machinery casing openings, cross ties may be required, and these are to be arranged in line with deep beams or transverses. Where casing stiffeners carry loads from deck transverses, girders, etc., or where they are in line with pillars below, they are to be suitably reinforced.

6.7.4 Casing bulkheads are to be made gastight and the access doors are to be of a gastight self-closing type.

## **6.8 Integral fuel tanks**

6.8.1 The scantlings of deep tank bulkheads are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 3,9.

6.8.2 Oil fuel tanks situated within the machinery space are generally to comply with the requirements given in Part 6.



## 6.9 Machinery seatings

6.9.1 Requirements on the scantlings of structure for machinery seatings is given in Pt 6, Ch 3,13.

6.9.2 This Section applies to machinery or machinery raft seatings that are directly supported by the ship's hull. They are to be effectively secured to the hull and to be of adequate scantlings to resist the various gravitational, thrust, torque, dynamic and vibratory forces which may be imposed on them. Due attention is to be paid to the stiffness requirements of the machinery or raft supported.

6.9.3 Seatings are to be of substantial construction and efficiently supported by transverse and horizontal brackets or gusset plates. These should generally be arranged in line with plate floors and girders in a double bottom or with suitable deep beams or transverses and girders at upper decks. Where applicable seats are to be designed to ensure proper alignment with gearing and allow for thermal expansion effects.

6.9.4 In general seats are not to be arranged in way of breaks or recesses in the bottom structure.

6.9.5 Main machinery or raft holding-down bolts are to be arranged as near as practicable to floors and longitudinal girders. When this cannot be achieved, additional floors are to be fitted.

6.9.6 Auxiliary machinery is to be secured on seating of adequate scantlings, so arranged as to distribute the loadings evenly into the supporting structure.

## Section 7 Superstructures, deckhouses, bulwarks, sponsons and appendages

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 Superstructures, deckhouses, forecastles and bulwarks are to be constructed in accordance with the scantlings indicated in Pt 6, Ch 3,11.

7.1.2 For requirements relating to companionways, doors, accesses and skylights, see Chapter 4.

7.1.3 Requirements for machinery casings are given in 6.7.

7.1.4 For closing arrangements and outfit the requirements are given in Chapter 4.

### 7.2 Definitions

7.2.1 The term 'house' is used to include both superstructures and deckhouses.

7.2.2 The lowest, or first tier of a house, is normally that which is directly situated on the deck to which  $D$ , is measured. The second tier is the next tier above the lowest tier and so on.

### 7.3 Structural requirements

7.3.1 The plating and supporting structure are to be suitably reinforced in way of localised areas of high stress such as corners of openings, cranes, masts, equipment, fittings and other heavy or vibrating loads.

7.3.2 Structures subject to concentrated loads are to be suitably reinforced. Where a concentration of loading on one side of a stiffener may occur, such as pillars out of line, the stiffener is to be adequately stiffened against torsion.

7.3.3 Primary stiffening members are to be continuous and substantially bracketed at their end connections to maintain continuity of structural strength.

7.3.4 Secondary stiffening members are to be effectively continuous and bracketed at their end connections as appropriate.

7.3.5 Transverse rigidity is to be maintained throughout the length of the house by means of web frames, bulkheads or partial bulkheads. Particular care is to be paid when an upper tier is wider than its supporting tier and when significant loads are carried on the house top.

7.3.6 Web frames or partial bulkheads are to be fitted in line with bulkheads or deep primary stiffeners below.

7.3.7 Special attention is to be given to the connection of the erection to the deck in order to provide an adequate load distribution and avoid stress concentrations. The house stiffening is to align with main hull stiffening wherever possible.

7.3.8 Where aluminium erections are arranged above a steel hull, details of the arrangements in way of the bimetallic connections are to be submitted.

7.3.9 Adequate support under the ends of houses is to be provided in the form of webs, pillars and diaphragms or bulkheads in conjunction with reinforced deck beams. At the corners of houses and in way of supporting structures attention is to be given to the connection to the decks and inserts or equivalent arrangements should generally be fitted.

### 7.4 Openings

7.4.1 All openings are to be substantially framed and have well rounded corners. Arrangements are to be made to minimise the effect of discontinuities in houses. Continuous coamings or girders are to be fitted below and above doors and similar openings. House tops are to be strengthened in way of davits and cranes.

7.4.2 Particular care is to be paid to the effectiveness of end bulkheads and the upper deck stiffening in way when large openings are fitted.

7.4.3 Special care is to be taken to minimise the size and number of openings in the sides or longitudinal bulkheads of houses which end within  $0,25L_R$  to  $0,75L_R$ . Account is to be taken of the high vertical shear loading which can occur in these areas.

7.4.4 Windows, ventilators and other superstructure openings are to be suitably framed and mullions will in general be required.

## 7.5 Effective structure

7.5.1 For ships where  $L_R$  exceeds 40 m or for designs where the superstructure is designed to absorb global loads the effectiveness of superstructures to carry these loads is to be determined. The effectiveness may be assessed in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 4,2.5.

7.5.2 When large openings or a large number of smaller openings are cut in the superstructure sides, reducing the capability to transmit shear force between decks, an assessment of structural efficiency may be required. The scantlings of the side structure in way of these areas may also be required to be increased.

## 7.6 Sponsons and appendages

7.6.1 Primary structure supporting sponsons is to be effectively integrated into the main hull structure. This is to be achieved by extending the primary framing system or by suitable scarfing the sponson primary structure over at least five frame spaces.

7.6.2 The scantlings of sponson structure are to be as required by the relevant parts of Part 6, for decks or side shell. Decks used for aircraft operations or wheeled vehicles are to comply with Part 4 and Part 6 respectively.

7.6.3 Where sponsons are located outside of  $0,4L_R$  amidships and extend outside of the waterline breadth,  $B_{WL}$ , of the ship the effects of wave impacts are to be considered. The loads are to be derived in accordance with the bow flare slamming requirements in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.

7.6.4 The strength and arrangement of large bilge keels, stabilisers and other protrusions that may impinge on icebergs or flows are to be specially considered. In some cases the speed for operation in ice may be restricted.

## 7.7 Unusual designs

7.7.1 Ships or structural arrangements which are of unusual design, form or proportions will be individually considered.

## Section 8 Pillars and pillar bulkheads

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 Pillars and pillar bulkheads are to be constructed in accordance with the scantlings indicated in Pt 6, Ch 3,12.

8.1.2 Pillars are to be arranged to transmit loads from decks and superstructures into the bottom structure. Pillars are generally to be constructed from solid, tubular or I beam section. A pillar may be a fabricated trunk or partial bulkhead.

### 8.2 Head and heel connections

8.2.1 Pillars are to be attached at their heads to plates supported by efficient brackets, in order to transmit the load effectively. Doubling or insert plates are to be fitted to decks under large pillars and to the inner bottom under the heels of tubular or hollow square pillars. The pillars are to have a bearing fit and are to be attached to the head and heel plates by continuous welding. At the heads and heels of pillars built of rolled sections, the load is to be well distributed by means of longitudinal and transverse brackets.

### 8.3 Alignment and arrangement

8.3.1 Pillars are to be located on main structural members. They are in general to be fitted below windlasses, winches, capstans, the corners of deckhouses, large items of equipment and elsewhere where considered necessary.

8.3.2 Wherever possible, deck pillars are to be fitted in the same vertical line as pillars above and below, and effective arrangements are to be made to distribute the load at the heads and heels of all pillars.

8.3.3 Where pillars support eccentric loads, or are subjected to lateral pressures, they are to be suitably strengthened for the additional bending moment imposed upon them.

8.3.4 Doublers are generally to be fitted on decks and inner bottoms, other than within tanks where doublers are not allowed. Brackets or insert plates may be used instead of doublers.

8.3.5 In double bottoms under widely spaced pillars, the connections of the floors to the girders, and of the floors and girders to the inner bottom, are to be suitably increased. Where pillars are not directly above the intersection of plate floors and girders, partial floors and intercostals are to be fitted as necessary to support the pillars. Holes are not to be cut in the floors and girders below the heels of pillars. Where longitudinal framing is adopted in the double bottom, equivalent stiffening under the heels of pillars is to be provided, and where the heels of pillars are carried on a tunnel, suitable arrangements are to be made to support the load.

**8.4 Pillars in tanks**

8.4.1 In no circumstances are pillars to pass through tanks. Where loads are to be transmitted through tanks, pillars within the tanks are to be carefully aligned with the external pillars. The tensile stress in the pillar and its end connections is not to exceed  $108 \text{ N/mm}^2$  at the tank test pressure. Such pillars are in general to be of built sections and end brackets may be required.

**8.5 Fire aspects**

8.5.1 Pillars and pillar bulkheads are to be suitably protected against fire, and capable of resisting fire damage. They are not to be constructed of aluminium.

---

## Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Rudders**
- 3 **Stabiliser arrangements**
- 4 **Rudder horns and appendages**
- 5 **Fixed and steering nozzles, bow and stern thrust units, ducted propellers**
- 6 **Waterjet propulsion systems**

## ■ Section 1 General

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter applies to all of the ships detailed in the Rules, and requirements are given for rudders, stabilisers, and appendages, nozzles, steering gear, bow and stern thrust unit structure and waterjet propulsion systems. For podded propulsion systems, see Vol 2, Pt 4, Ch 4.

### 1.2 General

1.2.1 The following symbols and definitions are applicable to this Chapter, unless otherwise stated:

$\sigma_o$  = minimum yield stress or 0,5 per cent proof stress of the material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup> and is not to be taken greater than  $0,7\sigma_u$  or 450 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, whichever is the lesser

where

$\sigma_u$  = ultimate tensile strength of the material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

### 1.3 Navigation in ice

1.3.1 Where an ice class notation is to be included in the class of a ship, the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 2,4 are to be complied with.

### 1.4 Materials

1.4.1 The requirements for materials are contained in the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

1.4.2 Rudder stocks, pintles, coupling flange bolts, keys and cast parts of rudders are assumed to be made of rolled, forged or cast carbon manganese steel in accordance with the Rules for Materials. Where other materials are proposed the scantlings will require to be specially considered on the basis of the Rules.

1.4.3 For rudder stocks, pintles, keys and bolts the minimum yield stress is not to be less than 200 N/mm<sup>2</sup>. The following requirements are based on a material's yield stress of 235 N/mm<sup>2</sup>. If material is used having a yield stress differing from 235 N/mm<sup>2</sup> the material factor is to be determined as follows:

$$K_o = \left[ \frac{\sigma_o}{235} \right]^m$$

where

$m = 0,75$  for  $\sigma_o > 235$  N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$m = 1,0$  for  $\sigma_o \leq 235$  N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\sigma_o$  is as defined in 1.2.1.

1.4.4 In order to avoid excessive edge pressures in way of bearings, rudder stock deformations should be kept to a minimum. Where significant reductions in rudder stock diameter due to the application of steels with yield strengths exceeding 235 N/mm<sup>2</sup> are proposed, final acceptance may require the evaluation of the rudder stock deformations.

## ■ Section 2 Rudders

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 The scantlings of the rudder stock are to be not less than those required by 2.14, 2.15 and 2.16 as appropriate.

2.1.2 For rudders having an increased diameter of rudder stock, see Fig. 3.2.1, the increased diameter is to be maintained to a point as far as practicable above the top of the lowest bearing. This diameter may then be tapered to the diameter required in way of the tiller. The length of the taper is to be at least three times the reduction in radius. Particular care is to be taken to avoid the formation of a notch at the upper end of the taper.

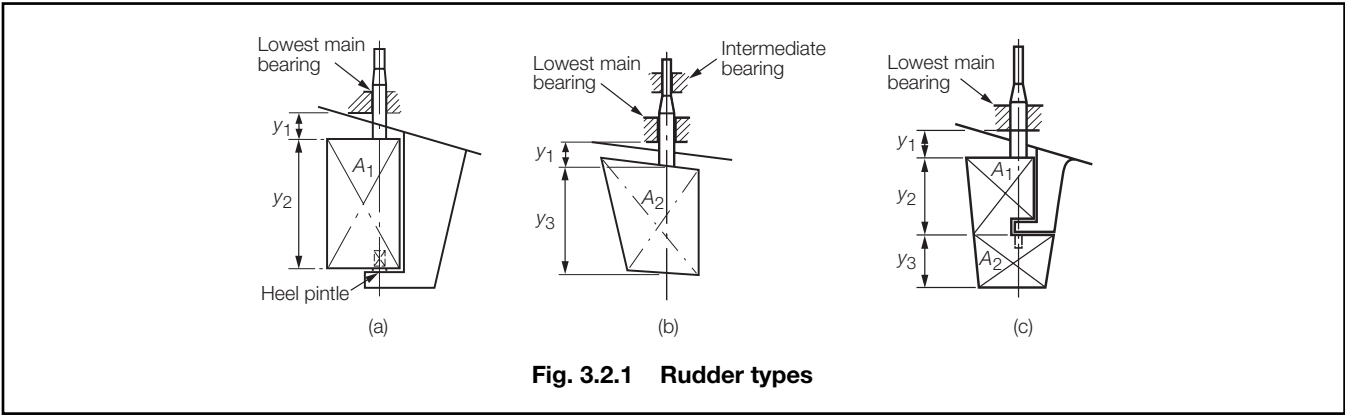
2.1.3 Sudden changes of section or sharp corners in way of the rudder coupling, jumping collars and shoulders for rudder carriers, are to be avoided.

### 2.2 Definition and symbols

2.2.1 Definitions and symbols for use throughout this Section are indicated in the appropriate tables.

### 2.3 Direct calculations

2.3.1 Where the rudder is of a novel design, high aspect ratio or the speed of the ship exceeds 45 knots the scantlings of the rudder and rudder stock are to be determined by direct calculation methods incorporating model test results and structural analysis, where considered necessary by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').



2.4      **Equivalents**

2.4.1      Alternative methods of determining the loads will be specially considered, provided that they are based on model tests, full scale measurements or generally accepted theories. In such cases, full details of the methods used are to be provided when plans are submitted for appraisal.

2.5      **Rudder arrangements**

2.5.1      Rudders considered are the types shown in Fig. 3.2.1, of double plate or single plate construction, constructed from steel. Other rudder types and materials will be subject to special consideration.

2.6      **Rudder profile coefficient,  $K_2$**

2.6.1      The rudder profile coefficient,  $K_2$ , for use in the determination of rudder force and rudder torque is to be as indicated in Table 3.2.1.

Table 3.2.1      **Rudder profile coefficient,  $K_2$**

Design criteria (see Fig. 3.2.2)	$K_2$ ahead condition	$K_2$ astern condition
Normal profile	1,0	0,97
Hollow profile	1,25	1,12
High lift profile	1,7	To be specifically considered
Symbols		
$K_2$ = rudder profile coefficient for use in 2.11.1		
NOTE Where a rudder is behind a fixed nozzle, the value of $K_2$ , given above, is to be multiplied by 1,3.		

2.7      **Rudder angle coefficient,  $K_3$**

2.7.1      The rudder angle coefficient,  $K_3$ , for use in the determination of rudder force and rudder torque is to be as indicated in Table 3.2.2.

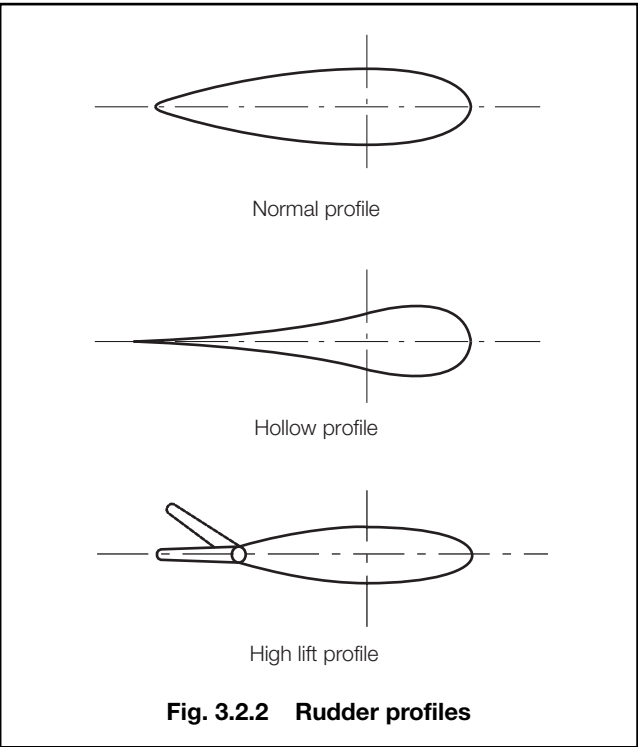


Fig. 3.2.2      **Rudder profiles**

Table 3.2.2      **Rudder angle coefficient,  $K_3$**

Rudder angle	2 x 35°	2 x 45°
$K_3$	1,0	1,23
Symbols		
$K_3$ = rudder coefficient. Intermediate values may be obtained by interpolation		

2.8      **Rudder position coefficient,  $K_4$**

2.8.1      The rudder position coefficient,  $K_4$ , for use in the determination of rudder force and rudder torque is to be as indicated in Table 3.2.3.

**Table 3.2.3 Rudder position coefficient,  $K_4$**

Design criteria		$K_4$
Ahead condition	Rudder out of propeller slipstream	0,8
	Rudder in propeller slipstream	1,0
	Rudder behind fixed propeller nozzle	1,15
Symbols		
$K_4$ = rudder position coefficient for use in 2.11.1		

## 2.9 Rudder speed coefficient, $K_5$

2.9.1 The rudder speed coefficient,  $K_5$ , for use in the determination of rudder force and rudder torque is to be as indicated in Table 3.2.4.

**Table 3.2.4 Rudder speed coefficient,  $K_5$**

Design criteria	$K_5$
Ships with $\frac{V}{\sqrt{L_{WL}}} < 3,0$	1,00
Ships with $\frac{V}{\sqrt{L_{WL}}} \geq 3,0$	$(1,12 - 0,005V)^3$
Symbols	
$L_{WL}$	as defined in Ch 1,5.2.1
$V$	as defined in 2.11
$K_5$	rudder speed coefficient for use in 2.11.1

## 2.10 Centre of pressure

2.10.1 The position of the centre of pressure for use in the determination of the rudder torque is to be as indicated in Table 3.2.5.

## 2.11 Rudder force, $F_R$

2.11.1 The rudder force,  $F_R$ , for use in the determination of the rudder scantlings is not to be taken less than that determined from the following formula:

$$F_R = 0,132K_1 K_2 K_3 K_4 K_5 A_R V^2 \text{ kN}$$

where

$F_R$  = rudder force, in kN

$K_1$  = factor depending on the aspect ratio  $\lambda$  of the rudder area

$$= \frac{(\lambda + 2)}{3} \text{ with } \lambda \text{ not to be taken greater than } 2$$

$\lambda = \frac{h_r^2}{A_R}$ , where  $h_r$  is the mean height of the rudder area, in metres. Mean breadth and mean height of rudder are to be determined from Fig. 3.2.3

$A_R$  = area of rudder blade, in  $m^2$

$K_2$  = rudder profile coefficient, see Table 3.2.1

**Table 3.2.5 Position of centre of pressure**

Design criteria	Value of $x_{PF}$ and $x_{PA}$
Rectangular rudders; (a) Ahead condition	$x_{PF} = (0,33e_h x_B - x_L)$ , but not less than $0,12x_B$
(b) Astern condition	$x_{PA} = (x_A - 0,25x_B)$ , but not less than $0,12x_B$
Non-rectangular rudders; (a) Ahead condition	$x_{PF}$ and $x_{PA}$ are to be calculated from geometric form (see Note)
(b) Astern condition	but not less than: $\frac{0,12A_R}{y_R}$
Symbols	
$x_{PF}$ = horizontal distance from the centreline of the rudder pintles, or axle, to the centre of pressure in the ahead condition, in metres $x_{PA}$ = horizontal distance from the centreline of the rudder pintles, or axle, to the centre of pressure in the astern condition, in metres $x_B$ = breadth of rudder, in metres $y_R$ = depth of rudder at centreline of stock, in metres $A_R$ = rudder area, in $m^2$ $x_L$ and $x_A$ = horizontal distances from leading and after edges, respectively, of the rudder to the centreline of the rudder pintles, or axle, in metres $x_S$ = horizontal length of any rectangular strip of rudder geometric form, in metres $e_h$ = hull form factor at ahead condition defined as follows: for $L < 65$ m, $e_h = 1,0$ for $L \geq 65$ m $e_h = 2 \left( C_b + 10 \frac{B_{WL}}{L_R} - 2 \right) \frac{V}{\sqrt{L_R}}$ but not less than 1,0 and need not be taken greater than $1 + \left( \frac{L_R - 65}{70} \right)$	
$L_R$ , $B$ and $C_b$ are as defined in Ch 1,5. $V$ is as defined in 2.11.1	
<b>NOTE</b> For rectangular strips the centre of pressure is to be assumed to be located as follows: (a) $0,33e_h x_S$ abaft leading edge of strip for ahead condition. (b) $0,25x_S$ from aft edge of strip for astern condition.	

$K_3$  = rudder angle coefficient, see Table 3.2.2

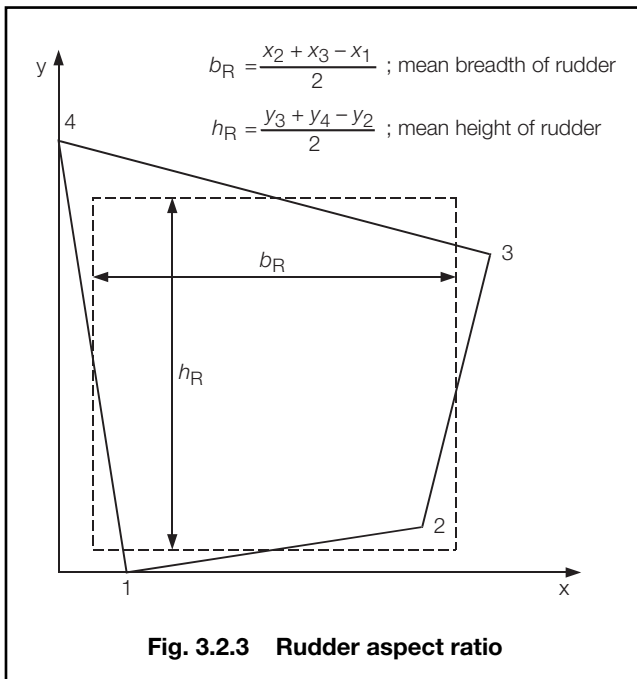
$K_4$  = rudder position coefficient, see Table 3.2.3

$K_5$  = rudder speed coefficient, see Table 3.2.4

$V$  = maximum design speed for short term high power operations, in knots. When the speed is less than 8 knots,  $V$  is to be replaced by the expression:

$$V_{min} = \frac{(V + 16)}{3} \text{ knots}$$

For the astern condition the maximum astern speed,  $V_A$ , is to be used.  $V_A \geq 0,5V$  knots.



**Fig. 3.2.3 Rudder aspect ratio**

## 2.12 Rudder torque, $Q_R$

2.12.1 The rudder torque,  $Q_R$ , for rudders without cut-outs in the ahead condition may be determined from the following formula:

$$Q_R = F_R x_{PF} \text{ kNm}$$

where

$F_R$  = rudder force, in kN

$x_{PF}$  = horizontal distance from the centreline of the rudder pintles or axle, to the centre of pressure in the ahead condition, in metres, see Table 3.2.5.

2.12.2 The rudder torque,  $Q_R$ , for rudders without cut-outs in the astern condition may be determined from the following formula:

$$Q_R = F_R x_{PA} \text{ kNm}$$

where

$x_{PA}$  = horizontal distance from the centreline of the rudder pintles or axle, to the centre of pressure in the astern condition, in metres, see Table 3.2.5

$F_R$  = rudder force, in kN.

2.12.3 For rudders with cut-outs the rudder area,  $A_R$ , used in the derivation of the rudder torque may be divided into two rectangular or trapezoidal parts with areas  $A_1$  and  $A_2$ , so that  $A_R = A_1 + A_2$ , see Fig. 3.2.1.

2.12.4 The rudder torque,  $Q_R$ , for rudders with cut-outs in the ahead condition may be determined from the following formula:

$$Q_R = Q_1 + Q_2 \text{ kNm}$$

where

$$Q_1 = F_{R1} x_{PF1} \text{ kNm}$$

$$Q_2 = F_{R2} x_{PF2} \text{ kNm}$$

$$F_{R1} = F_{RF} \frac{A_1}{A_R} \text{ kN}$$

$$F_{R2} = F_{RF} \frac{A_2}{A_R} \text{ kN}$$

$F_{RF}$  = rudder force in the ahead condition determined from 2.2.1, in kN

$x_{PF1} = b_{R1} (\alpha - k_1)$ , in metres

$x_{PF2} = b_{R2} (\alpha - k_2)$ , in metres

$\alpha$  = as given in Table 3.2.6 for the ahead condition

$$k_1 = \frac{A_{1f}}{A_1}$$

$$k_2 = \frac{A_{2f}}{A_2}$$

$A_{1f}, A_{2f}$  are shown in Fig. 3.2.4.

2.12.5 **The rudder torque,  $Q_R$ ,** for rudders with cut-outs in the astern condition may be determined from the following formula:

$$Q_R = Q_1 + Q_2 \text{ kNm}$$

where

$$Q_1 = F_{R1} x_{PA1} \text{ kNm}$$

$$Q_2 = F_{R2} x_{PA2} \text{ kNm}$$

$$F_{R1} = F_{RA} \frac{A_1}{A_R} \text{ kN}$$

$$F_{R2} = F_{RA} \frac{A_2}{A_R} \text{ kN}$$

$F_{RA}$  = rudder force in the astern condition determined from 2.2.1, in kN

$x_{PA1} = b_{R1} (\alpha - k_1)$ , in metres

$x_{PA2} = b_{R2} (\alpha - k_2)$ , in metres

$\alpha$  = as given in Table 3.2.6 for the astern condition

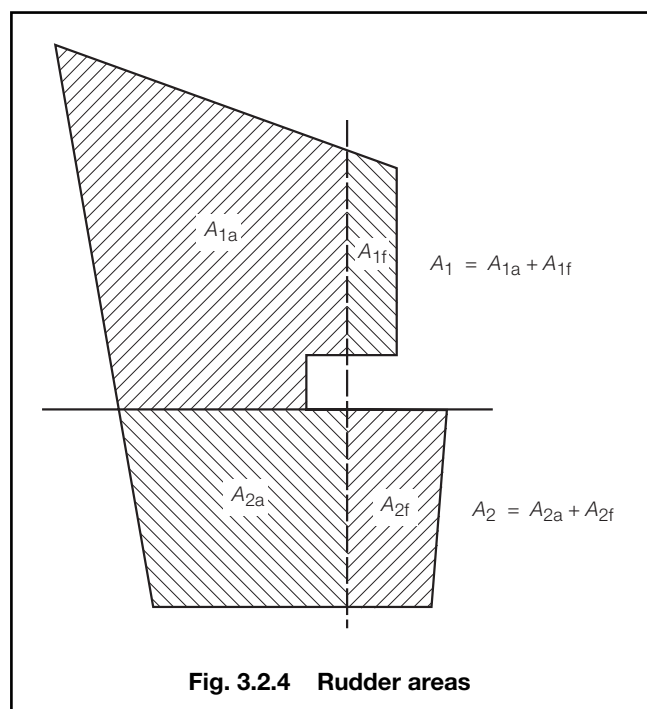
$$k_1 = \frac{A_{1f}}{A_1}$$

$$k_2 = \frac{A_{2f}}{A_2}$$

$A_{1f}, A_{2f}$  are shown in Fig. 3.2.4.

**Table 3.2.6 Coefficient,  $\alpha$**

Condition	Behind fixed structure (see Note)	Not behind a fixed structure
Ahead	0,25	0,33
Astern	0,55	0,66
NOTE For rudder parts behind a fixed structure such as a rudder horn.		



**Fig. 3.2.4 Rudder areas**

## 2.13 Rudder bending moment, $M_R$

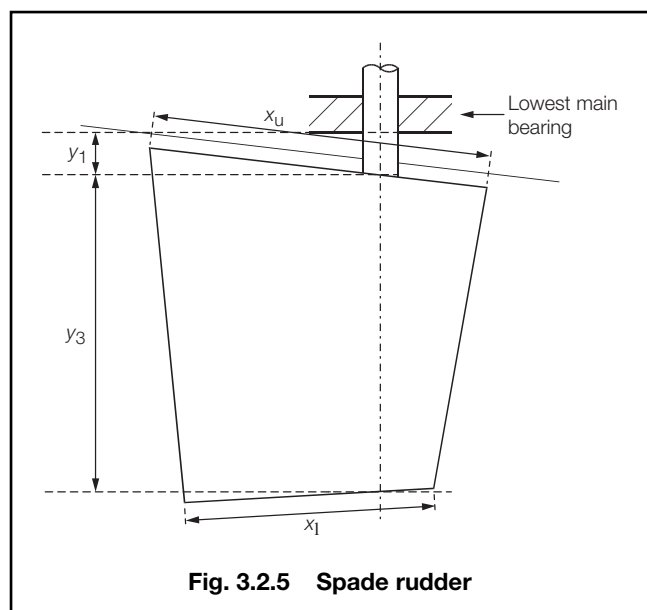
2.13.1 For spade rudders, Type (b) in Fig. 3.2.1 the bending moment,  $M_R$ , may be determined from the following formula:

$$M_R = F_R \left( y_1 + \left( \frac{y_3 (2x_1 + x_u)}{3 (x_1 + x_u)} \right) \right) \text{ kNm}$$

where

$F_R$  is as given in 2.11.1

$y_1$ ,  $y_3$ ,  $x_1$  and  $x_u$  are rudder dimensions, in metres, see Fig. 3.2.5.



**Fig. 3.2.5 Spade rudder**

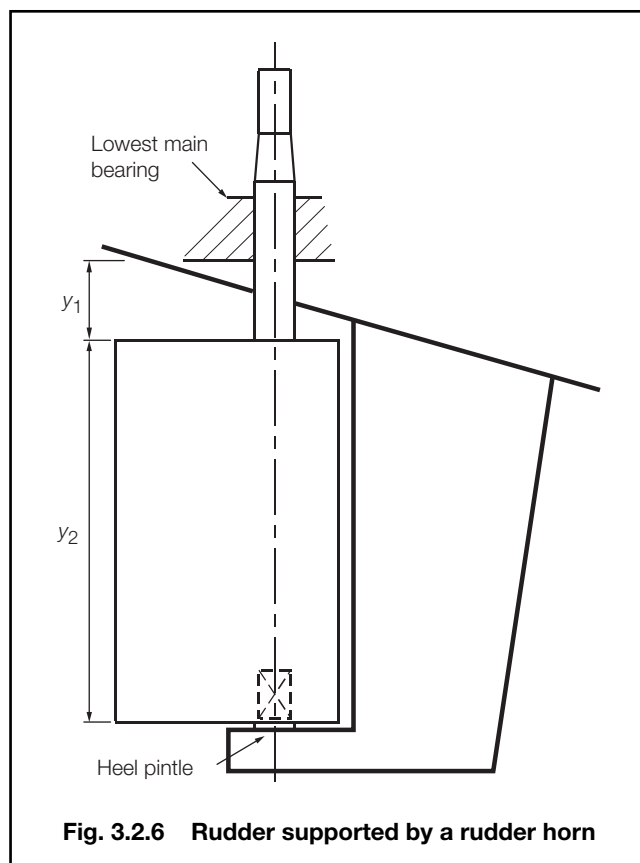
2.13.2 For rudders supported by a rudder horn, Type (a) in Fig. 3.2.1 the bending moment,  $M_R$ , may be determined from the following formula:

$$M_R = 0,125 F_R (y_1 + y_2) \text{ kNm}$$

where

$F_R$  is as given in 2.11.1

$y_2$  is a rudder dimension, in metres, see Fig. 3.2.6.



**Fig. 3.2.6 Rudder supported by a rudder horn**

2.13.3 For semi-spade/mariner rudders, Type (c) in Fig. 3.2.1, the bending moment,  $M_R$ , may be determined from the following formula:

$$M_R = F_R \frac{h_R}{10 \left( 1 + \frac{b_R^2}{A_R} \right)} \text{ kNm}$$

$F_R$  = rudder force determined from 2.2.1, in kN

$h_R$  = mean height of rudder, in metres, see Fig. 3.2.3

$b_R$  = mean breadth of rudder, in metres, see Fig. 3.2.3.

## 2.14 Rudder stock diameter in way of the tiller, $d_{su}$

2.14.1 The torsional stress in the rudder stock,  $\tau_t$ , in way of the tiller is not to exceed that determined from the following:

$$\tau_t = 68 K_o \text{ N/mm}^2$$



2.14.2 The rudder stock diameter in way of the tiller,  $d_{su}$ , is to be not less than that determined from the formula:

$$d_{su} = 42 \sqrt[3]{\frac{Q_R}{K_o}} \text{ mm}$$

where

$Q_R$  = rudder torque (in the appropriate condition), in kNm, as given in 2.12

$K_o$  = material factor, as defined in 1.4.3.

## 2.15 Rudder stock diameter $d_s$

2.15.1 For a rudder stock subjected to combined torque and bending, the equivalent stress in the rudder stock is not to exceed that determined from the following:

$$\sigma_e = 118K_o \text{ N/mm}^2$$

The equivalent stress is to be determined by the formula:

$$\sigma_e = \sqrt{\sigma_b^2 + 3\tau_t^2} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

Bending stress:

$$\sigma_b = 10200 \frac{M_R}{d_s^3} \times 10^3 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Torsional stress:

$$\tau_t = 5100 \frac{Q_R}{d_s^3} \times 10^3 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

2.15.2 The basic rudder stock diameter,  $d_s$ , at and below the lowest bearing is not to be less than that determined from the following:

$$d_s = d_{su} \sqrt[6]{1 + \frac{4}{3} \left( \frac{M_R}{Q_R} \right)^2} \text{ mm}$$

where

$d_{su}$  = diameter of the rudder stock in way of the tiller, in mm

$M_R$  = rudder bending moment, kNm, see 2.13

$Q_R$  = rudder torque (in the appropriate condition), in kNm, as given in 2.12.

## 2.16 Rudder stock (tubular)

2.16.1 Tubular rudder stock scantlings are to be not less than that necessary to provide the equivalent strength of a solid stock as required by 2.14.2 and 2.15.2 as appropriate, and can be calculated from the following formula:

$$d_e = \sqrt[3]{\frac{d_1^4 - d_2^4}{d_1}} \text{ mm}$$

where

$d_e$  = the diameter of the equivalent solid rudder stock, in mm

$d_1, d_2$  = external and internal diameters, respectively of the tubular stock, in mm.

## 2.17 Single plate rudders

2.17.1 The scantlings of a single plate rudder are to be not less than required by Table 3.2.7.

**Table 3.2.7 Single plate rudder construction**

Item	Requirement
Blade thickness	$t_B = 0,0015Vs + 2,5 \text{ mm}$ with a minimum of 10 mm
Arms	Spacing $\leq 1000 \text{ mm}$ $Z_A = 0,0005V^2 x_a^2 s \text{ cm}^3$
Mainpiece	Diameter = $d_s \text{ mm}$  For spade rudders, the lower third may taper down to $0,75d_s \text{ mm}$
Symbols	
$t_B$ = blade thickness, in mm $s$ = vertical spacing of rudder arms/stiffeners, in mm $V$ = speed, in knots, as defined in 2.11.1 $x_a$ = horizontal distance from the aft edge of the rudder to the centre of the rudder stock, in metres $Z_A$ = section modulus of arm, in $\text{cm}^3$ $d_s$ = basic stock diameter, given by 2.15.2	

2.17.2 Rudder arms are to be efficiently attached to the mainpiece.

## 2.18 Double plate rudders

2.18.1 The scantlings of a double plated rudder are to be not less than required by Table 3.2.8.

2.18.2 In way of rudder couplings and heel pintles the plating thickness is to be suitably increased.

2.18.3 Adequate hand or access holes are to be arranged in the rudder plating in way of pintles as required and the rudder plating is to be reinforced locally in way of these openings. Continuity of the modulus of the rudder mainpiece is to be maintained in way of the openings.

2.18.4 Connection of rudder side plating to vertical and horizontal webs, where internal access for welding is not practicable, is to be by means of slot welds on to flat bars on the webs. The slots are to have a minimum length of 75 mm and in general, a minimum width of twice the side plating thickness. The ends of the slots are to be rounded. The space between the slots is not to exceed 150 mm and welding is to be based on a weld factor of 0,44.

2.18.5 On semi-spade/mariner type rudders the following items are to be complied with:

- The main vertical web forming the mainpiece is to be continuous over the full depth of the rudder.
- The thickness of the main vertical web is to be not less than two times the thickness required by Table 3.2.8(5) from the top of the rudder to the lower pintle. The thickness is to be not less than required by Table 3.2.8(5) from the lower pintle to approximately a point midway between the lower pintle and bottom of the rudder. Below this the thickness,  $t_2$ , is to be not less than the thickness required by Table 3.2.8(2). See Fig. 3.2.7.

**Table 3.2.8 Double plated rudder construction**

Item		Requirement
(1)	Side plating	$t = 0,0224 s \beta \sqrt{\frac{P_R}{110k_0}} + 2,5 \text{ mm}$
(2)	Webs – vertical and horizontal	As (1) above
(3)	Top and bottom plates	As (1) above using $s$ = maximum rudder width, in mm, at top or bottom, but not less than 900 mm.
(4)	Nose plates	$t_N \geq 1,25t$ from (1) above
(5)	Mainpiece – fabricated rectangular	Breadth and width $\geq d_s$ $t_M = (8,5 + 0,56 \sqrt{d_s}) \text{ mm}$ Minimum fore and aft extent of side plating = $0,2x_B$ Stress due to bending, see Table 3.2.10
(6)	Mainpiece – tubular	Inside diameter $\geq d_s$ $t_M$ as for (5) above Side plating as for (1) above Bending stress as for (5) above
(7)	Testing	
	Pressure	2,45 m head and rudder should normally be tested while laid on its side
	Leak (air pressure)	0,02 N/mm <sup>2</sup> and arrangements made to ensure that no pressure in excess of 0,03 N/mm <sup>2</sup> can be applied
Symbols		
$\beta = A_a(1 - 0,25A_a)$ $A_a$ = panel aspect ratio, but is not to be taken as greater than 2,0 $t$ = thickness, in mm $s$ = spacing, in mm, of the webs, arms or stiffeners, but is not to exceed 900 mm $d_s$ = basic stock diameter, given by 2.15.2, in mm $t_N$ = thickness, in mm, of nose plate $t_M$ = thickness, in mm, of side plating and vertical webs forming mainpiece $x_B$ = breadth of rudder, in metres, on centreline of stock $P_R$ = rudder pressure $= 10T + \frac{F_R}{A_R} \text{ kN/m}^2$ $T$ = is as detailed in Ch 1,5.2.9 $F_R$ = rudder force, in kN, given by 2.11 $A_R$ = area of rudder blade, in m <sup>2</sup> , given in 2.11.1		

- (c) Where an additional continuous main vertical web is arranged to form an efficient box mainpiece structure, the thickness of each web is to be not less than that required by Table 3.2.8(5) from the top of the rudder to approximately a point midway between the lower pintle and bottom of the rudder. Below this the thickness,  $t_2$ , is not to be less than that required by Table 3.2.8(2).
- (d) The internal radius,  $r$ , of the cut-out for the rudder pintle is to be as large as practicable. See Fig. 3.2.7.
- (e) To reduce the notch effect at the corners of the cut-out for the lower pintle, an insert plate 1,6 times the Rule thickness of the side plating is to be fitted. The insert plate is to extend aft of the main vertical web and to have well rounded corners.

## 2.19 Cast metal rudders

2.19.1 Where rudders are cast, the mechanical and chemical properties of the metal are to be submitted for approval. If the rudder stock is cast integral with the rudder blade, abrupt changes of section and sharp corners are to be avoided.

## 2.20 Lowest main bearing requirement

2.20.1 The design of the lowest bearing is to comply with the requirements of Table 3.2.9.

## 2.21 Bearings

2.21.1 Bearings are to be of approved materials and effectively secured to prevent rotational and axial movement.

2.21.2 Synthetic rudder stock bearing materials are to be of a type approved by LR.

2.21.3 Where it is proposed to use stainless steel bearings for rudder stocks, the chemical composition is to be submitted for approval.

2.21.4 When stainless steel bearings are used, arrangements to ensure an adequate supply of sea-water to the bearing are to be provided.

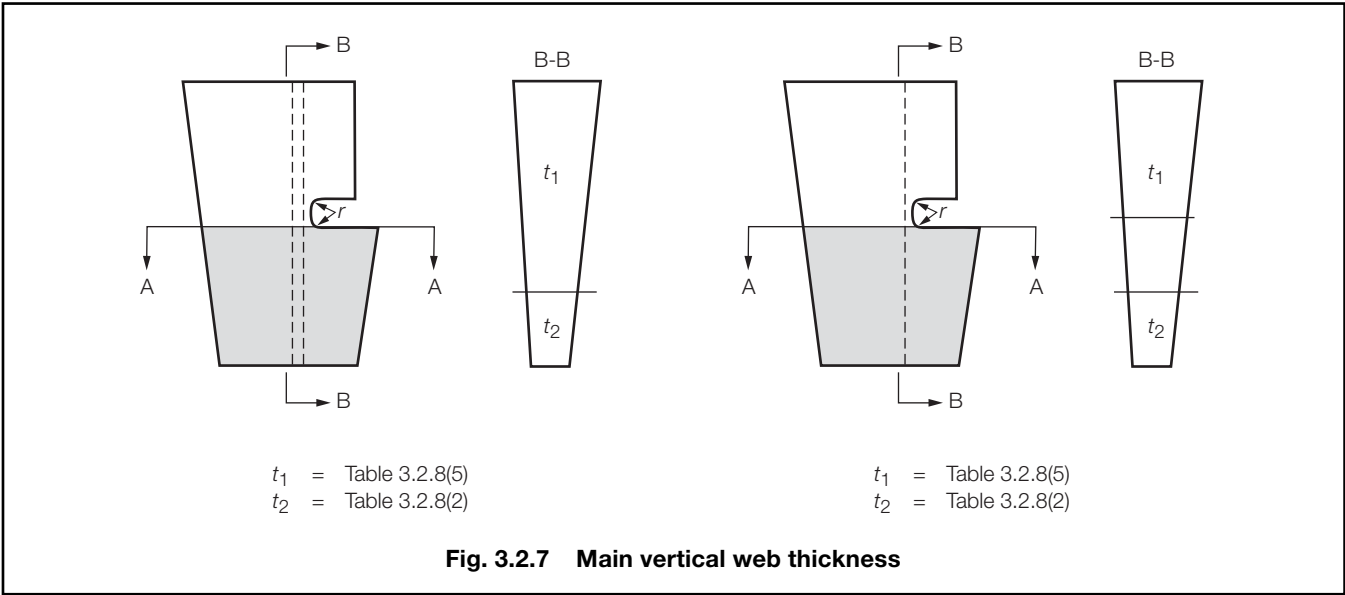


Table 3.2.9      **Lowest main bearing requirements**

Item	Requirement	
Lowest main bearing	Depth $Z_B$ , in mm $1,5d_s \geq Z_B \geq 1,0d_s$	Minimum thickness of wall, in mm lesser of $0,2d_s$ or 100
Bearing pressure (on the projected area of the lowest main bearing), where the projected area is to be taken as the length x diameter	Bearing material	Maximum pressure, in N/mm <sup>2</sup> (see Note 4)
	Metal Synthetic	7,0 5,5
Clearance in lowest main bearing on the diameter (note should be taken of the manufacturer's recommended clearances, particularly where bush material requires pre-soaking)	Bearing material	Minimum clearance, in mm (see Note 3)
	Metal (see Note 2) Synthetic	$0,001d_s + 1,0$ $0,002d_s + 1,0$ but not less than 1,5
Symbols		
$d_s$ = stock diameter, given by 2.15.2, in mm		
NOTES 1. Where web stiffening is fitted on the bearing, a reduction in wall thickness will be considered. 2. For bearings which are pressure lubricated the clearance must be restricted to enable the pressure to be maintained. 3. Value of proposed minimum clearance is to be indicated on plans submitted for approval. 4. Proposals for higher pressures or other materials will be specially considered on the basis of satisfactory test results.		

2.21.5 When the rudder stock or liner is grade 316L austenitic stainless steel, it is recommended that gunmetal, lignum vitae or a synthetic bearing material be used in the bush. If a stainless steel is used in the bush, it is to be of a different grade and with an adequate hardness difference. The use of a ferritic/austenitic duplex structure stainless steel is recommended for the bush, but 17 per cent to 30 per cent chromium stainless steels are also suitable.

2.22      **Liners**

2.22.1 Where liners are fitted to rudder stocks or pintles, they are to be shrunk on or otherwise efficiently secured.

2.22.2 Where it is proposed to use stainless steel liners, the chemical composition is to be submitted for approval.

2.22.3 When stainless steel liners are used, arrangements to ensure an adequate supply of sea-water to the liner are to be provided.

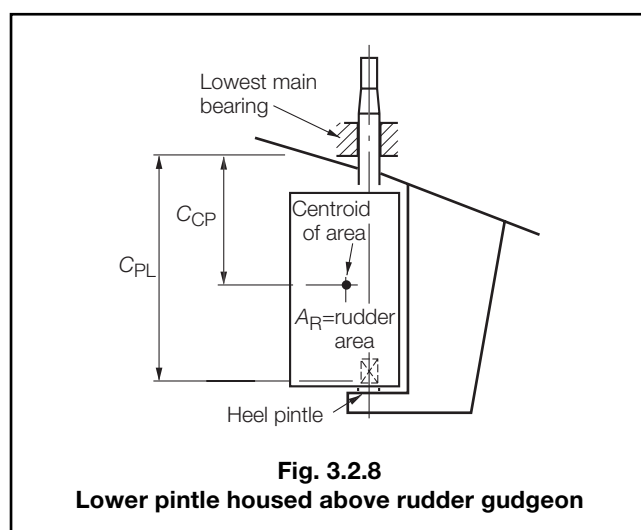
**Table 3.2.10** Permissible stresses for rudder blade scantlings

Item	Permissible stresses, in N/mm <sup>2</sup>		
	Bending stress	Shear stress	Equivalent stress
Rudder blades clear of cut-outs, see Fig. 13.2.3	$110K_0$	$50K_0$	$120K_0$
Rudder blades in way of cut-outs, see Fig. 13.2.3 and Note	$75K_0$	$50K_0$	$100K_0$
Symbols			
$K_0$ is as defined in 1.4.3			
NOTE Requirements in way of cut-outs apply to semi-spade/mariner type rudders.			

**2.23 Pintles**

2.23.1 Rudder pintles and their bearings are to comply with the requirements of Table 3.2.11.

2.23.2 Where the lower pintle is housed above the rudder gudgeon, see Fig. 3.2.8,  $C_{PL}$  is to be measured to the top of the gudgeon.



2.23.3 Special attention is to be paid to the fit of the pintle taper into its socket. To facilitate removal of the pintles, it is recommended that the taper is to be not less than half the maximum value given in Table 3.2.11.

2.23.4 The distance between the lowest rudder stock bearing and the upper pintle is to be as short as possible.

2.23.5 Where liners are fitted to pintles, they are to be shrunk on or otherwise efficiently secured. If liners are to be shrunk on, the shrinkage allowance is to be indicated on the plans. Where liners are formed by stainless steel weld deposit, the pintles are to be of weldable quality steel and details of the procedure are to be submitted.

2.23.6 Where an \*IWS (In-water Survey) notation is to be assigned, see 2.40.

2.23.7 The bottom pintle on semi-spade (Mariner) type rudders are:

- if inserted into their sockets from below, to be keyed to the rudder or sternframe as appropriate or to be hydraulically assembled, with the nut adequately locked, or
- if inserted into their sockets from above, to be provided with an appropriate locking device, the nut being adequately secured.

**2.24 Bolted couplings**

2.24.1 Rudder coupling design is to be in accordance with Table 3.2.12.

2.24.2 Where coupling bolts are required they are to be fitted bolts. Suitable arrangements are to be made to lock the nuts.

2.24.3 For rudders with horizontal coupling arrangements the rudder stock should be forged when the stock diameter exceeds 350 mm. Where the stock diameter does not exceed 350 mm the rudder stock may be either forged or fabricated. Where the upper flange is welded to the rudder stock, a full penetration weld is required and its integrity is to be confirmed by non-destructive examination. The flange material is to be from the same welding materials group as the stock. Such rudder stocks are to be subjected to a furnace post-weld heat treatment (PWHT) after completion of all welding operations. For carbon or carbon manganese steels, the PWHT temperature is not to be less than 600°C.

2.24.4 For a spade rudder the fillet radius between the rudder stock and the flange is to conform to the requirements of Fig. 3.2.10. Where space permits between the upper face of the flange and the lower rudder stock bearing, it is preferable to use a compound fillet design of the parabolic or Morgenbrod form having similar dimensions to those of Fig. 3.2.10. Alternative arrangements will be specially considered.

# Ship Control Systems

# Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 3

Section 2

**Table 3.2.11 Pintle requirements**

Item	Requirement	
(1) Pintle diameter (measured outside liner if fitted)	$d_{PL} = \sqrt[3]{\left(\frac{235}{\sigma_o}\right)^m (31 + 4,17V\sqrt{A_{PL} K_2})} \text{ mm}$ <p>For single pintle rudders and lower pintle of semi-spade rudders</p> $A_{PL} = \frac{A_R C_{CP}}{C_{PL}} \text{ m}^2 \text{ but for semi-spade rudders need not be taken greater than } A_R$ <p>Upper pintle on semi-spade rudders:</p> $A_{PL} = \left(1 - \frac{C_{CP}}{C_{PL}}\right) \text{ m}^2 \text{ or } 0,35A_R \text{ m}^2 \text{ whichever is greater}$	
(2) Maximum pintle taper	Method of assembly	Taper (on diameter)
	Manual assembly, key fitted (pintle ≤ 200 mm diameter)	1 in 6
	Manual assembly, key fitted (pintle ≥ 400 mm diameter)	1 in 9
	For keyed and other manually assembled pintles with diameters between 200 mm and 400 mm, the taper is to be obtained by interpolation.	
(3) Bearing length	Hydraulic assembly, dry fit	1 in 12
	Hydraulic assembly, oil injection	1 in 15
(4) Bearing pressure (on projected area)	$Z_{PB} \geq 1,2d_{PL} \text{ mm}$ <p>May be less for very large pintles if bearing pressure is not greater than that given in (4), but <math>Z_{PB}</math> must be not less than <math>1,0d_{PL}</math> mm</p>	
(5) Gudgeon thickness in way of pintle (measured outside bush if fitted)	Bearing material	Pressure
	Metal	7,0 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
	Synthetic	5,5 N/mm <sup>2</sup>
	<p>Using force acting on bearing:</p> $P_{PL} = \frac{A_{PL} F_R}{A_R} \text{ kN}$ <p><math>A_{PL}</math> as for item (1) <math>A_R</math> and <math>F_R</math> are as defined in 2.11.1</p>	
(6) Pintle clearance (note should be taken of the manufacturer's recommended clearances particularly where bush material requires pre-soaking). Value of proposed minimum clearance is to be indicated on plans submitted for approval.	Bearing material	Minimum clearance, mm
(6) Pintle clearance (note should be taken of the manufacturer's recommended clearances particularly where bush material requires pre-soaking). Value of proposed minimum clearance is to be indicated on plans submitted for approval.	Metal	0,001 $d_{PL}$ + 1,0
	Synthetic	0,002 $d_{PL}$ + 1,0 but not less than 1,5
Symbols		
$d_{PL}$ = pintle diameter, in mm $K_2$ = rudder profile coefficient, as given in Table 3.2.1 $V$ = as defined in 2.11.1 but not less than 10 knots $A_{PL}$ = rudder area supported by the pintle, in m <sup>2</sup> $C_{CP}, C_{PL}$ = dimensions in metres, as indicated in Fig. 3.2.8 $A_R$ = rudder area, in m <sup>2</sup>		
$\sigma_o$ = as defined in 1.2.1 $Z_{PB}$ = pintle bearing length, in mm $P_{PL}$ = force acting on bearing, in kN $b_G$ = thickness of gudgeon material in way of pintle, in mm $m$ = as defined in 1.4.3		
<p>NOTE</p> <p>Proposals for higher pressures or other materials will be specially considered on the basis of satisfactory test results.</p>		

**Table 3.2.12 Rudder couplings to stock** (see continuation)

Arrangement	Parameter	Requirement	
		Horizontal coupling	Vertical coupling
(1) Bolted couplings (see Note 4)	$n$	$\geq 6$	$\geq 8$
	$d_b$	$\frac{0,65d_s}{\sqrt{n}}$	$\frac{0,81d_s}{\sqrt{n}}$
	$m$	$0,00071n d_s d_b^2$	$0,00043d_s^3$
	$t_f$	$\geq d_b$	$d_b$
	$\alpha_{\max}$ (see Note 2)	$(53,82 - 35,29K_o) - \frac{d_s^3}{F_R h 10^6} - \left(1,8 - 6,3 \frac{R}{d_s}\right) \frac{t_f - t_{fa}}{t_{fa}}$	—
	$\alpha_{\text{as built}}$ (see Note 2)	$\leq \alpha_{\max}$	—
	$w_f$	$0,67d_b$	$0,67d_b$
(2) Conical couplings	$\theta_t$	$\leq \frac{1}{K_1}$	
	$l_t$	$\geq 1,5d_s$	
	$\sigma_{GM}$	$\frac{P_R \theta_t d_{STM} + 4Q_R \sqrt{K_2 \left( \left( \frac{P_R d_{STM}}{2Q_R} \right)^2 + 1 \right) - \left( \frac{\theta_t}{2} \right)^2}}{5,66 (d_{STM})^2 l_t \left( K_2 - \left( \frac{\theta_t}{2} \right)^2 \right)}$	
	$w$	$\frac{9,6\sigma_{GM} d_{STM}}{\theta_t (1 - f_m^2)} \times 10^{-6}$	
	$P_u$	Approximately equal to	$2,83 \sigma_{GM} l_t d_{STM} \left( K_3 + \frac{\theta_t}{2} \right)$
	$P_o$	Approximately equal to	$2,83 \sigma_{GM} l_t d_{STM} \left( K_3 - \frac{\theta_t}{2} \right)$
	$\sigma_o$	$\geq \frac{12,35 \times 10^4 w \theta_t \sqrt{3 + f^4}}{d_{ST}}$	

2.24.5 The connecting bolts for coupling the rudder to the rudder stock are to be positioned with sufficient clearance to allow the fitting and removal of the bolts and nuts without contacting the palm radius,  $R$ , see Fig. 3.2.9. The surface forming the palm radius is to be free of hard and sharp corners and is to be machined smooth to the Surveyor's satisfaction. The surface in way of bolts and nuts is to be machined smooth to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

2.24.6 For spade rudders fitted with a fabricated rectangular mainpiece, the mainpiece is to be designed with its forward and aft transverse sections at equal distances forward and aft of the rudder stock transverse axis, see Fig. 3.2.9(b).

## 2.25 Conical couplings

2.25.1 Where a rudder stock is connected to a rudder by a keyless fitting, the rudder is to be a good fit on the rudder stock cone. During the fit-up, and before the push-up load is applied, an area of contact of at least 90 per cent of the theoretical area of contact is to be achieved and this is to be evenly distributed. The relationship of the rudder to stock at which this occurs is to be marked and the push-up then measured from that point. The upper edge of the upper mainpiece bore is to have a slight radius. After final fitting of the stock to the rudder, positive means are to be used for locking the securing nut to the stock.

2.25.2 Where a keyed tapered fitting of a rudder stock to a rudder is proposed, a securing nut of adequate proportions is to be provided. After final fitting of the stock to the rudder, positive means are to be used for locking this nut.

## Ship Control Systems

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 3

Section 2

Table 3.2.12 Rudder couplings to stock (continued)

Symbols				
$n$ = number of bolts in coupling		$F_R$ = rudder force kN		
$d_b$ = diameter of coupling bolts, in mm		$l_t$ = length of taper, in mm		
$d_s, d_{su}$ = rudder stock diameters as defined in 2.15 and 2.14 respectively		$\sigma_{GM}$ = required mean grip stress, in N/mm <sup>2</sup>		
$m$ = first moment of area of bolts about centre of coupling, in cm <sup>3</sup>		$w$ = corresponding push-up of rudder stock, in mm		
$t_f$ = thickness of coupling flange, in mm		$P_u, P_o$ = corresponding push-up, pull-off loads respectively, in N		
$w_f$ = width of flange material outside the bolt holes, in mm		$\sigma_o$ = minimum yield stress of stock and gudgeon material, in N/mm <sup>2</sup> . $\sigma_o$ is not to be taken greater than 70% of the ultimate tensile strength		
$K_o$ = rudder stock material factor see 1.4.3		$P_R$ = effective weight of rudder, in N		
$h$ = vertical distance between the centre of pressure and the centre point of the palm radius, $R$ , in metres, see Fig. 3.2.9(a)		$d_{STM}$ = mean diameter of coupling taper, in mm		
$R$ = palm radius between rudder stock and connected flange not smaller than $\frac{d_s}{10}$ in mm		$d_{ST}$ = diameter of coupling taper at any position, in mm		
		$d_{GHM}$ = mean external diameter of gudgeon housing, in mm		
		$d_{GH}$ = external diameter of gudgeon housing at any position, in mm		
$t_f$ = minimum thickness of coupling flange, in mm		$f_m = \frac{d_{STM}}{d_{GHM}}$		
$t_{fa}$ = as built flange thickness, in mm				
$\alpha_{max}$ = maximum allowable stress concentration factor		$f = \frac{d_{ST}}{d_{GH}}$		
$\alpha_{as\ built}$ = stress concentration factor for as built scantlings		$Q_R$ = maximum turning moment applied to stock, and is to be taken as the greater of:		
$= \frac{0,73}{\sqrt{\left(\frac{R}{d_s}\right)}}$		(a) As determined from 2.12.		
$\theta_t$ = taper of conical coupling, on the diameter, e.g.:		(b) The torque generated by the steering gear at the maximum working pressure		
$\theta_t = \frac{1}{15} = 0,067$		$b_f$ = breadth of the flange, in mm		
$K_1, K_2, K_3$ = constants depending on the type of assembly adopted as follows:				
		$K_1$	$K_2$	$K_3$
Oil injection method	with key	15	0,0064	0,025
	without key	15	0,0036	0,025
Dry fit method	with key	12	0,0128	0,170
	without key	12	0,0072	0,170
NOTES				
1. Where materials vary for individual components, scantling calculations for such components are to be based on $d_s$ for the relevant material.				
2. For spade rudders with horizontal couplings, $t_f$ is not to be less than $0,33d_s$ . The mating plate on the rudder is to have the same thickness as the flange on the stock $d_s$ .				
3. For a twin spade rudder arrangement with single screw where the rudders are within the slipstream of the propeller:				
(a) the thickness of the palm is not to be less than $0,35d_s$ .				
(b) where the stock is welded to the palm plate, the stock diameter, $d_s$ is to be increased by 14%.				
4. This requirement is applicable only for spade rudders with horizontal couplings, see Fig. 3.2.9.				

## 2.26 Rudder carrier arrangements

2.26.1 The weight of the rudder is to be supported at the heel pintle or by a carrier attached to the rudder head. The hull structure supporting the carrier bearing is to be adequately strengthened. The plating under all rudder-head bearings or rudder carriers is to be increased in thickness.

## 2.27 Anti-jump collars

2.27.1 Suitable arrangements are to be provided to prevent the rudder from lifting.

2.27.2 Jumping collars are not to be welded to the rudder stock.

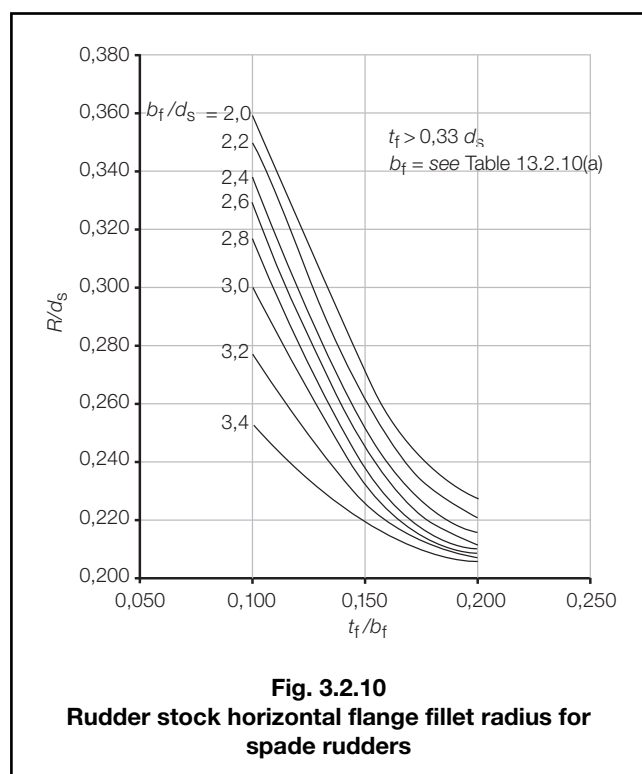
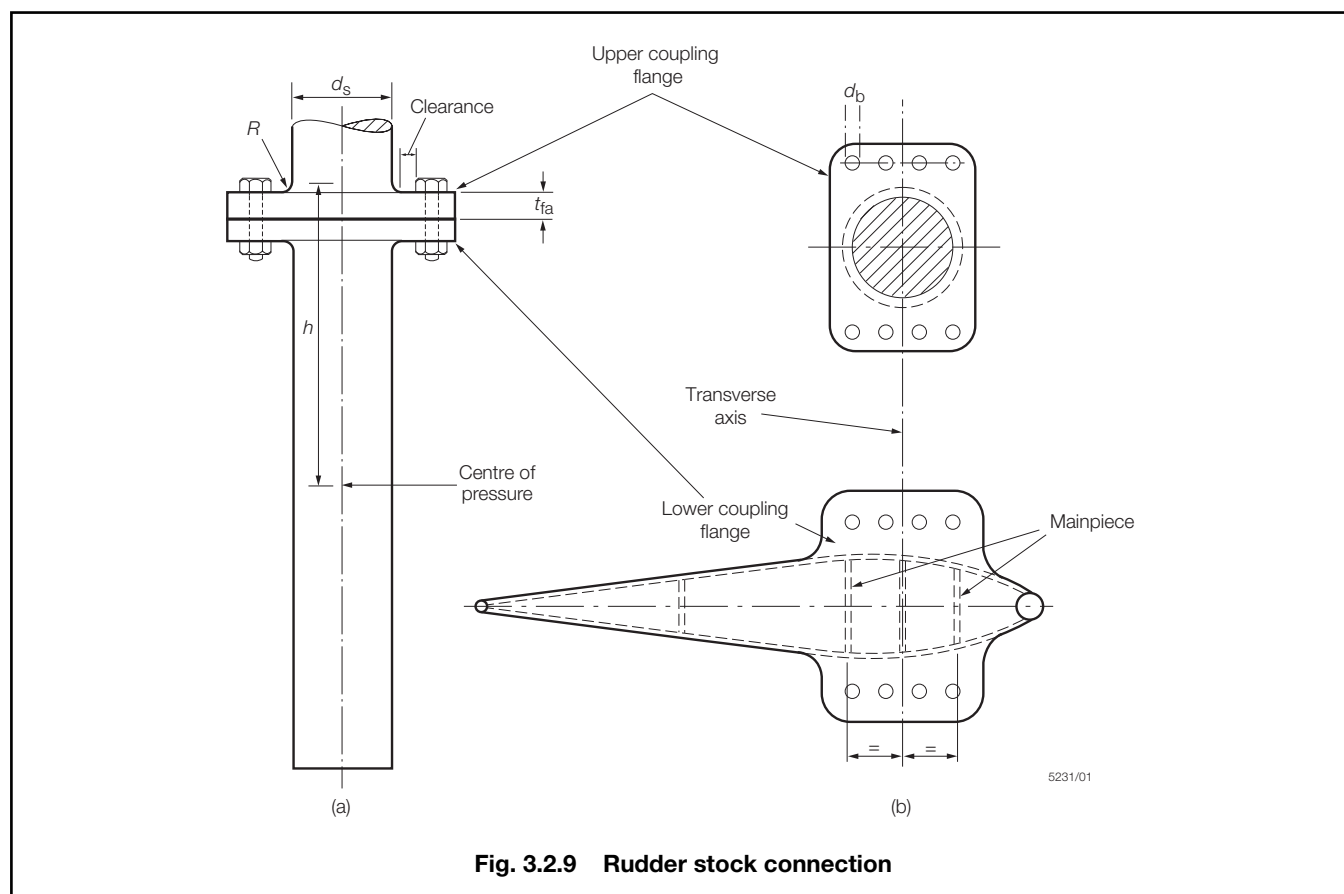
## 2.28 Drain plugs

2.28.1 Where rudders are of plated construction, drain plugs are to be provided to ensure that all compartments can be adequately drained. These plugs are to be locked and details of their scantlings, arrangements and position clearly indicated on the rudder plan.

## 2.29 Corrosion protection

2.29.1 All metalwork is to be suitably protected against corrosion. This may be by coating or, where applicable, by a system of cathodic protection.

2.29.2 Metalwork is to be suitably cleaned before the application of any coating. Where appropriate, blast cleaning or other equally effective means is to be employed for this purpose.



## 2.30 Dissimilar materials

2.30.1 Where materials vary for individual components, they are to be compatible to avoid galvanic corrosion. Scantling calculations for the components are to be based on  $d_s$  for the relevant material, see 2.15.

## 2.31 Internal coatings

2.31.1 Internal surfaces of the rudder are to be efficiently coated or the rudder is to be filled with foam plastics. Where it is intended to fill the rudder with plastic foam, details of the foam are to be submitted for consideration.

## 2.32 Pressure testing

2.32.1 For testing of rudders, see Part 6.

## 2.33 Tiller arms, quadrants

2.33.1 Tillers and quadrants are to comply with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 6, Ch 1.

2.33.2 The steering gear is to be mounted on a seat and adequately secured.



# Ship Control Systems

# Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 3

Sections 2 & 3

## 2.34 Connecting bars

2.34.1 Connecting bars are to comply with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 6, Ch 1.

## 2.35 Keys and keyways

2.35.1 Where the tiller or quadrant is bolted, a key having an effective cross-sectional area in shear of not less than  $0,25d_{su}^2$  mm<sup>2</sup> is to be fitted. The thickness of the key is to be not less than  $d_{su}/6$  mm. Alternatively, the rudder stock may be machined to a square section in lieu of fitting a key.  $d_{su}$  is as defined in 2.14.

2.35.2 Keyways are to extend over the full depth of the tiller boss.

2.35.3 Keyways in the rudder stock are to have rounded ends and the corners at the base of the keyway are to be radiused.

## 2.36 Stopping arrangements

2.36.1 Suitable rudder stops are to be provided to limit the rudder angle to the desired level port and starboard. These stops are to be of substantial construction and efficiently connected to the supporting structure.

## 2.37 Novel designs

2.37.1 Where rudders are of a novel design they may be specially considered on the basis of the Rules. Alternatively, the calculations are to be submitted for consideration.

## 2.38 Rudder tube arrangements

2.38.1 The rudder tube construction is to be of steel.

2.38.2 The scantlings of rudder tubes will be individually considered.

2.38.3 The bottom shell in way of the rudder tubes is to be additionally reinforced by means of an insert plate to increase the bottom shell thickness by 50 per cent.

2.38.4 Where rudder tubes are to be retained by bolting they are to be provided with a substantial flange securely attached to the hull structure. Where bolts are used, the nuts are to be suitably locked.

2.38.5 Where rudder tubes are to be welded to hull insert plates full penetration welding is required.

2.38.6 Rudder tubes are to be supported by suitable brackets and deep floors to avoid hard spots on the shell and to ensure continuity of the main hull structure.

2.38.7 Rudder bearings are to be secured against rotation within the rudder tubes by suitable pinch bolting or keys. Details are to be submitted for approval.

## 2.39 Watertight gland

2.39.1 In rudder trunks which are open to the sea, a seal or stuffing box is to be fitted above the deepest load waterline to prevent water from entering the steering gear compartment and the lubricant from being washed away from the rudder carrier. If the top of the rudder trunk is below the deepest waterline two separate stuffing boxes are to be provided. Rudder trunk boundaries where exposed to the sea are to have a corrosion protection coating applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2.39.2 Where the top of the rudder tube is significantly higher than the deepest load waterline a lesser arrangement of watertightness, such as 'O' rings may be accepted.

2.39.3 The watertight gland body may be formed by the top of the fabricated or cast rudder tube; the gland packing being retained against the top bearing or a check in the wall of the rudder tube and is compressed by a gland packet which may be of the flange type, screwed cap or other suitable arrangement.

2.39.4 Alternative arrangements utilising lip seals or 'O' rings either in isolation or in combination with one or other of the alternative seal arrangements will be the subject of special consideration.

## 2.40 In-water Survey requirements

2.40.1 Where in-water surveys are required, notation is to be assigned, (see Pt 1, Ch 2,4.5.5), means are to be provided for ascertaining the rudder pintle and bush clearances and for verifying the security of the pintles in their sockets with the ship afloat.

## Section 3 Stabiliser arrangements

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 This Section details the requirements for fin stabilisers, stabiliser tanks and bilge keel and fins.

3.1.2 The effectiveness of the fin stabilisers are outwith the scope of classification; however their scantlings, arrangements, foundations, supporting structure and watertight integrity are to be examined.

3.1.3 Engineering systems are to comply with the appropriate requirements indicated in Volume 2, as applicable.

3.1.4 The general structure of the fin stabiliser is to comply with the Rule requirements for rudders.

3.1.5 Fin stabilisers are to be contained between watertight bulkheads.

**3.1.6** For non-retractable type stabilisers, the watertight bulkheads forming the forward and aft extent of the compartment are to be arranged not less than one third of the root chord length,  $C$ , from the fore and aft most extents of the stabiliser, see Fig. 3.3.1. This requirement exists in order to ensure limited flooding in the event of hull damage in way of the fin. Alternate arrangements which are considered to be equivalent to the Rule requirements will be accepted.

**3.1.7** For retractable type stabilisers, the watertight bulkheads forming the forward and aft extent of the compartment are to be arranged not less than the total length of the stabiliser (measured from the extreme end of the shaft to the blade tip) from the centreline of the stabiliser shaft.

**3.1.8** For non-retractable type stabilisers, a separate watertight box surrounding the shell entry point may be required if the stabiliser is located adjacent to a critical compartment. No stabiliser box is needed if the compartment which it is in has adequate pumping arrangements and the ship has at least a one compartment flooded damage capability.

**3.1.9** Where a watertight box surrounding the shell entry point is required, it is to extend longitudinally not less than the minimum bulkhead positions defined in 3.1.6 and vertically to ensure complete enclosure of the machinery and allow adequate inspection, see Fig. 3.3.1.

**3.1.10** For both retractable and non-retractable type stabilisers the compartment in which the stabilisers are fitted is to contain a water ingress detector and alarm.

**3.1.11** Fin stabiliser systems are, in general, not to extend beyond the extreme waterline breadth,  $B_{WL}$ , of the hull or below the horizontal line of keel. However, for retractable fins, alternative arrangements may be specially considered. Where the stabiliser fin extends beyond the extreme moulded beam of the hull in the active mode, the side shell is to be permanently marked indicating the fore and aft extent of the stabiliser, when deployed. It is recommended that an appropriate symbol be placed on the hull side between the marks.

**3.1.12** The shell plating in way of retractable stabilisers is to comply with the requirements of 3.2. However, the longitudinal extent of the insert is to be such that it extends beyond around the hull opening in the fore/aft direction by not less than 25 per cent of the root chord length of the foil. In all other directions the extent of the insert shall be 1,25 times the root chord length of the foil over all operational lengths.

**3.1.13** The scantlings of internal watertight bulkheads and stiffening for fixed installations are to be specified by the designer/builder and/or fin unit manufacturer, but in no case are to be less than the scantlings for double bottoms as defined in Pt 6, Ch 3. Suitable access is to be provided to allow for maintenance and inspection purposes.

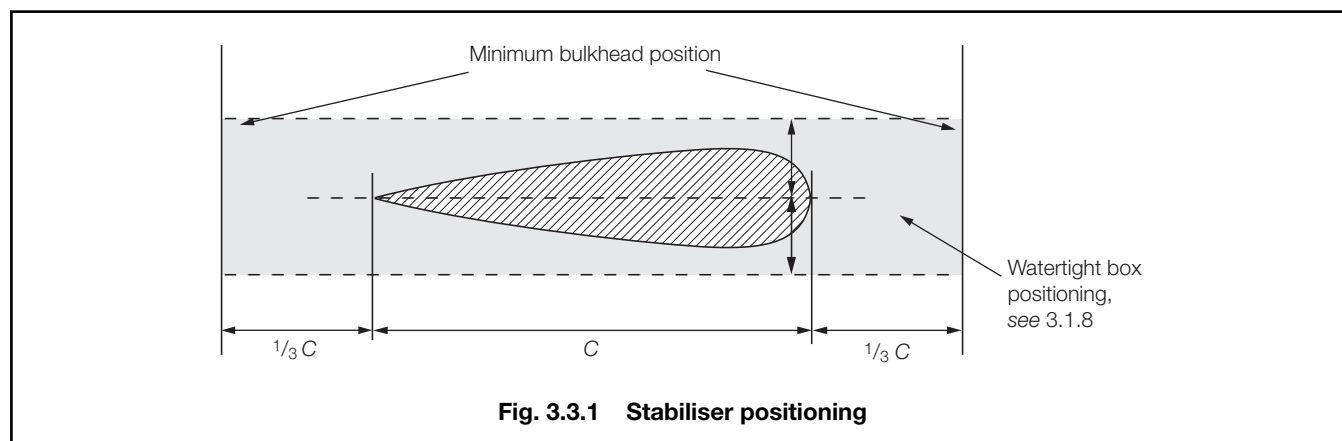
**3.1.14** The scantlings and sealing arrangements for the pedestal and bearings will be specially considered, subject to the designer/builder submitting the following:

- Detailed structural calculations for the proposed foundation and adjacent supporting structure.
- A detailed finite element analysis, if carried out.
- Calculations demonstrating that the effect of damage to the stabiliser arrangement arising from the high speed impact, grounding, fouling, etc. will not compromise the structural and watertight integrity of the ship.
- Maximum torque, bending moments and bearing loads expected for the proposed design.
- The stabiliser fin stock material, together with its ultimate tensile shear strength values ( $N/mm^2$ ).

**3.1.15** Fin bearing materials are to be of an approved type.

**3.1.16** Where retractable stabilisers are fitted, position indicators are to be provided on the bridge and at auxiliary steering positions.

**3.1.17** Where the fin stabiliser is of a novel design, high aspect ratio or the speed of the ship exceeds 45 knots, and the anticipated loads are likely to be significant, the scantlings of the fin and fin stock are to be determined by direct calculation methods incorporating model test results and structural analysis, where considered necessary by LR.



## 3.2 Fin stabilisers

3.2.1 The stabiliser machinery and surrounding structure is to be adequately supported and stiffened. Where cyclic bending stresses are induced in the structure which are likely to reduce the fatigue life the maximum stress is not to exceed 39,0 N/mm<sup>2</sup> in mild steel. Where other materials are used for the supporting structure the limiting stress values will be specially considered.

3.2.2 The fin box into which the stabilisers are fitted is to have a perimeter plating with thickness not less than the surrounding Rule shell plating plus 2 mm, and is to be stiffened to the same standard as the adjacent hull structure. Ships constructed from materials other than steel will be specially considered.

3.2.3 Insert plates are to be fitted in way of stabilisers. The thickness of the insert is to be at least 50 per cent greater than the bottom shell thickness in way and is to extend over an area 1,25 times the stabiliser root chord length, covering all operational angles. In addition, for retractable stabilisers, the insert is to extend beyond the shell opening for a distance of not less than 25 per cent of the length of the root chord.

3.2.4 The thickness of plating in way of retractable foil recesses is to be not less than the bottom shell thickness plus 2 mm. Internal stiffening is to comply with the requirements of Ch 3,4, as applicable.

## 3.3 Centre of pressure

3.3.1 The position of the centre of pressure for use in the determination of the fin torque is to be as indicated in Table 3.3.1.

## 3.4 Fin force, $F_F$

3.4.1 The fin force,  $F_F$ , in kN, for use in the determination of the fin scantlings is to be submitted. For the astern condition the maximum astern speed,  $V_A$ , is to be used. In no case is the astern speed to be taken less than that determined from the following:  $V_A \geq 0,5V$  knots.

## 3.5 Fin torque, $Q_F$

3.5.1 The fin torque,  $Q_F$ , for the ahead condition may be determined from the following formula:

$$Q_F = F_F x_{PF} \text{ kNm}$$

where

$x_{PF}$  = horizontal distance from the centreline of the fin stock, to the centre of pressure in the ahead condition, in metres, see Table 3.3.1

$F_F$  = fin force as defined in 3.4.1.

**Table 3.3.1 Position of centre of pressure**

Design criteria	Value of $x_{PF}$ and $x_{PA}$
Rectangular fins: (a) Ahead condition	$x_{PF} = (0,33x_B - x_L)$ , but not less than $0,12x_B$
(b) Astern condition	$x_{PA} = (x_A - 0,25x_B)$ , but not less than $0,12x_B$
Non-rectangular fins: (a) Ahead condition	$x_{PF}$ as calculated from geometric form
(b) Astern condition	$x_{PA}$ (see Note) but not less than: $\frac{0,12A_F}{y_F}$
Symbols	
$x_{PF}$ = horizontal distance from the centreline of the fin stock, to the centre of pressure in the ahead condition, in metres $x_{PA}$ = horizontal distance from the centreline of the fin stock, to the centre of pressure in the astern condition, in metres $x_B$ = breadth of fin, in metres $y_F$ = depth of fin at centreline of stock, in metres $A_F$ = fin area, in m <sup>2</sup> $x_L$ and $x_A$ = horizontal distances from leading and after edges, respectively, of the fin to the centreline of the fin stock, in metres $x_S$ = horizontal length of any rectangular strip of fin geometric form, in metres	
NOTE For rectangular strips the centre of pressure is to be assumed to be located as follows: (a) $0,33x_S$ abaft leading edge of strip for ahead condition. (b) $0,25x_S$ from aft edge of strip for astern condition.	

3.5.2 The fin torque,  $Q_F$ , for the astern condition may be determined from the following formula:

$$Q_F = F_F x_{PA} \text{ kNm}$$

where

$x_{PA}$  = horizontal distance from the centreline of the fin stock, to the centre of pressure in the astern condition, in metres, see Table 3.3.1

$F_F$  = fin force as defined in 3.4.1.

## 3.6 Fin bending moment, $M_F$

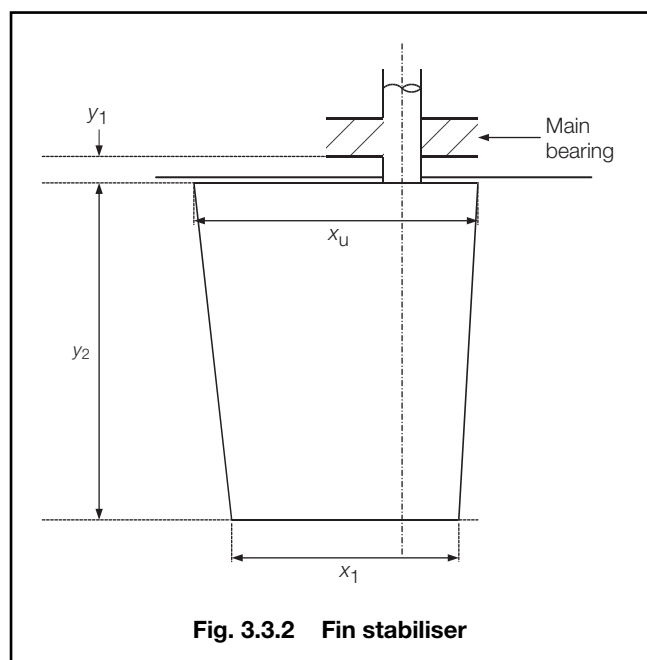
3.6.1 For conventional fins the bending moment,  $M_F$ , may be determined from the following formula:

$$M_F = F_F \left( y_1 + \left( \frac{y_2 (2x_1 + x_u)}{3 (x_1 + x_u)} \right) \right) \text{ kNm}$$

where

$F_F$  is as given in 3,4

$y_1, y_3, x_1$  and  $x_u$  are fin dimensions, in metres  
see Fig. 3.3.2.



**Fig. 3.3.2 Fin stabiliser**

### 3.7 Fin stock diameter in way of tiller, $d_{Fu}$

3.7.1 The fin stock diameter in way of the tiller,  $d_{Fu}$ , is to be not less than that determined from the formula:

$$d_{Fu} = 42 \sqrt[3]{\frac{Q_F}{K_o}} \text{ mm}$$

where

$Q_F$  = fin torque (in the appropriate condition), in kNm, as given in 3,5

$K_o$  = material factor, as defined in 1.4.3.

### 3.8 Fin stock diameter, $d_F$

3.8.1 For a fin stock subjected to combined torque and bending, the equivalent stress in the fin stock is not to exceed that determined from the following:

$$\sigma_e \leq 118K_o \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$K_o$  = material factor, as defined in 1.4.3.

The equivalent stress is to be determined by the formula:

$$\sigma_e = \sqrt{\sigma_b^2 + 3\tau_t^2} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\text{Bending stress: } \sigma_b = 10200 \frac{M_F}{d_F^3} \times 10^3 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\text{Torsional stress: } \tau_t = 5100 \frac{Q_F}{d_F^3} \times 10^3 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

3.8.2 The basic fin stock diameter,  $d_F$ , at and below the lowest bearing is not to be less than that determined from the following:

$$d_F = d_{Fu} \sqrt[6]{1 + \frac{4}{3} \left( \frac{M_F}{Q_F} \right)^2} \text{ mm}$$

where

$d_{Fu}$  = diameter of the fin stock in way of the tiller, in mm

$M_F$  = fin bending moment, kNm, see 3,6

$Q_F$  = fin torque (in the appropriate condition), in kNm, as given in 3,5.

### 3.9 Fin plating

3.9.1 The thickness of the fin side plating is not to be less than that determined from the following:

$$t = 0,0224s \beta \sqrt{\frac{P_F}{110K_o}} + 2,5 \text{ mm}$$

where

$s$  = stiffener spacing, in mm

$\beta$  = panel aspect ratio correction factor

=  $A_R (1 - 0,25A_R)$  for  $A_R \leq 2$

= 1 for  $A_R > 2$

$A_R$  = panel aspect ratio

= panel length/panel breadth

$P_F$  = fin pressure, in kN/m<sup>2</sup>

$$= 10T + \frac{F_F}{A_F} \text{ kN/mm}^2$$

$T$  = maximum draught, in metres

$F_F$  = fin force, in kN, see 3.4

$A_F$  = fin area, in m<sup>2</sup>

$K_o$  = material factor, as defined in 1.4.3.

3.9.2 The thickness of the nose plates is not to be less than 1,25 times the thickness of the fin side plating. The thickness of web plates is not to be less than 70 per cent the thickness of the fin side plating, or 6 mm, whichever is the greater.

3.9.3 Alternative materials and methods for fin stabilisers will be specially considered.

### 3.10 Stabiliser tanks

3.10.1 The general structure of the tank is to comply with the Rule requirements for deep tanks. Sloshing forces in the tank structure are to be taken into account. Where such forces are likely to be significant, the scantlings will be required to be verified by additional calculations.

### 3.11 Bilge keels and fins

3.11.1 It is recommended that bilge keels are not fitted forward of  $0,7L_R$  on ships intended to navigate in ice conditions.

3.11.2 Bilge keels are to be gradually tapered at the ends and arranged to finish in way of a suitable internal stiffening member. The taper is to have a length to depth ratio of at least three to one.

3.11.3 A plan of the bilge keels is to be submitted for approval of material grades, welded connections and detail design.

3.11.4 The scantlings and attachment to the hull plating for steel ships is to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 6,5.11.

## 3.12 Novel features

3.12.1 Where the Rules do not specifically define the requirements for novel features then the scantlings and arrangements are to be determined by direct calculations. Such calculations are to be carried out on the basis of the Rules, recognised standards and good practice, and are to be submitted for consideration.

## Section 4 Rudder horns and appendages

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Rudder horns and boss end brackets may be constructed of cast or forged steel or fabricated from steel plate. Where shaft brackets are fitted these may be either fabricated, cast or forged from steel.

4.1.2 In castings, sudden changes of section or possible constrictions to the flow of metal during casting are to be avoided. All fillets are to have adequate radii, which, in general, are to be not less than 50 to 75 mm, depending on the size of the casting.

4.1.3 Castings and forgings are to comply with the requirements of Chapters 4 and 5 of the Rules for Materials.

4.1.4 Rudder horns, shaft brackets, etc., are to be effectively integrated into the ship structure, and their design is to be such as to facilitate this.

### 4.2 Propeller boss

4.2.1 The thickness of the propeller boss is to be not less than:

$$0,1d_{TS} + 56 \text{ but need not exceed } 0,3d_{TS}$$

where

$$d_{TS} = \text{diameter of tailshaft in mm, see Fig. 3.4.1.}$$

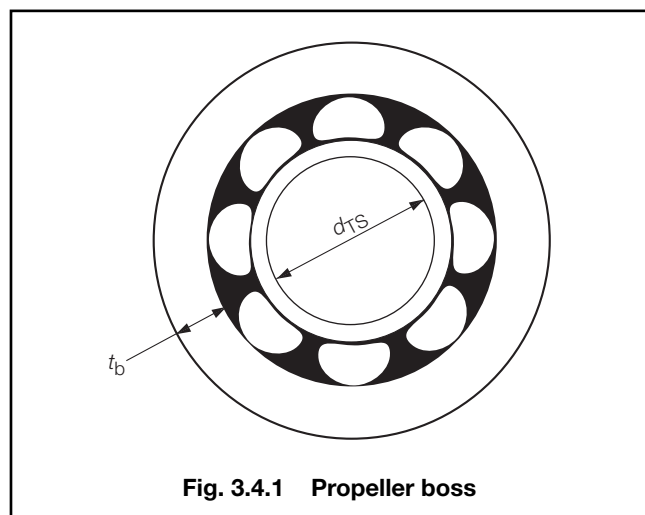


Fig. 3.4.1 Propeller boss

### 4.3 Rudder horns

4.3.1 The requirements for the scantlings and arrangements of rudder horns will be subject to special consideration and may require to be determined by direct calculations.

### 4.4 Shaft bossing

4.4.1 Where the propeller shafting is enclosed in bossings extending back to the bearings supporting the propellers, the aft end of the bossings and the bearings are to be supported by substantially constructed boss end castings or fabrications. These are to be designed to transmit the loading from the shafting efficiently into the ship's internal structure.

4.4.2 For shaft bossings attached to shaft brackets, the length of the boss is to be adequate to accommodate the aftermost bearing and to allow for proper connection of the shaft brackets.

4.4.3 Cast steel supports are to be suitably radiused where they enter the main hull to line up with the boss plating radius. Where the hull sections are narrow, the two arms are generally to be connected to each other within the ship. The arms are to be strengthened at intervals by webs.

4.4.4 Fabricated supports are to be carefully designed to avoid or reduce the effect of hard spots. Continuity of the arms into the ship is to be maintained, and they are to be attached to substantial floor plates or other structure. The connection of the arms to the bearing boss is to be by full penetration welding.

4.4.5 The scantlings of supports will be specially considered. In the case of certain high powered ships, direct calculations may be required.

4.4.6 The boss plating is generally to be radiused into the shell plating and supported at the aft end by diaphragms at every frame. These diaphragms are to be suitably stiffened and connected to floors or a suitable arrangement of main and deep web frames. At the forward end, the main frames may be shaped to fit the bossing, but deep webs are generally to be fitted not more than four frame spaces apart.

### 4.5 Shaft brackets

4.5.1 The scantlings of the arms of shaft brackets, based on a breadth to thickness ratio of about five, are to be determined from 4.6.1 or 4.7.2 as appropriate.

4.5.2 Where the propeller shafting is exposed to the sea for some distance clear of the main hull, it is generally to be supported adjacent to the propeller by independent brackets having two arms. In very small ships the use of single arm brackets will be considered.

4.5.3 Fabricated brackets are to be designed to avoid or reduce the effect of hard spots and ensure a satisfactory connection to the hull structure. The connection of the arms to the bearing boss is to be by full penetration welding.

4.5.4 Bracket arms are in general to be carried through the shell plating, they are to be attached to floors or girders of increased thickness. The shell plating is to be increased in thickness and connected to the arms by full penetration welding.

4.5.5 In the case of certain high powered ships direct calculations may be required.

4.5.6 For shaft brackets having hollow section arms, the cross-sectional areas at the root and the boss should be not less than that required for a solid arm which satisfies the Rule section modulus having the proportions stated in 4.5.1.

4.5.7 The length of the shaft bracket boss,  $l_b$ , is to be sufficient to support the length of the required bearing. In general  $l_b$  is not to be less than  $4d_t$ , where  $d_t$  is the Rule diameter of the screwshaft, in mm, see Vol 2, Pt 3, Ch 2,4.4. Proposals for a reduction in the required shaft bracket boss length will be considered in conjunction with details of the bearing material, allowable bearing operating pressure and installation arrangements, see Vol 2, Pt 3, Ch 2,4.16.2. However in no case is  $l_b$  to be less than the greater of:

- (a)  $2d_t$ ;
- (b) that recommended by the bearing manufacturer;
- (c) as required by 4.4.2.

4.5.8 Where the shaft and the shaft bracket boss are of the same material, the thickness of the shaft bracket boss is not to be less than  $d_t/4$ . Where the shaft and the shaft bracket boss are of dissimilar materials, the thickness of the boss,  $t_b$ , is to be not less than:

$$t_b = 0,75d_t \left( \sqrt[3]{f_1} - 0,667 \right) \text{ mm}$$

NOTE

In no case is  $t_b$  to be taken as less than 12 mm.

where

- $d_t$  = Rule diameter of the screwshaft, in the appropriate screwshaft material, in mm
- $f_1 = \sigma_S/\sigma_B$  but not less than 0,825
- $\sigma_S$  = ultimate tensile strength of the shaft material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma_B$  = ultimate tensile strength of the boss material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

4.5.9 The design of the shaft brackets with regard to disturbance of the hydrodynamic flow into the propeller and rudders is out with the scope of classification.

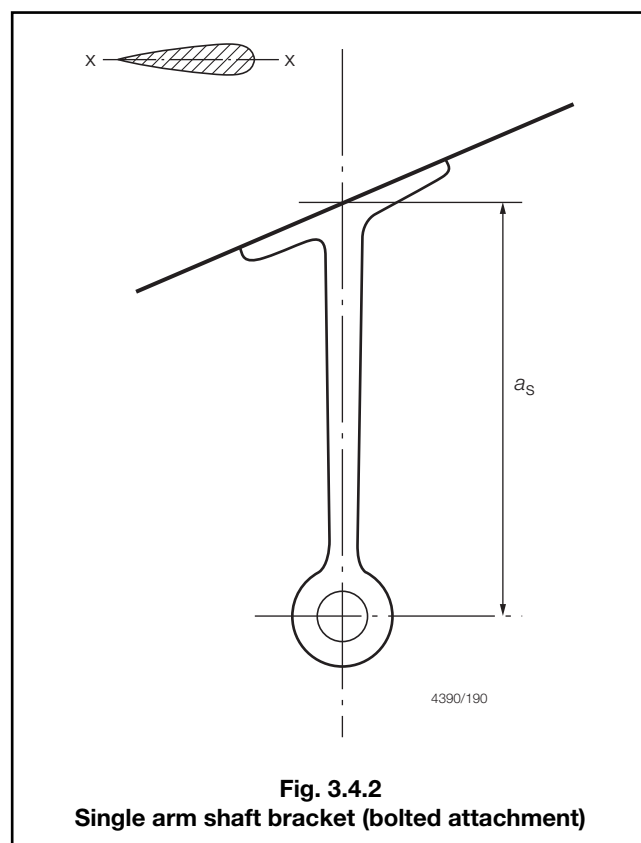
## 4.6 Single arm shaft brackets ('P' – brackets)

4.6.1 Single arm shaft brackets are to have a section modulus,  $Z_{xx}$ , at the palm of not less than that determined from the formula:

$$Z_{xx} = \frac{a_s d_{ms}^2 f}{45000} \text{ cm}^3$$

where

- $a_s$  = the length of the arm to be measured from the centre of the section at the palm to the centreline of the shaft boss, in mm, see Fig. 3.4.2
- $d_{ms}$  = the Rule diameter for an unprotected screwshaft, in mm, as given in Vol 2, Pt 3, Ch 2 using
- $A = 1,0$



**Fig. 3.4.2**  
**Single arm shaft bracket (bolted attachment)**

$$f = 400/\sigma_u$$

$\sigma_u$  = ultimate tensile strength of arm material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

The cross-sectional area of the bracket at the boss is to be not less than 60 per cent of the area of the bracket at the palm.

4.6.2 For single arm shaft brackets a vibration analysis may be required if deemed necessary by LR.

## 4.7 Double arm shaft brackets ('A' – brackets)

4.7.1 The angle between the arms for double arm shaft brackets is to be generally not less than 50°. Proposals for the angle between the arms to be less than 50° will be specially considered with supporting calculations to be submitted by the designers.

4.7.2 The arms of double arm shaft brackets are to have a section modulus,  $Z_{xx}$ , of not less than that determined from the formula:

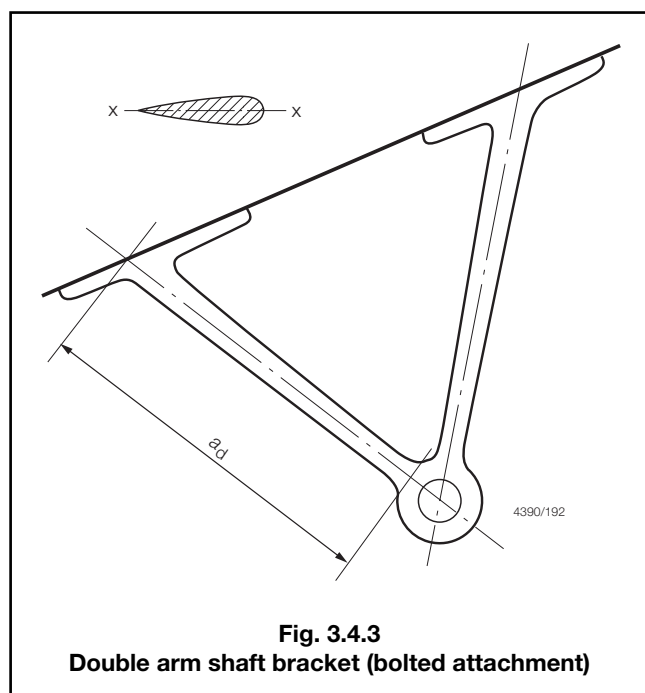
$$Z_{xx} = 0,45n^3 \text{ cm}^3$$

where

$n$  = the minimum thickness, in cm, of a hydrofoil section obtained from:

$$n = d_{ms} \sqrt{\left( \frac{f}{2000} \right) \left( 1 + \sqrt{\left( 1 + \left( \frac{0,0112}{f} \right) \left( \frac{a_d}{d_{ms}} \right)^2} \right)} \right)} \text{ cm}$$

$a_d$  = the length of the longer strut, in mm, see Fig. 3.4.3  
 $d_{ms}$  and  $f$  are as given in 4.6.1.



**Fig. 3.4.3**

**Double arm shaft bracket (bolted attachment)**

## 4.8 Intermediate shaft brackets

4.8.1 The length and thickness of the shaft bracket boss are to be as required by 4.5.7 or 4.5.8 as appropriate. The scantlings of the arms will be specially considered on the basis of the Rules.

## 4.9 Attachment of shaft brackets by welding

4.9.1 Fabricated supports are to be carefully designed to avoid or reduce the effect of hard spots. Continuity of the arms into the ship is to be maintained, and they are to be attached to substantial floor plates or other structure. The connection of the arms to the bearing boss is to be by full penetration welding.

## 4.10 Attachment of shaft brackets by bolting

4.10.1 The bottom shell thickness in way of the double arm propeller bracket palms is to be increased by 50 per cent. The bottom shell thickness in way of single arm propeller brackets palms is to be doubled in thickness. The insert plates are to be additionally supported by substantial floor plates or other structure.

4.10.2 Where shaft brackets are attached by bolts, they are to be provided with substantial palms securely attached to the hull structure which is to be adequately stiffened in way. Where bolts are used, the nuts are to be suitably locked.

4.10.3 The bracket palms may be bolted directly onto the shell using a suitable bedding compound. The palms may be bolted onto suitable shims or chocking compound, of an approved type, to facilitate alignment.

4.10.4 Where brackets are bolted onto resin chocks, plans indicating the following information are to be submitted for approval:

- The thrust and torque loads, where applicable, that will be applied to the chocked item.
- The torque load to be applied to the bracket mounting bolts.
- The material of the bracket mounting bolts.
- The number, thread size, shank diameter and length of the mounting bolts.

4.10.5 The minimum thickness of a resin chock is to be 12 mm.

4.10.6 The bracket palms are to have well radiused corners, and the faying surface to be dressed smooth. The palm thickness in way of the bolts is to be not less than the propeller bracket boss thickness from 4.5.7 or 4.5.8 as appropriate.

4.10.7 The diameter of the propeller bracket mounting bolts is to be not less than:

$$d_b = \sqrt{\frac{Z_{xx}}{8,75 \pi n h \times 10^{-5}}} \text{ mm}$$

subject to  $d_{bmin} \geq t_b$  mm

where

- $Z_{xx}$  = the section modulus of the bracket arm determined from 4.6.1 or 4.7.2, cm<sup>3</sup>, as appropriate
- $n$  = the number of bolts in each row
- $h$  = the distance between rows of bolts, mm
- $d_b$  = the bolt diameter in the same material as the propeller bracket, mm
- $t_b$  = the propeller bracket boss thickness, mm.

4.10.8 Where the shaft bracket and the shaft bracket mounting bolts are of dissimilar materials (which are galvanically compatible), the diameter of the propeller bracket mounting bolts, as determined from 4.10.7, is to be modified in proportion to the square root of the yield strengths of the particular materials. The corrected bolt diameter of the dissimilar material is to be not less than the propeller bracket boss thickness.

4.10.9 The propeller bracket palms are to have fitted bolts, and suitable arrangements provided to lock the nuts.

4.10.10 A washer plate is to be provided, generally of equal dimensions to the bracket palm with thickness  $t_b/6$  mm, subject to a minimum of 3 mm.

## 4.11 Alignment of shaft brackets

4.11.1 Particular care is to be paid to the alignment of shaft brackets to minimise vibration and cyclic loadings being transmitted from the propulsion shafting and propellers into the hull structure.

4.11.2 Alignment of bolted shaft brackets may be by means of suitable metallic shims or chocking resin of an approved type, see 4.10.2 and 4.10.3.



4.11.3 The alignment of shaft brackets connected by welding or bonding may be facilitated by boring of the bracket boss after attachment of the shaft bracket and sterntube.

## 4.12 Sterntubes

4.12.1 The sterntube scantlings are to be individually considered.

4.12.2 The bottom shell, in way of the sterntube, is to be additionally reinforced by means of an insert plate to increase the bottom shell thickness by 50 per cent.

4.12.3 The sterntube should in general be connected to the shell by welding. Bolted arrangements will be specially considered.

4.12.4 Where sterntubes are to be retained by bolting they are to be provided with a substantial flange securely attached to the hull structure. Where bolts are used, the nuts are to be suitably locked.

4.12.5 Where sterntubes are to be welded to hull insert plates full penetration welding is required.

4.12.6 Where sterntubes are to be installed using a resin system, of an approved type, the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 6 are to be complied with.

4.12.7 The region where the shafting enters the ship, and the bearing in way, is to be adequately supported by floors or deep webs.

4.12.8 The shaft bearings are to be secured against rotation within the sterntube.

4.12.9 A suitable gland arrangement is to be provided at the inboard end of sterntubes.

## 4.13 Skegs

4.13.1 Skegs are to be efficiently integrated into the adjacent hull structure and their design is to facilitate this.

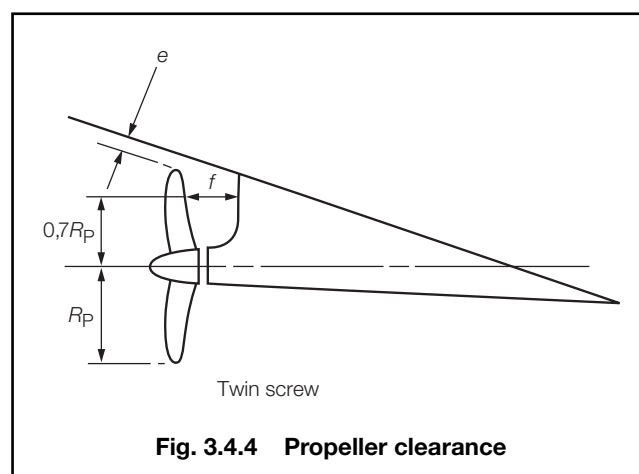
4.13.2 The scantlings of skegs are to be sufficient to withstand any docking forces imposed upon them.

## 4.14 Propeller hull clearances

4.14.1 Recommended minimum clearances between the propeller and the sternframe, rudder or hull are given in Table 3.4.1. These are the minimum distances considered desirable in order to expect reasonable levels of propeller excited vibration. Attention is drawn to the importance of the local hull form characteristics, shaft power, water flow characteristics into the propeller disc and cavitation when considering the recommended clearances.

**Table 3.4.1 Recommended minimum propeller hull clearances**

Number of blades	Hull clearances for twin screw, in metres, see Fig. 3.4.4	
	<i>e</i>	<i>f</i>
3	$1,20K d_P$	$1,20K d_P$
4	$1,00K d_P$	$1,20K d_P$
5	$0,85K d_P$	$0,85K d_P$
6	$0,75K d_P$	$0,75K d_P$
Minimum value	3 and 4 blades, $0,20d_P$ 5 and 6 blades, $0,16d_P$	$0,15d$
Symbols		
$L_R$ and $C_B$ are as defined in Ch 1,5.2		
$K = \left(0,1 + \frac{L_R}{3050}\right) \left(\frac{3,48C_B P_s}{L_R^2} + 0,3\right)$		
$t_R$ = thickness of rudder, in metres measured at $0,7R_P$ above the shaft centreline		
$P_s$ = designed power on one shaft, in kW		
$R_P$ = propeller radius, in metres		
$d_P$ = propeller diameter, in metres		
NOTE The above recommended minimum clearances also apply to semi-spade type rudders.		



## Section 5 Fixed and steering nozzles, bow and stern thrust units, ducted propellers

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 The requirements for scantlings for fixed and steering nozzles are given, for guidance only, in 5.2 to 5.4 and Table 3.5.1.



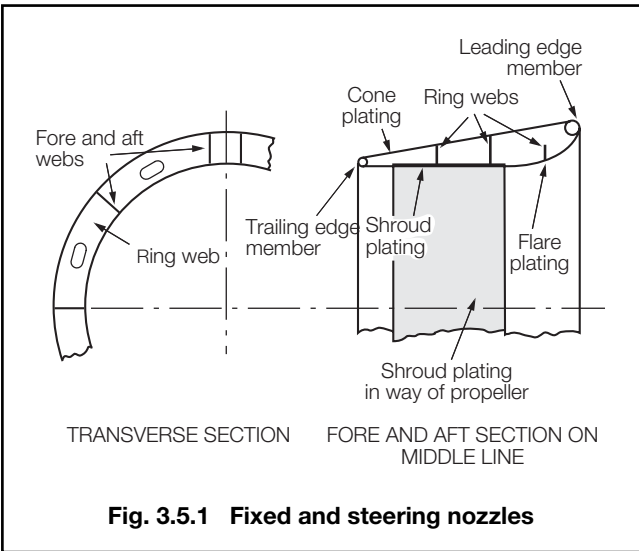
Table 3.5.1      Nozzle construction requirements

Item	Requirement
(1) Nozzle numeral	$N_N = 0,01P d_P$
(2) Shroud plating in way of propeller blade tips	For $N_N \leq 63$ $t_s = (11 + 0,1N_N) \text{ mm}$  For $N_N > 63$ $t_s = (14 + 0,052N_N) \text{ mm}$
(3) Shroud plating clear of blade tips, flare and cone plating, wall thickness of leading and trailing edge members	$t_p = (t_s - 7) \text{ mm}$ but not less than 8 mm
(4) Webs and ring webs	As item (3) except in way of headbox and pintle support where $t_W = (t_s + 4) \text{ mm}$
(5) Nozzle stock	Combined stresses in stock at lower bearing $\leq 92,7 \text{ N/mm}^2$  Torsional stress in upper stock $\leq 62,0 \text{ N/mm}^2$
(6) Solepiece and strut	Bending stresses not to exceed $70,0 \text{ N/mm}^2$
Symbols	
$N_N$ = a numeral dependent on the nozzle requirements $P$ = power transmitted to the propellers, in kW $d_P$ = diameter of the propeller, in metres $t_s$ = thickness of shroud plating in way of propeller tips, in mm $t_p$ = thickness of plating, in mm $t_W$ = thickness of webs and ring webs in way of headbox and pintle support, in mm	
NOTE Thicknesses given are for carbon steel. Reductions in thickness will be considered for certain stainless steels.	

5.1.2      The requirements, in general, apply to nozzles with a numeral not greater than 200, see Table 3.5.1. Nozzles exceeding this value will be specially considered.

5.2      Nozzle structure

5.2.1      For basic scantlings of the structure, see Table 3.5.1, in association with Fig. 3.5.1.



5.2.2      The shroud plating in way of the propeller tips is to be carried well forward and aft of this position, due allowance being made on steering nozzles for the rotation of the nozzle in relation to the propeller.

5.2.3      Fore and aft webs are to be fitted between the inner and outer skins of the nozzle. Both sides of the headbox and pintle support structure are to be connected to fore and aft webs of increased thickness. For thicknesses, see Table 3.5.1.

5.2.4      The transverse strength of the nozzle is to be maintained by the fitting of ring webs. Two ring webs are to be fitted in nozzles not exceeding 2,5 m diameter. Nozzles between 2,5 and 3,0 m in diameter are generally to have two full ring webs and a half-depth web supporting the flare plating. The number of ring webs is to be increased as necessary on nozzles exceeding 3,0 m in diameter. Where ring webs are increased in thickness in way of the headbox and pintle support structure in accordance with Table 3.5.1, the increased thickness is to be maintained to the adjacent fore and aft web.

5.2.5      Local stiffening is to be fitted in way of the top and bottom supports which are to be integrated with the webs and ring webs. Continuity of bending strength is to be maintained in these regions.

5.2.6 Fin plating thickness is to be not less than the cone plating, and the fin is to be adequately reinforced. Solid fins are to be not less than 25 mm thick.

5.2.7 Care is to be taken in the manufacture of the nozzle to ensure its internal preservation and watertightness. The preservation and testing are to be as required for rudders, see Part 6.

## 5.3 Nozzle stock and solepiece

5.3.1 Stresses, derived using the maximum side load on the nozzle and fin acting at the assumed centre of pressure, are not to exceed the values given in Table 3.5.1, in both the ahead and astern conditions.

## 5.4 Ancillary items

5.4.1 The diameter of pintles and the diameter and first moment of area about the stock axis of coupling bolts are to be derived from 2.23 and 2.24 respectively.

5.4.2 Suitable arrangements are to be provided to prevent the steering nozzle from lifting.

## 5.5 Steering gear and allied systems

5.5.1 For the requirements of steering gear, see Vol 2, Pt 6, Ch 1.

## 5.6 Thruster unit wall thickness

5.6.1 The wall thickness of the unit is, in general, to be in accordance with the manufacturer's practice, but is to be not less than the thickness of the adjacent shell plating plus 10 per cent or 2 mm whichever is the greater, subject to a minimum of 7 mm.

## 5.7 Thruster unit installation details

5.7.1 The tunnel tube is to be fitted either between a pair of deep floors or bulkheads extending to above the design waterline or in a separate watertight compartment.

5.7.2 The shell plating thickness is to be locally increased by 50 per cent in way of tunnel thruster connections.

5.7.3 For welded tube connections the welding is to be by full penetration welding.

5.7.4 The tunnel tube is to be framed to the same standard as the surrounding shell plating.

5.7.5 The unit is to be adequately supported and stiffened.

## 5.8 Propeller ducting

5.8.1 Where propellers are fitted within ducts/tunnels the plating thickness in way of the blades is to be increased by 50 per cent.

5.8.2 The tunnel wall in way of the propeller blades is to be additionally stiffened.

## 5.9 Surface drive mountings

5.9.1 Transoms through which surface drive systems pass and which are required to carry thrust, significant weight, torque, moment, etc., are to be adequately reinforced.

5.9.2 The thickness of transom plating in way is to be increased by 50 per cent or as advised by the drive manufacturer, whichever is the greater.

5.9.3 Steering rams are to be mounted on suitably reinforced areas of plating supported by additional internal stiffening, details of which are to be submitted for consideration.

## 5.10 Novel features

5.10.1 Where the Rules do not specifically define the requirements for novel features, then the scantlings and arrangements are to be determined by direct calculations. Such calculations are to be carried out on the basis of the Rules, recognised standards and good practice, and are to be submitted for consideration.

## Section 6 Waterjet propulsion systems

### 6.1 Construction

6.1.1 The requirements for the construction and installation of water jet units apply irrespective of rated power.

6.1.2 Water jet ducts may be fabricated as an integral part of the hull structure, or as a bolted in unit. In either case, detailed plans indicating dimensions, scantlings and materials of construction of the following are to be submitted in triplicate.

- (a) Arrangement of the system including intended method of attachment to the hull and building-in, geometry of tunnel, shell opening, method of stiffening, reinforcement, etc.
- (b) Shaft sealing arrangements.
- (c) Details of any shafting support or guide vanes used in the water jet system.
- (d) Details and arrangements of inspection ports, their closing appliances and sealing arrangement, etc.
- (e) Details and arrangements of protection gratings and their attachments.

6.1.3 When submitting the plans requested in 6.1.2, details of the designers' loadings and their positions of application in the hull are to be submitted. These are to include maximum applied thrust, moments and tunnel pressures for which approval is sought.

6.1.4 All materials used in construction are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the Rules for Materials.

6.1.5 Steels are to be of suitable grades in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 6.

6.1.6 Irrespective of the material used, the strength and supporting structure of all tunnels are to be examined by direct calculation procedures which are to be submitted. In no case are the scantlings to be taken as less than the Rule requirements for the surrounding structure. The strength of the hull structure in way of tunnels is to be maintained. The structure is to be adequately reinforced and compensated as necessary. All openings are to be suitably reinforced and have radiused corners.

6.1.7 Consideration is to be given to providing the inlet to the tunnel with a suitable guard to prevent the ingress of large objects into the rotodynamic machinery. The dimensions of the guard are to strike a balance between undue efficiency loss due to flow restriction and viscous losses, the size of object allowed to pass and susceptibility to clog with weed and other flow restricting matter.

6.1.8 The inlet profile of the tunnel is to be so designed as to provide a smooth uptake of water over the range of craft operating trims and avoid significant separation of the flow into the rotating machinery.

6.1.9 Single or multiple water jet unit installations having a total rated power in excess of 500 kW are to be contained within their own watertight compartment. Other arrangements for maintaining watertight integrity may be specially considered depending on the size and installation layout.

6.1.10 For details of machinery requirements, see Vol 2, Pt 4, Ch 2.

## **6.2 Water jet propulsion systems – Installation**

6.2.1 Standard units built for 'off the shelf' supply and which include the duct are to be installed strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, see also 6.1.4.

6.2.2 Integral water jet ducts are to be constructed in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and the relevant plans submitted as required by 6.1.

6.2.3 Where load is transmitted into the transom and/or bottom shell, the thickness of the plating adjacent to the jet unit is to be increased. The increase in thickness is to be not less than 50 per cent of the calculated transom and bottom plating thicknesses respectively or 8 mm, whichever is the greater. Such reinforcement is to extend beyond the surrounding stiffening structure.

6.2.4 For 'bolted in' units, hull receiving rings are to be of a material compatible with the hull. Scantlings of the receiving rings are to be as required by the jet unit manufacturer and suitably edge prepared prior to welding in place. The receiving ring is to be installed using an approved welding procedure. Where a manufacturer's specification is not provided, full details are to be submitted.

6.2.5 Bolt sizes and spacings are to be specified by the manufacturer, and are to be of suitable marine grade, insulated as appropriate and locked by suitable means.

6.2.6 Where studs are proposed for the receiving ring(s), the remaining thickness below the depth of blind tap is to be not less than the bottom shell plating thickness plus 2 mm. Bottoms of all blind taps are to be free of sharp corners.

6.2.7 The use of approved alignment resins may be considered where accurate seating and faying surfaces are required. Details are to be submitted for consideration and approval.

6.2.8 Where a water jet unit forms an integral part of the hull structure, such units are to be installed using an approved weld procedure and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Materials to be welded are to be of compatible specifications.

6.2.9 Water jet units transmitting thrust into the transom structure are to be supported by a system of radial, athwartship and vertical stiffening. Drawings are to be accompanied by a set of detailed structural calculations. Where complex installations are proposed, a finite element model may be submitted in lieu of direct calculations.

6.2.10 Water jet units transmitting thrust to a bottom shell connection or intermediate tunnel connection are to be supported by additional stiffening, the details of which are to be submitted.

# Closing Arrangements and Outfit

# Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 4

Sections 1 &amp; 2

## Section

- 1 **Introduction**
- 2 **Hatches and miscellaneous openings on the weather deck**
- 3 **Doors and accesses on weather decks**
- 4 **Side lights and windows**
- 5 **Ventilators**
- 6 **Air pipes**
- 7 **Scuppers and sanitary discharges**
- 8 **Bulwarks, guard rails, raised walkways and other means for the protection of crew and embarked personnel**
- 9 **Lagging and lining of structure**
- 10 **Lifting eyes**

## ■ Section 1 Introduction

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to all ship types. If required, reference should be made to any additional or alternative standards that are specified by the Naval Authority which will also be considered. Details are to be submitted.

1.1.2 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to all openings on the weather deck. Openings on the tops and sides of enclosed structures on the weather deck up to a height of 2,5 m are to be weathertight. In the forward 0,25 $L_R$  the height should be taken to 5 m. The height of openings may be required to be increased where this is shown necessary by the stability and watertight subdivision calculation required by Pt 1, Ch 1,1.1. The weather deck as defined in Ch 1,5.4.2 may be stepped or recessed for the purpose of this Chapter. Special consideration will be given to the position of the weather deck of NS1 ship types.

1.1.3 Provisions covering acceptable arrangements for the watertight and weathertight integrity of the hull and spaces within the hull are to be read in conjunction with the limits defined in Ch 1,1.3. For watertight doors and hatches in watertight subdivision boundaries below the vertical extent of watertight integrity, see Ch 2,4.7.

1.1.4 Requirements are given for steel hatches, securing arrangements, coamings, also closing arrangements for other miscellaneous openings, ventilators, air pipes, magazine blow out plates, discharges and outfit. For side shell doors for main opening and bow doors, see Pt 4, Ch 3.

1.1.5 A boundary or a closing appliance is considered weathertight if it is capable of preventing the passage of water into the ship in any sea condition. Weathertightness can be obtained, by design, where closing arrangements are constructed of steel (or equivalent) and are capable of being closed by clamping devices or bolts. The joining parts are to be gasketed and for all practical purposes have an equivalent structural integrity and tightness to the surrounding structure.

1.1.6 The requirements for closing appliances in this Chapter are suitable for weathertight arrangements. When closing appliances are designed to comply with the requirements for CBRN Defence, they will be considered as being equivalent to the weathertight requirements of this Chapter.

## ■ Section 2 Hatches and miscellaneous openings on the weather deck

### 2.1 Hatch covers

2.1.1 The hatch covers on the weather decks of all ships are to be steel plated, stiffened by webs or stiffeners, hinged and secured by clamping devices. Weathertightness is to be achieved by means of gaskets. The means of securing are to be such that weathertightness can be maintained in any sea condition. Where toggles are fitted, their diameter and spacing are to be in accordance with ISO standards or equivalent.

2.1.2 Weathertight or gastight hatches (CBRN) should be located on lower decks in accordance with requirements as specified by the Naval Authority, see Pt 4, Ch 1.

2.1.3 The scantlings of covers are not to be less than the rule thickness for the deck at that point. Where other materials are used, equivalent scantlings are to be provided. The scantlings apply basically to rectangular covers, with the stiffening members arranged primarily in one direction and carrying a uniformly distributed load. The covers are assumed to be simply supported. Where covers are stiffened by a grillage formation, and also where point loads are applied to any type of cover, the scantlings are to be determined from direct calculations.

2.1.4 In the case of flush hatch covers or of covers on coamings of lesser height than required by 2.3.1, their scantlings, the securing and sealing arrangements and the drainage of gutterways will be specially considered.

2.1.5 Where hatchways are trunked through one or more lower decks, and hatchway beams and covers are dispensed with at the intermediate decks, the hatchway beams, coamings and covers immediately below the trunk are to be adequately strengthened. Plans are to be submitted for approval.

2.1.6 Small hatches, including escape hatches, are to be situated clear of RAS stores receiving areas and storing routes.

2.1.7 Where portable plates are required in decks for unshipping machinery, or for other similar reasons, they may be accepted provided they are of equivalent strength to the unpierced deck or the surrounding structure is suitably compensated. Portable plates are to be secured by gaskets and closely spaced bolts at a pitch not exceeding five diameters or equivalent naval standard.

## 2.2 Hatch coamings

2.2.1 The height of coamings above the upper surface of the weather deck, measured above sheathing if fitted, is to be not less than 300 mm. For exposed decks immediately above the design draft, e.g. quarter decks and well decks, coaming heights are to be no less than 600 mm. Coaming of a height no less than 450 mm may be provided if the hatch cover is kept closed and a small access hatch is provided in the hatch cover.

2.2.2 The height of coamings of hatchways closed by steel covers fitted with gaskets and clamping devices are to be as specified in 2.2.1, but may be reduced, or the coamings may be omitted entirely, if the safety of the ship is not thereby impaired in any sea condition. Special attention will be given in such cases to the scantlings of the covers, to their gasketing and securing arrangements and to the drainage of recesses in the deck.

2.2.3 The height of coamings may be required to be increased on ships where this is shown to be necessary by the stability and watertight subdivision calculations required by Ch 2,1.3.

2.2.4 Vertical coamings are to have a thickness,  $t$ , in mm not less than the greater of the following:

- (a)  $t = 0,008H_c \sqrt{k} + 1,0$  mm
- (b) Rule thickness of the deck in the position fitted where
  - $H_c$  = the coaming height
  - $k$  = local strength steel factor, see Pt 6, Ch 5.

2.2.5 Vertical coamings are to be stiffened at their upper edge by a substantial rolled or fabricated section. Additional support is to be arranged as necessary.

## 2.3 Manholes and flush escape hatches

2.3.1 Manholes are to be closed by substantial covers capable of being made watertight. The covers are to be permanently attached.

2.3.2 Flush escape hatches are to be closed by substantial watertight covers capable of being opened and closed from either side except for access to high security areas such as magazines or to prevent access from open decks as agreed with the Naval Authority. The covers are to be permanently attached.

## 2.4 Hatchways within enclosed superstructures or lower decks

2.4.1 The requirements of this Section are to be complied with where it is necessary to maintain the weathertight envelope.

2.4.2 Access hatches within a superstructure or deck-house need not be provided with means for closing if all openings in the surrounding bulkheads have weathertight closing appliances.

## 2.5 Magazine blow out plates

2.5.1 Where blow out plates are required they are to be secured by sealing arrangements adequate to meet the weathertightness and operational requirements. They are to be of an equivalent strength to the deck in which they are fitted.

2.5.2 Blow out plates are to be permanently attached.

## Section 3 Doors and accesses on weather decks

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 Access openings in:

- (a) superstructure bulkheads;
- (b) deckhouses protecting openings leading into enclosed superstructures or to spaces below the weather deck; and
- (c) deckhouse on a deckhouse protecting an opening leading to a space below the weather deck,

are to be fitted with doors of steel or other equivalent material, permanently and strongly attached to the bulkhead and framed, stiffened and fitted so that the whole structure is of equivalent strength to the unpierced bulkhead, and weathertight when closed. The doors are to be gasketed and secured weathertight by means of clamping devices or equivalent arrangements, permanently attached to the bulkhead or to the door. Doors are generally to open outwards and are to be capable of being operated and secured from both sides. The sill heights are to be as required by 3.1.3 and 3.1.4.

3.1.2 Fixed lights in doors are to comply with the requirements for side scuttles lights as given in 5.1. Hinged steel deadlights may be external.

3.1.3 The height of doorway sills above the weather deck sheathing, if fitted, is to be not less than 300 mm.

3.1.4 For exposed decks immediately above the design draught, e.g. quarter decks and well decks, sill heights are to be no less than 450 mm.

# Closing Arrangements and Outfit

# Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 4

Sections 3 & 4

3.1.5 When the closing appliances of openings in superstructures and deckhouses do not comply with 3.1.1, interior deck openings are to be treated as if exposed on the weather deck.

3.1.6 The height of door sills may be required to be increased on ships where this is shown to be necessary by the stability and watertight subdivision calculations required by Ch 2, 1.2.

3.1.7 Where portable plates are required for unshipping machinery, or for other similar reasons, they may be accepted provided they are of equivalent strength to the unpierced bulkhead and are secured by gaskets and close spaced bolts at a pitch not exceeding five diameters or equivalent naval standard.

3.1.8 The sill heights of accesses closed by covers which are secured by closely spaced bolts or otherwise kept permanently closed at sea will be specially considered.

3.1.9 Special consideration will be given to access on the weatherdeck where for operational purposes it is not possible to provide a sill meeting 3.1.3 or 3.1.4.

## 3.2 Magazine blow out plates

3.2.1 Where blow out plates are required, they are to be secured by sealing arrangements adequate to meet the weathertightness and operational requirements. They are to be of an equivalent strength to the deck in which they are fitted.

3.2.2 Blow out plates are to be permanently attached.

## Section 4 Side lights and windows

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Side scuttles are defined as being round or oval openings with an area not exceeding 0,16 m<sup>2</sup>.

4.1.2 Windows are defined as being rectangular openings generally, and round or oval openings with an area exceeding 0,16 m<sup>2</sup>.

4.1.3 A plan showing the location of side lights and windows is to be submitted.

4.1.4 Side lights and windows together with their glasses and deadlights if fitted, are to be of an approved design or in accordance with recognised Naval Authority requirements.

4.1.5 Side lights to spaces within enclosed superstructures, or deckhouses on or above the weather deck are to be fitted with efficient, hinged, inside deadlights and capable of being effectively closed and secured watertight.

4.1.6 All side lights are to be of the non-opening type.

4.1.7 Windows should not generally be fitted in end bulkheads of superstructures.

4.1.8 If fitted in a deckhouse or superstructures in the forward 0,25L<sub>R</sub>, windows are to be provided with strong, hinged, steel, weathertight storm covers. However, if there is an opening leading below deck, this opening is to be treated as being on an exposed deck and is to be protected as required by 2.2.1.

4.1.9 Side lights and windows set inboard from the shell on the weather deck, protecting direct access below, are either to be provided with strong permanently attached deadlights or, where they are accessible, strong permanently attached external steel storm covers instead of internal deadlights.

4.1.10 Side lights and windows set inboard from the shell on the weather deck, not protecting direct access below, do not require deadlights or storm covers.

4.1.11 Cabin bulkheads and doors are considered to provide effective protection between side lights or windows and access below.

4.1.12 Where windows are permitted in an exposed bulkhead on the weather deck in the forward 0,25L<sub>R</sub>, strong external storm covers which may be portable and stored adjacent are to be provided.

4.1.13 Where the bridge is on, or not more than 5,0 m above, the weather deck in lieu of storm covers being provided for the bridge windows, a weathertight cover, fitted to a coaming of not less than 230 mm in height around the internal stairway opening within the bridge, may be accepted. If this arrangement is accepted, adequate means of draining the bridge are to be provided.

4.1.14 If necessary, for practical considerations, the storm covers may be in two parts.

4.1.15 Laminated toughened safety glass may also be used for windows but the total thickness will need to be greater than that required for the equivalent sized window using monolithic toughened safety glass. The equivalent thickness of laminated toughened safety glass is to be determined from the following formula:

$$T_{L1}^2 + T_{L2}^2 + \dots T_{Ln}^2 = T_S^2$$

where

$n$  = number of laminates

$T_L$  = thickness of glass laminate

$T_S$  = Rule thickness of toughened safety glass.

Alternative arrangements that do not meet the above thickness requirement will be specially considered, provided that equivalent strength and bending stiffness to that of a single, thermally toughened pane of thickness  $T_S$  can be demonstrated in a four-point bending test in accordance with EN-ISO 1288-3 or an equivalent recognised National or International Standard, using no fewer than ten samples. The lower limit of the 90 per cent confidence level interval for the laminated pane shall not be less than the same for monolithic toughened safety glass. Small scale punch test or ring-in-ring test methods shall not be used.

4.1.16 Rubber frames are not acceptable for windows.

## Section 5 Ventilators

### 5.1 Application

5.1.1 This Section applies to all ship types and provides requirements for ventilators. Reference should be made to any additional or alternative standards that are specified by the Naval Authority which will also be considered. Details are to be submitted.

5.1.2 For requirements regarding down flooding in connection with stability and watertight subdivision, see Ch 2, 1.3.

### 5.2 Protection

5.2.1 In all spaces where mechanical damage is likely, all air and sounding pipes, scuppers and discharges, including their valves, controls and indicators, are to be well protected. This protection is to be of steel or other equivalent material.

### 5.3 General

5.3.1 Special care is to be taken in the design and positioning of ventilator openings and coamings, particularly in the region of the forward end of superstructures and other points of high stress. The deck plating in way of the coamings is to be efficiently stiffened.

5.3.2 Ventilators from tunnels passing through decks are to have scantlings suitable for withstanding the pressures to which they may be subjected and are to be made watertight.

### 5.4 Coamings

5.4.1 The scantlings and height of ventilator coamings exposed to the weather are to be not less than required by Table 4.5.1 but the thickness need not exceed that of the adjacent deck or bulkhead plating. In particularly exposed positions, the height of coamings and scantlings may be required to be increased.

5.4.2 The height of ventilator coamings may be required to be increased on ships where this is shown to be necessary by the stability and watertight subdivision calculations required by Pt 1, Ch 1, 1.1. The Naval Authority may require that the height of all ventilator coamings are above the  $\theta_{df}$  angle, see Ch 1, 1.2.

5.4.3 For gooseneck ventilators, the coaming height is to be measured to the underside of the bend, this being the lowest point through which water on deck could pass freely to spaces below.

**Table 4.5.1 Ventilator coaming requirements**

Feature	Requirements
Height (measured above sheathing if fitted)	(1) $z_c = 900$ mm for locations defined in Note 2  $z_c = 760$ mm elsewhere
Thickness	(2) $t_c = 5,5 + 0,01 d_v$ mm where $7,5 \text{ mm} \leq t_c \leq 10,0$ mm
Support	(3) If $z_c > 900$ mm the coaming is to be specially supported
Symbols	
$t_c$ = thickness of coaming, in mm $z_c$ = height of coaming, in mm $d_v$ = internal diameter of coaming, in mm	
<b>NOTES</b> 1. Where the height of the ventilator exceeds that given in Item (1), the thickness given by (2) may be gradually reduced, above that height, to a minimum of 6,5 mm. The ventilator is to be adequately stayed. 2. For exposed decks immediately above the design waterline, e.g. quarter decks and well decks.	

5.4.4 Where wall vents are fitted with an internal baffle which rises above the lower edge of the exterior opening, the coaming height is measured to the top of the baffle.

5.4.5 Ventilator coaming heights may be reduced on ships assigned a service area notation **SA4**. Coaming heights are to be as high as practicable, with a minimum height of 300 mm.

### 5.5 Closing appliances

5.5.1 All ventilator openings are to be provided with efficient weathertight closing appliances of steel or other equivalent material unless the height of the coaming is greater than 2,5 m above the weather deck or 5 m on exposed deck immediately above the design waterline, e.g. quarter decks and well decks.

5.5.2 Where ventilators are proposed to be led overboard through an enclosed lower deck space the closing arrangements are to be submitted for approval. If such ventilators are led overboard more than 4,5 m above the damage control deck, closing appliances may be omitted, provided that satisfactory baffles and drainage arrangements are provided, as in the case of air intakes or exhaust openings for machinery spaces, which may be arranged in the sides of the ship.

5.5.3 Mushroom ventilators closed by a head revolving on a centre spindle (screw-down head) are acceptable, but the diameter is not to exceed 300 mm.

5.5.4 Mushroom ventilators with a fixed head and closed by a screw-down plate (screw-down cover) may be accepted up to a diameter of 750 mm within the forward  $0,25L_R$ .

5.5.5 Wall ventilators (jalousies) may be accepted provided they are capable of being closed weathertight by hinged steel gasketed covers secured by bolts or toggles.

# Closing Arrangements and Outfit

# Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 4

Sections 5, 6 & 7

5.5.6 A ventilator head not forming part of the closing arrangements is to be not less than 6,5 mm thick.

## 5.6 Machinery spaces

5.6.1 In general, ventilators necessary to supply the machinery space continuously are to have coamings of sufficient height to comply with 5.5.1 without having to fit weathertight closing appliances. Ventilators to emergency generator rooms are to be so positioned that closing appliances are not required.

5.6.2 Where due to ship size and arrangement this is not practicable, lesser heights for machinery space ventilator coamings fitted with weathertight closing appliances may be permitted by the Naval Authority in combination with other suitable arrangements to ensure uninterrupted, adequate supply of ventilation to these spaces.

## Section 6 Air pipes

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 Air and sounding pipes are to comply with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 2,10.

6.1.2 Striking plates of suitable thickness, or their equivalent, are to be fitted under all sounding pipes.

6.1.3 Air pipes are to be situated clear of areas where damage may occur, such as RAS landing areas and store routes or helicopter decks.

### 6.2 Height of air pipes

6.2.1 The height of air pipes from the upper surface of decks exposed to the weather, to the point where water may have access below is normally to be not less than:

- 760 mm on exposed decks immediately above the design draught, e.g. quarter decks and well decks.
- 450 mm measured above deck sheathing, where fitted elsewhere.

6.2.2 Lower heights may be approved in cases where these are essential for the working of the ship, provided that the design and arrangements are otherwise satisfactory. In such cases, efficient, permanently attached closing appliances as required by 6.3.1 are to be of an approved automatic type.

6.2.3 The height of air pipes may be required to be increased on ships where this is shown to be necessary by the stability and watertight subdivision calculations required by Pt 1, Ch 1,1.1. An increase in height may also be required or recommended by Naval Authorities when air pipes to fuel oil and settling tanks are situated in positions where sea water could be temporarily entrapped, e.g. in recesses in the sides and ends of superstructures or deckhouses, between hatch ends, behind high sections of bulwark, etc. This may entail an increase in tank scantlings, see also Pt 6, Ch 3.

6.2.4 Air pipes are generally to be led to an exposed deck. See also Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 2,10.4.4.

6.2.5 Where air pipes are led through the side of superstructures, the opening is to be at least 2,3 m above the design waterline.

6.2.6 The minimum wall thickness of air pipes in positions indicated in 6.2.1 is to be:

- 6,0 mm for pipes of 80 mm external diameter or smaller.
- 8,5 mm for pipes of 165 mm external diameter or greater.

Intermediate minimum thicknesses are to be determined by linear interpolation.

6.2.7 Air pipe coaming heights may be reduced on ships assigned a service area notation **SA4**. Coaming heights are to be as high as practicable, with a minimum height of 300 mm.

## 6.3 Closing appliances

6.3.1 All openings of air and sounding pipes are to be provided with permanently attached, satisfactory means of closing to prevent the free entry of water (see also 6.2.2 and Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 2,10.6.2).

6.3.2 Closing appliances are to be of an approved automatic type.

## Section 7 Scuppers and sanitary discharges

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 Scuppers sufficient in number and size to provide effective drainage are to be fitted in all decks.

7.1.2 Scuppers draining weather decks and spaces within superstructures or deckhouses not fitted with efficient weathertight doors are to be led overboard.

7.1.3 Where the freeboard is such that the deck edge forming the vertical limit of watertight integrity is immersed when the ship heels 5° or less, scuppers and discharges which drain spaces below this deck, or spaces within intact superstructures or deckhouses on this deck fitted with efficient weathertight doors, are to be led to the bilges in the case of scuppers or to suitable sanitary tanks in the case of sanitary discharges. Where the freeboard is such that the deck edge forming the vertical limit of watertight integrity is immersed when the ship heels greater than 5° then they may be led overboard and fitted with means of preventing water from passing inboard in accordance with 7.2.



**7.1.4** In ships where an approved fixed pressure water spray fire-extinguishing system is fitted in vehicle, magazines or hangar spaces, deck scuppers of not less than 150 mm diameter are to be provided port and starboard, spaced about 9,0 m apart. Where the design capacity of the drencher system exceeds an application of water at a rate 5 litres per square metre of deck area by 10 per cent or more, the scupper area will require to be increased accordingly. After installation the two adjacent sections with the greatest aggregate drencher capacity are to be tested in operation to ensure that there is no build-up of water on the deck. The mouth of the scupper is to be protected by bars.

**7.1.5** Where a sewage system is fitted, the shipside valves on the discharge pipe from the effluent tank(s) and the by-pass system are to comply with 7.2.

**7.1.6** The minimum wall thickness of pipes not indicated in 7.2.6 is to be:

- 4,5 mm for pipes of 155 mm external diameter or smaller.
- 6,0 mm for pipes of 230 mm external diameter or greater.

Intermediate minimum thicknesses are to be determined by linear interpolation.

**7.1.7** For the use of non-metallic pipe, see Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 1,11.

**7.1.8** Scuppers and discharge pipes should not normally pass through oil fuel tanks. Where scuppers and discharge pipes pass, unavoidably, through oil fuel tanks, and are led through the shell within the tanks, the thickness of the piping should be at least the same thickness as Rule shell plating in way, derived from the appropriate Chapters, but need not exceed 19 mm.

**7.1.9** Piping within tanks is to be tested in accordance with the Naval Ship Survey Procedures Manual.

**7.1.10** All piping is to be adequately supported.

## 7.2 Closing appliances

**7.2.1** In general, each separate overboard discharge is to be fitted with a screw-down non-return valve capable of being operated from a position always accessible and above the damage control deck. An indicator is to be fitted at the control position showing whether the valve is open or closed. A machinery space, whether manned or unattended (i.e. with **UMS** notation), is considered accessible. Spaces with access only by bolted manholes are not considered accessible.

**7.2.2** Where an approved fire pressure waterspray fire-extinguishing system is provided in an enclosed vehicle space, magazines or hangar spaces, the scupper controls are to be operated from a position above the damage control deck, and outside the space protected by the fire-extinguishing system, and are to be protected from mechanical damage.

**7.2.3** Where the vertical distance from the design draught to the inboard end of the discharge pipe exceeds  $0,01L_R$  the discharge may be fitted with two automatic non-return valves without positive means of closing, instead of the screw-down non-return valve, provided that the inboard valve is always accessible for examination under service conditions.

**7.2.4** Where the vertical distance from the design waterline to the inboard end of the discharge pipe exceeds  $0,02L_R$ , a single automatic non-return valve without positive means of closing may be fitted, see Fig. 4.7.1.

**7.2.5** The requirements for non-return valves are applicable only to those discharges which remain open during the normal operation of the ship. For discharges which are closed at sea, a single screw-down valve operated from the weather deck is considered to provide sufficient protection.

**7.2.6** Scuppers and discharge pipes originating at any level which penetrate the shell either more than 450 mm below the deck forming the vertical limit of watertight integrity or less than 600 mm above the deep draught waterline, are to be fitted with an automatic non-return valve at the shell. This valve, unless required by 7.1.3, may be omitted provided the piping has a minimum wall thickness of:

- 7,0 mm for pipes of 80 mm external diameter or smaller.
- 10,0 mm for pipes of 180 mm external diameter.
- 12,5 mm for pipes of 220 mm external diameter or greater.

Intermediate minimum thicknesses are to be determined by linear interpolation. Unless required by 7.1.8, the maximum thickness need not exceed 12,5 mm.

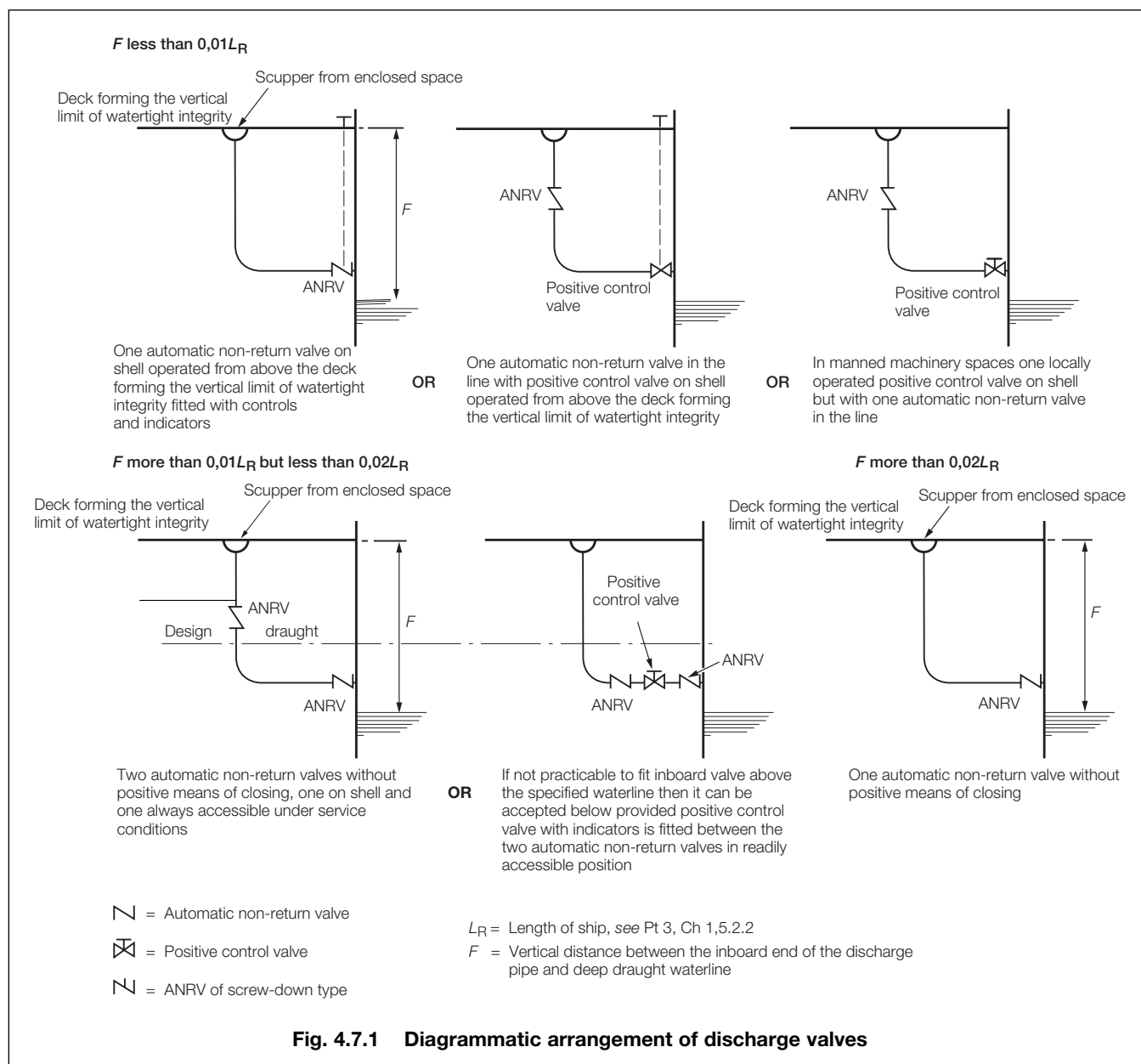
**7.2.7** The outboard valve is to be mounted directly on the shell and secured in accordance with Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 1. If this is impracticable, a short distance piece of rigid construction may be introduced between the valve and the shell.

**7.2.8** If a valve is required by 7.1.3, this valve should preferably be fitted as close as possible to the point of entry of the pipe into the tank. If fitted below the weather deck, the valve is to be capable of being controlled from an easily accessible position above the weather deck. Local control is also to be arranged, unless the valve is inaccessible. An indicator is to be fitted at the control position showing whether the valve is open or closed.

**7.2.9** Valves for maintaining watertight integrity such as ship side valves and their fittings (other than those on scuppers and sanitary discharges), are to comply with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 1 and Ch 2.

## 7.3 Rubbish chutes and similar discharges

**7.3.1** Rubbish chutes and similar discharges should be constructed of mild steel piping or plating of shell thickness. Other materials will be specially considered. Openings are to be kept clear of the sheerstrake and areas of high stress concentration.



7.3.2 Rubbish chute hoppers are to be provided with a hinged weathertight cover at the inboard end with an interlock so that the discharge flap and hopper cover cannot be open at the same time. The hopper cover is to be secured closed when not in use, and a suitable notice displayed at the control position.

7.3.3 Where the inboard end of the hopper is less than  $0,01L_R$  above the design draught, a suitable valve with positive means for closing is to be provided in addition to the cover and flap in an easily accessible position above the design draught. The valve is to be controlled from a position adjacent to the hopper and provided with an open/shut indicator. The valve is to be kept closed when not in use, and a suitable notice displayed at the valve operating position.

## 7.4 Materials for valves, fittings and pipes

7.4.1 All shell fittings and valves required by 7.2 are to be of steel, bronze or other approved ductile material; ordinary cast iron or similar material is not acceptable. Materials are to satisfy the requirements of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials*.

7.4.2 All these items, if made of steel or other approved material with low corrosion resistance, are to be suitably protected against wastage.

7.4.3 The lengths of pipe attached to the shell fittings, elbow pieces or valves are to be of galvanised steel or other equivalent approved material.

## Section 8 Bulwarks, guard rails, raised walkways and other means for the protection of crew and embarked personnel

### 8.1 General requirements

8.1.1 Bulwarks or guard rails are to be provided at the boundaries of exposed decks. Bulwarks or guard rails are to be not less than 1,0 m in height measured above sheathing, and are to be constructed as required by this Section. Consideration will be given to cases where this height would interfere with the normal operation of the ship. Guard rails provided around aircraft operating areas may be of the type which drop outwards with nets to the satisfaction of the Naval Authority, provided access is restricted to essential personnel. Where bulwarks or rails are undesirable, e.g. for radar signature purposes, alternative equivalent arrangements will require to be provided.

8.1.2 The freeing arrangements in bulwarks are to be in accordance with 8.3.

8.1.3 Guard rails fitted on superstructure and exposed decks are to have at least three courses. The opening below the lowest course of guard rails is not to exceed 230 mm. The other courses are to be spaced not more than 380 mm apart. In the case of ships with rounded gunwales, the guard rail supports are to be placed on the flat of the deck. In other locations, guard rails with at least two courses are to be fitted.

8.1.4 Raised walkways which form evacuation routes or assembly areas, or provide for the transfer of heavy equipment, stores or munitions are to comply with the requirements of 8.5.

8.1.5 Guard rails are to be fitted with fixed, removable or hinged stanchions fitted no more than 1,5 m apart. Removable or hinged stanchions shall be capable of being locked in the upright position.

8.1.6 At least every third stanchion is to be supported by a stay.

8.1.7 Where necessary for the normal operation of the ship, steel wire ropes may be accepted in lieu of guard rails. Wires are to be made taut by means of turnbuckles. Chains are only permitted in short lengths in way of access openings.

8.1.8 Satisfactory means, in the form of guard rails, life-lines, handrails, gangways, underdeck passageways or other equivalent arrangements, are to be provided for the protection of the crew and embarked personnel in getting to and from their quarters, the machinery space and all other parts used in the necessary operation of the ship. Where a well-lighted and ventilated underdeck passage (clear opening 0,8 m wide, 2 m high) is provided it is to be as close as practicable to the weather deck, connecting and providing access to the following locations:

- between superstructures;
- from forward and aft superstructures to the fore end and aft end respectively.

8.1.9 Gangways or walkways may be omitted on ships assigned a service area notation **SA4**.

### 8.2 Bulwark construction

8.2.1 Plate bulwarks are to be stiffened by a strong rail section and supported by stays from the deck. The spacing of these stays forward of  $0,93L_R$  is to be not more than 1,2 m. Elsewhere, bulwark stays are to be not more than 1,83 m apart. Where bulwarks are cut to form a gangway or other opening, stays of increased strength are to be fitted at the ends of the openings. Bulwarks are to be adequately strengthened in way of eyeplates for RAS points, and in way of mooring pipes the plating is to be doubled or increased in thickness and adequately stiffened.

8.2.2 Bulwarks should not be cut for gangway or other openings near the breaks of superstructures, and are also to be arranged to ensure their freedom from main structural stresses. See shell plating in appropriate Chapters.

8.2.3 The section modulus,  $Z$ , at the bottom of the bulwark stay is to be not less than:

$$Z = (33,0 + 0,44L) h^2 s \text{ cm}^3$$

where

$h$  = height of bulwark from the top of the deck plating to the top of the rail, in metres

$s$  = spacing of the stays, in metres, in accordance with 9.2.1

$L_R$  = length of ship, in metres (as defined in Ch 1,5.1), but to be not greater than 100 m.

8.2.4 In the calculation of the section modulus, only the material connected to the deck is to be included. The bulb or flange of the stay may be taken into account where connected to the deck, and where, at the ends of the ship, the bulwark plating is connected to the sheerstrake, a width of plating not exceeding 600 mm may also be included. The free edge of the stay is to be stiffened.

8.2.5 Bulwark stays are to be supported by, or to be in line with, suitable underdeck stiffening, which is to be connected by double continuous fillet welds in way of the bulwark stay connection.

### 8.3 Freeing arrangements

8.3.1 The following requirements are applicable to all ship types.

8.3.2 Where bulwarks on the weather decks or superstructure decks form wells, ample provision is to be made for rapidly freeing the decks of large quantities of water by means of freeing ports, and also for draining them.

8.3.3 The minimum freeing area on each side of the ship, for each well on the weather deck is to be derived from the following formulae:

- (a) where the length,  $l$ , of the bulwark in the well is 20 m or less: area required =  $0,7 + 0,035l \text{ m}^2$

# Closing Arrangements and Outfit

# Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 4

Section 8

(b) where the length,  $l$ , exceeds 20 m, area required =  $0,07l \text{ m}^2$

$l$  need not be taken greater than  $0,7L_R$ , where  $L_R$  is the length of the ship as defined in Ch 1,5.2.

8.3.4 If the average height of the bulwark exceeds 1,2 m or is less than 0,9 m, the freeing area is to be increased or decreased, respectively, by  $0,004 \text{ m}^2$  per metre of length of well for each 0,1 m increase or decrease in height respectively.

8.3.5 The minimum freeing area for each well on a superstructure is to be half the area calculated from 8.3.3.

8.3.6 Two-thirds of the freeing port area required is to be provided in the half of the well nearest to the lowest point of the sheer curve.

8.3.7 When the deck has little or no sheer, the freeing area is to be spread along the length of the well.

8.3.8 In ships with no sheer the freeing area as calculated from 8.3.3 is to be increased by 50 per cent. Where the sheer is less than the standard, as given in Table 4.8.1, the percentage is to be obtained by linear interpolation.

**Table 4.8.1 Standard sheer profile**

Position from A.P.	Ordinate (in mm)
A.P.	$25 \left( \frac{L_R}{3} + 10 \right)$
$0,16L_R$	$11,1 \left( \frac{L_R}{3} + 10 \right)$
$0,33L_R$	$2,8 \left( \frac{L_R}{3} + 10 \right)$
$0,5L_R$	0
$0,67L_R$	$5,6 \left( \frac{L_R}{3} + 10 \right)$
$0,83L_R$	$22,2 \left( \frac{L_R}{3} + 10 \right)$
F.P.	$50 \left( \frac{L_R}{3} + 10 \right)$
<b>NOTES</b> 1. Sheer is measured from the deck at side to a line drawn parallel to the keel through the sheer line amidships. 2. In ships with a rake of keel, the sheer is measured in relation to a reference line drawn parallel to the design waterline.	

8.3.9 Where the length of the well is less than 10 m, or where a deckhouse occupies most of the length, the freeing port area will be specially considered but in general need not exceed 10 per cent of the bulwark area.

8.3.10 Where it is not practical to provide sufficient freeing port area in the bulwark, particularly in small ships, credit can be given for bollard and fairlead openings where these extend to the deck.

8.3.11 Where a deckhouse has a breadth less than 80 per cent of the beam of the ship, or the width of the side passages exceeds 1,5 m, the arrangement is considered as one well. Where a deckhouse has a breadth equal to or more than 80 per cent of the beam,  $B$ , of the ship, or the width of the side passages does not exceed 1,5 m, or when a screen bulkhead is fitted across the full breadth of the ship, this arrangement is considered as two wells, before and abaft the deckhouse.

8.3.12 Suitable provision is also to be made for the rapid freeing of water from recesses formed by superstructures and deckhouses, etc., in which water may be shipped and trapped. Deck gear is not to be stowed in such a manner as to obstruct unduly the flow of water to freeing ports.

8.3.13 The lower edges of freeing ports are to be as near to the deck as practicable, and should not be more than 100 mm above the deck.

8.3.14 Where freeing ports are more than 230 mm high, vertical bars spaced 230 mm apart may be accepted as an alternative to a horizontal rail to limit the height of the freeing port.

8.3.15 Where shutters are fitted, the pins or bearings are to be of a non-corrodible material, with ample clearance to prevent jamming. The hinges are to be within the upper third of the port. Shutters are not to be fitted with securing appliances.

8.3.16 All ships are to have open rails for at least half the length of the exposed part of the weather deck. Alternatively, if a continuous bulwark is fitted, the minimum freeing area is to be at least 33 per cent of the total area of the bulwark. The freeing area is to be placed in the lower part of the bulwark.

8.3.17 In ships having superstructures which are open at either or both ends to wells formed by bulwarks on the open deck, adequate provision for freeing the open spaces are to be provided as follows:

The freeing port area,  $A_w$  for the open well:

$$A_w = (0,07l_w + A_c) (S_c) \left( \frac{0,5h_s}{h_w} \right)$$

The freeing port area,  $A_s$  for the open superstructure:

$$A_s = (0,07l_t) (S_c) \left( \frac{b_o}{l_t} \left( 1 - \left( \frac{l_w}{l_t} \right)^2 \right) \left( \frac{0,5h_s}{h_w} \right) \right)$$

where

$l_w$  = the length of the open deck enclosed by bulwarks, in metres

$l_s$  = the length of the common space within the open superstructure, in metres

$l_t$  =  $l_w + l_s$  but if 20 m or less then the freeing area is to be calculated in accordance with 8.3.3(a)

$S_c$  = sheer correction factor, maximum 1,5 as defined in 8.3.8

$b_o$  = breadth of openings in the end bulkhead of the enclosed superstructure, in metres

$h_w$  = distance of the well deck above the freeboard deck, in metres

$h_s$  = one standard superstructure height

$h_b$  = actual height of the bulwark, in metres.

$A_c$  = bulwark height correction factor taken as;  
= 0 for bulwarks between 0,9 and 1,2 m in height

$$= 0,004l_w \left( \frac{(h_b - 1,2)}{1,0} \right) m^2$$

for bulwarks of height greater than 1,2 m, and

$$= 0,004l_w \left( \frac{(h_b - 0,9)}{1,0} \right) m^2$$

for bulwarks of height less than 0,9 m.

To adjust the freeing port area for the distance of the well deck above the weatherdeck, for decks located more than  $0,5h_s$  above the weatherdeck, multiply by the factor  $0,5 (h_s/h_w)$ .

8.3.18 Where a ship operates for extended periods in a cold weather environment, see Pt 5, Ch 2,4.2.3, closing devices fitted to freeing port arrangements are to remain effective. The arrangement will be specially considered.

## 8.4 Free flow area

8.4.1 The effectiveness of the freeing port area in bulwarks of vessels not fitted with a continuous deck obstruction, depends on the free flow across the deck.

8.4.2 The free flow area is the net total longitudinal area of the transverse passageways or gaps between hatchways and superstructures or deckhouses, due account being made for any obstructions such as equipment or other fittings. The height of passageways or gaps used in the calculation of the area is the height of the bulwark.

## 8.5 Walkways

8.5.1 Walkways are to be designed to an appropriate National or International Standard agreed with LR and the Naval Authority.

8.5.2 Plans are to be submitted showing the proposed scantlings and arrangements of the structure.

8.5.3 The design loads used are to be as given in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.3.1. Where it is intended that the walkway be used for the transfer or storage of equipment or other substantial items the design loads are to be agreed between LR and the Naval Authority considering the loads given in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.3.1.

8.5.4 For the design of the supporting structure of walkways, the applicable self weight of the walkway structure is to be added to the total load derived in 8.5.3.

## Section 9 Lagging and lining of structure

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 Suspended floors are to be fitted and secured in such a manner as to provide access to the structure and fittings below.

### 9.2 Removal for access

9.2.1 It is recommended that the cabin fittings and linings against the side of the ship be so fitted as to be capable of being removed when necessary. The method of attachment is not to impair the strength of the structural members.

9.2.2 Removable linings are to be fitted in areas prone to high structural degradation and areas that are critical to the structural integrity of the hull, to permit examination of these areas.

9.2.3 Decorative linings are to be manufactured of materials resistant to secondary fragmentation and combustion.

## Section 10 Lifting eyes

### 10.1 Application

10.1.1 The following Section covers the design appraisal, testing during construction and through-life inspection of lifting eyes, with a permissible loading of 2,5 tonnes or less, installed for the purposes of shipping and unshipping equipment and machinery, and where they do not form part of a lifting appliance. Where the requirements of this Section are complied with the optional notation **LE** may be assigned.

10.1.2 The Owner is to ensure that the eyes are located in appropriate locations to enable the shipping and unshipping of equipment and machinery.

### 10.2 Information to be submitted

10.2.1 The following documentation is to be submitted for approval:

- Documentation detailing the range of standard lifting points to be used, see 10.4.

10.2.2 The following information is also to be submitted:

- A register of all equipment and machinery which is required to be shipped or unshipped during service.
- Plans detailing the shipping and unshipping routes by compartment.
- A register of all lifting points specifying the detail type, tally information and test loads.

### 10.3 Materials

10.3.1 Materials are to be in accordance with an appropriate Standard agreed between LR and the Naval Authority.

# Closing Arrangements and Outfit

# Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 4

Section 10

## 10.4 Lifting points

10.4.1 Lifting eyes are to be manufactured in accordance with an appropriate Standard agreed between LR and the Naval Authority.

10.4.2 A range of standard lifting point detail designs are to be selected. The range of detail types is to be appropriate for the weight of equipment and machinery which is required to be shipped or unshipped and the method of transfer which is to be used. When considering the weight of equipment and machinery the weight of the lifting gear is to be included.

10.4.3 Each standard lifting point detail is to have the following information defined:

- Permissible loading – Vertical lift.
- Permissible loading – Along eye-plate 45 degrees lift (where applicable).
- Permissible loading – Across eye-plate 45 degrees lift (where applicable).
- Material of construction.
- Method of attachment to the ship's structure.
- Method of use.
- Manufacturer's test loads.

10.4.4 The safe working load (SWL) for each of the standard detail designs is to be validated by calculation. The design load to be applied is as follows:

- $2 \times \text{SWL}$  for the vertical lift case.
- $1,5 \times \text{SWL}$  for the 45 degree lift case.

The permissible stresses in Table 4.10.1 are not to be exceeded.

**Table 4.10.1 Permissible stresses**

	Permissible stress
Bending and direct stress	$0,8\sigma_0$
Shear stress	$0,5\sigma_0$
Combined stress	$0,9\sigma_0$
Symbols	
$\sigma_0$ = specified yield stress of the material, in N/mm <sup>2</sup>	

10.4.5 The weld stresses are also to be validated by calculation and confirmed as acceptable. For this purpose a factor of 0,7 is to be used.

## 10.5 Supporting structure

10.5.1 Lifting points are to be located at the intersection of structural members wherever possible.

10.5.2 The strength of the supporting structure is to be validated by calculation.

10.5.3 Where double tallying is used, see 10.6.2, the unused direction is to be checked at an angle of 45 degrees for a load 0,25 times the SWL.

## 10.6 Tallying

10.6.1 Each lifting point is to have a tally displayed which clearly defines the permissible methods of use and the permissible loading associated with each method.

10.6.2 In general, a lifting point will have a single tally all round capability or single tally vertical lift only. A double tally is only to be used where the supporting structure would be required to be strengthened to provide all round capability but where the planned method of use does not require all-round capability.

## 10.7 Testing

10.7.1 Each lifting eye is to be supplied with a Manufacturer's Test Certificate. A vertical lift and 45 degree lift test are to be carried out. The test load is to be  $2 \times \text{SWL}$  for the vertical lift arrangement and  $1,5 \times \text{SWL}$  for the 45 degree lift arrangement.

10.7.2 Once installed on board the ship, each lifting eye is to be load tested to  $2 \times \text{SWL}$  in the vertical direction. Documentation detailing the test loads and testing arrangement used is to be submitted to LR.

10.7.3 The weld attachment to the ship's structure of each lifting eye is to be visually inspected by a Surveyor. Where requested, Magnetic Particle Inspection is also to be carried out and the results are to be submitted to LR.

## 10.8 Inspection during service

10.8.1 A maintenance and inspection regime is to be developed in accordance with a recognised Standard (e.g., Merchant Shipping and Fishing Vessels (Lifting Operations and Lifting Equipment) Regulations 2006), documented and confirmed as being implemented by the attending Surveyor. As a minimum the procedure is to:

- Define the Standard or applicable legalisation which is used to define a Responsible Person;
- Nominate an appropriate Responsible Person or persons;
- Detail any training which the Responsible Person is to receive;
- Detail any qualifications which the Responsible Person is to hold;
- State that lifting points are to be inspected by a Responsible Person prior to and after use;
- Mandate that a record is kept of when each lifting point was last inspected and by whom;
- Authorise the Responsible Person to request that the lifting eye is to be load tested in accordance with 10.7.2 upon inspection;
- Authorise the Responsible Person to remove the item from service should they consider it appropriate to do so.



# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Sections 1, 2 & 3

### Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Equipment Number**
- 3 **Service area factors**
- 4 **Anchors**
- 5 **Anchor cable**
- 6 **Mooring ropes**
- 7 **Towing arrangements**
- 8 **Windlass and capstan design and testing**
- 9 **Structural details**
- 10 **Launch and recovery, berthing and docking arrangements**

### ■ Section 1 General

#### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The anchoring equipment specified in this Section is suitable for ships designed for unrestricted service.

#### 1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 The definitions for use throughout this Chapter are as indicated in the appropriate Section.

#### 1.3 Character of classification

1.3.1 For classification purposes the character figure **1**, or the character letter **E**, is to be assigned.

1.3.2 To entitle a ship to the character **1** in its classification symbol, equipment in accordance with the requirements of Sections 4, 5, 6, 8 and 9 is to be provided. The regulations governing the assignment of the character figure **1** for equipment are given in Pt 1, Ch 2.

1.3.3 Where Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') has agreed that anchoring and mooring equipment, as defined in 1.3.2, need not be fitted in view of the particular service of the ship, the character letter **E** will be assigned. See also Pt 1, Ch 2.

1.3.4 For ships intended to be operated only in suitable areas or conditions, other than those included in this Section, which have been agreed by LR, (as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,3.5) equipment differing from these requirements may be approved if considered suitable for the particular service on which the ship is to be engaged.

### ■ Section 2 Equipment Number

#### 2.1 Equipment Number calculation

2.1.1 The anchoring and mooring equipment specified in this Section is based on an 'Equipment Number' which is to be calculated as follows:

$$\text{Equipment Number} = \Delta^{2/3} + 2,5A_t + A/10$$

where

$A$  = area, in  $m^2$ , in profile view, of the hull, superstructures, houses, masts, etc. above the design draught which are within the Rule length of the vessel and also have a breadth greater than  $B/4$ . See also 2.1.2

$A_t$  = transverse projected area, in  $m^2$ , of the hull and of all superstructures, houses, masts, etc., above the design draught

$\Delta$  = displacement, in tonnes, of the ship at its deep draft waterline.

2.1.2 Screens and bulwarks more than 1,5 m in height are to be regarded as parts of houses when determining  $A$ . Where a screen or bulwark is of varying height, the portion to be included is to be that length the height of which exceeds 1,5 m.

2.1.3 For ships which have a complex above water transverse profile due to the presence of large plated masts, mast trees, large radar equipment, etc., the equipment number may need to be specially considered.

#### 2.2 Novel ship design

2.2.1 Where a ship is of unusual form and proportions the requirement for equipment will be individually considered on the basis of the Rules.

### ■ Section 3 Service area factors

#### 3.1 General

3.1.1 For details of the service areas referred to in this Section, see Pt 5, Ch 2,2.2.

#### 3.2 Service Areas SA1, SA2, SA3, SA4, SAR

3.2.1 For ships designed to operate in any service area, the equipment is to be in accordance with the requirements of Tables 5.4.1 and 5.6.1.



# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Section 4

### ■ Section 4 Anchors

#### 4.1 General

4.1.1 The Rules are based on the use of high holding power (HHP) type anchors.

4.1.2 When ordinary holding power anchors are used as bower anchors, the mass given in Table 5.4.1 is to be increased by 33 per cent.

4.1.3 Where it is proposed to fit other types of anchor, the mass will be specially considered.

4.1.4 Ships are to be provided with the number of anchors specified in Table 5.4.1 which must be ready for immediate use. Where this is impractical, see 9.3.4, special consideration may be given to only having one anchor ready for immediate use.

4.1.5 Where a high degree of redundancy in propulsion and steering and where the engine can be brought to readiness quickly, consideration may be given to the fitting of a single anchor where Table 5.4.1 requires the fitting of two anchors, where acceptable to the Naval Authority.

4.1.6 Anchors are to be of an approved design. The design of all anchor heads is to be such as to minimise stress concentrations, and in particular, the radii on all parts of cast anchor heads are to be as large as possible, especially where there is considerable change of section.

4.1.7 Anchors which must be specially laid the right way up, or which require the fluke angle or profile to be adjusted for varying types of sea bed, will not generally be approved for normal ship use, but may be accepted for offshore units, floating cranes, etc. In such cases suitable tests may be required.

4.1.8 Where ships are required by the Naval Authority to be fitted with kedge anchors they are to be in accordance with Table 5.6.1.

#### 4.2 Manufacture and testing of anchors

4.2.1 The requirements for the manufacture, testing and certification of anchors are contained in Chapter 10 of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

#### 4.3 Anchor stowage

4.3.1 Anchors are generally to be housed in suitable hawse pipes, or stowed in dedicated chocks on deck.

4.3.2 Hawse pipes and anchor pockets are to be in accordance with 8.3. Alternatively, roller fairleads of suitable design may be fitted. Where hawse pipes are not fitted, alternative arrangements will be specially considered.

#### 4.4 High Holding Power (HHP) type anchors

4.4.1 Anchors of designs for which approval is sought as high holding power anchors are to be tested in accordance with Chapter 10 of the Rules for Materials.

#### 4.5 Super High Holding Power (SHHP) type anchors

4.5.1 Proposals to use anchors of the SHHP type will be subject to special consideration.

4.5.2 Final acceptance will be dependent upon satisfactory strength and performance tests.

4.5.3 Anchors of designs for which approval is sought as super high holding power anchors are to be tested at sea to show that they have holding powers of at least four times those of approved standard stockless anchors of the same mass.

#### 4.6 Tolerances

4.6.1 The mass of each bower anchor given in Table 5.4.1 is for anchors of equal mass. The masses of individual anchors may vary by  $\pm 7$  per cent of the masses given in the Table, provided that the total mass of the anchors is not less than would have been required for anchors of equal mass.

4.6.2 The mass of the head, including pins and fittings, of an ordinary stockless anchor is to be not less than 60 per cent of the total mass of the anchor.

4.6.3 When stocked bower or kedge anchors are to be used, the mass 'ex stock' is to be not less than 80 per cent of the mass given in Table 5.4.1 for ordinary stockless bower anchors and Table 5.6.1 for kedge anchors. The mass of the stock is to be 25 per cent of the total mass of the anchor, including the shackle, etc., but excluding the stock.

#### 4.7 Identification

4.7.1 Identification of anchors which have been tested is to be in accordance with Chapter 10 of the Rules for Materials.

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Section 4

**Table 5.4.1 Equipment – HHP Bower anchors and chain cables**

Equipment number		Equipment Letter	Stockless bower anchors		Stud link chain cables for bower anchors			
Exceeding	Not exceeding		Number	Mass of anchor, in kg	Total length, in metres	Diameter, in mm		
						Grade U1	Grade U2	Grade U3
50	70	A	2	135	220	14	12,5	–
70	90	B	2	180	220	16	14	–
90	110	C	2	225	247,5	17,5	16	–
110	130	D	2	270	247,5	19	17,5	–
130	150	E	2	315	275	20,5	17,5	–
150	175	F	2	360	275	22	19	–
175	205	G	2	428	302,5	24	20,5	–
205	240	H	2	495	302,5	26	22	20,5
240	280	I	2	585	330	28	24	22
280	320	J	2	675	357,5	30	26	24
320	360	K	2	765	357,5	32	28	24
360	400	L	2	855	385	34	30	26
400	450	M	2	968	385	36	32	28
450	500	N	2	1080	412,5	38	34	30
500	550	O	2	1193	412,5	40	34	30
550	600	P	2	1305	440	42	36	32
600	660	Q	2	1440	440	44	38	34
660	720	R	2	1575	440	46	40	36
720	780	S	2	1710	467,5	48	42	36
780	840	T	2	1845	467,5	50	44	38
840	910	U	2	1980	467,5	52	46	40
910	980	V	2	2138	495	54	48	42
980	1060	W	2	2295	495	56	50	44
1060	1140	X	2	2475	495	58	50	46
1140	1220	Y	2	2655	522,5	60	52	46
1220	1300	Z	2	2835	522,5	62	54	48
1300	1390	A†	2	3038	522,5	64	56	50
1390	1480	B†	2	3240	550	66	58	50
1480	1570	C†	2	3443	550	68	60	52
1570	1670	D†	2	3668	550	70	62	54
1670	1790	E†	2	3938	577,5	73	64	56
1790	1930	F†	2	4208	577,5	76	66	58
1930	2080	G†	2	4500	577,5	78	68	60
2080	2230	H†	2	4838	605	81	70	62
2230	2380	I†	2	5175	605	84	73	64
2380	2530	J†	2	5518	605	87	76	66
2530	2700	K†	2	5850	632,5	90	78	68
2700	2870	L†	2	6225	632,5	92	81	70
2870	3040	M†	2	6525	632,5	95	84	73
3040	3210	N†	2	6975	660	97	84	76
3210	3400	O†	2	7425	660	100	87	78
3400	3600	P†	2	7875	660	102	90	78
3600	3800	Q†	2	8325	687,5	105	92	81
3800	4000	R†	2	8775	687,5	107	95	84
4000	4200	S†	2	9225	687,5	111	97	87
4200	4400	T†	2	9675	715	114	100	87
4400	4600	U†	2	10125	715	117	102	90
4600	4800	V†	2	10575	715	120	105	92
4800	5000	W†	2	11025	742,5	122	107	95
5000	5200	X†	2	11550	742,5	124	111	97
5200	5500	Y†	2	12075	742,5	127	111	97
5500	5800	Z†	2	12675	742,5	130	114	100
5800	6100	A*	2	13350	742,5	132	117	102
6100	6500	B*	2	14100	742,5	–	120	107
6500	6900	C*	2	15000	770	–	124	111
6900	7400	D*	2	16125	770	–	127	114
7400	7900	E*	2	17250	770	–	132	117
7900	8400	F*	2	18375	770	–	137	122
8400	8900	G*	2	19500	770	–	142	127
8900	9400	H*	2	20625	770	–	147	132
9400	10000	I*	2	21750	770	–	152	132
10000	10700	J*	2	23250	770	–	157	137
10700	11500	K*	2	24750	770	–	157	142
11500	12400	L*	2	26625	770	–	162	147
12400	13400	M*	2	28875	770	–	–	152
13400	14600	N*	2	31500	770	–	–	157
14600	16000	O*	2	34500	770	–	–	162

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Sections 5 & 6

### ■ Section 5

#### Anchor cable

##### 5.1 General

5.1.1 Anchor cable may be of stud link chain, short link chain, wire rope or fibre rope, subject to the requirements of this Section.

##### 5.2 Chain cable

5.2.1 The length and diameter of chain cable is to be as indicated in Table 5.4.1.

5.2.2 Short link chain cable may be accepted provided that the breaking load is not less than that of stud link chain cable of the diameter required by Table 5.4.1.

5.2.3 Chain cables are to be steel in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 10 of the Rules for Materials.

5.2.4 Grade U1 material having a tensile strength of less than 400 N/mm<sup>2</sup> is not to be used in association with high holding power anchors. Grade U3 material is to be used only for chain 20,5 mm or more in diameter.

5.2.5 In addition to 5.2.3 special consideration will be given to the use of chain cable of alloy steel. Alloy steel is to be of a suitable type, details of which are to be submitted for consideration.

5.2.6 The form and proportion of links and shackles are to be in accordance with Chapter 10 of the Rules for Materials.

5.2.7 Where kedge anchors are used in association with chain cable, this cable may be either stud link or short link.

5.2.8 Test certificates issued in accordance with Chapter 10 of the Rules for Materials are to be signed by the Surveyors when the cables are placed on board the ship.

5.2.9 Arrangements are to be provided for the safe use of cable when mooring to a buoy, securing alongside hazardous or exposed jetties or preparing to be towed. Alternative arrangements to meet these requirements without the use of cable are to be submitted for consideration.

##### 5.3 Wire rope

5.3.1 Steel wire ropes are to be manufactured, tested and certified as required by Chapter 10 of the Rules for Materials.

##### 5.4 Cable clench

5.4.1 Provision is to be made for securing the inboard ends of the cables to the structure. This attachment should have a working strength of not less than 63,7 kN or 10 per cent of the breaking strength of the chain cable, whichever is the greater, and the structure to which it is attached is to be adequate for this load. Attention is drawn to the advantages of arranging that the cable may be slipped from an accessible position outside the chain cable locker. The proposed arrangement for slipping the chain cable, if constructed outside the chain locker, must be made watertight.

##### 5.5 Cable stopping and release arrangements

5.5.1 It is recommended that suitable bow chain stoppers be provided. The scantlings of these chain stoppers are outside the scope of the Rules, however the structure in way is to be designed with due regard to the applied loading. Support under chain stopping arrangements is to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

##### 5.6 Cable locker

5.6.1 Adequate storage is to be provided to accommodate the full length of anchor cable.

5.6.2 The chain locker is to be of a capacity and depth adequate to provide an easy direct lead for the cable into the chain pipes, when the cable is fully stowed. Chain or spurling pipes are to be of suitable size and provided with chafing lips. The port and starboard cables are to be separated by a division in the locker.

5.6.3 Chain lockers fitted abaft the collision bulkhead are to be weathertight and the space to be efficiently drained.

### ■ Section 6

#### Mooring ropes

##### 6.1 Mooring ropes

6.1.1 Ships under 90 m require mooring lines as specified in Table 5.6.1.

6.1.2 The lengths of individual mooring lines in Table 5.6.1 may be reduced by up to seven per cent of the Table length, provided that the total length of mooring lines is not less than would have resulted had all lines been of equal length. Proposals to fit individual mooring lines of reduced length to suit the particular service will be specially considered.

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Section 6

**Table 5.6.1 Equipment – Kedge anchors, wires and mooring lines**

Equipment Number		Equipment Letter	Mass of stockless kedge anchor, in kg	Kedge anchor wire or chain (1) & (2)		Mooring lines (2)		
Exceeding	Not Exceeding			Minimum length, in metres	Minimum breaking strength, in kN	Number	Minimum length of each line, in metres	Minimum breaking strength, in kN
50	70	A	68	110	46	3	80	34
70	90	B	90	110	58	3	100	37
90	110	C	113	124	75	3	110	39
110	130	D	135	124	90	3	110	44
130	150	E	158	138	90	3	120	49
150	175	F	180	138	122	3	120	54
175	205	G	214	151	106	3	120	59
205	240	H	248	151	140	4	120	64
240	280	I	292	165	166	4	120	69
280	320	J	338	179	195	4	140	74
320	360	K	383	179	225	4	140	78
360	400	L	428	193	257	4	140	88
400	450	M	484	193	292	4	140	98
450	500	N	540	206	328	4	140	108
500	550	O	597	206	328	4	160	123
550	600	P	653	220	366	4	160	132
600	660	Q	720	220	406	4	160	147
660	720	R	788	220	448	4	160	157
720	780	S	855	233	491	4	170	172
780	840	T	923	233	540	4	170	186
840	910	U	990	233	585	4	170	201
910	980	V	1069	248	635	4	170	216
980	1060	W	1148	248	685	4	180	230
1060	1140	X	1238	248	685	4	180	250
1140	1220	Y	1328	261	740	4	180	270
1220	1300	Z	1418	261	795	4	180	284
1300	1390	A †	1519	261	855	4	180	309
1390	1480	B †	1620	275	905	4	180	324
1480	1570	C †	1721	275	970	5	190	324
1570	1670	D †	1834	275	1030	5	190	333
1670	1790	E †	1969	289	1095	5	190	353
1790	1930	F †	2104	289	1155	5	190	378
1930	2080	G †	2250	289	1225	5	190	402
2080	2230	H †	2419	302	1290	5	200	422
2230	2380	I †	2588	302	1395	5	200	451
2380	2530	J †	2759	302	1505	5	200	480
2530	2700	K †	2925	316	1580	6	200	480
2700	2870	L †	3113	316	1690	6	200	490
2870	3040	M †	3263	316	1805	6	200	500
3040	3210	N †	3488	330	1805	6	200	520
3210	3400	O †	3713	330	1925	6	200	554
3400	3600	P †	3938	330	2045	6	200	588
3600	3800	Q †	4163	344	2130	6	200	618
3800	4000	R †	4388	344	2255	6	200	647
4000	4200	S †	4613	344	2340	7	200	647

**NOTES**

1. The rope used for kedge anchor wire is to be constructed of not less than 72 wires, made up into six strands.
2. Steel wire and fibre ropes used for mooring lines and kedge anchors are to meet the requirements of Ch 10,6 and 7 of the Rules for Materials respectively.
3. Wire ropes for mooring lines used in association with mooring winches (on which the rope is stored on the winch drum) are to be of suitable construction.
4. Irrespective of strength requirements, no fibre rope is to be less than 20 mm diameter.

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Section 6

6.1.3 Ships 90 m and over in length do not require mooring lines as a classification item. It is recommended, however, that the sum of the strengths of all the mooring lines supplied to such ships should be not less than the Rule breaking load of one anchor cable as required by Table 5.4.1, based on Grade U2 chain. On ships regularly using exposed berths, twice the above total strength of mooring ropes is desirable.

6.1.4 It is recommended that not less than four mooring lines be carried on ships exceeding 90 m in length, and not less than six mooring lines on ships exceeding 180 m in length. The length of mooring lines should be not less than 200 m, or the length of the ship, whichever is the lesser.

6.1.5 For ease of handling, fibre ropes should be not less than 20 mm diameter. All ropes having breaking strengths in excess of 736,0 kN and used in normal mooring operations are to be handled by, and stored on, suitably designed winches. Alternative methods of storing should give due consideration to the difficulties experienced in manually handling ropes having breaking strengths in excess of 490,0 kN.

### 6.2 Materials

6.2.1 Mooring lines may be of steel wire rope, natural fibre or synthetic fibre. The diameter, construction and specification of wire or natural fibre mooring lines are to comply with the requirements of Chapter 10 of the Rules for Materials. Where it is proposed to use synthetic fibre ropes, the size and construction will be specially considered.

6.2.2 The design loads applied to deck fittings by 6.6 relate to conventional fibre ropes (i.e. polypropylene, polyester and nylon). If other materials are used, i.e. HMPE, consideration should be given to the elongation properties and therefore the design load applied to deck fittings.

6.2.3 Wire rope mooring lines used in association with winches (on which the rope is stored on the winch drum) are to be of suitable construction.

### 6.3 Testing and certification

6.3.1 Mooring ropes are to be tested and certified in accordance with Chapter 10 of the Rules for Materials.

### 6.4 Bollards, fairleads and bull rings

6.4.1 Means are to be provided to enable mooring lines to be adequately secured on board ship.

6.4.2 It is recommended that the total number of suitably placed bollards on either side of the ship and/or the total brake holding power of mooring winches should be capable of holding not less than 1,5 times the sum of the maximum breaking strengths of the mooring lines required or recommended.

6.4.3 Bollards, fairleads and bull rings are to be located on longitudinals, beams and/or girders, which are part of the deck construction so as to facilitate efficient distribution of the mooring load. Other equivalent arrangements (Panama chocks, etc.) will be considered providing the strength is confirmed as adequate for the intended use.

6.4.4 It is recommended that shipboard fittings are selected in accordance with an Industry standard (e.g. ISO3913 Shipbuilding Welded Steel Bollards) accepted by the Society. When the shipboard fitting is not selected from an accepted Industry standard, the design load used to assess its strength and its attachment to the ship is to be in accordance with 6.6.3 and the design is to be submitted for approval.

6.4.5 The SWL of each shipboard fitting is not to exceed 80 per cent of the design load as per 6.6.3. It is to be marked (by weld bead or equivalent) on the deck fittings used for mooring. The SWL with its intended use is to be noted in the mooring arrangement plan or other information available on board for the guidance of the Master. These requirements for SWL apply for a single post basis (no more than one turn of one cable). The arrangement plan is to explicitly prohibit the use of mooring lines outside of their intended function.

### 6.5 Mooring winches

6.5.1 Mooring winches where provided are to be suitable for the intended purpose.

6.5.2 Mooring winches are to be fitted with drum brakes, the strength of which is sufficient to prevent unreeling of the mooring line when the rope tension is equal to 80 per cent of the breaking strength of the rope as fitted on the first layer on the winch drum.

### 6.6 Support structure of deck fittings

6.6.1 Plans are to be of sufficient detail for plan approval purposes. Plans covering the following items are to be submitted for approval:

- Strong points, bollards and fairleads, see 6.4.4.
- Support structure and foundations of towing equipment.

6.6.2 A mooring arrangements plan is to be submitted for information and is to include the following in respect of each shipboard fitting:

- Location on the ship.
- Fitting type.
- Safe working load (SWL).
- Purpose of fitting (mooring/harbour towing/escort towing).
- Manner of applying towing or mooring line load, including limiting fleet angles.

A mooring arrangement plan is to be provided on board the ship for the guidance of the Master.

6.6.3 The design load to be applied to the supporting structure of mooring fittings is to be 1,25 times the minimum breaking strength of the mooring line according to Table 5.6.1 for the ship's corresponding equipment number. If a greater design load is specified by the Naval Authority this load is to be used.

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Sections 6 & 7

6.6.4 The design load to be applied to the supporting structure of winches is to be 1,25 times the rated maximum holding power of the winch or the rated maximum pull power, whichever is greater.

6.6.5 The design load is to be applied according to the arrangement shown on the mooring arrangement plan. The point of action of the force on the fitting is to be taken as the point of attachment of the mooring line or towline or at a change in its direction. The total design load applied to a fitting need not be more than twice the design load, see Fig. 5.7.1.

6.6.6 The reinforced members (carling) beneath shipboard fittings are to be effectively arranged for any variation of direction (horizontally and vertically) of the mooring forces (which is to be not less than the design load) acting through the arrangement of connection to the shipboard fittings. Other arrangements will be specially considered, provided that the strength is confirmed as adequate for the service.

6.6.7 The stresses in shipboard fittings associated with mooring are not to exceed the specified minimum yield stress of the material in bending and 60 per cent of the specified minimum yield stress of the material in shear considering the design load.

## Section 7 Towing arrangements

### 7.1 Definition

7.1.1 Towing can be defined as either receiving motive assistance from, or rendering it to, another vessel.

### 7.2 Application

7.2.1 The towing arrangements specified in this Section are applicable to NS1, NS2 and NS3 category ships carrying the corresponding optional towing arrangement notation.

7.2.2 The strength of strong points, fittings and machinery are to be proof tested unless type approved.

7.2.3 In general, ships complying with the requirements of this Section will be eligible to be classed with the notation **TA1**, **TA2** or **TA3**.

7.2.4 **TA1** This notation will be assigned when an appraisal has been made of the towing arrangements and strength performance of the supporting structures in accordance with the Rules. This notation recognises the most severe weather conditions, see Tables 5.7.2 and 5.7.3.

7.2.5 **TA2** This notation will be assigned when an appraisal has been made of the towing arrangements and strength performance of the supporting structures in accordance with the Rules. This notation recognises weather conditions less severe than **TA1**, see Tables 5.7.2 and 5.7.3.

7.2.6 **TA3** This notation will be assigned when an appraisal has been made of the towing arrangements and strength performance of the supporting structures in accordance with the Rules. This notation recognises the least severe weather conditions, see Tables 5.7.2 and 5.7.3.

7.2.7 These three levels of towing arrangements in 7.2.4 to 7.2.6 recognise towing a ship of similar displacement at 6 knots in defined environmental conditions (see Table 5.7.3) and are appropriate for the weather conditions found in the equivalent service areas, i.e., **TA1** corresponds to the weather conditions found with service area notation **SA1**.

7.2.8 Where alternative requirements of the Navy or Naval Authority relating to the breaking load of the towing hawser required by Pt 3, Ch 5, 7.6.1 have been complied with, the ship will be entitled to the notation **TA(NS)**. These alternative requirements are to be clearly defined and referenced in the Certificate of Class. The load specified in the alternative is to replace the BL value given by the expression in 7.6.1.

7.2.9 Where the towline complies with the strength requirements of Table 5.7.1 as applicable to merchant ships for the related equipment number, the ship will be entitled to the assignment of the **TA(S)** notation. The breaking load specified in Table 5.7.1 is to replace the BL value given by the expression in 7.6.1.

7.2.10 Towing operations are to be in accordance with the towing, mooring and arrangements plan or equivalent information which is required to be placed on board. See 7.4.

### 7.3 Materials

7.3.1 Towing hawsers and towing pennants can be of steel wire rope, natural fibre or synthetic fibre. The diameter, construction and specification of steel wire or fibre towlines are to comply with Chapter 10 of the Rules for Materials. Where synthetic fibre ropes are used the size and construction will be specially considered.

7.3.2 Where a length of chafing chain is included in the arrangement it is to comply with Chapter 10 of the Rules for Materials.

7.3.3 The design loads applied to deck fittings by this Section relate to conventional fibre ropes (i.e. polypropylene, polyester and nylon). Consideration should be given to the elongation properties of the actual line used.

7.3.4 Wire ropes used in association with winches (on which the rope is stored on the winch drum) are to be of suitable construction.

### 7.4 Information required

7.4.1 Plans are to be of sufficient detail for plan approval purposes. Plans covering the following items are to be submitted for approval:

- Strong points, bollards and fairleads, see 7.5.7.
- Support structure and foundations of towing equipment.

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Section 7

**Table 5.7.1 Equipment – Minimum length and breaking strength of towlines**

Equipment number		Equipment Letter	Towline	
Exceeding	Not Exceeding		Minimum length, in metres	Minimum strength, in kN
50	70	A	180	98
70	90	B	180	98
90	110	C	180	98
110	130	D	180	98
130	150	E	180	98
150	175	F	180	98
175	205	G	180	112
205	240	H	180	129
240	280	I	180	150
280	320	J	180	174
320	360	K	180	207
360	400	L	180	224
400	450	M	180	250
450	500	N	180	277
500	550	O	190	306
550	600	P	190	338
600	660	Q	190	370
660	720	R	190	406
720	780	S	190	441
780	840	T	190	479
840	910	U	190	518
910	980	V	190	559
980	1060	W	200	603
1060	1140	X	200	647
1140	1220	Y	200	691
1220	1300	Z	200	738
1300	1390	A†	200	786
1390	1480	B†	200	836
1480	1570	C†	220	888
1570	1670	D†	220	941
1670	1790	E†	220	1024
1790	1930	F†	220	1109
1930	2080	G†	220	1168
2080	1130	H†	240	1259
1130	1380	I†	240	1356
1380	2530	J†	240	1453
2530	2700	K†	260	1471
2700	2870	L†	260	1471
2870	3040	M†	260	1471
3040	3210	N†	280	1471
3210	3400	O†	280	1471
3400	3600	P†	280	1471
3600	3800	Q†	300	1471
3800	4000	R†	300	1471
4000	4000	S†	300	1471
4000	4400	T†	300	1471
4400	4600	U†	300	1471
4600	5000	V†	300	1471
5000	5200	W†	300	1471
5200	5500	X†	300	1471
5500	5500	Y†	300	1471
5500	5800	Z†	300	1471
5800	6100	A*	300	1471

**Table 5.7.2 Design weather factors**

Applicable notation	Wind speed coefficient, $C_{mw}$	Weather factor, $K$
TA1	0,0150	8
TA2	0,0129	7,2
TA3	0,0108	6,3

**Table 5.7.3 Environmental conditions**

Beaufort Scale	Equivalent mean wind speed (knots)	Wind speed coefficient, $C_{mw}$	Weather factor, $K$
1–4	1–16	0,0025	3
5	17–21	0,0046	3,8
6	22–27	0,0067	4,7
7	28–33	0,0086	5,5
8	34–40	0,0108	6,3
9	41–47	0,0129	7,2
10+	48+	0,0150	8

7.4.2 The towing arrangement plan is to be submitted for information. It is to include the following in respect of each shipboard fitting:

- Location on the ship.
- Fitting type.
- Safe working load (SWL).
- Manner of applying towing line load, including limiting fleet angles.

The towing arrangement plan is to be provided on board the ship for the guidance of the Master.

### 7.5 Towing arrangements

7.5.1 A towing arrangement is to be provided at both the fore and aft end of the ship.

7.5.2 The fixed towing equipment is to comprise a securing arrangement which is a strong point and may be in the form of a stopper, bracket, deck clench or towing slip. A fairlead, rollers or other appropriate towline guides as necessary are to be included in the arrangement.

7.5.3 Loose towing equipment is to comprise a towing hawser and a towing pennant. The towing pennant may comprise a length of chafing chain. In the absence of a length of chafing chain suitable arrangements (e.g. a low friction sheath) are to be provided.

7.5.4 Fairleads and guides are to be designed so as to prevent excessive bending stress in the towing hawser, towing pennant or chafing chain, whichever is applicable. The bending ratio of the guides bearing surface to the diameter of the applicable towline element is not to be less than 7 to 1. For fibre rope towing hawsers and towing pennants the bending ratio is to comply with the rope manufacturer's specification.

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

### Section 7

7.5.5 The fairlead or guide is to have an opening large enough to allow the passage of the largest element of the loose towing equipment.

7.5.6 The fairlead or guide is to be fitted as close to the deck as practicable and in a position so that the tow will be approximately parallel to the deck when under tension between the strong point and the guide.

7.5.7 The selection of shipboard fittings is to be made by the shipyard in accordance with an acceptable National or International standard. If the shipboard fitting is not selected from an acceptable National or International standard then the design load used to assess its strength and its attachment to the ship is to be in accordance with the design load given in 7.6.3. The design is to be submitted for approval. Any weld, bolt or equivalent device connecting the shipboard fitting to the supporting structure is part of the shipboard fitting and is subject to the National or International standard applicable to that shipboard fitting.

7.5.8 Deck fittings and strong points are to be located on longitudinals, beams and/or girders, which are part of the deck construction so as to facilitate efficient distribution of the towing load. Other equivalent arrangements will be considered, providing the strength is confirmed as adequate for the intended use.

7.5.9 To avoid chafing, the arrangement is to be designed so that no element of the loose towing equipment, when under tension, is to contact with the ship's hull at any point other than those specified as a securing arrangement, fairlead or guide. The final point of contact of the towline with the ship is to be positioned as close as practicable to the centre line so as to reduce the adverse effect on manoeuvrability.

7.5.10 The chafing arrangement is to extend a minimum of 3 m outboard of the fairlead or guide when in the deployed position and 2 m inboard.

7.5.11 The loose towing equipment is to be located as near as practicable to the strong point and is to be designed to be capable of being rigged and deployed in the absence of power. It is recommended that extra loose gear meeting the requirements of this Section be carried on board to provide for redundancy.

7.5.12 The minimum length of the towing hawser is to be as given in Table 5.7.1.

7.5.13 Irrespective of strength requirements, no fibre rope is to be less than 20 mm in diameter.

7.5.14 The SWL of each shipboard fitting is to be clearly marked, by weld bead or equivalent, on each of the fittings used for towing, see 7.6.10.

## 7.6 Strength requirements for towing arrangements

7.6.1 The minimum Breaking Load (hereinafter referred to as *BL*) of the towing hawser, in tonnes, is not to be less than that calculated below:

$$BL = (0,03\Delta^{2/3} + (C_{mw}A_t)) K$$

where

$\Delta$  = displacement, in tonnes, to the deep draught waterline

$C_{mw}$  = wind speed coefficient, which is to be taken from Table 5.7.2 for the relevant notation

$K$  = weather factor, which is to be taken from Table 5.7.2 for the relevant notation

$A_t$  = transverse projected area, in m<sup>2</sup>, of the hull and of all superstructures, houses, masts, etc., above the design draught.

7.6.2 The strength of other loose towing equipment, e.g. links, shackles rings and chafing chain is to be determined on the basis of a design load equal to 1,25 times the *BL* of the towing hawser. If a greater design load is specified by the Naval Authority this load is to be used.

7.6.3 The strength of shipboard fittings and their supporting structure is to be determined on the basis of a design load equal to 1,25 times the *BL* of the towing hawser. If a greater design load is specified by the Naval Authority this load is to be used. The design load is to be applied through the towline according to the arrangement shown on the towing arrangement plan. The point of action of the force on the fitting is to be taken as the point of attachment of the mooring line or towline or at a change in its direction. The total design load applied to a fitting need not be more than twice the design load, see Fig. 5.7.1.

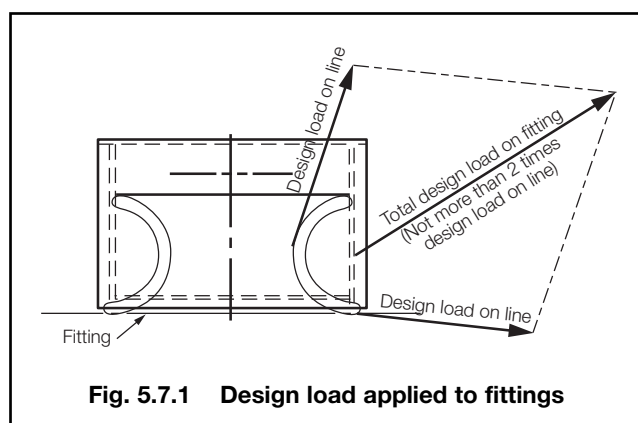


Fig. 5.7.1 Design load applied to fittings

7.6.4 The stress in all loose and fixed towing equipment constructed of steel, and its supporting structure, is not to exceed the specified minimum yield stress of the material in bending and 60 per cent of the specified minimum yield stress of the material in shear. Special consideration will be given if the vessel and/or towing equipment is not constructed of steel.

7.6.5 The reinforced members (carling) beneath shipboard fittings are to be effectively arranged for any variation of direction (horizontally and vertically) of the towing forces (which is to be not less than the design load) acting through the arrangement of connection to the shipboard fittings. Other arrangements will be specially considered provided that the strength is confirmed as adequate for the service.



# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Sections 7 & 8

7.6.6 For the assessment of fairleads and their supporting structure, due consideration is to be given to lateral loads. The strength of the fairlead is to be sufficient for all angles of towing load up to 90° horizontally from the ship's centreline and 30° vertically from the horizontal plane.

7.6.7 For the assessment of a strong point and its supporting structure, the applied load is to be in the direction that the towing pennant or towing hawser will take up during normal deployment. It is also to be applied at the maximum height possible above the deck for that specific type of strong point.

7.6.8 The structural arrangements of strong points, bollards and fairleads are to be such that continuity will be ensured. Abrupt changes in section; sharp corners and other points of stress concentration are to be avoided.

7.6.9 Strong points are to be fitted in way of a transverse or longitudinal deck girder or beam to facilitate efficient distribution of the towing load.

7.6.10 The SWL of each towing arrangement component is to be no greater than 80 per cent of the design load applied.

### Section 8 Windlass and capstan design and testing

#### 8.1 General

8.1.1 A windlass, capstan or winch of sufficient power and suitable for the size of anchor cable is to be fitted to the ship. Where Owners require equipment significantly in excess of Rule requirements, it is their responsibility to specify increased windlass power.

8.1.2 The windlass seating to be designed to loads no less than the maximum pull developed by the windlass.

8.1.3 Windlasses may be hand or power operated, subject to the requirements of 8.2.3.

8.1.4 Where steel wire rope is used in lieu of chain cable, a suitable winch with sufficient drum capacity to store the length of wire rope fitted is to be provided.

8.1.5 The windlass, anchoring capstans and winches are to be of types approved by LR.

8.1.6 On ships equipped with anchors having a mass of over 50 kg, windlass(es) of sufficient power and suitable for the type and size of chain cable are to be fitted. Arrangements with anchor davits will be specially considered.

8.1.7 The design of the windlass is to be such that the following requirements or equivalent arrangements will minimise the probability of the chain locker or forecastle being flooded in bad weather:

- (a) a weathertight connection can be made between the windlass bedplate, or its equivalent, and the upper end of the chain pipe, and
- (b) access to the chain pipe is adequate to permit the fitting of a cover or seal, of sufficient strength and proper design, over the chain pipe while the ship is at sea.

#### 8.2 Windlass design

8.2.1 The following performance criteria are to be used as a design basis for the windlass:

- (a) The windlass is to have sufficient power to exert a continuous duty pull over a period of 30 minutes of:

- (i) For specified design anchorage depths up to 82,5 m:

Cable grade	Duty pull, $P$ , in N
U1	$37,5d_c^2$
U2	$42,5d_c^2$
U3	$47,5d_c^2$

- (ii) For specified design anchorage depths greater than 82,5m:

$$P_1 = P + (D_a - 82,5) 0,27d_c^2 \quad \text{N}$$

where  $d_c$  is the chain diameter, in mm,  $D_a$  is the design anchorage depth, in metres,  $P$  is the duty pull for anchorage depth up to 82,5 m and  $P_1$  is the duty pull for the anchorage depths greater than 82,5 m.

- (b) The windlass is to have sufficient power to exert, over a period of at least two minutes, a pull equal to the greater of:

- (i) short term pull:  
1,5 times the continuous duty pull as defined in 8.2.1(a).

- (ii) anchor breakout pull:

$$12,18W_a + \frac{7,0L_c d_c^2}{100} \quad \text{N}$$

where

$L_c$  is the total length of chain cable on board, in metres, as given by Table 5.4.1

$W_a$  is the mass of bower anchor (kg) as given in Table 5.4.1.

- (c) In the absence of a chain stopper, the windlass, with its braking system in action and in conditions simulating those likely to occur in service, is to be able to withstand, without permanent deformation or brake slip, a load, applied to the cable, given by:

$$K_b d_c^2 (44 - 0,08d_c) \quad \text{N}$$

where

$K_b$  is given in Table 5.8.1

The performance criteria are to be verified by means of shop tests in the case of windlasses manufactured on an individual basis. Windlasses manufactured under LR's Type Approval Scheme for Marine Engineering Equipment will not require shop testing on an individual basis.

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Section 8

**Table 5.8.1 Values of  $K_b$**

Cable grade	$K_b$	
	Windlass used in conjunction with chain stopper	Chain stopper not fitted
U1	4,41	7,85
U2	6,18	11,00
U3	8,83	15,7

- (d) Where a chain stopper is fitted, the windlass braking system is to have sufficient brake capacity to ensure safe stopping when paying out the anchor and chain. It is the Master's responsibility to ensure that the chain stopper is in use when riding at anchor. At clearly visible locations on the bridge and adjacent to the windlass control position the following notice is to be displayed:

'The brake is rated to permit controlled descent of the anchor and chain only.

The chain stopper is to be used at all times whilst riding at anchor.'

8.2.2 Windlass performance characteristics specified in 8.2.1 and 8.3.2 are based on the following assumptions:

- One cable lifter only is connected to the drive shaft.
- Continuous duty and short term pulls are measured at the cable lifter.
- Brake tests are carried out with the brakes fully applied and the cable lifter declutched.
- The probability of declutching a cable lifter from the motor with its brake in the off position is minimised.
- Hawse pipe efficiency assumed to be 70 per cent.

8.2.3 Hand-operated winches are only acceptable if the effort required at the handle does not exceed 150 N for raising one anchor at a speed of not less than 2 m/min and making about thirty turns of the handle per minute.

8.2.4 Winches suitable for operation by hand as well as by external power are to be so constructed that the power drive cannot activate the hand drive.

8.2.5 Calculations for torque transmitting components are to be based on 1500 hours of operation with a nominal load spectrum factor of 1,0. Alternatively, unlimited hours with a nominal load spectrum factor of 0,8 can be applied.

8.2.6 Where the available input torque exceeds the torque required for anchor breakout then torque overload protection is to be fitted.

8.2.7 An arrangement to release the anchor and chain in the event of windlass power failure is to be provided.

8.2.8 The maximum stress from load cases stated in Table 5.8.2 is not to exceed the limits stated in Table 5.8.3.

**Table 5.8.2 Design load cases for windlass and chainstopper**

Load case	Condition	Note
1	Continuous pull	See 8.2.1(a)
2	Overload pull	See 8.2.1(b)
3	Brake holding load	See 8.2.1(c)

**Table 5.8.3 Permissible stress for design load cases**

Stress	Load case	
	1 and 2	3
	Permissible stress	
Tension	0,8Y	0,9Y
Compression or bending	0,8Y	0,9Y
Shear	0,7Y	0,7Y
Combined	0,85Y	0,9Y

### NOTES

- Where a component is subjected to axial tensile, axial compressive, bending or shear stress,  $F_c$  is to be calculated in the normal manner.
- Where a component is subjected to a combination of co-existent stresses,  $F_c$  is the combined stress which is to be calculated as follows:

Combined bending and tension

$$F_c = 1,25f_t + f_{bt}$$

Combined bending and compression

$$F_c = f_t + f_{bc}$$

Combined bending, tension and shear

$$F_c = \sqrt{(1,25f_t + f_{bt})^2 + 3f_q^2}$$

Combined bending, compression and shear

$$F_c = \sqrt{(f_t + f_{bc})^2 + 3f_q^2}$$

where

$F_c$  is the calculated stress

$f_t$  is the calculated axial tensile stress

$f_c$  is the calculated axial compressive stress

$f_{bt}$  is the calculated maximum tensile stress due to bending about both principal axes

$f_{bc}$  is the calculated maximum compressive stress due to bending about both principal axes

$f_q$  is the calculated shear stress

Y is the specified 0,2 per cent proof stress for the material

8.2.9 The following criteria are to be used for gearing design:

- Torque is to be based on the performance criteria specified in 8.2.1.
- The use of an equivalent torque,  $T_{eq}$ , for dynamic strength calculations is acceptable but the derivation is to be submitted to LR for consideration.
- The application factor for dynamic strength calculation,  $K_A$ , is to be 1,15.
- Calculations are to be based on 1500 hours of operation.

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Section 8

- (e) The static torque is to be  $1,5 \times T_n$  where  $T_n$  is the nominal torque.
- (f) The minimum factors of safety for load capacity of spur and helical gears, as derived using ISO 6336 or a relevant National or International Standard acceptable to LR, are to be 1,5 for bending stress and 0,6 for contact stress.

8.2.10 Keyways are to be designed to a relevant National or International Standard acceptable to LR.

8.2.11 The maximum stress in brake components is not to exceed the permissible stress stated in Table 5.8.3.

### 8.3 Control arrangements

8.3.1 All control devices are to be capable of being controlled from readily accessible positions and protected against unintentional operation.

8.3.2 The maximum travel of the levers is not to exceed 600 mm if movable in one direction only, or 300 mm to either side from a central position if movable in both directions.

8.3.3 Wherever practical, the lever is to move in the direction of the intended movement. If this cannot be achieved, it is to move towards the right when hauling and towards the left when paying out.

8.3.4 For lever-operated brakes, the brake is to engage when the lever is pulled and disengage when the lever is pushed. The physical effort on the brake for the operator is not to exceed 160 N.

8.3.5 For pedal-operated brakes, the maximum travel is not to exceed 250 mm and the physical effort for the operator is not to exceed 320 N.

8.3.6 The handwheel or crankhandle is to actuate the brake when turned clockwise and release it when turned counterclockwise. The physical effort for the operator is not to exceed 250 N for speed regulation and 500 N at any moment.

8.3.7 When not provided with automatic sequential control, separate push-buttons are to be provided for each direction of operation.

8.3.8 The push-buttons are to actuate the machinery when depressed and stop and effectively brake the machinery when released.

8.3.9 The above mentioned individual push-buttons may be replaced by two 'start' and 'stop' push-buttons.

8.3.10 Control systems for windlasses are to comply with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 9, Ch 1,2.

8.3.11 Windlass motors are to be protected against overload, overspeed and overpressure using appropriate safety techniques suitable for the intended installation.

### 8.4 Maintenance arrangements

8.4.1 Access is to be provided for inspection of reduction gears, bearings, brakes, etc.

8.4.2 Accessible manual lubrication points, including nipples, are to be provided for both for oil and grease, as applicable.

8.4.3 Gear-boxes are to be provided with adequate access arrangements for monitoring and replacing oil.

### 8.5 Protection arrangements

8.5.1 Where applicable, moving parts of windlass machinery are to be provided with suitable railings and/or guards to prevent injury to personnel.

8.5.2 Protection is to be provided for preventing persons from coming into contact with surfaces having temperatures over 50°C.

8.5.3 Steel surfaces not protected by lubricant are to be protected by a coating, in accordance with the requirements of a relevant National or International Standard acceptable to LR.

8.5.4 For arrangements of power transmission systems and relief requirements, see Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 5,11.1.2.

### 8.6 Marking and identification

8.6.1 Controls are to be permanently marked for identification, unless their functions are readily apparent. If required, instructions are to be permanently marked and readily visible.

### 8.7 Tests and trials

8.7.1 Where shop testing is not possible and Type Approval has not been obtained, calculations demonstrating compliance with 8.2.1 are to be submitted together with detailed plans and an arrangement plan showing the following components:

- Shafting.
- Gearing.
- Brakes.
- Clutches.

8.7.2 During trials on board the ship the windlass is to be shown to be capable of:

- (a) for all specified design anchorage depths: raising the anchor from a depth of 82,5 m to a depth of 27,5 m at a mean speed of 9 m/min.
- (b) for specified design anchorage depths greater than 82,5 m, in addition to (a): raising the anchor from the specified design anchorage depth to a depth of 82,5 m at a mean speed of 3 m/min.

Following trials, the ship will be eligible to be assigned a descriptive note 'Specified design anchorage depth. . . metres' which will be entered in column 6 of the *Register Book*.

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Sections 8, 9 &amp; 10

### 8.8 Seatings

8.8.1 The windlass is to be efficiently bedded and secured to the deck. The thickness of the deck in way of the windlass is to be increased, and adequate stiffening is to be provided, to the Surveyor's satisfaction. The structural design integrity of the bedplate is the responsibility of the Builder and windlass manufacturer.

## Section 9 Structural details

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 An easy lead of the cables from the windlass to the anchors and chain lockers is to be arranged. Where cables pass over or through stoppers, these stoppers are to be manufactured from ductile material and be designed to minimise the probability of damage to, or snagging of, the cable. They are to be capable of withstanding without permanent deformation a load equal to 80 per cent of the Rule breaking load of the cable passing over them.

### 9.2 Bulbous bow and wave piercing bow arrangements

9.2.1 The shell plating is to be increased in thickness at the fore end of the bulb and in other areas likely to be damaged by the anchors and chain cables. The increased plate thickness is to be the same as that required for plated stems by Part 6.

### 9.3 Hawse pipes and anchor recesses

9.3.1 Hawse pipes, bow rollers and other deck gear, of adequate size and construction, are to be provided for handling and securing the anchors and are to be efficiently attached to the structure and arranged to give an easy lead to the cable.

9.3.2 The hawse pipes are to be of sufficient size and thickness with a minimum diameter not less than 12 times the diameter of the chain cable. The arrangement is to give an easy lead for the cable to the windlass.

9.3.3 Hawse pipes and anchor pockets are to be of ample thickness and of a suitable size and form to house the anchors efficiently, preventing, as much as practicable, slackening of the cable or movements of the anchor being caused by wave action. The shell plating and framing in way of the hawse pipes are to be reinforced as necessary, see 9.5.1. Substantial chafing lips are to be provided at shell and deck. These are to have sufficiently large, radiused faces to minimise the probability of cable links being subjected to high bending stresses. Alternatively, roller fairleads of suitable design may be fitted. Where unpocketed rollers are used, it is recommended that the roller diameter be not less than eleven times the chain diameter. Where hawse pipes are not fitted, alternative arrangements will be specially considered.

9.3.4 The lines of the bow are to be taken into consideration when siting the anchor recesses for conventional bower anchors. Sufficient clearance of the flukes from the hull is to be maintained over the whole of the anchor run, above and below the water, considering the flukes in the most critical position. If a bow sonar dome is fitted, consideration is to be given to the positioning of the anchor recesses to reduce the possibility of the anchor chain rubbing on the dome when the anchor is in the deployed position.

### 9.4 Spurling pipes

9.4.1 Satisfactory means are to be provided to prevent inadvertent flooding of chain lockers.

### 9.5 Local reinforcement

9.5.1 The thickness of shell plating determined in accordance with the Rule requirements is to be increased locally by not less than 50 per cent in way of hawse pipes.

## Section 10 Launch and recovery, berthing and docking arrangements

### 10.1 Berthing loads

10.1.1 To resist loads imposed by tugs and berthing operations all structure within a 1,0 m strip centred 1,0 m above the deep waterline. It should be able to withstand the following pressure  $P_b$ :

$$P_b = \left( \frac{g\Delta}{800} \right) \text{ kN/m}$$

where

$\Delta$  = deep displacement, in tonnes.

10.1.2 If  $L_R > 200$  m, or the ship is able to have significantly different loading conditions, the strip is to be taken from 1,5 m above the light waterline to 2,5 m above the deep waterline.

10.1.3 Ships with markings to indicate location of internal structure designed specifically for berthing purposes will be specially considered.

### 10.2 Docking loads

10.2.1 Docking a ship on blocks potentially imposes high vertical loads on the keel. For ships where the Rule length,  $L_R$ , exceeds 50 m the strength of the keel and double bottom structure is to be assessed. Methods, other than the simplified method or direct calculation method described here, for demonstrating that the strength of the structure is ensured against the loads imposed by docking may be considered and are to be agreed with LR.

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

### Section 10

**10.2.2** It is recommended that for ships of fine hull form or where  $W_{oh}$ , as defined in 10.2.6, at any block becomes negative the docking load distribution is derived by direct calculation using a full ship finite element model constructed generally in accordance with the ShipRight SDA procedure for passenger ships. The model is to be supported on grounded spring elements representing the dock block arrangement as given in the docking plan. Calculations should be carried out for a representative number of docking conditions. The spring element stiffness in the model should be representative of the block and capping stiffness. An assessment of the result should be carried out to ascertain the sensitivity of the structural response to the spring constant used. Under the application of the loads the acceptance criteria given in Table 5.10.1 are not to be exceeded. The appropriate buckling criteria of Pt 6, Ch 2,3 are to be applied using the minimum buckling factor given in Table 5.10.1.

**10.2.3** For full bodied ships or where a more detailed assessment is impractical a simplified method may be used where a line load at the keel equal to the following equation is distributed equally over blocks in that section. For block spacing where a number of blocks are spaced equally between the transverse bulkheads, the load on the keel can be taken as a distributed line load.

$$F_{DL} = \frac{g W_c f_{bhd}}{L_c} \text{ kN/m}$$

where

$W_c$  = weight of the length between main transverse bulkheads in tonnes

$f_{bhd}$  = correction factor to be applied within 1 frame of transverse bulkheads

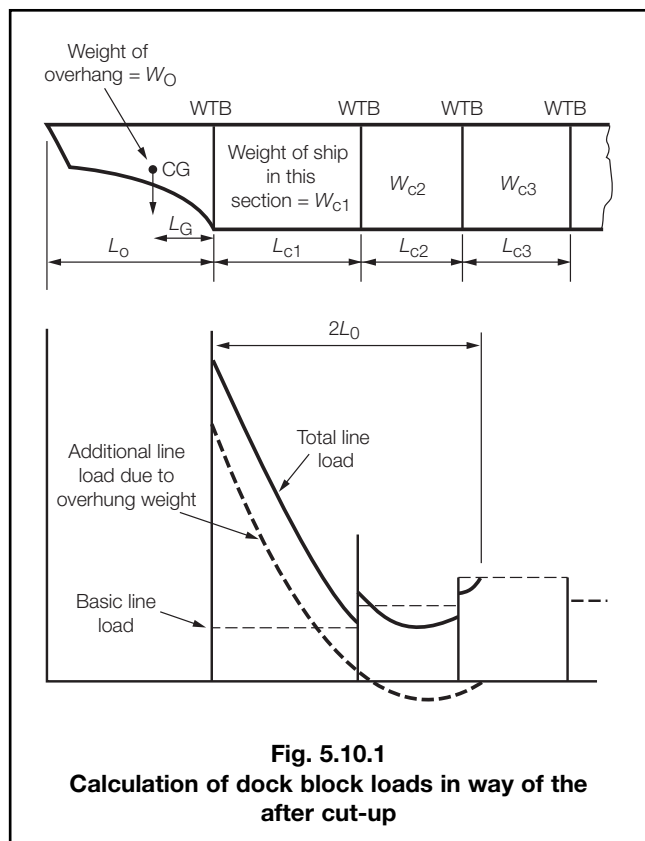
= 2, within one frame of transverse bulkheads

= 1, elsewhere

$g$  = acceleration due to gravity, 9,81 m/s<sup>2</sup>

$L_c$  = distance between main transverse bulkheads, in metres.

**10.2.4** For ships with an after cut-up or a significant rake of stem where there is a considerable overhang increasing the load at the after or fore end of the keel. It may be assumed that the increase in load due to the overhang will extend forward from the cut up a distance equal to twice the length of the overhang and will be distributed parabolically, see Fig. 5.10.1.



**Fig. 5.10.1**  
Calculation of dock block loads in way of the after cut-up

**Table 5.10.1** Acceptance criteria

Structural item	Allowable stresses, see Note		Minimum buckling factor
	$\sigma_e$	$\tau$	$\lambda$
Double bottom girders	$0,75\sigma_L$	$0,35\sigma_0$	1,2
Double bottom floors	$0,75\sigma_L$	$0,35\sigma_0$	1,1
Symbols			
$\sigma_0$ = specified minimum yield stress of material. so for steels having a yield stress above 355 N/mm <sup>2</sup> will be specially considered			
$\sigma_L = \frac{235}{k_L}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>			
$\lambda$ = factor against elastic buckling			
$\sigma_e = \text{Von Mises equivalent stress} = \sqrt{\sigma_x^2 + \sigma_y^2 - \sigma_y \sigma_x + 3\tau_{xy}^2}$			
NOTE In areas where the openings have not been modelled, the resulting shear stress and Von Mises stress is to be corrected according to the ratio of the actual to the modelled shear area. If the resulting stress levels exceed 90% of the specified allowable values, further study by means of fine mesh follow up models may be required. Von Mises stresses are to be recalculated on the basis of the corrected shear stresses.			

# Anchoring, Mooring, Towing, Berthing, Launching, Recovery and Docking

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 5

Section 10

10.2.5 When an overlap of the forward and aft overhang correction curves occurs both curves are to be included in the total line load over a section. This will increase the possibility that blocks amidships will become unloaded, see 10.2.2.

10.2.6 It may then be shown that the mass per unit length to be added at each dock block at forward of the cut-up is given by the following equation:

$$W_{oh} = \frac{3g W_o k_{dl}}{4L_o^2} \text{ kN/m}$$

where

$$k_{dl} = (2L_o + 3L_G) \left( \frac{x}{L_o} \right)^2 - 2(3L_o + 4L_G) \left( \frac{x}{L_o} \right) + 4(L_o + L_G)$$

$x$  = distance forward of after cut-up, in metres

$W_o$  = weight of overhang, in tonnes

$W_c$  = weight of section between main transverse bulkheads, in tonnes

$L_o$  = length of overhang, in metres

$L_c$  = length between main transverse bulkheads

$L_G$  = position of centre of gravity aft of after cut-up.

10.2.7 Unusual docking procedures or arrangements will be specially considered.

### 10.3 Launching loads

10.3.1 The launching loads are to be checked by the shipbuilder using conventional analytical methods appropriate to the method of launch. If via a slipway, the structure in way of the fore poppet should be suitable for the high loads that will be transmitted in this area. If adequate structure is not available, temporary stiffening is to be arranged.

10.3.2 The global strength of the hull girder is to be adequate under the loads imposed by launching, in particular for NS1 ships.



# Structural Procedures for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 6

Sections 1 to 4

### Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Structural Design Assessment**
- 3 **Fatigue Design Assessment**
- 4 **Construction Monitoring**
- 5 **Ship Event Analysis**
- 6 **Enhanced Scantlings**
- 7 **Protective Coating in Water Ballast Tanks**
- 8 **Hull Condition Monitoring**
- 9 **Ship Emergency Response Service**

## ■ Section 1 General

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter is applicable to all ship types and components and the requirements are to be applied in conjunction with the relevant Chapters of Part 6.

### 1.2 Classification notations

1.2.1 In addition to the hull class notations defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible to be assigned the additional optional class notations defined in Pt 1, Ch 2.

### 1.3 Information and plans required to be submitted

1.3.1 The information and plans required to be submitted are as specified in the Pt 6, Ch 1,2.2, applicable to the particular ship type and in this Chapter where related to particular items and notations.

## ■ Section 2 Structural Design Assessment

### 2.1 Structural Design Assessment notation – SDA

2.1.1 Where scantlings are primarily examined using finite element methods for both the overall and detailed structural capability of the ship using Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') approved procedures, the notation **SDA** (Structural Design Assessment) may be assigned and will be entered in the *Register Book*.

## ■ Section 3 Fatigue Design Assessment

### 3.1 Fatigue Design Assessment notation – FDA

3.1.1 Where the fatigue capability of the ship has been assessed using LR approved procedures, the notation **FDA** (Fatigue Design Assessment) may be assigned and will be entered in the *Register Book*.

## ■ Section 4 Construction Monitoring

### 4.1 Construction Monitoring notation – CM

4.1.1 The Construction Monitoring (**CM**) notation may be assigned if extended controls on structural alignment, fit-up and workmanship standards are applied to critical areas, as identified during the design of the ship. Construction Monitoring is applied primarily to verify the quality of workmanship required to improve the fatigue resistance of critical details, though other construction quality requirements can be specified in the **CM** plan.

4.1.2 The fatigue life of structural details can be adversely affected by a variety of factors, including workmanship defects. Criteria for workmanship defects can be considered in the CM plan. The most common factors that impact on fatigue are:

- (a) Misalignment of structural members; i.e., poor fit-up;
- (b) Welding defects;
- (c) Materials defects;
- (d) Stress concentrations resulting from incorrect geometry of structure, inadequate plate edge finish or generally poor manufacturing;
- (e) Erroneous cut-outs due to inappropriate routing of systems;
- (f) Discontinuity of structural members.

### 4.2 Identification of critical areas

4.2.1 A critical area is generally a structurally significant item or structural joint that has been subjected to an enhanced calculation or assessment. As a consequence, the performance of the item or joint will be influenced by the workmanship and fit-up in the building yard. In some areas, where there are high cyclic stresses, an enhanced workmanship and alignment standard is required in order to achieve the specified design hull fatigue life.

4.2.2 Critical areas will be identified by LR from the following assessments:

- (a) Structural Design Assessment (SDA), specified in Section 2;
- (b) Fatigue Design Assessment (FDA), specified in Section 3. The **CM** notation is mandatory if the **SDA** or **FDA** notations are applied.



# Structural Procedures for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 6

Section 4

4.2.3 Critical areas may also be identified by LR from one of the following optional assessments. In general, these will be associated with reinforcement and alignment of specific critical joints; they will not be associated with general deformation criteria:

- (a) Extreme Strength Assessment (ESA), specified in Pt 6, Ch 4,3;
- (b) Residual Strength Assessment (RSA), specified in Pt 6, Ch 4,4;
- (c) Whipping Assessment (WH), specified in Pt 4, Ch 2,6.

4.2.4 In addition, critical areas may be identified by the designer, Naval Authority or Owner from one of the following:

- (a) Known areas of high stress identified by structural engineers;
- (b) Areas that have experienced failure on similar ships in service;
- (c) Structures with specific alignment requirements; e.g., masts, shaft brackets.

4.2.5 The critical areas, locations and assessment criteria are to be detailed in the Construction Monitoring plan. The plan should also contain templates to be used to record specific alignment requirements. The CM plan may be supported by a high-stress key plan identifying critical regions on the ship.

4.2.6 Development of the CM plan is the responsibility of the designer; LR will identify the critical locations to be subject to monitoring, following appraisal of the assessments identified in 4.2.2 and 4.2.3 above. In general, areas with stress ranges greater than  $\sigma_{ws}$ , see Pt 6, Ch 4,2.2.3, and areas where general or detailed fatigue analysis has been undertaken will be listed in the appraisal documentation. LR may develop the CM plan on behalf of the designer, if so requested.

4.2.7 It is recommended that the areas for Construction Monitoring be identified and the criteria developed in a workshop with the designer, Builder, Naval Authority and LR.

### 4.3 Construction monitoring criteria

4.3.1 Critical areas are to be assigned an alignment criterion, as given in 4.3.2 to 4.3.4, based on the significance of the item and requirement from which it was derived. LR will review and agree the criterion assigned before construction commences.

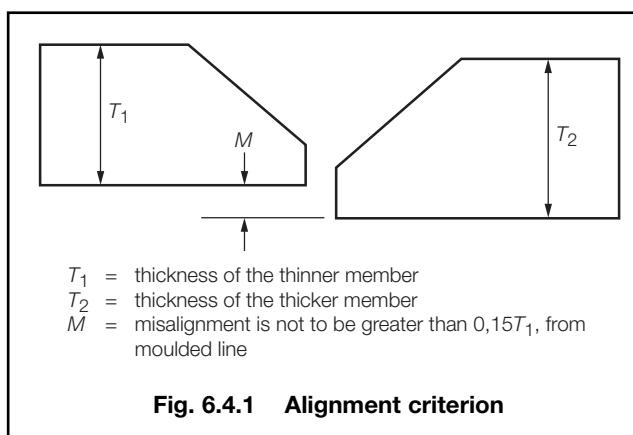
4.3.2 **Normal alignment** is assigned to structure which requires an enhanced level of survey above the normal survey requirement but does not require enhanced levels of alignment above the agreed production standard, such as the Naval Survey Guidance for Steel Ships:

- (a) Structure will be inspected by the Builder, before welding, for compliance with the general shipbuilding tolerances laid down in the agreed production standard.
- (b) A representative sample of alignment measurements will be undertaken by LR during the survey to confirm compliance with the agreed production standard.

- (c) Where there are non-compliances, the relevant shipyard department will be requested by LR to undertake full measurements and to produce a report for review by LR which details the non-compliances.

4.3.3 **Enhanced alignment** is assigned where critical areas have enhanced alignment requirements to maintain structural performance:

- (a) The relevant shipyard department will be required to provide a report, based on templates in the CM plan, detailing the achieved alignment at each location.
- (b) LR will review the alignment report and request check measurements as necessary to confirm the results.
- (c) The maximum allowable misalignment between the interconnection of structural members is to be 15 per cent of the thinner of the members being connected. This alignment criterion is to be applied where longitudinally effective structure is butted; e.g., plating at ring butts, longitudinal butts, see Fig. 6.4.1.
- (d) For all cruciform joints, the maximum allowable misalignment between the interconnection of structural members is to be 20 per cent of the thinner of the members being connected. This alignment criterion is to be applied where there is alignment through a thickness; e.g., intercostal longitudinal bulkheads through a transverse bulkhead, bilge keel plate alignment with internal structure through shell plating, see Fig. 6.4.2.



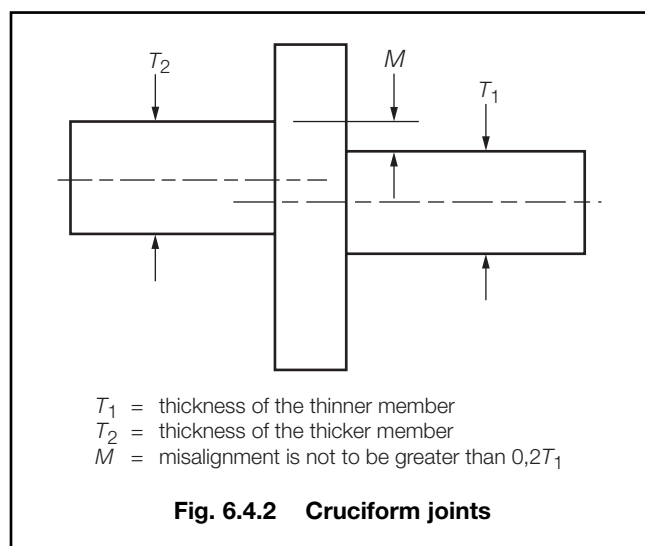
4.3.4 **Specific alignment** is assigned where there are specific alignment criteria identified by the designer which need to be verified by LR:

- (a) the relevant shipyard department will be required to provide a report detailing the achieved alignment at each location;
- (b) LR will review the alignment report and request check measurements as necessary to confirm the results;
- (c) the alignment criteria and templates, where appropriate, are to be defined by the designer for each critical area defined.

# ShipRight Procedures for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 6

Sections 4 & 5



**Fig. 6.4.2 Cruciform joints**

**4.3.5 Close-up inspection** is assigned to structure which has no specific alignment requirement but requires an increased level of inspection; for example, to verify correct plate thickness or maximum permitted plate deformation. Close-up inspection may be required to verify a particular or unusual structural feature:

- Structure will be subject to an enhanced close-up visual inspection by LR Surveyor(s).
- Dry surveys should identify where units or compartments contain construction monitoring points. These are to be identified by the Builder as a specific witness point.

**4.3.6** Non-destructive examination, in addition to the general levels of NDE required in Pt 6, Ch 6, may be specified by the designer for critical areas, which LR will verify:

- The relevant shipyard department will be required to undertake the additional NDE required at each location and record the results.
- LR will review and audit the NDE measurements as necessary to confirm the results.

### 4.4 Construction Monitoring survey

**4.4.1** Construction Monitoring is a process for monitoring workmanship standards and alignment in critical areas. It is the Builder's responsibility to carry out the necessary checks and document the results for relevant critical locations, irrespective of the Surveyor(s) attendance at hold points. Shipyard personnel are responsible for the inspection and recording of all CM requirements, in accordance with the approved CM plan.

**4.4.2** LR will provide third party inspection to confirm that the critical areas to be covered by CM conform to the required/agreed standards based on check inspections and audit activities. Where LR undertakes a CM inspection to verify the implementation of the CM plan, it will cover:

- weld specification in terms of type, size and finish/treatment including:
  - fit-up and alignment before commencement of welding;
  - alignment after application of first root run;
  - back gouging;

- final welding and alignment;
  - stress relief grinding of weld profile (where required for enhanced fatigue performance);
- the continuity of structural members, where required;
  - plate edge radius and roughness;
  - joints for radius and tapering;
  - openings and penetrations for radius corners.

**4.4.3** LR will review all of the specific CM records, as defined in 4.3, and in a few cases request that measurements be presented. It is not intended that the attending Surveyor(s) witness each stage of the fabrication process for every critical area, except during the early stages of construction whilst the process is being established.

**4.4.4** CM activities will generally be undertaken in conjunction with routine dry surveys required for all construction units. A few specific CM items require measurement by the shipyard; these are described as Enhanced or Specific Alignment.

**4.4.5** Non-compliances will not be permitted in the critical areas identified within the CM plan. Where defects are identified within defined critical sections, LR is to agree the remedial action to be taken with the Shipbuilder before rectification is commenced.

**4.4.6** On satisfactory completion of all surveys and measurements, LR Surveyor(s) will recommend the assignment of the CM notation.

## Section 5 Ship Event Analysis

### 5.1 Ship Event Analysis – Class notations SEA(HSS-n), SEA(VDR), SEA(VDR-n)

**5.1.1** At the Owner's request, and in order to enhance safety and awareness on board during ship operation, provisions can be made for the following systems:

- A hull surveillance system that monitors the hull girder stresses and motions of the ship and warns the ship's personnel that these levels or the frequency and magnitude of slamming motions are approaching a level where corrective action is advisable.
- A voyage data recorder system that can record the ship's control, navigational, operational and hull response information. This information is recorded and stored in a protective containment unit to enable the analysis of any marine or other incidents.

**5.1.2** Where a hull surveillance system is fitted the class notation **SEA(HSS-n)** will be assigned. Where a voyage data recorder system is fitted the class notation **SEA(VDR)** or **SEA(VDR-n)** will be assigned. The extension -n signifies the number of fitted strain gauges connected to the system. The appropriate class notation(s) will be entered in column 6 of the *Register Book*, see also Pt 1, Ch 2,3.9.5 of the Rules for Ships.

# ShipRight Procedures for the Design, Construction and Lifetime Care of Ships

## Volume 1, Part 3, Chapter 6

Sections 6, 7, 8 & 9

### ■ Section 6 Enhanced Scantlings

#### 6.1 Enhanced Scantlings – ES

6.1.1 Where scantlings in excess of the approved Rule requirement are fitted at defined locations as a corrosion margin or for other purposes as specified by the Owner, a notation, **ES**, 'Enhanced Scantlings', will be assigned. It will be accompanied by a list giving items to which the enhancement has been applied and the increase in scantling. For example, the item 'bottom shell (strakes A, B, C, D) + 2' will indicate that an extra 2 mm has been fitted to the bottom shell of the ship for the particular strakes listed, *see also* Pt 6, Ch 6.2.10. In addition, the plans submitted for approval are to contain the enhanced scantling, together with the nominal thickness less the enhancement, adjacent and in brackets.

### ■ Section 7 Protective Coating in Water Ballast Tanks

#### 7.1 Protective Coating in Water Ballast Tanks – PCWBT

7.1.1 It is recommended for all ship types that all salt water spaces having boundaries formed by the hull envelope are to have a corrosion protection coating applied.

7.1.2 If the Owner so wishes, a notation **PCWBT** 'Protective Coating in Water Ballast Tanks', will be entered in the *Register Book* to indicate that the ship's water ballast tanks are coated and that the coating remains efficient and well maintained. If the coatings have broken down, particularly at more critical areas, and no effort is being made to maintain the coatings, then this notation will be placed in parentheses, i.e. (**PCWBT**). In either case the date of the last survey will be placed in parentheses after the notation.

### ■ Section 8 Hull Condition Monitoring

#### 8.1 Hull Condition Monitoring – HCM

8.1.1 Where an Owner adopts the LR Hull Condition Monitoring Scheme the notation **HCM**, 'Hull Condition Monitoring' will be entered in the *Register Book*.

8.1.2 This notation will indicate that a computer software system for on-board recording of ship surveys is available aboard ship.

### ■ Section 9 Ship Emergency Response Service

#### 9.1 Ship Emergency Response Service – SERS

9.1.1 This service, offered by LR, provides a rapid computer assisted analysis of a damaged ship's stability and damaged longitudinal strength in the event of a casualty to the ship.

9.1.2 Where an Owner adopts this service, the notation **SERS**, 'Ship is registered with LR's Ship Emergency Response Service', will be entered in the *Register Book*.

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 1

Part 4 Military Design and Special Features

January 2013

---

PART	1	REGULATIONS
PART	2	RULES FOR THE MANUFACTURE, TESTING AND CERTIFICATION OF MATERIALS
PART	3	DESIGN PRINCIPLES AND CONSTRUCTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS
<b>PART</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>MILITARY DESIGN AND SPECIAL FEATURES</b>
		<b>Chapter 1 Military Design</b>
		<b>2 Military Load Specification</b>
		<b>3 Special Features</b>
PART	5	ENVIRONMENTAL LOADS
PART	6	HULL CONSTRUCTION IN STEEL
PART	7	ENHANCED STRUCTURAL ASSESSMENT

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

---

<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>MILITARY DESIGN</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General requirements</b>
	1.1	General
	1.2	Plans
	1.3	Signature
	1.4	Materials and welding
<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Survivability</b>
	2.1	General
	2.2	Vulnerability
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Military distinction notations</b>
	3.1	General
	3.2	Above water threats
	3.3	Underwater threats
	3.4	Analysis levels
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Military design guidance</b>
	4.1	Radar signature
	4.2	Use of aluminium alloys
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Military design requirements</b>
	5.1	RAS seating and support structure
	5.2	Vehicle and equipment holding down arrangements
	5.3	Masts and externally mounted sensors or equipment
	5.4	Towed arrays, towed bodies and towing points
	5.5	Crane support arrangements
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Magazine design and construction</b>
	6.1	General
	6.2	Definitions
	6.3	Arrangement of magazines
	6.4	Structure
	6.5	Environmental conditions and ventilation
	6.6	Detail arrangements
	6.7	Openings
	6.8	Piping, cabling and electrical systems
	6.9	Fire protection
	6.10	Testing
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Design guidance for nuclear, biological and chemical defence</b>
	7.1	General
	7.2	Definitions
	7.3	NS1 and NS2 ship requirements
	7.4	NS3 ship requirements
	7.5	Zones
	7.6	CBRN hardening
	7.7	Structural requirements
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Design guidance for the reduction of radiated noise underwater due to sea-inlets or other openings</b>
	8.1	General
<b>CHAPTER</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>MILITARY LOAD SPECIFICATION</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General requirements</b>
	1.1	General

---

<b>Section</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>External blast</b>
	2.1	General
	2.2	Threat level determination
	2.3	Notation assessment levels and methodology
	2.4	Definitions
	2.5	Blast pressure loads
	2.6	Nuclear threats
	2.7	Fuel air pressure loads
	2.8	Conventional explosive pressure loads
	2.9	Structural assessment
	2.10	Design considerations
<b>Section</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>Internal blast</b>
	3.1	General
	3.2	Threat level determination
	3.3	Notation assessment levels and methodology
	3.4	Materials
	3.5	Quasi static pressure
	3.6	Structural resistance
	3.7	Bulkhead arrangements
<b>Section</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Fragmentation protection</b>
	4.1	General
	4.2	Threat level determination
	4.3	Notation assessment levels and methodology
	4.4	Information required
	4.5	Structural requirements
<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Underwater explosion (shock)</b>
	5.1	General
	5.2	Threat level determination
	5.3	Notation assessment methodology
	5.4	Local strength assessment
	5.5	Detail design guidance
	5.6	Seat design
	5.7	Shock mounts
	5.8	Design guidance for hull valves, piping and seals
<b>Section</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>Whipping</b>
	6.1	General
	6.2	Threat level determination
	6.3	Notation assessment levels and methodology
	6.4	Simple 2D beam model
	6.5	Advanced assessment
<b>Section</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>Residual strength</b>
	7.1	General
	7.2	Threat level determination
	7.3	Notation assessment levels and methodology
	7.4	Definition of damage
<b>Section</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>Strengthening requirements for beach landing operations</b>
	8.1	General
	8.2	Minimum plate thickness
	8.3	Bottom stiffening
	8.4	Global strength
	8.5	Rubbing strakes
<b>Section</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>Military installation and operational loads</b>
	9.1	Weapon recoil, blast and efflux loads
	9.2	Replenishment at sea loads

---

<b>Section</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>Aircraft operations</b>
	10.1	General
	10.2	Definitions
	10.3	Documentation
	10.4	Flight deck arrangements
	10.5	Loading
	10.6	Determination of $\lambda$ for fixed wing aircraft
	10.7	Determination of $\lambda$ for helicopters
	10.8	Deck plating design
	10.9	Deck stiffening design
	10.10	Parking and manoeuvring areas
	10.11	Assisted take off
	10.12	Arrested landing
	10.13	Vertical recovery
	10.14	Tie down forces
 <b>CHAPTER</b>	 <b>3</b>	 <b>SPECIAL FEATURES</b>
<b>Section</b>	<b>1</b>	<b>General</b>
	1.1	Application
	1.2	Symbols and definitions
 <b>Section</b>	 <b>2</b>	 <b>Vehicle decks and fixed ramps</b>
	2.1	General
	2.2	Definitions
	2.3	Deck plating
	2.4	Secondary stiffening
	2.5	Primary stiffening
	2.6	Securing arrangements
	2.7	Access
	2.8	Hatch covers
	2.9	Heavy and special loads
	2.10	Tracked and steel wheeled vehicles
	2.11	Openings in main vehicle deck
	2.12	Direct calculations
 <b>Section</b>	 <b>3</b>	 <b>Bow doors</b>
	3.1	Application
	3.2	General
	3.3	Symbols and definitions
	3.4	Construction and testing
	3.5	Strength criteria
	3.6	Design loads
	3.7	Scantling of bow doors
	3.8	Scantling of inner doors
	3.9	Securing and supporting of bow doors
	3.10	Securing and locking arrangements
	3.11	Operating and Maintenance Manual
 <b>Section</b>	 <b>4</b>	 <b>Side, stern doors and other shell openings</b>
	4.1	Symbols
	4.2	General
	4.3	Construction and testing
	4.4	Scantlings
	4.5	Doors serving as ramps
	4.6	Closing, securing and supporting of doors
	4.7	Systems for operation
	4.8	Systems for indication and monitoring
	4.9	Design loads
	4.10	Design of securing and supporting devices
	4.11	Operating and Maintenance Manual



---

<b>Section</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Movable decks, lifts, internal and external ramps</b>
	5.1	Classification
	5.2	Arrangements and design
	5.3	Loading
	5.4	Movable decks
	5.5	External deck ramps and lifts
	5.6	External shell ramps
	5.7	Aircraft lifts

## Section

1	<b>General requirements</b>
2	<b>Survivability</b>
3	<b>Military distinction notations</b>
4	<b>Military design guidance</b>
5	<b>Military design requirements</b>
6	<b>Magazine design and construction</b>
7	<b>Design guidance for nuclear, biological and chemical defence</b>
8	<b>Design guidance for the reduction of radiated noise underwater due to sea-inlets or other openings</b>

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 General

**1.1.1** This Section is aimed primarily at assessing structure such that it can resist the military loads imposed upon it, however it is essential in naval ship design to consider the effects an item of equipment or structure can have on a variety of parameters. For example a winch support and mount may adequately resist the forces imposed upon it during normal operation and absorb shock loads but have an unacceptably high noise or radar signature.

**1.1.2** Chapter 1 gives guidance on some of the additional issues that the designer must consider in the design of a naval ship. Whilst it does not always give the definitive answer on these topics, it will help identify the impact of structural design on the subject. An example is radar signature reduction. The guidance gives the geometric properties to avoid but it will not give detail on radar absorbent coatings.

**1.1.3** Information is classified in two types. Firstly, design guidance for which further approval has to be sought once a suitable standard is identified by the Naval Authority, and secondly, design requirements which have to be met as part of the **✱100A1** notation or a specific notation such as **LA(N)**.

### 1.2 Plans

**1.2.1** Plans are to be submitted showing the manner in which the requirements have been met and the location of the structure within the vessel for those features that have either a special notation or are required as part of the notation **✱100A1** or ship type.

**1.2.2** Details on the loadings applied to individual items, and by these items to the support structure are to be included. In some cases stiffness requirements will also need to be included, e.g., mast mounted equipment.

**1.2.3** Plans, and where requested, calculations should be submitted for the following features as appropriate:

- Replenishment at sea arrangements.
- Aircraft and vehicle tie down arrangements.
- Movable decks, ramps and lifts.
- Masts and support arrangements.
- Towed array or towed body arrangement.
- Weapon recoil and thrust loadings.

**1.2.4** Arrangements for the following features are to be included with the hull structural plans listed in Pt 6, Ch 2,2. In addition calculations are to be supplied where requested:

- Vehicle decks.
- Helicopter decks.
- Berthing.
- Docking loads.
- Beach landing or grounding.
- Holding down arrangements.

**1.2.5** Plans and supporting calculations should be submitted for the following notations:

- External blast (**EB1, EB2, EB3, EB4**).
- Internal blast (**IB1, IB2**).
- Fragmentation (**FP1, FP2**).
- Small arms protection (**SP**).
- Underwater explosion (Shock) (**SH**).
- Whipping (**WH1, WH2, WH3**).
- Residual strength (**RSA1, RSA2, RSA3**).

### 1.3 Signature

**1.3.1** A naval vessel will generally require some form of signature control and the operational requirement will determine the extent to which this is necessary. Signature control can be achieved using a variety of methods both active and passive. This Section deals with the passive methods that structure can influence.

**1.3.2** With good structural design the signature of the vessel can be controlled to a certain degree with little cost. The methods listed in Table 1.1.1 can help achieve this.

**1.3.3** It is beyond the scope of the Rules to provide further detail on signatures, however on request, Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') is able to provide information on suitable organisations who are able to give specialist advice as necessary.

**1.3.4** Special features notations for signature control will not normally be assigned. Some of the above features will form part of the Naval Ship notation **✱100A1 NS** and are detailed in Section 3. If requested by the Owner a descriptive note can also be assigned.

**Table 1.1.1 Ship signatures**

Signature	Simple methods of control using hull construction
<b>Above water</b> Visual Infrared  Radar cross-section Unintentional electro-magnetic emissions	Camouflage paint Careful positioning of exhaust outlets Structural shaping Use of steel plating (Faraday cage)
<b>Under water</b> Self noise Radiated noise Magnetic field  Electric field Wake	Fairness of hull, low vibration Low vibration Non-ferrous materials Degaussing Attention to earth paths Hull form, propeller design

## 1.4 Materials and welding

1.4.1 In addition to the requirements of Pt 6 Ch 2, ships having the following military distinction notations are to comply with the requirements of this Section for the designated areas unless specified otherwise. The requirements apply to plates, stiffeners, fillet welds, butt welds and welded attachments:

- **EB1, EB2, EB3, EB4** Above water portion of the hull, superstructure and upper decks assessed against external blast requirements.
- **IB1, IB2** Blast bulkheads.
- **SH1, SH2** Hull envelope plating.
- **WH1, WH2, WH3** Sheerstrake, stringer plate (including margin angle), bilge strake, keel plate, garboard strake and hull inserts.
- **RSA1, RSA2, RSA3** Sheerstrake, stringer plate (including margin angle), bilge strake, keel plate, garboard strake and hull inserts.

1.4.2 Crack arresting strakes of minimum Grade E are to be fitted in the following locations, from  $0,2L_R$  to  $0,8L_R$ , according to the notation assigned:

- **SH1, SH2** Sheerstrake, stringer plate (including margin angle), bilge strake, keel plate, garboard strake and hull inserts in these areas.
- **WH1, WH2, WH3** Sheerstrake, stringer plate (including margin angle), bilge strake, keel plate, garboard strake and hull inserts in these areas.
- **RSA1, RSA2, RSA3** Sheerstrake, stringer plate (including margin angle), bilge strake, keel plate, garboard strake and hull inserts in these areas.

Where the hull envelope is made entirely from Grade D steel, crack arresting strakes of minimum Grade E need not be fitted in the specified locations.

1.4.3 Generally for joints between steels of different strength levels the welding consumable may be of a type suitable for the lesser strength.

1.4.4 For joints between steels of different toughness levels, the welding consumable is to be of a type suitable for the higher grade being connected.

1.4.5 The consumable used is to comply with the requirements of Table 1.1.2. Other grades of steel will be specially considered, but in general, the toughness in the upward vertical direction is not to be significantly less than that of the parent plate, measured in the direction of rolling.

**Table 1.1.2 Welding consumable grade**

Steel grade	Normal electrode grade	Military requirement grade
A	1	1
AH32	1Y	2Y
AH36	1Y	2Y
AH40	2Y40	2Y40
B	2	2
D	2	3
DH32	2Y	3Y
DH36	2Y	3Y
DH40	3Y40	3Y40
E	3	4
EH32	3Y	4Y
EH36	3Y	4Y
EH40	4Y40	4Y40

1.4.6 Where armour plating consisting of steels with a specified tensile strength of 1000 MPa or above is integrated into the ship's structure by welding, consideration should be given to the susceptibility of these materials to hydrogen cracking. The use of normal strength or higher strength steel of toughness grade D or higher in terms of Charpy V-notch fracture toughness should be considered as an intermediate transition material where the adjacent material is not already of this grade.

1.4.7 The proposed welding procedures are to be submitted for review, and are to be chosen to minimise the risk of hydrogen cracking. The following is recommended:

- The use of welding consumables and electrodes with low hydrogen content (less than 5 ml/100 g of deposited weld metal).
- The weld preparation and welding apparatus, consumables and electrodes are to be clean, dry and free from other sources of hydrogen such as lubricants and grease.
- Controlled preheat, interpass temperatures, cooling rates and post-heat treatment chosen in accordance with manufacturers' guidance and recognised welding standards.
- Weld sequence chosen to minimise the formation of residual stresses.
- The use of welding consumables of a higher strength than necessary should be avoided.
- Non-destructive examination should not be carried out before a period of 48 hours has elapsed from the time welding is completed.

1.4.8 The use of mechanical fasteners to secure armour plating should be considered as a means of removing the risk of hydrogen embrittlement as a result of the welding process. Where higher strength steel fasteners with Vickers hardness above 320 HV are used, consideration should also be given to the susceptibility of these materials to hydrogen cracking.

## Section 2 Survivability

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 Survivability is defined as the probability that a ship can remain operational to some degree following an attack. The elements of whole ship survivability are shown in Fig. 1.2.1. Survivability is divided into two main aspects:

- Susceptibility, the probability of a threat acquiring, reaching and detonating on a ship.
- Vulnerability, the probability that a ship will be able to survive a successful attack and operate at a certain level.

Survivability is normally calculated as the product of susceptibility and vulnerability. Recoverability is an important aspect as it has a significant influence on the vulnerability of the overall ship as a system. It can be defined as a measure of the ability of the ship to reach a particular level of operation higher than that immediately following the hit. A variety of levels of operation required following damage can be defined, see 2.2.

2.1.2 Generally there are four basic phases in the classification of naval ships with respect to survivability:

- Concept phase.
- Assessment phase.
- Build phase.
- Maintenance phase.

2.1.3 The **concept phase** is not normally part of classification and is a discussion between the Owner, Naval Authority, designer and those specialists able to perform the appropriate calculations. It is used to identify the potential threats, requirements for the ship structure, machinery and systems with respect to those threats.

2.1.4 The **concept phase** will apply all of the elements shown in Fig. 1.2.1:

- Identification of the threat is first and this is usually determined by the Naval Authority for current and future threats. Several threats will be identified which affect the ship in a variety of ways, they may be underwater or above water, far field, close in, or contact weapons. Typical threat groups are given in Table 1.3.1.
- The susceptibility is the ability of the threat to reach the ship and detonate and is a function of the capability of the threat, the ship's signatures and the ship's defence systems. Various computer codes and simulations are available for determining the susceptibility of a hull and the capability of weapon systems. Consideration should be given to the degradation of a threat by a ship's defence systems.
- If a threat detonates, damage may result. The extent and amount of damage is a function of the vulnerability of the ship, see 2.2. A vulnerability assessment may be used to determine the consequences of the threat detonation. The consequences are likely to be in the form of fire, flood and physical damage as shown in Fig. 1.2.1. The assessment tools used in the design stage for vulnerability analysis generally employ simple design formulae which are then verified during the assessment phase.

- The consequences of damage can be limited through recoverability, the ability to repair damage to structure, equipment and systems. This is mainly an operational matter though it will have an impact on ship design. Damage control operational procedures will make certain demands on structure and equipment.

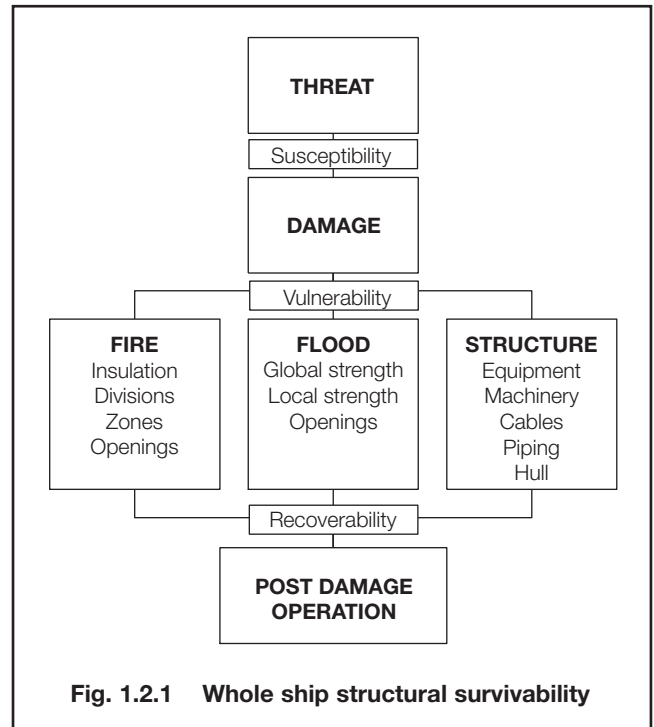


Fig. 1.2.1 Whole ship structural survivability

2.1.5 It is beyond the scope of the Rules to provide further detail on the concept phase. However on request, LR is able to provide details of suitable organisations who are able to give specialist advice as necessary.

2.1.6 The **assessment phase** looks in more detail at the vulnerability of the ship and uses explicit calculations to assess the capability of the ship based upon the relevant effects of threats such as blast pressure or fragment size. It is not necessary to define the actual weapon, just the consequences or effects of threats. A threat can produce a variety of effects, the manner in which the Rules currently address these effects is detailed in Chapter 2. In naval ship classification, notations are used to denote that a calculation for a particular threat has been reviewed. Currently, these are concerned with structural aspects only, though some aspects of machinery are indirectly addressed through other notations such as propulsion machinery redundancy, **PMR**, steering gear machinery redundancy, **SMR** and fire safety, **FIRE**.

2.1.7 The **build phase** ensures that the requirements of the assessment phase are put in place on board the ship. It is identical to the normal classification requirements for construction, installation and testing of structure and equipment under LR survey, verifying that the correct materials, welding fabrication and testing procedures are used.

2.1.8 The **maintenance phase** is applied by maintaining a ship in class through life. It verifies that the original standard to which the ship was built is maintained and that any new rule requirements are implemented. It also verifies that modifications to the ship do not compromise the integrity of the structure, equipment or systems.

2.1.9 It is the responsibility of the Naval Authority to ensure that each of the phases is implemented, to define the requirements that are to be met and advise the Owner on the manner in which particular threats can be dealt with.

## 2.2 Vulnerability

2.2.1 The resistance of a vessel to loadings from military threats can be described by the term vulnerability which is the probability that once hit by a specified threat a vessel will lose capability.

2.2.2 This Chapter deals separately with the effects of a threat on the structure but when considering the total vulnerability of the ship it will be necessary to combine all the effects of a weapon detonation to determine the total damage to the ship as a system. This is normally done very early in the design stage at a low level of complexity, see 2.1.4. Several computer codes are available to determine the consequence of weapon threats on the ship system.

2.2.3 The damage to a ship is likely to occur by three mechanisms; fire, flood and physical damage, see Fig. 1.2.1. The direct effect of threats on the ship's crew is not included in this Section but some features such as shelter stations and CBRN protection will reduce the risk. Indirect damage caused by the threat should also be considered and a vulnerability analysis can be used to site magazines such that they are offered the maximum protection.

2.2.4 The methods used to control the spread of fire will have an effect on structural design, materials, fire insulation, fire divisions and openings, and must all be considered. One method used to control the spread of fire is zones and some guidance on the philosophy and structural requirements is provided in Section 7. However the precise requirements for fire detection, protection and extinction are to be defined by the Naval Authority. Where this is examined by LR in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 2,3.9.7 a **FIRE** notation may be assigned. Other methods include the use of smoke tight boundaries, insulation and fire fighting systems.

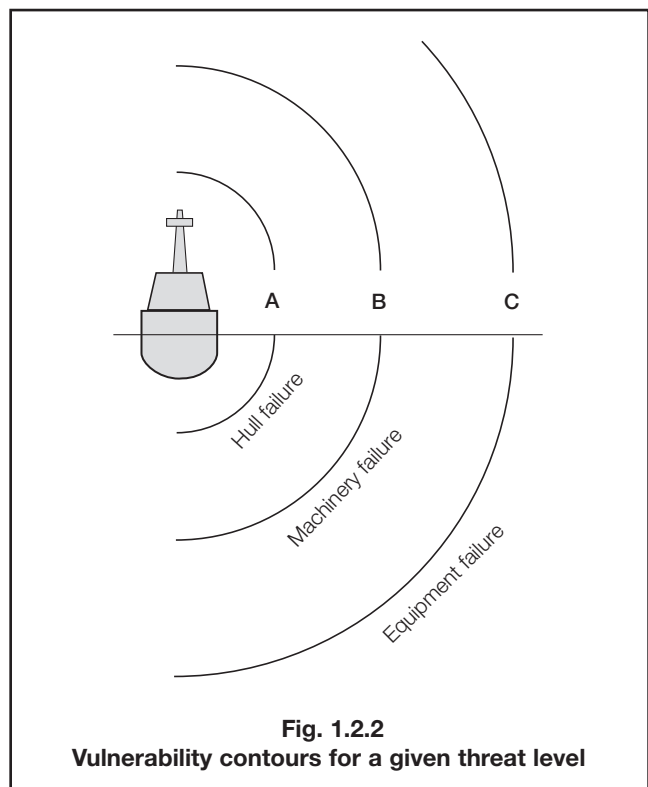
2.2.5 The stability of a vessel and flooding following damage is not covered in this Chapter. The stability standard, nominated by the Naval Authority, will define the extent of damage that the vessel is required to survive and remain stable. All structure and watertight closing appliances will need to be assessed to this level. Pt 3, Ch 1,5 defines how the minimum extent of watertight subdivision is to be determined. Pt 3, Ch 4 contains details on requirements for closing appliances. For such an extreme event as flooding, plastic type analysis is appropriate for watertight structure and this is recognised in the relevant rule requirements.

2.2.6 For the hull, the effect of the threat can be limited in two ways:

- Ensuring that there is adequate global strength following damage using a residual strength analysis. Where appropriate a whipping analysis may also be necessary.
- Ensuring that local structure can contain the threat or limit the damage. Individual items of structure can be hardened or strengthened in certain areas to achieve this.

2.2.7 Physical damage may occur to cables, piping, equipment and machinery, and other systems. The duplication or protection of these items is dealt with in Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,4.9. Where protection is required, e.g., armour, the impact on the structural design of the hull is to be considered.

2.2.8 Different levels of vulnerability can be represented, as illustrated in Fig. 1.2.2. Each will have different acceptance criteria for the hull structure. For an internally detonating threat, the increasing levels can be visualised as a threat of increasing magnitude rather than increasing distance.



2.2.9 Level A is that, closer than which, the hull structure will fail due to the detonation of a threat. The failure can occur in a number of ways as detailed in Chapter 2. At this level the assessment will normally be performed using plastic criteria which will result in permanent deformation. The ship may no longer function effectively but it should remain afloat and not rupture or fail catastrophically.



2.2.10 Level B is that, closer than which, the majority of the ship's machinery and equipment is damaged such that it will not operate effectively and the ship can no longer continue to navigate. The hull must therefore not deform permanently and elastic assessment criteria may be necessary to determine the global strength of the hull (local deformation may be sustained).

2.2.11 Level C is that, closer than which, the ship's weapon systems begin to fail and the vessel is no longer able to operate with full effectiveness. Normally the global and local criteria would be assessed against elastic criteria.

2.2.12 Levels B and C for underwater threats are primarily dealt with by adopting a suitable shock policy for the ship.

2.2.13 It is the responsibility of the Owner to decide the levels at which these should be set. In theory, they could be made to be coincident but this would provide little reserve within the vessel for recovery by damage control and repair. Conversely, they should not be set too far apart as this represents unnecessary armament and strengthening which is not effectively protecting the equipment and machinery from attack.

2.2.14 For an assessment of a threat which also produces effects on machinery, two structural calculations may have to be performed. One at the equipment level of failure using failure criteria that result in little or no deformation (plating only for example) and one approaching a structural failure level using ultimate strength or plastic collapse criteria. The requirements in Chapter 2 generally deal with ultimate strength or plastic criteria, the conventional rule calculations in Pt 6, Ch 2 and Chapter 5 set elastic failure criteria. For normal naval ship construction, the hull is usually able to withstand the threat level at which equipment and systems fail with little or no permanent deformation, though some check calculations may be necessary on critical areas.

## Section 3

### Military distinction notations

#### 3.1 General

3.1.1 By its very nature a naval ship will be required to face and resist a variety of threats and it will be necessary to incorporate particular features to address those threats.

3.1.2 Some of the features required are already incorporated in the notation **⌘100A1 NS**. However, where the operational requirement demands, additional or specific levels of performance, special features notations such as those listed in Pt 1, Ch 2,4 may be assigned showing protection against the effects of a particular threat.

3.1.3 Unless specifically requested these notations will be assigned at an appropriate level which will remain confidential to the Owner. It is the responsibility of the Owner to determine the threat levels suitable for their requirements. The agreed threat levels will not appear in the *Register Book* or be published in any other form. Only the notation **⌘MD** will be used to show that some military features have been incorporated and constructed in accordance with LR's *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships*.

3.1.4 A distinction is made between:

- levels of threat, describing the magnitude of the missile, torpedo, mine or bomb; and
- method of analysis which may be performed at differing levels of complexity.

3.1.5 In an effort to establish links between the different military loads, default levels of threat have been assigned. A distinction is made between levels of above water and underwater threats, as certain ships may be at greater risk from one or the other depending upon their operational requirements. They are summarised in Table 1.3.1.

3.1.6 In addition to the hull class notations defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible to be assigned the additional class notations defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,2.1 and Ch 2,2.3 or descriptive notes as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,2.6.

#### 3.2 Above water threats

3.2.1 As described in Table 1.3.1 the external blast notation is normally independent of the internal blast and fragmentation notations as the threats that produce a survivable blast effect usually have a reasonable stand off. Typically, significant blast loading will arise from externally detonating threats such as far field nuclear at large stand offs and fuel air explosions at moderate stand offs. For an externally detonating conventional weapon, the blast will normally be insignificant but there will usually be a fragmentation threat. The external blast notation may also be independent of the residual strength notation unless the plastic deformation from an external blast renders certain structure ineffective with respect to global strength, e.g. a superstructure which contributes to longitudinal strength.

3.2.2 Usually, both internal blast and fragmentation will result from an internally detonating threat and are therefore linked, for example, a missile threat as shown in Table 1.3.1. For a particular threat it is recommended that both fragmentation and internal blast assessments will be made to the same level of threat for the structure adjacent to the point of detonation. Consideration should be given to the precise nature of the blast loading and fragmentation pattern of the threat.

3.2.3 If transverse bulkheads are used to limit the longitudinal spread of damage then the decks and side shell will probably be damaged such that a residual strength assessment is required to ensure that the global strength is not compromised. This should be to the same threat level as the internal blast threat. Longitudinal blast resistant bulkheads, box girders or service tunnels could be used to maintain the longitudinal effective material of the hull girder.

**Table 1.3.1 Relationship between notations**

	Above water weapons								Underwater weapons			
	Small arms	Shell or projectile		Missile		Bomb			Mine or charge		Torpedo	
	Contact	Contact	Proximity	Contact	Proximity	Contact	Proximity	Far field (2)	Contact	Proximity	Contact	Proximity
<b>SP</b>	R	O										
<b>FP</b>		R	R	R	R	R	R					
<b>IB</b>		R		R		R						
<b>EB</b>			R		R		R	R				
<b>SH</b>									R	O	R	O
<b>WH</b>										R		R
<b>RSA</b>		O	O	R	O	R	R	R	R		R	
Symbols												
R = Required threats to be considered in the absence of a specific requirement. O = Optional threats to be identified by the Naval Authority and dependent on the characteristic of the threat.												
NOTES 1. It remains the responsibility of the Owner to determine the appropriate military notation and the appropriate levels of threat and analysis. 2. For nuclear threats, consideration should be given to CBRN requirements for structure, see Section 7, filtration and ventilation. The ability of the structure to screen an electromagnetic pulse should also be considered.												

3.2.4 A residual strength assessment of the above water structure can be carried out for any threat level under any threat, independently of the other above water threat notations. This is because the ship may still retain function even though it has not been specifically armoured against the internal blast or fragmentation arising from such a threat. The residual strength notation is normally required for sea skimming missile threats that may remove significant areas of above water structure.

### 3.3 Underwater threats

3.3.1 Shock enhancement should be aimed at providing ruggedness and to verify at a low level, equipment and system operation is maintained and at a higher level, equipment is retained and the hull does not rupture. Notation is currently confined to structure and concentrates on local damage that can be addressed by close attention to quality of construction and by adopting good constructional detail. Shock effects give rise to equipment and system damage. Shock is a different mechanism from whipping, therefore a whipping assessment will not generally be required to the same level of a shock assessment, though it may be necessary to check that the shock threat assessed will not have a significant whipping load. Residual strength assessments may be appropriate for shock threats depending on the extent of local damage.

3.3.2 Whipping is caused by proximity detonation of a charge that excites the main hull girder at a low-order (two node) natural frequency which may cause significant structural damage at a relatively low charge weight. Shock effects therefore may be relatively low order and it will not always be necessary to undertake a shock analysis. In addition a whipping analysis may not be necessary for threats which detonate on contact or for steel ships under 70 m in length. Due to the nature of whipping effects (usually the plastic collapse at a section of the hull), a residual strength calculation is not normally appropriate for a whipping threat because the damage from the direct shock is usually limited.

3.3.3 Residual strength assessments of underwater threats are normally concerned with contact mines or torpedo impacts. These will remove a certain amount of hull structure the effect of which is to be assessed by the residual strength calculation. Shock or whipping threats will only require a residual strength notation where there are significant amounts of local deformation to the hull girder. Significant damage is defined as that which reduces the global strength below the design margins.

### 3.4 Analysis levels

3.4.1 In addition to levels of capability determined by the threat level specified, there are also different methods of assessment. The method of assessment will depend on three aspects:

- The level of the threat. At higher levels of threat, the requirements of the rules may become uneconomical or impractical and a more in depth analysis is required.

- 3.4.2 Three methods of assessment are shown in Fig. 1.3.1. In general the same threat level can be specified in each case however, it is the responsibility of the Owner to specify the correct levels to meet their specific requirements.

- 
- ```

graph TD
    ERMC(Elastic Rule Model) --> ESA1[ESA 1  
Compare to extreme bending moment]
    ERMC --> WH1[WH1  
Compare to whipping bending moment]
    ERMC --> RSA1[RSA 1  
Compare damage to residual strength bending moment]
    RSA1 --> Damage[Damage]
    Damage --> EB1[EB 1  
Rule calculations  
Above water structure]
    WH1 --> HR[Hull Response]
    HR --> 2DWM((2D Whipping Model))
    FP1[FP 1  
Rule calculations  
Critical compartments  
Zone boundaries]
    IB1[IB 1  
Rule calculations  
Zone boundaries]
    SH[SH  
Rule calculations]
    
```
- Areas for assessment are specified by the Naval Authority.
- Fig. 1.3.1(a) Assessment methods 1**

```

graph TD
    USM((Ultimate strength Model)) --> ERM((Elastic Rule Model))
    USM --> WH2[WH2]
    USM --> RSA2[RSA2]
    USM --> WH3[WH3]
    ERM --> ESA2[ESA2]
    ERM --> WH2
    WH2 --> WH2
    WH3 --> WH3
    WH3 --> WH3M((3D Whipping Model))
    RSA2 --> EB1[EB1]
    RSA2 --> Damage[Damage]
    EB1 --> EB3[EB3]
    FP1[FP1] --> FP2[FP2]
    IB1[IB1] --> IB2[IB2]
    SH[SH]
  
```

Areas for assessment are specified by the Naval Authority.

**Fig. 1.3.1(b)**  
**Assessment methods for higher threat levels**

## Military design guidance

4.1.1 The Owner is responsible for determining the level of signature control required and agreeing any resultant design to achieve the required levels. There are however, instances where signature levels are not specified but good design practice may be applied. The following is offered as guidance.

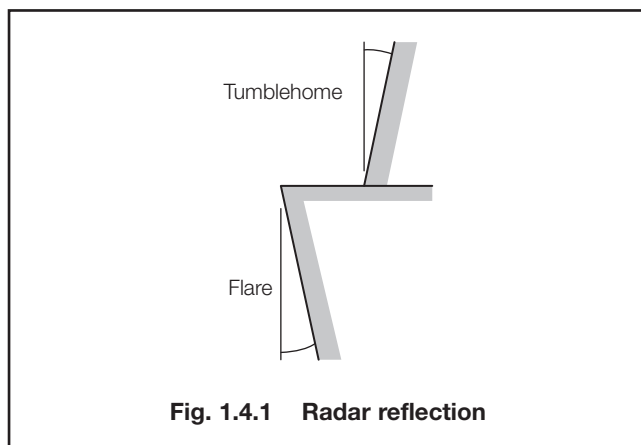
4.1.2 All constructional details on the exposed surfaces of the hull, superstructures, masts and equipment above the design waterline should be considered for their radar reflection properties.

4.1.3 The Radar Cross Section (RCS) of the ship will primarily be controlled by shaping. This concentrates the returned energy into a small number of narrow beams, orientated in sacrificial directions or by directing the returned energy at an angle away from the incident energy. The extent of the orientation of the sacrificial directions should be agreed between the Owner and designer.



4.1.4 Appropriate modelling tools and expert judgement should be used for RCS calculation and assessment at various stages of the design iteration. Use of these tools and judgement should be agreed between the Owner and designer. Consideration should also be given to the RCS measurement of equipment.

4.1.5 Flare and tumblehome as defined in Fig. 1.4.1 are to be used where possible on all otherwise vertical surfaces. The angle used should be greater than  $6^\circ$ . Consideration should be given to using a single or multiple elevation angles, see 4.1.3. This practice also eliminates the dihedral reflector potentially formed between a horizontal and a vertical surface.



**Fig. 1.4.1 Radar reflection**

4.1.6 Orthogonal corners give rise to high radar returns in the direction of the originating antenna. Creating dihedral or trihedral right angled reflectors should be avoided. This applies equally to disconnected orthogonal corners, where two (or three) surfaces do not meet but are orthogonal and a clear line of sight exists between them. This can include items such as: boat bays, reception areas, superstructure overhangs, sponsons and equipment mounts.

4.1.7 Corners which would otherwise be orthogonal should be made non-orthogonal by a minimum of  $4^\circ$ , i.e., avoiding an internal angle of between  $86^\circ$  and  $94^\circ$ . Any shaping which uses angles less than  $4^\circ$  could inadvertently be made ineffective by local plate deformation or build tolerances.

4.1.8 Where doors providing access to the deck penetrate sloped structure, it will be desirable for the door itself to be hung vertically on its hinges. To achieve this it is necessary to recess the door into the sloped plate. Where this approach is adopted, the structure of the door recess should be made non-orthogonal by rotating the vertical sides of the recess by a minimum of  $4^\circ$ .

4.1.9 Avoid single curved surfaces (such as cylinders or cones) with diameters greater than 30 mm. Consideration should be given to replace these items by combinations of flat plates (with appropriate orientations), shielding or choice of appropriate material property.

4.1.10 The use of lattice type masts and equipment supports should be avoided.

4.1.11 Consideration should be given to reducing the amount of clutter (microgeometry) by design, hiding it behind bulkheads or shielding (i.e., shutters for when equipment is not in use).

4.1.12 Where the use of homogenous reflective material is impractical for shielding, a mesh of electrical conductive fibres with an appropriate mesh spacing to simulate a reflective surface over the radar frequency range of interest can be used. This can also be applied to windows and non-structural bulkheads. Where a mesh is applied to windows which may be used for navigation purposes consideration should be given to the effects on visibility.

4.1.13 The number of external ladders should be kept to a minimum. Where they are unavoidable, ladder uprights should be rotated to avoid forming dihedral corners with the bulkheads on which they are mounted. As an alternative, external ladders could be constructed from a material translucent to radar.

4.1.14 Consideration should be given to the use of radar absorbent materials either as appliques or more preferably as an inherent part of the structure i.e., Structural Radar Absorbent Material (SRAM).

4.1.15 Composites are generally semi-transparent to radar and therefore attention should be paid to equipment/structures placed behind composite structures. Alternatively, consideration can be given to altering the composite properties, applying a metallic backing to the composite or by using SRAM.

## 4.2 Use of aluminium alloys

4.2.1 Due to the poor performance of aluminium alloys at high temperatures they are generally not to be used for items of main hull structure unless suitable insulation is arranged. Safety critical items such as life boat davits, ladders, fire main supports, emergency escape route bulkheads and floor plates, etc., are not to be constructed of aluminium alloys.

## Section 5 Military design requirements

### 5.1 RAS seating and support structure

5.1.1 The strength of seats and supporting structure is to be sufficient to withstand the forces imposed by the equipment for all possible operating conditions and loads from ship motions, see Pt 5, Ch 3,5.3. Design calculations are to be submitted.

5.1.2 The seating and supporting structure is to be tested in accordance with Naval Authority requirements. Care is to be taken to ensure that the test arrangements represent the actual magnitude and direction of loads, and that the loading is applied to all relevant parts of the supporting structure rather than local items only.

5.1.3 Guidance on the loads and requirements for replenishment at sea operations are given in Ch 2,9.2.

5.1.4 A sufficient deck area clear of projections and equipment suitably strengthened for impact loading is to be provided for the landing of stores and equipment.

5.1.5 RAS equipment is to be designed in accordance with the requirements of the Naval Authority, see Pt 1, Ch 2,2.2.6 and Vol 3, Pt 1, Ch 5.

## **5.2 Vehicle and equipment holding down arrangements**

5.2.1 The strength and stiffness of the holding down arrangements and the supporting structure under is to be sufficient to withstand the forces imposed by the vehicle(s) and or equipment for all possible operating conditions and loads from ship motions, see Pt 5, Ch 3,5.4. The design calculations are to be submitted.

## **5.3 Masts and externally mounted sensors or equipment**

5.3.1 Masts are to be of adequate strength and stiffness for the equipment they support. The design calculations are to be submitted.

5.3.2 Plated mast structure is to be treated as superstructure and the structural requirements for superstructure as defined in Tables 3.3.9 and 3.3.10 in Pt 6, Ch 3 for NS1 type vessels and Pt 6, Ch 3,4.8.4 and 4.8.5 for NS2 and NS3 type vessels are to be applied. Minimum requirements are given in Pt 6, Ch 3,2 and Pt 6, Ch 2,2.9.

5.3.3 Pole mast structure is to be designed to be within the allowable stress limits defined in Pt 6, Ch 3,16.

5.3.4 The excitation of the mast by ship motions, machinery, propellers and equipment is to be specially considered and the designers calculations are to be submitted. Where possible the designer should avoid mast natural frequencies within  $\pm 20$  per cent of significant global mast excitation frequencies. Where this is not possible the vibration amplitudes should be calculated to confirm they are within acceptable limits for the mast structure and equipment. In general, ship motions can be estimated from Pt 5, Ch 3,2. See *also* Pt 6, Ch 2,4. It is recommended that the frequency of the first mode of vibration of a pole mast be not less than 3,0 Hz to prevent potential excitation from the first vertical hull girder vibration mode in the range 1-2,5 Hz. The frequency of the first mode of vibration of a pole mast should be a minimum of 1 Hz above the first vertical hull girder mode.

5.3.5 Structure supporting radar or equipment critical to the operation of ship systems is to be of adequate stiffness to maintain the alignment of the equipment within the tolerance agreed with the manufacturer.

5.3.6 The mast should be designed and sited such that it produces minimum interference with the ships sensors and equipment.

5.3.7 Suitable permanent access arrangements are to be provided inside and on the exterior of the mast for maintenance of the structure and equipment. Provision is to be made for the drainage of water from all parts of the mast, both internal and external. Where applicable, protective coatings are to be applied in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 6,2.6. In certain cases an increased corrosion allowance (e.g., at the mast base) should be considered.

5.3.8 Mast support arrangements are to be of suitable strength and stiffness and fully integrated into the hull or superstructure. The design calculations and arrangements are to be submitted.

5.3.9 For equipment distributed along the length of the ship, consideration is to be given to the global stiffness of the ships' hull girder in relation to the alignment tolerances required for the equipment (increasing hull stiffness is not normally an efficient option).

5.3.10 High powered transmitting equipment where fitted is to be considered for the effects of electromagnetic influence on adjacent equipment and manned spaces.

## **5.4 Towed arrays, towed bodies and towing points**

5.4.1 The support structure of towed systems is to be suitably integrated into the main hull structure. Any additional primary stiffening is to be extended for at least three frame spaces forward and aft of the equipment.

5.4.2 The towing point and associated equipment is to be located over a primary longitudinal girder and preferably supported by a transverse web frame. The designers calculations are to be submitted for the supporting structure using the 1,5 times the maximum breaking load of the cable.

5.4.3 Towed array handling equipment is to be designed in accordance with the requirements of the Naval Authority, see Pt 1, Ch 2,2.2.6. The seating of array handling equipment is to be adequately supported.

## **5.5 Crane support arrangements**

5.5.1 Crane pedestals are to be efficiently supported and in general, are to be carried through the deck and satisfactorily scarfed into the surrounding structure. Alternatively, crane pedestals may comprise a foundation, in which case the foundation and its supporting structure are to be of substantial construction. Proposals for other support arrangements will be specially considered.

5.5.2 The scantlings of masts and derrick posts, intended to support derrick booms, conveyor arms and similar loads, and of crane pedestals are to be designed in accordance with the requirements of the Naval Authority, see Pt 1, Ch 2,2.2.6. When submitting plans for the proposed foundation, the design calculations are to be included.

5.5.3 Deck plating and underdeck structure are to be reinforced under masts, derrick posts or crane pedestals, and where the deck is penetrated the deck plating is to be suitably increased.

5.5.4 The pedestal or proposed arrangement is to be designed with respect to the worst possible combinations of loads resulting from the crane self weight, live load, wind and crane accelerations together with those resulting from the ship's heel and trim. The designer's calculations are to be submitted.

5.5.5 Stowage arrangements are to be taken into account when calculating the loads applied to the pedestal.

5.5.6 Insert plates are to be incorporated in the deck plating in way of crane foundations. The thickness of the insert plates is to be as required by the designer's calculations but is in no case is to be taken as less than 1,5 times the thickness of the adjacent attached plating.

5.5.7 All inserts are to have well radiused corners and be suitably edge prepared prior to welding. All welding in way is to be double continuous and full penetration where necessary. Tapers are to be not less than three to one.

## Section 6 Magazine design and construction

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 The design, construction and maintenance of magazines are to be in accordance with Naval Authority Regulations. All Regulations, recommendations and requirements are to be confirmed to have been applied. See Pt 1, Ch 2,1.1.13.

6.1.2 Where Naval Authority Regulations are not specified the following requirements apply. Risk assessment may be used to justify alternative arrangements. This is to be approved by the Naval Authority or organisation acting on the Naval Authority's behalf. All recommendations and requirements are to be demonstrated to have been applied.

6.1.3 A statement of magazine requirements is to be defined and is to include:

- (a) Armaments requirement; listing the expected munitions and material to be carried in magazines. Identifying the items which can or are to be co-located and those which must be stored separately or separated. Any special requirements for the storage of particular items are also to be listed including:
  - (i) environmental conditions; and
  - (ii) conductive deck coating requirements.
- (b) Construction materials requirement; describing the permissible materials or required alternatives for magazine structures and munition stowages.
- (c) Magazine Labelling requirement; describing the required labels and their locations.

(d) Fluid Systems requirement; describing the operating fluids and operating pressures of all fluid systems within the magazine boundaries.

(e) Munition handling requirement; describing the equipment and space requirements to enable the munitions to be safely handled, maintained and stowed.

6.1.4 Munition securing and handling equipment is to be in accordance with requirements of the Armaments Requirement or, with special consideration, LR's LAME Code. Explosive stores are to be classified and stowed in accordance with the armament requirement, see 6.1.3.

6.1.15 Ready use magazines are not be used for the permanent stowage of munitions. They are to comply with the requirements of this Section for the appropriate magazine type.

### 6.2 Definitions

6.2.1 Munitions are a complete device (e.g., missile, shell, mine, demolitions store, etc., charged with explosives, propellant, pyrotechnics, or initiating composition), for use in conjunction with offensive, defensive, training, or non-operational purposes, including those parts of the weapon systems containing explosives.

6.2.2 Explosives are all weapons, missiles or stores containing substances especially designed to produce an explosive, propulsive, incendiary or pyrotechnic effect for use in conjunction with offensive, defensive, training, or non-operational purposes.

6.2.3 Integral magazines are those which are bounded by the elements of the main hull structure. They are specifically designed and constructed for the safe permanent stowage of the main outfit of designated munitions defined in the armaments requirement, see 6.1.3.

6.2.4 Independent magazines are those that are non integral, portable magazines greater than 3 m<sup>3</sup> and the requirements for integral magazines are to be applied where applicable.

6.2.5 Small magazines are compartments opening off the upper deck which are of shape and size which does not permit walk-in and where the contents are handled from outside. Small magazines are to be specifically designed and constructed for the safe permanent or ready use stowage of munitions defined in the armaments requirement, see 6.1.3.

6.2.6 Magazine lockers are magazines less than or equal to 3 m<sup>3</sup>, designed and constructed for the safe stowage of explosive stores for which in built magazine facilities have not been provided. They are to be free standing and surrounded by an air gap such that they do not have an adjacent compartment.

6.2.7 Magazine boxes are non-integral, portable magazines with a capacity less than or equal to 3 m<sup>3</sup> and capable of being jettisoned overboard.

6.2.8 Pyrotechnics lockers are to comply with the requirements for small magazines, magazine lockers or boxes as appropriate.

6.2.9 Class A fire divisions are those divisions formed by bulkheads and decks which comply with the requirements of IMO resolution MSC 61 (67) *Fire test procedures code*, Annex 1, Part 3.

6.2.10 Flash is a product of an explosion embracing transient flame and associated pressure wave and the electromagnetic wave.

6.2.11 Designated danger areas are compartments and spaces not fitted out specifically for the stowage of munitions, but where munitions are occasionally present.

### 6.3 Arrangement of magazines

6.3.1 Integral magazines and small magazines containing munitions or propellant are not to be sited adjacent to high fire risk and other compartments of high fire risk listed below:

- (a) Machinery spaces of category A.
- (b) Galleys.
- (c) Switch boards or electrical control rooms.
- (d) Tanks containing liquids with a flashpoint lower than 60°C or with a temperature above 32°C.
- (e) Compartments containing liquid oxygen.
- (f) Fuel, petrol, oil or lubricant pump spaces.
- (g) Accommodation spaces.
- (h) Control Spaces.

6.3.2 Access is not permitted from any of the spaces defined in 6.3.1, to the magazine.

6.3.3 For ships where the above arrangement is completely impracticable the magazine is to be separated from the high risk space by a minimum 600 mm wide cofferdam and constructed of steel or an A-30 fire division. Cofferdams are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2,4.10, are to be ventilated and are not to be designed or used for stowage purposes.

6.3.4 No gasoline or pressurised bottle stowage is to be within a 6 m radius of any magazine or locker.

6.3.5 Integral magazines and small magazines containing munitions may be sited adjacent to the following compartments of moderate fire risk provided that they are separated by an A-30 fire division:

- (a) Auxiliary machinery spaces including pump rooms air condition plant spaces, refrigeration compartment spaces and hydraulic compartments not containing flammable hydraulic fluids.
- (b) Service spaces, including laundries and workshops.
- (c) Uptakes and downtakes.
- (d) Hangars, docks and vehicle decks.
- (e) Paint, flammable, battery and acid stores.
- (f) Tanks or compartments containing independent tanks, of liquids other than sea or fresh water.

6.3.6 Magazine lockers are to be sited in a safe location on a weather deck, surrounded by an air gap of at least 300 mm on all sides and where applicable protected from direct sunlight by fitting solar cladding over top and sides with an air gap of at least 25 mm.

6.3.7 Within magazines arrangements are to be such to ensure that all munitions, including those in transit packaging, are safely stowed and suitably restrained in their stowage for predicted motions and environmental conditions as identified in the armaments requirement. Separate stowage is to be provided for each type of explosive except where specified by the armaments requirement, see 6.1.3.

6.3.8 Magazines are to provide suitable electromagnetic screening and earthing arrangements for munitions as identified in the armaments requirement, see 6.1.3.

6.3.9 Magazine boxes are to be sited on a weather deck with an air gap of at least 300 mm between the box and the deck or surrounding deck houses. They are to be located in a position suitable for jettisoning of the contents and capable of remote release.

6.3.10 Detonators are to be stowed separately from other explosives in dedicated lockers or storerooms, such spaces are to be treated as designated danger areas. Co-location may be allowed as identified in the armaments requirement, see 6.1.3 (a).

### 6.4 Structure

6.4.1 Integral magazines are to be of permanent watertight or gastight construction (see Pt 3, Ch 2,1.3 and 7.7) and formed by permanent A-15 class divisions. A-0 class divisions may be allowed if spaces adjacent to the magazine do not contain flammable products.

6.4.2 Independent magazines are to be of weathertight metal construction, see Pt 3, Ch 2,1.3. The interior is to be insulated with a non-combustible insulation providing an A-15 standard.

6.4.3 Magazine lockers and magazine boxes are to be constructed of steel. Other material may be accepted as identified in the construction materials requirement, see 6.1.3.

6.4.4 The scantlings of integral magazine boundaries are to be determined from Table 3.3.15 in Pt 6, Ch 3 for NS1 ships and the general plating and stiffening equations in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.8 for other ships. The design pressure,  $P_{mag}$ , is to be derived as shown in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.11.

6.4.5 If venting from the magazine space is via a vent trunk, the required scantlings for the vent trunk structure are to be calculated as for magazine boundary requirements.

6.4.6 Vent plate structure and fittings are to be designed to meet the appropriate deck or bulkhead pressure requirements according to location.

## 6.5 Environmental conditions and ventilation

6.5.1 The temperature of the magazine is to be maintained at the environmental conditions required by the armaments requirement, see 6.1.3. Generally munitions are to be stored at temperatures greater than 7°C and less than 35°C with a relative humidity between 30 and 70 per cent. Munitions with propellant are to be maintained below 32°C.

6.5.2 The air conditioning may be recirculatory if confined to the ventilation of magazines only. If the magazine is to be ventilated with other compartments then the magazine is to vent to atmosphere. High fire risk and high value compartments should not share ventilation with magazines.

6.5.3 Where a magazine or magazine complex may require to be manned, fresh air make up, via the Air Filtration Unit is to be provided.

6.5.4 Emergency life support apparatus is to be sited in magazines where personnel are required to be permanently working.

6.5.5 Ventilation trunking is to be of an equivalent fire integrity standard as the magazine.

6.5.6 Air conditioning and ventilation systems are to be designed to maintain watertight integrity and flash.

## 6.6 Detail arrangements

6.6.1 Clear labelling of all magazine openings and equipment is to be maintained in accordance with the magazine labelling requirement, see 6.1.3. The following requirements are to be applied as a minimum:

- (a) Integral, small and independent magazines:
  - (i) the space is a magazine.
  - (ii) open lights and flame are to be kept away.
  - (iii) the magazine door is to be kept shut.
  - (iv) sources of ignition such as matches, lighters and pocket torches are to be removed prior to entry.
  - (v) not to lift with contents (in the case of independent magazines).
  - (vi) magazine otherside markings in adjacent compartments.
- (b) Magazine lockers and boxes:
  - (i) the container is a magazine locker or box.
  - (ii) open lights and flame are to be kept away.
  - (iii) the box is to be kept shut.
  - (iv) not to lift with contents.

6.6.2 Magazines are to be insulated with non-combustible material as necessary to prevent the condensation of moisture.

## 6.7 Openings

6.7.1 Openings in the magazine and lockers such as doors, hatches and escape scuttles are to be of equivalent strength and fire integrity as the surrounding structure.

6.7.2 Accesses to magazines are to be fitted with suitable security arrangements to prevent unauthorised access. Openings are to be capable of being secured from the inside and fitted with external locks. Emergency escapes are to be opened from the inside only.

6.7.3 Locking arrangements on all magazines and lockers are to be designed to prevent the possibility of entry by removing the hinge pins.

## 6.8 Piping, cabling and electrical systems

6.8.1 In order to eliminate potential sources of ignition in a magazine in which flammable mixtures are liable to collect, hazardous areas for magazines are to be identified and electrical equipment within the magazine is to be selected and installed in accordance with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 10, Ch 1,14.

6.8.2 Lighting is to be operated from outside the space. Indication is to be provided at the switch location when circuits are energised.

6.8.3 All apparatus fitted in magazines is to be capable of being isolated on all poles from any source of electrical energy. The preferred method of isolation is by means of a multipole switch. Services that operate on low power at low voltage and are required to operate continuously do not require local isolation. Fire and flood detection and internal communications systems are included amongst such services.

6.8.4 Only services which are required for equipment in the magazine are to penetrate boundaries of the magazine.

6.8.5 Air and hydraulic systems used within magazines are to be low pressure systems only. Non-flammable hydraulic fluid is to be used.

6.8.6 Electrically controlled handling machinery may be fitted in magazines that continuous earth monitoring is provided in the control circuits of the machinery.

6.8.7 Equipment and light fixtures installed in magazines which may be subjected to mechanical damage are to be equipped with suitable protection against such damage. All protective metal guards for apparatus and cabling as well as the apparatus itself must be effectively earthed. Where required conduit is to be electrically continuous and bonded to earth to form an effective shield.

## 6.9 Fire protection

6.9.1 Integral and small magazines are to be fitted with a spray system capable of rapid reaction, with manual activation and a suitable permanent drainage system.

6.9.2 The spray system is to be capable of delivering 30 litres/m<sup>2</sup>/min. Large compartments may be fitted with independent spray systems covering separate areas.



6.9.3 Spray heads are to be arranged within magazines so that all stowages and boundaries are covered when sprayed.

6.9.4 Spray systems for integral magazines are to be fed from two separate sections of the ship's water supply.

6.9.5 Magazine lockers and boxes are to be fitted with flood and drainage systems. The flood system is to be operated by a manual control adjacent to the locker but at least 5 m away or 3 m if suitably screened and fed from a pressurised water supply.

6.9.6 Compartments other than tanks or void spaces adjacent to magazines are to be fitted with smoke or fire detectors.

6.9.7 Locking arrangements are to be fitted to all spray, flooding, drain valves and cocks with the exception of spray control valves when housed in a lockable cabinet.

6.9.8 Magazines are to be provided with fire extinguishers commensurate with risk classification, size and type of vessel. Generally one extinguisher should be fitted on the inside and one on the out side of the magazine.

6.9.9 Designated danger areas (DDA) where munitions are handled such as weapon lifts, transfer passages, weapon preparation areas, hangars, flight decks, docks and RAS points are to be fitted with similar fire protection systems to the magazine, commensurate with the risk classification and type of vessel. LR may allow system requirements to be reduced to the provision of sufficient hose points based on the risk classification.

6.9.10 Magazines are to be coated with fire resistant paint and the deck covering is to be non spark and non slip. Any requirements for a conductive deck area and personnel will be identified in the armaments requirement, see 6.1.3. Where there is a conducting deck requirement an anti static precaution notice is to be displayed.

## 6.10 Testing

6.10.1 Magazines are to be tested in accordance with the gas tight requirements of Pt 6, Ch 6,6.8.

## Section 7 Design guidance for nuclear, biological and chemical defence

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 The arrangements of hull structure for chemical, biological, radiological and nuclear defence (CBRN) are to generally be in accordance with the requirements of this Section. The final design and arrangements are to be in accordance with the requirements of the Naval Authority. Where specifically requested, LR can undertake the inspection and certification of CBRN arrangements or gas tight integrity, see Pt 6, Ch 6,6.8.

7.1.2 The subdivision of the ship for CBRN defence is achieved by the provision of zones which minimise the consequences of an attack. The zone boundaries provide protective barriers to resist the spread of primary and secondary weapon effects.

7.1.3 The number and location of zone boundaries and distribution of systems within those zones is best determined by carrying out a vulnerability analysis as detailed in Section 2.

7.1.4 The effect of zones on, and requirements for damage control should also be considered. This is best assessed by testing the zone arrangement with a series of 'what if' damage scenarios. A good zone arrangement will aid damage control.

7.1.5 An effective CBRN defence is to comprise of three distinct phases:

- Monitoring and detection by the provision of systems to detect the presence of and to identify the threat both outside the ship and within the zones.
- Protection of the ship and crew, using a pressurised citadel and zones with gas-tight boundaries and airlocks. Protection is also achieved with the filtration of air drawn into the ship and enclosing machinery intakes and exhausts.
- Decontamination of spaces within the ship is achieved using a suitable ventilation and filtration system. Decontamination of the ship itself is largely achieved using pre-wetting systems. For the crew and equipment, cleansing stations can be used.

### 7.2 Definitions

7.2.1 A citadel is the gastight envelope of the hull and superstructure. It consists of a group of interconnecting compartments enclosed by a gas-tight boundary with the independent systems necessary to provide a toxic free area free from any CBRN hazard. Large ships may have sub-citadels or more than one citadel.

7.2.2 A zone is a smaller group of compartments within the citadel with some or all of the independent systems necessary to provide a toxic free area that is free from any CBRN hazard.

7.2.3 An airlock is a compartment with two doors between the toxic free area and the source of the CBRN hazard or cleansing station. Airlocks are normally purged with clean air to allow personnel to pass from one area to another without contaminants entering the toxic free area.

7.2.4 A cleansing station is a group of compartments suitably arranged and equipped whereby CBRN decontamination of personnel and materials can take place.

7.2.5 Individual protective equipment is the personal clothing and equipment required to protect an individual from CBRN hazard. It normally consists of a protective suit and respirator.

## 7.3 NS1 and NS2 ship requirements

7.3.1 The requirements of this Section deal only with the hull structure and mainly involve the arrangement of major divisions within the hull. Provision is to be made within the layout and design of the ship for the compartments required for CBRN defence. As a consequence they are to be considered from a very early stage in the design and in consultation with the Naval Authority, Owner, designer and LR.

7.3.2 Unless otherwise required by the Naval Authority, the citadel's length is to be divided into zones. It is recommended that the zone boundaries coincide with main transverse watertight bulkheads and extend from the keel to the highest superstructure deck.

7.3.3 A suitable pressure above atmospheric is to be maintained inside the citadel and zones. Zones with a higher risk of contamination are to be maintained at a lower pressure than the adjacent zones but higher than atmospheric. For example those containing machinery spaces with ventilation to atmosphere open during CBRN conditions.

7.3.4 For NS1 ships at least three cleansing stations are to be provided in separate zones. For NS2 ships at least two cleansing stations are to be provided in separate zones. They are to be located so that safe and direct entry is possible from the weather deck. One cleansing station is to be located close to the medical complex with access for stretcher borne casualties.

## 7.4 NS3 ship requirements

7.4.1 The requirements of this Section deal only with the hull structure and mainly involve the arrangement of major divisions within the hull. As a consequence they are to be considered from a very early stage in the design and in consultation with the Naval Authority, Owner, designer and LR.

7.4.2 For NS3 ships it may be impractical to provide zones and a citadel. In this case CBRN protection is to be provided by either individual protective equipment or sanctuaries.

7.4.3 Sanctuaries may be integral or temporary compartments on board the ship and are to be provided with an airlock, cleansing station and ventilation systems similar to that of a zone.

7.4.4 If individual protective equipment is provided arrangements are to be made to ensure that operation of the ship is possible such that it can reach a suitable place of refuge. For example, crew provisions, equipment and compartment accesses are to be suitable for persons wearing individual protective equipment.

## 7.5 Zones

7.5.1 The boundaries of zones are to be gastight and are to be tested in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 6,6.8. Ventilation and trunking is not to pass through zone boundaries.

7.5.2 Each zone is generally to be provided with a total air conditioning system. All air entering the citadel is to pass through CBRN filters. These filters may be bypassed when the ship is not in a threat situation.

7.5.3 Consideration is to be given to the provision of independent services in each zone for the following systems:

- (a) Electrical power generation and distribution.
- (b) Chilled water cooling.
- (c) Fire pumps, piping and hydrants (including pre-wetting).
- (d) Bilge pumps, piping and discharge.
- (e) Internal communications.
- (f) Machinery or damage control surveillance or control.
- (g) Compressed air.
- (h) Emergency crew support.
- (i) Smoke clearance arrangements.
- (k) Air start arrangements in the appropriate zones.

7.5.4 At least two airlocks to the weather decks are to be provided in each zone. Access between zones are to be fitted with airlocks. Consideration is to be given to providing gas-tight connections adjacent to this access for the provision of the services listed in 7.5.3.

7.5.5 Consideration should be given to the use of materials that do not emit toxic fumes.

## 7.6 CBRN hardening

7.6.1 In determining the layout and design of the ship consideration should be given to the hardening of the ship to improve its capability in an CBRN environment.

7.6.2 All external compartments and equipment not included in the citadel should be sealed or designed such that residual contaminants cannot be trapped.

7.6.3 All access for operation and maintenance of equipment should be designed for personnel wearing individual protective equipment.

7.6.4 Shelters are to be provided deep within the ship for the temporary protection from radiation of the crew during nuclear attack.

7.6.5 Command and control centres should ideally be sited such that they are afforded the maximum protection against radiation from nuclear attack. All essential equipment should be designed to resist incident nuclear radiation (INR) and nuclear electromagnetic pulse (NEMP).

8.1.7 Wherever possible, gratings or anti-sabotage bars fitted to underwater openings are to be arranged across and aligned with the flow of the water past the ship so as to minimise turbulence. They should be deep in section and have well radiused edges.

---

## **7.7 Structural requirements**

7.7.1 The scantlings of all gas-tight zone, citadel and airlock boundaries are to be capable of withstanding two times the maximum differential pressure that can occur in service and the scantlings are to be calculated in accordance with the relevant Sections of Pt 6, Ch 3. Gas-tight boundaries are to be tested in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 6,6.8.

7.7.2 All openings in gas-tight boundaries are to be fitted with gastight closing appliances and tested in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 6,6.8 and are to be of equivalent strength to the structure in which they are placed.

7.7.3 Watertight and weathertight closing appliances may be considered gas-tight if a pressure greater than atmospheric is, and can be maintained inside the zone, citadel or airlock.

---

## **■ Section 8** **Design guidance for the reduction of radiated noise underwater due to sea-inlets or other openings**

### **8.1 General**

8.1.1 The number of underwater openings should be kept to a minimum.

8.1.2 To aid in the reduction of underwater radiated noise, sea tubes and/or boxes are to be provided for each sea-water hull inlet or outlet. Where a number of openings are adjacent, consideration should be given to fitting a common plenum chamber with a single opening in the outer bottom. Care must be taken to avoid resonance of the chamber.

8.1.3 The outside of all underwater openings is to be flush with the surrounding hull plating. Particular care is to be taken to provide smooth surface on the inside of all sea tubes and discharges.

8.1.4 For sea openings required to be blanked, a smooth mating face surrounding the sea tube on to which the mating flange of the blank can sit is to be provided.

8.1.5 Adequate protective coating and cathodic protection should be considered at the interface of the valve and sea tube.

8.1.6 No underwater opening, at a level lower than the deep design draught, is to be fitted within 6 m of the aftermost part of the aft sonar dome.





# Military Load Specification

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 2

Sections 1 &amp; 2

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **External blast**
- 3 **Internal blast**
- 4 **Fragmentation protection**
- 5 **Underwater explosion (shock)**
- 6 **Whipping**
- 7 **Residual strength**
- 8 **Strengthening requirements for beach landing operations**
- 9 **Military installation and operational loads**
- 10 **Aircraft operations**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 This Chapter contains design requirements that have to be complied with as part of **100A1** classification, ship type or a special notation such as **IB**.

1.1.2 Where significant regions of the hull structure are rendered ineffective by the threat under consideration, a residual strength calculation is to be carried out to verify the capability of the remaining structure.

1.1.3 For structure designed in accordance with the appropriate Sections of this Chapter the following notations will be assigned. The level of threat and notation will remain confidential to the Owner and Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') unless requested otherwise.

- **EB** for external blast assessment.
- **IB** for internal blast assessment.
- **FP** for fragmentation protection.
- **SP** for small arms protection.
- **SH** for assessment against underwater explosion (shock).
- **WH** for whipping assessment.
- **RSA** for a residual strength assessment, see Pt 6, Ch 4.4.

1.1.4 The notations that are applicable for a particular ship are to be agreed between the builder or designer, Owner, Naval Authority and LR as defined in Chapter 1.

## ■ Section 2 External blast

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 Structures and their response to air blast loadings, can be considered to fall into two categories:

- Diffraction-type structures.
- Drag-type structures.

2.1.2 In a nuclear type explosion, the diffraction-type structures would be affected mainly by diffraction loading and the drag-type structures by drag loading.

2.1.3 Large flat sided structures, with few openings, will respond mainly to diffraction loading because it will take an appreciable time for the blast wave to engulf the structure and the pressure differential between front and rear exists during the whole of this period. A diffraction-type structure is primarily sensitive to the peak over-pressure in the shock wave to which it is exposed.

2.1.4 If structures are small, or have numerous openings, the pressures on different areas of the structure are quickly equalised; the diffraction forces operate only for a very short time. The response of this type of structure is then mainly due to the dynamic pressure (or drag forces) of the blast wind. This is typical of masts and funnels. The drag loading on the structure is determined not only by the dynamic pressure but also by the shape of the structure. The drag coefficient is less for rounded or streamlined structures than for irregular or sharp edged structures.

2.1.5 The relative importance of each type of loading in causing damage will depend upon the type of structure as well as the characteristics of the blast wave.

### 2.2 Threat level determination

2.2.1 Ships complying with the requirements of this Section will be eligible for the notation **EB1**, **EB2**, **EB3** or **EB4** as defined in 2.3.

2.2.2 External blast loading can come from a variety of threats the two main ones are far field from nuclear or fuel air type threats and near field from detonation by close in weapon systems. This part of the Rules is concerned only with the far field explosions.

2.2.3 The actual threat level used in the calculation of performance and the areas of the ship to be protected by this design method are to be specified by the Owner and will remain confidential to LR.

### 2.3 Notation assessment levels and methodology

2.3.1 Design to withstand increasing levels of blast pressure needs to employ increasing sophistication and complexity of analysis method if the structure is to be kept lightweight.

2.3.2 An **EB1** assessment method may utilise the simple design methodology suggested in 2.8 for structural assessment. The design criteria should ensure that the structure behaves in an elastic perfectly plastic manner with small displacements when subjected to the proposed blast level.

2.3.3 An **EB2** assessment method may utilise an extension of simple design methodology suggested in 2.8 to look at the elasto-plastic behaviour for the structural assessment. The structure is to be designed such that maximum displacements experienced by all structure does not compromise the structural integrity, water or gas-tight integrity or functioning of critical items of equipment required for operation of the ship and systems that is attached or adjacent to the structure.

2.3.4 An **EB3** assessment method should employ a failure criterion based on an elasto-plastic methodology which considers the following structural responses:

- Local response of the plating, here the plating can be represented as a 2D plate strip and a large displacement, elasto-plastic dynamic response analysis carried out using a beam-column approach.
- Local bending response of stiffened panels, the preferred model will be to evaluate the non-linear dynamic response of a single stiffener with an attached strip of plating modelled as a beam-column with the appropriate boundary conditions under blast pressure.
- A lumped parameter model can be employed to look at 'overall sideways' response of a ships superstructure.

The structure is to be designed such that maximum displacements experienced by all structure does not compromise the structural integrity, water or gas-tight integrity or functioning of critical items of equipment required for operation of the ship and systems that are attached or adjacent to the structure.

2.3.5 An **EB4** assessment method should employ a full non-linear analysis using finite element methods to predict the structural response. Using this methodology it is assumed that the ship must survive, this implies the need to retain primary hull structural integrity, water and gas-tight integrity or functioning of critical items of equipment required for operation of the ship and systems that is attached or adjacent to the structure.

2.3.6 For **EB3** and **EB4** notations, the assumptions made for initial deformations are to be submitted. Where these differ for normal ship building practice, the details are to be recorded on the approved plan.

## 2.4 Definitions

2.4.1 Atmospheric pressure  $P_o$  is to be taken as 101,3 kN/m<sup>2</sup>.

2.4.2 The dimensions of superstructure blocks are given in Fig. 2.2.1.

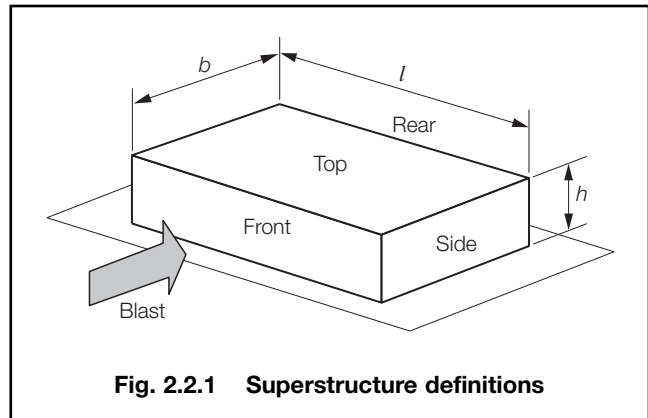


Fig. 2.2.1 Superstructure definitions

## 2.5 Blast pressure loads

2.5.1 For explosions of different magnitude, the range at which the peak blast incident and dynamic pressures occur can be scaled using the following equation:

$$D_i = D_n \left( \frac{1000}{W} \right)^{1/3}$$

where

$D_i$  = incident distance

$D_n$  = distance at which the pressure occurs, in metres

$W$  = equivalent weight of TNT for the explosive, in kg.

2.5.2 Similarly for weapons of a different magnitude, the duration,  $t_{p+}$ , of a blast can be scaled using the scaling equation:

$$t_i = t_n \left( \frac{1000}{W} \right)^{1/3}$$

where

$t_i$  = incident duration

$t_n$  = duration the pressure occurs, in seconds

$W$  = equivalent weight of TNT for the explosive, in kg.

2.5.3 When a pressure shock front strikes a solid surface placed normal to the direction of shock travel there is an instantaneous rise in pressure above that of the shock front itself. The total pressure referred to as the reflected pressure is given by:

$$P_r = 2P_i (7P_o + 4P_i) / (7P_o + P_i) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

when

$P_i \ll P_o$  (small charge at large stand off)  $P_r$  may be taken as  $2P_i$  similarly when  $P_i \gg P_o$  (large charge at short range)  $P_r$  may be taken as  $8P_i$

where

$P_i$  = peak blast incident over-pressure in kN/m<sup>2</sup> from Fig. 2.2.3.

2.5.4 The reflected pressure,  $P_r$  can be assumed to diminish linearly until it reaches the stagnation pressure,  $P_s$ , at time,  $t_s$ , where

$$t_s = 3d/U \text{ seconds}$$

where

$d$  = is the lesser of  $h$  or  $l/2$  in metres, see Fig. 2.2.1

$U$  = shock front velocity in m/s

$$= U_o \sqrt{1 + 6P_i / 7P_o}$$

# Military Load Specification

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 2

## Section 2

$$U_o = \text{speed of sound in air in m/s} \\ = 332 + 0,6T_o \\ T_o = \text{ambient air temperature in } ^\circ\text{C}.$$

2.5.5 The passage of the blast is immediately followed by a transient 'blast wind' that exerts a supplementary dynamic pressure which is given by:

$$q_i = 2,5 (P_i^2 / (7P_o + P_i)) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$P_i$  = peak blast incident over-pressure in kN/m<sup>2</sup> from Fig. 2.2.3

The duration of the dynamic pressure,  $t_{q+}$ , can be determined from Fig. 2.2.3.

2.5.6 The stagnation pressure,  $P_s$ , is determined for the front of the superstructure block by:

$$P_s = P_i + C_D q_i \text{ kN/m}^2$$

and for the top, sides and rear by

$$P_s = P_i - C_D q_i \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$P_i$  = peak incident pressure from Fig. 2.2.3

$q_i$  = the dynamic pressure from 2.5.5

$C_D$  = the drag coefficient of the structure from Table 2.2.1.

**Table 2.2.1 Drag coefficients**

| Structure                 | Drag coefficient, $C_D$ |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| Ship sides                | +1,0                    |
| Front face                | +1,0                    |
| Top and sides             |                         |
| 0–170 kN/m <sup>2</sup>   | +0,4                    |
| 170–340 kN/m <sup>2</sup> | +0,3                    |
| 340–930 kN/m <sup>2</sup> | +0,2                    |
| Masts and funnels         | +0,75                   |

2.5.7 For the top and sides of the superstructure the peak pressure will occur at time  $t_t$  which is given by:

$$t_t = b/U \text{ seconds}$$

where

$b$  = superstructure breadth in metres, see Fig. 2.2.1

$U$  = shock front velocity in m/s, see 2.5.4.

2.5.8 For the rear of the superstructure the peak pressure will occur at time,  $t_r$ , which is given by:

$$t_r = b/U + 4d/U \text{ seconds}$$

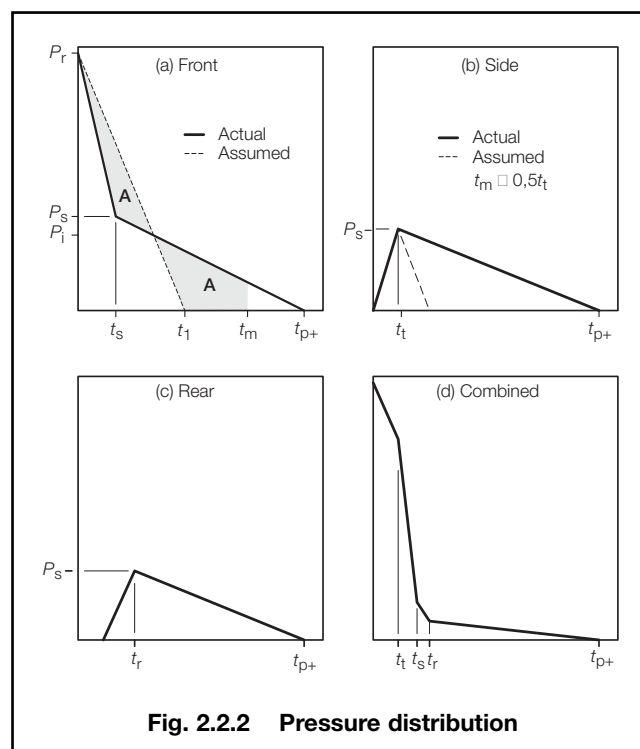
where

$d$  = is the lesser of  $h$  or  $l/2$ , in metres, see Fig. 2.2.1

$b$  = superstructure breadth, in metres, see Fig. 2.2.1

$U$  = shock front velocity, in m/s.

2.5.9 Pressure distributions for the faces of the superstructure block are given in Fig. 2.2.2, together with the overall pressure acting on the block which is obtained by subtracting the forces on the rear face from those on the front.



**Fig. 2.2.2 Pressure distribution**

## 2.6 Nuclear threats

2.6.1 An atmospheric nuclear explosion is most likely to occur at some height above ground level at a location known as ground zero, which may be optimised to produce maximum damage effects. The blast wave is reflected from the surface and at a certain distance from ground zero, primary reflected waves combine to form a vertical 'mach' front or stem that propagates outwards from ground zero with diminishing intensity. The peak blast incident over pressure  $P_i$  can be determined from 2.3.

## 2.7 Fuel air pressure loads

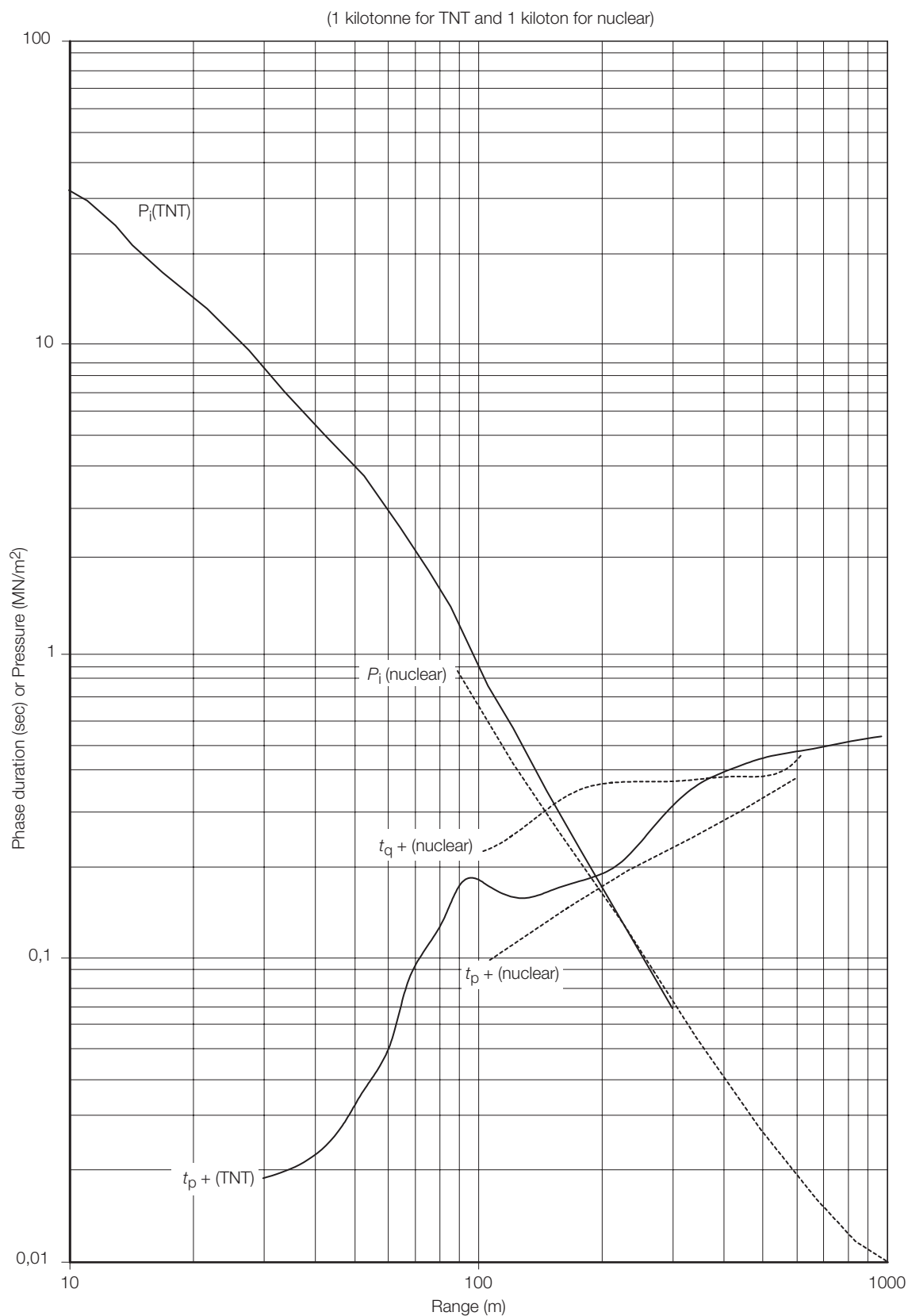
2.7.1 In general a structure designed to resist a moderate degree of nuclear blast will also have a reasonable resistance to fuel air threats and calculation is not normally required.

2.7.2 Where there is a risk of fuel air explosions, and for ships for which there is no nuclear threat position required, consideration needs to be given to the blast wave characteristics of such explosions, see also 3.1.7.

2.7.3 The effects of temperature on the material of the structure due to fuel air threats are to be considered using the structure surface temperature.

## 2.8 Conventional explosive pressure loads

2.8.1 Blast waves caused by free field explosions in air are dependent upon the mass shape and type of explosive, the distance from the target and the height of the burst. As blast waves travel through air, rapid variations occur in pressure, density, temperature and particle velocity.



**Fig. 2.2.3 Blast parameters for TNT and nuclear explosions**

# Military Load Specification

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 2

Section 2

2.8.2 For a given high explosive of an equivalent TNT mass at a direct distance from the target Section 2.3 can be used to determine the blast parameters.

## 2.9 Structural assessment

2.9.1 The rules for the **EB1** and **EB2** structural assessment are based on the assumption that the structure can be idealised as a single degree of freedom system. They assume that there is no significant loading on the superstructure or ship's sides at the time of the blast. In cases where there are significant lateral loadings or concentrated point loads or fluids, the natural frequency and strength of the structure will be specially considered.

2.9.2 The acceptance criteria contained in this Section assume that the structure is loaded beyond its elastic limit but not such that significant deformations result.

2.9.3 For plating the thickness is not to be less than:

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{f_{DLF} P_p l s^2}{6 f_\sigma \sigma_o (s + f_p l)}} \text{ mm}$$

where

$l$  = the length of the plate panel, in metres

$s$  = width of the panel, in mm  
(short span length)

$\sigma_o$  = yield stress of the material, N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$f_p$  = plate aspect ratio factor, see Table 2.2.2

$f_\sigma$  = stress factor

= 1,3 for  $\sigma_o \leq 300$  N/mm<sup>2</sup>

= 1,2 for  $\sigma_o > 300$  N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$P_p$  = the peak pressure,  $P_r$ , for the front of the superstructure, or  $P_s$  for the top sides and rear, as defined in 2.5, in kN/m

$f_{DLF}$  = dynamic load factor to be determined from Pt 6, Ch 2,5:

for superstructure front and ship sides using a linearly decreasing load with initially:

$$t_1 = P_r t_s / P_s \text{ seconds}$$

if  $t_m$  determined from Pt 6, Ch 2,5 is greater than  $1,1 P_r t_s / P_s$  then  $f_{DLF}$  is to be recalculated such that:

$$t_1 = t_s + \frac{P_s}{P_r} \left( t_p - t_m \frac{(t_{p+} - t_m)}{(t_{p+} - t_s)} \right) \text{ seconds}$$

For superstructure top, sides and rear using a triangular load with:

$$t_1 = 2t_t \text{ seconds}$$

$$t_1 = 2t_r \text{ seconds as appropriate}$$

where

$P_r$  = peak reflected pressure as defined in 2.5.3

$P_s$  = stagnation pressure, as defined in 2.5.6

$t_m$  = time at which maximum deflection occurs

$t_{p+}$  = positive blast pulse duration

$t_s$  = corresponding time at stagnation pressure,  $P_s$ .

**Table 2.2.2 Plate factors**

| Aspect ratio ( $A_R$ ) | $f_p$ |
|------------------------|-------|
| 1,0                    | 1000  |
| 0,9                    | 916   |
| 0,8                    | 858   |
| 0,7                    | 817   |
| 0,6                    | 775   |
| 0,5                    | 750   |
| <0,5                   | 750   |

2.9.4 The minimum edge through thickness area of the plate is not to be less than:

$$A_\tau = \frac{1}{100s \tau_o} (6f_{p1} t^2 \sigma_o (s + f_p l) + f_{p2} P_{tm} l s^2) \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$t$ ,  $\sigma_o$ ,  $l$  and  $s$  are given in 2.9.3

$\tau_o$  = shear yield stress in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$P_{tm}$  = pressure at the time of maximum displacement,  $t_m$ , in kN/m<sup>2</sup> based on assumed pressure distribution

$f_{p1}$ ,  $f_{p2}$  = shear load factors, given in Table 2.2.3.

**Table 2.2.3 Plate shear factors**

| Aspect ratio<br>$s/l$ | short span side<br>$s$ |          | long span side<br>$l$ |          |
|-----------------------|------------------------|----------|-----------------------|----------|
|                       | $f_{p1}$               | $f_{p2}$ | $f_{p1}$              | $f_{p2}$ |
| 1,0                   | 0,18                   | 0,07     | 0,18                  | 0,07     |
| 0,9                   | 0,16                   | 0,06     | 0,20                  | 0,08     |
| 0,8                   | 0,14                   | 0,06     | 0,22                  | 0,08     |
| 0,7                   | 0,13                   | 0,05     | 0,24                  | 0,08     |
| 0,6                   | 0,11                   | 0,04     | 0,26                  | 0,09     |
| 0,5                   | 0,09                   | 0,04     | 0,28                  | 0,09     |

2.9.5 The stiffener and plate combination is considered to be satisfactory if the plastic modulus of the beam plate combination is greater than:

$$Z_p = \frac{f_{DLF} P_p l s l_e}{f_{bz} f_\sigma \sigma_o} \text{ cm}^3$$

where

$P_p$ ,  $f_{DLF}$ ,  $f_\sigma$  and  $\sigma_o$  are given in 2.9.3

$Z_p$  = plastic section modulus of the stiffener and attached plate, in cm<sup>3</sup>

$l_e$  = effective length of the beam, in metres

$l$  = the length of the beam, in metres

$f_{bz}$  = beam support factor

= 12 for fully fixed

= 8 for simply supported

$s$  = spacing of the beams, in mm.

2.9.6 The maximum elastic deflection given by:

$$\delta_x = 10^5 \frac{f_{DLF} P_p l s l_e^3}{f_{bd} E I} \text{ mm}$$

is not to be greater than

$$\delta_{\max} = \frac{1000l}{115} \text{ mm}$$

where

- $P_p, f_{DLF}, s, l$  and  $l_e$  are given in 2.9.3
- $I$  = second moment of inertia  $\text{cm}^4$
- $f_{bd}$  = beam support factor
- = 384 for fully fixed
- = 76,8 for simply supported.

2.9.7 The shear area of the stiffener web is not to be less than:

$$A_\tau = \frac{1}{100\tau_o} \left( \frac{f_{s1} f_{bz} Z_p \sigma_o}{1000l_e} + f_{s2} P_{tm} l s \right) \text{ cm}^2$$

where

- $Z_p, \sigma_o, l_e, l$  and  $s$  are given in 2.9.3
- $\tau_o, P_{tm}$  are given in 2.9.4
- $f_{s1}, f_{s2}$  = shear load factors, given in Table 2.2.4
- $f_{bz}$  is given in 2.9.5.

**Table 2.2.4 Beam shear factors**

| Beam type        | Location       | $f_{s1}$ | $f_{s2}$ |
|------------------|----------------|----------|----------|
| Simply supported | Both ends      | 0,39     | 0,11     |
| Fixed ends       | Both ends      | 0,36     | 0,14     |
| Simple and fixed | Fixed end      | 0,43     | 0,12     |
|                  | Simple support | 0,26     | 0,19     |

2.9.8 Direct calculations or analyses based on the elastoplastic or plastic response of structure using a dynamic load factor or finite element approach will be specially considered. The designers' calculations are to be submitted for approval.

2.9.9 In addition to the assessment of plating and stiffeners, the global capability of superstructure and above water structure are to be assessed. The designers' calculations are to be submitted.

## 2.10 Design considerations

2.10.1 To minimise the effects of external blast, protrusions from the superstructure are to be kept to a minimum.

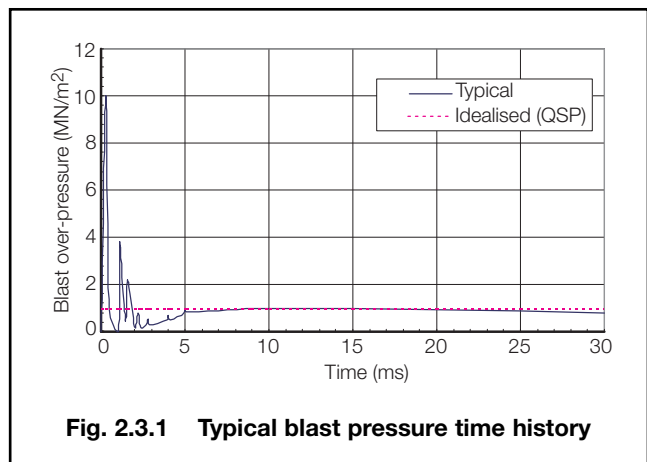
2.10.2 Re-entrant corners are to be avoided, where this is impractical they are to be covered by a blast deflecting plate, or be constructed such that the included angle between orthogonal faces is to be as large as possible.

2.10.3 Where the clear air gap between superstructure blocks is less than  $0,1L_R$ , the interaction under external blast loading will be specially considered.

## Section 3 Internal blast

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 Internal blast is defined as that which occurs from detonation of a high explosive from a hostile weapon or detonation of a ship's own ammunition inside the hull envelope. In an internal explosive loading situation the loading on a boundary can be characterised by a series of decaying reflected pressure waves (blast impulses) followed by the rapid formation of a slowly decaying static pressure (Quasi static pressure QSP) as shown in Fig. 2.3.1.



**Fig. 2.3.1 Typical blast pressure time history**

3.1.2 The magnitude of the initial blast impulse is related to the distance from structure under consideration to the explosion. The reflections are a function of the compartment geometry. The QSP is dependent on the compartment volume with the rate of decay related to the vent area.

### 3.2 Threat level determination

3.2.1 The threat protection levels for a given vessel should be determined through a vulnerability analysis against customer specified threat weapons. In the absence of such a study the following levels may be used as a guide:

- Level I Watertight bulkheads at  $R_{4N} \geq 1$  and zone bulkheads at  $R_{4N} > 1$
- Level II Watertight bulkheads at  $R_{4N} \geq 1,5$  and zone bulkheads at  $R_{4N} > 2$
- Level III Watertight bulkheads at  $R_{4N} > 3$  and zone bulkheads at  $R_{4N} > 3$

$R_{4N}$  is the normalised blast resistance 2,5 m high, 4 mm thick, mild steel, fillet welded bulkhead.

### 3.3 Notation assessment levels and methodology

3.3.1 The Rules are aimed at limiting the spread of blast damage to compartments adjacent to that directly affected by the explosion. For an explosion where the ratio of charge size to compartment volume is small, it may be possible to limit the damage to the affected compartment.

# Military Load Specification

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 2

Section 3

3.3.2 Ships complying with the requirements of this Section will be eligible for the **IB1** notation. Where further analysis or testing is used to determine the blast resistance of the structure an **IB2** notation may be assigned.

3.3.3 For the **IB2** notation, the assumptions made for initial deformations are to be submitted. Where these differ from normal ship building practice, the details are to be recorded on the approved plan.

3.3.4 There are specific scenarios such as fuel air explosions within aircraft hangars where the internal blast wave characteristics will need to be specially considered on request.

## 3.4 Materials

3.4.1 For level **III** protection all plate bulkhead materials are to have a sulphur content less than 0,01 per cent. This may be achieved by the specification of through thickness properties in accordance with the requirements of Ch 3,8 of the Rules for Materials.

3.4.2 Consideration should be given to the use of austenitic electrodes for fillet welding of ferritic materials subject to high strain loading. In selecting the filler material, consideration is to be given to the material's proof strength and elongation; the 0,2 per cent proof stress of the filler material as welded is to match the strength of the ferritic parent steel plate, and the elongation to failure is to be as great as possible. Care should be taken to ensure that coatings are maintained as far as practicable. Where such materials are in wet or immersed areas, special attention is to be given to corrosion protection and the selection of a material that is not prone to chemical or electro-chemical attack. Details of the weld procedure are to be submitted for approval.

## 3.5 Quasi static pressure

3.5.1 Structural failure can be caused by either the impulsive loading or the dynamic loading imparted by the combined blast waves and QSP. Normally if the weapon is sufficiently large to cause failure by impulse it will also fail under a dynamic loading assessment based on a step function to the QSP level. For the purposes of general design the step function to the QSP level assessment can be used as the loading criteria to determine failure. Safety or mission critical areas should be specially considered.

3.5.2 The actual threat level used in the calculation and areas of the ship to be protected are to be specified by the Owner and will remain confidential to LR.

3.5.3 The QSP can be determined from the following:

$$P_{qs} = 2,25 (W_e / V)^{0,72} \times 10^3 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$$P_{qs} = \text{quasi static pressure, in kN/m}^2$$

$$W_e = \text{weapon equivalent weight of TNT, in kg}$$

$$V = \text{free compartment volume, in m}^3.$$

## 3.6 Structural resistance

3.6.1 The blast resistance for a given bulkhead material, thickness and joint style can be determined as a proportion of 2,5 m high, 4 mm thick, mild steel, fillet welded bulkhead using the following formula based on a combination of explosive tests and analytical techniques:

$$R_{4N} = (K_j + K_m) t / l$$

where

$R_{4N}$  is the normalised blast resistance 2,5 m high, 4 mm thick, mild steel, fillet welded bulkhead

$K_m$  is the material type factor, see Table 2.3.1

$K_j$  is the joint type factor, see Table 2.3.2

$t$  is the thickness of steel, in metres

$l$  is the short span length, in metres.

**Table 2.3.1 Material type factor,  $K_m$**

| Steel grade         | $K_m$ |
|---------------------|-------|
| A, D, E, AH32, AH36 | 0     |
| DH32, EH32          | 86    |
| DH36, EH36          | 196   |

**Table 2.3.2 Joint type factor,  $K_j$**

| Joint style                                                                                | $K_j$ | Note                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------|
| Normal fillet weld                                                                         | 625   | Valid up for $t_{bh} \leq 8$ mm |
| Full penetration weld                                                                      | 665   | Valid for $t_{bh} \leq 12$ mm   |
| Austenitic fillet weld                                                                     | 701   | Valid for $t_{bh} \leq 6$ mm    |
| NOTE<br>Values of $K_j$ up to 1200 can be achieved using blast resistant bulkhead designs. |       |                                 |

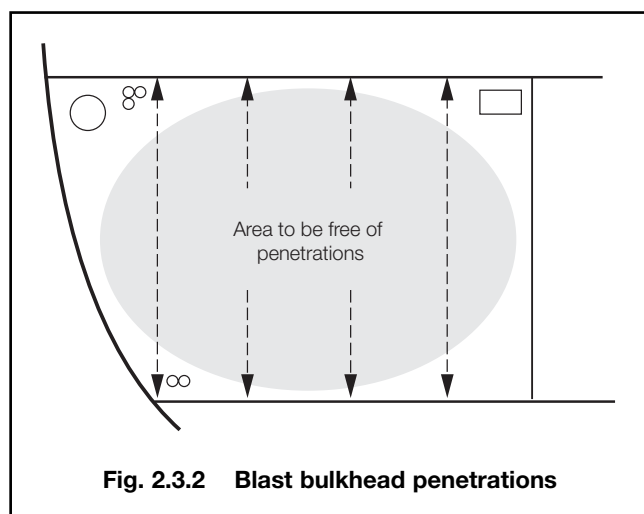
3.6.2 The primary mode of failure for bulkhead structures is through the edge connection. Alternatives to the basic fillet weld have been assessed and incorporated in the joint type factor presented in Table 2.3.2.

3.6.3 Alternative joint types may be used but are to be categorised using a dynamic joint test and blast assessment. For novel designs a further large scale controlled blast test of the proposed arrangement is to be tested. LR can provide details of the test and analysis requirements on request.

## 3.7 Bulkhead arrangements

3.7.1 Piping that passes through the bulkhead is to be fitted with expansion pieces either side of the bulkhead. In addition, piping and other penetrations are to be arranged at the edges of the bulkhead where the relative movement is less as shown in Fig. 2.3.2.



**Fig. 2.3.2 Blast bulkhead penetrations**

3.7.2 Bulkhead attachments are to be kept to a minimum and designed for good dynamic performance.

3.7.3 The strength of doors if fitted will be specially considered. Steps are to be taken to prevent their detachment from or pushing through the surrounding structure.

3.7.4 Consideration should be given to the use of flexible collars around deep girder penetrations through the blast bulkhead to allow relative movement but retain watertight or gas-tight integrity.

3.7.5 Under blast loading, large displacements of the bulkhead may occur. Any nearby structure or equipment is to be located so as to provide a minimum clearance of 350 mm from the bulkhead. This distance is generally appropriate for deck heights of between 2 m and 3 m. The minimum clearance for other deck heights will be specifically considered.

## ■ Section 4 Fragmentation protection

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 This Section does not deal with the loss of structural strength due to material perforation. It is only concerned with fragmentation protection of equipment and personnel within critical compartments and potentially critical pipe and cable runs.

4.1.2 Fragment and small arms penetrators can be stopped by the use of structure designed to prevent penetration, either through the use of increased thickness of normal structural materials, suitable siting of compartments, addition of armour (non-structural) materials, or even the use of armour material that can take structural loads.

4.1.3 The Rules give design data based on fragment penetration equations for three representative threats. The selection and use of fragment penetration equations or computer modelling for other threats will be considered provided they are carried out by a competent body which has relevant experience and employs recognised procedures.

4.1.4 For fragmentation protection to be effective, materials within the ship forming part of the ship's equipment and outfit shall be of a type that is not prone to the generation of secondary fragments or 'splinters'. Materials such as wood, brittle plastics and brittle cast materials are not to be used in protected compartments. Where the use of such materials is essential, consideration may be given to the use of bonded splinter-retaining membranes.

4.1.5 RATTAM is defined as the response to attack on ammunition and describes protection fitted externally to the ship to prevent the penetration of particular threats which may cause damage, principally to magazines. Similar protection may also be fitted to protect other critical compartments, both are covered by the **SP** notation.

### 4.2 Threat level determination

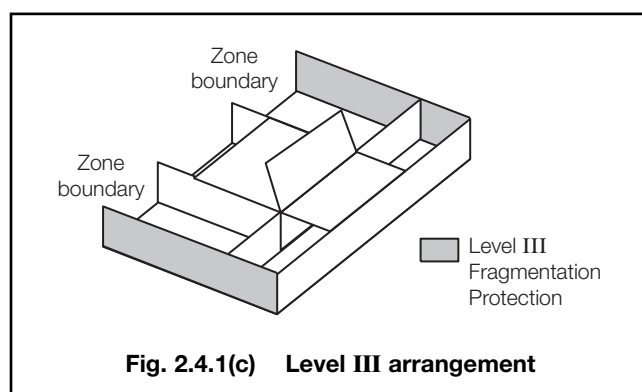
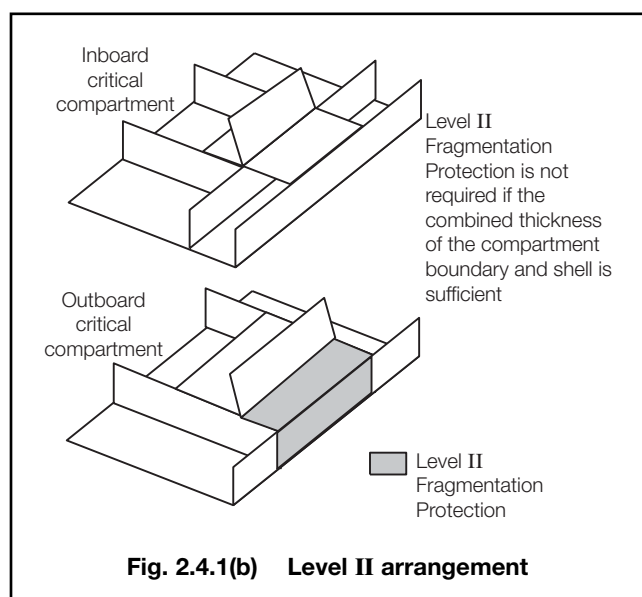
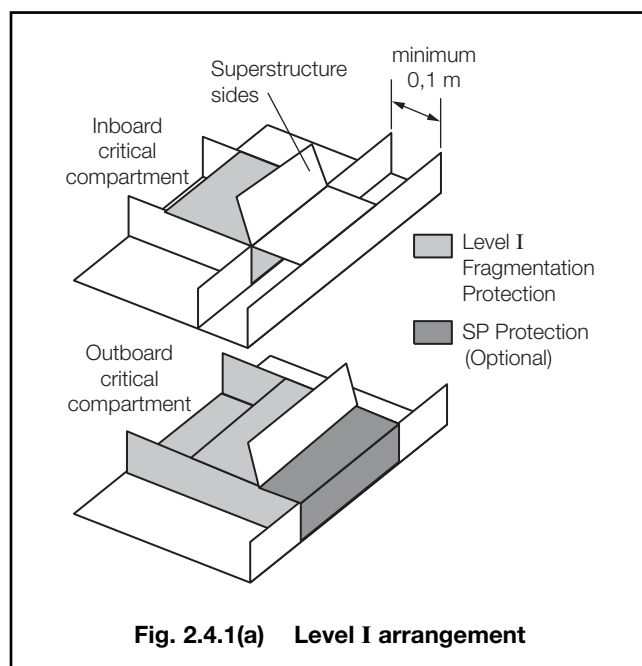
4.2.1 The threat may be classified as either small arms fire or fragments from the casing of shells or warheads ('shrapnel' or 'splinters') capable of perforating the ship's structure and thus causing damage to equipment or casualties amongst personnel.

4.2.2 Three levels of protection are shown in Table 2.4.1. They are from a combination of internally and externally detonating threats. Alternative levels will be considered in accordance with 4.5.2.

**Table 2.4.1 Fragment threat types**

| Level | Typical threat origin                                 | Fragment weight (g) | Initial fragment velocity (m/s) |
|-------|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| I     | Aircraft fired 30 mm high explosive (HE) cannon shell | up to 1 g           | less than 1250                  |
| II    | Proximity detonating 105 mm Artillery round           | up to 15 g          | less than 1250                  |
| III   | Sea Skimming (SAP) missile                            | up to 55 g          | less than 1400                  |

4.2.3 The actual threat level and type used in the calculation and the areas of the ship to be protected are to be specified by the Owner and will remain confidential to LR.



4.2.4 The Level I threat is assumed to detonate on impact with the ship's structure in the act of which it will penetrate the outer skin of the vessel. Fragmentation protection will reduce the risk of fragments penetrating additional compartments. The ends, internal sides and decks of critical compartments are in general to be fitted with protection, an example of which is shown in Fig. 2.4.1(a), see also 4.3.2. The outer skin of the ship may be strengthened to resist the shell in accordance with the requirements for the **SP** notation, however it will usually require a significant amount of armour.

4.2.5 Level II considers a threat posed by an externally detonating shell. Strengthening is, in general, to be fitted to the external skin of the ship to protect the critical internal spaces, an example of which is shown in Fig. 2.4.1(b), see also 4.3.2. For this level of protection a stand off distance for the weapon is to be specified by the Owner.

4.2.6 The Level III threat is a generic weapon based on a sea skimming anti-ship weapon with a semi armour piercing, (SAP) warhead that detonates within the hull. Fragmentation protection is intended to reduce the risk of fragments penetrating additional compartments. The considerable amount of protection required will normally mean that protection is only fitted at zone boundaries to limit the longitudinal spread of fragments. See example in Fig. 2.4.1(c) and also 4.3.2.

4.2.7 The examples given in Figs. 2.4.1(a) to (c) show a compartment immediately under the main deck with deckhouse over subject to a side-on attack. Where the critical compartment is fitted directly below an external deck, in a deckhouse or the threat is directly above the compartment, protection is to be arranged using the principles given in examples in Figs. 2.4.1(a) to (c).

### 4.3 Notation assessment levels and methodology

4.3.1 The fragmentation protection **FP1** and **FP2** notations are assigned for ships which have protection fitted to resist fragments from the casing of a shell or warhead. The small arms protection, **SP** notation is assigned for ships fitted with protection to resist the penetration of small arms fire into the hull. For ships where the fragmentation resistance is carried out using the Tables and graphs of this Section an **FP1** notation is assigned. Where fragmentation testing or analysis is used to determine the fragmentation resistance required a **FP2** notation is assigned.

4.3.2 The pressure produced by a Level I threat is such that an **IB** notation is not required. The Level II threat is external and of a level such that an **EB** notation will not be required. A Level III threat will require the effect of the internal blast pressure on the structure to be considered and **IB** and **RSA** notations will generally be required.

## 4.4 Information required

4.4.1 For each threat level it will be necessary to identify the critical compartments requiring protection, plus the critical pipe and cable runs where appropriate. Plans are to be provided showing the location and manner of all fragmentation and terrorist attack protection.

4.4.2 Where alternative tests or calculations have been carried out full details are to be submitted. They are to include details of the organisation involved, their experience, test or calculation procedures and the program or equations used.

## 4.5 Structural requirements

4.5.1 Where different threats, materials or multiple plate arrays are fitted alternative methods may be used to determine the fragmentation resistance, for example:

- Penetration equations.
- Finite element and fluid-codes.
- Experimental methods.

Ascending the levels of calculation complexity is not simply a matter of increased cost in design, the increased complexity potentially offers the reward of reduced protection requirement for the given threats.

4.5.2 Armour spaced normal to the threat can reduce the total thickness by up to 30 per cent. It may also be effective for bullets provided the gap between plates is greater than 1,0 m.

4.5.3 For Level I fragmentation protection, the equivalent thickness of steel is to be in accordance with Table 2.4.2.

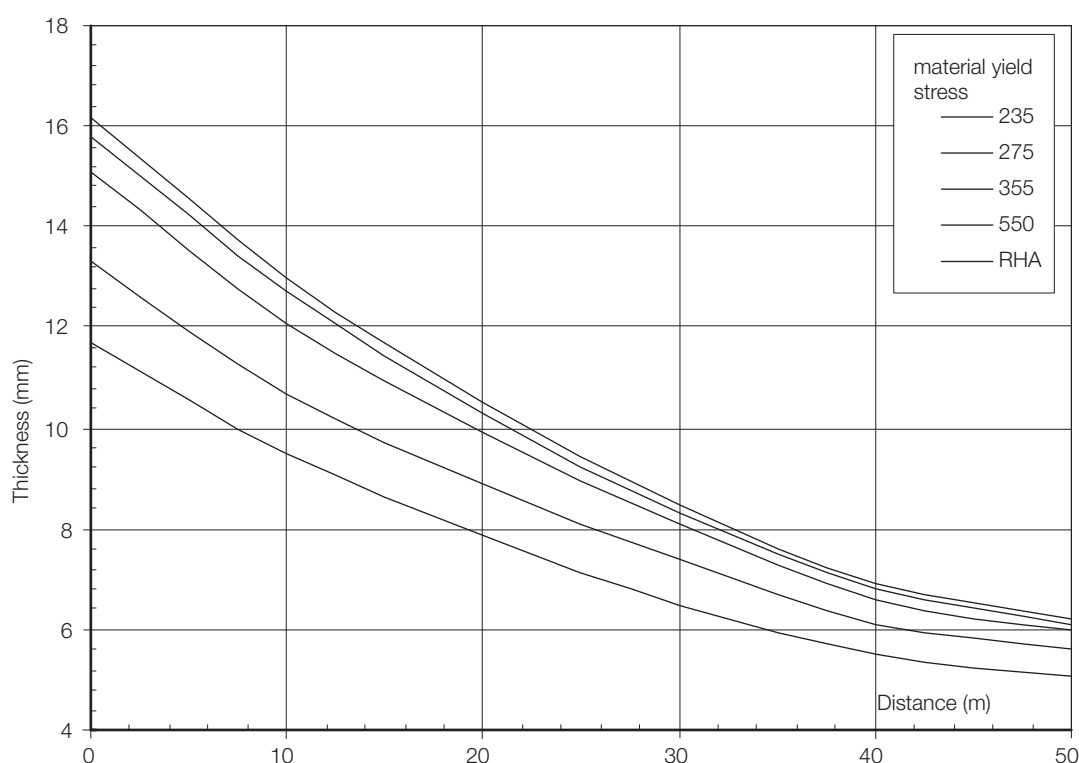
**Table 2.4.2 Level I fragmentation protection**

| Material yield strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> | Transverse bulkhead or deck thickness mm | Longitudinal bulkhead thickness mm |
|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 235                                       | 6,5                                      | 6,0                                |
| 355                                       | 6,0                                      | 5,5                                |
| 550                                       | 5,5                                      | 5,0                                |
| RHA                                       | 5,0                                      | 4,5                                |

NOTE  
RHA is defined as rolled homogenous armour.

4.5.4 For Level II fragmentation protection, the equivalent thickness of steel is to be determined from Fig. 2.4.2.

4.5.5 For Level III fragmentation protection, the equivalent thickness of steel is to be determined from Fig. 2.4.3. Protection will normally be required to be provided by several bulkheads or specific armour and the graph can serve only as a guide. The structural protection for this type of threat will generally be specially considered based on the particular weapon characteristics and protection arrangements. It should also be noted that many modern missiles generate controlled fragments which will need special consideration.



**Fig. 2.4.2 Level II fragmentation protection**

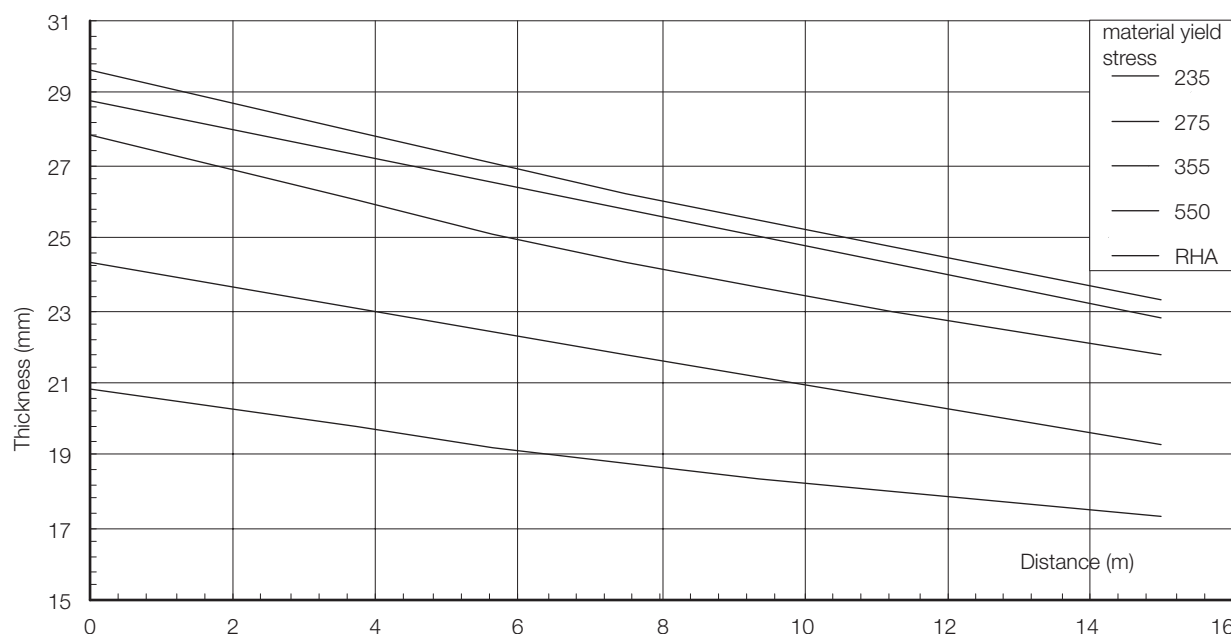


Fig. 2.4.3 Level III fragmentation protection

4.5.6 The graphs are produced based on a 50 per cent probability of perforation for penetrators perpendicular to the target.

## Section 5 Underwater explosion (shock)

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 There are two principal loading mechanisms associated with the underwater detonation of a conventional high explosive ordnance:

- shock wave loading;
- bubble flow loading.

5.1.2 The energy released is in general, equally divided between shock wave energy and the energy contained within the superheated high pressure bubble of gaseous explosion products.

5.1.3 The shock wave generated as the detonation wave passes into the water is a highly non-linear pressure pulse which propagates at a speed well in excess of the speed of sound in water (approximately 1500 m/s). However, within a few charge radii of the detonation point, it can be mathematically defined as an acoustic pressure pulse travelling at the speed of sound. Its amplitude falls off inversely with distance and its profile can be characterised by a pulse which has an infinite rise to a peak pressure followed by an exponential decay. The peak value and decay rate at a given field point are given by the similitude equations/coefficients for the explosive material.

5.1.4 In the meantime, the gas bubble begins to expand against the ambient hydrostatic pressure displacing water radially outward as incompressible flow. As it expands, it loses pressure and temperature but the inertia of the outwardly flowing water leads to an overshoot of the equilibrium state so that at maximum bubble radius, the gas pressure is well below the ambient. This initiates the collapse sequence, the gas bubble is recompressed, slowly at first but then rapidly, to a minimum volume by the hydrostatic forces. Because of the generation of a large pressure in the bubble during this stage the bubble begins to expand again and several other cycles may follow. The gas bubble and water interaction can be thought of as a gas spring – mass system. It has a periodicity associated with it but because of energy losses during the process, the spring constant and mass changes over each cycle leading to a change in the periodicity. At each minimum, that is, each recompression, additional pressure pulses are emitted which become weaker with each oscillation as shown in Fig. 2.5.1.

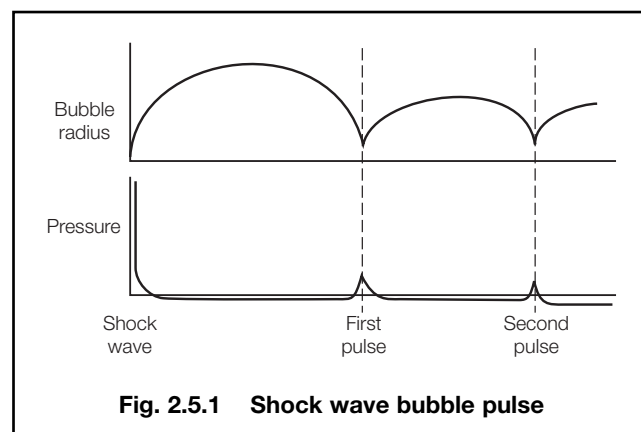


Fig. 2.5.1 Shock wave bubble pulse

5.1.5 The bubble is pulsating in a gravitational field and will have a tendency to migrate to the water/air boundary (the free surface). However, this bodily motion of the bubble centre may be influenced by the proximity of other boundaries such as the seabed or a nearby ship structure. The rate at which a bubble will migrate to the free surface is a function of the buoyancy forces generated when it is at its maxima and of the drag forces it experiences as it moves through the water. Because these drag forces are small when the bubble is at its minima, it tends to migrate vertically upwards more rapidly when at its smallest volume.

5.1.6 The fluid flow generated by the bubble dynamics is an important loading mechanism for a structure, within its sphere of influence. Normally bubble loading can be ignored if the bubble never approaches within a distance of around ten times the maximum bubble radius. The important feature of the bubble loading is its low frequency which is ideally suited to induce ship hull girder flexural motion. This flexural motion is commonly referred to as hull girder whipping. This loading mechanism is dealt with in Section 6. If the bubble is within one bubble radius of the ship structure, it is likely to form a jet which will impact on the structure. This bubble collapse mechanism will cause extensive local damage. It is generally not possible to efficiently design against this loading event for a **NS2** or **NS3** ship. For a **NS1** ship there may be sufficient residual strength to withstand such damage, but the extent of the damage will need to be determined by a specialist calculation and the capability of the hull using a residual strength assessment, see Section 7.

5.1.7 The shock wave loading is greatest at a point on the structure nearest to the detonation event and because of the fall-off with distance and the narrowness of the pulse width, it can be thought of as a local loading event. (In contrast, the bubble induced whipping of the hull girder is considered a global loading event.) The remainder of this Section will focus on the shock loading event only.

5.1.8 There are no simple analytical or numerical techniques for reliably determining the shock resistance of a structure. A measure of the resistance to shock loading can be achieved by good design of the details of the structure to avoid stress concentrations which may lead to rupture. It is also possible to ensure that the plating thickness is matched to the assumed performance of the joints using a simple damage law. The inertial loads on the ship's structure caused by the equipment and its seatings can be determined by time domain analysis.

5.1.9 The shock performance of a ship's hull structure can be assessed solely by conducting shock tests (usually at scale). However, cost usually precludes this approach and a better strategy is to combine tests to determine failure criteria with numerical modelling using Finite Element methods. This complementary experiment/numerical simulation approach reduces the amount of testing required and also provides a method for extrapolating to full scale from scaled experiments.

5.1.10 Generally, for a normal ship structure, the explosion required to cause uncontrollable flooding or total loss of propulsive power or loss of mission system effectiveness (radars, electronics, etc.) is much less than that required to cause failure of a hull designed for normal sea loads.

5.1.11 Due to operational requirements, some vessel types, such as minesweepers, will be required to resist repeated shock loading at a specified level without degradation of the system or structural performance. Such vessels will also be expected to survive a single attack at a considerably higher shock loading level.

## 5.2 Threat level determination

5.2.1 The level of threat required is to be specified by the Owner. The actual threat level used in the calculation of performance and the areas of the ship to be protected by this design method are to be specified by the Owner and will remain confidential to LR.

5.2.2 Loading levels may be specified with varying degrees of structural and system degradation to define the shock performance of the vessel. An important consideration is the balance that has to be achieved between system functionality and structural performance.

5.2.3 Two performance bounds can be considered for the shock response of structure:

- The first performance bound (lower bound) relates to the onset of material yield (assuming that careful design has ensured that no buckling will occur before this state is reached). This level is useful to know as it may have consequences for system functionality. For example, there may be problems associated with equipment misalignment because of the permanent set of the supporting structure.
- The second performance bound (upper bound) relates to removal or rupture of material; this being the loading level at which there is no longer sufficient residual hull girder strength to resist normal environmental loading. This is addressed in a separate assessment which is defined by the residual strength notations **RSA1**, **RSA2** or **RSA3** in Section 7. In conventional naval ships, this upper bound will be significantly higher; but there will be little, if any, system functionality.

## 5.3 Notation assessment methodology

5.3.1 The shock performance required is to be agreed between the Owner, the Naval Authority and the Shipbuilder. The agreement is to include requirements for:

- Local strength assessment;
- detailed design;
- seat design, shock mounts and system hangers;
- hull valve design and integration;
- global strength assessment;
- shock qualification/testing of equipment;
- 1st of class shock trial.

It is recommended that seats, valves, piping and equipment are categorised into: essential and non essential, see also Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 1,3.1.1.

# Military Load Specification

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 2

Section 5

5.3.2 Ships that comply with the minimum or enhanced requirements of this Section will be eligible for the shock notation **SH**.

5.3.3 For ships where the machinery is in class (**LMC** notation), if the Naval Authority has identified shock requirements for machinery and equipment, the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,4.11 are also to be complied with.

5.3.4 For the minimum shock capability, the design emphasis should focus on maintaining a high level of system functionality and reducing the risk of flooding.

5.3.5 For the assignment of the **SH** notation, the minimum requirement is for the structure to be designed to resist normal environmental loads in accordance with the Rules. For **NS1** ships the inherent ruggedness in the Rules is sufficient for the structure to resist a low level threat. For **NS2** and **NS3** ships the integrity of the hull plate and stiffeners is to be verified, using the simple formulae for pressure in 5.4.1, and comparing the response to an acceptance standard nominated by the Naval Authority. In addition, the hull valves below the waterline are to comply with the requirements of 5.8.

5.3.6 The minimum local assessment required by 5.3.5 can be enhanced by undertaking a more complex assessment as defined in 5.4, which accurately models the physics of the rapid, dynamic, fluid structure interaction problem.

5.3.7 In addition to the analysis, the **SH** notation can be enhanced by selecting detail design requirements to reduce the risk of fracture initiation and structural collapse based on historical work on shock. Details are provided in 5.5.

5.3.8 The **SH** notation may be further enhanced by undertaking shock trials in accordance with established procedures, on the first ship in the class. The magnitude of the test is normally less than the design value for the hull and at a level that is appropriate for the equipment and systems.

5.3.9 Global assessment may be undertaken for the **SH** notation using the residual strength procedures outlined in Section 7 with the extent of damage being defined from the results of the local strength assessment rather than the damage radii. For the **RSA1** procedure, the damaged structure is to be removed from the analysis. For the **RSA2** or **RSA3** procedure, if the damage is limited, the geometry of the damaged structure can be modelled and if the damage is severe, the structure is to be removed from the analysis. The structure is considered acceptable when the hull girder is able to withstand the design loads as specified in Part 5.

## 5.4 Local strength assessment

5.4.1 For the notation **SH**, a simple analysis can be performed which allows the motion response at any point in the ship to be determined. This can be derived from experimental results or the Taylor plate equations given below. Once the motion response is known, the damage potential can be determined by comparing the response to an acceptance standard nominated by the Naval Authority:

Maximum velocity

$$V_{\max} = \frac{2P_m}{\rho c} z^u \text{ m/s}$$

Time to maximum velocity

$$t_{\max} = \frac{m}{\rho c} \left( \frac{1}{1-z} \right) \log_e \left( \frac{1}{z} \right) \text{ seconds}$$

where

$$z = \frac{m}{\rho c \theta}$$

$$u = \frac{z}{1-z}$$

$\theta$  = decay constant of explosive charge in seconds

$P_m$  = peak pressure in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\rho$  = density of water in kg/m<sup>3</sup>

$c$  = speed of sound in water in m/s

$m$  = structural mass per unit area in kg/m<sup>2</sup>.

5.4.2 A more complex assessment method can be used to enhance the **SH** notation. Methods can be used which accurately model the physics of the shock event. At the simplest level, a finite element model of the structure coupled with a suitable boundary element from proprietary software may be used.

5.4.3 For complex ships such as multi-hull designs a boundary element approach may not be suitable and a volume element approach should be used. Also, if non-linear fluid behaviour is important (i.e., hull cavitation or bulk cavitation), then a volume element approach should be used unless the finite element or boundary element code used has a suitable cavitation model.

5.4.4 The assessment method or analysis used should be validated against shock trial results and the evidence made available. As an alternative to analysis, full or large-scale shock trials of a section of the ship can be used to validate the proposed design. For novel design arrangements or ship types, a combination of trials and analysis may be necessary, the requirements of which will depend on the threat level and type of structure or ship design.

5.4.5 Any finite element analysis performed for local strength assessment is to be in accordance with the requirement of this Section for assignment of the **SH** notation.

5.4.6 The extent of the analysis model is to be from about  $0,35L_R$  to  $0,55L_R$  and encompass at least two major compartments and three watertight bulkheads. It is to be sufficiently large to avoid reflections within the structure from the boundaries, for the threats considered. For the assessment of structural strength, the structure need only be modelled to 1,0 m above the design water line. If the model is to be used to determine equipment response, all structure within that section should be modelled.

# Military Load Specification

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 2

Section 5

5.4.7 The model, or versions of the model, should encompass representative integral tank arrangements and hull penetrations, stabiliser inserts, hull valves, the failure of which could lead to uncontrollable flooding. Penetrations, the failure of which will not lead to significant flooding or damage, need not be considered. The tanks and penetrations need not actually be in the section under consideration but should be sufficiently similar to represent structure outside the region modelled.

5.4.8 All masses above 100 kg should be included in the model together with an approximation of the mounting system if applicable.

5.4.9 The model should include at least one major machinery item or raft.

5.4.10 The response of hull panels depends upon a large number of variables which are both design and attack geometry dependent. To simplify the task, the following assumptions can be made:

- The charge detonates in the worst location, perpendicular to the structure under consideration.
- All welding is continuous and there are no manufacturing or material defects in the panels.

5.4.11 During the analysis, appropriate elements are to be used to couple the fluid medium and the structural model.

5.4.12 The shock wave can be represented by an exponentially decaying, infinite rise time pressure pulse which sweeps across the structure at the speed of sound.

5.4.13 Non-linear structural modelling can be used in finite element analyses. If used, stiffeners should be modelled explicitly using shell elements of the appropriate thickness. Stiffener flanges should be modelled with at least two elements per half width or flange. Initial imperfections in the hull plating are to be taken into account prior to the dynamic loading analysis.

5.4.14 The structure is considered acceptable when:

- Elastic deflections are less than the temporary limits of machinery and systems.
- Permanent deflections are less than the limits of machinery and systems.
- Deflections and strain are less than the limits of the structure or applicability of the analysis method.

## 5.5 Detail design guidance

5.5.1 For enhanced shock performance any of the following design details can be included in the design, which is based on historical shock testing and experience.

5.5.2 Tank boundaries are to be of equivalent scantlings to the hull boundaries.

5.5.3 Intermittent welding is not to be used on hull girder structure or tank boundaries below the water line or for 1 metre in way of the deck and shell connections.

5.5.4 Structural discontinuities are to be avoided and in general a minimum taper of 1:4 is to be applied to changes of structural section.

5.5.5 Bar keels are not to be fitted.

5.5.6 For structure supporting seatings of equipment above 100 kg, calculations demonstrating the capability of the tank and supporting structure are to be submitted.

5.5.7 Main machinery mounts or raft mounts are to be supported on transverse web frames or floors forming part of the transverse ring structure. See Pt 3, Ch 2,3.2.2.

5.5.8 The size of longitudinal members passing through, or ending on, bulkheads are to be as small as possible, though still complying with the appropriate scantling requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3. Bulkhead stiffeners are to be fitted perpendicular to the shell plating.

5.5.9 Where deep longitudinal members are unavoidable, their connection to the bulkhead will be specially considered.

5.5.10 Bottom longitudinals are to be of a uniform size. Alternate large and small longitudinals are to be avoided as they may lead to high shear forces in the bulkhead.

5.5.11 Access holes in all primary framing members are to be avoided in areas of high shear stress. Where they are essential to the operation of the ship they are to be circular and fitted with appropriate stiffening or compensation.

5.5.12 Frames on the bilge are to be provided with adequate lateral support, consideration should be given to the fitting of a shock stringer.

5.5.13 Lapped connections are not to be used to connect frames to floors.

5.5.14 All bulkhead stiffeners are to end on longitudinals, see Fig. 2.5.2.

5.5.15 In transversely framed ships, bulkhead stiffeners are to be terminated on a shock stiffener welded to the bulkhead, parallel to, and spaced 500 mm from the shell. The bulkhead plating thickness is to be suitably increased in way. The shock stringer and bulkhead plate may be replaced by a web frame of suitable scantlings.

5.5.16 Bulkhead penetrations are to be grouped, away from the side shell and kept above the water line as far as is practicable.

5.5.17 Shell frames and deck beams are to be fitted in such a way as to minimise misalignment. Brackets where fitted are to be radiused and fitted with soft toes.

5.5.18 Where the vessel is to be subject to very high levels of shock the following details can be included in the design.

5.5.19 Pillar bulkheads are to be used below the waterline in place of pillars.



# Military Load Specification

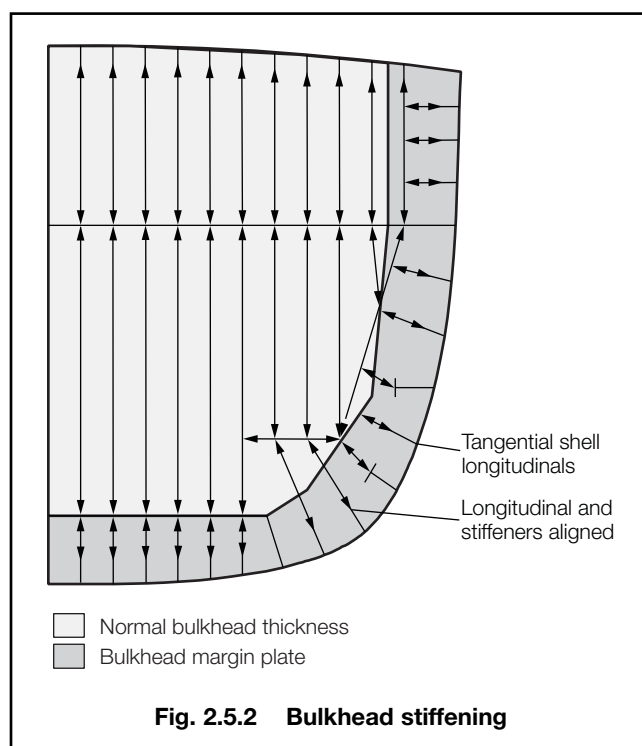
# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 2

Section 5

5.5.20 It is recommended that symmetric stiffeners should be fitted to the underwater portion of the shell envelope.

5.5.21 Where a transverse framing system is used, the shock capability of the structure will be specially considered. Calculations supporting the use of particular design details are to be submitted.

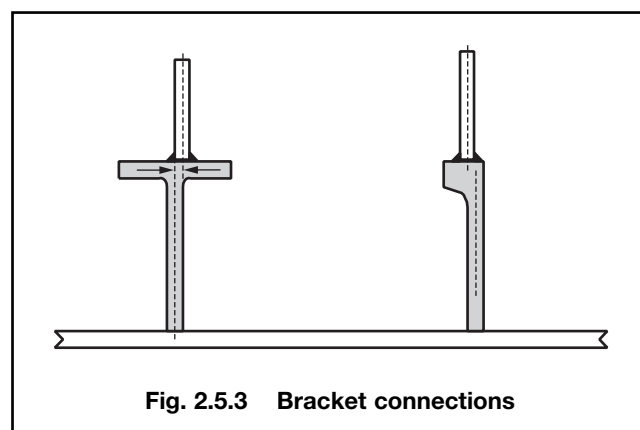
5.5.22 All bulkhead stiffeners are to end on longitudinals, see Fig. 2.5.2. An increased thickness margin strake on bulkheads of thickness not less than 80 per cent of the adjacent shell plate thickness, the thickness of the adjacent shell stiffener or 6,5 mm. The margin plate is to have a width not less than 1,5 times the adjacent stiffener spacing or four times the depth of adjacent shell stiffeners.



**Fig. 2.5.2 Bulkhead stiffening**

5.5.23 Shell frames and deck beams are to be fitted in such a way as to minimise misalignment. The frames are to be fitted within a tolerance of  $0,3t_{fl}$  median line up to a maximum of 3,0 mm where  $t_{fl}$  is the greater thickness of the frames being connected. Where this is not possible, the frame is to be released over  $20t_{fl}$  and realigned.

5.5.24 Where brackets are fitted, similar tolerances to 5.6.5 are to be applied subject to a suitable area being provided for weld fillet, see Fig. 2.5.3. Tripping brackets or intercostal stiffeners should be used to stabilise the frame at the bracket toes. Brackets are to be radiused and fitted with soft toes.



**Fig. 2.5.3 Bracket connections**

5.5.25 The cross-sectional area of the bulkhead stiffeners at their outer ends in way of the margin plate should not be less than 60 per cent of the area of the web of the hull longitudinals to which they are attached. To achieve this requirement the bulkhead stiffeners may be tapered between the outer end and the point at which the size is the minimum required to withstand lateral pressure. The slope of the taper is to be such that:

$$A_x > 0,6A_L - 2t_x/3$$

where

$A_x$  = cross-section area of the bulkhead stiffener at a distance  $x$  from its outer end

$A_L$  = web area of the longitudinal, and  $t$  is the bulkhead plating thickness at  $x$ .

5.5.26 The short stiffeners above the turn of bilge should be on the same side of the bulkhead as the main bulkhead stiffeners and should end on such a stiffener, see Fig. 2.5.2. Where necessary an additional diagonal stiffener may be worked to facilitate the arrangement.

## 5.6 Seat design

5.6.1 The shock notation may be enhanced by specifying that some or all of the equipment seating is to be designed to resist shock loading. Seats design should take account of the acceleration and deceleration from the shock wave; the magnitude of the shock acceleration will depend on the equipment mass, position in the ship and mounting arrangements. The seat design methodology is to be agreed with the relevant Naval Authority. The selection of seats to be assessed will depend on the equipment supported and the compartment in which it is situated.

5.6.2 Minor seats should be assessed to ensure that equipment remains captive. Detail design requirements such as minimum thickness, alignment, and free edge support can be specified to improve shock performance. In the absence of information from the Naval Authority, minor seats can be considered as those with equipment mass below 100 kg.



# Military Load Specification

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 2

Section 5

5.6.3 Seats which are not classed as minor are to be assessed for shock loads using acceleration values appropriate to the region of the ship in which the equipment is installed. Large items of equipment where the seat is integrated into the ship's structure will normally require a finite element analysis to assess the strength of the seat. Where these seats are adjacent to the hull or an integrated tank, the fluid structure interaction may need to be modelled. See 5.4.

5.6.4 The shock accelerations are to be agreed between the Owner, designer and Naval Authority. In general, accelerations will be specified for the following regions of the ship:

- (a) within 2,0 m of the wetted hull;
  - (b) main transverse bulkheads and decks below the strength deck;
  - (c) above strength deck and superstructures;
- Shock accelerations can be scaled using a factor for different equipment based on their category of use.

5.6.5 For each equipment seat to be assessed, a report is to be provided containing the following information:

- (a) equipment mass and centre of gravity;
- (b) location in vessel;
- (c) mounting system;
- (d) spatial clearances around the mounted equipment;
- (e) captivity requirements;
- (f) relevant excitation frequencies from mounted equipment in the case of reciprocating or rotational machinery;
- (g) calculations demonstrating maximum stress and displacement under; vertical acceleration, vertical deceleration and athwartships accelerations. For non-linear analyses strain rates are to be provided;
- (h) equipment alignment requirements, as appropriate.

5.6.6 As a minimum, the following seat load cases are to be assessed:

- (a) bolts; pull through, tensile, shear and bearing strength;
- (b) seat flange; flange bending and top plate weld area;
- (c) seat web; buckling and overturning;
- (d) deck; seat weld area if less than flange.

5.6.7 Stress and strain are to be assessed against criteria appropriate for the seat material and loading rate. The first fundamental mode of vibration of the seat including equipment is to be greater than 10 times the shock mount rated natural frequency to provide a sufficiently rigid base for the shock mount. In the absence of specific information, for steel, the following data may be used:

|                                                                                                                                                                       | Tension           | Bending           | Shear             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| Plastic deformation of seats                                                                                                                                          | $1,3 \sigma_{ps}$ | $1,3 \sigma_{ps}$ | $1,0 \sigma_{ps}$ |
| Long loading times $\geq 0,5$ ms (elastic deformation only)                                                                                                           | $1,0 \sigma_{ps}$ | $1,0 \sigma_{ps}$ | $0,8 \sigma_{ps}$ |
| Short loading times $< 0,5$ ms (elastic deformation only)                                                                                                             | $1,2 \sigma_{ps}$ | $1,5 \sigma_{ps}$ | $0,9 \sigma_{ps}$ |
| where<br>$\sigma_{ps}$ = static 0,1% proof stress<br>The values in this Table are applicable to mild and high tensile steel grades up to a yield strength of 400 MPa. |                   |                   |                   |

## 5.7 Shock mounts

5.7.1 All shock mounts are to be of an approved type. Approval is to be undertaken by organisations approved by the Naval Authority. Approval documentation should contain the following information in accordance with NATO document ANEP63:

- (a) nature and application of the mount including: generic type, application, load range, shock displacement, environmental constraints and frequency range;
- (b) description of the mount assembly, including the complete assembly, the mount and the associated components.
- (c) details of the mount standard assembly and installation;
- (d) physical size, mass and dimensions;
- (e) performance data as listed in Table 5.8.1;
- (f) details of the mount testing process, including: method of force generation, number of mounts used/shots used, mount supplier, validation, mount permanent deflection, details of test facility and date of testing;
- (g) mount specific protection, installation, inspection and maintenance requirements;
- (h) any applicable historic data, i.e. changes to the mount details over time. For example, changes of material, etc.

**Table 5.8.1 Shock mount characterisation**

|                                                                                                                  |                                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Mount size number                                                                                                |                                                    | 1                             |
| Nominal load                                                                                                     | kg                                                 |                               |
| Static stiffness                                                                                                 | Vertical V<br>Horizontal $H_A$<br>Horizontal $H_R$ | N/m<br>N/m<br>N/m             |
| Dynamic stiffness                                                                                                | Vertical V<br>Horizontal $H_A$<br>Horizontal $H_R$ | N/m<br>N/m<br>N/m             |
| % of critical damping                                                                                            |                                                    |                               |
| Vertical static displacement at nominal load                                                                     | mm                                                 |                               |
| Natural frequencies                                                                                              | Vertical V<br>Horizontal $H_A$<br>Horizontal $H_R$ | Hz<br>Hz<br>Hz                |
| Dynamic magnification at resonance                                                                               | —                                                  |                               |
| Shock displacement capacity                                                                                      | Vertical V<br>Horizontal $H_A$<br>Horizontal $H_R$ | mm<br>mm<br>mm                |
| Maximum transmitted acceleration at nominal load                                                                 | Vertical V<br>Horizontal $H_A$<br>Horizontal $H_R$ | $m/s^2$<br>$m/s^2$<br>$m/s^2$ |
| Range of validity of mount surface/best fit governing equation (where applicable) relative to unloaded condition |                                                    | $\pm$ mm                      |
| Required support stiffness                                                                                       | N/m                                                |                               |
| Required support strength                                                                                        | N                                                  |                               |

# Military Load Specification

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 2

Sections 5 &amp; 6

## 5.8 Design guidance for hull valves, piping and seals

5.8.1 Hull valves below the waterline are to be of an approved type. Approval is to be undertaken by organisations approved by the Naval Authority. Approval documentation should contain the following:

- (a) details of the valve body, main components and securing arrangement to the hull, including bolt material grade and tightening torque;
- (b) details of the valve testing process including method of force generation, number of tests, validation, details of test facility and date of testing.

5.8.2 Only materials with sufficient ductility to avoid fracture under shock conditions are to be used. Materials should be able to withstand high stresses for very short periods without exhibiting brittleness. Valve bodies are not to be made from materials with an elongation of less than 10 per cent. There should be adequate material in way of the valve seat to prevent distortion.

5.8.3 In general, the valve body should be as symmetrical as possible with no rapid changes in section; web stiffeners should not be incorporated. Spindles should be as short as possible. Square threads or sharp thread run-outs are to be avoided. Handwheels should be as light and small as possible.

5.8.4 The weight of the actuator is to be considered in the design of the valve and its connection to the hull. The actuator can form a considerable proportion of the overall weight of the valve.

5.8.5 Consideration should be given to the attached piping and its capacity to withstand shock:

- (a) Detachable pipe connections should be kept to the minimum necessary for installation and maintenance requirements;
- (b) Flanged and welded connections are to be used adjacent to the hull valve. Adjacent piping is to be designed to allow the valve and hull to flex under shock with limited restraint;
- (c) Where necessary, piping shall be supported with shock resistant mounts at a sufficient number of locations commensurate with the design shock level. The selection of shock mounts should consider displacement capability, see 5.7. The response of the piping relative to equipment should be considered. Sufficient space between equipment and piping should be provided to ensure they do not contact each other in a shock scenario;
- (d) The routing of piping should be developed to minimise the number and size of penetrations through bulkheads, see 5.5.11;
- (e) The consequences of leakage from piping and fittings should be investigated;
- (f) Brackets should not be welded direct to steel piping;
- (g) Adequate division of vital piping systems to isolate damage should be considered;
- (h) The shock resistance of flanged connections should consider bolt preload, anti-rotational locking devices where appropriate and performance of gaskets.

5.8.6 The sealing arrangement between the valve and the hull insert is to be suitable for shock loading and able to accommodate elongation of the securing studs.

5.8.7 Hull valve designs can be approved by the following methods:

- (a) physical testing;
- (b) semi-empirical methods;
- (c) direct calculation.

5.8.8 Physical shock testing may be used to assess the valve. Physical testing is to take account of the attachment to the hull and possible combinations of hull scantlings, stiffener spacing, materials, etc.

5.8.9 Recognised semi-empirical methods may be used to assess the valve and should be agreed between the Owner, the Naval Authority and the Shipbuilder.

5.8.10 Validated numerical methods may be used to assess the valve. Where used they are to take account of the following criteria:

- (a) asymmetry in the valve and piping assembly;
- (b) dimensions of the hull insert/pad;
- (c) use of sea tube between the valve and hull insert;
- (d) hull scantlings and stiffener/frame spacing;
- (e) plasticity in the hull and valve assembly;
- (f) the effective mass of the valve, actuator and piping;
- (g) the valve to hull securing arrangement, taking into account fit and pre-stress effects;
- (h) dynamic properties of materials;
- (i) the effect of any surrounding equipment or masses.

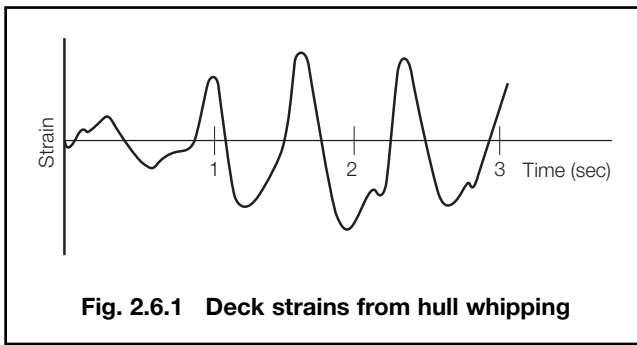
Sea tubes of unusual material, GRE for example, or unusual configuration are to be assessed by physical shock testing and not assessed by numerical simulation.

5.8.11 The potential for leakage from seals/glands under shock loading, and the consequences of leakage, are to be considered. The shock resistance of vital seals/glands, including stern-tube seals, is to be validated by shock qualification testing. The sealing efficiency of stern-tube seals should not be compromised by the anticipated axial, radial and angular shaft movements commensurate with the design shock level.

## Section 6 Whipping

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 The effects of a non-contact underwater explosion are described in Section 5. Whilst the initial shock wave described in that Section initiates whipping to some degree it is the pulsation of the bubble which leads to the majority of damage to the hull. The initial shock wave causes local hull damage and shock damage to the vessels equipment. In the strain history shown in Fig. 2.6.1 the initial shock wave can be seen to be not just the free response of an elastic system to an impulse as the amplitude continues to increase. There is a typical second kick to the system which stems from the first bubble pulse and which increases the response for several more cycles.



**Fig. 2.6.1 Deck strains from hull whipping**

6.1.2 The nature and behaviour of the gas bubble are dependent upon the warhead charge size, the explosive composition, the detonation depth and the influence of boundaries such as the sea bed.

6.1.3 The maximum radius of the bubble at the end of the first expansion phase is given by:

$$R_{\text{bub}} = 3,417 \left( \frac{W}{H + 10} \right)^{1/3} \text{ m}$$

where

$W$  = bare charge equivalent weight of TNT, in kg  
 $H$  = depth of the charge at the time of detonation, in metres.

6.1.4 The period of duration of the first bubble pulse is given by:

$$t_{\text{bub}} = 2,108 \frac{W^{1/3}}{(H + 10)^{5/6}} \text{ sec}$$

where

$W$  and  $H$  are defined in 6.1.3.

6.1.5 Even a relatively modest warhead charge size can produce a bubble which displaces a large mass of water in a very short time frame. The momentum associated with this rapid incompressible flow of a sizeable volume of water constitutes a major loading mechanism for any structure within its sphere of influence.

6.1.6 The effect on the hull is a large amplitude vertical bending and vibration. This first introduces high shear forces at the quarter points which may cause shear wrinkling, this damage will probably not be catastrophic and the hull will go on to develop high compressive forces in the keel. These may cause buckling especially as the bottom structure may already be damaged from the initial shock wave. For extreme cases whipping may lead to the 'back breaking' and total loss of the ship.

6.1.7 An estimate of the hull natural frequency for steel ships is given by:

$$f_{s1} = \frac{215}{L_{\text{OA}}} \text{ Hz}$$

where

$L_{\text{OA}}$  = the overall length of the ship, in metres.

6.1.8 The risk of a whipping response from a particular threat can be determined using the approximation for the natural frequency and the bubble characteristics of 6.1.4.

6.1.9 If the threat is closer to the hull than  $2R_{\text{bub}}$  then the bubble loading is to be specially considered.

## 6.2 Threat level determination

6.2.1 The level to which a ship will be expected to survive an attack scenario that excites hull whipping is to be defined by the Owner and will remain confidential to LR.

6.2.2 The whipping threat level may be defined for a range of warheads detonating at a given stand off distance and longitudinal (axial) location. The probability of weapon hit locations can be determined from threat analyses which can be used to select the appropriate charge locations for the assessment.

6.2.3 It is also possible to undertake a parametric study to establish the detonation location which will lead to the worst case loading scenario. In this case, all possible hit locations that will induce whipping are assessed and the worst case induced bending moments are compared with an appropriate acceptance criteria. Contours from the keel of maximum threat size to induce failure can also be determined.

6.2.4 Where a shock threat is also being assessed for whipping effects, the warhead stand off distance from the keel is set to be the same as that which induces the prescribed severity of shock. A series of axial locations are assessed to establish the worst case excitation which is compared to the appropriate acceptance criteria.

6.2.5 The non-dimensional measure of whipping severity, commonly referred to as Whipping Factor, is simply the ratio of maximum induced hull girder bending moment at a section to the critical bending moment for that section. Each threat location assessed will generate a whipping factor which can be assigned to that particular location. In this way a series of iso-Whipping Factor contours can be mapped in the fluid beneath the keel for a particular threat weapon. These contours define hit volume boundaries within which that particular weapon will induce a known level of whipping response.

## 6.3 Notation assessment levels and methodology

6.3.1 Ships for which a whipping assessment is performed will be eligible for a **WH1**, **WH2** or **WH3** notation as defined in 6.3.4 to 6.3.6.

6.3.2 There are two types of assessment to determine the whipping response of the hull girder:

- Simple 2D beam model.
- Advanced 3D beam model.

6.3.3 For most ships a simple analysis will be sufficient to determine the whipping capability of the hull girder. An advanced analysis will be required when:

- more detailed information is required on areas of a ship which have been shown by simple analysis to be deficient under whipping loads, for example where there are large structural discontinuities variations;

- the ship design cannot be idealised as a 2D beam, for example when it has an unusual structural configuration or has low frequency modes of vibration in addition to its vertical flexural modes;
- there is a requirement to predict the extent of plastic deformation in a section;
- the whipping threats are assessed in a shallow water environment.

6.3.4 A **WH1** analysis method uses a 2D beam representation and a failure level criterion based on the bending moment to induce material yield.

6.3.5 A **WH2** method of analysis uses a 2D beam representation and a failure level criterion based on the section ultimate bending moments. This will require assessment using ultimate strength calculations at each of the discrete sections of the hull girder beam model.

6.3.6 A **WH3** method of analysis uses a 3D definition of a section of the hull girder and geometric and material failure criteria implicit in the chosen finite element code.

6.3.7 In each case, it is to be demonstrated that the hull section remains below the defined failure limits for all threat scenarios.

6.3.8 For certain ship types such as minesweepers, it will be necessary to carry out several levels of analysis. An elastic analysis is required for threat levels which are expected to be survived on a regular basis. An elasto-plastic analysis is required at a higher threat level for which the ship is expected to survive.

## 6.4 Simple 2D beam model

6.4.1 The modelling of ship interaction with explosion bubbles conveniently breaks down into a set of distinct sub-models.

6.4.2 The hull girder model is usually subdivided into at least twenty equal sections, each of which is assumed to form a 'Timoshenko' beam element. Since the stiffness and mass distributions may vary considerably along the length of a ship, a lumped mass/weightless beam representation is appropriate rather than a consistent mass model. The effect of shear deflection is to be included in the model.

6.4.3 The hull hydrodynamics may be modelled using standard strip theory to represent the effect of the inertia of surrounding water. At any lumped mass representing the hull girder, the added mass of water may be assumed using 'Lewis' forms coefficients. The added mass correction can be assumed to be constant for each mode of vibration.

6.4.4 For the bubble hydrodynamics it is assumed that the flow around the explosion bubble is inviscid and incompressible, that gaseous products obey ideal gas law, and that the bubble itself remains spherical. As a first approximation it may also be assumed that the bubble remains stationary but in general the migration is significant and should be considered. It is also assumed that the bubble motion is not modified by the presence of either the ship or

the water surface. The loading model is to account for the dissipation of shock wave energy at the outset of detonation, generally achieved by using a modified initial radius for the bubble calculation.

6.4.5 The interaction hydrodynamics may also be assumed to be incompressible and inviscid consistent with the bubble hydrodynamics. The bubble radial flow may be resolved at the ship axis (the intersection line of the waterplane and the vertical centreline plane) at each lumped mass, into three components. Normally only the vertical  $z$  and athwartships  $y$  components need be considered as the bubble is assumed to be some distance from the ship. It may also be assumed that at each lumped mass, the transverse velocity around the whole section will be uniform in magnitude and direction.

6.4.6 The force acting on a strip is to account for this motion, plus the uniform pressure gradient assumed in the fluid which induces a buoyancy force proportional to the displaced volume of water. Wave generation and Bernoulli pressure effects may be neglected but the accelerations should account for the free surface reflection of the bubble.

6.4.7 Several assessment codes are available and calculation should be performed by a competent and experienced body with relevant experience and using recognised codes.

## 6.5 Advanced assessment

6.5.1 Advanced whipping assessments will normally be performed using a hybrid 3D/2D structural model for computational efficiency. However, care is to be exercised in the coupling of the 2D beam elements to the 3D section to ensure that this artificial boundary condition does not adversely influence the analysis. As an alternative, the ship may be defined as a full 3D shell model. In which case, it may be possible to invoke symmetry to reduce the problem size and reduce the computational burden.

6.5.2 More than one option exists for modelling the fluid domain. It may be modelled using a boundary element approach and coupled to the structural domain using a Doubly Asymptotic Approximation. Alternatively, a computationally intensive volume fluid element approach employing an Eulerian code may be used. This fluid domain model would have to be coupled to the Lagrangian structural domain through a general or arbitrary coupling scheme. The detonation process and the bubble development would be physically modelled in this approach. A combined approach would entail modelling an island of fluid around the ship, truncated by a boundary element surface on which a bubble loading model would be applied.

6.5.3 For surface ship problems, whichever solution strategy is adopted, the fluid solver must be able to cope with the proximity of the bubble to the free surface and where appropriate reflections from the sea bed. Analysis is to be undertaken by a competent and experienced body using recognised techniques and with the relevant expertise necessary to establish the correct interface strategy between structural and fluid element meshes.

## ■ Section 7 Residual strength

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 This Section details the determination of the threat levels and methodology to be adopted in the attainment of an **RSA1**, **RSA2** or **RSA3** notation.

### 7.2 Threat level determination

7.2.1 The level to which a ship will be expected to structurally survive an attack scenario that results in weapon damage is to be specified by the Owner and will remain confidential to LR.

7.2.2 The threat level may be defined for a range of warheads detonating at given internal positions or UNDEX stand off distances with defined longitudinal locations. The probability of weapon hit locations can be determined from threat analyses which can be used to select the appropriate charge locations for the assessment.

7.2.3 Generally, fragmentation scenarios are not included in residual strength assessments since the damage is usually localised. However, any significant structural damage resulting from fragmentation (as determined in Ch 2,4) must be considered. Similarly, any damage from an external blast threat weapon must also be included (Ch 2,2). In addition, residual strength calculations must be used in conjunction with level 2 whipping analysis (Ch 2,6).

7.2.4 Where the **STAB** notation is assigned, the damage scenarios included in the residual strength assessment are to include grounding/raking and collision damages which are consistent with the compartment damage criteria specified by the subdivision and stability standard, see Vol 3, Pt 1, Ch 6,1.

### 7.3 Notation assessment levels and methodology

7.3.1 Ships for which a residual strength assessment is carried out will be eligible for a **RSA1**, **RSA2** or **RSA3** notation as defined in 7.3.6 to 7.3.8.

7.3.2 The assessment of the residual strength capability of a ship is to be performed as defined in Pt 6, Ch 4,4.

7.3.3 There are three methods of assessment that may be used to determine the damaged residual strength of the hull girder:

- Simple 2D cross-section elastic model.
- 2D ultimate strength model.
- Advanced 3D Finite Element Methods.

7.3.4 In the case of a mine warfare ship or NS3 ships, a 2D elastic analysis will normally be sufficient. For most other naval ships, a 2D ultimate strength analysis would normally be required to determine the damaged residual strength at a particular frame location along the hull girder.

7.3.5 An advanced 3D analysis incorporating initial deformations and residual stresses will be required when:

- More detailed information is required throughout one or more compartments along the length of the ship which have been shown by the more simplified 2D ultimate strength analysis to be inadequate. This may be necessary, for example, where there are large structural discontinuities in hull girder strength.
- The ship design cannot be reduced to a 2D beam or ultimate strength description, for example, when it has an unusual structural configuration.

7.3.6 A **RSA1** analysis method uses a 2D elastic cross-section representation and a failure level criterion based on the calculated bending moment being greater than both the design hogging and sagging bending moments at the sections considered to be most critical.

7.3.7 A **RSA2** method of analysis uses a 2D ultimate strength beam representation and a failure level criterion based on the section ultimate bending moments being satisfactory compared to the design bending moments in both hogging and sagging. This will require assessment using ultimate strength calculations at no less than three damaged positions along the length of the hull.

7.3.8 A **RSA3** method of analysis uses a 3D definition of a section of the hull girder and relies on geometric and material failure criteria implicit in the chosen finite element code. It could also include coupled Euler-Lagrange formulations to specifically account for internal and external blast effects, UNDEX shock and whipping.

7.3.9 In each case, it is to be demonstrated that the hull girder remains below the defined design hogging and sagging design bending moment failure limits for all prescribed threat scenarios.

7.3.10 For certain ship types, such as minesweepers, it will be necessary to carry out several levels of analysis. An elastic analysis should be carried out for threat levels which are expected to be survived on a regular basis and geometric and material non-linear analysis at higher threat levels for which the ship is expected to survive.

### 7.4 Definition of damage

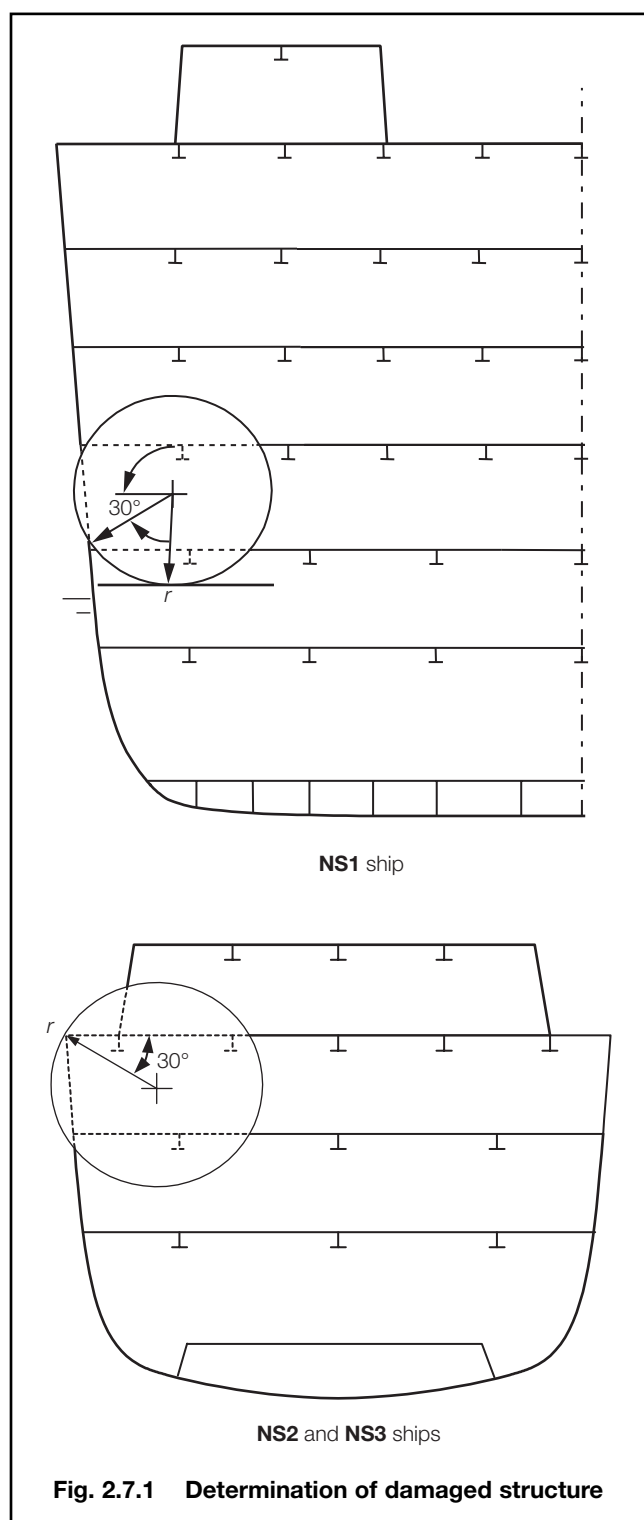
7.4.1 The damage radius is a measure of the extent of the damage caused by specific above water attack scenarios. This is shown diagrammatically in Fig. 2.7.1, where the assumption of a detonation mid-compartment is shown and the extent of damage is indicated by the extent of the damage radii. Assumptions about position and extent of damage radii are dependent on warhead characteristics. In general, the radii is to be vertically positioned such that it removes the maximum amount of material or has the greatest effect on the sectional inertia.

7.4.2 The damage radii can be determined from:

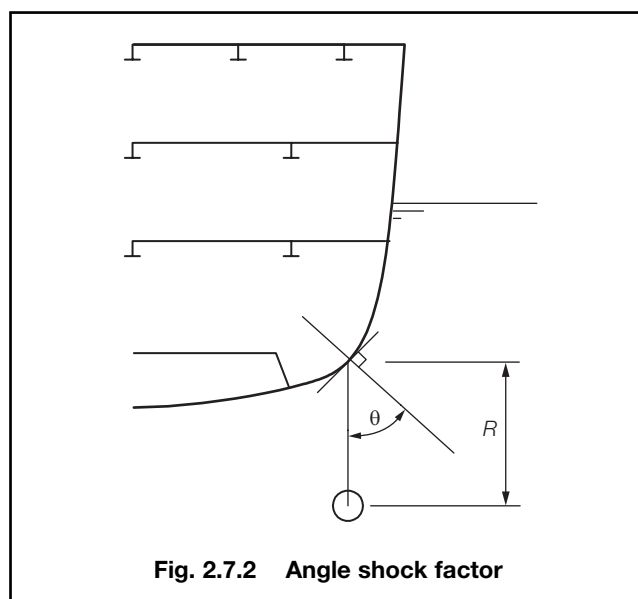
$$r = f_z W^{1/3} \text{ m}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} f_z &= \text{scaled distance dependent on ship type} \\ W &= \text{equivalent weight of TNT, in kg.} \end{aligned}$$



7.4.3 Once a damage radius has been determined, the simplest method of accommodating damage is to remove all structure within and touching the damage radii from the residual strength calculation.



7.4.4 For underwater shock (UNDEX), hull plating failure can be derived from angle hull shock factor, as defined in Fig. 2.7.2, exceeding appropriate hull lethality levels. The angled shock factor may be determined from:

$$SF = \frac{W^{0.5}}{R} f(\theta)$$

where

$W$  = equivalent charge weight of TNT, in kg

$R$  = distance from charge, in metres

$f(\theta)$  = threat angle function, see Fig. 2.7.2.

7.4.5 Special consideration will be given to the effects of damage to box type strengthening structure, armour plating, high yield strength materials, double skin hulls and blast strengthened bulkheads.

7.4.6 Generic damage can be generated using pseudo-random hit probability algorithms and repeated application of such algorithms can be used to represent successive weapon hits. Specific damage is difficult to quantify but can be estimated by using damage radii techniques for above water structure and by assuming critical shock factor levels for below water structure.

## Section 8

### Strengthening requirements for beach landing operations

#### 8.1 General

8.1.1 These requirements are in addition to those of Pt 6, Ch 3 for bottom shell structure. They need only be applied to those areas of the hull at risk from grounding during beach landing operations. These areas are to be agreed between the Owner, Builder and LR at an early stage in the plan approval process. A distinction is made between those areas likely to see impact loads on beaching and those where contact due to grounding will occur after the initial beaching.

8.1.2 The Rules assume that the ships will be brought into shallow water and up to the beach in a controlled manner and that procedures are in place and on board for the operation of these ships. The beach is assumed to be free of rocks of substantially greater projection than the depth of the rubbing strake.

8.1.3 Depending on the operational profile of the ship the minimum bow height given in Pt 3, Ch 2.5.3 will be specially considered.

8.1.4 Loading ramps are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 3.5.

8.1.5 Due regard is to be given to forces imposed on the ship and loading ramps by ship motions in shallow water both by impact from surf, the beach, and vehicles used to manoeuvre ships on the beach.

#### 8.2 Minimum plate thickness

8.2.1 For areas subject to impact and grounding the thickness determined from Pt 6, Ch 3 is to be increased by 20 per cent and is in no case to be taken as less than 7 mm.

8.2.2 For operation in Arctic and Antarctic conditions the material grades are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 6.2 Material Class II.

#### 8.3 Bottom stiffening

8.3.1 Secondary stiffening is to be designed in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3 with the modulus increased by 20 per cent. For impact areas the spacing of stiffeners is not to be greater than 500 mm.

8.3.2 Primary structure is to be designed in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3. An additional load case with the forces imposed from global bending and grounding forces uniformly distributed over the bottom in contact with the beach is to be considered. In the absence of specific information, not more than 50 per cent of the bottom structure is to be assumed to be in contact with the beach. The primary structure is also to be capable of supporting the concentrated loads imposed by loading or unloading vehicles.

8.3.3 Primary and secondary structure is to be continuously welded throughout areas subject to grounding.

8.3.4 Lugged connections or fully welded collars of the type shown in Fig. 2.8.1 are to be used. Alternative equivalent arrangements will be individually considered.

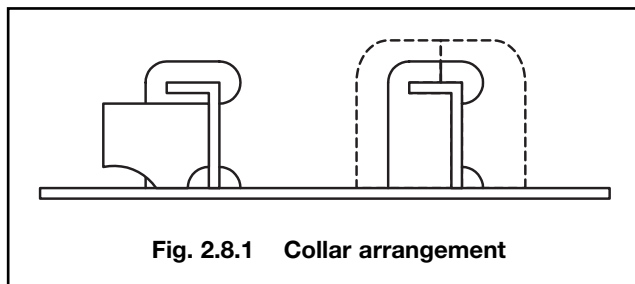


Fig. 2.8.1 Collar arrangement

8.3.5 Transverse floors are not to be spaced more than 1,25 m for transversely framed structure or 1,85 m for longitudinal framed structure.

8.3.6 One side girder each side of the centreline is to be fitted in addition to the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2.3.5 or 3.6.

8.3.7 Transverse floors and girders are to be suitably stiffened with web stiffeners spaced not more than 1,25 m apart.

#### 8.4 Global strength

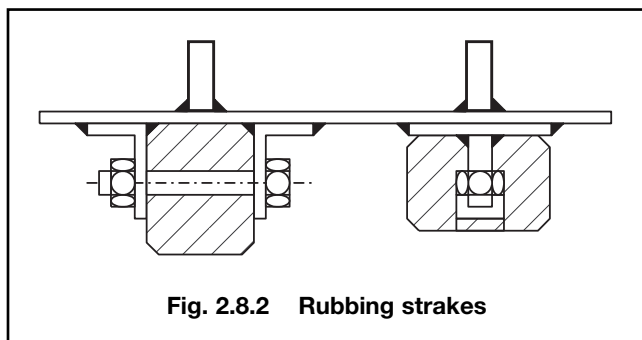
8.4.1 For ships with  $L_R > 50$  m grounding conditions in addition to the loading conditions of Pt 6, Ch 4 are to be assessed. The number and type of loading conditions will be determined by the operational requirements of the ship. In some cases residual strength calculations will be required.

8.4.2 If  $L_R > 50$  m and areas of the bottom shell within  $0,3$  to  $0,5L_R$  are at risk from grounding the thickness of the bottom shell and longitudinal structure will be specially considered.

#### 8.5 Rubbing strakes

8.5.1 Rubbing strakes or barwhales are to be fitted to the bottom shell. In longitudinally framed ships they are to be placed directly below longitudinals. Typical arrangements of rubbing strakes are shown in Fig. 2.8.2. Usually they consist of a steel frame welded to the hull supports with a bolted connection to softer material but rubbing strips can be constructed of solid steel sections. They are to be free of projections or other discontinuities which could lead to damage of the shell plating.

8.5.2 Rubbing strakes are to be spaced not less than 1,5 m apart. For closer spacing the thickness of the bottom shell will be specially considered.



**Fig. 2.8.2 Rubbing strakes**

8.5.3 The rubbing strake housing both internally and externally is to be efficiently coated to prevent corrosion. Where different materials are used the materials are to be selected or insulated to ensure that there is no galvanic corrosion.

8.5.4 Rubbing strakes are to be continuously welded to the hull. Butts between sections of rubbing strake are to be butt welded together before being welded to the hull. Where this is not possible, ceramic rather than copper backing strips are to be used.

8.5.5 Rubbing strakes are to be of the same grade of steel as the shell plate to which they are attached.

8.5.6 The ends of rubbing strakes are to be tapered at an angle of not less than 1 in 3 with no discontinuities in the welding in this region. Where not supported by internal longitudinals, the ends of strakes are to be arranged to pass 30 to 50 mm over the end of transverse frames or floors.

8.5.7 Due consideration is to be given to the depth of the rubbing strakes with regard to the nature of the beach. In no case are they to be less than 100 mm projection.

## Section 9 Military installation and operational loads

### 9.1 Weapon recoil, blast and efflux loads

9.1.1 Loads resulting from weapon launch may include recoil effects, blast and missile efflux pressures, and in general will be impulsive. These three types of load are estimated in different ways and will be covered in turn.

9.1.2 Gun and mortar recoil loads will generally be obtained from the manufacturer's documentation. If the natural frequency of the supporting structure is more than four times the firing rate and at least 50 per cent higher than the frequency derived from the time to maximum force, then a dynamic load factor of 1,6 may be used for a first estimate. If the gun is mounted immediately above an effective bulkhead then the structural resonant frequencies will be much higher and a dynamic load factor of 1,2 may be assumed. The stiffness of the supporting structure should be adequate for the loads imposed and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

9.1.3 The assessment of structure is to be made at the azimuth and elevation of the gun that produces the maximum demands on each component of the support structure. These will usually be ahead and abeam and at 0° and maximum elevation, although additional calculations should be made at the 45° positions vertically and horizontally against the resolved in-plane and normal elements of the load which occur simultaneously.

9.1.4 The load on the structure due to gun blast is in the form of a short-lived transient over-pressure; values of this over-pressure should be available in the manufacturer's documentation for the weapon as curves of pressure against distance from the gun muzzle. The pressure will act only for a time of the order of 10 ms so the structure, with a much higher natural response period, is unable to react to the full over-pressure and it is sufficient to design to an equivalent static pressure using the dynamic load factors specified in Pt 6, Ch 2,5. Guns with a high rate of fire, typically greater than 30 rounds per minute, may induce a forced vibration and will be specially considered.

9.1.5 Should blast pressure curves not be available then a spherical approximation to the equivalent static design pressure  $P_g$  can be found from the following equation for  $\phi_m$  values in the range 80 mm to 120 mm

$$P_g = 2 (1 + \cos \theta)^2 \left( \frac{\phi_m}{x} \right)^{1,5} \times 10^3 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

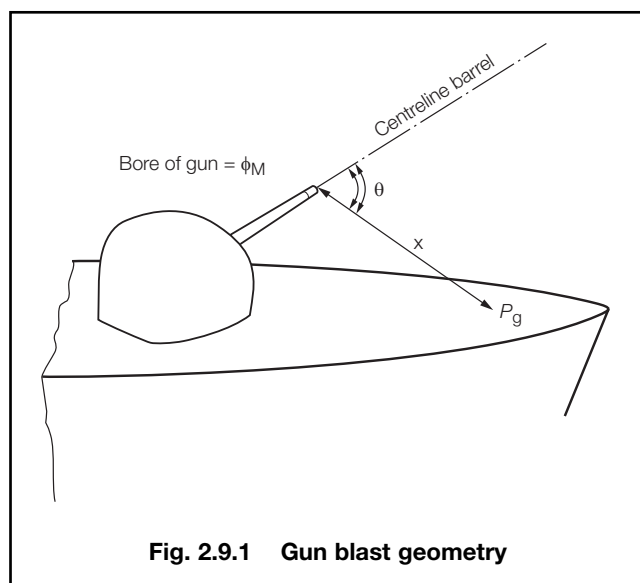
where

$\phi_m$  = the bore of the gun, in mm

$x$  = the distance from the muzzle of a point at which the pressure is required, in mm

$\theta$  = the angle to the centre-line of the barrel

As shown in Fig. 2.9.1.



**Fig. 2.9.1 Gun blast geometry**



9.1.6 Missile efflux blast loading can be predicted by considering the rate of change of momentum of the efflux where it strikes the structure under consideration. However, when calculating the equivalent design load allowance must also be made for the dynamic response of the structure. For practical purposes therefore it is sufficient to design for the thrust averaged over a cone of semi-angle  $b$  and the resultant equivalent static pressure  $P_m$  may be found from

$$P_m = f_{DLF} \left( \frac{T_m}{A} \right) \left( \frac{\sin \alpha}{\sin \alpha + \tan \beta \cos \alpha} \right) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$f_{DLF}$  = a dynamic load factor relating to variations in the efflux pressure and can be taken as 1,5

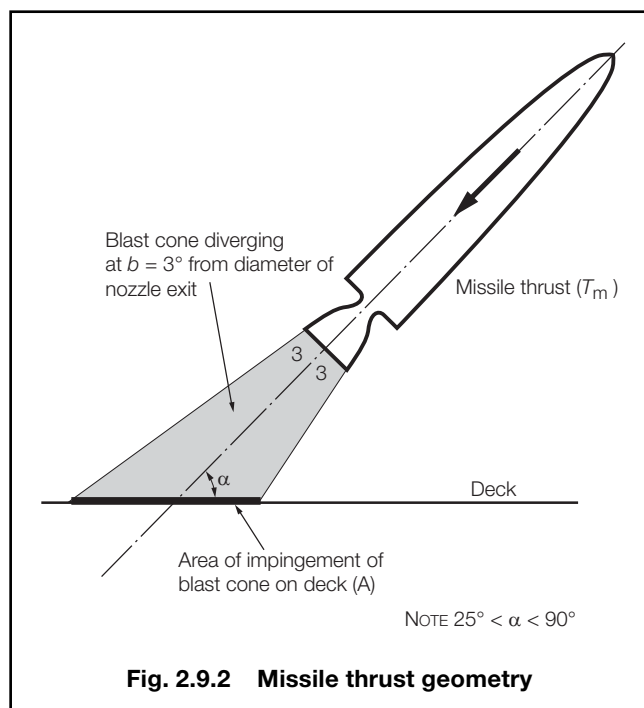
$T_m$  = thrust, in kN

$A$  = projected area of cone, in  $\text{m}^2$

$\alpha$  = angle ( $25^\circ < \alpha < 90^\circ$ ) to the structure, in degrees

$\beta$  = the efflux cone semi-angle in degrees and can be taken as  $3^\circ$

As shown in Fig. 2.9.2.



9.1.7 Missile efflux will generally be at high temperature and may contain particulates. Protection is to be provided for ship structure and equipment upon which the efflux may impinge during launch.

## 9.2 Replenishment at sea loads

9.2.1 The loads imposed on the ship's structure will depend on the operation of the vessel during RAS operation and what weight of stores is to be transferred.

9.2.2 Guidance on representative arrangements is presented in Fig. 2.9.3. It is the responsibility of the Owner to define the design load values. The line of action of the forces is to be considered for all possible angles that might occur during replenishment operations.

9.2.3 In the absence of any specific information the RAS jackstay point is to be designed for 160 kN at  $20^\circ$  either side of the vertical and  $20^\circ$  either side of the horizontal. The outhaul securing point and hose pendant securing point are to be designed for 40 kN  $20^\circ$  either side of the vertical and  $0^\circ$  to  $45^\circ$  below the horizontal.

9.2.4 The structure is to be designed such that the stress from RAS operations in no part of the structure exceeds 70 per cent of the yield stress of the material under test conditions and 35 per cent of the yield stress of the material under normal working conditions.

9.2.5 For structure supporting RAS equipment, materials are to be in accordance with Table 6.2.1 in Pt 6, Ch 6.

9.2.6 Where tripods, gantries or masts are used for RAS operations the buckling strength of members in compression is to be specially considered.

9.2.7 A clear area is to be provided for RAS operations and the landing area for RAS operation is to be suitably strengthened for impact loading and concentrated equipment loads.

9.2.8 The design load used in the determination of scantlings for tanks used in RAS operation are to take due account of the maximum loads experienced in service. See Pt 5, Ch 3.5.

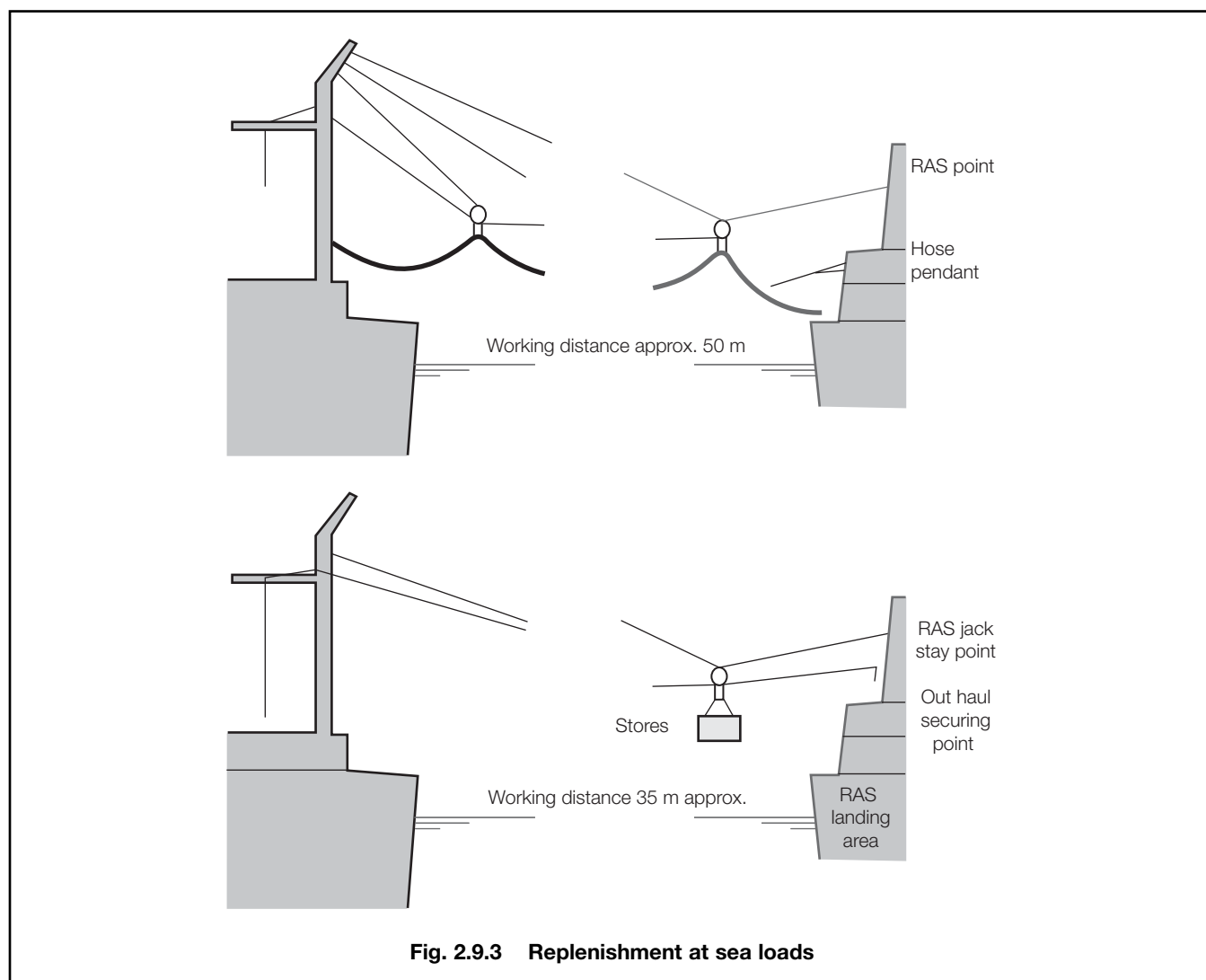


Fig. 2.9.3 Replenishment at sea loads

## Section 10 Aircraft operations

### 10.1 General

**10.1.1** The landing area may be located on an appropriate area of the weather deck or on a platform specifically designed for this purpose and permanently connected to the ship structure. All ships operating aircraft are to comply with the requirements of this Section and will be assigned an **AIR** notation.

**10.1.2** Attention is drawn to the requirements of National and other Authorities concerning the construction of helicopter landing platforms and the operation of helicopters as they affect the ship. Consideration is to be given to air flow over the landing area and the impingement of hot exhaust gases on equipment in the flight path.

**10.1.3** Where the landing area forms part of a weather or erection deck, the scantlings are to be not less than those required for decks in the same position.

**10.1.4** Equipment and vehicles using the landing area will also need to be assessed to identify the most onerous load in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 3.

**10.1.5** Special consideration is to be given to the insulation standard if the space below the aircraft deck is a high fire-risk space.

**10.1.6** These Rules assume that the aircraft are fitted with oil/gas dampers and pneumatic types, different under-carriage arrangements will be specially considered.

**10.1.7** Suitable arrangements are to be made to minimise the risk of personnel or machinery sliding off the landing area. A non-slip surface and anchoring devices, and in the case of independent platforms, safety nets, are to be provided.

**10.1.8** Suitable fire fighting equipment and services should be arranged on the landing deck, manoeuvring and parking areas as defined by the Naval Authority. Arrangements are to be made for drainage of the platform, including drainage of spilt fuel. Fire protection should also be arranged between spaces containing aircraft and other areas of the ship. Special consideration should be given to aircraft handling arrangements and the possible passage of spilt fuel.

## 10.2 Definitions

**10.2.1** OLEO load is defined as the load which will cause the damper and tyre combination to reach the end of their travel. OLEO loads should not generally be used to determine loads from the undercarriage on the flight deck. OLEO loads do not always reflect the loads that can be imposed by an aircraft landing on a ship. Loads should be derived using the vertical velocities specified in Table 2.10.3. The ratios of OLEO loads may be used to determine the dynamic distribution of load from the undercarriage.

**10.2.2** The all up weight (AUW) is the maximum that will be encountered for the specific application under consideration it includes the maximum weight of aircraft, personnel, fuel and payload:

- For helicopters the AUW is to be taken as the maximum weight of aircraft, personnel, fuel and payload at all times.
- For manoeuvring of fixed wing aircraft the AUW is to be taken as the maximum weight of aircraft, personnel, fuel and payload.
- For take off of fixed wing aircraft the fuel weight is to be the maximum less the fuel required to transit to the take off position.
- For landing of fixed wing aircraft the AUW is to be as above except that the fuel weight is to be the maximum less that consumed by the shortest possible flight.

## 10.3 Documentation

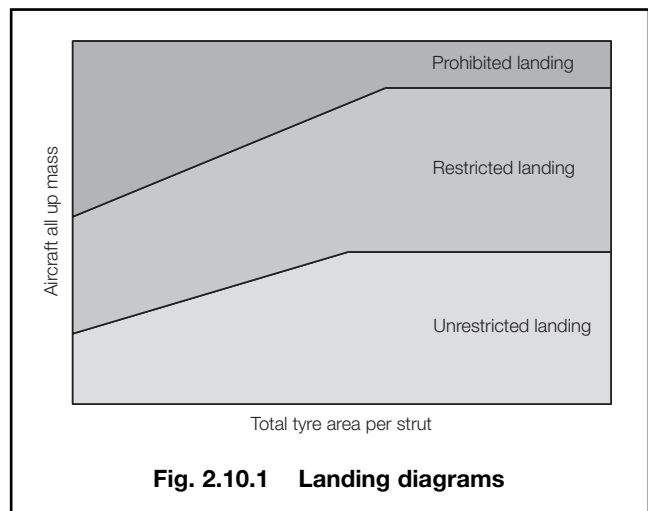
**10.3.1** Plans are to be submitted showing the proposed scantlings and arrangements of the structure. The type, size and weight of aircraft to be used are also to be indicated.

**10.3.2** Details of arrangements for securing the aircraft to the deck are to be submitted for approval.

**10.3.3** A landing guide should be provided as part of the ship's documentation. This is to contain all the relevant design information on the aircraft for the ship, identification of landing parking and manoeuvring areas, tie down arrangements, weights and a summary of the design calculations. It is also to provide guidance on the suitability of the landing areas for other aircraft. The information is to be presented in a graphical form similar to that shown in Fig. 2.10.1. Unrestricted landings are aircraft weights which can occur up to the design sea state. Restricted landing with weights higher than the design can occur but in a reduced sea state and are to be indicated on the diagram. Prohibited landings are aircraft weights that may not take place in any sea state. Different diagrams will be required for twin and single rotor helicopters and for aircraft as appropriate.

## 10.4 Flight deck arrangements

**10.4.1** The landing area is to be sufficiently large to allow for the landing and manoeuvring of the aircraft, and is to be approached by a clear landing and take off sector complying in extent with any applicable regulations.



**Fig. 2.10.1 Landing diagrams**

**10.4.2** Normally, for maximum flexibility in helicopter operations, the landing area is to be taken as a square not less than 1,25 times the rotor diameter. Where the operation of helicopters is restricted to known helicopter types, the areas of deck structure to be assessed for the landing condition are to be taken as squares not less than two times the maximum wheel strut spacing. The squares are to be centred on all the normal landing points, at all specified landing orientations, for all helicopters. For fixed wing aircraft the area to be considered will be determined by the operational requirements of the vessel. The landing area is to be clearly identified.

**10.4.3** The take off and landing area are generally to be free of projections above the level of the deck. Projections above 25 mm may only be permitted where allowed by the aircraft undercarriage design standard. Projections outside the landing and take off areas are to be kept to a minimum such that they do not hinder aircraft manoeuvring operations.

**10.4.4** The structure is to be designed to accommodate the largest aircraft type which it is intended to use. It is advised that an allowance be made for future growth of the helicopter weight such that future operations are not restricted to lower sea states.

**10.4.5** Engine uptake arrangements are to be sited such that exhaust gases cannot as far as practicable be drawn directly into aircraft engine intakes during aircraft take off or landing operations under anticipated operating conditions that include ship speed, ship motion and wind direction.

# Military Load Specification

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 2

Section 10

## 10.5 Loading

10.5.1 The load cases to be applied to all parts of the structure are defined in Table 2.10.6. in which:

$f$  = 1,15 for landing decks over magazines or permanently manned spaces, e.g. deckhouses, bridges, control rooms, etc.  
= 1,0 elsewhere

$\lambda$  = reaction factor for the aircraft considered

$W_{auw}$  = the maximum all up weight of the aircraft, in kN

$W_{ty}$  = landing or static load, on the tyre print, in kN; with the centre of gravity in a position that causes the highest load. In the absence of specific aircraft manufacturers' information on the static or dynamic distribution of load,  $W_{ty}$  is to be taken as  $W_{auw}$  divided equally between the two main undercarriages ignoring the nose or tail wheel. For helicopters with twin main rotors,  $W_{ty}$  is to be taken as  $W_{auw}$  distributed between all main undercarriages in accordance with the static load distribution.

10.5.2 The reaction factor,  $\lambda$ , may be determined from Table 2.10.1 where manufacturers' information is not available. Otherwise the information in 10.6 or 10.7 as appropriate may be used to estimate  $\lambda$ .

**Table 2.10.1 Landing reaction factor**

| Aircraft type                                                                                    | $\lambda$ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|
| Helicopters                                                                                      | 2,5       |
| VSTOL aircraft                                                                                   | 3,5       |
| Fixed wing aircraft                                                                              | 5         |
| NOTE<br>Reaction factors are derived from the average values for marinised versions of aircraft. |           |

10.5.3 The reaction factor for helicopters using recovery systems will be specially considered.

## 10.6 Determination of $\lambda$ for fixed wing aircraft

10.6.1 The reaction factor can be calculated by simulation, testing or estimated from the following formulae:

$$\lambda = \frac{V_L^2}{2g (\eta_T \delta_T + \eta_S \delta_S)}$$

where

$\lambda$  = reaction factor

$\delta_S, \delta_T$  = deflection of the shock absorber or tyre, in metres

$V_L$  = vertical landing velocity including ship motions, in m/s

$\eta_T$  = efficiency of the tyre typically assumed to be 0,47

$\eta_S$  = efficiency of the shock absorber, see Table 2.10.2.

**Table 2.10.2 Shock absorber efficiency**

|        | Steel spring | Rubber | Air  | Liquid spring | OLEO |
|--------|--------------|--------|------|---------------|------|
| $\eta$ | 0,5          | 0,6    | 0,48 | 0,76          | 0,8  |

10.6.2 The vertical velocity is the maximum landing velocity derived from trials or simulation and is to include the effects of ship motion. In no case is it to be taken less than 6 m/s. If landing operations are to be carried out in sea states greater than six then the minimum vertical velocity will be further considered.

## 10.7 Determination of $\lambda$ for helicopters

10.7.1 The reaction factor can be calculated by simulation, testing or estimated from the following formulae:

$$\lambda = \frac{V_L^2}{2g (\eta_T \delta_T + \eta_S \delta_S)} + \frac{(1 - f_L) (\delta_T + \delta_S)}{\eta_T \delta_T + \eta_S \delta_S}$$

where

$\lambda, \delta_S, \delta_T, V_L, \eta_T, \eta_S$  are defined in 10.6

$f_L$  = the percentage of lift carried by the rotors at the time of landing typically 66 per cent.

10.7.2 The vertical velocity is the maximum landing velocity derived from ship trials or simulation and is to include the effects of ship motion. In no case is it to be taken less than 3,72 m/s. If landing operations are to be carried out in sea states greater than six then the minimum vertical velocity will be further considered.

10.7.3 For ships where helicopter operations are restricted to sea states lower than six the vertical velocities defined in Table 2.10.3 can be used.

**Table 2.10.3 Vertical velocity**

| Sea state | Vertical velocity |
|-----------|-------------------|
| 6         | 3,72              |
| 5         | 3,35              |
| 4         | 2,97              |
| 3         | 2,60              |
| 2         | 2,23              |

10.7.4 Using a vertical velocity lower than the design given in this Section, for example a land based helicopter, will result in higher probabilities of exceedance. The derivation of vertical velocity is such that it includes the effects of ship motions and pilot action and is independent of the design vertical velocity of the undercarriage.

10.7.5 Information on the probability of encountering a particular sea state for a sea area can be found in Pt 5, Ch 2,2.

10.7.6 For helicopters with skids, determination of the reaction factor will be specially considered.

# Military Load Specification

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 2

Section 10

## 10.8 Deck plating design

10.8.1 The deck plate thickness,  $t_p$ , within the landing area is to be not less than:

$$t_p = \frac{\alpha s}{1000 \sqrt{k_s}} - t_c \quad \text{mm}$$

where

$\alpha$  = thickness coefficient obtained from Fig. 3.2.1 in Ch 3,2 using a value of  $\beta$  given by

$\beta$  = tyre print coefficient used in Fig. 3.2.1 in Ch 3,2

$$\beta = \log_{10} \left( \frac{0,6 F_{\text{typ}} \phi_1 \phi_2 \phi_3 \gamma k_s^2}{9,81 s^2} \times 10^7 \right)$$

$k_s$  = higher tensile steel factor defined in Pt 6, Ch 5

$s$  = stiffener spacing, in mm

$F_{\text{typ}}$  = tyre force, in kN from Table 2.10.6

$\lambda$  = reaction factor for the aircraft considered, see 10.5

$\gamma$  = a location factor given in Table 2.10.4

$\phi_1, \phi_2, \phi_3$  = are patch load correction factors determined from Table 2.10.5

$t_c$  = permanent set correction in mm, see 10.8.2

$a, s$  = the panel dimensions in mm, see Fig. 2.10.2

$u, v$  = the patch dimensions in mm, see Fig. 2.10.2.

**Table 2.10.4 Location factor,  $\gamma$**

| Location                                                                                         | $\gamma$                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| On decks forming part of the hull girder<br>(a) within $0,4L_R$ amidships<br>(b) at the FP or AP | 1,18<br>1,0<br>Values for intermediate locations are to be determined by interpolation |
| Elsewhere                                                                                        | 1,0                                                                                    |

**Table 2.10.5 Patch load corrections  $\phi_1, \phi_2, \phi_3$**

| Factor                                                           | Condition                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| $\phi_1 = \frac{2v_1 + 1,1s}{u_1 + 1,1s}$                        | $v_1 = v$ , but $\leq s$<br>$u_1 = u$ , but $\leq a$           |
| $\phi_2 = 1,0$<br>$= \frac{1}{1,3 - 0,3(a-u)/s}$<br>$= 0,77 a/u$ | for $u \leq (a-s)$<br>for $a \geq u > (a-s)$<br>for $u > a$    |
| $\phi_3 = 1,0$<br>$= 0,6(s/v) + 0,4$<br>$= 1,2(s/v)$             | for $v < s$<br>for $1,5 > (v/s) > 1,0$<br>for $(v/s) \geq 1,5$ |

**Table 2.10.6 Design load cases for primary and secondary deck stiffening and supporting structure**

| Condition             | Loading                          |                                       |                                     |                                     |                                                                      |                                        |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
|                       | Plate, $F_{\text{typ}}$<br>kN    | Stiffening                            |                                     |                                     | Support structure                                                    |                                        |
|                       |                                  | $P_{\text{tyw}}$<br>kN/m <sup>2</sup> | Point loads, $F_{\text{tys}}$<br>kN | Self weight, $F_{\text{tym}}$<br>kN | Vertical<br>kN                                                       | Horizontal<br>kN                       |
| Emergency landing     | $\lambda f W_{\text{ty}}$        | 0,2                                   | $DLF \lambda f W_{\text{ty}}$       | $(1 + a_z) W_s$                     | Self weight $W_{\text{pl}}$<br>plus landing loads<br>from all wheels | $0,5W_{\text{auw}}$                    |
| Normal landing        | $0,6 \lambda W_{\text{ty}}$      | 0,5                                   | $0,6DLF \lambda W_{\text{ty}}$      | $(1 + a_z) W_s$                     |                                                                      | $0,5W_{\text{auw}} + 0,5W_{\text{pl}}$ |
| Take off (fixed wing) | $2,65W_{\text{ty}}$              | 0,5                                   | $2,65W_{\text{ty}}$                 | $(1 + a_z) W_s$                     |                                                                      |                                        |
| Manoeuvring internal  | $1,6W_{\text{ty}}$               | –                                     | $1,6W_{\text{ty}}$                  | $(1 + a_z) W_s$                     |                                                                      |                                        |
| Manoeuvring external  | $1,75W_{\text{ty}}$              | 0,5                                   | $1,75W_{\text{ty}}$                 | $(1 + a_z) W_s$                     |                                                                      |                                        |
| Parking internal      | $(1 + 0,6a_z) W_{\text{ty}}$     | –                                     | $(1 + 0,6a_z) W_{\text{ty}}$        | $(1 + a_z) W_s$                     |                                                                      |                                        |
| Parking external      | $1,1 (1 + 0,6a_z) W_{\text{ty}}$ | 2                                     | $1,1 (1 + 0,6a_z) W_{\text{ty}}$    | $(1 + a_z) W_s$                     |                                                                      |                                        |

$W_{\text{ty}}, W_{\text{auw}}$  and  $f$  as defined in 10.5

$\lambda$  is defined in 10.8

$W_{\text{pl}}$  = structural weight of aircraft platform, in kN

$W_s$  = structural weight of stiffener and supported structure, in kN

$P_{\text{tyw}}$  = uniformly distributed vertical load over entire landing area, kN/m<sup>2</sup>

$DLF$  = Dynamic load factor

Fixed wing 1,35 for secondary stiffening, 1,5 for primary stiffening

Helicopters 1,2 for secondary stiffening, 1,5 for primary stiffening

$a_z$  is defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,2

### NOTES

- For the design of the supporting structure for helicopter platforms applicable self weight and horizontal loads are to be added to the landing area loads.
- The helicopter is to be so positioned as to produce the most severe loading condition for each structural member under consideration.
- Stiffening members may have more than one point load acting at one time.

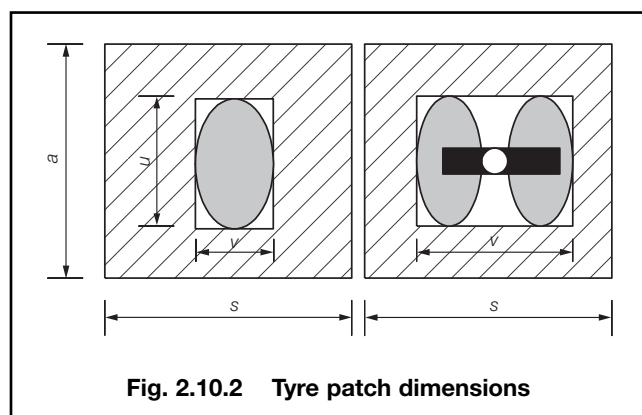


Fig. 2.10.2 Tyre patch dimensions

10.8.2 The permanent deflection correction,  $t_c$ , is a plating thickness reduction which can be applied if aircraft manoeuvring, take off and deck equipment operations allow some permanent set to occur

$$t_c = 0,001C s^n \text{ mm}$$

where

$C = 0,00071$  and  $n = 2,2$  for moderate deformations

$C = 0,0154$  and  $n = 1,85$  for large deformations.

10.8.3 Moderate deformations are defined as those that will restrict manual manoeuvring of the aircraft. They will typically be 1,5 times the deflection expected from normal ship construction.

10.8.4 Large deformations are defined as those that will restrict operations to aircraft landing only with no wheeled vehicle operations they will typically be 2,5 times the deflections expected from normal ship construction.

10.8.5 If permanent deformation of the landing area plating is to be allowed then the plating must also be assessed for normal operations with  $t_c = 0,0$  mm.

10.8.6 The permanent deflection correction is not to be applied to landing areas within  $0,3L_R$  to  $0,7L_R$  and other areas where there are significant in-plane stresses in the plate. Also the correction is not to be applied to areas where deflections could cause operational restrictions, for example the use of forklift trucks or rolling take off.

10.8.7 The static tyre print dimensions at  $W_{auw}$  specified by the manufacturer are to be used for the calculation. Where these are unknown it may be assumed that the print area is 200 mm x 300 mm and this assumption is to be indicated on the submitted plan.

10.8.8 Twin wheels are to be combined to form a single patch as shown in Fig. 2.10.2.

10.8.9 For helicopters fitted with landing gear consisting of skids, the print dimensions specified by the manufacturer are to be used. Where these are unknown it may be assumed that the print consists of a 300 mm line load at each end of each skid, when applying Fig. 3.2.1 in Ch 3,2.

10.8.10 For decks fitted with sheathing greater than 25 mm a reduced plate thickness from that given in 10.8.1 may be specially considered.

10.8.11 For steel decks in frequent use and where no suitable protective sheathing or coating is used the thickness of the plating is to be increased by 1,5 mm to allow for wear and corrosion.

## 10.9 Deck stiffening design

10.9.1 The aircraft deck stiffening is to be designed for the load cases given in Table 2.10.6 with the aircraft being positioned so as to produce the most severe loading condition for each structural member under consideration. All possible positions and orientations are to be considered that can occur during aircraft operations.

10.9.2 The minimum requirements for section modulus, inertia and web area of secondary stiffeners are to be in accordance with the requirements of Table 3.2.3 in Pt 4, Ch 3, using the load cases defined in Table 2.10.6.

10.9.3 For primary stiffening, and where a grillage arrangement is adopted, it is recommended that direct calculation procedures are used to determine the scantling requirements in association with the limiting permissible stress criteria given in Table 5.3.2 in Pt 6, Ch 5. The calculation is to be submitted for consideration.

10.9.4 Where continuous secondary stiffeners pass through the webs of primary members, they are to be fully collared or lugged in way. The shear stresses at the connections are to be in compliance with Pt 6, Ch 5.

## 10.10 Parking and manoeuvring areas

10.10.1 For areas designed for parking and manoeuvring of aircraft the maximum take off weight of the aircraft is to be used with the maximum fuel and payload.

10.10.2 For areas where only manoeuvring occurs and parking is restricted to designated and clearly marked areas then the scantlings of structure are to be calculated in accordance with 10.8 and 10.9 using the manoeuvring and parking loads given in Table 2.10.6 as appropriate. If parking areas are not clearly marked then the parking loads in Table 2.10.6 are to be applied to all areas of aircraft operation outside the landing area.  $W_{ty}$  may be determined from the static distribution of the load or in the absence of specific information shared equally between the tyres. The loads for non-pneumatic tyres will be specially considered.

10.10.3 Parking areas may not be taken less than two frame spaces or the tyre width plus 500 mm whichever is the greater. Consideration should be given to the use of removable lagging around these areas and at the adjacent beam bulkhead connection.

10.10.4 Additional forces from tie down arrangements on the structure need only be considered if the tensioning force applied exceeds that imposed by the forces from ship motions as defined in 10.14.

10.10.5 Decks subjected to a combination of parking and significant in-plane stresses will be specially considered.

**10.11 Assisted take off**

*10.11.1* Where the aircraft jet is not parallel to the deck at the moment of launch or jet blast deflectors are used the structure is to be capable of withstanding the thermal loads imposed on the deck.

*10.11.2* The structure of ramps used to assist take off are to be specially considered.

*10.11.3* Structure surrounding catapults is to be effectively supported and designed for the maximum forces imposed by the launch system using the stress criteria given in Table 5.3.2 in Pt 6, Ch 5.

**10.12 Arrested landing**

*10.12.1* Structure surrounding arresting gear is to be effectively supported and designed for the maximum forces imposed by the arrested aircraft using the stress criteria given in Table 5.3.2 in Pt 6, Ch 5.

**10.13 Vertical recovery**

*10.13.1* The structure in way of the landing area and approach path is to be capable of withstanding the thermal loads imposed by hot exhaust gases.

**10.14 Tie down forces**

*10.14.1* The force to be used in assessing the tie down points is to be determined from the calculations for the securing arrangements, in accordance with LR's LAME Code.

---

# Special Features

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 3

Sections 1 & 2

## Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Vehicle decks and fixed ramps**
- 3 **Bow doors**
- 4 **Side, stern doors and other shell openings**
- 5 **Movable decks, lifts, internal and external ramps**

## ■ Section 1 General

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to mono-hull and multi-hull ships of steel construction as defined in Pt 1, Ch 1,1.

### 1.2 Symbols and definitions

1.2.1 The symbols and definitions used in this Chapter are defined below and in the appropriate Section:

- $s$  = stiffener spacing, in mm
- $k_s$  = higher tensile steel factor, see Pt 6, Ch 5,3.1.1.

## ■ Section 2 Vehicle decks and fixed ramps

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 These requirements are applicable to longitudinally or transversely framed ships intended for the carriage of tracked vehicles, wheeled vehicles, or where wheeled vehicles are to be used for cargo handling.

2.1.2 The deck and supporting structure are to be designed on the basis of the maximum loading to which they may be subjected in service. Where applicable, the hatch covers are to be similarly designed. In no case, however, are the scantlings to be less than would be required for a weather or cargo deck, or hatch cover, as applicable.

2.1.3 Details of the deck loading resulting from the proposed stowage or operation of vehicles are to be supplied by the Builder. These details are to include axle and wheel spacing, the wheel load, type of tyre and tyre print dimensions for the vehicles. The vehicle types and wheel loads for which the vehicle decks, including hatch covers where applicable, have been approved are to be included in the ship's documentation and contained in a notice displayed on each deck. For wheeled vehicles, the wheel loading is to be taken as not less than 3,0 kN.

2.1.4 The scantling requirements are based on structural strength and limitations on stress and deflection, guidance for wear and tear allowances is given in 2.3. Local reinforcement is to be fitted as necessary, particularly in way of vehicle lanes and embarked personnel routes.

2.1.5 The webs of vehicle deck stiffening members are in no cases to be scalloped.

2.1.6 If wheeled vehicles are to be used on insulated decks or tanks tops, consideration will be given to the permissible loading in association with the insulation arrangements and the plating thickness.

2.1.7 Suitable fire fighting equipment and services should be provided in the vehicle space. Arrangements should be made for ventilation and drainage of spilt fuel.

### 2.2 Definitions

2.2.1 **Load area.** The load area is defined as the footprint area of an individual wheel or the area enclosing a group of wheels when the distance between footprints is less than the smaller dimension of the individual prints.

### 2.3 Deck plating

2.3.1 The thickness,  $t_p$ , of vehicle deck plating is to be taken as not less than:

$$t_p = \frac{\alpha s}{1000\sqrt{k_s}} \text{ mm}$$

where

- $\alpha$  = thickness coefficient obtained from Fig. 3.2.1 using a value of  $\beta$  given by
- $\beta$  = tyre print coefficient used in Fig. 3.2.1
- $= \log_{10} \left( \frac{F_{typ} k_s^2}{9,81s^2} \times 10^7 \right)$

$s$  = secondary stiffener spacing, in mm

$F_{typ}$  = corrected patch load for plating, in kN obtained from Table 3.2.1, see also Fig. 3.2.1 and Table 3.2.2  
 $s$  and  $k_s$  are as defined in 1.2.

2.3.2 Where transversely framed decks contribute to the hull girder strength or where secondary stiffening is fitted perpendicular to the direction of vehicle lanes, the thickness,  $t_p$ , derived from 2.3.1 is to be increased by 1,0 mm.

2.3.3 In the absence of a specific requirement the thickness,  $t_p$ , derived from 2.3.1 is to be increased by a wear and wastage allowance of 1,5 mm for strength decks, weather decks, tank tops and inner bottom or 0,75 mm elsewhere.



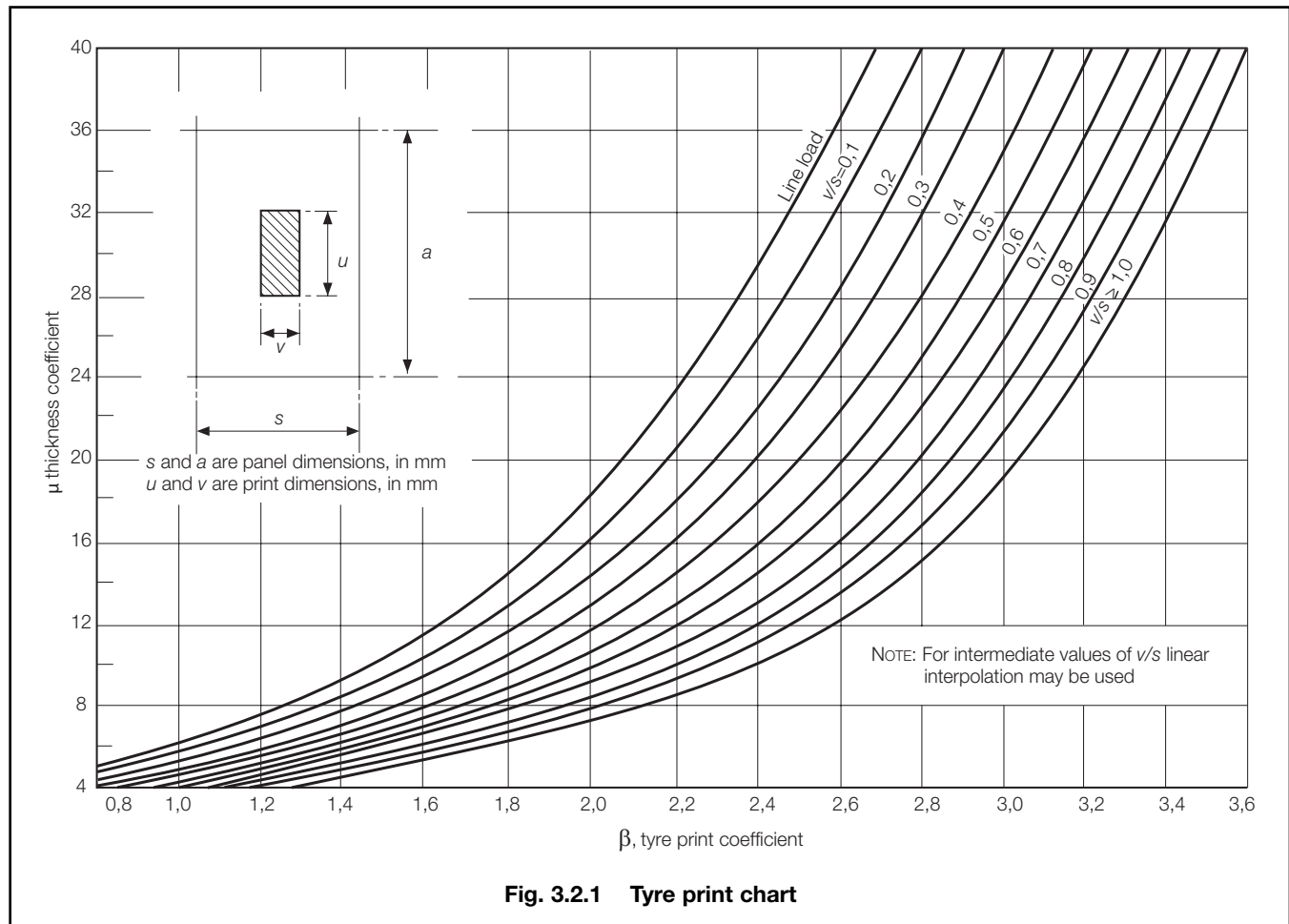


Table 3.2.1 Deck plate thickness calculation

| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Expression                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $a, s, u,$ and $v$ as defined in Fig. 3.2.1<br>$n$ = tyre correction factor as detailed in Table 3.2.2<br>$F_{typ}$ = corrected patch load for plating, in kN<br>$\lambda$ = dynamic magnification factor<br>$W_{ty}$ = load, in kN, on the tyre print. For closely spaced wheels the area shown in Fig. 2.10.2 may be taken as the combined print<br>$\phi_1$ = patch aspect ratio correction factor<br>$\phi_2$ = panel aspect ratio correction factor<br>$\phi_3$ = wide patch load factor | $F_{typ} = \phi_1 \phi_2 \phi_3 \lambda W_{ty}$                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | $\phi_1 = \frac{2v_1 + 1,1s}{u_1 + 1,1s}$ <div style="display: inline-block; vertical-align: middle; margin-left: 20px;"> <math>v_1 = v, \text{ but } \leq s</math><br/> <math>u_1 = u, \text{ but } \leq a</math> </div> |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | $\phi_2 = 1,0$ for $u \leq (a - s)$<br>$= \frac{1}{1,3 - \frac{0,3}{s}(a - u)}$ for $a \geq u > (a - s)$<br>$= 0,77 \frac{a}{u}$ for $u > a$                                                                              |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | $\phi_3 = 1,0$ for $v < s$<br>$= 0,6 (s/v) + 0,4$ for $1,5 > (v/s) > 1,0$<br>$= 1,2 (s/v)$ for $(v/s) \geq 1,5$                                                                                                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | $\lambda = 1,25$ for harbour conditions<br>$= (1 + 0,7n)$ for sea-going conditions                                                                                                                                        |

## Special Features

## Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 3

Section 2

**Table 3.2.2 Tyre correction factor,  $n$** 

| Number of wheels in idealised patch | Pneumatic tyres correction factor, $n$ | Solid rubber tyres correction factor, $n$ |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1                                   | 0,6                                    | 0,8                                       |
| 2 or more                           | 0,75                                   | 0,9                                       |

**2.4 Secondary stiffening**

2.4.1 The scantlings of vehicle deck stiffeners are to satisfy the most severe arrangement of print wheel loads.

2.4.2 The minimum requirements for section modulus, inertia and web area of vehicle deck secondary stiffeners subject to wheel loading are to be calculated in accordance with Table 3.2.3 using the loads defined in Table 3.2.4.

2.4.3 When two or more load areas are located simultaneously on the same stiffener span, the scantling requirements are to be specially considered on the basis of direct calculation.

**2.5 Primary stiffening**

2.5.1 Generally the scantlings of vehicle deck primary girders and transverse web frames are to be determined on the basis of direct calculation in association with the loads defined in Table 3.2.4 and the limiting permissible stresses and deflection criteria contained in Pt 6, Ch 5.

**Table 3.2.4 Design load cases for primary and secondary stiffening and supporting structure**

| Condition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Loading                               |                              |                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Stiffening                            |                              |                              |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | UDL<br>$P_{tyw}$<br>kN/m <sup>2</sup> | Point loads, $F_{tys}$<br>kN | Self weight, $F_{tym}$<br>kN |
| Manoeuvring internal                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | —                                     | $1,6W_{ty}$                  | $(1 + a_z) W_s$              |
| Manoeuvring external                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 0,5                                   | $1,75W_{ty}$                 | $(1 + a_z) W_s$              |
| Parking internal                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | —                                     | $(1 + n a_z) W_{ty}$         | $(1 + a_z) W_s$              |
| Parking external                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 2                                     | $1,1 (1 + n a_z) W_{ty}$     | $(1 + a_z) W_s$              |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                       |                              |                              |
| $W_{ty}$ = maximum effective load per wheel or group of wheels<br>$W_s$ = structural weight of stiffener and supported structure, in kN<br>UDL = uniformly distributed load over entire vehicle area, kN/m <sup>2</sup><br>$n$ = tyre correction factor in Table 3.2.2<br>$a_z$ is defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,2                                                                                     |                                       |                              |                              |
| NOTES<br>1. For the design of the supporting structure for vehicle decks, the applicable self weight and horizontal loads are to be added to the parking area loads.<br>2. The vehicles are to be positioned so as to produce the most severe loading condition for each structural member under consideration.<br>3. Stiffening members may have more than one point load acting at any time. |                                       |                              |                              |

**Table 3.2.3 Secondary stiffener requirements**

| Scantling requirement                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Load case                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | $d \leq l$                                                                                                                                         | $d > l$                                                                                                                           |
| Section modulus ( $Z$ )<br>(cm <sup>3</sup> )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | $Z = \left( \frac{k_w F_{tys} (3l^2 - d^2)}{24l} + \frac{P_{tyw} s l^2}{10} + \frac{F_{tym} l}{10} \right) \frac{10^3}{f_\sigma \sigma_o}$         | $Z = \left( \frac{k_w F_{tys} l^2}{10d} + \frac{P_{tyw} s l^2}{10} + \frac{F_{tym} l}{10} \right) \frac{10^3}{f_\sigma \sigma_o}$ |
| Inertia ( $I$ )<br>(cm <sup>4</sup> )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $I = \left( \frac{k_w F_{tys} (2l^3 - 2d^2 l + d^3)}{384l} + \frac{P_{tyw} s l^3}{288} + \frac{F_{tym} l^2}{288} \right) \frac{10^5}{f_\delta E}$  | $I = \left( \frac{k_w F_{tys} l^3}{384d} + \frac{P_{tyw} s l^3}{288} + \frac{F_{tym} l^2}{288} \right) \frac{10^5}{f_\delta E}$   |
| Web area ( $A_w$ )<br>(cm <sup>2</sup> )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | $A_w = \left( \frac{k_w F_{tys} (m^3 - 2m^2 + 2)}{2} + \frac{P_{tyw} s l}{2} + \frac{F_{tym}}{2} \right) \frac{10}{f_t \tau_o}$<br>where $m = d/l$ | $A_w = \left( \frac{k_w F_{tys} l}{2d} + \frac{P_{tyw} s l}{2} + \frac{F_{tym}}{2} \right) \frac{10}{f_t \tau_o}$                 |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                   |
| $l$ = overall secondary stiffener length, in metres<br>$s$ = stiffener spacing, in metres<br>$d$ = dimension of load area parallel to stiffener axis, in metres<br>$E$ = Youngs Modulus of elasticity of material, in N/mm <sup>2</sup><br>$w$ = dimension of load area perpendicular to stiffener axis, in metres<br>$k_w$ = lateral loading factor<br>= 1 for $w \leq s$<br>= $s/w$ for $w > s$                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                   |
| $F_{tys}$ = point load given in Table 3.2.4, in kN<br>$F_{tym}$ = self weight load given in Table 3.2.4, in kN<br>$P_{tyw}$ = weather deck load given in Table 3.2.4, in kN/m <sup>2</sup><br>$f_\sigma, f_\delta, f_t$ are the structural design factors given in Pt 6, Ch 5<br>$\sigma_o$ = specified minimum yield strength of the material, in N/mm <sup>2</sup><br>$\tau_o$ = shear strength of the material, in N/mm <sup>2</sup><br>= $\frac{\sigma_o}{\sqrt{3}}$ |                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                   |

## 2.6 Securing arrangements

2.6.1 The strength and stiffness of the holding down arrangements and supporting structure are to be in accordance with Ch 1,5.2.

2.6.2 Deck fittings in way of vehicle lanes are to be recessed.

2.6.3 The vehicle deck structure is to be of adequate strength for the upward forces imposed at fixed securing points. Local reinforcement is to be fitted as necessary.

## 2.7 Access

2.7.1 Bow doors are to comply with the requirements of Section 4.

2.7.2 Where access to the vehicle deck is provided by side and stern doors, the doors are to have scantlings equivalent to the structure in which they are fitted, see also Pt 3, Ch 4,4.

2.7.3 Doors providing access between vehicle decks and accommodation spaces are to be gastight, have scantlings equivalent to the surrounding structure and where applicable are to comply with the fire requirements as defined by the Naval Authority.

## 2.8 Hatch covers

2.8.1 The scantlings and arrangements of hatches and hatch covers located within vehicle decks are to be not less than that required by the Rules for the supporting structure in which such hatches are fitted. In general the end fixity of primary stiffening members is to be taken as simply supported. Local and secondary stiffening members may be either partially or fully fixed at their end connections dependent upon the proposed arrangement.

2.8.2 In no case, however, are the scantlings of plating and stiffeners to be less than would be required for a weather or cargo deck hatch cover, as applicable.

2.8.3 Where unusual arrangements of hatch cover stiffening are proposed, the scantlings of plating and stiffeners may be determined by direct calculations. The designer's calculations are to be submitted.

## 2.9 Heavy and special loads

2.9.1 Where heavy or special loads are proposed to be carried, the scantlings and arrangements of the deck structure will be individually considered on the basis of submitted calculations.

2.9.2 Due account is to be taken of the acceleration levels due to ship motion as applicable to particular items of heavy mass such as vehicles, containers, pallets, etc.

## 2.10 Tracked and steel wheeled vehicles

2.10.1 Where it is proposed to carry tracked vehicles the patch dimensions may be taken as the track print dimensions and  $F_w$  is to be taken as half the total weight of the vehicle. Deck fittings in way of vehicle lanes are to be recessed.

2.10.2 Where it is proposed to carry tracked vehicles, the total weight of the vehicle is to be used when determining the section modulus of the transverse at the top of a ramp or at other changes of gradient.

2.10.3 A wear and tear allowance is to be added to the plating thickness and it is not to be less than that defined in 2.3.3.

## 2.11 Openings in main vehicle deck

2.11.1 Items such as portable plates in main vehicle deck for the removal of machinery parts, etc., may be arranged flush with the deck, provided they are secured by gaskets and closely spaced bolts at a pitch not exceeding five diameters.

2.11.2 Scuppers from vehicle or cargo spaces fitted with an approved fixed pressure water spray fire-extinguishing system are to be led inboard to tanks. Alternatively they may be led overboard providing they comply with Pt 3, Ch 4,7.1.3(a) and (b).

2.11.3 Inboard draining scuppers do not require valves but are to be led to suitable drain tanks (not engine room or hold bilges) and the capacity of the tanks should be sufficient to hold approximately 10 minutes of drenching water. The arrangements for emptying these tanks are to be approved and suitable high level alarms provided.

2.11.4 Air pipes from cofferdams or void spaces may terminate in the enclosed 'tween deck space on the main vehicle deck provided the space is adequately ventilated and the air pipes are provided with weathertight closing appliances.

2.11.5 In addition, the requirements of 3.10.8 to 3.10.10 are to be complied with.

## 2.12 Direct calculations

2.12.1 Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') will consider direct calculations for the derivation of scantlings as an alternative to and equivalent to those derived by Rule requirements. The assumptions made and the calculation procedures used are to be submitted for appraisal in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1,2.

# Special Features

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 3

Section 3

## Section 3 Bow doors

### 3.1 Application

3.1.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to the arrangement, strength and securing of bow doors, both the visor and the side opening type doors, and inner doors leading to a complete or long forward enclosed superstructure, or to a long non-enclosed superstructure which is fitted to attain minimum bow height equivalence.

3.1.2 Other types of bow door will be specially considered.

3.1.3 Where the operational requirements dictate that the doors and ramps be deployed at sea or in the surf zone, the strength and operation will be specially considered.

### 3.2 General

3.2.1 The attention of Owners and Builders is drawn to the additional statutory regulations for bow doors that may be required by the Naval Authority.

3.2.2 Bow doors are to be located above the vertical limit of watertight integrity. A watertight recess is normally permitted below the vertical limit of watertight integrity located forward of the collision bulkhead and above the deepest waterline, for the arrangement of ramps or other related mechanical devices. For any ship where bow doors may be open at sea or located below the vertical limit of watertight integrity, the enclosed spaces protected by the door or ramp are to be considered open as well as closed in damage stability or flooding conditions.

3.2.3 An inner door is to be fitted which is to be gasketed and weathertight. The inner door is to be part of the collision bulkhead. The inner door need not be fitted directly above the bulkhead below, provided it is located within the limits specified for the position of the collision bulkhead, see Pt 3, Ch 2,4. A vehicle ramp may be arranged for this purpose, provided its position complies with Pt 3, Ch 2,4 and the ramp is weathertight over its complete length. In this case the upper part of the ramp higher than 2,3 m above the vertical limit of watertight integrity may extend forward of the limit specified in Pt 3, Ch 2,4. If this is not possible a separate inner weathertight door is to be installed, as far as practicable within the limits specified for the position of the collision bulkhead.

3.2.4 Bow doors are to be fitted as to ensure tightness consistent with operational conditions and to give effective protection to inner doors. Inner doors forming part of the collision bulkhead are to be weathertight over the full height of the vehicle space and arranged with fixed sealing supports on the aft side of the doors.

3.2.5 Bow doors and inner doors are to be arranged so as to preclude the possibility of the bow door causing structural damage to the inner door or to the collision bulkhead in the case of damage to or detachment of the bow door. If this is not possible, a separate inner weathertight door is to be installed, as indicated in 3.2.3.

3.2.6 The requirements for inner doors are based on the assumption that vehicles are effectively lashed and secured against movement in the stowed position.

3.2.7 The scantlings and arrangements of side shell and stern doors are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 3.

### 3.3 Symbols and definitions

3.3.1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

$A_s$  = area stiffener web, in  $\text{cm}^2$

$A_x$  = area, in  $\text{m}^2$ , of the transverse vertical projection of the bow door, between the bottom of the door and the top of the door or between the bottom of the door and the upper deck bulwark, or between the bottom of the door and the top of the door, including the bulwark, where it is part of the door, whichever is the lesser, see Fig. 3.3.2. Where the flare angle of the bulwark is at least 15 degrees less than the flare angle of the adjacent shell plating, the height from the bottom of the door may be measured to the upper deck or to the top of the door, whichever is lesser. In determining the height from the bottom of the door to the upper deck or to the top of the door, the bulwark is to be excluded

$A_y$  = area, in  $\text{m}^2$ , of the longitudinal vertical projection of the bow door, between the bottom of the door and the top of the upper deck bulwark, or between the bottom of the door and the top of the door, including the bulwark, where it is part of the door, whichever is the lesser, see Fig. 3.3.2. Where the flare angle of the bulwark is at least 15 degrees less than the flare angle of the adjacent shell plating, the height from the bottom of the door may be measured to the upper deck or to the top of the door, whichever is the lesser

$A_z$  = area, in  $\text{m}^2$ , of the horizontal projection of the bow door, between the bottom of the door and the top of the upper deck bulwark, or between the bottom of the door and the top of the door, including the bulwark, where it is part of the door, whichever is the lesser, see Fig. 3.3.2. Where the flare angle of the bulwark is at least 15 degrees less than the flare angle of the adjacent shell plating, the height from the bottom of the door may be measured to the upper deck or to the top of the door, whichever is the lesser

$a_{bv}$  = vertical distance, in metres, from visor pivot to the centroid of the transverse vertical projected area of the visor door, as shown in Fig. 3.3.2

$b_{bv}$  = horizontal distance, in metres, from visor pivot to the centroid of the horizontal projected area of the visor door, as shown in Fig. 3.3.2

$c_{bv}$  = horizontal distance, in metres, from visor pivot to the centre of gravity of visor mass, as shown in Fig. 3.3.2

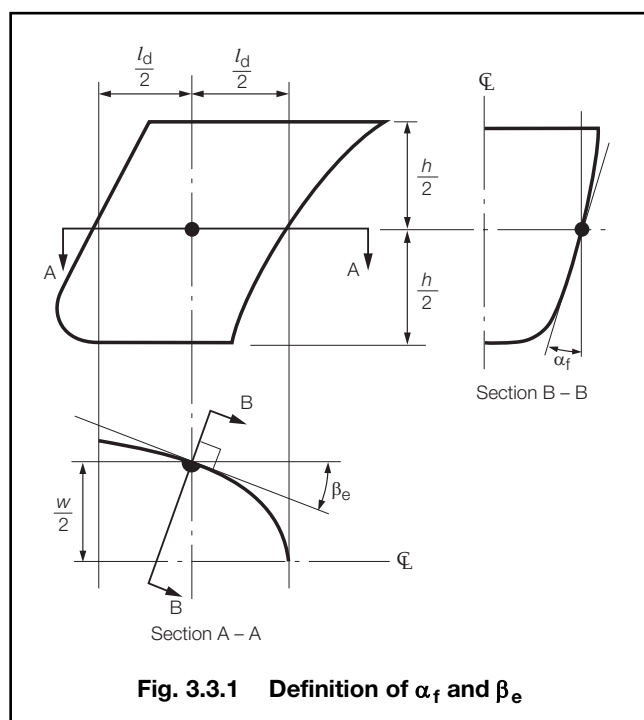
$d_{bv}$  = vertical distance, in metres, from bow door pivot to the centre of gravity of the bow door, see Fig. 3.3.2

# Special Features

# Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 3

Section 3

- $h$  = height of the door between the levels of the bottom of the door and the upper deck or between the bottom of the door and the top of the door, whichever is the lesser, as shown in Fig. 3.3.1
- $k_s$  = higher tensile steel factor defined in Pt 6, Ch 5, 3.1.1
- $Q_{bd}$  = shear force, in kN, in the stiffener calculated by using uniformly distributed external pressure,  $\beta_e$ , as given in Fig. 3.3.1
- $W_{bv}$  = mass of the visor door, in tonnes
- $W$  = breadth of the door at a height  $h/2$  above the bottom of the door, in metres, as shown in Fig. 3.3.2
- $l_d$  = length of the door at a height  $h/2$  above the bottom of the door, in metres, as shown in Fig. 3.3.2
- $\tau$  = shear stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma$  = bending stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma_o$  = specified minimum yield strength of the material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma_{eq}$  = equivalent stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $$= \sqrt{\sigma^2 + 3\tau^2}$$

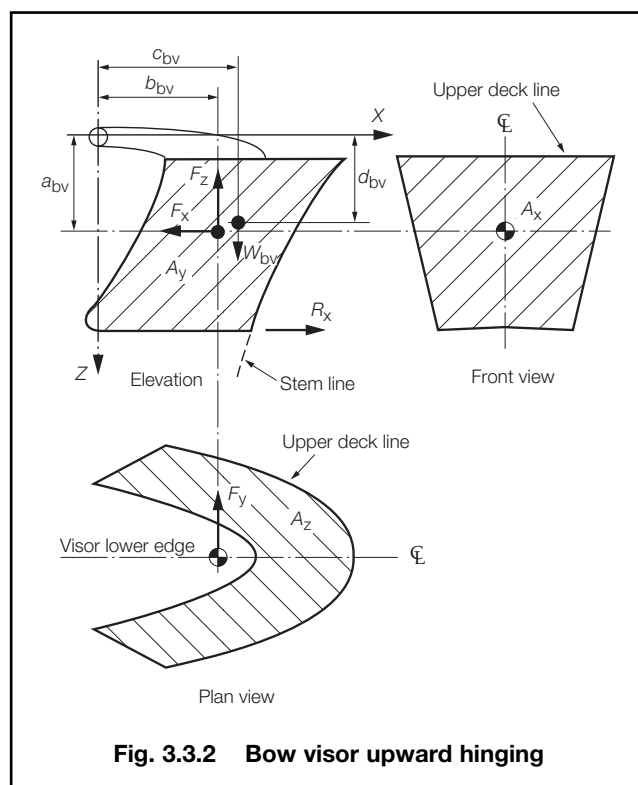


**Fig. 3.3.1** Definition of  $\alpha_f$  and  $\beta_e$

**3.3.2 Locking device.** A device that locks a securing device in the closed position.

**3.3.3 Securing device.** A device used to keep the door closed by preventing it from rotating about its hinges.

**3.3.4 Side-opening doors.** Side-opening doors are opened either by rotating outwards about a vertical axis through two or more hinges located near the outboard edges or by horizontal translation by means of linking arms arranged with pivoted attachments to the door and the craft. It is anticipated that side-opening doors are arranged in pairs.



**Fig. 3.3.2** Bow visor upward hinging

**3.3.5 Supporting device.** A device used to transmit external or internal loads from the door to a securing device and from the securing device to the ship's structure, or a device other than a securing device, such as a hinge, stopper or other fixed device, that transmits loads from the door to the ship's structure.

**3.3.6 Visor doors.** Visor doors are opened by rotating upwards and outwards about a horizontal axis through two or more hinges located near the top of the door and connected to the primary structure of the door by longitudinally arranged lifting arms.

## 3.4 Construction and testing

**3.4.1** Plans are to be of sufficient detail for plan approval purposes. Plans showing the proposed scantlings and arrangement of the bow door are to be submitted. Bow doors are to be constructed under survey.

**3.4.2** Bow doors fitted below the limit of watertight integrity are to be subject to a pressure test of a prototype to confirm the design pressure head.

**3.4.3** As an alternative to prototype testing, the integrity of the door may be demonstrated by calculation and representative testing in accordance with IMO MSC/Circular 1176 – *Unified Interpretations to SOLAS Chapters II-1 and XII and to the Technical Provisions for Means of Access for Inspections*. For doors fitted above the vertical limit of watertight integrity, the doors only require testing following installation, in accordance with Table 6.6.1 in Pt 6, Ch 6.

## 3.5 Strength criteria

3.5.1 Scantlings of the primary members, securing and supporting devices of bow doors and inner doors are to be able to withstand the design loads defined in 3.6. The shear, bending and equivalent stresses are not to exceed  $80/k_s$  N/mm<sup>2</sup>,  $120/k_s$  N/mm<sup>2</sup> and  $150/k_s$  N/mm<sup>2</sup> respectively.

3.5.2 The buckling strength of primary members is to be verified as being adequate, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3.

3.5.3 For steel to steel bearings in securing and supporting devices, the nominal bearing pressure calculated by dividing the design force by the projected bearing area is not to exceed 80 per cent of the yield stress of the bearing material. For other bearing materials, the permissible bearing pressure is to be determined according to the manufacturer's specification.

3.5.4 The arrangement of securing and supporting devices is to be such that threaded bolts do not carry support forces. The maximum tension in way of threads of steel bolts not carrying support forces is not to exceed  $125/k$  N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

## 3.6 Design loads

3.6.1 The design external pressure,  $P_e$ , for the determination of scantlings for primary members, securing and supporting devices of bow doors is to be taken not less than the following:

$$P_e = 2,75\lambda_G C_H (0,22 + 0,15 \tan \alpha_f) \times (0,4V_{\max} \sin \beta_e + 0,6L_R^{0,5})^2 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$V_{\max}$  = maximum speed, in knots, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,2.2.4

$L_R$  = Rule length of ship, in metres, as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2.2

$\lambda_G$  = service area factor for mono-hull ships, see Pt 1, Ch 2,3.5

= 1,0 for sea-going ships

= 0,8 for ships operated in coastal waters

= 0,5 for ships operated in sheltered waters

$C_H$  =  $0,0125L_R$  for  $L_R < 80$  m

= 1,0 for  $L_R \geq 80$  m

$\alpha_f$  = flare angle, in degrees, at the point to be considered, defined as the angle between a vertical line and the tangent to the side shell plating, measured in a vertical plane normal to the horizontal tangent to the shell plating, see Fig. 3.3.1

$\beta_e$  = entry angle, in degrees, at the point to be considered, defined as the angle between a longitudinal line parallel to the centreline and the tangent to the shell plating in a horizontal plane, see Fig. 3.3.1.

3.6.2 The design external forces,  $F_x$ ,  $F_y$  and  $F_z$ , in kN, for the determination of scantlings of securing and supporting devices of bow doors are to be not less than  $P_e A_x$ ,  $P_e A_y$  and  $P_e A_z$  respectively. Where  $P_e$  is the external pressure, defined in 3.6.1, with the flare angle,  $\alpha_f$ , and the entry angle,  $\beta_e$ , measured at the point on the bow door,  $l_d/2$  aft of the stem line on the plane  $h/2$  above the bottom of the door, as shown in Fig. 3.3.1.  $A_x$ ,  $A_y$ ,  $A_z$  and  $h$  as defined in 3.3.1.

3.6.3 For bow doors, including bulwark, of unusual form or proportions, the areas used for the determination of the design values of external forces will be specially considered.

3.6.4 For visor doors the closing moment,  $M_y$ , under external loads, is to be taken as:

$$M_y = F_x a_{bv} + 10W_{bv} c_{bv} - F_z b_{bv} \text{ kNm}$$

where

$W_{bv}$ ,  $a_{bv}$ ,  $b_{bv}$  and  $c_{bv}$  as defined in 3.3.1,  $F_x$  and  $F_z$  as defined in 3.6.2.

3.6.5 The lifting arms of a visor and its supports are to be dimensioned for the static and dynamic forces applied during the lifting and lowering operations, and a minimum wind pressure of 1,5 kN/m<sup>2</sup> is to be taken.

3.6.6 The design external pressure, in kN/m<sup>2</sup>, for the determination of scantlings for primary members, securing and supporting devices and surrounding structure of inner doors is to be taken as the greater of  $0,45L_R$  and  $10h^2$ , where  $h^2$  is the distance, in m, from the load point to the top of the space enclosed by the visor,  $L_R$ , as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2.2.

3.6.7 The design internal pressure for the determination of scantlings for securing devices of inner doors is not to be taken less than 25 kN/m<sup>2</sup>.

3.6.8 On ships with rounded nose bow and a large stem angle with the waterline, strengthening against horizontal impact loads is to be considered. Similarly, in ships with a flare angle of less than 60° with the waterline, strengthening against vertical impact loads is to be considered.

## 3.7 Scantlings of bow doors

3.7.1 The strength of bow doors is to be equivalent to the surrounding structure.

3.7.2 Bow doors are to be adequately stiffened and means are to be provided to prevent lateral or vertical movement of the doors when closed. For visor doors adequate strength for the opening and closing operations is to be provided in the connections of the lifting arms to the door structure and to the craft structure.

3.7.3 The thickness of the bow plating is not to be less than that required for the side shell plating, using bow door stiffener spacing, but in no case less than the minimum required thickness of fore end shell plating.

**3.7.4** The section modulus of horizontal or vertical stiffeners is not to be less than that required for end framing. Consideration is to be given, where necessary, to differences in fixity between ship's frames and bow doors stiffeners.

**3.7.5** The stiffener webs are to have a net sectional area,  $A_s$ , not less than:

$$A_s = \frac{23,5Q_{bd}}{\sigma_o} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$A_s$ ,  $Q_{bd}$  and  $\sigma_o$  as defined in 3.3.1.

**3.7.6** The bow door secondary stiffeners are to be supported by primary members constituting the main stiffening of the door.

**3.7.7** The primary members of the bow door and the hull structure in way are to have sufficient stiffness to ensure integrity of the boundary support of the door.

**3.7.8** Scantlings of the primary members are generally to be supported by direct calculations in association with the external pressure given in 3.6.1 and permissible stresses given in 3.5.1. In general, formulae for simple beam theory may be applied to determine the bending stress. Members are to be considered to have simply supported end connections.

**3.7.9** The webs of primary members are to be adequately stiffened, preferably in a direction perpendicular to the shell plating.

## 3.8 Scantling of inner doors

**3.8.1** Scantlings of the primary members are generally to be supported by direct calculations in association with the external pressure given in 3.6.1 and permissible stresses given in 3.5.1. In general, formulae for simple beam theory may be applied to determine the bending stress. Members are to be considered to have simply supported end connections.

**3.8.2** Where inner doors also serve as a vehicle ramps, the scantlings are not to be less than those required for vehicle decks.

**3.8.3** The distribution of forces acting on the securing and supporting devices is, in general, to be supported by direct calculations taking into account the flexibility of the structure and actual position and stiffness of the supports.

## 3.9 Securing and supporting of bow doors

**3.9.1** Bow doors are to be fitted with adequate means of securing and supporting so as to be commensurate with the strength and stiffness of the surrounding structure. The hull supporting structure in way of the bow doors is to be suitable for the same design loads and design stresses as the securing and supporting devices. Where packing is required, the packing material is to be of a comparatively soft type, and the supporting forces are to be carried by the steel structure only. Other types of packing may be considered. Maximum

design clearance between securing and supporting devices is, in general, not to exceed 3 mm. A means is to be provided for mechanically fixing the door in the open position.

**3.9.2** Only the active supporting and securing devices having an effective stiffness in the relevant direction are to be included and considered to calculate the reaction forces acting on the devices. Small and/or flexible devices such as cleats intended to provide load compression of the packing material are, in general, not to be included in the calculations called for in 3.9.8. The number of securing and supporting devices are, in general, to be the minimum practical whilst taking into account the requirements for redundant provision given in 3.9.9 and 3.9.10 and the available space for adequate support in the hull structure.

**3.9.3** For opening outwards visor doors, the pivot arrangement is generally to be such that the visor is self closing under external loads, that is  $M_y > 0$ . Moreover, the closing moment,  $M_y$ , as given in 3.6.4 is to be not less than:

$$M_y = 10W_{bv} c_{bv} + 0,1 (a_{bv}^2 + b_{bv}^2)^{0,5} (F_x^2 + F_z^2)^{0,5}$$

where

$W_{bv}$ ,  $a_{bv}$ ,  $b_{bv}$  and  $c_{bv}$  as defined in 3.3.1,  $F_x$  and  $F_z$  as defined in 3.6.2.

**3.9.4** Securing and supporting devices are to be adequately designed so that they can withstand the reaction forces within the permissible stresses given in 3.5.1.

**3.9.5** For visor doors the reaction forces applied on the effective securing and supporting devices assuming the door as a rigid body are determined for the following combination of external loads acting simultaneously together with the self weight of the door.

Case 1  $F_x$  and  $F_z$

Case 2  $0,7F_y$  acting on each side separately together with  $0,7F_x$  and  $0,7F_z$

where

$F_x$ ,  $F_y$  and  $F_z$  are to be determined as indicated in 3.6.2 and applied at the centroid of projected areas.

**3.9.6** For side-opening doors the reaction forces applied on the effective securing and supporting devices assuming the door as a rigid body are determined for the following combination of external loads acting simultaneously together with the self weight of the door:

Case 1  $F_x$ ,  $F_y$  and  $F_z$  acting on both doors

Case 2  $0,7 F_x$  and  $0,7F_z$  acting on both doors and  $0,7F_y$  acting on each door separately

where

$F_x$ ,  $F_y$  and  $F_z$  are to be determined as indicated in 3.6.2 and applied at the centroid of projected areas.

**3.9.7** The support forces as determined according to 3.9.5 and 3.9.6 are generally to give rise to a zero moment about the transverse axis through the centroid of the area,  $A_x$ . For visor doors, longitudinal reaction forces of pin and/or wedge supports at the door base contributing to this moment are not to be of the forward direction.

**3.9.8** The distribution of the reaction forces acting on the securing and supporting devices may require to be supported by direct calculations taking into account the flexibility of the hull structure and the actual position and stiffness of the supports.

**3.9.9** The arrangement of securing and supporting devices in way of these securing devices is to be designed with redundancy so that in the event of failure of any single securing or supporting device the remaining devices are capable to withstand the reaction forces without exceeding by more than 20 per cent the permissible stresses as given in 3.5.1.

**3.9.10** For visor doors, two securing devices are to be provided at the lower part of the door, each capable of providing the full reaction force required to prevent opening of the door within the permissible stresses given in 3.5.1. The opening moment,  $M_o$ , to be balanced by this reaction force, is not to be taken less than:

$$M_o = 10W_{bv} d_{bv} + 5A_x a_{bv} \text{ kNm}$$

where

$W_{bv}$ ,  $A_x$ ,  $d_{bv}$  and  $a_{bv}$  as defined in 3.3.1.

**3.9.11** For visor doors, the securing and supporting devices excluding the hinges should be capable of resisting the vertical design force ( $F_z - 10W_{bv}$ ), in kN, within the permissible stresses given in 3.5.1.

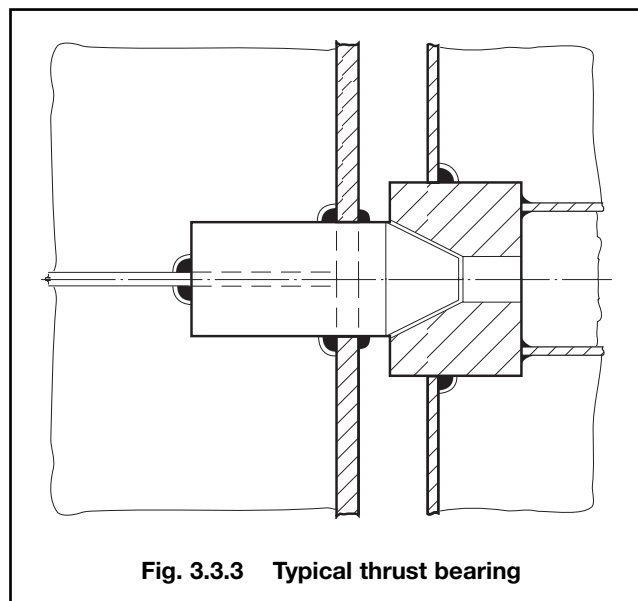
**3.9.12** All load transmitting elements in the design load path, from door through securing and supporting devices into the ship structure, including welded connections, are to be the same strength. These elements include pins, supporting brackets and back-up brackets. Where cut-outs are made in the supporting structure, the strength and stiffness will be specially considered.

**3.9.13** For side-opening doors, thrust bearings have to be provided in way of girder ends at the closing of the two leaves to prevent one leaf to shift towards the other one under effect of unsymmetrical pressure, see Fig. 3.3.3. Each part of the thrust bearing has to be kept secured on the other part by means of securing devices. Any other arrangement serving the same purpose is to be submitted for appraisal.

**3.9.14** The spacing for side and top cleats should not exceed 2,5 m and there should be cleats positioned as close to the corners as practicable. Alternative arrangements for ensuring weathertight sealing will be specially considered.

## 3.10 Securing and locking arrangements

**3.10.1** Securing devices are to be simple to operate and easily accessible. Securing devices are to be equipped with mechanical locking arrangement (self locking or separate arrangement), or be of the gravity type. The opening and closing systems as well as securing and locking devices are to be interlocked in such a way that they can only operate in the proper sequence.



**Fig. 3.3.3 Typical thrust bearing**

**3.10.2** Bow doors and inner doors giving access to vehicle decks are to be provided with an arrangement for remote control, from a position above the vertical limit of watertight integrity, of:

- (a) the closing and opening of the doors, and
  - (b) associated securing and locking devices for every door.
- Indication of the open/closed position of every door and every securing and locking device is to be provided at the remote control stations. The operating panels for operation of doors are to be inaccessible to unauthorised persons. A notice plate, giving instructions to the effect that all securing devices are to be closed and locked before leaving harbour, is to be placed at each operating panel and is to be supplemented by warning indicator lights.

**3.10.3** Where hydraulic securing devices are applied, the system is to be mechanically lockable in closed position so that in the event of loss of the hydraulic fluid, the securing devices remain locked. The hydraulic system for securing and locking devices is to be isolated from other hydraulic circuits when in closed position.

**3.10.4** Separate indicator lights and audible alarms are to be provided on the navigation bridge and on the operating panel to show that the bow door and inner door are closed and that their securing and locking devices are properly positioned. The indication panel is to be provided with a lamp test function. The indicator lights are to be provided with a permanent power supply, further, arrangements are to be such that it is not possible to turn off these lights in service.

**3.10.5** The indicator system is to be designed on the fail-safe principle and is to show by visual alarms if the door is not fully closed and not fully locked and by audible alarms if securing devices become open or locking devices become unsecured. The power supply for the indicator system is to be independent of the power supply for operating and closing the doors. The sensors of the indicator system are to be protected from water, ice formation and mechanical damages.



3.10.6 The indication panel on the navigation bridge is to be equipped with a mode selection function 'harbour/sea voyage', so arranged that audible alarm is given if the ship leaves harbour with the bow door or inner door not closed and with any of the securing devices not in the correct position.

3.10.7 A water leakage detection system with audible alarm and television surveillance are to be arranged to provide an indication to the navigation bridge and to the engine control room of leakage through the inner door.

3.10.8 Between the bow door and the inner door a television surveillance system is to be fitted with a monitor on the navigation bridge and in the machinery control room. The system is to be able to monitor the position of doors and a sufficient number of their securing devices. Special consideration is to be given for lighting and contrasting colour of objects under surveillance.

3.10.9 A drainage system is to be arranged in the area between bow door and ramp, or where no ramp is fitted, between the bow door and inner door. The system is to be equipped with an audible and visual alarm function to the navigation bridge being set off when the water levels in these areas exceed 0,5 m or the high water level alarm, whichever is the lesser. If not discharged by a bilge suction, scuppers are to be provided port and starboard having a diameter of not less than 50 mm. Valves are to be fitted.

3.10.10 If the main vehicle deck is not totally enclosed, scuppers or freeing ports are to be provided consistent with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 4,8.

3.10.11 Air pipes from cofferdams or void spaces may terminate in the enclosed 'tween deck space on the main vehicle deck provided the space is adequately ventilated and the air pipes are provided with weathertight closing appliances.

## 3.11 Operating and Maintenance Manual

3.11.1 An Operating and Maintenance Manual for the bow doors and inner doors is to be provided on board. The manual is to contain the following information:

- (a) main particulars and design drawings,
  - special safety precautions;
  - details of vessel, class and statutory certificates;
  - equipment and design loading for ramps;
  - key plan of equipment for doors and ramps;
  - manufacturers' recommended testing for equipment; and
  - a description of the following equipment:
    - bow doors;
    - inner bow doors;
    - bow ramp/doors;
    - central power pack;
    - bridge panel;
    - ramps leading down from the main deck;
    - engine control room panel.
- (b) service conditions:
  - limiting heel and trim of the ship for loading/unloading;
  - limiting heel and trim for door operations;
  - operating instructions for doors and ramps; and

- emergency operating instructions for doors and ramps.

- (c) maintenance:
  - schedule and extent of maintenance;
  - trouble shooting and acceptable clearances; and
  - manufacturers' maintenance procedures.
- (d) register of inspections, including inspection of locking, securing and supporting devices, repairs and renewals.

This Manual is to be submitted for approval and is to contain a note recommending that recorded inspections of supporting and securing devices carried out by the ship's staff at monthly intervals, or following incidents that could result in damage, including heavy weather or contact in the region of the doors. Any damages recorded during such inspections are to be reported to LR.

3.11.2 Documented operating procedures for closing and securing the bow door and inner door are to be kept on board and posted at an appropriate place.

## Section 4 Side, stern doors and other shell openings

### 4.1 Symbols

4.1.1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

- $d$  = distance between closing devices, in metres
- $k_s$  = material factor, see Pt 6, Ch 5,3.1.1 but is not to be taken less than 0,72 unless demonstrated otherwise by a direct strength analysis with regard to relevant modes of failure
- $I$  = moment of inertia, in  $\text{cm}^4$ , of the stiffener or girder, in association with an effective width of attached plating determined in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2,5
- $\sigma$  = bending stress, in  $\text{N/mm}^2$
- $\sigma_e$  = equivalent stress, in  $\text{N/mm}^2$ 

$$= \sqrt{(\sigma^2 + 3\tau^2)}$$
- $\sigma_o$  = minimum yield stress of the bearing material, in  $\text{N/mm}^2$
- $\tau$  = shear stress, in  $\text{N/mm}^2$ .

### 4.2 General

4.2.1 These requirements cover service doors in the ship side (abaft the collision bulkhead) and stern area, below the weather deck and in enclosed superstructures.

4.2.2 For the requirements of bow doors, see Section 3.

4.2.3 Side and stern doors are to be so fitted as to ensure tightness and structural integrity commensurate with their location and the surrounding structure, see also Pt 3, Ch 1,5.

4.2.4 In general, the lower edge of door openings is not to be below a line drawn parallel to the design draught.

## Special Features

## Volume 1, Part 4, Chapter 3

Section 4

4.2.5 When the lower edge is below the design draught or doors below the vertical limit of watertight integrity are to be opened at sea, the arrangements will be specially considered. In general, the enclosed spaces protected by the door are to be considered open as well as closed in damage stability or flooding conditions.

4.2.6 Doors are generally to be arranged to open outwards, however inward opening doors will be considered provided strongbacks are fitted when the doors are situated in the first two lower decks above the waterline.

4.2.7 For ships complying with the requirements of this Section, the securing, supporting and locking devices are defined in 3.3.

### 4.3 Construction and testing

4.3.1 Plans are to be of sufficient detail for plan approval purposes. Plans showing the proposed scantlings and arrangements of any side and stern doors or other shell openings are to be submitted. Side and stern doors or other shell openings are to be constructed under survey.

4.3.2 Side and stern doors fitted below the limit of watertight integrity are to be subject to a pressure test of a prototype to confirm the design pressure head.

4.3.3 As an alternative to prototype testing, the integrity of the door may be demonstrated by calculation and representative testing in accordance with IMO MSC/Circular 1176 – *Unified Interpretations to SOLAS Chapters II-1 and XII and to the Technical Provisions for Means of Access for Inspections*. For doors fitted above the vertical limit of watertight integrity, the doors only require testing following installation, in accordance with Table 6.6.1 in Pt 6, Ch 6.

### 4.4 Scantlings

4.4.1 In general the strength of side and stern doors is to be equivalent to the strength of the surrounding structure.

4.4.2 Door openings in the side shell are to have well rounded corners and adequate compensation is to be arranged with web frames at sides and stringers or equivalent above and below, see Pt 3, Ch 1,5.

4.4.3 Doors are to be adequately stiffened, and means are to be provided to prevent movement of the doors when closed. Adequate strength is to be provided in the connections of the lifting/manoeuvring arms and hinges to the door structure and to the ship structure.

4.4.4 The thickness of the door plating is to be not less than the shell plating calculated with the door stiffener spacing, and in no case to be less than the minimum adjacent shell thickness.

4.4.5 Where stern doors are protected against direct wave impact by a permanent external ramp, the thickness of the stern door plating may be reduced by 20 per cent relative to the requirements of 4.4.4. Those parts of the stern door which are not protected by the ramp are to have the thickness of plating in full compliance with 4.4.4.

4.4.6 Where higher tensile steel is proposed, the plating thickness required in 4.4.4 and 4.4.5 may be reduced by  $\sqrt{k_s}$ .

4.4.7 The section modulus of horizontal or vertical stiffeners is to be not less than required for the adjacent shell framing using the actual stiffener spacing. Consideration is to be given, where necessary, to differences in fixity between ship's frames and door stiffeners.

4.4.8 Where necessary, door secondary stiffeners are to be supported by primary members constituting the main stiffening elements of the door.

4.4.9 The scantlings of such primary members are to be based on direct strength calculations. Normally, formulae for simple beam theory may be applied to determine the bending stress. Members are to be considered to have simply supported end connections. The design load is the uniformly distributed external sea pressure,  $p_e$ , as defined in 4.9.1. For minimum scantlings,  $p_e$ , is to be taken as 25 kN/m<sup>2</sup> and the permissible stresses as follows:

$$\tau = \frac{80}{k_s} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma = \frac{120}{k_s} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_e = \frac{150}{k_s} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

4.4.10 The webs of primary members are to be adequately stiffened, preferably in a direction perpendicular to the shell plating.

4.4.11 The stiffness of the edges of the doors and the hull structure in way are to be sufficient to ensure weathertight integrity. Edge stiffeners/girders are to be adequately stiffened against rotation and are to have a moment of inertia not less than:

$$I = 0,8P_L d^4 \text{ cm}^4$$

where

$P_L$  = packing line pressure along edges, not to be taken less than 50 N/cm.

For edge girders supporting main door girders between securing devices, the moment of inertia is to be increased in relation to the additional force.

4.4.12 The buckling strength of primary members is to be specially considered.

**4.4.13** All load transmitting elements in the design load path from door through securing arrangements and supporting devices into the ship structure, including welded connections, are to be to the same strength standard as required for the securing and supporting devices. These elements include pins, supporting brackets and back-up brackets. Where cut-outs are made in the supporting structure, the strength and stiffness will be specially considered.

#### **4.5 Doors serving as ramps**

**4.5.1** Where doors also serve as vehicle ramps, the plating and stiffeners are to be not less than required for vehicle decks, see Section 2.

**4.5.2** The design of the hinges for these doors should take into account the ship angle of trim or heel which may result in uneven loading of the hinges.

#### **4.6 Closing, securing and supporting of doors**

**4.6.1** Doors are to be fitted with adequate means of closing, securing and support so as to be commensurate with the strength and stiffness of the surrounding structure. The hull supporting structure in way of the doors is to be suitable for the same design loads and design stresses as the securing and supporting devices. Where packing is required, the packing material is to be of comparatively soft type, and the supporting forces are to be carried by the steel structure only. Other types of packing may be considered. Maximum design clearance between securing and supporting devices is generally not to exceed 3 mm.

**4.6.2** Devices are to be simple to operate and easily accessible. They are to be of an approved type.

**4.6.3** Securing devices are to be equipped with mechanical locking arrangements (self locking or separate arrangements), or are to be of gravity type. The opening and closing systems as well as securing and locking devices are to be interlocked in such a way that they can only operate in a proper sequence.

**4.6.4** Means are to be provided to enable the doors to be mechanically fixed in the open position taking into account the self weight of the door and a minimum wind pressure of 1,5 kN/m<sup>2</sup> acting on the maximum projected area in the open position.

**4.6.5** The spacing for cleats or closing devices should not exceed 2,5 m and there should be cleats or closing devices positioned as close to the corners as practicable. Alternative arrangements for ensuring weathertight sealing will be specially considered.

#### **4.7 Systems for operation**

**4.7.1** Doors with a clear opening area of 12 m<sup>2</sup> or greater are to be provided with closing devices operable from a remote control position. Doors which are located partly or totally below the vertical limit of watertight integrity with a clear opening area greater than 6 m<sup>2</sup> are to be provided with an arrangement for remote control from a position above the vertical limit of watertight integrity. This remote control is provided for the:

- (a) Closing and opening of the doors.
- (b) Associated securing and locking devices.

**4.7.2** The location of the remote control panel is to be such that the opening/closing operation can be easily observed by the operator or by other suitable means such as closed circuit television.

**4.7.3** A notice is to be displayed at the operating panel stating that the door is to be fully closed and secured preferably before, or immediately after the ship leaves the berth and that this operation is to be entered in the ship's log.

**4.7.4** Means are to be provided to prevent unauthorised operation of the doors.

**4.7.5** Where hydraulic securing devices are applied, the system is to be mechanically lockable in the closed position so that in the event of hydraulic system failure, the securing devices will remain locked. The hydraulic system for securing and locking devices is to be isolated from other hydraulic circuits when in the closed position.

#### **4.8 Systems for indication and monitoring**

**4.8.1** The following requirements apply to doors in the boundaries of special category spaces or vehicle spaces, through which such spaces may be flooded. For ships where no part of the door is below the design waterline, doors that are to be opened at sea are above the vertical limit of watertight integrity, and the area of the door opening is not greater than 6 m<sup>2</sup>, then the requirements of this Section need not be applied.

**4.8.2** Separate indicator lights and audible alarms are to be provided on the navigation bridge and on each operating panel to indicate that the doors are closed and that their securing and locking devices are properly positioned. The indication panel is to be provided with a lamp test function. It is not to be possible to turn off the indicator light.

**4.8.3** The indicator system is to be designed on the fail safe principle and is to indicate by visual alarms if the door is not fully closed and not fully locked, and by audible alarms if securing devices become open or locking devices become unsecured. The power supply for the indicator system is to be independent of the power supply for operating and closing the doors and is to be provided with a back-up power supply. The sensors of the indicator system are to be protected from water, ice formation and mechanical damages.

4.8.4 The indication panel on the navigation bridge is to be equipped with a mode selection function 'harbour/sea voyage', so arranged that audible alarm is given if the vessel leaves harbour with side shell or stern doors not closed or with any of the securing devices not in the correct position.

## 4.9 Design loads

4.9.1 The design force considered for the scantlings of primary members, securing and supporting devices of side shell doors and stern doors are to be taken not less than:

(a) Design forces for securing or supporting devices of doors opening inwards:

External force:

$$F_e = Ap_e + F_p \text{ kN}$$

Internal force:

$$F_i = F_o + 10W \text{ kN}$$

(b) Design forces for securing or supporting devices of doors opening outwards:

External force:

$$F_e = Ap_e \text{ kN}$$

Internal force:

$$F_i = F_o + 10W + F_p \text{ kN}$$

(c) Design forces for primary members:

External force:

$$F_e = Ap_e \text{ kN}$$

Internal force:

$$F_i = F_o + 10W \text{ kN}$$

whichever is the greater.

The symbols used are defined as follows:

$p_e$  = external sea pressure, in kN/m<sup>2</sup>, determined at the centre of gravity of the door opening and is not to be taken less than:

$$\text{for } Z_G < T \quad 10(T - Z_G) + 25 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$\text{for } Z_G \geq T \quad 25 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

For stern doors,  $p_e$  is not to be taken less than:

$$p_{e\min} = 0,6\lambda C_H (0,8 + 0,6 \sqrt{L_R})^2 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$T$  = summer draught, in metres

$Z_G$  = height of the centre of area of the door, in metres, above the baseline

$L_R$  = length of ship, but need not be taken greater than 200 m

$\lambda$  = coefficient depending on the area where the ship is intended to be operated:

= 1 for sea-going ships with service area notation **SA1, SA2 and SA3**

= 0,5 for ships operated in sheltered waters with service area notation **SA4**

$C_H$  = 0,0125 $L_R$  for  $L_R < 80$  m

= 1 for  $L_R \geq 80$  m

$A$  = area, in m<sup>2</sup>, of the door opening

$W$  = weight of the door, in tonnes

$F_p$  = total packing force, kN. When packing is fitted, the packing line pressure is to be specified, normally not to be taken less than 5 kN/m<sup>2</sup>

$F_o$  = the greater of  $F_c$  and 5,0A kN

$F_c$  = accidental force, in kN, due to loose cargo, etc., to be uniformly distributed over the area  $A$  and not to be taken less than 300 kN. For small doors such as bunker doors and pilot doors, the value of  $F_c$  may be taken as zero, provided an additional structure such as an inner ramp is fitted, which is capable of protecting the door from accidental force due to loose items.

## 4.10 Design of securing and supporting devices

4.10.1 Securing devices and supporting devices are to be designed to withstand the forces given above using the following permissible stresses:

The terms 'securing device' and 'supporting device' are defined in Section 3.

$$\tau = \frac{80}{k_s} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma = \frac{120}{k_s} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_e = \frac{150}{k_s} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

4.10.2 The arrangement of securing and supporting devices is to be such that threaded bolts are not to carry support forces. The maximum tensile stress in way of threads of bolts, not carrying support forces, is not to exceed:

$$\frac{125}{k} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

4.10.3 For steel to steel bearings in securing and supporting devices, the normal bearing pressure is not to exceed 0,8 $\sigma_o$ , see 4.1.1. For other bearing materials, the permissible bearing pressure is to be determined according to the manufacturer's specification. The normal bearing pressure is to be calculated by dividing the design force by the projected bearing area.

4.10.4 The distribution of the reaction forces acting on the securing and supporting devices may require to be supported by direct calculations taking into account the flexibility of the hull structure and the actual position and stiffness of the supports. Small and/or flexible devices, such as cleats, intended to provide load compression of the packing material are not generally to be included in these calculations.

4.10.5 Only the active supporting and securing devices having an effective stiffness in the relevant direction are to be considered in the calculation of the reaction forces acting on the devices.

4.10.6 The number of securing and supporting devices is generally to be the minimum practicable whilst complying with 4.6.3 and taking account of the available space in the hull for adequate support.

4.10.7 The arrangement of securing devices and supporting devices in way of these securing devices is to be designed with redundancy so that in the event of failure of any single securing or supporting device the remaining devices are capable of withstanding the reaction forces, without exceeding, by more than 20 per cent, the permissible stresses as defined in 4.10.1.

## 4.11 Operating and Maintenance Manual

4.11.1 An Operating and Maintenance Manual for the doors is to be provided on board.

The manual is to contain the following information:

- (a) main particulars and design drawings,
  - special safety precautions;
  - details of vessel, class and statutory certificates;
  - equipment and design loading for ramps;
  - key plan of equipment for doors and ramps;
  - manufacturers' recommended testing for equipment; and
  - a description of the following equipment:
    - side doors;
    - stern doors;
    - central power pack;
    - bridge panel;
    - ramps leading down from the main deck;
    - engine control room panel.
- (b) service conditions:
  - limiting heel and trim of the ship for loading/unloading;
  - limiting heel and trim for door operations;
  - operating instructions for doors and ramps; and
  - emergency operating instructions for doors and ramps.
- (c) maintenance:
  - schedule and extent of maintenance;
  - trouble shooting and acceptable clearances; and
  - manufacturers' maintenance procedures.
- (d) register of inspections, including inspection of locking, securing and supporting devices, repairs and renewals.

4.11.2 The Manual is to be submitted for approval, and is to contain a note recommending that recorded inspections of the door supporting and securing devices be carried out by the ship's staff at monthly intervals or following incidents that could result in damage, including heavy weather or contact in the region of the doors. Any damages recorded during such inspections are to be reported to LR.

4.11.3 Documented operating procedures for closing and securing the doors are to be kept on board and posted at an appropriate place.



## Section 5

### Movable decks, lifts, internal and external ramps

#### 5.1 Classification

5.1.1 At the Owner's or Builder's request movable decks will be included as a classification item, and the class notation **Movable decks** will be entered in the *Register Book*. In such cases, all movable decks on board the ship are to comply with the requirements of this Section.

5.1.2 Plans showing the proposed scantlings and arrangements of the system are to be submitted.

5.1.3 The operating and securing equipment or machinery is to be in accordance with the requirements of the Naval Authority, see Pt 1, Ch 2,2.2.6.

#### 5.2 Arrangements and design

5.2.1 Positive means of control are to be provided to secure decks, ramps and lifts in the raised and lowered position.

5.2.2 For steel to steel bearings in securing and supporting devices, the nominal bearing pressure calculated by dividing the design force by the projected bearing area is not to exceed 80 per cent of the yield stress of the bearing material. For other bearing materials, the permissible bearing pressure is to be determined according to the manufacturer's specifications.

5.2.3 The arrangement of securing and supporting devices is to be such that threaded bolts do not carry support forces. The maximum tension in way of threads of steel bolts not carrying support forces is not to exceed 125/k N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

#### 5.3 Loading

5.3.1 Details of the deck, ramp or lift loading resulting from the proposed stowage arrangements of vehicles are to be supplied by the Shipbuilder. These details are to include the axle and wheel spacing, the wheel load, type of tyre and tyre print dimensions for the vehicles. For design purposes the wheel loading is to be taken as not less than 3,0 kN, see Section 2.

5.3.2 Where it is proposed also to use the decks, ramps or lifts for general cargo, the design loadings are to be submitted for consideration.

5.3.3 The forces imposed on the decks, ramps or lifts are to take due account of the ship motion for all the conditions in which they will be operated, see Pt 5, Ch 3,6.2.

5.3.4 The scantlings and arrangements are to be not less than those required by the Rules for the supporting or surrounding structure in which the decks ramps or lifts are fitted. In general the end fixity of primary stiffening members is to be taken as simply supported. Local and secondary stiffening members may be either partially or fully fixed at their end connections dependent upon the proposed arrangement.

5.3.5 The buckling strength of primary members is to be verified as being adequate, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3.

5.3.6 Decks, ramps or lifts and their supporting structure are to be designed for the maximum load that is to be carried; this may include loadings from emergency situations where they are defined by the Owner.

## **5.4 Movable decks**

5.4.1 Movable decks are generally to be constructed as pontoons comprising a web structure with top decking. Other forms of construction will be individually considered.

5.4.2 The decks are to be efficiently supported, and hinges, pillars, chains or other means (or a combination of these) are to be designed on the basis of the imposed loads. Where supporting chains and fittings are required, they are to have a factor of safety of at least two on the proof load.

5.4.3 Where it is proposed to stow the pontoons on deck, when not in use, details of the proposals for racks, fittings, etc., are to be submitted for consideration.

5.4.4 Where wheeled vehicles are to be used, the supporting arrangements are to be such that the movement at the edge of one pontoon relative to the next does not exceed 50 mm during vehicle operations.

## **5.5 External deck ramps and lifts**

5.5.1 In addition to the loading specified in 5.3, ramps and lifts are to be assessed using weather deck loading in the closed position, see Pt 5, Ch 3,5.

## **5.6 External shell ramps**

5.6.1 In addition to the loading specified in 5.3, unprotected ramps are to be assessed using side shell loading in the closed position, see Pt 5, Ch 3,3.

5.6.2 Scantlings of the primary members, securing and supporting devices of bow doors and inner doors are to be able to withstand the design loads defined in 3.6. The shear, bending and equivalent stresses are not to exceed  $80/k \text{ N/mm}^2$ ,  $120/k \text{ N/mm}^2$  and  $150/k \text{ N/mm}^2$  respectively.

## **5.7 Aircraft lifts**

5.7.1 The aircraft lift platform deck alignment is to be provided by keeps at the flight deck and stops at the hangar deck.

5.7.2 If the ship has an underwater shock notation, latches are also to be provided at the flight and hangar deck levels to restrain the aircraft lift platform when stationary.

5.7.3 When transferring the aircraft or equipment to, or from, the lift platform with the keeps engaged the deflection of the platform edge is not to be greater than 25 mm.

---

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 1  
Part 5 Environmental Loads  
January 2013

---

|             |          |                                                                   |
|-------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PART        | 1        | REGULATIONS                                                       |
| PART        | 2        | RULES FOR THE MANUFACTURE, TESTING AND CERTIFICATION OF MATERIALS |
| PART        | 3        | DESIGN PRINCIPLES AND CONSTRUCTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS                 |
| PART        | 4        | MILITARY DESIGN AND SPECIAL FEATURES                              |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>ENVIRONMENTAL LOADS</b>                                        |
|             |          | <b>Chapter 1 General</b>                                          |
|             |          | <b>2 Environmental Conditions</b>                                 |
|             |          | <b>3 Local Design Loads</b>                                       |
|             |          | <b>4 Global Design Loads</b>                                      |
| PART        | 6        | HULL CONSTRUCTION IN STEEL                                        |
| PART        | 7        | ENHANCED STRUCTURAL ASSESSMENT                                    |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.



---

|                |          |                                                                            |
|----------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>GENERAL</b>                                                             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>Introduction</b>                                                        |
|                | 1.1      | General                                                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Direct calculations</b>                                                 |
|                | 2.1      | General                                                                    |
|                | 2.2      | Naval Ship Rules Software                                                  |
|                | 2.3      | Submission of direct calculations                                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Model experiments</b>                                                   |
|                | 3.1      | General                                                                    |
|                | 3.2      | Model test matrix                                                          |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS</b>                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General</b>                                                             |
|                | 1.1      | Introduction                                                               |
|                | 1.2      | Definitions and symbols                                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Wave environment</b>                                                    |
|                | 2.1      | General                                                                    |
|                | 2.2      | Service areas                                                              |
|                | 2.3      | Wave environment                                                           |
|                | 2.4      | Service Area factors                                                       |
|                | 2.5      | Derivation of wave statistics for a combination of sea areas               |
|                | 2.6      | Direct calculations                                                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Air environment</b>                                                     |
|                | 3.1      | Wind speed                                                                 |
|                | 3.2      | Design air temperature                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Guidance for ice environment</b>                                        |
|                | 4.1      | General                                                                    |
|                | 4.2      | Definitions                                                                |
|                | 4.3      | Application                                                                |
|                | 4.4      | Ice Class notations                                                        |
|                | 4.5      | National Authority requirements                                            |
|                | 4.6      | Ice accretion                                                              |
|                | 4.7      | Ice conditions                                                             |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>LOCAL DESIGN LOADS</b>                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>Introduction</b>                                                        |
|                | 1.1      | General                                                                    |
|                | 1.2      | Environmental conditions                                                   |
|                | 1.3      | Symbols and definitions                                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Motion response</b>                                                     |
|                | 2.1      | General                                                                    |
|                | 2.2      | Ship motions                                                               |
|                | 2.3      | Design accelerations                                                       |
|                | 2.4      | Design vertical acceleration for ships in the planing regime               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Loads on shell envelope</b>                                             |
|                | 3.1      | Pressures on the shell envelope                                            |
|                | 3.2      | Combined hydrostatic and hydrodynamic pressure on the shell plating, $P_s$ |
|                | 3.3      | Hydrostatic pressure on the shell plating, $P_h$                           |
|                | 3.4      | Hydrodynamic wave pressure, $P_w$                                          |
|                | 3.5      | Pressure on exposed and weather decks, $P_{wd}$                            |

|                |          |                                                                                    |
|----------------|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Impact loads on external plating</b>                                            |
|                | 4.1      | General                                                                            |
|                | 4.2      | Bottom impact pressure, $IP_{bi}$                                                  |
|                | 4.3      | Bow flare and impact pressures, $IP_{bf}$                                          |
|                | 4.4      | Impact loads on deckhouses and superstructures                                     |
|                | 4.5      | Bottom impact pressure for ships operating in the planing regime                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Local design loads for decks and bulkheads</b>                                  |
|                | 5.1      | General                                                                            |
|                | 5.2      | Pressure on external decks                                                         |
|                | 5.3      | Pressure on internal decks, $P_{in}$                                               |
|                | 5.4      | Loads for decks designed for cargo or heavy equipment loads, $P_{cd}$ and $W_{cd}$ |
|                | 5.5      | Loads for deckhouses, bulwarks and superstructures, $P_{dh}$                       |
|                | 5.6      | Pressure height for deep tank bulkheads and boundaries, $H_{tk}$                   |
|                | 5.7      | Pressure height for watertight bulkheads and boundaries, $H_{da}$                  |
|                | 5.8      | Design pressures for watertight and deep tank bulkheads and boundaries             |
|                | 5.9      | Design pressures for collision bulkheads                                           |
|                | 5.10     | Design loads for RSA notation assessment                                           |
|                | 5.11     | Design pressure for magazine decks and bulkheads                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Other local loads</b>                                                           |
|                | 6.1      | General                                                                            |
|                | 6.2      | Loads for ramps and lifts, $P_{ra}$                                                |
|                | 6.3      | Loads for windows and side lights in the shell envelope, $P_{wi}$                  |
|                | 6.4      | Loads for masts                                                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Ice loads</b>                                                                   |
|                | 7.1      | General                                                                            |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>GLOBAL DESIGN LOADS</b>                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General</b>                                                                     |
|                | 1.1      | Introduction                                                                       |
|                | 1.2      | Definitions and symbols                                                            |
|                | 1.3      | Direct calculation procedures                                                      |
|                | 1.4      | Information required                                                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Still water global loads</b>                                                    |
|                | 2.1      | General                                                                            |
|                | 2.2      | Still water bending moments                                                        |
|                | 2.3      | Still water shear forces                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Global hull girder loads</b>                                                    |
|                | 3.1      | General                                                                            |
|                | 3.2      | Environmental conditions                                                           |
|                | 3.3      | Vertical wave bending moments                                                      |
|                | 3.4      | Vertical wave shear forces                                                         |
|                | 3.5      | Lateral wave bending moments                                                       |
|                | 3.6      | Lateral wave shear forces                                                          |
|                | 3.7      | Torsional moments                                                                  |
|                | 3.8      | Bow flare impact global loads                                                      |
|                | 3.9      | Dynamic bending moments and associated shear forces                                |
|                | 3.10     | Hull girder design loads                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Extreme hull girder loads</b>                                                   |
|                | 4.1      | Introduction                                                                       |
|                | 4.2      | Environmental conditions                                                           |
|                | 4.3      | Extreme vertical wave bending moments                                              |
|                | 4.4      | Extreme vertical wave shear forces                                                 |
|                | 4.5      | Direct calculation procedures                                                      |
|                | 4.6      | Still water shear forces and bending moments                                       |
|                | 4.7      | Extreme hull girder design loads                                                   |

---

|                |          |                                                      |
|----------------|----------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Residual strength hull girder loads</b>           |
|                | 5.1      | Introduction                                         |
|                | 5.2      | Environmental conditions                             |
|                | 5.3      | Residual strength vertical wave bending moments      |
|                | 5.4      | Residual strength vertical wave shear forces         |
|                | 5.5      | Direct calculation procedures                        |
|                | 5.6      | Damaged still water shear forces and bending moments |
|                | 5.7      | Residual strength hull girder design loads           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Loading guidance information</b>                  |
|                | 6.1      | General                                              |
|                | 6.2      | Loading Manuals or Stability Information Books       |
|                | 6.3      | Loading instrument                                   |



*Section*

- 1 **Introduction**
- 2 **Direct calculations**
- 3 **Model experiments**

■ **Section 1**  
**Introduction**

**1.1 General**

1.1.1 The global and local design loads and criteria detailed in this Part are to be used in conjunction with the formulae given in Part 6 to determine the scantlings of naval ships as defined in Part 1.

1.1.2 When appropriate, the load and design criteria detailed in this Part are to be supplemented by direct calculation methods incorporating model test results and numerical analysis for novel designs. Full scale measurements may be required where considered necessary by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').

1.1.3 Alternative methods of establishing the load and design criteria will be specially considered, provided that they are based on model tests, full scale measurements or generally accepted theories. In such cases, full details of the methods used are to be provided when plans are submitted for approval.

■ **Section 2**  
**Direct calculations**

**2.1 General**

2.1.1 Direct calculations using hydrodynamic computer programs may be specifically required by the Rules. Also, they may be required for craft having novel design features, or may be submitted in support of alternative load and design criteria. LR may, when requested, undertake calculations on behalf of designers and make recommendations in regard to suitability of any required model tests.

**2.2 Naval Ship Rules Software**

2.2.1 LR's direct calculation procedures and facilities are summarised in a publication entitled the *LR Software Guide*.

**2.3 Submission of direct calculations**

2.3.1 In cases where direct calculations have been carried out the following supporting information is to be submitted as applicable:

- (a) Reference to the direct calculation procedure and technical program used.
- (b) Input data.
- (c) A description of the direct calculation model.
- (d) A summary of analysis parameters including environmental conditions, speeds and headings.
- (e) Details of the weight distributions.
- (f) A comprehensive summary of calculation results. Sample calculations are to be submitted where appropriate.

2.3.2 In general, all input data and output results are required to be submitted. In such cases, electronic transferral of data with agreed format may be used for submission.

2.3.3 The responsibility for error-free specification and input of program data and the subsequent correct interpretation of output rests with the designer/Builder.

■ **Section 3**  
**Model experiments**

**3.1 General**

3.1.1 LR may require model experiments and theoretical calculations to be carried out for novel or complex design concepts. It is advisable that details of all proposed model experiments and theoretical calculations are submitted to LR prior to commencement of the testing and analysis phases. The results of all such investigations are to be provided no later than when plans are submitted for approval, but preferably as early as possible.

3.1.2 Where model testing is undertaken, the following details are to be submitted:

- (a) a summary of the model construction and its instrumentation, including calibration of instruments;
- (b) a summary of the testing arrangements and procedures;
- (c) a summary of the tank facilities and test equipment;
- (d) details of the wave generation, response measurements, definitions and notations;
- (e) details of data recording, data reduction and data analysis procedures;
- (f) details of calibration procedures with theoretical computations; and
- (g) tabulated and plotted output.

**3.2 Model test matrix**

3.2.1 Where model testing is undertaken, the minimum test matrix shown in Table 1.3.1 is required to be carried out.

**Table 1.3.1 Minimum test matrix**

| Item           | Test matrix                                                                 |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sea state      | Regular and irregular seas, using the wave environment details in Chapter 2 |
| Heading        | Beam, head, stern and bow and stern quartering seas                         |
| Speed          | Three speeds including zero and maximum service speeds                      |
| Wave frequency | Six frequencies for regular seas                                            |

3.2.2 In addition to those quantities which are normally measured in a model experiment, the following data is to be obtained where appropriate:

- (a) vertical accelerations at the LCG, bow and stern;
- (b) acceleration loads due to heave, pitch and roll;
- (c) vertical bending moment;
- (d) bow impact pressures at representative operational forward speeds;
- (e) oblique sea loads inducing horizontal bending moments and torsional moments.

3.2.3 The basis on which the parameters are chosen for investigation is to be submitted for approval at the earliest opportunity.

3.2.4 Results from open water model experiments and full scale measurements may be accepted, full details are to be submitted for appraisal.

# Environmental Conditions

# Volume 1, Part 5, Chapter 2

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Wave environment**
- 3 **Air environment**
- 4 **Guidance for ice environment**

- (a) Service area notation required together with the required extent of the operational area.
- (b) The wave environmental parameters for the design.
- (c) Specification of the environmental conditions used for the design assessment.

## 1.2 Definitions and symbols

**1.2.1 Beaufort Number.** Beaufort Number is a measure of wind strength. The wind speed corresponding to each Beaufort number is shown in Table 2.1.1.

**1.2.2 Sea state.** Sea state is an expression used to categorise wave conditions and is normally defined by a significant wave height and wave period, a suitable wave energy distribution may also be defined. A list of standard sea state definitions is shown in Table 2.1.2.

**1.2.3 Wave period.** References to wave period are to be taken as the zero crossing wave period, i.e. the average time interval between upward crossings of the mean value, unless otherwise stated.

**1.2.4**  $L_{WL}$  is defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2.

## Section 1 General

### 1.1 Introduction

**1.1.1** This Chapter contains information regarding the environmental conditions to be applied in the derivation of loads that are to be used for the computation of the local and global design loads in Chapters 3 and 4.

**1.1.2** Environmental conditions include natural phenomena such as wind, wave and currents and also ice and thermal conditions.

**1.1.3** The environmental conditions given here are derived from hindcast data, long term measurements and theoretical studies complemented with service experience.

**1.1.4** Alternative methods of establishing the environmental conditions will be specially considered, provided that they are based on hindcast data, long term measurements, global and local environmental theoretical models, or similar techniques. In such cases, full details of the methods used are to be provided when plans are submitted for approval.

**1.1.5** In order that an assessment of the design requirements can be made, the following information is to be submitted:

**Table 2.1.1 Wind data**

| Beaufort number | Wind speed range (knots) |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 0               | 0–1                      |
| 1               | 1–3                      |
| 2               | 4–6                      |
| 3               | 7–10                     |
| 4               | 11–16                    |
| 5               | 17–21                    |
| 6               | 22–27                    |
| 7               | 28–33                    |
| 8               | 34–40                    |
| 9               | 41–47                    |
| 10              | 48–55                    |
| 11              | 56–63                    |

**Table 2.1.2 Sea state data**

| Sea State Number | Significant wave height(m) |      | Sustained wind speed (knots)<br>(See Note 1) |      | Percentage probability of sea state | Modal wave period (sec) |               |
|------------------|----------------------------|------|----------------------------------------------|------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------|
|                  | Range                      | Mean | Range                                        | Mean |                                     | Range (see Note 3)      | Most probable |
| 0–1              | 0–0,1                      | 0,05 | 0–6                                          | 3    | 0,7                                 | —                       | —             |
| 2                | 0,1–0,5                    | 0,3  | 7–10                                         | 8,5  | 6,8                                 | 3,3–12,8                | 7,0           |
| 3                | 0,5–1,25                   | 0,88 | 11–16                                        | 13,5 | 23,7                                | 5,0–14,8                | 7,5           |
| 4                | 1,25–2,5                   | 1,88 | 17–21                                        | 19   | 27,8                                | 6,1–15,2                | 8,8           |
| 5                | 2,5–4                      | 3,25 | 22–27                                        | 24,5 | 20,64                               | 8,3–15,5                | 9,7           |
| 6                | 4–6                        | 5    | 28–47                                        | 37,5 | 13,15                               | 9,8–16,2                | 12,4          |
| 7                | 6–9                        | 7,5  | 48–55                                        | 51,5 | 6,05                                | 11,8–18,5               | 15,0          |
| 8                | 9–14                       | 11,5 | 56–63                                        | 59,5 | 1,11                                | 14,2–18,6               | 16,4          |
| >8               | >14                        | >14  | >63                                          | >63  | 0,05                                | 18,0–23,7               | 20,0          |

## NOTES

1. Ambient wind sustained at 19,5 m above surface to generate fully-developed seas.
2. To convert to another altitude,  $H_2$ , apply  $V_2 = V_1 (H_2/19,5)^{(1/7)}$
3. Minimum is 5 per cent and maximum is 95 per cent for periods given wave height range.
4. The wave period shown here is the modal or peak period,  $T_p$ . The zero crossing period,  $T_z$ , may be derived by the expression  $T_z = T_p/1,4$  for fully developed seas.

## Section 2 Wave environment

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 Generally ships of Naval Ship Groups 1 and 2, **NS1** and **NS2**, see Pt 1, Ch 2,2.1 will be designed for unrestricted world-wide operation. Ships in group 3, **NS3**, may also be designed for world-wide operation but typically will be designed for more specific roles within clearly defined areas of operation, e.g., coastal patrol craft, landing craft, harbour vessels, tugs, etc.

2.1.2 The procedure for deriving the design factors and the wave environment used for the assessment of local and global loads is illustrated in Fig. 2.2.1.

2.1.3 The following definitions are applicable:

#### Service area

A service area refers to a collective group of sea areas. The service area specifies the limits of the ship's operational area.

#### Sea area

A sea area is a small area of the world's oceans for which statistical wave data has been collected, the sea areas are shown in Fig. 2.2.2.

### 2.2 Service areas

2.2.1 All ships classed under the Rules will be assigned a service area notation **SA** followed by a number or letter, e.g. **SA1**.

2.2.2 The service area notations listed below are available. The definitive extents of the service areas are shown in Fig. 2.2.2 and Table 2.2.3. The chart shows the minimum service area requirement for operating in different areas of the world.

- SA1** Service Area 1 covers ships having unrestricted world-wide operation. Service area 1 includes operation in all other service areas.
- SA2** Service Area 2 is primarily intended to cover ships designed to operate in tropical and temperate regions, see 2.2.3. This service area excludes operating in sea areas for which a **SA1** notation is required.
- SA3** Service Area 3 is primarily intended to cover ships designed to operate in tropical regions, see 2.2.3. This service area excludes operating in sea areas for which a **SA1** or **SA2** notation is required.
- SA4** Service Area 4 covers ships designed to operate in Sheltered water, as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,2.2. This service area excludes operating in sea areas for which a **SA1**, **SA2** or **SA3** notation is required.
- SAR** Service Area Restricted covers ships that are designed to operate in a predetermined and contiguous area of operation, see 2.2.4.

2.2.3 For all ships that are designed for specific areas of operation, the designer may take advantage of reduced wave loadings that are likely to be encountered. This covers all ships which are assigned a service area notation **SA2**, **SA3**, **SA4** or **SAR**.

2.2.4 For all cases where a **SAR** service area notation (Service Area Restricted) is required, the extents of the restricted area will be specified after the **SAR** service area notation. The service area factor,  $f_s$ , and the wave environment characteristics for the ship will be specially considered. Where the geographical limits of the intended service can be satisfied by a single or group of contiguous sea areas then the service area factor,  $f_s$ , and the wave environment characteristics may be derived using the methods given in 2.4 and 2.5.

2.2.5 Under normal circumstances, a ship which is assigned a service area notation **SA2**, **SA3**, **SA4** or **SAR** is to operate in solely the designated area and is not transit to other areas of the world, see Pt 1, Ch 2,1.1. Due allowance is to be made for the ship's trials, work-up period and delivery voyages in the assignment of a service area notation. However special consideration may be appropriate to these periods in order to ensure that the ship is not subjected to dynamic loads which might impair the structural working life of the ship.

2.2.6 The wave environmental data for service areas **SA1**, **SA2**, **SA3** and **SA4** are specified in 2.3.

2.2.7 The Owner or builder should confirm that the chosen Service Area, the service area factor,  $f_s$ , and the wave environment characteristics as defined in 2.3 are appropriate for the intended areas of operation.

2.2.8 The allocation of a service area notation to a ship does not remove the responsibility of the Master or commanding officer to take suitable measures to avoid typhoon, hurricane and other extreme weather conditions, as appropriate.

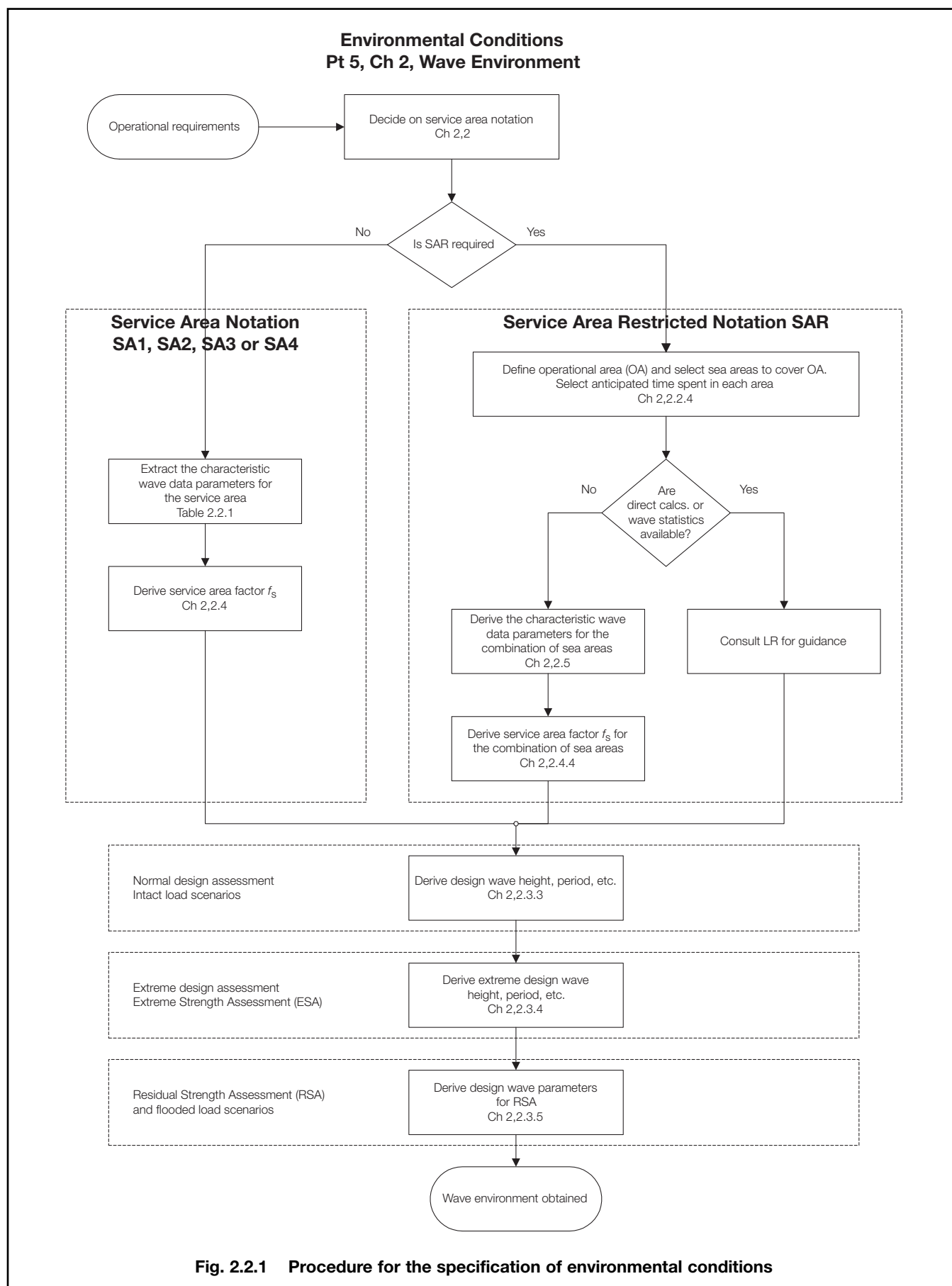
2.2.9 The requirements for ships which are required to maintain station or operate in typhoon, hurricane and other extreme weather conditions will be specially considered.

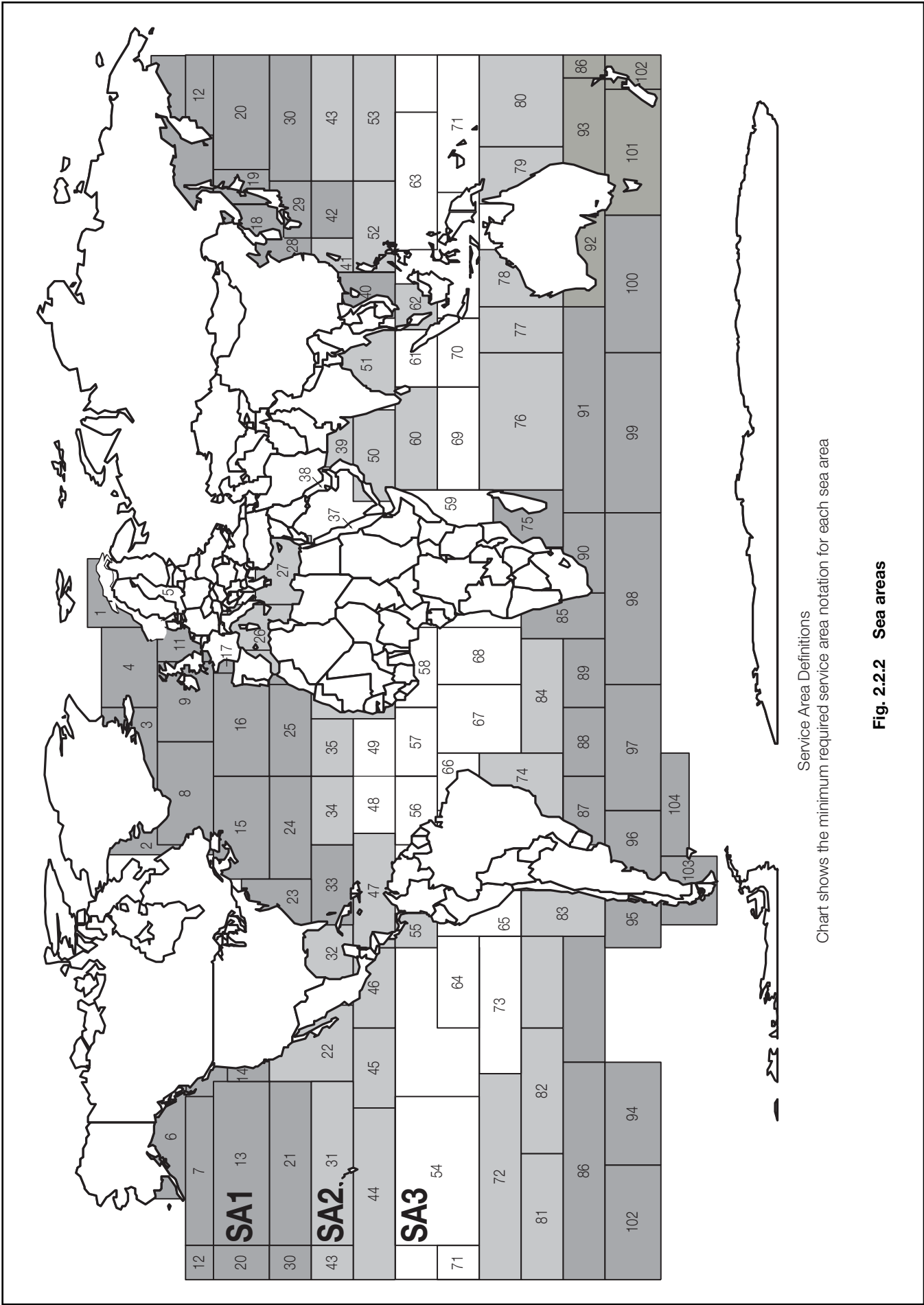
### 2.3 Wave environment

2.3.1 The environmental wave data for each service area notation is given in Table 2.2.1. Table 2.2.4 gives the environmental wave data for each individual sea area.

2.3.2 The definitions of wave height, wave period and wave period range given below are to be used in the determination of the environmental loads acting on the ship.







# Environmental Conditions

# Volume 1, Part 5, Chapter 2

Section 2

**Table 2.2.1 Environmental wave data for each service area**

| Service Area Notation                                                    | Wave height for the service area, in metres | Mean wave period, in seconds | Standard deviation of wave period, in seconds | Extreme design wave height, in metres |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
|                                                                          | $H_s$                                       | $T_z$                        | $T_{sd}$                                      | $H_x$                                 |
| SA1                                                                      | 5,5                                         | 8,0                          | 1,7                                           | 18,5                                  |
| SA2                                                                      | 4,0                                         | 7,0                          | 1,7                                           | 13,5                                  |
| SA3                                                                      | 3,6                                         | 6,8                          | 1,7                                           | 9,5                                   |
| SA4                                                                      | 2,5                                         | 6,0                          | 1,5                                           | 6,0                                   |
| SAR                                                                      | To be specially considered                  |                              |                                               |                                       |
| NOTE<br>See text and notes in Table 2.2.4 for definitions of all values. |                                             |                              |                                               |                                       |

2.3.3 Wave environmental design criteria for normal design assessment. These design parameters have been used to derive the standard local and global environmental loadings in Chapters 3 and 4. All direct calculations and model tests required to supplement these loads are to use these environmental loadings.

## Design wave height, $H_{dw}$

Average of the one hundredth highest observed wave heights for the service area. To be taken as:

$$H_{dw} = 1,67H_s \text{ m}$$

## Design wave period, $T_{dw}$

Average zero crossing period of all sea states in the service area

$$T_{dw} = T_z \text{ seconds}$$

## Standard deviation of wave period, $T_{dsd}$

Standard deviation of the zero crossing periods for the service area

$$T_{dsd} = T_{sd} \text{ seconds}$$

## Design wave period range, $T_{drange}$

To be taken as the design wave period plus and minus 2 standard deviations of the zero crossing period, i.e.

$$T_{drange} \text{ is } T_{dw} - 2T_{dsd} \text{ to } T_{dw} + 2T_{dsd} \text{ seconds}$$

$H_s$ ,  $T_z$  and  $T_{sd}$  are given in 2.3.6.

2.3.4 Wave environmental design criteria for extreme design analysis, **ESA** notations. These design parameters have been used to derive the global environmental loadings in Chapter 4 which are used for the extreme strength assessment notation. All direct calculations and model tests required to supplement these loads are to use these environmental loadings.

## Extreme wave height, $H_{xw}$

To be taken as the significant wave height that has a probability of  $5 \times 10^{-5}$  of being exceeded.

$$H_{xw} = H_x \text{ m}$$

## Extreme wave period, $T_{xw}$

To be taken as the design wave period plus one standard deviation

$$T_{xw} = T_{dw} + T_{dsd} \text{ seconds}$$

## Extreme wave period range, $T_{xrange}$

To be taken as the extreme design wave period plus and minus 1,5 standard deviations

$$T_{xrange} \text{ is } T_{xw} - 1,5T_{dsd} \text{ to } T_{xw} + 1,5T_{dsd} \text{ seconds}$$

## Duration of extreme storm

It is to be assumed that extreme storm events are to persist for three hours.

$T_{sd}$  and  $H_x$  are given in 2.3.6

$T_{dw}$  and  $T_{dsd}$  is given in 2.3.3.

2.3.5 Wave environmental design criteria for residual strength analysis, **RSA** notations. These design parameters have been used to derive the global and local environmental loadings in Chapters 3 and 4 which are used for the residual strength assessment notation. All direct calculations and model tests required to supplement these loads are to use these environmental loadings.

## Residual wave height, $H_{rw}$

To be taken as the significant wave height that has a 20 per cent probability of being exceeded for the service area

$$H_{rw} = 0,90H_s \text{ m}$$

## Residual wave period, $T_{rw}$

To be taken as the standard design wave period

$$T_{dw} = T_z \text{ seconds}$$

## Residual wave period range, $T_{rrange}$

To be taken as the standard design wave period range

$$T_{rrange} = T_{drange} \text{ seconds}$$

## Duration of sea state

It is to be assumed that the duration of sea states of this magnitude is 12 hours.

$H_s$  and  $T_z$  are given in 2.3.6

$T_{drange}$  is given in 2.3.3.

2.3.6 The parameters used in above equations are given in Table 2.2.1 for service area notations **SA1**, **SA2**, **SA3** and **SA4**. For the restricted service area notation **SAR**, the values of  $H_s$ ,  $T_z$ ,  $T_{sd}$  and  $H_x$  will need to be derived, see 2.5.

## 2.4 Service Area factors

2.4.1 The service area factor,  $f_s$ , is used to derive the global hull girder loads in Chapter 4. The service area factor applicable for Service Area notations **SA1**, **SA2**, **SA3** and **SA4** is given by:

$$f_s = (f_1 + f_2 (L_{WL} - 100)/1000) f_{sl}$$

where

$f_s$  is to have a minimum value of 0,5 and normally a maximum value of 1,0 and is to be rounded up to the nearest 0,05

$f_{sl}$  is the service life factor as defined in 2.4.2

$f_1$  and  $f_2$  are given in Table 2.2.2

$L_{WL}$  is defined in Pt 3, Ch1,5.2.

**Table 2.2.2 Environmental wave data for service area**

| Service Area Notation | Intercept factor $f_1$     | Slope factor $f_2$ |
|-----------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>SA1</b>            | 1,00                       | 0,00               |
| <b>SA2</b>            | 0,93                       | -1,15              |
| <b>SA3</b>            | 0,70                       | -1,00              |
| <b>SA4</b>            | 0,50                       | 0,00               |
| <b>SAR</b>            | To be specially considered |                    |

2.4.2 The service life factor,  $f_{sl}$ , is based on a ship's operational life. This factor may need to be increased for service lives which are predicted to require significantly more wave encounters. The service life factor is to be taken as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} f_{sl} &= 1,0 \text{ for } 1 \times 10^8 \text{ wave encounters (20 years)} \\ &= 1,010 \text{ for } 1,25 \times 10^8 \text{ wave encounters (25 years)} \\ &= 1,019 \text{ for } 1,5 \times 10^8 \text{ wave encounters (30 years).} \end{aligned}$$

2.4.3 For unrestricted sea-going service, i.e., service area notation **SA1**, the service area factor is to be taken as 1,0.

2.4.4 Alternatively the service area factor may be derived by direct calculation of the long term hull girder loads, see Ch 4,1.3.

2.4.5 For restricted Service Area Notation **SAR** the service area factor is to be derived by combining the service areas factors for each sea area using the following formula:

$$f_s = \ln \left( \sum_{i=1}^n P_i e^{f_{si}} \right)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} f_{si} &= f_{1i} + f_{2i} (L_{WL} - 100) / 1000 \\ f_{1i} \text{ and } f_{2i} &\text{ are the individual sea area factors given in Table 2.2.3} \\ e &= 2,7183 \end{aligned}$$

$\ln()$  is the natural log  
 $P_i$  is defined in 2.5.3.

## 2.5 Derivation of wave statistics for a combination of sea areas

2.5.1 For the **SAR** restricted service area notation, it is necessary to derive the environmental wave data for the required area of operation. This data may be determined using statistical methods as specified in 2.6 or using the information given in this Section.

2.5.2 The following formulae may be used to derive the design wave statistics for a ship designed to operate with a particular service area restriction. These formulae enable the environmental wave data from a set of individual sea areas to be combined to give the appropriate design wave statistics for the **SAR** restricted service area notation, see also 2.2.

2.5.3 The environmental wave data for each sea area is given in Table 2.2.4. The extents of each sea area are shown in Fig. 2.2.2.

Wave height,  $H_s$

$H_s$  = weighted average of the wave height for all sea areas plus one standard deviation

$$H_s = H_{sm} + \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n P_i (H_{si} - H_{sm})^2} \quad \text{m}$$

where

$$H_{sm} = \sum_{i=1}^n P_i H_{si} \quad \text{m}$$

Design wave period,  $T_{dw}$

$T_{dw}$  = weighted average of the wave period for all sea areas

$$T_{dw} = \sum_{i=1}^n P_i T_{zi} \quad \text{seconds}$$

Standard deviation of wave period,  $T_{sd}$

$T_{sd}$  = weighted average of the standard deviation for all sea areas about the combined design wave period,  $T_{dw}$

$$T_{sd} = \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n P_i (T_{sdi}^2 + (T_{dw} - T_{zi})^2)} \quad \text{seconds}$$

Extreme wave height,  $H_x$

$H_x$  = weighted average of the extreme wave height for all sea areas plus one standard deviation

$$H_x = H_{xm} + \sqrt{\sum_{i=1}^n P_i (H_{xi} - H_{xm})^2} \quad \text{m}$$

where

$$H_{xm} = \sum_{i=1}^n P_i H_{xi} \quad \text{m}$$

where

- $N$  is the number of sea areas
- $i$  is the sea area index reference
- $P_i$  is the probability of the ship operating in sea area  $i$ , i.e. the percentage of time, expressed as a probability value
- $H_{si}$  is the appropriate sea area wave height value for sea area  $i$
- $H_{xi}$  is the appropriate extreme wave height value for sea area  $i$
- $T_{zi}$  is the appropriate zero crossing period for sea area  $i$
- $T_{sdi}$  is the appropriate standard deviation for sea area  $i$

2.5.4 The designer/Builder is to supply full details of the **SAR** notation required together with full supporting calculations. All transit voyages and ship work-up/trial periods should be included in the list of sea areas if their inclusion results in a more severe wave environment, see also 2.2.5.

## Environmental Conditions

## Volume 1, Part 5, Chapter 2

Section 2

Table 2.2.3 Environmental wave data for individual sea area

| Sea Area Number | Minimum service area notation required to operate in this sea area | Intercept factor $f_{1i}$ | Slope factor $f_{2i}$ | Sea Area Number | Minimum service area notation required to operate in this sea area | Intercept factor $f_{1i}$ | Slope factor $f_{2i}$ |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1               | SA1                                                                | 1,13                      | -1,97                 | 51              | SA2                                                                | 0,82                      | -1,89                 |
| 2               | SA2                                                                | 0,94                      | -1,81                 | 52              | SA2                                                                | 0,87                      | -1,43                 |
| 3               | SA1                                                                | 1,13                      | -1,97                 | 53              | SA2                                                                | 0,74                      | -0,84                 |
| 4               | SA1                                                                | 1,01                      | -1,01                 | 54              | SA3                                                                | 0,62                      | -0,65                 |
| 5               | SA3                                                                | 0,72                      | -1,85                 | 55              | SA2                                                                | 0,78                      | -0,97                 |
| 6               | SA1                                                                | 1,08                      | -1,33                 | 56              | SA3                                                                | 0,63                      | -0,71                 |
| 7               | SA1                                                                | 0,89                      | -0,16                 | 57              | SA3                                                                | 0,56                      | -0,77                 |
| 8               | SA1                                                                | 0,98                      | 0,17                  | 58              | SA3                                                                | 0,57                      | -1,13                 |
| 9               | SA1                                                                | 1,00                      | 0,02                  | 59              | SA3                                                                | 0,69                      | -1,15                 |
| 10              | SA1                                                                | 1,11                      | -1,80                 | 60              | SA2                                                                | 0,87                      | -1,43                 |
| 11              | SA1                                                                | 1,18                      | -2,56                 | 61              | SA3                                                                | 0,69                      | -1,15                 |
| 12              | SA1                                                                | 1,19                      | -1,44                 | 62              | SA2                                                                | 0,85                      | -2,13                 |
| 13              | SA1                                                                | 0,96                      | -0,48                 | 63              | SA3                                                                | 0,69                      | -1,31                 |
| 14              | SA1                                                                | 0,96                      | -0,81                 | 64              | SA3                                                                | 0,59                      | -0,55                 |
| 15              | SA1                                                                | 1,01                      | -0,34                 | 65              | SA3                                                                | 0,55                      | -0,43                 |
| 16              | SA1                                                                | 1,00                      | 0,02                  | 66              | SA3                                                                | 0,59                      | -0,55                 |
| 17              | SA1                                                                | 1,03                      | -0,64                 | 67              | SA3                                                                | 0,63                      | -0,71                 |
| 18              | SA1                                                                | 1,11                      | -3,45                 | 68              | SA3                                                                | 0,65                      | -0,83                 |
| 19              | SA1                                                                | 1,10                      | -1,52                 | 69              | SA3                                                                | 0,68                      | -0,97                 |
| 20              | SA1                                                                | 1,10                      | -0,83                 | 70              | SA3                                                                | 0,67                      | -0,58                 |
| 21              | SA1                                                                | 0,88                      | -0,53                 | 71              | SA3                                                                | 0,69                      | -1,50                 |
| 22              | SA2                                                                | 0,80                      | -1,29                 | 72              | SA2                                                                | 0,63                      | -0,32                 |
| 23              | SA1                                                                | 1,00                      | -1,65                 | 73              | SA3                                                                | 0,64                      | -0,33                 |
| 24              | SA1                                                                | 1,01                      | -0,50                 | 74              | SA2                                                                | 0,74                      | -0,84                 |
| 25              | SA1                                                                | 0,90                      | -0,42                 | 75              | SA1                                                                | 0,85                      | -0,65                 |
| 26              | SA2                                                                | 0,98                      | -2,43                 | 76              | SA2                                                                | 0,77                      | -0,19                 |
| 27              | SA2                                                                | 0,98                      | -2,43                 | 77              | SA2                                                                | 0,79                      | -0,20                 |
| 28              | SA2                                                                | 0,98                      | -2,43                 | 78              | SA2                                                                | 0,86                      | -0,98                 |
| 29              | SA1                                                                | 1,06                      | -2,05                 | 79              | SA2                                                                | 0,87                      | -1,42                 |
| 30              | SA1                                                                | 1,01                      | -0,50                 | 80              | SA2                                                                | 0,78                      | -0,56                 |
| 31              | SA2                                                                | 0,74                      | -0,44                 | 81              | SA2                                                                | 0,79                      | -0,20                 |
| 32              | SA2                                                                | 0,82                      | -1,89                 | 82              | SA2                                                                | 0,74                      | -0,44                 |
| 33              | SA1                                                                | 0,75                      | -1,01                 | 83              | SA2                                                                | 0,75                      | -0,58                 |
| 34              | SA2                                                                | 0,78                      | -0,70                 | 84              | SA2                                                                | 0,73                      | -0,69                 |
| 35              | SA2                                                                | 0,73                      | -0,76                 | 85              | SA1                                                                | 0,80                      | -0,15                 |
| 36              | SA2                                                                | 0,75                      | -1,16                 | 86              | SA1                                                                | 0,89                      | -0,26                 |
| 37              | SA3                                                                | 0,72                      | -1,85                 | 87              | SA1                                                                | 0,91                      | -0,51                 |
| 38              | SA3                                                                | 0,69                      | -2,13                 | 88              | SA1                                                                | 0,89                      | -0,16                 |
| 39              | SA2                                                                | 0,85                      | -2,14                 | 89              | SA1                                                                | 0,98                      | -0,08                 |
| 40              | SA1                                                                | 1,05                      | -1,97                 | 90              | SA1                                                                | 0,98                      | -0,08                 |
| 41              | SA1                                                                | 1,00                      | -1,65                 | 91              | SA1                                                                | 0,98                      | -0,08                 |
| 42              | SA2                                                                | 0,98                      | -1,31                 | 92              | SA1                                                                | 0,90                      | 0,09                  |
| 43              | SA2                                                                | 0,78                      | -0,54                 | 93              | SA1                                                                | 0,90                      | -0,32                 |
| 44              | SA2                                                                | 0,78                      | -0,54                 | 94              | SA1                                                                | 0,98                      | 0,31                  |
| 45              | SA2                                                                | 0,64                      | -0,34                 | 95              | SA1                                                                | 0,89                      | -0,16                 |
| 46              | SA2                                                                | 0,75                      | -1,22                 | 96              | SA1                                                                | 1,00                      | -0,91                 |
| 47              | SA2                                                                | 0,75                      | -1,01                 | 97              | SA1                                                                | 0,98                      | 0,16                  |
| 48              | SA3                                                                | 0,65                      | -0,78                 | 98              | SA1                                                                | 0,89                      | 0,21                  |
| 49              | SA3                                                                | 0,68                      | -0,94                 | 99              | SA1                                                                | 0,98                      | 0,30                  |
| 50              | SA2                                                                | 1,09                      | -2,70                 | 100             | SA1                                                                | 1,03                      | 0,52                  |
|                 |                                                                    |                           |                       | 101             | SA1                                                                | 0,98                      | -0,18                 |
|                 |                                                                    |                           |                       | 102             | SA1                                                                | 0,89                      | -0,16                 |
|                 |                                                                    |                           |                       | 103             | SA1                                                                | 1,06                      | -0,23                 |
|                 |                                                                    |                           |                       | 104             | SA1                                                                | 0,89                      | -0,26                 |

## Environmental Conditions

## Volume 1, Part 5, Chapter 2

Section 2

Table 2.2.4 Environmental wave data for each sea area

| Sea Area Number | Sea area wave height, in metres<br>$H_{Si}$ | Mean wave period, in seconds<br>$T_{Zi}$ | Standard deviation of wave period, in seconds<br>$T_{Sdi}$ | Extreme design wave height, in metres<br>$H_{Xi}$ | Sea Area Number | Sea area wave height, in metres<br>$H_{Si}$ | Mean wave period, in seconds<br>$T_{Zi}$ | Standard deviation of wave period, in seconds<br>$T_{Sdi}$ | Extreme design wave height, in metres<br>$H_{Xi}$ |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1               | 3,6                                         | 6,4                                      | 1,3                                                        | 16,9                                              | 53              | 3,7                                         | 7,5                                      | 1,5                                                        | 10,0                                              |
| 2               | 3,0                                         | 6,2                                      | 1,3                                                        | 12,5                                              | 54              | 3,5                                         | 7,7                                      | 1,5                                                        | 8,9                                               |
| 3               | 4,3                                         | 7,5                                      | 1,4                                                        | 17,6                                              | 55              | 2,5                                         | 6,2                                      | 1,3                                                        | 7,4                                               |
| 4               | 4,4                                         | 7,4                                      | 1,4                                                        | 16,2                                              | 56              | 3,4                                         | 7,4                                      | 1,5                                                        | 8,6                                               |
| 5               | 2,5                                         | 5,2                                      | 1,1                                                        | 8,6                                               | 57              | 3,1                                         | 7,1                                      | 1,5                                                        | 7,8                                               |
| 6               | 4,2                                         | 7,4                                      | 1,4                                                        | 15,6                                              | 58              | 2,5                                         | 6,1                                      | 1,3                                                        | 7,1                                               |
| 7               | 5,0                                         | 8,4                                      | 1,5                                                        | 15,4                                              | 59              | 2,9                                         | 6,3                                      | 1,3                                                        | 9,2                                               |
| 8               | 5,5                                         | 8,6                                      | 1,5                                                        | 18,4                                              | 60              | 3,0                                         | 6,3                                      | 1,3                                                        | 11,5                                              |
| 9               | 5,3                                         | 8,5                                      | 1,5                                                        | 18,2                                              | 61              | 3,0                                         | 6,5                                      | 1,3                                                        | 9,0                                               |
| 10              | 3,7                                         | 6,7                                      | 1,3                                                        | 15,8                                              | 62              | 2,5                                         | 5,5                                      | 1,2                                                        | 11,0                                              |
| 11              | 3,4                                         | 6,1                                      | 1,2                                                        | 17,0                                              | 63              | 2,7                                         | 6,2                                      | 1,3                                                        | 8,4                                               |
| 12              | 5,0                                         | 7,8                                      | 1,4                                                        | 18,3                                              | 64              | 3,4                                         | 7,5                                      | 1,5                                                        | 8,2                                               |
| 13              | 4,8                                         | 8,3                                      | 1,5                                                        | 16,2                                              | 65              | 2,9                                         | 7,1                                      | 1,5                                                        | 8,2                                               |
| 14              | 4,0                                         | 7,7                                      | 1,5                                                        | 14,5                                              | 66              | 3,4                                         | 7,3                                      | 1,5                                                        | 8,1                                               |
| 15              | 4,7                                         | 8,0                                      | 1,4                                                        | 17,9                                              | 67              | 3,5                                         | 7,4                                      | 1,5                                                        | 8,9                                               |
| 16              | 5,2                                         | 8,4                                      | 1,5                                                        | 19,2                                              | 68              | 3,5                                         | 7,2                                      | 1,4                                                        | 8,7                                               |
| 17              | 4,3                                         | 7,8                                      | 1,4                                                        | 18,3                                              | 69              | 3,2                                         | 7,2                                      | 1,5                                                        | 9,2                                               |
| 18              | 2,7                                         | 4,9                                      | 1,0                                                        | 14,5                                              | 70              | 3,4                                         | 7,6                                      | 1,5                                                        | 9,7                                               |
| 19              | 3,8                                         | 7,0                                      | 1,4                                                        | 17,5                                              | 71              | 2,5                                         | 5,9                                      | 1,3                                                        | 8,3                                               |
| 20              | 4,8                                         | 8,0                                      | 1,4                                                        | 18,4                                              | 72              | 3,6                                         | 7,7                                      | 1,5                                                        | 9,5                                               |
| 21              | 4,4                                         | 8,1                                      | 1,5                                                        | 14,0                                              | 73              | 4,0                                         | 8,0                                      | 1,5                                                        | 9,4                                               |
| 22              | 3,3                                         | 7,0                                      | 1,4                                                        | 10,7                                              | 74              | 3,3                                         | 7,2                                      | 1,4                                                        | 10,6                                              |
| 23              | 3,4                                         | 6,5                                      | 1,3                                                        | 15,2                                              | 75              | 3,9                                         | 7,8                                      | 1,5                                                        | 13,0                                              |
| 24              | 4,6                                         | 8,0                                      | 1,5                                                        | 17,4                                              | 76              | 4,4                                         | 8,2                                      | 1,5                                                        | 12,5                                              |
| 25              | 4,4                                         | 8,1                                      | 1,5                                                        | 14,5                                              | 77              | 4,6                                         | 8,3                                      | 1,5                                                        | 12,6                                              |
| 26              | 2,7                                         | 5,5                                      | 1,2                                                        | 13,6                                              | 78              | 3,8                                         | 7,6                                      | 1,5                                                        | 12,0                                              |
| 27              | 2,6                                         | 5,6                                      | 1,2                                                        | 13,2                                              | 79              | 3,3                                         | 6,5                                      | 1,3                                                        | 11,2                                              |
| 28              | 2,8                                         | 5,5                                      | 1,1                                                        | 12,4                                              | 80              | 3,7                                         | 7,7                                      | 1,5                                                        | 12,2                                              |
| 29              | 3,4                                         | 6,3                                      | 1,3                                                        | 15,5                                              | 81              | 4,4                                         | 8,2                                      | 1,5                                                        | 12,7                                              |
| 30              | 4,7                                         | 8,2                                      | 1,5                                                        | 16,8                                              | 82              | 4,1                                         | 8,0                                      | 1,5                                                        | 11,3                                              |
| 31              | 3,8                                         | 7,8                                      | 1,5                                                        | 11,5                                              | 83              | 3,8                                         | 7,8                                      | 1,5                                                        | 11,2                                              |
| 32              | 2,8                                         | 5,8                                      | 1,2                                                        | 10,0                                              | 84              | 4,3                                         | 8,2                                      | 1,5                                                        | 10,8                                              |
| 33              | 3,2                                         | 6,8                                      | 1,4                                                        | 11,5                                              | 85              | 4,9                                         | 8,4                                      | 1,5                                                        | 13,3                                              |
| 34              | 3,6                                         | 7,6                                      | 1,5                                                        | 11,5                                              | 86              | 4,6                                         | 8,2                                      | 1,5                                                        | 15,7                                              |
| 35              | 3,9                                         | 7,9                                      | 1,5                                                        | 10,3                                              | 87              | 3,8                                         | 7,7                                      | 1,5                                                        | 16,8                                              |
| 36              | 3,3                                         | 6,9                                      | 1,4                                                        | 9,5                                               | 88              | 5,0                                         | 8,5                                      | 1,5                                                        | 15,3                                              |
| 37              | 2,3                                         | 5,1                                      | 1,1                                                        | 8,5                                               | 89              | 4,8                                         | 8,3                                      | 1,5                                                        | 18,2                                              |
| 38              | 1,8                                         | 4,5                                      | 0,9                                                        | 8,3                                               | 90              | 5,2                                         | 8,5                                      | 1,5                                                        | 17,9                                              |
| 39              | 2,5                                         | 5,2                                      | 1,1                                                        | 10,5                                              | 91              | 5,4                                         | 8,6                                      | 1,5                                                        | 17,7                                              |
| 40              | 3,5                                         | 6,3                                      | 1,2                                                        | 13,4                                              | 92              | 5,2                                         | 8,5                                      | 1,5                                                        | 16,7                                              |
| 41              | 3,7                                         | 6,6                                      | 1,3                                                        | 14,0                                              | 93              | 4,2                                         | 8,0                                      | 1,5                                                        | 15,3                                              |
| 42              | 3,6                                         | 6,9                                      | 1,4                                                        | 15,2                                              | 94              | 6,0                                         | 8,9                                      | 1,4                                                        | 17,7                                              |
| 43              | 4,1                                         | 7,9                                      | 1,5                                                        | 12,1                                              | 95              | 5,5                                         | 8,7                                      | 1,5                                                        | 14,6                                              |
| 44              | 4,0                                         | 8,0                                      | 1,5                                                        | 10,1                                              | 96              | 4,0                                         | 7,5                                      | 1,4                                                        | 16,9                                              |
| 45              | 3,7                                         | 7,8                                      | 1,5                                                        | 9,5                                               | 97              | 5,6                                         | 8,7                                      | 1,5                                                        | 17,3                                              |
| 46              | 2,8                                         | 6,4                                      | 1,3                                                        | 10,7                                              | 98              | 5,6                                         | 8,7                                      | 1,5                                                        | 16,7                                              |
| 47              | 3,4                                         | 6,6                                      | 1,3                                                        | 10,0                                              | 99              | 6,1                                         | 9,0                                      | 1,4                                                        | 18,0                                              |
| 48              | 3,6                                         | 7,6                                      | 1,5                                                        | 9,2                                               | 100             | 6,0                                         | 8,9                                      | 1,4                                                        | 20,1                                              |
| 49              | 3,5                                         | 7,3                                      | 1,4                                                        | 9,0                                               | 101             | 4,9                                         | 8,4                                      | 1,5                                                        | 17,1                                              |
| 50              | 3,1                                         | 5,8                                      | 1,2                                                        | 14,1                                              | 102             | 4,8                                         | 8,3                                      | 1,5                                                        | 16,5                                              |
| 51              | 2,7                                         | 5,8                                      | 1,2                                                        | 10,4                                              | 103             | 5,3                                         | 8,5                                      | 1,5                                                        | 18,2                                              |
| 52              | 3,2                                         | 6,5                                      | 1,3                                                        | 12,2                                              | 104             | 4,7                                         | 8,2                                      | 1,5                                                        | 16,6                                              |

## NOTES

- The sea area wave height  $H_{Si}$  and wave zero crossing period,  $T_{Zi}$ , are based on the annual all directions wave data scatter diagram.
- The sea area wave height  $H_{Si}$  is the average of the one third highest observed (or significant) wave heights in the wave scatter diagram.
- The  $T_{Zi}$  and standard deviation of  $T_{Sdi}$  are derived using all wave heights in the wave data scatter diagram.
- The extreme design wave height,  $H_{Xi}$ , is based on a Gumbel projection using the following data set definition:  
A wave data scatter diagram based on integer parts per ten thousand. (Note: using a higher precision scatter diagram will result in a higher estimate of extreme wave height).  
Probability of exceedance of  $5 \times 10^{-5}$ , roughly equivalent to 6,5 years continuously at sea in each sea area.
- The values of  $H_{Si}$ ,  $T_{Zi}$ , and  $T_{Sdi}$  were derived from the data set used for the extreme wave height.

## 2.6 Direct calculations

2.6.1 The wave environmental parameters may be derived by direct calculation using long term statistical wave data for the selected area(s) of operation based on hindcast data or similar analysis. This data is to represent accurately the sea environment in the intended area of operation over a long period and enable sound long term and extreme short term statistics to be derived. Depending on the area of operation, due account is to be taken of typhoon, hurricane and other seasonal extremes, see also 2.2.8.

2.6.2 The derivation of the wave environmental parameters is to be in accordance with the data specification and methods given in 2.3. The areas used for the direct calculation will then be specified after the **SAR** service area restriction notation.

## Section 3 Air environment

### 3.1 Wind speed

3.1.1 For design purposes a wind speed of 40 m/s is to be assumed.

### 3.2 Design air temperature

3.2.1 The design air temperature is to be taken as 2°C lower than the lowest mean daily average air temperature in the area of operation:

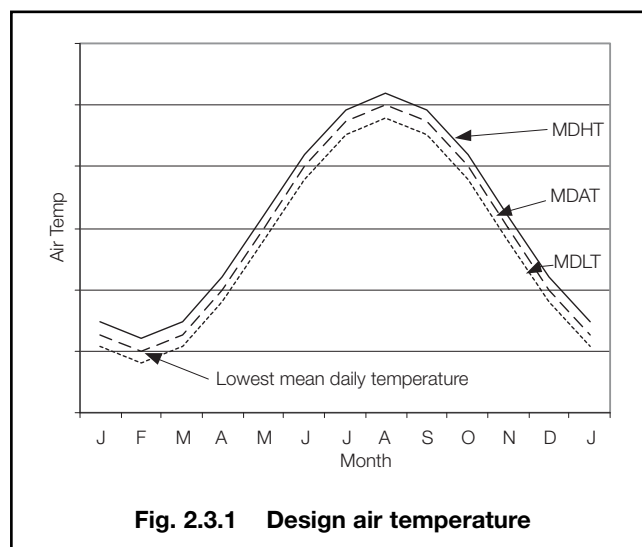
where

Mean = statistical mean over a minimum of 20 years (MDHT)

Average = average during one day and one night (MDAT)

Lowest = lowest during the year (MDLT).

Fig. 2.3.1 shows the definition graphically.



## Section 4

## Guidance for ice environment

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 This Section is intended to give guidance on the selection of a suitable ice class notation for the operation of naval ships in Arctic and Antarctic regions.

4.1.2 The Owner is to confirm which notation is most suitable for their requirements. Ultimately the responsibility rests with the commanding officer and their assessment of the ice and temperature conditions at the time.

4.1.3 The documentation supplied to the ship is to contain the ice class notation adopted, any operation limits for the ship and guidance on the type of ice that can be navigated for the nominated ice class.

### 4.2 Definitions

4.2.1 The World Meteorological Organisation's, WMO, definitions for sea ice thickness are given in Table 2.4.1.

**Table 2.4.1 WMO definition of ice conditions**

| Ice conditions                | Ice thickness |
|-------------------------------|---------------|
| Medium first year             | 1,2 m         |
| Thin first year, second stage | 0,7 m         |
| Thin first year, first stage  | 0,5 m         |
| Grey-white                    | 0,3 m         |
| Grey                          | 0,15 m        |

4.2.2 Table 2.4.2 defines the ice classes in relation to the Rules and the equivalent Internationally recognised Standards.

**Table 2.4.2 Comparison ice standards**

| Lloyd's Register class notation | Finnish-Swedish Ice-Due class | Canadian type |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>1AS</b>                      | IA Super                      | A             |
| <b>1A</b>                       | IA                            | B             |
| <b>1B</b>                       | IB                            | C             |
| <b>1C</b>                       | IC                            | D             |
| <b>1D</b>                       | ID                            | —             |
| none                            | none                          | E             |

4.2.3 Extended periods are defined as those that involve the vessel remaining in air temperatures below 0°C for more than one week.

## 4.3 Application

4.3.1 For naval ships intended for extended periods of operation in Arctic and Antarctic areas the suggested ice class is **1C**. For these operational limits, the materials used for hull construction are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 6.2. If a higher ice class is proposed, material requirements are to be specially considered using a specified design air temperature as defined in 3.2.

4.3.2 For naval ships required to operate in multi year ice as defined by the Ice breaker region in Fig. 2.4.1 without an ice breaker escort, the requirements for ice class will be specially considered. Material requirements are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 6.2 using a specified design air temperature as defined in 3.2.

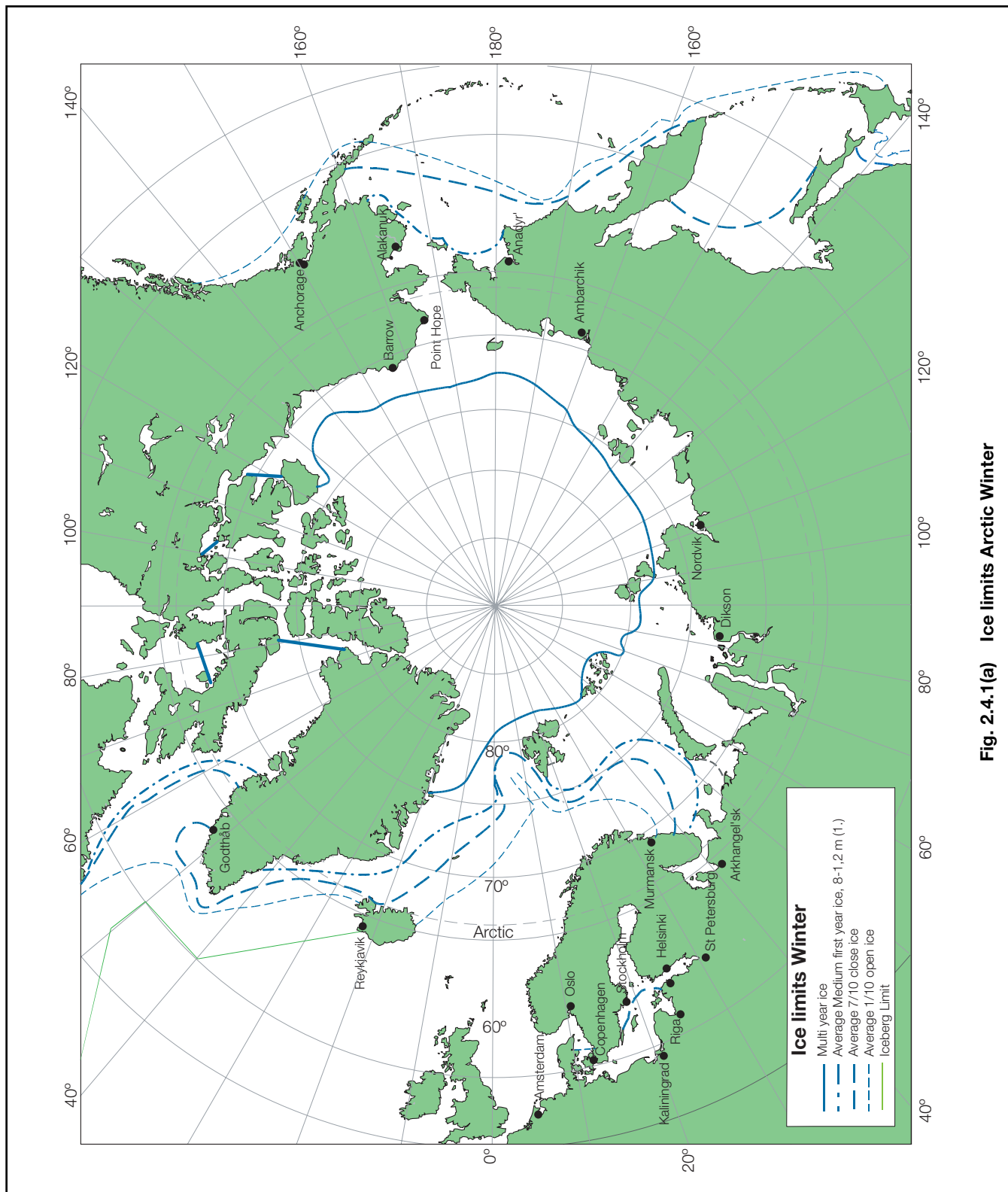


Fig. 2.4.1(a) Ice limits Arctic Winter



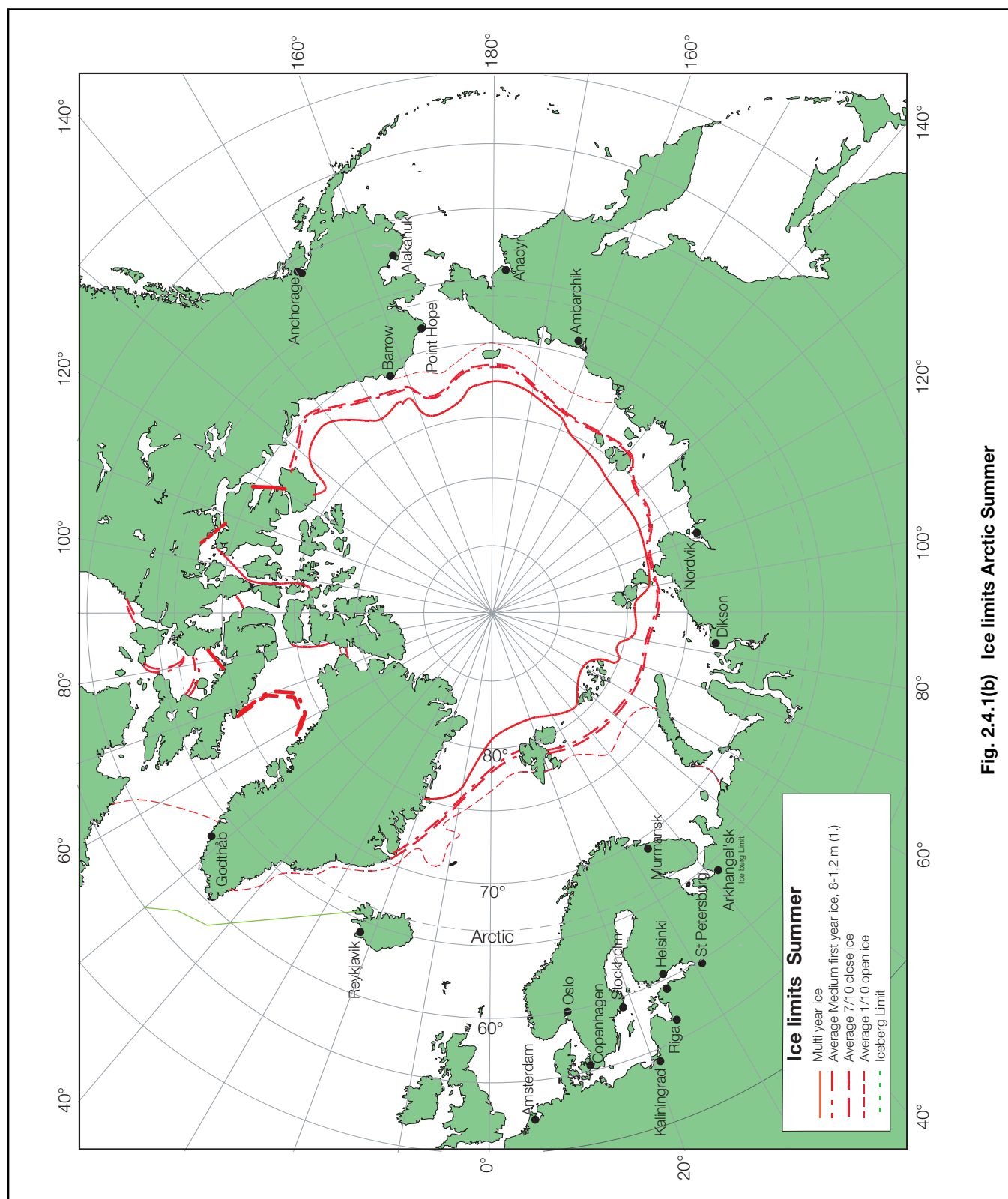
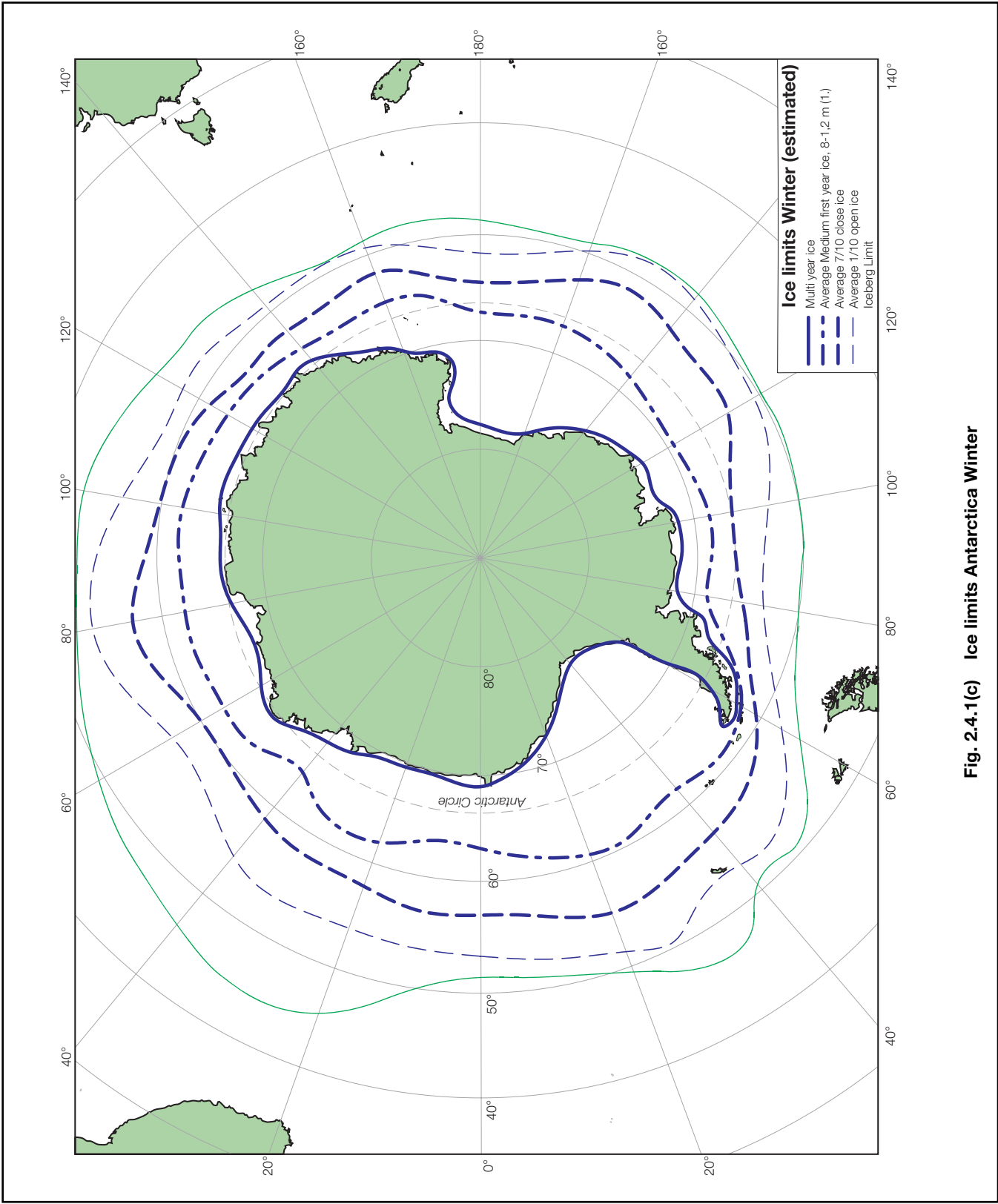
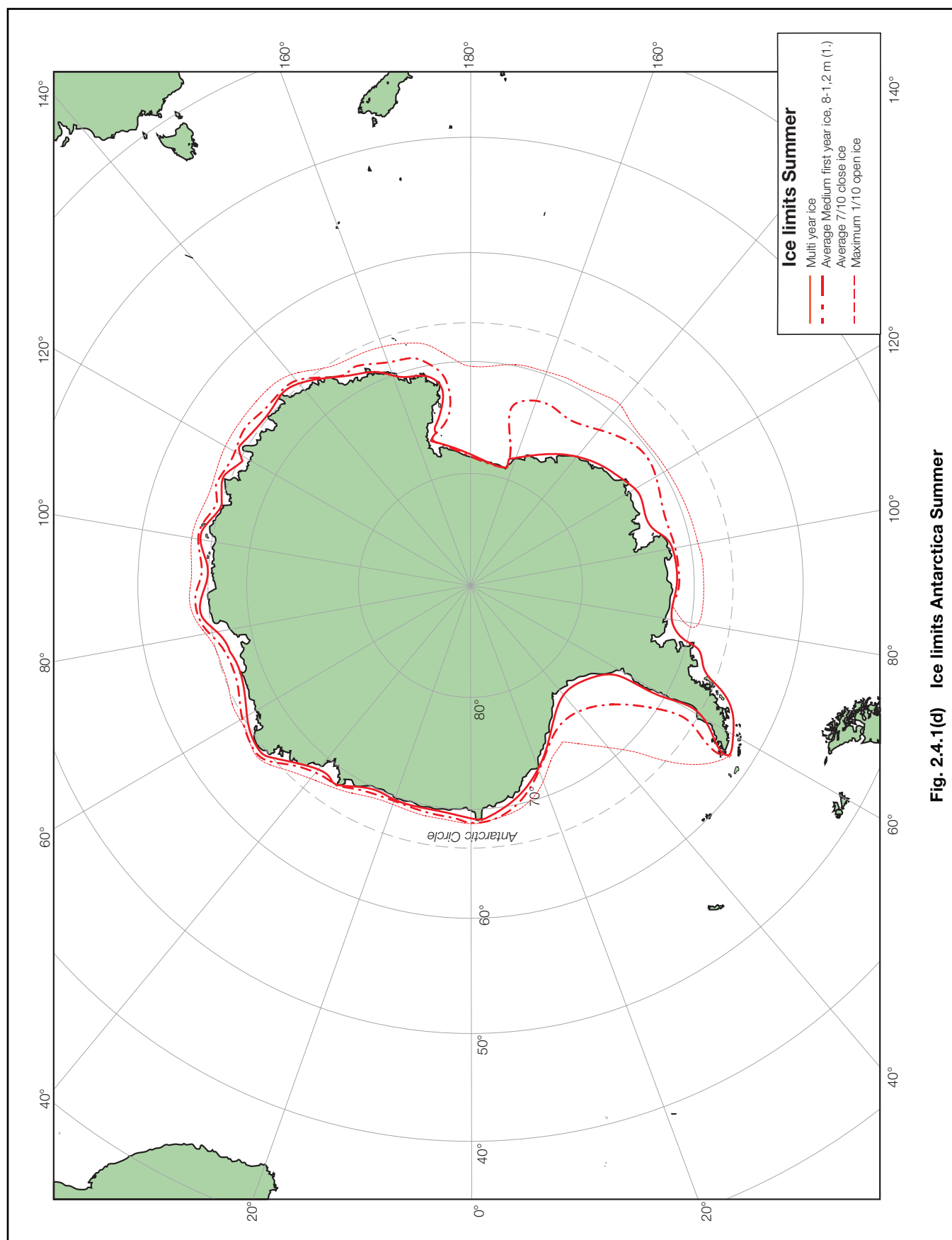


Fig. 2.4.1(b) Ice limits Arctic Summer





# Environmental Conditions

## Volume 1, Part 5, Chapter 2

Section 4

4.3.3 The variable nature of ice conditions is such that the average limits of the conditions are not easily defined. However, it is possible to plot the probable limits of the ice flows and the ice edge for each season. Operation with Ice Class **1C** may be possible up to 150 nm inside the 7/10 region shown depending on the severity of the winter. Operation with Ice Class **1A** may be possible up to 150 nm inside the medium first year ice shown depending on the severity of the winter. Operation up to the multi year ice is possible most years with Ice Class **1AS**.

4.3.4 Operation in the region between 7/10 and 1/10 in the Arctic is possible with due care for ships with no ice class. For ships operating for extended periods in these areas it will be necessary to specify and design for a minimum temperature for the hull materials. To cover all situations for a non-ice class ship, the material requirements of Pt 6, Ch 6,2 are recommended.

### 4.4 Ice Class notations

4.4.1 Where the requirements of Vol 3, Pt 1, Ch 1 are complied with, the ship will be eligible for a special features notation as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,3.8.

### 4.5 National Authority requirements

4.5.1 Certain areas of operation may require compliance or demonstration of equivalence with National Authority requirements. Table 2.4.2 gives the equivalence of National Authority requirements.

4.5.2 The standards of ice strengthening required by the Rules have been accepted by the Finnish and Swedish Boards of Navigation as being such as to warrant assignment of the Ice-Due Classes given in Table 2.4.2. For definition of Ice-Due Classes, see *Finnish-Swedish Ice Class Rules, 1985*.

4.5.3 Ships intending to navigate in the Canadian Arctic must comply with the Canadian Arctic Shipping Pollution Prevention Regulations established by the Consolidated Regulations of Canada, 1978, Chapter 353, in respect of which Lloyd's Register is authorised to issue Arctic Pollution Prevention Certificates.

4.5.4 The Canadian Arctic areas have been divided into zones relative to the severity of the ice conditions experienced and, in addition to geographic boundaries, each zone has seasonal limits affecting the necessary ice class notation required to permit operations at a particular time of year. It is the responsibility of the Owner to determine which notation is most suitable for their requirements.

### 4.6 Ice accretion

4.6.1 For ships intended to operate for extended periods in Arctic or Antarctic the build up of ice on exposed surfaces is to be considered. See Ch 3,7 and Ch 4,2.

4.6.2 As a minimum, a full icing allowance is to be applied to vessels operating in the following areas, see Fig. 2.4.2:

- The area north of latitude 65°30'N, between longitude 28°W and the West coast of Iceland; north of the north coast of Iceland; north of the rhumb line running from latitude 66°N, longitude 15°W to latitude 73°30'N, longitude 15°E, north of latitude 73°30'N between longitude 15°E and 35°E, and east of longitude 35°E, as well as north of latitude 56°N in the Baltic Sea.
- The area north of latitude 43°N bounded in the west by the North American coast and the east by the rhumb line running from latitude 43°N, longitude 48°W to latitude 63°N, longitude 28°W and thence along longitude 28°W.
- All sea areas north of the North American continent west of the areas defined in subparagraphs above.
- The Bering and Okhotsk Seas and the Tartary Strait during the icing season.
- South of latitude 60°S.

4.6.3 A full icing allowance is defined as an additional pressure of 1 kN/m<sup>2</sup> (100 mm of ice) applied to all exposed horizontal or near horizontal surfaces and 0,25 kN/m<sup>2</sup> (25 mm of ice) applied to all exposed vertical surfaces. The volumetric centre of the ice is to be taken as that of an equivalent head of water. The density of the ice is assumed to be 1000 kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

4.6.4 As a minimum a half icing allowance is to be applied to vessels operating in the winter seasonal areas as defined in the International Load Line Convention.

4.6.5 A half icing allowance is defined as an additional pressure of 0,5 kN/m<sup>2</sup> (50 mm of ice) applied to all exposed horizontal or near horizontal surfaces and 0,18 kN/m<sup>2</sup> (18 mm of ice) applied to all exposed vertical surfaces. The volumetric centre of the ice is to be taken as that of an equivalent head of water. The density of the ice is assumed to be 1000 kg/m<sup>3</sup>.

4.6.6 The effects on stability of ice accretion are to be assessed in accordance with the stability standard identified by the Naval Authority.

4.6.7 Where alternative icing allowances are specified by the Naval Authority and these allowances exceed that defined in 4.6.3 and 4.6.5 for the appropriate operational areas, these allowances shall be used in the assessment of the local and global structure.

### 4.7 Ice conditions

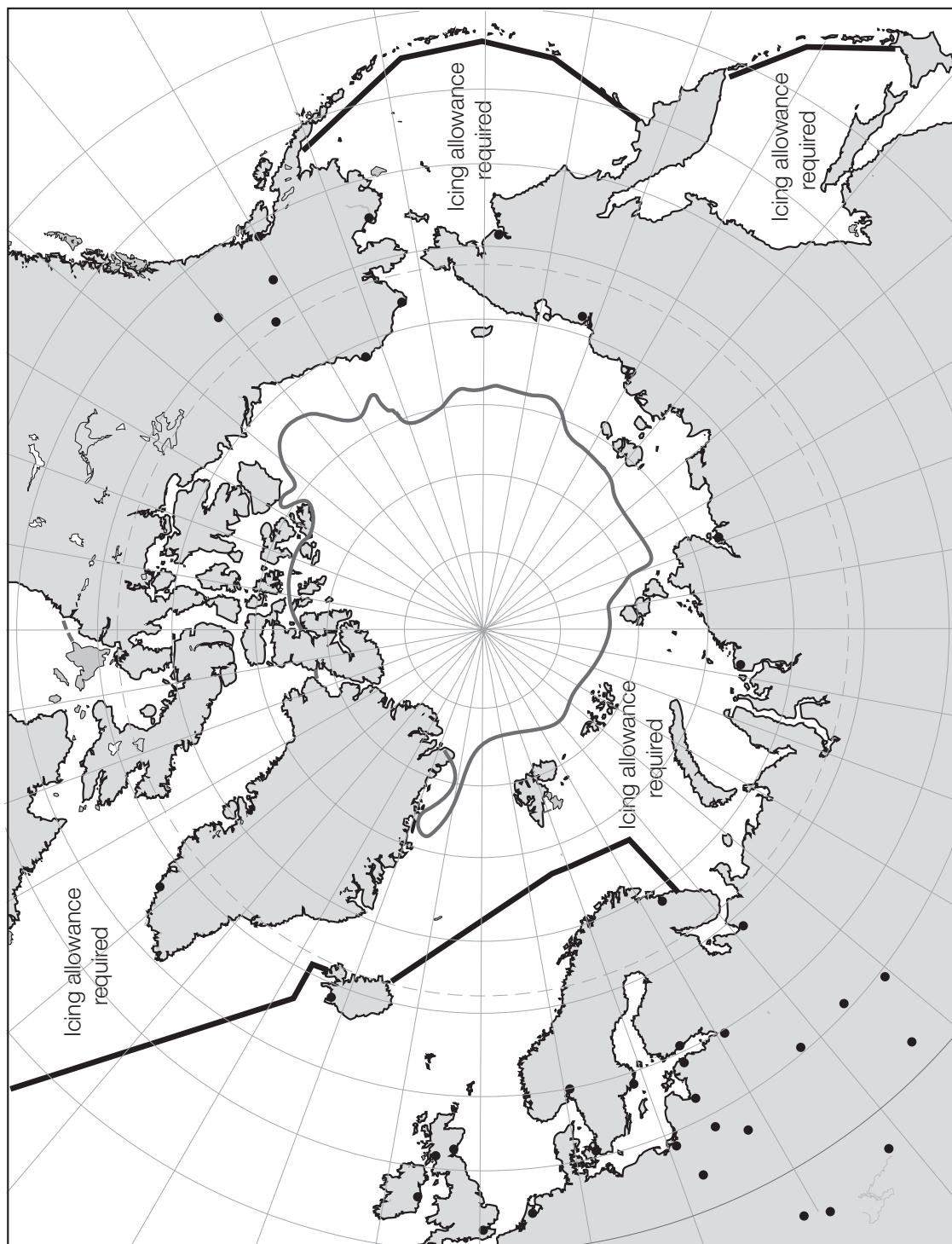
4.7.1 Charts and images for the current and recent ice conditions in all areas of the world plus information on icebergs can be found from the National Ice Centre on the world wide web at

<http://www.natice.noaa.gov/>.

Information is supplied by regular assessment and survey by the naval ice centres patrols.

4.7.2 Daily ice information and consultation is available from the Canadian ice service which is part of the Canadian department of the environment. Their web site can be found at

<http://www.ice-glaces.ec.gc.ca>.



**Fig. 2.4.2(a) Ice accretion limits Arctic**

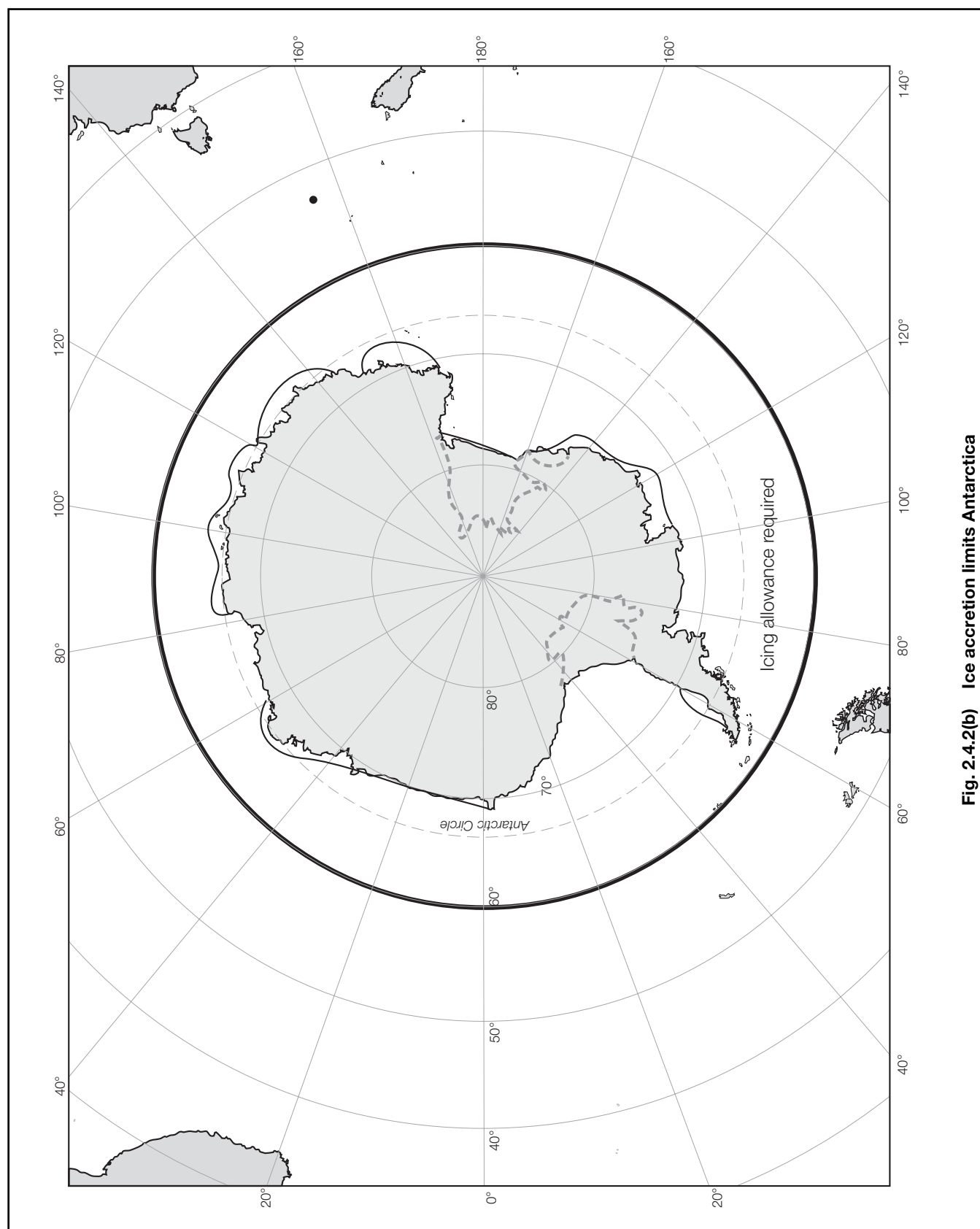


Fig. 2.4.2(b) Ice accretion limits Antarctica



## Section

|   |                                                   |
|---|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <b>Introduction</b>                               |
| 2 | <b>Motion response</b>                            |
| 3 | <b>Loads on shell envelope</b>                    |
| 4 | <b>Impact loads on external plating</b>           |
| 5 | <b>Local design loads for decks and bulkheads</b> |
| 6 | <b>Other local loads</b>                          |
| 7 | <b>Ice loads</b>                                  |

## Section 1 Introduction

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 This Chapter contains information regarding the derivation of local design loads that are to be used for the assessment of scantlings to local loads as specified in Pt 6, Ch 2.

1.1.2 The formulae for ship motion loads given in this Chapter are suitable for all ships that operate in the displacement mode. Ship motion loads for ships that operate in the fully planing mode will need to be specially considered.

1.1.3 Fig. 3.1.1 gives an overview of the contents of this Chapter, the locations of the local load components and the route through the Chapter.

### 1.2 Environmental conditions

1.2.1 The environmental conditions for the determination of the local loads are to be based on the normal environmental design criteria specified in Pt 5, Ch 2,2.3 unless otherwise stated.

1.2.2 The wave height factor for local loads,  $f_{Hs}$ , is dependent on the service area notation and is to be taken as follows:

$f_{Hs} = 1,0$  for SA1 service area notation, i.e., unrestricted sea-going service

otherwise

$$f_{Hs} = \frac{\text{design wave height for the restricted service}}{\text{design wave height for unrestricted service}}$$

$$= \frac{H_{dw}}{H_{dw} \text{ for SA1}}$$

$f_{Hs}$  is not to be taken as less than 0,5  
 $H_{dw}$  is given in Ch 2,2.3.3.

1.2.3 All other environmental parameters are defined in Chapter 2.

1.2.4 The local design loads for assessment of the residual strength notation, **RSA**, or for special loading conditions where the ship will not experience severe weather or severe sea states may be adjusted for the appropriate environmental conditions. A reduced wave height factor,  $f_{Hs}$ , may be applied, see 5.10 and Pt 5, Ch 3,5.10.3.

### 1.3 Symbols and definitions

1.3.1 The symbols and definitions applicable to this Chapter are defined below or in the appropriate sub-Section.

$L_{WL}$ ,  $B$ ,  $B_{WL}$ ,  $D$ ,  $T$  and  $C_b$  are defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2

$f_{Hs}$  = wave height factor for service area, see 1.2.2

$V_{cr}$  = two thirds the cruising speed, in knots

$V_{sp}$  is to be taken as the greater of the cruising speed or two thirds the sprint speed, in knots. For ships where it is not required to maintain high speeds in severe weather then the value of  $V_{sp}$  may be specially considered

$T$  = mean draught at midships to the design waterline, based on  $L_{WL}$ , measured from the baseline

$T_x$  = local draught to design waterline at longitudinal position under consideration measured above the baseline is to be taken as the horizontal plane passing through the bottom of the moulded hull at midships, see Fig. 3.1.2

$x_{wl}$  = longitudinal distance, in metres, measured forwards from the aft end of the  $L_{WL}$  to the position or centre of gravity of the item being considered

$y$  = transverse distance, in metres, from the centreline to the centre of gravity of the item being considered.  $y$  is positive to port and negative to starboard

$z$  = vertical distance, in metres, from the base line to the position or centre of gravity of the item being considered.  $z$  is positive above the baseline

Normally the following definitions are to be applied: For a longitudinally framed plate panel,  $z$  is to be taken at the panel centre

For a transversely framed plate panel,  $z$  is to be taken at two thirds of the panel height

For short stiffener members:  $z$  is to be taken at the stiffener mid position

For long stiffener members:  $z$  is generally to be taken at the stiffener mid position, but may need to be specially considered, especially when there is a significant pressure variation along its length

$z_k$  = vertical distance of the underside of the keel above the baseline, in metres, see Fig. 3.1.2

$\Delta$  = moulded displacement of the ship, in tonnes.

1.3.2 **Froude Number  $F_n$** . The Froude number is a non-dimensional parameter which is the primary constituent part of the wave making resistance and which dictates the maximum displacement speed. It is defined as:

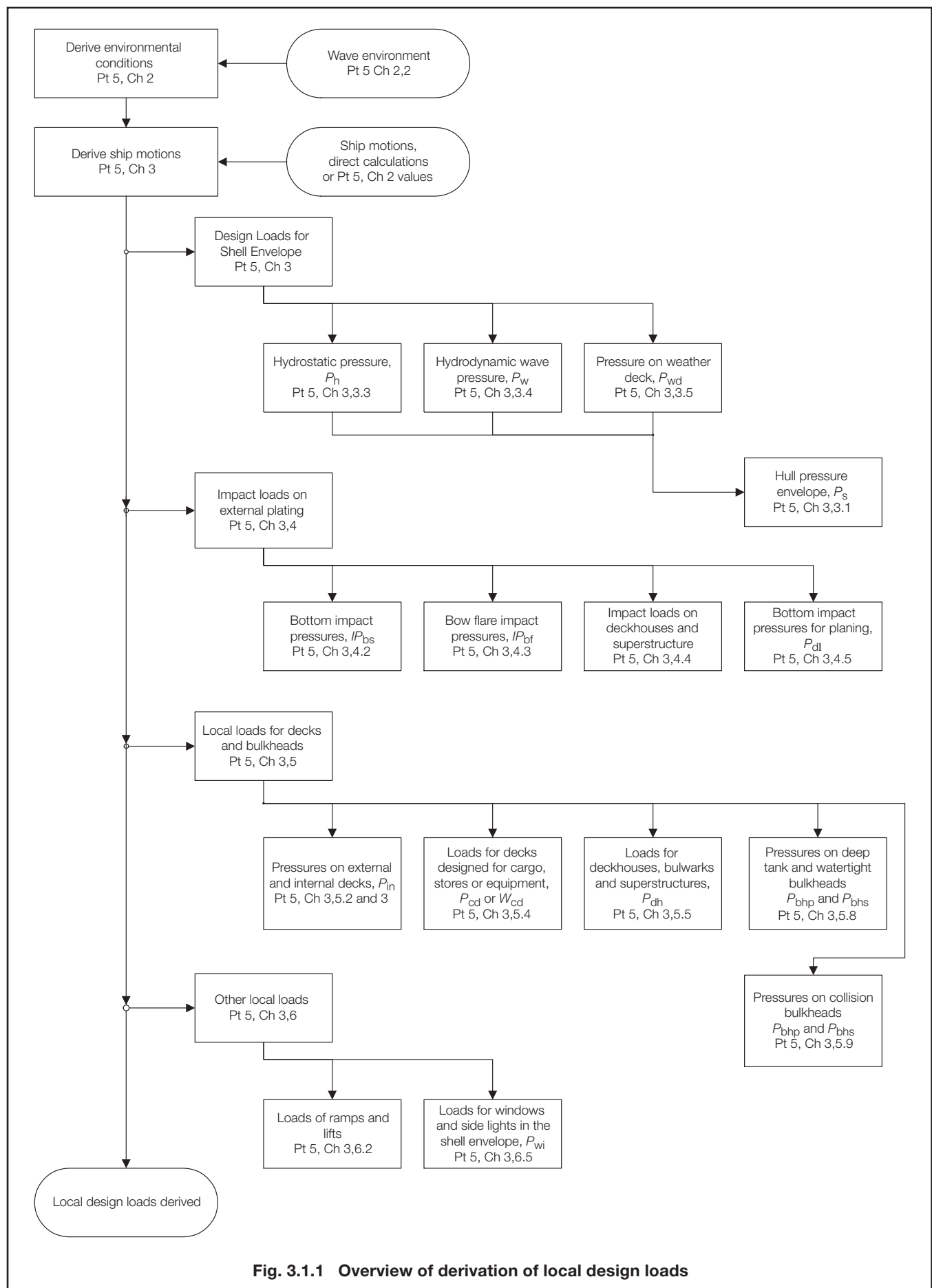
$$F_n = \frac{V_m}{\sqrt{g L_{WL}}}$$

where

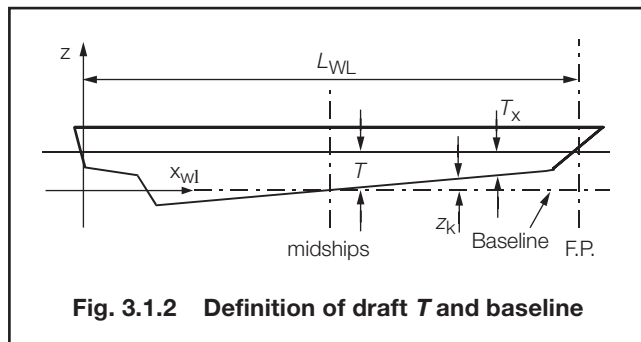
$g$  is the acceleration due to gravity and is taken to be 9,81 m/s<sup>2</sup>

$L_{WL}$  is defined in 1.3.1

$V_m$  is the appropriate ship speed in m/s.







**Fig. 3.1.2 Definition of draft  $T$  and baseline**

**1.3.3 Design loading condition.** The design loading condition is to be taken as the normal operating deep draft condition with tanks and consumables, etc in the departure state. Where there is a significant variation in loading conditions or operating modes, then it may be necessary to consider additional loading conditions which represent the extremes of service requirements. For example:

- a ship which can operate in displacement and non-displacement modes;
- a ship which is required to operate at a much deeper draft than the normal sea-going draft for off-loading payload;
- a ship which is required to be involved in humanitarian emergency evacuation incidents or similar situations where short term overloading may be necessary.

**1.3.4 LCG.** The LCG is the longitudinal centre of gravity of the ship measured in metres from the aft end of the  $L_{WL}$  for the design loading condition.

**1.3.5 Displacement mode.** Displacement mode means the regime, whether at rest or in motion, where the weight of the ship is fully or predominantly supported by hydrostatic forces. Typically this applies to craft with a Taylor Quotient,  $\Gamma$ , less than 3. However, some craft are designed to plane with  $\Gamma$  less than 3 and these should be considered as operating in the non-displacement mode.

**1.3.6 Fully planing mode or Non-displacement mode.** Non-displacement mode means the normal operational regime of a ship when non-hydrostatic forces substantially or predominantly support the weight of the ship. Typically this applies to craft with a Taylor Quotient,  $\Gamma$ , greater than 3. However, some craft are designed not to plane with  $\Gamma$  greater than 3 and these should be considered as operating in the displacement mode unless they are classified as a high speed craft.

**1.3.7 Taylor Quotient  $\Gamma$ .** The Taylor Quotient is defined as:

$$\Gamma = \frac{V_m}{\sqrt{L_{WL}}}$$

where

$V_m$  is defined in 1.3.2

$L_{WL}$  is defined in 1.3.1.

## Section 2 Motion response

### 2.1 General

**2.1.1** The motions of the ship are to be considered in deriving the dynamic loads acting on the ship. The formulae given in this Section may be utilised or ship motion design values may be derived by direct calculation methods or model testing.

**2.1.2** For the assessment of mass inertial forces acting on structure the following combinations of static and dynamic forces are to be considered:

- Rolling motion only:  
Static roll + dynamic roll + dynamic heave (at roll angle)
- Pitching motion only:  
Static pitch + dynamic pitch + dynamic heave (at pitch angle)
- Combined motion:  
Static combined +0,8 (dynamic roll + dynamic pitch)

Full details of the load cases applied are to be submitted for approval.

### 2.2 Ship motions

**2.2.1** The ship motion response data given in Table 3.2.1 are to be used in the design calculations. Alternatively, the ship motion responses may be derived by direct calculation or equivalent methods.

### 2.3 Design accelerations

**2.3.1** The non-dimensional ship motion acceleration values given in this Section are to be used in the design calculations. The equations given here are applicable to ships with conventional hull forms operating in the displacement mode at their normal ship service speed or cruising speed. It is not normally necessary to consider the ship motion or acceleration values at sprint speeds unless there is a particular requirement to operate at sprint speeds in severe seastates.

**2.3.2** The following formulae are given as guidance for the components of acceleration due to ship motions and apply for ships with a length exceeding 50 m and where the speed is such that the ship is operating within the displacement mode based on normal ship service speed. Typically this will apply to most ships with displacement hull forms that are not designed to operate in the planing regime.

Vertical acceleration due to heave, pitch and roll motions

$$a_z = \pm \sqrt{(a_{\text{heave}}^2 + a_{\text{pitch}}^2 + a_{\text{rollz}}^2)}$$

Transverse acceleration due to sway, yaw and roll motions

$$a_y = \pm \sqrt{(a_{\text{sway}}^2 + a_{\text{yaw}}^2 + a_{\text{rolly}}^2)}$$

Longitudinal acceleration due to surge motions

$$a_x = \pm a_0 \sqrt{(0,06 + A^2 - 0,25A)}$$

where

# Local Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 5, Chapter 3

Section 2

**Table 3.2.1 Ship motions**

| Motion                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                  |                    | Acceleration                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Heave                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                  | $a_{\text{heave}}$ | $= a_0$                                                                                                                                                        |
| Pitch                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                  | $a_{\text{pitch}}$ | $= a_0 \left( 5,3 - \frac{45}{L_{\text{WL}}} \right) \left( \frac{x_{\text{WL}} - L_{\text{CG}}}{L_{\text{WL}}} \right) \left( \frac{0,6}{C_b} \right)^{0,75}$ |
| Sway                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                  | $a_{\text{sway}}$  | $= a_0 0,78$                                                                                                                                                   |
| Yaw                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                  | $a_{\text{yaw}}$   | $= a_0 1,6 \left( \frac{x_{\text{WL}} - L_{\text{CG}}}{L_{\text{WL}}} \right)$                                                                                 |
| Roll                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Acceleration due to Roll<br>Vertical direction   | $a_{\text{rollz}}$ | $= a_0 \frac{0,6y K^{1,5}}{B_{\text{WL}}}$                                                                                                                     |
| Roll                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Acceleration due to Roll<br>Transverse direction | $a_{\text{rolly}}$ | $= a_0 \sqrt{K} \left( 1 + 0,6K \left( \frac{z - T}{B_{\text{WL}}} \right) \right)$                                                                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                  | $a_0$              | $= f_{\text{Hs}} f_{\text{st}} \left( \frac{0,2V}{\sqrt{L_{\text{WL}}}} + \frac{34 - \left( \frac{600}{L_{\text{WL}}} \right)}{L_{\text{WL}}} \right)$         |
| Relative vertical motion                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                  | $H_{\text{rm}}$    | $= C_{\text{w,min}} \left( 1 + \frac{k_r}{(C_b + 0,2)} \left( \frac{x_{\text{WL}}}{L_{\text{WL}}} - x_m \right)^2 \right)$                                     |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                  |                    |                                                                                                                                                                |
| $f_{\text{st}}$ = correction factor for long term ( $10^{-8}$ ) acceleration value to average of the highest 1/100 acceleration values<br>$= 0,8$<br>$C_w$ = a wave head, in metres<br>$= f_{\text{Hs}} 0,0771 L_{\text{WL}} (C_b + 0,2)^{0,3} e^{(-0,0044 L_{\text{WL}})}$<br>$C_{\text{w,min}} = \frac{C_w}{k_m} \sqrt{\frac{2,25}{k_r}}$<br>$k_m = 1 + \frac{k_r (0,5 - x_m)^2}{(C_b + 0,2)}$<br>$x_m = 0,45 - 0,6 F_n$ but $x_m$ is not to be less than 0,2<br>$k_r = 2,25$ for the determination of pressure loads in Section 3<br>$k_r = 4,5$ for the determination of impact loads in Section 4                                                          |                                                  |                    |                                                                                                                                                                |
| $V$ is appropriate design speed as follows:<br>$V = V_{\text{cr}}$ for determination of pressure in Section 3, local design loads in Section 5 and 6, and all other loads unless specifically noted<br>$= V_{\text{sp}}$ for determination of impact loads in Section 4<br>$F_n = \frac{0,515V}{\sqrt{g L_{\text{WL}}}}$<br>$K = 1$ in general. For particular loading conditions and hull forms, determination of $K$ according to the formula below may be necessary<br>$K = 13 GM/B_{\text{WL}}$ , but $\geq 1,0$<br>$GM$ = metacentric height, in metres<br>$f_{\text{Hs}}$ and $B_{\text{WL}}$ are defined in 1.3.1<br>$L_{\text{CG}}$ is defined in 1.3.4 |                                                  |                    |                                                                                                                                                                |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. Heave motion is measured positive upwards.<br>2. Pitch motion is measured positive bow downwards.<br>3. Sway motion is measured positive to port.<br>4. Yaw motion is measured positive bow to port.<br>5. Roll motion is measured positive port side upwards.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                  |                    |                                                                                                                                                                |

$$A = f_{\text{Hs}} f_{\text{st}} \left( 0,7 - \frac{L_{\text{WL}}}{1200} + \frac{5(z - T)}{L_{\text{WL}}} \right) \left( \frac{0,6}{C_b} \right)$$

and  
 $a_x$ ,  $a_y$  and  $a_z$  are the maximum dimensionless accelerations (i.e. relative to the acceleration of gravity) in the respective directions and are considered as acting separately for calculation purposes  
 $a_x$  measured positive in the forward direction  
 $a_y$  measured positive in the transverse direction to port  
 $a_z$  measured positive in the downwards direction, i.e. adds to  $g$

**NOTES:**  
 $a_x$  includes the component due to static weight in the longitudinal direction due to pitching  
 $a_y$  includes the component due to static weight in the transverse direction due to rolling  
 $a_z$  does not include the component due to static weight  
 $a_0$ ,  $a_{\text{heave}}$ ,  $a_{\text{pitch}}$ ,  $a_{\text{rollz}}$ ,  $a_{\text{sway}}$ ,  $a_{\text{yaw}}$ ,  $a_{\text{rolly}}$  and  $A$  are defined in Table 3.2.1  
 $f_{\text{st}}$  is defined in Table 3.2.1  
 $f_{\text{Hs}}$  is defined in 1.2.2  
 $T$ ,  $L_{\text{WL}}$ ,  $C_b$  and  $z$  are defined in 1.3.1.

## 2.4 Design vertical acceleration for ships in the planing regime

2.4.1 The design vertical acceleration for the derivation of bottom impact pressures for ships operating in the planing regime may be derived using the following Sections.

2.4.2 The non-dimensional vertical acceleration at the LCG,  $a_{op}$ , is defined as the average of the 1/100 highest accelerations and is to be taken as:

$$a_{op} = 5,66g \theta_B L_1 (H_1 + 0,084) (5 - 0,1\theta_D) F_n^2 10^{-3}$$

where

$F_n$  = Froude number based on  $V_{sp}$ , where  $V_{sp}$  is defined in 1.3.1,  $F_n$  is defined in 1.3.2

$g$  = acceleration due to gravity (9,81 m/sec<sup>2</sup>)

$L_1 = \frac{L_{WL} B_c^3}{B_{WL} \Delta}$ , but  $\frac{L_{WL}}{B_{WL}}$  is not to be taken as less than 3

$H_1 = \frac{H_{dw}}{B_{WL}}$  but not less than 0,2

$B_c$  = breadth of hull between the chines or bilge tangential points at the LCG, as appropriate, in metres, see Fig. 3.2.1

$H_{dw}$  = design wave height in metres, see Ch 2.2.3.3

$\theta_D$  = deadrise angle at the LCG, in degrees, but is not taken as greater than 30°, see Fig. 3.2.1

$\theta_B$  = running trim angle in degrees, but is not to be taken as less than 3°

$B_{WL}$ ,  $\Delta$  and  $L_{WL}$  are defined in 1.3.1

LCG is defined in 1.3.4

NOTES:

- The bilge tangential point is defined as the tangential point of the bilge with an oblique line sloped at 50° to the horizontal at the LCG, see Fig. 3.2.1.
- For ships with no clearly defined deadrise angle at the LCG, the angle, in degrees, to the horizontal line at the LCG formed by joining the lowest point of the hull or underside of keel and the bilge tangential point is to be taken as the deadrise angle  $\theta_D$ , see Fig. 3.2.1.
- For ships with hulls of asymmetric section, where the inner and outer deadrise angles differ, the smaller of the two angles is to be used.

2.4.3 Where the Froude number,  $F_n$ , is greater than 1,8, the motion response criteria are to be specially considered.

2.4.4 The vertical non dimensional acceleration,  $a_z$ , at any given distance  $x$  along the hull may be taken as:

$$a_z = a_{op} \left( 1,0 - 0,32 \frac{(x_{wl} - L_{CG})}{L_{WL}} + 1,76 \left( \frac{x_{wl}^2 - L_{CG}^2}{L_{WL}^2} \right) \right)$$

where

$a_z$  = is the vertical acceleration in terms of  $g$

$x_{wl}$  = distance from aft end of  $L_{WL}$ , in metres, to the point at which the vertical acceleration is calculated

$L_{CG}$  is defined in 1.3.4.

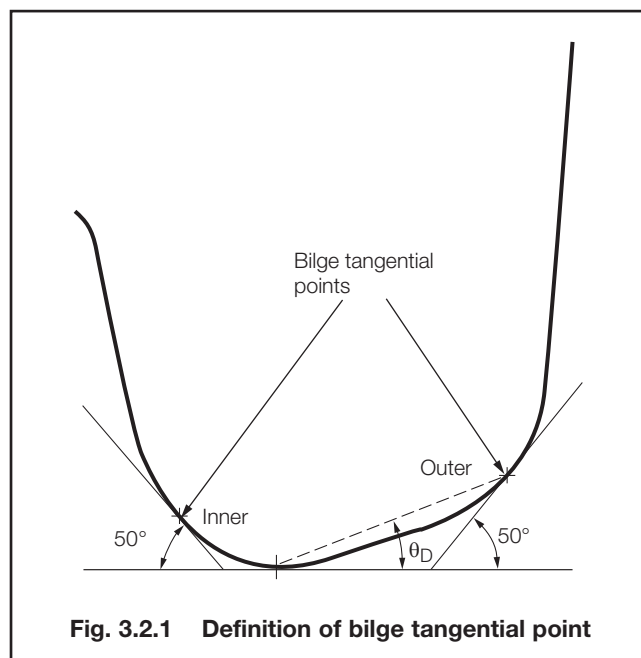


Fig. 3.2.1 Definition of bilge tangential point

## Section 3

## Loads on shell envelope

### 3.1 Pressures on the shell envelope

3.1.1 The design pressures for the shell envelope including exposed decks are to include the effects of combined static and dynamic load components. In addition the effects of impact or slamming loads are also to be considered, but these may be treated separately, see Section 4.

3.1.2 The individual pressure components are given in 3.3 to 3.5 and the combined pressure to be applied to the shell envelope is given in 3.2. The pressure to be applied to exposed and weather decks is given in 3.5.

### 3.2 Combined hydrostatic and hydrodynamic pressure on the shell plating, $P_s$

3.2.1 The total pressure distribution,  $P_s$ , in kN/m<sup>2</sup> acting on the shell plating envelope due to hydrostatic and hydrodynamic pressures is illustrated in Fig. 3.3.1 and is to be taken as specified in Table 3.3.1.

### 3.3 Hydrostatic pressure on the shell plating, $P_h$

3.3.1 The pressure,  $P_h$ , acting on the shell plating up to the design waterline due to hydrostatic pressure is to be taken as:

$$P_h = 10 (T_x - (z - z_k)) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

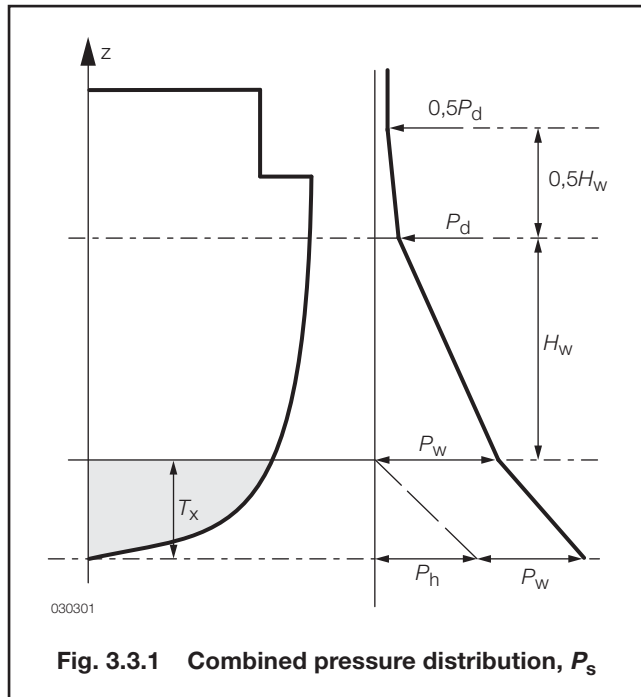
where

$T_x$ ,  $z$  and  $z_k$  are defined in 1.3.

# Local Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 5, Chapter 3

Section 3



**Fig. 3.3.1 Combined pressure distribution,  $P_s$**

**Table 3.3.1 Shell envelope pressure,  $P_s$**

| Vertical location<br>i.e., $z$ value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Shell envelope pressure, $P_s$<br>kN/m <sup>2</sup> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| for $z \leq T_x + z_k$<br>i.e. up to the design waterline                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | $P_h + P_w$                                         |
| At $z = T_x + z_k + H_w$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | $P_d$                                               |
| At $z \geq T_x + z_k + 1,5H_w$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | $0,5P_d$                                            |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                     |
| $P_h$ is the hydrostatic pressure, see 3.3<br>$P_w$ is the hydrodynamic wave pressure, see 3.4<br>$P_d$ is the weather deck pressure, see 3.5.2<br>$H_w$ is the nominal wave limit height, see 3.4.4<br>$P_h$ and $P_w$ are to be derived at the appropriate vertical position, $z$<br>$T_x$ , $z$ and $z_k$ are defined in 1.3 |                                                     |
| NOTE<br>Pressure values at other $z$ values are to be derived by interpolation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                     |

## 3.4 Hydrodynamic wave pressure, $P_w$

3.4.1 The hydrodynamic wave pressure distribution,  $P_w$ , around the shell envelope up to the design waterline, i.e.,  $z \leq T_x + z_k$ , is to be taken as the greater of the following:

$$P_m \text{ kN/m}^2 \quad (\text{relative motion})$$

$$P_p \text{ kN/m}^2 \quad (\text{pitching motion})$$

where

$P_m$  and  $P_p$  are defined in 3.4.2 and 3.4.3.

3.4.2 The distribution of hydrodynamic pressure up to the design waterline,  $P_m$ , due to relative motion is to be taken as:

$$P_m = 10f_z H_{rm} \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$f_z$  = the vertical distribution factor

$$= k_z + (1 - k_z) \left( \frac{z - z_k}{T_x} \right)$$

$$k_z = e^{-u}$$

$$u = \left( \frac{2\pi T_x}{L_{WL}} \right)$$

$H_{rm}$  is defined in Table 3.2.1

$z$ ,  $z_k$ ,  $T_x$  and  $L_{WL}$  are defined in 1.3.

3.4.3 The distribution of hydrodynamic pressure up to the design waterline due to pitching motion,  $P_p$ , is to be taken as:

$$P_p = 10 H_{pm} \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$$H_{pm} = 1,1f_{Hs} \left( \frac{2x_{wl}}{L_{WL}} - 1 \right) \sqrt{L_p}$$

but not less than  $0,3f_{Hs} \sqrt{L_{WL}}$

where

$$L_p = L_{WL} \text{ but } \leq 150 \text{ m}$$

$x_{wl}$ ,  $L_{WL}$  and  $f_{Hs}$  are defined in 1.3.

3.4.4 The nominal wave limit height,  $H_w$ , above the design draft,  $T_x$ , is to be taken as:

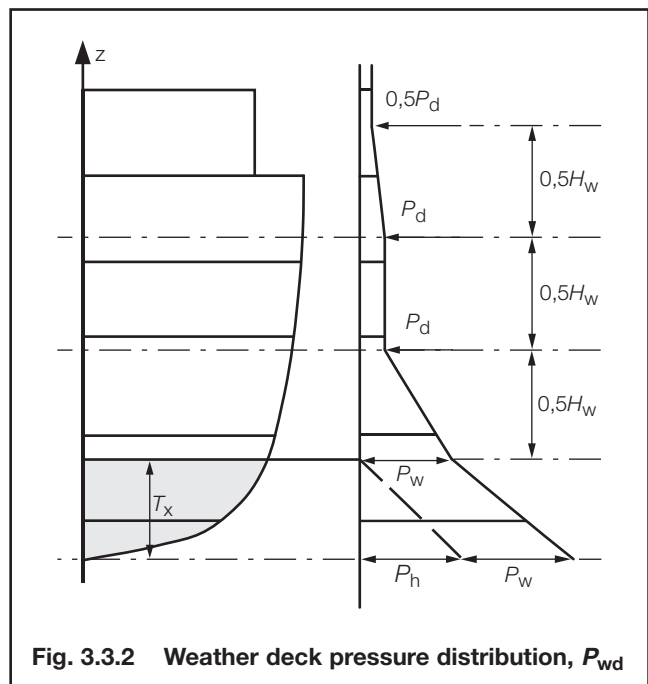
$$H_w = 2H_{rm} \text{ m}$$

where

$H_{rm}$  is given in Table 3.2.1.

## 3.5 Pressure on exposed and weather decks, $P_{wd}$

3.5.1 The pressure acting on weather decks, exposed decks or decks designed for prolonged immersion,  $P_{wd}$ , is illustrated in Fig. 3.3.2 and is to be taken as specified in Table 3.3.2.



**Fig. 3.3.2 Weather deck pressure distribution,  $P_{wd}$**

# Local Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 5, Chapter 3

Sections 3 & 4

**Table 3.3.2 Exposed/weather deck pressure,  $P_{wd}$**

| Vertical location<br>i.e., $z$ value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Exposed/weather deck<br>pressure, $P_{wd}$ kN/m <sup>2</sup> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| for $z \leq T_x + z_k$<br>i.e. up to the design waterline                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | $P_h + P_w$                                                  |
| At $z = T_x + z_k + 0,5H_w$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | $P_d$                                                        |
| At $z = T_x + z_k + 1,0H_w$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | $P_d$                                                        |
| At $z \geq T_x + z_k + 1,5H_w$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | $0,5P_d$                                                     |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                              |
| $P_h$ is the hydrostatic pressure, see 3.3<br>$P_w$ is the hydrodynamic wave pressure, see 3.4<br>$P_d$ is the weather deck pressure, see 3.5.2<br>$H_w$ is the nominal wave limit height, see 3.4.4<br>$P_h$ and $P_w$ are all taken at the appropriate vertical position, $z$<br>$T_x$ , $z$ and $z_k$ are defined in 1.3 |                                                              |
| NOTE<br>Pressure values at other $z$ values are to be derived by interpolation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                              |

3.5.2 The minimum design pressure for weather decks,  $P_d$ , above the  $0,5H_w$  limit line and below the  $1,0H_w$  limit line is to be taken as:

$$P_d = 6 + 6f_L f_{Hs} \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$$f_L = \text{a location factor}$$

$$= 1 + 4 \left( \frac{x_{wl}}{L_{WL}} - 0,75 \right)$$

but not less than 1,0

$L_{WL}$  and  $x_{wl}$  are defined in 1.3

$f_{Hs}$  is defined in 1.2.

3.5.3 If a bulwark is fitted at the deck edge then consideration will be given to allowing the height of the top of the bulwark to be used for the pressure calculation.

## Section 4 Impact loads on external plating

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 The effects of impact or slamming loads on the shell envelope are to be considered. This Section gives formulations for equivalent design pressure loads. Alternatively the impact pressure loads may be derived using suitable direct calculation methods.

4.1.2 The methods below produce average instantaneous impact pressures which need to be converted to equivalent static pressures by application of a dynamic load factor, see Pt 6, Ch 2,5 and Pt 6, Ch 3, Sections 14 and 15.

4.1.3 These methods are based on the Ochi-Motter slamming approach and are equivalent to the standard direct calculation procedure. The values of  $m_0$ , variance of the relative vertical motion, and  $m_1$ , variance of the relative vertical velocity, may be derived using direct calculations. In this case the variances are to be based on sea states as defined by the normal design assessment environmental criteria, see Ch 2,2.3.

### 4.2 Bottom impact pressure, $IP_{bi}$

4.2.1 The bottom impact pressure due to slamming,  $IP_{bi}$ , is to be derived using the method given below. This method will produce impact pressures over the whole of the under-water plating region:

$$IP_{bi} = 0,5k_{sl} V_{bs}^2 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$$k_{sl} = \text{hull form shape coefficient}$$

$$= \frac{\pi}{\tan \beta_p} \quad \text{for } \beta_p \geq 10$$

$$= 28 (1 - \tan(2\beta_p)) \quad \text{for } \beta_p < 10$$

$\beta_p$  = deadrise angle, in degrees, see Fig. 3.4.1

$V_{bs}$  = slamming velocity, in m/s, and is given by

$$= \sqrt{V_{th}^2 + 2m_1 \ln(N_{sl})} \quad \text{for } N_{sl} \geq 1$$

$$= 0 \quad \text{for } N_{sl} < 1$$

$V_{th}$  = threshold velocity for slamming, in m/s, to be taken as:

$$= \sqrt{10}$$

$N_{sl}$  = No. of slams in a 3 hour period and is given by

$$= 1720PR_{sl} \sqrt{\frac{m_1}{m_0}}$$

$PR_{sl}$  = probability of a slam and is given by

$$= e^{-u}$$

$$u = \left( \frac{z_{wl}^2}{2m_0} + \frac{V_{th}^2}{2m_1} \right)$$

$z_{wl}$  = distance of the centroid of the area of plating or stiffener to the local design waterline

$$= z - (T_x + z_k)$$

$m_1$  = variance of the relative vertical velocity

$$= 0,25 (\omega_e f_{sl} H_r m)^2$$

$m_0$  = variance of the relative vertical motion

$$= 0,25 (f_{sl} H_r m)^2$$

$\omega$  = effective wave frequency based on 80 per cent ship length

$$= \sqrt{\frac{2\pi g}{0,8L_{WL}}}$$

$\omega_e$  = effective encounter wave frequency

$$= \omega \left( 1 + \frac{0,2\omega V_{sp}}{g} \right)$$

$H_r m$  = relative vertical motion based on  $V_{sp}$ , see Table 3.2.1

$f_{sl}$  = probability level correction factor for relative vertical motion

$$= 1,0$$

$V_{sp}$ ,  $z$ ,  $z_k$  and  $T_x$  are defined in 1.3

See Fig. 3.4.1.

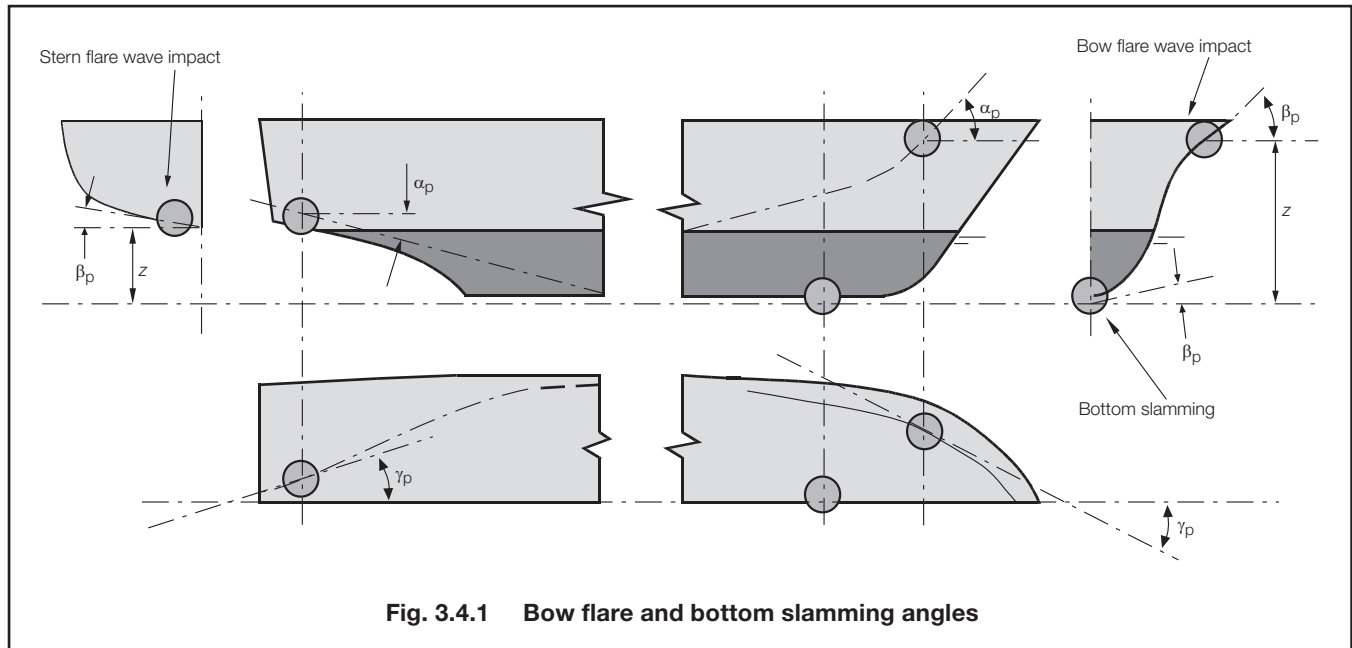


Fig. 3.4.1 Bow flare and bottom slamming angles

4.2.2 For the purposes of deriving the dynamic load factor, the rise time of the impact pressure may be taken as:

$$t_r = \frac{1}{4 \sqrt{IP_{bi}}} \text{ seconds}$$

It is assumed that the impact pressure may be represented by a triangular pulse load.

### 4.3 Bow flare and wave impact pressures, $IP_{bf}$

4.3.1 This Section is applicable to:

- (a) Bow flare region.
- (b) Sides and undersides of sponsons.
- (c) Other parts of the side shell plating close to and above the design waterline that are expected to be subjected to wave impact pressures.

The bow flare wave impact pressure, wave impact pressure on sponsons and other parts of the side shell plating above the design waterline,  $IP_{bf}$ , in  $\text{kN/m}^2$ , due to relative motion is to be taken as:

$$IP_{bf} = 0,5 (k_{bf} V_{bf}^2 + k_{rv} H_{rv} V_{rv}^2) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$k_{bf}$  = hull form shape coefficient for wave impacts

$$= \frac{\pi}{\tan \psi} \quad \text{for } \psi \geq 10$$

$$= 28 (1 - \tan(2\psi)) \quad \text{for } \psi < 10$$

$V_{bf}$  = wave impact velocity, in m/s, and is given by

$$= \sqrt{V_{thbf}^2 + 2m_1 \ln(N_{bf})} \quad \text{for } N_{bf} \geq 1$$

$$= 0 \quad \text{for } N_{bf} < 1$$

$V_{thbf}$  = threshold velocity for wave impact, in m/s, to be taken as:

$$= \frac{\sqrt{10}}{\cos \alpha_p}$$

$N_{bf}$  = No. of wave impacts in a 3 hour period and is given by

$$= 1720 PR_{bf} \sqrt{\frac{m_1}{m_0}}$$

$PR_{bf}$  = probability of a wave impact and is given by

$$= e^{-u}$$

$$u = \left( \frac{z_{wl}^2}{2m_0} + \frac{V_{thbf}^2}{2m_1} \right)$$

$k_{rv}$  = hull form shape coefficient for impact due to forward speed

$$= \frac{\pi}{\tan(90 - \alpha_p)} \quad \text{for } \alpha_p \leq 80$$

$$= 28 (1 - \tan(2(90 - \alpha_p))) \quad \text{for } \alpha_p > 80$$

$H_{rv}$  = relative wave heading coefficient

$$= 1,0 \quad \text{for } \gamma_p \geq 45$$

$$= \cos(45 - \gamma_p) \quad \text{for } \gamma_p < 45 \text{ and } \geq 0$$

$$= 0 \quad \text{for } \gamma_p < 0$$

$V_{rv}$  = relative forward speed, in m/s

$$= 0,515 V_{sp} \sin(\gamma_p)$$

$\alpha_p$  = buttock angle measured in the longitudinal plane, in degrees, see Fig. 3.4.1

$\psi$  = effective deadrise angle, in degrees

For  $C_b > 0,6$ ,  $\psi$  is to be taken as the maximum of  $\alpha_p$  and  $\beta_p$ , see Fig. 3.4.1

For  $C_b \leq 0,6$ ,  $\psi$  is to be taken as the maximum of  $\alpha_p$  and  $\beta$  where

$$\beta = \beta_p - 10^\circ, \text{ but is to be taken as not less than } 0^\circ$$

NOTE

The  $10^\circ$  deduction is to allow for the effects of roll motion on the impact pressures.

$\gamma_p$  = waterline angle measured in the horizontal plane, in degrees, see Fig. 3.4.1

$C_b$  = Block coefficient as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5

$z_{wl}$ ,  $m_1$ ,  $m_0$  are defined in 4.2 but are to be calculated using:



# Local Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 5, Chapter 3

Sections 4 &amp; 5

- $f_{sl}$  = probability level correction factor for relative vertical motion  
 = 1,0 for ships  $C_b \leq 0,6$   
 = 1,2 for ships  $C_b > 0,6$

## NOTES

Where only two angles are known and are measured in the orthogonal planes, then the third angle may be obtained by the following expression:

$$\alpha_p = \tan^{-1} (\tan \beta_p \tan \gamma)$$

If the area of plating under consideration has a waterline angle which is re-entrant or decreasing, e.g. in the stern region, then the relative wave heading coefficient,  $H_{rv}$ , and the speed  $V_{sp}$ , used in the derivation of  $H_{rm}$ , are to be taken as zero.  $V_{sp}$  is defined in 1.3.1.

4.3.2 For the purposes of deriving the dynamic load factor, the rise time of the wave impact pressure may be taken as:

$$t_r = \frac{1}{4\sqrt{IP_{bf}}} \text{ seconds}$$

It is assumed that the wave impact pressure may be represented by a triangular pulse load.

4.3.3 The extents around the girth of the bow flare wave impact pressure are to be derived as follows:

(a) the vertical slam extent,  $g_{bfv}$ , is to be taken as:

$$g_{bfv} = \frac{4}{\sin \psi \sqrt{8k_{bf}}} \text{ m}$$

(b) the horizontal slam extent,  $g_{bfh}$ , is to be taken as:

$$g_{bfh} = 4 \text{ m}$$

where

$k_{bf}$  and  $\psi$  are given in 4.3.1.

## 4.4 Impact loads on deckhouses and superstructures

4.4.1 Normally, it may be assumed that the equivalent static pressure loads given in 5.5 make due allowance for impact loads on deckhouse fronts and sides.

## 4.5 Bottom impact pressure for ships operating in the planing regime

4.5.1 The equivalent static bottom impact pressure due to slamming,  $P_{dl}$ , at the LCG for mono-hull planing hull forms is given by the following expression:

$$P_{dl} = \frac{k_{dl} \Delta f_{dl} (1 + a_{op})}{L_{WL} G_o} \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$G_o$  = support girth or girth distance, in metres, as defined in Table 3.4.1

$L_{WL}$  = waterline length, in metres, see 1.3.1

$a_{op}$  = vertical acceleration as defined in 2.4

$k_{dl}$  = hull form pressure factor  
 = 54

For craft in continuous contact with water:

$$f_{dl} = 0,5 \text{ for } x = 0,0L_{WL}$$

$$= 1,0 \text{ for } x = 0,5L_{WL}$$

$$= 1,0 \text{ for } x = 0,75L_{WL}$$

$$= 0,5 \text{ for } x = 1,0L_{WL}$$

Intermediate values to be determined by linear interpolation. Otherwise  $f_{dl} = 1,0$ .

**Table 3.4.1 Definition of  $G_o$  for the determination of bottom impact pressure,  $P_{dl}$ , for different regions**

| Bottom shell region                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | $G_o$                  |                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Hull forms with chines | Hull forms without chines |
| Between tangential points or chines                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | $G_s$                  | $G_s$                     |
| Between tangential points and design waterline                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | —                      | $G_{WL}$                  |
| NOTES<br>1. $G_s$ = support girth, in metres. This is the girth distance measured between the bilge tangential points or chines at the LCG. The bilge tangential point is defined as the point where a line 50° above the horizontal touches the bilge plating, see Fig. 3.2.1.<br>2. $G_{WL}$ = girth distance, in metres, measured between the waterlines on either side of a hull at the LCG. |                        |                           |

## Section 5

## Local design loads for decks and bulkheads

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 This Section gives formulations for design pressure loads for decks, watertight and deep tank boundaries including decks and bulkheads.

5.1.2 The loads acting on the deck structures are to reflect the intended purpose for each deck. If it is envisaged that the role of the ship will be such that it may be used for emergency evacuation incidents or similar situations, then the appropriate design loads are to be considered in the assessment. The maximum permissible deck loading are to be recorded in the Operations Manual or Stability Information Book.

5.1.3 Bulkheads and decks forming the boundary of tanks are to be assessed in accordance with the requirements for deep tanks using the loads defined in 5.8 and 5.9 or the maximum load experienced in service, e.g. from RAS operations, whichever is the greater. For an open system the pressure height may be taken from the keel to the filling point open to the atmosphere.

## 5.2 Pressure on external decks

5.2.1 The standard pressure requirements for external decks are given in 3.5. If the deck is also to be used for cargo, heavy equipment or similar, then the loads specified in 5.4 are also to be applied. Consideration will be given to a reduction in the weather deck pressure loading if it can be shown that the cargo or equipment stowage makes the weather deck pressure requirements conservative.

## 5.3 Pressure on internal decks, $P_{in}$

5.3.1 The pressure acting on internal decks,  $P_{in}$ , not subject to cargo or heavy equipment loads is to be taken as:

- $P_{in} = 5 \text{ kN/m}^2$  for accommodation spaces
- $P_{in} = 7,5 \text{ kN/m}^2$  for main evacuation routes
- $P_{in} = 10 \text{ kN/m}^2$  for workshop spaces
- $P_{in} = 20 \text{ kN/m}^2$  for store spaces.

5.3.2 Alternatively the design pressure is to be based on the static loading on the deck with due allowance for inertial effects as follows:

$$P_{in} = W_{in} (1 + a_z) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where the following values of static pressure are to be assumed

- $W_{in} = 3 \text{ kN/m}^2$  for accommodation spaces
- $W_{in} = 6 \text{ kN/m}^2$  for workshop spaces
- $W_{in} = 12 \text{ kN/m}^2$  for store spaces
- $a_z$  is defined in 2.3.2.

5.3.3 The hydrostatic design pressure for decks specified as watertight by the Naval Authority shall be taken as that determined by the damage stability analysis and limit of watertight integrity.

5.3.4 The static design pressure for internal decks not specified as watertight may be provided by the designer.

## 5.4 Loads for decks designed for cargo or heavy equipment loads, $P_{cd}$ and $W_{cd}$

5.4.1 Where the load applied to the deck can be considered as uniformly distributed, the cargo deck design pressure,  $P_{cd}$ , is to be taken as:

$$P_{cd} = W_{cd} (1 + a_z) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

- $a_z$  is the non dimensional vertical acceleration given in 2.3.2
- $W_{cd}$  is the static pressure exerted by the cargo on the deck as specified by the designer in  $\text{kN/m}^2$ .

5.4.2 Where the load applied to the deck is not uniformly distributed, the likely actual forces and force distribution over the deck must be considered. The forces are to include the following if appropriate:

- gravity
- inertial forces due to ship motion
- wind loads
- forces imposed by the securing arrangements
- wave impact loads
- icing loads

$$F_{cd} = W_{ma} (1 + a_z) \text{ kN}$$

where

$W_{ma}$  is the weight of each mass item on the deck as specified by the designer in kN.

## 5.5 Loads for deckhouses, bulwarks and superstructures, $P_{dh}$

5.5.1 The design normal pressure,  $P_{dh}$ , for the side, front and back panels of plating and stiffeners for deckhouses, bulwarks and superstructures is given by:

$$P_{dh} = C_1 P_s \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

- $C_1 = 1,25C_2$  for exposed deckhouse fronts and superstructure fronts forward of  $0,67L_R$
- $= 1,15C_2$  for exposed deckhouse fronts and superstructure fronts aft of  $0,67L_R$
- $= 1,15$  for exposed machinery casings
- $= 0,8$  for the side and back panels of deckhouses that are stepped in from the deck edge by 1,0 m or more which are also above the nominal wave limit height,  $H_w$ , see 3.4.4
- $= 0,5$  for non-exposed deckhouse and superstructure fronts, sides and backs which are also above the nominal wave limit height
- $= 1,0$  elsewhere
- $P_s$  is to be taken at the height of the deck supporting the deckhouse front, side or back panel under consideration,  $P_s$  is defined in 3.2
- $C_2 = 1,2$  for panels below the nominal wave limit height
- $= 1,0$  elsewhere

Typical values of  $C_1$  are shown in Fig. 3.5.1

Where there is more than one deckhouse, the front of the most forward deckhouse will normally be considered exposed, whereas the back of this deckhouse will be non-exposed. Normally, the front of the deckhouse aft of this one will also be considered non-exposed.

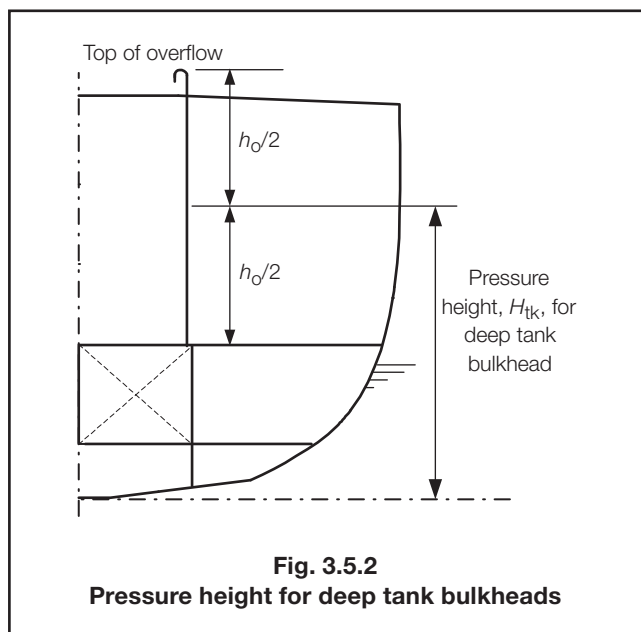
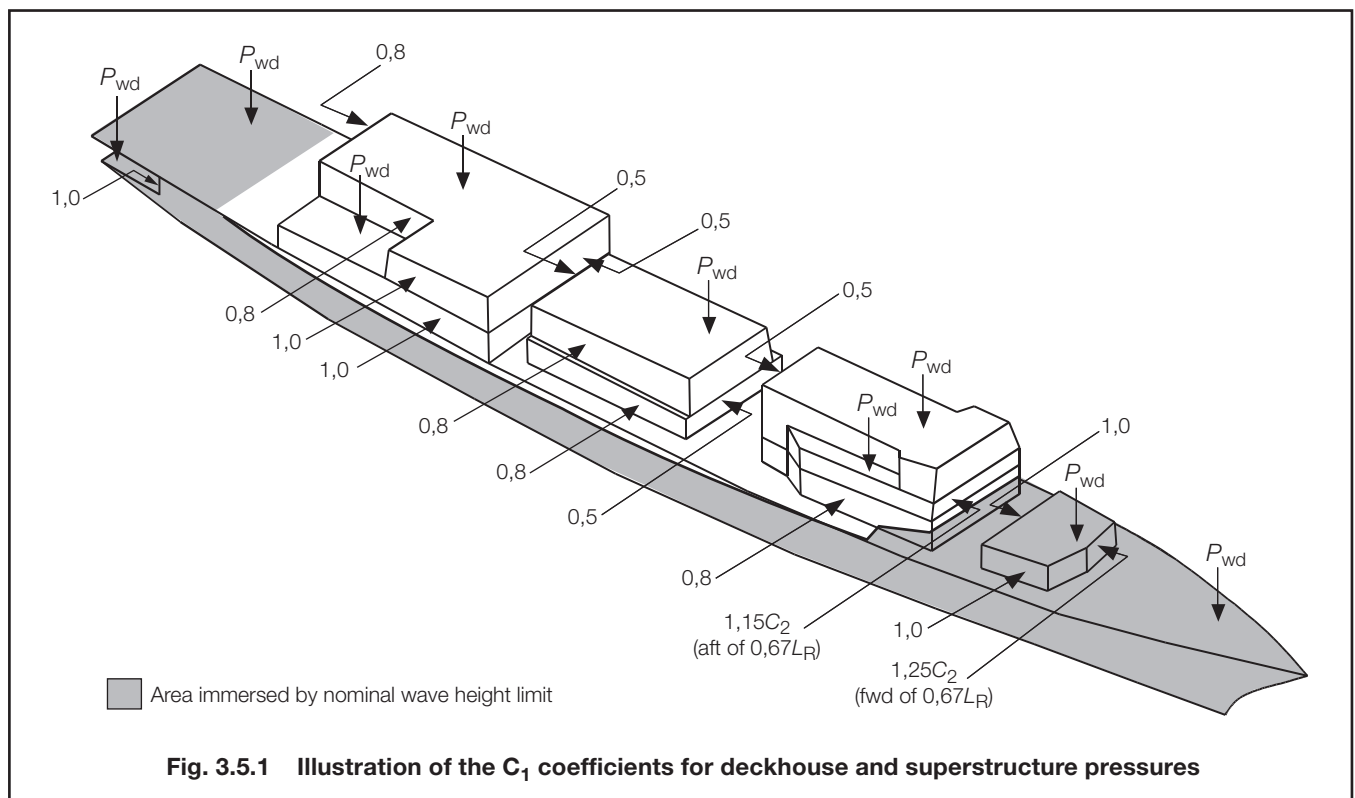
## 5.6 Pressure height for deep tank bulkheads and boundaries, $H_{tk}$

5.6.1 The design lateral pressure height for tank and deep tank bulkheads and boundaries,  $H_{tk}$ , is to be taken as

$H_{tk}$  = the distance, in m, from the baseline to half the distance from the top of the tank to the top of the overflow. For determination of the maximum head, the top of the overflow is to be taken as not less than 1,8 m above the crown of the tank, see Fig. 3.5.2.

5.6.2 For tanks which are connected to a filling tank system,  $H_{tk}$  may be taken as the distance, in m, from the baseline to the highest point of the overflow pipe from the filling tank into the overflow tank. Consideration may need to be given to the pressure height for situations where any of the valves in the filling system may be closed. The transfer pump must feed only into the filling tank and must not be linked directly to the tanks.





5.6.3 In a filling tank system, suitable measures are to be provided such that the maximum design level in the system cannot be exceeded. Automatic shutdown measures are to ensure a fail-safe arrangement to avoid overfilling the filling tank or the overflow tank. The overflow pipe is to be of sufficient size to ensure that the filling trunk is not overfilled.

## 5.7 Pressure height for watertight bulkheads and boundaries, $H_{da}$

5.7.1 The design lateral pressure height for watertight bulkheads and boundaries,  $H_{da}$ , is to be taken as

- (a) for a watertight bulkhead design philosophy based on a SOLAS type approach, i.e. to the top of a watertight bulkhead deck or freeboard deck, see Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.3.3.2 and illustrated in Fig. 2.1.1(b) in Pt 3, Ch 2.

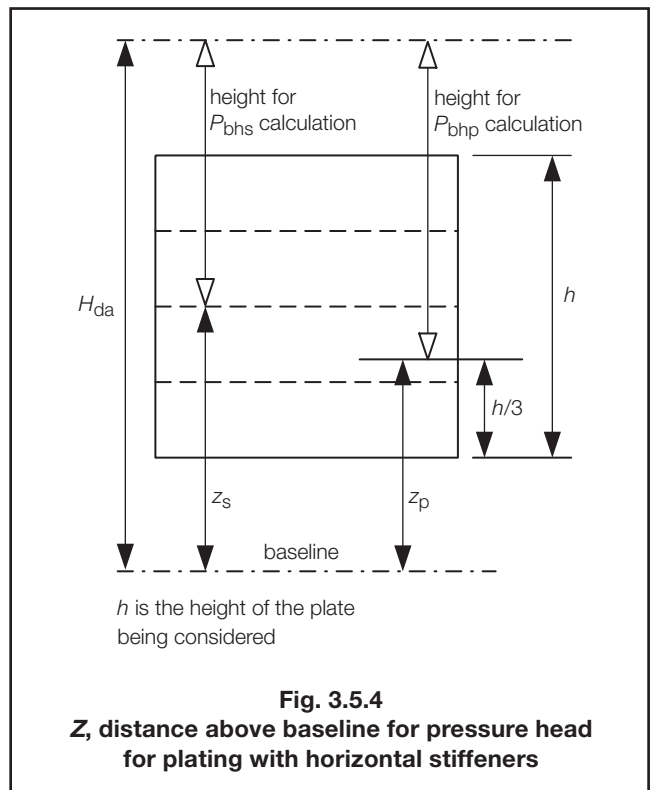
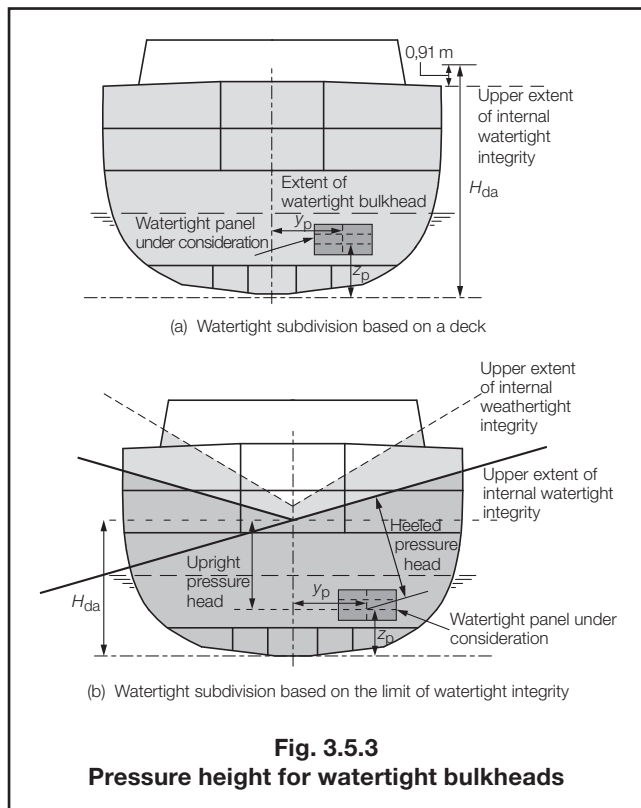
$H_{da}$  = the vertical distance, in m, from baseline to a line 0,91 m above the top of the watertight bulkhead at side, see Fig. 3.5.3(a).

- (b) for a watertight bulkhead design philosophy based on a standard which requires a damaged stability draft and heel envelope approach, e.g. the red risk line approach, see Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.3.3.3 and illustrated in Fig. 2.1.2(b) in Pt 3, Ch 2.

$H_{da}$  = the distance, in m, from baseline to the damaged stability draft envelope at the centreline, see Fig. 3.5.3(b).

### NOTE

The effect of lesser angles of heel in the damage situation may lead to an increase in the effective pressure height, especially in way of the forward end of the ship where it may be necessary to consider  $H_{da}$  based on a zero heel angle.



## 5.8 Design pressures for watertight and deep tank bulkheads and boundaries

5.8.1 The design normal pressure for bulkhead plating with stiffeners is to be considered separately for the plating and the stiffeners. The design normal pressure for the plating,  $P_{bhp}$ , is to be taken as follows:

Deep Tank

$$\rho g (H_{tk} - z_p) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

WT sub-division based on the head normal to the line of watertight integrity

maximum of

$$10 ((H_{da} - z_p) \cos \theta + y_p \sin \theta) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$10 (H_{da} - z_p) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$\rho$  = density of fluid, in tonnes/m<sup>3</sup>, and is not to be taken as less than 1,025

$z_p$  = distance above the baseline of a point one-third of the height, above the lower edge, of the plate strake under consideration.  $z_p$  is illustrated in Fig. 3.5.4 for horizontally stiffened plating and 3.5.5 for vertically stiffened plating

$y_p$  = distance from the centreline to the mid-breadth of the plate strake under consideration.  $y_p$  is always to be taken as positive

$\theta$  = the stipulated damaged stability heel angle, see also Pt 3, Ch 2, 1.3. For a SOLAS type approach,  $\theta$  is normally to be taken as 0,0.

5.8.2 The design normal pressure for the stiffener,  $P_{bhs}$ , is to be taken as follows:

Deep Tank

$$\rho g (H_{tk} - z_s) \text{ kN/m}^2 \text{ (Deep Tank)}$$

WT sub-division

maximum of:

$$10 ((H_{da} - z_s) \cos \theta + y_s \sin \theta) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

$$10 (H_{da} - z_s) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$z_s$  = distance above baseline of the mid span of the vertical stiffener under consideration, see Fig. 3.5.5

or

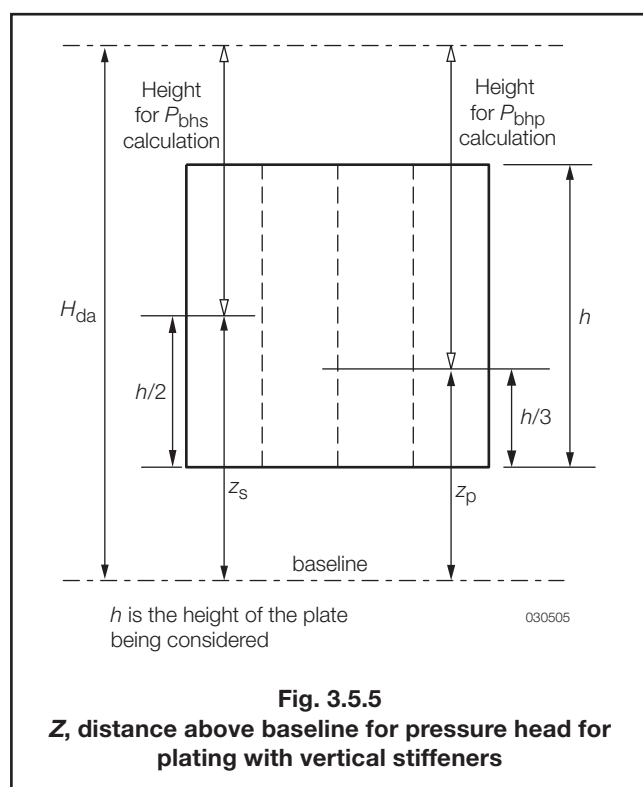
$z_s$  = distance above baseline of the mid span of the horizontal stiffener under consideration, see Fig. 3.5.4

$y_s$  = distance from the centreline to the mid span of the stiffener under consideration.  $y_s$  is always to be taken as positive

$\rho$  = density of fluid, in tonnes/m<sup>3</sup>, and is not to be taken as less than 1,025.

5.8.3 The appropriate design criteria are to be applied to the bulkhead plating and stiffeners, see Pt 6, Ch 5. It is not permissible to use watertight criteria for a deep tank design head.

5.8.4 The design impulse pressure,  $IP_{bh}$ , for the bulkhead plating and stiffeners may be ignored, unless these members are likely to be subjected to significant sloshing loads or similar. In this case it will be necessary to determine the sloshing loads using a suitable direct calculation procedure.



## 5.9 Design pressures for collision bulkheads

5.9.1 The design lateral pressure height for collision bulkheads,  $H_{cb}$ , is to be taken as:

$H_{cb}$  = the vertical distance, in metres, from the baseline to 0,91 m above the uppermost point of the collision bulkhead.

5.9.2 The design normal pressure for the collision bulkhead plating,  $P_{bhp}$ , is to be taken as:

$$P_{bhp} = 10 (H_{cb} - z_p) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$z_p$  = distance above baseline of a point one third of the height, above the lower edge, of the plate strake under consideration.

5.9.3 The design normal pressure for bulkhead stiffeners,  $P_{bhs}$ , is to be taken as:

$$P_{bhs} = 10 (H_{cb} - z_s) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$z_s$  = distance above base of the mid-span of the vertical stiffener under consideration, see Fig. 3.5.5

or

$z_s$  = distance above base of the mid-span of the horizontal stiffener under consideration, see Fig. 3.5.4.

5.9.4 The collision bulkheads are to be designed to the deep tank design criteria specified in Pt 6, Ch 5.

5.9.5 If there is a design requirement for the ship to be able to remain operational after an incident which results in the collision bulkhead becoming the primary watertight boundary to the sea, then it will be necessary to design the collision bulkhead using the pressures for the shell envelope,  $P_s$ , given in Section 3 and the shell envelope design criteria. It will also be necessary to consider the effects of wave impact pressures, see 4.3, using the design speed requirement after damage.

## 5.10 Design loads for RSA notation assessment

5.10.1 The capability of transverse bulkheads, longitudinal bulkheads, watertight decks and other structure to withstand any additional loads as a consequence of damage, e.g. sloshing loads on watertight bulkheads, may need to be specially considered. Pressure heads consistent with draughts and heel angles determined from the damage stability analyses are to be used for local scantling assessment.

5.10.2 Where the Naval Authority requires watertight boundaries for damage control purposes, the nominated decks are to be assigned as watertight boundaries, see Pt 6, Ch 3,10. The pressure heads used in the assessment of damage control decks are to be the greater of that determined from the Rules or that specified by the Naval Authority.

5.10.3 The local design loads for structures subjected to additional loading as a consequence of structural damage are to be taken as specified in this Chapter except that the wave height factor,  $f_{Hs}$ , may be reduced, to account for the lesser environmental requirements, as follows:

$f_{Hs}$  may be reduced by a factor of 1,85

where

$f_{Hs}$  is defined in 1.2.

5.10.4 Where local strength issues need to be considered, the following local loads are to be applied in the evaluation contained in Pt 6, Ch 4,4.1:

- Hydrostatic load due to flooding taking account of the increase in local draft.
- Wave and inertial loads in the damaged condition, derived using the reduction factor given in 5.10.3.
- Local loads on watertight divisions as a consequence of flooding. For the evaluation of local loads on watertight divisions, the standard design pressure,  $H_{da}$  (see 5.7) may be applied. Alternatively the external hydrostatic and wave pressure load,  $P_s$ , may be applied using the reduction factor given in 5.10.3.
- Wave impact loads need not be considered unless a significant operational requirement is necessary following damage.

# Local Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 5, Chapter 3

Sections 5 & 6

## 5.11 Design pressure for magazine decks and bulkheads

5.11.1 For magazine structure which is assessed in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1,6.4 the quasi-static design pressure is to be taken as follows:

$$P_{\text{mag}} = 2,25 \left( \frac{W_e}{V} \right)^{0,72} \times 10^3 \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$W_e$  = weapon equivalent weight of TNT, in kg  
 $V$  = free compartment volume, in m<sup>3</sup>.

5.11.2 For magazines below the limit of watertight integrity the design pressure,  $P_{\text{mag}}$ , is not to be taken as less than the design pressure for watertight bulkheads and boundaries, plating and stiffening, see 5.8.

## Section 6 Other local loads

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 This Section gives formulations for design pressure loads for shell closing appliances and requirements for gravity and inertial loads due to equipment, payload, cargo, etc., acting on ramps and lifting appliances.

### 6.2 Loads for ramps and lifts, $P_{\text{ra}}$

6.2.1 The loads acting on ramps and lifts intended to be used at sea,  $P_{\text{ra}}$ , is to be derived as follows:

$$P_{\text{ra}} = W_{\text{cd}} (1 + f_d (a_z + a_{\text{ra}})) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$W_{\text{cd}}$  is the equivalent static pressure exerted by the cargo on the ramp or lift as specified by the designer in kN/m<sup>2</sup>

$a_z$  is the non dimensional vertical acceleration given in 2.3.2

$a_{\text{ra}}$  = maximum acceleration of the lift, see 2.3

$f_d$  = duty factor for the lift or ramp  
 = 2,0 for operation with personnel  
 = 1,5 otherwise.

6.2.2 If the hoisting speed of the ramp or lift is such that the acceleration of the lift will cause an increase in the forces acting on the lift, then this acceleration term should be included.

6.2.3 Where the lift or ramp is designed to operate totally or partially under water, then due consideration is to be taken of the additional forces applied to the lift or ramp as a direct consequence of the water environment, e.g., added mass and velocity dependent damping forces.

## 6.3 Loads for windows and side lights in the shell envelope, $P_{\text{wi}}$

6.3.1 The design normal pressure,  $P_{\text{wi}}$ , for windows and side lights in deckhouses and superstructures is given by:

$$P_{\text{wi}} = W_1 P_s \text{ kN/m}^2$$

In no case is the design pressure for windows to be taken less than  $P_{\text{wi,min}}$  as given by:

$$P_{\text{wi,min}} = W_1 (10 + 0,04L_R) \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$$W_1 = 1,33C_1$$

$z$  = vertical distance, in metres, from baseline to the structural element being considered

$P_s$  is to be taken at the height of the deck below the side light, see 3.2

$C_1$  is defined in 5.5.1

$D$  and  $T$  are defined in 1.3.

## 6.4 Loads for masts

6.4.1 The inertia forces resulting from the motions of the ship are to be calculated in accordance with Section 2 and combined with the wind force defined below acting in the most onerous direction for the case being considered.

6.4.2 Where applicable the additional inertia forces due to ice accretion are to be derived in accordance with Ch 2,4.6 and included in the calculations.

6.4.3 The wind pressure,  $p$ , acting on the structure is given by:

$$p = \frac{V^2}{1630} \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$V$  = wind speed, in m/s. To be taken as 63 m/s unless otherwise specified.

6.4.4 The wind force,  $F_w$ , on the mast structure is given by:

$$F_w = A p C_f \text{ kN}$$

where

$A$  = the effective area of the structure concerned, i.e. the solid area projected on to a plane perpendicular to the wind direction, in m<sup>2</sup>

$p$  = wind pressure, in N/m<sup>2</sup>

$C_f$  = force coefficient in the direction of the wind, as defined in Table 3.6.1.

## Local Design Loads

## Volume 1, Part 5, Chapter 3

Sections 6 &amp; 7

Table 3.6.1 Force coefficient ( $C_f$ )

| Type                                                                                                                                                                                   | Description                                                                                                    | Aerodynamic slenderness $l/b$ or $l/D$ |      |      |      |      |      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                | 5                                      | 10   | 20   | 30   | 40   | 50   |
| Individual members                                                                                                                                                                     | Rolled sections, rectangles, hollow sections, flat plates, box sections with $b$ or $d$ less than 0,5 m        | 1,30                                   | 1,35 | 1,60 | 1,65 | 1,70 | 1,80 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                        | Circular sections, where<br>$DV_s < 6 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}$<br>$DV_s \geq 6 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}$<br><br>$b/d$ | 0,75                                   | 0,80 | 0,90 | 0,95 | 1,00 | 1,10 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                | 0,60                                   | 0,65 | 0,70 | 0,70 | 0,75 | 0,80 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                        | Box sections with $b$ or $d$ greater than 0,5 m                                                                | $\geq 2,00$                            | 1,55 | 1,75 | 1,95 | 2,10 | 2,20 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                | 1,00                                   | 1,40 | 1,55 | 1,75 | 1,85 | 1,90 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                | 0,50                                   | 1,00 | 1,20 | 1,30 | 1,35 | 1,40 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                        | 0,25                                                                                                           | 0,80                                   | 0,90 | 0,90 | 1,00 | 1,00 |      |
| Single lattice frames                                                                                                                                                                  | Flat sided sections                                                                                            | 1,70                                   |      |      |      |      |      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                        | Circular sections, where<br>$DV_s < 6 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}$<br>$DV_s \geq 6 \text{ m}^2/\text{s}$              | 1,20<br>0,80                           |      |      |      |      |      |
| Plated structure                                                                                                                                                                       | Plated structures on ground or solid base<br>(air flow beneath structure prevented)                            | 1,10                                   |      |      |      |      |      |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                |                                        |      |      |      |      |      |
| $l$ = height of mast, in metres<br>$D$ = diameter of mast, in metres<br>$V_s$ = wind speed, in m/s<br>$b$ = breadth of box section, in metres<br>$d$ = depth of box section, in metres |                                                                                                                |                                        |      |      |      |      |      |

## Section 7

### Ice loads

#### 7.1 General

7.1.1 A half or full icing allowance in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 2,4 is to be included in the local load calculations of plating and stiffed panels of ships that are required to operate for extended periods in areas where ice accretion is expected.



## Section

|   |                                            |
|---|--------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <b>General</b>                             |
| 2 | <b>Still water global loads</b>            |
| 3 | <b>Global hull girder loads</b>            |
| 4 | <b>Extreme hull girder loads</b>           |
| 5 | <b>Residual strength hull girder loads</b> |
| 6 | <b>Loading guidance information</b>        |

## ■ Section 1 General

### 1.1 Introduction

1.1.1 The global design loads detailed in this Chapter are to be used in conjunction with Part 6 to determine the global hull strength requirements. The application of the global design loads is given in Pt 6, Ch 4.

1.1.2 Flowcharts showing the procedures for the specification of the global design loads are shown in Fig. 4.1.1.

1.1.3 The global design loads are divided into the following categories:

(a) Hull girder loads.

The types of hull girder loads which are to be considered for strength purposes in the initial design assessment are distinguished on the basis of their frequency of occurrence and are defined as follows:

- (i) Still water shear forces and associated bending moments arising from static mass distribution and buoyancy forces, see Section 2.
- (ii) Low frequency vertical wave shear forces and associated bending moments arising from hydrodynamic forces.
- (iii) High frequency dynamic shear forces and associated bending moments arising from slamming events.

The derivation of the hull girder loads is given in Section 3.

(b) Extreme hull girder loads.

The loads to be considered for extreme hull girder strength purposes are used to assess the hull girder structural capability to withstand extreme sea states. The derivation of the extreme hull girder loads is given in Section 4.

(c) Hull girder loads for residual strength assessment.

The loads to be considered for residual strength purposes are used to assess the structural capability of the ship after damage to withstand moderately severe sea states. The derivation of the residual strength hull girder loads is given in Section 5.

1.1.4 Alternative methods of establishing the global load and design criteria will be specially considered, provided that they are based on model tests, full scale measurements or other generally accepted theories. In such cases, full details of the methods used and the results are to be provided when plans are submitted for approval.

### 1.2 Definitions and symbols

1.2.1  $L_R$ ,  $B$ ,  $B_{WL}$ ,  $D$  and  $T$  are defined in Pt 3, Ch 1.5.  $F_n$  and  $\Delta$  are defined in Ch 3, 1.3.2 and Ch 3, 1.3.1 respectively. Displacement mode and non-displacement mode are defined in Ch 3, 1.3.

1.2.2 For longitudinal strength calculations of vertical shear force and bending moment, downward loads are to be taken as positive values and are to be integrated in the forward direction from the aft end of the ship. Shear force is positive when the algebraic sum of all vertical forces aft of the position is positive. Hogging bending moments are to be taken as positive values.

### 1.3 Direct calculation procedures

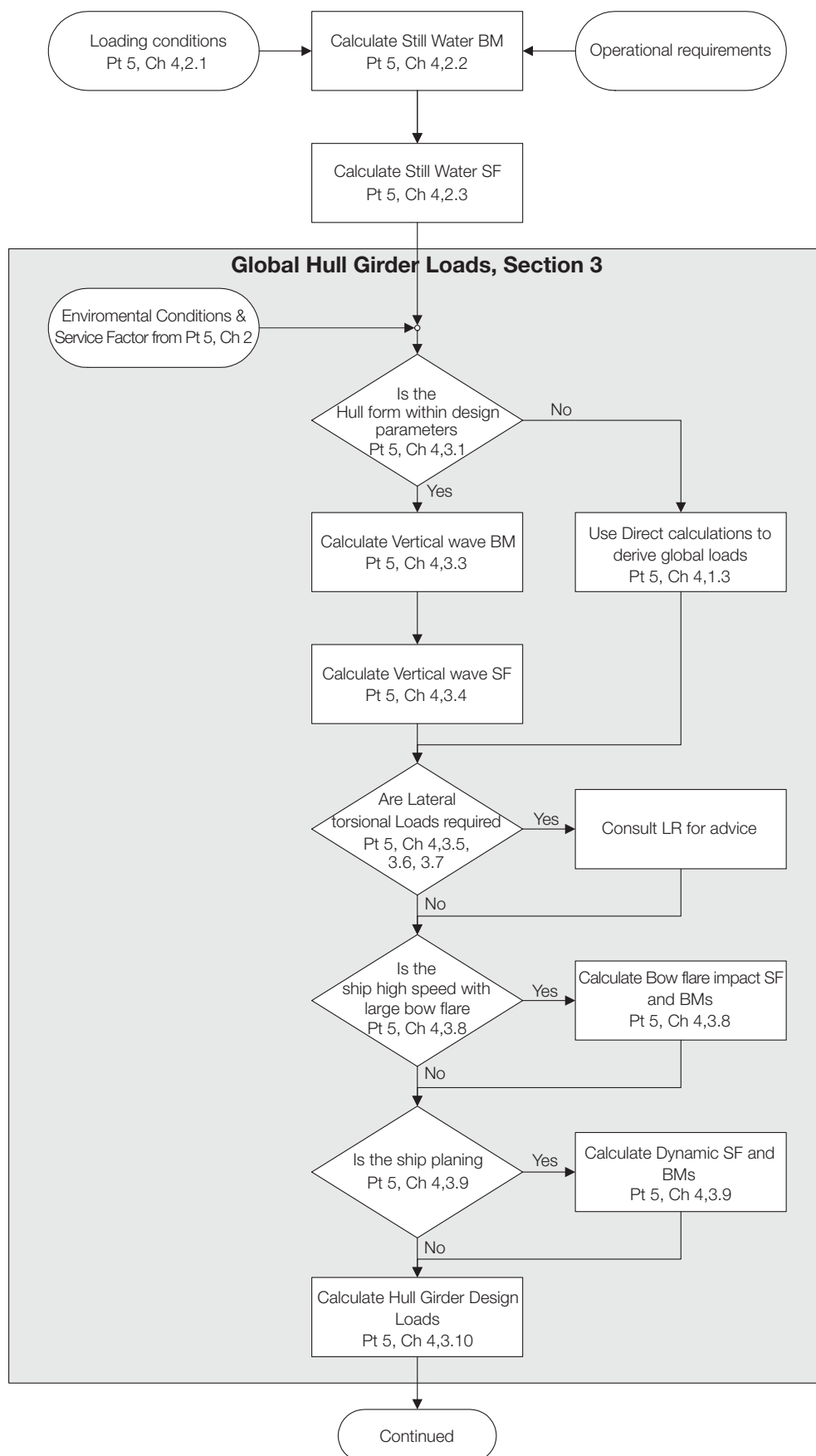
1.3.1 The still water longitudinal strength values are to be derived using a suitable longitudinal strength calculation system.

1.3.2 In direct calculation procedures capable of deriving the wave induced loads on the ship account is to be taken of the ship's actual form and weight distribution.

1.3.3 Lloyd's Register's (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') direct calculation method of the long term wave induced loads involves derivation of response to regular waves by strip theory, short-term response to irregular waves using the sea spectrum concept, and long-term response predictions using statistical distributions of sea states. Other direct calculation methods submitted for approval are normally to contain these three elements and produce similar and consistent results when compared with LR's methods.

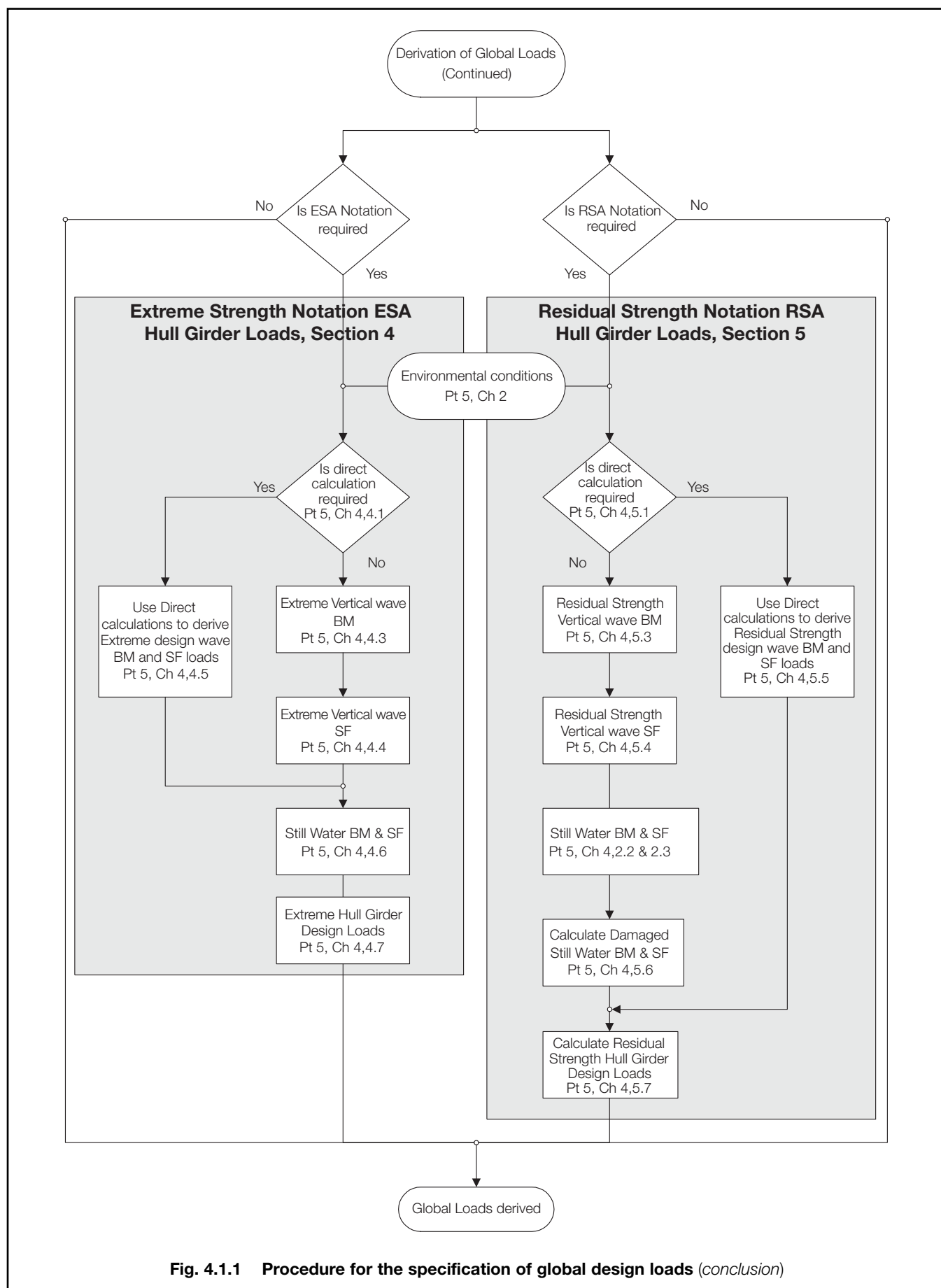
1.3.4 The long term response predictions are to be based on probability of  $10^{-8}$ . The LR long term prediction method produces values which have a low statistical probability of occurring taking into account many factors. These factors include:

- The operating life of the vessel, normally the operating life is taken as 20 years which is assumed to correspond to  $10^8$  wave encounters.
- The mission profile of the vessel.
- Different loading conditions.
- The effect of different wave headings on ship motions.



**Fig. 4.1.1 Procedure for the specification of global design loads** (see continuation)





## 1.4 Information required

1.4.1 In order that an assessment of the longitudinal strength requirements can be made, the following information is to be submitted, in LR's standard format where appropriate:

- (a) General arrangement and capacity plan or list showing details of the volume and position of centre of gravity of all tanks, spaces and compartments.
- (b) Bonjean data, in the form of tables or curves, for at least 21 equally spaced stations along the hull together with a lines plan and/or tables of offsets.
- (c) Details of the calculated lightweight and its distribution.
- (d) Details of the weights and centres of gravity of all dead-weight items for each of the main loading conditions.
- (e) Calculated still water bending moments and shear forces and the proposed design envelopes. Calculated wave and dynamic bending moment and shear force values.

1.4.2 It is recommended that this information be submitted in the form of a preliminary Loading Manual or Stability Information Book including: specification of operational requirements, hydrostatic data, details of loading conditions, etc. It may also be necessary to submit a summary of the damage stability analysis.

## ■ Section 2 Still water global loads

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 The still water bending moments and shear force distributions are to be derived using a suitable direct calculation method for a range of loading conditions which cover the operational envelope of the ship.

2.1.2 In general, loading conditions based on amount of fuel, fresh water, stores and payload at departure, arrival and during special operations are to be considered. Loading conditions representing special operational requirements are also to be considered.

2.1.3 As a minimum the following conditions are to be considered in deriving the maximum hogging and sagging still water bending moment and shear force envelopes:

- Deep draught (departure) condition with no growth margin.
- Light draught (arrival) condition with no growth margin.
- Deep draught condition with full growth margin.
- Light draught condition with full growth margin.
- Maximum and minimum operating draught conditions, if different to the above.
- Ballast conditions, where appropriate.
- Any special mid-voyage conditions caused by changes in payload or ballast distribution.
- Other special loading conditions, e.g., Emergency evacuation or similar emergency scenario conditions, heavy payloads or cargo, deck cargo conditions, etc., where applicable.

2.1.4 For special loading conditions which may only be required in restricted operational areas, a reduced service area factor,  $f_s$ , may be allowable, see 3.3.1.

2.1.5 If the still water bending moment and shear force envelope approach is not appropriate, (as a consequence of the envelope being too severe due to one or two special conditions distorting the envelope) then individual consideration of the bending moment and shear force will be necessary.

2.1.6 A full or half icing allowance in accordance with Ch 2,4 is to be included in the still water bending moment and shear force calculations.

2.1.7 To account for miscellaneous fittings such as stanchions and rails an additional 5 per cent should be added to the total ice weight calculated for both full and half icing allowances.

## 2.2 Still water bending moments

2.2.1 The design still water hogging and sagging bending moment distribution envelope,  $M_S$ , is to be taken as the maximum sagging (negative) and maximum hogging (positive) still water bending moments, in kN m, calculated at each position along the ship. The maximum moments from all loading conditions are to be used to define the still water bending moment distribution envelope.

2.2.2 It is normal for ships which have low deadweight requirements, e.g. frigates, to have a bending moment distribution envelope which is always hogging. In this case the maximum sagging bending moment envelope may be taken as the minimum hogging bending moment.

## 2.3 Still water shear forces

2.3.1 The design still water shear force distribution envelope,  $Q_S$ , is to be taken as the maximum positive and negative shear force values, in kN, calculated at each position along the ship. The maximum shear forces from all loading conditions, see 2.2, are to be used to define the still water shear force distribution envelope.

2.3.2 It is recommended that the minimum shear force value over the midships region should not be less than 50 per cent of the maximum value.

## ■ Section 3 Global hull girder loads

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 The global hull girder loads specified here are applicable to all displacement mono-hull naval ships as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,2.2.5. These loads are to be used in the hull girder strength assessment given in Pt 6, Ch 3.

3.1.2 Individual consideration based on direct calculation procedures will generally be required for ships having one or more of the following characteristics:

Froude number  $> 0,8$  (based on  $V_{sp}$ , see Ch 3, 1.3.1)

$L_R/B_{WL} \leq 5$ , or  $B_{WL}/D \geq 2,5$

Unusual hull weight distribution

Unusual type or design.

## 3.2 Environmental conditions

3.2.1 The environmental conditions given in Chapter 2 are to be used in the derivation of the global hull girder loads.

## 3.3 Vertical wave bending moments

3.3.1 The minimum value of vertical wave bending moment,  $M_W$  at any position along the ship may be taken as follows:

$$M_W = F_f D_f M_o \text{ kNm}$$

where

$F_f$  is the hogging,  $F_{fH}$ , or sagging,  $F_{fS}$ , correction factor based on the amount of bow flare, stern flare, length and effective buoyancy of the aft end of the ship above the waterline

$F_{fS}$  is the sagging (negative) moment correction factor and is to be taken as

$$F_{fS} = -1,10 R_A^{0,3} \quad \text{for values of } R_A \geq 1,0$$

$$F_{fS} = -1,10 \quad \text{for values of } R_A < 1,0$$

An area ratio value of 1,0 results in a sagging correction factor of  $-1,10$ .

$F_{fH}$  is the hogging (positive) moment correction factor and is to be taken as

$$F_{fH} = \frac{1,9C_{b1}}{(C_{b1} + 0,7)}$$

$R_A$  is an area ratio factor, see 3.3.2

$D_f$  = the longitudinal distribution factor

= 0 at aft end of  $L_R$

= 1,0 between  $0,4L_R$  and  $0,65L_R$

= 0 at forward end of  $L_R$

Intermediate values of  $D_f$  are to be determined by linear interpolation

$$M_o = 0,1L_f f_s L_R^2 B_{WL} (C_{b1} + 0,7) \text{ kNm}$$

$$L_f = 0,0412L_R + 4,0 \quad \text{for } L_R \leq 90 \text{ m}$$

$$= 10,75 - \left( \frac{300 - L_R}{100} \right)^{1,5} \quad \text{for } L_R > 90 \text{ m}$$

$$= 10,75 \quad \text{for } L_R > 300 \text{ m}$$

$$= 10,75 - \left( \frac{L_R - 350}{150} \right)^{1,5} \quad \text{for } L_R > 350 \text{ m}$$

$f_s$  = service area factor applicable to the Service Area Notation. To be specially considered depending upon the required areas of operation and in any event should be not less than 0,5

For unrestricted sea-going service  $f_s = 1,0$ , for other Service Areas Notations, see Ch 2, 2.4

$B_{WL}$  = maximum waterline breadth, see 1.2.1

$C_{b1}$  =  $C_b$  but is not to be taken less than 0,60

$C_b$  = the block coefficient as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1, 5.

3.3.2 The area ratio factor,  $R_A$ , for the combined stern and bow shape is to be derived as follows:

$$R_A = \frac{30 (A_{BF} + 0,5A_{SF})}{L_R B_{WL}}$$

where

$A_{BF}$  is the bow flare area, in  $m^2$ , see 3.3.3

$A_{SF}$  is the stern flare area, in  $m^2$ , see 3.3.4.

3.3.3 The bow flare area,  $A_{BF}$ , is illustrated in Fig. 4.3.1 and may be derived as follows:

$$A_{BF} = A_{UB} - A_{LB} \text{ m}^2$$

where

$A_{UB}$  = half the water plane area at a waterline of  $T_{C,U}$  of the bow region of the hull forward of  $0,8L_R$  from the AP

$A_{LB}$  = half the water plane area at the design draught of the bow region of the hull forward of  $0,8L_R$  from the AP

Note the AP is to be taken at the aft end of the Rule length,  $L_R$

The design draught is to be taken as  $T$ , see Ch 3, 1.3.1

Alternatively the following formula may be used

$$A_{BF} = 0,05L_R (b_0 + 2b_1 + b_2) + b_0 a/2 \text{ m}^2$$

where

$b_0$  = projection of  $T_{C,U}$  waterline outboard of the design draught waterline at the FP, in metres, see Fig. 4.3.1

$b_1$  = projection of  $T_{C,U}$  waterline outboard of the design draught waterline at  $0,9L_R$  from the AP, in metres

$b_2$  = projection of  $T_{C,U}$  waterline outboard of the design draught waterline at  $0,8L_R$  from the AP, in metres

$a$  = projection of  $T_{C,U}$  waterline forward of the FP, in metres

$T_{C,U}$  is a waterline taken  $L_f/2$  m above the design draught

$$T_{C,U} = T + \frac{L_f}{2} \text{ m}$$

$L_f$  is given in 3.3.1

For ships with large bow flare angles above the  $T_{C,U}$  waterline the bow flare area may need to be specially considered.

3.3.4 The stern flare area,  $A_{SF}$ , is illustrated in Fig. 4.3.1 and is to be derived as follows:

$$A_{SF} = A_{US} - A_{LS} \text{ m}^2$$

where

$A_{US}$  = half the water plane area at a waterline of  $T_{C,U}$  of the stern region of the hull from aft to  $0,2L_R$  forward of the AP

$A_{LS}$  = half the water plane area at a waterline of  $T_{C,L}$  of the stern region of the hull from aft to  $0,2L_R$  forward of the AP

$T_{C,L}$  is a waterline taken  $L_f/2$  m below the design draught

$$T_{C,L} = T - \frac{L_f}{2} \text{ m}$$

For ships with tumblehome in the stern region, the maximum breadth at any waterline less than  $T_{C,U}$  is to be used in the calculation of  $A_{US}$ . The effects of appendages including bossings are to be ignored in the calculation of  $A_{LS}$ .

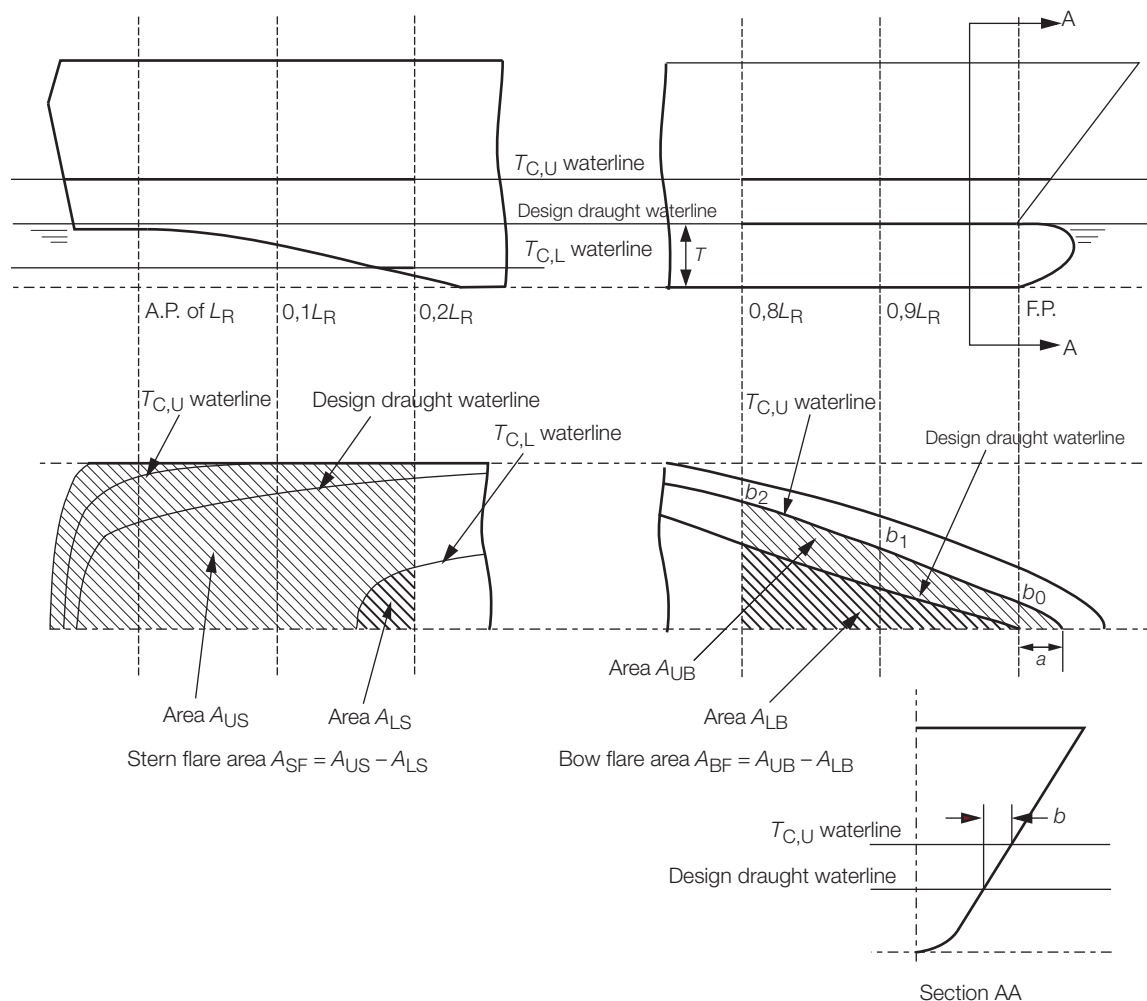


Fig. 4.3.1 Derivation of bow and stern flare areas

3.3.5 Alternatively, for frigate and destroyer type ships the hogging and sagging vertical wave bending moments and shear forces may be derived from long term 'in-service' measurements of a series of ships with similar hull forms, mass distributions and areas of operation. Typically this will be based on a static wave balance approach. The longitudinal distribution of the vertical wave bending moment is to be taken in accordance with the longitudinal distribution factor,  $D_f$ .

3.3.6 The vertical wave bending moments and associated shear forces are not to be taken as less than that given by 3.3.1 and 3.4.1.

3.3.7 Direct calculation methods may be used to derive the vertical wave bending moments, see 1.3.

3.3.8 The sagging correction factor,  $f_{IS}$ , in the vertical wave bending moment formulation in 3.3.1 may be derived by direct calculation methods. Appropriate direct calculation methods may include a combination of long term ship motion analysis, non linear ship motion analysis and static balance on a wave crest or trough.

### 3.4 Vertical wave shear forces

3.4.1 The wave shear force,  $Q_W$ , at any position along the ship is given by:

$$Q_W = \frac{3K_f M_0}{L_R} \text{ kN}$$

where

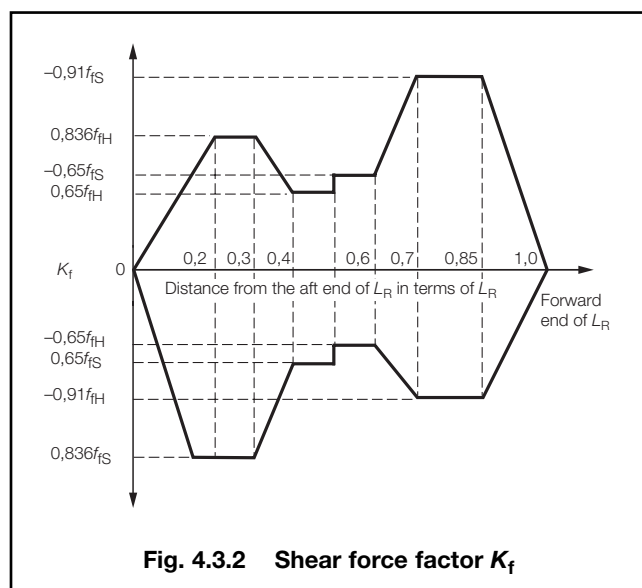
$K_f$  is to be taken as follows, see also Fig. 4.3.2

(a) Positive shear force:

- $K_f = 0$  at aft end of  $L_R$
- $= +0,836F_{IH}$  between  $0,2L_R$  and  $0,3L_R$
- $= +0,65F_{IH}$  between  $0,4L_R$  and  $0,5L_R$
- $= -0,65F_{IS}$  between  $0,5L_R$  and  $0,6L_R$
- $= -0,91F_{IS}$  between  $0,7L_R$  and  $0,85L_R$
- $= 0$  at forward end of  $L_R$

(b) Negative shear force:

- $K_f = 0$  at aft end of  $L_R$
- $= +0,836F_{IS}$  between  $0,15L_R$  and  $0,3L_R$
- $= +0,65F_{IS}$  between  $0,4L_R$  and  $0,5L_R$
- $= -0,65F_{IH}$  between  $0,5L_R$  and  $0,6L_R$
- $= -0,91 F_{IH}$  between  $0,7L_R$  and  $0,85L_R$
- $= 0$  at forward end of  $L_R$



**Fig. 4.3.2 Shear force factor  $K_f$**

Intermediate values are to be determined by linear interpolation.

$M_o$ ,  $F_{tH}$  and  $F_{tS}$  are defined in 3.3.1.

3.4.2 The direct calculation method used to derive the vertical bending moments may also be used to derive the vertical shear forces, see 1.3.

## 3.5 Lateral wave bending moments

3.5.1 If considered necessary by LR, the effects of lateral bending moments may need to be considered. Normally this will only be required for ships with extreme hull forms, multihulls, unusual structural configurations or arrangements or particular loading conditions or operational modes which are likely to result in significant lateral stresses.

## 3.6 Lateral wave shear forces

3.6.1 If considered necessary by LR, the effects of lateral shear forces may need to be considered. Normally this will only be required for ships with extreme hull forms, multihulls, unusual structural configurations or arrangements or particular loading conditions or operational modes which are likely to result in significant lateral stresses.

## 3.7 Torsional moments

3.7.1 If considered necessary by LR, the effects of torsional moments may need to be considered. Normally this will only be required for ships with extreme hull forms, multihulls, unusual structural configurations or arrangements or particular loading conditions or operational modes which are likely to result in significant torsional stresses.

## 3.8 Bow flare impact global loads

3.8.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to fast ships operating in the displacement mode that satisfy the following requirements:

speed  $V_{sp} > 17,5$  knots

bow shape factor  $\psi > 0,15$

where

$$\psi = \frac{100A_b k_{fr}}{L_R^{1,5} B_{WL}}$$

$A_b$  = bow flare area, see 3.8.2

$k_{fr}$  = bow freeboard correction factor

$k_{fr} = \frac{6}{h_{fr}}$  but is to be not less than 0,5 nor greater than 1,5

$h_{fr}$  = freeboard height to the upper deck measured at the FP, in metres

For ships with knuckles in the bow flare region above which the hull is nearly vertical or exhibits tumblehome, the values of  $h_{fr}$  and  $A_b$  are normally to be based on the bow flare region below the knuckle

$L_R$  and  $B_{WL}$  are as defined in 1.2.1

$V_{sp}$  is defined in Ch 3,1.3.

3.8.2 The bow flare area is normally to be derived as follows:

$$A_b = 0,05L_R (a_0 + 2a_1 + a_2) + a_0 b/2 \text{ m}^2$$

where

$a_0$  = projection of deck at waterline at the FP, in metres

$a_1$  = projection of deck at waterline at  $0,9L_R$ , in metres

$a_2$  = projection of deck at waterline at  $0,8L_R$ , in metres

$b$  = projection of upper deck at waterline from the FP to stem, in metres

see Fig. 4.3.3.

$L_R$  is given in 1.2.1.

3.8.3 The dynamic sagging bending moment due to bow flare impact loads,  $M_{BF}$ , is given by the following:

$$M_{BF} = -33D_{bf} A_b k_{fr} L_R \text{ kNm}$$

where

$D_{bf}$  = the longitudinal distribution factor, see Table 4.3.1

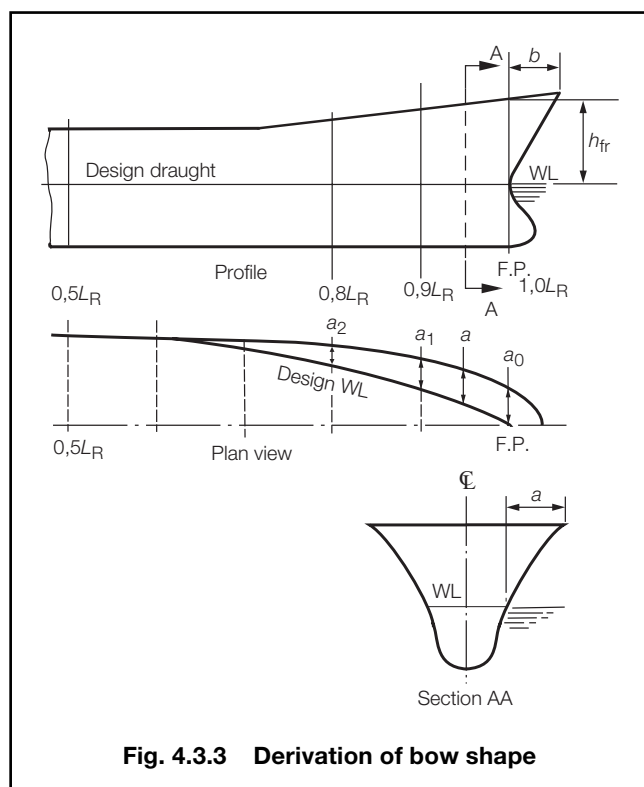
$A_b$  is given in 3.8.2

$k_{fr}$  is given in 3.8.1

$L_R$  is given in 1.2.1.

It is not required to consider a hogging bow flare impact bending moment.

3.8.4 If the bow flare impact bending moment,  $M_{BF}$ , is greater than the wave bending moment,  $M_W$ , see 3.3.1, at any position along the length then  $M_W$  is to be replaced by  $M_{BF}$  at these positions.



**Fig. 4.3.3 Derivation of bow shape**

**Table 4.3.1 Longitudinal distribution factor  $D_{bf}$**

| Position  | Longitudinal distribution factor $D_{bf}$ |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------|
| 0,0 $L_R$ | 0,00                                      |
| 0,4 $L_R$ | 1,00                                      |
| 0,5 $L_R$ | 1,00                                      |
| 0,6 $L_R$ | 0,98                                      |
| 0,7 $L_R$ | 0,95                                      |
| 0,8 $L_R$ | 0,81                                      |
| 0,9 $L_R$ | 0,44                                      |
| 1,0 $L_R$ | 0,00                                      |

NOTES

- Intermediate values to be obtained by interpolation.
- $L_R$  as defined in 1.2.1.

3.8.5 The bow flare impact shear force,  $Q_{BF}$ , associated with the bow flare bending moment is to be taken as follows over the forward half length of the ship:

$$Q_{BF} = 132K_{bf} A_b k_{fr} \text{ kN}$$

where

$K_{bf}$  is to be taken as follows:

Positive shear force

$$K_{bf} = \begin{cases} 0,0 & \text{aft of } 0,5L_R \\ 0,7 & \text{between } 0,5L_R \text{ and } 0,6L_R \\ 1,0 & \text{between } 0,7L_R \text{ and } 0,85L_R \\ 0,0 & \text{at forward end of } L_R \end{cases}$$

Intermediate values are to be determined by linear interpolation.

Negative shear force

$$K_{bf} = 0,0 \text{ for the length of the ship, } L_R$$

where

$A_b$  is given in 3.8.2

$k_{fr}$  is given in 3.8.1.

3.8.6 If the bow flare impact shear force,  $Q_{BF}$ , is greater than the wave shear force, see 3.4, at any position along the length then the wave shear force,  $Q_W$ , is to be taken as  $Q_{BF}$  at these positions.

## 3.9 Dynamic bending moments and associated shear forces

3.9.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to mono-hull ships when operating in the planing regime.

3.9.2 This Section gives formulae for the derivation of the high frequency dynamic bending moment, shear forces and associated pressures. The bending moment and shear force values are to be used for the global design loads if they are greater than the values derived in accordance with 3.3 and 3.4.

3.9.3 The dynamic bending moment, due to a high speed planning craft landing on a wave crest amidships, at any position along the ship, is to be calculated using the following expression:

$$M_{DW} = F_{df} D_{df} |M_d| \text{ kN/m}$$

where

$$|M_d| = 51\Delta L_R (16a_{op} - 4a_{bp} - 17a_{sp} - 5) \times 10^{-3} \text{ kN/m}$$

$$F_{df} = \begin{cases} -1,0 & \text{for sagging (negative) moment} \\ 1,0 & \text{for hogging (positive) moment} \end{cases}$$

$$D_{df} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{at aft end of } L_R \\ 1,0 & \text{between } 0,4L_R \text{ and } 0,65L_R \\ 0 & \text{at forward end of } L_R \end{cases}$$

Intermediate values of  $D_f$  are to be determined by linear interpolation

$a_{op}$  = vertical acceleration at the LCG, in terms of  $g$ , as defined in Ch 3,2.4

$a_{bp}$  = vertical acceleration at forward end of  $L_R$ , in terms of  $g$ , Ch 3,2.4

$a_{sp}$  = vertical acceleration at aft end of  $L_R$ , in terms of  $g$ , Ch 3,2.4.

3.9.4 The non-dimensional vertical acceleration at the LCG,  $a_{op}$ , as defined in Ch 3,2.4, is not to be taken less than 1,0 for the purpose of determining the dynamic bending moment  $M_{DW}$ . If the values of  $a_{bp}$  and  $a_{sp}$  are unknown, the distributions given in Ch 3,2.4 are to be applied.

3.9.5 Bottom longitudinals within 0,4 $L_R$  of amidships are subjected to the following effective pressure,  $P_{ds}$ :

$$P_{ds} = 0,14P_{d1} + 8T \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$$P_{d1} \text{ is as defined in Ch 3,4.5}$$

$$T \text{ is defined in 1.2.1.}$$

3.9.6 Bottom plating within 0,4 $L_R$  of amidships is subjected to the following effective pressure,  $P_{dp}$ :

$$P_{dp} = 0,175P_{d1} + 10T \text{ kN/m}^2$$

3.9.7 The dynamic shear force,  $Q_{DW}$ , at any position along the ship is given by:

$$Q_{DW} = 4K_f M_D / L_R \quad \text{kN}$$

where

$M_D$  is defined in 3.9.3

$K_f$  is defined in 3.4.1.

## 3.10 Hull girder design loads

3.10.1 The Rule bending moment envelope,  $M_R$ , and associated shear force envelope,  $Q_R$ , for use with the scantling determination procedures in Pt 6, Ch 3 are to be determined as follows:

- The Rule vertical bending moment envelope,  $M_R$ , is to be taken as  $(M_W + M_S)$ , as defined in 3.3 and 2.2, taking into account the hogging and sagging conditions.
- The Rule vertical shear force envelope,  $Q_R$ , is to be taken as  $(Q_W + Q_S)$ , as defined in 3.4 and 2.3, taking into account the hogging and sagging conditions.

3.10.2 The values  $M_W$  and  $Q_W$  are to be replaced by  $M_{BF}$  and  $Q_{BF}$  if these are larger, see 3.4 and 3.8.6. Similarly, the values  $M_W$  and  $Q_W$  are to be replaced by  $M_{DW}$  and  $Q_{DW}$  if these are larger.

## Section 4 Extreme hull girder loads

### 4.1 Introduction

4.1.1 The extreme hull girder loads specified in this Section are applicable to all mono-hull naval ships for which the optional **ESA1** or **ESA2**, Extreme Strength Assessment, notation is required. The design criteria detailed in this Section are to be used in conjunction with the extreme hull girder strength assessment procedure given in Pt 6, Ch 4.3.

4.1.2 The extreme hull girder loads are typical lifetime maximum values that a ship is likely to encounter if it was to be present in an extreme sea state in sea areas associated with its service area notation.

### 4.2 Environmental conditions

4.2.1 The environmental design criteria for extreme design analysis given in Chapter 2 are to be used to determine the extreme hull girder loads.

4.2.2 The hull girder loads for the extreme hull girder strength assessment for unrestricted service operation, i.e., service area notation **SA1**, are typical maximum loads that are predicted for extreme winter North Atlantic conditions in head seas at low forward speed.

4.2.3 For other service area notations, the hull girder loads for the extreme hull girder strength assessment are typical maximum loads that are likely to be encountered within the restricted operational area.

### 4.3 Extreme vertical wave bending moments

4.3.1 For all mono-hull ships, the extreme vertical wave bending moment,  $M_{WEX}$ , at any position along the ship is given by:

$$M_{WEX} = K_{fEX} M_W \quad \text{kN m}$$

where

$M_W$  is given in 3.3

$K_{fEX}$  = extreme scaling factor

= 1,5.

4.3.2 Alternatively the extreme hull girder strength assessment wave loads may be derived using direct calculation methods, model tests or similar taking into account the likely range of wave periods and the environmental conditions specified in Chapter 2.

4.3.3 In deriving the wave loads, the longitudinal distribution of the vertical wave bending moment is to be taken in accordance with the longitudinal distribution factor,  $D_f$ , see 3.3.1. Where appropriate, the hogging and sagging correction factor,  $F_{fH}$  and  $F_{fS}$  given in 3.3.1, may be used to derive the hogging and sagging bending moments from a direct calculation.

4.3.4 Where requested by the Owner, the extreme hogging and sagging vertical wave bending moment or extreme scaling factor,  $K_{fEX}$ , may be derived from long term 'in-service' measurements from a series of ships with similar hull forms, mass distributions and areas of operation.

### 4.4 Extreme vertical wave shear forces

4.4.1 The extreme vertical wave shear force,  $Q_{WEX}$ , at any position along the ship is given by:

$$Q_{WEX} = K_{fEX} Q_W \quad \text{kN}$$

where

$Q_W$  is given in 3.4

$K_{fEX}$  = the extreme scaling factor, see 4.3.

4.4.2 Alternatively the method of derivation of the extreme wave shear force may be consistent with that used to derive the bending moments.

### 4.5 Direct calculation procedures

4.5.1 Direct calculation procedures may be used to derive the extreme hull girder loads. LR's calculation method of the extreme hull girder loads involves derivation of the short term maximum probable responses.

4.5.2 The extreme hull girder loads,  $M_{WEX}$  and  $Q_{WEX}$ , are to be based on the probable maximum values that are likely to be experienced during severe storms. The parameters of the severe sea state, i.e. significant wave height, wave period range and duration of storm, are given in Chapter 2.

## 4.6 Still water shear forces and bending moments

4.6.1 The still water hogging and sagging shear force and bending moment distributions for the extreme hull girder strength assessment are to be taken as the  $Q_S$  and  $M_S$  distributions defined in 2.3 and 2.2 respectively.

## 4.7 Extreme hull girder design loads

4.7.1 The extreme hull girder strength design bending moment,  $M_{REX}$ , and associated shear forces,  $Q_{REX}$ , for all naval ships are to be determined as follows:

- (a) The extreme hull girder strength design bending moment,  $M_{REX}$ , is to be taken as  $(M_{WEX} + M_S)$ , as defined in 4.3 and 4.6, taking into account the appropriate hogging and sagging conditions.
- (b) The extreme hull girder strength design shear force,  $Q_{REX}$ , is to be taken as  $(Q_{WEX} + Q_S)$ , as defined in 4.4 and 4.6, taking into account the appropriate hogging and sagging conditions.

4.7.2 It is unnecessary to consider the effects of operating at high speed on the extreme design values for extreme hull girder strength. The requirements for bow flare impact global loads may be ignored in the derivation of  $M_{WEX}$  and  $Q_{WEX}$ .

## ■ Section 5 Residual strength hull girder loads

### 5.1 Introduction

5.1.1 The residual strength hull girder loads specified in this Section are applicable to all displacement mono-hull naval ships for which the optional **RSA1**, **RSA2** or **RSA3**, Residual Strength Assessment, notation is required. The design criteria detailed in this Section are to be used in conjunction with the residual strength assessment procedure given in Pt 6, Ch 4.4.

5.1.2 The residual strength hull girder loads are used to assess the capability of the ship's global hull girder after suffering structural damage to meet specified global strength requirements. The effects of flooding, as a consequence of structural damage, on the static global bending moments and shear forces are also to be considered.

### 5.2 Environmental conditions

5.2.1 The environmental design criteria for residual strength analysis given in Ch 2,3 are to be used to determine the residual strength hull girder loads.

5.2.2 The global loads for the residual strength hull girder strength assessment for unrestricted service operation, i.e. service area notation **SA1**, are typical maximum loads that are predicted in North Atlantic sea conditions that have a probability of exceedance of 20 per cent. The loads predicted for the ship in head seas at low forward speed are to be considered.

5.2.3 For other service area notations, the global loads for the hull girder residual strength assessment are typical maximum loads that are likely to be encountered within the restricted operational area in sea conditions that have a 20 per cent probability of being exceeded.

5.2.4 The designer/builder may stipulate the environmental conditions to be applied to the residual strength assessment. In which case the residual strength notation will be assessed against the required performance level.

5.2.5 The residual strength area reduction factor,  $K_{fRS}$ , is given by the following:

$$K_{fRS} = 1,1 H_{rw} L_R^{-0,48}$$

where

$H_{rw}$  is given in Ch 2,2.3.5.

### 5.3 Residual strength vertical wave bending moments

5.3.1 The residual strength wave loads may be derived from the formula given below. The residual strength vertical bending moment specified here is applicable to all mono-hull ships.

5.3.2 The residual strength vertical wave bending moment,  $M_{WRS}$ , at any position along the ship is given by:

$$M_{WRS} = K_{fRS} M_W \text{ kN m}$$

where

$M_W$  is given in 3.3

$K_{fRS}$  = Residual strength area reduction factor, see 5.2.5.

5.3.3 Alternatively the residual strength wave loads may be derived using direct calculation methods, model tests or similar taking into account the likely range of wave periods and the environmental conditions specified in 5.2.

5.3.4 In deriving the residual strength wave bending moment, the longitudinal distribution is to be taken in accordance with the longitudinal distribution factor,  $D_f$ , see 3.3.1. Where appropriate, the hogging and sagging correction factors,  $F_{fH}$  and  $F_{fS}$  may be used to derive the hogging and sagging bending moments from a direct calculation.

5.3.5 For conventional ships, it is not normally necessary to consider the effects of flooded compartments on the wave bending moments and shear forces.



5.3.6 For bottom damage assessment as a result of grounding, the residual strength vertical wave bending moment may be based on a  $M_W$  value derived using a service area factor,  $f_s$ , for a **SA4** service area notation; provided that the ship will not be required to proceed beyond sheltered water. Similarly for other damage assessments which are restricted to sheltered water environments, there is no requirement for operation outside sheltered water areas.

## 5.4 Residual strength vertical wave shear forces

5.4.1 The residual strength vertical wave shear force,  $Q_{WRS}$ , at any position along the ship is given by:

$$Q_{WRS} = K_{IRS} Q_W \text{ kN}$$

where

$Q_W$  is given in 3.4

$K_{IRS}$  = residual strength area reduction factor, see 5.2.5.

5.4.2 Alternatively the method of derivation of residual strength wave shear forces is to be consistent with that used to derive the bending moments.

## 5.5 Direct calculation procedures

5.5.1 Direct calculation procedures may be used to derive the residual strength hull girder loads. LR's calculation method of the residual strength hull girder loads involves derivation of the short term maximum probable responses.

5.5.2 The residual strength hull girder loads are to be based on the probable maximum values that are likely to be experienced during moderately severe sea conditions. The parameters of the seastate, i.e., significant wave height, wave period range and duration of storm, are given in Chapter 2.

## 5.6 Damaged still water shear forces and bending moments

5.6.1 The still water hogging and sagging shear force,  $Q_{SRS}$ , and bending moment,  $M_{SRS}$ , distributions in the damaged condition are to be calculated taking into account any flooding of the ship as a consequence of damage. If no flooding occurs then the still water values are to be taken from 2.3 and 2.2 respectively.

If no flooding occurs

$$M_{SRS} = M_S \text{ kN m}$$

$$Q_{SRS} = Q_S \text{ kN}$$

or if flooding occurs

$M_{SRS}$  = damaged still water bending moment, sagging (negative) and hogging (positive), in kN m

$Q_{SRS}$  = damaged still water shear force, positive and negative, in kN.

5.6.2 The loading conditions used to derive the undamaged still water shear force and bending moment curves are to be used for the assessment of the damaged still water bending moments together with the addition of flood water in damaged compartments.

## 5.7 Residual strength hull girder design loads

5.7.1 The residual strength design vertical bending moment,  $M_{RRS}$ , and associated shear forces,  $Q_{RRS}$ , for all naval ships are to be determined as follows:

- The residual strength design bending moment,  $M_{RRS}$ , is to be taken as  $(M_{WRS} + M_{SRS})$ , as defined in 5.3 and 5.6, taking into account the appropriate hogging and sagging conditions.
- The residual strength design shear forces,  $Q_{RRS}$ , is to be taken as  $(Q_{WRS} + Q_{SRS})$ , as defined in 5.4 and 5.6, taking into account the appropriate hogging and sagging conditions.

5.7.2 Where it is required that the ship is to be capable of operating at high speed after damage, it may also be necessary to consider the effects of dynamic bending moments and shear forces.

## Section 6 Loading guidance information

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 Sufficient information is to be supplied to every ship to enable the Commanding Officer or Master to arrange loading and ballasting in such a way as to avoid the creation of unacceptable stresses in the ship's structure.

6.1.2 This information should include any limiting criteria that were applied to the structural design of the ship, e.g. the maximum and minimum still water bending moments, service area notation with details of service area restrictions.

6.1.3 This information is to be provided by means of a Stability Information Book or Loading Manual and in addition, where required, by means of an approved loading instrument.

6.1.4 An Operational manual which contains the ship's assigned operational envelope is to be provided on board, see Pt 1, Ch 2,2 and Ch 1,1.

### 6.2 Loading Manuals or Stability Information Books

6.2.1 A Loading Manual is to be supplied to all ships where longitudinal strength calculations have been required. see Pt 6, Ch 3,4.2 and Pt 6, Ch 4,2.1. The Manual is to be submitted for approval in respect of strength aspects. Where both Loading Manual and loading instrument are supplied the Loading Manual must nevertheless be approved from the strength aspect. In this case the Manual is to be endorsed to the effect that any departures from these conditions in service are to be arranged on the basis of the loading instrument and the allowable local loadings shown in the Manual.

6.2.2 The Loading Manual is to be based on the final data of the ship and is to include well-defined lightweight distribution and buoyancy data.

6.2.3 Details of the loading conditions are to be included in the manual as applicable.

6.2.4 The Loading Manual is also to contain the following:

- (a) Values of actual and permissible still water bending moments and shear forces and where applicable limitations due to torsional loads.
- (b) The allowable local loadings for the structure.
- (c) Details of the carriage of any substances where there are constraints imposed by the use of an accepted coating in association with a system of corrosion control.
- (d) Where the ship has the capability to significantly alter the draught forward by filling water ballast tanks, then a note saying: 'Scantlings approved for minimum draught forward of...m with ballast tanks No ... filled. In heavy weather conditions the forward draught is not to be less than this value. If, in the opinion of the Commanding Officer or Master, sea conditions are likely to cause regular slamming, then other appropriate measures such as change in speed, heading or an increase in draught forward may also need to be taken.'

6.2.5 Where applicable, the Manual is also to contain the procedure for ballast exchange and sediment removal at sea and the correct use of tanks.

6.2.6 Where alteration to structure, lightweight, cargo distribution or draught is proposed, revised information is to be submitted for approval.

## 6.3 Loading instrument

6.3.1 In addition to a Loading Manual, an approved loading instrument is to be provided for all ships where  $L_R$  is greater than 65 m except as noted below. The following ships are exempt from this requirement:

- (a) ships with very limited possibilities for variations in the distribution of cargo and ballast;
- (b) ships with a regular or fixed operational pattern.

6.3.2 The loading instrument is to be capable of calculating shear forces and bending moments, and where necessary cargo torque, in any load or ballast condition at specified readout points and is to indicate the permissible values. The instrument is to be certified in accordance with LR procedures for the approval of longitudinal strength and stability calculation programs.

6.3.3 The instrument readout points are usually selected at the position of the transverse bulkheads or other obvious boundaries. As many readout points as considered necessary by LR are to be included, e.g., between bulkheads.

6.3.4 Where the ship has the capability to significantly alter the draught forward by filling water ballast tanks, then a notice is to be displayed on the loading instrument stating: 'Scantlings approved for minimum draught forward of... m with ballast tanks No ... filled. In heavy weather conditions the forward draught is not to be less than this value. If, in the opinion of the Commanding Officer or Master, sea conditions are likely to cause regular slamming, then other appropriate measures such as change in speed, heading or an increase in draught forward may also need to be taken.'

6.3.5 Where alterations to structure are carried out which result in a change in the lightweight or deadweight distribution, the loading instrument is to be modified accordingly and details submitted for approval.

6.3.6 The operation of the loading instrument is to be verified by the Surveyor upon installation and at Annual and Periodical Surveys as required in Pt 1, Ch 3. An Operation Manual for the instrument is to be verified as being available on board.

6.3.7 Where an onboard computer system having a longitudinal strength or a stability computation capability is provided as an Owner's option, it is recommended that the system be certified in accordance with LR's document entitled Approval of Longitudinal Strength and Stability Calculation Programs.

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 1

Part 6 Hull Construction in Steel

January 2013

---

|             |                  |                                                                   |
|-------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PART        | 1                | REGULATIONS                                                       |
| PART        | 2                | RULES FOR THE MANUFACTURE, TESTING AND CERTIFICATION OF MATERIALS |
| PART        | 3                | DESIGN PRINCIPLES AND CONSTRUCTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS                 |
| PART        | 4                | MILITARY DESIGN AND SPECIAL FEATURES                              |
| PART        | 5                | ENVIRONMENTAL LOADS                                               |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>6</b>         | <b>HULL CONSTRUCTION IN STEEL</b>                                 |
|             | <b>Chapter 1</b> | <b>General</b>                                                    |
|             | <b>2</b>         | <b>Design Tools</b>                                               |
|             | <b>3</b>         | <b>Scantling Determination</b>                                    |
|             | <b>4</b>         | <b>Hull Girder Strength</b>                                       |
|             | <b>5</b>         | <b>Structural Design Factors</b>                                  |
|             | <b>6</b>         | <b>Material and Welding Requirements</b>                          |
| PART        | 7                | ENHANCED STRUCTURAL ASSESSMENT                                    |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

---

|                |          |                                                                   |
|----------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>GENERAL</b>                                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>Application</b>                                                |
|                | 1.1      | General                                                           |
|                | 1.2      | Equivalents                                                       |
|                | 1.3      | Symbols and definitions                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                       |
|                | 2.1      | General                                                           |
|                | 2.2      | Plans to be submitted                                             |
|                | 2.3      | Plans to be supplied to the ship                                  |
|                | 2.4      | Novel features                                                    |
|                | 2.5      | Enhanced scantlings                                               |
|                | 2.6      | Direct calculations                                               |
|                | 2.7      | Exceptions                                                        |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>DESIGN TOOLS</b>                                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General</b>                                                    |
|                | 1.1      | General                                                           |
|                | 1.2      | Equivalents                                                       |
|                | 1.3      | Symbols and definitions                                           |
|                | 1.4      | Rounding policy for Rule plating thickness                        |
|                | 1.5      | Material properties                                               |
|                | 1.6      | Higher tensile steel                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Structural design</b>                                          |
|                | 2.1      | General                                                           |
|                | 2.2      | Effective width of attached plating, $b_e$                        |
|                | 2.3      | Section properties                                                |
|                | 2.4      | Convex curvature correction                                       |
|                | 2.5      | Aspect ratio correction                                           |
|                | 2.6      | Determination of span length                                      |
|                | 2.7      | Plating general                                                   |
|                | 2.8      | Stiffening general                                                |
|                | 2.9      | Proportions of stiffener sections                                 |
|                | 2.10     | Grillage structures                                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Buckling</b>                                                   |
|                | 3.1      | General                                                           |
|                | 3.2      | Symbols                                                           |
|                | 3.3      | Plate panel buckling requirements                                 |
|                | 3.4      | Derivation of the buckling stress for plate panels                |
|                | 3.5      | Additional requirements for plate panels which buckle elastically |
|                | 3.6      | Shear buckling of stiffened panels                                |
|                | 3.7      | Secondary stiffening in direction of compression                  |
|                | 3.8      | Secondary stiffening perpendicular to direction of compression    |
|                | 3.9      | Buckling of primary members                                       |
|                | 3.10     | Shear buckling of girder webs                                     |
|                | 3.11     | Pillars and pillar bulkheads                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Vibration control</b>                                          |
|                | 4.1      | General                                                           |
|                | 4.2      | Frequency band                                                    |
|                | 4.3      | Natural frequency of plate                                        |
|                | 4.4      | Natural frequency of plate and stiffener combination              |
|                | 4.5      | Effect of submergence                                             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Dynamic loading</b>                                            |
|                | 5.1      | General                                                           |
|                | 5.2      | Gradually applied load                                            |
|                | 5.3      | Instantaneous load                                                |
|                | 5.4      | Triangular pulse load                                             |

---

|                |          |                                            |
|----------------|----------|--------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>SCANTLING DETERMINATION</b>             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General</b>                             |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                |
|                | 1.2      | General                                    |
|                | 1.3      | Direct calculations                        |
|                | 1.4      | Equivalents                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Minimum structural requirements</b>     |
|                | 2.1      | General                                    |
|                | 2.2      | Corrosion margin                           |
|                | 2.3      | Impact consideration                       |
|                | 2.4      | Sheathing                                  |
|                | 2.5      | Special considerations                     |
|                | 2.6      | Direct calculations                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>NS1 scantling determination</b>         |
|                | 3.1      | General                                    |
|                | 3.2      | Symbols                                    |
|                | 3.3      | Hull girder strength                       |
|                | 3.4      | Minimum hull section modulus               |
|                | 3.5      | Minimum hull moment of inertia             |
|                | 3.6      | Local reduction factors                    |
|                | 3.7      | Taper requirements for hull envelope       |
|                | 3.8      | Grouped stiffeners                         |
|                | 3.9      | Shell envelope plating                     |
|                | 3.10     | Shell envelope framing                     |
|                | 3.11     | Watertight bulkheads and deep tanks        |
|                | 3.12     | Deck structures                            |
|                | 3.13     | Superstructures, deckhouses and bulwarks   |
|                | 3.14     | Single and double bottom structures        |
|                | 3.15     | Fore peak structure                        |
|                | 3.16     | Magazine structure                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>NS2 and NS3 scantling determination</b> |
|                | 4.1      | General                                    |
|                | 4.2      | Hull girder strength                       |
|                | 4.3      | Shell envelope plating                     |
|                | 4.4      | Shell envelope framing                     |
|                | 4.5      | Inner bottom structures                    |
|                | 4.6      | Watertight bulkheads and deep tanks        |
|                | 4.7      | Deck structures                            |
|                | 4.8      | Superstructures, deckhouses and bulwarks   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Shell envelope plating</b>              |
|                | 5.1      | General                                    |
|                | 5.2      | Plate keel                                 |
|                | 5.3      | Sheerstrake                                |
|                | 5.4      | Skegs                                      |
|                | 5.5      | Transom                                    |
|                | 5.6      | Shell openings                             |
|                | 5.7      | Sea inlet boxes                            |
|                | 5.8      | Local reinforcement/Insert plates          |
|                | 5.9      | Novel features                             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Shell envelope framing</b>              |
|                | 6.1      | General                                    |
|                | 6.2      | Frame struts or cross ties                 |

---

|                |           |                                                     |
|----------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b>  | <b>Single bottom structures</b>                     |
|                | 7.1       | General                                             |
|                | 7.2       | Centreline girder                                   |
|                | 7.3       | Side girders                                        |
|                | 7.4       | Floors – General                                    |
|                | 7.5       | Single bottom structure in machinery spaces         |
|                | 7.6       | Rudder horns                                        |
|                | 7.7       | Forefoot and stem                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b>  | <b>Double bottom structures</b>                     |
|                | 8.1       | General                                             |
|                | 8.2       | Centreline girder                                   |
|                | 8.3       | Side girders                                        |
|                | 8.4       | Plate floors                                        |
|                | 8.5       | Bracket floors                                      |
|                | 8.6       | Additional requirements for watertight floors       |
|                | 8.7       | Inner bottom plating                                |
|                | 8.8       | Inner bottom longitudinals                          |
|                | 8.9       | Double bottom tanks                                 |
|                | 8.10      | Margin plates                                       |
|                | 8.11      | Double bottom structure in machinery rooms          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b>  | <b>Bulkheads and deep tanks</b>                     |
|                | 9.1       | General                                             |
|                | 9.2       | Deep tank stiffening                                |
|                | 9.3       | Gastight bulkheads                                  |
|                | 9.4       | Non-watertight or partial bulkheads                 |
|                | 9.5       | Corrugated bulkheads                                |
|                | 9.6       | Wash plates                                         |
|                | 9.7       | Cofferdams                                          |
|                | 9.8       | Testing                                             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>Deck structures</b>                              |
|                | 10.1      | General                                             |
|                | 10.2      | Deck plating                                        |
|                | 10.3      | Deck stiffening                                     |
|                | 10.4      | Deck openings                                       |
|                | 10.5      | Sheathing                                           |
|                | 10.6      | Decks used as ramps                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>11</b> | <b>Superstructures, deckhouses and bulwarks</b>     |
|                | 11.1      | General                                             |
|                | 11.2      | Forecastle requirements                             |
|                | 11.3      | Superstructures formed by extending side structures |
|                | 11.4      | Mullions                                            |
|                | 11.5      | Sheathing                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>12</b> | <b>Pillars and pillar bulkheads</b>                 |
|                | 12.1      | Application                                         |
|                | 12.2      | Determination of span length                        |
|                | 12.3      | Design loads                                        |
|                | 12.4      | Scantling determination                             |
|                | 12.5      | Minimum slenderness ratio                           |
|                | 12.6      | Pillars in tanks                                    |
|                | 12.7      | Pillar bulkheads                                    |
|                | 12.8      | Direct calculations                                 |
|                | 12.9      | Novel features                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>13</b> | <b>Machinery and raft seatings</b>                  |
|                | 13.1      | General                                             |
|                | 13.2      | Seats for oil engines                               |
|                | 13.3      | Seats for turbines                                  |
|                | 13.4      | Seats for boilers                                   |
|                | 13.5      | Seats for auxiliary machinery                       |

---

|                |           |                                                                     |
|----------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>14</b> | <b>Strengthening for bottom slamming</b>                            |
|                | 14.1      | General                                                             |
|                | 14.2      | Strengthening of bottom forward                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>15</b> | <b>Strengthening for wave impact loads above waterline</b>          |
|                | 15.1      | General                                                             |
|                | 15.2      | Strengthening against bow flare wave impacts                        |
|                | 15.3      | Strengthening against wave impact loads                             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>16</b> | <b>Masts</b>                                                        |
|                | 16.1      | General                                                             |
|                | 16.2      | Pole masts                                                          |
|                | 16.3      | Unstayed masts                                                      |
|                | 16.4      | Stayed masts                                                        |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>HULL GIRDER STRENGTH</b>                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>General</b>                                                      |
|                | 1.1       | Application                                                         |
|                | 1.2       | Hull girder strength notations                                      |
|                | 1.3       | Symbols and definitions                                             |
|                | 1.4       | Calculation of hull section modulus                                 |
|                | 1.5       | General                                                             |
|                | 1.6       | Direct calculations                                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>Hull girder strength</b>                                         |
|                | 2.1       | General                                                             |
|                | 2.2       | Bending strength                                                    |
|                | 2.3       | Shear strength                                                      |
|                | 2.4       | Torsional strength                                                  |
|                | 2.5       | Superstructures global strength                                     |
|                | 2.6       | Buckling strength                                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>Extreme Strength Assessment, ESA</b>                             |
|                | 3.1       | General                                                             |
|                | 3.2       | Determination of critical sections                                  |
|                | 3.3       | Bending strength – Simplified assessment method ESA1                |
|                | 3.4       | Shear strength – Simplified assessment method ESA1                  |
|                | 3.5       | Bending and shear strength – Ultimate strength analysis method ESA2 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>Residual Strength Assessment, RSA</b>                            |
|                | 4.1       | Application                                                         |
|                | 4.2       | Extent of damage and analysis                                       |
|                | 4.3       | Determination of critical sections                                  |
|                | 4.4       | Bending strength – Simplified assessment method RSA1                |
|                | 4.5       | Shear strength – Simplified assessment method RSA1                  |
|                | 4.6       | Bending and shear strength – Ultimate strength analysis method RSA2 |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>5</b>  | <b>STRUCTURAL DESIGN FACTORS</b>                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>Structural design factors</b>                                    |
|                | 1.1       | Application                                                         |
|                | 1.2       | General                                                             |
|                | 1.3       | Higher tensile steel                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>Scantling determination for NS1 ships</b>                        |
|                | 2.1       | Design criteria                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>Scantling determination for NS2 and NS3 ships</b>                |
|                | 3.1       | Design criteria                                                     |



**CHAPTER 6 MATERIAL AND WELDING REQUIREMENTS****Section 1 General**

- 1.1 Application
- 1.2 General
- 1.3 Symbols and definitions
- 1.4 Builder's facilities
- 1.5 Works inspection
- 1.6 Quality control
- 1.7 Building environment
- 1.8 Storage areas
- 1.9 Materials handling
- 1.10 Faults
- 1.11 New building inspection
- 1.12 Acceptance criteria
- 1.13 Repair

**Section 2 Materials**

- 2.1 General
- 2.2 Grade of steel
- 2.3 Refrigerated spaces
- 2.4 Ships operating in cold weather conditions
- 2.5 Mechanical properties for design
- 2.6 Paints and coatings
- 2.7 Cathodic protection
- 2.8 Bimetallic connections
- 2.9 Deck coverings
- 2.10 Corrosion margin

**Section 3 Requirements for welded construction**

- 3.1 General
- 3.2 Information to be submitted
- 3.3 Welding equipment
- 3.4 Welding consumables
- 3.5 Welding procedures
- 3.6 Inspection

**Section 4 Welded joints and connections**

- 4.1 General
- 4.2 Weld symbols
- 4.3 Welding schedule
- 4.4 Butt welds
- 4.5 Fillet welds
- 4.6 Throat thickness limits
- 4.7 Single sided welding
- 4.8 Double continuous fillet welding
- 4.9 Intermittent and single sided fillet welding
- 4.10 Connections of primary structure
- 4.11 Primary and secondary member end connection welds
- 4.12 Tank boundary penetrations
- 4.13 Intersection of primary and secondary members

---

|                |          |                                                              |
|----------------|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Construction details</b>                                  |
|                | 5.1      | Continuity and alignment                                     |
|                | 5.2      | Primary end connections                                      |
|                | 5.3      | Secondary member end connections                             |
|                | 5.4      | Scantlings of end brackets                                   |
|                | 5.5      | Arrangement at intersection of primary and secondary members |
|                | 5.6      | Arrangement with offset stiffener                            |
|                | 5.7      | Watertight collars                                           |
|                | 5.8      | Insert plates                                                |
|                | 5.9      | Doubler plates                                               |
|                | 5.10     | Other fittings and attachments                               |
|                | 5.11     | Bilge keels and ground bars                                  |
|                | 5.12     | Rivetted of light structure                                  |
|                | 5.13     | Adhesive bonding of structure                                |
|                | 5.14     | Triaxial stress considerations                               |
|                | 5.15     | Aluminium/steel transition joints                            |
|                | 5.16     | Steel/wood connection                                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Inspection and testing procedures</b>                     |
|                | 6.1      | General                                                      |
|                | 6.2      | Definitions                                                  |
|                | 6.3      | Testing arrangements                                         |
|                | 6.4      | Structural testing                                           |
|                | 6.5      | Leak testing                                                 |
|                | 6.6      | Hose testing                                                 |
|                | 6.7      | Hydropneumatic testing                                       |
|                | 6.8      | Gastight testing                                             |

*Section*

- 1     **Application**
  - 2     **General requirements**
- 

■     *Section 1*  
      **Application**

**1.1     General**

1.1.1     The Rules apply to sea-going monohull ships of normal form, proportions and speed. Although the Rules are, in general, for steel ships of all welded construction, other materials for use in hull construction will be specially considered on the basis of the Rules.

1.1.2     An overview of the structural design process is illustrated in Fig. 1.1.1.

**1.2     Equivalents**

1.2.1     Alternative scantlings and arrangements may be accepted as equivalent to the Rule requirements. Details of such proposals are to be submitted for consideration in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1,3.

**1.3     Symbols and definitions**

1.3.1     The symbols and definitions for use throughout this Part are as defined within the appropriate Chapters and Sections.

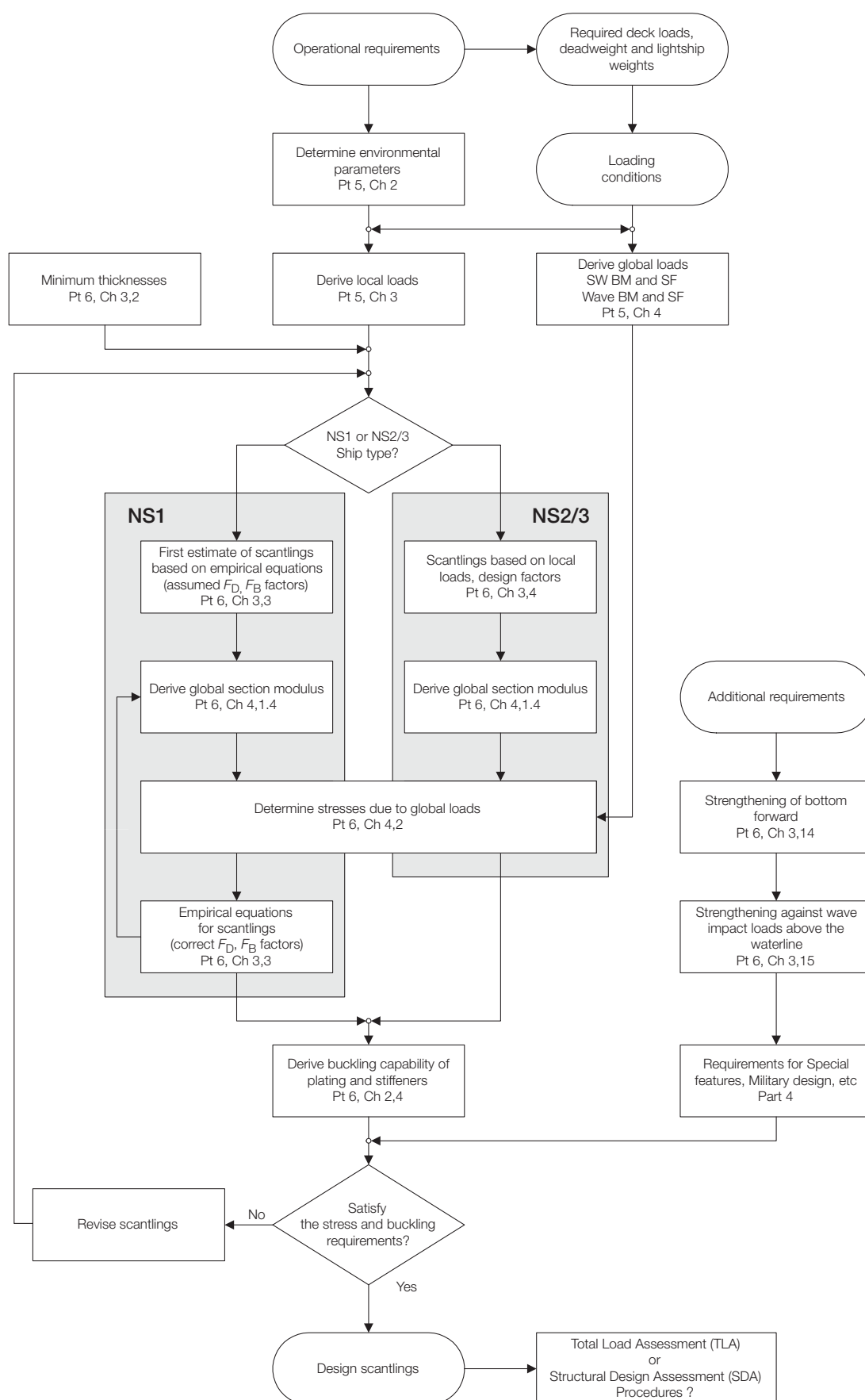


Fig. 1.1.1 Overview of the structural design process

## ■ Section 2 General requirements

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 Limitations with regard to the application of these Rules are indicated in the various Chapters for differing ship types.

### 2.2 Plans to be submitted

2.2.1 Plans are to be of sufficient detail for plan approval purposes. For all areas of structure listed below the submitted plans are to show all plating thickness, stiffeners sizes and spacings, bracket arrangements and connections. Where appropriate, the plans should clearly show the allowance for corrosion margin or Owner's extra. Welding, constructional arrangements and tolerances are also to be submitted and this may be in the form of a booklet.

2.2.2 In general all items of steel structure are to be shown except where they are ineffective in supporting hull girder and local loads and do not impinge on such structure.

2.2.3 Equipment seating and supports are to be shown where they require additional stiffening and support to be incorporated in items of hull structure. In such cases the loading on the seating is also to be supplied. Generally total combined equipment weights on seating less than 0,5 tonnes need not be considered.

2.2.4 Normally the plans for each item will be able to be contained on a few sheets. Unit or production drawings will not be accepted.

2.2.5 Plans covering the following items are to be submitted:

- Midship and other critical sections showing longitudinal and transverse material.
- Profile and decks.
- Shell expansion.
- Structural continuity plan showing shadow areas of openings, longitudinally effective material and primary structural continuity material.
- Oiltight and watertight bulkheads.
- Double bottom construction.
- Pillars and girders.
- Aft end construction.
- Engine room construction.
- Engine and thrust seatings.
- Fore end construction.
- Storing routes.
- Deckhouses and superstructures.
- Propeller brackets and appendages.
- Rudder, stock and tiller.
- Equipment.
- Loading Manuals and stability information booklets, preliminary and final (where applicable).
- Scheme of corrosion control (where applicable) including; location of anodes, method of attachment, details of cathodic protection system.
- Ice strengthening.
- Welding schedule.

- Hull penetration plans including scuppers, sea connections, overboard discharges, arrangements and fittings.
- Support structure for masts, derrick posts, cranes, RAS points, weapons handling/stowage or machinery lifting point and large items of equipment.
- Bilge keels showing material grades, welded connections and detail design.
- Flight deck arrangement and structure.

Additionally, for in-water survey the following plans and information are to be submitted:

- Details showing how rudder pintle and bush clearances are to be measured and how the security of the pintles in their sockets are to be verified with the ship afloat.
- Details showing how stern bush clearances are to be measured with the ship afloat.
- Details of high resistant paint, for information only.

2.2.6 The following supporting documents are to be submitted:

- General arrangement.
- Capacity plan.
- Lines plan or equivalent.
- Dry-docking plan.
- Towing and mooring arrangements.

2.2.7 The following supporting calculations are to be submitted:

- Equipment number.
- Hull girder still water and dynamic bending moments and shear forces as applicable.
- Midship section and other critical section modulus.
- Structural items in the aft end, midship and fore end regions of the ship.

2.2.8 In the process of plan approval and from Fatigue Design Assessment and Structural Design Assessment certain critical locations may be identified which require special attention. Plans and records of production are to be submitted in accordance with the construction monitoring procedures associated with the notation **CM**.

2.2.9 Where the specific notations are applied for additional plans will be required.

### 2.3 Plans to be supplied to the ship

2.3.1 To facilitate the ordering of materials for repairs, plans listed in 2.2.5 are to be carried on board the ship. They are to clearly indicate the disposition and grades (other than Grade A) of hull structural steel, the extent and location of higher tensile steel together with details of specification and mechanical properties, and recommendations for welding, working and treatment of these steels.

2.3.2 Similar information is to be provided where aluminium alloy or other materials are used in the construction.

2.3.3 A copy of the final Loading Manual or Stability Information booklet, when approved, is to be placed on board the ship.

2.3.4 Details of any corrosion control system fitted are to be placed on board the ship.

2.3.5 Approved plans and information covering the items detailed in 2.2.5 relating to in-water survey are to be placed on board the ship.

## 2.4 Novel features

2.4.1 Where the proposed construction of any part of the hull or machinery is of novel design, or involves the use of unusual material, or where experience, in the opinion of Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR'), has not sufficiently justified the principle or mode of application involved, special tests or examinations before and during service may be required. In such cases a suitable notation may be entered in the *Register Book*.

## 2.5 Enhanced scantlings

2.5.1 Where scantlings in excess of the approved Rule requirement are fitted at defined locations as corrosion margins or for other purposes, as specified by the Owner, a notation **ES**, 'Enhanced Scantlings', will be assigned and it will be accompanied by a list giving items to which the enhancement has been applied and the increase in scantling. For example, the item 'bottom shell (strakes A, B, C, D) +2' will indicate that an extra 2 mm has been fitted to the bottom shell of the ship for the particular strakes listed, *see also* Ch 6,2.10. In addition the plans submitted for approval are to contain the enhanced scantling plan, together with the nominal thickness, less the enhancement adjacent, in brackets.

## 2.6 Direct calculations

2.6.1 Direct calculations may be specifically required by the Rules and may be required for ships having novel design features or in support of alternative arrangements and scantlings. LR may, when requested, undertake calculations on behalf of designers and make recommendations with regard to suitability of any required model tests.

## 2.7 Exceptions

2.7.1 Ships of unusual form, proportions or speed, with unusual features, or for special or restricted service, not covered specifically by the Rules, will receive individual consideration based on the general requirements of the Rules.

---

## Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Structural design**
- 3 **Buckling**
- 4 **Vibration control**
- 5 **Dynamic loading**

## ■ Section 1 General

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 The guidance notes, information and formulae contained within this Chapter are to be used in the scantling determination (Chapter 3) and total load assessment.

### 1.2 Equivalents

1.2.1 Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') will consider direct calculations for the derivation of scantlings as an alternative and equivalent to those derived by Rule requirements in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1,3.

### 1.3 Symbols and definitions

1.3.1 The symbols used in this Chapter are defined below and in the appropriate Section:

- $Z$  = section modulus of stiffening member, in  $\text{cm}^3$
- $I$  = moment of inertia, in  $\text{cm}^4$
- $A_w$  = shear area of stiffener web, in  $\text{cm}^2$
- $l$  = overall length of stiffener or primary member, in metres
- $l_e$  = effective span length, in metres, as defined in 2.6
- $p$  = design pressure, in  $\text{kN/m}^2$
- $s$  = secondary stiffener spacing, in mm
- $S$  = primary stiffener spacing, in metres
- $t_p$  = plating thickness, in mm
- $\beta$  = panel aspect ratio correction factor as defined in 2.5
- $\gamma$  = convex curvature correction factor as defined in 2.4
- $k_s$  = higher tensile steel factor for local loads, see Ch 5,2.1.1
- $k_L$  = higher tensile steel factor for global loads, see Ch 5,2.1.2
- $\sigma_o$  = guaranteed minimum yield strength of the material, in  $\text{N/mm}^2$
- $\tau_o$  = shear strength of the material in  $\text{N/mm}^2$
- $= \frac{\sigma_o}{\sqrt{3}}$
- $E$  = modulus of elasticity, in  $\text{N/mm}^2$ .

### 1.4 Rounding policy for Rule plating thickness

1.4.1 Where plating thicknesses as determined by the Rules require to be rounded then this should be carried out to the nearest full or half millimetre, with thicknesses 0,75 and 0,25 being rounded up.

### 1.5 Material properties

1.5.1 The basic grade of steel used in the determination of the Rule scantling requirements is taken as mild steel with the following mechanical properties:

- (a) Yield strength (minimum)  $\sigma_o = 235 \text{ N/mm}^2$
- (b) Tensile strength = 400–490  $\text{N/mm}^2$
- (c) Modulus of elasticity,  $E = 200 \times 10^3 \text{ N/mm}^2$ .

### 1.6 Higher tensile steel

1.6.1 Steels having a yield stress not less than 265  $\text{N/mm}^2$  are regarded as higher tensile steels.

1.6.2 Where higher tensile steels are to be used, due allowance is given in the determination of the Rule requirement for plating thickness, stiffener section modulus, inertia and cross-sectional area by the use of higher tensile steel correction factors  $k_s$  and  $k_L$  or  $f_{hts}$ . Normally, this allowance is included in the appropriate scantling requirements. Where this is not the case, the following correction factors may be applied:

- (a) Plating thickness factor =  $\sqrt{k_s}$  for local loads  
 $\sqrt{k_L}$  for global loads
- (b) Section modulus and cross sectional area factor =  $k_s$  where  
 $k_s$  and  $k_L$  are defined in 1.3.1  
 $f_{hts}$  is defined in Ch 5,1.3.

1.6.3 Higher tensile steel may be used for both deck and bottom structures or deck structure only. Where fitted for global strength purposes, it is to be used for the whole of the longitudinal continuous material for the following vertical distances:

- (a)  $z_{htd}$  below the line of deck at side  
$$z_{htd} = \left(1 - \frac{k_L}{F_D}\right) z_D \text{ m}$$
- (b)  $z_{htb}$  above the top of keel  
$$z_{htb} = \left(1 - \frac{k_L}{F_B}\right) z_B \text{ m}$$

In the above formulae  $F_D$  and  $F_B$  are to be taken not less than  $k_L$  where

$F_D$  and  $F_B$  are defined in Ch 3,3.6. Note the  $F_D$  and  $F_B$  factors derived in Ch 3,3.6 for NS1 ships may also be applied to ship types NS2 and NS3

$z_D$  and  $z_B$  are the vertical distances, in m, from the transverse neutral axis of the hull cross-section to the uppermost continuous longitudinally effective material and to the top of the keel respectively

$k_L$  is defined in 1.3.1.

1.6.4 The designer should note that there is no increase in fatigue performance with the use of higher tensile steels.

## Section 2 Structural design

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 This Section gives the basic principles to be adopted in determining the Rule structural requirements given in Chapter 3.

2.1.2 For derivation of scantlings of stiffeners, beams, girders, etc., the formulae in the Rules are normally based on elastic or plastic theory using simple beam models supported at one or more points and with varying degrees of fixity at the ends, associated with an appropriate concentrated or distributed load.

2.1.3 The stiffener, beam or girder strength is defined by a section modulus and moments of inertia requirements. In addition there are local requirements for web thickness or flange thickness.

2.1.4 Some of the details given in this Section will be specially considered for ships with a military distinction notation **MD**.

### 2.2 Effective width of attached plating, $b_e$

2.2.1 The effective geometric properties of rolled or built sections are to be calculated directly from the dimensions of the section and associated effective area of attached plating. Where the web of the section is not normal to the actual plating, and the angle exceeds  $20^\circ$ , the properties of the section are to be determined about an axis parallel to the attached plating.

2.2.2 For stiffening members, the geometric properties of rolled or built sections are to be calculated in association with an effective area of attached load bearing plating of thickness  $t_p$ , in mm, and a breadth  $b_e$ , in mm.

2.2.3 The effective breadth of attached plating to secondary stiffener members  $b_e$ , is to be taken as:

$$b_e = 40t_p \text{ mm}$$

or 600 mm, whichever is the greater  
or the actual spacing of stiffeners in mm, whichever is the lesser.

2.2.4 The effective breadth of attached plating to primary support members (girders, transverses, webs, etc.),  $b_e$ , is to be taken as:

$$b_e = 300S \left( \frac{I}{S} \right)^{2/3} \text{ mm but is not to exceed } 1000S.$$

where

$S$  and  $I$  are as defined in 1.3.1.

### 2.3 Section properties

2.3.1 The dimensions of rolled and built stiffeners are illustrated in Fig. 2.2.1. The section properties of stiffeners can be based on the illustrated dimensions if manufacturer's information is not available.

2.3.2 The effective section properties of a corrugation over a spacing  $b$ , see Fig. 2.2.2, is to be calculated from the dimensions and, for symmetrical corrugations, may be taken as:

Section modulus

$$Z = \frac{d_w}{6000} (3b_e t_p + c t_w) \text{ cm}^3$$

Moment of inertia

$$I = \frac{Z}{10} \left( \frac{d_w}{2} \right) \text{ cm}^4$$

Shear area

$$A_w = \frac{d_w t_w}{100} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$d_w$ ,  $b_f$ ,  $t_p$ ,  $c$  and  $t_w$  are measured, in mm, and are as shown in Fig. 2.2.2. The value of  $b_e$  is to be taken not greater than  $b_f$  or:

$$50t_p \sqrt{k_s} \text{ for welded corrugations}$$

$$60t_p \sqrt{k_s} \text{ for cold formed corrugations}$$

$k_s$  = local high strength steel factor, see 1.3.1

The value of  $\theta$  is to be not less than  $40^\circ$ .

2.3.3 The section properties of a double skin primary member over a spacing  $b$ , see Fig. 2.2.3, may be calculated as:

Section modulus

$$Z = \frac{d_w}{6000} (6f b t_p + d_w t_w) \text{ cm}^3$$

Moment of inertia

$$I = \frac{Z}{10} \left( \frac{d_w}{2} \right) \text{ cm}^4$$

Shear area

$$A_w = \frac{d_w t_w}{100} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$d_w$ ,  $b$ ,  $t_p$  and  $t_w$  are measured, in mm, and are as shown in Fig. 2.2.2

$$f = 0,3 \left( \frac{1000I}{b} \right)^{2/3} \text{ mm but is not to exceed } 1,0$$

NOTE

If the plate flanges of the double bulkhead are of unequal thicknesses, then the equations in 2.3.4 may be used with  $b_e = b_f = f b$ .



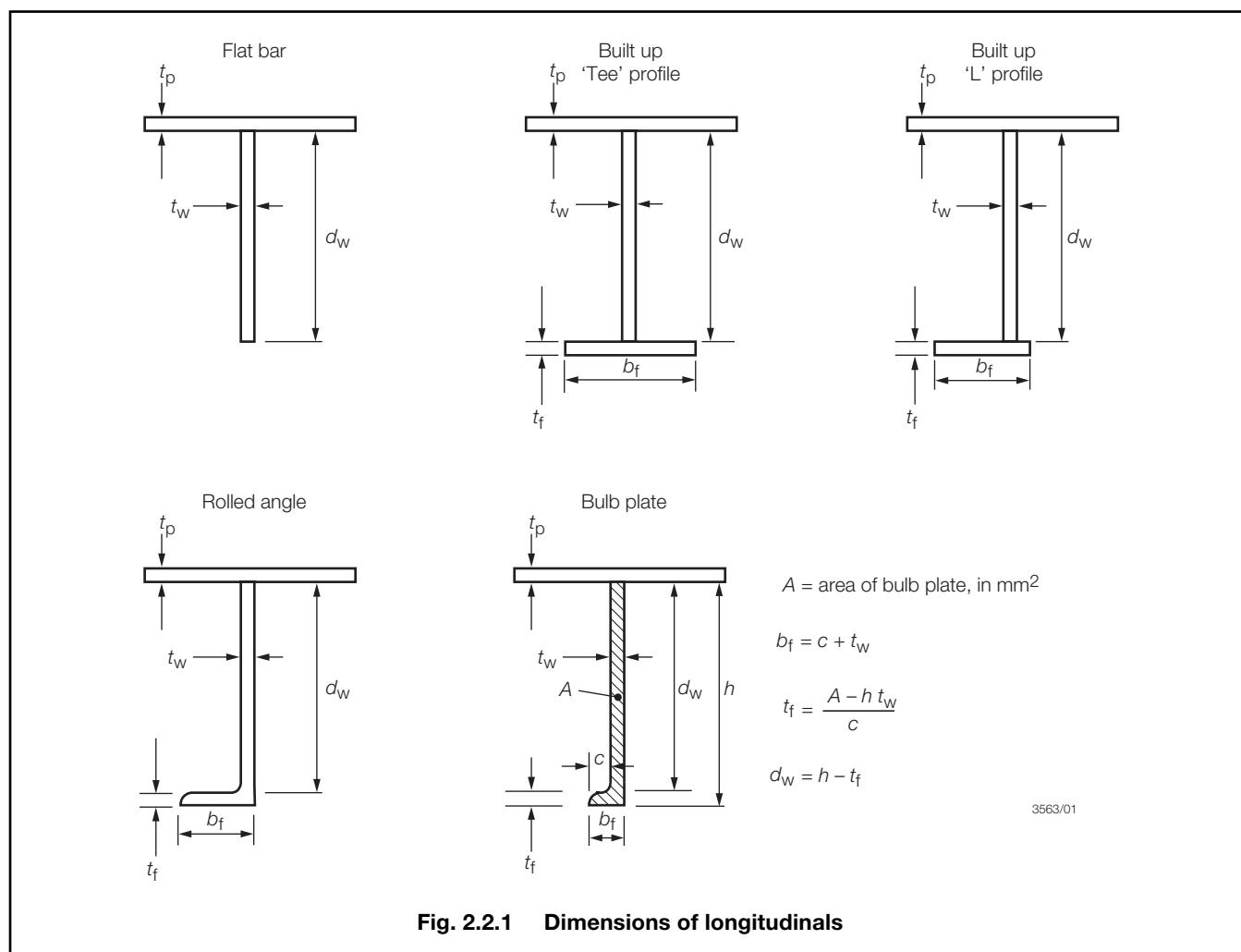


Fig. 2.2.1 Dimensions of longitudinals

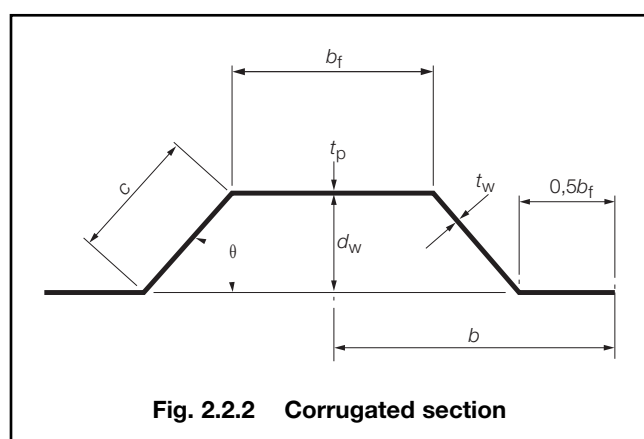


Fig. 2.2.2 Corrugated section

2.3.4 The effective section properties of a built section, see Fig. 2.2.1, may be taken as:

Section modulus of flange

$$Z_f = \frac{A_f d_w}{10} + \frac{A_w d_w}{60} \left( 1 + \frac{2(A_p - A_f)}{2A_p + A_w} \right) \text{ cm}^3$$

Neutral axis of section above plating

$$x_{na} = \frac{d_w}{A} \left( \frac{A_w}{2} + A_f \right) \text{ mm}$$

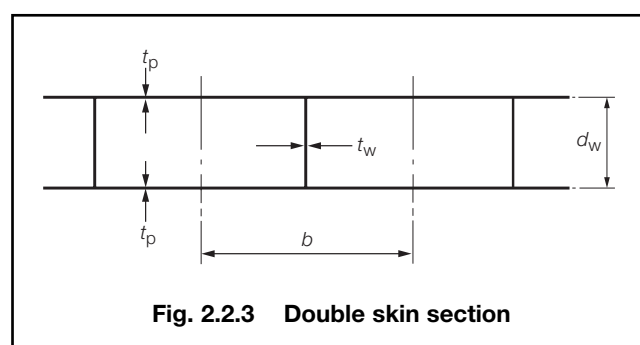


Fig. 2.2.3 Double skin section

Moment of inertia about neutral axis

$$I = \frac{Z_f}{10} (d_w - x_{na}) \text{ cm}^4$$

Section modulus at plate

$$Z_p = 10 \frac{I}{x_{na}} \text{ cm}^3$$

Shear area

$$A_w = \frac{d_w t_w}{100} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

- $A_f$  = area of face plate of flange in  $\text{cm}^2$   
 $A_w$  = area of web plating in  $\text{cm}^2$   
 $A_p$  = area of attached plating in  $\text{cm}^2$ , see 2.3.5  
 $A = A_f + A_w + A_p$   
 $d_w$  = the depth, in mm, of the web between the inside of the face plate and the attached plating. Where the member is at right angles to a line of corrugations, the minimum depth is to be taken  
 $b_e$  = effective breadth of attached plating, in mm, see 2.2  
 $b_f$ ,  $t_f$ ,  $d_w$ ,  $t_w$  and  $t_p$  are in mm and are illustrated in Fig. 2.2.1.

2.3.5 The geometric properties of primary support members (i.e. girders, transverses, webs, stringers, etc.) attached to corrugated bulkheads, are to be calculated in association with an effective area of attached load bearing plating,  $A_p$ , determined as follows:

- (a) For a member attached to corrugated plating and parallel to the corrugations:  
 $A_p = b_f t_p / 100 \text{ cm}^2$   
 (See Fig. 2.2.2).
- (b) For a member attached to corrugated plating and at right angles to the corrugations:  
 $A_p$  is to be taken as equivalent to the area of the face plate of the member.

## 2.4 Convex curvature correction

2.4.1 The thickness of plating as determined by the Rules may be reduced where significant curvature exists between the supporting members. In such cases a plate curvature correction factor may be applied:

- $\gamma$  = plate curvature factor  
 $= 1 - d_c/s_c$ , and is not to be taken as less than 0,7  
 $d_c$  = the distance, in mm, measured perpendicularly from the chord length,  $s_c$ , (i.e. spacing in mm) to the highest point of the curved plating arc between the two supports, see Fig. 2.2.4.

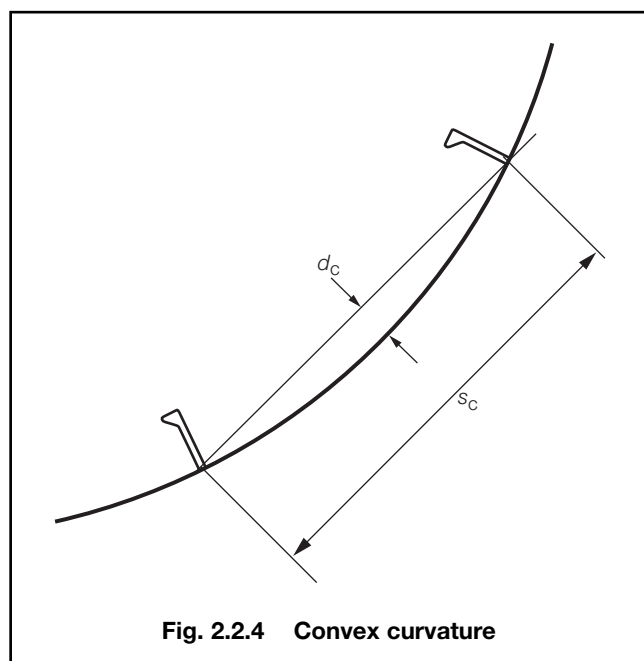


Fig. 2.2.4 Convex curvature

## 2.5 Aspect ratio correction

2.5.1 The thickness of plating as determined by the Rules may be reduced when the panel aspect ratio is taken into consideration. In such cases a panel aspect ratio correction factor may be applied:

- $\beta$  = aspect ratio correction factor  
 $= A_R (1 - 0,25A_R)$  for  $A_R \leq 2$   
 $= 1$  for  $A_R > 2$   
 $A_R$  = panel aspect ratio  
 $= \text{panel length} / \text{panel breadth}$ .

## 2.6 Determination of span length

2.6.1 The effective span length,  $l_e$ , of a stiffening member is generally less than the overall length,  $l$ , by an amount which depends on the design of the end connections. The span points, between which the value of  $l_e$  is measured, are to be determined as follows:

- (a) For rolled or built-up secondary stiffening members:  
 The span point is to be taken at the point where the depth of the end bracket, measured from the face of the secondary stiffening member, is equal to the depth of the member, see Fig. 2.2.5. Where there is no end bracket, the span point is to be measured between primary member webs.
- (b) For primary support members:  
 The span point is to be taken at a point distant,  $b_s$ , from the end of the member

$$b_s = b_b \left( 1 - \frac{d_w}{d_b} \right)$$

where

$b_s$ ,  $b_b$ ,  $d_w$  and  $d_s$  are as shown in Fig. 2.2.5.

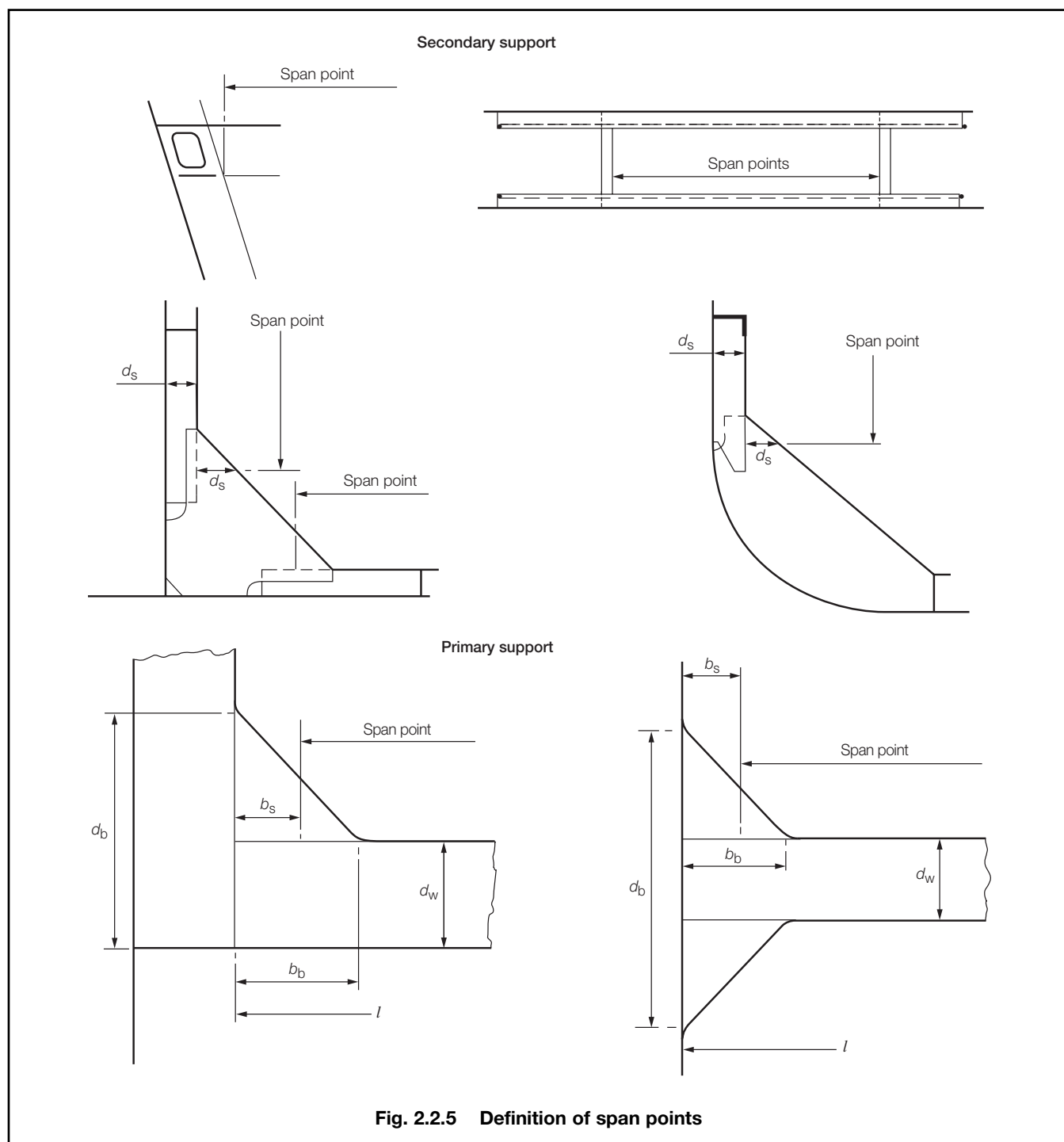
2.6.2 Where the stiffening member is inclined to a vertical or horizontal axis and the inclination exceeds  $10^\circ$ , the span is to be measured along the member.

2.6.3 Where the stiffening member is curved then the span is to be taken as the effective chord length between span points.

2.6.4 It is assumed that the ends of stiffening members are substantially fixed against rotation and displacement. If the arrangement of supporting structure is such that this condition is not achieved, consideration will be given to the effective span to be used for the stiffener.

## 2.7 Plating general

2.7.1 The equation given in this sub-Section is to be used to determine the thickness of plating for NS2 and NS3 ship types. The design pressure,  $p$ , is given in the Tables in Ch 3,4 for each structural component and is to be used with the limiting stress coefficient, see Ch 5,3.1.1, to determine the required plate thickness.



2.7.2 The requirements for the thickness of plating,  $t_p$ , is, in general, to be in accordance with the following:

$$t_p = 22,4s \gamma \beta \sqrt{\frac{p}{f_\sigma \sigma_o}} \times 10^{-3} \text{ mm}$$

where

- $p$  is the design pressure, in  $\text{kN/m}^2$ , given in Ch 3,4
- $f_\sigma$  = limiting stress coefficient for local plate bending for the plating area under consideration given in Ch 5,3,  $\sigma_o$  column in Table 5.3.2, see also Ch 5,3.1.1
- $s, \gamma, \beta, \sigma_o$  are as defined in 1.3.1.

## 2.8 Stiffening general

2.8.1 The equations given in this sub-Section are to be used to derive the scantling requirements for stiffeners. The design pressure,  $p$ , is given in the Tables in Ch 3,4 for each structural component and is to be used with the limiting stress coefficient, see Ch 5,3.1.1, to determine the required section modulus, web area and inertia of the stiffeners.

2.8.2 The requirements for section modulus, inertia and web area of stiffening members subjected to pressure loads are, in general, to be in accordance with the following:

(a) For secondary members:

Section modulus:

$$Z = \frac{\phi_z \rho s l_e^2}{f_\sigma \sigma_o} \text{ cm}^3$$

Inertia:

$$I = \frac{100 \phi_I \rho s l_e^3}{f_\delta E} \text{ cm}^4$$

Web area:

$$A_w = \frac{\phi_A \rho s l_e}{100 f_\tau \tau_o} \text{ cm}^2$$

(b) For primary members:

Section modulus:

$$Z = \frac{10^3 \phi_z \rho s l_e^2}{f_\sigma \sigma_o} \text{ cm}^3$$

Inertia:

$$I = \frac{10^5 \phi_I \rho s l_e^3}{f_\delta E} \text{ cm}^4$$

Web area:

$$A_w = \frac{10 \phi_A \rho s l_e}{f_\tau \tau_o} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

- $\rho$  is the design pressure, in kN/m<sup>2</sup>, given in Ch 3,4
- $\phi_z$  = section modulus coefficient dependent on the loading model assumption taken from Table 2.2.1
- $f_\sigma$  = limiting local stiffener bending stress coefficient for stiffening member given in Ch 5,3.1.1
- $\phi_I$  = inertia coefficient dependent on the loading model assumption taken from Table 2.2.1
- $f_\delta$  = limiting inertia coefficient for stiffener member given in Ch 5,3.1.1
- $\phi_A$  = web area coefficient dependent on the loading model assumption taken from Table 2.2.1
- $f_\tau$  = limiting web area coefficient for stiffener member given in Ch 5,3.1.1
- $E, S, s, l_e, \sigma_o$  and  $\tau_o$  are as defined in 1.3.1.

2.8.3 The requirements for section modulus, inertia and web area of stiffening members subjected to point loads are, in general, to be in accordance with the following:

For primary and secondary members:

Section modulus:

$$Z = \frac{10^3 \phi_z F l_e}{f_\sigma \sigma_o} \text{ cm}^3$$

Inertia:

$$I = \frac{10^5 \phi_I F l_e^2}{f_\delta E} \text{ cm}^4$$

Web area:

$$A_w = \frac{10 \phi_A F}{f_\tau \tau_o} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

- $F$  is the design point load, in kN
- $\phi_z$  = section modulus coefficient dependent on the loading model assumption taken from Table 2.2.1

$f_\sigma$  = limiting local stiffener bending stress coefficient for stiffening member given in Ch 5,3.1.1, column  $\sigma_x$  in Table 5.3.2

$\phi_I$  = inertia coefficient dependent on the loading model assumption taken from Table 2.2.1

$f_\delta$  = limiting inertia coefficient for stiffener member given in Ch 5,3.1.1, column  $f_\delta$  in Table 5.3.2

$\phi_A$  = web area coefficient dependent on the loading model assumption taken from Table 2.2.1

$f_\tau$  = limiting web area coefficient for stiffener member given in Ch 5,3.1.1, column  $f_\tau$  in Table 5.3.2

$E, l_e$ , and  $\sigma_o$  are as defined in 1.3.1.

2.8.4 Where a stiffener is subjected to a combination of loads, then the requirements are to be based on the linear superposition of those loads onto the stiffener. For example the section modulus requirement for a UDL load and a point load will be as follows:

$$Z = \frac{\phi_z \rho s l_e^2}{f_\sigma \sigma_o} + \frac{10^3 \phi_z F l_e}{f_\sigma \sigma_o} \text{ cm}^3$$

## 2.9 Proportions of stiffener sections

2.9.1 From structural stability and local buckling considerations, the proportions of stiffening members are, in general, to be in accordance with Table 2.2.2. For primary member minimum thickness see Table 6.5.1 in Pt 6, Ch 6.

2.9.2 Primary members of asymmetrical section are to be supported by tripping brackets at alternate secondary members. If the section is symmetrical, the tripping brackets may be four spaces apart.

2.9.3 Tripping brackets are in general required to be fitted at the toes of end brackets and in way of heavy or concentrated loads such as the heels of pillars.

2.9.4 Where the ratio of unsupported width of face plate (or flange) to its thickness exceeds 16:1, the tripping brackets are to be connected to the face plate and on members of symmetrical section, the brackets are to be fitted on both sides of the web.

2.9.5 Intermediate secondary members may be welded directly to the web or connected by lugs in accordance with Ch 6,5.3.

## 2.10 Grillage structures

2.10.1 For complex girder systems, a complete structural analysis using numerical methods may have to be performed to demonstrate that the stress levels are acceptable when subjected to the most severe and realistic combination of loading conditions intended.

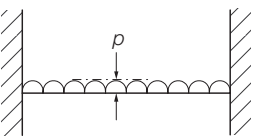
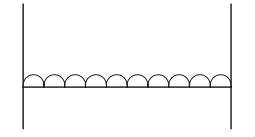
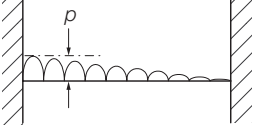
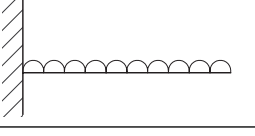
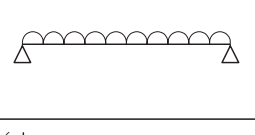
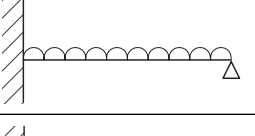
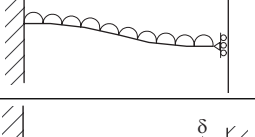
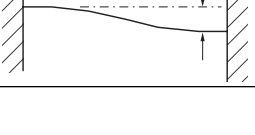
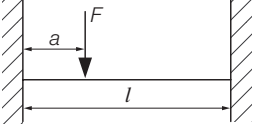
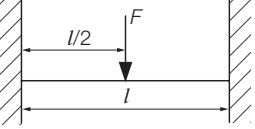
2.10.2 General or special purpose computer programs or other analytical techniques may be used provided that the effects of bending, shear, axial and torsion are properly accounted for and the theory and idealisation used can be justified.

## Design Tools

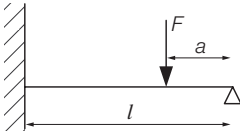
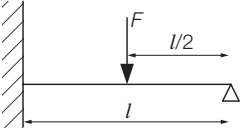
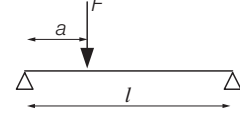
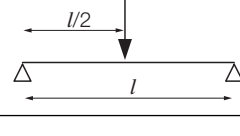
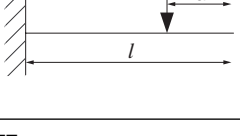
## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 2

Section 2

Table 2.2.1 Section modulus, inertia and web area coefficients for different load models (see continuation)

| Load model | Position (j)                                                                        |           |       | (j)         | Web area coefficient<br>$\phi_A$ | Section modulus coefficient<br>$\phi_Z$ | Inertia coefficient<br>$\phi_I$    | Application                                                                                                                |
|------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-------|-------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|            | 1 end                                                                               | 2 midspan | 3 end |             |                                  |                                         |                                    |                                                                                                                            |
| (A)        |    |           |       | 1<br>2<br>3 | 1/2<br>—<br>1/2                  | 1/12<br>-1/24<br>1/12                   | —<br>1/384<br>—                    | Primary and other members where the end fixity is considered encastré<br>Uniformly distributed pressure                    |
| (B)        |    |           |       | 1<br>2<br>3 | 1/2<br>—<br>1/2                  | 1/10<br>-1/10<br>1/10                   | —<br>1/288<br>—                    | Local, secondary and other members where the end fixity is considered to be partial<br>Uniformly distributed pressure      |
| (C)        |    |           |       | 1<br>2<br>3 | 7/20<br>—<br>3/20                | 1/20<br>—<br>1/30                       | —<br>1/764<br>—                    | Linearly varying distributed pressure<br>Built in both ends                                                                |
| (D)        |   |           |       | 1<br>2<br>3 | 1<br>—<br>—                      | 1/2<br>—<br>—                           | 1/8<br>—<br>—                      | Uniformly distributed pressure cantilevered beam                                                                           |
| (E)        |  |           |       | 1<br>2<br>3 | 1/2<br>—<br>1/2                  | —<br>1/8<br>—                           | —<br>5/384<br>—                    | Uniformly distributed pressure<br>Simply supported<br>Hatch covers, glazing and other members where the ends are not fixed |
| (F)        |  |           |       | 1<br>2<br>3 | 5/8<br>—<br>3/8                  | 1/8<br>-9/128<br>—                      | —<br>1/185<br>—                    | Uniformly distributed pressure<br>Cantilever plus simple support                                                           |
| (G)        |  |           |       | 1<br>2<br>3 | 1<br>—<br>—                      | 1/3<br>0<br>1/3                         | 0<br>—<br>1/24                     | Uniformly distributed pressure<br>Built in one end. Other end free to deflect but slope restrained                         |
| (H)        |  |           |       | 1<br>2<br>3 | 6<br>—<br>6                      | 12<br>—<br>12                           | —<br>—<br>—                        | Built in both ends with forced deflection at one end                                                                       |
| (I)        |  |           |       | 1           | $\frac{(l-a)^2(l+2a)}{l^3}$      | $\frac{a(l-a)^2}{l^3}$                  | —                                  | Single point load, load anywhere in the span                                                                               |
|            |                                                                                     |           |       | 2           | —                                | $-\frac{2a^2(l-a)^2}{l^4}$              | $\frac{2(l-a)^2a^3}{3(l+2a)^2l^3}$ | Built in at both ends                                                                                                      |
|            |                                                                                     |           |       | 3           | $\frac{a^2(3l-2a)}{l^3}$         | $\frac{a^2(l-a)}{l^3}$                  | —                                  |                                                                                                                            |
|            |  |           |       | 1           | 1/2                              | 1/8                                     | —                                  | Single point load in the centre of the span                                                                                |
|            |                                                                                     |           |       | 2           | —                                | -1/8                                    | 1/192                              | Built in at both ends                                                                                                      |
|            |                                                                                     |           |       | 3           | 1/2                              | 1/8                                     | —                                  |                                                                                                                            |

**Table 2.2.1** Section modulus, inertia and web area coefficients for different load models (conclusion)

| Load model                                                                                                                               | Position (j)                                                                        |              |          | (j) | Web area coefficient              | Section modulus coefficient          | Inertia coefficient                                              | Application                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------|-----|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                          | 1<br>end                                                                            | 2<br>midspan | 3<br>end |     | $\phi_A$                          | $\phi_Z$                             | $\phi_I$                                                         |                                              |
| (J)                                                                                                                                      |    |              |          | 1   | $\frac{a (3l^2 - a^2)}{2l^3}$     | $\frac{a (l^2 - a^2)}{2l^3}$         | —                                                                | Single point load, load anywhere in the span |
|                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                     |              |          | 2   | —                                 | $\frac{-a (l - a)^2 (2l + a)}{2l^4}$ | $\frac{a (l - a)^2}{6l^3} \left( \frac{a}{2l + a} \right)^{1/2}$ | Cantilever plus simple support               |
|                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                     |              |          | 3   | $\frac{(l - a)^2 (2l + a)}{2l^3}$ | —                                    | —                                                                |                                              |
|                                                                                                                                          |    |              |          | 1   | 11/16                             | 3/16                                 | —                                                                | Single point load in the centre of the span  |
|                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                     |              |          | 2   | —                                 | 5/32                                 | 1/108                                                            |                                              |
|                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                     |              |          | 3   | 5/16                              | —                                    | —                                                                | Cantilever plus simple support               |
| (K)                                                                                                                                      |   |              |          | 1   | $\frac{l - a}{l}$                 | —                                    | —                                                                | Single point load, load anywhere in the span |
|                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                     |              |          | 2   | —                                 | $\frac{-a (l - a)}{l^2}$             | $\frac{a}{3l^4} \left( \frac{l^2 - a^2}{3} \right)^{3/2}$        |                                              |
|                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                     |              |          | 3   | $\frac{a}{l}$                     | —                                    | —                                                                | Simply supported                             |
|                                                                                                                                          |  |              |          | 1   | 1/2                               | —                                    | —                                                                | Single point load in the centre of the span  |
|                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                     |              |          | 2   | —                                 | - 1/4                                | 1/48                                                             |                                              |
|                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                     |              |          | 3   | 1/2                               | —                                    | —                                                                | Simply supported                             |
| (L)                                                                                                                                      |  |              |          | 1   | 1                                 | $\frac{(l - a)}{l}$                  | —                                                                | Single point load anywhere in the span       |
|                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                     |              |          | 2   | —                                 | —                                    | —                                                                |                                              |
|                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                     |              |          | 3   | —                                 | —                                    | $\frac{2l^3 - 3l^2 a + a^3}{l^3}$                                | Cantilevered beam                            |
| NOTE<br>In all cases, the coefficient that results in the most pessimistic requirement is to be used in the stiffening equations in 2.8. |                                                                                     |              |          |     |                                   |                                      |                                                                  |                                              |

**Table 2.2.2** Stiffener proportions

| Type of stiffener                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Requirement                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Flat bar continuous intercostal                                                                                                                                                                                    | Minimum web thickness:<br>$t_w = d_w/18 \geq 2,5 \text{ mm}$<br>$t_w = d_w/15 \geq 2,5 \text{ mm}$                                         |
| (2) Rolled or built sections                                                                                                                                                                                           | (a) Minimum web thickness:<br>$t_w = d_w/60 \geq 2,5 \text{ mm}$<br>(b) Maximum unsupported face plate (or flange) width:<br>$b_f = 16t_f$ |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                            |
| $t_w$ = web thickness of stiffener with unstiffened webs, in mm<br>$d_w$ = web depth of stiffener, in mm<br>$b_f$ = face plate (or flange) unsupported width, in mm<br>$t_f$ = face plate (or flange) thickness, in mm |                                                                                                                                            |

2.10.3 In general, grillages consisting of slender girders may be idealised as frames based on beam theory provided proper account of the variations of geometric properties is taken. For cases where such an assumption is not applicable, finite element analysis or equivalent methods may have to be used.

## Section 3 Buckling

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 This Section contains the requirements for buckling control of plate panels subject to in-plane compressive and/or shear stresses and buckling control of primary and secondary stiffening members subject to axial compressive and shear stresses.

3.1.2 The requirement for buckling control of plate panels is contained in 3.3 to 3.6. The requirements for secondary stiffening members are contained in 3.7 to 3.8. The requirements for primary members are contained in 3.9 and 3.10.

3.1.3 In general all areas of the structure are to meet the buckling strength requirements for the design stresses. The design stresses are to be taken as the global hull girder bending and shear stresses derived in accordance with Chapter 4. In addition, where the structural member is subject to local compressive loads, then the design stresses are to be based on these loads.

3.1.4 The buckling requirements are to be met using the net scantlings, hence any additional thickness for corrosion margin or Owners extra is not included in scantlings used to assess the buckling performance.

### 3.2 Symbols

3.2.1 The symbols used in this Section are defined below and in the appropriate sub-Section:

$A_R$  = panel aspect ratio

$$= \frac{a}{b}$$

$a$  = panel length, i.e., parallel to direction of compressive stress being considered, in mm

$b$  = panel breadth, i.e. perpendicular to direction of compressive stress being considered, in mm

$S_p$  = span of primary members, in metres

$\sigma_e$  = elastic compressive buckling stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\sigma_c$  = critical compressive buckling stress, including the effects of plasticity where appropriate, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\tau_e$  = elastic shear buckling stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\tau_c$  = critical shear buckling stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$$b_{eb} = \text{lesser of } 1,9t_p \sqrt{\frac{E}{\sigma_o}} \text{ or } 0,8b \text{ mm}$$

$A_{te}$  = cross-sectional area of secondary stiffener, in cm<sup>2</sup>, including an effective breadth of attached plating,  $b_{eb}$

$s$  = length of shorter edge of plate panel, in mm (typically the spacing of secondary stiffeners)

$l$  = length of longer edge of plate panel, in metres

$S$  = spacing of primary member, in metres (measured in direction of compression)

### 3.3 Plate panel buckling requirements

3.3.1 The Section gives methods for evaluating the buckling strength of plate panels subjected to the following load fields:

- (a) uni-axial compressive loads;
- (b) shear loads;
- (c) bi-axial compressive loads;
- (d) uni-axial compressive loads and shear loads;
- (e) bi-axial compressive loads and shear loads.

3.3.2 The plate panel buckling requirements will be satisfied if the buckling interaction equations given in Table 2.3.2 for the above load fields are complied with.

3.3.3 The critical compressive buckling stresses and critical shear buckling stresses required for Table 2.3.2 are to be derived in accordance with 3.4.

3.3.4 The buckling factors of safety  $\lambda_\sigma$  and  $\lambda_\tau$  required by Table 2.3.2 are to be extracted from Chapter 5 for the structural member concerned.

3.3.5 For all structural members which contribute to the hull girder strength, the plate panel buckling requirements for uni-axial compressive loads, Table 2.3.2(a), and shear loads, Table 2.3.2(b) are to be complied with.

3.3.6 In addition to 3.3.5, structural members which are subjected to local compressive loads and/or shear loads are to be verified using the plate panel buckling requirements in Table 2.3.2(c) to (e).

3.3.7 However, where some members of the structure have been designed such that elastic buckling of the plate panel between the stiffeners is allowable, then the requirements of 3.5 must be applied to the buckling analysis of the stiffeners supporting the plating. In addition, panels which do not satisfy the panel buckling requirements must be indicated on the appropriate drawing and the effect of these panels not being effective in transmitting compressive loads taken into account for the hull girder strength calculation, see Ch 4, 1.4.7 and 1.4.8.

3.3.8 In general the plate panel buckling requirements for more complex load fields, see 3.3.1(c), (d) and (e), are to be complied with. Where this is not possible, due to elastic buckling of the panel, then the critical buckling stress,  $\sigma_c$ , may be based on the ultimate collapse strength of the plating,  $\sigma_u$  from 3.5.4, instead of the elastic buckling stress,  $\sigma_e$ , derived in 3.3.5. In addition, the requirements of 3.5 are to be met for the supporting secondary stiffeners and primary members.

### 3.4 Derivation of the buckling stress for plate panels

3.4.1 The critical compressive buckling stress,  $\sigma_c$ , for a plate panel subjected to uni-axial in-plane compressive loads is to be derived in accordance with Table 2.3.1(a).

3.4.2 The critical shear buckling stress,  $\tau_c$ , for a plate panel subjected to pure in-plane shear load is to be derived in accordance with Table 2.3.1(b).

**Table 2.3.1 Buckling stress of plate panels**

| Mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Elastic buckling stress, N/mm <sup>2</sup> see Note                                                                                                                                                 |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| (a) Uni-axial compression:<br>(i) Long narrow panels, loaded on the narrow edge<br><br>(ii) Short broad panels, loaded on the broad edge                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | $A_R \geq 1$<br>$\sigma_e = 3,62\varphi E \left( \frac{t_p}{b} \right)^2$<br><br>$A_R < 1$<br>$\sigma_e = 0,9C \varphi \left( \frac{b}{a} + \frac{a}{b} \right)^2 E \left( \frac{t_p}{b} \right)^2$ |  |
| (b) Pure shear:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | $\tau_e = 3,62 \left( 1,335 + \left( \frac{u}{v} \right)^2 \right) E \left( \frac{t_p}{u} \right)^2$<br><br>NOTE<br>$u$ is to be the minimum dimension                                              |  |
| <b>NOTE</b><br>The critical buckling stresses, in N/mm <sup>2</sup> , are to be derived from the elastic buckling stresses as follows:<br><br>$\sigma_c = \sigma_e$ when $\sigma_e < \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$<br>$= \sigma_o \left( 1 - \frac{\sigma_o}{4\sigma_e} \right)$ when $\sigma_e \geq \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$<br><br>$\sigma_c$ is defined in 3.2.1<br>$\sigma_o$ is defined in 1.3.1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |
| <b>Symbols and definitions</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |
| $A_R$ = panel aspect ratio, see 3.2.1<br>$\sigma_e$ = elastic compressive buckling stress, in N/mm <sup>2</sup><br>$\tau_e$ = elastic shear buckling stress, in N/mm <sup>2</sup><br>$a$ and $b$ are the panel dimensions in mm, see figures above<br>$t_p$ = thickness of plating, in mm<br>$\varphi$ = stress distribution factor for linearly varying compressive stress across plate width<br>$= 0,47\mu^2 - 1,4\mu + 1,93$ for $\mu \geq 0$<br>$= 1$ for constant stress<br>$\mu = \frac{\sigma_{d1}}{\sigma_{d2}}$ where $\sigma_{d1}$ and $\sigma_{d2}$ are the smaller and larger average compressive stresses respectively<br><br>$E$ = Young's Modulus of elasticity of material, in N/mm <sup>2</sup><br>$C$ = stiffener influence factor for panels with stiffeners perpendicular to compressive stress<br>$= 1,3$ when plating stiffened by floors or deep girders<br>$= 1,21$ when stiffeners are built up profiles or rolled angles<br>$= 1,10$ when stiffeners are bulb flats<br>$= 1,05$ when stiffeners are flat bars<br>$\sigma_d$ and $\tau_d$ are the design compressive and design shear stresses in the direction illustrated in the figures. With linearly varying stress across the plate panel, $\sigma_d$ is to be taken as $\sigma_{d2}$ |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |  |

3.4.3 For welded plate panels with plating thicknesses below 8 mm, the critical compressive buckling stress is to be reduced to account for the presence of residual welding stresses. The critical buckling stress for plating is to be taken as the minimum of:

$$\sigma_{cr} = \sigma_e - \sigma_r$$

$\sigma_c$  derived using 3.4.1

where

$\sigma_r$  = reduction in compressive buckling stress due to residual welding stresses

$$= \frac{2 \beta_{RS} \sigma_o}{b/t_p}$$

$\beta_{RS}$  = residual stress coefficient dependent on type of weld (average value of  $\beta_{RS}$  to be taken as 3)

$t_p$  and  $\sigma_o$  are defined in 1.3.1

$\sigma_c$  is derived in 3.4.1

$b$  is defined in 3.2.1.

3.4.4 In general the effect of lateral loading on plate panels (for example hydrostatic pressure on bottom shell plating) may be neglected and the critical buckling stresses calculated considering the in-plane stresses only.

3.4.5 Unless indicated otherwise, the effect of initial deflection on the buckling strength of plate panels may be ignored.



## 3.5 Additional requirements for plate panels which buckle elastically

3.5.1 Elastic buckling of plate panels between stiffeners occurs when both the following conditions are satisfied:

- (a) The design compressive stress,  $\sigma_d$ , is greater than the elastic buckling stress of the plating,  $\sigma_e$ ,

$$\sigma_d > \sigma_e$$

- (b) The elastic buckling stress is less than half the yield stress

$$\sigma_e \leq \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$$

3.5.2 Elastic buckling of local plating between stiffeners, including girders or floors etc, may be allowed if all of the following conditions are satisfied:

- (a) The critical buckling stress of the stiffeners in all buckling modes is greater than the axial stress in the stiffeners after redistribution of the load from the elastically buckled plating into the stiffeners, hence

$$\frac{\sigma_{de}}{\sigma_{c(i)}} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda_\sigma}$$

where

$i = (a), (t), (w) \text{ or } (f)$

- (b) Maximum predicted loadings are used in the calculations.

- (c) Functional requirements will allow a degree of plating deformation.

where

$\sigma_{de}$  is the stiffener axial stress given in 3.5.5

$\sigma_{c(i)}$  is given by Table 2.3.3

$i$  is a, t, w or f depending on the mode of buckling.

$\lambda_\sigma$  is the buckling factor of safety given in Table 5.3.2 in Chapter 5.

3.5.3 The effective breadth of attached plating for stiffeners, girder or beams that is to be used for the determination of the critical buckling stress of the stiffeners attached to plating which buckles elastically is to be taken as follows:

$$b_{eu} = \frac{b \sigma_u}{\sigma_o} \text{ mm}$$

where

$\sigma_u$  = ultimate buckling strength of plating as given in 3.5.4

$\sigma_o$  is defined in 1.3.1

$b_{eu}$  = effective panel breadth perpendicular to direction of compressive stress being considered

$b$  is given in 3.2.1.

3.5.4 The ultimate buckling strength of plating,  $\sigma_u$ , which buckles elastically, may be determined as follows:

- (a) shortest edge loaded, i.e.  $A_R \geq 1$ :

$$\sigma_u = \sigma_o \left( \frac{1.9}{\Omega} - \frac{0.8}{\Omega^2} \right) \text{ N/mm}^2$$

- (b) longest edge loaded i.e.  $A_R < 1$ :

$$\sigma_u = \frac{1.77 \sigma_o A_R^{0.78}}{\Omega} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$$\Omega = \frac{s}{t_p} \sqrt{\frac{\sigma_o}{E}}$$

$A_R$  and  $s$  are defined in 3.2.1.

$t_p$ ,  $E$  and  $\sigma_o$  are defined in 1.3.1.

3.5.5 The axial stress in stiffeners attached to plating which is likely to buckle elastically is to be derived as follows:

$$\sigma_{de} = \sigma_d \frac{A_t}{A_{tb}}$$

where

$\sigma_d$  is the axial stress in the stiffener when the plating can be considered fully effective

$$A_t = A_s + \frac{bt}{100} \text{ cm}^2$$

$$A_{tb} = A_s + \frac{b_{eu} t}{100} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$b$  and  $b_{eu}$  are given in 3.5.3

$t$  is the plating thickness, in mm

$A_s$  is the stiffener area in  $\text{cm}^2$ .

## 3.6 Shear buckling of stiffened panels

3.6.1 The shear buckling capability of longitudinally stiffened panels between primary members is to satisfy the following condition:

$$\frac{\tau_d}{\tau_c} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda_\tau}$$

where

$\tau_c$  is derived from 3.6.3

$\tau_d$  is the design shear stress

$\lambda_\tau$  is given in Table 5.3.2 in Chapter 5.

3.6.2 The elastic shear buckling stress of longitudinally stiffened panels between primary members may be taken as:

$$\tau_e = K_s E \left( \frac{t}{s} \right)^2 \text{ for } A_R \geq 1$$

where

$$K_s = 4.5 \left( \left( \frac{s}{1000l} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{N^2} + \left( \frac{N^2 - 1}{N^2} \right) \left( \frac{\omega}{1 + \omega} \right)^r \right)$$

$N$  = number of subpanels

$$= \frac{1000S_p}{s}$$

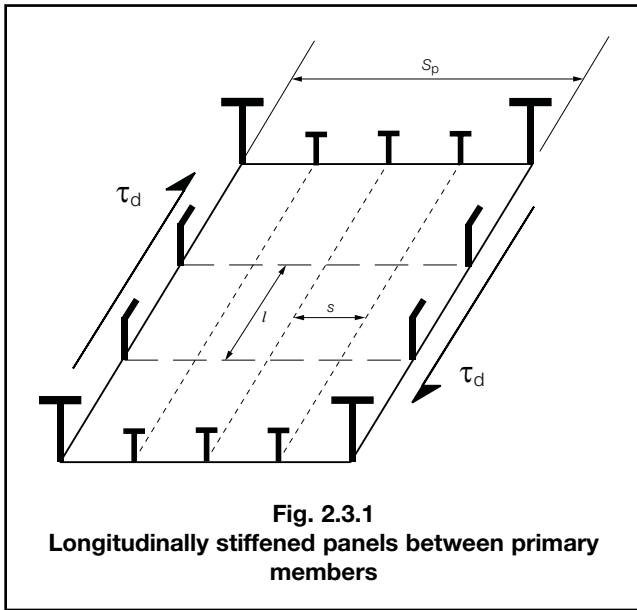
$$\omega = \frac{10I_{se}}{l t^3}$$

$I_{se}$  = moment of inertia of a section, in  $\text{cm}^4$ , consisting of the longitudinal stiffener and a plate flange of effective width  $s/2$

$$r = 1 - 0.75 \left( \frac{s}{1000l} \right)$$

$s$ ,  $l$ ,  $E$  and  $S_p$  are as defined in 3.2.1, see also Fig. 2.3.1.

3.6.3 The critical shear buckling stress,  $\tau_c$ , may be determined from  $\tau_e$ , see Note in Table 2.3.1.



**Fig. 2.3.1**  
Longitudinally stiffened panels between primary members

### 3.7 Secondary stiffening in direction of compression

3.7.1 The buckling performance of stiffeners will be considered satisfactory if the following conditions are satisfied:

$$\frac{\sigma_d}{\sigma_{c(a)}} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda_\sigma} \quad \frac{\sigma_d}{\sigma_{c(t)}} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda_\sigma}$$

$$\frac{\sigma_d}{\sigma_{c(w)}} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda_\sigma} \quad \frac{\sigma_d}{\sigma_{c(f)}} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda_\sigma}$$

where

$\sigma_{c(a)}$ ,  $\sigma_{c(t)}$ ,  $\sigma_{c(w)}$  and  $\sigma_{c(f)}$  are the critical buckling stress of the stiffener for each mode of failure, see 3.7.2

$\sigma_d$  is the design compressive stress, see also 3.1.3 and 3.5  
 $\lambda_\sigma$  is the buckling factor of safety given in Table 5.3.2 in Chapter 5. The value of  $\lambda_\sigma$  to be chosen depends on the buckling assessment of the attached plating, see Note 3, Table 5.3.2.

3.7.2 The critical buckling stresses for the overall, torsional, web and flange buckling modes of longitudinals and secondary stiffening members under axial compressive loads are to be determined in accordance with Table 2.3.3.

3.7.3 To prevent torsional buckling of secondary stiffeners from occurring before buckling of the plating, the critical torsional buckling stress,  $\sigma_{c(t)}$ , is to be greater than the critical buckling stress of the attached plating as detailed in 3.4.1.

3.7.4 The critical buckling stresses of the stiffener web,  $\sigma_{c(w)}$ , and flange,  $\sigma_{c(f)}$ , are to be greater than the critical torsional buckling stress, hence:

$$\sigma_{c(w)} > \sigma_{c(t)}$$

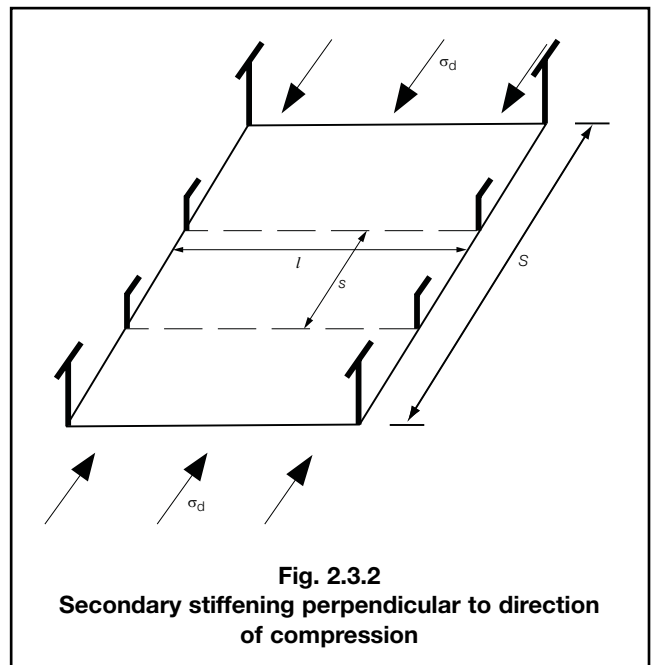
$$\sigma_{c(f)} > \sigma_{c(t)}$$

3.7.5 To ensure that overall buckling of the stiffened panel cannot occur before local buckling of the secondary stiffener, the critical overall buckling stress  $\sigma_{c(a)}$ , is to be greater than the critical torsional buckling stress, hence:

$$\sigma_{c(a)} > \sigma_{c(t)}$$

### 3.8 Secondary stiffening perpendicular to direction of compression

3.8.1 Where a stiffened panel of plating is subjected to a compressive load perpendicular to the direction of the stiffeners, see Fig. 2.3.2, e.g., a transversely stiffened panel subject to longitudinal compressive load, the requirements of this Section are to be applied.



**Fig. 2.3.2**  
Secondary stiffening perpendicular to direction of compression

3.8.2 The minimum moment of inertia of each stiffener including attached effective plating of width,  $b_{eb}$ , to ensure that overall panel buckling does not precede plate buckling is to be taken as:

$$I_s = \frac{D s (4N_L^2 - 1)((N_L^2 - 1)^2 - 2(N_L^2 - 1)\kappa + \kappa^2)}{2(5N_L^2 + 1 - \kappa)\Pi^4 E} \text{ mm}^4$$

where

$$D = \frac{E t_p^3}{12(1 - \nu^2)}$$

$$\kappa = A_R^2 \Pi^2$$

$A_R$  = plate panel aspect ratio

$$= \frac{s}{1000l}$$

$$\Pi = \frac{S}{l}$$

$N_L$  = number of plate panels

$N_L - 1$  = number of stiffeners

$\nu = 0,3$

$s$ ,  $I$  and  $S$  are defined in 3.2.1 and shown in Fig. 2.3.2  
 $t_p$  and  $E$  are defined in 1.3.1.

## 3.9 Buckling of primary members

3.9.1 Where primary girders are subject to axial compressive loading, the buckling requirements for lateral, torsional, web and flange buckling modes detailed in 3.7 are to be satisfied.

3.9.2 To prevent global buckling from occurring before local panel buckling, transverse primary girders supporting axially loaded longitudinal stiffeners are to have a sectional moment of inertia, including attached plating, of not less than the following:

$$I_g = \frac{0,35 S_p^4 I_s}{l^3 s} \times 10^3 \text{ cm}^4$$

$S_p$  and  $s$  are as defined in 3.2.1

$I_g$  is the sectional moment of inertia including attached plating

$I_s$  = moment of inertia of secondary stiffeners, in  $\text{cm}^4$ , required to satisfy the elastic column buckling mode specified in Table 2.3.3

$$= \frac{\sigma_{ep} A_{te} l_e^2}{0,001 E}$$

where

$$\sigma_{ep} = 1,2\sigma_d \text{ N/mm}^2 \text{ for } \sigma_{e(a)} < \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$$

$$= \frac{\sigma_o^2}{4 (\sigma_o - 1,2\sigma_d)} \text{ for } \sigma_{e(a)} \geq \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$$

$\sigma_d$  is design stress, in  $\text{N/mm}^2$

$\sigma_o$  and  $A_{te}$  are as defined in 3.2.1

$\sigma_{e(a)}$  is the elastic column buckling stress, see 3.7.2

$E$  is defined in 1.3.1

$l_e$  is defined in Table 2.3.3.

## 3.10 Shear buckling of girder webs

3.10.1 Local panels in girder webs subject to in-plane shear loads are to satisfy the shear buckling requirements in Table 2.3.2, item (b).

3.10.2 The critical shear buckling stress,  $\tau_c$ , is to be determined using the following formula for  $\tau_e$  and the Note in Table 2.3.1.

$$\tau_e = 3,62 \left( 1,335 + \left( \frac{d_w}{1000 l_p} \right)^2 \right) E \left( \frac{t_p}{d_w} \right)^2 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$d_w$  = web height, in mm


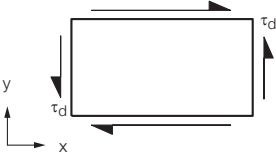
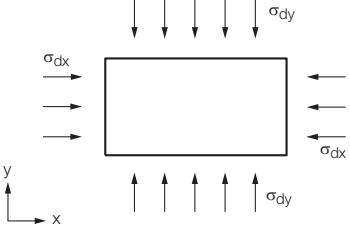
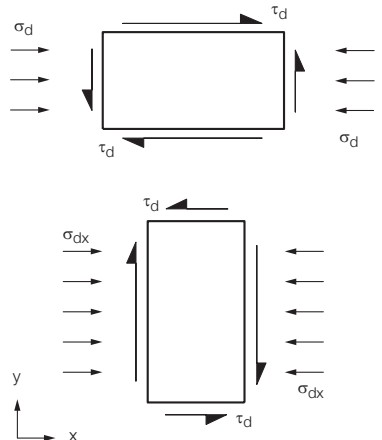
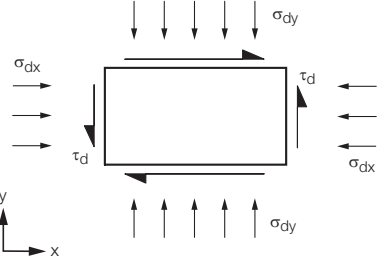
$l_p$  = unsupported length of web, in metres

$t_p$  and  $E$  are defined in 1.3.1.

## 3.11 Pillars and pillar bulkheads

3.11.1 Pillars and pillar bulkheads are to comply with the requirements of Ch 3, 12.

**Table 2.3.2 Plate panel buckling requirements**

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Stress field                                | Buckling Interaction formula                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (a)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | uni-axial compressive loads                 | $\frac{\sigma_d}{\sigma_c} \leq 1,0 \frac{1}{\lambda_\sigma}$                                                                                                                                                                                                        |    |
| (b)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | shear loads                                 | $\frac{\tau_d}{\tau_c} \leq \frac{1}{\lambda_\tau}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |    |
| (c)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | bi-axial compressive loads                  | for $A_R = 1,0$<br>$\frac{\sigma_{dx}}{\sigma_{cx}} + \frac{\sigma_{dy}}{\sigma_{cy}} \leq 1,0$<br><br>for other aspect ratios, i.e. $A_R \neq 1,0$<br>$\frac{\sigma_{dx}}{\sigma_{cx}} + \frac{\sigma_{dy}}{\sigma_{cy}} \leq G$<br>when G is taken from Fig. 2.3.3 |    |
| (d)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | uni-axial compressive loads plus shear load | for $A_R > 1$<br>$\left(\frac{\sigma_d}{\sigma_c}\right) + \left(\frac{\tau_d}{\tau_c}\right)^2 \leq 1$<br><br>for $A_R \leq 1$<br>$\left(\frac{1 + 0,6A_R}{1,6}\right) \left(\frac{\sigma_d}{\sigma_c}\right) + \left(\frac{\tau_d}{\tau_c}\right)^2 \leq 1$        |   |
| (e)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | bi-axial compressive loads plus shear loads | $\frac{0,625 \left(1 + \frac{0,6}{A_R}\right) \left(\frac{\sigma_{dy}}{\sigma_{cy}}\right) + \left(\frac{\tau_d}{\tau_c}\right)^2}{\left(1 - 0,625\right) \left(\frac{\sigma_{dx}}{\sigma_{cx}}\right) + 1 - \left(\frac{\sigma_{dx}}{\sigma_{cx}}\right)} \leq 1$   |  |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                       |
| <p> <math>\sigma_d</math> = design compressive stress, see 3.1.3<br/> <math>\sigma_c</math> = critical compressive buckling stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, for uniaxial compressive load acting independently, see 3.3.5<br/> <math>\sigma_{dx}</math> = design compressive stress in x direction<br/> <math>\sigma_{dy}</math> = design compressive stress in the y direction<br/> <math>\sigma_{cx}</math> = critical compressive buckling stress in x direction, see 3.3.5<br/> <math>\sigma_{cy}</math> = critical compressive buckling stress in y direction, see 3.3.5<br/> <math>\lambda_\sigma</math> = buckling factor of safety for compressive stresses, see 3.3.4<br/> <math>\lambda_\tau</math> = buckling factor of safety for shear stresses, see 3.3.4<br/> <math>\tau_d</math> = design shear stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup><br/> <math>\tau_c</math> = critical shear buckling stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, acting independently, see 3.3.5 </p> |                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                       |

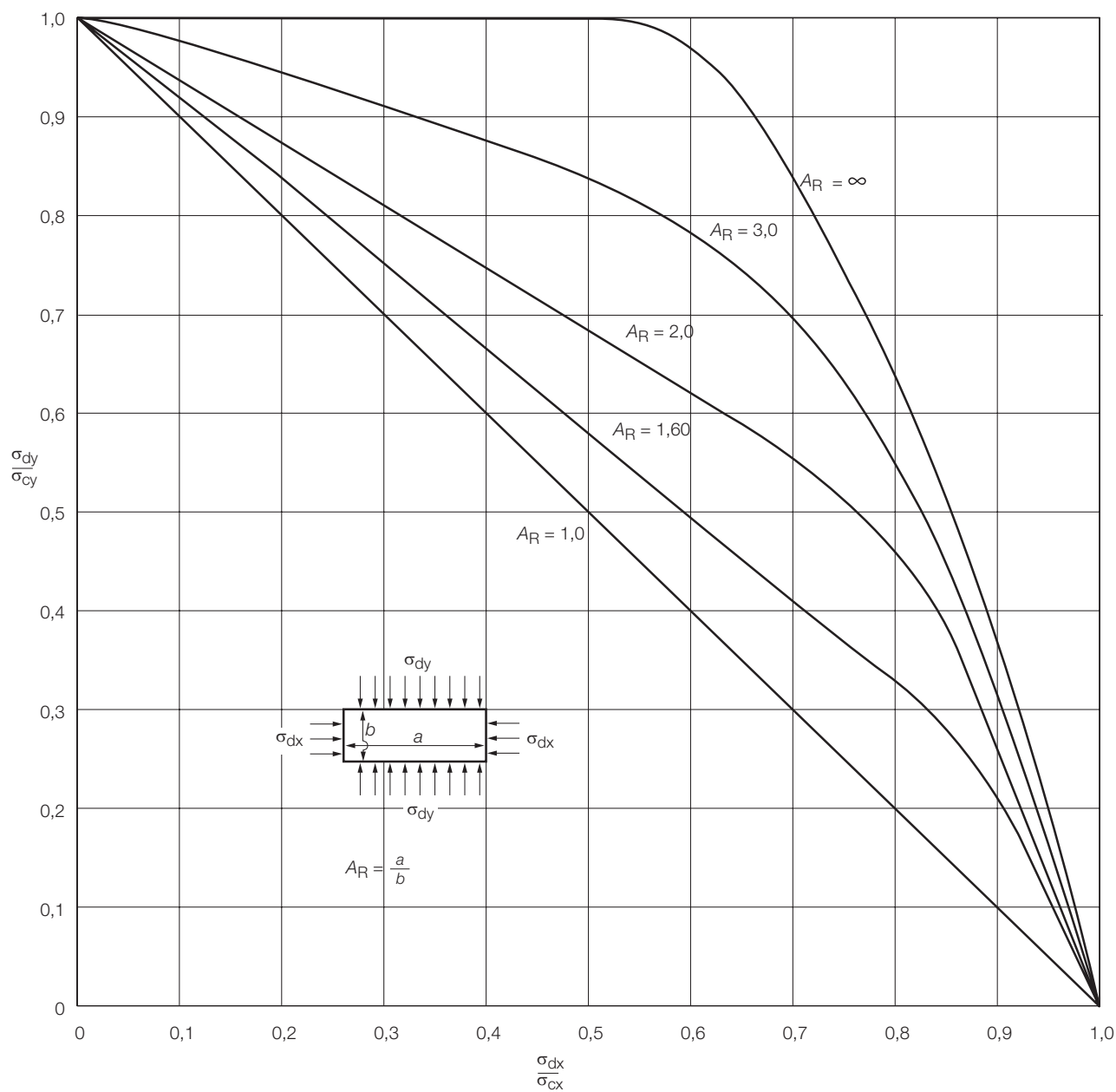


Fig. 2.3.3

Interaction limiting stress curves of G for plate panels subject to bi-axial compression, see Table 2.3.2(c)

**Table 2.3.3** Buckling stress of secondary stiffeners (see continuation)

| Mode                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Elastic buckling stress, N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                                                   | Critical buckling stress, N/mm <sup>2</sup><br>see Note |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| (a) Overall buckling (perpendicular to plane of plating without rotation of cross-section)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | $\sigma_{e(a)} = C_f 0,001 E \frac{I_a}{A_{te} l_e^2}$                                                       | $\sigma_{c(a)}$                                         |
| (b) Torsional buckling                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | $\sigma_{e(t)} = \frac{0,001 E I_w}{I_p l_e^2} \left( m^2 + \frac{K}{m^2} \right) + 0,385 E \frac{I_t}{I_p}$ | $\sigma_{c(t)}$                                         |
| (c) Web buckling (excluding flat bar stiffeners)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $\sigma_{e(w)} = 3,8 E \left( \frac{t_w}{d_w} \right)^2$                                                     | $\sigma_{c(w)}$                                         |
| (d) Flange buckling                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | $\sigma_{e(f)} = 3,8 E \left( \frac{t_f}{b_f} \right)^2$                                                     | $\sigma_{c(f)}$                                         |
| <p>NOTE</p> <p>The critical buckling stresses are to be derived from the elastic buckling stresses as follows:</p> $\sigma_c = \sigma_e \text{ when } \sigma_e < \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$ $= \sigma_o \left( 1 - \frac{\sigma_o}{4\sigma_e} \right) \text{ when } \sigma_e \geq \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                              |                                                         |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                              |                                                         |
| <p><math>d_w</math> = web depth, in mm, (excluding flange thickness for rolled sections), see Fig. 2.2.1<br/> <math>t_w</math> = web thickness, in mm<br/> <math>b_f</math> = flange width, in mm (including web thickness)<br/> <math>t_f</math> = flange thickness, in mm. For bulb plates, the mean thickness of the bulb may be used, see Fig. 2.2.1<br/> <math>l_e</math> = effective span length of stiffener, in metres<br/> <math>C_f</math> = end constraint factor<br/>             = 1 where both ends are pinned<br/>             = 2 where one end is pinned and the other end fixed<br/>             = 4 where both ends are fixed<br/> <math>E</math> = Young's Modulus of elasticity of the material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup><br/> <math>I_a</math> = moment of inertia, in cm<sup>4</sup>, of longitudinal, including attached plating of effective width <math>b_{eb}</math>. For stiffeners attached to plating which buckles elastically, see 3.5, the effective width of plating is to be taken as <math>b_{eu}</math><br/> <math>t_p</math> and <math>\sigma_o</math> are given in 1.3.1<br/> <math>A_{te}</math> and <math>b_{eb}</math> are given in 3.2.1.</p> |                                                                                                              |                                                         |

**Table 2.3.3 Buckling stress of secondary stiffeners (conclusion)**

$I_t$  = St.Venant's moment of inertia, in  $\text{cm}^4$ , of longitudinal (without attached plating)

$$= \frac{d_w^3 t_w^3}{3} 10^{-4} \text{ for flat bars}$$

$$= \frac{1}{3} \left[ d_w^3 t_w^3 + b_f t_f^3 \left( 1 - \frac{0,63 t_f}{b_f} \right) \right] 10^{-4} \text{ for built up profiles, rolled angles and bulb plates}$$

$I_p$  = polar moment of inertia, in  $\text{cm}^4$ , of profile about connection of stiffener to plating

$$= \frac{d_w^3 t_w^3}{3} 10^{-4} \text{ for flat bars}$$

$$= \left( \frac{d_w^3 t_w^3}{3} + d_w^2 b_f t_f \right) 10^{-4} \text{ for built up profiles, rolled angles and bulb plates}$$

$I_w$  = sectorial moment of inertia, in  $\text{cm}^6$ , of profile and connection of stiffener to plating

$$= \frac{d_w^3 t_w^3}{36} 10^{-6} \text{ for flat bars}$$

$$= \frac{t_f b_f^3 d_w^2}{12} 10^{-6} \text{ for 'Tee' profiles}$$

$$= \frac{b_f^3 d_w^2}{12 (b_f + d_w)^2} (t_f (b_f^2 + 2b_f d_w + 4d_w^2) + 3t_w b_f d_w) 10^{-6} \text{ for 'L' profiles, rolled angles and bulb plates}$$

$C$  = spring stiffness exerted by supporting plate panel

$$= \frac{k_p E t_p^3}{3b \left( 1 + \frac{1,33 k_p d_w t_p^3}{b t_w^3} \right)}$$

$k_p$  =  $1 - \eta_p$ , and is not to be taken as less than zero. For built up profiles, rolled angles and bulb plates,  $k_p$  need not be taken less than 0,1

$$\eta_p = \frac{\sigma_d}{\sigma_{ep}}$$

$\sigma_{ep}$  = elastic critical buckling stress, in  $\text{N/mm}^2$ , of the supporting plate derived from Table 2.4.1

$m$  is determined as follows; e.g.  $m = 2$  for  $K = 25$

| $K$ range | $0 \leq K < 4$ | $4 \leq K < 36$ | $36 \leq K < 144$ | $144 \leq K < 400$ | $400 \leq K < 900$ | $900 \leq K < 1764$ | $(m-1)^2 m^2 \leq K < m^2 (m+1)^2$ |
|-----------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| $m$       | 1              | 2               | 3                 | 4                  | 5                  | 6                   | $m$                                |

$$K = \frac{1,03 C S^4}{E I_w} 10^4$$

$\sigma_d$  is the design stress, in  $\text{N/mm}^2$

all other symbols are as defined in 3.2.1 or 1.3.1.

## Section 4 Vibration control

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Natural frequencies are to be investigated for local unstiffened and stiffened panels expected to be exposed to excessive structural vibrations being induced from machinery, propulsion unit or other potential excitation sources.

4.1.2 Where the structural configurations are such that basic structural elements may be modelled individually the natural frequencies may be derived in accordance with 4.3, 4.4 and 4.5, as appropriate. Under other circumstances, finite element analysis is to be employed to evaluate the vibration characteristics of the structure considered.

### 4.2 Frequency band

4.2.1 The natural frequency of panels is generally not to lie within a band of  $\pm 20$  per cent of a significant excitation frequency.

### 4.3 Natural frequency of plate

4.3.1 The natural frequency of an homogeneous clamped plate in air is given by the following:

$$f_{\text{air}} = 5537 \frac{t_p}{l s} \sqrt{\left(\frac{1000l}{s}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{s}{1000l}\right)^2 + 0,6045} \text{ Hz}$$

where

- $l$  = panel length, in metres
- $s$  = panel breadth, in mm
- $t_p$  = panel thickness, in mm.

### 4.4 Natural frequency of plate and stiffener combination

4.4.1 The natural frequency of a plate stiffener of constant cross-section in air is given by the following:

$$f_{\text{air}} = \frac{k_i}{20\pi l_b^2} \sqrt{\frac{EI}{m \left(1 + \frac{\pi^2 EI}{10^4 l_b^2 GA}\right)}} \text{ Hz}$$

where

- $l_b$  = length of stiffener, in metres
- $m$  = mass per unit length of the stiffener and associated plating, in kg/m
- $K_i$  = constant where  $i$  refers to the mode of vibration as given in Table 2.4.1
- $G$  = shear modulus of elasticity, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $A$  = shear area of stiffener, in cm<sup>2</sup>
- $I$  = Inertia of stiffener, in cm<sup>4</sup>
- $E$  = modulus of elasticity, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

**Table 2.4.1 First mode of vibration constant  $K_i$**

| End condition    | Mode  |       |       |       |       |
|------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
|                  | 1     | 2     | 3     | 4     | 5     |
| Simply supported | 9,92  | —     | —     | —     | —     |
| Fixed ends       | 22,40 | 61,70 | 121,0 | 200,0 | 299,0 |
| Simple and fixed | 15,4  | —     | —     | —     | —     |

### 4.5 Effect of submergence

4.5.1 To obtain the frequency,  $f_{\text{water}}$ , of a plate with one side exposed to air and the other side exposed to a liquid, the frequency calculated in air,  $f_{\text{air}}$ , may be modified by the following formula:

$$f_{\text{water}} = f_{\text{air}} \sqrt{\frac{\kappa_p}{\kappa_p + \frac{\rho_l}{\rho_p}}}$$

where

- $\rho_l$  = density of the liquid, in kg/m<sup>3</sup>
- $\rho_p$  = density of the plate, in kg/m<sup>3</sup>

$$\kappa_p = \frac{\pi t_p}{l s} \sqrt{\frac{s^2}{10^6} + l^2}$$

where

$l$ ,  $s$  and  $t_p$  are as defined in 4.3.1.

## Section 5 Dynamic loading

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 The following formulae are to be used to determine the dynamic response of plate and plate stiffener combinations. The natural frequency of structural items can be determined from Section 4 and the period  $T$  may then be determined as follows:

$$T = \frac{1}{f} \text{ seconds}$$

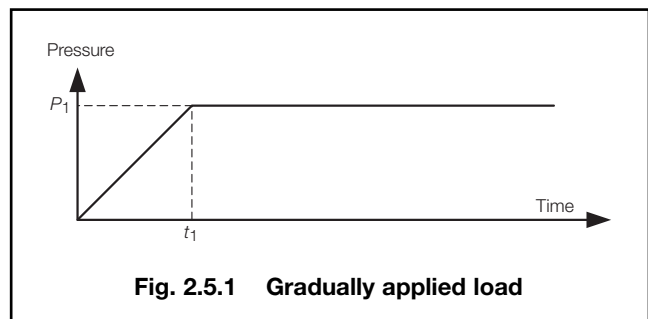
where

$f$  = the natural frequency and is normally to be taken as  $f_{\text{air}}$ , see 4.3.1 for plating or 4.4.1 for plate and stiffener combination.

5.1.2 For bottom impact pressure loads and bow flare and above waterline impact pressure loads required by Ch 3,14 and 15 respectively, the impact pressure is assumed to be represented by a triangular pulse load. The rise time,  $t_1$ , for these impact pressures is given in Pt 5, Ch 3,4.2.2 for bottom impact and Pt 5, Ch 3,4.3.2 for bow flare impact.

### 5.2 Gradually applied load

5.2.1 For a gradually applied load as shown in Fig. 2.5.1 the maximum dynamic load factor  $f_{\text{DLF}}$  can be calculated as from Table 2.5.1. Linear interpolation may be performed to obtain  $f_{\text{DLF}}$  values for intermediate  $t_1/T$  values.



**Fig. 2.5.1 Gradually applied load**

5.2.2 The time to maximum response can be calculated from Table 2.5.1 with intermediate values determined by linear interpolation.



### 5.3 Instantaneous load

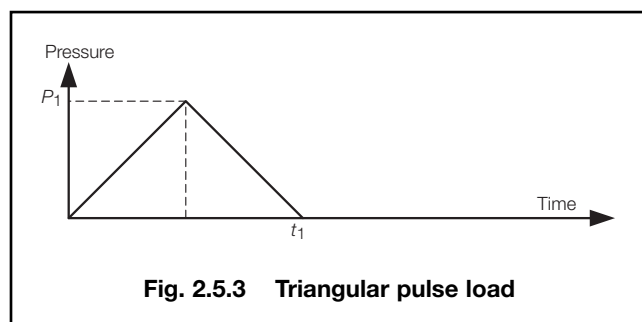
5.3.1 For an instantaneous applied load as shown in Fig. 2.5.2 the maximum dynamic load factor  $f_{DLF}$  can be calculated as from Table 2.5.1. Linear interpolation may be performed to obtain  $f_{DLF}$  values for intermediate  $t_1/T$  values. The  $t_1$  time value is given in the same section that the impulsive pressure load is specified.



5.3.2 The time to maximum response can be calculated from Table 2.5.1 with intermediate values determined by linear interpolation.

### 5.4 Triangular pulse load

5.4.1 For a triangular pulse load as shown in Fig. 2.5.3, the maximum dynamic load factor DLF can be calculated from Table 2.5.1. Linear interpolation may be performed to obtain DLF values for intermediate  $t_1/T$  values. The  $t_1$  time value is given in the same section that the impulsive pressure load is specified.



5.4.2 The time to maximum response can be calculated from Table 2.5.1 with intermediate values determined by linear interpolation.

# Design Tools

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 2

Section 5

**Table 2.5.1**      **Tabulated dynamic load factors**

|         | Dynamic load factor        |                               |                            | Time to maximum displacement |                          |                    |
|---------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|
| $t_1/T$ | Gradual<br>$\bar{f}_{DLF}$ | Triangular<br>$\bar{f}_{DLF}$ | Instant<br>$\bar{f}_{DLF}$ | Gradual<br>$t_m/t_1$         | Triangular<br>$t_m/2t_1$ | Instant<br>$t_m/T$ |
| 0,0     | 2,0                        | 0,0                           | 0,0                        |                              |                          |                    |
| 0,1     | 1,984                      | 0,312                         | 0,300                      | 5,800                        | 2,484                    | 0,284              |
| 0,2     | 1,935                      | 0,608                         | 0,600                      | 3,000                        | 1,700                    | 0,316              |
| 0,3     | 1,858                      | 0,875                         | 0,850                      | 2,100                        | 1,361                    | 0,348              |
| 0,4     | 1,757                      | 1,098                         | 1,050                      | 1,700                        | 1,163                    | 0,381              |
| 0,5     | 1,637                      | 1,273                         | 1,200                      | 1,450                        | 1,029                    | 0,400              |
| 0,6     | 1,504                      | 1,391                         | 1,300                      | 1,280                        | 0,931                    | 0,415              |
| 0,7     | 1,363                      | 1,465                         | 1,400                      | 1,150                        | 0,856                    | 0,430              |
| 0,8     | 1,232                      | 1,501                         | 1,480                      | 1,080                        | 0,795                    | 0,440              |
| 0,9     | 1,109                      | 1,514                         | 1,530                      | 1,010                        | 0,746                    | 0,445              |
| 1,0     | 1,000                      | 1,508                         | 1,600                      | 1,000                        | 0,704                    | 0,450              |
|         |                            |                               |                            | 1,500 (1)                    |                          |                    |
| 1,1     | 1,089                      | 1,481                         | 1,630                      | 1,430                        | 0,668                    | 0,453              |
| 1,2     | 1,156                      | 1,441                         | 1,660                      | 1,360                        | 0,637                    | 0,456              |
| 1,3     | 1,198                      | 1,397                         | 1,690                      | 1,290                        | 0,609                    | 0,459              |
| 1,4     | 1,216                      | 1,342                         | 1,715                      | 1,220                        | 0,585                    | 0,462              |
| 1,5     | 1,212                      | 1,282                         | 1,725                      | 1,150                        | 0,563                    | 0,465              |
| 1,6     | 1,189                      | 1,228                         | 1,730                      | 1,119                        | 0,544                    | 0,466              |
| 1,7     | 1,151                      | 1,165                         | 1,730                      | 1,089                        | 0,526                    | 0,468              |
| 1,8     | 1,104                      | 1,104                         | 1,745                      | 1,059                        | 0,510                    | 0,469              |
| 1,9     | 1,052                      | 1,052                         | 1,748                      | 1,029                        | 0,495                    | 0,471              |
| 2,0     | 1,000                      | 1,000                         | 1,750                      | 1,200                        | 0,481                    | 0,473              |
| 2,1     | 1,047                      | 0,960                         | 1,756                      | 1,170                        | 0,520                    | 0,474              |
| 2,2     | 1,085                      | 0,953                         | 1,763                      | 1,140                        | 0,540                    | 0,475              |
| 2,3     | 1,111                      | 0,980                         | 1,769                      | 1,110                        | 0,560                    | 0,477              |
| 2,4     | 1,125                      | 1,016                         | 1,775                      | 1,080                        | 0,580                    | 0,478              |
| 2,5     | 1,127                      | 1,055                         | 1,781                      | 1,050                        | 0,600                    | 0,480              |
| 2,6     | 1,116                      | 1,089                         | 1,786                      | 1,039                        | 0,590                    | 0,480              |
| 2,7     | 1,095                      | 1,115                         | 1,79                       | 1,029                        | 0,580                    | 0,480              |
| 2,8     | 1,067                      | 1,126                         | 1,797                      | 1,019                        | 0,570                    | 0,481              |
| 2,9     | 1,034                      | 1,135                         | 1,802                      | 1,009                        | 0,560                    | 0,481              |
| 3,0     | 1,000                      | 1,158                         | 1,800                      | 1,100                        | 0,550                    | 0,482              |
| 3,1     | 1,032                      | 1,168                         | 1,800                      | 1,089                        | 0,545                    | 0,482              |
| 3,2     | 1,059                      | 1,167                         | 1,808                      |                              | 0,540                    | 0,483              |
| 3,3     | 1,078                      | 1,155                         | 1,812                      |                              | 0,535                    | 0,483              |
| 3,4     | 1,089                      | 1,132                         | 1,817                      |                              | 0,530                    | 0,484              |
| 3,5     | 1,091                      | 1,103                         | 1,821                      |                              | 0,525                    | 0,484              |
| 3,6     | 1,084                      | 1,084                         | 1,825                      |                              | 0,520                    | 0,485              |
| 3,7     | 1,070                      | 1,070                         | 1,829                      |                              | 0,515                    | 0,485              |
| 3,8     | 1,059                      | 1,060                         | 1,833                      |                              | 0,510                    | 0,486              |
| 3,9     | 1,025                      | 1,025                         | 1,837                      |                              | 0,505                    | 0,486              |
| 4,0     | 1,000                      | 1,000                         | 1,825                      |                              | 0,500                    | 0,487              |
| 4,1     | 1,024                      | 0,978                         | 1,828                      |                              | 0,505                    | 0,487              |
| 4,2     | 1,045                      | 0,976                         | 1,831                      |                              | 0,510                    | 0,487              |
| 4,3     | 1,060                      | 0,989                         | 1,835                      |                              | 0,515                    | 0,487              |
| 4,4     | 1,069                      | 1,007                         | 1,838                      |                              | 0,520                    | 0,488              |
| 4,5     | 1,071                      | 1,029                         | 1,842                      |                              | 0,525                    | 0,488              |
| 4,6     | 1,066                      | 1,050                         | 1,845                      |                              | 0,530                    | 0,488              |
| 4,7     | 1,055                      | 1,069                         | 1,849                      |                              | 0,535                    | 0,489              |
| 4,8     | 1,039                      | 1,083                         | 1,852                      |                              | 0,540                    | 0,489              |
| 4,9     | 1,020                      | 1,091                         | 1,855                      |                              | 0,545                    | 0,489              |
| 5,0     | 1,000                      | 1,092                         | 1,850                      |                              | 0,550                    | 0,490              |
| 5,1     | 1,019                      | 1,083                         | 1,853                      |                              | 0,545                    | 0,490              |
| 5,2     | 1,036                      | 1,069                         | 1,856                      |                              | 0,540                    | 0,490              |
| 5,3     | 1,049                      | 1,050                         | 1,859                      |                              | 0,535                    | 0,490              |
| 5,4     | 1,056                      | 1,056                         | 1,862                      |                              | 0,530                    | 0,490              |
| 5,5     | 1,058                      | 1,058                         | 1,865                      |                              | 0,525                    | 0,490              |
| 5,6     | 1,054                      | 1,054                         | 1,868                      |                              | 0,520                    | 0,490              |
| 5,7     | 1,045                      | 1,045                         | 1,870                      |                              | 0,515                    | 0,490              |
| 5,8     | 1,032                      | 1,032                         | 1,873                      |                              | 0,510                    | 0,490              |
| 5,9     | 1,017                      | 1,017                         | 1,876                      |                              | 0,505                    | 0,490              |
| ≥6,0    | 1,002                      | 1,002                         | 1,870                      |                              | 0,500                    | 0,491              |

**NOTE**

The time to maximum displacement curve for a gradually applied load has a step at  $t_1/T = 1,0$ .

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Sections 1 & 2

## Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Minimum structural requirements**
- 3 **NS1 scantling determination**
- 4 **NS2 and NS3 scantling determination**
- 5 **Shell envelope plating**
- 6 **Shell envelope framing**
- 7 **Single bottom structures**
- 8 **Double bottom structures**
- 9 **Bulkheads and deep tanks**
- 10 **Deck structures**
- 11 **Superstructures, deckhouses and bulwarks**
- 12 **Pillars and pillar bulkheads**
- 13 **Machinery and raft seatings**
- 14 **Strengthening for bottom slamming**
- 15 **Strengthening for wave impact loads above waterline**
- 16 **Masts**

## 1.2 General

1.2.1 The formulae used in this Chapter are to be used in conjunction with the design loadings from Part 5 and design tools in Chapter 2 to determine the rule scantling requirements.

1.2.2 All references to longitudinal locations in the Rules are to be taken as forward of the aft end of  $L_R$  unless otherwise stated, e.g.  $0,75L_R$  is 75 per cent of  $L_R$  forward of the aft end of  $L_R$

where

$L_R$  is defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2.

## 1.3 Direct calculations

1.3.1 The extent of direct calculation required will depend on the ship's structural configuration and operational requirements and is to be agreed between the designer, Owner and Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') at an early stage in the plan approval process.

1.3.2 In addition, where the ship is of unusual design, form, proportion or has operational requirements such as very high speed, the scantlings will be specially considered and may require direct calculation.

## 1.4 Equivalents

1.4.1 LR will consider direct calculations for the derivation of scantlings as an alternative and equivalent to those derived by rule requirements in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 1,2 and 3.

## ■ Section 1 General

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to monohull craft of steel construction as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,2.

1.1.2 All NS1, NS2 and NS3 ships as defined in Part 1 are to comply with the minimum requirements of Section 2 and general structural requirements of Sections 5 to 16.

1.1.3 The basic structural scantlings of NS1 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 3 and supported where necessary by direct calculations.

1.1.4 The basic structural scantlings of NS2 and NS3 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 4 and supported by direct calculations where necessary.

## ■ Section 2 Minimum structural requirements

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 The requirements of this Section, unless specified otherwise, are applicable to all ship types, NS1, NS2 and NS3.

2.1.2 The scantlings of plating and stiffeners determined from the Rule scantling requirements are not to be less than that given in Table 3.2.1 for the ship type. Due consideration is to be given to the vessel type correction factor,  $\omega$ , as defined in Table 3.2.2.

2.1.3 In addition, where plating contributes to the global strength of the ship, the thickness is to be not less than that required to satisfy the global strength requirements detailed in Chapter 4.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 2

**Table 3.2.1** Minimum structural requirements (see continuation)

| Item                                                      | Minimum scantling                                                         |                  |            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|------------|
| Shell envelope                                            |                                                                           |                  |            |
| Bottom shell and bilge plating                            | $\sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,4 \sqrt{L_{\text{R}}} + 2) \text{ mm}$           | $\geq 5,0\omega$ |            |
| Side shell plating                                        | $\sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,38 \sqrt{L_{\text{R}}} + 1,2) \text{ mm}$        | $\geq 4,0\omega$ |            |
| Breadth of keel plate, if fitted                          | $7L_{\text{R}} + 340 \text{ mm}$                                          | $\geq 750$       | See Note 1 |
| Keel plate thickness, if fitted                           | $\omega \sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} 1,35L_1^{0,45} \text{ mm}$                   |                  | See Note 2 |
| Breadth of stem plate                                     | $7L_{\text{R}} + 340 \text{ mm}$                                          | $\geq 600$       | See Note 2 |
| Stem plate thickness                                      | $\omega (5 + 0,083L_2) \sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} \text{ mm}$                   |                  |            |
| Bar keel area, if fitted                                  | $\omega k_{\text{ms}} L_{\text{R}}^{1,1} \text{ cm}^2$                    |                  |            |
| Bar keel thickness, if fitted                             | $\omega \sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,6L_{\text{R}} + 6) \text{ mm}$            |                  | See Note 2 |
| Single bottom structure                                   |                                                                           |                  |            |
| Centre girder web thickness                               | $\sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (\sqrt{L_{\text{R}}} + 1) \text{ mm}$               | $\geq 4,0\omega$ |            |
| Side girder web thickness                                 | $\sqrt{(k_{\text{ms}} L_{\text{R}})} \text{ mm}$                          | $\geq 3,5\omega$ |            |
| Floor web thickness                                       | $\omega \sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,03L_{\text{R}} + 3,5) \text{ mm}$         | $\geq 3,5\omega$ |            |
| Centreline girder face flat area                          | $\omega 0,5 L_{\text{R}} k_{\text{ms}} \text{ cm}^2$                      |                  |            |
| Floor face flat area                                      | $4,5 T k_{\text{ms}} \left(1 - \frac{2,5}{B}\right) \text{ cm}^2$         |                  | See Note 3 |
| Depth of floors, $d_{\text{f}}$                           | $35 (1,6B + T) - 75 \text{ mm}$                                           |                  |            |
| Double bottom structure                                   |                                                                           |                  |            |
| Inner bottom plating thickness                            | $\sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,4 \sqrt{L_{\text{R}}} + 1,5) \text{ mm}$         | $\geq 4,0\omega$ |            |
| Centreline girder web thickness                           | $\sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,9 \sqrt{L_{\text{R}}} + 1) \text{ mm}$           | $\geq 4,0\omega$ |            |
| Side girder web thickness                                 | $\sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} 0,72 \sqrt{L_{\text{R}}} \text{ mm}$                | $\geq 3,5\omega$ |            |
| Floor web thickness                                       | $\sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,03L_{\text{R}} + 3,5) \text{ mm}$                | $\geq 3,5\omega$ |            |
| Depth of double bottom, $d_{\text{DB}}$                   | $28B + 205 \sqrt{T} \text{ mm}$                                           | $\geq 630$       |            |
| Watertight bulkheads                                      |                                                                           |                  |            |
| Plating thickness                                         | $\omega \sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,33 \sqrt{L_{\text{R}}} + 1,0) \text{ mm}$ | $\geq 3,5\omega$ |            |
| Deep tank bulkheads                                       |                                                                           |                  |            |
| Plating thickness                                         | $\omega \sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,38 \sqrt{L_{\text{R}}} + 1,2) \text{ mm}$ | $\geq 4,0\omega$ |            |
| Deck structure                                            |                                                                           |                  |            |
| Strength deck                                             | $\omega \sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,38 \sqrt{L_{\text{R}}} + 1,2) \text{ mm}$ | $\geq 4,0\omega$ |            |
| Internal and lower decks                                  | $\omega \sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,18 \sqrt{L_{\text{R}}} + 1,7) \text{ mm}$ | $\geq 3,0\omega$ |            |
| Exposed deck plating thickness, fwd of $0,75L_{\text{R}}$ | $\omega \sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,015L_{\text{R}} + 5,5) \text{ mm}$        | $\geq 5,0\omega$ |            |
| Exposed deck plating thickness, aft of $0,75L_{\text{R}}$ | $\omega \sqrt{k_{\text{ms}}} (0,38 \sqrt{L_{\text{R}}} + 1,2) \text{ mm}$ | $\geq 4,0\omega$ |            |

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 2

**Table 3.2.1 Minimum structural requirements (conclusion)**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Minimum scantling                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Superstructure and deckhouses                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Deck plating thickness                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | $\omega \sqrt{k_{ms}} (0,18 \sqrt{L_R} + 1,7) \text{ mm} \geq 3,0\omega$                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Side plating thickness                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | $\omega \sqrt{k_{ms}} (0,3 \sqrt{L_R} + 1) \text{ mm} \geq 3,0\omega$                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Front plating thickness, fwd of $0,75L_R$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | $\omega \sqrt{k_{ms}} (0,3 \sqrt{L_R} + 2) \text{ mm} \geq 5,0\omega$                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Front plating thickness, aft of $0,75L_R$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | $\omega \sqrt{k_{ms}} (0,25 \sqrt{L_R} + 2) \text{ mm} \geq 4,0\omega$                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Back plating thickness                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | $\omega \sqrt{k_{ms}} (0,25 \sqrt{L_R} + 2) \text{ mm} \geq 3,0\omega$                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Machinery casing plating thickness                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | $\omega \sqrt{k_{ms}} (0,25 \sqrt{L_R} + 2) \text{ mm} \geq 3,0\omega$                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Pillars                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Wall thickness of tubular pillars                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | $\omega \sqrt{k_{ms}} 0,05d_p \text{ mm} \geq 2,5\omega$                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Wall thickness of rectangular pillars                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | $\omega \sqrt{k_{ms}} 0,05b_p \text{ mm} \geq 2,5\omega$                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Plated mast structures which are not structurally effective                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Deck, side and back plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 3 mm                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Front plating thickness, fwd of $0,75L_R$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 5 mm                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Front plating thickness, aft of $0,75L_R$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 4 mm                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| $L_1 = L_R$ but need not be taken greater than 190 m<br>$L_2 = L_R$ but need not be taken greater than 215 m<br>$\omega$ = vessel type correction factor as determined from Table 3.2.2<br>$k_{ms} = 635/(\sigma_o + \sigma_u)$<br>$\sigma_o$ = specified minimum yield strength of the material, in N/mm <sup>2</sup> | $\sigma_u$ = specified minimum ultimate tensile strength of the material, in N/mm <sup>2</sup><br>$b_p$ = minimum breadth of cross section of hollow rectangular pillar, in mm<br>$d_p$ = outside diameter of tubular pillar, in mm<br>$L_R, B$ and $T$ are defined in Pt 3, Ch 1.5.2 |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. Maximum keel breadth 1800 mm.<br>2. Not to be less than adjacent shell plate. Above the design waterline the bar keel may be the same as the adjacent shell.<br>3. Face plate thickness not to be less than floor thickness.                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

**Table 3.2.2 Vessel type correction factor ( $\omega$ )**

| Vessel type                                 | $\omega$ |
|---------------------------------------------|----------|
| Bottom structure of ships operating aground | 1,2      |
| NS1                                         | 1,1      |
| NS2 and 3                                   | 1,0      |

## 2.2 Corrosion margin

2.2.1 The minimum thicknesses given in Table 3.2.1 are based on the assumption that there is negligible loss in strength by corrosion. Where this is not the case the minimum thickness will be specially considered. Requirements for corrosion margin are given in Pt 6, Ch 6.2.10.

## 2.3 Impact consideration

2.3.1 Due consideration is to be given to the scantlings of all structures which may be subject to local impact loadings. For example decks in workshops. Impact testing may be required to be carried out at the discretion of LR to demonstrate the suitability of the proposed scantlings for a particular application.

## 2.4 Sheathing

2.4.1 Areas of shell and deck which are subject to additional wear by abrasion from, i.e., removal or stores routes, working areas, forefoot region, etc., are to be suitably protected by local reinforcement or sheathing. This sheathing may be of timber, rubber, steel, additional layers of reinforcement, etc., as appropriate. Details of such sheathing and the method of attachment are to be submitted for consideration.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Sections 2 & 3

2.4.2 The attachment of sheathing by mechanical means such as bolting or other methods is not to impair the water-tight integrity of the ship. Through bolting of the hull is to be kept to a minimum and avoided where practicable. The design arrangements in way of any through bolting are to be such that damage to the sheathing will not impair the water-tight integrity of the hull.

2.4.3 When decks that are not structurally effective or subject to significant inplane stresses are fitted with approved sheathing, the thickness derived may be reduced by 10 per cent for a 50 mm sheathing thickness, or five per cent for 25 mm, with intermediate values in proportion. The steel deck is to be coated with a suitable material in order to prevent corrosive action, and the sheathing or composition is to be effectively secured to the deck. Inside deckhouses the thickness may be reduced by a further 10 per cent.

## 2.5 Special considerations

2.5.1 Flight decks and structures in way of launcher ramps, gun platforms, etc., will be subject to special consideration.

2.5.2 The minimum plating thickness of ships intended for operation in ice conditions will be specially considered.

2.5.3 Ships with shock enhanced notation are not to be fitted with bar keels. Docking arrangements are to be specially considered.

2.5.4 For large or novel ships, the scantlings of the stern will be specially considered.

2.5.5 Where water jet or sterndrive units are fitted, the scantlings of the plating in way of the nozzles and connections will be specially considered.

## 2.6 Direct calculations

2.6.1 The thickness requirements derived from Table 3.2.1 may be specially considered, where direct calculation procedures are adopted to demonstrate the suitability of the proposed alternative, e.g. shear buckling analysis may be performed on girder or floor webs.

## Section 3 NS1 scantling determination

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 The scantlings for NS1 ships may be determined from the global and local requirements defined in this Section. In addition the general requirements of Sections 5 to 15 are to be complied with.

3.1.2 The scantlings given in this Section are based on the assumption that there is negligible loss in strength by corrosion.

3.1.3 The corrosion margins specified in Ch 6,2.10 are to be applied to the derived scantlings as appropriate, see also Ch 1,2.2.1.

## 3.2 Symbols

3.2.1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

$F_B$  = local scantling reduction factor for hull members below the neutral axis, see 3.6

$F_D$  = local scantling reduction factor for hull members above the neutral axis, see 3.6

$I_{min}$  = minimum moment of inertia, of the hull midship section about the transverse neutral axis, in  $m^4$

$Z_D, Z_B$  = actual hull section moduli, in  $m^3$ , at strength deck and keel respectively, see Ch 4,2

$Z_{min}$  = minimum hull midship section modulus about the transverse neutral axis, in  $m^3$

$\sigma_p$  = permissible combined stress (still water plus wave), in  $N/mm^2$ , see Ch 4,2

$\sigma_o$  = yield strength of material in  $N/mm^2$

$\sigma_D, \sigma_B$  = maximum hull vertical bending stress at strength deck and keel respectively, in  $N/mm^2$  determined from Ch 4,2

$k_L$  = longitudinal high strength steel factor, see Ch 5,2.1.2

$k_s$  = the local high strength steel factor, see Ch 5,2.1.1

$L_1$  =  $L_R$  but need not be taken greater than 190 m

$L_2$  =  $L_R$  but need not be greater than 215 m

$s$  = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm

$S$  = spacing of primary members, in metres

$\rho$  = relative density (specific gravity) of a liquid carried in a tank not to be taken less than 1,025

$f = \frac{1}{1 + \left(\frac{s}{1000S}\right)^2}$  transverse framing aspect ratio correction

$L_R$  is as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2.

## 3.3 Hull girder strength

3.3.1 For all ships, the hull girder strength requirements of Ch 4,2 are to be complied with.

3.3.2 As required by Ch 4,2, the hull girder bending and shear stresses for all longitudinally effective material is to be verified against the permissible stresses and the buckling requirements of Ch 2,3. In addition, the lateral and torsional stability of all effective longitudinals together with the web and flange buckling criteria are to be verified in accordance with Ch 2,3.

3.3.3 In addition, the minimum requirements of 3.4 and 3.5 are to be satisfied.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

## 3.4 Minimum hull section modulus

3.4.1 The hull midship section modulus about the transverse neutral axis, at the deck or the keel, is to be not less than:

$$Z_{\min} = 0,95k_L M_o \times 10^{-5} \text{ m}^3$$

where

$M_o$  is given in Pt 5, Ch 4,3.3.1

$k_L$  is as defined in 3.2.1.

## 3.5 Minimum hull moment of inertia

3.5.1 The hull midship section moment of inertia about the transverse neutral axis is to be not less than the following using the maximum total bending moment, sagging or hogging:

$$I_{\min} = 3,0L_R M_R / 175 \times 10^{-5} \text{ m}^4$$

where

$M_R$  = design bending moment, sagging (negative) and hogging (positive), in kN m, to be taken negative or positive according to the convention given in Pt 5, Ch 4,3.10.

## 3.6 Local reduction factors

3.6.1 Where the maximum hull vertical bending stress at deck or keel is less than the permissible combined stress,  $\sigma_p$ , reductions in local scantlings within  $0,3L_R$  to  $0,7L_R$  may be permitted. The reduction factors are defined as follows:

For hull members above the neutral axis

$$F_D = \sigma_D / \sigma_p$$

For hull members below the neutral axis

$$F_B = \sigma_B / \sigma_p$$

In general the values of  $\sigma_D$  and  $\sigma_B$  to be used are the greater of the sagging or hogging stresses, and  $F_D$  and  $F_B$  are not to be taken less than 0,67 for plating and 0,75 for longitudinal stiffeners.  $\sigma_B$ ,  $\sigma_D$  and  $\sigma_p$  are defined in 3.2.1.

3.6.2 Where higher tensile steel is used in the hull structure, the values of  $F_D$  and  $F_B$  for the mild steel part are to be taken as not less than  $z/z_M$

where

$z$  = vertical distance from the hull transverse neutral axis to the position considered, in metres

$z_M$  = vertical distance, in metres, from the hull transverse neutral axis to the minimum limit of higher tensile steel, above or below the neutral axis as appropriate.

## 3.7 Taper requirements for hull envelope

3.7.1 The scantlings determined at amidships are to be maintained between  $0,3L_R$  and  $0,7L_R$ . Outside of this region and forward of  $0,075L_R$  and aft of  $0,925L_R$  the scantling requirements for the following structural items are to be determined by linear interpolation between the midship section and the forward or after ends as appropriate, see Fig. 3.3.1:

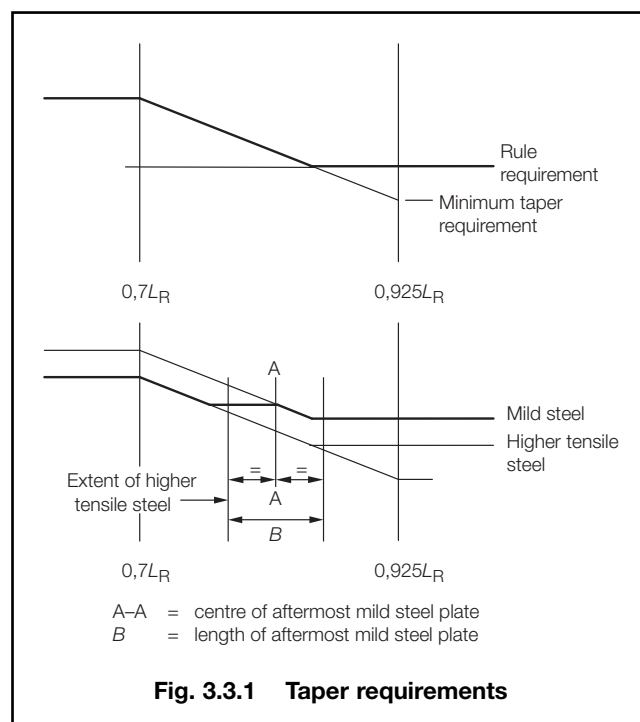


Fig. 3.3.1 Taper requirements

- Strength deck plating.
- Deck longitudinals.
- Shell envelope.

3.7.2 The taper requirement does not apply to ships where there are large openings in the decks such that the torsional rigidity of the hull is significantly reduced.

3.7.3 The thickness may need to be increased above the taper thickness by military features, special features or other requirements such as bottom slamming or bow flare impact.

3.7.4 The formulae for the taper values are based on the assumption that the yield values of steel is the same at amidships and ends. Where higher tensile steel is used in the midship region and mild steel at the ends, the taper values should be calculated for both yield values of steel. In way of the transition from higher tensile to mild steel, the thickness may be determined in accordance with Fig. 3.3.1. The aft end thickness is to be tapered in a similar manner.

3.7.5 Where the higher tensile steel longitudinals extend beyond the point of transition from higher tensile to mild steel plating, the modulus of the composite section is to be greater than the required mild steel value at the deck plate flange, and  $k_L$  times the mild steel value at the higher tensile flange.

## 3.8 Grouped stiffeners

3.8.1 Where stiffeners are arranged in groups of the same scantling, the section modulus requirement of each group is to be based on the greater of the following:

- the mean value of the section modulus required for individual stiffeners within the group;
- 90 per cent of the maximum section modulus required for individual stiffeners within the group.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

## 3.9 Shell envelope plating

3.9.1 Shell envelope plating for both longitudinally and transversely framed ships is to comply with the requirements of Table 3.3.1.

3.9.2 The thickness of the shell envelope plating is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirement given in Section 2.

3.9.3 Additional requirements for shell envelope plating are indicated in Section 5.

## 3.10 Shell envelope framing

3.10.1 Shell envelope framing for both longitudinally and transversely framed ships is to comply with the requirements of Tables 3.3.2 and 3.3.3.

**Table 3.3.1** Shell envelope plating (see continuation)

| Location                                                                              | Minimum thickness, in mm, see also 5.3.1                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                       | Longitudinal framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Transverse framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| (1) Bottom plating and bilge where framed $0,3L_R$ to $0,7L_R$ (see Notes 3, 4 and 5) | <p>The greater of the following:</p> <p>(a) <math>t = 9,0s_1 (0,043L_1 + 10) \sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}} \times 10^{-4}</math></p> <p>(b) <math>t = 4,7s_1 \sqrt{\frac{h_{T2} k_s}{1,8 - F_B}} \times 10^{-3}</math></p>                                    | <p>The greater of the following:</p> <p>(a) <math>t = 0,001s_1 f (0,056L_1 + 16,7) \sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}}</math></p> <p>(see Note 4)</p> <p>(b) <math>t = 5,7s_1 \sqrt{\frac{h_{T2} k_s}{1,8 - F_B}} \times 10^{-3}</math></p>                                                                        |
| (2) Bottom plating and bilge fwd of $0,925L_R$ (see Note 2) aft of $0,075L_R$         | $t = (6,0 + 0,03L_R) \sqrt{\frac{k_s s_1}{s_b}}$                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| (3) Side shell clear of sheerstrake $0,3L_R$ to $0,7L_R$ (see Notes 1 and 5)          | <p>(a) Above <math>\frac{D}{2}</math> from base:</p> <p>The greater of the following:</p> <p>(i) <math>t = 9,0s_1 (0,059L_1 + 7) \sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_L}} \times 10^{-4}</math></p> <p>(ii) <math>t = 3,8s_1 \sqrt{h_{T1} k_s} \times 10^{-3}</math></p> | <p>(a) Within <math>\frac{D}{4}</math> from the gunwale:</p> <p>The greater of the following:</p> <p>(i) <math>t = 0,00085s_1 f (0,083L_1 + 10) \sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_L}}</math></p> <p>(ii) <math>t = 3,8s_1 \sqrt{h_{T1} k_s} \times 10^{-3}</math></p>                                                |
|                                                                                       | <p>(b) At upper turn of bilge:</p> <p>The greater of the following:</p> <p>(i) <math>t = 9,0s_1 (0,059L_1 + 7) \sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}} \times 10^{-4}</math></p> <p>(ii) <math>t = 4,9s_1 \sqrt{\frac{h_{T2} k_s}{2 - F_B}} \times 10^{-3}</math></p>   | <p>(b) Within <math>\frac{D}{4}</math> from mid-depth:</p> <p>The greater of the following:</p> <p>(i) <math>t = 9,0s_1 (0,059L_1 + 7) \sqrt{\frac{F_M}{k_L}} \times 10^{-4}</math></p> <p>(ii) <math>t = 4,6s_1 \sqrt{h_{T1} k_s} \times 10^{-3}</math></p>                                          |
|                                                                                       | <p>(c) Between upper turn of bilge and <math>\frac{D}{2}</math> from base:</p> <p>The greater of the following:</p> <p>(i) <math>t</math> from (b)(i)</p> <p>(ii) <math>t</math> from interpolation between (a)(ii) and (b)(ii)</p>                    | <p>(c) Within <math>\frac{D}{4}</math> from base (excluding bilge plating) see Note 1</p> <p>The greater of the following:</p> <p>(i) <math>t = 0,00085s_1 f (0,083L_1 + 10) \sqrt{\frac{F_B}{k_L}}</math></p> <p>(ii) <math>t = 5,7s_1 \sqrt{\frac{h_{T2} k_s}{1,8 - F_B}} \times 10^{-3}</math></p> |
| (4) Side shell fwd of $0,925L_R$ aft of $0,075L_R$                                    | $t = (6,0 + 0,03L_R) \sqrt{\frac{k_s s_1}{s_b}}$                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| (5) Sheerstrake                                                                       | $0,00075s_1 \sqrt{L_R k_s} + 1,5$ <p>but not less than the thickness of the adjacent side plating.</p>                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |



# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

**Table 3.3.1 Shell envelope plating (conclusion)**

| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| $F_B, F_D$ are as defined in 3.6                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | $s_1 = s$ , but is not to be taken less than $s_b$ |
| $L_R, D, T$ are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | $s_b = 600 \text{ mm}$ fwd of $0,95L_R$            |
| $L_1, L_2, \rho, s, S, f, k_L, k_s$ are as defined in 3.2.1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | $= 700 \text{ mm}$ $0,95L_R$ to $0,7L_R$           |
| $C_{WL} =$ a wave head in metres $= 0,0771L_R e^{-0,0044L_R}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $= 700 \text{ mm}$ $0,7L_R$ to $0,05L_R$           |
| where $L_R > 227 \text{ m}$ , $C_{WL}$ is not to be taken less than $6,446 \text{ m}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | $= 600 \text{ mm}$ aft of $0,05L_R$                |
| $h_{T1} = T + C_{WL}$ , in metres but need not be taken greater than $1,367 \text{ m}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | $F_M =$ the greater of $F_B$ and $F_D$             |
| $h_{T2} = (T + 0,5C_{WL})$ , in metres but need not be taken greater than $1,27 \text{ m}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | $e =$ base of natural logarithms, $2,7183$         |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. Outside the vertical extent of higher tensile steel as defined in Ch 2,1.6.3 the value of $k_L$ may be taken as 1,0.<br>2. See also Sections 14 and 15 for requirements for bottom slamming and bow flare impact.<br>3. For keel plate thickness and breadth, see Table 3.2.1.<br>4. Unframed bilge plating will be specially considered.<br>5. Shell envelope plating from $0,075L_R$ to $0,3L_R$ and $0,7L_R$ to $0,925L_R$ is to be determined by assuming a linear taper from the midship value given by (1) or (3) as appropriate to $t = (6,0 + 0,03L_R) \sqrt{k_s}$ at $0,075L_R$ and $0,925L_R$ . The plating thickness determined is not to be less than the value given by (2) or (4) as appropriate. See also 3.7. |                                                    |

3.10.2 Shell envelope primary structure for both longitudinally and transversely framed ships is to comply with the requirements of Table 3.3.4.

3.10.3 Additional requirements for shell envelope framing are indicated in Section 6.

## 3.11 Watertight bulkheads and deep tanks

3.11.1 Watertight bulkhead and deep tank scantlings are to comply with the requirements of Table 3.3.5. Factors for the stiffener end connection type are given in Fig. 3.3.3.

3.11.2 The thickness of the watertight bulkhead and deep tank plating is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirements given in Section 2.

3.11.3 Additional requirements for watertight bulkhead and deep tank scantlings are indicated in Pt 3, Ch 2,4 and Pt 3, Ch 2,3 respectively.

## 3.12 Deck structures

3.12.1 Deck plating for both longitudinally and transversely framed ships is to comply with the requirements of Table 3.3.6.

3.12.2 Deck framing for both longitudinally and transversely framed ships is to comply with the requirements of Table 3.3.7 and for transversely framed ships Table 3.3.8.

3.12.3 Deck primary structure for both longitudinally and transversely framed ships is to comply with the following requirements:

- (a) Girders and transverses or deep beams in way of dry spaces:

- (i) supporting up to three point loads  $Z$  to be determined using calculations based on a stress of  $123,5/k_s \text{ N/mm}^2$ , assuming fixed ends and the inertia given as follows:

$$I = \frac{1,85}{k_s} l_e Z \text{ cm}^4$$

- (ii) supporting four or more point loads or a uniformly distributed load

$$Z = 4,75k_s S H_g l_e^2 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$I = \frac{1,85}{k_s} l_e Z \text{ cm}^4$$

- (b) Girders and transverses in way of the crown or bottom of a tank

$$Z = 11,7k_s h_4 S l_e^2 \text{ cm}^3$$

$$I = \frac{2,8}{k_s} l_e Z \text{ cm}^4$$

where

$H_g =$  weather head  $h_1$ , or deck pressure head  $h_2$ , in metres as given in Table 3.3.7

$h_4 =$  tank head, in metres

$l_e =$  effective span length in metres as defined in Ch 2,2.6

$S, k_s$  are as defined in 3.2.1.

3.12.4 The thickness of the deck plating is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirements given in Section 2.

3.12.5 Additional requirements for deck structures are indicated in Section 10.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

**Table 3.3.2 Shell envelope framing (0,2L<sub>R</sub> to 0,8L<sub>R</sub>)**

| Longitudinal framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Modulus, in cm <sup>3</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (1) Side longitudinals in way of dry spaces, including double skin construction (see Note 1)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | The lesser of the following:<br>(a) $Z = 0,05 s k_s h_{T1} l_e^2 F_s F_1$<br>(b) $Z$ from (3)(a) evaluated using $s$ and $l_e$ for the longitudinal under consideration and the remaining parameters evaluated at the base line                                                                                        |                             |
| (2) Side longitudinals in way of wet spaces or deep tanks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | The greater of the following:<br>(a) $Z$ as from (1)<br>(b) As required by Table 3.3.5 for deep tanks, using $h_{T3}$ instead of $h_4$ , but need not exceed $Z$ from (3)(b) evaluated using $l_{e1}$ , $s$ and $l_e$ for the longitudinal under consideration and the remaining parameters evaluated at the base line |                             |
| (3) Bottom and bilge longitudinals                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | The greater of the following:<br>(a) $Z = (0,002l_{e1} + 0,042) s k_s h_{T2} l_e^2 F_s F_1$<br>(b) $Z = (0,002l_{e1} + 0,042) s k_s h_{T3} l_e^2 F_s F_1$                                                                                                                                                              |                             |
| Transverse framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Modulus, in cm <sup>3</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Inertia, in cm <sup>4</sup> |
| (4) Side frames in dry spaces                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | The greater of the following:<br>(a) $Z = C s k_s h_{T1} H^2 \times 10^{-3}$<br>(b) $Z = 8,2 s k_s D_1 \times 10^{-3}$                                                                                                                                                                                                 | $I = \frac{3,2}{k_s} H Z$   |
| (5) Side frames in way of wet spaces or deep tanks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | The greater of the following:<br>(a) $1,15 \times Z$ from (4)<br>(b) $Z = 6 s k_s h H^2 \times 10^{-3}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                | $I = \frac{3,2}{k_s} H Z$   |
| (6) Frames supporting hatch end beams or deck transverses (see Note 3)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | The greater of the following:<br>(a) $Z$ from (4)<br>(b) $Z = 2,2 (0,2l_s^2 + H^2) k_s S H_9$                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | $I = \frac{3,2}{k_s} H Z$   |
| (7) Bottom transverse frames (see Note 4)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | $Z = 2 s k_s T l_e \times 10^{-2}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | —                           |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| <p><math>\rho, L_1, L_2, s, k_s, S</math> are as defined in 3.2.1<br/> <math>L_R, D, T</math> are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2<br/> <math>C_{WLIS}</math> as defined in Table 3.3.1<br/> <math>F_B, F_D</math> is as defined in 3.6<br/> <math>l_e</math> = as defined in Ch 2,2.6, but is not to be taken less than 1,5 m except in way of the centre girder brackets required by 8.5.3 where a minimum span of 1,25 m may be used<br/> <math>l_{e1}</math> = <math>l_e</math> in metres, but is not to be taken less than 2,5 m and need not be taken greater than 5,0 m<br/> <math>F_s</math> is a fatigue factor for side longitudinals defined in Table 3.3.3</p> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="margin-right: 20px;"> <math display="block">C_1 = \frac{60}{225 - 165F_D} \text{ at deck}</math> <math display="block">= 1,0 \text{ at } \frac{D}{2}</math> <math display="block">= \frac{75}{225 - 150F_B} \text{ at base line}</math> </div> <div style="font-size: 3em; margin-right: 20px;">}</div> <div>Intermediate values by interpolation</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; align-items: center; margin-top: 20px;"> <div style="margin-right: 20px;"> <math display="block">F_1 = \frac{D C_1}{4D + 20h_5} \text{ for side longitudinals above } \frac{D}{2}</math> <math display="block">= \frac{D C_1}{25D - 20h_5} \text{ for side longitudinals below } \frac{D}{2}</math> </div> <div style="font-size: 3em; margin-right: 20px;">}</div> <div>minimum <math>F_1 = 0,14</math></div> </div> <p>and bottom longitudinals</p> <p>where</p> <div style="display: flex;"> <div style="margin-right: 20px;"> <math>z</math> = height above base, in metres<br/> <math>f_{cw}</math> = 0,5 at base line<br/> <math>= 1,0</math> at <math>T</math><br/> <math>= 0</math> at <math>1,6T</math> and above </div> <div style="font-size: 3em; margin-right: 20px;">}</div> <div>Intermediate values by interpolation</div> </div> <p><math>H_9</math> = weather head, <math>h_1</math>, or stores head, <math>h_2</math>, in metres, as defined in Table 3.3.7, whichever is applicable</p>                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| <p><math>D_1</math> = 1,6T but not less than 10 or greater than 16 (see Note 1)<br/> <math>H</math> = vertical framing depth in m, but not less than 2,5 m, see Note 2<br/> <math>h_{T1}</math> = <math>(T - z + f_{cw} C_{WL}) F_\lambda</math> below <math>T</math><br/> <math>= f_{cw} C_{WL} F_\lambda</math> above <math>T</math> but not less than the greater of <math>F_\lambda L_1/70</math> or 1,2 m<br/> <math>h_{T2}</math> = <math>(T + 0,5C_{WL}) F_\lambda</math><br/> <math>h_{T1}</math> and <math>h_{T2}</math> need not exceed <math>(1,6T - z + D_1/8)</math> below <math>1,6T</math> and <math>(z - 1,6T + D_1/8)</math> above <math>1,6T</math><br/> <math>h_{T3}</math> = <math>0,9h_4 - 0,25T</math>, in metres, at the base line<br/> <math>= 0,9h_4</math>, in metres, at and above <math>T/4</math> from the base line, intermediate values by linear interpolation<br/> <math>h_4</math> = load head required by Table 3.3.5 for deep tanks<br/> <math>h_5</math> = measured from the mid length of the stiffener to the strength deck at side<br/> <math>h</math> = <math>h_4</math> or <math>h_5</math> whichever is greater<br/> <math>F_\lambda</math> = 1,0 for <math>L_R \leq 200</math> m<br/> <math>= [1,0 + 0,0023(L_R - 200)]</math> for <math>L_R &gt; 200</math> m<br/> <math>C</math> = end connection factor<br/> <math>= 3,1</math> where two Rule standard brackets are fitted<br/> <math>= 3,1 (1,8 - 0,8l_a/l_b)</math> where one Rule standard bracket and one reduced bracket fitted<br/> <math>= 3,1 (2,15 - 1,15l_{am}/l_b)</math> where two reduced brackets are fitted<br/> <math>= 5,5</math> where one Rule standard bracket is fitted<br/> <math>= 5,5 (1,2 - 0,2l_a/l_b)</math> where one reduced bracket is fitted<br/> <math>= 6,4</math> where no bracket is fitted<br/> The requirements for frames where brackets larger than Rule standard are fitted will be specially considered<br/> <math>l_a</math> = equivalent arm length, in mm, as derived from Ch 6,5.4.5<br/> <math>l_b</math> = as defined in Ch 6,5.4.5<br/> <math>l_{am}</math> = mean equivalent arm length, in mm, for both brackets<br/> <math>l_s</math> = span of supported beam or transverse in metres</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| <p>NOTES</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The scantlings of members above <math>D/2</math> may require special consideration on the basis of structural configuration and the distribution of bending stress at the section concerned.</li> <li>Where frames are inclined at more than 15° to the vertical, <math>H</math>, is to be measured along a chord between span points of the frame.</li> <li>If the modulus obtained from (6) for frames under deck transverses exceeds that obtained from (4) and (5), the intermediate frames may be reduced provided that the combined modulus is maintained and the reduction in any intermediate frame is not greater than 35 per cent. The reduced modulus is to be not less than that given by (4)(b).</li> <li>For single bottom structure a plate floor is to be fitted at every frame.</li> </ol>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |

## Scantling Determination

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

Table 3.3.3 Shell envelope framing forward and aft

| Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Modulus, in cm <sup>3</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Longitudinal framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                     |
| (1)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Side longitudinals in way of dry spaces including double skin construction (see Note 3):<br>(a) Forward of the collision bulkhead<br>(b) Aft of the aft peak bulkhead<br>(c) Between the collision bulkhead and 0,8L and between aft peak bulkhead and 0,2L | $Z = 0,0065s k_s h_{T1} l_e^2 F_s$ but not less than $Z = 0,007s k_s l_e^2 (0,6 + 0,167D_2)$<br>$Z = 0,008s k_s h_{T1} l_e^2 F_s$ but not less than $Z = 0,007s k_s l_e^2 (0,6 + 0,167D_2)$<br>$Z = 0,0065s k_s h_{T1} l_e^2 F_s$ or as required in the midship region whichever is the greater, but not less than $Z = 0,007s k_s l_e^2 (0,6 + 0,167D_2)$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                     |
| (2)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Side longitudinals in way of double skin or deep tanks                                                                                                                                                                                                      | As required in the midship region                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                     |
| (3)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Bottom and bilge longitudinals (see Note 4)                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | As required in the midship region                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                     |
| Transverse framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Inertia, in cm <sup>4</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                     |
| (4)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Side frames fwd of collision bulkhead and aft of aft peak bulkhead                                                                                                                                                                                          | The greater of<br>(a) $Z = 1,85s k_s T D_2 S_1 \times 10^{-3}$<br>(b) $Z = 0,007s k_s l_e^2 (0,6 + 0,167D_2)$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | $I = f_1 S_1 Z/k_s$ |
| (5)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | All other frames in dry spaces forward of 0,8L and aft 0,2L (see Note 2)                                                                                                                                                                                    | The greater of the following<br>(a) $Z = C s k_s h_{T1} H^2 \times 10^{-3}$<br>(b) $Z = 8,2s k_s D_2 \times 10^{-3}$<br>(c) $Z = 0,007s k_s l_e^2 (0,6 + 0,167D_2)$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | $I = f_1 S_1 Z/k_s$ |
| (6)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Panting stringer                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Web depth, $d_w$ , same depth as frames<br>Web thickness, $t = 5 + 0,025L_2$ mm<br>Face area, $A = k_s S_2 (H + 1)$ cm <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                     |
| (7)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Main and 'tween deck frames elsewhere                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | As required in the midship region                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                     |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                     |
| $L_1, L_2, s, k_s$ are as defined in 3.2.1<br>$L_R, D, T$ are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2<br>$C_{WL}$ as defined in Table 3.3.1<br>$F_\lambda$ as defined in Table 3.3.2<br>$l_e$ = as defined in Ch 2,2.6 but is to be taken not less than 1,5 m<br>$D_2 = T + H_b$ metres, where $H_b$ is the minimum bow height, in metres, obtained from Pt 3, Ch 2,5.3<br>$H$ = vertical framing depth, in metres, of sideframes, but is to be taken not less than 2,5 m (see Note 1)<br>$S_1$ = vertical spacing of peak stringers or height of lower deck above the peak, in metres<br>$S_2$ = vertical spacing of panting stringers, in metres<br>$C$ = end connection factor, see Table 3.3.2<br>$f_L$ = 1,32 aft of 0,15 $L_R$<br>= 1,0 from 0,2 $L_R$ to 0,8 $L_R$<br>= 1,71 fwd of 0,85 $L_R$<br>Intermediate positions by interpolation<br>$z$ = height above baseline in metres |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | $h_{T1} = (T - z + f_L f_{cw} C_{WL}) F_\lambda$ below $T$<br>= $f_L f_{cw} C_{WL}, F_\lambda$ above $T$ but not less than $f_L F_\lambda L_1/70$<br>$f_{cw} = 0,5$ at baseline<br>= 1,0 at 0,65 $D_2$ and above<br>Intermediate positions by interpolation (see Note 5)<br>$f_1 = 3,5$ forward and 3,2 aft<br>$F_s$ = fatigue factor for side longitudinals for built symmetric sections, flat bars, bulbs and T bars<br>= 1,05 at keel, 1,1 at $T$ , 1,0 at 1,6 $T$ and above for angle bars<br>= $0,5 \left( 1 + \frac{1,1}{k_s} \right)$ at keel<br>= $\frac{1,1}{k_s}$ at $\frac{D}{2}$<br>= 1,0 at 1,6 $T$ and above<br>built asymmetric sections will be specially considered.<br>Intermediate values by linear interpolation |                     |
| NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                     |
| 1. Where frames are inclined at more than 15° to the vertical, $H$ is to be measured along a chord between the span points of the frame.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                     |
| 2. The modulus for these members need not exceed that derived from (4) using $H$ in place of $S_1$ .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                     |
| 3. Where struts are fitted midway between transverses in double skin construction, the modulus of the side longitudinals may be reduced by 50k per cent from that obtained for locations (2) and (3) as applicable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                     |
| 4. Shell framing is also to comply with the requirements for bottom slamming and bow flare impact in Sections 14 and 15 respectively.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                     |
| 5. For ships where $T > 0,65D_1$ , the distribution of $f_{cw}$ will be specially considered.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                     |

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

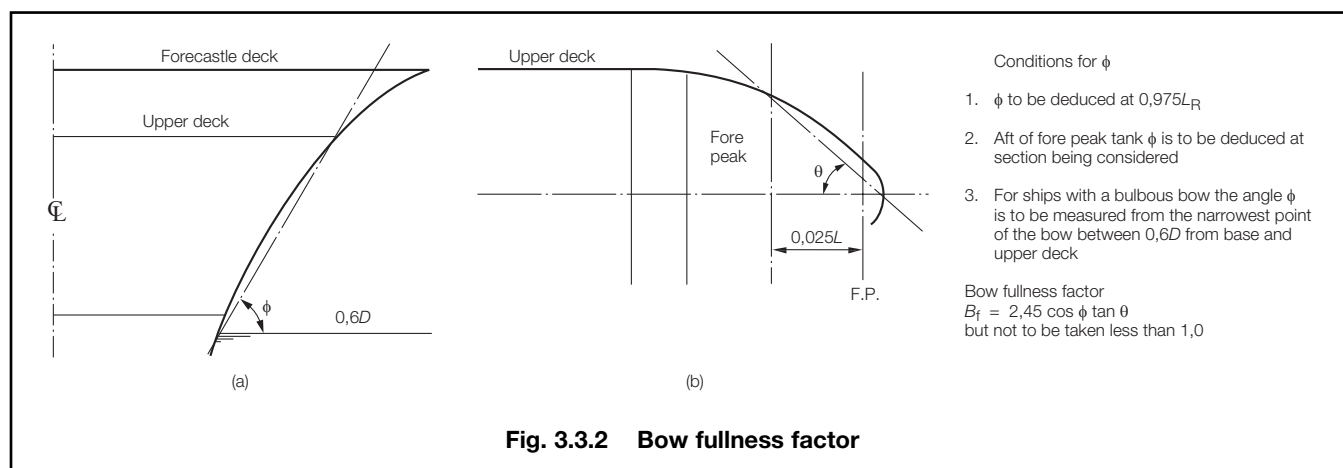
**Table 3.3.4 Shell envelope primary structure**

| Item and location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Modulus, in cm <sup>3</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Inertia, in cm <sup>4</sup> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Longitudinal framing system:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| (1) Side transverse web frames in dry spaces                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | $Z = 9,0k_s S h_{T1} l_e^2$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | —                           |
| (2) Side transverse web frames in deep tanks<br>(a) midships<br>(b) aft of $0,2L_R$<br>(c) fwd of $0,8L_R$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | $Z = 9,4k_s S h_4 l_e^2$<br>$Z = 11,0k_s S h_4 l_e^2$<br>$Z = 11,0k_s S h_4 l_e^2 f_\gamma$<br>or as (1) above, whichever is the greater                                                                                                                                               | $I = \frac{2,5}{k_s} l_e Z$ |
| (3) Side transverses in dry spaces above $1,6T$<br>(see Note 2)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | $Z = C_2 k_s S T H \sqrt{D}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | —                           |
| Transverse framing system:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| (4) Side stringers in dry spaces                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | $Z = 7,0k_s S h_{T1} l_e^2$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | —                           |
| (5) Side stringers in deep tanks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | $Z = 9,4k_s S h_4 l_e^2$<br>or as (4) above, whichever is the greater                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | $I = \frac{2,5}{k_s} l_e Z$ |
| (6) Web frames in dry spaces above $1,6T$<br>(see Note 2)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | $Z = C_3 k_s S T H \sqrt{D}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | —                           |
| (7) Web frames supporting side stringers                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | $Z$ determined from calculation based on following assumptions:<br>(a) fixed ends<br>(b) point loadings<br>(c) head $f_\gamma h_4$ or $f_\gamma h_{T1}$ as applicable<br>(d) bending stress $\frac{100}{k_s}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup><br>(e) shear stress $\frac{90}{k_s}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> | $I = \frac{2,5}{k_s} l_e Z$ |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| <p><math>p, s, S, k_s</math> are as defined in 3.2.1<br/> <math>D, T, L_R</math> are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2<br/> <math>h_4</math> = tank head, in metres, as defined in Table 3.3.6<br/> <math>L</math> = load head, in metres, measured from mid-point of span to upper deck at side amidships<br/> <math>l_e</math> = effective length of stiffening member, in metres, see Ch 2,2.6<br/> <math>h_{T1}</math> = as defined in Table 3.3.3</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| <p><math>f_\gamma</math> = measured at midspan of member fwd of <math>0,8L_R</math><br/>                     = 1,0 at base line<br/>                     = <math>B_f</math> at <math>0,6D</math> above base<br/>                     = <math>0,5(B_f - 1) + 1</math> at <math>D</math> above base<br/>                     = 1,0 at any depth aft of <math>0,8L_R</math><br/> <math>B_f</math> = see Fig. 3.3.2 for frame members fwd of <math>0,8L_R</math><br/>                     = 1 for framing members aft of <math>0,8L_R</math><br/> <math>C_2, C_3</math> = from Fig. 3.3.4<br/> <math>H</math> = vertical height between decks in metres</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| <p>intermediate values by linear interpolation</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| <p>NOTES</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| <p>1. For primary structure in way of machinery spaces and also forward of <math>0,8L_R</math> the minimum web depth is not to be less than 2,5 times the depth of adjacent frames or longitudinals as appropriate. Stringers forward of <math>0,8L_R</math> may be 2,2 times the depth of the adjacent stiffener.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| <p>2. For stringers and webs in fore peak tanks or deep tanks, see Pt 3, Ch 2,3.8.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |
| <p>3. The breadths and effective length should be measured along the line of the shell.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                             |

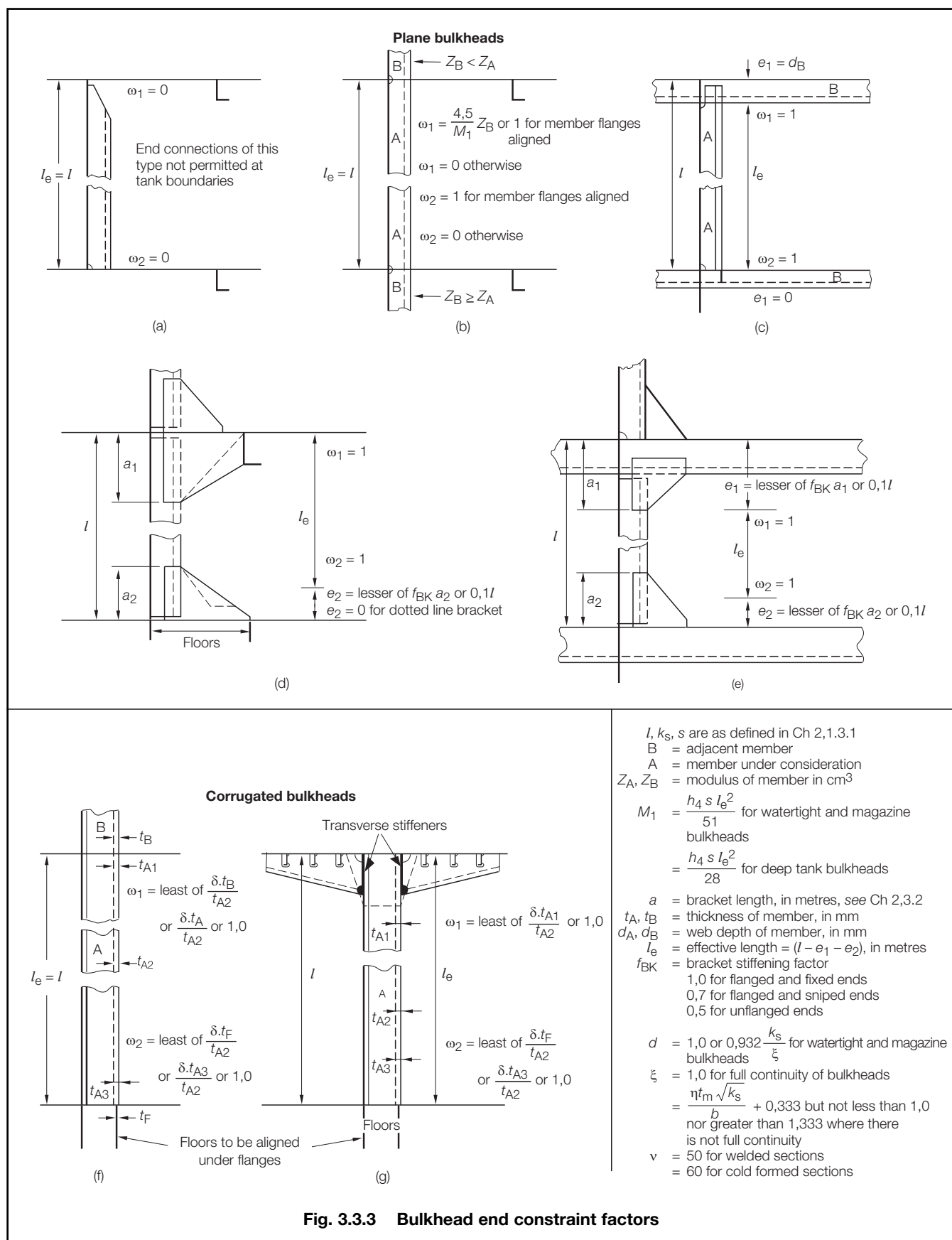
## Scantling Determination

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

## Section 3

**Table 3.3.5 Watertight and deep tank bulkhead and deck scantlings**

| Item and requirement                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Watertight bulkheads and decks                                                 | Deep tank bulkheads, decks and collision bulkheads                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                |                                                                                |
| (1) Plating thickness for plane, symmetrically corrugated and double plate bulkheads                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | $t = 0,004s \beta \sqrt{h_4 k_s}$ mm<br>but not less than 5,0 mm               | $t = 0,0057s \beta \sqrt{h_4 k_s}$ mm<br>but not less than 6,0 mm              |
| Secondary stiffening                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                |                                                                                |
| (2) Modulus of rolled and built stiffeners, swedges, double plate bulkheads and symmetrical corrugations                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | $Z = \frac{s k_s h_4 l_e^2}{71 f_s (\omega_1 + \omega_2 + 2)}$ cm <sup>3</sup> | $Z = \frac{s k_s h_4 l_e^2}{22 f_s (\omega_1 + \omega_2 + 2)}$ cm <sup>3</sup> |
| (3) Inertia of rolled and built stiffeners and swedges                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | —                                                                              | $I = \frac{2,3}{k_s} l_e Z$ cm <sup>4</sup>                                    |
| Primary stiffening                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                |                                                                                |
| (4) Stringers or webs supporting vertical or horizontal stiffening:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                |                                                                                |
| (a) Modulus                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | $Z = 5,0 k_s h_4 S l_e^2$ cm <sup>3</sup>                                      | $Z = 10,5 k_s h_4 S l_e^2$ cm <sup>3</sup>                                     |
| (b) Inertia                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | —                                                                              | $I = \frac{2,5}{k_s} l_e Z$ cm <sup>4</sup>                                    |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                |                                                                                |
| $s, S, k_s$ are as defined in Table 3.2.1<br>$l_e$ = effective length of stiffening member in metres and for bulkhead stiffeners, see Fig. 3.3.3<br>$f_s$ = 1,4 for rolled or built sections and double plate bulkheads<br>= 1,6 for flat bars<br>= 1,1 for symmetrical corrugations of deep tank bulkheads<br>= 1,0 for symmetrical corrugations of watertight bulkheads |                                                                                |                                                                                |
| $h_4$ = $0,1P_{bhp}$ for deep tank and watertight bulkhead plating<br>= $0,1P_{bhs}$ for deep tank and watertight stiffening<br>$P_{bhp}$ and $P_{bhs}$ are the bulkhead design pressures as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.8<br>$\omega_1$ and $\omega_2$ are bulkhead end constraint factors, see Fig. 3.3.3<br>$\beta$ = aspect ratio correction factor, see Ch 2,2.5.1       |                                                                                |                                                                                |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. In no case are the scantlings of deep tank bulkheads to be less than the requirements for watertight bulkheads where watertight bulkheads are required by Pt 3, Ch 2,4.<br>2. Corrugated bulkheads are to comply with the requirements of Ch 2,2.3. Both the plate panels and section inertia and modulus requirements are to be assessed.             |                                                                                |                                                                                |



**Fig. 3.3.3 Bulkhead end constraint factors**

## Scantling Determination

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

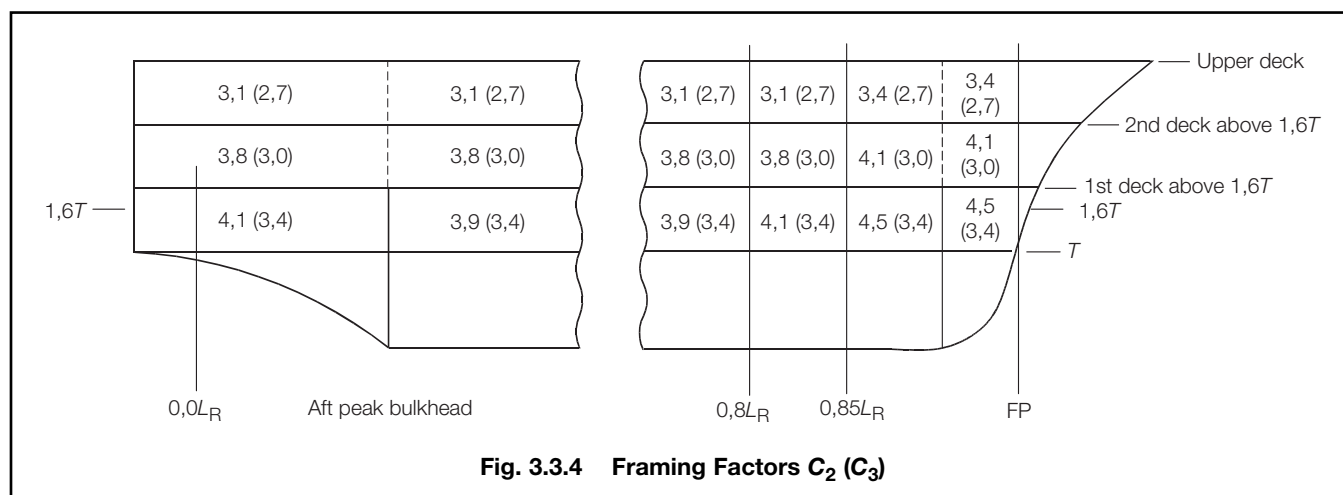
Fig. 3.3.4 Framing Factors  $C_2$  ( $C_3$ )

Table 3.3.6 Deck plating

| Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Minimum thickness, in mm, <i>see also</i> Ch 3,2.2                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Longitudinal framing                                                                                                                                             | Transverse framing                                                                                                                                |
| (1) Strength deck 0,3L <sub>R</sub> to 0,7L <sub>R</sub><br>( <i>see</i> Notes 1, 2 and 6)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | The greater of the following:<br>(a) $t = 9,0s_1 (0,059L_1 + 7) \sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_L}} \times 10^{-4}$<br>(b) $t = (7,4s_1 \sqrt{L_R k_S} \times 10^{-4}) + 1,5$ | The greater of the following:<br>(a) $t = s_1 f (0,083L_1 + 10) \sqrt{\frac{F_D}{k_L}} \times 10^{-4}$<br>(b) $t = 0,001s_1 \sqrt{L_R k_S} + 2,0$ |
| (2) Weather deck and exposed decks<br>( <i>see</i> Note 2)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | $t = (7,4s_1 \sqrt{L_R k_S} \times 10^{-4}) + 1,5$                                                                                                               | $t = (7,4s_1 \sqrt{L_R k_S} \times 10^{-4}) + 1,0$                                                                                                |
| (3) Lower decks<br>(a) effective (continuous)<br>(b) non effective                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | $t = 0,011s_1 \sqrt{k_S}$<br>$t = 0,009s_1 \sqrt{k_S}$                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                   |
| (4) Strength deck forward of 0,925L <sub>R</sub><br>and aft of 0,075L <sub>R</sub>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | $t = (5,0 + 0,018L_R) \sqrt{\frac{k_S s_1}{s_b}}$                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                   |
| (5) Plating forming the upper flange of<br>underdeck girders                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Clear of deck openings, $t = \sqrt{\frac{A_f}{2,2k_S}}$<br><br>In way of deck openings, $t = 1,1 \sqrt{\frac{A_f}{2,2k_S}}$<br><br>Minimum breadth, $b = 760$ mm |                                                                                                                                                   |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                   |
| <div><div><math>s, S, L_1, p, k_L, k_S, f</math> are as defined in 3.2.1<br/><math>L_R</math> as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2<br/><math>s_1</math> as defined in Table 3.3.1<br/><math>b</math> = breadth of increased plating, in mm</div><div><math>s_b</math> = as defined in Table 3.3.1, except of aft of 0,05L<sub>R</sub> equal to 850 mm<br/><math>F_D</math> = as defined in 3.6<br/><math>A_f</math> = girder face area in cm<sup>2</sup></div></div>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                   |
| NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                   |
| <div>1. The thickness derived in accordance with (1) is also to satisfy the buckling requirements of Ch 2,3 and minimum thickness requirements.</div> <div>2. The deck thickness is to be not less than the basic end deck thickness as given in (4).</div> <div>3. Where a deck loading exceeds 43,2 kN/m<sup>2</sup>, the thickness of plating will be specially considered.</div> <div>4. The exposed deck taper thickness is to extend into a forecastle or poop for at least one third of the beam, <math>B</math>, from the superstructure end bulkhead.</div> <div>5. For decks forming the boundary of a tank the plating thickness is to be 1,0 mm in excess of the requirements in Table 3.3.5 (1) for deep tanks.</div> <div>6. Strength deck plating from 0,075L<sub>R</sub> to 0,3L<sub>R</sub> and 0,7L<sub>R</sub> to 0,925L<sub>R</sub> is to be determined by assuming a linear taper from the midship value (1) to <math>t = (5,0 + 0,018L_R) \sqrt{k_S}</math> at 0,075L<sub>R</sub> and 0,925L<sub>R</sub>. The plating thickness determined is not to be less than (4). The total area of strength deck plating at 0,075L<sub>R</sub> and 0,925L<sub>R</sub> is not to be less than 30 per cent of the midship value, <i>see</i> 3.7.</div> |                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                   |

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

**Table 3.3.7 Deck longitudinals (longitudinal framing)**

| Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Modulus, in cm <sup>3</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Strength deck 0,3L <sub>R</sub> to 0,7L <sub>R</sub>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | $Z = 0,039 s k_s h_{T1} l_e^2 F_1$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| (2) Weather deck and exposed deck<br>(a) 0,075L <sub>R</sub> to 0,8L <sub>R</sub><br>(b) Weather deck fwd of 0,8L <sub>R</sub> (see Note 3)<br>(c) Weather deck aft of 0,075L <sub>R</sub>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | $Z = s k_s (360h_1 + 0,0045 (l_e L_2)^2) \times 10^{-4}$<br>$Z = f_L s k_s (360h_1 + 0,0045 (l_e L_1)^2) \times 10^{-4}$<br>$Z = 0,0067 s k_s h_1 l_e^2$<br>or (a) above whichever is greater                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| (3) Lower decks<br>(a) Stores, machinery and hangar decks (i) effective<br>(ii) non effective<br>(b) Accommodation decks (see Note 1) (i) effective<br>(ii) non effective                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $Z = s k_s (5,4L_1 + 23h_2 l_e^2) \times 10^{-4}$<br>$Z = 0,0045 s k_s h_2 l_e^2$<br>$Z = s k_s (4,7L_1 + 23h_2 l_e^2) \times 10^{-4}$<br>$Z = 0,0039 s k_s h_2 l_e^2$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| (4) Strength deck in way of superstructure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | To be specially considered                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <p><math>\rho, L_1, L_2, s, k_s</math> are as defined in 3.2.1</p> <p><math>D, T, L_R</math> are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1.5.2</p> <p><math>F_D =</math> as defined in 3.6</p> $C_1 = \frac{60}{225 - 165F_D}$ <p><math>d_w =</math> web depth of longitudinal, in mm, see Note 2</p> <p><math>F_1 = 0,25C_1</math></p> <p><math>l_e =</math> as defined in Ch 2.2.6, but not to be taken less than 1,5 m</p> <p><math>h_{T1} =</math> the greater of <math>\frac{L_1}{70}</math> or 1,20 m</p> $f_{FB} = \frac{0,0914 + 0,003L_R}{D - T} - 0,15$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p><math>h_2 =</math> deck pressure head (see Note 4)</p> <p><math>= 2,6</math> for machinery spaces, workshops or hangers</p> <p><math>= 2,0</math> for stores</p> <p><math>= 1,2</math> for accommodation decks and void spaces</p> <p><math>= h_m</math> for general cargo spaces</p> <p><math>h_m =</math> general cargo deck pressure head, to be taken as equivalent to the pressure head produced by filling the hold to its full depth at a stowage rate of 1,39 m<sup>3</sup>/tonne, unless specified otherwise, (see Note 6).</p> <p>fwd of 0,925L<sub>R</sub></p> <p><math>f_L = 1,57</math></p> <p><math>h_1 = 1,8</math></p> <p>from 0,88L<sub>R</sub> to 0,925L<sub>R</sub></p> <p><math>f_L = 1,43</math></p> <p><math>h_1 = 1,5</math></p> <p>aft of 0,88L<sub>R</sub></p> <p><math>f_L = 1,23</math> (see Note 3)</p> <p><math>h_1 = 1,2 + 2,04f_{FB}</math></p> |
| <p>NOTES</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Where weather decks are intended to carry deck equipment and the load is in excess of 8,5 kN/m<sup>2</sup>, the scantlings of longitudinals will be specially considered.</li> <li>The web depth of longitudinals, <math>d_w</math> is to be not less than 60 mm.</li> <li>For taper end modulus calculation <math>f_L = 1,23</math> at 0,925L<sub>R</sub>.</li> <li>Where the deck forms the boundary of a tank, the additional requirements of Table 3.3.5 for deep tanks are to be applied.</li> <li>The modulus of strength deck longitudinals from 0,075L<sub>R</sub> to 0,3L<sub>R</sub> and 0,7L<sub>R</sub> to 0,925L<sub>R</sub> is to be determined by assuming a linear taper from the midship value (1) to the basic weather deck value (2) at 0,075L<sub>R</sub> and 0,925L<sub>R</sub>. The modulus determined is not to be less than 2(b) or 2(c), as appropriate, see 3.7. The total area of longitudinals at 0,075L<sub>R</sub> is not to be less than 50 per cent of the midship's value.</li> <li>If the hold does not have a uniform cross-section the breadth and/or length averaged over the averaged depth, to an equivalent rectangular section, may be used when determining the volume of the hold.</li> </ol> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |



# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

**Table 3.3.8 Deck beams (transverse framing)**

| Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Modulus, in cm <sup>3</sup>                                                                                                                            |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|------|---------|-----|---------|------|-----------|-----|---------------------------|-----|-------------------|-----|-----------|-----|--------------------------------|-----|--------------------|-----|-----------|-----|
| (1) Strength, weather and exposed decks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | The lesser of the following:<br>(a) $Z = (K_1 K_2 T D + K_3 B_1 s h_1 l_e^2) k_s \times 10^{-4}$<br>(b) $Z = 2 K_3 B_1 s k_s h_1 l_e^2 \times 10^{-4}$ |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| (2) Lower decks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                        |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| (a) Stores, machinery and hangar decks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | $Z = (360 K_1 T D + 35 s h_2 l_e^2) k_s \times 10^{-4}$                                                                                                |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| (b) Accommodation decks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | $Z = (480 K_1 T D + 35 s h_2 l_e^2) k \times 10^{-4}$                                                                                                  |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                        |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| s, $k_s$ are as defined in 3.2.1<br>$B, D, T$ are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2<br>$d_w$ = depth of beam, in mm<br>$h_1$ = strength/weather deck head in metres, see Table 3.3.7<br>$h_2$ = deck pressure head in metres, see Table 3.3.7<br>$l_e$ is as defined in Ch 2,2.6 but to be taken as not less than 1,83 m<br>$B_1$ = $B$ , but need not be taken greater than 21,5 m<br>$K_1$ = a factor dependent on the number of decks (including poop and bridge superstructures) at the position of the beam under consideration:<br><table><tr><td>1 deck</td><td>18,0</td><td>3 decks</td><td>9,5</td></tr><tr><td>2 decks</td><td>12,0</td><td>4 or more</td><td>8,4</td></tr></table><br>$K_2$ = a factor dependent on the location of the beam:<br><table><tr><td>at short bridge and poops</td><td>133</td></tr><tr><td>fwd of 0,88<math>L_R</math></td><td>800</td></tr><tr><td>elsewhere</td><td>530</td></tr></table><br>$K_3$ = a factor dependent on the location of the beam:<br><table><tr><td>span adjacent to the ship side</td><td>3,3</td></tr><tr><td>fwd of 0,925<math>L_R</math></td><td>5,0</td></tr><tr><td>elsewhere</td><td>3,0</td></tr></table> |                                                                                                                                                        | 1 deck    | 18,0 | 3 decks | 9,5 | 2 decks | 12,0 | 4 or more | 8,4 | at short bridge and poops | 133 | fwd of 0,88 $L_R$ | 800 | elsewhere | 530 | span adjacent to the ship side | 3,3 | fwd of 0,925 $L_R$ | 5,0 | elsewhere | 3,0 |
| 1 deck                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 18,0                                                                                                                                                   | 3 decks   | 9,5  |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| 2 decks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 12,0                                                                                                                                                   | 4 or more | 8,4  |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| at short bridge and poops                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 133                                                                                                                                                    |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| fwd of 0,88 $L_R$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 800                                                                                                                                                    |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| elsewhere                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 530                                                                                                                                                    |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| span adjacent to the ship side                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 3,3                                                                                                                                                    |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| fwd of 0,925 $L_R$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 5,0                                                                                                                                                    |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| elsewhere                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | 3,0                                                                                                                                                    |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                        |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |
| 1. Where weather decks are intended to carry deck cargo and the load is in excess of 8,5 kN/m <sup>2</sup> , the scantlings of beams may be required to be increased to comply with the requirements for location (2).<br>2. The web depth of beams, $d_w$ , is to be not less than 60 mm.<br>3. Where decks form the boundary of a tank, the additional requirements of Table 3.3.5 for deep tanks is to be applied.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                        |           |      |         |     |         |      |           |     |                           |     |                   |     |           |     |                                |     |                    |     |           |     |

## 3.13 Superstructures, deckhouses and bulwarks

3.13.1 The thickness of deck plating is to be as required by Table 3.3.9.

3.13.2 The scantlings of deckhouse and superstructure side, ends and deck stiffening are to comply with the requirements of Table 3.3.10.

3.13.3 The section modulus of deck girders and transverses is to be in accordance with the requirements of 3.12.3 using  $H_g$  equal to  $0,1P_{wd}$ ,  $0,1P_{dh}$  or  $0,1P_{in}$  as appropriate, where  $P_{wd}$ ,  $P_{dh}$  and  $P_{in}$  are defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.5.

3.13.4 The thickness of the superstructures and deckhouses is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirements given in Section 2.

3.13.5 Additional requirements for superstructures, deckhouses and bulwarks are indicated in Section 11.

**Table 3.3.9 Superstructure plating**

| Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Thickness, in mm                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| (1) Superstructure and deckhouse fronts, sides and backs                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $t = 0,00126 s \beta \sqrt{k_s P_{dh}}$       |
| (2) Exposed decks on superstructures                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | $t = 0,00126 s \beta \sqrt{k_s P_{wd}} + 1,5$ |
| (3) Internal decks in superstructures and deckhouses                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | $t = 0,0017 s \beta \sqrt{k_s P_{in}}$        |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                               |
| <p><math>s, f, k_s</math> are as defined in 3.2.1<br/> <math>P_{dh}</math> = deckhouse pressure, see Pt 5, Ch 3,5.5<br/> <math>P_{wd}</math> = weather deck pressure, see Pt 5, Ch 3,3.5<br/> <math>P_{in}</math> = internal deck pressure, see Pt 5, Ch 3,5.3<br/> <math>\beta</math> = aspect ratio correction factor, see Ch 2,2.5.1</p> |                                               |
| NOTE                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                               |
| Deckhouses and superstructures subjected to hull girder stress are to comply with the buckling requirements of Ch 2,3.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                               |

**Table 3.3.10 Superstructure framing**

| Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Modulus, in cm <sup>3</sup>                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Superstructure and deckhouse fronts, sides and backs:<br>side longitudinals and side frames (see Note 1)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | $Z = 0,0006 P_{dh} s k_s l_e^2$                                                           |
| Exposed decks:<br>deck beams and deck longitudinals, (see Note 2)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | The greater of the following:<br>(a) $Z = 0,0006 P_{wd} s k_s l_e^2$<br>(b) $Z = 0,025 s$ |
| Internal decks:<br>deck beams and deck longitudinals                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | The greater of the following:<br>(a) $Z = 0,0006 P_{in} s k_s l_e^2$<br>(b) $Z = 0,025 s$ |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                           |
| <p><math>s, k_s</math> as defined in 3.2.1<br/> <math>l_e</math> = effective length of stiffening member as defined in Ch 2,2.6<br/> <math>f_{FB}</math> = see Table 3.3.7<br/> <math>P_{dh}</math> = deckhouse pressure, see Pt 5, Ch 3,3.5<br/> <math>P_{wd}</math> = weatherdeck pressure, see Pt 5, Ch 3,3.5<br/> <math>P_{in}</math> = internal deck pressure, see Pt 5, Ch 3,5.3</p> |                                                                                           |
| NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                           |
| <p>1. The section modulus of side frames forming part of the side shell is to comply with the requirements for shell envelope framing.<br/> 2. The section modulus of superstructure stiffening is not to be less than that required by Table 3.3.7 and 3.3.8 for full width superstructures.</p>                                                                                          |                                                                                           |

3.13.6 Superstructure deckhouse and bulwark stiffeners are to be continuous or efficiently bracketed top and bottom. Where this is impractical the modulus is to be increased by 20 per cent and the ends welded to the deck all round.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

## 3.14 Single and double bottom structures

3.14.1 Single bottom scantlings are to comply with the appropriate minimum requirements given in Section 2. For the forward region, the requirements of Table 3.3.12 are to be complied with.

3.14.2 Double bottom scantlings are to comply with Table 3.3.11 and the appropriate minimum requirements given in Section 2.

**Table 3.3.11 Double bottom requirements  
(0,2L<sub>R</sub> to 0,8L<sub>R</sub>)**

| Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Thickness, in mm                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Inner bottom plating,<br>(see Note)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | $t = 0,00122(s + 660) (k_s^2 L_R T)^{0,25}$                                                                                                             |
| Longitudinal framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | modulus, in cm <sup>3</sup>                                                                                                                             |
| Inner bottom<br>longitudinals                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | The greater of the following:<br>(a) $Z = (0,0017l_{e1} + 0,035)sk_s h_{T2} l_e^2 F_s F_1$<br>(b) $Z = (0,0017l_{e1} + 0,035)sk_s h_{T3} l_e^2 F_s F_1$ |
| Transverse framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                         |
| Inner bottom<br>transverse frames                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | $Z = 1,7s k_s T l_e \times 10^{-2}$                                                                                                                     |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                         |
| s, k <sub>s</sub> , are as defined in 3.2.1<br>L <sub>R</sub> , T are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2<br>l <sub>e1</sub> , l <sub>e</sub> , h <sub>T2</sub> , h <sub>T3</sub> , F <sub>1</sub> are as defined in Table 3.3.2<br>F <sub>s</sub> is as defined in Table 3.3.3 |                                                                                                                                                         |
| NOTE<br>The thickness of the margin plate, where fitted, is to be increased by 20 per cent.                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                         |

3.14.3 In the forward region, the requirements of Table 3.3.13 are to be complied with.

3.14.4 Additional requirements for single and double bottom structures are indicated in Sections 7 and 8.

3.14.5 Where there are large unsupported areas of double bottom and single bottom structure, the designer's calculations are to be submitted.

## 3.15 Fore peak structure

3.15.1 Internal structure in the fore peak is to comply with the requirements of Table 3.3.14.

## 3.16 Magazine structure

3.16.1 Magazine structure which is assessed in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 1,6.4 is to comply with the requirements of Table 3.3.15.

## Scantling Determination

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

**Table 3.3.12 Single bottom construction forward, minimum requirements**

| Area                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Item                                                                                   | Requirement                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Longitudinal framing minimum requirements                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Centreline girder:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Thickness, in mm                                                                       | $t = (0,007d_f + 1)\sqrt{k_s}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Floors and Girders                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Thickness, in mm<br>Depth ( $d_f$ ), in mm                                             | $t = (0,006d_f + 1)\sqrt{k_s}$ but need not exceed $12\sqrt{k_s}$<br>As midship region, see Table 3.2.1                                                                                                                                                               |
| Bottom Transverses                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Spacing, in metres                                                                     | See Pt 3, Ch 2,3.4.4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Transverse framing minimum requirements                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| Centreline girder                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Thickness, in mm<br><br>Modulus, in cm <sup>3</sup><br><br>Inertia, in cm <sup>4</sup> | $t = 0,95\sqrt{L_R k_s}$ but not less than 6 mm forward of $0,925L_R$ . Between $0,925L_R$ and $0,7L_R$ , the thickness may taper to the midship thickness<br><br>the greater of:<br>$Z = 8k_s S h_5 l_e^2$<br>$Z = 8k_s S h_4 l_e^2$<br>$I = \frac{2,5l_e^2 Z}{k_s}$ |
| Floors in tanks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Spacing<br>Depth, in mm<br>Thickness, in mm<br>Face plate area, in cm <sup>2</sup>     | every frame<br>$d_f = 83D + 150$ or 1400 whichever is the lesser<br>$t = (5,5 + 0,23L_2)\sqrt{s_2/800}$<br>$A_f = 0,8S k_s B$                                                                                                                                         |
| Girders in tanks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Spacing, in metres<br>Depth, in mm<br>Scantlings                                       | $0,003s_f$<br>as for floors<br>as midship region, see Table 3.2.1                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Floors in dry spaces                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Spacing<br>Scantlings                                                                  | every frame<br>as midship region, see Table 3.2.1                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Girders in dry spaces                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Spacing, in mm<br>Scantlings                                                           | $0,003s_f$<br>as midship region, see Table 3.2.1                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| $L_2, S, s, k_s, \rho$ are as defined in 3.2.1<br>$L_R, B, D$ are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2<br>$l_e$ = effective length of stiffening member<br>$h_4$ = tank head, in metres, as defined in Table 3.3.5<br>$h_5$ = distance, in metres, from mid-point of span to the following positions:<br>(a) forward of $0,85L_R$ : 3 m above the deck height obtained from Pt 3, Ch 2,5.3<br>(b) at $0,8L_R$ : the upper deck at side<br>(c) between $0,85L_R$ and $0,8L_R$ , by interpolation between (a) and (b)<br>$s_F$ = transverse frame spacing, in mm<br>$s_2$ = spacing of stiffener, in mm, but to be taken not less than 800 mm |                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| NOTES<br>1. For ships having one or more longitudinal bulkheads the maximum spacing may be increased but is not to exceed that for the midship region.<br>2. Frame structure is to comply with the requirements of Table 3.3.5.<br>3. See also the requirements for bottom slamming and bow flare impact.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 3

**Table 3.3.13 Double bottom construction forward**

| Item and parameter                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Requirements                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Transverse framing                                                                                                                                                                  | Longitudinal framing                                                                                                            |
| (1) Centreline girder:<br>(a) Thickness forward of $0,075L_R$ from the F.P.                                                                                                                                                            | $t = (0,007d_{DB} + 2)\sqrt{k_s}$ mm (see Note 2)                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                 |
| (2) Plate floors:<br>(a) Maximum spacing forward of $0,8L_R$<br>(b) Maximum spacing aft of $0,8L_R$<br>(c) Scantlings                                                                                                                  | $0,002s_F$ m<br>As for midship region<br>As for midship region                                                                                                                      | 2,5 m<br>As for midship region, see Table 3.2.1<br>As for midship region, see Table 3.2.1                                       |
| (3) Watertight floors and bracket floors                                                                                                                                                                                               | As for midship region                                                                                                                                                               | As for midship region                                                                                                           |
| (4) Side girders (see Note 1):<br>(a) Maximum spacing forward of $0,8L_R$<br>(b) Maximum spacing aft of $0,8L_R$<br>(c) Scantlings                                                                                                     | $0,003s_F$ m<br>As for midship region<br>As for midship region                                                                                                                      | $0,004s_L$ or 3,7 m whichever is the lesser<br>As for midship region, see Table 3.2.1<br>As for midship region, see Table 3.2.1 |
| (5) Inner bottom plating (see Note 2):<br>(a) Thickness at or forward of $0,925L_R$<br><br>(b) In way of deep tanks or holds used for the carriage of water ballast or where the double bottom tank is common with a wing ballast tank | $t = (0,00115 (s + 660) \sqrt[4]{k_s^2 L_R T})$ mm or 5,5 mm, whichever is the greater, see Note 2<br><br>$t = 0,0057S \beta \sqrt{h_4 k_s}$ mm or 5,5 mm, whichever is the greater |                                                                                                                                 |
| (6) Inner bottom longitudinals                                                                                                                                                                                                         | As for midship region                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                 |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                 |
| $L_R, T$ are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2<br>$S, s, k_s$ are as defined in 3.2.1<br>$d_{DB}$ = minimum depth of centre girder as required by Table 3.2.1<br>$h_4$ = tank head, in metres, as defined in Table 3.3.6                    |                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                 |
| $s_F$ = transverse frame spacing, in mm<br>$s_L$ = spacing of bottom longitudinals, in mm<br>$\beta$ = aspect ratio correction factor, Ch 2,2.5.1.                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                 |
| NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                 |
| 1. The girders forward of $0,8L_R$ are to be suitably scarfed into the midship girder arrangement.<br>2. From $0,7L_R$ to $0,925L_R$ the taper thickness is to be used.                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                 |

**Table 3.3.14 Fore peak structure**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Parameter         | Requirement                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| (1) Perforated flats and wash bulkheads excluding lowest strake of plating (see Note)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Plating thickness | $t = (5,5 + 0,013L_R)\sqrt{s_1/800}$ mm |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Stiffener modulus | $Z = \frac{0,0052s k_s h_6 l_e^2}{f_s}$ |
| (2) Diaphragms in bulbous bows and the lowest strake of plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Plating thickness | $t = (5,5 + 0,023L_R)\sqrt{s_1/800}$ mm |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                   |                                         |
| $L_R$ is as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2<br>$s, k_s$ are as defined in 3.2.1<br>$f_s = 1,4$ for rolled or built sections<br>1,6 for flat bars                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                   |                                         |
| $h_6$ = vertical distance, in metres, from the mid depth of the tank to the top of the tank<br>$l_e$ = effective length of the stiffening member, see Ch 2,2.6<br>$s_1$ = spacing of stiffeners, in mm, but is to be taken not less than 800 mm                                                                                                                                                                    |                   |                                         |
| NOTE<br>For horizontal flats supporting vertical webs in the fore peak tank the thickness of the flat in the web is to comply with the requirements of<br>$t = a/(80 + 20a/b)\sqrt{k_s}$ for horizontal stiffening or $t = a/(73 + 27(a/b)^2)\sqrt{k_s}$ for vertical stiffening<br>where<br>a is the lesser dimension of the unstiffened plate panel<br>b is the greater dimension of the unstiffened plate panel |                   |                                         |

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Sections 3 &amp; 4

**Table 3.3.15 Magazine bulkhead and deck scantlings**

| Item and requirement                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Magazine bulkheads and decks                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                            |
| (1) Plating thickness for plane, symmetrically corrugated and double plate bulkheads                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | $t = 0,004s\beta \sqrt{h_5 k_s} \text{ mm}$                                |
| Secondary stiffening                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                            |
| (2) Modulus of rolled and built stiffeners                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $Z = \frac{s k_s h_5 l_e^2}{71f_s (\omega_1 + \omega_2 + 2)} \text{ cm}^3$ |
| Primary stiffening                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                            |
| (3) Modulus of stringers or webs supporting vertical or horizontal stiffening                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | $Z = 5,0k_s h_5 S l_e^2 \text{ cm}^3$                                      |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                            |
| <p><math>s, S</math>, and <math>k_s</math> are as defined in Table 3.2.1</p> <p><math>l_e</math> = effective length of stiffening member in metres and for bulkhead stiffeners, see Fig. 3.3.3</p> <p><math>f_s</math> = 1,4 for rolled or built sections and double plate bulkheads<br/>= 1,6 for flat bars<br/>= 1,0 for symmetrical corrugations of magazine bulkheads</p> <p><math>h_5</math> = 0,1<math>P_{mag}</math><br/><math>P_{mag}</math> is the quasi-static design pressure defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.11</p> <p><math>\omega_1</math> and <math>\omega_2</math> are bulkhead end constraint factors, see Fig. 3.3.3</p> <p><math>\beta</math> = aspect ratio correction factor, see Ch 2,2.5.1</p> |                                                                            |
| <p>NOTE</p> <p>Corrugated bulkheads are to comply with the requirements of Ch 2,2.3. Both the plate panels and section inertia and modulus requirements are to be assessed.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                            |

## Section 4

### NS2 and NS3 scantling determination

#### 4.1 General

4.1.1 The scantlings for NS2 and NS3 ships may be determined from the global and local requirements defined in this Section. In addition, the general requirements of Sections 5 to 15 are to be complied with.

4.1.2 This Section contains various Tables indicating the design pressures, beam models and stiffener type coefficients which may be used in conjunction with the appropriate scantling formulae indicated in Chapter 2 and the structural design factors in Chapter 5 to determine the required scantlings for both plating and stiffening members of NS2 and NS3 type ships.

4.1.3 In the determination of scantlings for stiffening members assumptions have been made about the degree of end fixity in way of their end connections. Where it can be demonstrated that the degree of end fixity is greater than that assumed then consideration will be given to lesser scantling requirements. In such cases the builders/designers are to submit sufficient information to enable an assessment of the degree of end fixity to be made and are to obtain acceptance of their proposals prior to submission of the scantling plans.

4.1.4 The geometric properties of stiffener sections are to be in accordance with Ch 2,2.9.

4.1.5 The scantlings in this Section are based on the assumption that there is negligible loss in strength from corrosion.

4.1.6 The corrosion margins specified in Ch 6,2.10 are to be applied to the derived scantlings as appropriate, see also Ch 1,2.2.1.

#### 4.2 Hull girder strength

4.2.1 For all ships, the hull girder strength requirements of Ch 4,2 are to be complied with.

4.2.2 As required by Ch 4,2, the hull girder bending and shear stresses for all longitudinally effective material is to be checked against the permissible stresses and the buckling requirements of Ch 2,3. The lateral and torsional stability of all effective longitudinals, together with the web and flange buckling criteria, is to be verified in accordance with Ch 2,3.

#### 4.3 Shell envelope plating

4.3.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to longitudinally and transversely framed shell envelope plating.

4.3.2 The thickness of the shell envelope plating is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirement given in Section 2.

4.3.3 Additional requirements for shell envelope plating are indicated in Section 5.

4.3.4 The thickness requirement for shell envelope plating may be determined from the general equations given in Ch 2,2.7, the pressures given in Table 3.4.1 and the structural design factors in Chapter 5.

4.3.5 For NS3 ships the minimum thickness requirement for bottom shell plating, see Fig. 3.4.1, as detailed in Section 2, is to extend to the chine line or 150 mm above the design waterline, whichever is the greater.

4.3.6 Where a chine or knuckle is fitted between the bottom shell and side shell plating, the chine plate thickness is to be equivalent to the bottom shell thickness required to satisfy the Rule pressure loading, increased by 20 per cent, or 6 mm, whichever is the greater.

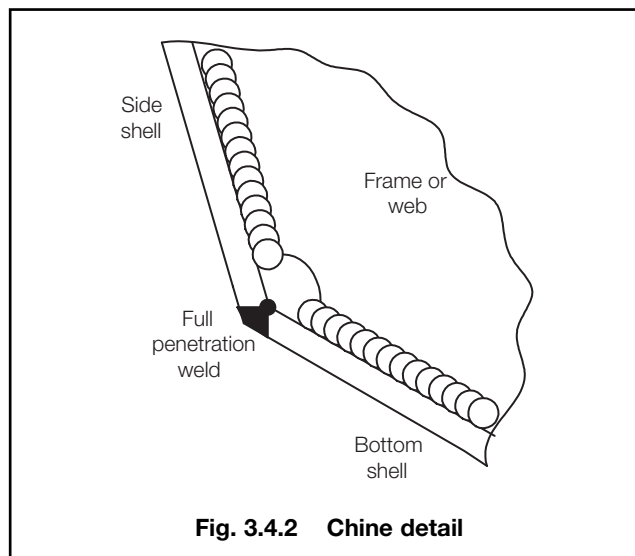
# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

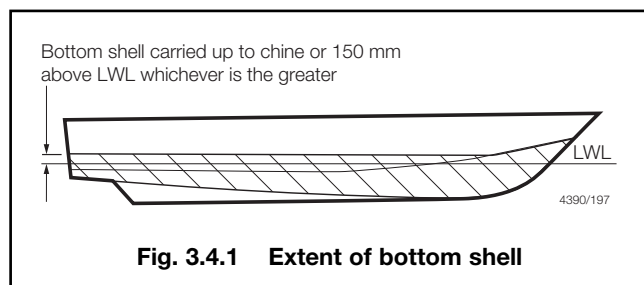
Section 4

**Table 3.4.1 Shell envelope plating**

| Structural element                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Design pressure                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Bottom plating<br>Bilge plating<br>Side shell plate<br>Sheerstrake                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Below waterline, the greater of<br>(a) $P_h + 1,26P_w$<br>(b) $1,26P_{dl}$<br><br>Above the waterline<br>$1,26P_s$ |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                    |
| $P_h$ = the hydrostatic pressure on the shell plating, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.3<br>$P_w$ = the hydrodynamic wave pressure on the shell plating, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.4<br>$P_s$ = the design pressure on the shell envelope, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.2<br>$P_{dl}$ = the bottom impact pressure for planing hull forms as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,4.5. This is not applicable for displacement hull forms. |                                                                                                                    |



**Fig. 3.4.2 Chine detail**



**Fig. 3.4.1 Extent of bottom shell**

4.3.7 Where tube is used in chine construction, the minimum wall thickness is to be not less than the thickness of the bottom shell plating increased by 20 per cent.

4.3.8 Full penetration welding of shell plating in way of chine is to be maintained.

4.3.9 Chine details are to be such that the continuity of structural strength across the panel is maintained. Details of chines are to be submitted for consideration, see Fig. 3.4.2.

## 4.4 Shell envelope framing

4.4.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to longitudinally and transversely framed shell envelopes.

4.4.2 Additional requirements for shell envelope framing are indicated in Section 6.

4.4.3 The section modulus, inertia and web area requirements for shell envelope stiffening may be determined from the general equations given in Ch 2,2.8, the pressures given in Table 3.4.2 and the structural design factors in Chapter 5.

## 4.5 Inner bottom structures

4.5.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to longitudinally and transversely framed inner bottom structure.

4.5.2 The thickness of the inner bottom plating is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirement given in Section 2.

4.5.3 Additional requirements for inner bottom structures are indicated in Section 8.

4.5.4 The thickness requirement for inner bottom plating may be determined from the general equations given in Ch 2,2.7, the pressures given in Table 3.4.3 and the structural design factors in Chapter 5.

4.5.5 The section modulus, inertia and web area requirements for inner bottom stiffening may be determined from the general equations given in Ch 2,2.8, the pressures given in Table 3.4.3 and the structural design factors in Chapter 5.

## 4.6 Watertight bulkheads and deep tanks

4.6.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to longitudinally and transversely framed watertight bulkhead and deep tank structure.

4.6.2 The thickness of the bulkhead plating is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirement given in Section 2.

4.6.3 Additional requirements for watertight bulkhead and deep tank structure are indicated in Section 9.

4.6.4 The thickness requirement for bulkhead plating may be determined from the general equations given in Ch 2,2.7, the pressures given in Table 3.4.4 and the structural design factors in Chapter 5.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 4

**Table 3.4.2 Shell envelope framing**

| Structural element                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Design pressure                                                                                                                 | Load model | Stiffening type factor, $\delta_f$ | Remarks    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|------------|
| Longitudinal framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                 |            |                                    |            |
| Bottom and bilge longitudinals<br>Side longitudinals                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Below waterline<br>(a) $\delta_f (P_h + 1,26P_w)$<br>(b) $\delta_f 1,26P_{dl}$<br>Above waterline<br>$\delta_f 1,26P_s$         | B          | 0,8                                | See Note 1 |
| Transverse framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                 |            |                                    |            |
| Bottom transverse frames<br>Side frames                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Below waterline<br>(a) $\delta_f (P_h + 1,26P_w)$<br>(b) $\delta_f (P_h + 1,26P_{dl})$<br>Above waterline<br>$\delta_f 1,26P_s$ | B          | 0,8                                | See Note 1 |
| Primary structure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                 |            |                                    |            |
| Bottom girders<br>Side stringer<br><br>Floors<br>Bottom transverse web frames<br>Side transverse web frames                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Below waterline<br>(a) $\delta_f (P_h + 1,26P_w)$<br>(b) $\delta_f 1,26P_{dl}$<br><br>Above waterline<br>$\delta_f 1,26P_s$     | A          | 0,5                                | See Note 2 |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                 |            |                                    |            |
| $P_h$ = the hydrostatic pressure on the shell envelope, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.3<br>$P_w$ = the hydrodynamic wave pressure on the shell envelope, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.4<br>$P_s$ = the design pressure on the shell envelope, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.2<br>$P_{dl}$ = the bottom impact pressure for planing hull forms, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,4.5. This is not applicable for displacement hull forms.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                 |            |                                    |            |
| NOTES<br>1. Longitudinal and transverse frame stiffeners are secondary stiffening members, see Pt 3, Ch 2,2.3.1. In general, secondary stiffening members are to be designed using load model 'B', see Table 2.2.1 in Chapter 2. Such members are in general to be continuous or made effectively continuous by means of suitable bracketing.<br>2. Guidelines for the design of primary stiffening members are given in Pt 3, Ch 2,3.2.1. In general, primary stiffening members are to be designed using load model 'A', see Table 2.2.1 in Chapter 2. Primary members are to be substantially bracketed at their end connections. |                                                                                                                                 |            |                                    |            |

4.6.5 The section modulus, inertia and web area requirements for bulkhead stiffening may be determined from the general equations given in Ch 2,2.8, the pressures given in Table 3.4.4 and the structural design factors in Chapter 5.

## 4.7 Deck structures

4.7.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to longitudinally and transversely framed deck structure.

4.7.2 The thickness of the deck plating is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirement given in Section 2.

4.7.3 Additional requirements for deck structures are indicated in Section 10.

4.7.4 The thickness requirement for deck plating may be determined from the general equations given in Ch 2,2.7, the pressures given in Table 3.4.5 and the structural design factors in Chapter 5.

4.7.5 The section modulus, inertia and web area requirements for deck stiffening may be determined from the general equations given in Ch 2,2.8, the pressures given in Table 3.4.5 and the structural design factors in Chapter 5.

## 4.8 Superstructures, deckhouses and bulwarks

4.8.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to longitudinally and transversely framed superstructure, deckhouse and bulwark structures.

4.8.2 The thickness of the superstructure and deckhouse plating is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirement given in Section 2.

4.8.3 Additional requirements for superstructure, deckhouse and bulwark structures are indicated in Section 11.

4.8.4 The thickness requirement for superstructure, deckhouse and bulwark may be determined from the general equations given in Ch 2,2.7, the pressures given in Table 3.4.6 and the structural design factors in Chapter 5.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 4

**Table 3.4.3 Inner bottom structures**

| Structural element                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Design pressure                    | Load model | Stiffening type factor, $\delta_f$ | Remarks    |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|------------|
| Inner bottom plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | $P_{hd} + P_{w,da}$                | —          | —                                  |            |
| Longitudinal framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                    |            |                                    |            |
| Inner bottom longitudinals                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | $\delta_f (P_{hd} + 1,26P_{w,da})$ | B          | 0,8                                | See Note 1 |
| Transverse framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                    |            |                                    |            |
| Inner bottom transverse frames                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | $\delta_f (P_{hd} + 1,26P_{w,da})$ | B          | 0,8                                | See Note 1 |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                    |            |                                    |            |
| $P_{hd}$ is the $P_h$ value for the local damaged draft, where $P_h$ is the hydrostatic pressure on the shell envelope, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.3<br>$P_{w,da}$ = the hydrodynamic wave pressure on the shell envelope, $P_w$ , as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.4, but based on a reduction in the local wave height for the damaged situation. The local wave height factor, $f_{HS}$ , used to derive $P_w$ may be taken as specified in Pt 5, Ch 3,1.2.2 but may be reduced by a factor of 1,85. Hence $P_{w,da} = P_w/1,85$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                    |            |                                    |            |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. Longitudinal and transverse frame stiffeners are secondary stiffening members, see Pt 3, Ch 2,2.3.1. In general, secondary stiffening members are to be designed using load model 'B', see Table 2.2.1 in Chapter 2. Such members are in general to be continuous or made effectively continuous by means of suitable bracketing.<br>2. Where the inner bottom forms the boundary of a deep tank, the deck is to be examined for compliance with the requirements for deep tanks, see Table 3.4.4.<br>3. Where the inner bottom forms the boundary of a watertight subdivision, the inner bottom is to be examined for compliance with the requirements for watertight bulkheads, see Table 3.4.4.<br>4. Where the inner bottom is subject to cargo deck or internal deck loadings, the inner bottom is to be examined for compliance with the requirements for lower decks and internal decks, see Table 3.4.5.<br>5. Where the inner bottom is subject to wheel loadings arising from vehicles or helicopters/aircraft, the inner bottom is to be examined for compliance with the requirements for vehicle decks, see Pt 4, Ch 3,2, or aircraft operation, see Pt 4, Ch 2,10, as appropriate. |                                    |            |                                    |            |

**Table 3.4.4 Watertight and deep tank bulkhead scantlings**

| Structural element                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Design pressure                     | Load model  | Stiffening type factor, $\delta_f$ | Remarks                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) Watertight bulkheads and decks<br>Plating<br>Secondary stiffeners<br>Primary stiffeners                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | $P_{bhp}$<br>$P_{bhs}$<br>$P_{bhs}$ | —<br>B<br>A | —<br>—<br>—                        | See Note 1<br>See Note 2 |
| (2) Deep tank bulkheads and decks<br>Plating<br>Secondary stiffeners<br>Primary stiffeners                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | $P_{bhp}$<br>$P_{bhs}$<br>$P_{bhs}$ | —<br>B<br>A | —<br>—<br>—                        | See Note 1<br>See Note 2 |
| (3) Collision bulkhead<br>Plating<br>Secondary stiffeners<br>Primary stiffeners                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | $P_{bhp}$<br>$P_{bhs}$<br>$P_{bhs}$ | —<br>B<br>A | —<br>—<br>—                        | See Note 1<br>See Note 2 |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                     |             |                                    |                          |
| $P_{bhp}$ and $P_{bhs}$ are the watertight bulkhead and deep tank pressure values for the plate panel and stiffener respectively, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.5.<br>$P_{bhp}$ and $P_{bhs}$ are the pressure values for the plate panel and stiffeners of the collision bulkhead as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.9                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                     |             |                                    |                          |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. Secondary stiffening members are, in general, defined in Pt 3, Ch 2,2.3.1. In general, secondary stiffening members are to be designed using load model 'B', see Table 2.2.1 in Chapter 2. Such members are in general to be continuous or made effectively continuous by means of suitable bracketing.<br>2. Guidelines for the design of primary stiffening members are given in Pt 3, Ch 2,2.3.1. In general, primary stiffening members are to be designed using load model 'A', see Table 2.2.1 in Chapter 2. Primary members are to be substantially bracketed at their end connections. |                                     |             |                                    |                          |



**Scantling Determination****Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3**

Section 4

**Table 3.4.5 Deck structures**

| Structural element                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Design pressure                                             | Load model | Stiffening type factor, $\delta_f$ | Remarks    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|------------|
| (1) Weather decks and exposed decks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                             |            |                                    |            |
| Plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | The greater of<br>(a) $1,26P_{wd}$<br>(b) $P_{cd}$          | —          | —                                  | —          |
| Secondary stiffening<br>Deck longitudinals or deck beams                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | The greater of<br>(a) $\delta_f 1,26P_{wd}$<br>(b) $P_{cd}$ | B          | 0,8                                | See Note 1 |
| Primary stiffening<br>Deck girders or deck transverses<br>or deep beams                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | The greater of<br>(a) $\delta_f 1,26P_{wd}$<br>(b) $P_{cd}$ | A          | 0,5                                | See Note 2 |
| (2) Lower decks and internal decks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                             |            |                                    |            |
| Plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | The greater of<br>(a) $P_{in}$<br>(b) $P_{cd}$              | —          | —                                  | —          |
| Secondary stiffening<br>Deck longitudinals or deck beams                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | The greater of<br>(a) $P_{in}$<br>(b) $P_{cd}$              | B          | —                                  | See Note 1 |
| Primary stiffening<br>Deck girders or deck transverses<br>or deep beams                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | The greater of<br>(a) $P_{in}$<br>(b) $P_{cd}$              | A          | —                                  | See Note 2 |
| (3) Ramps and lifts                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                             |            |                                    |            |
| Plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | $P_{ra}$                                                    | —          | —                                  | —          |
| Secondary stiffening<br>Deck longitudinals or deck beams                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | $P_{ra}$                                                    | B          | —                                  | See Note 1 |
| Primary stiffening<br>Deck girders or deck transverses<br>or deep beams                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | $P_{ra}$                                                    | E          | —                                  | See Note 3 |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                             |            |                                    |            |
| $P_{wd}$ = the pressure acting on exposed and weather decks, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.5, see also Pt 5, Ch 3,5.2<br>$P_{in}$ = the pressure acting on internal decks, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.3<br>$P_{cd}$ = the pressure acting on decks designed to carry cargo or heavy equipment loads, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.4, where appropriate<br>$P_{ra}$ = the pressure on ramps and lifts, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,6.2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                             |            |                                    |            |
| NOTES<br>1. In general, secondary stiffening members are to be designed using load model 'B', see Table 2.2.1 in Chapter 2. Such members are in general to be continuous or made effectively continuous by means of suitable bracketing.<br>2. Guidelines for the design of primary stiffening members are given in Pt 3, Ch 2,3.2.1. In general, primary stiffening members are to be designed using load model 'A', see Table 2.2.1 in Chapter 2. Primary members are to be substantially bracketed at their end connections.<br>3. In general, primary lift and ram stiffening members are to be designed using load model 'E', see Table 2.2.1 in Chapter 2.<br>4. Where a deck forms the boundary of a deep tank, the deck is to be examined for compliance with the requirements for deep tanks, see Table 3.4.4.<br>5. Where a deck forms the boundary of a watertight subdivision or part of the shell envelope, the deck is to be examined for compliance with the requirements for watertight bulkheads, see Table 3.4.4, or the shell envelope respectively, see Table 3.4.2.<br>6. Where a deck is subject to wheel loadings arising from vehicles or helicopters/aircraft, such decks are to be examined for compliance with the requirements for vehicle decks, see Pt 4, Ch 3,2, or aircraft operation, see Pt 4, Ch 2,10, as appropriate. |                                                             |            |                                    |            |

4.8.5 The section modulus, inertia and web area requirements for superstructure, deckhouse and bulwark stiffening may be determined from the general equations given in Ch 2,2.8, the pressures given in Table 3.4.6 and the structural design factors in Chapter 5.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 4

**Table 3.4.6 Superstructure, deckhouse and bulwark structures**

| Structural element                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Design pressure        | Load model | Stiffening type factor, $\delta_f$ | Remarks                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| (1) Superstructure sides, fronts and backs<br>Deckhouse sides, fronts and backs                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                        |            |                                    |                          |
| Plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $1,26P_{dh}$           | —          | —                                  |                          |
| Secondary stiffening<br>Side longitudinals<br>Side frames                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | $\delta_f 1,26P_{dh}$  | B          | 0,8                                | See Note 1               |
| Primary stiffening<br>Side stringers<br>Side web frames                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $\delta_f 1,26P_{dh}$  | A          | 0,5                                | See Note 2               |
| (2) Superstructure exposed decks<br>Deckhouse exposed decks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                        |            |                                    |                          |
| Plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $1,26P_{wd}$           | —          | —                                  |                          |
| Secondary stiffening<br>Deck longitudinals<br>Deck beams                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | $\delta_f 1,26P_{wd}$  | B          | 0,8                                | See Note 1               |
| Primary stiffening<br>Deck girders<br>Deck transverses or deep beams                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | $\delta_f 1,26P_{wd}$  | A          | 0,5                                | See Note 2               |
| (3) Superstructure internal decks<br>Deckhouse internal decks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                        |            |                                    |                          |
| Plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $P_{in}$               | —          | —                                  |                          |
| Secondary stiffening<br>Deck longitudinals<br>Deck beams                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | $P_{in}$               | B          | —                                  | See Note 1               |
| Primary stiffening<br>Deck girders<br>Deck transverses or deep beams                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | $P_{in}$               | A          | —                                  | See Note 2               |
| (4) Bulwarks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                        |            |                                    |                          |
| Plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $1,26P_{dh}$           | —          | —                                  |                          |
| Secondary stiffening<br>Bulwark stays                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | $\delta_f 1,26 P_{dh}$ | B<br>D     | 0,8<br>1,0                         | See Note 1<br>See Note 3 |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                        |            |                                    |                          |
| $P_{wd}$ = the pressure acting on exposed and weather decks, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.5, see also Pt 5, Ch 3,5.2<br>$P_{in}$ = the pressure acting on internal decks, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.3<br>$P_{dh}$ = the pressure acting on deckhouses, bulwarks and superstructures, as defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                        |            |                                    |                          |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. In general, secondary stiffening members are to be designed using load model 'B', see Table 2.2.1 in Chapter 2. Such members are in general to be continuous or made effectively continuous by means of suitable bracketing.<br>2. Guidelines for the design of primary stiffening members are given in Pt 3, Ch 2,3.2.1. In general, primary stiffening members are to be designed using load model 'A', see Table 2.2.1 in Chapter 2. Primary members are to be substantially bracketed at their end connections.<br>3. Bulwark stays are to be designed using load model 'D', see Table 2.2.1 in Chapter 2. The webs of the stays are to be carefully aligned with underdeck stiffeners and hard spots are to be avoided in way of end connections.<br>4. Where a deck is subject to wheel loadings arising from vehicles or helicopters/aircraft, such decks are to be examined for compliance with the requirements for vehicle decks, see Pt 4, Ch 3,2, or aircraft operation, see Pt 4, Ch 2,10, as appropriate. |                        |            |                                    |                          |

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 5

## Section 5 Shell envelope plating

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 The requirements of this Section, unless specified otherwise, are applicable to all ship types, NS1, NS2 and NS3.

5.1.2 The requirements of this Section are applicable to longitudinally and transversely framed shell envelope plating. The basic structural scantlings of NS1 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 3. The basic structural scantlings of NS2 and NS3 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 4. The arrangement of shell plating is to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2,3.3.

5.1.3 The thickness of the shell envelope plating is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirements given in Section 2.

5.1.4 Ships which operate aground are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 3.

5.1.5 For ships with external blast notation the side shell above the waterline is to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 2.

5.1.6 Where appropriate all ship types are to comply with the requirements of Section 14 for bottom slamming and Section 15 for bow flare impact or wave impact above the waterline.

### 5.2 Plate keel

5.2.1 The width and thickness of the plate keel are to be maintained throughout the ship from the transom to a point not less than 25 per cent of the freeboard (measured at the forward perpendicular) above the deepest load waterline on the stem. Thereafter the keel thickness may be reduced to that required by Table 3.2.1 for the stem. For ships with an after cut up, the keel thickness aft of the cut up can be reduced to that of the shell plating.

5.2.2 Cast or forged stems are to comply with the requirements of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials*, Chapter 3 for rolled steel flat bars, or Chapter 5 for solid round bars. Cast or forged pieces or inserts are to comply with Chapter 4 or Chapter 5 as appropriate.

### 5.3 Sheerstrake

5.3.1 The sheerstrake thickness is to be increased by 20 per cent at the ends of a superstructure extending out to the ship's side. In the case of a superstructure longer than  $0,15L_R$ , the side plating at the ends of the superstructure is also to be increased by 25 per cent and tapered gradually into the sheerstrake.

5.3.2 Where an angled gunwale is fitted, the top edge of the sheerstrake is to be kept free of all notches and isolated welded fittings, such as spurnwaters, fairlead stools, stancheons. Bulwarks are not to be welded to the top of the sheerstrake within  $0,3$  to  $0,7L_R$ .

5.3.3 Where a rounded gunwale is adopted, the welding of fairlead stools, spurnwaters, stancheons and other fittings to this plate is to be kept to the minimum, and the design of the fittings is to be such as to minimise stress concentration. The radius in general is not to be less than  $15t_p$ .

5.3.4 For ships with a shock enhanced notation, see Pt 4, Ch 2,5.

### 5.4 Skegs

5.4.1 The thickness of the skeg plating is to be not less than the thickness of the adjacent bottom shell.

### 5.5 Transom

5.5.1 The thickness of the stern or transom is to be not less than that required for the side or bottom shell as appropriate. Where water jet or sterndrive units are fitted, the scantlings of the plating in way of the nozzles and connections will be specially considered.

### 5.6 Shell openings

5.6.1 The thickness of the shell envelope plating around sea inlet or other opening is to be 2 mm thicker than the adjacent shell plating, or 6 mm, whichever is the greater. Arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2,3.3.

5.6.2 The detail and steel grade corners of large openings in the side shell will be specially considered. Generally they are to be in accordance with the requirements for large deck openings, see 10.4.1.

### 5.7 Sea inlet boxes

5.7.1 The thickness of the sea inlet box plating is to be 2 mm thicker than the adjacent shell plating, or 6 mm, whichever is the greater. If the thickness of the adjacent shell plating is greater than 12,5 mm, the sea inlet box may be the same thickness as the shell and it need not exceed 25 mm.

5.7.2 Arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2,3.3. Stiffeners are to be suitably supported by brackets or equivalent.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Sections 5, 6 & 7

## 5.8 Local reinforcement/Insert plates

5.8.1 The thickness of the shell envelope plating is to be increased locally in way of sternframe, propeller brackets, rudder horn, stabilisers, hawse pipes, anchor recess, sea inlets, sonar openings, etc., by generally not less than 50 per cent. Details of such reinforcement are to be submitted for approval.

5.8.2 Insert plates are to extend outside the line of adjacent supporting structure and then be tapered over a distance of not less than three times the difference in thickness, see also Ch 6,5.8.

## 5.9 Novel features

5.9.1 Where the Rules do not specifically define the requirements for novel features then the scantlings and arrangements are to be determined by direct calculation. Such calculations are to be carried out on the basis of the Rules or recognised standards. Details are to be submitted for consideration.

## Section 6 Shell envelope framing

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 The requirements of this Section, unless specified otherwise, are applicable to all ship types, NS1, NS2 and NS3.

6.1.2 The requirements in this Section apply to longitudinally and transversely framed shell envelopes. The basic structural scantlings of NS1 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 3. The basic structural scantlings of NS2 and NS3 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 4. The arrangement of framing is to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2,3.4.

6.1.3 The geometric properties of stiffener sections are to be in accordance with Ch 2,2.9.

6.1.4 Higher tensile steel longitudinals within 10 per cent of the ship's depth at the bottom and deck are to be continuous irrespective of the ship length, see also Ch 6,5.5.

6.1.5 Stiffeners and brackets on side transverses which are connected to higher tensile steel longitudinals are to have their heels well radiused to reduce stress concentrations. Alternative arrangements will be considered if supported by appropriate direct calculations, see also Ch 6,5.5.

6.1.6 Where higher tensile steel side longitudinals pass through transverse bulkheads in the  $0,4L_R$  amidships, well radiused brackets of the same material are to be fitted on both the fore and aft side of the connection. Particular attention should be given to ensuring the alignment of these brackets. Alternative arrangements will be considered if supported by appropriate direct calculations.

6.1.7 Where higher tensile steel asymmetrical sections are adopted in double bottom tanks which are interconnected with double skin side tanks, the requirements of 6.1.5 and 6.1.6 are to be complied with regarding arrangements to reduce stress concentrations. Alternatively, it is recommended that bulb plate or symmetrical sections are adopted.

6.1.8 Where appropriate all ship types are to comply with the requirements of Section 14 for bottom slamming and Section 15 for wave impact above the waterline.

## 6.2 Frame struts or cross ties

6.2.1 Where struts are fitted to side shell transverse web frames or longitudinal stringers to carry axial loads, the strut cross-sectional area is to be derived as for pillars in Section 12. If the strut is fitted at the primary member half span point, the primary member section modulus may be taken as half the modulus derived above.

6.2.2 Design of end connections is to be such that the area of the welding is to be not less than the minimum required cross-sectional area of the strut. To achieve this, full penetration welding may be required. The weld connections between the face flats and webs of the supporting structure are to be welded using double continuous welding of an equivalent area.

## Section 7 Single bottom structures

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 The requirements of this Section, unless specified otherwise, are applicable to all ship types, NS1, NS2 and NS3.

7.1.2 The basic structural scantlings of NS1 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 3. The basic structural scantlings of NS2 and NS3 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 4. The arrangement of single bottoms are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2,3.5.

7.1.3 The scantlings of the single bottom are to comply with the minimum requirements given in Section 2.

7.1.4 Where appropriate all ships are to comply with the requirements of Section 14 for bottom slamming.

7.1.5 Watertight girders and floors or girders and floors forming the boundaries of tank spaces are to comply with the requirements for watertight bulkheads and deep tanks as detailed in Section 9. Consideration should be given to the addition of a corrosion margin in excess of that specified in Ch 6,2.10.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Sections 7 & 8

## 7.2 Centreline girder

7.2.1 The web depth of the centreline girder is, in general, to be equal to the depth of the floors at the centreline. The minimum requirements for web depth and thickness are specified in Section 2.

7.2.2 The geometric properties of the centre girder are to be in accordance with Ch 2,2.9. The buckling requirements of Ch 2,3 are to be satisfied.

7.2.3 The face flat area of the centreline girder outside 0,3 to 0,7 $L_R$  may be 80 per cent of the value given in Section 2.

7.2.4 The face flat thickness is to be not less than the thickness of the web.

7.2.5 The ratio of the width to thickness of the face flat is to be not less than 8 but is not to exceed 16.

## 7.3 Side girders

7.3.1 The face flat area and thickness of side girders are to comply with the requirements for plate floors as defined in Section 2 and 7.4. The buckling requirements of Ch 2,3 are to be satisfied.

## 7.4 Floors – General

7.4.1 The web thickness,  $t_w$ , of plate floors, is to be in accordance with Ch 2,2.9 and is to be taken as not less than: for NS1 ships

$$t_w = 0,9 \sqrt{k_s} \left( \frac{d_f}{100} + 3 \right) \text{ mm}$$

for NS2 and NS3 ships

$$t_w = \sqrt{k_s} \left( \frac{3,4d_f}{1000} + 2,25 \right) \left( \frac{s}{1000} + 0,5 \right) \text{ mm}$$

where

$d_f$  is to be determined from Table 3.2.1

$k_s$  and  $s$  are as defined in 3.2.1.

7.4.2 In addition the area of face plate for NS1 ships is not to be less than

$$A_f = 4,5T k_s \text{ cm}^2$$

$k_s$  is as defined in 3.2.1

$T, B$  are as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2.

7.4.3 If the side frames of the ship are attached to the floors by brackets, the depth of floor may be reduced by 15 per cent and the floor thickness determined using the reduced depth. The brackets are to be flanged and have the same thickness as the floors, and their arm lengths clear of the frame are to be the same as the reduced floor depth given above.

7.4.4 The face flat thickness is to be not less than the thickness of the web. The ratio of the web breadth to the thickness of the face flat is to be not less than 8 but is not to exceed 16.

7.4.5 Additionally floors are to comply with the requirements for bottom transverse web frames.

## 7.5 Single bottom structure in machinery spaces

7.5.1 The arrangement of structure in machinery spaces is to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2,6.

7.5.2 The thickness,  $t_w$ , of the floors in machinery spaces is to be 1 mm greater than that required by 7.4.

7.5.3 The depth and section modulus of floors anywhere between engine or gearbox girders is to be not less than that required to maintain continuity of structural integrity or 50 per cent of the depth given in 7.4. The face flat area and web thickness for such reduced floor heights are to be increased appropriately in order to maintain continuity of structural strength.

7.5.4 In way of machinery spaces situated amidships the minimum depth of floors is to be at least 10 per cent greater than that required in 7.4. If the top of the floors is recessed in way of the engines, the depth of the floors in way of the recess should generally be not less than that required by 7.4, but this will be specially considered in each case in relation to the arrangements proposed.

7.5.5 The general requirements for machinery or raft seatings are given in Section 13.

## 7.6 Rudder horns

7.6.1 The shell plating thickness in way of the rudder horn is to be increased locally, by generally not less than 50 per cent but need not to be taken as greater than the keel thickness required by Section 2. The scantlings of rudder horns will be specially considered.

## 7.7 Forefoot and stem

7.7.1 The thickness of plate stems at the waterline is to comply with the minimum requirements for plate keels given in Section 2, see also 5.2.

7.7.2 The forefoot and stem is to be additionally reinforced with floors.

## Section 8 Double bottom structures

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 The requirements of this Section, unless specified otherwise, are applicable to all ship types, NS1, NS2 and NS3.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 8

8.1.2 The basic structural scantlings of NS1 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 3. The basic structural scantlings of NS2 and NS3 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 4. The scantlings of the double bottom structure are also to comply with the appropriate minimum requirements given in Section 2. The arrangements of double bottoms are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 3,2.6.

8.1.3 Where a double bottom is required to be fitted, its depth at the centreline,  $d_{DB}$ , is to be in accordance with Section 2.

8.1.4 This Section provides for longitudinal or transverse framing in the double bottom, but for NS1 and NS2 ships longitudinal framing is in general to be adopted. See Pt 3, Ch 2,3.1.

8.1.5 Where appropriate all ship types are to comply with the requirements of Section 14 for bottom slamming.

8.1.6 Where a floor, girder or inner bottom plating forms the boundary of a tank or part of the watertight subdivision, the requirements of Section 9 for deep tanks and watertight bulkheads are to be complied with. Consideration should be given to the addition of a corrosion margin in excess of that specified in Ch 6,2.10.

## 8.2 Centreline girder

8.2.1 A centreline girder is to be fitted throughout the length of the ship. The web thickness,  $t_w$ , is not to be less than that required by Section 2.

8.2.2 The geometric properties of the girder section are to be in accordance with Ch 2,2.9. The buckling requirements of Ch 2,3 are to be satisfied.

8.2.3 The depth of the double bottom and centreline girder is to be not less than 630 mm and it is to be sufficient to give access to all of the double bottom.

8.2.4 Where appropriate, vertical stiffeners are to be fitted at every bracket floor. They are to have a depth not less than the depth of the tank top frame or 150 mm, whichever is the greater. For NS2 and NS3 ships stiffeners are to have a depth of not less than  $1,65L_R$  mm with a minimum of 50 mm. The thickness is to be as required for the girder.

## 8.3 Side girders

8.3.1 The thickness of the side girders is not to be less than that of the plate floors. The buckling requirements of Ch 2,3 are to be satisfied.

8.3.2 Vertical stiffeners are to be fitted at every bracket floors fitted and if midway between floors in accordance with 8.2.4.

## 8.4 Plate floors

8.4.1 The thickness need not be greater than 15 mm but without suitable stiffening the ratio of depth of floor at the centre to thickness must be less than 130.

8.4.2 Vertical stiffeners are to be fitted to all plate floors at each longitudinal. Each stiffener is to have a depth of not less than  $10t_w$  or 50 mm and a thickness of not less than  $t_w$ , where  $t_w$  is the thickness of the plate floor as calculated in Section 2. For NS1 ships, the depth of stiffeners is not to be less than 150 mm.

## 8.5 Bracket floors

8.5.1 Between plate floors, the shell and inner bottom plating centreline girders and side girders may be supported by bracket floors. The brackets are to have the same thickness as plate floors and are to be stiffened on the unsupported edge.

8.5.2 Where struts are fitted to reduce the unsupported span of the frames, reverse frames and longitudinals, they are to have a cross-sectional area of not less than:

$$(a) \quad A_s = 0,32 Z_{BF} \text{ cm}^2 \text{ for } Z_{BF} \leq 83,5 \text{ or}$$

$$(b) \quad A_s = 23,2 + \frac{Z_{BF}}{25} \text{ cm}^2 \text{ for } Z_{BF} > 83,5$$

where  $Z_{BF}$  is the modulus, in  $\text{cm}^3$ , of the frame or longitudinal based on the effective length between floors as defined in Ch 2,2.6.

## 8.6 Additional requirements for watertight floors

8.6.1 The scantlings of watertight floors are to comply with the requirements for plate floors as given in 8.5.

## 8.7 Inner bottom plating

8.7.1 Where the inner bottom also acts as the plating of a vehicle deck, stores deck or similar, the requirements of Section 10 are to be complied with.

## 8.8 Inner bottom longitudinals

8.8.1 Where the double bottom tanks are interconnected with side tanks or cofferdams, the scantlings are to be not less than those required for deep tanks, see Section 9.

8.8.2 Higher tensile steel inner bottom longitudinals are to be continuous as far as practicable throughout the length of the ship.

## 8.9 Double bottom tanks

8.9.1 The scantlings of double bottom tanks are to comply with the requirements for deep tanks given in Section 9.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Sections 8 & 9

## 8.10 Margin plates

8.10.1 A margin plate, if fitted, is to have a thickness as required for inner bottom plating.

## 8.11 Double bottom structure in machinery rooms

8.11.1 The arrangements of the structure in machinery spaces are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2,6.

8.11.2 The scantlings of floors clear of the main engine seatings are generally to be as required in 8.4. In way of engine seatings, the floors are to be increased in thickness, see 7.5 and Section 13.

8.11.3 Where the double bottom is longitudinally framed and transverse floors are fitted in way of the engine seatings as required by Pt 3, Ch 3,6.6, no additional longitudinal stiffening is required in way of the engines other than the main engine girders, provided that the spacing of girders does not exceed 1,5 times the normal spacing of longitudinals. Where this spacing of girders is exceeded, shell longitudinals are to be fitted. These are to scarf into the longitudinal framing clear of the machinery spaces. The scantlings of the longitudinals are to be determined in accordance with the appropriate requirements for bottom shell longitudinals using a minimum span of 1,3 m.

## Section 9 Bulkheads and deep tanks

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 The requirements of this Section, unless specified otherwise, are applicable to all ship types, NS1, NS2 and NS3.

9.1.2 The requirements of this Section apply to a vertical system of stiffening on bulkheads. They may also be applied to a horizontal system of stiffening provided that equivalent end support and alignment are provided.

9.1.3 The basic structural scantlings of NS1 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 3. The basic structural scantlings of NS2 and NS3 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 4. The minimum requirements in Section 2 are also to be complied with. Arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2,3 and Ch 2,3.

9.1.4 The buckling requirements of Ch 2,3 are also to be satisfied.

9.1.5 The scantlings of bulkheads are to be suitably increased where bulkhead stiffeners support deck girders, transverses or pillars over, see Section 12.

9.1.6 For bulkheads in way of partially filled holds or tanks, sloshing forces may be required to be taken into account. Where such forces are likely to be significant, the scantlings will be required to be verified by additional calculations.

9.1.7 For ships with an internal blast notation certain bulkheads will require to be strengthened in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 2.

### 9.2 Deep tank stiffening

9.2.1 Deep tank bulkhead stiffeners are to be bracketed at both ends. The thickness of the brackets is to be not less than the web thickness of the stiffener, see Ch 6,5.

### 9.3 Gastight bulkheads

9.3.1 Where gastight bulkheads are fitted, in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2,4 the general scantling equations for bulkheads, see 3.11 for NS1 ships and 4.6 for NS2 and NS3 ships, are to be complied with using a design pressure of 2 times the test pressure.

9.3.2 In addition the requirements for pillar bulkheads and minimum thickness requirements of Section 2 are to be complied with where appropriate.

### 9.4 Non-watertight or partial bulkheads

9.4.1 Where a bulkhead is structural but non-watertight, the scantlings are in general to be as for watertight bulkheads or equivalent in strength to web frames/primary stiffeners in the same position.

9.4.2 Partial bulkheads which are neither watertight nor structural are to have scantlings and arrangements which are suitable for the intended purpose, such bulkheads are outwith the scope of classification.

### 9.5 Corrugated bulkheads

9.5.1 The plating thickness and section modulus for symmetrical corrugated bulkheads are to be in accordance with watertight bulkheads or deep tank bulkheads as appropriate. The spacing,  $s$ , is to be taken as  $b$ , as defined in Fig. 2.2.2 in Chapter 2.

9.5.2 In addition, the section geometric properties of Ch 2,2.9 are to be complied with.

9.5.3 The actual section modulus may be derived in accordance with Ch 2,2.3.1.

### 9.6 Wash plates

9.6.1 Stiffeners are to be fitted at every frame and efficiently bracketed at top and bottom.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Sections 9 & 10

9.6.2 The plate thickness is to be not less than the structural element from which the wash bulkhead is formed.

9.6.3 The general stiffener requirements are to be in accordance with 3.11 for NS1 ships and 4.6 for NS2 and NS3 ships. However, the section modulus may be 50 per cent of that required if the end connections are bracketed.

9.6.4 The area of perforation is to be not less than 5 per cent and not more than 10 per cent of the total area of the bulkhead.

## 9.7 Cofferdams

9.7.1 The scantlings of cofferdams are to comply with the requirements of deep tank bulkheads or non-watertight bulkheads as appropriate.

## 9.8 Testing

9.8.1 The pressure to which the tanks will be subjected to in service is to be indicated on the plans submitted. The testing of tanks is to be in accordance with the naval ship survey procedures manual.

## Section 10 Deck structures

### 10.1 General

10.1.1 The requirements of this Section, unless specified otherwise, are applicable to all ship types, NS1, NS2 and NS3.

10.1.2 The basic structural scantlings of NS1 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 3. The basic structural scantlings of NS2 and NS3 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 4. The thickness of the deck plating is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirement given in Section 2. Arrangements of structures are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2,3.7.

10.1.3 The geometric properties of stiffener sections are to be in accordance with Ch 2,2.9. Web depth of secondary longitudinals is in general not to be less than 60 mm.

10.1.4 Primary and secondary stiffener end connection arrangements are, in general, to be in accordance with Ch 6,5.

10.1.5 For vehicle decks and areas for aircraft operations, the deck scantlings are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 3,2 and Pt 4, Ch 2,10 respectively. Areas of deck subject to blast loads are to comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 2,9.

10.1.6 Decks forming the boundary of a tank are to comply with the requirements for the appropriate deck and are to be additionally examined for compliance with the requirements for deep tank plating.

10.1.7 Decks forming subdivision or watertight internal boundaries are to comply with the requirements for the appropriate deck and are to be additionally examined for compliance with the requirements for watertight plating and stiffening.

### 10.2 Deck plating

10.2.1 The thickness of the strength deck stringer plate is to be increased by 20 per cent at the ends of superstructures extending out to the ship side, deckhouses, poop and forecastle. The thickness of the strength deck is to be increased by 20 per cent in way of the corners of effective superstructures that are not full width.

### 10.3 Deck stiffening

10.3.1 Higher tensile steel deck longitudinals where used are to be continuous irrespective of the ship length.

10.3.2 The geometric properties of stiffener sections are to be in accordance with Ch 2,2.9.

10.3.3 The stiffening arrangements and end connection of primary supporting members are to be in accordance with Ch 6,5.

10.3.4 Where the depth of web of a longitudinal girder at the strength deck within  $0,3L_R$  to  $0,7L_R$  exceeds:

- (a)  $55t_w$  for mild steel members
- (b)  $55t_w \sqrt{k_L}$  for higher tensile steel members

$k_L$  is defined in Ch 5,3.

Additional longitudinal web stiffeners are to be fitted at a spacing not exceeding the value in (a) or (b) as appropriate, with a maximum of  $65t_w \sqrt{k_L}$  for higher tensile steel members. In cases where this spacing is exceeded, the web thickness is, in general, to be suitably increased. Alternative proposals will be considered.

10.3.5 Web stiffeners may be flat bars of thickness  $t_w$  and depth  $0,1d_w$ , or 50 mm, whichever is greater. Alternative sections of equivalent inertia may be adopted.

### 10.4 Deck openings

10.4.1 The steel grade for the corner plating or inserts in way of large openings as required by Pt 3, Ch 2,3.7 for both NS1 and NS2 ships is to be in accordance with Table 6.2.1 in Chapter 6. The required thickness of the insert plate is to be not less than 25 per cent greater than the adjacent deck thickness outside the line of openings with a minimum increase of 4 mm. The increase need not exceed 7 mm.

10.4.2 The steel grade for corner inserts in way of openings for lifts, or cut outs in the deck plating for side doors, etc., is to be Grade E or EH.



# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Sections 10 &amp; 11

10.4.3 Welded attachments close to or on the free edge of the large opening corner plating are to be avoided. The butt welds of corner insert plates to the adjacent deck plating are to be located well clear of butts in the opening coaming or bulkheads.

10.4.4 Where minor deck openings, within  $0,3L_R$  to  $0,7L_R$ , have a total breadth or shadow area breadth in one transverse section that exceeds the limitation given in Ch 4, 1.4.11 and 1.4.12, compensation will be required to restore the excess. This is generally to be arranged by increasing the deck plate thickness, but other proposals will be considered.

10.4.5 Plate panels in which openings are cut are to be adequately stiffened, where necessary, against compression and shear buckling. The corners of all openings are to be well rounded and the edges smooth.

10.4.6 Minor openings in the strength deck outside the line of major deck openings having a stress concentration factor in excess of 2,4 will require edge reinforcement in the form of a spigot of adequate dimensions, but alternative arrangements will be considered. The area of any edge reinforcement which may be required is not to be taken into account in determining the required sectional area of compensation for the opening. For example, elliptical openings having their major axis fore and aft and a ratio of length to breadth not less than 2 to 1 will not normally require edge reinforcement.

10.4.7 Where long, wide openings are arranged on lower decks, it may be necessary to increase the deck plating thickness to ensure effective support for side framing.

10.4.8 Lower deck openings should be kept clear of the corners of major openings and other areas of high stress, so far as possible. Compensation will not, in general, be required unless the total width of openings in any frame space, or between any two transverses, exceeds  $15k_s$  per cent of the original effective plating width. The requirements of 10.4.1 also apply to lower deck openings except that:

- (a) the thickness of inserts, if required, for the lower deck large opening corners is to be 2,5 mm greater than the deck thickness;
- (b) inserts will not generally be required for large opening corners on non-effective decks or platform decks; and
- (c) reinforcement will not generally be required for circular openings, provided that the plate panels in which they are situated are otherwise adequately stiffened against compression and shear buckling.

## 10.5 Sheathing

10.5.1 The requirements for deck sheathing given in 2.4 are to be complied with.

## 10.6 Decks used as ramps

10.6.1 Where any deck forms a ramp, such decks are to be examined for compliance with the requirements for cargo ramps, see Pt 4, Ch 3,5.

## Section 11

## Superstructures, deckhouses and bulwarks

### 11.1 General

11.1.1 The requirements of this Section, unless specified otherwise, are applicable to all ship types, NS1, NS2 and NS3.

11.1.2 The basic structural scantlings of NS1 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 3. The basic structural scantlings of NS2 and NS3 ships are to be determined in accordance with Section 4. Arrangements of the structure are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2,7.

11.1.3 The plating thickness of superstructures, deckhouses and bulwarks is in no case to be less than the appropriate minimum requirements given in Section 2.

11.1.4 Stiffener sections and geometric properties are to be in accordance with Ch 2,2,9.

11.1.5 For ships with an external blast notation, the superstructure strength is to be in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 2,2.

### 11.2 Forecastle requirements

11.2.1 The forecastle side plating may be a continuation of the hull side shell plating or fitted as a separate assembly. Where fitted as a separate assembly, suitable arrangements are to be made to ensure continuity of the effect of the sheerstrake at the break and at the upper edge of the forecastle side. Full penetration welding is to be used.

11.2.2 The deck plating thickness is to be increased by 20 per cent in way of the end of the forecastle if this occurs at a position aft of  $0,75L_R$ . No increase is required if the forecastle end bulkhead lies forward of  $0,8L_R$ . The increase at intermediate positions of end bulkhead is to be obtained by interpolation.

### 11.3 Superstructures formed by extending side structures

11.3.1 The side plating of such superstructures having a length of  $0,15L_R$  or greater is to be increased in thickness by 25 per cent at the ends of the structure, and is to be tapered into the sheerstrake, see 5.3.1. This plating is to be efficiently stiffened at the upper edge and supported by web plates not more than 1,5 m from the end bulkhead. Proposals for alternative arrangements, including the use of higher tensile steel, will be individually considered.

11.3.2 Where the superstructure contributes to the hull girder strength, the shear capability of the superstructure may need to be verified.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Sections 11 & 12

## 11.4 Mullions

11.4.1 The scantlings of mullions are to be not less than as required for a stiffener in the same position.

11.4.2 When determining the stiffener requirements, the width of effective plating is in no case to be taken as greater than the distance between adjacent window openings.

11.4.3 Where significant shear forces are to be carried by superstructures and deckhouses which have large windows, doors, vents and other openings in their side structures, adequate shear rigidity is to be verified by direct calculation.

## 11.5 Sheathing

11.5.1 Sheathing arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Ch 3,2.4.

## Section 12 Pillars and pillar bulkheads

### 12.1 Application

12.1.1 The requirements of this Section, unless specified otherwise, are applicable to all ship types, NS1, NS2 and NS3. Arrangements of pillars are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2,8.

### 12.2 Determination of span length

12.2.1 The effective span length of the pillar,  $l_{ep}$ , is in general the distance between the head and heel of the pillar. Where substantial brackets are fitted,  $l_{ep}$  may be reduced by two thirds the depth of the bracket at each end.

### 12.3 Design loads

12.3.1 The design loading,  $L_{pi}$ , to be used in the determination of pillar scantlings is as follows:

$$L_{pi} = S_{gt} b_{gt} P_c + L_a \text{ kN}$$

where

$L_{pi}$  = design load supported by the pillar, to be taken as not less than 5 kN

$P_c$  = basic deck girder design pressure, as appropriate, plus any other loadings directly above the pillar, in kN/m<sup>2</sup>

$L_a$  = load from pillar or pillars above, assumed zero if there are no pillars over, in kN

$S_{gt}$  = spacing, or mean spacing, of girders or transverses, in metres

$b_{gt}$  = distance between centres of two adjacent spans of girders or transverses supported by the pillar, in metres.

## 12.4 Scantling determination

12.4.1 The minimum wall thickness of tubular pillars is to be in accordance with Section 2.

12.4.2 The cross-sectional area of the pillar,  $A_p$ , is not to be less than:

$$A_p = 10 \frac{L_{pi}}{\sigma_p} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$L_{pi}$  = design load, in kN, supported by the pillar as determined from 12.3

$\sigma_p$  = permissible compressive stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$$= \frac{f_{pi} \sigma_o}{1 + 0,0051 \sigma_o C_f \left( \frac{l_{ep}}{r} \right)^2} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$f_{pi}$  = pillar location factor defined in Table 3.12.1

$\sigma_o$  = specified minimum yield strength of the material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$C_f$  = pillar end fixity factor  
= 0,25 for full fixed/bracketed  
= 0,50 for partially fixed  
= 1,0 for free ended

$r$  = least radius of gyration of pillar cross-section, in cm

$$= \sqrt{\frac{I_p}{A_p}} \text{ cm}$$

$I_p$  = least moment of inertia of cross-section of pillar or stiffener/plate combination, in cm<sup>4</sup>

$l_{ep}$  = effective span of pillar, in metres, or bulkhead as defined in 12.2.

**Table 3.12.1 Pillar location factors**

| Location                               | $f_{pi}$ |
|----------------------------------------|----------|
| Supporting weather deck                | 0,50     |
| Supporting vehicle deck                | 0,50     |
| Supporting stores equipment and routes | 0,50     |
| Supporting accommodation/inner deck    | 0,75     |
| Supporting deckhouse top               | 1,00     |

### 12.5 Minimum slenderness ratio

12.5.1 The slenderness ratio ( $l_e/r$ ) of pillars should not in general exceed 1,1. Pillars with slenderness ratio in excess of 1,1 may be accepted subject to special consideration on a case by case basis and provided that the remaining requirements of the Rules are complied with.

### 12.6 Pillars in tanks

12.6.1 The tensile stress in the pillar and its end connections is not to exceed 108 N/mm<sup>2</sup> at the tank test pressure.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Sections 12 & 13

## 12.7 Pillar bulkheads

12.7.1 The stiffener/plate combination used in the determination of pillar bulkhead scantlings is to be that of a stiffener with an effective width of attached plating as determined from Ch 2,2.2.

12.7.2 The cross-sectional area of the pillar bulkhead,  $A_{pb}$ , is to be determined in accordance with 12.4 using the design loading,  $L_{pb}$ , as follows:

$$L_{pb} = S_{pb} B_{pb} P_c + L_c + L_p + L_a \text{ kN}$$

where

$L_{pb}$  = design load supported by the stiffener plate combination of the pillar bulkhead, to be taken as not less than 5 kN

$P_c$  = basic deck girder design pressure, as appropriate, directly above the pillar bulkhead, in kN/m<sup>2</sup>

$L_c$  = point loads applied to load area supported by the pillar bulkhead, and not included in  $P_c$ , in kN  
Point loads supported by the pillar bulkhead which should include point loads within the load patch plus point loads from outside the load patch, which distribute to the pillar bulkhead. Point loads which fall between pillar bulkheads should be shared proportionately between support points

$L_p$  = load resulting from uniformly distributed loads on decks above, excluding the deck directly above, which have been carried through by pillars or pillar bulkheads above, in kN

$L_a$  = point load, in kN, from above  
= zero if there are no pillars or pillar bulkheads over  
= 65 per cent of the point load from pillar bulkhead over, provided the pillar bulkhead spans between primary support points  
= full load from pillar or pillars over  
= full load from pillar bulkhead or pillar bulkheads over that do not span between primary support points

$S_{pb}$  = spacing, or mean spacing, of bulkheads or effective transverses/longitudinal stiffeners, in metres

$B_{pb}$  = distance between centres of two adjacent spans of girders or transverses supported by the pillar bulkhead, in metres, and can be taken as the distance between pillar bulkhead stiffeners where the stiffeners at the top of the bulkhead effectively distributes the load evenly into the stiffeners.

12.7.3 The thickness of the bulkhead plating is in no case to be taken as less than 4 mm.

12.7.4 The scantlings of the pillar bulkhead are not to be less than those of any bulkhead or pillar bulkhead in the direct support line above that being considered.

## 12.8 Direct calculations

12.8.1 As an alternative to 12.4 and 12.7, pillars and pillar bulkheads may be designed on the basis of direct calculation. The method adopted and the stress levels proposed for the material of construction are to be submitted together with the calculations for consideration.

## 12.9 Novel features

12.9.1 Where unusual or novel pillars designs are proposed that are unable to comply with the requirements of this Section, their design together with the direct calculations are to be submitted for special consideration.

## Section 13 Machinery and raft seatings

### 13.1 General

13.1.1 Main and auxiliary engine seatings are to be effectively secured to the hull structure. The scantlings of such seatings are to be adequate for the intended purpose, with due account taken of the gravitational, thrust, torque and vibrating forces together with the load increases resulting from sea motions and shock which may be imposed upon them.

13.1.2 In determining the scantlings of seats for oil engines, consideration is to be given to the general rigidity of the engine itself and to its design characteristics with regard to out of balance forces.

13.1.3 The longitudinal girders forming the engine seatings are to extend as far forward and aft as practicable and are to be adequately supported by transverse floors or brackets. The webs of the longitudinal girders are to be welded to the bottom shell plating.

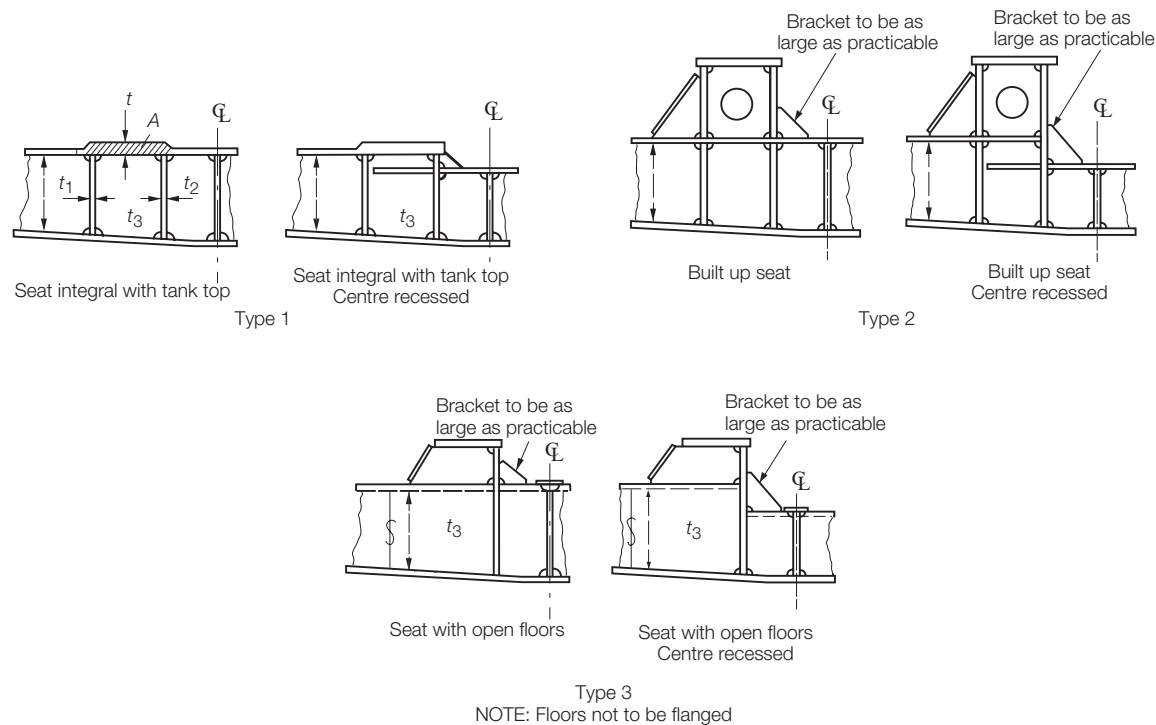
13.1.4 The seats are to be so designed that they distribute the forces from the engine(s) as uniformly as possible into the supporting structure. Longitudinal girders supporting the seatings are to be arranged in single or double bottoms, and are, in general to extend over the full length of the machinery space. The ends of the girders are to be scarfed into the bottom structure for at least two frame spaces. Adequate transverse brackets are to be arranged in line with floors. Half floors, transverse brackets or hanging brackets will in general be required under the top plate in way of holding down bolts.

13.1.5 Where rafts are proposed for supporting the main and auxiliary engines the arrangements of such rafts are to be in accordance with Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2.

13.1.6 Welding in way of all machinery seating is to be double continuous and where appropriate full penetration.

13.1.7 Large areas of unstiffened flat plate are to be avoided.

13.1.8 The number of openings of lightening holes in the seating structure are to be kept to the minimum necessary for access essential for maintenance, etc. Lightening holes are to be as small as practicable and are in no case to be greater than one half of the corresponding dimension of the plate in which they are positioned. Lightening holes with dimensions which are in excess of one third the corresponding dimension of the plate in which they are positioned are to be suitably edge stiffened by spigots or other equivalent means.



13.1.9 Machinery seatings are additionally to be examined for compliance with the bottom stiffening requirements as appropriate for their location, with due account taken of both local and global loadings.

### 13.2 Seats for oil engines

13.2.1 In determining the scantlings of seats for oil engines, consideration is to be given to the general rigidity of the engine itself and to its design characteristics in regard to out of balance forces.

13.2.2 In the case of higher power oil engines or turbine installations the seatings should generally be integral with the bottom structure. The tank top plating in way of the engine foundation plate or the turbine gear case and the thrust bearing should be substantially increased in thickness, see Fig. 3.13.1, Type 1.

13.2.3 If the main machinery is supported on seatings of Type 2 as shown in Fig. 3.13.1, these are to be so designed that they distribute the forces from the engine as uniformly as possible into the supporting structure. Longitudinal members supporting the seating are to be arranged in line with girders in the double bottom, and adequate transverse stiffening is to be arranged in line with floors, see Fig. 3.13.1, Type 2.

13.2.4 In ships having open floors in the machinery space the seatings are generally to be arranged above the level of the top of floors and securely bracketed to them, see Fig. 3.13.1, Type 3.

### 13.3 Seats for turbines

13.3.1 Seats are to be so designed as to provide effective support for the turbines and ensure their proper alignment with the gearing, and (where applicable) allow for thermal expansion of the casings. In general, the seats are not to be arranged in way of breaks or recesses in the double bottom.

### 13.4 Seats for boilers

13.4.1 Boiler seats are to be of substantial construction and efficiently supported by transverse and horizontal brackets. These should generally be arranged in line with plate floors and girders in a double bottom or with suitable deep beams or transverses and girders at boiler flats. Suitable allowance is to be made in the design of the supporting structure for the variation in loading due to thermal expansion effects.

### 13.5 Seats for auxiliary machinery

13.5.1 Auxiliary machinery is to be secured on seatings, of adequate scantlings, so arranged as to distribute the loadings evenly into the supporting structure.

## Section 14 Strengthening for bottom slamming

### 14.1 General

14.1.1 This Section may be used to determine the additional scantlings for strengthening in respect of the bottom structure forward for NS1 and NS2 type ships.

14.1.2 The additional scantlings for strengthening in respect of the bottom structure forward for NS3 type ships will be specially considered on the basis of this Section.

### 14.2 Strengthening of bottom forward

14.2.1 The bottom forward is to be additionally strengthened where the ship has a draught forward of less than  $0,045L_R$  in any operational loading condition. This minimum draught,  $T_{FB}$ , see 14.2.7, is to be indicated on the shell expansion plan, the plan showing the internal strengthening, the Loading Manual and loading instrument, where fitted.

14.2.2 The requirements for the additional strengthening apply to ships where  $L_R$  is greater than 65 m.

14.2.3 The scantling requirements outside the areas which have been strengthened for bottom slamming are to be suitably tapered to maintain adequate continuity of strength in both longitudinal and transverse directions.

14.2.4 The scantling requirements for the additional strengthening are given in Table 3.14.1, or may be obtained by direct calculation. Where  $T_{FB}$  is less than  $0,01L_R$ , the additional strengthening is to be specially considered.

14.2.5 Bottom longitudinals are to pass through and be supported by the webs of primary members. The vertical web stiffeners are to be connected to the bottom longitudinals. The cross-sectional area of the connections is to comply with the requirements given in Table 3.14.1.

14.2.6 The scantlings required by this Section must in no case be less than those required by other Sections in Chapter 3.

14.2.7 For NS1 ships with a block coefficient,  $C_b$ , greater than 0,6, the equivalent slamming pressure expressed as a head of water,  $h_s$ , is to be obtained from Fig. 3.14.1, where  $h_{max}$  is calculated from the following expressions:

$$65 < L_R \leq 169 \text{ m}, \quad h_{max} = 10 \sqrt{L_R} \text{ F m}$$

$$L_R > 169 \text{ m}, \quad h_{max} = 130F \text{ m}$$

where

$$F = 5,95 - 10,5 \left( \frac{T_{FB}}{L_R} \right)^{0,2}$$

$T_{FB}$  is the minimum draft at the location under consideration

$L_R$  is as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2.

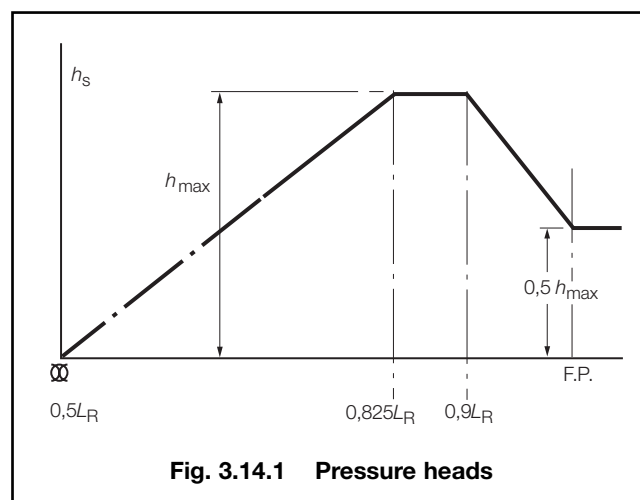


Fig. 3.14.1 Pressure heads

14.2.8 For NS1 ships where  $C_b < 0,6$  and for NS2 and NS3 ships, the equivalent bottom impact pressure head,  $h_s$ , is to be derived in accordance with the following:

$$h_s = \frac{IP_{bi}}{10} \text{ m}$$

where

$IP_{bi}$  = instantaneous bottom impact pressure as given in Pt 5, Ch 3,4.2.

# Scantling Determination

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 14

**Table 3.14.1 Additional strengthening of bottom forward** (see continuation)

| Item                                                                                | Requirements                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Longitudinally framed bottom shell plating (including keel) (see Notes 1 and 2) | $t = 0,003s f \sqrt{h_s k_s}$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| (2) Bottom longitudinals – other than flat bars                                     | $\frac{d_w}{t_w} \leq 55 \sqrt{k_s}$ $\frac{d_w t_w}{100} \geq 0,00033 k_s h_s s c \left( S - \frac{s}{2000} \right) \text{ cm}^2$ $Z \geq 6,8 \times 10^{-6} h_s s k_s \left[ (17,5 l_g)^2 - (0,01s)^2 + d_w c \left( S - \frac{s}{2000} \right) \right] \text{ cm}^3$ $\frac{(A_1 \bar{\tau} + \alpha)}{p} \times 10^{-1} \geq 1$ $A_w \geq 0,84 A_1$                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| (3) Bottom longitudinals – flat bars                                                | Will be specially considered                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| (4) Primary structure in way of single bottoms                                      | Transverse framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Longitudinal framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                                                     | <p>(a) Centreline girder:<br/>Scantlings as required by Table 3.3.12 as appropriate, except that in determining <math>Z</math> in way of a deep tank forward of <math>0,8L_F</math> the value of <math>h_s</math> is to be increased by the following percentages:<br/>where <math>T_{FB} \leq 0,03L_2</math>, 30 per cent<br/>where <math>T_{FB} \geq 0,04L_2</math>, 0 per cent<br/>The increase in <math>h_s</math> for intermediate values of <math>T_{FB}</math> to be obtained by interpolation</p> <p>(b) Floors:<br/>Scantlings as required by Table 3.3.12 as appropriate, except that in way of dry spaces the minimum face area is to be increased by the following percentages:<br/>where <math>T_{FB} \leq 0,03L_2</math>, 50 per cent<br/>where <math>T_{FB} \geq 0,04L_2</math>, 0 per cent<br/>The increase of minimum face area for intermediate values of <math>T_{FB}</math> to be obtained by interpolation</p> <p>(c) Side girders:<br/>Arrangement and scantlings as required by Table 3.3.12 as appropriate, with the addition of intermediate half-height girders or equivalent fore and aft stiffening</p> | <p>(a) Ships having one or more longitudinal bulkheads:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Centreline girder<br/>Scantlings as required by Table 3.3.12 as appropriate</li> <li>(ii) Bottom transverses<br/>Maximum spacing as for midships region, scantlings as required by Section 2, as appropriate</li> <li>(iii) For horizontally stiffened longitudinal bulkheads and girders the depth to thickness ratio of the panel attached to the bottom shell plate is not to exceed <math>55 \sqrt{k_s}</math></li> <li>(iv) Where <math>T_{FB} &lt; 0,025L_2</math> the scantlings and arrangements will receive individual consideration</li> </ul> <p>(b) Other ship arrangements will receive individual consideration</p> |
| (5) Primary structure in way of double bottoms (see Note 3)                         | <p>(a) Plate floors:<br/>Maximum spacing, every frame<br/>Scantlings as required by Section 2</p> <p>(b) Centreline and side girders:<br/>Maximum spacing, <math>0,003s_F</math> m<br/>Scantlings as required by Section 2</p> <p>(c) Intermediate half-height girders to be arranged midway between side girders:<br/>Scantlings as required for non-watertight side girders by Section 2</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <p>(a) Plate floors:<br/>Maximum spacing:<br/><math>0,002s_F</math> m for <math>T_{FB} &lt; 0,04L_2</math><br/><math>0,003s_F</math> m for <math>T_{FB} \geq 0,04L_2</math><br/>but not to exceed that required by Table 3.3.12 as appropriate</p> <p>(b) Centreline and side girders:<br/>Maximum spacing:<br/><math>0,003s_L</math> m for <math>T_{FB} &lt; 0,04L_2</math><br/><math>0,004s_L</math> m for <math>T_{FB} \geq 0,04L_2</math><br/>but not to exceed that required by Table 3.3.12, as appropriate<br/>Scantlings as required by Table 3.3.12, as appropriate</p>                                                                                                                                                          |
| (6) Primary structure in way of double bottoms supported by longitudinal bulkheads  | —                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | The scantlings and arrangements will receive individual consideration on the basis of direct calculations using, if necessary, a suitably defined two-dimensional grillage model                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

## Scantling Determination

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 14

**Table 3.14.1 Additional strengthening of bottom forward (conclusion)**

| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $L_F, T$ as defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2<br>$L_2, S, s, k_s$ as defined in 3.2.1<br>$c = 1,0$ for $S \leq 2,5$ m<br>$= (0,87 + 0,16S) c_1$ for $S > 2,5$ m<br>$c_1 = 1,0$ for $S \leq 1,0$ m<br>$= (1,14 - 0,14S)$ for $1,0 \text{ m} < S \leq 4,0 \text{ m}$<br>$= \frac{2,32}{S}$ for $S > 4,0$ m<br>$d_w$ = web depth, in mm, see Fig. 2.2.1 in Chapter 2<br>$f = \left(1,1 - \frac{s}{2500S}\right)$ but not greater than 1,0<br>$h_s$ = equivalent slamming pressure, in metres, obtained from 14.2.7 or 14.2.8<br>$l_s = l_e$ , in metres, as defined in Ch 2,2.6 where in way of a double bottom<br>$= S$ , in metres, where in way of a single bottom<br>$p = 9,81h_s sc_1 \left[S - \frac{s}{2500}\right] \times 10^{-3}$ kN | $s_F$ = spacing of transverse frames, in mm, for longitudinally framed side and bottom construction $s_F$ may be taken as $s_L$<br>$s_L$ = spacing of bottom longitudinals, in mm<br>$t_w$ = web thickness, in mm<br>$A_f$ = cross-sectional area of primary member web stiffener, in $\text{cm}^2$<br>$A_{fc}$ = effective area of primary member web stiffener in way of butted end connection to the longitudinal, in $\text{cm}^2$<br>$A_L$ = area of weld of lapped connection, in $\text{cm}^2$ , calculated as total length of weld, in cm x throat thickness, in cm<br>$A_w$ = area of weld of lug and web connection to the longitudinal, in $\text{cm}^2$ , calculated as total length of weld in cm x throat thickness, in cm<br>$A_1$ = effective total cross-sectional area of the lug and web connection to the longitudinal, in $\text{cm}^2$<br>$T_{FB}$ = draught, in metres, at the F.P., as defined in 14.2.1<br>$\alpha = A_f \bar{\sigma}$ for the web stiffeners<br>$= A_{fc} \bar{\sigma}$ for a butted connection to the longitudinals<br>$= A_L \bar{\tau}$ for a lapped connection<br>$\bar{\sigma}$ = permissible direct stress, in $\text{N/mm}^2$ , given in Table 3.14.2<br>$\bar{\tau}$ = permissible shear stress, in $\text{N/mm}^2$ , given in Table 3.14.2 |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. If intermediate stiffening is fitted the thickness of the bottom shell plating may be 80 per cent of that required by (1) but is to be not less than the normal taper thickness.<br>2. For transverse framing the bottom shell plating is to be specially considered.<br>3. Particular care is to be taken to limit the size and number of openings in way of the ends of floors or girders or to fit suitable reinforcement where such openings are essential.<br>4. The welding requirements of Ch 6,3 are also to be complied with.                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

**Table 3.14.2 Permissible stresses**

| Item                                                                                                                                                  |                            | Direct stress, $\bar{\sigma}$<br>in $\text{N/mm}^2$ see Note                                             | Shear stress, $\bar{\tau}$<br>in $\text{N/mm}^2$ |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Primary member web stiffener on area $A_f$                                                                                                            | (a) Flat bars (see Note)   | $\frac{10,3}{k_s} \left[ 33 - \frac{d}{t \sqrt{k_s}} \right]$                                            | —                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                       | (b) Bulb plates (see Note) | $\frac{8,6}{k_s} \left[ 40 - \frac{d}{\left( \frac{100A_f}{d} - \frac{t}{6} \right) \sqrt{k_s}} \right]$ | —                                                |
|                                                                                                                                                       | (c) Inverted angles        | $\frac{220}{k_s}$                                                                                        | —                                                |
| Primary member web stiffener on area $A_{fc}$                                                                                                         |                            | $\frac{245}{k_s}$                                                                                        | —                                                |
| Primary member web stiffener lapped to secondary member on area $A_L$                                                                                 |                            | —                                                                                                        | $\frac{167}{k_s}$                                |
| Lug or web connection on area $A_1$                                                                                                                   | Single                     | —                                                                                                        | $\frac{124}{k_s}$                                |
|                                                                                                                                                       | Double                     | —                                                                                                        | $\frac{141}{k_s}$                                |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                               |                            |                                                                                                          |                                                  |
| $A_f, A_L, A_1$ are as defined in Table 3.14.1<br>$d$ = stiffener depth, in mm<br>$k_s$ = as defined in 3.2.1<br>$t$ = stiffener web thickness, in mm |                            |                                                                                                          |                                                  |
| <b>NOTE</b><br>$\bar{\sigma}$ is to be taken no greater than $\frac{220}{k_s}$ .                                                                      |                            |                                                                                                          |                                                  |

## Section 15

### Strengthening for wave impact loads above waterline

#### 15.1 General

15.1.1 This Section may be used to determine the required scantlings for strengthening against bow flare slamming for NS1 and NS2 type ships and for wave impacts on the shell envelope. Direct calculations may also be used to determine the required scantling.

15.1.2 The required scantlings for strengthening against wave impact loads for NS3 type ships will be specially considered on the basis of this Section.

15.1.3 The scantling requirements contained in this Section are based on no permanent set of plating. If acceptable to the Owner, special consideration will be given to an alternative plating performance specification. Areas designed in accordance with an alternative performance specification are to be clearly marked on the plans. Direct calculations may be used to determine the required scantlings.

#### 15.2 Strengthening against bow flare wave impacts

15.2.1 The shell envelope above the summer load waterline is to be strengthened against bow flare wave impact pressures. The strengthening is to extend vertically to the uppermost deck level, including the forecastle deck, if fitted.

15.2.2 The equivalent bow flare wave impact head,  $h_s$ , is to be taken as:

$$h_s = \frac{IP_{bf}}{10} \text{ m}$$

where

$IP_{bf}$  is the bow flare or above waterline wave impact pressure, see Pt 5, Ch 3.4.3.

15.2.3 The thickness of the side shell is to be not less than:

$$t = 3,2s_c \sqrt{k_s h_s} C_R \times 10^{-2} \text{ mm}$$

where

$s_c$  = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm, measured along a chord between parallel adjacent members or equivalent supports, as shown in Fig. 3.15.1

$h_s$  = bow flare wave impact head, in metres, as defined in 15.2.2

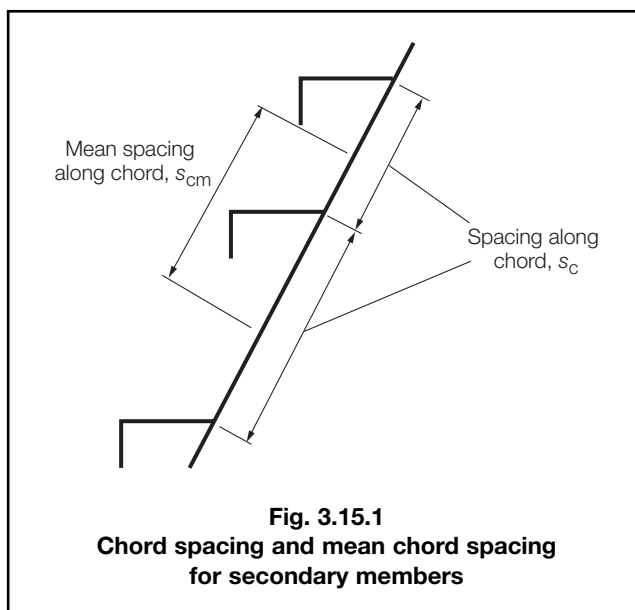
$C_R$  = panel ratio factor

$$= \left( \frac{l}{s_c} \right)^{0,41} \text{ but is not to be taken less than 0,06 or}$$

greater than 0,1

$l$  = overall panel length, in metres, measured along a chord between the primary members

$k_s$  = as defined in 3.2.1.



**Fig. 3.15.1**  
Chord spacing and mean chord spacing for secondary members

15.2.4 The scantlings of primary members are not to be less than:

(a) Section modulus of primary members

$$Z = 2\gamma_Z k_s h_s q \nu l_e^2 \text{ cm}^3$$

(b) Web area of primary members

$$A = 0,2\gamma_A k_s h_s q \nu l_e \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$h_s$  = bow flare wave impact head, in metres, as defined in 15.2.2

and

$\gamma_A$  and  $\gamma_Z$  are strength factors dependent on the load position

$$\text{for } q < 1 \quad \gamma_A = q^3 - 2q^2 + 2 \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma_Z = 3q^3 - 8q^2 + 6q$$

$$\text{for } q = 1 \quad \gamma_A = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma_Z = 1$$

$$q = \frac{u}{l_e} \text{ but } \leq 1$$

for web frames:

$u$  is the minimum of  $g_{bfv}$  or  $l_e$

$\nu$  is the minimum of  $g_{bfh}$  or  $S_{cm}$

for primary stringers:

$u$  is the minimum of  $g_{bfh}$  or  $l_e$

$\nu$  is the minimum of  $g_{bfv}$  or  $S_{cm}$

where

$l_e$  is the effective length of the primary member, in metres  
 $S_{cm}$  is the mean spacing between primary members along the plating, in metres, see Fig. 3.15.2

$g_{bfv}$  and  $g_{bfh}$  are defined in Pt 5, Ch 3.4.3.3

Other symbols are as defined in Ch 2.1.

(c) The web of the primary member is to be adequately stiffened.

15.2.5 The scantlings of secondary stiffeners are not to be less than:

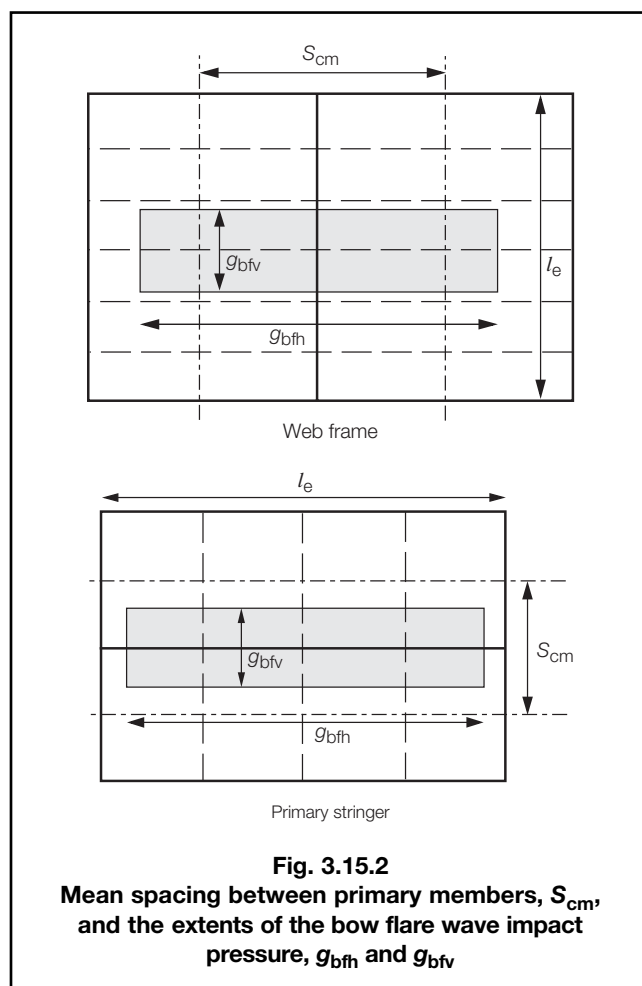
(a) Effective plastic section modulus of stiffeners:

$$Z_p = 3,75h_s s_{cm} k_s l_e^2 \times 10^{-3} \text{ cm}^3$$

where

$h_s$  = wave impact head, in metres, as defined in 15.2.2





**Fig. 3.15.2**  
**Mean spacing between primary members,  $S_{cm}$ , and the extents of the bow flare wave impact pressure,  $g_{bfh}$  and  $g_{bfv}$**

$S_{cm}$  = mean spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm, measured along a chord between parallel adjacent members or equivalent supports, as shown in Fig. 3.15.1

(b) Web area of secondary stiffeners

$$A = 3,7 s_{cm} k_s h_s \left( l_e - \frac{s_{cm}}{2000} \right) \times 10^{-4} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$s_{cm}$  = mean spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm, measured along a chord between parallel adjacent members or equivalent supports, as shown in Fig. 3.15.1

$h_s$  = wave impact head, in metres, as defined in 4.3.2

Other symbols are as defined in Ch 2,1.

15.2.6 The effective section properties of secondary stiffeners are to be taken as:

(a) Plastic section modulus of secondary stiffeners,  $Z_p$  is to be taken as:

$$Z_p = (2,8 \times 10^{-4} s_{cm} t_p^2) - (10^{-3} b_f b_{fc} t_f \sin \theta_e) + (5 \times 10^{-4} (h_w^2 t_w + 2 b_f t_f h_w) \cos \theta_e) \text{ cm}^3$$

where

$$\theta_e = C_0 (90 - \varphi)$$

$$C_0 = 1,1$$

$\varphi$  = the angle between the stiffener and the side shell, in degrees

$$b_{fc} = 0,5(b_f - t_w) \text{ for L profiles}$$

$$= 0 \text{ for flat bar and T profiles}$$

$$= \text{see Fig. 2.2.1 in Chapter 2, for bulb profiles}$$

$$h_w = \text{height of web, in mm}$$

$$t_w = \text{web thickness, in mm}$$

$$b_f = \text{breadth of flange, in mm}$$

$$t_f = \text{flange thickness, in mm}$$

$$t_p = \text{thickness of attached plating, in mm}$$

$$s_{cm} = \text{defined in 15.2.5.}$$

(b) Web area of secondary stiffeners,  $A_s$  is to be taken as:

$$A_s = 0,01(h_w + t_p) t_w \sin \varphi \text{ cm}^2$$

15.2.7 For primary members with cut-outs for the passage of secondary stiffeners, and which may have web stiffeners connected to the secondary stiffener, buckling checks are to be carried out to ensure that the primary member web plating and web stiffener will not buckle under the design load. The buckling procedure to be followed is given in Table 3.15.1. Where the web stiffener is fitted with a bracket, the buckling capability of the web stiffener in way of the cut-out is to take into account the bracket. Where no web stiffener is fitted, the buckling capability of the primary member web plating is to be checked for the total load transmitted to the connection.

15.2.8 The structural scantlings required in areas strengthened against bow flare wave impact are to be tapered to meet the normal shell envelope requirements.

15.2.9 Where the stiffener web is not perpendicular to the plating, tripping brackets may need to be fitted in order to obtain adequate lateral stability.

15.2.10 Where the angle between the primary structure web and the plating is less than  $70^\circ$ , the effective section modulus and shear area are to take account of the non-perpendicularity.

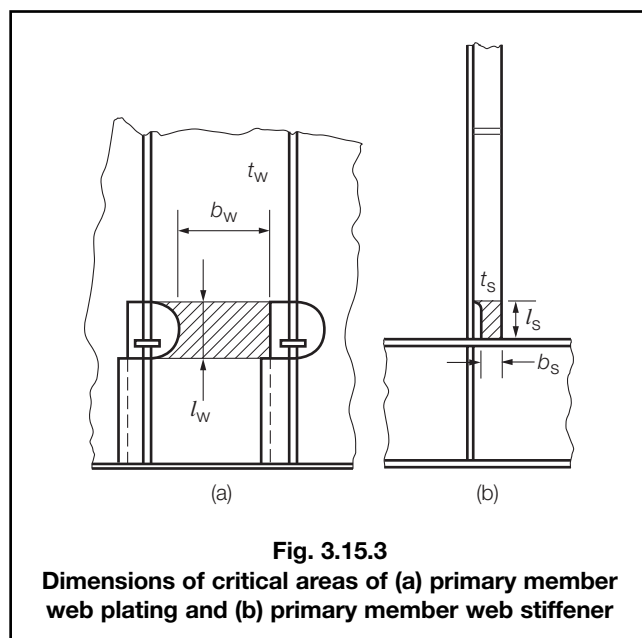
15.2.11 The side structure scantlings required by this Section must in no case be taken less than those required by other Sections of Chapter 3.

## 15.3 Strengthening against wave impact loads

15.3.1 The requirements of 15.2 are to be applied to areas of plating which are liable to be subjected to wave impact loads; for example, bottom plating of wide transom sterns, undersides of sponsons for aircraft lifts.

**Table 3.15.1 Buckling procedure for primary member web plating and web stiffener**

| Steps                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Members                                                                                         |                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Primary member web plating                                                                      | Primary member web stiffener                                                      |
| Determination of the design compressive stress, $\sigma_a$ , N/mm <sup>2</sup> (kgf/mm <sup>2</sup> )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | $\sigma_a = \frac{1000P_w}{A_w}$                                                                | $\sigma_a = \frac{1000P_s}{A_s}$                                                  |
| Determination of the elastic critical buckling stress, $\sigma_e$ , in compression, N/mm <sup>2</sup> (kgf/mm <sup>2</sup> )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | $\sigma_e = \frac{9,87E I_w}{l_w^2 A_w}$                                                        | $\sigma_e = \frac{9,87E I_s}{l_s^2 A_s}$                                          |
| Determination of the corrected critical buckling stress, $\sigma_{cr}$ , in compression, N/mm <sup>2</sup> (kgf/mm <sup>2</sup> )                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | $\sigma_{cr} = \sigma_o \left(1 - \frac{\sigma_o}{\sigma_e}\right)$<br>$\sigma_{cr} = \sigma_e$ | where $\sigma_e > \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$<br>where $\sigma_e \leq \frac{\sigma_o}{2}$ |
| Requirement                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | $\sigma_{cr} \geq \sigma_a$                                                                     |                                                                                   |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                 |                                                                                   |
| <p><math>b_w, b_s, l_w</math>, and <math>l_s</math> are dimensions, in mm, as shown in Fig. 3.15.3</p> <p><math>h_s</math> = equivalent bow flare slamming head, in metres, as defined in 15.2.2</p> <p><math>s_{cm}</math> = mean spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm, as defined in 15.2.4</p> <p><math>t_s</math> = thickness of primary member web stiffener, in mm</p> <p><math>t_w</math> = thickness of primary member web plating, in mm</p> <p><math>A_w = b_w t_w</math> mm<sup>2</sup></p> <p><math>A_s = b_s t_s</math> mm<sup>2</sup></p> <p><math>E</math> = modulus of elasticity, in N/mm<sup>2</sup></p> <p>= 206000 N/mm<sup>2</sup> for steel</p> <p><math>I_s = \frac{b_s t_s^3}{12}</math> mm<sup>4</sup></p> <p><math>I_w = \frac{b_w t_w^3}{12}</math> mm<sup>4</sup></p> <p><math>P</math> = total load transmitted to the connection</p> <p>= 10,06 <math>S_{cm} s_{cm} h_s \times 10^{-3}</math> kN</p> <p><math>P_s</math> = load transmitted through the primary member web stiffener, in kN, to be determined from <math>P_2 = P - P_1</math>, in kN, or by direct calculations. Where <math>P_1</math> = pressure transmitted through collar arrangement and <math>P</math> = total load transmitted to the primary member</p> <p><math>P_w</math> = load transmitted through the primary member web plating, in kN</p> <p>= <math>P - P_s</math>, or by direct calculations</p> <p><math>S_{cm}</math> = mean spacing of primary members, in metres, as defined in 15.2.5</p> <p><math>\sigma_o</math> = specified minimum yield stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup></p> |                                                                                                 |                                                                                   |



## ■ Section 16 Masts

### 16.1 General

16.1.1 This Section may be used to determine the required scantlings for stayed or unstayed single masts of conventional design on NS1, NS2 and NS3 type ships. Additional requirements for masts are given in Pt 4, Ch 1,5.3.

### 16.2 Pole masts

16.2.1 The maximum allowable combined bending and direct stress in pole masts is not to exceed the value given in Table 3.16.1. The maximum allowable shear stress is not to exceed 0,58 times the value given in Table 3.16.1.

# Scantling Determination

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 3

Section 16

**Table 3.16.1 Allowable stresses in masts**

| Item                              | Allowable stress, in N/mm <sup>2</sup> |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| (1) Stayed mast:                  | $0,50\sigma_y$                         |
| (2) Unstayed mast:                | $0,55\sigma_y$                         |
| (3) Cross trees, outriggers, etc: | $0,55\sigma_y$                         |

16.2.2 The forces acting on the mast are to be calculated in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 3,6.4.

### 16.3 Unstayed masts

16.3.1 The total stress ( $\sigma_t$ ) at any particular location is to be taken as:

$$\sigma_t = [(\sigma_b + \sigma_c)^2 + 3q^2]^{1/2} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$\sigma_b$  = the bending stress at that location due to the bending moments acting on the mast

$\sigma_c$  = the direct compressive stress at that location due to the vertical components of force. In general, the weight of the mast and cross trees may be ignored in this calculation

$q$  = the shear stress due to torque in the mast. The effect of torque need only be considered where cross trees are fitted.

16.3.2 The total stress is to be determined at each change of plate thickness or other change of section along the mast. It is recommended that a plot or table of stress to a base of mast length be prepared.

### 16.4 Stayed masts

16.4.1 In the absence of stays the mast will deflect under the influence of the imposed forces. Where stays are fitted they will extend under tension, the amount of elongation being related to the deflection of the mast at the point of attachment of the stays. The distribution of forces in the mast and stays may therefore be obtained by consideration of:

- The equilibrium between the deflection of the mast and the corresponding elongations of the stays.
- The equilibrium between the imposed loads on the mast and the reactions in the mast and the stays.

16.4.2 These calculations are to be made using appropriately defined co-ordinate axes. Attention is drawn to the importance of assigning the correct sign to the angles and dimensions used. Any stay which would be required to work in compression is to be ignored.

16.4.3 Elongation of the stays is to be calculated on the basis of the area enclosed by a circle of diameter equal to the nominal diameter of the rope in association with an effective modulus of elasticity of 61300 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (6250 kgf/mm<sup>2</sup>). Consideration will, however, be given to the use of a higher modulus of elasticity where this is demonstrated by suitable tests to be applicable.

16.4.4 The total stress in the mast at any particular location is to be determined. Attention is drawn to the fact that increased stiffness of the mast leads to a rapid increase in stress in the mast with a corresponding reduction in the effectiveness of the stays. It is desirable, therefore, to design the mast for the required section modulus in association with the least practicable moment of inertia.

16.4.5 Wire rope stays are to be in one length and their construction is to comply with the requirements of Chapter 6 of the *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment* (LAME).

16.4.6 The scantlings of a stay are to be such as to provide the tensile force and elongation to meet these requirements. The breaking load of a stay is to be not less than 3,5 times the maximum calculated force on that stay.



# Hull Girder Strength

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 4

## Section 1

### Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Hull girder strength**
- 3 **Extreme Strength Assessment, ESA**
- 4 **Residual Strength Assessment, RSA**

## ■ Section 1 General

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements for longitudinal and transverse global strength are contained within this Chapter.

1.1.2 This Chapter contains Sections detailing the analysis requirements for the following topics:

- Hull girder strength.
- Extreme strength assessment.
- Residual strength assessment.

1.1.3 **Section 2, Hull girder strength.** This Section specifies the hull girder strength requirements based on the conventional elastic design and buckling analyses. All ships are to comply fully with the requirements of this Section.

1.1.4 **Section 3, Extreme strength assessment.** This Section specifies the requirements for the assessment of the extreme hull girder strength to withstand wave loads that have a low probability of occurring during the life of the ship. This is an optional assessment and ships which comply with the extreme strength requirements can apply for the notation **ESA1** or **ESA2**, see Pt 1, Ch 2,3.6.1.

1.1.5 **Section 4, Residual strength assessment.** This Section specifies the requirements for the assessment of the residual hull girder strength after the ship has sustained structural damage. This is an optional assessment and ships which comply with the residual strength requirements can apply for the notation **RSA1**, **RSA2** or **RSA3**, see Pt 1, Ch 2,3.6.1.

### 1.2 Hull girder strength notations

1.2.1 The following notations are available for all ships with regard to global hull girder strength aspects:

- **ESA1, ESA2** Extreme strength assessment.
- **RSA1, RSA2, RSA3** Residual strength assessment.

A distinction is made between levels of performance and levels of assessment; the numeral in the notation reflects the level of assessment. Levels of performance are denoted by the letters A, B, C for collision or grounding damage and numerals I, II and III for damage from military threats and are confidential to the Owner. See 4.2 for non military threats and Pt 4, Ch 2,7 for military threats.

1.2.2 The performance of the ship with respect to extreme hull girder strength aspects may be evaluated at two levels. **ESA1**, the lowest level offers a basic assessment of the ship's capability. **ESA2**, the higher level is a much more rigorous assessment of the hull's capability to withstand extreme sea states.

1.2.3 It is recommended that ships of groups NS1 and NS2 should comply with **ESA1**. However, it is the responsibility of the Owner to specify the level of extreme strength assessment required.

1.2.4 The extreme strength assessment level adopted must reflect the performance level required by other notations.

1.2.5 The two levels of assessment available for the extreme strength assessment notation are summarised as follows:

**ESA1** This uses elastic theory, based on the section moduli and area, and determination of the buckling strength to resist the global hull girder loads. The assessment is to be made at a minimum of three locations.

**ESA2** Uses a '2D' ultimate strength beam representation and a failure level criterion based on the section ultimate bending moments being satisfactory compared to the design bending moments in both hogging and sagging. This will require assessment using ultimate strength calculations at all critical longitudinal locations.

1.2.6 The performance of the ship with respect to residual strength aspects may be evaluated at several levels. The lowest level offers a basic assessment of the ship's capability to survive. Higher residual strength levels are designed to show that the ship has an improved performance with respect to hull's capability to withstand increased damage extents and scenarios.

1.2.7 Three assessment and performance levels are available for the residual strength assessment notation. **RSA1**, the assessment Level 1 residual strength assessment and performance level A is recommended as a minimum for all ships of groups **NS1** and **NS2**. However, it is the responsibility of the Owner to specify the level of residual strength assessment required.

1.2.8 The residual strength assessment level adopted must reflect the performance level required by other notations.

1.2.9 The three levels of assessment available for the extreme strength assessment notation are summarised as follows:

**RSA1** This uses elastic theory, based on the remaining section moduli and area after damage, and determination of the buckling strength to resist the global hull girder loads. The assessment is to be made at a minimum of three critical sections.

**RSA2** Uses a '2D' ultimate strength beam representation and a failure level criterion based on the section ultimate bending moments being satisfactorily compared to the design bending moments in both hogging and sagging. The assessment is to be made at a minimum of three critical sections.

**RSA3** Uses a '3D' definition of a section of the hull girder and relies on geometric and material failure criteria implicit in the chosen finite element code. It could also include coupled Euler-Lagrange formulations specifically to account for internal and external blast effects, UNDEX shock and whipping.

## 1.3 Symbols and definitions

1.3.1 The symbols and definitions applicable to this Chapter are defined below or in the appropriate sub-Section.

$L_R$  = Rule length of the ship, in metres

$B$  = moulded breadth of ship, see Pt 3, Ch 1.5.2, in metres

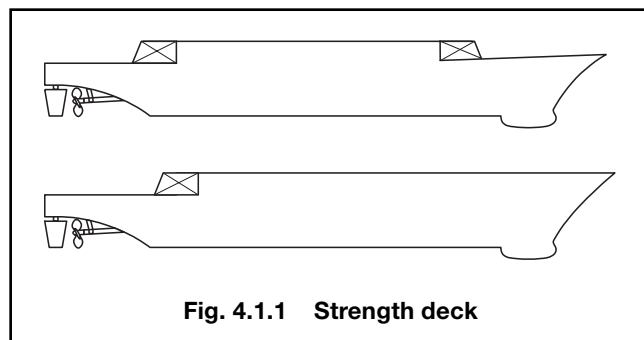
$\sigma_o$  = specified minimum yield strength of the material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\tau_o = \sigma_o / \sqrt{3}$

$f_{hts}$  = higher tensile steel correction factor, see Ch 5, 1.3, Table 5.1.1.

1.3.2 The strength deck is to be taken as follows:

- Where there is a complete upper deck, the strength deck is the upper deck.
- Where the upper deck is stepped, as in the case of ships with a raised quarterdeck, the strength deck is stepped as shown in Fig. 4.1.1. Adequate provision should be made for the transfer of load between the stepped decks. The length of overlap required is to be taken as 4 times the deck height.



**Fig. 4.1.1 Strength deck**

## 1.4 Calculation of hull section modulus

1.4.1 In general, the effective sectional area of continuous longitudinal strength members, after deduction of openings, is to be used for the calculation of midship section modulus.

1.4.2 Structural members which contribute to the overall hull girder strength are to be carefully aligned so as to avoid discontinuities resulting in abrupt variations of stresses and are to be kept clear of any form of openings which may affect their structural performances.

1.4.3 In general, short superstructures or deckhouses will not be accepted as contributing to the global longitudinal or transverse strength of the ship. However, where it is proposed to include substantial, continuous stiffening members, special consideration will be given to their inclusion on submission of the designer's/builder's calculations, see also 2.5.

1.4.4 Where continuous deck longitudinals or deck girders are arranged above the strength deck, special consideration may be given to the inclusion of their sectional area in the calculation of the hull section modulus,  $Z$ . The lever is to be taken to a position corresponding to the height of the longitudinal member above the moulded deck line at side amidships. Each such case will be individually considered.

1.4.5 Adequate transition arrangements are to be fitted at the ends of effective continuous longitudinal strength members in the deck and bottom structures.

1.4.6 Scantlings of all continuous longitudinal members of the hull girder based on the minimum section stiffness requirements determined from 2.2 are to be maintained within  $0,4L_R$  amidships. However, in special cases, based on consideration of type of ship, hull form and loading conditions, the scantlings may be gradually reduced towards the ends of the  $0,4L_R$  part, bearing in mind the desire not to inhibit the ship's loading and operational flexibility.

1.4.7 Structural material which is longitudinally continuous but which is not considered to be fully effective for longitudinal strength purposes will need to be specially considered. The global longitudinal strength assessment must take into account the presence of such material when it can be considered effective. The consequences of failure of such structural material and subsequent redistribution of stresses into or additional loads imposed on the remaining structure must be considered.

1.4.8 In particular, all longitudinally continuous material will be fully effective in tension whereas this may not be so in compression due to a low buckling capability. In this case, it may be necessary to derive and apply different hull girder section moduli to the hogging and sagging bending moment cases.

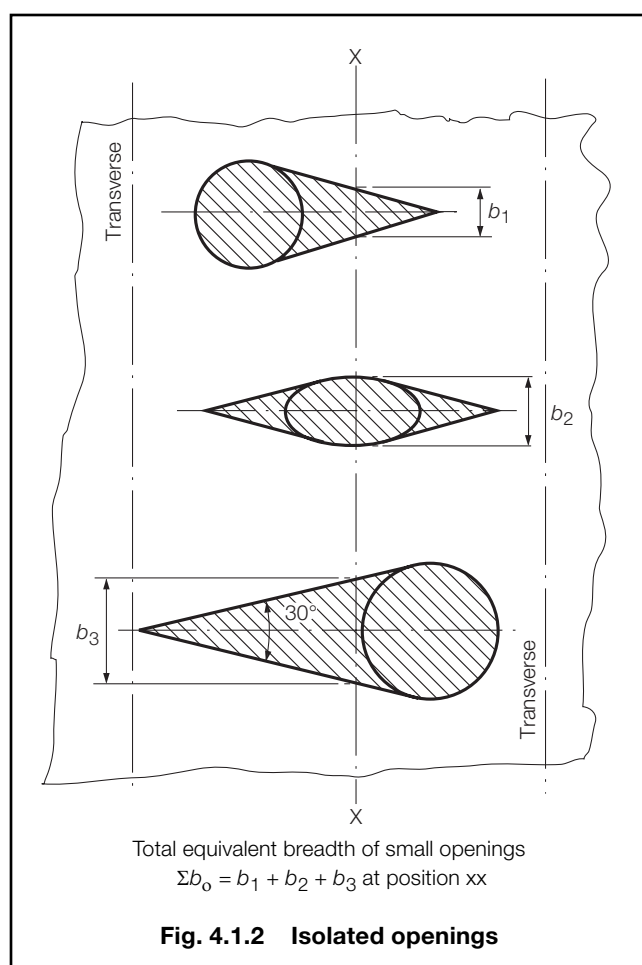
1.4.9 Openings in decks, longitudinal bulkheads and other longitudinal effective material having a length in the fore and aft directions exceeding  $0,1B$  m or 2,5 m or a breadth exceeding 1,2 m or  $0,04B$  m, whichever is the lesser, are in all cases to be deducted from the sectional areas used in the section modulus calculation.

1.4.10 Openings smaller than stated in 1.4.9, including manholes, need not be deducted provided they are isolated and the sum of their breadths or shadow area breadths, see 1.4.13, in one transverse section does not reduce the section modulus at deck or bottom by more than 3 per cent.

1.4.11 The expression  $0,06 (B_1 - \Sigma b_1)$ , where  $B_1$  equals the breadth of the ship at the section considered and  $\Sigma b_1$  equals the sum of breadths of deductible openings, may be used for deck openings in lieu of the 3 per cent limitation of reduction of section modulus in 1.4.10.

1.4.12 Where a large number of openings are proposed in any transverse space, special consideration will be required.

1.4.13 Where calculating deduction-free openings, the openings are assumed to have longitudinal extensions as shown by the shaded areas in Fig. 4.1.2. The shadow area is obtained by drawing two tangent lines to an opening angle of 30°. The section to be considered is to be perpendicular to the centreline of the ship and is to result in the maximum deduction in each transverse space.



1.4.14 Isolated openings in longitudinals or longitudinal girders need not be deducted if their depth does not exceed 25 per cent of the web depth or 75 mm, whichever is the lesser.

1.4.15 Openings are considered isolated if they are spaced more than 1 m apart.

1.4.16 A reduction for drainage holes and scallops in beams and girders, etc., is not necessary so long as the global section modulus at deck or keel is reduced by no more than 0,5 per cent.

## 1.5 General

1.5.1 The Level 1 assessment procedures specified in Lloyd's Register's (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') Structural Detail Design Guide for fatigue design assessment, **FDA**, are to be generally applied to the construction details of all ships.

## 1.6 Direct calculations

1.6.1 Direct calculations using finite element analysis may be necessary for ships with complicated longitudinal structural arrangements such as ships:

- of novel design;
- with significant discontinuous longitudinal material;
- with large deck openings, or where warping stresses in excess of 14,7 N/mm<sup>2</sup> are likely to occur;
- with large openings in the side shell, especially in way of the sheerstrake.

## Section 2 Hull girder strength

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 Longitudinal strength calculations are to be submitted for all ships with a Rule length,  $L_R$ , exceeding 50 m and are to cover the range of operating conditions proposed in order to determine the required hull girder strength. The still water, wave and dynamic bending moments and shear forces are to be calculated in accordance with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 4.

2.1.2 For ships of ordinary hull form with a Rule length,  $L_R$ , less than 50 m, the minimum hull girder strength requirements are generally satisfied by scantlings obtained from local strength requirements. However, longitudinal strength calculations may be required by LR, dependent upon the form, constructional arrangement and proposed loading.

### 2.2 Bending strength

2.2.1 The effective geometric properties of all critical transverse sections along the length of the ship are to be calculated directly from the dimensions of the section using only effective material elements which contribute to the global longitudinal strength irrespective of the grades of steel incorporated in the construction, see 1.4.

2.2.2 Where higher tensile is fitted to satisfy global strength requirements, the extent of higher tensile steel is to be as specified in Ch 2,1.6.3. Where a mix of steel grades is used for plating and associated stiffeners, then the lower of the steel grades is to be used for the derivation of the permissible stresses, see 2.2.3.

# Hull Girder Strength

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 4

Section 2

2.2.3 The longitudinal strength of the ship is to satisfy the following criteria for the hogging and sagging conditions:

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_B &< \sigma_p \\ \sigma_D &< \sigma_p \\ \sigma_{ws} &< f_{\sigma ws} \sigma_o(MS)\end{aligned}$$

where

$\sigma_p$  = maximum permissible hull vertical bending stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\sigma_p = f_{\sigma hg} f_{hts} \sigma_o$   
 $f_{\sigma hg}$  = limiting hull bending stress coefficient, derived as follows:

- (i) from  $0,3L_R$  to  $0,7L_R$   
 $f_{\sigma hg} = 0,75$
- (ii) for continuous longitudinal structural members aft of  $0,3L_R$  and forward of  $0,7L_R$   
 $f_{\sigma hg} = 0,319 + 2,311 x/L_R - 2,974 (x/L_R)^2$

where

$x$  = the distance, in metres, from the F.P. for locations within the forward end of  $L_R$  and from the A.P. for locations within the aft end of  $L_R$

$f_{\sigma ws} = 1,2$ , limiting working stress coefficient

NOTE

the  $\sigma_{ws}$  criterion may be relaxed if it can be demonstrated that either:

- (i) a continuous fatigue control monitoring system is to be adopted for the in-service life of the ship
- (ii) a fatigue design assessment procedure is applied which demonstrates that a higher limiting working stress coefficient,  $f_{\sigma ws}$ , may be applied

$\sigma_o(MS)$  = specified yield stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, for mild steel

$\sigma_B$ ,  $\sigma_D$  and  $\sigma_{ws}$  are given in Table 4.2.1

$f_{hts}$  and  $\sigma_o$  are defined in 1.3.1.

**Table 4.2.1 Longitudinal component stresses**

| Component stress type                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Nominal stress (N/mm <sup>2</sup> )                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Hull girder bending stress at strength deck, see Note 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | $\sigma_D = \frac{M_R}{1000Z_D}$                    |
| Hull girder bending stress at keel, see Note 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | $\sigma_B = \frac{M_R}{1000Z_B}$                    |
| Hull girder bending stress range, see Note 2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | $\sigma_{ws} = \frac{M_{WHog} - M_{WSag}}{1000Z_D}$ |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                     |
| $M_R$ = Rule bending moment, in kNm, given in Pt 5, Ch 4,3.10<br>$M_{WHog}$ = hogging value of $M_W$ , in kNm, given in Pt 5, Ch 4,3.3<br>$M_{WSag}$ = sagging value of $M_W$ , in kNm, given in Pt 5, Ch 4,3.3<br>$Z_D$ = actual section modulus at deck, in m <sup>3</sup><br>$Z_B$ = actual section modulus at keel, in m <sup>3</sup> |                                                     |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. The hogging and sagging bending moments are to be considered.<br>2. The stress range at the keel or other longitudinally effective material should be used if it is greater than the stress range at the strength deck.                                                                                                |                                                     |

2.2.4 Special consideration will be given to increasing the permissible stress outside  $0,3L_R$  to  $0,7L_R$  provided that sufficient buckling checks are carried out.

2.2.5 The requirements for ships of special or unusual design and for special operations will be individually considered.

2.2.6 Where different grades of steel are used then it should be ensured that the design stress in each structural member is less than the permissible hull vertical bending stress, i.e.

$$\sigma_{hg} < \sigma_p$$

where

$\sigma_{hg}$  is given in 2.2.7

$\sigma_p$  is given in 2.2.3.

2.2.7 The design stress due to hull girder bending,  $\sigma_{hg}$ , for each structural member is given by

$$\sigma_{hg} = \left( \frac{M_R}{1000Z_i} \right) \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$Z_i$  = actual section modulus at structural element being considered, in m<sup>3</sup>

$M_R$  is given in Table 4.2.1.

## 2.3 Shear strength

2.3.1 The shear strength of the all ships is to satisfy the requirements given in this Section.

2.3.2 For ships with large openings in the side shell and or a complex arrangement of longitudinal bulkheads and decks is proposed, shear flow calculations or direct calculation may be required.

2.3.3 Where shear flow calculation procedures other than those available within ShipRight are employed, the requirements of Ch 3,1.4 are to be complied with.

2.3.4 The assessment of still water shear stresses is to take into consideration the effectiveness of the following:

- continuous superstructures;
- the sizes and arrangements of window and door openings;
- access openings or cut-outs in side shell, longitudinal bulkheads, etc.

2.3.5 The shear strength of the ship at any position along the length is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\frac{|Q_R| A_z}{I \delta_o} \leq \tau_p$$

where

$\delta_o$  is to be taken as the minimum value of  $\delta_i$ , and

$\tau_p$  = maximum permissible shear stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$$= f_{\tau hg} \tau_o$$

$f_{\tau hg} = 0,75 f_{hts}$ , limiting hull shear stress coefficient

$Q_R$  = Rule shear force, in kN, determined from Pt 5, Ch 4,3.10

$I$  = the inertia of the hull about the transverse neutral axis at the section concerned, in m<sup>4</sup>

$A_z$  = the first moment of area of the longitudinal members about the neutral axis, in m<sup>3</sup>

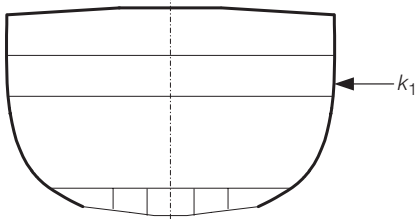
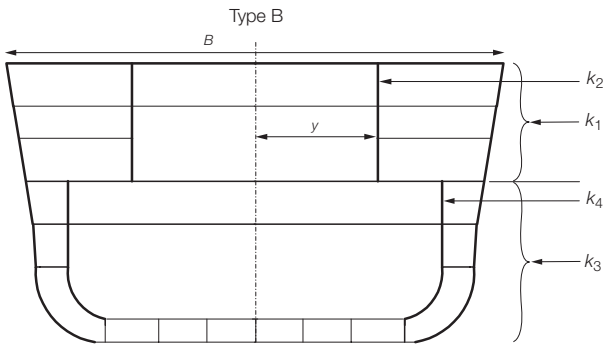
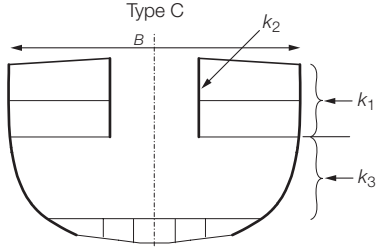


## Hull Girder Strength

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 4

Section 2

Table 4.2.2  $k_i$  factors

| Hull configuration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | $k_i$ factors                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Type A</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>Member 1<br/> <math>k_1 = 0,5</math></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <p>Type B</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <p>Member 1<br/> <math>k_1 = 0,04 \frac{A_1}{A_2} + 0,2 \left( \frac{y}{B} - 0,19 \right) + 0,25</math></p> <p>Member 2<br/> <math>k_2 = -0,04 \frac{A_1}{A_2} - 0,2 \left( \frac{y}{B} - 0,19 \right) + 0,25</math></p> <p>Member 3<br/> <math>k_3 = -0,01 \frac{A_3}{A_4} + 0,25</math></p> <p>Member 4<br/> <math>k_4 = 0,01 \frac{A_3}{A_4} + 0,25</math></p> |
| <p>Type C</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Member 1<br/> <math>k_1 = 0,04 \frac{A_1}{A_2} + 0,2 \left( \frac{y}{B} - 0,19 \right) + 0,25</math></p> <p>Member 2<br/> <math>k_2 = -0,04 \frac{A_1}{A_2} - 0,2 \left( \frac{y}{B} - 0,19 \right) + 0,25</math></p> <p>Member 3<br/> <math>k_3 = 0,5</math></p>                                                                                              |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <p>i = structural index for different hull configurations<br/>         = 1 or 3, the side shell at the section under consideration<br/>         = 2 or 4, the longitudinal bulkheads at the section of consideration<br/> <math>A_T</math> = half the total effective shear area at the section under consideration, in cm<sup>2</sup>, <math>A_T = \Sigma A_i</math><br/> <math>A_i</math> = the area of structural member i at the section under consideration, in cm<sup>2</sup><br/>         In the event of part of the structural member being non-vertical <math>A_i</math> is to be calculated using the projected area in the vertical direction, see Fig. 4.2.2<br/>         y is the distance of structural member 2 from the centreline<br/>         B is given in 1.3.1</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <p>NOTES</p> <p>1. For hull configurations not included above, <math>k_i</math> factors are to be specially considered.</p> <p>2. Where it is necessary to increase the thickness of the side shell or longitudinal bulkhead(s) to meet these requirements, the original thicknesses are to be used in the calculation of the cross-sectional areas <math>A_i</math>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

Only longitudinally effective members that lie between the vertical level being considered and the vertical extremity are to be included

$$\delta_i = \frac{t_i}{k_i}$$

i = structural member index for the hull configuration under consideration, see Table 4.2.2

$t_i$  = the plate thickness of the structural member at the vertical level and section under consideration, in mm

$k_i$  = factors determined from Table 4.2.2 for the hull configuration under consideration

$f_{hts}$  and  $\tau_o$  are defined in 1.3.1.

2.3.6 The design shear stress for each structural member,  $\tau_{hg}$ , due to hull girder shear forces is given by

$$\tau_{hg} = \frac{IQ_R |A_z|}{I \delta_i}$$

where

$Q_R$ ,  $A_z$ ,  $I$  and  $\delta_i$  are given in 2.3.5.

2.3.7 Where a plate is tapered, the permissible combined shear stress is not to be exceeded at any point in way of the taper, see Fig. 4.2.1.

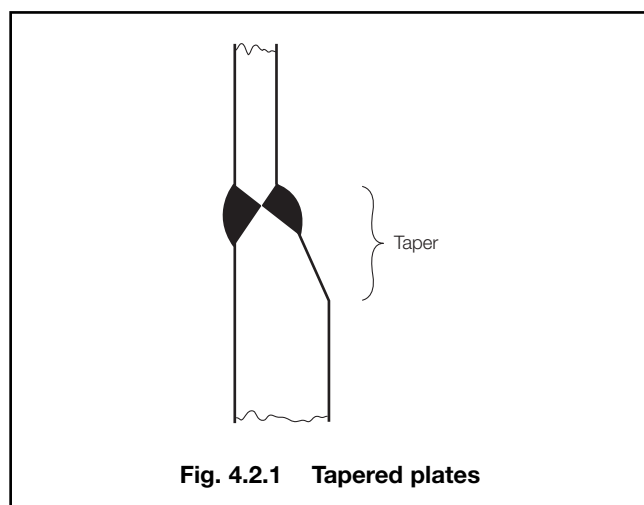


Fig. 4.2.1 Tapered plates

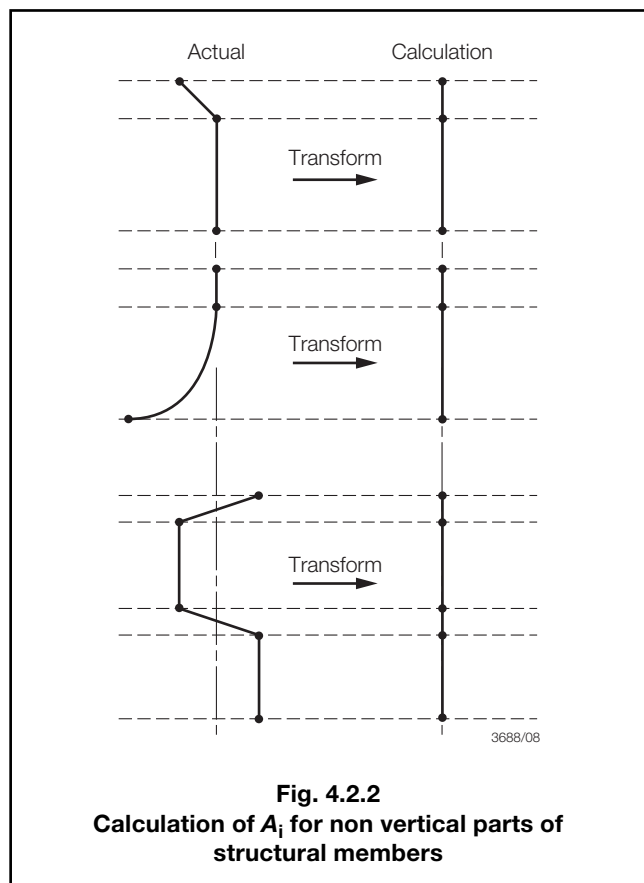


Fig. 4.2.2  
Calculation of  $A_i$  for non vertical parts of structural members

## 2.4 Torsional strength

2.4.1 Torsional stresses are typically small for mono-hulls of ordinary form and can generally be ignored.

2.4.2 The calculation of torsional stresses and/or deflections may be required when considering ships with large deck openings, unusual form or proportions, or special operating modes which induce significant torsional stresses. Calculations may in general be required to be carried out using direct calculation procedures. Such calculations are to be submitted in accordance with 1.5.

## 2.5 Superstructures global strength

2.5.1 The effectiveness of the superstructure in absorbing hull girder bending loads is to be established where the first tier of the superstructure extends within  $0,4L_R$  amidships and where:

$$l_1 > b_1 + 3h_1$$

where

$l_1$  = length of first tier, in metres

$b_1$  = breadth of first tier, in metres

$h_1$  = 'tween deck height of first tier, in metres.

2.5.2 For superstructures with one or two tiers extending outboard to the ship's side shell, the effectiveness in absorbing hull girder bending loads in the uppermost effective tier may be assessed by the following factor:

$$\eta_s = \frac{7((\varepsilon - 5) \gamma^4 + 94(5 - \varepsilon) \gamma^3 + 2800(\varepsilon - 5,8) \gamma^2 + 27660(9 - \varepsilon) \gamma) f(\lambda, N)}{10^{-7}}$$

where

$$f(1, N = 1) = 1$$

$$f(\lambda, N = 2) = 0,90\lambda^3 - 2,17\lambda^2 + 1,73\lambda + 0,50$$

and

$$N = 1 \text{ if } l_2 < 0,7l_1$$

$$= 2 \text{ if } l_2 \geq 0,7l_1$$

$$\lambda = \frac{l_w}{L_R} \text{ or } 1, \text{ whichever is less}$$

$$\varepsilon = \frac{b_1}{h_1} \text{ or } 5, \text{ whichever is less}$$

$$\gamma = \frac{l_w}{h_1} \text{ or } 25, \text{ whichever is less}$$

$$l_w = l_1 \text{ for } N = 1$$

$$= (2l_1 + l_2)/3 \text{ for } N = 2$$

$L_R$  is defined in 1.2.1, in metres

$l_1, b_1, h_1$  are defined in 2.5.1, in metres

$l_2$  = length of second tier, in metres.

2.5.3 The design stress due to hull girder bending,  $\sigma_{hg}$ , in the uppermost effective tier at side may be derived according to the following formula:

$$\sigma_{hg} = \frac{\eta_s M_R}{1000Z_s} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$M_R$  = hull girder bending moment at amidships due to sagging as determined in Pt 5, Ch 4,5, in kNm

$Z_s$  = section modulus at the structural element being considered, in  $m^3$ . The section modulus is to include the superstructure tiers, assuming the tiers to be  $\eta_s$  effective.

$\eta_s$  = as defined in 2.5.2.

2.5.4 The stresses in the superstructure decks and sides are to be checked against buckling in accordance with 2.6. These stresses should also comply with the stress criteria in 2.2.3.

2.5.5 The uppermost effective tier may need to fulfil the requirements for strength deck when the following applies:

$$\eta_s > \left(1 + \frac{Z_0 h}{I_{100}}\right)^{-1}$$

where

$\eta_s$  is defined in 2.5.2

$Z_0$  = section modulus of hull only at hull upper deck, in  $m^3$

$I_{100}$  = moment of inertia of hull and effective tiers, assuming tiers to be 100 per cent effective, in  $m^4$

$h$  = height from hull upper deck to uppermost effective tier, in metres.

## 2.6 Buckling strength

2.6.1 The buckling requirements in Ch 2,3 are to be applied to plate panels and longitudinals subject to hull girder compression and shear stresses. The design stresses are to be based on the design values of still water and wave bending moments and shear forces and are given in 2.2.4 and 2.3.6. The design factors of safety are given in Chapter 5.

2.6.2 When a Level 2 extreme strength assessment is applied, the Owner may specify that the buckling assessment of plate panels subject to compressive stresses is not required. In this case the buckling requirements of Ch 2,3.3 may be relaxed. The requirements of Ch 2,3.6 for shear buckling and the remainder of Ch 2,3 must always be complied with.

## Section 3 Extreme Strength Assessment, ESA

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 The extreme hull girder strength of the ship is to be adequate to withstand wave loads that have a very low probability of occurring during the ship's service life at sea.

3.1.2 The Owner may specify that an extreme strength assessment is not required. In this case, the extreme strength **ESA1** or **ESA2** notation and all other notations which require the extreme strength notation will not be assigned.

3.1.3 The extreme strength capability of the ship to survive severe sea conditions can be assessed using fairly simple or more advanced analysis procedures. The level of complexity and thoroughness of the analysis procedure is reflected in the extreme strength assessment notation level assigned.

3.1.4 Two assessment levels are available for the extreme hull girder strength assessment notation. These are summarised below:

#### ESA1 – Level 1

- Extreme hull girder strength considered at a minimum of three longitudinal locations.
- Capability assessed using elastic analysis, limiting stress criteria and buckling factors of safety.

#### ESA2 – Level 2

- Extreme hull girder strength considered at all critical longitudinal locations.
- Capability assessed using elasto-plastic ultimate strength methods to determine extreme hull girder strength.

3.1.5 For the **ESA1** assessment, the extreme hull girder strength is to be verified using elastic theory, based on the actual section moduli and determination of the buckling strength to resist the global hull girder loads. The assessment criteria are given in 3.3 and 3.4. Alternatively the strength may be verified using ultimate strength methods.

3.1.6 For the **ESA2** assessment, the extreme hull girder strength is to be verified using ultimate strength methods based on non linear stress strain curves which include the stress strain relationship in the post buckling phase. The assessment criteria are given in 3.5.

## 3.2 Determination of critical sections

3.2.1 A critical section is defined as a transverse cross-section of the hull where the hull girder bending or shear section structural properties are lowest. Typically there will be critical sections in way of machinery spaces, large deck openings and at the ends of superstructure blocks.

3.2.2 The effective geometric properties of critical sections are to be calculated in accordance with 2.2.1 and 1.4. In defining the longitudinal position of each critical section, the shadow areas specified in 1.4.13 are to be considered together with the proximity of other openings, see 1.4.15.

3.2.3 For the **ESA1** assessment, critical sections are to be considered at approximately the longitudinal positions  $L_R/4$ ,  $L_R/2$  and  $3L_R/4$ . Other longitudinal positions may also need to be considered depending on the structural arrangement of the ship.

3.2.4 For the **ESA2** assessment, critical sections are to be considered at all positions along the length. Typically it is expected that the local critical transverse section between adjacent main watertight bulkheads will be evaluated.

## 3.3 Bending strength – Simplified assessment method ESA1

3.3.1 If the simplified analysis method is adopted for extreme strength assessment, the longitudinal strength of the ship at each critical section is to satisfy the following criteria for the hogging and sagging conditions:

$$\sigma_{BEX} < \sigma_p$$

$$\sigma_{DEX} < \sigma_p$$

where

$\sigma_p$  is the maximum permissible hull vertical bending stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$$= f_{\sigma EX} \sigma_o$$

$f_{\sigma EX} = 0,9$ , limiting hull bending stress coefficient

$\sigma_{DEX}$  is the extreme hull girder bending stress at strength deck

$$= \frac{M_{REX}}{1000Z_D}$$

$\sigma_{BEX}$  is the extreme hull girder bending stress at keel

$$= \frac{M_{REX}}{1000Z_B}$$

$M_{REX}$  = extreme vertical wave and still water bending moment, in kNm, given in Pt 5, Ch 4,4.7

$Z_D$  = actual section modulus at deck, in m<sup>3</sup>

$Z_B$  = actual section modulus at keel, in m<sup>3</sup>

$f_{hts}$  and  $\sigma_o$  are defined in 1.3.1.

3.3.2 The design extreme stress due to the extreme hull vertical bending moment,  $\sigma_{ex}$ , for each structural member is given by

$$\sigma_{ex} = \frac{M_{REX}}{1000Z_i}$$

where

$Z_i$  = actual section modulus at structural element being considered, in m<sup>3</sup>

$M_{REX}$  is defined in 3.3.1.

3.3.3 It is not necessary to satisfy the plate panel buckling requirements for compressive stresses provided that shear buckling of plate panels and stiffened panels and all buckling modes of failure for longitudinal girders and stiffeners are satisfied. The design factors of safety are given in Chapter 5.

3.3.4 Consequently, the following sections on buckling control are to be complied with, based on compressive stresses derived in accordance with 3.3.2:

- Secondary stiffening in direction of compression, Ch 2,3.7.
- Secondary stiffening perpendicular to direction of compression, Ch 2,3.8.
- Buckling of primary members, Ch 2,3.9.

## 3.4 Shear strength – Simplified assessment method ESA1

3.4.1 If the simplified analysis method is adopted for extreme strength assessment, the shear strength of the ship at each critical section is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\frac{|Q_{REX}| A_z}{I \delta_0} \leq \tau_p$$

where

$\delta_0$  is to be taken as the minimum value of  $\delta_i$

$\tau_p$  = maximum permissible mean shear stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$$= f_{\tau EX} \tau_o$$

$f_{\tau EX} = 0,9$ , limiting hull shear stress coefficient

$Q_{REX}$  = extreme vertical wave and still water shear force, in kN, at the appropriate longitudinal position determined from Pt 5, Ch 4,4.7

$A_z$ ,  $I$  and  $\delta_i$ , are given in 2.3.5

$f_{hts}$  and  $\tau_o$  are defined in 1.3.1.

3.4.2 The design extreme shear stress due to extreme hull vertical shear forces for each structural member,  $\tau_{ex}$ , due to hull girder is given by

$$\tau_{ex} = \frac{|Q_{REX}| A_z}{I \delta_i} \leq \tau_p$$

where

$Q_{REX}$  is given in 3.4.1

$A_z$ ,  $I$  and  $\delta_i$  are given in 3.4.1.

3.4.3 The following Sections on buckling control are to be complied with based on shear stresses derived in accordance with 3.4.2:

- Plating subject to pure in-plane shear, Ch 2,3.3.
- Shear buckling of stiffened panels, Ch 2,3.6.

The design factors of safety are given in Chapter 5.

## 3.5 Bending and shear strength – Ultimate strength analysis method ESA2

3.5.1 The extreme strength capability of the hull girder may be assessed using a direct calculation ultimate strength analysis method. In this case the longitudinal strength of the ship at each critical section is to satisfy the following criteria for hogging and sagging conditions:

$$M_{REX} < f_{UEX} M_{UEX}$$

$$Q_{REX} < f_{UEX} Q_{UEX}$$

where

$M_{REX}$  = extreme vertical wave and still water bending moment, in kNm, given in Pt 5, Ch 4,4.7

$M_{UEX}$  = ultimate bending strength of the critical section, in kNm

$Q_{REX}$  = extreme vertical wave and still water shear force, in kN, at the appropriate longitudinal position determined from Pt 5, Ch 4,4.7

$Q_{UEX}$  = ultimate shear strength of the critical section, in kN

$f_{UEX} = 0,9$ , limiting ultimate strength coefficient for extreme hull girder strength assessment.

3.5.2 The ultimate strength of each critical section is to be derived by direct calculation using elasto-plastic analysis methods.

3.5.3 If the methods used to derive the ultimate strength do not include allowance for shear loading, then the shear strength requirements of 3.4 are to be applied.

## ■ Section 4 Residual Strength Assessment, RSA

### 4.1 Application

4.1.1 This Section gives the requirements and procedures to be adopted for the application of the residual strength assessment procedure.

4.1.2 The following definition gives the basic default mission statement for the residual strength capability. The ship is required to have a 95 per cent probability of surviving for 96 hours, after sustaining structural damage as a consequence of military action, collision or grounding, in wave conditions that have a probability of occurring for 80 per cent of the time.

4.1.3 Three assessment levels are available for the residual strength assessment notation as detailed in 1.2.

4.1.4 For the **RSA1** residual strength assessments the residual strength after damage is to be verified using the simplified assessment method given in 4.4 and 4.5. This uses elastic theory, based on the remaining section moduli and area after damage, and determination of the buckling strength to resist the global hull girder loads.

4.1.5 For the **RSA2** residual strength assessments, the residual strength after damage is to be verified using the ultimate strength analysis method which determines the ultimate strength of the hull after damage using direct calculation methods. The assessment criteria are given in 4.6.

4.1.6 For the **RSA3** residual strength assessments, the residual strength after damage is to be verified using a recognised finite element code suitable for this type of analysis. The failure will be determined by the criteria implicit in the finite element code chosen. Several assessment codes are available and the calculation should be performed by a competent and experienced body with relevant experience.

4.1.7 All critical sections to be assessed are to be considered for all damage scenarios, irrespective of whether the critical section is damaged or not.

4.1.8 For damage scenarios that involve flooding of the ship, the effects of the flood water on the still water shear forces and bending moments are to be considered in the residual strength assessment at all critical locations whether they are damaged or not. In the latter case the capability of the undamaged critical section will be based on the structural capability of the intact section.

### 4.2 Extent of damage and analysis

4.2.1 The extent of damage to be considered is defined below. Unless otherwise stipulated by the Owner it will not be necessary to consider the consequences of combining damage extents from different weapon threats or damage scenarios.

4.2.2 The extent of damage due to military threats is defined as the minimum of the shock or blast damage that is likely to result from a specified weapon threat. The weapon threat may be specified by any of the following:

- the residual strength notation threat level, see Pt 4, Ch 2,7;
- the Owner;
- as a direct consequence of requirements of other notations.

4.2.3 Collision damage to the side shell. The standard damage extent is to be taken as:

#### Level A

- 5 m longitudinally between bulkheads
- from the waterline up to the main deck
- inboard for B/5 m.

#### Level B and C

- 5 m longitudinally anywhere including bulkheads
- from the bilge keel up to the main deck
- inboard for B/5 m.

4.2.4 Grounding or raking damage to the bottom structure. The standard grounding damage extent is to be taken as:

#### Level A

- length of 5 m anywhere forward of midships
- upwards for 1 m or to the underside of the inner bottom, whichever is less
- breadth of 2,5 m.

#### Level B and C

- length of  $0,1L_R$  anywhere forward of midships
- upwards for 1 m or to the underside of the inner bottom, whichever is less
- breadth of 5 m.

4.2.5 For the Levels A and B residual strength assessment, the residual strength is to be considered at a minimum of three critical sections for each anticipated damage extent. The critical sections are to be taken in the midship region and near each quarter length location. For the Level C residual strength assessment, the residual strength is to be considered at all critical sections along the length for each anticipated damage extent.

4.2.6 The damage requirements used for the residual strength assessment should be clearly identified in the Loading Manual or Stability Information Book.

## 4.3 Determination of critical sections

4.3.1 The effective geometric properties of critical transverse sections in way of the damaged area are to be calculated in accordance with 2.1 and 1.4. In defining the longitudinal position of each critical section, the shadow areas associated with the damage and other openings specified in 1.5.3 are to be considered together with the proximity of other openings, see 1.5.5. The effectiveness of the superstructure may also need to be re-evaluated.

4.3.2 Due attention is to be made to the effectiveness of structure which may have been plastically deformed, as a consequence of the damage, on the ultimate strength after damage.

4.3.3 For Level 1 and 2 residual strength assessments, damaged areas are to be considered at approximately the longitudinal positions  $L_R/4$ ,  $L_R/2$  and  $3L_R/4$ . The geometric properties of critical transverse sections in way of these damaged areas are to be considered. Other longitudinal positions may also need to be considered depending on the internal arrangement or structural arrangement of the ship or the Owner's required residual strength specification.

4.3.4 For Level 3 residual strength assessment, damaged areas are to be considered at all positions along the length. Typically, it is expected that the local critical transverse section between adjacent main watertight bulkheads will be evaluated.

## 4.4 Bending strength – Simplified assessment method RSA1

4.4.1 If the simplified analysis method is adopted for residual strength assessment, the longitudinal strength of the ship at each critical section is to satisfy the following criteria for the hogging and sagging conditions:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_{BRS} &< \sigma_p \\ \sigma_{DRS} &< \sigma_p \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\sigma_p \text{ is the maximum permissible hull vertical bending stress, in N/mm}^2$$

$$= f_{\sigma RS} \sigma_o$$

$$f_{\sigma RS} = 0,9, \text{ limiting hull bending stress coefficient}$$

$$\sigma_{DRS} \text{ is the hull girder bending stress at strength deck}$$

$$= \frac{M_{RRS}}{1000 Z_{DRS}}$$

$$\sigma_{BRS} \text{ is the hull girder bending stress at keel}$$

$$= \frac{M_{RRS}}{1000 Z_{BRS}}$$

$$M_{RRS} = \text{residual strength design vertical bending moment, in kNm, given in Pt 5, Ch 4.5.7}$$

$$Z_{DRS} = \text{actual section modulus at deck of damaged section, in m}^3, \text{ see also 4.1.8}$$

$$Z_{BRS} = \text{actual section modulus at keel of damaged section, in m}^3, \text{ see also 4.1.8}$$

$$f_{hts} \text{ and } \sigma_o \text{ are defined in 1.3.1.}$$

4.4.2 The design residual strength stress due to the Residual strength design vertical bending moment,  $\sigma_{rs}$ , for each structural member is given by:

$$\sigma_{rs} = \frac{M_{RRS}}{1000 Z_i}$$

where

$Z_i$  = actual section modulus at structural element being considered, in  $m^3$

$M_{RRS}$  is defined in 4.4.1.

4.4.3 It is not necessary to satisfy the plate panel buckling requirements for compressive stresses provided that shear buckling of plate panels and all buckling modes of failure for longitudinal girders and stiffeners are satisfied. The design factors of safety are given in Chapter 5.

4.4.4 Consequently, the following Sections on buckling control are to be complied with, based on compressive stresses derived in accordance with 4.4.2:

- Secondary stiffening in direction of compression, Ch 2,3.7.
- Secondary stiffening perpendicular to direction of compression, Ch 2,3.8.
- Buckling of primary members, Ch 2,3.9.

## 4.5 Shear strength – Simplified assessment method RSA1

4.5.1 If the simplified analysis method is adopted for residual strength assessment, the shear strength of the ship after damage at each damaged critical section is to satisfy the following criterion:

$$\frac{|Q_{RRS}| A_z}{I \delta_o} \leq \tau_p$$

where

$\delta_o$  is to be taken as the minimum value of  $\delta_i$ ,

and

$\tau_p$  = maximum permissible mean shear stress, in  $N/mm^2$

$= f_{\tau EX} \tau_o$

$f_{\tau EX} = 0,9$ , limiting hull shear stress coefficient

$Q_{RRS}$  = residual strength design shear force, in kN, at the appropriate longitudinal position determined from Pt 5, Ch 4.5.7

$A_z$ ,  $I$  and  $\delta_i$  are to be calculated in accordance with the method in 2.3 for the damaged section, see also 4.1.8.

$f_{hts}$  and  $\tau_o$  are defined in 1.3.1.

4.5.2 The design extreme shear stress due to residual strength design shear force for each structural member,  $\tau_{rs}$ , is given by

$$\tau_{rs} = \frac{|Q_{RRS}| A_z}{I \delta_o}$$

where

$Q_{RRS}$  is given in 4.5.1

$A_z$ ,  $I$  and  $\delta_i$  are given in 2.3.5.

4.5.3 The following Sections on buckling control are to be complied with based on shear stresses derived in accordance with 4.5.2:

- (a) Plating subject to pure in-plane shear, Ch 2,3.3.
- (b) Shear buckling of stiffened panels, Ch 2,3.6.

The design factors of safety are given in Chapter 5.

#### **4.6 Bending and shear strength – Ultimate strength analysis method RSA2**

4.6.1 The residual strength capability of the damaged hull girder may be assessed using a direct calculation ultimate strength analysis method. In this case the longitudinal strength of the ship at each critical section is to satisfy the following criteria for the hogging and sagging conditions:

$$\begin{aligned} M_{RRS} &< f_{URS} M_{URS} \\ Q_{RRS} &< f_{URS} Q_{URS} \end{aligned}$$

where

$M_{RRS}$  = residual strength design vertical bending moment, in kNm, given in Pt 5, Ch 4,5.7

$M_{URS}$  = ultimate bending strength of the damaged critical section, in kNm, *see also* 4.1.8

$Q_{RRS}$  = residual strength design shear force, in kN, at the appropriate longitudinal position determined from Pt 5, Ch 4,5.7

$Q_{URS}$  = ultimate shear strength of the damaged critical section, in kN

$f_{URS}$  = 0,9, limiting ultimate strength coefficient for residual strength assessment.

4.6.2 The ultimate strength of each critical section is to be derived by direct calculation using elasto-plastic analysis methods.

4.6.3 If the methods used to derive the ultimate strength do not include allowance for shear loading, then the shear strength requirements of 4.5 are to be applied.





# Structural Design Factors

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 5

Sections 1 &amp; 2

## Section

- 1 **Structural design factors**
- 2 **Scantling determination for NS1 ships**
- 3 **Scantling determination for NS2 and NS3 ships**

### Section 1 Structural design factors

#### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to ships of steel construction.

#### 1.2 General

1.2.1 This Chapter gives the allowable design criteria to be used to assess the structure.

1.2.2 These design criteria are to be used in the design formulae in Ch 3,2 as the design criteria for the scantling determination of NS2 and NS3 ships.

1.2.3 These criteria are also to be used when direct calculation methods are proposed as a supplement to the scantling determination procedures for all ships including NS1 ships.

1.2.4 Where higher tensile steel is used in the ship structure special consideration is to be given to the fatigue performance in accordance with Ch 6,2.5.

#### 1.3 Higher tensile steel

1.3.1 Where higher tensile steels are used, the yield stress is to be adjusted by a factor  $f_{hts}$ , where  $f_{hts}$  is to be taken from Table 5.1.1.

**Table 5.1.1 High tensile steel stress correction factor  $f_{hts}$**

| Minimum yield stress $\sigma_o$<br>N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                                                     | $f_{hts}$ factor                            |                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                          | Global loads                                | Local loads                                |
| 235                                                                                                                      | 1,000                                       | 1,00                                       |
| 265                                                                                                                      | 0,964                                       | 1,00                                       |
| 315                                                                                                                      | 0,956                                       | 1,00                                       |
| 355                                                                                                                      | 0,919                                       | 1,00                                       |
| >390                                                                                                                     | $0,886 \left( \frac{390}{\sigma_o} \right)$ | $0,91 \left( \frac{390}{\sigma_o} \right)$ |
| NOTES                                                                                                                    |                                             |                                            |
| 1. Intermediate values may be obtained by linear interpolation.                                                          |                                             |                                            |
| 2. The higher tensile steel stress correction factor $f_{hts}$ is applicable for NS1 ships as well as NS2 and NS3 ships. |                                             |                                            |

1.3.2 The  $f_{hts}$  factor is to be separately calculated for stresses that are a direct consequence of global loads and for stresses that are a direct consequence of local loads, as indicated in Table 5.1.1.

### Section 2 Scantling determination for NS1 ships

#### 2.1 Design criteria

2.1.1 The local scantling requirements of higher tensile steel plating, longitudinals, stiffeners and girders may be based on a  $k_s$  factor determined as follows:

$$k_s = \frac{235}{\sigma_o}$$

or 0,66 whichever is greater

where

$\sigma_o$  = specified minimum yield strength of material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

2.1.2 The global scantling requirements of higher tensile steel plating, stiffeners and primary members are based on a  $k_L$  factor defined as follows, see 2.1.3:

$$k_L = \frac{235}{f_{hts} \sigma_o}$$

where

$f_{hts}$  is the higher tensile steel correction factor for global loads, see 1.3.

2.1.3 Where different grades of steel are used for the plating and attached stiffeners, then the higher tensile steel factor,  $k_L$  is to be based on the lower material yield strength.

Section 3

Scantling determination for NS2 and NS3 ships

3.1 Design criteria

3.1.1 The allowable stress coefficients for plating and stiffening required by Ch 3,2 for use in plating and stiffening design equations in Ch 2,2.7 and 2.8 are to be determined as follows:

$$f_{\sigma} = f_1 f_{hts}$$

$$f_{\tau} = f_1 f_{hts}$$

$$f_{\delta} = f_1$$

where

$f_1$  is taken from Table 5.3.2 as specified by Table 5.3.1

$f_{hts}$  is the correction factor for higher tensile steel given in 1.3.

3.1.2 The buckling factors of safety for plating and stiffeners are given in Table 5.3.2 and are to be used in conjunction with the buckling requirements specified in Ch 2,3.

3.1.3 The assessment of scantling requirements to satisfy the impact or slamming pressure loads for plating and stiffening are given in Ch 3,14 and Ch 3,15.

Table 5.3.1 Specification of design criteria value  $f_1$

| Failure mode                                                                                         | Stress factor      | Column for $f_1$ in Table 5.3.2         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Plating requirements                                                                                 |                    |                                         |
| Membrane stresses                                                                                    | $f_{\sigma}$       | Use $\sigma_x$ or $\sigma_y$ column (1) |
| Local plate bending                                                                                  | $f_{\sigma}$       | Use $\sigma_b$ column                   |
| Shear stresses                                                                                       | $f_{\tau}$         | Use $\tau_{xy}$ column                  |
| Buckling, hull girder stresses                                                                       | $\lambda_{\sigma}$ | Use $\lambda_{\sigma}$ column           |
| Shear buckling, hull girder stresses                                                                 | $\lambda_{\tau}$   | Use $\lambda_{\tau}$ column             |
| Stiffener requirements                                                                               |                    |                                         |
| Section modulus                                                                                      | $f_{\sigma}$       | Use $\sigma_x$ or $\sigma_y$ column (1) |
| Web area                                                                                             | $f_{\tau}$         | Use $\tau_{xy}$ column                  |
| Inertia                                                                                              | $f_{\delta}$       | Use $f_{\delta}$ column                 |
| Buckling modes                                                                                       | $\lambda_{\sigma}$ | Use $\lambda_{\sigma}$ column           |
| NOTE<br>Use the $\sigma_x$ or $\sigma_y$ column as appropriate to the structure under consideration. |                    |                                         |

## Structural Design Factors

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 5

Section 3

**Table 5.3.2** Allowable stress factors  $f_1$  (see continuation)

| Structural item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Limiting stress and other criteria |                                                   |                                            |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Combined stress                    | Longitudinal stress or stiffener bending stresses | Shear stress in plating and stiffener webs | Local plate bending | Deflection ratio for primary members and secondary stiffeners (3) | Buckling factor (5)<br>Compressive stresses | Buckling factor (7)<br>Shear stresses |
| Normal stress descriptor                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | $\sigma_{vm}$                      | $\sigma_x$                                        | $\tau_{xy}$                                | $\sigma_b$          | $f_\delta$                                                        | $\lambda_\sigma$                            | $\lambda_\tau$                        |
| Longitudinal plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                    |                                                   |                                            |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| Bottom shell plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 0,90                               | 0,75                                              | —                                          | $f_2$               | 0,00125 (1)                                                       | 1,0                                         | —                                     |
| Inner bottom plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 0,90                               | $0,75 f_{WT}$                                     | —                                          | $f_2 f_{WT}$        | 0,00125 (1)                                                       | 1,0                                         | —                                     |
| Upper deck, outboard the line of openings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 0,90                               | 0,75                                              | —                                          | $f_2$               | 0,00100 (1)                                                       | 1,0                                         | —                                     |
| Side shell plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 0,90                               | 0,75                                              | 0,80                                       | $0,9f_2$            | 0,00125 (1)                                                       | 1,0                                         | 1,1                                   |
| Longitudinal bulkhead plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 0,90                               | 0,75                                              | 0,80                                       | $0,9f_2$            | 0,00125 (1)                                                       | 1,0                                         | 1,1                                   |
| Inner skin plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 0,90                               | 0,75                                              | 0,80                                       | $0,9f_2$            | 0,00125 (1)                                                       | 1,0                                         | 1,1                                   |
| Intermediate decks                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | —                                  | —                                                 | —                                          | 0,65                | —                                                                 | —                                           | —                                     |
| Longitudinal primary members                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                    |                                                   |                                            |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| Double bottom girders                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 0,90                               | 0,75                                              | 0,80                                       | —                   | 0,00100 (2)                                                       | 1,0                                         | 1,1                                   |
| Longitudinal girders                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | —                                  | 0,75                                              | 0,65                                       | —                   | 0,00100 (2)                                                       | 1,0                                         | 1,1                                   |
| Longitudinal stringer plating and diaphragms                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | —                                  | 0,75                                              | 0,65                                       | —                   | 0,00100 (2)                                                       | 1,0                                         | 1,1                                   |
| Longitudinal secondary stiffeners                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 0,90                               | $f_2$                                             | 0,65                                       | —                   | see above plating                                                 | 1,1 (4)                                     | —                                     |
| Other longitudinal plating and secondary stiffeners                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                    |                                                   |                                            |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| Superstructures/deckhouses (partially longitudinally effective)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 0,90                               | 0,75                                              | 0,65                                       | 0,75                | 0,00167 (1)                                                       | 1,0                                         | —                                     |
| Watertight bulkheads and internal boundaries plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 0,90                               | 0,75                                              | 0,80                                       | $f_{WT}$            | —                                                                 | 1,0                                         | 1,1                                   |
| primary members                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | —                                  | $0,90 f_{WT}$                                     | $0,90 f_{WT}$                              | —                   | $0,00100 f_{WT}(2)$                                               | 1,1                                         | —                                     |
| secondary stiffeners                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | —                                  | $0,90 f_{WT}$                                     | $0,95 f_{WT}$                              | —                   | $0,00167 f_{WT}(1)$                                               | 1,1 (4)                                     | —                                     |
| Deep tank bulkheads and internal boundaries plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 0,90                               | 0,75                                              | 0,80                                       | $0,65 f_{DT}$       | —                                                                 | 1,0                                         | 1,1                                   |
| primary members                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | —                                  | $0,75 f_{DT}$                                     | $0,75 f_{DT}$                              | —                   | $0,00080 f_{DT}(1)$                                               | 1,1                                         | —                                     |
| secondary stiffeners                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | —                                  | $0,65 f_{DT}$                                     | $0,65 f_{DT}$                              | —                   | $0,00100 f_{DT}(1)$                                               | 1,1 (4)                                     | —                                     |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                    |                                                   |                                            |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| <p><math>f_2</math> is applicable to stiffeners and plating subjected to global hull girder bending stresses and local bending stresses and is to be taken as follows:<br/>for NS2 ships</p> $f_2 = 0,9 \left( 1,83 - \frac{\sigma_{hg}}{\sigma_a} \right) \text{ but not greater than } 0,95. \text{ Note for initial design assessment } f_2 \text{ may be taken as } 0,75$ <p>for NS3 ships<br/> <math>f_2 = 0,75</math><br/> where<br/> <math>\sigma_{hg}</math> is the stress due to hull girder bending in the appropriate structural item, see Ch 4,2<br/> <math>\sigma_a</math> is the lower of:<br/> (1) allowable hull girder stress, <math>\sigma_p</math>, given in Ch 4,2.2.3<br/> (2) <math>\frac{\sigma_{cr}}{\lambda_\sigma}</math><br/> <math>\lambda_\sigma</math> is the buckling factor for this item<br/> <math>\sigma_{cr}</math> is the critical buckling stress, see Ch 2,3</p> <p>Additional design factors for deep tank and watertight bulkheads and boundaries<br/> <math>f_{DT} = 0,90</math><br/> <math>f_{WT} = 1,40</math> Note watertight plating is assessed using plastic design methods</p> |                                    |                                                   |                                            |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |

## Structural Design Factors

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 5

Section 3

Table 5.3.2 Allowable stress factors  $f_1$  (conclusion)

| Structural item                                                                                                                                                                        |                      | Limiting stress and other criteria |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Transverse and local structure                                                                                                                                                         |                      | Combined stress                    | Transverse stress or stiffener bending stress | Shear stress in plating and stiffener webs        | Local plate bending | Deflection ratio for primary members and secondary stiffeners (3) | Buckling factor (5)<br>Compressive stresses | Buckling factor (7)<br>Shear stresses |
| Normal stress descriptor                                                                                                                                                               |                      | $\sigma_{vm}$                      | $\sigma_y$                                    | $\tau_{xy}$                                       | $\sigma_b$          | $f_\delta$                                                        | $\lambda_\sigma$                            | $\lambda_\tau$                        |
| Transverse plating                                                                                                                                                                     |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| Watertight bulkheads and internal boundaries                                                                                                                                           |                      | 1,00                               | 1,00                                          | 0,80                                              | $1,00 f_{WT}$       | $0,00167 f_{WT} (1)$                                              | 1,0                                         | 1,1                                   |
| Deep tank bulkheads and boundaries                                                                                                                                                     |                      | 0,75                               | 0,65                                          | 0,65                                              | $0,65 f_{DT}$       | $0,00100 f_{DT} (1)$                                              | 1,2                                         | 1,2                                   |
| Cross deck structure at ends of major openings                                                                                                                                         |                      | 0,75                               | 0,65                                          | 0,65                                              | 0,50                | $0,00100 (1)$                                                     | 1,1                                         | 1,1                                   |
| Superstructures/deckhouses (local loads only)                                                                                                                                          |                      | —                                  | 0,75                                          | —                                                 | 0,75                | $0,00167 (1)$                                                     | —                                           | —                                     |
| Transverse primary members                                                                                                                                                             |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| Double bottom floors                                                                                                                                                                   |                      | 0,75                               | 0,65                                          | 0,65                                              | —                   | $0,00100 (2)$                                                     | 1,1                                         | 1,2                                   |
| Web frames                                                                                                                                                                             |                      | —                                  | 0,65                                          | 0,65                                              | —                   | $0,00100 (2)$                                                     | 1,1                                         | —                                     |
| Side frames                                                                                                                                                                            |                      | —                                  | 0,65                                          | 0,65                                              | —                   | $0,00100 (2)$                                                     | 1,1                                         | —                                     |
| Transverse beams                                                                                                                                                                       |                      | —                                  | 0,65                                          | 0,65                                              | —                   | $0,00100 (2)$                                                     | 1,1                                         | —                                     |
| Watertight bulkheads and internal boundaries                                                                                                                                           |                      | —                                  | $0,90 f_{WT}$                                 | $0,90 f_{WT}$                                     | —                   | $0,00100 f_{WT} (2)$                                              | 1,1                                         | —                                     |
| Deep tank bulkheads and internal boundaries                                                                                                                                            |                      | —                                  | $0,75 f_{DT}$                                 | $0,75 f_{DT}$                                     | —                   | $0,00080 f_{DT} (2)$                                              | 1,1                                         | —                                     |
| Transverse secondary stiffeners                                                                                                                                                        |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| Watertight bulkheads and internal boundaries                                                                                                                                           |                      | —                                  | $0,95 f_{WT}$                                 | $0,95 f_{WT}$                                     | —                   | see above                                                         | 1,1 (4)                                     | —                                     |
| Deep tank bulkheads and internal boundaries                                                                                                                                            |                      | —                                  | $0,65 f_{DT}$                                 | $0,65 f_{DT}$                                     | —                   | plating                                                           | 1,1 (4)                                     | —                                     |
| Other secondary stiffeners                                                                                                                                                             |                      | —                                  | 0,65                                          | 0,65                                              | —                   | —                                                                 | 1,1 (4)                                     | —                                     |
| Structure for aircraft and vehicle operation (8)<br>(Additional requirements in accordance with Pt 4, Ch 3,2)                                                                          |                      | Combined stress                    | Primary member and stiffener bending stress   | Shear stress in primary member and stiffener webs | Local plate bending | Deflection ratio for primary members and secondary stiffeners (3) | Buckling factor of safety (6)               | Buckling factor of safety (7)         |
| Normal stress descriptor                                                                                                                                                               |                      | $\sigma_{vm}$                      | $\sigma_x$ or $\sigma_y$                      | $\tau_{xy}$                                       | $\sigma_b$          | $f_\delta$                                                        | $\lambda_\sigma$                            | $\lambda_\tau$                        |
| Vehicles and aircraft parking areas                                                                                                                                                    | secondary stiffeners | —                                  | 0,75 (8)                                      | 0,75                                              | —                   | $0,00100 (1)$                                                     | —                                           | —                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                        | primary members      | —                                  | 0,60 (8)                                      | 0,60                                              | —                   | $0,00080 (2)$                                                     | —                                           | —                                     |
| Aircraft normal landing areas                                                                                                                                                          | secondary stiffeners | —                                  | 0,75 (8)                                      | 0,75                                              | —                   | $0,00100 (1)$                                                     | —                                           | —                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                        | primary members      | 0,70                               | 0,65 (8)                                      | 0,65                                              | —                   | $0,00080 (2)$                                                     | —                                           | —                                     |
| Aircraft emergency landing areas                                                                                                                                                       | secondary stiffeners | —                                  | 1,00 (8)                                      | 1,00                                              | —                   | $0,00160 (1)$                                                     | —                                           | —                                     |
|                                                                                                                                                                                        | primary members      | —                                  | 1,00 (8)                                      | 1,00                                              | —                   | $0,00100 (2)$                                                     | —                                           | —                                     |
| NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                  |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 1. Deflection ratio for secondary stiffeners, expressed as a ratio of the stiffener's span, i.e. $\delta \leq f_\delta$ span where $\delta$ is the deflection.                         |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 2. Deflection ratio for primary structure, expressed as a ratio of the primary member's span, i.e. $\delta \leq f_\delta$ span.                                                        |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 3. The deflection ratios are applicable to the primary members and secondary stiffeners attached to the specified plating areas. The ratios are not applicable to the plating.         |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 4. The buckling factor of safety for stiffeners attached to plating which is allowed to buckle in the elastic mode due to the applied loads is to be taken as 1,25, see also Ch 2,4.5. |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 5. Buckling factor of safety to be applied to the compressive stress due to global longitudinal stresses.                                                                              |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 6. Buckling factor of safety to be applied to the compressive stress due to local stresses, either vertical or transverse.                                                             |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 7. Buckling factor of safety to be applied to the shear stress.                                                                                                                        |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 8. For longitudinally effective primary structure and longitudinal stiffeners, the stress factor is to be reduced by:                                                                  |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 0% at $0,0L_R$ ,                                                                                                                                                                       |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 30% at $0,3L_R$ ,                                                                                                                                                                      |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 30% at $0,7L_R$ ,                                                                                                                                                                      |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| 0% at $1,0L_R$                                                                                                                                                                         |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |
| with intermediate values determined by interpolation.                                                                                                                                  |                      |                                    |                                               |                                                   |                     |                                                                   |                                             |                                       |

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Materials**
- 3 **Requirements for welded construction**
- 4 **Welded joints and connections**
- 5 **Construction details**
- 6 **Inspection and testing procedures**

## ■ Section 1 General

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to mono-hull ships of steel construction as defined in Pt 1, Ch 1,1.

### 1.2 General

1.2.1 This Chapter contains the general Rule requirements for the construction of steel ships using electric arc welding processes. Where alternative methods of construction are proposed, details are to be submitted for consideration by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').

1.2.2 Specific requirements containing detailed information on testing, inspection and construction details can be found in the relevant Chapters of the *Naval Ship Survey Procedures Manual*.

### 1.3 Symbols and definitions

1.3.1 The symbols and definitions used in this Chapter are defined in the appropriate Section.

### 1.4 Builder's facilities

1.4.1 The buildings used for production and storage are to be of suitable construction and equipped to provide the required environment, and are also to comply with any local or Naval Authority requirements.

1.4.2 The Surveyor is to be allowed unrestricted access during working hours to such parts of the Builder's establishment as may be necessary to ensure that the requirements of the Rules are being complied with.

### 1.5 Works inspection

1.5.1 Prior to the commencement of construction, the facilities are to be inspected to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor. This will include the minimum quality control arrangements outlined in 1.6.

1.5.2 The Surveyor is to be satisfied that the Builder has the organisation and capability to construct ships to the standards required by the Rules.

1.5.3 The Builder is to be advised of the result of the inspection and all deficiencies are to be rectified prior to the commencement of production.

1.5.4 Where structural components are to be assembled and welded by subcontractors, the Surveyors are to inspect the subcontractors' works to ensure that compliance with the requirements of this Chapter can be achieved.

### 1.6 Quality control

1.6.1 For compliance with 1.5.2, LR's methods of survey and inspection for hull construction and machinery installation are to include procedures involving the shipyard management, organisation and quality systems.

1.6.2 The extent and complexity of the quality systems will vary considerably depending on the size and type of ships and production output. LR will consider certification of the Builder in accordance with the requirements of one of the following systems:

- (a) Quality Assurance System in accordance with an International or National Standard (i.e. ISO 9000 and BS ENISO 9001) with assessment and certification carried out by a nationally accredited body.
- (b) LR's Quality Assurance Scheme for the Hull Construction of Ships.
- (c) LR's Quality Assurance Scheme for the Construction of Special Service Craft.
- (d) LR's locally accepted Quality Control System – The Builder is implementing a documented Quality Control System which controls the following activities:
  - (i) Receipt storage and issue of materials, equipment, etc.
  - (ii) Fabrication environment.
  - (iii) Weld procedures and welder performance.
  - (iv) Production fabrication.
  - (v) Inspection of production processes.
  - (vi) Installation of machinery and essential systems.
  - (vii) Fitting-out.
  - (viii) Tests and trials.
  - (ix) Drawings and document control.
  - (x) Records.

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 1

1.6.3 The 'documented' quality control system will in general require the Builder to have written procedures that describe clearly and unambiguously which of the activities specified in 1.6.2(d) is carried out, when it is carried out and by whom. These procedures will form part of the system manual which is also to contain a statement of management policy, organisation chart and statements of responsibilities. The manual is to be controlled in respect to the formal issue and revision.

1.6.4 Further details of LR's requirements are available on request from the local LR office.

## 1.7 Building environment

1.7.1 The ship is to be suitably protected during the building period from adverse weather and climatic conditions.

## 1.8 Storage areas

1.8.1 All materials are to be stored safely and in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements. Storage arrangements are to be such as to prevent deterioration through contact with heat, sunlight, damp, cold and poor handling.

1.8.2 All storage spaces provided by the Builder for welding consumables are to be suitable for maintaining them in good condition and are to be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

1.8.3 All materials are to be fully identifiable in the storage areas, and identification is to be maintained during issue to production.

1.8.4 Material suspected of being non-conforming is to be segregated from acceptable materials.

## 1.9 Materials handling

1.9.1 The Builder is to maintain purchasing documents containing a clear description of the materials ordered for use in hull construction and the standards to which the material must conform, together with the identification and certification requirements.

1.9.2 The Builder is to be responsible for ensuring that all incoming plates, sections, castings, components, fabrications and consumables and other materials used in the hull construction are inspected or otherwise verified as conforming to purchase order requirements.

1.9.3 The Builder is to have procedures for the inspection, storage and maintenance of Owner supplied materials and equipment.

1.9.4 The Builder is to record, on receipt, the manufacturing date, or use-by date of critical materials. Any materials which have a shelf life are to be used in order of manufacturing date to ensure stock rotation.

1.9.5 The Builder is to establish and maintain a procedure to ensure that materials and consumables used in the hull construction process are identified (by colour-coding and/or marking as appropriate) from arrival in the yard through to fabrication in such a way as to enable the type and grade to be readily recognised.

1.9.6 Where materials are found to be defective they are to be rejected in accordance with the Builder's quality control procedure.

## 1.10 Faults

1.10.1 All identified faults are to be recorded under the requirements of the quality control systems. Faults are to be classified according to their severity and are to be monitored during Survey.

1.10.2 Production faults are to be discussed with the Owner and attending Surveyor, and a rectification scheme agreed. Deviations from the approved plans are to be locally approved by the attending Surveyor and a copy forwarded to the plan approval office for record purpose.

## 1.11 New building inspection

1.11.1 On acceptance of a 'Request for Services' the attending Surveyor is to inform the Builder of the key stages of the production that are to be inspected and the extent of the inspection to be carried out.

1.11.2 It is the Builder's responsibility to carry out required inspections in accordance with the accepted quality control system.

1.11.3 It is the Surveyor's responsibility to monitor the Builder's quality control records and carry out inspections at key stages and during periodic visits.

1.11.4 Adequate facilities are to be provided to enable the Surveyor to carry out a satisfactory inspection. Consideration also needs to be given to provide arrangements that facilitate subsequent in-service maintenance. These are to include the provision of access holes in restricted spaces and removable linings.

1.11.5 During inspections all deviations are to be dealt with in accordance with 1.6.3.

1.11.6 Building and repair tolerances are given in the Naval Ship Survey Guidance Manual.

## 1.12 Acceptance criteria

1.12.1 Classification is dependent upon the work being carried out in accordance with the approved plans and the requirements of an accepted quality control system.

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Sections 1 &amp; 2

1.12.2 The work is to be carried out to the satisfaction of the attending Surveyor. This will include the verification of the quality control documentation and the remedial action associated with all defects and deficiencies recorded.

1.12.3 Proposed deviations from the approved plans are subject to LR approval and in the first instance are to be discussed with the attending Surveyor. Where applicable, an amended plan is to be submitted to the plan appraisal office. Such deviations will be recorded as endorsements to the classification unless specifically agreed otherwise with the plan appraisal office.

1.12.4 Where the above requirements are met the attending Surveyor will arrange for the relevant certification to be issued.

## 1.13 Repair

1.13.1 Minor repairs are to be agreed with the attending Surveyor and a rectification scheme agreed with the Builder. The Builder is to incorporate details of the agreed repair procedures in the quality control system in accordance with 1.6.3.

1.13.2 Repairs which affect the structural integrity are to be discussed with the Builder and the Builder's proposed rectification scheme is to be submitted to the plan appraisal office for consideration.

## Section 2 Materials

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 The Rules relate in general to the construction of steel ships, although consideration will be given to the use of other materials.

2.1.2 Materials used in the construction of the ship are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

2.1.3 Materials for which provision is not made therein or covered by this Section may be accepted, provided that they comply with an approved specification and such tests as may be considered necessary.

### 2.2 Grade of steel

2.2.1 The grade of steel, supply condition and its mechanical properties are to be indicated on the construction plans.

2.2.2 In order to distinguish between the material grade requirements for different hull members, material classes are assigned as given in Table 6.2.1 and Fig. 6.2.1. Steel grades are not to be lower than those corresponding to the material classes as given in Table 6.2.2.

2.2.3 Ships operating in certain environmental conditions, and those where operational requirements may lead to a risk of impact damage, or ships with military notations, may require higher toughness grades.

2.2.4 Where a ship has the notations **FDA**, **ESA** or **RSA**, the toughness requirements for steel will be specially considered on the basis of fatigue crack limitation and subsequent propagation through the structure.

2.2.5 When plate material, intended for welded construction, will be subject to significant strains in a direction perpendicular to the rolled surfaces, it is recommended that consideration be given to the use of special plate material with specified through thickness properties, and tested in accordance with Ch 3,8 of the Rules for Materials. The plan should indicate the material grade followed by the letter Z (e.g. DZ, DHZ).

### 2.3 Refrigerated spaces

2.3.1 Where the minimum design temperature of the steel falls below 0°C in refrigerated spaces, the grade of steel for the following items is to comply, in general, with the requirements of Table 6.2.3:

- Deck plating.
- Webs of deck girders.
- Longitudinal bulkhead strakes attached to deck.

2.3.2 Unless a temperature gradient calculation is carried out to assess the design temperature in the items defined in 2.3.1, the temperature to which the steel deck may be subjected is to be assessed as shown in Table 6.2.4.

### 2.4 Ships operating in cold weather conditions

2.4.1 Unless otherwise specified, all ships designed for sea area SA1 and other ships intended to operate for extended periods in cold weather conditions, the minimum toughness requirements for the material of the hull structure are specified in Fig. 6.2.2 and Table 6.2.5. The requirements are based on a design air temperature of -30°C. Where an alternative design air temperature is required, the materials selected are to be in accordance with Pt 3, Ch 2,3 of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Ships). In the absence of specific information, the air temperature should be taken as:

- for Ice class 1C first year strengthened ships not higher than -30°C,
- for Ice class 1AS, 1A and 1B first year ice strengthened ships not higher than -40°C,
- for multi year ice strengthened ice breaking ships not higher than -50°C.

## Material and Welding Requirements

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 2

Table 6.2.1 Material classes and grades

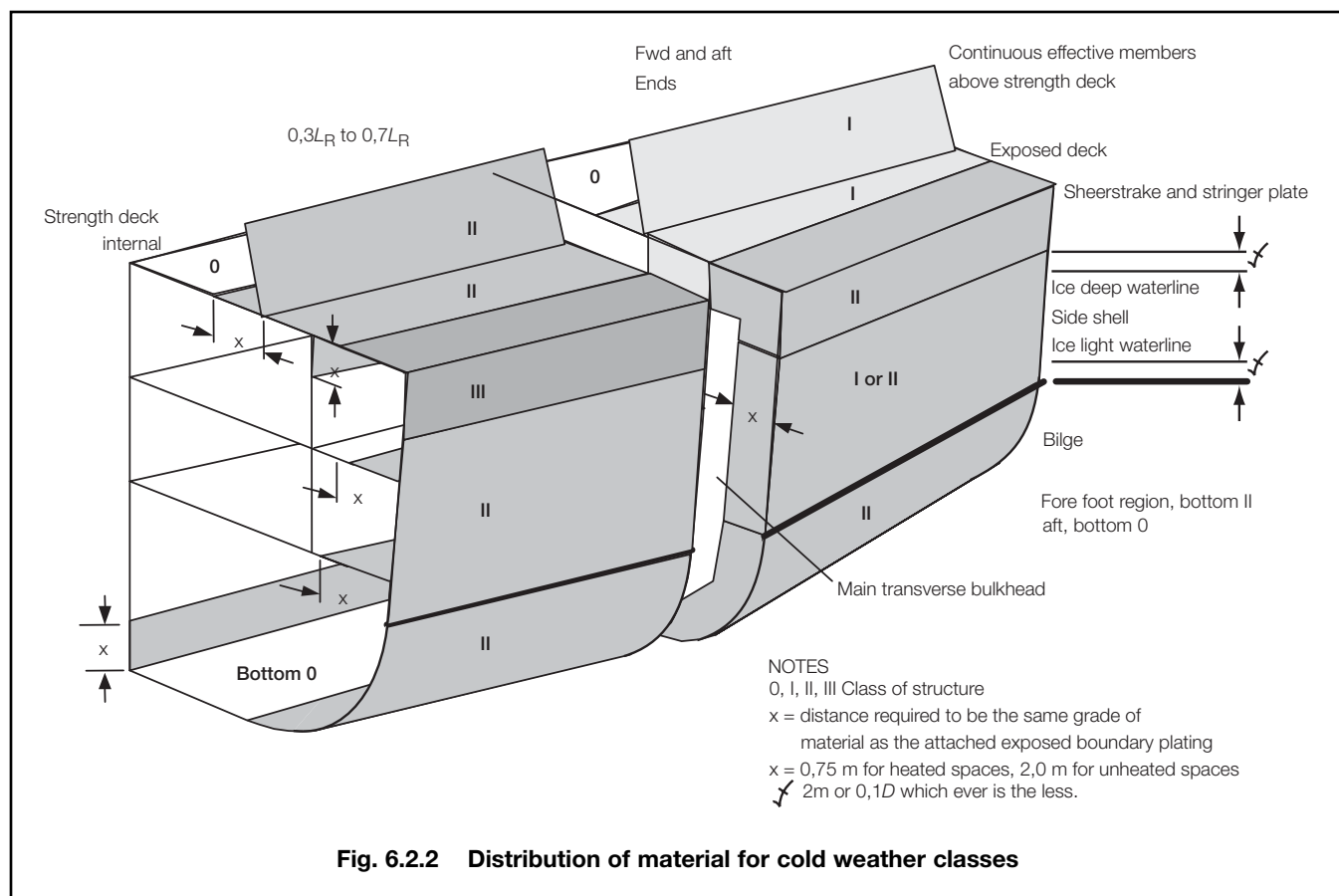
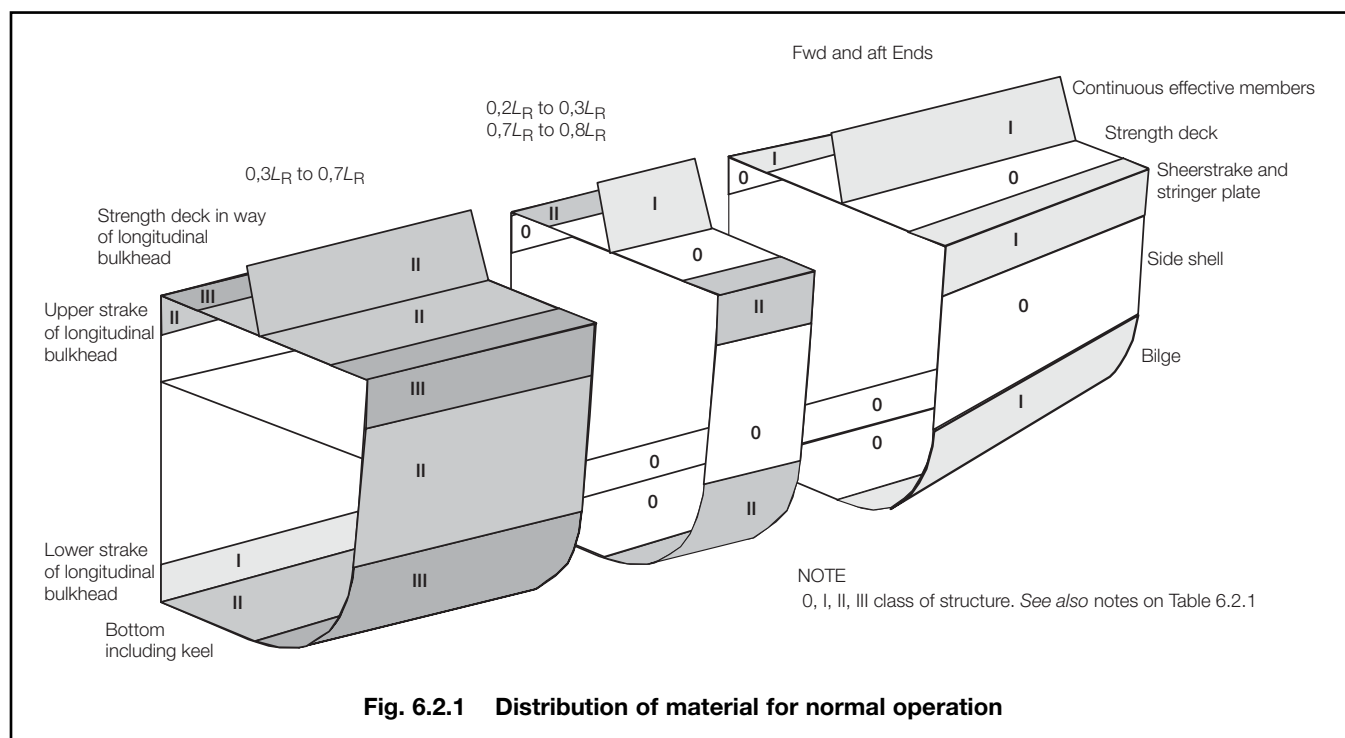
| Structural member category                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Material class/grade                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SECONDARY                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                  |
| A1.<br>A2.<br>A3.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Longitudinal bulkhead strakes, other than belonging to the Primary category<br>Deck plating exposed to weather, other than that belonging to the Primary or Special category<br>Side plating                                    | Class I within $0,4L_R$ amidships<br>Class 0 outside $0,4L_R$ amidships                                          |
| PRIMARY                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                  |
| B1.<br>B2.<br>B3.<br>B4.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Bottom plating, including keel plate<br>Strength deck plating, excluding that belonging to the Special category, see Note 7<br>Continuous longitudinal members above strength deck<br>Uppermost strake in longitudinal bulkhead | Class II within $0,4L_R$ amidships<br>Class 0 outside $0,4L_R$ amidships                                         |
| SPECIAL                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                  |
| C1.<br>C2.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Sheerstrake (or rounded gunwale) and stringer plate at strength deck, see Note 1<br>Deck strake at longitudinal bulkhead, see Note 1                                                                                            | Class III within $0,4L_R$ amidships<br>Class II outside $0,4L_R$ amidships<br>Class I outside $0,6L_R$ amidships |
| C3.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Strength deck plating at corners of large hatch openings                                                                                                                                                                        | Class III within $0,4L_R$ amidships<br>Class II outside $0,6L_R$ amidships                                       |
| C4.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Bilge strake in ships with double bottom over the full breadth and length less than 150 m, see Note 1                                                                                                                           | Class II within $0,6L_R$ amidships<br>Class I outside $0,6L_R$ amidships                                         |
| C5.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Bilge strake in other ships, see Note 1                                                                                                                                                                                         | Class III within $0,4L_R$ amidships<br>Class II outside $0,4L_R$ amidships<br>Class I outside $0,6L_R$ amidships |
| SHIPS WITH LENGTH EXCEEDING 150 m AND SINGLE STRENGTH DECK                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                  |
| D1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Longitudinal strength members of strength deck plating                                                                                                                                                                          | Grade B/AH within $0,4L_R$ amidships                                                                             |
| D2.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Continuous longitudinal strength members above strength deck                                                                                                                                                                    | Grade B/AH within $0,4L_R$ amidships                                                                             |
| D3.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Single side strakes for ships without inner continuous longitudinal bulkhead(s) between bottom and strength deck                                                                                                                | Grade B/AH between the aftermost and foremost transverse watertight bulkheads                                    |
| SHIPS WITH LENGTH EXCEEDING 250 m                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                  |
| E1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Sheerstrake (or rounded gunwale) and stringer plate at strength deck, see Note 1                                                                                                                                                | Grade E/EH within $0,4L_R$ amidships                                                                             |
| E2.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Bilge strake, see Note 1                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Grade D/DH over its entire length                                                                                |
| NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                  |
| <div>1. Single strakes required to be of Class III or of Grade E/EH and within <math>0,4L_R</math> amidships are to have breadths not less than <math>800 + 5L_R</math> mm, but need not be greater than 1800 mm, unless limited by the geometry of the ship's design.</div> <div>2. In ships with breadth exceeding 70 m, at least three deck strakes in board of the sheerstrake or rounded gunwale, including the stringer plate at the strength deck, are to be of Class III within <math>0,3L_R</math> to <math>0,7L_R</math>.</div> <div>3. In ships with a double bottom over the full breadth and with length less than 150 m, bilge strake may be of Class II within <math>0,3L_R</math> to <math>0,7L_R</math>.</div> <div>4. For strength members not mentioned, Grade A/AH may be generally used.</div> <div>5. Steel grade is to correspond to the as-fitted thickness.</div> <div>6. Plating materials for sternframes, rudders, rudder horns and shaft brackets are, in general, not to be of lower grades than corresponding to Class II. For rudder and rudder body plates subjected to stress concentrations (e.g. in way of lower support of semi-spade rudders or at upper part of spade rudders) Class III is to be applied.</div> <div>7. Plating at corners of large hatch openings is to be of Class III within <math>0,5L_R</math> amidships and Class I elsewhere.</div> <div>8. RAS seating and support structure are to be of Grade D/DH for <math>t \leq 20</math> mm and Grade E/EH for <math>t &gt; 20</math> mm. For ships operating in cold weather RAS seating and support structure are to be of Grade E/EH.</div> <div>9. Corner inserts in way of complex openings such as for lifts and side doors which may impinge on the deck plating or stringer plate are to be of Grade D/DH for <math>t \leq 20</math> mm and Grade E/EH for <math>t &gt; 20</math> mm.</div> <div>10. The material class used for reinforcement and the quality of material (i.e. whether mild or higher tensile steel) used for welded attachments, such as waterway bars and bilge keels, is to be similar to that of the hull envelope plating in way. Where attachments are made to rounded gunwale plates, special consideration will be given to the required grade of steel, taking account of the intended structural arrangements and attachment details.</div> <div>11. The material class for deck plating, sheer strake and upper strake of longitudinal bulkhead within <math>0,4L</math> amidships is also to be applied at structural breaks of the superstructure, irrespective of position.</div> <div>12. Engine seat top plates outside <math>0,6L</math> amidships may be Grade A/AH. Steel grade requirement for top plates within <math>0,6L</math> amidships will be specially considered.</div> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                  |



# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

## Section 2



## Material and Welding Requirements

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 2

**Table 6.2.2 Steel grades for normal operation**

| Thickness,<br>in mm | Class |    |   |    |    |    |     |    |
|---------------------|-------|----|---|----|----|----|-----|----|
|                     | O     |    | I |    | II |    | III |    |
| ≤10                 | A     | AH | A | AH | A  | AH | A   | AH |
| 10–15               | A     | AH | A | AH | A  | AH | A   | AH |
| 15–20               | A     | AH | A | AH | A  | AH | B   | AH |
| 20–25               | A     | AH | A | AH | B  | AH | D   | DH |
| 25–30               | A     | AH | A | AH | D  | DH | E   | EH |
| 30–35               | A     | AH | B | AH | D  | DH | E   | EH |
| 35–40               | A     | AH | B | AH | D  | DH | E   | EH |
| 40–45               | B     | AH | D | DH | E  | EH | E   | EH |
| 45–50               | B     | AH | D | DH | E  | EH | E   | EH |

**Table 6.2.3 Grades of steel for refrigerated spaces**

| Minimum design temperature, in °C | Thickness, in mm                                    | Grades of steel                                                        |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0 to –10                          | $t \leq 12,5$<br>$12,5 < t \leq 25,5$<br>$t > 25,5$ | B/AH<br>D/DH<br>E/EH                                                   |
| –10 to –25                        | $t \leq 12,5$<br>$t > 12,5$                         | D/DH<br>E/EH                                                           |
| –25 to –40                        | $t \leq 12,5$<br>$t > 12,5$                         | E/EH<br>FH/LT–FH<br>(see also Ch 3,6 of<br>the Rules for<br>Materials) |

**Table 6.2.4 Assessment of deck temperature**

| Arrangement                                                                                                                 | Deck temperature                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Deck not covered with insulation in the refrigerated space                                                              | Temperature of the refrigerated space                                                                                      |
| (2) Deck covered with insulation in the refrigerated space and not insulated on the other side                              | Temperature of the space on the uninsulated side                                                                           |
| (3) Deck covered with insulation on both sides                                                                              | Mean of the temperatures of the spaces above and below the deck<br>less 3°C<br>Deck temperature will be specially assessed |
| (a) Temperature difference not greater than 11°C                                                                            |                                                                                                                            |
| (b) Temperature difference greater than 11°C but not greater than 33°C                                                      |                                                                                                                            |
| (c) Temperature difference greater than 33°C                                                                                |                                                                                                                            |
| NOTE<br>Where one of the internal spaces concerned is not refrigerated, the temperature of the space is to be taken as 5°C. |                                                                                                                            |

2.4.2 Cold weather is defined as that which will cause the temperature to fall below 0°C.

**Table 6.2.5 Steel grades for cold weather operation**

| Thickness,<br>in mm | Class |    |   |    |    |    |     |    |
|---------------------|-------|----|---|----|----|----|-----|----|
|                     | O     |    | I |    | II |    | III |    |
| ≤10                 | B     | AH | B | AH | D  | DH | D   | DH |
| 10–15               | B     | AH | D | DH | D  | DH | E   | EH |
| 15–20               | B     | AH | D | DH | D  | DH | E   | EH |
| 20–25               | B     | AH | D | DH | E  | EH | E   | EH |
| 25–30               | B     | AH | D | DH | E  | EH | E   | EH |
| 30–35               | B     | AH | D | DH | E  | EH | F   | FH |
| 35–40               | B     | AH | E | EH | E  | EH | F   | FH |
| 40–45               | B     | AH | E | EH | F  | FH | F   | FH |
| 45–50               | B     | AH | E | EH | F  | FH | F   | FH |

2.4.3 In addition to the requirements of Fig. 6.2.2 all bulwarks, spurn-waters, unlagged gas turbine intake structures, side screens, tie down points, etc., are to be constructed of steel of equivalent toughness to that of the material to which they are attached.

2.4.4 Plating at the corners of deck openings, superstructure ends and other structural discontinuity is to be specially considered. The requirements of Class III are to be applied in positions where high local stresses may occur but the material is not to be less than Grade E.

2.4.5 In ships where  $L_R$  is >250 m, the shear stringer plate is not to be less than Grade E or EH from  $0,3L_R$  to  $0,7L_R$ .

2.4.6 Steel grades for rudder horn and stem (including the adjacent strake of shell plating), are given in Table 6.2.7. The steel grades of internal members attached to these items are to be of the same grade (or equivalent) with due account taken of difference in thickness.

2.4.7 In general, longitudinal frames and outboard strakes of horizontal stringers, transverse frames and web plating are to be of the same steel grade as the plating to which they are connected, but the grade may be adjusted to take account of difference in thickness.

2.4.8 The structure of internal spaces not included in Table 6.2.1 are to be in accordance with Table 6.2.6.

## 2.5 Mechanical properties for design

2.5.1 The scantlings determined within this Part of the Rules assume that mild steel has the following mechanical properties:

|                          | N/mm <sup>2</sup> |
|--------------------------|-------------------|
| Yield strength (minimum) | 235               |
| Tensile strength         | 400–490           |
| Modulus of elasticity    | $200 \times 10^3$ |

2.5.2 Steels having a minimum yield stress not less than 265 N/mm<sup>2</sup> are regarded as higher tensile steels.

2.5.3 Factors for structural assessment are given in Chapter 5.

## Material and Welding Requirements

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 2

**Table 6.2.6 Cold weather requirements for internal structure (heated and unheated)**

| Structure in permanently heated spaces                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                |                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Location of structure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Structure                      | Requirement             |
| Above Ice Light Waterline attached to exposed boundary stiffening                                                                                                                                                                                              | Lagged secondary and primary   | As the exposed boundary |
| Above Ice Light Waterline attached to exposed boundary stiffening                                                                                                                                                                                              | Unlagged secondary and primary | Class O                 |
| Above Ice Light Waterline connected to an exposed boundary                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Deck and bulkhead plating      | As the exposed boundary |
| Below Ice Light Waterline adjacent to unheated fluid                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Deck and bulkhead plating      | Class O                 |
| Structure in all other spaces                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                |                         |
| Location of space                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Structure                      | Requirement             |
| Above Ice Light Waterline                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | All                            | As exposed boundary     |
| Below Ice Light Waterline with exposed boundary                                                                                                                                                                                                                | All                            | As exposed boundary     |
| Below Ice Light Waterline with no exposed boundary                                                                                                                                                                                                             | All                            | Class O                 |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>Permanently heated spaces are those in which the internal air is maintained at a temperature above 15°C.<br>The exposed boundary is all that which is in contact with the external air or water including superstructure deckhouses and tanks. |                                |                         |

2.5.4 For the application of the requirements of 2.5.3 special consideration will be given to steel where  $\sigma_o \geq 390 \text{ N/mm}^2$ . Where such steel grades are used in areas which are subject to fatigue loading the structural details are to be verified using fatigue design assessment methods.

## 2.6 Paints and coatings

2.6.1 All steelwork is to be suitably protected against corrosion by a suitable protective coating. All coatings are to be in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

2.6.2 The underwater portion of the hull is to be provided by means of a suitable high resistant paint applied in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements. Details of the high resistant paint are to be submitted for information (see also Pt 1, Ch 3,4.3).

2.6.3 At the time of new construction, all salt water ballast spaces having boundaries formed by the hull envelope shall have an efficient protective coating, epoxy or equivalent, applied in accordance with the manufacturers recommendations.

2.6.4 Details and recommendations regarding the coating of salt water ballast spaces are given in LR's *List of Paints, Resins, Reinforcements and Associated Materials*.

2.6.5 Integral tanks that contain only fuel, may be coated or, where applicable, be protected by a system of cathodic protection or both, see 2.7.

2.6.6 Steelwork is to be suitably cleaned and cleared of millscale before the application of any coating.

2.6.7 Where a primer is used to coat steel after surface preparation and prior to fabrication, the composition of the coating is to be such that it will have no significant deleterious effect on subsequent welding work and that it is compatible with the paints or other coatings subsequently applied in association with an approved system of corrosion control.

2.6.8 To determine the influence of the primer coating on the characteristics of welds, tests are to be made as detailed in LR's *List of Paints, Resins, Reinforcements and Associated Materials*.

2.6.9 Paints or other coatings are to be suitable for the intended purpose in the locations where they are to be used. Coatings are to be of adequate film thickness, applied in accordance with the paint manufacturer's specification.

2.6.10 The paint or coating applied is to be compatible with any previously applied primer.

2.6.11 Paint containing aluminium should not, in general, be used in positions where oil or fuel vapours may accumulate, unless it has been shown by appropriate tests that the paint to be used does not increase the incendive sparking hazard.

2.6.12 Paints, varnishes and similar preparations having a nitro-cellulose or other highly flammable base are not to be used in accommodation or machinery spaces.

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 2

**Table 6.2.7 Steel grades for rudder horn, shaft brackets and stem for ships intended to navigate in Arctic or Antarctic conditions**

| Item                                            | Condition                        | Construction | Steel grade(2)(3)                         |                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
|                                                 |                                  |              | $f < 25(1)$                               | $f \geq 25(1)$                   |
| Rudder horn                                     | Fully immersed                   | Cast steel   | Carbon manganese steel Grade 400          | Carbon manganese steel Grade 400 |
|                                                 |                                  | Fabricated   | Grade EH                                  | Grade EH                         |
|                                                 | Periodically immersed or exposed | Cast steel   | Carbon manganese steel Grade 460          | 21/4 Ni steel or equivalent      |
|                                                 |                                  | Fabricated   | Grade FH                                  | 11/2 Ni steel or equivalent      |
| Shaft brackets                                  | Fully immersed                   | Cast steel   | Normal Rule requirement                   | Normal Rule requirement          |
|                                                 |                                  | Fabricated   | Class O                                   | Class O                          |
|                                                 | Periodically immersed or exposed | Cast steel   | Carbon manganese steel Grade 400          | Carbon manganese steel Grade 460 |
|                                                 |                                  | Fabricated   | Class II                                  | Grade FH                         |
| Stem including adjacent strake of shell plating | Fully immersed                   | Fabricated   | Class O                                   | Class O                          |
|                                                 |                                  | Cast steel   | Carbon manganese steel Grade 400          | Carbon manganese steel Grade 400 |
|                                                 | Periodically immersed or exposed | Fabricated   | Class II                                  | Class II                         |
|                                                 |                                  | Cast steel   | 21/4 Ni steel                             | 21/4 Ni steel                    |
| Rudder stock                                    |                                  | Forged       | see Ch 5,2.4.7 of the Rules for Materials |                                  |
|                                                 |                                  | Cast steel   | Carbon manganese steel grade 400          |                                  |

NOTES

1.  $f = \sqrt{P_o \Delta} \times 10^{-3}$   
where  
 $P_o$  is the maximum propulsion shaft power, in kW, for which the machinery is classed  
 $\Delta$  is displacement, in tonnes, at Ice Load Waterline or Deepest Ice Operation Waterline when floating in water of relative density of 1,0.

2. For cast steel, see Ch 4,7 of the Rules for Materials.

3. For C-Mn LT60 and Ni plates, see Ch 3,6 of the Rules for Materials.

2.7.2 Where an impressed current cathodic protection system is fitted, plans showing the proposed layout of anodes and hull penetrations are to be submitted.

2.7.3 The arrangement for glands, where cables pass through the shell, are to include a small cofferdam. Cables to anodes are not to be led through tanks intended for the carriage of low flash point oils. Where cables are led through cofferdams, they are to be enclosed in a substantial steel tube of about 10 mm thickness.

2.7.4 Where anodes are fitted on the hull, a plan showing their location and method of attachment is to be submitted in accordance with Ch 1,2.2. They are to be fitted in such a way that they do not cause a stress concentration.

2.7.5 When a cathodic protection system is to be fitted in tanks for the carriage of liquid with flash point not exceeding 60°C, a plan showing details of the locations and attachment of anodes is to be submitted. The arrangements will be considered for safety against fire and explosion aspects only. Impressed current cathodic protection systems are not permitted in any tank.

2.7.6 Particular attention is to be given to the locations of anodes in relation to the structural arrangements and openings of the tank.

2.7.7 Anodes are to be of approved design and sufficiently rigid to avoid resonance in the anode support. Steel cores are to be fitted, and these are to be so designed as to retain the anode even when the latter is wasted.

2.7.8 Anodes are to be attached to the structure in such a way that they remain secure both initially and during service. The following methods of attachment would be acceptable:

- Steel core connected to the structure by continuous welding of adequate section.
- Steel core bolted to separate supports, provided that a minimum of two bolts with lock nuts are used at each support. The separate supports are to be connected to the structure by continuous welding of adequate section.
- Approved means of mechanical clamping.

2.7.9 Anodes are to be attached to stiffeners, or may be aligned in way of stiffeners on plane bulkhead plating, but they are not to be attached to the shell. The two ends are not to be attached to separate members which are capable of relative movement.

2.7.10 When locating anodes, care is to be taken to ensure that they do not cause a stress concentration. Where cores or supports are welded to the main structure, they are to be kept clear of the toes of brackets and similar stress raisers. Where they are welded to asymmetrical stiffeners, they are to be connected to the web with the welding kept at least 25 mm away from the edge of the web. In the case of stiffeners or girders with symmetrical face plates, the connection may be made to the web or to the centreline of the face plate but well clear of the free edges. However, it is recommended that anodes are not fitted to face plates of higher tensile steel longitudinals.

## 2.7 Cathodic protection

2.7.1 This Section contains the requirements for the cathodic protection, where fitted, of the external hull and internal spaces.

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Sections 2 &amp; 3

2.7.11 Aluminium and aluminium alloy anodes are permitted in tanks used for the carriage of oil, but only at locations where the potential energy does not exceed 275 J. The weight of the anode is to be taken as the weight at the time of fitting, including any inserts and fitting devices.

2.7.12 The height of the anode is, in general, to be measured from the bottom of the tank to the centre of the anode. Where the anode is located on, or closely above, a horizontal surface (such as a bulkhead girder) not less than 1,0 m wide, provided with an upstanding flange or face plate projecting not less than 75 mm above the horizontal surface, the height of the anode may be measured above that surface.

2.7.13 Aluminium anodes are not to be located under tank hatches unless protected by adjacent structure.

2.7.14 Magnesium or magnesium alloy anodes are permitted only in tanks intended solely for water ballast.

## 2.8 Bimetallic connections

2.8.1 The design shall ensure that the location of all bimetallic connections allows for regular inspection and maintenance of the joints and penetrations during service.

2.8.2 Where bimetallic connections are made, involving dissimilar metals, measures are to be incorporated to preclude galvanic corrosion.

2.8.3 Special attention is to be given to the penetrations of and connections to the hull, bulkheads and decks by piping and equipment where dissimilar materials are involved.

## 2.9 Deck coverings

2.9.1 The steel deck is to be coated with a suitable material in order to prevent corrosive action.

2.9.2 Deck coverings within accommodation spaces, control stations, stairways and passageways are to be of a type which will not readily ignite or cause a smoke hazard.

2.9.3 Where plated decks are sheathed with wood, or an approved construction of suitable thickness, reductions in plate thickness may be allowed.

## 2.10 Corrosion margin

2.10.1 The scantlings determined from the formulae provided in the Rules assume that the materials used are selected, manufactured and protected in such a way that there is negligible loss in strength by corrosion.

2.10.2 Where steel is not protected against corrosion, by painting or other approved means, the scantlings may require to be further considered.

2.10.3 In the absence of a specific requirement from the Owner, the following corrosion margins are to be applied to net scantlings calculated by these Rules regardless of the type of corrosion protection fitted:

- +0,5 mm all plating below a line, 1,0 m, above the design waterline
- +2,0 mm to the keel plate.

Consideration should also be given to the addition of a corrosion margin to the following areas:

- Plating and stiffening at the lower edge of bulkheads bounding wet spaces.
- All tanks containing corrosive fluids and areas where spillage of corrosive fluids could occur.
- All uncoated structures.

2.10.4 Ships with a corrosion margin will be eligible for an enhanced scantling notation, see Pt 3, Ch 6,6.

## ■ Section 3 Requirements for welded construction

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to grades of steel welded using electric arc welding processes. Where it is proposed to use alternative welding processes, details are to be submitted for approval, prior to the start of fabrication.

3.1.2 Symbols are defined as necessary in each Section.

3.1.3 Ships with enhanced shock notation are to additionally comply with the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 2.

### 3.2 Information to be submitted

3.2.1 The plans and information submitted for approval are clearly to indicate details of the welded connections of the main structural members, including the type, disposition and size of welds. This requirement includes welded connections to steel castings.

3.2.2 The information to be submitted should include the following:

- (a) Whether weld sizes given are throat thicknesses or leg lengths.
- (b) Grades and thicknesses of materials to be welded.
- (c) Location, types of joints and angles of abutting members.
- (d) Reference to welding procedures to be used.
- (e) Sequence of welding of assemblies and joining up of assemblies.

### 3.3 Welding equipment

3.3.1 Welding plant and equipment are to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13,1.8 of the Rules for Materials.

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 3

## 3.4 Welding consumables

3.4.1 The requirements for welding consumables are to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13,1.8 of the Rules for Materials.

3.4.2 The approval of welding consumables is to be in accordance with Chapter 11 of the Rules for Materials.

## 3.5 Welding procedures

3.5.1 Welding procedures are to be established for the welding of all joints in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13,1.9 of the Rules for Materials.

3.5.2 All welding procedures are to be tested and qualified in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 12 of the Rules for Materials and are to be approved by the Surveyor prior to construction.

3.5.3 Welders and welding operators are to be proficient in the type of work to be undertaken and are to be qualified in accordance with the requirements specified in Chapter 12 of the Rules for Materials.

## 3.6 Inspection

3.6.1 Effective arrangements are to be provided by the Shipbuilder for the inspection of all finished welds in order to ensure that all welding has been satisfactorily completed.

3.6.2 All finished welds are to be subjected to non-destructive examination in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13,2.12 of the Rules for Materials. Details of weld defect levels are given in the Naval Survey Guidance for Steel Ships.

3.6.3 Typical locations for volumetric examination and number of checkpoints to be taken are as shown in Table 6.3.1. A list of the proposed items to be examined is to be submitted for approval.

**Table 6.3.1 Recommended extent of NDE checkpoints**

| Volumetric non-destructive examinations – recommended extent of testing, see Ch 13,2.12.12 of the Rules for Materials                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Checkpoints (see Note 1)                 |
| Intersections of butts and seams of fabrication and section welds                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Throughout:<br>(a) The hull envelope plating:<br><ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>at critical locations identified by FDA, see Note 2</li> <li>at other highly stressed areas, see Note 3</li> <li>remainder</li> </ul> (b) longitudinal and transverse bulkheads<br>(c) inner bottom | All<br>All<br>1 in 2<br>1 in 2<br>1 in 2 |
| Butt welds in plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Throughout                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 1 m in 25 m (see Notes 4 and 5)          |
| Seam welds in plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Throughout                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 1 m in 100 m                             |
| Butts in longitudinals                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Hull envelope within 0,4L amidships<br>Hull envelope outside 0,4L amidships                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 1 in 10 welds<br>1 in 20 welds           |
| Bilge keel butts                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Throughout                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 1 in 10 welds                            |
| Structural items when made with full penetration welding as follows:<br>sheerstrake to deck stringer plate or angle                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Throughout                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 1 m in 20 m                              |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. The length of each checkpoint is to be between 0,3 m and 0,5 m.<br>2. FDA signifies the fatigue design assessment procedure.<br>3. Typically those at shear strake, deck stringer, keel strake and turn of bilge.<br>4. Checkpoints in butt welds and seam welds are in addition to those at intersections.<br>5. Welds at inserts used to close openings in hull envelope plating are to be checked by non-destructive examination.<br>6. Agreed locations are not to be indicated on the blocks prior to the welding taking place, nor is any special treatment to be given at these locations.<br>7. Particular attention is to be given to repair rates in longitudinal butts. Additional welds are to be tested in the event that defects such as lack of fusion or incomplete penetration are repeatedly observed. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                          |

## Section 4

### Welded joints and connections

#### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Requirements are given in this Chapter for welding connection details, aluminium/steel transition joints, steel/wood connection, rivetting of light structure and adhesive bonding.

4.1.2 Welded joints are to be detailed such that crevices or inaccessible pockets capable of retaining dirt or moisture are avoided. Where cavities are unavoidable, they are to be sealed by welding or protective compounds or made accessible for inspection and maintenance.

#### 4.2 Weld symbols

4.2.1 Weld symbols, where used, are to conform to a recognised National or International Standard. Details of such Standards are to be indicated on the welding schedule, which is to be submitted for appraisal.

#### 4.3 Welding schedule

4.3.1 A welding schedule containing not less than the following information is to be submitted:

- Weld throat thickness or leg lengths.
- Grades, tempers and thicknesses of materials to be welded.
- Locations, types of joints and angles of abutting members.
- Reference to welding procedures to be used.
- Welded connections to steel castings.

#### 4.4 Butt welds

4.4.1 All structural butt joints are to be made by means of full penetration welds and, in general, the edges of plates to be joined by welding are to be bevelled on one or both sides of the plates. Full details of the proposed joint preparation are to be included in the approval welding procedure.

4.4.2 Where butt welds form a T-junction, the leg of the T is, where practicable, to be completed first including any back run. During the welding operation special attention is to be given to the completion of the weld at the junction, which is to be chipped back to remove crater cracks, etc., before the table is welded.

4.4.3 For ships with shock enhanced notation, see Pt 4, Ch 2,4.

#### 4.5 Fillet welds

4.5.1 The throat thickness of fillet welds is to be determined from:

$$\text{Throat thickness} = t_p \times \text{weld factor} \times \left( \frac{d}{s} \right) \text{ mm}$$

where

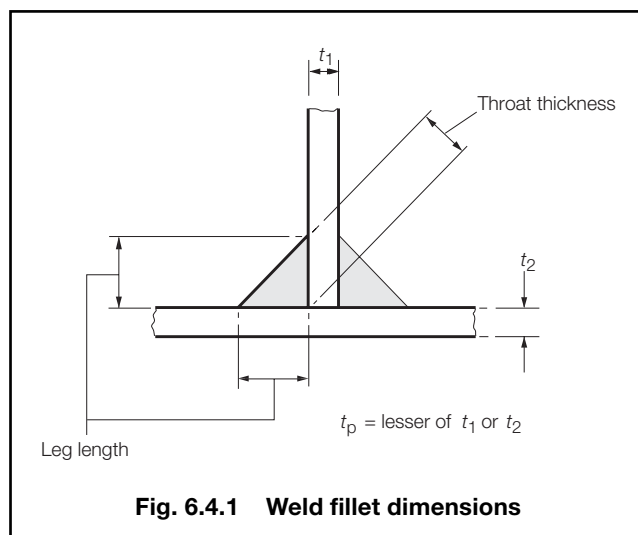
$s$  = the length of correctly proportioned weld fillet, clear of end craters, in mm, and is to be 10 x plate thickness,  $t_p$ , or 75 mm, whichever is the lesser, but in no case to be taken less than 40 mm

$d$  = the distance between successive weld fillet, in mm

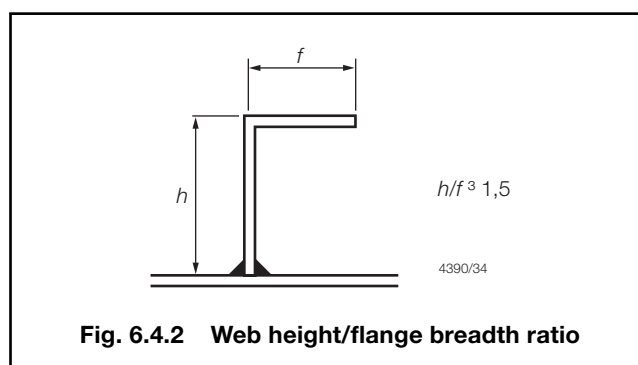
$t_p$  = plate thickness, in mm, on which weld fillet size is based, see 4.5.4

Weld factors are contained in Table 6.4.1 and Fig. 6.4.1.

NOTE: for double continuous fillet welding  $\left( \frac{d}{s} \right)$  is to be taken as 1, see 4.8.1.



4.5.2 For ease of welding, it is recommended that the ratio of the web height to the flange breadth is greater than or equal to 1,5, see Fig. 6.4.2.



# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 4

**Table 6.4.1** Weld factors (see continuation)

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Weld factor                                                             | Remarks                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) General application:<br>Watertight plate boundaries<br>Non-tight plate boundaries<br>Longitudinals, frames, beams, and other secondary members to shell, deck or bulkhead plating<br>Panel stiffeners, etc.<br>Overlap welds generally<br>Longitudinals of the flat-bar type to plating                                                                                                                                                                  | 0,34<br>0,13<br>0,10<br>0,13<br>0,21<br>0,10<br>0,27                    | except as required below<br><br>in tanks<br>in way of end connections<br><br>See 4.5.5                                                                                                 |
| (2) Bottom construction in way of tanks:<br>Non-tight centre girder: to keel<br>to inner bottom<br>Non-tight boundaries of floors, girders and brackets<br>Inner bottom longitudinals or reverse frames<br>Connection of floors to inner bottom in way of bulkheads, supported on inner bottom.<br>The supporting floors are to be continuously welded to the inner bottom                                                                                   | 0,27<br>0,21<br>0,21<br>0,27<br>0,13<br>0,44                            | no scallops<br>in way of 0,2 x span at ends<br>in way of brackets at lower end of main frame<br><br>weld size based on floor thickness<br>weld material compatible with floor material |
| (3) Hull framing:<br>Webs of web frames and stringers:<br>to shell<br>to face plate<br>Tank side brackets to shell and inner bottom                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 0,16<br>0,13<br>0,34                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| (4) Decks and supporting structure:<br>Strength deck plating to shell<br>Other decks to shell and bulkheads (except where forming tank boundaries)<br>Webs of cantilevers to deck and to shell in way of root bracket<br>Webs of cantilevers to face plate<br>Pillars: fabricated<br>end connections<br>end connections (tubular)<br>Girder web connections and brackets in way of pillar heads and heels and end brackets<br>Girder web connections general | 0,21<br>0,44<br>0,21<br>0,10<br>0,34<br>full penetration<br>0,21<br>0,1 | as shown in Table 6.4.5 but alternative proposals will be considered<br><br>generally continuous<br><br>see Note<br><br>continuous                                                     |

4.5.3 The leg length of the weld is to be not less than  $\sqrt{2}$  times the specified throat thickness.

4.5.4 The plate thickness  $t_p$  to be used in 4.5.1 is generally to be that of the thinner of the two parts being joined. Where the difference in thickness is considerable, the size of fillet weld will be specially considered.

4.5.5 Where the thickness of the abutting member of the connection (e.g. the web of a stiffener) is greater than 15 mm and exceeds the thickness of the table member (e.g. plating), the welding is to be double continuous and the throat thickness of the weld is to be not less than the greatest of the following:

- 0,21 x thickness of the table member. The table member thickness used need not exceed 30 mm.
- 0,21 (0,27 in tanks) x half the thickness of the abutting member.
- As required by item 3 in Table 6.4.2.

## 4.6 Throat thickness limits

4.6.1 The throat thickness limits given in Table 6.4.2 are to be complied with.



## Material and Welding Requirements

## Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 4

Table 6.4.1 Weld factors (continued)

| Item                                                                                                                                             | Weld factor         | Remarks                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (5) Bulkheads and tank construction:                                                                                                             |                     |                                                                                                                              |
| Plane, double plate and corrugated watertight bulkhead boundary at bottom, bilge, inner bottom, deck and connection to shelf plate, where fitted | 0,44                | Weld size to be based on thickness of bulkhead plating<br>Weld material to be compatible with bulkhead plating material      |
| Shelf plate connection to stool                                                                                                                  | 0,44                | Weld size to be based on thickness of stool at junction with shelf plate. Weld material to be compatible with stool material |
| Plane, double plate and corrugated main watertight bulkhead boundaries                                                                           | 0,44                |                                                                                                                              |
| – Boundary at bottom, bilge, inner bottom and deck                                                                                               |                     |                                                                                                                              |
| – Connection of bulkhead plating to side shell                                                                                                   | 0,44                |                                                                                                                              |
| Deep tank horizontal boundaries at vertical corrugations                                                                                         | Full penetration    |                                                                                                                              |
| Secondary members where acting as pillars                                                                                                        | 0,13                |                                                                                                                              |
| Non-watertight pillar bulkhead boundaries                                                                                                        | 0,13                |                                                                                                                              |
| Perforated flats and wash bulkhead boundaries                                                                                                    | 0,10                |                                                                                                                              |
| (6) Structure in machinery space:                                                                                                                |                     |                                                                                                                              |
| Centre girder to keel and inner bottom                                                                                                           | 0,27                | no scallops to inner bottom                                                                                                  |
| Floors to centre girder in way of engine, thrust and boiler bearers                                                                              | 0,27                |                                                                                                                              |
| Floors and girders to shell and inner bottom                                                                                                     | 0,21                |                                                                                                                              |
| Main engine foundation girders:                                                                                                                  |                     |                                                                                                                              |
| to top plate                                                                                                                                     | deep penetration to | edge to be prepared with maximum root $0,33t_p$ deep                                                                         |
| to hull structure                                                                                                                                | depend on design    | penetration generally                                                                                                        |
| Floors to main engine foundation girders                                                                                                         | 0,27                |                                                                                                                              |
| Brackets, etc., to main engine foundation girders                                                                                                | 0,21                |                                                                                                                              |
| Transverse and longitudinal framing to shell                                                                                                     | 0,13                |                                                                                                                              |
| (7) Construction in 0,25L forward:                                                                                                               |                     |                                                                                                                              |
| Floors and girders to shell and inner bottom                                                                                                     | 0,21                |                                                                                                                              |
| Bottom longitudinals to shell                                                                                                                    | 0,13                |                                                                                                                              |
| Transverse and longitudinal side framing to shell                                                                                                | 0,13                |                                                                                                                              |
| Tank side brackets to frame and inner bottom                                                                                                     | 0,34                |                                                                                                                              |
| Panting stringers to shell and frames                                                                                                            | 0,34                |                                                                                                                              |
| Fore peak construction:                                                                                                                          |                     |                                                                                                                              |
| all internal structure                                                                                                                           | 0,13                | unless a greater weld factor is required                                                                                     |
| (8) After peak construction:                                                                                                                     |                     |                                                                                                                              |
| All internal structure and stiffeners on afterpeak bulkhead                                                                                      | 0,21                | unless a greater weld factor is required                                                                                     |
| (9) Superstructure and deckhouses:                                                                                                               |                     |                                                                                                                              |
| Connection of external bulkheads to deck                                                                                                         | 0,34                | 1st and 2nd tier erections                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                  | 0,21                | elsewhere                                                                                                                    |
| Internal bulkheads                                                                                                                               | 0,13                |                                                                                                                              |

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 4

**Table 6.4.1** Weld factors (conclusion)

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                           | Weld factor      | Remarks                                                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (10) Steering control systems:                                                                                                                                                                 |                  |                                                                      |
| Rudder:                                                                                                                                                                                        |                  |                                                                      |
| Fabricated mainpiece and mainpiece to side plates and webs                                                                                                                                     | 0,44             |                                                                      |
| Slot welds inside plates                                                                                                                                                                       | 0,44             |                                                                      |
| Remaining construction                                                                                                                                                                         | 0,21             |                                                                      |
| Fixed and steering nozzles:                                                                                                                                                                    |                  |                                                                      |
| Main structure                                                                                                                                                                                 | 0,44             |                                                                      |
| Elsewhere                                                                                                                                                                                      | 0,21             |                                                                      |
| Fabricated housing and structure of thruster units, stabilisers, etc.:                                                                                                                         |                  |                                                                      |
| Main structure                                                                                                                                                                                 | 0,44             |                                                                      |
| Elsewhere                                                                                                                                                                                      | 0,21             |                                                                      |
| (11) Miscellaneous fittings and equipment:                                                                                                                                                     |                  |                                                                      |
| Rings for manhole type covers, to deck or bulkhead                                                                                                                                             | 0,34             |                                                                      |
| Frames of shell and weathertight bulkhead doors                                                                                                                                                | 0,34             |                                                                      |
| Stiffening of doors                                                                                                                                                                            | 0,21             |                                                                      |
| Ventilator, air pipe, etc., coamings to deck                                                                                                                                                   | 0,34             |                                                                      |
| Ventilator, etc., fittings                                                                                                                                                                     | 0,21             |                                                                      |
| Scuppers and discharges, to deck                                                                                                                                                               | 0,44             |                                                                      |
| Masts, derrick posts, crane pedestals, etc., to deck                                                                                                                                           | 0,44             | full penetration welding may be required                             |
| Deck machinery seats to deck                                                                                                                                                                   | 0,21             | generally                                                            |
| Mooring equipment seats                                                                                                                                                                        | 0,21             | generally, but increased or full penetration welding may be required |
| Bulwark stays to deck                                                                                                                                                                          | 0,21             |                                                                      |
| Bulwark attachment to deck                                                                                                                                                                     | 0,34             |                                                                      |
| Guard rails, stanchions, etc., to deck                                                                                                                                                         | 0,34             |                                                                      |
| Bilge keel ground bars to shell                                                                                                                                                                | 0,34             | Continuous fillet weld, minimum throat thickness 4 mm                |
| Bilge keels to ground bars                                                                                                                                                                     | 0,21             | Continuous fillet weld, minimum throat thickness 3 mm                |
| Fabricated anchors                                                                                                                                                                             | full penetration |                                                                      |
| Raft seatings                                                                                                                                                                                  | 0,27             |                                                                      |
| Weapon seatings                                                                                                                                                                                | 0,44             | full penetration welding may be required                             |
| <p>NOTE</p> <p>Where pillars are fitted inside tanks or under watertight flats, the end connection is to be such that the tensile stress in the weld does not exceed 108 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.</p> |                  |                                                                      |

## 4.7 Single sided welding

4.7.1 Where the main welding is carried out from one side only, this should be in accordance with the approved single sided welding procedure.

4.7.2 Where internal access for welding is impracticable, backing bars are to be fitted in way of butt welds, or alternative means of obtaining full penetration welds are to be agreed. Backing bars may be permanent or temporary, subject to agreement.

4.7.3 Permanent backing bars are to be of the same material as the base metal and of thickness not less than the thickness of the plating being joined or 4 mm, whichever is the lesser. The weld is to be thoroughly fused to the backing bar, subject to agreement.

4.7.4 Backing bars are to be continuous for the full length of the weld and joints in the backing bar are to be by full penetration welds, ground smooth.

4.7.5 Temporary backing bars for single sided welding may be glass tape, ceramic, or steel of the same grade as the base metal.

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 4

**Table 6.4.2 Throat thickness limits**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Throat thickness, in mm |                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Minimum                 | Maximum             |
| (1) Double continuous welding                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | $0,21t_p$               | $0,44t_p$           |
| (2) Intermittent welding                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | $0,27t_p$               | $0,44t_p$<br>or 4,5 |
| (3) All welds, overriding minimum:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                         |                     |
| (a) Plate thickness $t_p \leq 7,5$ mm                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                         |                     |
| Hand or automatic welding                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 3,0                     | —                   |
| Automatic deep penetration welding                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 3,0                     | —                   |
| (b) Plate thickness $t_p > 7,5$ mm                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                         |                     |
| Hand or automatic welding                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | 3,25                    | —                   |
| Automatic deep penetration welding                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | 3,0                     | —                   |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. In all cases, the limiting value is to be taken as the greatest of the applicable values given above.<br>2. Where $t_p$ exceeds 25 mm, the limiting values may be calculated using a notional thickness equal to $0,5 (t_p + 25)$ mm.<br>3. The maximum throat thicknesses shown are intended only as a design limit for the approval of fillet welded joints. Any welding in excess of these limits is to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction. |                         |                     |

4.7.6 Temporary non-metallic backing bars are to be suitably grooved in way of the weld to ensure full penetration.

## 4.8 Double continuous fillet welding

4.8.1 Where double continuous fillet welding is proposed the throat thickness is to be in accordance with 4.5.1 taking  $d/s$  equal to 1.

4.8.2 Double continuous fillet welding is to be adopted in the following locations and may be used elsewhere if desired:

- Boundaries of weathertight decks and erections and all other openings.
- Boundaries of tank and watertight compartments.
- Main engine and equipment seatings and rafts.
- Bottom framing structure in machinery spaces of high speed ships.
- The side and bottom shell structure in the impact area of high speed ships.
- Structure in way of rudders, propeller brackets, stabilisers, thrusters, bilge keels, foundations and other areas subject to high stresses.
- The shell structure in the vicinity of the propeller blades.
- Stiffening members to plating in way of end connections scallops and of end brackets to plating in the case of lap connections.
- Face flats to webs of built-up/fabricated stiffening members in way of knees/end brackets and for a distance beyond such knees/end brackets of not less than the web depth of stiffener in way.
- All structure in the after peak and after peak bulkhead stiffeners.
- Forward tanks.
- Lap welds in tanks.

- Primary and secondary members to bottom shell forward of  $0,7L$ .
- Where 4.5.5 applies.
- Other connections or attachments, where necessary, in particular minor items to high tensile steel plating.

## 4.9 Intermittent and single sided fillet welding

4.9.1 The requirements for intermittent fillet welding (staggered and chain) are given in Fig. 6.4.1.

4.9.2 As an alternative to intermittent welding, single sided welding may be used. Only mechanised single sided welding is acceptable.

4.9.3 Where staggered intermittent or single sided fillet welding is used, the welding is to be made continuous round the ends of brackets, lugs, scallops, etc.

4.9.4 Staggered intermittent or single sided fillet welding is not to be used in the bottom shell structure of high speed ships.

4.9.5 Chain intermittent welding may be used, outside of the impact area in the bottom shell structure of high speed ships.

4.9.6 Scallop construction, intermittent or single sided fillet welding is not to be used in structure on or below the strength deck of ships with shock enhancement or in structure strengthened for blast enhancement, see Pt 4, Ch 2.

4.9.7 Scallop construction, intermittent or single sided fillet welding is not to be used in structure complying with the requirements of the internal blast station.

4.9.8 For ships with a shock enhanced notation, the extent of intermittent or single sided fillet welding will be specially considered on the basis of the threat levels.

## 4.10 Connections of primary structure

4.10.1 Weld factors for the connections of primary structure are given in Table 6.4.3.

4.10.2 The weld connection to shell, deck or bulkhead is to take account of the material lost in the notch where longitudinals or stiffeners pass through the member. Where the width of notch exceeds 15 per cent of the stiffener spacing, the weld factor is to be multiplied by:

$$\frac{0,85 \times \text{stiffener spacing}}{\text{length of web plating between notches}}$$

4.10.3 Where direct calculation procedures have been adopted, the weld factors for the  $0,2 \times$  overall length at the ends of the members will be considered in relation to the calculated loads.

4.10.4 The throat thickness limits given in Table 6.4.2 are to be complied with.

**Material and Welding Requirements****Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6**

Section 4

**Table 6.4.3 Connections of primary structure**

| Primary member face area, in cm <sup>2</sup> |               | Position <sup>(1)</sup> | Weld factor         |                     |               |                     |
|----------------------------------------------|---------------|-------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------------|
| Exceeding                                    | Not exceeding |                         | In tanks            |                     | In dry spaces |                     |
|                                              |               |                         | To face plate       | To plating          | To face plate | To plating          |
|                                              | 30,0          | At ends                 | 0,21                | 0,27                | 0,21          | 0,21                |
|                                              |               | Remainder               | 0,10                | 0,16                | 0,10          | 0,13                |
| 30,0                                         | 65,0          | At ends                 | 0,21                | 0,34                | 0,21          | 0,21                |
|                                              |               | Remainder               | 0,13                | 0,27                | 0,13          | 0,16                |
| 65,0                                         | 95,0          | At ends                 | 0,34                | 0,44 <sup>(3)</sup> | 0,21          | 0,27                |
|                                              |               | Remainder               | 0,27 <sup>(2)</sup> | 0,34                | 0,16          | 0,21                |
| 95,0                                         | 130,0         | At ends                 | 0,34                | 0,44 <sup>(3)</sup> | 0,27          | 0,34                |
|                                              |               | Remainder               | 0,27 <sup>(2)</sup> | 0,34                | 0,21          | 0,27                |
| 130,0                                        |               | At ends                 | 0,44                | 0,44 <sup>(3)</sup> | 0,34          | 0,44 <sup>(2)</sup> |
|                                              |               | Remainder               | 0,34                | 0,34                | 0,27          | 0,34                |

**NOTES**

1. The weld factors 'at ends' are to be applied for 0,2 x the overall length of the member from each end, but at least beyond the toes of the member end brackets. On vertical webs the increased welding may be omitted at the top, but is to extend at least 0,3 x overall length from the bottom.
2. Where the web plate thickness is increased locally, the weld size may be based on the thickness clear of the increase, but is to be not less than 0,34 x the increased thickness.
3. The weld factor of the connection of bottom transverses to shell, and of side transverses to shell and vertical webs to longitudinal and transverse bulkheads all in the lower half depth, is to be not less than 0,34.
4. The final throat thickness of the weld fillet to be not less than 0,34t<sub>p</sub> in oil tanks.

**Table 6.4.4 Primary and secondary member end connection welds**

| Connection                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Weld area, A <sub>w</sub> , in cm <sup>2</sup>                        | Weld factor          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| (1) Stiffener welded direct to plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | 0,25A <sub>s</sub> or 6,5 cm <sup>2</sup><br>whichever is the greater | 0,34                 |
| (2) Bracketless connection of stiffeners or stiffener lapped to bracket or bracket lapped to stiffener:<br>(a) in dry space<br>(b) in tank<br>(c) in 0,15L forward                                                                                                                                                                       | 1,2 $\sqrt{Z}$<br>1,4 $\sqrt{Z}$<br>as (a) or (b)                     | 0,27<br>0,34<br>0,34 |
| (3) Bracket welded to face of stiffener and bracket connection to plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | —                                                                     | 0,34                 |
| (4) Stiffener to plating for 0,1 x span at ends, or in way of end bracket if that be greater                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | —                                                                     | 0,34                 |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                       |                      |
| A <sub>s</sub> = cross sectional area of the stiffener, in cm <sup>2</sup><br>A <sub>w</sub> = the area of the weld, in cm <sup>2</sup> , and is calculated as total length of weld, in cm, x throat thickness, in cm<br>Z = the section modulus, in cm <sup>2</sup> , of the stiffener on which the scantlings of the bracket are based |                                                                       |                      |
| <b>NOTE</b><br>For maximum and minimum weld fillet sizes, see Table 6.4.2.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                       |                      |

4.10.5 Where a margin angle is not fitted the sheerstrake connection is to be in accordance with Table 6.4.5.

#### 4.11 Primary and secondary member end connection welds

4.11.1 Welding of end connections of primary members is to be such that the area of welding is not less than the cross-sectional area of the member, and the weld factor is to be not less than 0,34 in tanks or 0,27 elsewhere.

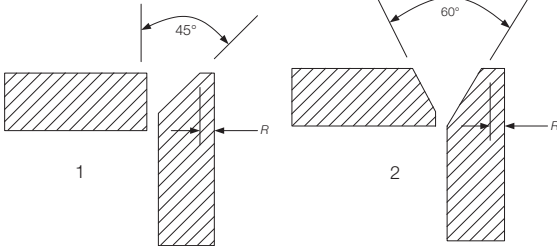
4.11.2 The welding of secondary member end connections is to be not less than as required by Table 6.4.4. Where two requirements are given, the greater is to be complied with.

4.11.3 The area of weld, A<sub>w</sub>, is to be applied to each arm of the bracket or lapped connection.

4.11.4 Where a longitudinal strength member is cut at a primary support and the continuity of strength is provided by brackets, the area of weld is to be not less than the cross-sectional area of the member.

**Table 6.4.5 Weld connection of strength deck plating to sheerstrake**

| Item | Stringer plate thickness, mm | Weld type                                                                                                                                                                |
|------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1    | $t \leq 15$                  | Single vee preparation to provide included angle of $45^\circ$ with root $R \leq \frac{1}{3}t$ in conjunction with a continuous fillet weld having a weld factor of 0,39 |
| 2    | $15 < t \leq 25$             | Double vee preparation to provide included angle of $60^\circ$ with root $R \leq \frac{1}{3}t$ in conjunction with a continuous fillet weld having a weld factor of 0,39 |
| 3    | $t > 25$                     | Triple vee preparation to provide included angles of $50^\circ$ with root $R \leq \frac{1}{3}t$ but not to exceed 10 mm                                                  |



**NOTES**

1. Welding procedure, including joint preparation, is to be specified. Procedure is to be qualified and approved for individual Builders.
2. See also 4.13.1.
3. For thickness  $t$  in excess of 20 mm the stringer plate may be bevelled to achieve a reduced thickness at the weld connection. The length of the bevel is in general to be based on a taper not exceeding 1 in 3 and the reduced thickness is in general to be not less than 0,65 times the thickness of stringer plate or 20 mm, whichever is the greater.
4. Alternative connections will be considered.

4.11.5 The scantlings of brackets are to be in accordance with Part 6, as appropriate.

4.11.6 The throat thickness limits given in Table 6.4.2 are to be complied with.

#### 4.12 Tank boundary penetrations

4.12.1 Where structural members pass through the boundary of a tank, and leakage into the adjacent space could be hazardous or undesirable, full penetration welding is to be adopted for the members for at least 150 mm on each side of the boundary. Alternatively a small scallop of suitable shape may be cut in the member close to the boundary outside the compartment, and carefully welded all round.

#### 4.13 Intersection of primary and secondary members

4.13.1 The weld area of the connections is to be generally not less than the following:

(a) Connection of primary member stiffener to the secondary member:

$A_w = 0,25A_f$  or 6,5 cm<sup>2</sup>, whichever is the greater, corresponding to a weld factor of 0,34 for the throat thickness.

(b) Connection of secondary member to the web of the primary member:

$A_w = 0,5 \sqrt{Z}$  corresponding to a weld factor of 0,34 in tanks or 0,27 in dry spaces for the throat thickness

where

$A_w$  = weld area, in cm<sup>2</sup>, and is calculated as total length of weld, in cm, multiplied by throat thickness, in cm

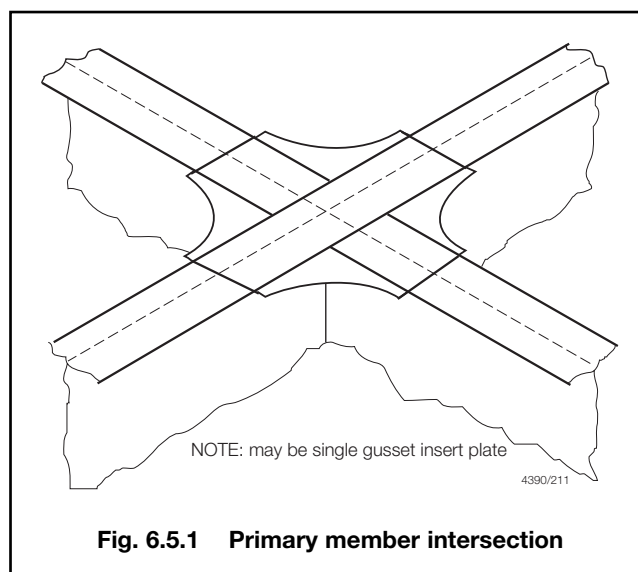
$A_f$  = cross-sectional area of the primary member web stiffener, in cm<sup>2</sup>, in way of connection

$Z$  = the section modulus, in cm<sup>3</sup>, of the secondary member.

### Section 5 Construction details

#### 5.1 Continuity and alignment

5.1.1 Continuity is to be maintained where primary members intersect and where the members are of the same depth, a suitable gusset plate or brackets are to be fitted, see Fig. 6.5.1.



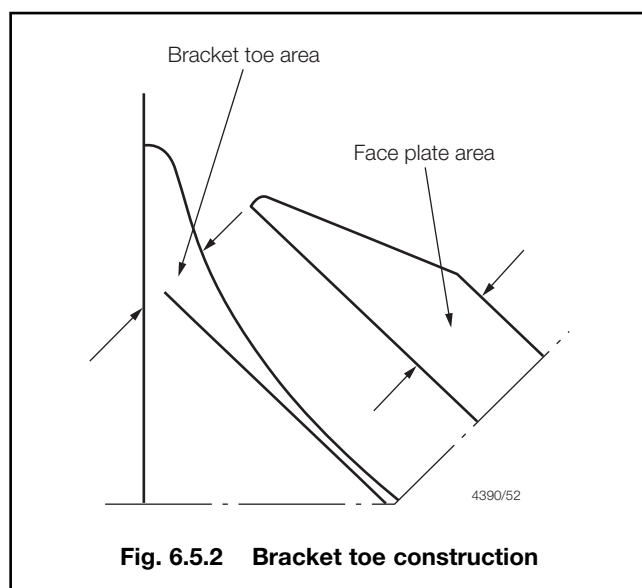
5.1.2 The toes of brackets, etc., are not to land on unstiffened panels of plating. Special care is to be taken to avoid notch effects at the toes of brackets, by making the toe concave or otherwise tapering it off.

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 5

5.1.3 Particular care is to be paid to the design of the end bracket toes in order to minimise stress concentrations. Sniped face plates which are welded onto the edge of primary member brackets are to be carried well around the radiused bracket toe and are to incorporate a taper not exceeding one in three. Where sniped face plates are welded adjacent to the edge of primary member brackets, adequate cross sectional area is to be provided through the bracket toe at the end of the snipe. In general, this area measured perpendicular to the face plate, is to be not less than 60 per cent of the full cross-sectional area of the face plate, see Fig. 6.5.2.



**Fig. 6.5.2 Bracket toe construction**

## 5.2 Primary end connections

5.2.1 The requirements for section modulus and inertia (if applicable) of primary members are given in the appropriate Chapter. The scantling requirements for primary member end connections in dry spaces and in tanks of all ship types are generally to comply with the requirements of Ch 2,3, taking  $Z$  as the section modulus of the primary member.

5.2.2 Guidance on the arrangement of primary stiffeners is given in Pt 3 Ch 2,3.2.

5.2.3 Connections between primary members forming a ring system are to minimise stress concentrations at the junctions. Integral brackets are generally to be radiused or well rounded at their toes. The arm length of the bracket, measured from the face of the member, is to be not less than the depth of the smaller member forming the connection.

5.2.4 The requirements of this Section may be modified where direct calculation procedures are adopted to analyse the stress distribution in the primary structure.

5.2.5 The geometric properties of the members are to be calculated in association with an effective width of attached plating determined in accordance with Ch 2,2.2.

5.2.6 The minimum thickness or area of material in each component part of the primary member is given in Table 6.5.1.

**Table 6.5.1 Minimum thickness of primary members**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Requirement                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Member web plate<br>(see Note)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | $t_w = 0,01S_w$<br>but not less than 6 mm in dry spaces<br>and not less than 7 mm in tanks |
| (2) Member face plate                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | $A_f$ not to exceed $\frac{d_w t_w}{150} \text{ cm}^2$                                     |
| (3) Deck plating forming the upper flange of underdeck girders                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Plate thickness not less than $\sqrt{\frac{A_f}{1,8k}} \text{ mm}$                         |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                            |
| $d_w$ = depth of member web, in mm<br>$k$ = higher tensile steel factor, see Chapter 2<br>$t_w$ = thickness of member web, in mm<br>$A_f$ = area of member face plate or flange, in $\text{cm}^2$<br>$S_w$ = spacing of stiffeners on member web, or depth of unstiffened web, in mm |                                                                                            |
| <b>NOTE</b><br>For primary members having a web depth exceeding 1500 mm, the arrangement of stiffeners will be individually considered, and stiffening parallel to the member face plate may be required.                                                                            |                                                                                            |

## 5.3 Secondary member end connections

5.3.1 Secondary members, that is longitudinals, beams, frames and bulkhead stiffeners forming part of the hull structure, are to be effectively continuous and are to be suitably bracketed at their end connections. Where it is desired to adopt bracketless connections, the proposed arrangements will be individually considered, see also Table 6.4.3.

5.3.2 Where bracketed end connections are fitted in accordance with these requirements, they may be taken into account in determining the effective span of the member.

5.3.3 The scantlings of secondary member end connections are to be in accordance with 5.4.

## 5.4 Scantlings of end brackets

5.4.1 For a naval ship, longitudinal strength members are to be continuous through primary supports. In exceptional cases for ships having a military distinction notation **MD** and in areas not subject to significant fatigue loading, longitudinal strength members may be cut at a primary support and the continuity of strength is to be provided by brackets. In such cases the scantlings of the brackets are to be such that their section modulus and effective cross-sectional area are not less than those of the member. Care is to be taken to ensure correct alignment of the brackets on each side of the primary member.

5.4.2 In other cases the scantlings of the bracket are to be based on the modulus as follows:

- Bracket connecting stiffener to primary member – modulus of the stiffener.
- Bracket at the head of a main transverse frame where frame terminates – modulus of the frame.
- Brackets connecting lower deck beams or longitudinals to the main frame in the forward  $0,5L_R$  – modulus of the frame.
- Elsewhere – the lesser modulus of the members being connected by the bracket.

5.4.3 The web thickness and face flat area of end brackets are not in general to be less than those of the connecting stiffeners. Additionally, the stiffener proportion requirements of Ch 2,2.9 are to be satisfied.

5.4.4 Typical arrangements of stiffener end brackets are shown diagrammatically in Fig. 6.5.3.

5.4.5 The lengths,  $d_a$  and  $b_a$ , of the arms are to be measured from the plating to the toe of the bracket and are to be such that:

- $d_a + b_a \geq 2,0l_b$
- $d_a \geq 0,8l_b$
- $b_a \geq 0,8l_b$

where

$a$  and  $b$  are the actual lengths of the two arms of the bracket, in mm, measured from the plating to the toe of the bracket

$$l_b = 90 \left( 2 \sqrt{\frac{Z}{14 + \sqrt{Z}}} - 1 \right) \text{ mm}$$

$Z$  = the section modulus of the secondary member, in  $\text{cm}^3$ . In no case is  $l_b$  to be taken as less than twice the web depth of the stiffener on which the bracket scantlings are to be based.

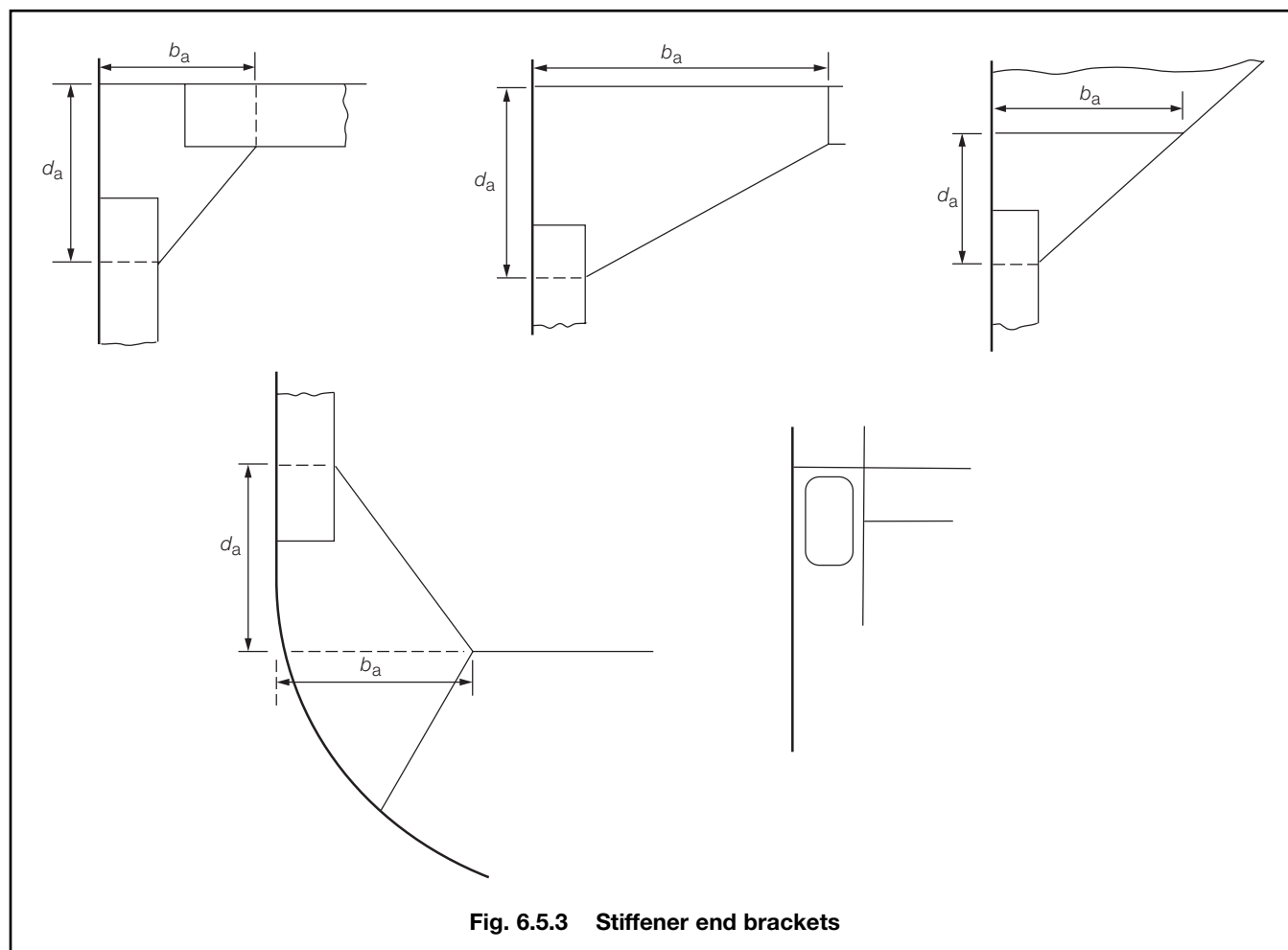


Fig. 6.5.3 Stiffener end brackets

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 5

5.4.6 The scantlings of deep web frames are based on the inclusion of the standard brackets specified in 5.4.5 at top and bottom, while the scantlings of side frames are normally to be based on a standard bracket at the top only. Where the actual arm lengths fitted,  $d_{a1}$ , and  $b_{a1}$  (in mm) are smaller than Rule size above or the bracket is omitted then, for comparison purposes, an equivalent arm length,  $l_a$ , is to be derived from:

$$(a) \quad l_a = \frac{(d_{a1} + b_{a1})}{2}$$

$$(b) \quad d_{a1} \geq 0,8l_a$$

$$(c) \quad b_{a1} \geq 0,8l_a$$

$$(d) \quad l_a = 0$$

where

- (i) bracket is omitted from the upper or lower ends of the frame, or
- (ii) lower frame bracket at bilge is at same level as the inner bottom, or
- (iii) lower frame is welded directly to the inner bottom.

5.4.7 The free edge of the bracket is to be stiffened where any of the following apply:

- (a) The section modulus,  $Z$ , exceeds 2000 cm<sup>3</sup>.
- (b) The length of free edge exceeds 50 times the bracket thickness.
- (c) The bracket is fitted at the lower end of main transverse side framing.

5.4.8 Where a face flat is fitted, its breadth,  $b_f$ , is to be not less than:

$$b_f = 40 \left( 1 + \frac{Z}{1000} \right) \text{ mm but not less than 50 mm.}$$

5.4.9 Where the edge is stiffened by a welded face flat, the cross-sectional area of the face flat is to be not less than:

- (a)  $0,009k_s b_f t_b$  cm<sup>2</sup> for offset edge stiffening.
  - (b)  $0,014k_s b_f t_b$  cm<sup>2</sup> for symmetrically placed stiffening.
- $b_f$  = breadth of face flat, in mm  
 $t_b$  = the thickness of the bracket, in mm  $k_s$  is as defined in Ch 2,1.3.1.

5.4.10 Where the stiffening member is lapped on to the bracket, the length of overlap is to be adequate to provide for the required area of welding. In general, the length of overlap is not to be less than  $10\sqrt{Z}$  mm, or the depth of stiffener, whichever is the greater.

5.4.11 Where the free edge of the bracket is hollowed out, it is to be stiffened or increased in size to ensure that the modulus of the bracket through the throat is not less than that of the required straight edged bracket.

5.4.12 The arrangement of the connection between the stiffener and the bracket is to be such that at no point in the connection is the actual modulus reduced to less than that of the stiffener with associated plating.

5.4.13 The design of end connections and their supporting structure is to be such as to provide adequate resistance to rotation and displacement of the joint.

5.4.14 The thickness of the bracket is to be not less than as required by Table 6.5.2.

## 5.5 Arrangement at intersection of primary and secondary members

5.5.1 Lugs or tripping brackets are to be fitted where shell longitudinals are continuous through web frames in way of highly stressed areas of the side shell (e.g. in way of equipment supports, bollards, fenders, etc.).

5.5.2 Lugs or tripping brackets are also to be fitted where continuous secondary stiffeners are greater than half the depth of the primary stiffeners.

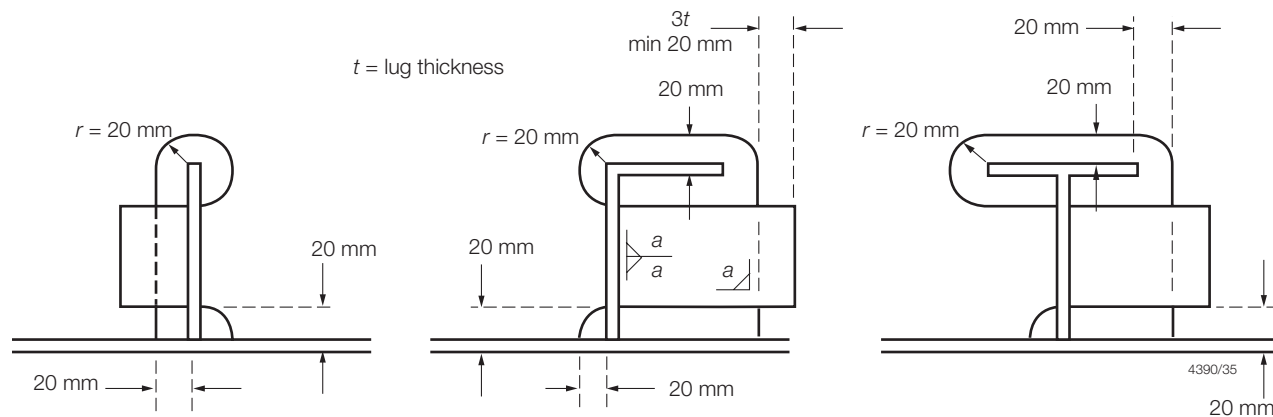
5.5.3 Cut outs in primary members are to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2,3.2.11 and 3.2.12.

5.5.4 Cut-outs for the passage of secondary members through the webs of primary members, and the related collaring arrangements, are to be designed to minimise stress concentrations around the perimeter of the opening and in the attached hull envelope or bulkhead plating. The critical shear buckling stress of the panel in which the cut-out is made is to be investigated. Cut-outs for longitudinals will be required to have double lugs in areas of high stress. Some typical lug connections are shown in Fig. 6.5.4 and Fig. 6.5.5, see 5.5.12.

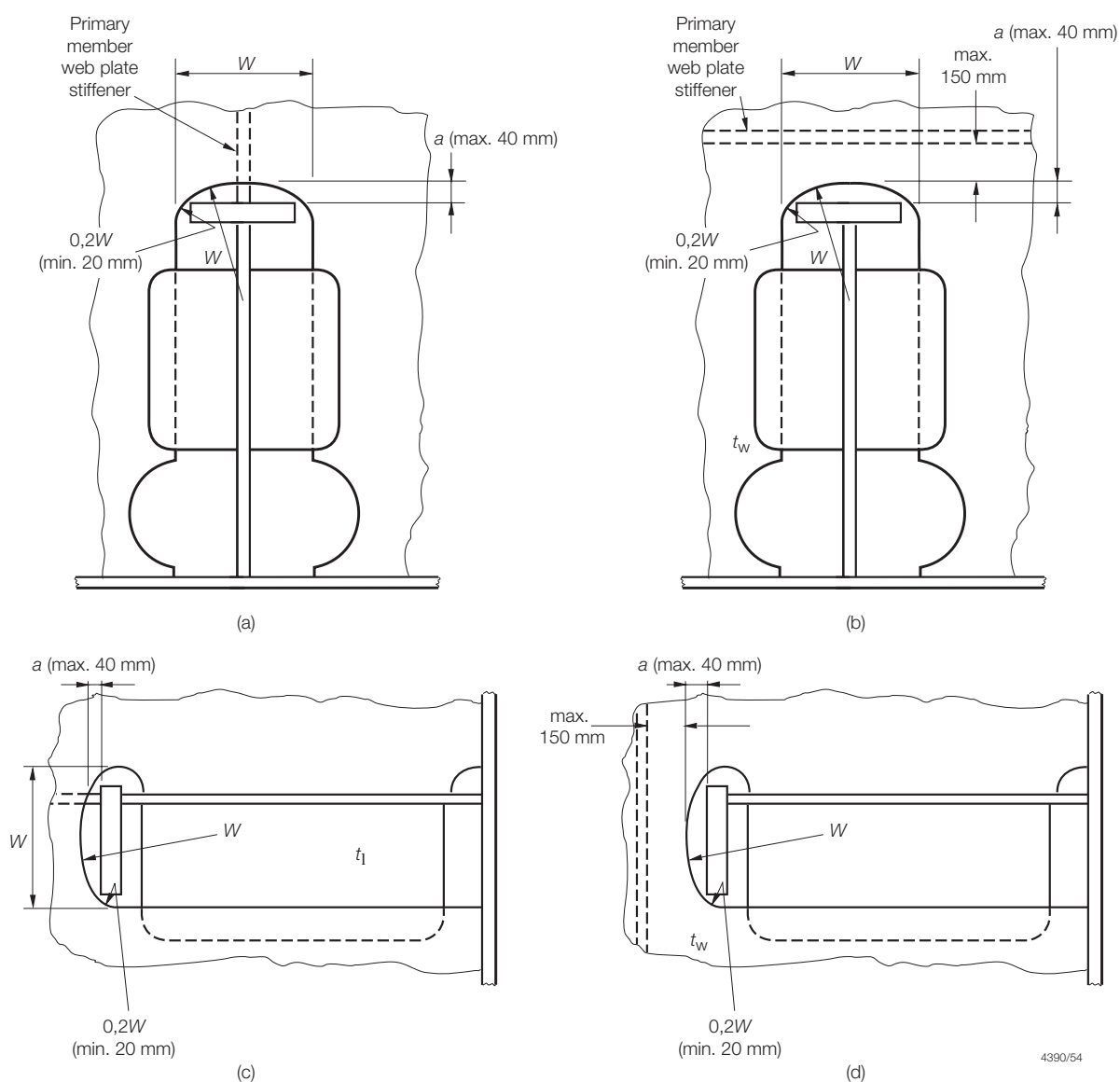
**Table 6.5.2 Thickness of end brackets**

| Bracket               | Thickness, in mm                                                         | Limits         |                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|
|                       |                                                                          | Minimum, in mm | Maximum, in mm |
| With edge stiffened:  |                                                                          |                |                |
| (a) in dry spaces     | $3,5 + 0,25\sqrt{Z}$                                                     | 6,5            | 12,5           |
| (b) in deep tanks     | $4,5 + 0,25\sqrt{Z}$                                                     | 7,5            | 13,5           |
| Unstiffened brackets: |                                                                          |                |                |
| (a) in dry spaces     | $5,5 + \left( \frac{Z}{55} \right) - \left( \frac{Z}{168} \right)^{1/3}$ | 7,5            |                |
| (b) in deep tanks     | $6,5 + \left( \frac{Z}{55} \right) - \left( \frac{Z}{168} \right)^{1/3}$ | 8,5            |                |





**Fig. 6.5.4 Typical lug connections**



**Fig. 6.5.5 Cut-out and connections**

5.5.5 The breadth of cut-outs is to be as small as practicable, with the top edge suitably radiused. Cut-outs are to have smooth edges, and the corner radii are to be as large as practicable, with a minimum of 20 per cent of the breadth of the cut-out or 20 mm, whichever is the greater. For large cut-outs greater than 250 mm deep, it is recommended that the web plate connection to the hull envelope, or bulkhead, end in a smooth tapered 'soft toe'. Recommended shapes of cut-out are shown in Fig. 6.5.5, but consideration will be given to other shapes on the basis of maintaining equivalent strength and minimising stress concentration.

5.5.6 Consideration is to be given to the provision of adequate drainage and unimpeded flow of air and water when designing the cut-outs and connection details.

5.5.7 Asymmetrical secondary members are to be connected on the heel side to the primary member web plate. Additional connection by lugs on the opposite side may be required.

5.5.8 Symmetrical secondary members are to be connected by lugs on one or both sides, as necessary.

5.5.9 Where a bracket is fitted to the primary member web plate in addition to a connected stiffener it is to be arranged on the opposite side to, and in alignment with the stiffener. The arm length of the bracket is to be not less than the depth of the stiffener, and its cross-sectional area through the throat of the bracket is to be included in the calculation of  $A_f$ , see 4.13.1.

5.5.10 In general where the primary member stiffener is connected to the secondary member it is to be aligned with the web of the secondary member, except where the face plate of the latter is offset and abutted to the web, in which case the stiffener connection is to be lapped. Lapped connections of primary member stiffeners to mild steel bulb plate or rolled angle secondary members may also be permitted. Where such lapped connections are fitted, particular care is to be taken to ensure that the primary member stiffener wrap around weld connection is free from undercut and notches.

5.5.11 Fabricated longitudinals having the face plate welded to the underside of the web, leaving the edge of the web exposed, are not recommended for side shell and longitudinal bulkhead longitudinals. Where it is proposed to fit such sections, a symmetrical arrangement of connection to transverse members is to be incorporated. This can be achieved by fitting backing brackets on the opposite side of the transverse web or bulkhead. The primary member stiffener and backing brackets are to be lapped to the longitudinal web, see 5.5.10.

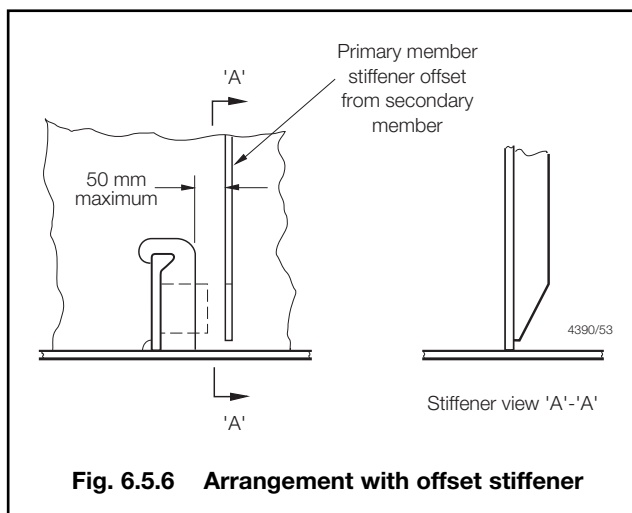
5.5.12 The cross-sectional areas of the connections are to be determined from the proportion of load transmitted through each component in association with the appropriate permissible stress given in Table 6.5.3.

**Table 6.5.3 Permissible stresses**

| Item                                                                         | Direct stress<br>N/mm | Shear stress<br>N/mm |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| Primary web plate stiffener adjacent to connection with secondary member     | 157                   | —                    |
| Welded connection of primary member web plate stiffener to secondary member: |                       |                      |
| Double continuous fillet                                                     | 117,7                 | —                    |
| Automatic deep penetration                                                   | 157                   | —                    |
| Lug or collar plate and weld connection                                      | —                     | 98,1                 |

## 5.6 Arrangement with offset stiffener

5.6.1 Where the stiffeners of the double bottom floors and transverse bulkheads are unconnected to the secondary members and offset from them (see Fig. 6.5.6) the collar arrangement for the secondary members are to satisfy the requirements of 5.5.4. In addition, the fillet welds attaching the lugs to the secondary members are to be based on a weld factor of 0,44 for the throat thickness. To facilitate access for welding the offset stiffeners are to be located 50 mm from the slot edge furthest from the web of the secondary member. The ends of the offset stiffeners are to be suitably tapered and softened.



**Fig. 6.5.6 Arrangement with offset stiffener**

5.6.2 Alternative arrangements will be considered on the basis of their ability to transmit load with equivalent effectiveness. Details of the calculations made and testing procedures are to be submitted.

5.6.3 For ships with shock enhancement notation, see Pt 4, Ch 2,4.

## 5.7 Watertight collars

5.7.1 Watertight steel collars are to be fitted, where stiffeners are continuous through watertight or oiltight boundaries.

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 5

5.7.2 Watertight steel collars or equivalent are to be fitted at gastight boundary.

## 5.8 Insert plates

5.8.1 Where thick insert plates are butt welded to thin plates, the edge of the thick plate may require to be tapered. The slope of the taper is generally not to exceed one in three.

5.8.2 The corners of insert plates are generally to be suitably radiused.

5.8.3 For ships with shock enhancement, see Pt 4, Ch 2.

## 5.9 Doubler plates

5.9.1 Doubler plates are to be avoided and are not to be fitted in areas where corrosion may be a problem and access for inspection and maintenance is limited.

5.9.2 Where doubler plates are fitted, they are to have well radiused corners and the perimeter is to be continuously welded. Large doubler plates are also to be suitably slot welded, the details of which are to be submitted for consideration.

## 5.10 Other fittings and attachments

5.10.1 Gutterway bars and spurnwaters are not to be welded to boundary angles, or within 100 mm of the deck edge.

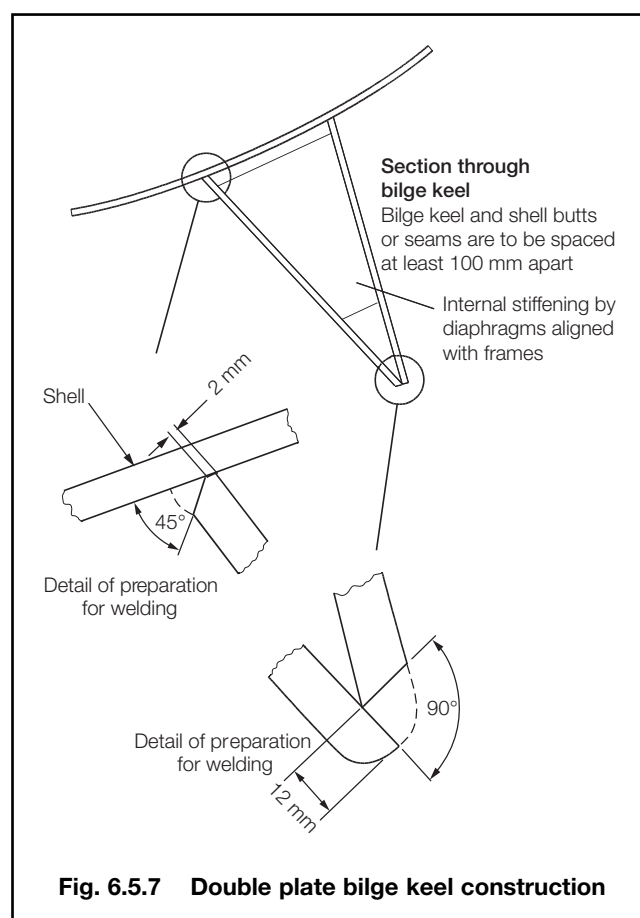
5.10.2 Minor attachments, such as pipe clips, staging lugs and supports, are generally to be kept clear of toes of end brackets, corners of openings and similar areas of high stress. Where connected to asymmetrical stiffeners, the attachments may be in line with the web providing the fillet weld leg length is clear of the offset face plate or flange edge. Where this cannot be achieved the attachments are to be connected to the web, and in the case of flanged stiffeners they are to be kept at least 25 mm clear of the flange edge. On symmetrical stiffeners, they may be connected to the web or to the centre-line of the face plate in line with the web.

5.10.3 Where necessary in the construction of the ship, lifting lugs may be welded to the hull plating but they are not to be slotted through.

## 5.11 Bilge keels and ground bars

5.11.1 Bilge keel plating is to be attached to the shell plating as shown in Fig. 6.5.7. Butt and seam welds in shell plating and bilge keels are to be staggered by at least 100 mm.

5.11.2 The shell plating in way of the bilge keel is to be at least grade D. Insert plates of 50 per cent greater thickness than the as fitted surrounding shell plate are to be fitted. They are to be greater than 300 x 300 mm<sup>2</sup> with well rounded corners.



5.11.3 The thickness of the bilge keel is to be assessed using the appropriate scantling equation for shell envelope plating. To prevent possible damage to the shell, the bilge keel plate is not to be thicker than the adjacent shell plate. The material class, grade and quality of the bilge keel plating is to be the same as the adjacent shell plating, see Table 6.2.1.

5.11.4 Full continuous welding is to be used to connect the bilge keel to the shell.

5.11.5 The ends of the bilge keels are to have a 1 in 3 taper and terminate within 300 mm to 100 mm past an internal frame. Suitable internal framing is to be arranged in way of the ends of the bilge keels where, for hydrodynamic reasons, a steeper taper is necessary, the termination of the bilge keels will be especially considered.

5.11.6 For ships over 65 m in length, all welds are to be subject to non-destructive examination.

5.11.7 Bilge keels of an alternative design from that shown in Fig. 6.5.7 with single plate construction or fitted with ground bars will be specially considered.

5.11.8 Internal stiffening is to be arranged in line with hull framing but is not to be attached to the shell plating.

5.11.9 Bilge keels are to be watertight and tested in accordance with Section 6.

5.11.10 The internal surfaces of the bilge keel and stiffening are to be suitably protected against corrosion.

## 5.12 Rivetting of light structure

5.12.1 Where it is proposed to adopt rivetted construction, full details of the rivets or similar fastenings, including mechanical test results, are to be indicated on the construction plans submitted for approval or a separate rivetting schedule is to be submitted.

5.12.2 Samples may be required of typical rivetted joints made by the Builder under representative construction conditions and tested to destruction in the presence of the Surveyor in shear, tension, compression or peel at LR's discretion.

5.12.3 Where rivetting strength data sheets have been issued by a recognised Authority, the values quoted in these sheets will normally be accepted for design purposes.

5.12.4 Where two dissimilar metals are to be joined by rivetting, precautions are to be taken to eliminate electrolytic corrosion to LR's satisfaction, and where practicable, the arrangements are to be such as to enable the joint to be kept under observation at each survey without undue removal of lining and other items.

5.12.5 Where a sealing compound is used to obtain an airtight or watertight joint, details are to be submitted of its proposed use and of any tests made or experience gained in its use for similar applications.

5.12.6 Sealing paints or compounds are not to be used with hot driven rivets.

## 5.13 Adhesive bonding of structure

5.13.1 Where adhesive bonding of any load-bearing structure is proposed, details of the materials and the processes to be used are to be submitted for approval. These details are to include test results of samples manufactured under LR survey under workshop conditions to verify the strength, ageing effects and moisture resistance of a typical joint.

5.13.2 The adhesive manufacturer's recommendations in respect of the specified jointing system, comprising preparation of the surfaces to be adhered, the adhesive, bonding and curing processes, are to be strictly followed as variation of any step can severely affect the performance of the joint.

5.13.3 Meticulous preparation is essential where the joint is to be made by chemical bonding. The method of producing bonded joints is to be documented so that the process is repeatable after the procedure has been properly established.

5.13.4 Bonded joints are suitable for carrying shear loads, but are not, in general, to be used in tension or where the load causes peeling or other forces tending to open the joint. Loads are to be carried over as large an area as possible.

5.13.5 Bonded joints are to be suitably supported after assembly for the period necessary to allow the optimum bond strength of the adhesive to be developed. Air pockets are to be avoided.

5.13.6 The use of adhesive for main structural joints is not to be contemplated unless considerable testing has established its validity, including environmental testing and fatigue testing where considered necessary by LR.

## 5.14 Triaxial stress considerations

5.14.1 Particular care is to be taken to avoid triaxial stresses which may result from poor joint design.

## 5.15 Aluminium/steel transition joints

5.15.1 Provision is made in this Section for bi-metallic composite aluminium/steel transition joints used for connecting aluminium structures to steel plating. Such joints are to be used in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements, see also Ch 8,4 of the Rules for Materials.

5.15.2 Where a manufacturer is not approved, details of the materials to be used and the manufacturing procedures are to be submitted for approval before use.

5.15.3 Bimetallic joints where exposed to seawater or used internally within wet spaces are to be suitably protected to prevent galvanic corrosion.

5.15.4 Control of heat input is required when welding the transition joints to the steel structure in order to prevent disbondment.

## 5.16 Steel/wood connection

5.16.1 To minimise corrosion of steel when in contact with wood in a damp or marine environment the timber is to be primed and painted in accordance with good practice. Alternatively the surface of the steel in contact with the timber is to be coated with a substantial thickness of a suitable sealant.

## ■ Section 6 Inspection and testing procedures

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 A structural and leak test plan is to be submitted defining the compartments or tanks to be tested and the method of testing in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

6.1.2 Although referred to as watertight, some compartments or tanks may require to be tested as gastight or oil tight.

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

## Section 6

6.1.3 The testing requirements for tanks, including independent tanks, watertight and weathertight compartments, are listed in Table 6.6.1. Tests are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyor at a stage sufficiently close to completion such that the strength and tightness are not subsequently impaired by subsequent work.

**Table 6.6.1 Testing requirements**

| Item to be tested                                                                                                        | Testing procedure             | Installation testing requirement                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Double bottom tanks                                                                                                      | Structural (1)                | The greater of:<br>— head of water up to the top of the overflow<br>— head of water representing the maximum pressure experienced in service for which elastic design criteria were used |
| Cofferdams                                                                                                               | Structural (1)                | The greater of:<br>— head of water up to the top of the overflow<br>— 1,8 m head of water above highest point of tank (4)                                                                |
| Fore peak and after peak used as tank (3)                                                                                | Structural                    |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Tank bulkheads                                                                                                           | Structural (1)                | The greater of:<br>— head of water up to the top of the overflow<br>— 1,8 m head of water above the highest point of tank (4)<br>— setting pressure of the safety valves, where relevant |
| Deep tanks                                                                                                               | Structural (1)                |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Fuel oil tanks                                                                                                           | Structural                    |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Scupper and discharge pipes in way of tanks                                                                              | Structural (1)                |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Sea inlet boxes                                                                                                          | Structural (1)<br>Sonar domes | — head of water up to the damage control deck/ vee line                                                                                                                                  |
| Speed and depth instrument compartments                                                                                  | Structural (1)                | — head of water up to the damage control deck/ vee line<br>— top of the header tank                                                                                                      |
| Double plate rudders                                                                                                     | Structural (1) and (5)        | — 2,4 m head of water, and rudder should normally be tested while laid on its side                                                                                                       |
| Double plate bilge keels                                                                                                 | Structural (1)                | — head of water up to the design waterline                                                                                                                                               |
| Watertight bulkheads, shaft tunnels, flats and recesses, etc.                                                            | Hose (2)                      | see 6.6                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Watertight doors, hatches and closing appliances (below the vertical limit of watertight integrity) when fitted in place | Hose (6) and (7)              |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Weathertight hatch covers, doors and closing appliances (above the vertical limit of watertight integrity)               | Hose                          |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Fore peak not used as tank                                                                                               | Hose (2)                      |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Chain locker, if aft of collision bulkhead                                                                               | Structural                    | — head of water up to the top of the overflow pipe                                                                                                                                       |
| Independent/Separate fuel oil tanks<br>Filling trunks                                                                    | Structural                    | — head of water representing the maximum pressure which could be experienced in service for which elastic design criteria were used, but not less than 3,5 m                             |
| After peak not used as tank                                                                                              | Leak                          | see 6.5                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Magazines                                                                                                                | Leak (6) and (8)              | see 6.5                                                                                                                                                                                  |

### NOTES

1. Leak or hydropneumatic testing may be accepted, provided that at least one tank of each type is structurally tested, to be selected in connection with the approval of the design, see 6.7.
2. When hose testing cannot be performed without damaging possible outfittings already installed, it may be replaced by a careful visual inspection of all the crossings and welded joints. Where necessary, dye penetrant test or ultrasonic leak test may be required.
3. Where applicable testing of the after peak is to be carried out after the stern tube has been fitted.
4. The highest point of the tank is generally to exclude hatchways.
5. If leak or hydropneumatic testing is carried out, arrangements are to be made to ensure that no pressure in excess of 0,30 bar (0,30 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) can be applied.
6. Watertight doors and hatches to be supplied with a test certificate stating the maximum pressure head for which they are suitable. For large watertight closing appliances that cannot be tested see Pt 4, Ch 3,3.4 or 4.3.
7. See also SOLAS Reg. II-1/18. Where the door has had the full hydrostatic test before installation, the hose test may be replaced by careful visual examination after full operational tests.
8. If the magazine is required to contain an overpressure, for example due to a fire, the testing requirements are to be specified by the Naval Authority.

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

Section 6

## 6.2 Definitions

6.2.1 For the purpose of these procedures the following definitions apply:

- (a) Protective coating is the coating system applied to protect the structure from corrosion. This excludes the prefabrication primer.
- (b) Structural testing is a hydrostatic test carried out to demonstrate the tightness of the tanks and the structural adequacy of the design. Where practical limitations prevail and hydrostatic testing is not feasible, hydropneumatic testing (see (e)) may be carried out instead.
- (c) Leak testing is an air or other medium test carried out to demonstrate the tightness of the structure.
- (d) Hose testing is carried out to demonstrate the tightness of structural items not subjected to hydrostatic or leak testing, and other components which contribute to the watertight or weathertight integrity of the hull.
- (e) Hydropneumatic testing is a combination of hydrostatic and air testing, consisting of filling the tank with water and applying an additional air pressure. The conditions are to simulate, as far as practicable, the actual loading of the tank and in no case is the air pressure to be less than given in 6.5.

## 6.3 Testing arrangements

6.3.1 For tank and compartment penetrations not fitted with closing devices adjacent to the boundary, temporary closing devices are to be provided and stowed near to the penetration for periodic testing by ships staff.

6.3.2 The testing of watertight doors, hatches and similar fittings are to be tested in such a manner as to force them off their seatings.

6.3.3 Bathrooms are to be tested with a flood to the level of the sill.

6.3.4 All Scupper soil and urinal pipes are to be tested to the maximum head experienced in service.

6.3.5 All piping systems are to be tested in accordance with Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 1,16.

## 6.4 Structural testing

6.4.1 Generally all tanks or compartments that carry liquid in bulk are to be structurally tested at build.

6.4.2 Where it is intended to carry out structural tests after the protective coating has been applied welds are to be leak tested prior to the coating application.

6.4.3 For welds other than manual and automatic erection welds, manual fillet welds on tank boundaries and manual penetration welds, the leak test may be waived provided that careful visual inspection is carried out, to the satisfaction of the Surveyor, before the coating is applied. The cause of any discolouration or disturbance of the coating during the test is to be ascertained, and any deficiencies repaired.

6.4.4 Compartments to be tested are to be structurally complete and all fittings which affect the watertight integrity of the compartment such as doors, hatches, manholes, penetrations, valves and glands are to be fitted.

6.4.5 In compartments containing the stabiliser fins, rudder stocks, sonar hull outfit, echo sounders, etc., the bearing houses are to be installed and the seating arrangements completed before testing.

6.4.6 Arrangements are to be provided to ensure the free passage of air from the top of the tank tested. The air pipe or indicator test plug may be used for this purpose.

6.4.7 Where necessary, additional temporary supports are to be fitted to the hull to prevent excessive deformation.

6.4.8 Structural testing may be carried out afloat where testing using water is undesirable in dry dock or on the building berth. The testing afloat is to be carried out by separately filling each tank and cofferdam to the test head given in Table 6.6.1. An internal inspection of the tanks is to be made whilst the ship is afloat.

6.4.9 Where permitted by Table 6.6.1, complete structural testing may be replaced by a combination of leak and structural testing, as follows: the leak test is generally to be carried out on each tank while the craft is in dry dock or on the building berth:

- (a) Double bottom tanks and cofferdams may be leak tested on the berth, and structural tests carried out afloat.
- (b) All deep tanks are to be structurally tested.
- (c) Interconnecting deep and double bottom tanks and 'flume' type stabilisation tanks are to be structurally tested to the test head given in Table 6.6.1.

6.4.10 Equivalent proposals for testing will be considered.

6.4.11 It is recommended that a leak test in accordance with 5.7 is carried out before the structural test commences to identify any leak paths which may compromise the structural test.

## 6.5 Leak testing

6.5.1 Generally all boundaries for watertight subdivision are to be given a leak test when structural work is complete. The test is to be carried out before the compartment is fitted out and linings or covering applied.

# Material and Welding Requirements

# Volume 1, Part 6, Chapter 6

*Section 6*

6.5.2 Testing is to be carried out by applying an efficient indicating liquid, e.g. soapy water solution, to the weld or outfitting penetration being tested, while the tank or compartment is subject to an air pressure of at least 0,15 bar (0,15 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>).

6.5.3 It is recommended that the air pressure be raised to 0,2 bar (0,2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) and kept at this level for about one hour to reach a stabilised state, with a minimum number of personnel in the vicinity, and then lowered to the test pressure prior to inspection.

6.5.4 A U-tube filled with water to a height corresponding to the test pressure is to be fitted for verification and to avoid over-pressure. The U-tube is to have a cross-section larger than that of the air supply pipe. In addition, the test pressure is to be verified by means of a calibrated pressure gauge, or alternative equivalent system.

6.5.5 Leak testing is to be carried out, prior to the application of a protective coating, on all fillet welds and erection welds on tank boundaries, except welds made by automatic processes and on all outfitting penetrations.

6.5.6 Selected locations of automatic erection welds and pre-erection manual or automatic welds may also be required to be tested before coating, at the discretion of the Surveyor.

## 6.6 Hose testing

6.6.1 Hose testing is to be carried out on all structure that is required to be weathertight and has not been tested by structural or air testing.

6.6.2 Testing is to be carried out at a maximum distance of 1,5 m with a hose pressure not less than 2,0 bar (2,0 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>). The nozzle diameter is not to be less than 12 mm. The jet is to be targeted directly onto the weld or seal being tested.

6.6.3 The duration of hose testing is to be at the discretion of the Surveyor. Leaks are to be marked, repaired and retested until no water leakage is detected.

## 6.7 Hydropneumatic testing

6.7.1 When this is performed, the safety precautions identified in 6.5 are to be followed.

## 6.8 Gastight testing

6.8.1 Where gastight testing is requested by the Naval Authority the boundaries of citadels and zones defined in Pt 4, Ch 1,7 are to be tested for gas tightness using a pressure drop test. In addition, compartments containing noxious or explosive gases such as Acetone, Dope, Flammable stores, Oxygen, etc., are to be subject to a pressure drop test.

6.8.2 The test is to be carried out with compartment as near to completion as possible. Further work on a compartment after the test may result in a retest.

6.8.3 The pressure in the compartment is to be brought to 0,015 bar (0,015 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) (150 mm of fresh water) and the supply isolated. The fall in pressure after 10 minutes is not to be greater than 0,0013 bar (0,0013 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) (13 mm of fresh water).

6.8.4 A U-tube filled with water to a height corresponding to the test pressure is to be fitted for verification and to avoid over-pressure. The U-tube is to have a cross-section larger than that of the air supply pipe.

6.8.5 If the pressure drop specified in 6.8.3 occurs, the compartment is to be inspected for leaks and the test repeated until the specified standard is achieved.

6.8.6 In certain compartments that are not able to be made fully gastight due to operational requirements, a greater fall in pressure may be accepted at the discretion of the Surveyor. In no case is the pressure to drop more than 0,0075 bar (0,0075 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) (75 mm of fresh water) in 10 minutes from an initial 0,015 bar (0,015 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) (150 mm of fresh water).

6.8.7 Consideration will be given to the testing of adjacent boundaries or equivalent in those spaces which are not able to be closed, such as gun rings and main machinery spaces.







© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013  
Published by Lloyd's Register  
*Registered office*  
71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS  
United Kingdom

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 1

Part 7 Enhanced Structural Assessment  
(Provisional)

January 2013

---

|             |                  |                                                                   |
|-------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PART        | 1                | REGULATIONS                                                       |
| PART        | 2                | RULES FOR THE MANUFACTURE, TESTING AND CERTIFICATION OF MATERIALS |
| PART        | 3                | DESIGN PRINCIPLES AND CONSTRUCTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS                 |
| PART        | 4                | MILITARY DESIGN AND SPECIAL FEATURES                              |
| PART        | 5                | ENVIRONMENTAL LOADS                                               |
| PART        | 6                | HULL CONSTRUCTION IN STEEL                                        |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>7</b>         | <b>ENHANCED STRUCTURAL ASSESSMENT</b>                             |
|             | <b>Chapter 1</b> | <b>General</b>                                                    |
|             | <b>2</b>         | <b>Total Design Loads</b>                                         |
|             | <b>3</b>         | <b>Total Load Assessment, TLA</b>                                 |

|                |          |                                                                                             |
|----------------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>GENERAL</b>                                                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General</b>                                                                              |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                                                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Total Load Assessment, TLA</b>                                                           |
|                | 2.1      | Total Load Assessment notation –TLA                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Structural Design Assessment, SDA</b>                                                    |
|                | 3.1      | Structural Design Assessment notation – SDA                                                 |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>TOTAL DESIGN LOADS</b>                                                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General</b>                                                                              |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                                                                 |
|                | 1.2      | Overview of total design loads                                                              |
|                | 1.3      | Environmental conditions                                                                    |
|                | 1.4      | Direct calculations                                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Nomenclature and design factors</b>                                                      |
|                | 2.1      | Nomenclature                                                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Design load combinations</b>                                                             |
|                | 3.1      | General                                                                                     |
|                | 3.2      | Design cases for load combinations                                                          |
|                | 3.3      | Design global loads – Intact conditions                                                     |
|                | 3.4      | Design global loads – Damaged conditions or Residual Strength Assessment (RSA) conditions   |
|                | 3.5      | Inertial force load combination factor, $w_f$                                               |
|                | 3.6      | External shell pressures                                                                    |
|                | 3.7      | Vertical wave shear forces                                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Design load systems for longitudinally effective components</b>                          |
|                | 4.1      | Bottom shell structures (BS)                                                                |
|                | 4.2      | Side shell structures (SS)                                                                  |
|                | 4.3      | Strength deck and internal deck structures (DK)                                             |
|                | 4.4      | Inner bottom structures (IB)                                                                |
|                | 4.5      | Longitudinal bulkhead structures (LB)                                                       |
|                | 4.6      | Bottom longitudinal girders (BG)                                                            |
|                | 4.7      | Deck girders (DG)                                                                           |
|                | 4.8      | Longitudinal stringers (ST)                                                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Design load systems for structural components or longitudinally ineffective material</b> |
|                | 5.1      | Deck structures (DK)                                                                        |
|                | 5.2      | Transverse watertight and deep tank bulkheads (BH)                                          |
|                | 5.3      | Deckhouses, bulwarks and superstructures (DH)                                               |
|                | 5.4      | Transverse floors (FL)                                                                      |
|                | 5.5      | Side frames and web frames (SF)                                                             |
|                | 5.6      | Deck beams (BM)                                                                             |
|                | 5.7      | Pillars (PI)                                                                                |
|                | 5.8      | Pillar bulkheads (PB)                                                                       |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>TOTAL LOAD ASSESSMENT, TLA</b>                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>Introduction</b>                                                                         |
|                | 1.1      | General                                                                                     |
|                | 1.2      | Structural design                                                                           |

---

|                |          |                                                                                                |
|----------------|----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Structural resistance</b>                                                                   |
|                | 2.1      | Assessment of stresses in structural components                                                |
|                | 2.2      | Stresses in plating                                                                            |
|                | 2.3      | Stresses in secondary and primary member stiffeners                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Stress analysis model</b>                                                                   |
|                | 3.1      | General                                                                                        |
|                | 3.2      | Stress determination in primary members                                                        |
|                | 3.3      | Stress determination in primary/secondary systems                                              |
|                | 3.4      | Stress determination in grillage systems                                                       |
|                | 3.5      | Derivation of the combined longitudinal stress on panels subjected to hull girder bending      |
|                | 3.6      | Derivation of the combined transverse stress acting on panels subjected to hull girder bending |
|                | 3.7      | Derivation of the total shear stress                                                           |
|                | 3.8      | Derivation of the combined transverse stress acting on transversely orientated panels          |
|                | 3.9      | Derivation of the combined vertical stress acting on transversely orientated panels            |
|                | 3.10     | Derivation of the total shear stress on transversely orientated panels                         |
|                | 3.11     | Derivation of total stresses in stiffener flanges                                              |
|                | 3.12     | Derivation of total equivalent stress                                                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Structural design factors</b>                                                               |
|                | 4.1      | General                                                                                        |
|                | 4.2      | Design criteria for the Total Load Assessment (TLA) approach                                   |
|                | 4.3      | Presentation of results                                                                        |

*Section*

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Total Load Assessment, TLA**
- 3 **Structural Design Assessment, SDA**

■ **Section 1**  
**General**

**1.1 Application**

1.1.1 This Part gives the procedures that may be optionally applied for the structural design and assessment of all naval ships. Ships which comply with these requirements will be eligible to be assigned the additional class notations applicable to each procedure. The full list of class notations is given in Pt 1, Ch 2.

1.1.2 The requirements for the following additional class notations are included within this Part:

- TLA** Total Load Assessment.
- SDA** Structural Design Assessment.

■ **Section 2**  
**Total Load Assessment, TLA**

**2.1 Total Load Assessment notation – TLA**

2.1.1 The **TLA** procedure is an optional procedure and is applied on a voluntary basis.

2.1.2 The ship's structure is examined using a total load approach and stress analysis techniques.

2.1.3 The total load approach applies static, hydro-dynamic and inertial load components to the structure making due allowance for the local structural configuration. These load components include global and local considerations. The approach includes load combination factors which enable the total design loads to take account of the appropriate phase relationships between the various load parameters, e.g., relative vertical motion and global bending moment.

2.1.4 The stress analysis techniques predict the total stresses acting in the structure as a consequence of the total loads. These techniques cover the assessment of stresses in either primary/secondary plating systems or grillage systems.

2.1.5 The resulting stresses are then checked against a set of design factors, which include stress, deflection and buckling requirements.

2.1.6 Due to the nature of the **TLA** approach it is possible to achieve the following:

- (a) Allow the designer to examine different loading scenarios;
- (b) Optimise the structure towards particular design solutions.

2.1.7 The **TLA** procedure is in addition to the normal Rule structural design approval requirements specified within Pt 6, Ch 3.

2.1.8 The requirements for the **TLA** method are given in Chapters 2 and 3. Chapter 2 contains the requirements for the total design loads to be applied to the structure and Chapter 3 contains the requirements for the stress analysis and verification to be performed using these loads.

■ **Section 3**  
**Structural Design Assessment, SDA**

**3.1 Structural Design Assessment notation – SDA**

3.1.1 The **SDA** procedure is an optional procedure and is applied on a voluntary basis when an Owner or designer seeks to increase confidence levels in the structural integrity of a ship.

3.1.2 The ship structure is to be examined using finite plate element methods to assess both the overall and detailed structural capability to withstand static and dynamic loadings.

3.1.3 The **SDA** procedure is in addition to the normal Rule structural design approval requirements specified within Pt 6, Ch 3.

3.1.4 The **SDA** procedure may be mandatory for very structurally complex ships. For complex ships, the ship designer is to supply outline details of the ship to Lloyd's Register at an early stage in the design in order that agreement can be reached on the appropriate level of analysis required.

3.1.5 Where applicable, the ship structure is to be examined for the structural capability to withstand dynamic loadings from partially filled tanks or the influence of thermal loadings.





# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 1

## Section

|   |                                                                                             |
|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <b>General</b>                                                                              |
| 2 | <b>Nomenclature and design factors</b>                                                      |
| 3 | <b>Design load combinations</b>                                                             |
| 4 | <b>Design load systems for longitudinally effective components</b>                          |
| 5 | <b>Design load systems for structural components or longitudinally ineffective material</b> |

## Section 1 General

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter specifies the method by which the total design loads for the optional Total Load Assessment, **TLA**, approach are derived. The **TLA** approach is given in Chapter 3, an overview of the **TLA** approach is given in Ch 3,1 and illustrated in Fig. 3.1.1 in Chapter 3.

1.1.2 The total design loads derived in this Chapter are also to be used to form the basic load cases for the optional Structural Design Assessment, **SDA**, procedure, see Ch 1,3.1.

1.1.3 The total design loads are derived by combining the local and global design loads, defined in Pt 5, Ch 3 and Pt 5, Ch 4 respectively, using load combination factors. These loads represent typical maximum values of combined loads that are simultaneously applied to the structure of a ship.

1.1.4 The total design loads given in this Chapter are applicable to all naval ships which are operating in the displacement mode.

1.1.5 The total design loads for ships that are operating in the planing or non-displacement modes will need to be specially considered. The loads given here are applicable for these ships whilst they are operating in the displacement mode, i.e. in severe sea states when planing is not possible.

### 1.2 Overview of total design loads

1.2.1 The total design loads to be applied to each structural item are to include the following load and pressure components where applicable:

- global hull girder stress due to vertical bending,  $\sigma_{hg}$ , in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, derived in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 4;
- global hull girder shear stress loads,  $\tau_{hg}$ , in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, derived in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 4;
- local pressure loads,  $P$ , in kN/m<sup>2</sup>, where  $P$  is the appropriate design pressure value for each component;
- local transverse, LT, or vertical support, LV, loads, in kN;
- mass inertial forces, in kN;
- local shear force loads, in kN.

1.2.2 In addition to the above loads, it may be necessary to consider the effects of the following on the structural components:

- bending of primary structure supported by major bulkheads;
- bending of primary structure supported by the side shell or longitudinal bulkheads;
- lateral bending moments and shear forces;
- global and local torsional moments.

1.2.3 Most of the above load components include a dynamically fluctuating component due to ship motions, e.g. side shell pressure due to wave and ship motion. These loads will not all be maximum simultaneously, due to their cyclic nature and the phase relationship between load values. Consequently it is not necessary to apply the maximum values of all these load components to the structure at the same time. Section 3 gives a method of combining these loads in order that representative total design loads may be applied to the structure.

1.2.4 The method of deriving the Total Design Loads for each structural component is given in Sections 4 and 5. However, it remains the responsibility of the designer to ensure that the loads applied are representative.

1.2.5 Details of all the loads applied to each structural component are to be supplied to Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').

1.2.6 The major load components to be applied to, or reacted by, the structure are illustrated in Fig. 2.1.1.

### 1.3 Environmental conditions

1.3.1 The environmental conditions for the determination of the total design loads are to be based on the normal environmental design criteria specified in Pt 5, Ch 2,2.3 unless otherwise stated.

1.3.2 The standard values of wave height factor,  $f_{Hs}$ , and service area factor,  $f_s$ , given in Pt 5, Ch 3,1.2.2 and Pt 5, Ch 2,2.4 respectively are to be used for the total design loads unless otherwise stated. These factors may be adjusted for damaged loading conditions, residual strength analysis, **RSA**, or for special operating conditions, e.g. a deep draft condition for the recovery of amphibious vehicles in sheltered waters.

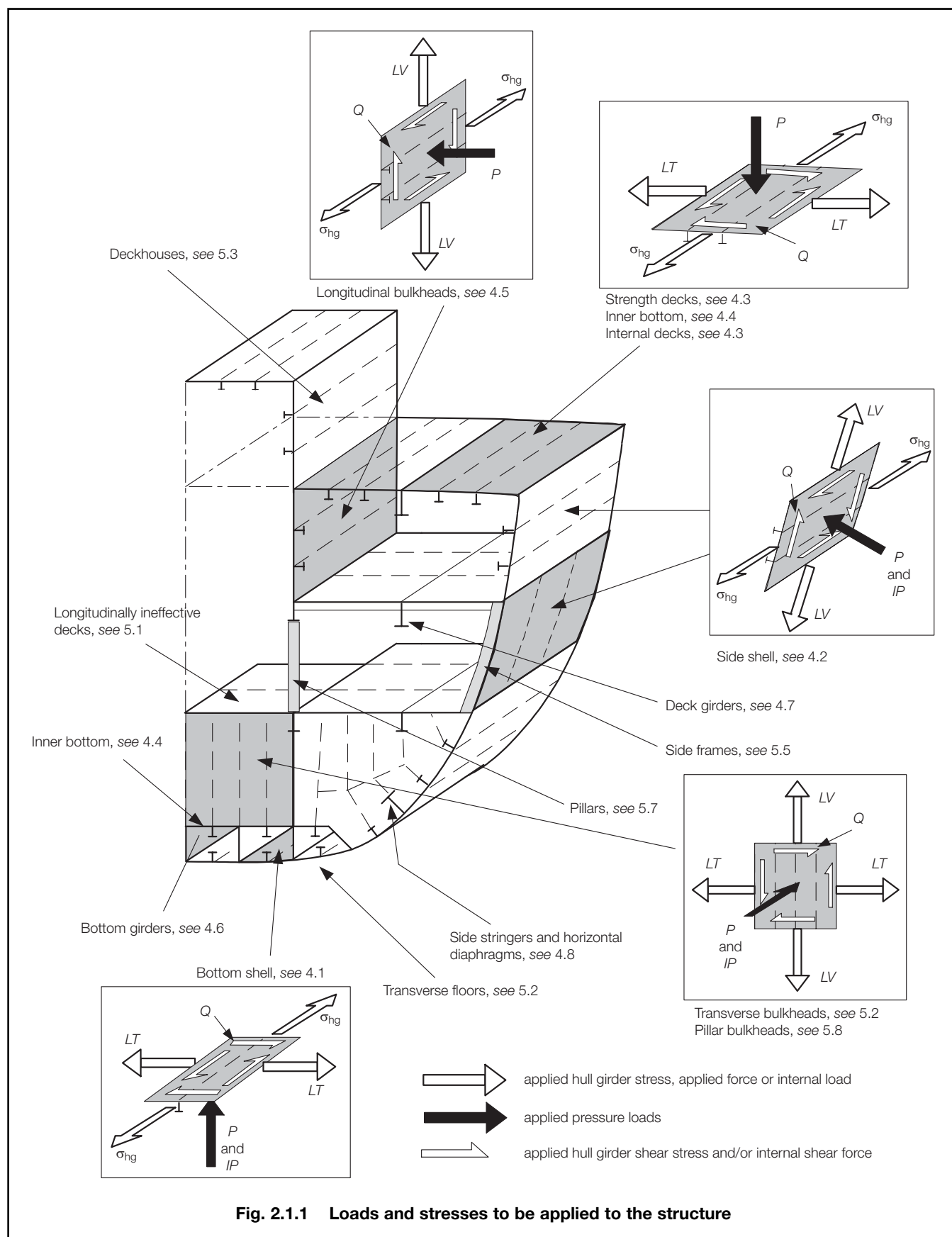
### 1.4 Direct calculations

1.4.1 Alternative methods of establishing the total design loads will be specially considered, provided that they are based on established codes or standards acceptable to LR. In such cases, full details of the methods used are to be provided when plans are submitted for approval.

# Total Design Loads

## Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 1



**Fig. 2.1.1 Loads and stresses to be applied to the structure**

# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Sections 1 & 2

1.4.2 Throughout this Chapter, recommended values of effectiveness,  $\epsilon$ , are given for each structural component. These effectiveness values specify the proportion of a particular load carried by a structural component as opposed to other supporting structure, see the text for more details. These efficiency values may be derived by direct calculation, similar ship analysis or other suitable techniques. The methods used and values derived are to be agreed with LR.

## Section 2 Nomenclature and design factors

### 2.1 Nomenclature

2.1.1 The nomenclature used in this Chapter to describe the loads applied to or reacted by the structure and local dimensional characteristics, e.g. breadths and spans, is based on the following format:

$A_{\text{Suffix}}$

where

The letter  $A$  is the load type or dimension letter and is one of the following:

#### Load types

- $P$  denotes an applied normal pressure load, i.e. normal to the plate
- $IP$  denotes an applied impulse or impact pressure load
- $F$  denotes an applied point load due to gravity and mass inertial effects
- $LV$  denotes an internally generated load acting in the predominantly vertical direction as a consequence of applied forces and pressures, e.g. pillar bulkhead compressive loads
- $LT$  denotes an internally generated load acting in the predominantly transverse direction as a consequence of applied forces and pressures, e.g. transverse deck compressive loads
- $QV$  denotes a shear force due to local load considerations acting in the predominantly vertical direction
- $QT$  denotes a shear force due to local load considerations acting in the predominantly transverse direction
- $\sigma$  denotes a direct stress to apply as a consequence of hull girder bending
- $\tau$  denotes a direct shear stress to apply as a consequence of hull girder shear forces

#### Dimensions

- $B$  breadth, in metres, of an area of supported plate or dimension of a structural member.  $B$  is always measured in the transverse direction
- $S$  length of an area of supported plating or dimension of a structural member.  $S$  is always measured in the longitudinal direction
- $H$  height of an area of supported plating or dimension of a structural member.  $H$  is always measured in the vertical direction

**Suffix** is either of the following:

- Lower case to denote a local load value which was derived in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 3
- Upper case to denote a resultant load value that is applied to the structural item under consideration.

2.1.2 The symbols used in this Chapter for loads are given below:

#### Local load or pressure components

- $P_h$  = shell envelope hydrostatic pressure, see Pt 5, Ch 3,3.2
- $P_w$  = shell envelope hydrodynamic pressure, see Pt 5, Ch 3,3.3
- $P_{wd}$  = pressure on weather deck, see Pt 5, Ch 3,3.5
- $IP_{bi}$  = bottom impact pressure, see Pt 5, Ch 3,4.2
- $IP_{bf}$  = Bow flare or above waterline impact pressure, see Pt 5, Ch 3,4.3
- $P_{in}$  = pressure on internal deck, see Pt 5, Ch 3,5.3
- $P_{cd}$  = pressure on cargo deck, see Pt 5, Ch 3,5.4
- $P_{ra}$  = pressure on ramps or lifts, see Pt 5, Ch 3,6.2
- $H_{tk}$  = pressure height for tank bulkheads, see Pt 5, Ch 3,5.6
- $H_{da}$  = pressure height for watertight bulkheads, see Pt 5, Ch 3,5.7

#### Design loads and pressures for structural components

- $P_{BS}$  = design pressure for bottom structure
- $P_{SS}$  = design pressure for side shell structure
- $P_{DK}$  = design pressure for deck structure
- $P_{WD}$  = design pressure for weather deck
- $P_{ID}$  = design pressure for interior deck
- $P_{IB}$  = design pressure for inner bottom
- $P_{LB}$  = design pressure for longitudinal bulkheads
- $P_{FL}$  = design pressure for bottom floors and transverses
- $P_{DH}$  = design pressure for deckhouse, bulwarks and superstructures plating
- $P_{DT}$  = design pressure for deep tank bulkheads
- $P_{WT}$  = design pressure for watertight bulkheads
- $L_{PI}$  = design load carried by pillars
- $L_{PB}$  = design load carried by pillar bulkheads
- $P_{CD}$  = design pressure to be applied to cargo decks
- $F_{CD}$  = design load due to discreet mass items to be applied to decks
- $P_{IMP}$  = design pressure for decks subject to impulsive loads
- $P_{WI}$  = design pressure for deckhouse and super structure windows
- $QT_{DK}$  = local shear force for deck plating
- $QT_{FL}$  = local shear force for floors
- $QV_{BG}$  = local shear force for bottom girders

#### NOTE

- [F] denotes a force matrix, i.e. a group of forces which are applicable to the structural item under consideration.

2.1.3 Other symbols and definitions applicable to this Chapter are defined below or in the appropriate sub-Section:

$T$  and  $L_R$  are defined in Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2.

2.1.4 The units for pressures are in  $\text{kN/m}^2$  and the units for loads and forces are in  $\text{kN}$ . Stresses are in  $\text{N/mm}^2$ . Positive loads and stresses are tensile, negative are compressive.

# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Sections 2 & 3

2.1.5 The design pressure,  $p$ , used in scantling formulae in Ch 3,2 is to be taken as the appropriate pressure value defined in this Chapter.

2.1.6 For a direct calculation using finite element (FE) analysis, only loads and pressures with a load type letter of  $P$ ,  $IP$  or  $F$  are normally to be applied to the FE structural model. Load type letters  $\sigma_{hg}$  and  $\tau_{hg}$  may need to be applied as global bending moments and shear forces, i.e.  $M_D$  and  $Q_D$ , depending on the extent of the FE structural model.

3.1.2 Special load case combinations may be required to reflect specific operational requirements of the vessel, e.g. sea state 6 operation with the stern well dock flooded for amphibious operations. The details of such operational modes together with any service limitations are to be recorded in the design disclosure document and the Operations Manual, Loading Manual or Stability Information Book.

3.1.3 Proposals for deriving the load combinations using direct calculation techniques are to be agreed with LR at the earliest opportunity.

## Section 3 Design load combinations

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 The local and global loads given in Pt 5, Ch 3 and Ch 4 do not include any allowance for phase relationships between the various loadings. These loads are not all maximum at the same time and consequently it is not correct to apply all loads simultaneously to the structure. The purpose of this Section is to define the phase relationships and hence allow typical maximum load combinations to be applied to the structure.

### 3.2 Design cases for load combinations

3.2.1 The load combinations given in Table 2.3.1 are the minimum to be considered for the assessment of the scantlings. Additional load combination cases may be required to demonstrate that the structure is adequate.

3.2.2 Each set of load combinations may need to be considered for individual loading conditions to account for differences in local loadings, e.g. different tank fillings, payload or other loadings. This may be performed either using:

1. an envelope approach with due consideration of full/empty tanks, etc., or
2. as individual load combination sets, in which case the actual still water bending moment and shear force distributions may be used together with the actual draft, trim and deadweight distribution.

**Table 2.3.1 Design load combination factors**

| Case No                            | 1                                                                                       | 2                                                             | 3                                                    | 4                                                               | 5                          | 6                                                 |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Design factor                      | Design Sag case<br>Crest at FP<br>Trough at $0,5L_R$                                    | Max pitch bow up<br>Crest at $0,75L_R$<br>Trough at $0,25L_R$ | Design Hog case<br>Crest at $0,5L_R$<br>Trough at FP | Max pitch bow down<br>Crest at $0,25L_R$<br>Trough at $0,75L_R$ | Roll case                  | Design factor affects the following loads         |
| $w_g$<br>(global loads)            | -1,0                                                                                    | $\frac{+\sin(\pi x/L_R)}{2}$                                  | +1,0                                                 | $\frac{-\sin(\pi x/L_R)}{2}$                                    | To be specially considered | $M_W, M_{WRS}, Q_W$ and $Q_{WRS}$ see 3.3 and 3.4 |
| $w_p$<br>(external pressure loads) | $+\cos(2\pi x/L_R)$                                                                     | $-\sin(2\pi x/L_R)$                                           | $+\cos(2\pi x/L_R)$                                  | $+\sin(2\pi x/L_R)$                                             | To be specially considered | $P_{SS}$ , see 3.6<br>LT<br>QT                    |
| $w_f$<br>(inertial loads)          | Combined heave and pitch design factor based on $w_{fheave}$ and $w_{fpitch}$ , see 3.5 |                                                               |                                                      |                                                                 |                            | $P_{CD}, F_{CD}$<br>LV, $L_A$                     |
| $w_{fheave}$<br>(heave inertial)   | +1                                                                                      | 0                                                             | -1                                                   | 0                                                               | To be specially considered |                                                   |
| $w_{fpitch}$<br>(pitch inertial)   | 0                                                                                       | +1                                                            | 0                                                    | -1                                                              | To be specially considered |                                                   |

#### NOTES

1. The factor  $w_g$  is to be applied to the dynamic portion of the load, see 3.3 and 3.4.
2. The factor  $w_p$  is to be applied to the dynamic portion of the load component, see 3.6.
3. The factor  $w_f$  is to be applied to the dynamic portion of the load component, see 3.5. The  $w_{fheave}$  and  $w_{fpitch}$  factors are required to consider the phasing between heave and pitch accelerations.
4.  $x$  is the longitudinal location under consideration.
5.  $\sin$  and  $\cos$  are the sine and cosine functions with the angle in radians.

# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 3

For example, it will be necessary to consider two design cases to review the double bottom tanks, i.e. one with the double bottom tank full and one with the double bottom tank empty.

3.2.3 Load combination cases 1 to 4 are based on the premise that the maximum wave bending moment and shear forces are likely to be generated on a wave that has the same length as the ship.

3.2.4 Each load case combination consists of a set of  $w$  factors, some of these combination factors are longitudinally position dependent factors, e.g. the  $w_p$  term will produce maximum pressure amidships and low pressures at the ends for the maximum hogging BM case.

## 3.3 Design global loads – Intact conditions

3.3.1 The design global hull girder vertical bending moment to be associated with the design load combination cases is as follows:

$$M_D = M_S + |w_g| M_W \text{ kNm}$$

where

$|w_g|$  = absolute value of  $w_g$

$M_S$  and  $M_W$  are the sagging or hogging values of  $M_S$  and  $M_W$  at the longitudinal position under consideration. If  $w_g$  is positive then the hogging values of  $M_S$  and  $M_W$  are to be taken, otherwise  $w_g$  is negative and the sagging values of  $M_S$  and  $M_W$  are to be taken.

$M_S$  and  $M_W$  are given in Pt 5, Ch 4,2.2 and 3.3.

$w_g$  is given in Table 2.3.1.

3.3.2 The design global hull girder vertical shear force to be associated with the design load combination cases is as follows:

$$Q_D = Q_S + |w_g| Q_W \text{ kN}$$

where

$|w_g|$  = absolute value of  $w_g$

$Q_S$  and  $Q_W$  are the sagging or hogging values of  $Q_S$  and  $Q_W$  at the longitudinal position under consideration. If  $w_g$  is positive then the hogging values of  $Q_S$  and  $Q_{WH}$  are to be taken, otherwise  $w_g$  is negative and the sagging values of  $Q_S$  and  $Q_{WS}$  are to be taken.

$Q_S$  is given in Pt 5, Ch 4,2.3.

$Q_{WS}$  and  $Q_{WH}$  are given in 3.7.

$w_g$  is given in Table 2.3.1.

## 3.4 Design global loads – Damaged conditions or Residual Strength Assessment (RSA) conditions

3.4.1 The design global hull girder vertical bending moments to be associated with the design load combination cases for residual strength assessment or damaged conditions is to be taken as follows:

$$M_D = M_{SRS} + |w_g| M_{WRS} \text{ kNm}$$

where

$|w_g|$  = absolute value of  $w_g$

$M_{SRS}$  and  $M_{WRS}$  are the sagging or hogging values of  $M_{SRS}$  and  $M_{WRS}$  at the longitudinal position under consideration. If  $w_g$  is positive then the hogging values of  $M_{SRS}$  and  $M_{WRS}$  are to be taken, otherwise  $w_g$  is negative and the sagging values of  $M_{SRS}$  and  $M_{WRS}$  are to be taken.

$M_{SRS}$  and  $M_{WRS}$  are given in Pt 5, Ch 4,5.6

$w_g$  is given in Table 2.3.1.

3.4.2 The design global hull girder vertical shear force to be associated with the design load combination cases for residual strength assessment or damaged conditions is to be taken as follows:

$$Q_D = Q_{SRS} + |w_g| Q_{WRS} \text{ kN}$$

where

$|w_g|$  = absolute value of  $w_g$

$Q_{SRS}$  and  $Q_{WRS}$  are the sagging or hogging values of  $Q_{SRS}$  and  $Q_{WRS}$  at the longitudinal position under consideration. If  $w_g$  is positive then the hogging values of  $Q_{SRS}$  and  $Q_{WRS,H}$  are to be taken, otherwise  $w_g$  is negative and the sagging values of  $Q_{SRS}$  and  $Q_{WRS,S}$  are to be taken.

$Q_{SRS}$  is given in Pt 5, Ch 4,5.6 and 5.4

$w_g$  is given in Table 2.3.1

$Q_{WRS,S}$  and  $Q_{WRS,H}$  are given in 3.7.2.

## 3.5 Inertial force load combination factor, $w_f$

3.5.1 The inertial force load combination factor,  $w_f$ , to be associated with the design load combination cases is as follows:

$$w_f = (1 + a_z)$$

where

$$a_z = w_{fheave} a_{heave} + w_{fpitch} a_{pitch}$$

$w_{fheave}$  and  $w_{fpitch}$  are to be taken for the appropriate loading condition, see Table 2.3.1

$a_{heave}$  and  $a_{pitch}$  are defined in Pt 5, Ch 3, Table 3.2.1.

## 3.6 External shell pressures

3.6.1 The side shell pressure,  $P_{SS}$ , to be applied to all external plating is to be derived as follows:

$$P_{SS} = P_h + w_p P_w \text{ kN/m}^2$$

but

$$P_{SS} \geq 0$$

$w_p$  is defined in Table 2.3.1

$P_h$  and  $P_w$  are defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.2 and 3.3.

3.6.2 The weather deck pressure,  $P_{WD}$ , to be applied to all external plating is to be derived as follows:

$$P_{WD} = P_h + w_p P_{wd} \text{ kN/m}^2$$

but

$$P_{WD} \geq 0$$

$w_p$  is defined in Table 2.3.1

$P_{wd}$  is defined in Pt 5, Ch 3,3.5.

## 3.7 Vertical wave shear forces

3.7.1 The wave shear force curves associated with the hogging and sagging bending moments required by the total load approach are to be taken as follows:

$$Q_{WH} = \text{shear force distribution to give the hogging bending moment} \\ = 3K_b M_o / L_R \text{ kN}$$

where

$K_b$  is to be taken as follows:

$$K_b = 0 \text{ at aft end of } L_R \\ = +0,836F_{TH} \text{ between } 0,2L_R \text{ and } 0,3L_R \\ = +0,65F_{TH} \text{ between } 0,4L_R \text{ and } 0,5L_R \\ = -0,65F_{TH} \text{ between } 0,5L_R \text{ and } 0,6L_R \\ = -0,91F_{TH} \text{ between } 0,7L_R \text{ and } 0,85L_R \\ = 0 \text{ at forward end of } L_R$$

$$Q_{WS} = \text{shear force distribution to give the sagging bending moment} \\ = 3K_b M_o / L_R \text{ kN}$$

where

$K_b$  is to be taken as follows:

$$K_b = 0 \text{ at aft end of } L_R \\ = +0,836F_{TS} \text{ between } 0,15L_R \text{ and } 0,3L_R \\ = +0,65F_{TS} \text{ between } 0,4L_R \text{ and } 0,5L_R \\ = +0,65F_{TS} \text{ between } 0,5L_R \text{ and } 0,6L_R \\ = -0,91F_{TS} \text{ between } 0,7L_R \text{ and } 0,85L_R \\ = 0 \text{ at forward end of } L_R$$

Intermediate values are to be determined by linear interpolation.

$M_o$ ,  $F_{TH}$  and  $F_{TS}$  are given in Pt 5, Ch 4,3.3.

3.7.2 The wave shear force associated with the residual strength assessment load cases or damaged load cases is to be taken as follows:

$$Q_{WRS,H} = \text{shear force distribution to give the hogging bending moment} \\ = K_{IRS} Q_{WH}$$

where

$Q_{WH}$  is taken as in 3.7.1

$K_{IRS}$  is given in Pt 5, Ch 4,5.2

$$Q_{WRS,S} = \text{shear force distribution to give the sagging bending moment} \\ = K_{IRS} Q_{WS}$$

where

$Q_{WS}$  is taken as in 3.7.1.

## Section 4 Design load systems for longitudinally effective components

### 4.1 Bottom shell structures (BS)

4.1.1 The design load values calculated here are to be used to determine the scantlings of bottom shell plating and stiffeners between the keel and the turn of bilge, see Fig. 2.4.1.

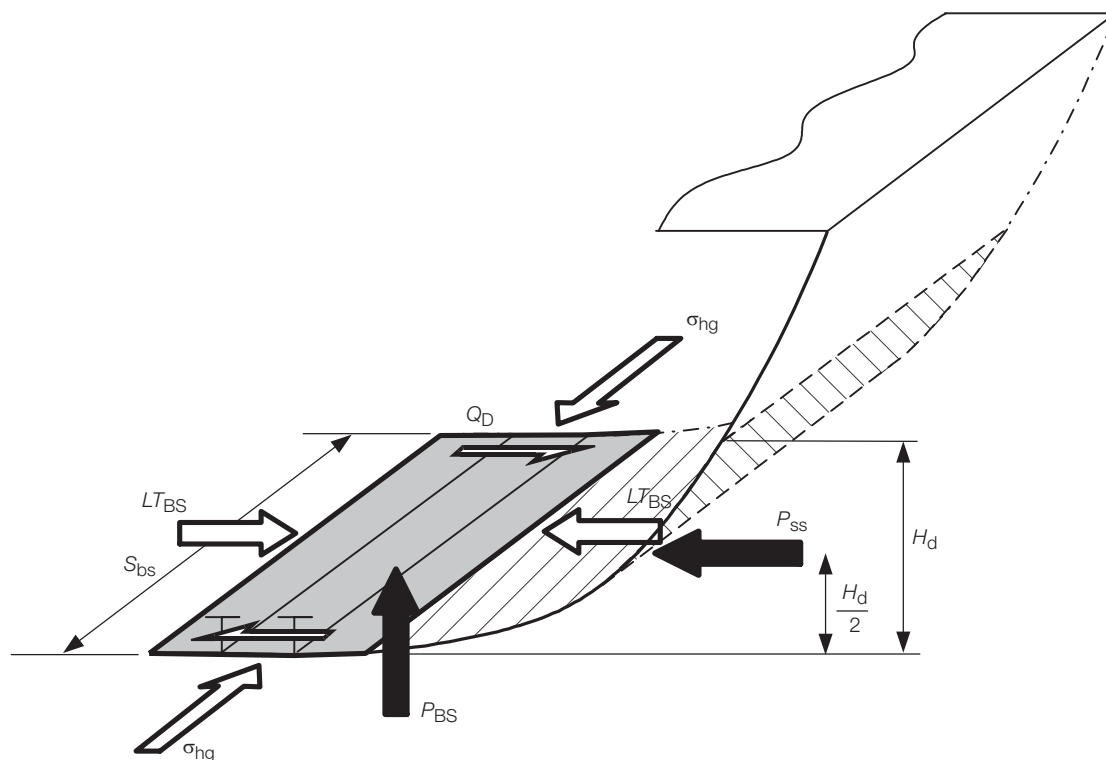


Fig. 2.4.1 Loads to be applied to bottom shell structure

# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

## Section 4

4.1.2 The design normal pressure,  $P_{BS}$ , for the bottom shell plating and stiffeners is to be taken as:

$$P_{BS} = P_{SS} \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$P_{SS}$  is defined in 3.6.1.

4.1.3 The design impulse pressure,  $IP_{BS}$ , for the bottom shell plating and stiffeners is to be taken as

$$IP_{bi} \text{ kN/m}^2 \text{ (bottom impact)}$$

where

$IP_{bi}$  is defined in 2.1.2.

4.1.4 The design global vertical bending moment for bottom shell plating and longitudinals is to be taken as  $M_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4.

4.1.5 The design transverse load,  $LT_{BS}$ , due to hydrostatic and hydrodynamic compressive loading is to be taken as follows:

$$LT_{BS} = -\epsilon_{BS} P_{SS} H_d S_{bs} \text{ kN}$$

where

$H_d$  = half the vertical distance from the keel to the first effective full breadth deck above the inner bottom, or above the keel, in m. If no effective full breadth decks exist, then  $H_d$  is to be taken to the strength deck.  $H_d$  is illustrated in Fig. 2.4.2

$S_{bs}$  = length of the bottom shell plating between major transverse bulkheads, in metres

$\epsilon_{BS}$  = effectiveness of the bottom shell plating, i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by the bottom shell as opposed to other structure such as the inner bottom, floors and bulkheads  
= 0,5 for full breadth double bottom structures  
= 1,0 for single bottom structures or partial breadth double bottom structures

$P_{SS}$  is to be taken at a height  $H_d/2$  above the keel.  $P_{SS}$  is defined in 3.6.1.

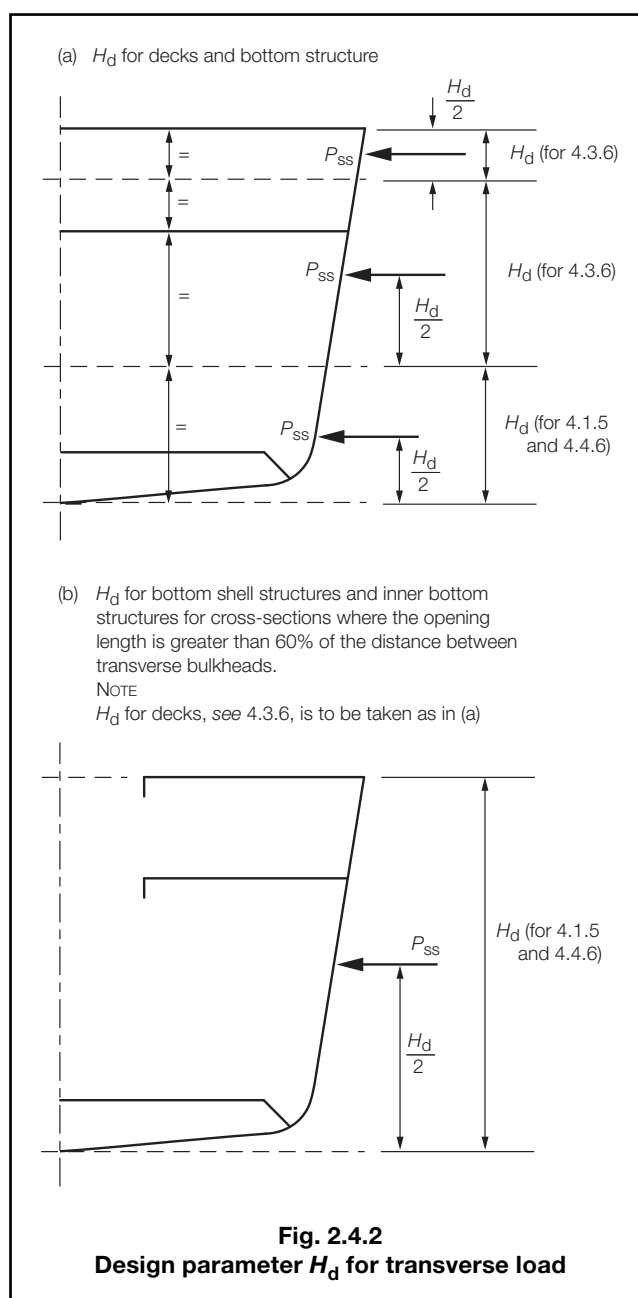
4.1.6 The design global shear force,  $Q_D$ , may be ignored for the bottom plating.

4.1.7 The design loads for bottom structure primary members are given in 4.6, bottom longitudinal girders, and 5.4, transverse floors.

## 4.2 Side shell structures (SS)

4.2.1 The design pressures calculated here are to be used to determine the scantlings of side shell plating and stiffeners from the turn of bilge up to the weather deck, see Fig. 2.4.3.

4.2.2 For the side shell structure the design normal pressure,  $P_{SS}$ , is to be taken as defined in 3.6.1.



**Fig. 2.4.2**  
**Design parameter  $H_d$  for transverse load**

4.2.3 The design impulse pressure,  $IP_{SS}$ , for the side shell plating and stiffeners is to be taken as follows:

- up to the design waterline  
 $IP_{SS} = IP_{bi} \text{ kN/m}^2 \text{ (bottom impact)}$
- above the design waterline  
 $IP_{SS} = IP_{bf} \text{ kN/m}^2 \text{ (bow flare impact)}$

where

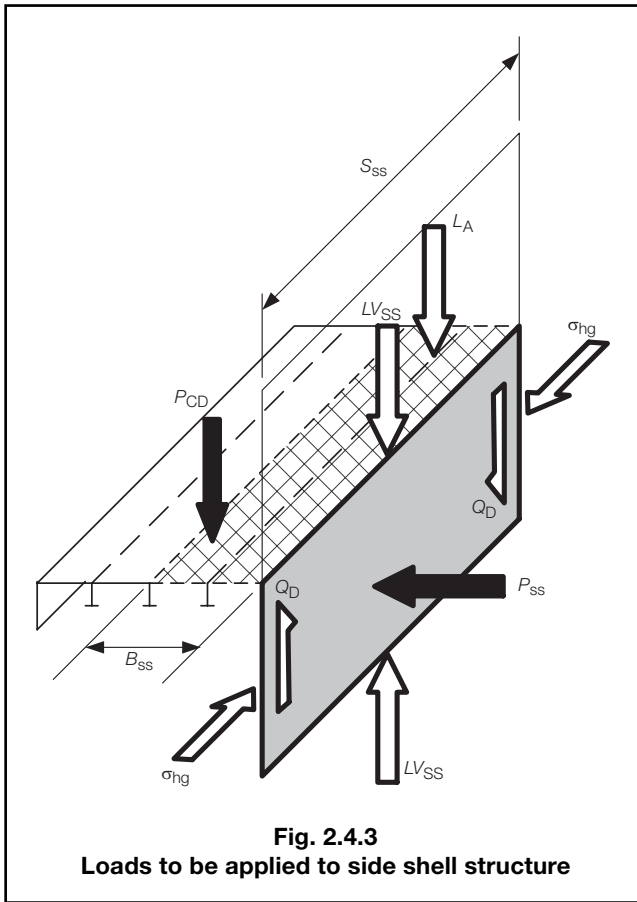
$IP_{bi}$  and  $IP_{bf}$  are defined in 2.1.2.

4.2.4 The design global vertical bending moment is to be taken as  $M_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4.

# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 4



**Fig. 2.4.3**  
**Loads to be applied to side shell structure**

4.2.5 The design vertical load,  $LV_{SS}$ , supported by the side shell plating and stiffeners is to be taken as:

$$LV_{SS} = -\epsilon_{SS} (S_{SS} B_{SS} P_{CD} + L_A + [F_{CD}]) \text{ kN}$$

where

$\epsilon_{SS}$  = effectiveness of the side shell plating, i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by the side shell as opposed to the bounding major transverse bulkheads  
= 0,5

$P_{CD}$  = basic inertial deck design pressure, as appropriate, plus any other local loadings directly above the side shell, in kN/m<sup>2</sup>, see 5.1.2

$[F_{CD}]$  = inertial load or loads, in kN, from items of equipment, etc., on the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $F_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.5

$L_A$  = appropriate load, in kN, from pillar(s), bulkheads and side shell structure above the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $L_A$  may be taken as  $LV_{BP}$  for the supported bulkhead.  $LV_{BP}$  is given in 5.8

$S_{SS}, B_{SS}$  are the effective deck area supported by the side shell and are to be taken as follows, see Fig. 2.4.3

$B_{SS}$  = mean breadth of the supported deck plating, i.e. half the transverse distance from the side shell to longitudinal bulkheads, or effectively supported longitudinal girders, in metres

$S_{SS}$  = length of the side shell between major transverse bulkheads, in metres.

4.2.6 The design global shear force is to be taken as  $Q_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4.

4.2.7 The design loads for side shell primary members are given in 4.8 for longitudinal stringers and in 5.5 for side frames and web frames.

## 4.3 Strength deck and internal deck structures (DK)

4.3.1 The design normal pressure,  $P_{DK}$ , for the deck plating and stiffeners is to be taken as the greater of the following, provided that the load component is applicable:

1.  $P_{WD}$  (weather deck pressure), see 3.6.2.
2.  $P_{ID}$  (interior deck pressure), see 5.1.3.
3.  $P_{CD}$  (cargo deck pressure), see 5.1.2.
4.  $P_{tk}$  (deep tank boundary, where appropriate).

4.3.2 For loading conditions which represent damaged situations and for decks that form part of the watertight subdivision, the design normal pressure,  $P_{DK}$ , is to be taken as follows if this is greater than 4.3.1:

$P_{da}$  (damage head).

4.3.3 The design load matrix,  $[F_{DK}]$ , in kN for the deck plating and stiffeners is to be taken as the combination of the following, as appropriate:

$[F_{CD}]$  see 5.1.5 (equipment or other deck loads)

$L_A$  pillar loads from above, if not transferred to pillars below, see 4.2.5

These loads are to be applied in addition to the design pressures above.

4.3.4 Normally, the design impulse pressure,  $IP_{DK}$ , for the deck plating and stiffeners may be ignored. However, the design impulse pressure will need to be considered for decks designed to withstand helicopter or aircraft landing operations, cargo handling at sea or similar.

4.3.5 The design global vertical bending moment is to be taken as  $M_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4.

4.3.6 The design transverse load,  $LT_{DK}$ , due to hydrostatic and hydrodynamic compressive loading is to be taken as follows, see also 4.3.8:

$$LT_{DK} = -\epsilon_{DK} P_{SS} H_d S_{dk} \text{ kN}$$

where

$H_d$  = half the vertical distance from the first full breadth deck below the deck under consideration to the first full breadth deck above this deck, or to the strength deck if there are no decks above, in metres

$S_{dk}$  = length of the side shell plating between major transverse bulkheads, in metres, see Fig. 2.4.4

$\epsilon_{DK}$  = effectiveness of the deck, i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by the deck as opposed to other structure such as bulkheads  
= 0,8

$P_{SS}$  is to be taken at the mid height of the  $H_d$  depth,  $P_{SS}$  is defined in 3.6.1

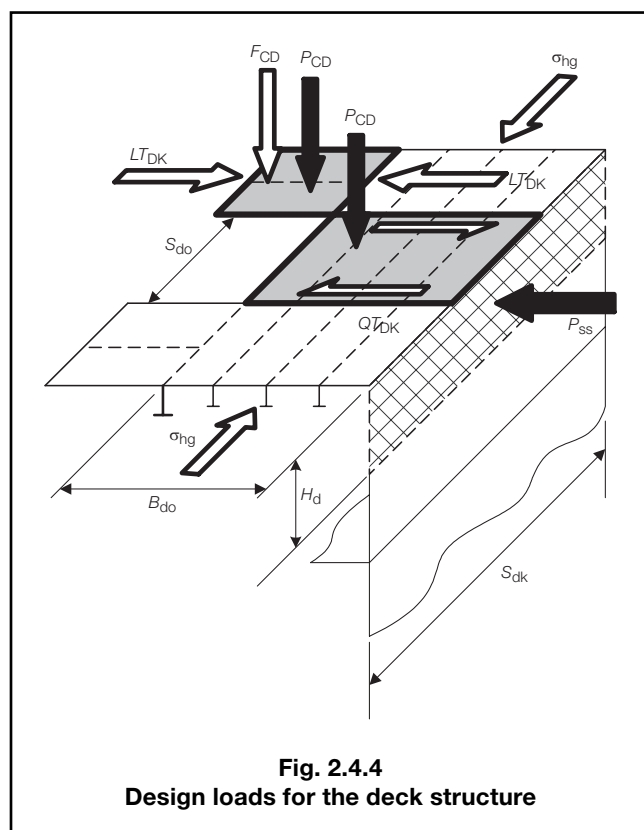
$H_d$  is illustrated in Fig. 2.4.2.



# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 4



4.3.7 Normally, the design global shear force may be ignored for the deck plating. However, if the structural arrangement is such that significant shear load is carried by the deck, then it should be considered. In this case the design global shear force is to be taken as  $Q_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4.

4.3.8 If the deck is not continuous across the full breadth, due to the presence of large openings, then  $LT_{DK}$  may be taken as zero over the opening breadth. In this case it may be necessary to consider the local shear force in the deck plating due to hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loading on the longitudinal span of the deck. This shear force acts in the transverse direction and is to be taken as:

$$QT_{DK} = P_{SS} H_d S_{do} / 2 \text{ kN}$$

where

$S_{do}$  = length of the deck plating between major transverse bulkheads or the length of the deck opening, whichever is lesser, in metres

$P_{SS}$  and  $H_d$  are defined in 4.3.6

The shear area of the deck plate supporting this shear load is to be based on the breadth of the deck edge strip,  $B_{do}$ .

4.3.9 The transverse load,  $LT_{DK}$ , in way of the full breadth decks at the ends of the deck opening is to be increased by the ratio:

$$S_d / (S_d - S_{do})$$

The efficiency of the deck,  $\epsilon_{DK}$  see 4.3.6, may be reduced provided that the transverse bulkheads are capable of carrying more of the transverse loading.

4.3.10 The design loads for deck primary members are given in 4.7 for deck girders and in 5.6 for deck beams.

## 4.4 Inner bottom structures (IB)

4.4.1 For all loading conditions, the design normal pressure,  $P_{IB}$ , for the inner bottom plating and stiffeners is to be taken as the greater of:

1.  $P_{ID}$  (interior deck pressure), see 5.1.3.
2.  $P_{CD}$  (cargo deck pressure), see 5.1.2.
3.  $P_{tk}$  (deep tank pressure, where appropriate).

4.4.2 For loading conditions which represent damaged situations, the design normal pressure,  $P_{IB}$ , for the inner bottom plating and stiffeners is to be taken as the greater of the following. If this is greater than 4.4.1:

1.  $P_{da}$  (damage head).
2.  $P_{SS}$  (pressure on shell plating, where appropriate).

4.4.3 The design load matrix,  $[F_{IB}]$ , in kN for the inner bottom plating and stiffeners is to be taken as:  
 $[F_{CD}]$  (equipment or other deck loads), see 5.1.5.

4.4.4 The design impulse pressure for the inner bottom plating and stiffeners may be ignored.

4.4.5 The design global vertical bending moment for the inner bottom plating and stiffeners is to be taken as  $M_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4.

4.4.6 The design transverse load,  $LT_{IB}$ , due to hydrostatic and hydrodynamic compressive loading is to be taken as follows:

$$LT_{IB} = -\epsilon_{IB} P_{SS} H_d S_{ib} \text{ kN}$$

where

$H_d$  = half the vertical distance from the keel to the first full breadth deck above the inner bottom, in metres

$S_{ib}$  = span of the bottom shell plating between major transverse bulkheads, in metres, see Fig. 2.4.5

$\epsilon_{IB}$  = effectiveness of the inner bottom, i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by the inner bottom as opposed to other structure such as the bottom shell, floors and bulkheads  
= 0,5 normally

$P_{SS}$  is to be taken at a height of  $H_d/2$  above the keel,  $P_{SS}$  is defined in 3.6

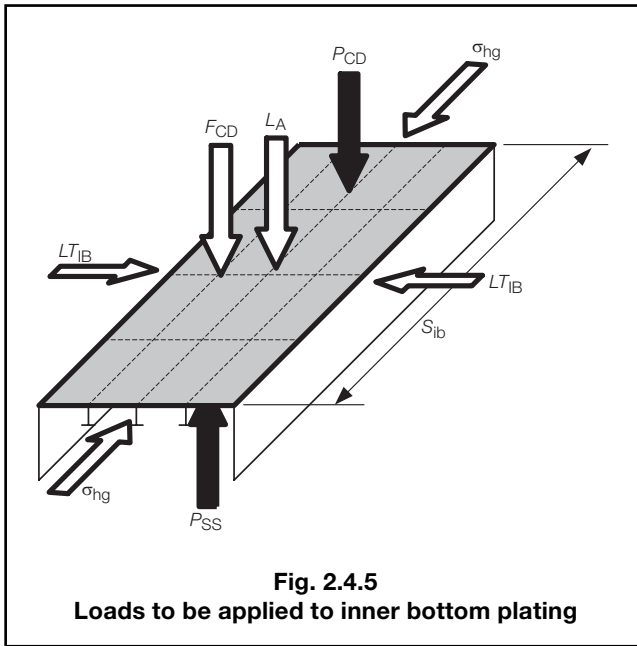
$H_d$  is illustrated in Fig. 2.4.2.

4.4.7 The design global shear force,  $Q_D$ , may be ignored for the inner bottom plating.

4.4.8 The design loads for inner bottom structure primary members are given in 4.6 for bottom longitudinal girders and in 5.4 for transverse floors.

## 4.5 Longitudinal bulkhead structures (LB)

4.5.1 The design normal pressure for longitudinal bulkhead plating with longitudinal stiffeners is to be taken as the same for both the plating and stiffeners. The design normal pressure,  $P_{LB}$ , is to be taken as  $P_{BHP}$ , as given in 5.2.1.



4.5.2 The design normal pressure for longitudinal bulkhead plating with vertical stiffeners is to be considered separately for the plating and the vertical stiffeners. The design normal pressure for the plating,  $P_{LB}$ , is to be taken as  $P_{BHP}$  as given in 5.2.1. The design normal pressure for the stiffener,  $P_{LBS}$ , is to be taken as  $P_{BHS}$  as given in 5.2.1.

4.5.3 The design impulse pressure,  $IP_{LB}$ , for the longitudinal bulkhead plating and stiffeners may be ignored, unless these members are likely to be subjected to significant sloshing loads or similar.

4.5.4 The design global vertical bending moment for longitudinal bulkhead plating and stiffeners is to be taken as  $M_D$  as defined in 3.3 or 3.4.

4.5.5 The design vertical load,  $LV_{LB}$ , at each intersecting deck level is to be derived as follows:

$$LV_{LB} = -(S_{ib} B_{ib} P_{CD} + L_A + [F_{CD}]) \text{ kN}$$

where

$P_{CD}$  = inertial deck design pressure, as appropriate, plus any other local loadings directly above the pillar, in  $\text{kN/m}^2$ , see 5.1.2

$[F_{CD}]$  = inertial load or loads, in kN, from items of equipment, etc., on the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $F_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.5

$L_A$  = appropriate portion of the load or loads, in kN, from pillar(s) or bulkhead(s) above, assumed zero if there is none over, see also 4.2.5

$S_{ib} B_{ib}$  is the effective deck area supported by the longitudinal bulkhead and can be taken as follows, see Fig. 2.4.6:

$B_{ib}$  = mean spacing of longitudinal bulkheads, side shell or effectively supported longitudinal girders, in metres

$S_{ib}$  = span or length of the longitudinal bulkhead between major transverse bulkheads, in metres.

4.5.6 The design global shear force for longitudinal bulkhead plating is to be taken as  $Q_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4.

4.5.7 If the longitudinal bulkhead is not continuous over the full depth of the ship then it will be necessary to consider the local shear force in the longitudinal bulkhead plating as the vertical load must be transferred into the supporting structure, such as transverse bulkheads. This shear force acts in the vertical direction and is to be taken as:

$$QV_{LB} = LV_{LB}/2$$

The shear area of the longitudinal bulkhead plate supporting this shear load is to be based on the depth of the longitudinal bulkhead between decks.

4.5.8 The design loads for longitudinal bulkhead primary members are given in 4.8 for longitudinal stringers and in 5.5 for side frames and web frames.

## 4.6 Bottom longitudinal girders (BG)

4.6.1 This sub-Section covers double bottom and single bottom girders. Fig. 2.4.7 illustrates the design loads.

4.6.2 The design normal pressure,  $P_{BG}$ , for girder web plating is to be taken as the greater of:

1.  $P_{tk}$   $\text{kN/m}^2$  (Deep Tank, if applicable), see 5.1.4.
2.  $P_{da}$   $\text{kN/m}^2$  (WT subdivision, only if applicable and for loading conditions which represent damaged situations), see 5.1.4.
3. 5,0 (minimum value for no direct loading).

4.6.3 The design impulse pressure,  $IP_{BG}$ , for the bottom girder web plating may be ignored, unless these members are subjected to sloshing loads or similar.

4.6.4 The design global vertical bending moment for bottom girder plating and stiffeners is to be taken as  $M_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4.

4.6.5 The design vertical load,  $LV_{BG}$ , acting on the web plating of bottom girders is to be based on the supported loads. Typically these include downwards local inertial pressures,  $P_{CD}$ , inertial forces,  $[F_{CD}]$ , and pillar bulkhead loads above,  $L_A$ , all acting on the plating of the inner bottom or the bottom girder flange and the upwards buoyancy loads on the bottom shell plating,  $P_{BS}$ . The design vertical load is to be taken as:

$$LV_{BG} = -\epsilon_{BG} (B_{bg} S_{bg} (P_{CD} - P_{BS}) + [F_{CD}] + L_A) \text{ kN}$$

where

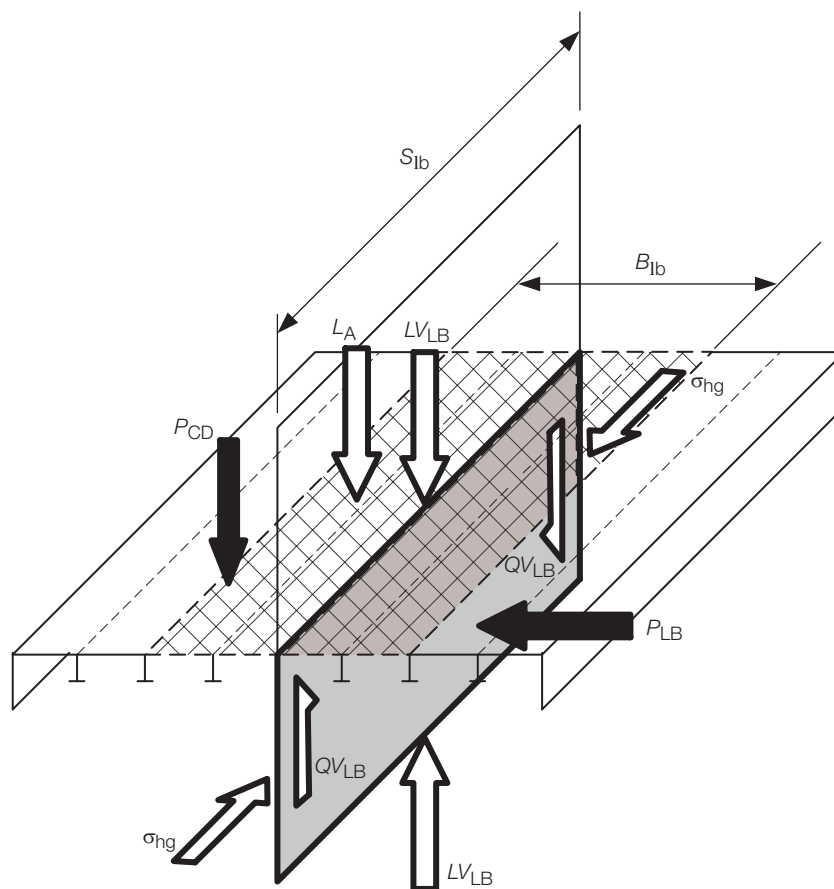
$\epsilon_{BG}$  = effectiveness of the bottom girders, i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by the bottom girders as opposed to other structure such as the transverse floors

$$= 0,5$$

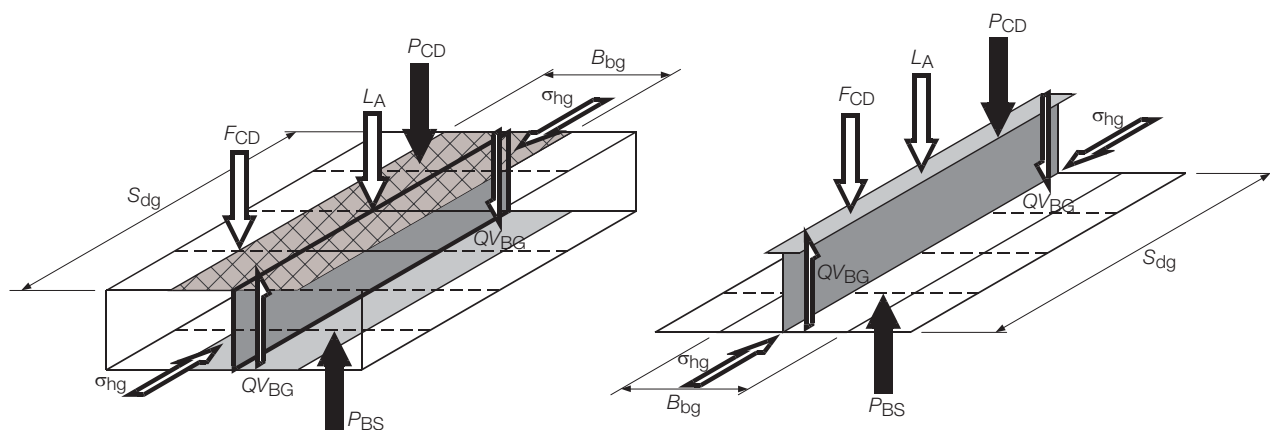
$B_{bg}$  = mean spacing of longitudinal girders or other primary longitudinal structure, in metres, see Note 2

$S_{bg}$  = span or length of the longitudinal girder between transverse bulkheads, in metres

$L_A$  = load, in kN, from pillar(s) above, assumed zero if there is none over, see 4.2.5



**Fig. 2.4.6 Loads to be applied to longitudinal bulkhead plating**



**Fig. 2.4.7 Loads to be applied to bottom girders**

# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 4

$F_{CD}$  = inertial load or loads, in kN, from items of equipment, etc on the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $F_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.5

$P_{BS}$  is defined in 4.1.2

$P_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.2.

NOTES

1. For single bottom girders  $P_{CD}$  is likely to be zero. In this situation  $B_{bg}$  = span or length of the longitudinal girder between transverse bulkheads.  $P_{CD}$  should be taken as the distributed machinery load, if it is not included in  $[F_{CD}]$ .
2. Where the girder is part of a longitudinally stiffened bottom structure with closely spaced floors, the mean spacing  $B_{bg}$  may be taken as the spacing of the longitudinal stiffeners. For grillage or transversely stiffened systems then the spacing is to be taken as stated.

4.6.6 The design shear force for the bottom girder web plating is to include local and global components.

1. The design global shear force is to be taken as  $Q_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4. If the girder depth is reasonably small then  $Q_D$  may be ignored.
2. The local shear force component,  $QV_{BG}$ , is due to the difference between the buoyancy and the inertial forces. It acts in the vertical direction and is to be taken as:

$$QV_{BG} = \varepsilon_{BG} (B_{bg} S_{bg} (P_{CD} - P_{BS}) + [F_{CD}] + L_A)/2 \text{ kN}$$

where

$B_{bg}$  = mean spacing of longitudinal girders or other primary longitudinal structure, in metres, see Note 2.

4.6.7 The design bending load for bottom girder primary member is to be taken as:

$$\varepsilon_{BG} (B_{bg} S_{bg} (P_{CD} - P_{BS}) + [F_{CD}] + L_A) \text{ kN}$$

4.6.8 The membrane loads acting on the bottom shell plating are defined in 4.1. The membrane loads acting on the inner bottom plating are defined in 4.4. These loads are required to assess the bottom girder beam in addition to the local bending loads.

## 4.7 Deck girders (DG)

4.7.1 The design normal pressure,  $P_{DG}$ , for deck girder web plating may be ignored.

4.7.2 The design impulse pressure,  $IP_{DG}$ , for deck girder web plating may be ignored, unless these members are subjected to sloshing loads or similar.

4.7.3 The design global vertical bending moment for deck girders is to be taken as  $M_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4.

4.7.4 The design vertical load for deck girder webs may be ignored.

4.7.5 The design shear force for the deck girder web plating is to include local and global components.

1. The design global shear force is to be taken as  $Q_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4. If the girder depth is reasonably small then  $Q_D$  may be ignored.
2. The local shear force component,  $QV_{DG}$ , is due to the difference between the buoyancy and the inertial forces. It acts in the vertical direction and is to be taken as:

$$QV_{DG} = \varepsilon_{BG} (B_{dg} S_{dg} P_{CD} + [F_{CD}] + L_A)/2 \text{ kN}$$

where

$\varepsilon_{BG}$  = effectiveness of the deck girders, i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by the deck girders as opposed to other structure such as the deck beams

$$= 0,5$$

$B_{dg}$  = mean spacing of longitudinal girders or other primary longitudinal structure, in metres, see Fig. 2.4.8

$S_{dg}$  = span or length of the longitudinal girder between transverse bulkheads, in metres

$L_A$  = load, in kN, from pillar(s) above, assumed zero if there is none over

$F_{CD}$  = inertial load or loads, in kN, from items of equipment, etc., on the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $F_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.5.

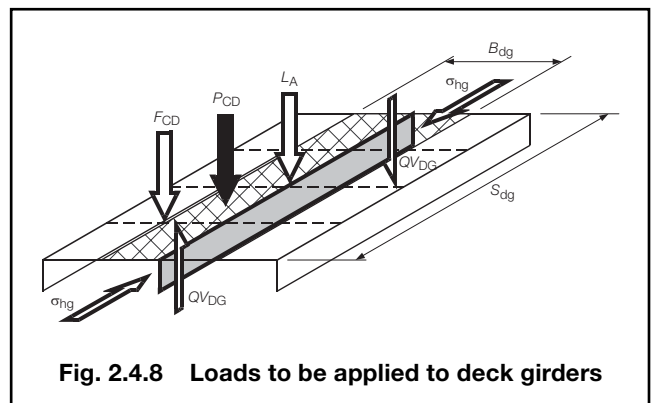


Fig. 2.4.8 Loads to be applied to deck girders

4.7.6 The membrane loads acting on the deck plating are defined in 4.3.

4.7.7 The design bending load for the deck girder primary member is to be taken as:

$$\varepsilon_{BG} (B_{dg} S_{dg} P_{CD} + [F_{CD}] + L_A) \text{ kN}.$$

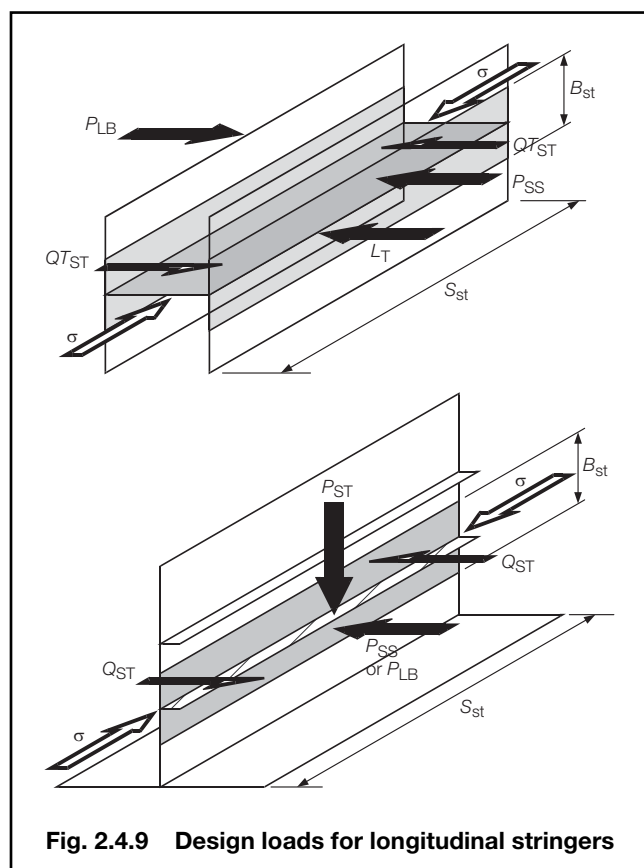
## 4.8 Longitudinal stringers (ST)

4.8.1 This sub-Section covers stringers supporting side shell plating, horizontal girders on longitudinal bulkheads and also covers horizontal diaphragms fitted between a double skin. The design loads are illustrated in Fig. 2.4.9.

# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 4



**Fig. 2.4.9 Design loads for longitudinal stringers**

4.8.2 The design normal pressure,  $P_{ST}$ , for the web plating of stringer may be ignored unless the stringer forms part of a tank boundary or watertight subdivision, i.e. a watertight horizontal diaphragm. In this case the design pressure is to be taken as the greater of

1.  $P_{tk}$  kN/m<sup>2</sup> (Deep Tank, if applicable), see 5.1.4.
2.  $P_{da}$  kN/m<sup>2</sup> (WT subdivision, only if applicable and for loading conditions which represent damaged situations), see 5.1.4.
3. 5,0 (minimum value for no direct loading).

4.8.3 The design impulse pressure,  $IP_{ST}$ , for the web plating of stringer may be ignored, unless these members are subjected to sloshing loads or similar.

4.8.4 The design global vertical bending moment for longitudinal stringers is to be taken as  $M_D$ , as defined in 3.3 or 3.4.

4.8.5 The design transverse load,  $LT_{ST}$ , acting on the web plating of horizontal diaphragms is to be based on the pressure loads acting on the plating of the inner skin or longitudinal bulkhead  $P_{LB}$  (outwards) and the side shell  $P_{SS}$  (inwards). The design transverse load,  $LT_{ST}$ , is to be taken as the lesser of:

1.  $-\epsilon_{ST} B_{st} S_{st} P_{SS}$  kN
2.  $-\epsilon_{ST} B_{st} S_{st} P_{LB}$  kN

where

$\epsilon_{ST}$  = effectiveness of the horizontal diaphragms, i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by the horizontal diaphragms as opposed to other structure such as the transverse web or normal frames

= 0,5

$H_{st}$  = mean spacing, in metres, of stringers (or horizontal girders) and other primary horizontal structure, i.e. decks or similar

$S_{st}$  = length of the stringer (or horizontal girder) between transverse bulkheads, in m, see Fig. 2.4.9

$P_{SS}$  is to be taken as the side shell pressure at the height of the stringer, see 3.6.1.  $P_{SS}$  is to be ignored for horizontal girders attached to longitudinal bulkheads.

$P_{LB}$  is to be taken as the longitudinal bulkhead normal pressure at the height of the horizontal girder, see 4.5.1. This is only required for longitudinal bulkheads that form part of a deep tank or watertight boundary.

NOTE

Where the horizontal diaphragm is part of a longitudinally stiffened structure with regular transverse webs, the mean spacing  $H_{st}$  may be based on the longitudinal spacing. For grillage or transversely stiffened systems then the spacing is to be taken as originally stated.

4.8.6 The design transverse load,  $LT_{ST}$ , for stringers and horizontal girders may be ignored.

4.8.7 The design shear force,  $QT_{ST}$ , in the stringer web due to hydrostatic, hydrodynamic or tank loading acts in the transverse direction is to be taken as the greater of:

1.  $\epsilon_{ST} H_{st} S_{st} P_{SS}/2$
2.  $\epsilon_{ST} H_{st} S_{st} P_{LB}/2$

where

$H_{st}$  = mean spacing, in metres, of stringers (or horizontal girders) and other primary horizontal structure, i.e. decks or similar.

4.8.8 The design bending load for the deck girder primary member is to be taken as:

$$\epsilon_{ST} H_{st} S_{st} (P_{SS} - P_{LB})$$

where

$H_{st}$  = mean spacing, in metres, of stringers (or horizontal girders) and other primary horizontal structure, i.e. decks or similar.

4.8.9 The membrane loads acting on the side shell and longitudinal bulkhead plating are defined in 4.2 and 4.5, these loads are required to assess the longitudinal stringer beam in addition to the local bending loads.

## Section 5 Design load systems for structural components or longitudinally ineffective material

### 5.1 Deck structures (DK)

5.1.1 The design pressure,  $P_{WD}$ , for weather deck structure is given in 3.6.2.

5.1.2 For weather decks and interior decks subjected to cargo loads or other pressure loading then the following design pressure is to be used for the plating and stiffeners if it is greater than that given in 5.1.1:

$$P_{CD} = w_f W_{cd} \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$W_{cd}$  is the static pressure exerted by the cargo, payload, stores or equipment on the deck as specified by the designer in  $\text{kN/m}^2$ , see 2.1.2 and see also Pt 5, Ch 3,5.4.1  
 $w_f$  is given in 3.5.1.

5.1.3 The design pressure,  $P_{ID}$ , for interior deck plating and stiffeners is given by:

$$P_{ID} = w_f W_{in} \text{ kN/m}^2$$

where

$P_{ID}$  is not to be taken less than 2,5  $\text{kN/m}^2$   
 $W_{in}$  is defined in 2.1.2.

5.1.4 For weather or internal decks which form part of a deep tank or watertight boundary then the pressure loading is to be taken as the greater of the following if this is greater than the above:

$P_{tk} = 9,81\rho (H_{tk} - z) \text{ kN/m}^2$  (deep tank, if applicable)  
 $P_{da} = 10(H_{da} - z) \text{ kN/m}^2$  (WT subdivision, only if applicable and for loading conditions which represent damaged situations)

where

$\rho$  = specific density of liquid in the tank, to be taken as not less than 1,025  
 $z$  = distance above the baseline of the mid depth of the deck plating

$H_{tk}$  and  $H_{da}$  are defined in 2.1.2.

5.1.5 The cargo deck design force matrix,  $[F_{CD}]$ , for plating and stiffeners is to be taken as below for all mass items which act over the deck area considered

$$[F_{CD}] = w_f [W_{ma}]$$

where

$W_{ma}$  is the weight of each item on the deck as specified by the designer in kN. See also Pt 5, Ch 3,5.4.2.

5.1.6 If the deck is required to be immersed during its operation, e.g. an internal dock area, then the deck is to be designed using the side shell pressure loads,  $P_{SS}$ , see 3.6.1.

### 5.2 Transverse watertight and deep tank bulkheads (BH)

5.2.1 The design normal pressure for bulkhead plating,  $P_{BHP}$ , and stiffeners,  $P_{BHS}$ , is to be taken as the pressure values  $P_{bhp}$  and  $P_{bhs}$  respectively given in Pt 5, Ch 3,5.8.

5.2.2 The design impulse pressure,  $IP_{BH}$ , for the bulkhead plating and stiffeners may be ignored, unless these members are likely to be subjected to significant sloshing loads or similar.

5.2.3 The design transverse load,  $LT_{BH}$ , due to hydrostatic and hydrodynamic compressive loading is to be taken as follows:

$$LT_{BH} = -\varepsilon_{BH} P_{SS} H_{bh} S_{bh} \text{ kN}$$

where

$H_{bh}$  = half the vertical distance from the deck below the bulkhead under consideration to the deck above, in metres, see Fig. 2.5.1 and Fig. 2.5.2  
 $S_{bh}$  = half the longitudinal distance between adjacent transverse bulkheads, in metres  
 $\varepsilon_{BH}$  = effectiveness of the bulkhead, i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by the bulkhead as opposed to other structure such as decks

$\varepsilon_{BH}$  may be taken as 0,5

alternatively  $\varepsilon_{BH}$  may be taken as

$\varepsilon_{BH} = H_{bh}/(2S_{bh})$  for  $H_{bh} < S_{bh}$   
and  $= 1 - S_{bh}/(2H_{bh})$  for  $H_{bh} > S_{bh}$

$P_{SS}$  is to be taken at the mid height of the  $H_{bh}$  depth,  $P_{SS}$  is defined in 3.6.1.

5.2.4 The design vertical load,  $LV_{BH}$ , supported by the transverse bulkheads is to be based on the pressure loads acting on the plating of the supported deck over,  $P_{CD}$ , the local inertial forces,  $[F_{CD}]$ , and the bulkhead loads above,  $L_A$ . The design vertical load is to be taken as

$$LV_{BH} = -(B_{bh} S_{bh} P_{CD} + [F_{CD}] + L_A) \text{ kN}$$

where

$B_{bh}$  = breadth of the deck supported by the bulkhead, in metres  
 $L_A$  = load, in kN, the bulkhead above, assumed zero if there is none over, see 4.2.5  
 $F_{CD}$  = inertial load or loads, in kN, from items of equipment, etc., on the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $F_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.5

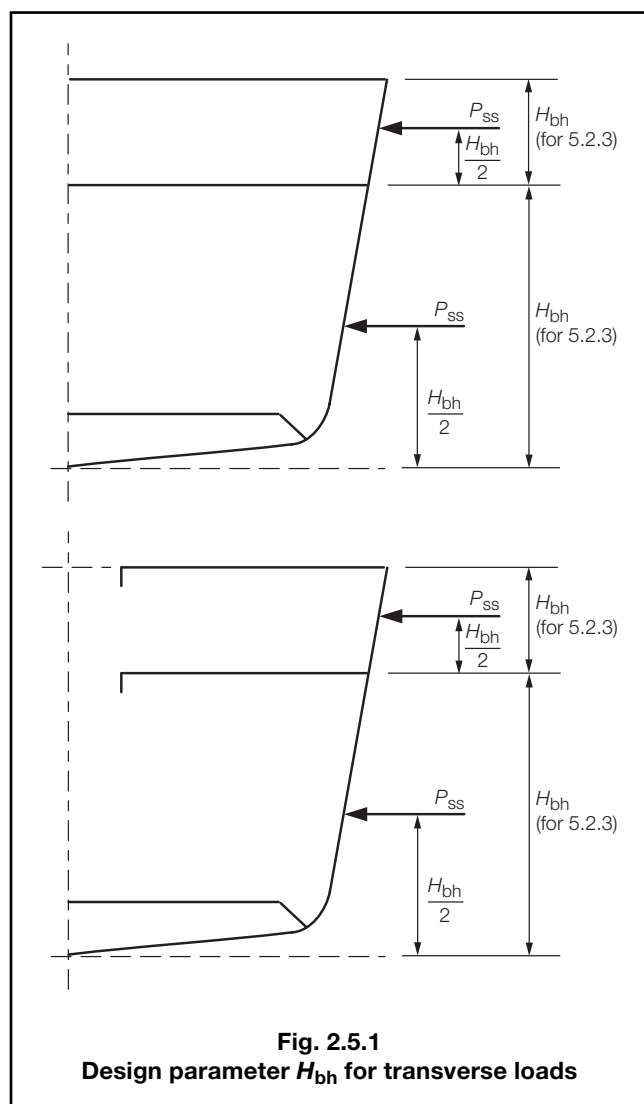
$P_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.2.

5.2.5 Normally, the design shear force,  $QV_{BH}$ , may be ignored for bulkhead plating. However, if the structural arrangement or load paths are such that significant shear load is carried by the bulkhead, then it should be considered, e.g. when the bulkhead is not continued down to the bottom shell. In this case the design shear force, acting in the vertical direction, is to be taken as

$$QV_{BH} = LV_{BH} / 2 \text{ kN}$$

where

$LV_{BH}$  is given in 5.2.4.



## 5.3 Deckhouses, bulwarks and superstructures (DH)

5.3.1 The design normal pressure,  $P_{DH}$ , for the plating and stiffeners of deckhouses, bulwarks and the first tier and above of superstructures is given by:

$$P_{DH} = P_{dh} \text{ kN/m}^2$$

5.3.2 For the side plating and longitudinal bulkheads of deckhouses and superstructures, the design vertical load,  $LV_{DH}$ , at each intersecting deck level is to be taken as follows:

$$LV_{DH} = -\epsilon_{DH} (S_{dh} B_{dh} P_{CD} + L_A + [F_{CD}]) \text{ kN}$$

where

$P_{CD}$  = basic deck design pressure, as appropriate, plus any other local loadings directly above the pillar, in  $\text{kN/m}^2$

$[F_{CD}]$  = inertial load or loads, in  $\text{kN}$ , from items of equipment, etc., on the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $F_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.5

$L_A$  = appropriate portion of the load or loads, in  $\text{kN}$ , from pillar(s) or bulkhead(s) above, assumed zero if there is none over, see 4.2.5

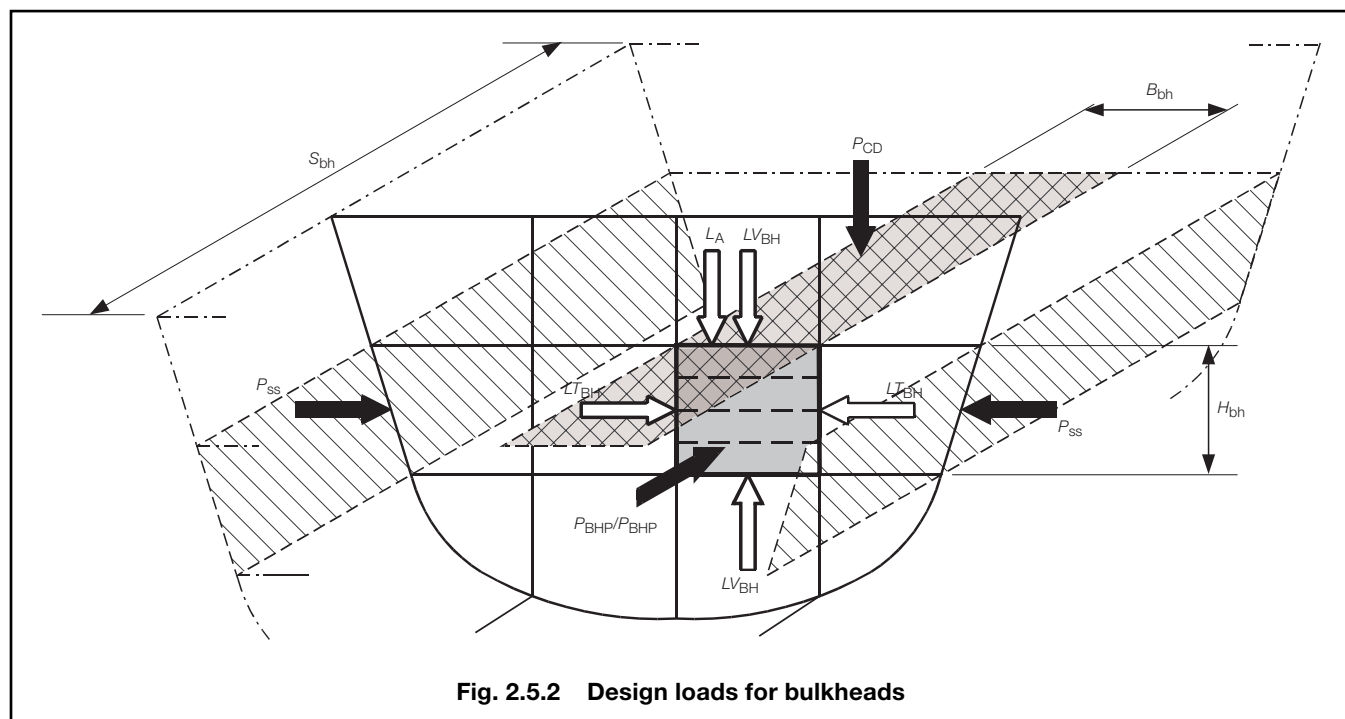
$\epsilon_{DH}$  = effectiveness of the side plating or longitudinal bulkhead, i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by this plating as opposed to other structure such as the transverse bulkheads

$$= 0,5$$

$S_{dh} B_{dh}$  is the effective deck area supported by the deckhouse side plating or longitudinal bulkheads and can be taken as follows:

$B_{dh}$  = mean spacing of longitudinal bulkheads, side shell or effectively supported longitudinal girders, in metres

$S_{dh}$  = span or length of the side plating or longitudinal bulkhead between major deckhouse transverse bulkheads, in metres.





# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 5

5.3.3 For transverse bulkheads of deckhouses and superstructures, the design vertical load,  $LV_{DH}$ , at each intersecting deck level is to be taken as follows:

$$LV_{DH} = -\epsilon_{DH} (S_{dh} B_{dh} P_{CD} + L_A + [F_{CD}]) \text{ kN}$$

where

$\epsilon_{DH}$  = efficiency of the transverse bulkheads i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by the transverse bulkheads as opposed to other structure such as the side plating  
= 0,5

$S_{dh} B_{dh}$  is the effective deck area supported by the transverse bulkhead and can be taken as follows:

$S_{dh}$  = mean spacing of transverse bulkheads, in metres

$B_{dh}$  = breadth of the transverse bulkhead, in metres.

5.3.4 For decks of deckhouses, the design transverse load,  $LT_{DH}$ , at each deck level may normally be ignored.

5.3.5 If the superstructure or deckhouse is longitudinally effective then the design global vertical bending moment and shear force are to be taken as  $M_D$  and  $Q_D$  respectively, see 3.3 or 3.4 for the design of the side plating and longitudinal bulkheads of deckhouse structures.

## 5.4 Transverse floors (FL)

5.4.1 The design normal pressure,  $P_{FL}$ , for the web plating of floors of double bottom or single bottom structures is to be taken as the greater of the following:

1.  $P_{tk}$  kN/m<sup>2</sup> (Deep tank floor).
2.  $P_{da}$  kN/m<sup>2</sup> (WT subdivision, only if applicable and for loading conditions which represent damaged situations).
3. 5 kN/m<sup>2</sup> (minimum value).

where

$P_{da}$  and  $P_{tk}$  are defined in 5.1.4.

5.4.2 The design impulse pressure,  $IP_{FL}$ , for the web plating of floors may be ignored, unless these members are subjected to sloshing loads or similar.

5.4.3 The design vertical load,  $LV_{FL}$ , for the floors is to be based on the pressure loads acting on the plating of the inner bottom  $P_{CD}$  (downwards) and the bottom shell  $P_{BS}$  (upwards), the local inertial forces  $[F_{CD}]$  and pillar bulkhead loads above  $L_A$ . The design vertical load,  $LV_{FL}$ , is to be taken as:

$$LV_{FL} = -\epsilon_{FLV} (B_{fl} S_{fl} (P_{CD} - P_{BS}) + [F_{CD}] + L_A) \text{ kN}$$

where

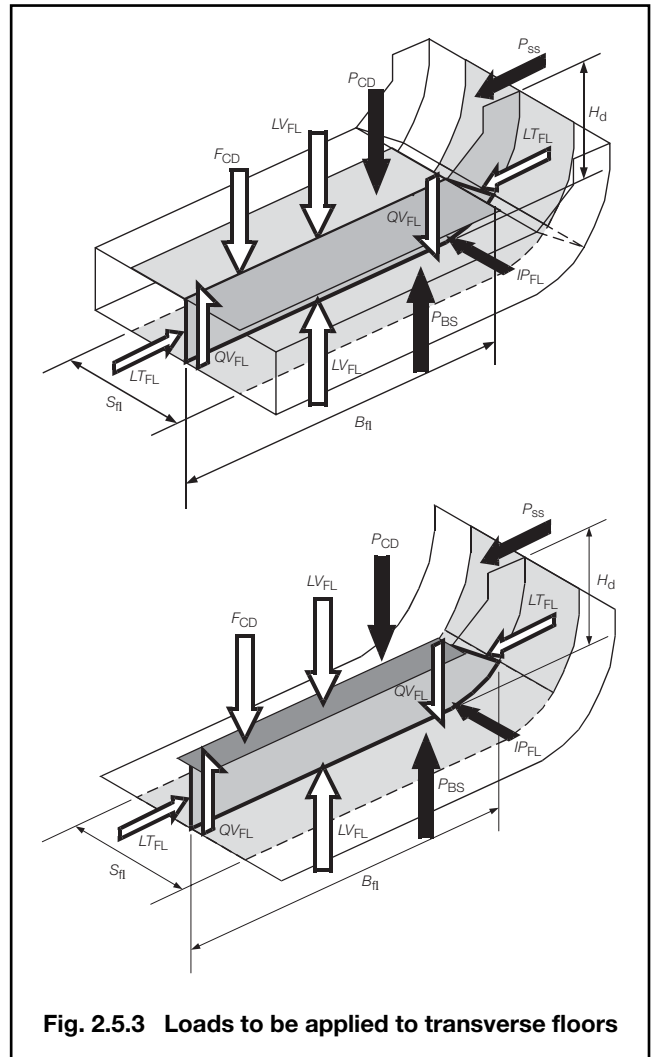
$\epsilon_{FLV}$  = effectiveness of the floors in the vertical direction, i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by the transverse floors as opposed to bottom girders, etc.

= 1,0 for the floor halfway between transverse bulkheads

$S_{fl}$  = mean spacing of transverse floors, in metres, see Fig. 2.5.3

$B_{fl}$  = breadth of the transverse floor between longitudinal bulkheads or side shell(s), in metres. NOTE  $B_{fl}$  may be full breadth

$L_A$  = load, in kN, from pillar(s) or bulkhead(s) above, assumed zero if there is none over, see 4.2.5



**Fig. 2.5.3 Loads to be applied to transverse floors**

$F_{CD}$  = inertial load or loads, in kN, from items of equipment, etc., on the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $F_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.5

$P_{BS}$  is defined in 4.1.2

$P_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.2.

NOTES

- For single bottom floors  $P_{CD}$  is likely to be zero.
- It may be necessary to take account of the impact loading on the bottom plating in the derivation of  $LV_{FL}$  and  $QV_{FL}$ .

5.4.4 The design transverse load,  $LT_{FL}$ , for the floor plating due to hydrostatic and hydrodynamic compressive loading is to be taken as follows:

$$LT_{FL} = -\epsilon_{FLT} P_{SS} H_d S_{fl} \text{ kN}$$

where

$\epsilon_{FLT}$  = effectiveness of the floors in the transverse direction, i.e. the relative proportion of the load carried by the floor plating as opposed to other bottom structure

= 0,3 $f_b$  for double bottom structures

= 0,5 $f_b$  for single bottom structures

$f_b$  = 2,0 for bottom structures where transverse elastic buckling of outer bottom plating is likely



# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 5

- = 3,0 for bottom structures where transverse elastic buckling of inner and outer bottom plating is likely
- = 1,0 otherwise

$P_{SS}$  and  $H_d$  are to be taken as the values defined for the bottom structure in 4.1.5.

5.4.5 The design shear force,  $QV_{FL}$ , for the floor web plating due to local loading acts in the vertical direction and is to be taken as:

$$QV_{FL} = \epsilon_{FLV} (B_{fl} S_{fl} (P_{CD} - P_{BS}) + [F_{CD}] + L_A)/2 \text{ kN}$$

5.4.6 The design bending load for bottom floor primary member is to be taken as  $LV_{FL}$ .

5.4.7 The membrane loads acting on the bottom shell plating are defined in 4.1. The membrane loads acting on the inner bottom plating are defined in 4.4. These membrane loads are required to assess the transverse floors in addition to the local bending loads.

## 5.5 Side frames and web frames (SF)

5.5.1 This sub-Section covers side frames, web frames and frames supporting longitudinal bulkheads.

5.5.2 The design normal pressure,  $P_{SF}$ , for the web plating of side frames may be ignored.

5.5.3 The design impulse pressure,  $IP_{SF}$ , for the web plating of side frames may be ignored, unless these members are subjected to sloshing loads or similar.

5.5.4 The design vertical load,  $LV_{SF}$ , for the side frames, including the attached plating, is to be based on the pressure loads acting on the plating of the supported deck over,  $P_{CD}$ , the local inertial forces,  $[F_{CD}]$ , and side frame loads above,  $L_A$ . The design vertical load is to be taken as:

$$LV_{SF} = -(B_{fr} S_{fr} P_{CD} + [F_{CD}] + L_A) \text{ kN}$$

where

$S_{fr}$  = mean spacing of side frames, in metres, see Fig. 2.5.4

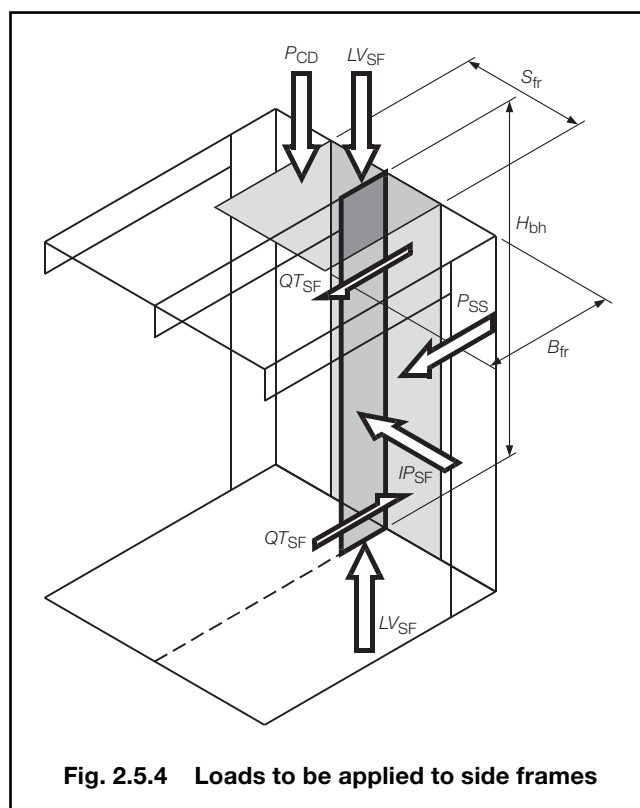
$B_{fr}$  = breadth of the deck supported by the side frame, in metres

$L_A$  = load, in kN, the side frame above, assumed zero if there is none over, see 4.2.5

$F_{CD}$  = inertial load or loads, in kN, from items of equipment, etc., on the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $F_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.5

$P_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.2.

5.5.5 The design transverse load,  $LT_{SF}$ , may be ignored for the side frames.



**Fig. 2.5.4 Loads to be applied to side frames**

5.5.6 The design shear force,  $QT_{SF}$ , for the side frame web plating due to local loading acts in the transverse direction and is to be taken as:

$$QT_{SF} = H_{fr} S_{fr} P_{SS}/2 \text{ kN}$$

where

$H_{fr}$  = length of the side frame between adjacent decks, see Fig. 2.5.4

$P_{SS}$  is to be taken at the mid height of the side frame,  $P_{SS}$  is defined in 3.6.1

NOTE

It may be necessary to take account of the impact loading on the side frame plating in the derivation of  $QT_{SF}$ .

5.5.7 The design bending load for side frame or web frame primary member is to be taken as:

$H_{fr} S_{fr} P_{SS}$  for frames attached to side shell

$H_{fr} S_{fr} P_{LB}$  for frames attached to longitudinal bulkheads.

5.5.8 The membrane loads acting on the side shell or longitudinal bulkhead plating are defined in 4.2 or 4.5. These membrane loads are required to assess the frames in addition to the local bending loads.

## 5.6 Deck beams (BM)

5.6.1 This sub-Section covers deck beams and deep transverse beams supporting deck structure.

5.6.2 The design normal pressure,  $P_{BM}$ , for the web plating of deck beams may be ignored.

5.6.3 The design impulse pressure,  $IP_{BM}$ , for the web plating of deck beams may be ignored, unless these members are subjected to sloshing loads or similar.

# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 5

5.6.4 The design vertical load,  $LV_{BM}$ , for the deck beam may be ignored.

5.6.5 The design transverse load,  $LT_{BM}$ , for the deck beam due to hydrostatic and hydrodynamic compressive loading is to be taken as follows:

$$LT_{BM} = -P_{SS} H_d S_{bm} \text{ kN}$$

where

$P_{SS}$  and  $H_d$  are to be taken as the values defined for the deck plating in 4.3.6.

5.6.6 The design shear force,  $QV_{BM}$ , for the deck beam web plating is to be based on the pressure loads acting on the plating of the deck  $P_{CD}$  (downwards), the local inertial forces  $[F_{CD}]$  and pillar bulkhead loads above  $L_A$ . The shear force acts in the vertical direction and is to be taken as:

$$QV_{BM} = (B_{bm} S_{bm} P_{CD} + [F_{CD}] + L_A) / 2 \text{ kN}$$

where

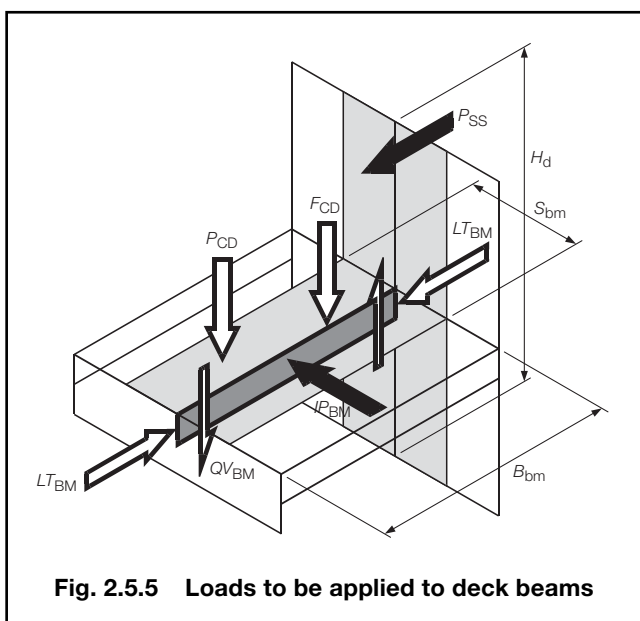
$S_{bm}$  = mean spacing of deck beams, in metres, see Fig. 2.5.5

$B_{bm}$  = span of the deck beams between longitudinal bulkheads, pillars or side shell, in metres

$L_A$  = load, in kN, from pillar(s) or bulkhead(s) above, assumed zero if there is none over, see 4.2.5

$F_{CD}$  = inertial load or loads, in kN, from items of equipment, etc., on the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $F_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.5

$P_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.2.



5.6.7 The design bending load for deck beam primary member is to be taken as:

$$(B_{bm} S_{bm} P_{CD} + [F_{CD}] + L_A) \text{ kN}$$

5.6.8 The membrane loads acting on the deck plating are defined in 4.3. These membrane loads are required to assess the frames in addition to the local bending loads.

## 5.7 Pillars (PI)

5.7.1 The design load,  $LV_{PI}$ , supported by the pillar is to be taken as:

$$LV_{PI} = -(S_{pi} B_{pi} P_{CD} + L_A + [F_{CD}]) \text{ kN}$$

where

$P_{CD}$  = inertial deck design pressure, as appropriate, plus any other local loadings directly above the pillar, in kN/m<sup>2</sup>. Where the pillar supports a deck area over which the design pressure varies, then the summation of these loads is to be used, see 5.1.2

$[F_{CD}]$  = appropriate portion of the inertial load or loads, in kN, from items of equipment, etc., on the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $F_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.5

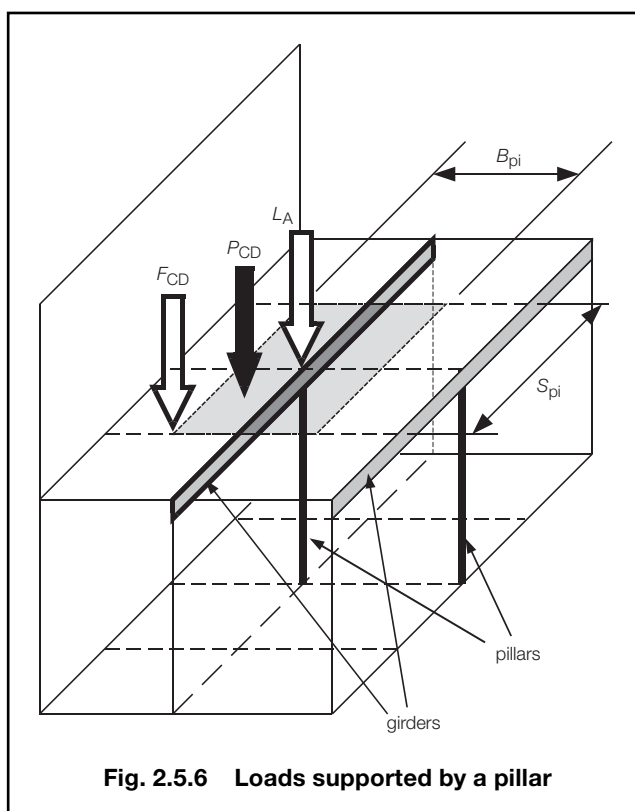
$B_{pi} S_{pi}$  is the effective deck area supported by the pillar bulkhead

$B_{pi}$  = mean spacing of transverse bulkheads supported by pillars or transverse bulkheads, in metres, see Fig. 2.5.6

$S_{pi}$  = mean spacing of girders supported by the pillars, longitudinal bulkheads or side shell, in metres

$L_A$  = load, in kN, from pillar(s) or bulkhead(s) above, assumed zero if there is none over may be taken as  $LV_{PI}$  for the supported pillar or  $LV_{PB}$  for the supported bulkhead, see 5.8

$LV_{PI}$  is not to be taken less than 5 kN.



# Total Design Loads

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 5

5.7.2 When any of the conditions below are satisfied then the pillar load should be derived using direct calculation methods:

- where the structural arrangement is complex;
- where it is considered that the load in the pillar will not be accurately represented by the above formulae, e.g. pillars supporting decks in way of the ends of a long superstructure block;
- where the pillar is not supported underneath by the double bottom or substantial structural members.

## 5.8 Pillar bulkheads (PB)

5.8.1 The vertical in-plane compressive load supported by a pillar bulkhead is to be taken as:

$$LV_{PB} = -(S_{pb} B_{pb} P_{CD} + L_A + [F_{CD}]) \text{ kN}$$

where

$P_{CD}$  = inertial deck design pressure, as appropriate, plus any other local loadings directly above the pillar, in kN/m<sup>2</sup>, see 5.1.2

$[F_{CD}]$  = inertial load or loads, in kN, from items of equipment, etc., on the supported deck, assumed zero if there is none over.  $F_{CD}$  is defined in 5.1.5

$L_A$  = appropriate portion of the load or loads, in kN, from pillar(s) or bulkhead(s) above, assumed zero if there is none over, may be taken as  $LV_{PI}$  for the supported pillar or  $LV_{PB}$  for the supported bulkhead

$S_{pb}$ ,  $B_{pb}$  is the effective deck area supported by the pillar bulkhead and can be taken as follows:

(a) For longitudinal pillar bulkheads, see Fig. 2.5.7:

$B_{pb}$  = mean spacing of longitudinal bulkheads, side shell or effectively supported longitudinal girders, in metres

$S_{pb}$  = length of the pillar bulkhead between major transverse bulkheads or effectively supported transverse web frames or similar, in metres

(b) For transverse pillar bulkheads:

$S_{pb}$  = mean spacing of transverse bulkheads or effectively supported transverse web frames or similar, in metres

$B_{pb}$  = breadth of the pillar bulkhead between major longitudinal bulkheads or the side shell, in metres.

5.8.2 When any of the conditions below are satisfied then the pillar bulkhead load should be derived using direct calculation methods:

- where the structural arrangement is complex;
- where it is considered that the load in the pillar bulkhead will not be accurately represented by the above formulae, e.g. pillar bulkheads supporting decks in way of the ends of a long superstructure block;
- where the pillar bulkhead is not supported underneath by the double bottom or substantial structural members.

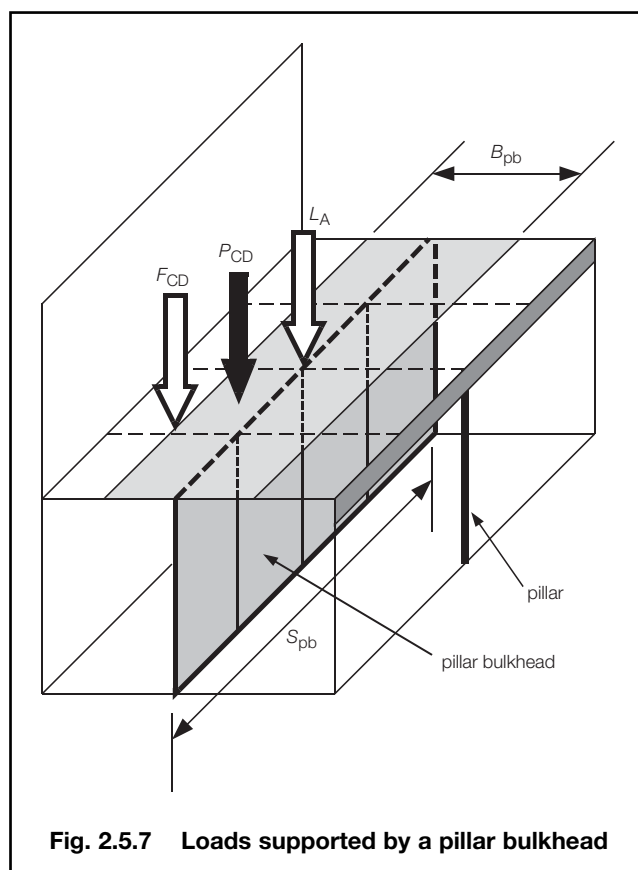


Fig. 2.5.7 Loads supported by a pillar bulkhead



# Total Load Assessment, TLA

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 1

## Section

|   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 1 | <b>Introduction</b>              |
| 2 | <b>Structural resistance</b>     |
| 3 | <b>Stress analysis model</b>     |
| 4 | <b>Structural design factors</b> |

## ■ Section 1 Introduction

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 The Total Load Assessment, **TLA**, procedure is an optional procedure that is applied on a voluntary basis when an Owner or designer seeks to increase confidence levels in the structural integrity of a ship. The **TLA** procedure is illustrated in Fig. 3.1.1.

1.1.2 The **TLA** procedure is based on the following concepts:

1. Derive the total design loads acting on each structural member.
2. Derive the structural resistance of each structural member.
3. Derive the load utilisation factors.
4. Ensure the load utilisation factors are less than the required design factors.

1.1.3 This Chapter gives the simplified stress analysis methods to be used for the **TLA** procedure. Direct calculations or alternative proven methods of analysis which are more rigorous will be accepted.

1.1.4 The design loads for the **TLA** procedure are given in Chapter 2, Total Design Loads.

1.1.5 The structural design factors are given in Section 4 and utilise the design criteria in Pt 6, Ch 5.

1.1.6 The simplified stress analysis techniques predict the total stresses acting in the structure as a consequence of the total loads. These techniques cover the assessment of stresses in the following:

- Primary structure.
- Primary/secondary plating systems.
- Grillage plating systems.

1.1.7 The resulting stresses are then checked against a set of design factors, which include stress, deflection and buckling requirements.

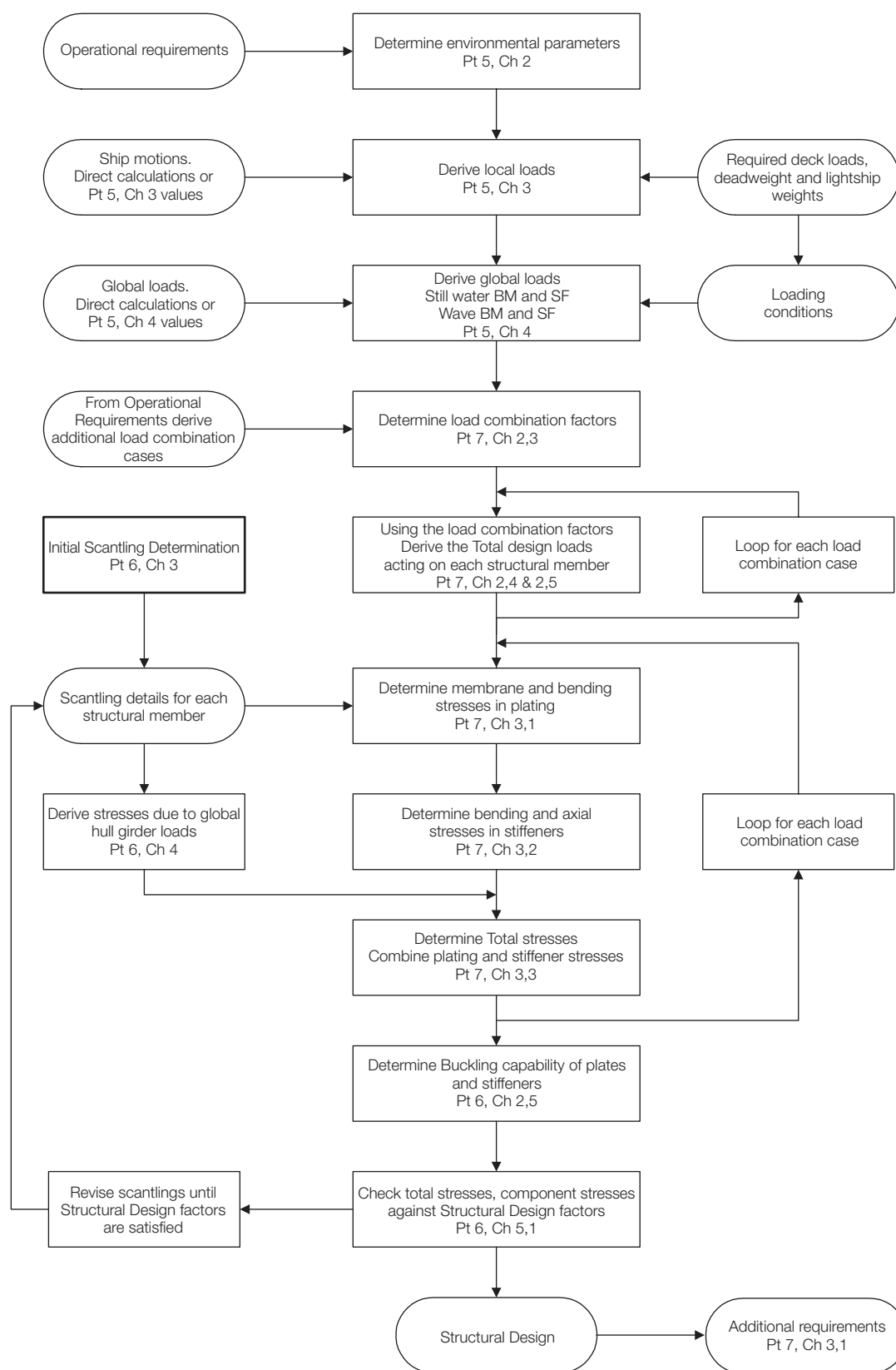
1.1.8 The **TLA** procedure is in addition to the normal Rule structural design approval requirements specified within Pt 6, Ch 3.

### 1.2 Structural design

1.2.1 The **TLA** procedure only forms part of the structural design process, **TLA** covers the structural design of the ship in the sea environment only. There are many other structural requirements as a consequence of other loads and good structural design practices that need to be incorporated. These include:

- bow flare impact and bottom slamming loads;
- ice requirements;
- design requirements to cover other strength issues, for example helicopter or vehicle decks;
- military requirements such as fragmentation protection;
- local impact loadings due to tugs, docks;
- supporting structure for machinery, cranes and lifting devices; and
- corrosion margins.

1.2.2 The structural design should clearly exhibit good structural continuity and smooth transition of scantlings between adjacent plating areas. In general, the **TLA** derived maximum scantlings for each structural member at any section within  $0,3L_R$  to  $0,7L_R$  are to be maintained over the central region.



**Fig. 3.1.1 Overview of the Total Load Assessment, TLA Procedure**

## Section 2 Structural resistance

### 2.1 Assessment of stresses in structural components

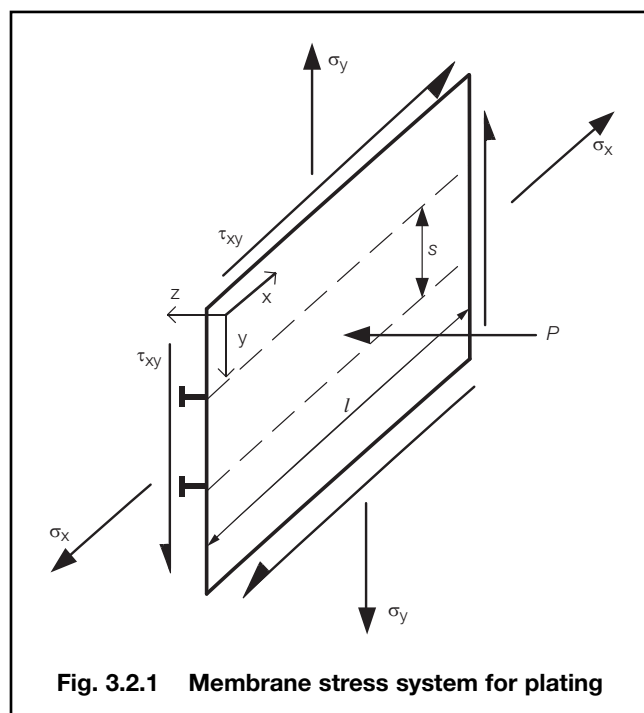
2.1.1 The equations and methods given below are to be used to derive the stresses acting within plating and within stiffeners and beams.

2.1.2 These equations are valid for plating and beams subjected to lateral, or normal, pressure or point loads, i.e., local design considerations.

2.1.3 The stresses in plating and beams subjected to hull girder loads are to be derived in accordance with the methods given in Pt 6, Ch 4.

### 2.2 Stresses in plating

2.2.1 The loads acting on a plate panel and its dimensions are illustrated in Fig. 3.2.1.



**Fig. 3.2.1 Membrane stress system for plating**

2.2.2 The bending stress in a plate panel between stiffeners due to a uniform lateral pressure is to be calculated as follows:

$$\sigma_b = p \left( \frac{22,4s \gamma \beta}{1000t_p} \right) \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

- $p$  = lateral pressure, in kN/m<sup>2</sup>
- $t_p$  = thickness of plating, in mm
- $s$  = spacing of secondary stiffeners, in mm
- $l$  = length of the plate panel, in metres
- $\gamma$  = convex curvature correction, see Pt 6, Ch 2,2.4

$\beta$  = aspect ratio correction, see Pt 6, Ch 2,2.5

NOTE

The plate bending stresses are to be based on the actual stiffener spacing.

2.2.3 The direct stress in a plate panel subjected to membrane or in-plane loading is to be calculated as follows:

$$\sigma_x = \frac{10L}{A} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

- $L$  = in-plane load on the panel of plating, in kN
- $A$  = area normal to the load,  $L$ , in cm<sup>2</sup>, ignoring secondary stiffeners which are not continuous but may include deep beams.

2.2.4 The shear stress in a plate panel is to be calculated as follows:

$$\tau_{xy} = \frac{10Q}{A} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

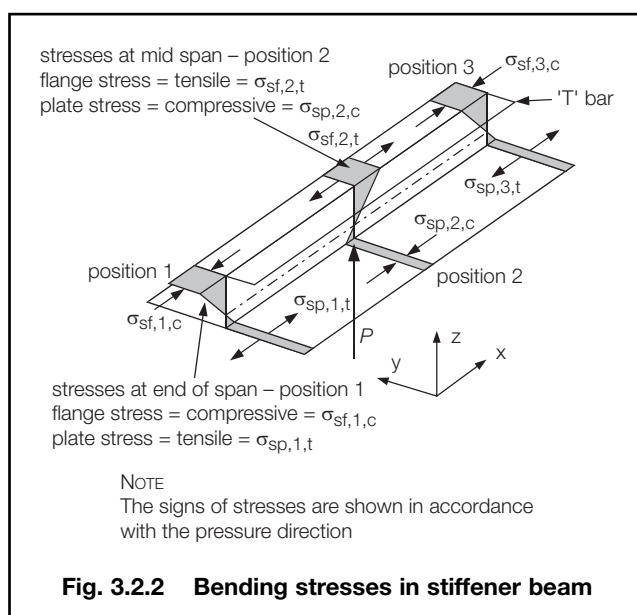
- $Q$  = shear force acting on the panel of plating
- $A$  = cross-sectional area of the panel in the direction of the shear force, in cm<sup>2</sup>  
=  $t_p b_v$  or  $t_p b_t$

$b_t$  and  $b_v$  are the total breadth of the plate panel over which the shear force acts.

### 2.3 Stresses in secondary and primary member stiffeners

2.3.1 The bending stresses, deflection and shear stress in stiffeners or beams due to lateral pressure loading or point loads are to be derived as given below.

2.3.2 The stresses in the stiffener flange,  $\sigma_{sf}$ , and the attached plating to the stiffener,  $\sigma_{sp}$ , due to the applied load are illustrated in Fig. 3.2.2 and may be derived using the formulae given below.



**Fig. 3.2.2 Bending stresses in stiffener beam**

NOTE

The signs of stresses are shown in accordance with the pressure direction

### 2.3.3 Bending stresses

Bending stress due to a lateral pressure load

$$\sigma_{sf,j} = + \frac{\Phi_{Zj} \rho s_p l_e^2}{Z_f} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_{sp,j} = - \frac{\Phi_{Zj} \rho s_p l_e^2}{Z_p} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Bending stress due to a point load or force

$$\sigma_{sf,j} = + \frac{10^3 \Phi_{Zj} F l_e}{Z_f} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_{sp,j} = - \frac{10^3 \Phi_{Zj} F l_e}{Z_p} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Bending stress due to an applied end deflection

$$\sigma_{sf,j} = + \frac{\Phi_{Zj} \delta E I}{10^5 l_e^2 Z_p} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\sigma_{sp,j} = - \frac{\Phi_{Zj} \delta E I}{10^5 l_e^2 Z_f} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

### 2.3.4 Beam deflection

Deflection in beam due to a lateral pressure load

$$\delta_{s,j} = \frac{10^5 \Phi_{lj} \rho s_p l_e^4}{E I} \text{ mm}$$

Deflection in beam due to point load

$$\delta_{s,j} = \frac{10^8 \Phi_{lj} F l_e^3}{E I} \text{ mm}$$

### 2.3.5 Shear stresses

Shear stress in beam due to a lateral pressure load

$$\tau_{s,j} = \frac{\Phi_{Aj} \rho s_p l_e}{100 A_w} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Shear stress in beam due to a point load

$$\tau_{s,j} = \frac{10 \Phi_{Aj} F}{A_w} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

Shear stress in beam due to an applied end deflection

$$\tau_{s,j} = \frac{\Phi_{Aj} E I \delta}{10 l_e^3 A_w} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$j$  = position along stiffener beam, where  $j = 1, 2$  or  $3$ , see Pt 6, Ch 2,2, Table 2.2.1 and Fig. 3.2.2

$\Phi_{Zj}$ ,  $\Phi_{lj}$  and  $\Phi_{Aj}$  are the section modulus inertia and shear web area coefficients dependent on the loading model assumption, see Pt 6, Ch 2,2, Table 2.2.1, and the position along the stiffener beam

$\rho$  = lateral pressure, in kN/m<sup>2</sup>

$F$  = applied force, in kN

$\delta$  = applied deflection, in mm

$l_e$  = effective span length of the stiffener or primary member, in metres, see Pt 6, Ch 2,2.6

$s_p$  is the stiffener spacing, in mm

$s_p$  is to be taken as  $s$  for secondary stiffeners and 1000S for primary members, see Pt 6, Ch 2,1.3.1

$Z_f$  and  $Z_p$  are the section moduli, in cm<sup>3</sup>, of the stiffener including attached plating at the flange and attached plating respectively

$I$  = section modulus, in cm<sup>4</sup>

$A_w$  = web area of stiffener, in cm<sup>2</sup>

$E$  = modulus of elasticity, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

2.3.6 The suffixes ‘,t’ and ‘,c’ refer to the tensile or compressive values of bending stress in the stiffener which arise due to the stiffener end condition restraints, see Fig. 3.2.2.

## Section 3 Stress analysis model

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 The stress analysis model given in this Section is to be applied to the total design loads determined in accordance with Chapter 2.

3.1.2 The stresses, deflections and other values are to be determined for all load cases and all the design load combinations specified in Ch 2,3.

### 3.2 Stress determination in primary members

3.2.1 Primary members are major structural members and provide support to decks, major equipment, etc., and also control the cross-sectional and longitudinal shape between decks, side shell and bulkheads. The major primary members are listed in the paragraphs below.

3.2.2 The following structural items are classed as longitudinal primary members:

- Double bottom girders with attached bottom shell and inner bottom plating.
- Single bottom girders with attached bottom shell plating.
- Deck girders.
- Longitudinal stringers with attached side shell or longitudinal bulkhead plating.
- Horizontal diaphragms with attached side shell and inner skin plating.

3.2.3 The following structural items are classed as vertical primary members:

- Deep web frames supporting the side shell or bulkheads including attached plating.
- Double skin web frames including the attached side shell and inner skin plating.
- Deep vertical bulkhead stiffeners.

3.2.4 The following structural items are classed as transverse primary members:

- Double bottom floors with bottom shell and inner bottom plating.
- Single bottom floors with bottom shell plating.
- Deep deck or transverse beams with attached deck plating.
- Double skin deck beam with attached upper and lower deck plating.
- Transverse bulkhead stringers with attached bulkhead plating.



# Total Load Assessment, TLA

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 3

## Section 3

3.2.5 Primary members support the secondary members and can be considered to act independently of the secondary members. They need to be considered as a large beam supporting local loads with the global and local membrane stresses in the attached plating.

3.2.6 A typical primary member will consist of:

- Primary attached plating, e.g., bottom shell providing local bending capability.
- Web plate, providing shear capability.
- Upper flange or plating for double skin construction providing local bending capability.

The stresses in the attached plating and flange are to be derived in accordance with the requirements of this Section. The stresses in the web plating are to be determined in accordance with 3.3, or 3.4 if it is of grillage construction.

3.2.7 The stresses in primary members are to be derived using the recommended equations and stiffener end conditions given in Table 3.3.1. The stress components used in deriving the primary member stresses are given below.

3.2.8 When it is considered that a different combination of stresses is likely to produce higher stresses, then this combination should be considered.

3.2.9 In general, a primary member will be subject to the following loads:

- In-plane or axial loading as a consequence hull girder loads, transverse loading due to side shell pressure loads or vertical support loads.
- Bending loads due to the member supporting out of plane external and internal pressures and equipment or cargo loadings.

3.2.10 The in-plane or axial loading in the primary member attached plating and flanges is to be taken as the membrane stress derived in accordance with the following:

(i) For longitudinally effective primary members:

$\sigma_{hg}$  is the longitudinal stress due to hull girder bending

$$\sigma_{hg} = \frac{Z_{na} M_D}{1000 I_{hg}} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

(ii) For primary members in the transverse direction:

$\sigma_{yg}$  is the membrane stress due to a global load of  $LT$

$$\sigma_{yg} = \frac{10 LT}{A} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

(iii) For primary members in the vertical direction:

$\sigma_{xv}$  is the membrane stress due to a vertical load of  $LV$

$$\sigma_{xv} = \frac{10 LV}{A} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$M_D$  = design hull girder bending moment given in Ch 2,3

$Z_{na}$  = vertical distance above the neutral axis of the structural member under consideration, in metres

$I_{hg}$  = the section inertia at the longitudinal position under consideration, see Pt 6, Ch 4,2.3, in  $m^4$

$A$  is the total area, in  $cm^2$ , of the primary member including the full breadth of attached plating

$LT$  and  $LV$  are defined in Ch 2,2.1.1.

3.2.11 The out of plane bending loads to be applied to the primary member are specified in Chapter 2. For example, the out of plane bending load for a double bottom girder is specified in Ch 2,4.6.7. In this case the pressure components are to be uniformly distributed over the double bottom girder beam with the point loads applied as individual forces.

3.2.12 The stresses in the flange and attached plating due to bending of the primary member are to be derived as follows:

$\sigma_{xb}$  is the stress in the plating due to bending of the primary member beam/plate combination under lateral pressure loading or lateral inertial loads

$\sigma_{xb}$  is to be taken as the negative value of  $\sigma_{sp,c}$ , i.e.,  $\sigma_{sp,c}$ , when the primary member axial stress is negative, similarly the positive value of  $\sigma_{sp}$ , i.e.,  $\sigma_{sp,t}$ , is to be taken when is the axial stress positive

When appropriate the  $\sigma_{xb}$  value is to be the summation of stresses as result of inertial pressures and inertial point loads

$\sigma_{sp,c}$  and  $\sigma_{sp,t}$  are the maximum compressive and tensile stresses in the attached plating of the primary member and are to be derived using the bending stress equations in 2.3.3, see also 2.3.6.

3.2.13 The section modulus of the primary member with regard to local bending properties is to be derived in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 2,2.3 with effective breadths of attached plating as given by Pt 6, Ch 2,2.2.

3.2.14 The total equivalent stress or von Mises stress,  $\sigma_{vm}$ , is to be derived using the following formula:

$$\sigma_{vm} = \sqrt{\sigma_x^2 + \sigma_y^2 - \sigma_y \sigma_x + 3 \tau_{xy}^2} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

## 3.3 Stress determination in primary/secondary systems

3.3.1 The primary members support the secondary members. The secondary stiffeners transfer the lateral loads into the primary members.

3.3.2 An example of a primary/secondary plating and stiffener system is as follows: a longitudinal spacing of 600 mm and a transverse spacing of 2000 mm with the transverse stiffeners having an section inertia value of five times the secondary longitudinal stiffeners.

3.3.3 In a primary/secondary system it is normally sufficient to consider the secondary stiffeners as acting independently of the primary stiffeners. Hence the total stress analysis can ignore the effects of bending of the primary members.

3.3.4 The total stress analysis can be based on the plating between the primary transverse members and need only consider plating membrane stresses and bending stresses in secondary members.

## Total Load Assessment, TLA

## Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 3

**Table 3.3.1 Stress determination in primary members**

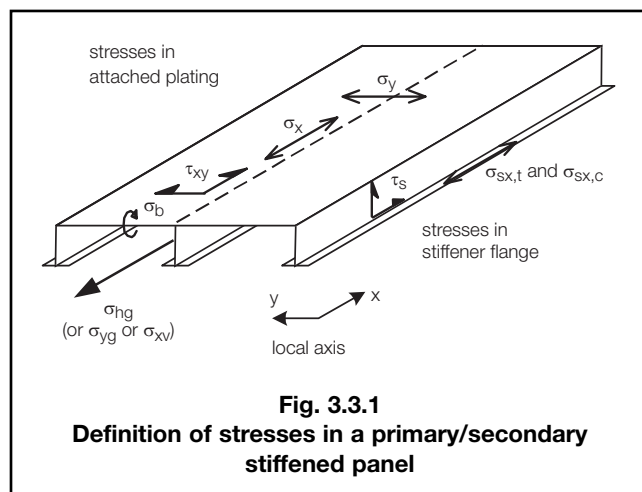
| Stress direction<br>see Notes                                                                                                                                                             | Stress equation                                                                                                                                                                 | Stiffener end condition                                                                                 | Notes                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Longitudinal primary members                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                         |                                                   |
| $\sigma_x$                                                                                                                                                                                | $\sigma_x = \sigma_{hg} + \sigma_{xb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                        | Built in                                                                                                | Applicable to the flange and the attached plating |
| $\sigma_y$                                                                                                                                                                                | $\sigma_y = \sigma_{yg}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> (attached to deck plating)<br>$\sigma_y = \sigma_{xv}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> (attached to side shell or long bhd plating)                | N.A.                                                                                                    | Only applicable to the attached plating           |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                                                                                                                                                               | $\tau_{xy}$ is to be taken as the shear stress for the attached plating, see 3.3 or 3.4                                                                                         | —                                                                                                       | Only applicable to the attached plating           |
| Transverse primary members                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                         |                                                   |
| $\sigma_x$                                                                                                                                                                                | $\sigma_x = \sigma_{yg} + \sigma_{xb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                        | Built in                                                                                                | Applicable to the flange and the attached plating |
| $\sigma_y$                                                                                                                                                                                | $\sigma_y = \sigma_{hg}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> (attached to deck plating)<br>$\sigma_y = \sigma_{xv}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> (attached to transverse bulkhead plating)                   | N.A.                                                                                                    | Only applicable to the attached plating           |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                                                                                                                                                               | $\tau_{xy}$ is to be taken as the shear stress for the attached plating, see 3.3 or 3.4                                                                                         | —                                                                                                       | Only applicable to the attached plating           |
| Vertical primary members                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                         |                                                   |
| $\sigma_x$                                                                                                                                                                                | $\sigma_x = \sigma_{xv} + \sigma_{xb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                        | Built in                                                                                                | Applicable to the flange and the attached plating |
| $\sigma_y$                                                                                                                                                                                | $\sigma_y = \sigma_{hg}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> (attached to side shell or long bhd plating)<br>$\sigma_y = \sigma_{yg}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> (attached to transverse bulkhead plating) | N.A.                                                                                                    | Only applicable to the attached plating           |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                                                                                                                                                               | $\tau_{xy}$ is to be taken as the shear stress for the attached plating, see 3.3 or 3.4                                                                                         | —                                                                                                       | Only applicable to the attached plating           |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                         |                                                   |
| $\sigma_x$ is along the span of the primary member<br>$\sigma_y$ is in the normal direction to the span in the attached plating<br>$\tau_{xy}$ is only applicable to the attached plating |                                                                                                                                                                                 | $\sigma_{hg}$ , $\sigma_{yg}$ and $\sigma_{xv}$ are given in 3.2.10<br>$\sigma_{xb}$ is given in 3.2.12 |                                                   |
| <div>Note for web plating, see 3.3 or 3.4</div> <div></div> <div></div>                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                         |                                                   |

# Total Load Assessment, TLA

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 3

3.3.5 The stresses in the plating of a primary/secondary plating system are to be derived using the recommended equations and stiffener end conditions given in Tables 3.3.2 and 3.3.3. The stresses in the flanges of panel stiffeners are given in 2.3.6 using the conditions given in Tables 3.2.3 and 3.3.3. The stresses and nomenclature are shown in Fig. 3.3.1.



3.3.6 When it is considered that a different combination of stresses is likely to produce higher stresses, then this combination should be considered.

3.3.7 Buckling of plating is to be assessed using the in-plane membrane stresses only. The membrane stresses are to be derived as follows:

- $\sigma_x$  using Equation B
- $\sigma_y$  using Equation D
- $\tau_{xy}$  using Equation E

where

Equations B, D and E are defined in Table 3.3.2.

## 3.4 Stress determination in grillage systems

3.4.1 A grillage system of plating and stiffeners is one where the bending stiffness of the orthogonal stiffeners are similar in magnitude and the orthogonal stiffeners work together to support the applied loads. The grillage system is in turn supported by primary structural items such as deep girders, deep transverse beams or bulkheads.

3.4.2 An example of a grillage system is as follows: plating supported by a longitudinal spacing of 600 mm and a transverse spacing of 1500 mm with the transverse stiffeners having an section inertia value of 1,5 times the longitudinal stiffeners.

3.4.3 Normally it is necessary to use direct calculations to evaluate the stresses within a grillage plating system. However, it may be sufficient to consider the stiffeners perpendicular to an edge of the grillage panel as acting independently of the grillage system. See Table 3.3.4 and Methods FF and GG in the attached figure, also Methods II and JJ in Table 3.3.5.

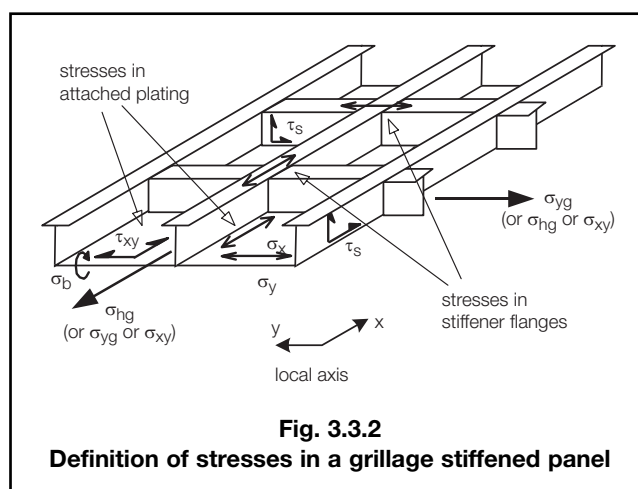
3.4.4 The bending stresses in the edge stiffeners may be evaluated on the basis of encastre at the edge of the grillage panel and no rotation and free to deflect at the intersection with the first orthogonal stiffener.

3.4.5 In this case, the total stress analysis is to be based on the membrane stress in the plating of the grillage panel and consider the bending stresses in the middle stiffener perpendicular to the edge of the panel.

3.4.6 It will be necessary to derive the total stress at the edge of the panel for each stiffener direction.

3.4.7 The total stress in the centre of the grillage panel should also be checked. In this case it is necessary to consider the stresses in the plate due to bending of the stiffener in each direction as well as the plating stresses due to membrane loads.

3.4.8 The stresses in the plating of a grillage plating system are to be derived using the recommended equations and stiffener end conditions given in Tables 3.3.4 and 3.3.5. The stresses in the flanges of the panel stiffener are given by 2.3.6, using the conditions given in Tables 3.3.4 and 3.3.5. The stresses are illustrated in Fig. 3.3.2.



3.4.9 When it is considered that a different combination of stresses is likely to produce higher stresses, then this combination should be considered.

3.4.10 Buckling of plating is to be assessed using the in-plane membrane stresses only. The membrane stresses are to be derived as follows:

- $\sigma_x$  using Equation B
- $\sigma_y$  using Equation D
- $\tau_{xy}$  using Equation E

where

Equations B, D and E are defined in Table 3.3.4.

# Total Load Assessment, TLA

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 3

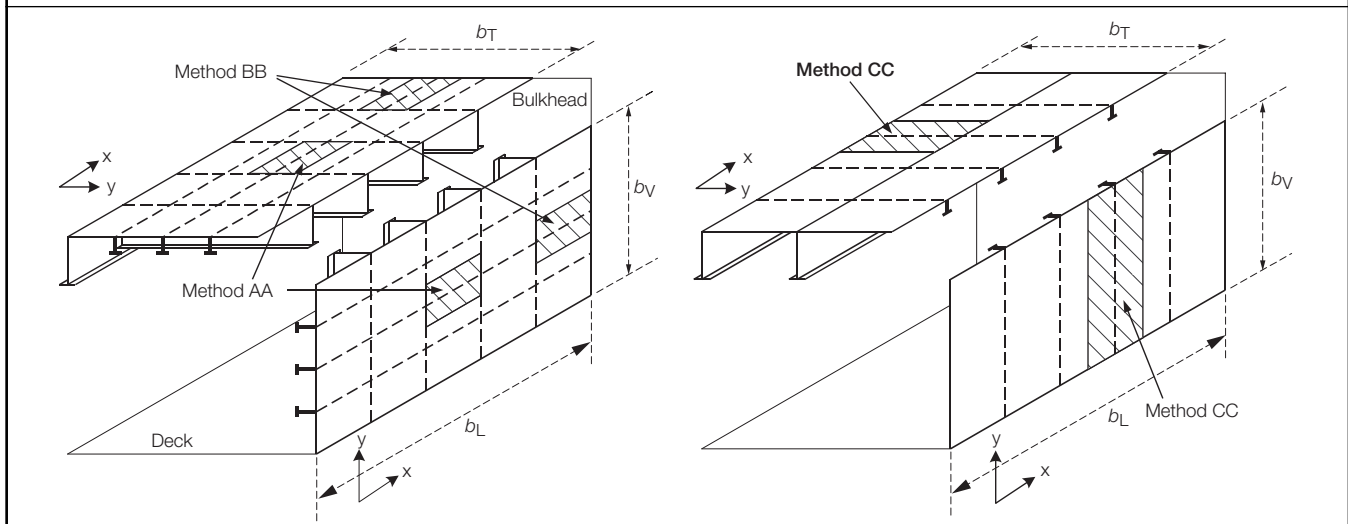
Section 3

**Table 3.3.2 Stress determination in longitudinal plating of primary/secondary systems, e.g., decks and longitudinal bulkheads**

| Stress direction                                                 | Stress equation                                                                                          |                                                | Stiffener end condition                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                  | Plating                                                                                                  | Stiffener flange                               |                                                                       |
| Method AA Longitudinal secondary stiffeners                      |                                                                                                          |                                                |                                                                       |
| $\sigma_x$                                                       | <b>Equation A</b><br>$\sigma_x = \sigma_{xg} + \sigma_{xb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                            | $\sigma_{sx}$ , see 3.11                       | Built in                                                              |
| $\sigma_y$                                                       | <b>Equation D</b><br>$\sigma_y = \sigma_{yg}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                          | N.A.                                           | N.A.                                                                  |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                                      | <b>Equation E</b><br>$\tau_{xy} = \tau_{hg} + \frac{QT}{t_b b_T} + \frac{QV}{t_b b_V}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> | $\delta_s$ , see 2.3.4<br>$\tau_s$ , see 2.3.5 |                                                                       |
| Method BB Longitudinal secondary stiffeners adjacent to bulkhead |                                                                                                          |                                                |                                                                       |
| $\sigma_x$                                                       | <b>Equation A</b><br>$\sigma_x = \sigma_{xg} + \sigma_{xb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                            |                                                | Edge end built in. Other end free to deflect, no rotation, see Note 2 |
| $\sigma_y$                                                       | <b>Equation D</b><br>$\sigma_y = \sigma_{yg}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                          | N.A.                                           | N.A.                                                                  |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                                      | <b>Equation E</b><br>$\tau_{xy} = \tau_{hg} + \frac{QT}{t_b b_T} + \frac{QV}{t_b b_V}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> | $\delta_s$ , see 2.3.4<br>$\tau_s$ , see 2.3.5 |                                                                       |
| Method CC Transverse secondary stiffeners                        |                                                                                                          |                                                |                                                                       |
| $\sigma_x$                                                       | <b>Equation B</b><br>$\sigma_x = \sigma_{xg}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                          | N.A.                                           | N.A.                                                                  |
| $\sigma_y$                                                       | <b>Equation C</b><br>$\sigma_y = \sigma_{yg} + \sigma_{yb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                            | $\sigma_{sx}$ , see 3.11                       | Built in                                                              |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                                      | <b>Equation E</b><br>$\tau_{xy} = \tau_{hg} + \frac{QT}{t_b b_T} + \frac{QV}{t_b b_V}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> | $\delta_s$ , see 2.3.4<br>$\tau_s$ , see 2.3.5 |                                                                       |

**NOTES**

1. The parameters for Equations A to E are given in 3.5 to 3.7.
2. Alternatively, the deflection from the transverse member over its full span, excluding the support from longitudinal stiffeners, may be applied.



## Total Load Assessment, TLA

## Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 3

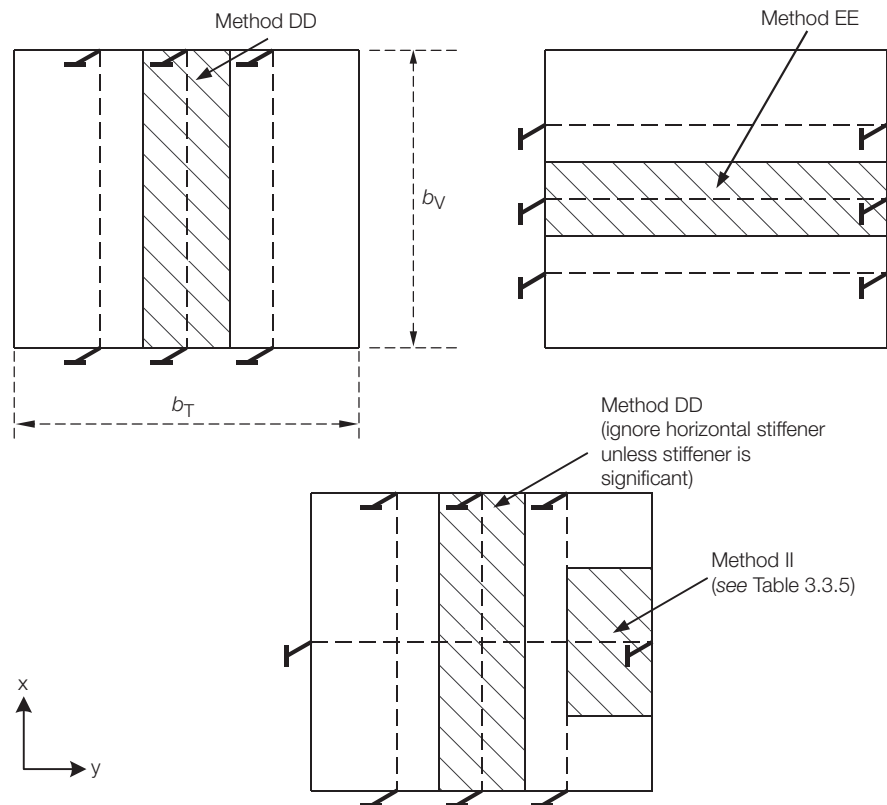
Section 3

**Table 3.3.3 Stress determination in transverse plating of primary/secondary systems, e.g., transverse bulkheads**

| Stress direction                          | Stress equation                                                                                   |                                                | Stiffener end condition |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                           | Plating                                                                                           | Stiffener flange                               |                         |
| Method DD Vertical secondary stiffeners   |                                                                                                   |                                                |                         |
| $\sigma_x$                                | Equation H<br>$\sigma_x = \sigma_{xg} + \sigma_{xb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                            | $\sigma_{sx}$ , see 3.11                       | N.A.                    |
| $\sigma_y$                                | Equation G<br>$\sigma_y = \sigma_{yg}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                          | N.A.                                           | Built in                |
| $\tau_{xy}$                               | Equation J<br>$\tau_{xy} = \tau_{xy} + \frac{QT}{t_b b_T} + \frac{QV}{t_b b_V}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> | $\delta_s$ , see 2.3.4<br>$\tau_s$ , see 2.3.5 |                         |
| Method EE Horizontal secondary stiffeners |                                                                                                   |                                                |                         |
| $\sigma_x$                                | Equation I<br>$\sigma_x = \sigma_{xv}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                          | N.A.                                           | N.A.                    |
| $\sigma_y$                                | Equation F<br>$\sigma_y = \sigma_{yg} + \sigma_{yb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                            | $\sigma_{sx}$ , see 3.11                       | Built in                |
| $\tau_{xy}$                               | Equation J<br>$\tau_{xy} = \tau_{xy} + \frac{QT}{t_b b_T} + \frac{QV}{t_b b_V}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> | $\delta_s$ , see 2.3.4<br>$\tau_s$ , see 2.3.5 |                         |

## NOTE

The parameters for Equations F to J are given in 3.8 to 3.10.



## Total Load Assessment, TLA

## Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 3

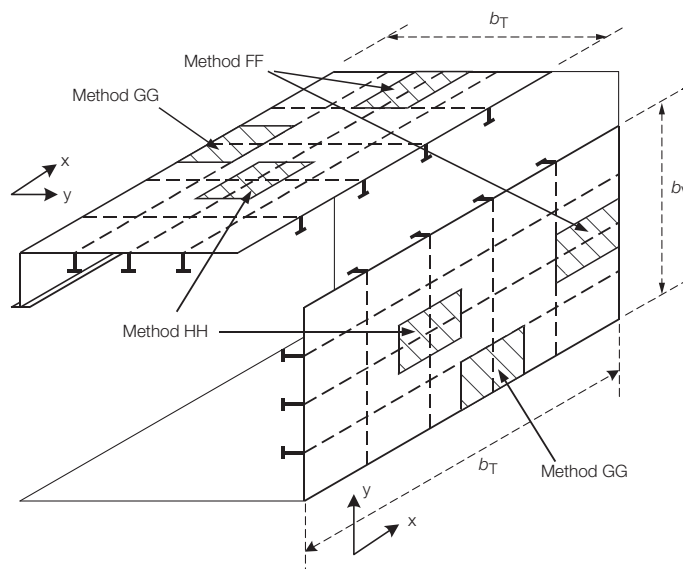
Section 3

**Table 3.3.4 Stress determination in longitudinal plating of grillage systems, e.g., decks and longitudinal bulkheads**

| Stress direction                                                     | Stress equation                                                                                          |                                                | Stiffener end condition                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                      | Plating                                                                                                  | Stiffener flange                               |                                                                       |
| <b>Method FF</b> At the fore and aft edges of a grillage panel       |                                                                                                          |                                                |                                                                       |
| $\sigma_x$                                                           | <b>Equation A</b><br>$\sigma_x = \sigma_{xg} + \sigma_{xb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                            | $\sigma_{sx}$ , see 3.11                       | Edge end built in. Other end free to deflect, no rotation, see Note 2 |
| $\sigma_y$                                                           | <b>Equation D</b><br>$\sigma_y = \sigma_{yg}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                          | N.A.                                           | N.A.                                                                  |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                                          | <b>Equation E</b><br>$\tau_{xy} = \tau_{hg} + \frac{QT}{t_b b_T} + \frac{QV}{t_b b_V}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> | $\delta_s$ , see 2.3.4<br>$\tau_s$ , see 2.3.5 |                                                                       |
| <b>Method GG</b> At the port and starboard edges of a grillage panel |                                                                                                          |                                                |                                                                       |
| $\sigma_x$                                                           | <b>Equation B</b><br>$\sigma_x = \sigma_{xg}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                                          | N.A.                                           | N.A.                                                                  |
| $\sigma_y$                                                           | <b>Equation C</b><br>$\sigma_y = \sigma_{yg} + \sigma_{yb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                            | $\sigma_{sx}$ , see 3.11                       | Edge end built in. Other end free to deflect, no rotation, see Note 3 |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                                          | <b>Equation E</b><br>$\tau_{xy} = \tau_{hg} + \frac{QT}{t_b b_T} + \frac{QV}{t_b b_V}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> | $\delta_s$ , see 2.3.4<br>$\tau_s$ , see 2.3.5 |                                                                       |
| <b>Method HH</b> At the centre of a grillage panel                   |                                                                                                          |                                                |                                                                       |
| $\sigma_x$                                                           | <b>Equation A</b><br>$\sigma_x = \sigma_{xg} + \sigma_{xb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                            | $\sigma_{sx}$ , see 3.11                       | Built in                                                              |
| $\sigma_y$                                                           | <b>Equation C</b><br>$\sigma_y = \sigma_{yg} + \sigma_{yb}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup>                            | $\sigma_{sx}$ , see 3.11                       | Built in                                                              |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                                          | <b>Equation E</b><br>$\tau_{xy} = \tau_{hg} + \frac{QT}{t_b b_T} + \frac{QV}{t_b b_V}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> | $\delta_s$ , see 2.3.4<br>$\tau_s$ , see 2.3.5 |                                                                       |

## NOTES

1. The parameters for Equations A to E are given in 3.5 to 3.7.
2. Alternatively, the deflection from the longitudinal member over its full span, excluding the support from transverse stiffeners, may be applied.
3. Alternatively, the deflection from the transverse member over its full span, excluding the support from longitudinal stiffeners, may be applied.





# Total Load Assessment, TLA

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 3

## 3.5 Derivation of the combined longitudinal stress on panels subjected to hull girder bending

3.5.1 The longitudinal stresses in the plating and stiffener flanges for structural members subjected to hull girder bending loads as well as lateral loads are to be derived using the equations specified in this Section, see Tables 3.3.2 and 3.3.4.

3.5.2 **Equation A** is used for grillage systems or plating systems with the secondary stiffeners orientated in the longitudinal direction. For these systems, the stress in the plating/stiffener combination due to local bending needs to be considered in addition to the membrane stresses due to hull girder bending. The stress components in Equation A are given below.

3.5.3 **Equation B** is used for plating systems with the secondary stiffeners orientated in the transverse (or vertical) direction. For these systems only the longitudinal stress due to hull girder bending needs to be considered.

3.5.4 The longitudinal stress components associated with Equations A and B are given below:

$\sigma_{xg}$  is the longitudinal membrane stress due to hull girder bending

$$= \frac{Z_{na} M_D}{1000 I_{hg}} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$\sigma_{xb}$  is the stress in the plating due to bending of the longitudinal stiffener/plate combination under lateral pressure loading or lateral inertial loads  
Normally  $\sigma_{xb}$  is to be taken as the negative value of  $\sigma_{sp}$ , i.e.,  $\sigma_{sp,c}$ , when the hull girder bending stress  $\sigma_{xg}$  is negative, similarly the positive value of  $\sigma_{sp}$ , i.e.,  $\sigma_{sp,t}$ , is to be taken when  $\sigma_{xg}$  is positive, see Fig. 3.2.2. However, there may be cases where it is necessary to consider the opposite situation  
When appropriate, the  $\sigma_{xb}$  value is to be the summation of stresses as result of inertial pressures and inertial point loads

$\sigma_{sp,c}$  and  $\sigma_{sp,t}$  are the maximum compressive and tensile stresses in the plating of the stiffener/plate combination and are to be derived using the bending stress equations in 2.3.3, see also 2.3.6

$M_D$  = design hull girder bending moment, in kNm, given in Ch 2,3

$Z_{na}$  = vertical distance above the neutral axis of the structural member under consideration, in metres

$I_{hg}$  = the section inertia at the longitudinal position under consideration, see Pt 6, Ch 4,2, in m<sup>4</sup>.

## 3.6 Derivation of the combined transverse stress acting on panels subjected to hull girder bending

3.6.1 The transverse stresses in the plating and stiffener flanges for structural members subjected to transverse loads as well as lateral loads are to be derived using the equations specified in this Section, see Tables 3.3.2 and 3.3.4.

3.6.2 **Equation C** is used for grillage systems or plating systems with the secondary stiffeners orientated in the transverse direction. For these systems, the stress in the plating/stiffener combination due to local bending needs to be considered in addition to membrane stresses due to global transverse loading. The stress components in Equation C are given below.

3.6.3 **Equation D** is used for plating systems with the secondary stiffeners orientated in the longitudinal direction. For these systems, only membrane stress due to global transverse loading needs to be considered.

3.6.4 The transverse stress components associated with equations C and D are given below:

$\sigma_{yg}$  is the membrane stress due to global transverse loading

$$= \frac{LT}{t_p b_L} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$\sigma_{yb}$  is the stress in the plating due to bending of the longitudinal stiffener/plate combination under lateral pressure loading or lateral inertial loads

Normally,  $\sigma_{yb}$  is to be taken as the negative value of  $\sigma_{sp}$ , i.e.,  $\sigma_{sp,c}$ , when the global transverse stress  $\sigma_{yg}$  is negative, similarly the positive value of  $\sigma_{sp}$ , i.e.,  $\sigma_{sp,t}$ , is to be taken when  $\sigma_{yg}$  is positive, see Fig. 3.3.2. However, there may be cases where it is necessary to consider the opposite situation.

When appropriate, the  $\sigma_{yb}$  value is to be the summation of stresses as result of inertial pressures and inertial point loads

$\sigma_{sp,c}$  and  $\sigma_{sp,t}$  are the maximum compressive and tensile stresses in the plating of the stiffener/plate combination and are to be derived using the bending stress equations in 2.3.3, see also 2.3.6

$LT$  is the appropriate transverse design load, in kN, given in Chapter 2, i.e.,  $LT_{DK}$ ,  $LT_{BS}$ , etc.

$t_p$  = thickness of plating, in mm

$b_L$  = breadth of plating, in metres, over which the load  $LT$  applies. Normally, this is the distance between decks or the height of the plating panel.

## 3.7 Derivation of the total shear stress

3.7.1 **Equation E** is used to derive the total shear stress in the plating for all plating systems.

3.7.2 The shear stress components associated with Equation E are given below:

$|Q|$  denotes the absolute value of parameter  $Q$

$$\tau_{hg} = \frac{|Q| A_z}{I_{hg} \delta_i} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$Q_D$  is global hull girder shear force, in kN. This will be zero for all transverse plating systems

$Q_D$  is given in Ch 2,3

$Q_T$  = local shear force due to local transverse loads, in kN, given in Chapter 2, e.g.,  $Q_{T_{DK}}$ ,  $Q_{T_{ST}}$

$Q_V$  = local shear force due to local inertial forces, in kN, given in Chapter 2, e.g.,  $Q_{V_{DG}}$ ,  $Q_{V_{BG}}$

$A_z$ ,  $I_{hg}$  and  $\delta_i$  are given in Pt 6, Ch 4,2.3.5



# Total Load Assessment, TLA

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 3

$b_V, b_T$  = total breadth over which the shear force acts, typically the height or breadth of the plating panel, in metres, see Tables 3.3.2 or 3.3.4.

NOTE

All shear force loads are to be assumed positive.

## 3.8 Derivation of the combined transverse stress acting on transversely orientated panels

3.8.1 The transverse stresses in the plating and stiffener flanges for structural members subjected to transverse loads as well as lateral loads are to be derived using the equations specified in this Section, see Tables 3.3.3 and 3.3.5.

3.8.2 **Equation F** is used for grillage systems or plating systems with the secondary stiffeners orientated in the transverse direction.

3.8.3 **Equation G** is used for plating systems with the secondary stiffeners orientated in the vertical direction.

3.8.4 The transverse stress components associated with Equations F and G are given in 3.6.4.

## 3.9 Derivation of the combined vertical stress acting on transversely orientated panels

3.9.1 The vertical stresses in the plating and stiffener flanges for structural members subjected to vertical loads as well as lateral loads are to be derived using the equations specified in this Section, see Tables 3.3.3 and 3.3.5.

3.9.2 **Equation H** is used for grillage systems or plating systems with the transverse secondary stiffeners orientated in the vertical direction.

3.9.3 **Equation I** is used for plating systems with the secondary stiffeners orientated in the transverse direction.

3.9.4 The vertical stress components associated with Equations H and I are given below:

$\sigma_{xv}$  is the membrane stress due to vertical loading

$$= \frac{LV}{t_p b_T} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$\sigma_{xb}$  is the stress in the plating due to bending of the longitudinal stiffener/plate combination under lateral pressure loading or lateral inertial loads

Normally  $\sigma_{xb}$  is to be taken as the negative value of  $\sigma_{sp}$ , i.e.,  $\sigma_{sp,c}$ , when the vertical stress  $\sigma_{xv}$  is negative, similarly the positive value of  $\sigma_{sp}$ , i.e.,  $\sigma_{sp,t}$ , is to be taken when  $\sigma_{xv}$  is positive, see 3.2.2. However, there may be cases where it is necessary to consider the opposite situation

when appropriate, the  $\sigma_{xb}$  value is to be the summation of stresses as result of inertial pressures and inertial point loads

$\sigma_{sp,c}$  and  $\sigma_{sp,t}$  are the maximum compressive and tensile stresses in the plating of the stiffener/plate combination and are to be derived using the bending stress equations in 2.3.3, see also 2.3.6

where

$LV$  is the design load, in kN, given in Chapter 2, e.g.,  $LV_{SS}, LV_{BH}$

$t_p$  = thickness of plating, in mm

$b_T$  = breadth of plating, in metres, over which the load  $LV$  applies. Normally, this is the distance between the side shell(s) or longitudinal bulkheads but it is to be reduced for the presence of large openings.

## 3.10 Derivation of the total shear stress on transversely orientated panels

3.10.1 **Equation J** is used to derive the total shear stress in any plating system which is not subjected to global hull girder shear force.

3.10.2 The shear stress components associated with Equation J are given below:

$QT$  = local shear force due to local transverse loads, in kN, given in Chapter 2, e.g.,  $QT_{DK}, QT_{SF}, QT_{ST}$

$QV$  = local shear force due to local inertial forces, in kN, given in Chapter 2, e.g.,  $QV_{BM}, QV_{DG}, QV_{BG}, QV_{FL}$

$B_V, B_T$  = total breadth, in metres, over which the shear force acts, see Tables 3.3.3 or 3.3.5.

NOTE

All shear force loads are to be assumed positive.

## 3.11 Derivation of total stresses in stiffener flanges

3.11.1 The total compressive and tensile stresses in stiffener flanges,  $\sigma_{sx}$ , are given by the following:

$$\sigma_{sx,c} = \sigma_{ax} + \sigma_{sf,c} \text{ N/mm}^2 \text{ (compressive)}$$

$$\sigma_{sx,t} = \sigma_{ax} + \sigma_{sf,t} \text{ N/mm}^2 \text{ (tensile)}$$

where

$\sigma_{ax}$  is the axial stress in the stiffener at the combined stiffener plate neutral axis, this is normally to be taken as the membrane stress in the plating, i.e.,  $\sigma_{xg}, \sigma_{yg}$  or  $\sigma_{xv}$  depending on the orientation of the stiffener, see 3.5.4, 3.6.4 or 3.9.4

$\sigma_{sf,t}, \sigma_{sf,c}$  are the tensile and compressive bending stresses in the stiffener flange, see 2.3.3 and 2.3.6, using the appropriate boundary conditions given in Section 3.

3.11.2 These formulae may be applied to grillage and primary/secondary stiffened plating systems. The stresses in a stiffener beam subjected to more than one load may be derived by adding the stresses from each load component.

## 3.12 Derivation of total equivalent stress

3.12.1 The total equivalent stress or von Mises stress,  $\sigma_{vm}$ , is to be derived using the following formula:

$$\sigma_{vm} = \sqrt{\sigma_x^2 + \sigma_y^2 - \sigma_y \sigma_x + 3 \tau_{xy}^2} \text{ N/mm}^2.$$

## Section 4 Structural design factors

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 This Section gives the allowable design criteria to be used to assess the structure for maximum and minimum stresses and other values derived in accordance with the **TLA** method.

4.1.2 The allowable design criteria are also to be used when direct calculation or similar methods are used as an alternative to the **TLA** stress analysis model in Section 3.

4.1.3 The allowable design criteria are applicable for all ships including NS1 ships.

### 4.2 Design criteria for the Total Load Assessment (TLA) approach

4.2.1 The stresses in the plating and stiffeners that have been derived using the **TLA** method are to be less than the allowable stresses and other design criteria given in this Section. For all areas of the structure, the modes of failures specified in Tables 3.4.1 to 3.4.4 are to be satisfied. See also 4.3 for presentation of results.

4.2.2 In order to satisfy the requirements, the ratio of the actual stress to the allowable stress or load utilisation factor is to be less than 1,0, similarly for the deflection and buckling utilisation factors. Hence

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma/\sigma_a &< 1,0 \\ \lambda/\lambda_a &< 1,0 \\ \delta/\delta_a &< 1,0\end{aligned}$$

where

- $\sigma$  is the actual stress value
- $\sigma_a$  is the allowable stress value, see 4.2.3
- $\lambda$  is the actual buckling factor of safety achieved
- $\lambda_a$  is the allowable buckling factor of safety, see 4.2.4
- $\delta$  is the actual deflection
- $\delta_a$  is the allowable deflection value, see 4.2.5.

4.2.3 The allowable stresses are to be derived using the following formulae:

- Direct or bending allowable stress  
 $\sigma_a = f_1 f_{hts} \sigma_o \text{ N/mm}^2$
- Shear allowable stress  
 $\tau_a = f_1 f_{hts} \tau_o \text{ N/mm}^2$

where

$f_1$  is taken from Table 5.3.2 in Pt 6, Ch 5, as specified below:

- Table 3.4.1 for plating.
  - Table 3.4.2 for stiffeners.
  - Table 3.4.3 for plate panels.
  - Table 3.4.4 for primary members.
- $f_{hts}$  = correction factor for high tensile steel, see Pt 6, Ch 5, 1.3
- $\sigma_o$  is the minimum yield stress
- $\tau_o$  is the minimum shear yield stress.

4.2.4 The buckling design safety factors are given in Table 5.3.2 in Pt 6, Ch 5.3 and are to be used in conjunction with the buckling requirements specified in Pt 6, Ch 2,3. The required values of safety factors  $\lambda_\sigma$  and  $\lambda_\tau$  are as specified by  $f_1$  in 4.2.3.

$$\lambda_a = f_1$$

where

$f_1$  is taken from Table 5.3.2 in Pt 6, Ch 5.3 as specified in 4.2.3.

**Table 3.4.1 Design criteria for plating**

| Stress<br>N/mm <sup>2</sup>                     | Description                                                                                           | Design criteria                                 | Factor $f_1$<br>See column in<br>Table 5.3.2<br>in Pt 6, Ch 5 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Stress criteria</b>                          |                                                                                                       |                                                 |                                                               |
| $\sigma_b$                                      | Bending stress in plate due to lateral pressure, see 2.2.2                                            | Local stress requirements                       | $\sigma_b$                                                    |
| $\sigma_x$                                      | Longitudinal membrane stress in plate including the stresses due to stiffener bending, see 3.3 or 3.4 | Hull girder bending requirements                | $\sigma_x$                                                    |
| $\sigma_y$                                      | Transverse (or vertical) membrane stress in plate, see Section 3                                      | None                                            | None                                                          |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                     | Shear stress due to global and local loads, see Section 3                                             | Hull girder shear requirements                  | $\tau_{xy}$                                                   |
| $\sigma_{vm}$                                   | Combined total equivalent stress in plate, see 3.12                                                   | Yield stress criterion                          | $\sigma_{vm}$                                                 |
| <b>Buckling criteria</b>                        |                                                                                                       |                                                 |                                                               |
| $\sigma_{xg}, \sigma_{yg},$<br>or $\sigma_{xv}$ | Compressive membrane stress, see 3.3 or 3.4                                                           | Uni-axial buckling, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3,3          | $\lambda_\sigma$                                              |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                     | Shear stress, see Section 3                                                                           | Shear buckling, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3,3              | $\lambda_\tau$                                                |
| $\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \tau_{xy}$                 | Bi-axial and shear stress field, see Section 3                                                        | Bi-axial and shear buckling, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3,3 | $\lambda_\sigma$ and $\lambda_\tau$                           |

**Total Load Assessment, TLA****Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 3**

## Section 4

**Table 3.4.2 Design criteria for stiffeners**

| Stress<br>N/mm <sup>2</sup> | Description                                                               | Design criteria                                                                                       | Factor $f_1$<br>See column in<br>Table 5.3.2<br>in Pt 6, Ch 5 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Stress criteria</b>      |                                                                           |                                                                                                       |                                                               |
| $\sigma_{sx,t}$             | Maximum tensile (+ve) bending stress in flange of stiffener, see 3.11     | Elastic stress criteria – local loads only<br>hull girder and local loads                             | $\sigma_x$<br>$\sigma_{vm}$                                   |
| $\sigma_{sx,c}$             | Maximum compressive (-ve) bending stress in flange of stiffener, see 3.11 | Elastic stress criteria – local loads only<br>hull girder and local loads                             | $\sigma_x$<br>$\sigma_{vm}$                                   |
| <b>Buckling criteria</b>    |                                                                           |                                                                                                       |                                                               |
| $\sigma_{ax}$               | Overall axial stress, see 2.3.11                                          | Buckling control<br>column, flange, web, torsional, tripping<br>modes of buckling, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3.7 | $\lambda_\sigma$                                              |
| $\sigma_{sx,c}$             | Maximum compressive (-ve) bending stress in flange of stiffener, see 3.11 | Buckling of flange, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3.7                                                                | $\lambda_\sigma$                                              |
| <b>Other criteria</b>       |                                                                           |                                                                                                       |                                                               |
| $\tau_s$                    | Shear stress in web, see Tables 3.3.2 to 3.3.5                            | Shear stress criteria for web area                                                                    | $\tau_{xy}$                                                   |
| $\delta_s$                  | Deflection of stiffener due to lateral bending, see Tables 3.3.2 to 3.3.5 | Inertia/deflection criteria                                                                           | $f_\delta$                                                    |

**Table 3.4.3 Design criteria for stiffened panels**

| Stress<br>N/mm <sup>2</sup>                     | Description                                           | Design criteria                                           | Factor $f_1$<br>See column in<br>Table 5.3.2<br>in Pt 6, Ch 5 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Buckling criteria</b>                        |                                                       |                                                           |                                                               |
| $\sigma_{xg}, \sigma_{yg},$<br>or $\sigma_{xv}$ | Membrane stress                                       | Overall panel buckling, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3.8                | $\lambda_\sigma$                                              |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                     | Shear stress                                          | Shear buckling of stiffened panels,<br>see Pt 6, Ch 2,3.6 | $\lambda_\tau$                                                |
| <b>Other criteria</b>                           |                                                       |                                                           |                                                               |
| $\delta_s$                                      | Deflection of panel due to lateral bending, see 2.3.4 | Inertia/deflection criteria                               | $f_\delta$                                                    |

4.2.5 The limiting deflection requirements for stiffening members specified in Tables 3.4.1 to 3.4.4 are to be satisfied. The allowable deflection criteria are expressed as a deflection/span ratio and the actual deflection is to be less than the allowable deflection,  $\delta_a$ , where  $\delta_a$  is as follows:

$$\delta_a = f_1 l_e \text{ mm}$$

where

$f_1$  is taken from Table 5.3.2 in Pt 6, Ch 5.3 as specified in 4.2.3.

$l_e$  = effective span length, in metres.

4.2.6 The assessment of scantling requirements to satisfy the impact or slamming pressure loads for plating and stiffening is given in Pt 6, Ch 3,14 and 15.

# Total Load Assessment, TLA

# Volume 1, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 4

**Table 3.4.4 Design criteria for primary members**

| Stress<br>N/mm <sup>2</sup>                          | Description                                                                                        | Design criteria                                                                        | Factor $f_1$<br>See column in<br>Table 5.3.2<br>in Pt 6, Ch 5 |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Stress criteria</b>                               |                                                                                                    |                                                                                        |                                                               |
| <b>Web plating of primary member, see 3.3 or 3.4</b> |                                                                                                    |                                                                                        |                                                               |
| $\sigma_b$                                           | Bending stress due to lateral pressure                                                             | Local stress requirements                                                              | $\sigma_b$                                                    |
| $\sigma_x$                                           | Longitudinal membrane stress including the stresses due to secondary stiffener bending             | Hull girder bending requirements                                                       | $\sigma_x$                                                    |
| $\sigma_y$                                           | Transverse (or vertical) membrane stress including the stresses due to secondary stiffener bending | Local stress requirements                                                              | $\sigma_y$                                                    |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                          | Shear stress due to global and local loads                                                         | Shear stress requirements                                                              | $\tau_{xy}$                                                   |
| $\sigma_{vm}$                                        | Combined total equivalent stress                                                                   | Yield stress criterion                                                                 | $\sigma_{vm}$                                                 |
| <b>Flanges of primary member, see 3.2</b>            |                                                                                                    |                                                                                        |                                                               |
| $\sigma_x$                                           | Maximum tensile (+ve) bending stress in plate or flange                                            | Elastic stress criteria                                                                | $\sigma_{vm}$                                                 |
| $\sigma_x$                                           | Maximum compressive (-ve) bending stress in plate or flange                                        | Elastic stress criteria                                                                | $\sigma_{vm}$                                                 |
| $\sigma_{vm}$                                        | Combined total equivalent stress                                                                   | Yield stress criterion                                                                 | $\sigma_{vm}$                                                 |
| <b>Buckling criteria of primary member</b>           |                                                                                                    |                                                                                        |                                                               |
| $\sigma_{hg}, \sigma_{yg},$<br>or $\sigma_{xv}$      | Compressive stress at neutral axis, excluding the stresses due to secondary stiffener bending      | Buckling of primary girders, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3.9                                        | $\lambda_\sigma$                                              |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                          | Shear stress in web plating due to global and local loads                                          | Shear buckling of girder webs, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3.10                                     | $\lambda_\tau$                                                |
| $\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \tau_{xy}$                      | Bi-axial and shear stress field in web plating                                                     | Bi-axial and shear buckling, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3.3                                        | $\lambda_\sigma$ and $\lambda_\tau$                           |
| $\sigma_x$                                           | Maximum compressive (-ve) bending stress in plate or flange                                        | Buckling of plate flange, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3.3 or buckling of flange, see Pt 6, Ch 2,3.7 | $\lambda_\sigma$                                              |
| <b>Other criteria</b>                                |                                                                                                    |                                                                                        |                                                               |
| $\tau_{xy}$                                          | Shear stress of girder web                                                                         | Shear stress criteria for web area                                                     | $\tau_{xy}$                                                   |
| $\delta_s$                                           | Deflection of girder due to lateral bending, see 2.3.4                                             | Inertia/deflection criteria                                                            | $f_\delta$                                                    |

## 4.3 Presentation of results

4.3.1 It is recommended that the capability of the structure is represented by one of the following methods:

(a) Load utilisation factor, LUF, derived as follows:

$$LUF = \frac{\text{actual value}}{\text{allowable value}}$$

e.g., the stress  $LUF = \frac{\sigma}{\sigma_a}$

(b) Adequacy parameter, AP, defined as follows:

$$AP = \frac{1 - LUF}{1 + LUF}$$

where  
LUF is given above.

4.3.2 Table 3.4.5 shows a comparison of the adequacy parameter with the load utilisation factor.

**Table 3.4.5 Adequacy parameter (AP)**

| LUF | AP     |
|-----|--------|
| 0,0 | 1,00   |
| 0,5 | 0,33   |
| 0,8 | 0,111  |
| 1,0 | 0,00   |
| 1,2 | -0,091 |
| 1,5 | -0,20  |
| 2,0 | -0,33  |



© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013  
Published by Lloyd's Register  
*Registered office*  
71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS  
United Kingdom

# General Information for the Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

January 2013

Lloyd's Register is a trading name of Lloyd's Register Group Limited and its subsidiaries. For further details please see <http://www.lr.org/entities>

Lloyd's Register Group Limited, its affiliates and subsidiaries and their respective officers, employees or agents are, individually and collectively, referred to in this clause as 'Lloyd's Register'. Lloyd's Register assumes no responsibility and shall not be liable to any person for any loss, damage or expense caused by reliance on the information or advice in this document or howsoever provided, unless that person has signed a contract with the relevant Lloyd's Register entity for the provision of this information or advice and in that case any responsibility or liability is exclusively on the terms and conditions set out in that contract.



## General Information

---

1. The 2013 edition of the Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships is a complete reprint of the 2012 edition, consisting of 7 books.

|                                                                                         |                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| General Information for the Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships |                                              |
| Volume 1, Part 1                                                                        | Regulations                                  |
| Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials                       |                                              |
| Volume 1, Parts 3-6                                                                     | Ship Structures                              |
| Volume 1, Part 7                                                                        | Enhanced Structural Assessment (Provisional) |
| Volume 2, Parts 1-11                                                                    | Machinery and Engineering Systems            |
| Volume 3, Parts 1-3                                                                     | Additional Optional Requirements             |
  
2. A decimal notation system has been adopted throughout. Five sets of digits cover the divisions, i.e., Part, Chapter, Section, sub-Section and paragraph. The textual cross-referencing within the text is as follows, although the right hand digits may be added or omitted depending on the degree of precision required:
  - (a) In same Chapter, e.g., see 2.1.3 (i.e., down to paragraph).
  - (b) In same Part but different Chapter, e.g., see Ch 3,2.1 (i.e., down to sub-Section).
  - (c) In another Part, e.g., see Pt 5, Ch 1,3 (i.e., down to Section).

The cross-referencing for Figures and Tables is as follows:

  - (a) In same Chapter, e.g., as shown in Fig. 2.3.5 (i.e., Chapter, Section and Figure Number).
  - (b) In same Part but different Chapter, e.g., as shown in Fig. 2.3.5 in Chapter 2.
  - (c) In another Part, e.g., see Table 2.7.1 in Pt 3, Ch 2.
  
3. The primary changes from the 2012 edition of the Rules are identified in the Summary of Changes. The effective dates of the indicated changes are 1 October 2012 and 1 January 2013.
  
4. Until the next edition of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships* is published, Rule change Notices and/or Corrigenda, as necessary, will be published on the LR Webstore — <http://www.webstore.lr.org> — and will be available for downloading free of charge. It is not intended at this time to publish hard copies of future Rule Notices to Existing Rules.
  
5. In this publication a shortened version of the Notice has been reproduced listing all the paragraphs that have been altered since the last edition of the Rules. It is followed by a comprehensive Contents list of all books in the set, showing all the titles down to Section level.

# Notice – Summary of Changes

## Summary of Changes from the 2012 Rules

| <i>Ch</i>               | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i> | <i>Section Title</i> | <i>Status</i>                        | <i>Notice</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 1, Part 1</b> |                |             |                      | <b>Effective Date 1 October 2012</b> |               |
| 1                       | 1              | 1.1 and 1.2 | —                    | Paragraphs amended                   | 4             |
| 1                       | 1              | 1.3         | —                    | Paragraph deleted                    | 4             |
| 1                       | 2              | 2.1 and 2.2 | —                    | Paragraphs amended                   | 4             |
| 1                       | 3              | 3.1         | —                    | Paragraph amended                    | 4             |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.1         | —                    | Paragraph amended                    | 4             |
| 1                       | 8              | 8.3         | —                    | New paragraph added                  | 4             |
| 1                       | 8              | 8.3 and 8.4 | —                    | Existing paragraphs renumbered       | 4             |

| <i>Ch</i>               | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>       | <i>Section Title</i>                                                                                                                 | <i>Status</i>                           | <i>Notice</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 1, Part 1</b> |                |                   |                                                                                                                                      | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>    |               |
| 2                       | 3              | Table 2.3.1       | Character of Classification and Class notations                                                                                      | Table amended                           | 1             |
| 2                       | 3              | 3.8.1             | Character of Classification and Class notations                                                                                      | Paragraph amended                       | 3             |
| 2                       | 3              | 3.9.22 and 3.9.23 | Character of Classification and Class notations                                                                                      | New paragraphs added                    | 1             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.5.3             | Surveys – General                                                                                                                    | Paragraph amended                       | 1             |
| 3                       | 1              | 1.6.6             | General                                                                                                                              | Paragraph amended                       | 3             |
| 3                       | 2              | 2.3.18            | Annual Surveys – Hull, machinery and optional requirements                                                                           | New paragraph added                     | 5             |
| 3                       | 13             | 13.3.1            | Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers                                                                                              | Paragraph amended                       | 3             |
| 3                       | 13             | 13.3.2            | Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers                                                                                              | Existing paragraph renumbered           | 3             |
| 3                       | 13             | 13.3.3            | Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers                                                                                              | New paragraph added                     | 3             |
| 3                       | 13             | 13.3.3            | Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers                                                                                              | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended | 3             |
| 3                       | 16             | 16.2.1            | Classification of ships not built under LR survey                                                                                    | Paragraph amended                       | 1             |
| 3                       | 16             | 16.3.1            | Classification of ships not built under LR survey                                                                                    | Paragraph amended                       | 1             |
| 3                       | 16             | 16.3.1            | Classification of ships not built under LR survey                                                                                    | References amended                      | 3             |
| 3                       | 17             | 17.2.1            | Classification of ships built under survey to LR Classification Rules and Regulations other than LR Naval Ship Rules and Regulations | Paragraph amended                       | 1             |
| 3                       | 17             | 17.3.1            | Classification of ships built under survey to LR Classification Rules and Regulations other than LR Naval Ship Rules and Regulations | Paragraph amended                       | 1             |

| <i>Ch</i>                                                                | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i> | <i>Section Title</i>                 | <i>Status</i>                     | <i>Notice</i> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials</b> |                |             |                                      | <b>Effective Date 1 July 2012</b> |               |
| 1                                                                        | 4              | 4.1.1       | General requirements for manufacture | Paragraph amended                 | 1             |
| 1                                                                        | 5              | 5.4.2       | Non-destructive examinations         | Paragraph amended                 | 1             |
| 1                                                                        | 5              | 5.4.3       | Non-destructive examinations         | New paragraph added               | 1             |
| 1                                                                        | 5              | 5.5.1       | Non-destructive examinations         | Paragraph amended                 | 1             |
| 1                                                                        | 6              | Table 1.6.1 | References                           | Table amended                     | 1             |

## Notice – Summary of Changes

| <i>Ch</i>                                                                         | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>        | <i>Section Title</i>                                            | <i>Status</i>                              | <i>Notice</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials (cont'd)</b> |                |                    |                                                                 | <b>Effective Date 1 July 2012</b>          |               |
| 2                                                                                 | 1              | 1.2.3              | General requirements for testing                                | Paragraph amended                          | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.1              | General requirements                                            | New paragraph added                        | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.1 to 1.5.2     | General requirements                                            | Existing paragraphs renumbered and amended | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.4              | General requirements                                            | New paragraph added                        | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.3 to 1.5.4     | General requirements                                            | Paragraphs deleted                         | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.5              | General requirements                                            | Existing paragraph renumbered and amended  | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.6 to 1.5.7     | General requirements                                            | Existing paragraphs renumbered             | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.8              | General requirements                                            | Existing paragraph renumbered and amended  | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.9              | General requirements                                            | Existing paragraph renumbered              | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.10             | General requirements                                            | Paragraph deleted                          | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.11 to 1.5.12   | General requirements                                            | New paragraphs added                       | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.11             | General requirements                                            | Existing paragraph renumbered and amended  | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.12             | General requirements                                            | Existing paragraph renumbered              | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.5.15             | General requirements                                            | New paragraph added                        | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | 1.7.4              | General requirements                                            | References amended                         | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | Fig. 3.1.1         | General requirements                                            | New Figure added                           | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 1              | Fig. 3.1.1         | General requirements                                            | Existing Figure renumbered                 | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.1.2              | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | New paragraph added                        | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.1.2 to 3.1.5     | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | Existing paragraphs renumbered             | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.4.1              | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | Paragraph amended                          | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.4.2              | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | References amended                         | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.4.4              | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | New paragraph added                        | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.4.4 to 3.4.7     | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | Existing paragraphs renumbered             | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.5.1              | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | References amended                         | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.6.1              | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | References amended                         | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.6.7              | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | New paragraph added                        | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.6.7 to 3.6.9     | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | Existing paragraphs renumbered             | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.6.8              | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | Reference amended                          | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | 3.8.1              | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | Reference amended                          | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | Table 3.3.1        | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | Table amended                              | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | Table 3.3.3        | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | New Table added                            | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | Tables 3.3.3-3.3.6 | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | Existing Tables renumbered                 | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | Table 3.3.3        | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | Existing Table renumbered and amended      | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | Table 3.3.4        | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | Existing Table renumbered and amended      | 1             |
| 3                                                                                 | 3              | Table 3.3.6        | High strength steels for ship and other structural applications | Existing Table renumbered and amended      | 1             |
| 4                                                                                 | 2              | Table 4.2.2        | Castings for ship and other structural applications             | Table amended                              | 1             |
| 5                                                                                 | 1              | 1.8.7              | General requirements                                            | Paragraph amended                          | 1             |
| 5                                                                                 | 2              | 2.5.7              | Forgings for ship and other structural applications             | Paragraph amended                          | 1             |
| 5                                                                                 | 3              | 3.5.1              | Forgings for shafting and machinery                             | Paragraph amended                          | 1             |
| 5                                                                                 | 3              | 3.5.4              | Forgings for shafting and machinery                             | Paragraph amended                          | 1             |
| 5                                                                                 | 3              | Table 5.3.4        | Forgings for shafting and machinery                             | Table amended                              | 1             |

## Notice – Summary of Changes

| <i>Ch</i>                                                                         | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>      | <i>Section Title</i>                                                             | <i>Status</i>                  | <i>Notice</i>                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials (cont'd)</b> |                |                  |                                                                                  |                                | <b>Effective Date 1 July 2012</b> |
| 8                                                                                 | 1              | 1.1.3            | Plates, bars and sections                                                        | Paragraph amended              | 1                                 |
| 8                                                                                 | 1              | 1.1.5            | Plates, bars and sections                                                        | New paragraph added            | 1                                 |
| 8                                                                                 | 1              | 1.1.5 to 1.1.6   | Plates, bars and sections                                                        | Existing paragraphs renumbered | 1                                 |
| 8                                                                                 | 1              | 1.8.3            | Plates, bars and sections                                                        | Paragraph amended              | 1                                 |
| 8                                                                                 | 1              | Table 8.1.3      | Plates, bars and sections                                                        | Table amended                  | 1                                 |
| 8                                                                                 | 1              | Table 8.1.4      | Plates, bars and sections                                                        | Table amended                  | 1                                 |
| 10                                                                                | 4              | 4.6.8            | Studless mooring chain cables                                                    | Reference amended              | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 1              | 1.8.1            | General                                                                          | Paragraph amended              | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 1              | Table 11.1.1     | General                                                                          | Table amended                  | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | 3.1.6 to 3.1.7   | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | Paragraphs amended             | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | 3.2.2            | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | New paragraph added            | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | 3.2.2 to 3.2.5   | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | Existing paragraphs renumbered | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | 3.3.2            | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | New paragraph added            | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | 3.3.2 to 3.3.12  | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | Existing paragraphs renumbered | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | 3.3.4            | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | Paragraph amended              | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | 3.5.2            | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | New paragraph added            | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | 3.5.2 to 3.5.5   | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | Existing paragraphs renumbered | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | 3.5.3            | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | Reference amended              | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | 3.7.3            | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | Reference amended              | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | Table 11.3.1     | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | Table deleted                  | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | Table 11.3.1     | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | New Table added                | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | Table 11.3.2     | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | Table amended                  | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 3              | Table 11.3.3     | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        | Table amended                  | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 4              | 4.1.8 to 4.1.9   | Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding                       | Paragraphs amended             | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 4              | 4.3.2            | Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding                       | New paragraph added            | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 4              | 4.3.2 to 4.3.8   | Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding                       | Existing paragraphs renumbered | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 4              | 4.4.2            | Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding                       | Paragraph amended              | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 4              | 4.7.1            | Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding                       | Paragraph amended              | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 4              | Table 11.4.1     | Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding                       | Table deleted                  | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 4              | Table 11.4.1     | Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding                       | New table added                | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 4              | Table 11.4.2     | Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding                       | Table amended                  | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 4              | Table 11.4.3     | Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding                       | Table amended                  | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 5              | 5.1.14 to 5.1.15 | Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding | Paragraphs amended             | 1                                 |
| 11                                                                                | 5              | 5.2.3            | Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding | New paragraph added            | 1                                 |

# Notice – Summary of Changes

| <i>Ch</i>                                                                         | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>     | <i>Section Title</i>                                                             | <i>Status</i>                             | <i>Notice</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials (cont'd)</b> |                |                 |                                                                                  | <b>Effective Date 1 July 2012</b>         |               |
| 11                                                                                | 5              | 5.2.3 to 5.2.11 | Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding | Existing paragraphs renumbered            | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 5              | 5.2.7           | Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding | Reference amended                         | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 5              | 5.3.2           | Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding | Reference amended                         | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 5              | 5.3.3           | Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding | New paragraph added                       | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 5              | 5.3.3 to 5.3.6  | Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding | Existing paragraph renumbered             | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 5              | Table 11.5.1    | Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding | Table deleted                             | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 5              | Table 11.5.1    | Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding | New Table added                           | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 7              | 7.1.9 to 7.1.10 | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         | Paragraphs amended                        | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 7              | 7.2.2           | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         | New paragraph added                       | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 7              | 7.2.2 to 7.2.7  | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         | Existing paragraphs renumbered            | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 7              | 7.2.4           | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         | Reference amended                         | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 7              | 7.3.2           | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         | New paragraph added                       | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 7              | 7.3.2           | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         | Existing paragraph renumbered             | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 7              | 7.3.3           | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         | Existing paragraph renumbered and amended | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 7              | 7.3.4           | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         | Reference amended                         | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 7              | 7.3.4 to 7.3.7  | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         | Existing paragraphs renumbered            | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 7              | Table 11.7.1    | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         | Table deleted                             | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 7              | Table 11.7.1    | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         | New table added                           | 1             |
| 11                                                                                | 9              | 9.5.3           | Consumables for welding aluminium alloys                                         | Reference amended                         | 1             |
| 12                                                                                | 2              | 2.12.4          | Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels                                 | Paragraph amended                         | 1             |
| 12                                                                                | 2              | 2.15.7          | Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels                                 | Reference amended                         | 1             |

# Notice – Summary of Changes

| <i>Ch</i>                                                                         | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>     | <i>Section Title</i>                                                                                     | <i>Status</i>                            | <i>Notice</i> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials (cont'd)</b> |                |                 |                                                                                                          | <b>Effective Date 1 July 2012</b>        |               |
| 12                                                                                | 2              | 2.15.8          | Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels                                                         | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 12                                                                                | 2              | 2.15.9          | Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels                                                         | References amended                       | 1             |
| 12                                                                                | 2              | Table 12.2.2    | Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels                                                         | Table amended                            | 1             |
| 12                                                                                | 2              | Table 12.2.3    | Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels                                                         | New Table added                          | 1             |
| 12                                                                                | 2              | Tables 12.2.3-5 | Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels                                                         | Existing Tables renumbered               | 1             |
| 12                                                                                | 2              | Table 12.4.10   | Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels                                                         | Table amended                            | 1             |
| 13                                                                                | 2              | 2.2.2           | Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery                                              | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 13                                                                                | 2              | 2.12.6          | Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery                                              | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 13                                                                                | 4              | 4.15.1          | Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels                                                 | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 13                                                                                | 8              | 8.3.2           | Specific requirements for welded aluminium                                                               | New paragraph added                      |               |
| 13                                                                                | 8              | 8.3.2 to 8.3.3  | Specific requirements for welded aluminium                                                               | Existing paragraphs renumbered           |               |
| 13                                                                                | 8              | 8.4.1           | Specific requirements for welded aluminium                                                               | References amended                       |               |
| 13                                                                                | 8              | Table 13.8.1    | Specific requirements for welded aluminium                                                               | New Table added                          |               |
| 13                                                                                | 8              | Tables 13.8.1-2 | Specific requirements for welded aluminium                                                               | Existing Tables renumbered               |               |
| 14                                                                                | 2              | 2.6.4           | Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcement and associated materials                                        | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 14                                                                                | 2              | 2.11.2          | Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcement and associated materials                                        | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 14                                                                                | 3              | Table 14.3.5    | Testing procedures                                                                                       | Table amended                            | 1             |
| 14                                                                                | 5              | 5.14 to 5.14.1  | Control of material quality for composite construction                                                   | New sub-Section added                    | 1             |
| 14                                                                                | 5              | 5.14            | Control of material quality for composite construction                                                   | Existing sub-Section renumbered          | 1             |
| 14                                                                                | 5              | Table 14.5.8    | Control of material quality for composite construction                                                   | New Table added                          | 1             |
|                                                                                   |                |                 |                                                                                                          |                                          |               |
| <i>Ch</i>                                                                         | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>     | <i>Section Title</i>                                                                                     | <i>Status</i>                            | <i>Notice</i> |
| <b>Volume 1, Part 3</b>                                                           |                |                 |                                                                                                          | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>     |               |
| 2                                                                                 | 4              | 4.7.2           | Bulkhead arrangements                                                                                    | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 2                                                                                 | 4              | 4.7.5           | Bulkhead arrangements                                                                                    | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 2                                                                                 | 4              | 4.7.6           | Bulkhead arrangements                                                                                    | Paragraph deleted                        | 1             |
| 2                                                                                 | 4              | 4.7.7 and 4.7.8 | Bulkhead arrangements                                                                                    | Existing paragraphs renumbered & amended | 1             |
| 4                                                                                 | 4              | 4.1.15          | Side lights and windows                                                                                  | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 4                                                                                 | 7              | 7.1.3           | Scuppers and sanitary arrangements                                                                       | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 4                                                                                 | 8              | 8.3.17          | Bulwarks, guard rails, raised walkways and other means for the protection of crew and embarked personnel | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 4                                                                                 | 10             | —               | Lifting eyes                                                                                             | New Section added                        | 1             |

# Notice – Summary of Changes

| <i>Ch</i>               | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>        | <i>Section Title</i>                         | <i>Status</i>                            | <i>Notice</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 1, Part 4</b> |                |                    |                                              | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>     |               |
| 1                       | 1              | 1.4.6 to 1.4.8     | General requirements                         | New paragraphs added                     | 1             |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.1.1              | Military design guidance                     | New paragraph added                      | 1             |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.1.1              | Military design guidance                     | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 1             |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.1.2              | Military design guidance                     | Paragraph deleted                        | 1             |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.1.3 and 4.1.4    | Military design guidance                     | New paragraphs added                     | 1             |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.1.3              | Military design guidance                     | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 1             |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.1.4              | Military design guidance                     | Existing paragraph renumbered            | 1             |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.1.5 and 4.1.6    | Military design guidance                     | Paragraphs deleted                       | 1             |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.1.6 to 4.1.9     | Military design guidance                     | New paragraphs added                     | 1             |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.1.11 to 4.1.15   | Military design guidance                     | New paragraphs added                     | 1             |
| 2                       | 3              | 3.7.5              | Internal blast                               | New paragraph added                      | 1             |
| 2                       | 5              | 5.3.1              | Underwater explosion (shock)                 | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 2                       | 5              | 5.3.3              | Underwater explosion (shock)                 | Paragraph amended                        | 5             |
| 2                       | 5              | 5.6.7              | Underwater explosion (shock)                 | Paragraph amended                        | 5             |
| 2                       | 5              | 5.8                | Underwater explosion (shock)                 | Sub-Section renamed                      | 1             |
| 2                       | 5              | 5.8.5              | Underwater explosion (shock)                 | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 2                       | 5              | 5.8.11             | Underwater explosion (shock)                 | New paragraph added                      | 1             |
| 2                       | 7              | 7.2.4              | Residual strength                            | New paragraph added                      | 1             |
|                         |                |                    |                                              |                                          |               |
| <i>Ch</i>               | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>        | <i>Section Title</i>                         | <i>Status</i>                            | <i>Notice</i> |
| <b>Volume 1, Part 5</b> |                |                    |                                              | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>     |               |
| 3                       | 4              | 4.3                | Impact loads on external plating             | Sub-Section title amended                | 1             |
| 3                       | 4              | 4.3.1              | Impact loads on external plating             | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
| 3                       | 4              | 4.3.3              | Impact loads on external plating             | Paragraph amended                        | 1             |
|                         |                |                    |                                              |                                          |               |
| <i>Ch</i>               | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>        | <i>Section Title</i>                         | <i>Status</i>                            | <i>Notice</i> |
| <b>Volume 2, Part 1</b> |                |                    |                                              | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>     |               |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.6.8              | Engineering system classification principles | New paragraph added                      | 3             |
| 2                       | 3              | 3.3.11             | Particulars to be submitted                  | Paragraph amended                        | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.1 to 4.11.2   | Operating conditions                         | Paragraphs amended                       | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.3 to 4.11.6   | Operating conditions                         | New paragraphs added                     | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.3             | Operating conditions                         | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.4             | Operating conditions                         | Paragraph deleted                        | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.8 to 4.11.9   | Operating conditions                         | New paragraphs added                     | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.5 to 4.11.7   | Operating conditions                         | Existing paragraphs renumbered & amended | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.8             | Operating conditions                         | Paragraph deleted                        | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.9 to 4.11.10  | Operating conditions                         | Existing paragraphs renumbered & amended | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.15 to 4.11.20 | Operating conditions                         | New paragraphs added                     | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.11            | Operating conditions                         | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.12            | Operating conditions                         | Paragraph deleted                        | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.22            | Operating conditions                         | New paragraph added                      | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.13 to 4.11.19 | Operating conditions                         | Existing paragraphs renumbered & amended | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.20            | Operating conditions                         | Existing paragraph renumbered            | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.21 to 4.11.24 | Operating conditions                         | Existing paragraphs renumbered & amended | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.25            | Operating conditions                         | Paragraphs deleted                       | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.11.27            | Operating conditions                         | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.15.1             | Operating conditions                         | Paragraph amended                        | 3             |
| 2                       | 5              | 5.7.2              | Machinery space arrangements                 | Paragraph amended                        | 3             |
| 2                       | 5              | 5.10.4             | Machinery space arrangements                 | New paragraph added                      | 3             |
| 2                       | 5              | 5.14               | Machinery space arrangements                 | New sub-Section added                    | 3             |
| 2                       | 6              | 6.5                | Diesel engines                               | New sub-Section added                    | 5             |
| 2                       | 6              | 6.5                | Diesel engines                               | Existing sub-Section renumbered          | 5             |
| 2                       | 6              | Table 2.6.1        | Diesel engines                               | Table amended                            | 5             |
| 2                       | 18             | 18.2.6             | Fin stabilisers                              | Paragraph amended                        | 3             |
| 2                       | 18             | 18.2.7             | Fin stabilisers                              | New paragraph added                      | 3             |



# Notice – Summary of Changes

| <i>Ch</i>               | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>         | <i>Section Title</i>                      | <i>Status</i>                           | <i>Notice</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 2, Part 2</b> |                |                     |                                           | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>    |               |
| 1                       | 2              | 2.1.1               | Particulars to be submitted               | Paragraph amended                       | 5             |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.11                | Crankshaft design                         | New sub-Section added                   | 3             |
| 1                       | 7              | 7.11.3              | Air compressors and starting arrangements | New paragraph added                     | 2             |
| 1                       | 7              | 7.11.3 and 7.11.4   | Air compressors and starting arrangements | Existing paragraphs renumbered          | 2             |
| 1                       | 8              | 8.6.11              | Piping systems                            | New paragraph added                     | 5             |
| 1                       | 9              | 9.3.1               | Control and monitoring                    | Paragraph amended                       | 3             |
| 1                       | 9              | 9.3.2               | Control and monitoring                    | New paragraph added                     | 3             |
| 1                       | 9              | 9.3.2               | Control and monitoring                    | Existing paragraph renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                       | 9              | 9.3.3               | Control and monitoring                    | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended | 3             |
| 1                       | 9              | 9.3.4 and 9.3.5     | Control and monitoring                    | Existing paragraphs renumbered          | 3             |
| 1                       | 9              | 9.3.6 to 9.3.9      | Control and monitoring                    | Paragraphs deleted                      | 3             |
| 1                       | 9              | Table 1.9.1(a), (b) | Control and monitoring                    | Tables amended                          | 3             |
| 1                       | 15             | 15.3.2              | Control and monitoring                    | References amended                      | 3             |
| 1                       | 15             | 15.6.1              | Control and monitoring                    | References amended                      | 3             |
| 2                       | 7              | 7.3.1               | Control, alarm and safety systems         | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 2                       | 7              | 7.3.4               | Control, alarm and safety systems         | New paragraph added                     | 3             |
| 2                       | 7              | 7.3.4               | Control, alarm and safety systems         | Existing paragraph renumbered           | 3             |
| 2                       | 7              | 7.3.5 to 7.3.7      | Control, alarm and safety systems         | Paragraphs deleted                      | 3             |

| <i>Ch</i>               | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i> | <i>Section Title</i>    | <i>Status</i>                        | <i>Notice</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------|-------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 2, Part 3</b> |                |             |                         | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b> |               |
| 1                       | 7              | 7.8.5       | Design                  | Reference amended                    | 2             |
| 1                       | 9              | Table 1.9.1 | Control and monitoring  | Table amended                        | 3             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.16.9      | Design and construction | Paragraph amended                    | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.16.10     | Design and construction | New paragraph added                  | 5             |
| 2                       | 4              | 4.16.10     | Design and construction | Existing paragraph renumbered        | 5             |

| <i>Ch</i>               | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i> | <i>Section Title</i>                           | <i>Status</i>                        | <i>Notice</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------|-------------|------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 2, Part 4</b> |                |             |                                                | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b> |               |
| 4                       | 6              | 6.5.3       | Machinery design and construction requirements | Reference amended                    | 2             |

| <i>Ch</i>               | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>      | <i>Section Title</i>    | <i>Status</i>                        | <i>Notice</i> |
|-------------------------|----------------|------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 2, Part 7</b> |                |                  |                         | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b> |               |
| 1                       | 4              | 4.1.4            | Materials               | Paragraph amended                    | 5             |
| 1                       | 11             | Table 1.11.3     | Pipe connections        | Reference amended                    | 3             |
| 1                       | 11             | 11.2.4           | Pipe connections        | Reference amended                    | 3             |
| 1                       | 11             | 11.5.2           | Pipe connections        | Reference amended                    | 3             |
| 1                       | 11             | 11.7.9           | Pipe connections        | Reference amended                    | 3             |
| 1                       | 16             | 16.1.1           | Testing                 | Paragraph amended                    | 5             |
| 3                       | 8              | 8.1.1            | Lubricating oil systems | Paragraph deleted                    | 2             |
| 3                       | 8              | 8.1.1            | Lubricating oil systems | New paragraph added                  | 2             |
| 3                       | 8              | 8.3 and 8.4      | Lubricating oil systems | New sub-Sections added               | 2             |
| 3                       | 8              | 8.3 to 8.6       | Lubricating oil systems | Existing sub-Sections renumbered     | 2             |
| 3                       | 8              | 8.9              | Lubricating oil systems | New sub-Section added                | 2             |
| 3                       | 8              | 8.7              | Lubricating oil systems | Existing sub-Section renumbered      | 2             |
| 3                       | 8              | 8.7.2            | Lubricating oil systems | Reference amended                    | 3             |
| 3                       | 8              | 8.11             | Lubricating oil systems | New sub-Section added                | 2             |
| 3                       | 8              | 8.8 to 8.11      | Lubricating oil systems | Existing sub-Sections renumbered     | 2             |
| 3                       | 8              | 8.15.3 to 8.15.7 | Lubricating oil systems | New paragraphs added                 | 2             |



# Notice – Summary of Changes

| <i>Ch</i>                                  | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>       | <i>Section Title</i>                                                                                                                       | <i>Status</i>                            | <i>Notice</i> |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 2, Part 7</b> <i>(continued)</i> |                |                   |                                                                                                                                            | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>     |               |
| 3                                          | 8              | 8.16              | Lubricating oil systems                                                                                                                    | New sub-Section added                    | 2             |
| 4                                          | 2              | 2.1.19            | Refuelling facilities                                                                                                                      | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 5                                          | 7              | 7.1.5             | Chilled water systems                                                                                                                      | New paragraph added                      | 3             |
| 5                                          | 11             | 11.1.2            | Hydraulic power actuating systems                                                                                                          | Paragraph amended                        | 2             |
| 5                                          | 11             | 11.1.7            | Hydraulic power actuating systems                                                                                                          | Paragraph deleted                        | 2             |
| 5                                          | 11             | 11.6 to 11.10     | Hydraulic power actuating systems                                                                                                          | New sub-Sections added                   | 2             |
|                                            |                |                   |                                                                                                                                            |                                          |               |
| <i>Ch</i>                                  | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>       | <i>Section Title</i>                                                                                                                       | <i>Status</i>                            | <i>Notice</i> |
| <b>Volume 2, Part 8</b>                    |                |                   |                                                                                                                                            | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>     |               |
| 1                                          | 15             | 15.11             | Mounting and fittings for cylindrical and vertical boilers, steam generators, pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters | Sub-Section title amended                | 3             |
| 1                                          | 15             | 15.11.1           | Mounting and fittings for cylindrical and vertical boilers, steam generators, pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters | Paragraph amended                        | 3             |
| 2                                          | 1              | 1.6.1             | General requirements                                                                                                                       | Paragraph amended                        | 5             |
|                                            |                |                   |                                                                                                                                            |                                          |               |
| <i>Ch</i>                                  | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>       | <i>Section Title</i>                                                                                                                       | <i>Status</i>                            | <i>Notice</i> |
| <b>Volume 2, Part 9</b>                    |                |                   |                                                                                                                                            | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>     |               |
| 1                                          | 1              | 1.2.4             | General engineering systems                                                                                                                | New paragraph added                      | 3             |
| 1                                          | 1              | 1.2.4             | General engineering systems                                                                                                                | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                          | 1              | 1.2.5             | General engineering systems                                                                                                                | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                          | 1              | 1.2.5 to 1.2.16   | General engineering systems                                                                                                                | Existing paragraphs renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                                          | 1              | 1.2.7             | General engineering systems                                                                                                                | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                          | 1              | 1.2.8 to 1.2.11   | General engineering systems                                                                                                                | Existing paragraphs renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                                          | 1              | 1.3.3             | General engineering systems                                                                                                                | Paragraph amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.1.1             | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | Paragraph amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.3.1             | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | Paragraph amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.3.3 to 2.3.5    | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | New paragraphs added                     | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.3.3 and 2.3.4   | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | Existing paragraphs renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.3.5             | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.3.6             | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | Existing paragraph renumbered            | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.3.7 and 2.3.8   | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | Existing paragraphs renumbered & amended | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.3.9 to 2.3.14   | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | Existing paragraphs renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.3.15            | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.3.16 and 2.3.17 | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | Existing paragraph renumbered            | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.3.18            | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.3.22            | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems                                                                                   | New paragraph added                      | 3             |

# Notice – Summary of Changes

| <i>Ch</i>                                  | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>        | <i>Section Title</i>                                     | <i>Status</i>                            | <i>Notice</i> |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 2, Part 9</b> <i>(continued)</i> |                |                    |                                                          |                                          |               |
| <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>       |                |                    |                                                          |                                          |               |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.9.6 and 2.9.7    | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems | Paragraphs amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.10.8             | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.10.10            | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.10.12            | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.10.16 to 2.10.19 | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems | Paragraphs deleted                       | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.10.20            | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems | Existing paragraph renumbered            | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.10.21            | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems | Paragraph deleted                        | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.10.22 to 2.10.25 | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems | Existing paragraphs renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.14.3             | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                          | 2              | 2.14.7             | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                          | 3              | —                  | Ergonomics of control stations                           | New Section added                        | 3             |
| 1                                          | 3 to 6         | —                  | —                                                        | Existing Sections renumbered             | 3             |
| 1                                          | 3              | 3.2.2              | Unattended machinery spaces – UMS notation               | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                          | 3              | 3.2.4 and 3.2.5    | Unattended machinery spaces – UMS notation               | Existing paragraphs renumbered & amended | 3             |
| 1                                          | 5              | 5.3.1              | Integrated computer control – ICC notation               | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                          | 6              | 6.1.3              | Trials                                                   | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |

| <i>Ch</i>                            | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>      | <i>Section Title</i> | <i>Status</i>                            | <i>Notice</i> |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|------------------|----------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 2, Part 10</b>             |                |                  |                      |                                          |               |
| <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b> |                |                  |                      |                                          |               |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.1.3            | General requirements | References amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2              | General requirements | Sub-Section title amended                | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.1            | General requirements | Paragraph amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.3            | General requirements | New paragraph added                      | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.3 to 1.2.8   | General requirements | Existing paragraphs renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.9            | General requirements | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.10 to 1.2.16 | General requirements | Existing paragraphs renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.17           | General requirements | Existing paragraph renumbered            | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.17           | General requirements | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.18           | General requirements | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.19           | General requirements | Paragraph deleted                        | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.21           | General requirements | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.20           | General requirements | Existing paragraph renumbered            | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.21           | General requirements | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.2.22           | General requirements | Existing paragraph renumbered            | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.3              | General requirements | New sub-Section title added              | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.3 to 1.20      | General requirements | Existing sub-Sections renumbered         | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.3.1            | General requirements | New paragraph added                      | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.3.3 and 1.3.4  | General requirements | References amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.4.4            | General requirements | References amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.5.3            | General requirements | References amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.7.5            | General requirements | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.8.1 to 1.8.3   | General requirements | Existing paragraphs renumbered & amended | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.9.5            | General requirements | Reference amended                        | 3             |

# Contents

| <i>Ch</i>                            | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>            | <i>Section Title</i>                                  | <i>Status</i>                           | <i>Notice</i> |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 2, Part 10 (continued)</b> |                |                        |                                                       | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>    |               |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.11.1                 | General requirements                                  | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.11.3 and 1.11.4      | General requirements                                  | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.11.14                | General requirements                                  | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.12.2                 | General requirements                                  | References amended                      | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.12.4                 | General requirements                                  | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.12.10                | General requirements                                  | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.13.2                 | General requirements                                  | References amended                      | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.14.2                 | General requirements                                  | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.14.1                 | General requirements                                  | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.14.3                 | General requirements                                  | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.14.4                 | General requirements                                  | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.17.1                 | General requirements                                  | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.17.2 to 1.17.4       | General requirements                                  | References amended                      | 3             |
| 1                                    | 1              | 1.20.2                 | General requirements                                  | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 2              | 2.4.2                  | Main source of electrical power                       | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 5              | 5.1.1                  | Supply and distribution                               | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 5              | 5.2.4                  | Supply and distribution                               | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 5              | 5.4.1                  | Supply and distribution                               | Paragraph amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 5              | 5.5.7                  | Supply and distribution                               | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 5              | 5.8.1                  | Supply and distribution                               | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 6              | 6.1.4                  | System design – Protection                            | References amended                      | 3             |
| 1                                    | 6              | 6.9.2                  | System design – Protection                            | New paragraph added                     | 3             |
| 1                                    | 6              | 6.9.2 to 6.9.4         | System design – Protection                            | Existing paragraphs renumbered          | 3             |
| 1                                    | 7              | 7.5.1                  | Switchgear and control gear assemblies                | Paragraph amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 7              | 7.5.2 to 7.5.3         | Switchgear and control gear assemblies                | New paragraphs added                    | 3             |
| 1                                    | 7              | 7.5.2                  | Switchgear and control gear assemblies                | Existing paragraph renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                                    | 7              | Table 1.7.1            | Switchgear and control gear assemblies                | Table deleted                           | 3             |
| 1                                    | 7              | Tables 1.7.1 and 1.7.2 | Switchgear and control gear assemblies                | New Tables added                        | 3             |
| 1                                    | 7              | 7.8.2                  | Switchgear and control gear assemblies                | New paragraph added                     | 3             |
| 1                                    | 7              | 7.18.1                 | Switchgear and control gear assemblies                | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 9              | 9.1.6                  | Rotating machines                                     | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 9              | 9.1.9                  | Rotating machines                                     | Paragraph amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 9              | 9.3.1 to 9.3.3         | Rotating machines                                     | References amended                      | 3             |
| 1                                    | 9              | 9.8.1                  | Rotating machines                                     | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 9              | 9.8.4                  | Rotating machines                                     | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 9              | Table 1.9.1            | Rotating machines                                     | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 10             | 10.1.2                 | Converter equipment                                   | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 10             | 10.1.4                 | Converter equipment                                   | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 10             | 10.1.6                 | Converter equipment                                   | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 10             | 10.1.13                | Converter equipment                                   | References amended                      | 3             |
| 1                                    | 10             | 10.2.2                 | Converter equipment                                   | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 10             | 10.2.11                | Converter equipment                                   | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 10             | 10.2.16                | Converter equipment                                   | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 10             | 10.2.18                | Converter equipment                                   | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 10             | 10.3.2                 | Converter equipment                                   | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 10             | 10.3.10                | Converter equipment                                   | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 11             | 11.1.3                 | Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways) | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 11             | 11.2.1                 | Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways) | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 11             | 11.4.3                 | Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways) | Reference amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                    | 11             | 11.6.4 and 11.6.5      | Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways) | References amended                      | 3             |

# Contents

| <i>Ch</i>                                   | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>         | <i>Section Title</i>                                      | <i>Status</i>                            | <i>Notice</i> |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 2, Part 10</b> <i>(continued)</i> |                |                     |                                                           | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b>     |               |
| 1                                           | 11             | 11.8.13             | Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways)     | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 11             | 11.9.3              | Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways)     | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 11             | 11.15.1             | Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways)     | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 11             | 11.17.4             | Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways)     | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 12             | 12.3.10             | Batteries                                                 | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 12             | 12.7.2 and 12.7.3   | Batteries                                                 | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 14             | 14.9.1              | Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres | Paragraph deleted                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 14             | 14.9.2 to 14.9.3    | Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres | Existing paragraphs renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                                           | 14             | 14.9.3              | Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                           | 14             | 14.9.4 to 14.9.8    | Electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres | Existing paragraphs renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                                           | 15             | 15.5.5              | Navigation and manoeuvring systems                        | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 16             | 16.5.8              | Electric propulsion                                       | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.1.1              | Fire safety systems                                       | New paragraph added                      | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.1.1              | Fire safety systems                                       | Existing paragraph renumbered            | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.1.2              | Fire safety systems                                       | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.1.3 to 17.1.10   | Fire safety systems                                       | Existing paragraphs renumbered           | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.1.8              | Fire safety systems                                       | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended  | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.1.11             | Fire safety systems                                       | Paragraph deleted                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.1.12             | Fire safety systems                                       | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.1.18             | Fire safety systems                                       | Paragraph deleted                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.3.3              | Fire safety systems                                       | References amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.3.8              | Fire safety systems                                       | References amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.7.1              | Fire safety systems                                       | References amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                           | 17             | 17.9.1 and 17.9.2   | Fire safety systems                                       | References amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                           | 18             | 18.2.1 and 18.2.2   | Crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems      | References amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                           | 18             | 18.2.1              | Crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems      | Paragraph amended                        | 5             |
| 1                                           | 18             | 18.3.2              | Crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems      | References amended                       | 3             |
| 1                                           | 18             | 18.4.2              | Crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems      | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 19             | 19.1.9              | Ship safety systems                                       | New paragraph added                      | 1             |
| 1                                           | 19             | 19.1.9              | Ship safety systems                                       | Existing paragraph renumbered            | 1             |
| 1                                           | 19             | 19.1.10 and 19.1.11 | Ship safety systems                                       | Existing paragraphs renumbered & amended | 1             |
| 1                                           | 19             | 19.1.12 and 19.1.13 | Ship safety systems                                       | Existing paragraphs renumbered           | 1             |
| 1                                           | 21             | 21.2.3              | Testing and trials                                        | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 21             | 21.2.5              | Testing and trials                                        | Reference amended                        | 3             |
| 1                                           | 21             | 21.2.6              | Testing and trials                                        | Paragraph amended                        | 3             |

| <i>Ch</i>                | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i> | <i>Section Title</i> | <i>Status</i>                        | <i>Notice</i> |
|--------------------------|----------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 2, Part 11</b> |                |             |                      | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b> |               |
| 3                        | 1              | 1.1.4       | General requirements | Paragraph amended                    | 2             |

# Contents

| <i>Ch</i>               | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>     | <i>Section Title</i>                               | <i>Status</i>                           | <i>Notice</i>                        |
|-------------------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>Volume 3, Part 1</b> |                |                 |                                                    |                                         | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b> |
| 2                       | 1              | 1.2.3           | General requirements                               | New paragraph added                     | 3                                    |
| 2                       | 1              | 1.2.4           | General requirements                               | Existing paragraph renumbered & amended | 3                                    |
| 2                       | 1              | 1.2.4 and 1.2.5 | General requirements                               | Existing paragraphs renumbered          | 3                                    |
| 2                       | 3              | 3.2.7 to 3.2.12 | Control arrangements                               | Paragraphs amended                      | 3                                    |
| 2                       | 3              | 3.5.4           | Control arrangements                               | Reference amended                       | 2                                    |
| 5                       | 9              | 9.1.13          | Plans and particulars to be submitted              | Reference amended                       | 3                                    |
| 5                       | 9              | 9.2.7           | Plans and particulars to be submitted              | Reference amended                       | 3                                    |
| 6                       | —              | Whole chapter   | Buoyancy, stability and controllability assessment | New Chapter added                       | 1                                    |
|                         |                |                 |                                                    |                                         |                                      |
| <i>Ch</i>               | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>     | <i>Section Title</i>                               | <i>Status</i>                           | <i>Notice</i>                        |
| <b>Volume 3, Part 2</b> |                |                 |                                                    |                                         | <b>Effective Date 1 January 2013</b> |
| 1                       | 1              | 1.1.7           | General requirements                               | New paragraph added                     | 3                                    |
| 1                       | 1              | 1.1.7           | General requirements                               | Existing paragraph renumbered           | 3                                    |

# Corrigenda

## CORRIGENDA

| <i>Ch</i>                | <i>Section</i> | <i>Para</i>  | <i>Section Title</i>                            | <i>Status</i>                 | <i>Notice</i> |
|--------------------------|----------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| <b>Volume 1, Part 1</b>  |                |              |                                                 |                               |               |
| 2                        | 3              | Table 2.3.2  | Character of Classification and Class notations | Table amended                 | 4             |
| <b>Volume 1, Part 4</b>  |                |              |                                                 |                               |               |
| 1                        | 2              | 2.1.6        | Survivability                                   | Paragraph amended             | 1             |
| 1                        | 2              | 2.2.4        | Survivability                                   | Paragraph amended             | 1             |
| <b>Volume 1, Part 6</b>  |                |              |                                                 |                               |               |
| 1                        | 2              | 2.3.1        | General requirements                            | Reference amended             | 1             |
| 4                        | 2              | 2.5.3        | Hull girder strength                            | Paragraph amended             | 1             |
| 5                        | 3              | Table 5.3.1  | Scantling determination for NS2 and NS3 ships   | Table amended                 | 1             |
| <b>Volume 2, Part 3</b>  |                |              |                                                 |                               |               |
| 1                        | 2              | 2.3.3        | Principles                                      | Paragraph amended             | 2             |
| <b>Volume 2, Part 8</b>  |                |              |                                                 |                               |               |
| 2                        | 6              | 6.2.1        | Conical ends subject to internal pressure       | Paragraph amended             | 4             |
| <b>Volume 2, Part 9</b>  |                |              |                                                 |                               |               |
| 1                        | 5              | 5.1.3        | Integrated computer control – ICC notation      | Existing paragraph renumbered | 4             |
| <b>Volume 2, Part 10</b> |                |              |                                                 |                               |               |
| 1                        | 16             | Table 1.16.1 | Electric propulsion                             | Table amended                 | 4             |
| <b>Volume 3, Part 3</b>  |                |              |                                                 |                               |               |
| 2                        | 8              | 8.1.3        | Fire and by-product containment                 | Paragraph amended             | 4             |

# Contents

## Volume 1, Part 1, Regulations

### **PART 1 REGULATIONS**

#### **CHAPTER 1 GENERAL REGULATIONS**

Sections 1 to 8

#### **CHAPTER 2 CLASSIFICATION REGULATIONS**

Section 1 Conditions for Classification  
 Section 2 Scope of the Rules  
 Section 3 Character of Classification and Class notations  
 Section 4 Surveys – General  
 Section 5 Type Approval/Type Testing/Quality Control System  
 Section 6 Classification of machinery with [\*]LMC or MCH notation  
 Section 7 Classification of ship with \*IWS notation  
 Section 8 Classification of ship with operational role: Oil Supply Ship  
 Section 9 Classification of naval ships using alternative LR's Rules

#### **CHAPTER 3 PERIODICAL SURVEY REGULATIONS**

Section 1 General  
 Section 2 Annual Surveys – Hull, machinery and optional requirements  
 Section 3 Intermediate Surveys – Hull and machinery requirements  
 Section 4 Docking Surveys and In-water Surveys  
 Section 5 Special Survey – Hull requirements  
 Section 6 Special Survey – Thickness measurement requirements for steel ships  
 Section 7 Machinery survey – General requirements  
 Section 8 Turbines – Detailed requirements  
 Section 9 Oil engines – Detailed requirements  
 Section 10 Electrical equipment  
 Section 11 Boilers  
 Section 12 Steam pipes  
 Section 13 Screwshafts, tube shafts and propellers  
 Section 14 Hull planned maintenance, HPMS  
 Section 15 Machinery planned maintenance and condition monitoring, MPMS, MCM and RCM  
 Section 16 Classification of ships not built under LR survey  
 Section 17 Classification of ships built under survey to LR Classification Rules and Regulations other than LR Naval Ship Rules and Regulations

## **RULES FOR THE MANUFACTURE, TESTING AND CERTIFICATION OF MATERIALS**

#### **CHAPTER 1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

Section 1 Scope  
 Section 2 Approval and survey requirements  
 Section 3 Certification of materials  
 Section 4 General requirements for manufacture  
 Section 5 Non-destructive examination  
 Section 6 References

#### **CHAPTER 2 TESTING PROCEDURES FOR METALLIC MATERIALS**

Section 1 General requirements for testing  
 Section 2 Tensile tests  
 Section 3 Impact tests  
 Section 4 Ductility tests for pipes and tubes  
 Section 5 Embrittlement tests  
 Section 6 Crack tip opening displacement tests  
 Section 7 Bend tests  
 Section 8 Corrosion tests

# Contents

---

|                    |              |                                                                   |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b>     | <b>3</b>     | <b>ROLLED STEEL PLATES, STRIP, SECTIONS AND BARS</b>              |
| Section            | 1            | General requirements                                              |
| Section            | 2            | Normal strength steels for ship and other structural applications |
| Section            | 3            | Higher strength steels for ship and other structural applications |
| Section            | 4            | Steels for boilers and pressure vessels                           |
| Section            | 5            | Steels for machinery fabrications                                 |
| Section            | 6            | Ferritic steels for low temperature service                       |
| Section            | 7            | Austenitic and duplex stainless steels                            |
| Section            | 8            | Plates with specified through-thickness properties                |
| Section            | 9            | Bars for welded chain cables                                      |
| Section            | 10           | High strength quenched and tempered steels for welded structures  |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>4</b> | <br><b>STEEL CASTINGS</b>                                         |
| Section            | 1            | General requirements                                              |
| Section            | 2            | Castings for ship and other structural applications               |
| Section            | 3            | Castings for machinery construction                               |
| Section            | 4            | Castings for crankshafts                                          |
| Section            | 5            | Castings for propellers                                           |
| Section            | 6            | Castings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems         |
| Section            | 7            | Ferritic steel castings for low temperature service               |
| Section            | 8            | Stainless steel castings                                          |
| Section            | 9            | Steel castings for container corner fittings                      |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>5</b> | <br><b>STEEL FORGINGS</b>                                         |
| Section            | 1            | General requirements                                              |
| Section            | 2            | Forgings for ship and other structural applications               |
| Section            | 3            | Forgings for shafting and machinery                               |
| Section            | 4            | Forgings for crankshafts                                          |
| Section            | 5            | Forgings for gearing                                              |
| Section            | 6            | Forgings for turbines                                             |
| Section            | 7            | Forgings for boilers, pressure vessels and piping systems         |
| Section            | 8            | Ferritic steel forgings for low temperature service               |
| Section            | 9            | Austenitic stainless steel forgings                               |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>6</b> | <br><b>STEEL PIPES AND TUBES</b>                                  |
| Section            | 1            | General requirements                                              |
| Section            | 2            | Seamless pressure pipes                                           |
| Section            | 3            | Welded pressure pipes                                             |
| Section            | 4            | Ferritic steel pressure pipes for low temperature service         |
| Section            | 5            | Austenitic stainless steel pressure pipes                         |
| Section            | 6            | Boiler and superheater tubes                                      |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>7</b> | <br><b>IRON CASTINGS</b>                                          |
| Section            | 1            | General requirements                                              |
| Section            | 2            | Grey iron castings                                                |
| Section            | 3            | Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings                      |
| Section            | 4            | Iron castings for crankshafts                                     |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>8</b> | <br><b>ALUMINIUM ALLOYS</b>                                       |
| Section            | 1            | Plates, bars and sections                                         |
| Section            | 2            | Aluminium alloy rivets                                            |
| Section            | 3            | Aluminium alloy castings                                          |
| Section            | 4            | Aluminium/steel transition joints                                 |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>9</b> | <br><b>COPPER ALLOYS</b>                                          |
| Section            | 1            | Castings for propellers                                           |
| Section            | 2            | Castings for valves, liners and bushes                            |
| Section            | 3            | Tubes                                                             |



# Contents

|                   |                                                                                  |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER 10</b> | <b>EQUIPMENT FOR MOORING AND ANCHORING</b>                                       |
| Section 1         | Anchors                                                                          |
| Section 2         | Stud link chain cables for ships                                                 |
| Section 3         | Stud link mooring chain cables                                                   |
| Section 4         | Studless mooring chain cables                                                    |
| Section 5         | Short link chain cables                                                          |
| Section 6         | Steel wire ropes                                                                 |
| Section 7         | Fibre ropes                                                                      |
| <b>CHAPTER 11</b> | <b>APPROVAL OF WELDING CONSUMABLES</b>                                           |
| Section 1         | General                                                                          |
| Section 2         | Mechanical testing procedures                                                    |
| Section 3         | Electrodes for manual and gravity welding                                        |
| Section 4         | Wire-flux combinations for submerged-arc automatic welding                       |
| Section 5         | Wires and wire-gas combinations for manual, semi-automatic and automatic welding |
| Section 6         | Consumables for use in electro-slag and electro-gas welding                      |
| Section 7         | Consumables for use in one-side welding with temporary backing materials         |
| Section 8         | Consumables for welding austenitic and duplex stainless steels                   |
| Section 9         | Consumables for welding aluminium alloys                                         |
| <b>CHAPTER 12</b> | <b>WELDING QUALIFICATIONS</b>                                                    |
| Section 1         | General qualification requirements                                               |
| Section 2         | Welding Procedure Qualification Tests for Steels                                 |
| Section 3         | Specific requirements for stainless steels                                       |
| Section 4         | Welding procedure tests for non-ferrous alloys                                   |
| Section 5         | Welder qualification tests                                                       |
| <b>CHAPTER 13</b> | <b>REQUIREMENTS FOR WELDED CONSTRUCTION</b>                                      |
| Section 1         | General welding requirements                                                     |
| Section 2         | Specific requirements for ship hull structure and machinery                      |
| Section 3         | Specific requirements for fabricated steel sections                              |
| Section 4         | Specific requirements for fusion welded pressure vessels                         |
| Section 5         | Specific requirements for pressure pipework                                      |
| Section 6         | Repair of existing ships by welding                                              |
| Section 7         | Austenitic and duplex stainless steel – Specific requirements                    |
| Section 8         | Specific requirements for welded aluminium                                       |
| <b>CHAPTER 14</b> | <b>PLASTICS MATERIALS AND OTHER NON-METALLIC MATERIALS</b>                       |
| Section 1         | General requirements                                                             |
| Section 2         | Tests on polymers, resins, reinforcements and associated materials               |
| Section 3         | Testing procedures                                                               |
| Section 4         | Plastics pipes and fittings                                                      |
| Section 5         | Control of material quality for composite construction                           |

## Volume 1, Parts 3 to 6, Ship Structures

|                  |                                                          |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PART 3</b>    | <b>DESIGN PRINCIPLES AND CONSTRUCTIONAL ARRANGEMENTS</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER 1</b> | <b>GENERAL</b>                                           |
| Section 1        | Rules application                                        |
| Section 2        | Direct calculations                                      |
| Section 3        | Equivalents                                              |
| Section 4        | Information required                                     |
| Section 5        | Definitions                                              |
| Section 6        | Building tolerances and associated repairs               |
| Section 7        | Inspection and testing                                   |

# Contents

---

## **CHAPTER 2 SHIP DESIGN**

|         |   |                                                                |
|---------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General                                                        |
| Section | 2 | Rule structural concept                                        |
| Section | 3 | Main hull structure                                            |
| Section | 4 | Bulkhead arrangements                                          |
| Section | 5 | Fore and aft end arrangements                                  |
| Section | 6 | Machinery space arrangements                                   |
| Section | 7 | Superstructures, deckhouses, bulwarks, sponsons and appendages |
| Section | 8 | Pillars and pillar bulkheads                                   |

## **CHAPTER 3 SHIP CONTROL SYSTEMS**

|         |   |                                                                           |
|---------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General                                                                   |
| Section | 2 | Rudders                                                                   |
| Section | 3 | Stabiliser arrangements                                                   |
| Section | 4 | Rudder horns and appendages                                               |
| Section | 5 | Fixed and steering nozzles, bow and stern thrust units, ducted propellers |
| Section | 6 | Waterjet propulsion systems                                               |

## **CHAPTER 4 CLOSING ARRANGEMENTS AND OUTFIT**

|         |    |                                                                                                          |
|---------|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1  | Introduction                                                                                             |
| Section | 2  | Hatches and miscellaneous openings on the weather deck                                                   |
| Section | 3  | Doors and accesses on weather decks                                                                      |
| Section | 4  | Side lights and windows                                                                                  |
| Section | 5  | Ventilators                                                                                              |
| Section | 6  | Air pipes                                                                                                |
| Section | 7  | Scuppers and sanitary discharges                                                                         |
| Section | 8  | Bulwarks, guard rails, raised walkways and other means for the protection of crew and embarked personnel |
| Section | 9  | Lagging and lining of structure                                                                          |
| Section | 10 | Lifting eyes                                                                                             |

## **CHAPTER 5 ANCHORING, MOORING, TOWING, BERTHING, LAUNCHING, RECOVERY AND DOCKING**

|         |    |                                                        |
|---------|----|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1  | General                                                |
| Section | 2  | Equipment Number                                       |
| Section | 3  | Service area factors                                   |
| Section | 4  | Anchors                                                |
| Section | 5  | Anchor cable                                           |
| Section | 6  | Moorings ropes                                         |
| Section | 7  | Towing arrangements                                    |
| Section | 8  | Windlass and capstan design and testing                |
| Section | 9  | Structural details                                     |
| Section | 10 | Launch and recovery, berthing and docking arrangements |

## **CHAPTER 6 STRUCTURAL PROCEDURES FOR THE DESIGN, CONSTRUCTION AND LIFETIME CARE OF SHIPS**

|         |   |                                           |
|---------|---|-------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General                                   |
| Section | 2 | Structural Design Assessment              |
| Section | 3 | Fatigue Design Assessment                 |
| Section | 4 | Construction Monitoring                   |
| Section | 5 | Ship Event Analysis                       |
| Section | 6 | Enhanced Scantlings                       |
| Section | 7 | Protective Coating in Water Ballast Tanks |
| Section | 8 | Hull Condition Monitoring                 |
| Section | 9 | Ship Emergency Response Service           |

# Contents

---

|                |          |                                                                                                    |
|----------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PART</b>    | <b>4</b> | <b>MILITARY DESIGN AND SPECIAL FEATURES</b>                                                        |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>MILITARY DESIGN</b>                                                                             |
| Section        | 1        | General requirements                                                                               |
| Section        | 2        | Survivability                                                                                      |
| Section        | 3        | Military distinction notations                                                                     |
| Section        | 4        | Military design guidance                                                                           |
| Section        | 5        | Military design requirements                                                                       |
| Section        | 6        | Magazine design and construction                                                                   |
| Section        | 7        | Design guidance for nuclear, biological and chemical defence                                       |
| Section        | 8        | Design guidance for the reduction of radiated noise underwater due to sea-inlets or other openings |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>MILITARY LOAD SPECIFICATION</b>                                                                 |
| Section        | 1        | General requirements                                                                               |
| Section        | 2        | External blast                                                                                     |
| Section        | 3        | Internal blast                                                                                     |
| Section        | 4        | Fragmentation protection                                                                           |
| Section        | 5        | Underwater explosion (shock)                                                                       |
| Section        | 6        | Whipping                                                                                           |
| Section        | 7        | Residual strength                                                                                  |
| Section        | 8        | Strengthening requirements for beach landing operations                                            |
| Section        | 9        | Military installation and operational loads                                                        |
| Section        | 10       | Aircraft operations                                                                                |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>SPECIAL FEATURES</b>                                                                            |
| Section        | 1        | General                                                                                            |
| Section        | 2        | Vehicle decks and fixed ramps                                                                      |
| Section        | 3        | Bow doors                                                                                          |
| Section        | 4        | Side, stern doors and other shell openings                                                         |
| Section        | 5        | Movable decks, lifts, internal and external ramps                                                  |
| <b>PART</b>    | <b>5</b> | <b>ENVIRONMENTAL LOADS</b>                                                                         |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>GENERAL</b>                                                                                     |
| Section        | 1        | Introduction                                                                                       |
| Section        | 2        | Direct calculations                                                                                |
| Section        | 3        | Model experiments                                                                                  |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS</b>                                                                    |
| Section        | 1        | General                                                                                            |
| Section        | 2        | Wave environment                                                                                   |
| Section        | 3        | Air environment                                                                                    |
| Section        | 4        | Guidance for ice environment                                                                       |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>LOCAL DESIGN LOADS</b>                                                                          |
| Section        | 1        | Introduction                                                                                       |
| Section        | 2        | Motion response                                                                                    |
| Section        | 3        | Loads on shell envelope                                                                            |
| Section        | 4        | Impact loads on external plating                                                                   |
| Section        | 5        | Local design loads for decks and bulkheads                                                         |
| Section        | 6        | Other local loads                                                                                  |
| Section        | 7        | Ice loads                                                                                          |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>GLOBAL DESIGN LOADS</b>                                                                         |
| Section        | 1        | General                                                                                            |
| Section        | 2        | Still water global loads                                                                           |
| Section        | 3        | Global hull girder loads                                                                           |
| Section        | 4        | Extreme hull girder loads                                                                          |
| Section        | 5        | Residual strength hull girder loads                                                                |
| Section        | 6        | Loading guidance information                                                                       |

# Contents

---

|                |          |                                                     |
|----------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PART</b>    | <b>6</b> | <b>HULL CONSTRUCTION IN STEEL</b>                   |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>GENERAL</b>                                      |
| Section        | 1        | Application                                         |
| Section        | 2        | General requirements                                |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>DESIGN TOOLS</b>                                 |
| Section        | 1        | General                                             |
| Section        | 2        | Structural design                                   |
| Section        | 3        | Buckling                                            |
| Section        | 4        | Vibration control                                   |
| Section        | 5        | Dynamic loading                                     |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>SCANTLING DETERMINATION</b>                      |
| Section        | 1        | General                                             |
| Section        | 2        | Minimum structural requirements                     |
| Section        | 3        | NS1 scantling determination                         |
| Section        | 4        | NS2 and NS3 scantling determination                 |
| Section        | 5        | Shell envelope plating                              |
| Section        | 6        | Shell envelope framing                              |
| Section        | 7        | Single bottom structures                            |
| Section        | 8        | Double bottom structures                            |
| Section        | 9        | Bulkheads and deep tanks                            |
| Section        | 10       | Deck structures                                     |
| Section        | 11       | Superstructures, deckhouses and bulwarks            |
| Section        | 12       | Pillars and pillar bulkheads                        |
| Section        | 13       | Machinery and raft seatings                         |
| Section        | 14       | Strengthening for bottom slamming                   |
| Section        | 15       | Strengthening for wave impact loads above waterline |
| Section        | 16       | Masts                                               |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>HULL GIRDER STRENGTH</b>                         |
| Section        | 1        | General                                             |
| Section        | 2        | Hull girder strength                                |
| Section        | 3        | Extreme Strength Assessment, ESA                    |
| Section        | 4        | Residual Strength Assessment, RSA                   |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>STRUCTURAL DESIGN FACTORS</b>                    |
| Section        | 1        | Structural design factors                           |
| Section        | 2        | Scantling determination for NS1 ships               |
| Section        | 3        | Scantling determination for NS2 and NS3 ships       |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>MATERIAL AND WELDING REQUIREMENTS</b>            |
| Section        | 1        | General                                             |
| Section        | 2        | Materials                                           |
| Section        | 3        | Requirements for welded construction                |
| Section        | 4        | Welded joints and connections                       |
| Section        | 5        | Construction details                                |
| Section        | 6        | Inspection and testing procedures                   |

## Volume 1, Part 7, Enhanced Structural Assessment (Provisional)

|                |          |                                       |
|----------------|----------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>PART</b>    | <b>7</b> | <b>ENHANCED STRUCTURAL ASSESSMENT</b> |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>GENERAL</b>                        |
| Section        | 1        | General                               |
| Section        | 2        | Total Load Assessment, TLA            |
| Section        | 3        | Structural Design Assessment, SDA     |

# Contents

---

|                |          |                                                                                      |
|----------------|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>TOTAL DESIGN LOADS</b>                                                            |
| Section        | 1        | General                                                                              |
| Section        | 2        | Nomenclature and design factors                                                      |
| Section        | 3        | Design load combinations                                                             |
| Section        | 4        | Design load systems for longitudinally effective components                          |
| Section        | 5        | Design load systems for structural components or longitudinally ineffective material |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>TOTAL LOAD ASSESSMENT, TLA</b>                                                    |
| Section        | 1        | Introduction                                                                         |
| Section        | 2        | Structural resistance                                                                |
| Section        | 3        | Stress analysis model                                                                |
| Section        | 4        | Structural design factors                                                            |

## Volume 2, Parts 1-11, Machinery and Engineering Systems

|                |          |                                                                                                  |
|----------------|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PART</b>    | <b>1</b> | <b>GENERAL REQUIREMENTS</b>                                                                      |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CLASSIFICATION OF ENGINEERING SYSTEMS</b>                            |
| Section        | 1        | Scope                                                                                            |
| Section        | 2        | Engineering system classification provisions                                                     |
| Section        | 3        | Engineering system designation                                                                   |
| Section        | 4        | Engineering system classification principles                                                     |
| Section        | 5        | Acceptance criteria                                                                              |
| Section        | 6        | Routes to conformance                                                                            |
| Section        | 7        | Certification of materials                                                                       |
| Section        | 8        | Quality assurance scheme for machinery                                                           |
| Section        | 9        | Type approval system (for information)                                                           |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>REQUIREMENTS FOR DESIGN, CONSTRUCTION, INSTALLATION AND SEA TRIALS OF ENGINEERING SYSTEMS</b> |
| Section        | 1        | Scope                                                                                            |
| Section        | 2        | General provisions                                                                               |
| Section        | 3        | Particulars to be submitted                                                                      |
| Section        | 4        | Operating conditions                                                                             |
| Section        | 5        | Machinery space arrangements                                                                     |
| Section        | 6        | Diesel engines                                                                                   |
| Section        | 7        | Turbo-chargers                                                                                   |
| Section        | 8        | Gas turbines                                                                                     |
| Section        | 9        | Steam turbines                                                                                   |
| Section        | 10       | Gearing                                                                                          |
| Section        | 11       | Shafting systems                                                                                 |
| Section        | 12       | Propellers                                                                                       |
| Section        | 13       | Water jet units                                                                                  |
| Section        | 14       | Thrusters                                                                                        |
| Section        | 15       | Steering systems                                                                                 |
| Section        | 16       | Sea trials                                                                                       |
| Section        | 17       | Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)                                                         |
| Section        | 18       | Fin stabilisers                                                                                  |
| Section        | 19       | Fired galley arrangements                                                                        |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>REQUIREMENTS FOR FUSION WELDING OF PRESSURE VESSELS AND PIPING</b>                            |
| Section        | 1        | General                                                                                          |
| Section        | 2        | Manufacture and workmanship of fusion welded pressure vessels                                    |
| Section        | 3        | Repairs to welds on fusion welded pressure vessels                                               |
| Section        | 4        | Post weld heat treatment of pressure vessels                                                     |
| Section        | 5        | Welded pressure pipes                                                                            |
| Section        | 6        | Non-Destructive Examination                                                                      |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>SPARE GEAR FOR MACHINERY INSTALLATIONS</b>                                                    |
| Section        | 1        | General                                                                                          |

# Contents

---

## **CHAPTER 5 REQUIREMENTS FOR MACHINERY AND ENGINEERING SYSTEMS OF UNCONVENTIONAL DESIGN**

Section 1 Requirements for machinery and engineering systems of unconventional design

## **PART 2 PRIME MOVERS**

### **CHAPTER 1 DIESEL ENGINES**

Section 1 General requirements  
 Section 2 Particulars to be submitted  
 Section 3 Materials  
 Section 4 Crankshaft design  
 Section 5 Construction and welded structures  
 Section 6 Safety arrangements on engines  
 Section 7 Air compressors and starting arrangements  
 Section 8 Piping systems  
 Section 9 Control and monitoring  
 Section 10 Alarms and safeguards for emergency diesel engines  
 Section 11 Mass produced engines  
 Section 12 Mass produced turbo-chargers  
 Section 13 Type testing procedure for crankcase explosion relief valves  
 Section 14 Type testing procedure for crankcase oil mist detection and alarm equipment  
 Section 15 Electronically controlled engines

### **CHAPTER 2 GAS TURBINES**

Section 1 General requirements  
 Section 2 Particulars to be submitted  
 Section 3 Materials  
 Section 4 Design and construction  
 Section 5 Piping systems  
 Section 6 Starting arrangements  
 Section 7 Control, alarm and safety systems  
 Section 8 Planned maintenance and condition monitoring procedures, and 'upkeep by exchange'

### **CHAPTER 3 STEAM TURBINES**

Section 1 General requirements  
 Section 2 Particulars to be submitted  
 Section 3 Materials  
 Section 4 Design and construction  
 Section 5 Emergency arrangements  
 Section 6 Piping systems  
 Section 7 Control and monitoring

## **PART 3 TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS**

### **CHAPTER 1 GEARING**

Section 1 Scope  
 Section 2 Principles  
 Section 3 Acceptance criteria  
 Section 4 Design and construction  
 Section 5 Plans and particulars to be submitted  
 Section 6 Materials  
 Section 7 Design  
 Section 8 Sub-systems for gearing  
 Section 9 Control and monitoring

### **CHAPTER 2 SHAFTING SYSTEMS**

Section 1 General requirements  
 Section 2 Particulars to be submitted  
 Section 3 Materials  
 Section 4 Design and construction  
 Section 5 Control and monitoring

# Contents

---

|                |          |                                                      |
|----------------|----------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PART</b>    | <b>4</b> | <b>PROPULSION DEVICES</b>                            |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>PROPELLERS</b>                                    |
| Section        | 1        | Scope                                                |
| Section        | 2        | Principles                                           |
| Section        | 3        | Acceptance criteria                                  |
| Section        | 4        | Routes to conformance                                |
| Section        | 5        | Plans and particulars                                |
| Section        | 6        | Materials                                            |
| Section        | 7        | Propeller design                                     |
| Section        | 8        | Propeller tolerances                                 |
| Section        | 9        | Piping systems                                       |
| Section        | 10       | Control and monitoring                               |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>WATER JET SYSTEMS</b>                             |
| Section        | 1        | Scope                                                |
| Section        | 2        | General requirements                                 |
| Section        | 3        | Design requirements                                  |
| Section        | 4        | Piping systems                                       |
| Section        | 5        | Control and monitoring                               |
| Section        | 6        | Electrical systems                                   |
| Section        | 7        | Inspection, testing and fitting of water jets        |
| Section        | 8        | Installation, maintenance and replacement            |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>THRUSTERS</b>                                     |
| Section        | 1        | General requirements                                 |
| Section        | 2        | Particulars to be submitted                          |
| Section        | 3        | Materials                                            |
| Section        | 4        | Design and construction                              |
| Section        | 5        | Piping systems                                       |
| Section        | 6        | Control and monitoring                               |
| Section        | 7        | Electrical systems                                   |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>PODDED PROPULSION UNITS</b>                       |
| Section        | 1        | Scope                                                |
| Section        | 2        | General requirements                                 |
| Section        | 3        | Functional capability                                |
| Section        | 4        | Materials                                            |
| Section        | 5        | Structure design and construction requirements       |
| Section        | 6        | Machinery design and construction requirements       |
| Section        | 7        | Electrical equipment                                 |
| Section        | 8        | Control engineering arrangements                     |
| Section        | 9        | Testing and trials                                   |
| Section        | 10       | Installation, maintenance and replacement procedures |
| <b>PART</b>    | <b>5</b> | <b>SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT</b>                 |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>TORSIONAL VIBRATION</b>                           |
| Section        | 1        | General requirements                                 |
| Section        | 2        | Details to be submitted                              |
| Section        | 3        | Design                                               |
| Section        | 4        | Measurements                                         |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>AXIAL VIBRATION</b>                               |
| Section        | 1        | General requirements                                 |
| Section        | 2        | Details to be submitted                              |
| Section        | 3        | Design                                               |
| Section        | 4        | Measurements                                         |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>LATERAL VIBRATION</b>                             |
| Section        | 1        | General requirements                                 |
| Section        | 2        | Details to be submitted                              |
| Section        | 3        | Measurements                                         |

# Contents

---

## **CHAPTER 4 SHAFT ALIGNMENT**

|         |   |                              |
|---------|---|------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General requirements         |
| Section | 2 | Details to be submitted      |
| Section | 3 | Shaft alignment calculations |

## **PART 6 STEERING SYSTEMS**

### **CHAPTER 1 STEERING GEAR**

|         |   |                                                      |
|---------|---|------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General requirements                                 |
| Section | 2 | Particulars to be submitted                          |
| Section | 3 | Materials                                            |
| Section | 4 | Performance                                          |
| Section | 5 | Design and construction                              |
| Section | 6 | Steering control systems                             |
| Section | 7 | Electrical power circuits and equipment              |
| Section | 8 | Monitoring and alarms                                |
| Section | 9 | Alternative sources of power and emergency operation |

## **PART 7 PIPING SYSTEMS**

### **CHAPTER 1 PIPING DESIGN REQUIREMENTS**

|         |    |                                                  |
|---------|----|--------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1  | Scope                                            |
| Section | 2  | General                                          |
| Section | 3  | Assessment                                       |
| Section | 4  | Materials                                        |
| Section | 5  | Pipe connections                                 |
| Section | 6  | Carbon and low alloy steel piping and components |
| Section | 7  | Copper and copper alloy piping and components    |
| Section | 8  | Cast iron piping and components                  |
| Section | 9  | Stainless steel piping and components            |
| Section | 10 | Aluminium piping and components                  |
| Section | 11 | Pipe connections                                 |
| Section | 12 | Valves                                           |
| Section | 13 | Flexible hoses                                   |
| Section | 14 | Expansion pieces                                 |
| Section | 15 | Pumps                                            |
| Section | 16 | Testing                                          |
| Section | 17 | Guidance notes on metal pipes for water service  |
| Section | 18 | Heat exchangers                                  |

### **CHAPTER 2 SHIP PIPING SYSTEMS**

|         |    |                                                                               |
|---------|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1  | General requirements                                                          |
| Section | 2  | Construction and installation                                                 |
| Section | 3  | Drainage of compartments, other than machinery spaces                         |
| Section | 4  | Drainage of machinery spaces                                                  |
| Section | 5  | Size of dewatering suction pipes                                              |
| Section | 6  | Drainage units on dewatering service and their connections                    |
| Section | 7  | Pipe systems and their fittings                                               |
| Section | 8  | Cross flooding arrangements                                                   |
| Section | 9  | Additional requirements relating to fixed pressure fire-extinguishing systems |
| Section | 10 | Air, overflow and sounding pipes                                              |



# Contents

---

## **CHAPTER 3 MACHINERY PIPING SYSTEMS**

|         |    |                                                                     |
|---------|----|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1  | General requirements                                                |
| Section | 2  | Oil fuel – General requirements                                     |
| Section | 3  | Oil fuel burning arrangements                                       |
| Section | 4  | Oil fuel pumps, pipes, fittings, tanks, etc.                        |
| Section | 5  | Steam piping systems                                                |
| Section | 6  | Boiler feed water, condensate and thermal fluid circulation systems |
| Section | 7  | Engine cooling water systems                                        |
| Section | 8  | Lubricating oil systems                                             |
| Section | 9  | Control, supervision and monitoring of equipment                    |
| Section | 10 | Multi-engined ships                                                 |
| Section | 11 | Electrical equipment cooling arrangements                           |

## **CHAPTER 4 AIRCRAFT/HELICOPTER/VEHICLE FUEL PIPING AND ARRANGEMENTS**

|         |   |                       |
|---------|---|-----------------------|
| Section | 1 | General requirements  |
| Section | 2 | Refuelling facilities |
| Section | 3 | Pump rooms            |

## **CHAPTER 5 SHIP TYPE PIPING SYSTEMS**

|         |    |                                      |
|---------|----|--------------------------------------|
| Section | 1  | General requirements                 |
| Section | 2  | Construction and installation        |
| Section | 3  | System arrangements                  |
| Section | 4  | Control arrangements                 |
| Section | 5  | Failure Mode and Effects Analysis    |
| Section | 6  | Testing and trials                   |
| Section | 7  | Chilled water systems                |
| Section | 8  | High pressure compressed air systems |
| Section | 9  | Low pressure compressed air systems  |
| Section | 10 | High pressure sea-water systems      |
| Section | 11 | Hydraulic power actuating systems    |

## **PART 8 PRESSURE PLANT**

### **CHAPTER 1 STEAM RAISING PLANT AND ASSOCIATED PRESSURE VESSELS**

|         |    |                                                                                                                                            |
|---------|----|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1  | General requirements                                                                                                                       |
| Section | 2  | Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure                                                                                  |
| Section | 3  | Spherical shells subject to internal pressure                                                                                              |
| Section | 4  | Dished ends subject to internal pressure                                                                                                   |
| Section | 5  | Conical ends subject to internal pressure                                                                                                  |
| Section | 6  | Standpipes and branches                                                                                                                    |
| Section | 7  | Boiler tubes subject to internal pressure                                                                                                  |
| Section | 8  | Headers                                                                                                                                    |
| Section | 9  | Flat surfaces and flat tube plates                                                                                                         |
| Section | 10 | Flat plates and ends of vertical boilers                                                                                                   |
| Section | 11 | Furnaces subject to external pressure                                                                                                      |
| Section | 12 | Boiler tubes subject to external pressure                                                                                                  |
| Section | 13 | Tubes welded at both ends and bar stays for cylindrical boilers                                                                            |
| Section | 14 | Construction                                                                                                                               |
| Section | 15 | Mounting and fittings for cylindrical and vertical boilers, steam generators, pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters |
| Section | 16 | Mountings and fittings for water tube boilers                                                                                              |
| Section | 17 | Hydraulic tests                                                                                                                            |
| Section | 18 | Control and monitoring                                                                                                                     |

# Contents

## **CHAPTER 2 OTHER PRESSURE VESSELS**

|         |    |                                                           |
|---------|----|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1  | General requirements                                      |
| Section | 2  | Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure |
| Section | 3  | Spherical shells subject to internal pressure             |
| Section | 4  | Dished ends subject to internal pressure                  |
| Section | 5  | Dished ends for Class 3 pressure vessels                  |
| Section | 6  | Conical ends subject to internal pressure                 |
| Section | 7  | Standpipes and branches                                   |
| Section | 8  | Construction                                              |
| Section | 9  | Mountings and fittings                                    |
| Section | 10 | Hydraulic tests                                           |
| Section | 11 | Plate heat exchangers                                     |

## **PART 9 CONTROL ENGINEERING**

### **CHAPTER 1 CONTROL ENGINEERING SYSTEMS**

|         |   |                                                                      |
|---------|---|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General engineering systems                                          |
| Section | 2 | Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems             |
| Section | 3 | Ergonomics of control stations                                       |
| Section | 4 | Unattended machinery space(s) – UMS notation                         |
| Section | 5 | Machinery operated from a centralised control station – CCS notation |
| Section | 6 | Integrated computer control – ICC notation                           |
| Section | 7 | Trials                                                               |

## **PART 10 ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING**

### **CHAPTER 1 ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING**

|         |    |                                                                                                       |
|---------|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1  | General requirements                                                                                  |
| Section | 2  | Main source of electrical power                                                                       |
| Section | 3  | Emergency and alternative sources of electrical power                                                 |
| Section | 4  | External source of electrical power                                                                   |
| Section | 5  | Supply and distribution                                                                               |
| Section | 6  | System design – Protection                                                                            |
| Section | 7  | Switchgear and control gear assemblies                                                                |
| Section | 8  | Protection from electric arc hazards within electrical equipment                                      |
| Section | 9  | Rotating machines                                                                                     |
| Section | 10 | Converter equipment                                                                                   |
| Section | 11 | Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways)                                                 |
| Section | 12 | Batteries                                                                                             |
| Section | 13 | Equipment – Heating, lighting and accessories                                                         |
| Section | 14 | Electrical equipment for the use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts |
| Section | 15 | Navigation and manoeuvring systems                                                                    |
| Section | 16 | Electric propulsion                                                                                   |
| Section | 17 | Fire safety systems                                                                                   |
| Section | 18 | Crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems                                                  |
| Section | 19 | Ship safety systems                                                                                   |
| Section | 20 | Lightning conductors                                                                                  |
| Section | 21 | Testing and trials                                                                                    |
| Section | 22 | Spare gear                                                                                            |

## **PART 11 SUPPORT SYSTEMS**

### **CHAPTER 1 MADE AND FRESH WATER SYSTEMS**

|         |   |                                                          |
|---------|---|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General requirements                                     |
| Section | 2 | System construction and installation                     |
| Section | 3 | System arrangements                                      |
| Section | 4 | Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements |
| Section | 5 | Testing and trials                                       |

# Contents

---

## **CHAPTER 2 HEATING, VENTILATION AND COOLING ARRANGEMENTS**

|         |   |                                                          |
|---------|---|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General requirements                                     |
| Section | 2 | Construction and installation                            |
| Section | 3 | System arrangements                                      |
| Section | 4 | Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements |
| Section | 5 | Testing and trials                                       |

## **CHAPTER 3 WASTE SYSTEMS**

|         |   |                                                          |
|---------|---|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General requirements                                     |
| Section | 2 | Construction and installation                            |
| Section | 3 | System arrangements                                      |
| Section | 4 | Treatment of solid waste matter                          |
| Section | 5 | Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements |
| Section | 6 | Testing and trials                                       |

## **Volume 3, Parts 1-3, Additional Optional Requirements**

### **PART 1 ADDITIONAL SEA-GOING FEATURES**

#### **CHAPTER 1 ICE NAVIGATION – FIRST YEAR ICE CONDITIONS**

|         |   |                                   |
|---------|---|-----------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General requirements              |
| Section | 2 | Hull strengthening requirements   |
| Section | 3 | Machinery and engineering systems |

#### **CHAPTER 2 INTEGRATED PROPULSION SYSTEMS**

|         |   |                        |
|---------|---|------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General requirements   |
| Section | 2 | Machinery arrangements |
| Section | 3 | Control arrangements   |

#### **CHAPTER 3 PROPULSION AND STEERING MACHINERY REDUNDANCY**

|         |   |                                                |
|---------|---|------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General requirements                           |
| Section | 2 | Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)       |
| Section | 3 | Machinery arrangements                         |
| Section | 4 | Control arrangements                           |
| Section | 5 | Separate machinery spaces ★ (star) Enhancement |
| Section | 6 | Testing and trials                             |

#### **CHAPTER 4 MANOEUVRING ASSESSMENT**

|         |   |                                                   |
|---------|---|---------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | General                                           |
| Section | 2 | Assessment for LMA notation                       |
| Section | 3 | Assessment for LNMA notation                      |
| Section | 4 | Verification trials                               |
| Section | 5 | Guidelines on conducting ship verification trials |

#### **CHAPTER 5 REPLENISHMENT AT SEA (RAS) SYSTEMS**

|         |    |                                       |
|---------|----|---------------------------------------|
| Section | 1  | General requirements                  |
| Section | 2  | Principles                            |
| Section | 3  | Acceptance criteria                   |
| Section | 4  | Design and construction               |
| Section | 5  | Plans and particulars to be submitted |
| Section | 6  | Ship and arrangement requirements     |
| Section | 7  | Ship operating system requirements    |
| Section | 8  | RAS station requirements              |
| Section | 9  | Transfer of liquids                   |
| Section | 10 | Transfer of solids                    |
| Section | 11 | Transfer of personnel                 |
| Section | 12 | RAS equipment                         |
| Section | 13 | Testing and trials                    |
| Section | 14 | Survey through life                   |

# Contents

---

|                    |              |                                                                          |
|--------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>BUOYANCY, STABILITY AND CONTROLLABILITY ASSESSMENT</b>                |
| Section            | 1            | General                                                                  |
| Section            | 2            | Requirements                                                             |
| <br><b>PART</b>    | <br><b>2</b> | <br><b>ADDITIONAL ENVIRONMENT AND SAFETY FEATURES</b>                    |
| <b>CHAPTER</b>     | <b>1</b>     | <b>NOISE AND VIBRATION LEVELS IN PERSONNEL SPACES</b>                    |
| Section            | 1            | General requirements                                                     |
| Section            | 2            | Noise                                                                    |
| Section            | 3            | Vibration                                                                |
| Section            | 4            | Testing                                                                  |
| Section            | 5            | Survey reporting                                                         |
| Section            | 6            | Excessive noise and vibration                                            |
| Section            | 7            | Survey requirements                                                      |
| Section            | 8            | Referenced standards                                                     |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>2</b> | <br><b>ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION</b>                                      |
| Section            | 1            | General requirements                                                     |
| Section            | 2            | Environmental Protection (EP) class notation                             |
| Section            | 3            | Supplementary characters                                                 |
| Section            | 4            | Survey requirements                                                      |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>3</b> | <br><b>PROVISION REFRIGERATION</b>                                       |
| Section            | 1            | General requirements                                                     |
| Section            | 2            | Construction and installation                                            |
| Section            | 3            | Refrigerating machinery and refrigerant storage compartment arrangements |
| Section            | 4            | Refrigerant detection systems                                            |
| Section            | 5            | Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements                 |
| Section            | 6            | Personnel safety equipment and systems                                   |
| Section            | 7            | Testing and trials                                                       |
| <br><b>PART</b>    | <br><b>3</b> | <br><b>SAFETY EQUIPMENT AND ARRANGEMENTS</b>                             |
| <b>CHAPTER</b>     | <b>1</b>     | <b>GENERAL REQUIREMENTS</b>                                              |
| Section            | 1            | Scope                                                                    |
| Section            | 2            | General information                                                      |
| Section            | 3            | Definitions                                                              |
| Section            | 4            | Integration for EER Notation                                             |
| Section            | 5            | Acceptance criteria                                                      |
| Section            | 6            | Route to conformance                                                     |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>2</b> | <br><b>FIRE PROTECTION</b>                                               |
| Section            | 1            | Scope                                                                    |
| Section            | 2            | Classification requirements for fire protection systems                  |
| Section            | 3            | Plans and particulars                                                    |
| Section            | 4            | General requirements                                                     |
| Section            | 5            | Fire prevention                                                          |
| Section            | 6            | Fire detection                                                           |
| Section            | 7            | Fire extinction                                                          |
| Section            | 8            | Fire and by-product containment                                          |
| Section            | 9            | Personnel fire hazards                                                   |
| Section            | 10           | System interaction                                                       |
| Section            | 11           | Command and control                                                      |
| Section            | 12           | Structural integrity                                                     |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>3</b> | <br><b>ESCAPE AND EMERGENCY ACCESS</b>                                   |
| Section            | 1            | Scope                                                                    |
| Section            | 2            | Classification requirements for escape and emergency access              |
| Section            | 3            | Plans and particulars                                                    |
| Section            | 4            | General requirements                                                     |
| Section            | 5            | Escape of personnel                                                      |
| Section            | 6            | Emergency access                                                         |

# Contents

---

## **CHAPTER 4 LIFE-SAVING AND EVACUATION ARRANGEMENTS**

|         |   |                                                          |
|---------|---|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | Scope                                                    |
| Section | 2 | Requirements for life-saving and evacuation arrangements |
| Section | 3 | Plans and particulars                                    |
| Section | 4 | General requirements                                     |
| Section | 5 | Evacuation of personnel                                  |
| Section | 6 | Personnel protection                                     |
| Section | 7 | Rescue of personnel                                      |
| Section | 8 | Command and control                                      |

## **CHAPTER 5 SAFETY OF NAVIGATION AND COMMUNICATION**

|         |   |                                                                                |
|---------|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | Scope                                                                          |
| Section | 2 | Classification requirements for safety of navigation and communication systems |
| Section | 3 | Plans and particulars                                                          |
| Section | 4 | General requirements                                                           |
| Section | 5 | Safety of communication                                                        |
| Section | 6 | Safety of navigation                                                           |
| Section | 7 | Safety of navigating and communication equipment arrangements                  |

## **CHAPTER 6 POLLUTION PREVENTION**

|         |   |                                                                       |
|---------|---|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Section | 1 | Scope                                                                 |
| Section | 2 | Requirements for pollution prevention arrangements                    |
| Section | 3 | Plans and particulars                                                 |
| Section | 4 | Prevention of pollution by oil and garbage                            |
| Section | 5 | Prevention of pollution by sewage and pollution of the air from ships |



© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013  
Published by Lloyd's Register  
*Registered office*  
71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS  
United Kingdom

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2  
January 2013



# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2

Part 1 General Requirements

January 2013

---

|             |                  |                                                                                                  |
|-------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PART</b> | <b>1</b>         | <b>GENERAL REQUIREMENTS</b>                                                                      |
|             | <b>Chapter 1</b> | <b>General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems</b>                            |
|             | <b>2</b>         | <b>Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems</b> |
|             | <b>3</b>         | <b>Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping</b>                            |
|             | <b>4</b>         | <b>Spare Gear for Machinery Installations</b>                                                    |
|             | <b>5</b>         | <b>Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design</b>               |
| PART        | 2                | PRIME MOVERS                                                                                     |
| PART        | 3                | TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS                                                                             |
| PART        | 4                | PROPULSION DEVICES                                                                               |
| PART        | 5                | SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT                                                                    |
| PART        | 6                | STEERING SYSTEMS                                                                                 |
| PART        | 7                | PIPING SYSTEMS                                                                                   |
| PART        | 8                | PRESSURE PLANT                                                                                   |
| PART        | 9                | CONTROL ENGINEERING                                                                              |
| PART        | 10               | ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING                                                                           |
| PART        | 11               | SUPPORT SYSTEMS                                                                                  |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.



---

## **CHAPTER 1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CLASSIFICATION OF ENGINEERING SYSTEMS**

### **Section 1 Scope**

1.1 Application

### **Section 2 Engineering system classification provisions**

2.1 Provisions

### **Section 3 Engineering system designation**

3.1 Categories

### **Section 4 Engineering system classification principles**

- 4.1 Classification principles
- 4.2 Design principles
- 4.3 Construction principles
- 4.4 Installation and test principles
- 4.5 Trials principles
- 4.6 Through life operation principles

### **Section 5 Acceptance criteria**

- 5.1 Acceptance
- 5.2 Military systems guidance

### **Section 6 Routes to conformance**

- 6.1 Design and construction
- 6.2 Machinery to be constructed under survey
- 6.3 Survey for classification
- 6.4 Alternative system of inspection
- 6.5 Installation
- 6.6 Trials
- 6.7 In-service survey
- 6.8 Modifications
- 6.9 De-commissioning
- 6.10 Upkeep by exchange
- 6.11 Alternative arrangements and calculation methods

### **Section 7 Certification of materials**

- 7.1 Materials of construction
- 7.2 Welding

### **Section 8 Quality assurance scheme for machinery**

- 8.1 General
- 8.2 Requirements for approval
- 8.3 Arrangements for acceptance and certification of purchased material
- 8.4 Information required for approval
- 8.5 Assessment of works
- 8.6 Approval of works
- 8.7 Maintenance of approval
- 8.8 Suspension or withdrawal of approval
- 8.9 Identification of products

### **Section 9 Type approval system (for information)**

- 9.1 General
- 9.2 Approval criteria

## **CHAPTER 2 REQUIREMENTS FOR DESIGN, CONSTRUCTION, INSTALLATION AND SEA TRIALS OF ENGINEERING SYSTEMS**

### **Section 1 Scope**

1.1 Application

### **Section 2 General provisions**

2.1 Provisions

---

|                |          |                                                        |
|----------------|----------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Particulars to be submitted</b>                     |
|                | 3.1      | Submission of information                              |
|                | 3.2      | Plans                                                  |
|                | 3.3      | Calculations and specifications                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Operating conditions</b>                            |
|                | 4.1      | Availability for operation                             |
|                | 4.2      | Oil fuel                                               |
|                | 4.3      | Power ratings                                          |
|                | 4.4      | Ambient reference conditions                           |
|                | 4.5      | Ambient operating conditions                           |
|                | 4.6      | Inclination of ship                                    |
|                | 4.7      | Power conditions for generator sets                    |
|                | 4.8      | Astern power                                           |
|                | 4.9      | Military requirements                                  |
|                | 4.10     | Guidance for underwater signature                      |
|                | 4.11     | Machinery shock arrangements                           |
|                | 4.12     | Guidance for CBRN protection, detection and monitoring |
|                | 4.13     | Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)                    |
|                | 4.14     | Machinery interlocks                                   |
|                | 4.15     | Stopping of machinery                                  |
|                | 4.16     | Control of rotating systems                            |
|                | 4.17     | Survey and refit                                       |
|                | 4.18     | Electromagnetic hazards                                |
|                | 4.19     | Flexible hose and bellows expansion piece registers    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Machinery space arrangements</b>                    |
|                | 5.1      | Machinery spaces                                       |
|                | 5.2      | Accessibility                                          |
|                | 5.3      | Machinery fastenings                                   |
|                | 5.4      | Collision load                                         |
|                | 5.5      | Resilient mountings                                    |
|                | 5.6      | Resin chocks                                           |
|                | 5.7      | Ventilation                                            |
|                | 5.8      | Fire protection                                        |
|                | 5.9      | Means of escape                                        |
|                | 5.10     | Communications                                         |
|                | 5.11     | Personnel safety                                       |
|                | 5.12     | Machinery enclosures                                   |
|                | 5.13     | Fire detection, alarm and extinguishing arrangements   |
|                | 5.14     | Location of emergency installations                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Diesel engines</b>                                  |
|                | 6.1      | Design                                                 |
|                | 6.2      | Construction and welding                               |
|                | 6.3      | Hydraulic testing                                      |
|                | 6.4      | Non-destructive testing                                |
|                | 6.5      | Autofrettage                                           |
|                | 6.6      | Engine type testing                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Turbo-chargers</b>                                  |
|                | 7.1      | Design                                                 |
|                | 7.2      | Type testing                                           |
|                | 7.3      | Dynamic balancing                                      |
|                | 7.4      | Overspeed tests                                        |
|                | 7.5      | Mechanical running tests                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b> | <b>Gas turbines</b>                                    |
|                | 8.1      | Design                                                 |
|                | 8.2      | Construction under survey                              |
|                | 8.3      | Dynamic balancing                                      |
|                | 8.4      | Hydraulic testing                                      |
|                | 8.5      | Overspeed tests                                        |

---

|                |           |                                                 |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b>  | <b>Steam turbines</b>                           |
|                | 9.1       | Design                                          |
|                | 9.2       | Stability testing of turbine rotors             |
|                | 9.3       | Balancing                                       |
|                | 9.4       | Hydraulic tests                                 |
|                | 9.5       | Indicators for movement                         |
|                | 9.6       | Wear-down gauges                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>Gearing</b>                                  |
|                | 10.1      | Design                                          |
|                | 10.2      | Construction and welding                        |
|                | 10.3      | Accuracy of gear cutting                        |
|                | 10.4      | Non-destructive testing                         |
|                | 10.5      | Dynamic balancing                               |
|                | 10.6      | Meshing tests                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>11</b> | <b>Shafting systems</b>                         |
|                | 11.1      | Design                                          |
|                | 11.2      | Construction                                    |
|                | 11.3      | Shaft bearing clearances                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>12</b> | <b>Propellers</b>                               |
|                | 12.1      | Design                                          |
|                | 12.2      | Construction and welding                        |
|                | 12.3      | Shop tests of keyless propellers                |
|                | 12.4      | Shop tests of controllable pitch propellers     |
|                | 12.5      | Final fitting of keyless propellers             |
|                | 12.6      | Final fitting of keyed propellers               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>13</b> | <b>Water jet units</b>                          |
|                | 13.1      | Design                                          |
|                | 13.2      | Construction and welding                        |
|                | 13.3      | Testing                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>14</b> | <b>Thrusters</b>                                |
|                | 14.1      | Design and construction                         |
|                | 14.2      | Azimuth thrusters                               |
|                | 14.3      | Tunnel thrusters                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>15</b> | <b>Steering systems</b>                         |
|                | 15.1      | Design                                          |
|                | 15.2      | Construction                                    |
|                | 15.3      | Type testing                                    |
|                | 15.4      | Testing                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>16</b> | <b>Sea trials</b>                               |
|                | 16.1      | Sea trials requirements                         |
|                | 16.2      | Programme                                       |
|                | 16.3      | Performance testing                             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>17</b> | <b>Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)</b> |
|                | 17.1      | General                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>18</b> | <b>Fin stabilisers</b>                          |
|                | 18.1      | Design and construction                         |
|                | 18.2      | Performance and control                         |
|                | 18.3      | Control, monitoring and alarms                  |
|                | 18.4      | Trials and testing                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>19</b> | <b>Fired galley arrangements</b>                |
|                | 19.1      | Oil and liquefied petroleum gas fired galleys   |

---

## **CHAPTER 3 REQUIREMENTS FOR FUSION WELDING OF PRESSURE VESSELS AND PIPING**

### **Section 1 General**

- 1.1 Scope
- 1.2 General requirements for welding plant and welding quality

### **Section 2 Manufacture and workmanship of fusion welded pressure vessels**

- 2.1 General requirements
- 2.2 Materials of construction
- 2.3 Tolerances for cylindrical shells

### **Section 3 Repairs to welds on fusion welded pressure vessels**

- 3.1 General

### **Section 4 Post-weld heat treatment of pressure vessels**

- 4.1 General

### **Section 5 Welded pressure pipes**

- 5.1 General
- 5.2 Welding workmanship

### **Section 6 Non-Destructive Examination**

- 6.1 General

## **CHAPTER 4 SPARE GEAR FOR MACHINERY INSTALLATIONS**

### **Section 1 General**

- 1.1 Application
- 1.2 Guidance for spare parts

## **CHAPTER 5 REQUIREMENTS FOR MACHINERY AND ENGINEERING SYSTEMS OF UNCONVENTIONAL DESIGN**

### **Section 1 Requirements for machinery and engineering systems of unconventional design**

- 1.1 General – Scope and objectives
- 1.2 Information to be submitted
- 1.3 Project management
- 1.4 Requirements definition
- 1.5 Quality assurance
- 1.6 Design definition
- 1.7 Risk management
- 1.8 Configuration management
- 1.9 Verification
- 1.10 Integration
- 1.11 Validation (certification and survey)

# General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 1

Sections 1, 2 & 3

### Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **Engineering system classification provisions**
- 3 **Engineering system designation**
- 4 **Engineering system classification principles**
- 5 **Acceptance criteria**
- 6 **Routes to conformance**
- 7 **Certification of materials**
- 8 **Quality assurance scheme for machinery**
- 9 **Type approval system (for information)**

## ■ Section 1 Scope

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter covers the basis of the requirements for the design, construction, testing, installation, trials and through life changes of engineering systems installed in classed naval ships.

1.1.2 The requirements are applicable to mechanical, electrical, control, piping and pressure plant systems.

1.1.3 For the purposes of these Rules, an engineering system is considered to be a series of elements, including all equipment and associated sub-systems necessary to provide specified functions within the intended context of use in the system. Typical sub-systems include associated control and monitoring arrangements and their user interfaces, data communications, power supplies (electrical, hydraulic or pneumatic), fuel, lubricating, cooling, etc.

## ■ Section 2 Engineering system classification provisions

### 2.1 Provisions

2.1.1 The classification provisions for engineering systems installed in naval ships address the following:

- (a) The suitability and functioning of equipment and systems for maintaining the watertight and weathertight integrity of the hull, and spaces within the hull.
- (b) The safety and reliability of propulsion, steering and other essential engineering systems.

- (c) The operation and functioning of systems installed for operational requirements relating to the ship type and additional Class notations excluding the operation and functioning of military systems.
- (d) The effectiveness of systems which have been built into the ship in order to maintain basic conditions on board whereby appropriate stores, fuels, equipment and personnel can be safely carried whilst the ship is at sea, at anchor, or moored in harbour.

## ■ Section 3 Engineering system designation

### 3.1 Categories

3.1.1 For the purpose of classification, an Engineering System is defined as any system that may be installed in a ship where such a system comprises one or more components. For the purpose of determining the appropriate assessment process for engineering systems in naval ships, there are three categories:

- (a) Mobility.
- (b) Ship Type.
- (c) Ancillary.

3.1.2 Mobility category engineering systems are those systems installed in order for the ship to proceed on operations and are necessary for:

- (a) The watertight and weathertight integrity of the hull and spaces within the hull.
- (b) The safety and reliability of propulsion, steering and other essential auxiliary engineering systems.

3.1.3 Ship Type category engineering systems are those systems installed in order for the ship to carry out its in-service purpose and are necessary for:

- (a) The operation and functioning of systems and equipment installed for purposes relating to the ship type excluding the operation and functioning of military systems.
- (b) The operation and functioning of emergency machinery and equipment.

3.1.4 Ancillary category engineering systems are all systems other than Mobility category or Ship Type category, failure of which may compromise the provisions of Classification and are necessary for:

- The provision of basic conditions on board for the carriage of stores, fuels, equipment and personnel when the ship is at sea, at anchor, or moored in harbour.

3.1.5 Essential services are those necessary for the propulsion and safety of the ship within the Mobility and Ship Type categories defined in 3.1.2 and 3.1.3.



# General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 1

Section 4

### ■ Section 4 Engineering system classification principles

#### 4.1 Classification principles

4.1.1 Engineering system classification principles apply to all systems and equipment in order to achieve the provisions of classification. There are five groups of principles:

- (a) Design principles.
- (b) Construction principles.
- (c) Installation and test principles.
- (d) Trials principles.
- (e) Through life operation principles.

#### 4.2 Design principles

4.2.1 Systems are to be designed to minimise danger to persons on board.

4.2.2 Systems and equipment are to be designed in accordance with the requirements of the relevant parts of the Rules.

4.2.3 Systems are to be designed for the defined operating conditions that are to include static and dynamic loads.

4.2.4 Mobility category and Ship Type category engineering systems are to be provided with means to monitor and identify potential failures that could lead to catastrophic, hazardous or major consequences and to notify users of degradation in systems performance that could lead to failures.

4.2.5 Mobility category and Ship Type category engineering systems are to be provided with means to detect failures that could lead to catastrophic, hazardous or major consequences and to notify users of such failures.

4.2.6 Systems are to remain in, or revert to, a safe state when failure occurs.

4.2.7 Systems and equipment are to be so designed such that they can be maintained and repaired effectively and safely.

4.2.8 Systems are to be so designed that a single failure will not result in the flooding of a watertight compartment from the sea.

4.2.9 Systems are to be arranged so that a single failure in equipment or loss of an associated sub-system will not result in failure, contamination or degradation of another system leading to a dangerous situation or loss of a Mobility or Ship Type category system.

4.2.10 Mobility and Ship Type category systems are to be such that key functions can be maintained in the event of a single failure in an operational sub-system.

4.2.11 Systems are to be provided with effective means of operation and control for all intended functions under all normal and abnormal operational modes.

4.2.12 Systems are to be designed and installed to reduce the risk of fire to a level that is as low as reasonably practicable.

4.2.13 Systems are to be designed and installed to reduce the risk of pollution to a level that is as low as reasonably practicable.

#### 4.3 Construction principles

4.3.1 The place of construction is to have suitable facilities for the construction and testing of engineering equipment and systems.

4.3.2 Construction is to be in accordance with plans approved by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') in accordance with the requirements of the relevant parts of the Rules.

4.3.3 Where required by the Rules, items are to be constructed under survey.

4.3.4 Materials are to be approved and manufactured and tested in accordance with a standard acceptable to LR.

4.3.5 Satisfactory operation and load testing is to be witnessed by LR where required by the Rules.

#### 4.4 Installation and test principles

4.4.1 Installation is to be in accordance with plans approved by LR and relevant LR requirements.

4.4.2 Installation is to be carried out under LR Survey.

4.4.3 Tests are to be conducted in accordance with LR requirements.

4.4.4 Any alterations to approved plans are to be approved by LR.

4.4.5 Surveyable items not complying with approved plans or LR requirements are to be replaced or rectified.

#### 4.5 Trials principles

4.5.1 A trials schedule is to be agreed between the Builder, Naval Authority and LR and is to address LR Rule requirements.

4.5.2 The trials are to be conducted at agreed operating conditions and are to demonstrate the functional capability of engineering systems.

4.5.3 Emergency trips and emergency operating modes are to be demonstrated.

# General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 1

Sections 4 & 5

4.5.4 Where a FMEA report has identified the need to prove the conclusions, testing and trials are to be carried out as necessary to investigate the following:

- (a) The effect of a specific component failure.
- (b) The effectiveness of automatic/manual isolation systems.
- (c) The behaviour of any interlocks that may inhibit operation of essential services.

4.5.5 The trials records are to be documented with sufficient detail to ascertain that the specified functional requirements of engineering systems have been satisfied. The records are to be available to enable any future trials to verify any significant degradation after in-service operation.

### 4.6 Through life operation principles

4.6.1 Engineering systems and equipment are to be operated and maintained such that the provisions of classification are achieved throughout the life of the vessel.

4.6.2 Modifications that may affect the provisions of classification are to be approved by LR.

4.6.3 Verification and validation activities are to be employed throughout the life of the ship to ensure compliance with the provisions of classification.

4.6.4 Suitable documentation is to be available to ensure that the provisions of classification can be performed effectively.

4.6.5 Persons with responsibilities for activities that may affect the provisions of classification are to be competent/qualified to discharge those responsibilities.

4.6.6 The configuration of the vessel shall be identified and controlled throughout its life.

4.6.7 Operating and maintenance manuals for all engineering systems are to be provided on board and submitted to LR for information where requested and are to include the following information:

- (a) Particulars of engineering systems.
- (b) Operating instructions for all engineering systems, including recommended continuous operating design limits.
- (c) Maintenance instructions for engineering systems and equipment.
- (d) Instructions for normal and reversionary modes of operation for machinery and equipment in mobility and ship type engineering systems, see Ch 2,3.3.19.

4.6.8 The operating and maintenance manuals required by 4.6.7 are to be presented in a language and format that can be understood by the Operator.

## Section 5 Acceptance criteria

### 5.1 Acceptance

5.1.1 The acceptance process ensures conformity of engineering systems to the provisions of Classification by assessing such systems against LR Rules and Regulations or their equivalent, and specified Standards or Codes.

5.1.2 The assessment process of engineering systems extends over the full lifecycle of the systems.

5.1.3 The assessment requirements applicable to engineering systems are dependent upon the system designation and are detailed in Table 1.5.1.

### 5.2 Military systems guidance

5.2.1 Where military systems are to be installed in accordance with Naval Authority requirements and guidance within these Rules, the assessment process will be in accordance with the requirements for systems within the Ancillary category in Table 1.5.1 and as detailed in 5.2.2 to 5.2.4.

5.2.2 LR design review will assess the proposed arrangements for compliance with Naval Authority requirements, the design statement, Rule guidance and any applicable Rule requirement where the system interfaces with the provisions of classification.

5.2.3 Survey during installation will validate that the system has been installed with the particulars submitted.

5.2.4 Survey during service will be subject to agreement between LR and the Owner/Operator for individual installations.

# General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 1

Sections 5 & 6

**Table 1.5.1 Assessment process for engineering systems**

| SYSTEM<br>PROCESS       | MOBILITY<br>CATEGORY                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | SHIP TYPE<br>CATEGORY                                                                                                                                                                                                       | ANCILLARY<br>CATEGORY                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>DESIGN REVIEW</b>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plans of all systems are to be appraised by LR</li> <li>Procedure for component approval is to be agreed between the producer and LR</li> <li>Procedure for component approval is to be agreed</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plans to be appraised by LR when required by the Rules and where additional optional Class notation(s) are requested by Owners</li> </ul>                                            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plans of system arrangements are to be reviewed by LR</li> <li>Design review by LR where required by the Rules</li> </ul> |
| <b>CONSTRUCTION</b>     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All major components and items of equipment are to be constructed under survey in accordance with plans approved by LR and Rule requirements</li> </ul>                                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To be constructed under survey when required by the Rules or Regulations</li> </ul>                                                                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No requirements unless required by the Rules</li> </ul>                                                                   |
| <b>INSTALLATION</b>     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To be installed under survey in accordance with plans approved by LR and Rule requirements</li> </ul>                                                                                                     | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To be installed under survey in accordance with plans approved by LR and Rule requirements</li> </ul>                                                                                | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No requirements unless required by the Rules</li> </ul>                                                                   |
| <b>TRIALS</b>           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To be tested under specified load conditions</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To be tested under normal working conditions</li> </ul>                                                                                                                              | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Running test of systems under working conditions</li> </ul>                                                               |
| <b>IN SERVICE</b>       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Subject to survey by the Rules or Regulations</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Subject to survey where required by the Rules or Regulations or requested by Owners or Naval Authority</li> </ul>                                                                    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No requirements unless required</li> </ul>                                                                                |
| <b>MODIFICATIONS</b>    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Details of any modifications are to be approved by LR</li> <li>Construction, installation and trials are to be carried out under survey</li> </ul>                                                        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Details of any modifications are to be approved and construction, installation and trials are to be carried out under survey when required by the Rules or Class notation</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Details of any modifications are to be recorded to enable review by LR Surveyors</li> </ul>                               |
| <b>DE-COMMISSIONING</b> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Details are to be submitted for consideration</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Details are to be submitted for information</li> </ul>                                                                                                                               | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Details are to be recorded</li> </ul>                                                                                     |

## Section 6

### Routes to conformance

#### 6.1 Design and construction

6.1.1 Plans/procedures as required by the Rules are to be approved by LR.

6.1.2 In general, LR acceptance of engineering systems or equipment is by the producer demonstrating compliance with the LR Type Approval system (see Section 9). Alternatively, approval of individual systems or equipment may be carried out on the basis of Design Appraisal combined with testing or acceptable service experience.

6.1.3 Conformance with the Construction Requirements of systems or equipment is to be demonstrated through compliance with Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery or survey of individual items at the manufacturer's works.

6.1.4 Materials are to have certificates acceptable to LR, see Section 7.

6.1.5 Testing of components, equipment and systems after manufacture is to comply with the Rules and any applicable standards and codes.

#### 6.2 Machinery to be constructed under survey

6.2.1 All major units of equipment within the Mobility category, and where specifically required within the Ship Type category and Ancillary category, are to be individually surveyed at the manufacturer's works or meet the requirements of the Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery. The workmanship is to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction and the Surveyor is to be satisfied that the components are suitable for the intended purpose and duty. Examples of such units are:

- Main propulsion prime movers (oil engines, gas turbines and steam turbines) including their associated gearing, flexible couplings and turbochargers as applicable.
- Boilers supplying steam for propulsion or for services essential for the safety or the operation of the ship at sea, including superheaters, economisers, desuperheaters, steam heated steam generators and steam receivers. All other boilers having working pressures exceeding 3,4 bar and having heating surfaces greater than 4,65 m<sup>2</sup>.
- Auxiliary engines which are the source of power for services essential for safety or for the operation of the ship at sea.

# General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 1

Section 6

- Steering machinery.
- Athwartship thrust units, their prime movers and control mechanisms.
- All pumps necessary for the operation of main propulsion and essential machinery, e.g., boiler feed, cooling water circulating, condensate extraction, oil fuel and lubricating oil pumps.
- All heat exchangers necessary for the operation of main propulsion and essential machinery, e.g., air, water and lubricating oil coolers, oil fuel and feed water heaters, de-aerators and condensers, evaporators and distiller units.
- Air compressors, air receivers and other pressure vessels necessary for the operation of main propulsion and essential machinery. Any other unfired pressure vessels for which plans are required to be submitted as detailed in Pt 8, Ch 2.
- All pumps essential for safety of the ship, e.g., fire, bilge and ballast pumps.
- Valves and other components intended for installation in essential piping systems, see Pt 7, Ch 1,2.2.1 having working pressures exceeding 7 bar.
- Alarm and control equipment as detailed in Pt 9, Ch 1.
- Electrical equipment and electrical propelling machinery as detailed in Pt 10, Ch 1.

### 6.3 Survey for classification

6.3.1 The Surveyors are to examine and test the materials and workmanship from the commencement of work until the final test of the machinery under full power and any other specified working conditions. Any defects, etc., are to be indicated as early as possible. On completion, a certificate will be issued and an appropriate notation will be assigned in accordance with the Regulations.

### 6.4 Alternative system of inspection

6.4.1 Where items of machinery are manufactured as individual or series produced units, consideration will be given to the adoption of a survey procedure based on quality assurance concepts utilising regular and systematic audits of the approved manufacturing and quality control processes and procedures as an alternative to the direct survey of individual items.

6.4.2 In order to obtain approval, the requirements of Section 8 are to be complied with.

### 6.5 Installation

6.5.1 Where required by the assessment process in Table 1.5.1, engineering systems are to be installed under survey in accordance with approved plans and relevant LR Design Appraisal documentation and LR Rules.

6.5.2 Documentation required during installation is to be available for inspection by the Owners and LR Surveyors. Such documentation may include:

- Design Appraisal Documents.
- Type Test Certificates.
- Materials Certificates.
- Type Approval Certificates.
- Quality Assurance Certificates.
- Certificates of Construction.

### 6.6 Trials

6.6.1 Engineering systems are to be tested on completion of installation to demonstrate functionality and suitability for purpose in accordance with LR Rules.

6.6.2 Records of trials and testing required by the assessment process in Table 1.5.1 are to be maintained on board the ship.

### 6.7 In-service survey

6.7.1 Where required by the assessment process in Table 1.5.1 and in the Regulations, engineering systems are to be surveyed at intervals defined in the Regulations.

6.7.2 Records of in-service survey where carried out by the Marine Engineering Officer are to be maintained on board the ship, as defined in the Regulations.

### 6.8 Modifications

6.8.1 Details of modifications to engineering systems or equipment are, as required by Table 1.5.1 to be submitted to LR for consideration.

6.8.2 Records of all modifications to in-service engineering systems that may alter the provisions of classification, are to be maintained on board the ship.

### 6.9 De-commissioning

6.9.1 Details of de-commissioning of engineering systems, as required by Table 1.5.1, are to be submitted to LR for consideration.

6.9.2 Records of de-commissioning of all equipment and systems that may alter the provisions of classification are to be maintained on board the ship.

### 6.10 Upkeep by exchange

6.10.1 Where propulsion and auxiliary machinery is maintained using an 'upkeep by exchange' policy, details of the system are to be submitted to LR for approval.

# General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 1

Sections 6, 7 & 8

6.10.2 Where an 'upkeep by exchange' system has been approved, plans of individual replacement units are not required to be submitted provided there have been no changes since the original approval. The manufacture and testing of the replacement units is to be in accordance with the relevant Rule requirements.

6.10.3 Records of each 'upkeep by exchange' are to be maintained on board the ship and LR is to witness running tests on load after each exchange. A record history is to be maintained for each exchange unit in the form of a log book.

### 6.11 Alternative arrangements and calculation methods

6.11.1 In addition to cases where direct calculations are specifically required by the Rules, LR will consider alternative arrangements that have been derived by direct calculations in lieu of specific Rule requirements. All direct calculations are to be submitted for examination.

6.11.2 Where items are of a novel or unconventional design or manufacture, it is the responsibility of the designer to demonstrate their suitability and equivalence to the Rule requirements. See *Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design*, Chapter 5.

6.11.3 Alternative arrangements or fittings that are considered to be equivalent to the Rule requirements will be accepted in accordance with Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.11.

## Section 7 Certification of materials

### 7.1 Materials of construction

7.1.1 Materials used in the construction are to be in accordance with, or shown to be equivalent to the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials). Details of all materials included and not included in the Rules for Materials are to be forwarded as soon as possible (preferably at the design concept stage) and before commencement of manufacture.

### 7.2 Welding

7.2.1 Welding consumables, plant and equipment are to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13,1.8 of the Rules for Materials.

7.2.2 Welding procedures and welder qualifications are to be tested and qualified in accordance with the requirements specified in Chapter 12 of the Rules for Materials.

7.2.3 Production weld tests are to be carried out where specified in the subsequent Chapters of these Rules.

7.2.4 All finished welds are to be subjected to non-destructive examination in accordance with the requirements specified in Ch 13,2.12 of the Rules for Materials and or the requirements specified in the subsequent Chapters of these Rules.

## Section 8 Quality assurance scheme for machinery

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 This certification scheme is applicable to both individual and series produced items manufactured under closely controlled conditions and will be restricted to works where the employment of quality control procedures is well established. LR will have to be satisfied that the practices employed will ensure that the quality of finished products is to standards which would be demanded when using traditional survey techniques.

8.1.2 The Committee will consider proposed designs for compliance with LR's Rules or other appropriate requirements and the extent to which the manufacturing processes and control procedure ensure conformity of the product to the design. A comprehensive survey will be made by the Surveyors of the actual operation of the quality control programme and of the adequacy and competence of the staff to implement it.

8.1.3 The procedures and practices of manufacturers which have been granted approval will be kept under review.

8.1.4 Approval by another organisation will not be accepted as sufficient evidence that a manufacturer's arrangements comply with LR's requirements.

### 8.2 Requirements for approval

8.2.1 **Facilities.** The manufacturer is required to have adequate equipment and facilities for those operations appropriate to the level of design, development and manufacture being undertaken.

8.2.2 **Experience.** The manufacturer shall demonstrate that the firm has experience consistent with the technology and complexity of the product type for which approval is sought and that the firm's products have been of a consistently high standard.

8.2.3 **Quality policy.** The manufacturer shall define management policies and objectives for quality and ensure that these policies and objectives are implemented and maintained throughout all phases of the work.

8.2.4 **Quality system documentation.** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain a documented quality system capable of ensuring that material or services conform to the specified requirements, including the requirements of this Section.

# General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 1

Section 8

**8.2.5 Management representative.** The manufacturer shall appoint a management representative preferably independent of other functions, who shall have defined authority and responsibilities for the implementation and maintenance of the quality system.

**8.2.6 Responsibility and authority.** The responsibilities and authorities of senior personnel within the quality system shall be clearly documented.

**8.2.7 Internal audit.** The manufacturer shall conduct internal audits to ensure continued adherence to the system. An audit programme shall be established with audit frequencies scheduled on the basis of the status and importance of the activity and adjusted on the basis of previous results.

**8.2.8 Management review.** The quality system established in accordance with the requirements of this Section shall be systematically reviewed at appropriate intervals by the manufacturer to ensure its continued effectiveness. Records of such management reviews shall be maintained and be made available to the Surveyors.

**8.2.9 Contract review.** The manufacturer shall establish and implement procedures for conducting a contract review prior to and after acceptance to ensure that:

- (a) The requirements of the contract are adequately defined and documented.
- (b) Any requirements differing from those specified in the original enquiry/tender are resolved.
- (c) The manufacturer has the capability to meet and verify compliance to the specified requirements.

**8.2.10 Work instruction.** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain clear and complete written work instructions that prescribe the communication of specified requirements and the performance of work in design, development and manufacture which would be adversely affected by lack of such instructions.

**8.2.11 Documentation and change control.** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain control of all documentation that relates to the requirements of this scheme. This control shall ensure that:

- (a) Documents are reviewed and approved for adequacy by authorised personnel prior to use, are uniquely identified and include indication of approval and revision status.
- (b) All changes to documentation are in writing and are processed in a manner that will ensure their availability at the appropriate location and preclude the use of non-applicable documents.
- (c) Provision is made for the prompt removal of obsolete documentation from all points of issue or use.
- (d) Documents shall be re-issued after a practical number of changes have been issued.

**8.2.12 Records.** The manufacturer shall develop and maintain a system for collection, use and storage of quality records. The period of retention of such records shall be established in writing and shall be subject to agreement by LR.

**8.2.13 Design.** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain a design control system appropriate to the level of design being undertaken. Documented design procedures shall be established which:

- (a) Identify the design practices of the manufacturer's organisation including departmental instructions to ensure the orderly and controlled preparation of design and subsequent verification.
- (b) Make provision for the identification, documentation and appropriate approval of all design change and modifications.
- (c) Prescribe methods for resolving incomplete, ambiguous or conflicting requirements.
- (d) Identify design inputs such as sources of data, preferred standard parts or materials and design information and provide procedures for their selection and review by the manufacturer for adequacy.

**8.2.14 Purchasing.** The manufacturer shall ensure that purchased material and services conform to specified requirements.

**8.2.15 Selection and approval of sub-contractors and suppliers.** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain records of acceptable suppliers and sub-contractors. The selection of such sources and the type and extent of control exercised shall be appropriate to the type of product or service and the suppliers' or sub-contractors' previously demonstrated capability and performance. Documented procedures for approval of new suppliers shall be established and records of vendor assessments (where carried out) shall be maintained and made available to the Surveyors upon request.

**8.2.16 Purchasing data.** Each purchasing document should contain a clear description of the material or service ordered including as applicable, the following:

- (a) The type, class, grade, or other precise identification.
- (b) The title or other positive identification and applicable issue of specifications, drawings, process requirements, inspection instructions and other relevant data.

**8.2.17 Verification of purchased material and services.** The manufacturer shall ensure that the Surveyors are afforded the right to verify at source or upon receipt that purchased material and services conform to specified requirements. Verification by the Surveyors shall not relieve the manufacturer of his responsibility to provide acceptable material nor shall it preclude subsequent rejection.

**8.2.18 Product identification.** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain a system for identification of the product to relevant drawings, specifications or other documents during all stages of production, delivery and installation.

# General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 1

Section 8

**8.2.19 Manufacturing control.** The manufacturer shall ensure that those operations which directly affect quality are carried out under controlled conditions. These shall include the following:

- (a) Written work instructions wherever the absence of such instructions could adversely affect compliance with specified requirements. These should define the method of monitoring and control of product characteristics.
- (b) Established criteria for workmanship through written standards or representative samples.

**8.2.20 Special processes.** Those processes where effectiveness cannot be verified by subsequent inspection and test of the product shall be subjected to continuous monitoring in accordance with documented procedures in addition to the requirements specified in 8.2.19.

**8.2.21 Receiving inspection.** The manufacturer shall ensure that all incoming material shall not be used or processed until it has been inspected or otherwise verified as conforming to specified requirements. In establishing the amount and nature of receiving inspection, consideration shall be given to the control exercised by the supplier and documented evidence of quality conformance supplied.

**8.2.22 In-process inspection.** The manufacturer shall:

- (a) perform inspection during manufacture on all characteristics that cannot be inspected at a later stage;
- (b) inspect test and identify products in accordance with specified requirements;
- (c) establish product conformance to specified requirements by use of process monitoring and control methods where appropriate;
- (d) hold products until the required inspections and tests are completed and verified; and
- (e) clearly identify non-conforming products to prevent unauthorised use, shipment, or mixing with conforming material.

**8.2.23 Final inspection.** The manufacturer shall perform all inspections and tests on the finished product necessary to complete the evidence of conformance to the specified requirements. The procedures for final inspection and test shall ensure that:

- (a) all activities defined in the specification, quality plan or other documented procedure have been completed;
- (b) all inspections and tests that should have been conducted at earlier stages have been completed and that the data is acceptable; and
- (c) no product shall be dispatched until all the activities defined in the specifications, quality plan or other documented procedure have been completed, unless products have been released with the permission of the Surveyors.

**8.2.24 Inspection equipment.** The manufacturer shall be responsible for providing, controlling, calibrating and maintaining the inspection, measuring and test equipment necessary to demonstrate the conformance of material and services to the specified requirements or used as part of the manufacturing control system required by 8.2.19 and 8.2.20.

**8.2.25 Inspection and test status.** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain a system for the identification of inspection status of all material, components and assemblies by suitable means which distinguish between conforming, non-conforming and uninspected items. The relevant inspection and test procedures and records shall identify the authority responsible for the release of conforming products.

**8.2.26 Control of non-conforming material.** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain procedures to ensure that material that does not conform to the specified requirements is controlled to prevent inadvertent use, mixing or shipment. Repair, rework or concessions on non-conforming material and reinspection shall be in accordance with documented procedures. Records clearly identifying the material, the nature and extent of non-conformance and the disposition shall be maintained.

**8.2.27 Sampling procedures.** Where sampling techniques are used by the manufacturer to verify the acceptability of groups of products, the procedures adopted shall be in accordance with the specified requirements or shall be subject to agreement by the Surveyors.

**8.2.28 Corrective action.** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain documented procedures for the review of non-conformances and their disposition. These should provide for:

- (a) monitoring of process and work operations and analysis of records to detect and eliminate potential causes of non-conforming material;
- (b) continuing analysis of concessions granted and material scrapped or reworked to determine causes and the corrective action required;
- (c) an analysis of customer complaints;
- (d) the initiation of appropriate action with suppliers or sub-contractors with regard to receipt of non-conforming material; and
- (e) an assurance that corrective actions are effective.

**8.2.29 Purchaser supplied material.** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain documented procedures for the control of purchaser supplied material.

**8.2.30 Handling, storage, and delivery.** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain a system for the identification preservation, segregation and handling of all material from the time of receipt through the entire production process. The system shall include methods of handling that prevent abuse, misuse, damage or deterioration. Secure storage areas or rooms shall be provided to isolate and protect material pending use. To detect deterioration, at an early stage, the condition of material shall be periodically assessed. The manufacturer shall arrange for the protection of the quality of his product during transit. The manufacturer shall ensure, in so far as it is practicable, the safe arrival and ready identification of the product at destination.

# General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 1

### Section 8

**8.2.31 Training.** The manufacturer is to follow a policy for recruitment and training which provides an adequate labour force with such skills as are required for each type of work operation. Appropriate records shall be maintained to demonstrate that all personnel performing process control, special processes inspection and test or quality system maintenance activities have appropriate experience or training.

### 8.3 Arrangements for acceptance and certification of purchased material

**8.3.1** The manufacturer shall establish and maintain procedures and controls to ensure compliance with LR's requirements for certification of materials and components at the supplier's plant. The manufacturer's system for control of such purchased material may be based on one of the following alternatives subject to the approval of the Committee:

- (a) Product certification by LR's Surveyors at the supplier's works in accordance with the requirements of the Rules for Materials.
- (b) Agreed Inspection Procedures at the manufacturer's plant combined with documentary evidence of vendor assessments, vendor rating records and annual surveillance visits to the suppliers.
- (c) Recognition of quality Agreements between the manufacturer and his suppliers which shall provide for initial vendor assessments and regular surveillance visits (a minimum of four per year). The quality agreement must identify the individual in the supplier's plant who is charged with the responsibility for release of materials or components and the procedures to be adopted.

**8.3.2** The alternatives proposed in 8.3.1(b) and (c) are not acceptable to LR for the following items:

- (a) Engine components for which testing is a Rule requirement, and
  - (i) the cylinder bore is equal to or exceeds 300 mm, or
  - (ii) which are made by open forging techniques.
- (b) Cast crankshafts where the journal diameter exceeds 85 mm.

Where the manufacturer's system for control of purchased material is based upon 8.3.1(b) or (c) the Surveyors shall also make surveillance visits to the supplier's works at the minimum specified intervals. The manufacturer shall also make available to the Surveyors documentary evidence of the operation of Quality Agreements or Agreed Inspection Procedures where applicable.

### 8.4 Information required for approval

**8.4.1** Manufacturers applying for approval under this scheme are to submit the following information:

- (a) A description of the products for which certification is required including, where applicable, model or type number.
- (b) Applicable plans and details of material used.
- (c) An outline description of all important manufacturing plant and equipment.
- (d) A summary of equipment used for measuring and testing during manufacture and completion.
- (e) The Quality Manual.

- (f) A typical production flow chart and quality plan covering all stages from ordering of materials to delivery of the finished product.
- (g) The system used for the identification of raw materials, semi-finished and finished products.
- (h) The number and qualifications of all staff engaged in testing, inspection and quality control duties.
- (j) A list of suppliers of components and manufacturers, proposed procedures to ensure compliance with LR's requirements for certification, of materials and components at the supplier's plant.

### 8.5 Assessment of works

**8.5.1** After receipt and appraisal of the information requested in 8.4 an inspection of the works is to be carried out by the Surveyors to examine in detail all aspects of production, and in particular the arrangements for quality control.

**8.5.2** The Surveyors will not specify in detail acceptable quality control procedures, but will consider the arrangements proposed by the works in relation to the manufacturing processes and products.

**8.5.3** In the event of procedures being considered inadequate, the Surveyors will advise the manufacturer how such procedures are to be revised in order to be acceptable to LR.

**8.5.4** Gauging, measuring and testing devices are to be made available to the Surveyors, and where appropriate, personnel for the operation of such devices.

### 8.6 Approval of works

**8.6.1** If the initial assessment of the works confirms that the manufacturing and quality control procedures are satisfactory, the committee will issue to the manufacturer a Quality Assurance Approval Certificate which will include details of the products for which approval has been given. This Certificate will be valid for three years with renewal subject to satisfactory performance and to a satisfactory triennial re-assessment.

**8.6.2** An extension of approval in respect of product type may be given at the discretion of the Committee without any additional survey of the works.

**8.6.3** LR will publish a list of manufacturers whose works have been approved.



# General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 1

Sections 8 & 9

### 8.7 Maintenance of approval

8.7.1 The arrangements authorised at each works are to be kept under review by the Surveyors in order to ensure that the approved procedures for manufacture and quality control are being maintained in a satisfactory manner. This is to be carried out by:

- (a) regular and systematic surveillance;
- (b) intermediate audits at intervals of six months;
- (c) triennial re-assessment of the entire quality system.

8.7.2 For the purpose of regular and systematic surveillance the Surveyors are to visit the works at intervals determined by the type of product and the rate of production. The Surveyors are to advise a senior member of the quality control department in regard to any matter with which they are not satisfied.

8.7.3 When minor deficiencies in the approved procedures are disclosed during the systematic surveillance the Surveyors may, at their discretion, apply more intensive supervision, including the direct inspection of products.

8.7.4 Any noteworthy departures from the approved plans of specifications are to be reported to the Surveyors and their written approval obtained prior to dispatch of the item.

8.7.5 Minor alterations in the approved procedures may be permitted provided that the Surveyors are advised and that their prior concurrence obtained.

8.7.6 In addition to the regular visits by the Surveyors, an intermediate audit is to be carried out every six months. This will normally be carried out by Surveyors other than those regularly in attendance at the works. This audit is to consist of an examination of part of the manufacturer's quality system. An audit plan will be established indicating those areas of the quality system which will be examined during every intermediate audit and the frequency of examination of other areas such that all areas are subject to audit before re-assessment is due.

8.7.7 The manufacturer's entire quality system shall be subject to re-assessment at three-yearly intervals. This shall be conducted by Surveyors nominated by Headquarters.

### 8.8 Suspension or withdrawal of approval

8.8.1 When the Surveyors have drawn attention to significant faults or deficiencies in the manufacturing or quality control procedures and these have not been rectified, approval of the works will be suspended. In these circumstances the manufacturer will be notified in writing of the Committee's reasons for the suspension of approval.

8.8.2 When approval has been suspended and the manufacturer does not effect corrective measures within a reasonable time, the Committee will withdraw the Quality Assurance Approval Certificate.

### 8.9 Identification of products

8.9.1 In addition to the normal marking by the manufacturer, all certified products are to be hard stamped on a principal component with a suitable identification, LR's brand and the number of the approved works.

8.9.2 After issue of the Quality Assurance Approval Certificate, products may be dispatched with certificates signed on behalf of the manufacturer by an authorised senior member of the quality control department or by an authorised deputy. These certificates are to be countersigned by the Surveyor to certify that the approved arrangements are being kept under review by regular and systematic auditing of the manufacturer's quality system.

8.9.3 The following declarations are to be included on each certificate:

- (a) 'This is to certify that the items described above have been constructed and tested with satisfactory results in accordance with the Rules of Lloyd's Register of Shipping.  
Signed.....  
Manager of QC Department.'
- (b) 'This certificate is issued by the manufacturer in accordance with the arrangements authorised by Lloyd's Register in Quality Assurance Approval Certificate No. QA.M..... I certify that these arrangements are being kept under review by regular and systematic auditing of the approved manufacturing and quality control procedures.  
Signed.....  
Surveyor to Lloyd's Register'.

8.9.4 In the event of noteworthy departures from the approved plan or specification being accepted, a standard 'Concession' form is to be completed and signed by the following authorised persons: the Design Manager, the Quality Control Manager or their deputies. In all cases, where strength or functioning may be affected, the form is to be submitted to the Surveyors for approval and endorsement.

## Section 9 Type approval system (for information)

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 LR Type Approval is an impartial certification system that provides independent third-party Type Approval Certificates attesting to a product's conformity with specific standards or specifications. It is based on design review and type testing or where testing is not appropriate, a design analysis.

# General Requirements for Classification of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 1

### Section 9

---

9.1.2 The LR Type Approval System is a process whereby a product is assessed in accordance with a specification, standard or code to check that it meets the stated requirements and through selective testing prove its suitability for its intended operation. The testing is carried out on a prototype or randomly selected product(s) which are representative of the manufactured product under approval. Thereafter, the manufacturer testifies that each item delivered is in conformity with that which has been type tested.

9.1.3 Details of LR's Type Approval System are contained in the following LR publications:

- (a) Procedure TA02.
- (b) Test Specification 1: Electrical and Control Engineering Products which are Environmentally Tested.
- (c) Test Specification 2: Piping System Components.
- (d) Test Specification 3: Electrical products that do not require Environmental Testing.
- (e) Test Specification 4: Internal Combustion Engines.
- (f) Test Specification GT04: Gas Turbines.

## 9.2 Approval criteria

9.2.1 LR Type Approval does not preclude inspection and survey procedures required by these Rules for equipment to be installed in naval ships classed or intended to be classed with LR.

9.2.2 LR Type Approval is subject to the understanding that the producer's recommendations and instructions for the product and any relevant requirements of these Rules are fulfilled.

9.2.3 Where equipment or components have been type approved in accordance with procedures other than LR's, details of the product, certification and testing are to be submitted for consideration.

---



# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 1, 2 & 3

### Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **General provisions**
- 3 **Particulars to be submitted**
- 4 **Operating conditions**
- 5 **Machinery space arrangements**
- 6 **Diesel engines**
- 7 **Turbo-chargers**
- 8 **Gas turbines**
- 9 **Steam turbines**
- 10 **Gearing**
- 11 **Shafting systems**
- 12 **Propellers**
- 13 **Water jet units**
- 14 **Thrusters**
- 15 **Steering systems**
- 16 **Sea trials**
- 17 **Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)**
- 18 **Fin stabilisers**
- 19 **Fired galley arrangements**

1.1.2 Detailed and additional requirements for control engineering and electrical engineering systems are contained in Part 9 and Part 10 respectively.

## Section 2 General provisions

### 2.1 Provisions

2.1.1 The units and formulae used in the Rules are in SI Units.

2.1.2 It is the responsibility of the Shipbuilder as main contractor to ensure that the information required is prepared and submitted.

2.1.3 The main propulsion machinery will be approved for the maximum continuous power, and associated shaft speed or equivalent design and performance criteria.

2.1.4 Main propulsion machinery will be considered for operation at a higher power rating than the classification rating for short time intervals (referred to as short-term high power operation) in conjunction with the intended operation service profile.

2.1.5 Provision shall be made to facilitate cleaning, inspection and maintenance of main propulsion and auxiliary machinery including boilers and pressure vessels.

2.1.6 Where it is proposed to depart from the requirements of the Rules, full details are to be submitted to Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') to enable consideration to be given to the circumstances of any special case.

2.1.7 Any novelty in the design and/or construction of machinery, boilers, pressure vessels or engineering equipment is to be advised to LR (see *also* Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 5).

## Section 1 Scope

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter applies to the design, construction, installation and testing of Mobility, Ship Type, and Ancillary category engineering systems for classed naval ships and covers:

- Main propulsion systems.
- Steering and manoeuvring systems.
- Electrical power systems.
- Essential auxiliary machinery systems.
- Other engineering systems necessary for the watertight and weathertight integrity and functioning of ship type features.
- Together with their equipment, pressure plant, piping systems, control engineering and electrical engineering systems.

## Section 3 Particulars to be submitted

### 3.1 Submission of information

3.1.1 At least three copies of plans, information, and specifications as listed are to be submitted before commencement of manufacture.

### 3.2 Plans

3.2.1 Plans are to indicate clearly the scantlings and materials of construction. Any design alteration to the plan is to be resubmitted for approval, indicating clearly the alteration.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

### Section 3

3.2.2 Individual Chapters list plans to be submitted for specific machinery and electrical systems or components. Also required are the following arrangement plans and information, where applicable:

- (a) Plans showing the arrangement of machinery spaces indicating the location of machinery and equipment together with means of access and ventilation.
- (b) Plans showing the maintenance envelope and removal routes of machinery and equipment where routine removal for maintenance is proposed.
- (c) Where requested in individual Chapters, design statements which detail the system's capability and functionality under defined operating and emergency conditions. These design statements are to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator.

3.2.3 Where machinery system components have been approved under LR's Type Approval System or Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery for the proposed design conditions or service, plans of the component are not required to be submitted. Full details of the components and the existing LR approval are to be submitted.

3.2.4 Where operating requirements relating to the design, construction, testing and installation of machinery and engineering systems have been defined within the scope of Section 4, evidence of capability and details of previous or proposed testing to demonstrate capability are to be submitted.

3.2.5 Where an oil or liquefied petroleum gas fired galley is proposed, details of the oil and gas storage and distribution arrangements together with ventilation arrangements and safety shut-down and alarms are to be submitted.

### 3.3 Calculations and specifications

3.3.1 Relevant data covering paragraphs 3.3.2 to 3.3.9 as applicable is to be submitted.

3.3.2 **Service Profile.** The machinery power/speed operational envelope, grade(s) of fuel and any short-term high power operation.

3.3.3 **Classification rating.** The following operational parameters, using the design conditions for the intended Class Notation(s):

- Total barometric pressure, bar.
- Temperature of engine room, or suction air, °C.
- Relative humidity, per cent.
- Maximum/minimum temperatures of sea-water, or charge air coolant inlet, °C.

See 4.4.1 for ambient reference conditions.

3.3.4 **Short-term high power operation.** Where the propulsion machinery is being considered for short-term high power operation, full details of the power, speed and time intervals together with fatigue endurance calculations, and documentary evidence indicating the suitability of the component design under these conditions and for the intended class notation are required. The following are to be considered; prime mover, gearbox, flexible coupling, vibration dampers, shafting and propeller:

- (a) The accrued number of load cycles and the percentage component overload are to be those recommended by the designers.
- (b) Excessive overload may require the interval between surveys to be reduced.
- (c) Plans showing the arrangement of resiliently mounted machinery which are to indicate the number, position, type and design of the mounts.
- (d) Machinery is to be maintained in accordance with manufacturer's requirements.

3.3.5 **Damper and Flexible Coupling characteristics.** Documentary evidence that the characteristics have been verified.

#### 3.3.6 Machinery Fastening.

- (a) For NS3 type ships or where specified by the Naval Authority, documentary evidence and calculations indicating that machinery is securely mounted for the ship motions and accelerations to be expected during service.
- (b) For NS3 type ships or where specified by the Naval Authority, calculations to demonstrate that mountings of large masses such as main engines, auxiliary engines and electrical equipment can withstand the design collision acceleration according to 5.4.1 without fracturing.
- (c) Plans showing the arrangement of resiliently mounted machinery which are to indicate the number, position, type and design of mounts.
- (d) Natural frequency calculation of resilient mounted machinery.
- (e) Plans showing the arrangement of resin chocks for machinery requiring accurate alignment with the following information:
  - (i) Resin type.
  - (ii) The effective area and minimum thickness of the chocks.
  - (iii) The total deadweight loading of machinery.
  - (iv) The thrust load, where applicable, that will be applied to the chocked item.
  - (v) The loading to be applied to the holding-down bolts.
  - (vi) The material of the holding-down bolts.
  - (vii) The number, thread size, and waisted shank diameter (where applicable) of the holding-down bolts.

See 5.3 to 5.6 for requirements.

3.3.7 **Manuals.** The operation and maintenance manuals. For class notations covering propulsion and steering machinery redundancy and dynamic positioning, see Volume 3.

3.3.8 **Failure Mode and Effect Analysis.** An FMEA is to be carried out covering the following systems:

- (a) Main and auxiliary machinery systems supporting propulsion, steering or other essential services.
- (b) Steering systems.
- (c) Electrical generation and distribution systems supporting (a) and (b), see Pt 10, Ch 1.5.2.4.

This requirement is in addition to the requirements for class notations covering propulsion and steering machinery redundancy and dynamic positioning (see Volume 3), and Ship Type piping systems (see Pt 7, Ch 5). See Section 17 for FMEA format requirements.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

### Section 3

**3.3.9 Fatigue Strength Analysis.** Where undertaken as an alternative to the requirements of the individual Chapters, fatigue strength analysis of components indicating a factor of safety of 1,5 at the design loads based on a suitable fatigue failure criteria. The effects of stress concentrations, material properties and operating environment are to be taken into account.

**3.3.10 CBRN Protection arrangements.** Where the Naval Authority has defined CBRN Protection requirements, a design statement together with plans and particulars are to be submitted for information. See 4.12 for CBRN Protection guidance.

**3.3.11 Machinery shock resistance arrangements.** Where the Naval Authority has defined shock capability requirements for machinery, engineering systems and equipment, the requirements of 4.11 apply and the following details are to be submitted:

- (a) The shock policy for the ship. This shall include the shock environment to be used for shock calculations; this will remain confidential to LR.
- (b) A design statement that details the shock capability levels for installed machinery, engineering systems and equipment. This statement is to detail how the shock policy has been applied and is to include how the specified shock levels have been accommodated within the design.
- (c) List of shock captive equipment identifying name, system/function, location, intended shock qualification and mounting arrangements.
- (d) List of shock capable equipment identifying name, system/function, location, intended shock qualification and mounting arrangements.
- (e) System plans required by other Sections of the Rules are to identify the location of equipment.
- (f) Evidence of shock testing.
- (g) Shock mount approval documentation.
- (h) In cases where numerical modelling and analysis have been carried out, the following supporting information should be submitted as applicable:
  - (i) Reference to a recognised and validated calculation procedure and software used.
  - (ii) Evidence of software verification and validation.
  - (iii) A description of the modelling.
  - (iv) A summary of analysis parameters including properties and boundary conditions.
  - (v) Details of the loading conditions and the means of applying loads.
  - (vi) Details of acceptance criteria and their derivation.
  - (vii) A comprehensive summary of calculation results. Sample calculations should be submitted where appropriate.

In general, submission of large volumes of input and output data associated with such programs as finite element analysis will not be necessary unless requested by LR. The responsibility for error-free specification and input of program data and the subsequent correct transposition of output rests with the designer.

**3.3.12 Underwater signature arrangements.** Where the Naval Authority has defined underwater signature requirements for the ship and propulsion system, a design statement together with plans and particulars are to be submitted for information. See 4.10 for underwater signature guidance.

**3.3.13 Electromagnetic compatibility.** A test plan in accordance with Clause 5 of IEC 60533 for electromagnetic compatibility is to be submitted for information. See 4.13 for EMC requirements.

**3.3.14 Fin stabilisers.** Where fin stabiliser systems are fitted to a naval ship, the following details are to be submitted:

- (a) A design statement that details the stabiliser performance in terms of a specified roll angle that is not to be exceeded by more than a stated percentage of rolls in a specified wave environment (see Vol 1, Pt 5, Ch 2,2.3) at a specified ship speed and heading. This statement is to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator and recognise the requirements for ship-based operations, such as flight operations and replenishment at sea (RAS) systems, in terms of sea-keeping and platform heel/trim conditions, and the requirements of Section 4 regarding operating conditions as applicable. Details of any secondary function of the fin stabiliser to induce ship roll, for example routinely to test the fin stabiliser system (against its own induced roll), to facilitate weapon systems testing and to support CBRN Protection pre-wetting systems, are also to be included in the design statement.
- (b) Plans of all load bearing, torque transmitting components and hydraulic pressure retaining parts of the fin stabiliser system together with proposed rated torque, all relief valve settings and scantlings.
- (c) Schematic plans of the hydraulic system(s), together with pipe material, relief valves and working pressures.
- (d) Details of safety and control and electrical engineering arrangements.
- (e) Material specifications for components identified in (b).
- (f) Details of proposed testing and sea trials.
- (g) Details of any limits of operation for stabilisation and induced forced roll, e.g., sea states, ship speed, roll amplitude and periodicity limitations.

**3.3.15 Machinery spaces and enclosures.** Evidence is to be submitted demonstrating the suitability of the fire extinguishing arrangements for a machinery space or enclosure as required by 5.13.2. The submission is to identify all standards applied in support of the proposed arrangements. The location of equipment, the degree of protection provided by the equipment itself, and the damage control and fire-fighting policy of the Navy or Naval Authority are to be taken into account in determination of the suitability of the fire-extinguishing arrangements.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 3 & 4

**3.3.16 Schedule of testing and trials.** Schedules of testing machinery at the manufacturers, pre-sea trial commissioning and sea trials are to be submitted to LR and agreed before commencement of testing and trials. The testing and trials schedules are to identify all modes of ship and machinery operation and the sea trials are to include typical port manoeuvres under all intended operating modes. Reference is also made to the following Rules:

- Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 5, Section 8 – Windlass and capstan trials
- Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2, Section 15 – Steering systems
- Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2, Section 16 – Sea trials
- Vol 2, Pt 10, Ch 1, Section 21 – Testing and trials
- Vol 2, Pt 9, Ch 1, Section 6 – Control engineering trials

Testing and trials are to be witnessed by an LR Surveyor unless an alternative arrangement is agreed in writing prior to the trials by the Surveyor. Reports of testing and trials are to be submitted to an LR Surveyor after completion.

**3.3.17 Machinery operation.** For mobility and ship type category engineering systems, the equipment/machinery manufacturer's instructions for installation and operation of lubricating and hydraulic oil systems are to be made available to the LR Surveyors attending trials/testing/commissioning. The instructions should include information that may affect the safety and reliability of the equipment covering requirements for operating environment, monitoring arrangements, cleanliness, filter arrangements, oil change intervals and precautions to be taken at start-up, in operation and during prolonged periods of shut-down.

**3.3.18 Operation of machinery outside its recommended continuous operating design envelope.** Where equipment and machinery installed in mobility and ship type engineering systems may be required to operate for continuous periods outside its recommended continuous operating design envelope, details of the intended operating conditions, time intervals and frequency of use together with documentary evidence indicating the suitability of the design and any limitations under these conditions are required to be submitted. Arrangements may include time alongside, manoeuvring, close-down and other military operations or trials. The following items of machinery and equipment are to be considered:

- (a) Prime mover(s);
- (b) Gearbox(s);
- (c) Steering systems;
- (d) Bearings;
- (e) Couplings;
- (f) Vibration dampers;
- (g) Shafting and related power and propulsion transmission items;
- (h) Other items of machinery and equipment in mobility and ship type engineering systems as identified and agreed between the Owner/Operator and Builder;

The manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for operation and maintenance are to be addressed with provision as necessary of documentation such as manuals and warnings with particular reference to lubrication and cooling systems and any predicted adverse effects e.g., fouling. As far as practicable, the specification, selection and arrangements of machinery and equipment are to be agreed between the Shipbuilder and Owner/Operator for foreseeable operating conditions.

**3.3.19 Training and drill regimes.** Where training and testing regimes for machinery capability and availability, reversionary modes of operation and breakdown drills have been identified by the Owner/Operator, full details of the intended regimes are required to be submitted in order to ascertain that the reliability of the machinery and associated systems is not significantly affected. The following are to be considered as applicable and included in the operating and maintenance manuals:

- (a) Machinery repair breakdown drills;
- (b) Post up-keep trials/Routine assessment trials;
- (c) Simulating fault conditions;
- (d) Rapid ship manoeuvres.
- (e) Electrical equipment and system configuration drills.
- (f) Damage control and work-up exercises.

As far as practicable, the specification, selection and arrangements of machinery and equipment are to be agreed between the Shipbuilder and Owner/Operator for foreseeable training and drill regimes.

## Section 4 Operating conditions

### 4.1 Availability for operation

**4.1.1** The design and arrangement is to be such that the machinery can be started and controlled on board ship, without external aid, so that operating conditions can be maintained.

**4.1.2** Installed machinery is to be capable of operating at defined power ratings with a range of fuels specified by the manufacturer and agreed by the Owner/Operator.

**4.1.3** Smoke and emission levels from machinery exhaust systems are to be in accordance with those specified by the manufacturer and agreed by the Owner/Operator over the full operating range.

**4.1.4** Installed machinery is to be capable of operating and being maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions as required by 3.3.7 and 3.3.17.

**4.1.5** Installed machinery is to be capable of operating satisfactorily in accordance with the manufacturer's stated operating conditions within an operational envelope specified for the ship by the Owner/Operator and agreed by the manufacturer/system designer, see 3.3.18. The optimum operational envelope is where machinery and equipment is operated to provide its best performance without causing undue wear or deterioration that could affect its operational reliability.

**4.1.6** Installed machinery is to be capable of operating satisfactorily in accordance with the manufacturers stated operating conditions within defined training and drill regimes specified by the Owner/Operator and agreed by the shipyard and machinery/equipment manufacturer, see 3.3.19.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

### Section 4

#### 4.2 Oil fuel

4.2.1 The flash point (closed-cup test) of oil fuel for use in naval ships classed for unrestricted service is, in general, to be not less than 60°C.

4.2.2 The use of fuel having a lower flash point than specified in 4.2.1, as applicable, may be permitted provided that such fuel is not stored in any machinery space and the arrangements for the complete installation are specially approved. See Pt 7, Ch 4.

#### 4.3 Power ratings

4.3.1 In the Chapters where the dimensions of any particular component are determined from shaft power,  $P$ , in kW, and revolutions per minute,  $R$ , the values to be used are to be derived from the following:

- For main propelling machinery, the maximum shaft power and corresponding revolutions per minute giving the maximum torque for which the machinery is to be classed.
- For auxiliary machinery, the maximum continuous shaft power and corresponding revolutions per minute which will be used in service.

#### 4.4 Ambient reference conditions

4.4.1 The rating for classification purposes of main and essential auxiliary machinery intended for installation in naval sea-going ships to be classed for unrestricted (geographical) service is to be based on:

- A total barometric pressure of 1000 mb.
- An engine room ambient temperature or suction air temperature of 45°C.
- A relative humidity of 60 per cent.
- Sea-water temperature or, where applicable, the temperature of the charge air coolant at the inlet of 32°C.

##### NOTE

The manufacturer is not expected to provide simulated ambient reference conditions at a test bed.

4.4.2 In the case of a naval ship to be classed for restricted service, the rating is to be suitable for the temperature conditions associated with the geographical limits of the restricted service.

#### 4.5 Ambient operating conditions

4.5.1 Main and essential auxiliary machinery and equipment is to be capable of operating satisfactorily under the conditions shown in Table 2.4.1.

**Table 2.4.1 Ambient operating conditions**

| Air                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                         |                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Installations, components                                                                                                                                                    | Location, arrangement                                                                   | Temperature range (°C)                                |
| Machinery and electrical installations                                                                                                                                       | In enclosed spaces                                                                      | 0 to +45, see Note 1                                  |
|                                                                                                                                                                              | On machinery components, boilers,<br>In spaces subject to higher and lower temperatures | According to specific local conditions,<br>see Note 2 |
|                                                                                                                                                                              | On the open deck                                                                        | –25 to +45, see Note 1                                |
| Water                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                         |                                                       |
| Coolant                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                         | Temperature (°C)                                      |
| Sea-water or charge air coolant inlet to charge air cooler                                                                                                                   |                                                                                         | –2 to +32, see Note 1                                 |
| NOTES                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                         |                                                       |
| 1. For ships intended to be classed for restricted service, a deviation from the temperatures stated may be considered.                                                      |                                                                                         |                                                       |
| 2. Details of local environmental conditions are stated in Annex B of IEC 60092: <i>Electrical installations in ships – Part 101: Definitions and general requirements</i> . |                                                                                         |                                                       |



# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 4

4.5.2 Where it is intended to allow for operation in ambient temperatures outside those shown in Table 2.4.1, the permissible temperatures and associated periods of time are to be specified by the manufacturer and agreed by the Owner/Operator. Engineering systems should retain a continuous level of functional capability under these conditions and any level of degraded performance should be defined. Operation under these circumstances should not be the cause of damage to equipment in the system.

### 4.6 Inclination of ship

4.6.1 Main and essential auxiliary machinery, electrical and emergency equipment is to operate satisfactorily under the conditions as shown in Table 2.4.2.

4.6.2 The arrangements for lubricating bearings and for draining crankcase and oil sumps of main and auxiliary engines, gearcases, electric generators, motors and other running machinery are to be designed so that they will remain efficient with the ship inclined under the conditions shown in Table 2.4.2.

4.6.3 Any proposal to deviate from the angles given in Table 2.4.2 will be specially considered taking into account the type, size and service conditions of the ship.

4.6.4 The dynamic angles of inclination in Table 2.4.2 may be exceeded in certain circumstances dependent upon ship type and operation. The Shipbuilder is, therefore, to ensure that the machinery is capable of operating under these angles of inclination.

### 4.7 Power conditions for generator sets

4.7.1 Auxiliary engines coupled to electrical generators are to be capable under service conditions of developing continuously the power to drive the generators at full rated output (kW) and in the case of oil engines and gas turbines, of developing for a short period (15 minutes) an overload power of not less than 10 per cent.

4.7.2 Engine builders are to satisfy the Surveyors by tests on individual engines that the requirements in 4.7.1, as applicable, can be complied with, due account being taken of the difference between the temperatures under test conditions and those referred to in 4.4.1. Alternatively, where it is not practicable to test the engine/generator set as a unit, type tests (e.g., against a brake) representing a particular size and range of engines may be accepted. With oil engines and gas turbines any fuel stop fitted is to be set to permit the short period overload power of not less than 10 per cent above full rated output (kW) to be developed.

### 4.8 Astern power

4.8.1 Sufficient astern power is to be provided to maintain control of the ship in all normal circumstances.

4.8.2 Astern turbines are to be capable of maintaining in free route astern 70 per cent of the ahead revolutions, corresponding to the maximum propulsion shaft power for which the machinery is to be classed, for a period of at least 30 minutes without undue heating of the ahead turbines and condensers.

### 4.9 Military requirements

4.9.1 The Naval Authority is responsible for defining the military requirements relating to the design, construction, testing and installation of machinery and engineering systems.

**Table 2.4.2 Inclinations**

| Engineering installations and equipment                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Angle of inclination, degrees (see Note 1) |                |                |                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Athwartship                                |                | Fore-and-aft   |                 |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Static (Heel)                              | Dynamic (Roll) | Static (Trim)  | Dynamic (Pitch) |
| Main and auxiliary machinery essential to the propulsion and safety of the ship including essential electrical equipment                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 15                                         | ±22,5          | 5 (see Note 2) | ±7,5            |
| Emergency machinery and equipment including electrical equipment. Switchgear, electrical and electronic appliances (see Note 3) and remote control systems                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | 22,5 (see Note 4)                          | ±22,5          | 10             | ±10             |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. Athwartships and fore-and-aft inclination may occur simultaneously.<br>2. Where the length of the ship exceeds 100 m, the fore-and-aft static angle of inclination may be taken as 500/L degrees where L = length of ship, in metres.<br>3. Up to an angle of inclination of 45 degrees no undesired switching operations or operational changes may occur.<br>4. A static damaged condition up to a maximum of 30 degrees may be required by the Naval Authority. |                                            |                |                |                 |

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

### Section 4

4.9.2 The following aspects are to be considered for machinery and engineering systems where military requirements are defined:

- Acoustic tiling and other noise reduction techniques.
- Action damage repairs.
- Alternative/back-up supplies.
- Chocking and securing of machinery.
- Design and installation of machinery to withstand shock.
- Electromagnetic compatibility.
- Electromagnetic hazards to personnel.
- Electromagnetic hazards to fuel storage.
- Electromagnetic hazards to ammunition storage.
- Equipment in magazine spaces.
- IR emission.
- Laser hazards.
- Magnetic restrictions.
- Manoeuvring capabilities.
- CBRN capability.
- Noise and vibration for machinery derived noise and vibration signatures.
- Operation of equipment at high ambient temperatures associated with closedown situations.
- Operation of machinery under excessive list and trim conditions.
- Operation of machinery under partial flooding or damage conditions.
- Radar cross-section.
- Reversionary modes of operation.
- Ruggedness of installation and equipment.
- Shut-down and isolation of HVAC systems.
- Smoke clearance requirements.

The foregoing list is not exhaustive and additional aspects may be included by the Naval Authority.

4.9.3 Guidance on design and installation of machinery and engineering systems covering military requirements where they interface with the provisions of classification may be sought from LR for particular installations.

4.9.4 Where a military requirement for disabling automatic control, protection or safety functions for machinery and engineering systems has been defined by the Naval Authority, the consequences of using the disabling arrangements are to be established and included in the operations procedures and orders provided on board the ship. Details of any disabling arrangements are to be submitted to LR for consideration in each instance.

4.9.5 Where military mission requirements specify immediate availability of mobility and ship type category engineering systems from cold start conditions, the equipment and arrangements of sub-systems such as lubrication and cooling are to be suitable for operation at a defined level of capability and functionality at stated temperatures.

4.9.6 Systems provided to fulfil military requirements, e.g., weapons or combat systems, are to be arranged such that their operation or failure will not adversely affect the operation of Mobility, Ship Type or Ancillary category systems covered by these Rules.

## 4.10 Guidance for underwater signature

4.10.1 Where military requirements for underwater signature have been identified by the Naval Authority, the guidance in 4.10.2 to 4.10.4 may be used to assist in achieving the requirements. The Naval Authority is responsible for defining the underwater signature and any requirements in addition to the guidance in this Section. The design statement is to include underwater signature levels for the ship and propulsion system, which should be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator, see 3.3.12.

4.10.2 Acceptance levels for propulsion and underwater signature are normally to be defined by the Naval Authority such that propulsive performance and the underwater signature may be determined.

4.10.3 The techniques that may be employed for control of underwater signature are outlined in Table 2.4.3 for guidance purposes.

**Table 2.4.3 Control of underwater signature**

|                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Propeller noise             | Low resistance hull at required quiet speed<br>Attention to good inflow into propeller by integrated propeller/hull design<br>Noise reduced low rpm propeller design                                                              |
| Propeller cavitation        | Low resistance hull at required quiet speed<br>Attention to good inflow into propeller by integrated propeller/hull design<br>Attention to propeller design and detail<br>Use of high tolerances in manufacture                   |
| Propeller induced vibration | Attention to propeller position relative to hull and the interaction between the hull and propeller<br>Low resistance hull at required quiet speed<br>Attention to good inflow into propeller by integrated hull/propeller design |
| Cavitation noise            | Attention to good flow to appendages and appendage siting and alignment. Good appendage shapes                                                                                                                                    |

4.10.4 The techniques that may be employed for control of underwater signature are:

- All machinery should be assessed for its vibration characteristics.
- All constructional details connecting machinery to the hull should be assessed for their ability to transmit vibration into the water. If required, suitable vibration isolating machinery, pipe and cable mountings are to be used.
- The hull form should be optimised to give efficient performance at the noise quiet speed required in order to obtain the minimum propeller noise signature.
- The hull form should be fair and smooth to minimise resistance and flow noise.
- Underwater openings should be minimised and attention should be given to the noise characteristics of grilles and shutters.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 4

- (f) Attention should be given to the shape, position and alignment of underwater appendages in order to minimise local turbulence, but especially in the flow into the propellers.
- (g) Propeller design should be carried out using appropriate noise reduction features.

### 4.11 Machinery shock arrangements

4.11.1 Where shock requirements for machinery, engineering systems and equipment have been identified by the Naval Authority, the requirements of this Section are to be met. The Naval Authority is responsible for determining if these Rules are adequate to meet their requirements and defining any requirements in addition to the Rules in this Section. These Rules may be applied in isolation from or in addition to the requirements of the Shock Enhancement notation, **SH**, see Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 2,5.

4.11.2 A shock policy, agreed between the designer, Owner/Operator and the Naval Authority is to be defined for the ship. The policy is to identify the level of shock resistance for installed machinery, engineering systems and equipment and is to address:

- (a) Protection of the crew and embarked personnel.
- (b) The capability of machinery, equipment and systems to operate after shock loading.
- (c) The capability of securing arrangements to retain machinery and equipment captive after shock loading.
- (d) The location of machinery/equipment and routing of essential electrical and piping systems to maintain services in the event of damage due to shock loading.

The application of design and installation of machinery systems for shock resistance is dependent on the Owner/Operator requirements detailed in the shock policy. Shock capability may range from full operational capability after repeated shock to that for retaining items captive to avoid injury to personnel.

4.11.3 The actual threat level used in the calculation of performance of the equipment is to be specified by the Owner and will remain confidential to LR.

4.11.4 Where the shock policy requires that shock capability be achieved by separating duplicated items of equipment within a system, with the aim of ensuring that the system remains operational after a shock event, the equipment is to be rugged, and designed to operate in a marine environment. The minimum distance between duplicated items of equipment is to be in accordance with the policy.

4.11.5 The shock performance of individual items of ship's equipment required to operate after shock loading is to be assessed by conducting representative shock tests. For larger items of equipment, a combination of shock tests and numerical modelling may be used, subject to the agreement of the Naval Authority.

4.11.6 Where equipment shock testing is required, it is to be carried out at a recognised facility in accordance with a procedure acceptable to the Naval Authority. It is to be ensured that the test arrangements represent the magnitude

and direction of loads, and that the loading is applied to the equipment in the configuration in which it will be fitted on board, including shock mounts if applicable.

4.11.7 Equipment previously tested to a particular shock acceleration for another application may be fitted on a vessel with a different shock requirement on condition that the environment in which it is fitted is no more severe than that for which it was tested. In this instance, past test results complemented by a mounting calculation for the proposed arrangements are required.

4.11.8 Where equipment containing electronic components is required to be shock capable, the electronic components are to be tested in accordance with the requirements of 4.11.6.

4.11.9 Where equipment is to be installed on shock mounts, the mounts are to be of an approved type and are to meet the requirements of Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 2,5.7.

4.11.10 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock captive or shock capable, non-ductile, brittle, low impact resistance, or high notch sensitivity materials, particularly grey cast iron and cast aluminium are not to be used unless their use can be justified and agreed with the Naval Authority. Materials used, where possible, are to be capable of yielding by approximately 10 per cent before fracture. Whenever possible, the use of glass is to be avoided in machinery, engineering systems and equipment. Where this is not possible, toughened glass is to be used. Where glass is used in tank level gauges, for tanks containing flammable fluids, automatic self-closing valves are to be fitted at the top and bottom of the gauge to prevent the loss of fluid.

4.11.11 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock captive or shock capable, the use of materials that will be exposed to temperatures below their ductile to brittle transition temperature should be avoided.

4.11.12 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock captive or shock capable, stress concentrations in structural arrangements for machinery and equipment are to be avoided and, where possible, welds are to be located away from high stress areas.

4.11.13 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock captive or shock capable, overhung and cantilevered components on machinery and equipment are to be avoided where possible.

4.11.14 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock captive or shock capable, direct support of connected items of equipment from two or more separate parts of the ship's structure, such as decks and bulkheads, is to be avoided, since differences in response motions at these positions may cause damage.

4.11.15 To minimise relative movement between items of machinery and equipment that require a fixed relationship to each other, wherever possible, they are to be co-located on a common base or frame.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

### Section 4

4.11.16 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock capable, where pipework passes through bulkheads, penetrations of an approved type which have been shock tested are to be used to avoid point loading of the pipes during a shock event. Alternatively, flanged penetrations which are permanently attached to the bulkhead are to be used.

4.11.17 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock capable, flexible pipework couplings are to be of an approved type which have been shock tested.

4.11.18 Piping runs are to be supported in the region of valves and fittings and supports are to be arranged as close to the elastic centre of the mounting system as possible.

4.11.19 Where required by the Naval Authority, piping containing flammable fluids passing through compartments of high fire risk are to meet the requirements of 4.11.16 to 4.11.18.

4.11.20 Where equipment is required to remain captive, securing arrangements are to be designed to resist the acceleration/deceleration levels which are associated with the location of the equipment within the ship. The shock captivity levels are to be identified in the design statement.

4.11.21 The arrangement of equipment attachment locations is to be such that the height of the centre of gravity above the securing plane is small relative to the span of securing bolts; typically, the height of the equipment centre of gravity should be less than one half of the distance between the outermost securing bolts.

4.11.22 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock captive or shock capable, equipment housing is to be designed to ensure that it is sufficiently strong to withstand the bolt loadings and not allow them to pull through.

4.11.23 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock captive or shock capable, the design of machinery trips and breakers is to be such that shock movement cannot trigger them. Also, pivoted parts and link mechanisms, etc., are to be balanced if possible.

4.11.24 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock captive or shock capable, adequate clearances are to be allowed between fixed and moving items, equipment and structure and pipes and structure. General clearances are to be approximately 100 mm all round.

4.11.25 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock captive or shock capable, all fixing lugs are to be closed eyes and not slots. Minimum clearance holes are to be provided for bolts. In general, bolts up to 20 mm diameter are to have a clearance of 1 mm on diameter and for bolts larger than 20 mm, a clearance of 2 mm on diameter.

4.11.26 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock captive or shock capable, bolted connections are to be tightened to their specified torque limits consistent with the allowable stress in the bolt, typically 2/3 of the yield strength. Lock nuts that lock along the thread length are to be used in preference to lock or star washers.

4.11.27 All connections to equipment that is resiliently mounted are to be capable of accommodating the maximum displacements induced by shock. Resilient mounting of equipment onto equipment that is already resiliently mounted is to be avoided.

4.11.28 For systems, machinery and equipment which are required to be shock captive or shock capable, flexible hoses and bellows are to have adequate deflection capability in all directions to accommodate relative displacements induced as a result of shock.

4.11.29 Removable items and racks, etc., are to be positively secured when *in situ* with no reliance being made on friction grip or push fits.

4.11.30 Safety equipment (removable escape ladders, fire extinguishers, etc.) is to be secured with quick release arrangements.

4.11.31 Portable items are to have secure stowage or attachments such that they do not become free following shock.

4.11.32 Electrical cables are to be installed to accommodate relative movement under shock.

4.11.33 Where electrical system circuit breakers and fuses are rigidly fastened to the structure, they are to be of an approved shockproof design.

4.11.34 Electrical plug-in components such as printed circuits or relays are to be positively secured in position. Retention by friction is not permitted.

4.11.35 Flexible mounts are not to be degraded by the use of other rigid connections to equipment such as pipework.

#### 4.12 Guidance for CBRN protection, detection and monitoring

4.12.1 Where military requirements to operate under the threat of Chemical, Biological, Radiological and Nuclear (CBRN) warfare have been identified by the Naval Authority, the guidance in 4.12.2 to 4.12.14 may be used to assist in achieving the requirements. The Naval Authority is responsible for defining the levels of threat, operating periods and for specifying any CBRN Protection requirements in addition to the guidance in this Section. The design statement for CBRN Protection of the ship should be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator, see 3.3.10. For hull structure guidance, see Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 1,7.

4.12.2 The prime objectives in the design of CBRN Protection arrangements should address:

- Protection of the crew and embarked personnel.
- Capability of the ship to operate in close-down conditions when engaged in military missions.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 4

**4.12.3** The ship will have a citadel in which the crew can shelter and in particular, ship operations can be managed for long-term close-down conditions. This citadel may be part or all of the ship. Larger citadels may be sub-divided into a number of smaller sub-citadels. The duration of operation with a citadel in use is to be defined in the design statement.

**4.12.4** The citadel should be designed to provide an over-pressure relative to external ambient conditions such that any leakage of air flows outward from spaces inside the ship. The system design for maintaining over-pressure should recognise degradation of gas-tightness in the ship's structures during operational service and take into account known leakages for the purposes of establishing the required number of air filtration units.

**4.12.5** Fresh air required for ventilation purposes should pass through an appropriate level of filtration before entering the citadel. Jalousies fitted at the intakes should be capable of controlling the ingestion of water, particulate and corrosive marine salts to limit degradation of filter units due to moisture carry over. The air filtration units should be capable of providing protection against nuclear, biological and chemical threats defined by the Naval Authority and should be capable of being cleaned and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The air filtration systems should be capable of being operated from within the citadel. The maintenance arrangements for air filtration systems should ensure that there is minimum risk of introduction of contaminants into the citadel.

**4.12.6** The number, capacity and arrangements of air filtration units should recognise the requirements for operational capability within the ship's zoning policy and air supply requirements to any sub-citadels.

**4.12.7** Access to and from the citadel should be via air locks and cleansing stations to decontaminate personnel entering the citadel.

**4.12.8** A means of monitoring the level of over-pressure within a citadel should be provided.

**4.12.9** Doors, hatches and other closures that are part of the citadel boundary should be clearly marked as such.

**4.12.10** All openings into the citadel should be capable of being closed to form a gastight seal. In the case of fluid systems with overboard discharges that are required to be open for operational reasons, these should be fitted with water seals to prevent the ingress of external air. Arrangements should be made to re-circulate air for ventilation/air conditioning purposes, such as galley air, and where necessary, provide bleed valves such that air may be purged via the air locks/cleansing stations without allowing external air to re-enter the citadel. The arrangements for re-circulation and fresh air intakes should take into account the maximum permitted levels of CO<sub>2</sub> and any other gases/odours that may prejudice the safety of crew and embarked personnel.

**4.12.11** In the case of machinery spaces that are to be kept 'clean' during CBRN states by closures, combustion air should be trunked directly to the prime movers and adequate cooling is to be provided within these spaces to maintain safe equipment operation. Arrangements should be provided to permit engines to breathe as required for full power operational requirements. See 5.12 for requirements for machinery enclosures.

**4.12.12** A means of preventing adherence of contamination and for decontamination of the outside of the ship should be provided by pre-wetting/wetting systems. Adequate means of drainage should be provided for pre-wetting/wetting water. The siting of nozzles and drainage arrangements should be arranged to avoid build-up of water and potential ingress of water into air intakes for ventilation and machinery air intakes.

**4.12.13** A means of monitoring, indicating and warning of CBRN contamination should be provided.

**4.12.14** Nuclear shelter positions for ship's crew and embarked personnel should be identified. These positions should be provided with adequate means of ventilation capable of maintaining the atmosphere with a maximum CO<sub>2</sub> level of 1,5 per cent for a defined period of time.

### 4.13 Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)

**4.13.1** Propulsion, steering, navigation and other essential systems, including weapons systems are to be designed and installed such that their performance does not degrade from the manufacturer's specifications as a result of susceptibility to electromagnetic interference generated during both normal operation and during military activities.

**4.13.2** An EMC test plan is to be established, an EMC analysis carried out and a test report produced in accordance with the requirements and guidelines of IEC 60533 *Electrical Installations in Ships, Electromagnetic Compatibility* or equivalent requirements of the Naval Authority as defined in an appropriate naval standard. Regard is to be given to the fact that EMC requirements for systems installed on board naval ships may be more onerous due to the high concentration of electronic equipment, transmitters and receivers located in close proximity. Details are to be submitted for appraisal.

**4.13.3** Systems are to comply with the emission limits and minimum immunity requirements of the Naval Authority as defined in an appropriate naval standard. This may require systems complying with emissions and immunity requirements of IEC 60533 *Electrical Installations in Ships, Electromagnetic Compatibility* to be subjected to additional testing in order to demonstrate the requirements of the Naval Authority are satisfied unless the EMC analysis clearly identifies such testing to be unnecessary. Details are to be submitted for appraisal.

### 4.14 Machinery interlocks

**4.14.1** Interlocks are to be provided to prevent any operation of engines, turbines or applicable auxiliary machinery

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

### Section 4

under conditions that could hazard the machinery or personnel. These are to include 'turning gear engaged', 'low lubricating oil pressure', where oil pressure is essential for the prevention of damage during start-up, 'shaft brake engaged' and where machinery is not available due to maintenance or repairs. The interlock system is to be arranged to 'fail safe'.

4.14.2 In the case of machinery with manual turning gear which is not permanently attached, warning devices or notices may be provided as an alternative to interlocks as required by 4.14.1.

#### 4.15 Stopping of machinery

4.15.1 Diesel engines, gas and steam turbines, other prime movers and essential services are to be provided with a means of emergency stop, capable of being activated at a position outside the compartment in which the machinery is located. The arrangements are to be fully independent of control and alarm systems, and are to ensure a safe and controlled shutdown of machinery. Where such arrangements depend upon programmable electronic equipment, they are to comply with the relevant requirements in Pt 9, Ch 1,2,13.

4.15.2 Emergency stops are to be designed to minimise the risk of accidental or unauthorised operation.

#### 4.16 Control of rotating systems

4.16.1 An effective means of setting and adjusting the rotation speed of each complete rotating system (e.g., prime mover, gearing, shafting, alternator and propeller) to defined operating performance requirements is to be provided. The means and arrangements for adjusting the speed of rotation are to recognise any requirements for the avoidance of running in barred speed range(s).

4.16.2 All prime movers are to be provided with an efficient governor arrangement that is capable of controlling the prime mover's set speed within defined limits when subject to load changes. The performance of governors is to recognise the rotating system's specification of capability during normal, emergency and reversionary modes of operation. For power train systems, the inertia of components and associated requirements for speed control of the prime mover are to be addressed. See Part 2, Chapters 1, 2 and 3 for the respective performance requirements of governors fitted to diesel engines, gas turbines and steam turbines.

4.16.3 The arrangements for control of rotating systems are to comply with Pt 9, Ch 1 as applicable and are to be such that failure in any item of equipment in the control system does not cause a hazard to the operation of the prime mover.

#### 4.17 Survey and refit

4.17.1 Arrangements are to be provided for the discharge of fuels and lubricating oils from the ship to a safe off ship facility where operational requirements necessitate system cleaning and refit.

#### 4.18 Electromagnetic hazards

4.18.1 All equipment, operating and observation positions are, as far as is practicable, to be sited clear of sources of electromagnetic energy such as radars, communication transmitters or lightning conductors.

4.18.2 Where sources of electromagnetic energy or the swept beam of radar aerials are in close proximity to equipment operating and observation positions, suitable warning notices and markings are to be provided to draw attention to the potential hazards.

#### 4.19 Flexible hose and bellows expansion piece registers

4.19.1 Flexible hoses and bellows expansion piece units are life limited and a Register of such units is to be established and maintained for all units installed on board where failure may result in any of the following:

- Fire spread.
- Flooding that could lead to the loss of any compartment.
- Loss of availability of a mobility or ship type system.
- Danger to personnel from release of stored energy.

4.19.2 The following information is to be included in the Register:

- Equipment designation and location on ship.
- Purpose.
- Hose specification including end fittings.
- Date of manufacture and cure date in the case of rubber units.
- Date of installation.
- Date of pressure/installation testing.
- Routine inspection interval.
- Pressure testing.
- Due for renewal.

A typical Flexible Hose Register format is shown in Table 2.4.4.

**Table 2.4.4 Typical Flexible Hose Register**

| Flexible Hose Register  |           |                                         |                  |                                           |
|-------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| System                  |           | Length                                  |                  |                                           |
| Equipment               |           | Nominal bore                            |                  |                                           |
| Position                |           | Offset angle between elbow and fittings |                  |                                           |
| End fitting 1           |           | End fitting 2                           |                  |                                           |
| Purpose                 |           | Max. working pressure                   |                  |                                           |
| Specification           |           | Hose test pressure                      |                  |                                           |
| Manufacturer's part No. | Cure date | Date fitted                             | Date for renewal | Inspection, test, change date and remarks |
|                         |           |                                         |                  |                                           |
|                         |           |                                         |                  |                                           |
|                         |           |                                         |                  |                                           |

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 4 & 5

4.19.3 Flexible hoses and bellows expansion pieces are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1,13 and 14 as applicable and should be labelled in order to provide a clear trace between the Register and equipment.

4.19.4 A Naval Authority may require the scope of a flexible hose or expansion bellows piece Register for purposes other than those detailed in 4.19.1.

## Section 5 Machinery space arrangements

### 5.1 Machinery spaces

5.1.1 Machinery spaces of category A are those spaces and trunks to such spaces which contain:

- (a) internal combustion machinery used for main propulsion; or
- (b) internal combustion machinery used for purposes other than main propulsion where such machinery has in the aggregate a total power of not less than 375 kW; or
- (c) any oil-fired boiler or oil fuel unit.

5.1.2 Machinery spaces are all machinery spaces of Category A and all other spaces containing propulsion machinery, boilers, oil fuel units (defined in 5.1.3), steam and internal combustion engines, generators and major electrical machinery, oil filling stations, refrigerating, stabilising, ventilation and air-conditioning machinery, and similar spaces and trunks to such spaces.

5.1.3 An oil fuel unit is the equipment used for the preparation of oil fuel for delivery to an oil-fired boiler, or equipment used for the preparation for delivery of heated oil to an internal combustion engine, and includes oil pressure pumps, filters and heaters dealing with oil at a pressure of more than 0,18 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

5.1.4 Aluminium is not to be used for the crowns or casings of Category A machinery spaces. Where the hull is constructed of aluminium or composite material, consideration will be given to the use of aluminium for the crown or casings for such spaces where the fire safety issues relating to the use of aluminium have been addressed to the satisfaction of LR.

5.1.5 Windows are not to be fitted in machinery space boundaries. However, this does not preclude the use of glass in control rooms within the machinery space.

5.1.6 Machinery space skylights, where fitted, are not to contain glass.

5.1.7 In addition the requirements of Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 2,6 are to be complied with.

### 5.2 Accessibility

5.2.1 Accessibility, for attendance and maintenance purposes, is to be provided in all spaces for machinery and engineering systems and equipment.

5.2.2 Removal routes for items of machinery and equipment are to be established where routine removal of major items of equipment is envisaged.

### 5.3 Machinery fastenings

5.3.1 Bedplates, thrust seatings and other fastenings are to be of robust construction, and the machinery is to be securely fixed to the ship's structure to the satisfaction of the Surveyor. For NS3 type ships or where specified by the Naval Authority, the arrangement is to be such that is sufficient to restrain the dynamic forces arising from vertical and horizontal acceleration appropriate to the intended service, see 3.3.6 and 5.4.

5.3.2 Machinery may be installed on rafts of rigid construction and these are to be of robust construction to ensure that alignment is maintained under all conditions of ship motion. The rafts are to be securely fixed to the ship's structure.

### 5.4 Collision load

5.4.1 Unless an accurate analysis of the collision load is submitted and found acceptable by LR, the collision load is to be determined from:

$$g(\text{collision}) = 1,2 \frac{P_{\text{coll}}}{\Delta g}$$

where the load  $P_{\text{coll}}$  is taken as the lesser of:

$$P_{\text{coll}} = 460 (M C_L)^{2/3} (E C_H)^{1/3} \text{ kN}$$

$$P_{\text{coll}} = 9000 M C_L [C_H (T + 2)]^{1/2} \text{ kN}$$

where

$C_H$  = a factor given in Table 2.5.1

$$C_L = \frac{(165 + L_{WL})}{245} \left( \frac{L_{WL}}{80} \right)^{0,4}$$

$D$  = ship depth, in metres, from the underside of keel amidships to the top of effective hull girder

$$E = 0,5 \Delta V^2 \text{ kNm}$$

$H_T$  = minimum height, in metres, from tunnel or wet-deck bottom to the top of effective hull girder for catamarans and surface effect ships  
=  $D$  for air cushion vehicles

$L_{WL}$  = ship waterline length, in metres

$M$  = 1,3 for high tensile steel

= 1,0 for aluminium alloy

= 0,95 for mild steel

= 0,8 for fibre reinforced plastics

$T$  = buoyancy tank clearance to skirt tip, in metres, (negative) for ACVs

= lifted clearance from keel to water surface, in metres, (negative) for hydrofoils

= ship draught to the underside of keel amidships, in metres, for all other ships

$V$  = operational speed of ship, in m/s

$g$  = gravitational acceleration = 9,806 m/s<sup>2</sup>

$\Delta$  = ship displacement, to be taken as the mean of the lightweight and maximum operational weight, in tonnes.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 5

**Table 2.5.1 Factor  $C_H$** 

| Factor $C_H$                                       | Catamarans, SES                                                     | Mono-hulls, H'Foil                 | ACVs                           |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| $C_H$                                              | $\frac{T + 2 + f(D/2)}{2D}$                                         | $\frac{T + 2 + f(D/2)}{2D}$        | $\frac{f}{4}$                  |
| where<br>$f = 0$ for<br>$f = 1$ for<br>$f = 2$ for | $T + 2 < D - H_T$<br>$D > T + 2 \geq D - H_T$<br>$T + 2 \geq D - M$ | $T + 2 < D$<br>$T + 2 \geq D$<br>— | —<br>$H_T > 2$<br>$H_T \leq 2$ |

### 5.5 Resilient mountings

5.5.1 The dynamic angles of inclination in Table 2.4.2 may be exceeded in certain circumstances dependent upon ship type and operation. The Shipbuilder is, therefore, to ensure that the vibration levels of flexible pipe connections, shaft couplings and mounts remain within the limits specified by the component manufacturer for the conditions of maximum dynamic inclinations to be expected during service, start-stop operation and the natural frequencies of the system. Due account is to be taken of any creep that may be inherent in the mount.

5.5.2 Limit stops are to be fitted as necessary to ensure that manufacturers' limits are not exceeded. Suitable means are to be provided to accommodate the propeller thrust.

5.5.3 Mounts are to be shielded from the possible detrimental effects of oil and, where appropriate, paint and other contaminants.

### 5.6 Resin chocks

5.6.1 Synthetic resin compounds as materials for chocks under machinery where alignment is important are to be of a type accepted by LR.

5.6.2 The use of resin for chocking gas turbine casings or similar high temperature applications is not acceptable.

5.6.3 Materials for chocking are to be approved for the maximum ambient operating temperature of the space in which they are installed.

5.6.4 Where the Naval Authority has defined military requirements that include design and installation of machinery to withstand shock, the resin is to be approved for this application.

### 5.7 Ventilation

5.7.1 All spaces including engine and pump spaces, where flammable or toxic gases or vapours may accumulate, are to be provided with adequate ventilation under all conditions.

5.7.2 Machinery spaces are to be ventilated so as to ensure that when machinery or boilers therein are operating at full power in all weather conditions, including heavy weather, a sufficient supply of air is maintained to the spaces for the safety of personnel and the operation of machinery.

5.7.3 The selection and arrangements of machinery and associated equipment are to minimise the emission of noxious substances into machinery spaces.

### 5.8 Fire protection

5.8.1 All surfaces of machinery where the surface temperature may exceed 220°C and where impingement of flammable liquids may occur are to be effectively shielded to prevent ignition. Where insulation covering these surfaces is oil-absorbing or may permit penetration of oil, the insulation is to be encased in steel or equivalent.

### 5.9 Means of escape

5.9.1 Except as permitted in 5.9.2, two means of escape are to be provided from each machinery space of Category A. In particular, one of the following provisions are to be complied with:

- Two sets of steel ladders as widely separated as possible leading to doors in the upper part of the space similarly separated and from which access is provided to the open deck. In general, one of these ladders shall provide continuous fire shelter from the lower part of the space to a safe position outside the space. The shelter is to be of steel, insulated, where necessary and provided with a self-closing steel door. The shelter will not be required if, due to the special arrangement or dimensions of the machinery space, a safe escape route from the lower part of the space is provided.
- One steel ladder leading to a door in the upper part of the space from which access is provided to the open deck and additionally, to the lower part of the space and in a position well separated from the ladder referred to, a steel door capable of being operated from each side and which provides access to a safe escape route from the lower part of the space to the open deck.

Alternative arrangements in accordance with the requirements of the Naval Authority may also be acceptable.

5.9.2 Where agreed by the Naval Authority, in a NS3 category ship, one of the means of escape required in 5.9.1 may not be required with due regard being paid to the dimension and disposition of the upper part of the space.

5.9.3 When access to any machinery space of Category A is provided at a low level from an adjacent shaft tunnel, there is to be provided in the shaft tunnel, near the watertight door, a light steel fire-screen operable from each side.



# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 5

5.9.4 From machinery spaces other than those of Category A, escape routes are to be provided having regard to the nature and location of the space and whether persons are normally employed in the space.

5.9.5 Lifts are not to be considered as forming one of the required means of escape.

### 5.10 Communications

5.10.1 At least two independent means of communication are to be provided between the bridge and engine room control station from which the engines are normally controlled.

5.10.2 One of the two means required by 5.10.1 shall visually indicate the order and response, both at the engine room control station and on the bridge.

5.10.3 At least one means of communication is to be provided between the bridge and any other control position(s) from which the propulsion machinery may be controlled.

5.10.4 At least two independent means of communication are to be provided between the main and emergency switchboards.

### 5.11 Personnel safety

5.11.1 All moving parts of machinery are to be provided with suitable railings and/or guards to prevent injury to personnel.

5.11.2 Protection is to be provided to prevent injury from hot surfaces, i.e., by suitable lagging or guards.

5.11.3 Assemblies incorporating pre-loaded springs are to be engineered such that spring forces can be released in a controlled and safe manner during the removal and/or disassembly process.

5.11.4 Open ends from relief valve pressure release pipes are to be arranged so that any discharge is directed away from positions where personnel might reasonably be expected to be. If relief pipes cross citadel boundaries, the relief valves are to relieve through sealed tundishes able to withstand the citadel over-pressure.

5.11.5 Sufficient deck plates, platforms and handholds are to be fitted to provide safe access to all parts of the machinery and ensure safe passageway between machinery and adjacent equipment.

5.11.6 Materials used in the construction of machinery and installation of engineering systems are not to be a recognised hazard to personnel. This includes the prohibition of asbestos.

5.11.7 Means are to be provided for automatically giving audible warning of the release of fire-extinguishing medium into any space in which personnel normally work or to which they have access, see also Pt 10, Ch 1, 17.9.1.

### 5.12 Machinery enclosures

5.12.1 Where machinery is installed within enclosures, the requirements of 5.12.2 to 5.12.10 and 5.13 are to be complied with.

5.12.2 Enclosures are to be treated as unattended machinery spaces and comply with the relevant Rules for such spaces and installed equipment.

5.12.3 Enclosures are, as far as reasonably practicable, to be gastight with flexible sealing arrangements between air induction, exhaust and ventilation systems.

5.12.4 The arrangements are to prevent contamination of the machinery space in an CBRN environment.

5.12.5 Enclosures are to be constructed to form a suitable fire boundary.

5.12.6 An access door, adequate internal lighting and observation windows, with suitable fire rating, are to be located to afford a clear view of both sides of the equipment within the enclosure.

5.12.7 Suitable means of drainage of any liquids which may accumulate are to be provided without compromising the citadel.

5.12.8 Enclosures are to be suitably ventilated and designed to maintain all components within their safe working temperature under all operating conditions. The ventilation system is to be independent from the machinery space ventilation arrangements and provided with suitable closing devices for fire control purposes.

5.12.9 Enclosures are to be provided with a means to enable gas purging with a portable fan in addition to the fixed ventilation system.

5.12.10 Means are to be provided to monitor the enclosure air temperature and differential pressure.

### 5.13 Fire detection, alarm and extinguishing arrangements

5.13.1 Machinery spaces and enclosures are to be provided with fire detection, alarm and extinguishing systems in accordance with the fire safety arrangements required by the Regulations in Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.1.10. For unattended machinery spaces, a fire detection system in accordance with Pt 9, Ch 1, 3.5 is to be fitted.

5.13.2 The design of fire extinguishing arrangements in any machinery space or enclosure are to take the following into consideration:

- The flammable materials and potential sources of ignition within the space or enclosure;
- any need for machinery and equipment to remain operational during operation of the fire extinguishing arrangements;
- the need for machinery and equipment to continue to function normally following operation of the fire-extinguishing arrangements; and

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 5 &amp; 6

- (d) any need for personnel to enter or remain within the space or enclosure during operation of the fire extinguishing arrangements.

In spaces where electrical equipment is located, consideration is to be given to providing separate enclosures where appropriate. See also 3.3.15.

### 5.14 Location of emergency installations

5.14.1 Emergency sources of electrical power, fire pumps, bilge pumps except those specifically serving the spaces forward of the collision bulkhead, any fixed fire-extinguishing system and other emergency installations which are essential for the safety of the ship, except anchor windlasses, shall not be installed forward of the collision bulkhead.

## Section 6 Diesel engines

### 6.1 Design

6.1.1 For details of design requirements, see Pt 2, Ch 1.

### 6.2 Construction and welding

6.2.1 Welding of engine structures is to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Chapter 13 of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

6.2.2 On completion of welding and stress relief heat treatment, welds are to be examined. Welds in transverse girder assemblies are to be crack detected by an approved method. Other joints are to be similarly tested if required by the Surveyors.

6.2.3 Forgings and castings are to be examined at the manufacturer's works.

### 6.3 Hydraulic testing

6.3.1 Items are to be tested by hydraulic pressure as indicated in Table 2.6.1.

6.3.2 Where a manufacturer has demonstrated to LR that they have an acceptable quality management system, a manufacturer's hydraulic test certificate may be accepted for engine driven pumps as detailed in Table 2.6.1. Recognition and acceptance of the works quality control processes can be by one of the following routes:

- Approval under the LR Quality Scheme for Machinery.
- Approval of an alternative quality scheme recognised by LR.
- Approval by LR through auditing of the manufacturer's quality system.

### 6.4 Non-destructive testing

6.4.1 Non-destructive examination of welded construction is to be conducted in accordance with the requirements specified in Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials.

**Table 2.6.1 Test pressures**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Test pressure                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Fuel injection equipment including:<br>Pump body, pressure side<br>Valve<br>Pipe                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | The lesser of $1,5p$ or $p + 300$ bar                            |
| Cylinder cover cooling space<br>Cylinder liner, over the whole length of cooling space<br>Piston crown, cooling space (where piston rod seals cooling space, test after assembly)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 7,0 bar                                                          |
| Cylinder jacket, cooling space<br>Exhaust valve, cooling space<br>Turbo-charger, cooling space<br>Exhaust pipe, cooling space<br>Coolers, each side<br>Engine driven pumps (oil, water, fuel, bilge)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | The greater of 4,0 bar or $1,5p$                                 |
| Air compressor, including cylinders, covers, intercoolers and aftercoolers                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Air side: $1,5p$<br>Water side: the greater of 4,0 bar or $1,5p$ |
| Scavenge pump cylinder                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 4,0 bar                                                          |
| Hydraulic systems (piping, pumps, actuators)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | $1,5p$                                                           |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. $p$ is the maximum working pressure, in bar, in the item concerned.<br>2. Pumps used in jerk or timed pump systems need only have the assembled high pressure containing components hydraulically tested.<br>3. Turbo-charger air coolers need only be tested on the water side.<br>4. For forged steel cylinder covers and piston crowns alternative testing methods may be specially considered.<br>5. For hydraulic systems where design features are such that modifications to the test requirements are necessary, alternative proposals for hydraulic tests are to be submitted for special consideration.<br>6. Where components are subjected to autofrettage the test pressure may be omitted. |                                                                  |

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 6, 7 & 8

### 6.5 Autofrettage

6.5.1 Manufacturers who carry out autofrettage to enhance the fatigue life of components are to be approved by LR.

6.5.2 LR certificates are to be issued provided the attending Surveyors are satisfied that the required process parameters and associated QA processes have been applied.

### 6.6 Engine type testing

6.6.1 New engine types or developments of existing types are to be subjected to an agreed programme of type testing to complement the design appraisal and review of documentation. The programme will need to include short-term high power operation where applicable.

6.6.2 Guidelines for type testing of engines will be supplied on application.

6.6.3 An engine type is defined in terms of:

- basic engine data: e.g. bore, stroke;
- working cycle: 2 stroke, 4 stroke;
- cylinder arrangement: in-line, vee;
- cylinder rating;
- fuel supply: e.g., direct, or indirect injection;
- gas exchange: natural aspiration, pressure charging arrangement.

6.6.4 Where an engine type has subsequently proved satisfactory in service with a number of applications, a maximum uprating of 10 per cent may be considered without a further complete type test.

6.6.5 A type test will be considered to cover engines of a given design for a range of cylinder numbers in a given cylinder arrangement.

## Section 7 Turbo-chargers

### 7.1 Design

7.1.1 For details of design requirements, see Pt 2, Ch 1.

### 7.2 Type testing

7.2.1 A type test is to consist of a hot gas running test of at least one hour duration at the maximum permissible speed and maximum permissible temperature. Following the test the turbo-charger it is to be completely dismantled for examination of all parts.

7.2.2 Alternative arrangements will be considered.

### 7.3 Dynamic balancing

7.3.1 All rotors are to be dynamically balanced on final assembly to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

### 7.4 Overspeed tests

7.4.1 All fully bladed rotor sections and impeller/inducer wheels are to be overspeed tested for three minutes at either 20 per cent above the maximum permissible speed at room temperature or 10 per cent above the maximum permissible speed at the normal working temperature.

### 7.5 Mechanical running tests

7.5.1 Turbo-chargers are to be given a mechanical running test of 20 minutes duration at the maximum permissible speed.

7.5.2 Upon application, with details of a historical audit covering previous testing of turbo-chargers manufactured under an approved quality assurance scheme, consideration will be given to confining the test to a representative sample of turbo-chargers.

## Section 8 Gas turbines

### 8.1 Design

8.1.1 For details of design requirements, see Pt 2, Ch 2.

### 8.2 Construction under survey

8.2.1 All gas turbine units intended for installation in a ship classed or intended to be classed with LR are to be constructed in accordance with LR's Quality Assurance Scheme for Machinery, see Pt 1, Ch 1,8.

### 8.3 Dynamic balancing

8.3.1 All compressor and turbine rotors as finished-bladed and complete with all relevant parts such as half-couplings, are to be dynamically balanced in accordance with the manufacturer's specification in a machine of sensitivity appropriate to the size of rotor.

### 8.4 Hydraulic testing

8.4.1 Where design permits, casings are to be tested to a hydraulic pressure equal to 1,5 times the highest pressure in the casing during normal operation, or 1,5 times the pressure during starting, whichever is the higher. For test purposes, if necessary, the casings may be subdivided with temporary diaphragms for distribution of test pressure. Where the operating temperature exceeds 300°C, the test pressure is to be suitably corrected.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

*Sections 8, 9 & 10*

8.4.2 Where hydraulic testing is impracticable, non-destructive tests by ultrasonic or radiographic methods are to be carried out on the entire circumference of all casing parts with satisfactory results. Where ultrasonic tests have been carried out, the manufacturer is to provide documentary evidence that ultrasonic examination has been carried out by an approved operator and that there were no indications of defects which could be expected to have a prejudicial effect on the operational performance of the gas turbine.

8.4.3 The shell and tube arrangement of intercoolers and heat exchangers are to be tested to 1,5 times their maximum working pressure.

### 8.5 Overspeed tests

8.5.1 Before installation, it is to be satisfactorily demonstrated that the gas turbine is capable of safe operation for five minutes at 5 per cent above the nominal setting of the overspeed protective device, or 15 per cent above the maximum design speed, whichever is the higher.

8.5.2 Where it is impracticable to overspeed the complete installation, each compressor and turbine rotor completely bladed and with all relevant parts such as half-couplings are to be overspeed-tested individually at the appropriate speed.

## ■ Section 9 Steam turbines

### 9.1 Design

9.1.1 For details of design requirements, see Pt 2, Ch 3.

### 9.2 Stability testing of turbine rotors

9.2.1 All solid forged H.P. turbine rotors intended for main propulsion service, where the inlet steam temperature exceeds 400°C, are to be subjected to at least one thermal stability test. This requirement is also applicable to rotors constructed from two or more forged components joined by welding. The test may be carried out at the forge or turbine builders' works:

- (a) after heat treatment and rough machining of the forging; or
- (b) after final machining; or
- (c) after final machining and blading of the rotor.

The stabilising test temperature is to be not less than 28°C above the maximum steam temperature to which the rotor will be exposed, and not more than the tempering temperature of the rotor material. For details of a recommended test procedure and limits of acceptance, see the Rules for Materials. Other test procedures may be adopted if approved.

9.2.2 Where main turbine rotors are subjected to thermal stability tests at both forge and turbine builders' works, the foregoing requirements are applicable to both tests. It is not required that auxiliary turbine rotors be tested for thermal stability, but if such tests are carried out, the requirement for main turbine rotors will be generally applicable.

### 9.3 Balancing

9.3.1 All rotors as finished-bladed and complete with half-coupling are to be dynamically balanced to the Surveyor's satisfaction, in a machine of sensitivity appropriate to the size of rotor.

### 9.4 Hydraulic tests

9.4.1 Manoeuvring valves are to be tested to twice the working pressure. The nozzle boxes of impulse turbines are to be tested to 1,5 times the working pressure.

9.4.2 The cylinders of all turbines are to be tested to 1,5 times the working pressure in the casing, or to 2,0 bar, whichever is the greater.

9.4.3 For test purposes, the cylinders may be subdivided with temporary diaphragms for distribution of test pressures.

9.4.4 Condensers are to be tested in the steam space to 1,0 bar. The water space is to be tested to the maximum pressure which the pump can develop at ship's full draught with the discharge valve closed plus 0,7 bar, with a minimum test pressure of 2,0 bar. Where the operating conditions are not known, the test pressure is to be not less than 3,4 bar. See Pt 7, Ch 1.

### 9.5 Indicators for movement

9.5.1 Indicators for determining the axial position of rotors relative to their casings, and for showing the longitudinal expansion of casings at the sliding feet, if fitted, are to be provided for main turbines. The latter indicators should be fitted at both sides and be readily visible.

### 9.6 Wear-down gauges

9.6.1 Main and auxiliary turbines are to be provided with bridge wear-down gauges for testing the alignment of the rotors.

## ■ Section 10 Gearing

### 10.1 Design

10.1.1 For details of design requirements, see Pt 3, Ch 1.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

### Section 10

#### 10.2 Construction and welding

10.2.1 Where castings are used for wheel centres, any radial slots in the periphery are to be fitted with permanent chocks before shrinking-on the rim.

10.2.2 Where welded construction is used for the manufacture of wheels and gearcases, welding is to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials.

10.2.3 Welded constructions are to be stress relief heat treated on completion of welding.

10.2.4 Bolted attachments within the gear case are to be secured by locking wire or equivalent means.

#### 10.3 Accuracy of gear cutting

10.3.1 The machining accuracy (Q grade) of pinions and wheels is to be demonstrated. For this purpose, records of measurements are to be available for review.

#### 10.4 Non-destructive testing

10.4.1 Magnetic particle or liquid penetrant testing is to be carried out on the teeth of all surface hardened forgings. This examination may also be requested on the finished machined teeth of through hardened gear forgings.

10.4.2 The manufacturer is to carry out an ultrasonic examination of all forgings where the finished diameter of the surfaces, where teeth will be cut, is in excess of 200 mm, and is to provide LR with a signed statement that such inspection has not revealed any significant internal defects.

10.4.3 On gear forgings where the teeth have been surface hardened, additional test pieces may be required to be processed with the forgings and subsequently sectioned to determine the depth of the hardened zone. These tests are to be carried out at the discretion of the Surveyor, and for induction or carburised gearing, the depth of the hardened zone is to be in accordance with the approved specification. For nitrided gearing, the full depth of the hardened zone, i.e. depth core hardness, is to be not less than 0,5 mm and the hardness at a depth of 0,25 mm is to be not less than 500 Hv.

#### 10.5 Dynamic balancing

10.5.1 All rotating elements such as pinion and wheel shaft assemblies and coupling parts, are to be appropriately balanced.

10.5.2 The permissible residual unbalance,  $U$ , is defined as follows:

$$U = \frac{60 \text{ m}}{R} \times 10^3 \text{ g mm for } R < 3000$$

$$U = \frac{24 \text{ m}}{R} \times 10^3 \text{ g mm for } R > 3000$$

where

$m$  = mass of rotating element, in kg

$R$  = maximum service rev/min of the rotating element.

10.5.3 Where the size or geometry of a rotating element precludes measurement of the residual unbalance, a full speed running test of the assembled gear unit at the manufacturer's works will normally be required to demonstrate satisfactory operation.

#### 10.6 Meshing tests

10.6.1 Initially, meshing gears are to be carefully matched on the basis of the accuracy measurements taken. The alignment is to be demonstrated in the workshop by meshing in the gearbox without oil clearance in the bearings. Meshing is to be carried out with the gears locating in their light load positions and a load sufficient to overcome pinion weight and axial movement is to be imposed.

10.6.2 The gears are to be suitably coated to demonstrate the contact marking. The thickness of the coating to determine the contact marking is not to exceed 0,005 mm. The marking is to reflect the accuracy grade specified and end relief, crowning or helix correction, where these have been applied.

10.6.3 For gears without crowning or helix correction the marking is to be not less than shown in Table 2.10.1.

**Table 2.10.1 No load tooth contact marking**

| ISO accuracy grade                                                                                                                                                  | Contact marking area                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| $Q \leq 5$                                                                                                                                                          | $50\% b \times 40\% h_w + 40\% b \times 20\% h_w$ |
| $Q \geq 6$                                                                                                                                                          | $35\% b \times 40\% h_w + 35\% b \times 20\% h_w$ |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. Where $b$ is the face width and $h_w$ is the working tooth depth.<br>2. For spur gears the values of $h_w$ should be increased by a further 10%. |                                                   |

10.6.4 Where allowance has been given for end relief, crowning or helix correction, the normal shop meshing tests are to be supplemented by tooth alignment traces or other approved means to demonstrate the effectiveness of such modifications.

10.6.5 For gears with crowning or helix correction, the marking is to correspond to the designed no load contact pattern.

10.6.6 A permanent record is to be made of the meshing contact for purpose of checking the alignment when installed on board the craft.

10.6.7 The full load tooth contact marking is to be not less than shown in Table 2.10.2.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 10, 11 &amp; 12

**Table 2.10.2 Full load tooth contact marking**

| ISO accuracy grade                                                                                                                                           | Contact marking area                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $Q \leq 5$<br>$Q \geq 6$                                                                                                                                     | $60\% b \times 70\% h_w + 30\% b \times 50\% h_w$<br>$45\% b \times 60\% h_w + 35\% b \times 40\% h_w$ |
| NOTES<br>1. Where $b$ is the face width and $h_w$ is the working tooth depth.<br>2. For spur gears the values of $h_w$ should be increased by a further 10%. |                                                                                                        |

10.6.8 Where, due to the compactness of the gear unit, meshing tests of individual units cannot be verified visually, consideration may be given to the gear manufacturer providing suitable evidence that the design meshing condition has been attained on units of the same design.

10.6.9 The normal backlash between any pair of gears should not be less than:

$$\frac{a \cdot \alpha_n}{9000} + 0,1 \text{ mm}$$

where

$\alpha_n$  = normal pressure angle, in degrees  
 $a$  = centre distance, in mm.

## Section 11 Shafting systems

### 11.1 Design

11.1.1 For details of design requirements, see Pt 3, Ch 2.

### 11.2 Construction

11.2.1 Boring of the sternframe, fitting of the sterntube and bearings and aligning the shafting are to be carried out to a formal traceable procedure.

11.2.2 Before boring the sternframe, the ship's structure should be generally complete to the upper deck and to the engine-room forward bulkhead.

### 11.3 Shaft bearing clearances

11.3.1 After installation of the screwshaft and any shafting installed in bearings fitted in stern bushes or shaft bearings in 'A' and 'P' brackets, the bearing clearances are to be measured and recorded. The records are to be placed on board.

## Section 12 Propellers

### 12.1 Design

12.1.1 For details of design requirements, see Pt 4, Ch 1.

### 12.2 Construction and welding

12.2.1 Castings are to be examined at the manufacturer's works.

12.2.2 All finished propellers are to be examined for material defects, and finish, and measured for dimensional accuracy of diameter and pitch. Propeller repairs by welding, where proposed, are to be in accordance with the requirements of Ch 9,1 of the Rules for Materials.

### 12.3 Shop tests of keyless propellers

12.3.1 The bedding of the propeller with the shaft is to be demonstrated. Sufficient time is to be allowed for the temperature of the components to equalise before bedding. Alternative means for demonstrating the bedding of the propeller will be considered.

12.3.2 Means are to be provided to indicate the relative axial position of the propeller boss on the shaft taper.

### 12.4 Shop tests of controllable pitch propellers

12.4.1 The components of controllable pitch propellers are also subject to material tests, as in the case of solid propellers.

12.4.2 Examination of all the major components including dimensional checks, hydraulic pressure testing of the hub and cone assembly and the oil distribution box, where fitted, together with a full shop trial of the completed controllable pitch propeller assembly, is to be carried out.

### 12.5 Final fitting of keyless propellers

12.5.1 After verifying that the propeller and shaft are at the same temperature and that the mating surfaces are clean and free from oil or grease, the propeller is to be fitted on the shaft under survey. The propeller nut is to be securely locked to the shaft.

12.5.2 Permanent reference marks are to be made on the propeller boss nut and shaft to indicate angular and axial positioning of the propeller. Care is to be taken in marking the inboard end of the shaft taper to minimise stress raising effects.

12.5.3 The outside of the propeller boss is to be hard stamped with the following details:

For oil injection method of fitting, the start point load, in Newtons, and the axial pull-up at 0°C and 35°C, in mm.  
 For the dry fitting method, the push-up load at 0°C and 35°C, in Newtons.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 12 to 15

12.5.4 A copy of the fitting curve relative to temperature and means for determining any subsequent movement of the propeller are to be placed on board.

### 12.6 Final fitting of keyed propellers

12.6.1 The fit of the screwshaft cone to both the working and any spare propeller is to be carried out under survey. Generally, a satisfactory fit for keyed type propellers should show a light, overall marking of the cone surface with a tendency towards heavier marking in way of the larger diameter of the cone face. The final fit to cone should be made with the key in place.

## Section 13 Water jet units

### 13.1 Design

13.1.1 For details of design requirements, see Pt 4, Ch 2.

### 13.2 Construction and welding

13.2.1 The following components are to be inspected at the manufacturer's works:

- Steering nozzle.
- Reverse bucket.
- Stator impeller.
- Integral bearing.

13.2.2 Welded construction is to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials.

13.2.3 Welded components are to comply with the requirements of Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3, and be subject to stress relief heat treatment upon completion. Where an impeller has welded blades, non-destructive testing is to be carried out to an approved procedure.

### 13.3 Testing

13.3.1 Testing of the first installation of a new type of water jet unit is required and is to demonstrate the adequacy of the steering and reversing mechanisms during the most arduous manoeuvres.

## Section 14 Thrusters

### 14.1 Design and construction

14.1.1 For details of design and construction requirements, see Pt 4, Ch 2.

### 14.2 Azimuth thrusters

14.2.1 The performance specified for the craft is to be demonstrated.

14.2.2 The actual values of steering torque are to be verified during sea trials to confirm that the design maximum dynamic duty torque has not been exceeded.

### 14.3 Tunnel thrusters

14.3.1 It is to be demonstrated that the thruster unit meets the specified performance.

## Section 15 Steering systems

### 15.1 Design

15.1.1 For details of design requirements, see Pt 6, Ch 1.

### 15.2 Construction

15.2.1 The requirements of the Rules relating to the testing of Class I pressure vessels, piping and related fittings including hydraulic testing apply.

### 15.3 Type testing

15.3.1 Each type of power unit pump is to be subjected to a type test. The type test is to be for a duration of not less than 100 hours, the test arrangements are to be such that the pump may run in idling conditions, and at maximum delivery capacity at maximum working pressure. During the test, idling periods are to be alternated with periods at maximum delivery capacity at maximum working pressure. The passage from one condition to another should occur at least as quickly as on board. During the whole test no abnormal heating, excessive vibration or other irregularities are permitted. After the test, the pump is to be opened out and inspected. Type tests may be waived for a power unit which has been proven to be reliable in marine service.

### 15.4 Testing

15.4.1 After installation on board the steering unit is to be subjected to the applicable hydrostatic and running tests.

15.4.2 The steering system is to be demonstrated to show that the requirements of the Rules have been met. The trial is to include the operation of the following:

- (a) The steering system, including demonstration of the functional performances.
- (b) The steering power units, including transfer between steering power units.
- (c) The isolation of one power actuating system, checking the time for regaining steering capability.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 15, 16 &amp; 17

- (d) The hydraulic fluid recharging system (may be effected at the dockside).
- (e) The alternative power supply and emergency hand pump operation.
- (f) The steering controls, including transfer of control and local control.
- (g) The means of communication between the steering compartment and the wheelhouse; also, the engine room, if applicable (may be effected at the dockside).
- (h) The alarms and indicators (may be effected at the dockside).
- (j) Where the steering system is designed to avoid hydraulic locking this feature is to be demonstrated (may be effected at the dockside).

### Section 16 Sea trials

#### 16.1 Sea trials requirements

16.1.1 Sea trials are to be of sufficient duration and carried out under normal operating conditions applicable to the intended class notation. Individual Chapters give specific requirements.

#### 16.2 Programme

16.2.1 Sea trials are to include the demonstration of:

- (a) The adequacy of the starting arrangements of the main engines, auxiliary systems and emergency generators.
- (b) The effectiveness of the steering gear control systems, see 15.4.2.
- (c) Manoeuvring, to include:
  - starting;
  - normal and emergency stopping;
  - reversing;
  - governor testing;
  - safety devices, and associated indicators; and
  - alarms.
- (d) The redundancy arrangements.
- (e) Tooth contact markings in geared installations using a recognised technique. The marking is to be as detailed in 10.6.
- (f) For controllable pitch propellers, the pitch setting under failure conditions.
- (g) Operation of sliding watertight doors under working conditions.
- (h) Anchoring test to demonstrate that the windlass with brakes, etc., functions satisfactorily, and that the power to raise the anchor can be developed and satisfies the Rule requirements. See Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 5,7.
- (j) Operation of bilge and dewatering systems to dry compartments.

#### 16.3 Performance testing

16.3.1 The performance of main propulsion machinery is to be demonstrated at full power in accordance with an agreed trials schedule. Engine changeover arrangements are to be demonstrated where applicable.

16.3.2 It is to be verified that the propeller performs satisfactorily under ahead and astern conditions. Where controllable pitch propellers are fitted, the free route astern trial is to be carried out with the propeller blades set in the full pitch astern condition.

16.3.3 It is to be verified that large movements of resiliently mounted machinery do not occur during start up and stop, or during normal operating conditions.

16.3.4 The installation should be tested to ensure that gas turbines cannot be continuously operated within any speed range where excessive vibration, stalling or surging may be encountered.

16.3.5 Overloading of machinery is not to occur under continuous astern power.

16.3.6 The following information is to be available on board for the use of designated personnel:

- The results of trials to determine stopping times, ship headings and distance;
- For ships having multiple propellers, the results of trials to determine the ability to navigate and manoeuvre with one or more propellers inoperative;
- For ships having a single propulsor driven by multiple engines or electric motors, the results of trials to determine the ability to navigate and manoeuvre with the largest engine or electric motor inoperative.

16.3.7 It is to be demonstrated at the sea trial that the stopping distance achieved when the ship is initially proceeding ahead with a speed of at least 90 per cent of the ship's speed corresponding to 85 per cent of the maximum rated propulsion power should not exceed 15 ship lengths after the astern order has been given. However, if the displacement of the ship makes this criterion impracticable then in no case should the stopping distance exceed 20 ship lengths.

### Section 17 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)

#### 17.1 General

17.1.1 An FMEA is to be carried out in accordance with 17.1.2 to 17.1.6 for systems (a), (b) and (c) as specified in 3.3.8. The analysis is to demonstrate that suitable risk mitigation has been achieved so that the system will tolerate a single failure with regard to the criteria specified in Pt 1, Ch 1,4.2.9 and 4.2.10. The scope of analysis required for each system is defined in the respective parts of the Rules.

17.1.2 The FMEA is to be carried out using the format presented in Table 2.17.1 or an equivalent format that addresses the same safety issues. Analysis in accordance with IEC 60812, *Analysis techniques for system reliability – Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)*, or IMO MSC Resolution 36(63) Annex 4 – *Procedures for Failure Mode and Effects Analysis*, would be acceptable.



# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Sections 17 & 18

**Table 2.17.1 Failure mode and effects analysis**

| System   |                       |          |                   | Element      |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |
|----------|-----------------------|----------|-------------------|--------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------|----------|-------------------|---------|
| Item No. | Component description | Function | Mode of operation | Failure mode | Failure cause | Failure detection | Effect of failure |           | Severity | Corrective action | Remarks |
|          |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   | On item           | On system |          |                   |         |
|          |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |
|          |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |
|          |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |
|          |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |

NOTE  
The severity category is to be in accordance with the following:  
(a) Catastrophic; (b) Hazardous; (c) Major or (d) Minor.

**17.1.3** The FMEA is to be organised in terms of items of equipment and function. The effects of item failures at stated level and at higher levels are to be analysed to determine the effects on the system as a whole. Actions for mitigation are to be determined.

**17.1.4** The FMEA is to:

- Identify the equipment or sub-system, mode of operation and the equipment.
- Identify potential failure modes and their causes.
- Evaluate the effects on the system of each failure mode.
- Identify measures for reducing the risks associated with each failure mode.
- Identify trials and testing necessary to prove conclusions.

**17.1.5** At sub-system level it is acceptable, for the purpose of these Rules, to consider failure of equipment items and their functions, e.g. failure of a pump to produce flow or pressure head. It is not required that the failure of components within that pump be analysed. In addition, failure need only be dealt with as a cause of failure of the pump.

**17.1.6** Where FMEA is used for consideration of systems that depend on software based functions for control or co-ordination, the analysis is to investigate failure of the function rather than a specific analysis of the software code.

## Section 18 Fin stabilisers

### 18.1 Design and construction

**18.1.1** For requirements relating to fin stabiliser scantlings, arrangements, foundations, supporting structure and watertight integrity, see Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3,1.

**18.1.2** Fin stabiliser actuating systems are to be consistent with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1,5 as applicable.

**18.1.3** Materials for components of fin stabilisers are to be consistent with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1,3, as applicable.

**18.1.4** Control and electrical engineering systems are to comply with the requirements of Part 9 and Part 10 respectively, as applicable.

**18.1.5** Attention is to be given to any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority.

### 18.2 Performance and control

**18.2.1** Fin stabilisers are to be capable of satisfying the specified functional performance requirements as detailed in the design statement, see 3.3.14(a).

**18.2.2** For retractable type fin stabilisers, the servo system arrangements are to be capable of extending the fins fully at the ship's maximum service speed and in the most onerous environmental conditions, for which the ship is designed, see Vol 1, Pt 5, Ch 2,2.3.

**18.2.3** After setting to work, the fin stabiliser system is to be entirely automatic irrespective of ship speed or sea state.

**18.2.4** Where provision is made for an automatic forced roll facility, the roll amplitude and period are to be manually adjustable. Forced induction of rolling motion is not to result in an unsafe condition for the ship, equipment or the crew. The arrangements are also to satisfy the following:

- An automatic forced roll facility is to be selectable by a switch located on the navigating bridge which is located or protected so as to prevent inadvertent operation of this function.
- Controls are to be provided on the navigating bridge to manually adjust the amplitude and periodicity of the induced rolling.

**18.2.5** Failure of any part of the fin stabiliser unit or its control system is not to result in an unsafe condition which will have detrimental effect on the ship's operating or sea-keeping capability.

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

Section 18

18.2.6 In the event of failure of the fin actuating system, a hand pump is to be provided, mounted in a readily accessible position, which is capable of moving the fin to a known position and securing it in that position in the absence of electrical power, and being operated by no more than two men when the ship is stopped.

18.2.7 Consideration is to be given to hydraulic locking or any other condition where the equipment becomes mechanically locked and cannot be operated. Where the possibility of hydraulic locking cannot be avoided, a clear indication of hydraulic lock is to be provided at the stabiliser control position.

### 18.3 Control, monitoring and alarms

18.3.1 Fin stabiliser actuating control arrangements are to be located in readily accessible positions that have means of communication provided to the machinery control station and the navigating bridge.

18.3.2 Fin stabiliser function indicators are to be provided on the navigating bridge and at the main machinery control station.

18.3.3 The fin position feedback signals are to be independent of the actuating systems.

18.3.4 Alarms and monitoring requirements are indicated in Table 2.18.1.

18.3.5 All alarms associated with fin stabiliser faults are to be indicated on the navigating bridge and in accordance with the requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1.

### 18.4 Trials and testing

18.4.1 After installation on board the fin stabiliser unit is to be subject to hydrostatic and running tests.

18.4.2 Testing and trials are to be carried out in accordance with procedures that have been agreed between the Shipyard, Owner/Operator and LR. The testing is to demonstrate:

- The stabiliser system including the functional performances specified in the design statement required by 3.3.14(a).
- Extending and retracting the fins.
- Alternative electrical power supply arrangements where provided and functional capability of the emergency hand pump arrangements.
- Stabiliser controls.
- The alarms and indicators.
- Where the stabiliser system is designed to avoid hydraulic locking, this feature is to be demonstrated.

**Table 2.18.1 Alarms and monitoring**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Alarm   | Note                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Stabiliser system active                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | -       | Indication, see 18.3                                                                                                          |
| Deviation of actual fin angle position from that demanded                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Fault   | See 18.3.3                                                                                                                    |
| Fin angle limit exceeded                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Fault   |                                                                                                                               |
| Roll angle                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | High    |                                                                                                                               |
| Position indicator of fin                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | —       | Indication, see Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3,3.1.16                                                                                      |
| Fin stabiliser power units, power                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Failure | —                                                                                                                             |
| Control system power                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Failure | —                                                                                                                             |
| Fin stabiliser hydraulic oil tank level                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Low     | Each tank to be monitored                                                                                                     |
| Hydraulic oil temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | High    | Where oil cooler is fitted                                                                                                    |
| Hydraulic lock                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Fault   | Where more than one system (either power or control) can be operated simultaneously each system is to be monitored (see Note) |
| Hydraulic oil filter differential pressure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | High    | When oil filters are fitted                                                                                                   |
| <b>NOTE</b><br>This alarm is to identify the system at fault and to be activated when (for example):<br>Position of the variable displacement pump control system does not correspond with given order; or incorrect position of 3-way full flow valve or similar in constant delivery pump system is detected. |         |                                                                                                                               |

# Requirements for Design, Construction, Installation and Sea Trials of Engineering Systems

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 2

### Section 19

---

#### ■ *Section 19* **Fired galley arrangements**

##### **19.1 Oil and liquefied petroleum gas fired galleys**

*19.1.1* The use of oil or liquefied petroleum gas fired galleys is acceptable provided arrangements are also acceptable to the Naval Authority and the requirements of 19.1.2 to 19.1.6 are complied with.

*19.1.2* The oil fuel tank is to be located outside the galley and is to be fitted with approved means of filling and venting.

*19.1.3* The fuel supply to the burners is to be controlled from a position which will always be accessible in the event of a fire occurring in the galley.

*19.1.4* The galley is to be well ventilated.

*19.1.5* When liquefied petroleum gas is used, bottles are to be stored on the open deck or in a well ventilated space which only opens to the open deck. Protection against military action is to be to the satisfaction of the Naval Authority and the arrangements are to be acceptable to LR.

*19.1.6* The piping design is to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1 as applicable.

---

# Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 3

Sections 1 & 2

### Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Manufacture and workmanship of fusion welded pressure vessels**
- 3 **Repairs to welds on fusion welded pressure vessels**
- 4 **Post-weld heat treatment of pressure vessels**
- 5 **Welded pressure pipes**
- 6 **Non-Destructive Examination**

### ■ Section 1 General

#### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to the welding of pressure vessels and process equipment, heating and steam raising boilers and pressure pipes. The allocation of Class is determined from the design criteria referenced in Pt 7, Ch 1 and Part 8.

1.1.2 Fusion welded pressure vessels will be accepted only if manufactured by firms equipped and competent to undertake the quality of welding required for the Class of vessel proposed. For Class 1, 2/1 and 2/2 pressure vessels, the manufacturer's works are to be approved in accordance with the requirements specified in *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships*, Book A Procedure MQPS 0-4.

1.1.3 For pressure vessels which only have circumferential seams, see Pt 8, Ch 1,1.5.4 and Pt 8, Ch 2,1.5.5.

#### 1.2 General requirements for welding plant and welding quality

1.2.1 In the first instance, and before work is commenced, the Surveyors are to be satisfied that the required quality of welding is attainable with the proposed welding plant, equipment and procedures in accordance with the guidelines specified in *Materials and Qualification Procedures for Ships Book A, Procedure 0-4*.

1.2.2 All welding is to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Chapter 13 of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

### ■ Section 2 Manufacture and workmanship of fusion welded pressure vessels

#### 2.1 General requirements

2.1.1 Prior to commencing construction, the design of the vessel is to be approved where required by Pt 8, Ch 1,1.6 and Pt 8, Ch 2,1.6.

2.1.2 Pressure vessels will be accepted only if manufactured by firms that have been assessed and approved in accordance with MQPS 0-4.

#### 2.2 Materials of construction

2.2.1 Where the construction requires post-weld heat treatment, consideration should be given to certifying the material after subjecting the test pieces to a simulated heat treatment.

2.2.2 Pressure vessels are to be constructed and examined in accordance with the requirements specified in Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials, unless more stringent requirements are specified.

#### 2.3 Tolerances for cylindrical shells

2.3.1 Measurements are to be made to the surface of the parent plate and not to a weld, fitting or other raised part.

2.3.2 In assessing the out-of-roundness of pressure vessels, the difference between the maximum and minimum internal diameters measured at one cross-section is not to exceed the amount given in Table 3.2.1.

**Table 3.2.1 Tolerances for cylindrical shells**

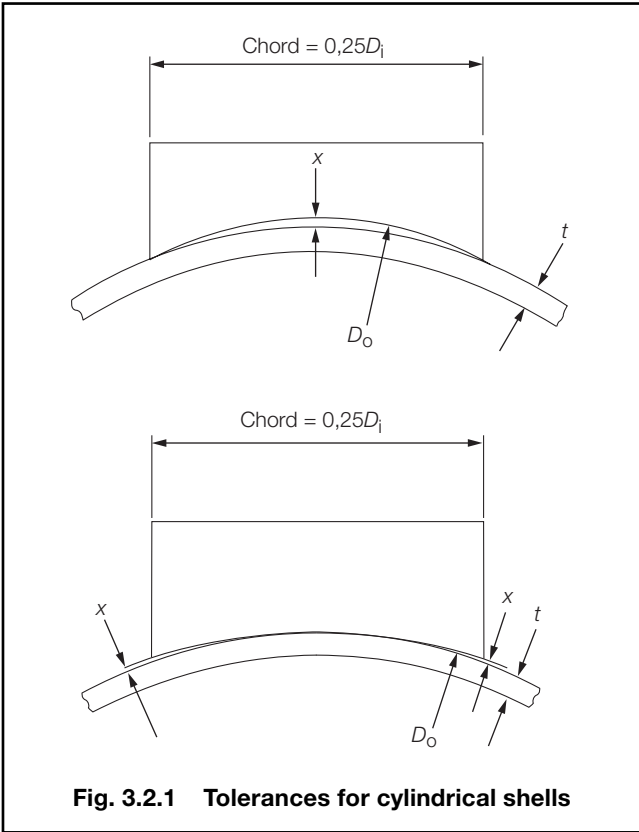
| Nominal internal diameter of vessel, in mm                                                           | Difference between maximum and minimum diameters | Maximum departure from designed form                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ≤ 300<br>> 300 ≤ 460<br>> 460 ≤ 600<br>> 600 ≤ 900<br>> 900 ≤ 1220<br>> 1220 ≤ 1520<br>> 1520 ≤ 1900 | 1,0 per cent of internal diameter                | 1,2 mm<br>1,6 mm<br>2,4 mm<br>3,2 mm<br>4,0 mm<br>4,8 mm<br>5,6 mm |
| > 1900 ≤ 2300<br>> 2300 ≤ 2670<br>> 2670 ≤ 3950                                                      | 19 mm                                            | 6,4 mm<br>7,2 mm<br>8,0 mm                                         |
| > 3950 ≤ 4650<br>> 4650                                                                              | 19 mm<br>0,4 per cent of internal diameter       | 0,2 per cent of internal diameter                                  |

Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping

Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 3

Sections 2 to 5

2.3.3 The profile measured on the inside or outside of the shell, by means of a gauge of the designed form of the shell, and having a chord length equal to one-quarter of the internal diameter of the vessel, is not to depart from the designed form by more than the amount given in Table 3.2.1. This amount corresponds to x in Fig. 3.2.1.



2.3.4 Shell sections are to be measured for out-of-roundness, either when laid flat on their sides or when set up on end. When the shell sections are checked while lying on their sides, each measurement for diameter is to be repeated after turning the shell through 90° about its longitudinal axis. The two measurements for each diameter are to be averaged, and the amount of out-of-roundness calculated from the average values so determined.

2.3.5 Where there is any local departure from circularity due to the presence of flats or peaks at welded seams, the departure from designed form shall not exceed that of Table 3.2.1.

2.3.6 The external circumference of the completed shell is not to depart from the calculated circumference (based upon nominal inside diameter and the actual plate thickness) by more than the amounts given in Table 3.2.2.

Table 3.2.2 Circumferential tolerances

| Outside diameter<br>(nominal inside diameter plus twice<br>actual plate thickness),<br>in mm | Circumferential<br>tolerance |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 300 to 600 inclusive                                                                         | ±5 mm                        |
| Greater than 600                                                                             | ±0,25 per cent               |

Section 3  
Repairs to welds on fusion welded pressure vessels

3.1 General

3.1.1 Repairs to welds on fusion welded pressure vessels are to be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials.

Section 4  
Post-weld heat treatment of pressure vessels

4.1 General

4.1.1 Post weld heat treatment of fusion welded pressure vessels is to be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials.

Section 5  
Welded pressure pipes

5.1 General

5.1.1 Fabrication of pipework is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13,5 of the Rules for Materials.

5.2 Welding workmanship

5.2.1 Preheating is to be effected by a method which ensures uniformity of temperature at the joint. The method of heating and the means adopted for temperature control are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

# Requirements for Fusion Welding of Pressure Vessels and Piping

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 3

Sections 5 & 6

5.2.2 All welding is to be performed in accordance with the approved welding procedures by welders who are qualified for the materials, joint types and welding processes employed.

5.2.3 Welding without filler metal is generally not permitted for welding of duplex stainless steel materials.

5.2.4 All welds in high pressure and high temperature pipelines are to have a smooth surface finish and even contour; if necessary, they are to be made smooth by grinding.

5.2.5 Check tests of the quality of the welding are to be carried out periodically at the discretion of the Surveyors.

---

## ■ Section 6 Non-Destructive Examination

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 Non-Destructive Examination (NDE) of pressure vessels is to be performed in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13,5 of the Rules for Materials.

---



## Section

**1 General**

---

**■ Section 1  
General****1.1 Application**

**1.1.1** Adequate spare parts for the propelling and essential auxiliary machinery together with the necessary tools for maintenance and repair shall be readily available for use.

**1.1.2** The spare parts to be supplied and their location is to be the responsibility of the Navy but must take into account the design and arrangements of the machinery and the intended service and operation of the ship. Account should also be taken of the recommendations of the manufacturers and any applicable requirement of the Naval Authority.

**1.2 Guidance for spare parts**

**1.2.1** For general guidance purposes, spare parts for main and auxiliary machinery installations are shown in the LR's *Spare Gear Guidance* located on Class Direct Live.

---





# Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design

Section 1

## Section

### 1 Requirements for machinery and engineering systems of unconventional design

#### ■ Section 1 Requirements for machinery and engineering systems of unconventional design

#### 1.1 General – Scope and objectives

1.1.1 The requirements of this Section aim to ensure that risks to maritime safety and the environment, stemming from the introduction of machinery or engineering systems of unconventional design, are addressed insofar as they affect the objectives of naval classification.

1.1.2 The requirements of this Section are to be satisfied where machinery is required to be constructed, installed and tested in accordance with Lloyd's Register's (LR's) Rules and Regulations and for which the corresponding machinery class notation is to be assigned, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.8.

1.1.3 The requirements apply to machinery and engineering systems considered by LR to be of unconventional design and which, as a result, are not directly addressed by LR's extant Rules and Regulations. It should be noted however, that the general requirements of LR's Rules and Regulations are to be satisfied as applicable.

1.1.4 Compliance with ISO/IEC15288 *Systems Engineering – System Life Cycle Processes* or an acceptable equivalent National Standard may be accepted as meeting the requirements of 1.3 to 1.11.

#### 1.2 Information to be submitted

1.2.1 Information is to be submitted for assessment of compliance with the general requirements of LR's Rules and Regulations, including the general requirements for:

- (a) Machinery, see Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2;
- (b) Steam raising plant and pressure vessels see Pt 8, Ch 1 and Ch 2;
- (c) Machinery and ship piping systems, see Pt 7, Ch 2, Ch 3 and Ch 5;
- (d) Control engineering, see Pt 9, Ch 1;
- (e) Electrical engineering, see Pt 10, Ch 1;
- (f) Materials, see the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials*.

1.2.2 In addition to the information identified in 1.2.1, the information described in 1.2.3 and 1.2.4 is also to be submitted for consideration.

1.2.3 General description detailing the extent of the machinery or engineering system, the shipboard services it is to provide, its operating principles, and its functionality and capability when operating in the environment to which it is likely to be exposed under both normal and foreseeable abnormal conditions. The general description is to be supported by the following information as applicable:

- (a) System block diagram.
- (b) Piping and instrumentation diagrams.
- (c) Description of operating modes, including: Start-up, shut-down, automatic, reversionary, manual and emergency.
- (d) Description of safety related arrangements, including: Safeguards, automatic safety systems and interfaces with ships' safety systems.
- (e) Description of connections to other shipboard machinery, equipment and systems, including: Electrical, mechanical, fluids and automation.
- (f) Plans of physical arrangements, including: Location, operational access and maintenance access.
- (g) Operating manuals, including: Instructions for start-up, operation, shut-down, instructions for maintenance, instructions for adjustments to the performance and functionality and details of risk mitigation arrangements.
- (h) Maintenance manuals, including: Instructions for routine maintenance, repair following failure, disposal of components and recommended spares inventory.

1.2.4 Project process documentation including:

- (a) Project Management Plan, see 1.3;
- (b) Requirements Definition Document, see 1.4;
- (c) Quality Assurance Plan, see 1.5;
- (d) Design Definition Document, see 1.6;
- (e) Risk Management Plan, see 1.7;
- (f) Configuration Management Plan, see 1.8;
- (g) Verification Plan, see 1.9;
- (h) Integration Plan, see 1.10;
- (j) Validation Plan (certification and survey), see 1.11.

#### 1.3 Project management

1.3.1 A project management procedure is to be established in order to define and manage the key project processes. The project processes are to include the processes described in 1.4 to 1.11.

1.3.2 For the entire project, and each of the processes within the project, the project management procedure is to define the following:

- (a) Activities to be carried out.
- (b) Required inputs and outputs.
- (c) Roles of key personnel.
- (d) Responsibilities of key personnel.
- (e) Competence of key personnel.
- (f) Schedules for the activities.

# Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 5

Section 1

### 1.4 Requirements definition

1.4.1 A requirements definition procedure is to be established in order to define the functional behaviour and performance of the machinery or engineering system required by individual stakeholders, in the environments to which the machinery or engineering system is likely to be exposed under both normal and foreseeable emergency conditions.

1.4.2 The procedure is to take account of requirements resulting from key stakeholders, including:

- (a) Ship's owner.
- (b) Ship's operator.
- (c) Ship's crew.
- (d) Shipyard.
- (e) Systems integrator.
- (f) Designers.
- (g) Maintenance personnel.
- (h) Surveyors.
- (j) Manufacturers and suppliers.
- (k) Naval Authority.
- (l) LR.

1.4.3 The procedure is to take account of requirements resulting from the following influences:

- (a) Operations that the ship is intended to perform during trials, at sea, while docking and training exercises, including those related to mission specific activities and degraded and reverisionary modes of operation.
- (b) Ship conditions during normal operations and conditions arising from accidents or reasonable foreseeable failures or misuse of ship equipment or systems.
- (c) The environmental conditions that the equipment or systems will experience due to their location within the ship and due to the geographical location of the ship.
- (d) The requirements of applicable legislation, naval, National and International Standards and classification rules, codes of practice and other instruments agreed by the key stakeholders.
- (e) The number, availability, competence and overall capability of personnel involved with the use, maintenance, assessment and supervision of the system during ship operations.
- (f) Design constraints identified through consideration of the lifecycle of the ship.

1.4.4 The procedure is to specify the functional behaviour and performance requirements and is to identify the source of the requirements.

### 1.5 Quality assurance

1.5.1 A quality assurance procedure is to be established in order to ensure that the quality of the machinery or engineering system is in accordance with a defined quality management system.

1.5.2 The procedure is to define the specific quality controls to be applied during the project in order to satisfy the requirements of the quality management system.

1.5.3 The quality management system is to satisfy the requirements of ISO9001:2000 *Quality management systems – Requirements*, or an equivalent acceptable National Standard.

### 1.6 Design definition

1.6.1 A design definition procedure is to be established in order to define the requirements for the design of machinery or an engineering system which satisfies stakeholder requirements, quality assurance requirements and complies with basic internationally recognised design requirements for safety and functionality.

1.6.2 The procedure is to ensure that the design of the machinery or engineering system satisfies:

- (a) Statutory legislation.
- (b) LR's requirements.
- (c) International Standards and codes of practice where relevant.

1.6.3 The procedure is to take account of stakeholder requirements, see 1.4.

1.6.4 The procedure is to take account of quality assurance requirements, see 1.7.

1.6.5 The procedure is to ensure that the requirements for the design of major components and subsystems of the machinery or engineering system can be verified before and after integration.

1.6.6 The procedure is to specify the design requirements and is to identify the source of the requirements.

1.6.7 Any deviations from stakeholder requirements are to be identified, justified and accepted by the originating stakeholder.

### 1.7 Risk management

1.7.1 A risk management procedure is to be established in order to ensure that any risks stemming from the introduction of the machinery or engineering system are addressed, in particular risks affecting:

- (a) The structural strength and integrity of the ship's hull.
- (b) The safety of shipboard machinery and engineering systems.
- (c) The safety of shipboard personnel.
- (d) The reliability of essential and emergency machinery and engineering systems.
- (e) The environment.

1.7.2 The procedure is to consider the hazards associated with installation, operation, maintenance and disposal both with the machinery or engineering system functioning correctly and following any reasonably foreseeable failure.

1.7.3 The procedure is to take account of stakeholder requirements, see 1.4.

# Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 5

Section 1

1.7.4 The procedure is to take account of design requirements, see 1.6.

1.7.5 The procedure is to ensure that hazards are identified using acceptable and recognised hazard identification techniques, and that the effects of the following influences are considered:

- (a) Operations that the ship is intended to perform during trials, in service, while docking and in harbour, including those related to mission specific activities and degraded and reversionary modes of operation.
- (b) Ship conditions during normal operations and abnormal conditions arising from reasonably foreseeable failures or misuse of ship equipment or systems.
- (c) Configurations and modes of operation provided for the intended control of machinery and engineering systems.
- (d) The environmental conditions that the equipment or systems will experience due to their location within the ship and due to the geographical location in which the ship operates.
- (e) The reliance and effects on the operation of engineering systems and machinery of the provision and availability of supplies and services and user interaction, including assessment of interdependencies.
- (f) The environmental impact of the ship throughout its life-cycle.

1.7.6 The procedure is to ensure that risks are analysed using acceptable and recognised risk analysis techniques and that the following consequences are considered:

- (a) Loss of function.
- (b) Loss of services essential to the safety of the ship, services essential to the safety of shipboard personnel and services essential to the protection of the environment.
- (c) Damage to components.
- (d) Damage caused by fire, explosion, electric shock, harmful releases and hazardous releases.

1.7.7 The procedure is to ensure that risks are eliminated wherever possible. Risks which cannot be eliminated are to be mitigated as necessary.

1.7.8 Details of risks, and the means by which they are mitigated, are to be included in the operating manual, see 1.2.3.

### 1.8 Configuration management

1.8.1 A configuration management procedure is to be established in order to ensure traceability of the configuration of the machinery or engineering system, its subsystems and its components.

1.8.2 The procedure is to identify items essential for the safety or operation of the machinery or engineering system, and which could foreseeably be changed during the life time of the machinery or engineering system, including:

- (a) Documentation.
- (b) Software.
- (c) Sensors.
- (d) Actuators.
- (e) Instrumentation modules, boards and cards.

- (f) Valves.
- (g) Pumps.

1.8.3 The procedure is to take account of the design requirements, see 1.6.

1.8.4 The procedure is to include items used to mitigate risks, see 1.7.

1.8.5 The procedure is to ensure that any changes to configuration control items are:

- (a) Identified.
- (b) Recorded.
- (c) Evaluated.
- (d) Approved.
- (e) Incorporated.
- (f) Verified.

### 1.9 Verification

1.9.1 A verification procedure is to be established in order to ensure that subsystems and major components of the machinery or engineering system satisfy their design requirements.

1.9.2 The procedure is to verify design requirements, see 1.6.

1.9.3 The procedure is to identify the requirements to be verified, the means by which they are to be verified, and the points in the project at which verification is to be carried out.

1.9.4 The procedure is to be based on one or a combination of the following activities as appropriate:

- (a) Design review.
- (b) Product inspection.
- (c) Process audit.
- (d) Product testing.

### 1.10 Integration

1.10.1 An integration procedure is to be established in order to ensure that the machinery or engineering system is assembled in a sequence which allows verification of individual subsystems and major components following integration in advance of validating the entire machinery or engineering system.

1.10.2 The procedure is to take account of the verification requirements, see 1.9.

1.10.3 The procedure is to identify the subsystems and major components, the sequence in which they are to be integrated, the points in the project at which integration is to be carried out, and the points in the project at which verification is to be carried out.

# Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design

## Volume 2, Part 1, Chapter 5

Section 1

### 1.11 Validation (certification and survey)

1.11.1 A validation procedure is to be established in order to ensure the functional behaviour and performance of the machinery or engineering system meets with its functional and performance requirements.

1.11.2 The procedure is to validate stakeholder requirements, see 1.4.

1.11.3 The procedure is to validate arrangements required to mitigate risks, see 1.7.

1.11.4 The procedure is to validate the traceability of the configuration control items, see 1.8.

1.11.5 The procedure is to identify the requirements to be validated, the means by which they are to be validated and the points in the project at which validation is to be carried out, including:

- (a) Factory acceptance testing.
- (b) Integration testing.
- (c) Commissioning.
- (d) Sea trials.
- (e) Survey.

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2  
Part 2 Prime Movers  
January 2013

|             |          |                                 |
|-------------|----------|---------------------------------|
| PART        | 1        | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS            |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>PRIME MOVERS</b>             |
|             |          | <b>Chapter 1 Diesel Engines</b> |
|             |          | <b>2 Gas Turbines</b>           |
|             |          | <b>3 Steam Turbines</b>         |
| PART        | 3        | TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS            |
| PART        | 4        | PROPULSION DEVICES              |
| PART        | 5        | SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT   |
| PART        | 6        | STEERING SYSTEMS                |
| PART        | 7        | PIPING SYSTEMS                  |
| PART        | 8        | PRESSURE PLANT                  |
| PART        | 9        | CONTROL ENGINEERING             |
| PART        | 10       | ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING          |
| PART        | 11       | SUPPORT SYSTEMS                 |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

---

|                |          |                                                                    |
|----------------|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>DIESEL ENGINES</b>                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                        |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                                        |
|                | 1.2      | Power ratings                                                      |
|                | 1.3      | Power conditions for generator sets                                |
|                | 1.4      | Inclination of ship                                                |
|                | 1.5      | Engine type testing                                                |
|                | 1.6      | Turning gear                                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Particulars to be submitted</b>                                 |
|                | 2.1      | Plans and information                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Materials</b>                                                   |
|                | 3.1      | Materials test and inspections                                     |
|                | 3.2      | Crankshaft materials                                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Crankshaft design</b>                                           |
|                | 4.1      | Application and information to be submitted                        |
|                | 4.2      | Symbols                                                            |
|                | 4.3      | Stress concentration factors                                       |
|                | 4.4      | Nominal stresses                                                   |
|                | 4.5      | Maximum stress levels                                              |
|                | 4.6      | Equivalent alternating stress                                      |
|                | 4.7      | Fatigue strength                                                   |
|                | 4.8      | Acceptability criteria                                             |
|                | 4.9      | Crankshaft oil hole                                                |
|                | 4.10     | Shrink fit of semi-built crankshafts                               |
|                | 4.11     | Alternative method for calculation of stress concentration factors |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Construction and welded structures</b>                          |
|                | 5.1      | Crankcases                                                         |
|                | 5.2      | Welded joints                                                      |
|                | 5.3      | Materials and construction                                         |
|                | 5.4      | Post-weld heat treatment                                           |
|                | 5.5      | Inspection                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Safety arrangements on engines</b>                              |
|                | 6.1      | Cylinder relief valves                                             |
|                | 6.2      | Crankcase relief valves                                            |
|                | 6.3      | Vent pipes                                                         |
|                | 6.4      | Warning notice                                                     |
|                | 6.5      | Crankcase access and lighting                                      |
|                | 6.6      | Emergency operation                                                |
|                | 6.7      | Oil mist detection                                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Air compressors and starting arrangements</b>                   |
|                | 7.1      | General requirements                                               |
|                | 7.2      | Plans and particulars                                              |
|                | 7.3      | Materials                                                          |
|                | 7.4      | Design and construction                                            |
|                | 7.5      | Testing                                                            |
|                | 7.6      | Safety arrangements and monitoring                                 |
|                | 7.7      | Crankcase relief valves                                            |
|                | 7.8      | Number of crankcase relief valves                                  |
|                | 7.9      | Size of crankcase relief valves                                    |
|                | 7.10     | Vent pipes                                                         |
|                | 7.11     | Dead ship condition starting arrangements                          |
|                | 7.12     | Air receivers                                                      |
|                | 7.13     | Starting air pipe systems and safety fittings                      |
|                | 7.14     | Electrical starting arrangements                                   |
|                | 7.15     | Starting of the emergency source of power                          |
|                | 7.16     | Engine control, alarm, monitoring and safety system power supplies |



---

|                |           |                                                                                    |
|----------------|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b>  | <b>Piping systems</b>                                                              |
|                | 8.1       | General                                                                            |
|                | 8.2       | Oil fuel systems                                                                   |
|                | 8.3       | Oil fuel filters and fittings                                                      |
|                | 8.4       | Lubricating oil systems                                                            |
|                | 8.5       | Engine cooling water systems                                                       |
|                | 8.6       | Intake and exhaust systems                                                         |
|                | 8.7       | High pressure oil systems                                                          |
|                | 8.8       | Air induction systems                                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b>  | <b>Control and monitoring</b>                                                      |
|                | 9.1       | General                                                                            |
|                | 9.2       | Propulsion engine speed governors                                                  |
|                | 9.3       | Electrical generator and auxiliary engine speed governors                          |
|                | 9.4       | Overspeed protective devices                                                       |
|                | 9.5       | Engine stopping                                                                    |
|                | 9.6       | Unattended machinery                                                               |
|                | 9.7       | Diesel engines for propulsion purposes                                             |
|                | 9.8       | Auxiliary and other engines                                                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>Alarms and safeguards for emergency diesel engines</b>                          |
|                | 10.1      | General                                                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>11</b> | <b>Mass produced engines</b>                                                       |
|                | 11.1      | Definition                                                                         |
|                | 11.2      | Procedure for approval of mass produced engines                                    |
|                | 11.3      | Continuous review of production                                                    |
|                | 11.4      | Compliance and inspection certificate                                              |
|                | 11.5      | Type test conditions                                                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>12</b> | <b>Mass produced turbo-chargers</b>                                                |
|                | 12.1      | Application                                                                        |
|                | 12.2      | Procedure for approval of mass produced turbo-chargers                             |
|                | 12.3      | Continuous inspection of individual units                                          |
|                | 12.4      | Compliance and certificate                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>13</b> | <b>Type testing procedure for crankcase explosion relief valves</b>                |
|                | 13.1      | Scope                                                                              |
|                | 13.2      | Recognised Standards                                                               |
|                | 13.3      | Purpose                                                                            |
|                | 13.4      | Test facilities                                                                    |
|                | 13.5      | Explosion test process                                                             |
|                | 13.6      | Valves to be tested                                                                |
|                | 13.7      | Method                                                                             |
|                | 13.8      | Assessment and records                                                             |
|                | 13.9      | Design series qualification                                                        |
|                | 13.10     | The report                                                                         |
|                | 13.11     | Approval                                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>14</b> | <b>Type testing procedure for crankcase oil mist detection and alarm equipment</b> |
|                | 14.1      | Scope                                                                              |
|                | 14.2      | Recognised Standards                                                               |
|                | 14.3      | Purpose                                                                            |
|                | 14.4      | Test facilities                                                                    |
|                | 14.5      | Equipment testing                                                                  |
|                | 14.6      | Functional test                                                                    |
|                | 14.7      | Detectors and alarm equipment to be tested                                         |
|                | 14.8      | Method                                                                             |
|                | 14.9      | Assessment                                                                         |
|                | 14.10     | Design series qualification                                                        |
|                | 14.11     | The report                                                                         |
|                | 14.12     | Acceptance                                                                         |

|                |           |                                          |
|----------------|-----------|------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>15</b> | <b>Electronically controlled engines</b> |
|                | 15.1      | Scope                                    |
|                | 15.2      | Plans and particulars                    |
|                | 15.3      | Risk-based analysis                      |
|                | 15.4      | Oil fuel and hydraulic oil systems       |
|                | 15.5      | Control engineering systems              |
|                | 15.6      | Software                                 |
|                | 15.7      | Emergency engines                        |

## **CHAPTER 2 GAS TURBINES**

### **Section 1 General requirements**

|  |     |                               |
|--|-----|-------------------------------|
|  | 1.1 | Application                   |
|  | 1.2 | Standard reference conditions |
|  | 1.3 | Power ratings                 |
|  | 1.4 | Gas turbine type approval     |
|  | 1.5 | Inclination of vessel         |
|  | 1.6 | Turning gear                  |

### **Section 2 Particulars to be submitted**

|  |     |                       |
|--|-----|-----------------------|
|  | 2.1 | Plans and information |
|--|-----|-----------------------|

### **Section 3 Materials**

|  |     |                                |
|--|-----|--------------------------------|
|  | 3.1 | Materials tests and inspection |
|--|-----|--------------------------------|

### **Section 4 Design and construction**

|  |      |                          |
|--|------|--------------------------|
|  | 4.1  | General                  |
|  | 4.2  | Vibration                |
|  | 4.3  | Containment              |
|  | 4.4  | Intake and exhaust ducts |
|  | 4.5  | External influences      |
|  | 4.6  | Corrosive deposits       |
|  | 4.7  | Acoustic enclosures      |
|  | 4.8  | Thermal insulation       |
|  | 4.9  | Welded construction      |
|  | 4.10 | Emergency operation      |
|  | 4.11 | Anti stall/surge systems |

### **Section 5 Piping systems**

|  |     |                         |
|--|-----|-------------------------|
|  | 5.1 | General                 |
|  | 5.2 | Oil fuel systems        |
|  | 5.3 | Lubricating oil systems |
|  | 5.4 | Cooling systems         |

### **Section 6 Starting arrangements**

|  |     |                         |
|--|-----|-------------------------|
|  | 6.1 | General                 |
|  | 6.2 | Purging before ignition |
|  | 6.3 | Air starting            |
|  | 6.4 | Electric starting       |
|  | 6.5 | Hydraulic starting      |

### **Section 7 Control, alarm and safety systems**

|  |     |                                              |
|--|-----|----------------------------------------------|
|  | 7.1 | General                                      |
|  | 7.2 | Overspeed protection and shut-down system    |
|  | 7.3 | Speed governors                              |
|  | 7.4 | Power turbine inlet over-temperature control |
|  | 7.5 | Flameout                                     |
|  | 7.6 | Lubricating oil system                       |
|  | 7.7 | Stopping of gas turbines                     |
|  | 7.8 | Indication of temperature                    |
|  | 7.9 | Automatic and remote controls                |

---

|                    |              |                                                                                          |
|--------------------|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>8</b>     | <b>Planned maintenance and condition monitoring procedures, and ‘upkeep by exchange’</b> |
|                    | 8.1          | Planned maintenance approach                                                             |
|                    | 8.2          | Preventive maintenance                                                                   |
|                    | 8.3          | Unscheduled maintenance                                                                  |
|                    | 8.4          | Condition monitoring                                                                     |
|                    | 8.5          | Condition monitoring techniques                                                          |
|                    | 8.6          | Upkeep by exchange                                                                       |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>3</b> | <br><b>STEAM TURBINES</b>                                                                |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>1</b>     | <b>General requirements</b>                                                              |
|                    | 1.1          | Application                                                                              |
|                    | 1.2          | Power ratings                                                                            |
|                    | 1.3          | Power conditions for generator sets                                                      |
|                    | 1.4          | Inclination of ship                                                                      |
| <br><b>Section</b> | <br><b>2</b> | <br><b>Particulars to be submitted</b>                                                   |
|                    | 2.1          | Plans and information                                                                    |
| <br><b>Section</b> | <br><b>3</b> | <br><b>Materials</b>                                                                     |
|                    | 3.1          | General                                                                                  |
|                    | 3.2          | Materials for forgings                                                                   |
| <br><b>Section</b> | <br><b>4</b> | <br><b>Design and construction</b>                                                       |
|                    | 4.1          | General                                                                                  |
|                    | 4.2          | Welded components                                                                        |
|                    | 4.3          | Stress raisers                                                                           |
|                    | 4.4          | Shrunk-on rotor discs                                                                    |
|                    | 4.5          | Vibration                                                                                |
|                    | 4.6          | External influences                                                                      |
|                    | 4.7          | Steam supply and water system                                                            |
|                    | 4.8          | Turning gear                                                                             |
| <br><b>Section</b> | <br><b>5</b> | <br><b>Emergency arrangements</b>                                                        |
|                    | 5.1          | Lubricating oil failure                                                                  |
|                    | 5.2          | Single screw ships                                                                       |
|                    | 5.3          | Single main boiler                                                                       |
| <br><b>Section</b> | <br><b>6</b> | <br><b>Piping systems</b>                                                                |
|                    | 6.1          | General                                                                                  |
|                    | 6.2          | Lubricating oil systems                                                                  |
|                    | 6.3          | Cooling systems                                                                          |
|                    | 6.4          | Bled steam connections                                                                   |
|                    | 6.5          | Steam strainers                                                                          |
| <br><b>Section</b> | <br><b>7</b> | <br><b>Control and monitoring</b>                                                        |
|                    | 7.1          | General                                                                                  |
|                    | 7.2          | Overspeed protective devices                                                             |
|                    | 7.3          | Speed governors                                                                          |
|                    | 7.4          | Low vacuum and overpressure warning devices                                              |
|                    | 7.5          | Steam turbines for propulsion purposes                                                   |
|                    | 7.6          | Steam turbines for auxiliary purposes                                                    |

# Diesel Engines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 1

Section 1

## Section

|    |                                                                                    |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1  | <b>General requirements</b>                                                        |
| 2  | <b>Particulars to be submitted</b>                                                 |
| 3  | <b>Materials</b>                                                                   |
| 4  | <b>Crankshaft design</b>                                                           |
| 5  | <b>Construction and welded structures</b>                                          |
| 6  | <b>Safety arrangements on engines</b>                                              |
| 7  | <b>Air compressors and starting arrangements</b>                                   |
| 8  | <b>Piping systems</b>                                                              |
| 9  | <b>Control and monitoring</b>                                                      |
| 10 | <b>Alarms and safeguards for emergency diesel engines</b>                          |
| 11 | <b>Mass produced engines</b>                                                       |
| 12 | <b>Mass produced turbo-chargers</b>                                                |
| 13 | <b>Type testing procedure for crankcase explosion relief valves</b>                |
| 14 | <b>Type testing procedure for crankcase oil mist detection and alarm equipment</b> |
| 15 | <b>Electronically controlled engines</b>                                           |

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter is to be read in conjunction with the requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems in Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2.

1.1.2 The requirements of Section 4 do not apply to diesel engines intended for essential services where power does not exceed 110 kW.

### 1.2 Power ratings

1.2.1 In this Chapter where the dimensions of any particular component are determined from shaft power,  $P$ , in kW, and revolutions per minute,  $R$ , the values to be used are those defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.3.

### 1.3 Power conditions for generator sets

1.3.1 Auxiliary engines coupled to electrical generators are to be capable under service conditions of developing continuously the power to drive the generators at full rated output (kW) and of developing for a short period (15 minutes) an overload power of not less than 10 per cent, see Pt 10, Ch 1.

### 1.4 Inclination of ship

1.4.1 Main and essential auxiliary diesel engines are to operate satisfactorily under the conditions as shown in Table 2.4.2 in Pt 1, Ch 2.

### 1.5 Engine type testing

1.5.1 New engine types or developments of existing types are to be subjected to an agreed programme of type testing to complement the design appraisal and review of documentation. The programme will need to include short term high power operation where applicable.

### 1.6 Turning gear

1.6.1 Turning gear is to be provided for all engines to facilitate operating and maintenance regimes as required by the manufacturer. Manuals are to be provided and are to comply with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 1,4.6.7.

1.6.2 The turning gear for all propulsion engines is to be power-driven and if electric, is to be continuously rated.

1.6.3 The turning gear for auxiliary engines may be hand operated (manual) except where this is not practicable, in which case the provision of 1.6.2 is to be complied with.

1.6.4 The turning gear for all engines is to be fitted with safety Interlocks which prevent engine operation when engaged see Pt 1, Ch 2,4.13. Indication of engaged/disengaged is to be provided at all start positions. In the case of unattached hand operated turning gear engine operation may be prevented by manual means including the provision of warning devices or notices.

1.6.5 The remote control device of power-driven turning gear is to be so designed that power is removed from the turning gear when the operating switch is released.

1.6.6 Means are to be provided to secure the turning gear when disengaged.

1.6.7 Overload protection arrangements are to be provided to prevent damage to the electric motor and the turning gear train.

## Section 2

### Particulars to be submitted

#### 2.1 Plans and information

2.1.1 At least three copies of the following plans are to be submitted for consideration:

- Crankshaft assembly plan (for each crank-throw).
- Crankshaft details plan (for each crank-throw).
- Thrust shaft or intermediate shaft (if integral with engine).
- Output shaft coupling bolts.
- Type and arrangement of crankcase explosion relief valves.
- Details of the securing and collision arrangements, see also Pt 1, Ch 2,3.3.6 and 5.3 to 5.6.
- Schematic oil fuel system, including controls and safety devices.
- High pressure parts for fuel oil injection system with specification of pressures, pipe dimensions and materials.
- Lubricating oil system.
- Starting air system.
- Cooling water system.
- Control engineering aspects in accordance with Part 9.
- Shielding of high pressure fuel pipes.
- Longitudinal and transverse cross-section.
- Cast bedplate, thrust bearing bedplate, crankcase and frames.
- Cylinder head assembly.
- Cylinder liner.
- Piston assembly.
- Tie rod.
- Connecting rod, piston rod, and crosshead assemblies.
- Camshaft drive and camshaft general arrangement.
- Shielding and insulation of exhaust pipes.
- Details of turbochargers.
- Vibration dampers/detuners and moment compensators.
- Cross-sectional plans of the assembled turbo-charger with main dimensions.
- Fully dimensioned plans of the rotor.
- Material particulars with details of welding and surface treatments.
- Turbo-charger operating and test data.
- Manufacturer's Turbo-charger burst test assessment.
- For new engine types that have not been approved by LR, the proposed type test programme.
- The type test report on completion of type testing for a new engine type. For mass produced engines a separate report is to be submitted for each engine requiring approval, see 11.5.
- Additionally, for mass produced engines:
  - (a) For consideration of an engine type to be approved:
    - (i) Engine specification, see 11.1.4.
    - (ii) Manufacturing processes and quality control information, see 11.2.3.
    - (iii) List of sub-contractors for main parts.
    - (iv) Procedures for configuring during commissioning.
  - (b) For engines of an approved type to be installed on a ship, a compliance and inspection certificate, see 11.4.

- For engine control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems, the plans and information required by Pt 9, Ch 1,1.2.
- For electronically controlled engines, the plans and information required by 15.2.
- Schematic layouts showing details and arrangements of oil mist detection/monitoring and alarm systems.
- Diesel generator test results that state the engine maximum load steps which satisfy the quality of power supply requirements specified in Pt 10, Ch 1,1.7.
- Planned operating profiles for the vessel at sea and during manoeuvring as agreed with the operators.

2.1.2 The following information and calculations are to be submitted:

- Crankshaft design data as outlined in Section 4.
- Combustion pressure-displacement relationship.
- Power/speed operational envelope.
- Calculations and information for short term high power operation where applicable.
- Arrangement and welding specifications with details of the procedures for fabricated bedplate, thrust bearing bedplate, crankcases, frames and entablatures. Details of materials, welding consumables, fit-up conditions, fabrication sequence and heat treatments are to be included.
- Operation and maintenance manuals.
- Material specifications covering the listed components together with details of any surface treatments, non-destructive testing and hydraulic tests.
- Arrangement of interior lighting, where provided.
- Engine Type test programme, where required including proposals for short term high power operation.
- Alternative proposals for hydraulic tests where design features are such that modifications to the test requirements are necessary.
- Thrust bearing assembly (if integral with engine and not integrated in the bedplate).
- Counterweights, where attached to crank-throw, including fastening.
- Main engine holding down arrangement.
- Design statement for engine systems, see Pt 1, Ch 2,3.2.2(c) and 15.2.

2.1.3 Where it is proposed to use alloy castings, micro alloyed or alloy steel forgings or iron castings, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted.

2.1.4 A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) as required by Pt 1, Ch 2 is to be submitted. The FMEA is to include the following associated sub-systems:

- Starting and stopping.
- Oil fuel.
- Lubricating oil.
- Cooling water (fresh and sea).
- Air induction.
- Exhaust.
- Engine mounting.
- Control and monitoring.
- Electrical power supplies.
- Hydraulic oil (for valve lift).

It is not necessary to consider failure modes relating to the engine components.

# Diesel Engines

## Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 1

Sections 2 &amp; 3

2.1.5 Plans and details for dead ship condition starting arrangements are to be submitted for appraisal, see 7.11.

2.1.6 For engine types built under licence it is intended that the above documentation be submitted by the Licensor. Each Licensee is then to submit the following:

- A list, based on the above, of all documents required with the relevant drawing numbers and revision status from both Licensor and Licensee.
- The associated documents where the Licensee proposes design modifications to components. In such cases a statement is to be made confirming the Licensor's acceptance of the proposed changes.

In all cases a complete set of endorsed documents will be required by the Surveyor attending the Licensee's works.

2.1.7 Where considered necessary additional documentation may be required.

### Section 3 Materials

#### 3.1 Materials test and inspections

3.1.1 Components for engines are to be tested as indicated in Table 1.3.1 and in accordance with the relevant requirements of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

**Table 1.3.1 Material testing requirements**

| Component                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Material tests    | Non-destructive tests                 |                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                   | Magnetic particle or Liquid penetrant | Ultrasonic        |
| Crankshaft                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | all               | all                                   | all               |
| Crankshaft coupling flange (non-integral) for main propulsion engines                                                                                                                                                                  | above 400 mm bore | —                                     | —                 |
| Crankshaft coupling bolts                                                                                                                                                                                                              | above 400 mm bore | —                                     | —                 |
| Steel piston crowns                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | above 400 mm bore | above 400 mm bore                     | all               |
| Piston rods                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | above 400 mm bore | above 400 mm bore                     | above 400 mm bore |
| Connecting rods, including bearing caps                                                                                                                                                                                                | all               | all                                   | above 400 mm bore |
| Crosshead                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | above 400 mm bore | —                                     | —                 |
| Cylinder liner                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | above 300 mm bore | —                                     | —                 |
| Cylinder cover                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | above 300 mm bore | above 400 mm bore                     | all               |
| Steel castings for welded bedplates                                                                                                                                                                                                    | all               | all                                   | all               |
| Steel forgings for welded bedplates                                                                                                                                                                                                    | all               | —                                     | —                 |
| Plates for welded bedplates, frames and entablatures                                                                                                                                                                                   | all               | —                                     | —                 |
| Crankcases, welded or cast                                                                                                                                                                                                             | all               | —                                     | —                 |
| Tie rods                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | all               | above 400 mm bore                     | —                 |
| Turbo-charger, shaft and rotor                                                                                                                                                                                                         | above 300 mm bore | —                                     | —                 |
| Bolts and studs for cylinder covers, crossheads, main bearings, connecting rod bearings                                                                                                                                                | above 300 mm bore | above 400 mm bore                     | —                 |
| Steel gear wheels for camshaft drives                                                                                                                                                                                                  | above 400 mm bore | above 400 mm bore                     | —                 |
| NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                   |                                       |                   |
| 1. For closed-die forged crankshafts, the ultrasonic examination may be confined to the initial production and to subsequent occasional checks.                                                                                        |                   |                                       |                   |
| 2. Magnetic particle or liquid penetrant testing of tie rods may be confined to the threaded portions and the adjacent material over a length equal to that of the thread.                                                             |                   |                                       |                   |
| 3. Cylinder covers and liners manufactured from spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings may not be suitable for ultrasonic NDE, depending upon the grain size and geometry. An alternative NDE procedure is to be agreed with LR. |                   |                                       |                   |
| 4. Bore dimensions refer to engine cylinder bores.                                                                                                                                                                                     |                   |                                       |                   |
| 5. All required material tests are to be witnessed in the presence of the Surveyor unless otherwise agreed by LR.                                                                                                                      |                   |                                       |                   |
| 6. For mass produced engines, see Section 10.                                                                                                                                                                                          |                   |                                       |                   |

## 3.2 Crankshaft materials

3.2.1 The specified minimum tensile strength of castings and forgings for crankshafts is to be selected within the following general limits:

- (a) Carbon-manganese steel castings – 400 to 550 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- (b) Carbon-manganese steel forgings (normalised and tempered) – 400 to 600 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- (c) Carbon-manganese steel forgings (quenched and tempered) – not exceeding 700 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- (d) Alloy steel castings – not exceeding 700 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- (e) Alloy steel forgings – not exceeding 1000 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- (f) Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings – 370 to 800 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

- Length of connecting rod between bearing centres, in mm.
- Mass of single crankweb (indicate if webs either side of pin are of different mass values), in kg.
- Centre of gravity of crankweb mass from shaft axis, in mm.
- Mass of counterweights fitted (for complete crankshaft) indicate positions fitted, in kg.
- Centre of gravity of counterweights (for complete crankshaft) measured from shaft axis, in mm.
- Mass of piston (including piston rod and crosshead where applicable), in kg.
- All individual reciprocating masses acting on one crank, in kg.
- Material specification(s).
- Specified minimum UTS, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- Specified minimum yield strength, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- Method of manufacture.
- Details of fatigue enhancement process (if applicable).
- For semi-built crankshafts – minimum and maximum diametral interference, in mm.

## Section 4

## Crankshaft design

### 4.1 Application and information to be submitted

4.1.1 The formulae given in this Section are applicable to solid or semi-built crankshafts, having a main support bearing adjacent to each crankpin, and are intended to be applied to a single crankthrow analysed by the static determinate method.

4.1.2 Alternative methods, including a fully documented stress analysis, will be considered.

4.1.3 Calculations are to be carried out for the maximum continuous power rating for all designed operating conditions. Calculations are to include short term high power operation where applicable.

4.1.4 Designs of crankshafts not included in this scope will be subject to special consideration.

4.1.5 In addition to detailed dimensioned plans, the following information is required to be submitted:

- Engine type – 4SCSA/2SCSA/in-line/vee.
- Output power at maximum continuous rating (MCR), in kW.
- Output speed at maximum continuous power, in rpm.
- Maximum cylinder pressure, in bar g.
- Mean indicated pressure, in bar g.
- Cylinder air inlet pressure, in bar g.
- Digitised gas pressure/crank angle cycle for MCR.
- Maximum pressure/speed relationship.
- Compression ratio.
- Vee angle and firing interval (if applicable), in degrees.
- Firing order numbered from driving end.
- Cylinder diameter, in mm.
- Piston stroke, in mm.
- Mass of connecting rod (including bearings), in kg.
- Centre of gravity of connecting rod from large end centre, in mm.
- Radius of gyration of connecting rod, in mm.

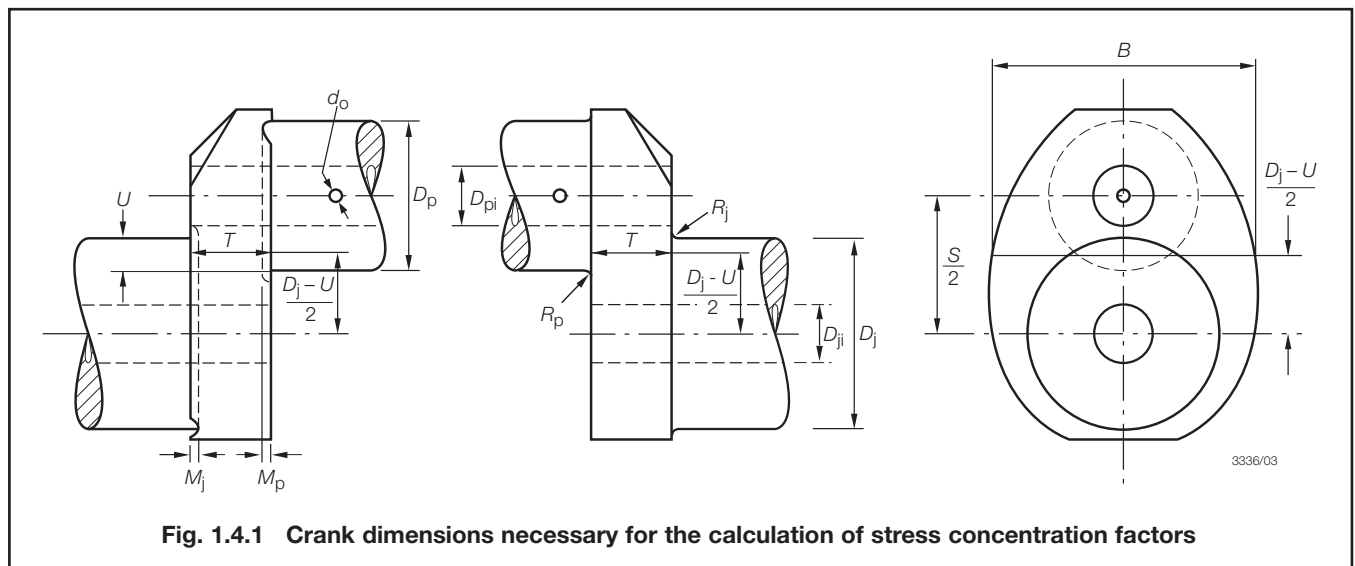
### 4.2 Symbols

4.2.1 For the purposes of this Chapter the following symbols apply, see also Fig. 1.4.1:

- $h$  = radial thickness of web, in mm
- $K_e$  = bending stress factor
- $B$  = transverse breadth of web, in mm
- $D_p, D_j$  = outside diameter of pin or main journal, in mm
- $D_{pi}, D_{ji}$  = internal diameter of pin or main journal, in mm
- $D_s$  = shrink diameter of main journal in web, in mm
- $d_o$  = diameter of radial oil bore in crankpin, in mm
- $F$  = alternating force at the web centreline, in N
- $K_1$  = fatigue enhancement factor due to manufacturing process
- $K_2$  = fatigue enhancement factor due to surface treatment
- $M_b$  = alternating bending moment at web centreline, in N-mm (Note: alternating is taken to be  $1/2$  range value)
- $M_{BON}$  = alternating bending moment calculated at the outlet of crankpin oil bore
- $M_p, M_f$  = undercut of fillet radius into web measured from web face, in mm
- $R_p, R_j$  = fillet radius at junction of web and pin or journal, in mm
- $S$  = stroke, in mm
- $T$  = axial thickness of web, in mm
- $T_a$  = alternating torsional moment at crankpin or crank journal, in N-mm (Note: alternating is taken to be  $1/2$  range value)
- $U$  = pin overlap  

$$\frac{(D_p + D_j - S)}{2} \text{ mm}$$
- $\alpha_B$  = bending stress concentration factor for crankpin
- $\alpha_T$  = torsional stress concentration factor for crankpin
- $\beta_B$  = bending stress concentration factor for main journal
- $\beta_Q$  = direct shear stress concentration factor for main journal
- $\beta_T$  = torsional stress concentration factor for main journal





**Fig. 1.4.1 Crank dimensions necessary for the calculation of stress concentration factors**

- $\gamma_B$  = bending stress concentration factor for radially drilled oil hole in the crankpin
- $\gamma_T$  = torsional stress concentration factor for radially drilled oil hole in the crankpin
- $\sigma_{ax}$  = alternating axial stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma_b$  = alternating bending stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma_{BON}$  = alternating bending stress in the outlet of the oil bore, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma_p, \sigma_j$  = maximum bending stress in pin and main journal taking into account stress raisers, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma_{BO}$  = maximum bending stress in the outlet of the oil bore, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma_u$  = specified minimum UTS of material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma_y$  = specified minimum yield stress of material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma_Q$  = alternating direct stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\tau_a$  = alternating torsional stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\tau_p, \tau_j$  = maximum torsional stress in pin and main journals taking into account stress raisers, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- $\tau_{ob}$  = maximum torsional stress in outlet of crankpin oil bore taking into account stress raisers, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

## 4.3 Stress concentration factors

**4.3.1 Geometric factors.** Crankshaft variables to be used in calculating the geometric stress concentrations together with their limits of applicability are shown in Table 1.4.1.

**4.3.2 Crankpin stress concentration factors:**

Bending

$$\alpha_B = 2,70 f(ut). f(t). f(b). f(r). f(dp). f(dj). f(rec)$$

where

$$f(ut) = 1,52 - 4,1t + 11,2t^2 - 13,6t^3 + 6,07t^4 - u(1,86 - 8,26t + 18,2t^2 - 18,5t^3 + 6,93t^4) - u^2(3,84 - 25,0t + 70,6t^2 - 87,0t^3 + 39,2t^4)$$

$$f(t) = 2,18t^{0,717}$$

$$f(b) = 0,684 - 0,0077b + 0,147b^2$$

$$f(r) = 0,208r_p^{(-0,523)}$$

$$f(dp) = 1 + 0,315(d_p) - 1,52(d_p)^2 + 2,41(d_p)^3$$

$$f(dj) = 1 + 0,27d_j - 1,02(d_j)^2 + 0,531(d_j)^3$$

$$f(rec) = 1 + (m_p + m_j)(1,8 + 3,2u)$$

valid only between  $u = -0,5$  and  $0,5$

Torsion

$$\alpha_T = 0,8 f(ru). f(b). f(t)$$

where

$$f(ru) = r_p^{-(0,22 + 0,1u)}$$

$$f(b) = 7,9 - 10,65b + 5,35b^2 - 0,857b^3$$

$$f(t) = t^{(-0,145)}$$

**Table 1.4.1 Crankshaft variables**

| Variable                     | Range |          |
|------------------------------|-------|----------|
|                              | Lower | Upper    |
| $b = B/D_p$                  | 1,10  | 2,20     |
| $d_j = D_{ji}/D_p$           | 0,00  | 0,80     |
| $d_p = D_{pi}/D_p$           | 0,00  | 0,80     |
| $m_j = M_j/D_p$              | 0,00  | $r_{jb}$ |
| $m_p = M_p/D_p$              | 0,00  | $r_p$    |
| $r_{jB} = R_j/D_p$           | 0,03  | 0,13     |
| $r_{jT} = R_j/D_j$           | 0,03  | 0,13     |
| $r_p = R_p/D_p$              | 0,03  | 0,13     |
| $t = T/D_p$                  | 0,20  | 0,80     |
| $t = T_{red}/D_p$ see Note 3 | 0,20  | 0,80     |
| $d = d_o/D_p$                | 0,00  | 0,20     |
| $u = U/D_p$                  | -0,50 | 0,50     |

### NOTES

- Where variables fall outside the range, alternative methods are to be used and full details submitted for consideration.
- A lower limit of  $u$  can be extended down to large negative values provided that:
  - If calculated  $f(rec) < 1$  then the factor  $f(rec)$  is not to be considered ( $f(rec) = 1$ )
  - If  $u < -0,5$  then  $f(ut)$  and  $f(ru)$  are to be evaluated replacing actual value of  $u$  by  $-0,5$ .
- For crankshafts without overlap, see also 4.3.6.



4.3.3 Crank journal stress concentration factors (not applicable to semi-built crankshafts):

Bending

$$\beta_B = 2,71 f_B(ut) \cdot f_B(t) \cdot f_B(b) \cdot f_B(r) \cdot f_B(dj) \cdot f_B(dp) \cdot f(rec)$$

where

$$f_B(ut) = 1,2 - 0,5t + 0,32t^2 - u(0,80 - 1,15t + 0,55t^2) - u^2(2,16 - 2,33t + 1,26t^2)$$

$$f_B(t) = 2,24t^{0,755}$$

$$f_B(b) = 0,562 + 0,12b + 0,118b^2$$

$$f_B(r) = 0,191r_{JB}^{(-0,557)}$$

$$f_B(dj) = 1 - 0,644dj + 1,23(dj)^2$$

$$f_B(dp) = 1 - 0,19dp + 0,0073(dp)^2$$

$$f(rec) = 1 + (m_p + m_j)(1,8 + 3,2u)$$

valid only between  $u = -0,5$  and  $0,5$

Direct shear

$$\beta_Q = 3,01 f_Q(u) \cdot f_Q(t) \cdot f_Q(b) \cdot f_Q(r) \cdot f_Q(dp) \cdot f(rec)$$

where

$$f_Q(u) = 1,08 + 0,88u - 1,52(u)^2$$

$$f_Q(t) = \frac{t}{0,0637 + 0,937t}$$

$$f_Q(b) = b - 0,5$$

$$f_Q(r) = 0,533r_{JB}^{(-0,204)}$$

$$f_Q(dp) = 1 - 1,19dp + 1,74(dp)^2$$

$$f(rec) = 1 + (m_p + m_j)(1,8 + 3,2u)$$

valid only between  $u = -0,5$  and  $0,5$

Torsion where

$$\beta_T = 0,8 f(ru) \cdot f(b) \cdot f(t)$$

$$f(ru) = r_{JT}^{(-0,22 + 0,1u)}$$

$$f(b) = 7,9 - 10,65b + 5,35b^2 - 0,857b^3$$

$$f(t) = t^{(-0,145)}$$

4.3.4 Crankpin oil bore stress concentration factors for radially drilled oil holes:

- Bending

$$\gamma_B = 3 - 5,88 \cdot d_o + 34,6 \cdot d_o^2$$

- Torsion

$$\gamma_T = 4 - 68 \cdot d_o + 30 \cdot d_o^2$$

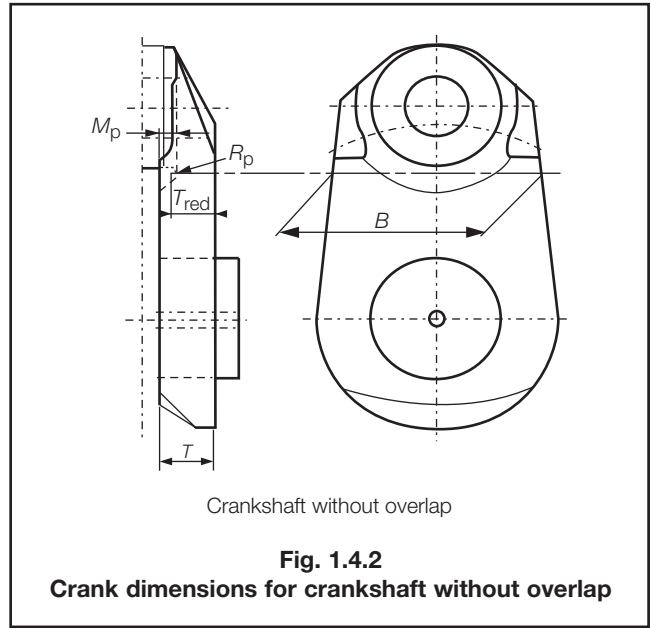
4.3.5 Where experimental measurements of the stress concentrations are available, these may be used. The full documented analysis of the experimental measurements is to be submitted for consideration.

4.3.6 In the case of semi-built crankshafts when  $M_p > R_p$  the web thickness is to be taken as

$$T_{red} = T - (M_p - R_p) \text{ and the web width } B \text{ is to be taken in way of the crankpin fillet radius centre see Fig. 1.4.2.}$$

## 4.4 Nominal stresses

4.4.1 The nominal alternating bending stress,  $\sigma_b$ , is to be calculated from the maximum and minimum bending moment at the web centreline taking into account all forces being applied to the crank throw in one working cycle with the crank throw simply supported at the mid length of the main journals.



4.4.2 Nominal bending stresses are referred to the web bending modulus.

4.4.3 Nominal alternating bending stress:

$$\sigma_b = \pm \frac{M_b}{Z_{web}} k_e \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$$Z_{web} = \frac{BT^2}{6} \text{ mm}^3$$

$$k_e = 0,8 \text{ for crosshead engines}$$

$$= 1,0 \text{ for trunk piston engines.}$$

4.4.4 Nominal alternating bending stress,  $\sigma_{BON}$ , in the outlet of the crankpin oil bore, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>:

$$\sigma_{BON} = \pm \frac{M_{BON}}{Z_{crankpin}}$$

where

$M_{BON}$  is taken as the  $1/2$  range value

$$M_{BON} = \pm 1/2 (M_{BOmax} - M_{BOmin})$$

and

$$M_{BO} = (M_{BTO} \cos \psi + M_{BRO} \sin \psi) \text{ see Fig. 1.4.3}$$

The two relevant bending moments are taken in the crankpin cross-section through the oil bore.

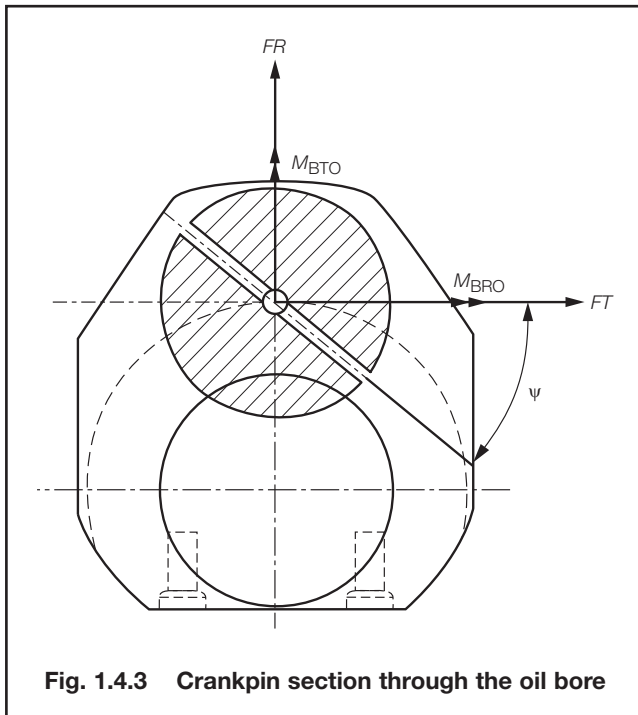
$M_{BRO}$  = bending moment of the radial component of the connecting-rod force

$M_{BTO}$  = bending moment of the tangential component of the connecting-rod force

$$Z_{crankpin} = \frac{\pi}{32} \left[ \frac{D^4 - d^4}{d} \right] \text{ with } Z_{crankpin} \text{ related to the cross-section of axially bored crankpin.}$$

4.4.5 The nominal direct shear stress in the web for the purpose of assessing the main journal is to be added algebraically to the bending stress, using the alternating forces which have been used in deriving  $M_b$  in 4.4.3.

4.4.6 Nominal stress is referred to the web cross-section area or the pin cross-section area as applicable.



**Fig. 1.4.3 Crankpin section through the oil bore**

4.4.7 Nominal alternating direct shear stress:

$$\sigma_Q = \pm \frac{F}{A_{web}} k_e \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$$A_{web} = BT \text{ mm}^2$$

4.4.8 The nominal alternating torsional stress,  $\tau_a$ , is to be taken into consideration. The value is to be derived from forced-damped vibration calculations of the complete dynamic system. Alternative methods will be given consideration. The engine designer is to advise the maximum level of alternating vibratory stress that is permitted.

4.4.9 The results of torsional vibration calculations for the full dynamic system, carried out in accordance with Part 5 are to be submitted.

4.4.10 Nominal alternating torsional stress:

$$\tau_a = \pm \frac{T_a}{Z_T} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$Z_T$  = torsional modulus of crankpin and main journal

$$= \pi \left( \frac{D^4 - d^4}{16D} \right) \text{ mm}^3$$

$D$  = outside diameter of crankpin or main journal, in mm

$d$  = inside diameter of crankpin or main journal, in mm

$\tau_a$  is to be ascertained from assessment of the torsional vibration calculations where the maximum and minimum torques are determined for every mass point of the complete dynamic system and for the entire speed range by means of a harmonic synthesis of the forced vibrations from the 1st order up to and including the 15th order for 2-stroke cycle engines and from the 0,5th order up to and including the 12th order for 4-stroke cycle engines. Whilst doing so, allowance must be made for the

damping that exists in the system and for unfavourable conditions (misfiring in one of the cylinders when no combustion occurs but only compression cycle). The speed step calculation shall be selected in such a way that any resonance found in the operational speed range of the engine shall be detected.

If  $T_a$  is not known, a value can be calculated by the following formula as an approximation in the first instance:

$$T_a = \left( (18,6 - 0,0132D_e) \times \frac{\sigma_u + 160}{560} \right) \times Z_e \text{ Nmm}$$

where

$$D_e = D_j \sqrt[3]{\left(1 + \frac{D_{ji}}{D_j}\right)^4}$$

or

$$D_e = D_p \sqrt[3]{\left(1 - \frac{D_{pi}}{D_p}\right)^4}$$

whichever is the smaller

$Z_e$  = corresponding torsional modulus

$$= \pi \frac{(D_e^4 - d^4)}{16D_e} \text{ mm}^3$$

4.4.11 For the purpose of the crankshaft assessment, the nominal alternating torsional stress considered in calculations is to be the highest calculated value, according to the method described in 4.4.9, occurring at the most torsionally loaded mass point of the crankshaft system.

4.4.12 The approval of the crankshaft will be based on the installation having the largest nominal alternating torsional stress (but not exceeding the maximum figure specified by the engine manufacturer). For each installation it is to be ensured by calculation that the maximum approved nominal alternating torsional stress is not exceeded.

4.4.13 Reference should be made to Pt 5, Ch 1 on the calculations of torsional vibration characteristics.

4.4.14 In addition to the bending stress,  $\sigma_b$ , the axial vibratory stress,  $\sigma_{ax}$ , is to be taken into consideration, for crosshead type engines. For trunk piston engines,  $\sigma_{ax} = 0$ . The value is to be derived from forced-damped vibration calculations of the complete dynamic system. Alternative methods will be given consideration. The engine designer is to advise the maximum level of alternating vibratory stress that is permitted. The corresponding crankshaft free-end deflection is also to be stated.

## 4.5 Maximum stress levels

### 4.5.1 Crankpin fillet:

- Maximum alternating bending stress:

$$\sigma_p = \alpha_B (\sigma_b + \sigma_{ax}) \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$\alpha_B$  = bending stress concentration, see 4.3.2

- Maximum alternating torsional stress:

$$\tau_p = \alpha_T \tau_{ax} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$\alpha_T$  = torsional stress concentration, see 4.3.2

$\tau_a$  = nominal alternating torsional stress in crankpin N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

### 4.5.2 Outlet of crankpin oil bore:

- Maximum alternating bending stress:

$$\sigma_{BO} = \gamma_B (\sigma_{BON} + \sigma_{ax}) \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$\gamma_B$  = bending stress concentration factor, see 4.3.4

- Maximum alternating torsional stress:

$$\tau_{tob} = \gamma_T \tau_a \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$\gamma_T$  = torsional stress concentration factor, see 4.3.4

$\tau_a$  = nominal alternating torsional stress in crankpin N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

### 4.5.3 Crank journal fillet (not applicable to semi-built crankshafts):

- Maximum alternating bending stress:

$$\sigma_j = \beta_B (\sigma_b + \sigma_{ax}) + \beta_Q \sigma_Q \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$\beta_B$  = bending stress concentration, see 4.3.3

$\beta_Q$  = direct stress concentration, see 4.3.3

- Maximum alternating torsional stress:

$$\tau_j = \beta_T \tau_a \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$\beta_T$  = torsional stress concentration, see 4.3.3

$\tau_a$  = nominal alternating torsional stress in main journal, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

## 4.6 Equivalent alternating stress

### 4.6.1 Equivalent alternating stress of the crankpin, $\sigma_{ep}$ , or crank journal $\sigma_{ej}$ , is defined as:

$$\sigma_{epj} \sigma_{ej} = \sqrt{(\sigma + 10)^2 + 3\tau^2} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$\sigma$  =  $\sigma_p$  or  $\sigma_j$  N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\tau$  =  $\tau_p$  or  $\tau_j$  N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

### 4.6.2 Equivalent alternating stress for the outlet of the crankpin oil bore $\sigma_{eob}$ , is defined as:

$$\sigma_{eob} = \pm \frac{1}{3} \sigma_{bo} \left[ 1 + 2 \sqrt{1 + \frac{9}{4} \left( \frac{\tau_{to}}{\sigma_{bo}} \right)^2} \right] \text{ N/mm}^2$$

## 4.7 Fatigue strength

### 4.7.1 The fatigue strength of a crankshaft is based upon the crankpin and crank journal as follows:

$$\sigma_{fp} = K_1 K_2 (0,42\sigma_u + 39,3) \left( 0,264 + 1,073D_p^{-0,2} + \frac{785 - \sigma_u}{4900} + \frac{196}{\sigma_u} \sqrt{\frac{1}{R_p}} \right) \text{ N/mm}^2$$

To calculate the fatigue strength in the oil bore area, replace  $R_p$  with  $\frac{1}{2}d_o$  and  $\sigma_{fp}$  with  $\sigma_{fob}$

$$\sigma_{fj} = K_1 K_2 (0,42\sigma_u + 39,3) \left( 0,264 + 1,073D_j^{-0,2} + \frac{785 - \sigma_u}{4900} + \frac{196}{\sigma_u} \sqrt{\frac{1}{R_j}} \right) \text{ N/mm}^2$$

where

$\sigma_u$  = UTS of crankpin or crank journal as appropriate, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$K_1$  = fatigue endurance factor appropriate to the manufacturing process

= 1,05 for continuous grain-flow (CGF) or die-forged

= 1,0 for freedom forged (without CGF)

= 0,93 for cast steel manufactured using a LR approved cold rolling process

$K_2$  = fatigue enhancement factor for surface treatment. These treatments are to be applied to the fillet radii.

### 4.7.2 A value for $K_2$ will be assigned upon application by the engine designers. Full details of the process, together with the results of full scale fatigue tests will be required to be submitted for consideration. Alternatively, the following values may be taken (surface hardened zone to include fillet radii):

$K_2$  = 1,15 for induction hardened

= 1,25 for nitrided.

Where a value of  $K_1$  or  $K_2$  greater than unity is to be applied then details of the manufacturing process are to be submitted.

## 4.8 Acceptability criteria

### 4.8.1 The acceptability factor, Q, is to be greater than 1,15:

$$Q = \frac{\sigma_f}{\sigma_e} \text{ for crankpin, journal and the outlet of crank-}$$

pin oil bore

where

$\sigma_f$  =  $\sigma_{fp}$  or  $\sigma_{fj}$  or  $\sigma_{ob}$

$\sigma_e$  =  $\sigma_{ep}$  or  $\sigma_{ej}$  or  $\sigma_{eob}$ .

## 4.9 Crankshaft oil hole

### 4.9.1 The junction of the oil hole with the crankpin or main journal surface is to be formed with an adequate radius and smooth surface finish down to a minimum depth equal to 1,5 times the oil bore diameter.

### 4.9.2 Fatigue strength calculations or, alternatively fatigue test results may be required to demonstrate acceptability.

# Diesel Engines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 1

Section 4

4.9.3 When journal diameter is equal or larger than the crankpin diameter, the outlets of main journal oil bores are to be formed in a similar way to the crankpin oil bores, otherwise separate fatigue strength calculations or, alternatively, fatigue test results may be required.

## 4.10 Shrink fit of semi-built crankshafts

4.10.1 The maximum permissible internal diameter in the journal pin is to be calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$D_{ji} = D_s \sqrt{1 - \frac{4000 FoS M_{max}}{\mu \pi D_s^2 L_s \sigma_{yj}}} \text{ mm}$$

where the symbols are as defined in 4.10.7.

4.10.2 When 4.10.1 cannot be complied with, then 4.10.7 is not applicable. In such cases  $\delta_{min}$  and  $\delta_{max}$  are to be established from FEM calculations.

4.10.3 The following formulae are applicable to crankshafts assembled by shrinking main journals into the crankwebs.

4.10.4 In general, the radius of transition,  $R_j$ , between the main journal diameter,  $D_j$ , and the shrink diameter,  $D_s$ , is to be not less than  $0,015D_j$  or  $0,5(D_s - D_j)$ .

4.10.5 The distance,  $y$ , between the underside of the pin and the shrink diameter should be greater than  $0,05D_s$ .

4.10.6 Deviations from these parameters will be specially considered.

4.10.7 The proposed diametral interference is to be within the following limits, see also Fig. 1.4.4:

The minimum required diametral interference is to be taken as the greater of:

$$\delta_{min} = \frac{12,156 \times 10^6 (FoS)}{T D_s \mu E} \frac{P}{R} (1 + C) \frac{k^2 - l^2}{(k^2 - 1)(1 - l^2)} \text{ mm}$$

or

$$\delta_{min} = \frac{\sigma_y D_s}{E} \text{ mm}$$

where

$h$  = minimum radial thickness of the web around the diameter  $D_s$ , in mm

$$k = \frac{D_o}{D_s}$$

$$l = \frac{D_{ji}}{D_s}$$

$C$  = ratio of torsional vibratory torque to the mean transmitted torque at the  $P/R$  rating being considered

$$D_o = D_s + 2h, \text{ in mm}$$

$$D_s = \text{shrink diameter, in mm}$$

$$E = \text{Young's modulus of elasticity of crankshaft material, N/mm}^2$$

$FoS$  = Factor of Safety against rotational slippage to be taken as 2,0. A value less than 2,0 may be used where documented by experiments to demonstrate acceptability

$P$  = output power, in kW

$R$  = speed at associated power, in rpm

$T$  = crankweb thickness, in mm

$\mu$  = coefficient of static friction to be taken as 0,2 for degreased surfaces provided  $T/D_s > 0,4$ . A value greater than 0,2 may be used where documented by experiments to demonstrate acceptability

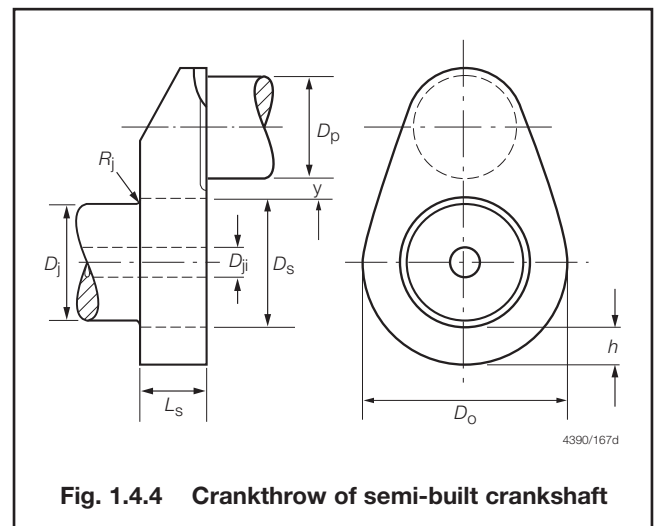
$\sigma_{yj}$  = minimum yield strength of material for journal pin

$M_{max}$  = absolute maximum value of the torque taking Ch 8,2 into consideration

$L_s$  = length of shrink fit, in mm

Maximum diametral interference,  $\delta_{max}$ , is not to be greater than:

$$\delta_{max} = \frac{\sigma_y D_s}{E} + \frac{0,8 D_s}{1000} \text{ mm.}$$



**Fig. 1.4.4 Crankthrow of semi-built crankshaft**

4.10.8 Reference marks are to be provided on the outer junction of the crankwebs with the journals.

## 4.11 Alternative method for calculation of stress concentration factors

4.11.1 LR will give consideration to crankshaft design using an alternative method given in LR's *ShipRight procedures for alternative method for calculation of stress concentration factors in the web fillet radii of crankshafts by utilising Finite Element*.

## ■ Section 5 Construction and welded structures

### 5.1 Crankcases

5.1.1 Crankcases and their doors are to be of robust construction to withstand anticipated crankcase pressures that may arise during a crankcase explosion, taking into account the installation of explosion relief valves required by Section 6 and, the doors are to be securely fastened so that they will not be readily displaced by a crankcase explosion.

### 5.2 Welded joints

5.2.1 Bedplates and major components of engine structures are to be made with a minimum number of welded joints.

5.2.2 Double welded butt joints are to be adopted wherever possible in view of their superior fatigue strength.

5.2.3 Girder and frame assemblies should, so far as possible, be made from one plate or slab, shaped as necessary, rather than by welding together a number of small pieces.

5.2.4 Steel castings are to be used for parts which would otherwise require complicated weldments.

5.2.5 Care is to be taken to avoid stress concentrations such as sharp corners and abrupt changes in section.

5.2.6 Joints in parts of the engine structure which are stressed by the main gas or inertia loads are to be designed as continuous full strength welds and for complete fusion of the joint. They are to be so arranged that, in general, welds do not intersect, and that welding can be effected without difficulty and adequate inspection can be carried out. Abrupt changes in plate section are to be avoided and where plates of substantially unequal thickness are to be butt welded, the thickness of the heavier plate is to be gradually tapered to that of the thinner plate. Tee joints are to be made with full bevel or equivalent weld preparation to ensure full penetration.

5.2.7 In single plate transverse girders the castings for main bearing housings are to be formed with web extensions which can be butt welded to the flange and vertical web plates of the girder. Stiffeners in the transverse girder are to be attached to the flanges by full penetration welds.

### 5.3 Materials and construction

5.3.1 All welded construction is to be in accordance with the requirements specified in Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials.

5.3.2 Plates, sections, forgings and castings are to be of welding quality in accordance with the requirements of the Rules for Materials and with a carbon content generally not exceeding 0,23 per cent. Steels with higher carbon contents may be approved subject to satisfactory results from welding procedure tests.

5.3.3 Plates and weld preparations are to be accurately machined or flame-cut to shape. Flame-cut surfaces are to be cleaned by machining or grinding; if the flame-cut surfaces are smooth, wire brushing may be accepted.

5.3.4 Before welding is commenced the component parts of bedplates and framework are to be accurately fitted and aligned.

5.3.5 The welding is to be carried out in positions free from draughts and is to be downhand (flat) wherever practicable. Welding consumables are to be suitable for the materials being joined. Preheating is to be adopted when heavy plates or sections are welded. The finished welds are to have an even surface and are to be free from undercutting.

5.3.6 Welds attaching bearing housings to the transverse girders are to have a smooth contour and, if necessary, are to be made smooth by grinding.

5.3.7 Omission of post-weld heat treatment of bedplates and their sub-assemblies will be considered on application by the engine builder with supporting evidence in accordance with Ch 13,2.10.4 of the Rules for Materials.

### 5.4 Post-weld heat treatment

5.4.1 Bedplates are to be given a stress relieving heat treatment except engine types where the bedplate as a whole is not subjected to direct loading from the cylinder pressure. For these types, only the transverse girder assemblies need be stress relieved.

5.4.2 Stress relieving is to be carried out by heating the welded structure uniformly and slowly to a temperature between 580°C and 620°C, holding that temperature for not less than one hour per 25 mm of maximum plate thickness and thereafter allowing the structure to cool slowly in the furnace.

### 5.5 Inspection

5.5.1 Welded engine structures are to be examined during fabrication, special attention being given to the fit of component parts of major joints prior to welding.

5.5.2 On completion of welding and stress relief heat treatment, all welds are to be examined.

5.5.3 Welds in transverse girder assemblies are to be crack detected by an approved method to the satisfaction of the Surveyors. Other joints are to be similarly tested if required by the Surveyors.



## Section 6 Safety arrangements on engines

### 6.1 Cylinder relief valves

6.1.1 Scavenge spaces in open connection with cylinders are to be provided with explosion relief valves. The valves are to be arranged and positioned on engines to minimise the possibility of danger and damage arising from emission from the valves.

### 6.2 Crankcase relief valves

6.2.1 Crankcases are to be provided with lightweight spring-loaded valves or other quick-acting and self-closing devices, to relieve the crankcases of pressure in the event of an internal explosion and to prevent any inrush of air thereafter. The valves are to be designed and constructed to open quickly and be fully open at a pressure not greater than 0,2 bar. Crankcase relief valves are to be type tested in accordance with Section 12.

6.2.2 The valve lids are to be made of ductile material capable of withstanding the shock of contact with stoppers at the full open position.

6.2.3 Each valve is to be fitted with a flame arrester that permits flow for crankcase pressure relief and prevents the passage of flame following a crankcase explosion. The valves are to be type tested in a configuration that represents the installation arrangements that will be used on an engine and in accordance with Section 13. The valves are to be positioned on engines to minimise the possibility of danger and damage arising from emission of the crankcase atmosphere. Where shielding from the emissions is fitted to a valve, the valve is to be tested to demonstrate that the shielding does not adversely affect the operational effectiveness of the valve.

6.2.4 In engines having cylinders not exceeding 200 mm bore or having a crankcase gross volume not exceeding 0,6 m<sup>3</sup>, relief valves may be omitted.

6.2.5 In engines having cylinders exceeding 200 mm but not exceeding 250 mm bore, at least two relief valves are to be fitted; each valve is to be located at or near the ends of the crankcase. Where the engine has more than eight crank throws an additional valve is to be fitted near the centre of the engine.

6.2.6 In engines having cylinders exceeding 250 mm but not exceeding 300 mm bore, at least one relief valve is to be fitted in way of each alternate crank throw with a minimum of two valves. For engines having 3, 5, 7, 9, etc., crank throws, the number of relief valves is not to be less than 2, 3, 4, 5, etc., respectively.

6.2.7 In engines having cylinders exceeding 300 mm bore, at least one valve is to be fitted in way of each main crank throw.

6.2.8 Additional relief valves are to be fitted for separate spaces on the crankcase, such as gear or chaincases for camshaft or similar drives, when the gross volume of such spaces exceeds 0,6 m<sup>3</sup>.

6.2.9 The combined free area of the crankcase relief valves fitted on an engine is to be not less than 115 cm<sup>2</sup>/m<sup>3</sup> based on the volume of the crankcase.

6.2.10 The free area of each relief valve is to be not less than 45 cm<sup>2</sup>.

6.2.11 The free area of the relief valve is the minimum flow area at any section through the valve when the valve is fully open.

6.2.12 In determining the volume of the crankcase for the purpose of calculating the combined free area of the crankcase relief valves, the volume of the stationary parts within the crankcase may be deducted from the total internal volume of the crankcase. The volume of the rotating and reciprocating components are to be included.

6.2.13 The valves are to be provided with a copy of the manufacturer's installation and maintenance manual that is pertinent to the size and type of valve being supplied for installation on a particular engine. The manual is to contain the following information:

- (a) Description of valve with details of function and design limits.
- (b) Copy of type test certification.
- (c) Installation instructions.
- (d) Maintenance in service instructions to include testing and renewal of any sealing arrangements.
- (e) Actions required after a crankcase explosion.

6.2.14 A copy of the installation and maintenance manual required by 6.2.13 is to be provided on board ship.

6.2.15 Plans showing details and arrangements of the relief valves are to be submitted for approval, see 2.1.

6.2.16 The valves are to be provided with suitable markings that include the following information:

- (a) Name and address of manufacturer.
- (b) Designation and size.
- (c) Month/Year of manufacture.
- (d) Approved installation orientation.

### 6.3 Vent pipes

6.3.1 Ventilation of crankcase, and any arrangement which could produce a flow of external air within the crankcase, is in principle not permitted except for dual fuel engines where crankcase ventilation is to be provided. Where crankcase vent pipes are fitted, they are to be made as small as practicable to minimise the inrush of air after an explosion. Vents from crankcases of main engines are to be led to a safe position on deck or other approved position.

6.3.2 If provision is made for the extraction of gases from within the crankcase, e.g. for oil mist detection purposes, the vacuum within the crankcase is not to exceed 25 mm of water.

6.3.3 Lubricating oil drain pipes from engine sump to drain tank are to be submerged at their outlet ends. Where two or more engines are installed, vent pipes, if fitted, and lubrication oil drain pipes are to be independent to avoid intercommunication between crankcases.

## 6.4 Warning notice

6.4.1 A warning notice is to be fitted in a prominent position, preferably on a crankcase door on each side of the engine, or alternatively at the engine room control station. This warning notice is to specify that whenever overheating is suspected in the crankcase, the crankcase doors or sight holes are not to be opened until a reasonable time has elapsed after stopping the engine, sufficient to permit adequate cooling within the crankcase.

## 6.5 Crankcase access and lighting

6.5.1 Where access to crankcase spaces is necessary for inspection purposes, suitably positioned rungs or equivalent arrangements are to be provided as considered appropriate.

6.5.2 When interior lighting is provided it is to be flame-proof (Ex 'd') in relation to the interior and details are to be submitted for approval, see also Pt 10, Ch 1,13. No wiring is to be fitted inside the crankcase.

## 6.6 Emergency operation

6.6.1 Diesel engines and their service systems are to be capable of operation for a period of not less than eight hours when the engine compartment is flooded by sea-water to a mean level corresponding to the height of the lowest part of the engines' crankshaft main bearing journals with the ship in the most limiting trim.

## 6.7 Oil mist detection

6.7.1 Where crankcase oil mist detection/monitoring arrangements are fitted, they are to be of a type approved by LR, tested in accordance with Section 13 and comply with 6.7.2 to 6.7.15.

6.7.2 The oil mist detection system and arrangements are to be installed in accordance with the engine designer's and oil mist manufacturer's instructions/ recommendations. The following particulars are to be included in the instructions:

- (a) Schematic layout of engine oil mist detection and alarm system showing location of engine crankcase sample points and cabling/piping arrangements together with pipe dimensions to detector.
- (b) Evidence of study to justify the selected location of sample points and sample extraction rate (if applicable) in consideration of the crankcase arrangements and geometry and the predicted crankcase atmosphere where oil mist can accumulate.
- (c) The manufacturer's maintenance and test manual.

(d) Information relating to type or in-service testing of the engine with engine protection system test arrangements having approved types of oil mist detection equipment.

6.7.3 A copy of the oil mist detection equipment maintenance and test manual required by 6.7.2 is to be provided on board ship.

6.7.4 Oil mist detection and alarm information is to be capable of being read from a safe location away from the engine.

6.7.5 In the case of multi engine installations, each engine is to be provided with individual, dedicated oil mist detection arrangements and alarm(s).

6.7.6 Oil mist detection and alarm systems are to be capable of being tested on the test bed and on board when the engine is at a standstill and when the engine is running at normal operating conditions in accordance with test procedures that are acceptable to LR.

6.7.7 Alarms and safeguards for the oil mist detection system are to be in accordance with Part 9 as applicable.

6.7.8 The oil mist detection arrangements are to provide an alarm indication in the event of a foreseeable functional failure in the equipment and installation arrangements.

6.7.9 The oil mist detection system is to provide an indication that any lenses fitted in the equipment and used in determination of the oil mist level have been partially obscured to a degree that will affect the reliability of the information and alarm indication.

6.7.10 Where oil mist detection equipment includes the use of programmable electronic systems, the arrangements are to be in accordance with Part 9 as applicable.

6.7.11 Schematic layouts showing details and arrangements of oil mist detection and alarm systems are to be submitted. See 2.1.

6.7.12 The equipment together with detectors is to be tested when installed on the test bed and on board ship to demonstrate that the detection and alarm system functionally operates. The testing arrangements are to be to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

6.7.13 Where sequential oil mist detection arrangements are provided, the sampling frequency and time is to be as short as reasonably practicable.

6.7.14 Where engine bearing temperature monitors or alternative methods are provided for the prevention of the build up of oil mist that may lead to a potentially explosive condition within the crankcase, detailed information is to be submitted for consideration. The information is to include:

- (a) Engine particulars – type, power, speed, stroke, bore and crankcase volume.

- (b) Details of arrangements designed to prevent the build up of potentially explosive conditions within the crankcase, e.g., bearing temperature monitoring, oil splash temperature monitoring, crankcase pressure monitoring, and recirculation arrangements.
- (c) Evidence to demonstrate that the arrangements are effective in preventing the build up of potentially explosive conditions together with details of in-service experience.
- (d) Operating instructions and the maintenance and test instructions.

6.7.15 Where it is proposed to use the introduction of inert gas into the crankcase to minimise a potential crankcase explosion, details of the arrangements are to be submitted for consideration.

## Section 7 Air compressors and starting arrangements

### 7.1 General requirements

7.1.1 The requirements of this Section are applicable to reciprocating air compressors intended for starting main engines and auxiliary engines providing essential services.

7.1.2 Two or more air compressors are to be fitted having a total capacity, together with a topping-up compressor where fitted, capable of charging the air receivers within one hour from atmospheric pressure, to the pressure sufficient for the number of starts required by 7.12. At least one of the air compressors is to be independent of the main propulsion unit and the capacity of the main air compressors is to be approximately equally divided between them. The capacity of an emergency compressor which may be installed to satisfy the requirements of 7.11 is to be ignored.

7.1.3 The compressors are to be so designed that the temperature of the air discharged to the starting air receivers will not substantially exceed 93°C in service. A small fusible plug or an alarm device operating at 121°C is to be provided on each compressor to give warning of excessive air temperature. The emergency air compressor is excepted from these requirements.

7.1.4 Each compressor is to be fitted with a safety valve so proportioned and adjusted that the accumulation with the outlet valve closed will not exceed 10 per cent of the maximum working pressure. The casings of the cooling water spaces are to be fitted with a safety valve or bursting disc so that ample relief will be provided in the event of the bursting of an air cooler tube.

7.1.5 Each compressor is to be fitted with an alarm for failure of the lubricating oil supply which will initiate an automatic shut-down.

7.1.6 Where starting air is provided from a general use compressed air system, it is to be demonstrated that the system capacities are consistent with the philosophy described in 7.1.2.

### 7.2 Plans and particulars

7.2.1 Detailed plans, particulars, dimensional drawings and material specifications for compressor crankshafts are to be submitted in triplicate. Plans and particulars for other parts and calculations, where applicable, are to be submitted to LR upon request.

7.2.2 Where compressors of a special type or design are proposed, the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 15 of the *Rules and Regulations of the Classification of Ships* are to be applied.

### 7.3 Materials

7.3.1 The specified minimum tensile strength of castings and forgings for compressor crankshafts are to be within the limits given in 3.2.1 and for grey cast iron to be not less than 300 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

7.3.2 Where it is proposed to use materials outside the ranges specified in 7.3.1, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

7.3.3 Materials for components are to be tested as indicated in 3.1.

7.3.4 For crankshafts with a calculated crank pin diameter equal to or greater than 50 mm, they are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of LR's *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials*. For calculated crank pin diameters less than 50 mm, a manufacturer's certificate may be accepted, see Ch 1,3.1.3(c) of the Rules for Materials.

### 7.4 Design and construction

7.4.1 A fully documented fatigue strength analysis is to be submitted, indicating a factor of safety of 1,5 at the design loads, based on a suitable fatigue strength criterion. Alternatively, the requirements of 7.4.2 to 7.4.6 may be used.

7.4.2 The diameter,  $d_p$ , of a compressor crankshaft is to be not less than  $d$ , determined by the following formula, when all cranks on the shaft are located between two main bearings only:

$$d = V_c \left( \frac{D^2 p Z}{78,5} \left( \frac{S}{16} + \frac{a b}{a + b} \right) \right)^{1/3} \text{ mm}$$

where

- $a$  = distance between inner edge of one main bearing and the centreline of the crankpin nearest the centre of the span, in mm
- $b$  = distance from the centreline of the same crankpin to the inner edge of the adjacent main bearing, in mm
- $a + b$  = span between inner edges of main bearings, in mm
- $d_p$  = proposed minimum diameter of crankshaft, in mm
- $p$  = design pressure, in bar  $g$ , as defined in Pt 7, Ch 1,3.3.1
- $D$  = diameter of cylinder, in mm
- $S$  = length of stroke, in mm



# Diesel Engines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 1

Section 7

$$\begin{aligned} V_C &= 1,0 \text{ for shafts having one cylinder per crank, or} \\ &= 1,05 \text{ for } 90^\circ \\ &= 1,18 \text{ for } 60^\circ \\ &= 1,25 \text{ for } 45^\circ \end{aligned} \left. \vphantom{\begin{aligned} V_C &= 1,0 \text{ for shafts having one cylinder per crank, or} \\ &= 1,05 \text{ for } 90^\circ \\ &= 1,18 \text{ for } 60^\circ \\ &= 1,25 \text{ for } 45^\circ \end{aligned}} \right\} \text{ between adjacent cylinders on the same crankpin}$$

for the shaft and cylinder arrangements as detailed in Table 1.7.1

$$Z = \frac{560}{\sigma_u + 160} \text{ for steel}$$

$$Z = \frac{700}{\sigma_u + 260 - 0,059d_p} \text{ for spheroidal or nodular graphite cast iron}$$

$$Z = \frac{700}{\sigma_u + 260 - 0,069d_p} \text{ for grey cast iron}$$

$\sigma_u$  = specified minimum tensile strength of crankshaft material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

**Table 1.7.1 Angle between cylinders**

| Number of crankpins | Number of cylinders per crank | Angle between cylinders, in degrees |    |    |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----|----|
| 1 or 2              | 2                             | 45                                  | 60 | 90 |
| 3                   | 2                             | 45                                  | 60 | —  |
| 4                   | 2                             | 45                                  | 60 | —  |
| 1                   | 3                             | 45                                  | 60 | 90 |
| 2                   | 3                             | 45                                  | 60 | —  |
| 3                   | 3                             | 45                                  | —  | —  |
| 1                   | 4                             | 45                                  | 60 | —  |
| 2                   | 4                             | 45                                  | —  | —  |

7.4.3 Where the shaft is supported additionally by a centre bearing, the diameter is to be evaluated from the half shaft between the inner edges of the centre and outer main bearings. The diameter so found for the half shaft is to be increased by six per cent for the full length shaft diameter.

7.4.4 The dimensions of crankwebs are to be such that  $B t^2$  is to be not less than given by the following formulae:

0,4 $d^3$  for the web adjacent to the bearing

0,75 $d^3$  for intermediate webs

where

$B$  = breadth of web, in mm

$d$  = minimum diameter of crankshaft as required by 7.4.2, in mm

$t$  = axial thickness of web which is to be not less than 0,45 $d$  for the web adjacent to the bearing, or 0,60 $d$  for intermediate webs, in mm.

7.4.5 Fillets at the junction of crankwebs with crankpins or journals are to be machined to a radius not less than 0,05 $d$ . Smaller fillets, but of a radius not less than 0,025 $d$ , may be used, provided the diameter of the crankpin or journal is not less than  $cd$ :

where

$$c = 1,1 - 2 \frac{r}{d} \text{ but to be taken as not less than } 1,0$$

$d$  = minimum diameter of crankshaft as required by 8.4.2, in mm

$r$  = fillet radius, in mm.

7.4.6 Fillets and oil holes are to be rounded to an even contour and smooth finish.

7.4.7 An oil level sight glass or oil level indicator is to be fitted to the crankcase.

7.4.8 The crankcases of compressors are to be designed to withstand a pressure equal to the maximum working pressure of the system.

7.4.9 Compressors with shaft power exceeding 500 kW are to have torsional vibration analysis determined in accordance with Pt 5, Ch 1 as applicable.

7.4.10 The cooler dimensions for sea-water cooled stage air coolers are to be based on an inlet temperature of not less than 32°C. Where fresh water cooling is used, the cooling water inlet temperature is not to be greater than 40°C.

7.4.11 The cooler dimensions for air cooled stage air coolers are to be based on an air temperature of not less than 45°C.

7.4.12 The piping to and from the air compressor is to be arranged to prevent condensation from entering the cylinders.

## 7.5 Testing

7.5.1 Cylinders and liners of air compressors are to be subjected to hydraulic pressure tests at 1,5 times the final pressure of the stage concerned.

7.5.2 The compressed air chambers of the intercoolers and after coolers of air compressors are to be subjected to hydraulic pressure tests at 1,5 times the final pressure of the stage concerned.

## 7.6 Safety arrangements and monitoring

7.6.1 Air compressors are to be arranged and located so as to minimise the intake of air contaminated by oil or water.

7.6.2 Where one compressor stage comprises several cylinders which can be shut off individually, each cylinder shall be equipped with a safety valve and a pressure gauge.

7.6.3 After the final stage, all air compressors are to be equipped with a water trap and after cooler. The water traps, after coolers and the compressed air spaces between the stages are to be provided with discharge devices at their lowest points.

7.6.4 Each compressor stage shall be fitted with a suitable pressure gauge, the scale of which must indicate the relevant maximum permissible working pressure.

## 7.7 Crankcase relief valves

7.7.1 In compressors having cylinders not exceeding 200 mm bore or having a crankcase gross volume not exceeding 0,6 m<sup>3</sup>, crankcase relief valves may be omitted.

7.7.2 Crankcases are to be provided with lightweight spring-loaded valves or other quick-acting and self-closing devices to relieve the crankcases of pressure in the event of an internal explosion and to prevent any inrush of air thereafter. The valves are to be designed and constructed to open quickly and be fully open at a pressure not greater than 0,2 bar.

7.7.3 The valve lids are to be made of ductile material capable of withstanding the shock of contact with stoppers at the full open position.

7.7.4 Each valve is to be fitted with a flame arrester that permits flow for crankcase pressure relief and prevents the passage of flame following a crankcase explosion.

7.7.5 The valves are to be provided with a copy of the manufacturer's installation and maintenance manual for the size and type of valve being supplied. The manual is to contain the following information:

- (a) Description of valve with details of function and design limits;
- (b) Copy of type test certification;
- (c) Installation instructions;
- (d) Maintenance and in-service instructions to include testing and renewal of any sealing arrangements;
- (e) Actions required after a crankcase explosion.

7.7.6 A copy of the installation and maintenance manual required by 7.7.3 is to be provided on board the ship.

7.7.7 Plans showing details and arrangements of the crankcase relief valves are to be submitted for approval, see 2.1.

7.7.8 The valves are to be provided with suitable markings that include the following information:

- (a) Name and address of manufacturer;
- (b) Designation and size;
- (c) Month/year of manufacture;
- (d) Approved installation orientation.

## 7.8 Number of crankcase relief valves

7.8.1 In compressors having cylinders exceeding 200 mm but not exceeding 250 mm bore, at least two relief valves are to be fitted; where more than one relief valve is required, the valves are to be located at or near the ends of the crankcase.

7.8.2 In compressors having cylinders exceeding 250 mm but not exceeding 300 mm bore, at least one relief valve is to be fitted in way of each alternate crank throw with a minimum of two valves. For compressors having 3, 5, 7, 9, etc., crank throws, the number of relief valves is not to be less than 2, 3, 4, 5, etc., respectively.

7.8.3 In compressors having cylinders exceeding 300 mm bore at least one valve is to be fitted in way of each main crank throw.

7.8.4 Additional relief valves are to be fitted for separate spaces on the crankcase, such as gear or chain cases, when the gross volume of such spaces exceeds 0,6 m<sup>3</sup>.

## 7.9 Size of crankcase relief valves

7.9.1 The combined free area of the crankcase relief valves fitted on a compressor is to be not less than 115 cm<sup>2</sup>/m<sup>3</sup> based on the volume of the crankcase.

7.9.2 The free area of each relief valve is to be not less than 45 cm<sup>2</sup>.

7.9.3 The free area of the relief valve is the minimum flow area at any section through the valve when the valve is fully open.

7.9.4 In determining the volume of the crankcase for the purpose of calculating the combined free area of the crankcase relief valves, the volume of the stationary parts within the crankcase may be deducted from the total internal volume of the crankcase.

## 7.10 Vent pipes

7.10.1 Where crankcase vent or breather pipes are fitted, they are to be made as small as practicable and/or as long as possible to minimise the inrush of air after an explosion.

## 7.11 Dead ship condition starting arrangements

7.11.1 Means are to be provided to ensure that machinery can be brought into operation from the dead ship condition without external aid.

7.11.2 Dead ship condition for the purpose of 7.11.1 is to be understood to mean a condition under which the main propulsion plant, boilers and auxiliaries are not in operation. In restoring propulsion, no stored energy for starting and operating the propulsion plant is assumed to be available. Additionally, neither the main source of electrical power nor other essential auxiliaries is assumed to be available for starting and operating the propulsion plant.

7.11.3 Dead ship condition starting is to be possible in all ambient operating conditions defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.5.

7.11.4 Where the emergency source of power is an emergency generator which fully complies with the requirements of Pt 10, Ch 1 of the Rules, this generator may be used for restoring operation of the main propulsion plant, boilers and auxiliaries where any power supplies necessary for engine operation are also protected to a similar level as the starting arrangements.

7.11.5 Where there is no emergency generator installed or an emergency generator does not comply with Pt 10, Ch 1 of the Rules, the arrangements for bringing main and auxiliary machinery into operation are to be such that the initial charge of starting air or initial electrical power and any power supplies for engine operation can be developed on board ship without external aid. If for this purpose an emergency air compressor or an electric generator is required, these units are to be powered by a hand-starting oil engine or a hand-operated compressor. The arrangements for bringing main and auxiliary machinery into operation are to have capacity such that the starting energy and any power supplies for engine operation are available within 30 minutes of a dead ship condition.

## 7.12 Air receivers

7.12.1 Where the main engine is arranged for air starting, the total air receiver capacity is to be sufficient to provide without replenishment, not less than 12 consecutive starts of the main engine, alternating between ahead and astern if of the reversible type and not less than six consecutive starts if of the non-reversible type. At least two air receivers of approximately equal capacity are to be provided. For scantlings and fittings of air receivers, see Pt 8, Ch 2.

7.12.2 For multi-engine installations, where more than one engine is driving each propulsion shaft line, the following requirements apply:

- (a) Twin engine installations driving fixed pitch propeller, where one of the engines can be reversed, six consecutive starts per engine are required.
- (b) For all other types of multi-engine installations three consecutive starts per engine are required.

7.12.3 Each air receiver is to be fitted with a drain arrangement at its lowest part, permitting oil and water to be blown out.

7.12.4 Each receiver which can be isolated from a relief valve is to be provided with a suitable fusible plug to discharge the contents in case of fire. The melting point of the fusible plug is to be approximately 150°C.

7.12.5 Receivers used for the storage of air for the control of remotely operated valves are to be fitted with relief valves and not fusible plugs.

## 7.13 Starting air pipe systems and safety fittings

7.13.1 Air start piping systems are, in general, to comply with the requirements of Part 7, with due regard being paid to the particular type of installation.

7.13.2 In designing the compressed air installation, care is to be taken that the compressor air inlets will be located in an atmosphere reasonably free from oil vapour or, alternatively, an air duct from outside the machinery space is to be led to the compressors.

7.13.3 The air discharge pipe from the compressors is to be led directly to the starting air receivers. Provision is to be made for intercepting and draining oil and water in the air discharge for which purpose a separator or filter is to be fitted in the discharge pipe between compressors and receivers.

7.13.4 The starting air pipe system from receivers to main and auxiliary engines is to be entirely separate from the compressor discharge pipe system. Stop valves on the receivers are to permit slow opening to avoid sudden pressure rises in the piping system. Valve chests and fittings in the piping system are to be of ductile material.

7.13.5 Drain valves for removing accumulations of oil and water are to be fitted on compressors, separators, filters and receivers. In the case of any low-level pipelines, drain valves are to be fitted to suitably located drain pots or separators.

7.13.6 The starting air piping system is to be protected against the effects of explosions by providing an isolating non-return valve or equivalent at the starting air supply to each engine.

7.13.7 In direct reversing engines, bursting discs or flame arresters are to be fitted at the starting valves on each cylinder; in non-reversing and auxiliary engines at least one such device is to be fitted at the supply inlet to the starting air manifold on each engine. The fitting of bursting discs or flame arresters may be waived in engines where the cylinder bore does not exceed 230 mm.

7.13.8 Alternative safety arrangements may be submitted for consideration.

## 7.14 Electrical starting arrangements

7.14.1 Where main engines are fitted with electric starters, two batteries are to be fitted. Each battery is to be capable of starting the engines when cold and the combined capacity is to be sufficient without recharging to provide the number of starts of the main engines as required by 7.12.

7.14.2 Electric starting arrangements for auxiliary engines are to have two separate batteries or be supplied by separate circuits from the main engine batteries when such are provided. Where one of the auxiliary engines only is fitted with an electric starter one battery will be acceptable.

7.14.3 The combined capacity of the batteries for starting the auxiliary engines is to be sufficient for at least three starts for each engine.

7.14.4 Engine starting batteries are to be used only for the purposes of starting the engines and for the engines' own control, alarm, monitoring and safety arrangements. Means are to be provided to ensure that the stored energy in the batteries is maintained at a level required to start the engines as defined in 7.14.1 and 7.14.3.

7.14.5 Where engines are fitted with electric starting batteries, an alarm is to be provided for low battery charge level.

# Diesel Engines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 1

Sections 7 &amp; 8

7.14.6 Transient electrical loads due to starting of engines are not to interfere with power supplies to control and weapons systems.

7.14.7 The requirements for battery installations are given in Pt 10, Ch 1.

## 7.15 Starting of the emergency source of power

7.15.1 Emergency generators are to be capable of being readily started in their cold conditions down to a temperature of 0°C. If this is impracticable, or if lower temperatures are likely to be encountered, consideration is to be given to the provision and maintenance of heating arrangements, so that ready starting will be assured.

7.15.2 Each emergency generator that is arranged to be automatically started is to be equipped with an approved starting system having two independent sources of stored energy, each of which is sufficient for at least three consecutive starts. When hand (manual) starting is demonstrated to be effective, only one source of stored energy need be provided. However, this source of stored energy is to be protected against depletion below the level required for starting.

7.15.3 Provision is to be made to maintain continuously the stored energy at all times, and for this purpose:

- (a) Electrical and hydraulic starting systems are to be maintained from the emergency switchboard.
- (b) Compressed air starting systems may be maintained by the main or auxiliary compressed air receivers, through a suitable non-return valve, or by an emergency air compressor energised by the emergency switchboard.
- (c) All these starting, charging and energy storing devices are to be located in the emergency generator room. These devices are not to be used for any purpose other than the operation of the emergency generator.

7.15.4 Electronically controlled emergency engines are to comply with the additional requirements of 15.7.

7.15.5 When automatic starting is not required by the Rules and where it can be demonstrated as being effective, hand (manual) starting is permissible, such as manual cranking, inertial starters, manual hydraulic accumulators, powder charge cartridges.

7.15.6 When hand (manual) starting is not practicable, the provisions of 7.15.2 and 7.15.3 are to be complied with except that starting may be manually initiated.

7.15.7 Electric starting arrangements are also to satisfy 7.14.2 to 7.14.5.

## 7.16 Engine control, alarm, monitoring and safety system power supplies

7.16.1 Power supplies are to be arranged so that power for electrically powered control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems required for engine starting and operation will remain available in the event of a failure. Power is to remain available to permit starting attempts for the number of starts specified by this Section for each individual source of stored energy.

7.16.2 Where adequate battery and charging capacity exists, an engine-starting battery may be used as one source of electrical power required by 8.6.1.

7.16.3 An alarm is to be activated in the event of failure of a power supply and, where applicable, low battery charge level. Manual power supply changeover facilities are permitted.

## Section 8 Piping systems

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 Diesel engine piping systems are, in general, to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1 and Ch 3, due regard being paid to the particular type of installation.

8.1.2 Short lengths of synthetic rubber hoses that comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1,13 may be used to accommodate relative movement between machinery and fixed piping systems.

### 8.2 Oil fuel systems

8.2.1 Oil fuel arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 3,3 and 3,4, as applicable.

8.2.2 Means are to be provided safely to purge the oil fuel system of air.

8.2.3 All external high pressure fuel delivery lines between the pressure fuel pumps and fuel injectors are to be protected with a jacketed piping system capable of containing fuel from a high pressure line failure. If flexible hoses are used for shielding purposes, these arrangements are to be approved.

8.2.4 The protection is to prevent oil fuel or oil fuel mist from reaching a source of ignition on the engine or its surroundings. Suitable drainage arrangements are to be made for draining any oil fuel leakage to collector tank(s) fitted in a safe position and also prevent contamination of lubricating oil by oil fuel. An alarm is to be provided to indicate that leakage is taking place.

8.2.5 Diesel engine fuel system components are to be designed to accommodate the maximum peak pressures experienced in service. In particular, this applies to the fuel injection pump supply and spill line piping which may be subject to high-pressure pulses from the pump. Connections on such piping systems should be chosen to minimise the risk of pressurised oil fuel leaks.

8.2.6 Where multi-engined installations are supplied from the same fuel source, means of isolating the fuel supply and spill piping to individual engines is to be provided. These means of isolation are not to affect the operation of the other engines and are to be operable from a position not rendered inaccessible by a fire on any of the engines, see also Pt 1, Ch 2, 4.15.

8.2.7 The arrangements of injection pumps, injectors and connections are to be such that leak-off fuel and lubricating oil cannot cross-contaminate each other.

### **8.3 Oil fuel filters and fittings**

8.3.1 Two or more filters are to be fitted in the oil fuel supply lines to the main and auxiliary engines, and the arrangements are to be such that any filter can be cleaned without interrupting the supply of filtered oil fuel to the engines.

8.3.2 Drip trays are to be fitted under oil fuel filters and other fittings which are required to be opened up frequently for cleaning or adjustment or where there is the possibility of leakage. Alternative arrangements may be acceptable and full details should be submitted for consideration.

### **8.4 Lubricating oil systems**

8.4.1 Lubricating oil arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Part 7 as applicable.

8.4.2 Where the lubricating oil for main propelling engines is circulated under pressure, provision is to be made for the efficient filtration of the oil. The filters are to be capable of being cleaned without stopping the engine or reducing the supply of filtered oil to the engine. Proposals for an automatic by-pass for emergency purposes in high speed engines are to be submitted for special consideration.

8.4.3 The lubrication system for each engine is to be independent from any other engine. A common lubricating oil storage tank arrangement may be provided.

8.4.4 Each engine is to be provided with a means of checking the running and static level of oil in the system/engine.

8.4.5 Means are to be provided to purge safely lubricating oil systems of air.

8.4.6 All vent pipes are to be arranged with a continuous upward slope of at least 10° to prevent the collection of oil in pockets and bends.

8.4.7 Oil sampling arrangements with the ability to take samples when the engine is running are to be fitted with valves or cocks of the self-closing type and located in positions as far removed as possible from any heated surface or electrical equipment.

### **8.5 Engine cooling water systems**

8.5.1 Cooling water arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Part 7, as applicable.

### **8.6 Intake and exhaust systems**

8.6.1 The air intakes and exhausts are to be in accordance with the engine manufacturer's design and installation requirements. Particular attention is drawn to the requirements on pressure and flow conditions to be achieved throughout the intake and exhaust systems. The arrangements are to comply with 8.6.2 to 8.6.10 as applicable.

8.6.2 Engine intakes are to be arranged to provide sufficient air to the engines whilst minimising the ingestion of harmful particles.

8.6.3 Where the exhaust is led overboard near the waterline, means are to be provided to prevent water from being siphoned back to the engine. Where the exhaust is cooled by water spray, the exhaust pipes are to be self-draining overboard. Erosion/corrosion resistant shut-off flaps or other devices are to be fitted on the hull side shell or pipe end and acceptable arrangements made to prevent water flooding the space or entering the engine exhaust manifold.

8.6.4 Each engine is to have an independent exhaust system.

8.6.5 The arrangement of the exhaust system is to be such as to prevent exhaust gases being drawn into the manned spaces, air conditioning systems and air intakes. They should not discharge into air cushion intakes.

8.6.6 The design of exhaust systems is to prevent deterioration of engine parts resulting from ingress of sea or rain water via the exhaust ducting when the engine is not in use. Drainage arrangements are to be provided and are to be led to a tank suitable for the potentially corrosive nature of any drainage.

8.6.7 Exhaust systems are not to pass through accommodation spaces.

8.6.8 The exhaust system is to accommodate thermal expansion and movement of the duct due to the combined effects of operating the engines and flexure of the ship's structure.

8.6.9 The exhaust ducting and silencers are to be designed and installed to minimise the risk of unburnt fuel collecting inside the duct.



8.6.10 The design of the exhaust ducting and associated equipment is to minimise the risk of soot collecting at any point other than those specifically intended for soot removal. Inspection and access openings are to be provided.

8.6.11 Plastic pipes intended for exhaust systems are to be in accordance with a recognised Code or Standard suitable for the intended service conditions.

## 8.7 High pressure oil systems

8.7.1 Where flammable oils are used in high pressure systems, the oil pipe lines between the high pressure oil pump and actuating oil pistons are to be protected with a jacketed piping system capable of preventing oil spray from a high-pressure line failure.

## 8.8 Air induction systems

8.8.1 An air filter is to be fitted at the inlet to each engine. The air filters are to satisfy the following:

- (a) Be readily removable for cleaning.
- (b) Have an efficiency of not less than 98 per cent at 100 per cent of rated flow capacity when tested to an acceptable standard specified by the manufacturer.
- (c) Be provided with an indicator, such as a pressure drop indicator, to indicate when a filter requires cleaning.
- (d) Be of a design that does not degrade the performance of the engine.
- (e) For engines drawing air from the engine compartment, be as close as possible to the engine air inlet and in such cases the debris screen required by 8.8.4(c) may be omitted.

8.8.2 Where there is a navy requirement to provide a ducted air system to convey air from inlets on deck to the engine, the requirements of 8.8.3 to 8.8.6 are to be complied with.

8.8.3 The ducting is to be led by the most direct route practicable consistent with the arrangement of adjacent systems and equipment.

8.8.4 Each ducted air supply is to have the following:

- (a) Means to prevent sea spray, aerosol salt and sand reaching the engine and means to remove any such substances that enter the intakes or their bypass arrangements. Suitable drainage arrangements to remove any water from intakes and intake bypass arrangements (where fitted) to guard against the risk of icing are also to be provided.
- (b) Means of ensuring that loads are not transmitted from the engine to the ducting, such as a flexible bellows, see Pt 7, Ch 1, 14.
- (c) A debris screen that is easily accessible for cleaning located close to the engine.

8.8.5 The design of induction air systems is to provide a nominal constant air speed that should be as low as reasonably practicable to minimise pressure losses. The inlet pressure drop across the system, including filters and silencers, etc. is not to exceed the engine manufacturer's recommendations.

8.8.6 Air induction system intakes are to be designed and installed such that turbulent flow is not induced therein by ship motions.

## Section 9 Control and monitoring

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 The Control and Monitoring systems are to comply with the requirements of Part 9. See Pt 1, Ch 2, 4 for requirements for operating conditions.

9.1.2 Oil mist detection, engine bearing temperature monitors or alternative methods for crankcase protection are to be provided:

- (a) When arrangements are fitted to override the automatic shutdown for excessive reduction of the lubricating oil supply pressure.
- (b) For engines of 2,250 kW and above or having cylinders of more than 300 mm bore.

#### NOTES:

1. For medium and high speed engines automatic shut-down of the engine is to occur.
2. For slow speed engines, automatic slow-down is to occur.
3. Where arrangements are made to override the automatic slow-down or shut-down due to high oil mist or bearing temperature, the override is to be independent of other overrides.
4. Where the bearing temperature monitoring method is chosen, all bearings in the crankcase are to be monitored where practicable, e.g. main, crankpin, crosshead.
5. Where engine bearing temperature monitors or alternative methods are provided for the prevention of the build up of oil mist that may lead to a potentially explosive condition within the crankcase, details are to be submitted for consideration. The submission is to demonstrate that the arrangements are equivalent to those provided by oil mist detection, see 6.7.14.

9.1.3 All main and auxiliary engines intended for essential services are to be provided with means of indicating the lubricating oil pressure supply to them. Where such engines are of more than 220 kW, audible and visual alarms are to be fitted to give warning of an appreciable reduction in pressure of the lubricating oil supply. Further, these alarms are to be actuated from the outlet side of any restrictions, such as filters, coolers, etc.

## 9.2 Propulsion engine speed governors

9.2.1 An efficient speed governor is to be fitted to each diesel engine that provides mechanical drive to propeller(s) and adjusted so that the speed does not exceed that for which the engine is approved by more than 15 per cent.

9.2.2 Diesel engines coupled to electrical generators that are the source of power for main electric propulsion are to comply with the requirements for electrical generator engines in respect of governors and overspeed protection devices.

## 9.3 Electrical generator and auxiliary engine speed governors

9.3.1 Diesel engines intended for driving electrical generators are to be fitted with governors which, with fixed setting, are to control the speed within the design limits of the electrical system requirements. Unless otherwise required by the electrical system power supply requirements, the governor is to control the engine speed within 10 per cent momentary variation and five per cent permanent variation. Except where permitted in accordance with 9.3.2, this is to be achieved when full load is suddenly taken off and, when after running on no load for at least 15 minutes, the load is suddenly applied as follows:

- (a) For engines with BMEP less than 8 bar, full load, or
- (b) For engines with BMEP greater than 8 bar, 800/BMEP per cent, but not less than one-third, of full load, the full load being attained in not more than two additional equal stages as rapidly as possible.

9.3.2 In order to design the load management of the main and emergency electrical power systems in accordance with Pt 10, Ch 1.6.9, where diesel engines are of a type that cannot meet the requirements of 9.3.1(a) and (b), load step trials are to be carried out. The trials are to demonstrate the load steps that are required to increase the mechanical load on the engine from no load to full load and full load rejection, whilst keeping the momentary variations in engine speed of within 10 per cent and permanent variations in engine speed within five per cent. The results of the trials are to be submitted to LR for consideration.

9.3.3 The no-load stability of governors on electrical generator engines is to be such as to enable satisfactory paralleling to be achieved.

9.3.4 For alternating current installations, the permanent speed variations of the machines intended for parallel operation are to be equal within a tolerance of  $\pm 0.5$  per cent. Momentary speed variations with load changes in accordance with 9.3.1 are to return and remain within one per cent of the final steady state speed. Where there are no stated electrical power supply requirements for a particular installation, this should normally be accomplished within five but in no case more than eight seconds. For quality of power supplies, see Pt 10, Ch 1.1.8.

9.3.5 Emergency generator engines are to comply with 9.3.1 except that the initial load required by 9.3.1(b) is to be not less than the total connected emergency load, or if their total consumer load is applied in steps, the following requirements are to be met:

- (a) the total load is supplied within 45 seconds from power failure on the main switchboard;
- (b) the maximum step load is declared and demonstrated; and
- (c) the power distribution system is designed such that the declared maximum step loading is not exceeded.

9.3.6 Compliance of time delay and loading sequence with the requirements of 9.3.5 is to be demonstrated at ship's trials.

## 9.4 Overspeed protective devices

9.4.1 Each main engine developing 220 kW or over which can be declutched or which drives a controllable (reversible) pitch propeller, and also each auxiliary engine developing 220 kW and over for driving an electric generator, is to be fitted with an approved overspeed protective device.

9.4.2 The overspeed protective device, including its driving mechanism, is to be independent of the governor required by 9.4 or 9.5 and is to be so adjusted that the speed does not exceed that for which the engine and its driven machinery are to be classed by more than 20 per cent for main engines and 15 per cent for auxiliary engines.

## 9.5 Engine stopping

9.5.1 At least two independent means of stopping the engines quickly from the control station under any conditions are to be available.

## 9.6 Unattended machinery

9.6.1 Where machinery is fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions it does not require any manual intervention by the operators, it is to be provided with the alarms and safety arrangements required by 9.1 to 9.8 as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

9.6.2 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shut-down of machinery are required by Tables 1.9.1(a) and (b) and 1.9.2, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shut-down are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm.

9.6.3 Means are to be provided to prevent leaks from high pressure oil fuel injection piping for main and auxiliary engines dripping or spraying onto hot surfaces or into machinery air inlets. Such leakage is to be collected and, where practicable, led to a collector tank(s) fitted in a safe position. An alarm is to be provided to indicate that leakage is taking place. These requirements may also be applicable to high pressure hydraulic oil piping depending upon the location.

9.6.4 Where machinery specified in this Section is required to be provided with a standby pump, the standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

# Diesel Engines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 1

Section 9

## 9.7 Diesel engines for propulsion purposes

9.7.1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in 9.7.2 to 9.7.7 and Tables 1.9.1(a) and (b). See also 9.1.2 and 9.6.3.

9.7.2 Alarms are to operate for the fault conditions shown in Table 1.9.1(a). Where applicable, indication is to be given at the relevant control stations that the speed or power of the main propulsion engine(s) is to be manually reduced or has been reduced automatically.

9.7.3 Alarms are to operate, and automatic shut-down of machinery is to occur for the fault conditions shown in Table 1.9.1(b).

9.7.4 The following engine services are to be fitted with automatic temperature controls so as to maintain steady state conditions throughout the normal operating range of the propulsion engine(s):

- Lubricating oil supply.
- Piston coolant supply, where applicable.
- Cylinder coolant supply, where applicable.
- Fuel valve coolant supply, where applicable.
- Oil fuel supply, where oil fuel grades require heating or cooling only, see also 9.7.5.

9.7.5 Where the oil fuel supply is heated, automatic control for viscosity may be fitted in lieu of the temperature control required by 9.7.4.

9.7.6 Indication of the starting air pressure is to be provided at each control station from which it is possible to start the main propulsion engine(s).

9.7.7 The number of automatic consecutive attempts which fail to produce a start are to be limited to three attempts. For reversible engines which are started and stopped for manoeuvring purposes, means are to be provided to maintain sufficient starting air in the air receivers. For electric starting, see 7.14.

9.7.8 Prolonged running in a restricted speed range is to be prevented automatically or, alternatively, an indication of restricted speed ranges is to be provided at each control station.

## 9.8 Auxiliary and other engines

9.8.1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Table 1.9.2. See also 9.1.2 and 9.6.3.

9.8.2 For engines operating on heavy oil fuel, automatic temperature of viscosity controls are to be provided.

**Table 1.9.1(a) Diesel engines for propulsion purposes: Alarms and slow-downs**  
(See continuation)

| Item                                                       | Alarm          | Note                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil sump level                                 | Low            | Engines                                                                                    |
| Lubricating oil inlet pressure*                            | 1st stage Low  | Engines<br>Slow-down                                                                       |
| Lubricating oil inlet temperature*                         | High           | Engines                                                                                    |
| Lubricating oil filters differential pressure              | High           | —                                                                                          |
| Oil mist concentration in crankcase or bearing temperature | High           | Automatic slow-down of slow speed engines, see 9.1.2                                       |
| Cylinder lubricator flow                                   | Low            | One sensor per lubricator unit. Slow-down (automatic on medium and high speed engines)     |
| Thrust bearing temperature*                                | High           | Slow-down                                                                                  |
| Common rail servo oil pressure                             | Low            |                                                                                            |
| Piston coolant inlet pressure                              | Low            | If a separate system. Slow-down                                                            |
| Piston coolant outlet temperature*                         | High           | Per cylinder (if a separate system). Slow-down                                             |
| Piston coolant outlet flow*                                | Low            | Per cylinder (if a separate system). Slow-down                                             |
| Cylinder coolant inlet pressure or flow*                   | Low            | Slow-down (automatic on medium and high speed engines)                                     |
| Cylinder coolant outlet temperature*                       | 1st stage high | Per cylinder (if a separate system) Slow-down (automatic on medium and high speed engines) |
| Engine cooling water system – oil content                  | High           | Where engine cooling water used in heat exchangers                                         |
| Sea-water cooling pressure                                 | Low            | —                                                                                          |
| Fuel valve coolant pressure                                | Low            | If a separate system                                                                       |
| Fuel valve coolant temperature                             | High           | If a separate system                                                                       |
| Oil fuel pressure from booster pump                        | Low            | —                                                                                          |
| Oil fuel temperature or viscosity*                         | High and Low   | Heavy oil only                                                                             |
| Common rail fuel oil pressure                              | Low            |                                                                                            |
| Oil fuel high pressure piping*                             | Leakage        | See 9.6.3                                                                                  |



# Diesel Engines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 1

Section 9

**Table 1.9.1(a) Diesel engines for propulsion purposes:  
Alarms and slow-downs**  
(continued)

| Item                                                                  | Alarm        | Note                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Charge air cooler outlet temperature                                  | High and Low | 4-stroke medium and high speed engines                               |
| Scavenge air temperature (fire)                                       | High         | Per cylinder, (2 stroke engines). Slow-down                          |
| Scavenge air receiver water level                                     | High         | —                                                                    |
| Exhaust gas temperature*                                              | High         | Per cylinder. Slow-down (automatic on medium and high speed engines) |
| Exhaust gas temperature deviation from average*                       | High         | Per cylinder, for engine power >500 kW/cylinder. See Note 5          |
| Turbocharger exhaust gas inlet temperature                            | High         | Each turbocharger                                                    |
| Turbocharger exhaust gas outlet temperature*                          | High         | Each turbocharger                                                    |
| Turbocharger lubricating oil inlet pressure                           | Low          | If system not integral with turbocharger                             |
| Turbocharger lubricating oil outlet temperature                       | High         | Each bearing, if system not integral with turbocharger See Note 6    |
| Starting air pressure*                                                | Low          | Before engine manoeuvring valve                                      |
| Control air pressure                                                  | Low          | —                                                                    |
| Direction of rotation                                                 | Wrong way    | Reversible engines, see also 9.7.8                                   |
| Automatic start of engine                                             | Failure      | See 9.7.8                                                            |
| Electrical starting battery charge level*                             | Low          | Electric start engines, see also 7.14.5                              |
| Feed water or water/thermal fluid forced circulation flow (if fitted) | Low          | See Pt 7, Ch 3,6.2.6 and Note 6                                      |
| Uptake temperature                                                    | High         | To monitor for soot fires. See Notes 6 and 7                         |

**Table 1.9.1(a) Diesel engines for propulsion purposes:  
Alarms and slow-downs**  
(conclusion)

## NOTES

- Where 'per cylinder' appears in this Table, suitable alarms may be situated on manifold outlets for medium and high speed engines.
- For engines and gearing of 1500 kW or less only the items marked \* are required.
- Common sensors are acceptable for alarms and slow-down functions.
- Except where stated otherwise in the Table, slow-down may be effected by either manual or automatic means, by reduction of speed or power as appropriate.
- For engine powers <500 kW/cylinder, but total power >500 kW, a common sensor for exhaust gas manifold temperature is to be fitted.
- Alarm only required when an exhaust gas economiser/boiler/thermal oil heater is fitted.
- Alternatively, details (including location) of an appropriate fire detection system are to be submitted for consideration.
- Where the outlet temperature for each bearing cannot be measured due to the design, details of alternative proposals in accordance with the turbocharger manufacturer's instructions may be submitted for consideration.

**Table 1.9.1(b) Diesel engines for propulsion purposes:  
Alarms and shut-downs**

| Item                                                       | Alarm          | Note                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricant oil inlet pressure                               | 2nd stage low  | Automatic shut-down of engines, see 9.6.2                                                                                                                           |
| Oil mist concentration in crankcase or bearing temperature | High           | Automatic shut-down of medium and high speed engines, see 9.1.2                                                                                                     |
| Cylinder coolant outlet temperature                        | 2nd stage high | Automatic shut-down of medium and high speed engines, see 9.6.2                                                                                                     |
| Overspeed                                                  | High           | Automatic shut-down of engine, see also 9.4. Details of alternative proposals in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions may be submitted for consideration |

# Diesel Engines

## Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 1

Sections 9 &amp; 10

**Table 1.9.2 Auxiliary diesel engines: Alarms and shut-downs**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Alarm          | Note                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil inlet temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | High           | —                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Lubricating oil inlet pressure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | 1st stage low  | —                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 2nd stage low  | Automatic shut-down of engine, see 9.6.2                                                                                                                            |
| Oil mist concentration in crankcase or bearing temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | High           | Automatic shut-down of engine, see 9.1.2                                                                                                                            |
| Oil fuel high pressure piping                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Leakage        | See 9.6.3                                                                                                                                                           |
| Coolant outlet temperature (for engines >220 kW)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | 1st stage high | —                                                                                                                                                                   |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | 2nd stage high | Automatic shut-down of engine, see 9.6.3                                                                                                                            |
| Coolant pressure or flow                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Low            | —                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Oil fuel temperature or viscosity                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | High and Low   | Heavy oil only                                                                                                                                                      |
| Overspeed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | High           | Automatic shut-down of engine, see also 9.4. Details of alternative proposals in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions may be submitted for consideration |
| Common rail servo oil pressure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Low            |                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Common rail fuel oil pressure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | Low            |                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Starting air pressure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Low            | —                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Electrical starting battery charge level                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Low            | Electric start engines, see also 7.14.5                                                                                                                             |
| Exhaust gas temperature (for engines >500 kW/cylinder)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | High           | Per cylinder                                                                                                                                                        |
| Feed water or water/thermal fluid forced circulation flow (if fitted)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Low            | See Pt 7, Ch 3,6.2.6                                                                                                                                                |
| Uptake temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | High           | To monitor for soot fires<br>See Notes 2 and 3                                                                                                                      |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. The arrangements are to comply with the requirements of the Naval Authority concerned.<br>2. Alarm only required when an exhaust gas economiser/boiler/thermal oil heater is fitted.<br>3. Alternatively, details (including location) of an appropriate fire detection system are to be submitted for consideration. |                |                                                                                                                                                                     |

### Section 10

## Alarms and safeguards for emergency diesel engines

### 10.1 General

**10.1.1** These requirements apply to emergency diesel engines required to be immediately available in an emergency and capable of being controlled remotely or automatically.

**10.1.2** Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Table 1.10.1. See also 9.1.2 and 9.6.3.

**10.1.3** The safety and alarm systems are to be designed to 'fail safe'. The characteristics of the 'fail safe' operation are to be evaluated on the basis not only of the system and its associated machinery, but also the complete installation, as well as the ship.

**10.1.4** Regardless of the engine output, if shut-downs additional to those specified in Table 1.10.1 are provided except for the overspeed shut-down, they are to be automatically overridden when the engine is in automatic or remote control mode during navigation.

**Table 1.10.1 Alarms and safeguards for emergency diesel engines**

| Item                                                                                                   | Alarm    | Alarm    | Note                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------|---------------------|
| Emergency diesel engine                                                                                | ≥ 220 kW | < 220 kW | —                   |
| Fuel oil leakage from pressure pipes                                                                   | Leakage  | Leakage  | See 9.6.3           |
| Lubricating oil temperature                                                                            | High     | —        | —                   |
| Lubricating oil pressure                                                                               | Low      | Low      | —                   |
| Oil mist concentration in crankcase                                                                    | High     | —        | See Note            |
| Coolant pressure or flow                                                                               | Low      | —        | —                   |
| Coolant temperature (can be air)                                                                       | High     | High     | —                   |
| Overspeed                                                                                              | High     | —        | Automatic shut-down |
| <b>NOTE</b><br>For engines having a power of more than 2250 kW or a cylinder bore of more than 300 mm. |          |          |                     |

**10.1.5** Grouped alarms of at least those items listed in Table 1.10.1 are to be arranged on the bridge.

**10.1.6** In addition to the fuel oil control from outside the space, a readily accessible local means of engine shut-down is to be provided.

10.1.7 Local indications of at least those items listed in Table 1.10.1 are to be provided within the same space as the diesel engines and are to remain operational in the event of failure of the alarm and safety systems.

## Section 11 Mass produced engines

### 11.1 Definition

11.1.1 Mass produced engines, for main and auxiliary purposes, are defined as those which are produced under the following criteria:

- (a) In quantity under strict quality control of material and parts, according to a quality assurance scheme acceptable to LR.
- (b) By the use of jigs and automatic machine tools designed to machine parts to specified tolerances for interchangeability, and which are verified on a regular inspection basis.
- (c) By assembly with parts taken from stock and requiring little or no fitting.
- (d) With bench tests carried out on individual assembled engines according to a specified programme.
- (e) With appraisal by final examination of engines selected at random after workshop testing.

11.1.2 Castings, forgings and other parts for use in mass produced engines are also to be produced by methods similar to those given in 11.1.1(a), (b) and (c), with appropriate inspection.

11.1.3 Pressure testing of components is to comply with Pt 1, Ch 2,6.3.

11.1.4 The specification of a mass produced engine is to define the limits of manufacture of all component parts. The total production output is to be certified by the manufacturer and verified as may be required, by LR in accordance with the agreed manufacturer's quality assurance scheme, see 11.1.1(a).

### 11.2 Procedure for approval of mass produced engines

11.2.1 The procedure outlined in 11.2.2 to 11.2.5 applies to the inspection and certification of mass produced oil engines having a bore not exceeding 300 mm.

11.2.2 For the approval of a mass-produced engine type, the manufacturer is to submit:

- (a) The plans and particulars required by 2.1 for assessment.
- (b) As necessary, information to assess compliance with Section 4.
- (c) A list of subcontractors for main parts.
- (d) Control, alarm, monitoring and safety system configuration procedures, see 11.4.2.

11.2.3 The manufacturer is to supply full information regarding the manufacturing processes and quality control procedures applied in the workshops. The information is to address the following:

- (a) Organisation of quality control systems.
- (b) Recording of quality control operations.
- (c) Qualification and independence of personnel in charge of quality control.

11.2.4 A running type test of at least 100 hours' duration is to be carried out on an engine chosen from the production line. The type testing is to comply with 11.5.

11.2.5 LR reserves the right to limit the duration of validity of approval of a mass produced engine. LR is to be informed, without delay, of any change in the design of the engine, including changes to the software and control, alarm, monitoring or safety systems, in the manufacturing or quality control processes, in the selection of materials or in the list of subcontractors for main parts.

### 11.3 Continuous review of production

11.3.1 LR Surveyors are to be provided with free access to the manufacturer's workshops and to the quality control files.

11.3.2 The control of production, which is subject to survey, is to include the following:

- (a) Inspection and testing records are to be maintained to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.
- (b) The system for identification of parts is to be in accordance with recognised practice, acceptable to LR.
- (c) The manufacturer is to provide full information about the quality control of the parts supplied by subcontractors for which certification may be required. LR reserves the right to apply direct and individual inspection procedures for parts supplied by subcontractors when deemed necessary.
- (d) At the request of an attending LR surveyor, a workshop test may be required for an individual engine.

### 11.4 Compliance and inspection certificate

11.4.1 Each engine which is to be installed on a naval ship classed by LR is to be supplied with a statement certifying that the engine is identical to the one which underwent the tests specified in 11.2.4, and state the test and inspection results. The statement is to be made on a form agreed with LR. Each statement is to include the identification number which appears on the engine. A copy of this statement is to be submitted to LR.

11.4.2 The certificate is to include reference to the manufacturer's procedures to be followed during commissioning for configuring control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems for multi-purpose engines or other engine types that require parameters and settings to be adjusted for the intended application.

## 11.5 Type test conditions

**11.5.1** The requirements in this Section are applicable to the type testing of mass produced internal combustion engines where the manufacturer has requested approval. Omission or simplification of the type test requirements will be considered by LR for engines of an established type on application by the manufacturer.

**11.5.2** The engine to be tested is to be selected from the production line and agreed by LR.

**11.5.3** The type tests are to be conducted with the engine control systems operational in the approved configuration, see 2.1.5 and 2.1.6. Configuration management documents are to be reviewed at testing for validity and referenced in the type test report.

**11.5.4** The duration and programme of type tests is to include the following:

- (a) 80 h at rated output.
- (b) 8 h at 110 per cent overload.
- (c) 10 h at partial loads (25%, 50%, 75% and 90% of rated output).
- (d) 2 h at intermittent loads.
- (e) Starting tests.
- (f) Reverse running of direct reversing engines.
- (g) Testing of speed governor.
- (h) Testing of over-speed device.
- (i) Testing of lubricating oil system failure alarm device.
- (k) Testing of the engine with turbocharger out of action when applicable.
- (l) Testing of minimum speed for main propulsion engines and the idling speed for auxiliary engines.

**11.5.5** The type tests in 11.5.4 at the required outputs are to be combined together in working cycles for the whole duration within the limits indicated. See also 11.5.11 and 11.5.12.

**11.5.6** The overload testing required by 11.5.4 may alternately be carried out with the following:

- (a) 110 per cent of rated power output at 103 per cent revolutions per minute.
- (b) 110 per cent of rated power output at 100 per cent revolutions per minute.

**11.5.7** For prototype engines, the duration and programme of tests are to be specially agreed between the manufacturer and LR.

**11.5.8** During type testing the following particulars are to be recorded:

- (a) Ambient air temperature.
- (b) Ambient air pressure.
- (c) Atmospheric humidity.
- (d) External cooling water temperature.
- (e) Fuel and lubrication oil characteristics.

**11.5.9** In addition to the particulars stated in 11.5.8, the following are also to be measured or recorded:

- (a) Engine revolutions per minute.
- (b) Brake power.
- (c) Torque.
- (d) Maximum combustion pressure.
- (e) Indicator pressure diagrams where practicable.
- (f) Exhaust smoke (with an approved smoke meter).
- (g) Lubricating oil pressure and temperature.
- (h) Exhaust gas temperature in exhaust manifold, and, where facilities are available, from each cylinder.
- (j) For turbocharged engines:
  - Turbocharger revolutions per minute.
  - Air temperature and pressures before and after turbo-blower and charge cooler.
  - Exhaust gas temperature and pressures before and after the turbine.
  - The cooling water inlet temperature to the charge air cooler.

**11.5.10** After the type test, the main parts and especially those subject to wear are to be dismantled for examination by LR Surveyors.

**11.5.11** For engines that are required to be approved for different purposes (multi-purpose engines), and that have different performance profiles and control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems configurations for each purpose, the programme and duration of test is to be modified to cover the whole range of the engine performance, taking into account the most severe conditions and intended purpose(s).

**11.5.12** The rated output for which the engine is to be tested is the output corresponding to that declared by the manufacturer and agreed by LR, i.e. actual maximum power which the engine is capable of delivering continuously between the normal maintenance intervals stated by the manufacturer at the rated speed and under the stated ambient conditions. See Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,4.4.1.

## Section 12 Mass produced turbo-chargers

### 12.1 Application

**12.1.1** The following procedure applies to the inspection and testing of exhaust driven turbo chargers which are manufactured on the basis of mass production methods similar to 11.1 as applicable and for which the maker has requested approval.

### 12.2 Procedure for approval of mass produced turbo-chargers

**12.2.1** The procedure outlined in 12.2.2 to 12.2.5 applies to the inspection and certification of mass produced turbo-chargers when a simplified method of inspection has been requested by the manufacturers.

12.2.2 For the approval of a mass produced turbo-charger, the manufacturer is to submit, in addition to the plans and particulars required by 2.1 as applicable, a list of main current suppliers and subcontractors for rotating parts and an operation and maintenance manual.

12.2.3 The manufacturer will supply full information regarding the material and quality control system used in the organisation as well as the inspection methods, the way of recording and proposed frequency, and the method of material testing of important parts.

12.2.4 A Type test (see Pt 1, Ch 2,7.2) is to be carried out on a standard unit taken from the assembly line and is to be witnessed by the Surveyor. The performance data which may have to be verified are to be made available at the time of the type test. For manufacturers who have facilities for testing the turbo-charger unit on an engine for which the turbo-charger is to be type approved, substitution of the hot running test by a test run of one hour's duration at overload (110 per cent of the rated output) may be considered.

12.2.5 LR reserves the right to limit the duration of validity of approval of a mass produced turbo-charger. LR is to be informed, without delay, of any change in the design of the turbo-charger, in the manufacturing or control processes or in the selection of materials.

## 12.3 Continuous inspection of individual units

12.3.1 LR Surveyors are to be provided with free access to the manufacturer's workshop to inspect at random the quality control measures and to witness the under mentioned tests as deemed necessary, as well as to have free access to all control records and subcontractors' certificates.

12.3.2 Each individual unit is to be tested in accordance with 12.3.4 to 12.3.7 by the maker who is to issue a final certificate.

12.3.3 Rotating parts of the turbo-charger blower are to be marked for easy identification with the appropriate certificate.

12.3.4 Material tests of the rotating parts are to be carried out by the maker or his subcontractor in accordance with the requirements of the Rules for Materials as applicable. The relevant certificate is to be produced and filed to the satisfaction of the Surveyor.

12.3.5 Pressure testing is to be carried out in accordance with Table 2.6.1 in Pt 1, Ch 2. In general, the pressure tests are to be carried out as indicated. Special consideration will be given where design or testing features may require modification of the test requirements.

12.3.6 Dynamic balancing and overspeed test is to be carried out, see Pt 1, Ch 2,7.3 and 7.4, in accordance with the approved procedure for quality control. If each forged wheel is individually controlled by an approved non-destructive examination method no overspeed test may be required except for wheels of type test unit.

12.3.7 A mechanical running, see Pt 1, Ch 2,7.5 is to be carried out. The duration of the running test may be reduced to 10 minutes provided that the manufacturer is able to verify the distribution of defects established during the running tests on the basis of a sufficient number of tested turbo-charges. For manufacturers who have facilities in their Works for testing the turbo-chargers on an engine for which the turbo-chargers are intended, the bench test may be replaced by a test run of 20 minutes at overload (110 per cent of the rated output) on this engine.

## 12.4 Compliance and certificate

12.4.1 For every turbo-charger unit liable to be installed on an engine intended for a naval ship classed by LR, the manufacturer is to supply a statement certifying that the turbo-charger is identical with one that underwent the tests specified in 12.2.4 and that prescribed tests were carried out. Results of these tests are also to be stated. This statement is to be made on a form agreed with LR and a copy is to be sent to LR. Each statement must have a number which is to appear on the turbo-charger.

## Section 13 Type testing procedure for crankcase explosion relief valves

### 13.1 Scope

13.1.1 To specify type tests and identify standard test conditions using methane gas and air mixture to demonstrate that LR requirements are satisfied for crankcase explosion relief valves intended to be fitted to engines and gear cases.

13.1.2 The test procedure is only applicable to explosion relief valves fitted with flame arresters. Where internal oil wetting of a flame arrester is a design feature of an explosion relief valve, alternative testing arrangements that demonstrate compliance with these requirements may be proposed by the manufacturer. The alternative testing arrangements are to be submitted to LR for approval.

### 13.2 Recognised Standards

13.2.1 The following standards have been used to develop this test procedure:

- EN 12874:2001: *Flame arresters – Performance requirements, test methods and limits for use.*
- EN ISO/IEC 17025:2000: *General requirements for the competence of testing and calibration laboratories.*
- EN 1127-1:1998: *Explosive atmospheres – Explosion prevention and protection. Part 1. Basic concepts and methodology.*
- EN 1070:1998: *Safety of Machinery – Terminology.*
- VDI 3673: Part 1: *Pressure Venting of Dust Explosions.*
- IMO MSC/Circular 677 – *Revised Standards for the Design, Testing and Locating of Devices to Prevent the Passage of Flame into Cargo Tanks in Tankers.*



# Diesel Engines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 1

Section 13

## 13.3 Purpose

13.3.1 The purpose of type testing crankcase explosion relief valves is fourfold:

- (a) To verify the effectiveness of the flame arrester.
- (b) To verify that the valve closes after an explosion.
- (c) To verify that the valve is gas/air tight after an explosion.
- (d) To establish the level of over-pressure protection provided by the valve.

## 13.4 Test facilities

13.4.1 Test houses carrying out type testing of crankcase explosion relief valves are to meet the following criteria:

- (a) The test houses where testing is carried out are to be accredited to a National or International Standard for the testing of explosion protection devices, such as ISO/IEC 17025.
- (b) The test facilities are to be acceptable to LR.
- (c) The test facilities are to be equipped so that they can perform and record explosion testing in accordance with this procedure.
- (d) The test facilities are to have equipment for controlling and measuring a methane gas in air concentration within a test vessel to an accuracy of  $\pm 0,1$  per cent.
- (e) The test facilities are to be capable of effective point located ignition of methane gas in air mixture.
- (f) The pressure measuring equipment is to be capable of measuring the pressure in the test vessel in at least two positions. One at the valve and the other at the test vessel centre. The measuring arrangements are to be capable of measuring and recording the pressure changes throughout an explosion test at a frequency recognising the speed of events during an explosion. The result of each test is to be documented by video recording and by recording with a heat sensitive camera.
- (g) The test vessel for explosion testing is to have documented dimensions. The dimensions are to be such that the vessel is not pipe-like with the distance between dished ends being not more than 2,5 times the diameter. The internal volume of the test vessel is to include any standpipe arrangements.
- (h) The test vessel is to be provided with a flange, located centrally at one end at 90 degrees to the vessel longitudinal axis for mounting the explosion relief valve. The test vessel is to be arranged in an orientation consistent with how the valve will be installed in service, i.e., in the vertical plane or the horizontal plane.
- (j) A circular flat plate is to be provided for fitting between the pressure vessel flange and valve to be tested with the following dimensions:
  - (i) Outside diameter of 2 times the outer diameter of the valve top cover.
  - (ii) Internal bore having the same internal diameter of the valve to be tested.
- (k) The test vessel is to have connections for measuring the methane in air mixture at the top and bottom.
- (l) The test vessel is to be provided with a means of fitting an ignition source at a position as specified in 13.5.3.

- (m) The test vessel volume is to be, as far as practicable, related to the size and capability of the relief valve to be tested. In general, the volume is to correspond to the requirement in 6.3.1 for the free area of explosion relief valve to be not less than  $115 \text{ cm}^2/\text{m}^3$  of crankcase gross volume, i.e., the testing of a valve having  $1150 \text{ cm}^2$  of free area, would require a test vessel with a volume of  $10 \text{ m}^3$ . The following is to apply:

- (i) Where the free area of relief valves is greater than  $115 \text{ cm}^2/\text{m}^3$  of the crankcase gross volume, the volume of the test vessel is to be consistent with the design ratio.
- (ii) In no case is the volume of the test vessel to vary by more than  $\pm 15$  per cent from the design  $\text{cm}^2/\text{m}^3$  volume ratio.

## 13.5 Explosion test process

13.5.1 All explosion tests to verify the functionality of crankcase explosion relief valves are to be carried out using an air and methane mixture with a volumetric methane concentration of 9,5 per cent  $\pm 0,5$  per cent. The pressure in the test vessel is to be not less than atmospheric and is not to exceed the opening pressure of the relief valve.

13.5.2 The concentration of methane in the test vessel is to be measured in the top and bottom of the vessel and is not to differ by more than 0,5 per cent.

13.5.3 The ignition of the methane and air mixture is to be made at the centreline of the test vessel at a position approximately one third of the height or length of the test vessel opposite to where the valve is mounted.

13.5.4 The ignition is to be made using a maximum 100 joule explosive charge.

## 13.6 Valves to be tested

13.6.1 The valves used for type testing (including the testing specified in 13.6.3) are to be selected from the manufacturer's normal production line for such valves by the LR Surveyor witnessing the tests.

13.6.2 For approval of a specific valve size, three valves of that specific size are to be tested in accordance with 13.6.3 and 13.7. For a series of valves, see 13.9.

13.6.3 The valves selected for type testing are to have been previously tested at the manufacturer's works to demonstrate that the opening pressure is in accordance with the specification within a tolerance of  $\pm 20$  per cent and that the valve is air tight at a pressure below the opening pressure for at least 30 seconds. This test is to verify that the valve is air tight following assembly at the manufacturer's works and that the valve begins to open at the required pressure demonstrating that the correct spring has been fitted.

13.6.4 The type testing of valves is to recognise the orientation that they are intended to be installed on the engine or gear case. Three valves of each size are to be tested for each intended installation orientation, i.e. in the vertical and/or horizontal positions.

## 13.7 Method

13.7.1 The following requirements are to be satisfied at explosion testing:

- (a) The explosion testing is to be witnessed by a LR Surveyor.
- (b) Where valves are to be installed on an engine or gear case with shielding arrangements to deflect the emission of explosion combustion products, the valves are to be tested with the shielding arrangements fitted.
- (c) Successive explosion testing to establish a valve's functionality is to be carried out as quickly as possible during stable weather conditions.
- (d) The pressure rise and decay during all explosion testing is to be recorded.
- (e) The external condition of the valves is to be monitored during each test for indication of any flame release by video and heat sensitive camera.

13.7.2 The explosion testing is to be in three stages for each valve that is required to be approved as being type tested.

### 13.7.3 Stage 1:

Two explosion tests are to be carried out in the test vessel with the circular plate as specified in 13.4.1(j) fitted and the opening in the plate covered by a 0,05 mm thick polythene film. These tests establish a reference pressure level for determination of the capability of a relief valve in terms of pressure rise in the test vessel, see 13.8.1(f).

### 13.7.4 Stage 2:

- (a) Two explosion tests are to be carried out on three different valves of the same size. Each valve is to be mounted in the orientation that it requires approval for installation, i.e., in the vertical or horizontal position with the circular plate described in 13.4.1(j) located between the valve and pressure vessel mounting flange.
- (b) The first of the two tests on each valve is to be carried out with a 0,05 mm thick polythene bag having a minimum diameter of three times the diameter of the circular plate and volume not less than 30 per cent of the test vessel enclosing the valve and circular plate. Before carrying out the explosion test the polythene bag is to be empty of air. The polythene bag is required to provide a readily visible means of assessing whether there is flame transmission through the relief valve following an explosion consistent with the requirements of the standards identified in 13.2. During the test, the explosion pressure will open the valve and some unburned methane/air mixture will be collected in the polythene bag. When the flame reaches the flame arrester and if there is flame transmission through the flame arrester, the methane/air mixture in the bag will be ignited and this will be visible.

- (c) Provided that the first explosion test successfully demonstrated that there was no indication of combustion outside the flame arrester and there are no signs of damage to the flame arrester or valve, a second explosion test without the polythene bag arrangement is to be carried out as quickly as possible after the first test. During the second explosion test, the valve is to be visually monitored for any indication of combustion outside the flame arrester and video records are to be kept for subsequent analysis. The second test is required to demonstrate that the valve can function in the event of a secondary crankcase explosion.
- (d) After each explosion, the test vessel is to be maintained in the closed condition for at least 10 seconds to enable the tightness of the valve to be ascertained. The tightness of the valve can be verified during the test from the pressure/time records or by a separate test after completing the second explosion test.

### 13.7.5 Stage 3:

Two further explosion tests are to be carried out as described in Stage 1. These further tests are required to provide an average base line value for assessment of pressure rise recognising that the test vessel ambient conditions may have changed during the testing of the explosion relief valves in Stage 2.

## 13.8 Assessment and records

13.8.1 For the purposes of verifying compliance with the requirements of this Section, the assessment and records of the valves used for explosion testing is to address the following points:

- (a) The valves to be tested are to have evidence of appraisal/approval by LR, see *also* 13.6.1.
- (b) The designation, dimensions and characteristics of the valves to be tested are to be recorded. This is to include the free area of the valve and of the flame arrester and the amount of valve lift at 0,2 bar.
- (c) The test vessel volume is to be determined and recorded.
- (d) For acceptance of the functioning of the flame arrester there is not to be any indication of flame or combustion outside the valve during an explosion test.
- (e) The pressure rise and decay during an explosion is to be recorded with indication of the pressure variation showing the maximum over-pressure and steady under pressure in the test vessel during testing. The pressure variation is to be recorded at two points in the pressure vessel.
- (f) The effect of an explosion relief valve in terms of pressure rise following an explosion is ascertained from maximum pressures recorded at the centre of the test vessel during the three stages. The pressure rise within the test vessel due to the installation of a relief valve is the difference between average pressure of the four explosions from Stages 1 and 3 and the average of the first tests on the three valves in Stage 2. The pressure rise is not to exceed the limit specified by the manufacturer.

- (g) The valve tightness is to be ascertained by verifying from the records at the time of testing that an under-pressure of at least 0,3 bar is held by the test vessel for at least 10 seconds following an explosion. This test is to verify that the valve has effectively closed and is reasonably gas-tight following dynamic operation during an explosion.
- (h) After each explosion test in Stage 2, the external condition of the flame arrester is to be examined for signs of serious damage and/or deformation that may affect the operation of the valve.
- (j) After completing the explosion tests, the valves are to be dismantled and the condition of all components ascertained and documented. In particular, any indication of valve sticking or uneven opening that may affect the operation of the valve is to be noted. Photographic records of the valve condition are to be taken and included in the report.

## 13.9 Design series qualification

13.9.1 The qualification of quenching devices to prevent the passage of flame can be evaluated for other similar devices of identical where one device has been tested and found satisfactory.

13.9.2 The quenching ability of a flame arrester depends on the total mass of quenching lamellas/mesh. Provided the materials, thickness of materials, length of lamellas/thickness of mesh layer and the quenching gaps are the same, then the same quenching ability can be qualified for different sizes of flame arresters. This is subject to (a) and (b) being satisfied.

$$(a) \quad \frac{n_1}{n_2} = \sqrt{\frac{S_1}{S_2}}$$

$$(b) \quad \frac{A_1}{A_2} = \frac{S_1}{S_2}$$

where

$n_1$  = total depth of flame arrester corresponding to the number of lamellas of size 1 quenching device for a valve with a relief area equal to  $S_1$

$n_2$  = total depth of flame arrester corresponding to the number of lamellas of size 2 quenching device for a valve with a relief area equal to  $S_2$

$A_1$  = free area of quenching device for a valve with a relief area equal to  $S_1$

$A_2$  = free area of quenching device for a valve with a relief area equal to  $S_2$ .

13.9.3 The qualification of explosion relief valves of larger sizes than that which has been previously satisfactorily tested in accordance with 13.7 and 13.8 can be evaluated where valves are of identical type and have identical features of construction subject to the following:

- (a) The free area of a larger valve does not exceed three times  $\pm 5$  per cent that of the valve that has been satisfactorily tested.

- (b) One valve of the largest size, subject to (a), requiring qualification is subject to satisfactory testing required by 13.6.3 and 13.7.4 except that a single valve will be accepted in 13.7.4(a) and the volume of the test vessel is not to be less than one third of the volume required by 13.4.1(m).
- (c) The assessment and records are to be in accordance with 13.8, noting that 13.8.1(f) will only be applicable to Stage 2 for a single valve.

13.9.4 The qualification of explosion relief valves of smaller sizes than that which has been previously satisfactorily tested in accordance with 13.7 and 13.8 can be evaluated where valves are of identical type and have identical features of construction subject to the following:

- (a) The free area of a smaller valve is not less than one third of that of the valve that has been satisfactorily tested.
- (b) One valve of the smallest size, subject to (a), requiring qualification is subject to satisfactory testing required by 13.6.3 and 13.7.4 except that a single valve will be accepted in 13.7.4(a) and the volume of the test vessel is not to be more than the volume required by 13.4.1(m).
- (c) The assessment and records are to be in accordance with 13.8, noting that 13.8.1(f) will only be applicable to Stage 2 for a single valve.

## 13.10 The report

13.10.1 The test house is to deliver a full report that includes the following information and documents:

- (a) Test specification.
- (b) Details of test pressure vessel and valves tested.
- (c) The orientation in which the valve was tested, (vertical or horizontal position).
- (d) Methane in air concentration for each test.
- (e) Ignition source.
- (f) Pressure curves for each test.
- (g) Video recordings of each valve test.
- (h) The assessment and records stated in 13.8.

## 13.11 Approval

13.11.1 The approval of an explosion relief valve is at the discretion of LR, based on the appraisal of plans and particulars and the test facility's report of the results of type testing.

## Section 14 Type testing procedure for crankcase oil mist detection and alarm equipment

### 14.1 Scope

14.1.1 To specify the tests required to demonstrate that crankcase oil mist detection and alarm equipment intended to be fitted to diesel engines satisfy LR requirements.



14.1.2 This test procedure is also applicable to oil mist detection and alarm arrangements intended for gear cases.

## 14.2 Recognised Standards

14.2.1 This test procedure is based on IACS Unified Requirement E10 Type Test Specification.

## 14.3 Purpose

14.3.1 The purpose of type testing crankcase oil mist detection and alarm equipment is seven fold:

- (a) To verify the functionality of the system.
- (b) To verify the effectiveness of the oil mist detectors.
- (c) To verify the accuracy of the oil mist detectors.
- (d) To verify the alarm set points.
- (e) To verify time delays between oil mist leaving the source and alarm activation.
- (f) To verify functional failure detection.
- (g) To verify the influence of optical obscuration on detection.

## 14.4 Test facilities

14.4.1 Test houses carrying out type testing of crankcase detection and alarm equipment are to satisfy the following criteria:

- (a) A full range of facilities for carrying out the environmental and functionality tests required by this procedure shall be available and be acceptable to LR.
- (b) The test house that verifies that the functionality of the equipment are to be equipped so that it can control, measure and record oil mist concentration levels in terms of mg/l to an accuracy of  $\pm 10$  per cent accordance with this procedure.

## 14.5 Equipment testing

14.5.1 The range of tests is to include the following for alarm/monitoring panel:

- (a) Functional tests described in 14.6.
- (b) Electrical power supply failure test.
- (c) Power supply variation test.
- (d) Dry heat test.
- (e) Damp heat test.
- (f) Vibration test.
- (g) EMC test.
- (h) Insulation resistance test.
- (j) High voltage test.
- (k) Static and dynamic inclinations, if moving parts are contained.

14.5.2 The range of tests is to include the following for the detectors:

- (a) Functional tests described in 14.6.
- (b) Electrical power supply failure test.
- (c) Power supply variation test.
- (d) Dry heat test.
- (e) Damp heat test.
- (f) Vibration test.
- (g) EMC test where susceptible.

- (h) Insulation resistance test.
- (j) High voltage test.
- (k) Static and dynamic inclinations.

## 14.6 Functional test

14.6.1 All tests to verify the functionality of crankcase oil mist detection and alarm equipment are to be carried out in accordance with 14.6.2 to 14.6.8 with an oil mist concentration in air, known in terms of mg/l to an accuracy of  $\pm 10$  per cent.

14.6.2 The concentration of oil mist in the test chamber is to be measured in the top and bottom of the chamber and is not to differ by more than 10 per cent.

14.6.3 The oil mist monitoring arrangements are to be capable of detecting oil mist in air concentrations of between 0 and 10 per cent of the lower explosive limit (LEL), which corresponds to an oil mist concentration of approximately 50 mg/l (13 per cent oil-air mixture) or between 0 and a percentage corresponding to a level not less than twice the maximum oil mist concentration alarm set point.

14.6.4 The alarm set point for oil mist concentration in air is to provide an alarm at a maximum setting corresponding to not more than 5 per cent of the LEL corresponding to approximately 2,5 mg/l.

14.6.5 Where alarm set points can be altered, the means of adjustment and indication of set points are to be verified against the equipment manufacturer's instructions.

14.6.6 Where oil mist is drawn into a detector via piping arrangements, the time delay between the sample leaving the crankcase and operation of the alarm is to be determined for the longest and shortest lengths of pipes recommended by the manufacturer. The pipe arrangements are to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions/recommendations.

14.6.7 Detector equipment that is in contact with the crankcase atmosphere and may be exposed to oil splash and spray from engine lubricating oil is to be tested to demonstrate that openings do not occlude or become blocked under continuous oil splash or spray conditions. Testing is to be in accordance with arrangements proposed by the manufacturer and agreed by LR.

14.6.8 Detector equipment may be exposed to water vapour from the crankcase atmosphere which may affect the sensitivity of the equipment; it is to be demonstrated that exposure to such conditions will not affect the functional operation of the detector equipment. Where exposure to water vapour and/or water condensation has been identified as a possible source of equipment malfunctioning, testing is to demonstrate that any mitigating arrangements such as heating are effective. Testing is to be in accordance with arrangements proposed by the manufacturer and agreed by LR. This testing is in addition to that required by 14.5.2(e) and is concerned with the effects of condensation caused by the detection equipment being at a lower temperature than the crankcase atmosphere.

# Diesel Engines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 1

Section 14

## 14.7 Detectors and alarm equipment to be tested

14.7.1 The detectors and alarm equipment selected for the type testing are to be selected from the manufacturer's normal production line for such equipment by the LR Surveyor witnessing the tests.

14.7.2 Two detectors are to be tested. One is to be tested in the clean condition and the other in a condition representing the maximum level of lens obscuration specified by the manufacturer.

## 14.8 Method

14.8.1 The requirements of 14.8 are to be satisfied at type testing.

14.8.2 Oil mist generation is to satisfy the following:

- (a) Oil mist is to be generated with suitable equipment using an SAE 80 monograde mineral oil or equivalent and supplied to a test chamber having a volume of not less than 1 m<sup>3</sup>. The oil mist produced is to have a maximum droplet size of 5 µm. The oil droplet size is to be checked using the sedimentation method.
- (b) The oil mist concentrations used are to be ascertained by the gravimetric deterministic method or equivalent. For this test, the gravimetric deterministic method is a process where the difference in weight of a 0,8 µm pore size membrane filter is ascertained from weighing the filter before and after drawing 1 litre of oil mist through the filter from the oil mist test chamber. The oil mist chamber is to be fitted with a recirculating fan.
- (c) Samples of oil mist are to be taken at regular intervals and the results plotted against the oil mist detector output. The oil mist detector is to be located adjacent to where the oil mist samples are drawn off.
- (d) The results of a gravimetric analysis are considered invalid and are to be rejected if the resultant calibration curve has an increasing gradient with respect to the oil mist detection reading. This situation occurs when insufficient time has been allowed for the oil mist to become homogeneous. Single results that are more than 10 per cent below the calibration curve are to be rejected. This situation occurs when the integrity of the filter unit has been compromised and not all of the oil is collected on the filter paper.
- (e) The filters require to be weighed to a precision of 0,1 mg and the volume of air/oil mist sampled to 10 ml.

14.8.3 The testing is to be witnessed by an LR Surveyor where type testing approval is required by LR.

14.8.4 Oil mist detection equipment is to be tested in the orientation (vertical, horizontal or inclined) in which it is intended to be installed on an engine or gear case as specified by the equipment manufacturer.

14.8.5 Type testing is to be carried out for each type of oil mist detection and alarm equipment for which a manufacturer seeks LR approval. Where sensitivity levels can be adjusted, testing is to be carried out at the extreme and mid-point level settings.

## 14.9 Assessment

14.9.1 Assessment of oil mist detection equipment after testing is to address the following points:

- (a) The equipment to be tested is to have evidence of design appraisal/approval by LR, *see also* 14.7.1.
- (b) Details of the detection equipment to be tested are to be recorded, such as name of manufacturer, type designation, oil mist concentration assessment capability and alarm settings.
- (c) After completing the tests, the detection equipment is to be examined and the condition of all components ascertained and documented. Photographic records of the monitoring equipment condition are to be taken and included in the report.

## 14.10 Design series qualification

14.10.1 The approval of one type of detection equipment may be used to qualify other devices having identical construction details. Proposals are to be submitted for consideration.

## 14.11 The report

14.11.1 The test house is to provide a full report that includes the following information and documents:

- (a) Test specification.
- (b) Details of equipment tested.
- (c) Results of tests.

## 14.12 Acceptance

14.12.1 Acceptance of crankcase oil mist detection equipment is at the discretion of LR based on the appraisal plans and particulars and the test house report of the results of type testing.

14.12.2 The following information is to be submitted to LR for acceptance of oil mist detection equipment and alarm arrangements:

- (a) Description of oil mist detection equipment and system including alarms.
- (b) Copy of the test house report identified in 14.11.
- (c) Schematic layout of engine oil mist detection arrangements showing location of detectors/sensors and piping arrangements and dimensions.
- (d) Maintenance and test manual which is to include the following information:
  - Intended use of equipment and its operation.
  - Functionality tests to demonstrate that the equipment is operational and that any faults can be identified and corrective actions notified.
  - Maintenance routines and spare parts recommendations.
  - Limit setting and instructions for safe limit levels.
  - Where necessary, details of configurations in which the equipment is and is not to be used.

## ■ Section 15 Electronically controlled engines

### 15.1 Scope

**15.1.1** The requirements of this Section are applicable to engines for propulsion, auxiliary or emergency, see 15.7, power purposes with programmable electronic systems implemented. The requirements of this Section also apply to programmable electronic systems used to control other functions (e.g. starting and control air, cylinder lubrication, etc.) where essential for the operation of the engine.

**15.1.2** The operation of these engines relies on the effective monitoring of a number of parameters such as crank angle, engine speed, temperatures and pressures using programmable electronic systems to provide the services essential for the operation of the engine such as fuel injection, air inlet, exhaust and speed control.

**15.1.3** Details of proposals to deviate from the requirements of this Section are to be submitted and will be considered on the basis of a technical justification produced by the engine packager or system integrator.

**15.1.4** Each engine is to be configured for the specified performance and is to satisfy the relevant requirements for propulsion, auxiliary or emergency engines.

**15.1.5** During the life of the engine details of any proposed changes that affect the safe and reliable operation of the engine are to be submitted to LR for approval.

### 15.2 Plans and particulars

**15.2.1** In addition to the plans and particulars required by Ch 1,2 the following information is to be submitted:

- (a) A general overview of the operating principles supported by schematics explaining the functionality of individual systems and sub-systems. The information is to relate to the engine capability and functionality under defined operating and emergency conditions such as recovery from a failure, degraded modes of operation, or malfunction, with particular reference to the functioning of programmable electronic systems and any sub-systems. Also, the information is to indicate if the engine has different modes of operation, such as to limit exhaust gas emissions and/or to run under an economic fuel consumption mode or any other mode that is electronically controlled.
- (b) Operating manuals which describe the particulars of each system and, together with maintenance instructions, include reference to the functioning of sub-systems.
- (c) A risk-based analysis of the mechanical, pressure containing electrical, electronic and programmable electronic systems and arrangements that support the operation of the engine. The analysis is to demonstrate that suitable risk mitigation has been achieved in accordance with 15.3.

- (d) Details of hydraulic systems for actuation of sub-systems (fuel injection or exhaust), to include details of the design/construction of pipes, pumps, valves, accumulators and the control of valves/pumps. Details of pump drive arrangements are also to be included.
- (e) Quality plan for sourcing, design, installation and testing of all components used in the oil fuel and hydraulic oil systems installed with the engine for engine operation.
- (f) Fatigue analysis for all high pressure oil fuel and hydraulic oil piping arrangements required for engine operation where failure of the pipe or its connection or a component would be the cause of engine unavailability. The analysis is to concentrate on high pressure components and sub-systems and recognise the pressures and fluctuating stresses that the pipe system may be subject to in normal service.
- (g) Evidence of type testing of the engine with the programmable electronic system, or a proposed test plan at the engine packager's facility with the programmable electronic system functioning to verify the functionality and behaviour under normal operating and fault conditions of the programmable electronic system.
- (h) Schedule of testing at the engine packager's or system integrator's facility, pre-sea trial commissioning and sea trials. The test schedules are to identify all modes of engine operation and the sea trials are to include typical port manoeuvres under all intended engine operating modes. The schedule is to include:
  - (i) testing and trials to demonstrate that the engine is capable of operating as described in (a);
  - (ii) tests to verify that the response of the complete mechanical, hydraulic, electrical and electronic system is as predicted for the intended operational modes; and
  - (iii) testing required to verify the conclusions of the risk-based analysis.The scope of these tests is to be agreed with LR.
- (j) For emergency engines, evidence and details showing compliance with 15.7.

**15.2.2** In addition to the applicable plans and particulars required by Pt 9, Ch 1,1.2.3 to 1.2.6, the following information for control, alarm, monitoring and safety systems relating to the operation of an electronically controlled engine is to be submitted:

- (a) Engine configuration details, see 15.5.2.
- (b) Software quality plans, including configuration management documents.
- (c) Software safety evidence.
- (d) Software assessment inspection report such as SCA or IEC 61508 as applicable.

### 15.3 Risk-based analysis

**15.3.1** An analysis is to be carried out in accordance with relevant standards acceptable to LR to demonstrate compliance with the applicable requirements of this sub-Section appropriate to the engine application. The analysis is to be a risk-based consideration of engine operation and ship and personnel safety, and is to demonstrate adequate risk mitigation through fault tolerance and/or reliability in accordance with the specified criteria in 15.3.2 to 15.3.4, relevant to the engine application.

# Diesel Engines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 1

Section 15

**15.3.2** For ships with a single main propulsion engine, a Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA), or alternative recognised analysis of system reliability, is to be carried out and is to demonstrate that an electronic control system failure:

- (a) will not result in the loss of the ability to provide the services essential for the operation of the engine, see Pt 9, Ch 1,2.5.7 and 2.13.2;
- (b) will not affect the normal operation of the services essential for the operation of the engine other than those services dependent upon the failed part, see Pt 9, Ch 1,2.14.4 and 2.14.5; and
- (c) will not leave either the engine, or any equipment or machinery associated with the engine, or the ship in an unsafe condition, see Pt 9, Ch 1,2.3.15, 2.4.5, 2.5.4, 2.10.3, 2.10.4 and 2.14.5.

**15.3.3** A risk-based analysis is to be carried out for:

- (a) main engines on ships with multiple main engines or other means of providing propulsion power; and/or
- (b) auxiliary engines intended to drive electric generators forming the ship's main source of electrical power or otherwise providing power for essential services.

The analysis is to demonstrate that adequate hazard mitigation has been incorporated in electronically controlled engine systems or the overall ship installation, with respect to personnel safety and providing propulsion power and/or power for essential services for the safety of the ship. Arrangements satisfying the criteria of 15.3.2(a) to (c) will also be acceptable.

**15.3.4** For engines for emergency power purposes, a risk-based analysis is to be carried out to demonstrate that the design incorporates adequate hazard mitigation, such that the likelihood of an electronic engine system failure resulting in the loss of the ability to provide emergency power has been reduced to a level considered acceptable by LR, and that means are provided to detect failures and permit personnel to restore engine availability to operate on demand. Failures which would result in engine failure and/or damage or loss of availability are to be identified and the report is to include documentation of:

- (a) component reliability evidence;
- (b) failure detection and alarms; and
- (c) failure response required to restore engine availability and maintain personnel safety.

**15.3.5** The risk-based analysis report is to:

- (a) Identify the standards used for analysis and system design.
- (b) Identify the engine, its purpose and the associated objectives of the analysis.
- (c) Identify any assumptions made in the analysis.
- (d) Identify the equipment, system or sub-system, mode of operation and the equipment.
- (e) Identify potential failure modes and their causes.
- (f) Evaluate the local effects (e.g., fuel injection failure) and the effects on the system as a whole (e.g., loss of propulsion power) of each failure mode.
- (g) Identify measures for reducing the risks associated with each failure mode (e.g., system design, failure detection and alarms, redundancy, quality control procedures for sourcing, manufacture and testing, etc.).
- (h) Identify trials and testing necessary to prove conclusions.

**15.3.6** In an electronically controlled engine, it is necessary to define the essential services on which the operation of the engine relies, and the control functions, alarm functions and safety functions for the equipment and machinery providing these services. Examples of essential services are:

- (a) Starting arrangements.
- (b) Fuel supply arrangements.
- (c) Lubricating oil arrangements.
- (d) Hydraulic oil arrangements.
- (e) Cooling arrangements.
- (f) Power supply arrangements.

**15.3.7** Where emergency engines are used as harbour sets, the system is to comply with the requirements of Pt 10, Ch 1,3.2.6. This function is to be included in the risk-based analysis.

**15.3.8** At sub-system level, it is acceptable to consider failure of equipment items and their functions, e.g., failure of a pump to produce flow or pressure head. It is not required that the failure of components within that pump be analysed, and failure need only be dealt with as a cause of failure of the pump.

## 15.4 Oil fuel and hydraulic oil systems

**15.4.1** Oil fuel and hydraulic oil piping systems arrangements are to comply with Parts 7 and 8 as applicable.

**15.4.2** Where pumps are essential for engine operation, not less than two oil fuel and two hydraulic oil pressure pumps are to be provided for their respective service and arranged such that failure of one pump does not render the other inoperative. Each oil fuel pump and hydraulic oil pump is to be capable of supplying the quantity of oil for engine operation at its maximum continuous rating and arranged ready for immediate use.

**15.4.3** The oil fuel pressure piping between the oil fuel high pressure pumps and the fuel injectors is to be protected with a jacketed piping system capable of containing oil fuel leakage from a high pressure pipe failure.

**15.4.4** The hydraulic oil pressure piping between the high pressure hydraulic pumps and hydraulic actuators is to be protected with a jacketed piping system capable of containing hydraulic oil leakage from a high pressure pipe failure.

**15.4.5** Accumulators and associated high pressure piping are to be designed, manufactured and tested in accordance with a standard applicable to the maximum pressure and temperature rating of the system.

**15.4.6** All valves, cocks and screwed connections are to be of a type tested type applicable to the maximum service conditions anticipated in normal service.

**15.4.7** Isolating valves and cocks are to be located as near as practicable to the equipment that can be isolated. Note that all valves forming part of the oil fuel and hydraulic oil installation are to be capable of being controlled from readily accessible positions above the working platform.



**15.4.8** High pressure oil fuel and high pressure hydraulic oil piping systems are to be provided with a high pressure alarm with a set point that does not exceed the system design pressure.

**15.4.9** High pressure oil fuel and high pressure hydraulic piping systems are to be provided with suitable relief valves on any part of the system that can be isolated and in which pressure can be generated. The settings of the relief valves are not to exceed the design pressure. The valves are to be of adequate size and so arranged as to avoid an undue rise in pressure above the design pressure.

**15.4.10** Equipment fitted for monitoring pressures and temperatures in the high pressure oil fuel and high pressure hydraulic oil systems is to comply with a recognised standard suitable to the anticipated vibration and temperature conditions.

**15.4.11** The fatigue analysis is to be carried out in accordance with a standard applicable to the system under consideration and all anticipated pressure, pulsation and vibration loads are to be addressed. The analysis is to demonstrate that the design and arrangements are such that the likelihood of failure is as low as reasonably practicable. The analysis is to identify all assumptions made and standards to be applied during manufacture and testing of the system. Any potential weak points that may develop due to incorrect construction or assembly are also to be identified.

**15.4.12** For high pressure oil containing and mechanical power transmission systems, the quality plan for sourcing, design, installation and testing of components is to address the following issues:

- (a) Design and manufacturing standard(s) applied.
- (b) Materials used for construction of key components and their sources.
- (c) Details of the quality control system applied during manufacture and testing.
- (d) Details of type approval, type testing or approved type status assigned to the machinery or equipment.
- (e) Details of installation and testing recommendations for the machinery or equipment.

## 15.5 Control engineering systems

**15.5.1** Control, alarm, monitoring, safety and programmable electronic systems are to comply with Pt 9, Ch 1, as applicable.

**15.5.2** The engine control, alarm monitoring and safety systems are to be configured to comply with the relevant requirements (e.g., operating profile, alarms, shut-downs, etc.) of this Chapter and Pt 9, Ch 1 for an engine for main, auxiliary or emergency power purposes. Details of the engine configuration are to be submitted for consideration, identifying:

- (a) Local and remote means to carry out system configuration.
- (b) Engine packager or system integrator procedures for undertaking configuring.
- (c) Roles and responsibilities for configuration (e.g., Engine builder, engine packager, system integrator or other nominated party) with accompanying schedule.

- (d) Configurable settings and parameters (including those not to be modified from a default value).
- (e) Configuration for propulsion, auxiliary or emergency engine application.

Configuration records are to be maintained and are to be made available to the Surveyor at testing and trials and on request, in accordance with Pt 9, Ch 1, 1.4 and 6.1.3.

## 15.6 Software

**15.6.1** Software lifecycle activities are to be carried out in accordance with an acceptable quality management system, see Pt 9, Ch 1, 2.13.2, 2.13.7 and 3.6.3.

**15.6.2** Appropriate safety related processes, methods, techniques and tools are to be applied to software development and maintenance by the engine packager or system integrator. Selection and application of techniques and measures in accordance with Annex A of IEC 61508-3, *Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic systems: Software requirements*, or other relevant standards or codes acceptable to LR, will generally be acceptable.

**15.6.3** To demonstrate compliance with 15.6.1 and 15.6.2:

- (a) software quality plans and safety evidence are to be submitted for consideration, see 15.2.2(b) and (c); and
- (b) an assessment inspection of the engine packager's or system integrator's completed development is to be carried out by LR. The inspection is to be tailored to verify application of the standards and codes used in software safety assurance accepted by LR.

## 15.7 Emergency engines

**15.7.1** Electronically controlled engines will only be accepted for use as emergency engines when the additional requirements of this sub-Section are satisfied.

**15.7.2** Evidence is to be submitted confirming that the Naval Authority accepts the proposed use of an electronically controlled engine for emergency power purposes.

**15.7.3** Electrically powered control equipment required for engine starting or operation is to be served by not less than two individual power supplies, one fed from a main switchboard circuit and one from an emergency switchboard circuit provided in accordance with 15.7.4 and 15.7.5.

**15.7.4** Each power supply is to be provided with an Uninterruptible Power System (UPS) in accordance with Pt 10, Ch 1, 10.3 capable of supplying the starting arrangements for three successive starts over a period of at least 30 minutes. A manual supply changeover switch is to be provided.

15.7.5 The power supplies are not to pass through a common switchboard or section board and are not to use common feeders, protective devices, control circuits, control gear assemblies or battery chargers, so that any single fault will not cause the loss of both supplies. Where adequate circuit protection and stored battery and charging capacity exists, the engine starting batteries may be used to provide one supply.

15.7.6 Where the proposed arrangement of engine electronic control systems do not incorporate redundancy to satisfy the requirements of 15.3.1, evidence is to be submitted that demonstrates the arrangements have been assessed and found to comply with IEC 61508, *Functional safety of electrical/electronic/programmable electronic systems*, or a relevant alternative standard. The submissions are to include proposals for LR to verify compliance (reviews, Surveys, trials, etc.) with the applicable standard(s).

---



## Section

|   |                                                                                          |
|---|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <b>General requirements</b>                                                              |
| 2 | <b>Particulars to be submitted</b>                                                       |
| 3 | <b>Materials</b>                                                                         |
| 4 | <b>Design and construction</b>                                                           |
| 5 | <b>Piping systems</b>                                                                    |
| 6 | <b>Starting arrangements</b>                                                             |
| 7 | <b>Control, alarm and safety systems</b>                                                 |
| 8 | <b>Planned maintenance and condition monitoring procedures, and 'upkeep by exchange'</b> |

## ■ Scope

The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to gas turbines for main propulsion and also, where powers exceed 110 kW (150 shp), to those for essential auxiliary services. The requirements do not apply to exhaust gas turbo-blowers.

Approval will be in respect of the mechanical integrity of the gas turbine (including gas generator and power turbine), intake and exhaust ducting configuration, acoustic enclosure configuration (where appropriate), fuel, lubricating oil and starter systems, control alarm and monitoring systems and other critical support systems.

Type approval of the gas turbine bare engine will be required as part of the approval process for first of type.

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter is to be read in conjunction with Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2, *General Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems*.

### 1.2 Standard reference conditions

1.2.1 Where power, efficiency, heat rate or specific consumption refer to standard conditions (ISO 2314), such conditions are to be:

- (a) for the intake air at the compressor flange (compressor intake flare):
  - a total pressure of 101,3 kPa;
  - an ambient temperature of 15°C;
  - a relative humidity of 60 per cent; and
- (b) for the exhaust at the turbine exhaust flange (or recuperator outlet):
  - a static pressure of 101,3 kPa.

### 1.3 Power ratings

1.3.1 Where the dimensions of any particular component are determined from shaft power,  $P$ , in kW, and revolutions per minute,  $R$ , the values are those defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.3.

### 1.4 Gas turbine type approval

1.4.1 New gas turbine types or developments of existing types are to be type approved in accordance with Lloyd's Register's (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') *Type Approval System Procedure – Test Specification GT04*.

1.4.2 Where a gas turbine type has subsequently proved satisfactory in service with a number of applications, a maximum power uprating of 10 per cent may be considered without a further complete design re-assessment and type test.

### 1.5 Inclination of vessel

1.5.1 Gas turbines are to operate satisfactorily under the conditions of inclinations as shown in Table 2.4.2 in Pt 1, Ch 2.

### 1.6 Turning gear

1.6.1 Gas generator turning gear is to be provided to facilitate operating and maintenance regimes as required by the manufacturer. Manuals are to be provided and are to comply with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 1,4.6.7.

1.6.2 The turning gear may be hand operated (manual) except where this is not practicable. If electrically driven the motor is to be continuously rated.

1.6.3 The turning gear is to be fitted with safety interlocks which prevent engine operation when engaged see Pt 1, Ch 2,4.13. Indication of engaged/disengaged is to be provided at all start positions. In the case of hand operated turning gear turbine operation may be prevented by manual means including the provision of warning devices or notices.

1.6.4 The remote control of power driven turning gear is to be designed so that power is removed if the operating switch is released.

1.6.5 If permanently attached, means are to be provided to secure the turning gear when disengaged.

1.6.6 Overload protection arrangements are to be provided to prevent damage to the electric motor and the turning gear train.



## Section 2

### Particulars to be submitted

#### 2.1 Plans and information

2.1.1 An engineering description of the gas turbine, including references to plans required in 2.1.2, is to be submitted so that the function of all essential and safety critical components and systems necessary for the turbine operation are clearly defined.

2.1.2 To assess compliance with the design requirements of the Rules and for inspection, installation and record purposes, the following plans are to be submitted for consideration:

- (a) Casing construction arrangement.
- (b) Arrangements of combustion chambers, intercoolers and heat exchangers.
- (c) Compressor and gas generator rotating components.
- (d) Control engineering systems, see Pt 9, Ch 1.
- (e) Cooling and sealing air arrangements for compressor and gas generator components: Schematic only.
- (f) Cooling water system: Schematic only.
- (g) Fuel system schematic.
- (h) Gas turbine unit acoustic enclosure, if applicable, including ventilation and drainage systems: Schematic only.
- (j) Inlet and exhaust ducting arrangement.
- (k) Lubricating oil systems: Schematic only.
- (l) Nozzles, blades and blade attachments.
- (m) Power turbine components.
- (n) Rotors, bearings and couplings.
- (o) Section assembly.
- (p) Securing arrangement, where applicable, including details of resilient mounts, see also Pt 1, Ch 2,3.3.6.
- (q) Starting system: Schematic only.
- (r) Details of anti stall and surge systems or devices.
- (s) Details of materials of all load bearing and torque transmitting components and pressure retaining parts.
- (t) Details of materials for rotors and discs are to be submitted for approval.

2.1.3 An engineering and safety justification for the turbine, stating design standards and assumptions and providing technical evidence, is also to be submitted. This is to include, but not be limited to:

- Possible failure modes of internal engine components, to include such items as rotors, discs, seals, bearings and coupling, etc., and measures adopted to mitigate such failures that may have an effect on the internal machinery or the surrounding environment/structures/systems, taking due account of suitability of materials and the effects of stress raisers, etc.
- Limiting operating parameters.
- Short-term high power operation.
- Details of mounting and securing arrangements.
- Rotor and blade vibratory characteristics.

2.1.4 A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) as required by Pt 1, Ch 2 is to be submitted. The FMEA is to include the following associated sub-systems:

- Starting and stopping.
- Oil fuel.
- Lubricating oil.

- Cooling water.
- Intercooler, where applicable.
- Air induction.
- Exhaust.
- Recuperator, where applicable.
- Gas turbine mounting.
- Control and monitoring.
- Electrical power supplies.

It is not necessary to consider failure modes relating to the gas turbine components for the purposes of this clause.

2.1.5 Miscellaneous. Details of the following are also to be submitted:

- Operation and maintenance manuals including declared lives of critical components and overhaul schedules recommended by the manufacturer.
- Design standard of intake filtration for water particulate and corrosive marine salts.
- Details of compressor washing system.
- Fuel specification.

2.1.6 Details of proposed welding procedures and proposals for routine examination of joints by non-destructive means are to be submitted for consideration.

2.1.7 The manufacturer's proposals for testing the gas turbine are to be submitted for consideration and are to include details of rotor balancing techniques, methods of determining the integrity of pressure casings and heat exchanger tests, see Section 1.

2.1.8 The gas turbine manufacturer's requirements for air inlet filters, air intake and uptake arrangements are to be submitted for consideration.

2.1.9 Where a gas turbine installation includes components having a specified life in terms of operating time or operating cycles, or where life is derived from declared acceptance criteria, details are to be submitted for consideration. Details of proposed arrangements for monitoring life progression are also to be submitted for consideration.

## Section 3

### Materials

#### 3.1 Material tests and inspection

3.1.1 Components are to be tested in accordance with the relevant requirements of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

3.1.2 For components of novel design, special consideration will be given to the material test and non-destructive testing requirements.

**Section 4****Design and construction****4.1 General**

4.1.1 All parts of compressors, turbines, etc., are to have clearances and fits consistent with adequate provision for the relative thermal expansion of the various components. Provision is to be made to limit the distortion of the casing and rotor under all normal operating conditions.

4.1.2 Gas generator and power turbine bearings are to be so disposed and supported that lubrication is not adversely affected by heat flow from adjacent hot parts. Effective means are to be provided for intercepting oil leakage and preventing oil from reaching high temperature glands and casings.

**4.2 Vibration**

4.2.1 The turbine installation is to be designed and manufactured to ensure that there are no critical speeds within the operating range.

4.2.2 Vibration monitoring is to form an integral part of the gas turbine safety and control system. The vibration monitoring system is to be capable of detecting the out-of-balance of major parts with means being provided to shut-down the gas turbine, before an over-critical situation occurs, i.e. multiple rotor blade or disc release.

**4.3 Containment**

4.3.1 Gas turbines and power turbines are to be designed and installed, so far as is practicable, to contain debris in the event of rotor blade release.

4.3.2 In the event of a major component failure, when the engine casing may not contain the debris; oil fuel, lubricating oil and other potentially hazardous systems or equipment are, where practicable, to be located outside of the plane of high speed rotating parts. Where this is not possible they are to be suitably protected. This requirement also applies to fire detection and extinction equipment, see also Section 5.

4.3.3 Gas turbine ancillaries containing flammable products are to be segregated or protected from high temperature areas.

**4.4 Intake and exhaust ducts**

4.4.1 The air intakes and exhausts are to be in accordance with the turbine manufacturer's design requirements. Particular attention is drawn to the requirements on pressure and flow conditions to be achieved throughout the intake and exhaust systems. Arrangements are to comply with 4.4.2 to 4.4.9 as applicable.

4.4.2 Air intakes are to be designed and located to minimise the possibility of ingestion of harmful objects. Means are also to be provided for detecting and preventing icing up of air intakes.

4.4.3 Suitable intake filtration is to be provided to control the ingestion of water, particulate and corrosive marine salts within the gas turbine manufacturer's specified limits.

4.4.4 Where an air intake enclosure forms the connection between the ship's downtake and the gas turbine installation, a suitable alarm function is to be provided to give warning when an unacceptable air intake pressure loss is reached at the air inlet (bellmouth) of the gas turbine.

4.4.5 Intakes are to be designed such that material cannot become detached due to air flow or corrosion. Fixing bolts and fastenings are to be positively locked so that they cannot work loose.

4.4.6 Multi-engine installations are to have separate intakes and exhausts so arranged as to prevent induced circulation through a stopped gas turbine unit.

4.4.7 The arrangement of the exhaust duct is to be such as to prevent, under normal conditions of ship motion and atmospheric conditions, exhaust gases being drawn into machinery spaces, air conditioning systems and intakes.

4.4.8 Where the exhaust is led overboard near the water-line, means are to be provided to prevent water from being siphoned back into the gas turbine. Where the exhaust is cooled by water spray, the exhaust pipes are to be self-draining overboard. Erosion/corrosion-resistant shut-off flaps or other devices are to be fitted on the hull side shell or pipe end with suitable arrangements made to prevent water flooding the machinery space.

4.4.9 The exhaust system is to be arranged so that hot exhaust gases are directed to avoid impingement on equipment and away from areas to which personnel have access, either on board or in the vicinity of where the craft is berthed.

**4.5 External influences**

4.5.1 Pipes and ducting connected to casings are to be so designed that they apply no excessive loads or moments to the compressors and turbines.

4.5.2 Platform gratings and fittings in way of the supports are to be so arranged that casing expansion is not restricted.

4.5.3 Where the gas turbine seating incorporates a tank structure, any temperature variation of the tank in service is not to adversely affect the gas generator and power turbine alignment.

4.5.4 For machinery fastening arrangements, including resilient mounting, see Pt 1, Ch 2.

**4.6 Corrosive deposits**

4.6.1 Means are to be provided for periodic removal of salt deposits and atmospheric contaminants from blading and internal surfaces.

## 4.7 Acoustic enclosures

4.7.1 Where gas turbines are installed in acoustic enclosures, the arrangements are to comply with Pt 1, Ch 2,5.12.

## 4.8 Thermal insulation

4.8.1 Where surfaces of the gas generator, power turbine and exhaust volute exceed a temperature of 220°C during operation, these are to be suitably insulated and clad to minimise the risk of fire and prevent damage by heat to adjacent components, see 5.1.5.

## 4.9 Welded construction

4.9.1 Welding is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials, using welding procedures and welders that have been qualified in accordance with Chapter 12 of the Rules for Materials.

4.9.2 Stress relief heat treatment is to be applied to all cylinders, rotors and associated components on completion of all welding.

## 4.10 Emergency operation

4.10.1 Gas turbines and their service systems are to be capable of operation for a period of not less than eight hours when the compartment is flooded to the level of the underside of the lowest exposed portion of the gas turbine casing.

## 4.11 Anti stall/surge systems

4.11.1 Air bleed (blow off) valves and/or variable geometry mechanisms are to be fitted as required to maintain compressor surge margins throughout the operating range. Any open ended air bleed arrangements are to be led to the uptake or atmosphere and not into the machinery space, the back pressure imposed by the ducting is to be in accordance with the turbine manufacturer's recommendations.

## Section 5 Piping systems

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 Gas turbine piping systems are, in general, to comply with the requirements given in Pt 7, Ch 1 and Ch 3, due regard being paid to the particular type of installation.

5.1.2 The gas turbine design and construction is to minimise the possibility of a fire fed by fuel or lubricating oil leaks.

## 5.2 Oil fuel systems

5.2.1 Oil fuel arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 3,3.9.

5.2.2 All external high pressure oil fuel delivery lines between the pressure fuel pumps and fuel metering valves are to be protected with a jacketed piping system capable of containing fuel from a high pressure line failure to prevent oil fuel or oil fuel mist from reaching a source of ignition on the engine or its surroundings.

5.2.3 Suitable arrangements are to be made for draining any oil fuel leakage from the protection required by 5.2.2 and to prevent contamination of the lubricating oil by oil fuel. An alarm is to be provided to indicate that leakage is taking place.

## 5.3 Lubricating oil systems

5.3.1 Lubricating oil arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 3,8.

5.3.2 Where the lubricating oil for gas turbines is circulated under pressure, provision is to be made for the efficient filtration of the oil. At least two filters are to be fitted in the lubricating oil supply lines to the gas turbine and be so arranged that any filter may be cleaned without interrupting the supply of filtered lubricating oil to the gas turbine.

## 5.4 Cooling systems

5.4.1 Cooling water arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 3, as applicable.

## Section 6 Starting arrangements

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 Equipment for initial starting of gas turbines is to be provided and arranged such that the necessary initial charge of starting air, hydraulic or electrical power can be developed on board the ship without external aid. If, for this purpose, an emergency air compressor or electric generator is required, these units are to be power-driven by manually-started oil engines, except in the case of small installations where a hand-operated compressor of approved capacity may be accepted.

6.1.2 Alternatively, other devices of approved type may be accepted as a means of providing the initial start.

6.1.3 Where the integrity of the starting system is susceptible to overspeed conditions, appropriate alarm and/or trip functions are to be provided.

# Gas Turbines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 2

Sections 6 & 7

## 6.2 Purging before ignition

6.2.1 Means are to be provided to clear all parts of the gas turbine of the accumulation of oil fuel or for purging gaseous fuel before ignition commences on starting, or recommences after failure to start. The purge is to be of sufficient duration to displace at least three times the volume of the exhaust system.

## 6.3 Air starting

6.3.1 Where the gas turbine is arranged for air starting, the total air receiver capacity is to be sufficient to provide, without replenishment, not less than six consecutive starts. At least two air receivers of approximately equal capacity are to be provided to satisfy the plant air start requirements. For scantlings and fittings of air receivers, see Pt 8, Ch 2.

6.3.2 For multi-engine installations, three consecutive starts per engine are required.

## 6.4 Electric starting

6.4.1 Where the gas turbine is fitted with electric starters powered from batteries, two batteries are to be fitted. Each battery is to be capable of starting the gas turbine and the combined capacity is to be sufficient without recharging to provide the number of starts required by 6.3.1 or 6.3.2.

6.4.2 The requirements for battery installations are given in Pt 10, Ch 1.

## 6.5 Hydraulic starting

6.5.1 Where the gas turbine is arranged for hydraulic starting, the capacity of the power pack is to be sufficient to provide the number of starts of the gas turbine as required by 6.3.1 or 6.3.2.

## Section 7 Control, alarm and safety systems

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 Control, alarm and safety systems are to comply with the requirements of this Section and Pt 9, Ch 1. See Pt 1, Ch 2,4 for requirements for operating conditions.

### 7.2 Overspeed protection and shut-down system

7.2.1 The gas turbine is to be protected against overspeed by the provision of a suitable device(s) capable of shutting down the gas turbine safely before a dangerous overspeed condition occurs.

### 7.3 Speed governors

7.3.1 A means of controlling the output shaft speed of the gas turbine is to be provided as detailed in 7.3.2 to 7.3.5.

7.3.2 An efficient speed governor independent of the overspeed protective device, is to be fitted to each gas turbine that provides mechanical drive to propeller(s) and adjusted so that the speed does not exceed that which brings the overspeed protective device into action.

7.3.3 Where the gas turbine is intended for driving an electric generator, a speed governor, independent of the overspeed protective device, is to be fitted which, with fixed settings, is to control the turbine speed within the design limits of the electrical system requirements. Unless otherwise required by the electrical system power supply requirements, the governor is to control the speed within 10 per cent momentary variation and five per cent permanent variation when full load is suddenly taken off or put on. The permanent speed variations of a.c. machines intended for parallel operations are to be equal within a tolerance of  $\pm 0,5$  per cent.

7.3.4 In order to design the load management of the main and emergency electrical power systems in accordance with Pt 10, Ch 1,6.9, where gas turbines are of a type that cannot meet the requirements of 7.3.3, load step trials are to be carried out. The trials are to demonstrate the load steps that are required to increase the mechanical load on the turbine from no load to full load and full load rejection, whilst keeping the momentary variations in turbine speed within 10 per cent and permanent variations in turbine speed within five per cent. The results of the trials are to be submitted to LR for consideration.

7.3.5 The no load stability of governors on electrical generator gas turbines is to be such as to enable satisfactory paralleling to be achieved.

### 7.4 Power turbine inlet over-temperature control

7.4.1 The power turbine is to be protected against over-temperature by the provision of a suitable device(s) capable of controlling the temperature within acceptable limits or shutting down the gas turbine safely to prevent damage.

### 7.5 Flameout

7.5.1 Indication is to be provided for identifying poor combustion from each combustion chamber, flame out and failure to ignite conditions, see also 6.2.1.

### 7.6 Lubricating oil system

7.6.1 Means are to be provided to determine accurately the pressure and temperature of the lubricating oil supply to the various parts of the gas generator and power turbine, and scavenge oil and return systems to ensure safe operation.

7.6.2 Means are to be provided to ensure that the temperature of the lubrication oil supply is automatically controlled to maintain steady-state conditions throughout the normal operating range of the gas turbine.

7.6.3 Where the oil supply to the power turbine is fed from a separate supply system, similar arrangements to those detailed above are to be provided.

## 7.7 Stopping of gas turbines

7.7.1 Means are to be provided, at both the local and remote control/operating positions, to initiate manually the shut-down of the gas turbine in an emergency.

7.7.2 In addition to 7.7.1, a means of manually shutting off the fuel in an emergency is to be provided at the manoeuvring station where the station is remote from the gas turbine control/operating position.

7.7.3 See also Pt 1, Ch 1, 4.1.1 for requirements for stopping machinery from a position outside the compartment where the machinery is located.

## 7.8 Indication of temperature

7.8.1 Means are to be provided for indicating the temperature of power turbine exhaust gases.

## 7.9 Automatic and remote controls

7.9.1 Where gas turbines are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require manual intervention by the operators, they are required to be provided with alarm and safety arrangements required by 7.9.2 and Table 2.7.1 as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

7.9.2 Where oil fuel grades require heating or cooling only, oil fuel supply is to be fitted with automatic temperature controls so as to maintain steady state conditions throughout the normal operating range of the turbine, see also 7.9.4.

7.9.3 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shut-down of machinery are required in Table 2.7.1, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shut-down are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm.

7.9.4 Where the oil fuel supply is heated, automatic control for viscosity may be fitted in lieu of the temperature control required by 7.9.2.

**Table 2.7.1 Gas turbine machinery: Alarms and shut-downs** (see continuation)

| Item                                                                  | Alarm          | Note                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Overspeed                                                             | High           | Automatic shut-down, see also 7.2            |
| Starting air pressure                                                 | Low            | —                                            |
| Electrical starting battery charge level                              | Low            | —                                            |
| Starting hydraulic pressure                                           | Low            | —                                            |
| Power turbine inlet temperature                                       | 1st stage high | Automatic power reduction                    |
| See Note 4                                                            | 2nd stage high | Automatic shut-down, see also 7.4            |
| Flame failure                                                         | Failure        | Automatic shut-down, see also 7.5            |
| Failure to ignite                                                     | Failure        | Automatic shut-down, see also 7.5            |
| Lubricating oil pressure                                              | 1st stage low  | —                                            |
|                                                                       | 2nd stage low  | Automatic shut-down, see also 7.6            |
| Lubricating oil temperature                                           | High           | See also 7.6                                 |
| Lubricating oil filter differential pressure                          | High           | —                                            |
| Scavenge oil temperature                                              | High           | —                                            |
| Scavenge oil pressure                                                 | Low            | Automatic shut-down                          |
| Bearing temperature                                                   | High           | —                                            |
| Turbine vibration                                                     | 1st stage high | —                                            |
|                                                                       | 2nd stage high | Automatic shut-down, see also 4.2            |
| Oil fuel supply pressure                                              | Low            | —                                            |
| Oil fuel supply temperature                                           | High           | —                                            |
| Oil fuel leakage                                                      | High           | See also 5.2                                 |
| Automatic starting                                                    | Failure        | Automatic shut-down                          |
| Control system                                                        | Failure        | Automatic shut-down                          |
| Air intake pressure                                                   | Low            | See also 4.4                                 |
| Feed water or water/thermal fluid forced circulation flow (if fitted) | Low            | See Pt 7, Ch 3, 6.2.6 and Note 5             |
| Uptake temperature                                                    | High           | To monitor for soot fires. See Notes 5 and 6 |



**Table 2.7.1 Gas turbine machinery: Alarms and shut-downs** (*conclusion*)

**NOTES**

1. For two-stage alarms, see also 7.9.3.
2. For requirements on purging before ignition, see 6.2.1.
3. Where there are separate lubricating oil systems for gas generator and power turbine/gearing sections, each system is to be monitored.
4. Where there is more than one combustion chamber, the temperature of each chamber is to be monitored.
5. Alarm only required when suitable for operation on residual fuel grades and an exhaust gas economiser/boiler/thermal oil heater is fitted.
6. Alternatively, details (including location) of an appropriate fire detection system are to be submitted for consideration.

## Section 8 Planned maintenance and condition monitoring procedures, and 'upkeep by exchange'

### 8.1 Planned maintenance approach

8.1.1 Suitable gas turbine installation Planned Maintenance and Condition Monitoring Schemes (PMS(CM)) will be accepted a part of LR's Continuous Survey Machinery (CSM) cycle provided the principles defined in 8.2 to 8.4 are satisfied.

### 8.2 Preventive maintenance

8.2.1 Preventive maintenance requires items to be opened out for inspection and overhaul at specified time periods or after a specified number of running hours.

8.2.2 Maintenance is normally carried out irrespective of the condition of the gas turbine in order to retain it in a satisfactory operational condition.

### 8.3 Unscheduled maintenance

8.3.1 The planned maintenance scheme is to be capable of dealing effectively with breakdown or corrective maintenance, i.e. unscheduled maintenance.

### 8.4 Condition monitoring

8.4.1 Condition monitoring requires the use of instrumentation to make regular or continuous measurements of certain parameters, in order to indicate the physical state of the gas turbine, without disturbing its normal operation.

8.4.2 The data collected is to be used to determine the actual condition of the gas turbine at any given time or, based on the trend characteristics of the condition, used for predicting the remaining useful life before complete deterioration or loss of performance terminates its ability to carry out its required function.

### 8.5 Condition monitoring techniques

8.5.1 The conditioning monitoring techniques, to support the trend away from preventive maintenance, listed in Table 2.7.1 are considered the minimum acceptable to obviate the need for a fully opened out inspection of engine components at Periodical Survey.

8.5.2 Alternative arrangements to those in Table 2.8.1, which provide an equivalent level of confidence in the condition of the gas turbine installation, will be considered.

### 8.6 Upkeep by exchange

8.6.1 Where the gas turbine is maintained using an 'upkeep by exchange' policy, details of the system are to be submitted to LR for approval.

8.6.2 Where an 'upkeep by exchange' system has been approved, details of units that can be changed independently of each other are not required to be submitted provided there have been no changes since the original approval. The manufacture and testing of the replacement units is to be in accordance with relevant Rule requirements.

8.6.3 Records of each 'upkeep by exchange' are to be kept on board the ship and LR Surveyors are to witness running tests on load after each exchange. A record history is to be maintained for each exchange unit in the engine logbook.

**Table 2.8.1 Condition monitoring techniques**

| Method                                                                             | Requirement                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Visual inspection                                                                  | Periodic inspection of intakes and exhaust ducts, inlet guide vanes, compressor 1st stage, compressor and gas generator casings and auxiliary components and systems. The running clearances and dimensional changes, where practicable                                                                                                                                                |
| Visual inspection by borescope/endoscope                                           | Periodic inspection of compressor stators, guide vanes and blades, combustion chambers, turbine nozzles and blades and power turbine                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Vibration monitoring                                                               | Continuous monitoring and trend analysis of gas generator and power turbine rotor vibration. The equipment used for vibration measurement should be capable of determining vibration throughout the operating range of the gas turbine                                                                                                                                                 |
| Lubrication, oil trend analysis programme                                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Periodic inspection of magnetic particle detectors (manual records and/or automatic recording via debris counters in oil scavenge lines)</li> <li>• Periodic inspection of oil filters</li> <li>• Periodic sampling and laboratory analysis of lubricant quality</li> </ul>                                                                   |
| Fuel quality                                                                       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintenance of oil fuel bunker/marine gas oil analysis records</li> <li>• Periodic sampling and laboratory analysis of fuel quality</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Performance monitoring                                                             | Continuous monitoring and trend analysis of critical gas turbine operating parameters including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Compressor conditions (inlet and exit temperature, delivery pressure and speed)</li> <li>• Power turbine (inlet entry temperature and speed)</li> <li>• Engine breather temperature</li> <li>• Low cycle fatigue counter</li> </ul> See Note |
| <b>NOTE</b><br>Manual recording and trend analysis methods may also be acceptable. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

# Steam Turbines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 3

Sections 1, 2 & 3

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Particulars to be submitted**
- 3 **Materials**
- 4 **Design and construction**
- 5 **Emergency arrangements**
- 6 **Piping systems**
- 7 **Control and monitoring**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter is to be read in conjunction with the General Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems in Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2.

1.1.2 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to steam turbines for main propulsion and essential auxiliary services.

### 1.2 Power ratings

1.2.1 In this Chapter, where the dimensions of any particular component are determined from shaft power,  $P$ , in kW, and revolutions per minute,  $R$ , the values to be used are those defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, 4.3.

### 1.3 Power conditions for generator sets

1.3.1 Auxiliary steam turbines coupled to electrical generators are to be capable under service conditions of developing continuously the power to drive the generators at full rated output and of developing for a short period (15 minutes) an overload power of not less than 10 per cent (see Pt 10, Ch 1).

### 1.4 Inclination of ship

1.4.1 Main and essential auxiliary steam turbines are to operate satisfactorily under the conditions as shown in Table 2.4.2 in Pt 1, Ch 2.

## ■ Section 2 Particulars to be submitted

### 2.1 Plans and information

2.1.1 The following plans are to be submitted for consideration, together with particulars of materials, maximum shaft powers and revolutions per minute. The pressures and temperatures applicable at maximum shaft power and under the emergency conditions of 5.2 are to be stated or indicated on the plans:

- General arrangement.
- Sectional assembly.
- Rotors and couplings.
- Casings.

2.1.2 For the emergency conditions of 5.3, full particulars of the means proposed for emergency propulsion are to be submitted.

2.1.3 Where rotors and castings are of welded construction, details of the welded joints are also to be submitted for consideration.

2.1.4 In general, plans for auxiliary turbines need not be submitted.

## ■ Section 3 Materials

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 In the selection of materials, consideration is to be given to their creep strength, corrosion resistance and scaling properties at working temperatures to ensure satisfactory performance and long life under service conditions.

3.1.2 Grey cast iron is not to be used for temperatures exceeding 260°C.

### 3.2 Materials for forgings

3.2.1 Turbine rotors and discs are to be of forged steel. For carbon and carbon-manganese steel forgings, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be selected within the limits of 400 and 600 N/mm<sup>2</sup>. For alloy steel rotor forgings, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be selected within the limits of 500 and 800 N/mm<sup>2</sup>. For discs and other alloy steel forgings, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be selected within the limits of 500 and 1000 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

3.2.2 For alloy steels, details of the proposed chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

3.2.3 When it is proposed to use material of higher tensile strength, full details are to be submitted for approval.



## ■ Section 4 Design and construction

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 In the design and arrangement of turbine machinery, adequate provision is to be made for the relative thermal expansion of the various turbine parts, and special attention is to be given to minimising casing and rotor distortion under all operating conditions.

4.1.2 Turbine bearings are to be so disposed and supported that lubrication is not adversely affected by heat flow from adjacent hot parts of the turbine. Effective means are to be provided for intercepting oil leakage and preventing oil from reaching high temperature glands and casings and steam pipes. Drainage openings and drain pipes from oil baffle pockets are to be sufficiently large to prevent excessive accumulation and leakage of oil.

### 4.2 Welded components

4.2.1 Turbine rotors, cylinders and associated components fabricated by means of welding will be considered for acceptance if constructed by firms whose works are properly equipped to undertake welding to equivalent standards, for rotors and cylinders respectively, to those required by the Rules for Class 1 and Class 2/1 welded pressure vessels, see Pt 1, Ch 3.

4.2.2 Welding is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Ch 13,4 of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials) using welding procedures and welders that have been qualified in accordance with Chapter 12 of the Rules for Materials.

4.2.3 Before work is commenced, manufacturers are to submit for consideration details of proposed welding procedures and their proposals for routine examination of joints by non-destructive means.

4.2.4 Materials used in the construction of turbine rotors, cylinders, diaphragms, condensers, etc., are to be of welding quality.

4.2.5 Where it is proposed to construct rotors from two or more forged components joined by welding, full details of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and heat treatment of the materials, together with particulars of the welding consumables, an outline of the welding procedure, method of fabrication and heat treatment, are to be submitted for consideration.

4.2.6 Joints in rotors and major joints in cylinders are to be designed as full-strength welds and for complete fusion of the joint.

4.2.7 Adequate preheating is to be employed for mild steel cylinders and components and where the metal thickness exceeds 44 mm, and for all low alloy steel cylinders and components and for any part where necessitated by joint restraint.

4.2.8 Stress relief heat treatment is to be applied to all cylinders and associated components on completion of the welding of all joints and attached structures. For details of stress relief procedure, temperature and duration.

4.2.9 For all welded components, weld procedure tests are to be in accordance with Ch 12,2.7 of the Rules for Materials.

4.2.10 Production weld tests are to be performed according to the requirements of Ch 13,4.5 of the Rules for Materials.

### 4.3 Stress raisers

4.3.1 Smooth fillets are to be provided at abrupt changes of section of rotors, spindles, discs, blade roots and tenons. The rivet holes in blade shrouds are to be rounded and radiused on top and bottom surfaces, and tenons are to be radiused at their junction with blade tips. Balancing holes in discs are to be well rounded and polished.

4.3.2 Surveyors are to be satisfied as to the workmanship and riveting of blades to shroud bands, and that the blade tenons are free from cracks, particularly with high tensile blade material. Test samples are to be sectioned and examined, and pull-off tests made if considered necessary by the Surveyors.

### 4.4 Shrunk-on rotor discs

4.4.1 Main turbine rotor discs fitted by shrinking are to be secured with keys, dowels or other approved means.

### 4.5 Vibration

4.5.1 Care is to be taken in the design and manufacture of turbine rotors, rotor discs and blades to ensure freedom from undue vibration within the operating speed range. Consideration of blade vibration should include the effect of centrifugal force, blade root fixing, metal temperature and disc flexibility where appropriate.

4.5.2 For the vibration and alignment of main propulsion systems formed by the turbines geared to the line shafting, see Pt 5, Ch 4.

### 4.6 External influences

4.6.1 Pipes and ducts connected to turbine casings are to be so designed that no excessive thrust loads or moments are applied by them to the turbines. Gratings and any fittings in way of sliding feet or flexible-plate supports are to be so arranged that casing expansion is not restricted. Where main turbine seatings incorporate a tank structure, consideration is to be given to the temperature variation of the tank in service to ensure that turbine alignment will not be adversely affected.

# Steam Turbines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 3

Sections 4, 5 &amp; 6

## 4.7 Steam supply and water system

4.7.1 In the arrangement of the gland sealing system, the pipes are to be made self-draining and every precaution is to be taken against the possibility of condensed steam entering the glands and turbines. The steam supply to the gland sealing system is to be fitted with an effective drain trap. In the air ejector re-circulating water system, the connection to the condenser is to be so located that water cannot impinge on the L.P. rotor or casing.

## 4.8 Turning gear

4.8.1 Turning gear is to be provided for all turbines to facilitate operating and maintenance regimes as required by the manufacturer. Manuals are to be provided and are to comply with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 1,4.6.7.

4.8.2 The turning gear for all propulsion turbines is to be power-driven and if electric, is to be continuously rated.

4.8.3 The turning gear for all turbines is to be fitted with safety interlocks which prevent steam valve actuation for turbine operation when engaged, see Pt 1, Ch 2,4.13. Indication of engaged/disengaged is to be provided at all start positions. In the case of hand operated turning gear turbine operation may be prevented by manual means including the provision of warning devices or notices.

4.8.4 The remote control of power driven turning gear is to be designed so that power is removed if the operating switch is released.

4.8.5 Means are to be provided to secure the turning gear when disengaged.

4.8.6 Overload protection arrangements are to be provided to prevent damage to the electric motor and the turning gear train.

## Section 5 Emergency arrangements

### 5.1 Lubricating oil failure

5.1.1 Arrangements are to be made for the steam to the ahead propulsion turbines to be automatically shut off in the event of failure of the lubricating oil pressure; however, steam is to be made available at the astern turbine for braking purposes in such an emergency. See Pt 7, Ch 3 for emergency oil supply.

5.1.2 Auxiliary turbine arrangements are to be such that steam supply is automatically shut off in the event of failure of the lubricating oil pressure.

## 5.2 Single screw ships

5.2.1 In single screw ships fitted with cross compound steam turbine installations in which two or more turbines are separately coupled to the same main gear wheel, the arrangements are to be such as to enable safe navigation when the steam supply is led direct to the L.P. turbine and either the H.P. or I.P. turbine can exhaust direct to the condenser. Adequate arrangements and controls are to be provided for these emergency operating conditions so that the pressure and temperature of the steam will not exceed those which the turbines and condenser can safely withstand.

5.2.2 The necessary pipes and valves or fittings for these arrangements are to be readily available and properly marked. A fit up test of all combinations of pipes and valves is to be performed prior to the first sea trials.

5.2.3 The permissible power/speeds of the operating turbines(s) when operating without one of the turbines (all combinations) is to be specified and information provided on board.

5.2.4 The operation of the turbines under emergency conditions is to be assessed for the potential influence on shaft alignment and gear teeth loading conditions.

## 5.3 Single main boiler

5.3.1 Ships intended for unrestricted service, fitted with steam turbines and having a single main boiler, are to be provided with means to ensure emergency propulsion in the event of failure of the main boiler.

## Section 6 Piping systems

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 Steam turbine piping systems are, in general, to comply with the requirements given in Pt 7, Ch 1 and Ch 3, due regard being paid to the particular type of installation.

6.1.2 Synthetic rubber hoses, with single or double closely woven integral wire braid reinforcement, or convoluted metal pipes with wire braid protection, may be used in condensate and lubricating oil systems. See also Pt 7, Ch 1.

### 6.2 Lubricating oil systems

6.2.1 Lubricating oil arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 3.

6.2.2 Where the lubricating oil for main propelling steam turbines is circulated under pressure, provision is to be made for the efficient filtration of the oil. The filters are to be capable of being cleaned without stopping the turbine or reducing the supply of filtered oil to the turbine.

# Steam Turbines

# Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 3

Sections 6 & 7

## 6.3 Cooling systems

6.3.1 Cooling water arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 3, as applicable.

## 6.4 Bled steam connections

6.4.1 Non-return or other means, which will prevent steam and water returning to the turbines, are to be fitted in bled steam connections.

## 6.5 Steam strainers

6.5.1 Efficient steam strainers are to be provided close to the inlets to ahead and astern high pressure turbines, or alternatively at the inlets to the manoeuvring valves.

## ■ Section 7 Control and monitoring

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 Control engineering systems are, in general, to comply with the requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1.

### 7.2 Overspeed protective devices

7.2.1 An overspeed protective device is to be provided for main and auxiliary turbines to shut off the steam automatically and prevent the maximum designed speed being exceeded by more than 15 per cent.

7.2.2 Where two or more turbines of a compound main turbine installation are separately coupled to the same main gear wheel, and one overspeed protective device is provided, this is to be fitted to the L.P. ahead turbine. Hand trip gear for shutting off the steam in an emergency is to be provided at the manoeuvring platform.

### 7.3 Speed governors

7.3.1 Where a turbine installation incorporates a reverse gear, electric transmission or reversible propeller, a speed governor in addition to, or in combination with, the overspeed protective device is to be fitted, and is to be capable of controlling the speed of the unloaded turbine without bringing the overspeed protective device into action.

7.3.2 Auxiliary turbines intended for driving electric generators are to be fitted with speed governors which, with fixed setting, are to control the speed within 10 per cent momentary variation and 5 per cent permanent variation when full load is suddenly taken off or put on. The permanent speed variations of alternating current machines intended for parallel operations are to equalise within a tolerance of  $\pm 0,5$  per cent.

## 7.4 Low vacuum and overpressure warning devices

7.4.1 To provide a warning of excessive pressure to personnel in the vicinity of turbine exhaust ends, sentinel relief valves are to be provided at the exhaust ends or other approved positions of all main turbines, and the valve discharge outlets are to be visible and suitably guarded if necessary. Where a low vacuum cut-out device is provided, the sentinel relief valve at the L.P. exhaust may be omitted.

7.4.2 To provide a warning of excessive pressure to personnel in the vicinity of turbine exhaust ends, sentinel relief valves are to be provided at the exhaust ends of all auxiliary turbines and the valve discharge outlets are to be visible and suitably guarded if necessary. Low vacuum or overpressure cut-out devices, as appropriate, are also to be provided for auxiliary turbines not installed with their own condensers.

## 7.5 Steam turbines for propulsion purposes

7.5.1 Where steam turbines for propulsion purposes are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require any manual intervention by operators, they are to be provided with the alarm and safety arrangements required by 7.5.2 to 7.5.7 and Table 3.7.1 as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

7.5.2 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shut-down of machinery are required by Tables 3.7.1 and 3.7.2, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shut-down are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm.

7.5.3 Audible and visual alarms are to operate, and indication is to be given at the relevant control stations to stop or reduce the speed of the turbine(s) for the following fault conditions:

- (a) Excessive turbine vibration.
- (b) Excessive axial movement of turbine rotor.
- (c) Low vacuum in main condenser.
- (d) High condensate level in main condenser.

7.5.4 Reduction of speed may be effected by either manual or automatic control.

7.5.5 Means are to be provided to prevent the risk of thermal distortion of the turbines, by automatic steam spinning, when the shaft is stopped in the manoeuvring mode. An audible and visual alarm is to be provided at the relevant control stations when the shaft has been stopped for a predetermined time.

7.5.6 The following turbine services are to be fitted with automatic controls so as to maintain steady state conditions throughout the normal operating range of the propulsion turbine(s):

- (a) Lubricating oil supply temperature.
- (b) Condenser condensate level.
- (c) Gland steam pressure.

# Steam Turbines

## Volume 2, Part 2, Chapter 3

Section 7

**Table 3.7.1 Steam turbine machinery:  
Alarms and safeguards**

| Item                                                                           | Alarm                                                          | Note                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil pressure for turbines and gearing                              | <div> <div>1st stage Low</div> <div>2nd stage Low</div> </div> | —<br>Automatic shut-down see 7.5.2         |
| Lubricating oil temperature for turbines and gearing                           | High                                                           | —                                          |
| Lubricating oil sump level                                                     | Low                                                            | —                                          |
| Lubricating oil filters differential pressure                                  | High                                                           | —                                          |
| Bearing temperatures or bearing oil outlet temperature of turbines and gearing | High                                                           | —                                          |
| Astern turbine temperature                                                     | High                                                           | —                                          |
| Gland steam pressure                                                           | High and low                                                   | —                                          |
| Thrust bearing temperature                                                     | High                                                           | —                                          |
| Sea-water pressure or flow                                                     | Low                                                            | —                                          |
| Turbine vibration                                                              | High                                                           | Shut-down or speed reduction of turbine(s) |
| Axial movement of turbine rotor                                                | High                                                           |                                            |
| Main condenser vacuum                                                          | Low                                                            |                                            |
| Main condenser condensate level                                                | High                                                           |                                            |
| Overspeed                                                                      | High                                                           | See 7.2                                    |

7.5.7 Prolonged running in a restricted speed range is to be prevented automatically or, alternatively, indication of restricted speed ranges is to be provided at each control station.

### 7.6 Steam turbines for auxiliary purposes

7.6.1 Where steam turbines for auxiliary purposes are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require any manual intervention by operators, they are to be provided with the alarm and safety arrangements required by Table 3.7.2 as appropriate. Alternative arrangements which provide equivalent safeguards will be considered.

**Table 3.7.2 Steam turbine machinery:  
Additional alarms and safeguards**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Alarm                                                           | Note                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil inlet temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | High                                                            | —                                               |
| Lubricating oil inlet pressure                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <div> <div>1st stage Low</div> <div>2nd stage* Low</div> </div> | —<br>Automatic shut-down of turbine*, see 7.5.2 |
| Condenser vacuum                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Low                                                             | Automatic shut-down of turbine*                 |
| Axial displacement of rotor                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | High                                                            |                                                 |
| Overspeed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | High                                                            | See 7.2                                         |
| NOTE<br>There are no classification requirements for the items marked * in the case of engines being used for the emergency source of electrical power.<br>The arrangements are to comply with the requirements of the Naval Authority concerned. |                                                                 |                                                 |

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2  
Part 3 Transmission Systems  
January 2013

---

|             |          |                               |
|-------------|----------|-------------------------------|
| PART        | 1        | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS          |
| PART        | 2        | PRIME MOVERS                  |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS</b>   |
|             |          | <b>Chapter 1 Gearing</b>      |
|             |          | <b>2 Shafting Systems</b>     |
| PART        | 4        | PROPULSION DEVICES            |
| PART        | 5        | SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT |
| PART        | 6        | STEERING SYSTEMS              |
| PART        | 7        | PIPING SYSTEMS                |
| PART        | 8        | PRESSURE PLANT                |
| PART        | 9        | CONTROL ENGINEERING           |
| PART        | 10       | ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING        |
| PART        | 11       | SUPPORT SYSTEMS               |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

---

|                |          |                                              |
|----------------|----------|----------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>GEARING</b>                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>Scope</b>                                 |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                  |
|                | 1.2      | Power ratings                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Principles</b>                            |
|                | 2.1      | Design and operating principles              |
|                | 2.2      | Lifecycle principles                         |
|                | 2.3      | Enhanced analysis principles                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Acceptance criteria</b>                   |
|                | 3.1      | General                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Design and construction</b>               |
|                | 4.1      | General                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Plans and particulars to be submitted</b> |
|                | 5.1      | Plans                                        |
|                | 5.2      | Shafts and sub-systems                       |
|                | 5.3      | Design data and calculations                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Materials</b>                             |
|                | 6.1      | General                                      |
|                | 6.2      | Material specifications                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Design</b>                                |
|                | 7.1      | General                                      |
|                | 7.2      | Fatigue limits                               |
|                | 7.3      | Tooth form                                   |
|                | 7.4      | Tooth loading factors                        |
|                | 7.5      | Factors of safety                            |
|                | 7.6      | Gear wheels                                  |
|                | 7.7      | Clutch actuation                             |
|                | 7.8      | Gearcases                                    |
|                | 7.9      | Alignment                                    |
|                | 7.10     | Turning gear                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b> | <b>Sub-systems for gearing</b>               |
|                | 8.1      | General                                      |
|                | 8.2      | Pumps                                        |
|                | 8.3      | Filters                                      |
|                | 8.4      | Gearbox dehumidification                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b> | <b>Control and monitoring</b>                |
|                | 9.1      | General                                      |
|                | 9.2      | Unattended machinery                         |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>SHAFTING SYSTEMS</b>                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                  |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                  |
|                | 1.2      | Power ratings                                |
|                | 1.3      | Clutches                                     |
|                | 1.4      | Safety                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Particulars to be submitted</b>           |
|                | 2.1      | Plans                                        |
|                | 2.2      | Calculations and specifications              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Materials</b>                             |
|                | 3.1      | Materials for shafts                         |
|                | 3.2      | Shaft bearing materials                      |

---

|                |          |                                                |
|----------------|----------|------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Design and construction</b>                 |
|                | 4.1      | Fatigue strength analysis                      |
|                | 4.2      | Intermediate shafts                            |
|                | 4.3      | Thrust shafts external to engines              |
|                | 4.4      | Screwshafts and tube shafts                    |
|                | 4.5      | Hollow shafts                                  |
|                | 4.6      | Cardan shafts                                  |
|                | 4.7      | Coupling bolts                                 |
|                | 4.8      | Flange connections of couplings                |
|                | 4.9      | Tooth couplings                                |
|                | 4.10     | Flexible couplings                             |
|                | 4.11     | Interference fit assemblies                    |
|                | 4.12     | Keys and keyways for propeller connections     |
|                | 4.13     | Keys and keyways for inboard shaft connections |
|                | 4.14     | Corrosion resistant liners on shafts           |
|                | 4.15     | Intermediate bearings                          |
|                | 4.16     | Sternbushes and sterntube arrangements         |
|                | 4.17     | Vibration and alignment                        |
|                | 4.18     | Rope guards                                    |
|                | 4.19     | Shaft brake and locking arrangements           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Control and monitoring</b>                  |
|                | 5.1      | Unattended machinery                           |



## Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **Principles**
- 3 **Acceptance criteria**
- 4 **Design and construction**
- 5 **Plans and particulars to be submitted**
- 6 **Materials**
- 7 **Design**
- 8 **Sub-systems for gearing**
- 9 **Control and monitoring**

## ■ Section 1 Scope

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter defines the requirements for the design and service life of marine gears and is to be read in conjunction with the General Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems in Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2.

1.1.2 The scope of this Chapter includes gearing for main propulsion and auxiliary machinery, the support arrangements, the controls and systems necessary to maintain operation and functionality of the unit. The contents are in respect of mechanical integrity of the gears, control and monitoring systems and other support critical systems.

1.1.3 Marine gears utilised for propulsion or electrical power generation purposes are within the Mobility and Ship Type categories as defined in Pt 1, Ch 1,3.

1.1.4 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to electric motor, gas turbine, steam turbines and diesel engine gearing for driving:

- (a) Conventional, totally submerged propeller(s)/impeller(s) for main propulsion purposes where the transmitted powers exceed 220 kW.
- (b) Auxiliary machinery that is essential for the safety of the ship or for the safety of persons on board where the transmitted powers exceed 110 kW.

1.1.5 Gear designs for applications other than those specified in 1.1.4 will be specially considered.

1.1.6 In any mesh, the terms pinion and wheel refer to the smaller and larger gear respectively.

1.1.7 Bevel gears will be specially considered on the basis of a conversion to equivalent cylindrical gears.

1.1.8 Gear type testing will be required as part of the approval process for first of type.

1.1.9 See Pt 1, Ch 2,10 for construction, installation and testing requirements.

### 1.2 Power ratings

1.2.1 In this Chapter, where the dimensions of any particular components are determined from shaft power,  $P$ , in kW, and revolutions per minute,  $R$ , the values to be used are those defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.3.

## ■ Section 2 Principles

### 2.1 Design and operating principles

2.1.1 Marine gears are to be designed in accordance with user defined operating and performance criteria, taking account of ship type and service operating envelope.

2.1.2 Marine gears are to be capable of continuous operation between the maximum and minimum output power at specified operating conditions, see Pt 1, Ch 2,4.

2.1.3 Marine gears are to be designed and installed such that degradation or failure of any other independent system will not render the gears inoperable.

2.1.4 Marine gears necessary for propulsion or steering of the ship are to be designed and installed such that power transmission can be maintained in the event of single failure in an operational sub-system.

2.1.5 The gearing installation is to be capable of operating for the service profile throughout the specified life of the ship.

### 2.2 Lifecycle principles

2.2.1 Gears are to be operated and maintained such that the required performance, integrity and reliability can be achieved throughout the life of the ship.

2.2.2 To demonstrate continued compliance with the classification provisions for engineering systems (see Pt 1, Ch 1,2.1.1), surveys are to be carried out in accordance with the Regulations.

## 2.3 Enhanced analysis principles

2.3.1 Where the design of gearing has used enhanced analysis methods as described in 2.3.2 to 2.3.5, the ship will be eligible for the optional machinery class notation **AG1** or **AG2** as applicable. These optional class notations may be applied where the Owner/operator requires detailed knowledge of the reliability of the gear elements and where noise excitation is required to be minimised for anticipated service conditions. Eligibility for the **AG1** class notation will be subject to analysis in accordance with ISO 6336 and the use of an acceptable validated analytical meshing model for determining the face load factor for contact stress  $K_{H\beta}$  by direct calculations. The analytical mesh model is to include consideration of the following:

- Phase varying lines of contact at the mesh.
- Elastic deflection of the gears, supporting shafts and other supporting components.
- Geometric qualities of any helix and profile modifications.
- Manufacturing tolerances.

2.3.2 Where, in addition to the requirements for **AG1** class notation, a validated three dimensional finite element program is used for determining the flexibility of the geometry of mating gears, the ship will be eligible for **AG2** class notation.

2.3.3 Gear elements are to be analysed using ISO 6336 with the following additions:

- The face load factor for contact stress ( $K_{Hmesh}$ ) is to be calculated using an acceptable validated analytical meshing model and used in place of the equivalent factor ( $K_{H\beta} \times K_{H\alpha}$ ) given in ISO 6336. The actual factor of safety against surface failure is effectively adjusted as follows:

$$S_H = S_{HISO} \sqrt{\frac{K_{H\beta} \cdot K_{H\alpha}}{K_{Hmesh}}} \quad (\text{to exceed } 1,4)$$

- The face load factor for bending stress ( $K_{Fmesh}$ ) is to be calculated in accordance with ISO 6336 using the  $K_{Hmesh}$  value calculated from the validated analytical mesh model. The actual factor of safety against surface failure is effectively adjusted as follows:

$$S_F = S_{FISO} \frac{K_{F\beta} \cdot K_{F\alpha}}{K_{Fmesh}} \quad (\text{to exceed } 1,8)$$

The factors of safety derived from the stress analysis procedure are only to be used for comparing the gears of similar design.

2.3.4 The ability of gearing to operate without scuffing at loads up to and including the maximum specified transient overload is to be demonstrated using at least two different methods. The assessment is to take full account of predicted transverse load distribution.

2.3.5 The design of the gearing is to be capable of accepting the following overload conditions as applicable and the over-speed without risk of damage:

- A non-transient ahead torque overload (duration of more than three seconds) of 125 per cent maximum full power torque in steam turbine and diesel installations, and of 150 per cent maximum full power torque in gas turbine installations. Torque levels up to these may occur during high power turns and rapid accelerations up to a total of five hours during a ship's life. Gears and shafts are to be capable of withstanding 200 per cent of full power statically as could occur if for instance the propeller becomes jammed.
- Over-speed of 15 per cent above the specified input speed.

## Section 3

### Acceptance criteria

#### 3.1 General

3.1.1 Conformance with the performance criteria, together with any specific requirements of the applicable Rules, standards and legislation is to be demonstrated by the gear manufacturer, shipbuilder and navy/operator to the satisfaction of Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').

3.1.2 For gears, the applicable Rules and Standards for classification are:

- LR Rules for the Classification of Naval Ships.
- ISO 6336 Parts 1, 2, 3 and 5.
- ISO 1328 – *Parallel involute gears ISO System of Accuracy*.
- ISO 1940 – *Balancing*.
- Requirements of the Naval Authority, see 3.1.3.
- Other specific Owner requirements. These are to be identified before commencement of design review or construction.
- LR Type Approval System.
- LR Quality Scheme for Machinery.

3.1.3 Where LR is acting on behalf of the Naval Authority, any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority are to be identified and advised to LR.

## Section 4

### Design and construction

#### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Documents relevant to the design, construction, installation, testing and operation of gears are:

- LR's Rules for Gearing, see Sections 5 to 9 and Pt 1, Ch 2,10.
- The gearing manufacturer's recommendations.

4.1.2 The overall performance of gears installed in ships is to be demonstrated to conform with the performance criteria specified. If necessary, tests may be carried out in conjunction with the ship's operational pattern.

## ■ Section 5 Plans and particulars to be submitted

### 5.1 Plans

5.1.1 Particulars of the gearing are to be submitted with the plans, in triplicate, for all propulsion gears and for auxiliary gears where the transmitted power exceeds 110 kW.

### 5.2 Shafts and sub-systems

5.2.1 Plans showing details of shafts, bearings (position and type), couplings and any clutches are to be submitted.

5.2.2 Schematic plans of the lubricating oil system, together with pipe material, relief valve and working pressures are to be submitted.

5.2.3 Schematic plans showing arrangements of the gear-box dehumidification arrangements are to be submitted.

5.2.4 Schematic plans showing arrangements of the control, safety and electrical systems are to be submitted.

### 5.3 Design data and calculations

5.3.1 A design statement for the gearing installation, see Pt 1, Ch 2,3.2.2(c).

5.3.2 A Failure Mode Effects Analysis (FMEA) as required by Pt 1, Ch 2 is to be submitted. The FMEA is to include the following associated sub-systems:

- Clutches.
- Flexible couplings.
- Lubricating oil.
- Cooling arrangements.
- Dehumidification.
- Gearbox mounting.
- Control and monitoring.
- Electrical power supplies.

It is not necessary to consider failure modes relating to the gearbox components.

5.3.3 Details of calculations and tests to establish the service life of safety critical components, including couplings, gearing (where applicable), bearings and seals are to be submitted.

5.3.4 A technical file with bearing particulars, sizes, position of oil inlets, diametral clearances and lubricating oil arrangements are to be submitted.

5.3.5 Calculations demonstrating compliance with requirements for class notations **AG1** and **AG2** are to be submitted where applicable.

5.3.6 Details of the turning gear and its operational limitations are to be provided.

## ■ Section 6 Materials

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 In the selection of materials for pinions and wheels, consideration is to be given to their compatibility in operation. Except in the case of low reduction ratios, for gears of through-hardened steels, provision is to be made for a hardness differential between pinion teeth and wheel teeth. For this purpose, the specified minimum tensile strength of the wheel rim material is not to be more than 85 per cent of that of the pinion.

6.1.2 Subject to 6.1.1, the specified minimum tensile strength is to be selected within the following limits:

- (a) Pinion and pinion sleeves: 550 to 1050 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- (b) Gear wheels and rims: 400 to 850 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

A tensile strength range is also to be specified and is not to exceed 120 N/mm<sup>2</sup> when the specified minimum tensile strength is 600 N/mm<sup>2</sup> or less. For higher strength steels, the range is not to exceed 150 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

6.1.3 Unless otherwise agreed by LR, the specified minimum tensile strength of the core is to be 800 N/mm<sup>2</sup> for induction-hardened or nitrided gearing and 750 N/mm<sup>2</sup> for carburised gearing.

6.1.4 For nitrided gearing, the full depth of the hardened zone is to be not less than 0,5 mm and the hardness is to be not less than 500 HV for a depth of 0,25 mm.

### 6.2 Material specifications

6.2.1 Specifications for materials of pinions, pinion sleeves, wheel rims, gear wheels, and quill shafts, giving chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties, are to be submitted for approval with the plans of gearing.

6.2.2 Where the teeth of a pinion or gear wheel are to be surface hardened, i.e., carburised, nitrided, tufftrided or induction-hardened, the proposed specification and details of the procedure are to be submitted for approval.

## Section 7 Design

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 Gears are to be designed to ISO 6336 Method B, or equivalent, and are to comply with the requirements of this Chapter.

7.1.2 It is the manufacturer's responsibility to provide, together with the requirements of 5.1.1, results of the calculations with all relevant input data.

### 7.2 Fatigue limits

7.2.1 Acceptable limiting fatigue bending stresses for various materials are given in Table 1.7.1, where  $\sigma_B$  is the ultimate tensile strength, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, and HV is the Vickers hardness number.

**Table 1.7.1 Values of endurance limit for bending stress,  $\sigma_{F \text{ lim}}$**

| Heat treatment                                      | $\sigma_{F \text{ lim}}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> |
|-----------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Through-hardened carbon steel                       | $0,09\sigma_B + 150$                       |
| Through-hardened alloy steel                        | $0,1\sigma_B + 185$                        |
| Soft bath nitrided (tufftrided)                     | 330                                        |
| Induction hardened                                  | $0,35HV + 125$                             |
| Gas nitrided                                        | 390                                        |
| Carburised A                                        | 450                                        |
| Carburised B                                        | 410                                        |
| NOTES                                               |                                            |
| 1. A is applicable for CR Ni Mo carburising steels. |                                            |
| 2. B is applicable for other carburising steels.    |                                            |

7.2.2 Acceptable limiting fatigue surface stresses for various surface treatments are given in Table 1.7.2. Material mechanical properties are based on the gear wheel values.

**Table 1.7.2 Values of endurance limit for Hertzian contact stress,  $\sigma_{H \text{ lim}}$**

| Heat treatment                             |                                 | $\sigma_{H \text{ lim}}$ N/mm <sup>2</sup> |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Pinion                                     | Wheel                           |                                            |
| Through-hardened                           | Through-hardened                | $0,46\sigma_{B2} + 255$                    |
| Surface hardened                           | Through-hardened                | $0,46\sigma_{B2} + 415$                    |
| Carburised, nitrided or induction-hardened | Soft bath nitrided (tufftrided) | 1000                                       |
| Carburised, nitrided or induction-hardened | Induction-hardened              | $0,88HV_2 + 675$                           |
| Carburised or nitrided                     | Nitrided                        | 1300                                       |
| Carburised                                 | Carburised                      | 1500                                       |

### 7.3 Tooth form

7.3.1 The fundamental tooth profile in the transverse section is to be of involute shape, and the roots of the teeth are to be formed with smooth fillets of radii not less than 0,25 of gear normal modulus (mn).

### 7.4 Tooth loading factors

7.4.1 For values of application factor,  $K_A$ , see Table 1.7.3.

**Table 1.7.3 Values of  $K_A$**

| Main and auxiliary gears                                                                      | $K_A$ |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Main propulsion – electric motor or gas turbine, reduction gears                              | 1,15  |
| Main propulsion – diesel engine reduction gears:                                              |       |
| Hydraulic coupling or equivalent on input                                                     | 1,10  |
| High elastic coupling on input                                                                | 1,30  |
| Other coupling                                                                                | 1,50  |
| Auxiliary Gears:                                                                              |       |
| Electric, gas turbine and diesel engine drives with hydraulic coupling or equivalent on input | 1,00  |
| Diesel engine drives with high elastic coupling on input                                      | 1,20  |
| Diesel engine drives with other couplings                                                     | 1,40  |

7.4.2 Load sharing factor,  $K_g$ . The value for  $K_g$  is to be taken as 1,15 for multi-engine drives or split torque arrangements. Otherwise,  $K_g$  is to be taken as 1,0. Alternatively, where measured data exists, a derived value will be considered.

### 7.5 Factors of safety

7.5.1 The required factors of safety are shown in Table 1.7.4, where  $S_{H \text{ min}}$  relates to surface stress and  $S_{F \text{ min}}$  to bending stress.

**Table 1.7.4 Factors of safety**

|                       | $S_{H \text{ min}}$ | $S_{F \text{ min}}$ |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| Main propulsion gears | 1,40                | 1,80                |
| Auxiliary gears       | 1,15                | 1,40                |

### 7.6 Gear wheels

7.6.1 In general, arrangements are to be made so that the interior structure of the wheel may be examined. Alternative proposals will be specially considered.

# Gearing

# Volume 2, Part 3, Chapter 1

Sections 7 &amp; 8

## 7.7 Clutch actuation

7.7.1 Where a clutch is fitted in the transmission, normal engagement shall not cause excessive stresses in the transmission or the driven machinery. Inadvertent operation of any clutch is not to produce dangerously high stresses in the transmission or driven machinery.

## 7.8 Gearcases

7.8.1 Gearcases and their supports are to be designed to be sufficiently stiff such that movements of the external foundations and the thermal effects under all conditions of service do not disturb the tooth contact.

7.8.2 Inspection openings are to be provided at the peripheries of gearcases to enable the teeth of pinions and wheels to be readily examined. Where the construction of gearcases is such that sections of the structure cannot readily be moved for inspection purposes, access openings of adequate size are also to be provided at the ends of the gearcases to permit examination of the structure of the wheels. The attachment to the shafts is to be capable of being examined by removal of bearing caps or by equivalent means.

7.8.3 Access arrangements for examination and maintenance are to be provided for internal clutches, brakes, bearings and couplings where applicable.

7.8.4 Electrical equipment fitted within the gear case is to be suitable for installation in an oil-laden atmosphere and consideration is to be given to areas where oil sprays play directly onto electrotechnical equipment and/or cable fastenings. All electrical items are to be earthed to meet the requirements of Pt 10, Ch 1. Gearcases are to be earthed to the ship's structure.

7.8.5 For gearcase security arrangements, see Pt 7, Ch 3, 8.14.2.

## 7.9 Alignment

7.9.1 Reduction gears with sleeve bearings are to be provided with means for checking the internal alignment of the various elements in the gearcases.

7.9.2 In the case of separately mounted reduction gearing for main propulsion means are to be provided by the gear manufacturer to enable the Surveyors to verify that no distortion of the gearcase has taken place, when chocked and secured to its seating on board ship.

7.9.3 See Pt 5, Ch 4 for further requirements.

## 7.10 Turning gear

7.10.1 The gearbox is to be provided with a means of turning the gearing for inspection and maintenance purposes. The turning gear is to be designed to turn the shaft at a rate to allow visual inspection without risk to bearings when the oil supply is off. The turning gear arrangements are to provide means that enable ready operation by hand.

## Section 8 Sub-systems for gearing

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 The lubricating oil distribution system for gears and bearings is to comply with the gear manufacturer's requirements and recommendations.

8.1.2 Piping systems for gearing are to comply with the general design requirements in Pt 7, Ch 3. Specific requirements for lubricating/hydraulic oil systems and standby arrangements are also stated in Pt 7, Ch 3.

8.1.3 Lubricating oil lines are to be screened, or otherwise suitably protected, to avoid oil spray or oil leakage onto hot surfaces, into machinery air intakes or other sources of ignition. The number of joints in such piping systems is to be kept to a minimum. Flexible pipes are to be of approved type.

### 8.2 Pumps

8.2.1 Where lubricating oil for gearing is circulated under pressure, pump standby arrangements are to be provided in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 3.

### 8.3 Filters

8.3.1 Where lubricating oil for gearing is circulated under pressure, provision is to be made for efficient filtration of the oil. The filters are to be capable of being cleaned without stopping the gears or reducing the supply of filtered oil to the gearing.

### 8.4 Gearbox dehumidification

8.4.1 All gearboxes installed in **NS1** and **NS2** category ships are to be fitted with a dehumidifier to remove moist air from the gearcase during periods of shut-down.

8.4.2 The dry air produced by the dehumidifier is to have a relative humidity of no more than 30 per cent at 15°C.

## ■ Section 9 Control and monitoring

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 Control engineering systems are to be in accordance with Pt 9, Ch 1.

9.1.2 All main and auxiliary gear units, intended for essential services, are to be provided with means of indicating the lubricating oil supply pressure. Audible and visual alarms are to be fitted to give warning of an appreciable reduction in pressure of the lubricating oil supply. These alarms are to be actuated from the outlet side of any restrictions, such as filters, coolers, etc.

### 9.2 Unattended machinery

9.2.1 Where the machinery is fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions it does not require any manual intervention by the operators, gear units are to be provided with alarms and safety arrangements required by 9.2.2 and Table 1.9.1. The sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shutdown in Table 1.9.1 are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm.

**Table 1.9.1 Alarms and safeguards**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | Alarm         | Note                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------|
| Lubricating oil sump level                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Low           | —                                  |
| Lubricating oil inlet pressure*                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 1st Stage Low | Slow-down of primemover            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 2nd Stage Low | Automatic shut-down of prime mover |
| Lubricating oil inlet temperature*                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | High          | —                                  |
| Thrust bearing temperature*                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | High          | Slow-down of prime mover           |
| <b>NOTE</b><br>Where the prime mover is an electric motor then this is to be fitted with a means of reducing speed to enable compliance with this Table. Where gearboxes use an external oil tank for the lubricating oil supply then this is to be considered as the sump. |               |                                    |

9.2.2 Where the gear unit is required to be provided with a standby pump, the standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pump falls below a predetermined value.

# Shafting Systems

# Volume 2, Part 3, Chapter 2

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Particulars to be submitted**
- 3 **Materials**
- 4 **Design and construction**
- 5 **Control and monitoring**

## ■ Scope

The requirements of this Chapter relate, in particular, to formulae for determining the diameters of shafting for main propulsion installations, but requirements for couplings, coupling bolts, keys, keyways, sternbushes and other associated components are also included. The diameters may require to be modified as a result of alignment considerations and vibration characteristics, see Part 5, or the inclusion of stress raisers, other than those contained in this Chapter.

Alternative calculation methods for determining the diameters of shafting for main propulsion and their permissible torsional stresses will be considered by LR. Any alternative calculation method is to include all relevant loads on the complete dynamic shafting system under all permissible operating conditions. Consideration is to be given to the dimensions and arrangements of all shaft connections. Moreover, an alternative calculation method is to take into account design criteria for continuous and transient operating loads (dimensioning for fatigue strength) and for peak operating loads (dimensioning for yield strength). The fatigue strength analysis may be carried out separately for different load assumptions, for example as given below.

Shafts complying with the applicable Rules in this Chapter and Part 5 satisfy the following:

- (a) Low cycle fatigue criterion (typically  $<10^4$ ), i.e., the primary cycles represented by zero to full load and back to zero, including reversing torque if applicable. This is addressed by the formulas in 4.2, 4.4 and 4.5.
- (b) High cycle fatigue criterion (typically  $>>10^7$ ), i.e., torsional vibration stresses permitted for continuous operation as well as reverse bending stresses and the accumulated fatigue due to torsional vibration when passing through a barred speed range or any other transient condition with associated stresses beyond those permitted for continuous operation. This is addressed by the formulas in Pt 5, Ch 1,3.2. The influence of reverse bending stresses is addressed by the safety margins inherent in the formulas in 4.2, 4.4 and 4.5.

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter is to be read in conjunction with the General Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems in Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2.

1.1.2 For shafting enclosed within a gearbox, see Ch 1,7.

1.1.3 For diesel engine crankshaft and turbine rotor shafting, see Pt 2, Ch 1, Ch 2 and Ch 3.

### 1.2 Power ratings

1.2.1 In this Chapter the dimensions of main propulsion components are determined from shaft power,  $P$ , in kW, and revolutions per minute,  $R$ . The values used are those defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.3.

1.2.2 For auxiliary machinery, the maximum continuous shaft power and corresponding revolutions per minute which will be used in service are to be stated.

### 1.3 Clutches

1.3.1 Clutches for single engine propulsion plants are to be provided with a suitable means for emergency operation in the event of loss of operating fluid systems. Their suitability for short term high power operation is to be demonstrated.

### 1.4 Safety

1.4.1 Means are to be provided such that in the event of a failure to a shaft or coupling, the occupants of the ship are not endangered, either directly or by damaging the ship or its systems. Where necessary, guards may be fitted to achieve compliance with these requirements.



## Section 2 Particulars to be submitted

### 2.1 Plans

2.1.1 At least three copies of the following plans are to be submitted:

- Shafting arrangement.
- Thrust shaft.
- Intermediate shafting.
- Tube shaft, where applicable.
- Screwshaft.
- Shaft bearings fitted in sternbushes and shaft bossings in 'A' and 'P' brackets.
- Screwshaft oil gland.
- Screwshaft protection.
- Sternbush and arrangement in housing.
- Couplings.
- Coupling bolts.
- Flexible coupling.
- Cardan shafts.

2.1.2 The shafting arrangement plan is to indicate the relative position of the main engine(s), flywheel, flexible coupling(s), gearing, thrust block, line shafting and bearing(s), sterntube, 'A' bracket and propulsion device, as applicable.

2.1.3 A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) as required by Pt 1, Ch 2 is to be submitted. The FMEA is to include the following associated sub-systems:

- Clutches.
- Flexible couplings.
- Lubrication.
- Cooling arrangements.
- Bearing mountings.
- Control and monitoring.
- Electrical power supplies.
- Thrust blocks.

It is not necessary to consider failure modes relating to the shafting components.

### 2.2 Calculations and specifications

2.2.1 The following calculations and specifications are to be submitted:

- Calculations, or relevant documentation indicating the suitability of all components for short term high power operation, where applicable.
- Where undertaken as an alternative to the requirements to this Chapter, fatigue endurance calculations of all components according to Pt 1, Ch 2.
- Vibration analysis and alignment analysis as required by Part 5.
- The material specifications, including the minimum specified tensile strength of each shaft and coupling component is to be stated. Where corrosion resistant material not included in Table 2.4.1 is used for unprotected screwshafts, the corrosion fatigue strength in sea-water is to be stated together with the chemical composition and mechanical properties.

- Where it is proposed to use composite (non-metallic) shafts, details of materials, resin, lay-up procedure and documentary evidence of fatigue endurance strength.
- For water lubricated bearings in sternbushes and stern-tubes, details of the piping system and means for verifying that the required water flow specified by the bearing manufacturers is being maintained. See also 4.16.

## Section 3 Materials

### 3.1 Materials for shafts

3.1.1 Components are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

3.1.2 The specified minimum tensile strength of forgings for shafts is to be selected within the following general limits:

- (a) Carbon and carbon-manganese steel – 400 to 760 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (41 to 77,5 kgf/mm<sup>2</sup>). See also 4.4.1.
- (b) Alloy steel – not exceeding 800 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (82 kgf/mm<sup>2</sup>) and for other forgings not exceeding 1100 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

3.1.3 Where it is proposed to use alloy steel, details of the chemical composition, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval.

3.1.4 Where shafts may experience vibratory stresses close to the permissible stresses for transient operation, the materials are to have a specified minimum tensile strength of 500 N/mm<sup>2</sup> (51 kgf/mm<sup>2</sup>).

3.1.5 Where materials with greater specified or actual tensile strengths than the limitations given above are used, reduced shaft dimensions or higher permissible vibration stresses are not acceptable when derived from the formulae used in 4.2, 4.4, 4.5 and Pt 5, Ch 1,3.2.

3.1.6 Unprotected screwshafts and tubeshafts exposed to sea-water are, in general, to be manufactured from a corrosion resistant ferrous or non-ferrous material, such as those indicated in Table 2.4.1.

3.1.7 In the selection of materials for shafts, keys, locking nuts, etc., consideration is to be given to their compatibility with the proposed propeller material.

3.1.8 Where shafts are manufactured from composite material the process is to be approved.



## 3.2 Shaft bearing materials

3.2.1 Shaft bearings fitted in sternbushes and shaft bossings in 'A' and 'P' brackets are to be constructed from an approved material and effectively secured to prevent rotational and axial movement in the sterntube(s) and sternbush(es).

## Section 4 Design and construction

### 4.1 Fatigue strength analysis

4.1.1 As an alternative to the following requirements, a fatigue strength analysis of components can be submitted indicating a factor of safety of 1,5 at the design loads, based on suitable fatigue failure criteria. The effects of stress concentrations, material properties and operating environment are to be taken into account.

### 4.2 Intermediate shafts

4.2.1 The diameter,  $d$ , of the intermediate shaft is to be not less than that determined by the following formula:

$$d = F k \sqrt[3]{\frac{P}{R} \left( \frac{560}{\sigma_u + 160} \right)} \text{ mm}$$

where

- $k$  = 1,0 for shafts with integral coupling flanges complying with 4.8 or with shrink fit couplings, see 4.2.4
- = 1,10 for shafts with keyways, in tapered or cylindrical connections where the fillet radii in the transverse section of the bottom of the keyway are not less than  $0,0125d$ , see 4.2.5
- = 1,10 for shafts with transverse or radial holes where the diameter of the hole ( $d_h$ ) does not exceed  $0,3d$
- = 1,20 for shafts with longitudinal slots, see 4.2.6
- $F$  = 95 for turbine installations, electric propulsion installations and diesel engine installations with slip type couplings
- = 100 (90,5) for other diesel engine installations
- $P$  and  $R$  are defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.3.1 (losses in gearboxes and bearings are to be disregarded)
- $\sigma_u$  = specified minimum tensile strength of the shaft material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup> (kgf/mm<sup>2</sup>), see 3.1.2.

4.2.2 Beyond a length of  $0,2d$  from the end of a keyway, transverse hole or radial hole and  $0,3d$  from the end of a longitudinal slot, the diameter of the shaft may be gradually reduced to that determined with  $k = 1,0$ .

4.2.3 For shafts with design features other than stated as above, the value of  $k$  will be specially considered.

4.2.4 For shrink fit couplings,  $k$  refers to the plain shaft section only. Where shafts may experience vibratory stresses close to the permissible stresses for continuous operation, an increase in diameter to the shrink fit diameter is to be provided, e.g., a diameter increase of 1 to 2 per cent and a blending radius as described in 4.8.

4.2.5 Keyways are in general not to be used in installations with a barred speed range.

4.2.6 The application of  $k = 1,20$  is limited to shafts with longitudinal slots having a length of not more than  $0,8d$  and a width of not more than  $0,1d$  and a diameter of central hole  $d_i$  of not more than  $0,8d$ , see 4.5. The end rounding of the slot is not to be less than half the width. An edge rounding should preferably be avoided as this increases the stress concentration slightly. The values of  $c_K$ , see Table 1.3.1 in Pt 5, Ch 1, are valid for 1, 2 and 3 slots, i.e., with slots at 360, 180 and 120 degrees apart respectively.

### 4.3 Thrust shafts external to engines

4.3.1 The diameter at the collars of the thrust shaft transmitting torque or in way of the axial bearing where a roller bearing is used as a thrust bearing, is to be not less than that required for the intermediate shaft in accordance with 4.2 with a  $k$  value of 1,10. Beyond a length equal to the thrust shaft diameter from the collars, the diameter may be tapered down to that required for the intermediate shaft with a  $k$  value of 1,0. For the purpose of the foregoing calculations,  $\sigma_u$  is to be taken as the minimum tensile strength of the thrust shaft material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>. The fillet radius at the base of both sides of the thrust collar is to be not less than  $0,08$  of the diameter of the shaft at the collar.

### 4.4 Screwshafts and tube shafts

4.4.1 Screwshafts and tube shafts, (i.e., the shaft which passes through the sterntube, but does not carry the propeller), made from carbon manganese steel are to be protected by a continuous bronze liner, where exposed to sea-water. Alternatively, the liner may be omitted provided the shaft is arranged to run in an oil lubricated bush with an approved oil sealing gland at the after end. Lengths of shafting between sterntubes and brackets, which are readily visible when the ship is in dry dock, may be protected by coatings of an approved type.

4.4.2 Means for the protection of screwshafts and tube-shafts are not required when the shafts are made of corrosion resistant material.

4.4.3 The diameter,  $d_p$ , of the protected forged steel screwshaft immediately forward of the forward face of the propeller boss or, if applicable, the forward face of the screwshaft flange, is to be not less than:

$$d_p = 100 k \sqrt[3]{\frac{P}{R} \left( \frac{560}{\sigma_u + 160} \right)} \text{ mm}$$

where

$k = 1,22$  for a shaft carrying a keyless propeller fitted on a taper, or where the propeller is attached to an integral flange, and where the shaft is fitted with a continuous liner, a coating of an approved type, or is oil lubricated and provided with an approved type of oil sealing gland

$= 1,26$  for a shaft carrying a keyed propeller and where the shaft is fitted with a continuous liner, a coating of an approved type, or is oil lubricated and provided with an approved type of oil sealing gland

$\sigma_u$  = specified minimum tensile strength of the shaft material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup> but is not to be taken as greater than 600 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

4.4.4 The diameter,  $d_p$ , of the screwshaft determined in accordance with 4.4.3 is to extend over a length not less than that to the forward edge of the bearing immediately forward of the propeller or  $2,5d_p$ , whichever is the greater.

4.4.5 The diameter of the portion of the screwshaft and tube shaft forward of the length required by 4.4.4 to the forward end of the forward stern tube seal is to be determined in accordance with 4.4.3 with a  $k$  value of 1,15. The change of diameter from that determined with  $k = 1,22$  or 1,26 to that determined with  $k = 1,15$  should be gradual, see 4.8.

4.4.6 Screwshafts which run in sterntubes and tube shafts may have the diameter forward of the forward stern tube seal gradually reduced to the diameter of the intermediate shaft. Abrupt changes in shaft section at the screwshaft/tube shaft to intermediate shaft couplings are to be avoided, see 4.8.

4.4.7 The diameter of unprotected screwshafts and tube shafts of materials having properties as shown in Table 2.4.1 is to be not less than:

$$d_{up} = 128A \sqrt[3]{\frac{P}{R}}$$

where

$A$  is taken from Table 2.4.1.

4.4.8 The diameter of unprotected screwshafts of materials having properties as shown in Table 2.4.1 forward of the forward stern tube seal is to be determined in accordance with 4.4.3 or 4.4.7, whichever is less.

**Table 2.4.1** Provisional 'A' value for use in unprotected screwshaft formula

| Material                               | 'A' Value |
|----------------------------------------|-----------|
| Stainless steel type 316 (austenitic)  | 0,71      |
| Stainless steel type 431 (martensitic) | 0,69      |
| Manganese bronze                       | 0,8       |
| Nickel/aluminium bronze                | 0,65      |
| Nickel copper alloy – monel 400        | 0,65      |
| Nickel copper alloy – monel K 500      | 0,55      |
| Duplex steels                          | 0,49      |

## 4.5 Hollow shafts

4.5.1 Where the thrust, intermediate, tube shafts and screwshafts have central holes with a diameter greater than 0,4 times the outside diameter, the equivalent diameter,  $d_e$ , of a solid shaft is not to be less than the Rule size,  $d$ , (of a solid shaft), where  $d_e$  is given by:

$$d_e = d_o \sqrt[3]{1 - \left( \frac{d_i}{d_o} \right)^4}$$

where

$d_o$  = proposed outside diameter, in mm

$d_i$  = diameter of central hole, in mm.

4.5.2 Where the diameter of the central hole does not exceed 0,4 times the outside diameter, the diameter is to be calculated in accordance with the appropriate requirements for a solid shaft.

## 4.6 Cardan shafts

4.6.1 Cardan shafts, used in installations having more than one propulsion shaftline, are to be of an approved design, suitable for the designed operating conditions including short term high power operation. Consideration will be given to accepting the use of approved cardan shafts in single propulsion unit applications if a complete spare interchangeable end joint is to be provided on board.

4.6.2 Cardan shaft ends are to be contained within substantial tubular guards that also permit ready access for inspection and maintenance.

## 4.7 Coupling bolts

4.7.1 Close tolerance fitted bolts transmitting shear are to have a diameter,  $d_b$ , at the flange joining faces of the couplings not less than:

$$d_b = \sqrt{\frac{240}{nD} \frac{10^6}{\sigma_u} \frac{P}{R}} \text{ mm}$$

where

## Shafting Systems

## Volume 2, Part 3, Chapter 2

Section 4

- $n$  = number of bolts in the coupling  
 $D$  = pitch circle diameter of bolts, in mm  
 $\sigma_u$  = specified minimum tensile strength of bolts, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

4.7.2 At the joining faces of couplings, other than within the crankshaft and at the thrust shaft/crankshaft coupling, the Rule diameter of the coupling bolts may be reduced by 5,2 per cent for craft classed exclusively for smooth water service.

4.7.3 Where dowels or expansion bolts are fitted to transmit torque in shear they are to comply with the requirements of 4.7.1. The expansion bolts are to be installed, and the bolt holes in the flanges are to be correctly aligned, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

4.7.4 The minimum diameter of tap bolts or of bolts in clearance holes at the joining faces of coupling flanges, pre-tensioned to 70 per cent of the bolt material yield strength value, is not to be less than:

$$d_R = 1,348 \sqrt{\left( \frac{120 \cdot 10^6 \cdot F \cdot P \cdot (1 + C)}{R \cdot D} + Q \right) \frac{1}{n \cdot \sigma_y}}$$

where

$d_R$  is taken as the lesser of:

- (a) Mean of effective (pitch) and minor diameters of the threads.
- (b) Bolt shank diameter away from threads. (Not for waisted bolts which will be specially considered.)
- $F$  = 2,5 where the flange connection is not accessible from within the ship  
 = 2,0 where the flange connection is accessible from within the ship
- $C$  = ratio of vibratory/mean torque values at the rotational speed being considered
- $D$  = pitch circle diameter of bolt holes, in mm
- $Q$  = external load on bolt in N (+ve tensile load tending to separate flange, -ve)
- $n$  = number of tap or clearance bolts
- $\sigma_y$  = bolt material yield stress in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

4.7.5 Consideration will be given to those arrangements where the bolts are pre-tensioned to loads other than 70 per cent of the material yield strength.

4.7.6 Where clamp bolts are fitted they are to comply with the requirements of 4.7.4 and are to be installed, and the bolt holes in the flanges correctly aligned, in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

#### 4.8 Flange connections of couplings

4.8.1 The minimum thicknesses of the coupling flanges are to be equal to the diameters of the coupling bolts at the face of the couplings as required by 4.7.1, and for this purpose the minimum tensile strength of the bolts is to be taken as equivalent to that of the shafts. For intermediate, thrust shafts, and the inboard end of the screwshaft, the thickness of the coupling flange is in no case to be less than 0,20 of the diameter of the intermediate shaft as required by 4.2.1.

4.8.2 The fillet radius at the base of the coupling flange, integral with the shaft, is to be not less than 0,08 of the diameter of the shaft at the coupling. The fillets are to have a smooth finish and are not to be recessed in way of nut and bolt heads.

4.8.3 Where the propeller is attached by means of a flange, the thickness of the flange is to be not less than 0,25 of the actual diameter of the adjacent part of the screwshaft. The fillet radius at the base of the coupling flange is to be not less than 0,125 of the diameter of the shaft at the coupling.

4.8.4 Where couplings are separate from the shafts, provision is to be made to resist the astern pull.

4.8.5 Where a coupling is shrunk on to the parallel portion of a shaft or is mounted on a slight taper, e.g., by means of the oil pressure injection method, the assembly is to meet the requirements of 4.11.

4.8.6 Transitions of diameters are to be designed with either a smooth taper or a blending radius. In general, a blending radius equal to the change in diameter is recommended.

#### 4.9 Tooth couplings

4.9.1 The contact stress,  $S_c$ , at the flanks of mating teeth of a gear coupling is not to exceed that given in Table 2.4.2, where

$$S_c = \frac{24,10^6 P}{R d_p b h z} \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$d_p$  = pitch circle diameter of coupling teeth, in mm

$b$  = tooth face width, in mm

$h$  = tooth height, in mm

$z$  = number of teeth (per coupling half).

**Table 2.4.2 Allowable  $S_c$  values**

| Tooth material surface treatment | Allowable $S_c$ value N/mm <sup>2</sup> |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Surface hardened teeth           | 19                                      |
| Through hardened teeth           | 11                                      |

4.9.2 Where experience has shown that under similar operating and alignment conditions, a higher tooth loading can be accommodated, full details are to be submitted for consideration.

#### 4.10 Flexible couplings

4.10.1 Details of flexible couplings are to be submitted, together with the manufacturer's rating capacity, for the designed operating conditions including short-term high power operation. Verification of coupling characteristics will be required.

# Shafting Systems

# Volume 2, Part 3, Chapter 2

Section 4

4.10.2 In determining the allowable mean, maximum and vibratory torque ratings, consideration of the mechanical properties of the selected elastic element type in compression, shear and fatigue loading together with heat absorption/generation is to be given.

4.10.3 In determining the allowable torque ratings of the steel spring couplings, consideration of the material mechanical properties to withstand fatigue loading, and overheating is to be given.

## 4.11 Interference fit assemblies

4.11.1 The interference fit assembly is to have a capacity to transmit a torque of  $S \cdot T_{\max}$  without slippage.

NOTE

For guidance purposes only,  $T_{\max} = T_{\text{mean}} (1 + C)$

where

C is to be taken from Table 2.4.3

S = 2,0 for assemblies accessible from within the vessel

= 2,5 for assemblies not accessible from within the vessel.

**Table 2.4.3 'C' values for guidance purposes**

| Coupling location                                         | C   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| High speed shafting<br>– I.C engine driven                | 0,3 |
| High speed shafting<br>– Electric motor or turbine driven | 0,1 |
| Low speed shafting<br>– main or PTO stage gearing         | 0,1 |

4.11.2 The effect of any axial load acting on the assembly is to be considered.

4.11.3 The resulting equivalent von Mises stress in the assembly is not to be greater than the yield strength of the component material.

4.11.4 Reference marks are to be provided on the adjacent surfaces of parts secured by shrinkage alone.

## 4.12 Keys and keyways for propeller connections

4.12.1 Round ended or sled-runner ended keys are to be used, and the keyways in the propeller boss and cone of the screwshaft are to be provided with a smooth fillet at the bottom of the keyways. The radius of the fillet is to be at least 0,0125 of the diameter of the screwshaft at the top of the cone. The sharp edges at the top of the keyways are to be removed.

4.12.2 Two screwed pins are to be provided for securing the key in the keyway, and the forward pin is to be placed at least one third of the length of the key from the end. The depth of the tapped holes for the screwed pins is not to exceed the pin diameter, and the edges of the holes are to be slightly bevelled. The omission of pins for keys for small diameter shafts will be specially considered.

4.12.3 The distance between the top of the cone and the forward end of the keyway is to be not less than 0,2 of the diameter of the screwshaft at the top of the cone.

4.12.4 The effective sectional area of the key in shear, is to be not less than:

$$\frac{155d^3}{\sigma_u d_1} \text{ mm}^2$$

where

d = diameter, in mm, required for the intermediate shaft determined in accordance with 4.2, based on material having a specified minimum tensile strength of 400 N/mm<sup>2</sup> and k = 1

d<sub>1</sub> = diameter of shaft at mid-length of the key, in mm

σ<sub>u</sub> = specified minimum tensile strength (UTS) of the key material, N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

4.12.5 The effective area in crushing of key, shaft or boss is to be not less than:

$$\frac{24d^3}{\sigma_y d_1} \text{ mm}^2$$

where

σ<sub>y</sub> = yield strength of key, shaft or boss material as appropriate, N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

## 4.13 Keys and keyways for inboard shaft connections

4.13.1 Round ended keys are to be used and the keyways are to be provided with a smooth fillet at the bottom of the keyways. The radius of the fillet is to be at least 0,0125 of the diameter of the shaft at the coupling. The sharp edges at the top of the keyways are to be removed.

4.13.2 The effective area of the key in shear, A, is to be not less than:

$$A = \frac{126d^3}{\sigma_u d_1} \text{ mm}^2$$

where

d = diameter, in mm, required for the intermediate shaft determined in accordance with 4.2, based on material having a specified minimum tensile strength of 400 N/mm<sup>2</sup> and k = 1

d<sub>1</sub> = diameter of shaft at mid-length of the key, in mm

σ<sub>u</sub> = specified minimum tensile strength (UTS) of the key material, N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

Alternatively, consideration will be given to keys conforming to the design requirements of a recognised National Standard.

# Shafting Systems

# Volume 2, Part 3, Chapter 2

Section 4

## 4.14 Corrosion resistant liners on shafts

4.14.1 Liners may be bronze, gunmetal, stainless steel or other approved alloy.

4.14.2 The thickness,  $t$ , of liners fitted on screwshafts or on tube shafts, in way of the bushes, is to be not less, when new, than given by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{D + 230}{32} \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  = thickness of the liner, in mm

$D$  = diameter of the screwshaft or tube shaft under the liner, in mm.

4.14.3 The thickness of a continuous liner between the bushes is to be not less than 0,75t.

4.14.4 Continuous liners are to be fabricated or cast in one piece.

4.14.5 Where liners consist of two or more lengths, these are to be butt welded together. In general, the lead content of the gunmetal of each length forming a butt welded liner is not to exceed 0,5 per cent. The composition of the electrodes or filler rods is to be substantially lead-free.

4.14.6 The circumferential butt welds are to be of multi-run, full penetration type. Provision is to be made for contraction of the weld by arranging for a suitable length of the liner containing the weld, if possible about three times the shaft diameter, to be free of the shaft. To prevent damage to the surface of the shaft during welding, a strip of heat resisting material covered by a copper strip should be inserted between the shaft and the liner in way of the joint. Other methods for welding this joint may be accepted if approved. The welding is to be carried out by an approved method and to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

4.14.7 Each continuous liner or length of liner is to be tested by hydraulic pressure to 2,0 bar after rough machining.

4.14.8 Liners are to be carefully shrunk onto the shafts by hydraulic pressure. Pins are not to be used to secure the liners.

4.14.9 Effective means are to be provided for preventing water from reaching the shaft at the part between the after end of the liner and the propeller boss.

## 4.15 Intermediate bearings

4.15.1 Long unsupported lengths of shafting are to be avoided by the fitting of steady bearings at suitable positions, see Part 5.

## 4.16 Sternbushes and sterntube arrangements

4.16.1 Where the sterntube or sternbushes are to be installed using a resin, of an approved type, the following requirements are to be met:

- Pouring and venting holes are to be provided at opposite ends with the vent hole at the highest point.
- The minimum radial gap occupied by the resin is to be not less than 6 mm at any one point with a nominal resin thickness of 12 mm.
- In the case of oil lubricated sterntube bearings, the arrangement of the oil grooves is to be such as to promote a positive circulation of oil in the bearing.
- Provision is to be made for the remote measurement of the temperature at the aft end of the aft bearing, with indication and alarms at the control stations.

4.16.2 The length of the bearing in the sternbush next to and supporting the propeller is to be as follows:

- For water lubricated bearings which are lined with rubber composition or staves of approved plastics material, the length is to be not less than four times the diameter required for the screwshaft under the liner.
- For water lubricated bearings lined with two or more circumferentially spaced sectors, of an approved plastics material, without axial grooves in the lower half, the length of the bearing is to be such that the nominal bearing pressure will not exceed 0,55 N/mm<sup>2</sup>. The length of the bearing is to be not less than twice its diameter.
- For oil lubricated bearings of synthetic material the flow of lubricant is to be such that overheating, under normal operating conditions, cannot occur. The acceptable nominal bearing pressure will be considered upon application and is to be supported by the results of an agreed test programme.
- For bearings which are white-metal lined, oil lubricated and provided with an approved type of oil sealing gland, the length of the bearing is to be approximately twice the diameter required for the screwshaft and is to be such that the nominal bearing pressure will not exceed 0,8 N/mm<sup>2</sup>. The length of the bearing is to be not less than 1,5 times its diameter.
- For bearings of cast iron and bronze which are oil lubricated and fitted with an approved oil sealing gland, the length of the bearing is, in general, to be not less than four times the diameter required for the screwshaft.
- Oil lubricated non-metallic bearings are to be manufactured from an approved material. The length of the bearing is to be such that the maximum approved bearing pressure is not exceeded for any limiting length to diameter ratio.

4.16.3 Sternbushes are to adequately secured in housings.

4.16.4 Forced water lubrication is to be provided for all bearings lined with rubber or plastics. The supply of water may come from a circulating pump or other pressure source. Flow indicators are to be provided for the water service to plastics and rubber bearings. The water grooves in the bearings are to be of ample section and of a shape which will be little affected by wear, particularly for bearings of the plastics type.

# Shafting Systems

## Volume 2, Part 3, Chapter 2

Sections 4 &amp; 5

4.16.5 Oil lubricated bearings of synthetic material are to be supplied finished machined to design dimensions within a rigid tube. Means are to be provided to prevent rotation of the lining within the tube during operation.

4.16.6 The shut-off valve or cock controlling the supply of water is to be fitted direct to the after peak bulkhead, or to the sterntube where the water supply enters the sterntube forward of the bulkhead.

4.16.7 Oil sealing glands must be capable of accommodating the effects of differential expansion between hull and line of shafting for all sea temperatures in the proposed area of operation. This requirement applies particularly to those glands which span the gap and maintain oiltightness between the sterntube and the propeller boss.

4.16.8 Where a tank supplying lubricating oil to the sternbush is fitted, it is to be located above the load waterline and is to be provided with a low level alarm device in the machinery space, see *also* 5.1.1.

4.16.9 Where sternbush bearings are oil lubricated, provision is to be made for cooling the oil by maintaining water in the after peak tank above the level of the sterntube or by other approved means.

4.16.10 Two temperature sensors or other approved arrangements that can, where practicable, be replaced without dry-docking or divers are to be provided to ascertain the sterntube aft end bearing temperature.

4.16.11 Where in-water surveys are required, means are to be provided for ascertaining the clearance in the sternbush with the vessel afloat.

### 4.17 Vibration and alignment

4.17.1 For the requirements for torsional, axial and lateral vibration, and for alignment of the shafting, see Part 5.

### 4.18 Rope guards

4.18.1 Rope guards that provide effective mechanical protection for all bearing sealing arrangements are to be provided.

### 4.19 Shaft brake and locking arrangements

4.19.1 Where two or more propulsion shafts are installed, each propulsion system is to be provided with shaft brakes and locking arrangements complying with 4.19.2 and 4.19.3.

4.19.2 Shaft brakes for safely and speedily slowing down propulsion shafting systems are to be provided. Each shaft brake is to be capable of restraining the shaft system whilst the ship is being manoeuvred at slow speed and to hold the shaft while the shaft locking gear is being engaged. Shaft brakes are to be capable of functioning in a compartment that is flooded.

4.19.3 Means of safely securing the shafting systems in position are to be provided to permit the shaft to be locked in order to effect repairs whilst the ship is at sea and operating at a speed to maintain steering capability or not less than 7 knots, whichever is the greater.

## Section 5 Control and monitoring

### 5.1 Unattended machinery

5.1.1 Where sterntube lubrication oil systems are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require any manual intervention by the operators, they are to be provided with the alarms indicated in Table 2.5.1.

**Table 2.5.1 Alarms**

| Item                                           | Alarm |
|------------------------------------------------|-------|
| Sterntube lubricating oil tank level           | Low   |
| Sterntube bearing temperature (oil lubricated) | High  |

5.1.2 Where shaft systems incorporate a separate thrust block(s) and lubrication oil systems are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require any manual intervention by the operators, they are to be provided with the alarms indicated in Table 2.5.2.

**Table 2.5.2 Alarms – Thrust block lubrication**

| Item                        | Alarm |
|-----------------------------|-------|
| Lubrication oil flow        | Low   |
| Lubrication oil temperature | High  |
| Bearing temperature         | High  |

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2  
Part 4 Propulsion Devices  
January 2013

---

|             |          |                                  |
|-------------|----------|----------------------------------|
| PART        | 1        | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS             |
| PART        | 2        | PRIME MOVERS                     |
| PART        | 3        | TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS             |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>PROPULSION DEVICES</b>        |
|             |          | <b>Chapter 1 Propellers</b>      |
|             |          | <b>2 Water Jet Systems</b>       |
|             |          | <b>3 Thrusters</b>               |
|             |          | <b>4 Podded Propulsion Units</b> |
| PART        | 5        | SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT    |
| PART        | 6        | STEERING SYSTEMS                 |
| PART        | 7        | PIPING SYSTEMS                   |
| PART        | 8        | PRESSURE PLANT                   |
| PART        | 9        | CONTROL ENGINEERING              |
| PART        | 10       | ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING           |
| PART        | 11       | SUPPORT SYSTEMS                  |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.



**CHAPTER 1 PROPELLERS****Section 1 Scope**

- 1.1 Application
- 1.2 Power ratings
- 1.3 Propeller skew angle definition

**Section 2 Principles**

- 2.1 Design and operating principles
- 2.2 Life cycle principles
- 2.3 Enhanced assessment of manufacturing tolerance principles

**Section 3 Acceptance criteria**

- 3.1 General

**Section 4 Routes to conformance**

- 4.1 General

**Section 5 Plans and particulars**

- 5.1 Particulars to be submitted
- 5.2 Plans
- 5.3 Calculations and information

**Section 6 Materials**

- 6.1 Castings for propellers

**Section 7 Propeller design**

- 7.1 Minimum blade thickness
- 7.2 Fluid channels in propellers and blades
- 7.3 Interference fit of keyless propellers
- 7.4 Keyed propellers pushed up by a hydraulic nut
- 7.5 Propeller boss and hubs

**Section 8 Propeller tolerances**

- 8.1 General
- 8.2 Minimum requirements
- 8.3 Balancing
- 8.4 Enhanced assessment of manufacturing tolerances – Fast ships and craft
- 8.5 Enhanced assessment of propeller manufacturing tolerances – Noise reduced propellers

**Section 9 Piping systems**

- 9.1 General

**Section 10 Control and monitoring**

- 10.1 General
- 10.2 Automatic and remote controls

**CHAPTER 2 WATER JET SYSTEMS****Section 1 Scope**

- 1.1 General

**Section 2 General requirements**

- 2.1 Water jet arrangements
- 2.2 Plans to be submitted
- 2.3 Calculations and information
- 2.4 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)

---

|                |          |                                                      |
|----------------|----------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Design requirements</b>                           |
|                | 3.1      | General                                              |
|                | 3.2      | Shaftline                                            |
|                | 3.3      | Shaft support system and guide vanes                 |
|                | 3.4      | Impeller                                             |
|                | 3.5      | Stator                                               |
|                | 3.6      | Tunnel and securing arrangements                     |
|                | 3.7      | Nozzle/steering arrangements                         |
|                | 3.8      | Bolts                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Piping systems</b>                                |
|                | 4.1      | General                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Control and monitoring</b>                        |
|                | 5.1      | General                                              |
|                | 5.2      | Monitoring and alarms                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Electrical systems</b>                            |
|                | 6.1      | Installation and distribution arrangements           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Inspection, testing and fitting of water jets</b> |
|                | 7.1      | General                                              |
|                | 7.2      | Shop tests and installation of water jet systems     |
|                | 7.3      | Sea trial requirement                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b> | <b>Installation, maintenance and replacement</b>     |
|                | 8.1      | General                                              |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>THRUSTERS</b>                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                          |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                          |
|                | 1.2      | Redundancy                                           |
|                | 1.3      | Inclination of ship                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Particulars to be submitted</b>                   |
|                | 2.1      | Submission of information                            |
|                | 2.2      | Plans                                                |
|                | 2.3      | Calculations and specifications                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Materials</b>                                     |
|                | 3.1      | Azimuth thrusters                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Design and construction</b>                       |
|                | 4.1      | General                                              |
|                | 4.2      | Azimuth thrusters                                    |
|                | 4.3      | Azimuth thrusters with a nozzle                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Piping systems</b>                                |
|                | 5.1      | General                                              |
|                | 5.2      | Azimuth thruster                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Control and monitoring</b>                        |
|                | 6.1      | General                                              |
|                | 6.2      | Monitoring and alarms                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Electrical systems</b>                            |
|                | 7.1      | General                                              |
|                | 7.2      | General arrangements                                 |
|                | 7.3      | Distribution arrangements                            |
|                | 7.4      | Auxiliary supplies                                   |

---

|                |           |                                                             |
|----------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>PODDED PROPULSION UNITS</b>                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>Scope</b>                                                |
|                | 1.1       | Application                                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>General requirements</b>                                 |
|                | 2.1       | Pod arrangement                                             |
|                | 2.2       | Plans and information to be submitted                       |
|                | 2.3       | Pod internal atmospheric conditions                         |
|                | 2.4       | Global loads                                                |
|                | 2.5       | Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA)                   |
|                | 2.6       | Ice Class requirements                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>Functional capability</b>                                |
|                | 3.1       | General                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>Materials</b>                                            |
|                | 4.1       | General                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b>  | <b>Structure design and construction requirements</b>       |
|                | 5.1       | Pod structure                                               |
|                | 5.2       | Hull support structure                                      |
|                | 5.3       | Direct calculations                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b>  | <b>Machinery design and construction requirements</b>       |
|                | 6.1       | General                                                     |
|                | 6.2       | Gearing                                                     |
|                | 6.3       | Propulsion shafting                                         |
|                | 6.4       | Propeller                                                   |
|                | 6.5       | Bearing lubrication system                                  |
|                | 6.6       | Steering system                                             |
|                | 6.7       | Ventilation and cooling systems                             |
|                | 6.8       | Pod drainage requirements                                   |
|                | 6.9       | Hydraulic actuating systems                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b>  | <b>Electrical equipment</b>                                 |
|                | 7.1       | General                                                     |
|                | 7.2       | Slip rings                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b>  | <b>Control engineering arrangements</b>                     |
|                | 8.1       | General                                                     |
|                | 8.2       | Monitoring and alarms                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b>  | <b>Testing and trials</b>                                   |
|                | 9.1       | General                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>Installation, maintenance and replacement procedures</b> |
|                | 10.1      | General                                                     |



*Section*

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **Principles**
- 3 **Acceptance criteria**
- 4 **Routes to conformance**
- 5 **Plans and particulars**
- 6 **Materials**
- 7 **Propeller design**
- 8 **Propeller tolerances**
- 9 **Piping systems**
- 10 **Control and monitoring**

## ■ Section 1

### Scope

#### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter defines the requirements for the design and service life of marine propellers for naval ships and is to be read in conjunction with the General Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems in Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2.

1.1.2 The scope of this Chapter includes propellers for main propulsion, the support arrangements, and the controls and systems necessary to maintain operation and functionality of the propeller. The contents are in respect of mechanical integrity of the propeller, control and monitoring systems and other support critical systems.

1.1.3 Marine propellers utilised for propulsion purposes are within the Mobility category as defined in Pt 1, Ch 1.3.

1.1.4 With the exception of the requirements of Section 8, this Chapter is applicable to fully immersed propellers that are non-ducted. The propellers may be non-cavitating, partially cavitating or supercavitating.

1.1.5 Propeller designs for applications other than those specified in 1.1.4 will be specially considered.

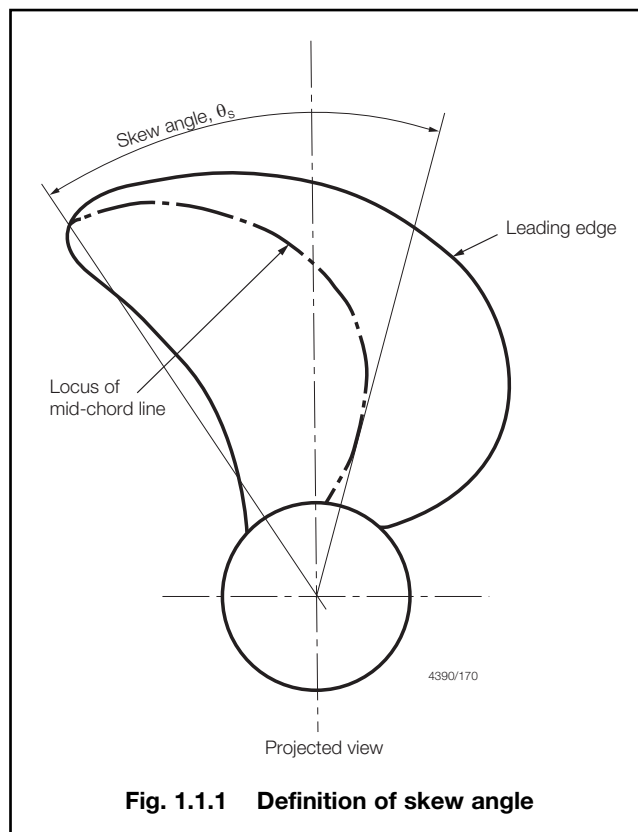
1.1.6 See Pt 1, Ch 2,12 for construction, installation and testing requirements.

#### 1.2 Power ratings

1.2.1 In this Chapter where the dimensions of any particular components are determined from shaft power,  $P$ , in kW, and revolutions per minute,  $R$ , the values to be used are those defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.3.

#### 1.3 Propeller skew angle definition

1.3.1 The maximum skew angle of a propeller blade is defined as the angle, in projected view of the blade, between a line drawn through the blade geometric tip and the shaft centreline and a second line through the shaft centreline which acts as a tangent to the locus of the mid-points of the helical blade sections, see Fig. 1.1.1.



**Fig. 1.1.1 Definition of skew angle**

## ■ Section 2

### Principles

#### 2.1 Design and operating principles

2.1.1 Marine propellers are to be designed in accordance with user defined operating and performance criteria, taking account of ship type and service operating envelope. In multi-screw ships, consideration is to be given to operating modes where one or more propeller is out of service.

2.1.2 Marine propellers are to be capable of continuous operation between the maximum and minimum output power at specified operating conditions, see Pt 1, Ch 2,4 and within the operational service profile required by 5.2.2 in this Chapter.

# Propellers

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 1

Sections 2 to 5

2.1.3 Marine propellers are to be designed and installed such that degradation or failure of any other propulsion system will not render the propeller inoperable.

2.1.4 Marine propellers are to be designed and installed such that power transmission can be maintained in the event of a single failure in an operational sub-system.

2.1.5 The propeller is to be capable of operating within defined vibration, cyclic or other loads during its service life.

2.1.6 Controllable pitch propellers shall be designed so that all blades are interchangeable and will fit into any blade seat on the hub.

## 2.2 Life cycle principles

2.2.1 Propellers are to be operated and maintained such that the required performance, integrity and reliability can be achieved throughout the life of the ship.

2.2.2 To demonstrate continued compliance with the classification provisions for engineering systems (see Pt 1, Ch 1.2.1.1), surveys are to be carried out in accordance with the Regulations.

## 2.3 Enhanced assessment of manufacturing tolerance principles

2.3.1 Where the design of a propeller has used enhanced assessment methods for manufacturing tolerances as described in 8.4 and 8.5, the ship will be eligible for the optional machinery class notation **AP1** or **AP2** as applicable. These optional class notations may be applied where the Owner/Operator requires detailed knowledge of a propeller's manufacturing tolerances and where noise or the effects of cavitation are required to be minimised for anticipated service conditions.

## Section 3 Acceptance criteria

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 Conformance with the performance criteria, together with any specific requirements of the applicable Rules, standards and legislation is to be demonstrated by the propeller manufacturer, shipbuilder and Navy/Operator to the satisfaction of Lloyd's Register (LR).

3.1.2 For propellers, the applicable Rules and Standards for classification are:

- (a) LR *Rules for the Classification of Naval Ships*.
- (b) ISO 484/1 Shipbuilding – Ship Screw Propellers – Manufacturing Tolerances, Part 1: *Propellers of Diameter greater than 2,5 m*.

- (c) ISO 484/2 Shipbuilding – Ship Screw Propellers – Manufacturing Tolerances, Part 2: *Propellers of Diameter between 0,8 and 2,5 m inclusive*.
- (d) Requirements of the Naval Authority, see 3.1.3.
- (e) Other specific Owner requirements. These are to be identified before commencement of design review or construction.
- (f) LR Quality Scheme for Machinery.

Where it is proposed to use manufacturing tolerances other than those stated in the ISO Standards, these are to be agreed between the manufacturer and the Owner and advised to LR.

3.1.3 Where LR is acting on behalf of the Naval Authority, any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority are to be identified and advised to LR.

## Section 4 Routes to conformance

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Documents relevant to the design, construction, installation, testing and operation of propellers are:

- (a) LR's Rules for Propellers; see Sections 5 to 10 of this Chapter and Pt 1, Ch 2.12.
- (b) The propeller manufacturer's recommendations.

4.1.2 The overall performance of installed propellers is to be demonstrated for conformance with the performance criteria specified. If necessary, these tests may be carried out in conjunction with the ship's operational pattern.

## Section 5 Plans and particulars

### 5.1 Particulars to be submitted

5.1.1 Particulars of the propellers are to be submitted with the plans, in triplicate, as described in 5.2 to 5.3.

### 5.2 Plans

5.2.1 Plans of the propeller, together with the following particulars are to be submitted:

- (a) Maximum blade thickness of the expanded cylindrical section considered, in mm, excluding any allowance for fillet,  $T$ , in mm.
- (b) Maximum shaft power (see Pt 1, Ch 2),  $P$ , in kW.
- (c) Estimated ship speed at design loaded draught in the free running condition at maximum shaft power and corresponding revolutions per minute (see (b) and (d)).
- (d) Revolutions per minute of the propeller at maximum power,  $R$ .
- (e) Propeller diameter,  $D$ , in metres.

- (f) Blade section nose-tail pitch at 25 per cent radius (for solid propellers only),  $P_{0,25}$ , in metres.
- (g) Blade section nose-tail pitch at 35 per cent radius (for controllable pitch propellers only),  $P_{0,35}$ , in metres.
- (h) Blade section nose-tail pitch at 60 per cent radius,  $P_{0,6}$ , in metres.
- (j) Blade section nose-tail pitch at 70 per cent radius,  $P_{0,7}$ , in metres.
- (k) Length of blade section of the expanded cylindrical section at 25 per cent radius (for solid propellers only),  $L_{0,25}$ , in mm.
- (l) Length of blade section of the expanded cylindrical section at 35 per cent radius (for controllable pitch propellers only),  $L_{0,35}$ , in mm.
- (m) Length of blade section of the expanded cylindrical section at 60 per cent radius,  $L_{0,6}$ , in mm.
- (n) Rake at blade tip measured at shaft axis (backward rake positive, forward rake negative),  $A$ , in mm.
- (o) Number of blades,  $N$ .
- (p) Expanded area ratio,  $B$ .
- (q) Material: type and specified minimum tensile strength.
- (r) Skew angle,  $\theta_s$ , in degrees, see Fig. 1.1.1.
- (s) Connection of propeller to shaft, details of fit, push up, securing.
- (t) Keyed connections details.
- (u) Details of control/hydraulic system and pressures for controllable pitch propeller actuating mechanisms.
- (v) Inertia of propeller assembly, specified either as  $GD^2$  or  $Wk^2$ , in  $\text{kgm}^2$ .
- (w) Total mass of propeller assembly, in kg.

5.2.2 The design operational service profile for the life of the ship is to be submitted. For fixed pitch propellers, this data is to be supplied in terms of a table or histogram showing the proportion of time anticipated to be spent within a particular speed range from zero to full speed. In the case of controllable pitch propellers, the combinator diagram is to be submitted and this is to show the propeller rotational speed, blade pitch angle at  $0,7R$  and power absorbed against the control lever position. Additionally, for these types of propeller the proportion of time planned to be spent at a particular rotational speed, between the minimum and maximum speed ranges, is to be specified in terms of a histogram or table.

5.2.3 For propellers having a skew angle equal or greater than  $50^\circ$ , in addition to the particulars detailed in 5.2.1 and 5.2.2, details are to be submitted of:

- (a) Full blade section details at each radial station defined for manufacture.
- (b) A detailed blade stress computation supported by the following hydrodynamic data for the estimated ahead mean ship effective wake condition and when absorbing full power:
  - (i) Radial distribution of lift and drag coefficients, section inflow velocities and hydrodynamic pitch angles.
  - (ii) Section pressure distributions calculated by either an advised inviscid or viscous procedure.

5.2.4 Where propellers, as defined in 1.1.4, are intended for more than one operating regime, such as towing duties, a detailed blade stress calculation for each operating condition, indicating the rotational and ship speed, is to be submitted for consideration.

5.2.5 Where it is proposed to fit a fixed pitch propeller to the screwshaft without the use of a key, plans of the boss, tapered end of screwshaft, propeller nut and, where applicable, the sleeve, are to be submitted.

5.2.6 Where it is proposed to use a controllable pitch propeller, calculations are to be submitted which demonstrate the design integrity of the pitch control mechanism contained within the hub. Details of the associated piping arrangements are to be submitted. The submission is to include justification for the selection of the associated sealing arrangements within the hub, see 7.5.3.

## 5.3 Calculations and information

5.3.1 In cases where the vessel has been the subject of model wake field tests, a copy of the results is to be submitted together with details of the model dimensions, scale and test conditions.

5.3.2 The following information is to be submitted as applicable:

- (a) For controllable pitch propellers, plans (in diagrammatic form) of the hydraulic systems together with pipe material and working pressures.
- (b) Details of control engineering aspects in accordance with Pt 9, Ch 1.
- (c) Calculations or relevant documentation indicating the suitability of all components for short-term high power operation. Where undertaken, fatigue strength analysis of components indicating a factor of safety of 1,5 at the design loads.
- (d) For cases where the propeller material is not specified in Table 1.6.1, details of the chemical composition, mechanical properties and density are to be provided, together with results of fatigue tests in artificial sea water (3 per cent NaCl) to enable a value for  $U$  to be assigned.

5.3.3 Methods for demonstrating compliance with requirements for class notations **AP1** and **AP2** are to be submitted where applicable.

## Section 6 Materials

### 6.1 Castings for propellers

6.1.1 Castings for propellers and propeller blades are to comply with the requirements of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials). The chemical composition and mechanical properties of steel castings are given in Ch 4,5 of the Rules for Materials and those of the copper alloys are given in Ch 9,1 of the Rules for Materials.

6.1.2 The specified minimum tensile strength of the castings is to be not less than stated in Table 1.6.1. The values of  $U$  in Table 1.6.1 relate to castings of less than 25 tonnes in weight.

**Table 1.6.1 Materials for propellers**

| Material                                            | Specified minimum tensile strength N/mm <sup>2</sup> | G Density g/cm <sup>3</sup> | U Allowable stress N/mm <sup>2</sup> |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Carbon steels                                       | 400                                                  | 7,9                         | 20,6                                 |
| Low alloy steels                                    | 440                                                  | 7,9                         | 20,6                                 |
| 13% chromium stainless steels                       | 540                                                  | 7,7                         | 41                                   |
| Chromium – nickel austenitic stainless steel        | 450                                                  | 7,9                         | 41                                   |
| Duplex stainless steels                             | 590                                                  | 7,8                         | 41                                   |
| Grade Cu 1 Manganese bronze (high tensile brass)    | 440                                                  | 8,3                         | 35                                   |
| Grade Cu 2 Ni-Manganese bronze (high tensile brass) | 440                                                  | 8,3                         | 35                                   |
| Grade Cu 3 Ni-Aluminium bronze                      | 590                                                  | 7,6                         | 53                                   |
| Grade Cu 4 Mn-Aluminium bronze                      | 630                                                  | 7,5                         | 45                                   |

6.1.3 Spheroidal cast iron load transmitting components of controllable pitch mechanisms, are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with Chapter 7 of the Rules for Materials, and have an elongation of not less than 12 per cent.

## Section 7 Propeller design

### 7.1 Minimum blade thickness

7.1.1 For propellers having a skew angle of 25° or less as defined in 1.3.1, the minimum blade thickness,  $T$ , of the propeller blades at 25 per cent radius for solid propellers, 35 per cent radius for controllable pitch propellers, neglecting any increase in each case due to fillets, and at 60 per cent radius, is to be not less than:

$$T = \frac{0,5KVZ}{(0,11ENLU_a - KWZ)} + 2450 \sqrt{\frac{PCM}{RF(0,11ENLU_a - KWZ)}} \text{ mm}$$

where

$L$  =  $L_{0,25}$ ,  $L_{0,35}$ , or  $L_{0,6}$  as appropriate

$$K = \frac{GBR^2 D^3}{673}$$

$G$  = density of the blade material in g/cm<sup>3</sup>, see Table 1.6.1

$U_a$  = design allowable stress in N/mm<sup>2</sup> derived from the allowable stress  $U$ , by the relationship

$$U_a = \phi_u U$$

where

$\phi_u$  is a factor in the range unity to 1,5 and is governed by the design operational profile of the ship. If 50 per cent or more of the design life of the propeller is to be spent operating at powers below  $0,4P$ , the value of  $\phi_u$  is governed by the anticipated design life number of revolutions ( $n$ ) that the propeller will experience within the power range  $0,75P$  to  $P$  of the propulsion machinery. As such, for bronze and stainless steel alloys:

If  $n \leq 10^7$  revolutions  $\phi_u = 1,5$

If  $10^7 < n \leq 10^9$  revolutions  $\phi_u = 3,25 - \frac{\log_{10}(n)}{4}$

If  $n > 10^9$  revolutions  $\phi_u = 1,0$

For other operational profiles, the value of  $\phi_u$  must be specially justified.

When high damping alloys are used,  $\phi_u$  is to be taken as unity for all values of  $n$ .

$U$  = allowable stress in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, see 7.1.2, 7.1.3 and Table 1.6.1

$$E = \frac{\text{actual section modulus}}{0,117^2 L}$$

The coefficient  $Z$  is given by Table 1.7.1.

**Table 1.7.1 Values of  $Z$**

| Per cent radius               | 25  | 35   | 60   |
|-------------------------------|-----|------|------|
| Fixed pitch propellers        | 0,5 | —    | 0,36 |
| Controllable pitch propellers | —   | 0,53 | 0,46 |

For solid propellers at 25 per cent radius:

$$C = 1,04$$

$$F = \frac{P_{0,25}}{D} + 0,70$$



# Propellers

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 1

Section 7

$$M = \lambda_T \left( 1 + \frac{3,75D}{P_{0,7}} \right) + 2,03\lambda_Q \left( \frac{P_{0,25}}{D} \right)$$

For controllable pitch propellers at 35 per cent radius:

$$C = 1,72$$

$$F = \frac{P_{0,35}}{D} + 1,34$$

$$M = \lambda_T \left( 1 + \frac{3,75D}{P_{0,7}} \right) + 1,45\lambda_Q \left( \frac{P_{0,35}}{D} \right)$$

For all propellers at 60 per cent radius:

$$C = 4,17$$

$$F = \frac{P_{0,6}}{D} + 3,75$$

$$M = \lambda_T \left( 1 + \frac{3,75D}{P_{0,7}} \right) + 0,84\lambda_Q \left( \frac{P_{0,6}}{D} \right)$$

The value of  $W$  is to be taken as 0,16 for fixed pitch propellers and 0,12 for controllable pitch propellers.

The parameter  $V$  is the centrifugal bending moment lever acting at each of the Rule stress sections, in mm. For linear distributions of rake along the blade, the value of  $V$  can be determined from the following relationships:

$$V_{0,25} = \frac{A}{3,85F}$$

$$V_{0,35} = \frac{A}{3,23F}$$

$$V_{0,60} = \frac{A}{1,84F}$$

When non-linear distributions of blade rake are used, the value of  $V$  must be calculated individually for each stress section and the supporting calculation submitted along with the other information required in 5.2.1.

For optimum free-running propellers, the values of  $\lambda_T$  and  $\lambda_Q$  can be taken from Table 1.7.2.

**Table 1.7.2 Values of  $\lambda_T$  and  $\lambda_Q$**

| Per cent radius               |             | 25   | 35   | 60   |
|-------------------------------|-------------|------|------|------|
| Fixed pitch propellers        | $\lambda_T$ | 0,45 | —    | 0,14 |
|                               | $\lambda_Q$ | 0,62 | —    | 0,13 |
| Controllable pitch propellers | $\lambda_T$ | —    | 0,38 | 0,15 |
|                               | $\lambda_Q$ | —    | 0,48 | 0,14 |

For non-optimum and tip reduced circulation propellers, the values of the parameters  $\lambda_T$  and  $\lambda_Q$  are to be derived from the following expressions for 25, 35 and 60 per cent Rule radii, as applicable:

$$\lambda_T = \left[ \frac{\int_x^{1,0} F'_T \cdot \xi d\xi}{\int_x^{1,0} F'_T d\xi} - x \right] \cdot \frac{\int_x^{1,0} F'_T d\xi}{\int_{x_h}^{1,0} F'_T d\xi}$$

and

$$\lambda_Q = \frac{\frac{\int_x^{1,0} F'_Q \cdot \xi d\xi}{\int_x^{1,0} F'_Q d\xi} - x}{\frac{\int_x^{1,0} F'_Q \cdot \xi d\xi}{\int_{x_h}^{1,0} F'_Q d\xi}} \cdot \frac{\int_x^{1,0} F'_Q d\xi}{\int_{x_h}^{1,0} F'_Q d\xi}$$

where

$\xi$  = a non-dimensional radius between the integration limits

$x$  = the Rule non-dimensional radius, 0,25, 0,35 or 0,6, whichever is appropriate

$x_h$  = either the boss or hub non-dimensional radius depending on whether a solid or controllable pitch propeller is being considered

$F'_T$  = elemental thrust forces acting on the blade sections

$F'_Q$  = elemental torque forces acting on the blade sections.

**7.1.2** The fillet radius between the root of a blade and the boss of a propeller is to be not less than the Rule thickness of the blade or equivalent at this location. Composite radiused fillets or elliptical fillets which provide a greater effective radius to the blade are acceptable and are to be preferred. Where fillet radii of the required size cannot be provided, the value of  $U$  is to be multiplied by

$$\left( \frac{r}{T} \right)^{0,2}$$

where

$r$  = proposed fillet radius at the root, in mm

$T$  = Rule thickness of the blade at the root, in mm.

Where a propeller has bolted-on blades, consideration is also to be given to the distribution of stress in the palms of the blades. In particular, the fillets of recessed bolt holes and the lands between bolt holes are not to induce stresses which exceed those permitted at the outer end of the fillet radius between the blade and the palm. Counterbored bolt holes in blade flanges are to be provided with adequate fillet radii at the bottom of the counter bore.

**7.1.3** The value  $U$ , when used for determining  $U_a$ , may be increased by 10 per cent for twin screw and outboard propellers of triple screw ships and craft.

**7.1.4** For propellers having skew angles of greater than  $25^\circ$ , but less than  $50^\circ$ , the mid-chord thickness,  $T_{sk0,6}$ , at the 60 per cent radius is to be not less than:

$$T_{sk0,6} = 0,54T_{0,6} \sqrt{(1 + 0,1\theta_s)} \text{ mm}$$

The mid chord thickness,  $T_{sk \text{ root}}$ , at 25 or 35 per cent radius, neglecting any increase due to fillets, is to be not less than:

$$T_{sk \text{ root}} = 0,75T_{\text{root}} \sqrt[4]{(1 + 0,1\theta_s)} \text{ mm}$$

where

$\theta_s$  = proposed skew angle as defined in 1.3.1

$T_{0,6}$  = thickness at 60 per cent radius, calculated by 7.1.1

$T_{\text{root}}$  = thickness at 25 per cent radius or 35 per cent radius, calculated by 7.1.1

The thickness at the remaining radii are to be joined by a fair curve and the sections are to be of suitable aerofoil section.

**7.1.5** Results of detailed calculations, where carried out, are to be submitted.

7.1.6 Where the design of a propeller has been based on analysis of reliable wake survey data in conjunction with a detailed fatigue analysis and is deemed to permit scantlings less than required by 7.1.1 but maintaining the required value of  $U_a$ , a detailed stress analysis for the blades is to be submitted for consideration.

## 7.2 Fluid channels in propellers and blades

7.2.1 Where it is required to emit air or other fluids from the blades of propellers, then the channels conducting the fluid are to be arranged such that they pass through low stressed regions of the blades.

7.2.2 Full details of any fluid channels in the propeller and its blades, including the method of manufacture and the details of any closing plates together with any required welding processes and procedures, are to be submitted for consideration together with supporting stress calculations. Consideration is to be extended to the method of transferring the emission fluid through the propulsion system to the propeller and the safety devices provided to accommodate the effects of a failure of the fluid transfer system.

7.2.3 In cases where it is considered necessary to introduce holes, passing from the suction to pressure surfaces of the blades, in order to control cavitation in the blade root sections, the details of these arrangements, together with supporting calculations, are to be submitted for consideration. Such holes are to be designed with blending radii from the hole to the blade surface but need not be of constant profile. Furthermore, if any throttling or other arrangements are required to be fitted within the holes, full design calculations and fitting details are to be submitted.

## 7.3 Interference fit of keyless propellers

7.3.1 The symbols used in 7.3.2 are defined as follows:

$d_1$  = diameter of the screwshaft cone at the mid-length of the boss or sleeve, in mm

$d_3$  = outside diameter of the boss at its mid-length, in mm

$d_i$  = bore diameter of screwshaft, in mm

$k_3 = \frac{d_3}{d_1}$

$l = \frac{d_i}{d_1}$

$p_1 = \frac{2M}{A_1 \theta_1 V_1} \left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + V_1 \left( \frac{F_1^2}{M^2} + 1 \right)} \right)$

$A_1$  = contact area fitting at screwshaft, in mm<sup>2</sup>

$B_3 = \frac{1}{E_3} \left( \frac{k_3^2 + 1}{k_3^2 - 1} + \nu_3 \right) + \frac{1}{E_1} \left( \frac{1 + l^2}{1 - l^2} - \nu_1 \right)$

$C = 0$  for turbine installations or electric propulsion  
 $= \frac{\text{vibratory torque at the maximum service speed}}{\text{mean torque at the maximum service speed}}$

for oil engine installations

$E_1$  = modulus of elasticity of screwshaft material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$E_3$  = modulus of elasticity of propeller material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$F_1 = \frac{2000Q}{d_1} (1 + C)$

$M$  = propeller thrust, in N

$Q$  = mean torque corresponding to  $P$  and  $R$  as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2, in Nm

$T_1$  = temperature at time of fitting propeller on shaft, in °C

$V_1 = 0,51 \left( \frac{\mu_1}{\theta_1} \right)^2 - 1$

$\alpha_1$  = coefficient of linear expansion of screwshaft material, in mm/mm/°C

$\alpha_3$  = coefficient of linear expansion of propeller material, in mm/mm/°C

$\theta_1$  = taper of the screwshaft cone, but is not to exceed  $\frac{1}{15}$  on the diameter, i.e.  $\theta_1 \leq \frac{1}{15}$

$\mu_1$  = coefficient of friction for fitting of boss assembly on shaft

= 0,13 for oil injection method of fitting

$\nu_1$  = Poisson's ratio for screwshaft material

$\nu_3$  = Poisson's ratio for propeller material.

7.3.2 Where it is proposed to fit a keyless propeller by the oil shrink method, the pull-up,  $\delta$  on the screwshaft is to be not less than:

$\delta = \frac{d_1}{\theta_1} (p_1 B_3 + (\alpha_3 - \alpha_1)(35 - T_1))$  mm

The yield stress or 0,2 per cent proof stress,  $\sigma_o$  of the propeller material is to be not less than:

$\sigma_o = \frac{1,4}{B_3} \left( \frac{\theta_1 \delta_p}{d_1} + T_1 (\alpha_3 - \alpha_1) \right) \frac{\sqrt{3k_3^4 + 1}}{k_3^2 - 1}$  N/mm<sup>2</sup>

where

$\delta_p$  = proposed pull-up at the fitting temperature

The start point load,  $W$ , to determine the actual pull-up is to be not less than:

$W = A_1 \left( 0,002 + \frac{\theta_1}{20} \right) \left( p_1 + \frac{18}{B_3} (\alpha_3 - \alpha_1) \right)$  N

## 7.4 Keyed propellers pushed up by a hydraulic nut

7.4.1 Calculations are to be undertaken to show that the proof stress of the boss material is not exceeded in way of the keyway root fillet radius. In order to reduce the likelihood of fretting, a grip stress of not less than 20 N/mm<sup>2</sup> between boss and shaft is to be achieved.

## 7.5 Propeller boss and hubs

7.5.1 The forward edge of the bore of the propeller boss is to be rounded to a 6 mm radius. In the case of keyed propellers, the length of the forward fitting surface is to be about one diameter.

7.5.2 Drilling holes through propeller bosses is to be avoided, except where it is essential to the design.

7.5.3 The mechanisms contained within the hubs of controllable pitch propellers and their associated piping arrangements are to be designed to be capable of operating within defined vibration, cyclic or other loads during their service life. As such, a factor of safety of 1,5 is to be demonstrated against all modes of failure for components in the pitch control system at full power operating conditions. Similarly, the sealing systems within the hub mechanism are to be selected to provide integrity of operation within defined survey or inspection intervals.

## ■ Section 8 Propeller tolerances

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 This Section applies to conventional fixed and controllable pitch propellers, ducted propellers, super-cavitating and surface piercing propellers.

8.1.2 All propellers are to have manufacturing tolerances specified on the design drawings.

8.1.3 Adequate records defining the manufactured dimensions of the propeller are to be maintained in order that subsequent compliance with the requirements of this Section can be demonstrated.

8.1.4 The fitting of the propeller to the shaft interface is dealt with separately in 7.3 and 7.4.

### 8.2 Minimum requirements

8.2.1 As a minimum requirement for all naval surface ship types, with the exception of work boats and very low performance craft having speeds below 10 knots, the Class 1 requirements of the ISO 484/1 or 484/2 specifications are to be applied.

8.2.2 For work boats and very low performance craft having speeds below 10 knots, the Class 2 requirements of the ISO 484/1 or 484/2 specifications may be applied.

### 8.3 Balancing

8.3.1 After the production processes and assembly, where appropriate, have been completed, the propeller must be statically balanced by an approved method, details of which are to be submitted.

8.3.2 For fixed pitch propellers, the propeller and cone must each be statically balanced according to the requirements of Table 1.8.1.

**Table 1.8.1 Balancing requirements**

| Propeller rotational speed | Balance criterion                          |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Up to 200 rpm              | $\pm 0,225 \text{ kgf.m/tonne}$            |
| 200 to 400 rpm             | $\pm \frac{9000}{R^2} \text{ kgf.m/tonne}$ |

8.3.3 For controllable pitch propellers the blades, hubs and fairing cones are to be balanced separately. For propellers having rotational speeds between 200 and 400 rpm, the maximum allowable total imbalance is  $\pm 15000/R^2 \text{ kgf.m/tonne}$ . For propellers having rotational speeds less than 200 rpm, the maximum allowable total imbalance is  $\pm 0,375 \text{ kgf.m/tonne}$ .

8.3.4 For propeller rotational speeds greater than 400 rpm, special consideration will be given to the balancing method, whether it should incorporate dynamic effect and the balance limits. Dynamic balancing tests may be required for high rotational speed propellers where significant out-of-balance couples can be exerted on the shafting. Such tests are to be agreed between the manufacturer and Owner and advised to LR.

### 8.4 Enhanced assessment of manufacturing tolerances – Fast ships and craft

8.4.1 For ships and craft having displacements below 500 tonnes and speeds in excess of 25 knots that require the enhanced assessment of propeller manufacturing tolerances notation **AP1**, the Class S requirements of the ISO 484/1 or 484/2 specifications are to be applied in addition to 8.4.2 to 8.4.5.

8.4.2 In addition to the leading edge templates required by 8.4.1, radial root fillet templates are to be provided at 0 per cent, 5 per cent, 10 per cent and 20 per cent of the chordal length from the leading edge in the blade roots.

8.4.3 A mid-fillet, in the radial sense, blade leading edge chordal template is to be provided. This template is to define the root fillet geometry from the leading edge to the 20 per cent chordal location from the leading edge and is to be based on the designed back and face surfaces of the propeller blade. The manufactured blade profile is to be demonstrated to lie within a tolerance band of  $\pm 0,5 \text{ mm}$ .

8.4.4 The diameter of the propeller boss is to be checked at four equi-distant axial stations along the boss length. These stations are to include the forward and aft faces of the propeller boss. The diameters measured at the four axial stations of the boss must be shown to lie within  $\pm 1 \text{ mm}$  from the design value.

# Propellers

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 1

Sections 8, 9 & 10

8.4.5 If the design incorporates through blade penetrations, two plug templates, one in the radial and the other in the chordal direction, must be provided for each type of penetration so as to define the design penetration to blade surface geometry. The manufactured intersection geometry must be shown to lie within  $\pm 0,5$  mm of the design intent. Additionally, the tolerance for the surface finish of the intersection geometry shall be  $3 \mu\text{m Ra}$ .

## 8.5 Enhanced assessment of propeller manufacturing tolerances – Noise reduced propellers

8.5.1 For ships having noise reduced propellers and requiring the enhanced assessment of propeller manufacturing tolerances notation **AP2**, the Class S requirements of the ISO 484/1 or 484/2 specifications are to be applied in addition to 8.5.2 to 8.5.5.

8.5.2 The requirements of Table 1.8.2 are to be satisfactorily achieved.

**Table 1.8.2 Manufacturing tolerances**

| Dimension                                                                    | Tolerance                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Angular spacing between blade reference lines at all radii                   | $\pm 0,25$ degrees                                                    |
| Difference between blade reference line and section leading or trailing edge | $\pm 0,5\%$ of the chord length with a minimum value of $\pm 1$ mm    |
| Fit of template inside the hook of the leading edge                          | + 0 mm<br>– 0,2 mm                                                    |
| Fit of face templates and outside the hook of leading edge templates         | + 0 mm<br>– 0,5 mm                                                    |
| Blade axial position                                                         | $\pm 0,25\%$ of propeller diameter with a minimum value of $\pm 5$ mm |
| Boss diameters                                                               | $\pm 0,5$ mm                                                          |
| Boss length                                                                  | $\pm 0,5$ mm                                                          |
| Surface finish                                                               | $<1,6 \mu\text{m}$                                                    |

8.5.3 In order to adequately control the blade shape, the local pitch errors of any two consecutive measurements are not to differ by more than half the local pitch tolerance envelope.

8.5.4 To control the shape of the pressure face of the blade, the algebraic sum of the local pitch errors of any two consecutive measurements is not to exceed 75 per cent of the local pitch tolerance envelope.

8.5.5 To limit chordwise deviations of the suction surface of the blade, local thickness errors are not to differ by more than half the thickness tolerance envelope between any two consecutive measurements.

## Section 9 Piping systems

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 The piping system for a controllable pitch propeller is to comply with the general design requirements given in Pt 7, Ch 3.

9.1.2 The specific requirements for lubricating hydraulic oil systems and standby arrangements are given in Pt 7, Ch 3.

9.1.3 The hydraulic power operating systems are to be provided with arrangements to maintain the cleanliness of the hydraulic fluid, taking into consideration the type and design of the hydraulic system.

## Section 10 Control and monitoring

### 10.1 General

10.1.1 Control and monitoring are to comply with the requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1.

### 10.2 Automatic and remote controls

10.2.1 Where controllable pitch propellers are fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions they do not require any manual intervention by the operators, they are to be provided with the alarms and safety arrangements required by 10.2.2, 10.2.3 and Table 1.10.1.

**Table 1.10.1 Alarms**

| Item                                                                                         | Alarm    | Note                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hydraulic system pressure                                                                    | Low      | –                                                                                         |
| Hydraulic oil supply tank level                                                              | Low      | –                                                                                         |
| Hydraulic oil temperature                                                                    | High     | Where an oil cooler is fitted                                                             |
| Power supply to the control system between the remote control station and hydraulic actuator | Failure  | Failure of any power supply to a control system is to operate an audible and visual alarm |
| Propulsion motor                                                                             | Overload | See Pt 9, Ch 1                                                                            |

10.2.2 For controllable pitch propellers for main propulsion, a standby or alternative power source of actuating medium for controlling the pitch of the propeller blades is to be provided. Automatic start of the standby pump supplying hydraulic power for pitch control is to be provided.

# Propellers

## Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 1

*Section 10*

---

10.2.3 Controllable pitch propellers are to be provided with an indication of shaft speed, an indication of direction, an indication representative of the magnitude of thrust and an indication of propeller pitch as a measure of the propeller blade or actuator movement at each station from which it is possible to control shaft speed or propeller pitch.

---



# Water Jet Systems

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 2

Sections 1 & 2

## Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **General requirements**
- 3 **Design requirements**
- 4 **Piping systems**
- 5 **Control and monitoring**
- 6 **Electrical systems**
- 7 **Inspection, testing and fitting of water jets**
- 8 **Installation, maintenance and replacement**

## ■ Section 1 Scope

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 For the purposes of these Rules, a water jet propulsion unit is described as a machine which takes in water, by means of a suitable inlet and conduit, and accelerates the mass of water using an impeller and nozzle to form a jet propulsion system. The water jet system comprises the unit and its associated actuation and control devices. The detail of the prime mover is excluded but not its effect on the water jet system.

1.1.2 This Chapter defines the requirements for the design and service life of marine water jet propulsion systems and is to be read in conjunction with the requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems in Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2.

1.1.3 The requirements for a fixed or steerable water jet propulsion system rated at 500 kW and above, which is integral with the ship's hull structure and forms a means of main propulsion, are detailed in this Chapter. This includes support arrangements, controls and the systems necessary to maintain operation and functionality of the water jet unit.

1.1.4 These requirements relate to water jets driven by axial or mixed flow pumps. Where units driven by radial flow pumps or inducers are proposed, details are to be submitted for consideration.

## ■ Section 2 General requirements

### 2.1 Water jet arrangements

2.1.1 In general, for a ship to be assigned an unrestricted service notation, a minimum of two water jet systems is to be provided where these form the sole means of propulsion. For ships where a single water jet system is the sole means of propulsion or steering, a detailed engineering and safety justification is to be evaluated by LR, see 2.3.22. This evaluation process will include a risk assessment analysis, using a recognised technique, to verify that sufficient levels of redundancy and monitoring are incorporated in the water jet unit's essential support systems and operating equipment.

2.1.2 Water jet propulsion units are to be capable of continuous operation between their maximum and minimum output power rating at specified operating conditions, see Pt 1, Ch 2,4, and within the operational service profiles defined by 2.3.11 and 2.3.12.

2.1.3 It is the Shipbuilder's responsibility to ensure that all of the installed equipment is suitable for operation in the location and under the environmental conditions defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4. Where anticipated environmental conditions are outside these limits or where additional conditions are to be considered, such as vibration and impulsive accelerations, requirements and details of compliance are to be submitted to LR.

### 2.2 Plans to be submitted

2.2.1 Plans, in triplicate, and information as detailed below and in 2.3 and 2.4, are to be submitted for consideration.

2.2.2 General arrangement plans showing details of the following:

- (a) Shafting assembly indicating bearing positions;
- (b) Steering assembly;
- (c) Reversing assembly;
- (d) Shaft sealing arrangement assembly;
- (e) Longitudinal section of the complete water jet unit.

2.2.3 Detailed and dimensioned plans indicating scantlings, materials of construction and, where applicable, surface finish of the following:

- (a) Arrangement of the system, including the intended method of attachment to the hull and building-in, tunnel geometry, shell openings, method of stiffening, reinforcement, etc;
- (b) All torque transmitting components, including the shafting system, impeller and stator if fitted;
- (c) Steering components, together with a description and line diagram of the control circuit. This is to include steerable exit water jet nozzles, where fitted;
- (d) Components of the retractable buckets where these are used for providing astern thrust;
- (e) The bearing or bearings absorbing the thrust and supporting the impeller, together with the method of lubrication;
- (f) Details of any shafting support or guide vanes used in the water jet system.

2.2.4 Schematic plans of the lubrication and hydraulics required for steering/reversing systems, together with pipe material, relief valves and the working pressures required.

## 2.3 Calculations and information

2.3.1 Strength calculations based on fatigue considerations incorporating the maximum continuous torque rating and the most 'onerous' operating condition, see 2.3.12, including any short-term high power operation, and including the effects of mean and fluctuating loads, transitory loadings, residual stress allowances and stress raisers, for the following components:

- (a) Impeller, stator and any bolting arrangements supporting propulsion or steering loads;
- (b) Shaft supports and coupling arrangements;
- (c) Inlet guide vanes, if fitted;
- (d) Steering components, including the lugs of steerable nozzles, where fitted;
- (e) Retractable buckets and associated mechanisms which are used to provide astern thrust. A calculation of the hydrodynamic transient loads is to be made for each design and is to include the full ahead to full astern condition. The calculation procedure used is to be supported, where possible, with full scale or model test data, or satisfactory service experience, to validate the design method.

2.3.2 Calculations supporting the connection method of the impeller to the shaft, including details of the fit, push-up, securing, bolting arrangements, etc. In addition, where lengths of shafts are joined using couplings of the shrunk element type, full particulars of the method of achieving the grip force.

2.3.3 Calculations relating to the design of the shaftline as evidence of compliance with Pt 3, Ch 2.

2.3.4 Torsional vibration calculations of the complete dynamic system, in accordance with the relevant requirements included in Pt 5, Ch 1.

2.3.5 Shaft lateral vibration calculations, where required by Pt 5, Ch 3.

2.3.6 Calculations of the tunnel strength and supporting structure.

2.3.7 A calculation to determine the stresses within the impeller blade.

2.3.8 A calculation of the blade natural frequency for the impeller blades.

2.3.9 A calculation of the relative blade passing frequency between the rotor and stator blades.

2.3.10 The value of the fluctuating stresses during one revolution of the impeller and from transient loadings.

2.3.11 Details of the power/speed range of operation, indicating the maximum continuous torque rating, together with the associated thrusts; this information may be presented in the form of a characteristic curve for the water jet.

2.3.12 The water jet thrust for the assessment of the strength condition being considered is to be as follows:

- (a) For ships which are intended to operate predominantly in a free-running condition and at steady service conditions, the water jet thrust is to correspond to the absorption of the maximum continuous shaft power and corresponding revolutions per minute, giving the maximum torque for which the shaft system is approved.
- (b) For ships which are designed for several operating conditions, the maximum thrust associated with these conditions and the absorption of the corresponding power, in addition to the maximum continuous powering condition, are to be used in the calculation.
- (c) The justification for the thrust selected is to be submitted for consideration in the approval process and this is to include the ship type and the ship speed at the conditions considered.

2.3.13 A justification that the water jet system will meet the self-priming criteria, see 3.1.6.

2.3.14 Specifications of materials and NDE procedures for components essential for propulsion and steering operation and, in the case of the impeller and stator, the yield strength and the fatigue characteristics of the material intended for their manufacture.

2.3.15 A detailed weld specification where an impeller has welded blades.

2.3.16 Full details of the means of corrosion protection in the case of carbon or carbon manganese steel shafts. Alternatively, where it is proposed to use composite shafts, details of the connections at flanges, materials, resin, lay-up procedures, quality control procedures and documentary evidence of fatigue endurance strength are to be provided.

2.3.17 Dry impeller mass and polar moment of inertia.

2.3.18 The prime mover type and designation.

2.3.19 Details of the control engineering aspects of the system design, in accordance with Pt 9, Ch 1.

2.3.20 The tolerance specification, agreed between the manufacturer and the Shipbuilder or Owner, to which the components of the unit are to be manufactured, is to be defined together with a justification.

2.3.21 Details of the water jet's loading reactions, together with the positions of application within the hull; they are to include the maximum applied thrust, tunnel pressures, moments and forces imposed on the ship.

2.3.22 The water jet unit's rated flow and head.



2.3.23 Where an engineering and safety justification report is required, the following supporting information is to be submitted:

- A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis report (FMEA), see 2.4.
- Design standards and assumptions.
- Limiting operating parameters.
- A statement and evidence in respect of the anticipated reliability of any non-duplicated components.

2.3.24 Recommended installation, inspection, maintenance and component replacement procedures. These are to include any in-water engineering procedures, where recommended by the water jet manufacturer.

2.3.25 All transient loads which the steering unit is likely to experience from manoeuvring, accelerating, decelerating and the sea conditions.

## **2.4 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)**

2.4.1 An FMEA is to be carried out where a single water jet system is the ship's sole means of propulsion, see 2.2.3. The FMEA is to identify components where a single failure could cause the loss of all propulsion and/or steering capability and the proposed arrangements for preventing and mitigating the effects of such a failure.

2.4.2 The FMEA is to be carried out using the format presented in Table 2.17.1 in Pt 1, Ch 2,17 or an equivalent format that addresses the same reliability issues. Analyses in accordance with IEC 60812 *Analysis for System Reliability – Procedures for Failure Mode and Effects Analysis*, or the IMO *Code of Safety for High Speed Craft, 2000, Annex 4 – Procedures for Failure Mode and Effects Analysis*, would be acceptable.

2.4.3 The FMEA is to be organised in terms of equipment and function. The effects of item failures at a stated level and at higher levels are to be analysed, to determine these effects on the system as a whole. Actions for mitigation of the effects of failure are to be determined, see 2.4.1.

2.4.4 The FMEA is to:

- (a) identify the equipment or sub-system and mode of operation;
- (b) identify potential failure modes and their causes;
- (c) evaluate the effects on the system of each failure mode;
- (d) identify measures for reducing the risks associated with each failure mode;
- (e) identify measures for preventing failure; and
- (f) identify trials and testing necessary to prove conclusions.

2.4.5 At sub-system level it is acceptable, for the purposes of these Rules, to consider failure of equipment items and their functions. It is not required that the failure of components within that equipment item be analysed, see Pt 1, Ch 2,17.1.5.

2.4.6 Where an FMEA is used for consideration of systems that depend on software-based functions for control or co-ordination, the analysis is to investigate failure of the functions rather than a specific analysis of the software code itself.

## ■ **Section 3** **Design requirements**

### **3.1 General**

3.1.1 The arrangement of water jet units is to be such that the ship can be satisfactorily manoeuvred to a declared performance capability. The operating conditions covered are to include the following:

- (a) Maximum continuous shaft power/speed to the impeller in the ahead condition at the declared steering angles and conditions.
- (b) Manoeuvring speeds of the impeller shaft and/or reversing mechanism in the ahead and astern direction at the declared steering angles and sea conditions.
- (c) The ability of the machinery to reverse the direction of thrust of the propeller in sufficient time, under normal manoeuvring conditions, and so bring the ship to rest from maximum service speed. Results of the trials are to be recorded.
- (d) Astern running conditions for the ship.

3.1.2 The mean loadings are those loadings induced by the water jet absorbing the mean torque supplied by the prime mover.

3.1.3 Fluctuating loads are defined as those loads which occur during one revolution of the impeller due to cyclic variations. For example, the spatial flow variations and torsional vibration at nominally steady state operating conditions.

3.1.4 Transient loads are defined as those loadings resulting from acceleration and deceleration of the ship, manoeuvring, seaway conditions and other similar forms of loading. This also includes any significant back-pressure effects developed from the operation of the reversing bucket, if fitted.

3.1.5 To ensure self-priming of the water jet unit, the shaft centreline of the unit is to be lower than the light draught static waterline of the ship. In cases where this is either impracticable or undesirable, the distance of the impeller shaft centreline above the ship's light draught waterline is to be less than or equal to 10 per cent of the pump inlet diameter.

3.1.6 Provision is to be made to allow for the in-service visual inspection of the complete blade surfaces of both the impeller and stator blades, using either a direct visual or borescope inspection technique.

## 3.2 Shaftline

3.2.1 The diameter of the shaftline components is to comply with Pt 3, Ch 2. For calculation purposes, the shaft carrying the impeller is to be taken as equivalent to a screw-shaft.

3.2.2 Where it is proposed to use carbon or carbon manganese steel shafts which may be in contact with sea-water, these are to be protected.

3.2.3 The diameter of unprotected screwshafts of corrosion-resistant material is not to be less than that given in Pt 3, Ch 2,4.4.7.

3.2.4 The use of composite shafts is permitted, see 2.3.16.

3.2.5 Where lengths of shafts are joined using couplings of the shrunk element type, a factor of safety, based upon the mean plus the vibratory and transient torques, against slippage of 2,0 is to be achieved for couplings which are located inboard and 2,5 for couplings which are located outboard.

3.2.6 Where shaftline components are bolted together, a factor of safety of 1,5 is to be achieved for the design of the bolted connection when considered in the context of the mean, fluctuating and transitory loadings.

3.2.7 If a keyed fitting of the impeller to the shaft is contemplated, the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2,4.12 are to be satisfied.

3.2.8 Where it is proposed to fit a keyless impeller, the fitting is to comply with the requirements of Pt 5, Ch 7,3.2 of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Ships*, as applicable, excluding the requirements for Ice Class. Use of the words 'propeller' and 'screwshaft' are to be taken as meaning 'impeller' and 'impellershaft', respectively.

## 3.3 Shaft support system and guide vanes

3.3.1 In cases where the shaft requires support from the tunnel walls ahead of the impeller or, alternatively, where guide vanes are required to assist the flow around a bend in the ducting system, the supports or guide vanes are to be suitably aligned to the flow and have suitably rounded leading and trailing edges or be of an aerofoil section.

3.3.2 In general, the fillet radius should be greater than or equal to the maximum thickness of the vane or support at that location. Smaller radii may be considered, for which the results of an approved measurement programme or calculation procedure are to be submitted. In all cases, a factor of safety of at least 1,5 is to be demonstrated for the maximum designed operating conditions.

3.3.3 A facility for the inspection of the supports or guide vanes is to be provided which will allow either direct visual or borescope inspection of these components and their transition to other members.

## 3.4 Impeller

3.4.1 A calculation to determine the stresses within the impeller blades is to be carried out, which takes into account the mean blade loading, fluctuating loadings, transient loads and centrifugal force. The computations may be accomplished by either classical methods or numerical analysis. Designs of water jet systems which have been based on a combination of computational fluid dynamics and finite element methods will be considered. However, it will be necessary to demonstrate to the satisfaction of LR that the formulation of the methods used has been correlated with previous full scale measurement or other calculation experience.

3.4.2 For the purposes of the calculation required by this sub-Section, the fluctuating stresses during one revolution of the impeller are to be taken as 20 per cent of the maximum mean stress, and the stresses from transient loadings are to be taken as 15 per cent of the hydrodynamic mean stress, unless otherwise specified by the designer.

3.4.3 The fatigue assessment of the impeller blades is to be based on the stress in the root sections, excluding the influence of the blade root fillets. This assessment is to include the following components:

- the maximum stresses derived from the mean loading, including both the hydrodynamic and centrifugal components;
- the amplitude of the fluctuating stresses during one revolution of the impeller;
- the stresses derived from transient loading and an allowance for any residual stresses in the material.

It is permissible to combine the variable components of stress in a linear fatigue damage accumulation assessment procedure. A factor of safety of at least 1,5 against fatigue failure is to be demonstrated for the maximum continuous rating condition or any other more onerous condition, see 3.1.1.

3.4.4 In general, the fillet radius is to be greater than the maximum thickness of the impeller blade at that location. Composite radiused fillets or elliptical fillets which provide an improved stress concentration factor are preferred.

3.4.5 Where an impeller has bolted-on blades, consideration is to be given to the distribution of stress in the palms of the blade and in the boss and bolting arrangements.

3.4.6 Where an impeller has welded blades, the welds are to be of the full penetration type or of equivalent strength. Where laser welding is to be used, details are to be submitted for consideration.

3.4.7 The blades are to be provided with hydrodynamically faired leading and trailing edges which may be either of simple radius or of a more complex aerofoil edge form. The tip clearance, whilst being kept to a minimum for hydrodynamic purposes, is to be sufficient to allow for any transient vibrational behaviour, axial shaft movement or differential thermal expansion.

# Water Jet Systems

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 2

Section 3

3.4.8 A calculation of the blade natural frequency for the impeller blades is to be undertaken. The fundamental natural frequency in water of the blade is to be shown to lie outside any expected excitation frequencies within a speed range of the water jet unit and up to 10 per cent above the maximum impeller speed.

## 3.5 Stator

3.5.1 The stator blades, where fitted, are to be designed to be capable of withstanding the combined hydrodynamic mean, fluctuating, transient and mechanical loads, including any loads transmitted via shaft bearings, developed by the unit and reacted through the blades when the impeller is absorbing full power. Consideration is to be given to situations when the vessel is either free running or in a condition specified by 3.1.1 or undergoing stopping, accelerating or decelerating manoeuvres. A factor of safety against mechanical failure by yielding of the blades of 1,5 is to be demonstrated.

3.5.2 In general, the fillet radius is to be greater than the maximum thickness of the blade at that location. Composite radiused fillets or elliptical fillets which provide improved stress concentration factors are preferred.

3.5.3 If the stator ring comprises a segmented assembly, consideration is also to be given to the distribution of stress in the various adjacent members of the overall assembly.

3.5.4 A calculation of the relative blade-passing frequency between the rotor and stator blades is to demonstrate that this does not coincide with the natural frequency of the stator blades over the speed range of the water jet unit and up to 10 per cent above maximum impeller speed.

3.5.5 The stator blades are to be provided with hydrodynamically faired leading edges which may have either a simple radius or a more complex aerofoil edge form.

3.5.6 Where the stator blading assembly forms part of the nozzle, the requirements of 3.7 are to be considered in association with those for the stator assembly.

## 3.6 Tunnel and securing arrangements

3.6.1 The tunnel is to be adequately supported, framed and fully integrated into the hull structure. The critical locations and integrity of the supports and framing are to be as specified in the FMEA and agreed by the Shipbuilder and LR.

3.6.2 The tunnel and supporting structure scantlings are to be not less than the Rule requirements for the surrounding structure. The strength of the hull structure in way of tunnel(s) is to be maintained. The structure is to be adequately reinforced and compensated as necessary. All openings are to be suitably reinforced and have radiused corners.

3.6.3 Consideration is to be given to providing the inlet to the tunnel with a suitable guard to prevent the ingress of large objects into the rotodynamic machinery. The dimensions of this guard, if fitted, are to strike a balance between undue efficiency loss due to flow restriction and viscous losses, the size of object allowed to pass and the susceptibility to clog with weed and other flow-restricting matter.

3.6.4 The inlet profile of the tunnel is to be designed so as to provide a smooth uptake of the water over the range of vessel operating trims and avoid significant separation and/or cavitation of the flow which may then pass downstream into the rotating machinery.

3.6.5 Design consideration is to take account of pressures which could develop as a result of a duct blockage, as well as in relation to the axial location of rotating parts.

3.6.6 The strength of the tunnel and supporting structure is to be examined by direct calculation procedures.

## 3.7 Nozzle/steering arrangements

3.7.1 In general, the steering systems and components are to comply with the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1.

3.7.2 Nozzles can be either of a fixed or steerable form. The design of the nozzle is to take into account fully the change in pressure distribution along its inner surface, together with the other mechanical loads (e.g., stator assembly loads) and transient loads caused by the flow directing attachments which may be reacted through the body of the nozzle. In this analysis, the changes to the pressure distribution caused by transient manoeuvres are to be considered.

3.7.3 In addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, the steering mechanism and bucket are to be capable of maintaining the manoeuvrability of the ship in terms of turning circle, zig-zag and stopping requirements within the limits defined by IMO Resolution MSC.137(76), *Standards for Ship Manoeuvrability*.

3.7.4 Consideration is to be given to all transient loads which the steering unit is likely to experience from manoeuvring, accelerating, decelerating and the sea conditions.

3.7.5 The nozzle/bucket is to be given mechanical protection by the Shipbuilder from other impact damage such as collision.

## 3.8 Bolts

3.8.1 Detailed consideration and analysis are to be given to essential bolting arrangements in critical locations, as specified in the FMEA, and where indicated by the manufacturer or Shipbuilder and agreed by LR. These are to include bolts used in the securing of blades or guide vanes, assembly of the unit in the ship and any conduit components.

# Water Jet Systems

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 2

Sections 4, 5, 6 & 7

## Section 4 Piping systems

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 The piping systems for a water jet unit are to comply with the general requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1.

4.1.2 Lubricating and hydraulic oil systems and standby arrangements are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 3; in addition, steering hydraulic systems are to comply with the applicable requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1.

## Section 5 Control and monitoring

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 In addition to this Section, the control engineering systems are to comply with Pt 9, Ch 1.

5.1.2 For water jets used as the only means of propulsion and steering, a standby or alternative power source for the actuating device that controls the angular position and/or the reversing angle is to be provided. Automatic start of the standby pump supplying hydraulic power for steering and reversing is to be provided.

5.1.3 Means are to be provided at each control station to stop each water jet.

### 5.2 Monitoring and alarms

5.2.1 In addition to the requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, alarms and monitoring requirements are indicated in 5.2.2 to 5.2.4 and Table 2.5.1.

5.2.2 An indication of the angular position of the nozzle is to be provided at each station from which it is possible to control the direction of thrust from the units.

5.2.3 An indication of both the required and actual reversing bucket position is to be provided at each station from which it is possible to control the reversal of thrust.

5.2.4 All alarms associated with water jet unit faults are to be indicated individually at the control stations and in accordance with the alarm system specified by Pt 9, Ch 1.

**Table 2.5.1 Alarms**

| Item                            | Alarm | Note                                                       |
|---------------------------------|-------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hydraulic system pressure       | Low   | —                                                          |
| Hydraulic oil supply tank level | Low   | —                                                          |
| Lubricating oil temperature     | High  | —                                                          |
| Lubricating oil pressure        | Low   | In forced lubrication systems                              |
| Lubricating oil tank level      | Low   | Where a tank is provided                                   |
| Ratio of jet rpm/vessel speed   | High  | Only if installed power per jet > 4 MW                     |
| Control system failure          | Fault | Includes follow-up failure of steering or reversing system |

## Section 6 Electrical systems

### 6.1 Installation and distribution arrangements

6.1.1 The electrical installation is to comply with the relevant sections of Pt 10, Ch 1.

6.1.2 Water jet auxiliaries and controls are to be served by individual circuits. Services that are duplicated are to be separated throughout their length as widely as practicable and without the use of common feeders, transformers, converters, protective devices or control circuits.

## Section 7 Inspection, testing and fitting of water jets

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 The finished impeller is to be statically balanced on completion of the manufacturing process, and is to meet the requirements of ISO 1940 Grade G6,3 or an alternative Standard acceptable to LR. In the case where the blade tip speed is greater than 60 m/s, dynamic balancing is required, unless otherwise agreed by the manufacturer and LR.

7.1.2 The following tests, markings and inspections are to be carried out in the presence of the Surveyor:

- The balancing of the impeller or the blades.
- Non-destructive examination of the impeller blades and the principal component parts of the propulsion system; see Ch 4,8 for austenitic stainless steels and Ch 8,3 for aluminium alloys of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials*.
- The quality of the fit of the impeller boss on the shaft taper.

# Water Jet Systems

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 2

Sections 7 & 8

- (d) The fitting of the impeller to the shaft and its subsequent functional testing.
- (e) The finished surfaces of the impeller boss, conical bores, fillets, cones and blade surfaces are to be shown to conform to the tolerances specified on the impeller drawing.

7.1.3 Bolts and nuts in critical locations, as specified in the FMEA and where indicated by the manufacturer or Shipbuilder and agreed by LR, are to be equipped with adequate securing arrangements to the satisfaction of the LR Surveyor.

## 7.2 Shop tests and installation of water jet systems

7.2.1 The completed water jet unit is to undergo a tightness test in which an internal hydrostatic pressure of 1,5 bar above the maximum working pressure of the unit is to be applied.

7.2.2 In cases where the impeller is fitted to the shaft using an interference fit, the bedding of the impeller with the shaft is to be demonstrated in the shop to the satisfaction of the LR Surveyor. Sufficient time is to be allowed for the temperature of the components to equalise before bedding. A contact marking between the bore of the impeller boss and the shaft surface of better than 80 per cent is to be demonstrated when the contact marking ink is spread thinly on the surface of the shaft. Alternative means for demonstrating the bedding of the impeller will be considered.

7.2.3 Means are to be provided to indicate the relative axial position of the impeller boss on the shaft. Permanent reference marks are to be made on the impeller boss, shaft and any nut to indicate angular and axial positioning of the impeller. Care is to be taken in marking the inboard end of the shaft taper to minimise stress-raising effects.

7.2.4 A copy of the fitting curve, relative to temperature, and means for determining any subsequent movement are to be placed on board.

7.2.5 The impeller running clearances are to be checked following the installation of the unit in the ship.

7.2.6 The thrust bearing clearances in the water jet system are to be verified against the required design values. This is to be done following the installation of the unit in the ship.

7.2.7 The piping systems are to be adequately flushed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the final levels of contamination recorded. Similarly, pressure testing of the piping systems is to comply with Pt 7, Ch 1.

## 7.3 Sea trial requirement

- 7.3.1 The following requirements are to be complied with:
- Pt 1, Ch 2,16 for sea trials.
  - Pt 1, Ch 2,15.4 for steering trials.

In addition, the general design capability specified in 3.1.1 is to be demonstrated to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

7.3.2 The control systems relating to the correct functioning of the water jet are to be the subject of harbour and then sea trials. Demonstration of the requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1 is required and the design combinations of control functions are to be undertaken during the trials programme.

7.3.3 On sea trials and under free running conditions, the relationship between ship speed and impeller rotational speed is to be verified against the water jet's design basis.

7.3.4 Any trials and testing identified from the FMEA report, see 2.4.4, are to be carried out.

## ■ Section 8 Installation, maintenance and replacement

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 All water jet system propulsion units are to be provided with a copy of the manufacturer's installation and maintenance manual that is pertinent to the actual equipment. See 2.3.24.

8.1.2 The manual required by 8.1.1 is to be placed on board and is to contain the following information:

- (a) Description of the water jet propulsion system with details of function and design operating limits. This is also to include details of support systems such as lubrication, cooling and condition monitoring arrangements.
- (b) Identification of all components together with details of any that have a defined maximum operating life.
- (c) Instructions for installation of the system on board ship, with details of any required specialised equipment.
- (d) Instructions for commissioning at initial installation and following maintenance.
- (e) Maintenance and service instructions to include inspection/renewal of bearings and sealing arrangements. This is also to include component fitting procedures, clearance measurements and lubricating oil treatment, where applicable.
- (f) Actions required in the event of fault/failure conditions being detected.
- (g) Precautions to be taken by personnel working during installation and maintenance.



# Thrusters

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 3

Sections 1 & 2

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Particulars to be submitted**
- 3 **Materials**
- 4 **Design and construction**
- 5 **Piping systems**
- 6 **Control and monitoring**
- 7 **Electrical systems**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter is to be read in conjunction with the requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems in Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2.

1.1.2 This Chapter gives requirements for fixed or steerable thruster units (azimuth thrusters) which are used for propulsion and steering, and also applies to transverse propulsion (tunnel) thrusters which are an aid to manoeuvring.

1.1.3 In this Chapter where the dimensions of any particular component are determined from shaft power,  $P$ , in kW, and revolutions per minute,  $R$ , the values to be used are those defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.3.

### 1.2 Redundancy

1.2.1 A minimum of two azimuth thruster units is to be provided where these form the sole means of propulsion. Where a single azimuth thruster installation is proposed, it will be subject to consideration, taking into account the proposed restricted area notation.

1.2.2 The failure of one azimuth thruster unit or its control system is not to render any other thruster inoperative.

### 1.3 Inclination of ship

1.3.1 Thruster units are to operate satisfactorily under the conditions as shown in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.3.

## ■ Section 2 Particulars to be submitted

### 2.1 Submission of information

2.1.1 At least three copies of the following plans and information as detailed in 2.2 and 2.3 are to be submitted.

### 2.2 Plans

#### 2.2.1 Fixed/Azimuth propulsion thrusters:

- (a) A general arrangement sectional assembly plan showing all the connections of the torque transmitting components from the prime mover to the propeller, together with the azimuthing mechanism and, if a nozzle is provided, the nozzle ring structure and nozzle support struts.
- (b) Detailed and dimensional plans of the individual torque transmitting components.
- (c) Schematic plans of lubricating and hydraulic systems, together with pipe material, relief valves and working pressures.

2.2.2 **Tunnel thrusters.** Structural assembly plan including connections to tunnel.

### 2.3 Calculations and specifications

#### 2.3.1 Fixed/Azimuth propulsion thrusters:

- (a) Thruster prime mover type and operational power/speed envelope.
- (b) Rating and type of motor for the azimuthing mechanism (e.g., type – hydraulic or electric).
- (c) Gearing calculations for the azimuthing mechanism which is to be designed to a recognised National Standard.
- (d) Bearing specifications.
- (e) Details of control engineering aspects in accordance with Pt 9, Ch 1.
- (f) Calculations indicating suitability of components for short term high power operation, where applicable. See Pt 1, Ch 2.
- (g) Where carried out in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 2, a fatigue strength analysis of components indicating a factor of safety of 1,5 at the design loads, based on a suitable fatigue failure criteria.

2.3.2 **Tunnel thrusters.** Specification for materials of gears, shafts, couplings and propeller, stock and struts.

# Thrusters

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 3

Sections 3 & 4

## Section 3 Materials

### 3.1 Azimuth thrusters

3.1.1 The materials used in the construction are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials*.

## Section 4 Design and construction

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 The arrangement of all types of thrusters is to be such that the craft can be manoeuvred in accordance with the design specifications.

4.1.2 The requirements associated with the structural and watertight integrity and the installation arrangement are to be in accordance with Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3.

4.1.3 In addition to the requirements of this Section, reference is to be made to:

- Main transmission gearing, Pt 3, Ch 1.
- Main transmission shafting, Pt 3, Ch 2.
- Propeller, Chapter 1.
- Torsional vibration, Pt 5, Ch 1.
- Lateral vibration for shafting systems which include cardan shafts, Pt 5, Ch 3.

### 4.2 Azimuth thrusters

4.2.1 The following requirements are to be complied with:

- The azimuthing mechanism is to be capable of a maximum rotational speed of not less than 1,5 rev/min.
- Gearing for the azimuthing mechanism is to be designed to a recognised National Standard. The design is to consider both static ( $<10^3$  cycles) and dynamic loading conditions.
- Under dynamic operating conditions, the gear is to be considered for:
  - design maximum dynamic duty steering torque;
  - variable loading, where applicable. A spectrum (duty) factor may be used. The load spectrum value is to be derived using load measurements of similar units, where possible.
- Under a static duty ( $<10^3$  load cycles) steering torque, which should be not less than  $M_T$ , as defined in 4.3.1.
- The following minimum factor of safety values are to be achieved:
 

Surface Stress  $S_{Hmin} = 1,0$ .

Bending Stress  $S_{Fmin} = 1,5$ .
- For hydraulic pressure retaining parts and load bearing components, see also Pt 6, Ch 1.

### 4.3 Azimuth thrusters with a nozzle

4.3.1 Where the propeller is contained within a nozzle, the equivalent rudder stock diameter in way of tiller, used in Table 3.2.10 in Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3, is to be determined as follows:

$$d_{SU} = 26,03 \sqrt[3]{(V+3)^2 A_N X_{PF}} \quad \text{mm}$$

where

$V$  = maximum service speed, in knots, which the craft is designed to maintain under thruster operation

$A_N$  = projected nozzle area, in  $m^2$ , and is equal to the length of the nozzle multiplied by the mean external vertical height of the nozzle

$X_{PF}$  = horizontal distance from the centreline of the steering tube to the centre of pressure, in metres. The position of the centre of pressure is determined from Table 3.2.6 in Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3

The corresponding maximum turning moment,  $M_T$ , is to be determined as follows:

$$M_T = 11,1 \times d_{SU}^3 \quad \text{Nmm.}$$

4.3.2 In addition to the requirements of Vol 1, Pt 3, the scantlings of the nozzle stock or steering tube are to be such that the section modulus  $Z$  against transverse bending at any section x-x is not less than:

$$Z = 1,73 \sqrt{(V+3)^4 A_N^2 X_{PF}^2 + \frac{a^2}{4} T_M^2 10^4} \quad \text{cm}^3$$

where

$a$  = dimension, in metres, as shown in Fig. 3.4.1

$T_M$  = maximum thrust of the thruster unit, in tonnes.

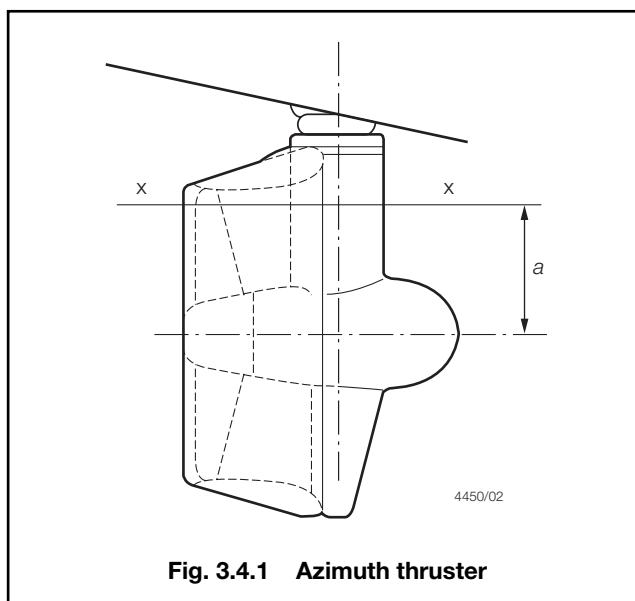


Fig. 3.4.1 Azimuth thruster

4.3.3 The scantlings of nozzle connections or struts will be specially considered. In the case of certain high powered ships, direct calculation may be required.

4.3.4 Where the propeller is not contained in a nozzle, the scantlings in way of the tiller will be subject to special consideration.



# Thrusters

## Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 3

Sections 5, 6 &amp; 7

### Section 5 Piping systems

#### 5.1 General

5.1.1 The piping system for azimuth thrusters is to comply with the general design requirements given in Pt 7, Ch 1.

5.1.2 The specific requirements for lubricating/hydraulic oil systems and standby arrangements are given in Pt 7, Ch 3.

#### 5.2 Azimuth thruster

5.2.1 The hydraulic power operating systems for each azimuth thruster are to be provided with the following:

- arrangements to maintain the cleanliness of the hydraulic fluid, taking into consideration the type and design of the hydraulic system;
- a fixed storage tank having sufficient capacity to recharge at least one azimuth power actuating system including the reservoir. The piping from the storage tank is to be permanent and arranged in such a manner as to allow recharging from within the thruster space.

5.2.2 Where the lubricating oil for the azimuth thrusters is circulated under pressure, provision is to be made for the efficient filtration of the oil. The filters are to be capable of being cleaned without stopping the thruster or reducing the supply of filtered oil.

### Section 6 Control and monitoring

#### 6.1 General

6.1.1 Except where indicated in this Section, the control engineering systems are to be in accordance with Pt 9, Ch 1.

6.1.2 Azimuthing control for azimuth thruster(s) and propeller pitch control for azimuth and/or tunnel thruster(s) are to be provided from the navigating bridge, the main machinery control station and locally.

6.1.3 Means are to be provided at the remote control station(s) to stop each azimuth or tunnel thruster unit.

#### 6.2 Monitoring and alarms

6.2.1 Alarms and monitoring requirements are indicated in 6.2.2, 6.2.3 and Table 3.6.1.

**Table 3.6.1 Alarms**

| Item                                        | Alarm                       | Note                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Thruster, azimuth or tunnel                 | —                           | Indicators, see 6.2.2                                              |
| Azimuthing motor                            | Power failure, single phase | Also running indication on bridge and at machinery control station |
| Propeller pitch motor                       | Power failure               | Also running indication on bridge and at machinery control station |
| Propulsion motor                            | Overload, power failure     | Also running indication on bridge and at machinery control station |
| Control system power                        | Failure                     |                                                                    |
| Hydraulic oil supply tank level             | Low                         |                                                                    |
| Hydraulic oil system pressure               | Low                         |                                                                    |
| Hydraulic oil system temperature            | High                        | Where oil cooler is fitted                                         |
| Hydraulic oil filters differential pressure | High                        | Where oil filters are fitted                                       |
| Lubricating oil supply pressure             | Low                         | If separate forced lubrication                                     |

6.2.2 An indication of the angular position of the azimuth thruster(s), the direction of thrust, an indication representative of the magnitude of thrust and an indication of the propeller pitch position for azimuth and/or tunnel thruster(s) are to be provided at each station from which it is possible to control the direction of thrust or the pitch.

6.2.3 The alarms described in Table 3.6.1 are to be indicated individually on the navigating bridge and in accordance with the alarm system specified by Pt 9, Ch 1.

### Section 7 Electrical systems

#### 7.1 General

7.1.1 The electrical installation is to be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with the requirements of 7.2 to 7.4.

7.1.2 Where the thruster units are electrically driven, the relevant requirements, including surveys, of Pt 10, Ch 1 are to be complied with.

**7.2 General arrangements**

7.2.1 Where a central power generation system is employed, the requirements of Pt 10, Ch 1,16.3.5 are to be complied with.

7.2.2 For azimuth thrusters, the generating and distribution system is to be so arranged that after any single failure, steering capability can be maintained or regained within a period not exceeding 45 seconds, and the effectiveness of the steering after such a fault will not be reduced by more than 50 per cent. This may be achieved by the parallel operation of two or more generating sets, or alternatively when the electrical requirements may be met by one generating set in operation, on loss of power, the automatic starting and connecting to the switchboard of a standby set, provided that this set can restart and run a thruster with its auxiliaries.

7.2.3 The failure of one thruster unit or its control system is not to render any other thruster inoperative.

**7.3 Distribution arrangements**

7.3.1 Azimuth thruster auxiliaries and controls are to be served by individual circuits. Services that are duplicated are to be separated throughout their length as widely as is practicable and without the use of common feeders, transformers, converters, protective devices or control circuits.

**7.4 Auxiliary supplies**

7.4.1 Where the auxiliary services and thruster units are supplied from a common source, the following requirements are to be complied with:

- (a) the voltage regulation and current sharing requirements defined in Pt 10, Ch 1,9.4.2 and 9.4.7 are to be maintained over the full range of power factors that may occur in services;
  - (b) auxiliary equipment and services are to operate with any waveform distortion introduced by converters without deleterious effect. (This may be achieved by the provision of suitably filtered/converted supplies).
-

## Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **General requirements**
- 3 **Functional capacity**
- 4 **Materials**
- 5 **Structure design and construction requirements**
- 6 **Machinery design and construction requirements**
- 7 **Electrical equipment**
- 8 **Control engineering arrangements**
- 9 **Testing and trials**
- 10 **Installation, maintenance and replacement procedures**

## ■ Section 1 Scope

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter applies to podded propulsion units where used for propulsion, dynamic positioning duty or as the sole means of steering.

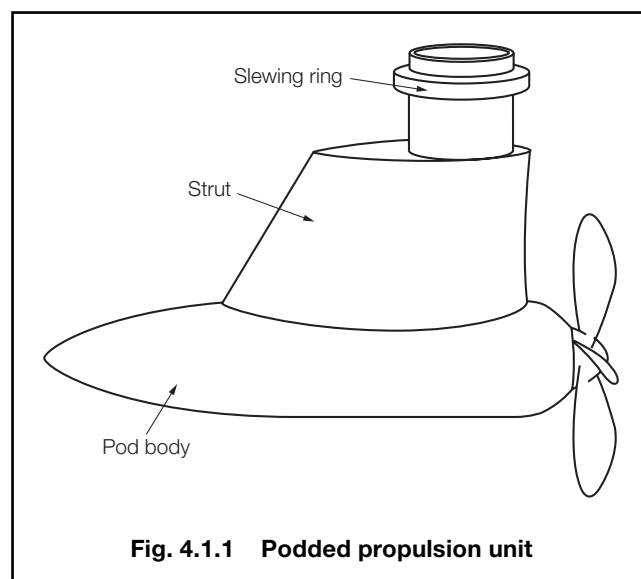
1.1.2 For the purposes of these Rules, a podded propulsion unit is any propulsion or manoeuvring device that is external to the normal form of the ship's hull and houses a propeller powering device.

1.1.3 The requirements of this Chapter relate to podded propulsion units powered by electric propulsion motors, (and are in addition to the requirements for Electric Propulsion in Pt 10, Ch 1,16 and other relevant Sections). Podded propulsion units with other drive arrangements will be subject to individual consideration.

1.1.4 The structural requirements stated in 5.1, 5.2 and 5.3 relate to podded propulsion units having a pod body with single supporting strut with or without an integral slewing ring arrangement, see Fig. 4.1.1. Novel and unconventional arrangements will be subject to individual consideration. In such cases, the designers are advised to contact LR in the early stages of the design for advice on the manner and content of design information required for formal classification appraisal.

1.1.5 The aft end structures associated within podded installations are to be examined in respect of potential slamming with reference to Vol 1, Pt 5, Ch 3,4.

1.1.6 Attention is to be given to any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority.



**Fig. 4.1.1 Podded propulsion unit**

1.1.7 It is the shipbuilder's responsibility to ensure that all installed equipment is suitable for operation in the location and under all anticipated environmental conditions associated with the design of the ship which is to include temperature, humidity, vibration and impulsive accelerations.

1.1.8 The design of a podded propulsor system is to take into account a range of operating conditions which are to include the following:

- All ahead sea-going conditions up to and including the maximum rated output of the podded propulsor while maintaining a steady course under foreseeable operating, sea and wind conditions and in cases where directional instability may occur.
- The ability of the ship to change direction rapidly at the declared steering angles with the ship running at maximum ahead service speed.
- Executing a steady turning manoeuvre with a tactical diameter not greater than  $5L$  and advance not greater than  $4,5L$  whilst maintaining a power corresponding to the test speed, where  $L$  is the length measured between the aft and forward perpendiculars. Test speed is defined as a speed of at least 90 per cent of the ship's speed corresponding to 85 per cent of the maximum rated power of the podded propulsor.
- Changing heading, manoeuvring in and out of harbour both ahead and astern, at slow speeds, stationary and starting from rest in foreseeable current and wind conditions.
- Berthing manoeuvres in the case of azimuthing podded propulsion units.
- Rapid acceleration and deceleration manoeuvres where the ship's operating profile demands this capability.
- Holding stationary positions over-ground under different conditions.
- Stopping manoeuvre as required by Pt 10, Ch 1,21.2.
- Manoeuvring in ice where ice class is required.

# Podded Propulsion Units

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 4

Section 2

## Section 2

### General requirements

#### 2.1 Pod arrangement

2.1.1 In general, for a ship to be assigned an unrestricted service notation, a minimum of two podded propulsion units are to be provided where these form the sole means of propulsion. For vessels where a single podded propulsion unit is the sole means of propulsion, an evaluation of a detailed engineering and safety justification will be conducted by LR, see 2.2.2. This evaluation process will include the appraisal of a Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) to verify that sufficient levels of redundancy and monitoring are incorporated in the podded propulsion unit's essential support systems and operating equipment.

#### 2.2 Plans and information to be submitted

2.2.1 In addition to the plans required by Pt 3, Ch 1 and Ch 2, Pt 4, Ch 1, Pt 5, Pt 6, Ch 1, Pt 7, Ch 3 and Parts 9 and 10, the following plans and information are required to be submitted for appraisal:

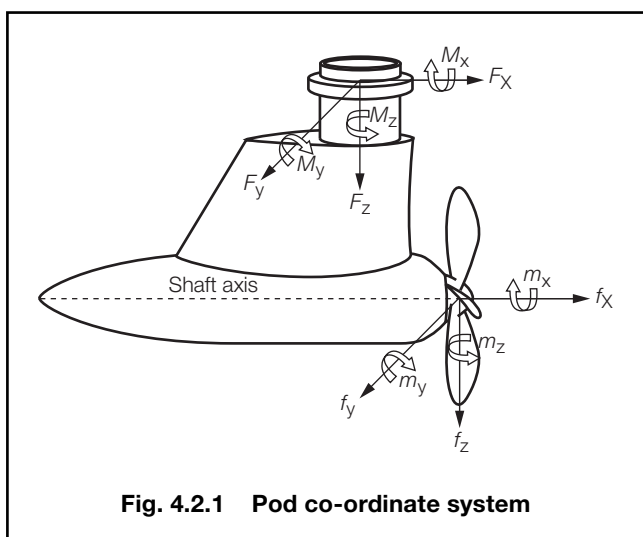
- (a) Description of the ship's purpose/capabilities together with the pod's intended operational modes in support of these capabilities. The operational modes are to include stopping the vessel and restrictions on steering angles at different ship speeds. See also (g).
- (b) Power transmitted at MCR condition (shaft power and rpm) and other maximum torque conditions, e.g. bollard pull.
- (c) Maximum transient thrust, torque and other forces and moments experienced during all envisaged operating modes as permitted by the steering and propulsor drive control systems.
- (d) Details of the electric propulsion motor short-circuit torque and motor air gap tolerance.
- (e) Sectional assembly in the Z-X plane, see Fig. 4.2.1.
- (f) Specifications of materials and NDE procedures for components essential for propulsion and steering operation, to include propulsion shaft and slewing ring bearings, gearing and couplings, see 4.1.
- (g) Details of intended manoeuvring capability of the ship in each operating condition. (to be declared by the Naval Authority, see also 3.1.1).
- (h) Design loads for both the pod structure and propeller together with podded propulsion unit design operating modes, see 2.4.1, 6.3.7, 6.6.5 and 6.6.6.
- (j) Supporting data and direct calculation reports. This is to include, where applicable an assessment of anticipated global accelerations acting on the ship's machinery and equipment which may potentially affect the reliable operation of the propulsion system for all foreseeable seagoing and operating conditions. Typically, this may include response to slamming, extreme ship motions and pod interaction. See also 1.1.5.
- (k) Structural component details including: strut, pod body, bearing supports, bearing end caps, ship's structure in way of podded propulsion unit integration and a welding Table showing a key to weld symbols used on the plans specifying weld size, type, preparation and heat treatment. The information should include the following:

- Detailed drawings showing the structural arrangement, dimensions and scantlings.
  - Welding and structural details.
  - Connections between structural components (bolting).
  - Castings' chemical and mechanical properties.
  - Forgings' chemical and mechanical properties.
  - Material grades for plate and sections.
- (l) Nozzle structure, its support arrangements, together with related calculations for all foreseeable operating and seagoing conditions where the propeller operates in a nozzle (duct), see Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3,5.
  - (m) Propeller shaft bearing mounting and housing arrangement details, see also 6.3.6.
  - (n) Details of propeller shaft and steering bearings, where roller bearings are used supporting calculations are to be submitted, see 6.3.7 and 6.6.6.
  - (o) Propeller shaft seal details.
  - (p) Details of propeller shaft and pod steering securing/locking and means of aligning the securing/locking arrangements.
  - (q) Cooling systems piping system schematic.
  - (r) Details of any lubricating oil conditioning systems (filtering/cooling/heating) and control arrangements necessary to ensure the continuous availability of the required lubricating oil quality to the propeller shaft bearings.
  - (s) Details of installed condition monitoring equipment.
  - (t) Details of the derivation of any duty factor used in the design of the steering gears.
  - (u) Identification of any potentially hazardous atmospheric conditions together with details of how the hazard will be countered, this should include a statement of the maximum anticipated air temperature within the pod during full power steady state operation, see 2.3.
  - (v) Where provided, access and closing arrangements for pod unit inspection and maintenance.
  - (w) Heat balance calculations for the pod unit taking into account electrical thermal riser when the pod is operating at maximum continuous operating conditions, heat transfer and maximum sea-water/air temperatures, see 6.7.4.
  - (x) Details of proposed testing and trials required by Section 9.
  - (y) Details of emergency steering and pod securing arrangements, see 6.3.11.
  - (z) Quality plan for electronic control systems and electrical actuating systems.

2.2.2 Where an engineering and safety justification report is required, the following supporting information is to be submitted:

- A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA), see 2.5.
- Design standards and assumptions.
- Limiting operating parameters.
- A statement and evidence in respect of the anticipated reliability of any non-duplicated components.

2.2.3 Recommended installation, inspection, maintenance and component replacement procedures, see also 5.1.2. This is to include any in-water/underwater engineering procedures where recommended by the pod manufacturer. See also 6.5.7 and Section 10.



**Fig. 4.2.1 Pod co-ordinate system**

## 2.3 Pod internal atmospheric conditions

2.3.1 Machinery and electrical equipment installed within the pod unit are to be suitable for operation, without degraded performance, at the maximum anticipated air temperature and humidity conditions within the pod unit with the pod operating at its maximum continuous rating in sea water of not less than 32°C after steady state operating conditions have been achieved.

2.3.2 Precautions are to be taken to prevent as far as reasonably practicable the possibility of danger to personnel and damage to equipment arising from the development of hazardous atmospheric conditions within the pod unit. Circumstances that may give rise to these conditions are to be identified and the counter measures taken are to be defined.

## 2.4 Global loads

2.4.1 The overall strength of the podded propulsion unit structure is to be based upon the maximum anticipated in-service loads, including, the effects of ship manoeuvring and of ship motion, see Table 3.2.1 in Vol 1, Pt 5, Ch 3. This is to include the effects of any pod to pod and/or pod to ship hydrodynamic interference effects. The designer is to supply the following maximum load and moment values to which the unit may be subjected with a description of the operating condition at which they occur:

- $F_x$ , Force in the longitudinal direction;
- $F_y$ , Force in the transverse direction;
- $F_z$ , Force in the vertical direction including self weight, in water, augmented by the ship's pitch and heave motion and flooded volume where applicable, see 5.3.3 and Vol 1, Pt 5, Ch 3;
- $M_x$ , moment at the slewing ring about the pod unit's global longitudinal axis;
- $M_y$ , moment at the slewing ring about the pod unit's global transverse axis;
- $M_z$ , moment at the slewing ring about the pod unit's vertical axis (maximum dynamic duty steering torque on steerable pods).

The directions of the X, Y and Z axes, with the origin at the centre of the slewing ring, are shown in Fig. 4.2.1.

2.4.2 Where the maximum forces and moments defined in 2.4.1 cannot be accurately calculated, then an estimate of these loadings is to be stated together with an assessment of the associated error tolerances for the sequences of permitted design manoeuvres, see 1.1.8. Typically this will include emergency astern manoeuvres, zig zag manoeuvres and pod interaction. Such estimates are to be defined on a load versus pod angle basis. In the case of pod to pod and/or pod to ship hydrodynamic interaction effects, these must be defined for the most severely affected propulsor including cases where pod units are capable of being independently steered.

2.4.3 Where control systems are installed to limit the operation of the podded drive to defined angles at defined ship speeds, this information may be taken into consideration when determining the pod unit loading.

2.4.4 Where pod units are fixed about their Z axis, then maximum global loads, to be used as the basis of the structural appraisal, are to be determined for inflows in 5 degree increments between the extremes of anticipated inflow angle during manoeuvring with ship at full speed and maximum propeller thrust.

2.4.5 The podded propulsor is to be capable of withstanding a blade root failure due to fatigue occurring at the maximum rated output of the podded propulsor without initiating a failure in other parts of the propulsor system. After a blade failure, the podded propulsor is to be capable of reduced power operation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

## 2.5 Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA)

2.5.1 An FMEA is to be carried out where a single podded propulsion unit is the vessel's sole means of propulsion, see 2.1.1. The FMEA is to identify components where a single failure could cause loss of all propulsion and/or steering capability and the proposed arrangements for preventing and mitigating the effects of such a failure. The assessment required by Pt 10, Ch 1, 16.2.2 may be considered for demonstrating the acceptability of the proposed design for propulsion power purposes.

2.5.2 The FMEA is to be carried out using the format presented in Table 2.17.1 in Pt 1, Ch 2 or an equivalent format that addresses the same reliability issues. Analyses in accordance with IEC 60812, *Analysis techniques for system reliability – Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)*, or IMO MSC Resolution 36(63) Annex 4 – *Procedures for Failure Mode and Effects Analysis*, would be acceptable.

2.5.3 The FMEA is to be organised in terms of equipment and function. The effects of item failures at a stated level and at higher levels are to be analysed to determine the effects on the system as a whole. Actions for mitigation of the effects of failure are to be determined, see 2.5.1.

# Podded Propulsion Units

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 4

Sections 2 to 5

2.5.4 The FMEA is to:

- (a) identify the equipment or sub-system and mode of operation;
- (b) identify potential failure modes and their causes;
- (c) evaluate the effects on the system of each failure mode;
- (d) identify measures for reducing the risks associated with each failure mode;
- (e) identify measures for preventing failure; and
- (f) identify trials and testing necessary to prove conclusions.

2.5.5 At sub-system level it is acceptable, for the purpose of these Rules, to consider failure of equipment items and their functions, e.g., failure of a pump to produce flow or pressure head. It is not required that the failure of components within that pump be analysed. In addition, their failure need only be dealt with as a cause of failure of the pump.

2.5.6 Where FMEA is used for consideration of systems that depend on software-based functions for control or co-ordination, the analysis is to investigate failure of the functions rather than a specific analysis of the software code itself.

## 2.6 Ice Class requirements

2.6.1 Where an ice class notation is included in the class of a ship, additional requirements as detailed in Vol 3, Pt 1, Ch 1 are to be complied with as applicable.

## Section 3 Functional capability

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 The arrangement of podded propulsion units is to be such that the ship can be satisfactorily manoeuvred to a declared performance capability. The operating conditions covered are to include the following:

- (a) Maximum continuous shaft power/speed to the propeller in the ahead condition at the declared steering angles and sea conditions.
- (b) Manoeuvring speeds of the propeller shaft in the ahead and astern direction at the declared steering angles and sea conditions.
- (c) The stopping manoeuvre described in Pt 1, Ch 2.
- (d) All astern running conditions for the ship.
- (e) Manoeuvring in ice where ice class is required.

3.1.2 In general, the steering mechanism is to be capable of turning the pod between the declared steering angle limits at an average rotational speed of not less than 0,4 rev/min with the ship initially operating at its maximum ahead service speed.

3.1.3 The steering mechanism for podded units used for Dynamic Positioning applications with an associated class notation, is to be capable of a rotational speed of not less than 1,5 rev/min.

## Section 4 Materials

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 The materials used for major structural and machinery components are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials). These components include hull support structure, pod body, pod strut, shafting and propellers.

4.1.2 Components of novel design or components manufactured from materials not covered by the Rules for Materials are to be subject to evaluation and approval by LR prior to manufacture.

4.1.3 Material specifications, see 2.2.1(f), for propulsion shaft and slewing ring bearings, gearing and couplings are to be approved by LR prior to manufacture. The specification is to include details of the grade of material, including the target range of chemical composition that is to be reported on the certificate, the required mechanical properties, heat treatment details including temperatures and hold times, details of necessary non-destructive examinations including acceptance levels. Additionally, any steel cleanliness or microstructure requirements are to be included. These components are to be manufactured under survey.

4.1.4 For propulsion shaft rolling element bearings the amount of retained austenite is to be determined and is not to exceed 4 per cent for nominally bainitic structures.

4.1.5 Where load carrying threaded fasteners screw directly into structural castings, the integrity of the casting is to be such that there is no porosity or shrinkage in the area of the connection.

## Section 5 Structure design and construction requirements

### 5.1 Pod structure

5.1.1 Podded unit struts and pod bodies may be of cast, forged or fabricated construction or a combination of these construction methods.

5.1.2 Means are to be provided to enable the propeller shaft, bearings and seal arrangements to be examined in accordance with LR's requirements and the manufacturer's recommendations.

5.1.3 When high tensile steel fasteners are used as part of the structural arrangement and there is a risk that these fasteners may come into contact with sea-water, carbon-manganese and low alloy steels with a specified tensile strength of greater than 950 N/mm<sup>2</sup> are not to be used due to the risk of hydrogen embrittlement.

# Podded Propulsion Units

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 4

Section 5

5.1.4 For steerable pod units, an integral slewing ring is to be arranged at the upper extremity of the strut to provide support for the slewing bearing.

5.1.5 The strut is to have a smooth transition from the upper mounting to the lower hydrodynamic sections.

5.1.6 For fabricated structures, vertical and horizontal plate diaphragms are to be arranged within the strut and, where necessary, secondary stiffening members are to be arranged.

5.1.7 Pod unit structure scantling requirements are shown in Table 4.5.1. Where the scantling requirements in Table 4.5.1 cannot be satisfied, direct calculations carried out in accordance with 5.3 may be considered.

5.1.8 The connection between the strut and the pod body should generally be effected through large radiused fillets in cast pod units or curved plates in fabricated pod units.

5.1.9 The structural response under the most onerous combination of loads is not to exceed the normal operational requirements of the propulsion or steering system components.

5.1.10 For cast pod structures, the elongation of the material on a gauge length of  $5.65\sqrt{S_0}$  is to be not less than 12 per cent where  $S_0$  is the actual cross sectional area of the test piece.

5.1.11 In castings, sudden changes of section or possible constriction to the flow of metal during casting are to be avoided. All fillets are to have adequate radii which should, in general, be not less than 75 mm.

5.1.12 Castings are to comply with the requirements of Chapter 4 or Chapter 7 of the Rules for Materials.

## 5.2 Hull support structure

5.2.1 For supporting the main slewing bearing outer races, a system of primary structural members is to be provided in order to transfer the maximum design loads and moments from the podded propulsion unit into the ship's hull without undue deflection. Due account is also to be taken of the loads induced by the maximum ship's motions in the vertical direction resulting from combined heave and pitch motion of the ship. Account is also to be taken of any manoeuvring conditions that are likely to give rise to high mean or vibratory loadings induced by the podded propulsion unit. See 2.2.1(c).

5.2.2 The hull support structure in way of the slewing bearing should be sufficiently stiff that the bearing manufacturer's limits on seating flatness are not exceeded due to hull flexure as a consequence of the loads defined under 5.2.1.

**Table 4.5.1 Podded propulsion unit – fabricated structure requirements**

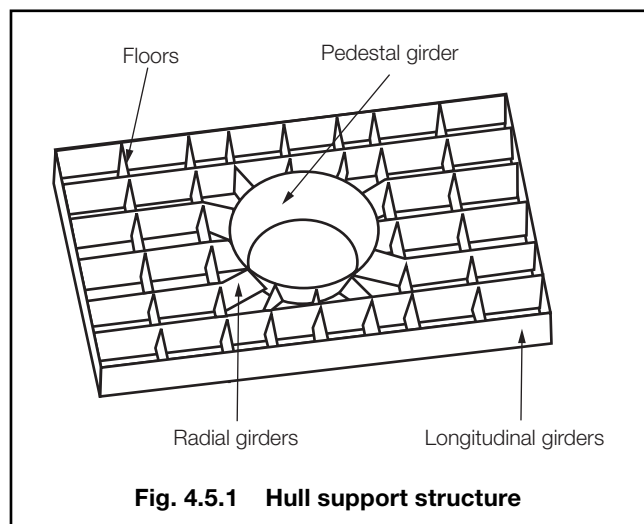
| Location                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Requirement                                                                             | Notes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Strut external shell plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Thickness, in mm, is to be not less than:<br>$t = 0,0063s f (h_7 k)^{0,5}$              | The minimum thickness of plating diaphragms and primary webs within the strut is to be not less than the Rule requirement for the strut external plating. For internal diaphragms, panel stiffening is to be provided where the ratio of spacing to plate thickness ( $s/t$ ) exceeds 100. Where there are no secondary members, $s$ is to be replaced by $S$ |
| Strut primary framing                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | The section modulus in $\text{cm}^3$ is to be not less than:<br>$z = 7,75h_7 l_e^2 S k$ | This does not apply to full breadth plate diaphragms                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Strut secondary stiffening                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | The section in $\text{cm}^3$ is to be not less than:<br>$z = 0,0056h_7 l_e^2 s k$       | This does not apply to full breadth plate diaphragms                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Cylindrical pod body external shell plating                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Thickness, in mm, is to be not less than:<br>$t = 3,0R_g (h_7 k)^{0,5}$                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| $f$ = panel aspect ratio correction factor = $[1, 1 - s/(2500S)]$<br>$h_7$ = $(T + C_w + 0,014V^2)$<br>$k$ = local higher tensile steel factor, as in Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 2<br>$l_e$ = effective span of the member under consideration, in metres<br>$s$ = the frame spacing of secondary members, in mm<br>$C_w$ = design wave amplitude, in metres, as in Table 3.2.1 in Vol 1, Pt 5, Ch 3<br>$R_g$ = mean radius of pod body tube, in metres<br>$S$ = the spacing of primary members, in metres<br>$T$ = the vessel scantling draft, in metres, as in Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 1,5.2<br>$V$ = maximum design speed, in knots, as in Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3,2.11 |                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

# Podded Propulsion Units

## Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 4

Section 5

5.2.3 Generally, the system of primary members is to comprise a pedestal girder directly supporting the slewing ring and bearing. The pedestal girder is to be integrated with the ship's structure by means of radial girders and transverses aligned at their outer ends with the ship's bottom girders and transverses, see Fig. 4.5.1. Proposals to use alternative arrangements that provide an equivalent degree of strength and rigidity may be submitted for appraisal.



**Fig. 4.5.1 Hull support structure**

5.2.4 The ship's support structure in way of the podded unit may be of double or single bottom construction. Generally, podded drives should be supported where practical within a double bottom structure; however final acceptance of the supporting arrangements will be dependent upon satisfying the stress criteria set out in Table 4.5.2, see also 5.3.5.

5.2.5 The shell envelope plating and tank top plating in way of the aperture for the podded drive (i.e., over the extent of the radial girders shown in Fig. 4.5.1) is to be increased by 50 per cent over the Rule minimum thickness to provide additional local stiffness and robustness. However, the thickness of this plating is not to be less than the actual fitted thickness of the surrounding shell or tank top plating.

5.2.6 The scantlings of the primary support structure in way of the podded drive are to be based upon the limiting design stress criteria specified in Table 4.5.2, see also 5.3.5. Primary member scantlings are, however, not to be less than those required by Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 3, 7 and 8.

5.2.7 The pedestal girder is to have a thickness not less than the required shell envelope minimum Rule thickness in way. Where abutting plates are of dissimilar thickness, then the taper requirements of Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 4 are to be complied with.

5.2.8 In general, full penetration welds are to be applied at the pedestal girder boundaries and in way of the end connections between the radial girders and the pedestal girder. Elsewhere, for primary members, double continuous fillet welding is to be applied using a minimum weld factor of 0,34.

### 5.3 Direct calculations

5.3.1 Finite element or other direct calculation techniques may be employed in the verification of the structural design. The mesh density used is to be sufficient accurately to demonstrate the response characteristics of the structure and to provide adequate stress and deflection information. A refined mesh density is to be applied to geometry transition areas and those locations where high localised stress or stress gradients are anticipated.

5.3.2 Model boundary constraints are generally to be applied in way of the slewing ring/ship attachment only.

**Table 4.5.2 Direct calculation maximum permissible stresses for steel fabricated structures**

| Permissible stress values                                                                                                                                                                   |                        |                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Location                                                                                                                                                                                    | Podded drive structure | Podded drive/hull interface |
| X-Y shear stress                                                                                                                                                                            | $0,26\sigma_0$         | $0,35\sigma_0$              |
| Direct stress due to bending                                                                                                                                                                | $0,33\sigma_0$         | $0,63\sigma_0$              |
| Von Mises stress                                                                                                                                                                            | $0,40\sigma_0$         | $0,75\sigma_0$              |
| Localised Von Mises peak stresses                                                                                                                                                           | $\sigma_0$             | $\sigma_0$                  |
| Symbols                                                                                                                                                                                     |                        |                             |
| $\sigma_0$ = minimum yield strength of the material                                                                                                                                         |                        |                             |
| NOTES                                                                                                                                                                                       |                        |                             |
| 1. The values stated above are intended to give an indication of the levels of stress in the pod and ship structure for the maximum loads which could be experienced during normal service. |                        |                             |
| 2. If design is based on extreme or statistically low probability loads, then proposals to use alternative acceptance stress criteria may be considered.                                    |                        |                             |



5.3.3 The loads applied to the mathematical model, see 2.4.1, are to include the self weight, dynamic acceleration due to ship motion, hydrodynamic loads, hydrostatic pressure, propeller forces and shaft bearing support forces. In situations where a pod can operate in the flooded condition or where the flooding of a pod adds significant mass to the pod, details are to be included.

5.3.4 Based on the most onerous combination of normal service loading conditions, the stress criteria shown in Table 4.5.2 are not to be exceeded. See also 2.2.1(c).

5.3.5 Where the structural design is based on a fatigue assessment and the stress criteria shown in Table 4.5.2 are not applicable, details of cumulative load history and stress range together with the proposed acceptance criteria are to be submitted for consideration.

5.3.6 For cast structures, the localised von Mises stress should not exceed 0,6 times the nominal 0,2 per cent proof or yield stress of the material for the most onerous design condition.

## ■ Section 6 Machinery design and construction requirements

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 The requirements detailed in Pt 1, Ch 2 are applicable.

6.1.2 Means are to be provided whereby normal operation of the podded propulsion system can be sustained or readily restored if one of the supporting auxiliaries becomes inoperative. See also 2.1.1. Consideration shall be given to the malfunctioning of:

- sources of lubricating oil pressure,
- sources of cooling,
- hydraulic, pneumatic or electrical means for control of the podded propulsor.

### 6.2 Gearing

6.2.1 If gearing is used in the propulsion system then the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 1 are applicable.

### 6.3 Propulsion shafting

6.3.1 In addition to meeting the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2 and Part 5, the pod propulsion shafting supporting an electric motor is to be sufficiently stiff that both static and dynamic shaft flexure are within the motor manufacturer's limits for all envisaged operating conditions.

6.3.2 There is to be no significant lateral vibration response that may cause damage to the shaft seals within  $\pm 20$  per cent of the running speed range. For vibration analysis computations the influence of the slewing ring and shaft bearing stiffnesses together with the contribution from the seating stiffnesses are to be included in the calculation procedures.

6.3.3 As an alternative to the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2, a fatigue strength analysis of shafting components indicating a factor of safety of 1,5 at the design loads based on a suitable fatigue failure criterion may be submitted for consideration. The effects of stress concentrations, material properties and operating environment are to be taken into account.

6.3.4 With the exception of the propeller connection (requirements stated in Chapter 1) couplings relying on friction are to have a factor of safety of 2,5 against slippage at the maximum rated torque. In order to reduce the possibility of fretting, a grip stress of not less than 20 N/mm<sup>2</sup> is to be attained.

6.3.5 The effects of motor short-circuit torque on the shafting system should not prevent continued operation once the fault has been rectified.

6.3.6 The arrangement of shaft bearings is to take account of shaft thermal expansion, misalignment of bearings, shaft slope through the bearings and manufacturing tolerances. Additionally, the influence of the pod deflection on the shaft bearing alignment is to be considered under the most onerous mechanical and hydrodynamic loading conditions.

6.3.7 Propeller shaft roller bearing life calculations are to take account of the following loadings:

- Shaft, motor, propeller and other shaft appendages' weights;
- Forces due to ship's motion;
- The propeller-generated forces and moments about the three Cartesian axes related to the shaft;  $f_x$ ,  $f_y$ ,  $f_z$ ,  $m_x$ ,  $m_y$ ,  $m_z$ , see Fig. 4.2.1;
- Variance of propeller-generated forces and moments with pod azimuth angle. This load variance should take account of the motor control characteristics;
- Forces due to pod rotation, including gyroscopic forces;
- A predicted azimuth service profile for the pod indicating the proportion of time spent at various azimuth angles;
- Loads due to hydrodynamic interaction between pods;
- Any additional loads experienced during operation in ice conditions (for Ice Class notations);
- Where validation of the above loadings is available, detailed calculations must demonstrate that the bearing life when operating at the normal duty profile will comfortably exceed the time between 6-yearly surveys. Parameters used to justify the bearing life, i.e. those related to oil cleanliness, viscosity limits and material quality are to be quoted.

# Podded Propulsion Units

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 4

Section 6

6.3.8 Where detailed validation of the loadings identified in 6.3.7 is not available the calculations for roller bearings are to indicate a bearing life greater than 65 000 hours at the maximum continuous rating of the podded drive taking into account the azimuth angle duty cycle. Any parameters used to justify this life, i.e. those related to oil cleanliness, water contamination and viscosity limits are to be quoted. Proposals for the use of a shaft bearing of life less than 65 000 hours will be considered on application with details of alleviating factors and supporting documentation, however this bearing life must exceed the time between surveys.

6.3.9 The design of the shaft line bearings is to take account of the maximum and minimum operating temperatures likely to be encountered during both a voyage cycle and, more widely, during the ship's operational life. Furthermore, any anticipated temperature distributions through the bearing components and structures are to be included in the design calculations.

6.3.10 Means are to be provided for detecting shaft bearing deterioration. Where rolling element shaft bearings are used in single pod applications or in pods where the motor power exceeds 6 MW, vibration monitoring of the shaft bearings is to be provided. The bearing monitoring system is to be suitable for the local bearing conditions and is to be able to differentiate from other vibration sources such as propeller cavitation or ship motions.

6.3.11 In multi-podded propulsor systems or ships having at least one pod in association with other propulsion devices and where the individual pod installed power is greater than 5MW, means are to be provided to hold the propeller for an inoperable unit stationary whilst the other pod(s) propel the vessel at a manoeuvring speed of not less than 7 knots. Operating instructions displayed at the holding mechanism's operating position are to include a direction to inform the bridge of any limitation in ships speed required as a result of the holding mechanism being activated.

6.3.12 Shaft seals for maintaining the watertight integrity of the pod are to be Type Approved to a standard acceptable to LR. The seals are to be designed to withstand the extremes of operation for which they are intended and this is to include extremes of temperature, vibration, pressure and shaft movement.

6.3.13 In single pod installations, the integrity of shaft seals is to be evaluated on the basis of a double failure. In such installations, seal duplication is to be used with indication of failure of one seal being provided.

## 6.4 Propeller

6.4.1 The requirements of Chapter 1 are to be complied with.

6.4.2 Where propeller scantlings have been determined by a detailed fatigue analysis, based on reliable wake survey data as described in Ch 1,7.1.6, a factor of safety of 1,5 against suitable fatigue failure criteria is to be demonstrated. The effects of fillet stress concentrations, residual stress, fluctuating loads and material properties are to be taken into account.

## 6.5 Bearing lubrication system

6.5.1 The bearing lubrication system is to be arranged to provide a sufficient quantity of lubricant of a quality, viscosity and temperature acceptable to the bearing manufacturer under all ship operating conditions.

6.5.2 In addition to the requirements detailed in this Section, the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 3,8 as applicable are to be complied with.

6.5.3 For systems employing forced lubrication, the sampling points required by Pt 7, Ch 3,8.13.6 are to be located such that the sample taken is representative of the oil present at the bearing.

6.5.4 For lubricating oil systems employing gravity feed, the arrangements are to be such as to permit oil sampling and oil changes in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions for the safe and reliable operation of the propulsion system.

6.5.5 Where continuous operation of the lubricating oil system is essential for the pod to operate at its maximum continuous rating, a standby pump in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 3,8.2.2 is to be provided. In such systems, provision is to be made for the efficient filtration of the oil. The filters are to be capable of being cleaned without stopping the pod.

6.5.6 Where bearings are grease lubricated, means are to be provided for collecting waste grease to enable analysis for particulates and water. The arrangements for collecting waste grease are to be in accordance with the pod manufacturer's recommendations. Alternative arrangements which demonstrate that bearings are satisfactorily lubricated will be considered.

6.5.7 Pipework conveying lubricating oil is to be sited such that any possible leakage from joints will not impinge on electrical equipment, hot surfaces or other sources of ignition, see also Pt 7, Ch 2,2.8.2.

6.5.8 The procedures for flushing the lubrication system are to be defined. This procedure is to embrace the following conditions:

- (a) Initial installation.
- (b) Post maintenance situations.
- (c) Major dry-docking refits.

See Section 10.

## 6.6 Steering system

6.6.1 The requirements of Pt 6, Ch 1, Sections 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 8 and 9 are to be complied with where applicable. See also 3.1.

6.6.2 For vessels where a single podded propulsion unit is the sole means of propulsion, the requirement for auxiliary steering gear in Pt 6, Ch 1,4 is to be achieved by means of two or more identical power units.

6.6.3 Steering arrangements, other than of the hydraulic type, may be accepted provided that there are means of limiting the maximum torque to which the steering arrangement may be subjected.

6.6.4 The steering mechanism is to be provided with power that is sufficient for the maximum steering torques present during the declared functional capability identified in 3.1 and is to be demonstrated for the most onerous specified manoeuvring trial, see Section 9.

6.6.5 Geared arrangements employed for steering are to consider the following conditions:

- A design maximum dynamic duty steering torque,  $M_z$ , see 2.4.1;
- A static duty ( $\leq 10^3$  load cycles) steering torque. The static duty steering torque should not be less than  $M_W$ , the maximum torque which can be generated by the steering gear mechanism.

The minimum factors of safety, as derived using ISO 6336 Calculation of load capacity of spur and helical gears, or a recognised National Standard, are to be 1,5 on bending stress and 1,0 on Hertzian contact stress. The use of a duty factor in the dynamic duty strength calculations is acceptable but the derivation of such a factor, based on percentage of time spent at a percentage of the maximum working torque, should be submitted to LR for consideration and acceptance.

6.6.6 Slewing ring bearing capacity calculations are to take account of:

- Pod weight in water;
- Gyroscopic forces from the propeller and motor;
- Hydrodynamic loads on pod; and
- Forces due to ship's motions.

The calculations are to demonstrate that the factor of safety against the maximum combination of the above forces is not less than 2. The calculations are to be carried out in accordance with a suitable declared standard.

6.6.7 Means of allowing the condition of the slewing gears and bearings to be assessed are to be provided.

6.6.8 On multi podded ships, means are to be provided to secure each pod unit's slewing mechanism in its ahead or zero degree position in the event of a steering system failure. These arrangements are to be of sufficient strength to hold the pod in position at the ship's manoeuvring speed to be taken as not less than 7 knots, see also 6.3.9. Operating instructions displayed at the securing mechanism's operating position are to include a direction to inform the bridge of any limitation in ship's speed required as a result of the securing mechanism being activated.

## 6.7 Ventilation and cooling systems

6.7.1 Means are to be provided to ensure that air used for motor cooling purposes is of a suitable temperature and humidity as well as being free from harmful particles.

6.7.2 Cooling water supplies are to comply with Pt 7, Ch 3,7, see also Pt 10, Ch 1,9.6.1.

6.7.3 On single podded installations, a standby cooling arrangement of the same capacity as the main cooling system, is to be provided and available for immediate use.

6.7.4 For pods having an electric propulsion motor but no active cooling system, heat balance calculations as required by 2.2.1(w) are to demonstrate that the pod unit and associated systems are able to function satisfactorily over all operating conditions, see Pt 1, Ch 2,4.4.

## 6.8 Pod drainage requirements

6.8.1 Unless the electrical installation is suitable for operation in a flooded space, means are to be provided to ensure that leakage from shaft bearings or the propeller seal do not reach the motor windings, or other electrical components. Account is to be taken of cooling air flow circulating within the pod unit.

6.8.2 Where the design of a pod space has a requirement to be maintained in a dry condition, two independent means of drainage are to be provided so that liquid leakage may be removed from the pod unit at all design angles of heel and trim, see Pt 1, Ch 2,4.6.

6.8.3 Pipework conveying leakage from the pod is to be sited such that any leakage from joints will not impinge on electrical equipment, see also Pt 7, Ch 2,2.8.2.

## 6.9 Hydraulic actuating systems

6.9.1 Hydraulic actuating systems are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1,5 and Pt 7, Ch 5,11, as applicable.

## Section 7 Electrical equipment

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 The electrical installation is to be designed, constructed and installed in accordance with the requirements of Pt 10, Ch 1.

7.1.2 Means are to be provided to prevent electrical currents flowing across shaft bearings, which may cause their premature failure.

7.1.3 Steering gear electrical systems are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1,7.

7.1.4 Details are to be submitted to demonstrate the suitability of cables and busbars intended to operate at temperatures exceeding 95°C, see Pt 10, Ch 1,7.2.2 and 11.4.3.

# Podded Propulsion Units

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 4

Sections 7 & 8

## 7.2 Slip rings

7.2.1 Where slip rings are incorporated in the design, the details of the following are to be submitted for consideration:

- (a) temperature rise test reports;
- (b) maximum permitted temperature ratings and design operating temperatures for materials;
- (c) where applicable, arrangements for forced air or liquid cooling;
- (d) for data communication link slip rings, evidence to demonstrate compliance with Pt 9, Ch 1,2.11.3;
- (e) suitability for use under the conditions of vibration expected to arise in normal operation;
- (f) evidence of satisfactory operation under the normal angles of inclination given in Pt 10, Ch 1,1.10;
- (g) cable securing arrangements; and
- (h) evidence of electromagnetic compatibility of control, alarm and safety systems with power circuits.

7.2.2 Where forced cooling is used on slip rings, an alarm is to be initiated to indicate the failure of the forced cooling and it is to be possible to operate the slip ring at a reduced power level defined by the manufacturer in the event of failure of the forced cooling.

## Section 8 Control engineering arrangements

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 Control engineering arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 9, Ch 1.

8.1.2 Steering gear control, monitoring and alarm systems are to comply with Pt 6, Ch 1,6 and Ch 1,7.

8.1.3 Steering control is to be provided for podded drives from the navigating bridge and locally.

8.1.4 An indication of the angular position of the podded propulsion unit(s) and the magnitude of the thrust is to be provided at each station from which it is possible to control the direction of thrust. This indication is to be independent of the steering control system.

8.1.5 Means are to be provided at the remote control station(s), independent of the podded drive control system, to stop each podded drive in an emergency, *see also* Pt 10, Ch 1,16.4.7.

**Table 4.8.1 Additional alarms and safeguards for podded propulsion units**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Alarm                            | Note                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Podded drive azimuth angle                                                                                                                                                                            | —                                | Indicator, <i>see</i> 8.1.4                                                                   |
| Propulsion motors                                                                                                                                                                                     | Power supply failure             | To be indicated on the navigating bridge                                                      |
| Propulsion motor power limitation or automatic reduction                                                                                                                                              | Activated                        | <i>See also</i> Pt 10, Ch 1,16.4.9                                                            |
| Hydraulic oil system pressure                                                                                                                                                                         | Low                              | To be indicated on the navigating bridge                                                      |
| Bearing temperature                                                                                                                                                                                   | High                             | For grease lubricated bearings                                                                |
| Motor temperature                                                                                                                                                                                     | High                             | <i>See</i> Pt 10, Ch 1,16.1.4                                                                 |
| Lubricating oil supply pressure                                                                                                                                                                       | Low                              | If separate forced lubrication for shaft bearings; to be indicated on the navigating bridge   |
| Lubricating oil temperature                                                                                                                                                                           | High                             | <i>See also</i> Pt 10, Ch 1,16.5.9                                                            |
| Lubricating oil tank level for motor bearings                                                                                                                                                         | Low                              |                                                                                               |
| Water in lubricating oil for motor bearings                                                                                                                                                           | High                             | Required for single podded propulsion units only                                              |
| Motor cooling air inlet temperature                                                                                                                                                                   | High                             |                                                                                               |
| Motor cooling air outlet temperature                                                                                                                                                                  | High                             |                                                                                               |
| Motor cooling air flow                                                                                                                                                                                | Low                              |                                                                                               |
| Shaft bearing vibration monitoring                                                                                                                                                                    | High                             | <i>See</i> 6.3.10. Monitoring is to allow bearing condition to be gauged using trend analysis |
| Shaft sealing                                                                                                                                                                                         | Water ingress                    | <i>See</i> 6.3.13                                                                             |
| Dry space water pump operation                                                                                                                                                                        | Abnormal                         | Alarm set to indicate a frequency or duration exceeding that which would normally be expected |
| Dry space water level                                                                                                                                                                                 | 1st stage high<br>2nd stage high | —<br>Propulsion motor is to shut down automatically,<br><i>See</i> Note                       |
| Slip ring forced cooling                                                                                                                                                                              | Failure                          | <i>See</i> 7.2.2                                                                              |
| <b>NOTE</b><br>The second stage dry space water level high alarm is not needed where the electrical equipment installed within the pod is suitable for operation in flooded spaces, <i>see</i> 6.8.1. |                                  |                                                                                               |

# Podded Propulsion Units

# Volume 2, Part 4, Chapter 4

Sections 8, 9 & 10

8.1.6 Where programmable electronic equipment is used to prevent loads exceeding those for which the system has been designed (see 2.4.3), then either:

- (a) A fully independent hard wired back up is to be provided; or
- (b) The software is to be certified in accordance with LR's Software Conformity Assessment System – Assessment Module GEN1 (1994) and have an independent solution showing redundancy with design diversity, etc., see Pt 9, Ch 1,2.13.

8.1.7 Where a propulsion system which includes a podded propulsor unit is controlled by a series of interactive and integrated programmable electronic systems, then these are to comply with the requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1,2.14.

8.1.8 For electronic control systems and electrical actuating systems, an overall quality plan for sourcing, design, installation and testing is to address the following issues:

- (a) Standard(s) applied.
- (b) Details of the quality control system applied during manufacture and testing.
- (c) Details of type approval, type testing or approved type status assigned to the equipment.
- (d) Details of installation and testing recommendations for the equipment.
- (e) Details of any local and/or remote diagnostic arrangements where assessment and alteration of control parameters can be made which can affect the operation of the podded propulsor unit.
- (f) Software lifecycle activities, including configuration management and arrangements for software upgrades.

8.1.9 The quality plan referred to in 8.1.8 to identify the process for verification of the functional outputs from the electronic control systems with particular reference to system integrity, consistency, security against unauthorised changes to software and maintaining the outputs within acceptable tolerances of stated performance for safe and reliable operation of the podded propulsor unit.

8.1.10 For the permitted range of operating conditions, the control system is to be capable of protecting the podded propulsor from experiencing mechanical loads that may initiate damage while permitting the desired manoeuvres to take place.

## 8.2 Monitoring and alarms

8.2.1 The requirements for alarms and monitoring arrangements are to be in accordance with Pt 6, Ch 1,8.1 and Table 4.8.1. The alarms are in addition to the requirements of Pt 10, Ch 1,16.

8.2.2 Alarms specified in Table 4.8.1 are to be in accordance with the alarm system specified by Pt 9, Ch 1,2.3.

8.2.3 Sensors for control, monitoring and alarm systems required by the Rules and located within the pod are to be duplicated in order that a single sensor failure does not inhibit system functionality.

8.2.4 Pod unit dry space pumping arrangements are to function automatically in the event of a high liquid level being detected in the pod unit.

8.2.5 Spaces intended to be dry are to be provided with arrangements to indicate water ingress in accordance with 8.2.6 and Table 4.8.1.

8.2.6 The number and location of dry space level detectors are to be such that accumulation of liquids will be detected at all design angles of heel and trim.

8.2.7 Condition monitoring arrangements are not to interface with the operation of safety systems which may cause slow-down or shut-down of the propulsion system. See also Pt 9, Ch 1,2.6.9.

8.2.8 Means are to be provided to identify the cause of propulsion motor power limitation or automatic reduction.

## Section 9 Testing and trials

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 The following requirements are to be complied with:

- Pt 1, Ch 2,16 for sea trials.
- Pt 1, Ch 2,15 for steering trials.

In addition, the functional capability specified in 3.1.1 is to be demonstrated to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

9.1.2 The actual values of steering torque are to be verified during sea trials to confirm that the design maximum dynamic duty torque has not been exceeded.

9.1.3 Electric motor cooling systems are to be verified, as far as possible, to ensure that they are capable of limiting the extremes of ambient temperature to those specified in 2.3.1.

9.1.4 Any trials and testing identified from the FMEA report, see 2.5.4(f), are also to be carried out.

## Section 10 Installation, maintenance and replacement procedures

### 10.1 General

10.1.1 All podded propulsion units are to be supplied with a copy of the manufacturer's installation and maintenance manual that is pertinent to the actual equipment.

---

10.1.2 The manual required by 10.1.1 is to be placed on board and is to contain the following information:

- (a) Description of the podded propulsion unit with details of function and design operating limits. This is also to include details of support systems such as lubrication, cooling and condition monitoring arrangements.
  - (b) Identification of all components together with details of any that have a defined maximum operating life.
  - (c) Instructions for installation of unit(s) on board ship with details of any required specialised equipment.
  - (d) Instructions for commissioning at initial installation and following maintenance.
  - (e) Maintenance and service instructions to include inspection/renewal of bearings, seals, motors, slip rings and other major components. This is also to include component fitting procedures, special environmental arrangements, clearance and push-up measurements and lubricating oil treatment where applicable.
  - (f) Actions required in the event of fault/failure conditions being detected.
  - (g) Precautions to be taken by personnel working during installation and maintenance.
-

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2

Part 5 Shaft Vibration and Alignment

January 2013





---

|             |          |                                      |
|-------------|----------|--------------------------------------|
| PART        | 1        | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS                 |
| PART        | 2        | PRIME MOVERS                         |
| PART        | 3        | TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS                 |
| PART        | 4        | PROPULSION DEVICES                   |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT</b> |
|             |          | <b>Chapter 1 Torsional Vibration</b> |
|             |          | <b>2 Axial Vibration</b>             |
|             |          | <b>3 Lateral Vibration</b>           |
|             |          | <b>4 Shaft Alignment</b>             |
| PART        | 6        | STEERING SYSTEMS                     |
| PART        | 7        | PIPING SYSTEMS                       |
| PART        | 8        | PRESSURE PLANT                       |
| PART        | 9        | CONTROL ENGINEERING                  |
| PART        | 10       | ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING               |
| PART        | 11       | SUPPORT SYSTEMS                      |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.



---

|                |          |                                        |
|----------------|----------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>TORSIONAL VIBRATION</b>             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>            |
|                | 1.1      | Application                            |
|                | 1.2      | Power ratings                          |
|                | 1.3      | Basic requirements                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Details to be submitted</b>         |
|                | 2.1      | Particulars to be submitted            |
|                | 2.2      | Scope of calculations                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Design</b>                          |
|                | 3.1      | Symbols and definitions                |
|                | 3.2      | Limiting stress in propulsion shafting |
|                | 3.3      | Generator sets                         |
|                | 3.4      | Other auxiliary machinery systems      |
|                | 3.5      | Other machinery components             |
|                | 3.6      | Restricted speed and/or power ranges   |
|                | 3.7      | Tachometer accuracy                    |
|                | 3.8      | Governor control                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Measurements</b>                    |
|                | 4.1      | General requirements                   |
|                | 4.2      | Vibration monitoring                   |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>AXIAL VIBRATION</b>                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>            |
|                | 1.1      | Application                            |
|                | 1.2      | Power ratings                          |
|                | 1.3      | Basic requirements                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Details to be submitted</b>         |
|                | 2.1      | Particulars to be submitted            |
|                | 2.2      | Scope of calculations                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Design</b>                          |
|                | 3.1      | Symbols                                |
|                | 3.2      | Critical frequency of axial vibration  |
|                | 3.3      | Restricted speed ranges                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Measurements</b>                    |
|                | 4.1      | General requirements                   |
|                | 4.2      | Vibration monitoring                   |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>LATERAL VIBRATION</b>               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>            |
|                | 1.1      | Application                            |
|                | 1.2      | Power ratings                          |
|                | 1.3      | Basic requirements                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Details to be submitted</b>         |
|                | 2.1      | Particulars to be submitted            |
|                | 2.2      | Calculations                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Measurements</b>                    |
|                | 3.1      | General requirements                   |

---

|                |          |                                                                         |
|----------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>SHAFT ALIGNMENT</b>                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                             |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                                             |
|                | 1.2      | Basic requirements                                                      |
|                | 1.3      | Resilient mountings                                                     |
|                | 1.4      | Flexible couplings                                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Details to be submitted</b>                                          |
|                | 2.1      | Particulars to be submitted for approval – Shaft alignment calculations |
|                | 2.2      | Shaft alignment procedure                                               |
|                | 2.3      | Design and installation criteria                                        |
|                | 2.4      | Measurements                                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Shaft alignment calculations</b>                                     |
|                | 3.1      | Design calculations                                                     |

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Details to be submitted**
- 3 **Design**
- 4 **Measurements**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Section is to be read in conjunction with the requirements of Parts 1, 2, 3 and 4.

1.1.2 Unless otherwise advised, it is the responsibility of the Builder as main contractor to ensure, in co-operation with the Enginebuilders, that the information required by this Chapter is prepared and submitted.

1.1.3 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to the following systems:

- (a) Main propulsion systems formed by oil engines, turbines or electric motors, directly driven or geared to the shafting.
- (b) Machinery driven at constant speed by oil engines, developing 110 kW and over, for essential auxiliary services including generator sets which are the source of power for main electric propulsion motors.

### 1.2 Power ratings

1.2.1 In this Chapter where shaft power,  $P$ , in kW, and revolutions per minute,  $R$ , are referred to, the values to be used are those defined in Pt 1, Ch 2.4.3.

### 1.3 Basic requirements

1.3.1 System designs are to take account of the potential effects of engine and component malfunction and variability in characteristic values.

1.3.2 Where torques, stresses or amplitudes are found to exceed the limits for continuous operation, restrictions in speed and/or power will be imposed.

## ■ Section 2 Details to be submitted

### 2.1 Particulars to be submitted

2.1.1 Torsional vibration calculations, including an analysis of the vibratory torques and stresses for the full dynamic system.

2.1.2 Particulars of the division of power and utilisation, throughout the speed range, for turbines, multi-engine or other combined power installations, and those with power take-off systems. For multi-engined installations, special considerations associated with the possible variations in the mode of operation and phasing of engines.

2.1.3 Enginebuilder's harmonic torque data used in the torsional vibration calculations, see 2.2.3.

2.1.4 Details of operating conditions encountered in service for prolonged periods, e.g., idling speed, combinator characteristics for installations equipped with controllable pitch propellers.

2.1.5 Details, obtained from the manufacturers, of the principal characteristics of machinery components such as dampers and couplings, confirming their capability to withstand the effects of vibratory loading including, where appropriate, heat dissipation. Evidence that the data which is used to represent the characteristics of components, which has been quoted from other sources, is supported by a programme of physical measurement and control.

2.1.6 Where installations include electric motors, generators or non-integral pumps, drawings showing the principal dimensions of the shaft, together with the manufacturer's estimates of mass moment of inertia for the rotating parts.

2.1.7 Details of vibration or performance monitoring proposals where required.

### 2.2 Scope of calculations

2.2.1 Calculations are to be carried out, by recognised techniques, for the full dynamic system formed by the oil engines, turbines, motors, generators, flexible couplings, gearing, shafting and propeller, where applicable, including all branches.

2.2.2 Calculations are to give due consideration to the potential deviation in values used to represent component characteristics due to manufacturing/service variability.

2.2.3 The calculations carried out on oil engine systems are to be based on the Enginebuilders' harmonic torque data. The calculations are to take account of the effects of engine malfunction commonly experienced in service, such as a cylinder not firing (i.e., no injection but with compression) giving rise to the highest torsional vibration stresses in the shafting. Calculations are also to take account of a degree of imbalance between cylinders, characteristic of the normal operation of an engine under service conditions.

2.2.4 Whilst limits for torsional vibration stress in crankshafts are no longer stated explicitly, calculations are to include estimates of crankshaft stress at all designated operating/service speeds, as well as at any major critical speed.

2.2.5 Calculations are to take into account the possible effects of excitation from propeller rotation. Where the system shows some sensitivity to this phenomenon, propeller makers' data should be used as a basis for calculation, and submitted.

2.2.6 Where the torsional stiffness of flexible couplings varies with torque, frequency or speed, calculations should be representative of the appropriate range of effective dynamic stiffness.

## Section 3 Design

### 3.1 Symbols and definitions

3.1.1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

- $d$  = minimum diameter of shaft considered, in mm
- $d_i$  = diameter of internal bore, in mm
- $r$  = ratio  $N/N_s$  or  $N_c/N_s$  whichever is applicable
- $N$  = engine speed, in rev/min
- $N_c$  = critical speed, in rev/min
- $N_s$  = maximum continuous engine speed, in rev/min, or, in the case of constant speed generating sets, the full load speed, in rev/min
- $Q_s$  = rated full load mean torque, in N mm
- $\tau_c$  = permissible stress due to torsional vibrations for continuous operation, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\tau_t$  = permissible stress due to torsional vibrations for transient operation, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $\sigma_u$  = specified minimum tensile strength of the shaft material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
- $C_k$  = a factor for different shaft design features, see Table 1.3.1
- $C_d$  = a size factor defined as  $0,35 + 0,93d^{-0,2}$
- $k$  = the factor used in determining minimum shaft diameter, defined in Pt 3, Ch 2,4.2.1 and 4.4.3.
- $e$  = slot width, in mm
- $l$  = slot length, in mm.

3.1.2 Alternating torsional vibration stresses are to be based on half-range amplitudes of stress resulting from the alternating torque (which is superimposed on the mean torque) representing the synthesis of all harmonic orders present.

3.1.3 All vibration stress limits relate to the synthesis or measurement of total nominal torsional stress and are to be based on the plain section of the shafting neglecting stress raisers.

**Table 1.3.1  $C_k$  factors**

|                                                                                                                  |                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <b>Intermediate shafts with</b>                                                                                  |                  |
| Integral coupling flange and straight sections                                                                   | 1,0              |
| Shrink fit coupling                                                                                              | 1,0              |
| Keyway, tapered connection                                                                                       | 0,60             |
| Keyway, cylindrical connection                                                                                   | 0,45             |
| Radial hole                                                                                                      | 0,50             |
| Longitudinal slot                                                                                                | 0,30 (see 3.1.4) |
| <b>Thrust shafts external to engines</b>                                                                         |                  |
| On both sides of thrust collar                                                                                   | 0,85             |
| In way of axial bearing where a roller bearing is used as a thrust bearing                                       | 0,85             |
| <b>Propeller shafts</b>                                                                                          |                  |
| Flange mounted or keyless taper fitted propellers                                                                | 0,55             |
| Key fitted propellers                                                                                            | 0,55             |
| Between forward end of aft most bearing and forward stern tube seal                                              | 0,80             |
| NOTE                                                                                                             |                  |
| The determination of $C_k$ factors for shafts other than shown in this Table will be specially considered by LR. |                  |

3.1.4 For a longitudinal slot  $C_k = 0,3$  is applicable within the dimension limitations given in Pt 3, Ch 2,4.2.6. If the slot dimensions are outside these limitations, or if the use of another  $C_k$  is desired, the actual stress concentration factor ( $scf$ ) is to be documented or determined from 3.1.5, in which case:

$$C_k = \frac{1,45}{scf}$$

Note that the  $scf$  is defined as the ratio between the maximum local principal stress and  $\sqrt{3}$  times the nominal torsional stress (determined for the bored shaft without slots).

3.1.5 Stress concentration factor of slots. The stress concentration factor ( $scf$ ) at the ends of slots can be determined by means of the following empirical formulae:

$$scf = \alpha_{t(hole)} + 0,57 \frac{\frac{(l - e_h)}{d}}{\left(1 - \frac{d_1}{d}\right) \frac{e_h}{d}}$$

This formula applies to:

- Slots at 120 or 180 or 360 degrees apart.
- Slots with semicircular ends. A multi-radii slot end can reduce the local stresses, but this is not included in this empirical formula.
- Slots with no edge rounding (except chamfering), as any edge rounding increases the  $scf$  slightly.

$\alpha_{t(hole)}$  represents the stress concentration of radial holes and can be determined as:

$$\alpha_{t(hole)} = 2,3 - 3 \frac{e_h}{d} + 15 \left(\frac{e_h}{d}\right)^2 + 10 \left(\frac{e_h}{d}\right)^2 \left(\frac{d_i}{d}\right)^2$$

where

$e_h$  = hole diameter, in mm  
or simplified to  $\alpha_{t(hole)} = 2,3$ .

# Torsional Vibration

# Volume 2, Part 5, Chapter 1

Section 3

## 3.2 Limiting stress in propulsion shafting

3.2.1 The following stress limits apply to intermediate shafts, thrust shafts and to screwshafts fully protected from seawater. For screwshafts, the limits apply to the minimum section between the forward end of the propeller boss and the forward stern gland.

3.2.2 In the case of unprotected screwshafts, special consideration will be given.

3.2.3 In no part of the propulsion shafting system may the alternating torsional vibration stresses exceed the values of  $\tau_c$  for continuous operation, and  $\tau_t$  for transient running, given by the following formulae:

$$\tau_c = \frac{\sigma_u + 160}{18} C_k C_d (3 - 2r^2) \text{ for } r < 0,9 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\tau_c = \frac{\sigma_u + 160}{18} C_k C_d 1,38 \text{ for } 0,9 \leq r < 1,05 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

$$\tau_t = \pm 1,7 \tau_c \frac{1}{\sqrt{C_k}} \text{ for } r \leq 0,8$$

3.2.4 In general, the tensile strength of the steel used is to comply with the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2. For the calculation of the permissible limits of stresses due to torsional vibration,  $\sigma_u$  is not to be taken as more than 800 N/mm<sup>2</sup> in the case of alloy steel intermediate shafts or 600 N/mm<sup>2</sup> in the case of carbon and carbon-manganese steel intermediate, thrust and propeller shafts.

3.2.5 Where the scantlings of coupling bolts and straight shafting differ from the minimum required by the Rules, special consideration will be given.

## 3.3 Generator sets

3.3.1 Natural frequencies of the complete set are to be sufficiently removed from the firing impulse frequency at the full load speed, particularly where flexible couplings are interposed between the engine and generator.

3.3.2 Within the speed limits of  $0,95N_s$  and  $1,05N_s$  the vibration stresses in the transmission shafting are not to exceed the values given by the following formula:

$$\tau_c = \pm (21 - 0,014d) \text{ N/mm}^2$$

3.3.3 Vibration stresses in the transmission shafting due to critical speeds which have to be passed through in starting and stopping, are not to exceed the values given by the following formula:

$$\tau_t = 5,5 \tau_c$$

3.3.4 The amplitudes of total vibratory inertia torques imposed on the generator rotors are to be limited to  $\pm 2,0Q_s$  in general, or to  $\pm 2,5Q_s$  for close-coupled revolving field alternating current generators, over the speed range from  $0,95N_s$  to  $1,05N_s$ . Below  $0,95N_s$ , the amplitudes are to be limited to  $\pm 6,0Q_s$ . Where two or more generators are driven from one engine, each generator is to be considered separately in relation to its own rated torque.

3.3.5 The rotor shaft and structure are to be designed to withstand these magnitudes of vibratory torque. Where it can be shown that they are capable of withstanding a higher vibratory torque, special consideration will be given.

3.3.6 In addition to withstanding the vibratory conditions over the speed range from  $0,95N_s$  to  $1,05N_s$ , flexible couplings, if fitted, are to be capable of withstanding the vibratory torques and twists arising from transient criticals and short-circuit currents.

3.3.7 In the case of alternating current generators, resultant vibratory amplitudes at the rotor are not to exceed  $\pm 3,5$  electrical degrees under both full load working conditions and the malfunction condition mentioned in 2.2.3.

## 3.4 Other auxiliary machinery systems

3.4.1 The relevant requirements of 3.3.1, 3.3.2 and 3.3.3 are also applicable to other machinery installations such as pumps or compressors.

## 3.5 Other machinery components

3.5.1 **Torsional vibration dampers.** The use of dampers or detuners to limit vibratory stress due to resonances which occur within the range between  $0,85N_s$  and  $1,05N_s$  is to be considered. If fitted, these should be of a type which makes adequate provision for dissipation of heat. Where necessary, performance monitoring may be required.

### 3.5.2 Flexible couplings:

- Flexible couplings included in an installation are to be capable of transmitting the mean and vibratory loads without exceeding the makers' recommended limits for angular amplitude or heat dissipation.
- Where calculations indicate that the limits recommended by the manufacturer may be exceeded under misfiring conditions, a suitable means is to be provided for detecting and indicating misfiring. Under these circumstances, power and/or speed restriction may be required. Where machinery is non-essential, disconnection of the branch containing the coupling would be an acceptable action in the event of misfiring.

### 3.5.3 Gearing:

- The torsional vibration characteristics are to comply with the requirements of 2.2. The vibratory torque should not exceed one third of the full transmission torque throughout the speed range. In cases where the proposed transmission torque loading on the gear teeth is less than the maximum allowable, special consideration will be given the acceptance of additional vibratory loading on the gears.
- Where calculations indicate the possibility of torque reversal, the operating speed range is to be determined on the basis of observations during sea trials.

## 3.6 Restricted speed and/or power ranges

3.6.1 Restricted speed and/or power ranges will be imposed to cover all speeds where the stresses exceed the limiting values,  $\tau_c$ , for continuous running including one-cylinder misfiring conditions if intended to be continuously operated under such conditions. For controllable pitch propellers with the possibility of individual pitch and speed control, both full and zero pitch conditions are to be considered. Similar restrictions will be imposed, or other protective measures required to be taken, where vibratory torques or amplitudes are considered to be excessive for particular machinery items. At each end of the restricted speed range, the engine is to be stable in operation.

3.6.2 The restricted speed range is to take account of the tachometer speed tolerances at the barred speeds.

3.6.3 Critical responses which give rise to speed restrictions are to be arranged sufficiently removed from the maximum revolutions per minute to ensure that, in general, at  $r = 0,8$  the stress due to the upper flank does not exceed  $\tau_c$ .

3.6.4 Provided that the stress amplitudes due to a torsional critical response at the borders of the barred speed range are less than  $\tau_c$  under normal and stable operating conditions the speed restriction derived from the following formula may be applied:

$$\frac{16}{18-r} N_c \text{ to } \frac{18-r}{16} N_c \text{ inclusive.}$$

3.6.5 Where calculated vibration stresses due to criticals below  $0,8N_s$  marginally exceed  $\tau_c$  or where the critical speeds are sharply tuned, the range of revolutions restricted for continuous operation may be reduced.

3.6.6 In cases where the resonance curve of a critical speed has been derived from measurements, the range of revolutions to be avoided for continuous running may be taken as that over which the measured stresses are in excess of  $\tau_c$ , having regard to tachometer accuracy.

3.6.7 Where restricted speed ranges under normal operating conditions are imposed, notice boards are to be fitted at the control stations stating that the engine is not to be run continuously between the speed limits obtained as above, and the engine tachometers are to be marked accordingly.

3.6.8 Where vibration stresses approach the limiting value,  $\tau_t$ , the range of revolutions restricted for continuous operation may be extended. The notice boards are to indicate that this range must be passed through rapidly.

3.6.9 For excessive vibratory torque, stress or amplitude in other components, bases on 3.6.1 to 3.6.3, the limits of any speed/power restriction are to be such as to maintain acceptable levels during continuous operation.

3.6.10 Where the restrictions are imposed for the contingency of an engine malfunction or component failure, the limits are to be entered in the machinery operating manual.

3.6.11 There are to be no restricted speed ranges imposed above a speed ratio of  $r \geq 0,8$  under normal operating conditions.

3.6.12 Restricted speed ranges in one-cylinder misfiring conditions on ships with single engine propulsion are to enable safe navigation whereby sufficient propulsion power is available to maintain control of the ship.

## 3.7 Tachometer accuracy

3.7.1 Where restricted speed ranges are imposed as a condition of approval, the tachometer accuracy is to be checked against the counter readings, or by equivalent means, in the presence of the Surveyors to verify that it reads correctly within  $\pm 2$  per cent in way of the restricted range of revolutions.

## 3.8 Governor control

3.8.1 Where there is significant critical response above and close to the maximum service speed, consideration will be given to the effect of temporary overspeed.

# Section 4 Measurements

## 4.1 General requirements

4.1.1 Where calculations indicate that the limits for torsional vibration within the range of working speeds are exceeded, measurements, using an appropriate technique, may be taken from the machinery installation for the purpose of approval of torsional vibration characteristics, or determining the need for restricted speed ranges and the confirmation of their limits.

4.1.2 Where differences between calculated and measured levels of stress, torque or angular amplitude arise, the stress limits are to be applied to the stresses measured on the completed installation.

4.1.3 The method of measurement is to be appropriate to the machinery components and the parameters which are of concern. Where shaft stresses have been estimated from angular amplitude measurements, and are found to be close to limits, strain gauge techniques may be required. When measurements are required, detailed proposals are to be submitted.

## 4.2 Vibration monitoring

4.2.1 Where calculations and/or measurements have indicated the possibility of excessive vibratory stresses, torques or angular amplitudes in the event of a malfunction, vibration or performance monitoring, directly or indirectly, may be required.



## Section

- 1 General requirements
- 2 Details to be submitted
- 3 Design
- 4 Measurements

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Section is to be read in conjunction with the requirements of Parts 1, 2, 3 and 4.

1.1.2 Unless otherwise advised, it is the responsibility of the Builder as main contractor to ensure, in co-operation with the Enginebuilders, that the information required by this Chapter is prepared and submitted.

1.1.3 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to main propulsion systems formed by oil engines, turbines or electric motors, directly driven or geared to the shafting.

### 1.2 Power ratings

1.2.1 In this Chapter where shaft power,  $P$ , in kW, and revolutions per minute,  $R$ , are referred to, the values to be used are those defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.3.

### 1.3 Basic requirements

1.3.1 For all main propulsion systems, the Builders are to ensure that axial vibration amplitudes are satisfactory throughout the speed range. Where natural frequency calculations indicate significant axial vibration responses, sufficiently wide restricted speed ranges will be imposed. Alternatively, measurements may be used to determine the speed ranges at which amplitudes are excessive for continuous running.

## ■ Section 2 Details to be submitted

### 2.1 Particulars to be submitted

2.1.1 The results of calculations, together with recommendations for any speed restrictions found necessary.

2.1.2 The Enginebuilder's recommendation for axial vibration amplitude limits.

2.1.3 Estimate of flexibility of the thrust bearing and its supporting structure.

### 2.2 Scope of calculations

2.2.1 Calculations of axial vibration natural frequency are to be carried out using appropriate techniques, taking into account the effects of flexibility of the thrust bearing, for shaft systems where the propeller is:

- (a) Driven directly by a reciprocating internal combustion engine.
- (b) Driven via gears, or directly by an electric motor, and where the total length of shaft between propeller and thrust bearing is in excess of 60 times the intermediate shaft diameter.

2.2.2 Where an axial vibration damper is fitted, the calculations are to consider the effect of a malfunction of the damper.

## ■ Section 3 Design

### 3.1 Symbols

- 3.1.1 The symbols used in this Section are as follows:
- $D$  = outside diameter of shaft, taken as an average over length  $l$ , in mm
  - $d$  = internal diameter of shaft, in mm
  - $l$  = length of shaft line between propeller and thrust bearing, in mm
  - $m$  = mass of shaft line considered, in kg  
=  $0,785 (D^2 - d^2) Gl$
  - $M$  = dry mass of propeller, in kg
  - $A = \frac{m}{M}$
  - $M_e = M(A + 2)$
  - $n$  = number of propeller blades
  - $k$  = estimated stiffness at thrust block bearing, in N/m
  - $E$  = modulus of elasticity of shaft material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>
  - $G$  = density of shaft material, in kg/mm<sup>3</sup>
  - $N_c$  = critical speed, in rev/min.

### 3.2 Critical frequency of axial vibration

3.2.1 For those systems as defined in 2.2.1(b) the propeller speed at which the critical frequency occurs may be estimated using the following formula:

$$N_c = \frac{0,98}{n} \left( \frac{ab}{a+b} \right)^{1/2} \text{ rev/min}$$

where

$$a = \frac{E}{Gl^2} (66,2 + 97,5A - 8,88A^2)^2 \text{ c/min}^2$$

$$b = 91,2 \frac{k}{M_e} \text{ c/min}^2$$

3.2.2 Where the results of this method indicate the possibility of an axial vibration resonance in the vicinity of the maximum service speed, calculations using a more accurate method will be required.

### **3.3 Restricted speed ranges**

3.3.1 The limits of any speed restriction are to be such as to maintain axial amplitudes within recommended levels during continuous operation.

3.3.2 Limits of a speed restriction, where required, may be determined from calculation or on the basis of measurement.

3.3.3 Where a speed restriction is imposed for the contingency of a damper malfunction, the speed limits are to be entered in the operating manual and regular monitoring of the axial vibration amplitude is required. Details of proposals for monitoring are to be submitted.

---

## ■ *Section 4* **Measurements**

### **4.1 General requirements**

4.1.1 Where calculations indicate the possibility of excessive axial vibration amplitudes within the range of working speeds under normal or malfunction conditions, measurements are required to be taken from the shafting system for the purpose of determining the need for restricted speed ranges.

### **4.2 Vibration monitoring**

4.2.1 Where a vibration monitoring system is to be specified, details of proposals are to be submitted.

---

# Lateral Vibration

## Volume 2, Part 5, Chapter 3

Sections 1, 2 &amp; 3

### Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Details to be submitted**
- 3 **Measurements**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Section is to be read in conjunction with the requirements of Parts 1, 2, 3 and 4.

1.1.2 Unless otherwise advised, it is the responsibility of the Builder as main contractor to ensure, in co-operation with the Enginebuilders, that the information required by this Chapter is prepared and submitted.

1.1.3 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to main propulsion systems formed by oil engines, turbines or electric motors, directly driven or geared to the shafting.

1.1.4 For shafting enclosed within a gearbox, see Pt 3, Ch 1.

1.1.5 For diesel engine crankshaft and turbine rotor shafting, see Pt 2, Ch 1.

### 1.2 Power ratings

1.2.1 In this Chapter where shaft power,  $P$ , in kW, and revolutions per minute,  $R$ , are referred to, the values to be used are those defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.3.

### 1.3 Basic requirements

1.3.1 For all main propulsion shafting systems, the Builders are to ensure that lateral vibration characteristics are satisfactory throughout the speed range.

## ■ Section 2 Details to be submitted

### 2.1 Particulars to be submitted

2.1.1 Calculations of the lateral vibration characteristics of shafting systems having supports outboard of the hull or incorporating cardan shafts are to be submitted.

### 2.2 Calculations

2.2.1 The calculations in 2.1.1, taking account of bearing, oil-film (where applicable) and structural dynamic stiffnesses, are to investigate the excitation frequencies which may result in significant amplitudes within the speed range, and are to indicate relative deflections and bending moments throughout the shafting system.

2.2.2 The calculated natural frequencies of the system are to be compared to both the shaft rotational orders and propeller blade passing frequencies. Where cardan shafts are fitted, the shaft second rotational orders are also to be considered.

2.2.3 Requirements for calculations may be waived upon request provided evidence of satisfactory service experience of similar dynamic installations is submitted.

## ■ Section 3 Measurements

### 3.1 General requirements

3.1.1 Where calculations indicate the possibility of significant lateral vibration responses within the range of working speeds, measurements using an appropriate recognised technique may be required to be taken from the shafting system for the purpose of determining that hazardous whirling or excessive vibration does not occur.

3.1.2 The method of measurement is to be appropriate to the machinery arrangement and the modes of vibration which are of concern. When measurements are required, detailed proposals are to be submitted in advance.



# Shaft Alignment

# Volume 2, Part 5, Chapter 4

Sections 1 & 2

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Details to be submitted**
- 3 **Shaft alignment calculations**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Section is to be read in conjunction with the requirements of Parts 1, 2, 3 and 4.

1.1.2 Unless otherwise advised, it is the responsibility of the Builder as main contractor to ensure, in co-operation with the Enginebuilders that the information required by this Chapter is prepared and submitted.

1.1.3 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to main propulsion systems formed by oil engines, turbines or electric motors, directly driven or geared to the shafting.

### 1.2 Basic requirements

1.2.1 For main propulsion installations, the shafting is to be aligned to give reasonable bearing reactions and bending moments, and to meet any specified coupling conditions at the forward end of the shafting at all conditions of vessel loading and operation. The Builder is to position the bearings and construct the bearing seatings to minimise the effects of movements under all operating conditions.

1.2.2 Shaft alignment calculations are to be carried out for main propulsion shafting rotating at propeller speed, including the crankshaft of direct drive systems or the final reduction gear wheel on geared installations. The Builder is to make available shaft alignment procedures detailing the proposed alignment method and checks for these arrangements.

1.2.3 Calculations for single engine geared installations having a screwshaft diameter less than 300 mm are not required.

1.2.4 The shafting systems on naval ships may be required to operate under onerous conditions which may affect the shaft alignment and attention is drawn to Pt 1, Ch 2,3.3.4 regarding operation of machinery outside of its optimum envelope.

### 1.3 Resilient mountings

1.3.1 For resilient mountings, see Pt 1, Ch 2,5.7.

## 1.4 Flexible couplings

1.4.1 Where the shafting system incorporates flexible couplings, the effects of such couplings on the various modes of vibration are to be considered, see Chapters 2, 3 and 4.

## ■ Section 2 Details to be submitted

### 2.1 Particulars to be submitted for approval – Shaft alignment calculations

2.1.1 Shaft alignment calculations are to be submitted to LR for approval for the following shafting systems:

- (a) all geared installations where the screwshaft has a diameter of 300 mm or greater in way of the aftmost bearing;
- (b) all direct drive installations which incorporate three or fewer bearings supporting the intermediate and screwshaft aft of the prime mover;
- (c) where prime movers or shaftline bearings are installed on resilient mountings;
- (d) all systems where the screwshaft has a diameter of 800 mm or greater in way of the aftmost bearing.

2.1.2 Shaft alignment calculations are to take into account the:

- (a) thermal displacements of the bearings between cold static and hot dynamic machinery conditions;
- (b) buoyancy effect of the propeller immersion due to the ship's operating draught;
- (c) effect of predicted hull deformations over the range of the ship's operating draught, where known;
- (d) effect of filling the aft peak ballast tank upon the bearing loads, where known;
- (e) gear forces, where appropriate, due to prime-mover engagement on multiple-input single-output installations;
- (f) propeller offset thrust effects;
- (g) maximum allowed bearing wear for water or grease-lubricated sterntube bearings, and its effect on the bearing loads.

2.1.3 The shaft alignment calculations are to state the:

- (a) expected bearing loads at light and normal ballast, fully loaded and any other draughts deemed to be part of the ship's operating profile, for the machinery in cold and hot, static and dynamic conditions;
- (b) bearing influence coefficients and the deflection, slope, bending moment and shear force along the shaftline;
- (c) details of propeller offset thrust;
- (d) details of proposed slope-bore of the aftermost sterntube bearing, where applicable;
- (e) manufacturer's specified limits for bending moment and shear force at the shaft coupling of the gearbox/prime movers;
- (f) estimated bearing wear rates for water or grease-lubricated sterntube bearings;
- (g) expected hull deformation effects and their origin, viz. whether finite element calculations or measured results from sister or similar ships have been used;

- (h) anticipated thermal rise of prime movers and gearing units between cold static and hot running conditions; and
- (j) the manufacturer's allowable bearing loads.

## 2.2 Shaft alignment procedure

2.2.1 A shaft alignment procedure is to be made available for review and for the information of the attending Surveyors for all main propulsion installations detailing, as a minimum:

- (a) expected bearing loads at light and normal ballast, fully loaded and any other draughts deemed to be part of the ship's operating profile, for the machinery in cold and hot, static and dynamic conditions;
- (b) maximum permissible loads for the proposed bearing designs;
- (c) design bearing offsets from the straight line;
- (d) design gaps and sags;
- (e) location and loads for the temporary shaft supports;
- (f) expected relative slope of the shaft and the bearing in the aftermost sterntube bearing;
- (g) details of slope-bore of the aftermost sterntube bearing, where applied;
- (h) proposed bearing load measurement technique and its estimated accuracy;
- (j) jack correction factors for each bearing where the bearing load is measured using a specified jacking technique;
- (k) proposed shaft alignment acceptance criteria, including the tolerances; and
- (l) flexible coupling alignment criteria.

For water lubricated bearings in sternbushes and sterntubes, details of the piping system and means for verifying that the required water flow specified by the bearing manufacturers is being maintained. See also 4.16.

## 2.3 Design and installation criteria

2.3.1 For main propulsion installations, the shafting is to be aligned to give, in all conditions of ship loading and machinery operation, bearing load distribution satisfying the requirements of 2.3.2.

2.3.2 Design and installation of the shafting is to satisfy the following criteria:

- (a) The Builder is to position the bearings and construct the bearing seatings to minimise the effects of hull deflections under any of the ship's operating conditions with the aim of optimising the bearing load distribution.
- (b) Relative slope between the propeller shaft and the aftermost sterntube bearing is, in general, not to exceed  $3 \times 10^{-4}$  rad in the static condition.
- (c) Sterntube bearing loads are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 3, Ch 2, 4.16.
- (d) Bearings of synthetic material are to be verified as being within tolerance for ovality and straightness, circumferentially and longitudinally, after installation.

- (e) The sterntube forward bearing static load is to be sufficient to prevent unloading in all static and dynamic operating conditions, including the transient conditions experienced during manoeuvring turns and during operation in heavy weather.
- (f) Bearings of synthetic material are to be verified as being within tolerance for diameter, ovalness and straightness after installation.
- (g) Intermediate shaft bearings' loads are not to exceed 80 per cent of the bearing manufacturer's allowed maximum load for plain journal bearings, based on the bearing projected area.
- (h) Equipment manufacturer's bearing loads are to be within the gearbox manufacturer's specified limits, i.e., prime movers, gearing.
- (j) Resulting shear forces and bending moments are to meet the equipment manufacturer's specified coupling conditions.
- (k) The manufacturer's radial, axial and angular alignment limits for the flexible couplings are to be maintained.

## 2.4 Measurements

2.4.1 The system bearing load measurements are to be carried out to verify that the design loads have been achieved. In general, the measurements will be carried out by the jack-up measurement technique using calibrated equipment.

2.4.2 For the first vessel of a new design, an agreed programme of static shaft alignment measurements is to be carried out in order to verify that the shafting has been installed in accordance with the design assumptions and to verify the design assumptions in respect of the hull deflections and the effects of machinery temperature changes. The programme is to include static bearing load measurements in a number of selected conditions. Depending on the ship type and the operational loading conditions that are achievable prior to and during sea trials, these should include, where practicable, combinations of light ballast cold, full ballast cold, full ballast hot and full draught hot with aft peak tank empty and full.

2.4.3 For vessels of an existing design or similar to an existing design where evidence of satisfactory service experience is submitted for consideration and for subsequent ships in a series, a reduced set of measurements may be accepted. In such cases, the minimum set of measurements is to be sufficient to verify that the shafting has been installed in accordance with the design assumptions and is to include at least one cold and one hot representative condition.

2.4.4 Where calculations indicate that the system is sensitive to changes in alignment under different service conditions, the shaft alignment is to be verified by measurements during sea trials using an approved strain gauge technique.

## ■ Section 3

### Shaft alignment calculations

#### 3.1 Design calculations

3.1.1 The shaft alignment calculations required by 2.1.2 and 2.1.3 are to be in accordance with the requirements of 3.1.2 to 3.1.5.

3.1.2 For the purpose of the calculations, the following assumptions are to be made:

- (a) The shafting base line, to which all slopes and deflections are to be referred, is to be taken as the nominal centreline of the shafting as shown on the shafting arrangement plan. This is to be established as the line of sight on the vessel.
- (b) The centreline of the shaft at the mid-length of the bearing adjacent to the propeller lies on the nominal centreline of the shafting.
- (c) The centreline of the shaft at the mid-length of each of the other bearings lies initially on the nominal centreline of the shafting.
- (d) The propeller and shaft masses act at right angles to the nominal centreline.
- (e) The propeller and shaft weights are reduced due to immersion in water and oil as applicable.
- (f) The load distribution in the outboard bearings and sterntube bearings is not uniform along the bearing length.
- (g) The load on each plumper and bulkhead bearing is concentrated at the mid-length of the bearing.

3.1.3 The bearing loads corresponding with the shaft centreline at each bearing lying on the nominal centreline of the shafting are to be calculated together with a set of influence coefficients for each bearing. The set of influence coefficients for one bearing is to show for a downwards vertical displacement at that bearing of 0,25 mm, the change in load upon it and upon each of the other bearings.

3.1.4 If the distribution of the bearing loads corresponding with the shaft centreline at each bearing lying on the nominal centreline of the shafting is not acceptable, a satisfactory distribution of load is to be obtained by introducing vertical offsets of the bearings upwards or downwards as necessary.

3.1.5 In some arrangements, the disposition of the main gearbox relative to the nearest plumper block may result in an excessive bending stress in the shaft unless the main gear-wheel shaft bearings are assumed to carry the weight of the part of the intervening shafting in addition to the weight of the gearwheel and its shaft. In such arrangements, offsets for the main wheel bearings are to be selected to provide a distribution of load on the main gearwheel forward and aft bearings acceptable to the gearing designer.

3.1.6 Using the selected bearing offsets, the bending moment and deflection diagrams are to be drawn and the slopes through the sterntube and bracket bearings relative to a defined datum established both for as new and for maximum wear-down of outboard bearings.

3.1.7 To ensure that the shafting system will be supported at the slope and heights calculated, allowance is to be made for:

- (a) Bearing clearances.
- (b) Compression of bearing materials under load.
- (c) Expansion of bearing material due to immersion in water.

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2  
Part 6 Steering Systems  
January 2013



---

|             |          |                                |
|-------------|----------|--------------------------------|
| PART        | 1        | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS           |
| PART        | 2        | PRIME MOVERS                   |
| PART        | 3        | TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS           |
| PART        | 4        | PROPULSION DEVICES             |
| PART        | 5        | SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT  |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>STEERING SYSTEMS</b>        |
|             |          | <b>Chapter 1 Steering Gear</b> |
| PART        | 7        | PIPING SYSTEMS                 |
| PART        | 8        | PRESSURE PLANT                 |
| PART        | 9        | CONTROL ENGINEERING            |
| PART        | 10       | ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING         |
| PART        | 11       | SUPPORT SYSTEMS                |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

---

|                |          |                                                                           |
|----------------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>STEERING GEAR</b>                                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                               |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                                               |
|                | 1.2      | Definitions                                                               |
|                | 1.3      | General                                                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Particulars to be submitted</b>                                        |
|                | 2.1      | Submission of information                                                 |
|                | 2.2      | Plans                                                                     |
|                | 2.3      | Calculations and information                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Materials</b>                                                          |
|                | 3.1      | General                                                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Performance</b>                                                        |
|                | 4.1      | General                                                                   |
|                | 4.2      | Rudder angle limiters                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Design and construction</b>                                            |
|                | 5.1      | General                                                                   |
|                | 5.2      | Rudder, rudder stock, tiller and quadrant                                 |
|                | 5.3      | Components                                                                |
|                | 5.4      | Valve and relief valve arrangements                                       |
|                | 5.5      | Flexible hoses                                                            |
|                | 5.6      | Noise and vibration                                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Steering control systems</b>                                           |
|                | 6.1      | General                                                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Electrical power circuits and equipment</b>                            |
|                | 7.1      | Electric power circuits, electric control circuits, monitoring and alarms |
|                | 7.2      | Electric control circuits                                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b> | <b>Monitoring and alarms</b>                                              |
|                | 8.1      | Monitoring                                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b> | <b>Alternative sources of power and emergency operation</b>               |
|                | 9.1      | Alternative sources of power                                              |
|                | 9.2      | Emergency hand pump operation                                             |
|                | 9.3      | Emergency capability                                                      |

# Steering Gear

# Volume 2, Part 6, Chapter 1

Sections 1 & 2

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Particulars to be submitted**
- 3 **Materials**
- 4 **Performance**
- 5 **Design and construction**
- 6 **Steering control systems**
- 7 **Electrical power circuits and equipment**
- 8 **Monitoring and alarms**
- 9 **Alternative sources of power and emergency operation**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to the design and construction of steering gear and are to be read in conjunction with the requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems in Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2.

1.1.2 Consideration will be given to other cases, or to arrangements which are equivalent to those required by the Rules.

1.1.3 Attention is to be given to any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority.

### 1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 **Steering gear control system** means the equipment by which orders are transmitted from the navigating bridge to the steering gear power units. Steering gear control systems comprise transmitters, receivers, hydraulic control pumps and their associated motors, motor controllers, piping and cables.

1.2.2 **Main steering gear** means the machinery, rudder actuator(s), the steering gear power units, if any, and ancillary equipment and the means of applying torque to the rudder-stock (e.g., tiller or quadrant) necessary for effecting movement of the rudder for the purpose of steering the ship under normal service conditions.

1.2.3 **Steering gear power unit** means:

- (a) in the case of electric steering gear, an electric motor and its associated electrical equipment;
- (b) in the case of electro-hydraulic steering gear, an electric motor and its associated electrical equipment and connected pump;

(c) in the case of other hydraulic steering gear, a driving engine and connected pump.

1.2.4 **Auxiliary steering gear** means the equipment other than any part of the main steering gear necessary to steer the ship in the event of failure of the main steering gear but not including the tiller, quadrant or components serving the same purpose.

1.2.5 **Power actuating system** means the hydraulic equipment provided for supplying power to turn the rudder stock, comprising a steering gear power unit or units, together with the associated pipes and fittings, and a rudder actuator. The power actuating systems may share common mechanical components, i.e., tiller quadrant and rudder stock, or components serving the same purpose.

1.2.6 **Maximum ahead service speed** means the maximum service speed which the ship is designed to maintain, at the summer load waterline at maximum propeller RPM and corresponding engine MCR.

1.2.7 **Rudder actuator** means the components which convert directly hydraulic pressure into mechanical action to move the rudder.

1.2.8 **Maximum working pressure** means the maximum expected pressure in the system when the steering gear is operated to comply with 4.1.2(b).

### 1.3 General

1.3.1 The steering gear is to be secured to the seating by fitted bolts, and suitable chocking arrangements are to be provided. The seating is to be of substantial construction.

1.3.2 The steering gear compartment is to be:

- (a) readily accessible and, as far as practicable, separated from machinery spaces; and
- (b) provided with suitable arrangements to ensure working access to steering gear machinery and controls. These arrangements are to include handrails and gratings or other non-slip surfaces to ensure suitable working conditions in the event of hydraulic fluid leakage.

## ■ Section 2 Particulars to be submitted

### 2.1 Submission of information

2.1.1 At least three copies of the plans and information detailed in 2.2 and 2.3 are to be submitted.

# Steering Gear

# Volume 2, Part 6, Chapter 1

Sections 2, 3 & 4

## 2.2 Plans

2.2.1 Detailed plans of all load bearing and torque transmitting components and hydraulic pressure retaining parts of the steering system together with proposed rated torque, all relief valve settings and scantlings.

2.2.2 Schematic of the hydraulic system(s), together with pipe material, relief valves and working pressures.

2.2.3 Details of control and electrical aspects.

## 2.3 Calculations and information

2.3.1 The manoeuvring characteristics for which the ship has been designed.

2.3.2 Where the Naval Authority defines rudder roll stabilisation requirements, details of the system are to be submitted. The control engineering systems are to be in accordance with Pt 9, Ch 1.

2.3.3 Material specifications.

2.3.4 A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) as required by Pt 1, Ch 2 is to be submitted. The FMEA is to address the steering system and is to include the following associated sub-systems:

- Hydraulic.
- Securing/mounting.
- Control and monitoring.
- Electrical power supplies.

It is not necessary to consider failure modes relating to the steering gear components.

2.3.5 Noise and vibration acceptance levels for the steering equipment and compartment defined by the Naval Authority, where applicable.

## Section 3 Materials

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 All the steering gear components are to be of sound reliable construction to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

3.1.2 All components transmitting mechanical forces to the rudder stock are to be tested according to the requirements of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

3.1.3 Ram cylinders; pressure housings of rotary vane type actuators, hydraulic power piping, valves, flanges and fittings; and all steering gear components transmitting mechanical forces to the rudder stock (such as tillers, quadrants, or similar components) are to be of steel or other approved ductile material, duly tested in accordance with the requirements of the Rules for Materials. In general, such material is to have an elongation of not less than 12 per cent nor a tensile strength in excess of 650 N/mm<sup>2</sup>. Special consideration will be given to the acceptance of grey cast iron for valve bodies and redundant parts with low stress levels.

3.1.4 Where appropriate, consideration will be given to the acceptance of non-ferrous material.

## Section 4 Performance

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Unless the main steering gear comprises two or more identical power units, in accordance with 4.1.4, every ship is to be provided with a main steering gear and an auxiliary steering gear in accordance with the requirements of the Rules. The main steering gear and the auxiliary steering gear is to be so arranged that the failure of one of them will not render the other one inoperative.

4.1.2 The main steering gear and rudder stock is to be:

- (a) of adequate strength and capable of steering the ship at maximum ahead service speed which shall be demonstrated in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 2, 15.4.2;
- (b) capable of putting the rudder over from 35° on one side to 35° on the other side with the ship at its deepest seagoing draught and running ahead at maximum ahead service speed and under the same conditions, from 35° on either side to 30° on the other side in not more than 28 seconds;
- (c) operated by power where necessary to meet the requirements of (b) and in any case when the Rules, excluding strengthening for navigation in ice, require a rudder stock over 120 mm diameter in way of the tiller; and
- (d) so designed that they will not be damaged at maximum astern speed; however, this design requirement need not be proved by trials at maximum astern speed and maximum rudder angle.

4.1.3 The auxiliary steering gear is to be:

- (a) of adequate strength and capable of steering the ship at navigable speed and of being brought speedily into action in an emergency;
- (b) capable of putting the rudder over from 15° on one side to 15° on the other side in not more than 60 seconds with the ship at its deepest seagoing draught and running ahead at one half of the maximum ahead service speed or 7 knots, whichever is the greater; and
- (c) operated by power where necessary to meet the requirements of (b) and in any case when the Rules, excluding strengthening for navigation in ice, require a rudder stock over 230 mm diameter in way of the tiller.

# Steering Gear

# Volume 2, Part 6, Chapter 1

Sections 4 & 5

4.1.4 Where the main steering gear comprises two or more identical power units, an auxiliary steering gear need not be fitted, provided that the main steering gear is capable of operating the rudder as required by 4.1.2(b) while any one of the power units is out of operation.

4.1.5 Main and auxiliary steering gear power units are to be:

- (a) Arranged to re-start automatically when power is restored after power failure.
- (b) Capable of being brought into operation from each steering position. In the event of a power failure to any one of the steering gear power units, an audible and visual alarm is to be given at each steering position.
- (c) Arranged so that transfer between units can be readily effected.

4.1.6 Where the steering gear is so arranged that more than one power or control system can be simultaneously operated, the risk of hydraulic locking caused by a single failure is to be considered.

4.1.7 A means of communication is to be provided between the navigating bridge and the steering gear compartment.

4.1.8 Steering gear, other than of the hydraulic type, will be accepted provided the standards are considered equivalent to the requirements of this Section.

4.1.9 Manually operated gears are only acceptable when the operation does not require an effort exceeding 16 kg under normal conditions.

## 4.2 Rudder angle limiters

4.2.1 Power-operated steering gears are to be provided with positive arrangements, such as limit switches, for stopping the gear before the rudder stops are reached. These arrangements are to be synchronised with the gear itself and not with the steering gear control.

## Section 5 Design and construction

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 Rudder actuators are to be designed in accordance with the relevant requirements of Pt 8, Ch 2 for Class I pressure vessels (notwithstanding any exemptions for hydraulic cylinders).

5.1.2 Accumulators, if fitted, are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 8, Ch 2.

5.1.3 The welding details and welding procedures are to be approved. All welded joints within the pressure boundary of a rudder actuator or connecting parts transmitting mechanical loads are to be full penetration type or of equivalent strength.

5.1.4 The construction is to be such as to minimise local concentrations of stress.

5.1.5 The design pressure for calculations to determine the scantlings of piping and other steering gear components subjected to internal hydraulic pressure shall be at least 1,25 times the maximum working pressure to be expected under the operational conditions specified in 4.1.2(b), taking into account any pressure which may exist in the low pressure side of the system. Fatigue criteria may be applied for the design of piping and components, taking into account pulsating pressures due to dynamic loads.

5.1.6 For the rudder actuator, the permissible primary general membrane stress is not to exceed the lower of the following values:

$$= \frac{\sigma_B}{A} \text{ or } \frac{\sigma_y}{B}$$

where

$\sigma_B$  = specified minimum tensile strength of material at ambient temperature

$\sigma_y$  = specified minimum yield stress or 0,2 per cent proof stress of the material, at ambient temperature

A and B are given by the following Table:

|   | <i>Wrought<br/>steel</i> | <i>Cast<br/>steel</i> | <i>Nodular<br/>cast iron</i> |
|---|--------------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| A | 3,5                      | 4                     | 5                            |
| B | 1,7                      | 2                     | 3                            |

### 5.2 Rudder, rudder stock, tiller and quadrant

5.2.1 For the requirements of rudder and rudder stock, see Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3,2.

5.2.2 For the requirements of tillers and quadrants including the tiller to stock connection, see Table 1.5.1.

5.2.3 The factor of safety against slippage, S (i.e., for torque transmission by friction) is generally based on

$$S = \frac{\text{the torque transmissible by friction}}{M}$$

where

M is the maximum torque at the relief valve pressure which is generally equal to the design torque as specified by the steering gear manufacturer.

**Table 1.5.1** Connection of tiller to stock (see continuation)

| Item                                                                                                                                                                              | Requirements                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Dry fit – tiller to stock<br>(see also 5.2.3 and 5.2.4)                                                                                                                       | <p>(a) For keyed connection, factor of safety against slippage, <math>S = 1,0</math><br/>The maximum stress in the fillet radius of the tiller keyway should not exceed the yield stress<br/>For conical sections, the cone taper should be <math>\leq 1:10</math></p> <p>(b) For keyless connection, factor of safety against slippage, <math>S = 2,0</math><br/>The maximum equivalent von Mises stress should not exceed the yield stress<br/>For conical sections, the cone taper should be <math>\leq 1:15</math></p> <p>(c) Coefficient of friction (maximum) = 0,17</p> <p>(d) Grip stress not to be less than 20 N/mm<sup>2</sup></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| (2) Hydraulic fit – tiller to stock<br>(see also 5.2.3 and 5.2.4)                                                                                                                 | <p>(a) For keyed connection, factor of safety against slippage, <math>S = 1,0</math><br/>The maximum stress in the fillet radius of the tiller keyway should not exceed the yield stress<br/>For conical sections, the cone taper should be <math>\leq 1:10</math></p> <p>(b) For keyless connection, factor of safety against slippage, <math>S = 2,0</math><br/>The maximum equivalent von Mises stress should not exceed the yield stress<br/>For conical sections, the cone taper should be <math>\leq 1:15</math></p> <p>(c) Coefficient of friction (maximum) = 0,14</p> <p>(d) Grip stress not to be less than 20 N/mm<sup>2</sup></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| (3) Ring locking assemblies fit – tiller to stock                                                                                                                                 | <p>(a) Factor of safety against slippage, <math>S = 2,0</math><br/>The maximum equivalent von Mises stress should not exceed the yield stress</p> <p>(b) Coefficient of friction = 0,12</p> <p>(c) Grip stress not to be less than 20 N/mm<sup>2</sup></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| (4) Bolted tiller and quadrant<br>(this arrangement could be accepted provided the proposed rudder stock diameter in way of tiller does not exceed 350 mm diameter) (see Symbols) | <p>Shim to be fitted between two halves before machining to take rudder stock, then removed prior to fitting</p> <p>Minimum thickness of shim,<br/>For 4 connecting bolts: <math>t_s = 0,0014 \delta_{su}</math> mm<br/>For 6 connecting bolts: <math>t_s = 0,0012 \delta_{su}</math> mm</p> <p>Key(s) to be fitted</p> $\delta_T = \frac{0,60 \delta_{su}}{\sqrt{n_T}} \text{ mm}$ <p>Diameter of bolts, <math>\delta_T = \frac{0,60 \delta_{su}}{\sqrt{n_T}} \text{ mm}</math></p> <p>A predetermined setting-up load equivalent to a stress of approximately 0,7 of the yield strength of the bolt material should be applied to each bolt on assembly. A lower stress may be accepted provided that two keys, complying with item (5), are fitted.</p> <p>Distance from centre of stock to centre of bolts should generally be equal to</p> $\delta_{su} \left( 1,0 + \frac{0,30}{\sqrt{n_T}} \right)$ <p>Thickness of flange on each half of the bolted tiller <math>\geq \frac{0,30}{n_T} \text{ mm}</math></p> |
| (5) Key/keyway<br>(see Symbols)                                                                                                                                                   | <p>Effective sectional area of key in shear <math>\geq 0,25 \delta_{su}^2 \text{ mm}^2</math></p> <p>Key thickness <math>\leq 0,17 \delta_{su} \text{ mm}</math></p> <p>Keyway is to extend over full depth of tiller and is to have a rounded end. Keyway root fillets are to be provided with suitable radii to avoid high local stress</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| (6) Section modulus – tiller arm (at any point within its length about vertical axis)<br>(see Symbols)                                                                            | <p>To be not less than the greater of:</p> <p>(a) <math>Z_{TA} = \frac{0,15 \delta_{su}^3 (b_T - b_s)}{1000 b_T} \text{ cm}^3</math></p> <p>(b) <math>Z_{TA} = \frac{0,06 \delta_{su}^3 (b_T - 0,9 \delta_{su})}{1000 b_T} \text{ cm}^3</math></p> <p>If more than one arm is fitted, combined modulus is to be not less than the greater of (a) or (b)</p> <p>For solid tillers, the breadth to depth ratio is not to exceed 2</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| (7) Boss<br>(see Symbols)                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Depth of boss <math>\geq \delta_{su}</math></p> <p>Thickness of boss in way of tiller <math>\geq 0,4 \delta_{su}</math></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

## Steering Gear

## Volume 2, Part 6, Chapter 1

Section 5

**Table 1.5.1** Connection of tiller to stock (conclusion)

| Symbols                                                                                                              |                                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $b_s$ = distance between the section of the tiller arm under consideration and the centre of the rudder stock, in mm | $t_s$ = thickness of shim for machining bolted tillers and quadrants, in mm        |
| NOTE<br>$b_T$ and $b_s$ are to be measured with zero rudder angle                                                    | $Z_{TA}$ = section modulus of tiller arm, in cm <sup>3</sup>                       |
| $b_T$ = distance from the point of application of the load on the tiller to the centre of the rudder stock, in mm    | $\delta_{su}$ = Rule rudderstock diameter in way of tiller (see Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3) |
| $n_T$ = number of bolts in the connection flanges, but generally not to be taken greater than six                    | $\delta_T$ = diameter of bolts securing bolted tillers and quadrants, in mm        |

5.2.4 For conical sections, S is based on the following equation:

$$S = \frac{\mu A \sigma_r}{\sqrt{(W + A \sigma_r \tau)^2 + Q^2}}$$

where

$A$  = interfacial surface area, in mm<sup>2</sup>

$W$  = weight of rudder and stock, if applicable, when tending to separate the fit, in N

$Q$  = shear force =  $\frac{2M}{d_m}$  in N

where  $d_m$  in mm is the mean contact diameter of tiller/stock interface and  $M$ , in Nmm is defined in 1.6.3

$\theta$  = cone taper half angle in radians (e.g. for cone taper 1:10,  $\theta = 0,05$ )

$\mu$  = coefficient of friction

$\sigma_r$  = radial interfacial pressure or grip stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

### 5.3 Components

5.3.1 Special consideration is to be given to the suitability of any essential component which is not duplicated. Any such essential component shall, where appropriate, utilise anti-friction bearings such as ball bearings, roller bearings or sleeve bearings which shall be permanently lubricated or provided with lubrication fittings.

5.3.2 All steering gear components transmitting mechanical forces to the rudder stock, which are not protected against overload by structural rudder stops or mechanical buffers, are to have a strength at least equivalent to that of the rudder stock in way of the tiller.

5.3.3 Actuator oil seals between non-moving parts, forming part of the external pressure boundary, are to be of the metal upon metal type or of an equivalent type.

5.3.4 Actuator oil seals between moving parts, forming part of the external pressure boundary, are to be duplicated, so that the failure of one seal does not render the actuator inoperative. Alternative arrangements providing equivalent protection against leakage may be accepted.

5.3.5 Piping, joints, valves, flanges and other fittings are to comply within the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1 for Class I piping systems components. The design pressure is to be in accordance with 5.1.5.

5.3.6 Hydraulic power operated steering gear is to be provided with the following:

- Arrangements to maintain the cleanliness of the hydraulic fluid, taking into consideration the type and design of the hydraulic system.
- A fixed storage tank having sufficient capacity to recharge at least one power actuating system including the reservoir, where the main steering gear is required to be power operated. The storage tank is to be permanently connected by piping in such a manner that the hydraulic systems can be readily recharged from a position within the steering gear compartment and provided with a contents gauge.

### 5.4 Valve and relief valve arrangements

5.4.1 For vessels with non-duplicated actuators, isolating valves are to be fitted at the connection of pipes to the actuator, and are to be directly fitted on the actuator.

5.4.2 Arrangements for bleeding air from the hydraulic system are to be provided, where necessary.

5.4.3 Relief valves are to be fitted to any part of the hydraulic system which can be isolated and in which pressure can be generated from the power source or from external forces. The settings of the relief valves is not to exceed the design pressure. The valves are to be of adequate size and so arranged as to avoid an undue rise in pressure above the design pressure.

5.4.4 Relief valves for protecting any part of the hydraulic system which can be isolated, as required by 5.4.3, are to comply with the following:

- The setting pressure is not to be less than 1,25 times the maximum working pressure.
- the minimum discharge capacity of the relief valve(s) is not to be less than 110 per cent of the total capacity of the pumps which can deliver through it (them). Under such conditions the rise in pressure is not to exceed 10 per cent of the setting pressure. In this regard, due consideration is to be given to extreme foreseen ambient conditions in respect of oil viscosity.



## 5.5 Flexible hoses

5.5.1 Hose assemblies approved by LR may be installed between two points where flexibility is required but are not to be subjected to torsional deflection (twisting) under normal operating conditions. In general, the hose should be limited to the length necessary to provide for flexibility and for proper operation of machinery, see also Pt 7, Ch 1,13.

5.5.2 Hoses should be high pressure hydraulic hoses according to recognised Standards and suitable for the fluids, pressures, temperatures and ambient conditions in question.

5.5.3 Burst pressure of hoses is to be not less than four times the design pressure.

## 5.6 Noise and vibration

5.6.1 The reduction of airborne noise, and the structural vibration caused by the steering equipment, is to be regarded as an essential part of the design. The noise and vibration acceptance levels are normally to be defined by the Naval Authority for each ship. The techniques to be employed to achieve this are:

- (a) Reduction of noise and vibration at source.
- (b) Control of noise and vibration transmission paths by use of vibration mounting systems, structural damping, hydraulic silencers and flexible pipes.

5.6.2 All possible noise and vibration transmission paths are to be considered to eliminate noise shorts.

## Section 6 Steering control systems

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 Steering gear control is to be provided:

- (a) For the main steering gear, both on the navigating bridge and in the steering gear compartment.
- (b) Where the main steering gear is arranged according to 4.1.4, by two independent control systems, both operable from the navigating bridge. This does not require duplication of the steering wheel or steering lever. Where the control system consists of a hydraulic telemotor, a second independent system need not be fitted.
- (c) For the auxiliary steering gear, in the steering gear compartment and, if power operated, it shall also be operable from the navigating bridge and is to be independent of the control system for the main steering gear.
- (d) Where the steering gear is so arranged that more than one control system can be simultaneously operated, the risk of hydraulic locking caused by single failure is to be considered.

6.1.2 Any main and auxiliary steering gear control system operable from the navigating bridge is to comply with the following:

- (a) Means are to be provided in the steering gear compartment for disconnecting any control system operable from the navigating bridge from the steering gear it serves.
- (b) The system is to be capable of being brought into operation from a position on the navigating bridge.

6.1.3 The angular position of the rudder shall:

- (a) If the main steering gear is power operated, be indicated at all conning positions. The rudder angle indication is to be independent of the steering gear control system.
- (b) Be recognisable in the steering gear compartment.

6.1.4 Appropriate operating instructions with a block diagram showing the change-over procedures for steering gear control systems and steering gear actuating systems are to be permanently displayed in the wheel-house and in the steering gear compartment.

6.1.5 Where the system failure alarms for hydraulic lock (see Table 1.8.1) are provided, appropriate instructions shall be placed on the navigating bridge to shut down the system at fault.

## Section 7 Electrical power circuits and equipment

### 7.1 Electric power circuits, electric control circuits, monitoring and alarms

7.1.1 Short circuit protection, an overload alarm and, in the case of polyphase circuits, an alarm to indicate single phasing are to be provided for each main and auxiliary motor circuit. Protective devices are to operate at not less than twice the full load current of the motor or circuit protected and are to allow excess current to pass during the normal accelerating period of the motors.

7.1.2 The alarms required by 7.1.1 are to be provided on the bridge and in the main machinery space or control room from which the main machinery is normally controlled.

7.1.3 Indicators for running indication of each main and auxiliary motor are to be installed on the navigating bridge and at a suitable main machinery control position.

7.1.4 A low-level alarm is to be provided for each power actuating system hydraulic fluid reservoir to give the earliest practicable indication of hydraulic fluid leakage. Alarms are to be given on the navigation bridge and in the machinery space where they can be readily observed.

7.1.5 Two exclusive circuits are to be provided for each electric or electrohydraulic steering gear arrangement consisting of one or more electric motors.



# Steering Gear

# Volume 2, Part 6, Chapter 1

Sections 7 & 8

7.1.6 Each of these circuits is to be fed from the main switchboard. One of these circuits may pass through the emergency switchboard.

7.1.7 One of these circuits may be connected to the motor of an associated auxiliary electric or electrohydraulic power unit.

7.1.8 Each of these circuits is to have adequate capacity to supply all the motors which can be connected to it and which can operate simultaneously.

7.1.9 These circuits are to be separated throughout their length as widely as is practicable.

7.1.10 Where agreed by the Naval Authority, in ships of category NS3, if an auxiliary steering gear is not electrically powered or is powered by an electric motor primarily intended for other services, the main steering gear may be fed by one circuit from the main switchboard. Consideration would be given to other protective arrangements than described in 7.1.1, for such a motor primarily intended for other services.

## 7.2 Electric control circuits

7.2.1 Electric control systems are to be independent and separated as far as is practicable throughout their length.

7.2.2 Each main and auxiliary electric control system which is to be operated from the navigating bridge is to comply with the following:

- (a) It is to be served with electric power by a separate circuit supplied from the associated steering gear power circuit, from a point within the steering gear compartment, or directly from the same section of switchboard busbars, main or emergency, to which the associated steering gear power circuit is connected.
- (b) Each separate circuit is to be provided with short circuit protection only.

**Table 1.8.1 Alarms**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Alarm                    | Note                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Angular position of the Steering Mechanism                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | —                        | Indication, see 8.1.2                                                                                                        |
| Steering power units, power                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Failure<br>Failure       | See 8.1.4<br>—                                                                                                               |
| Steering motors                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Overload<br>Single phase | For alarm and running indication locations, see 7.1.2 and 7.1.3                                                              |
| Control system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Failure                  | See 8.1.4                                                                                                                    |
| Control system power                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Failure                  | —                                                                                                                            |
| Steering gear hydraulic oil level                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Low                      | Each reservoir to be monitored<br>For alarm locations, see 7.1                                                               |
| Auto pilot                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Failure                  | Running indication                                                                                                           |
| Hydraulic oil temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | High                     | Where oil cooler is fitted                                                                                                   |
| Hydraulic lock                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Fault                    | Where more than one system (either power or control) can be operated simultaneously each system is to be monitored, see Note |
| Hydraulic oil filter differential pressure                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | High                     | When oil filters are fitted                                                                                                  |
| <b>NOTE</b><br>This alarm is to identify the system at fault and to be activated when (for example): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Position of the variable displacement pump control system does not correspond with given order; or</li> <li>incorrect position of 3-way full flow valve or similar in constant delivery pump system is detected.</li> </ul> |                          |                                                                                                                              |

8.1.2 The angular position of the steering mechanism is to:

- (a) Where the main steering unit is power operated, be indicated at the control station, and other positions as applicable. The angular indication is to be independent of the steering unit control system; and is to indicate any abnormal responses or malfunctions. The logic of such feedback and indications is to be consistent with the other alarms and indications so that in an emergency operators are unlikely to be confused.
- (b) Be recognisable in the steering unit compartment, if applicable.

8.1.3 The alarms described in Table 1.8.1 are to be indicated on the navigating bridge and the additional locations described and are to be in accordance with the alarm system specified by Pt 9, Ch 1.

## Section 8 Monitoring and alarms

### 8.1 Monitoring

8.1.1 Alarms and monitoring requirements are indicated in 8.1.2 to 8.1.4 and Table 1.8.1.

8.1.4 Steering control systems are to be monitored and an audible and visual alarm is to be initiated on the navigation bridge in the event of:

- failure of the control system, including command and feedback circuits; or
- unacceptable deviation between the rudder order and actual rudder position and/or unacceptable delay in response to changes in the rudder order.

## ■ Section 9 Alternative sources of power and emergency operation

### 9.1 Alternative sources of power

9.1.1 An alternative power supply sufficient to supply the steering gear power unit that complies with the requirements of 4.1.2 and also its associated control systems and rudder angle indicator, is to be provided automatically, within 45 seconds of loss of the main power supply, either from an emergency or alternative source of electrical power complying with Pt 10, Ch 1,3 or from an independent source of power located in the steering gear compartment. Where an independent source of electrical power located in the steering gear compartment is used as an alternative power supply, this source is to be used only for this purpose.

9.1.2 The alternative power supply shall have a capacity for at least 30 minutes of continuous operation. A greater or lesser period of time may be considered in conjunction with the operational requirements of the Naval Authority and any assigned Service Restriction.

9.1.3 Where the alternative power source is a generator, or an engine driven pump, starting arrangements are to comply with the requirements relating to the starting arrangements of emergency generators.

### 9.2 Emergency hand pump operation

9.2.1 Hydraulically operated steering gears are to be provided with an emergency hand pump permanently fitted in a readily accessible position in the steering gear compartment. The pump is to be permanently connected between the reservoir and the main hydraulic system.

9.2.2 The hand pump is to be capable of moving the rudder to mid-position in the absence of electrical power, and being operated by not more than two men. It is to be capable of moving the rudder(s) up to 10° either side at ship speeds up to 10 knots, and 5° at ship speeds above 10 knots.

### 9.3 Emergency capability

9.3.1 For use in an emergency condition, facilities are to be provided to hydraulically lock the rudder actuators in the mid-position when the pumps are stopped. Isolating valves are to be fitted direct onto the rudder actuators.

9.3.2 An independent means of mechanically restraining the rudder amidships is to be provided.

9.3.3 Where there is more than one rudder fitted, arrangements are to be such that any rudder can be hydraulically and mechanically locked whilst allowing use of the other rudder(s).

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2  
Part 7 Piping Systems  
January 2013

---

|             |          |                                                                   |
|-------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PART        | 1        | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS                                              |
| PART        | 2        | PRIME MOVERS                                                      |
| PART        | 3        | TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS                                              |
| PART        | 4        | PROPULSION DEVICES                                                |
| PART        | 5        | SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT                                     |
| PART        | 6        | STEERING SYSTEMS                                                  |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>PIPING SYSTEMS</b>                                             |
|             |          | <b>Chapter 1 Piping Design Requirements</b>                       |
|             |          | <b>2 Ship Piping Systems</b>                                      |
|             |          | <b>3 Machinery Piping Systems</b>                                 |
|             |          | <b>4 Aircraft/Helicopter/Vehicle Fuel Piping and Arrangements</b> |
|             |          | <b>5 Ship Type Piping Systems</b>                                 |
| PART        | 8        | PRESSURE PLANT                                                    |
| PART        | 9        | CONTROL ENGINEERING                                               |
| PART        | 10       | ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING                                            |
| PART        | 11       | SUPPORT SYSTEMS                                                   |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

---

|                |           |                                                                    |
|----------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>PIPING DESIGN REQUIREMENTS</b>                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>Scope</b>                                                       |
|                | 1.1       | Application                                                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>General</b>                                                     |
|                | 2.1       | Documentation                                                      |
|                | 2.2       | Definitions                                                        |
|                | 2.3       | Classes of piping systems and components                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>Assessment</b>                                                  |
|                | 3.1       | Design and construction                                            |
|                | 3.2       | Design symbols                                                     |
|                | 3.3       | Design pressure                                                    |
|                | 3.4       | Design temperature                                                 |
|                | 3.5       | Use of alternative design codes                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>Materials</b>                                                   |
|                | 4.1       | Metallic materials                                                 |
|                | 4.2       | Non-metallic materials                                             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b>  | <b>Pipe connections</b>                                            |
|                | 5.1       | General                                                            |
|                | 5.2       | Flange connections                                                 |
|                | 5.3       | Screwed-on flanges                                                 |
|                | 5.4       | Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces |
|                | 5.5       | Loose flanges                                                      |
|                | 5.6       | Socket weld joints                                                 |
|                | 5.7       | Threaded sleeve joints                                             |
|                | 5.8       | Welded sleeve joints                                               |
|                | 5.9       | Screwed fittings                                                   |
|                | 5.10      | Mechanical connections for piping                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b>  | <b>Carbon and low alloy steel piping and components</b>            |
|                | 6.1       | Wrought steel pipes and bends                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b>  | <b>Copper and copper alloy piping and components</b>               |
|                | 7.1       | Copper and copper alloy pipes, valves and fittings                 |
|                | 7.2       | Heat treatment                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b>  | <b>Cast iron piping and components</b>                             |
|                | 8.1       | Spheroidal or nodular graphite cast iron                           |
|                | 8.2       | Grey cast iron                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b>  | <b>Stainless steel piping and components</b>                       |
|                | 9.1       | General                                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>Aluminium piping and components</b>                             |
|                | 10.1      | General                                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>11</b> | <b>Pipe connections</b>                                            |
|                | 11.1      | General                                                            |
|                | 11.2      | Design and performance criteria                                    |
|                | 11.3      | Design strength                                                    |
|                | 11.4      | Fire performance criteria                                          |
|                | 11.5      | Electrical conductivity                                            |
|                | 11.6      | Manufacture and quality control                                    |
|                | 11.7      | Installation and construction                                      |
|                | 11.8      | Testing                                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>12</b> | <b>Valves</b>                                                      |
|                | 12.1      | Design requirements                                                |

---

|                |           |                                                                                      |
|----------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>13</b> | <b>Flexible hoses</b>                                                                |
|                | 13.1      | General                                                                              |
|                | 13.2      | Applications                                                                         |
|                | 13.3      | Design requirements                                                                  |
|                | 13.4      | Testing                                                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>14</b> | <b>Expansion pieces</b>                                                              |
|                | 14.1      | Design and construction requirements                                                 |
|                | 14.2      | Applications                                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>15</b> | <b>Pumps</b>                                                                         |
|                | 15.1      | General                                                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>16</b> | <b>Testing</b>                                                                       |
|                | 16.1      | Hydraulic tests before installation on board                                         |
|                | 16.2      | Testing after assembly on board                                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>17</b> | <b>Guidance notes on metal pipes for water service</b>                               |
|                | 17.1      | General                                                                              |
|                | 17.2      | Materials                                                                            |
|                | 17.3      | Steel pipes                                                                          |
|                | 17.4      | Copper and copper alloy pipes                                                        |
|                | 17.5      | Flanges                                                                              |
|                | 17.6      | Water velocity                                                                       |
|                | 17.7      | Fabrication and installation                                                         |
|                | 17.8      | Metal pipes for fresh water services                                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>18</b> | <b>Heat exchangers</b>                                                               |
|                | 18.1      | General                                                                              |
|                | 18.2      | Materials                                                                            |
|                | 18.3      | Shell and tube type heat exchangers                                                  |
|                | 18.4      | Plate type heat exchangers                                                           |
|                | 18.5      | Hydraulic testing                                                                    |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>SHIP PIPING SYSTEMS</b>                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>General requirements</b>                                                          |
|                | 1.1       | Application                                                                          |
|                | 1.2       | Plans and particulars                                                                |
|                | 1.3       | Prevention of progressive flooding in damage condition                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>Construction and installation</b>                                                 |
|                | 2.1       | Materials                                                                            |
|                | 2.2       | Pipe wall thickness                                                                  |
|                | 2.3       | Valves – Installation and control                                                    |
|                | 2.4       | Attachment of valves to watertight plating                                           |
|                | 2.5       | Ship-side valves and fittings (other than those on scuppers and sanitary discharges) |
|                | 2.6       | Piping systems – Installation                                                        |
|                | 2.7       | Provision for expansion                                                              |
|                | 2.8       | Miscellaneous requirements                                                           |
|                | 2.9       | Testing after installation                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>Drainage of compartments, other than machinery spaces</b>                         |
|                | 3.1       | General                                                                              |
|                | 3.2       | Tanks and cofferdams                                                                 |
|                | 3.3       | Fore and after peaks                                                                 |
|                | 3.4       | Space above fore, after peaks and machinery spaces                                   |
|                | 3.5       | Maintenance of integrity of bulkheads                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>Drainage of machinery spaces</b>                                                  |
|                | 4.1       | General                                                                              |
|                | 4.2       | Separate machinery spaces                                                            |
|                | 4.3       | Machinery space – Emergency drainage                                                 |

|                |           |                                                                                      |
|----------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b>  | <b>Size of dewatering suction pipes</b>                                              |
|                | 5.1       | Dewatering suctions                                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b>  | <b>Drainage units on dewatering service and their connections</b>                    |
|                | 6.1       | Number of pumping units                                                              |
|                | 6.2       | General service pumps                                                                |
|                | 6.3       | Capacity of pumps and eductors                                                       |
|                | 6.4       | Pump and eductor connections                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b>  | <b>Pipe systems and their fittings</b>                                               |
|                | 7.1       | Prevention of communication between compartments                                     |
|                | 7.2       | Isolation of bilge and dewatering systems                                            |
|                | 7.3       | Machinery space suction – Mud boxes                                                  |
|                | 7.4       | Compartment suctions – Strum boxes                                                   |
|                | 7.5       | Tail pipes                                                                           |
|                | 7.6       | Location of fittings                                                                 |
|                | 7.7       | Bilge and dewatering pipes in way of double bottom and deep tanks                    |
|                | 7.8       | Non-return valves                                                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b>  | <b>Cross flooding arrangements</b>                                                   |
|                | 8.1       | Cross flooding arrangements                                                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b>  | <b>Additional requirements relating to fixed pressure fire-extinguishing systems</b> |
|                | 9.1       | Bilge drainage requirements                                                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>Air, overflow and sounding pipes</b>                                              |
|                | 10.1      | Materials                                                                            |
|                | 10.2      | Nameplates                                                                           |
|                | 10.3      | Air pipes                                                                            |
|                | 10.4      | Termination of air pipes                                                             |
|                | 10.5      | Gauze diaphragms                                                                     |
|                | 10.6      | Air pipe closing appliances                                                          |
|                | 10.7      | Size of air pipes                                                                    |
|                | 10.8      | Overflow pipes                                                                       |
|                | 10.9      | Air and overflow systems                                                             |
|                | 10.10     | Sounding arrangements                                                                |
|                | 10.11     | Termination of sounding pipes                                                        |
|                | 10.12     | Short sounding pipes                                                                 |
|                | 10.13     | Elbow sounding pipes                                                                 |
|                | 10.14     | Striking plates                                                                      |
|                | 10.15     | Size of sounding pipes                                                               |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>MACHINERY PIPING SYSTEMS</b>                                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>General requirements</b>                                                          |
|                | 1.1       | Application                                                                          |
|                | 1.2       | Plans and particulars                                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>Oil fuel – General requirements</b>                                               |
|                | 2.1       | Flash point                                                                          |
|                | 2.2       | Special fuels                                                                        |
|                | 2.3       | Oil fuel sampling                                                                    |
|                | 2.4       | Ventilation                                                                          |
|                | 2.5       | Boiler insulation and air circulation in boiler room                                 |
|                | 2.6       | Funnel dampers                                                                       |
|                | 2.7       | Heating arrangements                                                                 |
|                | 2.8       | Temperature indication                                                               |
|                | 2.9       | Precautions against fire                                                             |
|                | 2.10      | Oil fuel contamination                                                               |
|                | 2.11      | Tanks and cofferdams                                                                 |

---

|                |          |                                                                            |
|----------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Oil fuel burning arrangements</b>                                       |
|                | 3.1      | Oil burning units                                                          |
|                | 3.2      | Gravity feed                                                               |
|                | 3.3      | Starting-up unit                                                           |
|                | 3.4      | Steam connections to burners                                               |
|                | 3.5      | Burner arrangements                                                        |
|                | 3.6      | Quick-closing valve                                                        |
|                | 3.7      | Spill arrangements                                                         |
|                | 3.8      | Alternately fired furnaces                                                 |
|                | 3.9      | Oil fuel treatment for supply to diesel engines and gas turbines           |
|                | 3.10     | Booster pumps                                                              |
|                | 3.11     | Fuel valve cooling pumps                                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Oil fuel pumps, pipes, fittings, tanks, etc.</b>                        |
|                | 4.1      | Transfer pumps                                                             |
|                | 4.2      | Control of pumps                                                           |
|                | 4.3      | Relief valves on pumps                                                     |
|                | 4.4      | Pump connections                                                           |
|                | 4.5      | Pipes conveying heated oil                                                 |
|                | 4.6      | Low pressure pipes                                                         |
|                | 4.7      | Valves and cocks                                                           |
|                | 4.8      | Valves on deep tanks and their control arrangements                        |
|                | 4.9      | Water drainage                                                             |
|                | 4.10     | Relief valves on oil heaters                                               |
|                | 4.11     | Filling arrangements                                                       |
|                | 4.12     | Transfer arrangements                                                      |
|                | 4.13     | Alternative carriage of oil fuel and water ballast                         |
|                | 4.14     | Deep tanks for the alternative carriage of oil or water ballast            |
|                | 4.15     | Fresh water piping                                                         |
|                | 4.16     | Independent/separate oil fuel tanks                                        |
|                | 4.17     | Oil fuel service tanks                                                     |
|                | 4.18     | Water compensated oil fuel tanks                                           |
|                | 4.19     | Arrangements for fuels with a flash point between 43° and 60°              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Steam piping systems</b>                                                |
|                | 5.1      | Provision for expansion                                                    |
|                | 5.2      | Drainage                                                                   |
|                | 5.3      | Soot cleaning drains                                                       |
|                | 5.4      | Reduced pressure lines                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Boiler feed water, condensate and thermal fluid circulation systems</b> |
|                | 6.1      | Feed water piping                                                          |
|                | 6.2      | Feed and circulation pumps                                                 |
|                | 6.3      | Condensate pumps                                                           |
|                | 6.4      | Valves and cocks                                                           |
|                | 6.5      | Reserve feed water                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Engine cooling water systems</b>                                        |
|                | 7.1      | General                                                                    |
|                | 7.2      | Standby supply                                                             |
|                | 7.3      | Selection of standby pumps                                                 |
|                | 7.4      | Relief valves on main cooling water pumps                                  |
|                | 7.5      | Sea inlets                                                                 |
|                | 7.6      | Strainers                                                                  |
|                | 7.7      | Cooling systems                                                            |



---

|                |           |                                                                          |
|----------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b>  | <b>Lubricating oil systems</b>                                           |
|                | 8.1       | General requirements                                                     |
|                | 8.2       | Pumps                                                                    |
|                | 8.3       | Control of pumps                                                         |
|                | 8.4       | Relief valves on pumps                                                   |
|                | 8.5       | Alarms                                                                   |
|                | 8.6       | Emergency supply for propulsion turbines and propulsion turbo-generators |
|                | 8.7       | Maintenance of bearing lubrication                                       |
|                | 8.8       | Filters                                                                  |
|                | 8.9       | Filling arrangements                                                     |
|                | 8.10      | Cleanliness of pipes and fittings                                        |
|                | 8.11      | Pipes conveying oil                                                      |
|                | 8.12      | Lubricating oil drain tank                                               |
|                | 8.13      | Lubricating oil contamination                                            |
|                | 8.14      | Security                                                                 |
|                | 8.15      | Deep tank valves and their control arrangements                          |
|                | 8.16      | Separate oil tanks                                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b>  | <b>Control, supervision and monitoring of equipment</b>                  |
|                | 9.1       | General                                                                  |
|                | 9.2       | Automatic and remote controls                                            |
|                | 9.3       | Thermal fluid heaters                                                    |
|                | 9.4       | Incinerators                                                             |
|                | 9.5       | Miscellaneous machinery                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>Multi-engined ships</b>                                               |
|                | 10.1      | General                                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>11</b> | <b>Electrical equipment cooling arrangements</b>                         |
|                | 11.1      | General                                                                  |
|                | 11.2      | Standby supply                                                           |
|                | 11.3      | Selection of standby pumps                                               |
|                | 11.4      | Relief valves on main cooling water pumps                                |
|                | 11.5      | Sea inlets                                                               |
|                | 11.6      | Strainers                                                                |
|                | 11.7      | Cooling systems                                                          |
|                | 11.8      | Alarms                                                                   |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>AIRCRAFT/HELICOPTER/VEHICLE FUEL PIPING AND ARRANGEMENTS</b>          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>General requirements</b>                                              |
|                | 1.1       | Application                                                              |
|                | 1.2       | Plans and particulars                                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>Refuelling facilities</b>                                             |
|                | 2.1       | Fuel storage                                                             |
|                | 2.2       | Independent oil fuel tanks                                               |
|                | 2.3       | Fuel pumping and filling                                                 |
|                | 2.4       | Refuelling aircraft/helicopters                                          |
|                | 2.5       | Defuelling                                                               |
|                | 2.6       | Fuel contamination                                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>Pump rooms</b>                                                        |
|                | 3.1       | General                                                                  |
|                | 3.2       | Pump room ventilation                                                    |
|                | 3.3       | Non-sparking fans for hazardous areas                                    |

---

|                |           |                                                   |
|----------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>5</b>  | <b>SHIP TYPE PIPING SYSTEMS</b>                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>General requirements</b>                       |
|                | 1.1       | General                                           |
|                | 1.2       | Scope                                             |
|                | 1.3       | Plans and information                             |
|                | 1.4       | Use of alternative standards                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>Construction and installation</b>              |
|                | 2.1       | Materials                                         |
|                | 2.2       | Pipe wall thickness                               |
|                | 2.3       | Piping and equipment – Selection and installation |
|                | 2.4       | Valves – Installation and control                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>System arrangements</b>                        |
|                | 3.1       | Piping systems                                    |
|                | 3.2       | Electrical power supplies                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>Control arrangements</b>                       |
|                | 4.1       | General                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b>  | <b>Failure Mode and Effects Analysis</b>          |
|                | 5.1       | General                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b>  | <b>Testing and trials</b>                         |
|                | 6.1       | Testing                                           |
|                | 6.2       | Type testing                                      |
|                | 6.3       | Trials                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b>  | <b>Chilled water systems</b>                      |
|                | 7.1       | General                                           |
|                | 7.2       | Refrigeration plant                               |
|                | 7.3       | Water system                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b>  | <b>High pressure compressed air systems</b>       |
|                | 8.1       | General                                           |
|                | 8.2       | Compressors                                       |
|                | 8.3       | Air receivers                                     |
|                | 8.4       | Distribution system                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b>  | <b>Low pressure compressed air systems</b>        |
|                | 9.1       | General                                           |
|                | 9.2       | Compressors and reducing valves/stations          |
|                | 9.3       | Air receivers                                     |
|                | 9.4       | Distribution system                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>High pressure sea-water systems</b>            |
|                | 10.1      | General                                           |
|                | 10.2      | Pump units                                        |
|                | 10.3      | Distribution system                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>11</b> | <b>Hydraulic power actuating systems</b>          |
|                | 11.1      | General                                           |
|                | 11.2      | Hydraulic fluid storage                           |
|                | 11.3      | Pump units                                        |
|                | 11.4      | Supply systems and arrangements                   |
|                | 11.5      | Cooling arrangements                              |
|                | 11.6      | Relief valves on pumps                            |
|                | 11.7      | Pipes conveying oil                               |
|                | 11.8      | Filling arrangements                              |
|                | 11.9      | Separate oil tanks                                |
|                | 11.10     | Precautions against fire                          |

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 1 & 2

## Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **General**
- 3 **Assessment**
- 4 **Materials**
- 5 **Pipe connections**
- 6 **Carbon and low alloy steel piping and components**
- 7 **Copper and copper alloy piping and components**
- 8 **Cast iron piping and components**
- 9 **Stainless steel piping and components**
- 10 **Aluminium piping and components**
- 11 **Pipe connections**
- 12 **Valves**
- 13 **Flexible hoses**
- 14 **Expansion pieces**
- 15 **Pumps**
- 16 **Testing**
- 17 **Guidance notes on metal pipes for water service**
- 18 **Heat exchangers**

## ■ Section 1 Scope

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter applies to all naval ships intended to be classed and covers the design and construction of piping systems, including components and fittings forming part of such systems.

1.1.2 The provisions of this Chapter do not address pipe size selection in respect of adequacy to satisfy design requirements for flow rates and/or heat transfer in piping systems.

1.1.3 The Sections detail information necessary for verifying the adequacy of design in respect of strength and suitability for intended purpose with regard to materials and scantlings.

1.1.4 The materials used for pipes, valves and fittings are to be suitable for the medium and the service for which the piping is intended.

## ■ Section 2 General

### 2.1 Documentation

2.1.1 Documents indicating the following information are to be submitted for each piping system in triplicate:

- Design pressure.
- Design temperature.
- Class of system.
- Internal pipe diameter and thickness.
- Material specification.
- Corrosion protection.
- Corrosion allowance.
- Pipe connection specifications.
- Valve specifications.
- Flexible hose specifications.
- Expansion piece specifications.
- Details of any other pipe fittings.
- Pumping unit type and discharge characteristics.
- Testing procedures.
- Design statements for heat exchangers as required by 18.1.11.

2.1.2 Where the Owner/Operator has specified requirements for the life of a particular piping system under defined operating conditions, details of enhanced pipe scantlings and assumptions made are to be submitted for review.

### 2.2 Definitions

2.2.1 **Essential piping systems** are those systems installed for the propulsion and safety of the ship within the Mobility category and Ship Type category (see Pt 1, Ch 1,3) and include the following:

- Air and overflow arrangements.
- Sounding arrangements.
- Bilge and dewatering systems.
- Ballast systems.
- Oil fuel systems.
- Gas fuel systems.
- Lubricating oil systems.
- Thermal oil systems.
- Hydraulic oil systems for:
  - steering gears;
  - controllable pitch propellers;
  - thrust units for propulsion and/or dynamic positioning;
  - windlass machinery;
  - watertight bow, stern, side and internal doors;
  - valve control systems, etc.
- Fresh water cooling systems for machinery.
- Sea water cooling systems.
- Compressed air systems for starting engines, control and alarms.
- Feed water systems.

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 2 & 3

Steam and condensate systems.  
Exhaust and flue gas systems.  
Control systems for remote operation of valves and ventilation flaps.

**2.2.2 Non-essential piping systems** are those systems installed for conditions of habitability and recreation, are within the Ancillary category and include the following:

Heating systems.  
Air conditioning systems.  
Domestic sanitary and fresh water systems.

**2.2.3 Piping system** includes pipes and fittings such as expansion joints, valves, pipe joints, support arrangements, flexible tube lengths, etc., and components in direct connection with the piping such as pumps, heat exchangers, air receivers, independent tanks, etc. It does not include main and auxiliary machinery such as oil engines, steam and gas turbines, boilers, reduction gears, etc.

## 2.3 Classes of piping systems and components

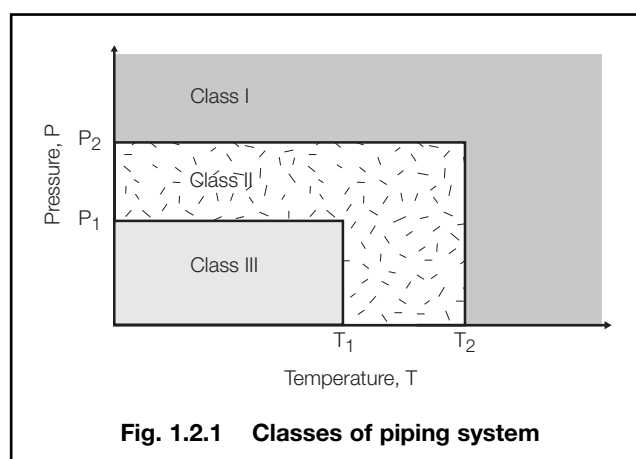
**2.3.1** For the purpose of testing, the type of joint to be adopted, heat treatment and welding procedure, pipes are subdivided into three classes as indicated in Table 1.2.1.

**Table 1.2.1 Maximum pressure and temperature conditions for Class II and III piping systems**

| Piping system                                                                                                                                  | Class II |            | Class III |            |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------|-----------|------------|
|                                                                                                                                                | p<br>bar | T<br>deg C | p<br>bar  | T<br>deg C |
| Steam                                                                                                                                          | 16,0     | 300        | 7,0       | 170        |
| Thermal oil                                                                                                                                    | 16,0     | 300        | 7,0       | 150        |
| Flammable liquids<br>(see Notes)                                                                                                               | 16,0     | 150        | 7,0       | 60         |
| Other media                                                                                                                                    | 40,0     | 300        | 16,0      | 200        |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. Flammable liquids include; oil fuel; lubricating oil and flammable hydraulic oil.<br>2. For grey cast iron, see also 8.2.2. |          |            |           |            |

**2.3.2** Dependent on the service for which they are intended, Class II and Class III piping are not to be used for design pressure or temperature conditions in excess of those shown in Table 1.2.1. Where either the maximum design pressure or temperature exceeds that applicable to Class II piping systems, Class I piping is to be used. To illustrate, see Fig. 1.2.1.  $P_1$  and  $T_1$  correspond to the maximum pressures and temperatures for a Class III piping system and  $P_2$  and  $T_2$  to those for a Class II piping system depending on the service.

**2.3.3** In addition to the pressure piping systems in Table 1.2.1, Class III pipes may be used for open ended piping, e.g. overflows, vents, open ended drains, etc.



**Fig. 1.2.1 Classes of piping system**

## Section 3 Assessment

### 3.1 Design and construction

**3.1.1** All piping systems are to be designed and constructed for their intended service and working conditions.

**3.1.2** Materials sensitive to heat, such as aluminium and plastics, are not to be used in essential systems necessary for the safe operation of the ship, or for containing flammable liquids or sea water where leakage or failure could result in fire or in flooding of a watertight compartment.

**3.1.3** The strength and construction of pipes, components and fittings is to preclude loss of essential services, escape of flammable liquid and flooding.

**3.1.4** The selection of pipe connections in piping systems is to recognise the boundary fluids, pressure and temperature conditions and location.

**3.1.5** Pipe connections in accordance with national or other approved standards will be accepted where the standards are appropriate to the piping system.

**3.1.6** Pipe thicknesses greater than the minimum required by this Chapter may be necessary where the likelihood of erosion cannot be avoided and/or where there is a likelihood of corrosion exceeding the nominal allowances specified in the Rule requirements. Pipe thicknesses may also need to be increased where the Owner/Operator has specified requirements for system life, see 2.1.2.

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 3 & 4

## 3.2 Design symbols

3.2.1 The symbols used in this Chapter are defined as follows:

- $a$  = percentage negative manufacturing tolerance on thickness
- $c$  = corrosion allowance, in mm
- $d$  = inside diameter of pipe, in mm, see 3.2.3
- $e$  = weld efficiency factor, see 3.2.4
- $p$  = design pressure, in bar, see 3.3
- $p_t$  = hydraulic test pressure, in bar
- $t$  = the minimum thickness of a straight pipe, in mm, including corrosion allowance and negative tolerance, where applicable
- $t_b$  = the minimum thickness of a straight pipe to be used for a pipe bend, in mm, including bending allowance, corrosion allowance and negative tolerance, where applicable
- $D$  = outside diameter of pipe, in mm, see 3.2.2
- $R$  = radius of curvature of a pipe bend at the centre line of the pipe, in mm
- $T$  = design temperature, in °C, see 3.4
- $\sigma$  = maximum permissible design stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

3.2.2 The outside diameter,  $D$ , is subject to manufacturing tolerances, but these are not to be used in the evaluation of formulae.

3.2.3 The inside diameter,  $d$ , is not to be confused with nominal size, which is an accepted designation associated with outside diameters of standard rolling sizes.

3.2.4 The weld efficiency factor,  $e$ , is to be taken as 1 for seamless and electric resistance and induction welded steel pipes. Where other methods of pipe manufacture are proposed, the value of  $e$  will be specially considered.

## 3.3 Design pressure

3.3.1 The design pressure,  $p$ , is the maximum permissible working pressure and is to be not less than the highest set pressure of the safety valve or relief valve.

3.3.2 In water tube boiler installations, the design pressure for steam piping between the boiler and integral superheater outlet is to be taken as the design pressure of the boiler, i.e. not less than the highest set pressure of any safety valve on the boiler drum. For piping leading from the superheater outlet, the design pressure is to be taken as the highest set pressure of the superheater safety valves.

3.3.3 The design pressure of feed piping and other piping on the discharge from pumps is to be taken as the pump pressure at full rated speed against a shut valve. Where a safety valve or other protective device is fitted to restrict the pressure to a lower value than the shut valve load, the design pressure is to be the highest set pressure of the device.

3.3.4 For pipes containing heated oil under pressure (temperature 60°C and above and pressure 0,18 bar and above), the design pressure is to be taken as not less than 14 bar.

3.3.5 For design pressure of steering gear components and piping, see Pt 6, Ch1.

## 3.4 Design temperature

3.4.1 The design temperature is to be taken as the maximum temperature of the internal fluid, but in no case is it to be less than 50°C.

3.4.2 In the case of pipes for superheated steam, the temperature is to be taken as the designed operating steam temperature for the pipeline, provided that the temperature at the superheater outlet is closely controlled. Where temperature fluctuations exceeding 15°C above the designed temperature are to be expected in normal service, the steam temperature to be used for determining the allowable stress is to be increased by the amount of this excess.

## 3.5 Use of alternative design codes

3.5.1 Where it is proposed to use a material with a minimum specified tensile strength different from that indicated in Tables 1.6.1, 1.6.2 or 1.7.1 and the material is in accordance with a recognised National/International Standard, the use of alternative design codes for calculating pipe stresses will be accepted. The design code used is to be suitable for the intended application.

3.5.2 Where alternative design codes are used, they are to be stated together with any assumptions made.

## Section 4 Materials

### 4.1 Metallic materials

4.1.1 Materials for Class I and II piping systems and components as defined in Table 1.2.1, also for shell valves and fittings and fittings on the collision bulkhead, are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

4.1.2 Ferrous castings and forgings for Class I and II piping systems are to be produced at a works approved by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').

4.1.3 Materials for Class III piping systems are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of acceptable National Standards.

4.1.4 The Manufacturer's materials certificate validated by LR will be accepted for all classes of piping and components in lieu of an LR materials certificate where the maximum design conditions are less than either of the values shown in Table 1.4.1. See Ch 1,3.1.3(b) of the Rules for Materials.

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 4 & 5

**Table 1.4.1 Maximum conditions for pipes, valves and fittings for which Manufacturer's materials test certificate is acceptable**

| Material                                                                            | Working temperature °C | $DN$ = Nominal diameter, mm<br>$P_w$ = Working pressure, bar |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Carbon and low alloy steel.<br>Stainless steel.<br>Spheroidal or nodular cast iron. | < 300                  | $DN < 50$<br>or<br>$P_w \times DN < 2500$                    |
| Copper alloy                                                                        | < 200                  | $DN < 50$<br>or<br>$P_w \times DN < 1500$                    |

4.1.5 The manufacturer's certificate validated by LR for materials for ship-side valves and fittings and valves on the collision bulkhead equal to or less than 500 mm nominal diameter will be accepted in lieu of LR's materials certificate where the valves and fittings are in accordance with a recognised National Standard applicable to the intended application and are manufactured and tested in accordance with the appropriate requirements of the Rules for Materials. See Ch 1,3.1.3(b) of the Rules for Materials.

## 4.2 Non-metallic materials

4.2.1 Pipes and fittings intended for applications in Class I, Class II and Class III systems for which there are Rule requirements are to be manufactured in accordance with Chapter 14 of the Rules for Materials.

## Section 5 Pipe connections

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 Connections in piping systems may be made by any of the methods described in this Section, or by special types of approved joints which have been shown to be suitable for the design conditions. Details of connection methods, not described in this Section are to be submitted for consideration.

5.1.2 The selection of pipe connections in piping systems is to recognise the boundary fluids, pressure and temperature conditions, external or cyclic loading and location.

5.1.3 Pipe connections in accordance with national or other established standards will be accepted where the standards are appropriate to the piping system.

5.1.4 The type and location of pipe connections are to recognise the need to facilitate Periodic Survey of piping systems and associated items of machinery and the need for cold 'pull up' if required.

5.1.5 Pipe connections are not to be used to compensate for pipe misalignment.

5.1.6 Piping with joints is to be adequately adjusted, aligned and supported. Supports or hangers are not to be used to force alignment of piping at the point of connection.

5.1.7 Pipes passing through, or connected to, watertight decks are to be continuous or provided with an approved bolted or welded connection to the deck or bulkhead.

5.1.8 For details of non-destructive tests on piping systems, other than hydraulic tests, see Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials.

5.1.9 The requirements in 5.2 to 5.8 are applicable to connections in metallic piping systems.

## 5.2 Flange connections

5.2.1 The dimensions and configuration of flanges and bolting are to be selected in accordance with recognised standards. The dimensions and bolting arrangements of non-standard flanges will be the subject of special consideration.

5.2.2 Gaskets are to be suitable for the conveyed fluids under design pressure and temperature conditions and their dimensions and configuration is to be in accordance with recognised standards. Gasket materials used in oil piping systems are to be impervious to oil and the thinnest possible as determined from manufacturer's recommendations that the flange arrangement will allow, to ensure the minimum loss of bolt stress due to gasket relaxation.

5.2.3 Acceptable flange pipe connections are indicated in Fig. 1.5.1. Limiting applications of different types of flange connections are indicated in Table 1.5.1 depending on the size, pressure and temperature.

## 5.3 Screwed-on flanges

5.3.1 Where flanges are secured by screwing, as indicated in Fig. 1.5.2, the pipe and flange are to be screwed with a vanishing thread and the diameter of the screwed portion of the pipe over the thread is not to be appreciably less than the outside diameter of the unscrewed pipe. After the flange has been screwed hard home the pipe is to be expanded into the flange.

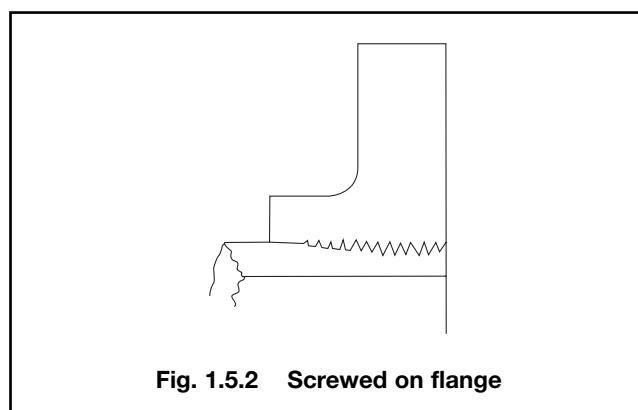
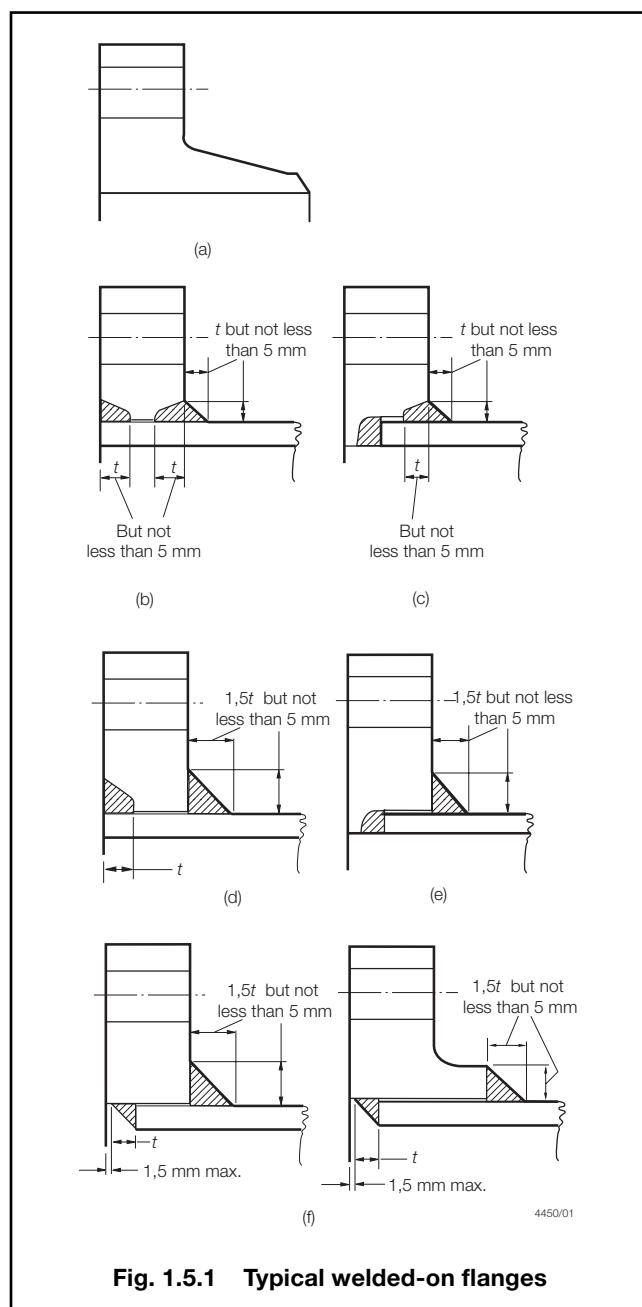
5.3.2 The vanishing thread on a pipe is to be not less than three pitches in length, and the diameter at the root of the thread is to increase uniformly from the standard root diameter to the diameter at the top of the thread. This may be produced by suitably grinding the dies, and the flange should be tapered out to the same formation.

5.3.3 Such screwed and expanded flanges may be used for steam for a maximum design pressure of 30 bar and a maximum design temperature of 370°C and for feed for a maximum design pressure of 50 bar.

## Piping Design Requirements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 5



#### 5.4 Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces

5.4.1 The types of welded-on flanges are to be suitable for the pressure, temperature and service for which the pipes are intended.

5.4.2 Butt welded joints are generally to be of the full penetration type and are to meet the requirements of Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials.

5.4.3 Welded-on flanges are not to be a tight fit on the pipes. The maximum clearance between the bore of the flange and the outside diameter of the pipe is to be 3 mm at any point, and the sum of the clearances diametrically opposite is not to exceed 5 mm.

5.4.4 Where butt welds are employed in the attachment of flange type (a), in pipe-to-pipe joints or in the construction of branch pieces, the adjacent pieces are to be matched at the bores. This may be effected by drifting, roller expanding or machining, provided that the pipe wall is not reduced below the designed thickness. If the parts to be joined differ in wall thickness, the thicker wall is to be gradually tapered to the thickness of the thinner at the butt joint. The welding necks of valve chests are to be sufficiently long to ensure that the valves are not distorted as the result of welding and subsequent heat treatment of the joints.

**Table 1.5.1 Limiting design conditions for flange types**

| Flange type | Maximum pressure                                                            | Maximum temperature<br>°C | Maximum pipe o.d.<br>mm | Minimum pipe bore<br>mm |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| (a)         | Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a recognised standard | No restriction            | No restriction          | No restriction          |
| (b)         |                                                                             | No restriction            | 168,3 for alloy steels* | No restriction          |
| (c)         |                                                                             | No restriction            | 168,3 for alloy steels* | 75                      |
| (d)         |                                                                             | 425                       | No restriction          | No restriction          |
| (e)         |                                                                             | 425                       | No restriction          | 75                      |
| (f)         |                                                                             | 425                       | No restriction          | No restriction          |

\* No restriction for carbon steels

# Piping Design Requirements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 5

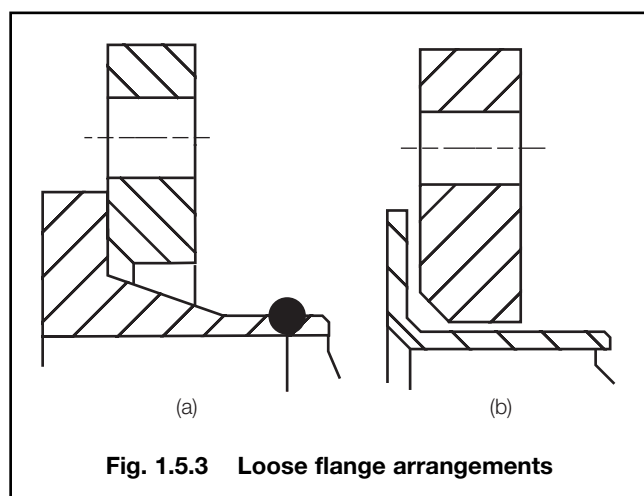
5.4.5 Where backing rings are used with flange type (a) they are to fit closely to the bore of the pipe and should be removed after welding. The rings are to be made of the same material as the pipes or of mild steel having a sulphur content not greater than 0,05 per cent.

5.4.6 Branches may be attached to pressure pipes by means of welding provided that the pipe is reinforced at the branch by a compensating plate or collar or other approved means, or alternatively that the thickness of pipe and branch are increased to maintain the strength of the pipe. These requirements also apply to fabricated branch pieces.

5.4.7 Welding may be carried out by means of the shielded metal arc, inert gas metal arc, oxy-acetylene or other approved process, but, in general, oxy-acetylene welding is suitable only for flange type (a) and is not to be applied to pipes exceeding 100 mm diameter or 9,5 mm thick. The welding is to be carried out in accordance with the appropriate paragraphs of Pt 1, Ch 3.

### 5.5 Loose flanges

5.5.1 Loose flange designs as shown in Fig. 1.5.3 may be used provided they are in accordance with a recognised National or International Standard.



5.5.2 Loose flange designs where the pipe end is flared as shown in Fig. 1.5.3(b) are only to be used for water pipes and on open ended lines.

### 5.6 Socket weld joints

5.6.1 Socket weld joints may be used in Class III systems with carbon steel pipes of any outside diameter. Socket weld fittings are to be of forged steel and the material is to be compatible with the associated piping. In particular cases, socket welded joints may be permitted for piping systems of Class I and II having outside diameter not exceeding 88,9 mm. Such joints are not to be used where fatigue, severe erosion or crevice corrosion is expected to occur or where toxic media are conveyed.

5.6.2 The thickness of the socket weld fittings is to meet the requirements of 6.1.3, but is to be not less than 1,25 times the nominal thickness of the pipe or tube. The diametrical clearance between the outside diameter of the pipe and the bore of the fitting is not to exceed 0,8 mm, and a gap of approximately 1,5 mm is to be provided between the end of the pipe and the bottom of the socket.

5.6.3 The leg lengths of the fillet weld connecting the pipe to the socket weld fitting are to be such that the throat dimension of the weld is not less than the nominal thickness of the pipe or tube.

### 5.7 Threaded sleeve joints

5.7.1 Threaded sleeve joints, in accordance with national or other established standards, may be used with carbon steel pipes within the limits given in Table 1.5.2. Such joints are not to be used where fatigue, severe erosion or crevice corrosion is expected to occur or where flammable or toxic media is conveyed.

**Table 1.5.2 Limiting design conditions for threaded sleeve joints**

| Thread type     | Outside pipe diameter, in mm |          |           |
|-----------------|------------------------------|----------|-----------|
|                 | Class I                      | Class II | Class III |
| Tapered thread  | <33,7                        | <60,3    | <60,3     |
| Parallel thread | —                            | —        | <60,3     |

### 5.8 Welded sleeve joints

5.8.1 Welded sleeve joints may be used in Class III systems with carbon steel pipes of any outside diameter. In particular cases, welded sleeve joints may be permitted for piping systems of Class I and II having outside diameter not exceeding 88,9 mm. Such joints are not to be used where fatigue, severe erosion or crevice corrosion is expected to occur or where toxic media are conveyed.

5.8.2 Welded sleeve joints are not to be used in the following locations:

- Bilge pipes in way of deep tanks.
- Cargo oil piping outside of the cargo area for bow or stern loading/discharge.
- Air and sounding pipes passing through cargo tanks.



# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 5

5.8.3 Welded sleeve joints may be used in piping systems for the storage, distribution and utilisation of oil fuel, lubricating or other flammable oil systems in machinery spaces provided they are located in readily visible and accessible positions, see also Ch 3,2.8.2.

5.8.4 Welded sleeve joints are not to be used at deck/bulkhead penetrations that require continuous pipe lengths.

5.8.5 The thickness of the sleeve is to satisfy the requirements of 6.1.3 and Table 1.6.4 but is to be not less than 1,42 times the nominal thickness of the pipe in order to satisfy the throat thickness requirement in 5.8.6. The radial clearance between the outside diameter of the pipe and the internal diameter of the sleeve is not to exceed 1 mm for pipes up to a nominal diameter of 50 mm, 2 mm on diameters up to 200 mm nominal size and 3 mm for larger size pipes. The pipe ends are to be separated by a clearance of approximately 2 mm at the centre of the sleeve.

5.8.6 The sleeve material is to be compatible with the associated piping and the leg lengths of the fillet weld connecting the pipe to the sleeve are to be such that the throat dimension of the weld is not less than the nominal thickness of the pipe or tube.

5.8.7 The minimum length of the sleeve is to conform to the following formula:

$$L_{si} = 0,14D + 36 \text{ mm}$$

where

$L_{si}$  is the length of the sleeve  
 $D$  is defined in 3.2.1.

## 5.9 Screwed fittings

5.9.1 Screwed fittings, including compression fittings, of an approved type may be used in piping systems for pipes not exceeding 51 mm outside diameter. Where the fittings are not in accordance with an acceptable standard then LR may require the fittings to be subjected to special tests to demonstrate their suitability for the intended service and working conditions.

## 5.10 Mechanical connections for piping

5.10.1 Pipe unions, compression couplings, or slip-on joints, as shown in Fig. 1.5.4, may be used if Type Approved for the service conditions and the intended application. The Type Approval is to be based on the results of testing of the actual joints. The acceptable use for each service is indicated in Table 1.5.3 and dependence upon the Class of piping, with limiting pipe dimensions, working pressure and temperature is indicated in Table 1.5.4.

5.10.2 Where the application of mechanical joints results in a reduction of pipe wall thickness due to the use of bite type rings or other structural elements, this is to be taken into account in determining the minimum wall thickness of the pipe to withstand the design pressure.

5.10.3 The construction of mechanical joints is to prevent the possibility of tightness failure affected by pressure pulsation, piping vibration, temperature variation and other similar adverse effects during operation on board.

5.10.4 The materials used in the construction of mechanical joints are to be compatible with the piping material and internal/external media.

5.10.5 Mechanical joints for pressure pipes are to be tested to a burst pressure of 4 times the design pressure. For design pressures above 200 bar the required burst pressure will be specially considered.

5.10.6 In general, mechanical joints are to be of fire resistant type where required by Table 1.5.3.

5.10.7 Mechanical pipe connections having sealing components sensitive to heat are not to be used in spaces where leakage or failure caused by fire could result in fire spread, flooding or loss of an essential service.

5.10.8 Mechanical joints, which in the event of damage could cause fire or flooding, are not to be used in piping sections directly connected to the sea openings or tanks containing flammable fluids.

5.10.9 The mechanical joints are to be designed to withstand internal and external pressure as applicable and where used in suction lines are to be capable of operating under vacuum.

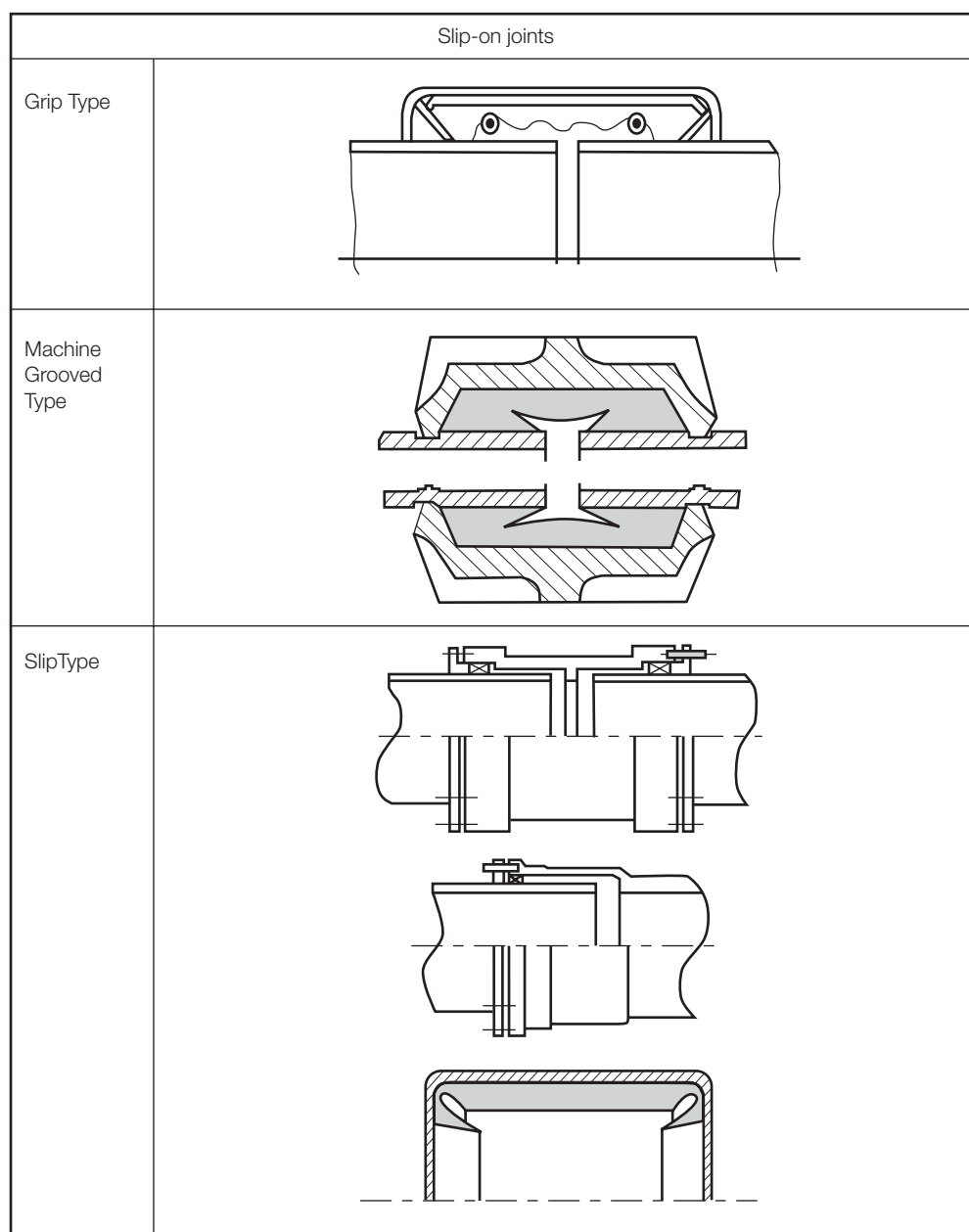
5.10.10 Generally, slip-on joints are not to be used in pipelines in cargo holds, tanks, and other spaces which are not easily accessible. Application of these joints inside tanks may only be accepted where the medium conveyed is the same as that in the tanks.

5.10.11 Unrestrained slip-on joints are only to be used in cases where compensation of lateral pipe deformation is necessary. Usage of these joints as the main means of pipe connection is not permitted.

5.10.12 Restrained slip-on joints are permitted in steam pipes with a design pressure of 10 bar or less on the weather decks of oil and chemical tankers to accommodate axial pipe movement, see Ch 2,2.7.

| Pipe unions             |  |
|-------------------------|--|
| Welded and Brazed Types |  |
| Compression couplings   |  |
| Swage Type              |  |
| Press Type              |  |
| Bite Type               |  |
| Flared Type             |  |

Fig. 1.5.4 Examples of mechanical joints (see continuation)



**Fig. 1.5.4 Examples of mechanical joints** *(conclusion)*

## Piping Design Requirements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 5

**Table 1.5.3 Application of mechanical joints**

| Systems                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Kind of connections |                           |                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|----------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Pipe unions         | Compression Couplings (6) | Slip-on Joints |
| <b>Flammable fluids (Flash point &lt;60° C)</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                     |                           |                |
| Aircraft and vehicle oil fuel lines                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | +                   | +                         | +5             |
| Vent lines                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | +                   | +                         | +3             |
| <b>Flammable fluids (Flash point &gt;60° C)</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                     |                           |                |
| Aircraft and vehicle oil fuel lines                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | +                   | +                         | +5             |
| Ship's machinery oil fuel line                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | +                   | +                         | +2,3           |
| Lubricating oil lines                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | +                   | +                         | +2,3           |
| Hydraulic oil                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | +                   | +                         | +2,3           |
| Thermal oil                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | +                   | +                         | +2,3           |
| <b>Sea-water</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                     |                           |                |
| Bilge lines                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | +                   | +                         | +1             |
| HP sea-water and water spray                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | +                   | +                         | +3             |
| Foam system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | +                   | +                         | +3             |
| Sprinkler system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | +                   | +                         | +3             |
| Ballast system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | +                   | +                         | +1             |
| Cooling water system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | +                   | +                         | +1             |
| Tank cleaning services                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | +                   | +                         | +              |
| Non-essential systems                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | +                   | +                         | +              |
| <b>Fresh water</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                     |                           |                |
| Cooling water system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | +                   | +                         | +1             |
| Chilled water systems                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | +                   | +                         | +1             |
| Condensate return                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | +                   | +                         | +1             |
| Made water and demineralised water system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | +                   | +                         | +              |
| Non-essential system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | +                   | +                         | +              |
| <b>Sanitary/Drains/Scuppers</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                     |                           |                |
| Deck drains (internal)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | +                   | +                         | +4             |
| Sanitary drains                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | +                   | +                         | +              |
| Scuppers and discharge (overboard)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | +                   | +                         | -              |
| <b>Sounding/vent</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                     |                           |                |
| Water tanks/Dry spaces                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | +                   | +                         | +              |
| Oil tanks (f.p. > 60°C)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | +                   | +                         | +2,3           |
| Intakes and uptakes (8)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                     |                           |                |
| HVAC trunking (8)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                     |                           |                |
| <b>Miscellaneous</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                     |                           |                |
| High pressure (HP) air systems (1)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | +                   | +                         | —              |
| Medium pressure (MP) air systems (Starting air) (1)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | +                   | +                         | —              |
| Low pressure (LP) air systems (incl. Control air) (1)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | +                   | +                         | —              |
| Brine                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | +                   | +                         | +              |
| CO <sub>2</sub> system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | +                   | +                         | —              |
| Nitrogen system                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | +                   | +                         | —              |
| Steam                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | +                   | +                         | +7             |
| <b>KEY</b><br>+ Application is allowed<br>— Application is not allowed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                     |                           |                |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. Inside machinery spaces of category A – only approved fire resistant types.<br>2. Not inside machinery spaces of category A or accommodation spaces. May be accepted in other machinery spaces provided the joints are located in easily visible and accessible positions.<br>3. Approved fire resistant types. Fire resistant type is a type of connection which, when installed in the system and in the event of failure caused by fire, the failure would not result in fire spread, flooding or the loss of an essential service.<br>4. Above freeboard deck only.<br>5. In pump rooms and open decks – only approved fire resistant types.<br>6. If compression couplings include any components which are sensitive to heat, they are to be of approved fire resistant type as required for slip-on joints.<br>7. See 5.10.12.<br>8. Requirements for HVAC trunking or gas turbine updates and intakes are addressed in the relevant Sections of the Rules. |                     |                           |                |

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 5 &amp; 6

**Table 1.5.4 Application of mechanical joints depending on class of piping**

| Types of joints                                                        | Classes of piping systems |                 |           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------|-----------|
|                                                                        | Class I                   | Class II        | Class III |
| <b>Pipe unions</b>                                                     |                           |                 |           |
| Welded and brazed type                                                 | +(OD ≤ 60,3 mm)           | +(OD ≤ 60,3 mm) | +         |
| <b>Compression couplings</b>                                           |                           |                 |           |
| Swage type                                                             | –                         | –               | +         |
| Bite type                                                              | +(OD ≤ 60,3 mm)           | +(OD ≤ 60,3 mm) | +         |
| Flared type                                                            | +(OD ≤ 60,3 mm)           | +(OD ≤ 60,3 mm) | +         |
| Press type                                                             | –                         | –               | +         |
| <b>Slip-on joints</b>                                                  |                           |                 |           |
| Machine grooved type                                                   | +                         | +               | +         |
| Grip type                                                              | –                         | +               | +         |
| Slip type                                                              | –                         | +               | +         |
| <b>KEY</b><br>+ Application is allowed<br>– Application is not allowed |                           |                 |           |

## Section 6

## Carbon and low alloy steel piping and components

### 6.1 Wrought steel pipes and bends

6.1.1 The maximum permissible design stress,  $\sigma$ , is to be taken as the lowest of the following values:

$$\sigma = \frac{E_t}{1,6} \quad \sigma = \frac{R_{20}}{2,7} \quad \sigma = \frac{S_R}{1,6}$$

where

$E_t$  = specified minimum lower yield or 0,2 per cent proof stress at the design temperature. In the case of stainless steel, the 1,0 per cent proof stress at design temperature is to be used

$R_{20}$  = specified minimum tensile strength at ambient temperature

$S_R$  = average stress to produce rupture in 100 000 hours at the design temperature

Values of the maximum permissible design stress,  $\sigma$ , obtained from the properties of the steels specified in Chapter 6 of the Rules for Materials are shown in Tables 1.6.1 and 1.6.2. For intermediate values of specified minimum strengths and temperatures, values of the permissible design stress may be obtained by interpolation.

6.1.2 Where it is proposed to use, for high temperature service, alloy steels other than those detailed in Table 1.6.2 particulars of the tube sizes, design conditions and appropriate national or proprietary material specifications are to be submitted for consideration.

6.1.3 The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of straight steel pipes is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \left( \frac{pD}{20\sigma e + p} + c \right) \frac{100}{100 - a} \text{ mm}$$

where

$p$ ,  $D$ ,  $e$  and  $a$  are as defined in 3.2.1

$c$  is obtained from Table 1.6.3

$\sigma$  is defined in 2.2.1 and obtained from Table 1.6.1 or Table 1.6.2

For pipes passing through tanks, an additional corrosion allowance is to be added to take account of external corrosion; the addition will depend on the external medium and the value is to be in accordance with Table 1.6.4. Where the pipes are efficiently protected, the corrosion allowance may be reduced by not more than 50 per cent.

6.1.4 The minimum thickness,  $t_b$ , of a straight steel pipe to be used for a pipe bend is to be determined by the following formula, except where it can be demonstrated that the use of a thickness less than  $t_b$  would not reduce the thickness below  $t$  at any point after bending:

$$t_b = \left[ \left( \frac{pD}{20\sigma e + p} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{D}{2,5R} \right) + c \right] \frac{100}{100 - a} \text{ mm}$$

where

$p$ ,  $D$ ,  $R$ ,  $e$  and  $a$  are as defined in 3.2.1

$\sigma$  and  $c$  are as defined in 6.1.3. In general,  $R$  is to be not less than  $3D$ .

6.1.5 Where the minimum thickness calculated by 6.1.3 or 6.1.4 is less than that shown in Table 1.6.4, the minimum nominal thickness for the appropriate standard pipe size shown in the Table is to be used. No allowance is required for negative tolerance, corrosion or reduction in thickness due to bending on this nominal thickness. For larger diameters, the minimum thickness will be considered. For threaded pipes, where permitted, the minimum thickness is to be measured at the bottom of the thread.

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 6

**Table 1.6.1 Carbon and carbon-manganese steel pipes**

| Specified minimum tensile strength, N/mm <sup>2</sup> | Maximum permissible stress, N/mm <sup>2</sup> |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
|                                                       | Maximum design temperature, °C                |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|                                                       | 50                                            | 100 | 150 | 200 | 250 | 300 | 350 | 400 | 410 | 420 | 430 | 440 | 450 |
| 320                                                   | 107                                           | 105 | 99  | 92  | 78  | 62  | 57  | 55  | 55  | 54  | 54  | 54  | 49  |
| 360                                                   | 120                                           | 117 | 110 | 103 | 91  | 76  | 69  | 68  | 68  | 68  | 64  | 56  | 49  |
| 410                                                   | 136                                           | 131 | 124 | 117 | 106 | 93  | 86  | 84  | 79  | 71  | 64  | 56  | 49  |
| 460                                                   | 151                                           | 146 | 139 | 132 | 122 | 111 | 101 | 99  | 98  | 85  | 73  | 62  | 53  |
| 490                                                   | 160                                           | 156 | 148 | 141 | 131 | 121 | 111 | 109 | 98  | 85  | 73  | 62  | 53  |

**Table 1.6.2 Alloy steel pipes**

| Type of steel                                                                                         | Specified minimum tensile strength, N/mm <sup>2</sup> | Maximum permissible stress, N/mm <sup>2</sup> |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|--|
|                                                                                                       |                                                       | Maximum design temperature, °C                |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |  |
|                                                                                                       |                                                       | 50                                            | 100 | 200 | 300 | 350 | 400 | 440 | 450 | 460 | 470 |  |
| 1 Cr 1½ Mo                                                                                            | 440                                                   | 159                                           | 150 | 137 | 114 | 106 | 102 | 101 | 101 | 100 | 99  |  |
| 2¼ Cr 1 Mo annealed                                                                                   | 410                                                   | 76                                            | 67  | 57  | 50  | 47  | 45  | 44  | 43  | 43  | 42  |  |
| 2¼ Cr 1 Mo normalised and tempered (Note 1)                                                           | 490                                                   | 167                                           | 163 | 153 | 144 | 140 | 136 | 130 | 128 | 127 | 116 |  |
| 2¼ Cr 1 Mo normalised and tempered (Note 2)                                                           | 490                                                   | 167                                           | 163 | 153 | 144 | 140 | 136 | 130 | 122 | 114 | 105 |  |
| 1½ Cr 1½ Mo ¼ V                                                                                       | 460                                                   | 166                                           | 162 | 147 | 120 | 115 | 111 | 106 | 105 | 103 | 102 |  |
|                                                                                                       |                                                       | Maximum design temperature, °C                |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |  |
|                                                                                                       |                                                       | 480                                           | 490 | 500 | 510 | 520 | 530 | 540 | 550 | 560 | 570 |  |
| 1 Cr 1½ Mo                                                                                            | 440                                                   | 98                                            | 97  | 91  | 76  | 62  | 51  | 42  | 34  | 27  | 22  |  |
| 2¼ Cr 1 Mo annealed                                                                                   | 410                                                   | 42                                            | 42  | 41  | 41  | 41  | 40  | 40  | 40  | 37  | 32  |  |
| 2¼ Cr 1 Mo normalised and tempered (Note 1)                                                           | 490                                                   | 106                                           | 96  | 86  | 76  | 67  | 58  | 49  | 43  | 37  | 32  |  |
| 2¼ Cr 1 Mo normalised and tempered (Note 2)                                                           | 490                                                   | 96                                            | 88  | 79  | 72  | 64  | 56  | 49  | 43  | 37  | 32  |  |
| 1½ Cr 1½ Mo ¼ V                                                                                       | 460                                                   | 101                                           | 99  | 97  | 94  | 82  | 72  | 62  | 53  | 45  | 37  |  |
| NOTES                                                                                                 |                                                       |                                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |  |
| 1. Maximum permissible stress values applicable when the tempering temperature does not exceed 750°C. |                                                       |                                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |  |
| 2. Maximum permissible stress values applicable when the tempering temperature exceeds 750°C.         |                                                       |                                               |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |     |  |

# Piping Design Requirements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 6 &amp; 7

**Table 1.6.3 Values of *c* for steel pipes**

| Piping service                                   | <i>c</i><br>mm |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Superheated steam systems                        | 0,3            |
| Saturated steam systems                          | 0,8            |
| Steam coil systems in cargo tanks                | 2,0            |
| Feed water for boilers in open circuit systems   | 1,5            |
| Feed water for boilers in closed circuit systems | 0,5            |
| Blow down (for boilers) systems                  | 1,5            |
| Compressed air systems                           | 1,0            |
| Hydraulic oil systems                            | 0,3            |
| Lubricating oil systems                          | 0,3            |
| Oil fuel systems                                 | 1,0            |
| Cargo oil systems                                | 2,0            |
| Refrigerating plants                             | 0,3            |
| Fresh water systems                              | 0,8            |
| Sea-water systems in general                     | 3,0            |

6.1.6 For air, bilge, ballast, fuel, overflow, sounding and venting pipes as listed in Table 1.6.4, where the pipes are efficiently protected against corrosion, the thickness may be reduced by not more than 1 mm.

6.1.7 The internal diameter for bilge, venting and overflow pipes listed in Table 1.6.4 is to be not less than 50 mm. The internal diameter for sounding pipes is to be not less than 32 mm.

**Table 1.6.4 Minimum thickness for steel pipes**

| External diameter<br><i>D</i> in mm | Pipes in general<br>in mm | Venting, overflow and<br>sounding pipes for<br>structural tanks<br>in mm | Bilge, ballast and<br>general sea-water<br>pipes in mm | Bilge, air, overflow and sounding pipes<br>through ballast and fuel tanks, ballast lines<br>through fuel tanks and fuel lines through<br>ballast tanks in mm |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 10,2–12                             | 1,6                       | –                                                                        | –                                                      | –                                                                                                                                                            |
| 13,5–19                             | 1,8                       | –                                                                        | –                                                      | –                                                                                                                                                            |
| 20                                  | 2,0                       | –                                                                        | –                                                      | –                                                                                                                                                            |
| 21,3–25                             | 2,0                       | –                                                                        | 3,2                                                    | –                                                                                                                                                            |
| 26,9–33,7                           | 2,0                       | –                                                                        | 3,2                                                    | –                                                                                                                                                            |
| 38–44,5                             | 2,0                       | 4,5                                                                      | 3,6                                                    | 6,3                                                                                                                                                          |
| 48,3                                | 2,3                       | 4,5                                                                      | 3,6                                                    | 6,3                                                                                                                                                          |
| 51–63,5                             | 2,3                       | 4,5                                                                      | 4,0                                                    | 6,3                                                                                                                                                          |
| 70                                  | 2,6                       | 4,5                                                                      | 4,0                                                    | 6,3                                                                                                                                                          |
| 76,1–82,5                           | 2,6                       | 4,5                                                                      | 4,5                                                    | 6,3                                                                                                                                                          |
| 88,9–108                            | 2,9                       | 4,5                                                                      | 4,5                                                    | 7,1                                                                                                                                                          |
| 114,3–127                           | 3,2                       | 4,5                                                                      | 4,5                                                    | 8,0                                                                                                                                                          |
| 133–139,7                           | 3,6                       | 4,5                                                                      | 4,5                                                    | 8,0                                                                                                                                                          |
| 152,4–168,3                         | 4,0                       | 4,5                                                                      | 4,5                                                    | 8,8                                                                                                                                                          |
| 177,8                               | 4,5                       | 5,0                                                                      | 5,0                                                    | 8,8                                                                                                                                                          |
| 193,7                               | 4,5                       | 5,4                                                                      | 5,4                                                    | 8,8                                                                                                                                                          |
| 219,1                               | 4,5                       | 5,9                                                                      | 5,9                                                    | 8,8                                                                                                                                                          |
| 244,5–273                           | 5,0                       | 6,3                                                                      | 6,3                                                    | 8,8                                                                                                                                                          |
| 298,5–368                           | 5,6                       | 6,3                                                                      | 6,3                                                    | 8,8                                                                                                                                                          |
| 406,4–457,2                         | 6,3                       | 6,3                                                                      | 6,3                                                    | 8,8                                                                                                                                                          |

**NOTE**

The pipe diameters and wall thicknesses given in the table are based on common international standards. Diameter and thickness according to other National or International Standards will be considered.

**Section 7**

### Copper and copper alloy piping and components

#### 7.1 Copper and copper alloy pipes, valves and fittings

7.1.1 Materials for Class I and Class II piping systems, also for ship-side valves and fittings and valves on the collision bulkhead, are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 9 of the Rules for Materials, see *also* 4.1.

7.1.2 Materials for Class III piping systems are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of acceptable national specifications. The manufacturer's test certificate will be acceptable and is to be provided for each consignment of material. See Ch 1,3.1.3(c) of the Rules for Materials.

7.1.3 Pipes are to be seamless, and branches are to be provided by cast or stamped fittings, pipe pressings or other approved fabrications.

7.1.4 Brazing and welding materials are to be suitable for the operating temperature and for the medium being carried. All brazing and welding are to be carried out to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 7 & 8

**Table 1.7.1 Copper and copper alloy pipes**

| Pipe material            | Condition of supply | Specified minimum tensile strength, N/mm <sup>2</sup> | Permissible stress, N/mm <sup>2</sup> |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |
|--------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|--|
|                          |                     |                                                       | Maximum design temperature, °C        |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |  |
|                          |                     |                                                       | 50                                    | 75   | 100  | 125  | 150  | 175  | 200  | 225  | 250  | 275  | 300  |  |
| Copper                   | Annealed            | 220                                                   | 41,2                                  | 41,2 | 40,2 | 40,2 | 34,3 | 27,5 | 18,6 | —    | —    | —    | —    |  |
| Aluminium brass          | Annealed            | 320                                                   | 78,5                                  | 78,5 | 78,5 | 78,5 | 78,5 | 51,0 | 24,5 | —    | —    | —    | —    |  |
| 90/10 Copper-nickel-iron | Annealed            | 270                                                   | 68,6                                  | 68,6 | 67,7 | 65,7 | 63,7 | 61,8 | 58,8 | 55,9 | 52,0 | 48,1 | 44,1 |  |
| 70/30 Copper-nickel      | Annealed            | 360                                                   | 81,4                                  | 79,4 | 77,5 | 75,5 | 73,5 | 71,6 | 69,6 | 67,7 | 65,7 | 63,7 | 61,8 |  |

7.1.5 In general, the maximum permissible service temperature of copper and copper alloy pipes, valves and fittings is not to exceed 200°C for copper and aluminium brass, and 300°C for copper-nickel. Cast bronze valves and fittings complying with the requirements of Chapter 9 of the Rules for Materials may be accepted up to 260°C.

7.1.6 The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of straight copper and copper alloy pipes is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \left( \frac{pD}{20\sigma + p} + c \right) \frac{100}{100 - a} \text{ mm}$$

where

$p$ ,  $D$  and  $a$  are as defined in 3.2.1

$c$  = corrosion allowance

= 0,8 mm for copper, aluminium brass, and copper-nickel alloys where the nickel content is less than 10 per cent

= 0,5 mm for copper-nickel alloys where the nickel content is 10 per cent or greater

= 0 where the media are non-corrosive relative to the pipe material

$\sigma$  = maximum permissible design stress, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, from Table 1.7.1. Intermediate values of stresses may be obtained by linear interpolation.

7.1.7 The minimum thickness,  $t_b$ , of a straight seamless copper or copper alloy pipe to be used for a pipe bend is to be determined by the formula below, except where it can be demonstrated that the use of a thickness less than  $t_b$  would not reduce the thickness below  $t$  at any point after bending:

$$t_b = \left[ \left( \frac{pD}{20\sigma + p} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{D}{2,5R} \right) + c \right] \frac{100}{100 - a} \text{ mm}$$

where

$p$ ,  $D$ ,  $R$  and  $a$  are as defined in 3.2.1

$\sigma$  and  $c$  are as defined in 7.1.6. In general,  $R$  is to be not less than  $3D$ .

7.1.8 Where the minimum thickness calculated by 7.1.6 or 7.1.7 is less than shown in Table 1.7.2, the minimum nominal thickness for the appropriate standard pipe size shown in the Table is to be used. No allowance is required for negative tolerance or reduction in thickness due to bending on this nominal thickness. For threaded pipes, where permitted, the minimum thickness is to be measured at the bottom of the thread.

**Table 1.7.2 Minimum thickness for copper and copper alloy pipes**

| Standard pipe sizes (outside diameter) |          | Minimum overriding nominal thickness |              |
|----------------------------------------|----------|--------------------------------------|--------------|
|                                        |          | Copper                               | Copper alloy |
| mm                                     | mm       | mm                                   | mm           |
| 8                                      | to 10    | 1,0                                  | 0,8          |
| 12                                     | to 20    | 1,2                                  | 1,0          |
| 25                                     | to 44,5  | 1,5                                  | 1,2          |
| 50                                     | to 76,1  | 2,0                                  | 1,5          |
| 88,9                                   | to 108   | 2,5                                  | 2,0          |
| 133                                    | to 159   | 3,0                                  | 2,5          |
| 193,7                                  | to 267   | 3,5                                  | 3,0          |
| 273                                    | to 457,2 | 4,0                                  | 3,5          |
|                                        | 508      | 4,5                                  | 4,0          |

## 7.2 Heat treatment

7.2.1 Pipes which have been hardened by cold bending are to be suitably heat treated on completion of fabrication and prior to being tested by hydraulic pressure. Copper pipes are to be annealed and copper alloy pipes are to be either annealed or stress relief heat treated.

## Section 8 Cast iron piping and components

### 8.1 Spheroidal or nodular graphite cast iron

8.1.1 Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron may be accepted for bilge, ballast and cargo oil piping.

8.1.2 Spheroidal or nodular graphite iron castings for pipes, valves and fittings in Class II and Class III piping systems are to be made in a grade having a specified minimum elongation not less than 12 per cent on a gauge length of, where  $5,65\sqrt{S_0}$  is the actual cross-sectional area of the test piece.



# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 8, 9 &amp; 10

8.1.3 Castings for Class II systems, also for ship-side valves and fittings and valves on the collision bulkhead, are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 7 of the Rules for Materials. Castings for Class III systems are to comply with the requirements of acceptable national specifications. A manufacturer's test certificate will be accepted and is to be provided for each consignment of material for Class III systems, see *also* 1.6 and Ch 1,3.1.3(c) of the Rules for Materials.

8.1.4 Proposals for the use of this material in Class I piping systems will be specially considered, but in no case is the material to be used in systems where the design temperature exceeds 350°C.

8.1.5 Where the elongation is less than the minimum required by 8.1.1, the material is, in general, to be subject to the same limitations as grey cast iron.

## 8.2 Grey cast iron

8.2.1 Grey cast iron pipes, valves and fittings will, in general, be accepted in Class III piping systems except as stated in 8.2.3.

8.2.2 Grey cast iron is not to be used for pipes, valves and other fittings handling media having temperatures above 220°C or for piping subject to pressure shock, excessive strains or vibrations.

8.2.3 Grey cast iron is not to be used for the following:

- Pipes for steam systems and fire extinguishing systems.
- Pipes, valves and fittings for boiler blow-down systems and other piping systems subject to shock or vibration.
- Ship-side valves and fittings, see Ch 2,2.5.
- Valves fitted on the collision bulkhead, see Ch 2,3.3.
- Bilge lines in tanks.
- Pipes and fittings in flammable oil systems where the design pressure exceeds 7 bar or the design operating temperature is greater than 60°C.
- Valves fitted to tanks containing flammable oil under static pressure.
- Valve chests and fittings for starting air systems, see Pt 2, Ch 1,7.13.4.

8.2.4 Castings for Class III piping systems are to comply with acceptable national specifications.

## Section 9 Stainless steel piping and components

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 Stainless steels may be used for a wide range of services and are particularly suitable for use at elevated temperatures. For guidance on the use of Austenitic steels in sea water systems, see 17.3.4.

9.1.2 The minimum thickness of stainless steel pipes is to be determined from the formula given in 6.1.3 or 6.1.4 using a corrosion allowance of 0,8 mm. Values of the 1,0 per cent proof stress and tensile strength of the material for use in the formula in 6.1.1 may be obtained from Table 6.5.2 of the Rules for Materials.

9.1.3 Where stainless steel is used in lubricating oil and hydraulic oil systems, the corrosion allowance may be reduced to 0 mm. For pipes passing through tanks, an additional corrosion allowance is to be added to take account of external corrosion; the addition will depend on the external medium and the value is to be in accordance with Table 1.6.3.

9.1.4 In no case is the thickness of stainless steel pipes to be less than that shown in Table 1.9.1.

**Table 1.9.1 Minimum thickness for stainless steel pipes**

| Standard pipe sizes,<br>(outside diameter),<br>in mm |          | Min.nominal<br>thickness,<br>in mm |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------|------------------------------------|
| 8,0                                                  | to 10,0  | 0,8                                |
| 10,2                                                 | to 17,2  | 1,0                                |
| 21,3                                                 | to 48,3  | 1,6                                |
| 60,3                                                 | to 88,9  | 2,0                                |
| 114,3                                                | to 168,3 | 2,3                                |
| 219,1                                                |          | 2,6                                |
| 273,0                                                |          | 2,9                                |
| 323,9                                                | to 406,4 | 3,6                                |
| over                                                 |          | 4,0                                |

9.1.5 Joints in stainless steel pipework may be made by any of the techniques described in 5.2 to 5.8.

9.1.6 Where pipework is butt welded, this should preferably be accomplished without the use of backing rings, in order to eliminate the possibility of crevice corrosion between the backing ring and pipe.

## Section 10 Aluminium piping and components

### 10.1 General

10.1.1 The use of aluminium alloy material in Class III piping systems will be considered in relation to the fluid being conveyed and operating conditions of temperature and pressure.

# Piping Design Requirements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 10 &amp; 11

**10.1.2** In general, aluminium alloy may be used for air and sounding pipes for water tanks and dry spaces providing it can be shown that pipe failure will not cause a loss of integrity across watertight divisions. In ships of aluminium construction, aluminium alloy may also be used for air and sounding pipes for oil fuel, lubricating oil and other flammable liquid tanks provided the pipes are suitably protected against the effects of fire.

**10.1.3** Aluminium alloy pipes are not to be used in machinery spaces or cargo holds for conveying oil fuel, lubricating oil or other flammable liquids, or for bilge suction pipework within machinery spaces.

**10.1.4** Aluminium alloy pipes are not acceptable for fire extinguishing pipes unless they are suitably protected against the effect of heat.

**10.1.5** The minimum thickness of aluminium alloy pipes is to be not less than that shown in Table 1.10.1.

**Table 1.10.1 Minimum thickness of aluminium pipes**

| Nominal pipe size (mm) | Minimum wall thickness (mm) |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 10                     | 1,7                         |
| 15                     | 2,1                         |
| 20                     | 2,1                         |
| 25                     | 2,8                         |
| 40                     | 2,8                         |
| 50                     | 2,8                         |
| 80                     | 3,0                         |
| 100                    | 3,0                         |
| 150                    | 3,4                         |
| 200                    | 3,8                         |
| 250 and over           | 4,2                         |

**10.1.6** Design requirements for aluminium pressure pipes for design pressures greater than 7 bar will be specially considered.

**10.1.7** Attention is drawn to the susceptibility of aluminium to corrosion in the region of welded connections.

## Section 11 Pipe connections

### 11.1 General

**11.1.1** Proposals to use plastics pipes in shipboard piping systems will be considered in relation to the properties of the materials, the operating conditions, the intended service and location. Details are to be submitted for approval. Special consideration will be given to any proposed service for plastics pipes not mentioned in these Rules.

**11.1.2** Attention is also to be given to the *Guidelines for the Application of Plastic Pipes on Ships* contained in IMO Resolution A.753(18).

**11.1.3** Plastics pipes and fittings will, in general, be accepted in Class III piping systems. Proposals for the use of plastics in Class I and Class II piping systems will be specially considered.

**11.1.4** For Class I, Class II and any Class III piping systems for which there are Rule requirements, the pipes are to be of a type which has been approved by LR.

**11.1.5** For domestic and similar services where there are no Rule requirements, the pipes need not be of a type which has been approved by LR. However, the fire safety aspects as referenced in 11.4, are to be considered.

**11.1.6** The use of plastics piping and components for magazine piping systems or for piping systems that may pass through magazine spaces is not permitted.

**11.1.7** The use of plastics pipes may be restricted by the Naval Authority.

**11.1.8** Where it is proposed to use plastics materials for piping systems and associated equipment installed in naval ships, the Naval Authority may require a risk assessment to be submitted that addresses the following:

- the potential fire risks in the space containing the plastics materials;
- The effect of a fire in the compartment containing plastics materials in terms of fire spread and of producing excessive quantities of smoke and toxic products.
- An engineering justification for the use of plastics materials in preference to metallic materials which are not sensitive to heat.

### 11.2 Design and performance criteria

**11.2.1** Pipes and fittings are to be of robust construction and are to comply with a National or other established Standard, consistent with the intended use. Particulars of pipes, fittings and joints are to be submitted for consideration.

**11.2.2** The design and performance criteria of all piping systems, independent of service or location, are to meet the requirements of 11.3.

**11.2.3** Depending on the service and location, the fire safety aspects relating to the use of plastics materials for pipes are to satisfy the requirements of 11.4. See also 11.1.8.

**11.2.4** Plastics piping, connections and fittings are to be electrically conductive when:

- carrying fluids capable of generating electrostatic charges;
- passing through hazardous zones and spaces, regardless of the fluid being conveyed.

Suitable precautions against the build up of electrostatic charges are to be provided in accordance with the requirements of 11.5, see also Pt 10, Ch 1, 1.12.

# Piping Design Requirements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 11

### 11.3 Design strength

11.3.1 The strength of pipes is to be determined by hydrostatic pressure tests to failure on representative sizes of pipe. The strength of fittings is to be not less than the strength of the pipes.

11.3.2 The nominal internal pressure,  $pN_i$ , of the pipe is to be determined by the lesser of the following:

$$pN_i \leq \frac{p_{st}}{4}$$

$$pN_i \leq \frac{p_{lt}}{2,5}$$

where

$p_{st}$  = short term hydrostatic test failure pressure, in bar

$p_{lt}$  = long term hydrostatic test failure pressure (100 000 hours), in bar

Testing may be carried out over a reduced period of time using suitable standards, such as ASTM D2837 and D1598.

11.3.3 The nominal external pressure,  $pN_e$ , of the pipe, defined as the maximum total of internal vacuum and external static pressure head to which the pipe may be subjected, is to be determined by the following:

$$pN_e \leq \frac{p_{col}}{3}$$

where

$p_{col}$  = pipe collapse pressure, in bar

The pipe collapse pressure is not to be less than 3 bar.

11.3.4 Piping is to meet these design requirements over the range of service temperature it will experience.

11.3.5 High temperature limits and pressure reductions relative to nominal pressures are to be according to a recognised standard, but in each case the maximum working temperature is to be at least 20°C lower than the minimum temperature of deflection under load of the resin or plastics material without reinforcement. The minimum heat distortion temperature is not to be less than 80°C. See also Ch 14.4 of the Rules for Materials.

11.3.6 Where it is proposed to use plastics piping in low temperature services, design strength testing is to be made at a temperature 10°C lower than the minimum working temperature.

11.3.7 For guidance, typical temperature and pressure limits are indicated in Table 1.11.1 and Table 1.11.2. The Tables are related to water service only. Transport of chemicals or other media are to be considered on a case by case basis.

**Table 1.11.1 Typical temperature and pressure limits for thermoplastic pipes**

| Material                       | Nominal pressure, bar | Maximum permissible working pressure, bar |      |      |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|------|------|
|                                |                       | -20 to 0°C                                | 30°C | 40°C |
| HDPE                           | 10                    | 7,5                                       | 6    |      |
|                                | 16                    | 12                                        | 9,5  | 6    |
| HDPE High density polyethylene |                       |                                           |      |      |

11.3.8 The selection of plastics materials for piping is to take account of other factors such as impact resistance, ageing, fatigue, erosion resistance, fluid absorption and material compatibility such that the design strength of the piping is not reduced below that required by these Rules.

11.3.9 Design strength values may be verified experimentally or by a combination of testing and calculation methods.

### 11.4 Fire performance criteria

11.4.1 Where plastics pipes are used in systems essential to the safe operation of the ship, or for containing combustible liquids or sea-water where leakage or failure could result in fire or in the flooding of watertight compartments, the pipes and fittings, including couplings with flexible internal seals, are to be of a type which have been fire endurance tested in accordance with the requirements of Table 1.11.3.

**Table 1.11.2 Typical temperature and pressure limits for glassfibre reinforced epoxy (GRE) and polyester (GRP) pipes**

| Minimum heat distortion temperature of resin | Nominal pressure, bar | Maximum permissible working pressure, bar |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
|                                              |                       | -50 to 30°C                               | 40°C | 50°C | 60°C | 70°C | 80°C | 90°C | 95°C |
| 80°C                                         | 10                    | 10                                        | 9    | 7,5  | 6    |      |      |      |      |
|                                              | 16                    | 16                                        | 14   | 12   | 9,5  |      |      |      |      |
|                                              | 25                    | 16                                        | 16   | 16   | 15   |      |      |      |      |
| 100°C                                        | 10                    | 10                                        | 10   | 9,5  | 8,5  | 7    | 6    |      |      |
|                                              | 16                    | 16                                        | 16   | 15   | 13,5 | 11   | 9,5  |      |      |
|                                              | 25                    | 16                                        | 16   | 16   | 16   | 16   | 15   |      |      |
| 135°C                                        | 10                    | 10                                        | 10   | 10   | 10   | 9,5  | 8,5  | 7    | 6    |
|                                              | 16                    | 16                                        | 16   | 16   | 16   | 15   | 13,5 | 11   | 9,5  |
|                                              | 25                    | 16                                        | 16   | 16   | 16   | 16   | 16   | 16   | 15   |

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 11

**Table 1.11.3 Fire endurance requirements** (see continuation)

|                                                       | Location                       |                        |                         |                        |                                |                |                     |                                              |                                          |                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|---------------------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------|
|                                                       | A                              | B                      | C                       | D                      | E                              | F              | G                   | H                                            | I                                        | J               |
| Piping systems                                        | Machinery spaces of Category A | Other Machinery spaces | Special category spaces | Other dry compartments | Refuelling tanks (f.p. ≤ 60°C) | Fuel oil tanks | Ballast water tanks | Cofferdams void spaces pipe tunnel and ducts | Accommodation service and control spaces | Open decks      |
| FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS (f.p. ≤ 60°C)<br>1 Refuelling lines | N/A                            | N/A                    | N/A                     | N/A                    | 0                              | N/A            | 0                   | 0                                            | N/A                                      | L1 <sup>2</sup> |
| FLAMMABLE LIQUIDS (f.p. > 60°C)<br>2 Refuelling lines | X                              | X                      | X                       | X                      | N/A <sup>3</sup>               | 0              | 0 <sup>10</sup>     | 0                                            | N/A                                      | L1              |
| 3 Fuel oil                                            | X                              | X                      | X                       | X                      | N/A <sup>3</sup>               | 0              | 0                   | 0                                            | L1                                       | L1              |
| 4 Lubricating oil                                     | X                              | X                      | X                       | X                      | N/A                            | N/A            | N/A                 | 0                                            | L1                                       | L1              |
| 5 Hydraulic oil                                       | X                              | X                      | X                       | X                      | 0                              | 0              | 0                   | 0                                            | L1                                       | L1              |
| SEAWATER <sup>1</sup><br>6 Bilge main and branches    | X                              | X                      | X                       | X                      | N/A                            | 0              | 0                   | 0                                            | N/A                                      | L1              |
| 7 Fire main and water spray                           | L1                             | L1                     | X                       | N/A                    | N/A                            | N/A            | 0                   | 0                                            | X                                        | L18             |
| 8 Foam system                                         | L1                             | L1                     | N/A                     | N/A                    | N/A                            | N/A            | N/A                 | 0                                            | L1                                       | L1              |
| 9 Sprinkler system                                    | L1                             | L1                     | X                       | N/A                    | N/A                            | N/A            | 0                   | 0                                            | L3                                       | L3              |
| 10 Ballast                                            | L3                             | L3                     | L3                      | X                      | 0 <sup>10</sup>                | 0              | 0                   | 0                                            | L2                                       | L2              |
| 11 Cooling water, essential services                  | L3                             | L3                     | N/A                     | N/A                    | N/A                            | N/A            | 0                   | 0                                            | N/A                                      | L2              |
| 12 Non-essential systems                              | 0                              | 0                      | 0                       | 0                      | N/A                            | 0              | 0                   | 0                                            | 0                                        | 0               |

## Piping Design Requirements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 11

Table 1.11.3 Fire endurance requirements (continued)

|                                                 | Location                                     |                                   |                                    |                                  |                                         |                           |                                |                                                                     |                                                           |                    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|
|                                                 | A<br>Machinery<br>spaces<br>of<br>Category A | B<br>Other<br>Machinery<br>spaces | C<br>Special<br>category<br>spaces | D<br>Other<br>dry<br>compartment | E<br>Refuelling<br>tanks<br>f.p. ≤ 60°C | F<br>Fuel<br>oil<br>tanks | G<br>Ballast<br>water<br>tanks | H<br>Cofferdams<br>void<br>spaces<br>pipe<br>tunnel<br>and<br>ducts | I<br>Accommodation<br>service<br>and<br>control<br>spaces | J<br>Open<br>decks |
| FRESHWATER                                      |                                              |                                   |                                    |                                  |                                         |                           |                                |                                                                     |                                                           |                    |
| 13 Cooling water<br>essential services          | L3                                           | L3                                | N/A                                | N/A                              | N/A                                     | 0                         | 0                              | 0                                                                   | L3                                                        | L3                 |
| 14 Condensate return                            | L3                                           | L3                                | 0                                  | 0                                | N/A                                     | N/A                       | N/A                            | 0                                                                   | 0                                                         | 0                  |
| 15 Non-essential<br>systems                     | 0                                            | 0                                 | 0                                  | 0                                | N/A                                     | 0                         | 0                              | 0                                                                   | 0                                                         | 0                  |
| SANITARY/DRAINS/<br>SCUPPERS                    |                                              |                                   |                                    |                                  |                                         |                           |                                |                                                                     |                                                           |                    |
| 16 Deck drains<br>(internal)                    | L14                                          | L14                               | L14                                | 0                                | N/A                                     | 0                         | 0                              | 0                                                                   | 0                                                         | 0                  |
| 17 Sanitary drains<br>(internal)                | 0                                            | 0                                 | 0                                  | 0                                | N/A                                     | 0                         | 0                              | 0                                                                   | 0                                                         | 0                  |
| 18 Scuppers and<br>discharges<br>(overboard)    | 01.6                                         | 01.6                              | 01.6                               | 01.6                             | 0                                       | 0                         | 0                              | 0                                                                   | 01.6                                                      | 0                  |
| SOUNDING/AIR                                    |                                              |                                   |                                    |                                  |                                         |                           |                                |                                                                     |                                                           |                    |
| 19 Water tanks/dry<br>spaces                    | 0                                            | 0                                 | 0                                  | 0                                | 0                                       | 0                         | 0                              | 0                                                                   | 0                                                         | 0 <sup>8</sup>     |
| 20 Oil tanks<br>(f.p. > 60°C)                   | X                                            | X                                 | X                                  | X                                | X <sup>3</sup>                          | 0                         | 0                              | 0                                                                   | X                                                         | X                  |
| MISCELLANEOUS                                   |                                              |                                   |                                    |                                  |                                         |                           |                                |                                                                     |                                                           |                    |
| 21 Control air                                  | L15                                          | L15                               | L15                                | L15                              | N/A                                     | 0                         | 0                              | 0                                                                   | L15                                                       | L15                |
| 22 Service air<br>(non-essential)               | 0                                            | 0                                 | 0                                  | 0                                | N/A                                     | 0                         | 0                              | 0                                                                   | 0                                                         | 0                  |
| 23 Brine                                        | 0                                            | 0                                 | 0                                  | 0                                | N/A                                     | N/A                       | N/A                            | 0                                                                   | 0                                                         | 0                  |
| 24 Auxiliary low<br>pressure steam<br>(≤ 7 bar) | L2                                           | L2                                | 0 <sup>7</sup>                     | 0 <sup>7</sup>                   | 0                                       | 0                         | 0                              | 0                                                                   | 0 <sup>7</sup>                                            | 0 <sup>7</sup>     |

# Piping Design Requirements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 11

**Table 1.11.3 Fire endurance requirements** (see conclusion)

| LOCATION DEFINITIONS             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Location                         | Definition                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| A Machinery spaces of Category A | Machinery spaces of Category A as defined in Pt 1, Ch 2.5.1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| B Other machinery spaces         | Spaces, other than Category A machinery spaces containing propulsion machinery, boilers, steam and internal combustion engines, generators and major electrical machinery, pumps, oil filling stations, refrigerating, stabilising, ventilation and air-conditioning machinery, and similar spaces, and trunks to such spaces. |
| C Special category spaces        | Spaces and special category spaces as defined in Pt 10, Ch 1,1.5.9.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| D Other dry compartments         | All spaces other than special category spaces used for stores and equipment and trunks to such spaces.                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| E f.p. ≤ 60°C tanks              | All spaces used for refuelling fuel and trunks to such spaces.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| F Fuel oil tanks                 | All spaces used for fuel oil and trunks to such spaces.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| G Ballast water tanks            | All spaces used for ballast water and trunks to such spaces.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| H Cofferdams, voids, etc.        | Cofferdams and voids are those empty spaces between two bulkheads separating two adjacent compartments.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| I Accommodation, service         | Accommodation spaces, service spaces and control stations.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| J Open decks                     | Open deck spaces.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| ABBREVIATIONS                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| L1                               | Fire endurance test in dry conditions, 60 minutes. IMO Resolution A.753(18) Appendix 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| L2                               | Fire endurance test in dry conditions, 30 minutes. IMO Resolution A.753(18) Appendix 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| L3                               | Fire endurance test in wet conditions, 30 minutes. IMO Resolution A.753(18) Appendix 2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 0                                | No fire endurance test required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| N/A                              | Not applicable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| X                                | Metallic materials having a melting point greater than 925°C.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| NOTES                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 1.                               | Where non-metallic piping is used, remotely controlled valves to be provided at ship's side (valve is to be controlled from outside space).                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 2.                               | Remote closing valves to be provided at the refuelling tanks.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 3.                               | When refuelling tanks contain flammable liquids with f.p. > 60°C, '0' may replace 'N/A' or 'X'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4.                               | For drains serving only the space concerned, '0' may replace 'L1'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 5.                               | When controlling functions are not required by the rules or Naval requirements, '0' may replace 'L1'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 6.                               | Scuppers serving open decks should be 'X' throughout unless fitted at the upper end with the means of closing capable of being operated from a position above the weather deck in order to prevent downflooding.                                                                                                               |
| 7.                               | For essential services, such as fuel oil tank heating and ship's whistle, 'X' is to replace '0'.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| 8.                               | Air and sounding pipes on open deck are to be of substantial construction, see Ch 2,10.1.2.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 11

**11.4.2** The materials used for plastics pipes, except those fitted on open decks and within tanks, cofferdams, void spaces, pipe tunnels and ducts are to have low flame spread characteristics.

**11.4.3** The materials used for plastics pipes within accommodation, service and control spaces are not to be capable of producing excessive quantities of smoke and toxic products that may be a hazard to personnel within those spaces.

**11.4.4** The Naval Authority may extend the requirements of 11.4.3 to apply to on equipment piping in machinery spaces. *See also* 11.1.8.

**11.4.5** Where a fire protective coating of pipes and fittings is necessary for achieving the fire endurance standards required, the coating is to be resistant to products likely to come into contact with the piping and be suitable for the intended application.

## 11.5 Electrical conductivity

**11.5.1** Where a piping system is required to be electrically conductive for the control of static electricity, the resistance per unit length of the pipe, bends, elbows, fabricated branch pieces, etc., is not to exceed 0,1 MΩ/m, *see also* 11.2.4.

**11.5.2** Electrical continuity is to be maintained across the joints and fittings and the system is to be earthed, *see also* Pt 10, Ch 1,1.12. The resistance to earth from any point in the piping system is not to exceed 1 MΩ.

## 11.6 Manufacture and quality control

**11.6.1** All materials for plastics pipes and fittings are to be approved by LR, and are in general to be tested in accordance with Ch 14,4 of the Rules for Materials. For pipes and fittings not employing hand lay up techniques, the hydrostatic pressure test required by Ch 14,4.9 of the Rules for Materials may be replaced by testing carried out in accordance with the requirements stipulated in a National or International Standard, consistent with the intended use for which the pipe or fittings are manufactured, provided there is an effective quality system in place complying with the requirements of Ch 14,4.4 of the Rules for Materials and the testing is completed to the satisfaction of the LR Surveyor.

**11.6.2** The material manufacturer's test certificate, based on actual tested data, is to be provided for each batch of material.

**11.6.3** Plastics pipes and fittings are to be manufactured at a works approved by LR in accordance with agreed quality control procedures which shall be capable of detecting at any stage (e.g., incoming material, production, finished article, etc.) deviations in the material, product or process.

**11.6.4** Plastics pipes are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with Ch 14,4 of the Rules for Materials. For Class III piping systems the pipe manufacturer's test certificate may be accepted in lieu of an LR Certificate and is to be provided for each consignment of pipe.

## 11.7 Installation and construction

**11.7.1** All pipes are to be adequately but freely supported. Suitable provision is to be made for expansion and contraction to take place without unduly straining the pipes.

**11.7.2** Pipes may be joined by mechanical couplings or by bonding methods such as welding and laminating.

**11.7.3** Where bonding systems are used, the manufacturer or installer shall provide a written procedure covering all aspects of installation, including temperature and humidity conditions. The bonding procedure is to be approved by LR.

**11.7.4** The person carrying out the bonding is to be qualified. Records are to be available to the Surveyor for each qualified person showing the bonding procedure and performance qualification, together with dates and results of the qualification testing.

**11.7.5** In the case of pipes intended for essential services each qualified person is, at the place of construction, to make at least one test joint, representative of each type of joint to be used. The joined pipe section is to be tested to an internal hydrostatic pressure of four times the design pressure of the pipe system and the pressure held for not less than one hour, with no leakage or separation of joints. The bonding procedure test is to be witnessed by the Surveyor.

**11.7.6** Conditions during installation, such as temperature and humidity, which may affect the strength of the finished joints, are to be in accordance with the agreed bonding procedure.

**11.7.7** The required fire endurance level of the pipe is to be maintained in way of pipe supports, joints and fittings, including those between plastics and metallic pipes.

**11.7.8** Where piping systems are arranged to pass through watertight bulkheads or decks, provision is to be made for maintaining the integrity of the bulkhead or deck, by means of metallic bulkhead or deck pieces. The bulkhead pieces are to be protected against corrosion, and so constructed to be of a strength equivalent to the intact bulkhead: attention is drawn to 11.7.1. Details of the arrangements are to be submitted for approval.

**11.7.9** Where a piping system is required to be electrically conductive, for the control of static electricity, continuity is to be maintained across the joints and fittings, and the system is to be earthed, *see also* Pt 10, Ch 1,1.12.

## 11.8 Testing

**11.8.1** The hydraulic testing of pipes and fittings is to be in accordance with Section 7.

**11.8.2** Where a piping system is required to be electrically conductive, tests are to be carried out to verify that the resistance to earth from any point in the system does not exceed 1 MΩ. *See also* Pt 10, Ch 1,21.2.3.

## ■ Section 12 Valves

### 12.1 Design requirements

12.1.1 The design, construction and operational capability of valves is to be in accordance with an acceptable National or International Standard appropriate to the piping system. Where valves are not in accordance with an acceptable standard, details are to be submitted for consideration. Where valves are fitted, the requirements of 12.1.2 to 12.1.8 are to be satisfied.

12.1.2 Valves are to be made of steel, cast iron, copper alloy, or other approved material suitable for the intended purpose.

12.1.3 Valves having isolation or sealing components sensitive to heat are not to be used in spaces where leakage or failure caused by fire could result in fire spread, flooding or the loss of an essential service.

12.1.4 Where valves are required to be capable of being closed remotely in the event of fire, the valves, including their control gear, are to be of steel construction or of an acceptable fire tested design.

12.1.5 Valves are to be arranged for clockwise closing and are to be provided with indicators showing whether they are open or shut, unless this is readily obvious. Legible nameplates are to be fitted.

12.1.6 Valves are to be so constructed as to prevent the possibility of valve covers or glands being slackened back or loosened when the valves are operated.

12.1.7 Valves are to be used within their specified pressure and temperature rating for all normal operating conditions, and are to be suitable for the intended purpose.

12.1.8 Valves intended for submerged installation are to be suitable for both internal and external media. Spindle sealing is to prevent ingress of external media at the maximum external pressure head expected in service.

## ■ Section 13 Flexible hoses

### 13.1 General

13.1.1 A flexible hose assembly is a short length of metallic or non-metallic hose normally with prefabricated end fittings ready for installation.

13.1.2 For the purpose of approval for the applications in 13.2, details of the materials and construction of the hoses, and the method of attaching the end fittings together with evidence of satisfactory prototype testing, are to be submitted for consideration. The materials used in the construction of flexible hoses are to be suitable for the intended purposes.

13.1.3 Hose clamps and similar types of end attachments are not to be used for flexible hoses in piping systems for steam, flammable media, starting air systems or for sea-water systems where failure may result in flooding. In other piping systems, the use of hose clamps may be accepted where the working pressure is less than 5 bar and provided that there are two clamps at each end connection.

13.1.4 Flexible hoses are to be limited to a length necessary to provide for relative movement between fixed and flexibly mounted items of machinery/equipment or systems.

13.1.5 Flexible hoses are not to be used to compensate for misalignment between sections of piping.

13.1.6 Flexible hose assemblies are not to be installed where they may be subjected to torsional deformation (twisting) under normal operating conditions.

13.1.7 The number of flexible hoses in piping systems mentioned in this section is to be kept to a minimum and to be limited for the purpose stated in 13.2.1.

13.1.8 Where flexible hoses are intended for use in piping systems conveying flammable fluids, they are not to be installed in close proximity to hot surfaces, electrical installations or other sources of ignition. The risk of ignition due to failure of the hose assembly and subsequent release of fluids is to be mitigated as far as practicable by the use of screens or other suitable protection.

13.1.9 Flexible hoses are to be installed in clearly visible and readily accessible locations.

13.1.10 The installation of flexible hose assemblies is to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and use limitations with particular attention to the following:

- (a) Orientation.
- (b) End connection support (where necessary).
- (c) Avoidance of hose contact that could cause rubbing and abrasion.
- (d) Minimum bend radii.

13.1.11 Flexible hoses are to be permanently marked by the manufacturer with the following details:

- (a) Hose manufacturer's name or trademark.
- (b) Date of manufacture (month/year).
- (c) Designation type reference.
- (d) Nominal diameter.
- (e) Pressure rating.
- (f) Temperature rating.

Where a flexible hose assembly is made up of items from different manufacturers, the components are to be clearly identified and traceable to evidence of prototype testing. See Pt 1, Ch 2, 4.18 regarding requirements for a flexible hose register.



# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 13

## 13.2 Applications

13.2.1 Short joining lengths of flexible hoses complying with the requirements of this Section may be used, where necessary, to accommodate relative movement between various items of machinery connected to permanent piping systems. The requirements of this Section may also be applied to temporarily-connected flexible hoses or hoses of portable equipment.

13.2.2 Rubber or plastics hoses, with integral cotton or similar braid reinforcement, may be used in fresh and sea-water cooling systems. In the case of sea-water systems, where failure of the hoses could give rise to the danger of flooding, the hoses are to be suitably enclosed, as indicated in 14.2.4.

13.2.3 Rubber hoses, with single, double or more closely woven integral wire braid or other suitable material reinforcement, or convoluted metal pipes with wire braid protection, may be used in bilge, ballast, compressed air, fresh water, sea-water, fuel oil, lubricating oil, Class III steam, hydraulic and thermal oil systems. Flexible hoses of plastics materials for the same purposes, such as Teflon or Nylon, which are unable to be reinforced by incorporating closely woven integral wire braid are to have suitable material reinforcement as far as practicable. Where rubber or plastics hoses are used for fuel oil supply to burners, the hoses are to have external wire braid protection in addition to the integral wire braid. Flexible hoses for use in steam systems are to be of metallic construction.

13.2.4 Flexible hoses are not to be used in high pressure fuel oil injection systems.

13.2.5 The requirements in this Section for flexible hose assemblies are not applicable to hoses intended to be used in fixed fire extinguishing systems.

13.2.6 Short lengths of flexible hoses may be used for acoustic attenuation where agreed by LR. The use of hoses for such applications is to be kept to a minimum.

## 13.3 Design requirements

13.3.1 Flexible hose assemblies are to be designed and constructed in accordance with recognised National or International Standards acceptable to LR.

13.3.2 Flexible hoses are to be complete with approved end fittings in accordance with manufacturer's specification. End connections which do not have flanges are to comply with 5.2 as applicable and each type of hose/fitting combination is to be subject to prototype testing to the same standard as that required by the hose with particular reference to pressure and impulse tests.

13.3.3 Flexible hose assemblies intended for installation in piping systems where pressure pulses and/or high levels of vibration are expected to occur in service, are to be designed for the maximum expected impulse peak pressure and forces due to vibration. The tests required by 13.4 are to take into consideration the maximum anticipated in-service pressures, vibration frequencies and forces due to installation.

13.3.4 Flexible hose assemblies constructed of non-metallic materials intended for installation in piping systems for flammable media, and sea-water systems where failure may result in flooding, are to be of fire-resistant type. Fire resistance is to be demonstrated by testing to ISO 15540 and ISO 15541.

13.3.5 Flexible hose assemblies are to be suitable for the intended location and application, taking into consideration ambient conditions, compatibility with fluids under working pressure and temperature conditions consistent with the manufacturer's instructions and any other applicable requirements in the Rules.

## 13.4 Testing

13.4.1 Acceptance of flexible hose assemblies is subject to satisfactory prototype testing of a representative hose assembly. Prototype test programmes for flexible hose assemblies are to be submitted by the manufacturer and are to be sufficiently detailed to demonstrate performance in accordance with the specified standards.

13.4.2 For a particular hose type complete with end fittings, the tests, as applicable, are to be carried out on different nominal diameters for pressure, burst, impulse and fire resistance in accordance with the requirements of the relevant standard. The following standards are to be used as applicable:

- ISO 6802 – *Rubber and plastics hoses and hose assemblies – Hydraulic pressure impulse test without flexing.*
- ISO 6803 – *Rubber and plastics hoses and hose assemblies – Hydraulic pressure impulse test with flexing.*
- ISO 15540 – *Ships and marine technology – Fire resistance of hose assemblies – Test methods.*
- ISO 15541 – *Ships and marine technology – Fire resistance of hose assemblies – Requirements for test bench.*
- ISO 10380 – *Pipework – Corrugated metal hoses and hose assemblies.*

Other standards may be accepted where agreed by LR.

13.4.3 All flexible hose assemblies are to be satisfactorily prototype burst tested to an International Standard\* to demonstrate they are able to withstand a pressure of not less than four times the design pressure without indication of failure or leakage.

NOTE:

The International Standards, e.g., EN or SAE for burst testing of non-metallic hoses, require the pressure to be increased until burst without any holding period at 4 x Maximum Working Pressure.

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 14, 15 & 16

## ■ Section 14 Expansion pieces

### 14.1 Design and construction requirements

14.1.1 The design and construction of expansion pieces intended for installation in piping systems is to be in accordance with an acceptable standard or design code appropriate to the piping system. Where suitable standards are not available, details of materials and construction are to be submitted for consideration. Where expansion pieces are fitted, the requirements of this Section are to be satisfied.

14.1.2 The design of expansion pieces is to take account of pressure, temperature, fluid compatibility, loads to accommodate axial and lateral movements and fatigue life due to vibration.

14.1.3 Prototype pressure tests are to be carried out on each new type of expansion piece, and in no case is the burst pressure to be less than four times the design pressure.

14.1.4 For requirements relating to testing after manufacture, see Section 16.

### 14.2 Applications

14.2.1 Expansion pieces of an acceptable design are only to be used in permanent piping system installations to accommodate axial and lateral movements. They are not to be used to compensate for piping misalignment unless specifically designed for the purpose.

14.2.2 Expansion pieces are to be used within their specified pressure, temperature and movement conditions for all normal operating conditions. The design and operating ratings of expansion pieces are not to be less than that of the piping system in which the expansion piece is installed.

14.2.3 Expansion pieces used in compressed air, boiler feed water, steam and flammable oil piping systems are to be of steel or other approved material.

14.2.4 Expansion pieces incorporating oil resistant rubber or other suitable synthetic material may be used in cooling water lines in machinery spaces. Where fitted in sea-water lines, they are to be provided with guards which effectively enclose, but do not interfere with, the action of the expansion pieces and will reduce to a minimum practicable, any flow of water into the machinery spaces in the event of failure of the flexible elements. Proposals to use such fittings in water lines in other services, including, ballast lines in machinery spaces and inside water ballast tanks, and bilge lines in enclosed spaces only, will be specially considered when plans of the piping systems are submitted for approval.

14.2.5 Expansion pieces are to be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and are to be protected against over extension and over compression. The adjoining pipes are to be suitably aligned, supported and anchored. Where necessary, expansion pieces of bellows expansion pieces are to be protected against mechanical damage.

## ■ Section 15 Pumps

### 15.1 General

15.1.1 The design, construction and operational capability of all pumping units is to be suitable for operating conditions in Pt 1, Ch 2.4. The selection of pumping units is to recognise the following details:

- (a) Pump characteristic and required duty.
- (b) Performance if required to perform a secondary duty.
- (c) Pumped fluid and its temperature ranges.
- (d) Maximum discharge pressure head from the pump and design pressure of piping system.
- (e) The size of air pipes and capacity of air pipe heads fitted to tanks which can be pumped up.
- (f) The need to fit relief devices to pumps and piping systems.
- (g) Maximum permissible fluid velocities in the piping system to avoid erosion and damage to valve seats and other fittings.
- (h) Minimum fluid velocities to avoid fouling and subsequent pitting.

15.1.2 Pumps employed in bilge pumping systems are to have a means of priming and this is to be independent of the pump sea inlet connection.

## ■ Section 16 Testing

### 16.1 Hydraulic tests before installation on board

16.1.1 All Class I and II pipes and their associated fittings are to be tested by hydraulic pressure to the Surveyor's satisfaction. Further, all steam, feed, compressed air and fuel oil pipes, together with their fittings, are to be similarly tested where the design pressure is greater than 7,0 bar. The test is to be carried out after completion of manufacture and before installation on board and, where applicable, before insulating and coating.

16.1.2 Where the design temperature does not exceed 300°C, the test pressure is to be 1,5 times the design pressure, as defined in 3.3.

16.1.3 Where testing of systems or sub-systems following final assembly is specified, in addition to the requirements of 16.1.2 the lowest applicable pressure as defined in this sub-Section is to be used for testing.

16.1.4 For steel pipes and integral fittings for use in systems where the design temperature exceeds 300°C, the test pressure is to be as follows:

- (a) For carbon and carbon-manganese steel pipes, the test pressure is to be twice the design pressure, as defined in 3.3.
- (b) For alloy steel pipes, the test pressure is to be determined by the following formula, but need not exceed  $2p$ :

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 16 &amp; 17

$$p_t = 1,5 \frac{\sigma_{100}}{\sigma} p \text{ bar}$$

where

$p_t$  and  $p$  are as defined in 3.2.1

$\sigma$  = permissible stress for the design temperature, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, as stated in Table 1.6.2

$\sigma_{100}$  = permissible stress for 100°C, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, as stated in Table 1.6.2.

16.1.5 Where alloy steels not included in Table 1.6.2 are used, the permissible stresses will be specially considered, as indicated in 6.1.2.

16.1.6 Consideration will be given to the reduction of the test pressure to not less than  $1,5p$ , where it is necessary to avoid excessive stress in way of bends, branches, etc.

16.1.7 Valves and fittings non-integral with the piping system, intended for Classes I and II, are to be tested in accordance with recognised standards, but to not less than 1,5 times the design pressure. Where design features are such that modifications to the test requirements are necessary, alternative proposals for hydraulic tests are to be submitted for special consideration.

16.1.8 For requirements relating to valves and cocks intended to be fitted on the ship's side below the load water line, see Ch 2,2.5.10.

16.1.9 In no case is the membrane stress to exceed 90 per cent of the yield stress at the testing temperature.

## 16.2 Testing after assembly on board

16.2.1 Heating coils in tanks, gas fuel and oil fuel piping are to be tested by hydraulic pressure, after installation on board, to 1,5 times the design pressure but in no case to less than 4 bar.

16.2.2 Where pipes specified in 16.1.1 are butt welded together during assembly on board, they are to be tested by hydraulic pressure in accordance with the requirements of 16.1 after welding. The pipe lengths may be insulated, except in way of the joints made during installation and before the hydraulic test is carried out.

16.2.3 The hydraulic test required by 16.2.2 may be omitted provided non-destructive tests by ultrasonic or radiographic methods are carried out on the entire circumference of all butt welds with satisfactory results. Where ultrasonic tests have been carried out, the manufacturer is to provide the Surveyor with a signed statement confirming that ultrasonic examination has been carried out by an approved operator and that there were no indications of defects which could be expected to have prejudicial effect on the service performance of the piping.

16.2.4 Where bilge pipes are accepted in way of double bottom tanks or deep tanks, the pipes after fitting are to be tested by hydraulic pressure to the same pressure as the tanks through which they pass.

16.2.5 Each flexible hose assembly and expansion piece intended for use with flammable liquids is to be provided with a certificate of hydrostatic pressure testing and conformity of production.

16.2.6 Where flexible hoses, mechanical pipe connections and/or expansion pieces are used in bilge, dewatering, sea-water or flammable liquid piping systems, the pipe system is to be hydraulically tested to 1,5 times the design pressure or 7 bar whichever is the greater.

16.2.7 Pumps essential for the propulsion or safety of the ship are to be tested by hydraulic pressure to 1,5 times the nominal pressure rating at ambient temperature.

## Section 17 Guidance notes on metal pipes for water service

### 17.1 General

17.1.1 These guidance notes, except where it is specifically stated, apply to sea-water piping systems.

17.1.2 In addition to the selection of suitable materials, careful attention should be given to the design details of the piping system and the workmanship in fabrication, construction and installation of the pipework in order to obtain maximum life in service.

### 17.2 Materials

17.2.1 Materials used in sea-water piping systems include:

- Galvanised steel.
- Steel pipes lined with rubber, plastics or stoved coatings.
- Copper.
- 90/10 copper-nickel-iron.
- 70/30 copper-nickel.
- Aluminium brass.

17.2.2 Selection of materials should be based on all of the following:

- The ability to resist general and localised corrosion, such as pitting, impingement attack and cavitation throughout all the flow velocities likely to be encountered.
- Compatibility with the other materials in the system, such as valve bodies and casings, e.g. in order to minimise bimetallic corrosion.
- The ability to resist selective corrosion, e.g. dezincification of brass, dealuminification of aluminium brass and graphitisation of cast iron, the ability to resist stress corrosion and corrosion fatigue.
- The amenability to fabrication by normal practices.

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 17

## 17.3 Steel pipes

17.3.1 Steel pipes should be protected against corrosion, and protective coatings should be applied on completion of all fabrication, i.e. bending, forming and welding of the steel pipes.

17.3.2 Welds should be free from lack of fusion and crevices. The surfaces should be dressed to remove slag and spatter and this should be done before coating. The coating should be continuous around the ends of the pipes and on the faces of flanges.

17.3.3 Galvanising the bores and flanges of steel pipes as protection against corrosion is common practice, and is recommended as the minimum protection for pipes in sea-water systems, including those for bilge and ballast service.

17.3.4 Austenitic stainless steel pipes are not recommended for salt-water services as they are prone to pitting, particularly in polluted waters.

17.3.5 Rubber lined pipes are effective against corrosion and suitable for higher water velocities. The rubber lining should be free from defects, e.g., discontinuities, pinholes, etc., and it is essential that the bonding of the rubber to the bore of the pipe and flange face is sound. Rubber linings should be applied by firms specialising in this form of protection.

17.3.6 The foregoing comments on rubber lined pipes also apply to pipes lined with plastics.

17.3.7 Stove coating of pipes as protection against corrosion should only be used where the pipes will be efficiently protected against mechanical damage.

## 17.4 Copper and copper alloy pipes

17.4.1 Copper pipes are particularly susceptible to perforation by corrosion/erosion and should only be used for low water velocities and where there is no excessive local turbulence.

17.4.2 Aluminium brass and copper-nickel-iron alloy pipes give good service in reasonably clean sea-water. For service with polluted river or harbour waters, copper-nickel-iron alloy pipes with at least 10 per cent nickel are preferable. Alpha-brasses, i.e. those containing 70 per cent or more copper, must be inhibited effectively against dezincification by suitable additions to the composition. Alpha beta-brasses, i.e. those containing less than 70 per cent copper, should not be used for pipes and fittings.

17.4.3 New copper alloy pipes should not be exposed initially to polluted water. Clean sea-water should be used at first to allow the metals to develop protective films. If this is not available the system should be filled with inhibited town mains water.

## 17.5 Flanges

17.5.1 Where pipes are exposed to sea-water on both external and internal surfaces, flanges should be made, preferably, of the same material. Where sea-water is confined to the bores of pipes, flanges may be of the same material or of less noble metal than that of the pipe.

17.5.2 Fixed or loose type flanges may be used. The fixed flanges should be attached to the pipes by fillet welds or by capillary silver brazing. Where welding is used, the fillet weld at the back should be a strength weld and that in the face, a seal weld.

17.5.3 Inert gas shielded arc welding is the preferred process but metal arc welding may be used on copper-nickel-iron alloy pipes.

17.5.4 Mild steel flanges may be attached by argon arc welding to copper-nickel-iron pipes and give satisfactory service, provided that no part of the steel is exposed to the sea-water.

17.5.5 Where silver brazing is used, strength should be obtained by means of the bond in a capillary space over the whole area of the mating surfaces. A fillet braze at the back of the flange or at the face is undesirable. The alloy used for silver brazing should contain not less than 49 per cent silver.

17.5.6 The use of a copper-zinc brazing alloy is not permitted.

## 17.6 Water velocity

17.6.1 Water velocities should be carefully assessed at the design stage and the materials of pipes, valves, etc., selected to suit the conditions.

17.6.2 The water velocity in copper pipes should not exceed 1 m/s.

17.6.3 The water velocity in the pipes of the materials below should normally be not less than about 1 m/s in order to avoid fouling and subsequent pitting, but should not be greater than the following:

- |                            |          |
|----------------------------|----------|
| • Galvanised steel         | 3,0 m/s  |
| • Aluminium brass          | 3,0 m/s  |
| • 90/10 copper-nickel-iron | 3,5 m/s  |
| • 70/30 copper-nickel      | 5,0 m/s. |

## 17.7 Fabrication and installation

17.7.1 Attention should be given to ensuring streamlined flow and reducing entrained air in the system to a minimum. Abrupt changes in the direction of flow, protrusions into the bores of pipes and other restrictions of flow should be avoided. Branches in continuous flow lines should be set at a shallow angle to the main pipe, and the junction should be smooth. The following points should be observed:

- (a) Short stiff bends are to be avoided, see 17.7.4.

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Sections 17 & 18

- (b) Pipe runs downstream of turbulence raising components such as reducing valves and orifices are to be straight and as long as practicable.
- (c) Changes in pipe bore dimensions are to have a shallow taper transition.

17.7.2 Pipe bores should be smooth and clean.

17.7.3 Jointing should be flush with the bore surfaces of pipes and misalignment of adjacent flange faces should be reduced to a minimum.

17.7.4 Pipe bends should be of as large a radius as possible (in general, the radius of curvature at centreline is to be not less than three times the pipe outside diameter) and the bore surfaces should be smooth and free from puckering at these positions. Any carbonaceous films or deposits formed on the bore surfaces during the bending processes should be carefully removed. Organic substances are not recommended for the filling of pipes for bending purposes.

17.7.5 The position of supports should be given special consideration in order to minimise vibration and ensure that excessive bending moments are not imposed on the pipes.

17.7.6 Systems should not be left idle for long periods, especially where the water is polluted.

17.7.7 Strainers should be provided at the inlet to sea-water systems.

17.7.8 Where pipes and associated fittings are required to be thermally insulated after installation on board, the piping should be arranged to permit efficient application of insulating materials.

17.7.9 Non-ferrous piping should not be arranged within bilge wells or spaces. Where this is not possible, the piping should be suitably treated to avoid galvanic action in the bilge spaces.

## 17.8 Metal pipes for fresh water services

17.8.1 Mild steel or copper pipes are normally satisfactory for service in fresh water applications. Hot fresh water, however, may promote corrosion in mild steel pipes unless the hardness and pH of the water are controlled.

17.8.2 Water with a slight salt content should not be left stagnant for long periods in mild steel pipes. Low salinity and the limited supply of oxygen in such conditions promote the formation of black iron oxide, and this may give rise to severe pitting. Where stagnant conditions are unavoidable, steel pipes should be galvanised, or pipes of suitable non-ferrous material used.

17.8.3 Copper alloy pipes should be treated to remove any carbonaceous films or deposits before the tubes are put into service.

17.8.4 Brass fittings and flanges in contact with water should be made of an alpha-brass effectively inhibited against dezincification by suitable additions to the composition.

17.8.5 Aluminium brass has been widely used as material for heat exchanger and condenser tubes, but its use in 'once through' systems is not recommended since, under certain conditions, it is prone to pitting and cracking.

17.8.6 Piping systems for portable water are to be designed to avoid dead ends and other configurations that would lead to stagnant conditions.

## Section 18 Heat exchangers

### 18.1 General

18.1.1 The requirements in this Section are applicable to heat exchangers of the shell and tube type and plate type and which are necessary for the operation of Mobility and Ship Type engineering systems.

18.1.2 The requirements of this Section are with the goal of providing heat exchange capability whereby normal operation of Mobility and Ship Type engineering systems can be sustained or restored when the performance of the heat exchanger has become degraded due to operating in normal sea-going conditions.

18.1.3 The number, type and capability rating of heat exchangers installed for Mobility and Ship Type engineering systems are to be adequate for all envisaged operating conditions taking into account all relevant ambient environmental conditions that may affect the performance of a heat exchanger.

18.1.4 Heat exchangers are to be installed such that where sea water is used for cooling purposes, the suction pipes to the supply pumps are to be provided with strainers which can be cleaned without interruption to the cooling water supply to the heater exchanger.

18.1.5 The design of heat exchangers is to be in accordance with an applicable and recognised standard acceptable to LR.

18.1.6 Heat exchangers are to be capable of stable operation at their specified rating under all envisaged operating conditions, see Pt 1, Ch 2.4. Any degraded performance under extreme environmental operating conditions is to be stated by the manufacturer and included in the design statement required by 18.1.11.

18.1.7 The selection of heat exchangers is to recognise the required functional performance of their intended duty in terms of effective heat transfer capacity, fluid media, fluid design flow rates and pressures, and, also recognise the design coefficient of heat transfer in different fouled conditions. See also 15.1.1.

# Piping Design Requirements

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 1

Section 18

**18.1.8** Heat exchangers are to be capable of being cleaned when installed onboard. They are to be installed such that there are adequate access arrangements to permit cleaning and maintenance in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

**18.1.9** To provide for venting of entrapped air from heat exchangers, high points on each fluid side of the heat exchanger not otherwise vented by fluid branches are provided with an air vent connection. Each air vent is to include a valve attached to the heat exchanger.

**18.1.10** Heat exchangers are to be type tested in accordance with a specification acceptable to LR.

**18.1.11** A design statement for each size and type of heat exchanger used in Mobility and Ship Type engineering systems is to be submitted for information purposes. The design statement is to include details of margins for fouling and plugging of tubes where applicable.

## 18.2 Materials

**18.2.1** Materials used in the construction of heat exchangers are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the Rules for Materials. For requirements of copper and copper alloy tubes intended for use in heat exchangers, see Ch 9,3 of the Rules for Materials.

**18.2.2** Materials of heat exchangers are to be compatible with, and offer suitable erosion and corrosion resistance against, the intended fluid media, see also Ch 1,17. Sea-water wetted surfaces are to be non-ferrous or coated with a suitable rubber or plastic material where they are not part of the heat exchange system.

**18.2.3** Means are to be provided to enable non-ferrous materials to be protected against the effects of exposure to polluted cooling water.

**18.2.4** Combinations of incompatible materials are to be avoided, including those of the system pipe work in which the heat exchanger is to be fitted.

## 18.3 Shell and tube type heat exchangers

**18.3.1** The design of shell, end boxes and fluid openings in shell and tube type heat exchangers is to ensure:

- (a) Uniform distribution of fluids over and through the tubes.
- (b) A smooth flow of the fluids from the inlet pipes to the tubes and from the tubes to the outlet pipes. In particular end boxes are to have sufficient depth to allow fluid to travel freely to all tubes. The minimum end box depth is to be at least equivalent to the internal diameter of the inlet/outlet connecting pipes.
- (c) That pockets or obstructions which might interfere with fluid flow are avoided.
- (d) That the water velocity complies with 17.6.3.
- (e) That the form of hand holes and sight holes on end boxes preclude the formation of eddies.

- (f) That the inclusion of internal ribs to provide a means of strengthening is avoided. However, there is to be sufficient support to avoid vibration of tubes in the tube-bundle which may detrimentally affect their specified life.
- (g) That positive drainage of heat exchangers is provided. Drain valves, or for small heat exchangers drain plugs, are to be provided to ensure that tubes and shells are emptied and no large quantities of fluid are trapped in end boxes and shells.

**18.3.2** Shell and tube type heat exchangers are to be arranged in the ship such that tube plates are readily accessible for cleaning/inspection and to allow for withdrawal of tubes for replacement without disturbing adjacent machinery.

**18.3.3** Wherever practicable, viewing ports are to be provided on heat exchanger shell end boxes or covers to permit visual inspection of tubes, baffles and tube plates. In general, this will be limited to larger units of over 300 mm internal shell dimension.

## 18.4 Plate type heat exchangers

**18.4.1** The design of the fluid openings and plates of plate type heat exchangers is to ensure:

- (a) Uniform distribution of fluids through the plate passages.
- (b) That pockets or obstructions which might interfere with fluid flow are avoided.
- (c) Positive drainage of heat exchangers is provided. Drain valves, or for small heat exchangers drain plugs, are to be provided to ensure complete drainage.

**18.4.2** Plate type heat exchangers are to be arranged in the ship such that plates are readily accessible for cleaning/inspection and to allow for withdrawal of plates for replacement with the minimum disturbance of adjacent pipe work.

## 18.5 Hydraulic testing

**18.5.1** In general, heat exchangers are to be tested hydraulically to 1,5 times their maximum working pressures on the tube and shell sides or on both sides of the heat transfer plates as appropriate.

# Ship Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 2

Sections 1 & 2

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Construction and installation**
- 3 **Drainage of compartments, other than machinery spaces**
- 4 **Drainage of machinery spaces**
- 5 **Size of dewatering suction pipes**
- 6 **Drainage units on dewatering service and their connections**
- 7 **Pipe systems and their fittings**
- 8 **Cross flooding arrangements**
- 9 **Additional requirements relating to fixed pressure fire-extinguishing systems**
- 10 **Air, overflow and sounding pipes**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter covers the requirements for ship piping systems installed in naval ships for the watertight and weathertight integrity of the hull and spaces within the hull.

1.1.2 Attention is to be given to any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority.

1.1.3 Consideration will be given to special cases or to arrangements which are equivalent to those required by these Rules. Consideration will also be given to the piping system arrangements of small ships and ships to be assigned class notations for restricted or special services.

1.1.4 Where ship piping systems are required to satisfy requirements for the prevention of pollution, reference is to be made to the applicable requirements for **POL** and **EP** class notations. See Vol 3, Pt 3, Ch 6 and Vol 3, Pt 2, Ch 2.

### 1.2 Plans and particulars

1.2.1 At least three copies of the following plans (in diagrammatic form) and particulars are to be submitted for approval. Additional plans should not be submitted unless the arrangements are of a novel or special character affecting classification:

- Arrangements of air pipes and closing appliances to tanks and enclosed spaces.
- Sounding arrangements for all tanks and enclosed spaces.

- Arrangements of level alarms fitted in tanks, machinery spaces and any other spaces.
- Arrangements of any cross-flooding or heeling tank systems.
- Bilge drainage and dewatering arrangements to all compartments which are to include details of location, number and capacity of pumping units on bilge and dewatering service.
- Ballast filling and drainage arrangements.
- Tank overflow arrangements.
- Details verifying compliance with the sizing of air pipes required by 10.8.
- Details verifying compliance with 10.3.3 for tanks that can be replenished at sea with design ship movements and filling rates stated.
- Operating manuals and maintenance instructions are to be provided on board and submitted for information where requested by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR'). The manuals are to include particulars, description, operating instructions and maintenance instructions for all systems.

### 1.3 Prevention of progressive flooding in damage condition

1.3.1 Precautions are to be taken to prevent progressive flooding between compartments resulting from damage to piping systems. For this purpose, piping systems are to be located inboard of the assumed extent of damage.

1.3.2 Where it is not practicable to locate piping systems as required by 1.3.1, the following precautions are to be taken:

- (a) Bilge and dewatering suction pipes are to be provided with non-return valves of approved type.
- (b) Other piping systems are to be provided with shut-off valves capable of being operated from positions accessible in the damage condition, or from above the damage waterline where required by the Rules. These valves are to be located in the compartment containing the open end or in a suitable position such that the compartment may be isolated in the event of damage to the piping system.

1.3.3 Where penetration of watertight divisions by pipes, ducts, trunks or other penetrations is necessary, arrangements are to be made to maintain the watertight integrity.

## ■ Section 2 Construction and installation

### 2.1 Materials

2.1.1 Except where otherwise stated in this Chapter, pipes, valves and fittings are to be made of steel, cast iron, copper, copper alloy, or other approved material suitable for the intended service.

2.1.2 Where applicable, the materials are to comply with the relevant requirements of Chapter 1.

2.1.3 Materials sensitive to heat, such as aluminium or plastics, are not to be used in systems essential to the safe operation of the ship, or for containing combustible liquids or sea-water where leakage or failure could result in fire or in the flooding of watertight compartments. See Chapter 1 for plastics pipes.

## 2.2 Pipe wall thickness

2.2.1 The minimum nominal wall thickness of steel, copper and copper alloy pipes is to be in accordance with Chapter 1.

2.2.2 Special consideration will be given to the wall thickness of pipes made of materials other than steel, copper and copper alloy.

## 2.3 Valves – Installation and control

2.3.1 Valves and cocks are to be fitted in places where they are at all times readily accessible, unless otherwise specifically mentioned in the Rules. Valves in ballast systems may be fitted inside tanks, subject to 2.3.2.

2.3.2 All valves which are provided with remote control arrangements are to be arranged for local manual operation, independent of the remote operating mechanism. For ship-side valves and valves on the collision bulkhead, the means for local manual operation are to be permanently attached. For submerged valves in ballast systems, as permitted by 2.3.1, local manual operation may be by extended spindle, a portable hand pump or similar energy device. Where manual operation is by hand pump or stored energy device, the control lines to each submerged valve are to incorporate quick coupling connections, as close to the valve actuator as practicable, to allow easy connection of the hand pump or stored energy device. No fewer than two hand pumps or stored energy devices are to be available for each space where valves can be locally and remotely operated.

2.3.3 In case of valves which are required by the Rules to be provided with remote control, opening and/or closing of the valves by local manual means is not to render the remote control system inoperable.

## 2.4 Attachment of valves to watertight plating

2.4.1 Valve chests, cocks, pipes or other fittings attached direct to the plating of tanks, and to bulkheads, flats or tunnels which are required to be of watertight construction, are to be secured by means of studs screwed through the plating or by tap bolts, and not by bolts passing through clearance holes. Alternatively, the studs or the bulkhead piece may be welded to the plating.

2.4.2 For requirements relating to valves on the collision bulkhead, see 3.3.3.

## 2.5 Ship-side valves and fittings (other than those on scuppers and sanitary discharges)

2.5.1 All sea inlet and overboard discharge pipes are to be fitted with valves or cocks secured direct to the shell plating, or to the plating of fabricated steel water boxes attached to the shell plating. These fittings are to be secured by bolts tapped into the plating and fitted with countersunk heads, or by studs screwed into heavy steel pads fitted to the plating. The stud holes are not to penetrate the plating.

2.5.2 Valves for ship-side applications are to be installed such that the section of piping immediately inboard of the valve can be removed without affecting the watertight integrity of the hull.

2.5.3 Distance pieces of short, rigid construction, and made of approved material, may be fitted between the valves and shell plating. Distance pieces of steel may be welded to the shell plating. Details of the welded connections and of fabricated steel water boxes are to be submitted.

2.5.4 Gratings are to be fitted at all openings in the ship's side for sea inlet valves and inlet water boxes. The net area through the gratings is to be not less than twice that of the valves connected to the sea inlets, and provision is to be made for clearing the gratings by use of low pressure steam or compressed air, see 2.5.5.

2.5.5 All suction and discharge valves and cocks secured direct to the shell plating of the ship are to be fitted with spigots passing through the plating, but the spigots on the valves or cocks may be omitted if these fittings are attached to pads or distance pieces which themselves form spigots in way of the shell plating. Blow-down valves or cocks are also to be fitted with a protection ring through which the spigot is to pass, the ring being on the outside of the shell plating. Where alternative forms of attachment are proposed, details are to be submitted for consideration.

2.5.6 Blow-down valves or cocks on the ship's side are to be fitted in accessible positions above the level of the working platform, and are to be provided with indicators showing whether they are open or shut. Cock handles are not to be capable of being removed unless the cocks are shut, and, if valves are fitted, the hand wheels are to be suitably retained on the spindle.

2.5.7 Sea inlet and overboard discharge valves and cocks are in all cases to be fitted in easily accessible positions and, so far as practicable, are to be readily visible. Indicators are to be provided local to the valves and cocks, showing whether they are open or shut. Provision is to be made for preventing any discharge of water into rescue boats. The valve spindles are to extend above the lower platform, and the hand wheels of the main cooling water sea inlet and emergency drainage suction valves are to be situated not less than 460 mm above this platform.

2.5.8 Ship-side valves and fittings, if made of steel or other approved material with low corrosion resistance, are to be suitably protected against wastage.



# Ship Piping Systems

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 2

Sections 2 &amp; 3

2.5.9 The scantlings of valves and valve stools fitted with steam or compressed air clearing connections are to be suitable for the maximum pressure to which the valves and stools may be subjected.

2.5.10 Valves, cocks and distance pieces, intended for installation on the ship's side below the waterline, are to be tested by hydraulic pressure to not less than 5 bar.

2.5.11 For sea connections for ships having notation for ice navigation, see Vol 3, Pt 1, Ch 1.

### 2.6 Piping systems – Installation

2.6.1 Bilge, dewatering, ballast and cooling water suction and discharge pipes are to be permanent pipes made in readily removable lengths with flanged joints are to be efficiently secured in position to prevent chafing or lateral movement. For joints in oil fuel piping systems, see Ch 3,4.5 and 4.6.

2.6.2 Where lack of space prevents the use of normal circular flanges, details of the alternative methods of joining the pipes are to be submitted.

2.6.3 Long or heavy lengths of pipes are to be supported by bearers so that no undue load is carried by the flanged connections of the pumps or fittings to which they are attached.

### 2.7 Provision for expansion

2.7.1 Suitable provision for expansion is to be made, where necessary, in each range of pipes, see Ch 1,14.

### 2.8 Miscellaneous requirements

2.8.1 All pipes situated where they are liable to mechanical damage are to be efficiently protected.

2.8.2 So far as practicable, pipelines, including exhaust pipes from oil engines, are not to be led in the vicinity of switchboards or other electrical appliances in positions where the drip or escape of liquid, gas or steam from joints or fittings could cause damage to the electrical installation. Where it is not practicable to comply with these requirements, drip trays or shields are to be provided as found necessary. Short sounding pipes to tanks are not to terminate near electrical appliances, see 10.4.2.

### 2.9 Testing after installation

2.9.1 After installation on board, all steam, hydraulic, compressed air and other piping systems within the Mobility and Ship Type category, together with associated fittings which are under internal pressure, are to be subjected to a running test at the intended maximum working pressure.

### ■ Cross-reference

For guidance on metal pipes for water services, see Ch 1,17.

### ■ Section 3 Drainage of compartments, other than machinery spaces

#### 3.1 General

3.1.1 All ships are to be provided with efficient dewatering arrangements, having suctions and means for drainage so arranged that any water within any compartment of the ship, or any watertight section of any compartment, can be pumped out through at least one suction when the ship is on an even keel and is either upright or has a list of not more than 5°. For this purpose, wing suctions will generally be necessary, except in short, narrow compartments where one suction can provide effective drainage under the above conditions.

3.1.2 The dewatering system arrangements are to be capable of draining any watertight compartment under all practicable conditions after a casualty, whether the ship is upright or listed.

3.1.3 The requirements for dewatering system arrangements recognise that naval ships commonly use eductors for dealing with large amounts of water ingress into machinery spaces and other compartments.

3.1.4 Bilge piping systems for dealing with small amounts of oily water accumulation in machinery spaces and installed for the prevention of pollution of the sea by oil are not considered an effective means of dealing with large amounts of water ingress referred to in 3.1.3. The arrangement of valves and fittings is however, to comply with the requirements of Section 7 for the prevention of communication between compartments.

3.1.5 Where it is intended to carry flammable or toxic liquids in enclosed spaces, the bilge system shall be designed to prevent pumping of such liquids through piping and pumps in machinery or other spaces where a source of ignition may exist. Depending on the quantities of such liquids carried, an additional means of drainage may be required for their compartments.

3.1.6 For a normally inaccessible small void compartment, such as an echo sounding compartment, which is accessed from within a normally inaccessible space, such as a forepeak tank, alternative drainage arrangements to those required by 3.1.1 may be considered. For such arrangements, a warning notice is to be located in a prominent position specifying the precautions to be taken prior to opening the manhole of the small void compartment. Means are to be provided to indicate flooding of the compartment without opening, such as fitting indicator plugs to the manhole. Drainage arrangements are to be submitted to LR for approval.

# Ship Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 2

Sections 3 & 4

## 3.2 Tanks and cofferdams

3.2.1 All tanks (including double bottom tanks), whether used for ballast or oil fuel, are to be provided with suction pipes, led to suitable power pumps, from the after end of each tank. Ballast tanks may be drained by the use of eductors and filled by using a suitable sea water supply system. Where the sea water supply system for filling ballast tanks is used for other purposes, the availability of supply is to be sufficient for all operational requirements.

3.2.2 In general, the drainage arrangements are to be in accordance with 3.1. However, where the tanks are divided by longitudinal watertight bulkheads or girders into two or more tanks, a single suction pipe, led to the after end of each tank, will normally be acceptable.

3.2.3 Similar drainage arrangements are to be provided for cofferdams, except that the suctions may be led to the bilge or dewatering system.

## 3.3 Fore and after peaks

3.3.1 Fuel oil, lubrication oil and other flammable liquids are not to be carried in forepeak tanks.

3.3.2 Where the peaks are used as tanks, a power pump or suitable eductor suction is to be led to each tank, except in the case of small tanks used for the carriage of domestic fresh water, where hand pumps may be used.

3.3.3 Where the peaks are not used as tanks, and bilge or dewatering suctions are not fitted, drainage of both peaks may be effected by hand pump suctions, provided that the suction lift is well within the capacity of the pumps and in no case exceeds 7,3 m.

3.3.4 Pipes piercing the collision bulkhead are to be fitted with suitable valves operable from above the damage control deck and the valve chests are to be secured to the bulkhead inside the fore peak. The valves may be fitted on the after side of the collision bulkhead, provided that the valve is readily accessible under all service conditions.

## 3.4 Space above fore, after peaks and machinery spaces

3.4.1 Provision is to be made for the drainage of the chain locker and watertight compartments above the fore peak tank by hand pump, power pump or eductor suctions.

3.4.2 Steering gear compartments or other small enclosed spaces situated above the after peak tank are to be provided with suitable means of drainage, either by hand pump, power pump or eductor suctions.

3.4.3 Subject to special approval of any applicable subdivision requirements, compartments referred to in 3.3.2 that are adequately isolated from the adjacent 'tween decks, may be drained by scuppers of not less than 38 mm bore, discharging to the tunnel (or machinery space in the case of ships with machinery aft) and fitted with self-closing cocks situated in well lighted and visible positions.

## 3.5 Maintenance of integrity of bulkheads

3.5.1 The intactness of the machinery space bulkheads, and of tunnel plating required to be of watertight construction, is not to be impaired by the fitting of scuppers discharging to machinery space or tunnels from adjacent compartments which are situated below the bulkhead deck. These scuppers may, however, be led into a strongly constructed scupper drain tank situated in the machinery space or tunnel, but closed to these spaces and drained by means of a suction of appropriate size led from the bilge or dewatering system through a screw-down non-return valve.

3.5.2 The scupper tank air pipe is to be led to above the bulkhead deck, and provision is to be made for ascertaining the level of water in the tank.

3.5.3 Where one tank is used for the drainage of several watertight compartments, the scupper pipes are to be provided with screw-down non-return valves.

3.5.4 No open ended drain valve or cock is to be fitted to the collision bulkhead. Drain valves or cocks are not to be fitted to other watertight bulkheads if alternative means of drainage are practicable.

3.5.5 Where drain valves or cocks are fitted to bulkheads other than the collision bulkhead, as permitted by 3.5.4, the drain valves or cocks are to be at all times readily accessible and are to be capable of being shut off from positions above the bulkhead deck. Indicators are to be provided to show whether the drains are open or shut.

## ■ Section 4 Drainage of machinery spaces

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 The dewatering arrangements in the machinery spaces are to comply with 3.1, except that the arrangements are to be such that any water which may enter these compartments can be drained through at least two dewatering suctions when the ship is on an even keel, and is either upright or has a list of not more than 5°. The two means of drainage are to be capable of being operated independently of each other.

4.1.2 The drainage arrangements are to be such that machinery spaces can be pumped out under all practical conditions after a casualty, whether the ship is upright or listed.

# Ship Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 2

Sections 4, 5 & 6

4.1.3 In ships propelled by electrical machinery, special means are to be provided to prevent the accumulation of bilge water under the main propulsion generators and motors.

## 4.2 Separate machinery spaces

4.2.1 The two means of drainage required by 4.1.1 are to be located in no fewer than two watertight compartments.

## 4.3 Machinery space – Emergency drainage

4.3.1 In addition to the dewatering suctions detailed in 4.1, an emergency suction is to be provided in each main machinery space. This suction is to be fitted with a screw-down non-return valve having the spindle so extended that the hand wheel is not less than 460 mm above the bottom platform.

4.3.2 The emergency suction is to be led to the largest available power pump, or an eductor which is not a dewatering unit required by 4.1.1. The emergency drainage suction is to be the same size as that of the pump suction branch.

4.3.3 One suction from one of the two independent means of drainage required by 4.1.1 may be omitted on the same side of the ship where the emergency suction is fitted.

4.3.4 Emergency drainage suction valve nameplates are to be marked 'For emergency use only'.

## Section 5 Size of dewatering suction pipes

### 5.1 Dewatering suctions

5.1.1 The diameters of dewatering suction pipes are to be selected to provide a water pumping speed of not less than 2 m/s. The internal diameter of pipes is to be not less than 50 mm.

## Section 6 Drainage units on dewatering service and their connections

### 6.1 Number of pumping units

6.1.1 At least three power pumps for supply of water to eductors are to be provided in the machinery spaces.

6.1.2 Dewatering eductors may take suction from a suction main with branches to individual spaces or directly to individual spaces or a combination of systems.

### 6.2 General service pumps

6.2.1 The power pumps required by 6.1 may also be used for ballast, fire or general service duties of an intermittent nature, but not for pumping fuel or other flammable liquids. These pumps are to be immediately available for dewatering duty when required.

### 6.3 Capacity of pumps and eductors

6.3.1 The capacity of each pump required by 6.1.1 is to be sufficient to supply the eductor capacities required by 6.3.2 and capable of providing water to eductors in any two compartments. Where the piping system supplying the eductors is used for other purposes, the capacity of the pumps is to be sufficient for those additional services.

6.3.2 The capacity of dewatering eductors is to be not less than required by the formulae in 6.3.3 or 6.3.4.

6.3.3 Where the eductor is connected to a suction main serving more than one compartment:

$$Q = \frac{16}{10^3} L (B + D) + 15 \quad (\text{m}^3/\text{h})$$

where

$B$  = greatest moulded breadth of ship, in metres

$D$  = moulded depth to assumed damage waterline, in metres

$L$  = length of compartments, in metres

In general, the capacity is to be not less than 75 m<sup>3</sup>/hr for ships over 100 m length.

6.3.4 Where an eductor is connected to a single suction in a machinery space or other space located below the damage waterline, the capacity is to be not less than:

$$Q = \frac{26}{10^3} C (B + D) + 15 \quad (\text{m}^3/\text{h})$$

where

$C$  = length of compartment, in metres

$B$  and  $D$  are as defined in 6.3.3.

6.3.5 The capacity of eductors for spaces other than required by 6.3.3 and 6.3.4 is in general to be not less than 15 m<sup>3</sup>/h.

### 6.4 Pump and eductor connections

6.4.1 The connections at the power pumps and eductors are to be such that one unit may continue in operation when the other unit is being opened up for overhaul.

6.4.2 Pump units required for essential services are not to be connected to a common suction or discharge chest or pipe unless the arrangements are such that the working of any units so connected is unaffected by the other units being in operation at the same time.

## ■ Section 7 Pipe systems and their fittings

### 7.1 Prevention of communication between compartments

7.1.1 The arrangement of valves, cocks and their connections is to be such as to prevent the possibility of one watertight compartment being placed in communication with another or machinery spaces or other dry compartments being placed in communication with the sea or with tanks. For this purpose, screw-down non-return valves are to be provided in the following fittings:

- Bilge and dewatering valve distribution chests.
- Bilge suction hose connections, whether fitted direct to the pump or on the main suction line.
- Direct bilge and dewatering suctions and bilge pump or eductor connections to main suction lines.

7.1.2 The valves and controls required for the drainage arrangements necessary for complying with 3.1.2 and 4.1.2 are to be capable of being operated from the damage control deck.

7.1.3 All valves and cocks mentioned in 7.7.1 and 7.7.2 which can be operated from the damage control deck are to have their controls at their place of operation clearly marked and provided with means to indicate whether they are open or closed.

### 7.2 Isolation of bilge and dewatering systems

7.2.1 Bilge and dewatering pipes which are required for draining machinery spaces are to be entirely distinct from sea inlet pipes or from pipes which may be used for filling or emptying spaces where water or oil is carried.

### 7.3 Machinery space suction – Mud boxes

7.3.1 Suctions for bilge drainage and dewatering in machinery spaces and tunnels, other than emergency suctions, are to be led from easily accessible mud boxes fitted with straight tail pipes to the suction wells and having covers secured in such a manner as to permit their being expeditiously opened or closed. Strum boxes are not to be fitted to the lower ends of these tail pipes or to the emergency drainage suctions.

### 7.4 Compartment suctions – Strum boxes

7.4.1 The open ends of bilge and dewatering suctions in compartments outside machinery spaces and tunnels, such as cofferdams and tanks other than those permanently arranged for the carriage of fresh water, water ballast or oil fuel and for which other efficient means of pumping are provided, are to be enclosed in strum boxes having perforations of not more than 10 mm diameter, whose combined area is not less than twice that required for the suction pipe. The boxes are to be so constructed that they can be cleared without breaking any joint of the suction pipe.

### 7.5 Tail pipes

7.5.1 The distance between the foot of all bilge and dewatering tail pipes and the bottom of the suction well is to be adequate to allow a full flow of water and to facilitate cleaning.

### 7.6 Location of fittings

7.6.1 Bilge and dewatering valves, cocks and mud boxes are to be fitted at, or above, the machinery space and tunnel platforms.

7.6.2 Provision is to be made to prevent the compartment served by any bilge or dewatering suction pipe being flooded in the event of the pipe being severed or otherwise damaged by collision or grounding in any other compartment. For this purpose, a non-return valve is to be fitted to the pipe in the compartment containing the open end.

7.6.3 Where relief valves are fitted to pumps having sea connections, these valves are to be fitted in readily visible positions above the platform. The arrangements are to be such that any discharge from the relief valves will also be readily visible.

### 7.7 Bilge and dewatering pipes in way of double bottom and deep tanks

7.7.1 Bilge and dewatering suction pipes are not to be led through double bottom or deep tanks if it is possible to avoid doing so.

7.7.2 Expansion bends, not glands, are to be fitted to these pipes within the tanks, and the pipes are to be tested, after installation, to the same pressure as the tanks through which they pass.

### 7.8 Non-return valves

7.8.1 Where non-return valves are fitted to the open ends of bilge or dewatering suction pipes in order to decrease the risk of flooding, they are to be of an approved type which does not offer undue obstruction to the flow of water.

## ■ Section 8 Cross flooding arrangements

### 8.1 Cross flooding arrangements

8.1.1 Where divided deep tanks or side tanks are provided with cross flooding arrangements to limit the angle of heel after side damage, the arrangements are to be self-acting where practicable. In any case, where controls to cross flooding fittings are provided, they are to be operable from the damage control deck.

## ■ Section 9 Additional requirements relating to fixed pressure fire-extinguishing systems

### 9.1 Bilge drainage requirements

9.1.1 Where arrangements for cooling underdeck hold spaces, or fire-fighting by means of fixed spraying nozzles or by flooding of spaces with water are provided, the drainage arrangements are to be such as to be effective under all normal angles of heel and trim. The following provisions are also to be satisfied:

- (a) The drainage system is to be sized to remove no less than 125 per cent of the maximum water input through fire fighting systems on each side of the ship in each fire zone.
- (b) The drainage system valves are to be operable from outside the protected space. The operating position is to be in the vicinity of the extinguishing system controls where such controls are fitted.
- (c) Adequately sized bilge wells are to be located at the side shell of the ship at a distance of not more than 40 m in each watertight compartment, see also Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 4,7.1.4 and Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 3,2.11. In ships other than NS3 Ships and vessels designed to carry less than 50 embarked personnel, if it is not possible to locate the bilge wells as required, the free surface effect on the ship's stability is to be determined and submitted to the Naval Authority for appraisal.

#### NOTES:

Normal angles of heel and trim are to be taken as:

1. Ship on an even keel or has a list of not more than 5°.
2. Ship on even trim or is trimmed not more than 5° for a ship up to 100 m in length. Where the length of the ship exceeds 100 m, the maximum trim may be taken as 500/L degrees where L = length of ship in metres.
3. The angles of heel and trim may occur simultaneously.

9.1.2 If drainage of aircraft, vehicle or hold spaces is by gravity, the drainage is to lead directly overboard or to a closed drain tank. If led overboard the scuppers are to comply with Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 4,7.1.3(a) and (b). If led to a closed drain tank, this tank is to be located outside the machinery spaces and provided with a dedicated vent pipe leading to a safe location on the open deck. See also Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 3,2.11.

9.1.3 Drainage from a space into bilge wells in a lower space is only permitted if that space satisfies the same requirements as the space above.

9.1.4 Magazines may have specific requirements for water input for fire protection purposes and the water drainage arrangements are to take these requirements into account. See Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 1,6.9 and Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 5,10.2.

## ■ Section 10 Air, overflow and sounding pipes

### 10.1 Materials

10.1.1 Air, overflow and sounding pipes are to be made of steel or other approved material. For use of plastics pipes of approved type, see Chapter 1.

10.1.2 Air, overflow and sounding pipes fitted above the weather deck are to be of steel or equivalent material.

### 10.2 Nameplates

10.2.1 Nameplates are to be affixed to the upper ends of all air and sounding pipes.

### 10.3 Air pipes

10.3.1 Air pipes are to be fitted to all tanks, cofferdams, tunnels and other compartments which are not fitted with alternative ventilation arrangements.

10.3.2 The air pipes are to be fitted at the opposite end of the tank to that which the filling pipes are placed and/or at the highest part of the tank. Where the tank top is of unusual or irregular profile, special consideration will be given to the number and position of the air pipes.

10.3.3 For tanks that are capable of being replenished when the ship is at sea, the air pipe arrangements are to be such that account is taken of ship motions during filling operations. Such arrangements are typically to incorporate at least two air pipes, situated at diagonally opposite ends of the tank. See also Ch 3,4.11.3 and 4.18.10 for further requirements for fuel filling arrangements.

10.3.4 For a normally inaccessible small void compartment such as an echo sounding compartment, which is accessed from within a normally inaccessible space such as a forepeak tank, alternative air pipe arrangements to those required by 10.3.1 may be considered. For such arrangements, a warning notice is to be located in a prominent position specifying the precautions to be taken prior to opening the manhole and entering the small void compartment. Ventilation arrangements are to be submitted to LR for approval.

### 10.4 Termination of air pipes

10.4.1 Air pipes to double bottom tanks, deep tanks extending to the shell plating, or tanks which can be run up from the sea are to be led to above the assumed damage waterline. Air pipes to oil fuel tanks, cofferdams and all tanks which can be pumped up are to be led to the open. For height of air pipes above deck, see Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 4,6.2.

# Ship Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 10

**10.4.2** Air pipes from storage tanks containing lubricating or hydraulic oil may terminate in the machinery space, provided that the open ends are so situated that issuing oil cannot come into contact with electrical equipment or heated surfaces. Air pipes from heated lubricating oil tanks are to be led to a safe position on open deck.

**10.4.3** The open ends of air pipes to oil fuel tanks are to be situated where no danger will be incurred from issuing oil vapour when the tank is being filled.

**10.4.4** The location and arrangement of air pipes for oil fuel service, settling and lubricating oil tanks are to be such that in the event of a broken vent pipe, this does not directly lead to the risk of ingress of sea-water or rain water.

## 10.5 Gauze diaphragms

**10.5.1** The open ends of air pipes to oil fuel tanks are to be furnished with a wire gauze diaphragm of incorrodible material which can be readily removed for cleaning or renewal.

**10.5.2** Where wire gauze diaphragms are fitted at air pipe openings, the area of the opening through the gauze is to be not less than the cross-sectional area required for the pipe. See 10.8.

## 10.6 Air pipe closing appliances

**10.6.1** The closing appliances fitted to tank air pipes in accordance with Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 4,6.2 are to be of an automatic opening type which will allow the free passage of air or liquid to prevent the tanks being subjected to a pressure or vacuum greater than that for which they are designed.

**10.6.2** Air pipe closing devices are to be of a type acceptable to LR and are to be tested in accordance with a National or International Standard recognised by LR. The flow characteristics of the closing device are to be determined using water. See 10.8.1.

**10.6.3** Wood plugs and other devices which can be secured closed are not to be fitted at the outlets.

**10.6.4** Air pipe automatic closing devices are to be so designed that they will withstand both ambient conditions, as indicated in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.4 and 4.5, and designed working conditions, and be suitable for use at inclinations up to and including  $\pm 40^\circ$ .

**10.6.5** Air pipe automatic closing devices are to be constructed to allow inspection of the closure and the inside of the casing as well as changing the seals.

**10.6.6** Efficient ball or float seating arrangements are to be provided for the closures. Bars, cages or other devices are to be provided to prevent the ball or float from contacting the inner chamber in its normal state, and made in such a way that the ball or float is not damaged when subjected to liquid impact due to a tank being overfilled.

**10.6.7** Air pipe automatic closing devices are to be self-draining.

**10.6.8** The clear area through an air pipe closing device in the open position is to be at least equal to the area of the inlet.

**10.6.9** In the case of air pipe closing devices of the float type, suitable guides are to be provided to ensure unobstructed operation under all working conditions of heel and trim.

**10.6.10** The maximum allowable tolerances for wall thickness of floats are not to exceed  $\pm 10$  per cent of thickness.

**10.6.11** The inner and the outer chambers of an automatic air pipe head are to be of a minimum thickness of 6 mm.

**10.6.12** Casings of air pipe closing devices are to be of approved metallic materials, adequately protected against corrosion.

**10.6.13** For galvanised steel air pipe heads, the zinc coating is to be applied by the hot method and the thickness is to be 70 to 100 microns.

**10.6.14** For areas of the head susceptible to erosion (e.g., those parts directly subjected to ballast water impact when the tank is being pressed up, such as the inner chamber area above the air pipe plus an overlap of  $10^\circ$  or more either side), an additional harder coating should be applied. This is to be an aluminium-bearing epoxy, or other equivalent coating, applied over the zinc.

**10.6.15** Closures and seats made of non-metallic materials are to be compatible with the media intended to be carried in the tank and in sea-water, and suitable for operating at ambient temperatures between  $-25^\circ\text{C}$  and  $85^\circ\text{C}$ .

**10.6.16** The requirements do not apply to arrangements for refuelling under way.

## 10.7 Size of air pipes

**10.7.1** For every tank which can be filled by the ship's pumps, replenishment at sea or from shore facilities, the total cross-sectional area of the air pipes and the design of the air pipe closing devices are to be such that when the tank is overflowing at the maximum pumping capacity or maximum delivery filling rate available for the tank, it will not be subjected to a pressure greater than that for which it is designed.

**10.7.2** In all cases, whether a tank is filled by ship's pumps or other means, the total cross-sectional area of the air pipes is to be not less than 25 per cent greater than the effective area of the respective filling pipe.

**10.7.3** Where tanks are fitted with cross flooding connections, the air pipes are to be of adequate area for these connections.

**10.7.4** Air pipes are to be not less than 50 mm bore.

# Ship Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 10

## 10.8 Overflow pipes

10.8.1 For all tanks which can be filled by the ship's pumps or by shore pumps, overflow pipes are to be fitted where:

- (a) The total cross-sectional area of the air pipe is less than that required by 10.7.
- (b) The pressure head corresponding to the height of the air pipe is greater than that for which the tank is designed.

10.8.2 In the case of oil fuel and lubricating oil tanks, the overflow pipe is to be led to an overflow tank of adequate capacity or to a storage tank having a space reserved for overflow purposes. Suitable means are to be provided to indicate when overflow is occurring, or when the contents reach a predetermined level in the tanks.

10.8.3 Overflow pipes are to be self draining under normal conditions of trim.

10.8.4 Where overflow sight glasses are provided, they are to be in a vertically dropping line and designed such that the oil does not impinge on the glass. The glass is to be of heat resisting quality, adequately protected from mechanical damage and well lit.

## 10.9 Air and overflow systems

10.9.1 Where a combined air or overflow system is fitted, the arrangement is to be such that in the event of any one of the tanks being bilged, tanks situated in other watertight compartments of the ship cannot be flooded from the sea through combined air pipes or the overflow main. For this purpose, it will normally be necessary to lead the overflow pipe to a point close to the assumed damage waterline.

10.9.2 The arrangement is to be such that, in the event of any one of the tanks being bilged, the other tanks cannot be flooded from the sea through the combined air pipes or the overflow main.

10.9.3 Where overflow from tanks which are used for the alternative carriage of oil and water ballast are connected to an overflow system, arrangements are to be made to prevent water ballast overflowing into tanks containing oil.

10.9.4 Where a common overflow main is provided, the main is to be sized to allow any two tanks connected to that main to overflow simultaneously.

## 10.10 Sounding arrangements

10.10.1 Provision is to be made for sounding all tanks and the bilges of those compartments which are not at all times readily accessible. The soundings are to be taken as near the suction pipes as practicable.

10.10.2 Bilges of compartments which are not at all times readily accessible are to be provided with sounding pipes.

10.10.3 Where fitted, sounding pipes are to be as straight as practicable; if curved to suit the structure of the ship, the curvature must be sufficiently easy to permit the ready passage of the sounding rod or chain.

10.10.4 Sounding devices of approved type may be used in lieu of sounding pipes for sounding tanks. These devices are to be tested, after fitting on board, to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

10.10.5 Where gauge glasses are used for indicating the level of liquid in tanks containing lubricating oil, oil fuel or other flammable liquid, the glasses are to be of the flat type of heat-resisting quality, adequately protected from mechanical damage, and fitted with self-closing valves at the lower ends and at the top ends if these are connected to the tanks below the maximum liquid level.

10.10.6 If means of sounding, other than a sounding pipe, are fitted in any ship for indicating the level of liquid in tanks containing oil fuel, lubricating oil or other flammable liquid, failure of such means or over filling of the tank should not result in the release of tank contents.

10.10.7 For a normally inaccessible small void compartment, such as an echo sounding compartment, which is accessed from within a normally inaccessible space such as a forepeak tank, alternative sounding arrangements to those required by 10.10.1 may be considered. For such arrangements, a warning notice is to be located in a prominent position specifying precautions to be taken prior to opening the manhole of the small void compartment. Means are to be provided to indicate flooding of the compartment without opening, such as fitting indicator plugs to the manhole. Sounding arrangements are to be submitted to LR for approval.

## 10.11 Termination of sounding pipes

10.11.1 Sounding pipes are to be led to positions above the assumed damage waterline which are at all times accessible and, in the case of oil fuel tanks, refuelling oil tanks, lubricating oil tanks and tanks containing other flammable oils, the sounding pipes are to be led to safe positions on the open deck.

10.11.2 For closing requirements, see *also* Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 4,6.2.

## 10.12 Short sounding pipes

10.12.1 In machinery spaces and tunnels, in circumstances where it is not practicable to extend the sounding pipes as mentioned in 10.11, short sounding pipes extending to well lighted readily accessible positions above the platform may be fitted to double bottom tanks. Where such pipes serve tanks containing oil fuel or other flammable liquid, an additional sounding device of approved type is to be fitted. An additional sounding device is not required for lubricating oil tanks. Any proposal to terminate in the machinery space, sounding pipes to tanks, other than double bottom tanks, will be the subject of special consideration.

# Ship Piping Systems

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 2

Section 10

10.12.2 Short sounding pipes to oil fuel and lubricating oil tanks, and other flammable oil tanks (flash point not less than 60°C) are to be fitted with cocks having parallel plugs with permanently attached handles, so loaded that, on being released, they automatically close the cocks. In addition, a small diameter self-closing test cock is to be fitted below the cock mentioned above in order to ensure that the sounding pipe is not under a pressure of oil before opening up the sounding cock. Provision is to be made to ensure that discharge of oil through this test cock does not present an ignition hazard. An additional small diameter self-closing test cock is not required for lubricating oil tanks.

10.12.3 As a further precaution against fire, such sounding pipes are to be located in positions as far removed as possible from any heated surface or electrical equipment and, where necessary, effective shielding is to be provided in way of such surfaces and/or equipment.

10.12.4 In ships that are required to be provided with a double bottom, short sounding pipes, where fitted to double bottom tanks, are in all cases to be provided with self-closing cocks as described in 10.12.2.

10.12.5 Where a double bottom is not required to be fitted, short sounding pipes to tanks other than oil tanks are to be fitted with shut-off cocks or with screw caps attached to the pipes by chains.

### 10.13 Elbow sounding pipes

10.13.1 Elbow sounding pipes are not to be used for deep tanks unless the elbows and pipes are situated within closed cofferdams or within tanks containing similar liquids. They may, however, be fitted to other tanks and may be used for sounding bilges, provided that it is not practicable to lead them direct to the tanks or compartments, and subject to any sub-division and damage stability requirements that may apply, see 1.3.1.

10.13.2 The elbows are to be of heavy construction and adequately supported.

### 10.14 Striking plates

10.14.1 Striking plates of adequate thickness and size are to be fitted under open ended sounding pipes.

10.14.2 Where slotted sounding pipes having closed ends are employed, the closing plugs are to be of substantial construction.

### 10.15 Size of sounding pipes

10.15.1 Sounding pipes are to be not less than 32 mm bore.

10.15.2 All sounding pipes, whether for compartments or tanks, which pass through refrigerated spaces or the insulation thereof, in which the temperatures contemplated are 0°C or below, are to be not less than 65 mm bore.

### ■ Cross-references

For 'Ice Class' requirements, see Vol 3, Pt 1, Ch 1.

For control engineering equipment, see Pt 9, Ch 1.

For requirements relating to scuppers and sanitary discharges, see Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 4.



# Machinery Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Sections 1 &amp; 2

## Section

|    |                                                                            |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1  | <b>General requirements</b>                                                |
| 2  | <b>Oil fuel – General requirements</b>                                     |
| 3  | <b>Oil fuel burning arrangements</b>                                       |
| 4  | <b>Oil fuel pumps, pipes, fittings, tanks, etc.</b>                        |
| 5  | <b>Steam piping systems</b>                                                |
| 6  | <b>Boiler feed water, condensate and thermal fluid circulation systems</b> |
| 7  | <b>Engine cooling water systems</b>                                        |
| 8  | <b>Lubricating oil systems</b>                                             |
| 9  | <b>Control, supervision and monitoring of equipment</b>                    |
| 10 | <b>Multi-engined ships</b>                                                 |
| 11 | <b>Electrical equipment cooling arrangements</b>                           |

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter covers the requirements for machinery piping systems installed in naval ships for the continuous and safe operation of main and auxiliary machinery and engineering systems.

1.1.2 In addition to the requirements detailed in this Chapter, the requirements of Chapter 1, Chapter 2, Sections 1 and 2 are to be complied with where applicable.

1.1.3 The requirements of Pt 2, Ch 1,7 are to be complied with for compressed air systems for starting of oil engines.

1.1.4 The requirements of Ch 2,3 are also to be complied with, so far as they are applicable, for the drainage of tanks, oily bilges and cofferdams, etc.

1.1.5 The requirements of Sections 2 and 4 are to be complied with, as far as they are applicable, for all flammable liquids.

1.1.6 The control and monitoring requirements for prime movers, transmission systems, propulsion devices, steering systems and boilers in Parts 2, 3, 4, 6 and 8 are also to be complied with where applicable.

1.1.7 Where reference is made to main auxiliary engines, the requirements are also applicable to main and auxiliary gas turbines.

### 1.2 Plans and particulars

1.2.1 Three copies of the following plans (in diagrammatic form) and particulars are to be submitted for approval. Additional plans should not be submitted unless the arrangements are of novel or special character affecting classification.

- Arrangements of oil fuel bunkering, storage and transfer.
- Arrangements of oil fuel piping in connection with oil burning installations.
- Arrangements of oil fuel burning units for boilers and thermal fluid heaters.
- Arrangements of any gas burning installations.
- Arrangement of boiler feed system.
- Arrangements of thermal fluid circulation systems.
- Arrangement of compressed air systems for main and auxiliary services.
- Arrangements of lubricating oil systems.
- Arrangements of flammable liquids used for control and heating systems.
- Arrangements of services for power transmission systems which are essential for safety or for the operation of the ship at sea.
- Arrangements of non-flammable liquids used for power transmission and control systems in Mobility category and Ship Type category engineering systems.
- Arrangements of cooling water systems for main and auxiliary purposes.
- Oil fuel settling service and other oil fuel tanks not forming part of the ship's structure.
- Arrangements of steam systems for main and auxiliary services.
- Arrangements of incinerator systems.
- Arrangements of air intakes and exhaust gas piping for main and auxiliary machinery.
- Description of oil fuels with statement of minimum flash point (closed-cup test).
- Arrangements and dimensions of all steam and thermal fluid pipes where the design pressure or temperature exceeds 16,0 bar (16,3 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) or 300°C, respectively, and the outside diameter exceeds 76,1 mm, with details of flanges, bolts and weld attachments, and particulars of the material of pipes, flanges, bolts and electrodes.
- Operating manuals and maintenance instructions are to be provided on board and submitted for information where requested by LR. The manuals are to include particulars, description, operating instructions and maintenance instructions for all systems.

1.2.2 See Pt 9, Ch 1 for details of plans to be submitted for control, monitoring and alarm systems.

## ■ Section 2 Oil fuel – General requirements

### 2.1 Flash point

2.1.1 The flash point (closed-cup test) of oil fuel for use in naval ships classed for unrestricted service is, in general, to be not less than 60°C.

# Machinery Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 2

2.1.2 The use of fuel having a lower flash point than specified in 2.1.1 may be permitted provided that such fuel is not stored in any machinery space and the arrangements for the complete installation are specially approved.

2.1.3 In general, oil fuel in storage and service tanks is not to be heated to a temperature exceeding 10°C below its flash point. Higher temperatures will be considered where:

- (a) The tanks are vented to a safe position outside the engine room and, as in the case of all oil fuel tanks, the ends of the ventilation pipes are fitted with gauze diaphragms.
- (b) Openings in the drainage systems of tanks containing heated oil fuel are located in spaces where no accumulation of oil vapours at temperatures close to the flash point can occur.
- (c) There is no source of ignition in the vicinity of the ventilation pipes or near the openings in the drainage systems or in the tanks themselves.

2.1.4 The temperature of any heating medium is not to exceed 220°C.

## 2.2 Special fuels

2.2.1 When it is desired to carry a quantity of fuel having a flash point below 60°C for special services, e.g. aviation spirit for use in helicopters or vehicles, full particulars of the proposed arrangements are to be submitted for consideration, see Chapter 4.

## 2.3 Oil fuel sampling

2.3.1 Sampling points are to be provided at locations within the oil fuel system that enable samples of oil fuel to be taken in a safe manner.

2.3.2 The position of a sampling point is to be such that the sample of the oil fuel is representative of the oil fuel quality at that location within the system.

### NOTE

Samples taken from sounding pipes are not considered to be representative of the tank's contents.

2.3.3 The sampling arrangements within the machinery space are to be capable of safely providing samples when machinery is running and are to be provided with isolating valves and cocks of the self-closing type. The sampling points are to be located in positions as far removed as possible from any heated surface or electrical equipment such as to preclude impingement of oil fuel onto such surfaces on equipment under all operating conditions, see Pt 1, Ch 2,4.6.

## 2.4 Ventilation

2.4.1 The spaces in which the oil fuel burning appliances and the oil fuel settling and service tanks are fitted are to be well ventilated and easy of access.

## 2.5 Boiler insulation and air circulation in boiler room

2.5.1 The boilers are to be suitably lagged. The clearance spaces between the boilers and tops of the double bottom tanks, and between the boilers and the sides of the storage tanks in which oil fuel and refuelling oil is carried, are to be adequate for the free circulation of the air necessary to keep the temperature of the stored oil sufficiently below its flash point.

2.5.2 Where water tube boilers are installed, there is to be a space of at least 760 mm between the tank top and the underside of the pans forming the bottom of the combustion spaces.

2.5.3 Smoke-box doors are to be shielded and well fitting, and the uptake joints made gastight. Where the surface temperature of the uptakes may exceed 220°C, they are to be efficiently lagged to minimise the risk of fire and to prevent damage by heat. Where lagging covering the uptakes, including flanges, is oil-absorbing or may permit penetration of oil, the lagging is to be encased in sheet metal or equivalent. In locations where the Surveyor is satisfied that oil impingement could not occur, the lagging need not be encased.

## 2.6 Funnel dampers

2.6.1 Dampers which are capable of completely closing the gas passages are not to be fitted to inner funnels of ships equipped for burning oil fuel only.

## 2.7 Heating arrangements

2.7.1 Where steam is used for heating oil fuel or lubricating oil, in bunkers, tanks, heaters or separators, the exhaust drains are to discharge the condensate into an observation tank in a well lighted and accessible position where it can be readily seen whether or not it is free from oil.

2.7.2 Where hot water is used for heating, means are to be provided for detecting the presence of oil in the return lines from the heating coils.

2.7.3 Where it is proposed to use any heating medium other than steam or hot water, full particulars of the proposed arrangements are to be submitted for special consideration.

2.7.4 The heating pipes in contact with oil are to be of iron, steel, approved aluminium alloy or approved copper alloy, and, after being fitted on board, are to be tested by hydraulic pressure in accordance with the requirements of Ch 1,16.1.

2.7.5 Where electric heating elements are fitted, means are to be provided to ensure that all elements are submerged at all times when electric current is flowing and that their surface temperature cannot exceed 220°C, see 9.5.

# Machinery Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 2

## 2.8 Temperature indication

2.8.1 Tanks and heaters in which oil is heated are to be provided with suitable means for ascertaining the temperature of the oil. Where thermometers or temperature sensing devices are not fitted in blind pockets, a warning notice, in raised letters, is to be affixed adjacent to the fittings stating 'Do not remove unless tank/heater is drained'.

2.8.2 Controls are to be fitted to limit oil temperatures in oil storage and service tanks in accordance with 2.1.4 and in oil heaters to the maximum approved operating temperature, see 9.5.

## 2.9 Precautions against fire

2.9.1 As far as practicable, oil fuel tanks are to be part of the ship's structure and are to be located outside machinery spaces of Category A. Where oil fuel tanks, other than double bottom tanks, are necessarily located adjacent to or within machinery spaces of Category A, at least one of their vertical sides is to be joined to the machinery space boundaries. Such tanks are also preferably to have a common boundary with the double bottom tanks, and the area of a tank boundary common with the machinery spaces is to be kept to a minimum. Where such tanks are situated within the boundaries of machinery spaces of Category A, they are not to contain oil fuel having a flash point of less than 60°C.

2.9.2 In general, the use of free-standing oil fuel tanks is to be avoided. Such tanks are prohibited in Category A machinery spaces on ships carrying more than 50 embarked personnel. Where free-standing tanks are permitted, they are to be placed in an oil-tight spill tray of ample size having a suitable drain pipe leading to a suitably sized drain tank.

2.9.3 Tanks containing flammable liquids are not to be situated above or within one metre of engines, boilers, exhausts/uptakes or other highly heated surfaces.

2.9.4 Oil fuel pipes are not to be installed above or near high temperature equipment. Oil fuel pipes should also be installed and screened or otherwise suitably protected to avoid oil spray or oil leakages onto hot surfaces, into machinery air intakes, or other sources of ignition such as electrical equipment. Pipe joints are to be kept to a minimum, and where provided are to be of a type acceptable to Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR'). Pipes are to be led in well lit and readily visible positions, see also Ch 2,2.8.2.

2.9.5 Pumps, heaters, filters and strainers and heaters are to be located to avoid oil spray or oil leakages onto hot surfaces or other sources of ignition, or onto rotating machinery parts. Where necessary, shielding is to be provided and the arrangements are to allow easy access for routine maintenance. The design of filters and strainers is to be such as to avoid the possibility of them being opened inadvertently when under pressure. This may be achieved by either mechanically preventing the pressurised filter from being opened or by providing pressure gauges which clearly indicate which filter is under pressure. In either case, suitable means for pressure release are to be provided, with drain pipes led to a safe location.

2.9.6 The arrangement and location of short sounding pipes to oil tanks are to be in accordance with Ch 2,10.12. For alternative sounding arrangements, see Ch 2,9.10.

2.9.7 Water service pipes and hoses are to be fitted in order that the floor plates and tank top or shell plating in way of boilers, oil fuel apparatus or deep storage tanks in the engine and boiler spaces can at any time be flushed with sea-water.

2.9.8 Oil-tight drip trays of ample size having suitable drainage arrangements are to be provided at pipes, pumps, valves and other fittings where there is a possibility of leakage. Valves should be located in well lighted and readily visible positions. Drip trays will not be required where pumps, valves and other fittings are placed in special compartments either inside or outside the machinery space with approved overall drainage arrangements or for valves which are so positioned that any leakage will drain directly into the bilges, see 2.9.4.

2.9.9 So far as is practicable, the use of wood is to be avoided in the engine rooms, boiler rooms and tunnels of ships burning oil fuel.

2.9.10 Drip trays are to be fitted at the furnace mouths to intercept oil escaping from the burners, and under all other oil fuel appliances which are required to be opened up frequently for cleaning or adjustment.

2.9.11 Where drainage arrangements are provided from collected leakages, they are to be led to a suitable drain tank not forming part of the overflow system.

2.9.12 Separate oil fuel tanks are to be placed in an oil tight spill tray of ample size having drainage arrangements leading to a drain tank of suitable size.

## 2.10 Oil fuel contamination

2.10.1 The materials and/or their surface treatment used for the storage and distribution of oil fuel are to be selected such that they do not introduce contamination or modify the properties of the fuel. The use of copper or zinc compounds in oil fuel piping systems where they may come into contact with the fuel is not permitted except for small diameter pipes in low pressure systems, see 4.6.1.

2.10.2 Corrosion resistant materials are to be used for oil fuel pipes between the treatment system required by 3.9.3 and the combustion system.

2.10.3 For prevention of ingress of water into oil fuel tanks via air pipes, see Ch 2,10.4.4.

2.10.4 The piping arrangements for oil fuel are to be separate and distinct from those intended for lubricating oil systems to prevent contamination of fuel oil by lubricating oil.

2.10.5 The piping arrangements for gas oil, distillate and diesel grades are to be separate and distinct from those intended for residual grades, up to the service tanks required by 4.17, to prevent cross-contamination. Cross-connection is permitted between separate arrangements in the event of failure of a designated item of equipment.

## 2.11 Tanks and cofferdams

2.11.1 Tanks containing oil fuel are to be separated from vehicle spaces, crew, embarked personnel, passenger and baggage compartments by a gastight and watertight boundary or a cofferdam which is suitably ventilated and drained.

## Section 3 Oil fuel burning arrangements

### 3.1 Oil burning units

3.1.1 All oil burning equipment is to be capable of operating at defined power/rating levels where specified by the Naval Authority. Confirmation by the manufacturer of this capability is to be provided to LR, including the specified power/rating parameters, and operating and maintenance regimes. See also Pt 1, Ch 2,4.1.2.

3.1.2 Where steam is required for the main propelling engines, or where steam or thermal fluid is required for auxiliary machinery for essential services, or for heating of heavy fuel oil and is generated by burning oil fuel under pressure, there are to be not less than two oil burning units. For auxiliary boilers and thermal oil heaters, a single oil burning unit may be accepted, provided that alternative means, such as an exhaust gas heated boiler or heater, are available for supplying steam or thermal fluid for essential purposes. Where the oil burning unit is not of the monobloc type (i.e., separate register and oil supply unit) each oil burning unit is to comprise a pressure pump, suction filter, discharge filter and, when required, a heater.

3.1.3 Where steam or thermal fluid is required to provide essential services, the number, arrangement and capacity of oil burning units is to be capable of supplying sufficient fuel to allow the steam or thermal fluid required to provide essential services to be generated with any one unit out of action.

3.1.4 Unit pressure pumps are to be entirely separate from the feed, bilge or ballast systems.

3.1.5 In dual oil fuel burning systems for boilers which are primarily designed for operation with residual oil fuel grades, arrangements are to be such that atomising steam cannot be used in combination with distillate oil fuel grades.

3.1.6 In all dual oil fuel burning systems for boilers, the manufacturer of the combustion equipment is to ensure that the full system, including control and monitoring systems, is capable of continuous operation in all conditions for each fuel grade.

3.1.7 Whenever the oil fuel burning units are stopped, shut-off arrangements for oil fuel to the units are to be provided as follows:

- (a) If the supply oil fuel is under pressure during shut-off to oil burning units, duplicated shut-off valves in series are to be fitted. Cocks are to be fitted to allow manual testing for leakage from each of the valves in the installed condition, they are to be capable of being locked in the closed position and any discharges are to be led to a safe position to ensure that discharge of oil through the test cocks does not present an ignition hazard.
- (b) If arrangements are such that oil fuel pressure is released through drainage during oil fuel shut-off to oil burning units, a single shut-off device may be accepted subject to approval by LR.

3.1.8 When combined air and fuel/steam/air combustion systems are used for multiple boiler installations, they are to be such that single boiler operation will not be adversely affected by the operation of another boiler system at any time.

3.1.9 Arrangements are to be such that furnace pre-purging is completed prior to any burner ignition sequence. The purge time is to be based on a minimum of 4 air changes of the combustion chamber, furnace and uptake spaces. The purge timing is to take account of the air flow rate and the sequence is not to commence until all air registers and dampers as applicable are fully open and the forced draft fans are operating.

3.1.10 The effect of multiple light-off failures is to be assessed and the need to lock out further ignition sequences established.

3.1.11 Means are to be provided so that, in the event of flame failure, the oil fuel supply to the burner(s) is shut off automatically, and an alarm is given, see 9.3 to 9.4 and Pt 8, Ch 1,18 as applicable.

3.1.12 It is to be demonstrated to the Surveyor's satisfaction during trials that burner shut-off times due to flame failure comply with the following requirements and details of the procedures and means used to set this time interval are to be submitted for consideration:

- (a) The time interval at burner start up between the burner oil fuel valve(s) being opened and then closed in the event of flame failure is to be long enough to allow a stable flame to be established and detected under normal operational circumstances but is to be set to minimise the quantity of oil fuel delivered to the furnace and the possibility of subsequent damage as a result of unintended ignition.
- (b) The time interval between flame failure detection and closing of burner oil fuel valve(s) is to be long enough to prevent shut-down due to incorrect detection of a flame failure under normal operational circumstances but is to be set to minimise the quantity of unburned oil fuel delivered to the furnace and the possibility of subsequent damage as a result of unintended ignition.

# Machinery Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 3

3.1.13 A warning notice is to be fitted in a prominent position at every oil burning unit local manual control station which specifies that burners operated with manual or local overrides in use are only to be ignited after sufficient purging of the furnace and of any additional precautions required when operating in this condition.

## 3.2 Gravity feed

3.2.1 In systems where oil is fed to the burners by gravity, duplex filters are to be fitted in the supply pipeline to the burners and so arranged that one filter can be opened up when the other is in use.

## 3.3 Starting-up unit

3.3.1 A starting-up oil fuel unit, including an auxiliary heater and hand pump, or other suitable starting-up device, which does not require power from shore, is to be provided.

3.3.2 Alternatively, where auxiliary machinery requiring compressed air or electric power is used to bring the boiler plant into operation, the arrangements for starting such machinery are to comply with Pt 2, Ch 1,7.11.

## 3.4 Steam connections to burners

3.4.1 Where burners are provided with steam purging and/or atomising connections, the arrangements are to be such that oil cannot find its way into the steam system in the event of valve leakage.

## 3.5 Burner arrangements

3.5.1 The burner arrangements are to be such that a burner cannot be withdrawn unless the oil supply to that burner is shut off, and that the oil cannot be turned on unless the burner has been correctly coupled to the supply line.

## 3.6 Quick-closing valve

3.6.1 A quick-closing master valve is to be fitted to the oil supply to each boiler manifold, suitably located so that the valve can be readily operated in an emergency, either directly or by means of remote control, having regard to the machinery arrangements and location of controls.

## 3.7 Spill arrangements

3.7.1 Provision is to be made, by suitable non-return arrangements, to prevent oil from spill systems being returned to the burners when the oil supply to these burners has been shut off.

## 3.8 Alternately fired furnaces

3.8.1 For alternately fired furnaces of boilers using exhaust gases and oil fuel, the exhaust gas inlet pipe is to be provided with an isolating device and interlocking arrangements whereby oil fuel can only be supplied to the burners when the isolating device is closed to the boiler.

## 3.9 Oil fuel treatment for supply to diesel engines and gas turbines

3.9.1 Suitable fuel treatment plant that may include filtration, centrifuging and/or coalescing is to be provided to reduce the level of water and particulate contamination of the oil fuel to within the engine or gas turbine manufacturer's limits for inlet to the combustion system. The capacity and arrangements of the treatment plant is to be suitable for ensuring availability of treated oil fuel for the maximum continuous rating of the propulsion and electrical generating plant.

3.9.2 Two or more treatment systems are to be provided such that failure of one system will not render the other system(s) inoperative. Arrangements are to ensure that the failure of a treatment system will not interrupt the supply of clean oil fuel to diesel engines or gas turbines used for propulsion and electrical generator purposes. Any treatment equipment in the system is to be capable of being cleaned without interrupting the flow of treated fuel to supply the combustion system.

3.9.3 Where centrifuges are used for oil fuel treatment they are to be type tested in accordance with a standard acceptable to LR and are to be installed on board in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The fuel grades, flow rates and any heating arrangements on board are to be consistent with the specification for type tested centrifuge.

3.9.4 Where heating of the oil fuel is required for the efficient functioning of the oil fuel treatment plant, a minimum of two heating units is to be provided. Each heating unit is to be of sufficient capacity to raise and maintain the required temperature of the oil fuel for the required delivery flow rate.

3.9.5 Heating units may be in circuit with separate treatment systems or provided with connections such that any heating unit can be connected to any treatment system.

3.9.6 Where heating of the oil fuel is required for combustion, not less than two pre-heaters are to be provided, each with sufficient capacity to raise the temperature of the fuel to provide a viscosity suitable for combustion.

3.9.7 Filters and/or coalescers are to be fitted in the oil fuel supply lines to each diesel engine and gas turbine to ensure that only suitably filtered oil is fed to the combustion system. The arrangements are to be such that any unit can be cleaned without interrupting the supply of filtered oil to the combustion system.

# Machinery Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Sections 3 & 4

## 3.10 Booster pumps

3.10.1 Where an oil fuel booster pump is fitted, which is essential to the operation of the main engine, a standby pump is to be provided.

3.10.2 The standby pump is to be connected ready for immediate use but where two or more main engines are fitted, each with its own pump, a complete spare pump may be accepted provided that it is readily accessible and can easily be installed.

## 3.11 Fuel valve cooling pumps

3.11.1 Where pumps are provided for fuel valve cooling, the arrangements are to be in accordance with 3.10.

## Section 4 Oil fuel pumps, pipes, fittings, tanks, etc.

### 4.1 Transfer pumps

4.1.1 Where a power driven pump is necessary for transferring oil fuel, a standby pump is to be provided and connected ready for use, or, alternatively, emergency connections may be made to one of the unit pumps or to another suitable power driven pump.

### 4.2 Control of pumps

4.2.1 The power supply to all independently driven oil fuel transfer and pressure pumps is to be capable of being stopped from a position outside the space which will always be accessible in the event of fire occurring in the compartment in which they are situated, as well as from the compartment itself.

### 4.3 Relief valves on pumps

4.3.1 All pumps which are capable of developing a pressure exceeding the design pressure of the system are to be provided with relief valves. Each relief valve is to be in closed circuit, i.e. arranged to discharge back to the suction side of the pump and effectively to limit the pump discharge pressure to the design pressure of the system.

### 4.4 Pump connections

4.4.1 Valves or cocks are to be interposed between the pumps and the suction and discharge pipes, in order that any pump may be shut off for opening up and overhauling.

## 4.5 Pipes conveying heated oil

4.5.1 Pipes conveying oil under pressure are to be of seamless steel or other approved material having flanged or welded joints, and are to be placed in sight above the platform in well lighted and readily accessible parts of the machinery spaces. The number of flanged joints is to be kept to a minimum.

4.5.2 Where pipe systems convey heated oil under pressure and include flanged joints the flanges and joints are to be suitable for a design pressure of at least 13,7 bar (14 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) or the design pressure whichever is the greater and a design temperature of 150°C or the design temperature whichever is the greater. They are to comply with a relevant and acceptable National or International Standard, and the requirements of Chapter 1 at the defined temperature and pressure. Materials for the pipes, flanges and gaskets are to be suitable for the conveyed medium at the defined temperature and pressure.

4.5.3 The short joining lengths of pipes to the burners from the control valves at the boiler may have cone unions, provided these are of specially robust construction.

4.5.4 Flexible hoses of approved material and design may be used for the burner pipes, provided that spare lengths, complete with couplings, are carried on board.

4.5.5 For requirements relating to flexible hoses, see Ch 1,13.

## 4.6 Low pressure pipes

4.6.1 Transfer, suction and other low pressure oil pipes and all pipes passing through oil storage tanks are to be made of steel, having flanged joints suitable for a working pressure of not less than 6,9 bar. The flanges are to be machined and the jointing material is to be impervious to oil. Where the pipes are 25 mm bore or less, they may be of seamless copper or copper alloy, except those which pass through oil storage tanks. Oil pipes within the engine and boiler spaces are to be fitted where they can be readily inspected and repaired.

4.6.2 For requirements regarding bilge and dewatering pipes in way of double bottom tanks and deep tanks, see Ch 2,7.7.

## 4.7 Valves and cocks

4.7.1 Valves, cocks and their pipe connections are to be so arranged that oil cannot be admitted into tanks which are not structurally suitable for the carriage of oil or into tanks which can be used for the carriage of fresh water.

4.7.2 All valves and cocks forming part of the oil fuel installation are to be capable of being controlled from readily accessible positions which, in the engine and boiler spaces, are to be above the working platform. See also Ch 2,2.3.

# Machinery Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 4

4.7.3 Every oil fuel suction pipe from a double bottom tank is to be fitted with a valve or cock.

## 4.8 Valves on deep tanks and their control arrangements

4.8.1 Every oil fuel suction pipe from a storage, settling and daily service tank situated above the double bottom, and every oil fuel levelling pipe within the boiler room or engine room, is to be fitted with a valve or cock secured to the tank.

4.8.2 The valves and cocks mentioned in 4.8.1 are to be capable of being closed locally and from positions outside these spaces. The remote controls are to be accessible in the event of fire occurring in the deep tank's space. Instructions for closing the valves or cocks are to be indicated at the valves and cocks and at the remote control positions.

4.8.3 The control for remote operation of the valve on the emergency generator fuel tank is to be in a separate location from the controls for the remote operation of other valves for tanks located in machinery spaces.

4.8.4 In the case of tanks of less than 500 litres capacity consideration will be given to the omission of remote controls.

4.8.5 Every oil fuel suction pipe which is led into the engine and boiler spaces, from a tank situated above the double bottom outside these spaces, is to be fitted in the machinery space with a valve controlled as in 4.8.2, except where the valve on the tank is already capable of being closed from an accessible position on the damage control deck.

4.8.6 Where the filling pipes to deep oil tanks are not connected to the tanks near the top, they are to be provided with non-return valves at the tanks or with valves or cocks fitted and controlled as in 4.8.2.

## 4.9 Water drainage

4.9.1 All oil fuel storage, settling and service tanks are to be provided with a means of removing water from the lowest point in the tank.

4.9.2 Open drains for removing water from oil tanks are to be fitted with valves or cocks of self-closing type, and suitable provision is to be made for collecting the oily discharge.

## 4.10 Relief valves on oil heaters

4.10.1 Relief valves are to be fitted on the oil side of heaters and are to be adjusted to operate at a pressure of 3,4 bar above that of the supply pump relief valve, see 4.3. The discharge from the relief valves is to be led to a safe position.

## 4.11 Filling arrangements

4.11.1 Filling stations are to be isolated from other spaces and are to be efficiently drained and ventilated.

4.11.2 Provision is to be made against over-pressure in the filling pipelines, and any relief valve fitted for this purpose is to discharge to an overflow tank or other safe position.

4.11.3 The arrangements for filling oil fuel tanks are to be such that the tanks will not be subject to a pressure in excess of that for which they were designed. Maximum filling rates are to be stated in the ship's Operations Manual.

## 4.12 Transfer arrangements

4.12.1 Provision is to be made for the transfer of oil fuel from any oil fuel storage or settling tank to any other oil fuel storage or settling tank in the event of fire or damage.

## 4.13 Alternative carriage of oil fuel and water ballast

4.13.1 Where it is intended to carry oil fuel and water ballast in the same compartments alternatively, the valves or cocks connecting the suction pipes of these compartments with the ballast pump and those connecting them with the oil fuel transfer pump are to be so arranged that the oil may be pumped from any one compartment by the oil fuel pump at the same time as the ballast pump is being used on any other compartment.

4.13.2 Attention is drawn to the requirements of the Naval Authority in connection with prevention of pollution of the sea by oil.

## 4.14 Deep tanks for the alternative carriage of oil or water ballast

4.14.1 In the case of deep tanks which can be used for the carriage of oil fuel or water ballast, provision is to be made for blank flanging the oil and water ballast filling and suction pipes.

## 4.15 Fresh water piping

4.15.1 Pipes in connection with compartments used for storing fresh water are to be separate and distinct from any pipes which may be used for oil or oily water, and are not to be led through tanks which contain oil, nor are oil pipes to be led through fresh water tanks.

## 4.16 Independent/separate oil fuel tanks

4.16.1 Where separate oil fuel tanks are permitted, their construction is to be in accordance with the requirements of 4.16.2 to 4.16.6, see *also* 2.9.1 and 2.9.2.

# Machinery Piping Systems

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 4

4.16.2 In general, the minimum thickness of the plating of service, settling and other oil tanks, where they do not form part of the structure of the ship, is to be 5 mm, but in the case of very small tanks, the minimum thickness may be 3 mm.

4.16.3 For rectangular steel tanks of welded construction, the plate thicknesses are to be not less than those indicated in Table 3.4.1. The stiffeners are to be of approved dimensions.

**Table 3.4.1 Plate thickness of separate oil fuel tanks**

| Thickness of plate, mm | Head from bottom of tank to top of overflow pipe, metres |      |      |     |     |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|------|------|-----|-----|
|                        | 2,5                                                      | 3,0  | 3,7  | 4,3 | 4,9 |
| Breadth of panel, mm   |                                                          |      |      |     |     |
| 5                      | 585                                                      | 525  | —    | —   | —   |
| 6                      | 725                                                      | 645  | 590  | —   | —   |
| 7                      | 860                                                      | 770  | 700  | 650 | —   |
| 8                      | 1000                                                     | 900  | 820  | 750 | 700 |
| 10                     | 1280                                                     | 1140 | 1040 | 960 | 900 |

4.16.4 The dimension given in Table 3.4.1 for the breadth of the panel is the maximum distance allowable between continuous lines of support, which may be stiffeners, wash-plates or the boundary of the tank.

4.16.5 Where necessary, stiffeners are to be provided, and if the length of the stiffener exceeds twice the breadth of the panel, horizontal stiffeners are also to be fitted, or, alternatively, tie bars are to be provided between stiffeners on opposite sides of the tank.

4.16.6 On completion, the tanks are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected, but not less than 2,5 m above the crown of the tank.

### 4.17 Oil fuel service tanks

4.17.1 An oil fuel service tank is a an oil fuel tank which contains only the required quality of fuel ready for immediate use.

4.17.2 Two oil fuel service tanks, for each type of fuel used on board, necessary for propulsion and generator systems, are to be provided. Each tank is to have a capacity for at least eight hours operation at sea, at maximum continuous rating of the propulsion plant and/or generating pant associated with that tank.

4.17.3 A greater or lesser period than the 8 hour period specified in 4.17.2 may be considered in conjunction with the operational requirements of the Naval Authority and any assigned Service Restriction.

### 4.18 Water compensated oil fuel tanks

4.18.1 The use of water compensated oil fuel tanks is to be avoided whenever practicable and attention is drawn to regulations that may be specified by the Naval Authority in connection with the *International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution of the Sea by Oil, 1973/78*.

4.18.2 Where the ship design considerations require the inclusion of sea-water compensated oil fuel tanks the arrangements are to comply with the requirements in 4.18.3 to 4.18.13. Acceptance of water compensated oil fuel tanks is subject to the provision of alternative oil fuel storage and usage arrangements that do not rely only on the use of water compensated tanks and that permit oil fuel to settle before use. The arrangement and capacity of oil fuel in tanks that do not have sea-water compensation arrangements are to recognise the service profile required by Pt 1, Ch 2,3.3.2 and be acceptable to the Naval Authority.

4.18.3 Tank types to be used as sea-water compensated fuel tanks are listed in order of preference below. Preference is based on tank shape and the ability to readily pump out the contents:

- Wing or deep tanks.
- Wing double bottom tanks.
- Flat double bottom tanks.

4.18.4 The tank design is to limit the oil/water interface to reduce mixing to the minimum.

4.18.5 The internal structure of tanks is to allow free drainage to the lowest part of the tanks.

4.18.6 The tank internal preservation is to be suitable for both sea-water and oil fuel and capable of resisting micro-biological contamination, specifically sulphate reducing bacteria.

4.18.7 All tanks are to have vertical longitudinal partitions (either of the fixed structural or flexible membrane type) with provision for sequential displacement of fluids in partitioned sections. The partitioned section furthest from the suction is to be provided with a suitable air pipe.

4.18.8 Means are to be provided to detect the fuel/water interface to allow accurate detection of remaining fuel in tanks.

4.18.9 The piping arrangements at the filling and discharge points are to be designed to minimise fluid turbulence.

4.18.10 The design oil fuel filling and sea-water discharge flow rates are to be agreed by the Naval Authority. The oil fuel filling rate is to be achieved by use of filling trunks or other regulating method that will always provide sufficient head of oil to displace water from the water compensated fuel tanks and prevent a tank being subjected to a pressure greater than that for which it has been designed.



# Machinery Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Sections 4, 5 & 6

4.18.11 The discharge of sea-water is to be via either:

- (a) A high level discharge point above waterline for discharge to shore or lighter.
- (b) Low level discharge just below waterline for discharging at sea.

Means are to be provided to ascertain actual discharge of sea-water at a position close to the ship-side discharge valve.

4.18.12 Header tanks for supply of sea-water to water compensated oil fuel tanks are to be provided with level indication that can be readily sighted. Where the HP sea-water main is used to supply the header tanks, arrangements are to be made to prevent the oil tanks being subject to a pressure that exceeds the design pressure. Arrangements are also to be made to ensure that oil does not enter a header tank.

4.18.13 Where a water compensated oil fuel storage system is required to be capable of displacing oil fuel direct to a service tank in the event of a transfer pump or centrifuge failure, testing is to be carried out to demonstrate that the specified transfer rate can be achieved.

## 4.19 Arrangements for fuels with a flash point between 43° and 60°

4.19.1 Fuel oil tanks other than those in double bottom compartments are to be located outside Category A machinery spaces, see also Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 2,4.10.

4.19.2 Provisions are to be made for the measurement of oil fuel temperature at the pump suction pipe.

4.19.3 Stop valves are to be provided at the inlet and outlet side of oil fuel strainers.

4.19.4 Pipe joints are to be either welded or spherical type union joints.

## ■ Section 5 Steam piping systems

### 5.1 Provision for expansion

5.1.1 In all steam piping systems, provision is to be made for expansion and contraction to take place without unduly straining the pipes.

5.1.2 Where expansion pieces are used, particulars are to be submitted.

5.1.3 For installation requirements regarding expansion pieces, see Ch 1,14.2.

### 5.2 Drainage

5.2.1 The slope of the pipes and the number and position of the drain valves or cocks are to be such that water can be efficiently drained from any portion of the steam piping system when the ship is in normal trim and is either upright or has a list of up to 5°.

5.2.2 Arrangements are to be made for ready access to the drain valves or cocks.

### 5.3 Soot cleaning drains

5.3.1 The capacity of the drains from exhaust gas economisers/boilers is to be sufficient to remove all wash water or condensate generated by installed washing systems, and arrangements are to be such that engines and turbochargers are protected from wash water or condensate drainage from the washing system.

5.3.2 Adequate arrangements are to be made for the collection and disposal of the waste water generated during periodic water washing of the exhaust gas economiser/boiler. Details are to be submitted for approval.

### 5.4 Reduced pressure lines

5.4.1 Pipelines which are situated on the low pressure side of reducing valves, and which are not designed to withstand the full pressure at the source of supply, are to be fitted with pressure gauges and with relief valves having sufficient discharge capacity to protect against excessive pressure.

## ■ Section 6 Boiler feed water, condensate and thermal fluid circulation systems

### 6.1 Feed water piping

6.1.1 Two separate means of feed are to be provided for all main and auxiliary boilers which are required for essential services. In the case of steam/steam generators, one means of feed will be accepted provided steam for essential services is available simultaneously from another source.

### 6.2 Feed and circulation pumps

6.2.1 Two or more feed pumps are to be provided of sufficient capacity to supply the boilers under full load conditions with any one pump out of action.

6.2.2 Independent feed pumps required for feeding the main boilers are to be fitted with automatic regulators for controlling their output.

6.2.3 The valves on the suction pipes from the hotwell or condenser and the feed drain tank or filter are to be of the non-return type.

6.2.4 The arrangement of forced water/thermal fluid circulation pumps for exhaust gas economisers/boilers/thermal heaters is to be such that where required, the flow through the exhaust gas economiser/boiler/thermal heater is to be established prior to engine start up. Where applicable, provision is to be made to allow for operation in the dry condition.

6.2.5 The forced circulation flow required by 6.2.4 is to be maintained on completion of engine shut-down for a sufficient duration in accordance with the exhaust gas economiser/boiler/thermal heater manufacturer's instructions. Details of arrangements are to be submitted for approval.

6.2.6 Where arrangements are such that exhaust gas economisers/boilers/thermal heaters require forced water/thermal fluid circulation, standby pumps are to be fitted. The standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

## 6.3 Condensate pumps

6.3.1 Two or more extraction pumps are to be provided for dealing with the condensate from the main and auxiliary condensers, at least one of which is to be independently driven. Where one of the independent feed pumps is fitted with direct suctions from the condensers and a discharge to the feed tank, it may be accepted for this purpose.

## 6.4 Valves and cocks

6.4.1 Feed and condensate pumps are to be provided with valves or cocks, interposed between the pumps and the suction and the discharge pipes, so that any pump may be opened up for overhaul while the others continue in operation.

## 6.5 Reserve feed water

6.5.1 All ships fitted with boilers are to be provided with storage space for reserve feed water, the structural and piping arrangements being such that this water cannot be contaminated by oil or oily water.

6.5.2 For main boilers, one or more evaporators, of adequate capacity, are also to be provided.

## ■ Cross-reference

For feed water level regulators for water tube boilers, see Pt 8, Ch 1, 16.8.

## ■ Section 7 Engine cooling water systems

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 Provision is to be made for an adequate supply of cooling water to the main propelling machinery and essential auxiliary engines, also to the lubricating oil and fresh water coolers and air coolers for electric propelling machinery, where these coolers are fitted. The cooling water pump(s) may be worked from the engines or be driven independently.

7.1.2 In the case of main steam turbine installations, a sea inlet scoop arrangement may replace the main sea-water circulating pump, subject to the conditions stated in 7.2.2(c).

### 7.2 Standby supply

7.2.1 Provision is also to be made for a separate supply of cooling water from a suitable independent pump of adequate capacity.

7.2.2 The following arrangements are acceptable depending on the purpose for which the cooling water is intended:

- (a) Where only one main engine is fitted, the standby pump is to be connected ready for immediate use.
- (b) Where more than one main engine is fitted, each with its own pump, a complete spare pump of each type may be accepted.
- (c) Where a sea inlet scoop arrangement is fitted, and there is only one independent condenser circulating pump, a further pump, or a connection to the largest available pump suitable for circulation duties, is to be fitted to provide the second means of circulation when the ship is manoeuvring. The pump is to be connected ready for immediate use.
- (d) Where fresh water cooling is employed for main and/or auxiliary engines, a standby fresh water pump need not be fitted if there are suitable emergency connections from a salt water system.
- (e) Where each auxiliary is fitted with a cooling water pump, standby means of cooling need not be provided.

Where, however, a group of auxiliaries is supplied with cooling water from a common system, a standby cooling water pump is to be provided for this system. This pump is to be connected ready for immediate use and may be a suitable general service pump.

### 7.3 Selection of standby pumps

7.3.1 When selecting a pump for standby purposes, consideration is to be given to the maximum pressure which it can develop if the overboard discharge valve is partly or fully closed and, when necessary, condenser doors, water boxes, etc., are to be protected by an approved device against inadvertent over-pressure. See Pt 1, Ch 2, 9.4.4 for the hydraulic test pressure which condensers are required to withstand.

# Machinery Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Sections 7 &amp; 8

## 7.4 Relief valves on main cooling water pumps

7.4.1 Where cooling water pumps can develop a pressure head greater than the design pressure of the system, they are to be provided with relief valves on the pump discharge effectively to limit the pump discharge pressure to the design pressure of the system. For location of relief valves, see Ch 2,7.6.

## 7.5 Sea inlets

7.5.1 Not less than two sea inlets are to be provided for the pumps supplying the sea-water cooling system, one for the main pump and one for the standby pump. Alternatively, the sea inlets may be connected to a suction line available to main and standby pumps.

7.5.2 Where standby pumps are not connected ready for immediate use (see 7.2.2(b)), the main pump is to be connected to both sea inlets.

7.5.3 Cooling water pump sea inlets are to be low inlets and one of them may be the ballast pump or general service pump sea inlet.

7.5.4 The auxiliary cooling water sea inlets are to be located one on each side of the ship.

## 7.6 Strainers

7.6.1 Where sea-water is used for the direct cooling of the main engines and essential auxiliary engines, the cooling water suction pipes are to be provided with strainers which can be cleaned without interruption to the cooling water supply.

## 7.7 Cooling systems

7.7.1 Means are to be provided for the drainage and storage of engine coolants to enable maintenance and repair of the engine.

7.7.2 All cooling systems are to be provided with means of venting air at high points and sufficient drain fittings to enable the system to be completely drained for maintenance.

## ■ Cross-reference

For guidance on metal pipes for water services, see Ch 1,17.

## ■ Section 8

## Lubricating oil systems

### 8.1 General requirements

8.1.1 The arrangements for storage, distribution and utilisation of lubricating oils are to comply with the requirements of this Section.

### 8.2 Pumps

8.2.1 Where lubricating oil for the main engine(s) is circulated under pressure, a standby lubricating oil pump is to be provided where the following conditions apply:

- (a) The lubricating oil pump is independently driven and the total output of the main engine(s) exceeds 370 kW.
- (b) One main engine with its own pump is fitted and the output of the engine exceeds 370 kW.
- (c) More than one main engine each with its own lubricating oil pump is fitted and the output of each engine exceeds 370 kW.

8.2.2 The standby pump is to be of sufficient capacity to maintain the supply of oil for normal conditions with any one pump out of action. The pump is to be fitted and connected ready for immediate use. In all cases satisfactory lubrication of the engines is to be ensured while starting and manoeuvring.

8.2.3 Similar provisions to those of 8.2.1 and 8.2.2 are to be made where separate lubricating oil systems are employed for piston cooling, reduction gears, oil operated couplings, controllable pitch propellers, water jet systems and propulsion thrusters, unless approved alternative arrangements are provided.

8.2.4 Independently driven pumps of rotary type are to be fitted with a non-return valve on the discharge side of the pump.

### 8.3 Control of pumps

8.3.1 The power supply to all independently driven lubricating oil transfer and pressure pumps is to be capable of being stopped from a position outside the space, which will always be accessible in the event of fire occurring in the space in which the pumps or pump compartment are situated.

### 8.4 Relief valves on pumps

8.4.1 All lubricating oil pumps which are capable of developing a pressure exceeding the design pressure of the system are to be provided with relief valves or equivalent. Each relief valve is to be in closed circuit, i.e., arranged to discharge back to the suction side of the pump, thereby limiting the pump discharge pressure to the design pressure of the system.

8.4.2 Where centrifugal type lubricating oil pumps are fitted, pressure relief valves will not be required provided that pipes, valves and fittings are suitable for the greater of the design pressure or pump non-delivery pressure.

# Machinery Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 8

## 8.5 Alarms

8.5.1 All main and auxiliary engines and turbines intended for essential services are to be provided with means of indicating the lubricating oil pressure supply to them. Where such engines and turbines are of more than 37 kW, audible and visual alarms are to be fitted to give warning of an appreciable reduction in pressure of the lubricating oil supply. Further, these alarms are to be actuated from the outlet side of any restrictions, such as filters, coolers, etc.

## 8.6 Emergency supply for propulsion turbines and propulsion turbo-generators

8.6.1 A suitable emergency supply of lubricating oil is to be arranged to come automatically into use in the event of a failure of the supply from the pump.

8.6.2 The emergency supply may be obtained from a gravity tank containing sufficient oil to maintain adequate lubrication for not less than six minutes, and, in the case of propulsion turbo-generators, until the unloaded turbine comes to rest from its maximum rated running speed.

8.6.3 Alternatively, the supply may be provided by the standby pump or by an emergency pump. These pumps are to be so arranged that their availability is not affected by a failure in the power supply.

8.6.4 For automatic shut-down arrangements of main turbines in the event of failure of the lubrication system, see Pt 2, Ch 2,5.1 and Ch 3,4.3.

## 8.7 Maintenance of bearing lubrication

8.7.1 The arrangements for lubricating bearings and for draining crankcase and other oil sumps of main and auxiliary engines, gearcases, electric generators, motors, and other running machinery are to be so designed that lubrication will remain efficient with the ship inclined under the conditions as shown in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.6.

8.7.2 For details of the requirements relating to the lubrication of bearings of electric generators and motors, see Pt 10, Ch 1,1.9 and Section 9.

8.7.3 Where a filling pipe and cap are provided for engines and other machinery, provision is to be made for the topping up oil to pass through a gauze strainer. The caps are to be capable of being secured in the closed position.

8.7.4 The capacity of lubricating oil service tanks is to be sufficient to avoid the need to replenish a tank for an agreed period of time (designer/Owner/Operator), assuming the normal oil consumption rate quoted by the equipment manufacturer.

## 8.8 Filters

8.8.1 Where the lubricating oil for main propelling engines is circulated under pressure, provision is to be made for the efficient filtration of the oil. The filters are to be capable of being cleaned without stopping the engine or reducing the supply of filtered oil to the engine. Proposals for an automatic by-pass for emergency purposes in high speed engines are to be submitted for special consideration.

8.8.2 In the case of propulsion turbines and their gears, arrangements are to be made for the lubricating oil to pass through magnetic strainers and fine filters. Generally, the openings in the filter elements are to be not coarser than required by the manufacturer of the turbines, especially for the supply to turbine thrust bearings.

## 8.9 Filling arrangements

8.9.1 Filling stations are to be isolated from other spaces and are to be efficiently drained and ventilated.

8.9.2 Provision is to be made against over-pressure in the filling pipelines. Any relief valve fitted for this purpose is to discharge to an overflow tank or other safe position and is to be sized to allow full flow of supply through the relief valve without over-pressuring the upstream pipe work.

## 8.10 Cleanliness of pipes and fittings

8.10.1 Extreme care is to be taken to ensure that lubricating oil pipes and fittings, before installation, are free from scale, sand, metal particles and other foreign matter.

## 8.11 Pipes conveying oil

8.11.1 Pipes conveying lubricating oil under pressure are to be of seamless steel or other approved material having flanged or welded joints, and are to be placed in sight above the platform in well lit and readily accessible parts of the machinery spaces. The number of flanged joints is to be kept to a minimum.

8.11.2 For requirements relating to flexible hoses, see Ch 1,13.

## 8.12 Lubricating oil drain tank

8.12.1 Where an engine lubricating oil drain tank extends to the bottom shell plating in ships that are required to be provided with a double bottom, a shut-off valve is to be fitted in the drainpipe between the engine casing and the double bottom tank. This valve is to be capable of being closed from an accessible position above the level of the lower platform.

# Machinery Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 8

## 8.13 Lubricating oil contamination

8.13.1 The materials used in the storage and distribution of lubricating oil are to be selected such that they do not introduce contamination or modify the properties of the oil. The use of cadmium or zinc in lubricating oil systems where they may come into contact with the oil is not permitted.

8.13.2 Arrangements are to be made for each forced lubrication system, renovation system, ready to use tank(s) and their associated run-down lines to drain tanks to be flushed after system installation and prior to running of machinery. The flushing arrangements and procedures are to be in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's procedures and recommendations.

8.13.3 For prevention of ingress of water into lubricating oil tanks via air pipes, see Ch 2,10.4.4.

8.13.4 The design and construction of engine and gear box piping arrangements are to prevent contamination of engine lubricating oil systems by leakage of cooling water or from bilge water where the engines or gearboxes are partly installed below the lower platform. Where flexibility is required to accommodate movement between the engine and sump tank, any flexible joint assembly is to be of an approved type suitable for its intended application.

8.13.5 Where there is a permanently attached oil filling pipe and cap provided for an engine or other item of machinery, provision is to be made for the topping up oil to safely pass through a suitable strainer to prevent unwanted matter getting into the lubricating oil system. The caps are to be capable of being secured in the closed position.

8.13.6 Sampling points are to be provided that enable samples of lubricating oil to be taken in a safe manner. The sampling arrangements are to have the capability to provide samples when machinery is running and are to be provided with valves and cocks of the self-closing type and located in positions as far removed as possible from any heated surface or electrical equipment.

## 8.14 Security

8.14.1 All valves whose position can affect the supply of oil to lubrication consumers are to be capable of being secured in their operating position.

8.14.2 All means of entry into lubricating oil tanks and gearcases are to be provided with a means of being locked in the closed position.

8.14.3 Drain plugs and cocks in lubricating systems are to be capable of being secured in the closed position.

## 8.15 Deep tank valves and their control arrangements

8.15.1 The requirements for remote operation on valves on deep tank suction pipes may be waived where the valves are closed during normal operation where agreed by the Naval Authority.

8.15.2 Remotely operated valves on lubricating oil deep tank suction pipes should not be of the quick-closing type where inadvertent use would endanger the safe operation of the main propulsion and essential auxiliary machinery.

8.15.3 Every lubricating oil suction pipe from a storage, settling and service tank situated above the double bottom, and every oil levelling pipe within the engine room, is to be fitted with a valve or cock secured to the tank.

8.15.4 Valves and cocks are to be capable of being closed locally and from positions outside the space in which the tank is located. The remote controls are to be accessible in the event of fire occurring in the deep tank's space. Instructions for closing the valves or cocks are to be indicated at the valves and cocks and at the remote control positions.

8.15.5 In the case of tanks of less than 500 litres' capacity, consideration will be given to the omission of remote controls.

8.15.6 Every lubricating oil suction pipe which is led into the engine space from a tank situated above the double bottom outside this space is to be fitted in the machinery space with a valve controlled as in 8.15.4, except where the valve on the tank is already capable of being closed from an accessible position above the bulkhead deck.

8.15.7 Where the filling pipes to deep lubricating oil tanks are not connected to the tanks near the top, they are to be provided with non-return valves at the tanks or with valves or cocks, fitted and controlled as in 8.15.4.

## 8.16 Separate oil tanks

8.16.1 On completion, the tanks are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected.

## ■ Cross-references

For air, sounding pipes and gauge glasses, see Ch 2,10.  
For hydraulic power actuating systems, see Ch 5,11.

# Machinery Piping Systems

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 9

### Section 9

### Control, supervision and monitoring of equipment

#### 9.1 General

9.1.1 The control and monitoring systems are to comply with the requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1.

#### 9.2 Automatic and remote controls

9.2.1 Where equipment is fitted with automatic or remote control so that under normal operating conditions it does not require manual intervention by operators, it is to be provided with alarms and safety arrangements required by 9.3 to 9.5.

9.2.2 Where machinery specified in this Section is required to be provided with a standby pump, the standby pump is to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

9.2.3 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shut-down of machinery are required in the relevant Tables of this Section, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shut-down are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm.

#### 9.3 Thermal fluid heaters

9.3.1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in 9.3.2 to 9.3.8, and Table 3.9.1.

9.3.2 The standby pumps for oil fuel and thermal fluid circulation are to start automatically when the discharge pressure from the working pump falls below a predetermined value. The standby pumps for thermal fluid circulation are to start before the shut-offs due to low thermal fluid pressure, see Table 3.9.1, are activated.

9.3.3 The following heater services are to be fitted with automatic controls so as to maintain steady state conditions throughout the operating range of the heater:

- Combustion system.
- Oil fuel supply temperature or viscosity, heavy oil only.
- Thermal fluid temperature.

9.3.4 Burner controls are to be arranged such that light-off is only possible at the minimum firing rate compatible with flame establishment. If ignition is set to occur at a fuel rich condition the burner is to revert to the correct operating air/fuel ratio on establishment of a stable flame.

9.3.5 Burner oil fuel valve(s) are not to open:

- prior to completion of required warm up times; or
- when the power supply to the igniter has failed; or
- prior to the completion of furnace purging, see Ch 3,3.1.9.

**Table 3.9.1 Thermal fluid heaters: Alarms and safeguards**

| Item                                                      | Alarm          | Note                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Expansion tank level*                                     | Low            | Oil fuel burners to be shut off automatically                                                                                          |
| Thermal fluid flow                                        | Low            | Oil fuel burners to be shut off automatically, see Note 5                                                                              |
| Thermal fluid pressure                                    | Low            | Oil fuel burners to be shut off automatically                                                                                          |
| Thermal fluid outlet temperature*                         | 1st stage High | —                                                                                                                                      |
|                                                           | 2nd stage High | Oil fuel burners to be shut off automatically, see 9.2.3                                                                               |
| Thermal fluid forced circulation flow (if fitted)         | Low            | For exhaust gas economisers/boilers, see Note 5                                                                                        |
| Combustion air pressure*                                  | Low            | Oil fuel burners to be shut off automatically, see Note 3                                                                              |
| Oil fuel pressure*                                        | Low            | —                                                                                                                                      |
| Oil fuel temperature or viscosity*                        | High and low   | Heavy oil only                                                                                                                         |
| Oil fuel atomising steam/air pressure                     | Low            | —                                                                                                                                      |
| Burner flame*                                             | Failure        | Each burner to be monitored. Oil fuel to burners to be shut off automatically, see 3.1.11 to 3.1.12 and Note 3                         |
| Flame monitoring device(s)*                               | Failure        | See 9.3.6 and Note 3                                                                                                                   |
| Igniter*                                                  | Failure        | Each igniter to be checked before oil is supplied to burner see 9.3.5 and Note 3                                                       |
| Forced draft fan*                                         | Power failure  | Oil fuel to burners to be shut off automatically, see Note 3                                                                           |
| Air register and dampers (including those in the uptake)* | Not fully open | Purge sequence to be inhibited, see 3.1.9                                                                                              |
| Control system*                                           | Power failure  | Oil fuel to burners to be shut off automatically. Control using alternative arrangements is to remain available, see Pt 9, Ch 1,2.5.7. |
| Uptake temperature                                        | High           | To monitor for soot fires. Oil fuel to the burner is to be shut off, see Notes 4 and 6                                                 |

#### NOTES

- Special consideration may be given to the requirements for oil fired hot water heaters.
- For heaters not supplying thermal fluid for services essential for the safety or the operation of the ship at sea, only the items marked\* are required.
- These safeguards are to remain operative during automatic, manual and emergency operation.
- Alarm and oil fuel shut-off only required where exhaust gas economisers/boilers are fitted.
- For exhaust gas economisers/boilers requiring thermal fluid forced circulation, the low flow alarm is to be fitted with provision to override the alarm if the exhaust gas economiser/boiler is to be operated in the dry condition. See also Ch 3,6.2.4.
- Alternatively, details (including location) of an appropriate fire detection system are to be submitted for consideration.

# Machinery Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 3

Section 9

9.3.6 Arrangements for flame failure detection are to be provided with self-monitoring capabilities which prove that the flame detector is not erroneously indicating the presence of a flame. In the event of failure being detected by these self-monitoring capabilities:

- oil fuel to burner is to be shut off automatically; and
- an alarm is to be activated.

9.3.7 Where established as necessary by Ch 3,3.1.10, means are to be provided to prevent starting of the ignition sequence following multiple flame failures until completion of the identified lock out period.

9.3.8 Following burner shut-down, the furnace is to be purged automatically for at least the required pre-purging time. In event of shut-down due to activation of a required safeguard this purging is to be manually initiated.

## 9.4 Incinerators

9.4.1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in 9.4.2, 9.4.3 and Table 3.9.2.

**Table 3.9.2 Incinerators: Alarms and safeguards**

| Item                                                                                                                                | Alarm        | Note                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Oil fuel temperature or viscosity                                                                                                   | High and low | Heavy oil and sludge                                                     |
| Oil fuel pressure                                                                                                                   | Low          | —                                                                        |
| Combustion air pressure                                                                                                             | Low          | Oil fuel and/or sludge to burners to be shut off automatically           |
| Burner flame and ignition                                                                                                           | Failure      | Oil fuel and/or sludge to burners to be shut off automatically. See Note |
| Furnace temperature                                                                                                                 | High         | Oil fuel and/or sludge to burners to be shut off automatically           |
| Furnace temperature                                                                                                                 | Low          | If applicable                                                            |
| Exhaust temperature                                                                                                                 | High         | —                                                                        |
| NOTE<br>Combustion spaces are to be purged automatically before re-ignition takes place in the event of a flame out on all burners. |              |                                                                          |

9.4.2 Where arrangements are provided to introduce solid waste into the furnace these are to be such that there is no risk of a fire hazard.

9.4.3 The combustion temperature is to be controlled to ensure that all liquid and solid waste is efficiently burned without exceeding predetermined temperature limits.

## 9.5 Miscellaneous machinery

9.5.1 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in 9.5.2 to 9.5.5 and Table 3.9.3.

**Table 3.9.3 Miscellaneous machinery: Alarms and safeguards**

| Item                                     | Alarm        | Note                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Coolant tanks level                      | Low          | —                                                                                                      |
| Oil fuel service tanks level             | High and low | Where a common overflow tank is fitted, a high level alarm in the common overflow tank may be accepted |
| Oil fuel service tanks temperature       | High         | Where heating arrangements are fitted                                                                  |
| Oil fuel settling tanks temperature      | High         | Where heating arrangements are fitted                                                                  |
| Sludge tanks level                       | High         | —                                                                                                      |
| Feed water tanks level                   | Low          | Service tank only                                                                                      |
| Purifier water seal broken               | Fault        | —                                                                                                      |
| Purifier oil inlet temperature           | High         | —                                                                                                      |
| Air compressor lubricating oil           | Failure      | Automatic shut-down                                                                                    |
| Air compressor discharge air temperature | High         | —                                                                                                      |
| Hydraulic control system pressure        | Low          | —                                                                                                      |
| Pneumatic control system pressure        | Low          | —                                                                                                      |
| Oil heater temperature                   | High         | See also Chapter 3                                                                                     |
| Controlled environmental conditions      | Abnormal     | See also 9.2.2                                                                                         |

9.5.2 **Dual fuel systems.** Oil and gas dual fired systems for boilers and engines are to be provided with indication to show which fuel is in use.

9.5.3 **Oil heaters.** Oil fuel or lubricating oil heaters are to be fitted with a high temperature alarm which may be incorporated in the temperature control system. In addition to the temperature control system, an independent sensor, with manual reset, is to be fitted which will automatically cut off the heating supply in the event of excessively high temperatures or loss of flow, except where the maximum temperature of the heating medium remains limited to a value below 220°C.

9.5.4 **Oil tank electric heating.** Oil fuel and lubricating oil tanks that are provided with electric heating elements are to be fitted with a high temperature alarm, which may be incorporated in the temperature control system, a low level alarm and an additional low level sensor to cut off the power supply at a level above that at which the heating element would be exposed.

9.5.5 **Oil fuel tanks.** Means are to be provided to eliminate the possibility of overflow from oil fuel service tanks into the machinery space and to safeguard against overflow of oil from the oil fuel service through the air pipe. See Chapter 2 regarding the termination of air pipes.

## ■ Section 10 Multi-engined ships

### 10.1 General

10.1.1 This Section is applicable to category **NS3 ships**, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,2 that have multi-engine installations for propulsion purposes.

10.1.2 For vessels in which the propulsion systems are independent and the propulsion system prime movers are also fully independent of each other such that in the event of the failure of one of the sources of propulsion power the vessels will retain the capability of safely manoeuvring under all conditions of service, the following may not be required:

- (a) Spare fuel oil booster pump stipulated in 3.10.2.
- (b) Spare lubricating oil pump stipulated in 8.2.1(c), 8.2.2 and 8.2.3.
- (c) Spare cooling water pump stipulated in 7.2.2(b).

## ■ Section 11 Electrical equipment cooling arrangements

### 11.1 General

11.1.1 Provision is to be made for an adequate supply of cooling to the electrical equipment used in Mobility and Ship Type engineering systems. The cooling arrangements may be worked from the engineering systems or be supplied by independent means.

11.1.2 The requirements of this Section are with the goal of providing sufficient cooling whereby normal operation of Mobility and Ship Type engineering systems can be sustained or restored even though any one of the sources of cooling becomes inoperative.

11.1.3 The temperature of cooling water supplied to coolers for electrical equipment is to take account of imposed loads when under normal design operating conditions and take into account the ambient temperatures likely to be experienced in the compartment where the equipment is located.

11.1.4 The possible formation of condensation due to low cooling temperatures where high humidity is likely to occur within electrical enclosures is also to be taken into account. The ambient temperatures and anticipated humidity levels are to be declared in the design statement required by 11.1.9.

11.1.5 Where chilled water systems are used for electrical equipment cooling, the arrangements are to comply with Chapter 5 as applicable.

11.1.6 Where fresh water systems are used for electrical equipment cooling, the arrangements are to comply with Pt 11, Ch 1 as applicable.

11.1.7 Heat exchangers used in cooling systems for electrical equipment are to comply with Ch 1,18 as applicable.

11.1.8 Where sea-water systems are used for electrical equipment cooling, the guidance in Ch 1,17 is to be complied with where applicable.

11.1.9 A design statement for cooling systems for electrical equipment used in Mobility and Ship Type category engineering systems is to be submitted for information purposes.

11.1.10 An FMEA is to be carried out for the cooling arrangements for electrical equipment used in Mobility and Ship Type category systems. The analysis is to be in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 2,17 and is to address the effects of failure of cooling supplies related to the ability of equipment and systems to operate with short term loss of cooling and to operate with any reduced standby cooling capability.

11.1.11 Reference is also to be made to the following Rules as applicable:

- (a) Location of pipes, joints and fittings – Ch 2,2.8.2.
- (b) Cooling of electrical rotating machine enclosures – Pt 10, Ch 1,9.6.1.
- (c) Cooling of transformers – Pt 10, Ch 1,10.1.10 and 10.1.11
- (d) Cooling of semiconductor equipment – Pt 10, Ch 1,10.2.4 to 10.2.7.

### 11.2 Standby supply

11.2.1 Where the continuous operation of electrical equipment used in Mobility or Ship Type engineering systems is susceptible to interruptions in cooling arrangements (water or air), standby cooling arrangements are to be provided. In general, the standby cooling arrangements are to be automatically and immediately brought into effect on failure of the normal cooling supply. Such standby cooling arrangements may need to be supplied from an emergency source of power if the cooling is essential to the survivability of an item of equipment.

11.2.2 Where cooling arrangements are by cooling water system(s), provision is to be made for a separate supply of cooling water from a suitable independent pump of adequate capacity. The following arrangements are acceptable depending on the purpose for which the cooling water is intended:

- (a) Where only one electrically powered Mobility system is fitted, the standby cooling arrangements are to be connected ready for immediate use.
- (b) Where more than one electrically powered Mobility system is fitted, each with its own cooling pump, a complete spare pump of each type may be accepted. The complete spare pump is to be stored onboard such that can be readily installed if required.
- (c) Where a sea inlet scoop arrangement is fitted, and there is only one independent cooling pump, a further pump, or a connection to the largest available pump suitable for cooling duties, is to be fitted to provide the second means of cooling when the ship is manoeuvring. The pump is to be connected ready for immediate use.



- (d) Where fresh water cooling is employed for electrically powered Mobility systems, a standby fresh water pump need not be fitted if there are suitable emergency connections from a salt water system.
- (e) Where each auxiliary item of electrically powered mobility equipment is fitted with a cooling water pump, standby means of cooling need not be provided.

Where, however, a group of auxiliaries is supplied with cooling water from a common system, a standby cooling water pump is to be provided for this system. This pump is to be connected ready for immediate use and may be a suitable general service pump.

### **11.3 Selection of standby pumps**

**11.3.1** When selecting a pump for standby purposes, consideration is to be given to the maximum pressure which it can develop if the overboard discharge valve is partly or fully closed and, when necessary, end covers, water boxes, etc., are to be protected by an approved device against inadvertent over-pressure.

### **11.4 Relief valves on main cooling water pumps**

**11.4.1** Where cooling water pumps can develop a pressure head greater than the design pressure of the system, they are to be provided with relief valves on the pump discharge to effectively limit the pump discharge pressure to the design pressure of the system. For location of relief valves, see Ch 2,7.6.

### **11.5 Sea inlets**

**11.5.1** Not less than two sea inlets are to be provided for the pumps supplying a sea-water cooling system, one for the main pump and one for the standby pump. Alternatively, the sea inlets may be connected to a suction line available to main and standby pumps.

**11.5.2** Where standby pumps are not connected ready for immediate use (see 11.2.2(b)), the main pump is to be connected to both sea inlets.

**11.5.3** Cooling water pump sea inlets are to be low inlets and one of them may be the ballast pump or general service pump sea inlet.

**11.5.4** Auxiliary cooling water sea inlets are to be located one on each side of the ship.

**11.5.5** Where sea inlets are connected to a common suction line serving main and standby cooling water pump units, the arrangements are to be such that a failure in the common suction line will not cause loss of sea-water supply to both pumps at the same time.

### **11.6 Strainers**

**11.6.1** Where sea-water is used for the direct cooling of electrically powered Mobility and Ship Type systems, the cooling water suction pipes are to be provided with strainers that will prevent debris being introduced into the cooling systems. The strainer arrangements are to be such that a strainer can be cleaned without interruption to the cooling water supply whilst the electrically powered equipment is in operation at its rated capacity.

**11.6.2** In general, the aperture openings in primary strainers should not exceed 10 mm diameter and for secondary strainers not less than 5 mm diameter. The open area through any strainer is to be not less than twice the area of the inlet valve to the strainer. Where it is proposed to use secondary strainers with apertures less than 5 mm diameter, the implications of using such are to be assessed by the manufacturer and included in the operating and maintenance manual.

### **11.7 Cooling systems**

**11.7.1** Means are to be provided for the drainage and where necessary the storage of coolants, to enable maintenance and repair of the coolers and equipment.

**11.7.2** All cooling systems are to be provided with means of venting air at high points and sufficient drain fittings to enable the system to be completely drained for maintenance.

### **11.8 Alarms**

**11.8.1** Cooling water systems for electrical equipment in Mobility and Ship Type engineering systems are to be provided with high temperature and low flow alarms.



# Aircraft/Helicopter/Vehicle Fuel Piping and Arrangements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 4

Sections 1 & 2

### Section

#### 1 General requirements

#### 2 Refuelling facilities

#### 3 Pump rooms

### ■ Section 1 General requirements

#### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter covers the requirements for piping systems and arrangements in naval ships for bunkering, storing and distribution of fuel for aircraft/helicopters and diesel engined vehicles that are part of the ship's operational equipment. The requirements are not applicable to the storage of petrol.

1.1.2 In addition to the requirements detailed in this Chapter, the requirements of Chapter 1 and Chapter 2, Sections 1, 2 and 10 are to be complied with where applicable.

1.1.3 The requirements of Ch 2,3 are also to be complied with, so far as they are applicable for the drainage of tanks, oily bilges and cofferdams, etc.

1.1.4 The requirements address refuelling systems where the flash point of the fuel is:

- (a) not less than 60°C (closed-cup test);
- (b) less than 60°C (closed-cup test).

1.1.5 The requirements of the Naval Authority are also be taken into consideration. NATO interoperability, if any, are to be specified by the Owner/Operator.

1.1.6 Electrical arrangements are to comply with Pt 10, Ch 1 as applicable. Attention is drawn to Section 13 where it is intended to carry fuel with a flash point not exceeding 60°C.

#### 1.2 Plans and particulars

1.2.1 The following plans and particulars are to be submitted for approval:

- Description of fuel with statement of minimum flash point (closed-cup test).
- Arrangement of fuel storage and piping.
- Storage tanks not forming part of the ship's structure.
- Arrangements for drainage, ventilation and sounding of spaces adjacent to storage tanks where the flash point is less than 60° C.
- Details of pumping units.
- Arrangements for testing and increasing the flash point of low flash fuel from aircraft/helicopters for transfer into the ship's storage system.
- Arrangements for gas analysing arrangements required by 3.1.5.

- Arrangements for stripping water from storage tanks.
- Arrangements for emergency cross connections between aircraft/helicopter and ship's fuel systems.

1.2.2 **Design statement.** A design statement is to be submitted for information, see Pt 1, Ch 2,3.2.2(c).

1.2.3 **Operating manuals.** Operating manuals are to be provided on board and submitted for information where requested by LR. The manuals are to include the following information:

- (a) Particulars and description of systems and arrangements for bunkering, fuelling and defuelling aircraft/helicopters and vehicles.
- (b) Operating instructions for the systems.

### ■ Section 2 Refuelling facilities

#### 2.1 Fuel storage

2.1.1 When it is intended to store fuel with a flash point less than 60°C, the requirements of 2.1.2 to 2.1.12 are to be complied with.

2.1.2 Storage tanks are to be located in a designated area as remote as practicable from machinery and accommodation stations and be suitably isolated from areas where there are sources of ignition.

2.1.3 The storage and handling area is to be permanently marked. Instructions for filling fuel are to be posted in the vicinity of the filling area.

2.1.4 Storage tanks are to be protected from aircraft/helicopter crashes, mechanical damage, solar radiation and high temperatures as a result of a fire occurring in an adjacent area. Where applicable, storage tanks are also to be protected from radar and HF radio effects.

2.1.5 Storage tanks are to be of an approved construction and attention is to be given to inspection procedures, mounting and securing arrangements and electrical bonding of tanks and fuel transfer system. The internal surfaces of steel tanks are to be suitably coated with impervious paint to prevent corrosion. The coating is to comply with 2.6.1. Independent oil fuel tanks are to comply with the requirements of 2.2. Transportable tanks shall be specially designed for their intended use and equipped with suitable fittings, lifting and fixing arrangements and earthing, and should comply with the relevant Codes for the transportation of dangerous goods in ships.

2.1.6 Tank ventilation pipes are to be fitted with an approved type of vent head with pressure-vacuum valve and flame arrester. The vent outlet is to be located in a safe position away from accommodation spaces, ventilation intakes and equipment that may constitute an ignition hazard.

# Aircraft/Helicopter/Vehicle Fuel Piping and Arrangements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 4

Section 2

**2.1.7** Fuel storage and handling areas are to be provided with collection trays of suitable capacity for containing leakage from tanks, pump units and other equipment that requires opening up for maintenance, and for draining any such leakage to a tank or container located in a safe area. For tanks forming an integral part of the ship's structure, cofferdams are to be provided as necessary to contain leakage and prevent contamination of the fuel.

**2.1.8** Tanks are to be provided with an intrinsically safe level indicator that is fitted through the top of the tank.

**2.1.9** Cofferdams are to be provided between tanks and non-dangerous spaces, such as machinery spaces (for guidance of definitions of dangerous spaces refer to Pt 10, Ch 1).

**2.1.10** The cofferdam is to be provided with permanently fitted gas detectors, and a permanent ventilation system.

**2.1.11** Drainage of the cofferdam space is to be entirely separate from the machinery space drainage arrangements.

**2.1.12** The air pipe for the cofferdam space is to be led to the open in a safe space and fitted with an approved air pipe head having a wire gauze diaphragm of incorrodible material.

**2.1.13** Where it is intended to store fuel having a flash point not less than 60°C, the arrangements are to be in accordance with 2.1.3, 2.1.4, 2.1.5, 2.1.7 and with the applicable requirements of Chapters 2 and 3.

**2.1.14** In addition to the particular requirements relating to the storage of fuel having flash points greater or less than 60°C as identified in 2.1.1 and 2.1.13, the requirements of 2.1.15 to 2.1.19 are also to be complied with for all fuels.

**2.1.15** Storage tanks are to be provided with stripping arrangements to facilitate the removal of water.

**2.1.16** A separate tank is to be provided to collect stripping and system drains and is to be arranged such that it can be drained to a fuel recovery tank.

**2.1.17** Means are to be provided to eliminate the possibility of overflow from storage tanks into spaces where there are sources of ignition and to safeguard against overflow from the tanks through the air pipes. High level alarm arrangements are to be provided to indicate when fuel storage tanks have been filled in excess of maximum operating levels. In addition, low level alarm arrangements are to be provided for storage tanks capable of supplying fuel to refuelling systems.

**2.1.18** The use of water compensated fuel tanks for fuel supply to aircraft and helicopters is not permitted. Wherever practicable they are to be avoided for fuel supply to diesel engined vehicles. Attention is drawn to regulations that may be specified by the Naval Authority in connection with the *International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution of the Sea by Oil, 1973/78*. Where ship design considerations require the use of such tanks, the requirements of Ch 3,4.18 are applicable.

**2.1.19** See Pt 10, Ch 1,1.12 for requirements for control of static electricity.

### 2.2 Independent oil fuel tanks

**2.2.1** Where separate oil fuel tanks are permitted, their construction is to be in accordance with the requirements of 2.2.2 to 2.2.6, see also SOLAS 1974 as amended Reg.II-2/B4.2.2.3.2.

**2.2.2** In general, the minimum thickness of the plating of independent oil fuel tanks, where they do not form part of the structure of the ship, is to be 5 mm, but in the case of very small tanks, less than 500 litres, the minimum thickness may be 3 mm.

**2.2.3** For rectangular steel tanks of welded construction, the plate thicknesses are to be not less than those indicated in Table 4.3.1. The stiffeners are to be of approved dimensions.

**2.2.4** The dimension given in Table 4.2.1 for the breadth of the panel is the maximum distance allowable between continuous lines of support, which may be stiffeners, wash-plates or the boundary of the tank.

**Table 4.2.1 Plate thickness of independent oil fuel tanks**

| Thickness of plate, in mm | Head of bottom of tank to top of overflow pipe, in metres |      |      |     |     |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|------|------|-----|-----|
|                           | 2,5                                                       | 3,0  | 3,7  | 4,3 | 4,9 |
|                           | Breadth of panel, in mm                                   |      |      |     |     |
| 5                         | 585                                                       | 525  |      |     |     |
| 6                         | 725                                                       | 645  | 590  |     |     |
| 7                         | 860                                                       | 770  | 700  | 650 |     |
| 8                         | 1000                                                      | 900  | 820  | 750 | 700 |
| 10                        | 1280                                                      | 1140 | 1040 | 960 | 900 |

**2.2.5** Where necessary, stiffeners are to be provided, and if the length of the stiffener exceeds twice the breadth of the panel, transverse stiffeners are also to be fitted, or, alternatively, tie bars are to be provided between stiffeners on opposite sides of the tank.

**2.2.6** On completion, the tanks are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected, but not less than 2,5 m above the crown of the tank.

**2.2.7** Where independent tanks are for the storage of fuel with a flash point below 60°C, provisions are to be made for the measurement of oil fuel temperature at the pump suction pipe.

# Aircraft/Helicopter/Vehicle Fuel Piping and Arrangements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 4

Section 2

### 2.3 Fuel pumping and filling

2.3.1 The pumping and filling arrangements are to comply with the requirements of 2.3.2 to 2.3.14.

2.3.2 Tank outlet valves and filling valves located below the top of the tank are to be mounted directly onto the tank and are to be capable of being closed from a remote location outside the compartment in the event of a fire in the compartment. Ball valves are to be of the stainless steel, anti-static, fire tested type.

2.3.3 The pumping unit is to be arranged to be connected to only one tank at a time. Pipes between the tanks and the pumping unit are to be of stainless steel or equivalent material, or flexible hoses of an approved type, fire-tested to an acceptable National Standard. Such pipes or hoses are to be protected from mechanical damage and be as short as possible. Where a flexible hose is used to connect the pumping unit to a tank, the hose connection is to be of the quick-disconnect, self-closing type.

2.3.4 Oil fuel bunkering system(s) for ship's propulsion and auxiliary engines are to be separate from the refuelling systems for aircraft. Provision is to be made for an emergency cross connection to enable:

- (a) In an emergency, the supply of propulsion/auxiliary machinery oil fuel to aircraft/helicopters/vehicle refuelling systems.
- (b) For operational reasons, the transfer and addition of aircraft fuel to the oil fuel storage system for the ship's propulsion/auxiliary engines.

The emergency cross connections are to incorporate an isolating valve on each system with a portable connection between them and be clearly marked and arranged to prevent inadvertent use.

2.3.5 Pumping units are to be capable of being controlled from the fuel station and from a position remote from the fuel station.

2.3.6 Pumping units shall incorporate a device to prevent over-pressurisation of the filling hose.

2.3.7 Arrangements for circulation of fuel through filter units, fuel metering and fuel sampling are to be provided. To allow circulation of fuel, each tank is to be provided with suitable high and low suction arrangements.

2.3.8 Filling arrangements for tanks are to be through closed piping systems with outlet ends configured to reduce turbulence and foaming of the fuel.

2.3.9 The locker housing equipment associated with fuel filling is to be well ventilated and drained.

2.3.10 Fuel piping systems are to be designed to limit the maximum flow rate to 7,0 m/s to reduce the possibility of the build up of static electricity.

2.3.11 Suitable filtration arrangements are to be provided to reduce the level of water and particulate contamination of the fuel to within the limits specified by the Owner/Operator.

2.3.12 Fuelling and defuelling stations are to be located away from, or sheltered from, radar and HF radio hazards. See also Pt 1, Ch 2,4.18.

2.3.13 Pipe systems designed for portable hose connections are to be provided with an isolating valve and blanking arrangement at each connection. Non-return valves are to be provided at connections where necessary to prevent back flow of fluids into systems and tanks where this could affect the integrity of the system or spaces.

2.3.14 All piping systems intended for fuel having a flash point less than 60°C are to be located clear of accommodation spaces, escape routes, embarkation stations and ventilation openings and are not to pass through category A machinery spaces.

2.3.15 Means are to be provided for keeping deck spills away from accommodation and service areas. This may be accomplished by means of a 300 mm coaming extending from side to side. Special consideration will be given to the arrangements associated with stern loading.

2.3.16 Drip trays for collecting replenishment oil residues in pipelines and hoses are to be provided beneath pipe and hose connections in the manifold area.

### 2.4 Refuelling aircraft/helicopters

2.4.1 Service tanks for storing ready use fuel are to be provided with test facilities to determine fuel quality and stripping arrangements for removal of any water found. The tanks are to be provided with sloping bottoms to assist in stripping water.

2.4.2 Arrangements are to be provided for fuel to be passed through suitable filtration/water absorption equipment immediately prior to embarking fuel onto an aircraft. This equipment should be as near as practicable to the aircraft.

2.4.3 Refuelling and defuelling hoses are to be of an approved type. Hoses for refuelling are to include an automatic shut-off facility at the aircraft or vehicle end. A hose end pressure controller is also to be provided for fuelling hoses to prevent the possibility of the aircraft/helicopter fuel tanks being subject to excessive pressure.

2.4.4 Provision is to be made to earth the aircraft of static electricity before commencing and during any refuelling/defuelling procedure.

2.4.5 To allow through flushing, the pipe system to refuelling stations is to include shut off valves and a return pipe system to the storage or recovery tanks.

# Aircraft/Helicopter/Vehicle Fuel Piping and Arrangements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 4

Sections 2 & 3

### 2.5 Defuelling

2.5.1 Arrangements are to be made to ensure that only fuel having a flash point equal to or greater than the flash point for which the ship has been designed and approved for is discharged into the ship's fuel storage system. Arrangements and equipment are to be provided to ensure that if defuelling of aircraft/helicopters carrying fuel having a flash point less than 60°C is required, the fuel flash point is increased to a figure above 60°C before discharge into the ship's storage system. Fuel from aircraft/helicopters may also be contaminated and to provide segregation before discharge to the ship's storage system, a separate recovery tank for handling this fuel is to be provided. The capacity of the recovery tank is to be sufficient to safely handle the fuel from an aircraft/helicopter and is to be identified in the design statement required by 1.2.2.

2.5.2 Hoses used for defuelling are to comply with 2.4.3.

### 2.6 Fuel contamination

2.6.1 Materials and/or their surface treatment used for the storage and distribution of fuel are to be selected such that they do not introduce contamination or modify the properties of the fuel. The use of copper or zinc compounds in fuel piping systems where they may come into contact with the fuel is not permitted. Copper-nickel materials are permissible but are to be limited to positions after the filtration/water absorption equipment required by 2.4.2.

2.6.2 The location and arrangement of air pipes for fuel tanks are to be such that in the event of a broken vent pipe, this does not directly lead to ingress of sea-water or rain water.

## Section 3 Pump rooms

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 Where it is intended to install fuel transfer pumps for handling fuel with a flash point less than 60°C in a separate compartment, the requirements of 3.1.2 to 3.1.5, 3.2 and 3.3 are to be complied with.

3.1.2 The pump rooms are to be totally enclosed and are to have no direct communication, through e.g., bilge piping systems and ventilation systems, with machinery spaces.

3.1.3 Pump rooms are to be situated adjacent to the fuel storage tanks and are to be provided with ready means of access from the open deck.

3.1.4 Alarms and safety arrangements are to be provided as indicated in 3.1.5 and Table 4.3.1. These requirements are applicable to pump rooms where pumps for fuels, such as fuel pumps and stripping pumps are provided and not for pump rooms intended solely for ballast transfer.

**Table 4.3.1 Alarms**

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Alarm              | Note               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Bulkhead gland temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | High<br>See Note 1 | Any machinery item |
| Pump bearing and casing temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | High<br>See Note 1 | Any machinery item |
| Bilge level                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | High               | —                  |
| Hydrocarbon concentration                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | High<br>See Note 2 | >10% LEL           |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. The alarm signal is to trigger continuous visual and audible alarms in the pump room or the pump control station.<br>2. This alarm signal is to trigger a continuous audible and visual alarm in the pump room, pump control station and machinery control room. |                    |                    |

3.1.5 A system for continuously monitoring the concentrations of hydrocarbon gases within the pump room is to be fitted. Monitoring points are to be located in positions where potentially dangerous concentrations may be readily detected. Gas analysing units with non-safe-type measuring equipment may be located outside dangerous areas (e.g., in oil fuel pumping control room, navigation bridge or engine room when mounted on the adjacent bulkhead) provided that:

- sampling lines do not pass through gas safe spaces, except where permitted by (e);
- the gas sampling pipes are fitted with flame arresters. Sample gas is to be led to the atmosphere with outlets arranged in a safe location, in the open atmosphere;
- bulkhead penetrations of sample pipes between safe and dangerous areas are of an approved type. A manual isolating valve is to be fitted in each of the sampling lines at the bulkhead in the safe area;
- the gas detection equipment including sampling piping, sampling pumps, solenoid valves and analysing units, are located in a fully enclosed steel cabinet, with a gasketed door, monitored by its own sampling point. At gas concentrations above 30 per cent LEL inside the steel cabinet, the entire gas-analysing unit is to be automatically shut down; and
- where the cabinet cannot be arranged on the bulkhead, sample pipes are to be of steel or other equivalent material and without detachable connections, except for the connection points for isolating valves at the bulkhead and analysing units. The sample pipes are to be led by their shortest route.

Sequential sampling is acceptable as long as it is dedicated for the pump room only, including exhaust ducts, and the detection equipment is capable of monitoring from each sampling head location at intervals not exceeding 30 minutes.

3.1.6 Where the flash point of the fuel is not less than 60°C, the arrangements are to comply with the requirements applicable to machinery spaces, see Pt 1, Ch 2.

# Aircraft/Helicopter/Vehicle Fuel Piping and Arrangements

## Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 4

Section 3

### 3.2 Pump room ventilation

3.2.1 Fuel pump rooms and other closed spaces which contain fuel handling equipment, and to which regular access is required during cargo handling operations, are to be provided with permanent ventilation systems of the mechanical extraction type.

3.2.2 The ventilation system is to be capable of being operated from outside the compartment being ventilated and a notice is to be fixed near the entrance stating that no person is to enter the space until the ventilation system has been in operation for at least 15 minutes.

3.2.3 The ventilation systems are to be capable of 20 air changes per hour, based on the gross volume of the pump room or space.

3.2.4 The ventilation ducting is to be arranged to permit extraction from the vicinity of the pump room bilges, immediately above the transverse floor plates or bottom longitudinals. An emergency intake is also to be arranged in the ducting at a height of 2 m above the pump room lower platform and is to be provided with a damper capable of being opened or closed from the weather deck and lower platform level. An arrangement involving a specific ratio of areas of upper emergency and lower main ventilation openings, which can be shown to result in at least the required number of air changes through the lower inlets, can be accepted without the use of dampers. When the lower inlets are sealed off, owing to flooding of the bilges, then at least 75 per cent of the required number of air changes is to be obtainable through the upper inlets. Means are to be provided to ensure the free flow of gases through the lower platform to the duct intakes.

3.2.5 Protection screens of not more than 13 mm square mesh are to be fitted in outside openings of ventilation ducts, and ventilation intakes are to be so arranged as to minimise the possibility of re-cycling hazardous vapours from any ventilation discharge opening. Vent exits are to be arranged to discharge upwards.

3.2.6 The vent exits from pump rooms are to discharge at least 3 m above deck, and from the nearest air intakes or openings to accommodation and enclosed working spaces, and from possible sources of ignition.

3.2.7 The ventilation is to be interlocked to the lighting system (except emergency lighting) such that the pump room lighting may only come on when the ventilation is in operation. Failure of the ventilation system is not to cause the lighting to go out and failure of the lighting system is not to cause loss of the ventilation system.

### 3.3 Non-sparking fans for hazardous areas

3.3.1 The air gap between impeller and housing of the fan is to be not less than 0,1 of the impeller shaft bearing diameter or 2 mm whichever is the larger, subject also to compliance with 3.3.2(e). Generally, however, the air gap need be no more than 13 mm.

3.3.2 The following combinations of materials are permissible for the impeller and the housing in way of the impeller:

- (a) Impellers and/or housings of non-metallic material, due regard being paid to the elimination of static electricity.
- (b) Impellers and housings of non-ferrous metals.
- (c) Impellers and housings of austenitic stainless steel.
- (d) Impellers of aluminium alloys or magnesium alloys and a ferrous housing provided that a ring of suitable thickness of non-ferrous material is fitted in way of the impeller.
- (e) Any combination of ferrous impellers and housings with not less than 13 mm tip clearance.
- (f) Any combination of materials for the impeller and housing which are demonstrated as being spark proof by appropriate rubbing tests.

3.3.3 The following combinations of materials for impellers and housing are not considered spark proof and are not permitted:

- (a) Impellers of an aluminium alloy or magnesium alloy and a ferrous housing, irrespective of tip clearance.
- (b) Impellers of a ferrous material and housings made of an aluminium alloy, irrespective of tip clearance.
- (c) Any combination of ferrous impeller and housing with less than 13 mm tip clearance, other than permitted by 3.3.2(c).

3.3.4 Electrostatic charges both in the rotating body and the casing are to be prevented by the use of antistatic materials (i.e., materials having an electrical resistance between  $5 \times 10^4$  ohms and  $10^8$  ohms), or special means are to be provided to avoid dangerous electrical charges on the surface of the material.

3.3.5 Type tests on the complete fan are to be carried out to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

3.3.6 Protection screens of not more than 13 mm square mesh are to be fitted in the inlet and outlet of ventilation ducts to prevent the entry of objects into the fan housing.

3.3.7 The installation of the ventilation units on board is to be such as to ensure the safe bonding to the hull of the units themselves.





# Ship Type Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 5

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Construction and installation**
- 3 **System arrangements**
- 4 **Control arrangements**
- 5 **Failure Mode and Effects Analysis**
- 6 **Testing and trials**
- 7 **Chilled water systems**
- 8 **High pressure compressed air systems**
- 9 **Low pressure compressed air systems**
- 10 **High pressure sea-water systems**
- 11 **Hydraulic power actuating systems**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 This Chapter states the requirements for piping systems installed in naval ships for the operation and functioning of equipment installed for purposes relating to the Ship Type.

1.1.2 The requirements in this Chapter cover piping and control systems necessary for ships that have Ship Type piping systems and equipment configured such that, in the event of a single failure or damage in any part of a piping system, the ship will continue to retain availability of essential services relating to the Ship Type.

1.1.3 The Naval Authority may impose requirements additional to those in this Chapter.

### 1.2 Scope

1.2.1 Ship Type piping systems included in this Chapter are:

- (a) Chilled water systems used for:  
Weapons and electrical equipment cooling.  
Air conditioning systems.
- (b) High pressure compressed air systems used for:  
Filling breathing air bottles used for diving and fire-fighting.  
Starting air for diesel engines and gas turbines.  
Machinery shaft brakes.  
Weapon handling and control.  
Supply to low pressure compressed air systems through reducing stations.

- (c) Low pressure compressed air systems used for:  
Control systems for machinery and weapons.  
Air tools.  
Valve actuation.  
General supplies to seals, filters, sewage plant, etc.
- (d) High pressure sea-water systems used for:  
Fire-fighting and boundary cooling.  
Pre-wetting.  
Bilge and dewatering eductors.  
Emergency cooling of machinery.  
Machinery space ventilation coolers in closedown operation.
- (e) Hydraulic power actuating systems used for:  
Remote controlled equipment (doors, valves).  
Platform equipment (lifts, hoists).  
Machinery systems (stabilisers, hydraulic motors).

1.2.2 Other systems defined as Ship Type category engineering systems, see Pt 1, Ch 1,3.1.3, as identified by the Naval Authority.

### 1.3 Plans and information

1.3.1 In addition to the information required by Ch 1,2.1.1, three copies of the plans and information stated in 1.3.2 to 1.3.7 are to be submitted to Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') as applicable.

1.3.2 **Design statement.** A design statement of each Ship Type piping system, see Pt 1, Ch 2,3.2.2(c).

1.3.3 **Systems.** Plans in diagrammatic form showing piping arrangements, control systems and safeguards and electrical systems for each Ship Type piping system covered by this Chapter. The capacities of pumps and compressors are to be included. For chilled water systems, heat load calculations or heat balance sheets and capacity tables with condensing temperatures covering the operating range of the refrigeration compressors are also to be included. The Tables are to be representative of the compressors operating at the design revolutions per minute with the nominated refrigerant.

1.3.4 **Compartments.** Plans showing the general arrangement of compartments, together with a description of the Ship Type system(s) installed and the electrical power supply systems. The plans are to indicate segregation and access arrangements for compartments and associated control rooms/stations.

1.3.5 **Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA).** For Ship Type piping systems with associated electrical power supplies and control systems, the FMEA report is to address the requirements in Section 5.

1.3.6 **Testing and trials procedures.** A schedule of testing and trials to demonstrate that systems are capable of operating as described in Section 3. Testing and trials procedures are to comply with 6.3.1. In addition, any testing programme that may be necessary to prove the conclusions of the FMEA, see 6.3.2.

**1.3.7 Operating Manuals.** Operating Manuals are to be provided on board and submitted for information where requested by LR. The Manuals are to include the following information:

- (a) Particulars and a description of each system.
- (b) Operating instructions for all systems.
- (c) Procedures for dealing with the situations identified in the FMEA report.

## 1.4 Use of alternative standards

**1.4.1** Where it is proposed to use arrangements different from those required by this Chapter and the arrangements are in accordance with an applicable National/International Standard, the use of such arrangements will be accepted by LR.

**1.4.2** Where alternative design codes/standards are used, they are stated together with any assumptions made.

## ■ Section 2 Construction and installation

### 2.1 Materials

**2.1.1** Pipes, valves and fittings are to be made of steel, ductile cast iron, copper, copper alloy, or other approved ductile material suitable for the intended purpose.

**2.1.2** Where applicable, the materials are to comply with the requirements of Ch 1,4.

**2.1.3** Materials sensitive to heat, such as aluminium or plastics, are in general not to be used for Ship Type piping systems. Such materials are not in any event to be used in systems containing flammable liquids or sea-water where leakage or failure could result in fire or in the flooding of water-tight compartments. See Chapter 1 for plastics pipes.

**2.1.4** The selection of materials in piping systems is to recognise the following details:

- (a) Fluids properties, pressures and temperatures.
- (b) Location and configuration.
- (c) Compatibility of materials.
- (d) Fluid flow rates and static conditions.
- (e) Minimising corrosion and erosion through life of system.
- (f) System survey and maintenance requirements.

See Ch 1,17 for guidance notes on metal pipes for water services.

### 2.2 Pipe wall thickness

**2.2.1** The minimum nominal wall thickness of steel, copper and copper alloy pipes is to be in accordance with Chapter 1. Where refrigerant tubes are in tube bundles, special consideration will be given to the minimum thickness requirements recognising the inherent strength of tube bundles and the benefits of increased heat transfer properties of thin wall tubes.

**2.2.2** Special consideration will be given to the wall thickness of pipes made of materials other than steel, copper and copper alloy.

### 2.3 Piping and equipment – Selection and installation

**2.3.1** Air receivers and gas pressurised hydraulic accumulators are to be in accordance with Pt 8, Ch 2 or a recognised Code and satisfy the Naval Authority's revalidation system for such items, where applicable. Materials used in the construction are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials*.

**2.3.2** Valves, flexible hose lengths, expansion pieces and pumps are to comply with the relevant requirements of Ch 1,12 to 15. Equipment used in Ship Type piping systems is to be suitable for its intended purpose, and accordingly, wherever practicable, be selected from the *Lists of LR Type Approved Products* published by LR.

**2.3.3** Pipes in piping systems are to be permanent pipes made with approved pipe connections to enable ready removal of valves, pumps, fittings and equipment. The pipes are to be efficiently secured in position to prevent chafing or lateral movement. The selection of pipe connections in refrigeration systems is to minimise the possibility of refrigerant leaks and the use of flared fittings in such systems is to be avoided.

**2.3.4** Suitable means for expansion are to be made, where necessary, in each range of pipes.

**2.3.5** Efficient protection is to be provided for all pipes situated where these are liable to mechanical damage.

**2.3.6** All moving parts are to be provided with guards to minimise danger to personnel.

**2.3.7** Piping systems that may contain low temperature refrigerant are to be thermally insulated to an extent that will minimise condensation of moisture. Chilled water pipes are to be provided with insulation for system efficiency.

### 2.4 Valves – Installation and control

**2.4.1** Valves are to be fitted in places where they are at all times readily accessible.

**2.4.2** All valves that are provided with remote control arrangements are to be arranged for local manual operation, independent of the remote operating mechanism. The local manual means of operation is to be readily accessible.

**2.4.3** Relief valves are to be adjusted and bursting discs so selected that they relieve at a pressure not greater than the design pressure of the system. When satisfactorily adjusted, relief valves are to be protected against tampering or interference by wire with a lead seal or similar arrangement.

2.4.4 The related discharge capacity of pressure relief valves is to be determined in accordance with a recognised Standard or Code.

## ■ Section 3 System arrangements

### 3.1 Piping systems

3.1.1 Piping systems are to be arranged so that supply of essential services relating to the Ship Type will continue to be available in the event of a single failure or damage of a system or item of equipment.

3.1.2 The design of piping systems is to minimise vulnerability and provide capability for maximising recovery of supply to users. Factors to be considered include: redundancy, separation, protection, accessibility for repair, means of bridging breaches, number of pumps, alternate power supplies and use of portable pumps where appropriate.

3.1.3 The design of piping systems is to recognise operational and manning philosophy for the vessel and is to be declared in the design statement required by 1.3.2.

3.1.4 The arrangement of equipment and systems is to ensure that failure or damage to a system will not cause immediate complete loss of the system. Systems are to be capable of accommodating progressive actions (manual and/or automatic) that will provide availability of supply to essential services for agreed periods of time in the event of action damage.

3.1.5 In the event of multiple failure or damage to a piping system, arrangements are to be provided to enable the system to be reconfigured to supply essential services.

3.1.6 Accessible means of isolation are to be provided to isolate damaged areas to ensure that maximum system capability remains available after damage to the piping system.

3.1.7 Piping systems are in general to be capable of providing support to, or substituting for, a similar but damaged system.

3.1.8 Where a piping system has failed or been damaged, any resulting hazards are to be minimised.

3.1.9 All equipment fitted in piping systems is to be readily accessible to facilitate maintenance and survey. For this purpose, valves or cocks are to be interposed between items of equipment and the inlet and outlet pipes in order that any item of equipment may be shut off for opening up and overhauling.

3.1.10 Filter elements fitted in piping systems are to be capable of being cleaned and or changed without interruption of fluid flow. Filter elements fitted in refrigerant circuits are also to be arranged to minimise refrigerant leakage to atmosphere when being cleaned and/or changed. The arrangements for cleaning and changing filter elements are to include means of isolation and recovery of ozone depleting substances before opening up.

3.1.11 Pressure relief devices are to be mounted in such a way that it is not possible to isolate them from the part of the system which they are protecting except that, where duplicated, a changeover valve may be fitted that will allow either device to be isolated for maintenance purposes without it being possible to shut off the other device at the same time. Where arrangements are such that a relief valve can be removed from a common discharge line shared with another relief valve, provision is to be made to blank off the open connection to the discharge line, without compromising the safety of the system.

3.1.12 Relief discharge is to be led to a safe place. Discharge piping is to be designed to preclude ingress of water, dirt or debris that may cause the equipment to malfunction. Any common discharge system for relief valves is to be arranged to ensure that with all the relief valves open, the back pressure of the discharge system will not exceed 10 per cent of the valve set pressure.

3.1.13 Sea-water valves and fittings are to comply with Ch 2,2.5.

3.1.14 Piping system arrangements and associated equipment are to be capable of operating satisfactorily under the conditions shown in Table 2.4.2 in Pt 1, Ch 2.

### 3.2 Electrical power supplies

3.2.1 The electrical engineering arrangements are to comply with Pt 10, Ch 1.

3.2.2 The power supplies to electrical equipment in Ship Type systems are to be led from at least two independent sources that are capable of being connected by bus section switches.

3.2.3 In the event of the loss of one source of electrical supply, there is to be continuity of sufficient electrical power to supply the electrical equipment in Ship Type systems.

## ■ Section 4 Control arrangements

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Equipment used in Ship Type piping systems is to be provided with local and remote control and monitoring arrangements.

# Ship Type Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 5

Sections 4 & 5

4.1.2 The control, alarm and monitoring systems are to comply with Pt 9, Ch 1.

4.1.3 Where isolation of essential services is to be carried out whether automatically or manually, indication of the status of isolation is to be provided at each control station.

4.1.4 Indication of the operational status of running and standby equipment is to be provided for all Ship Type piping systems at each control station.

4.1.5 Alarms are to be provided for compartments containing equipment for operation of Ship Type piping systems in the event of:

- (a) A fire.
- (b) A high bilge alarm level in any compartment that could be flooded by ingress of sea water and situated below the damage control deck. Irrespective of the assignment of the **UMS** notation, the bilge level detection system and arrangements for automatically pumping out bilge wells, if applicable, are to comply with Pt 9, Ch 1,3.6.

4.1.6 Refrigeration compressors for chilled water systems are to be provided with the following instrumentation and automatic shut-downs:

- (a) Indication of suction pressure (saturated temperature), including intermediate stage when applicable.
- (b) Indication of discharge pressure (saturated temperature), including intermediate stage when applicable.
- (c) Indication of lubricating oil pressure.
- (d) Indication of cumulative running hours.
- (e) Automatic shut-down in the event of low lubricating oil pressure.
- (f) Automatic shut-down in the event of high discharge pressure which is to operate at a pressure in excess of normal operating pressure but not greater than 0,9 of the maximum working pressure.
- (g) Automatic shut-down in the event of a low suction pressure.

4.1.7 Refrigerant compressors greater than 25 kW for chilled water systems are to be provided with the following instrumentation in addition to that required by 4.1.6:

- (a) Indication of lubricating oil temperature.
- (b) Indication of cooling water outlet temperature.
- (c) Indication of suction and discharge temperatures.

4.1.8 Air compressors are to be provided with the following instrumentation and automatic shut-downs:

- (a) Indication of discharge pressure and temperature.
- (b) Indication of lubricating oil pressure and temperature.
- (c) Indication of cooling water outlet temperature where applicable.
- (d) Indication of cumulative running hours.
- (e) Automatic shut-down in the event of low lubricating oil pressure.
- (f) Automatic shut-down in the event of high discharge pressure.

4.1.9 Alarms are to be initiated in the event of the following fault conditions with the refrigerant compressors for cooling water systems and air compressors:

- (a) High discharge pressure.
- (b) Low suction pressure (cooling compressors only).
- (c) Low oil pressure.
- (d) High discharge temperature.
- (e) High oil temperature.
- (f) Motor shut-down.

4.1.10 Chilled water systems are to be provided with the following alarms:

- (a) Failure of condenser cooling water pumps.
- (b) High condenser cooling water outlet temperature.
- (c) Failure of air cooler fans associated with the operation of chilled water plant.
- (d) High and low chilled water delivery temperatures.

4.1.11 All pumps are to be provided with an indication of discharge pressure, a low discharge pressure alarm and a motor shut-down alarm.

## ■ Section 5 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 An FMEA is to be carried out in accordance with 5.1.2 to 5.1.7, for piping systems, electrical power supplies and control systems to demonstrate that a single failure or damage in these systems will not cause loss of all system capability.

5.1.2 The FMEA is to be carried out using the format presented in Table 5.5.1 or an equivalent format that addresses the same safety issues. Analysis in accordance with IEC 812, *Analysis for System Reliability – Procedures for Failure Mode and Effects Analysis*, would be acceptable.

5.1.3 The FMEA is to be organised in terms of items of equipment and function. The effects of item failures or damage at stated level and at higher levels are to be analysed to determine the effects on the system as a whole. Actions for mitigation are to be identified.

5.1.4 The FMEA is to:

- (a) Identify the equipment or sub-system, mode of operation and the equipment.
- (b) Identify potential failure modes and damage situations and their causes.
- (c) Evaluate the effects on the system of each failure mode and damage situation.
- (d) Identify measures for reducing the risks associated with each failure mode and damage situation.
- (e) Identify trials and testing necessary to prove conclusions.

# Ship Type Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 5

Sections 5 &amp; 6

**Table 5.5.1 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis**

| System                                                                                                                                |                       |          |                   | Element                |               |                   |                             |           |          |                   |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------|-------------------|------------------------|---------------|-------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|----------|-------------------|---------|
| Item No.                                                                                                                              | Component description | Function | Mode of Operation | Failure Mode or Damage | Failure Cause | Failure Detection | Effect of Failure or Damage |           | Severity | Corrective Action | Remarks |
|                                                                                                                                       |                       |          |                   |                        |               |                   | On Item                     | On System |          |                   |         |
|                                                                                                                                       |                       |          |                   |                        |               |                   |                             |           |          |                   |         |
|                                                                                                                                       |                       |          |                   |                        |               |                   |                             |           |          |                   |         |
|                                                                                                                                       |                       |          |                   |                        |               |                   |                             |           |          |                   |         |
|                                                                                                                                       |                       |          |                   |                        |               |                   |                             |           |          |                   |         |
|                                                                                                                                       |                       |          |                   |                        |               |                   |                             |           |          |                   |         |
| NOTE<br>The severity category is to be in accordance with the following:<br>(a) Catastrophic; (b) Hazardous; (c) Major; or (d) Minor. |                       |          |                   |                        |               |                   |                             |           |          |                   |         |

5.1.5 At sub-system level it is acceptable, for the purpose of this Chapter, to consider failure or damage of equipment items and their functions, e.g., failure of a pump to produce flow or pressure head. It is not required that the failure of components within that pump be analysed. In addition, failure need only be dealt with as a cause of failure of the pump.

5.1.6 Where FMEA is used for consideration of systems that depend on software based functions for control or co-ordination, the analysis is to investigate failure of the function rather than the software code.

5.1.7 The FMEA is to establish that the system retains a level of operational capability as defined in the design statement required by 1.3.2, following failure or damage of pipework, an item of equipment or the loss of a compartment.

6.1.4 Testing is to cover the following items:

- Verification of control, alarm, safety and where applicable, refrigerant detection systems.
- Tests simulating failure of selected components such as compressors, pumps and fans, to verify correct functioning of alarm and systems in service.
- Verification of accuracy, calibration and functioning of temperature control, monitoring and recording instrumentation for chilled water and associated refrigerant systems.

## 6.2 Type testing

6.2.1 Each type of pump and compressor unit is to be subjected to a type test that replicates the intended operating cycle/environment as far as practicable, e.g., still air conditions and high/low ambient air temperatures. The type test is to be for a duration of not less than 100 hours, the test arrangements are to be such that the units may run in idling conditions, and at maximum delivery capacity at maximum working pressure. During the test, idling periods are to be alternated with periods at maximum delivery capacity at maximum working pressure. The passage from one condition to another should occur at least as quickly as may in service on board. During the whole test, no abnormal heating, excessive vibration or other irregularities are permitted. After the test, the unit is to be opened out and inspected. Type tests may be waived for units that have been proven to be reliable in marine service or that have been previously type tested with satisfactory certification and testing evidence.

## 6.3 Trials

6.3.1 Trials are to be carried out to demonstrate the capability of systems to meet design statements. The trials are as far as practicable to be representative of the actual conditions to be encountered in service.

## Section 6 Testing and trials

### 6.1 Testing

6.1.1 The requirements of the Rules relating to testing of pressure vessels, piping and related fittings including hydraulic testing are applicable (see Pt 8, Ch 2,10 and Ch 1,16).

6.1.2 On completion, tanks and reservoirs for service and storage of system fluids are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected, but not less than 2,5 m above the crown of the tank.

6.1.3 After installation on board, piping systems together with associated fittings that are under internal pressure, are to be subjected to a running test at the intended maximum working pressure.

6.3.2 Where the FMEA report has identified the need to prove the conclusions, testing and trials are to be carried out as necessary to investigate the following:

- (a) The effect of a specific component failure or damage situation.
- (b) The effectiveness of automatic/manual isolation systems.
- (c) The effectiveness of reconfiguration arrangements.
- (d) The behaviour of any interlocks that may inhibit operation of other systems.

## ■ Section 7 Chilled water systems

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 The requirements in this Section are additional to those contained in Sections 2 to 6 of this Chapter.

7.1.2 Chilled water systems are to produce and distribute treated demineralised chilled water throughout the ship to provide cooling to heat exchangers and other direct cooled equipment that may include air conditioning and weapons systems.

7.1.3 The refrigeration plant and chilled water system is to be designed to be capable of continuously extracting at least 115 per cent of the maximum heat load duty when operating at the conditions stated in the design statement required by 1.3.2.

7.1.4 The demineralised water used in chilled water distribution systems is to be in accordance with the system designer's specification that typically would include the following limitations:

- Conductivity: <4,5 micromhs/cm<sup>3</sup>
- Dissolved solids: Zero
- Alkalinity: pH 7,1
- Suspended solids: <2,5 ppm with particle size <250 microns

The specification for demineralised water is to be agreed by the Owner/Operator.

7.1.5 Where chilled water is used to provide a controlled environment for equipment and machinery intended for essential services which require this controlled environment to function, an alternative means is to be provided to maintain the required environment in the event of a failure of the chilled water system. Failure of the chilled water system is to initiate an alarm. Duplication of the equipment requiring cooling can be provided instead of an alternative means of cooling, providing that the duplicated equipment is fed from an alternative, independent chilled water system.

### 7.2 Refrigeration plant

7.2.1 Two or more independent refrigeration plants are to be provided and designed to be capable of extracting the heat load duty required by 7.1.3 when operating at the conditions stated in the design statement with any one plant out of action.

7.2.2 The refrigeration plants are to be located in separate compartments and zones such that the loss of one compartment or zone, or failure in equipment will not render the other refrigeration plant(s) inoperative. In NS3 category ships, the requirement for pumps to be located in separate zones will not be insisted on where agreed by the Owner/Operator and included in the design statement.

7.2.3 The compartments containing the refrigeration plants are to be provided with refrigerant gas detectors with audible and visual alarms.

7.2.4 The design of refrigeration systems is to be such that it permits maintenance and repair without unavoidable loss of refrigerant to the atmosphere. To minimise release of ozone-depleting substances to the atmosphere, refrigerant recovery units are to be provided for evacuation of a system prior to maintenance.

7.2.5 Refrigeration systems are to be provided with relief devices, but it is important to avoid circumstances that would bring about an inadvertent discharge of refrigerant to the atmosphere. The system is to be so designed that pressure due to fire conditions will be safely relieved. Where discharge of refrigerant gas to atmosphere is unavoidable, arrangements are to be made to prevent discharge into ventilation systems.

7.2.6 A pressure relief valve and/or bursting disc is to be fitted between each positive displacement compressor and its gas delivery stop valve, the discharge being led to the suction side of the compressor. The flow capacity of the valve or disc is to exceed the full load compressor capacity on the particular refrigerant at the maximum potential suction pressure. For these internal relief valves, a servo-operated valve will be accepted. Where the motive power for the compressor does not exceed 10 kW, the pressure relief valve and/or bursting disc may be omitted.

7.2.7 Each pressure vessel which may contain liquid refrigerant and which is capable of being isolated by means of a stop or automatic control or check valve is to be protected at all times by one of two pressure relief valves or one of two bursting discs, or one bursting disc or a pressure relief valve controlled by a changeover device. Pressure vessels that are connected by pipework without valves, so that they cannot be isolated from each other, may be regarded as a single pressure vessel for this purpose, provided that the interconnecting pipework does not prevent effective venting of any pressure vessel.

7.2.8 Omission of one of the specified relief devices and changeover device, as required by 7.2.7, will be accepted where:

- (a) vessels are of less than 300 litres internal gross volume; or
- (b) vessels discharge into the low pressure side by means of a relief valve.

7.2.9 Sections of systems and components that could become full of liquid between closed valves are to be provided with pressure relief devices relieving to a suitable point in the refrigerant circuit.

# Ship Type Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 5

Sections 7 & 8

7.2.10 Where hermetically sealed compressor units or semi-hermetic compressors with the electric motor cooled by the circulating refrigerant are installed, the following arrangements are to be made:

- (a) Each refrigeration system containing hermetically sealed compressor units or semi-hermetic compressors is to be independent of other refrigeration systems.
- (b) All hermetic motor-compressors are to be fitted with a thermal cut-out device that protects the motor against overheating.
- (c) Each refrigerant circuit is to be designed such that debris or contaminants from a motor failure, typically burn out of insulation, is contained and not distributed around the system.

## 7.3 Water system

7.3.1 Two or more chilled water pumps are to be provided and be of sufficient capacity to circulate chilled water at the flow rate and conditions stated in the design statement with any one pump out of action.

7.3.2 The chilled water pumps are to be located in separate compartments and zones such that loss of one compartment or zone or failure in equipment will not render the chilled water system inoperative.

NOTE:

This does not preclude locating the chilled water pumps in the same compartment as the refrigeration plants mentioned in 7.2. Plants and their associated chilled water pumps are to be arranged such that the pumps can be cross-connected to other plants in the event of plant or pump failure. In NS3 category ships the requirement for pumps to be located in separate zones will not be insisted on where agreed by the Owner/Operator and included in the design statement.

7.3.3 The chilled water distribution system is to be of the constant flow type with a pneumatically pressurised expansion tank. Expansion tanks are to have a membrane fitted at the air/water interface to prevent ingress of air into the chilled water system.

7.3.4 Each user of chilled water is to be provided with means of isolation such that the distribution system can operate at the designed constant flow rate when the user is isolated.

7.3.5 The arrangement of chilled water distribution pipes and isolation valves is to ensure continuous availability of supply in the event of the loss of any one compartment or zone.

7.3.6 Air vent and drain valves with adequate bleed off points for filling and in-service operational requirements are to be provided throughout the system at all high and low points.

7.3.7 Provision is to be made for filling and topping up the chilled water system. A means is also to be provided for connecting the system to a dry main for shore connection above the waterline. The shore connection is to be sized sufficient to enable supply of cooling water for the ship's requirement as declared in the design statement required by 1.3.2.

7.3.8 Provision is to be made to connect the chilled water distribution system to an alternative source of water supply for use in emergency/action damage conditions.

7.3.9 Sea-water systems for refrigeration condensers are to be capable of being supplied from not less than two independent sources located in separate compartments and zones such that the loss of one compartment or zone, or failure in equipment will not render loss of all sea-water sources. In NS3 category ships the requirement for refrigeration condensers to be located in separate zones will not be insisted on where agreed by the Owner/Operator and included in the design statement.

7.3.10 The capacity of each source of sea-water required by 7.3.9 is to be sufficient for the conditions stated in the design statement with any one source out of action.

## Section 8 High pressure compressed air systems

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 The requirements of this Section are additional to those contained in Sections 2 to 6 of this Chapter.

8.1.2 High pressure (HP) compressed air systems are to produce and distribute compressed air throughout the ship to supply all systems and equipment where the air pressure requirement exceeds 7 bar. The systems are to include air compressors, oil/water separators, filter/dryers, distribution lines and air receivers. For the purpose of Naval Authority maintenance and safety regulatory requirements, HP air systems may be defined as those where the air pressure requirements exceed 25–40 bar and this is to be defined in the design statement required by 1.3.2.

8.1.3 The requirements for HP compressed air systems include the storage and distribution of compressed air with air pressures above 7 bar and are to be in accordance with the design statement required by 1.3.2. Additional compressed air systems may be installed for specific purposes such as for diesel engine starting (typically 25–30 bar systems) which are also to comply with the requirements of this Section and Pt 2, Ch 1,7 as applicable.

8.1.4 The design of HP compressed air systems is to be capable of providing continuous flow for all demands of equipment and system consumers, recognising continuous and intermittent users. This includes any portable equipment that may be part of the ship's equipment.

8.1.5 The compressed air system users' quality (dryness, purity, etc.) requirements of compressed air are to be recognised in the selection of compressors, equipment, filters and dryers to be included in the system(s).

# Ship Type Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 5

*Sections 8 & 9*

8.1.6 Arrangements for emergency depressurisation of HP compressed air to safe positions on open deck are to be provided. The controls for emergency depressurisation are to be located in readily accessible positions outside the space containing the HP air receivers.

## 8.2 Compressors

8.2.1 Two or more HP air compressors are to be provided of sufficient capacity to supply the total design demand of the system under defined requirements stated in the design statement required by 1.3.2 with any one compressor out of action.

8.2.2 The compressors are to be located in separate compartments and zones such that the loss of one compartment or zone, or failure in equipment will not render the other compressor(s) inoperative.

8.2.3 Each compressor is to be fitted with a safety valve so proportioned and adjusted that the accumulation of pressure with the outlet valve closed will not exceed 10 per cent of the maximum working pressure of the compressor. The casings of the cooling water spaces are to be fitted with a safety valve or bursting disc so that ample relief will be provided in the event of the bursting of an air cooler tube.

8.2.4 Each compressor is to be provided with an alarm for failure of the lubricating oil supply that will initiate an automatic shut-down.

8.2.5 Adequate air supply arrangements via a steel trunk are to be provided to the compartment where the compressor is located and where a vessel is provided with an CBRN citadel, arrangements are to ensure that there is adequate air supply to the compressor in closedown. Care is to be taken to ensure that the compressor air inlets will be located in an atmosphere reasonably free from oil vapour.

8.2.6 Provision is to be made for intercepting and draining oil and water in the air discharge for which purpose a separator or filter is to be fitted in the discharge pipe from each compressor.

8.2.7 Drain valves for removing accumulations of oil and water are to be fitted on compressors and their associated coolers, separators and filters.

## 8.3 Air receivers

8.3.1 The HP air system and associated air receivers are to be configured to provide sufficient capacity to supply HP compressed air to users when any section of the distribution line is isolated due to failure or damage.

8.3.2 The configuration of the HP air system and associated air receivers for each essential user of HP compressed air is to be arranged to provide, without replenishment, sufficient air to operate systems and equipment at an agreed capability level for an agreed period of time. In general, at least two air receivers of approximately

equal capacity are to be provided for each essential user or group of users.

8.3.3 All air receivers are to be provided with mounting and fittings required by Pt 8, Ch 2,9.

8.3.4 Stop valves on air receivers are to permit slow opening to avoid sudden pressure rises in the piping system.

8.3.5 Air receivers used for pressurising magazine water spray systems are to be capable of being isolated from the HP compressed air distribution lines to prevent automatic replenishment of the receiver after use.

## 8.4 Distribution system

8.4.1 The arrangement of HP compressed air pipes and isolation valves is to ensure continuous availability of supply in the event of the loss of any one compartment or zone. Isolating valves are to be fitted in each branch from the main distribution system to permit isolation of any damaged branches.

8.4.2 Drain pots with drain valves are to be provided throughout the distribution system at all low points.

8.4.3 Reducing valves/stations for users of reduced pressure air are to be provided throughout the ship. Pipelines that are situated on the low pressure side of reducing valves/stations, and that are not designed to withstand the full pressure of the source supply, are to be provided with pressure gauges and with relief valves having sufficient capacity to protect the piping against excessive pressure. In-line filters are to be fitted at each reducing valve/station on the reduced pressure side.

8.4.4 A means is to be provided for connecting the HP compressed air system to a shore connection.

## ■ Section 9 Low pressure compressed air systems

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 The requirements of this Section are additional to those contained in Sections 2 to 6 of this Chapter.

9.1.2 Low pressure (LP) compressed air systems are to produce and distribute oil and moisture free cool compressed air throughout the ship to supply all systems and equipment where the air pressure requirements are 7 bar and below. The systems are to include air compressors, oil/water separators, filter/dryers, distribution lines and air receivers. For the purpose of Naval Authority maintenance and safety regulatory requirements, LP air systems may be defined as those where the air pressure requirements are 25–40 bar and below and this is to be defined in the design statement required by 1.3.2.



# Ship Type Piping Systems

# Volume 2, Part 7, Chapter 5

Sections 9 & 10

9.1.3 The design of LP compressed air systems is to be capable of providing continuous flow for all demands of equipment and system consumers recognising continuous and intermittent users. This includes any portable equipment that may be part of the ship's equipment. Compressed air systems used for specific purposes such as for diesel engine or gas turbine starting are also to comply with the requirements of this Section and Pt 2, Ch 1,7 and Pt 2, Ch 2,6 as applicable.

9.1.4 The quality (dryness, purity, etc.) requirements of compressed air is to be recognised in the selection of compressors, equipment, filters and dryers to be included in the system(s).

9.1.5 Configuration arrangements of LP compressed air systems may consist of:

- (a) Dedicated LP air compressors and LP air receivers with a distribution system for LP users; or
- (b) Dedicated LP air compressors feeding directly into a distribution system for LP air users; or
- (c) Supply from the HP air system to dedicated air pressure reducing valves/stations and air receivers feeding into a distribution system for LP users.

Where the arrangements are configured as described in (a) and (b), arrangements are to be made for connections to the LP air system via reducing valves/stations from the HP compressed air system.

## 9.2 Compressors and reducing valves/stations

9.2.1 Where LP air is not derived from the HP air system, two or more LP air compressors are to be provided of sufficient capacity to supply the total design demand of the system with any one compressor out of action.

9.2.2 With the exception of the need to trunk in an air supply for CBRN design in 8.2.5, the requirements of 8.2.2 to 8.2.7 are also to be complied for LP air compressors.

9.2.3 Where the design of the LP compressed air system requires the use of dedicated LP air compressors feeding directly into a distribution system of LP air users, the compressors are to be capable of continuous running with arrangements for ensuring that compressor output matches demand.

9.2.4 Where LP air is derived only from a HP compressed air system, two or more reducing valves/stations are to be provided of sufficient capacity to supply the total demand of the LP air system with any one reducing valve/station out of action.

## 9.3 Air receivers

9.3.1 The LP air system and associated air receivers are to be configured to provide sufficient capacity to supply LP compressed air to users when the distribution line is isolated due to failure or damage.

9.3.2 The configuration of the LP air system and associated air receivers for each essential user of LP compressed air is to be arranged to provide, without replenishment, sufficient air to operate systems and equipment at an agreed capability level for an agreed period of time. In general, at least two air receivers of approximately equal capacity are to be provided for each essential user or group of users.

9.3.3 All air receivers are to be provided with mounting and fittings required by Pt 8, Ch 2,9.

9.3.4 Stop valves on air receivers are to permit slow opening to avoid sudden pressure rises in the piping system.

## 9.4 Distribution system

9.4.1 The arrangement of LP compressed air pipes and isolation valves is to ensure continuous availability of supply in the event of the loss of any one compartment or zone. Isolating valves are to be fitted in each branch from the distribution system(s) to permit isolation of any damaged branches.

9.4.2 Drain pots with drain valves are to be provided throughout the distribution system at all low points.

9.4.3 Reducing valves/stations for users of reduced pressure air are to be provided throughout the ship. Pipelines that are situated on the low pressure side of reducing valves/stations, and that are not designed to withstand the full pressure of the source supply, are to be provided with pressure gauges and with relief valves having sufficient capacity to protect the piping against excessive pressure. In-line filters are to be fitted at each reducing valve/station on the reduced pressure side.

9.4.4 A means is to be provided for connecting the LP compressed air system to a shore connection.

## Section 10 High pressure sea-water systems

### 10.1 General

10.1.1 The requirements in this Section are additional to those contained in Sections 2 to 6 of this Chapter.

10.1.2 High pressure sea-water (HPSW) systems are to continuously supply and distribute sea-water at a pressure of generally not less than 7 bar throughout the ship to provide water for fire-fighting, magazine spraying, pre-wetting, bilge and dewatering eductors and emergency cooling. See 10.2.6 for water pressure requirements.

**10.1.3** The pumping and delivery capacities and pressures from the HPSW are to be sufficient to support damage control and fire-fighting policy, procedures and techniques, including pre-wet requirements that are to be declared in the design statement required by 1.3.2.

**10.1.4** Ship-side valves and fittings are to comply with the requirements of Ch 2,2.5 as applicable.

## 10.2 Pump units

**10.2.1** Three or more HPSW pumps are to be provided of sufficient capacity to supply the total pumping capacity defined in 10.2.3 with any one pump out of action. At least one of the pumps is to be capable of supplying HPSW in a dead ship condition.

**10.2.2** The pumps are to be located in separate compartments and zones such that the loss of one compartment or zone or failure in equipment will not render the other pumps inoperative.

**10.2.3** The total pumping capacity of the HPSW pumps with one pump out of action shall provide for the greatest of the following:

- (a) The amount required for pre-wetting.
- (b) The amount required for a fire in the largest machinery space using the largest fixed spray system plus 40 m<sup>3</sup>/hr boundary cooling from hoses.
- (c) The amount required for a major fire outside the machinery spaces using 100 m<sup>3</sup>/hr boundary cooling for each fire. The minimum number of fires to be considered are as follows:
  - (i) Displacement at design draught of under 4,000 tonnes – one fire
  - (ii) Between 4,000 and 10,000 tonnes – two fires
  - (iii) Between 10,000 and 20,000 tonnes – three fires
  - (iv) Over 20,000 tonnes – four fires

Reference is also to be made to the design statement required by 1.3.2 where the number of fires to be considered may also reference amongst other items, the type of ship, number of personnel on board and number of fire zones.
- (d) The largest single magazine or ammunition transfer space spray requirement plus 40 m<sup>3</sup>/hr boundary cooling.
- (e) The hangar spray requirement in the largest area contained by a fire curtain.
- (f) A flight deck fire requiring one third of the total foam branch pipes fitted in multi-aircraft landing (multi-spot) ships or two foam branch pipes in single aircraft landing (single spot) ships.

If the factor determining the total pumping capacity is (b), then any pumps located in the space are to be added to the overall number of pumps required.

**10.2.4** The capacity of each pump is to be not less than that required to supply water for the eductor capacities referred to in Ch 2,6.3.

**10.2.5** The sea suction to HPSW pumps are to be provided with an air elimination arrangement to ensure that the running and standby pumps do not become air-locked.

**10.2.6** HPSW pumps are to be arranged to operate continuously with automatic and switched means of starting of standby pumps on sea-water demand. Automatic starting of standby pumps may be achieved by sensing when the system pressure falls below a pre-set level. The continuous and minimum supply pressures in the HPSW distribution system are to be in accordance with the design statement required by 1.3.2.

**10.2.7** HPSW pumps are to be provided with high temperature alarms for components that may become overheated when the pump is running in low or no flow demand conditions.

**10.2.8** Where HPSW pumps can develop a pressure greater than the design pressure of the system, they are to be provided with pressure relief/control devices on the pump discharge to effectively limit the pump discharge pressure to the design pressure of the system.

**10.2.9** Strainers capable of being cleaned without interruption of water flow to the pumps are to be provided in the suction pipes.

## 10.3 Distribution system

**10.3.1** The arrangement of the HPSW system is to ensure continuous availability of supply in the event of the loss of any compartment or zone. Isolating valves are to be fitted in each branch from the main distribution system to permit isolation of any damaged branches.

**10.3.2** HPSW should be supplied throughout the ship by means of a ring main system. In multi-spot ships fitted with a between deck hangar, a second ring main should be provided. These ring mains are to be cross-connected but may share the same pumps. Alternative arrangements to a ring main system will be considered where a vulnerability assessment has demonstrated that continuous availability of HPSW can be ensured whilst satisfying the system arrangement requirements of this Chapter.

**10.3.3** Ring mains are to extend over the middle two thirds of the length of the ship, one half to port and the other to the starboard side. Each ring main is to be cross-connected across the ship in separate fire zones recognising any vulnerability requirements stated by the Owner. The main is to be extended forward and aft of the ring main by a single line of piping at the centre.

**10.3.4** The HPSW system is to be capable of being isolated into separate sections by local and remote controlled valves at the fire zone boundaries. In addition, isolating valves are to be fitted at the following locations:

- (a) At the riser from the pump to the ring main.
- (b) In the ring main each side of the pump riser junction.
- (c) At each cross-over connection junction to the ring main.
- (d) Where the ring main penetrates a watertight bulkhead.
- (e) In the ring main each side of the branch to the magazine spray system.

**10.3.5** Where the HPSW system is to be used for fire-fighting purposes, the supplies are to be led through vertical distribution lines directly from the horizontal ring main to the upper deck levels.

**10.3.6** Shore and ship to ship connections to the HPSW ring main are to be provided port and starboard on the weatherdeck – one pair forward, the other aft, i.e., a total of four connections. For **NS3** category ships with a breadth not exceeding 10 m, a single connection forward and a single connection aft will be acceptable.

## ■ Section 11 Hydraulic power actuating systems

### 11.1 General

**11.1.1** The requirements of this Section are additional to those contained in Sections 2 to 6 of this Chapter. The requirements do not apply to steering systems that are covered in Pt 6, Ch 1.

**11.1.2** The arrangements for storage, distribution and utilisation of hydraulic and flammable oils employed under pressure in power transmission systems, control and actuating systems, heating systems and hydraulic media in systems which are providing essential services, are to comply with the requirements of this Section.

**11.1.3** Hydraulic power actuating systems are to deliver hydraulic fluid under pressure for actuation of hydraulically driven machinery and for operation of remote controlled equipment.

**11.1.4** Hydraulic fluids are to be suitable for the intended purpose under all operating service conditions and conform to the Naval Authority's safety policy where applicable.

**11.1.5** Materials used for all parts of hydraulic seals are to be compatible with working fluid at the appropriate working temperature and pressure.

**11.1.6** Hydraulic power actuating systems for hydraulically driven machinery and for the operation of remotely controlled equipment are to be independent of each other.

### 11.2 Hydraulic fluid storage

**11.2.1** Tanks and reservoirs for service and the storage of hydraulic fluids are to be made of steel and suitable for the maximum head of fluid to which the tanks may be subjected. In general, tanks are to have a minimum plate thickness of 5 mm, but in the case of very small tanks, the minimum thickness may be 3 mm.

**11.2.2** The storage capacity for hydraulic fluid(s) is to be sufficient to recharge the largest system on board plus normal usage during a typical mission. Storage capacity is to be sufficient for each type of hydraulic fluid used on the ship. Storage capability sufficient to handle the full capacity of the largest hydraulic system on board is also to be provided for dirty hydraulic fluids.

**11.2.3** Tanks and reservoirs are to be provided with two connections at diagonally opposite corners, one top and one bottom to permit the contents to be circulated through portable flushing equipment.

**11.2.4** The capacity of hydraulic fluid reservoirs at normal working level is to ensure a residence time for the fluid of not less than three minutes.

**11.2.5** A vertical baffle plate is to be fitted dividing each reservoir into two compartments interconnected at the top of the baffle. Return fluid, drains, etc., are to be made to one side of the baffle whilst pump suctions are to be taken from the other side.

**11.2.6** All tanks and reservoirs are to be provided with approved means of hydraulic fluid level indication.

**11.2.7** All tanks and reservoirs are to be provided with approved means of sampling the contents and a means of access for cleaning.

### 11.3 Pump units

**11.3.1** Two or more hydraulic pumps are to be provided for each power actuating system, the pumps are to be of sufficient capacity to supply the system under defined operational requirements stated in the design statement required by 1.3.2 with any one pump out of action.

**11.3.2** All hydraulic pumps are to be provided with relief valves. Each relief valve is to be in closed circuit, i.e., arranged to discharge back to the suction side of the pump and effectively to limit the pump discharge pressure to the design pressure of the system.

**11.3.3** The power supply to all independently driven pumps used for pumping flammable fluids is to be capable of being stopped from a position outside the space. It shall be possible to activate the stop from this position in the event of a fire occurring in the space containing the pumps, in addition to any stop facilities provided in the space.

**11.3.4** Where pump units are provided with accumulators, a shut-off valve is to be provided between the pressure line and the accumulator with a bleed valve fitted between the shut-off valve and the accumulator.

**11.3.5** Where accumulators are provided with gas pressurisation, isolating valves are to be fitted in the gas lines at each accumulator. A relief valve is to be fitted in the gas supply line to limit prevent the accumulator being pressurised above its maximum working pressure.

## 11.4 Supply systems and arrangements

11.4.1 Supply systems to hydraulic power actuating systems are to be as short as practicable.

11.4.2 Where hydraulic pipes penetrate watertight or fire zone bulkheads, isolating valves are to be provided.

11.4.3 The use of flexible hoses is to be restricted to positions where it is necessary to accommodate relative movement between items of equipment and fixed pipe-work.

11.4.4 Where emergency fire valves are hydraulically operated, accumulators are to be provided in the common supply lines to facilitate rapid operation of the valve actuators in the event of fire.

11.4.5 Provision is to be made for emergency hand pump or hand wheel operation of hydraulic systems.

11.4.6 Where a hydraulic securing is applied, the system is to be capable of being mechanically locked in the closed position so that, in the event of hydraulic system failure, the securing arrangements will remain locked.

11.4.7 Where pilot operated non-return valves are fitted to hydraulic cylinders for locking purposes, the valves are to be connected directly to the actuating cylinder(s) without intermediate pipes or hoses.

11.4.8 Hydraulic circuits for securing and locking of bow, inner, stern or shell doors are to be arranged such that they are physically unable to be affected by operation of other hydraulic circuits when securing and locking devices are in the closed position. For requirements relating to hydraulic steering gear arrangements, see Pt 6, Ch 1,5.3.

11.4.9 Suitable oil collecting arrangements for leaks shall be fitted below hydraulic valves and cylinders.

## 11.5 Cooling arrangements

11.5.1 Cooling arrangements for hydraulic fluids are to be provided where the operating temperature of the fluid may exceed the maximum design temperature limitations of the fluid or equipment in the system as defined in the design statement required by 1.3.2.

11.5.2 Where the provision of cooling arrangements is necessary to maintain hydraulic fluid temperatures, not less than two means of cooling are to be provided and configured such as to provide cooling with one means out of action.

## 11.6 Relief valves on pumps

11.6.1 All pumps which are capable of developing a pressure exceeding the design pressure of the system are to be provided with relief valves. Each relief valve is to be in closed circuit, i.e., arranged to discharge back to the suction side of the pump and effectively to limit the pump discharge pressure to the design pressure of the system.

## 11.7 Pipes conveying oil

11.7.1 Piping systems for flammable hydraulic fluids are to be installed to avoid fluid spray or leakage onto hot surfaces, into machinery air intakes, or other sources of ignition such as electrical equipment. Pipe joints are to be kept to a minimum, and where provided are to be of a type acceptable to LR. Pipes are to be led in well lit and readily visible positions.

11.7.2 Pipes conveying hydraulic oil under pressure are to be of seamless steel or other approved material having flanged or welded joints, and are to be placed in sight above the platform in well lit and readily accessible parts of the machinery spaces. The number of flanged joints is to be kept to a minimum.

11.7.3 For requirements relating to flexible hoses, see Ch 1,13.

## 11.8 Filling arrangements

11.8.1 Filling stations are to be isolated from other spaces and are to be efficiently drained and ventilated.

11.8.2 Provision is to be made against over-pressure in the filling pipelines. Any relief valve fitted for this purpose is to discharge to an overflow tank or other safe position and is to be sized to allow full flow of supply through the relief valve without over-pressuring the upstream pipe work.

## 11.9 Separate oil tanks

11.9.1 On completion, the tanks are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected.

## 11.10 Precautions against fire

11.10.1 Hydraulic oil tanks and filters are not to be situated immediately above boilers or other highly heated surfaces.

11.10.2 Hydraulic oil pipes are not to be installed above or near high-temperature equipment. Hydraulic oil pipes should also be installed and screened, or otherwise suitably protected, to avoid oil spray or oil leakages onto hot surfaces, into machinery air intakes, or other sources of ignition such as electrical equipment. Pipe joints are to be kept to a minimum and where provided are to be of a type acceptable to LR. Pipes are to be led in well lit and readily visible positions.

11.10.3 Pumps, filters and heaters are to be located to avoid hydraulic oil spray or leakage onto hot surfaces or other sources of ignition or onto rotating machinery parts. Where necessary, shielding is to be provided and the arrangements are to allow easy access for routine maintenance. The design of filter and strainer arrangements is to be such as to avoid the possibility of them being opened inadvertently when under pressure. This may be achieved either by mechanically preventing the pressurised filter from being opened or by providing pressure gauges which clearly indicate which filter is under pressure. In either case, suitable means for pressure release are to be provided, with drain pipes led to a safe location.

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2  
Part 8 Pressure Plant  
January 2013

---

|             |          |                                                                      |
|-------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| PART        | 1        | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS                                                 |
| PART        | 2        | PRIME MOVERS                                                         |
| PART        | 3        | TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS                                                 |
| PART        | 4        | PROPULSION DEVICES                                                   |
| PART        | 5        | SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT                                        |
| PART        | 6        | STEERING SYSTEMS                                                     |
| PART        | 7        | PIPING SYSTEMS                                                       |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>8</b> | <b>PRESSURE PLANT</b>                                                |
|             |          | <b>Chapter 1 Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels</b> |
|             |          | <b>2 Other Pressure Vessels</b>                                      |
| PART        | 9        | CONTROL ENGINEERING                                                  |
| PART        | 10       | ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING                                               |
| PART        | 11       | SUPPORT SYSTEMS                                                      |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

|                |           |                                                                  |
|----------------|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>STEAM RAISING PLANT AND ASSOCIATED PRESSURE VESSELS</b>       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>General requirements</b>                                      |
|                | 1.1       | Application                                                      |
|                | 1.2       | Definition of symbols                                            |
|                | 1.3       | Design pressure                                                  |
|                | 1.4       | Metal temperature                                                |
|                | 1.5       | Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels                 |
|                | 1.6       | Plans                                                            |
|                | 1.7       | Materials                                                        |
|                | 1.8       | Allowable stress                                                 |
|                | 1.9       | Joint factors                                                    |
|                | 1.10      | Pressure parts of irregular shape                                |
|                | 1.11      | Adverse working conditions                                       |
|                | 1.12      | Furnace explosion prevention                                     |
|                | 1.13      | Exhaust gas economiser/boiler arrangements                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure</b> |
|                | 2.1       | Minimum thickness                                                |
|                | 2.2       | Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes                       |
|                | 2.3       | Compensating effect of tube stubs                                |
|                | 2.4       | Unreinforced openings                                            |
|                | 2.5       | Reinforced openings                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>Spherical shells subject to internal pressure</b>             |
|                | 3.1       | Minimum thickness                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>Dished ends subject to internal pressure</b>                  |
|                | 4.1       | Minimum thickness                                                |
|                | 4.2       | Shape factors for dished ends                                    |
|                | 4.3       | Dished ends with unreinforced openings                           |
|                | 4.4       | Flanged openings in dished ends                                  |
|                | 4.5       | Location of unreinforced and flanged openings in dished ends     |
|                | 4.6       | Dished ends with reinforced openings                             |
|                | 4.7       | Torispherical dished ends with reinforced openings               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b>  | <b>Conical ends subject to internal pressure</b>                 |
|                | 5.1       | General                                                          |
|                | 5.2       | Minimum thickness                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b>  | <b>Standpipes and branches</b>                                   |
|                | 6.1       | Minimum thickness                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b>  | <b>Boiler tubes subject to internal pressure</b>                 |
|                | 7.1       | Minimum thickness                                                |
|                | 7.2       | Tube bending                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b>  | <b>Headers</b>                                                   |
|                | 8.1       | Circular section headers                                         |
|                | 8.2       | Rectangular section headers                                      |
|                | 8.3       | Toroidal furnace headers                                         |
|                | 8.4       | Header ends                                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b>  | <b>Flat surfaces and flat tube plates</b>                        |
|                | 9.1       | Stayed flat surfaces                                             |
|                | 9.2       | Combustion chamber tube plates under compression                 |
|                | 9.3       | Girders for combustion chamber top plates                        |
|                | 9.4       | Flat plate margins                                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>Flat plates and ends of vertical boilers</b>                  |
|                | 10.1      | Tube plates of vertical boilers                                  |
|                | 10.2      | Horizontal shelves of tube plates forming part of the shell      |
|                | 10.3      | Dished and flanged ends for vertical boilers                     |
|                | 10.4      | Flat crowns of vertical boilers                                  |

---

|                |           |                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>11</b> | <b>Furnaces subject to external pressure</b>                                                                                                      |
|                | 11.1      | Maximum thickness                                                                                                                                 |
|                | 11.2      | Corrugated furnaces                                                                                                                               |
|                | 11.3      | Plain furnaces, flue sections and combustion chamber bottoms                                                                                      |
|                | 11.4      | Plain furnaces of vertical boilers                                                                                                                |
|                | 11.5      | Hemispherical furnaces                                                                                                                            |
|                | 11.6      | Dished and flanged ends for supported vertical boiler furnaces                                                                                    |
|                | 11.7      | Dished and flanged ends for unsupported vertical boiler furnaces                                                                                  |
|                | 11.8      | Ogee rings                                                                                                                                        |
|                | 11.9      | Uptakes of vertical boilers                                                                                                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>12</b> | <b>Boiler tubes subject to external pressure</b>                                                                                                  |
|                | 12.1      | Tubes                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>13</b> | <b>Tubes welded at both ends and bar stays for cylindrical boilers</b>                                                                            |
|                | 13.1      | Loads on tubes welded at both ends and bar stays                                                                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>14</b> | <b>Construction</b>                                                                                                                               |
|                | 14.1      | Access arrangements                                                                                                                               |
|                | 14.2      | Torispherical and semi-ellipsoidal ends                                                                                                           |
|                | 14.3      | Hemispherical ends                                                                                                                                |
|                | 14.4      | Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces                                                                                |
|                | 14.5      | Welded attachments to pressure vessels                                                                                                            |
|                | 14.6      | Fitting of tubes in water tube boilers                                                                                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>15</b> | <b>Mounting and fittings for cylindrical and vertical boilers, steam generators, pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters</b> |
|                | 15.1      | General                                                                                                                                           |
|                | 15.2      | Safety valves                                                                                                                                     |
|                | 15.3      | Waste steam pipes                                                                                                                                 |
|                | 15.4      | Adjustment and accumulation tests                                                                                                                 |
|                | 15.5      | Stop valves                                                                                                                                       |
|                | 15.6      | Water level indicators                                                                                                                            |
|                | 15.7      | Low water level fuel shut-off and alarm                                                                                                           |
|                | 15.8      | Feed check valves                                                                                                                                 |
|                | 15.9      | Pressure gauges                                                                                                                                   |
|                | 15.10     | Blow-down and scum valves                                                                                                                         |
|                | 15.11     | Sampling valve or cock                                                                                                                            |
|                | 15.12     | Additional requirements for shell type exhaust gas steaming economisers                                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>16</b> | <b>Mountings and fittings for water tube boilers</b>                                                                                              |
|                | 16.1      | General                                                                                                                                           |
|                | 16.2      | Safety valves                                                                                                                                     |
|                | 16.3      | Safety valve settings                                                                                                                             |
|                | 16.4      | Waste steam pipes                                                                                                                                 |
|                | 16.5      | Accumulation tests                                                                                                                                |
|                | 16.6      | Water level indicators                                                                                                                            |
|                | 16.7      | Low water level fuel shut-off and alarm                                                                                                           |
|                | 16.8      | Feed check valves and water level regulators                                                                                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>17</b> | <b>Hydraulic tests</b>                                                                                                                            |
|                | 17.1      | General                                                                                                                                           |
|                | 17.2      | Mountings                                                                                                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>18</b> | <b>Control and monitoring</b>                                                                                                                     |
|                | 18.1      | General                                                                                                                                           |
|                | 18.2      | Automatic and remote controls                                                                                                                     |



---

|                |           |                                                                  |
|----------------|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>OTHER PRESSURE VESSELS</b>                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>General requirements</b>                                      |
|                | 1.1       | Application                                                      |
|                | 1.2       | Definition of symbols                                            |
|                | 1.3       | Design pressure                                                  |
|                | 1.4       | Metal temperature                                                |
|                | 1.5       | Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels                 |
|                | 1.6       | Plans                                                            |
|                | 1.7       | Materials                                                        |
|                | 1.8       | Allowable stress                                                 |
|                | 1.9       | Joint factors                                                    |
|                | 1.10      | Pressure parts of irregular shape                                |
|                | 1.11      | Adverse working conditions                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure</b> |
|                | 2.1       | Minimum thickness                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>Spherical shells subject to internal pressure</b>             |
|                | 3.1       | Minimum thickness                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>Dished ends subject to internal pressure</b>                  |
|                | 4.1       | Minimum thickness                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b>  | <b>Dished ends for Class 3 pressure vessels</b>                  |
|                | 5.1       | Minimum thickness                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b>  | <b>Conical ends subject to internal pressure</b>                 |
|                | 6.1       | General                                                          |
|                | 6.2       | Minimum thickness                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b>  | <b>Standpipes and branches</b>                                   |
|                | 7.1       | Minimum thickness                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b>  | <b>Construction</b>                                              |
|                | 8.1       | Access arrangements                                              |
|                | 8.2       | Torispherical and semi-ellipsoidal ends                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b>  | <b>Mountings and fittings</b>                                    |
|                | 9.1       | General                                                          |
|                | 9.2       | Receivers containing pressurised gases                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>Hydraulic tests</b>                                           |
|                | 10.1      | General                                                          |
|                | 10.2      | Mountings                                                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>11</b> | <b>Plate heat exchangers</b>                                     |
|                | 11.1      | General                                                          |



# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 1

### Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure**
- 3 **Spherical shells subject to internal pressure**
- 4 **Dished ends subject to internal pressure**
- 5 **Conical ends subject to internal pressure**
- 6 **Standpipes and branches**
- 7 **Boiler tubes subject to internal pressure**
- 8 **Headers**
- 9 **Flat surfaces and flat tube plates**
- 10 **Flat plates and ends of vertical boilers**
- 11 **Furnaces subject to external pressure**
- 12 **Boiler tubes subject to external pressure**
- 13 **Tubes welded at both ends and bar stays for cylindrical boilers**
- 14 **Construction**
- 15 **Mountings and fittings for cylindrical and vertical boilers, steam generators, pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters**
- 16 **Mountings and fittings for water tube boilers**
- 17 **Hydraulic tests**
- 18 **Control and monitoring**

### ■ Section 1 General requirements

#### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to fusion welded pressure vessels and their mountings and fittings, for the following uses:

- (a) Production or storage of steam.
- (b) Heating of pressurised hot water above 120°C.
- (c) Heating of pressurised thermal liquid.

The formulae in this Chapter may be used for determining the thickness of seamless pressure vessels using a joint factor of 1,0. Seamless pressure vessels are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 5 of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

1.1.2 The scantlings of coil type heaters with pumped circulation, which are fired or heated by exhaust gas, are to comply with the appropriate requirements of this Chapter.

#### 1.2 Definition of symbols

1.2.1 The symbols used in the various formulae in Sections 2 to 8, unless otherwise stated, are defined as follows and are applicable to the specific part of the pressure vessel under consideration:

- $d$  = diameter of hole or opening, in mm
- $p$  = design pressure, see 1.3, in bar
- $r_i$  = inside knuckle radius, in mm
- $r_o$  = outside knuckle radius, in mm
- $s$  = pitch, in mm
- $t$  = minimum thickness, in mm
- $D_i$  = inside diameter, in mm
- $D_o$  = outside diameter, in mm
- $J$  = joint factor applicable to welded seams, see 1.9, or ligament efficiency between tube holes (expressed as a fraction, see 2.2)
- $R_i$  = inside radius, in mm
- $R_o$  = outside radius, in mm
- $T$  = design temperature, in °C
- $\sigma$  = allowable stress, see 1.8, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

1.2.2 Where reference is made to calculated or actual plate thickness for the derivation of other values, these thicknesses are to be minus the standard Rule corrosion allowance of 0,75 mm, if not so stated.

#### 1.3 Design pressure

1.3.1 The design pressure is the maximum permissible working pressure and is to be not less than the highest set pressure of any safety valve.

1.3.2 The calculations made to determine the scantlings of the pressure parts are to be based on the design pressure, adjusted where necessary to take account of pressure variations corresponding to the most severe operational conditions.

1.3.3 It is desirable that there should be a margin between the normal pressure at which the boiler or pressure vessel operates and the lowest pressure at which any safety valve is set to lift, to prevent unnecessary lifting of the safety valve.

#### 1.4 Metal temperature

1.4.1 The metal temperature,  $T$ , used to evaluate the allowable stress,  $\sigma$ , is to be taken as the actual mean wall metal temperature expected under operating conditions for the pressure part concerned, and is to be stated by the manufacturer when plans of the pressure parts are submitted for consideration.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 1

1.4.2 The following values are to be regarded as the minimum:

- (a) For fired steam boilers,  $T$  is to be taken as not less than 250°C.
- (b) For steam heated generators, secondary drums of double evaporation boilers, steam receivers and pressure parts of fired pressure vessels, not heated by hot gases and adequately protected by insulation,  $T$ , is to be taken as the maximum temperature of the internal fluid.
- (c) For pressure parts heated by hot gases,  $T$  is to be taken as not less than 25°C in excess of the maximum temperature of the internal fluid.
- (d) For boiler, superheater, reheater and economiser tubes,  $T$  is to be taken as indicated in 7.1.2.
- (e) For combustion chambers of the type used in horizontal wet-back boilers,  $T$  is to be taken as not less than 50°C in excess of the maximum temperature of the internal fluid.
- (f) For furnaces, fireboxes, rear tube plates of dry-back boilers and pressure parts subject to similar rates of heat transfer,  $T$  is to be taken as not less than 90°C in excess of the maximum temperature of the internal fluid.

1.4.3 In general, any parts of boiler drums or headers not protected by tubes, and exposed to radiation from the fire or to the impact of hot gases, are to be protected by a shield of good refractory material or by other approved means.

1.4.4 Drums and headers of thickness greater than 35 mm are not to be exposed to combustion gases having an anticipated temperature in excess of 650°C unless they are efficiently cooled by closely arranged tubes.

### 1.5 Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels

1.5.1 For Rule purposes, pressure vessels with fusion welded seams are graded as Class 1 if they comply with the following conditions:

- (a) For pressure parts of fired steam boilers, fired thermal liquid heaters and exhaust gas heated shell type steam boilers where the design pressure exceeds 3,4 bar.
- (b) For pressure parts of steam heated steam generators and separate steam receivers where the design pressure exceeds 11,3 bar, or where the pressure, in bar, multiplied by the internal diameter of the shell, in mm, exceeds 14 420.

1.5.2 For Rule purposes, pressure vessels with fusion welded seams, used for the production or storage of steam, the heating of pressurised hot water above 120°C or the heating of pressurised thermal liquid not included in Class 1 are graded as Class 2/1 and 2/2.

1.5.3 Pressure vessels which are constructed in accordance with Class 2/1 or Class 2/2 standards (as indicated above) will, if manufactured in accordance with requirements of a superior class, be approved with the scantlings appropriate to that class.

1.5.4 Pressure vessels which have only circumferential fusion welded seams, will be considered as seamless with no class being assigned. Preliminary weld procedure tests and non-destructive examination for the circumferential seam welds should be carried out for the equivalent class as determined by 1.5.1 and 1.5.2.

1.5.5 In special circumstances relating to service conditions, materials, operating temperature, the carriage of dangerous gases and liquids, etc., it may be required that certain pressure vessels be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of a superior class.

1.5.6 Details of heat treatment, non-destructive examination and routine tests (where required) are given in Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials.

1.5.7 Hydraulic testing is required for pressure vessels of Class 1, 2/1 and 2/2.

### 1.6 Plans

1.6.1 Plans of boilers, superheaters and economisers are to be submitted in triplicate for consideration. When plans of water tube boilers are submitted for approval, particulars of the safety valves and their disposition on boilers and superheaters, together with the estimated pressure drop through the superheaters, are to be stated. The pressures proposed for the settings of boiler and superheater safety valves are to be indicated on the boiler plan.

1.6.2 Plans, in triplicate, showing full constructional features of fusion welded pressure vessels and dimensional details of the weld preparation for longitudinal and circumferential seams and attachments, together with particulars of the welding consumables and of the mechanical properties of the materials, are to be submitted before construction is commenced.

1.6.3 Plans, in triplicate, showing details of the air flow through the combustion chamber, boiler furnace and boiler uptake spaces, including measures taken to assure effective purging in all of the spaces, are to be submitted for consideration, see also 18.2 and Pt 7, Ch 3,9.3.

1.6.4 Plans, in triplicate, showing all areas of refractory in the combustion chamber and boiler furnace spaces, are to be submitted for consideration, see 1.12.1.

1.6.5 Calculations, in triplicate, that show a minimum of 4 air changes of the combustion chamber, boiler furnace and boiler uptake spaces will be achieved during automatic purging operations, with details of the forced draft fans and arrangements of air flow from fan intake to flue outlet, are to be submitted for consideration, see 1.12.1.

1.6.6 Calculations, in triplicate, that show that the ventilation of machinery spaces containing boilers is adequate for the air consumers within the space and unrestricted air supply to the items of plant is ensured under operating conditions.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 1

### 1.7 Materials

1.7.1 Materials used in the construction are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of the Rules for Materials.

1.7.2 The specified minimum tensile strength of carbon and carbon-manganese steel plates, pipes, forgings and castings is to be within the following general limits:

- (a) For seamless, Class 1, Class 2/1 and Class 2/2 fusion welded pressure vessels:  
340 to 520 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- (b) For boiler furnaces, combustion chambers and flanged plates:  
400 to 520 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

1.7.3 The specified minimum tensile strength of low alloy steel plates, pipes, forgings and castings is to be within the general limits of 400 to 500 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, and pressure vessels made in these steels are to be either seamless or Class 1 fusion welded.

1.7.4 The specified minimum tensile strength of boiler and superheater tubes is to be within the following general limits:

- (a) Carbon and carbon-manganese steels:  
320 to 460 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.
- (b) Low alloy steels:  
400 to 500 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

1.7.5 Where it is proposed to use materials other than those specified in the Rules for Materials, details of the chemical compositions, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval. In such cases the values of the mechanical properties used for deriving the allowable stress are to be subject to agreement by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR').

1.7.6 Where a fusion welded pressure vessel is to be made of alloy steel, and approval of the scantlings is required on the basis of the high temperature properties of the material, particulars of the welding consumables to be used, including typical mechanical properties and chemical composition of the deposited weld metal, are to be submitted for approval.

### 1.8 Allowable stress

1.8.1 The term 'allowable stress',  $\sigma$ , is the stress to be used in the formulae for the calculation of scantlings of pressure parts.

1.8.2 The allowable stress,  $\sigma$ , is to be the lowest of the following values:

$$\sigma = \frac{E_t}{1,5} \quad \sigma = \frac{R_{20}}{2,7} \quad \sigma = \frac{S_R}{1,5}$$

where

$E_t$  = specified minimum lower yield stress or 0,2 per cent proof stress at temperature,  $T$

$R_{20}$  = specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature

$S_R$  = average stress to produce rupture in 100 000 hours at temperature,  $T$

$T$  = metal temperature, see 1.4.

1.8.3 The allowable stress for steel castings is to be taken as 80 per cent of the value determined by the method indicated in 1.8.2, using the appropriate values for cast steel.

1.8.4 Where steel castings, which have been tested in accordance with the Rules for Materials, are also subjected to non-destructive tests, consideration will be given to increasing the allowable stress using a factor up to 90 per cent in lieu of the 80 per cent referred to in 1.8.3. Particulars of the non-destructive test proposals are to be submitted for consideration.

### 1.9 Joint factors

1.9.1 The following joint factors are to be used in the equations in Sections 2 to 8, where applicable. Fusion welded pressure parts are to be made in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3.

| Class of pressure vessel | Joint factor |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| Class 1                  | 1,0          |
| Class 2/1                | 0,85         |
| Class 2/2                | 0,75         |

1.9.2 The longitudinal and circumferential joints for all classes of pressure vessels for the purposes of this Chapter are to be butt joints. For typical acceptable methods of attaching dished ends, see Fig. 1.14.1.

### 1.10 Pressure parts of irregular shape

1.10.1 Where pressure parts are of such irregular shape that it is impracticable to design their scantlings by the application of formulae in Sections 2 to 8, the suitability of their construction is to be determined by hydraulic proof test of a prototype or by agreed alternative method.

### 1.11 Adverse working conditions

1.11.1 Where working conditions are adverse, special consideration may be required to be given to increasing the scantlings derived from the formulae. In this connection, where necessary, account should also be taken of any excess of loading resulting from:

- (a) impact loads, including rapidly fluctuating pressures;
- (b) weight of the vessel and normal contents under operating and test conditions;
- (c) superimposed loads such as other pressure vessels, operating equipment, insulation, corrosion-resistant or erosion-resistant linings and piping;
- (d) reactions of supporting lugs, rings, saddles or other types of supports; or
- (e) the effect of temperature gradients on maximum stress.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 1 & 2

### 1.12 Furnace explosion prevention

1.12.1 The design of combustion chamber and furnace arrangements is to incorporate measures to minimise the risk of explosion as far as practicable. Measures are to be taken to prevent the accumulation of flammable gases in spaces which may not effectively be reached by purging air. Measures are to be taken to minimise heat retaining surfaces e.g., refractory which can become a source of ignition in the furnace and uptakes.

### 1.13 Exhaust gas economiser/boiler arrangements

1.13.1 The design of exhaust gas economisers/boilers of the plain or extended surface fin tube types is to be compatible with the installed engine design parameters. The parameters which influence the build up of soot deposits and overheating such as fuel, exhaust gas temperature and efflux velocity are to be considered in the design of the exhaust gas economiser/boiler for use with the installed engine, in order to minimise the risk of fire and breakdown during operation.

1.13.2 A design statement demonstrating compliance with the requirements of 1.13.1 or alternative means of preventing the accumulation of soot or overheating, such as the use of exhaust gas bypass ducting with automatic flap valve arrangements and/or effective soot prevention and cleaning systems, is to be submitted for approval.

### 2.2 Efficiency of ligaments between tube holes

2.2.1 Where tube holes are drilled in a cylindrical shell in a line or lines parallel to its axis, the efficiency,  $J$ , of the ligaments is to be determined as in 2.2.2, 2.2.3 and 2.2.4.

2.2.2 **Regular drilling.** Where the distance between adjacent tube holes is constant, see Fig. 1.2.1:

$$J = \frac{s - d}{s}$$

where

$d$  = the mean effective diameter of the tube holes, in mm, after allowing for any serrations, counter-boring or recessing, or the compensating effect of the tube stub. See 2.3 and 2.4

$s$  = pitch of tube holes, in mm.

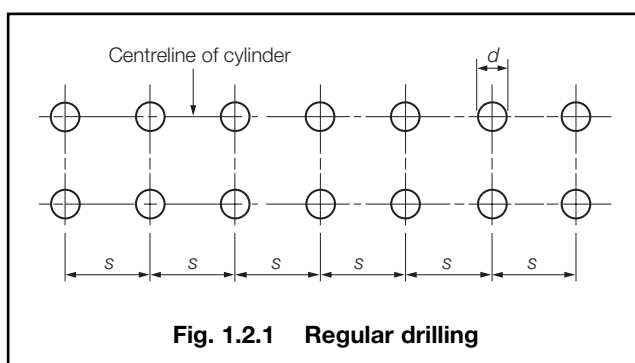


Fig. 1.2.1 Regular drilling

2.2.3 **Irregular drilling.** Where the distance between centres of adjacent tube holes is not constant, see Fig. 1.2.2:

$$J = \frac{s_1 + s_2 - 2d}{s_1 + s_2}$$

where

$d$  is as defined in 2.2.2

$s_1$  = the shorter of any two adjacent pitches, in mm

$s_2$  = the longer of any two adjacent pitches, in mm.

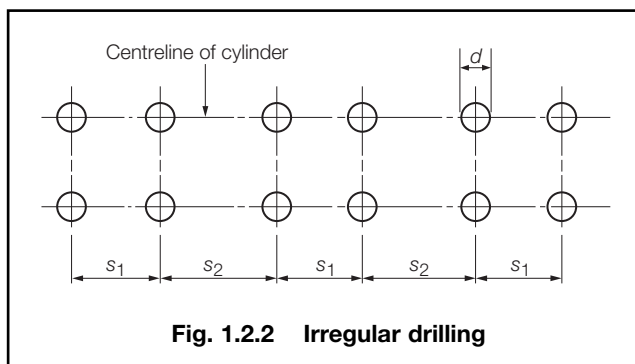


Fig. 1.2.2 Irregular drilling

2.2.4 When applying the formula in 2.2.3, the double pitch ( $s_1 + s_2$ ) chosen is to be that which makes  $J$ , a minimum, and in no case is  $s_2$  to be taken as greater than twice  $s_1$ .

## Section 2 Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure

### 2.1 Minimum thickness

2.1.1 Minimum thickness,  $t$ , of a cylindrical shell is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p R_i}{10\sigma J - 0,5p} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$ ,  $p$ ,  $R_i$  and  $\sigma$  are defined in 1.2

$J$  = efficiency of ligaments between tube holes or other openings in the shell or the joint factor of the longitudinal joints (expressed as a fraction). See 1.9 or 2.2, whichever applies. In the case of seamless shells clear of tube holes or other openings,  $J = 1,0$ .

2.1.2 The formula in 2.1.1 is applicable only where the resulting thickness does not exceed half the internal radius, i.e., where  $R_0$  is not greater than  $1,5R_i$ .

2.1.3 Irrespective of the thickness determined by the above formula,  $t$  is to be not less than:

- 6,0 mm for cylindrical shell plates.
- For tube plates, such thickness as will give a minimum parallel seat of 9,5 mm, or such greater width as may be necessary to ensure tube tightness, see 14.6.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

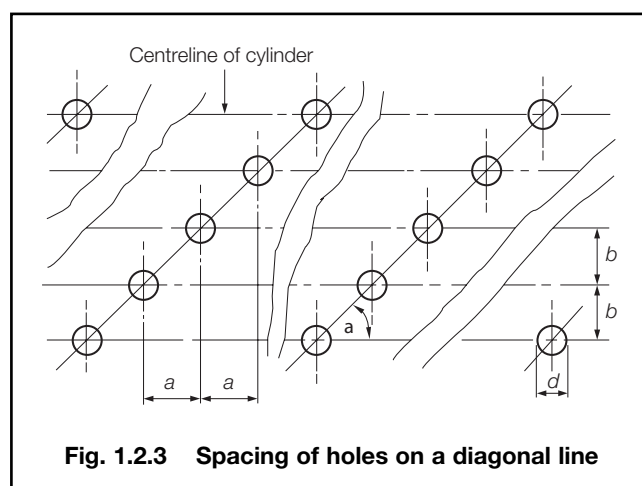
## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 2

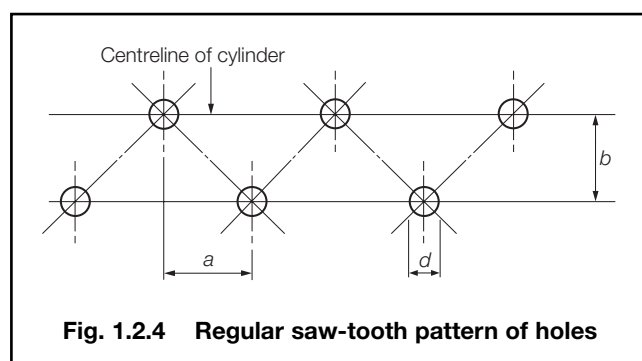
2.2.5 Where the circumferential pitch between tube holes measured on the mean of the external and internal drum or header diameters is such that the circumferential ligament efficiency determined by the formula in 2.2.2 and 2.2.3 is less than one half of the ligament efficiency on the longitudinal axis,  $J$  in 2.1 is to be taken as twice the circumferential efficiency.

2.2.6 Where tube holes are drilled in a cylindrical shell along a diagonal line with respect to the longitudinal axis, the efficiency,  $J$ , of the ligaments is to be determined as in 2.2.7 to 2.2.10.

2.2.7 For spacing of tube holes on a diagonal line as shown in Fig. 1.2.3, or in a regular saw-tooth pattern as shown in Fig. 1.2.4,  $J$  is to be determined from the formula in 2.2.8, where  $a$  and  $b$ , as shown in Figs. 1.2.3 and 1.2.4, are measured, in mm, on the median line of the plate, and  $d$  is as defined in 2.2.2.



**Fig. 1.2.3 Spacing of holes on a diagonal line**



**Fig. 1.2.4 Regular saw-tooth pattern of holes**

2.2.8 For tube holes on a diagonal line:

$$J = \frac{2}{A + B + \sqrt{(A - B)^2 + 4C^2}}$$

where

$$A = \frac{\cos^2 \alpha + 1}{2 \left( 1 - \frac{d \cos \alpha}{a} \right)}$$

$$B = 0,5 \left( 1 - \frac{d \cos \alpha}{a} \right) (\sin^2 \alpha + 1)$$

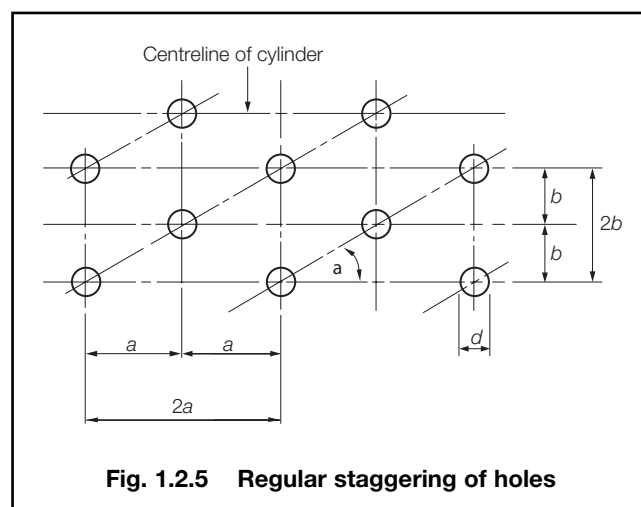
$$C = \frac{\sin \alpha \cos \alpha}{2 \left( 1 - \frac{d \cos \alpha}{a} \right)}$$

$$\cos \alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{b^2}{a^2}}}$$

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \frac{a^2}{b^2}}}$$

$\alpha$  = angle between centreline of cylinder and centreline of diagonal holes.

2.2.9 For regularly staggered spacing of tube holes as shown in Fig. 1.2.5, the smallest value of the efficiency,  $J$ , of all ligaments (longitudinal, circumferential and diagonal) is to be used where  $a$  and  $b$  as shown in Fig. 1.2.5 are measured, in mm, on the median line of the plate, and  $d$  is as defined in 2.2.2.



**Fig. 1.2.5 Regular staggering of holes**

2.2.10 For irregularly spaced tube holes whose centres do not lie on a straight line, the formula in 2.2.3 is to apply, except that an equivalent longitudinal width of the diagonal ligament is to be used. An equivalent longitudinal width is that width which gives, using the formula in 2.2.2, the same efficiency as would be obtained using the formula in 2.2.8 for the diagonal ligament in question.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 2

### 2.3 Compensating effect of tube stubs

2.3.1 Where a drum or header is drilled for tube stubs fitted by strength welding, either in line or in staggered formation, the effective diameter of holes is to be taken as:

$$d_e = d_a - \frac{A}{t}$$

where

- $d_e$  = the equivalent diameter of the hole, in mm
- $d_a$  = the actual diameter of the hole, in mm
- $t$  = the thickness of the shell, in mm
- $A$  = the compensating area provided by each tube stub and its welding fillets, in mm<sup>2</sup>.

2.3.2 The compensating area,  $A$ , is to be measured in a plane through the axis of the tube stub parallel to the longitudinal axis of the drum or header and is to be calculated as follows, see Figs. 1.2.7 and 1.2.8:

- the cross-sectional area of the stub, in excess of that required by 7.1 for the minimum tube thickness, from the interior surface of the shell up to a distance,  $b$ , from the outer surface of the shell;
- plus the cross-sectional area of the stub projecting inside the shell within a distance,  $b$ , from the inner surface of the shell;
- plus the cross-sectional area of the welding fillets inside and outside the shell;

where

$$b = \sqrt{d_a t_b}$$

$$t_b = \text{actual thickness of tube stub, in mm.}$$

2.3.3 Where the material of the tube stub has an allowable stress lower than that of the shell, the compensating cross-sectional area of the stub is to be multiplied by the ratio:

$$\frac{\text{allowable stress of stub at design metal temperature}}{\text{allowable stress of shell at design metal temperature}}$$

### 2.4 Unreinforced openings

2.4.1 Openings in a definite pattern, such as tube holes, may be designed in accordance with the Rules for ligaments in 2.2, provided that the diameter of the largest hole in the group does not exceed that permitted by 2.4.2.

2.4.2 The maximum diameter,  $d$ , of any unreinforced isolated openings is to be determined by the following formula:

$$d = 8,08 [D_o t (1 - K)]^{1/3} \text{ in mm}$$

The value of  $K$  to be used is calculated from the following formula:

$$K = \frac{p D_o}{18,2 \sigma t} \text{ but is not to be taken as greater than } 0,99$$

where

- $p$ ,  $D_o$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 1.2
- $t$  = actual thickness of shell, in mm.

2.4.3 For elliptical or oval holes,  $d$ , for the purposes of 2.4.2, refers to the major axis when this lies longitudinally or to the mean of the major and minor axes when the minor axis lies longitudinally.

2.4.4 No unreinforced opening is to exceed 200 mm in diameter.

2.4.5 Holes may be considered isolated if the centre distance between two holes on the longitudinal axis of a cylindrical shell is not less than:

$$d + 1,1 \sqrt{D t} \text{ with a minimum } 5d$$

$d$  = diameter of openings in shell (mean diameter if dissimilarly sized holes involved)

$D$  = mean diameter of shell

$t$  = actual thickness of shell

Where the centre distance is less than so derived, the holes are to be fully compensated.

Where two holes are offset on a diagonal line, the diagonal efficiency from Fig. 1.2.6 may be used to derive an equivalent longitudinal centre distance for the purposes of this paragraph.

### 2.5 Reinforced openings

2.5.1 Openings larger than those permitted by 2.4 are to be compensated in accordance with Fig. 1.2.9(a) or (b). The following symbols are used in Fig. 1.2.9(a) and (b):

$t_s$  = calculated thickness of a shell without joint or opening or corrosion allowance, in mm

$t_d$  = thickness calculated in accordance with 7.1 without corrosion allowance, in mm

$t_a$  = actual thickness of shell plate without corrosion allowance, in mm

$t_b$  = actual thickness of standpipe without minus tolerances and corrosion allowance, in mm

$t_r$  = thickness of added reinforcement, in mm

$D_i$  = internal diameter of cylindrical shell, in mm

$d_o$  = diameter of hole in shell, in mm

$L$  = width of added reinforcement not exceeding  $D$ , in mm

$$C = \sqrt{d_o t_b} \text{ in mm}$$

$$D = \sqrt{D_i t_a} \text{ and is not to exceed } 0,5d_o, \text{ in mm}$$

$\sigma$  = shell plate allowable stress, N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\sigma_p$  = standpipe allowable stress, N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\sigma_r$  = added reinforcement allowable stress, N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\sigma_w$  = weld metal allowable stress, N/mm<sup>2</sup>

NOTE

$\sigma_p$ ,  $\sigma_r$  and  $\sigma_w$  are not to be taken as greater than  $\sigma$ .

2.5.2 For elliptical or oval holes, the dimension on the meridian of the shell is to be used for  $d_o$  in 2.5.1.

2.5.3 Compensation is to be distributed equally on either side of the centreline of the opening.

2.5.4 The welds attaching standpipes and reinforcing plates to the shell are to be of sufficient size to transmit the full strength of the reinforcing areas and all other loadings to which they may be subjected.



# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 2

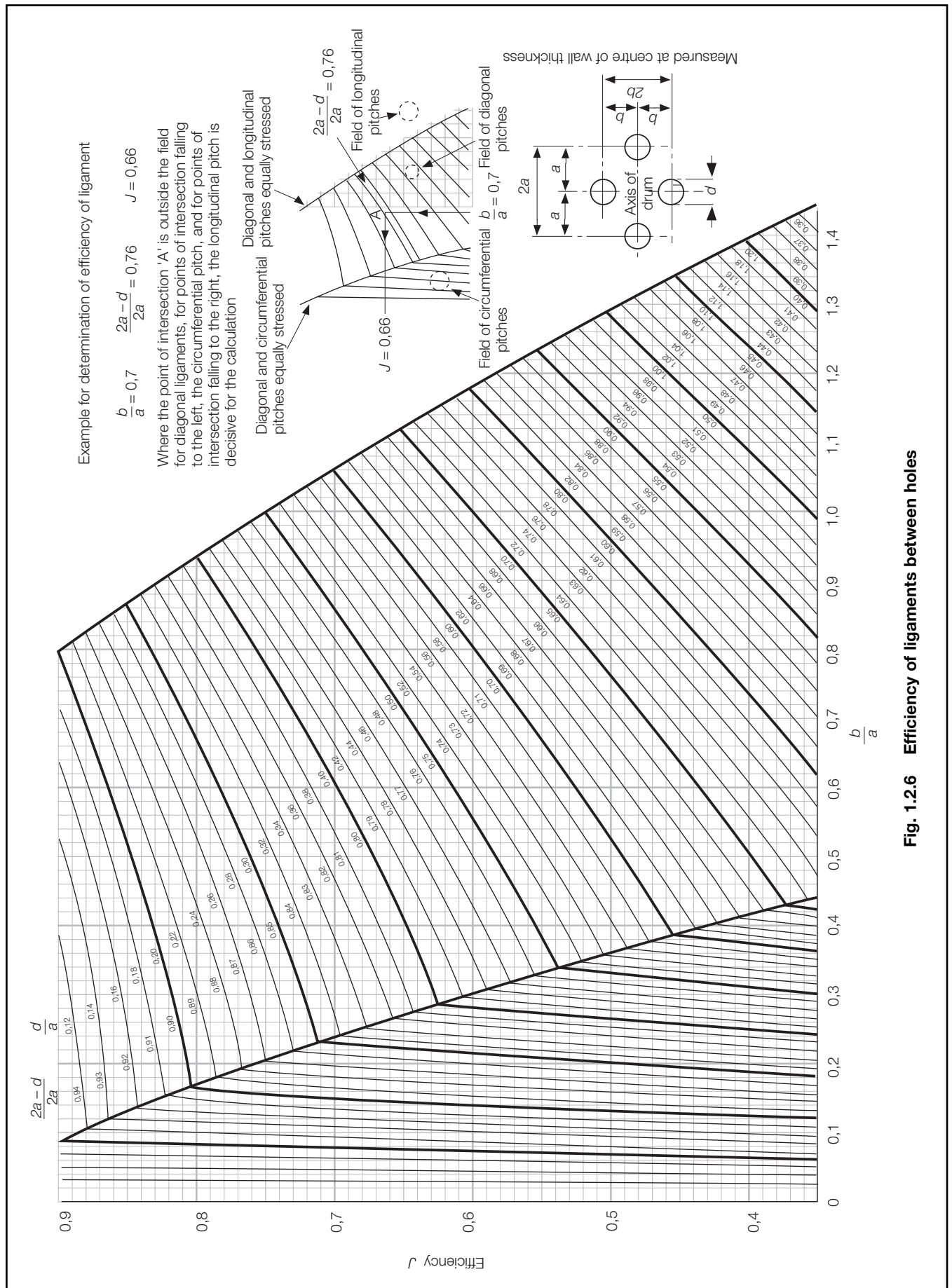
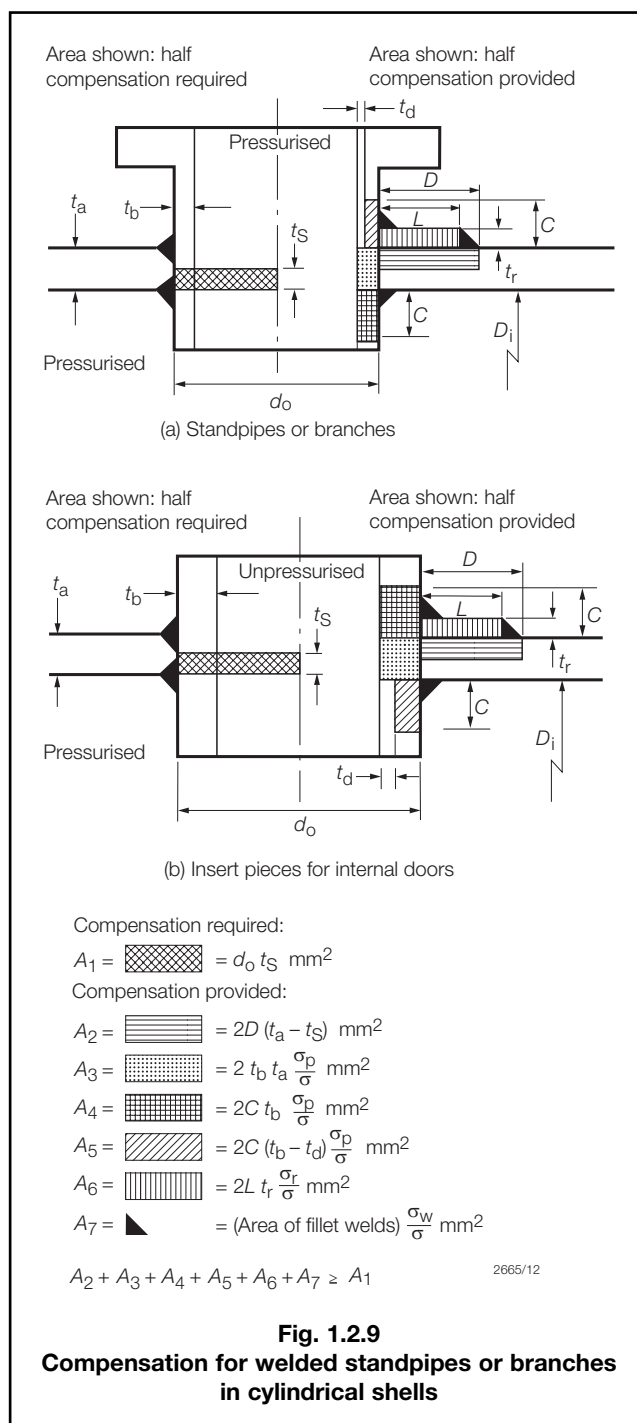
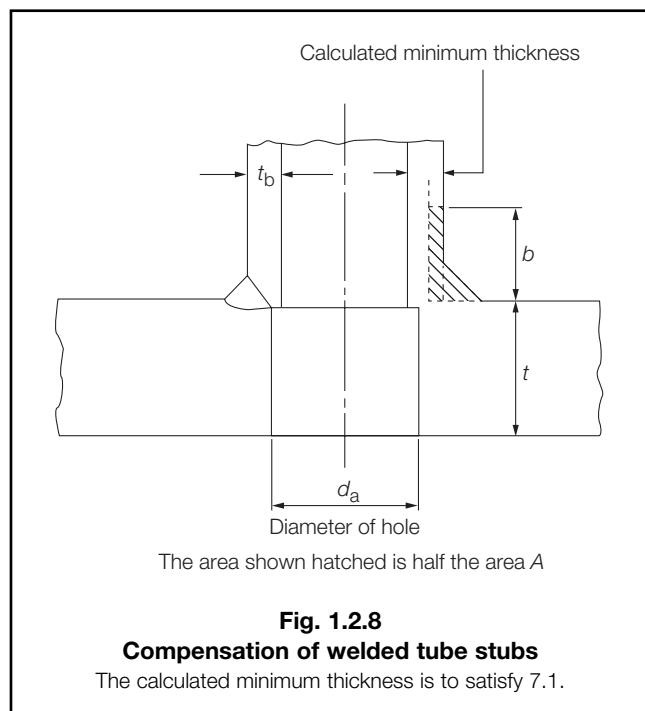
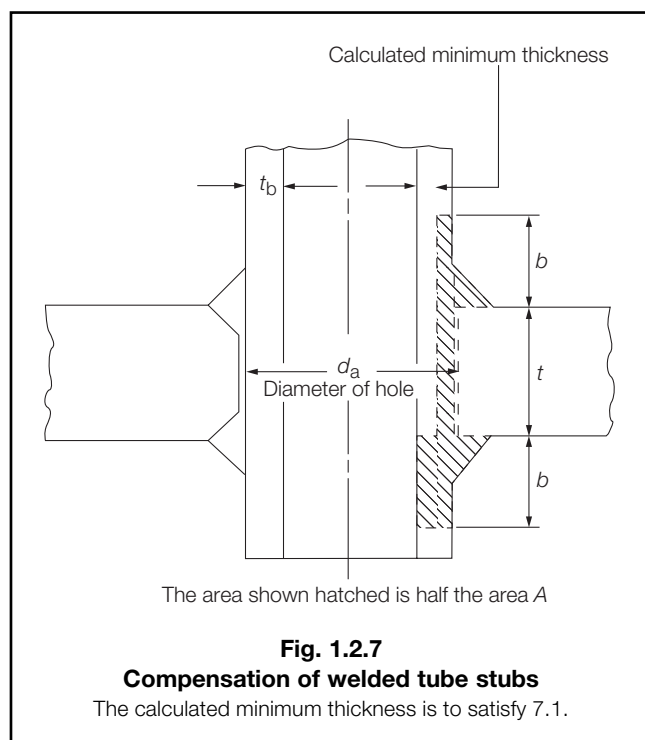


Fig. 1.2.6 Efficiency of ligaments between holes

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

### Section 2



# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 3 & 4

### Section 3 Spherical shells subject to internal pressure

#### 3.1 Minimum thickness

3.1.1 The minimum thickness of a spherical shell is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pR_i}{20\sigma J - 0,5p} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t, p, R_i, \sigma$  and  $J$  are as defined in 1.2.

3.1.2 The formula in 3.1.1 is applicable only where the resulting thickness does not exceed half the internal radius.

3.1.3 Openings in spherical shells requiring compensation are to comply, in general, with 2.5, using the calculated and actual thicknesses of the spherical shell as applicable.

where

$t, p, R_i, \sigma$  and  $J$  are as defined in 1.2.

4.1.5 The thickness required by 4.1.1 for the knuckle section of a torispherical head is to extend past the common tangent point of the knuckle and crown radii into the crown-section for a distance not less than  $0,5 \sqrt{R_i t}$  mm, before reducing to the crown thickness permitted by 4.1.4, where

$t$  = the required thickness from 4.1.1.

4.1.6 In all cases,  $H$  is to be measured from the commencement of curvature, see Fig. 1.4.2.

4.1.7 The minimum thickness of the head,  $t$ , is to be not less than 6,0 mm.

4.1.8 For ends which are butt welded to the drum shell, see 1.8, the thickness of the edge of the flange for connection to the shell is to be not less than the thickness of an unpierced seamless or welded shell, whichever is applicable, of the same diameter and material and determined by 2.1.

### Section 4 Dished ends subject to internal pressure

#### 4.1 Minimum thickness

4.1.1 The thickness,  $t$ , of semi-ellipsoidal and hemispherical unstayed ends, and the knuckle section of torispherical ends, dished from plate, having pressure on the concave side and satisfying the conditions listed below, is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pD_o K}{20\sigma J} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t, p, D_o, \sigma$  and  $J$  are as defined in 1.2

$K$  = a shape factor, see 4.2 and Fig. 1.4.1.

4.1.2 For semi-ellipsoidal ends:

the external height,  $H \geq 0,18D_o$

where

$D_o$  = the external diameter of the parallel portion of the end, in mm.

4.1.3 For torispherical ends:

the internal radius,  $R_i \leq D_o$

the internal knuckle radius,  $r_i \geq 0,1D_o$

the internal knuckle radius,  $r_i \geq 3t$

the external height,  $H \geq 0,18D_o$  and is determined as follows:

$$H = R_o - \sqrt{(R_o - 0,5D_o)(R_o + 0,5D_o - 2r_o)}$$

4.1.4 In addition to the formula in 4.1.1 the thickness,  $t$ , of a torispherical head, made from more than one plate, in the crown section is to be not less than that determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pR_i}{20\sigma J - 0,5p} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

#### 4.2 Shape factors for dished ends

4.2.1 The shape factor,  $K$ , to be used in 4.1.1 is to be obtained from the curves in Fig. 1.4.1, and depends

on the ratio of height to diameter  $\frac{H}{D_o}$ .

4.2.2 The lowest curve in the series provides the factor,  $K$ , for plain (i.e., unpierced) ends. For lower values of  $\frac{H}{D_o}$ ,

$K$  depends upon the ratio of thickness to diameter,  $\frac{H}{D_o}$ , as well as on the ratio  $\frac{H}{D_o}$ , and a trial calculation may be

necessary to arrive at the correct value of  $K$ .

#### 4.3 Dished ends with unreinforced openings

4.3.1 Openings in dished ends may be circular, obround or approximately elliptical.

4.3.2 The upper curves in Fig. 1.4.1 provide values of  $K$ , to be used in 4.1.1, for ends with unreinforced openings. The selection of the correct curve depends on the value

$\frac{d}{\sqrt{D_o t}}$  and trial calculation is necessary to select the correct

curve, where

$d$  = the diameter of the largest opening in the end plate, in mm (in the case of an elliptical opening, the larger axis of the ellipse)

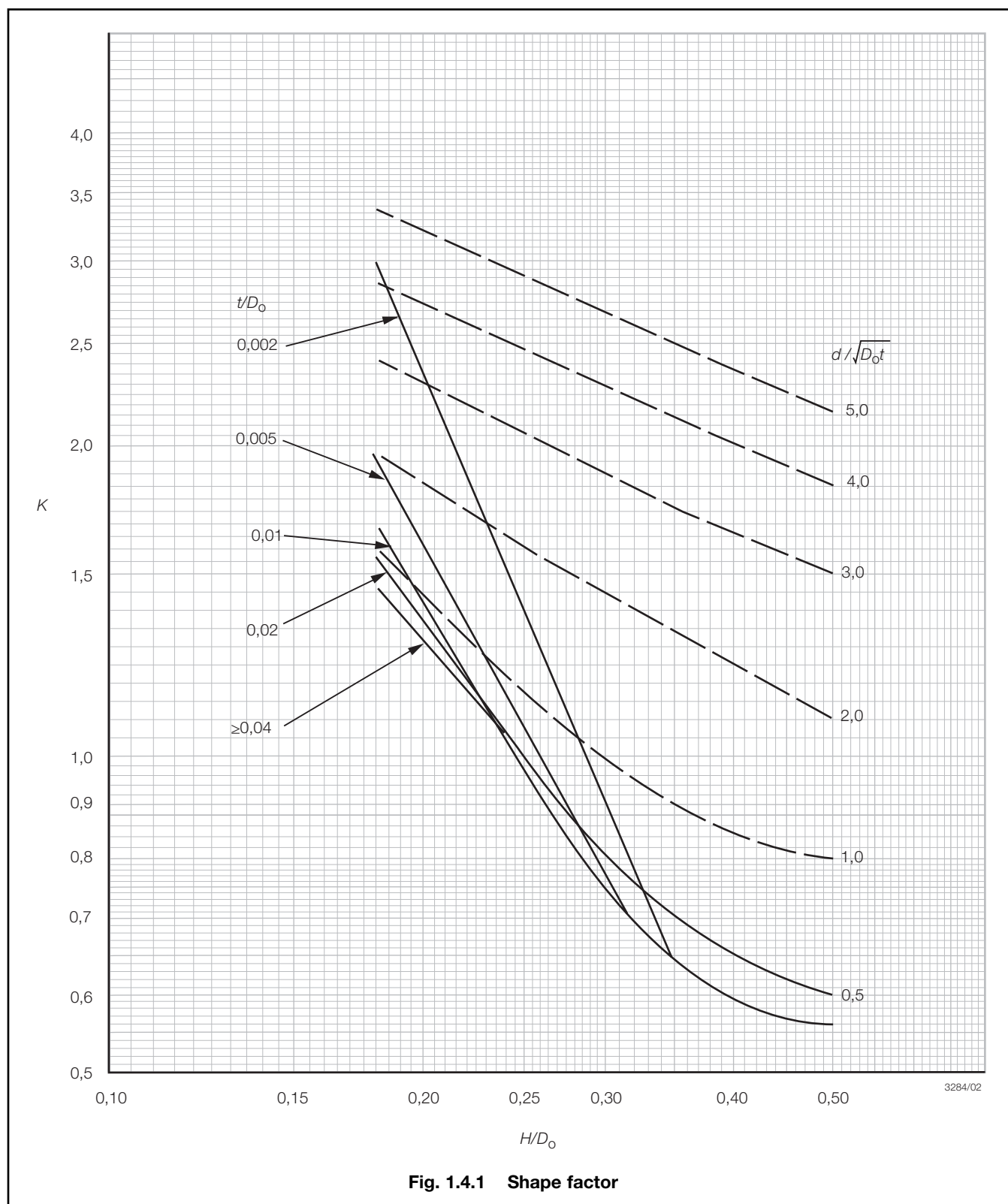
$t$  = minimum thickness, after dishing, in mm

$D_o$  = outside diameter of dished end, in mm.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 4



4.3.3 The following requirements must in any case be satisfied:

$$\frac{t}{D_o} \leq 0,1$$

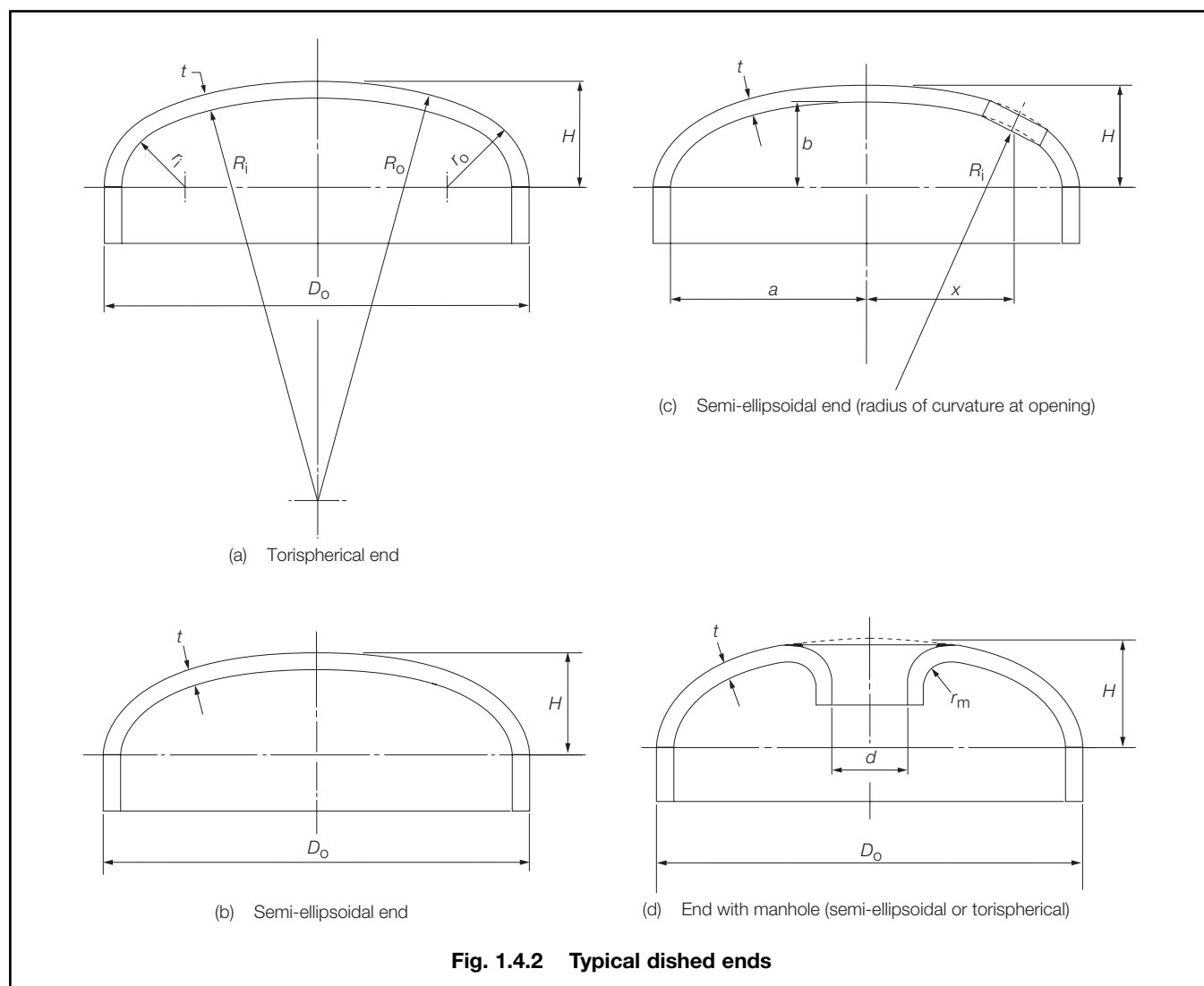
$$\frac{d}{D_o} \leq 0,7.$$

4.3.4 From Fig. 1.4.1 for any selected ratio of  $\frac{H}{D_o}$ , the curve for unpierced ends gives a value for  $\frac{d}{\sqrt{D_o t}}$  as well as for  $K$ . Openings giving a value of  $\frac{d}{\sqrt{D_o t}}$  not greater than the value so obtained may thus be pierced through an end designed as unpierced without any increase in thickness.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 4



### 4.4 Flanged openings in dished ends

4.4.1 The requirements in 4.3 apply equally to flanged openings and to unflanged openings cut in the plate of an end. No reduction may be made in end plate thickness on account of flanging.

4.4.2 Where openings are flanged, the radius,  $r_m$ , of the flanging is to be not less than 25 mm, see Fig. 1.4.2(d). The thickness of the flanged portion may be less than the calculated thickness.

### 4.5 Location of unreinforced and flanged openings in dished ends

4.5.1 Unreinforced and flanged openings in dished ends are to be so arranged that the distance from the edge of the hole to the outside edge of the plate and the distance between openings are not less than those shown in Fig. 1.4.3.

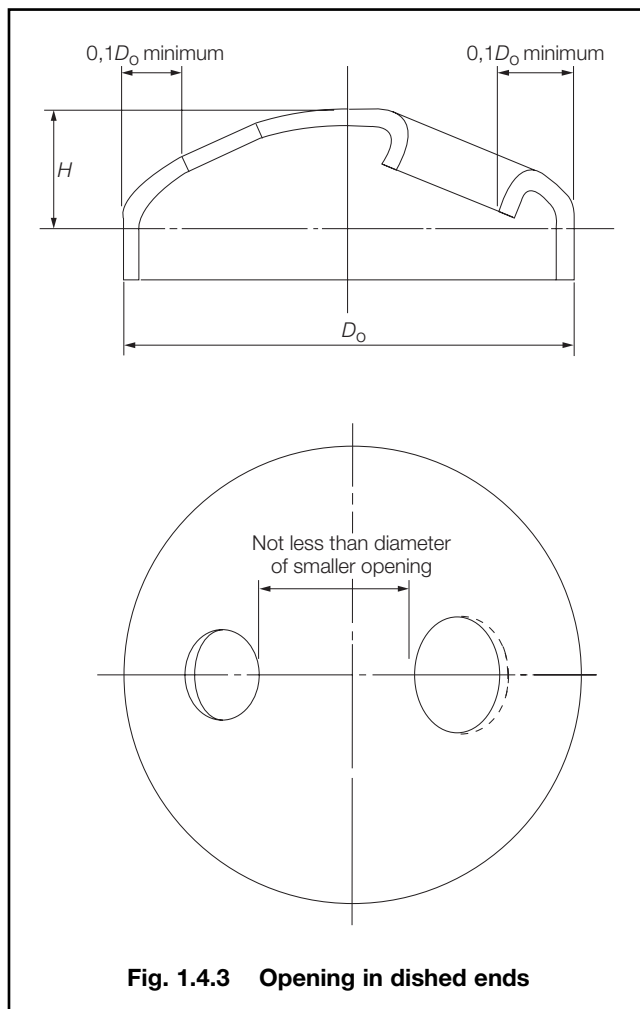
### 4.6 Dished ends with reinforced openings

4.6.1 Where it is desired to use a large opening in a dished end of less thickness than would be required by 4.3, the end is to be reinforced. This reinforcement may consist of a ring or standpipe welded into the hole, or of reinforcing plates welded to the outside and/or inside of the end in the vicinity of the hole, or a combination of both methods, see Fig. 1.4.4. Forged reinforcements may be used.

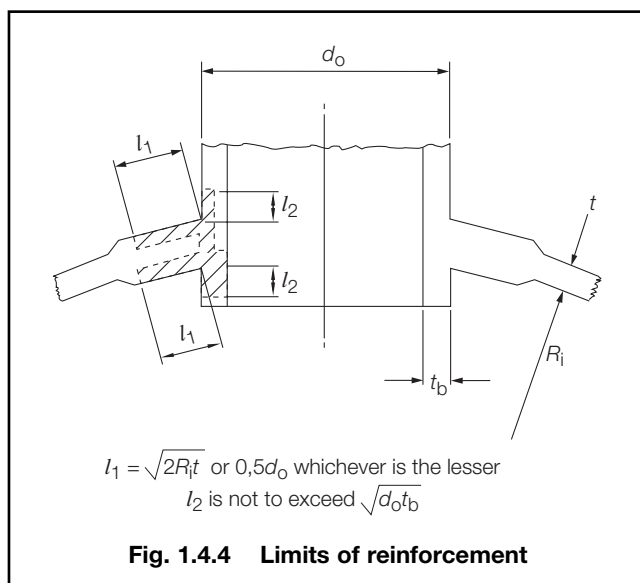
# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 4



**Fig. 1.4.3 Opening in dished ends**



**Fig. 1.4.4 Limits of reinforcement**

4.6.2 Reinforcing material with the following limits may be taken as effective reinforcement:

- The effective width,  $l_1$  of reinforcement is not to exceed  $\sqrt{2R_i t}$  or  $0,5d_o$  whichever is the lesser.
- The effective length,  $l_2$  of a reinforcing ring is not to exceed  $\sqrt{d_o t_b}$

where

$R_i$  = the internal radius of the spherical part of a torispherical end, in mm, or

$R_i$  = internal radius of the meridian of the ellipse at the centre of the opening, of a semi-ellipsoidal end, in mm, and is given by the following formula:

$$\frac{[a^4 - x^2 (a^2 - b^2)]^{3/2}}{a^4 b}$$

where

$a$ ,  $b$  and  $x$  are shown in Fig. 1.4.2(c)

$d_o$  = external diameter of ring or standpipe, in mm

$l_1$  and  $l_2$  are shown in Fig. 1.4.4

$t_b$  = actual thickness of ring or standpipe, in mm.

4.6.3 The shape factor,  $K$ , for a dished end having a reinforced opening can be read from Fig. 1.4.1 using the value obtained from:

$$\frac{d_o - \frac{A}{t}}{\sqrt{D_o t}} \text{ instead of from } \frac{d}{\sqrt{D_o t}}$$

where

$A$  = the effective cross-sectional area of reinforcement and is to be twice the area shown shaded on Fig. 1.4.4.

As in 4.3, a trial calculation is necessary in order to select the correct curve.

4.6.4 The area shown in Fig. 1.4.4 is to be obtained as follows:

- Calculate the cross-sectional area of reinforcement both inside and outside the end plate within the length,  $l_1$
- plus the full cross-sectional area of that part of the ring or standpipe which projects inside the end plate up to a distance,  $l_2$
- plus the full cross-sectional area of that part of the ring or standpipe which projects outside the internal surface of the end plate up to a distance,  $l_2$  and deduct the sectional area which the ring or standpipe would have if its thickness were as calculated in accordance with 7.1.

4.6.5 If the material of the ring or the reinforcing plates have an allowable stress value lower than that of the end plate, then the effective cross-sectional area,  $A$ , is to be multiplied by the ratio:

$$\frac{\text{allowable stress of reinforcing plate at design temperature}}{\text{allowable stress of end plate at design temperature}}$$

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 4 & 5

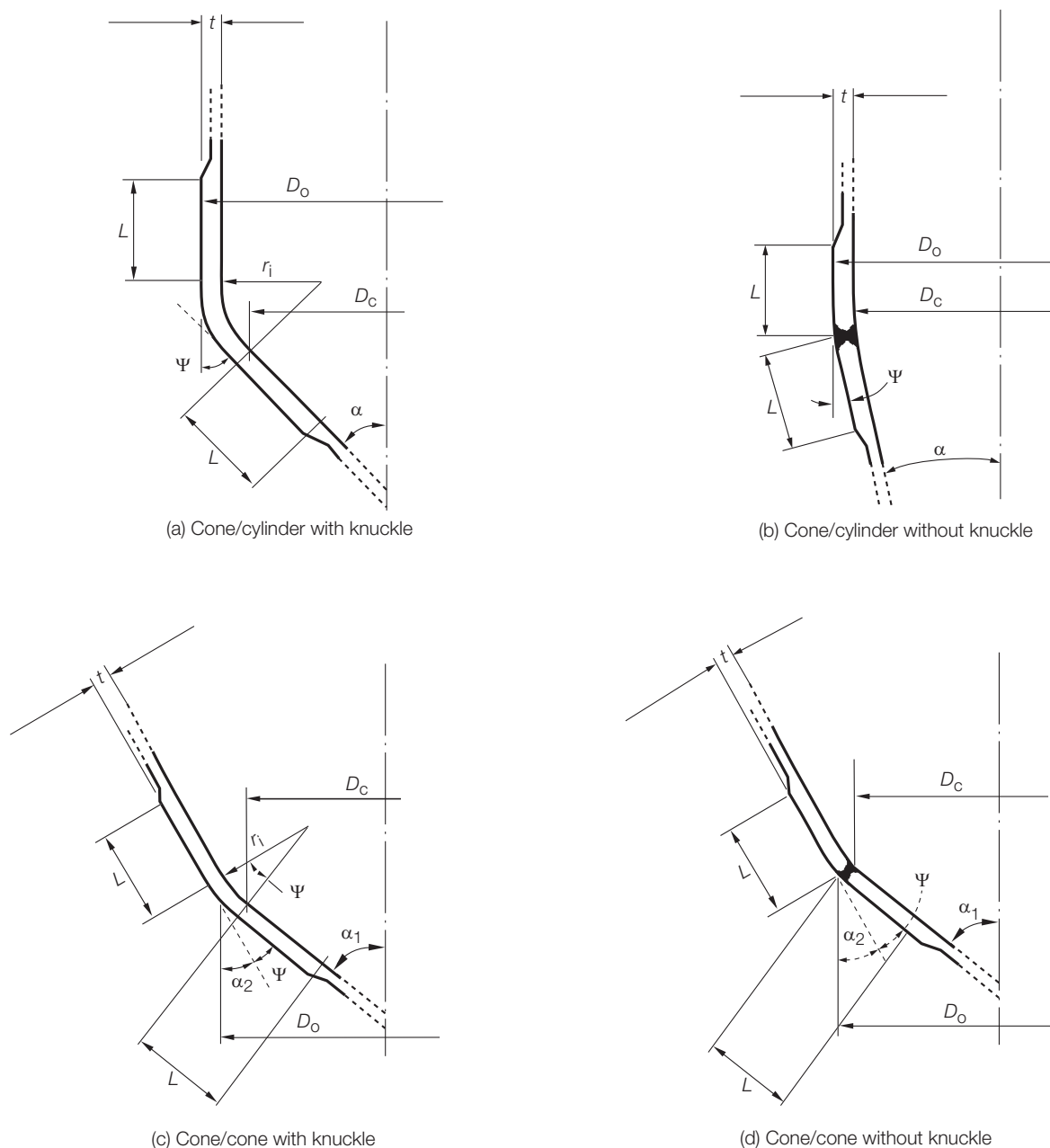
### 4.7 Torispherical dished ends with reinforced openings

4.7.1 If an opening and its reinforcement are positioned entirely within the crown section, the compensation requirements are to be as for a spherical shell, using the crown radius as the spherical shell radius. Otherwise, the requirements of 4.6 are to be applied.

### Section 5 Conical ends subject to internal pressure

#### 5.1 General

5.1.1 Conical ends and conical reducing sections, as shown in Fig. 1.5.1, are to be designed in accordance with the equations given in 5.2.



**Fig. 1.5.1 Conical ends and conical reducing sections**

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 5

5.1.2 Connections between cylindrical shell and conical sections and ends should preferably be by means of a knuckle transition radius. Typical permitted details are shown in Fig. 1.5.1. Alternatively, conical sections and ends may be butt welded to cylinders without a knuckle radius where the change in angle of slope,  $\psi$ , between the two sections under consideration does not exceed 30°.

5.1.3 Conical ends may be constructed of several ring sections of decreasing thickness, as determined by the corresponding decreasing diameter.

### 5.2 Minimum thickness

5.2.1 The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of cylinder, knuckle and conical section at the junction and within the distance,  $L$ , from the junction is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p D_o K}{20\sigma J} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t, p, \sigma$  and  $J$  are as defined in 1.2

$K$  = a factor, taking into account the stress in the knuckle, see Table 1.5.1.

$D_o$  = outside diameter, in mm, of the conical section or end, see Fig. 1.5.1.

5.2.2 If the distance of a circumferential seam from the knuckle or junction is not to be less than  $L$ , then  $J$  is to be taken as 1,0; otherwise  $J$  is to be taken as the weld joint factor appropriate to the circumferential seam, where

$L$  = distance, in mm, from the knuckle or junction within which meridional stresses determine the required thickness, see Fig. 1.5.1

$$= 0,5 \sqrt{\frac{D_o t}{\cos \psi}}$$

$r_i$  = inside radius of transition knuckle, in mm, which is to be taken as  $0,01D_o$  in the case of conical sections without knuckle transition.

$\psi$  = difference between angle of slope of two adjoining conical sections, see Fig. 1.5.1.

5.2.3 The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of those parts of conical sections not less than a distance,  $L$ , from the junction with a cylinder or other conical section is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p D_c}{(20\sigma J - p)} \frac{1}{\cos \alpha} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$D_c$  = inside diameter, in mm of conical section or end at the position under consideration, see Fig. 1.5.1

$\alpha, \alpha_1, \alpha_2$  = angle of slope of conical section (at the point under consideration) to the vessel axis, see Fig. 1.5.1.

5.2.4 The thickness of conical sections having an angle of inclination to the vessel axis of more than 75° is to be determined as for a flat plate.

**Table 1.5.1 Values of  $K$  as a function of  $\psi$  and  $r_i/D_o$**

| $\psi$ | Values of $K$ for $r_i/D_o$ ratios of |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|--------|---------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
|        | 0,01                                  | 0,02 | 0,03 | 0,04 | 0,06 | 0,08 | 0,10 | 0,15 | 0,20 | 0,30 | 0,40 | 0,50 |
| 10°    | 0,70                                  | 0,65 | 0,60 | 0,60 | 0,55 | 0,55 | 0,55 | 0,55 | 0,55 | 0,55 | 0,55 | 0,55 |
| 20°    | 1,00                                  | 0,90 | 0,85 | 0,80 | 0,70 | 0,65 | 0,60 | 0,55 | 0,55 | 0,55 | 0,55 | 0,55 |
| 30°    | 1,35                                  | 1,20 | 1,10 | 1,00 | 0,90 | 0,85 | 0,80 | 0,70 | 0,65 | 0,55 | 0,55 | 0,55 |
| 45°    | 2,05                                  | 1,85 | 1,65 | 1,50 | 1,30 | 1,20 | 1,10 | 0,95 | 0,90 | 0,70 | 0,55 | 0,55 |
| 60°    | 3,20                                  | 2,85 | 2,55 | 2,35 | 2,00 | 1,75 | 1,60 | 1,40 | 1,25 | 1,00 | 0,70 | 0,55 |
| 75°    | 6,80                                  | 5,85 | 5,35 | 4,75 | 3,85 | 3,50 | 3,15 | 2,70 | 2,40 | 1,55 | 1,00 | 0,55 |



# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 6 & 7

### Section 6 Standpipes and branches

#### 6.1 Minimum thickness

6.1.1 The minimum wall thickness of standpipes and branches is to be not less than that determined by 7.1 increased by the addition of a corrosion allowance of 0,75 mm, making such additions as may be necessary on account of bending, static loads and vibration. The wall thickness, however, is to be not less than:

$$t = 0,015D_o + 3,2 \text{ mm}$$

This thickness need only be maintained for a length,  $L$ , from the outside surface of the vessel, but need not extend past the first connection, butt weld or flange, where:

$$L = 3,5 \sqrt{D_o t} \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  and  $D_o$  are as defined in 1.2.

6.1.2 For boilers having a working pressure exceeding 50 bar and safety valves of full lift or full bore type, the thickness of the branch pipe carrying the superheater or drum safety valves is to be not less than:

$$t = \frac{1}{\sigma} \left[ 1,7d + \frac{DWK}{1,3d^2} \right] \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 1.2

$d$  = inside diameter of branch, in mm

$D$  = inside diameter of safety valve discharge, in mm

$K$  = 2 for superheater safety valves

= 1 for drum safety valves

$W$  = total valve throughput, in kg/h.

6.1.3 The offset from the centreline of the waste steam pipe to the centreline of the safety valve is not to exceed four times the outside diameter of the safety valve discharge pipe. The waste steam pipe system is to be supported and arrangements made for expansion such that no direct loading is imposed on the safety valve chests and the effects of vibration are to be minimised.

6.1.4 The pipe or header which carries the superheater safety valve is to be suitably thickened but is to be not less than the thickness required for the branch for a distance of  $\sqrt{D_2 t}$  on either side of the opening

where

$t$  = thickness required for the branch

$D_2$  = inside diameter of the pipe or header.

6.1.5 Except as required by 6.1.4, in no case need the wall thickness exceed the minimum shell thickness as required by 2.1, 3.1 or 4.1 as applicable.

6.1.6 Where a standpipe or branch is connected by screwing, the thickness is to be measured at the root of the thread.

6.1.7 For boiler, superheater or economiser tubes, the minimum thickness of the drum or the header connection or tube stub is to be calculated as part of the tube in accordance with 7.1.

### Section 7 Boiler tubes subject to internal pressure

#### 7.1 Minimum thickness

7.1.1 The minimum wall thickness of straight tubes subject to internal pressure is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p D_o}{20\sigma + p} \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$ ,  $p$ ,  $D_o$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 1.2.

NOTES

1. Provision must be made for minus tolerances where necessary and also in cases where abnormal corrosion or erosion is expected in service. For bending allowances, see 7.2.
2. Thickness is in no case to be less than the minimum shown in Table 1.7.1.

Table 1.7.1 Minimum thickness of tubes

| Nominal outside diameter of tube in mm | Minimum thickness in mm |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| $\leq 38$                              | 1,75                    |
| $> 38 \leq 50$                         | 2,16                    |
| $> 50 \leq 70$                         | 2,40                    |
| $> 70 \leq 75$                         | 2,67                    |
| $> 75 \leq 95$                         | 3,05                    |
| $> 95 \leq 100$                        | 3,28                    |
| $> 100 \leq 125$                       | 3,50                    |

7.1.2 The minimum thickness of boiler, superheater, reheater and economiser tubes is to be determined by using the design stress appropriate to the mean wall temperature, which will be considered to be the metal temperature. Unless it is otherwise agreed between the manufacturer and LR, the metal temperature used to decide the value of  $\sigma$  for these tubes is to be determined as follows:

- (a) The calculation temperature for boiler tubes is to be taken as not less than the saturated steam temperature, plus 25°C for tubes mainly subject to convection heat, or plus 50°C for tubes mainly subject to radiant heat.
- (b) The calculation temperature for superheater and reheater tubes is to be generally taken as not less than the steam temperature expected in the part being considered, plus 35°C for tubes mainly subject to convection heat. For tubes mainly subject to radiant heat, the calculation temperature is generally to be taken as not less than the steam temperature expected in the part being considered, plus 50°C, but the actual metal temperature expected is to be stated when submitting plans.
- (c) The calculation temperature for economiser tubes is to be taken as not less than 35°C in excess of the maximum temperature of the internal fluid.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 7 & 8

**7.1.3** The minimum thickness of downcomer tubes and pipes which form an integral part of the boiler and which are not exposed to combustion gases is to comply with the requirements for steam pipes.

### 7.2 Tube bending

**7.2.1** Where boiler, superheater, reheater and economiser tubes are bent, the resulting thickness of the tubes at the thinnest part is to be not less than that required for straight tubes, unless it can be demonstrated that the method of forming the bend results in no decrease in strength at the bend. The manufacturer is to demonstrate in connection with any new method of tube bending that this condition is satisfied.

**7.2.2** Tube bending and subsequent heat treatment, where necessary, is to be carried out as to ensure that residual stresses do not adversely affect the strength of the tube for the design purpose intended.

### ■ Cross-references

For details of manholes, sight holes and doors, see 14.1.  
For details of tube holes and fitting of tubes, see 14.6.

## ■ Section 8 Headers

### 8.1 Circular section headers

**8.1.1** The minimum thickness of circular section headers is to be calculated in accordance with the formula for cylindrical shells in 2.1.

### 8.2 Rectangular section headers

**8.2.1** The thickness of the flat walls of rectangular section headers is to be determined at the centre of the sides, at all the lines of holes and at the corners. The minimum required shall be the greatest thickness determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pn}{20\sigma J} + \sqrt{\frac{0.4Yp}{\sigma J_1}} + 0.75 \text{ mm}$$

where

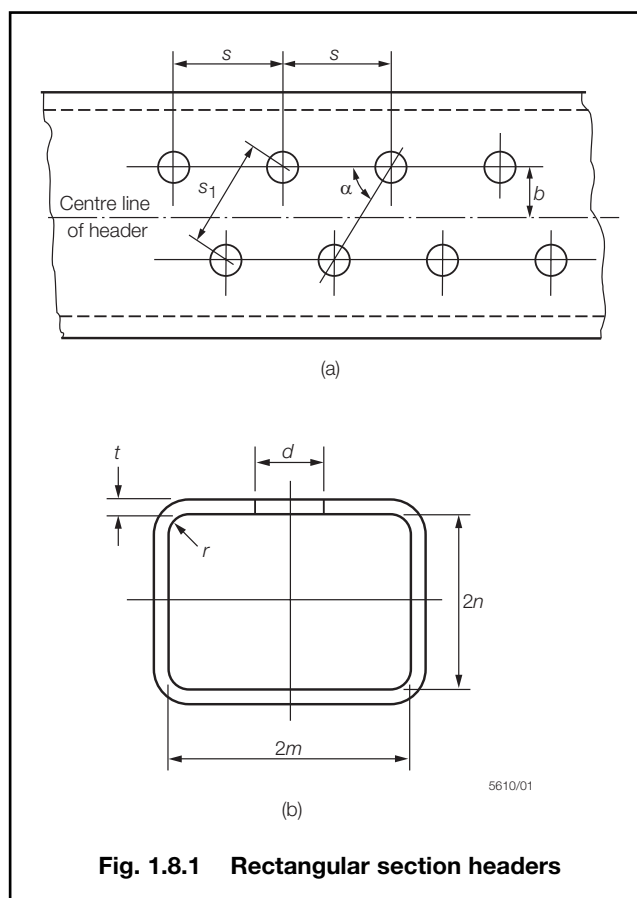
$t, p$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 1.2

$n$  = one half of the internal width of the wall perpendicular to that under consideration, in mm, see Fig. 1.8.1

$Y$  = a coefficient determined in accordance with 8.2.2. In all cases if the value of  $Y$  is negative, the sign is to be ignored.

$J$  = ligament efficiency for membrane stresses determined in accordance with 8.2.3

$J_1$  = ligament efficiency for bending stresses determined in accordance with 8.2.3.



**Fig. 1.8.1 Rectangular section headers**

**8.2.2** The coefficient  $Y$  for use in 8.2.1 is to be determined as follows:

(a) at the centre of the side with internal width,  $2m$ :

$$Y = \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{m^3 + n^3}{m + n} \right) - \frac{1}{2} m^2$$

where

$m$  = one half of the internal width of the wall under consideration, in mm, see Fig. 1.8.1(b)

(b) at a line of holes parallel to the longitudinal axis of the header on the wall of width,  $2m$ :

$$Y = \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{m^3 + n^3}{m + n} \right) - \frac{m^2 + b^2}{2}$$

where

$b$  = distance from the centre of the holes to the centre line of the wall, in mm, see Fig. 1.8.1(a)

(c) to check the effect of the off-set on a staggered hole arrangement where the holes are positioned equidistant from the centre line of the wall:

$$Y = \cos \alpha \left\{ \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{m^3 + n^3}{m + n} \right) - \frac{m^2}{2} \right\}$$

where

$\alpha$  = the angle subtended by the diagonal ligament on the longitudinal ligament, see Fig. 1.8.1(a)

(d) at the corners:

$$Y = \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{m^3 + n^3}{m + n} \right)$$

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 8

8.2.3 The ligament efficiencies,  $J$  and  $J_1$ , are to be determined as follows:

(a) for a line of holes parallel to the longitudinal axis of the header:

$$J = \frac{s-d}{s}$$

(b) for the diagonals:

$$J = \frac{s_1-d}{s_1}$$

(c) for a line of holes parallel to the longitudinal axis of the header:

$$J_1 = \frac{s-d}{s} \quad \text{when } d < 0,6m$$

or

$$J_1 = \frac{s-0,6m}{s} \quad \text{when } d \geq 0,6m$$

(d) for the diagonals:

$$J_1 = \frac{s_1-d}{s_1} \quad \text{when } d < 0,6m$$

or

$$J_1 = \frac{s_1-0,6m}{s_1} \quad \text{when } d \geq 0,6m$$

where

$d$  = diameter of the hole in the header, in mm  
 $m$ ,  $s$  and  $s_1$ , in mm, are as shown in Fig. 1.8.1.

8.2.4 In the case of elliptical holes the value of  $d$  to be used in the equations for  $J$  and  $J_1$  is to be the inside dimension of the hole measured parallel to the longitudinal axis of the header. For evaluating the two limiting values of  $d$  in the equations for  $d_1$ , the value of  $d$  is to be the inside dimension of the hole measured perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the header.

8.2.5 The internal corner radius,  $r$ , is to be not less than one third of the mean of the nominal thicknesses of the two sides, but in no case to be less than 6,5 mm.

### 8.3 Toroidal furnace headers

8.3.1 The minimum thickness of a toroidal header forming the lower end of a waterwall furnace, and supporting the weight of the boiler and water, is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = A + \sqrt{A^2 + \frac{4M}{JS\sigma}} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$$A = \frac{pr}{30 J\sigma} \text{ mm}$$

$t$ ,  $p$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 1.2

$d_e$  = equivalent diameter of the tube hole in accordance with 2.3

$r$  = inside radius of toroid circular cross-section, in mm, see Fig. 1.8.2

$J$  = ligament efficiency of tube holes around toroid

$$= \frac{S-d_e}{S}$$

$S$  = pitch of tubes around the toroid, in mm

$$M = \frac{Wr}{3} - \frac{p d^2 r}{40} \text{ Nmm}$$

where

$W$  = imposed loading on each water wall tube due to the weight of the boiler and water, in N

$d$  = minimum diameter of the tube hole in the toroid, in mm

The calculation is to be performed at design pressure using the allowable stress at saturation temperature, and also at zero pressure using the allowable stress at 100°C.

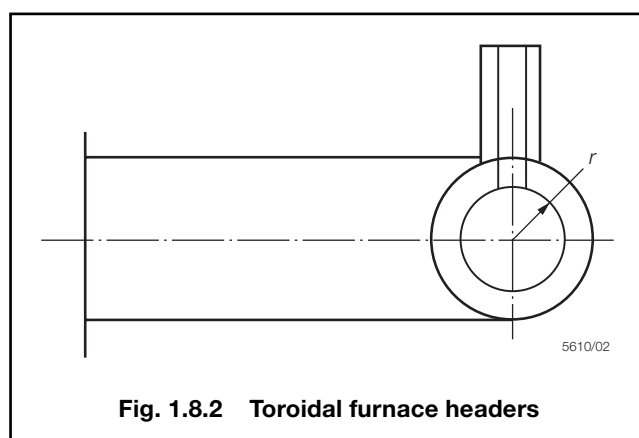


Fig. 1.8.2 Toroidal furnace headers

### 8.4 Header ends

8.4.1 The shape and thickness of ends forged integrally with the bodies of headers are to be the subject of special consideration.

8.4.2 Where sufficient experience of previous satisfactory service of headers with integrally forged ends cannot be shown, the suitability of a proposed form of end is to be proved in accordance with the provisions of 1.10.

8.4.3 Ends attached by welding are to be designed as follows:

Dished ends: these are to be in accordance with 4.1.

Flat ends: the minimum thickness of flat end plates is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = d_i \sqrt{\frac{pC}{\sigma}} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$p$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 1.2.

$t$  = minimum thickness of end plate, in mm

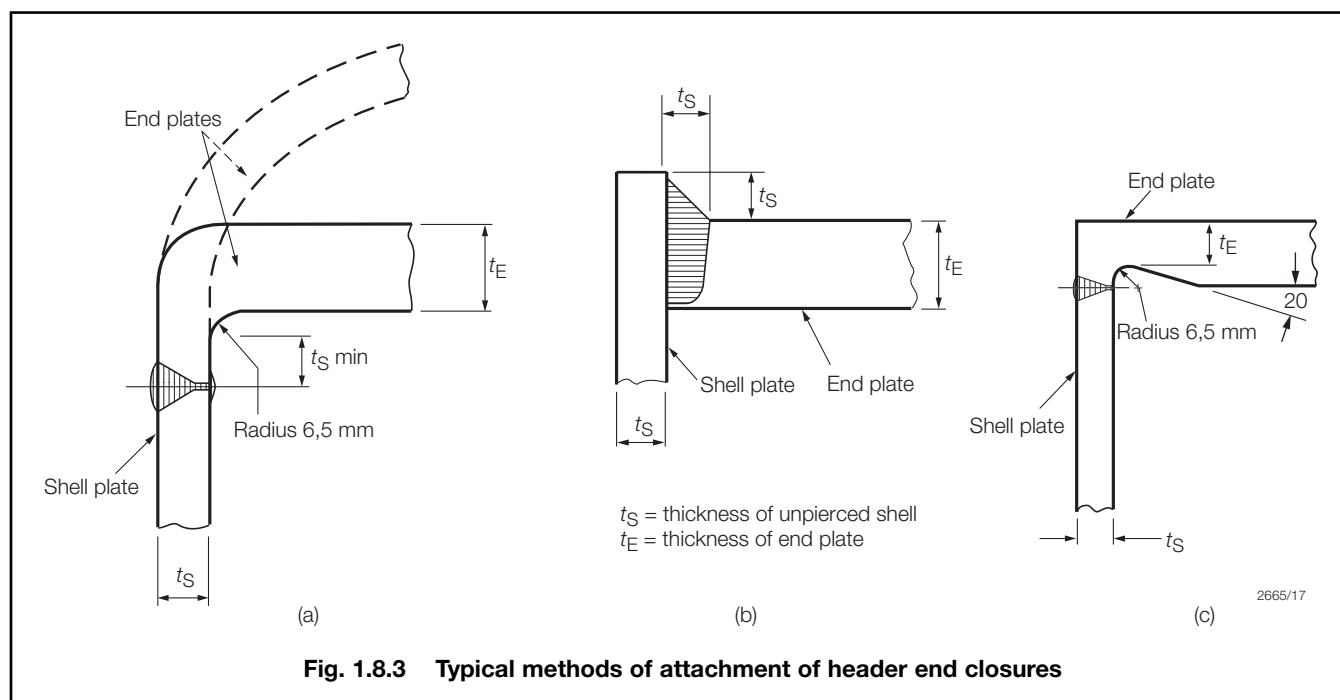
$d_i$  = internal diameter of circular header or least width between walls of rectangular header, in mm

$C$  = a constant depending on method of end attachment, see Fig. 1.8.3.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 8 &amp; 9



For end plates welded as shown in Fig. 1.8.3(a):

- $C = 0,019$  for circular headers  
 $= 0,032$  for rectangular headers.

For end plates welded as shown in Fig. 1.8.3(b) and (c):

- $C = 0,028$  circular headers  
 $= 0,040$  for rectangular headers.

**8.4.4** Where flat end plates are bolted to flanges attached to the ends of headers, the flanges and end plates are to be in accordance with recognised pipe flange standards.

**8.4.5** Openings in flat plates are to be compensated in accordance with Fig. 1.2.9(a) or (b), with the value of  $A_1$  the compensation required, calculated as follows:

$$A_1 = \frac{d_o}{2,4} t_f \text{ mm}^2$$

where

- $d_o$  = diameter of hole in flat plate, in mm  
 $t_f$  = required thickness of the flat plate in the area under consideration, in mm, calculated in accordance with 8.4.3 or 9.1.6, as applicable, without corrosion allowance  
 Limit  $D = 0,5d_o$ .

**9.1.2** Where combustion chamber or firebox plates are flanged for connection to the wrapper plate, the inside radius of flanging is to be equal to the thickness of the plate, with a minimum of 25 mm.

**9.1.3** Where unflanged flat plates are connected to the shell by welding, typical methods of attachment are shown in Fig. 1.9.1. Similar forms of attachment may be used where unflanged combustion chamber or firebox plates are connected to the wrapper plate by welding.

**9.1.4** Where the flange curvature is a point of support, this is to be taken at the commencement of curvature, or at a line distant 3,5 times the thickness of the plate from the outside of the plate, whichever is nearer to the flange.

**9.1.5** Where a flat plate is welded directly to a shell or wrapper plate, the point of support is to be taken at the inside of the shell or wrapper plate.

**9.1.6** The thickness,  $t$ , of those portions of flat plates supported by stays and around tube nests is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = Cd \sqrt{\frac{p}{\sigma}} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t, p$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 1.2

$d$  = diameter of the largest circle which can be drawn through at least three points of support. At least one point of support must lie on one side of any diameter of the circle.

$C$  = a constant, dependent on the method of support as detailed in 9.1.7. Where various forms of support are used,  $C$  is to be the mean of the values for the respective methods adopted.

## Section 9

### Flat surfaces and flat tube plates

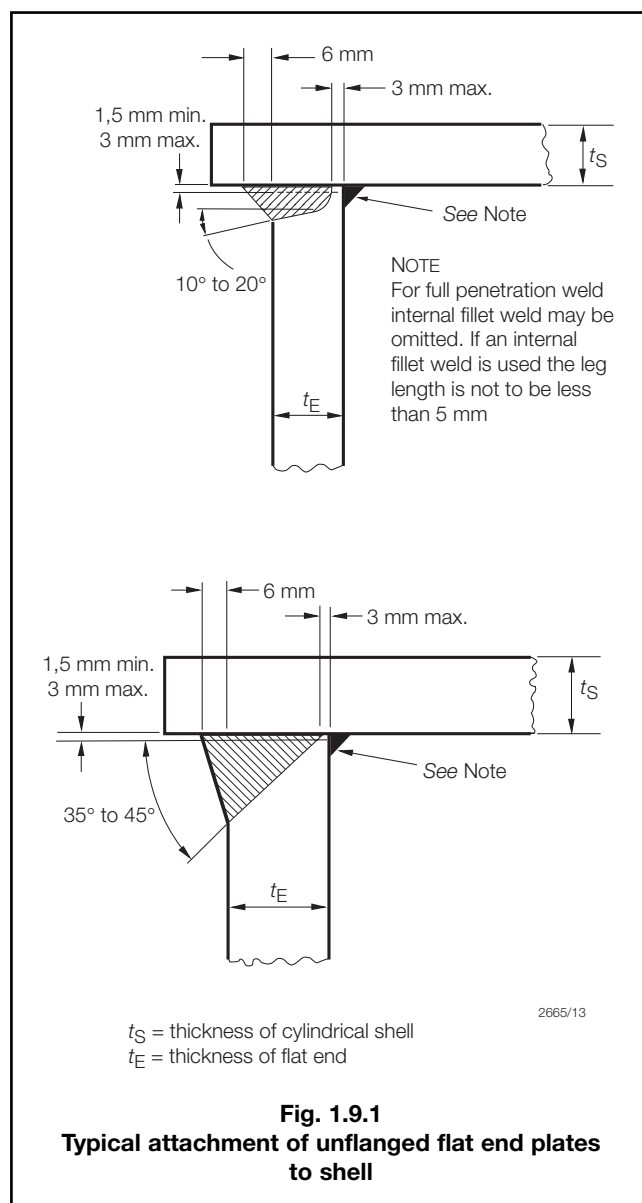
#### 9.1 Stayed flat surfaces

**9.1.1** Where flat end plates are flanged for connection to the shell, the inside radius of flanging is to be not less than 1,75 times the thickness of the plate, with a minimum of 38 mm.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

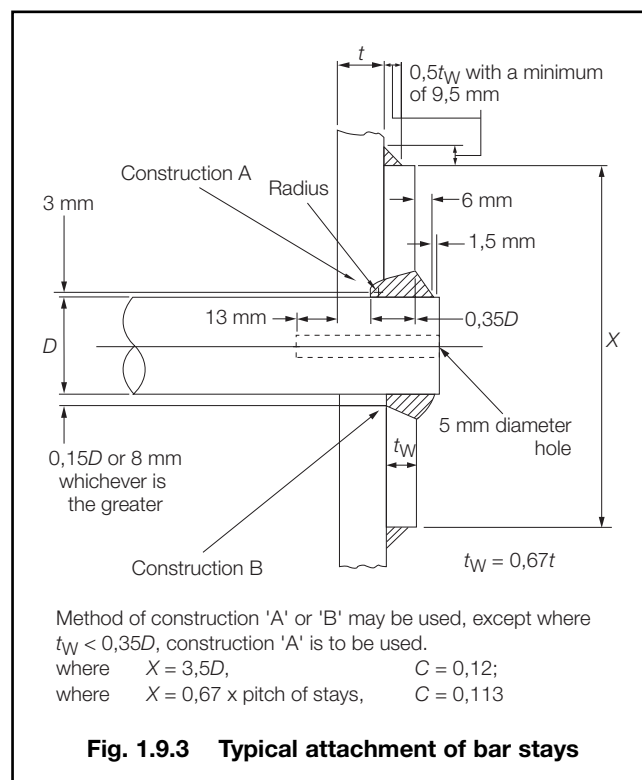
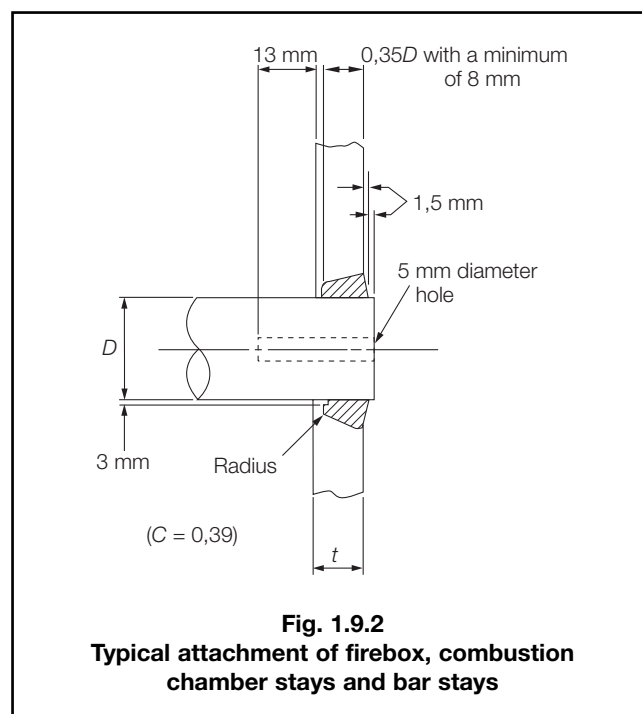
## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 9



9.1.7 The value of  $C$  in the formula in 9.1.6 is to be as follows:

- Where plain bar stays are strength welded into the plates as shown in Fig. 1.9.2  
 $C = 0,134$
- Where plain bar stays pass through holes in the plates and are fitted on the outside with washers as shown in Fig. 1.9.3  
 $C = 0,12$  where the diameter of the washer is 3,5 times the diameter of the stay  
 $C = 0,113$  where the diameter of the washer is 0,67 times the pitch of the stays.
- Where the flat plate is flanged for attachment to the shell, flue, furnace or wrapper or, alternatively, is welded directly to shell, flue, furnace or wrapper, see 9.1.4 and 9.1.5:  
 $C = 0,113$
- Where the support is a gusset stay  
 $C = 0,134$

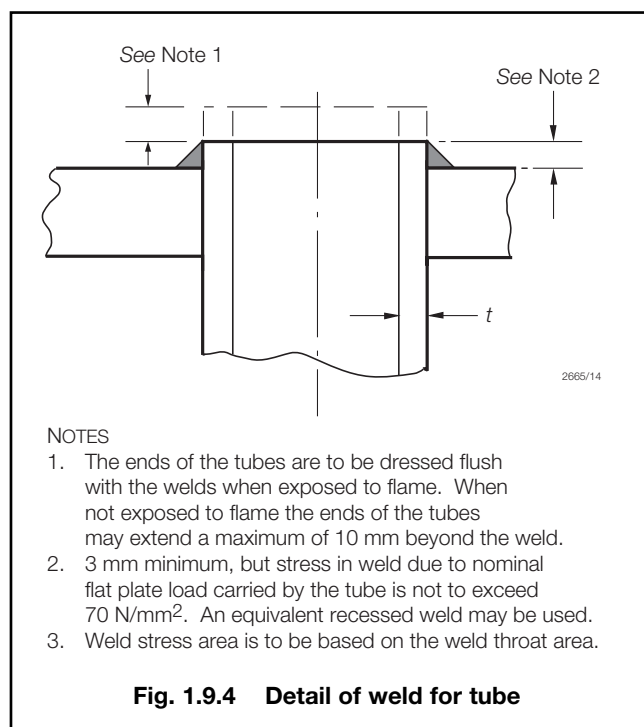


- Where the support is a tube secured as shown in Fig. 1.9.4  
 $C = 0,144$ .

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 9



### NOTES

1. The ends of the tubes are to be dressed flush with the welds when exposed to flame. When not exposed to flame the ends of the tubes may extend a maximum of 10 mm beyond the weld.
2. 3 mm minimum, but stress in weld due to nominal flat plate load carried by the tube is not to exceed 70 N/mm<sup>2</sup>. An equivalent recessed weld may be used.
3. Weld stress area is to be based on the weld throat area.

9.1.8 Where tubes are fixed by expanding only, sufficient tubes welded at both ends in accordance with Fig. 1.9.4 are to be provided within the tube nest to comply with 9.1.6, to carry the flat plate loading within the tube nest. Tubes welded in accordance with Fig. 1.9.4 are also to be provided in the boundary rows in sufficient numbers to carry the flat plate loading outside the tube areas.

9.1.9 In the case of small boilers with a single tube nest of expanded tubes which does not exceed an area of 0,65 m<sup>2</sup>, welded tubes need not be fitted provided the tubes are beaded at the inlet end. In this instance the support afforded by the expanded tubes is not to be taken to extend beyond the line enclosing the outer surfaces of the tubes except that, between the outside of the nest and the attachment of the end plate to shell, there may be an unsupported width equal to the flat plate margin, as given by the formula in 9.4.1.

The required tube plate thickness within such a tube nest is to be determined using the formula in 9.1.6, where:

$$C = 0,154$$

$d$  = four times the mean pitch, in mm, of the expanded tubes in the nest.

9.1.10 The thickness,  $t$ , of any tube plate in the tube area is to be not less than that required for the surrounding plate determined by 9.1.6 and in no case less than:

- (a) 12,5 mm where the diameter of the tube hole does not exceed 50 mm, or
- (b) 14 mm where the diameter of the tube hole is greater than 50 mm.

9.1.11 Alternative methods of support will be specially considered.

9.1.12 The spacing of tube holes is to be such that the minimum width,  $b$ , in mm of any ligament between tube holes is not less than:

for expanded tubes:

$$b = 0,125d + 12,5 \text{ mm}$$

for welded tubes:

$$b = 0,125d + 8 \text{ mm}$$

where

$d$  = diameter of the hole drilled in the plate, in mm.

9.1.13 Where a flat plate has a manhole or sight hole and the opening is strengthened by flanging, the total depth,  $H$ , of the flange, measured from the outer surface of the plate, is to be not less than:

$$H = \sqrt{tW}$$

where

$t$  = thickness of plate, in mm

$H$  = depth of flange, in mm

$W$  = minor axis of manhole or sight hole, in mm.

9.1.14 Where the flat top plates of combustion chambers are supported by welded-on girders, the equation in 9.1.6 is to apply as follows:

- (a) In the case of welded-on girders provided with waterways

$$C = 0,144$$

$$d = \sqrt{X^2 + Y^2}$$

where

$X$  = width of waterway in the girder plus the thickness of the girder, in mm

$Y$  = pitch of girders, in mm.

- (b) In the case of continuously welded-on girders

$$C = 0,175$$

$$d = D$$

where

$D$  = distance between inside faces of girders, in mm.

## 9.2 Combustion chamber tube plates under compression

9.2.1 The thickness of combustion chamber tube plates under compression due to the pressure on the top plate, based on a compressive stress not exceeding 96 N/mm<sup>2</sup> is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pWs}{1930(s-d)} \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  and  $p$  are as defined in 1.2

$d$  = internal diameter of the plain tubes, in mm

$s$  = pitch of tubes, in mm, measured horizontally where tubes are chain pitched, or diagonally where the tubes are staggered pitched and the diagonal pitch is less than the horizontal pitch

$W$  = internal width of the combustion chamber, in mm, measured from tube plate to back chamber plate.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 9 & 10

### 9.3 Girders for combustion chamber top plates

9.3.1 The formula in 9.3.2 is applicable to plate girders welded to the top combustion chamber plate by means of a full penetration weld.

9.3.2 The thickness of steel plate girders supporting the tops of combustion chambers is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{0,32p l^2 s}{d^2 R_{20}} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  and  $p$  are as defined in 1.2

$d$  = effective depth of girder, in mm

$l$  = length of girder measured internally from tube plate to back chamber plate, in mm

$s$  = pitch of the girders, in mm

$R_{20}$  = specified minimum tensile strength of the girder plate, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

### 9.4 Flat plate margins

9.4.1 The width of margin,  $b$ , of a flat plate which may be regarded as being supported by the shell, furnaces or flues to which the flat plate is attached is not to exceed that determined by the following formula:

$$b = C (t - 0,75) \sqrt{\frac{\sigma}{p}} \text{ mm}$$

where

$p$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 1.2

$t$  = thickness of the flat plate, in mm

$b$  = width of margin, in mm

$C$  = 3,12.

9.4.2 Where an unflanged flat plate is welded directly to the shell, furnaces or flues and it is not practicable to effect the full penetration weld from both sides of the flat plate, the constant  $C$  used in the formula in 9.4.1 is to be:

$C$  = 2,38.

9.4.3 In the case of plates which are flanged, the margin is to be measured from the commencement of curvature of flanging, or from a line 3,5 times the thickness of the plate measured from the outside of the plate, whichever is nearer to the flange.

9.4.4 Where the flat plate is not flanged for attachment to the shell, furnaces or flues, the margin is to be measured from inside of the shell or the outside of the furnaces or flues, whichever is applicable.

9.4.5 In no case is the diameter  $D$ , in mm, of the circle forming the boundary of the margin supported by the uptake of a vertical boiler to be greater than determined by the following formula:

$$D = \sqrt{\frac{345A}{p}} + d^2$$

where

$p$  is as defined in 1.2

$d$  = external diameter of uptake, in mm

$d_i$  = internal diameter of uptake, in mm

$A$  = cross-sectional area of the uptake tube material,

i.e.,  $\frac{\pi}{4} (d^2 - d_i^2) \text{ mm}^2$ .

## Section 10 Flat plates and ends of vertical boilers

### 10.1 Tube plates of vertical boilers

10.1.1 Where vertical boilers have a nest or nests of horizontal tubes, so that there is direct tension on the tube plates due to the vertical load on the boiler ends or to their acting as horizontal ties across the shell, the thickness of the tube plates in way of the outer rows of tubes is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{pD}{5J R_{20}} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  and  $p$  are as defined in 1.2

$D$  = twice the radial distance of the centre of the outer row of tube holes from the axis of the shell, in mm

$J$  = efficiency of ligaments between tube holes in the outer vertical rows (expressed as a fraction)

$$= \frac{s - d}{s}$$

$R_{20}$  = specified minimum tensile strength of tube plate, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

where

$d$  = diameter of tube holes, in mm

$s$  = vertical pitch of tubes, in mm.

10.1.2 Each alternate tube in the outer vertical rows of tubes is to be a tube welded at both ends as shown in Fig. 1.9.4. Further, the arrangement of tubes in the nests is to be such that the thickness of the tube plates meets the requirements of 9.1.

10.1.3 Where the vertical height of the tube plates between the top and bottom shelves exceeds 0,65 times the internal diameter of the boiler, the staying of the tube plates, and the scantlings of the tube plates and shell plates to which the sides of the tube plates are connected, will require to be specially considered. It is recommended, however, that for this type of boiler the vertical height of the tube plates between the top and bottom shelves should not exceed 1,25 times the internal diameter of the boiler.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 10 & 11

### 10.2 Horizontal shelves of tube plates forming part of the shell

10.2.1 For vertical boilers of the type referred to in 10.1, in order to withstand vertical load due to pressure on the boiler ends, the horizontal shelves of the tube plates are to be supported by gussets in accordance with the following formula:

$$C = \frac{A D_i p}{t}$$

where

$p$  = design pressure, in bar

$t$  = thickness of the tube plate, in mm

$A$  = maximum horizontal dimension of the shelf from the inside of the shell plate to the outside of the tube plate, in mm

$D_i$  = inside diameter of the boiler, in mm.

10.2.2 For the combustion chamber tube plate the minimum number of gussets is to be:

1 gusset, where  $C$  exceeds 255 000

2 gussets, where  $C$  exceeds 350 000

3 gussets where  $C$  exceeds 420 000.

10.2.3 For the smokebox tube plate the minimum number of gussets is to be:

1 gusset where  $C$  exceeds 255 000

2 gussets where  $C$  exceeds 470 000.

10.2.4 The shell plates to which the sides of the tube plates are connected are to be not less than 1,6 mm thicker than is required by the formula applicable to shell plates with continuous circularity, and where gussets or other stays are not fitted to the shelves, the strength of the parts of the circumferential seams at the top and bottom of these plates from the outside of one tube plate to the outside of the other, is to be sufficient to withstand the whole load on the boiler end with a factor of safety of not less than 4,5 related to  $R_{20}$  (where  $R_{20}$  is the specified minimum tensile strength of the shell plates, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>).

### 10.3 Dished and flanged ends for vertical boilers

10.3.1 The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of dished and flanged ends for vertical boilers which are subject to pressure on the concave side and are supported by central uptakes is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p R_i}{13\sigma} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$ ,  $p$ ,  $R_i$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 1,2.

10.3.2 The inside radius of curvature,  $R_i$ , of the end plate is to be not greater than the external diameter of the cylinder to which it is attached.

10.3.3 The inside knuckle radius,  $r_i$ , see Fig. 1.4.2(a), of the arc joining the cylindrical flange to the spherical surface of the end is to be not less than four times the thickness of the end plate, and in no case less than 65 mm.

10.3.4 The inside radius of curvature of flange to uptake is to be not less than twice the thickness of the end plate, and in no case less than 25 mm.

10.3.5 If the dished end has a manhole, the opening is to be strengthened by flanging. The total depth,  $H$ , of the flange, measured from the outer surface of the plate on the minor axis, is to be not less than:

$$H = \sqrt{t W}$$

where

$t$  = thickness of the flange, in mm

$H$  = depth of flange, in mm

$W$  = minor axis of the manhole, in mm.

### 10.4 Flat crowns of vertical boilers

10.4.1 The minimum thickness of flat crown plates of vertical boilers is to be determined as in 9,1;  $d$  and  $C$  are defined as follows:

Where the crown is supported by an uptake only,

$d$  = diameter, in mm, of the largest circle which can be drawn between the connections to the shell or fire-box and uptake, see 9.1.1 to 9.1.5

$C$  = 0,161

Where bar stays are fitted in accordance with 9.1.6 and 9.1.7,

$d$  = diameter of the largest circle which can be drawn through at least three points of support, in mm

$C$  = the mean of the values for the respective points of support through which the circle passes.

## Section 11 Furnaces subject to external pressure

### 11.1 Maximum thickness

11.1.1 Furnaces, plain or corrugated, are not to exceed 22,5 mm in thickness.

### 11.2 Corrugated furnaces

11.2.1 The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of corrugated furnaces is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p D_o}{C}$$

where

$p$  is as defined in 1.2

$t$  = thickness of the furnace plate measured at the bottom of the corrugations, in mm

$C$  = 1060 for Fox, Morison and Deighton corrugations  
= 1130 for Suspension Bulb corrugations

$D_o$  = external diameter of the furnace measured at the bottom of the corrugations, in mm.



# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 11

### 11.3 Plain furnaces, flue sections and combustion chamber bottoms

11.3.1 The minimum thickness,  $t$ , between points of substantial support, of plain furnaces or furnaces strengthened by stiffening rings, of flue sections and of the cylindrical bottoms of combustion chambers is to be determined by the following formulae, the greater of the two thicknesses obtained being taken:

$$t = \frac{p D_o (L + 610)}{102\,400} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

$$t = \frac{C p D_o}{1100} + \frac{L}{320} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  and  $p$  are as defined in 1.2

$$C = \frac{2x}{x + \sigma} \text{ or } 0,85 \text{ whichever is the greater}$$

$D_o$  = external diameter of the furnace, flue or combustion chamber, in mm

$L$  = length of section between the centres of points of substantial support, in mm

$x$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 11.7.1.

11.3.2 Where stiffeners are used for strengthening plain cylindrical furnaces, or combustion chambers, the second moment of area,  $I$ , of the stiffener is to be determined by the following formula:

$$I = \frac{p D_o^3 L}{13,3 \times 10^6} \text{ mm}^4$$

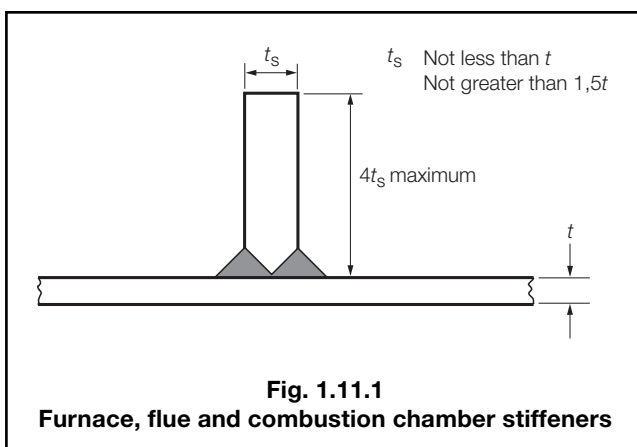
where

$p$  is as defined in 1.2

$D_o$  = external diameter of the furnace flue or combustion chamber, in mm

$L$  = length of section between the centres of points of substantial support, in mm

For proportion of stiffening rings, see Fig. 1.11.1.



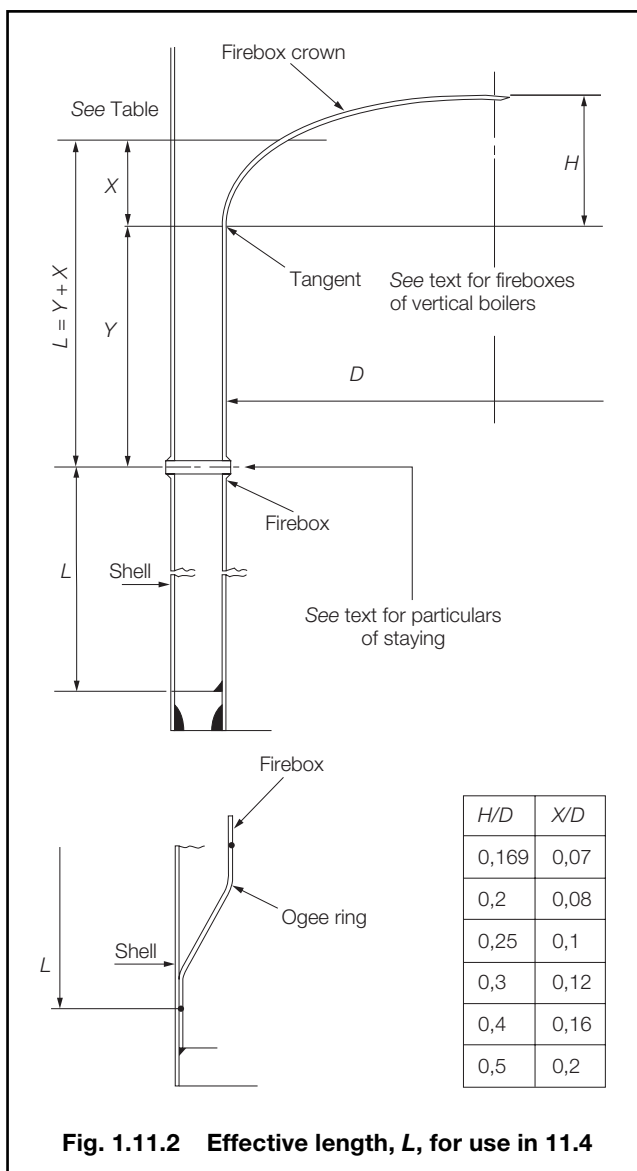
### 11.4 Plain furnaces of vertical boilers

11.4.1 The thickness of plain furnaces not exceeding 2000 mm in external diameter is to be determined by the formulae given in 11.3.1, the greater of the two thicknesses being taken:

where

$D_o$  = external diameter of the furnace, in mm. Where the furnace is tapered, the diameter to be taken for calculation purposes is to be the mean of that at the top and that at the bottom where it meets the substantial support from flange, ring or row of stays

$L$  = effective length, in mm, of the furnace between the points of substantial support as indicated in Fig. 1.11.2.



11.4.2 For furnaces under 760 mm in external diameter, the thickness is to be not less than 8 mm, and for furnaces 760 mm in external diameter and over, the thickness is to be not less than 9,5 mm.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 11

**11.4.3** A circumferential row of stays connecting the furnace to the shell will be considered to provide substantial support to the furnace, provided that:

- The diameter of the stay is not less 22,5 mm or twice the thickness of the furnace, whichever is the greater.
- The pitch of the stays at the furnace does not exceed 14 times the thickness of the furnace.

### 11.5 Hemispherical furnaces

**11.5.1** The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of unsupported hemispherical furnaces subject to pressure on the convex surface is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{C p R_o}{608} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  and  $p$  are as defined in 1.2

$x$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 11.7.1

$$C = \frac{2x}{x + \sigma} \text{ or } 0,85, \text{ whichever is the greater}$$

$R_o$  = outer radius of curvature of the furnace, in mm.

**11.5.2** In no case is the maximum thickness to exceed 22,5 mm, or the ratio  $\frac{R_o}{t - 0,75}$  to exceed 100.

### 11.6 Dished and flanged ends for supported vertical boiler furnaces

**11.6.1** The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of dished and flanged ends for vertical boiler furnaces that are subject to pressure on the convex side and are supported by central uptakes, is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p R_o}{10\sigma} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$ ,  $p$ ,  $R_o$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 1.2.

**11.6.2** The inside radius of dishing and flanging are to be as required by 10.3.

### 11.7 Dished and flanged ends for unsupported vertical boiler furnaces

**11.7.1** The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of dished and flanged ends for vertical boiler furnaces that are subject to pressure on the convex side and are without support from stays of any kind, is to be determined by the following formula, but is in no case to be less than the thickness of the firebox:

$$t = \frac{C p R_o}{660} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  and  $p$  are as defined in 1.2

$x$  = specified minimum lower yield stress or 0,2 per cent proof stress in N/mm<sup>2</sup> at a temperature 90°C above the saturated steam temperature corresponding to the design pressure for carbon and carbon manganese steel with a specified minimum tensile strength of 400 N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$$C = \frac{2x}{x + \sigma} \text{ or } 0,85 \text{ whichever is the greater}$$

$R_o$  = outside radius of the crown plate, in mm  
(in no case is  $\frac{R_o}{t}$  to exceed 88)

$\sigma$  = specified minimum lower yield stress or 0,2 per cent proof stress in N/mm<sup>2</sup> at a temperature 90°C above the saturated steam temperature corresponding to the design pressure for the steel actually used.

**11.7.2** The inside radius of curvature,  $R_i$ , of the end plate is to be not greater than the external diameter of the cylinder to which it is attached.

**11.7.3** The inside knuckle radius,  $r_i$ , see Fig. 1.4.2(a), of the arc joining the cylindrical flange to the spherical surface of the end is to be not less than four times the thickness of the end plate and in no case less than 65 mm.

### 11.8 Ogee rings

**11.8.1** The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of the ogee ring which connects the bottom of the furnace to the shell of a vertical boiler and sustains the whole vertical load on the furnace is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{p D_i (D_i - D_o)}{9\,900}} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  and  $p$  are as defined in 1.2

$D_i$  = inside diameter of boiler shell, in mm

$D_o$  = outside diameter of the lower part of the furnace where it joins the ogee ring, in mm.

**11.8.2** Proposals to use a flat plate annular ring which connects the bottom of the furnace to the shell of a vertical boiler and sustains any unbalanced vertical load on the furnace will be the subject of special consideration.

### 11.9 Uptakes of vertical boilers

**11.9.1** The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of internal uptakes of vertical boilers is to be determined by the following formulae, the greater of the two thicknesses obtained being taken:

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{p D_o (L + 610)}{102\,400}} + 4 \text{ mm}$$

$$t = \frac{p D_o}{1100} + \frac{L}{320} + 4 \text{ mm}$$

where

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 11, 12 &amp; 13

$t$  and  $p$  are as defined in 1.2

$D_o$  = external diameter of uptake, in mm

$L$  = length of uptake between the centres of points of substantial support, in mm.

### Section 12 Boiler tubes subject to external pressure

#### 12.1 Tubes

12.1.1 The thickness of tubes is to be in accordance with Table 1.12.1 for the appropriate outside diameter and design pressure.

12.1.2 Tubes may be welded at both ends, welded at the inlet end and expanded at the outlet end, or expanded at both ends. In addition to expanding, tubes may be bell mouthed or beaded at the inlet end. Where tubes are welded, the weld detail is to be as shown in Fig. 1.9.4 and the tubes are to be expanded into the tube plates in addition to welding, except as permitted by 12.1.3.

12.1.3 For tubes of thickness greater than 6,0 mm, expanding in addition to welding is not required if a recessed weld of depth not less than the tube thickness is provided.

### Section 13 Tubes welded at both ends and bar stays for cylindrical boilers

#### 13.1 Loads on tubes welded at both ends and bar stays

13.1.1 Each tube or bar stay is to be designed to carry its due proportion of the load on the plates which it supports.

13.1.2 For a tube or bar stay, the net area to be supported is to be the area, in mm<sup>2</sup>, enclosed by the lines bisecting at right angles the lines joining the stay and the adjacent points of support, less the area of any tubes or stays enclosed. In the case of a tube or bar stay in the boundary rows, the support afforded by the flat plate margin, where applicable, should be taken into account. Where flat margins overlap, stays are not required.

13.1.3 The thickness of tubes welded at both ends to tube plates is to be such that the longitudinal stress due to the flat plate loading does not exceed 70 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

13.1.4 Tubes may be welded into the boiler after post-weld heat treatment has been carried out.

13.1.5 The permissible longitudinal stress in combustion chamber bar stays or similar stays where an end is heated by flame, is not to exceed 70 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, and the diameter of this type of bar stay is not to be less than 19 mm.

13.1.6 The permissible longitudinal stress in longitudinal bar stays not subject to heating, is not to exceed 20 per cent of the minimum specified tensile strength, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, and the diameter of this type of bar stay is not to be less than 25 mm.

**Table 1.12.1 Thickness of plain tubes under external pressure**

| Design pressure, in bar |      |      |      |                         |      |      |      |      |      |      | Thickness,<br>in mm |
|-------------------------|------|------|------|-------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|---------------------|
| 38                      | 44,5 | 51   | 57   | Outside diameter, in mm |      |      | 82,5 | 89   | 95   | 102  |                     |
| —                       | —    | —    | —    | —                       | —    | —    | —    | —    | 26,9 | 25,2 | 5,89                |
| —                       | —    | —    | —    | —                       | —    | —    | 26,2 | 24,1 | 22,8 | 21,4 | 5,38                |
| —                       | —    | —    | —    | —                       | —    | 24,1 | 22,1 | 20,7 | 19,3 | 17,9 | 4,88                |
| —                       | —    | —    | 27,6 | 24,8                    | 22,8 | 20,7 | 19,3 | 17,9 | 16,6 | 15,9 | 4,47                |
| —                       | 29,3 | 25,5 | 22,8 | 20,7                    | 18,9 | 17,3 | 15,9 | 14,8 | 13,7 | 12,7 | 4,06                |
| 26,6                    | 22,8 | 20,7 | 17,9 | 15,9                    | 14,8 | 13,1 | 12,4 | 11,4 | 10,3 | 9,6  | 3,66                |
| 20,3                    | 16,9 | 14,8 | 13,1 | 12,1                    | 11,0 | 9,6  | 8,9  | 8,2  | 7,6  | 6,9  | 3,25                |
| 14,8                    | 12,4 | 10,7 | 9,6  | 8,6                     | 7,6  | —    | —    | —    | —    | —    | 2,95                |

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 14

### ■ Section 14 Construction

#### 14.1 Access arrangements

14.1.1 In watertube boilers, manholes are to be provided in all drums of sufficient size to allow access for internal examination and cleaning, and for fitting and expanding the tubes. In the case of headers for water walls, superheaters or economisers, and of drums which are too small to permit entry, sight holes or mudholes sufficiently large and numerous for these purposes are to be provided.

14.1.2 Cylindrical boilers are to be provided, where possible with means for ingress to permit examination and cleaning of the inner surfaces of plates and tubes exposed to flame. Where the boilers are too small to permit this there are to be sight holes and mudholes sufficiently large and numerous to allow the inside to be satisfactorily cleaned.

14.1.3 Where the cross tubes of vertical boilers are large, there is to be a sight hole in the shell opposite to one end of each tube sufficiently large to allow the tube to be examined and cleaned. These sight holes are to be in positions accessible for that purpose.

14.1.4 Manholes in cylindrical shells should preferably have their shorter axes arranged longitudinally.

14.1.5 Doors for manholes, mudholes and sight holes are to be formed from steel plate or other approved construction, and all jointing surfaces are to be machined.

14.1.6 Doors of the internal type are to be provided with spigots which have a clearance of not more than 1,5 mm all round, i.e., the axes of the opening are not to exceed those of the door by more than 3 mm. The width of the manhole gasket seat is to be not less than 16 mm.

14.1.7 Doors of the internal type for openings not larger than 230 mm x 180 mm need be fitted with one stud only, which may be forged integral with the door. Doors for openings larger than 230 mm x 180 mm are to be fitted with two studs or bolts. The strength of the attachment to the door is to be not less than the strength of the stud or bolt.

14.1.8 The crossbars or dogs for doors are to be of steel.

14.1.9 For smaller circular openings in headers and similar fittings, an approved type of plug may be used.

14.1.10 Circular flat cover plates may be fitted to raised circular manhole frames not exceeding 400 mm diameter, and for an approved design pressure not exceeding 18 bar.

14.1.11 External circular flat cover plates are to be in accordance with a recognised National Standard.

#### 14.2 Torispherical and semi-ellipsoidal ends

14.2.1 For typical acceptable types of attachment for dished ends to cylindrical shells, see Fig. 1.14.1.

14.2.2 Where the difference in thickness is the same throughout the circumference, the thicker plate is to be reduced in thickness by machining to a taper for a distance not less than four times the offset, so that the two plates are of equal thickness at the position of the circumferential weld. A parallel portion may be provided between the end of the taper and weld edge preparation; alternatively, if so desired, the width of the weld may be included as part of the smooth taper of the thicker plate.

14.2.3 The thickness of the plates at the position of the circumferential weld is to be not less than that of an unpierced cylindrical shell of seamless or welded construction, whichever is applicable, of the same diameter and material, see 4.1.

#### 14.3 Hemispherical ends

14.3.1 Where hemispherical ends are butt welded to cylindrical shells, the thickness of the shell is to be reduced by taper to that of the end, and the centre of the hemisphere is to be so located that the entire tapered portion of the shell and the butt weld are within the hemisphere, see Fig. 1.14.2.

14.3.2 If the hemispherical end is provided with a parallel portion, the thickness of this portion is to be not less than that of a seamless or welded shell, whichever is applicable, of the same diameter and material.

#### 14.4 Welded-on flanges, butt welded joints and fabricated branch pieces

14.4.1 Flanges may be cut from plates or may be forged or cast. Hubbed flanges are not to be machined from plate. Flanges are to be attached to branches by welding. Alternative methods of flange attachment will be subject to special consideration.

14.4.2 The types of welded-on flanges are to be suitable for the pressure, temperature and service for which the branches are intended.

14.4.3 Flange attachments and pressure-temperature ratings in accordance with materials and design of recognised standards will be accepted.

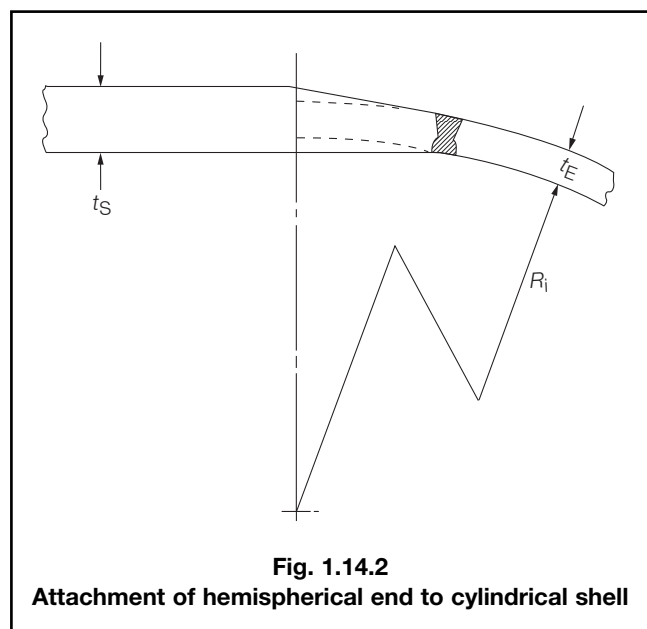
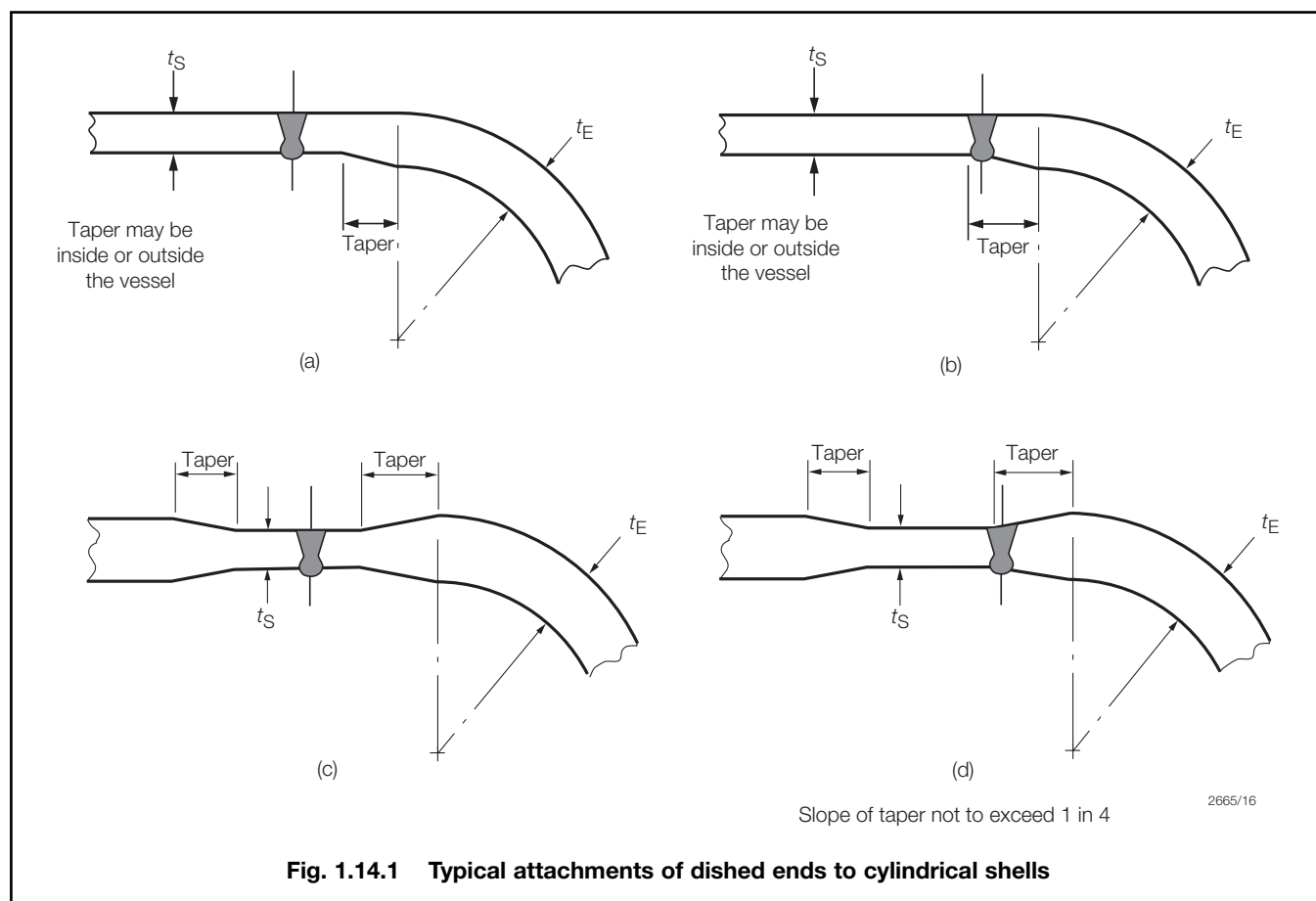
14.4.4 Typical examples of welded-on flange connections are shown in Fig. 1.14.3(a) to (f), and limiting design conditions for the flange types are shown in Table 1.14.1. In Fig. 1.14.3,  $t$  is the minimum Rule thickness of the standpipe or branch.

14.4.5 Welded-on flanges are not to be a tight fit on the branch. The maximum clearance between the bore of the flange and the outside diameter of the branch is to be 3 mm at any point, and the sum of the clearances diametrically opposite is not to exceed 5 mm.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 14



14.4.6 Where butt welds are employed in the attachment of flange type (a), or in the construction of standpipes or branch pieces, the adjacent pieces are to be matched at the bores. This may be effected by drifting, roller expanding or machining, provided the pipe wall is not reduced below the designed thickness. If the parts to be joined differ in wall thickness, the thicker wall is to be gradually tapered to that of the thinner at the butt joint.

14.4.7 Welding may be carried out by means of the shielded metal arc, inert gas metal arc, oxy-acetylene or other approved process, but in general, oxy-acetylene welding is suitable only for flange type (a) and is not to be applied to branches exceeding 100 mm diameter or 9,5 mm thick. The welding is to be carried out in accordance with the appropriate paragraphs of Pt 1, Ch 3.

14.4.8 Threaded sleeve joints complying with Pt 7, Ch 1.5.6.1 may be used on the steam and water piping of small oil fired package boilers of the once through coil type, used for auxiliary or domestic purposes, where the feed pump capacity limits the output.

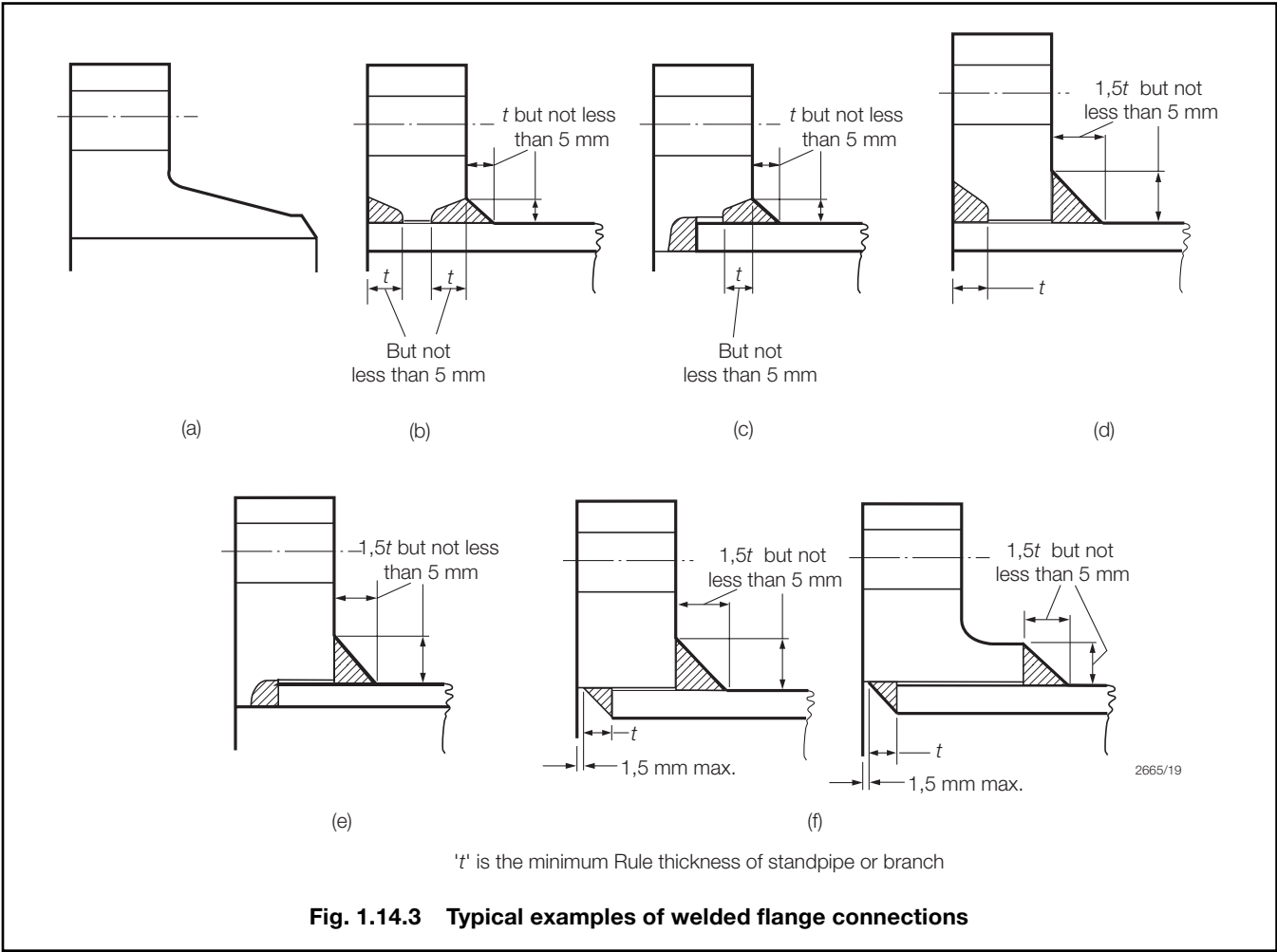


Table 1.14.1 Limited design conditions for flanges

| Flange type | Maximum pressure                                                            | Maximum temperature | Maximum pipe o.d.       | Minimum pipe bore |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|
|             |                                                                             | °C                  | mm                      | mm                |
| (a)         | Pressure-temperature ratings to be in accordance with a recognised standard | No restriction      | No restriction          | No restriction    |
| (b)         |                                                                             | No restriction      | 168,3 for alloy steels* | No restriction    |
| (c)         |                                                                             | No restriction      | 168,3 for alloy steels* | 75                |
| (d)         |                                                                             | 425                 | No restriction          | No restriction    |
| (e)         |                                                                             | 425                 | No restriction          | 75                |
| (f)         |                                                                             | 425                 | No restriction          | No restriction    |

\* No restriction for carbon steels

14.5 Welded attachments to pressure vessels

14.5.1 Unless the actual thickness of the shell or end is at least twice that required by calculation for a seamless shell or end, whichever is applicable, doubling plates with well rounded corners are to be fitted in way of attachments such as lifting lugs, supporting brackets and feet, to minimise load

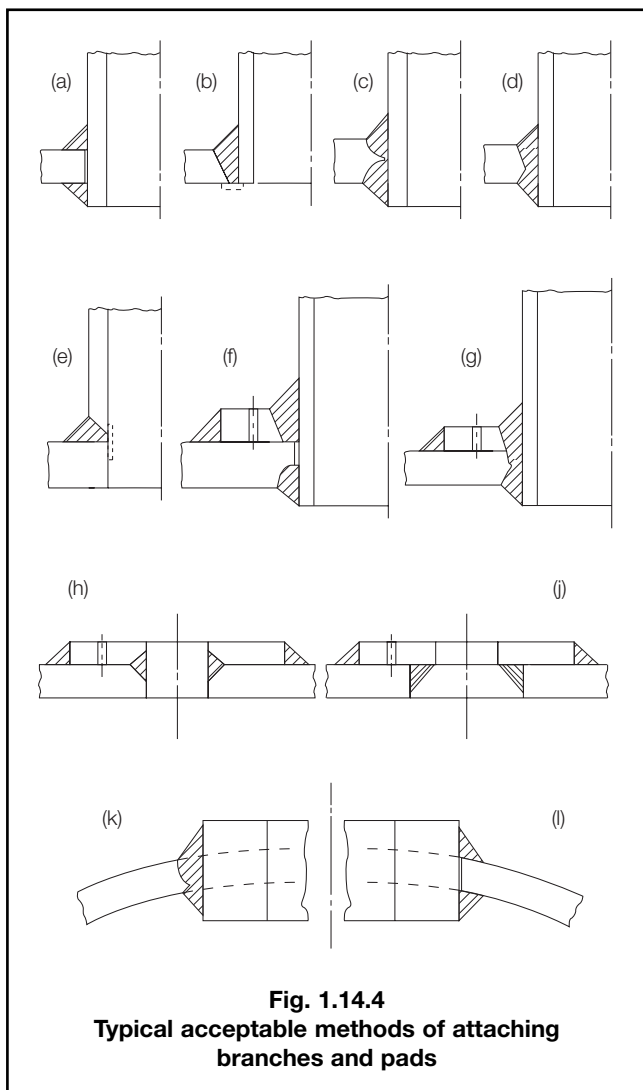
concentrations on pressure shells and ends. Compensating plates, pads, brackets and supporting feet are to be bedded closely to the surface before being welded, and are to be provided with a 'tell-tale' hole not greater than 9,5 mm in diameter, open to the atmosphere to provide for the release of entrapped air during heat treatment of the vessel, or as means of indicating any leakage during hydraulic testing and in service. See Pt 1, Ch 3.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 14 & 15

**14.5.2** For acceptable methods of attaching standpipes, branches, compensating plates and pads, see Fig. 1.14.4. Alternative methods of attachment may be accepted provided details are submitted for consideration.



**Fig. 1.14.4**  
**Typical acceptable methods of attaching branches and pads**

**14.5.3** Where fillet welds are used to attach standpipes or set-in pads, there are to be equal sized welds both inside and outside the vessel, see Fig. 1.14.4(a) and (l). The leg length of each of the fillet welds is to be not less than 1,4 times the actual thickness of the thinner of the parts being joined.

### 14.6 Fitting of tubes in water tube boilers

**14.6.1** The tube holes in drums or headers are to be formed in such a way that the tubes can be effectively tightened in them. Where the tube ends are not normal to the tube plates, there is to be a neck or belt of parallel seating of at least 13 mm in depth, measured in a plane through the axis of the tube at the holes. Where the tubes are practically normal to their plates, this parallel seating is to be not less than 9,5 mm in depth.

**14.6.2** Tubes are to be carefully fitted in the tube holes and secured by means of welding, expanding and belling or by other approved methods. Tubes are to project through the neck or belt of parallel seating by at least 6 mm and where they are secured from drawing out by means of bellmouthing only, the included angle of belling is to be not less than 30°.

## Section 15 Mountings and fittings for cylindrical and vertical boilers, steam generators, pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters

### 15.1 General

**15.1.1** Valves over 38 mm diameter are to be fitted with outside screws, and the covers are to be secured by bolts or studs. All valves are to be arranged to shut with a right-hand (clockwise) motion of the wheels.

**15.1.2** All valves and cocks connected to the boiler are to be such that it is seen without difficulty whether they are open or shut. Where boiler mountings are secured by studs, the studs are to have a full thread holding in the plate for a length of at least one diameter.

**15.1.3** Where a superheater is fitted which can be shut-off from the boiler, it is to be provided with a separate safety valve fitted with easing gear. The valve as regards construction is to comply with the regulations for ordinary safety valves, but the easing gear may be fitted to be workable from the stokehold only. The superheater is also to be fitted with a drain valve or cock to free it from water when necessary.

**15.1.4** Safety valve chests and other boiler and superheater mountings subjected to pressures exceeding 13,0 bar or to steam temperatures exceeding 220°C, and boiler blow-down fittings, are to be made of steel or other approved material.

### 15.2 Safety valves

**15.2.1** Boilers and steam generators are to be fitted with not less than two safety valves, each having a minimum internal diameter of 25 mm, but those having a total heating surface of less than 50 m<sup>2</sup> may have one valve not less than 50 mm diameter. Small oil fired package boilers of the once through coil type used for auxiliary or domestic purposes, where the feed pump capacity limits the output, may have one safety valve not less than 19 mm internal diameter, or two safety valves with internal diameters not less than 16 mm, provided the capacity is in accordance with 15.2.13.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 15

**15.2.2** The valves, spindles, springs and compression screws are to be so encased and locked or sealed that the safety valves and pilot valves, after setting to the working pressure, cannot be tampered with or overloaded in service.

**15.2.3** Valves are to be so designed that in the event of fracture of springs they cannot lift out of their seats.

**15.2.4** Easing gear is to be provided for lifting the safety valves and is to be operable by mechanical means at a safe position from the boiler or engine room platforms.

**15.2.5** Safety valves are to be made with working parts having adequate clearances to ensure complete freedom of movement.

**15.2.6** Valve seats are to be effectively secured in position. Any adjusting devices which control discharge capacity are to be positively secured so that the adjustment will not be affected when the safety valves are dismantled at surveys.

**15.2.7** All the safety valves of each boiler and steam generator may be fitted in one chest, which is to be separate from any other valve chest and is to be connected directly to the shell by a strong and stiff neck, the passage through which is to be of cross-sectional area not less than the aggregate area of the safety valves in the chest in the case of full lift valves, and one-half of that area in the case of other valves. For the meaning of aggregate area, see 15.2.13.

**15.2.8** Each safety valve chest is to be drained by a pipe fitted to the lowest part and led with a continuous fall to the bilge or to a tank, clear of the boilers. No valves or cocks are to be fitted to these drain pipes. The bore of the drain pipes is to be not less than 19 mm.

**15.2.9** Safety valves for shell type exhaust gas steaming economisers are to incorporate fail safe features which will ensure operation of the valve even with solid matter deposits on the valve and guide, or features that will prevent the accumulation of solid matter in way of the valve and in the clearance between the valve spindle and guide. Alternatively, if the fitted valves do not incorporate the features described then a bursting disc discharging to a suitable waste steam pipe is to be fitted in addition to the valves. These bursting discs are to function at a pressure not exceeding 1,25 times the economiser approved design pressure and are to have sufficient capacity to prevent damage to the economiser when operating at its design heat input level.

**15.2.10** To avoid the accumulation of solid matter deposits on the outlet side of the safety valves and bursting discs required by 15.2.9, the discharge pipes and safety valve/bursting disc housings are to be fitted with drainage arrangements from the lowest part, directed with continuous fall to a position clear of the economiser where it will not pose a threat to either personnel or machinery. No valves or cocks are to be fitted in the drainage arrangements. The drainage arrangements required by 15.2.8 may be accepted as meeting these requirements where the arrangements comply with this paragraph.

**15.2.11** Full particulars of the proposed arrangements are to be submitted for consideration.

**15.2.12** Where the receiver is fitted with safety valves to relieve the steam output of the economiser and the economiser cannot be isolated from the receiver, the requirements of 15.2.9 may be waived.

**15.2.13** The designed discharge capacities of the safety valves on each boiler and steam generator are to be found from the following formulae:

Saturated steam safety valves:

$$E = \frac{AC(p + 1,03)}{98,1}$$

Superheated steam safety valves:

$$E = \frac{AC(p + 1,03)}{98,1} \sqrt{\frac{V_S}{V_H}}$$

where

$p$  = set pressure, in bar gauge

$A$  = for ordinary, high lift or improved high lift safety valves, the aggregate area, in mm<sup>2</sup>, of the orifices through the seatings of the valves, neglecting the area of guides and other obstructions  
= for full lift safety valves, the net aggregate area, in mm<sup>2</sup>, through the seats after deducting the area of the guides or other obstructions when the valves are fully lifted

$C$  = 4,8 for valves of ordinary type having a minimum lift of  $\frac{D}{24}$

= 7,2 for valves of high lift type, having a minimum lift of  $\frac{D}{16}$

= 9,6 for valves of improved high lift type having a minimum lift of  $\frac{D}{12}$

= 19,2 for valves of full lift type having a minimum lift of  $\frac{D}{4}$

$D$  = bore of valve seat, in mm

$E$  = the maker's specified peak load evaporation, in kg/hour (including all evaporation from water walls, integral, or steaming economisers and other heating surfaces in direct communication with the boiler)

$V_H$  = specific volume of superheated steam (m<sup>3</sup>/kg)

$V_S$  = specific volume of saturated steam (m<sup>3</sup>/kg).

**15.2.14** When the discharge capacity of a safety valve of approved design has been established by type tests, carried out in the presence of the Surveyors or by an independent authority recognised by LR, on valves representative of the range of sizes and pressures intended for marine application, consideration will be given to the use of a constant higher than  $C = 19,2$ , based on 90 per cent of the measured capacity up to a maximum of  $C = 45$  for full lift safety valves.

**15.2.15** Pressurised thermal liquid and pressurised hot water heaters are to be provided with a safety relief device. The safety valve is to be designed and constructed in accordance with a relevant National or International Standard acceptable to LR.



# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 15

### 15.3 Waste steam pipes

15.3.1 For ordinary, high lift and improved high lift type valves, the cross-sectional area of the waste steam pipe and passages leading to it is to be at least 10 per cent greater than the aggregate area of the safety valves as used in the formulae in 15.2.13. For full lift and other approved valves of high discharge capacity, the cross-sectional area of the waste steam pipe and passages is to be not less than 0,1C times the aggregate valve area.

15.3.2 The cross-sectional area of the main waste steam pipe is to be not less than the combined cross-sectional areas of the branch waste steam pipes leading thereto from the boiler safety valves.

15.3.3 Waste steam pipes are to be led to the atmosphere and are to be adequately supported and provided with suitable expansion joints, bends or other means to relieve the safety valve chests of undue loading.

15.3.4 The scantlings of waste steam pipes and silencers are to be suitable for the maximum pressure to which the pipes may be subjected in service, and in any case not less than 10 bar.

15.3.5 Silencers fitted to waste steam pipes are to be so designed that the clear area through the baffle plates is not less than that required for the pipes.

15.3.6 The safety valves of each exhaust gas heated economiser and exhaust gas heated boiler which may be used as an economiser are to be provided with entirely separate waste steam pipes.

15.3.7 External drains and exhaust steam vents to atmosphere are not to be led to waste steam pipes.

15.3.8 It is recommended that a scale trap and means for cleaning be provided at the base of each waste steam pipe.

### 15.4 Adjustment and accumulation tests

15.4.1 All safety valves are to be set under steam to a pressure not greater than the approved pressure of the boiler. As a working tolerance the setting is acceptable provided the valves lift at not more than 103 per cent of the approved design pressure. During a test of 15 minutes with the stop valves closed and under full firing conditions the accumulation of pressure is not to exceed 10 per cent of the design pressure. During this test no more feed water is to be supplied than is necessary to maintain a safe working water level.

### 15.5 Stop valves

15.5.1 One main stop valve is to be fitted to each boiler and secured directly to the shell. There are to be as few auxiliary stop valves as possible so as to avoid piercing the boiler shell more than is absolutely necessary.

15.5.2 Where two or more boilers are connected together:

- Stop valves of self-closing or non-return type are to be fitted.
- Essential services are to be capable of being supplied from at least two boilers.

### 15.6 Water level indicators

15.6.1 Every boiler designed to contain water at a specified level is to be fitted with at least two means for indicating its water level, at least one of which is to be a direct reading gauge glass. The other means is to be either an additional gauge glass or an approved equivalent device. The required water level indicators are to be independent of each other.

15.6.2 Where a pair of gauge glasses are set at different levels to provide an extended range of water level indication they will only be considered as one water level indicator.

15.6.3 An approved equivalent device for level indication may derive its level input signal from one of the low water level detection systems required by 15.7.1 provided that in the event of a power supply failure to that system an alarm is initiated and the oil fuel supply to the burners, or any other fuel used to fire the boiler, is automatically shut-off. The fuel supply shut-off will only be required if the power supply failure results in the direct reading gauge glass being the only functioning water level indicator.

15.6.4 The water gauges are to be readily accessible and placed so that the water level is clearly visible. The lowest visible parts of water gauges are to be situated at the lowest safe working level.

15.6.5 The level of the highest part of the effective heating surfaces, e.g., combustion chamber top of a horizontal boiler and the furnace crown of a vertical boiler, is to be clearly marked in a position adjacent to the glass water gauge.

15.6.6 The cocks of all water gauges are to be operable from positions free from danger in the event of the glass breaking.

### 15.7 Low water level fuel shut-off and alarm

15.7.1 Every fired boiler designed to contain water at a specified level is to be fitted with two systems of water level detection which are to be independent of each other, and which will operate an alarm and shut-off automatically the fuel supply to the burners, or any other fuel used to fire the boiler, when the water level falls to a predetermined low level. These level detectors, in addition, may be used for other functions, e.g., high level alarm, feed pump control, etc.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 15 & 16

### 15.8 Feed check valves

15.8.1 Two feed check and stop valves, connected to separate feed lines, are to be provided for all main and auxiliary boilers which are required for essential services. The feed check and stop valves may be connected to a single standpipe at the shell. In the case of steam/steam generators one feed check valve is acceptable provided steam for essential services is simultaneously available from another source.

### 15.9 Pressure gauges

15.9.1 Each boiler is to be provided with a separate steam pressure gauge.

15.9.2 The gauges are to be placed where they are easily read.

### 15.10 Blow-down and scum valves

15.10.1 Each boiler is to be fitted with at least one blow-down valve.

15.10.2 The blow-down valve is to be attached, wherever practicable, direct to the lower part of the boiler. Where it is not practicable to attach the blow-down valve directly, a steel pipe supported from the boiler may be fitted between the boiler and valve.

15.10.3 The blow-down valve and its connections to the sea need not be more than 38 mm, and is to be not less than 19 mm internal diameter. For cylindrical boilers the size of the valve may be generally 0,0085 times the diameter of the boiler.

15.10.4 Blow-down valves and scum valves (where the latter are fitted) of two or more boilers may be connected to one common discharge, but where thus arranged there are to be screw-down non-return valves fitted for each boiler to prevent the possibility of the contents of one boiler passing to another.

15.10.5 For blow-down valves or cocks on the ship's side and attachments, see Pt 7, Ch 2,2.

### 15.11 Sampling valve or cock

15.11.1 Each boiler is to be provided with a sampling valve or cock secured direct to the boiler in a convenient position. The valve or cock is not to be on the water gauge standpipe.

### 15.12 Additional requirements for shell type exhaust gas steaming economisers

15.12.1 The design and construction of shell type economisers are to pay particular attention to the welding, heat treatment and inspection arrangements at the tube plate connection to the shell.

15.12.2 Every shell type economiser is to be provided with removable lagging at the circumference of the tube end plates to enable ultrasonic examination of the tube plate to shell connection.

15.12.3 Every economiser is to be provided with arrangements for pre-heating and de-aeration, and addition of water treatment or combination thereof, to control the quality of feed water to within the manufacturer's recommendations.

15.12.4 The manufacturer is to provide operating instructions for each economiser which is to include reference to:

- Feed water treatment and sampling arrangements.
- Operating temperatures – exhaust gas and feed water temperatures.
- Operating pressure.
- Inspection and cleaning procedures.
- Records of maintenance and inspection.
- The need to maintain adequate water flow through the economiser under all operating conditions.
- Periodical operational checks of the safety devices to be carried out by the operating personnel and to be documented accordingly.
- Procedures for using the exhaust gas economiser in the dry condition.
- Procedures for maintenance and overhaul of safety valves.
- Emergency operating procedures.

## Section 16 Mountings and fittings for water tube boilers

### 16.1 General

16.1.1 Mountings and fittings not mentioned in this Section are to be in accordance with the requirements in Section 15.

### 16.2 Safety valves

16.2.1 Water tube boilers are to be fitted with not less than two safety valves of area and design in general accordance with the requirements of 15.2.

16.2.2 Each saturated steam drum and each superheater are to be provided with at least one safety valve.

16.2.3 Where the superheater forms an integral part of the boiler, the relieving capacity of the superheater safety valve(s), based on the reduced pressure at the superheater outlet, may be included as part of the total relieving capacity required for the boiler. As some Naval Authorities may limit the proportion of the superheater safety valve relieving capacity which may be credited towards the total capacity for the boiler, builders should give attention to any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 16

**16.2.4** The boiler and superheater valves are to be so disposed and proportioned between saturated steam drum and superheater outlet that the superheater will be protected from overheating under all service conditions, including an emergency stop of the ship at full power.

**16.2.5** Where it is proposed to fit full bore safety valves operated by independent pilot valves, the arrangements are to be submitted for consideration. The pipes connecting pilot valves and main valves are to be of ample bore and wall thickness to minimise the possibility of obstruction and damage.

**16.2.6** Where it is impracticable to attach safety valves directly to the superheater, the valves are to be located as near as possible thereto and fitted to a branch piece connected to the superheater outlet pipe.

**16.2.7** In high temperature installations the drains from safety valves are to be led to a tank or other place where high temperature steam can be safely discharged.

### 16.3 Safety valve settings

**16.3.1** All boiler and superheater safety valves are to be set under steam to their respective working pressures, which are not to be greater than the approved design pressure of the boiler. As a working tolerance the setting is acceptable provided the valves lift at not more than 103 per cent of the approved pressure.

**16.3.2** In the setting of superheater safety valves, allowance is to be made for the pressure drop through the superheater so that under discharge conditions the pressure in the boiler will not exceed the approved boiler pressure.

**16.3.3** In no case is the superheater safety valve setting to exceed by more than three per cent the pressure for which the steam piping is approved.

### 16.4 Waste steam pipes

**16.4.1** The waste steam pipe and passages leading to it from the safety valves are to be in general accordance with the requirements of 15.3.

**16.4.2** In installations operating with a high degree of superheat, consideration is to be given to the high temperatures which waste steam pipes, silencers and surrounding spaces will attain when the superheater safety valves are blowing during accumulation tests and in service, adequate protection against heat effects is to be provided to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

**16.4.3** Waste steam pipes are to be led well clear of electric cables and any parts or structures sensitive to heat or likely to distort; the pipes are to be insulated where necessary. In these installations each boiler should have a separate waste steam pipe system to atmosphere, with supporting and expansion arrangements such that no direct loading is imposed on the safety valve chests.

### 16.5 Accumulation tests

**16.5.1** Tests for accumulation of pressure are to be carried out with the stop valve closed and under full firing conditions for a period not exceeding seven minutes. The accumulation is not to exceed 10 per cent of the design pressure.

**16.5.2** Where accumulation tests might endanger the superheaters, consideration will be given in cases of fired boilers to the omission of these tests, provided that application is made when the boiler plan and sizes of safety valves are submitted for approval, and that the safety valves are of an approved type for which the capacity has been established by test in the presence of the Surveyors or an approved independent authority, or for which LR is satisfied, by long experience of accumulation tests, that the capacity is adequate. When it is agreed to waive accumulation tests, it will be required that the valve makers provide a certificate for each safety valve, stating its rated capacity at the approved working conditions of the boilers and that the boiler makers provide a certificate for each boiler stating its maximum evaporation.

**16.5.3** The safety valves are to be found satisfactory in operation under working conditions during the trials of the machinery on board ship.

### 16.6 Water level indicators

**16.6.1** Every boiler designed to contain water at a specified level is to be fitted with at least two means for indicating its water level, at least one of which is to be a direct reading gauge glass. The other means is to be either an additional gauge glass or an approved equivalent device. The required water level indicators are to be independent of each other.

**16.6.2** Where a pair of gauge glasses are set at different levels to provide an extended range of water level indication they will only be considered as one water level indicator.

**16.6.3** An approved equivalent device for level indication may derive its level input signal from one of the low water level detection systems required by 16.7.1 provided that in the event of a power supply failure to that system an alarm is initiated and the oil fuel supply to the burners, or any other fuel used to fire the boiler, is automatically shut-off. The fuel supply shut-off will only be required if the power supply failure results in the direct reading gauge glass being the only functioning water level indicator.

**16.6.4** Where a steam and water drum exceeding 4 m in length is fitted athwartships, two glass water gauges are to be fitted in suitable positions, one near each end of the drum.

**16.6.5** The position of the glass water gauge of boilers in which the tubes are entirely drowned when cold is to be such that water is just showing in the glass when the water level in the steam drum is just above the top of the uppermost tubes when the boiler is cold.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Sections 16, 17 & 18

16.6.6 In boilers, the tubes of which are not entirely drowned when cold, the glass water gauges are to be placed, to the Surveyor's satisfaction, in the positions which have been found by experience to indicate satisfactorily that the water content is sufficient for safety when the boiler is worked under all service conditions.

### 16.7 Low water level fuel shut-off and alarm

16.7.1 Every fired boiler designed to contain water at a specified level is to be fitted with two systems of water level detection which are to be independent of each other, and which will operate an alarm and shut-off automatically the fuel supply to the burners when the water level falls to a predetermined low level. These level detectors may be used for other functions, e.g., high level alarm, feed pump control, etc.

16.7.2 Any proposals to depart from these requirements in the case of small auxiliary boilers will be the subject of special consideration.

### 16.8 Feed check valves and water level regulators

16.8.1 Two feed check and stop valves, connected to separate feed lines, are to be provided for each boiler and are to be attached, wherever practicable, direct to the boiler or to an economiser which forms an integral part of the boiler.

16.8.2 Where the arrangements necessitate the use of a common inlet pipe on the economiser for both main and auxiliary feed systems, this pipe is to be as short as practicable, and the arrangements of check valves is to be such that either feed line can be effectively isolated without interruption of the feed water supply to the boiler.

16.8.3 At least one of the feed water systems is to be fitted with an approved feed water regulator whereby the water level in the boilers is controlled automatically. See Pt 7, Ch 3,6 for arrangements and details of boiler feed systems.

16.8.4 The feed check valves are to be fitted with efficient gearing, whereby they can be satisfactorily worked from the stokehold floor, or other convenient position.

16.8.5 Standpipes on boilers, for feed inlets, are to be designed with an internal pipe to prevent direct contact between the feed pipe and the boiler shell or end plates with the object of minimising thermal stresses in these plates. Similar arrangements are to be provided for desuperheater and other connections where significant temperature differences occur in service.

## Section 17 Hydraulic tests

### 17.1 General

17.1.1 Boilers and pressure vessels, together with their components are to withstand the following hydraulic tests without any sign of weakness or defect.

17.1.2 Having regard to the variation in the types and design of boilers, the hydraulic test may be carried out by either of the methods indicated below:

- (a) boilers are to be tested on completion to a pressure 1,5 times the approved design pressure, or
- (b) where construction permits, all components of the boiler are to be tested on completion of the work including heat treatment to 1,5 times the design pressure. In the case of components such as drums or headers, which are to be drilled for tube holes, the test may be before drilling the tube holes, but is to be after the attachment of standpipes, stubs and similar fittings and also after heat treatment has been carried out. Where all the components have been tested as above, each completed boiler after assembly is to be tested to 1,25 times the design pressure.

### 17.2 Mountings

17.2.1 All boiler mountings are to be subjected to a hydraulic test of twice the approved design pressure with the exception of feed check valves and other mountings connected to the main feed system which are to be tested to 2,5 times the approved boiler design pressure, or twice the maximum pressure which can be developed in the feed line in normal service, whichever is greater.

## Section 18 Control and monitoring

### 18.1 General

18.1.1 The Control and Monitoring systems are to comply with the requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1.

### 18.2 Automatic and remote controls

18.2.1 Where a boiler is fitted with automatic or remote controls so that under normal operating conditions it does not require normal intervention by the operators, it is to be provided with alarms and safety arrangements required by 18.2.2 to 18.2.10 and Table 1.18.1.

18.2.2 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shutdown of machinery is required by Table 1.18.1, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shutdown are to be independent of those required for the first stage alarm.

# Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels

## Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1

Section 18

**Table 1.18.1 Boilers: Alarms and safeguards**  
(see continuation)

| Item                                                      | Alarm           | Note                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Water level*                                              | Low             | Two water level sensors are to be provided each to operate independently, and automatically shut off the oil fuel to the burners and operate alarms. See Notes 1 to 3, and Note 5 |
|                                                           | 1st stage high* | —                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Water level*                                              | 2nd stage high  | Where applicable automatic closure of turbine steam inlet valves. See 18.2.2                                                                                                      |
| Steam drum or superheater outlet pressure                 | High and low    | —                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Superheated steam temperature                             | High            | —                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| De-superheated steam temperature*                         | High            | —                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Feed water forced circulation flow (if fitted)            | Low             | Oil fuel to burners to be shut off automatically, see Note 5                                                                                                                      |
| Feed water pH                                             | Low             | When automatic dosing of feed water fitted                                                                                                                                        |
| Feed water salinity                                       | High            | Fitted in boiler feed system                                                                                                                                                      |
| Feed water temperature                                    | Low             | When automatic temperature control fitted                                                                                                                                         |
| Combustion air pressure*                                  | Low             | Oil fuel to burners to be shut off automatically, see Note 5                                                                                                                      |
| Oil fuel pressure*                                        | Low             | —                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Oil fuel temperature or viscosity*                        | High and low    | Heavy oil only                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Oil fuel atomising steam/air pressure                     | Low             | —                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Burner flame                                              | Failure         | Each burner to be monitored. Oil fuel to burner(s) to be shut off automatically, see Pt 7, Ch 3,3.1.11 to 3.3.12 and Note 5                                                       |
| Flame monitoring device(s)*                               | Failure         | See 18.2.8 and Note 5                                                                                                                                                             |
| Igniter*                                                  | Failure         | Each igniter to be checked before oil fuel is supplied to burner(s), see Note 5                                                                                                   |
| Forced draft fan*                                         | Power failure   | Oil fuel to burners to be shut-off automatically, see Note 5                                                                                                                      |
| Air register and dampers (including those in the uptake)* | Not fully open  | Purge sequence to be inhibited, see Pt 7, Ch 3,3.1.9                                                                                                                              |
| Control system*                                           | Power failure   | Oil fuel to burners to be shut-off automatically. Control using alternative arrangements is to remain available, see Pt 9, Ch 1,2.5.7.                                            |
| Feed water or water forced circulation flow (if fitted)   | Low             | Oil fuel to burners to be shut off automatically, see Notes 5 and 6                                                                                                               |

**Table 1.18.1 Boilers: Alarms and safeguards**  
(conclusion)

| Item                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Alarm | Note                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Uptake temperature                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | High  | Where economiser and/or gas air heaters are integral with the boiler and also for independent exhaust gas boilers/economisers, to monitor for soot fires See Note 7 |
| <b>NOTES</b> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For dual evaporation boilers the primary circuit is to be fitted with two independent low water level detectors which will operate alarms and shut off the oil fuel to the burners automatically. The secondary circuit is to be fitted with one low water level detector which will operate alarms and shut off the oil fuel to the burners automatically. Additionally one high water level alarm is to be fitted on the secondary circuit which may be operated by the same detector as that provided for low water level detection.</li> <li>Only one independent system of low water level detection, alarm and automatic oil fuel shut off need be fitted in the case of small forced circulation or re-circulation coiled water tube 'package' type boilers when evaporation is less than 2900 kg/hr or the heating surface is less than 100 m<sup>2</sup>.</li> <li>Where two level sensors are provided these may be used for other functions, e.g., high level alarm, level control, trip systems. etc.</li> <li>For boilers not supplying steam for propulsion or for services essential for the safety or the operation of the ship at sea, only the items marked* are required.</li> <li>These safeguards are to remain operative during automatic, manual and emergency operation.</li> <li>For exhaust gas economisers/boilers requiring feed water or forced water circulation, the low flow alarm is to be fitted with provision to override the alarm if the exhaust gas economiser/boiler is to be operated in the dry condition. See also Pt 7, Ch 3,6.2.4.</li> <li>Alternatively, details (including location) of an appropriate fire detection system are to be submitted for consideration.</li> </ol> |       |                                                                                                                                                                     |

18.2.3 The following boiler services are to be fitted with automatic controls so as to maintain steady state conditions throughout the normal operating range of the boiler:

- Combustion system.
- Oil fuel supply temperature or viscosity, oil fuel grades requiring heating or cooling, as applicable.
- Boiler drum water level.
- De-aerator water level where applicable.
- Superheated steam pressure where applicable.
- Superheated steam temperature where applicable.
- De-superheated steam pressure where applicable.
- De-superheated steam temperature where applicable.

18.2.4 Safety systems and overrides are to comply with the requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1,2.4.8.

18.2.5 Burner controls are to be arranged such that light off is only possible at the minimum firing rate compatible with flame establishment. If ignition is set to occur at a fuel rich condition the burner is to revert to the correct operating air/fuel ratio on establishment of a stable flame.

## **Steam Raising Plant and Associated Pressure Vessels**

## **Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 1**

*Section 18*

---

18.2.6 Where water level indicators are dependent upon an external power supply, the oil fuel supply to the burners is to be automatically shut off in the event of power or signal failure.

18.2.7 Burner oil fuel valve(s) are not to open:

- prior to completion of required warm up times; or
- when the power supply to the igniter has failed; or
- prior to the completion of furnace purging, see Pt 7, Ch 3,3.1.9.

18.2.8 Arrangements for flame failure detection are to be provided with self-monitoring capabilities which prove that the flame detector is not erroneously indicating the presence of a flame. In the event of failure being detected by these self-monitoring capabilities:

- oil fuel to the burner is to be shut-off automatically; and
- an alarm is to be activated.

18.2.9 Where established as necessary by Pt 7, Ch 3,3.1.10 means are to be provided to prevent starting of the ignition sequence following multiple flame failures until completion of the identified lock out period.

18.2.10 Following burner shut-down, the furnace is to be purged automatically for at least the required pre-purging time. In event of shut-down due to activation of a required safeguard this purging is to be manually initiated.

---

# Other Pressure Vessels

# Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 2

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure**
- 3 **Spherical shells subject to internal pressure**
- 4 **Dished ends subject to internal pressure**
- 5 **Dished ends for Class 3 pressure vessels**
- 6 **Conical ends subject to internal pressure**
- 7 **Standpipes and branches**
- 8 **Construction**
- 9 **Mountings and fittings**
- 10 **Hydraulic tests**
- 11 **Plate heat exchangers**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter are applicable to fusion welded pressure vessels and plate heat exchangers, intended for marine purposes but not included in Chapter 1. The equations in this Chapter may be used for determining the thickness of seamless pressure vessels using a joint factor of 1,0. Seamless pressure vessels are to be manufactured and tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 5 of the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Materials).

1.1.2 Where the required design criteria for pressure vessels are not indicated within this Chapter, the relevant Sections of Chapter 1 are applicable.

### 1.2 Definition of symbols

1.2.1 The symbols used in the various formulae in Sections 2 to 7 inclusive, unless otherwise stated, are defined as follows, and are applicable to the specific part of the pressure vessel under consideration:

- $d$  = diameter of hole, or opening, in mm
- $p$  = design pressure, see 1.3, in bar
- $r_i$  = inside knuckle radius, in mm
- $r_o$  = outside knuckle radius, in mm
- $s$  = pitch, in mm
- $t$  = minimum thickness, in mm
- $D_i$  = inside diameter, in mm
- $D_o$  = outside diameter, in mm

$J$  = joint factor applicable to welded seams, see 1.9, or ligament efficiency between tube holes (expressed as a fraction, see Ch 1,2.2)

$R_i$  = inside radius, in mm

$R_o$  = outside radius, in mm

$T$  = design temperature, in °C

$\sigma$  = allowable stress, see 1.8, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

1.2.2 Where reference is made to calculated or actual plate thickness for the derivation of other values, these thicknesses are to be minus the standard Rule corrosion allowance of 0,75 mm, if not so stated.

### 1.3 Design pressure

1.3.1 The design pressure is the maximum permissible working pressure, and is to be not less than the highest set pressure of any relief valve.

1.3.2 Calculations made to determine the scantlings of the pressure parts are to be based on the design pressure, adjusted where necessary to take account of pressure variations corresponding to the most severe operational conditions.

1.3.3 It is desirable that there should be a margin between the normal pressure at which the pressure vessel operates and the lowest pressure at which any relief valve is set to lift, to prevent unnecessary lifting of the relief valve.

### 1.4 Metal temperature

1.4.1 The metal temperature,  $T$ , used to evaluate the allowable stress,  $\sigma$ , is to be taken as the actual metal temperature expected under operating conditions for the pressure part concerned, and is to be stated by the manufacturer when plans of the pressure parts are submitted for consideration.

1.4.2 The design temperature,  $T$ , for calculation purposes is to be not less than 50°C.

### 1.5 Classification of fusion welded pressure vessels

1.5.1 For Rule purposes, pressure vessels are graded as Class 1 where the shell thickness exceeds 38 mm.

1.5.2 For Rule purposes, pressure vessels are graded as Class 2/1 and Class 2/2 if they comply with the following conditions:

- (a) where the design pressure exceeds 17,2 bar; or
- (b) where the metal temperature exceeds 150°C; or
- (c) where the design pressure, in bar, multiplied by the actual thickness of the shell, in mm, exceeds 157; or
- (d) where the shell thickness does not exceed 38 mm.

1.5.3 For Rule purposes, Class 3 pressure vessels are to have a maximum shell thickness of 16 mm, and are pressure vessels not included in Classes 1, 2/1 or 2/2.

1.5.4 Pressure vessels which are constructed in accordance with Classes 2/1, 2/2 or 3 standards (as indicated above) will, if manufactured in accordance with the requirements of superior Class, be approved with the scantlings appropriate to that Class.

1.5.5 Pressure vessels which only have circumferential fusion welded seams, will be considered as seamless with no Class being assigned. Preliminary weld procedure tests and non-destructive examination for the circumferential seam welds should be carried out for the equivalent Class as determined by 1.5.1, 1.5.2 and 1.5.3.

1.5.6 In special circumstances relating to service conditions, materials, operating temperature, the carriage of dangerous gases and liquids, etc., it may be required that certain pressure vessels be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of a superior Class.

1.5.7 Details of heat treatment, non-destructive examination and routine tests (where required) are given in Chapter 13 of the Rules for Materials.

1.5.8 Hydraulic testing is required for all classes of pressure vessels.

1.5.9 For a full definition of Classes of pressure vessels relating to boilers and associated pressure vessels, see Ch 1,1.

## 1.6 Plans

1.6.1 Plans of pressure vessels are to be submitted in triplicate for consideration where all the conditions in (a) or (b) are satisfied:

(a) The vessel contains vapours or gases, e.g. air receivers, hydrophore or similar vessels and gaseous CO<sub>2</sub> vessels for fire-fighting, and

$$\begin{aligned} pV &> 600 \\ p &> 1 \\ V &> 100 \\ V &= \text{volume (litres) of gas or vapour space} \end{aligned}$$

(b) The vessel contains liquefied gases, and

$$\begin{aligned} p &> 7 \\ V &> 100 \\ V &= \text{volume (litres)} \\ p &\text{ is as defined in 1.2.1.} \end{aligned}$$

1.6.2 Plans of full constructional features of the vessel and dimensional details of the weld preparations for longitudinal and circumferential seams and attachments, together with particulars of the welding consumables and of the mechanical properties of the materials, are to be submitted before construction is commenced.

## 1.7 Materials

1.7.1 Materials used in the construction of Class 1, 2/1 and 2/2 pressure vessels are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with the requirements of the Rules for Materials. Materials used in the construction of Class 3 pressure vessels may be in accordance with the requirements of an acceptable national or international specification. The manufacturer's certificate will be accepted in lieu of Lloyd's Register's (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') material certificate for such materials.

1.7.2 The specified minimum tensile strength of carbon and carbon-manganese steel plates, pipes, forgings and castings is to be within the general limits of 340 to 520 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

1.7.3 The specified minimum tensile strength of low alloy steel plates, pipes, forgings and castings is to be within the general limits of 400 to 500 N/mm<sup>2</sup>, and pressure vessels made in these steels are to be either seamless or Class 1 fusion welded.

1.7.4 Where it is proposed to use materials other than those specified in the Rules for Materials, details of the chemical compositions, heat treatment and mechanical properties are to be submitted for approval. In such cases, the values of the mechanical properties used for deriving the allowable stress are to be subject to agreement by LR.

## 1.8 Allowable stress

1.8.1 The term 'allowable stress',  $\sigma$ , is the stress to be used in the formulae for the calculation of scantlings of pressure parts.

1.8.2 The allowable stress,  $\sigma$ , is to be the lowest of the following values:

$$\sigma = \frac{E_t}{1,5} \quad \sigma = \frac{R_{20}}{2,7} \quad \sigma = \frac{S_R}{1,5}$$

where

$E_t$  = specified minimum lower yield stress or 0,2 per cent proof stress at temperature,  $T$  for carbon and carbon-manganese steels. In the case of austenitic steels, the 1,0 per cent proof stress at temperature,  $T$ , is to be used

$R_{20}$  = specified minimum tensile strength at room temperature

$S_R$  = average stress to produce rupture in 100 000 hours at temperature,  $T$

$T$  = metal temperature, see 1.4.

1.8.3 The allowable stress for steel castings is to be taken as 80 per cent of the value determined by the method indicated in 1.8.2 using the appropriate values for cast steel.

1.8.4 Where steel castings, which have been tested in accordance with the Rules for Materials, are also subjected to non-destructive tests, consideration will be given to increasing the allowable stress using a factor up to 90 per cent in lieu of the 80 per cent referred to in 1.8.3. Particulars of the non-destructive test proposals are to be submitted for consideration.



## 1.9 Joint factors

1.9.1 The following joint factors are to be used in the equations in Sections 2 to 6, where applicable. Fusion welded pressure parts are to be made in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 3.

| Class of pressure vessel | Joint factor |
|--------------------------|--------------|
| Class 1                  | 1,0          |
| Class 2/1                | 0,85         |
| Class 2/2                | 0,75         |
| Class 3                  | 0,60         |

1.9.2 The longitudinal joints for all Classes of vessels are to be butt joints. Circumferential joints for Class 1 vessels are also to be butt welds. Circumferential joints for Classes 2/1, 2/2 and 3 vessels should also be butt joints with the following exceptions:

- (a) Circumferential joints for Classes 2/1, 2/2 and 3 vessels may be of the joggle type provided neither plate at the joints exceeds 16 mm thickness.
- (b) Circumferential joints for Class 3 vessels may be of the lap type provided neither plate at the joint exceeds 16 mm thickness nor the internal diameter of the vessel exceeds 610 mm.

For typical acceptable methods of attaching flat ends, see Fig. 1.8.2 and Fig. 1.9.1 in Chapter 1.

For typical acceptable methods of attaching dished ends, see Fig. 2.8.1.

1.9.3 Where a pressure vessel is to be made of alloy steel, particulars of the welding consumables to be used, including typical mechanical properties and chemical composition of the deposited weld metal, are to be submitted for approval.

## 1.10 Pressure parts of irregular shape

1.10.1 Where pressure parts are of such irregular shape that it is impracticable to design their scantlings by the application of the formulae in Sections 2 to 7, the suitability of their construction is to be determined by hydraulic proof test of a prototype or by an agreed alternative method.

## 1.11 Adverse working conditions

1.11.1 Where working conditions are adverse, special consideration may require to be given to increasing the scantlings derived from the formulae. In this connection, where necessary, account should also be taken of any excess of loading resulting from:

- (a) impact loads, including rapidly fluctuating pressures,
- (b) weight of the vessel and normal contents under operating and test conditions,
- (c) superimposed loads, such as other pressure vessels, operating equipment, insulation, corrosion-resistant or erosion-resistant linings and piping,
- (d) reactions of supporting lugs, rings, saddles or other types of supports, or
- (e) the effect of temperature gradients on maximum stress.

## Section 2 Cylindrical shells and drums subject to internal pressure

### 2.1 Minimum thickness

2.1.1 The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of a cylindrical shell is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p R_i}{10\sigma J - 0,5p} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$ ,  $p$ ,  $R_i$  and  $\sigma$  are as defined in 1.2

$J$  = the joint factor of the longitudinal joints (expressed as a fraction). See 1.9 in the case of seamless shells clear of openings  $J = 1,0$ .

2.1.2 The formula in 2.1.1 is applicable only where the resulting thickness does not exceed half the internal radius, i.e. where  $R_o$  is not greater than  $1,5R_i$ .

2.1.3 Irrespective of the thickness determined by the formula in 2.1.1,  $t$  is to be not less than  $3 + \frac{D_i}{1500}$  mm, where

$D_i$  is as defined in 1.2. The minimum thickness permitted for vessels manufactured in corrosion resistant steels will be the subject of special consideration.

## Cross-references

For efficiency of ligaments between tube holes, see Ch 1,2.2.

For compensating effect of tube stubs, see Ch 1,2.3.

For unreinforced openings, see Ch 1,2.4.

For reinforced openings, see Ch 1,2.5.

## Section 3 Spherical shells subject to internal pressure

### 3.1 Minimum thickness

3.1.1 The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of a spherical shell is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p R_i}{20\sigma J + 0,5p} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$ ,  $p$ ,  $R_i$ ,  $\sigma$  and  $J$  are as defined in 1.2.

3.1.2 The formula in 3.1.1 is applicable only where the resulting thickness does not exceed half the internal radius.

# Other Pressure Vessels

# Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 2

Sections 3, 4 & 5

3.1.3 Irrespective of the thickness determined by the formula in 3.1.1,  $t$  is to be not less than  $3 + \frac{D_i}{1500}$  mm, where

$D_i$  is as defined in 1.2. The minimum thickness permitted for vessels manufactured in corrosion resistant steels will be the subject of special consideration.

3.1.4 Openings in spherical shells requiring compensation are to comply in general, with Ch 1,2.5 using the calculated actual thickness of the spherical shell as applicable.

## Section 4 Dished ends subject to internal pressure

### 4.1 Minimum thickness

4.1.1 The thickness,  $t$ , of semi-ellipsoidal, and hemispherical unstayed ends, and the knuckle section of torispherical ends dished from plate, having pressure on the concave side and satisfying the conditions listed below, is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p D_o K}{20\sigma J} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t, p, D_o, \sigma$  and  $J$  are as defined in 1.2.

$K$  = a shape factor, see Ch 1,4.2 and Fig. 1.4.1.

4.1.2 For semi-ellipsoidal ends:

the external height,  $H \geq 0,18D_o$

where

$D_o$  = the external diameter of the parallel portion of the end, in mm.

4.1.3 For torispherical ends:

the internal radius,  $R_i \leq D_o$

the internal knuckle radius,  $r_i \geq 0,1D_o$

the internal knuckle radius,  $r_i \geq 3t$

the external height,  $H \geq 0,18D_o$ , and is determined as follows:

$$H = R_o - \sqrt{(R_o - 0,5D_o)(R_o + 0,5D_o - 2r_o)}$$

4.1.4 In addition to the formula in 4.1.1 the thickness,  $t$ , of a torispherical head made from more than one plate, in the crown section, is to be not less than that determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p R_i}{20\sigma J - 0,5p} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t, p, R_i, \sigma$ , and  $J$  are as defined in 1.2.

4.1.5 The thickness required by 4.1.1 for the knuckle section of a torispherical head is to extend past the common tangent point of the knuckle and crown radii into the crown section for a distance not less than  $0,5 \sqrt{R_i t}$  mm, before reducing to the crown thickness permitted by 4.1.4 where  $t$  = the required thickness from 4.1.1.

4.1.6 In all cases,  $H$  is to be measured from the commencement of curvature (shown in Fig. 1.4.2, in Chapter 1).

4.1.7 The minimum thickness of the head,  $t$ , is in no case to be less than  $3 + \frac{D_i}{1500}$  mm, where  $D_i$  is as defined in 1.2.

The minimum thickness permitted for vessels manufactured in corrosion resistant steels will be the subject of special consideration.

4.1.8 For ends which are butt welded to the drum shell, see 1.9, the thickness of the edge of the flange for connection to the shell is to be not less than the thickness of an unpierced seamless or welded shell, whichever is applicable, of the same diameter and material and determined by 2.1.

## Cross-references

For shape factors dished ends, see Ch 1,4.2.

For dished ends with unreinforced openings, see Ch 1,4.3.

For flanged openings in dished ends, see Ch 1,4.4.

For location of unreinforced and flanged openings in dished ends, see Ch 1,4.5.

For dished ends with reinforced openings, see Ch 1,4.6.

## Section 5 Dished ends for Class 3 pressure vessels

### 5.1 Minimum thickness

5.1.1 As an alternative to the formula in 4.1.1, for Class 3 vessels only, the minimum thickness,  $t$ , of a torispherical unstayed end dished from plate and having pressure on the concave or convex side is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p R_i}{C S}$$

where

$t, p$ , and  $R_i$  are as defined in 1.2

$C$  = 2,57 for ends concave to pressure

= 1,65 for ends convex to pressure

$S$  = specified minimum tensile strength of plate, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>, which should be not less than 410 N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

5.1.2 The inside radius of curvature,  $R_i$ , of the end plate is to be not greater than the external diameter of the cylinder to which it is attached.

5.1.3 The inside knuckle radius,  $r_i$ , of the arc joining the cylindrical flange to the spherical surface of the end is to be not less than four times the thickness of the end plate, and in no case less than 65 mm.

# Other Pressure Vessels

# Volume 2, Part 8, Chapter 2

Sections 5, 6 & 7

5.1.4 Ends convex to pressure are not to be used for vessels exceeding 610 mm internal diameter.

5.1.5 Where the end is provided with a flanged manhole, the thickness of the end, in mm, determined by 5.1.1, is to be increased by 3 mm, and the total depth,  $H$ , of the manhole flange, measured from the outer surface of the plate on the minor axis, is to be not less than:

$$H = \sqrt{t_1 W}$$

where

$t_1$  = required thickness of the plate, in mm

$H$  = depth of flange, in mm

$W$  = minor axis of the manhole, in mm.

## Section 6 Conical ends subject to internal pressure

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 Conical ends and conical reducing sections, as shown in Fig. 1.5.1 in Chapter 1, are to be designed in accordance with the equations given in 6.2.

6.1.2 Connections between cylindrical shell and conical sections and ends should preferably be by means of a knuckle transition radius. Typical permitted details are shown in Fig. 1.5.1 in Chapter 1. Alternatively, conical sections and ends may be butt welded to cylinders without a knuckle radius when the change in angle of slope,  $\psi$ , between the two sections under consideration does not exceed 30°.

6.1.3 Conical ends may be constructed of several ring sections of decreasing thickness as determined by the corresponding decreasing diameter.

### 6.2 Minimum thickness

6.2.1 The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of the cylinder, knuckle and conical section at the junction and within the distance  $L$  from the junction is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \sqrt{\frac{p D_o K}{20\sigma J}} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t, p, \sigma$  and  $J$  are as defined in 1.2

$D_o$  = outside diameter, in mm of the conical section or end, see Fig. 1.5.1 in Chapter 1

$K$  = a factor, taking into account the stress in the knuckle, see Table 1.5.1 in Chapter 1.

6.2.2 If the distance of a circumferential seam from the knuckle or junction is not less than  $L$ , then  $J$  is to be taken as 1,0; otherwise  $J$  is to be taken as the weld joint factor appropriate to the circumferential seam, where

$r_i$  = inside radius of transition knuckle, in mm, which is to be taken as  $0,01D_c$  in the case of conical sections without knuckle transition

$L$  = distance, in mm, from knuckle or junction within which meridional stresses determine the required thickness, see Fig. 1.5.1 in Chapter 1

$$= 0,5 \sqrt{\frac{D_o t}{\cos \psi}}$$

$\psi$  = difference between angle of slope of two adjoining conical sections, see Fig. 1.5.1 in Chapter 1.

6.2.3 The minimum thickness,  $t$ , of those parts of conical sections not less than a distance  $L$  from the junction with a cylinder or other conical section, is to be determined by the following formula:

$$t = \frac{p D_c}{20\sigma J - p} \frac{1}{\cos \alpha} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

where

$D_c$  = inside diameter, in mm, of conical section or end at the position under consideration, see Fig. 1.5.1 in Chapter 1

$\alpha, \alpha_1, \alpha_2$  = angle of slope of conical section (at the point under consideration) to the vessel axis, see Fig. 1.5.1 in Chapter 1.

6.2.4 The thickness of conical sections having an angle of inclination to the vessel axis of more than 75° is to be determined as for a flat plate.

## Section 7 Standpipes and branches

### 7.1 Minimum thickness

7.1.1 The minimum wall thickness,  $t$ , of standpipes and branches is to be not less than the greater of the two values determined by the following formulae, making such additions as may be necessary on account of bending, static loads and vibrations:

$$t = \frac{p D_o}{20\sigma + p} + 0,75 \text{ mm}$$

$$t = 0,015D_o + 3,2 \text{ mm}$$

where

$t, p, D_o$  and  $\sigma$  are defined in 1.2.

If the second formula applies, the thickness need only be maintained for a length,  $L$ , from the outside surface of the vessel, but need not extend past the first connection, butt weld or flange,

where:

$$L = 3,5 \sqrt{D_o t} \text{ mm.}$$

7.1.2 In no case need the wall thickness exceed the minimum shell thickness as required by 2.1, 3.1 or 4.1 as applicable.

## Section 8 Construction

### 8.1 Access arrangements

8.1.1 Pressure vessels are to be so made that the internal surfaces may be examined. Wherever practicable, the openings for this purpose are to be sufficiently large for access and for cleaning the inner surfaces.

8.1.2 Manholes in cylindrical shells should preferably have their shorter axes arranged longitudinally.

8.1.3 Doors for manholes and sightholes are to be formed from steel plate or of other approved construction, and all jointing surfaces are to be machined.

8.1.4 Doors of the internal type are to be provided with spigots which have a clearance of not more than 1,5 mm all round, i.e. the axes of the opening are not to exceed those of the door by more than 3 mm. The width of the manhole gasket seat is not to be less than 16 mm.

8.1.5 Doors of the internal type for openings not larger than 230 x 180 mm need be fitted with only one stud, which may be forged integral with the door. Doors for openings larger than 230 mm x 180 mm are to be fitted with two studs or bolts. The strength of the attachment to the door is not to be less than the strength of the stud or bolt.

8.1.6 The crossbars or dogs for doors are to be of steel.

8.1.7 External circular flat cover plates are to be in accordance with a recognised standard.

### 8.2 Torispherical and semi-ellipsoidal ends

8.2.1 For typical acceptance types of attachment for dished ends to cylindrical shells, see Fig. 2.8.1. Types (d) and (e) are to be made a tight fit in the cylindrical shell.

8.2.2 Where the difference in thickness is the same throughout the circumference, the thicker plate is to be reduced in thickness by machining to a taper for a distance not less than four times the offset, so that the two plates are of equal thickness at the position of the circumferential weld. A parallel portion may be provided between the end of the taper and the weld edge preparation; alternatively, if so desired, the width of the weld may be included as part of the smooth taper of the thicker plate.

8.2.3 The thickness of the plates at the position of the circumferential weld is to be not less than that of an unpierced cylindrical shell of seamless or welded construction, whichever is applicable, of the same diameter and material, see 2.1.

### ■ Cross-references

For hemispherical ends, see Ch 1,14.3.

For openings in flat ends, see Ch 1,8.3.

For unstayed circular flat end plates, see Ch 1,8.3.

For welded-on flanges, butt joints and fabricated branch pieces, see Ch 1,14.4.

For welded attachments to pressure vessels, see Ch 1,14.5.

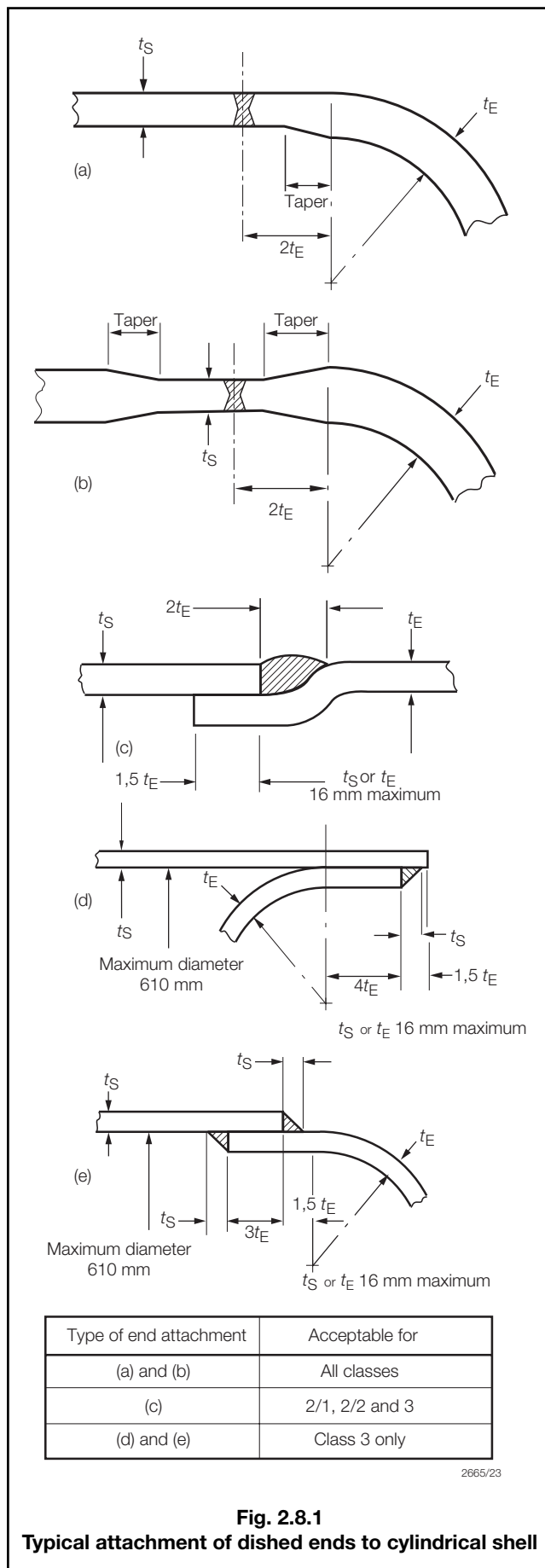


Fig. 2.8.1

Typical attachment of dished ends to cylindrical shell

## Section 9 Mountings and fittings

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 Each pressure vessel or system is to be fitted with a stop valve situated as close as possible to the shell.

9.1.2 Adequate arrangements are to be provided to prevent over-pressure of any part of a pressure vessel which can be isolated. Pressure gauges are to be fitted in positions where they can be easily read.

9.1.3 Adequate arrangements are to be provided for draining and venting the separate parts of each pressure vessel.

### 9.2 Receivers containing pressurised gases

9.2.1 Each air receiver is to be fitted with a drain arrangement at its lowest part, permitting oil and water to be blown out.

9.2.2 Each receiver which can be isolated from a relief valve is to be provided with a suitable fusible plug to discharge the contents in case of fire. The melting point of the fusible plug is to be approximately 150°C. See also 9.2.3 and 9.2.4.

9.2.3 Where a fixed system utilising fire-extinguishing gas is fitted, to protect a machinery space containing an air receiver(s), fitted with a fusible plug, it is recommended that the discharge from the fusible plug be piped to the open deck.

9.2.4 Receivers used for the storage of air for the control of remotely operated valves are to be fitted with relief valves and not fusible plugs.

## Cross-reference

For starting air pipe systems and safety fittings, see Ch 2,7.

## ■ Section 10 Hydraulic tests

### 10.1 General

10.1.1 Pressure vessels covered by this Chapter are to be tested on completion to a pressure,  $p_T$ , determined by the following formula, without showing signs of weakness or defect:

$$p_T = 1,3 \frac{\sigma_{50}}{\sigma_T} \frac{t}{(t - 0,75)} p$$

but in no case is to exceed

$$1,5 \frac{t}{(t - 0,75)} p$$

where

$p$  = design pressure, in bar

$p_T$  = test pressure, in bar

$t$  = nominal thickness of shell as indicated on the plan, in mm

$\sigma_T$  = allowable stress at design temperature, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\sigma_{50}$  = allowable stress at 50°C, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

### 10.2 Mountings

10.2.1 Mountings are to be subjected to a hydraulic test of twice the approved design pressure.

## ■ Section 11 Plate heat exchangers

### 11.1 General

11.1.1 Plate heat exchangers are to be classed as follows: Class 2 where either of the following conditions apply:

(a) the maximum metal design temperature is 150°C or greater; or

(b) design pressure is 17,2 bar or greater.

Class 3 in all other cases.

11.1.2 Where the design temperature is equal to or lower than minus 10°C, a higher class is to apply.

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2  
Part 9 Control Engineering  
January 2013

|             |          |                                              |
|-------------|----------|----------------------------------------------|
| PART        | 1        | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS                         |
| PART        | 2        | PRIME MOVERS                                 |
| PART        | 3        | TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS                         |
| PART        | 4        | PROPULSION DEVICES                           |
| PART        | 5        | SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT                |
| PART        | 6        | STEERING SYSTEMS                             |
| PART        | 7        | PIPING SYSTEMS                               |
| PART        | 8        | PRESSURE PLANT                               |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>9</b> | <b>CONTROL ENGINEERING</b>                   |
|             |          | <b>Chapter 1 Control Engineering Systems</b> |
| PART        | 10       | ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING                       |
| PART        | 11       | SUPPORT SYSTEMS                              |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.



---

|                |          |                                                                                                             |
|----------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>CONTROL ENGINEERING SYSTEMS</b>                                                                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General engineering systems</b>                                                                          |
|                | 1.1      | General requirements                                                                                        |
|                | 1.2      | Plans and information                                                                                       |
|                | 1.3      | Control, alarm and safety equipment                                                                         |
|                | 1.4      | Alterations and additions                                                                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems</b>                                             |
|                | 2.1      | General                                                                                                     |
|                | 2.2      | Control stations for machinery                                                                              |
|                | 2.3      | Alarm systems, general requirements                                                                         |
|                | 2.4      | Safety systems, general requirements                                                                        |
|                | 2.5      | Control systems, general requirements                                                                       |
|                | 2.6      | Bridge control for main propulsion machinery                                                                |
|                | 2.7      | Valve control and indication systems                                                                        |
|                | 2.8      | Fire detection alarm systems                                                                                |
|                | 2.9      | Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems                                                   |
|                | 2.10     | Programmable electronic systems – General requirements                                                      |
|                | 2.11     | Data communication links                                                                                    |
|                | 2.12     | Additional requirements for wireless data communication links                                               |
|                | 2.13     | Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for Mobility category and safety critical systems |
|                | 2.14     | Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Ergonomics of control stations</b>                                                                       |
|                | 3.1      | Objectives                                                                                                  |
|                | 3.2      | Control station layout                                                                                      |
|                | 3.3      | Physical environment                                                                                        |
|                | 3.4      | Operator interface                                                                                          |
|                | 3.5      | Controls                                                                                                    |
|                | 3.6      | Displays                                                                                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Unattended machinery space(s) – UMS notation</b>                                                         |
|                | 4.1      | General                                                                                                     |
|                | 4.2      | Alarm systems for machinery                                                                                 |
|                | 4.3      | Bridge control for propulsion machinery                                                                     |
|                | 4.4      | Control stations for machinery                                                                              |
|                | 4.5      | Fire detection alarm system                                                                                 |
|                | 4.6      | Bilge level detection                                                                                       |
|                | 4.7      | Supply of electric power, general                                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Machinery operated from a centralised control station – CCS notation</b>                                 |
|                | 5.1      | General requirements                                                                                        |
|                | 5.2      | Centralised control station for machinery                                                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Integrated computer control – ICC notation</b>                                                           |
|                | 6.1      | General                                                                                                     |
|                | 6.2      | General requirements                                                                                        |
|                | 6.3      | Operator stations                                                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Trials</b>                                                                                               |
|                | 7.1      | General                                                                                                     |
|                | 7.2      | Unattended machinery space operation – UMS notation                                                         |
|                | 7.3      | Operation from a centralised control station – CCS notation                                                 |
|                | 7.4      | Integrated platform management system failure                                                               |
|                | 7.5      | Record of trials                                                                                            |

# Control Engineering Systems

# Volume 2, Part 9, Chapter 1

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General engineering systems**
- 2 **Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems**
- 3 **Ergonomics of control stations**
- 4 **Unattended machinery space(s) – UMS notation**
- 5 **Machinery operated from a centralised control station – CCS notation**
- 6 **Integrated computer control – ICC notation**
- 7 **Trials**

## ■ Section 1 General engineering systems

### 1.1 General requirements

1.1.1 This Chapter applies to systems providing control, alarm or safety functions for the following:

- Main propulsion systems.
- Steering and manoeuvring systems.
- Electrical power systems.
- Essential auxiliary machinery systems.
- Other engineering systems necessary for the watertight and weathertight integrity of the ship and functioning of ship type category systems.

1.1.2 Attention is to be given to any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority.

1.1.3 Section 2 states requirements for alarm systems, safety systems and automatic or remote controls where fitted.

1.1.4 Section 3 states requirements which shall apply where it is intended to operate the ship with machinery spaces unattended. In general, naval ships complying with the requirements of Section 3 will be eligible for the class notation **UMS**.

1.1.5 Section 4 states requirements which shall apply where it is intended to operate the ship with machinery spaces under continuous supervision from a centralised control station. In general, naval ships complying with the requirements of Section 4 will be eligible for the class notation **CCS**.

1.1.6 Section 5 states requirements which shall apply where it is intended that the control and supervision of ship operational functions are computer based. In general naval ships complying with the requirements of Section 5 will be eligible for the class notation **ICC**.

1.1.7 Electrical engineering arrangements and equipment are to comply with the requirements of Pt 10, Ch 1 as applicable.

1.1.8 LR will be prepared to give consideration to special cases or to arrangements which are equivalent to the Rules.

### 1.2 Plans and information

1.2.1 Plans and information as detailed in 1.2.2 to 1.2.8 are to be submitted in triplicate.

1.2.2 **General.** Description of operation (with explanatory diagrams), schematic diagrams of circuits, and lists of monitored parameters with relevant setpoints:

- Controllable pitch propellers.
- Electric generating plant.
- Incinerators.
- Miscellaneous machinery or equipment (where control, alarm and safety systems are specified in other Sections of the Rules).
- Oil fuel transfer and storage systems.
- Propulsion machinery including essential auxiliaries.
- Steam raising plant (boilers and their ancillary equipment).
- Steering systems.
- Thermal fluid heaters.
- Thrust units.
- Valve position indicating systems.
- Waste-heat systems.
- Waterjets for propulsion purposes.
- Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems, see 2.9.

1.2.3 **Test schedules.** Test schedules for both works testing and sea trials, which should include methods of testing and test facilities, see 7.5.1.

1.2.4 **System operational concept.** A description of how the control, alarm and safety systems for the main and auxiliary machinery and systems essential for the propulsion and safety of the ship provide effective means for operation and control during all ship operational conditions.

1.2.5 **Alarm systems.** Details of the overall alarm system linking the main control station, subsidiary control stations, the bridge area and accommodation including details of alerts to be presented by the user interface, with:

- (a) an approach to alert category assignments which is in accordance with the *IMO Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009*; and
- (b) for alarms required by these Rules the intended operator response and the message to be presented.

1.2.6 **Programmable electronic systems.** (In addition to the documentation required by 1.2.2.)

- (a) System requirements specification.
- (b) Details of the hardware configuration in the form of a system block diagram, including input/output schedules.
- (c) Details of power supply and data storage arrangements, see 2.10.9 and 2.13.6.
- (d) Hardware certification details, see 2.10.5 and 2.13.3.
- (e) Software quality plans, including applicable procedures, see 2.10.20.
- (f) Factory acceptance, integration, harbour and sea trial test schedules for hardware and software.
- (g) System integration plan, see 2.14.2.
- (h) Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA), see 2.14.5.

- 1.2.7 For wireless data communication equipment:
- (a) details of manufacturer's installation and maintenance recommendations;
  - (b) network plan with arrangement and type of aerials and identification of location;
  - (c) specification of wireless communication system protocols and management functions, see 2.12.4;
  - (d) details of radio frequency and power levels, including details of those permitted by the National Administration.

1.2.8 Plans showing the location and details of control stations, e.g., control panels and consoles. Location and details of controls and displays on each panel. Detailed user interface specifications. A general arrangement plan of control rooms showing the position of consoles, handrails, operator area, lighting, door and window arrangements. Drawing of HVAC systems including vent arrangements.

1.2.9 **Fire detection systems.** Plans showing the system operation and the type and location of all machinery space fire detector heads, manual call points and the fire detector indicator panel(s). The plans are to indicate the position of the fire detectors in relation to significant items of machinery, ventilation and extraction openings.

1.2.10 **Approved system.** Where it is intended to employ a standard system which has been previously approved, plans are not required to be submitted, providing there have been no changes in the applicable Rule requirements. Details of the previous approval are to be submitted.

1.2.11 **Cables.** For details of instrumentation and control requirements, see Pt 10, Ch 1, 11.

1.2.12 **Lifts.** For details of alarms and safeguards for lifts classed by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR'), reference should be made to LR's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment*.

## 1.3 Control, alarm and safety equipment

1.3.1 Major units of equipment associated with control, alarm and safety functions for systems listed in 1.1.1 are to be surveyed at the manufacturers' works in accordance with the approved test schedule (see 1.2.3), and the inspection and testing are to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction, see 1.2.2.

1.3.2 Equipment used in control, alarm and safety systems is to be suitable for its intended purpose, and accordingly, whenever practicable, be selected from the List of LR Type Approved Products published by LR.

1.3.3 Where equipment intended for essential services requires a controlled environment, an alternative means is to be provided to maintain the required environment in the event of a failure of the normal cooling system. Failure of the cooling system is to initiate an alarm. Duplication of the equipment requiring cooling can be provided instead of an alternative means of cooling, providing that the duplicated equipment is fed from an alternative, independent cooling system.

1.3.4 Assessment of performance parameters, such as accuracy, repeatability, etc., are to be in accordance with an acceptable specialised naval standard, national or international standard, e.g. IEC 60051, *Direct acting indicating analogue electrical measuring instruments and their accessories*.

1.3.5 Special consideration will be given to arrangements that comply with a relevant and acceptable specialised naval, national or international standard, such as IEC 60092-504, *Electrical Installation on Ships – Special Features: Control and Instrumentation*.

## 1.4 Alterations and additions

1.4.1 When an alteration or addition to the approved system(s) is proposed, plans are to be submitted for approval. The alterations or additions are to be carried out under survey and the installation and testing are to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

1.4.2 Details of proposed software modifications are to be submitted for consideration. Where the modification may affect compliance with these Rules, proposals for verification and validation are also to be submitted.

1.4.3 Software versions are to be uniquely identified by number, date or other appropriate means. Modifications are not to be made without also changing the version identifier. A record of changes to the system since the original issue (and their identification) is to be maintained and made available to the LR Surveyor on request.

## Section 2 Essential features for control, alarm and safety systems

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 Where it is proposed to install control, alarm and safety systems to the machinery, equipment and systems listed in 1.2.2 the applicable features contained in this Section are to be incorporated in the system design.

2.1.2 Systems complying with ISO 17894, *Ships and marine technology – Computer applications – General principles for the development and use of programmable electronic systems in marine applications*, may be accepted as meeting the requirements of this Section in which case evidence of compliance is to be submitted for consideration.

### 2.2 Control stations for machinery

2.2.1 Each machinery control station is to be provided with sufficient indication to ensure effective control of machinery and engineering systems and ready identification of faults. Indication should be provided, at least, for those parameters required to be monitored by relevant parts of these Rules.

# Control Engineering Systems

# Volume 2, Part 9, Chapter 1

## Section 2

2.2.2 At the main control station (if provided) or close to the subsidiary stations (if fitted) means of communication with the bridge area, the accommodation for engineering personnel and, if necessary, the machinery spaces are to be provided.

2.2.3 Provision is to be made at the main control station, or subsidiary control stations as appropriate, for the operation of an engineers' alarm which is to be clearly audible in the engineers' accommodation.

2.2.4 Provision is to be made at the main control station and any other subsidiary control station from which the main propulsion and auxiliary machinery or associated equipment may be controlled to indicate which station is in control.

2.2.5 Control of machinery, and associated equipment is to be possible only from one station at a time.

2.2.6 Changeover between control stations is to be arranged so that it may only be effected with the acceptance of the station taking control. The system is to be provided with interlocks or other suitable means to ensure effective transfer of control.

2.2.7 For additional requirements where control stations incorporate visual display units and keyboard facilities, see 2.10.

## 2.3 Alarm systems, general requirements

2.3.1 Where an alarm system is to be provided, alerting relevant personnel to faults, abnormal situations and the other conditions requiring attention in machinery and engineering systems required by this Chapter or other Sections of the Rules, alarm information is to be displayed at the main control station or, alternatively, at subsidiary control stations. In the latter case, a master alarm display is to be provided at the main control station showing which of the subsidiary control stations is indicating a fault.

2.3.2 Machinery, safety and control system faults are to be indicated at the relevant control stations to advise duty personnel of a fault condition. The presence of unrectified faults is to be clearly indicated at all times.

2.3.3 Alerts associated with machinery and equipment required to satisfy this sub-Section are to be categorised according to the urgency and type of response required by the crew, as described in the *IMO Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009*. The assignment of category to each alert is to be evaluated on the basis not only of the machinery or equipment being monitored, but also the complete installation. Categories not included in an alarm system may be omitted from the system design. Details of alternative alert management proposals supported with evidence of service experience may be submitted for consideration by LR provided they are acceptable to the Naval Authority.

2.3.4 Where the facility to provide messages in association with alerts exists, messages accompanying alerts are to describe the condition and indicate the intended response required by the crew.

2.3.5 Where the facility to provide messages in association with alerts exists, messages of different categories are to be clearly distinguishable from each other.

2.3.6 Alarms associated with machinery, safety and control system faults are to be clearly distinguishable from other alarms (e.g., fire, general alarm).

2.3.7 Where alarms are displayed as group alarms, provision is to be made to identify individual alarms at the main control station (if fitted) or alternatively at subsidiary control stations.

2.3.8 All alarms are to be both audible and visual. If arrangements are made to silence audible signals they are not to extinguish visual indications.

2.3.9 Acknowledgement of visual alarms is to be clearly indicated.

2.3.10 Acknowledgement of alarms at positions outside a machinery space is not to silence the audible signal or extinguish the visual indication in that machinery space.

2.3.11 If an alarm has been acknowledged and a second fault occurs prior to the first being rectified, audible signals and visual indications are again to operate. Where alarms are displayed at a local panel adjacent to the machinery and with arrangements to provide a group or common fault alarm in the control room then the occurrence of a second fault prior to the first alarm being rectified need only be displayed at the local panel, however the group alarm is to be re-initiated. Unacknowledged alarms on monitors are to be distinguished by either flashing text or a flashing marker adjacent to the text. A change of colour will not in itself be sufficient to distinguish between acknowledged and unacknowledged alarms.

2.3.12 For the detection of transient faults which are subsequently self-correcting, alarms are required to lock in until accepted.

2.3.13 The alarm system is to be arranged with automatic changeover to a standby power supply in the event of a failure of the normal power supply. Where an alarm system could be adversely affected by an interruption in power supply, changeover to the standby power supply is to be achieved without a break.

2.3.14 Failure of any power supply to the alarm system is to operate an audible and visual alarm.

2.3.15 The alarm system should be designed with self-monitoring properties. Insofar as practicable, any fault in the alarm system should cause it to fail to the alarm condition.

2.3.16 The alarm system is to be capable of being tested during normal machinery operation, see 6.1.2.

2.3.17 The alarm system is to be designed as far as practicable to function independently of control and safety systems such that a failure or malfunction in these systems will not prevent the alarm system from operating.

2.3.18 Disconnection or manual overriding of any part of the alarm system is to be clearly indicated.

2.3.19 When alarm systems are provided with means to adjust their set point, the arrangements are to be such that the final settings can be readily identified.

2.3.20 Where monitors are provided at the station in control and, if fitted, in the duty engineer's accommodation, they are to provide immediate display of new alarm information regardless of the information display page currently selected. This may be achieved by provision of a dedicated alarm monitor, a dedicated area of screen for alarms or other suitable means.

2.3.21 Where practicable, alarms displayed on monitors are to be displayed in the order in which they occur. Alarms requiring manual shutdown or slowdown action are to be given visual prominence.

2.3.22 Means are to be provided to test alarm and other indicator lamps.

## 2.4 Safety systems, general requirements

2.4.1 Where safety systems are provided, the requirements of 2.4.2 to 2.4.12 are to be satisfied. The requirements of this sub-Section apply, where relevant, to the safety systems installed on the equipment defined in 1.2.3, including those provided in addition to those safeguards required by Section 3 or other Sections of the Rules.

2.4.2 Safety systems are to operate automatically in case of serious faults endangering the machinery, so that:

- (a) normal operating conditions are restored, e.g., by the starting of standby machinery; or
- (b) the operation of the machinery is temporarily adjusted to the prevailing conditions, e.g., by reducing the output of the machinery; or
- (c) the machinery is protected from critical conditions by shutting off the fuel or power supplies thereby stopping the machinery.

2.4.3 The safety system is to be designed as far as practicable to operate independently of the control and alarm systems, such that a failure or malfunction in the control and alarm systems will not prevent the safety system from operating.

2.4.4 Safety systems for different items of the machinery plant are to be arranged so that failure of the safety system of one part of the plant will not interfere with the operation of the safety system in another part of the plant.

2.4.5 The safety system is to be designed to 'fail safe'. The characteristics of the 'fail safe' operation are to be evaluated on the basis not only of the safety system and its associated machinery, but also the complete installation. Failure of a safety system is to initiate an audible and visual alarm.

2.4.6 When a safety system is activated, an audible and visual alarm is to be provided to indicate the cause of the safety action.

2.4.7 The safety system is to be manually reset before the relevant machinery can be restarted.

2.4.8 Where arrangements are provided for overriding a safety system, they are to be such that inadvertent operation is prevented. Visual indication is to be given at the relevant control station(s) when a safety override is operated. The consequences of overriding a safety system are to be established and documented.

2.4.9 The safety system is to be arranged with automatic changeover to a standby power supply in the event of a failure of the normal power supply.

2.4.10 Failure of any power supply to a safety system is to operate an audible and visual alarm.

2.4.11 When safety systems are provided with means to adjust their set point, the arrangements are to be such that the final settings can be readily identified.

2.4.12 As far as practicable, the safety system required by 2.4.2(b) is to be arranged to effect a rapid reduction in speed or power.

## 2.5 Control systems, general requirements

2.5.1 Where control systems are provided, the requirements of 2.5.2 to 2.5.7 are to be satisfied.

2.5.2 Control systems for machinery operations are to be stable throughout their operating range.

2.5.3 Failure of any power supply to a control system is to operate an audible and visual alarm.

2.5.4 Control systems should be designed to 'fail safe'. The characteristics of the 'fail safe' operation are to be evaluated on the basis not only of the control system and its associated machinery, but also the complete installation.

2.5.5 Remote or automatic controls are to be provided with sufficient instrumentation (e.g., alarms and indications) at the relevant control stations to ensure effective control by duty personnel and to indicate that the system is functioning correctly.

2.5.6 When control systems are provided with means to adjust their sensitivity or set point, the arrangements are to be such that the final settings can be readily identified.

2.5.7 Failure of a control system is not to result in the loss of ability to provide essential services by alternative means. This may be achieved by manual control or redundancy within the control system or redundancy in machinery and equipment, *see also* 2.14.2. Instrumentation is to be provided at local manual control stations to ensure effective operation of the machinery by duty personnel.

# Control Engineering Systems

# Volume 2, Part 9, Chapter 1

Section 2

## 2.6 Bridge control for main propulsion machinery

2.6.1 Where a bridge control system for main propulsion machinery is to be fitted, the requirements of 2.6.2 to 2.6.8 are to be satisfied.

2.6.2 Means are to be provided to ensure satisfactory control of propulsion from the bridge in both the ahead and astern directions.

2.6.3 The following indications are to be provided on the bridge:

- (a) Propeller speed.
- (b) Direction of rotation of propeller for a fixed pitch propeller or pitch position for controllable pitch propeller. *See also* Pt 4, Ch 1, 10.2.3.
- (c) Direction and an indication representative of the magnitude of the thrust.
- (d) Clutch position where applicable.
- (e) Shaft brake position where applicable.

2.6.4 The propeller speed, direction of rotation and, if applicable, the propeller pitch are to be controlled from the bridge under all normal sea going and manoeuvring conditions.

2.6.5 Remote control of the propulsion machinery is to be from one control station at any one time, *see also* 2.2.5. Main propulsion control units on the navigating bridge may be interconnected. Means are to be provided at the main machinery control station to ensure smooth transfer of control between the bridge and machinery control stations.

2.6.6 Means of control, independent of the bridge control system, are to be provided on the bridge to enable the propulsion machinery to be stopped in an emergency.

2.6.7 Audible and visual alarms are to operate on the bridge and in the alarm system required by 3.2 if any power supply to the bridge control system fails. Where practicable, the preset speed and direction of thrust are to be maintained until corrective action is taken.

2.6.8 At least two means of communication are to be provided between the bridge and the main control station in the machinery space. One of these means may be the bridge control system; the other is to be independent of the main electrical power supply. *See also* 2.2.2 and Pt 1, Ch 2, 5.10.

2.6.9 Automation systems are to be designed in a manner such that a threshold warning of impending or imminent slowdown or shutdown of the propulsion system is given to the officer in charge of the navigational watch in time to assess navigational circumstances in an emergency. In particular, the systems are to control, monitor, report, alert and take safety action to slow down or stop propulsion while providing the officer in charge of the navigational watch an opportunity to manually intervene, except for those cases where manual intervention will result in total failure of the engine and/or propulsion equipment within a short time, for example in the case of overspeed.

## 2.7 Valve control and indication systems

2.7.1 Systems providing remote control and indication functions for valves in Mobility and Ship Type category systems are to ensure effective operation, with due regard to any Naval Authority requirements for operation under damage conditions. The requirements of 2.7.2 to 2.7.5 are to be satisfied.

2.7.2 Failure of control system power or actuator power is not to permit a valve to move to an unsafe condition.

2.7.3 Positive indication is to be provided at the remote control station for the service to show the actual valve position or alternatively that the valve is fully open or closed.

2.7.4 Equipment located in places which may be flooded is to be capable of operating when submerged.

2.7.5 A secondary means of operating the valves, which may be by local manual control, is to be provided.

2.7.6 For requirements applicable to closing appliances on scuppers and sanitary discharges, *see* Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 4, 7.

## 2.8 Fire detection alarm systems

2.8.1 Where an automatic fire detection system is to be fitted in a machinery space, the requirements of 2.8.2 to 2.8.13 are to be satisfied.

2.8.2 A fire detection control unit is to be located in the navigating bridge area, the fire control station, or in some other position such that a fire in the machinery spaces will not render it inoperable.

2.8.3 Fire detection indicating panels are to denote the section in which a detector or manually operated call point has operated. At least one indicating panel is to be so located on the navigating bridge unless specified otherwise by the Naval Authority.

2.8.4 An audible fire-alarm is to be provided having a characteristic tone distinguishing it from the alarm system required by 2.3 or any other alarm system. The audible fire-alarm is to be immediately audible throughout the machinery spaces, the navigating bridge and at manned watch positions as designated by the Naval Authority. Facilities are to be provided in the fire detection system to manually initiate the fire alarm from positions adjacent to all exits from machinery spaces, the navigating bridge and manned watch positions as designated by the Naval Authority.

2.8.5 The alarm system is to be designed with self-monitoring properties. Power or system failures are to initiate an audible alarm distinguishable from the fire alarm. This alarm may be incorporated in the machinery alarm system as required by 2.3.

2.8.6 For electrical engineering requirements, *see* Pt 10, Ch 1, 17.1.

2.8.7 Fire detection control units (including addressable systems), indicating panels, detector heads, manual call points and short circuit isolation units are to be Type Approved in accordance with Test Specification Number 1 given in LR's Type Approval System for an environmental category appropriate for the locations in which they are intended to operate. For addressable systems, see also 2.10.

2.8.8 Detector heads are to be located in the machinery spaces so that all potential fire outbreak points are guarded. A combination of detectors is to be provided in order that the system will react to all possible fire characteristics.

2.8.9 When fire detectors are provided with means to adjust their sensitivity, the arrangements are to be such that the set point can be fixed and readily identified.

2.8.10 When it is intended that a particular loop is to be temporarily switched off, this state is to be clearly indicated at the fire detection indicating panels.

2.8.11 When it is intended that a particular detector(s) is (are) to be temporarily switched off locally, this state is to be clearly indicated at the local position. Reactivation of the detector(s) is to be performed automatically after a preset time.

2.8.12 The fire detector heads are to be of a type which can be tested and reset without the renewal of any component. Facilities are to be provided on the fire control panel for functional testing and reset of the system.

2.8.13 It is to be demonstrated to the Surveyor's satisfaction that detector heads are so located that air currents will not render the system ineffective at sea and in port.

## 2.9 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems

2.9.1 Where fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems are installed in machinery spaces of category A in addition to the main fixed fire-extinguishing system to protect the fire hazard portions of machinery, the arrangements are to be in accordance with this sub-Section.

2.9.2 Systems are to be available for immediate use and arranged for manual activation from inside and outside the protected space. See also Pt 10, Ch 1,17.3.4.

2.9.3 The activation of a system is not to result in loss of electrical power or reduction of the manoeuvrability of the ship and is not to require confirmation of space evacuation or sealing, see also Pt 1, Ch 2,3.3.15 and Pt 10, Ch 1,17.3.12.

2.9.4 Where the Navy or Naval Authority requires automatic shut-down and/or isolation of protected machinery and equipment in adjacent areas in the event of system activation, evidence is to be submitted to demonstrate compliance with 2.9.3. This submission is to address:

- the applicable Navy or Naval Authority requirements;
- the failure effects of automatic shutdown and/or isolation measures on the machinery, equipment and the complete installation;

- the measures provided to prevent the loss of electrical power;
- the measures provided to prevent a reduction of the manoeuvrability of the ship; and
- the measures provided to ensure continued operation of the activated system.

The submission is to detail:

- permitted operating configurations while propulsion and steering machinery is operating;
- temporary interruptions in power supply while in port allowed by the Navy or Naval Authority; and
- power restoration measures following automatic shut-down and/or isolation of machinery or equipment.

See also Pt 10, Ch 1,17.3.5.

2.9.5 System zones and protected areas are to be arranged to allow essential services to be provided by machinery and/or equipment located outside areas affected by direct spray or extended water in the event of a system activation, where the machinery and/or equipment is duplicated or otherwise replicated to provide redundancy.

2.9.6 A control panel is to be provided for managing actions such as opening of valves, starting of pumps and initiation of alerts, and processing information from detectors. This panel is to be independent of the fire detection control unit required by 2.8.

2.9.7 Alarms are to be initiated upon activation of a system and are to indicate the specific zone activated at the control panel. Alarms are to be provided in each protected space, at an attended machinery control station and in the wheelhouse. The audible signal is to be distinguishable from other safety system signals.

2.9.8 A failure in a manual system activation switch circuit is not to prevent system activation using other installed manual system activation switches or, where installed, automatic activation. The means of activation are to be provided with self-monitoring facilities that will activate an alarm at an attended control station in the event of failure detection.

2.9.9 Systems installed in periodically unattended machinery spaces are to, additionally, be capable of automatic release and the arrangements are to be in accordance with 2.9.10 to 2.9.13.

2.9.10 A minimum of two fire detectors are to be provided for each protected area. One is to be a flame detector and the other is to be a smoke or heat detector, as considered appropriate to the nature of the risk and ambient conditions. The system is to be activated upon detection by two of the detectors. A fault in one detector is to initiate an alarm at an attended control station and is not to inhibit activation of the system under the control of the other detector or manually. Detector faults are not to cause activation of the system.

2.9.11 The fire detectors are to be arranged (located, oriented, guarded, etc.) to ensure that a fire in one protected area will not result in the inadvertent automatic activation of a system for another protected area. Guards or barriers provided to comply with this requirement are not to reduce the ability to detect a fire in the protected area.

# Control Engineering Systems

# Volume 2, Part 9, Chapter 1

## Section 2

2.9.12 A fire detection alarm system panel in accordance with 2.8 may be used for receiving fire detection signals. Separate loops are not required provided that the address of the initiating device can be identified at the control panel. The received signals are then to be sent to the control panel required by 2.9.6 for processing and action.

2.9.13 The system's fire detection systems and control units are to meet the performance criteria of SOLAS Ch II/C, Reg. 7 and are to be Type Approved in accordance with *Test Specification Number 1* given in LR's *Type Approval System* for an environmental category appropriate for the locations in which they are intended to operate.

## 2.10 Programmable electronic systems – General requirements

2.10.1 The requirements of this sub-Section are to be complied with where control, alarm or safety systems incorporate programmable electronic equipment. Systems for essential services and safety critical applications, systems incorporating shared data communication links and systems which are integrated are to comply with the additional requirements of 2.12, 2.13 and 2.14 as applicable. For systems complying with ISO 17894, *Ships and marine technology – Computer applications – General principles for the development and use of programmable electronic systems in marine applications*, see 2.1.2.

2.10.2 Where programmable electronic systems share resources, any components that can affect the ability to effectively provide required control, alarm or safety functions are to fulfil the requirements of 2.10 to 2.14 related to providing those required functions.

2.10.3 Programmable electronic equipment is to revert to a defined safe state on initial start up or re-start in the event of failure.

2.10.4 In the event of failure of any programmable electronic equipment, the system, and any other system to which it is connected, is to fail to a defined safe state or maintain safe operation, as applicable.

2.10.5 Programmable electronic equipment is to be certified by a recognised authority as suitable for the environmental conditions in which it is intended to operate, see also 2.13.3.

2.10.6 Emergency stops are to be hard-wired and independent of any programmable electronic equipment. Alternatively, the system providing emergency stop functions is to comply with the requirements of 2.13.2 and/or 2.13.8.

2.10.7 Programmable electronic equipment is to be provided with self-monitoring capabilities such that hardware and functional failures will initiate an audible and visual alarm in accordance with the requirements of 2.3 and, where applicable, 4.2. Hardware failure indications are to enable faults to be identifiable at least down to the level of the lowest replaceable unit and the self-monitoring capabilities are to ensure that diagnostic information is readily available.

2.10.8 Means are to be provided to recover or replace data required for safe and effective system operation lost as a result of component failure. The submission required by 1.2.6 is to address reinstatement of system operation following data loss.

2.10.9 System configuration, programs and data are to be protected against loss or corruption in the event of failure of any power supply. For Mobility category and safety critical systems, see 2.13.6.

2.10.10 Where it is necessary to store data required for system operation in volatile memory, a back-up power supply is to be provided that prevents data loss in the event of loss of the normal power supply. The submission required by 1.2.6 is to include details of any routine maintenance necessary and the measures necessary to restore system operation in the event of data loss as a result of power supply failure.

2.10.11 Back-up power supplies required by 2.10.10 are to be rated to supply the connected load for a defined period of time that allows sufficient time for the re-instatement of supply in the event of loss of the normal power supply as a result of failure of a main source of electrical power. This period is in any case to be not less than 30 minutes.

2.10.12 Where regular battery replacement is required to maintain the availability of volatile memory back-up power supply required by 2.10.10, these are to be included in the schedule of batteries required by Pt 10, Ch 1, 1.13.2 and Ch 1, 12.7, irrespective of battery type and size. Applicable entries in this schedule are to note that these batteries are not for safety critical systems or essential or emergency services.

2.10.13 Access to system configuration, programs and data is to be restricted by physical and/or logical means providing effective security against unauthorised alteration.

2.10.14 Where date and time information is required by the equipment, this is to be provided by means of a battery backed clock with restricted access for alteration. Date and time information is to be fully represented and utilised.

2.10.15 Displays and controls are to be protected against liquid ingress due to spillage or spraying.

2.10.16 Display units are to comply with the requirements of an acceptable National or International Standard, e.g. IEC 60950:2005, *Information technology equipment – Safety, including electrical business equipment*, in respect of emission of ionising radiation.

2.10.17 Where systems detect fault conditions, any affected mimic diagrams are to ensure that the status of unreliable and incorrect data is clearly identified.

2.10.18 Multi-function displays and controls are to be duplicated and interchangeable where used for the control or monitoring of more than one system, machinery item or item of equipment. At least one unit at the main control station is to be supplied from an independent uninterruptible power system (UPS).



2.10.19 The number of multi-function display and control units provided at the main control station and their power supply arrangements are to be sufficient to ensure continuing safe operation from a multi-function display and control unit in the event of failure of any unit or any power supply.

2.10.20 Software lifecycle activities, e.g., design, development, supply and maintenance, are to be carried out in accordance with an acceptable quality management system. Software quality plans are to be submitted. These are to demonstrate that the provisions of ISO/IEC 90003:2004, *Software engineering – Guidelines for the application of ISO 9001:2000 to computer software* or an acceptable International, National or naval standard, are incorporated. The plans are to define responsibilities for the lifecycle activities, including verification, validation, module testing and integration with other components or systems.

## 2.11 Data communication links

2.11.1 Where control, alarm or safety systems use shared data communication links to transfer data, the requirements of 2.11.2 to 2.11.10 are to be complied with. The requirements apply to local area networks, fieldbuses and other types of data communication link which make use of a shared medium to transfer control, alarm or safety related data between distributed programmable electronic equipment or systems.

2.11.2 Data communication is to be automatically restored within 45 seconds in the event of a single component failure. Upon restoration, priority is to be given to updating safety critical data and control, alarm and safety related data for essential services. Components comprise all items required to facilitate data communication, including cables, switches, repeaters, software components and power supplies.

2.11.3 Loss of a data communication link is not to result in the loss of ability to operate any essential service by alternative means, see also 2.13.2.

2.11.4 The properties of the data communication link, (e.g. bandwidth, access control method, etc.), are to ensure that all connected systems will operate in a safe, stable and repeatable manner under all operating conditions. The latency of control, alarm and safety related data is not to exceed two seconds.

2.11.5 Protocols are to ensure the integrity of control, alarm and safety related data, and provide timely recovery of corrupted or invalid data.

2.11.6 Means are to be provided to monitor performance and identify hardware and functional failures. An audible and visual alarm is to operate in accordance with the requirements of 2.3 and, where applicable, 3.2 in the event of a failure of an active or standby component.

2.11.7 System self-monitoring capabilities are to be arranged to initiate transition to a defined safe state for the complete installation in the event of data communication failure, see also 2.5.4.

2.11.8 Means are to be provided to prevent unintended connection or disconnection of any equipment where this may affect the performance of any other systems in operation.

2.11.9 Data cables are to comply with the applicable requirements of Pt 10, Ch 1,11. Other media will be subject to special consideration.

2.11.10 The installation is to provide adequate protection against mechanical damage and electromagnetic interference.

2.11.11 Components are to be located with appropriate segregation such that the risk of mechanical damage or electromagnetic interference resulting in the loss of both active and standby components is minimised. Duplicated data communication links are to be routed to give as much physical separation as is practical.

## 2.12 Additional requirements for wireless data communication links

2.12.1 The requirements of this sub-Section are in addition to 2.11 and apply to systems incorporating wireless data communication links.

2.12.2 Wireless data communication links are not to be used for safety critical systems or essential services that are required for the propulsion or safety of the ship, except as permitted by 2.12.3.

2.12.3 For services which need not be in operation continuously, wireless data communication links may be considered where an alternative means of operation that can be brought into action within an acceptable period of time is provided.

2.12.4 Wireless data communication is to employ recognised international wireless communication system protocols that incorporate the following:

- (a) Message integrity: fault prevention, detection, diagnosis, and correction ensuring the received message is not corrupted or altered when compared to the transmitted message.
- (b) Configuration and device authentication: is only to permit connection of devices that are included in the system design.
- (c) Message encryption: protection of the confidentiality and/or criticality of the data content.
- (d) Security management: protection of network assets, prevention of unauthorised access to network assets.

2.12.5 The wireless system is to comply with the radio frequency and power level requirements of the International Telecommunications Union and any requirements of the National Administration with which the ship is registered.

2.12.6 Compliance with different port state and local regulations pertaining to the use of radio-frequency transmission that would prohibit the operation of a wireless data communication link, due to frequency and power level restrictions, is not addressed by these requirements and is the responsibility of the Owner/Naval Authority and Operator.

# Control Engineering Systems

# Volume 2, Part 9, Chapter 1

Section 2

## 2.13 Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for Mobility category and safety critical systems

2.13.1 The requirements of 2.13.2 to 2.13.10 are to be complied with where control, alarm or safety functions for Mobility category, or safety critical systems, incorporate programmable electronic equipment.

- (a) Safety critical systems are those which provide functions intended to protect persons from physical hazards caused by engineering system failures, e.g., fire, explosion, etc., or to prevent mechanical damage which may result in the loss of a Mobility category system, e.g., main engine low lubricating oil pressure shutdown.
- (b) Functions provided by Ship Type or Ancillary category systems may also be considered to be safety critical, e.g., domestic boiler low water level shutdown.

2.13.2 Alternative means of safe and effective control are to be provided for Mobility category systems. Back up control systems are to be of diverse design, and are to operate independently of the main control system. Where design diversity of control system software is not practicable, the software is to satisfy the requirements of LR's *Software Conformity Assessment System – Assessment Module GEN1 (1994)*.

2.13.3 Items of programmable electronic equipment used to implement control, alarm and safety functions are to satisfy the requirements of LR's Type Approval System, *Test Specification Number 1 (2002)*.

2.13.4 The system is to be configured such that control, alarm and safety function groups are independent. A failure of the system is not to result in the loss of more than one of these function groups. Proposals for alternative arrangements providing an equivalent level of safety will be subject to special consideration.

2.13.5 For essential services, the system is to be arranged to operate automatically from an alternative power supply in the event of a failure of the normal supply.

2.13.6 Volatile memory is not to be used to store data required to:

- provide a Mobility category system or safety critical function; or
- ensure safety or prevent damage, including during start-up or re-start.

Alternative proposals that demonstrate an equivalent level of system integrity will be achieved may be submitted for consideration.

2.13.7 Failure of any power supply is to initiate an audible and visual alarm in accordance with the requirements of 2.3 and, where applicable, 3.2.

2.13.8 Where it is intended that the programmable electronic system implements emergency stop or safety critical functions, the software is to satisfy the requirements of LR's *Software Conformity Assessment System – Assessment Module GEN1 (1994)*. Alternative proposals providing an equivalent level of system integrity will be subject to special consideration, e.g. fully independent hard wired backup system, redundancy with design diversity, etc.

2.13.9 Control, alarm and safety related information is to be displayed in a clear, unambiguous and timely manner, and, where applicable, is to be given visual prominence over other information on the display.

2.13.10 Means of access to safety critical functions are to be dedicated to the intended function and readily distinguishable.

## 2.14 Programmable electronic systems – Additional requirements for integrated systems

2.14.1 The requirements of 2.14.2 to 2.14.7 apply to integrated systems such as those providing a grouping of fire safety or crew and embarked personnel emergency safety functions (see Pt 10, Ch 1), power management systems and integrated control, alarm and monitoring systems for machinery, and include the interconnection of systems capable of independent operation to provide co-ordinated functions or common user interfaces.

2.14.2 System integration is to be managed by a single designated party, and is to be carried out in accordance with a defined procedure identifying the roles, responsibilities and requirements for all parties involved. This procedure is to be submitted for consideration where the integration involves control functions for Mobility category systems or safety critical functions.

2.14.3 The system requirements specification, see 1.2.6, is to identify the allocation of functions between modules of the integrated system, and any common data communication protocols or interface standards required to support these functions.

2.14.4 Reversionary modes of operation are to be provided to ensure safe and graceful degradation in the event of one or more failures. In general, the integrated system is to be arranged such that the failure of one part will not affect the functionality of other parts, except those that require data from the failed part.

2.14.5 Where the integration involves control functions for essential services or safety functions, including fire safety or crew and embarked personnel or emergency safety functions, the Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) required by Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.3.8 is to additionally demonstrate that the integrated system will 'fail-safe', see 2.4.5 and 2.5.4, and that essential services in operation will not be lost or degraded beyond acceptable performance criteria where specified by these Rules.

2.14.6 The quantity and quality of information presented to the Operator are to be managed to assist situational awareness in all operating conditions. Excessive or ambiguous information that may adversely affect the Operator's ability to reason or act correctly is to be avoided, but information needed for corrective or emergency actions is not to be suppressed or obscured in satisfying this requirement.

2.14.7 Where information is required by the Rules or by Naval Authority requirements to be continuously displayed, the system configuration is to be such that the information may be viewed without manual intervention, e.g., the selection of a particular screen page or mode of operation. *See also* 2.10.20.

## ■ Section 3 Ergonomics of control stations

### 3.1 Objectives

3.1.1 In order to take account of operator tasks at control stations, enhance usability and reduce human error, the layout arrangements are to comply with the requirements set out in 3.2.

3.1.2 In order to establish a working environment that has minimum distractions, is sufficiently comfortable, helps maintain vigilance and maximises communication amongst operators at main control stations, the requirements of 3.3 are to be complied with.

3.1.3 The requirements of 3.4 to 3.6 apply to operator interfaces for essential engineering systems located either locally, remotely or within the main control room. The requirements are intended to enhance the usability of systems and equipment, reduce human error, enhance situational awareness and support safe and effective monitoring and control under normal and abnormal modes of operation.

### 3.2 Control station layout

3.2.1 Control stations are to provide sufficient space and access for the intended number of operators in the expected operating conditions.

3.2.2 Local control stations are to be positioned to minimise the risk of harm to the operator.

3.2.3 Controls, displays and indicators are to be both logically and physically grouped according to their function.

3.2.4 Where a function may be accessed from more than one interface, the arrangement of displays and controls is to be consistent.

3.2.5 Frequently used controls and displays are to be within easy reach and visible to the operator from the normal working position.

3.2.6 Controls and displays used infrequently and which may be used in an emergency are to be clearly identifiable, clearly visible, easily accessible and positioned to allow safe operability.

3.2.7 The relationship of a control with a display is to be immediately apparent.

3.2.8 The relationship of controls and displays with the equipment under control is to be immediately apparent.

3.2.9 There is to be adequate spacing between controls and between controls and obstructions.

3.2.10 Controls and their associated displays are to be located such that the information on the displays can be easily read during the operation of the controls.

3.2.11 Indicators related to controls are to be visible during their operation.

3.2.12 Instruments are to face the operator's intended working position.

### 3.3 Physical environment

3.3.1 Control stations are to be positioned, as far as practicable, away from, or insulated against, sources of structurally transmitted vibration and noise, such as ventilation fans, engine intake fans and other noise sources.

3.3.2 In general, noise levels are to comply with IMO Res. A.468(XII), Code on Noise Levels on Board Ships, and take into account IMO Res. A.343(IX), *Recommendation on Methods of Measuring Noise Levels at Listening Posts*.

3.3.3 Where provided, the heating, ventilation and air-conditioning system is to be capable of maintaining the temperature between 18°C and 27°C.

3.3.4 Where provided, the heating, ventilation and air-conditioning system should be capable of providing and maintaining a relative humidity within a range from 30 per cent minimum to 70 per cent maximum.

3.3.5 The flow of air from heating or air-conditioning systems is not to be guided directly to the operator, or means are to be provided to adjust the direction of air flow from those systems.

3.3.6 Lighting is to be located to avoid glare from working and display surfaces, and is to be flicker-free. Surfaces are to have a non-reflective or matt finish.

3.3.7 Placement of controls, displays and indicators are to consider the position of light sources relative to the operator with respect to reflections and evenness of lighting.

3.3.8 Where a transparent cover is fitted over a control, display or indicator, it is to be designed to minimise reflections.

# Control Engineering Systems

# Volume 2, Part 9, Chapter 1

Section 3

3.3.9 The level of lighting is to be sufficient to enable operation of user interfaces. Lighting levels in accordance with Table 1.3.1 will be considered to satisfy this requirement.

**Table 1.3.1 Specific lighting levels**

| Work area                     | Ideal lux | Minimum lux |
|-------------------------------|-----------|-------------|
| General lighting              | 540       | 220         |
| Control room consoles (front) | 540       | 320         |
| Control room consoles (rear)  | 325       | 110         |
| Local operating panels        | 540       | 320         |
| Remote operating panels       | 540       | 320         |

3.3.10 To avoid interference with night vision, all illumination and lighting of instruments, keyboards and controls are to be adjustable down to zero, except the lighting of alarm and warning indicators and the controls of dimmers which are to remain readable.

3.3.11 Seating provided for use at control stations is to allow for varying height and/or reach needs of operators. Seating arrangements are to minimise the need for twisting and/or turning motions by the operator.

3.3.12 Physical hazards, e.g., sharp edges, protuberances and trip hazards, are to be avoided.

3.3.13 Sufficient hand-rails or equivalent are to be fitted to enable operators to move and stand safely in rough seas.

3.3.14 Work surfaces are to be capable of withstanding oils and solvents common to ships and are to be easy to clean.

## 3.4 Operator interface

3.4.1 The design of the operator interface is to permit the satisfactory monitoring, control and supervision of the machinery and equipment.

3.4.2 Information is to be presented to the operator consistently both within and between different interfaces, see 3.6.2 to 3.6.4.

3.4.3 The response of the machinery and equipment to operator input is to be consistent between interfaces for the same function.

3.4.4 Visual, audible or mechanical feedback is to be provided to indicate that operator input has been acknowledged.

3.4.5 Functions requested by the operator are to be confirmed by the displays on completion.

3.4.6 Indications and documentation are to be in English or the language of the crew.

## 3.5 Controls

3.5.1 Operator inputs are to be checked for errors, for example, out of range data or incorrect actions, and alert the operator when they occur.

3.5.2 Means to rapidly and safely correct wrong inputs or commands are to be provided.

3.5.3 Assistance is to be provided to the operator to recover from operator errors, for example, through advisory screens where the automation system has this facility.

3.5.4 Operator confirmation is to be provided for any control action that could affect the safety of the ship, i.e., they should not rely on single keystrokes.

3.5.5 The purpose of each control is to be clearly indicated. Where standard symbols have been internationally adopted, they should be used.

3.5.6 The settings of mechanical controls are to be immediately evident.

3.5.7 The means of operation of mechanical controls is to be consistent with expectations.

3.5.8 Controls or combined controls and indicators are to be distinguishable from indicators.

3.5.9 Where control is provided by touch screens, the size of the soft keys are to be of a sufficient size for operation in areas where vibration occurs or gloves are likely to be worn.

3.5.10 Where virtual keypads/keyboards or dialogue boxes are used on touch screens, they are not to obscure status or alarm areas of the display.

3.5.11 Keyboards are to be divided logically into functional areas. Alphanumeric, paging and specific system keys are to be grouped separately.

3.5.12 The arrangement of controls that affect the safe operation of the ship should minimise the possibility of inadvertent operation.

## 3.6 Displays

3.6.1 The displays and indicators are to present the operator with clear, timely and relevant information.

3.6.2 Graphical symbols and colour coding are to be consistent. The graphical symbols of display functions are to be in accordance with a recognised international standard, for example, ISO 14617, *Graphical symbols for diagrams*. Colour coding of functions and signals is to be in accordance with a recognised international standard, for example, ISO 2412:1982, *Shipbuilding – Colours of indicator lights*.

3.6.3 The symbols used in mimic diagrams for the services listed in Pt 10, Ch 1, 1.5.1 are to be consistent across all displays.

3.6.4 The display of information is to be consistent with respect to screen layout and arrangement of information.

3.6.5 Flashing of information is to be reserved for unacknowledged alerts, or transient states, for example, valve moving.

3.6.6 The functions supported by a display are to be clearly indicated. For displays that can support multiple functions it is to be possible to select the display associated with the primary function or an overview by a simple operator action.

3.6.7 The operating mode of the machinery and equipment is to be clearly indicated.

3.6.8 In general, indications provided by instrumentation which are displayed digitally are not to change more frequently than twice per second.

3.6.9 To indicate an increasing value in a single direction, on a fixed circular scale, the pointer is to move clockwise. If the pointer is fixed, the scale is to move anticlockwise to indicate an increase in value.

3.6.10 To indicate an increasing value on a horizontal linear scale, the pointer is to move from left to right. On a vertical linear scale, the pointer is to move upwards to indicate an increase in value.

3.6.11 The pointer is not to obscure the numbers on the scale.

3.6.12 Alphanumeric data, text, symbols and other graphical information is to be readable from relevant operator positions under lighting conditions as specified in 3.3.9. Character height in millimetres is to be not less than three and a half times the reading distance in metres and character width is to be 0,7 times the character height.

3.6.13 A simple sans-serif character font is to be used in displays. In descriptive text, lower case letters are to be used, where appropriate, as opposed to capitals to improve readability.

3.6.14 Where information related to the safe operation of machinery and equipment is provided, it is to be continuously available to the operator.

3.6.15 Failures are to be indicated in a clear and unambiguous manner. Sufficient information is to be provided for the operator to identify the cause of the failure.



## Section 4

### Unattended machinery space(s) – UMS notation

#### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Where it is proposed to operate the following machinery in an unattended space, no matter what period is envisaged, the controls, alarms and safeguards required by the appropriate Chapters together with those given in 4.2 to 4.7 are to be provided:

- Air compressors.
- Controllable pitch propellers and transverse thrust units.
- Electric generating plant.
- Incinerators.
- Oil fuel transfer and storage systems (purifiers and oil heaters).
- Propulsion machinery including essential auxiliaries.
- Steam raising plant (boilers and their ancillary equipment).
- Thermal fluid heaters.

4.1.2 Where a first stage alarm together with a second stage alarm and automatic shutdown of machinery are required in the relevant Table of this Section, the sensors and circuits utilised for the second stage alarm and automatic shutdown are to be independent of those required by the first stage alarm.

#### 4.2 Alarm systems for machinery

4.2.1 An alarm system which will provide warning of faults in the machinery is to be installed. The system is to satisfy the requirements of 2.3.

4.2.2 An audible signal and visual indication of machinery alarms are to be relayed to the engineers' accommodation so that engineering personnel are made aware that a fault has occurred.

4.2.3 The engineers' alarm required by 2.2.3 is to be activated automatically in the event that a machinery alarm has not been acknowledged in the space within a predetermined time.

4.2.4 An audible signal and visual indication of machinery alarms are to be relayed to the navigating bridge control station in such a way that the navigating officer of the watch is made aware when:

- (a) a machinery fault has occurred;
- (b) the machinery fault is being attended to; and
- (c) the machinery fault has been rectified.

4.2.5 Group alarms may be arranged on the bridge to indicate machinery faults, but alarms associated with faults requiring speed or power reduction or the automatic shut down of propulsion machinery are to be identified by separate group alarms or by individual alarms.

# Control Engineering Systems

# Volume 2, Part 9, Chapter 1

Sections 4 &amp; 5

## 4.3 Bridge control for propulsion machinery

4.3.1 A bridge control system for the propulsion machinery is to be fitted. The system is to satisfy the requirements of 2.6.

## 4.4 Control stations for machinery

4.4.1 A control station(s) is to be provided in the space and on the bridge which satisfies the requirements of 2.2.

## 4.5 Fire detection alarm system

4.5.1 An automatic fire detection system is to be fitted in the space together with an audible and visual alarm system. The system is to satisfy the requirements of 2.8.

## 4.6 Bilge level detection

4.6.1 An alarm system is to be provided to warn when liquid in machinery space bilges has reached a predetermined level, and is to comply with 2.3. This level is to be sufficiently low to prevent liquid from overflowing from the bilges onto the tank top. The number and location of detectors are to be such that accumulation of liquids will be detected at all angles of heel and trim.

4.6.2 Local or remote controls of any valve within the space serving a sea inlet, a discharge below the waterline, a dewatering system should be so sited as to be readily accessible and to allow adequate time for operation in case of influx of water to the space, having regard to the time which could be taken to reach and operate such controls.

4.6.3 Where the bilge pumps are arranged to start automatically, means are to be provided to indicate if the influx of liquids is greater than the pump capacity or, if the pump is operating more frequently than would be expected. Special attention should be given to oil pollution prevention requirements.

## 4.7 Supply of electric power, general

4.7.1 For naval ships operating with one generator set in service, arrangements are to be such that a standby generator will automatically start and connect to the switchboard in as short a time as practicable, but in any case within 45 seconds, on loss of the service generator. For naval ships operating with two or more generator sets in service, arrangements are to be such that on loss of one generator the remaining one(s) are to be adequate for continuity of essential services. For the detailed requirements of these arrangements, see Pt 10, Ch 1,2.2.

4.7.2 Alarms and safeguards are indicated in Table 1.4.1.

**Table 1.4.1 Electric system: Alarms and safeguards**

| Item                              | Alarm        | Note                                         |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Bus-bar voltage                   | High and low | —                                            |
| Bus-bar frequency                 | Low          | —                                            |
| Operation of load shedding        | Warning      | —                                            |
| Generator cooling air temperature | High         | For closed air circuit water cooled machines |

## Section 5 Machinery operated from a centralised control station – CCS notation

### 5.1 General requirements

5.1.1 Where it is proposed to install control, alarm and safety systems to the equipment listed in 4.1.1 the applicable features contained in 2.2 to 2.13 are to be incorporated in the system design.

5.1.2 The arrangements are to be such that corrective actions can be taken at the control station in the event of machinery faults, e.g. stopping of machinery, starting of standby machinery, adjustment of operating parameters, etc. These actions may be effected by either remote manual or automatic control.

5.1.3 The controls, alarms and safeguards required by the appropriate Chapters and by 4.6 together with a fire detection system satisfying the requirements of 2.8 are to be provided.

5.1.4 Additional requirements for controls, alarms and safeguards are given in 5.2.

### 5.2 Centralised control station for machinery

5.2.1 A centralised control station is to be provided at some suitable location, which satisfies the requirements of 5.2.2 to 5.2.7.

5.2.2 A system of alarm displays and controls is to be provided which readily ensures identification of faults in the machinery and satisfactory supervision of related equipment. The alarm and control systems are to satisfy the requirements of 2.3 and 2.5, as applicable.

5.2.3 Indication of all essential parameters necessary for the safe and effective operation of the machinery is to be provided, e.g. temperatures, pressures, tank levels, speeds, powers, etc.

5.2.4 Indication of the operational status of running and standby machinery is to be provided.

5.2.5 At the centralised control station, means of communication with the bridge area, the accommodation for engineering personnel and, if necessary, the machinery space are to be provided.

5.2.6 In addition to the communication required by 5.2.5, a second means of communication is to be provided between the bridge and the centralised control station. One of these means is to be independent of the main electrical power supply.

5.2.7 Arrangements are to be provided in the centralised control station so that the normal supply of electrical power may be restored in the event of failure.

## ■ Section 6 Integrated computer control – ICC notation

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 Integrated Computer Control class notation **ICC** may be assigned where an integrated computer system in compliance with 5.1 to 5.3 provides fault tolerant control and monitoring functions for one or more of the following services:

- (a) Propulsion.
- (b) Electrical generation and distribution (power management systems).
- (c) Ballast.

6.1.2 A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) is to be carried out in accordance with IEC 60812 and the report and worksheets submitted for consideration, *see also* 2.14.5. The FMEA is to demonstrate that control and monitoring functions required by 6.2 will remain available at each operator station in the event of a single fault of the integrated computer control system, including input error, without adverse effect on the service(s).

6.1.3 Special consideration will be given to integrated computer control systems for other applications, except where these are addressed by other control engineering class notations.

### 6.2 General requirements

6.2.1 The integrated computer control system is to comply with the programmable electronic system requirements of 2.10 to 2.14 and the control and monitoring requirements of the Rules applicable to particular equipment, machinery or systems.

6.2.2 Alarm displays are to be provided, in compliance with the requirements of 2.3, which ensure ready identification of faults in the equipment under control.

6.2.3 Alarm and indication functions required by 2.4 are to be provided by the integrated computer control system in response to the activation of any safety function for associated machinery. Systems providing the safety functions are in general to be independent of the integrated computer system. *See also* 2.13.8.

6.2.4 Controls are to be provided, in compliance with 2.5, to ensure the safe and effective operation of equipment and response to faults, e.g. stopping, starting, adjustment of parameters, etc. Indication of operational status and other such parameters, necessary to satisfy this requirement, is to be provided for all equipment under control by the integrated computer control system.

### 6.3 Operator stations

6.3.1 Each operator station allowing control of equipment is to be provided with a minimum of two multi-function display and control units. The number of units is to be sufficient to allow simultaneous access to control and monitoring functions required by 6.2.2 to 6.2.4. *See also* 2.10.20.

6.3.2 Each multi-function display and control unit is to include a monitor, keyboard and tracker ball. Alternative arrangements will be considered where these enable each unit to be configured by the user to provide required control or monitoring functions.

6.3.3 Where the integrated computer control system is arranged such that control and monitoring functions may be accessed at more than one operator station, the selected mode of operation of each station (e.g., in control, standby, etc.) is to be clearly indicated. *See also* 2.2.

6.3.4 Means of communication are to be provided between operator stations and any other stations from which the equipment may be controlled. The arrangements are to be permanently installed and are to remain operational in the event of failure of the main electrical power supply to the integrated control system.

## ■ Section 7 Trials

### 7.1 General

7.1.1 Before a new installation (or any alteration or addition to an existing installation) is put into service, trials are to be carried out. These trials are in addition to any acceptance tests which may have been carried out at the manufacturers' works and are to be based on the approved test schedules list as required by 1.2.3. In the case of new construction it will be expected that most of these trials will be carried out before the official sea trials of the ship. During sea trials, system dynamic tests are to be carried out to demonstrate overall satisfactory performance of the control engineering installation.

7.1.2 Means are to be provided to facilitate testing during normal machinery operation, e.g., by the provision of three-way test valves or equivalent.

7.1.3 Acceptance tests and trials for Programmable Electronic Systems are to include verification of software life-cycle activities appropriate to the stage in the system's lifecycle at the time of system examination. The documentation required by 1.2.6 is to be in accordance with the current configuration and the testing and trials are to address software modifications to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

7.1.4 Wireless data communication links are to be operational and tested during trials. Tests are to demonstrate that radio-frequency transmission does not interfere with the operation of equipment required by this Chapter or other Sections of the Rules and does not itself malfunction as a result of electromagnetic interference during expected operating conditions. Reversionary modes are to be activated to demonstrate continued safe and effective operation in the event of fault conditions.

## 7.2 Unattended machinery space operation – UMS notation

7.2.1 In addition to the tests required by 6.1 the suitability of the installation for operation in the unattended mode is to be demonstrated during sea trials observing the following:

- (a) Occurring alarms and the frequency of operation both during steady steaming and under manoeuvring conditions using bridge control.
- (b) Any intervention by personnel in the operation of the machinery.

## 7.3 Operation from a centralised control station – CCS notation

7.3.1 In addition to the tests required by 7.1, the suitability of the installation for operation from the centralised control station is to be demonstrated during sea trials.

## 7.4 Integrated platform management system failure

7.4.1 Where mobility type ship systems are operated through an Integrated Platform Management System (IMPS), a failure in the IMPS is not to render the ship's system in operable and reversionary modes of operation are to be provided to ensure safe and graceful degradation and under these conditions any level of degraded performance should be defined and accepted by the Naval Authority.

## 7.5 Record of trials

7.5.1 Two copies of the alarm and control equipment test schedules, as required by 1.2.3, signed by the Surveyor and Builder are to be provided on completion of the survey. One copy is to be placed on board the vessel and the other submitted to LR.



# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2  
Part 10 Electrical Engineering  
January 2013



|             |           |                                         |
|-------------|-----------|-----------------------------------------|
| PART        | 1         | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS                    |
| PART        | 2         | PRIME MOVERS                            |
| PART        | 3         | TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS                    |
| PART        | 4         | PROPULSION DEVICES                      |
| PART        | 5         | SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT           |
| PART        | 6         | STEERING SYSTEMS                        |
| PART        | 7         | PIPING SYSTEMS                          |
| PART        | 8         | PRESSURE PLANT                          |
| PART        | 9         | CONTROL ENGINEERING                     |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING</b>           |
|             |           | <b>Chapter 1 Electrical Engineering</b> |
| PART        | 11        | SUPPORT SYSTEMS                         |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.



---

|                |          |                                                                                           |
|----------------|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING</b>                                                             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                                               |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                                                               |
|                | 1.2      | Plans for design review                                                                   |
|                | 1.3      | Plans required for supporting evidence                                                    |
|                | 1.4      | Surveys                                                                                   |
|                | 1.5      | Additions or alterations                                                                  |
|                | 1.6      | Definitions                                                                               |
|                | 1.7      | Design and construction                                                                   |
|                | 1.8      | Quality of power supplies                                                                 |
|                | 1.9      | Quality of power supplies – ELS notation                                                  |
|                | 1.10     | Ambient reference and operating conditions                                                |
|                | 1.11     | Inclination of ship                                                                       |
|                | 1.12     | Location and construction                                                                 |
|                | 1.13     | Earthing of non-current carrying parts                                                    |
|                | 1.14     | Bonding for the control of static electricity                                             |
|                | 1.15     | Alarms                                                                                    |
|                | 1.16     | Labels, signs and notices                                                                 |
|                | 1.17     | Operation under flooding conditions                                                       |
|                | 1.18     | Operation under fire conditions                                                           |
|                | 1.19     | Protection of electrical equipment against the effects of lightning strikes               |
|                | 1.20     | Electrical supplies to systems fulfilling military requirement                            |
|                | 1.21     | Programmable electronic systems                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Main source of electrical power</b>                                                    |
|                | 2.1      | General                                                                                   |
|                | 2.2      | Number and rating of generators and converting equipment                                  |
|                | 2.3      | Starting arrangements                                                                     |
|                | 2.4      | Prime mover governors                                                                     |
|                | 2.5      | Main propulsion driven generators not forming part of the main source of electrical power |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Emergency and alternative sources of electrical power</b>                              |
|                | 3.1      | General                                                                                   |
|                | 3.2      | Emergency source of electrical power                                                      |
|                | 3.3      | Starting arrangements                                                                     |
|                | 3.4      | Prime mover governor                                                                      |
|                | 3.5      | Radio installation                                                                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>External source of electrical power</b>                                                |
|                | 4.1      | Temporary external supply                                                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Supply and distribution</b>                                                            |
|                | 5.1      | Systems of supply and distribution                                                        |
|                | 5.2      | Essential services                                                                        |
|                | 5.3      | Isolation and switching                                                                   |
|                | 5.4      | Insulated distribution systems                                                            |
|                | 5.5      | Earthed distribution systems                                                              |
|                | 5.6      | Diversity factor                                                                          |
|                | 5.7      | Lighting circuits                                                                         |
|                | 5.8      | Motor circuits                                                                            |
|                | 5.9      | Motor control                                                                             |

---

|                    |               |                                                                             |
|--------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>6</b>      | <b>System design – Protection</b>                                           |
|                    | 6.1           | General                                                                     |
|                    | 6.2           | Protection against short-circuit                                            |
|                    | 6.3           | Protection against overload                                                 |
|                    | 6.4           | Protection against earth faults                                             |
|                    | 6.5           | Circuit-breakers                                                            |
|                    | 6.6           | Fuses                                                                       |
|                    | 6.7           | Circuit-breakers requiring back-up by fuse or other device                  |
|                    | 6.8           | Protection of generators                                                    |
|                    | 6.9           | Load management                                                             |
|                    | 6.10          | Feeder circuits                                                             |
|                    | 6.11          | Motor circuits                                                              |
|                    | 6.12          | Protection of transformers                                                  |
|                    | 6.13          | Harmonic filters                                                            |
| <br><b>Section</b> | <br><b>7</b>  | <br><b>Switchgear and control gear assemblies</b>                           |
|                    | 7.1           | General requirements                                                        |
|                    | 7.2           | Busbars                                                                     |
|                    | 7.3           | Circuit-breakers                                                            |
|                    | 7.4           | Contactors                                                                  |
|                    | 7.5           | Creepage and clearance distances                                            |
|                    | 7.6           | Degree of protections                                                       |
|                    | 7.7           | Distribution boards                                                         |
|                    | 7.8           | Earthing of high-voltage switchboards                                       |
|                    | 7.9           | Fuses                                                                       |
|                    | 7.10          | Handrails or handles                                                        |
|                    | 7.11          | Instruments for alternating current generators                              |
|                    | 7.12          | Instruments scales                                                          |
|                    | 7.13          | Labels                                                                      |
|                    | 7.14          | Protection                                                                  |
|                    | 7.15          | Wiring                                                                      |
|                    | 7.16          | Position of switchboards                                                    |
|                    | 7.17          | Switchboard auxiliary power supplies                                        |
|                    | 7.18          | Testing                                                                     |
|                    | 7.19          | Disconnectors and switch-disconnectors                                      |
| <br><b>Section</b> | <br><b>8</b>  | <br><b>Protection from electric arc hazards within electrical equipment</b> |
|                    | 8.1           | General                                                                     |
|                    | 8.2           | Hazard identification and assessment                                        |
|                    | 8.3           | Calculations to be submitted                                                |
|                    | 8.4           | Testing and trials                                                          |
| <br><b>Section</b> | <br><b>9</b>  | <br><b>Rotating machines</b>                                                |
|                    | 9.1           | General requirements                                                        |
|                    | 9.2           | Rating                                                                      |
|                    | 9.3           | Temperature rise                                                            |
|                    | 9.4           | Generator control                                                           |
|                    | 9.5           | Overloads                                                                   |
|                    | 9.6           | Machine enclosure                                                           |
|                    | 9.7           | Direct current machines                                                     |
|                    | 9.8           | Survey and testing                                                          |
| <br><b>Section</b> | <br><b>10</b> | <br><b>Converter equipment</b>                                              |
|                    | 10.1          | Transformers                                                                |
|                    | 10.2          | Semiconductor equipment                                                     |
|                    | 10.3          | Uninterruptible power systems                                               |

|                |           |                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------|-----------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>11</b> | <b>Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways)</b>                                                                                 |
|                | 11.1      | General                                                                                                                                      |
|                | 11.2      | Testing                                                                                                                                      |
|                | 11.3      | Voltage rating                                                                                                                               |
|                | 11.4      | Operating temperature                                                                                                                        |
|                | 11.5      | Construction                                                                                                                                 |
|                | 11.6      | Conductor size                                                                                                                               |
|                | 11.7      | Correction factors for cable current rating                                                                                                  |
|                | 11.8      | Installation of electric cables                                                                                                              |
|                | 11.9      | Mechanical protection of cables                                                                                                              |
|                | 11.10     | Cable support systems                                                                                                                        |
|                | 11.11     | Penetration of bulkheads and decks by cables                                                                                                 |
|                | 11.12     | Installation of electric cables in protective casings                                                                                        |
|                | 11.13     | Non-metallic cable support systems, protective casings and fixings                                                                           |
|                | 11.14     | Single core electric cables for alternating current                                                                                          |
|                | 11.15     | Electric cable ends                                                                                                                          |
|                | 11.16     | Joints and branch circuits in cable systems                                                                                                  |
|                | 11.17     | Busbar trunking systems (bustrunks)                                                                                                          |
|                | 11.18     | Cable segregation                                                                                                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>12</b> | <b>Batteries</b>                                                                                                                             |
|                | 12.1      | General requirements                                                                                                                         |
|                | 12.2      | Construction                                                                                                                                 |
|                | 12.3      | Location                                                                                                                                     |
|                | 12.4      | Installation                                                                                                                                 |
|                | 12.5      | Ventilation                                                                                                                                  |
|                | 12.6      | Charging facilities                                                                                                                          |
|                | 12.7      | Recording of batteries for emergency and essential services                                                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>13</b> | <b>Equipment – Heating, lighting and accessories</b>                                                                                         |
|                | 13.1      | Heating and cooking equipment                                                                                                                |
|                | 13.2      | Lighting – General                                                                                                                           |
|                | 13.3      | Incandescent lighting                                                                                                                        |
|                | 13.4      | Fluorescent lighting                                                                                                                         |
|                | 13.5      | Discharge lighting                                                                                                                           |
|                | 13.6      | Socket outlets and plugs                                                                                                                     |
|                | 13.7      | Enclosures                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>14</b> | <b>Electrical equipment for the use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts</b>                                 |
|                | 14.1      | General                                                                                                                                      |
|                | 14.2      | Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres                                                                                  |
|                | 14.3      | Selection of equipment for use in the presence of combustible dusts                                                                          |
|                | 14.4      | Installation of electrical equipment                                                                                                         |
|                | 14.5      | Hazardous zones and spaces                                                                                                                   |
|                | 14.6      | Semi-enclosed spaces                                                                                                                         |
|                | 14.7      | Ventilation                                                                                                                                  |
|                | 14.8      | Pressurisation                                                                                                                               |
|                | 14.9      | Cable and cable installation                                                                                                                 |
|                | 14.10     | Requirements for oil supply ships intended for the carriage in bulk of oil cargoes having a flash point not exceeding 60°C (closed-cup test) |
|                | 14.11     | Special requirements for ships with spaces for carrying vehicles, helicopters and aircraft, with fuel in their tanks                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>15</b> | <b>Navigation and manoeuvring systems</b>                                                                                                    |
|                | 15.1      | Steering gear                                                                                                                                |
|                | 15.2      | Thruster systems for steering                                                                                                                |
|                | 15.3      | Thruster systems for dynamic positioning                                                                                                     |
|                | 15.4      | Thruster systems for manoeuvring                                                                                                             |
|                | 15.5      | Navigation lights                                                                                                                            |
|                | 15.6      | Navigational aids                                                                                                                            |

---

|                |           |                                                                        |
|----------------|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>16</b> | <b>Electric propulsion</b>                                             |
|                | 16.1      | General                                                                |
|                | 16.2      | System design and arrangement                                          |
|                | 16.3      | Power requirements                                                     |
|                | 16.4      | Propulsion control                                                     |
|                | 16.5      | Protection of propulsion system                                        |
|                | 16.6      | Instruments                                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>17</b> | <b>Fire safety systems</b>                                             |
|                | 17.1      | Fire detection and alarm systems                                       |
|                | 17.2      | Automatic sprinkler system                                             |
|                | 17.3      | Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems              |
|                | 17.4      | Fire pumps                                                             |
|                | 17.5      | Refrigerated liquid carbon dioxide systems                             |
|                | 17.6      | Fire safety stops                                                      |
|                | 17.7      | Fire doors                                                             |
|                | 17.8      | Fire dampers                                                           |
|                | 17.9      | Fire-extinguishing media release                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>18</b> | <b>Crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems</b>            |
|                | 18.1      | Emergency lighting                                                     |
|                | 18.2      | Emergency alarm system                                                 |
|                | 18.3      | Crew and embarked personnel address system                             |
|                | 18.4      | Escape route or low location lighting (LLL)                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>19</b> | <b>Ship safety systems</b>                                             |
|                | 19.1      | Watertight doors                                                       |
|                | 19.2      | Bow, stern and shell doors, loading doors and other closing appliances |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>20</b> | <b>Lightning conductors</b>                                            |
|                | 20.1      | General                                                                |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>21</b> | <b>Testing and trials</b>                                              |
|                | 21.1      | Testing                                                                |
|                | 21.2      | Trials                                                                 |
|                | 21.3      | High voltage cables                                                    |
|                | 21.4      | Hazardous areas                                                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>22</b> | <b>Spare gear</b>                                                      |
|                | 22.1      | General                                                                |



# Electrical Engineering

# Volume 2, Part 10, Chapter 1

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Main source of electrical power**
- 3 **Emergency and alternative sources of electrical power**
- 4 **External source of electrical power**
- 5 **Supply and distribution**
- 6 **System design – Protection**
- 7 **Switchgear and control gear assemblies**
- 8 **Protection from electric arc hazards within electrical equipment**
- 9 **Rotating machines**
- 10 **Converter equipment**
- 11 **Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways)**
- 12 **Batteries**
- 13 **Equipment – Heating, lighting and accessories**
- 14 **Electrical equipment for the use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts**
- 15 **Navigation and manoeuvring systems**
- 16 **Electric propulsion**
- 17 **Fire safety systems**
- 18 **Crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems**
- 19 **Ship safety systems**
- 20 **Lightning conductors**
- 21 **Testing and trials**
- 22 **Spare gear**

1.1.2 Attention should also be given to any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority.

1.1.3 Electrical services required to maintain the ship in a normal sea-going, operational and habitable condition are to be capable of being maintained without recourse to the emergency source of electrical power. The essential services for individual types of ships for sea-going, operational and habitable conditions on board are to be agreed by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR'). See also 1.6.1, 1.6.2 and 1.6.3.

1.1.4 Electrical services essential for safety are to be maintained under various emergency conditions.

1.1.5 The safety of crew and ship from electrical hazards is to be ensured.

1.1.6 LR will be prepared to give consideration to cases where military arrangements require deviation from specific Rule requirements in this Chapter or where specialised naval standards, e.g., STANAG 1008 have been nominated and applied. Consideration will also be given to electrical arrangements of small ships and ships to be assigned class notation for restricted or special services.

1.1.7 Reference is to be made to Pt 1, Ch 2,4.9 concerning military requirements where these interface with the provisions of classification.

## 1.2 Plans for design review

1.2.1 The plans and particulars in 1.2.2 to 1.2.18 are to be submitted for design review.

1.2.2 Single line diagram of main and emergency power and lighting systems which is to include:

- (a) ratings of machines, transformers, batteries and semi-conductor converters;
- (b) all feeders connected to the main and emergency switchboards;
- (c) section boards and distribution boards;
- (d) insulation type, size and current loadings of cables; (normal operational and fault conditions);
- (e) make, type and rating of circuit breakers and fuses;
- (f) details of harmonic filters (where fitted).

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements of this Chapter apply to electrical engineering systems and equipment for naval ships.

1.2.3 A design statement of the electrical power system which details the capability and functionality under defined operating and emergency conditions is to be submitted. The design statement is to be agreed between the designers and Owners/Operators and is to include:

- (a) a description of operation of the main and emergency electrical power systems;
- (b) an earthing philosophy document that defines the basic approach to be taken for earthing the electrical power systems and all electrical loads; and
- (c) schedule of normal and emergency operating loads on the system estimated for the different operating conditions expected. The following details are to be provided to meet this requirement:
  - (i) a description of the expected operating profiles (e.g., the number of generating sets connected when manoeuvring, at sea, etc.), including as required by Pt 2, Ch 1.2.1.1; and
  - (ii) a schedule of the normal and emergency operating loads, which is to state the kilowatt rating of each load and a load factor between 0 and 1. The load factor is defined as the ratio of the calculated load to the maximum load possible over a declared duty cycle. As such, the load factor shall reflect:
    - the duty cycle of the load; and
    - the proportion of its maximum rating at which the load is expected to operate.
- (d) the quality of power supplies required for each designated load, where this is required by 1.8.3.

1.2.4 Simplified diagrams of generator circuits, inter-connector circuits and feeder circuits showing:

- (a) protective devices, e.g., short-circuit, overload, reverse power protection;
- (b) instrumentation and synchronising devices;
- (c) preference tripping;
- (d) remote stops;
- (e) earth fault indication/protection.

1.2.5 Calculations of short-circuit currents at main and emergency switchboards and section boards including those fed from transformers, details of circuit breaker and fuse operating times, settings and discrimination curves showing compliance with 6.1 and 11.6.2.

1.2.6 Where required by 8.1.1, the hazards resulting from electric arcs within electrical equipment and their consequences for personnel are to be identified, and at least the following supporting evidence is to be submitted:

- (a) system design;
- (b) operating philosophies, e.g., manual or automatic control, local or remote operation;
- (c) general arrangement plans for switchboards, section boards and distribution boards, *see also* 1.3.3;
- (d) general arrangement plans for the space in which the electrical equipment to be assessed is located, showing:
  - access to adjacent spaces;
  - the location of the electrical equipment;
  - ventilation arrangements for air conditioning and/or the extraction of smoke, gas and vapours resulting from electric arcs;
  - positions within the space in which the electrical equipment is located where personnel will be

performing tasks, e.g., switching, equipment maintenance, instrument observation or cleaning, or where personnel could reasonably be expected to enter;

- (e) calculations in accordance with 8.3;
- (f) system operating procedures; and
- (g) details of defined additional safety measures to be taken during activities.

1.2.7 For naval ships in which explosive gas atmospheres may occur, the spaces are to be identified.

1.2.8 A schedule of electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts giving details, as appropriate, of:

- (a) type of equipment;
- (b) type of protection, e.g., Ex 'd';
- (c) apparatus group, e.g., IIB;
- (d) temperature class, e.g., T3;
- (e) enclosure ingress protection, e.g., IP55;
- (f) certifying authority;
- (g) certificate number;
- (h) location of equipment.

Details may be included on arrangement drawings for the hazardous locations, in place of a separate schedule. Where uncertified equipment is permitted by 14.2 or 14.3 or the Rules relevant to the specific type of ship, details of other documentation confirming (b) to (d) may be submitted in place of those listed under (f) and (g).

1.2.9 Simplified circuit diagram of electrical propulsion system (where fitted) giving details of:

- (a) ratings of electrical machines, transformers, batteries, dynamic braking assemblies and semiconductor converters;
- (b) lubrication and cooling arrangements, where provided;
- (c) insulation type, size and current loadings of cables;
- (d) make, type and rating of circuit breakers and fuses;
- (e) instrumentation and protective devices;
- (f) earth fault indication/protection;
- (g) propulsion control systems and the procedures used to ensure that there is satisfactory control of the design in relation to the requirements of 16.4; and
- (h) harmonic analysis.

1.2.10 Details of electrically operated fire, ship, crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems which are to include typical single line diagrams and arrangements, showing main vertical and, where applicable, horizontal fire zones, spaces along the ship bottom that are not fitted with a double bottom and the location of equipment and cable, including identification of relevant areas of high fire risk, to be employed for:

- (a) emergency lighting (other than where accumulator emergency lanterns are to be installed);
- (b) accommodation fire detection, alarm and extinction systems;
- (c) fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems;
- (d) crew and embarked personnel address system;
- (e) general emergency alarm;
- (f) watertight doors, bow, stern and shell doors and other electrically operated closing appliances; and
- (g) low location lighting.

# Electrical Engineering

# Volume 2, Part 10, Chapter 1

## Section 1

### NOTE

A general arrangement plan of the complete ship showing the main vertical fire zones, spaces along the ship bottom that are not fitted with a double bottom and the location of equipment and cable routes, including identification of relevant areas of high fire risk, for the above systems, is to be made available for the use of the Surveyor on board.

1.2.11 Evidence of the suitability of electrical and electronic equipment for use in protected areas and adjacent areas, as required by 17.3.9 and 17.3.10, including a schedule of electrical and electronic equipment located in protected areas and adjacent areas and general arrangement plans showing the coverage of the protected areas and adjacent areas.

1.2.12 A test schedule which is to include the method of testing and the test facilities which are provided for the general emergency alarm system and the crew and embarked personnel address system.

1.2.13 Documented test procedures to demonstrate compliance with STANAG 1008, or a relevant and acceptable naval standard, where the electrical class notation **ELS** is required.

1.2.14 For battery installations, arrangement plans and calculations to show compliance with 12.5.

1.2.15 A schedule of batteries fitted for use for emergency and essential services, giving details of:

- type and manufacturer's type designation;
- voltage and ampere-hour rating;
- location;
- equipment and/or system(s) served;
- maintenance/replacement cycle dates;
- date(s) of maintenance and/or replacement; and
- for replacement batteries in storage, the date of manufacture and shelf life; with accompanying battery replacement procedure documentation to show compliance with 12.7.

1.2.16 General arrangement plans showing the location of propulsion generators, motors, transformers, semiconductor converters, dynamic braking equipment, reactors and filters. The information supplied is also to include cable routes to show compliance with 11.8, as applicable.

1.2.17 Plans for all cables that pass through atria or equivalent spaces, and for vertical runs in trunks or other restricted spaces. The information supplied is to show compliance with 11.8.10.

### 1.3 Plans required for supporting evidence

1.3.1 The plans and particulars in 1.3.2 to 1.3.5 are to be submitted as supporting evidence.

1.3.2 In order to establish compliance with 1.12.2 and 5.1.5 to 5.1.7, a general arrangement plan of the ship showing the location of major items of electrical equipment, for example:

- main and emergency generators;
- switchboards;
- section boards and distribution boards supplying essential and emergency services;
- emergency batteries;
- motors for emergency services; and
- cable routes between these items of equipment.

1.3.3 Arrangement plans of main and emergency switchboards and section boards, and documentation that demonstrates that creepage and clearance distances are in accordance with 7.5.

1.3.4 A Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) is required to be submitted, see Pt 1, Ch 2,3.3.8. The FMEA is to verify the availability of electrical power to essential services in the event of a failure of a system or item of equipment, see 5.2.4.

1.3.5 In order to establish compliance with the requirements of 1.7.3, when requested, evidence is to be submitted to demonstrate the suitability of electrical equipment for its intended purpose in the conditions in which it is expected to operate.

1.3.6 Where deviation from the specific requirements of these Rules is required, details of the arrangements with documented justification and/or analysis are to be submitted, see 1.1.6.

### 1.4 Surveys

1.4.1 Electrical propelling machinery and associated equipment together with auxiliary services essential for the safety of the ship are to be installed in accordance with the relevant requirements of this Chapter, surveyed and have tests witnessed by the Surveyors.

1.4.2 The following equipment, where intended for use for essential and emergency services, is to be surveyed by the Surveyors during manufacture and testing:

- Converting equipment of 100 kW and over;
- Rotating machines of 100 kW and over;
- Switchboards and section boards, and;
- UPS units of 50 kVA and over.

1.4.3 For electric propulsion systems, in addition to the equipment listed in 1.4.2, the following equipment is to be surveyed by the Surveyors during manufacture and testing:

- cables, see 11.1.3;
- exciters;
- filters;
- reactors;
- dynamic braking assemblies;
- pre-magnetisation transformers; and
- slip ring assemblies.

1.4.4 All other electrical equipment, not specifically referenced in 1.4.2 and 1.4.3, intended for use for essential or emergency services is to be supplied with a manufacturer's works test certificate showing compliance with the constructional standard(s) as referenced by the relevant requirements of the Chapter.

## 1.5 Additions or alterations

1.5.1 No addition, temporary or permanent, is to be made to the approved load of an existing installation until it has been ascertained that the current carrying capacity and the condition of the existing equipment including cables and switchgear are adequate for the increased load.

1.5.2 Plans are to be submitted for consideration, and the alterations or additions are to be carried out under the survey, and to the satisfaction of the Surveyors.

1.5.3 All electric propelling machinery including switchgear, control gear, converters, cables, main and auxiliary generators, motors and exciters is to be surveyed by the Surveyors during manufacture and testing.

1.5.4 Proposed modifications to the electrical protection systems are to be developed in accordance with 6.1.4 and plans submitted are also to address the updating of the approved version of the details required by 1.2.4 and 1.2.5.

1.5.5 When it is proposed to replace permanently installed secondary valve-regulated sealed batteries with vented batteries, details are to be submitted for consideration to ensure continued safety in the presence of the products of electrolysis and evaporation being allowed to escape freely from the cells to the atmosphere. These details are to demonstrate that there will be adequate ventilation in accordance with 12.5.9 and that the location and installation requirements of 12.3 and 12.4 are complied with.

1.5.6 Where it is intended to replace an existing incandescent lamp type navigation light with a light emitting diode type navigation light, details are to be submitted for consideration that demonstrate compliance with 15.5. Light emitting diode type navigation lights failure detection arrangements are to additionally satisfy the requirements of 15.5.5 and 15.5.6.

## 1.6 Definitions

1.6.1 Essential services are those necessary for the propulsion and safety of the ship within the Mobility category and Ship Type category (see Pt 1, Ch 1,3) and include the following:

- air compressors for oil engines;
- air pumps;
- automatic sprinkler systems;
- ballast pumps;
- bilge and dewatering system pumps;
- circulating and cooling water pumps;
- communication systems;
- condenser circulating pumps;
- electric propulsion equipment;
- electric starting systems for oil engines;
- extraction pumps;
- fans for forced draught to boilers;
- feed water pumps;
- fire detection and alarm systems;
- fuel valve cooling pumps;
- hydraulic pumps for controllable pitch propellers and those serving essential services here listed that would otherwise be directly electrically driven;
- lubricating oil pumps;
- lighting systems for those parts of the ship normally accessible to and used by personnel;
- made and clean water equipment;
- navigational aids where required by the Naval Authority;
- navigation lights and special purpose lights where required by the Naval Authority;
- oil fuel pumps and oil fuel burning units;
- oil separators;
- pumps for fire extinguishing systems;
- scavenge blowers;
- steam raising plant, where steam is required for other essential services;
- steering gear;
- thrusters for dynamic positioning;
- valves which are required to be remotely operated;
- ventilating fans for engine and boiler rooms;
- watertight doors, shell doors and other electrical operated;
- closing appliances;
- windlasses;
- power sources and supply systems for supplying the above services.

Essential military systems and damage control arrangements relating to the Ship Type are to be stated where applicable.

1.6.2 Services such as the following are considered necessary for minimum comfortable conditions of habitability:

- cooking;
- heating;
- domestic refrigeration;
- mechanical ventilation;
- sanitary and fresh water.

# Electrical Engineering

# Volume 2, Part 10, Chapter 1

Section 1

1.6.3 Services such as the following, which are additional to those in 1.6.1 and 1.6.2, are considered necessary to maintain the ship in a normal sea-going operational and habitable condition:

- hotel services, other than those required for habitable conditions;
- thrusters, other than those for dynamic positioning.

1.6.4 A 'high voltage' is a voltage exceeding 1000 V a.c. or 1500 V d.c. between conductors, see also 5.1.4.

1.6.5 A 'switchboard' is a switchgear and control gear assembly for the control of power generated by a source of electrical power and its distribution to electrical consumers.

1.6.6 A 'section board' is a switchgear and control gear assembly for controlling the supply of electrical power from a switchboard and distributing it to other section boards, distribution boards or final sub-circuits.

1.6.7 A 'distribution board' is an assembly of one or more protective devices arranged for the distribution of electrical power to final sub-circuits.

1.6.8 A 'final sub-circuit' is that portion of a wiring system extending beyond the final overcurrent device of a board.

1.6.9 'Special category spaces' are those enclosed spaces above or below the weather deck intended for the carriage of motor vehicles, helicopters and aircraft with fuel in their tanks, into and from which such equipment can be moved, and to which crew have access. Special category spaces may be accommodated on more than one deck provided that the total overall clear height for vehicles, helicopters and aircraft does not exceed 10 m.

1.6.10 'Machinery spaces of Category A' are those spaces and trunks to such spaces which contain:

- (a) internal combustion machinery used for main propulsion; or
- (b) internal combustion machinery used for purposes other than main propulsion where such machinery has in the aggregate a total power output of not less than 375 kW; or
- (c) any oil-fired boiler or oil fuel unit.

1.6.11 'Dead ship condition' means that the entire machinery installation, including the power supply, is out of operation and that the auxiliary services for bringing the main propulsion systems into operation (e.g., compressed air, starting current from batteries, etc.) and for the restoration of the main power supply are not available. Means are to be made available to start the emergency generator at all times, see Pt 2, Ch 1,7.15.

1.6.12 Protected space is a machinery space where a fixed water-based local application fire-fighting system is installed.

1.6.13 Protected areas are areas within a protected space which are protected by a fixed water-based local application fire-fighting system.

1.6.14 Adjacent areas are those, other than protected areas, exposed to direct spray or other areas where water may extend when a fixed water-based local application fire-fighting system is activated.

1.6.15 An 'electric arc' is an electrical discharge or a short-circuit through ionised air caused by isolation or insulation integrity failure.

1.6.16 'Incident energy' is the amount of energy impressed on a surface, a certain distance from the source, generated during an electric arc event.

## 1.7 Design and construction

1.7.1 Electrical propelling machinery and associated equipment together with equipment for services essential for the propulsion and safety of the ship are to be constructed in accordance with the relevant requirements of this Chapter.

1.7.2 The design and installation of other equipment is to be such that risk of fire due to its failure is minimised. It is, as a minimum, to comply with a National or International Standard revised where necessary for ambient conditions.

1.7.3 Electrical equipment is to be suitable for its intended purpose in all conditions in which it is expected to operate. Equipment is to be designed and constructed in accordance with appropriate International Standards or, in the absence of such, relevant National Standards or naval publications acceptable to LR and the Navy or Naval Authority. The design and construction is to take account of both functional and environmental requirements. For details of marine environmental conditions, reference should be made to Annex B of IEC 60092: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 101: Definitions and general requirements*.

## 1.8 Quality of power supplies

1.8.1 All electrical equipment supplied from the main and emergency sources of electrical power and electrical equipment for essential and emergency services supplied from d.c. sources of electrical power is to be so designed and manufactured that it is capable of operating satisfactorily under normally occurring variations of voltage and frequency.

1.8.2 Unless specified otherwise, a.c. electrical equipment is to operate satisfactorily with the following simultaneous variations, from their nominal value, when measured at the consumer input terminals.

- (a) voltage:
    - permanent variations +6%, –10%
    - transient variations due to step changes in load  $\pm 20\%$
    - recovery time 1,5 seconds
  - (b) frequency:
    - permanent variations  $\pm 5\%$
    - transient variations due to step changes in load  $\pm 10\%$
    - recovery time 5 seconds
- A maximum rate of change of frequency not exceeding  $\pm 1,5$  Hz per second during cyclic frequency fluctuations.

**1.8.3 Harmonics.** Unless specified otherwise, the total harmonic distortion (THD) of the voltage waveform at any switchboard or section-board is not to exceed 8 per cent of the fundamental for all frequencies up to 50 times the supply frequency and no voltage at a frequency above 25 times supply frequency is to exceed 1,5 per cent of the fundamental of the supply voltage. THD is the ratio of the rms value of the harmonic content to the rms value of the fundamental, expressed in per cent and may be calculated using the expression:

$$THD = \frac{\sqrt{\sum_{h=2}^{\infty} V_h^2}}{V_1} \times 100$$

where

$V_h$  = rms amplitude of a harmonic voltage of order  $h$   
 $V_1$  = rms amplitude of the fundamental voltage.

**1.8.4** Unless specified otherwise, d.c. electrical equipment is to operate satisfactorily with the following simultaneous variations, from their nominal value, when measured at the consumer input terminals:

- (a) When supplied by d.c. generator(s) or a rectified a.c. supply:
- |                                    |      |
|------------------------------------|------|
| Voltage tolerance (continuous)     | ±10% |
| Voltage cyclic variation deviation | 5%   |
| Voltage ripple                     | 10%  |
- (a.c. rms over steady state d.c. voltage)
- (b) When supplied by batteries:
- (i) Equipment connected to the batteries during charging:  
 Voltage tolerance +30%, -25%;
- (ii) Equipment not connected to batteries during charging:  
 Voltage tolerance +20%, -25%.

Different voltage variations as determined by the charging/discharging characteristics, including ripple voltage from the charging device, may be considered. When battery chargers/battery combinations are used as d.c. power supply systems, adequate measures are to be taken to keep the voltage within the specified limits during charging, boost charging and discharging of the battery.

**1.8.5** Where the electrical class notation **ELS** is to be assigned, see 1.9.

**1.8.6** Where weapons or other combat systems may degrade the quality of power supplies, relevant details are to be advised to LR and to the prime contractor in order that the consequences may be established.

## 1.9 Quality of power supplies – ELS notation

**1.9.1** Where electrical power for the designated loads in the design statement of 1.2.3 is provided in accordance with the applicable provisions of a relevant and acceptable naval standard, such as STANAG 1008, the class notation **ELS** may be assigned.

**1.9.2** The electrical system is to be stable in all operating profiles in accordance with the design statement.

**1.9.3** The quality of the power supplies for the loads listed in the design statement are to comply with the standard, in place of the limits specified by 1.8.2 and 1.8.3. This level of quality is to be present at the point where the load is connected to the electrical power system.

**1.9.4** Where the main generation and the distribution power supplies are also required to comply with the standard, the main generation and distribution system is to be of an insulated type in compliance with 5.4. See also 5.5.7.

**1.9.5** A systematic procedure incorporating verification and validation methods is to be used to ensure successful implementation of the defined standard. A quality plan is to be submitted that describes this procedure along with the results of the design validation providing:

- details of any power system analysis software and the input data used;
- a transient stability analysis, unless the generator and load characteristics indicated by 9.4 are shown to be representative of the system under consideration;
- a harmonic distortion analysis, if the sum of loads that distort the current waveform is greater than 1 per cent of the short-circuit power of the generating capacity.

**1.9.6** Where a transient stability analysis demonstrates that the defined standard requirements can be satisfied by generator control requirements different from those specified by 9.4, these may be accepted as equivalent to the Rules.

**1.9.7** Unless it can be satisfactorily shown by the design verification and validation process that the requirements of the defined standard can be met, then measurements are to be taken as specified in 21.2.5.

## 1.10 Ambient reference and operating conditions

**1.10.1** The rating for classification purposes of essential electrical equipment intended for installation in ships to be classed for unrestricted (geographical) service is to be based on an engine room ambient temperature of 45°C, and a sea-water temperature at the inlet of 32°C. The equipment manufacturer is not expected to provide simulated ambient reference conditions at a test bed. The requirement excludes military aspects that are required to be defined by Pt 1, Ch 2,4.9.

**1.10.2** In the case of a ship to be classed for restricted service, the rating is to be suitable for the ambient conditions associated with the geographical limits of the restricted service. See Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2.

**1.10.3** Main and essential auxiliary machinery and equipment is to operate satisfactorily under the conditions shown in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.5. Electrical equipment satisfying alternative ambient operating condition requirements for installation on ships contained in an acceptable and relevant National, International or Naval Standard may be considered to satisfy this requirement.

Details of local environmental conditions are stated in Annex B of IEC 60092: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 101: Definitions and general requirements*.

**1.10.4** Where electrical equipment is installed within environmentally controlled spaces the ambient temperature for which the equipment is suitable for operation at its rated capacity may be reduced to a value not less than 35°C provided:

- the equipment is not for use for emergency services and is located outside of machinery space(s);
- temperature control is achieved by at least two cooling units so arranged that in the event of loss of one cooling unit, for any reason, the remaining unit(s) is capable of satisfactorily maintaining the design temperature;
- the equipment is able to be initially set to work safely within a 45°C ambient temperature until such a time that the lesser ambient temperature may be achieved; the cooling equipment is to be rated for a 45°C ambient temperature;
- alarms are provided, at a continually attended control station, to indicate any malfunction of the cooling units.

See also Pt 9, Ch 1,1.3.3.

**1.10.5** Where equipment is to comply with 1.10.4, it is to be ensured that electrical cables for their entire length are adequately rated for the maximum ambient temperature to which they are exposed along their length.

**1.10.6** Equipment used for cooling and maintaining the lesser ambient temperature in accordance with 1.10.4 are considered essential services and are to satisfy the requirements of 5.2.

## 1.11 Inclination of ship

**1.11.1** Emergency and essential electrical equipment is to operate satisfactorily under the conditions as shown in Table 2.4.2 in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.5.

## 1.12 Location and construction

**1.12.1** All electrical equipment is to be constructed or selected and installed such that:

- (a) live parts cannot be inadvertently touched, unless they are supplied at the safety voltage specified in 1.13.2(h);
- (b) it does not cause injury when handled or touched in the normal manner; and
- (c) it is unaffected by any water, steam or oil and oil vapour to which it is likely to be exposed.

Where not exposed to direct liquid spray, electrical equipment having, as a minimum, the degrees of protection as specified in IEC 60092-201 for the relevant location will satisfy these requirements. Where the equipment may be exposed to direct liquid spray, the degree of protection is not to be less than

IPX4. Where the equipment may be exposed to possible liquid immersion, the degree of protection is not to be less than IPX7.

**1.12.2** Switchboards, section boards and distribution boards supplying essential and emergency services, as well as cables from the respective generators to and between these boards, are to be arranged to avoid areas of high fire risk and elevated temperatures, for example, in close proximity to incinerators and boilers.

**1.12.3** Electrical equipment, as far as is practicable, is to be located:

- (a) such that it is accessible for the purpose of maintenance and survey;
- (b) clear of flammable material;
- (c) in spaces adequately ventilated to remove the waste heat liberated by the equipment under full load conditions, at the ambient conditions specified in 1.10;
- (d) where flammable gases cannot accumulate. If this is not practicable, electrical equipment is to be of the appropriate 'safe type', see Section 14;
- (e) where it is not exposed to the risk of mechanical injury or damage from water, steam or oil.

**1.12.4** Equipment design and the choice of materials are to reduce the likelihood of fire, ensuring that:

- (a) where the electrical energised part can cause ignition and fire, it is contained within the bounds of the enclosure of the electrotechnical product;
- (b) the design, material(s) and construction of the enclosure minimises, as far as is practicable, any internal ignition causing ignition of adjacent materials; and
- (c) where surfaces of the electrotechnical products can be exposed to external fire, they do not, as far as practicable, contribute to the fire growth.

### NOTE

Compliance with IEC 60695; Fire hazard testing, or an alternative and acceptable standard, will satisfy this requirement, see also 1.15.4.

**1.12.5** Insulating materials and insulated windings are to be oil resistant to tracking, moisture, sea air, oil and oil vapour unless special precautions are taken to protect them.

**1.12.6** The minimum creepage and clearance distances provided for electrical connections, terminals and similar bare live parts are to be in accordance with a relevant International or National Standard for the equipment or apparatus concerned. In cases where the rated voltage is outside that given in the Standard or where no Standard is available, the minimum creepage and clearance distances provided are to be in accordance with 7.5. Details of alternative proposals including supporting design rationale and demonstration may be submitted for consideration.

**1.12.7** Studs, screw-type or spring-type clamp terminations, satisfactory for the normal operating currents and voltages, are to be provided in electrical equipment for the connection of external cable, or bus-bar conductors, as appropriate, see also 11.15. There is to be adequate space and access for the terminations.

**1.12.8** The design of equipment is to enable ease of access to all parts requiring inspection or replacement in service.

**1.12.9** Equipment is not to remain live through the control circuits and/or pilot lamps when switched off by the control switch. This does not apply to synchronising switches and/or plugs. Where equipment such as anti-condensation heaters is fed from a supply separate from the main supply, isolation arrangements are to be provided.

**1.12.10** The operation of all electrical equipment and the lubrication arrangements are to be efficient under such conditions of vibration and shock as arise in normal practice. This requirement excludes military aspects that are required to be defined by Pt 1, Ch 2,4.9.

**1.12.11** All nuts and screws and clamping devices used in connection with current-carrying, supporting and working parts are to be provided with means to ensure that they cannot work loose by vibration and shock as arise in normal practice.

**1.12.12** To allow ease of access, connectors are to be spaced far enough apart to permit connection and disconnection. At test points, adequate clearance is to be provided between connection points and controls to provide access for testing.

**1.12.13** Conductors and equipment are to be placed at such a distance from the magnetic compasses, or are to be so disposed, that the interfering magnetic field is negligible when circuits are switched on and off.

**1.12.14** Where electrical power is used for propulsion, the equipment is to be so arranged that it will operate satisfactorily in the event of partial flooding by bilge water above the tank top up to the bottom floor plate level under the normal angles of inclination given in 1.10 for essential electrical equipment, see Pt 7, Ch 2,4. This requirement excludes military aspects that are required to be defined by Pt 1, Ch 2,4.9.

## **1.13 Earthing of non-current carrying parts**

**1.13.1** Except where exempted by 1.13.2, all non-current carrying exposed metal parts of electrical equipment and cables are to be earthed for personnel protection against electric shock. Bonding is to give a substantially equal potential and a sufficiently low earth fault loop impedance to ensure correct operation of protective devices.

**1.13.2** The following parts may be exempted from the requirements of 1.13.1:

- (a) lamp-caps, where suitably shrouded;
- (b) shades, reflectors and guards supported on lampholders or light fittings constructed of, or shrouded in, non-conducting material;
- (c) metal parts on, or screws in or through, non-conducting materials, which are separated by such material from current-carrying parts and from earthed non-current carrying parts in such a way that in normal use they cannot become live or come into contact with earthed parts;
- (d) apparatus which is constructed in accordance with the principle of double insulation;
- (e) bearing housings which are insulated in order to prevent circulation of current in the bearings;
- (f) clips for fluorescent lamps;
- (g) cable clips and short lengths of pipes for cable protection;
- (h) apparatus supplied at a safety voltage not exceeding 55 V direct current or 55 V, root mean square, between conductors, or between any conductor and earth in a circuit isolated from the supply. Autotransformers are not to be used for the purpose of achieving the alternating current voltage;
- (j) apparatus or parts of apparatus which although not shrouded in insulating material is nevertheless otherwise so guarded that it cannot be touched and cannot come in contact with exposed metal.

**1.13.3** Where extraneous-conductive parts (i.e., parts not forming part of the electrical installation and liable to introduce an electric potential) are not bonded by separate earthing conductors, details are to be submitted that demonstrate that a permanent, metal-to-metal connection of negligible impedance, which will not degrade due to corrosion or vibration, will be achieved.

**1.13.4** Armouring, braiding and other metal coverings are to be effectively earthed. Where the armouring, braiding and other metal coverings are earthed at one end only, they are to be adequately protected and insulated at the unearthed end with the insulation being suitable for the maximum voltage that may be induced. See 14.9.2 for earthing of cables in hazardous zones or spaces.

**1.13.5** The electrical continuity of all metal coverings of cables throughout the length of the cable, particularly at joints and tappings, is to be ensured.

**1.13.6** Earthing conductors are to be of copper or other corrosion-resistant material and be securely installed and protected where necessary against damage and also, where necessary, against electrolytic corrosion. Connections are to be so secured that they cannot work loose under vibration. It is recommended that earthing conductors carrying RF currents should be solid strip, not braid, to minimise the impedance.

**1.13.7** The nominal cross-section areas of copper earthing conductors for electrical equipment are, in general, to be equal to the cross-section of the current-carrying conductor up to 16 mm<sup>2</sup>, with a minimum of 1,5 mm<sup>2</sup>. Above this figure they are to be equal to at least half the cross-section of the current-carrying conductor with a minimum of 16 mm<sup>2</sup>.



# Electrical Engineering

# Volume 2, Part 10, Chapter 1

## Section 1

1.13.8 The nominal cross-section areas of copper earthing conductors for armouring, braiding and other metal coverings of cables are, in general, to be equal to the equivalent cross-section of the armouring, braiding and other metal coverings with a minimum of 1,5 mm<sup>2</sup>.

1.13.9 Earthing conductors of materials other than copper are to have a conductance not less than that specified for an equivalent copper earthing conductor.

1.13.10 The connection of the earthing conductor to the hull of the ship is to be made in an accessible position, and is to be secured by a screw or stud of a diameter appropriate for the size of the earthing conductor, but not less than 6 mm which is to be used for this purpose only. Bright metallic surfaces at the contact areas are to be ensured immediately before the nut or screw is tightened and, where necessary, the joint is to be protected against electrolytic corrosion. The connection is to remain unpainted.

## 1.14 Bonding for the control of static electricity

1.14.1 Bonding straps for the control of static electricity are required for refuelling tanks and piping systems, for flammable products and solids liable to release flammable gas and/or combustible dust, which are not permanently connected to the hull of the ship either directly or via their bolted or welded supports and where the resistance between them and the hull exceeds 1 MΩ.

1.14.2 Where bonding straps are required for the control of static electricity, they are to be robust, that is, having a cross-sectional area of at least 10 mm<sup>2</sup>, and are to comply with 1.13.6 and 1.13.10.

## 1.15 Alarms

1.15.1 Where alarms are required by this Chapter they are to be arranged in accordance with Pt 9, Ch 1, 2.3. Sound signal equipment, fire and general alarm bells are not required to be supplemented by visual indications, except in areas having high levels of background noise, such as machinery spaces.

1.15.2 The alarms in this Chapter are additional to those required by Pt 9, Ch 1; they may, however, form part of the alarm system that is required by Pt 9, Ch 1.

1.15.3 Cables for emergency alarms and their power sources are to be in accordance with 1.18.

1.15.4 Electrical equipment and cables for emergency alarms are to be so arranged that the loss of alarms in any one area due to localised fire, collision, flooding or similar damage is minimised, see 1.16 to 1.18.

## 1.16 Labels, signs and notices

1.16.1 Labels, signs and notices required by this Chapter are to be positioned in clearly visible locations which will not be obscured.

1.16.2 Labels, signs and notices are to be easy to read under the expected operating conditions. Character height in accordance with Table 1.1.1 will be considered to satisfy this requirement.

**Table 1.1.1 Character height and viewing distance**

| Viewing distance (mm) | Minimum character height (mm) |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| Less than 500         | 2,3                           |
| 500–1000              | 4,7                           |
| 1000–2000             | 9,4                           |
| 2000–4000             | 19                            |

1.16.3 Controls, indicators and displays required by this Chapter are to be labelled to indicate their function. Labels are to be positioned in a manner that associates the label with the item being labelled.

1.16.4 Labels, signs and notices are to use short, clear messages. In general, warning signs and notices are to comprise:

- a word signalling the gravity of the risk (e.g., Danger, Warning or Caution)
- a statement of the nature and/or consequence of the hazard, and wherever practical, an instruction giving appropriate behaviour to avoid the hazard.

## 1.17 Operation under flooding conditions

1.17.1 Flooding of spaces along the ship bottom that are not fitted with a double bottom is not to result in the loss of the ability to provide electrically operated fire, ship, crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems outside of the spaces.

1.17.2 Installation of electrical equipment necessary to provide fire, ship, crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems in spaces along the ship bottom not fitted with a double bottom is to be avoided, wherever practical. Where it is proposed to install electrical equipment, including cabling, necessary to provide fire, ship, crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems in such spaces, evidence is to be submitted to demonstrate that required emergency services will be available in other spaces in the event of flooding of the space not fitted with a double bottom.

## 1.18 Operation under fire conditions

1.18.1 As a minimum, the following emergency services and their emergency power supplies are required to be capable of being operated under fire conditions:

- Emergency fire pump.
- Control and power systems to power-operated fire doors and status indication for all fire doors.
- Control and power systems to power-operated water-tight doors and their status indication.
- Emergency lighting.
- Fire and general emergency alarms.
- Fire detection systems.
- Fire-extinguishing systems and fire-extinguishing media release alarms.
- Fire safety stops, *see also* 17.6.
- Low location lighting, *see also* 18.4.3.
- Crew and embarked personnel address systems.

1.18.2 Where cables for the emergency services listed in 1.18.1 pass through high fire risk areas, main vertical or horizontal fire zones other than those which they serve, they are to be so arranged that a fire in any of these areas or zones does not affect the operation of the emergency service in any other area or zone. This may be achieved either by:

- cables being of a fire resistant type complying with 11.5.3, and at least extending from the main control/monitoring panel to the nearest local distribution panel serving the relevant area or zone; or
- there being at least two-loops/radial distributions run as widely apart as is practicable and so arranged that in the event of damage by fire at least one of the loops/radial distributions remains operational.

Areas of high fire risk include:

- (a) Machinery spaces including diesel generator compartments and gas turbine compartments but excluding those spaces which do not contain machinery having a pressure lubrication system and where the storage of combustibles is prohibited.
- (b) Galleys.
- (c) Compartments with tanks containing flammable liquids with a flash point lower than 60°C or with a temperature above 32°C.
- (d) Compartments containing liquid oxygen.
- (e) Fuel, petrol, oil or lubricant pump spaces.
- (f) Magazines for munitions and armaments.

1.18.3 Where the cables for the power supplies for the emergency services listed in 1.18.1 pass through high fire risk areas, main vertical or horizontal fire zones other than those which they serve, they are to be of a fire resistant type complying with 11.5.3, extending at least to the local distribution panel serving the relevant area or zone.

1.18.4 Fire resistant electrical cables for the emergency services listed in 1.18.1, including their power supplies, are to be run as directly as is practicable, having regard to any special installation requirements, for example those concerning minimum bend radii.

## 1.19 Protection of electrical equipment against the effects of lightning strikes

1.19.1 Precautions are to be taken to protect essential electronic equipment that may be susceptible to damage from voltage pulses attributable to the secondary effects of lightning. This may be achieved by suitable design and/or the use of additional protective devices, such as surge arrestors. Resultant induced voltages may be further reduced by the use of earthed metallic screened cables. *See also* Section 20.

## 1.20 Electrical supplies to systems fulfilling military requirement

1.20.1 With the exception of dedicated electrical supplies to systems fulfilling military requirements, all other electrical supplies are to comply with these Rules. The Rules are applicable to electrical equipment and systems to the point of isolation of the military system or equipment. The point of isolation is the supply side of the isolating switch, MCCB panel, fuse panel or distribution panel dedicated to the military system or equipment.

1.20.2 Dedicated electrical supply arrangements to military systems are to be in accordance with recognised international/national/specialised naval standards.

1.20.3 Where isolating equipment is used for both military and other services, the Rule requirements are to be applied.

1.20.4 Automatic, hand and emergency changeover switches to military systems on the ship's supply system are to comply with these Rules.

## 1.21 Programmable electronic systems

1.21.1 Where programmable electronic systems are implemented and used to control the electrical installation, or to provide safety functions in accordance with the requirements of this Chapter (e.g., electric propulsion, circuit-breaker settings, switchgear and control gear controllers, etc.), the arrangements are to satisfy the applicable requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1, 2.9 to 2.12.

1.21.2 Where 1.21.1 applies, proposed modifications to software and acceptance testing and trials are to be in accordance with Pt 9, Ch 1, 1.4 and Section 6 as applicable.

## Section 2 Main source of electrical power

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 The main source of electrical power is to comply with the requirements of this Section without recourse to the emergency source of electrical power.

# Electrical Engineering

# Volume 2, Part 10, Chapter 1

Sections 2 & 3

## 2.2 Number and rating of generators and converting equipment

2.2.1 Under sea-going conditions, the number and rating of service generating sets and converting sets, such as transformers and semi-conductor converters, when any one generating set or converting set is out of action, are:

- (a) to be sufficient to ensure the operation of electrical services for essential equipment and habitable conditions. See 16.3.5 for electric propulsion systems;
- (b) to have sufficient reserve capacity to permit the starting of the largest motor without causing any motor to stall or any device to fail due to excessive voltage drop on the system;
- (c) to be capable of providing the electrical services necessary to start the main propulsion machinery from a dead ship condition. The emergency source of electrical power may be used to assist if it can provide power at the same time to those services required to be supplied by Section 3.

2.2.2 The arrangement of the ship's main source of power is to be such that the operation of electrical services for essential equipment and habitable conditions can be maintained regardless of the speed and direction of the propulsion machinery shafting.

2.2.3 Arrangements are to be provided to prevent overloading of the generating set(s) supplying the electrical power that is/are required to maintain the ship in a normal operational and habitable condition. On loss of electrical power, arrangements are to be made for a standby generator set to be started, connected to the switchboard and essential services restarted in as short a time as is practicable. These load control, starting and restart functions may be achieved by the actions of suitably trained personnel but in ships with **UMS** notation the arrangements are to be automatic, see *a/so* 6.9.

## 2.3 Starting arrangements

2.3.1 The starting arrangements of the generating sets prime movers are to comply with the requirements of Pt 2, Ch 1,7 as applicable.

2.3.2 When the emergency source of electrical power is required to be used to restore propulsion from a dead ship condition, the emergency generator is to be capable of providing initial starting energy for the propulsion machinery within 30 minutes of the dead ship condition. The emergency generator capacity is to be sufficient for restoring propulsion in addition to supplying those services in Section 3. See Pt 2, Ch 1,7 for dead ship condition starting arrangements.

## 2.4 Prime mover governors

2.4.1 The governing accuracy of the generating sets prime movers is to meet the requirements of Pt 2, Ch 1,9.3.

2.4.2 The maximum electrical step load switched on or off is not to cause the frequency variation of the electrical supply to exceed the parameters given in 1.8.2.

## 2.5 Main propulsion driven generators not forming part of the main source of electrical power

2.5.1 Generators and generator systems, having the ship's propulsion machinery as their prime mover but not forming part of the ship's main source of electrical power may be used whilst the ship is at sea to supply electrical services required for normal operational and habitable conditions provided that the requirements of 2.5.2 to 2.5.4 are satisfied.

2.5.2 Within the declared operating range of the generators and/or generator system, the specified voltage and frequency variations of the Rules are to be met.

2.5.3 Where there is remote control of the propulsion machinery, arrangements are to ensure that essential machinery power supplies are maintained during manoeuvring conditions in order to prevent a blackout situation.

2.5.4 In addition to the requirements of 2.2.3, arrangements are to be fitted to automatically start and connect one of the generators forming the main source of power should the frequency variations exceed those permitted by the Rules.

## Section 3 Emergency and alternative sources of electrical power

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to naval ships to be classed for unrestricted service. Alternative arrangements in accordance with the requirements of the Naval Authority may also be acceptable.

3.1.2 A greater or lesser period than the 18 hour period specified in 3.2.7 may be considered in conjunction with the operational requirements of the Naval Authority and any assigned Service Restriction.

3.1.3 Where the main sources of electrical power are located in two or more compartments that are not contiguous with each other, and where each source has its own independent self-contained systems, including power distribution and control systems, such that a fire or casualty in any one of the compartments will not affect the power distribution from the other(s), or to the services required by 3.2.7, the requirement of this Section will be satisfied without an additional emergency source of electrical power and its associated transitional source of power, provided that:

- (a) there is at least one generating set complying with the requirements of 2.2 and of sufficient capacity to meet the requirements of 3.2.7 in at least two non-contiguous compartments; and
- (b) the generator sets referred to in 3.1.3(a) and their self-contained systems are installed such that one of them remains operable and readily accessible after damage or flooding in any one compartment; and

- (c) the generator sets referred to in 3.1.3(a) are capable of being automatically started on loss of the power supplied by the other main source(s) of electrical power and supplying the services required by 3.2.7 as quickly as is safe and practicable subject to a maximum of 45 seconds or provided with a transitional source of emergency electrical power as specified in 3.2.9; and
- (d) the number and arrangements of generators is to allow for maintenance at sea of any one generator without affecting the ability to supply electrical power to the services in 3.2.7 from either of at least two compartments; and
- (e) the requirements of this Chapter applicable to the emergency source or any associated equipment are to be applied to the main source complying with 2.2, or any associated equipment.

## 3.2 Emergency source of electrical power

3.2.1 A self-contained emergency source of electrical power is to be provided.

3.2.2 The emergency source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any, transitional source of emergency power, emergency switchboard and emergency lighting switchboard are to be located above the uppermost continuous deck and be readily accessible from the open deck. They are not to be located forward of the collision bulkhead.

3.2.3 The location of:

- the emergency source of electrical power and associated transforming equipment, if any;
- the transitional source of emergency power;
- the emergency switchboard; and
- the emergency lighting switchboard;

in relation to:

- the main source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any; and
- the main switchboard;

is to be such as to ensure that a fire or other casualty in spaces containing:

- the main source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any, and the main switchboard; or
- in any machinery space of Category A;

will not interfere with the supply, control and distribution of emergency electrical power.

3.2.4 The space containing:

- the emergency source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any;
- the transitional source of emergency electrical power; and
- the emergency switchboard;

is not to be contiguous to the boundaries of machinery spaces of Category A or those spaces containing:

- the main source of electrical power, associated transforming equipment, if any; or
- the main switchboard.

3.2.5 Where compliance with 3.2.3 or 3.2.4 is not practicable, details of the proposed arrangements are to be submitted.

3.2.6 Provided that suitable measures are taken for safeguarding independent emergency operation under all circumstances, the emergency generator may be used, exceptionally, and for short periods, to supply non-emergency circuits.

3.2.7 The electrical power available is to be sufficient to supply all those services that are essential for safety in an emergency, due regard being paid to such services as may have to be operated simultaneously. The emergency source of electrical power is to be capable, having regard to starting currents and the transitory nature of certain loads, of supplying simultaneously at least the following services for the periods specified hereinafter, if they depend upon an electrical source for their operation:

- (a) For a period of not less than three hours, emergency lighting at every lifeboat preparation station, muster and embarkation station and over the sides.
- (b) For a period of not less than 18 hours, emergency lighting as detailed below unless alternative arrangements are provided by lamps having accumulator batteries within the lighting unit that are continuously charged:
  - (i) in all service and accommodation alleyways, stairways and exits, personnel lift cars and personnel lift trunks;
  - (ii) in the machinery spaces and main generating stations including their control positions;
  - (iii) in all control stations, machinery control rooms, and at each main and emergency switchboard;
  - (iv) at all stowage positions for firemen's outfits;
  - (v) at the steering gear; and
  - (vi) at the emergency fire pump, at the sprinkler pump, if any, and at the emergency bilge pump, if any, and at the starting positions of their motors.
- (c) For a period of not less than 18 hours:
  - (i) the navigation lights and other lights required by the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea in force; and
  - (ii) The radiocommunications, as required by Amendments to SOLAS 1974, Chapter IV, see also 3.5 Radio installation.
- (d) For a period of not less than 18 hours:
  - (i) all internal communication equipment as required in an emergency;
  - (ii) the navigational aids as required by the Naval Authority;
  - (iii) the fire detection and fire-alarm system; and
  - (iv) intermittent operation of the daylight signalling lamp, the ship's whistle, the manually operated call points and all internal signals that are required in an emergency;

unless such services have an independent supply for the period of not less than 18 hours from an accumulator battery suitably located for use in an emergency.
- (e) For a period of 18 hours:
  - (i) the emergency fire pump if dependent upon the emergency source of electrical power;
  - (ii) the automatic sprinkler pump, if any; and
  - (iii) if any, the emergency bilge pump and all the equipment essential for the operation of electrically-powered remote controlled bilge valves.
- (f) The steering gear for the period of time required by Pt 6, Ch 1,9.

- (g) For a period of half an hour:
  - (i) any watertight doors if electrically-operated together with their control, indication and alarm circuits;
  - (ii) the emergency arrangements to bring the lift cars to deck level for the escape of persons. Personnel lift cars may be brought to deck level sequentially in an emergency.
- (h) Where applicable, the services required by 2.3.2.
- (j) Engine cooling water and lubricating oil pumps, if independently driven.

3.2.8 The emergency source of electrical power may be either a generator or an accumulator battery, which is to comply with the following:

- (a) Where the emergency source of electrical power is a generator it is to be:
  - (i) driven by a suitable prime mover with an independent supply of fuel, having a flashpoint (closed-cup test) of not less than 43°C;
  - (ii) started automatically upon failure of the main source of electrical power supply unless a transitional source of emergency electrical power in accordance with 3.2.9 is provided; where the emergency generator is automatically started, it is to be automatically connected to the emergency switchboard; those services referred to in 3.2.7 are to be connected automatically to the emergency generator; and
  - (iii) provided with a transitional source of emergency electrical power as specified in 3.2.9 unless an emergency generator is provided capable both of supplying the services mentioned in that paragraph and of being automatically started and supplying the required load as quickly as is safe and practicable subject to a maximum of 45 seconds.
- (b) Where the emergency source of electrical power is an accumulator battery it is to be capable of:
  - (i) carrying the emergency electrical load without recharging while maintaining the voltage of the battery throughout the discharge period within 12 per cent above or below its nominal voltage;
  - (ii) automatically connecting to the emergency switchboard in the event of failure of the main source of electrical power;
  - (iii) immediately supplying at least those services specified in 3.2.7; and
  - (iv) remote control of fire extinguishing systems if electrical.

3.2.9 The transitional source of emergency electrical power where required by 3.2.8 is to consist of an accumulator battery suitably located for use in an emergency which is to operate without recharging while maintaining the voltage of the battery throughout the discharge period within 12 per cent above or below its nominal voltage and be of sufficient capacity and is to be so arranged as to supply automatically in the event of failure of either the main or the emergency source of electrical power for half an hour at least the following services if they depend upon an electrical source for their operation:

- (a) the lighting required by 3.2.7(a), (b) and (c). For this transitional phase, the required emergency electric lighting, in respect of the machinery space and accommodation and service spaces may be provided by permanently

fixed, individual, automatically charged, relay operated accumulator lamps; and

- (b) all services required by 3.2.7(d)(i), (iii) and (iv) unless such services have an independent supply for the period specified from an accumulator battery suitably located for use in an emergency.
- (c) Power to operate the watertight doors at least three times, i.e., closed-open-closed against an adverse list of 15°, but not necessarily all of them simultaneously, together with their control, indication and alarm circuits as required by 3.2.7(g)(i).

3.2.10 The emergency switchboard is to be installed as near as is practicable to the emergency source of electrical power.

3.2.11 Where the emergency source of electrical power is a generator, the emergency switchboard is to be located in the same space unless the operation of the emergency switchboard would thereby be impaired.

3.2.12 No accumulator battery fitted in accordance with this Section, unless for engine starting, is to be installed in the same space as the emergency switchboard. An indicator shall be mounted in a suitable place on the main switchboard or in the machinery control room to indicate when the batteries constituting either the emergency source of electrical power or the transitional source of electrical power are being discharged.

3.2.13 The emergency switchboard is to be supplied during normal operation from the main switchboard by an interconnector feeder which is to be adequately protected at the main switchboard against overload and short-circuit and which is to be disconnected automatically at the emergency switchboard upon failure of the main source of electrical power. Where the system is arranged for feedback operation, the interconnector feeder is also to be protected at the emergency switchboard at least against short-circuit.

3.2.14 In order to ensure ready availability of the emergency source of electrical power to supply circuits required to provide emergency services, arrangements are to be made, where necessary, to disconnect automatically non-emergency circuits from the emergency switchboard in the event of overloading to ensure that electrical power is available to the emergency circuits.

3.2.15 Provision is to be made for the periodic testing of the complete emergency system and is to include the testing of automatic starting arrangements.

## 3.3 Starting arrangements

3.3.1 Where the emergency source of power is a generator, the starting arrangements are to comply with the requirements given in Pt 2, Ch 1, 7.15.

## 3.4 Prime mover governor

3.4.1 Where the emergency source of power is a generator, the governor is to comply with 2.5.

## 3.5 Radio installation

3.5.1 Every radio installation as required by the Naval Authority is to be provided with reliable, permanently arranged electrical lighting, independent of the main and emergency sources of electrical power, for the adequate illumination of the radio controls for operating the radio installation.

3.5.2 A reserve source or sources of energy is to be provided on every ship, for the purpose of conducting distress and safety radio communications, in the event of failure of the ship's main and emergency sources of electrical power. The reserve source or sources of energy is to be capable of simultaneously operating the VHF radio installation and, as appropriate for the sea or sea area for which the ship is equipped, either the MF radio installation, the MF/HF radio installation, or the INMARSAT ship earth station and any of the additional loads mentioned in 3.5.4, 3.5.5 and 3.5.7 for a period of at least one hour. The reserve source or sources of energy need not supply independent HF and MF radio installations at the same time.

3.5.3 The reserve source or sources of energy is to be independent of the propelling power of the ship and the ship's electrical system.

3.5.4 Where, in addition to the VHF radio installation, two or more of the other radio installations, referred to in 3.5.2, can be connected to the reserve source or sources of energy, the reserve source or sources are to be capable of simultaneously supplying, for the period specified by 3.5.2, the VHF radio installation and:

- (a) all other radio installations which can be connected to the reserve source or sources of energy at the same time; or
- (b) whichever of the other radio installations will consume the most power, if only one of the other radio installations can be connected to the reserve source or sources of energy at the same time as the VHF radio installation.

3.5.5 The reserve source or sources of energy may be used to supply the electrical lighting required by 3.5.1.

3.5.6 Where a reserve source of energy consists of a rechargeable accumulator battery or batteries a means of automatically charging the batteries is to be provided which is to be capable of recharging them to minimum capacity requirements within 10 hours.

3.5.7 If an uninterrupted input of information from the ship's navigational or other equipment to a radio installation as referred to in 3.5.2 is needed to ensure its proper performance, means are to be provided to ensure the continuous supply of such information in the event of failure of the ship's main or emergency source of electrical power.

## Section 4 External source of electrical power

### 4.1 Temporary external supply

4.1.1 Where arrangements are made for the supply of electricity from a source on shore or elsewhere, a connection box is to be installed in a position suitable for the convenient reception of flexible cables from the external source and containing fuses and terminals including one earthed, of ample size and suitable shape to facilitate an appropriate supply.

4.1.2 Suitable cables, permanently fixed, are to be provided, connecting the terminals in the connection box to a linked switch and/or a circuit-breaker at the main switchboard. An indicator is to be provided at the main switchboard in order to show when the cables are energised.

4.1.3 Means are to be provided for checking the phase sequence of the incoming supply.

4.1.4 At the connection box a notice is to be provided giving full information on the system of supply, the normal voltage and frequency of the installation's system and the procedure for carrying out the connection.

4.1.5 Alternative arrangements may be submitted for consideration.

## Section 5 Supply and distribution

### 5.1 Systems of supply and distribution

5.1.1 The following systems of generation and distribution are acceptable:

- (a) d.c., two-wire;
- (b) a.c., single-phase, two-wire;
- (c) a.c., three-phase:
  - (i) three-wire insulated;
  - (ii) three-wire with neutral solidly earthed or earthed through an impedance;
  - (iii) four-wire with neutral solidly earthed but without hull return.

NOTE:

Where the **ELS** notation is to be assigned, earthed systems are permitted only when the additional requirements of 5.5.7 are satisfied. See also 1.9.4.

5.1.2 For oil supply ships intended for the carriage in bulk of oil and other hazardous liquids having a flash point not exceeding 60°C (closed-cup test) only the following systems of generation and distribution are acceptable:

- (a) d.c., two-wire insulated;
- (b) a.c., single-phase, two-wire, insulated;
- (c) a.c., three-phase, three-wire, insulated;

(d) earthed systems, a.c. or d.c., limited to areas outside any dangerous space or zone, and arranged so that no current arising from an earth-fault in any part of the system could pass through a dangerous space or zone. Earthed intrinsically safe circuits are permitted to pass into and through dangerous spaces and zones.

5.1.3 System voltages for both alternating current and direct current in general are not to exceed:

- 15 000 V for generation and power distribution;
- 500 V for cooking and heating equipment permanently connected to fixed wiring;
- 250 V for lighting, heaters in cabins and crew and embarked personnel rooms, and other applications not mentioned above.

Voltages above these will be the subject of special consideration.

5.1.4 The arrangement of the main system of supply is to be such that a fire or other casualty in a space containing any of the main sources of electrical power will not render inoperable any of the other main sources of electrical power, or any emergency supply system if fitted.

5.1.5 Main switchboards, lighting distribution boards and any converting equipment are to be so placed relative to their associated generator(s) so that, as far as is practicable, the integrity of the main system(s) of supply will be affected only by a fire or other casualty in one space. Switchboards are to be located as close as practicable to their associated generators.

5.1.6 The arrangement of the emergency system of supply, where fitted, is to be such that a fire or other casualty in spaces containing the emergency source of electrical power, associated converting equipment, if any, the emergency switchboard and the emergency lighting switchboard, will not cause loss of services required to maintain the propulsion and safety of the ship.

5.1.7 Distribution systems are to be so arranged that a fire in any one main fire zone will not interfere with either the main or emergency distribution systems and services in any other such zone.

## 5.2 Essential services

5.2.1 Essential services that are required to be duplicated are to be served by individual circuits, separated in their switchboard or section board and throughout their length as widely as is practicable without the use of common feeders, protective devices, control circuits or control gear assemblies, so that any single fault will not cause the loss of both services.

5.2.2 Where 5.2.1 is applicable the main busbars of the switchboard, or section boards, are to be capable of being split, by a multi-pole linked circuit breaker, disconnector or switch-disconnector, into at least two independent sections, each supplied by at least one generator, either directly or through a converter. The essential services are to be equally divided, as far as is practicable, between the independent sections.

5.2.3 Where 5.2.2 is applicable, provision is to be made to transfer to a temporary circuit those essential services which are not required to be, and have not been, duplicated in the event of loss of their normal section of switchboard or section board.

5.2.4 A Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA) is to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Pt 1, Ch 2,17. The FMEA is to verify the availability of electrical power to essential services (see 1.6.1) in the event of a failure in the power supply and distribution system. The FMEA is to address the different system operating modes and configurations. The FMEA should include relevant mechanical failures which may have significant effects on the electrical power and distribution system, i.e. prime mover failures causing loss of electrical power supplies used to provide essential services. An analysis carried out by applying the relevant generic failure modes listed in IEC 60812:1985, *Analysis techniques for system reliability – Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)*, to the system and equipment identified in the single line diagram of the electrical system (see 1.2.2) would generally be acceptable.

## 5.3 Isolation and switching

5.3.1 The incoming and outgoing circuits from every switchboard or section board are to be provided with a means of isolation and switching to permit each circuit to be switched off:

- (a) on load;
- (b) for mechanical maintenance;
- (c) in an emergency to prevent or remove danger.

In addition, the requirements of 5.3.2 and 5.3.3 are to be complied with.

5.3.2 Isolation and switching is to be by means of a circuit breaker or switch arranged to open and close simultaneously all insulated poles. Where a switch is used as the means of isolation and switching, it is to be capable of:

- (a) switching off the circuit on load;
- (b) withstanding, without damage, the overcurrents which may arise during overloads and short-circuit. In addition, these requirements do not preclude the provision of single pole control switches in final sub-circuits, for example light switches.

For circuit breakers, see 6.5 and 7.3.

5.3.3 Provision is to be made, in accordance with one of the following, to prevent any circuit being inadvertently energised:

- (a) the circuit breaker or switch can be withdrawn, or locked in the open position;
- (b) the operating handle of the circuit breaker or switch can be removed;
- (c) the circuit fuses, where fitted, can be readily removed and retained by authorised personnel.

5.3.4 Where a section board, distribution board or item of equipment can be supplied by more than one circuit, a switching device is to be provided to permit each incoming circuit to be isolated and the supply transferred to the alternative circuit. In addition, the requirements of 5.3.5 and 5.3.6 are to be complied with.

5.3.5 The switching device required by 5.3.4 is to be situated within or adjacent to the section board, distribution board or item of equipment. Where necessary, interlocking arrangements are to be provided to prevent circuits being inadvertently energised.

5.3.6 A notice is to be fixed to any section board, distribution board or item of equipment to which 5.3.4 applies warning personnel before gaining access to live parts of the need to open the appropriate circuit breakers or switches, unless an interlocking arrangement is provided so that all circuits concerned are isolated before access is gained.

5.3.7 Where high voltage equipment is contained in a room, or protected area, which also forms its enclosure, the access door(s) is to be so interlocked that it cannot be opened until the high voltage supply(ies) to the equipment is switched off. Provision is also to be made to enable the equipment and its cable(s) to be earthed down and any stored energy dissipated, sufficient to ensure personnel safety.

5.3.8 The access to the space(s) described in 5.3.7 are to be suitably marked to indicate the danger of high voltage.

## 5.4 Insulated distribution systems

5.4.1 A device(s) is to be installed for every insulated distribution system, whether primary or secondary, for power, heating and lighting circuits, to continuously monitor the insulation level to earth and to operate an alarm in the engine control room, or equivalent attended position, in the event of an abnormally low level of insulation resistance, see *also* Pt 9, Ch 1,3.2.

5.4.2 Where any insulated lower voltage system is supplied through transformers from a high voltage system, adequate precautions are to be taken to prevent the low voltage system being charged by capacitive leakage from the high voltage system.

5.4.3 Where filters are fitted, for example to reduce EMC susceptibility, these are not to cause distribution systems to be unintentionally connected to earth.

## 5.5 Earthed distribution systems

5.5.1 No fuse, non-linked switch or non-linked circuit-breaker is to be inserted in an earthed conductor. Any switch or circuit-breaker fitted is to operate simultaneously in the earthed conductor and the insulated conductors. These requirements do not preclude the provision (for test purposes) of an isolating link to be used only when the other conductors are isolated.

5.5.2 For high voltage systems, where the earthed neutral system of generation and primary distribution is used, earthing is to be through an impedance in order to limit the total earth fault current to a magnitude which does not exceed that of the three phase short-circuit current for which the generators are designed.

5.5.3 Generator neutrals may be connected in common, provided that the third harmonic content of the voltage waveform of each generator does not exceed five per cent.

5.5.4 Where a switchboard is split into sections operated independently or where there are separate switchboards, neutral earthing is to be provided for each section or for each switchboard. Means are to be provided to ensure that the earth connection is not removed when generators are isolated.

5.5.5 A means of isolation is to be fitted in the earthing connection of each generator so that generators can be completely isolated for maintenance.

5.5.6 All earthing impedances are to be connected to the hull. The connections to the hull are to be so arranged that any circulating currents in the earth connections do not interfere with radio, radar, communication and control equipment circuits.

5.5.7 Where the **ELS** notation is to be assigned, earthed systems are not permitted unless they are isolated from the main generation and distribution system, e.g., through transformers and/or motor generator sets. *See also* 1.9.4.

## 5.6 Diversity factor

5.6.1 Circuits supplying two or more final sub-circuits are to be rated in accordance with the total connected load subject, where justified, to the application of a diversity factor. Where spare ways are provided on a section or distribution board, an allowance for future increase of load is to be added to the total connected load before application of any diversity factor.

5.6.2 A diversity factor may be applied to the calculation for size of cable and rating of switchgear and fusegear, taking into account the duty cycle of the connected loads and the frequency and duration of any motor starting loads.

## 5.7 Lighting circuits

5.7.1 Lighting circuits are to be supplied by final sub-circuits separate from those for heating and power. This does not preclude the supply from a lighting circuit supplying a single fixed appliance, such as a cabin fan, a dry shaver, a wardrobe or anti-condensation heater, taking a maximum current of 2 A.

5.7.2 Lighting for the following spaces is to be supplied from at least two final sub-circuits in such a way that failure of one of the circuits does not leave the space in darkness. One of these circuits may be an emergency circuit provided it is normally energised.

- Spaces that are required to be lit for the safe working of the ship, such as control stations, normal working spaces, etc.
- Spaces where there may be a hazard due to movement of crew, embarked personnel and/or equipment, such as in corridors, working passage ways, stairways leading to boat decks, crew and embarked personnel rooms, etc.



- Spaces where there may be a hazard due to moving machinery and hot parts, such as in machinery spaces, workshops, large galleys, laundries, etc.

5.7.3 Lighting for enclosed hazardous spaces is to be supplied from at least two final sub-circuits to permit light from one circuit to be retained while maintenance is carried out on the other. One of these circuits may be an emergency circuit, provided it is normally energised in which case the arrangements are to comply with Section 3.

5.7.4 Emergency lighting is to be fitted in accordance with Section 3. *See also* Section 18.

5.7.5 Lighting of unattended spaces, such as store spaces, is to be controlled by multi-pole linked switches situated outside such spaces. Provision is to be made for the complete isolation of these circuits and locking the means of control in the off position.

5.7.6 For the design of lighting systems in magazines, weapon storage compartments and other dangerous spaces refer to Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 1,6.8 and Section 14 of this Chapter.

## 5.8 Motor circuits

5.8.1 A separate final sub-circuit is to be provided for every motor for essential services, see 1.6.1.

## 5.9 Motor control

5.9.1 Every electric motor is to be provided with efficient means for starting and stopping so placed as to be easily operated by the person controlling the motor. Every motor above 0,5 kW is to be provided with control apparatus as given in 5.9.2 to 5.9.4.

5.9.2 Means to prevent undesired restarting after a stoppage due to low volts or complete loss of volts are to be provided. This does not apply to motors where a dangerous condition might result from the failure to restart automatically, e.g., steering gear motor.

5.9.3 Means for automatic disconnection of the supply in the event of excess current due to mechanical overloading of the motor are to be provided, *see also* 6.1.1.

5.9.4 Motor control gear is to be suitable for the starting current and for the full load rated current of the motor.

## Section 6 System design – Protection

### 6.1 General

6.1.1 Installations are to be protected against over-currents including short-circuits, and other electrical faults. The tripping/fault clearance times of the protective devices are to provide complete and co-ordinated protection to ensure:

- availability of essential and emergency services under fault conditions through discriminative action of the protective devices; as far as practicable the arrangements are also to secure the availability of other services;
- elimination of the fault to reduce damage to the system and hazard of fire.
- uninterrupted electrical supply during normal operation of the system including motor starting and similar transient over-current conditions.

6.1.2 Short-circuit and overload protection are to be provided in each non-earthed line of each system of supply and distribution, unless exempted under the provisions of any paragraph in this Section.

6.1.3 The protection of circuits is to be such that a fault in a circuit does not cause the interruption of supplies used to provide emergency or essential services other than those dependent on the circuit where the fault occurred. For circuits used to provide essential services which need not necessarily be in continuous operation to maintain propulsion and steering but which are necessary for maintaining the vessel's safety, arrangements that ensure that a fault in a circuit does not cause the sustained interruption of supply to healthy circuits may be accepted. Such arrangements are to ensure the supply to healthy circuits is automatically re-established in sufficient time after a fault in a circuit.

6.1.4 Protection systems are to be developed using a systematic design procedure incorporating verification and validation methods to ensure successful implementation of the requirements above. Details of the procedures used are to be submitted when requested. An approved copy of the details required by 1.2.4 and 1.2.5 is to be retained on board and made available to the LR Surveyor on request.

6.1.5 Short-circuit protection is to be provided for each source of power and at each point at which a distribution circuit branches into two or more subsidiary circuits.

6.1.6 Where protection for generator power circuits is provided at the associated switchboard, the cabling between generator and switchboard is to be of a type, and installed in a manner such as to minimise the risk of short-circuit.

6.1.7 Protection for battery circuits is to be provided at a position external and adjacent to the battery compartments. Where arrangements comply with 12.3.5, the protection may be installed at a suitable location in the battery compartment.

6.1.8 Protection may be omitted from the following:

- Engine starting battery circuits.
- Circuits for which it can be shown that the risk resulting from spurious operation of the protective device may be greater than that resulting from a fault.

6.1.9 Short-circuit protection may be omitted from cabling or wiring to items of equipment internally protected against short-circuit or where it can be shown that they are unlikely to fail to a short-circuit condition and where the cabling or wiring is installed in a manner such as to minimise the risk of short-circuit.

6.1.10 Overload protection may be omitted from the following:

- (a) one line of circuits of the insulated type;
- (b) circuits supplying equipment incapable of being overloaded, or overloading the associated supply cable, under normal conditions, and unlikely to fail to an overload condition.

## 6.2 Protection against short-circuit

6.2.1 Protection against short-circuit currents is to be provided by circuit-breakers or fuses.

6.2.2 The rated short-circuit making and breaking capacity of every protective device is to be adequate for the prospective fault level at its point of installation; the requirements for circuit breakers and fuses are detailed in 6.5 and 6.6 respectively.

6.2.3 The prospective fault current is to be calculated for the following set of conditions:

- (a) all generators, motors and, where applicable, all transformers, connected as far as permitted by any interlocking arrangements;
- (b) a fault of negligible impedance close up to the load side of the protective device.

6.2.4 In the absence of precise data, the prospective fault current may be taken to be:

- (a) for alternating current systems at the main switchboard:  $10 \times \text{f.l.c.}$  (rated full load current) for each generator that may be connected, or, if the subtransient direct axis reactance,  $X''d$ , of each generator is known,  $\frac{\text{f.l.c.}}{X''d(\text{p.u.})}$  for

each generator, and  $3 \times \text{f.l.c.}$  for motors simultaneously in service.

The value derived from the above is an approximation to the r.m.s. symmetrical fault current; the peak asymmetrical fault current may be estimated to be 2.5 times this figure (corresponding to a fault power factor of approximately 0.1).

- (b) battery-fed direct current systems at the battery terminals:
  - (i) 15 times ampere hour rating of the battery for vented lead-acid cells, or of alkaline type intended for discharge at low rates corresponding to a battery duration exceeding three hours; or
  - (ii) 30 times ampere hour rating of the battery for sealed lead-acid cells having a capacity of 100 Ampere hours or more, or of alkaline type intended for discharge at high rates corresponding to a battery duration not exceeding three hours; and
  - (iii)  $6 \times \text{f.l.c.}$  for motors simultaneously in service (if applicable).

## 6.3 Protection against overload

6.3.1 The characteristics of protective devices provided for overload protection are to ensure that cabling and electrical machinery is protected against overheating resulting from mechanical or electrical overload.

6.3.2 Fuses of a type intended for short-circuit protection only (e.g., fuse links complying with IEC 600269-1, of type 'a') are not to be used for overload protection.

## 6.4 Protection against earth faults

6.4.1 Every distribution system that has an intentional connection to earth, by way of an impedance, is to be provided with a means to continuously monitor and indicate the current flowing in the earth connection.

6.4.2 If the current in the earth connection exceeds 5 A there is to be an alarm and the fault current is to be automatically interrupted or limited to a safe value.

6.4.3 The rated short circuit capacity of any device used for interrupting earth fault currents is to be not less than the prospective earth fault current at its point of installation.

6.4.4 Insulated neutral systems with harmonic distortion of the voltage waveform, which may result in earth fault currents exceeding the level given in 6.4.2 because of capacitive effects, are to be provided with arrangements to isolate the faulty circuit(s).

## 6.5 Circuit-breakers

6.5.1 Circuit-breakers for alternating current systems are to satisfy the following conditions:

- (a) the r.m.s. symmetrical breaking current for which the device is rated is to be not less than the r.m.s. value of the a.c. component of the prospective fault current, at the instant of contact separation (i.e., first half cycle, or time of interruption where an intentional time delay is provided to ensure suitability);
- (b) the peak asymmetrical making current for which the device is rated is not to be less than the peak value of the prospective fault current at the first half cycle, allowing for maximum asymmetry;
- (c) the power factor at which the device short circuit ratings are assigned is to be no greater than that of the prospective fault current; alternatively for high voltage, the rated percentage d.c. component of the short-circuit breaking current of the device is to be not less than that of the prospective fault current.

6.5.2 Circuit-breakers for d.c. systems are to have a breaking current not less than the initial prospective fault current. The time constant of the fault current is not to be greater than that for which the circuit-breaker was tested.

6.5.3 The fault ratings considered in 6.5.1 and 6.5.2, are to be assigned on the basis that the device is suitable for further use after fault clearance.

6.5.4 Circuit-breakers selection is, and ratings are, to be in accordance with the relevant requirements of IEC 60092-202: *Electrical installations in ships – System design – Protection*. Alternative methods acceptable to LR of selecting suitable circuit-breakers may be considered.

## 6.6 Fuses

6.6.1 Fuses for a.c. systems are to have a breaking current rating not less than the initial r.m.s. value of the a.c. component of the prospective fault current.

6.6.2 Fuses for d.c. systems are to have a d.c. breaking current rating not less than the initial value of the prospective fault current.

## 6.7 Circuit-breakers requiring back-up by fuse or other device

6.7.1 The use of a circuit-breaker having a short-circuit current capacity less than the prospective short-circuit current at the point of installation is permitted, provided that it is preceded by a device having at least the necessary short-circuit capacity. The generator circuit breakers are not to be used for this purpose.

6.7.2 The same device may back up more than one circuit-breaker provided that no essential or emergency service is supplied from there, or that any such service is duplicated by arrangements unaffected by tripping of the device.

6.7.3 The combination of back-up device and circuit-breaker is to have a short-circuit performance at least equal to that of a single circuit-breaker satisfying the requirements of 6.5.

6.7.4 Evidence of testing of the combination is to be submitted for consideration; alternatively, consideration may be given to arrangements where it can be shown that:

- (a) the takeover current, above which the back-up device would clear a fault, is not greater than the rated short-circuit breaking capacity of the circuit-breaker; and
- (b) the characteristics of the back-up device, and the prospective fault level, are such that the peak fault current rating of the circuit-breaker cannot be exceeded; and
- (c) the Joule integral of the let-through current of the back-up device does not exceed that corresponding to the rated breaking current and opening time of the circuit-breaker.

## 6.8 Protection of generators

6.8.1 The protective gear required by 6.8.2 and 6.8.3 is to be provided as a minimum.

6.8.2 Generators not arranged to run in parallel are to be provided with a circuit-breaker arranged to open simultaneously, in the event of a short-circuit, an overload or an under-voltage, all insulated poles. In the case of generators rated at less than 50 kW, a multipole linked switch with a fuse, complying with 5.3.2, in each insulated pole will be acceptable.

6.8.3 Generators arranged to operate in parallel are to be provided with a circuit-breaker arranged to open simultaneously, in the event of a short-circuit, an overload or an under-voltage, all insulated poles. This circuit-breaker is to be provided with reverse power protection with time delay, selected or set within the limits of 2 per cent to 15 per cent of full load to a value fixed in accordance with the characteristics of the prime mover; a fall of 50 per cent in the applied voltage is not to render the reverse power mechanism inoperative, although it may alter the amount of reverse power required to open the breakers.

6.8.4 The generator circuit-breaker short-circuit and overload tripping arrangements, or fuse characteristics, are to be such that the machine's thermal withstand capability is not exceeded.

6.8.5 Generators having a capacity of 1500 kVA or above are to be equipped with a protective device which, in the event of a short-circuit in the generator or in the cables between the generator and its circuit-breaker, will instantaneously open the circuit breaker and de-excite the generator.

6.8.6 The voltage and time delay settings of the under-voltage release mechanism(s) required by 6.8.2 and 6.8.3 are to be chosen to ensure that the discriminative action required by 6.1.1(a) is maintained.

6.8.7 The protection of electrical power generation and distribution systems is to be so arranged that, in the event of failure of a protection device, including integrated multifunction relays, sufficient power can be supplied to all essential services, *see also* 5.2.4.

6.8.8 It is to be possible to control the generator prime mover in the event of failure of an electrical system protection device.

## 6.9 Load management

6.9.1 Arrangements are to be made to disconnect automatically sufficient load to reduce the load when the generator(s) is/are overloaded. Appropriate time delays are to be provided in these load reduction arrangements.

6.9.2 Arrangements are also to be made such that, where applicable, the maximum load that can be applied to generators driven by prime movers is not in excess of that determined by Pt 2, Ch 1,9.3.2 and Pt 2, Ch 2,7.3.4.

6.9.3 If required, this load switching may be carried out in one or more stages, in which case the non-essential circuits are to be included in the first group to be disconnected.

6.9.4 The load management of power systems supplying electric propulsion motors is to satisfy the requirements of 16.3.

6.9.5 Consideration is to be given to providing means to inhibit automatically the starting of large motors, or the connection of other large loads, until sufficient generating capacity is available to supply them.

## 6.10 Feeder circuits

6.10.1 Isolation and protection of each feeder circuit is to be ensured by a multipole circuit-breaker or linked switch with a fuse in each insulated conductor. Protection is to be in accordance with 6.2 and 6.3. The protective devices are to allow excess current to pass during the normal accelerating period of motors.

## 6.11 Motor circuits

6.11.1 Motors of rating exceeding 0,5 kW and all motors for essential services are to be protected individually against overload and short-circuit. Motors for services essential for the safety and propulsion of the ship and which are duplicated are to be provided with arrangements to start the standby motor and disconnect the faulty motor. Such motors may have an overload alarm instead of overload protection. The actions to start the standby motor and disconnect the faulty motor may be carried out by suitably trained personnel but in ships with **UMS** notation the arrangements are to be automatic.

6.11.2 Protection for both the motor and its supply cable may be provided by the same device, provided that due account is taken of any differences between ratings of cable and motor.

6.11.3 Where operation of an item of equipment is dependent upon a number of motors, consideration may be given to the provision of a common means of short-circuit protection.

6.11.4 The characteristics of the arrangements for overload protection of motors are to be selected in relation to both the starting and normal rated conditions that are to include any load factors of intermittent service motors.

6.11.5 Where fuses are used to protect polyphase motor circuits, means are to be provided to protect the motor from unacceptable overcurrent in the case of single phasing.

## 6.12 Protection of transformers

6.12.1 Short-circuit protection for transformers is to be provided by circuit breakers or fuses in the primary circuit and in addition, overload protection is to be provided either in the primary or secondary circuit.

6.12.2 Arrangements are to be made to prevent the primary windings of transformers being inadvertently energised from their secondary side when disconnected from their source of supply.

## 6.13 Harmonic filters

6.13.1 Harmonic filters' final sub-circuits are to be protected individually against overload and short-circuit.

6.13.2 An alarm is to be initiated in the event of protective device operation.

6.13.3 Where parallel harmonic filters are used, an alarm is to be initiated in the event of current imbalance that could lead to failure of a harmonic filter.

# Section 7 Switchgear and control gear assemblies

## 7.1 General requirements

7.1.1 Switchgear and control gear assemblies and their components are to comply with one of the following standards amended where necessary for ambient temperature and other environmental conditions:

- (a) IEC 61439: *Low voltage switchgear and control gear assemblies*;
  - (b) IEC 62271-200: *AC metal-enclosed switchgear and controlgear for rated voltages above 1 kV and up to and including 52 kV*;
  - (c) IEC 62271-201: *High-voltage switchgear and control gear – Part 201: AC insulation-enclosed switchgear and control gear for rated voltages above 1 kV and up to and including 52 kV*;
  - (d) IEC 60255: *Electrical Relays*;
  - (e) an acceptable and relevant National Standard; or
  - (f) specialised acceptable and relevant Naval Standards.
- In addition, the requirements of 7.2 to 7.19 are to be complied with.

## 7.2 Busbars

7.2.1 Busbars and their connections are to be of copper or aluminium, all connections being so made as to inhibit corrosion/oxidisation between current-carrying mating faces, which may result in poor electrical contact giving rise to overheating. Busbars and their supports are to be designed to withstand the mechanical stresses which may arise during short-circuits. A test report or calculation to verify the short-circuit withstand strength of the busbar system is to be submitted for consideration when required.

7.2.2 For bare conductors, where no precautions are taken against surface oxidation, the temperature rise limit at rated normal current is not to exceed 45°C. Where suitable precautions are taken against surface oxidation, e.g., by using silver, nickel or tin coated terminations, a temperature rise limit not exceeding 60°C may be permitted. Where the busbar temperature rises are above 45°C, it is to be ensured that there is no adverse effect on equipment adjacent to and/or connected to the busbars and that the temperature rise limits of any materials in contact with the busbars are not exceeded. A test report or calculation to verify the rated current assigned to the busbar system is to be submitted for consideration when required.

### 7.3 Circuit-breakers

7.3.1 Circuit-breakers are to comply with one of the following standards amended where necessary for ambient temperature:

- (a) IEC 60947-2: *Low voltage switchgear and Control gear Part 2: circuit breakers*; or
  - (b) IEC 62271-100: *High-voltage switchgear and control gear – Pt 100: High-voltage alternating-current circuit-breakers*;
  - (c) an acceptable and relevant National Standard.
- Type test reports to verify the characteristics of a circuit-breaker are to be submitted for consideration when required.

7.3.2 Circuit-breakers are to be capable of isolation.

7.3.3 Circuit-breakers are to be of the trip free type and, where applicable, be fitted with anti-pumping control.

7.3.4 High-voltage circuit-breakers are to be of the withdrawable type or with equivalent means or arrangements permitting safe maintenance whilst the busbars are live.

7.3.5 Where the means of setting adjustable protection characteristics are not durably marked and locked in position and cannot be visually inspected (e.g. electronic storage), the setting of characteristics is to be recorded in accordance with an acceptable quality management system with a copy of the records included in the details retained on board, see 6.1.4.

### 7.4 Contactors

7.4.1 High-voltage contactors are to comply with one of the following standards amended where necessary for ambient temperature:

- (a) IEC 60470: *High-voltage alternating current contactors*; or
  - (b) an acceptable and relevant National Standard.
- Type test reports to verify the characteristics of a contactor are to be submitted for consideration when required.

7.4.2 High-voltage contactors are to be of the withdrawable type or with equivalent means or arrangements permitting safe maintenance whilst the busbars are live.

### 7.5 Creepage and clearance distances

7.5.1 The shortest distances between conductive parts and between conductive parts and earth, in air or along the surface of an insulating material, are to be suitable for the rated voltage, having regard to:

- the nature of the insulating material;
- the transient over, voltages developed by switching and fault conditions; and
- the environment into which the assembly will be installed.

Each assembly type is to be subjected to an impulse voltage test in accordance with its constructional Standard or, alternatively, the minimum distances for bare conductive parts in switchgear and control gear assemblies given in Table 1.7.1 are to be used.

**Table 1.7.1 Minimum clearance distances**

| Nominal Voltage (V)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Minimum clearance distance (mm)  |                                   |                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Verified assemblies (See Note 2) |                                   | Non verified assemblies                             |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Main switchboards                | Other switchgear and control gear | Main switchboards and other switch and control gear |
| ≤250 (See Note 1)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 8                                | 8                                 | 15                                                  |
| ≤690 (See Note 1)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 8                                | 8                                 | 20                                                  |
| ≤1000 (See Note 1)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | 8                                | 8                                 | 25                                                  |
| <3 300                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 32                               | 26                                | 55                                                  |
| <6 600                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | 60                               | 50                                | 90                                                  |
| <11 000                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | 100                              | 80                                | 120                                                 |
| ≤15 000                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | See Note 3                       | See Note 3                        | 160                                                 |
| NOTES<br>1. For assemblies installed in spaces where the pollution degree is > 3, see 7.5.3.<br>2. For the verification requirements for a verified assembly refer to IEC 61439-2.<br>3. Clearance distances with reference to the applicable relevant National or International Standards are to be submitted for approval, see 1.3.3. |                                  |                                   |                                                     |

7.5.2 For assemblies with a rated voltage of up to and including 1kV, the requirement of 7.5.1 may be met by complying with IEC 60092-302 *Electrical installations in ships – Part 302: Low-voltage switchgear and control gear assemblies*:

- (a) Tables 1.7.1 and 1.7.2 indicate the minimum clearance and creepage distances normally allowed.
- (b) For assemblies installed in spaces where the environmental conditions are in excess of pollution degree 3 (that is, conductive pollution occurs or dry, non conductive pollution occurs which is expected to be conductive due to condensation) as defined in IEC 61439-1, *Low-voltage switchgear and control gear assemblies – Part 1: General requirements; the clearance distances for non-verified assemblies* are to be used.
- (c) A minimum creepage distance of 16 mm is permitted for assemblies verified in accordance with the requirements of IEC 61439-2, *Low-voltage switchgear and control gear assemblies – Part 2: Power switchgear and control gear assemblies*.
- (d) An alternative relevant National or International Standard may be used when an acceptable justification is submitted as part of the documentation required by 1.3.3.

**Table 1.7.2 Minimum creepage distance**

| Nominal Voltage V     | Minimum creepage distance (mm) |                                   |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
|                       | Main switchboards              | Other switchgear and control gear |
| ≤250<br>(See Note 1)  | 20                             | 20                                |
| ≤690<br>(See Note 1)  | 25                             | 25                                |
| ≤1000<br>(See Note 1) | 35                             | 35                                |
| <3 300                | 48                             | See Note 2                        |
| <6 600                | 90                             | 70                                |
| <11 000               | 150                            | 120                               |
| ≤15 000               | See Note 2                     | See Note 2                        |

**NOTES**

1. For verified assemblies a minimum creepage distance of 16 mm is permitted for LV switchboards, see 7.5.3.
2. Creepage distances, with reference to the applicable relevant National or International Standards, are to be submitted for approval, see 1.3.3.

7.5.3 For assemblies with a rated voltage above 1kV, the requirement of 7.5.1 may be met by complying with IEC 60092-503 *Electrical installations in ships – Part 503: Special features – AC supply systems with voltages in the range of above 1 kV up to and including 15 kV*.

- (a) Tables 1.7.1 and 1.7.2 indicate the minimum clearance and creepage distances normally allowed.
- (b) For main switchboards rated at above 1kV, a minimum clearance distance of 25 mm is required for busbars and other bare conductors.

- (c) An alternative relevant National or International Standard may be used when an acceptable justification is submitted as part of the documentation required by 1.3.3.

7.5.4 Suitable shrouding or barriers are to be provided in way of connections to equipment, where necessary, to maintain the minimum distances in Table 1.7.1.

## 7.6 Degree of protections

7.6.1 Low voltage assemblies where the rated voltage between conductors or to earth exceeds 55 V a.c. or 250 V d.c. are to be of the deadfront or enclosed type. High-voltage assemblies are to be of the enclosed type.

7.6.2 Where switchboards or section boards are required to comply with 5.2.2, barriers are to be installed to provide protection for the independent sections against contamination due to the products of arcing, which may result in a fault.

## 7.7 Distribution boards

7.7.1 Distribution boards are to be suitably enclosed unless they are installed in a cupboard or compartment to which only authorised persons have access in which case the cupboard may serve as an enclosure, see 7.16.4.

## 7.8 Earthing of high-voltage switchboards

7.8.1 High-voltage switchboards are to be provided with suitable means to earth isolated circuits so that they are discharged and so maintained that they are safe to touch.

7.8.2 Protective shutters associated with withdrawable parts are to be clearly marked, e.g., by colour coding, to indicate the incoming and outgoing circuits and bus tie connections.

## 7.9 Fuses

7.9.1 Fuses are to comply with one of the following standards amended where necessary for ambient temperature:

- (a) IEC 60269: Low-voltage fuses; or
- (b) IEC 60282-1: High voltage fuses Part 1: Current-limiting fuses; or
- (c) acceptable and relevant National Standard for enclosed current-limiting fuses.

Type test reports to verify the characteristics of a fuse are to be submitted for consideration when required.

## 7.10 Handrails or handles

7.10.1 All main and emergency switchboards are to be provided with an insulated handrail or insulated handles suitably fitted on the front of the switchboard. Where access to the rear is required, a horizontal insulated handrail is to be suitably fitted on the rear of the switchboard.

# Electrical Engineering

# Volume 2, Part 10, Chapter 1

Section 7

## 7.11 Instruments for alternating current generators

7.11.1 For alternating current generators not operated in parallel, each generator is to be provided with at least one voltmeter, one frequency meter, and one ammeter with an ammeter switch to enable the current in each phase to be read, or an ammeter in each phase. Generators above 50 kVA are also to be provided with a wattmeter.

7.11.2 For alternating current generators operated in parallel, each generator is to be provided with a wattmeter, and one ammeter with an ammeter switch to enable the current in each phase to be read, or an ammeter in each phase.

7.11.3 For parallelling purposes, two voltmeters, two frequency meters and two synchronising devices are to be provided. One voltmeter and one frequency meter are to be connected to the busbars, the other voltmeter and frequency meter are to be switched to enable the voltage and frequency of any generator to be measured. Where the electrical power requirement to maintain the ship in a normal operational and habitable condition is usually supplied by two or more generators operating in parallel, the two synchronising devices are to be independent of each other, *see also* 2.2.1.

7.11.4 The indicators and displays required by 7.11.1 to 7.11.3 are to be located and arranged such that they are viewable at a single operating position. Where manual paralleling is provided, it is to be possible to adjust voltage and frequency at this position.

7.11.5 Where the indications of voltage, frequency, current and power are displayed digitally, the indications are to be separately displayed.

## 7.12 Instrument scales

7.12.1 The upper limit of the scale of every voltmeter is to be approximately 120 per cent of the nominal voltage of the circuit, and the nominal voltage is to be clearly indicated.

7.12.2 The upper limit of the scale of every ammeter is to be approximately 130 per cent of the normal rating of the circuit in which it is installed. Normal full load is to be clearly indicated.

7.12.3 Kilowatt meters for use with alternating current generators which may be operated in parallel are to be capable of indicating 15 per cent reverse power.

7.12.4 Where the indications provided by the instrumentation required by 7.11 are displayed digitally, nominal voltage, over voltage, over current and reverse power indications are to be indicated by an appropriate means. The information provided is to be clearly visible and immediately available.

7.12.5 In general, indications provided by instrumentation which are displayed digitally are not to change more frequently than twice per second, or as agreed by the Naval Authority.

## 7.13 Labels

7.13.1 The identification of individual circuits and their devices is to be made on labels of durable material. The ratings of fuses and settings of protective devices are also to be indicated. Section and distribution boards are to be marked with the rated voltage.

## 7.14 Protection

7.14.1 *See* Section 6.

## 7.15 Wiring

7.15.1 Insulated wiring connecting components are to be stranded, flame retardant and manufactured in accordance with a relevant and acceptable National Standard.

## 7.16 Position of switchboards

7.16.1 An unobstructed space not less than 1 m wide is to be provided in front of switchboards and section boards. When switchboards and section boards contain withdrawable equipment the unobstructed space is to be not less than 0,4 m wide with this equipment in its fully withdrawn position.

7.16.2 Where necessary, the space at the rear of switchboards and section boards is to be ample to permit maintenance and in general not less than 0,6 m except that this may be reduced to 0,5 m in way of stiffeners or frames.

7.16.3 The spaces defined in 7.16.1 and 7.16.2 are to have non-slip surfaces. Where access to live parts within switchboards and section boards is normally possible the surface is, in addition, to be electrically insulated.

7.16.4 So far as is practicable, pipes are not to be installed directly above or in front of or behind switchboards, section boards and distribution boards. If such placing is unavoidable, suitable protection is to be provided in these positions. *See* Pt 7, Ch 2,2.8.

7.16.5 For switchgear and control gear assemblies, for rated voltages above 1 kV, arrangements are to be made to protect personnel in the event of gases or vapours escaping under pressure as the result of arcing due to an internal fault. Where personnel may be in the vicinity of the equipment when it is energised, this may be achieved by an assembly that has been tested in accordance with Annex A of IEC 62271-200 and qualified for classification **IAC** (internal arc classification).

## 7.17 Switchboard auxiliary power supplies

7.17.1 Tests in accordance with 7.18.2 to 7.18.4 are to be satisfactorily carried out on all assemblies, complete or in sections, at the manufacturer's premises, and a test report issued by the manufacturer, *see also* 1.3.2.

## 7.18 Testing

7.18.1 Tests in accordance with 7.18.2 to 7.18.4 are to be satisfactorily carried out on all assemblies, complete or in sections, at the manufacturer's premises, and a test report issued by the manufacturer, see also 1.4.2.

7.18.2 A high voltage test, see Section 21.

7.18.3 Calibration of protective devices and indicating instruments is to be verified by means of current and/or voltage injection.

7.18.4 Demonstration of the satisfactory operation of protection circuits, control circuits and interlocks by means of simulated functional tests.

7.18.5 For switchgear and control gear assemblies, for rated voltages above 1 kV, type tests are to be carried out, in accordance with Annex A of IEC 62271-200 and IAC (internal arc classification) assigned, to verify that the assembly will withstand the effects of an internal arc occurring within the enclosure at a prospective fault level equal to, or in excess of, that of the installation.

## 7.19 Disconnectors and switch-disconnectors

7.19.1 Disconnectors and switch-disconnectors are to comply with one of the following standards, amended as necessary for ambient temperature and other environmental conditions:

- (a) IEC 600947-3: *Low voltage switchgear and control gear Part 3: Switches, disconnectors and fuse combination units*.
  - (b) IEC 62271-102: *High-voltage switchgear and control gear – Pt 102: High-voltage alternating current disconnectors and earthing switches*;
  - (c) Acceptable and relevant National Standard.
- Type test reports to verify the characteristics of a disconnector or switch-disconnector are to be submitted for consideration when required.

## Section 8 Protection from electric arc hazards within electrical equipment

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 An assessment is to be carried out in accordance with 8.2.1 for all electrical equipment within which an arcing fault could occur, such as:

- harmonic filters;
- motor starter panels;
- semiconductor converters;
- switchboards, section boards and distribution boards;
- transformers.

## 8.2 Hazard identification and assessment

8.2.1 An assessment is to be carried out to identify the hazards and their consequences for personnel resulting from electric arcs within the electrical equipment identified in 8.1.1. The purpose of the assessment is to demonstrate that the design incorporates adequate measures to reduce the risk of injury to personnel should an arcing fault occur within the electrical equipment, and that this will help to ensure both personnel and ship safety.

Details of the following are to be submitted:

- (a) each task to be performed, e.g., switching, equipment maintenance, instrument observation or cleaning;
- (b) the hazards to personnel that could result from an electric arc occurring during each task, and the hazards to personnel that could result from the electric arc;
- (c) the methods to be used to help to prevent electric arcs;
- (d) the methods to be used to protect personnel from hazards resulting from electric arcs within electrical equipment.

## 8.3 Calculations to be submitted

8.3.1 The following calculations are to be conducted and used in the hazard identification and assessment:

- (a) Calculations of the maximum current that would flow through an electric arc between each conductor and its adjacent conductor, and between each conductor and the exposed conductive parts of the enclosure, in the case of an arcing fault;
- (b) The maximum incident energy at the intended working distance in the case of an arcing fault;
- (c) The distance from each conductor at which the incident energy would be 5 Joules per centimetre squared in the case of an arcing fault when the enclosure door is open.

These calculations may be made in accordance with IEEE Standard 1584, *IEEE Guide for Performing Arc-Flash Hazard Calculations*, or another relevant Standard acceptable to LR.

## 8.4 Testing and trials

8.4.1 It is to be demonstrated that, where provided, arrangements to detect arcing faults function correctly.

## Section 9 Rotating machines

### 9.1 General requirements

9.1.1 Rotating machines are to comply with the relevant part of IEC 60092, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard, and the requirements of this Section. In addition, military aspects for shock are to be defined as required by Pt 1, Ch 2,4.9.

9.1.2 For all the rotating machines, a manufacturer's test certificate is to be provided, see also 9.8.



9.1.3 For rotating machines of 100 kW and over intended for essential services, shaft materials are to comply with the *Rules for the Manufacture, Testing and Certification of Materials*.

9.1.4 Where welding is applied to shafts of machines for securing arms or spiders, stress relieving is to be carried out after welding. The finalised assembly is to be visually examined by the Surveyors, crack detection carried out by an appropriate method and the finished welds found sound and free from cracks.

9.1.5 The rotating parts of machines are to be so balanced that when running at any speed in the normal working range the vibration does not exceed the levels of IEC 60034 Rotating electrical machines Part 14.

9.1.6 The lubrication arrangement for bearings is to be effective under all operating conditions including the maximum ship inclinations defined by 1.11 and there are to be effective means provided to ensure that lubricant does not reach the machine windings or other conductors and insulators.

9.1.7 Means are to be taken to prevent the ill effects of the flow of currents circulating between the shaft and machine bearings or bearings of connected machinery.

9.1.8 Alternating current machines are to be constructed such that, under any operating conditions, they are capable of withstanding the effects of a sudden short-circuit at their terminals without damage.

9.1.9 Propulsion motors and generators that form part of electrical propulsion systems are to have at least one embedded temperature detector (ETD) in each phase of the machine winding in locations which may be subjected to the highest temperature. Where there are two coil sides per slot the ETD's are to be located between the insulated coil sides in the slot, see 16.1.3.

9.1.10 The adverse effect of voltage stresses on the winding insulation caused by the operation of switching devices is to be taken into account in the specification, design and installation of inverter fed induction motors.

9.1.11 A high bearing temperature alarm is to be provided where the following rotating machines are supplied with forced lubrication:

- generators of 100 kW and above; and
- electric propulsion motors.

9.1.12 A low lubricating oil pressure alarm is to be provided for generators and electric propulsion motors that are supplied with forced lubrication.

9.1.13 A high lubricating oil temperature alarm is to be provided for electric propulsion motors that are supplied with forced lubrication.

## 9.2 Rating

9.2.1 Generators, including their excitation systems, and continuously rated motors are to be suitable for continuous duty at their full rated output at maximum cooling air or water temperature for an unlimited period, without the limits of temperature rise in 9.3 being exceeded. Generators are to be capable of an overload power of not less than 10 per cent at their rated power factor for a period of 15 minutes without injurious heating. Other machines are to be rated in accordance with the duty which they have to perform and, when tested under rated load conditions, the temperature rise is not to exceed the values in 9.3.

9.2.2 When a rotating machine is connected to a supply system with harmonic distortion the rating of the machine is to allow for the increased heating effect of the harmonic loading.

9.2.3 The design and construction of smoke extraction fan motors are to be suitable for the ambient temperature and operating time required. Type test reports to verify the performance of the electric motor are to be submitted for consideration.

## 9.3 Temperature rise

9.3.1 The limits of temperature rise specified in Table 1.9.1 are based on the cooling air temperature and cooling water temperature given in 1.10.

9.3.2 If it is known that the temperature of cooling medium exceeds the values given in 1.10, the permissible temperature rise is to be reduced by an amount equal to the excess temperature of the cooling medium.

9.3.3 If it is known that the temperature of cooling medium will be permanently less than the values given in 1.10 the permissible temperature rise may be increased by an amount equal to the difference between the declared temperature and that given in 1.10 up to a maximum of 15°C.

## 9.4 Generator control

9.4.1 Each alternating current generator, unless of the self-regulating type, is to be provided with automatic means of voltage regulation; voltage build-up is not to require an external source of power. Provision is to be made to safeguard the distribution system should there be a failure of the voltage regulating system resulting in a high voltage.

9.4.2 The voltage regulation of any alternating current generator with its regulating equipment is to be such that at all loads, from zero to full load at rated power factor, the rated voltage is maintained within  $\pm 2.5$  per cent under steady conditions. There is to be provision at the voltage regulator to adjust the generator no load voltage.

**Table 1.9.1 Limits of temperature rise of machines cooled by air**

| Limits of temperature rise of machines cooled by air, °C                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                   |                                                                                                                                                                           |          |          |           |            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|----------|-----------|------------|
| Part of machine                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Method of temperature measurement | Insulation class                                                                                                                                                          |          |          |           |            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                   | A                                                                                                                                                                         | E        | B        | F         | H          |
| 1. (a) a.c. windings of machines having output of 5000 kVA or more                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | ETD<br>R                          | 55<br>50                                                                                                                                                                  | –<br>–   | 75<br>70 | 95<br>90  | 115<br>110 |
| (b) a.c. windings of machines having output of less than 5000 kVA                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | ETD<br>R                          | 55<br>50                                                                                                                                                                  | –<br>65  | 80<br>70 | 100<br>95 | 115<br>110 |
| 2. Windings of armatures having commutators                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | R<br>T                            | 50<br>40                                                                                                                                                                  | 65<br>55 | 70<br>60 | 95<br>75  | 115<br>95  |
| 3. Field windings of a.c. and d.c. machines having d.c. excitation other than those in item 4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | R<br>T                            | 50<br>40                                                                                                                                                                  | 65<br>55 | 70<br>60 | 95<br>75  | 115<br>95  |
| 4. (a) Field windings of synchronous machines with cylindrical rotors having d.c. excitation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | R                                 | –                                                                                                                                                                         | –        | 80       | 100       | 125        |
| (b) Stationary field windings of d.c. machines having more than one layer                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | R<br>T                            | 50<br>40                                                                                                                                                                  | 65<br>55 | 70<br>60 | 95<br>75  | 115<br>95  |
| (c) Low resistance field windings of a.c. and d.c. machine and compensating windings of d.c. machines having more than one layer                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | R, T                              | 50                                                                                                                                                                        | 65       | 70       | 90        | 115        |
| (d) Single-layer windings of a.c. and d.c. machines with exposed bare or varnished metal surfaces and single-layer compensating windings of d.c. machines                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | R, T                              | 55                                                                                                                                                                        | 70       | 80       | 100       | 125        |
| 5. Permanently short-circuited insulated windings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | T                                 | 50                                                                                                                                                                        | 65       | 70       | 90        | 115        |
| 6. Permanently short-circuited uninsulated windings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | T                                 | The temperature rise of these parts shall in no case reach such a value that there is a risk to any insulation or other materials on adjacent parts or to the item itself |          |          |           |            |
| 7. Magnetic cores and other parts not in contact with windings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                   |                                                                                                                                                                           |          |          |           |            |
| 8. Magnetic cores and other parts in contact with windings                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | T                                 | 50                                                                                                                                                                        | 65       | 70       | 90        | 110        |
| 9. Commutators and slip-rings open and enclosed                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | T                                 | 50                                                                                                                                                                        | 60       | 70       | 80        | 90         |
| <b>NOTES</b><br>1. Where water cooled heat exchangers are used in the machine cooling circuit, the temperature rises are to be measured with respect to the temperature of the cooling water at the inlet to the heat exchanger and the temperature rises given in Table 1.8.1 shall be increased by 10°C provided the inlet water temperature does not exceed the values given in 1.10.<br>2. T = thermometer method<br>R = resistance method<br>ETD = embedded temperature detector<br>3. Temperature rise measurements are to use the resistance method whenever practicable.<br>4. The ETD method may only be used when the ETDs are located between coil sides in the slot. |                                   |                                                                                                                                                                           |          |          |           |            |

**9.4.3** Generators and their excitation systems, when operating at rated speed and voltage on no-load, are to be capable of absorbing the suddenly switched, balanced, current demand of the largest motor or load at a power factor not greater than 0,4 with a transient voltage dip which does not exceed 15 per cent of rated voltage. The voltage is to recover to rated voltage within a time not exceeding 1,5 seconds. In the absence of precise data, the applied load is to be not less than 50 per cent of rated kVA at a power factor not greater than 0,4.

**9.4.4** The transient voltage rise at the terminals of a generator is not to exceed 20 per cent of rated voltage when rated kVA at a power factor not greater than 0,8 is thrown off. When a generator is supplying any load between 25 per cent and 100 per cent of rated load, and a load equal to 25 per cent rated load at a power factor of 0,8 is suddenly removed, the transient voltage rise at the terminals of the generator is not to exceed 7,5 per cent.

9.4.5 Generators and their voltage regulation systems are to be capable of maintaining, without damage, under steady state short-circuit conditions a current of at least three times the full load rated current for a duration of at least two seconds or where precise data is available for the duration of any time delay which may be provided by a tripping device for discrimination purposes. The generator terminal voltage is not to exceed 130 per cent of the rated voltage when the short circuit is removed.

9.4.6 Generators required to run in parallel are to be stable from no load (kW) up to the total combined full load (kW) of the group, and load sharing is to be such that the load on any generator does not normally differ from its proportionate share of the total load by more than 15 per cent of the rated output (kW) of the largest machine or 25 per cent of the rated output (kW) of the individual machine, whichever is less.

9.4.7 When generators are operated in parallel, the kVA loads of the individual generating sets are not to differ from the proportionate share of the total kVA load by more than five per cent of the rated kVA output of the largest machines.

9.4.8 For **ELS** notation, see 1.9.6.

## 9.5 Overloads

9.5.1 Machines are to withstand on test, without injury, the following momentary overloads:

- (a) **Generators.** An excess current of 50 per cent for 15 seconds after attaining the temperature rise corresponding to rated load, the terminal voltage being maintained as near the rated value as possible. The foregoing does not apply to the overload torque capacity of the prime mover.
- (b) **Motors.** At rated speed or, in the case of a range of speeds, at the highest and lowest speeds, under gradual increase of torque, the appropriate excess torque given below. Synchronous motors and synchronous induction motors are required to withstand the excess torque without falling out of synchronism and without adjustment of the excitation circuit preset at the value corresponding to rated load:
 

|                                             |                             |
|---------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| d.c. motors                                 | 50 per cent for 15 seconds; |
| polyphase a.c. synchronous motors           | 50 per cent for 15 seconds; |
| polyphase a.c. synchronous induction motors | 35 per cent for 15 seconds; |
| polyphase a.c. induction motors             | 60 per cent for 15 seconds. |
- (c) **Propulsion machines.** The overload tests for propulsion machines will be specially considered for each installation.

## 9.6 Machine enclosure

9.6.1 Where liquid-cooled heat exchangers are used in the machine cooling circuit there is to be provision to detect leakage of the liquid, and the system is to be arranged so as to prevent the entry of liquid into the machine.

## 9.7 Direct current machines

9.7.1 The final running position of brushgear is not to give rise to excessive sparking and is to be clearly and permanently marked.

## 9.8 Survey and testing

9.8.1 On machines for essential services, tests are to be carried out and a certificate furnished by the manufacturer. The tests are to include temperature rise, momentary overload, high voltage, and commutation. The insulation resistance and the temperature at which it was measured are to be recorded, see *also* 1.4.2.

9.8.2 In the case of duplicate machines, type tests of temperature rise, excess current and torque and commutation taken on a machine identical in rating and in all other essential details may be accepted in conjunction with abbreviated tests on each machine. Type tests for propulsion machines will be specially considered, see *also* Section 16. For the abbreviated tests, each machine is to be run and is to be found electrically and mechanically sound and is to have a high voltage test and insulation resistance recorded.

9.8.3 A high voltage test, in accordance with Section 21, is to be applied to new machines, preferably at the conclusion of the temperature rise test. Where both ends of each phase are brought out to accessible separate terminals, each phase is to be tested separately.

9.8.4 An impulse test is to be carried out on the coils of high voltage machines in order to demonstrate a satisfactory withstand level of the inter-turn insulation to voltage surges. The test is to be carried out on all coils after they have been inserted in the slots and after wedging and bracing. Each coil shall be subjected to at least five impulses of injected voltage, the peak value of the injected voltage being given by the formula:

$$V_{\text{peak}} = 2,45V$$

where

$$V = \text{rated line voltage r.m.s.}$$

Alternative proposals to demonstrate the withstand level of interturn insulation will be considered.

## Section 10 Converter equipment

### 10.1 Transformers

10.1.1 Paragraphs 10.1.2 to 10.1.13 apply to transformers rated for 5 kVA upwards.

10.1.2 Transformers are to comply with the requirements of IEC 60076 Power transformers, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard amended where necessary for ambient temperature, see 1.10.

10.1.3 Transformers may be of the dry type, encapsulated or liquid filled type.

10.1.4 The temperature rise of the winding of transformers above the ambient temperatures given in 1.10, when measured by resistance during continuous operation at the maximum rating, is not to exceed:

- (a) For dry type transformers, air cooled:
  - insulation of Class A – 50°C
  - insulation of Class E – 60°C
  - insulation of Class B – 70°C
  - insulation of Class F – 90°C
  - insulation of Class H – 110°C
- (b) For liquid filled transformers:
  - 50°C – where air provides cooling of the fluid
  - 65°C – where water provides cooling of the fluid.

10.1.5 When a transformer is connected to a supply system with harmonic distortion, the rating of the transformer is to allow for the increased heating effect of the harmonic loading. Special attention is to be given to transformers connected for the purpose of reducing harmonic distortion.

10.1.6 The inherent regulation of transformers at their rated output is to be such that the total percentage voltage drop to any point in the installation does not exceed that allowed by 1.8.2(a).

10.1.7 Transformers, except those for motor starting, are to be double wound.

10.1.8 Liquid fillings for transformers are to be non-toxic and of a type which does not readily support combustion. Liquid filled transformers are to have a pressure-relief device with an alarm and there is to be a suitable means provided to contain any liquid which may escape from the transformer due to the operation of the relief device or damage to the tank.

10.1.9 All transformers are to be capable of withstanding for two seconds, without damage, the thermal and mechanical effects of a short-circuit at the terminals of any winding.

10.1.10 When forced cooling is used, whether air or liquid, there is to be monitoring of the cooling medium and transformer winding temperatures with an alarm should these exceed preset limits. There are to be arrangements so that the load may be reduced to a level commensurate with the cooling available.

10.1.11 Transformers for propulsion power are to be provided with arrangements such that, in the event of excessive winding temperature, an alarm is initiated and:

- the load is reduced to a level commensurate with the cooling arrangements; or
- automatic shut-down of the transformer occurs.

10.1.12 Where liquid-cooled heat exchangers are used in transformer cooling circuits, there is to be provision to detect leakage of the liquid, and the system is to be arranged so as to prevent the entry of liquid into the transformer.

10.1.13 The following tests are to be carried out on all transformers at the manufacturer's works, and a certificate of tests issued by the manufacturer, see also 1.4.2 and 1.4.3:

- (a) measurement of winding resistances, voltage ratio, impedance voltage, short-circuit impedance, insulation resistance, load loss, no load loss and current;
- (b) dielectric tests; and
- (c) temperature rise test on one transformer of each size and type; and
- (d) where evidence of compliance with 10.1.9 is not submitted for consideration, short-circuit withstand on one transformer of each size and type.

### 10.2 Semiconductor equipment

10.2.1 The requirements of 10.2.2 to 10.2.17 apply to semiconductor equipment rated for 5 kW upwards.

10.2.2 Semiconductor equipment is to comply with the requirements of IEC 60146: *Semiconductor converters*, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard amended where necessary for ambient temperature, see 1.10.

10.2.3 Semiconductor static power converter equipment is to be rated for the required duty having regard to peak loads, system transients and overvoltage.

10.2.4 Converter equipment may be air or liquid cooled and is to be so arranged that it cannot remain loaded unless effective cooling is maintained. Alternatively, the load may be automatically reduced to a level commensurate with the cooling available.

10.2.5 Liquid cooled converter equipment is to be provided with leakage alarms and there is to be a suitable means provided to contain any liquid which may leak from the system in order to ensure that it does not cause an electrical failure of the equipment. Where the semiconductors and other current carrying parts are in direct contact with the cooling liquid, the liquid is to be monitored for satisfactory resistivity and an alarm initiated at the relevant control station should the resistivity be outside the agreed limits.

10.2.6 Where forced cooling is used there is to be temperature monitoring of the heated cooling medium with an alarm and shutdown when the temperature exceeds a preset value.

10.2.7 Cooling fluids are to be non-toxic and of low flammability.

10.2.8 Converter equipment is to be so arranged that the semiconductor devices, fuses, control and firing circuit boards may be readily removed from the equipment for repair or replacement.

10.2.9 Test and monitoring facilities are to be provided to permit identification of control circuit faults and faulty components.

10.2.10 Protection devices fitted for converter equipment protection are to ensure that, under fault conditions, the protective action of circuit breakers, fuses or control systems is such that there is no further damage to the converter or the installation.

10.2.11 Converter equipment, including any associated transformers, reactors, capacitors and filters, if provided, is to be so arranged that the harmonic distortion, and voltage spikes, introduced into the ship's electrical system are within the limits of 1.8.3 or restricted to a lower level necessary to ensure that it causes no malfunction of equipment connected to the electrical installation. Converter equipment cables may carry high frequency currents that can cause interference. These cables are to be kept as short as possible and installed as far away as possible from sensitive signal cables.

10.2.12 Overvoltage spikes or oscillations caused by commutation or other phenomena, are not to result in the supply voltage waveform deviating from a superimposed equivalent sine wave by more than 10 per cent of the maximum value of the equivalent sine wave.

10.2.13 When converter equipment is operated in parallel, load sharing is to be such that under normal operating conditions overloading of any unit does not occur and the combination of paralleled equipment is stable throughout the operating range.

10.2.14 When converter equipment has parallel circuits there is to be provision to ensure that the load is distributed uniformly between the parallel paths.

10.2.15 Transformers, reactors, capacitors and other circuit devices associated with converter equipment, or associated filters, are to be suitable for the distorted voltage and current waveforms to which they may be subjected and filter circuits are to be provided with facilities to ensure that their capacitors are discharged before the circuits are energised.

10.2.16 Any regenerated power developed during the operation of converter equipment is not to result in disturbances to the supply system voltage and frequency which exceeds the limits of 1.8.

10.2.17 Where control systems form an integral part of semiconductor equipment, they are to be designed and manufactured with regard to the environmental conditions to which they will be exposed in service and their performance is to be demonstrated during the test and trials programme.

10.2.18 Tests at the manufacturer's works of converter equipment and any associated reactors or filters are to include the high voltage test of 21.1, a temperature rise test on one of each size and type of converter equipment, and such other tests as may be necessary to demonstrate the suitability of the equipment for its intended duty. Details of tests are to be submitted for consideration when required, see also 1.4.2.

## 10.3 Uninterruptible power systems

10.3.1 Where uninterruptible power systems (UPS) are required to maintain essential services or provide emergency services, the requirements of this sub-Section apply. This sub-Section is in addition to the requirements of 10.1 to 10.2 and Section 12, as applicable.

10.3.2 UPS units are to be constructed in accordance with IEC 62040: *Uninterruptible power systems* (UPS), or an acceptable and relevant National or International Standard.

10.3.3 The operation of a UPS is not to depend upon external services.

10.3.4 The type of UPS unit employed, whether off-line, line-interactive or on-line, is to be appropriate to the power supply requirements of the connected load equipment.

10.3.5 An external bypass, that is hardwired and manually operated, is to be provided for UPS to allow isolation of UPS for safety during maintenance and maintain continuity of load power.

10.3.6 UPS units are to be monitored and an audible and visual alarm is to be initiated in the navigating bridge or the engine control room, or an equivalent attended location for:

- power supply failure (voltage and frequency) to the connected load;
- earth fault;
- operation of battery protective device;
- battery discharge; and
- bypass in operation for on-line UPS units.

10.3.7 UPS units required to provide emergency services are to be suitably located for use in an emergency.

10.3.8 UPS units utilising valve-regulated sealed batteries may be located in compartments with standard marine or industrial electrical equipment provided that the arrangements comply with 12.3.5. Ventilation arrangements in accordance with IEC 62040: *Uninterruptible power systems* (UPS), or an acceptable and relevant National or International Standard, may be considered to satisfy the requirements of 12.5.10.

10.3.9 Output power is to be maintained for the duration required for the connected equipment.

10.3.10 The UPS battery capacity is, at all times, to be capable of supplying the designated loads for the time specified. Where it is proposed that additional circuits are connected to the UPS unit, details verifying that the UPS unit has adequate capacity are to be submitted for consideration, see 1.5.

**10.3.11** On restoration of the input power, the rating of the charge unit is to be sufficient to recharge the batteries in a reasonable time while maintaining the output supply to the load equipment.

**10.3.12** Tests at the manufacturer's works are to include such tests necessary to demonstrate the suitability of a UPS unit for its intended duty and location. This is expected to include as a minimum the following tests:

- a temperature rise test and battery capacity test on one of each size and type of UPS;
- the high voltage test of 21.1;
- a ventilation rate test; and
- functional testing, including operation of alarms.

Details of tests are to be submitted for consideration when required, see *also* 1.4.2.

**10.3.13** Where the supply is to be maintained without a break following a power input failure, this is to be verified after installation by practical testing.

## Section 11 Electric cables and busbar trunking systems (busways)

### 11.1 General

**11.1.1** The requirements of 11.1 to 11.15 apply to all electric cables for fixed wiring unless otherwise exempted. The requirements of 11.17 apply to busbar trunking systems (busways) where they are used in place of electric cables.

**11.1.2** Electric cables for fixed wiring are to be designed, manufactured and tested in accordance with the relevant IEC Standard stated in Table 1.11.1 or a relevant standard acceptable to the Naval Authority. On application, LR may be able to assess the acceptability of cables in accordance with specified standards other than the relevant IEC Standards on behalf of the Naval Authority, see *also* 1.1.6.

**11.1.3** Surveys of cables for electric propulsion systems during manufacture and testing, see 1.4.3, are to assess compliance with the applicable International, National or Naval Standards and the application of an acceptable quality management system.

**11.1.4** Where increased flexibility is required due to confines of space, cables having Class 5 stranded conductors in accordance with IEC 60228: *Conductors of insulated cables* may be accepted provided 11.1.2 is otherwise complied with. Provided that the adequate flexibility of the finished cable is assured, conductors of nominal cross-sectional area 2,5 mm<sup>2</sup> and less need not be stranded.

**11.1.5** Electric cables for non-fixed wiring applications are to comply with an acceptable and relevant standard.

**11.1.6** For the purpose of this Section, pipes, conduits, trunking or any other system for the additional mechanical protection of cables are hereafter referred to under the generic name 'protective casings'.

**Table 1.11.1 Electric cables**

| Application                                                    | IEC Standard | Title                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| General constructional and testing requirements                | 60092–350    | Low-voltage shipboard power cables. General construction and test requirements                                            |
| Fixed power and control circuits                               | 60092–353    | Single and multicore non-radial field power cables with extruded solid insulation for rated voltages 1 kV and 3 kV        |
| Fixed power circuits                                           | 60092–354    | Single and three-core power cables with extruded solid insulation for rated voltages 6 kV, 10 kV and 15 kV                |
| Instrumentation, control and communication circuits up to 60 V | 60092–375    | Shipboard telecommunication cables and radio frequency cables – General instrumentation, control and communication cables |
| Control circuits up to 250 V                                   | 60092–376    | Shipboard multicore cables for control circuits                                                                           |
| Mineral insulated                                              | 600702       | Mineral insulated cables with a rated voltage not exceeding 750 V                                                         |

### 11.2 Testing

**11.2.1** Routine tests, consisting of at least:

- measurement of electrical resistance of conductors;
- high voltage test, see *also* Section 21;
- insulation resistance measurement;
- for high voltage cables, partial discharge tests are to be made in accordance with the requirements of IEC 60885-2, *Electrical test methods for electric cables. Part 2: Partial discharge tests*, or an acceptable National Standard, at the manufacturer's works prior to despatch.

Evidence of successful completion of routine tests is to be provided by the manufacturer, see *also* 1.4.3.

**11.2.2** Particular, special and type tests are to be made, when required, in accordance with the requirements of the relevant publication or National Standard referred to in 11.1.2, and a test report issued by the manufacturer.

### 11.3 Voltage rating

**11.3.1** The rated voltage of any electric cable is to be not lower than the nominal voltage of the circuit for which it is used. The maximum sustained voltage of the circuit is not to exceed the maximum voltage for which the cable has been designed.

**11.3.2** Electric cables used in unearthed systems are to be suitably rated to withstand the additional stresses imposed on the insulation due to an earth fault.

## 11.4 Operating temperature

**11.4.1** The maximum rated conductor temperature of the insulating material for normal operation is to be at least 10°C higher than the maximum ambient temperature liable to be produced in the space where the cable is installed.

**11.4.2** The maximum rated conductor temperatures for normal and short-circuit operation, for the insulating materials included within the standards referred to in 11.1.2 are not to exceed the values stated in Table 1.11.2.

**Table 1.11.2 Maximum rated conductor temperature**

| Type of insulating compound                                                                            | Maximum rated conductor temperature, °C |               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------|
|                                                                                                        | Normal operation                        | Short-circuit |
| <b>Thermoplastic based upon:</b><br>Vinyl acetate                                                      | 70                                      | 150           |
| <b>Elastomeric or thermosetting, based upon:</b><br>Ethylene-propylene rubber or similar (EPM or EPDM) | 90                                      | 250           |
| High modulus or hard grade ethylene propylene rubber                                                   | 90                                      | 250           |
| Cross-linked polyethylene                                                                              | 90                                      | 250           |
| Ethylene-propylene rubber or similar (EPM or EPDM) halogen-free                                        | 90                                      | 250           |
| High modulus or hard grade halogen-free ethylene propylene rubber                                      | 90                                      | 250           |
| Halogen-free cross-linked polyethylene                                                                 | 90                                      | 250           |
| Cross-linked polyolefin material for halogen-free cables                                               | 90                                      | 250           |
| Halogen-free silicone rubber                                                                           | 95                                      | 350           |

**11.4.3** Electric cables constructed of an insulating material not included in Table 1.11.2 are to be rated in accordance with the National Standard chosen in compliance with 11.1.2.

## 11.5 Construction

**11.5.1** Electric cables are to be at least of a flame-retardant, low smoke, halogen free type. Compliance with IEC 60332-1-2: *Tests on electric and optical fibre cables under fire conditions – Part 1-2: Test for vertical flame propagation for a single insulated wire or cable – Procedure for 1kW pre-mixed flame*, IEC 61034: *Measurements of smoke density of electric cables burning under defined conditions*, IEC 60754: *Tests on gases evolved during combustion of materials from cables* will be acceptable. Where cables are installed in bunches, the requirements of 11.8.10 are to be satisfied. Alternative proposals for equipment cabling that demonstrate satisfactory smoke and toxicity performance under fire conditions for identified areas of a ship may be submitted for consideration where requested by the Naval Authority.

**11.5.2** Exemption from the requirements of 11.5.1 for applications such as radio frequency or digital communication systems, which require the use of particular types of cable, will be subject to special consideration.

**11.5.3** Where electric cables are required to be of a 'fire resistant type', they are in addition to be easily distinguishable and comply with the performance requirements of the appropriate part of IEC 60331: *Tests for electric cables under fire conditions – Circuit integrity*, when tested with a minimum flame application time of 90 minutes, as follows:

IEC 60331-1: *Tests for electric cables under fire conditions – Circuit integrity – Part 1: Test method for fire with shock at a temperature of at least 830°C for cables of rated voltage up to and including 0,6/1,0 kV and with an overall diameter exceeding 20 mm*;  
IEC 60331-21: *Procedures and requirements – Cables of rated voltage up to and including 0,6/1,0 kV*;  
IEC 60331-23: *Procedures and requirements – Electric data cables*;  
IEC 60331-25: *Procedures and requirements – Optical fibre cables*.

**11.5.4** Where electric cables are installed in locations exposed to the weather, in damp and in wet situations, in machinery compartments, refrigerated spaces or exposed to harmful vapours including oil vapour they are to have the conductor insulating materials enclosed in an impervious sheath of material appropriate to the expected ambient conditions. Where cables are required to remain operational when immersed in water, oil or other substances for prolonged periods, the cable sheathing is to be demonstrably suitable for this environment. Evidence of immersion testing is to be submitted for consideration on request.

**11.5.5** Where it is required that the construction of electrical cables includes metallic sheaths, armouring or braids they are to be provided with an overall impervious sheath or other means to protect the metallic elements against corrosion, see also 11.8.7 and 11.8.8.

**11.5.6** Where cables are installed in an area where contamination by oil is likely to occur, the oversheath is to be of an enhanced oil resistance grade.

**11.5.7** Where single core electric cables are used in circuits rated in excess of 20 Amps and are armoured the armour is to be of a non-magnetic material.

**11.5.8** Electric cables are to be constructed such that they are capable of withstanding the mechanical and thermal effects of the maximum short-circuit current which can flow in any part of the circuit in which they are installed, taking into consideration not only the time/current characteristics of the circuit protective device but also the peak value of the prospective short-circuit current. Where electric cables are to be used in circuits with a maximum short-circuit current in excess of 70 kA, evidence is to be submitted for consideration when required demonstrating that the cable construction can withstand the effects of the short-circuit current.

**11.5.9** All high voltage electric cables are to be readily identified by suitable marking.

## 11.6 Conductor size

11.6.1 The maximum continuous load carried by a cable is not to exceed its continuous current rating. It is to be chosen such that the maximum rated conductor temperature for normal operation for the insulation is not exceeded. In assessing the current rating the correction factors in 11.7 may be applied as required.

11.6.2 The cross-sectional area of the conductors is to be sufficient to ensure that, under short-circuit conditions, the maximum rated conductor temperature for short-circuit operation is not exceeded, taking into consideration the time current characteristics of the circuit protective device and the peak value of the prospective short-circuit current.

11.6.3 The cable current ratings given in Tables 1.11.3 and 1.11.4 are based on the maximum rated conductor temperatures given in Table 1.11.2. When cable sizes are selected on the basis of precise evaluation of current rating based upon experimental and calculated data, details are to be submitted for consideration. Alternative short-circuit temperature limits, other than those given in Table 1.11.4, may be applied using the data provided in:

- IEC 60724: *Short-circuit temperature limits of electric cables with rated voltages of 1kV ( $U_m=1,2kV$ ) and 3kV ( $U_m=3,6kV$ ); or*
- IEC 60986: *Short-circuit temperature limits of electric cables with rated voltages from 6kV ( $U_m=7,2kV$ ) and up to 30kV ( $U_m=36kV$ ).*

Alternative short-circuit temperature limits provided in an acceptable and relevant National Standard may also be considered.

**Table 1.11.3 Electric cable current ratings, normal operation, based on ambient 45°C**

| Nominal cross-section (mm <sup>2</sup> ) | Continuous r.m.s. current rating, in amperes |        |             |                    |        |             |                                                               |        |             |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------|-------------|--------------------|--------|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|--------|-------------|
|                                          | Thermoplastic (70°C)                         |        |             | Elastomeric (90°C) |        |             | Elastomeric or thermosetting, based on silicone rubber (95°C) |        |             |
|                                          | Single core                                  | 2 core | 3 or 4 core | Single core        | 2 core | 3 or 4 core | Single core                                                   | 2 core | 3 or 4 core |
| 0,75                                     | 10                                           | 8      | 7           | 15                 | 13     | 11          | 17                                                            | 14     | 12          |
| 1                                        | 12                                           | 10     | 8           | 18                 | 15     | 13          | 20                                                            | 17     | 14          |
| 1,25                                     | 13                                           | 11     | 9           | 21                 | 18     | 14          | 23                                                            | 20     | 16          |
| 1,5                                      | 15                                           | 13     | 11          | 23                 | 20     | 16          | 26                                                            | 22     | 18          |
| 2                                        | 18                                           | 15     | 12          | 28                 | 24     | 19          | 31                                                            | 26     | 22          |
| 2,5                                      | 21                                           | 18     | 15          | 40                 | 26     | 21          | 32                                                            | 27     | 22          |
| 3,5                                      | 26                                           | 22     | 18          | 37                 | 32     | 26          | 39                                                            | 33     | 28          |
| 4                                        | 29                                           | 25     | 20          | 51                 | 34     | 28          | 43                                                            | 37     | 30          |
| 5,5                                      | 35                                           | 30     | 24          | 49                 | 42     | 35          | 52                                                            | 44     | 37          |
| 6                                        | 37                                           | 31     | 26          | 52                 | 44     | 36          | 55                                                            | 47     | 39          |
| 8                                        | 44                                           | 37     | 31          | 62                 | 53     | 44          | 66                                                            | 56     | 46          |
| 10                                       | 51                                           | 43     | 36          | 72                 | 61     | 50          | 76                                                            | 65     | 53          |
| 14                                       | 62                                           | 53     | 44          | 88                 | 75     | 62          | 94                                                            | 80     | 66          |
| 16                                       | 68                                           | 58     | 48          | 96                 | 82     | 67          | 102                                                           | 87     | 71          |
| 22                                       | 83                                           | 70     | 58          | 117                | 100    | 82          | 124                                                           | 106    | 87          |
| 25                                       | 90                                           | 77     | 63          | 127                | 108    | 89          | 135                                                           | 115    | 95          |
| 30                                       | 101                                          | 85     | 70          | 142                | 121    | 100         | 151                                                           | 128    | 106         |
| 35                                       | 111                                          | 94     | 78          | 157                | 133    | 110         | 166                                                           | 141    | 116         |
| 38                                       | 117                                          | 99     | 82          | 165                | 140    | 116         | 175                                                           | 149    | 122         |
| 50                                       | 138                                          | 117    | 97          | 196                | 167    | 137         | 208                                                           | 177    | 146         |
| 60                                       | 155                                          | 132    | 109         | 220                | 187    | 154         | 233                                                           | 198    | 163         |
| 70                                       | 171                                          | 145    | 120         | 242                | 206    | 169         | 256                                                           | 218    | 179         |
| 80                                       | 186                                          | 158    | 130         | 263                | 224    | 184         | 278                                                           | 237    | 195         |
| 95                                       | 207                                          | 176    | 145         | 293                | 249    | 205         | 310                                                           | 264    | 217         |
| 100                                      | 213                                          | 181    | 149         | 302                | 257    | 212         | 320                                                           | 272    | 224         |
| 120                                      | 239                                          | 203    | 167         | 339                | 288    | 237         | 359                                                           | 305    | 251         |
| 125                                      | 245                                          | 209    | 172         | 348                | 295    | 243         | 368                                                           | 313    | 258         |
| 150                                      | 275                                          | 234    | 193         | 389                | 331    | 272         | 412                                                           | 350    | 288         |
| 185                                      | 313                                          | 266    | 219         | 444                | 377    | 311         | 470                                                           | 400    | 329         |
| 200                                      | 329                                          | 280    | 230         | 466                | 396    | 326         | 494                                                           | 420    | 346         |
| 240                                      | 369                                          | 314    | 258         | 522                | 444    | 365         | 553                                                           | 470    | 387         |
| 300                                      | 424                                          | 360    | 297         | 601                | 511    | 421         | 636                                                           | 541    | 445         |



**Table 1.11.4 Electric cable current ratings, r.m.s. short-circuit current**

| Nominal cross-section (mm <sup>2</sup> ) | Fault current (kA) at 150°C |               |               | Fault current (kA) at 250°C |               |               | Fault current (kA) at 350°C |               |               |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------------------|---------------|---------------|
|                                          | 1s duration                 | 0,5s duration | 0,1s duration | 1s duration                 | 0,5s duration | 0,1s duration | 1s duration                 | 0,5s duration | 0,1s duration |
| 0,75                                     | 0,1                         | 0,1           | 0,3           | 0,1                         | 0,2           | 0,3           | 0,1                         | 0,2           | 0,4           |
| 1                                        | 0,1                         | 0,2           | 0,3           | 0,1                         | 0,2           | 0,5           | 0,2                         | 0,2           | 0,5           |
| 1,25                                     | 0,1                         | 0,2           | 0,4           | 0,2                         | 0,3           | 0,6           | 0,2                         | 0,3           | 0,7           |
| 1,5                                      | 0,2                         | 0,2           | 0,5           | 0,2                         | 0,3           | 0,7           | 0,3                         | 0,4           | 0,8           |
| 2                                        | 0,2                         | 0,3           | 0,7           | 0,3                         | 0,4           | 0,9           | 0,3                         | 0,5           | 1,1           |
| 2,5                                      | 0,3                         | 0,4           | 0,9           | 0,4                         | 0,5           | 1,1           | 0,4                         | 0,6           | 1,4           |
| 3,5                                      | 0,4                         | 0,5           | 1,2           | 0,5                         | 0,7           | 1,6           | 0,6                         | 0,8           | 1,9           |
| 4                                        | 0,4                         | 0,6           | 1,4           | 0,6                         | 0,8           | 1,8           | 0,7                         | 1,0           | 2,2           |
| 5,5                                      | 0,6                         | 0,8           | 1,9           | 0,8                         | 1,1           | 2,5           | 0,9                         | 1,3           | 3,0           |
| 6                                        | 0,7                         | 0,9           | 2,1           | 0,9                         | 1,2           | 2,7           | 1,0                         | 1,5           | 3,2           |
| 8                                        | 0,9                         | 1,2           | 2,8           | 1,1                         | 1,6           | 3,6           | 1,4                         | 1,9           | 4,3           |
| 10                                       | 1,1                         | 1,5           | 3,5           | 1,4                         | 2,0           | 4,5           | 1,7                         | 2,4           | 5,4           |
| 14                                       | 1,5                         | 2,2           | 4,8           | 2,0                         | 2,8           | 6,3           | 2,4                         | 3,4           | 7,6           |
| 16                                       | 1,7                         | 2,5           | 5,5           | 2,3                         | 3,2           | 7,2           | 2,7                         | 3,9           | 8,7           |
| 22                                       | 2,4                         | 3,4           | 7,6           | 3,1                         | 4,5           | 10,0          | 3,8                         | 5,3           | 11,9          |
| 25                                       | 2,7                         | 3,9           | 8,6           | 3,6                         | 5,1           | 11,3          | 4,3                         | 6,0           | 13,5          |
| 30                                       | 3,3                         | 4,6           | 10,4          | 4,3                         | 6,1           | 13,6          | 5,1                         | 7,3           | 16,2          |
| 35                                       | 3,8                         | 5,4           | 12,1          | 5,0                         | 7,1           | 15,8          | 6,0                         | 8,5           | 18,9          |
| 38                                       | 4,1                         | 5,9           | 13,1          | 5,4                         | 7,7           | 17,2          | 6,5                         | 9,2           | 20,6          |
| 50                                       | 5,5                         | 7,7           | 17,3          | 7,2                         | 10,1          | 22,6          | 8,6                         | 12,1          | 27,1          |
| 60                                       | 6,5                         | 9,3           | 20,7          | 8,6                         | 12,1          | 27,1          | 10,3                        | 14,5          | 32,5          |
| 70                                       | 7,6                         | 10,8          | 24,2          | 10,0                        | 14,2          | 31,7          | 12,0                        | 16,9          | 37,9          |
| 80                                       | 8,7                         | 12,3          | 37,6          | 11,4                        | 16,2          | 36,2          | 13,7                        | 19,4          | 43,3          |
| 95                                       | 10,4                        | 14,7          | 32,8          | 13,6                        | 19,2          | 43,0          | 16,3                        | 23,0          | 51,4          |
| 100                                      | 10,9                        | 15,4          | 34,5          | 14,3                        | 20,2          | 45,2          | 17,1                        | 24,2          | 54,1          |
| 120                                      | 13,1                        | 18,5          | 41,4          | 17,2                        | 24,3          | 54,3          | 20,5                        | 29,0          | 64,9          |
| 125                                      | 13,6                        | 19,3          | 43,1          | 17,9                        | 25,3          | 56,6          | 21,4                        | 30,2          | 67,6          |
| 150                                      | 16,4                        | 23,2          | 51,8          | 21,5                        | 30,4          | 67,9          | 25,7                        | 36,3          | 81,2          |
| 185                                      | 20,2                        | 28,6          | 63,9          | 26,5                        | 37,4          | 83,7          | 31,7                        | 44,8          | 100,1         |
| 200                                      | 21,8                        | 30,9          | 69,0          | 28,6                        | 40,5          | 90,5          | 34,2                        | 48,4          | 108,2         |
| 240                                      | 26,2                        | 37,0          | 82,8          | 34,3                        | 48,6          | 108,6         | 41,1                        | 58,1          | 129,9         |
| 300                                      | 32,7                        | 46,3          | 103,6         | 42,9                        | 60,7          | 135,7         | 51,3                        | 72,6          | 162,3         |

11.6.4 The cross-sectional area of the conductors is to be sufficient to ensure that at no point in the installation will the voltage variations stated in 1.8 be exceeded when the conductors are carrying the maximum current under their normal conditions of service.

11.6.5 The size of earth conductors is to comply with 1.13.7.

11.6.6 The cross-sectional area of conductors used in circuits supplying cyclic or non-continuous loads is to be sufficient to ensure that the cables maximum rated conductor temperature for normal operation is not exceeded when the conductors are operating under their normal conditions of service, see 11.7.4.

## 11.7 Correction factors for cable current rating

11.7.1 The correction factors of 11.7.2 to 11.7.5 provide a guide for general applications in assessing a current rating. A more precise evaluation based upon experimental and calculated data may be submitted for consideration.

11.7.2 **Bunching of cables.** Where more than six electric cables, which may be expected to operate simultaneously at their full rated capacity, are laid close together in a cable bunch in such a way that there is an absence of free air circulation around them, a correction factor of 0,85 is to be applied. Signal cables may be exempted from this requirement.

11.7.3 **Ambient temperature.** The current ratings of Table 1.11.3 are based on an ambient temperature of 45°C. For other values of ambient temperature the correction factors shown in Table 1.11.5 are to be applied.

**Table 1.11.5 Correction factors**

| Insulation material                                           | Correction factor for ambient air temperature of °C |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
|                                                               | 35                                                  | 40   | 45   | 50   | 55   | 60   | 65   | 70   | 75   | 80   | 85   |
| Thermoplastic (70°C)                                          | 1,18                                                | 1,10 | 1,00 | 0,89 | 0,77 | 0,63 | –    | –    | –    | –    | –    |
| Elastomeric or thermosetting (90°C)                           | 1,10                                                | 1,05 | 1,00 | 0,94 | 0,88 | 0,82 | 0,74 | 0,67 | 0,58 | 0,47 | –    |
| Elastomeric or thermosetting, based on silicone rubber (95°C) | 1,10                                                | 1,05 | 1,00 | 0,95 | 0,89 | 0,84 | 0,77 | 0,71 | 0,63 | 0,55 | 0,45 |

**11.7.4 Short time duty.** When the load is not continuous i.e. operates for periods of half an hour or one hour and the periods of no load are longer than three times the cable's time constant,  $T$ , in minutes, the cable's continuous rating may be increased by a duty factor, calculated in accordance with:

$$\text{Duty factor} = \sqrt{\frac{1,12}{1 - e^{-\frac{t_s}{T}}}}$$

When the load is not continuous, is repetitive and has periods of no-load less than three times the cable's time constant, so that the cable has insufficient time to cool down between the applications of load, the cable's continuous rating may be increased by an intermittent factor, calculated in accordance with:

$$\text{Intermittent factor} = \sqrt{\frac{1 - e^{-\frac{t_p}{T}}}{1 - e^{-\frac{t_s}{T}}}}$$

where

- $t_p$  = the intermittent period, in minutes, i.e. the total period of load and no-load before the cycle is repeated
- $T$  =  $0,245d^{1,35}$  where  $d$  is the overall diameter of the cable, in mm
- $t_s$  = the service time of the load current in minutes.

**11.7.5 Diversity.** Where cables are used to supply two or more final sub-circuits, account may be taken of any diversity factors which may apply, see 5.6.

## 11.8 Installation of electric cables

**11.8.1** Electric cable runs are to be as far as practicable fixed in straight lines and in accessible positions.

**11.8.2** Bends in fixed electric cable runs are to be in accordance with the cable manufacturer's recommendations. The minimum internal radius of bend for the installation of fixed electric cables is to be chosen according to the construction and size of the cable and is not to be less than the values given in Table 1.11.6.

**11.8.3** The installation of electric cables across expansion joints in any structure is to be avoided. Where this is not practicable, a loop of electric cable of length sufficient to accommodate the expansion of the joint is to be provided. The internal radius of the loop is to be at least 12 times the external diameter of the cable.

**11.8.4** Electric cables for essential and emergency services are to be arranged, so far as is practicable, to avoid galleys, machinery spaces and other enclosed spaces and areas of high fire risk except as is necessary for the service being supplied. Such cables are also, so far as reasonably practicable, to be routed clear of bulkheads to preclude their being rendered unserviceable by heating of the bulkheads that may be caused by a fire in an adjacent space.

**Table 1.11.6 Minimum internal radii of bends in cables for fixed wiring**

| Cable construction                                                                |                                        | Overall diameter of cable | Minimum internal radius of bend<br>(times overall diameter of cable) |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Insulation                                                                        | Outer covering                         |                           |                                                                      |
| Thermoplastic and elastomeric<br>600/1000 V and below                             | Metal sheathed<br>Armoured and braided | Any                       | 6D                                                                   |
|                                                                                   | Other finishes                         | ≤ 25 mm<br>> 25 mm        | 4D<br>6D                                                             |
| Mineral                                                                           | Hard metal sheathed                    | Any                       | 6D                                                                   |
| Thermoplastic and elastomeric<br>above 600/1000 V<br>– single core<br>– multicore | Any                                    | Any                       | 12D                                                                  |
|                                                                                   | Any                                    | Any                       | 9D                                                                   |

**11.8.5** Electric cables having insulating materials with different maximum rated conductor temperatures are to be so installed that the maximum rated conductor temperature for normal operation of each cable is not exceeded.

**11.8.6** Electric cables having a protective covering which may damage the covering of other cables are not to be bunched with those other cables.

**11.8.7** Cables having an exposed metallic screen, braid or armour are to be installed in such a manner that galvanic corrosion by contact with other metals is prevented. Sufficient measures are also to be taken to prevent damage to exposed galvanised coatings during installation.

**11.8.8** Protection is to be provided for cable oversheaths in areas where cables are likely to be exposed to damaging substances under normal circumstances or areas where the spillage or release of harmful substances is likely.

**11.8.9** Electric cables are to be, as far as practicable installed remote from sources of heat. Where installation of cables near sources of heat cannot be avoided and where there is consequently a risk of damage to the cables by heat, suitable shields, insulation or other precautions are to be installed between the cables and the heat source. The free air circulation around the cables is not to be impaired.

**11.8.10** Where electric cables are installed in bunches, provision is to be made to limit the propagation of fire. This requirement is considered satisfied when cables of the bunch have been tested in accordance with the requirements of IEC 60332: *Tests on electric cables under fire conditions, Part 3-22, Test for vertical flame spread of vertically-mounted bunched wires or cables – Category A*, provided that, in addition, there is no shedding of flaming droplets of sheath or insulation material and that they are installed to the same configuration(s) as used in the test(s). If the cables are not so installed, information is to be submitted to satisfactorily demonstrate that suitable measures are taken to ensure that an equivalent limit of fire propagation will be achieved for the configuration(s) used. Particular attention is to be given to cables in vertical runs in trunks and other restricted spaces. In addition, cables which comply with the requirements of IEC 60332-3-22 are also required to meet the requirements of IEC 60332-1-2.

**11.8.11** Electric cables are not to be coated or painted with materials which may adversely affect their sheath or their fire performance.

**11.8.12** Where electric cables are installed in refrigerated spaces, they are not to be covered with thermal insulation but may be placed directly on the face of the refrigeration chamber, provided that precautions are taken to prevent the electric cables being used as casual means of suspension.

**11.8.13** All metal coverings of electric cables are to be earthed in accordance with 1.12.

**11.8.14** High voltage cables may be installed as follows:

- (a) in the open, e.g. on carrier plating, when they are to be provided with a continuous metallic sheath or armour which is effectively bonded to earth to reduce danger to personnel. The metallic sheath or armour may be omitted provided that the cable sheathing material has a longitudinal electric resistance high enough to prevent sheath currents which may be hazardous to personnel;
- (b) contained in earthed metallic protective casings when the cables may be as in (a) or the armour or metal sheath may be omitted. In the latter case care is to be taken to ensure that protective casings are electrically continuous and that short lengths of cable are not left unprotected.

**11.8.15** High voltage electric cables are not to be run in the open through accommodation spaces.

**11.8.16** High voltage electric cables are to be segregated as far as is practicable from electric cables operating at lower voltages.

**11.8.17** Electric cables are to be, so far as reasonably practicable, installed remote from sources of mechanical damage. Where necessary, the cables are to be protected in accordance with the requirements of 11.9.

**11.8.18** Electric cables with the exception of those for portable appliances and those installed in protective casings are to be fixed securely in accordance with the requirements of 11.10.

**11.8.19** Where electric cables penetrate bulkheads and decks, the requirements of 11.11 are to be complied with.

**11.8.20** Where electric cables are installed in protective casings, the requirements of 11.12 are to be complied with.

**11.8.21** a.c. wiring is to be carried out using multicore cables wherever reasonably practicable. Where it is necessary to install single core electric cables for alternating current circuits in excess of 20 Amps the requirements of 11.14 are to be complied with. *See also* 11.5.7.

## 11.9 Mechanical protection of cables

**11.9.1** Electric cables exposed to risk of mechanical damage are to be protected by suitable protective casings unless the protective covering (e.g. armour or sheath) is sufficient to withstand the possible cause of damage.

**11.9.2** Electric cables installed in spaces where there is exceptional risk of mechanical damage such as hangers, storage spaces, etc., are to be suitably protected by metallic protective casings, even when armoured, unless the ship's structure affords adequate protection.

**11.9.3** Metal protective casings are to be efficiently protected against corrosion, and effectively earthed in accordance with 1.12.

**11.10 Cable support systems**

**11.10.1** Electric cables are to be effectively supported and secured, without being damaged, to the ships' structure, either indirectly by a cable support system, or directly by means of clips, saddles or straps to bulkheads, etc., see 11.8.4.

**11.10.2** Cable support systems, which may be in the form of trays or plates, separate support brackets, hangers or ladder racks, together with their fixings and accessories, are to be robust and are to be of corrosion-resistant material or suitably corrosion inhibited before erection. The cable support system is to be effectively secured to the ships' structure, the spacing of the fixings taking account of the probability of vibration and any heavy external forces, e.g. where located in areas subject to impact by sea-water. In addition, where applicable, military aspects for shock are to be defined as required by Pt 1, Ch 2,4.8.

**11.10.3** The distances between the points at which the cable is supported (e.g. distances between ladder rungs, support brackets, hangers, etc.) are to be chosen according to the construction of cable (i.e. size and rigidity) and the probability of vibration and are to be generally in accordance with those given in Table 1.11.7.

**Table 1.11.7 Maximum spacing of supports or fixings for securing cables**

| External diameter of cable |               | Non-armoured cables | Armoured cables |
|----------------------------|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| exceeding                  | not exceeding |                     |                 |
| mm                         | mm            | mm                  | mm              |
| –                          | 8             | 200                 | 250             |
| 8                          | 13            | 250                 | 300             |
| 13                         | 20            | 300                 | 350             |
| 20                         | 30            | 350                 | 400             |
| 30                         | –             | 400                 | 450             |

**11.10.4** Where the cables are laid on top of their support system, the spacing of the clips, straps, etc. securing the cables may be increased beyond the spacing given in Table 1.11.7, but should take account of movement and vibration and in general is not to exceed 900 mm. This relaxation is not to be applied where cables can be subjected to heavy external forces, e.g. where they are run on, or above, open deck or in areas subject to sea-water impingement.

**11.10.5** Single core electric cables are to be firmly fixed, using supports of strength adequate to withstand forces corresponding to the values of the peak prospective short-circuit current.

**11.11 Penetration of bulkheads and decks by cables**

**11.11.1** Where electric cables pass through watertight, fire insulated or gas tight bulkheads or decks separating hazardous zones or spaces from non-hazardous zones or spaces, the arrangements are to be such as to ensure the integrity of the bulkhead or deck is not impaired. The arrangements chosen are to ensure that the cables are not adversely affected.

**11.11.2** Where cables pass through non-watertight bulkheads or structural steel, the holes are to be bushed with suitable material. If the steel is at least 6 mm thick, adequately rounded edges may be accepted as the equivalent of bushing.

**11.11.3** Electric cables passing through decks are to be protected by deck tubes or ducts.

**11.11.4** Where cables pass through thermal insulation they are to do so at right angles, in tubes sealed at both ends.

**11.12 Installation of electric cables in protective casings**

**11.12.1** Protective casings are to be mechanically continuous across joints and effectively supported and secured to prevent damage to the electric cables.

**11.12.2** Protective casings are to be suitably smooth on the interior and have their ends shaped or bushed in such a manner as not to damage the cables.

**11.12.3** The internal radius of bends of protective casings are to be not less than that required for the largest cable installed therein, see 11.8.2.

**11.12.4** The space factor (ratio of the sum of the cross-sectional areas corresponding to the external diameters of the cables to the internal cross-sectional area of the protective casings) is not to exceed 0,4.

**11.12.5** Where necessary, ventilation openings are to be provided at the highest and lowest points of protective casings to permit air circulation and to prevent accumulation of water.

**11.12.6** Expansion joints are to be provided in protective casings where necessary.

**11.12.7** Protective casings containing high voltage electric cables are not to contain other electric cables and are to be clearly identified, defining their function and voltage.

**11.13 Non-metallic cable support systems, protective casings and fixings**

**11.13.1** Where it is proposed to use non-metallic cable support systems, protective casings or fixings, the additional requirements of this sub-Section apply. Non-metallic protective cases are not permitted where 11.8.14(b) applies.

11.13.2 Non-metallic cable support systems and protective casings are to be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations. The support systems and protective casings are to have been tested in accordance with an acceptable test procedure for:

- (a) ambient operating temperatures;
  - (b) safe working load;
  - (c) impact resistance;
  - (d) flame retardancy;
  - (e) smoke and toxicity; and
  - (f) use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts, electrical conductivity;
- with satisfactory results.

11.13.3 Non-metallic cable support systems, protective casings and fixings installed on the open deck are to be protected from degradation caused by exposure to solar radiation.

11.13.4 Where the cable support system, protective casing or fixings are manufactured from a material other than metal, suitable supplementary metallic fixings or straps spaced at regular distances are to be provided such that, in the event of a fire or failure, the cable support system, protective casing and the affixed cables are prevented from falling and causing an injury to personnel and/or an obstruction to any escape route. Alternatively, the cables may be routed away from such areas.

11.13.5 The load on non-metallic cable support systems or protective casings is not to exceed the tested safe working load.

11.13.6 When a cable support system or protective casing is secured by means of clips or straps manufactured from a material other than metal, the fixings are to be supplemented by suitable metal clips or straps spaced at regular distances each not exceeding 2 m and, for non-metallic cable support systems or protective casings, that used during safe working load testing.

11.13.7 Non-metallic fixings are to be flame retardant in accordance with the requirements of IEC 60092-101, or an alternative, relevant National or International Standard.

## 11.14 Single core electric cables for alternating current

11.14.1 When installed in protective casings, electric cables belonging to the same circuit are to be installed in the same casing, unless the casing is of non-magnetic material.

11.14.2 Cable clips are to include electric cables of all phases of a circuit unless the clips are of non-magnetic material.

11.14.3 Single-core cables of the same circuit are to be in contact with one another, as far as possible. In any event the distance between adjacent electric cables is not to be greater than one cable diameter.

11.14.4 If single-core cables of current rating greater than 250 A are installed near a steel bulkhead, the clearance between the cables and the bulkhead is to be at least 50 mm unless the cables belonging to the same a.c. circuit are installed in trefoil formation.

11.14.5 Magnetic material is not to be used between single core cables of a group. Where cables pass through steel plates, all the conductors of the same circuit are to pass through a plate or gland, so made that there is no magnetic material between the cables, and the clearance between the cables and the magnetic material is not to be less than 75 mm, unless the cables belonging to the same a.c. circuit are installed in trefoil formation.

11.14.6 Electric cables are to be installed such that the induced voltages, and any circulating currents, in the sheath or armour are limited to safe values.

## 11.15 Electric cable ends

11.15.1 Where screw-clamp or spring-clamp type terminations are used in electrical apparatus for external cable connections (see 1.12.7), cable conductors of the solid or stranded type may be inserted directly into the terminals. Where flexible conductors are used, a suitable termination is to be fitted to the cable conductor to prevent 'whiskering' of the strands.

11.15.2 If compression type conductor terminations are used on the cable ends, they are to be of a size to match the conductor and to be made with a compression type tool with the dies selected to suit the termination and conductor sizes and having a ratchet action to ensure completion of the compression action.

11.15.3 Soldered sockets may be used in conjunction with non corrosive fluxes provided that the maximum conductor temperature at the joint, under short-circuit conditions, does not exceed 160°C.

11.15.4 High voltage cables of the radial field type, i.e. having a conducting layer to control the electric field within the insulation, are to have terminations which provide electrical stress control.

11.15.5 Electric cables having hygroscopic insulation (e.g. mineral insulated) are to have their ends sealed against ingress of moisture.

11.15.6 Cable terminations are to be of such a design and dimensions that the maximum current likely to flow through them will not result in degradation of the contacts or damage to insulation as the result of overheating or corrosion.

11.15.7 The fixing of conductors in terminals at joints and at tapings is to be capable of withstanding the thermal and mechanical effects of short-circuit currents.

11.15.8 Cable terminations are to be suitable for the operating voltages and currents and may be of the screw-clamp or spring-clamp type or plug and socket connectors.

## 11.16 Joints and branch circuits in cable systems

**11.16.1** If a joint is necessary it is to be carried out so that all conductors are adequately secured, insulated and protected from atmospheric action. The flame retardant properties or fire resisting properties of the cable are to be retained, the continuity of metallic sheath, braid or armour is to be maintained and the current carrying capacity of the cable is not to be impaired.

**11.16.2** Tappings (branch circuits) are to be made in suitable boxes of such a design that the conductors remain suitably insulated, protected from atmospheric action and fitted with terminals or busbars of dimensions appropriate to the current rating.

**11.16.3** Cables of a fire resistant type (see 11.5.3) are to be installed so that they are continuous throughout their length without any joints or tappings.

## 11.17 Busbar trunking systems (bustrunks)

**11.17.1** Where busbar trunking systems are used in place of electric cables, they are to comply with the requirements of 11.17.2 to 11.17.6, in addition to the applicable requirements in Section 7.

**11.17.2** The busbar trunking, or enclosure system, is to have a minimum ingress protection of IP54, according to IEC60529: *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures* (IP Code).

**11.17.3** The internal and external arrangements of the busbar trunking, or enclosure system, are to ensure that the fire and/or watertight integrity of any structure through which it passes is not impaired.

**11.17.4** Where the busbar trunking system is employed for circuits on and below the bulkhead deck, arrangements are to be made to ensure that circuits on other decks are not affected in the event of partial flooding under the normal angles of inclination given in 1.11 for essential electrical equipment.

**11.17.5** Supports and accessories are to be robust and are to be of corrosion-resistant material or suitably corrosion inhibited before erection. The support system is to effectively secure the busbar trunking system to the ship's structure.

**11.17.6** When accessories are fixed to the busbar system by means of clips or straps manufactured from a material other than metal, the fixings are to be supplemented by suitable metal clips or straps, such that, in the event of a fire or failure, the accessories are prevented from falling and causing injury to personnel and/or an obstruction to any escape route. Alternatively, the busbar system may be routed away from such areas.

## 11.18 Cable segregation

**11.18.1** To reduce mutual interference, cables with different signal levels are to be grouped in accordance with Table 1.11.8 and installed with the separation distances as shown in Table 1.11.9.

**Electrical Engineering****Volume 2, Part 10, Chapter 1**

Section 11

**Table 1.11.8 Cable segregation groups**

| Criteria                              | Signal level |            | Group | Application                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|------------|-------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                       | LF/DC        | HF Pulse   |       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Very sensitive                        | 1 mV         | 1 $\mu$ V  | A     | Receiver antenna cables<br>Television antenna cables (RX)<br>Infrared receiver cables<br>Sonar/sounder receiving cables<br>Radio MF receiver cables<br>Radar MF receiver cables<br>Dynamic microphone input<br>Servo amplifier input (asymmetric and high impedance)            |
| Sensitive                             | 100 mV       | 10 $\mu$ V | B     | Voltage, frequency and phase dependent signal cables<br>Reference voltage and synchro system cables (400/1100Hz)<br>Servo amplifier input cables (symmetric)<br>Analogue and digital cables (symmetric and low voltage signal)<br>M and P lines, sound powered telephone cables |
| Low sensitivity, low interference     | 24 V         |            | C     | Power supply cables<br>High power cables<br>Telephone, telex, loudspeaker and signal key cables<br>Press to talk cables<br>Start/stop signalling cables                                                                                                                         |
| Interference                          | 440 V        | 3 V        | D     | Synchronisation cables<br>Video cables<br>Strobe cables<br>Marker cables<br>Pulse cables (low power)<br>Control cables from wide band amplifiers<br>Digital signal cables (low level or asymmetrical and high level)<br>High power synchro cables                               |
| High interference                     |              | 30 V       | E     | Transmit antenna cables<br>Main electromotor cables<br>Modulator pulsed cables<br>Pulse cables for high power<br>Echo sounder transmit and receiver cables                                                                                                                      |
| Very sensitive with high interference | 1000 V       | 1000 V     | F     | Radio transmit and receive cables<br>Transducer cables<br>Echo sounder transmit and receiver cables                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Immune, no interference               |              |            | Z     | Fibre optic cables                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

**Table 1.11.9 Separation distances, mm**

| Group | A   | B   | C   | D   | E   | F   |
|-------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| A     | —   | 50  | 100 | 150 | 200 | 200 |
| B     | 50  | —   | 50  | 100 | 150 | 100 |
| C     | 100 | 50  | —   | 50  | 100 | 100 |
| D     | 150 | 100 | 50  | —   | 50  | 100 |
| E     | 200 | 150 | 100 | 50  | —   | 200 |
| F     | 200 | 100 | 100 | 100 | 200 | —   |

## ■ Section 12 Batteries

### 12.1 General requirements

12.1.1 The requirements of this Section apply to permanently installed secondary batteries of the vented and valve regulated sealed type.

12.1.2 A vented battery is one in which the cells have a cover provided with an opening through which the products of electrolysis and evaporation are allowed to escape freely from the cells to the atmosphere.

12.1.3 A valve-regulated sealed battery is one in which the cells are closed but have an arrangement (valve) which allows the escape of gas if the internal pressure exceeds a pre-determined value. The electrolyte cannot normally be replaced.

### 12.2 Construction

12.2.1 Batteries are to be constructed so as to prevent spilling of the electrolyte due to motion and to minimise the emission of electrolyte spray.

### 12.3 Location

12.3.1 Vented batteries connected to a charging device with a power output of more than 2 kW, calculated from the maximum obtainable charging current and the nominal voltage of the battery, are to be housed in an adequately ventilated compartment assigned to batteries only, or in an adequately ventilated suitable box on open deck.

12.3.2 Vented batteries connected to a charging device with a power output within the range 0,2 kW to 2 kW, calculated from the maximum obtainable charging current and the nominal voltage of the battery, are to be installed in accordance with 12.3.1, or may be installed in a box within a well ventilated machinery or similar space.

12.3.3 Vented batteries connected to a charging device with a power output of less than 0,2 kW, calculated from the maximum obtainable charging current and the nominal voltage of the battery, may be installed in an open position or in a battery box in any suitable space.

12.3.4 Where more than one charging device is installed for any battery or group of batteries in one location, the total power output is to be used to determine the installation requirements of 12.3.1, 12.3.2 or 12.3.3.

12.3.5 Valve-regulated sealed batteries may be located in compartments with standard marine or industrial electrical equipment provided that the ventilation requirements of 12.5.10 and the charging requirements of 12.6.4 and 12.6.5 are complied with. Equipment that may produce arcs, sparks or high temperatures in normal operation is not to be in close proximity to battery vent plugs or pressure relief valve outlets.

12.3.6 Where lead-acid and nickel-cadmium batteries are installed in the same compartment, precautions are to be taken, such as the provision of screens, to prevent possible contamination of electrolytes.

12.3.7 Where batteries may be exposed to the risk of mechanical damage or falling objects, they are to be suitably protected.

12.3.8 A permanent notice prohibiting naked lights and smoking is to be prominently displayed in all compartments containing vented type batteries.

12.3.9 Only electrical equipment necessary for operational reasons and for the provision of lighting is to be installed in compartments provided in compliance with 12.3.1, the compartment ventilation exhaust ducts and zones within a 1,5 m radius of the ventilation outlet(s). Such electrical equipment is to be certified for group IIC gases and temperature Class T1 in accordance with IEC 60079: *Electrical apparatus for explosive gas atmospheres*, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard.

12.3.10 A permanent notice is to be prominently displayed adjacent to battery installations advising personnel that replacement batteries are to be of an equivalent performance type. For valve-regulated sealed batteries, the notice is to advise of the requirement for replacement batteries to be suitable with respect to products of electrolysis and evaporation being allowed to escape from cells to the atmosphere, see also 1.5.5.

### 12.4 Installation

12.4.1 Batteries are to be arranged such that each cell or crate of cells is accessible from the top and at least one side and it is to be ensured that they are safely secured.

12.4.2 The materials used in the construction of a battery rack or stand are to be resistant to the battery electrolyte or suitably protected by paint or a coating.

12.4.3 Measures are to be taken to minimise the effect of any electrolyte spillage and leakage, for example the use of rubber capping around the top of the cells and the provision of a tray of electrolyte-resistant material below the cells, unless the deck is suitably protected with paint or a coating.

12.4.4 The interiors of all compartments for batteries, including crates, trays, boxes, shelves and other structural parts therein, are to be of an electrolyte-resistant material or suitably protected, for example with paint or a coating.

### 12.5 Ventilation

12.5.1 Battery compartments and boxes are to be ventilated to avoid accumulation of dangerous concentrations of flammable gas.



12.5.2 Ducted natural ventilation may be employed for battery installations connected to a charging device with a power output of 2 kW or less, provided the exhaust duct can be run directly from the top of the compartment or box to the open air above, with no part of the duct more than 45° from the vertical. A suitable opening is also to be provided below the level of the top of the batteries, so as to ensure a free ventilation air flow. The ventilation duct is to have an area not less than 50 cm<sup>2</sup> for every 1 m<sup>3</sup> of battery compartment or box volume.

12.5.3 Where natural ventilation is impracticable or insufficient, mechanical ventilation is to be provided, with the air inlet located near the floor and the exhaust at the top of the compartment.

12.5.4 Mechanical exhaust ventilation complying with 12.5.9 is to be provided for battery installations connected to a charging device with a total maximum power output of more than 2 kW. Also, to minimise the possibility of oxygen enrichment, compartments and spaces containing batteries with boost charging facilities are to be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation irrespective of the charging device power output.

12.5.5 The ventilation system for battery compartments and boxes, other than boxes located on open deck or in spaces to which 12.3.2, 12.3.3 and 12.3.5 refer, is to be separate from other ventilation systems. The exhaust ducting is to be led to a location in the open air, where any gases can be safely diluted, away from possible sources of ignition and openings into spaces where gases may accumulate.

12.5.6 Fan motors associated with exhaust ducts from battery compartments are to be placed external to the ducts and the compartments.

12.5.7 Ventilating fans for battery compartments are to be so constructed and be of material such as to minimise risk of sparking in the event of the impeller touching the casing. Non-metallic impellers are to be of an anti-static material.

12.5.8 Battery boxes are to be provided with sufficient ventilation openings located so as to avoid accumulation of flammable gas whilst preventing the entrance of rain or spray.

12.5.9 The ventilation arrangements for all installations of vented type batteries are to be such that the quantity of air expelled is at least equal to:

$$Q = 110In$$

where

$n$  = number of cells in series

$I$  = maximum current delivered by the charging equipment during gas formation, but not less than 25 per cent of the maximum obtainable charging current in amperes

$Q$  = quantity of air expelled in litres/hr.

12.5.10 The ventilation rate for compartments containing valve-regulated sealed batteries may be reduced to 25 per cent of that given in 12.5.9.

## 12.6 Charging facilities

12.6.1 Charging facilities are to be provided for all secondary batteries such that they may be completely charged from the completely discharged state in a reasonable time having regard to the service requirements.

12.6.2 Suitable means, including an ammeter and a voltmeter, are to be provided for controlling and monitoring charging of batteries, and to protect them against discharge into the charging circuits.

12.6.3 For floating circuits or any other conditions where the load is connected to the battery whilst it is on charge, the maximum battery voltage is not to exceed the safe value for any connected apparatus.

12.6.4 Arrangements are to be fitted to automatically control the charging rate of valve regulated sealed batteries so as to prevent overcharging which may lead to an excessive evolution of gas. These arrangements are to take account of any Naval Authority requirements for prolonged operation under close down conditions.

12.6.5 Boost charge facilities, where provided, are to be arranged such that they are automatically disconnected should the battery compartment ventilation system fail.

## 12.7 Recording of batteries for emergency and essential services

12.7.1 A schedule of batteries fitted for use for essential and emergency services is to be compiled and maintained.

12.7.2 Procedures are to be put in place and documented to ensure that, where batteries are replaced, they are of an equivalent performance type, see *also* 1.5.5.

12.7.3 When additions or alterations are proposed to the existing batteries for essential and emergency services, the schedule and replacement procedure documentation are to be updated to reflect the proposed installation and submitted in accordance with 1.5.2.

12.7.4 The schedule and replacement procedure documentation are to be made available to the LR Surveyor on request.

## Section 13

### Equipment – Heating, lighting and accessories

#### 13.1 Heating and cooking equipment

13.1.1 The construction of heaters is to give a degree of protection according to IEC 600529: *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)*, or an acceptable and relevant National Standard, suitable for the intended location.

13.1.2 Heating elements are to be suitably guarded.

13.1.3 Heating and cooking equipment is to be installed such that adjacent bulkheads and decks are not subjected to excessive heating.

#### 13.2 Lighting – General

13.2.1 Lampholders are to be constructed of flame retarding non-hygroscopic materials.

13.2.2 Lighting fittings are to be so arranged as to prevent temperature rises which overheat or damage surrounding materials. They must not impair the integrity of fire divisions.

#### 13.3 Incandescent lighting

13.3.1 Tungsten filament lamps and lampholders are to be in accordance with Table 1.13.1.

**Table 1.13.1 Lamps and lampholders**

| Designation               | Maximum lamp rating |          | Maximum lampholder current, A |
|---------------------------|---------------------|----------|-------------------------------|
|                           | Voltage, V          | Power, W |                               |
| Screw cap lamps           |                     |          |                               |
| E40                       | 250                 | 3000     | 16                            |
| E27                       | 250                 | 200      | 4                             |
| E14                       | 250                 | 15       | 2                             |
| E10                       | 24                  | —        | 2                             |
| Bayonet cap lamps         |                     |          |                               |
| B22                       | 250                 | 200      | 4                             |
| B15d                      | 250                 | 15       | 2                             |
| B15s                      | 55                  | 15       | 2                             |
| Tubular fluorescent lamps |                     |          |                               |
| G13                       | 250                 | 80       | —                             |
| G5                        | 250                 | 13       | —                             |

13.3.2 Lampholders of type E40 are to be provided with a means of locking the lamp in the lampholder.

#### 13.4 Fluorescent lighting

13.4.1 Fluorescent lamps and lampholders are to be in accordance with Table 1.13.1.

13.4.2 Fittings, reactors, capacitors and other auxiliaries are not to be mounted on surfaces which are subject to high temperatures. If mounted separately they are additionally to be enclosed in an earthed conductive casing.

13.4.3 Where capacitors of 0,5 microfarads and above are installed, means are to be provided to promptly discharge the capacitors on disconnection of the supply.

#### 13.5 Discharge lighting

13.5.1 Discharge lamps operating in excess of 250 V are only acceptable as fixed fittings. Warning notices calling attention to the voltage are to be permanently displayed at points of access to the lamps and where otherwise necessary.

#### 13.6 Socket outlets and plugs

13.6.1 The temperature rise on the live parts of socket outlet and plugs is not to exceed 30°C. Socket outlets and plugs are to be so constructed that they cannot be readily short-circuited whether the plug is in or out, and so that a pin of the plug cannot be made to earth either pole of the socket outlet.

13.6.2 All socket outlets of current rating in excess of 16 A are to be provided with a switch, and be interlocked such that the plug cannot be inserted or withdrawn when the switch is in the 'on' position.

13.6.3 Where it is necessary to earth the non-current carrying parts of portable or transportable equipment, an effective means of earthing is to be provided at the socket outlet.

13.6.4 On weather decks, galleys, laundries, machinery spaces and all wet situations socket outlets and plugs are to be effectively shielded against rain and spray and are to be provided with means of maintaining this quality after removal of the plug.

#### 13.7 Enclosures

13.7.1 Enclosures for the containing and mounting of electrical accessories are to be of metal, effectively protected against corrosion, or of flame-retardant insulating materials.

## ■ Section 14

### Electrical equipment for the use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts

#### 14.1 General

**14.1.1** The installation of electrical equipment in spaces and locations in which flammable mixtures are liable to collect, e.g. areas containing flammable gas or vapour and/or combustible dust, is to be minimised as far as is consistent with operational necessity and the provision of lighting, monitoring, alarm or control facilities enhancing the overall safety of the ship.

**14.1.2** In order to eliminate potential sources of ignition from spaces and locations in which flammable mixtures are liable to collect, such dangerous or hazardous areas are to be identified and electrical equipment within these areas is to be selected and installed in accordance with the requirements of this Section.

**14.1.3** Electrical installations in magazines are to be in accordance with Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 1,6.8.

**14.1.4** Equipment that is to be installed in an area where both explosive gases and combustible dusts can be present is to be selected in accordance with both 14.2 and 14.3.

**14.1.5** For permanent secondary battery installations, see Section 12.

#### 14.2 Selection of equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres

**14.2.1** When equipment is to be installed in areas where an explosive gas atmosphere may be present it is generally to be of a type providing protection against ignition of the gases encountered and compliant with the relevant Parts of IEC 60079, (*Electrical Apparatus for Explosive Gas Atmospheres*), or an acceptable and relevant National Standard or Navy Standard, unless permitted otherwise by 14.2.4, 14.2.5 or 14.2.6.

**14.2.2** The equipment protection type permitted depends on the hazardous zone where the equipment is to be located, as defined in 14.5. For certain locations on the ship other requirements may limit installations to specific equipment types and/or particular applications.

**14.2.3** Equipment for **zone 0** or **zone 1**, with the exception of simple apparatus as defined in 14.2.4 or 14.2.5, is to be certified or approved by a National or other appropriate Authority. Equipment without independent certification or approval may be considered for installation in **zone 2**.

**14.2.4** In **zone 0**, the following may be considered:

- (a) intrinsically safe, category 'a' (Ex 'ia'); or
- (b) simple electrical apparatus and components (for example thermocouples, photocells, strain gauges, junction boxes, switching devices), included in intrinsically safe circuits of category 'ia', not capable of storing or generating electrical power or energy in excess of the limits given in IEC 60079-14, *Explosive atmospheres: Electrical installations design, selection and erection*.

**14.2.5** In **zone 1**, the following may be considered:

- (a) apparatus permitted within **zone 0**;
- (b) intrinsically safe, category 'b' (Ex 'ib');
- (c) simple apparatus as defined above, included in intrinsically safe circuits of category 'ib';
- (d) increased safety (Ex 'e');
- (e) flameproof (Ex 'd');
- (f) pressurised enclosure (Ex 'p');
- (g) powder filled (Ex 'q');
- (h) encapsulated (Ex 'm');
- (i) Special – Ex 's', where permitted by the equipment certification.

**14.2.6** In **zone 2**, the following may be considered:

- (a) apparatus permitted within **zone 0** or **zone 1**;
- (b) type of protection 'n' or 'N';
- (c) equipment such as control panels, protected by purging and pressurisation and capable of being verified by inspection as meeting the requirements of IEC 60079-2; or
- (d) radio aerials having robust construction, meeting the relevant requirements of IEC 60079-15. Additionally, in the case of transmitter aerials, it is to be shown, by detailed study or measurement, or by limiting the peak radiated power and field strength to 1 W and 30 V/m, respectively, that they present negligible risk of inducing incendive sparking in adjacent structures or equipment.

**14.2.7** Apparatus having type of protection 'ia', 'ib', or 'd', is to be of a Group (IIA, IIB or IIC) meeting or exceeding that required for safe operation in the presence of any gas or vapour that can be present, or is to be certified specifically for such gases or vapours.

**14.2.8** All apparatus is to be of a temperature classification (T1 to T6) that confirms, or is to be assessed so as to confirm, that its maximum surface temperature will not reach the ignition temperature of any gas or vapour, or mixture of gases or vapours, which can be present. The surface temperature considered may be that of an internal or external part, according to the type of protection of the apparatus.

#### 14.3 Selection of equipment for use in the presence of combustible dusts

**14.3.1** Where apparatus is to be installed in **hazardous areas**, as defined by 14.5.3, associated with the presence of combustible dusts, it is, when practicable, to be of a type certified or approved by a National or other appropriate Authority for the dusts and, additionally, any explosive gases encountered.

**14.3.2** Electrical equipment for use in such **hazardous areas** is to be so designed and installed as to minimise the accumulation of dust which may interfere with the safe dissipation of heat from the enclosure.

**14.3.3** Where apparatus is to be installed in **extended hazardous areas**, as defined by 14.5.3, associated with the presence of combustible dust, the following may be considered:

- (a) apparatus permitted within a hazardous area associated with the combustible dust(s) that can be present;
- (b) apparatus having degree of protection IP5X, or better, and having a surface temperature under normal operating conditions not exceeding the auto-ignition temperature of the dust(s) that can be present; and
- (c) apparatus of a type which ensures absence of sparks or arcs and hot spots during normal operation.

**14.3.4** Where equipment certified for combustible dusts is not available, consideration will be given to the use of apparatus complying, as a minimum, with the following requirements provided no explosive gases will be present:

- (a) the enclosure is to be at least dust protected (IP5X) having, when type tested, an ingress of fine dust within the enclosure not exceeding 10 g per m<sup>3</sup> of free air space; and
- (b) the surface temperature of the apparatus, under the most onerous combination of normal operating conditions, but in the absence of a dust layer, is not to exceed two-thirds of the minimum ignition temperature in degrees Celsius of the dust/air mixture(s) that can be present; or
- (c) the equipment is to be certified intrinsically safe having a temperature classification ensuring compliance with (b); or
- (d) pressurised and operated in accordance with procedures ensuring, prior to its re-energisation, the absence of dust within the enclosure following loss of pressurisation and consequent shutdown, and having surface temperature complying with (b); or
- (e) simple apparatus included in intrinsically safe circuits or radio aerials, complying with 14.2.4, 14.2.5 or 14.2.6 respectively.

**14.3.5** Consideration may also be given to arrangements complying with IEC 60092-506, *Electrical Installation in Ships – Special Features – Ships carrying specific dangerous goods and materials hazardous only in bulk*.

## 14.4 Installation of electrical equipment

**14.4.1** The method of installation and application of electrical equipment suitable for use in explosive gas atmospheres or in the presence of combustible dusts is to be in accordance with IEC 600 79-14, or the National Code of Practice relevant to the Standard with which the equipment complies. Any special requirements laid down by the equipment certification documentation are also to be observed. The ambient temperature range for which the apparatus is certified, is to be taken to be –20°C to 40°C, unless otherwise stated, and account is to be taken of this when assessing the suitability of the equipment for the auto-ignition temperature of the gases and dusts encountered.

**14.4.2** All switches and protective devices from which equipment located in hazardous zones or spaces is supplied are to interrupt all poles or phases and, where practicable, are to be located in a non-hazardous zone or space. Such equipment, switches and protective devices are to be suitably labelled for identification purposes.

## 14.5 Hazardous zones and spaces

**14.5.1** For hazardous zones or spaces and sources of hazard for naval ships, the following principles are to apply in general.

**14.5.2** Hazardous areas associated with flammable liquids or gases are classified into zones based upon the frequency of the occurrence and duration of an explosive gas atmosphere, as follows:

- **zone 0:** place in which an explosive atmosphere consisting of a mixture with air of flammable substances in the form of gas, vapour or mist is present continuously or for long periods or frequently;
- **zone 1:** place in which an explosive atmosphere consisting of a mixture with air of flammable substances in the form of gas, vapour or mist is likely to occur in normal operation occasionally;
- **zone 2:** place in which an explosive atmosphere consisting of a mixture with air of flammable substances in the form of gas, vapour or mist is not likely to occur in normal operation but, if it does occur, will persist for a short period only.

See IEC 60079-10, *Electrical apparatus for explosive gas atmospheres: Classification of hazardous areas*.

**14.5.3** Hazardous areas associated with solid substances or packaged liquids are classified into zones based upon the frequency of the occurrence and duration of an explosive atmosphere due to the presence of gas and/or dust, as follows:

- **hazardous area:** area in which an explosive atmosphere is likely to occur in normal operation (comparable with **zone 1**)
- **extended hazardous area:** area in which an explosive atmosphere is not likely to occur in normal operation and, if it does occur, is likely to do so only infrequently and will exist for a short period only (comparable with **zone 2**).

See IEC 60079-10-2, *Explosive atmospheres: Classification of areas – Combustible dust atmospheres, or IEC 60092-506, Electrical Installation in Ships – Special Features – Ships carrying specific dangerous goods and materials hazardous only in bulk*. An explosive atmosphere may exist due to gas and/or dust.

**14.5.4** A hazardous zone or space may arise from the presence of any of the following:

- (a) spaces or tanks containing either:
  - (i) flammable liquid having a flashpoint (closed-cup test) not exceeding 60°C;
  - (ii) flammable liquid having a flashpoint exceeding 60°C, heated or raised by ambient conditions to a temperature within 15°C of its flashpoint; or
  - (iii) flammable gas;

- (b) piping systems or equipment containing fluid defined by (a) and having flanged joints or glands or other openings through which leakage of fluid may occur under normal operating conditions;
- (c) spaces containing solids, such as coal or grain, liable to release flammable gas and/or combustible dust;
- (d) spaces containing dangerous goods in packaged form, of the following Classes as defined in the IMDG Code: 1 (with the exception of goods in division 1.4, compatibility group S), 2.1 (inclusive of applicable gas bottles for on board use), 3, 6.1 and 8;
- (e) piping systems or equipment associated with processes (such as electrochlorination) generating flammable gas as a by-product and having openings from which the gas may escape under normal operating conditions; or
- (f) piping systems or equivalent containing flammable liquids not defined by (a), having flanged joints, glands or other openings through which leakage of fluid in the form of a mist or fine spray may occur under normal operating conditions.

14.5.5 The following zones or spaces are regarded as hazardous, **zone 0**:

- (a) the interiors of those spaces, tanks, piping systems and equipment defined by 14.5.4(a) and (b); and
- (b) enclosed, unventilated spaces containing pipework or equipment defined by 14.5.4(b) and (e).

14.5.6 The following zones or spaces are regarded as hazardous, **zone 1**:

- (a) the interiors of spaces containing dangerous goods as defined by 14.5.4(d);
- (b) unventilated spaces separated by a single bulkhead or deck from a cargo defined by 14.5.4(a);
- (c) ventilated spaces containing pipework or equipment defined by 14.5.4(b) and (e);
- (d) zones within a 1,5 m radius of ventilation outlets, hatches or doorways or other openings into spaces defined by (a), (b) or (c), or within 1,5 m of the ventilation outlets of spaces regarded by 14.7 as open areas and which contain the pipework or equipment defined by 14.5.4(b) or (e). Where the hazard results from flammable gas or vapour having a density relative to that of air of more than 0,75 m, the hazardous zone is considered to extend vertically downward to solid deck, or for a distance of 9 m, whichever is the lesser;
- (e) zones within a 1,5 m radius of flanged joints, or glands or other openings defined by 14.5.4(b); in the case of gas or vapour having a relative density of more than 0,75 m, the hazardous zone is considered to extend vertically downwards as described under (d);
- (f) zones within a 1,5 m radius of flanged joints, or glands or other openings defined by 14.5.4(e) and (f);
- (g) zones within a 1,5 m radius of bunds or barriers intended to contain spillage of liquids defined by 14.5.4(a);
- (h) zones on open deck within a 1,5 m radius of any opening into a space defined by (a) or (b); and
- (j) enclosed or semi-enclosed spaces with direct opening into a **zone 1** hazardous location.

14.5.7 The following zones or spaces are regarded as hazardous, **zone 2**:

- (a) ventilated spaces separated by a single bulkhead or deck from a **zone 0** space;
- (b) zones on open deck extending 1,5 m beyond those defined by 14.5.6(d), (e), (f), (g) or (h);
- (c) zones within a 1,5 m radius of ventilation inlets serving spaces defined by 14.5.6(a) or (c); and
- (d) enclosed or semi-enclosed spaces with direct opening into a **zone 2** hazardous location.

## 14.6 Semi-enclosed spaces

14.6.1 Semi-enclosed spaces are considered to be spaces limited by decks and/or bulkheads in such a manner that the natural conditions of ventilation are sensibly different from those obtained on open deck.

## 14.7 Ventilation

14.7.1 Where an enclosed or semi-enclosed space is provided with mechanical ventilation ensuring at least 12 air changes/hour, and leaving no areas of stagnant air, it may be regarded in consideration of hazardous zones as would otherwise be defined by 14.5.5(b), 14.5.6(e) or (j) and 14.5.7(d), as an open area.

14.7.2 Where the rate of ventilation air flow, in relation to the maximum rate of release of flammable substances reasonably to be expected under normal conditions, is sufficient to prevent the concentration of flammable substances approaching their lower explosive limit, consideration may be given to regarding as non-hazardous, the space, ventilation and other openings into it, and the zone around the equipment contained within.

14.7.3 An alarm is to be provided on the navigating bridge and the engine control room to indicate any loss of the required ventilation capacity. Initiation of an alarm by a fan motor running or fan rotation monitoring device will not normally satisfy this requirement.

## 14.8 Pressurisation

14.8.1 A space having access to a hazardous space or zone defined as **zone 1** or **zone 2** may be regarded as non hazardous if fulfilling all the following conditions:

- (a) access is by means of an air-lock, having gastight steel doors, the inner of which, as a minimum, is self-closing without any hold-back arrangement;
- (b) it is maintained at an over pressure relative to the external hazardous area by ventilation from a non hazardous area;
- (c) the relative air pressure within the space is continuously monitored and so arranged that, in the event of loss of over pressure, an alarm is given and the electrical supply to all equipment not of a type suitable for zone 1 is automatically disconnected. Where the shutdown of equipment could introduce a hazard, an alarm may be given, in lieu of shutdown, upon loss of over pressure, and a means of disconnection of electrical equipment not of a type suitable for **zone 1**, capable of being controlled from an attended station, provided in conjunction with an agreed operational procedure; where the means of disconnection is located within the space then it is to be effected by equipment of a type suitable for **zone 1**;
- (d) any electrical equipment required to operate upon loss of over pressure, lighting fittings (see 5.7.3) and equipment within the air-lock, is to be of a type suitable for **zone 1**; and
- (e) means are to be provided to prevent electrical equipment, other than of a type suitable for **zone 1**, being energised until the atmosphere within the space is made safe, by air renewal of at least 10 times the capacity of the space.

14.8.2 A space having access to a hazardous space or zone defined as **zone 2** may be regarded as non hazardous if fulfilling all the following conditions:

- (a) access is by means of a self-closing gastight steel door without any hold-back arrangement;
- (b) it is maintained at an over pressure relative to the external hazardous area by ventilation from a non hazardous area;
- (c) the relative air pressure within the space is continuously monitored and so arranged that, in the event of loss of over pressure, an alarm is given. A means of disconnection of electrical equipment not of a type suitable for **zone 2** is to be provided; where the means of disconnection is located within the space then it is to be effected by equipment of a type suitable for **zone 2**;
- (d) any electrical equipment required to operate upon loss of over pressure (e.g. lighting fittings, see 5.7.3), is to be of a type suitable for **zone 2**.

## 14.9 Cable and cable installation

14.9.1 Electric cables are not, as far as is practicable, to be installed in hazardous zones or spaces, except where serving equipment installed within the zone or space. Through runs of cable may be accepted in locations classified as **zone 1** or **zone 2**, where alternative routes are impracticable.

14.9.2 In addition to the requirements of Section 11, cables for circuits that are not intrinsically safe, which are located in hazardous zones or spaces, or which may be exposed to cargo oil, oil vapour or gas, are to be either:

- (a) mineral insulated with copper sheath; or
- (b) armoured or braided for earth detection; or
- (c) otherwise adequately protected against mechanical or chemical damage, within **zone 2** or non hazardous locations only; or
- (d) as otherwise specifically permitted elsewhere within this Section.

14.9.3 Armouring, braiding and other metal coverings of cables installed in dangerous zones or spaces are to be effectively earthed at least at both ends, see 1.13.4.

14.9.4 Where there is risk of intermittent contact between armour and exposed metalwork, non-metallic impervious sheath is to be applied over metallic armour of cables.

14.9.5 Cables associated with intrinsically safe circuits are to be used only for such circuits. They are to be physically separated from cables associated with non-intrinsically safe circuits, e.g. neither installed in the same protective casing nor secured by the same fixing clip. Consideration may be given to other arrangements complying with IEC 60079-14, *Explosive atmospheres: Electrical installations design, selection and erection*.

14.9.6 In **zone 0**, cable joints may only be used in intrinsically safe circuits.

14.9.7 Cable runs in **zone 1** or **zone 2** are, where practicable, to be uninterrupted. Where discontinuities cannot be avoided, cable joints are, additionally, to:

- be made in an enclosure with a type of protection appropriate to the location; or
- provided the joint is not subject to mechanical stress, be epoxy filled, compound filled or sleeved with heat-shrunk tubing, in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

## 14.10 Requirements for oil supply ships intended for the carriage in bulk of oil cargoes having a flash point not exceeding 60°C (closed-cup test)

14.10.1 In order to eliminate potential sources of ignition from hazardous areas on board Oil Supply Ships electrical equipment is to be selected and installed in accordance with IEC 60092: *Electrical installations in ships – Part 502: Tankers – Special features*.

14.10.2 The relevant group and temperature class for electrical equipment in hazardous zones are, respectively, IIA and T3.

## 14.11 Special requirements for ships with spaces for carrying vehicles, helicopters and aircraft, with fuel in their tanks

14.11.1 Ships with closed spaces carrying vehicles, helicopter and aircraft with fuel having a flashpoint not exceeding 60°C:

- (a) except where exempted by (b) electrical equipment fitted within the space and within the exhaust ventilation trunking for the space is to be of a type acceptable for **zone 1**;
- (b) where the ventilation system required by the Naval Authority is arranged to operate continuously and is sufficient to provide at least ten air changes per hour, whenever vehicles are on board, above a height of 45 cm from the vehicle deck, or any platform on which vehicles are carried, electrical equipment having an enclosure of ingress protection rating of at least IP 55 may be accepted as an alternative to that of a safe type;
- (c) all electrical circuits terminating in the space are to be provided with multi-pole linked isolating switches located outside the space concerned. Provision is to be made for locking in the off position. This does not apply to safety circuits such as those for fire, smoke or gas detection.

## Section 15 Navigation and manoeuvring systems

### 15.1 Steering gear

15.1.1 The requirements of 15.1.2 to 15.1.7 are to be read in conjunction with those in Pt 6, Ch 1.7.

15.1.2 Two exclusive circuits, fed from the main source of electrical power and each having adequate capacity to supply all the motors which may be connected to it simultaneously, are to be provided for each electric or electrohydraulic steering gear arrangement consisting of one or more electric motors. One of these circuits may pass through the emergency switchboard, *see also* Pt 6, Ch 1.7.

15.1.3 The main and auxiliary steering gear motors are to be capable of being started from a position on the navigating bridge and also arranged to restart automatically when power is restored after a power failure.

15.1.4 The motor of an associated auxiliary electric or electrohydraulic power unit may be connected to one of the circuits supplying the main steering gear.

15.1.5 Only short-circuit protection is to be provided for each main and auxiliary steering gear motor circuit.

15.1.6 Where agreed by the Naval Authority, in ships of category NS3, if an auxiliary steering gear is not electrically powered or is powered by an electric motor primarily intended for other services, the main steering gear may be fed by one circuit from the main switchboard. Consideration would be given to other protective arrangements other than described in 15.1.5 for such a motor primarily intended for other services.

15.1.7 Each main and auxiliary steering gear electric control system which is to be operated from the navigating bridge is to be served with electric power by a separate circuit supplied from the associated steering gear power circuit, from a point within the steering gear compartment, or directly from the same section of switchboard busbars, main or emergency, to which the associated steering gear power circuit is connected. Each separate circuit is to be provided with short-circuit protection only.

### 15.2 Thruster systems for steering

15.2.1 Where azimuth or rotatable thruster units, used as the sole means of steering, are electrically driven the requirements of Pt 4, Ch 3,7 are to be complied with.

### 15.3 Thruster systems for dynamic positioning

15.3.1 For ships having a **DP** notation, the requirements of Vol 3, Pt 1, Ch 3 are to be complied with.

### 15.4 Thruster systems for manoeuvring

15.4.1 Where a thruster unit is fitted solely for the purpose of manoeuvring, and is electrically driven, its starting and operation is not to cause the loss of any essential services.

15.4.2 In order to ensure that the thruster system is not tripped inadvertently whilst manoeuvring the ship, overload protection in the form of an alarm is to be provided for the electric motor and any associated supply converters, in lieu of tripping.

15.4.3 The thruster unit electric motor is not to be disconnected as part of a load management switching operation.

### 15.5 Navigation lights

15.5.1 Navigation lights are to be connected separately to a distribution board reserved for this purpose only and accessible to the officer of the watch. This distribution board is to be connected to the emergency source of electrical power in compliance with, 3.2.7(c) and 3.2.9(a). An alarm is to be activated in the event of failure of a power supply from the distribution board.

15.5.2 Each navigation light is to be controlled and protected in each insulated pole by a switch and fuse or circuit-breaker mounted on the distribution board.

**15.5.3** Provision is to be made on the navigating bridge for the navigation lights to be transferred to an alternative circuit fed from the main source of electrical power. Where there is no dedicated emergency source of electrical power because there are two or more main electrical power sources as permitted by 3.1.3, the navigation light panel is to be connected to at least two sources of power with arrangements to transfer between the two sources.

**15.5.4** Each navigation light is to be provided with an automatic indicator giving audible and/or visual indication of failure of the light. If an audible device alone is fitted, it is to be connected to an independent source of supply, e.g. a battery, with means provided to test this supply. If a visual signal is used connected in series with the navigation light, means are to be provided to prevent extinction of the navigation light due to failure of the signal. The requirements of this paragraph do not apply to small vessels.

**15.5.5** For navigation lights using light emitting diodes (consisting of multiple light sources) means to ensure that the overall luminous intensity of the navigation light is sufficient are to be provided in addition to the alarm to indicate the complete loss of the navigation light illumination required by 15.5.3. For replacement navigation lights, see 1.5.6.

**15.5.6** To satisfy 15.5.5, an audible and visual alarm is to be activated to notify the bridge Officer of the Watch when the luminous intensity of the light reduces below the level required by the IMO *Convention on the International Regulations for Preventing Collisions at Sea*. Alternative measures to ensure continuing acceptable performance of navigation lights using light emitting diodes may be considered that are in accordance with:

- IMO Res. MSC.253(83), *Performance Standards for Navigation Lights, Navigation Light Controllers and associated Equipment*, and
- EN 14744, *Inland navigation vessels and sea-going vessels – Navigation light*, or a relevant National, International or Naval Standard.

Where alternative measures are proposed that require verification by personnel of the luminous intensity of navigation lights using light emitting diodes, details of the periodic inspection implementation and acceptance by the Naval Authority are to be submitted for consideration.

**15.5.7** Navigation light power supply units installed to convert, control and/or monitor the distribution board power supply required by 15.5.1 above for connection to the light source(s) (e.g. for LED type navigation lights) are, in the event of a short-circuit on the unit output, to disconnect or limit the supply to prevent further damage and activate an alarm.

**15.5.8** Navigation light power supply units are to be self-monitoring, detecting failures of the unit itself and activating an alarm. These are to include:

- detection of system lock-ups (program hangs);
- means to detect failure of navigation light switching command input circuits or links; and
- means to detect failure of the navigation light monitoring arrangements required to provide the alarms required by 15.5.4 and 15.5.5, as applicable.

**15.5.9** The navigation light power supply failure alarms required by 15.5.1 are not to be displayed as a group alarm. Other navigation light alarms may be grouped for each navigation light where means are provided for personnel to determine the cause of the alarm. Activation of more than one of the navigation light alarms as a result of a single failure is to be prevented.

**15.5.10** Naval Authority requirements including the use of battery power navigation lights are to be complied with and may be accepted as an alternative to the above.

## 15.6 Navigational aids

**15.6.1** Navigational aids as required by the Naval Authority are to be fed from the emergency source of electrical power. See also 3.2.7(d)(ii).

**15.6.2** Ships having a notation **NAV 1** navigational aids are to have an alternative supply fed from the main source of electrical power, independent of the emergency switchboard, with automatic changeover facilities.

## Section 16 Electric propulsion

### 16.1 General

**16.1.1** Where the arrangements permit a propulsion motor to be connected to a generating plant having a continuous rating greater than the motor rating, means are to be provided to limit the continuous input to the motor to a value not exceeding the continuous full load torque for which the motor and shafts are approved.

**16.1.2** The ventilation and cooling systems for electrical propulsion equipment are to be provided with monitoring devices arranged to operate an alarm if the temperature of the heated cooling medium exceeds a predetermined safe value.

**16.1.3** The embedded temperature detectors required by 9.1.9 are to be arranged to operate an alarm if the temperature exceeds a predetermined safe value.

**16.1.4** Propulsion motors, generators and converters are to be provided with means to prevent the accumulation of moisture and condensate when operating at low power levels, or when idle.

### 16.2 System design and arrangement

**16.2.1** In general, for a ship to be assigned an unrestricted service notation, it is to have two independently driven propellers or other propulsion devices, each connected with at least one electric motor, where these form the sole means of propulsion.



16.2.2 For vessels where a propulsion device driven by electric motors is proposed as the sole means of propulsion, at least two effective, independent electric propulsion motors are to be provided and the system is to be designed in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 5. The risk management process is to identify components where a failure could cause loss of propulsion power or other essential services and the proposed arrangements for preventing and mitigating the effects of such a failure.

### 16.3 Power requirements

16.3.1 The propulsion system is to have sufficient power for manoeuvring the vessel and for going astern. With the ship travelling at her maximum service speed the propulsion equipment is to be capable of stopping and reversing the ship in an agreed time.

16.3.2 The propulsion system is to have adequate torque and power margins for all operating conditions including manoeuvring and rough weather with due regard to propeller and ship characteristics.

16.3.3 The electric power for the propulsion system may be derived from generating sets dedicated to propulsion duty or from a central power generation plant which serves both propulsion and ship service loads.

16.3.4 Where propulsion power is derived from a central, common, power plant the control system is to ensure a safe distribution of power between propulsion and ship services, with tripping of non-essential loads and/or reduction in propulsion power if necessary.

16.3.5 Where a central power generation system is employed, the number and rating of generator sets is to be such that with one set out of action the remaining sets are capable of providing all essential and normal ship service loads whilst maintaining an effective level of propulsion power.

16.3.6 Where, in a central power generation system, the electrical power requirements are normally supplied by two or more generating sets operating in parallel, on sudden loss of power from one set, the rating of the remaining set(s) in service is to be sufficient to ensure uninterrupted operation of essential services and an effective level of propulsion power.

16.3.7 Where a central power generation system is employed, means are to be provided to connect available generator sets to meet the power requirement of the electric propulsion system. Arrangements are to be in place to prevent generator sets being automatically disconnected during ship manoeuvres.

16.3.8 Where forced cooling is used on propulsion motors, it is to be possible to operate the motor at a defined reduced power level in the event of failure of the forced cooling.

16.3.9 Total harmonic distortion of the a.c. voltage waveform up to 10 per cent on electric propulsion circuits, not directly connected to the main source of electrical power, may be considered where details are submitted which demonstrate that the equipment and systems are capable of operating under such conditions.

### 16.4 Propulsion control

16.4.1 Propulsion control systems are to be stable throughout their normal operating range and arranged to attenuate any effects of cyclic propeller load fluctuations caused by wave action.

16.4.2 Control of propeller speed, and/or pitch, from zero to full ahead or astern is to be provided.

16.4.3 The control system is to ensure that there is no dangerous overspeeding of propulsion motors upon loss of load.

16.4.4 Interlocks are to be provided in the control system to ensure that ahead and astern circuits are not energised simultaneously.

16.4.5 Any single fault in either the propulsion machine excitation or power distribution systems is not to result in a total loss of propulsion power.

16.4.6 Control, alarm and safety systems for the propulsion system are to satisfy the requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1.

16.4.7 Each control station is to be provided with emergency stops for propulsion motors. The emergency stop is to be independent of the normal control system.

16.4.8 The control system is to limit the propulsion power if the power available from the generator(s) is not sufficient to supply the demand level of propulsion power. In the event of a power limitation, there is to be a visual indication at the control stations.

16.4.9 Means are to be provided to identify the cause of propulsion motor power limitation or automatic reduction (e.g. excessive load torque, cooling failure, high temperature, power availability).

16.4.10 Alternative means of operation, independent of any remote system, are to be provided to permit effective control of the propulsion equipment for all intended functional requirements. The alternative control facility is to include all necessary protection and power limitation features.

16.4.11 Control systems are not to share hardware or data communication links with control, safety and alarm systems not associated with propulsion control, see also Pt 9, Ch 1, 2.11.

# Electrical Engineering

# Volume 2, Part 10, Chapter 1

Section 16

## 16.5 Protection of propulsion system

16.5.1 Provision is to be made for protection against severe overloads, and electrical faults likely to result in damage to plant.

16.5.2 Propulsion motors are to be capable of withstanding, without damage, the thermal and mechanical effects of a short-circuit at the terminals.

16.5.3 Propulsion converters are to be capable of withstanding, without damage, the thermal and mechanical effects of a short-circuit at the terminals or connection to a propulsion motor with a stalled or locked rotor.

16.5.4 Electric motors of podded propulsion units, and/or propulsion motors having permanent magnet excitation, are to be provided with a protective device which, in the event of a short-circuit in the motor or in the cables between the motor and its circuit breaker, will instantaneously open the circuit breaker and, in motors with electromagnetic excitation, de-excite the motor. Motors with permanent magnet main excitation are to be provided with means to prevent further damage as a result of continued rotation after disconnection (e.g., shaft brake).

16.5.5 Safeguards for protecting propulsion equipment against damage resulting from earth faults are to be as specified by the equipment manufacturer. Where the fault current flowing is liable to cause damage to the electrical equipment, there are to be arrangements for interrupting the current automatically.

16.5.6 For the protection of electrical equipment and cables against overvoltages, means are to be provided for limiting the induced voltage when field windings, and other inductive circuits are opened. Protective resistors and devices are to be sized to cater for the likely extreme operating conditions.

16.5.7 An alarm is to be initiated when the excitation system of electric generators providing propulsion power is overloaded such that damage due to heating could occur in the generator or its cabling.

16.5.8 Where, on stopping or reversing the propeller, regenerated energy is produced by the propulsion motor, this is not to cause a dangerous increase of speed in the prime mover or a dangerous overvoltage condition on the supply system. Where a central power generation system is used, then the voltage and frequency fluctuations are not to exceed the limits given in 1.8.

16.5.9 Dynamic braking resistors are to be suitably rated for their expected operation.

16.5.10 Loss of flow of air or liquid cooling of propulsion converters, where used, is to initiate an alarm at an attended control position. Loss of flow of air or liquid cooling is not to result in immediate damage to the propulsion converter, see 9.2.4.

16.5.11 Alarms and safeguards for electric propulsion equipment are indicated in Table 1.16.1.

**Table 1.16.1 Electric propulsion equipment: Alarms and safeguards**

| Item                                                                     | Alarm    | Note                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-----------------------------------|
| Electric propulsion equipment ventilation and cooling medium temperature | High     | See 16.1.2 and 16.3.8             |
| Electric propulsion transformer winding temperature                      | High     | See 10.1.11                       |
| Electric propulsion generator excitation                                 | Overload | See 16.5.7                        |
| Electric propulsion generators and motors winding temperature            | High     | See 16.1.3                        |
| Electric propulsion generator and motor lubricating oil temperature      | High     | See 9.1.13                        |
| Electric propulsion generator and motor lubricating oil supply pressure  | Low      | See 9.1.12                        |
| Power limitation                                                         | —        | Indication, see 16.4.8 and 16.4.9 |

## 16.6 Instruments

16.6.1 The main control station is to be provided with indicating instruments or other means of continuously monitoring the following:

- (a) a.c. systems
  - (i) The line current and excitation current of each generator, propulsion motor and propulsion transformer primary; and for each generator, the voltage, power and frequency.
  - (ii) The winding, bearings and cooling system temperature of each generator, propulsion transformer and propulsion motor.
- (b) d.c. systems
  - (i) The armature voltage and current for each generator and propulsion motor and the current in each excitation circuit.

16.6.2 Each control station is to be provided with instruments to indicate:

- (a) propeller speed;
- (b) direction of rotation for a fixed pitch propeller or pitch position for a controllable pitch propeller;
- (c) visual indication of power limitation; and
- (d) the station in control.

## ■ Section 17

### Fire safety systems

#### 17.1 Fire detection and alarm systems

17.1.1 Fire detection and alarm systems are to be in accordance with Chapter 9 of the *Fire Safety Systems Code (FSS Code)* and 17.1.2 to 17.1.15.

17.1.2 Fire detection and alarm systems are to be provided with at least two power supplies. One supply is to be connected to the main source of electrical power and another supply is to be connected to the emergency source of electrical power required by 3.2, or an accumulator battery capable of supplying power for the same period of time as the emergency source of electrical power. All power supply feeders for fire detection and alarm systems are to be in accordance with 11.6.4.

17.1.3 Automatic changeover facilities in accordance with 5.3.4 are to be located in, or adjacent to, the main fire control panel. Power supply changeover is to be achieved without adverse affect. Failure of any power supply is to operate an audible and visual alarm. See also 1.15 and 1.17.

17.1.4 Where an accumulator battery provides a power supply, on restoration of the main source of electrical power, the rating of the charge unit is to be sufficient to recharge the battery while maintaining the output supply to the fire detection and alarm system.

17.1.5 Power supplies from the main and emergency switchboards are to be supplied by separate feeders that are reserved solely for this purpose. Where the emergency feeder for the electrical equipment used in the operation of the fixed fire detection and fire alarm system is supplied from the emergency switchboard, it is to be run from this switchboard to the automatic changeover switch without passing through any other switchboard.

17.1.6 For machinery spaces the requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1,2.8 are applicable.

17.1.7 The fire detection system within the accommodation spaces is, in addition to the requirements of Pt 9, Ch 1,2.8.4, 2.8.6, 2.8.8 and 2.8.10 to 2.8.14, to comply with 17.1.8 to 17.1.16.

17.1.8 The fire detection control panel is to be located on the navigating bridge or in the central control station and may form part of that panel specified in Pt 9, Ch 1,2.8.2.

17.1.9 Detectors and manually operated call points are to be grouped into sections. The activation of any detector or manually operated call point is to initiate a visual indication and audible fire alarm signal at the control panel and indicating units. If the signals have not received attention within two minutes an audible signal is to be automatically sounded throughout the crew accommodation and service spaces, control stations and machinery spaces of Category A. This alarm sounder system need not be an integral part of the detection system.

17.1.10 The fixed fire detection and fire alarm system are to be capable of remotely and individually identifying each detector and manually operated call point. At least one indicating unit is to be so located that it is easily accessible to responsible members of the crew. One indicating unit is to be located on the navigating bridge if the control panel is located in the central control station.

17.1.11 Clear information is to be displayed on or adjacent to each indicating unit about the spaces covered and the location of the section and each detector and manually operated call point.

17.1.12 A section of fire detectors which covers a control station, a service space or an accommodation space is not to include a machinery space of Category A.

17.1.13 The fire detection system is not to be used for any other purpose, except that closing of fire doors and similar functions may be permitted at the control panel.

17.1.14 A loop circuit of an addressable fire detection system, capable of remotely identifying from either end of the loop each detector served by the circuit, may serve spaces on both sides of the ship and on several decks, but is not to be situated in more than one main vertical or horizontal fire zone, nor is a loop circuit which covers a control station or an accommodation space to include a machinery space of Category A.

17.1.15 A loop circuit of an addressable fire detection system may comprise one or more sections of detectors. Where the loop comprises more than one section, the sections are to be separated by devices which will ensure that if a short-circuit occurs anywhere in the loop, only the affected section of detectors will be isolated from the control panel. No section of detectors is, in general, to include more than 50 detectors.

17.1.16 A section of detectors of an addressable fire detection system is neither to serve spaces on both sides of the ship nor on more than one deck, except that:

- (a) a section of detectors may serve spaces on more than one deck if those spaces are located in either the fore and aft end of the ship or they constitute common spaces occupying several decks, i.e. personnel spaces, enclosed stairways, etc.
- (b) in ships of less than 20 m in breadth, a section of detectors may serve spaces on both sides of the ship.

17.1.17 The wiring for each section of detectors in an addressable fire detector system is to be separated as widely as practicable from that of all other sections on the same loop.

## 17.2 Automatic sprinkler system

17.2.1 Any electrically driven power pump, provided solely for the purpose of continuing automatically the discharge of water from the sprinklers, is to be brought into action automatically by the pressure drop in the system before the standing fresh water charge in the pressure tank is completely exhausted.

17.2.2 Electrically driven sea-water pumps for automatic sprinkler systems are to be served by not less than two circuits reserved solely for this purpose, one fed from the main switchboard and one from the emergency switchboard. Such feeders are to be connected to an automatic changeover switch situated near the sprinkler pump and the switch is to be normally closed to the feeder from the main source of electrical power. No other switches are permitted in the feeders. The switches on the main and emergency switchboards are to be clearly labelled and normally kept closed.

17.2.3 Feeders for the sea-water pump and the automatic alarm and detection system are to be arranged so as to avoid galleys, machinery spaces and other enclosed spaces of high fire risk, except in so far as it is necessary to reach the appropriate switch boards. The cables are to be of a fire resistant type where they pass through such high risk areas.

17.2.4 The automatic alarm and detection system is to be fed by exclusive feeders from two sources of electrical power, one of which is to be an emergency source, with automatic changeover facilities located in, or adjacent to, the main alarm and detection panel.

17.2.5 For design guidance on electrical and fire protection systems in magazines, refer to Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 1.6.8 and 9.

## 17.3 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems

17.3.1 Where fixed water-based local application fire-fighting system pressure sources are reliant on external power they need only be supplied by the main source of electrical power.

17.3.2 The fire detection, control and alarm systems are to be provided with an emergency source of electrical power required by 3.2 or 3.3 and are also to be connected to the main source of electrical power. Separate feeders, reserved solely for this purpose, with automatic changeover facilities located in, or adjacent to, the main control panel are to be provided.

17.3.3 Failure of any power supply is to operate an audible and visual alarm. See also 1.15 and 1.18.

17.3.4 Means to activate a system are to be located at easily accessible positions inside and outside the protected space. Arrangements inside the space are to be situated such that they will not be cut off by a fire in the protected areas and are suitable for activation in the event of escape. Where it is proposed to install local activation means outside of the protected space, details are to be submitted for consideration.

17.3.5 For the electrical safety of electrical and electronic equipment in areas protected by fixed water-based local application fire-fighting systems and adjacent areas where water may extend, the requirements of 17.3.6 to 17.3.10 apply. See also Pt 1, Ch 2.3.3.15 and Pt 9, Ch 1.2.9.

17.3.6 As far as is practicable, electrical and electronic equipment is not to be located within protected areas or adjacent areas. The system pump, its electrical motor and the sea valve, if any, may be in a protected space provided that they are outside areas where water or spray may extend.

17.3.7 High voltage equipment and their enclosures are not to be installed in protected areas or adjacent areas. For high voltage generator enclosures which cannot be fully located outside of adjacent areas due to close proximity, a technical justification, including proposed degree of protection ratings that are normally not to be lower than IP54, may be submitted for consideration that demonstrates the overall safety of the installation in the event of system operation.

17.3.8 In addition to the degree of protection requirements of 1.12.1, electrical and electronic equipment enclosures located within protected areas and within adjacent areas are to provide adequate protection in the event of system operation.

17.3.9 To demonstrate compliance with 17.3.8, evidence of the suitability of electrical and electronic equipment for use in protected areas and adjacent areas is to be submitted in accordance with Pt 1, Ch 2.3.3.15 and 5.12.2. The evidence is to demonstrate that additional precautions have been taken, where necessary, in respect of:

- (a) satisfying 17.3.6 and 17.3.7;
- (b) the damage control and fire-fighting policy of the Navy or Naval Authority, see Pt 1, Ch 2.4.1.6;
- (c) personnel protection against electric shock; and
- (d) cooling airflow, where necessary, for equipment required to operate during system operation.
- (e) maintenance requirements for equipment before return to operation following system activation.

Any test evidence submitted is to consider the overall installation, including equipment types, system configuration and nozzles and the potential effects of airflows in the protected space.

17.3.10 The evidence required by 17.3.9 is to demonstrate the safe and effective operation of the overall arrangements in the event of system operation. This evidence is to demonstrate that exposure to system spray and/or water:

- cannot result in loss of essential services (e.g. unintended activation of automatic machinery shut-down);
- cannot result in loss of availability of emergency services;
- will not affect the continued safe and effective operation of electrical and electronic equipment required to operate during the required period of system operation;
- does not present additional electrical or fire hazards; and
- would require only identified readily replaceable components to be repaired or replaced.

The installation of electrical and electronic equipment required to provide essential or emergency services in enclosures with a degree of protection less than IP44 within areas exposed to direct spray is to be acceptable to LR, and evidence of suitability is to be submitted accordingly.

17.3.11 Fixed water-based local application fire-fighting system electrically-driven pumps may be shared with:

- equivalent automatic sprinkler systems;
- equivalent main machinery space fire-fighting systems; or
- local fire-fighting systems for deep-fat cooking equipment;

provided that the shared use is accepted by the Navy or Naval Authority as complying with their applicable regulations and the arrangements comply with the requirements of 17.3.12 to 17.3.14.

17.3.12 Shared electrically-driven sea-water pumps are to be served by not less than two circuits reserved solely for this purpose, one fed from the main source of electrical power and one from the emergency source of electrical power. Such feeders are to be connected to an automatic changeover switch situated near the pumps and the switch is to be normally closed to the feeder from the main source of electrical power. No other switches are permitted in the feeders. The switches on the main and emergency switchboards are to be clearly labelled and normally kept closed.

17.3.13 Failure of a component in the power and control system is not to result in a reduction of the total available pump capacity below that required by any of the areas the system is required to protect. For equivalent automatic sprinkler systems, a failure is not to prevent automatic release capability or reduce overall sprinkler pump capacity by more than 50 per cent.

17.3.14 Where fire-fighting systems share fire-fighting pumps, failure of one system is not to prevent activation of the pumps by any other system.

## 17.4 Fire pumps

17.4.1 When the emergency fire pump is electrically driven, the power is to be supplied by a source other than that supplying the main fire pumps. This source is to be located outside the machinery spaces containing the main fire pumps and their source of power and drive units.

17.4.2 The cables to the emergency fire pump are not to pass through the machinery spaces containing the main fire pumps and their source of power and drive units. The cables are to be of a fire resistant type where they pass through other high fire risk areas.

## 17.5 Refrigerated liquid carbon dioxide systems

17.5.1 Where there are electrically driven refrigeration units for carbon dioxide fire-extinguishing systems, one unit is to be supplied by the main source of electrical power and the other unit from the emergency source of electrical power.

17.5.2 Each electrically driven carbon dioxide refrigerating unit is to be arranged for automatic operation in the event of loss of the alternative unit.

## 17.6 Fire safety stops

17.6.1 Means of stopping all ventilating fans, with manual reset, are to be provided, outside the spaces being served, at positions which will not readily be cut off in the event of a fire. The provisions for machinery spaces are to be independent of those for other spaces.

17.6.2 Machines driving forced and induced draught fans, and independently driven oil pumps for fuel, lubricating, hydraulic or refuelling oil, or other dangerous fluids are to be fitted with remote controls, with manual reset, situated outside the space concerned so that they may be stopped in the event of fire arising in the space in which they are located.

17.6.3 All power ventilation systems, machinery space ventilation, which is to be in accordance with 17.6.2, are to be fitted with master controls, with manual reset, so that all fans may be stopped, in the event of fire, from the central control station and from another position situated as far apart as is practicable. Off indication is to be provided for the ventilation fans at the central control station along with provisions to enable them to be reactivated.

17.6.4 Means of cutting off all electrical power to the galley except lighting circuits, in the event of a fire, are to be provided outside the galley exits, at positions which will not readily be rendered inaccessible by such a fire. Consideration may be given to relaxing this requirement for supplies to equipment not used for heating or cooking (e.g., alarm and clock systems) that do not present an electrical shock risk to fire-fighting personnel.

17.6.5 Fire safety stop systems are to be designed on the fail-safe principle or alternatively the power supplies to, and the circuits of, the fire safety stop systems are to be continuously monitored and an alarm initiated in the event of a fault. Cables are to be of a fire resistant type, see 11.5.3 and 5.2.1.

17.6.6 Exhaust ducts from main laundries are to be fitted with additional remote control arrangements for shutting off the exhaust fans and supply fans from within the space and for operating fire dampers, where fitted, at the lower end of the duct.

## 17.7 Fire doors

17.7.1 The electrical power required for the control, indication and alarm circuits of fire doors is to be provided by an emergency source of electrical power as required by 3.2. An alternative supply fed from the main source of electrical power, with automatic change-over facilities, is to be provided at the central control station. Failure of any power supply is to operate an audible and visual alarm, see also 1.15 and 1.18.

17.7.2 The control and indication systems for the fire doors are to be designed on the fail-safe principle with the release system having a manual reset.

## 17.8 Fire dampers

17.8.1 The electrical power required for the control and indication circuits of fire dampers is to be supplied from the emergency source of electrical power.

17.8.2 The control and indication systems for the fire dampers are to be designed on the fail-safe principle with the release system having a manual reset.

17.8.3 Fire dampers fitted at the lower end of exhaust ducts from main laundries are to be capable of automatic and remote operation.

## 17.9 Fire-extinguishing media release

17.9.1 Where it is required that alarms be provided to warn of the release of a fire-extinguishing medium, and these are electrically operated, they are to be provided with an emergency source of electrical power, as required by 3.2, and also connected to the main source of electrical power, with automatic changeover facilities located in, or adjacent to, the fire-extinguishing media release panel, see also 1.15. Failure of any power supply is to operate an audible and visual alarm, see also 1.15 and 1.18.

17.9.2 The arrangements for accessing and activating the release of fire-extinguishing media are not to automatically shut off fuel oil, lubricating oil or hydraulic oil to machinery essential for the propulsion and the safety of the ship, see 1.6.1.

## Section 18 Crew and embarked personnel emergency safety systems

### 18.1 Emergency lighting

18.1.1 For the purpose of this Section emergency lighting, contingency lighting, transitional emergency lighting and supplementary emergency lighting are hereafter referred to under the generic name 'emergency lighting'.

18.1.2 A fire or other casualty in a space containing a source of electrical power associated transforming (or converting) equipment or switchboard serving lighting, is not to render inoperative both main lighting and emergency lighting.

18.1.3 The illuminance provided by any one lighting circuit is to be adequate to permit safe evacuation in an emergency, having regard to the possible presence of smoke, see 18.4.

18.1.4 The exit(s) from every main compartment occupied by crew and embarked personnel is to be continuously illuminated by an emergency lighting fitting.

18.1.5 Switches are not to be installed in the final sub-circuits to emergency light fittings unless the light fittings are serving normally unmanned spaces, (e.g. storage-rooms, cold rooms, etc.), or they are normally required to be extinguished for operational reasons, e.g. for night visibility from the navigating bridge. Where switches are fitted they are to be accessible only to ship's crew and embarked personnel with provision made to ensure that the emergency lighting is energised when such spaces are manned and/or during emergency conditions. Where 'darken ship' requirements are specified, switches may be installed in the circuits to emergency light fittings provided they are clearly identified.

18.1.6 Where emergency lighting fittings are connected to dimmers, provision is to be made, upon the loss of the main lighting, to automatically restore them to their normal level of illumination.

18.1.7 Fittings are to be specially marked to indicate that they form part of the emergency lighting system.

18.1.8 A means of illumination is to be provided in passageways and manned compartments for a period of at least four hours in the event of a failure of all main and emergency lighting. The provision of lanterns that operate automatically from a self contained power source on failure of the main and emergency lighting systems is the minimum acceptable arrangement.

### 18.2 Emergency alarm system

18.2.1 An electrically operated bell or klaxon or air-operated whistle with independent air supply or other equivalent warning system installed in addition to the ship's whistle or siren, for sounding the general emergency alarm signal is to comply with the *International Lifesaving-Saving Appliances (LSA) Code* and with the requirements of this Section, see also 1.15 and 1.18.

18.2.2 The general emergency alarm system is to be provided with an emergency source of electrical power as required by 3.2 or 3.3 and also connected to the main source of electrical power with automatic changeover facilities located in, or adjacent to, the main alarm signal distribution panel. Failure of any power supply is to operate an audible and visual alarm, see also 1.15.

18.2.3 The general emergency alarm distribution system is to be so arranged that a fire or casualty in any one main vertical zone other than the zone in which the crew and embarked personnel address control station is located, will not interfere with the distribution in any other such zone.

18.2.4 There are to be segregated cable routes to crew and embarked personnel rooms, alleyways, stairways, and control stations, so arranged that any single electrical fault, localised fire or casualty will not cause the loss of the facility to sound the general emergency alarm in any crew and embarked personnel rooms, alleyways, stairways, and control stations, be it at a reduced capacity.

18.2.5 Where the special alarm fitted to summon the crew—operated from the navigation bridge, or fire-control station, forms part of the ship's general alarm system, it is to be capable of being sounded independently of the alarm to the passenger spaces.

18.2.6 The sound pressure levels are to be measured during a practical test and documented, see 21.2.

### **18.3 Crew and embarked personnel address system**

18.3.1 Crew and embarked personnel address systems are to comply with the *International Lifesaving-Saving Appliances (LSA) Code* and the requirements of this Section.

18.3.2 The crew and embarked personnel address system is to be provided with an emergency source of electrical power as required by 3.2 and also connected to the main source of electrical power with automatic changeover facilities located adjacent to the crew and embarked personnel address system. Failure of any power supply is to operate an audible and visual alarm, see also 1.15 and 1.18.

18.3.3 The crew and embarked personnel address system is to have multiple amplifiers having their power supplies so arranged that a single fault will not cause the loss of the facility to broadcast emergency announcements in crew and embarked personnel rooms, alleyways, stairways and control stations, albeit at a reduced capacity.

18.3.4 The crew and embarked personnel address distribution system is to be so arranged that a fire or casualty in any one main vertical zone, other than the zone in which the crew and embarked personnel address control station is located, will not interfere with the distribution in any other such zone.

18.3.5 There are to be at least two cable routes sufficiently separated throughout their length to crew and embarked personnel rooms, alleyways, stairways, and control stations so arranged that any single electrical fault, fire or casualty will not cause the loss of the facility to broadcast emergency announcements in any crew and embarked personnel rooms, alleyways, stairways, and control stations, albeit at a reduced capacity.

18.3.6 Amplifiers are to be continuously rated for the maximum power that they are required to deliver into the system for audio and, where alarms are to be sounded through the crew and embarked personnel address system, for tone signals.

18.3.7 Loudspeakers are to be continuously rated for their proportionate share of amplifier output and protected against short-circuits.

18.3.8 Amplifiers and loudspeakers are to be selected and arranged to prevent feedback and other interference. There are also to be means to automatically override any volume controls, so as to ensure the specified sound pressure levels are met.

18.3.9 Where the crew and embarked personnel address system is used for sounding the general emergency alarm and the fire-alarm, the following requirements are to be met in addition to those of 18.2:

- (a) The emergency system is given automatic priority over any other system input.
- (b) More than one device is provided for generating the sound signals for the emergency alarms.

18.3.10 Where more than one alarm is to be sounded through the crew and embarked personnel address system, they are to have recognisably different characteristics and additionally be arranged, so that any single electrical failure which prevents the sounding of any one alarm will not affect the sounding of the remaining alarms.

18.3.11 The sound pressure levels are to be measured during a practical test using speech and, where applicable, tone signals and documented, see 21.2.

### **18.4 Escape route or low location lighting (LLL)**

18.4.1 The escape route or low location lighting (LLL) required by the Naval Authority, where satisfied by electric illumination, is to comply with the requirements of this sub-Section.

18.4.2 The LLL system is to be provided with an emergency source of electrical power as required by 3.2 and also be connected to the main source of electrical power, with automatic changeover facilities located adjacent to the control panel, see also 1.18.

18.4.3 The power supply arrangements to the LLL are to be arranged so that a single fault or a fire in any one fire zone or deck does not result in loss of the lighting in any other zone or deck. This requirement may be satisfied by the power supply circuit configuration, use of fire-resistant cables complying with 11.5.3, and/or the provision of suitably located power supply units having integral batteries adequately rated to supply the connected LLL for a minimum period of 60 minutes.

18.4.4 The performance and installation of lights and lighting assemblies are to comply with ISO standard 15370: *Ships and marine technology – Low location lighting on passenger ships*.

## ■ Section 19 Ship safety systems

### 19.1 Watertight doors

19.1.1 The electrical power required for power-operated sliding watertight doors is to be separate from any other power circuit and supplied from the emergency switchboard either directly or by a dedicated distribution board situated above the bulkhead deck. The associated control, indication and alarm circuits are to be supplied from the emergency switchboard either directly or by a dedicated distribution board situated above the bulkhead deck be capable of being automatically supplied by the transitional source of emergency electrical power required by 3.2.6 in the event of failure of either the main or emergency source of electrical power.

19.1.2 Where the sources for opening and closing the watertight doors have electric motors, unless an independent temporary source of stored energy is provided, the electric motors are to be capable of being automatically supplied from the transitional source of emergency electrical power.

19.1.3 A single failure in the power operating or control system of power-operated sliding watertight doors is not to result in a closed door opening or prevent the hand operation of any door.

19.1.4 Availability of the power supply is to be continuously monitored at a point in the electrical circuit adjacent to the door operating equipment. Loss of any such power supply is to activate an audible and visual alarm at the central operating console at the navigating bridge.

19.1.5 Electrical power, control, indication and alarm circuits are to be protected against fault in such a way that a failure in one door circuit will not cause a failure in any other door circuit. Short-circuits or other faults in the alarm or indicator circuits of a door are not to result in a loss of power operation of the door. Arrangements are to be such that leakage of water into the electrical equipment located below the bulkhead deck will not cause the door to open.

19.1.6 The enclosures of electrical components necessarily situated below the bulkhead deck are to provide suitable protection against the ingress of water with ratings as defined in IEC 60529: *Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)* or an acceptable and relevant National Standard, as follows:

- (a) Electrical motors, associated circuits and control components, protected to IPX7 standard.
- (b) Door position indicators and associated circuit components protected to IPX8 standard, where the water pressure testing of the enclosures is to be based on the pressure that may occur at the location of the component during flooding for a period of 36 hours.
- (c) Door movement warning signals, protected to IPX6 standard.

19.1.7 Watertight door electrical controls including their electric cables are to be kept as close as is practicable to the bulkhead in which the doors are fitted and so arranged that the likelihood of them being involved in any damage which the ship may sustain is minimised.

19.1.8 An audible alarm, distinct from any other alarm in the area, is to sound whenever the door is closed remotely by power and sound for at least five seconds but no more than ten seconds before the door begins to move and is to continue sounding until the door is completely closed. The audible alarm is to be supplemented by an intermittent visual signal at the door in crew areas and areas where the noise level exceeds 85 dB(A).

19.1.9 The door is to have an approximately uniform rate of closure under power. The closure time, from the time the door begins to move to the time it reaches the completely closed position, shall in no case be less than 20 seconds or more than 40 seconds with the ship in the upright position.

19.1.10 Sliding watertight doors are to be capable of being remotely closed from the bridge and are also to be operable locally from each side of the bulkhead. Indicators are to be provided at the respective control positions showing whether the doors are open or closed, and an audible alarm is to be provided at the door closure.

19.1.11 A central operating console is to be fitted on the navigating bridge and is to be provided with a 'master-mode' switch having:

- (a) an 'in port' mode, which is to allow any door to be locally opened and locally closed after use without automatic closure; and
- (b) an 'at sea' mode, which is to allow any door that is opened to be automatically closed whilst still permitting any doors to be locally opened but with automatic reclosure upon release of the local control mechanism.

19.1.12 The 'master mode' switch is to be arranged to be normally in the 'at sea' mode position; be clearly marked as to its function and be Type Approved in accordance with LR's Procedure for Type Approved Products.

19.1.13 The central operating console at the navigating bridge is to be provided with a diagram showing the location of each door, with visual indicators to show whether each door is open or closed. A red light is to indicate a door is fully open and a green light, a door fully closed. When the door is closed remotely a red light is to indicate the intermediate position by flashing. The indicating circuit is to be independent of the control circuit for each door.

19.1.14 The arrangements are to be such that it is not possible to remotely open any door from the central operating console.

### 19.2 Bow, stern and shell doors, loading doors and other closing appliances

19.2.1 Where it is required by Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 3 that indicators be provided for bow, stern and shell doors, loading doors and other closing appliances, which are intended to ensure the watertight integrity of the ship's structure in which they are located, the indicator system is to be designed on the fail-safe principle. The system is to indicate if any of the doors or closing appliances are open or are not fully closed or secured.



# Electrical Engineering

# Volume 2, Part 10, Chapter 1

Sections 19, 20 &amp; 21

19.2.2 Where such doors and appliances are to be operated at sea, the requirements of 19.1 are to be complied with as far as is practicable.

19.2.3 The electrical power supply for the indicator system is to be independent of any electrical power supply for operating and securing the doors.

## Section 20 Lightning conductors

### 20.1 General

20.1.1 In order to minimise the risk of damage to the ship and its electrical installation due to lightning, ships are to be provided with lightning protective arrangements in accordance with the applicable requirements of IEC 60092-401 *Electrical installations in ships. Part 401: Installation and test of completed installation* or an alternative and relevant National Standard.

## Section 21 Testing and trials

### 21.1 Testing

21.1.1 Tests in accordance with 21.1.2 to 21.1.4 are to be satisfactorily carried out on all electrical equipment, complete or in sections, at the manufacturer's premises and a test report issued by the manufacturer.

21.1.2 A high voltage at any frequency between 25 and 100 Hz is to be applied between:

- (a) all current carrying parts connected together and earth;
- (b) all current carrying parts of opposite polarity or phase.

For rotating machines, the value of test voltage is to be 1000 V plus 2 x rated voltage with a minimum of 2000 V, and for other electrical equipment, it is to be in accordance with Table 1.21.1. Items of equipment included in the assembly for which a test voltage lower than the above is specified may be disconnected during the test and tested separately at the appropriate lower test voltage. The test is to be commenced at a voltage of about one-third the test voltage and is to be increased to full value as rapidly as is consistent with its value being indicated by the measuring instrument. The full test voltage is then to be maintained for 1 minute, and then reduced to one-third full value before switching off. The assembly is considered to have passed the test if no disruptive discharge occurs.

21.1.3 When it is desired to make additional high voltage tests on equipment which has already passed its tests, the voltage of such additional tests is to be 80 per cent of the test voltage the equipment has already passed.

**Table 1.21.1 Test voltage**

| Rated voltage, $U_n$ V   | Test voltage a.c. (r.m.s.), V |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| $U_n \leq 60$            | 500                           |
| $60 < U_n \leq 1000$     | $2 \times U_n + 1000$         |
| $1000 < U_n \leq 2500$   | 6500                          |
| $2500 < U_n \leq 3500$   | 10000                         |
| $3500 < U_n \leq 7200$   | 20000                         |
| $7200 < U_n \leq 12000$  | 28000                         |
| $12000 < U_n \leq 15000$ | 38000                         |

21.1.4 Immediately after the high voltage test, the insulation resistance is to be measured using a direct current insulation tester, between:

- (a) all current carrying parts connected together and earth;
- (b) all current carrying parts of different polarity or phase.

The minimum values of test voltage and insulation resistance are given in Table 1.21.2.

**Table 1.21.2 Test voltage and minimum insulation**

| Rated voltage $U_n$ V   | Minimum voltage of the tests, V | Minimum insulation resistance, MΩ |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| $U_n \leq 250$          | $2 \times U_n$                  | 1                                 |
| $250 < U_n \leq 1000$   | 500                             | 1                                 |
| $1000 < U_n \leq 7200$  | 1000                            | $\frac{U_n}{1000} + 1$            |
| $7200 < U_n \leq 15000$ | 5000                            | $\frac{U_n}{1000} + 1$            |

21.1.5 Tests in accordance with the standard with which the equipment complies may be accepted as an alternative to the above.

### 21.2 Trials

21.2.1 Before a new installation, or any alteration or addition to an existing installation, is put into service the applicable trials in 21.2.2 to 21.2.7 are to be carried out. These trials are in addition to any acceptance tests which may have been carried out at the manufacturer's works and are to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction. A report having the results of measurements taken during the trials is to be submitted for record purposes.

21.2.2 The insulation resistance is to be measured of all circuits and electrical equipment, using a direct current insulation tester, between:

- (a) all current carrying parts connected together and earth and, so far as is reasonably practicable;
- (b) all current carrying parts of different polarity or phase;

The minimum values of test voltage and insulation resistance are given in Table 1.21.2. The installation may be subdivided and appliances may be disconnected if initial tests produce results less than these figures.

21.2.3 Tests are to be made to verify the effectiveness of:

- (a) earth continuity conductor;
- (b) the earthing of non-current carrying exposed metal parts of electrical equipment and cables not exempted by 1.13.2;
- (c) bonding for the control of static electricity.

21.2.4 It is to be demonstrated that the Rules have been complied with in respect of:

- (a) satisfactory performance of each generator throughout a run at full rated load;
- (b) temperature of joint, connections, circuit breakers and fuses;
- (c) the operation of engine governors, synchronising devices, overspeed trips, reverse-current, reverse-power and over-current trips and other safety devices;
- (d) voltage regulation of every generator when full rated load is suddenly thrown off and when starting the largest motor connected to the system;
- (e) voltage drop at the worst case condition;
- (f) harmonic distortion of the voltage waveform, where declared;
- (g) satisfactory parallel operation, and kW and KVA load sharing of all generators capable of being operated in parallel at all loads up to normal working load;
- (h) all essential and other important equipment are to be operated under service conditions, though not necessarily at full load or simultaneously, for a sufficient length of time to demonstrate that they are satisfactory;
- (j) propulsion equipment is to be tested under working conditions and operated in the presence of the Surveyors and to their satisfaction. The equipment is to have sufficient power for going astern to secure proper control of the ship in all normal circumstances. The ability of the machinery to reverse the direction of thrust of the propeller in sufficient time, under normal manoeuvring conditions, and so bring the ship to rest from maximum ahead service speed, is to be demonstrated at the sea trial, see also Pt 1, Ch 2, 17.3.7;
- (k) operation of power management for electric propulsion.

21.2.5 Measurements are to be taken as part of the trials specified in 21.2.4(c), (d), (e) and (f) to verify that the installation will provide a quality of power supply in accordance with the values listed in 1.8.

21.2.6 In addition to 21.2.5, unless it has been satisfactorily shown by the design verification and validation process required by 1.9.5, that the power supply quality complies with the requirements of the defined standard, then compliance is to be demonstrated by measurements taken at the loads, as defined by the Naval Authority, see 1.9.1.

21.2.7 It is to be demonstrated by practical tests that the Rules have been complied with in respect of fire, crew emergency and ship safety systems.

21.2.8 On completion of the general emergency alarm system and the crew and embarked personnel address system tests, the Surveyor is to be provided with two copies of the test schedule, detailing the measured sound pressure levels. Such schedules are to be signed by the Surveyor and the Builder.

## 21.3 High voltage cables

21.3.1 Before a new high voltage cable installation, or an addition to an existing installation, is put into service, a voltage withstand test is to be satisfactorily carried out on each completed cable and its accessories. The test is to be carried out after the insulation resistance test required by 21.2.2 and may use either an a.c. voltage at power frequency or a d.c. voltage.

21.3.2 When an a.c. voltage withstand test is carried out, the voltage is to be not less than the normal operating voltage of the cable and it is to be maintained for a minimum of 24 hours.

21.3.3 When a d.c. voltage withstand test is carried out, the voltage is to be not less than:

- (a)  $1,6 (2,5U_o + 2 \text{ kV})$  for cables of rated voltages ( $U_o$ ) up to and including 3,6 kV; or
- (b)  $4,2U_o$  for higher rated voltages where  $U_o$  is the rated power frequency voltage between conductor and earth or metallic screen, for which the cable is designed.

The test voltage is to be maintained for a minimum of 15 minutes. After completion of the test the conductors are to be connected to earth for a sufficient period in order to remove any trapped electric charge. An insulation resistance test in accordance with 21.2.2 is then to be repeated.

## 21.4 Hazardous areas

21.4.1 All electric equipment located in hazardous areas is to be examined to ensure that it is of a type permitted by the Rules, has been installed in compliance with its certification, and that the integrity of the protection concept has not been impaired.

21.4.2 Alarms and interlocks associated with pressurised equipment and the ventilation of spaces located in hazardous areas are to be tested for correct operation.

## Section 22 Spare gear

### 22.1 General

22.1.1 It is recommended that adequate spares, together with the tools necessary for maintenance or repair, be carried. The spares are to be determined by the Owner according to the design and intended service. The maintenance of the spares is the responsibility of the Owner.

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 2  
Part 11 Support Systems  
January 2013

---

|             |           |                               |
|-------------|-----------|-------------------------------|
| PART        | 1         | GENERAL REQUIREMENTS          |
| PART        | 2         | PRIME MOVERS                  |
| PART        | 3         | TRANSMISSION SYSTEMS          |
| PART        | 4         | PROPULSION DEVICES            |
| PART        | 5         | SHAFT VIBRATION AND ALIGNMENT |
| PART        | 6         | STEERING SYSTEMS              |
| PART        | 7         | PIPING SYSTEMS                |
| PART        | 8         | PRESSURE PLANT                |
| PART        | 9         | CONTROL ENGINEERING           |
| PART        | 10        | ELECTRICAL ENGINEERING        |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>11</b> | <b>SUPPORT SYSTEMS</b>        |

**Chapter 1 Made and Fresh Water Systems****2 Heating, Ventilation and Cooling Arrangements****3 Waste Systems**

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

---

|                |          |                                                                             |
|----------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>MADE AND FRESH WATER SYSTEMS</b>                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                                 |
|                | 1.1      | General                                                                     |
|                | 1.2      | Scope                                                                       |
|                | 1.3      | Plans and information                                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>System construction and installation</b>                                 |
|                | 2.1      | Materials                                                                   |
|                | 2.2      | Pipe wall thickness                                                         |
|                | 2.3      | Piping and equipment – Selection and installation                           |
|                | 2.4      | Valves – Installation and control                                           |
|                | 2.5      | Cathodic protection                                                         |
|                | 2.6      | Coating of storage tanks and piping internal surfaces                       |
|                | 2.7      | Plastics piping and flexible hoses                                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>System arrangements</b>                                                  |
|                | 3.1      | Water storage facilities                                                    |
|                | 3.2      | Made water production facilities                                            |
|                | 3.3      | Piping system design                                                        |
|                | 3.4      | Piping system distribution                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements</b>             |
|                | 4.1      | General                                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Testing and trials</b>                                                   |
|                | 5.1      | Testing                                                                     |
|                | 5.2      | Type testing                                                                |
|                | 5.3      | Trials                                                                      |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>HEATING, VENTILATION AND COOLING ARRANGEMENTS</b>                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                                 |
|                | 1.1      | General                                                                     |
|                | 1.2      | Scope                                                                       |
|                | 1.3      | Plans and information                                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Construction and installation</b>                                        |
|                | 2.1      | Materials                                                                   |
|                | 2.2      | Equipment – Selection and installation                                      |
|                | 2.3      | Valves and isolation flaps – Installation and control                       |
|                | 2.4      | Refrigerant systems for cooling                                             |
|                | 2.5      | Heating plant                                                               |
|                | 2.6      | Filtration units for air intakes                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>System arrangements</b>                                                  |
|                | 3.1      | General                                                                     |
|                | 3.2      | Magazines, stores and spaces containing flammable liquids and gases/vapours |
|                | 3.3      | Galleys                                                                     |
|                | 3.4      | Medical spaces                                                              |
|                | 3.5      | Welldecks                                                                   |
|                | 3.6      | Smoke clearance                                                             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements</b>             |
|                | 4.1      | General                                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Testing and trials</b>                                                   |
|                | 5.1      | Testing                                                                     |
|                | 5.2      | Type testing                                                                |
|                | 5.3      | Trials                                                                      |

---

|                |          |                                                                 |
|----------------|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>WASTE SYSTEMS</b>                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                     |
|                | 1.1      | General                                                         |
|                | 1.2      | Scope                                                           |
|                | 1.3      | Plans and information                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Construction and installation</b>                            |
|                | 2.1      | Materials                                                       |
|                | 2.2      | Pipe wall thickness                                             |
|                | 2.3      | Piping and equipment – Selection and installation               |
|                | 2.4      | Valves – Installation and control                               |
|                | 2.5      | Coating of storage tanks and piping internal surfaces           |
|                | 2.6      | Plastics piping and flexible hoses                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>System arrangements</b>                                      |
|                | 3.1      | Arrangements                                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Treatment of solid waste matter</b>                          |
|                | 4.1      | General                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements</b> |
|                | 5.1      | General                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Testing and trials</b>                                       |
|                | 6.1      | Testing                                                         |
|                | 6.2      | Type testing                                                    |
|                | 6.3      | Trials                                                          |

# Made and Fresh Water Systems

# Volume 2, Part 11, Chapter 1

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **System construction and installation**
- 3 **System arrangements**
- 4 **Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements**
- 5 **Testing and trials**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 This Chapter states the requirements for made and fresh water systems installed in naval ships.

1.1.2 The requirements in this Chapter cover arrangements, equipment, piping and control systems necessary for the production and distribution of made and fresh water systems for domestic and other systems requiring defined quality and quantity capabilities.

1.1.3 The Naval Authority may impose requirements additional to those in this Chapter.

### 1.2 Scope

1.2.1 Made and fresh water systems included in this Chapter are for:

- (a) Use of crew and embarked personnel for domestic services and food preparation.
- (b) Use in cooling water systems.
- (c) Use in chilled water systems, see Pt 7, Ch 5.
- (d) Use in boiler feed systems.
- (e) Use for bridge window washing arrangements.

1.2.2 Where the Owner/Operator requires the capability of the made and fresh water systems for purposes other than those listed in 1.2.1 (e.g., engine and aircraft washing), the Owner/Operator is responsible for defining the requirements for quality and quantity capabilities.

### 1.3 Plans and information

1.3.1 In addition to the information required by Pt 7, Ch 1,2.1.1, three copies of the plans and information stated in 1.3.2 to 1.3.8 are to be submitted to Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') as applicable.

1.3.2 **Design statement.** A design statement of the made and fresh water system. See Pt 1, Ch 2,3.2.2(c) and 3.1.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.3.2, 3.4.2, 3.4.6 and 5.3.1 for specific references to design statement.

1.3.3 **Systems.** Plans in diagrammatic form showing piping arrangements, control systems and safeguards and electrical systems covered by this Chapter. The major component parts, pipe sizes, system flow rates and pressures together with the capacities of pumps and plants for making water are to be included in the plans.

1.3.4 **Compartments.** Plans showing the general arrangement of compartments, together with a description of the arrangements installed for making, storage and distribution of water and the electrical power supply systems. The plans are to indicate segregation and access arrangements for compartments and associated control rooms/stations.

1.3.5 **Testing and trials procedures.** A schedule of testing and trials to demonstrate that systems are capable of operating as described in Section 3 and as required by Section 5.

1.3.6 **Operating manuals.** Operating manuals are to be provided on board and submitted for information where requested by LR. The manuals are to include the following information:

- (a) Particulars and a description of the systems for the production, storage and distribution of made and fresh water. The particulars are to include system arrangement plans showing each mode of operation of each system.
- (b) Operating arrangements for each mode of operation for the equipment and systems installed.
- (c) Cleaning arrangements and any precautions required for the use, storage and disposal of any recommended chemicals used for cleaning systems and equipment.
- (d) Coating and maintenance instructions for water storage tanks.
- (e) Cleaning instructions for filters, calorifiers and other equipment where bacteria may accumulate in fresh water systems for use of crew and embarked personnel and for food preparation.
- (f) Maintenance instructions and fault finding procedures for the equipment and systems.

1.3.7 **Certificates.** Coating specification with certificate of testing for toxicity and tainting testing by an independent test laboratory.

1.3.8 **Specification.** Specification of metallic and non-metallic materials in contact with made and fresh water.

## ■ Section 2 System construction and installation

### 2.1 Materials

2.1.1 Pipes, valves and fittings are, in general, to be made of steel, ductile cast iron, copper, copper alloy, or other approved ductile material suitable for the intended purpose. The use of plastics materials is also acceptable subject to any restrictions in Pt 7, Ch 1.

2.1.2 Where applicable, the materials are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1.

2.1.3 The selection of materials in piping systems is to recognise the following details:

- (a) Fluid properties, pressures and temperatures.
  - (b) Location and configuration.
  - (c) Compatibility of materials.
  - (d) Fluid flow rates and static conditions.
  - (e) Minimising corrosion and erosion through life of system.
  - (f) System survey, cleaning and maintenance requirements.
- See Pt 7, Ch 1, 17 for guidance notes on metal pipes for water services.

2.1.4 Materials for use in fresh water systems for use of crew and embarked personnel and for food preparation are to be of types that do not provide a habitat for bacteria which can occur with natural rubber, various plastics and fibre accessories, and do not leach out toxic constituents.

### 2.2 Pipe wall thickness

2.2.1 The minimum nominal wall thickness of steel, copper and copper alloy pipes are to be in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 1.

2.2.2 Special consideration will be given to the wall thickness of pipes made of materials other than steel, copper and copper alloy.

### 2.3 Piping and equipment – Selection and installation

2.3.1 Pressurised tanks are to be in accordance with the requirements of Pt 8, Ch 2 and satisfy the Naval Authority's revalidation system for such items where applicable.

2.3.2 Valves, flexible hose lengths, expansion pieces and pumps are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1, Sections 12 to 15, (see also 2.1 regarding selection of materials). The configuration of piping systems is to be arranged to minimise erosion and corrosion of pipe and equipment materials. Equipment used in made and fresh water systems and piping systems is to be suitable for its intended purpose, and accordingly, wherever practicable, be selected from the Lists of LR Type Approved Products published by LR.

2.3.3 Pipes in piping systems are to be permanent pipes made with approved pipe connections to enable ready removal of valves, pumps, fittings and equipment. The pipes are to be efficiently secured in position to prevent chafing or lateral movement.

2.3.4 Suitable means for expansion is to be made, where necessary, in each range of pipes.

2.3.5 Efficient protection is to be provided for all pipes situated where they are liable to mechanical damage.

2.3.6 All moving parts are to be provided with guards to minimise danger to personnel.

### 2.4 Valves – Installation and control

2.4.1 Valves are to be fitted in places where they are at all times readily accessible.

2.4.2 All valves that are provided with remote control arrangements are to be arranged for local manual operation, independent of the remote operating mechanism. The local manual means of operation is to be readily accessible.

2.4.3 Relief valves are to be adjusted and bursting disks so selected that they relieve at a pressure not greater than the design pressure of the system. When satisfactorily adjusted, relief valves are to be protected against tampering or interference by wire with a lead seal or similar arrangement.

### 2.5 Cathodic protection

2.5.1 Sacrificial anode cathodic protection is not permitted in made and fresh water storage tanks.

### 2.6 Coating of storage tanks and piping internal surfaces

2.6.1 Storage tanks, piping and valves constructed from carbon and low alloy steels and cast irons are to be lined internally with a corrosion control coating suitable for the containment and transfer of made and fresh water.

2.6.2 Corrosion control coatings are to be tested and certified as complying with standards specified by the Designer and agreed by the Naval Authority.

### 2.7 Plastics piping and flexible hoses

2.7.1 Subject to compliance with Pt 7, Ch 1, 11 and Ch 1, 13, and the relevant Sections of Pt 7, Ch 2, plastics piping which is internally uncoated may be used in piping systems for made and fresh water.

2.7.2 Any internally uncoated plastics piping or flexible hose in contact with made or fresh water is to be suitable for the containment and transfer of made and fresh water.



# Made and Fresh Water Systems

# Volume 2, Part 11, Chapter 1

Sections 2 &amp; 3

2.7.3 Uncoated plastics piping and flexible hoses are to be tested and certified as complying with current standards for use in made and fresh water systems.

2.7.4 Plastics piping is to be selected in consultation with the manufacturers with regard to suitability with the proposed pipe system cleaning practice.

## ■ Section 3 System arrangements

### 3.1 Water storage facilities

3.1.1 Sufficient potable water storage is to be provided to cater for the needs of the full ship's complement and embarked personnel recognising the operating role of the ship that is to be declared in the design statement required by 1.3.2. For example, a ship may be expected to spend some time in littoral waters where production of fresh water using installed plant may not be possible due to plant limitations or statutory regulations. The combination of storage, water production rate and usage is to be carefully considered in the vessel design, taking into account both average and peak loadings, the latter of which may be typically three times the normal usage rate.

3.1.2 At least two storage tanks are to be fitted, each with separate means of supplying the fresh water distribution main. The tanks are to be specially separated and in NS1 and NS2 type ships at least one of the tanks is to be sited other than in the double bottom space. The tanks are to be sited and be of such dimensions that they are readily accessible to facilitate inspection, cleaning and coating.

3.1.3 The internal structure of fresh water tanks is to be designed to ensure efficient drainage to the suction point. Fresh water tanks are not to have a common boundary with another tank that can contain oil or any other liquid except fresh water ballast. Access arrangements to storage tanks are to be arranged and sited clear of sources of possible contamination.

3.1.4 Pipes other than piping containing fresh water of the same quality as the tank contents are not to pass through or be located within a fresh water tank. Pipes carrying fresh water are not to pass through tanks other than fresh water tanks.

3.1.5 The storage facilities for made water intended for boiler feed services are to be independent of potable water systems for crew and embarked personnel. The storage and piping arrangements are to comply with Pt 7, Ch 3,6.

3.1.6 Water storage tanks are to be provided with means of indicating the water level. The means of routine level inspection is to be by means other than by the use of sounding rods.

3.1.7 Air, filling and sounding arrangements for fresh water storage tanks are to be located and arranged to prevent an ingress of a contaminant. The arrangements for filling are to include a deck connection to facilitate external loading.

3.1.8 Where required by the Naval Authority, separate storage tank(s) in addition to the two storage tanks required by 3.1.2 is/are to be provided. The tank(s) is/are to be provided with means for treatment of water in the tank for decontamination or other purposes that may be specified by the Naval Authority.

### 3.2 Made water production facilities

3.2.1 Made water production facilities fitted are to be capable of producing water to World Health Organisation *Guidelines for Drinking Water Quality, Volume 1 Recommendations Second Edition 1994* as a minimum requirement. A more stringent quality of water production may be necessary in the case of water for use in, for example, boiler feed systems. In these cases, an alternative means of water production is to be provided or a further stage of desalination included in the production arrangements. Where the required standards for made water are other than the World Health Organisation Standards, these are to be stated by the Naval Authority.

3.2.2 The total capacity of the fresh water generation plant will depend upon a number of parameters including complement, ship operating profile and other equipment supplied but typically will be of the order of 135 litres/man/day plus 450 litres/aircraft/day. The capacity of the plant and tank storage is to be agreed between the Designer/Owner/Operator and declared in the design statement required by 1.3.2.

3.2.3 Two or more plants for making water are to be provided of sufficient combined capacity to produce sufficient water under defined levels of requirements stated in the design statement required by 1.3.2. Provision of single plant will be considered in conjunction with the operational requirements of the Naval Authority and any assigned service restriction.

3.2.4 The design of plants for making water is to be such that permits cleaning, maintenance and repair of any plant whilst the other is in service.

3.2.5 Adequate cleaning arrangements are to be fitted to water generating plants. A suitable safe area is to be designated for system cleaning agents.

3.2.6 In the case of distilling type plants, adequate safeguards are to be incorporated to prevent excess steam pressure. Steam piping arrangements are to comply with Pt 7, Ch 3,5.

3.2.7 Where there are low-pressure evaporators using diesel engine jacket water as the heating medium, any corrosion inhibitors in the jacket water are specifically approved for that application.

3.2.8 Means are to be provided to automatically enable produced water that falls below specification to be prevented from being discharged into the supply for distribution into the fresh and made water storage and user systems. The arrangements are to minimise the risk of contamination of made water storage facilities if the made water quality from the plant falls below specification.

## 3.3 Piping system design

3.3.1 Piping system arrangements are to be such that the supply of made and fresh water can be made to essential systems such as chilled water, machinery fresh water cooling and boiler feed water in the event of a single failure or damage of a system or item of equipment. As far as possible, permanent connections to these systems are to be avoided to prevent contamination of the fresh water by additives such as corrosion inhibitors that may be present in the systems. Where it is essential to fit permanent connections, means are to be provided to isolate the systems from the fresh water supplies to ensure that cross contamination cannot take place when the systems are operating normally.

3.3.2 The design of piping systems is to recognise operational and manning philosophy for the vessel and is to be declared in the design statement required by 1.3.2.

3.3.3 Where a piping system has failed or been damaged, any resulting hazards are to be capable of being minimised.

3.3.4 All equipment fitted in piping systems is to be readily accessible to facilitate maintenance and survey. For this purpose, valves or cocks are to be interposed between items of equipment and the inlet and outlet pipes in order that any item of equipment may be shut off for opening up and overhauling.

3.3.5 Any filter elements fitted in equipment or piping systems are to be capable of being cleaned and/or changed.

3.3.6 Pressure relief devices are to be mounted in such a way that it is not possible to isolate them from the part of the system which they are protecting except that, where duplicated, a changeover valve may be fitted that will allow either device to be isolated for maintenance purposes without it being possible to shut off the other device at the same time.

3.3.7 Seawater valves and fittings are to comply with Pt 7, Ch 2,2.5.

3.3.8 Not less than two sea inlets are to be provided for pumps supplying seawater to the fresh water generating plants. The sea inlets are to be independent of other sea inlets and are to be located forward and clear of any bilge or sanitary discharges.

3.3.9 Where a high pressure sea water system is installed (see Pt 7, Ch 5), provision is to be made for emergency supply to the made water plant.

3.3.10 Provision is to be made for all seawater to pass through suitable filters before being introduced to the made water plant. The filters are to be in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's recommendations.

3.3.11 Piping system arrangements and associated equipment are to be capable of operating satisfactorily under the conditions shown in Table 2.4.2 in Pt 1, Ch 2.

3.3.12 The system is to be capable of being cleaned with arrangements for safely flushing out any cleaning chemical agents after use and for storing or disposing of them safely.

## 3.4 Piping system distribution

3.4.1 Two or more water pumps are to be provided of sufficient capacity to supply the water distribution system with any one pump out of action.

3.4.2 The water distribution system is to be capable of providing a steady flow of water at any point in the system in accordance with the design statement required by 1.3.2. Where a pneumatically pressurised tank arrangement is used, the tank is to be provided with water level indication and a means of indicating the pressure. The compressed air connection to the pressurised tank is to incorporate a non-return valve arrangement at the tank to prevent the possibility of water entering the compressed air system and it is recommended that the connection be made via a portable hose connection.

3.4.3 Each user or group of users of fresh water are to be provided with means of isolation such that the distribution system can continue to function when a user or group of users has been isolated.

3.4.4 Air vent and drain points are to be provided throughout the system at all high and low points.

3.4.5 Provision is to be made for filling the water storage system(s) from the made water production facilities. Shore connection located above the waterline and an associated dry main are to be provided to permit the filling of the storage system.

3.4.6 Provision is to be made to connect an alternative source of water supply to defined services in emergency/action damage conditions. For example, where the fresh water main is unavailable, stand-by arrangements are to be provided for suitable water supplies to medical spaces, galleys, bridge window sprays, cleansing stations (CBRN Protection fitted vessels) and weapon cooling. The supply arrangements to defined services in emergency/action damage conditions are to be included in the design statement required by 1.3.2 and agreed by the Owner/Operator.

# Made and Fresh Water Systems

# Volume 2, Part 11, Chapter 1

Sections 3, 4 & 5

3.4.7 There are to be no permanent connections between fresh water and sea water systems. Where emergency connections have been designed for the supply of fresh water to fresh and seawater cooled equipment, the fresh water is to be supplied by means of a portable hose with screw down non-return valve isolation arrangements at the connection to the equipment.

3.4.8 The temperature of domestic hot water systems is to be maintained above 63°C except in cases of peak demand when a fall to no less than 60° is acceptable. The distribution system is to be provided with a means of continuous circulation to resist bacteriological contamination of the system.

3.4.9 Calorifiers are to be provided with drainage arrangements and adequate access to enable cleaning.

3.4.10 Provision is to be made for all water supplies intended for domestic services and food preparation to be sterilised by chlorination that maintains residual free chlorine content of 0,2 ppm or by an equivalent sterilisation method. Means are also to be provided to chlorinate all fresh water taken from shore, water barge or supply ship on loading to a sufficient concentration to ensure a residual free chlorine content of 0,2 ppm.

3.4.11 The water supply arrangements intended for crew and embarked personnel for drinking, washing or food preparation is to be independent of other services wherever possible. Where there are no alternative supply arrangements to other services requiring fresh water (e.g., machinery cooling water, purifiers or a fresh water WC flushing system), a clear air break is to be provided in the fresh water supply pipe to such a system or tank. If it is impracticable to provide a clear air break, the supply pipe to each system is to be provided with an efficient non-return valve and a vacuum breaker or back-flow preventer.

## ■ Section 4 Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 The control engineering arrangements are to comply with Pt 9, Ch 1 as applicable.

4.1.2 Equipment used in made and fresh water systems is to be provided with local control and monitoring arrangements.

4.1.3 Where isolation of equipment or systems can be carried out, means of indicating the status of isolation is to be provided at positions where the equipment and system can be operated and monitored.

4.1.4 Instrumentation to indicate the operational status of running and any standby equipment is to be provided locally and at each control station.

4.1.5 All pumps are to be provided with an indication of discharge pressure and a low discharge pressure alarm at the control station.

4.1.6 Made water plant instrumentation is to include, as a minimum, salinity indication and high salinity alarm of the made water at the plant and at each control station.

4.1.7 Arrangements are to be made to automatically divert any made water that is above the specified salinity limit from distribution into the made water storage system.

4.1.8 Made water systems using reverse osmosis plant are to be provided with automatic means of chlorinating the made water downstream of the plant.

4.1.9 Calorifiers are to be provided with a means of indicating and controlling the outlet temperature of fresh water to distribution systems. Low and high temperature alarms are to be provided in the hot water distribution system at each control station.

4.1.10 The electrical engineering arrangements are to comply with Pt 10, Ch 1.

## ■ Section 5 Testing and trials

### 5.1 Testing

5.1.1 The requirements of the Rules relating to testing of pressure vessels, piping and related fittings including hydraulic testing are applicable. See Pt 8, Ch 2,10 and Pt 7, Ch 1,16.

5.1.2 On completion, tanks and reservoirs for service and storage of system fluids are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected, but not less than 2,5 m above the crown of the tank.

5.1.3 After installation on board, piping systems together with associated fittings that are under internal pressure, are to be subjected to a running test at the intended maximum working pressure.

5.1.4 Testing is to cover the following items:

- Verification of control, alarm, safety systems.
- Tests simulating failure of made water production equipment and pumps to verify correct functioning of alarms and systems in service.
- Verification of accuracy, calibration and functioning of temperature control for hot water heating, monitoring and recording instrumentation for produced water systems where fitted.

### 5.2 Type testing

5.2.1 Evidence that the required performance of made water and pumping equipment is capable of being maintained under ambient and inclination operating conditions defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.4 and 4.6 is to be provided by the manufacturer.

## **5.3 Trials**

5.3.1 Trials are to be carried out to demonstrate that the capability of the production, storage and distribution systems for made and fresh water systems meet the design statement. The trials are as far practicable to be representative of the actual conditions to be encountered in service.

---

# Heating, Ventilation and Cooling Arrangements

## Volume 2, Part 11, Chapter 2

### Section 1

#### Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Construction and installation**
- 3 **System arrangements**
- 4 **Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements**
- 5 **Testing and trials**

### ■ Section 1 General requirements

#### 1.1 General

1.1.1 This Chapter states the requirements for heating, ventilation and cooling arrangements (HVAC) systems installed in naval ships.

1.1.2 The requirements in this Chapter cover arrangements, equipment, and control systems necessary for effective heating, ventilation and cooling arrangements on board a naval ship.

1.1.3 The Naval Authority may impose requirements additional to those in this Chapter.

#### 1.2 Scope

1.2.1 HVAC systems included in this Chapter cover the following as applicable:

- (a) Crew and embarked personnel spaces.
- (b) Magazines and stores and spaces containing flammable liquids and gases.
- (c) Storerooms, workshops, sewage handling spaces.
- (d) Galleys.
- (e) Medical spaces.
- (f) Wel decks.

1.2.2 This Chapter also includes requirements for smoke clearance.

1.2.3 Machinery space ventilation systems are to comply with Pt 1, Ch 2,5.6.

1.2.4 Pump room ventilation systems are to comply with Pt 7, Ch 4,3 as applicable.

1.2.5 Vehicle, helicopter and aircraft space ventilation arrangements are to comply with Pt 10, Ch 1,14.10 as applicable.

1.2.6 CBRN Protection guidance for ventilation is contained in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.12.

1.2.7 The requirements of Pt 7, Ch 5 are also applicable where a chilled water system is used for cooling purposes.

1.2.8 Battery room ventilation arrangements are to comply with Pt 10, Ch 1,12.5.

#### 1.3 Plans and information

1.3.1 Three copies of the plans and information stated in 1.3.2 to 1.3.6 are to be submitted to Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') as applicable.

1.3.2 **Design statement.** A design statement of the HVAC systems. See Pt 1, Ch 2,3.2.2(c) and 2.4.1, 2.5.1, 2.6.1, 3.1.2(d), 3.1.4, 3.3.1, 3.6.1 and 5.3.1 for specific references to the design statement.

1.3.3 **Systems.** Plans in diagrammatic form showing air intake/exhaust/distribution arrangements, control systems and safeguards and electrical systems covered by this Chapter. Plans are to show trunk/pipe sizes, air/water flows and terminal locations. The capacities of fans, pumps and heating/cooling/filtration plants are to be included. Capacity tables for different operating conditions for the refrigeration compressors are also to be included.

1.3.4 **Compartments.** Plans showing the general arrangement of compartments, together with a description of the equipment and arrangements installed for isolation, heating/cooling/filtration and distribution of ventilation air and the electrical power supply systems. The plans are to indicate segregation and access arrangements for compartments and associated control rooms/stations.

1.3.5 **Testing and trials procedures.** A schedule of testing and trials to demonstrate that systems are capable of operating as described in Section 3.

1.3.6 **Operating manuals.** Operating manuals are to be provided on board and submitted for information where requested by LR. The manuals are to include the following information:

- (a) Particulars and a description of the systems.
- (b) Operating instructions for the equipment and systems (including fire isolation aspects).
- (c) Maintenance instructions for the installed arrangements.



# Heating, Ventilation and Cooling Arrangements

## Volume 2, Part 11, Chapter 2

Section 2

### ■ Section 2 Construction and installation

#### 2.1 Materials

2.1.1 The selection of materials in piping systems for heating, cooling and filtration systems is to recognise the following details:

- (a) Fluids, pressures and temperatures.
- (b) Location.
- (c) Compatibility of materials.
- (d) Fluid flow rates and static conditions.
- (e) Minimising corrosion and erosion through life of system.
- (f) Flammability and toxicity.

2.1.2 Ventilation trunk materials and characteristics are to be selected to suit the application. For example, watertight or gastight trunking may be required in certain areas of the vessel in order to meet the design requirements. Steel trunking is to be used in areas of high fire risk.

2.1.3 Where trunking is fitted in lengths and required to be joined together, joining arrangements are to be in accordance with the requirements of the trunk manufacturer.

2.1.4 Pipes, valves and fittings are in general to be made of steel, ductile cast iron, copper, copper alloy, or other approved ductile material suitable for the intended purpose. The use of plastics materials is also acceptable subject to the restrictions in Pt 7, Ch 1.

2.1.5 Where applicable, the materials are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1.

#### 2.2 Equipment – Selection and installation

2.2.1 Pressure vessels in heat exchange systems are to be in accordance with a recognised code and satisfy the Naval Authority's revalidation system for such items where applicable.

2.2.2 Valves, flexible hose lengths, expansion pieces and pumps are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1, 12 to 15.

2.2.3 Pipes in piping systems are to be permanent pipes made with approved pipe connections to enable ready removal of valves, pumps, fittings and equipment. The pipes are to be efficiently secured in position to prevent chafing or lateral movement.

2.2.4 Suitable means for expansion is to be made, where necessary, in each range of pipes.

2.2.5 Efficient protection is to be provided for all pipes situated where they are liable to mechanical damage.

2.2.6 All moving parts are to be provided with guards to minimise danger to personnel.

2.2.7 Low temperature pipes in refrigeration systems are to be provided with efficient insulation. Chilled water and hot water pipes are also to be provided with insulation for system efficiency.

2.2.8 Means are to be provided, where necessary, to enable lengths of ventilation trunking to be cleaned internally.

#### 2.3 Valves and isolation flaps – Installation and control

2.3.1 Valves and isolation flap arrangements are to be fitted in places where they are at all times readily accessible.

2.3.2 All valves that are provided with remote control arrangements are to be arranged for local manual operation, independent of the remote operating mechanism. The local manual means of operation is to be readily accessible.

2.3.3 Relief valves are to be adjusted and bursting discs so selected that they relieve at a pressure not greater than the design pressure of the system. When satisfactorily adjusted, relief valves are to be protected against tampering or interference by wire with a lead seal or similar arrangement.

#### 2.4 Refrigerant systems for cooling

2.4.1 Where chilled water systems complying with Pt 7, Ch 5 are not used for cooling ventilation air, independent refrigeration plants are to be provided and designed to be capable of extracting a defined heat load duty when operating at the conditions stated in the design statement required by 1.3.2. Independent refrigeration plants are to comply with the requirements of this Chapter.

2.4.2 The compartments containing the refrigeration plants are to be provided with refrigerant gas detectors with audible and visual alarms.

2.4.3 The design of refrigeration systems is to be such that permits maintenance and repair without unavoidable loss of refrigerant to atmosphere. To minimise refrigerant release to the atmosphere, refrigerant recovery units are to be provided for evacuation of a system prior to maintenance.

2.4.4 Refrigeration systems are to be provided with relief devices, but it is important to avoid circumstances that would bring about an inadvertent discharge of refrigerant to the atmosphere. The system is to be so designed that pressure due to fire conditions will be safely relieved.

2.4.5 A pressure relief valve and/or bursting disc is to be fitted between each positive displacement compressor and its gas delivery stop valve, the discharge being led to the suction side of the compressor. The flow capacity of the valve or disc is to exceed the full load compressor capacity on the particular refrigerant at the maximum potential suction pressure. For these internal relief valves, servo-operated valves will be accepted. Where the motive power for the compressor does not exceed 10 kW, the pressure relief valve and/or bursting disc may be omitted.

# Heating, Ventilation and Cooling Arrangements

## Volume 2, Part 11, Chapter 2

Sections 2 & 3

**2.4.6** Each pressure vessel which may contain liquid refrigerant and which is capable of being isolated by means of a stop or automatic control or check valves is to be protected by two pressure relief valves or two bursting discs, or one of each, controlled by a changeover device. Pressure vessels that are connected by pipework without valves, so that they cannot be isolated from each other, may be regarded as a single pressure vessel for this purpose, provided that the interconnecting pipework does not prevent effective venting of any pressure vessel.

**2.4.7** Omission of one of the specified relief devices and changeover device, as required by 2.4.6, will be accepted where:

- (a) Vessels are of less than 300 litres internal gross volume; or
- (b) Vessels discharge into the low pressure side by means of a relief valve.

**2.4.8** Sections of systems and components that could become full of liquid between closed valves are to be provided with pressure relief devices relieving to a suitable point in the refrigerant circuit.

**2.4.9** Seawater systems for refrigeration condensers are to be capable of being supplied from not less than two independent sources. If required by the Naval Authority, these sources are to be located in separate compartments and zones such that the loss of one zone or compartment will not result in the loss of all seawater supply sources.

**2.4.10** The capacity of each source of seawater required by 2.4.9 is to be sufficient for the conditions stated in the design statement with any one source out of action.

### 2.5 Heating plant

**2.5.1** Independent means of heating the air supplies to ventilation systems for crew and embarked personnel are to be designed to be capable of transferring a defined heat load duty when operating at the conditions stated in the design statement required by 1.3.2.

### 2.6 Filtration units for air intakes

**2.6.1** Air inlets and outlets to all ventilation systems are to be provided with suitable protection screens. Filtration units are to be provided at all inlets to air supplies to ventilation systems for crew and embarked personnel in accordance with the conditions stated in the design statement.

**2.6.2** Air filtration units are to be provided to control the ingestion of water, particulate and corrosive marine salts and are to be capable of being cleaned in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

**2.6.3** Filtration units for CBRN Protection are to be in accordance with the guidance in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.12 as applicable.

## Section 3 System arrangements

### 3.1 General

**3.1.1** The design of air-conditioning and ventilation systems is to reflect the total ship design including any CBRN Protection requirements, fire/damage zoning or other particular features stipulated in the Naval Authority specification for the vessel.

**3.1.2** The design and capability of supply and exhaust systems for ventilation purposes are to address the following requirements as applicable:

- (a) Noxious odours, toxic and dangerous fumes or other contaminants are to be extracted, taking into account any requirements of the Naval Authority.
- (b) Acceptable levels of fresh air are to be provided for personnel efficiency, combustion or other oxidation processes. The arrangements are to ensure that maximum CO<sub>2</sub> levels are not exceeded in all spaces where crew and embarked personnel are likely to be. Unless specified by the Naval Authority:
  - (i) a maximum CO<sub>2</sub> level of 1200 ppm is to be adopted. A high level alarm is to be provided where 100 per cent recirculation is adopted for any ship operational requirement.
  - (ii) a minimum fresh air flow of 5 litres/s/man is to be capable of being supplied to all spaces intended for crew and embarked personnel.
- (c) In a fire situation within an autonomous zone, smoke migration is to be restricted to prevent ingress into compartments essential for the operational capability of the ship in a fire situation.
- (d) Acceptable internal ambient conditions are to be maintained for personnel comfort in manned compartments and in other compartments where required for equipment cooling. The arrangements for maintaining acceptable ambient conditions are to take account of the range of climatic conditions that the ship is required to operate within and are to be included in the design statement required by 1.3.2.
- (e) Systems are to be arranged so that as far as is practicable they serve like compartments from the same sub-systems.
- (f) If the vessel is divided into autonomous zones, the systems are to be designed so that they do not cross over from one zone boundary to another.
- (g) In the case of vessels designed for CBRN Protection, the system is to be designed to maintain the vessel at an overpressure relative to the outside ambient pressure. The system is also to provide a breathable atmosphere, minimising CO<sub>2</sub> levels with the maximum ship's complement. Odour filtration is to be provided for all those areas that are likely to produce foul smells and are subject to recirculation in closedown, e.g. bathrooms, toilets, galleys. See Pt 1, Ch 2,4.12 for CBRN Protection guidance.
- (h) The systems are to be designed to maintain the vessel's watertight integrity and, for ships with CBRN Protection arrangements, gastight integrity.

# Heating, Ventilation and Cooling Arrangements

## Volume 2, Part 11, Chapter 2

Section 3

- (j) Systems are to be designed to enable inspection, cleaning and maintenance in accordance with the designer's and equipment manufacturer's recommendations.

3.1.3 Exhausts from clean workshops may be returned to the ship's recirculation system via suitable filter arrangements. However, the air conditioning system is not to be used for dust extraction from woodworking machinery, etc. Independent extraction systems are to be used for this purpose. Similarly, fumes from welding bays, etc., are to be exhausted to atmosphere.

3.1.4 Exhausts from sewage treatment spaces are normally to be led to atmosphere. Where identified in the design statement, exhausts may be led to the ship's recirculation system but means of isolation to the recirculation system with alternative exhaust to atmosphere arrangements are to be provided to cater for abnormal plant conditions.

3.1.5 Exhausts from storerooms containing non-hazardous materials may be returned to the ship's recirculation system.

3.1.6 Exhaust arrangements from machinery spaces, pump room, aircraft and vehicle decks are to be led to atmosphere.

3.1.7 All openings in weatherdeck boundaries are to be fitted with grilles to avoid ingress of debris. Consideration is to be given to weatherdeck openings to prevent downflooding.

3.1.8 Facilities are to be provided to ensure that weatherdeck openings remain clear of ice when the ship is operating in the coldest climate for which it is designed.

3.1.9 In compartments or spaces with low noise targets or in operational spaces, accommodation, working or office areas, the design of the distribution system is to be such as to minimise noise generation.

### 3.2 Magazines, stores and spaces containing flammable liquids and gases/vapours

3.2.1 The design of ventilation arrangements to magazines is to minimise the risk of explosion. Where fitted, exhausts from magazines are to be led to atmosphere.

3.2.2 Systems serving compartments containing flammable stores (e.g., paint stores) or potentially explosive gases (including battery charging rooms, oxygen bottle stores and magazines) are to be fitted with flameproof gauzes and isolating valves in these branches. The systems serving such compartments are to be independent of those supplying other spaces. Fans supplying and extracting air to/from such compartments are to be spark resistant as a minimum, see Pt 7, Ch 4,3.3. Exhausts are to be led to atmosphere away from other outlets, i.e., fuel tank vents.

3.2.3 Exhausts from compartments containing hazardous materials, including dangerous or noxious gases (e.g., refrigeration machinery), are to be led to atmosphere.

3.2.4 Electrical equipment (including any heating arrangements) for magazines, stores and spaces containing flammable gases and vapours is to comply with Pt 10, Ch 1.

### 3.3 Galleys

3.3.1 The following arrangements are to be incorporated in ventilation systems within galleys:

- (a) All trunking is to be of steel or stainless steel.
- (b) Exhaust terminals above equipment such as fryers, grills, etc, are to be fitted with grease filters that can easily be removed and cleaned.
- (c) Exhaust branches, fitted with grease filters, are to be protected by fire flaps within the galley. The flaps are to be sited in the exhaust trunking between the canopy and the exit from the galley, arranged to close in the direction of air flow and be readily operable from both within and outside the galley.
- (d) CO<sub>2</sub> injection or other fire extinguishing means facilities are to be fitted.

Exhaust systems from galleys are normally to be led to atmosphere. In the case of ships fitted with CBRN Protection and when identified in the design statement, the galley ventilation system may be designed to recirculate air and, to limit food smells, odour filtration is to be provided. If the exhaust is led to atmosphere in ships fitted with CBRN Protection, the air loss is to be considered when assessing the CBRN arrangements.

3.3.2 In addition to those fitted in galley systems, fire flaps are also to be fitted:

- (a) In ventilation trunks that pass through designated fire barriers.
- (b) In ventilation trunks that pass through watertight bulkheads where this penetration occurs within the lines of weathertight and watertight integrity as defined in Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 2.

### 3.4 Medical spaces

3.4.1 Sick bay complexes are to be provided with a dedicated air treatment unit with trunked distribution, fresh air, recirculation and where necessary, exhaust systems.

3.4.2 The arrangements for ventilation of medical compartments are to be such that they are capable of maintaining a positive pressure in relation to the surrounding complex to prevent the ingress of any contaminated air. Similarly, any operating theatres are to have arrangements for providing a relative positive pressure to the adjacent medical spaces.

### 3.5 Welldecks

3.5.1 Welldeck spaces are to be designed with ventilation systems that provide a safe working environment for a defined period of time which, in general, should be not less than 8 hours.



# Heating, Ventilation and Cooling Arrangements

## Volume 2, Part 11, Chapter 2

Sections 3 & 4

3.5.2 Guidance for the design of ventilation systems for welldeck spaces can be found in IMO MSC/Circular 729 – *Design Guidelines and Operational Recommendations for Ventilation Systems in Ro-Ro Cargo Spaces*.

### 3.6 Smoke clearance

3.6.1 In addition to the requirements in 3.1 to 3.5, the Naval Authority may also require the installation of a smoke clearance system. The design of such a system is to be based on the declared operating philosophy identified in the design statement required by 1.3.2 which, in general, should recognise that smoke clearance is only undertaken when a fire has been extinguished since any attempt to clear smoke before a fire has been extinguished could introduce more air to the fire. Dedicated fixed smoke clearance trunking is to be of steel construction and both this and the fans are to be capable of operating at the temperatures of the exhaust gas from the extinguished fire but, in any case, not less than 250°C. Portable fans of suitable design may also be used with temperature resistant flexible trunking. Clearance of smoke is to be such that unaffected parts of the ship are not contaminated with smoke.

## Section 4 Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 The control engineering arrangements are to comply with Pt 9, Ch 1 as applicable.

4.1.2 The equipment used in HVAC systems is to be provided with local control and monitoring arrangements.

4.1.3 Where isolation of equipment or systems can be carried out, means of indicating the status of isolation is to be provided at positions where the equipment and system can be operated and monitored.

4.1.4 Instrumentation to indicate the operational status of running and any standby equipment is to be provided locally and at any control station.

4.1.5 All pumps are to be provided with an indication of discharge pressure and a low discharge pressure alarm at each control station.

4.1.6 The power to all independently driven ventilation fans is to be capable of being stopped from position(s) outside the fire boundary which will always be readily accessible in the event of fire occurring in any space, as well as from the local control panel.

4.1.7 Electrical engineering arrangements are to comply with Pt 10, Ch 1.

4.1.8 Refrigeration compressors are to be provided with the following instrumentation and automatic shutdowns:

- (a) Indication of suction pressure (saturated temperature), including intermediate stage when applicable.
- (b) Indication of discharge pressure (saturated temperature), including intermediate stage when applicable.
- (c) Indication of lubricating oil pressure.
- (d) Indication of cumulative running hours.
- (e) Automatic shutdown in the event of low lubricating oil pressure.
- (f) Automatic shutdown in the event of high discharge pressure which is to operate at a pressure in excess of normal operating pressure but not greater than 0,9 of the maximum working pressure.
- (g) Automatic shutdown in the event of a low suction pressure.

4.1.9 For refrigeration compressors greater than 25 kW, the following instrumentation, additional to that required by 4.1.8, is to be provided:

- (a) Indication of lubricating oil temperature.
- (b) Indication of cooling water outlet temperature.
- (c) Indication of suction and discharge temperatures.

4.1.10 Alarms are to be initiated in the event of the following fault conditions with refrigeration compressors:

- (a) High discharge pressure.
- (b) Low suction pressure.
- (c) Low oil pressure.
- (d) High discharge temperature.
- (e) High oil temperature.
- (f) Motor shutdown.

4.1.11 Refrigeration plants are to be provided with the following alarms:

- (a) Failure of condenser cooling water pumps.
- (b) High condenser cooling water outlet temperature.
- (c) Failure of air cooler fans.
- (d) High and low chilled water delivery temperatures.

4.1.12 Ventilation air heating/cooling plants are to be provided with the following instrumentation and alarms as applicable:

- (a) Indication of heating/cooling medium temperature.
- (b) Indication of delivery air temperature.

4.1.13 Filter units for ventilation systems for crew and embarked personnel installations are to be provided with the following instrumentation and alarms:

- (a) Indication of differential air pressure across the filter unit.
- (b) High differential air pressure alarm.

### ■ Section 5 Testing and trials

#### 5.1 Testing

5.1.1 The requirements of the Rules relating to testing of pressure vessels, piping and related fittings including hydraulic testing are applicable. See Pt 8, Ch 2,10 and Pt 7, Ch 1,16.

5.1.2 On completion, tanks and reservoirs for service and storage of system fluids are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected, but not less than 2,5 m above the crown of the tank.

5.1.3 After installation on board, piping systems together with associated fittings that are under internal pressure, are to be subjected to a running test at the intended maximum working pressure.

5.1.4 Testing is to cover the following items:

- (a) Verification of control, alarm, safety systems.
- (b) Tests simulating failure of HVAC equipment to verify correct functioning of alarms and systems in service.
- (c) Verification of accuracy, calibration and functioning of temperature control for HVAC systems.

#### 5.2 Type testing

5.2.1 Evidence that the required performance of heating/cooling/filtration systems, pump and fan equipment is capable of being maintained under ambient and inclination operating conditions defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.4 and 4.6 is to be provided by the manufacturer.

#### 5.3 Trials

5.3.1 Trials are to be carried out to demonstrate that the capability of the HVAC systems meets the design statement. The trials are as far as practicable to be representative of the actual conditions to be encountered in service.

# Waste Systems

# Volume 2, Part 11, Chapter 3

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Construction and installation**
- 3 **System arrangements**
- 4 **Treatment of solid waste matter**
- 5 **Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements**
- 6 **Testing and trials**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 This Chapter states the requirements for waste matter systems and arrangements installed in naval ships.

1.1.2 The requirements in this Chapter cover arrangements, equipment, and control systems necessary for effective functioning of waste matter systems on board a naval ship.

1.1.3 The Naval Authority may impose requirements additional to those in this Chapter.

1.1.4 The requirements of MARPOL Annex IV and Annex V are to be complied with, unless otherwise agreed by the Naval Authority. Where the Naval Authority opts to not apply MARPOL Annex IV or MARPOL Annex V then this is to be recorded in the tailoring document, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.11.

### 1.2 Scope

1.2.1 Waste matter systems included in this Chapter cover the following:

- (a) Sewage waste.
- (b) Galley waste.
- (c) Grey water.
- (d) Black water.
- (e) Solid waste.
- (f) Medical, sanitary, oil contaminated and hazardous waste.

Waste materials related to naval ship military operations are outside the scope of these requirements.

1.2.2 Oily wastes from machinery and other spaces are within the scope of the **EP** and **POL** class notations, see Vol 3, Pt 2, Ch 2 and Vol 3, Pt 3, Ch 6.

1.2.3 **Sewage waste** means:

- (a) Drainage and other wastes from any form of toilets, urinals and WC scuppers.
- (b) Drainage from medical premises (dispensary, sick, etc.) via wash basins, wash tubs and scuppers located in such spaces.
- (c) Other wastes waters when mixed with drainages defined in (a) and (b).

1.2.4 **Galley waste** means drainage from galleys that may be contaminated with food or other organic waste that may give rise to smell.

1.2.5 **Grey water** means drainage from baths, showers, sinks and laundry systems.

1.2.6 **Black water** means drainage from sewage systems and chemical wastes that could constitute a recognised health and safety risk to persons on board.

1.2.7 For the purposes of treatment and disposal: **solid waste** means food waste, plastics, medical waste, sanitary waste, oily rags and other dry waste such as paper, glass, metal, rags (non-oily) and packing materials. Contaminated CBRN protective wear are not within the scope of this definition.

### 1.3 Plans and information

1.3.1 Three copies of the plans and information stated in 1.3.2 to 1.3.7 are to be submitted to LR as applicable.

1.3.2 **Design statement.** A design statement of the waste systems, see Pt 1, Ch 2,3.2.2(c).

1.3.3 **Waste treatment and disposal plan.** A plan detailing the intended handling and treatment of solid waste is to be provided on board the ship. The plan is to detail the waste treatment procedures for all categories of solid waste with respect to the following criteria:

- (a) Estimate of total production of each waste type per crew member for a specified period for each specific ship's voyages/missions.
- (b) Processing facilities for solid waste matters, access and maintainability.
- (c) Waste retention/storage facilities, including size and location on board the ship, access and separation.
- (d) Overboard disposal of waste and permissions.
- (e) Disposal of waste ashore and handling facilities.
- (f) Treatment and handling of specialist waste, e.g. medical and oil contaminated waste.
- (g) Hygiene.
- (h) Waste segregation arrangements.

1.3.4 **Systems.** Plans in diagrammatic form showing piping arrangements, control systems and safeguards and electrical systems covered by this Chapter. The major component parts, pipe sizes, system flow rates and pressures together with capacities of pumps and plants and tanks are to be included. Any Standards or Design Guidance used for system design are to be stated.

**1.3.5 Compartments.** Plans showing the general arrangement of compartments, together with a description of the equipment and arrangements installed for handling, treatment, storage and disposal of waste and the electrical power supply systems. The plans are to indicate segregation and access arrangements for compartments and associated control rooms/stations.

**1.3.6 Testing and trials procedures.** A schedule of testing and trials to demonstrate that systems are capable of operating as described in Section 3.

**1.3.7 Operating Manuals.** Operating Manuals are to be provided on board and submitted for information where requested by LR. The manuals are to include the following information:

- (a) Particulars and a description of the systems.
- (b) Operating instructions for the equipment and systems.
- (c) Arrangements for the disposal of oily wastes from galleys.

## ■ Section 2 Construction and installation

### 2.1 Materials

**2.1.1** Pipes, valves and fittings are, in general, to be made of steel, ductile cast iron, copper, copper alloy, or other approved ductile material suitable for the intended purpose. The use of plastics materials is also acceptable subject to any restrictions in Pt 7, Ch 1,11.

**2.1.2** Where applicable, the materials are to comply with the requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1.

**2.1.3** The selection of materials in piping systems is to recognise the following details:

- (a) Fluid properties, pressures and temperatures.
  - (b) Location and configuration.
  - (c) Compatibility of materials.
  - (d) Fluid flow rates and static conditions.
  - (e) Minimising corrosion and erosion through life of system.
  - (f) System survey, cleaning and maintenance requirements.
- See Pt 7, Ch 1,17 for guidance notes on metal pipes for water services.

### 2.2 Pipe wall thickness

**2.2.1** The minimum nominal wall thickness of steel, copper and copper alloy pipes are to be in accordance with Pt 7, Ch 1.

**2.2.2** Special consideration will be given to the wall thickness of pipes made of materials other than steel, copper and copper alloy.

### 2.3 Piping and equipment – Selection and installation

**2.3.1** Pressurised tanks are to be in accordance with a recognised code and satisfy the Naval Authority's revalidation system for such items where applicable.

**2.3.2** Valves, flexible hose lengths, expansion pieces and pumps are to comply with the relevant requirements of Pt 7, Ch 1,12 to 15 (see also 2.1 regarding selection of materials). The configuration of piping systems is to be arranged to minimise erosion and corrosion of pipe and equipment materials. Equipment used in waste piping systems is to be suitable for its intended purpose, and accordingly, wherever practicable, be selected from the *Lists of LR Type Approved Products* published by LR.

**2.3.3** Pipes in piping systems are to be permanent pipes made with approved pipe connections to enable ready removal of valves, pumps, fittings and equipment. The pipes are to be efficiently secured in position to prevent chafing or lateral movement.

**2.3.4** Suitable means for expansion is to be made, where necessary, in each range of pipes.

**2.3.5** Efficient protection is to be provided for all pipes situated where they are liable to mechanical damage.

**2.3.6** All moving parts are to be provided with guards to minimise danger to personnel.

### 2.4 Valves – Installation and control

**2.4.1** Valves are to be fitted in places where they are at all times readily accessible.

**2.4.2** All valves that are provided with remote control arrangements are to be arranged for local manual operation, independent of the remote operating mechanism. The local manual means of operation is to be readily accessible.

**2.4.3** Relief valves are to be adjusted and bursting disks so selected that they relieve at a pressure not greater than the design pressure of the system. When satisfactorily adjusted, relief valves are to be protected against tampering or interference by wire with a lead seal or similar arrangement.

### 2.5 Coating of storage tanks and piping internal surfaces

**2.5.1** The storage tanks and metallic piping and valves are to be lined internally with a corrosion control coating suitable for the containment and transfer of waste matter.

**2.5.2** Corrosion control coatings are to be tested and certified as complying with standards specified by the Designer and agreed by the Naval Authority.

# Waste Systems

# Volume 2, Part 11, Chapter 3

Sections 2, 3 & 4

## 2.6 Plastics piping and flexible hoses

2.6.1 Subject to compliance with Pt 7, Ch 1, 11 and 13, and the relevant Sections of Pt 7, Ch 2, plastics piping may be used in piping systems for waste matter. Where storage tanks and metallic piping are constructed from materials that will not be affected by corrosion from waste matter, internal lining will not be insisted upon.

2.6.2 Plastics piping is to be selected in consultation with the manufacturers with regard to suitability with the proposed pipe system cleaning practice.

## Section 3 System arrangements

### 3.1 Arrangements

3.1.1 The installation and arrangements of systems and equipment are to recognise the manufacturer's recommendations for the effective functioning of waste systems.

3.1.2 The arrangements for waste systems are to be such that they are capable of operating under all normal angles of heel and trim.

Normal angles of heel and trim are to be taken as:

- (a) Ship on an even keel or has a list of not more than 5°.
- (b) Ship on even trim or is trimmed not more than 5° for a ship up to 100 m in length. Where the length of the ship exceeds 100 m, the maximum trim may be taken as 500/L degrees where  $L$  = length of ship, in metres.
- (c) The angles of heel and trim may occur simultaneously.

3.1.3 The piping system design for waste systems is to incorporate adequate fall and flow arrangements which exclude traps unless specifically required for system operation/cleaning. The determination of adequacy of fall and flow is to be made with reference to a suitable and proven design standard.

3.1.4 The piping system arrangements are to be such that they are capable of being cleaned and unblocked.

3.1.5 The processing/storage capacity of waste systems is to take into account the operational profile of the ship and its complement. For example, the ship may spend a prolonged period of time in littoral waters where sewage discharge overboard, treated or untreated, is prohibited by the relevant national authority and, therefore, adequate holding capacity may need to be provided.

3.1.6 The waste systems are to be of sufficient capacity to handle peak flows in addition to an average flow. Typically, peak flows can be three times the average hourly flow but this should be confirmed during the design stage.

3.1.7 Variations in the complement of the ship are to be taken into account but the system must be capable of satisfactory operation with the minimum number of persons on board when the ship is at sea.

3.1.8 If only one sewage treatment plant is fitted then arrangements are to be provided to allow essential maintenance work to be undertaken on this plant whilst retaining full use of the remainder of the sewage and waste water system.

3.1.9 Drains from medical facilities are to be led to the black water side of the sewage treatment plants or holding tanks.

3.1.10 Vents from wastes systems are to terminate outside the vessel. However, where a vessel is required to be capable of operating within an CBRN threat area then these vents are to be capable of being reconfigured to vent inside the citadel via charcoal filters.

3.1.11 Overboard discharges are to be arranged such that they are clear of accommodation ladders, areas where boats are loaded/unloaded, etc.

3.1.12 Arrangements are to be made for the disposal of oily wastes stemming from food preparation in galleys. Systems intended for the disposal of such oily wastes are to be separate from other waste systems. Suitable notices are to be provided advising that oily wastes are not to be disposed of.

## Section 4 Treatment of solid waste matter

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Disposal of solid waste is to be in accordance with MARPOL Annex V.

4.1.2 Facilities are to be provided on board for the treatment and storage of all solid waste generated. In general, facilities are to be provided for the thermal destruction of solid waste on board to enable disposal of as much solid waste as possible when the ship is at sea.

4.1.3 Sufficient space is to be made available to store and secure all waste generated between sailing and next shore stop, or waste collection where there are no incineration facilities on board.

4.1.4 The storage facilities are to be sufficient in capacity for the storage of solid waste produced during the defined ship's missions and capability of any installed thermal destruction plant for solid waste disposal. This is to take into account voyages in special areas where disposal is prohibited.

4.1.5 The storage of solid waste is to be such that the waste is prevented from rotting, by provision of suitable cooling facilities where necessary. Alternatively, the waste may be packed such that no gases or odours are spread.

4.1.6 Independent and safe storage spaces are to be available for medical, sanitary, oil contaminated and other hazardous wastes to ensure that such wastes are kept separate from each other and other solid wastes.

4.1.7 Each storage space shall be provided with adequate ventilation capacity and insulated, where necessary. Cooling facilities to comply with 4.1.5 may also be required. All spaces used for storage of solid waste are to be provided with fire detection equipment, and shelving within storage facilities are to be arranged in a grid so as to enable access for fire-fighting purposes.

4.1.8 Consideration shall be given to the location of treatment and storage rooms, in terms of separation from accommodation and communal areas. Similarly, waste treatment and storage spaces are to be located so as to facilitate the convenient handling of waste on board the ship, and its transfer ashore.

4.1.9 Solid waste treatment plant, such as food waste pulpers, compactors and shredders, are to be suitable for their intended function. The capacity of the waste processing equipment is to be sufficient to process the specified amount of waste. Equipment for wastes treatment is not to produce toxic fumes, heavy smoke or excessive noise when functioning.

4.1.10 The arrangements in waste storage spaces are to allow easy access for cleaning. Drains in solid waste storage and treatment spaces are to be easy to clean and should prevent waste/dirt entering the system. In selecting deck coating and covering materials, consideration is to be given to ease of cleaning, and impact and corrosion protection. Sufficient space is to be available on all sides of waste treatment equipment to allow maintenance access.

4.1.11 When the ship is in harbour, all stored waste is to be normally disposed of ashore or retained on board when reception facilities are not available.

## Section 5 Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 The control engineering arrangements are to comply with Pt 9, Ch 1 as applicable.

5.1.2 Equipment used in waste systems is to be provided with local control and monitoring arrangements.

5.1.3 Where isolation of equipment or systems can be carried out, means of indicating the status of isolation is to be provided at positions where the equipment and system can be operated and monitored.

5.1.4 Instrumentation to indicate the operational status of running and any standby equipment is to be provided locally and at each control station.

5.1.5 All pumps are to be provided with an indication of discharge pressure and a low discharge pressure alarm at the control station.

5.1.6 The electrical engineering arrangements are to comply with Pt 10, Ch 1.

5.1.7 The control, supervision and monitoring of thermal destruction units is to comply with Pt 7, Ch 3,9.4 where applicable.

## Section 6 Testing and trials

### 6.1 Testing

6.1.1 The requirements of the Rules relating to testing of pressure vessels, piping and related fittings including hydraulic testing are applicable. See Pt 8, Ch 2,10 and Pt 7, Ch 1,16.

6.1.2 On completion, tanks and reservoirs for service and storage of system fluids are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected, but not less than 2,5 m above the crown of the tank.

6.1.3 After installation on board, piping systems together with associated fittings that are under internal pressure, are to be subjected to a running test at the intended maximum working pressure.

6.1.4 Testing is to cover the following items:  
(a) Verification of control, alarm, safety systems.  
(b) Tests simulating failure of waste system equipment and pumps to verify correct functioning of alarms and systems in service.

### 6.2 Type testing

6.2.1 Evidence that the required performance of drainage and pumping equipment is capable of being maintained under ambient and inclination operating conditions defined in Pt 1, Ch 2,4.4 and 4.6 is to be provided by the manufacturer.

### 6.3 Trials

6.3.1 Trials are to be carried out to demonstrate that the capability of the waste systems meet the design statement. The trials are as far practicable to be representative of the actual conditions to be encountered in service.

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013  
Published by Lloyd's Register  
*Registered office*  
71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS  
United Kingdom

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 3  
January 2013



# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 3

Part 1 Additional Sea-going Features

January 2013

---

|             |                  |                                                           |
|-------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>PART</b> | <b>1</b>         | <b>ADDITIONAL SEA-GOING FEATURES</b>                      |
|             | <b>Chapter 1</b> | <b>Ice Navigation – First Year Ice Conditions</b>         |
|             | <b>2</b>         | <b>Integrated Propulsion Systems</b>                      |
|             | <b>3</b>         | <b>Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy</b>       |
|             | <b>4</b>         | <b>Manoeuvring Assessment</b>                             |
|             | <b>5</b>         | <b>Replenishment at Sea (RAS) Systems</b>                 |
|             | <b>6</b>         | <b>Buoyancy, Stability and Controllability Assessment</b> |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>2</b>         | <b>ADDITIONAL ENVIRONMENT AND SAFETY FEATURES</b>         |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>3</b>         | <b>SAFETY EQUIPMENT AND ARRANGEMENTS</b>                  |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

---

|                |          |                                                                |
|----------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>ICE NAVIGATION – FIRST YEAR ICE CONDITIONS</b>              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                    |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                                    |
|                | 1.2      | Plans and information                                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Hull strengthening requirements</b>                         |
|                | 2.1      | Application                                                    |
|                | 2.2      | Definitions                                                    |
|                | 2.3      | Powering of ice strengthened ships                             |
|                | 2.4      | Shell plating                                                  |
|                | 2.5      | Transverse framing                                             |
|                | 2.6      | Longitudinal framing                                           |
|                | 2.7      | Framing – General requirements                                 |
|                | 2.8      | Primary longitudinal members supporting transverse ice framing |
|                | 2.9      | Web frames                                                     |
|                | 2.10     | Stem                                                           |
|                | 2.11     | Stern                                                          |
|                | 2.12     | Bossings and shaft struts                                      |
|                | 2.13     | Rudder and steering arrangements                               |
|                | 2.14     | Direct calculations                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Machinery and engineering systems</b>                       |
|                | 3.1      | General                                                        |
|                | 3.2      | Symbols and definitions                                        |
|                | 3.3      | Engine output                                                  |
|                | 3.4      | Materials for shafting                                         |
|                | 3.5      | Materials for propellers                                       |
|                | 3.6      | Determination of ice torque                                    |
|                | 3.7      | Propeller blade sections                                       |
|                | 3.8      | Propeller blade minimum tip thickness                          |
|                | 3.9      | Intermediate blade sections                                    |
|                | 3.10     | Blade edge thickness                                           |
|                | 3.11     | Mechanisms for controllable pitch propellers                   |
|                | 3.12     | Keyless propellers                                             |
|                | 3.13     | Screwshafts                                                    |
|                | 3.14     | Intermediate and thrust shafts                                 |
|                | 3.15     | Reduction gearing                                              |
|                | 3.16     | Starting arrangements                                          |
|                | 3.17     | Sea inlet chests and cooling water systems                     |
|                | 3.18     | Fire pumps in motor ships                                      |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>INTEGRATED PROPULSION SYSTEMS</b>                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                    |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                                    |
|                | 1.2      | Plans                                                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Machinery arrangements</b>                                  |
|                | 2.1      | Main propulsion machinery                                      |
|                | 2.2      | Supply of electric power and essential services                |
|                | 2.3      | Controllable pitch propellers                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Control arrangements</b>                                    |
|                | 3.1      | Bridge control                                                 |
|                | 3.2      | Alarm system                                                   |
|                | 3.3      | Communication                                                  |
|                | 3.4      | Engine starting safeguards                                     |
|                | 3.5      | Operational safeguards                                         |
|                | 3.6      | Automatic control of essential services                        |
|                | 3.7      | Local control                                                  |

## CHAPTER 3 PROPULSION AND STEERING MACHINERY REDUNDANCY

### Section 1 General requirements

- 1.1 General
- 1.2 Plans and information

### Section 2 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)

- 2.1 General

### Section 3 Machinery arrangements

- 3.1 Main propulsion machinery
- 3.2 Steering machinery
- 3.3 Electrical power supply
- 3.4 Essential services for machinery
- 3.5 Oil fuel storage and transfer systems

### Section 4 Control arrangements

- 4.1 General
- 4.2 Bridge control

### Section 5 Separate machinery spaces ★ (star) Enhancement

- 5.1 General
- 5.2 Machinery arrangements
- 5.3 Electrical power supply
- 5.4 Essential services for machinery
- 5.5 Bilge drainage arrangements
- 5.6 Oil fuel storage
- 5.7 Fire containment
- 5.8 FMEA

### Section 6 Testing and trials

- 6.1 Sea trials

## CHAPTER 4 MANOEUVRING ASSESSMENT

### Section 1 General

- 1.1 Application
- 1.2 Class notations
- 1.3 Information and plans to be submitted
- 1.4 Sister ships

### Section 2 Assessment for LMA notation

- 2.1 General
- 2.2 Manoeuvres to be assessed
- 2.3 Manoeuvring standards
- 2.4 Model tests
- 2.5 Wheelhouse poster and manoeuvring booklet
- 2.6 Manoeuvring information card

### Section 3 Assessment for LNMA notation

- 3.1 General
- 3.2 Manoeuvring performance criteria
- 3.3 Wheelhouse poster and manoeuvring booklet
- 3.4 Manoeuvring information card

### Section 4 Verification trials

- 4.1 General
- 4.2 Environmental restrictions
- 4.3 Draught conditions
- 4.4 Approach conditions
- 4.5 Representative manoeuvres (LMA) notation
- 4.6 Representative manoeuvres (LNMA) notation

|                    |              |                                                                     |
|--------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>5</b>     | <b>Guidelines on conducting ship verification trials</b>            |
|                    | 5.1          | General                                                             |
|                    | 5.2          | Calibration of the data logging and measurement system              |
|                    | 5.3          | Data recording                                                      |
|                    | 5.4          | Turning circle manoeuvring trials                                   |
|                    | 5.5          | Pull-out manoeuvring trials                                         |
|                    | 5.6          | Stopping trials                                                     |
|                    | 5.7          | Zig-zag manoeuvring trials                                          |
|                    | 5.8          | Initial turning manoeuvring trials                                  |
|                    | 5.9          | Spiral manoeuvring trials                                           |
|                    | 5.10         | Man overboard manoeuvring trials                                    |
|                    | 5.11         | Manoeuvring trials for auxiliary thrusters                          |
|                    | 5.12         | Acceleration trials                                                 |
|                    | 5.13         | Turning from rest                                                   |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>5</b> | <br><b>REPLENISHMENT AT SEA (RAS) SYSTEMS</b>                       |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>1</b>     | <b>General requirements</b>                                         |
|                    | 1.1          | Application                                                         |
|                    | 1.2          | RAS terminology                                                     |
|                    | 1.3          | Safety                                                              |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>2</b>     | <b>Principles</b>                                                   |
|                    | 2.1          | Design and operating principles                                     |
|                    | 2.2          | Lifecycle principles                                                |
|                    | 2.3          | Class notations                                                     |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>3</b>     | <b>Acceptance criteria</b>                                          |
|                    | 3.1          | General                                                             |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>4</b>     | <b>Design and construction</b>                                      |
|                    | 4.1          | General                                                             |
|                    | 4.2          | Functionality                                                       |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>5</b>     | <b>Plans and particulars to be submitted</b>                        |
|                    | 5.1          | Plans and information                                               |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>6</b>     | <b>Ship and arrangement requirements</b>                            |
|                    | 6.1          | Location of RAS stations and equipment                              |
|                    | 6.2          | RAS observation positions                                           |
|                    | 6.3          | RAS equipment store arrangements                                    |
|                    | 6.4          | Position of radar units and other sources of electromagnetic energy |
|                    | 6.5          | Location and layout of stores                                       |
|                    | 6.6          | Ship's structure                                                    |
|                    | 6.7          | Sources of high intensity noise                                     |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>7</b>     | <b>Ship operating system requirements</b>                           |
|                    | 7.1          | Bridge conning position                                             |
|                    | 7.2          | Machinery redundancy                                                |
|                    | 7.3          | Sea-keeping and manoeuvrability                                     |
|                    | 7.4          | Communications, signals and navigational aids                       |
|                    | 7.5          | RAS operations                                                      |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>8</b>     | <b>RAS station requirements</b>                                     |
|                    | 8.1          | General                                                             |
|                    | 8.2          | RAS equipment control station                                       |
|                    | 8.3          | Emergency equipment                                                 |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>9</b>     | <b>Transfer of liquids</b>                                          |
|                    | 9.1          | General                                                             |
|                    | 9.2          | Filling and supply connections and arrangements                     |

---

|                    |              |                                                               |
|--------------------|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>10</b>    | <b>Transfer of solids</b>                                     |
|                    | 10.1         | General                                                       |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>11</b>    | <b>Transfer of personnel</b>                                  |
|                    | 11.1         | General                                                       |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>12</b>    | <b>RAS equipment</b>                                          |
|                    | 12.1         | General                                                       |
|                    | 12.2         | Emergency breakaway                                           |
|                    | 12.3         | Lifting devices                                               |
|                    | 12.4         | Hoses and fittings                                            |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>13</b>    | <b>Testing and trials</b>                                     |
|                    | 13.1         | General                                                       |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>14</b>    | <b>Survey through life</b>                                    |
|                    | 14.1         | General                                                       |
| <br><b>CHAPTER</b> | <br><b>6</b> | <br><b>BUOYANCY, STABILITY AND CONTROLLABILITY ASSESSMENT</b> |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>1</b>     | <b>General</b>                                                |
|                    | 1.1          | Application                                                   |
|                    | 1.2          | Information and plans                                         |
| <b>Section</b>     | <b>2</b>     | <b>Requirements</b>                                           |
|                    | 2.1          | Watertight integrity                                          |
|                    | 2.2          | Reserve of buoyancy                                           |
|                    | 2.3          | Reserve of stability                                          |
|                    | 2.4          | Safety of embarked persons                                    |
|                    | 2.5          | Provision of operational information                          |

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Hull strengthening requirements**
- 3 **Machinery and engineering systems**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 Where additional strengthening for the hull is fitted in accordance with the requirements of Section 2 and the machinery and engineering systems are in accordance with Section 3, an appropriate Ice Class notation will be assigned. See Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.9.13.

1.1.2 The requirements for navigation in ice stated in Sections 2 and 3 are intended for ships operating in first year ice irrespective of whether assistance from ice breakers is anticipated. They are not intended for ships designed to operate in multi-year ice conditions.

### 1.2 Plans and information

1.2.1 Plans and information showing compliance with the hull structure and machinery and engineering systems requirements are to be submitted for approval. The plans and information are to indicate compliance with Sections 2 and 3 and the information is to be incorporated in the plans and information submitted for approval in open water service conditions for the relevant Chapters in Volumes 1 and 2.

## ■ Section 2 Hull strengthening requirements

### 2.1 Application

2.1.1 Where the notation 'Ice Class 1AS, 1A, 1B, or 1C' as specified in Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.9.13 is desired, the ship is to comply with the requirements of this Section, in addition to those for sea-going service, so far as they are applicable.

2.1.2 The vertical extent of the ice strengthening is related to the ice light and ice load waterlines, which are defined in 2.2. The maximum and minimum Ice Class draughts at both the fore and aft ends will be stated on the Class Certificate.

2.1.3 The ballast capacity of the ship is to be sufficient to give adequate propeller immersion in all ice navigating conditions without trimming the ship in such a manner that the actual waterline at the bow is below the ice light waterline. Ballast tanks situated above the ice light waterline and adjacent to the shell, which are intended to be used in ice navigating conditions, are to be provided with heating pipes.

2.1.4 The requirements of this Section are formulated for both transverse and longitudinal framing systems but it is recommended that, whenever practicable, transverse framing is selected.

2.1.5 The requirements of this Section assume that when approaching ice infested waters the ship's speed will be reduced appropriately. The vertical extent of ice strengthening for ships intended to operate at speeds exceeding 15 knots in areas containing isolated ice floes will be specially considered.

2.1.6 An icebreaking ship is to have a hull form at the fore end adapted to break ice effectively. It is recommended that bulbous bows are not fitted to **Ice Class 1AS** ships.

2.1.7 The stern of an icebreaking ship is to have a form such that broken ice is effectively displaced.

2.1.8 Where it is desired to make provision for short tow operations, the bow area is to be suitably reinforced. Similarly, icebreakers may require local reinforcement in way of the stern fork.

### 2.2 Definitions, see Fig. 1.2.1

2.2.1 The **Ice Deep Waterline** corresponds to the Deep Draught Waterline. Where specially requested and where permitted by the Naval Authority, an Ice Deep Waterline may be specified which differs from the foregoing, but corresponds to the deepest condition in which the ship is expected to navigate in ice. See Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 1,5.3 for margins.

2.2.2 The **Ice Light Waterline** is that corresponding to the lightest condition in which the ship is expected to navigate in ice. However, it is recommended that the minimum draught at the fore end is not to be less than:

$$T_f = (1,5 + 0,1 \sqrt[3]{\Delta}) h \text{ m}$$

where

- $h$  = the nominal ice thickness, in metres, associated with the desired Ice Class, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.9.13.
- $\Delta$  = displacement as defined in 2.2.11.

2.2.3 The Ice Deep Waterline and the Ice Light Waterline are to be indicated on the plans.

2.2.4 The **Main Ice Belt Zone** extends vertically above and below the waterline defined in 2.2.1 and 2.2.2 by the distances shown in Table 1.2.1. For ships fitted with a bulbous bow, the vertical extent of the Main Belt Zone will be suitably increased.

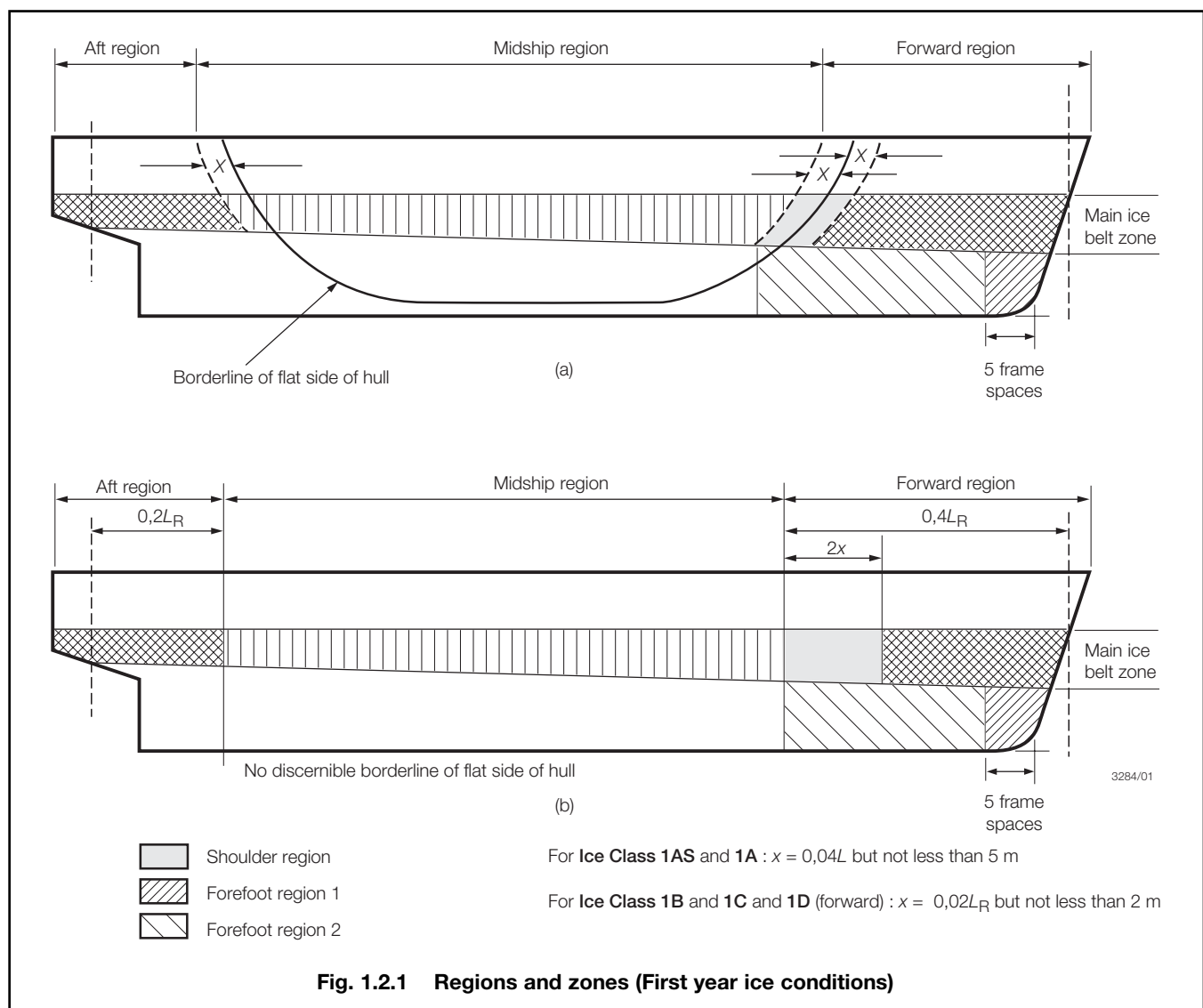


Fig. 1.2.1 Regions and zones (First year ice conditions)

Table 1.2.1 Vertical extent of main ice belt zone

| Class | Above Ice Load Waterline (mm) | Below Ice Light Waterline (mm) |
|-------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1AS   | 600                           | 750                            |
| 1A    | 500                           | 600                            |
| 1B    | 400                           | 500                            |
| 1C    | 400                           | 500                            |

2.2.5 The **Forward Region** extends from the stem to aft of the forward borderline of the flat side of the hull by a distance equal to the greater of  $0,04L_R$  or 5 m for **Ice Classes 1AS and 1A**, or the greater of  $0,02L_R$  or 2 m for **Ice Classes 1B and 1C**. Where no clear forward borderline of the flat side of the hull is discernible, the aft boundary of the forward region is to be taken  $0,4L_R$  aft of the forward perpendicular.

2.2.6 **Forefoot Region 1** is the area below the main ice belt zone extending from the stem, or the fore end of the bulb where a bulbous bow is fitted, to a position five frame spaces aft of the point of intersection between the level keel line and the raked stem.

2.2.7 **Forefoot Region 2** is the area below the main ice belt extending from the aft boundary of Forefoot Region 1 to the aft boundary of the forward region and encompasses both side and bottom shell plating.

2.2.8 The **Shoulder Region** is a part of the main ice belt zone in the forward region and extends from the aft boundary of the forward region to forward of the forward borderline of the flat side of the hull by a distance of  $0,04L_R$  for **Ice Classes 1AS and 1A** or  $0,02L_R$  for **Ice Classes 1B and 1C**. Where no clear forward borderline of the flat side of the hull is discernible, the forward boundary of the shoulder region is to be taken  $0,32L_R$  aft of the forward perpendicular for **Ice Classes 1AS and 1A** or  $0,36L_R$  aft of the forward perpendicular for **Ice Classes 1B and 1C**. The extent of the shoulder region forward of its aft boundary is not to be taken as less than 10 m for **Ice Classes 1AS and 1A** or 4 m for **Ice Classes 1B and 1C**.



2.2.9 The **Midship Region** extends from the aft boundary of the forward region to aft of the aft borderline of the flat side of the hull by a distance equal to the greater of  $0,04L_R$  or 5 m for **Ice Classes 1AS** and **1A** or the greater of  $0,02L_R$  or 2 m for **Ice Classes 1B** and **1C**. Where no clear aft borderline of the flat side of the hull is discernible, the aft boundary of the midship region is to be taken  $0,2L_R$  forward of the aft perpendicular.

2.2.10 The **Aft Region** extends from the aft boundary of the midship region to the stern.

2.2.11 **Displacement**  $\Delta$  is the displacement, in tonnes, at the Ice Deep Waterline when floating in water having a relative density of 1,0.

2.2.12 **Shaft power**,  $P_0$ , is the maximum propulsion shaft power, in kW, for which the machinery is to be classed.

## 2.3 Powering of ice strengthened ships

2.3.1 The total shaft power installed in ice strengthened ships is to be not less than  $P$  required by Section 3 for the desired Ice Class notation.

2.3.2 Ice strengthened ships which are to be considered to have an independent icebreaking capability are to be able to develop sufficient thrust to permit continuous mode icebreaking at a speed of at least five knots in ice having a thickness equal to the nominal value specified in Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.9.13 for the desired Ice Class and a snow cover of at least 0,3 m.

2.3.3 The requirements of 2.4 to 2.10 are formulated on the assumption that the shaft power necessary to provide an independent icebreaking capability as described in 2.3.2 can be determined by the equation:

$$P_1 = 0,736C_1 C_2 C_3 C_4 [240B h (1 + h + 0,035v^2) + 70S_c \sqrt{L}]$$

where

$B$  = breadth as defined in Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 1,5

$C_1 = \frac{1,2B}{\sqrt{\Delta}}$ , but is not to be taken as less than 1,0

$C_2 = 0,9$  if the ship is fitted with a controllable pitch propeller, otherwise 1,0

$C_3 = 0,9$  if the rake of the stem is  $45^\circ$  or less, otherwise 1,0. The product  $C_2 C_3$  is not to be taken as less than 0,85

$C_4 = 1,1$  if the ship is fitted with a bulbous bow, otherwise 1,0

$h$  = ice thickness as defined in 2.2.2

$S_c$  = depth of snow cover

$v$  = ship speed, in knots, when breaking ice of thickness  $h$

2.3.4 The ice strengthening requirements of 2.4 to 2.10 include a power-displacement correction factor,  $\gamma$ , which is to be determined as follows:

(a) Forward region

$$\gamma = 0,653 + 3,217 \sqrt{P_0 \Delta} \times 10^{-5}$$

$$\text{or } \gamma = 0,876 + 9,908 \sqrt{P_0 \Delta} \times 10^{-6}$$

or  $\gamma = 1,0$  whichever is the least

where

$P_0$  and  $\Delta$  are as defined in 2.2.

For ships assigned **Ice Classes 1AS** and **1A**, in which the installed shaft power  $P_0$  exceeds the shaft power  $P_1$  determined in accordance with 2.3.3 when the ship speed is taken as five knots, the ice thickness,  $h$ , as defined in Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.9.13 and the snow cover  $S_c$  is taken as 0,3 m,  $\gamma$  for the forward region is to be multiplied by the following factor:

(i) for shell plating

$$1 + 0,1 \frac{P_0 - P_1}{P_1}$$

(ii) for framing, stringers and web frames

$$1 + 0,05 \frac{P_0 - P_1}{P_1}$$

but  $\gamma$  need not be taken greater than 1,1.

(b) Midship and aft regions

$$\gamma = 0,653 + 9,908 \sqrt{P_0 \Delta} \times 10^{-6}$$

or  $\gamma = 0,79$ , whichever is the lesser.

## 2.4 Shell plating

2.4.1 In way of the main ice belt zone, the thickness of the shell plating is not to be less than:

$$t = A s \alpha_p \beta \gamma \sqrt{\frac{4,7}{\sigma_0}} + c \text{ mm}$$

where

$c$  = corrosion-abrasion increment to be taken as 2 mm for first year Ice Classes, see also 2.4.3

$s$  = distance to the adjacent main or intermediate frame, in mm

$A = 0,40$  in association with transverse framing

$A = 0,41$  in association with longitudinal framing

$\alpha_p$  = longitudinal distribution factor, dependent on Ice Class and longitudinal position, as given in Table 1.2.2

$\beta$  = vertical distribution factor, to be taken as 1,0 for all first year Ice Classes

$\gamma$  = power-displacement factor determined in accordance with 2.3.4

$\sigma_0$  = specified minimum yield stress of the steel, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>. For mild steel, the value 235 N/mm<sup>2</sup> is to be used.

**Table 1.2.2 Longitudinal distribution factor-shell plating**

| Ice Class | $\alpha_p$ |         |      |
|-----------|------------|---------|------|
|           | Forward    | Midship | Aft  |
| 1AS       | 1,00       | 0,95    | 0,85 |
| 1A        | 0,98       | 0,86    | 0,73 |
| 1B        | 0,93       | 0,71    | 0,57 |
| 1C        | 0,86       | 0,53    | 0,38 |

2.4.2 Where operation in first year ice is an emergency feature as recognised by Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.9.13 with a \* annotated to the Ice Class notation, consideration will be given to the use of fully plastic design criteria for the shell plating.

2.4.3 If a recognised low friction surface coating is to be applied in way of the main ice belt and is to be maintained in good condition during service, the thickness determined in accordance with 2.4.1 may be reduced by 1 mm.

2.4.4 For **Ice Classes 1AS** and **1A**, where the hull form includes a pronounced shoulder, the value of the corrosion-abrasion increment in the shoulder region will be specially considered.

2.4.5 For **Ice Classes 1AS** and **1A**, the thickness of shell plating is to be as follows:

- In Forefoot Region 1 – not less than that determined in accordance with 2.4.1 for the main ice belt zone in the forward region.
- In Forefoot Region 2 – 2 mm greater than that required by Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 3 or Vol 1, Part 7 for ships with TLA notation.
- For the forward  $0,2L_R$ , the region 2 m above the main ice belt zone in ships having an open water speed equal to and exceeding 17,5 knots (9 m/sec) – not less than that required in the ice belt in the Midship Region.

2.4.6 Changes in plating thicknesses in the longitudinal direction are to take place gradually. Side scuttles are not to be situated in the ice belt.

2.4.7 If the weather deck in any part of the ship is situated below the upper limit of the ice belt, as may be the case of a raised-quarter decker, the bulwark is to be reinforced to a standard required for the shell plating in the main ice belt.

## 2.5 Transverse framing

2.5.1 The increased requirements for transversely framed structures are normally met by the addition of intermediate frames.

2.5.2 Ships with shock enhanced notation transverse intermediate frames are not to be fitted. The ice strengthening requirements are to be met by the use of reduced main frame spacing.

2.5.3 The section modulus of transverse main and intermediate frames (including a width of attached plating equal to  $s$ ), is to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$Z = Cs \alpha_t \beta \gamma^2 \frac{4,7}{\sigma_o l} (3l^2 - h^2) K \text{ cm}^3$$

where

$d$  = distance, in metres, measured along the frame from the lower span point to the ice deep waterline or from the upper span point to the ice light waterline, whichever is the lesser. In no case is this distance to be taken greater than  $\frac{l}{2}$

$h$  = nominal ice thickness, in metres, for the Ice Class as defined in Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.9.13

$s$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$  and  $\sigma_o$  are as defined in 2.4.1

$C = 12,5$

$K = \frac{4d(l-d)}{l^2}$  but is not to be taken greater than

1,0 nor less than 0,3. If the lower span point is above the ice load waterline or the upper span point is below the ice light waterline, then  $k$  is to be taken as 0,3

$\alpha_t$  = longitudinal distribution factor, dependent on Ice Class and longitudinal position, as given in Table 1.2.3

$l$  = span, in metres, measured along a chord at the side between the span points. For definitions of span points, see Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 2.2. Where adjacent main and intermediate frames have different end connections, resulting in different spans, a mean value is to be used.

**Table 1.2.3 Longitudinal distribution factor-transverse framing**

| Ice Class | $\alpha_t$ |         |      |
|-----------|------------|---------|------|
|           | Forward    | Midship | Aft  |
| 1AS       | 1,00       | 0,87    | 0,66 |
| 1A        | 0,89       | 0,68    | 0,49 |
| 1B        | 0,78       | 0,49    | 0,33 |
| 1C        | 0,66       | 0,31    | 0,16 |

2.5.4 The inertia of transverse main and intermediate frames including a width of attached plating equal to  $s$  is to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$I = 4Zl \text{ cm}^4$$

where

$Z$  and  $l$  are as defined in 2.5.3.

2.5.5 The cross-sectional shear resisting area of transverse main and intermediate frames is to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$A = Cs \alpha_t \beta \gamma^2 \frac{4,7}{\sigma_o} K_s \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$s$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$  and  $\sigma_o$  are as defined in 2.4.1

$C = 3,75$

$K_s = 0,5$  if the upper span point is below the bottom edge of the main ice belt zone or the lower span point is above the upper edge of the main ice belt zone

$= 1,0$  for all other cases

$\alpha_t$  is as defined in 2.5.3.

2.5.6 Except as allowed by 2.5.7 to 2.5.9, main and intermediate frames having scantlings as required by 2.5.2 to 2.5.5 are to be continued and bracketed to the first primary longitudinal member outside of the minimum extent of ice framing given in Table 1.2.4 or to the top of floors in ships having a single bottom. In the latter case intermediate frames will require to be bracketed, or otherwise efficiently attached to a gusset plate which is to be fitted at the level of top of floors. The free edge of the horizontal gusset should be suitably supported. In this context a primary longitudinal member is defined as either a deck, inner bottom, margin plate, deep tank top or ice stringer complying with the requirements of 2.8.

**Table 1.2.4 Minimum extent of ice framing**

| Ice Class  | Region                                | Minimum extent of ice framing |                                                                        |
|------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|            |                                       | Above Ice Deep Waterline (mm) | Below Ice Light Waterline (mm)                                         |
| 1AS        | Forward (stem to $0,3L_P$ )           | 1200                          | To double bottom or top of floors or 1600 mm, whichever is the greater |
|            | Forward (abaft $0,3L_P$ ) and Midship | 1200                          | 1600                                                                   |
|            | Aft                                   | 1200                          | 1200                                                                   |
| 1A, 1B, 1C | Forward (stem to $0,3L_P$ )           | 1000                          | 1600                                                                   |
|            | Forward (abaft $0,3L$ ) and Midship   | 1000                          | 1300                                                                   |
|            | Aft                                   | 1000                          | 1000                                                                   |

2.5.7 If a primary longitudinal member is fitted within 0,25 m inside a boundary of the minimum extent of ice framing, intermediate frames may be terminated at that member.

2.5.8 If a primary longitudinal member is fitted within 1 m inside a boundary of the minimum extent of ice framing, the intermediate frames may be terminated at that boundary, provided that their ends are attached to the adjacent main frames by a horizontal intercostal member having the same scantlings as the intermediate frames.

2.5.9 If primary longitudinal members are not fitted, or are located more than 1 m inside a boundary of the minimum extent of ice framing, then the intermediate frames may be either:

- extended to a primary longitudinal member or equivalent as defined by 2.5.6.
- terminated at the boundary of minimum extent of ice framing and attached by a horizontal intercostal member, having the same scantlings as the intermediate frames, to the adjacent main frames. The scantlings of the main frames are to be based on the spacing and span of the main frames. The inertia of the intermediate frames is to be not less than 75 per cent of the main frames.

2.5.10 Except where provided for in 2.5.7 and 2.5.9, the ends of intermediate frames are to be bracketed or otherwise efficiently attached to a primary longitudinal member or are to be attached to adjacent brackets, floors or main frames by a longitudinal flat bar. See also 2.7.5.

2.5.11 In twin screw ships, three intermediate frames forward of, and three aft of, the propeller blade tips are to extend to the double bottom.

## 2.6 Longitudinal framing

2.6.1 The section modulus of longitudinal frames (including a width of attached plating equal to  $s$ ), is to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$Z = Cs \alpha_1 \beta \gamma^2 l^2 \frac{4,7}{\sigma_o} \text{ cm}^3$$

where

$h$  = ice thickness as defined in 2.2.2

$l$  is as defined in 2.5.3

$s$  = spacing, in mm, of longitudinal frames but need not be taken as greater than  $1000h$

$C = 16,6$

$\alpha_1$  = longitudinal distribution factor, dependent on Ice Class and longitudinal position, as given in Table 1.2.5

$\beta$ ,  $\gamma$  and  $\sigma_o$  are as defined in 2.4.1.

**Table 1.2.5 Longitudinal distribution factor-longitudinal framing**

| Ice Class | $\alpha_1$ |         |      |
|-----------|------------|---------|------|
|           | Forward    | Midship | Aft  |
| 1AS       | 1,00       | 0,95    | 0,71 |
| 1A        | 0,90       | 0,74    | 0,53 |
| 1B        | 0,80       | 0,51    | 0,34 |
| 1C        | 0,68       | 0,32    | 0,16 |

2.6.2 The inertia of longitudinal frames, including a width of attached plating equal to  $s$ , is to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$I = Cs \alpha_1 \beta \gamma^2 l^{2,3} \frac{4,7}{\sigma_o} \text{ cm}^4$$

where

$$C = 270$$

Other symbols are as defined in 2.6.1.

2.6.3 The cross-sectional shear resisting area of longitudinal frames is to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$A = Fs \alpha_1 \beta \gamma^2 l \frac{4,7}{\sigma_o} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$$F = 2,5$$

Other symbols are as defined in 2.6.1.

2.6.4 Where longitudinal framing is adopted, frames satisfying the requirements of 2.6.1 to 2.6.3 are to be fitted within the minimum vertical extent of ice framing in Table 1.2.4.

## 2.7 Framing – General requirements

2.7.1 The web thickness of ice frames is not, in general, to be less than half that of the attached shell plating with a minimum of 9 mm.

2.7.2 Where a frame intersects a boundary between two of the hull regions defined in 2.2, the scantling requirements applicable will be those for the forward region if the forward midship boundary is intersected or for the midship region if the aft midship boundary is intersected.

2.7.3 Main and intermediate frames within the minimum extent of ice framing given in Table 1.2.4 are to be efficiently supported to prevent tripping, e.g., as shown in Fig. 1.2.2. The distance between anti-tripping supports is not to exceed 1500 mm. The extent of anti-tripping supports is to be as given in Table 1.2.6.

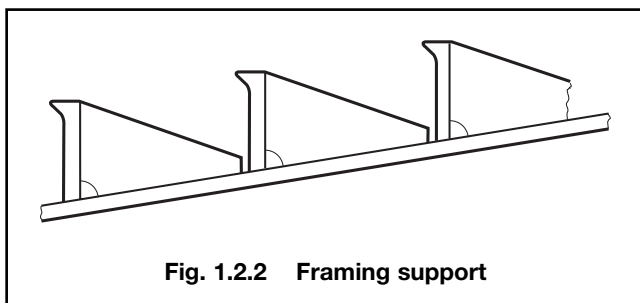


Fig. 1.2.2 Framing support

Table 1.2.6 Extent of anti-tripping supports

| Ice Class | Extent of anti-tripping supports |
|-----------|----------------------------------|
| 1AS       | All regions                      |
| 1A        | Forward and midship region       |
| 1B        | Forward region                   |
| 1C        | Forward region                   |

2.7.4 Ice frames are to be attached to the shell plating by double continuous welding and are not to be scalloped except at shell plating seams or butts. However, in the case of the aft region for **Ice Class 1A, 1B and 1C** and the midship region for **Ice Class 1B and 1C**, consideration will be given to the use of intermittent welding provided the requirements of Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 6,4.9 are complied with.

2.7.5 Frames are to be effectively attached to supporting structure by brackets. In general, longitudinals are to be connected to both sides of cut-outs in the webs of transverse structure.

2.7.6 The effective weld area attaching ice frames to primary members is not to be less than the shear area for the frames as required by 2.5.2 or 2.6.3, as appropriate.

2.7.7 Where a bulkhead or deck is fitted instead of an ice strengthened frame, the thickness of the bulkhead or deck adjacent to the shell is normally to be that of the frame for a width sufficient to give an area equal to the frame.

## 2.8 Primary longitudinal members supporting transverse ice framing

2.8.1 The section modulus of ice stringers or of decks adjacent to hatchways, including a width of attached plating determined in accordance with Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 2,2.3 and taken about an axis parallel to the plating, is to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$Z = C \alpha_o \beta \gamma^2 l^2 \frac{4,7}{\sigma_o} \text{ cm}^3$$

where

$l$  = span, in metres, of the ice stringer or deck adjacent to a hatchway determined in accordance with Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 2,2.

$$C = 11\,300$$

$\alpha_o$  = longitudinal distribution factor, dependent on Ice class and longitudinal position, as given in Table 1.2.7

$\beta$ ,  $\gamma$  and  $\sigma_o$  are as defined in 2.4.1.

Table 1.2.7 Longitudinal distribution factor—primary longitudinal members

| Ice Class | $\alpha_o$ |         |      |
|-----------|------------|---------|------|
|           | Forward    | Midship | Aft  |
| 1AS       | 1,00       | 0,98    | 0,89 |
| 1A        | 0,87       | 0,75    | 0,64 |
| 1B        | 0,78       | 0,64    | 0,51 |
| 1C        | 0,68       | 0,53    | 0,37 |

2.8.2 The cross-sectional shear resisting area of ice stringers or of decks adjacent to hatchways is to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$A = C \alpha_o \beta \gamma^2 l \frac{4,7}{\sigma_o} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$$C = 1240$$

Other symbols are as defined in 2.8.1.

2.8.3 Where the span of a deck adjacent to a hatchway exceeds 10 times the width of the deck strip the scantlings of the deck section may require special consideration to ensure adequate stiffness.

2.8.4 The webs of primary longitudinal members supporting transverse ice frames are to be stiffened and connected to the main or intermediate frames so that the distance,  $r$ , between such stiffening is not to be greater than given according to the following formula:

$$r = \frac{291t^3}{\alpha_o \beta \gamma^2} \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  = thickness, in mm, of the primary longitudinal member adjacent to the shell plating

Other symbols are as defined in 2.8.1.

2.8.5 The minimum thickness of the web plating of longitudinal primary members is to comply with the requirements of Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 6,5.

## 2.9 Web frames

2.9.1 The section modulus of web frames supporting ice stringers or longitudinal ice frames including a width of attached plating determined in accordance with Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 2,2 and taken about an axis parallel to the plating is to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$Z = Cs \alpha_o \beta \gamma^2 l \frac{4,7}{\sigma_o} \text{ cm}^3$$

where

$l$  = span, in metres, of the web frames determined in accordance with Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 2,2

$s$  = spacing of web frames, in metres

$$C = 20\,600$$

$\alpha_o$  = longitudinal distribution factor as given in Table 1.2.7  
 $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$  and  $\sigma_o$  are as defined in 2.4.1.

2.9.2 The cross-sectional shear resisting area of web frames supporting ice stringers or longitudinal ice frames is to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$A = C \alpha_o \beta \gamma^2 s \frac{4,7}{\sigma_o} \text{ cm}^2$$

where

$$C = 1240$$

$\alpha_o$  and  $s$  are as defined in 2.9.1

$\beta$ ,  $\gamma$  and  $\sigma_o$  are as defined in 2.4.1.

2.9.3 Ice stringers are to be bracketed or otherwise efficiently attached to the web frames or transverse bulkheads.

2.9.4 The thickness of the web is generally not to be less than one per cent of the web depth.

## 2.10 Stem

2.10.1 The stem is to be made of rolled, cast or forged steel or of shaped steel plates. A sharp edged stem, as shown in Fig. 1.2.3 improves the manoeuvrability of the ship in ice.

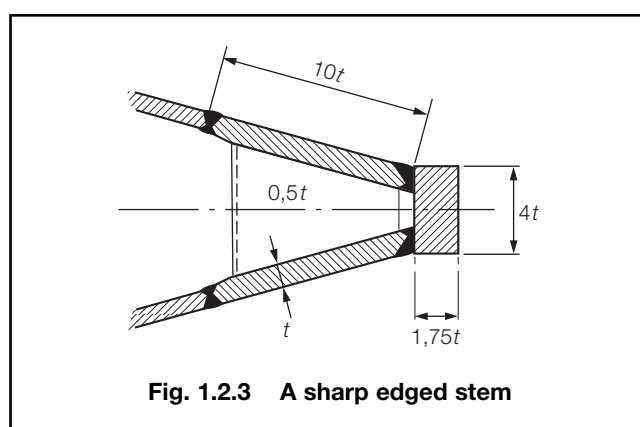


Fig. 1.2.3 A sharp edged stem

2.10.2 The section modulus of the stem in the fore and aft direction is not to be less than determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$Z = 1500 (\alpha_o \beta \gamma^2)^{\frac{3}{2}} \text{ cm}^3$$

where

$\alpha_o$  = longitudinal distribution factor for the forward region as given in Table 1.2.3

$\beta$  and  $\gamma$  are as defined in 2.4.1.

2.10.3 The dimensions of a welded stem constructed as shown in Fig. 1.2.3 are to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$t = 31 \sqrt{\alpha_o \beta \gamma^2} \text{ mm}$$

where

$t$  = thickness of the side plates, in mm.

2.10.4 The plate thickness,  $t$ , of a shaped plate stem or a bulbous bow is to be determined in accordance with the following formula:

$$t = As \alpha_p \beta \gamma \sqrt{\frac{4,7}{\sigma_o}} + 2 \text{ mm}$$

where

$s$  = the distance, in mm, between horizontal webs or diaphragm plates having a thickness of at least 0,5t mm

$$A = 0,50$$

$\alpha_p$ ,  $\beta$ ,  $\gamma$  and  $\sigma_o$  are as defined in 2.4.1.

**2.10.5** The reinforced stem is to extend from the keel plate to 750 mm above the ice load waterline and is to be internally strengthened by floors, brackets or webs having a thickness of at least  $0,5t$  and spaced not more than 600 mm apart.

**2.10.6** In bulbous bow constructions the extent of plating having the thickness,  $t$ , as specified in 2.10.4, below the ice light waterline should be such as to cover that part of the bulb forward of the vertical line originating at the intersection of the Ice Light Waterline and the stem contour at the centreline. A suitably tapered transition piece should be arranged between the reinforced stem plating and keel. However, in no case should the reinforced stem plating extend vertically below the ice light waterline for less than 750 mm. The adjacent strake to the reinforced shaped stem plating of the bulb should be in accordance with the requirements of 2.4.1.

**2.10.7** Where in the ice belt region the radius of the stem or bulb front plating is large, one or more vertical stiffeners are to be fitted in order to meet the section modulus requirement of 2.10.2. In addition, vertical ring stiffening will be required for the bulb.

**2.10.8** The dimensions of the stem may be tapered to the requirements of Vol 1, Pt 6, Ch 3,5.2 at the upper deck. The connections of the shell plating to the stem are to be flush.

**2.10.9** For towing purposes, a mooring pipe with an opening not less than 250 mm by 300 mm having inner surfaces at least 150 mm wide with a rounding radius of not less than 100 mm is to be fitted in the bow bulwark on the centreline. A bitt, or other convenient means of securing the line, is to be dimensioned to withstand the breaking strength of the ship's towline.

## 2.11 Stern

**2.11.1** Where the screwshaft diameter exceeds the Rule diameter, the propeller post is to be correspondingly strengthened. See Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3,2.

**2.11.2** A transom stern is not normally to extend below the ice load waterline. Where this cannot be avoided, the transom is to be kept as narrow as possible and the scantlings of plating and stiffeners are to be as required for the midship region.

## 2.12 Bossings and shaft struts

**2.12.1** Shaftings and sterntubes of ships with two or more propellers are generally to be enclosed within plated bossings. If detached supporting struts are necessary, their design, strengthening and attachment to the hull will be specially considered.

## 2.13 Rudder and steering arrangements

**2.13.1** Rudder posts, rudder horns, solepieces, rudder stocks and pintles are to be dimensioned in accordance with Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3,2 and 13 as appropriate. Rudder scantlings are to be determined in accordance with Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3,2 using the basic stock diameter,  $\delta_s$ . The speed used in the calculations is to be the service speed or that given in Table 1.2.8, whichever is the greater. When used in association with the speed given in Table 1.2.8, the hull form factor and rudder profile coefficients are to be taken as 1,0.

**Table 1.2.8 Minimum speeds**

| Ice Class | Minimum speed, in knots |
|-----------|-------------------------|
| 1AS       | 20                      |
| 1A        | 18                      |
| 1B        | 16                      |
| 1C        | 14                      |

**2.13.2** For double plate rudders, the minimum thickness of plating and horizontal and vertical webs in the main ice belt zone is to be determined as for shell plating in the aft region in accordance with 2.4.1. For the horizontal and vertical webs the corrosion-abrasion increment,  $c$ , need not be added.

**2.13.3** For **Ice Classes 1AS** and **1A**, the rudder head and the upper edge of the rudder are to be protected against ice pressure by an ice knife, or equivalent.

**2.13.4** Due regard is to be paid to the method of securing the rudder in the centreline position when backing into ice. Where possible, rudder stoppers working on the blade or rudder head are to be fitted.

**2.13.5** Where an ice class notation is included in the class of a ship, the nozzle construction requirements as defined in Table 3.5.1 in Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 3,5 are to be upgraded to include abrasion allowance as follows:

| Ice Class  | Thickness increment |
|------------|---------------------|
| <b>1AS</b> | 5 mm                |
| <b>1A</b>  | 4 mm                |
| <b>1B</b>  | 3 mm                |
| <b>1C</b>  | 2 mm                |

However, the thickness of the shroud plating is not to be less than the shell plating for the aft region as obtained from 2.4.1 taking frame spacing  $s$  in the formula as 500 mm.

**2.13.6** The scantlings of the stock, pintles, gudgeon and solepiece associated with the nozzle are to be increased on the basis given in 2.13.1. However, the diameter of the nozzle stock is to be not less than that calculated in the astern condition taking the astern speed as half the speed given in Table 1.2.8 or the actual astern speed, whichever is the greater.

**2.13.7** Nozzles with articulated flaps will be subject to special consideration.

## 2.14 Direct calculations

2.14.1 If, as an alternative to the requirements of 2.8 and 2.9, the scantlings of primary longitudinal members and web frames are determined by direct calculation, as permitted by Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 1,2, then:

- the applied ice load may be taken as  $775\alpha_o \beta \gamma^2$  kN per metre of ship length evenly distributed over a depth equal to the nominal ice thickness,  $h$ , for the Ice Class;
- the scantlings are to be suitable for the centre of the load depth to be located at any height between the ice load waterline and the ice light waterline;
- the scantlings determined in association with (a) and (b) are to be sufficient to ensure that the von Mises-Hencky combined stress does not exceed 90 per cent of the yield stress of the steel.

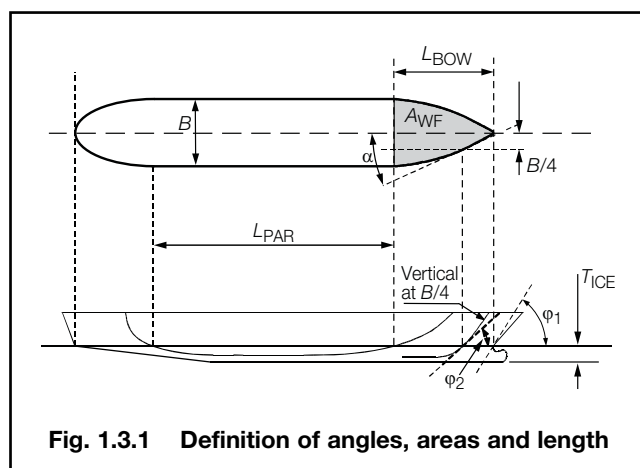


Fig. 1.3.1 Definition of angles, areas and length

## Section 3 Machinery and engineering systems

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 Where the notation, **Ice Class 1AS, 1A, 1B or 1C** is desired, the requirements of this Section, in addition to those for open water service, are to be complied with so far as they are applicable.

3.1.2 This Section is to be read in conjunction with the requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems in Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2.

### 3.2 Symbols and definitions

3.2.1 The symbols used in this Section are defined as follows:

- $A_{WF}$  = area of the waterline of the bow, in  $m^2$ , as shown in Fig. 1.3.1
- $B$  = moulded breadth of ship, in metres
- $D_P$  = diameter of the propeller, in metres
- $H_M$  = thickness of the brash ice in mid channel, in metres
- $H_F$  = thickness of the brash layer displaced by the bow, in metres
- $L_{BOW}$  = length of bow, in metres, as shown in Fig. 1.3.1
- $L_{PAR}$  = length of parallel middle body, in metres, as shown in Fig. 1.3.1
- $L_{WL}$  = length of ship at deep draught waterline, in metres
- $T_{ICE}$  = maximum ice class draught amidships, in metres, corresponding to the deep draught waterline
- $\Delta$  = displacement, in tonnes, on the maximum Ice Class draught amidships on the deep draught waterline, see 2.2.1. This displacement need not be taken as greater than 80 000 tonnes
- $\alpha$  = the angle of the waterline at  $B/4$ , see Fig. 1.3.1
- $\phi_1$  = the rake of the stem at the centreline, as shown in Fig. 1.3.1
- $\phi_2$  = the rake of the bow at  $B/4$ , as shown in Fig. 1.3.1.

### 3.3 Engine output

3.3.1 **Definition.** The total engine output,  $P$  in 3.3.2, is the maximum output the propulsion machinery can continuously deliver to the propulsion system with the propeller(s) operating at the revolutions per minute at the maximum torque for which the system is to be classed. If the output of the machinery is restricted by technical means or by any Regulations applicable to the ship,  $P$ , shall be taken as the restricted output.

3.3.2 Required engine output:

- For **Ice Class 1AS and 1A**, the total engine output is not to be less than determined by the following formula:

$$P = K_E \frac{\left(\frac{R_{CH}}{1000}\right)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{D_P} \text{ kW}$$

where  $K_E$  is as shown in Table 1.3.1

$R_{CH}$ , in N, is the resistance of the ship in a channel with brash ice and a consolidated layer, using the following equation:

$$R_{CH} = C_1 + C_2 + 845 (H_F + H_M)^2 \left( B + 1,85H_F - \frac{2H_F}{\tan \Psi} \right) \cdot (0,15 \cos \phi_2 + \sin \psi \cdot \sin \alpha) + 42L_{PAR} H_F^2 + 825K_d \frac{A_{wf}}{L_{WL}}$$

where

$$K_d = \left[ \frac{L_{WL} T_{ICE}}{B^2} \right]^3$$

but is not to be taken as more than 20 or less than 5

$$H_F = 0,26 + \sqrt{(H_M B)}$$

$$H_M = 1,0 \text{ for Ice Classes 1A and 1AS}$$

$C_1$  and  $C_2$  take into account a consolidated upper layer of the brash ice and can be taken as zero for **Ice Class 1A**. For **Ice Class 1AS**:

$$C_1 = 23 \frac{BL_{PAR}}{2T_{ICE} + 1} + (1 + 0,021\varphi_1)(45,8B + 14,7L_{BOW} + 29BL_{BOW})$$

$$C_2 = (1 + 0,063\varphi_1)(1530 + 170B) + \left(400 + 480 \frac{T_{ICE}}{B}\right) \frac{B^2}{\sqrt{L_{WL}}}$$

$$\psi = \arctan \left[ \frac{\tan \varphi_2}{\sin \alpha} \right]$$

- (b) For **Ice Class 1B** and **1C**, the total engine output is not to be less than that determined by the following formula and in no case less than 740 kW:

$$P = f_1 f_2 f_3 (f_4 \Delta + P_0) \text{ kW}$$

where

$$f_1 = 1,0 \text{ for a fixed pitch propeller} \\ = 0,9 \text{ for a controllable pitch propeller}$$

$$f_2 = \frac{\varphi_1}{200} + 0,675 \text{ but not more than } 1,1$$

$$f_2 = 1,1 \text{ for a bulbous bow}$$

The product,  $f_1 f_2$ , is not to be taken as less than 0,85.

$$f_3 = \frac{1,2B}{\Delta^{1/3}} \text{ but not less than } 1,0$$

$f_4$  and  $P_0$  are to be taken as shown in Table 1.3.2:  
 $\Delta$  is as defined in 3.2.

**Table 1.3.1 Coefficient of propulsion,  $K_E$**

| No. of propellers | Propeller type               |                        |
|-------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|
|                   | Controllable pitch propeller | Fixed pitch propellers |
| 1                 | 2,03                         | 2,26                   |
| 2                 | 1,44                         | 1,60                   |
| 3                 | 1,18                         | 1,31                   |

**Table 1.3.2 Values of  $f_4$  and  $P_0$**

|       | 1B                           | 1C   | 1B                              | 1C   |
|-------|------------------------------|------|---------------------------------|------|
|       | $\Delta < 30\,000 \text{ t}$ |      | $\Delta \geq 30\,000 \text{ t}$ |      |
| $f_4$ | 0,22                         | 0,18 | 0,13                            | 0,11 |
| $P_0$ | 370                          | 0    | 3070                            | 2100 |

## 3.4 Materials for shafting

3.4.1 All components of the main propulsion system are to be of steel or other approved ductile material.

3.4.2 For screwshafts in ships intended for the notation **Ice Class 1AS or 1A** and where the connection between the propeller and the screwshaft is by means of a key, Charpy impact tests are to be made in accordance with the requirements of Vol 1, Pt 2, Ch 5,3.4.12.

## 3.5 Materials for propellers

3.5.1 Propellers and propeller blades are to be of cast steel or copper alloys.

3.5.2 For steel propellers, the elongation of the material used is to be not less than 19 per cent for a test piece length of 5d. Charpy impact tests are to be carried out in accordance with the requirements of Vol 1, Part 2.

3.5.3 Spheroidal cast iron load transmitting components of controllable-pitch mechanisms are to be manufactured, tested and certified in accordance with the requirements of Table 7.3.2 in Ch 7,3 of the Rules for Materials.

## 3.6 Determination of ice torque

3.6.1 Dimensions of propellers, shafting and gearing are determined by formulae taking into account the impact when a propeller blade hits ice. The ensuing load is hereinafter defined by ice torque,  $M$ .

$$M = m D^2 \text{ kN m}$$

where

$$m = 21,10 \text{ for Ice Class 1AS}$$

$$= 15,69 \text{ for Ice Class 1A}$$

$$= 13,04 \text{ for Ice Class 1B}$$

$$= 11,96 \text{ for Ice Class 1C}$$

$$D = \text{diameter of propeller, in metres.}$$

3.6.2 If the propeller is not fully submerged when the ship is in ballast condition, the ice torque for **Ice Class 1A** is to be used for **Ice Classes 1B** and **1C**.

## 3.7 Propeller blade sections

3.7.1 The width,  $L$ , and thickness,  $T$ , of propeller blade sections are to be determined so that:

- (a) at the radius  $0,25D/2$ , for solid propellers

$$LT^2 \geq \frac{26\,478\,000}{\sigma_u (0,65 + 0,7p_r/D)} \left( 27,2 \frac{P}{NR} + 2,24M \right)$$

- (b) at radius  $0,35D/2$  for controllable pitch propellers

$$LT^2 \geq \frac{21\,084\,300}{\sigma_u (0,65 + 0,7p_r/D)} \left( 27,2 \frac{P}{NR} + 2,35M \right)$$

- (c) at the radius  $0,6D/2$

$$LT^2 \geq \frac{9\,316\,320}{\sigma_u (0,65 + 0,7p_r/D)} \left( 27,2 \frac{P}{NR} + 2,86M \right)$$

where

$$D = \text{diameter of propeller, in metres}$$

$$L = \text{length of the expanded cylindrical section of the blade, at the radius in question, in mm}$$

$$M = \text{ice torque as defined in 3.6.1}$$

$$N = \text{number of blades}$$



- $P_r$  = propeller pitch at the radius in question, for solid propellers, in metres  
 = 0,7 nominal pitch for controllable pitch propellers, in metres  
 $P$  = shaft power as defined in Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.3  
 $R$  = propeller speed, in rev/min  
 $T$  = the corresponding maximum blade thickness, in mm  
 $\sigma_u$  = specified minimum tensile strength of the blade material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

3.7.2 Where the blade thickness derived from these formulae is less than the blade thickness derived by Vol 2, Pt 4, Ch 1, the latter is to apply.

## 3.8 Propeller blade minimum tip thickness

3.8.1 The blade tip thickness,  $t$ , at the radius  $D/2$  is to be determined by the following formulae:

### Ice Class 1AS

$$t = (20 + 2D) \sqrt{\frac{490}{\sigma_u}} \text{ mm}$$

### Ice Classes 1A, 1B and 1C

$$t = (15 + 2D) \sqrt{\frac{490}{\sigma_u}} \text{ mm}$$

where

$D$  and  $\sigma_u$  are as defined in 3.6 and 3.7 respectively.

## 3.9 Intermediate blade sections

3.9.1 The thickness of other sections is to conform to a smooth curve connecting the section thicknesses as determined by 3.7 and 3.8.

## 3.10 Blade edge thickness

3.10.1 The thickness of blade edges is to be not less than 50 per cent of the derived tip thickness,  $t$ , measured at  $1,25t$  from edge. For controllable pitch propellers this applies only to the leading edge.

## 3.11 Mechanisms for controllable pitch propellers

3.11.1 The strength of mechanisms in the boss of a controllable pitch propeller is to be 1,5 times that of the blade when a load is applied at the radius  $0,9D/2$  in the weakest direction of the blade.

## 3.12 Keyless propellers

3.12.1 When it is proposed to use keyless propellers, the fit of the propeller boss to the screwshaft will be specially considered.

## 3.13 Screwshafts

3.13.1 The diameter  $d_s$  at the aft bearing of the screwshaft fitted in conjunction with a solid propeller is to be not less than:

$$d_s = 1,08 \sqrt[3]{\frac{\sigma_u L T^2}{\sigma_o}} \text{ mm}$$

where

$L$  and  $T$  = proposed width and thickness respectively of the propeller blade section at  $0,25D/2$ , in mm

$\sigma_o$  = specified minimum yield stress of the material of the screwshaft, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>

$\sigma_u$  = specified minimum tensile strength of the blade material, in N/mm<sup>2</sup>.

3.13.2 The diameter,  $d_s$  at the aft bearing of the screwshaft fitted in conjunction with a controllable pitch propeller is to be not less than:

$$d_s = 1,15 \sqrt[3]{\frac{\sigma_u L T^2}{\sigma_o}} \text{ mm}$$

where

$L$  and  $T$  = proposed width and thickness respectively of the propeller blade section at  $0,35D/2$ , in mm.

3.13.3 Where the screwshaft diameter as derived by 3.13.1 or 3.13.2 is less than the diameter derived by Vol 2, Pt 3, Ch 2,4.4.3 or 4.4.7 as applicable the latter is to apply.

3.13.4 The shaft may be tapered at the forward end in accordance with Vol 2, Pt 3, Ch 2,4.4.5 or 4.4.6 as applicable.

## 3.14 Intermediate and thrust shafts

3.14.1 The diameters of intermediate shafts and thrust shafts in external bearings are to comply with Vol 2, Pt 3, Ch 2,4.2.1 and Vol 2, Pt 3, Ch 2,4.3.1 respectively, except for **Ice Class 1AS** ice strengthening where these diameters are to be increased by 10 per cent.

## 3.15 Reduction gearing

3.15.1 Where gearing is fitted between the engine and the propeller shafting, the gearing is to be in accordance with Vol 2, Pt 3, Ch 1, and is to be designed to transmit a torque,  $Y_i$ , determined by the following formula:

$$Y_i = Y + \frac{M I_h u^2}{I_l + I_h u^2} \text{ kN m}$$

where

$$u = \text{gear ratio} = \frac{\text{pinion speed}}{\text{wheel speed}}$$

$I_h$  = mass moment of inertia of machinery components rotating at higher speed

$I_l$  = mass moment of inertia of machinery components rotating at lower speed, including propeller with an addition of 30 per cent of entrained water

( $I_h$  and  $I_l$  are to be expressed in the same units)

$M$  = ice torque as defined in 3.6

$$Y = 9,55 \frac{P}{R}.$$

$P$  and  $R$  are as defined in Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.3.

### 3.16 Starting arrangements

3.16.1 In addition to complying with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 2, Ch 1,7.11, 7.1, 7.12, 7.13 and 7.14 where applicable, the capacity of the air compressors is to be sufficient for charging the air receivers from atmospheric to full pressure in half an hour for a ship with **Ice Class 1AS** where the propulsion engine has to be reversed for going astern.

### 3.17 Sea inlet chests and cooling water systems

3.17.1 The cooling water system is to be designed to ensure a supply of cooling water when navigating in ice. For this purpose at least one cooling water inlet chest is to be arranged as follows:

- (a) The sea inlet chest is to be situated near the centreline of the ship and well aft if possible.
- (b) As guidance for design the volume of the chest shall be about one cubic metre for every 750 kW engine output of the ship including the output of auxiliary engines necessary for the ship's service.
- (c) The chest shall be of sufficient height to allow ice to accumulate above the inlet pipe.
- (d) A recirculating connection from the cooling water overboard discharge line, capable of full capacity discharge, is to be led to the chest.
- (e) The net area through the grating at the shell opening is to be not less than four times the sectional area of the inlet pipe.

Where there are difficulties in meeting the requirements of (b) and (c) two smaller chests may be arranged for alternating intake and discharge of cooling water. The arrangement and situation otherwise shall be as above.

3.17.2 Heating coils may be installed in the upper part of the chest or chests.

3.17.3 Arrangements for circulating water from ballast tanks for cooling purposes may be useful as a reserve in ballast conditions but cannot be accepted as a substitute for sea inlet chests as described in 3.17.1.

### 3.18 Fire pumps in motor ships

3.18.1 In motor ships where clearing steam is not available, fire pumps are to be provided with suctions from the cooling water inlet chest referred to in 3.17.

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Machinery arrangements**
- 3 **Control arrangements**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter is to be read in conjunction with the requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems in Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 1 and Ch 2.

1.1.2 The requirements of this Chapter are in addition to other relevant Chapters in the Rules for main and auxiliary machinery.

1.1.3 The Rules contained in this Chapter cover machinery arrangements and control systems necessary for operating essential machinery from a (centralised) control station on the bridge under normal sea-going and manoeuvring conditions, but do not signify that the machinery space may be operated unattended.

1.1.4 In general, ships complying with the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for the machinery class notation **IP**, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.8.2.

1.1.5 The details of control systems will vary with the type of machinery being controlled, and special consideration will be given to each case.

1.1.6 Requirements additional to those in this Chapter may be imposed by the Naval Authority.

### 1.2 Plans

1.2.1 **Control systems.** Where control systems are applied to essential machinery or equipment the following plans are to be submitted in triplicate:

- Details of operating medium, i.e., pneumatic, hydraulic or electric including standby sources of power.
- Description of operation with explanatory diagrams.
- Line diagrams of control circuits.
- List of monitored points.
- List of control points.
- List of alarm points.
- Test schedule including test facilities provided.

1.2.2 Plans for the control systems of the following machinery are to be submitted:

- Main propelling machinery, including all auxiliaries essential for propulsion.
- Controllable pitch propellers.
- Electric generating plant.

- Evaporating and distilling systems for use with main steam machinery.
- Steam raising plant for essential services.

1.2.3 **System operational concept.** A description of how the control, alarm and safety systems for the integrated propulsion system provide effective means for operation and control during all ship operational conditions.

1.2.4 **Alarm systems.** Details of the overall alarm system linking the machinery space control station with the bridge control station are to be submitted including details of alerts to be presented by the user interface, with:

- (a) an approach to alert category assignments which is in accordance with the *IMO Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009*; and
- (b) for alarms required by these Rules the intended operator response and the message to be presented.

1.2.5 **Control stations.** Details of bridge and machinery space control stations are to be submitted, e.g., control panels and consoles.

1.2.6 **Machinery configurations.** Plans showing the general arrangement of the machinery space, together with the layout and configuration of the main propulsion and essential machinery, are to be submitted.

## ■ Section 2 Machinery arrangements

### 2.1 Main propulsion machinery

2.1.1 The main propulsion machinery may be oil engines, turbines or electric motors but the configuration of the propulsion system and its relationship with other essential equipment is to comply with the remaining requirements of this Section.

2.1.2 The main propulsion machinery is to drive one of the generators required by 2.2.2. This generator is to be capable of supplying the essential electrical load under all normal sea-going and manoeuvring conditions.

2.1.3 Standby machinery is to be provided capable of being readily connected to the main propulsion system so as to provide emergency propulsion. This standby machinery is to be capable of connection so as to provide an alternative drive to the generator required in 2.1.2. It need not provide power to both systems simultaneously, *see also* 2.2.2.

### 2.2 Supply of electric power and essential services

2.2.1 Continuity of electrical power supply and essential services is to be ensured under all normal sea-going and manoeuvring conditions without manual intervention in the machinery space. Methods by which this may be achieved include automatic start-up of generating sets and essential pumps or manual start-up of these services from the bridge.

2.2.2 Generating sets and converting sets are to be sufficient to ensure the operation of services essential for the propulsion and safety of the ship even when one generating set or converting set is out of service.

## 2.3 Controllable pitch propellers

2.3.1 For propulsion systems with controllable pitch propellers a standby or alternative power source for the actuating medium for controlling the pitch of the propeller blades is to be provided.

## Section 3 Control arrangements

### 3.1 Bridge control

3.1.1 Means are to be provided to ensure satisfactory control of propulsion from the bridge in both the ahead and astern directions when operating on either the main or standby engine(s).

3.1.2 Instrumentation to indicate the following is to be fitted on the bridge and at any other station from which the propulsion machinery may be controlled:

- (a) Propeller speed.
- (b) Direction of rotation of the propeller for a fixed pitch propeller.
- (c) Pitch position for a controllable pitch propeller.
- (d) Direction and an indication representative of the magnitude of thrust.
- (e) Clutch position, where applicable.

3.1.3 An alarm is to operate in the event of a failure of the power supply to the bridge control system.

3.1.4 Means, independent of the bridge control system, are to be provided on the bridge to enable the watchkeeping officer to stop the main propulsion machinery in an emergency.

### 3.2 Alarm system

3.2.1 An alarm system is to be provided to indicate faults in essential machinery and control systems in accordance with this Chapter.

3.2.2 Machinery faults are to be indicated at the control stations on the bridge and in the machinery space.

3.2.3 In the event of a machinery fault occurring, the alarm system is to be such that the watchkeeping officer on the bridge is made aware of the following:

- (a) A machinery fault has occurred.
- (b) The machinery fault is being attended to.
- (c) The machinery fault has been rectified. (Alternative means of communication between the bridge control station and the machinery control station may be used for this function).

3.2.4 The alarm system should be designed with self-monitoring properties. As far as practicable, any fault in the alarm system should cause it to fail to the alarm condition.

3.2.5 The alarm system should be capable of being tested during normal machinery operation.

3.2.6 Failure of the power supply to the alarm system is to be indicated as a separate fault alarm.

3.2.7 Alarm indication is to be both audible and visual. If arrangements are made to silence audible alarms they are not to extinguish visual signals.

3.2.8 The acceptance of an alarm on the bridge is not to silence the audible signal in the machinery space.

3.2.9 Machinery signals should be distinguishable from other audible signals, e.g., fire, carbon dioxide.

3.2.10 Acknowledgement of visual alarms is to be clearly shown.

3.2.11 If the audible signal has been silenced and a second fault occurs before the first has been rectified, the audible signal is again to operate. To assist in the detection of transient faults which are subsequently self-correcting, fleeting alarms should lock in until accepted.

3.2.12 Arrangements should be made to enable alarm lights on the bridge to be dimmed as required, *see also* Vol 2, Pt 9, Ch 1,3.3.10.

### 3.3 Communication

3.3.1 At least two means of communication are to be provided between the bridge and the control station in the machinery space. One of these means may be the bridge control system; the other is to be independent of the main electrical power supply.

3.3.2 The bridge, machinery space control station and any other control position from which the propulsion machinery can be controlled are to be fitted with means to indicate which station is in command.

3.3.3 Changeover between control stations is to be arranged so that it may only be affected with the acceptance of the stations taking control. The system is to be provided with interlocks or other suitable means to ensure effective transfer of control.

### 3.4 Engine starting safeguards

3.4.1 Where it is possible to start a main propulsion or auxiliary oil engine from the bridge, an indication that sufficient starting air pressure is available is to be provided on the bridge.

3.4.2 The number of automatic consecutive attempts which fail to produce a start is to be limited to safeguard sufficient starting air pressure, or, in the case of electric starting, a sufficient charge level in the batteries.

3.4.3 An alarm is to be provided for low starting air pressure, set at a limit which will still permit engine starting operations.

3.4.4 Where propulsion or auxiliary engines are started from the bridge, interlocks are to be provided to prevent starting of the engine under conditions which could hazard the machinery. These are to include 'turning gear engaged', 'low lubricating oil pressure', 'shaft brake engaged' and where machinery is not available due to maintenance or repairs.

## 3.5 Operational safeguards

3.5.1 Means are to be provided to prevent the machinery and shafting being subjected to excessive torque or other detrimental mechanical and thermal overloads.

3.5.2 Prolonged running in a restricted speed range is to be prevented automatically or, alternatively, an indication of restricted speed ranges is to be provided at each control station.

3.5.3 For ships propelled by steam turbines, the risk of thermal distortion of the turbines is to be prevented by automatic steam spinning when the shaft is stopped in the manoeuvring mode. An audible and visual alarm is to operate on the bridge and in the machinery space when the shaft has been stopped for two minutes.

3.5.4 In the case of lubricating oil systems for main propulsion and standby engine(s), the engine(s) is to be stopped automatically on failure of the lubricating oil supply. The circuit and sensor employed for this automatic shut-down are to be additional to the alarm circuit and sensor required by Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 3.8.5. Where means are provided to override the automatic shut-down required by this paragraph, the arrangements are to be such as to preclude inadvertent operation. Visual indication of operation of the override is to be fitted.

3.5.5 In the case of oil engines, oil mist monitoring is to be provided for crankcase protection where arrangements are fitted to override the automatic stop for failure of the lubricating oil supply.

3.5.6 Boilers with automatic controls which under normal operating conditions do not require any manual intervention by the operators are to be provided with safety arrangements which automatically shut off the oil fuel to all the burners in the event of either low water level or combustion air failure. Oil fuel is to be shut off automatically to any burner in the event of flame failure.

3.5.7 Arrangements are to be provided to stop propulsion gas turbines automatically for the following fault conditions:

- (a) Overspeed, see Vol 2, Pt 2, Ch 2.8.
- (b) High exhaust temperature, see Vol 2, Pt 2, Ch 2.8.
- (c) Flame failure, or
- (d) Excessive vibration.

3.5.8 Where standby pumps are arranged to start automatically in the event of low discharge pressure from the working pump, an alarm is to be given to indicate when the standby pump has started.

## 3.6 Automatic control of essential services

3.6.1 All control systems for essential services are to be stable throughout the operating range of the main propulsion machinery.

3.6.2 The temperature of the following is to be automatically controlled within normal operating limits:

### Oil engines:

- (a) Lubricating oil to the main engine and/or auxiliary engines.
- (b) Oil fuel – temperature or viscosity.
- (c) Piston coolant, where applicable.
- (d) Cylinder coolant main and auxiliary engines, where applicable.
- (e) Fuel valve coolant, where applicable.

### Steam plant:

- (a) Lubricating oil to main engine and/or auxiliary engines.
- (b) Oil fuel to burners – temperature or viscosity.
- (c) Superheated steam.
- (d) External de-superheated steam.

### Gas turbines:

- (a) Lubricating oil to main engine and auxiliary engines.
- (b) Oil fuel – temperature or viscosity.
- (c) Exhaust gas.

3.6.3 The pressure of the following is to be automatically controlled within normal operating limits:

### Steam plant:

- (a) Superheated steam.
- (b) Oil fuel.
- (c) External de-superheated steam system(s).
- (d) Gland steam.
- (e) Reduced steam ranges.

3.6.4 The level of the following is to be automatically controlled within normal operating limits:

### Steam plant:

- (a) Boiler drum level.
- (b) De-aerator level.
- (c) Condenser level.

3.6.5 Boilers essential for the propulsion of the vessel are to be provided with an automatic combustion control system.

## 3.7 Local control

3.7.1 The arrangements are to be such that essential machinery can be operated with the system of bridge control or any automatic controls out of action. Alternatively, the control systems should have sufficient redundancy so that failure of the control equipment in use does not render essential machinery inoperative.

# Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy

## Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 3

Section 1

### Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)**
- 3 **Machinery arrangements**
- 4 **Control arrangements**
- 5 **Separate machinery spaces ★ (star) Enhancement**
- 6 **Testing and trials**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 General

**1.1.1** This Chapter states the requirements for ships having machinery redundancy, and are in addition to the relevant requirements of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships* contained in Volumes 1 and 2.

**1.1.2** The requirements, which are optional, cover machinery arrangements and control systems necessary for ships which have propulsion and steering systems configured such that, in the event of a single failure of a system or item of active equipment, see 1.1.4, the ship will retain the ability to use available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems that are unaffected by the failure. The ship is also to retain steering capability at a service speed of not less than seven knots.

**1.1.3** The requirements also cover machinery arrangements where the propulsion and steering systems are installed in separate compartments such that, in the event of a loss of one compartment, the ship will retain availability of propulsion power and manoeuvring capability.

**1.1.4** For the purpose of this Chapter, items of active equipment are those which have a defined function for operation of a propulsion or steering system, such as:

- Prime movers;
- Generators and their excitation equipment;
- Transformers and converters;
- Dynamic braking resistors;
- Harmonic filters;
- Gearing;
- Pumps;
- Valves (where power actuated);
- Fuel treatment plant;
- Coolers/heaters;
- Filters;

Piping and electrical cables connecting items of active equipment are not considered to be active.

**1.1.5** Requirements additional to these Rules may be imposed by the Naval Authority.

**1.1.6** Sections 2, 3 and 4 state the applicable requirements for arrangements necessary to maintain availability of propulsion and manoeuvring capability, in the event of a single failure in equipment. Ships complying with the applicable requirements of Sections 2 to 4 of this Chapter will be eligible for the machinery class notation **PMR** or **PMRL** (Propulsion Machinery Redundancy), **SMR** or **SMRL** (Steering Machinery Redundancy) or **PSMR** or **PSMRL** (Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy).

#### NOTE

The additional **L** character to **PMR**, **SMR** and **PSMR** notations indicates a limited capability.

**1.1.7** Section 5 states the additional requirements necessary to maintain availability of propulsion and manoeuvring capability where machinery is installed in separate compartments and the loss of any one compartment due to fire or flooding has been addressed. Ships complying with the applicable requirements of Sections 2 to 5 of this Chapter will be eligible for the machinery class notation **PMR★** or **PMRL★** (Propulsion Machinery Redundancy in separate machinery spaces), **SMR★** or **SMRL★** (Steering Machinery Redundancy in separate machinery spaces) or **PSMR★** or **PSMRL★** (Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy in separate machinery spaces).

**1.1.8** For assignment of **PSMR** or **PSMR★** machinery class notations, the ship is to retain the ability to use not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems and retain steering capability at a service speed of not less than seven knots in the event of a single failure of a system or item of equipment.

**1.1.9** Where the ship does not comply with 1.1.8 but can retain a service speed of not less than seven knots using available installed prime mover capacity and propulsion systems (which may be less than 50 per cent) following a failure of a system or item of equipment, machinery class notations **PSMRL** or **PSMRL★** may be assigned. The available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems are to be identified and included in 1.2.7.

### 1.2 Plans and information

**1.2.1** In addition to the plans and information required by this Part and Volume 2, Part 6, the information detailed in 1.2.2 to 1.2.6 is also to be submitted.

**1.2.2 Machinery spaces.** Plans showing the general arrangement of the machinery spaces, together with a description of the propulsion system, main and emergency electrical power supply systems and steering arrangements are to be submitted. The plans are to indicate segregation and access arrangements for machinery spaces and associated control rooms/stations.

**1.2.3 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA).** For the propulsion systems, electrical power supplies, essential services, control systems and steering arrangements, an FMEA report is to be submitted and is to address the requirements identified in Sections 2 and 5.



# Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy

## Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 3

Sections 1 &amp; 2

**1.2.4 Manoeuvring capability.** An assessment of the ship's ahead and astern manoeuvring capability, under the following operating conditions, is to be submitted:

- (a) Where 50 per cent or less than the installed prime mover capacity and 50 per cent or less than the installed propulsion systems is available.
- (b) Where the steering capability requirements described in 3.2.1 are available.

IMO Resolution A.751(18) *Interim Standards for Ship Manoeuvrability* provides guidance on standard manoeuvres required in an assessment of the manoeuvrability of ships.

**1.2.5 Testing and trials procedures.** A schedule of testing and trials to demonstrate that the ship is capable of being operated with machinery functioning as described in Section 3 is to be submitted. In addition, any testing programme that may be necessary to prove the conclusions of the FMEA is to be submitted.

**1.2.6 Operating Manuals.** Operating Manuals are to be submitted for information and provided on board. The manuals are to include the following information:

- (a) Particulars of machinery and control systems.
- (b) General description of systems for propulsion and steering.
- (c) Operating instructions for all machinery and control systems used for propulsion and steering.
- (d) Procedures for dealing with the situations identified in the FMEA report.

**1.2.7 Installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems.** A schedule of the propulsion systems and their operating capacity and capability under normal and foreseeable failure conditions is to be submitted.

## Section 2 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis (FMEA)

### 2.1 General

**2.1.1** An FMEA is to be carried out in accordance with 2.1.2 to 2.1.7, for the propulsion systems, electrical power supply systems and steering systems to demonstrate that a single failure in active equipment or loss of an associated sub-system, see 1.1.4, will not cause loss of all propulsion and/or steering capability as required by a class notation. Typical sub-systems include associated control and monitoring arrangements, data communications, power supplies (electrical, hydraulic or pneumatic), fuel, lubricating, cooling, etc.

**2.1.2** The FMEA is to be carried out using the format presented in Table 3.2.1 or an equivalent format that addresses the same safety issues. Analyses in accordance with IEC 60812, *Analysis techniques for system reliability – Procedure for failure mode and effects analysis (FMEA)*, or IMO MSC Resolution 36(63) Annex 4 – *Procedures for Failure Mode and Effects Analysis*, would be acceptable.

**2.1.3** The FMEA is to be organised in terms of equipment and function. The effects of item failures at a stated level and at higher levels are to be analysed to determine the effects on the system as a whole. Actions for mitigation are to be determined.

**2.1.4** The FMEA is to:

- (a) identify the equipment or sub-system, mode of operation and the equipment;
- (b) identify potential failure modes and their causes;
- (c) evaluate the effects on the system of each failure mode;
- (d) identify measures for reducing the risks associated with each failure mode; and
- (e) identify trials and testing necessary to prove conclusions.

**Table 3.2.1 Failure Mode and Effects Analysis**

| System                                                                                                                               |                       |          |                   | Element      |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|----------|-------------------|--------------|---------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------|----------|-------------------|---------|
| Item No.                                                                                                                             | Component description | Function | Mode of operation | Failure mode | Failure cause | Failure detection | Effect of failure |           | Severity | Corrective action | Remarks |
|                                                                                                                                      |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   | On item           | On system |          |                   |         |
|                                                                                                                                      |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |
|                                                                                                                                      |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |
|                                                                                                                                      |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |
|                                                                                                                                      |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |
|                                                                                                                                      |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |
| NOTE<br>The severity category is to be in accordance with the following:<br>(a) Catastrophic; (b) Hazardous; (c) Major or (d) Minor. |                       |          |                   |              |               |                   |                   |           |          |                   |         |



# Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy

## Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 3

Sections 2 & 3

2.1.5 At sub-system level it is acceptable, for the purpose of these Rules, to consider failure of equipment items and their functions, e.g., failure of a pump to produce flow or pressure head. It is not required that the failure of components within that pump be analysed. In addition, their failure need only be dealt with as a cause of failure of the pump.

2.1.6 Where FMEA is used for consideration of systems that depend on software-based functions for control or co-ordination, the analysis is to investigate failure of the functions rather than a specific analysis of the software code itself.

2.1.7 The FMEA is to establish that in the event of a single failure:

- (a) For **PSMR** and **PSMR★** notations, that not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems is available, and that steering capability is retained at a speed of seven knots.
- (b) For **PMR** and **PMR★** notations, that not less than 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems remain available.
- (c) For **SMR** and **SMR★** notations, steering capability at a speed of seven knots is to be retained.
- (d) For **PSMRL★** notation, that the ship will retain the ability to use available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems that are unaffected by the failure and retain steering capability at a service speed of not less than seven knots.
- (e) For **PMRL★** notation, that the ship will retain the ability to use available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems that are unaffected by the failure.

## ■ Section 3 Machinery arrangements

### 3.1 Main propulsion machinery

3.1.1 For **PSMR**, **PSMR★**, **PMR** and **PMR★** notations, independent main propulsion systems are to be provided so that at least 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems will continue to be available in the event of a single failure of a system or item of active equipment, see 1.1.4. In the event of a single failure in equipment, the remaining system(s) is to be capable of maintaining a manoeuvring speed and, for **PSMR** and **PSMR★** notations, give adequate manoeuvring capability, see 1.2.4.

3.1.2 For **PMRL**, **PSMRL**, **PMRL★** and **PSMRL★** notations, independent main propulsion systems are to be provided so that the ship will retain the ability to use the available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems following a single failure of a system or item of equipment. In the event of a single failure in equipment, the remaining system(s) is to be capable of maintaining a manoeuvring speed of not less than 7 knots and, for **PSMRL** and **PSMRL★** notations, give adequate manoeuvring capability, see 1.2.4.

### 3.2 Steering machinery

3.2.1 For **PSMR**, **PSMR★**, **SMR** and **SMR★** notations, independent steering systems for manoeuvring the ship are to be installed, such that steering capability will continue to be available in the event of any of the following:

- (a) Single failure in the steering gear equipment.
- (b) Loss of power supply or control system to any steering system.

### 3.3 Electrical power supply

3.3.1 The main busbars of the switchboard supplying the propulsion machinery and essential services are to be capable of being isolated by a multi-pole linked circuit breaker, disconnector, or switch-disconnector into at least two independent sections.

3.3.2 In the event of the loss of one section or failure of the power supply from one generator, there is to be continuity of sufficient electrical power to supply essential services such that the available installed prime mover capacity and installed propulsion systems will continue to have the ability of functioning at their operational capability where **PSMRL**, **PSMRL★**, **PMRL** and **PMRL★** notations are required. See 3.2.1 for steering machinery requirements.

3.3.3 In the event of the loss of one section or failure of the power supply from one generator, there is to be continuity of sufficient electrical power to supply essential services such that at least 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems will continue to be available where **PSMR**, **PSMR★**, **PMR** and **PMR★** notations are required. See 3.2.1 for steering machinery requirements.

3.3.4 For ships capable of operating with one service generator connected to the switchboard, arrangements are to be such that a standby generator will automatically start and connect to the switchboard on loss of the service generator. Sequential starting of essential services is to be provided.

# Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy

## Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 3

Sections 3, 4 & 5

3.3.5 For ships operating with two or more generator sets in service connected to the switchboard, arrangements are to be such that, in the event of loss of one generator, the remaining set(s) is to be adequate for the continuity of essential services supplied from that switchboard. This may be achieved by preferential tripping of non-essential services. Alternatively, arrangements can be such that a standby generator will start automatically and connect to the switchboard on loss of one of the generator sets in service.

### 3.4 Essential services for machinery

3.4.1 Services essential for the operation of the propulsion machinery, steering and the supply of electrical power are to be arranged so that 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems and steering capability are maintained in the event of a single failure in any of the services, where required by the respective class notations.

### 3.5 Oil fuel storage and transfer systems

3.5.1 The arrangements for the storage of oil fuel bunkers are to ensure that there is an adequate supply of existing oil fuel on board to allow sufficient time for a shore-based quality analysis of new bunkers, in accordance with ISO 8217 *Petroleum Products – Fuels (Class F) Specification of Marine Fuels* prior to use.

3.5.2 Provision is to be made to enable samples of oil fuel to be taken at the bunkering manifolds.

## Section 4 Control arrangements

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 This Section states the requirements for the installation of control, alarm and safety systems but does not signify that machinery spaces may be operated unattended. For unattended machinery space operation, compliance with Vol 2, Pt 9, Ch 1,3 is also required.

4.1.2 The control, alarm and safety systems required in 4.2 are to comply with Vol 2, Pt 9, Ch 1,2.

### 4.2 Bridge control

4.2.1 The controls, alarms, instrumentation and safeguards required in 4.2.2 to 4.2.6 are to be provided on the bridge.

4.2.2 For **PSMR**, **PSMR★**, **PMR** and **PMR★** notations, means are to be provided to ensure satisfactory control of propulsion in both the ahead and astern directions when all main propulsion systems are functioning and when one propulsion system is not available.

4.2.3 For **PSMR**, **PSMR★**, **SMR** and **SMR★** notations, means are to be provided to ensure satisfactory control of steering when all steering systems are functioning and when any one steering system is not available.

4.2.4 Where required by 5.4.3, isolation of essential services is to be carried out either automatically or manually from the bridge. Indication of the status of isolation arrangements is to be provided on the machinery console.

4.2.5 A means of indicating the operational status of running and standby machinery is to be provided for the propulsion systems, the supply of electrical power, steering systems and other essential services.

4.2.6 Alarms are to be provided in the event of:

- (a) A fire in any machinery compartment.
- (b) A high bilge level in any machinery compartment. Irrespective of the assignment of the **UMS** notation, the bilge level detection system and arrangements for automatically pumping bilges, if applicable, are to comply with Vol 2, Pt 9, Ch 1,3.6.

## Section 5 Separate machinery spaces ★ (star) Enhancement

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 This Section states the additional requirements where propulsion and steering machinery are installed in separate compartments such that, in the event of the loss of one compartment, the ship will retain availability of propulsion power and manoeuvring capability.

5.1.2 The machinery arrangements, control arrangements and FMEA required by Sections 2 to 4, together with testing and trials requirements in Section 6, are to be complied with in addition to 5.2 to 5.8.

### 5.2 Machinery arrangements

5.2.1 The main propulsion machinery is to be arranged in not less than two compartments such that, in the event of the loss of one compartment, propulsion power and/or manoeuvring capability will continue to be available, where required by the respective class notations.

5.2.2 The steering systems are to be arranged in no fewer than two separate compartments, such that steering capability will continue to be available in the event of the loss of one compartment, where required by the respective class notations.

### 5.3 Electrical power supply

5.3.1 The generating sets and converting sets required by 3.3.1 are to be arranged so that they are located in at least two separate machinery compartments.

# Propulsion and Steering Machinery Redundancy

## Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 3

Sections 5 & 6

5.3.2 The independent sections of the switchboard required by 3.3.1 are to be arranged in no fewer than two separate compartments.

5.3.3 In the event of the loss of one compartment, there is to be continuity of sufficient electrical power to supply essential services, such that propulsion power and steering capability will continue to be available.

### 5.4 Essential services for machinery

5.4.1 Services essential for the operation of the propulsion machinery, steering and the supply of electrical power are to be arranged, so that propulsion power and steering capability are maintained in the event of the loss of one machinery compartment.

5.4.2 The design of systems which may have a common source, such as those used for supplying oil fuel, lubricating oil, fresh and sea-water cooling, ventilation of compartments and engine starting energy, is to ensure continuous availability of supply in the event of the loss of any one compartment. Where applicable, continuous availability of heating services, oil fuel and water treatments is also to be provided. See 3.5 and 5.6 for oil fuel storage and transfer systems.

5.4.3 Where essential services are arranged so that they may supply machinery in another compartment, means of isolation from that compartment is to be provided.

5.4.4 Where pumps for essential services are arranged to supply more than one compartment, standby pumps for the same supplies are to be provided in a different compartment. The standby pumps are to be arranged to start automatically if the discharge pressure from the working pumps falls below a predetermined value.

### 5.5 Bilge drainage arrangements

5.5.1 The drainage arrangements for any machinery space are to be provided with means of isolation from other compartments.

### 5.6 Oil fuel storage

5.6.1 The oil fuel service tanks required by Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 3,4.17.2 are to be located in separate compartments.

5.6.2 Provision is to be made to ensure that oil fuel preparation and transfer arrangements to the oil fuel service tanks are continuously available in the event of the loss of any one compartment, see *also* 5.4.2.

### 5.7 Fire containment

5.7.1 Common boundaries separating compartments containing propulsion and/or steering machinery are to be at least 'A-30' class divisions.

### 5.8 FMEA

5.8.1 The FMEA required by 2.1.1 for the propulsion systems, electrical power supplies, essential services, control systems and steering arrangements is also to address the following:

- (a) Fire in a machinery space or control room.
- (b) Flooding of any watertight compartment which could affect propulsion or steering capability.
- (c) Separation of machinery spaces.

## Section 6 Testing and trials

### 6.1 Sea trials

6.1.1 In addition to the requirements for sea trials in Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,16.1, trials are to be carried out to demonstrate that when the ship is operating with 50 per cent of the installed prime mover capacity and not less than 50 per cent of the installed propulsion systems, a manoeuvring speed can be maintained with adequate steering capability, where required by the respective class notations.

6.1.2 Trials are to be carried out to demonstrate the ship's steering capability in accordance with the assessment required by 1.2.4 with one steering system out of action.

6.1.3 Where the FMEA report has identified the need to prove the conclusions, testing and trials are to be carried out as necessary to investigate the following:

- (a) The effect of a specific component failure.
- (b) The effectiveness of automatic/manual isolation systems.
- (c) The behaviour of any interlocks that may inhibit operation of essential systems.

6.1.4 During sea trials, the operational envelope(s) is to be determined under conditions detailed in 3.1 or 3.2 as required for the class notation.



# Manoeuvring Assessment

# Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 4

Section 1

## Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Assessment for LMA notation**
- 3 **Assessment for LNMA notation**
- 4 **Verification trials**
- 5 **Guidelines on conducting ship verification trials**

## ■ Section 1 General

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The requirements contained in these Rules apply to naval ships of all rudder and propulsion types, where the length between perpendiculars,  $L_{pp}$ , is 50 m and over. Special consideration may be given to applying these requirements to smaller vessels.

1.1.2 These requirements, which are optional, establish a ship's manoeuvring capability by assessing its characteristics in conjunction with engine and propulsion performance. Such requirements are additional to those applicable in the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Naval Ships) contained in Volumes 1 and 2.

1.1.3 Where a ship's manoeuvring capability is assessed and verified in accordance with these Rules, it will be eligible for the class notations specified in 1.2.

1.1.4 For a ship under construction, the requirements of Sections 2 or 3 are to be met as applicable.

1.1.5 For an existing ship, all available data and full-scale manoeuvring information are to be submitted. This information will be examined against the requirements of these Rules and, if acceptable, the scope of the representative manoeuvres required in Section 4 may be reduced.

1.1.6 Where the **LMA** notation is applied, these Rules satisfy the requirements of IMO Resolutions A.601(15), *Provision and Display of Manoeuvring Information On Board Ships* and MSC.137(76), *Standards for Ship Manoeuvrability*.

1.1.7 Requirements additional to those in this Chapter may be imposed by the Naval Authority.

### 1.2 Class notations

1.2.1 In addition to the hull and machinery class notations defined in Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3, ships complying with these requirements will be eligible to be assigned the notations:

**LMA** Lloyd's Manoeuvring Assessment, see Section 2.

**LNMA** Lloyd's Naval Manoeuvring Assessment, see Section 3.

1.2.2 Details of any subsequent modifications to the ship's structure or equipment resulting in any alteration to the data specified in 1.3 are to be submitted for re-assessment of the ship's manoeuvring capability.

### 1.3 Information and plans to be submitted

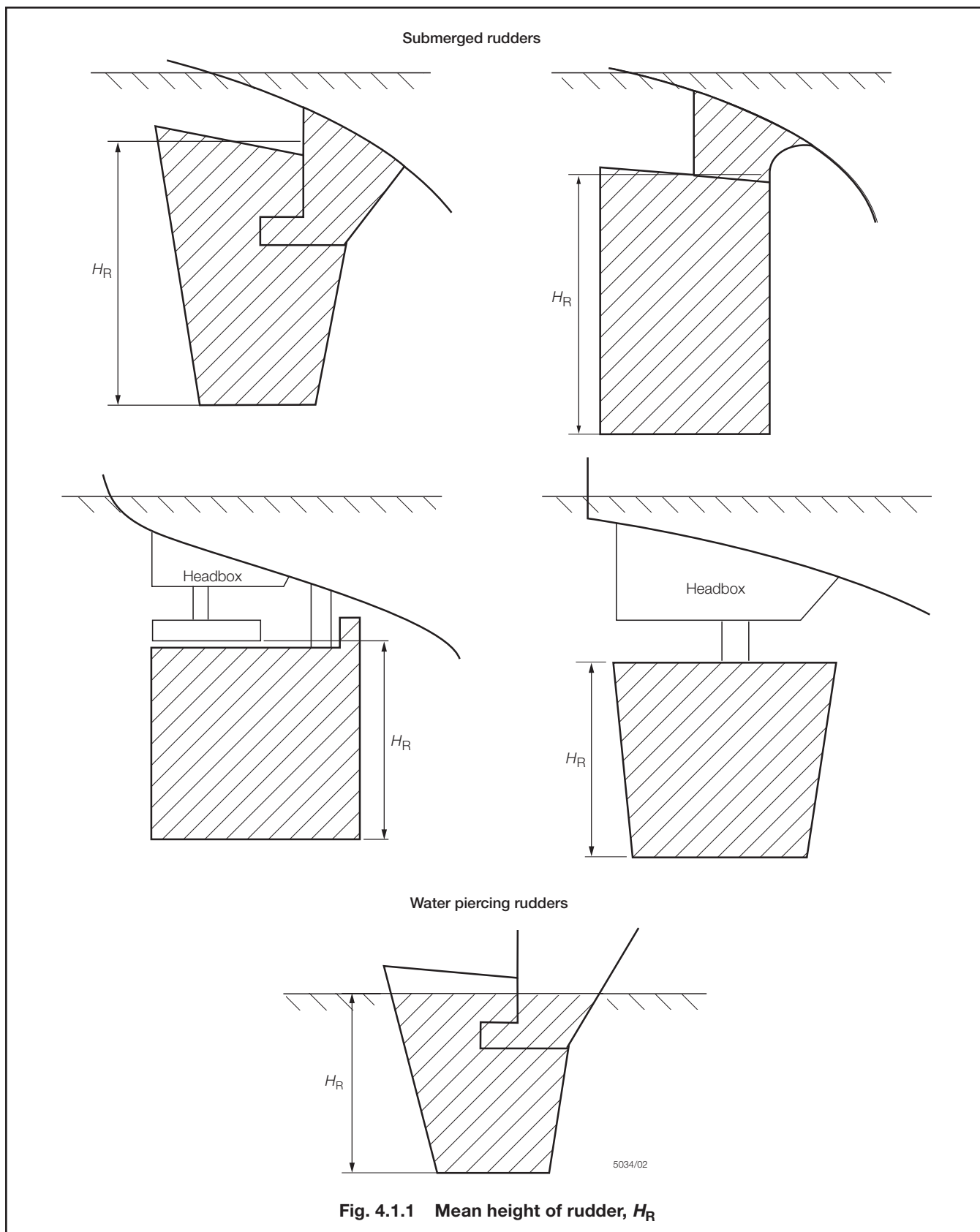
1.3.1 Information, as specified in 1.3.2, is to be submitted for the ship in the condition to be used during verification trials.

1.3.2 Information required for assessment:

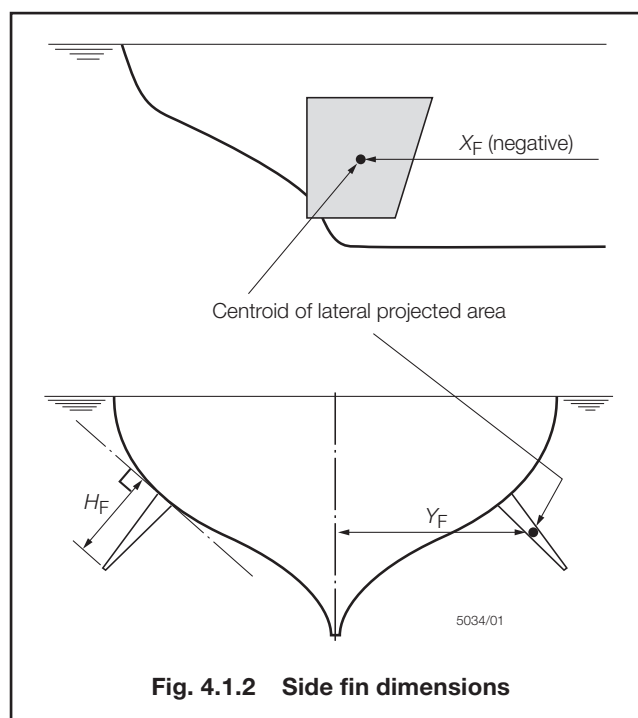
- (a) Ship data, where applicable, see Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 1,5 of the Rules for Naval Ships:
  - Length overall.
  - Length between perpendiculars ( $L_{pp}$ ).
  - Moulded breadth.
  - Draught at forward perpendicular.
  - Draught at after perpendicular.
  - Block coefficient and/or prismatic coefficient.
  - Midship or maximum section area coefficient.
  - Waterplane area coefficient.
  - Distance of LCG from amidships (positive fwd).
  - Height of VCG above baseline.
  - Cross-sectional area of bulbous bow, if applicable, at the forward perpendicular below the load waterline.
  - Wetted area of appendages, excluding rudder and propeller.
  - Transverse metacentric height above baseline.
  - Extreme height of the ship structure above baseline.
- (b) Propeller data:
  - Number of propellers and direction of rotation.
  - Athwartship position of propellers.
  - Height from baseline, to propeller axis.
  - Longitudinal distance of propeller disc from amidships.
  - Type of propellers (e.g., fixed or controllable pitch, ducted).
  - If ducted, type of duct (e.g., accelerating/decelerating) and designation (e.g., NSMB 19A/37 or special type).
  - Propeller diameter.
  - Mean pitch for fixed pitch propellers.
  - Design pitch and range of pitch for controllable pitch propellers.
  - Number of blades.
  - Developed blade area ratio.

(c) Rudder data:

- Number of rudders and type.
- If active type, rudder characteristics (e.g., rotating cylinder, variable fin, flap length, tail angle).
- Lateral underwater projected area of both rudder and horn, where applicable, see shaded area in Fig. 4.1.1.
- Mean height of rudder,  $H_R$ , see Fig. 4.1.1.



- Longitudinal distance of rudder's leading edge from amidships.
  - Maximum rudder angle.
  - Minimum time taken to put rudder over from 35° on either side to 30° on the other side, see Vol 2, Pt 6, Ch 1.
- (d) Propulsion data:
- Propulsion type (e.g., gas turbine, electric, steam, diesel).
  - Steady-state developed shaft torque or ship's speed versus propeller RPM/pitch at each telegraph or combinator setting as identified on the bridge. Times for effecting changes in engine telegraph settings for both normal and emergency conditions.
  - Critical or barred RPM ranges.
  - Main engine stalling revs, if applicable.
- (e) Transverse thruster data, if applicable:
- Type of thruster (e.g., tunnel, Gill).
  - Longitudinal distance of thruster axis from amidships.
  - Thruster propeller characteristics, viz: number of blades, diameter and pitch.
  - Power at MCR.
  - Time delay to achieve full thruster RPM.
  - Time delay to achieve full reverse RPM/pitch.
  - Predicted thrust versus RPM/pitch curve in clear deep water.
  - Thruster tunnel diameter and height of its centre above the keel.
  - Details of hull profile in the vicinity of thruster tunnel.
- (f) Side fins, see Fig. 4.1.2:
- Lateral fin area, see shaded area in Fig. 4.1.2.
  - Height of fin,  $H_F$ .
  - Longitudinal position of the fin,  $X_F$ , from amidships (positive fwd).
  - Lateral position of the fin,  $Y_F$ , from the centreline.
- (g) Wind parameters:
- Lateral projected area above waterline.
  - Transverse projected area above waterline.
  - Lateral projected area of the superstructure.
  - Sum of the lengths forming the perimeter of the lateral projection of the ship, excluding waterline.
  - Distance from the FP to the centroid of the lateral projected area.
- (h) Ship performance data:
- Ship design speed.
  - Propeller RPM at ship design speed.
  - Power and percentage MCR to which ship speed and RPM apply.
  - Draught conditions applicable to powering condition.
  - Range of operating draughts and trims.
  - Sea-state applicable to powering condition.
  - RPM margin on propeller in the case of a new ship.
- (j) Plans:
- A general arrangement plan of the ship.
  - A lines plan.
  - Forward and after bridge blind zones with dimensions specified.
- (k) Manoeuvring information:
- Wheelhouse poster and manoeuvring booklet, see 2.5.



**Fig. 4.1.2 Side fin dimensions**

## 1.4 Sister ships

**1.4.1** In so far as these Rules are concerned, a ship will be deemed a sister ship, if that ship has been built to the same plans as the lead ship which has completed a manoeuvring assessment in accordance with those requirements specified in 1.1.4 or 1.1.5.

**1.4.2** In demonstrating that a ship is a sister ship, the hull dimensions, weights, tank capacities and arrangements, engine power and propulsion, rudder, performance and general superstructure design are to be identical.

**1.4.3** The manoeuvring information for the lead ship may be used for the sister ship. All duplicate data is to be marked, 'Data duplicated from sister ship (name of lead ship)'.

**1.4.4** For a sister ship to a ship carrying the **LMA** notation, the ship will be required to carry out the following representative manoeuvres, in accordance with Section 4:

- (a) A ship's stopping manoeuvre from full sea speed achieved by the application of full astern thrust.
- (b) A 10°/10° zig-zag manoeuvre under the approach conditions defined in 4.4.
- (c) A 20°/20° zig-zag manoeuvre under the approach conditions defined in 4.4.
- (d) An initial turning trial under the approach conditions defined in 4.4.

**1.4.5** For a sister ship to a ship carrying the **LNMA** the ship will be required to verify performance at sea trials. The manoeuvres to be conducted are to be agreed between LR and the Naval Administration.



## ■ Section 2 Assessment for LMA notation

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 For the assignment of the **LMA** notation, calculations are to be carried out using the information specified in 1.3 to produce an estimation of the ship's manoeuvring capability which must satisfy the requirements of 2.3.

2.1.2 The calculations will normally be carried out by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR'), but may be carried out by the designer or Shipbuilder and submitted to LR for assessment together with the data specified in 1.3.

### 2.2 Manoeuvres to be assessed

2.2.1 The calculations are to give estimates of the primary manoeuvring indices from the following:

- (a) Ship's turning circles to port and starboard with maximum design rudder angle starting from:
  - The approach speed, see 4.4.1, coupled with a pull-out manoeuvre.
  - Full sea speed and constant engine(s) control setting.
  - Half manoeuvring ship speed and constant engine(s) control setting.
- (b) Ship's stopping manoeuvring characteristics by the application of astern power, from:
  - The approach speed, see 4.4.1.
  - Full sea speed.
  - Full manoeuvring speed ahead.
  - Half manoeuvring speed ahead.
  - Slow manoeuvring speed.
- (c) Ship's yaw (rate of change of heading) checking characteristics through the 20°/20° and 10°/10° zig-zag manoeuvres, from the approach speed, see 4.4.1, with constant engine(s) control setting.
- (d) Ship's initial turning ability at the approach speed, see 4.4.1.
- (e) Where these manoeuvres indicate dynamic instability, additional representative manoeuvres may be required, for example, a spiral manoeuvre, see 4.5.2.

2.2.2 For the purpose of the calculations, thrust break-down due to cavitation during manoeuvring conditions and the effects of wind, tide, current and shallow water may be ignored.

### 2.3 Manoeuvring standards

2.3.1 For the assignment of the **LMA** notation, the ship is to be assessed in accordance with the requirements of IMO Resolution MSC.137(76).

2.3.2 In cases where a large displacement ship does not satisfy the stopping standard referred to in 2.3.1, special consideration will be given to the ship's stopping capability.

### 2.4 Model tests

2.4.1 Model tests may be carried out in lieu of calculations, provided that they reflect the conditions and manoeuvres defined in 2.2. A report is to be submitted which details the test arrangements, ship's characteristics as defined in 1.3, schedule of tests and results presented in both diagrammatic and tabular form.

### 2.5 Wheelhouse poster and manoeuvring booklet

2.5.1 The results of the calculations required by 2.2 (stating the assumptions made), together with additional information gained from the verification trials, and trial data for the man overboard manoeuvre, are to be presented in diagrammatic and tabular form and included in a wheelhouse poster and a manoeuvring booklet.

2.5.2 The poster is to be permanently displayed in the wheelhouse, and is to contain a clear warning that the data presented is applicable to calm weather with no wind, waves or current. The booklet is to be placed on board and is to contain comprehensive details of the ship's manoeuvring characteristics.

2.5.3 The format, data and content of the wheelhouse poster and the manoeuvring booklet are to meet the requirements of IMO Resolution A.601(15).

### 2.6 Manoeuvring information card

2.6.1 The manoeuvring information card is to contain a summary of the ship's manoeuvring capabilities and principal particulars and is to be kept on the wheelhouse for the information of the pilot. The format and data to be presented on this card are to satisfy the requirements of IMO Resolution A.601(15).

## ■ Section 3 Assessment for LNMA notation

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 For the assignment of the **LNMA** notation, model tests are to be carried out and supported by calculations, using the information specified in 1.3, to predict the ship's manoeuvring capability which must satisfy the requirements of 3.2. The predicted performance against the requirements of 3.2 will be verified during sea trials.

3.1.2 The calculations will normally be carried out by LR, but may be carried out by the designer or Shipbuilder and submitted to LR for assessment together with the data specified in 1.3.



# Manoeuvring Assessment

## Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 4

Section 3

3.1.3 The model tests are to be carried out by a suitable organisation recognised by LR and the Naval Administration and a report is to be submitted to LR detailing the test arrangements, schedule of tests and results presented in both diagrammatic and tabular form.

### 3.2 Manoeuvring performance criteria

3.2.1 **Turning ability**, see 5.4 and Table 4.3.1. The advance is not to exceed C1 ship lengths ( $L$ ) and the tactical diameter should not exceed C2 ship lengths in the turning circle manoeuvre.

3.2.2 **Initial turning ability**, see 5.8 and Table 4.3.1. During the 10°/10° zig-zag manoeuvre with an application of 10° rudder angle to port/starboard the ship is not to have travelled more than C3 ship lengths by the time the heading has changed by 10° from the original heading.

3.2.3 **Yaw checking and course-keeping abilities**, see 5.7 and Table 4.3.1. The values of the first overshoot angles during 20°/20° zig-zag manoeuvres are not to exceed 20°. The values of the first and second overshoot angles during 10°/10° zig-zag manoeuvres are not to exceed:

| $L/V$ (seconds)       | First overshoot angle (degrees) | Second overshoot angle (degrees) |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <10                   | 10                              | 25                               |
| $10 \leq L/V \leq 30$ | $5 + 0,5(L/V)$                  | $17,5 + 0,75(L/V)$               |
| >30                   | 20                              | 40                               |

3.2.4 **Stopping ability**, see 5.6 and Table 4.3.1. The track reach in the crash stop manoeuvre should not exceed C4 ship lengths.

3.2.5 **Course keeping ability**, see 5.5 and Table 4.3.1. The residual rate of turn after a pull-out manoeuvre should not exceed C5 per cent of that recorded for the preceding steady turn.

3.2.6 **Self berthing**, see Table 4.3.1, optional as required by the Naval Administration. The vessel shall be capable of moving transversely at a speed of C6 knots with zero rate of rotation.

3.2.7 **Acceleration ability**, see 5.12 and Table 4.3.1, optional as required by the Naval Administration. The time to accelerate to maximum ahead speed shall not exceed C7 seconds.

3.2.8 **Rate of turn**, see Table 4.3.1, optional as required by the Naval Administration. The rate of turn during the period between the initiation of the manoeuvre and the point which is reached in 5.4.3(b) is not to be less than C8 degrees per second per knot, based on speed of entry into turn.

3.2.9 **Turning from rest**, see 5.13 and Table 4.3.1, optional as required by the Naval Administration. This requirement relates to NS3 ships, specifically ships directly engaged in mine clearance. The time from order execute to a 90° change of heading while accelerating from rest is not to exceed C9 seconds.

**Table 4.3.1 Recommended manoeuvring criteria**

| Criteria | Applicable ship types |                           |                                      |
|----------|-----------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
|          | NSA                   | NS1, 2 and 3 <sup>1</sup> | NS3 <sup>2</sup>                     |
| C1       | 4,5                   | 4,0                       | 4,0                                  |
| C2       | 4,5                   | 4,0                       | 2,0 <sup>3</sup> or 4,5 <sup>4</sup> |
| C3       | 2,5                   | 1,8                       | 1,5                                  |
| C4       | 10                    | 5 <sup>5</sup>            | 2                                    |
| C5       | 5                     | 5                         | 5                                    |
| C6       | 1,5 <sup>6</sup>      | 1,5 <sup>6</sup>          | 1,5 <sup>6</sup>                     |
| C7       | n/a                   | 150                       | 150                                  |
| C8       | n/a                   | 0,15– $L/2500$            | 0,15– $L/2500$                       |
| C9       | n/a                   | n/a                       | 100                                  |

NOTES

1. Excluding ships directly engaged in mine clearance.
2. For ships directly engaged in mine clearance.
3. Rate applicable for ships engaged in mine hunting.
4. Rate applicable for engaged in minesweeping.
5. Where the displacement of the ship exceeds 10 000 tonnes, this criterion may be relaxed with the agreement of the Naval Authority.

### 3.3 Wheelhouse poster and manoeuvring booklet

3.3.1 The results of the calculations or model tests required by 3.1 (stating the assumptions made), together with additional information gained from the verification trials, and trial data for the man overboard manoeuvre, are to be presented in diagrammatic and tabular form and included in a wheelhouse poster and a manoeuvring booklet.

3.3.2 The poster is to be permanently displayed in the wheelhouse, and is to contain a clear warning that the data presented is applicable to calm weather with no wind, waves or current. The booklet is to be placed on board and is to contain comprehensive details of the ship's manoeuvring characteristics.

3.3.3 The format, data and content of the wheelhouse poster and the manoeuvring booklet are to meet the requirements of the Naval Administration.

### 3.4 Manoeuvring information card

3.4.1 The manoeuvring information card or bridge card is to contain a summary of the ship's manoeuvring capabilities and principal particulars and is to be kept on the wheelhouse for the information of the pilot.

3.4.2 The format and data to be presented on this card are to satisfy the requirements of the Naval Administration.

## Section 4 Verification trials

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 For the assignment of the **LMA** or **LNMA** notation, representative manoeuvres are to be carried out during sea trials, in accordance with the guidelines in Section 5, to verify estimates derived in Section 2 or 3 as applicable.

4.1.2 Verification trials are normally to be performed with a clean hull and propeller in the presence, and to the satisfaction, of the LR Surveyor.

4.1.3 A report is to be submitted to LR detailing the test schedule and presenting the results of each manoeuvring trial in accordance with the guidelines in Section 5.

### 4.2 Environmental restrictions

4.2.1 The verification trials are to take place in deep, unconfined waters, to minimise the interactive effects of the sea bed topography. The environmental conditions are to be as follows:

#### LMA notation:

- The water depth is not to be less than four times the mean operational draught of the ship.
- The wind speed should not exceed Beaufort 5.
- The wave sea state should not exceed 4.

#### LNMA notation:

- The water depth is not to be less than 5 times the mean operational draught of the ship or  $0,0747V^2$ , whichever is greater.
- The wind speed should not exceed 15 knots.
- The wave sea state should not exceed 3.
- In both cases heavy swell is to be avoided.

4.2.2 The environmental conditions (wind, significant wave height, current and swell) are to be accurately recorded throughout the duration of the trials. The results of the trials are to be corrected to indicate the ship's manoeuvring capability under zero wind, waves and current.

### 4.3 Draught conditions

4.3.1 The trials are normally to be carried out with the ship in a normal operational condition within a five per cent deviation of the design draught and trim.

4.3.2 Where it is impractical to conduct trials at design draught, they may be conducted at a draught as close to the design draught as possible with minimum trim and sufficient propeller immersion.

4.3.3 Where trials are conducted in a condition other than that required by 4.3.1, the necessary manoeuvring characteristics are to be estimated for the trial and full load condition using an acceptable method, and the results are to be submitted to LR for assessment.

### 4.4 Approach conditions

4.4.1 The approach speed for the assessment under Section 2 (**LMA** notation) is to be at least 90 per cent of the ship's speed corresponding to 85 per cent of the maximum engine output.

4.4.2 The approach speed for the assessment under Section 3 (**LNMA** notation) is to be at least 100 per cent of the ship's speed unless otherwise specified by the Naval Administration.

4.4.3 Before the execution of the relevant manoeuvre, the ship must have run at constant engine(s) setting with minimum rate of change of heading (steady course).

### 4.5 Representative manoeuvres (LMA notation)

4.5.1 Representative manoeuvres are to be carried out to an agreed trials code, and are to include the following:

- The performing of one turning circle to port and one to starboard with 35° rudder angle (or the maximum rudder angle) for the following approach conditions:
  - Conditions defined in 4.4, coupled with a pull-out manoeuvre.
  - Full sea speed.
  - Half manoeuvring speed.
- Ship's stopping manoeuvre from full ahead manoeuvring speed achieved by stopping the engine.
- Ship's stopping manoeuvre from full sea speed achieved by the application of full astern thrust.
- Ship's stopping manoeuvre from the approach conditions, defined in 4.4, achieved by the application of full astern power.
- A 10°/10° zig-zag manoeuvre, under the approach conditions defined in 4.4.
- A 20°/20° zig-zag manoeuvre, under the approach conditions defined in 4.4.
- Initial turning manoeuvre at the approach conditions defined in 4.4.
- Man overboard manoeuvre, such as the Williamson turn or an elliptical turn, to both port and starboard at full sea speed.
- Transverse thruster manoeuvres, if applicable, with the ship stopped and all thrusters at maximum power to turn the ship 180° to port and to starboard.

4.5.2 Provision is to be made in the trials agenda for the execution of a spiral manoeuvre where the results of the pull-out manoeuvre indicate excessive dynamic instability or the values for either the first or second overshoot angles, measured during the 10°/10° zig-zag manoeuvre, exceed the following:

| $L/V$<br>(seconds)    | First Overshoot<br>Angle (degrees) | Second Overshoot<br>Angle (degrees) |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| < 10                  | 10                                 | 25                                  |
| $10 \leq L/V \leq 30$ | $5 + (0,5 (L/V))$                  | $20 + (0,5 (L/V))$                  |
| > 30                  | 20                                 | 35                                  |

where

- $L$  = length between perpendiculars (metres)
- $V$  = approach speed, defined in 4.4.1 (m/s).

## 4.6 Representative manoeuvres (LNMA notation)

4.6.1 Specific manoeuvres are to be carried out to an agreed trials code. The scope of the manoeuvres is to be agreed between LR, the designer/Builder and the Naval Administration.

## Section 5 Guidelines on conducting ship verification trials

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 These guidelines provide information on performing the verification trials in accordance with these Rules.

5.1.2 A detailed trials agenda is to be agreed before the commencement of any verification trials. This agenda should include:

- Agreement on the trials site.
- Notification of the possible restrictions that may be imposed by environmental conditions.
- A procedure to calibrate the data logging and measurement system.
- A procedure for data recording.
- The sequence in which the manoeuvring trials are to be conducted.
- The procedure for conducting each manoeuvre, including agreement on the starting and finishing points, the approach speeds and engine setting.

5.1.3 Environmental conditions can have a pronounced influence on the manoeuvring performance of a ship, therefore the verification trials are to be conducted within the environmental restrictions imposed by these Rules.

5.1.4 The following points are to be noted when determining the trials agenda:

- The ship's dynamic stability is required to be assessed in accordance with 4.5.2. It is recommended that the pull-out manoeuvre is performed at the end of the turning circle manoeuvres, see 5.5.
- The initial turning ability of the ship, required by 2.2.1(d), can be measured during the 10°/10° zig-zag manoeuvring trial, see 5.7.

### 5.2 Calibration of the data logging and measurement system

5.2.1 Before commencing the verification trials, the data logging and measurement system is to be calibrated. The allowable measurement tolerances and the frequency of each measurement are given in Table 4.5.1.

5.2.2 The measurement system's time and the ship's time are to be synchronised with a recognised time signal. The time and date, relative to Universal Time Constant (UTC), are to be recorded.

5.2.3 The position of the ship is to be determined by all available means and calibrated with range and/or bearing fixes from three prominent landmarks, including radar responding beacons (racons). Where the ship's position is to be measured using land-based transponders, the installation, set-up and calibration of such measurement equipment are to be carried out to the manufacturer's instructions.

5.2.4 The ship's speed over the ground is to be calibrated with range and/or bearing fixes from three prominent landmarks (including racons), whilst held on a steady course with no alteration in engine setting.

5.2.5 The gyro repeaters are to be adjusted until they are synchronised with the master gyro compass reading.

5.2.6 The steering gear is to be tested to calibrate the rudder angle indicator(s), over the full range of movement against the actual rudder angle reading given on the rudder stock.

5.2.7 The rate of turn indicator can be calibrated against the actual change in heading per second during a turn.

5.2.8 Where an automatic data logging and measurement system is to be used, the installation, set-up and calibration of such measurement equipment are to be carried out to the manufacturer's instructions.

5.2.9 The equipment used to measure prime mover/propeller shaft revolutions and shaft power (torsion meters) is to be calibrated before trials.

### 5.3 Data recording

5.3.1 The data describing manoeuvring performance is to be measured and recorded in accordance with the requirements of Table 4.5.1. This data is to be measured and recorded from the start of the approach run and terminated at the end of the manoeuvring trial. The start of the manoeuvring trial is to be defined by a specific engine order or helm change noted on the recorded measurements.

5.3.2 An automatic data logging and measurement system is the preferred option. However, where the manoeuvring data is to be recorded manually, it is necessary to have suitable indicators and repeaters available to allow a sufficient number of persons to record the required parameters. Sufficient personnel are to be present to ensure that each person is recording no more than three parameters in each trial.

5.3.3 All recordings are to be synchronised to a common time datum.

# Manoeuvring Assessment

# Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 4

Section 5

**Table 4.5.1 Data measurement and accuracy requirements**

| Parameter            | Turning circles                                                | Pull-out manoeuvres   | Stopping/ Acceleration manoeuvres                                 | Zig-zag manoeuvres                                                    | Spiral manoeuvres                                    | Turning from rest manoeuvres                                      | Man overboard manoeuvres                                                                      | Minimum accuracy       |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <b>Time</b>          | Continuously                                                   | Continuously          | Continuously                                                      | Continuously                                                          | Continuously                                         | Continuously                                                      | Continuously                                                                                  | ±1 sec                 |
| <b>Position</b>      | Initially, and then at least every 45 degree change of heading |                       | Initially, and then at least every 20 secs                        | At least 5 equally spaced measurements                                |                                                      |                                                                   | Initially, then at least every 45 degree change of heading or 20 secs whichever is the lesser | ±10 metres             |
| <b>Forward speed</b> | At least every 10 secs or 30 degree change of heading          |                       | At least every 5 secs                                             | At least every 5 secs                                                 | Initially, then once at each steady rate of turn     |                                                                   | At least every 5 secs                                                                         | ±0,5 knots             |
| <b>Heading</b>       | At least every 5 secs                                          | At least every 2 secs | At least every 20 secs                                            | At least every 2 secs                                                 | At least every 2 secs                                | At least every 2 secs                                             | At least every 2 secs                                                                         | ±0,5 degrees           |
| <b>Rudder angle</b>  | Initially, and then at least every 45 degree change of heading | At least every 2 secs | Initially, and then periodically to check the rudder is amidships | At least every 2 secs                                                 | One for each steady rate of turn                     | Initially, and then periodically to check the rudder is hard over | At least every 5 secs                                                                         | ±1 degree              |
| <b>Engine RPM</b>    | Initially, and then at least every 45 degree change of heading |                       | Initially, and then at least every 5 secs                         | Initially, and then at least at every crossing of the the base course | Initially, and then once at each steady rate of turn |                                                                   | Initially, then when the rudder is reversed and at the end of the manoeuvre                   | ±1% of initial setting |
| <b>Rate of turn</b>  | At least every 5 secs                                          | At least every 2 secs |                                                                   | At least every 5 secs                                                 | At least every 5 secs                                | At least every 2 secs                                             |                                                                                               | ±0,05 degrees/sec      |

**NOTE**

All parameters are to be measured at the initiation and termination points of each manoeuvring trial.

5.3.4 The following data is to be clearly recorded for each trial manoeuvre:

- Date.
- Time.
- Ship's loading condition (draught and trim).
- Initial approach speed and heading.
- Water depth.
- Environmental conditions, including:
  - current speed and direction;
  - wind speed;
  - wind direction relative to the ship's head;
  - sea state.
- Position (latitude and longitude); (the use of calibrated GPS systems is acceptable).
- Ship's heading.
- Rate of turn.
- Speed.
- Rudder angle.
- Propeller revolutions.
- Propeller pitch, where applicable.

5.3.5 The steady approach conditions for each trial are to be recorded for at least two minutes before the initiation of the manoeuvring trial.

## 5.4 Turning circle manoeuvring trials

5.4.1 These trials measure the effectiveness of the rudder(s) in initiating a turn and the ship's steady state turning characteristics.

5.4.2 The turning circle manoeuvre is to be conducted as follows:

- It is to be initiated when:
  - the relative approach condition defined in 4.4 is satisfied and the ship is running head to wind; and
  - the rudder is ordered hard over to port or starboard.
- It must continue without any alteration to the engine control settings.
- It is to be terminated when the ship has completed a 540° turn.

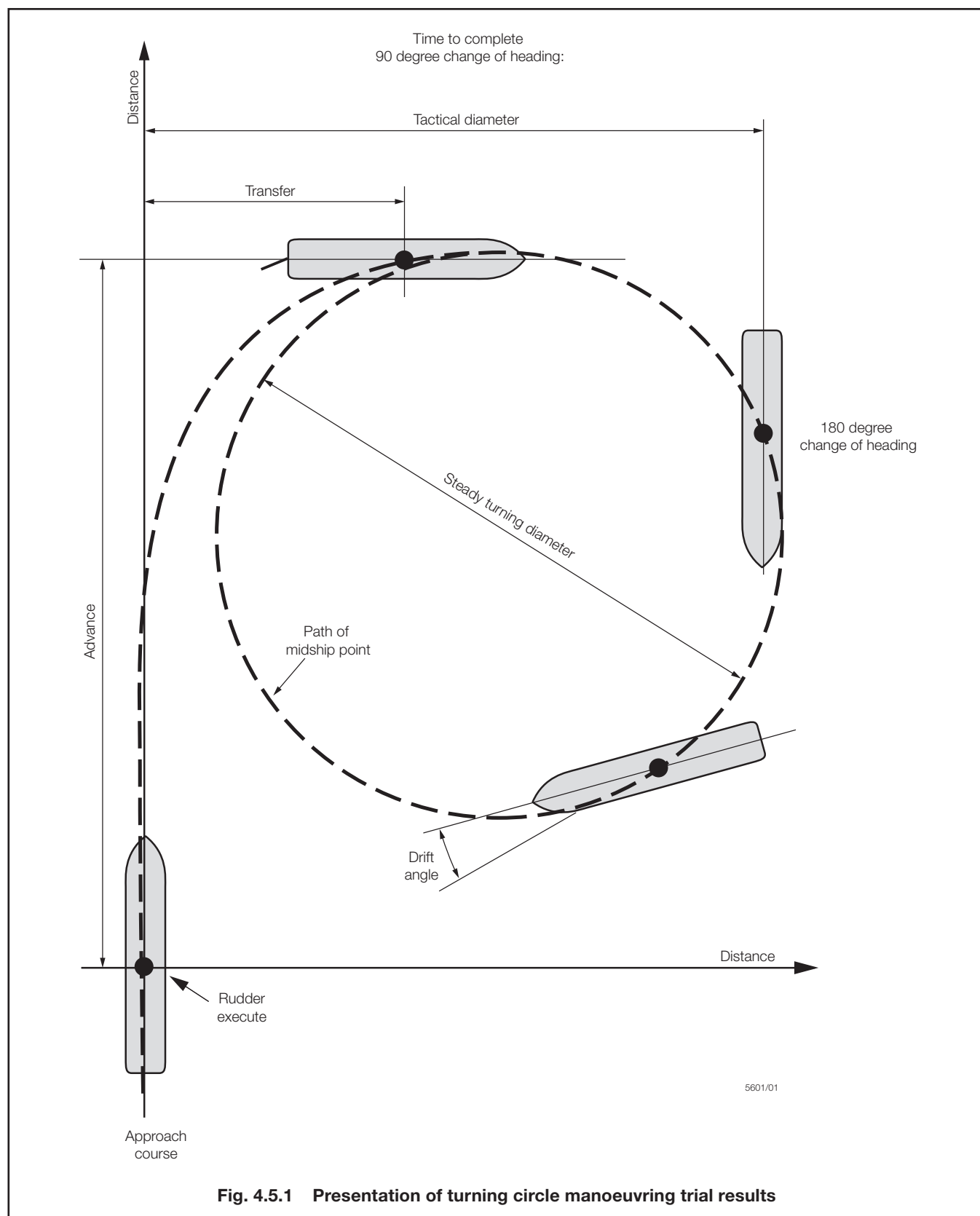
# Manoeuvring Assessment

## Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 4

Section 5

5.4.3 The following information is to be derived from the trials data, see Fig. 4.5.1:

- |                                                     |                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| (a) Time taken to reach each 90° change of heading. | (d) Tactical diameter.                                |
| (b) Advance at each 90° change of heading.          | (e) Steady turning diameter.                          |
| (c) Transfer at each 90° change of heading.         | (f) Loss in forward speed during the turn.            |
|                                                     | (g) Rate of turn during the turn, $r$ , see 5.9.5(c). |



## 5.5 Pull-out manoeuvring trials

5.5.1 The pull-out manoeuvre is a simple trial which has been developed to give a quick indication of the ship's dynamic stability and course keeping ability. The pull-out manoeuvre is to be performed at the end of each turning circle manoeuvring trial. The results of these manoeuvres will indicate whether a spiral manoeuvre trial is required to be conducted, see 5.9.

5.5.2 The pull-out manoeuvre is to be conducted as follows:

- (a) The ship is to be in a steady state turn (constant rate of turn) with the rudder hard over. This manoeuvre is normally conducted on the termination of the turning circle manoeuvring trial.
- (b) This manoeuvre is initiated when the rudder is ordered amidships.
- (c) With the rudder held amidships, the rate of turn will decrease.
- (d) If the ship possesses 'dynamic stability', the rate of turn will reduce towards zero with equal residual rates of turn for both port and starboard turns with the rudder held amidships. If there is an unequal residual rate of turn with the rudder held amidships, then the ship is to be considered 'dynamically unstable', see Fig. 4.5.2.

5.5.3 The following information is to be derived from the trials data, and presented as shown in Fig. 4.5.2:

A plot of the time histories of the ship's head, rate of turn and ship's speed.

## 5.6 Stopping trials

5.6.1 A ship's stopping performance is normally represented by the crash stop manoeuvre, which determines the stopping ability of the ship from the time an order of full astern is given until the ship stops dead in the water for a given approach speed. In addition to the crash stop manoeuvre, a coasting stop manoeuvre is required to be conducted with the engines delivering no power to the propeller.

5.6.2 The stopping manoeuvre is to be conducted as follows:

- (a) It is to be initiated when:
  - (i) the relative approach conditions defined in 4.4 are satisfied and the ship is running with the wind astern, and
  - (ii) the demand for full astern power or stop is given from the engine control position on the bridge.
- (b) The rudder is to be used to a minimal extent and only to keep the ship on course for as long as possible.
- (c) It is to be terminated when the ship has stopped dead in the water.

5.6.3 The following information is to be derived from the trials data, see Fig. 4.5.3:

- (a) Minimum speed at which course can be maintained.
- (b) Head and track reach.
- (c) Lateral deviation and final heading.
- (d) Time to stop dead in the water.

## 5.7 Zig-zag manoeuvring trials

5.7.1 These trials measure the effectiveness of the rudder(s) to initiate and check changes in heading. This manoeuvre is normally defined as a  $\theta_1/\theta_2$  zig-zag manoeuvre (e.g., 20°/20°) where:

- (a)  $\theta_1$  is the required rudder angle, in degrees, to be applied during the trial, and
- (b)  $\theta_2$  is the deviation, in degrees, of the ship's head, from the original course, before application of  $\theta_1$  to check changes in heading.

5.7.2 The zig-zag manoeuvre involves the cyclic movement of the ship about an initial base course. The zig-zag manoeuvre is conducted as follows:

- (a) It is to be initiated when:
  - (i) the approach conditions defined in 4.4 have been satisfied and the ship is running head to wind; and
  - (ii) the rudder is ordered to  $\theta_2$  degrees to starboard (or port).
- (b) It must continue without any alteration to the engine control settings.
- (c) When the heading has changed by  $\theta_2$  degrees from the original course, the rudder is to be ordered to the opposite angle  $\theta_1$  degrees to port (or starboard).
- (d) When the heading has changed by  $\theta_1$  degrees from the original course, the rudder is to be ordered to the opposite angle  $\theta_2$  degrees to starboard (or port).
- (e) This manoeuvre is to be terminated when the ship's head has crossed the base course at least three times.

5.7.3 The following information is to be derived from the trials data, see Fig. 4.5.4:

- (a) A plot of the time histories of the rudder angles and corresponding ship's heading.
- (b) First overshoot angle.
- (c) Second overshoot angle.
- (d) Time to check yaw (rate of change of heading equals zero) at each rudder reversal.
- (e) Initial turning time.

## 5.8 Initial turning manoeuvring trials

5.8.1 The initial turning manoeuvring trial measures the transient effectiveness of the rudder(s). To ascertain the ship's initial turning ability, in accordance with 4.4, the following data is to be recorded from the 10°/10° zig-zag manoeuvring trials:

When the ship's head has moved 10° off the base course, after the initial rudder command, the number of ship lengths travelled is to be recorded.

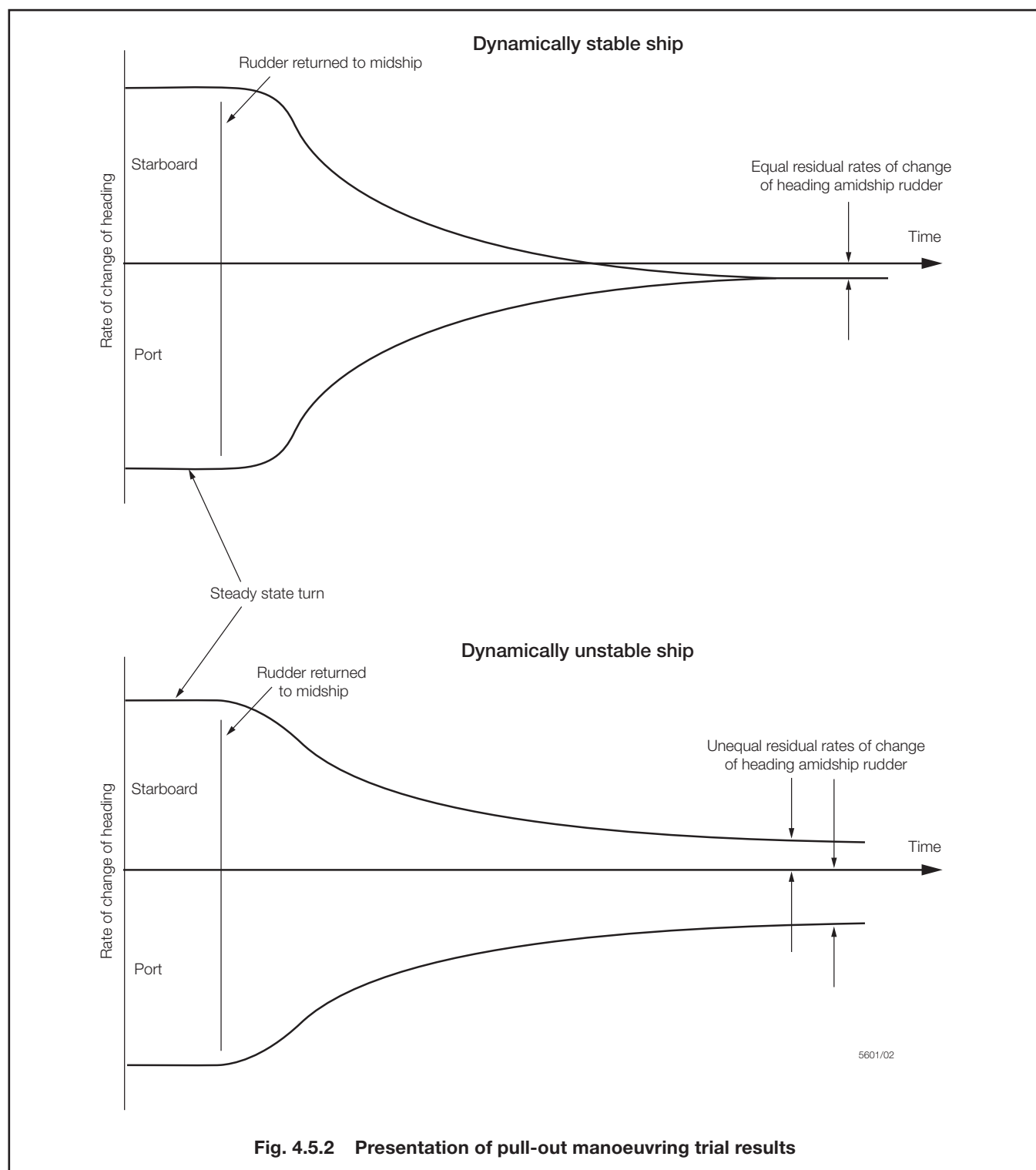
## 5.9 Spiral manoeuvring trials

5.9.1 This trial measures the ship's steady state rate of turn as a function of the applied rudder angle, providing a qualitative measure of the ship's dynamic stability.

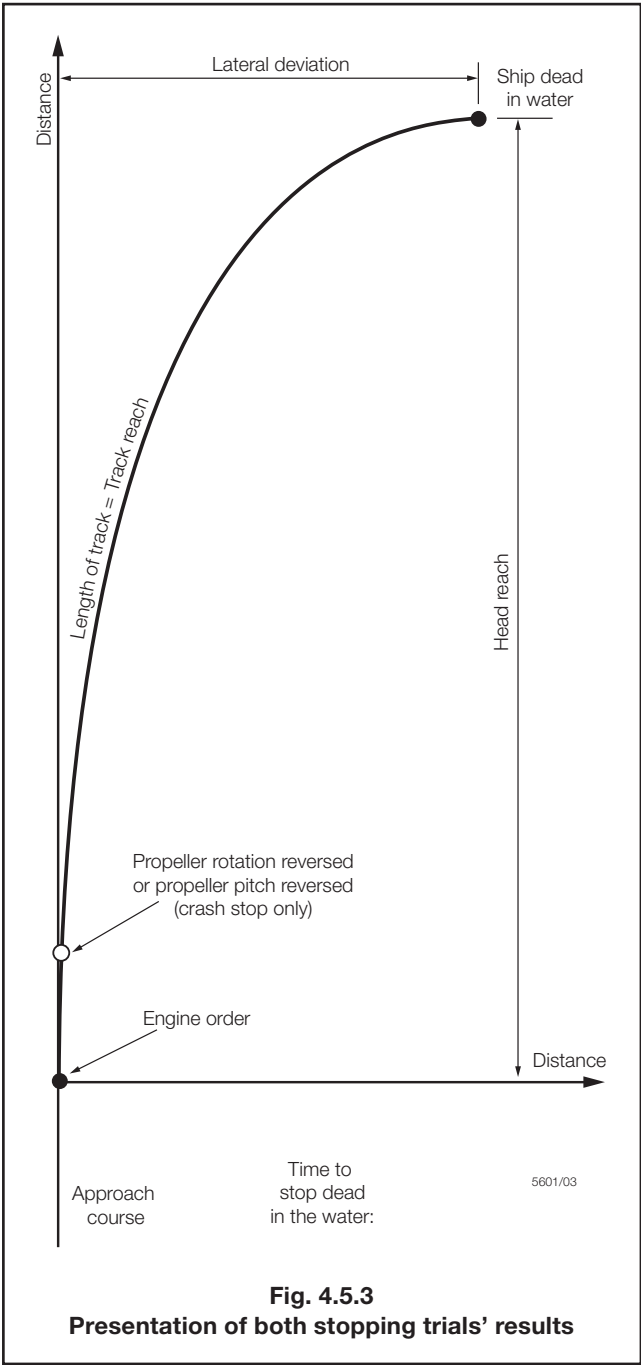
5.9.2 There are two possible variations of the manoeuvring trials that can be used to assess the ship's dynamic stability, namely:

The direct, or Dieudonne, spiral manoeuvre.  
The reverse, or Bech, spiral manoeuvre.

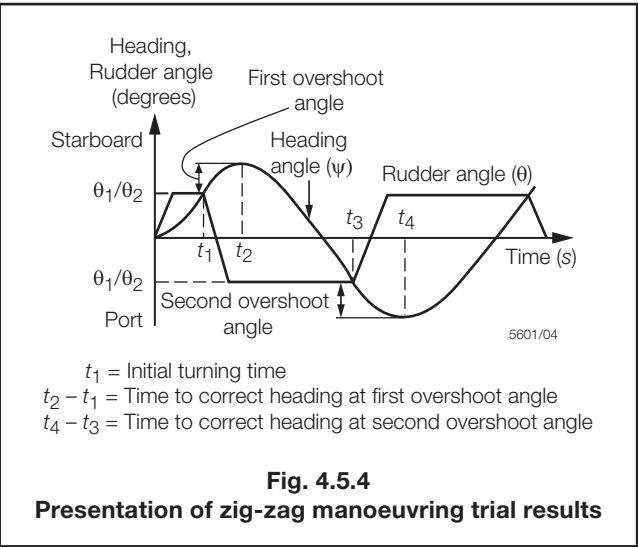




5.9.3 The direct spiral manoeuvre will yield more information about the degree of instability. However, this manoeuvre is very time-consuming, requires good weather conditions and, for larger ships, needs considerable sea room. The reverse spiral manoeuvre provides a procedure for defining the instability loop more rapidly than the direct spiral manoeuvre. However, this trial requires accurate rudder angle and rate of turn indicators. Where the ship is to be steered manually, the helmsman is to be able to read the rate of turn indicator.



- 5.9.4 The direct spiral manoeuvre is to be conducted as follows:
- It is to be initiated when:
    - the approach conditions defined in 4.4 have been satisfied, and
    - the rudder is ordered to 25° to starboard.
  - It must continue without any alteration to the engine control settings.
  - The rudder is to be held until the indicated rate of turn is assumed constant.
  - The rudder angle is then to be decreased by 5° and held until the rate of turn is assumed constant.
  - The manoeuvre is to be terminated when the rudder has moved through the range of 25° to starboard to 25° to port and then back to 25° to starboard in incremental rudder angles of 5°.

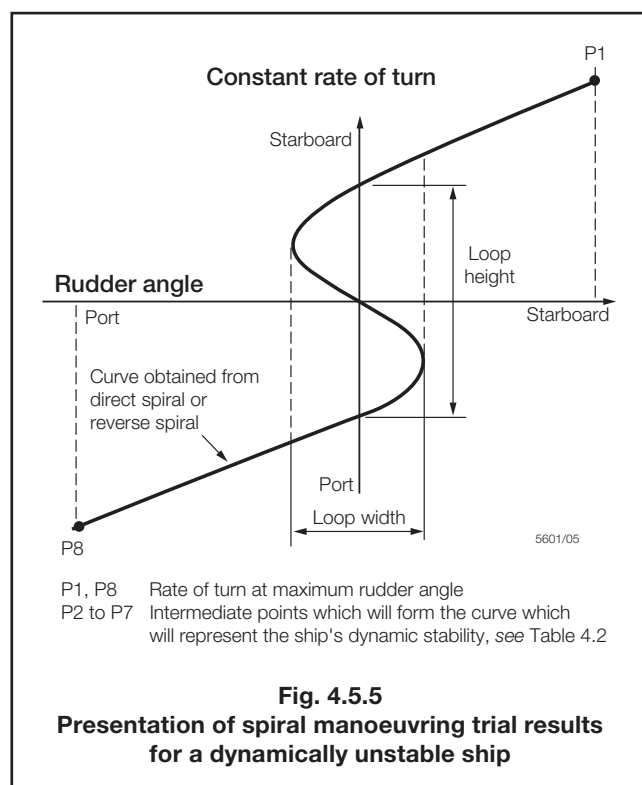


- For dynamically unstable ships, the incremental rudder angle in the range of 10° to starboard through to 10° to port is to be 2°.
- 5.9.5 The reverse spiral manoeuvre is to be conducted as follows:
- It is to be initiated when:
    - the approach conditions defined in 4.4 have been satisfied; and
    - the first constant rate of change of heading is achieved.
  - It must continue without any alteration to the engine control settings.
  - The recommended constant rates of turn are defined as percentages of the steady state rate of turn,  $r$ , derived from the turning circle, as shown in Table 4.5.2. For the **LNMA** notation the Naval Administration may advise on the requirements for constant rates of turn..
  - The points P1 to P8 represent positions on the spiral curve, see Fig. 4.5.5.
  - The first and last points on the spiral curves (P1 and P8) can be derived from the turning circle manoeuvres.
  - The ship is to be steered at a constant rate of turn and the mean rudder angle to achieve the desired rate of turn is to be noted. The rudder angle deviations are not to be greater than  $\pm 2^\circ$ .
  - The manoeuvre is to be terminated when all points have been determined.

Table 4.5.2 Recommended constant rate of change of heading

| Points                                                        | Rate of change of heading |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| P1 and P8                                                     | 1,0 $r$                   |
| P2 and P7                                                     | 0,6 $r$                   |
| P3 and P6                                                     | 0,3 $r$                   |
| P4 and P5                                                     | 0,1 $r$                   |
| where $r$ = change of heading per second = $\frac{d\psi}{dt}$ |                           |





5.9.6 The following information is to be derived from the trials data, see Fig. 4.5.5:

- A time history of the rudder angle and corresponding rate of turn.
- A plot of the constant rate of turn as an ordinate against the applied rudder angle.

## 5.10 Man overboard manoeuvring trials

5.10.1 The man overboard manoeuvre provides the Master with important information on the time taken and the deviation from course necessary to retrieve a person or object from the sea. The elliptical and Williamson turns are two well-known man overboard manoeuvres. These manoeuvres will, in the absence of wind and current, bring the ship back to the position where the man overboard incident occurred.

5.10.2 The elliptical turning manoeuvre is to be conducted as follows:

- It is to be initiated when:
  - the approach conditions defined in 4.4 have been satisfied, and
  - the rudder is ordered hard over.
- It must continue without any alteration to the engine control settings.
- The rudder is to remain hard over until the ship has altered course by 180°. The ship is to be steadied on the reciprocal heading until the approach speed has been regained.
- The rudder is once again placed hard over and the ship is steadied on the original course.
- This manoeuvre is to be terminated when the ship has returned to the position, or nearest position, where the manoeuvre was initiated.

5.10.3 The Williamson turning manoeuvre is considered quicker than the elliptical turning manoeuvre in returning the ship to the original man overboard position. This manoeuvre is to be conducted as follows:

- It is to be initiated when:
  - the approach conditions defined in 4.4 have been satisfied, and
  - the rudder is ordered hard over.
- It must continue without any alteration to the engine control settings.
- The rudder is to remain hard over until the ship has altered course by 70°. The rudder is then ordered hard over to the opposite side, until the ship is on a course which is the reciprocal of the original approach course.
- It is terminated when the ship has returned to the position, or nearest position, where the manoeuvre was initiated.

5.10.4 The following information is to be derived from the trials data, see Fig. 4.5.6:

- A plot of the ship's track.
- The time taken to return to the point, or nearest position to that point, at which the manoeuvre was initiated.
- The lateral deviation from the initial course at the point, or nearest position to that point, at which the manoeuvre was initiated.

## 5.11 Manoeuvring trials for auxiliary thrusters

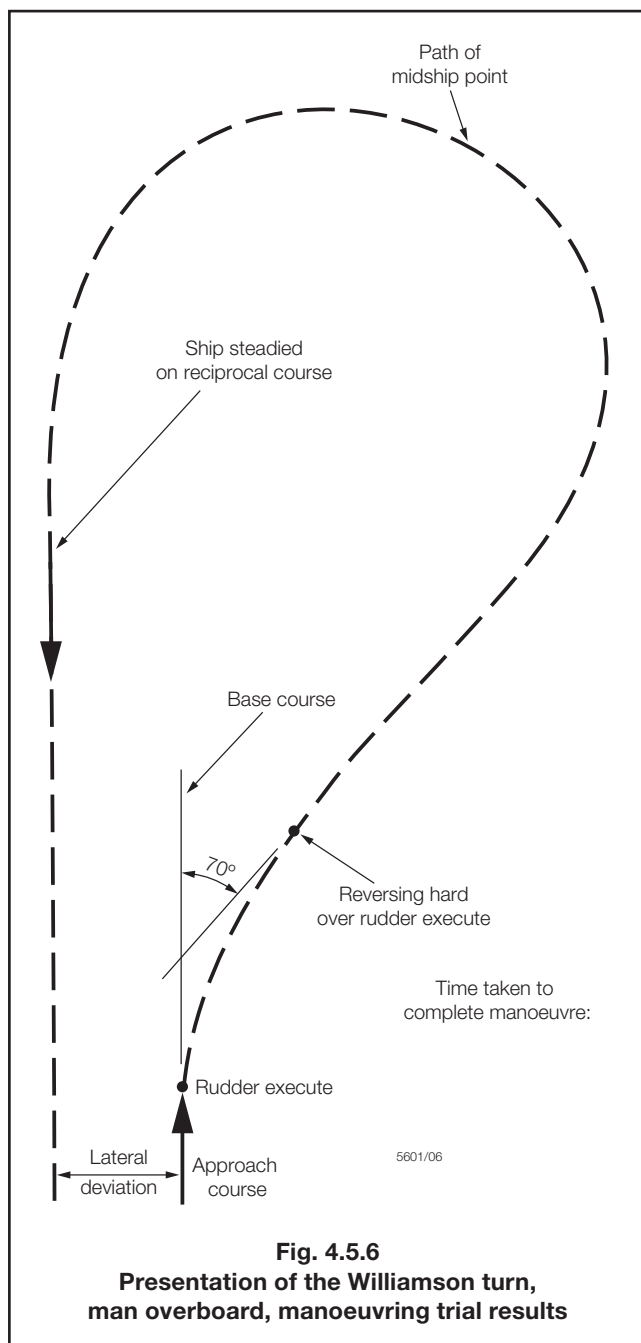
5.11.1 Where a ship is fitted with auxiliary thrusters, such as bow thrusters, a turning circle manoeuvre is required to be performed to determine the effectiveness of those thrusters in turning the ship through 180°. This trial is to be carried out with the wind initially from the stern and the ship turning into the wind.

5.11.2 The auxiliary thrusters' turning circle is to be conducted as follows:

- All primary thrusters stopped and the ship dead in the water.
- The ship is to be completely stopped in the water with head to wind.
- The auxiliary thrusters are to be set to maximum power to turn the ship.
- The manoeuvring trial is to be completed when the ship has turned through 180°.

5.11.3 The following information is to be derived from the trials data:

- The time taken to reach a 90° change of heading.
- The time taken to reach a 180° change of heading.
- The transfer at a 90° change of heading, see Fig. 4.5.1.
- The transfer at a 180° change of heading, see Fig. 4.5.1.
- The steady state rate of change of heading.



5.11.4 If required by 3.2.6 (LNMA notation only) a self berthing manoeuvre is to be carried out:

- The ship is to be positioned bow or stern to the wind.
- All primary thrusters stopped and the ship dead in the water.
- The auxiliary thrusters are to be set to maximum power for transverse motion.
- The manoeuvre may be terminated when the ship has recorded a steady transverse speed with zero rate of rotation.

5.11.5 The following information is to be derived from the trials data:

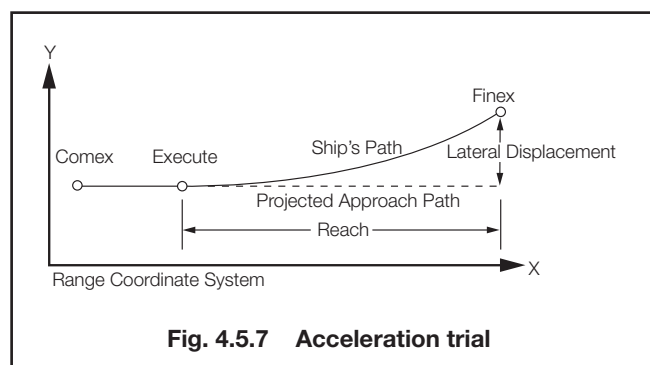
- The time taken to reach a steady transverse velocity.
- The maximum transverse velocity attained.
- The heading of the vessel at least every two seconds during the manoeuvre.

## 5.12 Acceleration trials

5.12.1 The acceleration trials information on the distance and time to achieve a speed defined by 80–100 per cent MCR set speeds from a dead stop.

5.12.2 The following trial procedure is to be followed as illustrated in Fig. 4.5.7:

- Establish a steady ship speed in accordance with the trial agenda and adjust the ship's heading to a steady course. At a position roughly one ship length before the point where the engine order is initiated, start the acquisition system.
- Execute the prescribed engine order.
- The rudder is to be used to a minimal extent and only to keep the ship on course.
- When the ship attains the steady terminal speed stated in the trial agenda, the test is complete.



5.12.3 The following information is to be derived from the trials data:

- The time taken to reach the terminal speed specified in the trials agenda.
- The distance covered from the time the engine order is initiated until the ship reaches the terminal speed specified in the trials agenda.
- Lateral deviation and final heading.

## 5.13 Turning from rest

5.13.1 The turning from rest manoeuvre is to be conducted as follows:

- (a) All primary and auxiliary thrusters are stopped and the ship dead in the water;
- (b) the rudder is ordered hard over;
- (c) the demand for full ahead power is given from the engine control position on the bridge;
- (d) the ship must continue without any alteration to the engine control settings;
- (e) the rudder is to remain hard over until the ship has altered course by 90°;
- (f) this manoeuvre is to be terminated when the ship has altered course by 90°.

5.13.2 The time taken from the full ahead order until the ship has altered course by 90° is to be recorded.



# Replenishment at Sea (RAS) Systems

# Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 5

## Section 1

### Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Principles**
- 3 **Acceptance criteria**
- 4 **Design and construction**
- 5 **Plans and particulars to be submitted**
- 6 **Ship and arrangement requirements**
- 7 **Ship operating system requirements**
- 8 **RAS station requirements**
- 9 **Transfer of liquids**
- 10 **Transfer of solids**
- 11 **Transfer of personnel**
- 12 **RAS equipment**
- 13 **Testing and trials**
- 14 **Survey through life**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter states the requirements for Replenishment At Sea (RAS) systems installed in naval ships for the purpose of supplying and receiving solid or liquid supplies. The Chapter also states the requirements for Vertical Replenishment (VERTREP) and light jackstay RAS systems which may be used for transfer of personnel and light stores between naval ships. The requirements are in addition to the relevant requirements contained in Volumes 1 and 2 of these Rules. Other arrangements to supply solid and liquid stores by means of RAS will be specially considered.

1.1.2 The requirements in this Chapter cover arrangements, deck equipment, piping and control systems necessary for RAS operations.

1.1.3 The extent of RAS systems and facilities are subject to agreement between the designer and Owner/Operator. The classification approval process will involve assessment of the safety of the proposed facilities from concept to through life operability and de-commissioning. RAS operations are extremely hazardous and those involved in the development of such systems need to address safety issues to minimise the risks to the ship, personnel and the environment. Operational procedures and regular crew training are essential to minimise these risks and to reduce hazards to as low as reasonably practicable.

1.1.4 The Naval Authority may impose requirements additional to those in this Chapter.

1.1.5 NATO interoperability requirements are to be specified by the Owner/Operator and are detailed in ATP16 (latest version).

### 1.2 RAS terminology

1.2.1 RAS terminology is defined in 1.2.2 to 1.2.9.

1.2.2 **RAS station:** The physical location of a combination of deck area and associated equipment that provides a ship with the capability to receive or deliver solids, liquid or personnel by means of passing RAS equipment between ships whilst underway. Note these Rules are only applicable to naval ships intended for supplying and receiving solid or liquid supplies and for personnel transfer.

1.2.3 **VERTREP Operational Area (VOA):** This is the authorised area within which VERTREP operations are conducted. It includes the clear deck space for helicopter rotor, fuselage and landing gear, and VERTREP load clearances (including dump areas).

1.2.4 **Abeam Replenishment:** The transfer of solid cargo, personnel or liquid cargo by means of passing RAS equipment between ships while underway when the Receiving Ship will normally station-keep on the Supplying Ship. Circumstances may exist when the Supplying Ship will be required to station-keep on the Receiving Ship.

1.2.5 **Astern Replenishment:** The transfer of liquid cargo by means of a hose(s) while underway with the Receiving Ship maintaining station astern of the Supplying Ship.

1.2.6 **Vertical Replenishment (VERTREP):** Transfer of solid cargo by underslung load from a helicopter and the winching of personnel where a ship is not provided with a flight deck.

1.2.7 **Supplying Ship:** The ship that supplies the RAS equipment and cargo.

1.2.8 **Receiving Ship:** The ship that receives the RAS equipment and transferred cargo.

1.2.9 **Dump Area:** A designated clear area that is provided at VERTREP and Abeam RAS stations for receiving stores.

## 1.3 Safety

1.3.1 Replenishment at sea between two vessels underway (particularly abeam RAS) is classified as the most hazardous peacetime seamanship evolution conducted by the naval and supply ships. It is important that the following areas are considered when designing, building, operating and maintaining RAS systems:

- (a) **Close Proximity of Vessels Underway:** Station keeping and the availability of propulsion and steering to maintain constant speed and heading are vital to avoid collision, due to the pressure interaction areas between ships in close proximity underway.
- (b) **Handling of Explosives and Bulk Ammunition:** Replenishment of solids may include ammunition and explosives classified as UN hazard category 1. Particular note is to be taken of the enhanced factors of safety and equipment test periodicities that are required for mechanical handling equipment used for such purposes.
- (c) **Transfer of Personnel and Explosives:** Lifting appliance codes of practice stipulate enhanced factors of safety and more frequent testing for preventive maintenance of mechanical handling equipment used for transfer of personnel and explosives.
- (d) **Safety of Personnel:** Care is to be taken in the design and operation of RAS systems to minimise hazards to personnel who have to work in the vicinity of the RAS station. The likelihood of personnel being injured or knocked overboard by RAS equipment and operating gear is to be assessed and suitable guard rails are to be provided as necessary.

## Section 2 Principles

### 2.1 Design and operating principles

2.1.1 RAS systems are to be designed in accordance with user defined operating and performance criteria taking account of the ship type and service operating envelope.

2.1.2 RAS systems are to be capable of operation within specified operating conditions that include maximum sea states, wind conditions and those identified in Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,4.

2.1.3 RAS systems are to be designed and installed such that degradation or failure of any RAS system will not render another system inoperable.

2.1.4 RAS systems are to be capable of operating within the normal vibration modes and cyclic loads of the ship.

2.1.5 RAS systems are to be designed to minimise the risks to ship, personnel and the environment. The risks involved in carrying out identified hazardous activities are to be as low as reasonably practicable.

## 2.2 Lifecycle principles

2.2.1 RAS systems are to be operated and maintained such that the required performance, integrity and dependability can be achieved throughout the life of the ship.

2.2.2 To demonstrate continued compliance with the Provisions of Classification for engineering systems, see Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 1,2.1.1, surveys are to be carried out in accordance with the Regulations and as detailed in Section 14.

## 2.3 Class notations

2.3.1 Ships complying with the applicable requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for machinery class notations.

**RAS(ABV):** Ships having arrangements to enable RAS operations astern, abeam and VERTREP.

**RAS(AB):** Ships having arrangements to enable RAS operations abeam and astern only.

**RAS(AV):** Ships having arrangements to enable RAS operations astern and VERTREP.

**RAS(BV):** Ships having arrangements to enable RAS operations abeam and VERTREP.

**RAS(A):** Ships having arrangements to enable RAS operations astern only.

**RAS(B):** Ships having arrangements to enable RAS operations abeam only.

**RAS(V):** Ships having arrangements to enable RAS operations VERTREP only.

2.3.2 Where ships comply with NATO replenishment at sea requirements, the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for an additional character (**NT**) following any of the notations described in 2.3.1. The Naval Authority is to identify the relevant standard(s) (STANAG(s)) for assignment of the (**NT**) notation with reference to the arrangements being applied from 2.3.1. Assessment for compliance with the identified standard will address the safety and design/operating principles in these Rules.

## Section 3 Acceptance criteria

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 The acceptance process will validate conformity of RAS systems and equipment to the provisions of classification for systems within the Ship Type category by assessing such systems for compliance with Lloyd's Register's (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') Rules and Regulations or their equivalent, and specified standards and codes.

3.1.2 The assessment process of RAS systems will consider all aspects of the system including ship to ship dynamic interaction and environmental effects.

3.1.3 Conformance with the performance criteria, together with any specific requirements of the applicable Rules, standards and legislation is to be demonstrated by the designer/Builder and Owner/Operator to the satisfaction of LR.

3.1.4 For RAS operations, the applicable Rules, Standards for classification are:

- (a) LR *Rules for the Classification of Naval Ships*.
- (b) LR's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment*.
- (c) Requirements of the Naval Authority, see 3.1.5.
- (d) Owner/Operator specified requirements. These are to be identified before commencement of the design review or construction.
- (e) Standards for transfer hoses.
- (f) LR Type Approval System.
- (g) LR Quality Scheme for Machinery.

3.1.5 Where LR is acting on behalf of the Naval Authority, any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority are to be identified and advised to LR.

## Section 4 Design and construction

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 Documents relevant to the design, construction, installation, testing and operation of RAS systems are:

- (a) LR's Rules for RAS systems.
- (b) The equipment manufacturer's recommendations.
- (c) NATO Replenishment at Sea documents where specified by the Owner/Operator.

4.1.2 The overall performance of RAS systems is to be demonstrated to conform with the performance criteria specified in the design statement.

### 4.2 Functionality

4.2.1 In general, NS1 and NS2 type ships are to be configured such that replenishment of solids and liquids can be conducted concurrently. Ships are to be capable of supplying and receiving RAS equipment such that they can transfer personnel by abeam replenishment. For abeam RAS operations, a minimum of four RAS stations (two port and two starboard) should be provided (for larger ships six RAS stations may be incorporated). For astern RAS operations, at least one station should be provided on the fo'c'sle for reception and on the aft deck for supply.

## Section 5 Plans and particulars to be submitted

### 5.1 Plans and information

5.1.1 Three copies of the plans and information stated in 5.1.2 to 5.1.10 are to be submitted to LR as applicable.

5.1.2 **Design statement.** A design statement of the RAS systems that details the capability and functionality under defined operating and emergency conditions. The design statement is to be agreed between the designers and Owners/Operators and is to include as applicable:

- (a) Required class notations.
- (b) Details of intended supplying and receiving ships.
- (c) Description of each RAS operation and combination of equipment required.
- (d) Plans showing each proposed combination of equipment, fully rigged.
- (e) Details of solids that may be received or supplied (maximum size and weight together with UN hazard category if applicable) together with transfer rates.
- (f) Details of liquids that may be received or supplied, (including flash point of oils and transfer rates).
- (g) Details of the range of ship's speeds, sea and environmental conditions under which each RAS operation may be undertaken.
- (h) Interoperability capability.
- (i) Manning requirements.
- (k) Details of arrangements for RAS operations in darkness.
- (l) Details of hose clearing/drainage arrangements after RAS operations have been completed, see 9.1.4.

5.1.3 **Engineering and safety justification.** An engineering and safety justification for the RAS systems stating design standards used, assumptions made and any technical evidence. The justification is to:

- (a) State all design standards used for the design, manufacture, installation and testing of RAS systems and equipment.
- (b) Provide details of all RAS equipment and compatibility of different items of equipment.
- (c) Provide evidence that all RAS operations (equipment and combinations) at each RAS station as identified in the design statement, can be carried out safely and in accordance with classification and equipment manufacturer's requirements.
- (d) Identify safe equipment configurations.
- (e) Provide calculations that demonstrate that the structural loading is in accordance with Rule requirements.
- (f) Provide calculations that demonstrate that equipment loads are in accordance with manufacturer's specified limits.
- (g) Provide evidence that sufficient control, monitoring and communication facilities are provided to conduct RAS operations safely and efficiently.



- (h) Limits are to be defined in terms of lateral separation between vessels, ship's speeds, wind force, sea conditions (wave height, period and direction) and environmental conditions (visibility). The validation of potential operational scenarios may be by using a set of generic ship types agreed between the Owner/Operator and the designer.
- (j) Examine the effect of environmental conditions (e.g., sea state, water depth, visibility, wind strength, etc.) on the proposed RAS operations and define limiting conditions and define limiting environmental conditions for each RAS operation.
- (k) Address the specific needs of emergency breakaway and demonstrate that such a procedure can be undertaken with all RAS equipment configurations at each RAS station. The recovery of equipment after an emergency breakaway is also to be addressed.
- (l) Provide evidence that the ship internal, ship to ship and ship to helicopter communications systems will allow safe and efficient communications and RAS operations. The communications equipment and systems provided are to take into account the design of the ship and intended method of operation. Redundancy is also to be considered.
- (m) Provide evidence that each system is designed to minimise the risks associated with handling the particular cargo (e.g., static electricity with aviation fuel).
- (n) Address the disabling of automatic control, protection and safety functions for machinery and engineering systems where these are considered essential during replenishment at sea activities. The arrangements are to be consistent with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,4.8.4.

Where applied standards are not in the public domain, e.g., ATP 16 (latest version) covering NATO Replenishment at Sea, a copy is to be included with the engineering and safety justification.

**5.1.4 General arrangement plan.** A general arrangement plan of the ship showing the following information:

- (a) Position of each RAS station, with identifiable reference to the engineering and safety justification and design statement.
- (b) The tasks to be carried out at each RAS station.
- (c) Position of observation and control positions.
- (d) Arcs of fields of view and operation from each of the observation and control positions and RAS stations.

**5.1.5 Structural plans.** Plans required by Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 1,5 and Ch 2,9.

**5.1.6 Fluid transfer plans and particulars.** For the receiving ship, plans in diagrammatic form showing filling arrangements from the filling connection to filling trunks (where installed) and subsequently to each storage tank. The plans are to include a statement of the minimum flash point (closed-cup test) together with the required and the maximum transfer/filling rates. For the supplying ship, plans in diagrammatic form showing pumping and piping arrangements from storage tanks to the ship's discharge connection. *See also* 9.1.10.

**5.1.7 Lifting appliances.** Plans and details of all lifting appliances as required by LR's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment* or other specified design code.

**5.1.8 RAS equipment.** Details of equipment identified for RAS operations. Design and installation loads on the equipment together with details of securing and holding down arrangements. Details of the access required for maintenance and to operate the equipment.

**5.1.9 Operating manuals.** Operating manuals are to be provided on board and submitted for information where requested by LR. The manuals are to include the following information:

- (a) Particulars and a description of each RAS system.
- (b) Operating and maintenance instructions for all equipment.
- (c) Matrix of safe combinations of equipment and details of permitted load that may be carried by each combination.
- (d) Test procedures for each system.
- (e) Details of valve and pipe configurations when transferring fluids.
- (f) Details of arrangements for transfer of solids and personnel.
- (g) Details of night operations.

**5.1.10 Testing and trials procedures.** A schedule of testing and trials to demonstrate that systems are capable of operating as described in the design statement. The testing and trials procedures are to include details of through life load testing which includes the periodicity of load testing for different items of equipment.

**5.1.11** Where an evaluation of an engineering and safety justification is required for the propulsion and steering arrangements, *see* 7.2.2, the following information is to be submitted:

- (a) A Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA), *see* Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,17.
- (b) Design standards and any assumptions made.
- (c) Limiting operating parameters for ship and machinery installation.
- (d) A statement and evidence in respect of the reliability of any non-duplicated components.

## Section 6 Ship and arrangement requirements

### 6.1 Location of RAS stations and equipment

**6.1.1** Designated RAS stations are to be provided for RAS operations. RAS stations are to be positioned on the Supplying Ship to maximise compatibility with Receiving Ships and such that, as far as possible, the effects of hull interaction between the Supplying and Receiving Ships are minimised. For some types of naval ships, a reception point for the replenishment of ammunition may be required on the fo'c'sle. The number, type and location of the RAS stations are to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator but as a guide, for NS1 and NS2 type ships, it is usual



practice to have up to six abeam RAS stations (three on the port side and three on the starboard side) located symmetrically about the ship's centre line. See also 4.2.1.

6.1.2 Each RAS station and the particular RAS operation(s) that may be carried out at the station is to be identified on the general arrangement plan.

6.1.3 Where possible on receiving ships, an abeam RAS station is to be located amidships to maximise crew protection during RAS operations during heavy weather conditions.

6.1.4 RAS stations are to be located so as to permit the observation of each RAS station from two observation positions. In general, the positions selected for the abeam RAS stations are to be port and starboard in the middle portion of the ship between 20 m and 40 m apart symmetrically positioned from amidships and set in so as to provide protection for the RAS crews in heavy seas.

6.1.5 Clear areas are to be provided at each RAS station. Sufficient clear area to enable safe and efficient operation of equipment is to be provided. The area available is to recognise the equipment manufacturer's recommendations for operations and is to be contained within 30° fore and aft of the normal transverse at the RAS station.

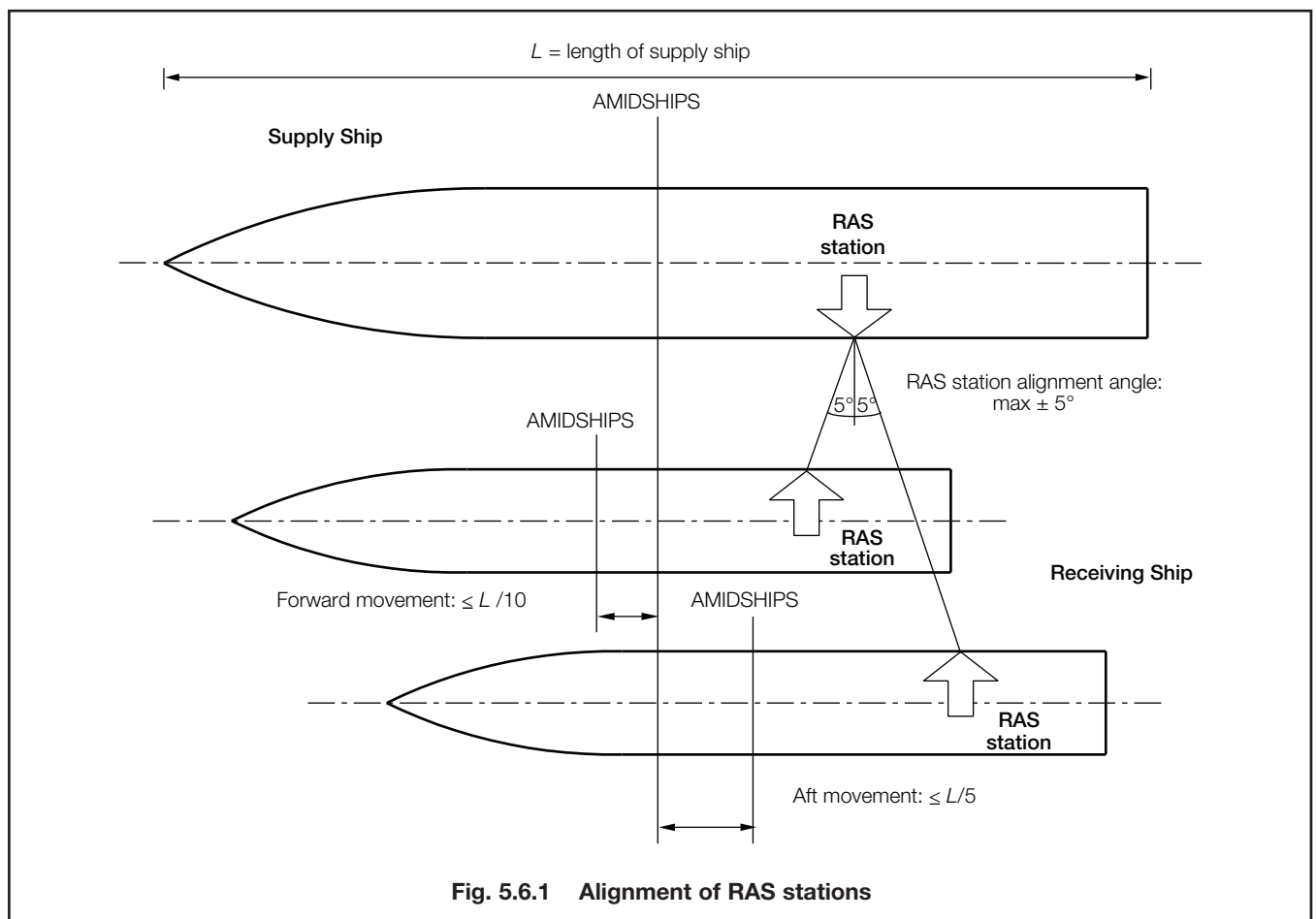
6.1.6 The location of all rigging securing points is to comply with the equipment manufacturer's requirements and agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator.

6.1.7 Clear and safe access to all rigging securing points is to be provided. Arrangements are to be provided to ensure that access to those securing points high on the superstructure can be reached safely and speedily. As far as practicable, the arrangements are to be such that there is no requirement for personnel to climb masts to gain access to RAS high points.

6.1.8 The access arrangements to all securing points are not to expose crew to dangerous electromagnetic hazards, see Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,4.18.

6.1.9 In the selection and design of an abeam RAS position for a particular ship, for either a supply or receiving rig, the range of ships with which the ship can operate is to be considered so that the respective stations can be aligned transversely within  $\pm 5^\circ$  of the normal, without the amidships points of the receiving ship moving further forward than  $L/10$  and  $L/5$  aft of amidships of the supply ship (where  $L$  is the length of the supply ship). See Fig. 5.6.1.

6.1.10 RAS stations are to be provided such that when two simultaneous RAS operations are being conducted, liquids can be transferred aft of solid cargo.



6.1.11 For requirements relating to electrical equipment for use in explosive gas atmospheres, see Vol 2, Pt 10, Ch 1, 14.

## 6.2 RAS observation positions

6.2.1 Designated RAS observation positions are to be provided. Each observation position is to be sited to provide a clear field of view of all RAS operations at a particular RAS station. Each RAS station is to be capable of being observed from at least two observation positions.

6.2.2 Each RAS observation position is to be identified on the general arrangement plan. Arcs showing the field of view from each observation position are also to be shown on the general arrangement plan.

6.2.3 Safe access arrangements to each observation position are to be provided.

6.2.4 Each observation position is to be provided with:

- (a) The necessary communication equipment to enable speedy and efficient communication to ensure safe RAS operations.
- (b) Equipment to prevent personnel falling or being knocked overboard and a strong point for attachment of a harness arrangement.

## 6.3 RAS equipment store arrangements

6.3.1 Dedicated store arrangements are to be provided for the storage of RAS equipment and fittings. Stores are to be readily accessible from the weather deck and their respective RAS stations.

6.3.2 RAS equipment and fittings associated with potable fresh water RAS operations are to be provided with separate, clean, hygienic and secure conditions.

## 6.4 Position of radar units and other sources of electromagnetic energy

6.4.1 RAS stations, observation positions and securing points are as far as practicable to be sited clear of sources of electromagnetic energy such as radars, communication transmitters, or lightning conductors. Where such equipment or the swept beam from radar aerials is in close proximity to any RAS facilities, a risk assessment is to be undertaken to ensure that the dangers of RADHAZ are minimised.

## 6.5 Location and layout of stores

6.5.1 The number, type and location of stores are to be consistent with the routes leading to/from RAS stations. The layout of each store is to recognise the need rapidly to strike down equipment and provisions and are to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator.

6.5.2 The routes from RAS stations to stores are to be designed to simplify loading and movement of stores, equipment and provisions during RAS operations. The arrangements are to recognise minimising tripping hazards and the need for two people to pass without restriction.

6.5.3 The entrances to the interior of the ship from each RAS station are to be designed to prevent the ingress of sea-water when undertaking RAS operations in heavy weather conditions.

## 6.6 Ship's structure

6.6.1 Depending on the intended functional requirements of the ship, each RAS station that is designed to receive and/or supply solids during RAS operations is to have a designated dump area in the case of receiving ships and/or a dispatch area for supplying ships. The dump area is to be suitably stiffened and designed to withstand the impact loads that may arise whilst landing stores and equipment on board during RAS operations.

6.6.2 The extent of each dump area is to exceed the foot print of the largest pallet by not less than 1 metre in each direction. A factor of safety of not less than four times the maximum load to be transferred is to be used in the design of the structure.

6.6.3 The location of the dump area and/or dispatch area within the RAS station is to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator and is to centre on the high point where applicable.

6.6.4 For other structural requirements, see Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 2.

## 6.7 Sources of high intensity noise

6.7.1 RAS stations, observation positions and securing points are to be sighted such that exposure to high intensity noise (above 85 db) for personnel involved in RAS operations is as low as reasonably practicable.

## ■ Section 7 Ship operating system requirements

### 7.1 Bridge conning position

7.1.1 A conning location for the officer in charge of RAS operations is to be provided on the navigating bridge with a duplicated position on both bridge wings. The location is to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator and be included in the design statement.

# Replenishment at Sea (RAS) Systems

# Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 5

## Section 7

7.1.2 From the conning position, the officer in charge is to be able to observe the ship's heading and the relative movement of the two ships conducting RAS operations. Also, a gyro compass readout and rudder angle indicator are to be readily visible from the conning position.

7.1.3 The Naval Authority may require an additional emergency conning position for use in the event of the bridge conning position being out of service. The location and arrangements are to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator and included in the design statement.

## 7.2 Machinery redundancy

7.2.1 The design of the propulsion and steering machinery is to provide arrangements that will permit RAS operations to be undertaken at minimum risk recognising a single failure in equipment associated with continuous propulsion and steering capability. The requirements of the machinery class notation **PSMR** in Chapter 3 are to be complied with as applicable. As a guide, ships are to be designed to be capable of maintaining continuous course and speed for at least one minute to facilitate safe emergency breakaway in the event of equipment failure in propulsion and steering systems.

7.2.2 Where ships are fitted with single screw propulsion and single rudder arrangements or having the additional **L** character assigned to a machinery redundancy notation, see Pt 5, Ch 3, an evaluation of a detailed engineering and safety justification will be required, see 5.1.11. The evaluation process is to include the appraisal of a Failure Modes and Effects Analysis (FMEA) to verify that sufficient levels of redundancy and monitoring are incorporated in the propulsion and steering systems to support effective manoeuvring control of the ship during RAS operations.

## 7.3 Sea-keeping and manoeuvrability

7.3.1 The sea-keeping and manoeuvrability characteristics of the ship are to be assessed and the requirements of the class notation **LMA** in Chapter 4 are to be complied with as applicable.

7.3.2 The controls for propulsion arrangements are to be designed to allow for small accurate changes in propulsion speed which may typically be 0,2 knot/propeller speed  $\pm 2$  rpm.

7.3.3 The steering gear arrangements that provide a speed of rudder movement required in Vol 2, Pt 6, Ch 1.4.1 are to be recognised in the assessment of the ship's manoeuvring capability. The speed of rudder movement may require to be increased for ships intended for RAS operations that may typically be 35° to 30° opposite helm in 14 seconds with all the steering gear power actuating systems operating.

## 7.4 Communications, signals and navigational aids

7.4.1 Arrangements for ship internal communications during RAS operations are to be provided. The communication equipment and systems are to be arranged to permit safe and effective communications throughout the RAS operations to all parties identified in the engineering and safety justification and the design statement.

7.4.2 As a minimum, means of effective ship internal communications are to be provided in accordance with Table 5.7.1. In addition, means of communications are to be provided for all those personnel involved with operation of equipment or movement of stores during RAS operations. For example, communications should be provided from the RAS station to:

- The operators of fuel system valves, who need to be advised promptly of the completion of RAS operations so that the fuel system may be reconfigured for normal running (unless valve operation is by remote control from the Master Filling Control Station).
- Those responsible for arranging for the supply and stowing the solid cargo who need to be appraised (quantity and type) of the stores en route and the completion of RAS operations.
- The replenishment control office where provided.

The communication equipment and systems provided are to take into account the design of the ship (e.g., the Master Filling Control Station may be located on the Bridge) and the intended method of operating the ship during RAS operations.

**Table 5.7.1 Internal communications**

| Position                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Conning position | RAS observation position | RAS equipment control | Master filling control station | Notes    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------|----------|
| Conning position                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                  | +                        |                       | +                              |          |
| RAS station/VOA                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | +                |                          | +                     | +                              | see Note |
| RAS equipment control                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                  | +                        |                       |                                |          |
| Master filling control station                                                                                                                                                                                                             | +                | +                        |                       |                                |          |
| <b>NOTE</b><br>Each RAS station on the ship is to be capable of communication with the conning/command position, RAS equipment control station and the master filling control station and the replenishment control office where provided. |                  |                          |                       |                                |          |

7.4.3 The design of internal communications equipment and systems is to provide sufficient redundancy such that in the event of a single equipment failure, RAS operations can proceed safely.

7.4.4 Ship to ship communication protocols and standards are to be specified and agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator.

7.4.5 Arrangements are to be provided to allow the crew accurately to determine the distance between the ships during RAS operations (e.g., use a distance line) on a continuous basis. Guard rails or suitable alternatives are to be provided for the safety of personnel in exposed upper deck positions. The arrangements and operational procedures are to be such that the crew of neighbouring ships will not be exposed to RADHAZ.

7.4.6 Means of visual and aural communication between the ship conducting RAS operations is to be provided.

7.4.7 If distance lines and sound-powered communication equipment, as specified by the Owner/Operator, are to be passed between the ships that are to undertake RAS operations, the following criteria are to be complied with:

- (a) The positions of the communications equipment tie down/securing points and connections are to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator and shown on the RAS general arrangement plan.
- (b) Distance line securing points are to be clear of all RAS stations and positioned so the distance line is readily visible from the RAS officer's conning position. The exact locations for securing the distance lines are to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator and shown on the RAS general arrangement plan.

7.4.8 The communication system requirements between receiving ship, delivery ship and helicopter during VERTREP operations are to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator and be in accordance with Naval Authority requirements.

## 7.5 RAS operations

7.5.1 The power supplies to weapons systems are to be arranged to permit partial isolation in accordance with ship operation procedures (including RADHAZ) and orders relating to RAS operations.

7.5.2 Facilities are to be provided at each RAS station to permit electrical grounding of RAS equipment and stores. VERTREP stations are to be provided with facilities and equipment to permit the discharge of static electricity from the helicopter and/or its underslung cargo whilst airborne.

7.5.3 RAS systems are to be designed and installed such that they do not degrade from defined criteria (for equipment and the ship) stemming from susceptibility to magnetic interference sources that may include military activities. Systems are to comply with the technical requirements of IEC 60533: *Electrical Installations in Ships, electromagnetic Compatibility*. Emission limits and immunity requirements are

to be agreed by the Naval Authority where those specified in IEC 60533 are not appropriate for the ship type.

7.5.4 Facilities and equipment to undertake RAS operations in darkness are to be provided where the Naval Authority has agreed to such operations. Typically this will require provision of low intensity red lighting at each RAS station and on the routes to/from the RAS station to the stores and within the stores to allow safe operations in darkness. The arrangements are to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator and included in the design statement. Provision is also to be made for suitable low intensity lighting at control panels for operating RAS equipment.

## ■ Section 8 RAS station requirements

### 8.1 General

8.1.1 Each RAS station is to incorporate the features described in 8.1.2 to 8.1.11. See 6.1 for RAS station location and equipment requirements.

8.1.2 The design of RAS stations is to recognise the need to minimise the risks to personnel during RAS operations. Wherever possible RAS stations are to be designed for RAS operations to be carried out with guard rails in position; where this is not practicable, alternative arrangements for the safety of personnel are to be provided. Use is to be made of non-slip paint and tripping hazards are to be eliminated wherever possible.

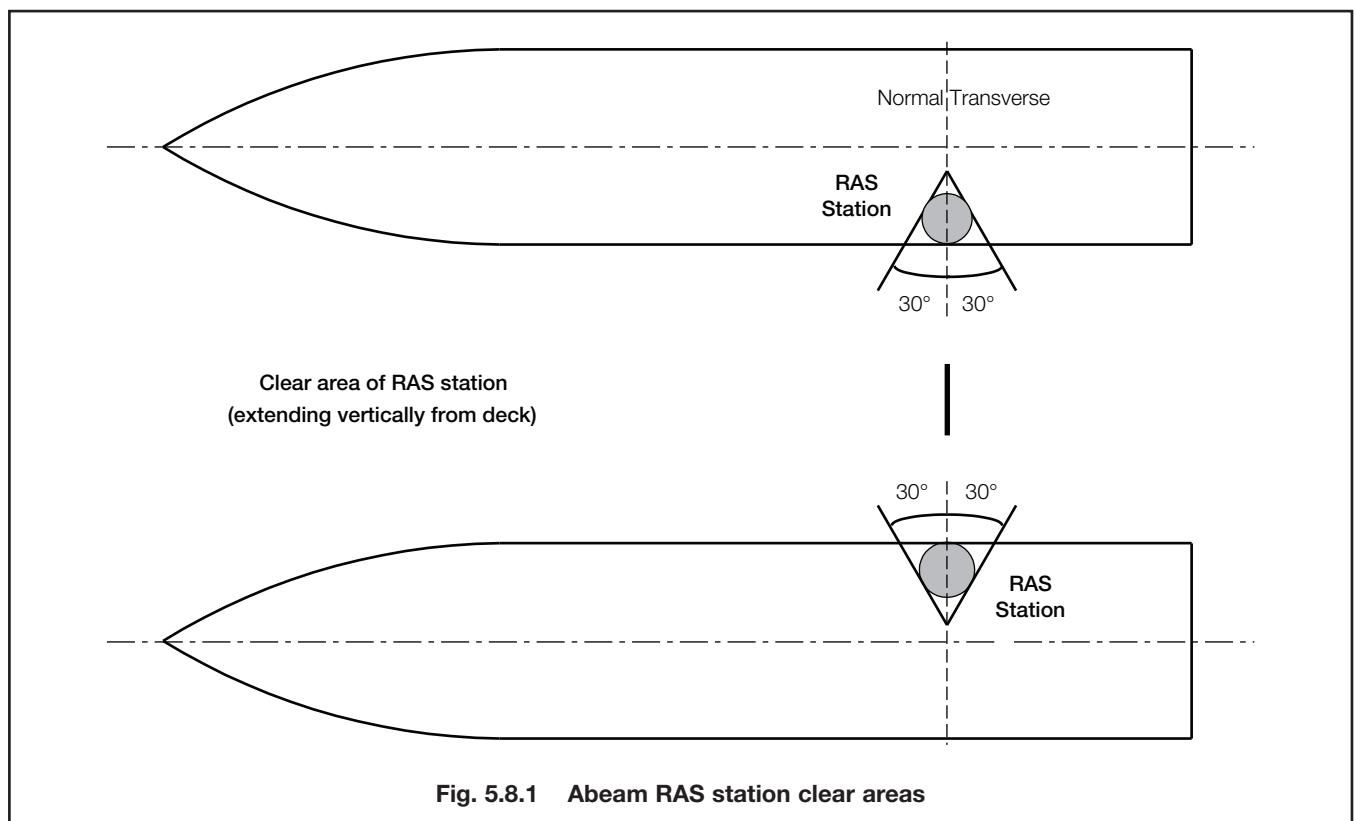
8.1.3 Clear areas are to be provided at each abeam RAS station. Clear areas in the vertical direction are to be contained within 30° forward and aft of the normal transverse from each RAS station, see Fig. 5.8.1.

8.1.4 The clear areas for VERTREP operations are to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator. Reference is to be made to international standards for helicopter operations and the helicopter's capability requirements. The following are to be specified:

- (a) Helicopter types.
- (b) Underslung load earthing equipment/facilities.
- (c) Range (size and weight) of cargo.
- (d) Minimum clearance criteria.
- (e) Lighting standards/requirements.
- (f) Painting standards/requirements.
- (g) Deck conductance for dissipation of static charge.

8.1.5 The layout of each RAS station is to provide sufficient accessibility for attendance, operation and maintenance of RAS equipment and systems in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

8.1.6 A minimum distance of 3 m between any RAS station superstructure and the edge of the weatherdeck is to be provided at each RAS station.



8.1.7 Where space allows, provision is to be made for the rigging of a safety wire to which life lines can be attached. Note, such lines are to be provided where the RAS station is designed for operations that require guard rails to be struck, see 8.1.2.

8.1.8 Communications equipment and facilities are to be provided at each RAS station, see 7.1.

8.1.9 Oil spill containment arrangements are to be provided at each RAS station at which fuel and/or oil is taken on board or supplied for both Supplying and Receiving Ships. These arrangements are to cater for small spills that may occur during hose handling and connection operations. Small quantities of fuel or oil that may be spilt are to be contained and be capable of being discharged to a safe location and not overboard. Attention is drawn to the requirements of the *International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution of the Sea by Oil, 1973/1978* and to any applicable Naval/National Regulations relating to the prevention of oil spills at sea and in harbour.

8.1.10 Where the Naval Authority has defined military requirements relating to radar cross-section, the increased cross-section from exposed deck machinery and fittings is to be assessed with such equipment being recessed wherever practicable.

8.1.11 RAS high points for securing jackstays are to be located at least 3 m inboard of the deck edge and at the following recommended heights above deck level to ensure correct catenary of RAS equipment:

- 2,5 m for liquid transfer;
- 4,3 m for solids transfer.

## 8.2 RAS equipment control station

8.2.1 A dedicated RAS equipment control station is to be provided for all equipment at an RAS station.

8.2.2 Controls for RAS equipment that is to be operated sequentially as part of a system are to be grouped for control by a single operator wherever possible.

8.2.3 The RAS equipment control station is to be located so that the operator(s) has/have a clear view of all RAS equipment under their control.

8.2.4 The position of each RAS equipment control station is to be indicated on the general arrangement plan.

## 8.3 Emergency equipment

8.3.1 An RAS emergency equipment locker is to be provided and located near each RAS station. The locker is to contain all the emergency equipment and tools required to conduct emergency breakaway procedures for each RAS operation and equipment configuration. Emergency tools are to be provided in a man-portable container that can be placed to be 'ready to hand' during RAS operations. There are to be sufficient emergency tools or containers for at least two simultaneous RAS operations.

8.3.2 The tools in the emergency equipment locker are to be in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's recommendations.



## ■ Section 9 Transfer of liquids

### 9.1 General

9.1.1 Systems for the transfer of liquids are to be designed to minimise to as low as reasonably practicable the risks inherent with the RAS operational requirements for dealing with large quantities of fluids at high transfer rates.

9.1.2 The design of liquid transfer systems is to be such that it minimises danger to the ship, personnel and the environment.

9.1.3 Liquid transfer systems are to be designed to prevent over-pressurisation of transfer and filling lines and all associated storage tanks, and any relief valve fitted for this purpose is to discharge to an overflow tank or other safe position. The design of filling systems is to consider maximum filling rates, dynamic pressure drops and maximum static pressures of the storage tanks.

9.1.4 The design and arrangements of liquid transfer systems is to permit clearing/drainage effective drainage of transfer hoses after RAS operations have been completed.

9.1.5 The arrangements for abeam transfer of oil fuel, lubricating oils, aviation fuel and fresh water are to be such that in the event of a single failure in a transfer system, this does not prevent transfer of these liquids, e.g., more than one RAS connection on each side of the ship and the ability to fill any tank from each RAS station from designated connections is to be provided.

9.1.6 Any storage tank overflow arrangements are to discharge to a safe position.

9.1.7 For requirements relating to water storage systems, see Vol 2, Pt 11, Ch 1.

9.1.8 For requirements relating to aviation fuel storage systems, see Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 4.

9.1.9 For requirements relating to oil fuel storage systems, see Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 3.

9.1.10 For requirements relating to air, overflow and sounding systems, see Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 2,10.

9.1.11 For requirements relating to piping system design, see Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 1.

9.1.12 For requirements relating to electromagnetic hazards, see Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,4.18.

9.1.13 For requirements relating to control of static electricity, see Vol 2, Pt 10, Ch 1,1.12.

### 9.2 Filling and supply connections and arrangements

9.2.1 Filling and supply connections for liquid RAS operations are to be sited within the boundary of the RAS station. Oil fuel system risers are to terminate in the vicinity of the RAS dump area and are not to present a tripping hazard or impede the use of stores handling machinery. Each filling and supply connection is to be provided with an accessible isolating valve located in close proximity to its associated connection. See also 9.2.14.

9.2.2 As far as practicable, separate filling and supply connections are to be provided for each type of fluid that may be transferred. To reduce the risk of inadvertent incorrect hose connection, the filling and supply connections are to be of different types and separated as far as possible from each other and distinct for each type of liquid to be transferred.

9.2.3 A strainer unit, capable of being cleaned and a means of sampling incoming liquids, is to be provided at each filling connection.

9.2.4 Each filling and supply connection is to be provided with a permanently attached notice identifying the fluid storage system(s) connected to the filling and supply connection(s).

9.2.5 Filling and supply connections and associated isolating valves are to be made from ductile materials. Where ships are required to operate in cold weather environments, materials of toughness greater than grade E are to be used.

9.2.6 Filling and supply connections are to be designed to allow an emergency breakaway to take place safely, speedily and with a minimum effort from the crew.

9.2.7 Filling and supply arrangements for flammable/hazardous liquids are to be designed to minimise the risk of static electricity build-up. The piping arrangements within storage tanks are to have outlet ends configured to reduce turbulence and foaming of the fuel. See Vol 2, Pt 10, Ch 1,1.12 for requirements for control of static electricity.

9.2.8 The control of filling and supply operations for each system that can be used during RAS operations is to be capable of being carried out from a designated Master Filling/Supply Control Station. Designated Master Filling/Supply Control Stations are to be provided with:

- (a) Effective communication equipment that permits communication with locations identified in the engineering and safety justification.
- (b) Indication of tank high level and overflow alarms.
- (c) Tank level/content indication.
- (d) A clear visual means of ascertaining the valve configuration of each filling/supply system.

9.2.9 The arrangements for replenishment of oil fuel and aviation fuel are to cater for water-compensated tanks where these tanks are installed. See Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 3,4.18.

9.2.10 The pipes for lubricating oil and fresh water transfer systems are to be permanent to minimise the risk of contamination.

9.2.11 Lubricating oil and fresh water transfer/filling arrangements are to be provided with a bulkhead filling connection positioned not less than 300 mm above the weatherdeck to minimise the risk of sea-water ingress into the system.

9.2.12 The arrangements for transferring lubricating oils are to be such that they permit the use of oil renovation systems whilst RAS operations are being carried out.

9.2.13 Filling and supply connection arrangements are to be designed as far as possible to reduce the incidence of, or opportunity for dissimilar metal corrosion.

9.1.14 Where ship design and arrangements permit, a dedicated compartment may be provided in close proximity to the RAS station which can be accessed from both port and starboard sides in which the commodity connection points, isolation valves and hoses are housed. This reduces the likelihood of dissimilar metal corrosion, negates the requirement for below deck isolating valves, flush deck fittings and reduces the upper deck clutter (radar cross-section) associated with stowing the hoses on the weather deck.

## Section 10 Transfer of solids

### 10.1 General

10.1.1 Solid cargo may be transferred during RAS operations using abeam and/or VERTREP procedures.

10.1.2 For ships intended for receiving solid supplies, the design of arrangements is to provide for rapid removal of cargo from the RAS station once received on board. The arrangements and equipment are to recognise the reception of large and/or heavy items of cargo and the number of crew required. A typical maximum transfer rate is 25 pallets (each pallet up to 2 tonnes) every hour in fair weather conditions. The design transfer rate is to be agreed between the Owner/Operator, designer and LR.

10.1.3 The removal routes for cargo and stores are to be clearly marked and shown on handling plans.

10.1.4 Equipment intended for transfer of solids is to be capable of handling the maximum size and weight of solids identified in the design statement.

10.1.5 For ships intended for supplying solid supplies, the design and arrangements are to provide for the safe and orderly transfer of solids to the RAS station consistent with safe working practices.

## Section 11 Transfer of personnel

### 11.1 General

11.1.1 Arrangements for the transfer of personnel are to be in accordance with Naval Authority requirements.

11.1.2 Unless specifically approved by the Navy, only manually powered equipment is to be installed for the transfer of personnel.

11.1.3 The design of arrangements for personnel is to provide sufficient space for the large numbers of crew normally required to operate the transfer equipment, typically 25 personnel to tension the rig on a receiving ship.

11.1.4 The mechanical devices used in the tensioning of any rigging and the transfer chair together with all transfer gear are to be of a proven safe design suitable for the purpose. The arrangements are to be such that when conducting a light jackstay transfer from a sliding pad-eye, the height of the pad-eye can be raised/lowered to facilitate the connecting/disconnecting process, but is to remain at a suitable fixed height during the actual transfer.

## Section 12 RAS equipment

### 12.1 General

12.1.1 The types of transfer that the ship is required to undertake are to be specified by the Owner/Operator and the selection of equipment is to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator.

12.1.2 It is the responsibility of the Client to demonstrate the equipment is designed, manufactured, installed and tested in accordance with the applicable Rule requirements.

12.1.3 The selection of equipment is to address compatibility to provide for the correct rigging of equipment (blocks, shackle, etc.) for the loads imposed, e.g., it should not be possible to use a light jackstay shackle with a heavy jackstay rig.

### 12.2 Emergency breakaway

12.2.1 All RAS equipment and facilities are to be designed to permit the application of emergency breakaway procedures that should normally be complete within one minute of the commencement of initiation. Use may be made of quick release couplings and/or breakable couplings. Attention is to be given to the attachment of wires and ropes to winch drums and the selection of emergency breakaway equipment (wire cutters, axes, etc.).

## 12.3 Lifting devices

12.3.1 Winches are to incorporate safety features that permit safe RAS operations and cater for the unique loading conditions that may arise during RAS operations. The following features are to be considered:

- (a) Service brake that permits quick and efficient engagement and disengagement by both automatic and manual means.
- (b) Long-term brake that permits long-term locking of the winch drum having manual engagement and disengagement only.
- (c) An overload facility that prevents the wire/rope being overstressed during RAS operations (e.g., when ships move or roll apart).
- (d) Spooling system that ensures proper spooling of the wire onto the drum.
- (e) Anti-slack device that maintains tension in the wire when the winch is operating under no load.

12.3.2 Cranes, derricks and booms for RAS operations are to comply with LR's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment*.

## 12.4 Hoses and fittings

12.4.1 Hoses for transferring liquids are to be in accordance with standards applicable to the intended application.

12.4.2 Where probe fuelling systems are part of the design, the following features are to be incorporated:

- (a) Automatic latching mechanism with sleeve valve that opens on proper engagement and automatically closes on disengagement.
- (b) Disengagement on application of a specified load.
- (c) Swivel arm that keeps probe receiver aligned with the spanwire.
- (d) Manual release lever.
- (e) Quick release hook.
- (f) Indication of incorrect probe engagement.

## Section 14 Survey through life

### 14.1 General

14.1.1 RAS systems are subject to survey through life to a schedule that has been agreed to by LR. All systems and equipment forming part of the RAS installation are to be identified and included in a list of surveyable items.

14.1.2 Survey and testing of systems and equipment are to be in accordance with Chapter 9 of LR's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment* as applicable. Note that enhanced design factors of safety may be required with reference to handling and transfer of explosives and personnel, see 1.3.1(b) and (c), and load testing will be required, consistent with the system design requirements.

14.1.3 The periodicity of load testing is to be in accordance with the testing and trials procedures required by 5.1.10. Load testing is to be carried out under the supervision of a competent person.

## Section 13 Testing and trials

### 13.1 General

13.1.1 Testing and trials are to be carried out to LR's satisfaction to demonstrate that systems and equipment operate and function as stated in the design statement.

13.1.2 Testing and marking of equipment is to be in accordance with Chapter 9 of LR's *Code for Lifting Appliances in a Marine Environment* as applicable. Note that enhanced design factors of safety may be required with reference to handling and transfer of explosives and personnel, see 1.3.1(b) and (c), and load testing will be required consistent with the system design requirements.



# Buoyancy, Stability and Controllability Assessment

## Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 6

Sections 1 &amp; 2

### Section

- 1 **General**
- 2 **Requirements**

### ■ Section 1 General

#### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The application of the additional requirements of this Chapter offers solutions for compliance with the buoyancy, stability and controllability performance requirements of Chapter III of ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code (NSC) which have not already been addressed by application of the standard naval classification requirements. Where the optional requirements of this Chapter are applied, and it can be demonstrated that the vessel meets all of the performance requirements of the latest edition of the NSC Chapter III, a ship will be eligible to be assigned the **STAB** notation.

1.1.2 For compliance with the requirements of this Chapter the **RSA2** and **LMA** notations must also be assigned.

1.1.3 Where a loading instrument is provided on board the **LI** notation must be assigned.

1.1.4 Where a stability calculation program is provided, it is to be approved in accordance with Lloyd's Register's (hereinafter referred to as LR) *Approval of Longitudinal Strength and Stability Calculation Programs*.

1.1.5 A suitable subdivision and damaged stability standard, which complies with the performance requirements of Chapter III of the NSC, is to be specified by the Naval Authority and agreed with LR, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,1.1.9.

1.1.6 A suitable intact stability standard which complies with the performance requirements of Chapter III of the NSC is to be specified by the Naval Authority and agreed with LR, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,1.1.9.

1.1.7 Where the Naval Authority requires specific extreme damage or extreme flooding events to be assessed, over and above the events inherent in the standards above, those extreme events are to be defined in the CONOPS.

1.1.8 A seakeeping analysis or model tests are to be undertaken, see 2.4.1. The range of environmental conditions used in the analysis or tests are to be consistent with the CONOPS (e.g., specific headings for aircraft operations).

#### 1.2 Information and plans

1.2.1 Information required to be submitted:

- (a) Information regarding operation of the vessel:
- CONOPS.
  - Seakeeping analysis report or model test results.

- (b) Information required to be submitted for approval:
- C11(N).
  - Stability Information Book, see 2.5.1.
- (c) Information regarding the ship's equipment:
- A register of essential life saving equipment.

1.2.2 Information required to be provided on board:

- (a) Plans:
- Watertight and weathertight integrity plan.
- (b) Instructions:
- Instructions covering the operation of watertight doors whilst at sea.
- (c) Information:
- Register of safety points, see 2.4.3.
  - Procedure for visual inspection of safety points by Responsible Persons.
  - Record of Approved Safety Equipment.
  - Approved Stability Information Book.
  - Information covering ship operations in heavy weather and during manoeuvring, see 2.5.2.
  - Dry-docking information, see 2.5.3.

### ■ Section 2 Requirements

#### 2.1 Watertight integrity

2.1.1 Watertight doors below the level of watertight integrity which are intended to be used whilst at sea are to comply with the requirements of Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 2.4.7 and Vol 2, Pt 10, Ch 1,19.1. The door is to be clearly marked in accordance with the procedure specified in 1.2.2(b), stating that the appropriate authority is to be sought prior to operation of the door.

2.1.2 All main watertight subdivision compartments are to be fitted with means of water ingress detection. Water ingress is to be indicated at all main control stations and a suitable audible alarm is to be provided. The number and location of flooding detection sensors is to be sufficient to ensure that any substantial water ingress into a main subdivision compartment is detected under reasonable angles of trim and heel.

#### 2.2 Reserve of buoyancy

2.2.1 LR will verify compliance with the agreed subdivision and damaged stability standard. Where the Naval Authority specifies an exception to the standard or non-compliances occur, they are to be recorded in the tailoring document, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.11.

2.2.2 The definitions of damage for the assessment of the **RSA2** notation are to include damages which are consistent with the compartment damage criteria specified by the subdivision and damaged stability standard, see Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 2.

# Buoyancy, Stability and Controllability Assessment

## Volume 3, Part 1, Chapter 6

Section 2

### 2.3 Reserve of stability

2.3.1 LR will verify compliance with the agreed intact stability standard. Where the Naval Authority specifies an exception to the standard or non-compliances occur they are to be recorded in the tailoring document, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.11.

### 2.4 Safety of embarked persons

2.4.1 The results of the seakeeping analysis or model test are to demonstrate that the predicted RMS motions, deck wetness, Motion Induced Interruptions (MII) and Motion Sickness Incidences (MSI) for the design are within the limits specified in STANAG 4154 or another appropriate standard specified by the Naval Authority. Values are to be predicted or recorded at the following locations as a minimum, where applicable:

- Navigation bridge.
- Machinery control room.
- Flight deck.
- RAS operating positions.
- Well-deck.

2.4.2 Work stations are to be fitted with suitable arrangements, e.g., handholds/seatbelts/harnesses to enable the crew to perform their duties when adverse ship motions occur. The fittings and their supporting arrangements are to be to the Surveyor's satisfaction.

2.4.3 Where safety points for attaching harnesses are provided on board they are to be selected from, and installed in accordance with, an appropriate standard (e.g., BS EN 795). A Register of safety points is to be produced at build and maintained in service. A procedure for the visual inspection of safety points by a Responsible Person is to be developed and confirmed as being implemented. As a minimum the procedure is to:

- Define the standard or applicable legalisation which is used to define a Responsible Person;
- Nominate an appropriate Responsible Person or persons;
- Detail any training which the Responsible Person is to receive;
- Detail any qualifications which the Responsible Person is to hold;
- State that safety points are to be inspected by a Responsible Person at least every 12 months;
- Mandate that a record is kept of when each safety point was last inspected and by whom;
- Authorise the Responsible Person to request that the safety point be load tested in accordance with the applicable standard;
- Authorise the Responsible Person to remove the item from service should they consider it appropriate to do so.

### 2.5 Provision of operational information

2.5.1 A Stability Information Book is to be provided on board containing the following information:

- (a) The stability standard or requirements;
- (b) General precautions against capsizing;
- (c) Loading and operating restrictions;
- (d) Cross-flooding arrangements [if fitted];
- (e) Verification of compliance with the stability standard;
- (f) Trim and draught limitations;
- (g) Free surface effects;
- (h) Payload heeling effects;
- (j) Loading and unloading precautions;
- (k) Securing arrangements;
- (l) Control of openings;
- (m) Loll;
- (n) Hull strength;
- (o) Stability or loading computer [if fitted];
- (p) Non sailing conditions [if applicable];
- (q) Particulars of the ship;
- (r) Details of the lightship and its derivation;
- (s) Details of hydrostatics and cross curves of stability;
- (t) Capacity and centroid of tanks, stores and cargo spaces plus other payload data;
- (u) Example calculations of stability;
- (v) Example ship conditions compliant with stability requirements;
- (w) Damage stability information demonstrating ship survivability following foreseeable, extreme and catastrophic damage; and
- (x) Methods to recover margins of buoyancy and stability.

2.5.2 Information regarding ship operations in heavy weather or during manoeuvres shall be provided on board. The information shall contain as a minimum:

- (a) The risk of broaching;
- (b) The shipping of green seas;
- (c) Slamming;
- (d) Heel in turn characteristics;
- (e) The impact of motions on the safety of the crew and essential safety functions;
- (f) Practices or methods specific to the vessel to reduce the impact of motions on the safety of the crew and equipment;
- (g) The effects of squat and manoeuvring in shallow water;
- (h) The effects of wind on manoeuvring; and
- (j) The minimum manoeuvring speed.

2.5.3 Information on dry-docking the ship shall be provided on board. The information provided shall be consistent with Vol 1, Pt 3, Ch 5,10.2 and contain as a minimum:

- (a) The location of dock blocks and lightship weight distribution;
- (b) The location of discharges, shore connections and appendages; and
- (c) Information for maintaining stability throughout the dry-docking process.

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 3

Part 2 Additional Environment and  
Safety Features

January 2013

---

|             |                  |                                                       |
|-------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| PART        | 1                | ADDITIONAL SEA-GOING FEATURES                         |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>2</b>         | <b>ADDITIONAL ENVIRONMENT AND SAFETY FEATURES</b>     |
|             | <b>Chapter 1</b> | <b>Noise and Vibration Levels in Personnel Spaces</b> |
|             | <b>2</b>         | <b>Environmental Protection</b>                       |
|             | <b>3</b>         | <b>Provision Refrigeration</b>                        |
| PART        | 3                | SAFETY EQUIPMENT AND ARRANGEMENTS                     |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

|                |          |                                                               |
|----------------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>NOISE AND VIBRATION LEVELS IN PERSONNEL SPACES</b>         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                   |
|                | 1.1      | Scope                                                         |
|                | 1.2      | Definitions                                                   |
|                | 1.3      | Certificate of Compliance                                     |
|                | 1.4      | Class notations                                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Noise</b>                                                  |
|                | 2.1      | Maximum noise levels                                          |
|                | 2.2      | Crew and embarked personnel accommodation and work areas      |
|                | 2.3      | Acoustic insulation                                           |
|                | 2.4      | General alarm and crew and embarked personnel address systems |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Vibration</b>                                              |
|                | 3.1      | Maximum vibration levels                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Testing</b>                                                |
|                | 4.1      | Measurement procedures                                        |
|                | 4.2      | Test conditions                                               |
|                | 4.3      | Noise measurements                                            |
|                | 4.4      | Noise measurement locations                                   |
|                | 4.5      | Vibration measurements                                        |
|                | 4.6      | Vibration measurement locations                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Survey reporting</b>                                       |
|                | 5.1      | General                                                       |
|                | 5.2      | Noise                                                         |
|                | 5.3      | Vibration                                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Excessive noise and vibration</b>                          |
|                | 6.1      | Noise excesses                                                |
|                | 6.2      | Vibration excesses                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Survey requirements</b>                                    |
|                | 7.1      | Initial Survey                                                |
|                | 7.2      | Periodical Survey (first 6 years)                             |
|                | 7.3      | Periodical Surveys (subsequent years)                         |
|                | 7.4      | Surveys following modifications                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b> | <b>Referenced standards</b>                                   |
|                | 8.1      | Noise                                                         |
|                | 8.2      | Vibration                                                     |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION</b>                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                   |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                                   |
|                | 1.2      | EP class notation                                             |
|                | 1.3      | Information to be submitted                                   |
|                | 1.4      | Alterations and additions                                     |
|                | 1.5      | In-service records                                            |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Environmental Protection (EP) class notation</b>           |
|                | 2.1      | General                                                       |
|                | 2.2      | Oxides of nitrogen (NO <sub>x</sub> )                         |
|                | 2.3      | Oxides of sulphur (SO <sub>x</sub> )                          |
|                | 2.4      | Refrigeration systems                                         |
|                | 2.5      | Fire-fighting systems                                         |
|                | 2.6      | Oil pollution prevention                                      |
|                | 2.7      | Garbage handling and disposal                                 |
|                | 2.8      | Sewage treatment                                              |
|                | 2.9      | Hull anti-fouling systems                                     |
|                | 2.10     | Ballast water                                                 |

---

|                |          |                                                                                 |
|----------------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Supplementary characters</b>                                                 |
|                | 3.1      | Hull anti-fouling systems – A character                                         |
|                | 3.2      | Ballast water management – B character                                          |
|                | 3.3      | Protected fuel tanks – F character                                              |
|                | 3.4      | Grey water – G character                                                        |
|                | 3.5      | Oily bilge water – O character                                                  |
|                | 3.6      | Oxides of nitrogen (NO <sub>x</sub> ) – N character                             |
|                | 3.7      | Refrigeration systems – R character                                             |
|                | 3.8      | Oxides of sulphur (SO <sub>x</sub> ) – S character                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Survey requirements</b>                                                      |
|                | 4.1      | Initial Survey and Audit                                                        |
|                | 4.2      | Periodical Surveys and Audits                                                   |
|                | 4.3      | Change of Naval Authority                                                       |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>PROVISION REFRIGERATION</b>                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                                     |
|                | 1.1      | General                                                                         |
|                | 1.2      | Plans and information                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Construction and installation</b>                                            |
|                | 2.1      | Materials                                                                       |
|                | 2.2      | Equipment – Selection and installation                                          |
|                | 2.3      | Valves and relief devices                                                       |
|                | 2.4      | Refrigerant systems                                                             |
|                | 2.5      | Air coolers and cooling grids                                                   |
|                | 2.6      | Refrigeration units                                                             |
|                | 2.7      | Design pressures                                                                |
|                | 2.8      | Room insulation                                                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Refrigerating machinery and refrigerant storage compartment arrangements</b> |
|                | 3.1      | General                                                                         |
|                | 3.2      | Gas storage compartments                                                        |
|                | 3.3      | Pressure testing at manufacturers' works                                        |
|                | 3.4      | Pressure test after installation on board ship                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Refrigerant detection systems</b>                                            |
|                | 4.1      | General                                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements</b>                 |
|                | 5.1      | General                                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Personnel safety equipment and systems</b>                                   |
|                | 6.1      | Personnel safety equipment                                                      |
|                | 6.2      | Personnel warning systems                                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Testing and trials</b>                                                       |
|                | 7.1      | Testing                                                                         |
|                | 7.2      | Type testing                                                                    |
|                | 7.3      | Trials                                                                          |

# Noise and Vibration Levels in Personnel Spaces

## Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 1

Section 1

### Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Noise**
- 3 **Vibration**
- 4 **Testing**
- 5 **Survey reporting**
- 6 **Excessive noise and vibration**
- 7 **Survey requirements**
- 8 **Referenced standards**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Scope

1.1.1 These Rules set down the criteria for the assessment of noise and vibration levels on naval ships and are applied in addition to the other relevant requirements of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships* (hereinafter referred to as the Rules for Naval Ships).

1.1.2 These Rules apply to surface ships when engaged in peace-time mission profiles.

1.1.3 These Rules provide for two alternatives:

- (a) A **Certificate of Compliance**, which records that the ship has been designed and built to meet the noise and vibration criteria contained in these Rules. This is to be confirmed by measurements during an Initial Survey, or
- (b) A **Class Notation**, which in addition to the provisions of 1.1.3(a), requires periodic survey of the noise and vibration characteristics throughout the life of the ship.

1.1.4 For self-propelled ships below 200 tonnes static lightship displacement, higher noise and vibration levels will be permitted. Limits for these ships are identified within the text of these Rules.

1.1.5 These Rules recognise existing national and international Standards and specify levels of noise and vibration currently achievable using good engineering practice. Compliance with these requirements will be assessed by review of procedures, inspection and measurement of the relevant parameters. Pre-survey reviews, inspections and measurements will be conducted, witnessed or assessed by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') Surveyors.

1.1.6 These Rules present values of noise and vibration which should be verified by measurements following completion of the ship. It is recommended that the builders undertake calculations of noise and vibration so that any potential problem areas can be identified and control measures implemented.

1.1.7 The sound pressure levels for audible alarms and public address systems fitted in accordance with other sections of the Rules are to satisfy IMO Resolution A.1021(26)(19) *Code on Alerts and Indicators, 2009*. Alternative arrangements may be acceptable provided they are acceptable to the Naval Authority.

1.1.8 Requirements additional to these in this Chapter may be imposed by the Naval Authority.

### 1.2 Definitions

1.2.1 **Crew and embarked personnel spaces** are defined as all areas intended for crew and embarked personnel use, and include the following:

- (a) Accommodation spaces (e.g., cabins, corridors, offices, mess rooms, recreation rooms).
- (b) Work spaces.
- (c) Navigation spaces.

1.2.2 **Noise level** is defined as the A-weighted sound pressure level measured in accordance with ISO 2923.

1.2.3 **Vibration level** is defined as the single amplitude peak value of deck structure vibration during a period of steady-state vibration, representative of maximum repetitive behaviour, in mm/s peak, over the frequency range 1 to 100 Hz.

### 1.3 Certificate of Compliance

1.3.1 The Certificate of Compliance provides ship operators with an objective assessment of a ship's noise and vibration levels in accommodation spaces at the time of the assessment.

1.3.2 The Certificate of Compliance is optional and if requested, however, any ship can be assessed for compliance, using these requirements as a basis for the assessment.

1.3.3 To achieve the Certificate of Compliance, Sections 2 to 6 and 7.1 must be complied with.

1.3.4 The Certificate of Compliance will be issued after the Initial Survey, following satisfactory assessment of the measured data.

### 1.4 Class notations

1.4.1 The notations provide ship operators with an objective assessment of a ship's noise and vibration levels in accommodation spaces throughout its life.

1.4.2 The **CEPAC** (Crew and Embarked Personnel Accommodation Comfort) notation is optional.

# Noise and Vibration Levels in Personnel Spaces

## Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 1

Sections 1 &amp; 2

1.4.3 For ships classed with LR which achieve the comfort standards specified in these Rules, the class notation **CEPAC** will be assigned. Following the **CEPAC** notation, numerals **1** or **2** will indicate the acceptance criteria to which the noise and vibration levels have been assessed.

1.4.4 The **CEPAC** notation indicates that the crew and embarked personnel accommodation and work areas meet the acceptance criteria.

1.4.5 To achieve and maintain any of the foregoing notations, Sections 2 to 7 must be complied with.

### Section 2 Noise

#### 2.1 Maximum noise levels

2.1.1 Where the measured noise level exceeds the applied noise limit, the noise rating (NR) number is to be established in accordance with ISO 1999. If the NR number minus 5 dB(A) does not exceed the noise limit the requirement is fulfilled.

2.1.2 Guidance on maximum acceptable sound pressure levels and noise exposure limits is given in IMO Resolution A.468(XII).

#### 2.2 Crew and embarked personnel accommodation and work areas

2.2.1 When the ship is proceeding in its normal operating condition and in accordance with the provisions specified in 4.2, the noise levels specified in Table 1.2.1 and Table 1.2.2 are not to be exceeded.

**Table 1.2.1 Accommodation – Maximum noise levels, in dB(A)**

| Location                                                                                                                         | Ships greater than<br>200 tonnes<br>lightship |    | Ships less than<br>200 tonnes<br>lightship |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|----|--------------------------------------------|----|
|                                                                                                                                  | Acceptance numeral                            |    |                                            |    |
|                                                                                                                                  | 1                                             | 2  | 1                                          | 2  |
| Sleeping cabins, hospitals                                                                                                       | 52                                            | 60 | 55                                         | 60 |
| Day cabins, offices,<br>conference rooms                                                                                         | 55                                            | 65 | 60                                         | 65 |
| Mess rooms                                                                                                                       | 57                                            | 65 | 60                                         | 65 |
| Open deck work areas                                                                                                             | 67                                            | 75 | 72                                         | 75 |
| Alleyways, changing rooms,<br>bathrooms, lockers                                                                                 | 70                                            | 75 | 75                                         | 75 |
| NOTE<br>The levels may be exceeded by 5 dB(A) within 3 m of a ventilation inlet/outlet or machinery intake/uptake on open decks. |                                               |    |                                            |    |

**Table 1.2.2 Work areas – Maximum noise levels**

| Location                                                                                      | dB(A) level |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| Machinery space (continuously manned)<br>e.g., stores                                         | 90          |
| Machinery space (not continuously manned)<br>e.g., pump, refrigeration, thruster or fan rooms | 110         |
| Workshops                                                                                     | 85          |
| Machinery control rooms                                                                       | 75          |
| Wheelhouse, conning positions and operational control rooms                                   | 65          |
| Bridge wings, additional limits:<br>250 Hz octave band                                        | 68 (linear) |
| 500 Hz octave band                                                                            | 63 (linear) |
| Listening posts, including navigating bridge wings and windows                                | 70          |
| Radio rooms                                                                                   | 60          |
| Galleys and pantries:<br>Equipment not working                                                | 75          |
| Individual items at 1 m                                                                       | 85          |
| Normally unoccupied spaces (e.g., holds, decks)                                               | 90          |
| Ship's whistle, on bridge wings or forecastle                                                 | 110         |

#### 2.3 Acoustic insulation

2.3.1 Acoustic insulation of bulkheads and decks between crew spaces is to be in accordance with the requirements of IMO Resolution A.468(XII).

#### 2.4 General alarm and crew and embarked personnel address systems

2.4.1 The general alarm and crew and embarked personnel address systems are to comply with 2.4.2 and 2.4.3 together with Vol 2, Pt 10, Ch 1 and 18.3.

2.4.2 During the noise measurement programme the general alarm and crew address systems are to be demonstrated by tests. These tests are to be undertaken under the sea trial conditions as described in 4.2.

2.4.3 When the ship is underway in normal conditions, the minimum sound pressure levels of the public address system for broadcasting emergency announcements are to comply with the following:

- In interior spaces:
  - 75 dB(A), and
  - at least 20 dB(A) above the speech interference level.
- In exterior spaces:
  - 80 dB(A), and
  - at least 15 dB(A) above the speech interference level.

**NOTE**

The **speech interference level** is defined as the arithmetic average of the sound pressure level of the ambient noise in the four octave bands: 500 Hz, 1000 Hz, 2000 Hz and 4000 Hz.



# Noise and Vibration Levels in Personnel Spaces

## Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 1

Section 3

### Section 3 Vibration

#### 3.1 Maximum vibration levels

3.1.1 Vibration limits are given in units of:

- (a) peak acceleration (mm/s<sup>2</sup>), single amplitude, in the range 1 to 5 Hz; and
- (b) peak velocities (mm/s), single amplitude, in the range 5 to 100 Hz.

3.1.2 Measured vibration levels are to be assessed over the frequency range 1 to 100 Hz. The limits apply to each single frequency component of vertical, fore and aft and athwartship vibration which are to be assessed separately.

3.1.3 Crew and embarked personnel spaces are to be assessed with the ship proceeding in its normal condition and in accordance with the provisions set out in Section 4. The vibration levels specified in Tables 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 1.3.3 and 1.3.4 are not to be exceeded.

**Table 1.3.1 Ships greater than 200 tonnes lightship. Accommodation – Maximum vibration levels**

| Location                                                | 1 to 5 Hz                              |     | 5 to 100 Hz           |   |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------|---|
|                                                         | Peak acceleration<br>mm/s <sup>2</sup> |     | Peak velocity<br>mm/s |   |
|                                                         | Acceptance numeral                     |     |                       |   |
|                                                         | 1                                      | 2   | 1                     | 2 |
| Sleeping cabins, hospitals                              | 126                                    | 157 | 4                     | 5 |
| Day cabins, offices,<br>conference rooms, mess<br>rooms | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |
| Open deck areas                                         | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |
| Alleyways, changing rooms,<br>bathrooms, lockers        | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |

**Table 1.3.2 Ships greater than 200 tonnes lightship. Work areas – Maximum vibration levels**

| Location                                                                                             | 1 to 5 Hz                              |     | 5 to 100 Hz           |   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------|---|
|                                                                                                      | Peak acceleration<br>mm/s <sup>2</sup> |     | Peak velocity<br>mm/s |   |
|                                                                                                      | Acceptance numeral                     |     |                       |   |
|                                                                                                      | 1                                      | 2   | 1                     | 2 |
| Machinery spaces<br>(continuously manned)<br>and stores                                              | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |
| Machinery spaces<br>(not continuously manned)<br>e.g., pump, refrigeration,<br>thruster or fan rooms | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |
| Workshops and aircraft<br>hangars                                                                    | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |
| Machinery control rooms                                                                              | 126                                    | 157 | 4                     | 5 |
| Wheelhouse and conning<br>positions                                                                  | 126                                    | 157 | 4                     | 5 |
| Bridge wings                                                                                         | 126                                    | 157 | 4                     | 5 |
| Command, control<br>and communication<br>compartments                                                | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |
| Galleys and pantries                                                                                 | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |
| Normally unoccupied<br>spaces                                                                        | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |

**Table 1.3.3 Ships less than 200 tonnes lightship. Accommodation – Maximum vibration levels**

| Location                                                | 1 to 5 Hz                              |     | 5 to 100 Hz           |   |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------|---|
|                                                         | Peak acceleration<br>mm/s <sup>2</sup> |     | Peak velocity<br>mm/s |   |
|                                                         | Acceptance numeral                     |     |                       |   |
|                                                         | 1                                      | 2   | 1                     | 2 |
| Sleeping cabins, hospitals                              | 157                                    | 189 | 4                     | 6 |
| Day cabins, offices,<br>conference rooms,<br>mess rooms | 189                                    | 220 | 6                     | 7 |
| Open deck areas                                         | 189                                    | 220 | 6                     | 7 |
| Alleyways, changing rooms,<br>bathrooms, lockers        | 189                                    | 220 | 6                     | 7 |

# Noise and Vibration Levels in Personnel Spaces

## Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 1

Sections 3 & 4

**Table 1.3.4 Ships less than 200 tonnes lightship. Work areas – Maximum vibration levels**

| Location                                                                                             | 1 to 5 Hz                              |     | 5 to 100 Hz           |   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----|-----------------------|---|
|                                                                                                      | Peak acceleration<br>mm/s <sup>2</sup> |     | Peak velocity<br>mm/s |   |
|                                                                                                      | Acceptance numeral                     |     |                       |   |
|                                                                                                      | 1                                      | 2   | 1                     | 2 |
| Machinery spaces<br>(continuously manned)<br>and stores                                              | 189                                    | 220 | 6                     | 7 |
| Machinery spaces<br>(not continuously manned)<br>e.g., pump, refrigeration,<br>thruster or fan rooms | 189                                    | 220 | 6                     | 7 |
| Workshops and aircraft<br>hangars                                                                    | 189                                    | 220 | 6                     | 7 |
| Machinery control rooms                                                                              | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |
| Wheelhouse and conning<br>positions                                                                  | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |
| Bridge wings                                                                                         | 157                                    | 189 | 5                     | 6 |
| Command, control and<br>communication<br>compartments                                                | 189                                    | 220 | 6                     | 7 |
| Galleys and pantries                                                                                 | 189                                    | 220 | 6                     | 7 |
| Normally unoccupied<br>spaces                                                                        | 189                                    | 220 | 6                     | 7 |

## Section 4 Testing

### 4.1 Measurement procedures

4.1.1 These requirements take precedence where quoted standards may differ.

4.1.2 The trial measurements may be undertaken by an approved technical organisation or by LR. In the former case, the measurements shall be witnessed by an LR Surveyor.

### 4.2 Test conditions

4.2.1 Test conditions for the surveys are to be in accordance with those detailed in ISO 2923 and ISO 6954:2000.

4.2.2 The intended operating conditions of the ship during assessment surveys are to be submitted to LR for agreement, prior to commencement of surveys.

4.2.3 Surveys will only be conducted when the ship is fully outfitted and all systems contributing to noise and vibration levels are fully operational.

4.2.4 The test conditions required for the vibration and noise measurements are to be in accordance with the following conditions:

- Propulsion machinery operating profiles are to be submitted prior to the trials and a respective service condition agreed between the Owner and LR. Noise and vibration measurements will be taken at this service condition and the acceptance numeral assigned. In addition, noise and vibration measurements will be required at a condition where the power absorbed by the propeller(s) is not less than 85 per cent of the maximum continuous rating of the propulsion machinery. At this condition, the maximum noise and vibration levels relating to acceptance number 2 must not be exceeded.
- All propulsion and auxiliary machinery, including HVAC systems, are to be running in their normal sea-going mode during the noise and vibration trials. Combinations of auxiliary machinery operation may be necessary.
- Measurements are to be taken with the ship proceeding ahead, at a constant speed and course, in a depth of water not less than five times the draught of the ship.
- Trials are to be conducted in sea conditions not greater than sea state 3 on the WMO sea state code.
- The ship is to be at a displacement and trim corresponding to the normal operating condition.
- Rudder angle variations are to be limited to  $\pm 2^\circ$  of the midship position and rudder movements are to be kept to a minimum throughout the measurement periods.
- In addition, for ships which are designed to spend a considerable period of time in harbour, the noise and vibration levels are to be measured for this condition, with the auxiliary machinery and HVAC systems running at their normal rated capacity.
- Care is needed to ensure that external sources of noise, due to aircraft for example, do not influence the noise measurement results.

4.2.5 Prior to survey, a test programme is to be submitted for approval by LR. This programme is to contain details of the following:

- Measurement locations, indicated on a general arrangement of the ship.
- The ship's outfit condition during survey.
- The machinery operating condition, including HVAC system, during survey.
- Noise and vibration measuring equipment.

### 4.3 Noise measurements

4.3.1 Noise measurements are to be conducted in accordance with ISO 2923 and IMO Resolution A.468. Measurements of noise levels are to be carried out using precision grade sound level meters conforming to IEC 651, Type 1 or 2. Subject to demonstration, equivalent standards are acceptable.

4.3.2 Where the measured noise exceeds the relevant criteria, or contains subjectively annoying low frequency noise, or obvious tonal components, octave band readings are to be taken, with centre frequencies from 31,5 Hz to 8 kHz.

# Noise and Vibration Levels in Personnel Spaces

## Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 1

Sections 4 & 5

4.3.3 Measurements are to be performed to evaluate the ship with respect to sound insulation, the measurement locations and quantity are to be agreed with LR.

### 4.4 Noise measurement locations

4.4.1 Measurement locations are to be chosen so that assessment represents the overall noise environment on board the ship. At least 50 per cent of the sleeping accommodation areas are to be surveyed. Distribution of the measurement locations is to be agreed with LR.

4.4.2 During measurement trials, recognised noise sources are to be operated at their normal level of noise output (e.g., machinery at design rating).

### 4.5 Vibration measurements

4.5.1 Vibration measurements are to be conducted in accordance with ISO 6954:2000.

4.5.2 Measurements are to be made with an electronic system capable of providing vibration frequency spectra in the range 1 to 100 Hz.

### 4.6 Vibration measurement locations

4.6.1 Measurement locations are to be chosen so that the assessment represents the overall vibration environment onboard the ship. To minimise survey times, readings may be taken at the locations previously defined for the noise assessment part of the survey.

4.6.2 In cabins, vibration readings are to be taken in the centre of the floor area. The measurements are to indicate the vibration of the deck structure. In large spaces, such as mess rooms, sufficient measurements are required to define the vibration profile.

4.6.3 Where deck coverings make transducer attachment impracticable, use of a small steel plate having a mass of at least 1 kg is permissible.

4.6.4 At all locations, vibrations in the vertical direction are to be assessed. Sufficient measurements in the athwartships and fore and aft directions are to be taken to define global vibrations.

## Section 5 Survey reporting

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 The survey report is to comprise the data and analysis for both noise and vibration and is to be submitted to LR for consideration.

5.1.2 The survey report shall be prepared by the organisation undertaking the trial measurements, which is to be either LR or an approved technical organisation approved by LR.

### 5.2 Noise

5.2.1 The reporting of results is to comply with ISO 2923, and is to include:

- (a) The results of public address and general alarm system testing, in addition to the acoustic insulation testing.
- (b) Measurement locations indicated on a general arrangement plan including, where possible, the measured dB(A) level.
- (c) Tabulated dB(A) noise levels, together with octave band analysis for positions where the level exceeds the specified criterion. The NR number is also to be given where octave band analyses have been conducted. If the NR number minus 5 dB(A) does not exceed the noise limit the requirement is fulfilled.
- (d) Ship and machinery details.
- (e) Trial details:
  - Loading condition.
  - Machinery operating condition.
  - Speed.
  - Average water depth under keel.
  - Weather conditions.
  - Sea state.
- (f) Details of measuring and analysis equipment (e.g., manufacturer, type and serial numbers), including frequency analysis parameters (e.g., averaging time).
- (g) Copies of the relevant instrument calibration certificates, together with the results of field calibration checks.

### 5.3 Vibration

5.3.1 The report is to contain the following information:

- (a) Measurement positions indicated on a general arrangement plan.
- (b) The maximum peak vibration levels and their corresponding frequencies taken from the frequency spectra, tabulated for all measurement locations.
- (c) Ship and machinery details.
- (d) Trial details:
  - Loading condition.
  - Machinery operating condition.
  - Speed.
  - Average water depth under keel.
  - Weather conditions.
  - Sea state.
- (e) Details of measuring and analysis equipment (e.g., manufacturer, type and serial number), including frequency analysis parameters (e.g., resolution, averaging time and window function).
- (f) Copies of the relevant instrument calibration certificates, together with the results of field calibration checks.

# Noise and Vibration Levels in Personnel Spaces

## Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 1

Sections 6, 7 & 8

### Section 6 Excessive noise and vibration

#### 6.1 Noise excesses

6.1.1 Noise levels greater than those specified in these Rules may be considered. Not more than 20 per cent of the accommodation cabins are to exceed the relevant noise criteria by more than 3 dB(A).

#### 6.2 Vibration excesses

6.2.1 Vibration levels greater than those specified in these Rules may be considered. Not more than 20 per cent of all accommodation cabins are to exceed the relevant vibration criteria by more than 0,3 mm/s.

### Section 7 Survey requirements

#### 7.1 Initial Survey

7.1.1 The Initial Survey shall comprise sea trial or initial in-service testing, reporting and assessment against the criteria set out in these Rules.

7.1.2 The sea trial or initial in-service testing requirements are set out in Section 4, and are to be reported in accordance with Section 5 and evaluated against the requirements of Sections 2 and 3.

#### 7.2 Periodical Survey (first 6 years)

7.2.1 An Annual Survey is to be held between 9 and 15 months after the completion of the Initial Survey. Measurements of noise and vibration will be required at a minimum of 25 per cent of the locations specified for the Initial Survey. The locations are to be submitted to LR for agreement, prior to commencement of the Annual Survey.

7.2.2 An Intermediate Survey is to be held within three months before or after the third anniversary of completion of the Initial Survey. The percentage of measurements required is to be as specified in 7.2.1.

7.2.3 If the limiting criteria as described in 6.1 and 6.2 are exceeded and the cause of the exceedance cannot be rectified at the time of the survey, then a Renewal Survey may be required.

#### 7.3 Periodical Surveys (subsequent years)

7.3.1 A Renewal Survey is to be held at six-yearly intervals, the first one six years from the completion of the Initial Survey. The measurements required shall be the same as those required for the Initial Survey.

7.3.2 Following each Renewal Survey, an Intermediate Survey is to be held between the second and third subsequent years. The percentage of measurements required is to be as specified in 7.2.1.

#### 7.4 Surveys following modifications

7.4.1 A Renewal Survey may be required following modifications, alterations or repairs including replacement of major machinery items. It is the responsibility of the Owner to advise LR of such modifications.

### Section 8 Referenced standards

#### 8.1 Noise

8.1.1 The following National and International Standards for noise are referred to in these Rules:

- ISO 2923, *Acoustics – Measurement of noise on board vessels.*
- ISO 1999, *Acoustics – Determination of occupational noise exposure and estimation of noise-induced hearing impairment.*
- ISO 717/1, *Acoustics – Rating of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements; Part 1: Airborne sound insulation.*
- IMO Resolution A.468(XII), *Code on noise levels on board ship.*
- IEC Publication 651, *Sound level meters.*
- ISO 140/4, *Acoustics – Measurement of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements; Part 4: Field measurements of airborne sound insulation between rooms.*

#### 8.2 Vibration

8.2.1 The following National and International Standards for vibration are referred to in these Rules:

- ISO 6954:2000, *Mechanical vibration – Guidelines for the measurement, reporting and evaluation of vibration with regard to habitability on passenger and merchant ships.*

## Section

### 1 General requirements

### 2 Environmental Protection (EP) class notation

### 3 Supplementary characters

### 4 Survey requirements

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 This Chapter contains requirements for the control of operational pollution on naval ships.

1.1.2 Compliance with this Chapter is optional. A ship meeting the requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for an appropriate class notation, which will be recorded in the *Register Book*.

1.1.3 Additional requirements may be imposed by the Naval Authority. If specifically requested, Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR') may provide suitable certification or statement of compliance.

1.1.4 LR is to be advised of any matter that relates to the environmental performance of the ship that would affect the assignment of the **EP** class notation. The requirements of the Rules for the **POL** notation included in Pt 3, Ch 6 are to be complied with as part of demonstrating compliance with these Rules.

### 1.2 EP class notation

1.2.1 Section 2 states the minimum requirements to be met for assignment of the **EP** notation.

1.2.2 Section 3 contains additional requirements. Ships complying with these requirements will be eligible for one or more of the following associated supplementary characters, as applicable:

- A** Anti-fouling coatings.
- B** Ballast water management.
- F** Protected fuel tanks.
- G** Grey water.
- N** Oxides of nitrogen (NO<sub>x</sub>) exhaust emissions.
- R** Refrigeration systems.
- S** Oxides of sulphur (SO<sub>x</sub>) exhaust emissions.
- O** Oily bilge water.

### 1.3 Information to be submitted

1.3.1 The following are to be submitted:

- (a) One copy of all plans and information listed in 1.3.4.
- (b) Two copies of the Operational Procedures.
- (c) One copy of every Certificate.

- (d) One copy of any information relating to the environmental performance of the ship, which may influence the assignment of the **EP** notation.

#### 1.3.2 Certificates:

- (a) MARPOL certificates or certification, as applicable.
- (b) Interim Engine International Air Pollution Prevention (EIAPP) Certificate or statement of compliance with the NO<sub>x</sub> emission requirements of MARPOL Annex VI.
- (c) Incinerator certificate or statement of compliance with the requirements of MARPOL, Annex IV, Regulation 16.
- (d) Sewage system and, where fitted, sewage treatment system statement of compliance with the requirements of USCG 33 CFR 159 and/or MARPOL 73/78 Annex IV.

#### 1.3.3 Operational procedures:

- (a) NO<sub>x</sub> emission control, as applicable.
- (b) Oil fuel management for the control of SO<sub>x</sub> emissions.
- (c) Refrigerant management.
- (d) Oil pollution prevention measures.
- (e) Garbage management.
- (f) Sewage treatment and discharge control.
- (g) Precautionary measures to minimise the transfer of non-nature organisms in ballast water.
- (h) Ballast water management.

#### 1.3.4 Information and plans:

- (a) Details of engine type, rated power and intended use for all installed engines.
- (b) Details of NO<sub>x</sub> control arrangements, as applicable. Arrangements of permanently installed refrigeration systems (including those used for chilled water, air conditioning, domestic store rooms and chiller units).
- (c) Capacity of refrigeration system.
- (d) Details of intended refrigerant(s).
- (e) Details of fire-extinguishing media to be used in fixed fire-fighting systems and portable extinguishers.
- (f) Bilge holding, waste oil and sludge tank capacities and piping arrangements.
- (g) Arrangements of oil loading and discharge connections together with associated drip trays and drainage systems.
- (h) Oil fuel storage, settling and service tank high level alarms/overflow systems.
- (j) Details of sewage treatment and handling systems.
- (k) Capacity of sewage holding and/or treatment system.
- (l) Maximum numbers of crew and embarked personnel.
- (m) Details of incinerator arrangements, as applicable, associated piping systems, control and monitoring equipment.
- (n) Hull coating system and leaching rate.
- (o) Ballast water treatment arrangements, as applicable (for supplementary **B** character only).
- (p) Any information relating to the environmental performance of the ship, which may influence the assignment of the **EP** notation.
- (q) Arrangements of protected oil tanks (for supplementary **F** character only).
- (r) Details of grey water treatment plant and effluent quality (for supplementary **G** character only).

## 1.4 Alterations and additions

1.4.1 When an alteration or addition to the approved arrangements and procedures is proposed, appropriate details are to be submitted for approval.

## 1.5 In-service records

1.5.1 Records demonstrating the effective implementation of the operational procedures specified in 1.3.3, as applicable, are to be maintained.

1.5.2 These records are to be kept on board for a minimum period of three years, in a readily accessible form, and are to be available for inspection by LR Surveyors, as required.

## ■ Section 2 Environmental Protection (EP) class notation

### 2.1 General

2.1.1 It is a prerequisite for assignment of the **EP** notation that the ship is classed with LR and demonstrates compliance with all relevant Annexes of MARPOL.

2.1.2 Where a ship, by virtue of its gross tonnage, would not be required by the MARPOL Convention to have MARPOL Certification, the following are to be maintained:

- (a) An Oil Record Book in accordance with MARPOL Annex I.
- (b) A garbage management plan and record book in accordance with MARPOL Annex V.

2.1.3 High speed craft, as defined below, will be the subject of special consideration.

A high speed craft is a craft capable of maximum speed,  $V$ , not less than:

$$V = 7,19 \nabla^{1/6} \text{ knots}$$

where

$\nabla$  = moulded displacement, in  $\text{m}^3$ , of the craft corresponding to the design waterline. The design waterline is the waterline corresponding to the maximum operational weight of the craft with no lift or propulsion machinery active.

### 2.2 Oxides of nitrogen ( $\text{NO}_x$ )

2.2.1 These requirements apply to all installed diesel engines with an individual output power greater than 130 kW, other than those used solely for emergency purposes. There are no specific requirements relating to  $\text{NO}_x$  emissions from boilers, incinerators or gas turbine installations.

2.2.2 All engines falling within the scope of MARPOL Annex VI, Regulation 13 are to comply with its provisions and be certified accordingly.

2.2.3 Engines over 130 kW, other than those used solely for emergency purposes, not falling under the requirements of MARPOL Annex VI, Regulation 13, are also to comply with the applicable emission values detailed in paragraph 3(a) of that Regulation. The test procedure and measurement method are to be in accordance with either the Simplified Measurement Method or Direct Measurement and Monitoring Method as detailed in Chapter 6 of the  $\text{NO}_x$  Technical Code.

2.2.4 Where the  $\text{NO}_x$  emission limits specified in MARPOL, Annex VI, Regulation 13 are exceeded, an emission reduction plan to reduce emission levels to those specified in the aforementioned Regulation are to be developed and agreed with LR.

2.2.5 Equipment and systems used to control  $\text{NO}_x$  emission levels are to:

- (a) be arranged so that failure will not prevent continued safe operation of the engine;
- (b) be operated in accordance with manufacturer's instructions;
- (c) be designed, constructed and installed to ensure structure integrity and freedom from significant vibration;
- (d) be designed to include adequate hatches for inspection and maintenance purposes; and
- (e) be instrumented to record operation. Records of operation and the degree of control are to be maintained.

Alternative control arrangements will be given special consideration.

2.2.6 Procedures covering the use and maintenance of the equipment and systems specified in 2.2.5 are to be established and effectively implemented. Records are to be maintained which demonstrate the operation of the equipment and systems and the resultant level of  $\text{NO}_x$  emissions to the atmosphere.

### 2.3 Oxides of sulphur ( $\text{SO}_x$ )

2.3.1 Emission of  $\text{SO}_x$  is to be controlled by limiting the sulphur content of oil fuels used on board.

2.3.2 The maximum sulphur content of oil fuel to be used on board will be dependent upon area of operation and bunkering ports. The maximum permissible fuel sulphur content will be ship-specific and will be specified by LR, based on fuel availability. In all cases, this will not exceed 3,5 per cent.

2.3.3 Where the grade of fuel normally used cannot be obtained with the appropriate fuel sulphur level, then a better grade of fuel meeting this requirement will need to be purchased.

2.3.4 An oil fuel management system is to detail the maximum sulphur content to be specified when ordering oil fuels and the means adopted to verify that the sulphur content of oil fuels supplied meets that requirement. This management system is to include the practices to be adopted to ensure that appropriate low sulphur oil fuels are used when the ship is within IMO designated ' $\text{SO}_x$  Emission Control Areas', as applicable.

# Environmental Protection

# Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 2

Section 2

2.3.5 Where testing to determine the sulphur content of fuel received on board is to be carried out, a representative sample is to be drawn at the time of delivery from the ship's bunker manifold using the manual or automatic sampling methods defined in ISO 3170 or 3171, or their national respective equivalents. Fuel sulphur content is to be subsequently determined using the laboratory test method ISO 8754 or an equivalent National Standard based on ISO 8754.

## 2.4 Refrigeration systems

2.4.1 These requirements apply to refrigeration, chilled water and air conditioning installations on all naval ships. These requirements do not apply to the domestic stand-alone refrigerators used in galleys, pantries, bars and crew accommodation.

2.4.2 The use of chlorofluorocarbons (CFC) in refrigeration or air conditioning installations is prohibited.

2.4.3 Systems are to be arranged with suitable means of isolation so that maintenance, servicing or repair work may be undertaken without releasing the refrigerant charge into the atmosphere. Unavoidable minimal releases are acceptable when using recovery units.

2.4.4 For the purposes of refrigerant recovery, the compressors are to be capable of evacuating a system charge into a liquid receiver. Additionally, recovery units are to be provided to evacuate a system either into the existing liquid receiver or into cylinders dedicated for this purpose. The number of cylinders is to be sufficient to contain the complete charge between points of isolation in the system.

2.4.5 Where different refrigerants are in use they are not to be mixed during evacuation of systems.

2.4.6 Refrigerant leakage is to be minimised by leak prevention and periodic leak detection procedures. The annual refrigerant leakage rate for each system shall be less than 10 per cent of its total charge.

2.4.7 A leak detection system appropriate to the applicable refrigerant is to be provided to monitor continuously the spaces into which the refrigerant could leak. An alarm is to be given in a permanently manned location when the concentration of refrigerant in the space exceeds a predetermined limit (25 ppm for ammonia; 300 ppm for halogenated fluorocarbons). Remedial measures to repair the leakage are to be implemented as soon as practicable after an alarm is activated.

2.4.8 Procedures detailing the means to be adopted to control the loss, leakage, venting and disposal of refrigerants are to be established and implemented effectively.

2.4.9 Refrigerant inventory and log book records of the following are to be maintained covering:

- (a) Refrigerant added to each system.
- (b) Refrigerant leaks, including remedial actions.
- (c) Refrigerant recovered and where stored.
- (d) Refrigerant consumption.
- (e) Refrigerant disposal.

## 2.5 Fire-fighting systems

2.5.1 The use of halon or halo-carbons as the fire-extinguishing medium in fixed fire-fighting systems or extinguishers is not permitted.

## 2.6 Oil pollution prevention

2.6.1 All ships are to comply with the requirements of 2.6.2 to 2.6.11.

2.6.2 Drainage from machinery space bilges may be discharged to sea in accordance with the requirements of MARPOL 73/78, Annex 1.

2.6.3 The oil in water content of the water discharged is to be less than 15 ppm. Oily bilge water is to be discharged through approved oil filtering equipment and a 15 ppm alarm combined with a device for automatically stopping any discharge to sea when the oil content in the discharge exceeds 15 ppm. Full records of all discharges are to be kept.

2.6.4 Oil fuel, lubricating oil and other oil loading or discharge connections on deck are to be fitted with drip trays. Drip trays are to be fitted with closed drainage systems.

2.6.5 Oil fuel storage, settling and service tanks are to be fitted with high level alarms and/or acceptable overflow systems.

2.6.6 Leakages and waste oil from machinery and equipment are to be collected in a dedicated waste oil tank prior to disposal ashore or incineration. This waste oil tank is to be separate from the sludge tank specified in MARPOL Annex I, Regulation 17. The volume of the waste oil tank is to be of sufficient capacity to hold a complete lubricating oil charge from the largest engine used for propulsion or electrical generating purposes.

2.6.7 For those ships which only operate on distillate fuel, the waste oil and sludge tanks may be combined to form a single tank. Where such a combined tank is fitted, the total capacity is to be equal to or greater than the aggregated total of the required individual tank capacities.

2.6.8 The bilge holding tank, the waste oil tank and the sludge tank are to be arranged to facilitate the periodic removal of accumulated sediments and other material.

2.6.9 Discharge piping systems to deck from the bilge holding tank, and the waste oil tank, are to be separate from the oil fuel loading and transfer systems. The bilge holding tank and waste oil tank piping systems are to be terminated with the standard discharge connections specified in MARPOL Annex I, Regulation 19. The sludge tank may be discharged through the same piping system as the waste oil tank.

2.6.10 Means are to be provided for the collection and recovery of any oil spilled on decks.



# Environmental Protection

# Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 2

## Section 2

2.6.11 Procedures covering the handling of all oils and oily wastes are to be established and implemented effectively. As a minimum, these are to cover:

- (a) loading, storage and transfer of oil fuels, lubricants, hydraulic oil, thermal heating oil and drummed oil products;
- (b) storage, transfer, discharge and disposal of oily mixtures contained in the ship's sludge, bilge holding and waste oil tanks and machinery space bilges; and
- (c) recovery of any oil spilled on decks.

## 2.7 Garbage handling and disposal

2.7.1 Procedures covering garbage management are to be established and effectively implemented. As a minimum, these procedures are to include:

- (a) identification of the sources of garbage;
- (b) means of minimising garbage production;
- (c) procedures for the safe and hygienic collection, segregation, storing, processing and disposal of garbage, including the use of the equipment (compactors, comminuters, incinerators or other devices) on board. These procedures are to cover all garbage generated during the normal operation of the ship. The disposal of the following materials is to be specifically covered:
  - Waste oil.
  - Paint and painting materials.
  - Medical wastes.
  - Large metal objects such as oil drums and machinery components.
  - Ropes: metal, synthetic or natural fibre.
  - Rust/scale debris.
  - Ballast tank sediments.
  - Equipment containing refrigerants.

2.7.2 Where fitted, incinerators are to be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of IMO Resolution MEPC 76(40). A certificate of compliance is to be provided.

2.7.3 Where incineration is to be carried out, procedures are to be developed and implemented covering:

- (a) operation in accordance with the requirements of MARPOL Annex VI, Regulation 16; and
- (b) prevention of incineration within areas where incineration is prohibited by the Coastal State Administration.

## 2.8 Sewage treatment

2.8.1 The capacity of the sewage treatment system, where fitted, is to be sufficient for the maximum number of persons on board. Where 'black water' only is treated, the minimum capacity is to be 115 litres/person/day for a conventional flushing system or 15 litres/person/day for a vacuum system. Where both 'black water' and 'grey water' are treated, a minimum additional allowance of 135 litres/person/day is to be made. Alternative minimum capacities will be specially considered on an individual basis where there is evidence from similar naval ships and the Naval Authority is in agreement.

2.8.2 Procedures for the operation of a sewage treatment system, including the certification of performance, are to be established and effectively implemented. Records are to be maintained of maintenance, repair, remedial work and disinfectant closing rates.

2.8.3 The manufacturer's restriction on materials which may be disposed of through the sewage treatment system are to be clearly displayed at each input point.

2.8.4 The disinfectant dosing points of the sewage treatment system are to be readily accessible. Ready access is also to be provided for the taking of samples.

2.8.5 As an alternative to treatment, sewage may be retained on board. The sewage holding tank is to be of adequate capacity taking into account the operation of the ship, the number of persons on board and other relevant factors such as the time the ship is anticipated to operate within literal waters. The tank is to be fitted with a visual contents gauge and a high level alarm.

2.8.6 Records are to be maintained detailing discharges from the holding tank. These should include:

- (a) the date, location and quantity of sewage discharged from the holding tank either ashore or at sea;
- (b) distance from land and ship's speed, when sewage is discharged to sea.

2.8.7 Ventilation pipes from the sewage system are to be independent of other vent systems.

2.8.8 A suitable piping system from the sewage treatment system or holding tank is to be provided to allow discharge from the system/tank to shore reception facilities. The systems discharge pipe is to terminate with a standard discharge connection complying with the requirements of MARPOL Annex IV, Regulation 10.

## 2.9 Hull anti-fouling systems

2.9.1 Prior to 1 January 2003, the application of anti-fouling systems containing tributyltin (TBT) is acceptable provided that the leaching rate does not exceed 4 µg/cm<sup>2</sup>/day, as determined by ASTM Method 5108-90.

2.9.2 From 1 January 2003, the application of anti-fouling systems containing TBT is prohibited. Ships to which TBT-based anti-fouling systems have been applied prior to this date will be accepted until 1 January 2008, provided the TBT leaching rate does not exceed 4 µg/cm<sup>2</sup>/day, as determined by ASTM Method 5108-90.

## 2.10 Ballast water

2.10.1 All ships carrying ballast water are to implement precautionary measures to minimise the translocation of non-native organisms in their ballast water unless it can be demonstrated that the risk of translocation of non-native organisms in their ballast water and sediments is minimal.



2.10.2 As a minimum, precautionary measures to minimise the translocation of non-native organisms are to include:

- (a) minimising the uptake of aquatic organisms, pathogens and sediments during ballasting, by limiting or minimising ballasting in situations where the numbers of aquatic organisms are likely to be increased locally. For example:
  - in darkness, when bottom-dwelling organisms may rise up the water column;
  - in very shallow water;
  - where propellers may stir up sediment;
  - in areas specified by the Port State for avoidance or restriction of ballasting;
- (b) monitoring of sediment build-up and, where practicable, routine cleaning of ballast tanks to remove sediments.
- (c) planning uptake and discharge of ballast water such that where ballast needs to be taken on and discharged in the same port, discharge of ballast loaded in another port is to be avoided, where practicable.

## ■ Section 3 Supplementary characters

### 3.1 Hull anti-fouling systems – A character

3.1.1 For assignment of the **A** character, the anti-fouling system applied to the ship's hull is to be non-biocidal.

### 3.2 Ballast water management – B character

3.2.1 Where ballast water management is undertaken, for assignment of the **B** character, a ballast water management plan approved by the Naval Authority, is to be in place and implemented effectively.

3.2.2 The ballast water management plan is to take account of the safety considerations detailed in IMO Resolution A.868(20).

### 3.3 Protected fuel tanks – F character

3.3.1 For assignment of the **F** character, oil fuel and lubricating oil tanks are to be located in a protected location away from the ship's side or bottom shell plating. This requirement does not apply to main engine lubricating oil drain tanks.

3.3.2 Oil tanks are to be located as follows:

- oil tanks with a capacity of less than 1000 m<sup>3</sup> are to be located at least 0,76 m from the ship's side or bottom plating; and
- oil tanks with a capacity of 1000 m<sup>3</sup> and over are to be located at least 1,5 m from the ship's side or bottom plating.

3.3.3 Arrangements providing equivalent protection will be given special consideration.

3.3.4 Suction wells may protrude below oil fuel tanks provided they are as small as possible and the distance between the tank bottom and the ship's bottom shell plating is not reduced by more than 50 per cent.

### 3.4 Grey water – G character

3.4.1 Where plant for the treatment of grey water is installed and utilised effectively, the **G** character will be assigned, subject to the plant effluent meeting the standards specified in 3.4.2 or 3.4.3, as applicable.

3.4.2 Where it is not intended that the effluent is recycled or re-used for any purpose, the effluent of the grey water treatment plant is to meet the following standards:

- (a) Faecal coliforms:  
Content is not to exceed 250/100 ml M.P.N. (most probable number) as determined by a multiple tube fermentation analysis or an equivalent procedure.

- (b) Suspended solids:  
Where the equipment is tested onshore, the geometric mean of the total suspended solids content of the samples of effluent taken during the test period is not to exceed 50 mg/l.  
Where the equipment is tested on board the ship, the geometric mean of the total suspended solids content of the samples of effluent taken during the test period is not to exceed the suspended solids content of the ambient water used on board plus 100 mg/l.

- (c) Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD<sub>5</sub>):  
The geometric mean of a 5-day Biochemical Oxygen Demand is not to exceed 50 mg/l.  
When testing on board the ship, if insufficient time is available for obtaining a number of samples over a period of days, a BOD<sub>5</sub> not exceeding 100 mg/l on a single sample will be accepted providing that suspended solids are within the value stated above.

3.4.3 Where it is intended that the effluent of the grey water treatment plant is to be re-used or recycled for any purpose, the effluent is to meet the potable water quality standards of Naval Authority.

### 3.5 Oily bilge water – O character

3.5.1 For assignment of the **O** character, all drainage from machinery space bilges is to be discharged ashore, except under exceptional circumstances.

3.5.2 Alternatively, discharge to sea is permitted where it can be demonstrated that the oil-in-water content of the water discharged is less than 5 ppm.

3.5.3 Full records of all discharges are to be kept.

## 3.6 Oxides of nitrogen (NO<sub>x</sub>) – N character

3.6.1 For assignment of the **N** character, the total weighted value of NO<sub>x</sub> emissions from all installed diesel engines defined within 2.2.1 is not to exceed 80 per cent of the total weighted NO<sub>x</sub> emission limits specified in MARPOL Annex VI, Regulation 13.

3.6.2 The total weighted emission value for the ship (*WV*) is to be calculated as follows:

$$WV_{[ship]} = \frac{WAEV_{[cert]}}{WAEV_{[IMO]}}$$

where

$$WAEV_{[cert]} = \frac{\sum_{n=1}^n (NO_{x[cert]} \cdot P)}{\sum_{n=1}^n (P)}$$

$$WAEV_{[IMO]} = \frac{\sum_{n=1}^n (NO_{x[IMO]} \cdot P)}{\sum_{n=1}^n (P)}$$

*n* = the number of individual engines on board the ship

*P* = the rated power, in kW, of each individual installed engine

NO<sub>x[cert]</sub> = the certified NO<sub>x</sub> emission value, in g/kWh, for each individual engine

NO<sub>x[IMO]</sub> = the NO<sub>x</sub> emission limit value, in g/kWh, of each individual engine as specified in Regulation 13 of Annex VI to MARPOL.

3.6.3 The **N** character will be assigned when:

$$\frac{WAEV_{[cert]}}{WAEV_{[IMO]}} \leq 0,8$$

3.6.4 The test procedure and measurement method are to be in accordance with either the Simplified Measurement Method or Direct Measurement and Monitoring Method given in Chapter 6 of the IMO NO<sub>x</sub> Technical Code.

3.6.5 Systems and equipment used to control the NO<sub>x</sub> emissions are to comply with the requirements specified in 2.2.5.

3.6.6 In the case where the individual engines are 'family' or 'group' engines, as defined in the NO<sub>x</sub> Technical Code, the certified emission value may be based on that of the parent engine.

## 3.7 Refrigeration systems – R character

3.7.1 For assignment of the **R** character, in addition to compliance with the requirements of 2.4, all refrigerants used onboard are to have an Ozone Depleting Potential (ODP) rating of zero and a Global Warming Potential (GWP) of less than 1950, based on a 100-year time horizon.

## 3.8 Oxides of sulphur (SO<sub>x</sub>) – S character

3.8.1 For assignment of the **S** character, all gas oil used on board is to have a sulphur content of less than 0,20 per cent m/m. All heavy fuel oil is to have a sulphur content of less than 1,5 per cent m/m.

3.8.2 The sampling, fuel sulphur analysis methods and verification requirements stipulated in 2.3.4 and 2.3.5 are to be complied with.

## Section 4 Survey requirements

### 4.1 Initial Survey and Audit

4.1.1 Following satisfactory review of the plans and other information submitted (see 1.3), an EP Initial Survey is to be undertaken for ships under construction or in service.

4.1.2 At the EP Initial Survey, the Surveyor is to be satisfied that the requirements of these Rules, including those relating to any requested supplementary characters, are complied with. The Surveyor is to verify that the hull and machinery arrangements are in accordance with the approved documentation. The installed equipment, together with associated control and alarm systems, is to be demonstrated under working conditions.

4.1.3 Following the successful completion of the Initial Survey, the **EP** notation may be provisionally assigned to a ship. The provisional **EP** notation will be valid, in the first instance, for a period not exceeding 6 months. During this period, an audit of the procedures as required by these Rules is to be undertaken. This audit is to be performed after the procedures have been fully implemented, subjected to internal audit and have generated at least 3 months of records under in-service conditions.

4.1.4 Audits are to confirm by direct observation, examination of internal audit reports and scrutiny of records that each of the procedures have been implemented effectively over the preceding period. It is also to be verified that:

- (a) the required resources and equipment have been provided; and
- (b) the ship's staff are aware of their duties and responsibilities, and can perform the assigned tasks.

4.1.5 The full **EP** notation will be assigned following satisfactory completion of the audit.

### 4.2 Periodical Surveys and Audits

4.2.1 EP Annual Surveys are to be held on all ships to which the **EP** notation applies within three months of each anniversary for assignment of the full **EP** notation.

4.2.2 At the EP Annual Survey, the Surveyor is to be satisfied that the arrangements and equipment comply with these Rules. As far as possible, the installed equipment, together with associated control and alarm systems, are to be demonstrated under working conditions. Additionally:

- (a) where changes to arrangements or equipment fitted to meet the requirements of these Rules have been made, it is to be verified that these changes are in accordance with approved documentation; and
- (b) records for the preceding 12 months are to be reviewed.

4.2.3 EP Audits are to be held at either the second or third anniversaries of the completion of the Initial or Renewal Surveys. EP Audits are to be undertaken in accordance with the requirements given in 4.1.4.

4.2.4 All ships to which the **EP** notation applies are also to be subjected to EP Renewal Surveys in accordance with the requirements given in 4.2.5. These surveys become due at five-yearly intervals, the first being five years from the completion of the Initial Survey.

4.2.5 At the EP Renewal Survey, in addition to the survey requirements in 4.2.2:

- (a) continued compliance with the NO<sub>x</sub> emission limits specified in 2.2.2 or 2.2.3 is to be demonstrated; and
- (b) a satisfactory audit is to be undertaken in accordance with the requirements given in 4.1.4.

### **4.3 Change of Naval Authority**

4.3.1 Where the Naval Authority changes, the **EP** notation will be suspended.

4.3.2 The new Naval Authority may adopt the previously approved procedures as required by these Rules or may compile new procedures which would need to be submitted for approval.

4.3.3 Following implementation of the approved procedures, an audit, in accordance with the requirements in 4.1.3 and 4.1.4, is to be undertaken.

4.3.4 The **EP** notation will be re-assigned following successful completion of the audit provided that the general requirements given in 2.1.1 are complied with.

---



# Provision Refrigeration

# Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 3

Sections 1 &amp; 2

## Section

- 1 **General requirements**
- 2 **Construction and installation**
- 3 **Refrigerating machinery and refrigerant storage compartment arrangements**
- 4 **Refrigerant detection systems**
- 5 **Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements**
- 6 **Personnel safety equipment and systems**
- 7 **Testing and trials**

## ■ Section 1 General requirements

### 1.1 General

1.1.1 This Chapter states the requirements for ships having centralised refrigeration systems, designed to reject heat from provision refrigerated stores and are in addition to the relevant requirements of the *Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships* contained in Volumes 1 and 2.

1.1.2 The requirements, which are optional, cover arrangements, equipment, and systems necessary for effective provision refrigerated stores arrangements on board a naval ship.

1.1.3 The Naval Authority may impose requirements additional to those in this Chapter.

1.1.4 Ships complying with the applicable requirements of this Chapter will be eligible for the optional machinery class notation **PRM** (Provision Refrigeration Machinery).

### 1.2 Plans and information

1.2.1 Three copies of the plans and information stated in 1.2.2 to 1.2.6 are to be submitted to Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as LR) as applicable.

1.2.2 **Design statement.** A design statement of the refrigeration system(s) that details system capability and functionality under defined operating and emergency conditions within the normal concept of operation role of the ship. The arrangements for refrigerated stores for the ship are to be agreed between the designer and the Owner/Operator and are to be included in the design statement.

1.2.3 **Systems.** Plans in diagrammatic form showing refrigerant and cooling systems, control systems and safeguards and electrical systems covered by this Chapter. Plans are to show pipe sizes, flows and terminal locations. The capacities of fans and pumps are to be included. Capacity tables for different operating conditions for the refrigeration compressors are also to be included.

1.2.4 **Compartments.** Plans showing the general arrangement of refrigeration plant compartments, together with a description of the equipment and arrangements installed for isolation and distribution of ventilation air and the electrical power supply systems. The plans are to indicate segregation and access arrangements for compartments and associated control rooms/stations.

1.2.5 **Testing and trials procedures.** A schedule of testing and trials to demonstrate that systems are capable of operating as described in Section 3 and as required by Section 7.

1.2.6 **Operating manuals.** Operating manuals are to be provided on board and submitted for information where requested by LR. The manuals are to include the following information:

- (a) Particulars and a description of the systems.
- (b) Operating instructions for the equipment and systems (including fire isolation aspects).
- (c) Maintenance instructions for the installed arrangements.

## ■ Section 2 Construction and installation

### 2.1 Materials

2.1.1 The selection of materials in piping systems for provision refrigeration systems is to recognise the following details:

- (a) Fluids, pressures and temperatures.
- (b) Location.
- (c) Compatibility of materials.
- (d) Fluid flow rates and static conditions.
- (e) Minimising corrosion and erosion through life of system.
- (f) Flammability and toxicity.

2.1.2 Pipes, valves and fittings are in general to be made of steel, ductile cast iron, copper, copper alloy, or other approved ductile material suitable for the intended purpose. The use of plastics materials is also acceptable, subject to the restrictions in Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 1.

2.1.3 Where applicable, the materials are to comply with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 1.

### 2.2 Equipment – Selection and installation

2.2.1 Pressure vessels in provision refrigeration systems are to be in accordance with Vol 2, Pt 8, Ch 2 or an alternate recognised Code and satisfy the Naval Authority's revalidation system for such items where applicable.

2.2.2 Valves, flexible hose lengths, expansion pieces and pumps are to comply with the relevant requirements of Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 1,12 to 15.

2.2.3 Pipes in piping systems are to be permanent pipes made with approved pipe connections to enable ready removal of valves, pumps, fittings and equipment. The pipes are to be efficiently secured in position to prevent chafing or lateral movement.

2.2.4 Suitable means for expansion is to be made, where necessary, in each range of pipes.

2.2.5 Suitable protection is to be provided for all pipes and equipment situated where they are liable to mechanical damage.

2.2.6 All moving parts are to be provided with guards to minimise danger to personnel.

2.2.7 Low temperature pipes in refrigeration systems are to be provided with suitable insulation.

## 2.3 Valves and relief devices

2.3.1 Valves are to be fitted in places where they are at all times readily accessible.

2.3.2 Relief valves are to be adjusted and bursting discs so selected that they relieve at a pressure not greater than the design pressure of the system. When satisfactorily adjusted, relief valves are to be protected against tampering or interference by wire with a lead seal or similar arrangement.

## 2.4 Refrigerant systems

2.4.1 Refrigeration plants are to be provided and designed to be capable of extracting the defined heat load duty when operating in accordance with the conditions stated in the design statement required by 1.2.2.

2.4.2 The compartments containing the refrigeration plants are to be provided with refrigerant gas detectors with an alarm.

2.4.3 The design of refrigeration systems is to be such that permits maintenance and repair without unavoidable loss of refrigerant to atmosphere. To minimise refrigerant release to the atmosphere, refrigerant recovery units are to be provided for evacuation of a system prior to maintenance.

2.4.4 Refrigeration systems are to be provided with relief devices, but it is important to avoid circumstances that would bring about an inadvertent discharge of refrigerant to the atmosphere. The system is to be so designed that pressure due to fire conditions will be safely relieved.

2.4.5 A pressure relief valve and/or bursting disc is to be fitted between each positive displacement compressor and its gas delivery stop valve, the discharge being led to the suction side of the compressor. The flow capacity of the valve or disc is to exceed the full load compressor capacity on the particular refrigerant at the maximum potential suction pressure. For these internal relief valves, servo-operated valves will be accepted. Where the motive power for the compressor does not exceed 10 kW, the pressure relief valve and/or bursting disc may be omitted.

2.4.6 Each pressure vessel which may contain liquid refrigerant and which is capable of being isolated by means of a stop or automatic control or check valves is to be protected by two pressure relief valves or two bursting discs, or one of each, controlled by a changeover device. Pressure vessels that are connected by pipework without valves, so that they cannot be isolated from each other, may be regarded as a single pressure vessel for this purpose, provided that the inter-connecting pipework does not prevent effective venting of any pressure vessel.

2.4.7 Omission of one of the specified relief devices and changeover device, as required by 2.4.6, will be accepted where:

- (a) Vessels are of less than 300 litres internal gross volume; or
- (b) Vessels discharge into the low pressure side by means of a relief valve.

2.4.8 Sections of systems and components that could become full of liquid between closed valves are to be provided with pressure relief devices relieving to a suitable point in the refrigerant circuit.

2.4.9 Where hermetically sealed compressor units or semi-hermetic compressors with the electric motor cooled by the circulating refrigerant are installed, the following arrangements are to be made:

- (a) Each refrigeration system containing hermetically sealed compressor units or semi-hermetic compressors is to be independent of other refrigeration systems.
- (b) All hermetic motor-compressors are to be fitted with a thermal cut-out device that protects the motor against overheating.
- (c) Each refrigerant circuit is to be designed such that debris or contaminants from a motor failure, typically burn out of insulation, is contained and not distributed around the system.
- (d) The pressure envelope of any hermetic or semi-hermetic compressor exposed to the refrigerant pressure is to be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 8, Ch 2 and Pt 1, Ch 3 as applicable. Plans are to be submitted for consideration as required by Vol 2, Pt 6, Ch 2,1.6.

2.4.10 Sea-water systems for refrigeration condensers are to be capable of being supplied from not less than two independent sources. If required by the Naval Authority, these sources are to be located in separate compartments and zones such that the loss of one zone or compartment will not result in the loss of all sea-water supply sources.

# Provision Refrigeration

# Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 3

Section 2

2.4.11 The capacity of each source of sea-water required by 2.4.10 is to be sufficient for the conditions stated in the design statement with any one source out of action.

## 2.5 Air coolers and cooling grids

2.5.1 Refrigerated spaces may be cooled by air coolers or cooling grids on the deckhead, bulkheads, and sides. In order to minimise the dehydration of the stores and the frosting of the air coolers or cooling grids, the installation is to be designed to maintain the required temperatures as defined in the design statement with a minimum of difference between the refrigerant and space temperatures.

2.5.2 The refrigeration capacity of the air cooler arrangement is to be such that the provisions room temperature conditions defined in the design statement can be maintained under normal operating conditions. The capacities of the fans are also to be such that they can maintain the required air flow rates and uniform air temperature throughout the refrigerated spaces, when part or fully loaded with stores.

2.5.3 Air cooler fan motors are to be suitably enclosed to withstand the effects of moisture.

2.5.4 Means are to be provided for effectively defrosting air coolers. Air coolers are to be provided with trays of suitable depth arranged to collect all condensate. The trays are to be provided with drains at their lowest points to enable the condensate to be drained away when the refrigerated spaces are in service. Provision is to be made for the prevention of freezing of the condensate.

2.5.5 Air coolers are to be located such that when the refrigerated spaces are loaded with stores, adequate space is provided for the inspection, servicing and renewal of controls, valves, fans and fan motors.

2.5.6 Steel air cooler circuits and cooling grids are to be suitably protected against external corrosion.

## 2.6 Refrigeration units

2.6.1 A refrigerating unit is considered to comprise a compressor, its driving motor and one condenser. Where a secondary refrigerant, such as brine, is employed, the unit is also to include an evaporator (secondary refrigerant cooler) and a secondary refrigerant pump.

2.6.2 Two or more compressors driven by a single motor, or having only one condenser or evaporator/secondary refrigerant cooler, are to be regarded as one unit.

2.6.3 The refrigerating units of a classed provision stores installation are to be completely independent of any refrigerating machinery associated with air conditioning plant, unless full details of any proposal have been submitted and approved.

## 2.7 Design pressures

2.7.1 The design pressure of the system will be regarded as equal to its maximum working pressure.

2.7.2 The maximum working pressure is the maximum permissible pressure within the system (or part system) in operation or at rest. No relief valve is to be set to a pressure higher than the maximum working pressure.

2.7.3 The design pressure of the low pressure side of the system is to be the saturated vapour pressure of the refrigerant at plus 46°C. Due regard is to be taken of defrosting arrangements which may cause a higher pressure to be imposed on the low pressure system.

2.7.4 The minimum design pressure of the high pressure side of the system ( $P_{dh}$ ), is to be  $1,11 \times P_b$ , where  $P_b$  is an allowance for the compressor high pressure cut-out.  $P_b$  is to be at least equal to  $1,11 \times P_a$ , where  $P_a$  is the condenser working pressure, when operating in tropical zones and equates to the saturation pressure at 46°C.

2.7.5 Design pressures (bar g) applicable to refrigerants are to be not less than the values given in Table 3.2.1 when condensers are sea-water cooled. The design pressure for other refrigerants is to be agreed with LR.

**Table 3.2.1 Pressure limits**

| Refrigerant | Pressure (bar g) |      |
|-------------|------------------|------|
|             | High             | Low  |
| R-22        | 20,6             | 16,7 |
| R-290       | 18,1             | 14,7 |
| R-600a      | 6,4              | 5,2  |
| R-134a      | 13,4             | 10,9 |
| R-407C      | 23,5             | 19,0 |
| R-410A      | 34,5             | 28,0 |
| R-507A      | 25,3             | 20,5 |
| R-404A      | 24,8             | 20,1 |

### NOTE

In view of increasing world-wide restrictive legislation and phasing out of the refrigerant R-22, it is recommended that this refrigerant should not be used in any new installation.

## 2.8 Room insulation

2.8.1 Where applicable, having regard to their location and environmental conditions, insulation materials are to be:

- suitably resistant to fire;
- suitably resistant to the spreading of flame;
- adequately protected against penetration of water vapour; and
- adequately protected against mechanical damage.

2.8.2 The potential for smoke generation and its toxicity is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part B, Regulation 6.

# Provision Refrigeration

# Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 3

Sections 2 & 3

2.8.3 Where the *in situ* foam type of insulation is proposed, full details of the process are to be submitted for approval.

## Section 3 Refrigerating machinery and refrigerant storage compartment arrangements

### 3.1 General

3.1.1 Refrigerating machinery is to be located in a well ventilated compartment. In general, the arrangements are to be such that all components of the refrigerating machinery can be readily opened up for inspection or replacement. Space is to be provided for the withdrawal and renewal of the tubes in 'shell-and-tube' type evaporators (secondary refrigerant coolers) and condensers. Proposals for alternative arrangements are to be submitted to LR for consideration.

3.1.2 Refrigerating machinery using toxic and/or flammable refrigerants is to be located outside the main machinery space in a separate gastight compartment.

3.1.3 Where the refrigerating machinery is located in a separate gastight compartment, outside the main machinery space, this compartment is to be equipped with effective mechanical ventilation to provide 30 air changes per hour based upon the total volume of the space. The mechanical ventilation is to have two main controls, one of which is to be operable from a place outside the compartment.

3.1.4 Openings for pipes, electrical cables and other fittings in the bulkheads and deck are to be fitted with gastight seals.

### 3.2 Gas storage compartments

3.2.1 Portable steel cylinders containing reserve supplies of refrigerant are to be stored in the refrigerating machinery space or a well ventilated compartment reserved solely for this purpose.

3.2.2 The storage compartment is to be provided with a mechanical ventilation system providing 10 air changes per hour.

3.2.3 The storage compartment is to be provided with a suitable vapour detection system.

3.2.4 The storage compartment is to be provided with suitable water drainage arrangements not connected with the main machinery spaces.

3.2.5 Steel storage cylinders are to be of an approved type and are to be filled to a level suitable for an ambient temperature of plus 46°C.

3.2.6 The storage compartment is to be provided with racks to facilitate secure stowage of the cylinders.

### 3.3 Pressure testing at manufacturers' works

3.3.1 Components intended for use with a primary refrigerant are to be subject to strength and leak pressure tests as detailed in Table 3.3.1.

**Table 3.3.1 Test pressure**

| Component                                                 | Test pressure, (bar g) |              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------|
|                                                           | Strength test          | Leakage test |
| 1. Pressure vessels                                       | See Vol 2, Pt 8, Ch 2  | 1,0p         |
| 2. Compressor cylinders/crankcase/casing                  | 1,5p                   | 1,0p         |
| 3. Valves and fittings                                    | 2,0p                   | 1,0p         |
| 4. Pressure piping, fabricated headers, air coolers, etc. | 1,5p                   | 1,0p         |
| NOTE<br>p is the design pressure as defined in 2.7.       |                        |              |

3.3.2 Component strength pressure tests are to be hydraulic or, where suitable safety measures are taken, may be pneumatic. The latter is to be carried out with a suitable dry inert gas.

3.3.3 Component leakage pressure tests are to be carried out only after completion of satisfactory strength pressure tests. Pneumatic pressure is to be applied using a suitable dry inert gas.

3.3.4 Components for use with a secondary refrigerant or cooling water are to be hydraulically tested to 1,5 times the design pressure, which in no case is to be less than 3,5 bar g.

### 3.4 Pressure test after installation on board ship

3.4.1 For primary refrigerant piping welded in place, strength pressure tests of the welds are to be carried out at a test pressure of 1,5p. This will normally take the form of a pneumatic test since hydraulic testing media such as water are not acceptable due to their incompatibility with the primary refrigerants and the difficulty of removing all traces from a completed system.

3.4.2 Pneumatic pressure tests are to be carried out using a suitable inert gas. All pneumatic tests are potentially dangerous and due precautions are to be observed.



# Provision Refrigeration

# Volume 3, Part 2, Chapter 3

Sections 3, 4 & 5

3.4.3 Where pneumatic tests are prohibited by relevant authorities, the tests required by 3.3.1 and 3.3.2 may be omitted provided non-destructive examination has been carried out by an approved operator to the satisfaction of LR and in accordance with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 3,6.

3.4.4 After completion of the test required by 3.3.1, 3.3.2 or 3.3.3, a leak pressure test is to be carried out using a suitable inert gas at a pressure equal to the design pressure, in the presence of the Surveyor.

3.4.5 Secondary refrigerant piping welded in place is to be hydraulically tested to 1,5 times the design pressure, which in no case is to be less than 3,5 bar g.

## ■ Section 4 Refrigerant detection systems

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 A fixed refrigerant detection system is to be provided in the refrigerating machinery compartment or space and ventilation outlet ducts when the ventilation system is shared with other compartments.

4.1.2 The alarm system is to comply with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 9, Ch 1 and, as a minimum requirement, the system is to activate at a low-level concentration to give warning of refrigerant leaks, and a high-level concentration corresponding to the refrigerant's safe occupational level.

4.1.3 Detection equipment is to be so designed that it may be readily tested and calibrated, and failure of the equipment is to initiate an alarm.

4.1.4 The location of the detectors is to be determined relative to the layouts of the individual compartments and machinery spaces and is to be indicated on the plan submission.

4.1.5 Audible and visual alarms are to be activated, located both inside and outside the affected space. The alarms are to be readily identifiable and be visible and audible in all locations within the space housing the refrigeration equipment.

## ■ Section 5 Control and monitoring and electrical power arrangements

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 The control engineering arrangements are to comply with Vol 2, Pt 9, Ch 1 as applicable.

5.1.2 The equipment used in provision refrigeration systems is to be provided with local control and monitoring arrangements.

5.1.3 Where isolation of equipment or systems can be carried out, means of indicating the status of isolation is to be provided at positions where the equipment and system can be operated and monitored.

5.1.4 Instrumentation to indicate the operational status of running and any standby equipment is to be provided locally and at any control station.

5.1.5 All cooling and secondary refrigerant pumps are to be provided with an indication of discharge pressure and a low discharge pressure alarm at each control station.

5.1.6 The power to all independently driven ventilation fans is to be capable of being stopped from position(s) outside the fire boundary which will always be readily accessible in the event of fire occurring in any space, as well as from the local control panel.

5.1.7 Electrical engineering arrangements are to comply with Vol 2, Pt 10, Ch 1.

5.1.8 Refrigeration compressors are to be provided with the following instrumentation and automatic shut-downs:

- (a) Indication of suction pressure (saturated temperature), including intermediate stage when applicable.
- (b) Indication of discharge pressure (saturated temperature), including intermediate stage when applicable.
- (c) Indication of lubricating oil pressure.
- (d) Indication of cumulative running hours.
- (e) Automatic shut-down in the event of low lubricating oil pressure.
- (f) Automatic shut-down in the event of high discharge pressure which is to operate at a pressure in excess of normal operating pressure but not greater than 0,9 of the maximum working pressure.
- (g) Automatic shut-down in the event of a low suction pressure.

5.1.9 For refrigeration compressors greater than 25 kW, the following instrumentation, additional to that required by 5.1.8, is to be provided:

- (a) Indication of lubricating oil temperature.
- (b) Indication of cooling water outlet temperature.
- (c) Indication of cumulative running hours (reciprocating compressors).
- (d) Indication of suction and discharge temperatures.

5.1.10 Alarms are to be initiated in the event of the following fault conditions with refrigeration compressors:

- (a) High discharge pressure.
- (b) Low suction pressure.
- (c) Low oil pressure.
- (d) High discharge temperature.
- (e) High oil temperature.
- (f) Motor shut-down.

5.1.11 Refrigeration plants are to be provided with the following alarms as applicable:

- (a) Failure of condenser cooling water pumps.
- (b) High condenser cooling water outlet temperature.
- (c) Failure of air cooler fans.
- (d) High and low refrigerated air delivery temperatures.
- (e) High secondary refrigerant temperatures.
- (f) Failure of secondary refrigerant pump.
- (g) Low level in secondary refrigerant header tank.

## ■ Section 6 Personnel safety equipment and systems

### 6.1 Personnel safety equipment

6.1.1 Access doors to the refrigerated spaces are to open outwards and an external locking arrangement is to be provided to prevent unauthorised access.

6.1.2 Access ways to the refrigerated spaces are to be designed to facilitate escape in emergencies, and the removal of stretcher-borne personnel.

6.1.3 Access ways and refrigerated compartments are to be provided with an independent lighting system in accordance with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 10, Ch 1,5,7.2 and 5.7.4, with the means of locking the switches in the 'on' position.

6.1.4 Arrangements are to be such that means of both opening the room door(s) and sounding the alarm required by 6.2.2 from inside refrigerated spaces are provided.

### 6.2 Personnel warning systems

6.2.1 A system to monitor the well-being of crew members entering refrigerated spaces is to be provided.

6.2.2 The system is to be such that at a predetermined time, after initiation, the crew member(s) receives warning that the system is to alarm and must indicate their well-being by accepting the warning.

6.2.3 The system is to be designed and arranged such that only an authorised person has access for enabling and disabling it and setting the appropriate intervals, and such that it cannot be operated in an unauthorised manner.

6.2.4 It is to be possible to acknowledge the warning by means of illuminated switches situated near the access doors or hatches of each refrigerated space or chambers within the space.

6.2.5 In the event that the crew member(s) fails to respond and accept the warning within an agreed specified time, the system is immediately to initiate an alarm on the bridge and at the main control station, or subsidiary control stations as appropriate. Manual initiation of the alarm system from the refrigerated spaces is to be possible at any time.

6.2.6 The system is to comply with the relevant requirements of Vol 2, Pt 9, Ch 1.

## ■ Section 7 Testing and trials

### 7.1 Testing

7.1.1 The requirements of the Rules relating to testing of pressure vessels, piping and related fittings including hydraulic testing are applicable. See Vol 2, Pt 8, Ch 2,10 and Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 1,16.

7.1.2 On completion, tanks and reservoirs for service and storage of system fluids are to be tested by a head of water equal to the maximum to which the tanks may be subjected, but not less than 2,5 m above the crown of the tank.

7.1.3 After installation on board, piping systems together with associated fittings that are under internal pressure, are to be subjected to a running test at the intended maximum working pressure.

7.1.4 Testing is to cover the following items:

- (a) Verification of control, alarm, safety systems.
- (b) Tests simulating failure of refrigeration equipment to verify correct functioning of alarms and systems in service.
- (c) Verification of accuracy, calibration and functioning of temperature control for refrigeration systems.

### 7.2 Type testing

7.2.1 Evidence that the required performance of refrigeration systems, pump and fan equipment is capable of being maintained under ambient and inclination operating conditions defined in Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 2,4.4 and 4.5 is to be provided by the manufacturer.

### 7.3 Trials

7.3.1 Trials are to be carried out to demonstrate that the capability of the provision refrigeration systems meets the design statement. The trials are as far as practicable to be representative of the actual conditions to be encountered in service.

# Rules and Regulations for the Classification of Naval Ships

Volume 3

Part 3 Safety Equipment and Arrangements

January 2013

---

|             |                  |                                                |
|-------------|------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| PART        | 1                | ADDITIONAL SEA-GOING FEATURES                  |
| PART        | 2                | ADDITIONAL ENVIRONMENT AND SAFETY FEATURES     |
| <b>PART</b> | <b>3</b>         | <b>SAFETY EQUIPMENT AND ARRANGEMENTS</b>       |
|             | <b>Chapter 1</b> | <b>General Requirements</b>                    |
|             | <b>2</b>         | <b>Fire Protection</b>                         |
|             | <b>3</b>         | <b>Escape and Emergency Access</b>             |
|             | <b>4</b>         | <b>Life-Saving and Evacuation Arrangements</b> |
|             | <b>5</b>         | <b>Safety of Navigation and Communication</b>  |
|             | <b>6</b>         | <b>Pollution Prevention</b>                    |

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013. All rights reserved.

Except as permitted under current legislation no part of this work may be photocopied, stored in a retrieval system, published, performed in public, adapted, broadcast, transmitted, recorded or reproduced in any form or by any means, without the prior permission of the copyright owner. Enquiries should be addressed to Lloyd's Register Group Limited, 71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS.

---

|                |          |                                                                |
|----------------|----------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>GENERAL REQUIREMENTS</b>                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>Scope</b>                                                   |
|                | 1.1      | Application                                                    |
|                | 1.2      | Background                                                     |
|                | 1.3      | Scope of application                                           |
|                | 1.4      | Topics within this Part of the Rules                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>General information</b>                                     |
|                | 2.1      | Responsibilities                                               |
|                | 2.2      | Appraisal and review                                           |
|                | 2.3      | Plans and information                                          |
|                | 2.4      | Inspection and survey                                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Definitions</b>                                             |
|                | 3.1      | Safety equipment and arrangements                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Integration for EER notation</b>                            |
|                | 4.1      | General                                                        |
|                | 4.2      | System integration                                             |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Acceptance criteria</b>                                     |
|                | 5.1      | General                                                        |
|                | 5.2      | Design                                                         |
|                | 5.3      | Construction                                                   |
|                | 5.4      | Installation/testing                                           |
|                | 5.5      | Trials                                                         |
|                | 5.6      | Through life operations                                        |
|                | 5.7      | Modifications                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Route to conformance</b>                                    |
|                | 6.1      | Route to conformance                                           |
|                | 6.2      | Alternative arrangements and calculation methods               |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>FIRE PROTECTION</b>                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>Scope</b>                                                   |
|                | 1.1      | Philosophy                                                     |
|                | 1.2      | Application                                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Classification requirements for fire protection systems</b> |
|                | 2.1      | General requirements – SOLAS                                   |
|                | 2.2      | General requirements – NSC                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Plans and particulars</b>                                   |
|                | 3.1      | Concept statement                                              |
|                | 3.2      | Design disclosure                                              |
|                | 3.3      | Plans                                                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                    |
|                | 4.1      | The Rules                                                      |
|                | 4.2      | Fire protection objectives                                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Fire prevention</b>                                         |
|                | 5.1      | Fire prevention objective                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Fire detection</b>                                          |
|                | 6.1      | Fire detection objective                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Fire extinction</b>                                         |
|                | 7.1      | Fire extinguishing objective                                   |

---

|                |           |                                                                    |
|----------------|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b>  | <b>Fire and by-product containment</b>                             |
|                | 8.1       | Fire and by-product containment objective                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>9</b>  | <b>Personnel fire hazards</b>                                      |
|                | 9.1       | Personnel hazard objective                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>10</b> | <b>System interaction</b>                                          |
|                | 10.1      | System interaction objective                                       |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>11</b> | <b>Command and control</b>                                         |
|                | 11.1      | Command and control objective                                      |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>12</b> | <b>Structural integrity</b>                                        |
|                | 12.1      | Structural integrity objective                                     |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>ESCAPE AND EMERGENCY ACCESS</b>                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>Scope</b>                                                       |
|                | 1.1       | Philosophy                                                         |
|                | 1.2       | Application                                                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>Classification requirements for escape and emergency access</b> |
|                | 2.1       | General requirements – SOLAS                                       |
|                | 2.2       | General requirements – NSC                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>Plans and particulars</b>                                       |
|                | 3.1       | Concept statement                                                  |
|                | 3.2       | Design disclosure                                                  |
|                | 3.3       | Plans                                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>General requirements</b>                                        |
|                | 4.1       | The Rules                                                          |
|                | 4.2       | Escape of personnel and emergency access arrangements objectives   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b>  | <b>Escape of personnel</b>                                         |
|                | 5.1       | Escape objective                                                   |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b>  | <b>Emergency access</b>                                            |
|                | 6.1       | Emergency access objective                                         |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>LIFE-SAVING AND EVACUATION ARRANGEMENTS</b>                     |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b>  | <b>Scope</b>                                                       |
|                | 1.1       | Philosophy                                                         |
|                | 1.2       | Application                                                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b>  | <b>Requirements for life-saving and evacuation arrangements</b>    |
|                | 2.1       | General requirements – SOLAS                                       |
|                | 2.2       | General requirements – NSC                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b>  | <b>Plans and particulars</b>                                       |
|                | 3.1       | Concept statement                                                  |
|                | 3.2       | Design disclosure                                                  |
|                | 3.3       | Plans                                                              |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b>  | <b>General requirements</b>                                        |
|                | 4.1       | The Rules                                                          |
|                | 4.2       | Life-saving and evacuation arrangements objectives                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b>  | <b>Evacuation of personnel</b>                                     |
|                | 5.1       | Evacuation objective                                               |

---

|                |          |                                                                                       |
|----------------|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Personnel protection</b>                                                           |
|                | 6.1      | Personnel protection objective                                                        |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Rescue of personnel</b>                                                            |
|                | 7.1      | Rescue of personnel objective                                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>8</b> | <b>Command and control</b>                                                            |
|                | 8.1      | Command and control objective                                                         |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>SAFETY OF NAVIGATION AND COMMUNICATION</b>                                         |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>Scope</b>                                                                          |
|                | 1.1      | Philosophy                                                                            |
|                | 1.2      | Application                                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Classification requirements for safety of navigation and communication systems</b> |
|                | 2.1      | General requirements                                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Plans and particulars</b>                                                          |
|                | 3.1      | Design statement                                                                      |
|                | 3.2      | Engineering and safety justification                                                  |
|                | 3.3      | Plans                                                                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>General requirements</b>                                                           |
|                | 4.1      | The Rules                                                                             |
|                | 4.2      | Safety of navigation and communications objectives                                    |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Safety of communication</b>                                                        |
|                | 5.1      | Communication objective                                                               |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>Safety of navigation</b>                                                           |
|                | 6.1      | Navigation objective                                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>7</b> | <b>Safety of navigating and communication equipment arrangements</b>                  |
|                | 7.1      | Equipment arrangements objective                                                      |
| <b>CHAPTER</b> | <b>6</b> | <b>POLLUTION PREVENTION</b>                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>1</b> | <b>Scope</b>                                                                          |
|                | 1.1      | Philosophy                                                                            |
|                | 1.2      | Application                                                                           |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>2</b> | <b>Requirements for pollution prevention arrangements</b>                             |
|                | 2.1      | General requirements                                                                  |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>3</b> | <b>Plans and particulars</b>                                                          |
|                | 3.1      | Design statement                                                                      |
|                | 3.2      | Design declaration                                                                    |
|                | 3.3      | Plans                                                                                 |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>4</b> | <b>Prevention of pollution by oil and garbage</b>                                     |
|                | 4.1      | Applicable Regulations of MARPOL Annex I (Oil Pollution)                              |
|                | 4.2      | Applicable Regulations of MARPOL Annex V (Garbage Pollution)                          |
| <b>Section</b> | <b>5</b> | <b>Prevention of pollution by sewage and pollution of the air from ships</b>          |
|                | 5.1      | Regulations of MARPOL Annex IV (Sewage Pollution)                                     |
|                | 5.2      | Regulations of MARPOL Annex VI (Pollution of the Air)                                 |





# General Requirements

# Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 1

Section 1

## Section

|   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 | <b>Scope</b>                        |
| 2 | <b>General information</b>          |
| 3 | <b>Definitions</b>                  |
| 4 | <b>Integration for EER notation</b> |
| 5 | <b>Acceptance criteria</b>          |
| 6 | <b>Route to conformance</b>         |

## ■ Section 1 Scope

### 1.1 Application

1.1.1 The Chapters in this Part of the Rules define the requirements for the design and service life of safety equipment and arrangements. The Chapters are provided for the purpose of assessing that the levels of safety (of crew and embarked personnel) and pollution prevention on board a naval ship are to a standard which is acceptable to the Naval Authority and Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as LR). The Rules provide a standard that can be considered to be as far as reasonably practicable in accord with the applicable IMO International Conventions but take due cognisance of military application. They also provide a methodology for assessing the suitability of designs that deviate from generally accepted practice.

1.1.2 In general, a Class Notation contained in this Part of the Rules will only be assigned where the vessel has been assigned an **LMC** notation, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2. However, where a Certificate of Compliance is sought, it may be demonstrated that an equivalent provision of equipment and arrangements is provided on board the vessel. In addition, the equipment and arrangements are also to be in compliance with the applicable Sections of Volumes 1 and 2 of these Rules. Other acceptable standards such as Naval Defence Standards or *ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code* (NSC) may be used subject to satisfactory review by LR.

1.1.3 Attention is also to be given to any relevant requirements of the Naval Authority.

1.1.4 These Rules are applicable only to ships carrying crew and embarked personnel. The carriage of passengers is considered novel for most naval ships and will generally only be undertaken during emergency situations or where specially agreed by the Navy. The carriage of passengers is therefore outside the scope of these Rules. Special consideration will be given to arrangements where passengers are carried and will be subject to agreement by the Naval Authority.

1.1.5 The interpretation of the Rules is the sole responsibility, and at the sole discretion, of LR.

1.1.6 Where SOLAS requirements have been identified as a route to satisfying goals associated with objectives, these are for guidance purposes. Where there is no specific SOLAS guidance provided in the Rules, the designer can propose solutions to LR that embrace the recognised practices that are consistent with the overall SOLAS philosophy.

### 1.2 Background

1.2.1 These Rules provide a framework and methodology for demonstrating that levels of safety and pollution prevention are to a standard acceptable to the Naval Authority and LR. The application of these Rules is not to compromise the levels of safety afforded to naval ships through the application of current regulatory regimes and military practices. The Rules recognise military design, construction, installation, testing, trials and through life operation and take due account of the military function of naval ships. The Rules provide a series of optional class notations that can be assigned to designs complying with relevant Parts of the Rules.

1.2.2 This Part of the Rules has been developed from the relevant requirements of:

- *International Convention Safety of Life At Sea* (SOLAS); and
- *International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships 1973* (MARPOL); and
- *ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code* (NSC), taking due consideration of military philosophy.

1.2.3 Military philosophy addresses ship survivability and system degradation that are two key areas that commonly affect the application of merchant ship statutory requirements and these have been recognised in the Chapters applicable to different Class notations.

1.2.4 Modern naval ships are commonly required to have multi-purpose roles and extensive operational capabilities and it is necessary to ensure that the equipment and arrangements on board do not compromise the roles within which the ship may be required to operate.

1.2.5 The assessment of the acceptability of equipment and arrangements required by these Rules is to ensure that a single failure of equipment will not render the system inoperable. Where this cannot be achieved, there is to be sufficient engineering evidence that the likelihood of failure occurring is extremely remote.

1.2.6 Levels of manning, personnel training and qualifications are not within the scope of these Rules; however, these will be given consideration when an alternative design approval is sought.

# General Requirements

# Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 1

Sections 1 &amp; 2

## 1.3 Scope of application

1.3.1 For the purposes of demonstrating compliance with these Rules, two alternatives are available:

- (a) **Certificate of Compliance**, which provides evidence that the arrangements on board meet the requirements in the relevant Section of the Rules. This will be confirmed by appropriate design appraisal followed by inspection and testing at survey. Designs other than those prescribed by the Rules will be recorded for information purposes by way of an addition to the certificate as an Annex. Where a defect, blemish or anomaly is noted at survey, and is not considered to require remedial attention at that time, an Annex will be added to the certificate for information purposes.
- (b) **Class Notation**, which indicates that the arrangements on board meet the requirements in the relevant Sections of the Rules and that a periodic survey regime of the equipment and systems has been established for the lifetime of the ship. When at any survey it is found that any damage, defect or breakdown is of such a nature that it does not require immediate permanent repair, but is sufficiently serious to require rectification by a prescribed date in order to maintain class, a suitable Condition of Class is imposed. The condition of class will be assigned with a date by which the repair is to be completed. Deviations from design standards will be recorded for information purposes as an Annex in the classification records. Likewise, where a defect, blemish or anomaly is noted at survey, and is not considered to require remedial attention at that time, an Annex will be included in the classification records for information purposes.

1.3.2 These Rules are not intended to apply to ships under construction or upkeep where additional personnel and equipment may be present on board the ship. In general, the Rules are only intended to apply where the ship is under naval command.

## 1.4 Topics within this Part of the Rules

1.4.1 **EER** (Escape, emergency access, evacuation and rescue). This notation will be assigned to naval ships which demonstrate that the arrangements are in accordance with the requirements of these Rules or are to a standard which meets the Objectives specified in these Rules. For a ship to be eligible for **EER** notation, it is to be demonstrated that it is fully compliant with the requirements of Chapters 2, 3 and 4 of this Part of the Rules, i.e., **FIRE**, **ESC** and **LSAE** notations are to be capable of being assigned to the vessel. System integration is to be in accordance with Section 4 of this Chapter.

1.4.2 **FIRE** – Fire Protection. This notation will be assigned to naval ships which demonstrate that the provision of fire protection equipment and arrangements on board a vessel comply with the requirements of Chapter 2 of this Part of the Rules.

1.4.3 **ESC** – Escape and Emergency Access. This notation will be assigned to naval ships which demonstrate that the escape arrangements and emergency access on board comply with the requirements of Chapter 3 of this Part of the Rules. Where the requirements of the NSC are to be applied for an **ESC★★** notation, the **LSAE★★** notation must also be applied.

1.4.4 **LSAE** – Life Saving and Evacuation Arrangements. This notation will be assigned to naval ships which demonstrate that the life saving, evacuation and rescue arrangements on board comply with the requirements of Chapter 4 of this Part of the Rules. Where the requirements of the NSC are to be applied for an **LSAE★★** notation, the **ESC★★** notation must also be applied.

1.4.5 **SNC** – Safety of Navigation and Communication. This notation will be assigned to naval ships which demonstrate that the navigation and communication equipment on board comply with the requirements of Chapter 5 of this Part of the Rules.

1.4.6 **POL** – Pollution Prevention. This notation will be assigned to naval ships which demonstrate that the pollution prevention measures on board comply with the requirements of Chapter 6 of this Part of the Rules.

1.4.7 **Star Endorsements (★)**. All Class Notations that are available in this Part of the Rules will be eligible for a 'Star' endorsement where the arrangements on board are in accordance with stated National Administration requirements. This does not necessarily denote automatic endorsement by the National Administration.

1.4.8 **Double Star Endorsements (★★)**. All Class Notations that are available in Chapters 2, 3 and 4 of this Part of the Rules will be eligible for a 'Double Star' endorsement where the arrangements on board are in accordance with stated Naval Authority requirements and *ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code* (NSC). This does not necessarily denote automatic endorsement by the Naval Authority.

## Section 2 General information

### 2.1 Responsibilities

2.1.1 The **Naval Authority** is responsible for defining the regulations and requirements associated with the design, procurement, installation and support of equipment and systems within the scope of application of this Part of the Rules. See Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,2.2.6 for definition of Naval Authority.

2.1.2 **Lloyd's Register** (Classification Society) is responsible for confirming and accepting that equipment and arrangements required by the applicable Rules and requirements associated with a particular class notation are satisfied. See Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,1.3.1 regarding interpretation of the Rules.

# General Requirements

# Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 1

## Section 2

2.1.3 The **National Administration** is responsible for confirming that the equipment and arrangements are acceptable to them for recognition of the requirements associated with a particular class notation with a Star (★) endorsement, see 1.4.7.

2.1.4 The **Naval Authority** is responsible for confirming that the equipment and arrangements are acceptable to them for recognition of the requirements associated with a particular class notation with a Double Star (★★) endorsement, see 1.4.8.

2.1.5 The **designer** is responsible for co-ordination of all matters relating to demonstrating compliance with the Rules and any requirements of the Naval Authority and National Administration.

2.1.6 The **Owner** has ultimate responsibility for ensuring a safety standard acceptable to the Naval Authority is being applied, see also Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2, 1.4.

## 2.2 Appraisal and review

2.2.1 Prior to the formal appraisal process being commenced a concept statement is to be submitted and agreed with LR, see 2.3.2.

2.2.2 A design disclosure is to be submitted to LR for appraisal as required by the applicable parts of the Rules.

2.2.3 All systems are to be constructed and assembled from equipment suitable for its intended purpose and acceptable to the National Administration and/or the Naval Authority where a 'Star' or 'Double Star' endorsement is required. Such equipment will typically have a relevant Type Approval Certificate or an EC Marine Equipment Directive Certificate issued by LR or an organisation acceptable to LR. Equipment with other certification may be acceptable as an alternative subject to a satisfactory review by LR. Details will be noted as an Annex in the applicable certification or class documentation, see 1.3.1.

## 2.3 Plans and information

2.3.1 The ship's civil and military operational profile specifying the functionality and capability in defined operating and foreseeable failure conditions of the ship is to be submitted. This is to be agreed between the designer and Owner/Operator.

2.3.2 A Concept Statement detailing the capability and functionality of the system under consideration detailing defined civil and military operating and emergency conditions is to be submitted. The Concept Statement is to include but is not limited to:

- (a) Required Certificates of Compliance or Class Notations.
- (b) Description of the ship's operational capabilities, (Concept of Operations) to include any defined military survivability requirements.
- (c) Details of the intended mode of operation of the equipment/system to include environmental conditions.

- (d) Manning levels and operator competencies/authorisations required.
- (e) Indication of whether or not alternative design assessment is being sought if the proposed design deviate from the specified guidance identified in these Rules.

2.3.3 In addition to the submission of an acceptable Concept Statement, a more detailed Design Disclosure is required for submission to and acceptance by LR. The Design Disclosure is to include, but is not limited to:

- (a) A statement of all design standards used in the design, manufacture, installation and testing of safety and pollution prevention systems.
- (b) A proposed list of all surveyable items together with any additional recommendations from equipment/component manufacturers. Evidence is also to be provided that all surveyable items of equipment have approval certificates.
- (c) Evidence of compliance with the Objectives and Goals defined in the Chapter of the Rules applicable to that system. This may be in the form of compliance with any specified guidance/technical references, Concessions, Alternative Design Justification Reports or an acceptable combination of all three, see Section 6.
- (d) Details of the hazard identification process and Class related hazards are to be submitted. A hazard identification system is to be in place at the design stage whereby all hazards identified are recorded. If application of these Rules has been identified as a hazard avoidance/mitigation measure then details are to be submitted.
- (e) Descriptions of designated places of safety and safe havens, etc., as required by the relevant Chapters of the Rules.
- (f) Details of the proposed test procedures required to demonstrate functionality at the time of commissioning for all systems covered by these Rules.

The details of the Design Disclosure are subject to review and acceptance by LR. A letter of acceptance will be issued by LR after satisfactory review of the Design Disclosure.

2.3.4 Where a Naval Authority has approved equipment, systems and arrangements which are usually subject to these Rules for Classification purposes, full details are to be submitted to LR for information. Details are to include information on the equipment/arrangements, certification and test reports.

## 2.4 Inspection and survey

2.4.1 The requirements for inspection and survey are such that it is to be demonstrated to LR that the arrangements on board the ship are in accordance with the description within those detailed in the Design Disclosure.

2.4.2 Where a Class Notation is requested, a survey regime is to be established to ensure that the arrangements on board are maintained to an acceptable standard as long as the vessel is to be assigned a particular Class Notation. All surveyable items as accepted in the Design Disclosure are to be included in the survey regime.

## Section 3 Definitions

### 3.1 Safety equipment and arrangements

**3.1.1 Escape.** Movement of personnel to a designated place of safety on board. (This may be co-ordinated movement or the action of individuals. Since this is mainly concerned with the flow of personnel through the ship it may also be taken to include normal access).

**3.1.2 Evacuation.** Movement of all personnel to a survival craft in case of an emergency.

**3.1.3 Rescue.** Process by which personnel are taken to an ultimate point of safety. (This definition does not include the ability to conduct Search and Rescue but covers the ability to locate and rescue personnel in an emergency. (Search is covered by the **SNC** notation, see Chapter 5).

**3.1.4 Ultimate point(s) of safety** is/are to be declared in the Design Disclosure, and can, amongst other things, be another vessel, aircraft or dry land.

**3.1.5 Designated place(s) of safety** is/are to be declared in the Design Disclosure. These are to be places on board the vessel which may be reasonably expected to be used as platforms for evacuation following escape.

**3.1.6 Emergency access** arrangements allowing for movement of personnel within the ship for the purposes of damage control and fire-fighting.

**3.1.7 Alternative design and arrangements** mean safety and pollution prevention measures which deviate from any prescriptive requirement(s) of these Rules, but are acceptable to LR to satisfy the objective(s) and the functional requirements of the relevant Chapter. The term includes a wide range of measures, including alternative shipboard structures and systems based on novel or unique designs, as well as traditional shipboard structures and systems that are installed in alternative arrangements or configurations. Depending on the nature and extent of the deviation, it will be accepted in accordance with 6.2.

**3.1.8 Design hazard** means an engineering description of a hazard which is identified at the design stage.

**3.1.9 Design scenario** means a set of conditions and incidents which may reasonably be expected to occur during the life of a system. These conditions and incidences are to be used in identifying the design hazards.

**3.1.10 Functional requirements** explain, in general terms, what function the ship and shipboard systems/equipment must provide in order to meet the safety objectives of these Rules.

**3.1.11 Hazard identification** is the process whereby all hazards identified at the design stage are catalogued.

**3.1.12 Locating signals** are radio transmissions intended to facilitate the finding of a mobile unit in distress or the location of survivors. These signals include those transmitted by searching units, and those transmitted by the mobile unit in distress, by survival craft, by float-free EPIRBs (Emergency Position-Indicating Radio Beacons), by satellite EPIRBs and by search-and-rescue radar transponders to assist the researching units.

**3.1.13 Performance criteria** are measurable quantities stated in engineering terms to be used to judge the adequacy of trial designs.

**3.1.14 Personnel:**

- (a) **Crew.** All personnel on board the ship for its operational role. This includes personnel for navigation and maintenance of the ship, its machinery and weapons/ aircraft systems. Naval trainees on board for the purpose of training in naval operations identified in the previous sentence are also within the scope of the definition of crew.
- (b) **Embarked personnel.** Additional personnel other than crew, embarked on the ship for a specific task or purpose or for military purposes. Such personnel may include additional specialised maintenance personnel for ship systems, technicians on trials during normal operation, aircraft crew, and military personnel on a mission which may be any naval related activity under naval command including trials, training, humanitarian aid and military activities.
- (c) **Passengers** is every person other than the crew and embarked personnel.

**3.1.15 Safety margin** means adjustments made to allow for uncertainties in the methods and assumptions used to evaluate an alternative design, see 3.1.7, e.g., in the determination of performance criteria or in the engineering models used to assess the consequences of a hazard.

**3.1.16 Sensitivity analysis** means an analysis to determine the effect of changes in individual input parameters on the results of a given model or calculation method.

**3.1.17 Survival craft.** A survival craft is a craft capable of sustaining the lives of personnel in distress from the time of evacuating the ship. This may include supporting ships and aircraft.

**3.1.18 Gross tonnage (GT)** of a ship is to be determined for the purposes of these Rules, by the following formula:

$$GT = K_1 V$$

where

$V$  = total volume of all enclosed spaces in the ship in cubic metres and includes gun turrets, radar domes, masts, etc.

$$K_1 = 0,2 + 0,02 \log_{10} V.$$

**3.1.19 Fire zones** are those sections into which the hull, superstructure and deckhouses are divided by fire resistant divisions. Fire resistant divisions are those which are installed and/or protected for the purpose of restricting the spread of fire.

# General Requirements

# Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 1

Sections 4, 5 &amp; 6

## ■ Section 4 Integration for EER notation

### 4.1 General

4.1.1 The **EER** notation will be assigned to ships which demonstrate compliance with all the requirements for **FIRE**, **ESC** and **LSAE** notations.

4.1.2 In addition to the requirements of 4.1.1, the systems and their arrangements are to be integrated in such a manner so as to support safe and effective task performance. The systems are to be integrated in accordance with the requirements of 4.2.

### 4.2 System integration

4.2.1 System integration is to be managed by a single designated party, and is to be carried out in accordance with a defined procedure, agreed between the designer and the Owner/Operator.

4.2.2 The procedure is to identify the roles, responsibilities and requirements of all parties involved.

4.2.3 Safety systems are to be designed, as far as is practicable, so that their integration with other systems will not degrade the performance of any other system.

4.2.4 Where the integration involves control functions for essential services or safety functions, a robust system analysis procedure, such as a Failure Modes and Effects Analysis, is to be used to demonstrate that the integrated system will not render essential services inoperable as a result of single item failure.

## ■ Section 5 Acceptance criteria

### 5.1 General

5.1.1 The acceptance criteria ensure conformity of safety and pollution prevention systems to the Provisions of Classification, see Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 1,2, of LR's Rules and Regulations and specified Standards or Codes.

5.1.2 The route to conformance detailed in Section 6 provides details on the process for demonstrating that equipment and systems are acceptable to LR.

5.1.3 The acceptance criteria of safety and pollution prevention systems extend over the full lifecycle of the systems.

### 5.2 Design

5.2.1 The design of safety and pollution prevention systems is to be in accordance with these Rules.

### 5.3 Construction

5.3.1 Safety and pollution prevention systems and their components are to be constructed in accordance with standards acceptable to LR and which satisfy the Rule requirements.

### 5.4 Installation/testing

5.4.1 Safety and pollution prevention systems are to be installed in accordance with plans appraised by LR and Rule requirements to the satisfaction of LR.

### 5.5 Trials

5.5.1 Safety and pollution prevention systems are to be tested in accordance with a procedure agreed between LR and the designer.

### 5.6 Through life operations

5.6.1 Safety and pollution prevention systems are to be maintained through life such that the applicable Rule objectives and Provisions of Classification can be ascertained and found in a condition that is acceptable to LR.

### 5.7 Modifications

5.7.1 Details of all modifications to safety and pollution prevention systems and equipment are to be appraised and found acceptable to LR.

## ■ Section 6 Route to conformance

### 6.1 Route to conformance

6.1.1 The Route to conformance in 6.1.3 provides the process for demonstrating that systems and equipment satisfy the acceptance criteria of Section 5.

6.1.2 Conformance with this Part of the Rules is recognised by LR through the assignment of an associated Class Notation or issuing of a Certificate of Compliance.

6.1.3 The route to conformance throughout the life cycle requires the following:

- Design.** Plans are to be appraised by LR when required by the Rules and where a military distinction notation has been requested by the Owner.
- Construction.** To be constructed under survey where required by the Rules.
- Installation.** Systems are to be installed under survey in accordance with plans appraised by LR and with Rule Requirements.
- Trials.** Systems are to be tested under normal working conditions.

- (e) **In Service.** Systems will be subject to survey where required by the Rules or Regulations or where requested by Owners or Naval Authority.
- (f) **Modification.** Details of any modifications are to be appraised and construction, installation and trials are to be carried out under survey when required by the Rules for a Class notation.
- (g) **Decommissioning.** Details are to be submitted for information.

## **6.2 Alternative arrangements and calculation methods**

6.2.1 In addition to cases where direct calculations are specifically required by the Rules, LR will consider alternative arrangements that have been derived by direct calculations in lieu of specific Rule requirements. All direct calculations are to be submitted for examination.

6.2.2 Where items are of a novel or unconventional design or manufacture, it is the responsibility of the designer to demonstrate their suitability and equivalence to the Rule requirements. See *Requirements for Machinery and Engineering Systems of Unconventional Design*, Vol 2, Pt 1, Ch 5.

6.2.3 Alternative arrangements or fittings that are considered to be equivalent to the Rule requirements will be accepted in accordance with Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.11.

---

# Fire Protection

# Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 2

Sections 1, 2 & 3

## Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **Classification requirements for fire protection systems**
- 3 **Plans and particulars**
- 4 **General requirements**
- 5 **Fire prevention**
- 6 **Fire detection**
- 7 **Fire extinction**
- 8 **Fire and by-product containment**
- 9 **Personnel fire hazards**
- 10 **System interaction**
- 11 **Command and control**
- 12 **Structural integrity**

## ■ Section 1 Scope

### 1.1 Philosophy

1.1.1 The purpose of this Chapter is to provide a methodology for confirming that the arrangements on board a naval ship prevent fire occurring and reduce the consequences of damage to the ship or personnel arising from fire.

1.1.2 The objectives of this Chapter as defined in 4.2 are to be realised through the contents of these Rules that aim to prevent the occurrence of fire and ensure any fire will be detected, located, extinguished and contained in its space of origin.

1.1.3 In general, demonstration of satisfactory levels of fire protection will be achieved through compliance with the relevant requirements of these Rules and the documents referenced therein. Where fire protection arrangements deviate from the specified guidance/technical references of this Chapter, they are to be capable of satisfying the functional requirements and fire safety objectives and goals of this Chapter.

1.1.4 This Chapter of the Rules is to be read in conjunction with Chapter 1.

### 1.2 Application

1.2.1 The requirements of this Chapter of the Rules are applicable where a Certificate of Compliance or a Class Notation for Fire Protection, **FIRE**, is requested.

1.2.2 The 'Star endorsement' (★) will be assigned to vessels where the arrangements on board are in accordance with stated National Administration requirements. This does not necessarily denote automatic endorsement by the National Administration.

1.2.3 The 'Double Star endorsement' (★★) will be assigned to vessels where the arrangements on board are in accordance with stated National Administration requirements and *ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code* (NSC) – Chapter VI Fire Safety. This does not necessarily denote automatic endorsement by the National Administration.

## ■ Section 2 Classification requirements for fire protection systems

### 2.1 General requirements – SOLAS

2.1.1 The Fire Protection **FIRE** notation will be assigned to naval vessels which are shown to have levels of fire protection in accordance with Sections 3 to 12 of these Rules.

2.1.2 It is a prerequisite of the **FIRE** notation that an **LMC** notation, or equivalent, has been assigned to the vessel, see Ch 1,1.1.2.

### 2.2 General requirements – NSC

2.2.1 The Fire Protection **FIRE★★** notation will be assigned to vessels which can demonstrate that the levels of fire protection are in accordance with Chapter VI of the NSC.

2.2.2 Where the **FIRE★★** notation is to be assigned, an **LMC** notation must have been assigned, see Ch 1,1.1.2.

## ■ Section 3 Plans and particulars

### 3.1 Concept statement

3.1.1 The design intent of any fire protection system is to be submitted in the form of a Concept Statement and is to include but not limited to:

- (a) The required class notation, **FIRE**, **FIRE★** or **FIRE★★**. If a military distinction (**MD**) notation is required this is also to be declared, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.7.
- (b) A Concept of Operations which is a description of the ship's designed operational role and capabilities and is to include any defined military survivability requirements.
- (c) Details of the intended mode of operation of the fire protection systems/equipment to include environmental conditions together with a description of any fire scenarios and their development and application in the design.
- (d) Manning levels, drills, exercises and operator competencies/authorisations required.

- (e) Indication of whether or not alternative design assessment is being sought, if the proposed design deviate from the specified guidance identified in these Rules.

The concept statement is to be agreed by the designer and Owner/Operator, see also Ch 1,2.3.2.

## 3.2 Design disclosure

3.2.1 In addition to submission of an acceptable Concept Statement, a Design Disclosure is required for submission to and acceptance by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR'). The Design Disclosure is to include, but is not limited to:

- (a) A statement of all design standards used in the design, manufacture, installation and testing of fire protection systems.
- (b) A proposed list of all surveyable items together with any additional recommendations from equipment/component manufacturers. Evidence is also to be provided that all surveyable items of equipment have approval certificates.
- (c) Details of the proposed survey and maintenance regime.
- (d) Evidence of compliance with the Objectives and Goals defined in Sections 5 to 12. This may be in the form of compliance with specified guidance/technical references, Concessions, Alternative Design Justification Reports or an acceptable combination of all three. See also Ch 1,2.3 and 6.
- (e) Details of the Hazard Identification process and Class related hazards are to be submitted. A hazard identification system is to be in place at the design stage whereby all hazards identified are recorded. If application of these Rules has been identified as a hazard avoidance/mitigation measure, then details are to be submitted.
- (f) Details of equipment configurations that are safe for operators and users.
- (g) Details of the proposed test procedure required to demonstrate functionality at the time of commissioning.
- (h) Details of system interaction, see Section 10.

## 3.3 Plans

3.3.1 To support the Design Disclosure and for the purposes of assessing compliance with design requirements, for inspection installation and testing, guidance on the plans and details to be submitted for assessment and review are detailed in 3.3.2 and 3.3.4.

3.3.2 For fire safety arrangements, the following plans and information:

- (a) A statement of the method of structural fire protection adopted and prevention of fire spread.
- (b) A general arrangement plan showing main fire zones, escape routes and the fire compartmentalisation bulkheads and decks within main fire zones, including the machinery spaces, magazine spaces, equipment spaces, vehicle and aircraft spaces, accommodation areas, galleys, paint stores, inflammable substance stores, navigating bridge, weapon/aircraft operating/ control rooms, store rooms, fuel tanks, fire-fighting control room and emergency generators. The plan should also include location of fire command and control stations. Where fire

parties are utilised, the location of each control station in each fire zone is to be indicated.

- (c) A plan showing the details of construction of the fire protection bulkheads and decks and the particulars of any surface laminates employed.
- (d) Copies of certificates of any approval in respect of fire divisions, non-combustible materials and materials having low flame spread properties, etc., which are to be used but have not been approved by LR.
- (e) A plan showing the construction and operation of fire doors.
- (f) A ventilation plan showing ducts, any smoke extractor facilities and any dampers in them, and the position of controls for operation.
- (g) A plan showing the location and arrangement of the emergency stop for flammable oil unit pumps and for closing the valves on pipes from flammable oil tanks.
- (h) An arrangement plan of the fire alarms if applicable.

3.3.3 For fire-extinguishing arrangements, the following plans and information:

- (a) A general arrangement plan showing the location of all the fire-fighting equipment including the fire-extinguishing water system, the fixed fire-extinguishing systems in magazines, vehicle and aircraft spaces, on deck and in the machinery spaces; the disposition of the portable and non-portable extinguishers and the types used; and the position and details of the fire-fighters' outfits.
- (b) A plan showing the layout and construction of the fire extinguishing water system, including all the designated fire pumps, isolating valves, pipe sizes and materials, the international shore connections and the cross-connections to any other systems.
- (c) A plan showing details of each fixed fire-fighting system, including calculations for the quantities of the media used and the proposed rates of application.
- (d) A plan showing any sprinkler and/or detection equipment locations, as applicable.
- (e) Details of fire parties and availability of fire-fighters' outfits.

3.3.4 A fire control plan that is to be permanently exhibited for the guidance of the ship's crew, showing clearly for each deck the control stations, the various fire sections together with particulars of the fire detection and alarm systems, the sprinkler installation, the fire-extinguishing appliances, means of access to different compartments, decks, etc., the ventilating system, including particulars of the fan control positions, the position of dampers and identification numbers of the ventilating plans serving each station.

## Section 4 General requirements

### 4.1 The Rules

4.1.1 The Rule requirements are arranged in terms of eight fundamental objectives which all contribute to the overall performance of the fire protection arrangements, see 4.2.1(a) to (h).



4.1.2 Each of the eight objectives has a series of Rule requirements attributed to them, these Rules are arranged in a 'top-down' manner such that the objective is stated as the highest level requirement. At the next level, a goal, or series of goals, is detailed; the goals are then developed as performance requirements; and ultimately the specified guidance/technical references.

4.1.3 In general, a system is to be compliant with the SOLAS convention; however, where this cannot be achieved, the performance criteria, goals and objectives are to be satisfied by assignment of a concession or through the application of an Alternative Design Justification Report, see the *Naval Survey Guidance*. The referenced SOLAS regulations to satisfy different goals are provided for guidance purposes. Alternative standards consistent with the overall SOLAS philosophy can be applied where the compliance with the Objective can be demonstrated to an equivalent level to those in SOLAS.

## 4.2 Fire protection objectives

4.2.1 The fire protection objectives to be satisfied by all fire protection systems are as follows:

- (a) **Fire Prevention Objective.** Every ship is to be designed and equipped so as to prevent the occurrence of fire or explosion, taking due account of its civil and military operational role, see Section 5.
- (b) **Fire Detection Objective.** Every ship is to be designed and equipped, as far as is practicable, to detect any potentially hazardous fire or explosion, see Section 6.
- (c) **Fire Extinguishing Objective.** Every ship is to be equipped, so far as is practicable, so that all detected fires can be safely and effectively extinguished, see Section 7.
- (d) **Containment Objective.** Every ship is to be arranged, so far as is practicable, to limit the spread of fire, smoke and toxic by-products to the space of origin, see Section 8.
- (e) **Personnel Hazard Objective.** All reasonable measures are to be taken to prevent hazards to personnel as a result of fire, see Section 9.
- (f) **System Interaction Objective.** The possibility of fire protection measures or systems causing fire related, or non-fire related hazards is to be kept to a level that is as low as is reasonably practicable, see Section 10.
- (g) **Command and Control Objective.** Suitable means are to be provided to ensure any active fire control measures can be safely and effectively orchestrated, see Section 11.
- (h) **Structural Integrity Objective.** Sufficient structural integrity is to be maintained following a fire so as to prevent the whole or partial collapse of the ship's structures due to strength deterioration by heat, see Section 12.

## Section 5 Fire prevention

### 5.1 Fire prevention objective

5.1.1 Every ship is to be designed and equipped so as to prevent the occurrence of fire or explosion, taking due account of its civil and military operational role. The Fire Prevention Goals described in 5.1.2 to 5.1.6 may be achieved by the application of Referenced SOLAS Regulations which are for guidance purposes. See *also* 4.1.3.

5.1.2 **Fire Prevention Goal 1.** Sources of ignition within the ship are to be kept to a number that is as low as reasonably practicable:

In general, the arrangements for items of ignition sources and ignitability are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part B, Regulation 4.4.

5.1.3 **Fire Prevention Goal 2.** The use of combustible and potentially explosive materials is to be restricted and controlled, taking due cognisance of the locality of ignition sources.

- (a) Arrangements for oil fuel, lubrication oil and other flammable oils are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part B, Regulation 4.2.
- (b) Arrangements for gaseous fuel for domestic purposes are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part B, Regulation 4.3.

5.1.4 **Fire Prevention Goal 3.** The fire hazards associated with helicopter facilities are to be as low as reasonably practicable:

In general, the arrangements for helicopter facilities are to be in accordance with SOLAS Ch II-2, Regulation 18.

5.1.5 **Fire Prevention Goal 4.** The fire hazards associated with the carriage of dangerous goods are to be as low as reasonably practicable:

In general, the arrangements for the carriage of dangerous goods are to be in accordance with SOLAS Ch II-2, Regulation 19.

5.1.6 **Fire Prevention Goal 5.** The fire hazards associated with the carriage of vehicles, special category and ro-ro spaces are to be as low as reasonably practicable:

In general, the arrangements for the carriage of vehicles, special category and ro-ro spaces are to be in accordance with SOLAS Ch II-2, Regulation 20.

## Section 6 Fire detection

### 6.1 Fire detection objective

6.1.1 Every ship is to be designed and equipped, as far as is practicable, to detect any potentially hazardous fire or explosion. The Fire Detection Goal described in 6.1.2 may be achieved by the application of the referenced SOLAS Regulations which are for guidance purposes. See *also* 4.1.3.

**6.1.2 Fire Detection Goal 1.** Every ship is to be equipped with effective heat/flame and smoke detection systems that will function correctly in the environment in which a fire may be reasonably expected to occur.

- (a) In general, the arrangements for detection and alarm are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part C, Regulation 7.2.
- (b) The testing of fixed fire detection and alarm systems are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part C Regulation 7.3.
- (c) The protection of machinery spaces is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part C, Regulation 7.4.
- (d) The protection of accommodation, service spaces and control stations is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part C, Regulation 7.5.
- (e) The provision of manually operated call points is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part C, Regulation 7.7.
- (f) Fire patrols are to be arranged in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part C, Regulation 7.8.
- (g) Fire-alarm signalling is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part C, Regulation 7.9.

**6.1.3 Fire Detection Goal 2.** Systems are to be arranged so as to detect the re-ignition of a detected and extinguished fire.

## Section 7 Fire extinction

### 7.1 Fire extinguishing objective

**7.1.1** Every ship is to be equipped, so far as is practicable, so that all detected fires can be safely and effectively extinguished. The Fire Extinguishing Goals described in 7.1.2 and 7.1.3 may be achieved by the application of the referenced SOLAS Regulations and the technical references which are for guidance purposes. See also 4.1.3.

**7.1.2 Fire Extinguishing Goal 1.** Arrangements on board are to be such that all detected fires can be extinguished using a medium which is suitable for the nature of the fire.

- (a) Unless given otherwise in the following paragraphs, arrangements for the extinction of fire are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2 Part C, Regulation 10.
- (b) Where high pressure sea-water systems are used for fire-fighting purposes, they are to be in accordance with the requirements of Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 5,10.
- (c) The water fire-fighting system is to have a capacity, equal to the requirements of HPSW systems as outlined in Vol 2, Pt 7, Ch 5,10.2.3.
- (d) The number and position of hydrants are to be such that at least two jets of water not emanating from the same hydrant, one of which shall be from a single length of hose, may reach any part of the ship where a fire can be reasonably expected. Such hydrant is to be located near the access to protected spaces. Hydrants for boundary cooling for the expected fire scenarios are also to be made available.

- (e) With regard to pressure at hydrants, the water fire-fighting system is to be capable of delivering the required quantity of water at adjacent hydrants with the following pressures being available at all hydrants:
  - 4 bar for NS1 and NS2 ships and all ships of 4000 gross tonnage or greater.
  - 3 bar for NS3 ships.
 The pressure is not to exceed that for which the system has been designed, or that which the fire hose cannot be demonstrated as being controllable.
- (f) With regard to the provision of fire pumps, ships of 4000 gross tonnage and above are to be fitted with at least three fire pumps, and ships of less than 4000 gross tonnage are to be fitted with at least two. If the pumps are arranged such that a single fire will put all pumps out of action, an additional emergency fire pump will be required.
- (g) With regard to the requirements for fire hoses, at least one fire hose of the required length is to be permanently available at each required hydrant. These are to be for the sole use of fire-fighting and testing the equipment.
- (h) With regard to sprinkler systems, NS1 and NS2 ships, and those designed to carry in excess of 50 embarked personnel, are to be fitted with an automatic sprinkler, fire detection and fire alarm system of a type acceptable to the Naval Authority in all control stations, accommodation and service spaces. Alternatively, if a water sprinkler system may cause damage to essential equipment, a fixed fire-fighting system acceptable to the Naval Authority is to be used. Spaces where there is little or no risk of fire need not be fitted with such a system.
- (i) On NS3 ships and vessels designed to carry less than 50 embarked personnel, an automatic sprinkler, fire detection and fire alarm system of a type acceptable to the Naval Authority is to be installed to protect control stations. A fixed fire detection system and alarm is to be arranged to provide smoke detection in corridors, stairways, escape and access routes within accommodation spaces.
- (k) With regard to fire-fighters' outfits, the fire-fighters' outfit is to be to a standard acceptable to the Naval Authority. As a minimum they are to be in accordance with the Fire Safety Systems Code (FSS Code).
- (l) Each ship is to carry sufficient fire-fighters' outfits for the number required for each fire party as agreed with the Naval Authority. Each ship is to carry at least two fire-fighters' outfits. Two fire-fighters' outfits are to be provided for every 80 m of longitudinal deck space and in addition, two in every vertical zone. One water fog applicator is to be stored adjacent to each set of breathing apparatus. The fire-fighters' outfits and fog applicators are to be readily accessible in each fire zone.
- (m) Where water is used for fire-fighting purposes in any compartment, these compartments are to be provided with arrangements for removing the water after fire extinguishing.

**7.1.3 Fire Extinguishing Goal 2.** The capacity of the extinguishing system is to be sufficient to extinguish any fire which may reasonably be expected to occur within the jurisdiction of that extinguishing system:

With regard to the availability of water, at least one effective jet of water is to be immediately available from any hydrant in an interior space. The continued supply of that water is to be ensured by the automatic starting of a fire pump.

# Fire Protection

# Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 2

Sections 8 to 11

## ■ Section 8 Fire and by-product containment

### 8.1 Fire and by-product containment objective

8.1.1 Every ship is to be arranged, so far as is practicable, to limit the spread of fire, smoke and toxic by-products to the space of origin. The Fire and By-Product Containment Goal in 8.1.2 may be achieved by the application of the referenced SOLAS Regulations and the technical references which are provided for guidance purposes. See also 4.1.3.

8.1.2 **Fire and By-product Containment Goal 1.** Adequate containment boundaries are to be fitted within the ship in order that spread of fire, smoke and toxic by-products is limited to a predetermined area, consistent with allowing as near normal operation of the vessel as practically possible in the event of fire, without evacuation.

- (a) Arrangements for the containment of fire are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part C, Regulation 9.
- (b) Control of air supply and flammable liquid to the space is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Regulations Part B, 5.2. and Pt C, 8.2.
- (c) With regard to closing devices, vessels designed to carry in excess of 50 embarked personnel, power ventilation, except in machinery spaces and control stations not having an exit to an open deck, is to be fitted with controls so that all fans can be stopped from either of two positions which should be located as far apart from each other as is practicable.
- (d) All controls for the fire-extinguishing system shall be situated in one control position or in as few positions as possible to the satisfaction of the Naval Authority.
- (e) The use of fire protection materials is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part B, Regulation 5.3.
- (f) The arrangements for the control of smoke spread are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2 Part C, Regulation 8.

8.1.3 Where the Separate Machinery Spaces ★ (star) Enhancement notation is selected, the requirements of Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.8 are also applicable.

## ■ Section 9 Personnel fire hazards

### 9.1 Personnel hazard objective

9.1.1 All reasonable measures are to be taken to prevent hazards to personnel as a result of fire. The Personnel Hazard Goals in 9.1.2 and 9.1.3 may be achieved by the application of the referenced SOLAS Regulations which are provided for guidance purposes. See also 4.1.3.

9.1.2 **Personnel Hazard Goal 1.** Where materials used or carried may develop vapours and smoke dangerous to personnel, the ship is to be arranged so as to minimise the effects from those vapours and smoke:

The potential for smoke generation and its toxicity is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter 2, Part B, Regulation 6.

9.1.3 **Personnel Hazard Goal 2.** Where personnel may be reasonably expected to fight a fire, there is to be adequate provision of protective equipment for each member of the fire-fighting party. The equipment is to be of a standard applicable for its intended application:

Fire-fighters' outfits are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part C, Regulation 10.10, see 7.1.2(j) and (k).

## ■ Section 10 System interaction

### 10.1 System interaction objective

10.1.1 The possibility of fire protection measures or systems causing fire related, or non-fire related hazards is to be kept to a level that is as low as is reasonably practicable.

10.1.2 **System Interaction Goal.** Systems are to be designed, as far as is practicable, to ensure that the operation of that system will not inadvertently degrade the performance of any other system.

## ■ Section 11 Command and control

### 11.1 Command and control objective

11.1.1 Suitable means are to be provided to ensure any active fire control measures can be safely and effectively orchestrated.

11.1.2 **Command and Control Goal 1.** Fire control stations are to be provided so that there can be a central point of command in all fire situations where fire-fighting may be expected.

11.1.3 **Command and Control Goal 2.** Fixed means of two-way speech communication are to be provided between the fire-fighting control station and identified fire risk areas.

■ *Section 12*  
**Structural integrity**

**12.1 Structural integrity objective**

*12.1.1* Sufficient structural integrity is to be maintained following a fire so as to prevent the whole or partial collapse of the ship's structures due to strength deterioration by heat. The Structural Integrity Goal in 12.1.2 may be achieved by the application of the referred SOLAS Regulation which is provided for guidance purposes. See also 4.1.3.

*12.1.2* **Structural Integrity Goal.** Materials used in the construction of the ship's structure are to ensure that structural integrity is not degraded due to fire:

The arrangements for structural integrity following fire are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Part C, Regulation 11. See also Vol 1, Pt 4, Ch 1,4.2.

---

# Escape and Emergency Access

# Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 3

Sections 1, 2 &amp; 3

## Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **Classification requirements for escape and emergency access**
- 3 **Plans and particulars**
- 4 **General requirements**
- 5 **Escape of personnel**
- 6 **Emergency access**

## ■ Section 1 Scope

### 1.1 Philosophy

1.1.1 The purpose of this Chapter is to provide a methodology for confirming that a naval ship's crew and embarked personnel can escape from any space within the ship to a designated place of safety in a safe, timely and effective manner as the need arises. It also provides a method for confirming that access to essential areas is available for personnel and equipment required for damage control and fire fighting purposes.

1.1.2 The objectives of this Chapter as defined in 4.2 are to be realised through the content of these Rules that aim to ensure the provision of sufficient equipment and arrangements to enable the removal of all personnel to a designated place of safety until such a time that they can be evacuated from the ship and to ensure adequate emergency access.

1.1.3 In general, demonstration of satisfactory escape arrangements will be achieved through compliance with the relevant requirements of SOLAS Chapter II-2, Regulation 13. Where escape arrangements deviate from the technical requirements of SOLAS, they are to be suitable to satisfy the functional requirements, escape objective and goals of this Chapter.

1.1.4 Demonstration of acceptable emergency access arrangements will be achieved by satisfactory demonstration of the emergency access objective and associated goal.

1.1.5 This Chapter is to be read in conjunction with Chapter 1, see *also* Chapter 4.

### 1.2 Application

1.2.1 The requirements of this Chapter are to be applied where a Certificate of Compliance or Class Notation for Escape and Emergency Access **ESC** is requested.

1.2.2 The 'Star endorsement' (★) will be assigned to vessels where the arrangements on board are in accordance with stated National Administration requirements. This does not necessarily denote automatic endorsement by the National Administration.

1.2.3 The 'Double Star endorsement' (★★) will be assigned to vessels where the arrangements on board are in accordance with stated National Administration requirements and *ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code* (NSC) – Chapter VII Escape, Evacuation and Rescue. This does not necessarily denote automatic endorsement by the National Administration.

## ■ Section 2 Classification requirements for escape and emergency access

### 2.1 General requirements – SOLAS

2.1.1 The Escape and Emergency Access **ESC** notation will be assigned to vessels which can demonstrate that the levels of personnel safety in the event of a 'prepare to evacuate' scenario are in accordance with Sections 3 to 6 of these Rules.

2.1.2 Where the **ESC** notation is to be assigned, an **LMC** notation must have been assigned, see Ch 1, 1.1.2.

### 2.2 General requirements – NSC

2.2.1 The Escape and Emergency Access **ESC★★** notation will be assigned to vessels which can demonstrate that the levels of personnel safety in the event of a 'prepare to evacuate' scenario are in accordance with Chapter VII of the NSC.

2.2.2 Where the **ESC★★** notation is to be assigned, a **LSAE** and an **LMC** notation must also have been assigned, see Ch 1, 1.1.2.

## ■ Section 3 Plans and particulars

### 3.1 Concept statement

3.1.1 The design intent of any escape and emergency access arrangements is to be submitted in the form of a Concept Statement and is to include, but not be limited to;

- (a) The required class notation, **ESC**, **ESC★** or **ESC★★**. If a military distinction (**MD**) notation is required this is also to be declared, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.7.
- (b) A Concept of Operations which is a description of the ship's operational capabilities and is to include any defined military survivability requirements.

# Escape and Emergency Access

# Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 3

Sections 3 & 4

- (c) Details of the intended mode of operation of escape and emergency access systems/equipment to include environmental conditions together with a description of any escape and emergency access scenarios and their development and application in the design.
  - (d) Manning levels and operator competencies/authorisations required.
  - (e) Indication of whether or not alternative design assessment is being sought, if the proposed design deviates from the specified guidance identified in these Rules.
- The concept statement is to be agreed by the designer and Owner/Operator, see also Ch 1,2.3.2.

## 3.2 Design disclosure

3.2.1 In addition to submission of an acceptable Concept Statement, a Design Disclosure is required for submission to and acceptance by LR. The Design Disclosure is to include, but is not limited to:

- (a) A description of the escape regime, i.e., estimated times to designated places of safety in all foreseeable conditions. This is also to include a declaration of all designated places of safety.
  - (b) A statement of all design standards used in the design, manufacture, installation and testing of escape and emergency access systems.
  - (c) A proposed list of all surveyable items together with any additional recommendations from equipment/component manufacturers. Evidence is also to be provided that all surveyable items of equipment have approval certificates.
  - (d) Details of the proposed survey and maintenance regime.
  - (e) Evidence of compliance with the objectives and goals defined in Sections 5 and 6. This may be in the form of compliance with any specified guidance, Concessions, Alternative Design Justification Reports or an acceptable combination of all three. See also Ch 1,2.3 and 6.
    - (i) If applying for SOLAS, follow Sections 5 and 6;
    - (ii) If applying for NSC, follow Section 6.
  - (f) Details of the Hazard Identification process and Class related hazards are to be submitted. A hazard identification system is to be in place at the design stage whereby all hazards identified are recorded. If application of these Rules has been identified as a hazard avoidance/mitigation measure, then details are to be submitted.
  - (g) Details of equipment configurations that are safe for operators and users.
  - (h) Details of the proposed test procedure required to demonstrate functionality at the time of commissioning.
- See also Ch 1,2.3 and 6.

## 3.3 Plans

3.3.1 To support the design disclosure and for the purposes of assessing compliance with design requirements for inspection, installation and testing, guidance on the plans and information to be submitted for assessment and review are detailed in 3.3.2 to 3.3.4.

3.3.2 For escape equipment, the following plans and information:

- (a) Certificates of conformity.
- (b) General arrangement plans of equipment, detailing all essential parameters, weights, safe working loads, etc.

3.3.3 For arrangements of equipment, the following plans and information:

General arrangement plans of equipment layout, showing place of safety points, equipment stowage points, escape and access routes, etc.

3.3.4 For deployment and operational procedures, the following information:

Details of the deployment and operation of equipment.

## Section 4 General requirements

### 4.1 The Rules

4.1.1 The Rule requirements are arranged in terms of two fundamental objectives which both contribute to the overall performance of the escape and emergency access arrangements, see 4.2.

4.1.2 Each of the two objectives has a series of Rule requirements attributed to them, these Rules are arranged in a 'top-down' manner such that an objective is stated as the highest level requirement. At the next level, a goal, or series of goals, are detailed; the goals are then developed as performance requirements; and ultimately specified guidance, where applicable.

4.1.3 In general, a system is to be compliant with the SOLAS convention; however, where this cannot be achieved, the performance criteria, goals and objectives are to be satisfied by assignment of a Concession or through the application of an Alternative Design Justification Report, see the *Naval Survey Guidance*. The referenced SOLAS Regulations to satisfy different goals are provided for guidance purposes. Alternative standards consistent with the overall SOLAS philosophy can be applied where the compliance with the objective can be demonstrated to an equivalent level to those in SOLAS.

4.1.4 The escape routes are to be designed so as to support escape of all personnel to a designated place of safety. Where a pre-determined time for escape is specified in the Design Disclosure, based on the design and operational role of the ship then it is to be validated by full-scale trials or by a simulation acceptable to LR. This time is to be specified by the Naval Authority based on the design and operational role of the ship. The time is to be validated by full-scale trials or by a simulation acceptable to the Naval Authority and LR, see also the *Naval Survey Guidance*.

# Escape and Emergency Access

# Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 3

Sections 4, 5 &amp; 6

## 4.2 Escape of personnel and emergency access arrangements objectives

4.2.1 The escape and emergency access arrangements objectives to be satisfied by all escape and emergency access systems and arrangements are as follows:

- (a) **Escape of Personnel Objective.** Every ship is to be arranged so that all spaces have means of safe and effective escape for personnel to a designated place of safety, during anticipated emergency situations, see Section 5.
- (b) **Emergency Access Objective.** Every ship is to be arranged so that personnel can access all areas with necessary equipment, for damage control and fire-fighting purposes and exercises, see Section 6.

## Section 5 Escape of personnel

### 5.1 Escape objective

5.1.1 Every ship is to be arranged so that all spaces have a means of safe and effective escape for personnel to a designated place of safety, during anticipated emergency situations. The Escape Goals described in 5.1.2 to 5.1.7 may be achieved by the application of the referenced SOLAS Regulations which are for guidance purposes. See also 4.1.3.

5.1.2 **Escape Goal 1.** All escape routes are to provide for effective and obvious access to designated places of safety.

- (a) In general, the provision of escape routes on all ships is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Regulations 13.1 to 13.4.
- (b) In general, escape routes from machinery spaces on all ships are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Regulation 13.4.
- (c) In general, escape route arrangements for ro-ro spaces are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Regulations 13.5 to 13.7.

5.1.3 **Escape Goal 2.** All escape routes are to be readily accessible.

5.1.4 **Escape Goal 3.** All escape routes are to be free from undue hazards.

5.1.5 **Escape Goal 4.** Physical dimensions of escape routes are to be suitable for the anticipated flow of personnel during all foreseeable emergency conditions.

In general, the dimensions and design of escape routes are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Regulation 13.

5.1.6 **Escape Goal 5.** Personnel are to be adequately protected from fire, smoke and hazardous vapours while escaping.

5.1.7 **Escape Goal 6.** The escape arrangements for individual compartments are to be suitable for the purpose of the compartment and its intended occupants.

## Section 6 Emergency access

### 6.1 Emergency access objective

6.1.1 Every ship is to be arranged so that personnel can access all areas with necessary equipment, for damage control and fire-fighting purposes and exercises.

6.1.2 **Emergency Access Goal 1.** Provisions for emergency access are to be arranged such that they do not contribute to the spread of fire, flood, smoke or other toxic gases to the designated places of safety.





# Life-Saving and Evacuation Arrangements

## Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 4

Sections 1, 2 &amp; 3

### Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **Requirements for life-saving and evacuation arrangements**
- 3 **Plans and particulars**
- 4 **General requirements**
- 5 **Evacuation of personnel**
- 6 **Personnel protection**
- 7 **Rescue of personnel**
- 8 **Command and control**

### ■ Section 1 Scope

#### 1.1 Philosophy

1.1.1 The purpose of this Chapter is to provide a methodology for confirming that a naval ship can be evacuated in a safe and effective manner as the need arises, and that personnel can be effectively rescued from the water.

1.1.2 The objectives of this Chapter as defined in 4.2 are to be achieved through the content of these Rules that aim to ensure the provision of sufficient equipment to evacuate all personnel to a place of safety until such a time that they can be rescued, and to ensure that adequate equipment is provided to rescue personnel from the water.

1.1.3 In general, demonstration of adequate provision of life-saving and rescue equipment will be achieved through compliance with the relevant requirements of SOLAS Chapter III or *ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code* (NSC). Where life-saving and rescue arrangements deviate from the requirements of SOLAS Chapter III, they are to be suitable to satisfy the life saving and rescue objectives and functional requirements of this Chapter.

1.1.4 This Chapter is to be read in conjunction with Chapter 1.

#### 1.2 Application

1.2.1 The requirements of this Chapter are to be applied where a Certificate of Compliance or Class Notation for Life-Saving and Evacuation Arrangements **LSAE** is requested.

1.2.2 The 'Star endorsement' (★) will be assigned to vessels where the arrangements on board are in accordance with stated National Administration requirements. This does not necessarily denote automatic endorsement by the National Administration.

1.2.3 The 'Double Star endorsement' (★★) will be assigned to vessels where the arrangements on board are in accordance with stated National Administration requirements and *ANEP-77 NATO Naval Ship Code* (NSC) – Chapter VII Escape, Evacuation and Rescue. This does not necessarily denote automatic endorsement by the National Administration.

### ■ Section 2 Requirements for life-saving and evacuation arrangements

#### 2.1 General requirements – SOLAS

2.1.1 The Life-Saving and Evacuation Arrangements **LSAE** notation will be assigned to vessels which demonstrate that the provision of life-saving and rescue equipment on board are in accordance with Sections 3 to 8 of these Rules.

2.1.2 Where the **LSAE** notation is to be assigned, an **LMC** notation must have been assigned, see Ch 1, 1.1.2.

#### 2.2 General requirements – NSC

2.2.1 The Escape and Emergency Access **ESC★★** notation will be assigned to vessels which can demonstrate that the levels of personnel safety in the event of a 'prepare to evacuate' scenario are in accordance with Chapter VII of the NSC.

2.2.2 Where the **ESC★★** notation is to be assigned, a **LSAE** and an **LMC** notation must also have been assigned, see Ch 1, 1.1.2.

### ■ Section 3 Plans and particulars

#### 3.1 Concept statement

3.1.1 The design intent of any life saving or rescue system is to be submitted in the form of a Concept Statement and is to include, but not be limited to:

- (a) The required class notation, **LSAE**, **LSAE★** or **LSAE★★**. If a military distinction (**MD**) notation is required this is to be declared, see Vol 1, Pt 1, Ch 2, 3.7.
- (b) A Concept of Operations which is a description of the ship's designed operational role and capabilities and is to include any defined military survivability requirements.
- (c) Details of the intended mode of operation of life-saving and evacuation systems/equipment to include environmental conditions together with a description of any emergency scenarios and their development and application in the design.
- (d) Manning levels and Operator competencies/authorisations required.

# Life-Saving and Evacuation Arrangements

## Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 4

Sections 3 & 4

- (e) Indication of whether or not alternative design assessment is being sought, if the proposed design deviates from the specified guidance identified in these Rules.

The Concept Statement is to be agreed by the designer and Owner/Operator, see also Ch 1,2.3.

### 3.2 Design disclosure

3.2.1 In addition to submission of an acceptable Concept Statement, a Design Disclosure is required for submission to and acceptance by Lloyd's Register (hereinafter referred to as 'LR'). The Design Disclosure is to include, but is not limited to:

- (a) A statement of all design standards used in the design, manufacture, installation and testing of life-saving and rescue equipment.
- (b) A proposed list of all surveyable items together with any additional recommendations from equipment/component manufacturers. Evidence is also to be provided that all surveyable items of equipment have approval certificates.
- (c) Details of the proposed survey and maintenance regime.
- (d) Evidence of compliance with the objectives and goals defined in Sections 5 to 8. This may be in the form of compliance with specified guidance, Concessions, Alternative Design Justification Reports or an acceptable combination of all three, see also Ch 1,2.3 and 6.
- (e) Details of the Hazard Identification process and Class related hazards are to be submitted. A hazard identification system is to be in place at the design stage whereby all hazards identified are recorded. If application of these Rules has been identified as a hazard avoidance/mitigation measure, then details are to be submitted.
- (f) Details of equipment configurations that are safe for Operators and users.
- (g) Details of the proposed test procedure required to demonstrate functionality at the time of commissioning.

### 3.3 Plans

3.3.1 To support the design disclosure and for the purposes of assessing compliance with design requirements for inspection, installation and testing, guidance on the plans and information to be submitted for assessment and review are detailed in 3.3.2 to 3.3.4.

3.3.2 For life-saving appliances, the following plans and information:

- (a) Certificates of conformity against the *International Life Saving Appliance Code* (MSC Res. 48(66)) or other standard acceptable to the Naval Authority and LR.
- (b) General arrangement plans of equipment, detailing all essential parameters, weights, Safe Working Loads, etc.

3.3.3 For arrangements of equipment, the following plans:

- (a) General arrangement plans of equipment layout, showing embarkation points, equipment stowage points, etc.
- (b) General arrangement plans of all equipment assemblies such as davits, reeving arrangements, etc.

3.3.4 For operational procedures, the following information:

- (a) Details of the evacuation procedure, to include drills and training.
- (b) An evacuation analysis in accordance with SOLAS Chapter II-2, Regulation 13,7.4 or NSC Chapter VII, Regulation 3 as applicable.

## Section 4 General requirements

### 4.1 The Rules

4.1.1 The requirements are arranged in terms of four fundamental objectives which all contribute to the overall performance of the life-saving and evacuation arrangements, see 4.2.

4.1.2 Each of the four objectives has a series of Rule requirements attributed to them, these Rules are arranged in a 'top-down' manner such that the objective is stated as the highest level requirement. At the next level, a goal or series of goals, are detailed; the goals are then developed as performance requirements; and ultimately specified guidance, where applicable.

4.1.3 In general, a system is to be compliant with the SOLAS convention; however, where this cannot be achieved, the performance criteria, goals and objectives are to be satisfied by assignment of a Concession or through the application of an Alternative Design Justification Report, see the *Naval Survey Guidance*. The referenced SOLAS Regulations to satisfy different goals are provided for guidance purposes. Alternative standards consistent with the overall SOLAS philosophy can be applied where the compliance with the objective can be demonstrated to an equivalent level to those in SOLAS.

4.1.4 These Rules are based on the requirements of SOLAS Chapter III and all terms and definitions are referenced therein. All references to the Code refer to the *International Life-Saving Appliance Code*.

4.1.5 The evacuation systems are to be designed so as to support evacuation of all personnel in a pre-determined time. This time is to be agreed by the Naval Authority based on the design and operational role of the ship. The time is to be validated by full-scale trials or by a simulation acceptable to the Naval Authority and LR. See also the *Naval Survey Guidance*.

### 4.2 Life-saving and evacuation arrangements objectives

4.2.1 The objectives to be satisfied by all life-saving and evacuation systems are as follows:

- (a) **Evacuation Objective.** Arrangements are to be provided to enable personnel to evacuate the ship safely and in a time acceptable to the Naval Authority, see Section 5.

# Life-Saving and Evacuation Arrangements

## Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 4

Sections 4 to 7

- (b) **Personnel Protection Objective.** Evacuated personnel are to be kept protected until such time as they can be rescued from the survival craft, see Section 6.
- (c) **Rescue Objective.** Every ship is to be suitably equipped to rescue personnel from the water, see Section 7.
- (d) **Command and Control Objective.** Every ship is to be equipped and manned so that command of all evacuation and life-saving situations can be maintained, see Section 8.

### Section 5 Evacuation of personnel

#### 5.1 Evacuation objective

5.1.1 Arrangements are to be provided to enable personnel to evacuate the ship safely and in a time acceptable to the Naval Authority. The Evacuation Goals described in 5.1.2 to 5.1.6 may be achieved by the application of the referred SOLAS Regulations and technical references which are for guidance purposes. See also 4.1.3.

5.1.2 **Evacuation Goal 1.** Life-saving equipment is to be arranged on the vessel in such a manner that it is easily accessible and readily deployed in the case of an emergency.

- (a) In general, the provision of life jackets is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter III, Part B, Regulation 7.2.
- (b) Arrangements for life-saving and evacuation equipment are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter III, Part B, Regulations 11, 12, 13, 15 and 16, as applicable.
- (c) Arrangements for operational readiness are to be in accordance with SOLAS, Part B, Chapter III, Regulation 20.

5.1.3 **Evacuation Goal 2.** The total capacity of the ship's survival craft is to be sufficient to ensure that all personnel can be evacuated during foreseeable emergency conditions:

The provision of survival craft and rescue boats is to be in accordance with SOLAS Part B, Chapter III, Regulation 31.

5.1.4 **Evacuation Goal 3.** All life-saving and rescue equipment is to be of an approved type acceptable to LR, the Naval Authority and National Administration where applicable:

- (a) In general, all life-saving and rescue equipment prototypes are to be tested to confirm that they comply with the *International Life Saving Appliance Code* or other standard acceptable to LR and the Naval Authority.
- (b) All life-saving and rescue equipment is to be subject to production tests to ensure that they are constructed to the same standard as the approved prototype.

5.1.5 **Evacuation Goal 4.** Provision is to be made to ensure that the deployed survival craft can be moved to safety from a damaged vessel until such time all personnel can be rescued.

5.1.6 **Evacuation Goal 5.** Provision is to be made for incapacitated people to be evacuated to safety.

### Section 6 Personnel protection

#### 6.1 Personnel protection objective

6.1.1 Evacuated personnel are to be kept protected until such time as they can be rescued from the survival craft. The Personnel Protection Goal described in 6.1.2 may be achieved by the application of the referenced SOLAS Regulation which is for guidance purposes. See also 4.1.3.

6.1.2 **Personnel Protection Goal 1.** Evacuated personnel are to be protected from the adverse effects of the environment such as hypothermia or exposure:

In general, the provision of immersion suits and anti-exposure suits is to be consistent with SOLAS Chapter III, Part B, Regulation 7.3.

6.1.3 **Personnel Protection Goal 2.** Survival craft are to be equipped with sufficient provisions to keep personnel free from starvation and dehydration for a period of time specified by the Naval Authority.

### Section 7 Rescue of personnel

#### 7.1 Rescue of personnel objective

7.1.1 Every ship and its life saving equipment are to be suitably equipped to locate and rescue personnel from the water. The rescue of Personnel Goals described in 7.1.2 to 7.1.4 may be achieved by the application of the referenced SOLAS Regulations which are for guidance purposes. See also 4.1.3.

7.1.2 **Rescue of Personnel Goal 1.** Every ship is to be designed to prevent the risk of an accidental man overboard situation as far as is practicable:

- (a) Line throwing appliances are to be in accordance with SOLAS Part B, Chapter III, Regulation 18.
- (b) In general, the provision of life buoys on all ships is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter III, Part B, Regulation 7.1. With regard to the marking of life buoys, all life buoys are to be marked with the ship's identification number.

7.1.3 **Rescue of Personnel Goal 2.** Every ship is to be suitably equipped for the mass rescue of personnel from the water, on board:

- (a) Rescue boat launching and recovery arrangements are to be in accordance with SOLAS Part B, Chapter III, Regulation 17.
- (b) Rescue boats are to be stowed in accordance with SOLAS, Part B, Chapter III, Regulation 14.

# Life-Saving and Evacuation Arrangements

## Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 4

Sections 7 & 8

---

**7.1.4 Rescue of Personnel Goal 3.** Every ship and its survival craft is to be fitted with equipment to ensure that the ship and its survival craft can be efficiently located and retrieved as necessary:

- (a) Each ship is to be fitted with at least one radar transponder on both sides. The radar transponders are to be located such that they can be readily deployed on any survival craft, other than the life rafts.
  - (b) The provision of flares is to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter III, Part B, Regulation 6.3.
- 

### ■ Section 8 Command and control

#### 8.1 Command and control objective

**8.1.1** Suitable means are to be provided to ensure that life-saving and evacuation operations can be safely and effectively orchestrated. The Command and Control Goals described in 8.1.2 may be achieved by the application of the referenced SOLAS Regulations which are for guidance purposes. See *also* 4.1.3.

**8.1.2 Command and Control Goal 1.** Every ship is to be equipped and manned so that command of all life-saving and evacuation situations can be maintained:

- (a) Every ship is to be fitted with a general emergency alarm in accordance with SOLAS Chapter III, Part B, Regulation 6.4.2, as applicable. The alarm is to be audible on all open decks and every compartment.
- (b) Every ship is to be fitted with a public address system in accordance with SOLAS Chapter III, Part B, Regulation 6.5.
- (c) Emergency situation instructions are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter III, Part B, Regulations 8 and 9.
- (d) The manning and supervision of life saving appliances are to be in accordance with SOLAS Chapter III, Part B, Regulation 10.
- (e) Emergency and training drills are to be in accordance with SOLAS Part B, Chapter III, Regulation 19.

**8.1.3 Command and Control Goal 2.** Reliable means of speech communication are to be provided between the central point of command and strategic life-saving and evacuation stations:

Two-way VHF radiotelephone apparatus is to be provided on every ship.

---

# Safety of Navigation and Communication

## Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 5

Sections 1, 2 & 3

### Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **Classification requirements for safety of navigation and communication systems**
- 3 **Plans and particulars**
- 4 **General requirements**
- 5 **Safety of communication**
- 6 **Safety of navigation**
- 7 **Safety of navigating and communication equipment arrangements**

### ■ Section 1 Scope

#### 1.1 Philosophy

1.1.1 The purpose of this Chapter is to provide a methodology for confirming that the arrangements on board a naval ship provide for navigation and communication equipment and arrangements which provide for safe and effective task performance and to meet the requirements of international regulations.

1.1.2 The objectives of this Chapter as defined in 4.2 are to be realised through the content of these Rules that detail the functional requirements that are to be met by the ship's navigation and communication systems.

1.1.3 In general, demonstration of satisfactory levels of safety of navigation and communication will be achieved through compliance with the relevant requirements of these Rules and the documents referenced therein. Where navigation and communication arrangements deviate from the technical requirements of this Chapter, they are to be suitable to satisfy the objectives of and goals of this Chapter.

1.1.4 In addition to the requirements for ships to be furnished with the necessary equipment for effective navigation and communication, SOLAS requires the contracting Governments to provide certain shore-based facilities and services. These services assist the ships in maintaining effective navigation and communication. It is beyond the scope of these Rules to mandate that the Navy's Government is to provide such services, however it must be noted that they are an essential part of the ship's operation.

1.1.5 The requirements placed on the contracting Governments can be found in SOLAS Chapter IV Part B and Chapter V Regulations 4 to 14 inclusive, and Regulation 31.

#### 1.2 Application

1.2.1 The requirements of this Chapter are to be read in conjunction with Chapter 1.

1.2.2 The requirements in this Chapter of the Rules are to be applied where a Certificate of Compliance or Class Notation for Safety of Navigation and Communication (**SNC**) is requested.

1.2.3 The 'Star' ★ endorsement will be assigned to vessels where the arrangements on board are acceptable to the National Administration for regulating safety of navigation and communications requirements for a particular ship.

### ■ Section 2 Classification requirements for safety of navigation and communication systems

#### 2.1 General requirements

2.1.1 The Safety of Navigation and Communication **SNC** notation will be assigned to vessels that demonstrate that the levels of navigation and communication are in accordance with these Rules.

2.1.2 No provision in these Rules is to prevent the use by any ship, survival craft or person in distress, of any means at their disposal to attract attention, make known their position and obtain help.

2.1.3 The Requirements of this Chapter are based on those of SOLAS Chapters IV and V, and the terms and definitions referenced therein are to be referred to.

2.1.4 Where the **SNC** notation is to be assigned, an **LMC** notation must have been assigned, see Ch 1,1.1.2.

### ■ Section 3 Plans and particulars

#### 3.1 Design statement

3.1.1 The design intent of the communication and navigation arrangements is to be submitted and is to include all necessary supporting information with:

- (a) the required class notation;
- (b) details of the operational profile of the ship, to include manning provisions and training levels; and
- (c) a description of each mode of operation of the systems in each identifiable operational state.

# Safety of Navigation and Communication

## Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 5

Sections 3, 4 & 5

### 3.2 Engineering and safety justification

3.2.1 The design intent of any communications and navigation system is to be submitted in the form of a Concept Statement and is to include but not be limited to:

- (a) The required class notation, **SNC** or **SNC★**. If a military distinction (**MD**) notation is required this is also to be declared. See Volume 1, Pt 1, Ch 2,3.7.
- (b) Description of the ship's operational capabilities, (Concept of Operations) to include any defined military survivability requirements.
- (c) Details of the intended mode of operation of navigation and communication systems/equipment to include environmental conditions, to include a description of any emergency scenarios and their development and application in the design.
- (d) Manning levels and Operator competencies/authorisations required.
- (e) Indication of whether or not alternative design assessment is being sought, if the proposed design deviates from the specified guidance identified in these Rules.

The concept statement is to be agreed by the designer and Owner/Operator, see also Ch 1,2.3.2.

### 3.3 Plans

3.3.1 To support the Design Disclosure and for the purposes of assessing compliance with design requirements for inspection, installation and testing; guidance on the plans and details to be submitted for assessment review are detailed in 3.3.2 and 3.3.3.

3.3.2 For navigation, the following information:

- (a) Schematic plan of ship-wide navigation systems.
- (b) Detailed description of navigation systems operation.

3.3.3 For communication, the following information:

- (a) Schematic plan of ship-wide communication systems.
- (b) Detailed description of communication systems operation.

## Section 4 General requirements

### 4.1 The Rules

4.1.1 The requirements are arranged in terms of four fundamental objectives which all contribute to the overall performance of safety of navigation and communications arrangements, see 4.2.

4.1.2 Each of these four objectives has a series of Rule requirements attributed to them, these Rules are arranged in a 'top-down' manner such that the objective is stated as the highest level requirement. At the next level, a goal or series of goals, are detailed; the goals are then developed as performance requirement; and ultimately specified guidance.

4.1.3 In general, a system is to be compliant with the SOLAS convention; however, where this cannot be achieved, the performance criteria, goals and objectives are to be satisfied by assignment of a Concession or through the application of an Alternative Design Justification Report, see the *Naval Survey Guidance*. The referenced SOLAS Regulations to satisfy different goals are provided for guidance purposes. Alternative standards consistent with the overall SOLAS philosophy can be applied where the compliance with the objective can be demonstrated to an equivalent level to those in SOLAS.

### 4.2 Safety of navigation and communications objectives

4.2.1 The safety of navigation and communications objectives to be satisfied by all ships is as follows:

- (a) **Communication Objective.** Every ship is to be capable of communication to avert unnecessary danger to itself and other ships in the vicinity during normal and emergency conditions, see Section 5.
- (b) **Safety of Navigation Objective.** Every ship is to be arranged with the necessary equipment to facilitate safe and effective navigation, see Section 6.
- (c) **Equipment Arrangements Objective.** All navigation and communications equipment is to be arranged to allow safe and effective task performance, see Section 7.

## Section 5 Safety of communication

### 5.1 Communication objective

5.1.1 Every ship is to be capable of communication to avert unnecessary danger to itself and other ships in its vicinity. The Communication Goal in 5.1.8 may be achieved by the application of the referenced SOLAS Regulation which is provided for guidance purposes. See also 4.1.3.

5.1.2 **Communication Goal 1.** Every ship is to be capable of transmitting ship-to-shore distress alerts during all normal operation and foreseeable failure conditions.

5.1.3 **Communication Goal 2.** Every ship is to be capable of receiving shore-to-ship distress alerts during all normal operating conditions.

5.1.4 **Communication Goal 3.** Every ship is to be capable of transmitting and receiving ship-to-ship distress alerts during all normal operating conditions.

5.1.5 **Communication Goal 4.** Every ship is to be capable of transmitting and receiving search and rescue co-ordinating communications during all normal operating conditions.

5.1.6 **Communication Goal 5.** Every ship is to be capable of receiving on-scene communications during normal operating conditions.

# Safety of Navigation and Communication

## Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 5

Sections 5, 6 & 7

**5.1.7 Communication Goal 6.** Every ship is to be capable of transmitting and receiving signals for the purposes of locating mobile units and individuals in distress.

**5.1.8 Communication Goal 7.** Every ship is to be capable of transmitting and receiving maritime safety information during normal operating conditions:

In general, the requirements of SOLAS Chapter V, Regulation 32 and 33 are to be applied.

**5.1.9 Communication Goal 8.** Every ship is to be capable of transmitting and receiving general radio-communications to and from shore-based radio systems or networks where available.

## Section 6 Safety of navigation

### 6.1 Navigation objective

**6.1.1** Every ship is to be arranged with the necessary equipment to facilitate safe and effective navigation. The Navigation Goals described in 6.1.2, 6.1.5, 6.1.6, 6.1.7 and 6.1.8 may be achieved by the application of the referenced SOLAS Regulations which are provided for guidance purposes. See also 4.1.3.

**6.1.2 Navigation Goal 1.** Each ship is to be fitted with a means for the helmsman to determine ship track and heading at the normal place of steering during normal operating and foreseeable failure conditions:

In general, the requirements of SOLAS Chapter V, Regulations 24 and 25 are to be complied with.

**6.1.3 Navigation Goal 2.** There is to be adequate means of communication between any ship control and navigating stations.

**6.1.4 Navigation Goal 3.** There is to be a means of taking bearings as nearly as practicable over the arc of the horizon of 360°.

**6.1.5 Navigation Goal 4.** The ship's steering gear is to be tested in accordance with SOLAS Chapter V, Regulation 26 as applicable.

**6.1.6 Navigation Goal 5.** Where the ship is likely to use a pilot to navigate certain waterways, then arrangements on board are to be sufficient safely to embark and disembark the pilot:

In general, the requirements of SOLAS Chapter V, Regulation 23 are to be complied with.

**6.1.7 Navigation Goal 6.** Every ship is to be equipped with all necessary publications to facilitate safe navigation:

The requirements of SOLAS Chapter V, Regulations 27, 28, 30 and 34 are to be applied as necessary.

**6.1.8 Navigation Goal 7.** Each ship is to be provided with requirements for shipborne navigational systems and equipment:

The requirements of SOLAS Chapter V, Regulations 19 and 20 are to be applied as applicable.

## Section 7 Safety of navigating and communication equipment arrangements

### 7.1 Equipment arrangements objective

**7.1.1** All navigation and communications equipment is to be arranged to allow safe and effective task performance. The Equipment Arrangements Goals described in 7.1.2, 7.1.3, 7.1.5 and 7.1.6 may be achieved by the application of the referred SOLAS regulations which are provided for guidance purposes. See also 4.1.3.

**7.1.2 Equipment Arrangements Goal 1.** The navigational bridge is to be arranged to allow clear visibility of all equipment needed for navigation purposes:

In general, the requirements of SOLAS Chapter V, Regulation 22 are to be complied with.

**7.1.3 Equipment Arrangements Goal 2.** All navigating and communications equipment is to be located to avoid interference that affects its proper use and so as to ensure electromagnetic compatibility and avoidance of harmful interaction with other equipment and systems:

In general, the requirements of SOLAS Chapter V, Regulation 17 are to be complied with.

**7.1.4 Equipment Arrangements Goal 3.** All navigating and communications equipment is to be located to avoid the harmful effects of water, extremes of temperature and other environmental conditions.

**7.1.5 Equipment Arrangements Goal 4.** All navigation and communications equipment is to be arranged so as it remains functional in all foreseeable failure conditions:

- In general, all communication equipment is to be in accordance with the requirements of SOLAS Chapter IV, Part C, Regulations 6, 15, 16 and 17.
- In general, the bridge is to be arranged in accordance with SOLAS Chapter V, Regulation 15.

**7.1.6 Equipment Arrangements Goal 5.** All navigation equipment is to be maintained to ensure that it remains in an efficient working order:

In general, equipment is to be maintained in accordance with SOLAS Chapter V, Regulation 16.





# Pollution Prevention

# Volume 3, Part 3, Chapter 6

Sections 1, 2 & 3

## Section

- 1 **Scope**
- 2 **Requirements for pollution prevention arrangements**
- 3 **Plans and particulars**
- 4 **Prevention of pollution by oil and garbage**
- 5 **Prevention of pollution by sewage and pollution of the air from ships**

## ■ Section 1 Scope

### 1.1 Philosophy

1.1.1 The purpose of this Chapter is to provide a methodology for confirming that a naval ship meets the applicable requirements of the International Maritime Organisation's MARPOL Convention.

1.1.2 This Chapter details the Regulations of MARPOL applicable to naval ships for the purposes of these Rules, and details how these are to be complied with.

### 1.2 Application

1.2.1 The requirements of this Chapter are to be applied where a Certificate of Compliance or Class Notation for Pollution Prevention (**POL**) is requested.

1.2.2 The requirements of these Rules are to be satisfied as part of the **EP** notation included in Pt 2, Ch 2.

## ■ Section 2 Requirements for pollution prevention arrangements

### 2.1 General requirements

2.1.1 The Pollution Prevention Notation **POL** notation will be assigned to vessels that demonstrate that the provision equipment and procedures on board are in accordance with the requirements of Section 4 of these Rules.

2.1.2 In addition, Certificates of Compliance will be provided where the arrangements are found in accordance with Section 5. (The MARPOL requirements detailed in Section 5 have not been ratified at IMO to date).

2.1.3 Where the **POL** notation is to be assigned, an **LMC** notation must have been assigned, see Ch 1, 1.1.2.

## ■ Section 3 Plans and particulars

### 3.1 Design statement

3.1.1 The design intent of any pollution prevention system required by the regulations is to be submitted and is to include all necessary supporting information with:

- (a) The required class notation, **POL**, or Certificate of Compliance to MARPOL Annex IV or VI. If a military distinction notation is required this is also to be declared.
- (b) Details of the operational profile of the ship, to include manning provisions and training levels.
- (c) A description of each mode of operation of the systems in each identifiable potential pollution of the sea or air scenarios.

The design statement is to be agreed by the designer and Owner/Operator.

### 3.2 Design declaration

3.2.1 In addition to submission of an acceptable Concept Statement, a Design Disclosure is required for submission to and acceptance by Lloyd's Register. The Design Disclosure is to include, but is not limited to:

- (a) a statement of all design standards used in the design, manufacture, installation and testing of pollution prevention equipment and systems;
- (b) a proposed list of all surveyable items together with any additional recommendations from equipment/component manufacturers. Evidence is also to be provided that all surveyable items of equipment have approval certificates;
- (c) details of the proposed survey and maintenance regime;
- (d) evidence of compliance with the Objectives and Goals defined in Sections 4 and 5. This may be in the form of compliance with prescriptive Rules, Concessions, Alternative Design Justification Reports or an acceptable combination of all three, see also Ch 1, 2.3 and Ch 1, 6;
- (e) details of the Hazard Identification process and Class related hazards are to be submitted. A hazard identification system is to be in place at the design stage whereby all hazards identified are recorded. If application of these Rules has been identified as a hazard avoidance/mitigation measure then details are to be submitted;
- (f) details of equipment configurations that are safe for operators and users;
- (g) details of the proposed test procedure required to demonstrate functionality at the time of commissioning.

### 3.3 Plans

3.3.1 To support the engineering and safety justification and for the purposes of assessing compliance with design requirements, for inspection installation and testing; guidance on the plans and information to be submitted for assessment and reviews are detailed in 3.3.2 to 3.3.4.

3.3.2 For pollution prevention equipment, the following plans and information:

- (a) Certificates of conformity against MARPOL Annexes as required by these Rules.
- (b) General arrangement plans of equipment, detailing all essential parameters, capacity, flow rates, etc.

3.3.3 For arrangements of equipment, the following plans and information:

- (a) General arrangement plans of equipment layout, showing tanks, discharges, etc.
- (b) General arrangement plans of all equipment assemblies such as oily water separators, pumps, etc.

3.3.4 For procedures, the following information:

Details of the pollution prevention procedure, to include oil record books, sewage discharge, etc.

## 5.2 Regulations of MARPOL Annex VI (Pollution of the Air)

5.2.1 All relevant regulations of MARPOL Annex VI are to be complied with.

## ■ Section 4 Prevention of pollution by oil and garbage

### 4.1 Applicable Regulations of MARPOL Annex I (Oil Pollution)

4.1.1 The following Regulations and associated requirements are applicable to naval ships:

- (a) Regulation 9, *The control and discharge of oil.*
- (b) Regulation 10, *Methods of prevention of oil pollution from ships while operating in special areas.*
- (c) Regulation 14, *Segregation of oil and water ballast and carriage of oil in forepeak tanks.*
- (d) Regulation 16, *Oil discharge monitoring and control system and oil filtering equipment.*
- (e) Regulation 17, *Tanks for oil residues (sludge).*
- (f) Regulation 19, *Standard discharge connection.*
- (g) Regulation 20, *Oil record book.*
- (h) Regulation 26, *Shipboard oil pollution emergency plan.*

### 4.2 Applicable Regulations of MARPOL Annex V (Garbage Pollution)

4.2.1 All regulations of MARPOL Annex V are to be complied with.

## ■ Section 5 Prevention of pollution by sewage and pollution of the air from ships

### 5.1 Regulations of MARPOL Annex IV (Sewage Pollution)

5.1.1 Where required by the Naval Authority, all regulations of MARPOL Annex IV are to be complied with.

© Lloyd's Register Group Limited 2013  
Published by Lloyd's Register  
*Registered office*  
71 Fenchurch Street, London, EC3M 4BS  
United Kingdom